THE OWNER'S MANUAL

STUDY BIBLE

The Old and New Testaments

GENESIS TO REVELATION · 66 BOOKS
WITH A BONUS SECTION

The Owner's Manual

The Owner's Manual Study Bible, with study notes, highlighting, photos and maps

First draft edition, 2026. Not for sale.

Copyright © 2026 Bible Tech Support. All rights reserved. This covers the introductions, notes, highlighting system, Big Question pages, Field Notes, bonus section, maps and page design.

The Bible text of The Owner's Manual is an edited version of a modern English translation that its makers gave to the public domain. The Introduction explains where it comes from and how it was changed. The Bible text may be quoted freely. Please credit The Owner's Manual.

Photos are in the public domain or used under Creative Commons licenses. Each photo's credit is printed with it.

Maps were drawn by Bible Tech Support. Map data from Natural Earth, which is in the public domain.

ISBN to come.

bibletechsupport.com
BibleTechSupport@protonmail.com

THE OWNER'S MANUAL

Presented To

From

Date

Occasion

CONTENTS

Introduction 7

How to Use This Bible 21

Old Testament

Old Testament Introduction 31

TORAH

Genesis 43
Exodus 117
Leviticus 175
Numbers 221
Deuteronomy 281

HISTORY

Joshua 335
Judges 377
Ruth 419
1 Samuel 435
2 Samuel 489
1 Kings 539
2 Kings 597
1 Chronicles 663
2 Chronicles 709
Ezra 763
Nehemiah 787
Esther 815

POETRY AND WISDOM

Job 835
Psalms 881
Proverbs 985
Ecclesiastes 1025
Song of Solomon 1043

MAJOR PROPHETS

Isaiah 1057
Jeremiah 1145
Lamentations 1229
Ezekiel 1247
Daniel 1321

MINOR PROPHETS

Hosea 1353
Joel 1373
Amos 1387
Obadiah 1405
Jonah 1415
Micah 1429
Nahum 1441
Habakkuk 1453
Zephaniah 1465
Haggai 1475
Zechariah 1485
Malachi 1507

Between the Testaments

About the Apocrypha 1519

New Testament

New Testament Introduction 1535

GOSPELS

Matthew 1547
Mark 1605
Luke 1641
John 1695

HISTORY

Acts 1737

PAUL'S LETTERS

Romans 1797
1 Corinthians 1821
2 Corinthians 1845
Galatians 1863
Ephesians 1875
Philippians 1891
Colossians 1901
1 Thessalonians 1911
2 Thessalonians 1923
1 Timothy 1931
2 Timothy 1945
Titus 1957
Philemon 1967

GENERAL LETTERS

Hebrews 1975
James 1997
1 Peter 2009
2 Peter 2025
1 John 2037
2 John 2051
3 John 2059
Jude 2065

PROPHECY

Revelation 2077

Bonus Section 2119

INTRODUCTION

How this Bible got to you, and why we made it the way we did

Be a Berean

This Bible was built to be checked. That idea comes from a small town in Greece and three verses in Acts.

THE TOWN THAT FACT CHECKED PAUL

In Acts 17, Paul and Silas are run out of Thessalonica. A mob is after them. The believers sneak them out at night, and they land in a town called Berea. Today it is called Veria, and you can still visit it.

Paul does what he always does. He goes to the synagogue and teaches that Jesus is the Messiah the Scriptures promised.

Here is what the Bereans did next. Acts 17:11 says they received the message with great eagerness and examined the Scriptures every day to see if these things were so.

Think about that. The apostle Paul is standing in front of them. The man who would write 13 books of the New Testament. And they said, in effect, "Great sermon. We're going to go look it up."

GOD CALLED IT NOBLE

You might expect Luke to scold them for doubting an apostle. He does the opposite. He says the Bereans were more noble than the people in Thessalonica.

They were not cynics. They were eager. They wanted it to be true. They just wanted to see it for themselves. Acts 17:12 says many of them believed, including leading Greek women and men.

You know that one kid in Sunday school? The one who actually finished the take home sheet. The one with tabs on every book of the Bible, color coded. The one who raised a hand when the teacher said Methuselah lived about a thousand years and said, "Actually, it was 969. Genesis 5:27." The one who reminded the teacher she forgot to give homework.

Now fill a whole synagogue with that kid. That was Berea.

Paul walked in ready to preach and got a room full of fact checkers with scrolls. Every time he said, "As it is written," fifty people started unrolling scrolls to find the spot. Nobody fell asleep. Nobody was drawing in the margins. Somebody in the back was probably taking notes on his notes.

And here is the best part. Luke did not call them annoying. He did not call them know it alls. He called them noble.

Paul didn't scold them either. I like to imagine him thinking, "Finally! People who actually want to hear this. Bring on the hard questions." Because in a lot of towns, the crowd was looking up at the sun to see how close it was to lunch.

That's not just a joke. Back then, most people told time by the sun. The daylight was split into twelve hours, from sunrise to sunset. Jesus said it Himself: Are there not twelve hours of daylight? John 11:9. That means a summer hour was longer than a winter hour. Cities had sundials, and some had water clocks, but most folks just looked up. Noon was the sixth hour. In Acts 10:9 to 10, Peter goes up on a roof to pray at about the sixth hour and gets hungry. Even apostles knew when it was lunchtime.

And Paul knew what a bored crowd looked like. In Acts 20:9, a young man named Eutychus was sitting in a window while Paul talked on and on. He fell asleep, fell out the

window from the third story and died. Paul had to raise him from the dead. Nobody in Berea ever needed that.

That crowd still exists today. In Christian circles we call them the apologetics crowd, and you know who you are. You have watched a three hour debate about one Greek word at 1 a.m. and paused it to take notes. You own more Bibles than coffee mugs. You have said the words "well, actually, in the Greek" at Thanksgiving dinner. Your pastor sees you walk in with a notebook and quietly checks his sermon one more time.

If that's you, welcome to Berea. This study Bible was written partly just for you. We know you are going to check every note anyway, so let's make it official. If you find a mistake, a take you think is wrong, or a view we left out, tell us at bibletechsupport.com. All of them. Even the small ones. Especially the small ones. We would rather hear it from you than from a comment section.

And it stuck. A few chapters later, in Acts 20:4, a Berean named Sopater is traveling with Paul as part of his team. The town that checked his work sent him a teammate.

THEY DIDN'T HAVE IT EASY

The Bereans did not have a Bible on the nightstand. There were no printed books. The Scriptures were handwritten scrolls, expensive and heavy, kept at the synagogue. Their Bible was what we call the Old Testament.

So checking Paul meant showing up, unrolling scrolls and reading, every single day. They did it anyway.

You have it much easier. You are holding the whole thing, both testaments, with notes that point you to every verse we talk about.

WHY THAT MATTERS FOR THIS BIBLE

Every note in this Bible is a claim. A prophecy was fulfilled here. This stone was dug up there. This verse is missing from the oldest copies. We want you to check every one of them.

That is why each note gives you the verse. That is why our confidence ratings say HIGH, MEDIUM or LOW instead of pretending everything is certain. That is why the Big Question pages show every side. And that is why every change we made to the Bible text is listed where you can see it.

We are not asking you to trust us. We are asking you to do what the Bereans did. Open the Book and see if these things are so.

Our whole ministry is built on that one verse. No Bible college required. Just eagerness and a habit of looking it up.

How the Bible Got to You

God did not drop a leather Bible out of the sky and tell everyone, "This is My Complete Word of God!" The one exception might be the Ten Commandments, which Exodus 31:18 says were written by the finger of God. And no, the Council of Nicaea did not take books out of the Bible in AD
325. More on that in the bonus section at the very end of this Bible.

God used people, scrolls, scribes and printing presses over about 3,000 years. Here is the family tree, short version.

IT STARTED IN HEBREW AND GREEK

Here's a fun question nobody can answer: what language did Adam speak?

The stories in Genesis happened long before anyone wrote them down, and the people in them did not all speak Hebrew. Abraham's family settled in Haran, in a region called Aram, Genesis 11:31. That's where the word Aramaic comes from. Isaac married Rebekah, the sister of Laban the Aramean, Genesis 25:20. Deuteronomy 26:5 even calls Jacob a wandering Aramean.

The Bible gives us a clue. In Genesis 31:47, Jacob and his uncle Laban stack up a pile of rocks to seal a deal, and each one names it. Laban calls it Jegar Sahadutha, which is Aramaic. Jacob calls it Galeed, which is Hebrew. Both names mean heap of witness. One rock pile, two languages. That's the first Aramaic in the Bible.

So when these things actually happened, some of the talking was probably in Aramaic, or in an older language we don't even have a name for. An old Jewish teaching in the Talmud says Adam spoke Aramaic, Sanhedrin 38b. Others said Hebrew. Genesis 11:1 only tells us the whole world spoke one language before Babel. The truth is we don't know, and anyone who tells you for sure is guessing.

BEFORE ANYONE WROTE IT DOWN

For a long time, these stories were not read. They were told. Around the fire, at the dinner table, on long walks with the sheep. Scholars call this oral tradition. Oral just means spoken out loud. Not the dentist kind.

Now you might be thinking of the telephone game, where Grandma likes pie turns into Grandpa bought a goat by the end of the line. That's not how it worked. In a world with no books, people memorized on purpose. They used songs, rhymes, lists and the same words over and over. And if someone told the story wrong, the whole family fixed it on the spot. Try telling a family story wrong at Thanksgiving with your aunt in the room. You will be corrected before you finish the sentence.

The Bible tells families to do exactly this:

- Deuteronomy 6:7. Talk about God's words when you sit at home, when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up. Basically, all day.
- Exodus 12:26 to 27. When your kids ask what Passover means, tell them the story.
- Joshua 4:6 to 7. Pile up twelve stones from the Jordan River, so when your kids ask what the rocks are for, you tell them what God did.
- Psalm 78:3 to 4. What our fathers told us, we will not hide from our children.

The rest of the ancient world did it too. Many scholars think the Greek poems of Homer, the Iliad and the Odyssey, were recited from memory for generations before anyone wrote them down. Jewish teachers carried a huge body of teaching in their heads for centuries before it was written down as the Mishnah, around AD 200.

Here's a mind blower. Do the math with the ages in the Hebrew text of Genesis 5 and 11, and the chain is short. Methuselah was alive at the same time as Adam for about 243 years. Then Methuselah was alive at the same time as Noah for 600 years. And Noah's son Shem was still alive when Abraham was born. So a story from the garden could go from Adam to Methuselah to Noah's family to Abraham with just a few handoffs. That's fewer people than it takes to pass the mashed potatoes.

One more thing. Writing is way older than Moses. Egypt and Babylon were writing things down more than a thousand years before he was born. Genesis is divided into sections that start with words like This is the account of, Genesis 2:4, 6:9 and 11:27. Some scholars think those mark older family records that were written down early. Nobody knows for sure.

THEN MOSES WROTE IT DOWN

Jewish and Christian tradition says Moses put Genesis and the next four books in writing, and he wrote them in Hebrew. When? That depends on when you date the Exodus. 1 Kings 6:1 says Solomon started the temple 480 years after Israel left Egypt, which points to about 1446 BC. That would put Moses writing around 1400 BC. Many other scholars date the Exodus to the 1200s BC, which would put it around 1250 BC. Some modern scholars think the books reached their final form even later. Each book's introduction tells you more. The Old Testament Introduction has three pages, starting with Why Do Some Books Have Two Dates?, that explain how we date the books and why

many scholars date them later, and the New Testament Introduction does the same for the Gospels.

So here's the idiot proof version. Things happened. People talked about them, maybe in Aramaic. Families memorized the stories and passed them down. Then Moses wrote it all down in Hebrew. Same story, new language. Kind of like the Bible you're holding, which you're reading in English.

WHAT THE BOOKS WERE WRITTEN IN

The Old Testament was written mostly in Hebrew. A few chapters in Daniel and Ezra, plus one verse in Jeremiah, are in Aramaic, a cousin language. The New Testament was written in Greek, the common language of the Roman world.

We do not have the original pages. Nobody does. That is true of every ancient book, from Homer to Julius Caesar. What we have is copies, and copies of copies. The good news is that we have a lot of them, and some are very old.

WHAT LANGUAGE DID JESUS SPEAK?

Here's the short answer: most of the New Testament happened in Aramaic and got written down in Greek. Let's untangle that.

In Jesus' day, the Jews of Galilee and Judea mostly spoke Aramaic at home and in the street. Hebrew was the language of the Scriptures and worship. Greek was the language of business and government all over the Roman world. And the Roman soldiers spoke Latin. The sign Pilate nailed over the cross covered the whole menu. It was written in Hebrew, Latin and Greek, John 19:20.

You can still hear Jesus' own Aramaic in the Gospels. Mark kept a few of His actual words:

- Talitha koum. Little girl, get up. Mark 5:41.
- Ephphatha. Be opened. Mark 7:34.
- Abba. Father. Mark 14:36.
- Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani? My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? Mark 15:34.

Even Peter's nickname is Aramaic. Cephas means rock, John 1:42.

But when Jesus stood up in the synagogue in Nazareth and was handed the scroll of Isaiah, Luke 4:16 to 20, that scroll was in Hebrew, and He read it in Hebrew. Many think someone then gave the meaning out loud in Aramaic so everybody could follow. That custom is described in Jewish writings from later on, so we can't be sure it happened that day.

Did Jesus speak Greek too? Maybe. Galilee was surrounded by Greek speaking towns, He talked with a Greek woman in Mark 7:26, and He talked with Pilate. Scholars still argue about it.

Acts has the same mix. When Paul spoke to the crowd in Jerusalem, he switched to Hebrew, which many think means the Aramaic the locals spoke, and the crowd went even quieter, Acts 21:40 to 22:2. Nothing gets a crowd's attention like speaking their language. When he preached in Athens, it was Greek.

SO WHY WRITE IT IN GREEK?

Because Greek was the English of the ancient world. About 300 years before Jesus, Alexander the Great conquered everything from Greece to Egypt to the edge of India, and Greek spread everywhere he went. By Jesus' day, a merchant from Spain, a soldier in Egypt and a fisherman in Turkey could all get by in Greek. The kind they used is called Koine, which means common. Not the fancy Greek of the philosophers. The everyday Greek of the marketplace. Think text messages, not Shakespeare.

The apostles were writing to churches in places like Rome, Corinth, Galatia and Ephesus. Most of those people did not speak Aramaic. If Paul had written Romans in Ara-

maic, the Romans would have needed a translator and a snack. He didn't even write it in Latin. He wrote it in Greek, because that's what everybody could read. Jesus told them to make disciples of all nations, Matthew 28:19, so they wrote in the one language all the nations shared.

There's one more reason. The Bible most early Christians read was already in Greek, the Septuagint. So when the New Testament writers quoted the Old Testament, they could quote a Bible their readers already owned.

One honest footnote. Papias, a church leader in the early 100s, said Matthew first put Jesus' sayings together in the Hebrew language. We only know this because the historian Eusebius quoted him. Scholars still debate what Papias meant. The Gospel of Matthew we have was written in Greek, and most scholars think it was not translated from another language.

The idiot proof version: Jesus talked in Aramaic. He read the Scriptures in Hebrew. The apostles wrote it all down in Greek so the whole world could read it. And now you're reading it in English. Same story, fourth language.

THE OLD TESTAMENT COPIES

For centuries, Jewish scribes copied the Hebrew Bible by hand. They were famous for being careful. A group called the Masoretes counted letters and words so they could catch mistakes. Their work gave us the standard Hebrew text.

The oldest complete Hebrew Bible we have is the Leningrad Codex, copied around AD 1008. The Aleppo Codex is a little older, from around AD 930, but part of it was lost in the 1900s.

Then around 1947, as the story goes, a shepherd boy threw a rock into a cave near the Dead Sea. He heard pottery break. Inside were the Dead Sea Scrolls, copies of Old Testament books about a thousand years older than the Leningrad Codex. The Great Isaiah Scroll, from around 125 BC, lines up closely with the Isaiah we read today. A thousand years of copying, and the message held.

THE GREEK OLD TESTAMENT

Around 250 BC, Jewish scholars in Egypt began translating their Scriptures into Greek. This translation is called the Septuagint. Many Jews by then spoke Greek better than Hebrew.

The Septuagint matters because the New Testament writers often quote from it. When a New Testament quote reads a little differently from your Old Testament, this is usually why. Our notes point it out when it matters.

THE NEW TESTAMENT COPIES

We have more than 5,000 handwritten Greek copies of the New Testament, whole books and scraps. No other ancient book comes close. The oldest scraps are often dated to the 100s, though scholars debate exact dates. The oldest nearly complete Bibles, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, come from the 300s.

With that many copies, there are differences. Most are spelling and word order. A few are bigger, like the ending of Mark. That is why this Bible uses [square brackets]. We show you where the oldest copies differ. We don't hide it.

LATIN TAKES OVER

Around AD 400, a scholar named Jerome translated the Bible into Latin. It became known as the Vulgate, which means common. For about a thousand years, it was the Bible of the Western church.

The problem was that most regular people didn't speak Latin. The Bible was read to them in a language they couldn't understand.

INTO ENGLISH, AND INTO TROUBLE

In the 1380s, John Wycliffe and his followers put the whole Bible into English by hand. They translated from the Latin. The church banned unapproved English Bibles in 1409.

Then came the printing press. In 1516, a Dutch scholar named Erasmus printed the Greek New Testament. Now scholars could translate from the Greek instead of the Latin.

Martin Luther used it. In 1522, he put the New Testament into German so a farmer could read it for himself. The full German Bible followed in 1534. He did it while the church wanted him dead.

William Tyndale used it too. He read Luther and borrowed from his prefaces. In 1526, Tyndale printed the first English New Testament translated from Greek. He had to do it in hiding in Germany, and copies were smuggled into England in bales of cloth. Bishops bought them up and burned them. Tyndale was strangled and burned in 1536. According to the old account by John Foxe, his last words were a prayer: "Lord, open the King of England's eyes."

Within a few years, England had approved English Bibles. The Geneva Bible of 1560 was the Bible of Shakespeare and the Pilgrims. It was the first full English Bible with verse numbers.

THE KING JAMES

In 1611, a team of about 50 scholars finished the King James Version. It became the Bible of the English speaking world for over 300 years. Most of its New Testament wording comes straight from Tyndale. One computer study found about 83 percent. The man they burned wrote most of the Bible they printed.

The KJV most people read today is not the 1611 printing. It is a 1769 update that fixed spelling and printing errors.

THEN WE FOUND MORE COPIES

In the 1800s and 1900s, scholars found older copies than the KJV translators ever saw, including Codex Sinaiticus and the Dead Sea Scrolls. New translations used them. You have probably heard of a few: the NASB, NIV and ESV. Their New Testaments are translated from what scholars call the critical text, a Greek text built by comparing the oldest copies.

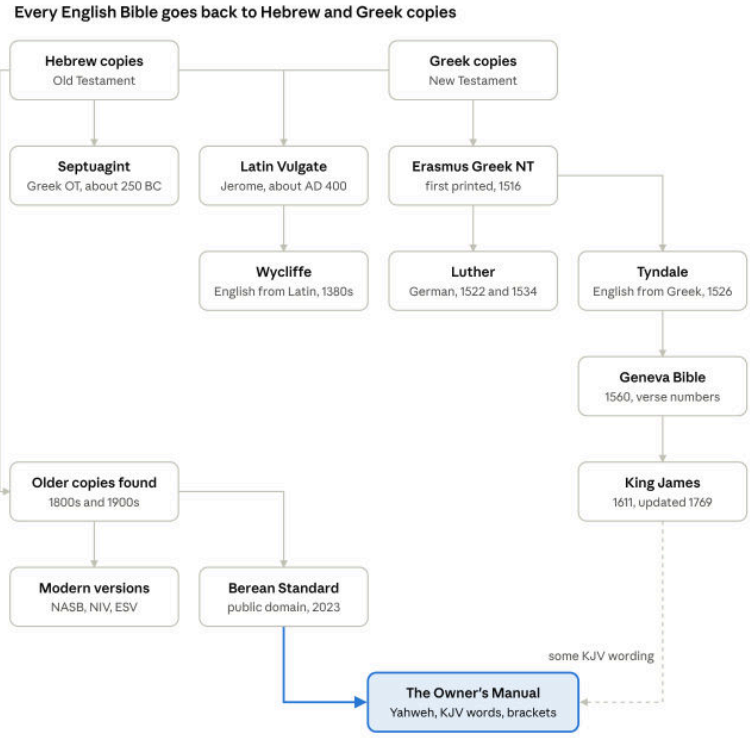
Not every new translation went that way. The New King James Version, finished in 1982, updated the King James English but kept the same Greek text the King James used, called the Textus Receptus, or Received Text. Good scholars still disagree about which Greek text is best, and our TEXT notes show you where the two differ.

Translations sit on a line. On one end are word for word translations like the KJV, NASB and ESV. In the middle are thought for thought translations like the NIV and NLT. Way out on the far end are paraphrases like The Message. Each has a job. Word for word helps you study. Thought for thought helps you read fast.

WHERE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FITS

The Owner's Manual, or TOM, is a word for word style translation. TOM starts from the Berean Standard Bible, a modern English translation made from the Hebrew and Greek. Yes, it is named after the same Bereans from Acts 17. In 2023, its makers did something generous. They gave it to the public for free, so anyone could print it, share it and build on it. We did exactly that, and we thank them in our acknowledgments. Then we changed it.

We print God's name, Yahweh, where the Hebrew has it. We brought back some King James wording where it hits harder and still means the same thing today. And we put words missing from the oldest copies in brackets instead of deleting them. Every change is listed in our change log, verse by verse, with the reason why.



Follow any arrow up and you land on the same Hebrew and Greek copies. TOM borrows from two branches: the Berean Standard Bible for its base, and the King James for some of its wording.

The King James: Respect and False Friends

Let's get this out of the way. We love the King James Bible.

It shaped the English language. It gave us phrases people still use without knowing where they came from, like the salt of the earth, a labor of love and the powers that be. Revivals were preached from it. Missionaries carried it around the world. Your grandma probably underlined hers until the pages were soft. If you read the KJV, you are reading a Bible that God has used for over 400 years. Keep reading it.

THE TRANSLATORS AGREED WITH US

Here is something most people never see. The 1611 King James had a long preface called The Translators to the Reader. In it, the translators said the Bible should be in the plain language of the people, so even the simplest person could understand it.

They also said that even a weak translation of the Bible is still the word of God. And they filled the margins with thousands of notes showing other ways a word could be translated. They were Bereans too. They wanted you to see their choices.

So when a newer Bible changes an old word, it is not attacking the King James. It is doing what the King James translators did. Putting God's Word in the language people speak today.

WHY WE KEPT SOME KJV WORDING

Sometimes the King James just says it better. Daniel 11:32 says the people who know their God shall be strong and do exploits. Try saying that with less punch. You can't.

So TOM brings back KJV wording in some places. Our rule is simple. The KJV words must be faithful to the Hebrew or Greek, and they must still mean the same thing to a reader today. Every one of these swaps is listed in our change log.

WATCH OUT FOR FALSE FRIENDS

That second rule matters, because English changes. A false friend is a word you think you know, but it meant something else in 1611. It looks friendly. It is not.

The teacher Mark Ward made this idea famous for KJV readers, and he is right. These are not mistakes in the King James. In 1611, these words were perfect. The language moved. The Bible didn't.

Here are some of our favorites.

The KJV says	Where	In 1611 it meant	What you might think
Suffer the little children to come unto me	Mark 10:14	Let them come	Make the kids suffer
We which are alive shall not prevent them which are asleep	1 Thessalonians 4:15	Go ahead of	Stop them
I purposed to come unto you, but was let hitherto	Romans 1:13	Hindered, blocked	Allowed
Let your conversation be as it becometh the gospel	Philippians 1:27	Your whole way of life	Watch your mouth
The word of God is quick, and powerful	Hebrews 4:12	Alive	Fast
Judge the quick and the dead	2 Timothy 4:1	The living	The speedy
We took up our carriages	Acts 21:15	Our bags	Paul had a horse and buggy
Give me by and by in a charger the head of John	Mark 6:25	Right now, on a platter	Eventually, with a phone charger
To do good and to communicate forget not	Hebrews 13:16	Share what you have	Keep texting
Study to shew thyself approved	2 Timothy 2:15	Work hard, be diligent	Hit the books

That last one is a good example of how TOM works. We kept the King James phrase rightly dividing the word of truth, because it is strong and still clear. But we changed Study to Be diligent, because Paul was not telling Timothy to cram for a test. He was telling him to work hard at handling God's Word right.

So when you see an old word in TOM, it is there on purpose. When you see an old word changed, that is on purpose too. Either way, it's in the change log.

What We Changed, and Where to Check

Any time someone changes the Bible text, you should get nervous. We would. So we wrote down every single change.

THE CHANGE LOG

Our change log lists every place where TOM's wording is different from the translation we started with. Each line gives you the verse, what it said before, what it says now and why we changed it.

Scan the QR code on the copyright page to open it. It's free, and it updates as we fix things. Nothing is hidden in the fine print, because there is no fine print.

THE FOUR KINDS OF CHANGES

Almost every change falls into one of four groups.

1. God's name. Where the Hebrew has God's personal name, we print Yahweh. That is the biggest change by far, in thousands of verses. The next section explains why.
2. King James wording. Where the KJV is stronger and still clear, we brought it back. For example, 1 Timothy 3:16 reads God was manifest in the flesh. The note under it tells you that the oldest copies say He who was manifest, and that both readings point to Jesus.
3. Brackets. Some verses that older Bibles had and newer Bibles dropped are back in TOM, inside [square brackets]. One example is Acts 8:37, where the Ethiopian official confesses his faith before he is baptized. You see the verse, and you see that the oldest copies don't have it.
4. Plain English measures. In some places we turned ancient weights and measures into ones you know, like inches and pounds, so you can picture the thing.

WHAT WE NEVER DO

We never change a verse to win an argument. We never change a verse to fit a doctrine. If a verse makes our side uncomfortable, it stays exactly as it is.

And we never make a change without telling you. If you find one that isn't in the log, that's a mistake, and we want to know.

FIND A MISTAKE?

This Bible was made by people, and people miss things. If you find an error in a note, a date or a highlight, tell us at bibletechsupport.com. We will check it, fix it in the next printing and add it to the log. Bereans are welcome here.

God Has a Name

God is not God's name. God is His title, like President or Coach. He has a personal name, and He told us what it is.

THE BURNING BUSH

In Exodus 3, Moses is standing barefoot in front of a bush that is on fire but not burning up. God tells him to go back to Egypt and lead Israel out. Moses asks a fair question. If the people ask me Your name, what do I tell them?

God answers in Exodus 3:14, I AM WHO I AM. Then in verse 15 He gives His name. In Hebrew it is four letters, YHWH. And He adds, This is My name forever, and this is how I am to be remembered from generation to generation.

Most scholars connect the name to the Hebrew verb for to be. He is the God who is. He was before anything else, and He will be after everything else.

THE MOST USED NAME IN THE BIBLE

That four letter name shows up about 6,800 times in the Old Testament. That's more than any other name or title for God, and more than any other name in the Bible.

So why have most of us never seen it?

HOW A NAME WENT MISSING

Ancient Hebrew was written with consonants only, no vowels. Readers just knew how to say the words. Imagine reading a text from your friend that says GD MRNNG and knowing exactly what it means.

Over time, Jewish readers became so careful about God's name that they stopped saying it out loud. They did not want to misuse it and break the commandment in Exodus

20:7. Ancient Jewish writings say that only the high priest spoke it, in the temple, on the Day of Atonement.

So when readers came to YHWH, they said Adonai instead, which means Lord. Later, the Greek translation of the Old Testament mostly used the Greek word for Lord in those places too.

Then, hundreds of years after Jesus, Jewish scribes called the Masoretes added little vowel marks to the Hebrew text. On YHWH, they put the vowels of Adonai, as a reminder to say Lord. It was like a sticky note that said, don't say this word out loud.

After enough centuries of nobody saying it, the exact sound of the name was lost.

WHERE JEHOVAH CAME FROM

Christian scholars in the Middle Ages read the Hebrew text and took the sticky note literally. They mixed the consonants YHWH with the vowels of Adonai. Spell that in Latin letters, where the letter J was said like our Y, and you get Jehovah.

The name spread in English Bibles. Tyndale used it. The King James prints Jehovah four times on its own, in Exodus 6:3, Psalm 83:18, Isaiah 12:2 and Isaiah 26:4, plus in a few place names like Jehovah jireh in Genesis 22:14.

Everywhere else, the King James did what most English Bibles still do. It printed LORD in capital letters. When your Bible says LORD in all caps, that is God's name hiding in plain sight. When it says Lord GOD, the Hebrew is Adonai YHWH.

Jehovah has been used in great hymns and by sincere believers for centuries. It is just not how the name was pronounced in Bible times. Scholars across the board agree on that.

WHY WE SAY YAHWEH

Nobody alive can be 100 percent sure how the name was said. But scholars have strong clues, and they mostly agree on Yahweh.

Clue one is the short form of the name, Yah. You already say it. Hallelujah means praise Yah. Psalm 68:4 uses Yah by itself.

Clue two is names. Elijah means my God is Yah. Isaiah means Yah saves. Many Bible names carry part of God's name inside them.

Clue three is early Christian writers. Around AD 200, Clement of Alexandria wrote the name in Greek letters with a sound close to Yahweh. A later writer named Theodoret said the Samaritans pronounced it Yabe.

Put those together and you get Yahweh, which is how most scholars write it today. That's what TOM prints.

ISN'T IT WRONG TO SAY IT?

This is a fair question, and good people disagree.

Many Jewish people today still will not say the name. Some will not even spell out the word God in full, and many call Him HaShem, which means The Name. That comes from deep respect, and we respect it too.

Many Christians prefer LORD for a different reason. The apostles wrote the New Testament in Greek, and when they quoted the Old Testament, they used the Greek word for Lord. That tradition is old and honorable.

Here is why we still print Yahweh. In the Old Testament, people said God's name all the time. In Ruth 2:4, Boaz greets his field workers with Yahweh be with you, and they answer, Yahweh bless you. That's farm small talk. The commandment in Exodus 20:7 is about misusing God's name, like a false promise or a fake prophecy. It's not about saying it with love.

God said this is My name forever. We think He meant for it to be used. So when you see Yahweh in TOM, read it, say it and know that you are calling God by the name He gave Himself.

HOW TOM PRINTS GOD'S NAMES

Hebrew	What it means	Most English Bibles	TOM
YHWH	God's personal name	LORD	Yahweh
Adonai YHWH	Lord Yahweh	Lord GOD	Lord Yahweh
Adonai	Lord, master	Lord	Lord
Elohim	God	God	God

In the New Testament, TOM keeps Lord, because that is what the apostles wrote in Greek. The next section explains how that ties right back to Yahweh.

GOD'S OTHER NAMES AND TITLES

The Bible pairs God's name and titles with words that describe Him. Some are names He gives Himself. Some are names people gave Him after He showed up in their lives. Here are the big ones.

Name	What it means	Where you first meet it
Elohim	God. It is plural in form, but it takes singular verbs when it means the one true God.	Genesis 1:1
El Elyon	God Most High	Genesis 14:18, with Melchizedek
El Roi	The God who sees me	Genesis 16:13, said by Hagar, a runaway servant
El Shaddai	Usually translated God Almighty. The exact meaning is debated.	Genesis 17:1, to Abraham
Yahweh Yireh	Yahweh will provide	Genesis 22:14, after the ram on the mountain
Yahweh Rapha	Yahweh who heals you	Exodus 15:26
Yahweh Nissi	Yahweh is my banner	Exodus 17:15, after a battle
Yahweh Shalom	Yahweh is peace	Judges 6:24, said by Gideon
Yahweh Sabaoth	Yahweh of armies, often called the LORD of hosts	1 Samuel 1:3
Yahweh Tsidkenu	Yahweh our righteousness	Jeremiah 23:6, a prophecy about the Messiah
Yahweh Shammah	Yahweh is there	Ezekiel 48:35, the last words of Ezekiel

A quick note on Elohim. Some Christians see the plural form as an early hint of the Trinity. Many scholars, Jewish and Christian, say it is a plural of majesty, the way a king might say we. Both views are out there. Neither one changes what Deuteronomy 6:4 says. Yahweh is one.

See how El Roi was spoken by a runaway servant girl alone in the desert? God's names are not just theology. A lot of them were given by people who just met Him on their worst day.

Jesus, Yeshua and Lord

God's name doesn't disappear in the New Testament. It's hiding inside the name of Jesus.

HIS NAME MEANS YAHWEH SAVES

Jesus's mother and friends did not call Him Jesus. They spoke Aramaic and Hebrew, and they called Him Yeshua. It's a short form of Yehoshua, the same name as Joshua, the man who led Israel into the Promised Land. In Ezra and Nehemiah, a high priest has the same name, written Jeshua in many English Bibles.

Yeshua means Yahweh saves. That's why the angel tells Joseph in Matthew 1:21, You are to give Him the name Jesus, because He will save His people from their sins. The name was the mission statement.

SO HOW DID WE GET JESUS?

The New Testament was written in Greek, and Yeshua in Greek is Iesous. In Latin it became Iesus. English later added the letter J, and Iesus became Jesus. The 1611 King James actually printed Iesus, because English hadn't fully split I and J yet.

Every step was a normal translation, the way your name might sound a little different in Spanish. The apostles themselves wrote His name in Greek. So TOM prints Jesus in the text. You will find notes on Yeshua at Matthew 1:1 and 1:21.

Some believers prefer to say Yeshua only. That's a beautiful name, and you're welcome to use it. But nobody needs to feel guilty for saying Jesus. Peter, Paul and John wrote His name in Greek, and heaven did not lose any mail.

CHRIST IS A TITLE, NOT A LAST NAME

Jesus Christ is not Mr. and Mrs. Christ's boy. Christ comes from the Greek word Christos, which means Anointed One. In Hebrew that word is Mashiach, which gives us Messiah.

In the Old Testament, kings and priests were anointed with oil to set them apart. Saying Jesus Christ means Jesus the Messiah, the King everyone was waiting for.

LORD IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

The Greek word for Lord is Kyrios. It could mean sir, master or God, depending on who you were talking to. A servant called his boss kyrios. A Greek Bible reader called Yahweh Kyrios.

That is why TOM keeps Lord in the New Testament. It's what the apostles wrote. But watch what they do with it. Again and again, they take an Old Testament verse about Yahweh and apply it to Jesus.

The Old Testament says	The New Testament applies it to Jesus
Joel 2:32. Everyone who calls on the name of Yahweh will be saved.	Romans 10:9 to 13. Confess that Jesus is Lord, because everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved.
Isaiah 40:3. Prepare the way for Yahweh.	Mark 1:2 to 3. John the Baptist prepares the way for Jesus.
Isaiah 45:23. To Me every knee will bow and every tongue will swear.	Philippians 2:10 to 11. At the name of Jesus every knee will bow, and every tongue will confess that Jesus Christ is Lord.

In Isaiah 45, the One speaking is Yahweh, and He says there is no other God. Paul takes those exact words and gives them to Jesus. That's not an accident. That's the point.

Jesus did it too. In John 8:58, He says, Before Abraham was born, I am. Remember the burning bush? The crowd did. They picked up stones.

And in John 20:28, when Thomas finally sees the risen Jesus, he doesn't say, nice trick. He says, My Lord and my God.

So when you read Lord in the New Testament, pay attention. Sometimes it just means sir. Sometimes it means a whole lot more. Our notes will flag the big ones.

Not everyone reads these verses the same way. Jewish readers, Jehovah's Witnesses, Oneness Pentecostals and others understand them differently, and the Big Question page on Is Jesus God? in the Gospel of John lays out every view fairly. But this is where the trail leads. The God who told Moses His name is the God who walked out of the tomb.

HOW TO USE THIS BIBLE

The Owner's Manual for The Owner's Manual

Read This First. Seriously.

Nobody reads the owner's manual. That is how people end up with a bookshelf built upside down and three screws left over.

This Bible is full of colors, red letters, brackets and little notes. Every one of them means something. If you skip this section, it will look like a coloring book exploded.

Give me five minutes. By the end, you will know what every color means, how to find a prophecy and where it was fulfilled, and how to check our work. No Bible college required. I didn't finish it either.

Idiot Proof: The Three Things You Must Know

In a hurry? Learn these three and you can start reading today.

1. **Colors mean something.** A highlighted verse is not decoration. Lime green means a prophecy about Jesus. Blue means the end times. Every color is explained below, and the bottom of each page shows only the colors used on that page.
2. **Red letters mean God is talking.** In the Old Testament the label says GOD SPEAKING. In the New Testament it says JESUS SPEAKING. When the coming Messiah speaks in the Old Testament, it says MESSIAH SPEAKING. When a prophet or anyone else quotes what God said, God's words are red too.
3. **Brackets mean "not in the oldest copies."** Words in [square brackets] are missing from the earliest handwritten copies we have. We kept them so you can see them, and we told you so you can decide.

That's it. Everything else in this section just makes you better at those three.

Anatomy of a Page

Here is every part of a page, top to bottom. In the printed Bible, this section shows a real page from Isaiah with a line pointing to each part.

What you see	What it means
Header bar	The book and chapters on this page. It says The Owner's Manual so you never forget what you're holding.
Chapter summary	A short, funny recap at the start of each chapter. Read it first so you know what's coming.
Highlighted verse	A verse in one of our colors. The color tells you its category.
Note under the verse	Explains why the verse is colored. A prophecy note says where it was fulfilled. A fulfillment note says FULFILLS and points back to the prophecy.
Red letters	Words spoken by God, by Jesus, or by the Messiah in the Old Testament, and God's words when someone else quotes Him.
Red underline	A name in the family line of Jesus. We underline the name, not the whole verse.
Italics	Old Testament words quoted in the New Testament. Both the quote and the verse it came from are italic.

[Square brackets]	Words not found in the oldest copies.
FIELD NOTES pointer	Sends you to a Field Notes box about a real find, like a stone, a scroll or a city.
Shaded study note box	A longer note right after its verse: a Big Question, Field Notes or From History. Its background color tells you what kind of note it is. See Study Note Colors.
Page color key	The row of colored chips at the bottom. It shows only the colors on this page.
Split note	A note saying this verse also fits another color, and why the color you see won.

If you forget what a color means, look down. The answer is at the bottom of the page you are already on.

The Color Key

There are two families of colors. Prophecy colors show predictions and where they were fulfilled. Reference colors show everything else worth noticing. A light, pastel color means a foreshadow. Before you meet the colors, you need to know what that is.

WHAT'S A FORESHADOW?

A prophecy says it straight. A foreshadow doesn't spell it out. It's a picture that points ahead.

Some people would call a foreshadow a vague prophecy. Fair enough. It is softer evidence than a prediction with names and places. That's exactly why foreshadows get the lighter, pastel colors. We would rather undersell than oversell.

Here's the best example in the whole Bible: the lamb with no blemish.

The picture starts early. In Genesis 4:4, Abel brings the firstborn of his flock, the best he had, and God accepts it. After the flood, Noah offers clean animals on the altar in Genesis 8:20. In Genesis 22:8, Abraham tells his son Isaac that God Himself will provide the lamb. None of those use the words "no blemish" yet. They just set the table.

Then God makes it a rule, and He repeats it over and over:

- **Exodus 12:5.** The Passover lamb must be a year old male with no blemish. Its blood on the doorframe makes death pass over the house.
- **Leviticus 1:10.** A burnt offering from the flock must be a male with no defect.
- **Leviticus 3:6 to 7.** A lamb for a peace offering must have no defect.
- **Leviticus 4:32.** A lamb for a sin offering must be a female with no defect.
- **Leviticus 9:3.** A year old lamb with no blemish on the day the priests start their work.
- **Leviticus 14:10.** Two male lambs and a female lamb with no defect when a person healed of a skin disease is declared clean.
- **Leviticus 22:19 to 21.** Any animal with a defect will not be accepted. Period.
- **Leviticus 23:12.** A lamb with no defect on the day of First Fruits.
- **Leviticus 23:18.** Seven lambs with no defect at the Feast of Weeks, later called Pentecost.
- **Numbers 6:14.** Lambs with no defect when a Nazirite finishes his vow.
- **Numbers 28:3 to 4.** Two lambs with no defect every single day, one in the morning and one at twilight.
- **Numbers 28 and 29.** More lambs with no defect every Sabbath, every new moon and every feast of the year.
- **Deuteronomy 17:1.** Never sacrifice an animal with a defect.
- **Ezekiel 46:4 to 13.** Ezekiel's vision of a future temple still has lambs with no blemish.

- **Malachi 1:8.** God scolds the priests for offering blind, lame and sick animals. Try giving that to your governor, He says.

That's hundreds of years of the same instruction. The best lamb. No blemish. Blood that covers. Nobody in those chapters says the name Jesus.

WHY A LAMB WAS A BIG DEAL

To us, a lamb is something at the petting zoo. To Abraham, a lamb was money.

There was no cash back then. Coins weren't invented until the late 600s BC, long after Abraham, in a kingdom called Lydia in what is now Turkey. Gold and silver did exist and they did matter. Genesis 13:2 says Abraham was rich in livestock, silver and gold. In Genesis 23, he buys a burial field by weighing out 400 shekels of silver. A shekel was a weight, not a coin. You didn't bring a wallet. You brought a scale.

But for a herdsman, the herd was the bank account. Your flock fed you, clothed you, and kept growing. Silver just sat in a bag. A healthy ewe made more sheep. Even the English word pecuniary, which means having to do with money, comes from the Latin word for cattle.

There was no 30 year mortgage either. People did borrow, and the laws of Hammurabi, written around 1750 BC, set rules for debts. But if you couldn't pay, you didn't get a late fee. You could lose your land. Your kids could be taken to work off the debt. So could you. Land didn't quietly build your wealth the way a house does today. Your animals did.

So when God said to bring your best lamb, the one with no blemish, He wasn't asking for a tip. He was asking for the best thing you owned.

THINK OF IT THIS WAY

Meet Bill. Bill collects cars. His garage has a Lamborghini, two Ferraris, a couple of Porsches, and a Tesla he drives to the grocery store. But his baby is the McLaren. He washes it by hand. Nobody else is allowed to touch it.

Now God shows up and says, "Bill, you sinned. Sin costs something. And I want to see that you love Me more than your stuff. Take the McLaren. Not the Tesla. Not the Porsche with the door ding. The McLaren. Drive it to the edge of the Grand Canyon, set the cruise control, jump out, and watch it go over."

That is what a lamb with no blemish meant. Not your leftovers. Not the sick one. The one that hurts to give up. That's why God was so angry in Malachi 1:8 when people brought blind and lame animals. That's like Bill driving his rusted out riding mower off the cliff and calling it worship.

And here's the catch. Bill has to do it again next year. And the year after that. Every morning and every evening, a lamb went on the altar, because animal blood could never finish the job. Hebrews 10:4 says it straight: it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins.

Then the New Testament shows up. Isaiah 53:7 had already said the Servant would be led like a lamb to the slaughter. In John 1:29, John the Baptist sees Jesus coming and says, "Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!" In 1 Corinthians 5:7, Paul calls Him our Passover lamb. In Hebrews 9:14, He offers Himself to God without blemish. In 1 Peter 1:19, Peter says we were bought with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or spot. Jesus dies at Passover. And Revelation calls Him the Lamb more than 25 times.

THEN GOD TOOK HIS TURN

Remember Abraham? In Genesis 22:2, God told him to take his son, his only son, the son he loved, up a mountain and offer him. Abraham went. At the last second, God stopped him and provided a ram instead.

God never let Abraham go through with it. Roughly two thousand years later, on a hill in that same region, God went through with it Himself.

He didn't send His best lamb. He sent His one and only Son. If a lamb was your McLaren, this was God giving up the one thing He had only one of. John 3:16 says God so loved the world that He gave Him.

And this sacrifice was one and done. Hebrews 10:10 says we are made holy through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ, once for all. No more lambs. No more cliffs. The real Lamb finally showed up, so the previews could stop.

So here's the deal God offers. Romans 6:23 says the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord. A wage is something you earn. A gift is something you accept. Ephesians 2:8 to 9 says you are saved by grace through faith, not by your own works, so nobody gets to brag.

You can't pay for this one. You don't own a car nice enough. All that's left to do is say yes.

One lamb is a coincidence. A lamb from Genesis to Revelation is a pattern. That's a foreshadow. It's never spelled out in black and white, but it repeats until it's hard to miss.

PROPHECY COLORS

Lime Green: Jesus Fulfilled It. A prophecy about the Messiah that Jesus fulfilled. Isaiah 53:3 calls Him a man of sorrows, and Mark 14:33 to 34 shows it in Gethsemane. Written centuries early, with details. Try getting your weatherman to do that for next Tuesday.

Pastel Green: The Trailer. A foreshadow of Jesus, like the Passover lamb. It's the movie trailer. You don't get the whole plot, but when the movie comes out, you go, "Oh, that's what that was."

Orange: Called It. A prophecy about something besides the Messiah, fulfilled later inside the Bible. A king, a city, a nation. God called it, it happened, and the Bible kept the receipts.

Pastel Orange: History Rhymes. A foreshadow about something besides the Messiah. A pattern that shows up early and repeats later. History rhymes, and God writes the rhymes.

Purple: The Historians Agree. A prophecy that was fulfilled outside the Bible, in recorded history. The people who wrote it down usually weren't trying to help us out, which makes it even better.

Pastel Purple: Between the Testaments. A prophecy fulfilled in the books between the Testaments, mostly 1 and 2 Maccabees. Spoiler: Antiochus does not get a happy ending.

Blue: Not Yet. The end times, still waiting to be fulfilled, like Philippians 2:10 to 11 where every knee will bow. This is the only color where you're still waiting. Keep your lamp trimmed.

REFERENCE COLORS

Pink: The Heart. Motives, intentions, and what you did with what you knew, like Romans 10:9 to 10, believe in your heart. God doesn't grade on outfits or church attendance. He reads the heart. This is the color that will convict you at 2 a.m.

Sand: Dig It. Archaeology, something real that was dug up. Romans 16:23 names Erastus, and a stone in Corinth names an Erastus too. Many think it's the same man. Hard to call the Bible a fairy tale when a shovel keeps finding its people.

Teal: The Supernatural. Miracles, angels and things that break physics, like 1 Peter 1:12, things even angels long to look into. Walking on water, a talking donkey, angels with swords. If you think the Bible is boring, you haven't hit Teal yet.

Gray: The Dark Side. Demons, deliverance, idols, witchcraft, the occult, giants and curses. The page chip says DEMONIC. Romans 11:4 remembers the people who refused to bow to Baal. Yes, your horoscope app is in this category. We color it so you know what you're looking at, not so you can try it at home.

Yellow: The Greatest Hits. Famous passages and favorite sermon texts, like Philippians 4:11 to 13, the secret of being content. If your pastor has preached it three times this year, it's probably Yellow.

NOT COLORS, BUT STILL IMPORTANT

Red letters: God talking. God, Jesus or the Messiah speaking, and God's words when anyone quotes Him, already printed for you. When the red starts, put the phone down.

Red underline: The family tree. A name in the family line of Jesus. It includes a prostitute, a foreigner, an adulterer and a few men who really should have known better. God works with what He's got. That should encourage you.

[Square brackets]: Timeout corner. Words missing from the oldest copies. We didn't delete them. We just put them in the timeout corner so you can decide.

***Italics*: Jesus Quoting His Bible.** When the New Testament quotes the Old Testament, the quoted words are printed in italics, like Matthew 4:4 quoting Deuteronomy 8:3. The Old Testament verse it came from is in italics too. Italics mean the actual words are quoted, or very close. When the New Testament only refers to an Old Testament story without quoting it, like Jude 5 pointing back to Numbers 14, there are no italics, just a note that says ALLUDES TO. Italics are not a color, so they can sit right on top of one. A prophecy that Jesus quotes stays lime green and turns italic. Jesus didn't have chapter and verse numbers. Those came over a thousand years later. He just knew it.

There is no color for "verses Nate likes." Every colored verse earned its spot, and its note tells you why.

Study Note Colors

The highlights tell you what a verse is about. The study notes have colors too, so you know what kind of note you're about to read before you read a word.

The longer notes sit in a shaded box right after the verse they explain. That means the Big Questions, the Field Notes and the From History boxes. Each box has a light background color. These colors are not the highlight colors, and they mean different things. You don't need to memorize them. The table is here when you want it.

Box color	What the note is about	For example
Red	Christians or scholars disagree. Every side gets its best case.	The rapture, speaking in tongues, who wrote a book, how big the Flood was
Green	Prophecy, and anything about Jesus: what He did and who He is	How a prophecy came true, who Jesus says He is
Blue	Background: customs, places, people and how things worked	Why a book has so many names, how the temple worked
Gray	Demons, idols, the occult and spiritual warfare	False gods like Baal, evil spirits, curses
Yellow	Life lessons: how to live it out	Prayer, faith in hard times, how to treat people
Purple	From History: the exact words of ancient writers outside the Bible	Josephus on James, the brother of Jesus, a Roman governor's letter about Christians

Sand	Field Notes: a real find you can go and see, with a photo	The Cyrus Cylinder, the Pilate Stone

Red wins. If a note fits two colors and people disagree about it, the box is red. Think of red as a warning light, not a stop sign. It means slow down: good Christians land in different places here, and you'll see every view laid out fairly. A red box also has a small DEBATED tag at the top, so you can spot it even in a black and white copy.

The biggest finds get a whole page. A few Field Notes are so important that they get a full page of their own, with a bigger photo and more of the story.

The Rules of the Road

Some verses fit two categories. A real highlighter can only do one color, so we made rules. Here they are.

1. **One verse, one color.** No stripes, no rainbows. If you are highlighting your own copy, this keeps it readable. Italics don't count as a color, so an Old Testament quote can be italic and still wear its one color.
2. **Prophecy always wins.** If a verse is a prophecy and something else, it gets the prophecy color. Fulfilled predictions are the strongest thing in this Bible, so they get top billing.
3. **After prophecy, the order is Pink, Sand, Teal, Gray, then Yellow.** The color higher on the list wins. One small exception: Sand beats a prophecy that is not about the Messiah, so a few archaeology verses keep their Sand color.
4. **Nothing gets lost.** When a verse loses a tie, its note says so. A split note reads something like "This verse also belongs in Teal" and tells you why.
5. **We tell you how sure we are.** Notes on prophecies and finds carry a rating. HIGH means the evidence is strong. MEDIUM means it is a good case but people disagree. LOW means only some Christians read it that way. We would rather be honest than impressive.

Red Letters

Most red letter Bibles only print Jesus in red, and only in the New Testament. That always bugged me. God was talking long before Matthew.

So in this Bible, red letters run through both testaments.

Label	Where	What it means
GOD SPEAKING	Old Testament	God's own words, like Genesis 1:3, "Let there be light."
JESUS SPEAKING	New Testament	The words of Jesus, the classic red letters.
MESSIAH SPEAKING	Old Testament	The coming Messiah talking before He was born, like the Servant in Isaiah 49, 50 and 61. A note marks where it starts.

Anyone quoting God counts. When a prophet, Moses, a king, the people or the writer of the book repeats what God actually said, God's words turn red. The speaker's own words stay black. In 1 Chronicles 22:8, David tells Solomon what God told him: "You have shed much blood." Those are God's words, so they're red. David's words around them stay black.

What turns red:

- God speaking, in either testament, including the Father's voice from heaven.
- Jesus speaking.
- The Messiah speaking in the Old Testament.

- The angel of Yahweh and the Commander of Yahweh's army. Some think he was an angel God sent, and others think he was God Himself. A note gives both views.
- Anyone quoting what God actually said: a prophet passing on His message, Moses retelling it, a king or the people repeating His promise, or the writer quoting His law.
- God's lines inside a song, a poem or a vision, like "Do not touch My anointed ones!" in 1 Chronicles 16:22. Only His lines turn red, not the whole poem.
- God speaking to an angel, like "Enough! Withdraw your hand now!" in 2 Samuel 24:16.

What stays black:

- The messenger's words, like "This is what Yahweh says" and "declares Yahweh." That's the prophet talking, not God.
- A prophet's own words after God's message ends.
- A verse that only tells you God or an angel spoke, without quoting the words.
- Anyone claiming God said something the Bible never records, false prophets, lying spirits and the dead. When Samuel speaks at Endor in 1 Samuel 28, it stays black.

Red letters are already printed. If you have the blank edition, you never need to mark them.

Brackets and Footnotes

In this Bible, square brackets mean one thing: these words are not in the oldest copies.

Watch out if you came from another Bible. Some study Bibles use brackets for extra explanation. Others use them for cross references. Ours don't. If you see [brackets] in the Bible text, it means the earliest handwritten copies we have do not include those words.

Why keep them at all? Because many Christians grew up with these verses, and some of them have been read in church for over a thousand years. Cutting them would hide the question. Brackets show you the question and let you decide.

You'll see brackets around a few famous passages, like the ending of Mark and the woman caught in adultery in John 8. A TEXT note explains what the oldest copies say. We never say "the best manuscripts" or tell you what to think. We just tell you what is there.

Smaller differences between copies don't get brackets. They get a short TEXT note under the verse instead.

If brackets ever mean something different in a special spot, a note right there will tell you.

Try It: The Prophecy You Probably Skipped

Let's walk through one together. Turn to Isaiah 53.

Most people read right past this chapter. It sounds like old poetry about somebody sad. Now look at the page. Verse after verse is lime green. That means prophecy about the Messiah.

Step 1. Read the verse. Isaiah 53:3 says He was despised and rejected, a man of sorrows, familiar with grief.

Step 2. Read the note under it. The note names where this was fulfilled, with short references like Mk 14:33.

Step 3. Follow it. Turn to Mark 14:33 to 34. Jesus is in the garden of Gethsemane, deeply distressed, telling His friends His soul is overwhelmed with sorrow. That verse is lime green too. Its note says FULFILLS and points back to Isaiah 53.

Step 4. Do it again. Isaiah 53:7 says He was led like a lamb and did not open His mouth. Its note sends you to 1 Peter 2:23, where Peter says Jesus did not threaten back when He suffered.

Here's the part that should give you chills. Isaiah lived about 700 years before Jesus. And we are not just trusting that date. A complete copy of Isaiah, the Great Isaiah Scroll, was found with the Dead Sea Scrolls. It was copied around 125 BC. Isaiah 53 is in it, written down before Jesus was born.

That is how every prophecy in this Bible works. The prophecy points forward. The fulfillment points back. You can walk it in either direction.

Try It: Jesus Quoting His Bible

Jesus quoted the Old Testament all the time. Most readers never notice, because nothing in a normal Bible tells them. In this one, italics tell them.

Turn to Matthew 4. Jesus has gone 40 days without food, and the devil shows up to tempt Him three times. Jesus answers all three with Scripture.

1. "Man shall not live on bread alone." That's Deuteronomy 8:3.
2. "Do not put the Lord your God to the test." That's Deuteronomy 6:16.
3. "Worship the Lord your God and serve Him only." That's Deuteronomy 6:13.

Each answer is printed in italics, and so is the verse in Deuteronomy it came from. Flip back and read them in their home chapters. Moses was talking to Israel after 40 years in the wilderness, where they failed the same tests. Jesus walks into His own wilderness and passes every one. You only see that if you know He is quoting.

Now try Matthew 27:46. On the cross Jesus cries, "My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?" That's Psalm 22:1. This verse is italic, because Jesus is quoting. It is also lime green, because Psalm 22 does not just get quoted. It describes the crucifixion, and the rest of the psalm keeps lining up, right down to the soldiers gambling for His clothes in verse 18.

One verse, two signals: the color says prophecy, and the italics say quote. So when you see italics, ask one question. Where did this come from? Then go read the original. It usually changes what the verse means.

Everything Else You'll Run Into

Colors are the big thing, but they're not the only thing. Here's the rest of the toolbox.

Feature	Where you'll find it	What it does
Testament Introductions	Before Genesis and before Matthew	The big picture of each testament, plus why we say Yahweh
Book Introductions	The first pages of every book	Who wrote it, when, what was going wrong, and the cool stuff to watch for
Chapter Summaries	Top of every chapter	A short, funny recap so you know where you are
Field Notes	A sand colored box right after the verse it explains. The biggest finds get a full page.	A real find, with a photo. Every page tells you WHAT IT IS, HOW OLD IT IS, and any honest debate about it.
The Big Question	A colored box right after the passage	The questions readers ask, like tongues, the rapture or baptism. When Christians disagree, the box is red, and every view gets its best case and its key verses. We don't pick a winner for you.

From History	A purple box right after the verse it backs up	The exact words of ancient writers outside the Bible, like Josephus or Tacitus, and then what they tell us
Notes	Under highlighted verses	Why the verse is colored, where a prophecy was fulfilled, and what the oldest copies say

The Big Questions matter most to me. Good Christians land in different places on some things. You deserve to see every side laid out fairly, then make up your own mind. That's what a Berean does.

The Highlighting Guides

This Bible comes two ways. The highlighted edition has every color already printed. The blank edition leaves the colors to you. Either way, the two free guides are your map.

The two guides are free PDFs at bibletechsupport.com:

- **The Complete Prophecy Database.** More than 1,000 prophecies, each with its color, where it was fulfilled, and how sure we are.
- **The Bible Reference Index.** About 2,000 more highlights: The Heart, archaeology, miracles, the demonic, the Old Testament quoted in the New, and notable passages.

Each guide opens with the full color legend, the rules, and a breakdown of every category. Every row is shaded in its own color, so you can match your highlighter to the page. When a verse fits two categories, a split note sits right under it and tells you which color wins.

HIGHLIGHTING YOUR OWN COPY

1. **Get the right highlighters.** Bible paper is thin, and wet highlighters bleed through. Use dry or gel highlighters made for Bibles.
2. **Test first.** Try each color on a blank page in the back before you touch Genesis.
3. **Go one book at a time.** Open the guide to that book, work top to bottom, and check off what you finish.
4. **Do prophecy first.** Prophecy wins every tie, so color those verses before anything else. Then follow the guide for the rest.
5. **One verse, one color.** If the guide gives a verse a split note, use the color it says wins.
6. **Using another Bible? Quotes get Dark Green.** TOM already prints Old Testament quotes in italics, so you can skip them here. If you are using the guides in another Bible, mark quotes with a dark green highlighter and a light touch. If the verse is in red letters, underline it in green instead, so it doesn't end up looking like a Christmas ornament.
7. **Underline, don't highlight, the family line of Jesus.** Use a thin red pen under the name only.

What you never have to do: red letters, italics and brackets are already printed. Your job is just the colors.

Take your time. Highlighting the whole Bible is a project, not a weekend. But by the end, you will know your way around this book better than most people who've owned one for 30 years.

Your Turn

In 2 Timothy 2:15, Paul told Timothy, "Be diligent... rightly dividing the word of truth." That's the whole point of this Bible. Not to make you a scholar. To make you a workman who knows how to use his tools.

You now know the tools. Colors mean something. Red letters mean God is talking. Brackets mean not in the oldest copies. Notes point forward and back. Every claim we make, you can check.

And please do check. In Acts 17:11, the Bereans heard the apostle Paul preach and then went home to see if he was right. Luke calls them noble for it. If they could fact check Paul, you can fact check me.

Every change we made to the Bible text is listed in our change log. Scan the QR code on the copyright page to see it. Find a mistake? Tell us at bibletechsupport.com. We'll fix it and thank you.

Now close this manual and open the book it was written for. Start anywhere. Genesis is a good beginning, John is a great one. Just start.

BOOKS 1 TO 39 · 39 BOOKS · WRITTEN IN HEBREW

THE OLD TESTAMENT

The promise made

BOOKS	39 books: 5 books of Moses, 12 books of history, 5 books of poetry and wisdom, and 17 books of prophecy.
WRITTEN	Over about a thousand years, from the time of Moses to the prophet Malachi around 430 BC, by the traditional count.
LANGUAGE	Mostly Hebrew. A few chapters of Ezra and Daniel and one verse of Jeremiah are in Aramaic, a sister language.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	The Dead Sea Scrolls, found from 1947 to 1956, hold pieces of every Old Testament book except Esther. They are about a thousand years older than the copies scholars had before.
EARLIEST MANUSCRIPT	Two tiny silver scrolls from Ketef Hinnom in Jerusalem, from about 600 BC. They hold the priestly blessing from Numbers 6:24 to 26, Yahweh bless you and keep you, and they spell out God's name YHWH.
THE LIST OF 39	Jesus called these Scriptures the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms in Luke 24:44. Jewish Bibles have the same books but count them as 24 by grouping some together.

What Does Testament Mean

Testament is an old word for covenant, a binding promise. The Old Testament is the story of God's covenants: with Noah, with Abraham, with Israel at Mount Sinai and with King David. Each one moves the story forward, and each one points to the new covenant Jesus would bring.

One Big Story

Thirty nine books look like a library, but they tell one story. God makes a good world, and people break it. God picks one family, Abraham's, to bring the fix. He rescues them from Egypt, gives them His law and a land, and sends prophet after prophet every time they wander off. The Old Testament ends with the people waiting for the Messiah. The New Testament opens with His arrival.

Not in Time Order

English Bibles group the books by type, not by date. Job may be one of the oldest stories in the Bible, and many of the prophets lived during the events in Kings and Chronicles. When a prophet's book confuses you, look up which king was on the throne. The last three pages of this Introduction explain the order and show every book on a timeline.

How It Is Organized

THE LAW	**Genesis to Deuteronomy.** The five books of Moses: creation, the fathers of Israel, the escape from Egypt and the law.
HISTORY	**Joshua to Esther.** Israel enters the land, gets kings, splits in two, goes into exile and comes home.
POETRY AND WISDOM	**Job to Song of Solomon.** Songs, prayers and wise sayings for real life.
MAJOR PROPHETS	**Isaiah to Daniel.** Five longer books. Major means long, not more important.

MINOR PROPHETS **Hosea to Malachi.** Twelve shorter books. Minor means short, not less important.

Why We Say Yahweh

God told Moses His personal name in Exodus 3:15. In Hebrew it is spelled YHWH, and it shows up about 6,800 times in the Old Testament. Out of respect, Jewish readers stopped saying it out loud and said Lord instead, so most English Bibles print LORD in capital letters. The Owner's Manual puts His name back. Where you see Yahweh, the Hebrew says YHWH. Where you see Lord, the Hebrew usually says Adonai, which means master. Where you see God, the Hebrew usually says Elohim, the mighty Creator.

How This Bible Marks the Old Testament

PROPHECY. Prophecies are highlighted in green, orange, purple or blue, depending on how they came true. The note at the bottom of the column tells you where.
QUOTED IN THE NEW. When the New Testament quotes an Old Testament verse, that verse is printed in italics, and the note tells you where it is quoted. When the New Testament only points back to a verse without quoting it, the verse gets a note but no italics.
GOD SPEAKING. Words spoken by God are printed in red. Only the words He actually said are red.
THE FAMILY LINE. Names in the bloodline of Jesus are underlined in red, from Adam and Eve all the way to Judah and Perez.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS



Cave 4 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea, where most of the scroll pieces were found.

FOUND BY A SHEPHERD
In late 1946 or early 1947 a young Bedouin shepherd named Muhammed edh Dhib was looking for a lost goat near the Dead Sea. He threw a rock into a cave, heard pottery break and found clay jars holding ancient scrolls. From 1947 to 1956 searchers found scrolls in eleven caves near a place called Qumran.

WHAT WAS FOUND
Pieces of about 900 scrolls, many broken into tens of thousands of fragments. About 230 of them are books of the Bible, and every Old Testament book shows up except Esther. The rest are Bible commentaries, community rules and other religious writings, including 1 Enoch.

HOW OLD THEY ARE
The scrolls were copied from about 250 BC to AD 68, the year the Romans destroyed the settlement at Qumran. Scholars dated them by handwriting, radiocarbon tests and coins found at the site.

THE GREAT ISAIAH SCROLL
One scroll holds all 66 chapters of Isaiah. It is about 24 feet long and was copied around 125 BC. Before 1947 the oldest complete Hebrew copies of Isaiah were from about AD 900 to 1000. This scroll is about 1,000 years older, and when scholars compared them the words were nearly identical. Most differences are spelling and small slips of the pen, and none of them change a major teaching of the faith.

WHERE ARE THE VOWELS
Hebrew was written with consonants only. Readers knew the vowel sounds by heart, the way you can read txt msgs. Jewish scribes called the Masoretes added written vowel marks between about AD 600 and 1000. So the scrolls have no vowel marks, but the letters match.

BUT WASN'T THE BIBLE CHANGED?
Skeptics often say the Bible was changed over and over until it no longer says what it first said. The Dead Sea Scrolls let us test that claim, and copies made before Jesus was born read almost the same as the Hebrew Bible we use today. To be fair, some scrolls show small differences, and a few books like Jeremiah existed in a shorter and a longer form. But the big picture is clear: the text was copied with amazing care.

ISAIAH 53 BEFORE JESUS
The Isaiah Scroll includes Isaiah 53, the chapter about a Servant who is pierced for our sins. It was copied more than a hundred years before Jesus was born, so no one can say Christians wrote it after the fact.

WHERE THEY ARE TODAY
Most are kept by the Israel Antiquities Authority. The Great Isaiah Scroll is in the Shrine of the Book at the Israel Museum in Jerusalem, a building shaped like the lids of the jars the scrolls were found in. In 1954 four of the scrolls were offered for sale in a Wall Street Journal ad, and Israel quietly bought them for $250,000.

FIELD NOTES · MANUSCRIPTS · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE MASORETIC TEXT



The Aleppo Codex open to the Ten Commandments in Deuteronomy, photographed by Joseph Segall around 1910. These pages went missing after 1947, so this old photo is now the only way to see them. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS
The Masoretic Text is the standard Hebrew text of the Old Testament. Jewish Bibles use it today, and so do almost all English Old Testaments, including this one. The name comes from the Hebrew word masorah, which means tradition, the things handed down.

ONE TEXT BEFORE THEM
The Masoretes did not stitch the Bible together. The letters were already settled long before them. By about AD 100, Jewish scribes copied one standard set of letters that scholars call the proto Masoretic text. Many of the Dead Sea Scrolls, and the scrolls found at Masada, already match it.

WHO THE MASORETES WERE
Families of Jewish scribes and scholars who worked from about AD 600 to 1000, mostly in Tiberias, on the Sea of Galilee, and also in Babylonia and Jerusalem.

THE VOWELS
Hebrew was written with consonants only. So the Masoretes added tiny dots and lines above, below and inside the letters to show the vowel sounds. They did not change a single letter. The system from Tiberias, called the Tiberian system, won out and is still used today.

THE ACCENTS
They also added accent marks that show how to chant each verse in the synagogue, which word gets the stress, and where to pause. They work a lot like our commas and periods.

THE NOTES
In the margins, and at the end of each book, they wrote notes called the masorah. They counted the letters, words and verses of each book and marked the middle of the Torah, so a copy could be checked like a bank count. When the written word looked odd, they did not fix it. They left the letters alone and wrote in the margin how to read it.

BEN ASHER
The most famous Masorete was Aaron ben Asher of Tiberias, in the early 900s, the last of a family of Masoretes. A rival named Ben Naphtali disagreed with him in about 875 small places, mostly accent marks. Ben Asher's version won. In the 1100s, the great Jewish teacher Maimonides used a Ben Asher codex, a book with pages instead of a scroll, as his model.

THE ALEPPO CODEX
Copied about AD 920 to 930. A note in the book says Ben Asher himself added its vowels and notes. It was kept in a synagogue in Aleppo, Syria, for about 600 years. In 1947, rioters set the synagogue on fire, and about 40 percent of it, including most of the Torah, went missing. What survived was brought to Israel in 1958 and is kept at the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

FIELD NOTES · MANUSCRIPTS · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

FROM THE MASORETES TO YOUR BIBLE



A decorated page from the Leningrad Codex, AD 1008. The words in the center star name the scribe, Samuel ben Jacob. Public domain.

THE LENINGRAD CODEX
Copied in Cairo in AD 1008 by a scribe named Samuel ben Jacob, from Ben Asher copies. It is the oldest complete Hebrew Bible in the world. It is kept at the National Library of Russia in Saint Petersburg, a city once called Leningrad.

1488
The first complete printed Hebrew Bible came off the press in Soncino, Italy.

1524 TO 1525
The Second Rabbinic Bible, printed by Daniel Bomberg in Venice and edited by Jacob ben Hayyim. It was the Hebrew behind the King James Old Testament of 1611 and the standard printed text for about 400 years.

1906
Rudolf Kittel, a German scholar, published Biblia Hebraica, still based on the Bomberg text.

1937
The third edition of Biblia Hebraica switched to the Leningrad Codex, a copy hundreds of years older than the manuscripts behind Bomberg.

1967 TO 1977
Biblia Hebraica Stuttgartensia, the edition most scholars and translators use today. Its footnotes list differences found in other old copies and old translations, and fixes scholars have suggested.

2004 TO TODAY
Biblia Hebraica Quinta, still being finished one book at a time. It adds what scholars learned from the Dead Sea Scrolls.

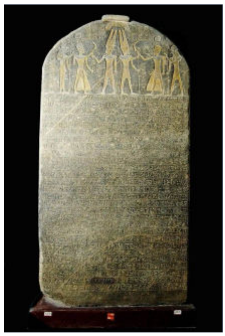
NEW FINDS, SAME TEXT
When older copies like the Dead Sea Scrolls turned up, scholars did not rewrite the Masoretic Text. They printed better and older copies of it and listed the differences in footnotes, so translators can see every reading and decide.

WHY IT MATTERS
The Hebrew you are reading in translation was guarded by scribes who counted letters for a living. Copies made a thousand years apart, like the great Isaiah scroll from the Dead Sea caves and the Leningrad Codex, say almost exactly the same thing. That is not luck. That is care.

THIS BIBLE'S BASE TEXT
The Old Testament in The Owner's Manual is translated from the Masoretic Text, mainly as it is kept in the Leningrad Codex. Once in a while, like most modern Bibles, it follows the Dead Sea Scrolls, the Greek Septuagint or another old copy where the Hebrew seems to have a copying slip. When it does, a TEXT note tells you.

HOW THIS BIBLE WORKS · DATING THE BOOKS · CONFIDENCE: HONEST

WHY DO SOME BOOKS HAVE TWO DATES?



The Merneptah Stele, carved in Egypt about 1208 BC, now in the Egyptian Museum, Cairo. It is the oldest mention of Israel outside the Bible that most scholars accept, already a people living in Canaan. Clues like this help pin down the dates.

TWO DATES, ONE BOOK
In the introduction to almost every Old Testament book, you will see two dates. The first is the traditional date. The second is the date many critical scholars give, and it is usually later. This page explains where each one comes from, so nothing surprises you.

WHAT CRITICAL MEANS
Just like textual criticism, critical does not mean mean. It means judging carefully. Critical scholars study the Bible the way they would study any old book. Some are believers and some are not.

HOW THIS BIBLE DATES A BOOK
First, what the book says about itself. Isaiah 1:1 names the four kings Isaiah served under. Second, what the rest of the Bible says. Jesus called the first five books the Law of Moses, Luke 24:44, and called Daniel a prophet, Matthew 24:15. Third, old Jewish tradition, which tells who wrote or gathered each book. Fourth, history and archaeology, to check all of it.

THE ANCHORS
Some dates are nailed down by records from other nations. An Assyrian monument called the Black Obelisk shows King Jehu of Israel paying tribute around 841 BC. The Assyrian king Sennacherib attacked Judah in 701 BC. Babylonian records say Nebuchadnezzar captured Jerusalem in 597 BC. Counting back from anchors like these, 1 Kings 6:1 puts the Exodus around 1446 BC. Many scholars prefer the 1200s BC, and some doubt it happened the way it is told, so the book intros give both.

WHY CRITICS DATE LATER: 1, NO PREDICTIONS
This is the biggest reason. Some scholars start with a rule that nobody can really predict the future. But there are other reasons too. Isaiah 40 to 66 talks to people who are already in Babylon, as if Jerusalem has already fallen. Isaiah names King Cyrus about 150 years early, Isaiah 44:28 to 45:1, so many date those chapters to Cyrus's time, around 540 BC. Daniel 11 tells the story of the Greek king Antiochus in great detail, right up to about 165 BC. Then, critics say, the details about his death in verses 40 to 45 no longer match what happened. So they date Daniel to the 160s BC.

2, THE FOUR SOURCES IDEA
In 1878, a German scholar named Julius Wellhausen made famous the idea that Genesis to Deuteronomy was stitched together from four later writings, nicknamed J, E, D and P, and finished around 500 BC, about 900 years after Moses. Today many scholars have dropped the neat four part version, but most still date the final form late.

3, DETAILS THAT SOUND LATER
Genesis 14:14 mentions the city of Dan, but that city got its name later, Judges 18:29. Genesis 36:31 talks about kings before Israel had a king. Deuteronomy 34 tells about Moses' own death and burial.

4, THE LANGUAGE
Hebrew changed over time, the way English did. Ecclesiastes uses later Hebrew and at least one Persian word. Daniel uses Greek words for three musical instruments, Daniel 3:5.

5, THE DIGGING SO FAR
Many archaeologists say they have not found clear signs of Israel's time in the wilderness or of some cities in Joshua being destroyed when the Bible says.

THE TRADITIONAL ANSWERS



The smaller Ketef Hinnom silver scroll, about 600 BC, unrolled. It holds a short form of the priestly blessing from Numbers 6:24 to 26 and the name YHWH. Public domain.

FAIR IS FAIR

Each of those five reasons has an answer, and Christian scholars have given them for a long time. Here they are, in the same order.

THE ANSWER TO 1

If God knows the future, prediction is not a problem. It is the point. God says He declares the end from the beginning, Isaiah 46:9 to 10. For many critics, the no predictions rule is a starting belief, not something anyone discovered. And Jesus Himself called Daniel a prophet.

THE ANSWER TO 2

Moses could have used older family records. Genesis is divided by the words This is the account of, which may mark older sources. Even the scholars who hold the four sources idea cannot agree on how to divide it. And the silver scrolls from Ketef Hinnom, about 600 BC, already have a short form of the priestly blessing from Numbers 6:24 to 26. Many critics put that passage in their latest source. They answer that the blessing was older than the book it ended up in. Still, it shows this part of the Law was in use before the exile.

THE ANSWER TO 3

Later scribes updated old place names so readers would know where things were, the same way we might say the Pilgrims landed in the United States, though there was no United States yet. Old Jewish tradition says Joshua wrote the last verses of Deuteronomy, about Moses' death.

THE ANSWER TO 4

Scribes updated spelling and words over the centuries, like the King James Bible was updated in 1769. Greek words for instruments could travel with traders long before Greece ruled the world. Greek soldiers and traders were already in the Near East in Daniel's day. Critics answer that one of those words shows up in Greek only much later.

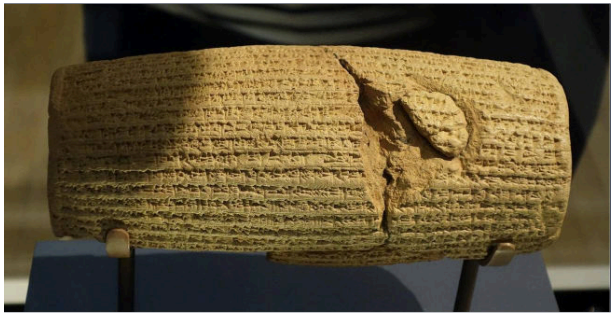
THE ANSWER TO 5

Not finding something yet is not proof it never happened. People living in tents in the desert leave very little behind. And some finds point the other way. The Merneptah Stele on the first page of this section shows Israel already living in Canaan by about 1208 BC.

SO WHO IS RIGHT

On the small things, like an updated place name, both sides can be partly right. On the big thing, it comes down to one question: can God tell the future? If He can, there is no reason to push the dates later. This Bible believes He can, and the hundreds of fulfilled prophecies highlighted on these pages are the evidence.

THE BIG DATES SIDE BY SIDE



The Cyrus Cylinder, about 539 BC, now in the British Museum. Isaiah names Cyrus in Isaiah 44:28 and 45:1. That name is one of the main reasons many scholars date the end of Isaiah later.

GENESIS TO DEUTERONOMY
Traditional: Moses, about 1440 to 1400 BC, or the 1200s BC with the later Exodus date. Critical: finished around 500 BC. Why: the four sources idea and later sounding details.

JOSHUA TO KINGS
Traditional: written over time by prophets, with Kings finished during the exile in Babylon. Critical: mostly put together around 620 to 560 BC. Both sides agree Kings was finished after 562 BC, because its last verses happen that year, 2 Kings 25:27.

JOB
Traditional: the story is set in Abraham's time, and some say Moses wrote it down. Critical: about 600 to 400 BC. Why: the language and the big questions it asks.

PSALMS
Both sides agree it was collected over hundreds of years. Traditional: many by David, around 1000 BC, with some much later, like Psalm 137 from the exile. Critical: many of David's psalms were written later in his name.

ECCLESIASTES
Traditional: Solomon, about 950 to 930 BC. Critical: about 450 to 250 BC. Why: later Hebrew and a Persian word.

ISAIAH
Traditional: Isaiah, about 740 to 680 BC. Critical: chapters 40 to 66 around 540 BC or later, by followers sometimes called Second Isaiah. Why: Cyrus is named. The New Testament quotes both halves as Isaiah, John 12:38 to 41.

DANIEL
Traditional: Daniel, in the 500s BC. Critical: around 167 to 164 BC. Why: the detailed prophecies about Antiochus in chapter 11. See When Was Daniel Written? in Daniel.

JONAH
Traditional: Jonah lived around 793 to 753 BC, and many Christians believe he wrote it. Critical: written later, maybe 500 to 300 BC. Why: the language and the style of the story.

THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS SETTLE THE EDGE
No matter which date you pick, every Old Testament book except Esther was found in the Dead Sea Scrolls, and many of those copies were made before Jesus was born. So the prophecies about Jesus were written down before He came. Even the latest date for Daniel is still more than 150 years before Jesus.

THIS BIBLE'S RULE
Every book intro gives the traditional date first, then the critical view in one honest line. When the date really matters, like Daniel, there is a Big Question page that lays out both sides.

WHAT EVERYONE AGREES ON
These books are ancient. They were copied with great care. And the Old Testament we read today is the same one Jesus read and quoted.

HOW THE BOOKS ARE ARRANGED

WHY THE BOOKS ARE NOT IN TIME ORDER

SORTED LIKE A LIBRARY
A library puts books on shelves by type, not by the year they were written. The Old Testament does the same. It has five shelves: the Law, History, Poetry and Wisdom, the Major Prophets and the Minor Prophets. The books on each shelf are mostly in time order, but the shelves overlap each other.

MAJOR AND MINOR
The only difference is length. Isaiah has 66 chapters, and Obadiah has one. Around AD 420 Augustine wrote that the short ones are called minor because their books are short, not because they matter less. A minor prophet still spoke for God.

THE TWELVE
In Jewish Bibles the twelve minor prophets are one book, called The Twelve, because all of them fit on one scroll.

WHY A PERFECT ORDER IS IMPOSSIBLE
Many books happen at the same time. Kings and Chronicles tell the same years twice. Isaiah, Hosea, Amos and Micah all preached during the years of 2 Kings 14 to 20. Jeremiah watched Jerusalem fall in 2 Kings 25. Ezra, Nehemiah, Haggai, Zechariah and Malachi all belong to the return from Babylon. The Psalms were written over hundreds of years. And some books never tell us when they happened, like Job and Joel. So no list can put every book in one perfect line. The next two pages show where they overlap.

THE TANAKH
The Jewish Bible is called the Tanakh. The name is built from the first letters of its three parts: T for Torah (teaching or instruction, usually called the Law); N for Nevi'im (prophets); and K for Ketuvim (writings). The vowels are added so you can say it.

SAME BOOKS, DIFFERENT COUNT
The Tanakh has the same books as our Old Testament, but it counts 24, not 39. Samuel, Kings and Chronicles are one book each, Ezra and Nehemiah are one book, and The Twelve is one book. Daniel sits with the Writings, not the Prophets. And most Jewish Bibles end with Chronicles, where King Cyrus tells the Jews they can go home and rebuild the temple.

TORAH (THE LAW), 5 BOOKS
Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy.

NEVI'IM (THE PROPHETS), 8 BOOKS
Joshua, Judges, Samuel, Kings, Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel, The Twelve. The first four are called the Former Prophets, because Jews believed prophets wrote Israel's history.

KETUVIM (THE WRITINGS), 11 BOOKS
Psalms, Proverbs, Job, Song of Songs, Ruth, Lamentations, Ecclesiastes, Esther, Daniel, Ezra and Nehemiah, Chronicles.

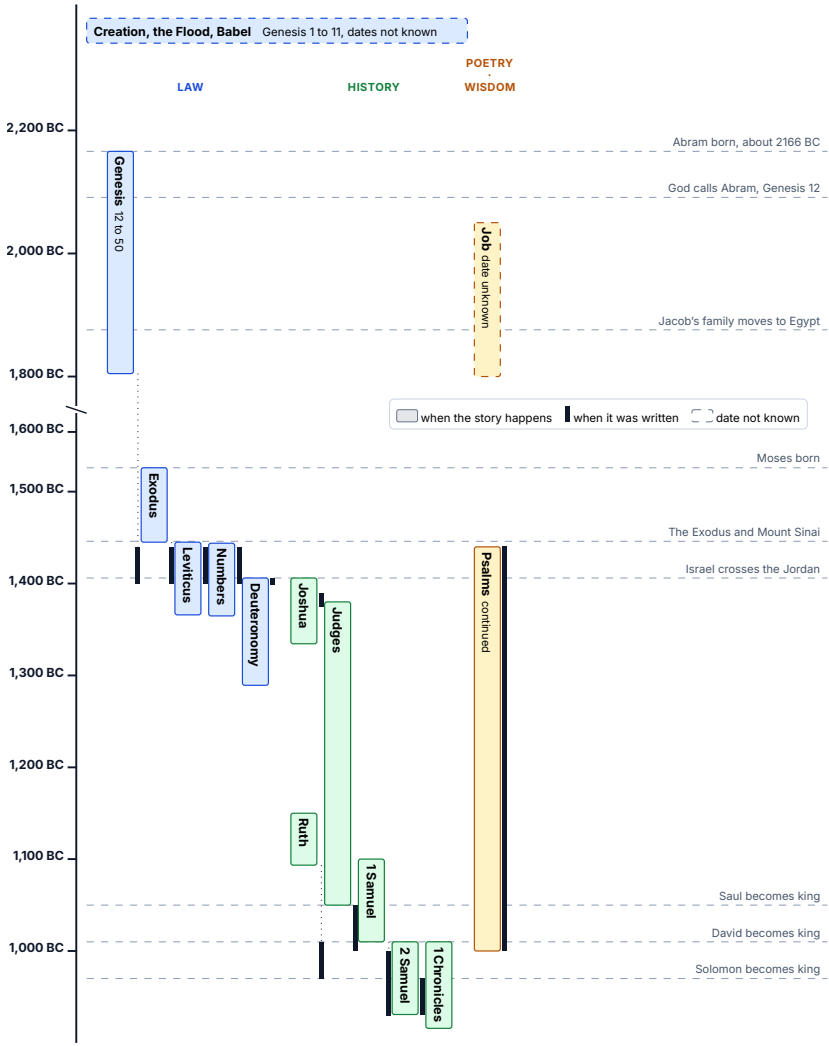
JESUS KNEW THE THREE PARTS
Jesus named the three parts in Luke 24:44: the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms, usually the first book of the Writings. In Matthew 23:35 He spoke of the blood of the prophets from Abel to Zechariah. Abel is killed in Genesis, and a Zechariah is stoned in 2 Chronicles 24:20 to 21. Many scholars think Jesus meant from the first page to the last page of His Bible.

WHY OURS ENDS WITH MALACHI
Our order comes from the old Latin Bible, which put the prophets last and ended them with Malachi. Catholic Bibles add 1 and 2 Maccabees after it. So our Old Testament closes with Malachi's promise that God will send Elijah before the great day of the Lord, Malachi 4:5. Turn the page, and Matthew opens with John the Baptist, who came in the spirit of Elijah, Luke 1:17.

TIMELINE · PAGE 1 OF 2

The Old Testament in Time Order

From creation to King David



HOW TO READ IT Time runs down the page, oldest at the top. A colored bar shows when a book's story happens. The thin dark bar beside it shows when the book was written, by the traditional dates this Bible uses.

WHY CREATION HAS NO DATE The Bible does not give a year for creation, and its family trees may skip generations. Older Bibles printed 4004 BC, Archbishop Ussher's 1650 guess.

JOB Job's story fits the days of the patriarchs, but no one knows when it happened or when it was written.

EARLY OR LATE? These pages use the early date for the Exodus, about 1446 BC, from 1 Kings 6:1. Many scholars date it in the 1200s BC. See Why Do Some Books Have Two Dates? in this Introduction.

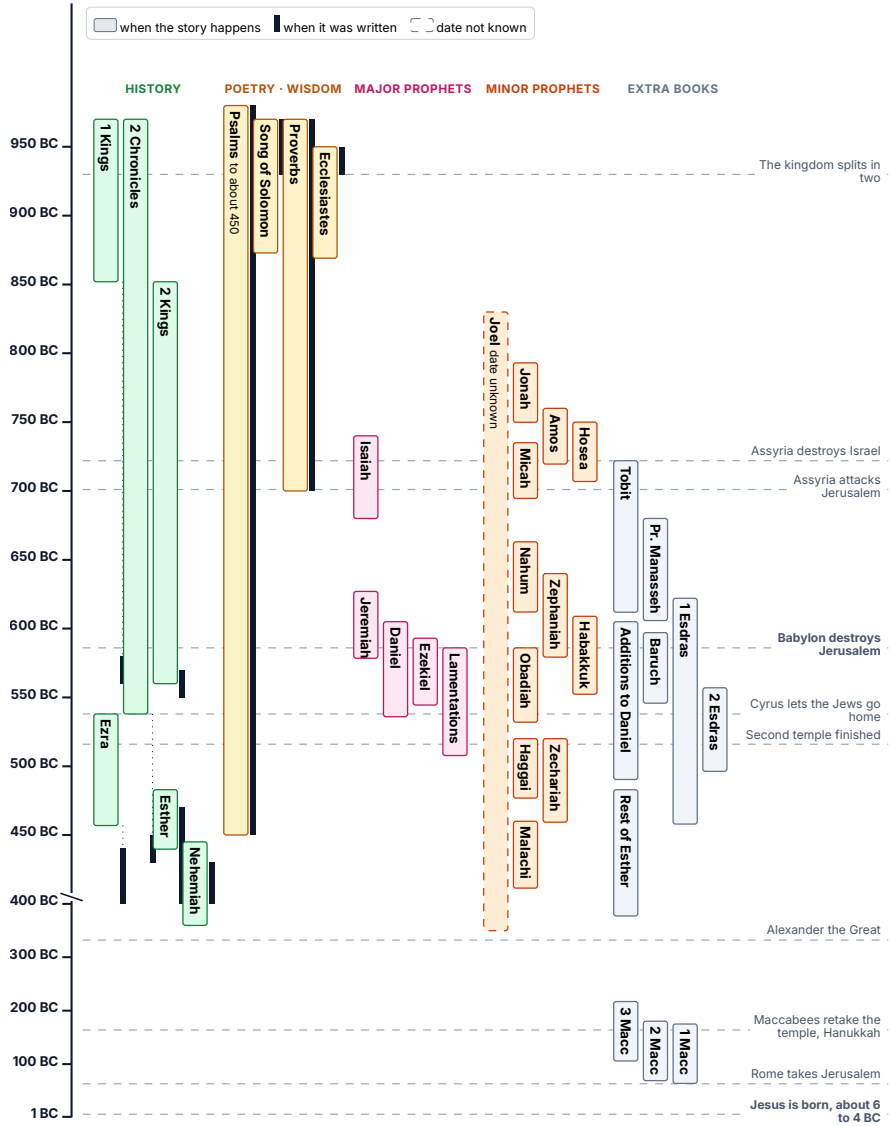
CHRONICLES 1 Chronicles retells David's years, with family trees back to Adam. It was written much later, about 450 BC, so its dark bar is on the next page.

Dates are approximate. The second page runs from Solomon to Malachi and the extra books.

TIMELINE · PAGE 2 OF 2

The Old Testament in Time Order

From King Solomon to Malachi, and the 400 quiet years



THE PROPHETS LIVED IN KINGS Most of the prophets preached during the years told in 1 and 2 Kings. Isaiah, Hosea, Amos and Micah all spoke while Assyria was rising. Jeremiah watched Jerusalem fall.

JOEL AND OBADIAH Neither book names a king. Joel has been dated anywhere from about 830 to 350 BC. Most date Obadiah soon after 586 BC; some say about 845 BC.

PROPHETS WROTE AS THEY PREACHED For the prophets, the book was written in the same years as its story, so they have no separate dark bar.

THE EXTRA BOOKS Gray bars show where the stories of the extra books are set. Judith is left off because its story does not fit any real time. See About the Apocrypha, right after Malachi.

Dates are approximate. Below the zigzag the scale is squeezed, because the Old Testament books end about 430 BC.

BOOK 1 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · BOOKS OF MOSES

GENESIS

In the beginning, God

AUTHOR	Moses, according to Jewish and Christian tradition. Jesus called these books the Law of Moses Luke 24:44. Many modern scholars think Genesis was put together from older sources over time.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From the creation of the world to the death of Joseph in Egypt. Abraham lived about 2000 BC, give or take a couple hundred years.
DATE WRITTEN	Traditionally about 1440 to 1400 BC, while Israel wandered in the wilderness. Many scholars say it reached its final form much later, around 500 BC.
WRITTEN TO	The people of Israel, freed from Egypt and headed for the Promised Land. Genesis tells them who God is, who they are and why they are going there.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	About twenty copies of Genesis were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. It was also translated into Greek, in the Septuagint, around 250 BC.
KEY VERSE	Genesis 12:3. All the families of the earth will be blessed through you.



ONE OF THE OLDEST PIECES OF GENESIS
This fragment is called 4QGen g, which means Genesis copy g from Cave 4 at Qumran. It was found with the Dead Sea Scrolls and holds parts of Genesis 1:1 to 2:7, the creation story. Experts date it by its handwriting to somewhere between about 150 and 37 BC. 4Q1, a copy of Genesis and Exodus from about 125 to 100 BC, may be a little older. But this one gives us the very first page of the Bible, copied over a hundred years before Jesus was born. It is kept in Jerusalem.

Historical Setting

Genesis covers more time than the rest of the Bible put together. Chapters 1 to 11 happen before any history book was written. Chapters 12 to 50 happen in the world of the first great civilizations. In Mesopotamia, which is modern Iraq, cities like Ur had temples, schools and writing. In Egypt the great pyramids were already hundreds of years old when Abraham visited. Canaan, the land God promised, sat between those two superpowers.

What Was Going Wrong

SIN BREAKS IN. Adam and Eve believe the serpent instead of God, and death enters the world 3:6.
VIOLENCE EVERYWHERE. By Noah's day the earth was filled with violence, and every thought was evil 6:5, 6:11.
PRIDE AT BABEL. People tried to make a name for themselves instead of honoring God 11:4.
LIES TO SAVE THEIR SKIN. Abraham and Isaac both lied about their wives, and Jacob lied to his blind father 12:13, 26:7, 27:19.
FAVORITE CHILDREN. Isaac loved Esau, Rebekah loved Jacob, Jacob loved Joseph most, and it tore the family apart 25:28, 37:3.
IDOLS IN THE HOUSE. Rachel stole her father's household gods, and Jacob's family had to bury their idols 31:19, 35:2 to 4.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Genesis means beginnings. It tells how everything started: the world, people, marriage, sin, death, nations and languages. It also tells how God started fixing what went wrong. After the flood and the tower of Babel, God picks one man, Abraham, and promises that through his family He will bless the whole world. The rest of the book follows that family for four generations: Abraham, Isaac, Jacob and Joseph. They lie, fight, scheme and play favorites, and God keeps His promise anyway. The book ends with the family safe in Egypt, waiting for God to bring them home.

Genesis at a Glance: Four Events and Four Men

CH 1 to 2	**CREATION** God makes everything and calls it very good.
CH 3 to 5	**THE FALL** Sin breaks in, and death follows.
CH 6 to 9	**THE FLOOD** God judges the world and saves Noah's family.
CH 10 to 11	**BABEL** People try to reach heaven without God.
CH 12 to 25	**ABRAHAM** God picks one man to bless the whole world.
CH 25 to 26	**ISAAC** The promise passes to the son of laughter.
CH 27 to 36	**JACOB** The trickster becomes Israel.
CH 37 to 50	**JOSEPH** From the pit to the palace, to save many lives.

Where Jesus Shows Up

GENESIS 3:15 The Son of the woman crushes the serpent's head. See Galatians 4:4.

GENESIS 12:3 Every family on earth blessed through Abraham, the gospel told ahead of time, Galatians 3:8.

GENESIS 14:18 Melchizedek, king and priest of God Most High, a picture of Jesus. See Hebrews 7.

GENESIS 22:8 God Himself will provide the lamb. Compare John 1:29.

GENESIS 28:12 The stairway between heaven and earth. Jesus says He is that stairway, John 1:51.

GENESIS 49:10 The scepter will not depart from Judah. Jesus is the Lion of Judah, Revelation 5:5.

GOD'S NAMES IN GENESIS
Genesis opens with Elohim, printed God, the mighty Creator, and from 2:4 on Yahweh God. New names follow: God Most High 14:18, the God who sees me 16:13, God Almighty 17:1, the Everlasting God 21:33 and Yahweh Will Provide 22:14.

What to Watch for in Genesis

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (19)	3:15, 9:26-27, 12:3, 12:7, 14:18, 17:19, 18:18 and 5 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (16)	2:2-3, 3:21, 4:10, 4:25, 5:24, 7:1, 7:23 and 9 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (36)	6:13, 6:17, 7:17-22, 9:25, 12:1-2, 15:5, 15:13-16 and 34 more
THE HEART (2)	6:5, 8:21
ARCHAEOLOGY (7)	5:18-23, 8:4, 11:31, 14:1, 16:2, 23:10, 46:6
MIRACLES (28)	1:1, 1:3, 1:31, 2:7, 2:21-22, 3:24, 7:11-12 and 23 more
DEMONIC (13)	3:1-5, 3:17, 6:1-4, 14:5, 15:20, 30:27, 31:19 and 6 more
NOTABLE (7)	1:2, 1:29, 4:14, 16:15, 21:9, 21:11, 21:13-14 and 2 more
GOD SPEAKING (165 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (855 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE FIRST REAL ESTATE CLOSING
In chapter 23 Abraham buys a burial cave for about 10 pounds of silver, with witnesses at the city gate. It is the first land deal in the Bible. Tradition says the Cave of the Patriarchs in Hebron marks the spot.

THE FIRST GOSPEL
Bible teachers call Genesis 3:15 the first gospel. Just minutes after the first sin, God promises a Son of the woman who will crush the serpent.

THE YOUNGER BROTHER WINS
Abel over Cain, Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau, Joseph over his brothers, Ephraim over Manasseh. God keeps picking the one nobody expected.

GOD SAYS NO TO CHILD SACRIFICE
Nations around Abraham sacrificed children to their gods. In Genesis 22 God stops Abraham's hand and provides a ram instead, and His law later calls child sacrifice detestable Leviticus 18:21. The ram in Isaac's place points to Jesus, the Lamb of God.

Did Anybody Listen?

Genesis ends with Joseph in a coffin in Egypt. But he trusted God and made his family promise to carry his bones home. Centuries later Moses did Exodus 13:19, and Joshua buried him at Shechem Joshua 24:32. God keeps His promises, even when it takes centuries.

MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God speaks and things appear: light, sky, land, plants, sun, moon, stars, fish, birds and animals. Then He makes people in His own image, which is the highest compliment anyone has ever been paid. Every day ends with God looking at His work and calling it good. Day six gets an upgrade to very good.

THE CREATION // JOHN 1:1–5; HEBREWS 11:1–3

1 In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

2 Now the earth was formless and void, and darkness was over the surface of the deep. And the Spirit of God was hovering over the surface of the waters.

THE FIRST DAY

3 And God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. 4 And God saw that the light was good, and He separated the light from the darkness. 5 God called the light "day," and the darkness He called "night."

And there was evening, and there was morning—the first day.

THE SECOND DAY

6 And God said, "Let there be an expanse between the waters, to separate the waters from the waters." 7 So God made the expanse and separated the waters beneath it from the waters above. And it was so. 8 God called the expanse "sky."

And there was evening, and there was morning—the second day.

THE THIRD DAY

9 And God said, "Let the waters under the sky be gathered into one place, so that the dry land may appear." And it was so. 10 God called the dry land "earth," and the gathering of waters He called "seas." And God saw that it was good.

11 Then God said, "Let the earth bring forth vegetation: seed-bearing plants and fruit trees, each bearing fruit with seed according to its kind." And it was so. 12 The earth produced vegetation: seed-bearing plants according to their kinds and trees bearing fruit with seed according to their kinds. And God saw that it was good.

13 And there was evening, and there was morning—the third day.

THE FOURTH DAY

14 And God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the sky to distinguish between the day and the night, and let them be signs to mark the seasons and days and years. 15 And let them serve as lights in the expanse of the sky to shine upon the earth." And it was so.

16 God made two great lights: the greater light to rule the day and the lesser light to rule the night. And He made the stars as well.

17 God set these lights in the expanse of the sky to shine upon the earth, 18 to preside over the day and the night, and to separate the light from the darkness. And God saw that it was good.

19 And there was evening, and there was morning—the fourth day.

THE FIFTH DAY

20 And God said, "Let the waters teem with living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth in the open expanse of the sky." 21 So God created the great sea creatures and every living thing that moves, with which the waters teemed according to their kinds, and every winged bird after its kind. And God saw that it was good.

22 Then God blessed them and said, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters of the seas, and let birds multiply on the earth."

23 And there was evening, and there was morning—the fifth day.

THE SIXTH DAY

24 And God said, "Let the earth bring forth living creatures according to their kinds:

- **GEN 1:1 [MIRACLE]** God creates the heavens and the earth
- **GEN 1:2 [NOTABLE]** Was the earth formless from the start, or did it become formless after something went wrong? This verse is the center of the Gap Theory and the debate over how old the earth is. See Was or Became?, the Big Question page facing this verse in The Owner's Manual, p.47.
- **GEN 1:3 [MIRACLE]** God speaks and light appears
- **GEN 1:3 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2CO 4:6 p.1851
- **GEN 1:5 [NOTE]** DAY. How long were the days? See How Long Were the Days?
- **GEN 1:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:5 p.2033

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WAS OR BECAME?

The Gap Theory and How Old Everything Is

GENESIS 1:1 TO 2 · ISAIAH 45:18 · JEREMIAH 4:23 · EXODUS 20:11

WHAT 1:2 SAYS

Now the earth was formless and void. The King James says without form, and void. The Hebrew is tohu wa bohu, two rhyming words that mean empty and shapeless. The same pair shows up in Jeremiah 4:23 for a land wrecked by judgment, and again in Isaiah 34:11. Isaiah 45:18 says God did not create the earth to be empty, tohu, but formed it to be lived in.

THE GAP THEORY

Some Christians believe a huge gap of time sits between verse 1 and verse 2. God made a perfect world in 1:1. Then something went wrong, often tied to the fall of Satan, Isaiah 14:12 and Luke 10:18, and the earth became a ruin. In verse 2 God starts over and remakes it in six days. This is also called ruin and restoration.

WHERE IT CAME FROM

An old Jewish teaching in Genesis Rabbah, written about AD 400 to 500, says God made worlds and destroyed them before He made this one. The Scottish preacher Thomas Chalmers taught the gap about 1814, as geologists started saying the earth was very old. G. H. Pember's Earth's Earliest Ages, 1876, the Scofield Reference Bible, 1909, Clarence Larkin and Finis Dake's Annotated Reference Bible, 1963, made it popular with many Bible teachers.

THE CASE FOR IT

The verb in verse 2, hayah, can mean became, as when Lot's wife became a pillar of salt, 19:26. Isaiah 45:18 says God did not make it tohu, so it must have become tohu later. Darkness over the deep sounds like judgment. It makes room for an old earth and its fossils while keeping the six days as normal days.

THE CASE AGAINST IT

In Hebrew, verse 2 starts with and the earth before the verb. That pattern usually describes how things were, not a new event, so almost every Bible says was. Exodus 20:11 says God made the heavens, the earth and everything in them in six days. Tohu can simply mean empty, like the wilderness in Deuteronomy 32:10. The King James word replenish in 1:28 means fill, the same word used for the fish in 1:22, not fill again. Weston Fields wrote against the gap in Unformed and Unfilled, 1976. Most young earth and old earth scholars reject it today.

HOW OLD IS THE EARTH?

Young earth: about 6,000 to 10,000 years. Archbishop Ussher, in 1650, set creation at 4004 BC, and Answers in Genesis teaches a young earth today. Gap theory: the earth is very old, and the six days are recent. Day age and old earth creation: the days are long ages, and the earth is about 4.5 billion years old, as Reasons to Believe teaches. Framework, cosmic temple and evolutionary creation: Genesis is telling who made the world and why, not giving its age, so they accept the science. Scientists date the earth at about 4.5 billion years and the universe at about 13.8 billion. For the days themselves, see How Long Were the Days? after 2:3.

HOW OLD IS MANKIND?

Add up the ages in Genesis 5 and 11, and Adam lived about 4000 BC. The Jewish calendar counts from 3761 BC, so the year that began in fall 2026 is 5787. The Greek Septuagint has bigger numbers and puts Adam about 5500 BC, the date many early church writers used. Others say the family lists skip names, since Matthew 1:8 skips three kings and Luke 3:36 names a Cainan that Genesis 11 does not. William Henry Green, 1890, and B. B. Warfield argued Adam could be older than 4000 BC. Old earth creationists put Adam and Eve tens of thousands of years ago. Scientists date the oldest human fossils, from Jebel Irhoud in Morocco, at about 300,000 years. Some Christians answer that God chose one real couple to be the first people in His image, as John Stott suggested. Joshua Swamidass, 2019, argued an Adam who lived about 6,000 years ago could still be the ancestor of everyone alive today.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

In the beginning, God. He made everything, 1:1. People are made in His image, 1:27. God made every nation from one man, Acts 17:26. Jesus spoke of Adam and Eve as real, Matthew 19:4. And how old the earth is does not change how you are saved, Romans 10:9.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

livestock, land crawlers, and beasts of the earth according to their kinds." And it was so. 25 God made the beasts of the earth according to their kinds, the livestock according to their kinds, and everything that crawls upon the earth according to its kind. And God saw that it was good.

26 Then God said, "Let Us make man in Our image, after Our likeness, to rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the livestock, and over all the earth itself and every creature that crawls upon it."

27 *So God created man in His own image;*
in the image of God He created him;
male and female He created them.

28 God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth and subdue it; rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air and every creature that crawls upon the earth."

29 Then God said, "Behold, I have given you every seed-bearing plant on the face of all the earth, and every tree whose fruit contains seed. They will be yours for food. 30 And to every beast of the earth and every bird of the air and every creature that crawls upon the earth—everything that has the breath of life in it—I have given every green plant for food." And it was so.

31 And God looked upon all that He had made, and indeed, it was very good.

And there was evening, and there was morning—the sixth day.

- **GEN 1:26 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 3:9 p.2005
- **GEN 1:27 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 19:4-5 p.1578
- **GEN 1:27 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 10:6-8 p.1625
- **GEN 1:29 [NOTABLE]** God gives people every seed bearing plant as a gift. Plants feed us, heal us and keep the earth alive, and this verse shows they came from God's hand.
- **GEN 1:31 [MIRACLE]** God sees all He made and it is very good

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Now we zoom in on day six. God forms the man from dust, breathes life into him and plants a garden with exactly one rule: do not eat from that one tree. Adam names every animal, the first job in history, and still has nobody to talk to. So God makes the woman, and Adam writes the first love poem in the Bible.

THE SEVENTH DAY // EXODUS 16:22–30; HEBREWS 4:1–11

1 Thus the heavens and the earth were completed in all their vast array. 2 *And by the seventh day God had finished the work He had been doing; so on that day He rested from all His work.*

3 Then God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because on that day He rested from all the work of creation that He had accomplished.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HOW LONG WERE THE DAYS?

Evening and Morning

GENESIS 1:1 TO 2:4 · EXODUS 20:11 · PSALM 90:4 · 2 PETER 3:8

WHAT GENESIS SAYS

God made the world in six days, each ending with and there was evening, and there was morning, and rested on the seventh, 1:5 to 2:3. The Hebrew word for day, yom, usually means a normal day, but it can also mean a longer time. Genesis 2:4 says in the day that the Lord God made the earth and the heavens, using day for the whole week.

BEFORE THE CHURCH

About AD 40 the Jewish writer Philo of Alexandria said God did not need six days of time; the days show order, not hours (Allegorical Interpretation 1.2).

THE EARLY CHURCH

Christians argued about this long before modern science. About AD 230 Origen asked how there could be evening and morning on the first three days with no sun, and read the days as a teaching picture (First Principles 4.3.1). About AD

- **GEN 2:2 [FORESHADOW]** God rested on the seventh day. This rest points to the rest believers find in Christ → HEB 4:4; HEB 4:9-10 · MEDIUM p.1982
- **GEN 2:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 4:4 p.1982

MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

378 Basil of Caesarea took them as ordinary days of 24 hours. Augustine, in The Literal Meaning of Genesis, about AD 401 to 415, thought God made everything at once, and that the six days show the order of creation, not the length of time.

THE REFORMATION

Luther took Moses literally: six real days, and a world less than 6,000 years old. In 1650 Archbishop James Ussher added up the Bible's ages and dates and set creation in 4004 BC. His dates were printed in the margins of many King James Bibles.

THE SCIENCE QUESTION

Most scientists today date the earth at about 4.5 billion years and the universe at about 13.8 billion. Christians answer that in different ways, shown on the next page.

Young Earth, Old Earth and More

GENESIS 1:1 TO 2:3 · EXODUS 20:9 TO 11 · ROMANS 5:12 · PSALM 19:1

YOUNG EARTH

Six days of 24 hours, about 6,000 to 10,000 years ago. Exodus 20:11 bases the week on them: in six days the Lord made the heavens and the earth. Death came through Adam's sin, Romans 5:12. Whitcomb and Morris's The Genesis Flood, 1961, started the modern movement; Answers in Genesis and its Ark Encounter in Kentucky carry it today.

GAP THEORY

Billions of years fit between 1:1 and 1:2, and God remade the ruined earth in six days. See Was or Became? after 1:24.

DAY AGE

Each day is a long age, in the right order. With the Lord a day is like a thousand years, 2 Peter 3:8. At the 1925 Scopes trial, William Jennings Bryan admitted the days could be ages. Hugh Ross's Reasons to Believe teaches it today.

FRAMEWORK

The days are a literary frame: days 1 to 3 make spaces (light, sky and sea, land) and days 4 to 6 fill them (sun and stars, birds and fish, animals and people). It tells who made everything and why, not how long it took. Arie Noordtzij proposed it in 1924, and Meredith Kline developed it.

COSMIC TEMPLE

John Walton, 2009, says Genesis 1 is about God giving the world its jobs and moving in, like a temple being dedicated, on the seventh day.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God created everything out of nothing. People are made in His image, 1:27. Creation was very good, 1:31. The heavens declare the glory of God, Psalm 19:1.

MAN AND WOMAN IN THE GARDEN

4 This is the account of the heavens and
the earth when they were created, in the
day that Yahweh God made them.
5 Now no shrub of the field had yet ap-
peared on the earth, nor had any plant of
the field sprouted, for Yahweh God had
not yet sent rain upon the earth, and there
was no man to cultivate the ground. 6 But
springs welled up from the earth and wa-
tered the whole surface of the ground.
7 *Then Yahweh God formed man from the dust*
of the ground and breathed the breath of life
into his nostrils, and the man became a living
being.
8 And Yahweh God planted a garden in
Eden, in the east, where He placed the
man He had formed. 9 Out of the ground
Yahweh God gave growth to every tree
that is pleasing to the eye and good for
food. And in the middle of the garden
were the tree of life and the tree of the
knowledge of good and evil.
10 Now a river flowed out of Eden to water
the garden, and from there it branched
into four headwaters:
11 The name of the first river is the Pishon;
it winds through the whole land of Havi-
lah, where there is gold. 12 And the gold of
that land is pure, and bdellium and onyx
are found there.

- **GEN 2:7 [MIRACLE]** God formed man from dust and breathed life into him
- **GEN 2:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 15:45 p.1843
- **GEN 2:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 2:7 p.2084
- **GEN 2:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:14 p.2115

MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

13 The name of the second river is the Gihon; it winds through the whole land of
Cush.
14 The name of the third river is the Tigris;
it runs along the east side of Assyria.
And the fourth river is the Euphrates.
15 Then Yahweh God took the man and placed him in the Garden of Eden to cultivate and keep it.
16 And Yahweh God commanded him, "You may eat freely from every tree of the garden, 17 but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil; for in the day that you eat of it, you will surely die."
18 Yahweh God also said, "It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make for him a suitable helper."
19 And out of the ground Yahweh God formed every beast of the field and every bird of the air, and He brought them to the man to see what he would name each one. And whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name. 20 The man gave names to all the livestock, to the birds of the air, and to every beast of the field. But for Adam no suitable helper was found.
21 So Yahweh God caused the man to fall into a deep sleep, and while he slept, He took one of the man's ribs and closed up the area with flesh. 22 And from the rib that Yahweh God had taken from the man, He made a woman and brought her to him. 23 And the man said:

"This is now bone of my bones
and flesh of my flesh;
she shall be called 'woman,'
for out of man she was taken."

24 *For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife, and they will become one flesh.*
25 And the man and his wife were both naked, and they were not ashamed.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

A talking serpent asks Eve one sneaky question, and the whole world changes. They eat, they hide, and when God asks what happened, Adam blames Eve and Eve blames the snake. It is the first game of hot potato. God pronounces judgment, but He slips in a promise in verse 15: one day a Son of the woman will crush the serpent's head.

THE SERPENT'S DECEPTION // ROMANS 5:12–21

1 Now the serpent was more crafty than any beast of the field that Yahweh God had made. And he said to the woman, "Did God really say, 'You must not eat from any tree in the garden?'"
2 The woman answered the serpent, "We may eat the fruit of the trees of the garden, 3 but about the fruit of the tree in the middle of the garden, God has said, 'You must not eat of it or touch it, or you will die.'"
4 "You will not surely die," the serpent told the woman. 5 "For God knows that in the day you eat of it, your eyes will be opened and you will be like God, knowing good and evil."
6 When the woman saw that the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eyes, and that it was desirable for obtaining wisdom, she took the fruit and ate it. She also gave some to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.
7 And the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked; so they sewed together fig leaves and made coverings for themselves.

GOD ARRAIGNS ADAM AND EVE

8 Then the man and his wife heard the voice of Yahweh God walking in the garden in the breeze of the day, and they hid themselves from the presence of Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.

- **GEN 2:21 [MIRACLE]** Eve formed from Adam's rib
- **GEN 2:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 19:4-5 p.1578
- **GEN 2:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 10:6-8 p.1625
- **GEN 2:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 6:16 p.1828
- **GEN 2:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → EPH 5:31 p.1888

- **GEN 3:1 [DEMONIC]** The serpent deceives Eve in the garden
- **GEN 3:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 12:9 p.2098

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

9 But Yahweh God called out to the man,
"Where are you?"
10 "I heard Your voice in the garden," he
replied, "and I was afraid because I was
naked; so I hid myself."
11 "Who told you that you were naked?"
asked Yahweh God. "Have you eaten from
the tree of which I commanded you not to
eat?"
12 And the man answered, "The woman
whom You gave me, she gave me fruit
from the tree, and I ate it."
13 Then Yahweh God said to the woman,
"What is this you have done?"
"The serpent deceived me," she replied,
"and I ate."

THE FATE OF THE SERPENT

14 So Yahweh God said to the serpent:

"Because you have done this,
cursed are you above all livestock
and every beast of the field!
On your belly will you go,
and dust you will eat,
all the days of your life.
15 And I will put enmity between you and
the woman,
and between your seed and her seed.
He will crush your head,
and you will strike his heel."

THE PUNISHMENT OF MANKIND

16 To the woman He said:

"I will sharply increase your pain in child-
birth;
in pain you will bring forth children.
Your desire will be for your husband,
and he will rule over you."
17 And to Adam He said:

"Because you have listened to the voice
of your wife
and have eaten from the tree
of which I commanded you not to eat,
cursed is the ground because of you;
through toil you will eat of it
all the days of your life.
18 Both thorns and thistles it will yield for
you,
and you will eat the plants of the field.
19 By the sweat of your brow
you will eat your bread,
until you return to the ground—
because out of it were you taken.
For dust you are,
and to dust you shall return."
20 And Adam named his wife Eve, because
she would be the mother of all the living.

THE EXPULSION FROM PARADISE

21 And Yahweh God made garments of skin
for Adam and his wife, and He clothed
them.
22 Then Yahweh God said, "Behold, the
man has become like one of Us, knowing
good and evil. And now, lest he reach out
his hand and take also from the tree of
life, and eat, and live forever..."
23 Therefore Yahweh God banished him
from the Garden of Eden to work the
ground from which he had been taken. 24
So He drove out the man and stationed
cherubim on the east side of the Garden
of Eden, along with a whirling sword of
flame to guard the way to the tree of life.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Cain and Abel bring offerings, God accepts Abel's, and Cain gets jealous enough to commit the first murder. When God asks where Abel is, Cain says, Am I my brother's keeper? That is a bad answer to give the One who already knows. Cain's family builds cities and invents music and metalwork, while Seth's family begins to call on the name of Yahweh.

CAIN AND ABEL // HEBREWS 11:4

1 And Adam had relations with his wife
Eve, and she conceived and gave birth to
Cain.
"With the help of Yahweh I have brought
forth a man," she said.

- **GEN 3:15 [PROPHECY]** The Redeemer would be born of a woman (the seed of the woman) → GAL 4:4-5; MT 1:18 p.1870
- **GEN 3:15 [PROPHECY]** He would crush the head of Satan → HEB 2:14; 1JN 3:8 p.1979
- **GEN 3:17 [DEMONIC]** The ground is cursed because of Adam
- **GEN 3:21 [FORESHADOW]** God covered Adam and Eve with animal skins, a picture of sin covered by sacrifice → HEB 9:22 · MEDIUM p.1990
- **GEN 3:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:14 p.2115
- **GEN 3:24 [MIRACLE]** Cherubim with a flaming sword guard the way to the tree of life

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

2 Later she gave birth to Cain's brother Abel.

Now Abel was a keeper of sheep, while Cain was a tiller of the soil. 3 So in the course of time, Cain brought some of the fruit of the soil as an offering to Yahweh, 4 while Abel brought the best portions of the firstborn of his flock.

And Yahweh looked with favor on Abel and his offering, 5 but He had no regard for Cain and his offering. So Cain became very angry, and his countenance fell.

6 "Why are you angry," said Yahweh to Cain, "and why has your countenance fallen? 7 If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? But if you refuse to do what is right, sin is crouching at your door; it desires you, but you must master it."

8 Then Cain said to his brother Abel, "Let us go out to the field." And while they were in the field, Cain rose up against his brother Abel and killed him.

9 And Yahweh said to Cain, "Where is your brother Abel?"

"I do not know!" he answered. "Am I my brother's keeper?"

10 "What have you done?" replied Yahweh. "The voice of your brother's blood cries out to Me from the ground. 11 Now you are cursed and banished from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand. 12 When you till the ground, it will no longer yield its produce to you. You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth."

13 But Cain said to Yahweh, "My punishment is greater than I can bear. 14 Behold, this day You have driven me from the face of the earth, and from Your face I will be hidden; I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth, and whoever finds me will kill me."

15 "Not so!" replied Yahweh. "If anyone slays Cain, then Cain will be avenged sevenfold." And Yahweh placed a mark on Cain, so that no one who found him would kill him.

16 So Cain went out from the presence of Yahweh and settled in the land of Nod, east of Eden.

THE DESCENDANTS OF CAIN

17 And Cain had relations with his wife, and she conceived and gave birth to Enoch. Then Cain built a city and named it after his son Enoch.

18 Now to Enoch was born Irad, and Irad was the father of Mehujael, and Mehujael was the father of Methusael, and Methusael was the father of Lamech. 19 And Lamech married two women, one named Adah and the other Zillah.

20 Adah gave birth to Jabal; he was the father of those who dwell in tents and raise livestock. 21 And his brother's name was Jubal; he was the father of all who play the harp and flute.

22 And Zillah gave birth to Tubal-cain, a forger of every implement of bronze and iron. And the sister of Tubal-cain was Naamah.

23 Then Lamech said to his wives:

"Adah and Zillah, hear my voice;
wives of Lamech, listen to my speech.
For I have slain a man for wounding me,
a young man for striking me.
24 If Cain is avenged sevenfold,
then Lamech seventy-sevenfold."

SETH AND ENOSH

25 And Adam again had relations with his wife, and she gave birth to a son and named him Seth, saying, "God has

- **GEN 4:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1JN 3:12 p.2043
- **GEN 4:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:11 p.2068
- **GEN 4:8 [TEXT]** The Hebrew text does not say what Cain said. The Samaritan, Greek and Latin versions add the words Let us go out to the field.
- **GEN 4:10 [FORESHADOW]** Abel's blood cries out from the ground. Jesus' blood speaks a better word → HEB 12:24; MT 23:35 · MEDIUM p.1995

- **GEN 4:14 [NOTABLE]** If Adam, Eve and Cain were the only people on earth, who was Cain afraid of? God even puts a mark on Cain so others will not kill him in 4:15, and in 4:17 Cain has a wife and builds a city. Many readers see this as a strong hint that other people were already living outside the garden, maybe even before Adam and Eve. This idea is called the pre Adamite view, and a French scholar named Isaac La Peyrere wrote a book about it in 1655. The traditional answer is that Adam and Eve had many other sons and daughters, 5:4, so the family may already have been large, and Cain married a relative. The Bible does not say for sure, which makes this one of its most famous puzzles.

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

granted me another seed in place of Abel, since Cain killed him."

26 And to Seth also a son was born, and he called him Enosh.

At that time men began to call upon the name of Yahweh.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

The first family tree, and almost every branch ends with the same words: and then he died. Methuselah lives 969 years, the longest life in the Bible, and he still dies. The one exception is Enoch, who walked with God, and then he was gone, because God took him. Enoch went on a walk and never came back, in the best way possible.

THE DESCENDANTS OF ADAM // 1 CHRONICLES 1:1–3

1 This is the book of the generations of Adam. In the day that God created man, He made him in His own likeness. 2 Male and female He created them, and He blessed them. And in the day they were created, He called them "man."

3 When Adam was 130 years old, he had a son in his own likeness, after his own image; and he named him Seth. 4 And after he had become the father of Seth, Adam lived 800 years and had other sons and daughters. 5 So Adam lived a total of 930 years, and then he died.

6 When Seth was 105 years old, he became the father of Enosh. 7 And after he had become the father of Enosh, Seth lived 807 years and had other sons and daughters. 8 So Seth lived a total of 912 years, and then he died.

9 When Enosh was 90 years old, he became the father of Kenan. 10 And after he had become the father of Kenan, Enosh lived 815 years and had other sons and daughters. 11 So Enosh lived a total of 905 years, and then he died.

12 When Kenan was 70 years old, he became the father of Mahalalel. 13 And after he had become the father of Mahalalel, Kenan lived 840 years and had other sons and daughters. 14 So Kenan lived a total of 910 years, and then he died.

15 When Mahalalel was 65 years old, he became the father of Jared. 16 And after he had become the father of Jared, Mahalalel lived 830 years and had other sons and daughters. 17 So Mahalalel lived a total of 895 years, and then he died.

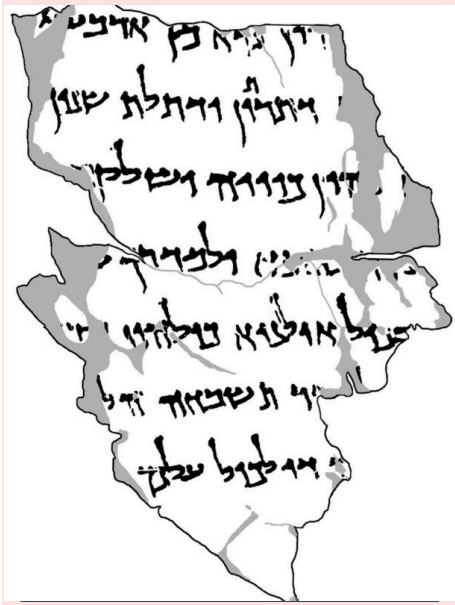
GOD TAKES UP ENOCH // HEBREWS 11:5

18 When Jared was 162 years old, he became the father of Enoch. 19 And after he had become the father of Enoch, Jared lived 800 years and had other sons and daughters. 20 So Jared lived a total of 962 years, and then he died.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SCROLLS, DEBATED FOR ENOCH AS AUTHOR

THE BOOK OF ENOCH IN THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS

GENESIS 5:18 TO 24 · JUDE 14 TO 15 · 1 ENOCH 1:9



A tracing of an Aramaic Enoch fragment from the Dead Sea Scrolls. Black is ink, gray is damage.

GEN 4:25 [FORESHADOW] The promised line would continue through Seth after Abel died → LK 3:38 · MEDIUM p.1654

GEN 5:18 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Pieces of the Book of Enoch were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls → FIELD NOTES p.53

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

WHAT IT IS
A book called 1 Enoch that claims to tell what Enoch saw and said: visions of heaven, angels who sinned before the flood and the judgment to come. Genesis gives Enoch six verses. This book gives him 108 chapters.

HOW OLD IT IS
The scroll copies were made between about 200 BC and the time of Jesus, dated by their handwriting. When the book itself was first written is debated, see below.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Between 1947 and 1956, pieces of more than ten copies were found in the caves at Qumran near the Dead Sea, written in Aramaic. The oldest are from about 200 BC. Before that, the only complete copies were in Ge'ez, the old church language of Ethiopia.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The scroll pieces are kept in Jerusalem. The Ethiopian Orthodox Church still has 1 Enoch in its Bible today.

DID ENOCH WRITE IT
Nobody knows for sure. If Enoch wrote it, Noah would have had to carry a copy onto the ark, and it would have had to be copied again and again for thousands of years until the time of the Dead Sea Scrolls. Most scholars think Jewish writers wrote it much later, between about 300 BC and the time of Jesus, using Enoch's name. Jewish Bibles and most Christian Bibles left it out.

THE BIGGEST ARGUMENT FOR IT
Jude, the brother of Jesus, quotes it almost word for word in Jude 14 to 15: Behold, the Lord is coming with myriads of His holy ones to execute judgment on everyone. That is 1 Enoch 1:9, and Jude says Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied it. Many Christians believe Jude was quoting a true prophecy, even if the whole book is not Scripture.

WHAT ABOUT 2 AND 3 ENOCH
These are different books. 2 Enoch survives in Slavonic copies, the oldest from the 1300s AD, and was probably written around the time of Jesus or later. 3 Enoch is a Hebrew book written by rabbis around AD 400 to 600. Neither one could have been written by Enoch.

21 When Enoch was 65 years old, he became the father of Methuselah. 22 And after he had become the father of Methuselah, Enoch walked with God 300 years and had other sons and daughters. 23 So Enoch lived a total of 365 years.

24 *Enoch walked with God, and then he was no more, because God had taken him away.*

FROM METHUSELAH TO NOAH

25 When Methuselah was 187 years old, he became the father of Lamech. 26 And after he had become the father of Lamech, Methuselah lived 782 years and had other sons and daughters. 27 So Methuselah lived a total of 969 years, and then he died.

28 When Lamech was 182 years old, he had a son. 29 And he named him Noah, saying, "May this one comfort us in the labor and toil of our hands caused by the ground that Yahweh has cursed." 30 And after he had become the father of Noah, Lamech lived 595 years and had other sons and daughters. 31 So Lamech lived a total of 777 years, and then he died.

32 After Noah was 500 years old, he became the father of Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS
The world gets so violent that God is grieved He ever made man. But Noah found favor in the eyes of Yahweh. God hands Noah the plans for a giant boat about one and a half football fields long, with no ocean anywhere nearby. Noah does everything God tells him, which the neighbors probably thought was hilarious.

CORRUPTION ON THE EARTH // MATTHEW 24:36–51

1 Now when men began to multiply on the face of the earth and daughters were born

- **GEN 5:24 [FORESHADOW]** Enoch's bodily translation prefigures Christ's bodily ascension → HEB 11:5; MK 16:19 · MEDIUM p.1992
- **GEN 5:24 [MIRACLE]** Enoch walked with God, then was not — God took him
- **GEN 5:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 11:5 p.1992

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | THE HEART | DEMONIC | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

to them, 2 the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful, and they took as wives whomever they chose.

3 So Yahweh said, "My Spirit will not contend with man forever, for he is mortal; his days shall be 120 years."

4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and afterward as well—when the sons of God had relations with the daughters of men. And they bore them children who became the mighty men of old, men of renown.

5 Then Yahweh saw that the wickedness of man was great upon the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was altogether evil all the time. 6 And Yahweh regretted that He had made man on the earth, and He was grieved in His heart. 7 So Yahweh said, "I will blot out man, whom I have created, from the face of the earth—every man and beast and crawling creature and bird of the air—for I am grieved that I have made them."

NOAH'S FAVOR WITH GOD

8 Noah, however, found favor in the eyes of Yahweh.

9 This is the account of Noah. Noah was a righteous man, blameless in his generation; Noah walked with God. 10 And Noah had three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

11 Now the earth was corrupt in the sight of God, and full of violence. 12 And God looked upon the earth and saw that it was corrupt; for all living creatures on the earth had corrupted their ways.

PREPARING THE ARK // HEBREWS 11:7

13 Then God said to Noah, "The end of all living creatures has come before Me, because through them the earth is full of violence. Now behold, I will destroy both them and the earth.

14 Make for yourself an ark of gopher wood; make rooms in the ark and coat it with pitch inside and out. 15 And this is how you are to build it: The ark is to be 450 feet long, 75 feet wide, and 45 feet high. 16 You are to make a roof for the ark, finish its walls eighteen inches from the top, place a door in the side of the ark, and build lower, middle, and upper decks.

17 And behold, I will bring floodwaters upon the earth to destroy every creature under the heavens that has the breath of life. Everything on the earth will perish. 18 But I will establish My covenant with you, and you will enter the ark—you and your sons and your wife and your sons' wives with you.

19 And you are to bring two of every living creature into the ark—male and female—to keep them alive with you. 20 Two of every kind of bird and animal and crawling creature will come to you to be kept alive. 21 You are also to take for yourself every kind of food that is eaten and gather it as food for yourselves and for the animals."

22 So Noah did everything precisely as God had commanded him.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Noah, his family and the animals climb aboard, and God Himself shuts the door. Then it rains for forty days and forty nights while the springs of the deep burst open. The water covers the highest mountains. Everything outside the ark is gone, and only Noah and those with him survive.

THE GREAT FLOOD // 2 PETER 3:1–7

1 Then Yahweh said to Noah, "Go into the ark, you and all your family, because I have found you righteous in this generation. 2 You are to take with you seven pairs of every kind of clean animal, a male and its mate; a pair of every kind of unclean animal, a male and its mate; 3 and seven

GEN 6:1 [DEMONIC] The Nephilim — sons of God + daughters of men; mighty men of renown
GEN 6:4 [1 ENOCH] The book of 1 Enoch, chapters 6 to 16, tells this story in much more detail: 200 angels called Watchers come down on Mount Hermon, take human wives and father the giants. 1 Enoch is not in most Bibles, but Jude 6 and 2 Peter 2:4 seem to point to it. See the Enoch Field Notes after Genesis 5.
GEN 6:5 [HEART] Before the flood every intention of man's heart was only evil all the time.
GEN 6:13 [PROPHECY] God told Noah a great flood would destroy all life on the earth → GEN 7:17-23 p.56
GEN 6:17 [PROPHECY] God told Noah a great flood would destroy all life on the earth → GEN 7:17-23 p.56
GEN 7:1 [FORESHADOW] Noah's family is saved by going into the ark. The ark pictures salvation through Christ → 1PE 3:20-21 p.2016
GEN 7:1 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 2:5 p.2030

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | ARCHAEOLOGY | MIRACLES | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

pairs of every kind of bird of the air, male and female, to preserve their offspring on the face of all the earth. 4 For seven days from now I will send rain on the earth for forty days and forty nights, and I will wipe from the face of the earth every living thing I have made."

5 And Noah did all that Yahweh had commanded him.

6 Now Noah was 600 years old when the floodwaters came upon the earth. 7 And Noah and his wife, with his sons and their wives, entered the ark to escape the waters of the flood. 8 The clean and unclean animals, the birds, and everything that crawls along the ground 9 came to Noah to enter the ark, two by two, male and female, as God had commanded Noah.

10 And after seven days the floodwaters came upon the earth. 11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, on the seventeenth day of the second month, all the fountains of the great deep burst forth, and the floodgates of the heavens were opened. 12 And the rain fell upon the earth for forty days and forty nights.

13 On that very day Noah entered the ark, along with his sons Shem, Ham, and Japheth, and his wife, and the three wives of his sons— 14 they and every kind of wild animal, livestock, crawling creature, bird, and winged creature. 15 They came to Noah to enter the ark, two by two of every creature with the breath of life. 16 And they entered, the male and female of every living thing, as God had commanded Noah. Then Yahweh shut him in.

17 For forty days the flood kept coming on the earth, and the waters rose and lifted the ark high above the earth. 18 So the waters continued to surge and rise greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the waters. 19 Finally, the waters completely prevailed upon the earth, so that all the high mountains under all the heavens were covered.

- GEN 7:11 [MIRACLE] The fountains of the deep burst and rain falls forty days
- GEN 7:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:6 p.2033
- GEN 7:17 [FULFILLS] God told Noah a great flood would destroy all life on the earth ← GEN 6:13, 17 p.55

20 The waters rose and covered the mountaintops to a depth of 22½ feet. 21 And every living thing that moved upon the earth perished—birds, livestock, animals, every creature that swarms upon the earth, and all mankind. 22 Of all that was on dry land, everything that had the breath of life in its nostrils died. 23 And every living thing on the face of the earth was destroyed—man and livestock, crawling creatures and birds of the air; they were blotted out from the earth, and only Noah and those with him in the ark remained.

24 And the waters prevailed upon the earth for 150 days.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

God remembers Noah. The water slowly goes down, the ark comes to rest on the mountains of Ararat, and Noah starts sending out birds like a very slow weather report. A dove comes back with a fresh olive leaf. After more than a year on board everyone steps out, and the first thing Noah does is build an altar.

THE ARK RESTS ON ARARAT

1 But God remembered Noah and all the animals and livestock that were with him in the ark. And God sent a wind over the earth, and the waters began to subside. 2 The springs of the deep and the floodgates of the heavens were closed, and the rain from the sky was restrained. 3 The waters receded steadily from the earth, and after 150 days the waters had gone down.

4 On the seventeenth day of the seventh month, the ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat. 5 And the waters continued to recede until the tenth month, and on

- GEN 7:19 [NOTE] ALL THE HIGH MOUNTAINS. See Global or Local Flood?
- GEN 7:21 [MIRACLE] Every living thing on land dies except those in the ark
- GEN 7:23 [FORESHADOW] The flood came suddenly and swept away all who were outside the ark. Jesus said His coming will be like this → MT 24:37-39; 2PE 3:6-7 p.1589
- GEN 7:23 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 2:5 p.2030
- GEN 8:1 [MIRACLE] God remembers Noah and the waters go down
- GEN 8:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A boat shaped mound about 18 miles south of Mount Ararat that some believe is the ark → FIELD NOTES p.57

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

the first day of the tenth month the tops of the mountains became visible.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, NOT PROVEN

THE DURUPINAR FORMATION

GENESIS 8:4 · GENESIS 6:14 TO 16



The Durupinar formation from the air, about 18 miles south of Mount Ararat in eastern Turkey.

WHAT IT IS

A huge boat shaped mound of earth and rock on a hillside in eastern Turkey, near the border with Iran. It is about 538 feet long and sits about 18 miles south of the peak of Mount Ararat.

HOW OLD IT IS

No one knows yet. In 2023 a team from Istanbul Technical University and Agri Ibrahim Cecen University said soil samples showed signs of activity from about 5500 to 3000 BC. Those results have not been published for other scientists to check, and news reports gave different numbers, so this date is disputed.

HOW IT WAS FOUND

Heavy rains and earthquakes uncovered its shape in 1948. In 1959 a Turkish army captain named Ilhan Durupinar spotted it in aerial photos, and the site is named after him.

THE HEADLINES

In September 2026 a team from Noah's Ark Scans and Sivas Cumhuriyet University in Turkey began drilling deep into the mound. A drill bit broke on a very hard layer that the team thinks could be petrified wood. Earlier soil tests and radar scans also looked interesting. The team told a British newspaper the mound was 100 percent man made, and headlines everywhere announced that Noah's Ark had been confirmed.

THE REAL STORY

Nothing has been confirmed yet. The team's own press release says the samples still have to be tested in a lab, and those results have not been published. Even the project leader, Andrew Jones, says he believes it is the ark, not that it has been proven.

WHY MANY EXPERTS DOUBT IT

Many geologists, including Christian geologists like Andrew Snelling, say it is a natural fold in the rock that happens to look like a boat. David Fasold, who once helped promote the site, later said he no longer believed it was the ark. The Bible describes the ark as a long box, and this mound is pointed like a ship.

WHAT WOULD SETTLE IT

Genesis 8:4 says the ark rested on the mountains of Ararat. That means the whole mountain region, not just the tallest peak, so this spot is in the right part of the world. If lab tests find real wood, cut planks or fasteners in the shape the Bible describes, it would be one of the biggest finds in history. Until it is dug up and the results are published, we rate it MEDIUM: worth watching, but not proven.

NOAH SENDS A RAVEN AND A DOVE

6 After forty days Noah opened the window he had made in the ark 7 and sent out
a raven. It kept flying back and forth until
the waters had dried up from the earth.
8 Then Noah sent out a dove to see if the
waters had receded from the surface of
the ground. 9 But the dove found no place
to rest her foot, and she returned to him in
the ark, because the waters were still
covering the surface of all the earth. So
he reached out his hand and brought her
back inside the ark.
10 Noah waited seven more days and again
sent out the dove from the ark. 11 And be-
hold, the dove returned to him in the
evening with a freshly plucked olive leaf in
her beak. So Noah knew that the waters
had receded from the earth.

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

12 And Noah waited seven more days and
sent out the dove again, but this time she
did not return to him.

EXITING THE ARK

13 In Noah's six hundred and first year, on
the first day of the first month, the waters
had dried up from the earth. So Noah re-
moved the covering from the ark and saw
that the surface of the ground was dry. 14
By the twenty-seventh day of the second
month, the earth was fully dry.

15 Then God said to Noah, 16 "Come out of
the ark, you and your wife, along with
your sons and their wives. 17 Bring out all
the living creatures that are with
you—birds, livestock, and everything that
crawls upon the ground—so that they can
spread out over the earth and be fruitful
and multiply upon it."

18 So Noah came out, along with his sons
and his wife and his sons' wives. 19 Every
living creature, every creeping thing, and
every bird—everything that moves upon
the earth—came out of the ark, kind by
kind.

NOAH BUILDS AN ALTAR

20 Then Noah built an altar to Yahweh. And
taking from every kind of clean animal
and clean bird, he offered burnt offerings
on the altar. 21 When Yahweh smelled the
pleasing aroma, He said in His heart,
"Never again will I curse the ground be-
cause of man, even though every inclina-
tion of his heart is evil from his youth. And
never again will I destroy all living crea-
tures as I have done.

22 As long as the earth endures,
seedtime and harvest,
cold and heat,
summer and winter,
day and night
shall never cease."

GEN 8:21 [HEART] God says the intent of man's heart is evil from youth.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

God blesses Noah, gives the world a fresh start and promises never again to destroy the earth with a flood. The rainbow is the sign of that promise. Then Noah plants a vineyard, drinks too much and passes out in his tent, proof that even the heroes of the faith need a Savior. The chapter ends with a curse on Canaan and a blessing on Shem.

THE COVENANT OF THE RAINBOW

1 And God blessed Noah and his sons and
said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and
fill the earth. 2 The fear and dread of you
will fall on every living creature on the
earth, every bird of the air, every creature
that crawls on the ground, and all the fish
of the sea. They are delivered into your
hand. 3 Everything that lives and moves
will be food for you; just as I gave you the
green plants, I now give you all things. 4
But you must not eat meat with its
lifeblood still in it. 5 And surely I will require
the life of any man or beast by whose
hand your lifeblood is shed. I will demand
an accounting from anyone who takes the
life of his fellow man:

6 Whoever sheds the blood of man,
by man his blood will be shed;
for in His own image
God has made mankind.
7 But as for you,
be fruitful and multiply;
spread out across the earth
and multiply upon it."

8 Then God said to Noah and his sons with
him, 9 "Behold, I now establish My
covenant with you and your descendants
after you, 10 and with every living creature
that was with you—the birds, the live-
stock, and every beast of the
earth—every living thing that came out of
the ark. 11 And I establish My covenant
with you: Never again will all life be cut off
by the waters of a flood; never again will
there be a flood to destroy the earth."

12 And God said, "This is the sign of the
covenant I am making between Me and
you and every living creature with you, a
covenant for all generations to come: 13 I

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

have set My rainbow in the clouds, and it will be a sign of the covenant between Me and the earth.

14 Whenever I form clouds over the earth and the rainbow appears in the clouds, 15 I will remember My covenant between Me and you and every living creature of every kind. Never again will the waters become a flood to destroy all life. 16 And whenever the rainbow appears in the clouds, I will see it and remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of every kind that is on the earth."

17 So God said to Noah, "This is the sign of the covenant that I have established between Me and every creature on the earth."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

GLOBAL OR LOCAL FLOOD?

How Big Was Noah's Flood?

GENESIS 6 TO 9 · 41:57 · MATTHEW 24:37 TO 39 · 2 PETER 3:5 TO 6

WHAT GENESIS SAYS

The waters covered all the high mountains under all the heavens, by more than 20 feet, 7:19 to 20. Every living thing on the face of the ground died, except those in the ark, 7:23. The ark was about 450 by 75 by 45 feet, 6:15. It came to rest on the mountains of Ararat, a region in what is now Turkey and Armenia, not one peak, 8:4.

A GLOBAL FLOOD

The whole earth was covered. The words all and every are repeated again and again. Jesus compared His coming to the flood that swept them all away, Matthew 24:39, and Peter says the world of that time perished, 2 Peter 3:6. Whitcomb and Morris's The Genesis Flood, 1961, says the flood laid down most of the rock layers and fossils. Most young earth Christians hold this view.

A LOCAL FLOOD

A huge flood covered the world Noah knew, the region of Mesopotamia. The Hebrew word for earth, eretz, often means a land. Genesis uses the same kind of language when it says all the earth came to Egypt to buy grain, 41:57. Under all the heavens can mean as far as anyone could see. Many old earth Christians and Christian scientists hold this view.

A FLOOD OF ALL PEOPLE

Some combine the two: the flood may have covered only one region, but it wiped out all humans, because at that time they all lived there.

THE HARD QUESTIONS

For a global flood: where did all that water go, and how did animals reach places like Australia afterward? Answers given: the mountains rose and the valleys sank, Psalm 104:6 to 9, and the ark carried kinds, not every species. For a local flood: why build an ark instead of just moving away, and why promise no more floods when local floods still happen? Answers given: the ark was a sign and a warning to that world, and the promise is never again to destroy all life, 9:11.

Gilgamesh and Atrahasis

GENESIS 6:5 TO 8 · 8:6 TO 21 · 9:12 TO 16 · 1 PETER 3:20 TO 21

THE GILGAMESH FLOOD

In 1872 George Smith of the British Museum stunned London when he read a clay tablet from the library of Nineveh. In the Epic of Gilgamesh, tablet 11, a man named Utnapishtim is told by a god to build a boat sealed with pitch, take animals aboard, and survive a great flood. The boat lands on a mountain, he sends out a dove, a swallow and a raven, and offers a sacrifice. The older Atrahasis story, about 1700 BC, tells much the same.

THE DIFFERENCES

In the Babylonian stories, many gods send the flood because humans are too noisy, and the gods crowd around the sacrifice like flies, hungry. In Genesis one God grieves over human violence and evil, 6:5 to 6, saves Noah by grace, 6:8, and makes a promise with the rainbow, 9:12 to 16.

WHAT IT MEANS

Some say the Hebrews borrowed the story. Others say all these stories remember the same real event, and Gene-

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

sis tells it truly. Flood stories are found in many cultures around the world.

FLOODS IN THE GROUND

In 1929 Leonard Woolley found a thick layer of flood mud at Ur and thought it was Noah's flood; it turned out to be a local flood. In 1997 William Ryan and Walter Pitman proposed that the Black Sea flooded about 5600 BC; that is still debated. For the ark search on Mount Ararat, see The Durupinar Formation Field Notes page, p.57.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God judges sin, and He saves through the way He provides. Peter says the ark is a picture of baptism, 1 Peter 3:20 to 21. And God has promised never again to destroy all life by a flood, 9:11.

NOAH'S SHAME AND CANAAN'S CURSE

18 The sons of Noah who came out of the
ark were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. And
Ham was the father of Canaan. 19 These
three were the sons of Noah, and from
them the whole earth was populated.

20 Now Noah, a man of the soil, proceeded
to plant a vineyard. 21 But when he drank
some of its wine, he became drunk and
uncovered himself inside his tent. 22 And
Ham, the father of Canaan, saw his
father's nakedness and told his two broth-
ers outside.

23 Then Shem and Japheth took a garment
and placed it across their shoulders, and
walking backward, they covered their
father's nakedness. Their faces were
turned away so that they did not see their
father's nakedness.

24 When Noah awoke from his drunken-
ness and learned what his youngest son
had done to him, 25 he said,

"Cursed be Canaan!
A servant of servants
shall he be to his brothers."

SHEM'S BLESSING AND NOAH'S DEATH

26 He also declared:

"Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Shem!
May Canaan be the servant of Shem.
27 May God expand the territory of
Japheth;
may he dwell in the tents of Shem,
and may Canaan be his servant."

28 After the flood, Noah lived 350 years. 29
So Noah lived a total of 950 years, and
then he died.

GEN 9:25 [PROPHECY] Noah said Canaan would become a servant to his brothers → JOSH 9:23; JUDG 1:28; 1KI 9:20-21 · MEDIUM p.352

GEN 9:25 [DEMONIC] Curse on Canaan through Ham's sin — servant of servants

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The Table of Nations lists about seventy family groups that spread out after the flood. It reads like a phone book, but it is the Bible's map of where everybody came from. Watch for Nimrod, the mighty hunter who built Babel and Nineveh. Both cities cause big trouble later in the story.

THE TABLE OF NATIONS // 1 CHRONICLES 1:4–27

1 This is the account of Noah's sons Shem,
Ham, and Japheth, who also had sons af-
ter the flood.

THE JAPHETHITES

2 The sons of Japheth:

Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal,
Meshech, and Tiras.

3 The sons of Gomer:

Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah.

4 And the sons of Javan:

Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittites, and the Ro-
danites. 5 From these, the maritime peo-
ples separated into their territories, ac-
cording to their languages, by clans within
their nations.

THE HAMITES

6 The sons of Ham:

Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan.

7 The sons of Cush:

Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and
Sabteca.

And the sons of Raamah:

Sheba and Dedan.

8 Cush was the father of Nimrod, who be-
gan to be a mighty one on the earth. 9 He
was a mighty hunter before Yahweh; so it
is said, "Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter be-
fore Yahweh." 10 His kingdom began in

GEN 9:26 [PROPHECY] The God of Shem would become a Son of Shem → LK 3:36 · MEDIUM p.1654

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Babylon, Erech, Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar. 11 From that land he went forth into Assyria, where he built Nineveh, Rehoboth-Ir, Calah, 12 and Resen, which is between Nineveh and the great city of Calah.

13 Mizraim was the father of the Ludites, the Anamites, the Lehabites, the Naphtuhites, 14 the Pathrusites, the Casluhites (from whom the Philistines came), and the Caphtorites.

15 And Canaan was the father of Sidon his firstborn, and of the Hittites, 16 the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites, 17 the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites, 18 the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites.

Later the Canaanite clans were scattered, 19 and the borders of Canaan extended from Sidon toward Gerar as far as Gaza, and then toward Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboiim, as far as Lasha.

20 These are the sons of Ham according to their clans, languages, lands, and nations.

THE SEMITES

21 And sons were also born to Shem, the older brother of Japheth; Shem was the forefather of all the sons of Eber.

22 The sons of Shem:

Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram.

23 The sons of Aram:

Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash.

24 Arphaxad was the father of Shelah, and Shelah was the father of Eber.

25 Two sons were born to Eber: One was named Peleg, because in his days the earth was divided, and his brother was named Joktan.

26 And Joktan was the father of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, 27 Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, 28 Obal, Abimael, Sheba, 29 Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. All these were sons of Joktan. 30 Their territory extended from Mesha to Sephar, in the eastern hill country.

31 These are the sons of Shem, according to their clans, languages, lands, and nations.

32 All these are the clans of Noah's sons, according to their generations and nations. From these the nations of the earth spread out after the flood.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Everybody speaks one language, so they decide to build a tower up to heaven and make a name for themselves. God has to come down just to see it, which is a polite way of saying it was not that tall. He confuses their languages and scatters them. Then the family tree narrows down to one man named Abram and his wife Sarai, who has no children.

THE TOWER OF BABEL // DEUTERONOMY 32:8; ACTS 2:1–13

1 Now the whole world had one language and a common form of speech. 2 And as people journeyed eastward, they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there.

3 And they said to one another, "Come, let us make bricks and bake them thoroughly." So they used brick instead of stone, and tar instead of mortar.

4 "Come," they said, "let us build for ourselves a city with a tower that reaches to the heavens, that we may make a name for ourselves and not be scattered over the face of all the earth."

5 Then Yahweh came down to see the city and the tower that the sons of men were building. 6 And Yahweh said, "If they have begun to do this as one people speaking the same language, then nothing they devise will be beyond them. 7 Come, let Us go down and confuse their language, so that they will not understand one another's speech."

8 So Yahweh scattered them from there over the face of all the earth, and they stopped building the city. 9 That is why it is called Babel, for there Yahweh confused the language of the whole world, and from that place Yahweh scattered them over the face of all the earth.

GEN 11:1 [MIRACLE] Tower of Babel — confusion of languages
GEN 11:7 [FORESHADOW] God confused the languages at Babel and scattered the people → ACTS 2:5-11 · MEDIUM p.1741

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | ARCHAEOLOGY | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

GENEALOGY FROM SHEM TO ABRAM // 1 CHRONICLES 1:17–27

10 This is the account of Shem. Two years
after the flood, when Shem was 100 years
old, he became the father of Arphaxad. 11
And after he had become the father of
Arphaxad, Shem lived 500 years and had
other sons and daughters.

12 When Arphaxad was 35 years old, he
became the father of Shelah. 13 And after
he had become the father of Shelah,
Arphaxad lived 403 years and had other
sons and daughters.

14 When Shelah was 30 years old, he be-
came the father of Eber. 15 And after he
had become the father of Eber, Shelah
lived 403 years and had other sons and
daughters.

16 When Eber was 34 years old, he be-
came the father of Peleg. 17 And after he
had become the father of Peleg, Eber
lived 430 years and had other sons and
daughters.

18 When Peleg was 30 years old, he be-
came the father of Reu. 19 And after he had
become the father of Reu, Peleg lived 209
years and had other sons and daughters.

20 When Reu was 32 years old, he became
the father of Serug. 21 And after he had
become the father of Serug, Reu lived 207
years and had other sons and daughters.

22 When Serug was 30 years old, he be-
came the father of Nahor. 23 And after he
had become the father of Nahor, Serug
lived 200 years and had other sons and
daughters.

24 When Nahor was 29 years old, he be-
came the father of Terah. 25 And after he
had become the father of Terah, Nahor
lived 119 years and had other sons and
daughters.

26 When Terah was 70 years old, he be-
came the father of Abram, Nahor, and Ha-
ran.

TERAH'S DESCENDANTS

27 This is the account of Terah. Terah be-
came the father of Abram, Nahor, and Ha-
ran. And Haran became the father of Lot.
28 During his father Terah's lifetime, Haran
died in his native land, in Ur of the
Chaldeans.

29 And Abram and Nahor took wives for
themselves. Abram's wife was named
Sarai, and Nahor's wife was named
Milcah; she was the daughter of Haran,
who was the father of both Milcah and
Iscah. 30 But Sarai was barren; she had no
children.

31 And Terah took his son Abram, his
grandson Lot son of Haran, and his
daughter-in-law Sarai the wife of Abram,
and they set out from Ur of the Chaldeans
for the land of Canaan. But when they ar-
rived in Haran, they settled there. 32 Terah
lived 205 years, and he died in Haran.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Abram to leave his country, his relatives and his father's house and go to a land He will show him later. No address and no map, just a promise: all the families of the earth will be blessed through you. Abram goes at 75 years old. Then a famine sends him to Egypt, where he tells Pharaoh his wife is his sister, and that does not go well.

THE CALL OF ABRAM // GENESIS 26:1–5; ACTS 7:1–8

1 *Then Yahweh said to Abram, "Leave your*
country, your kindred, and your father's
household, and go to the land I will show you.

2 I will make you into a great nation,
and I will bless you;
I will make your name great,
so that you will be a blessing.
3 *I will bless those who bless you*
and curse those who curse you;
and all the families of the earth
will be blessed through you."

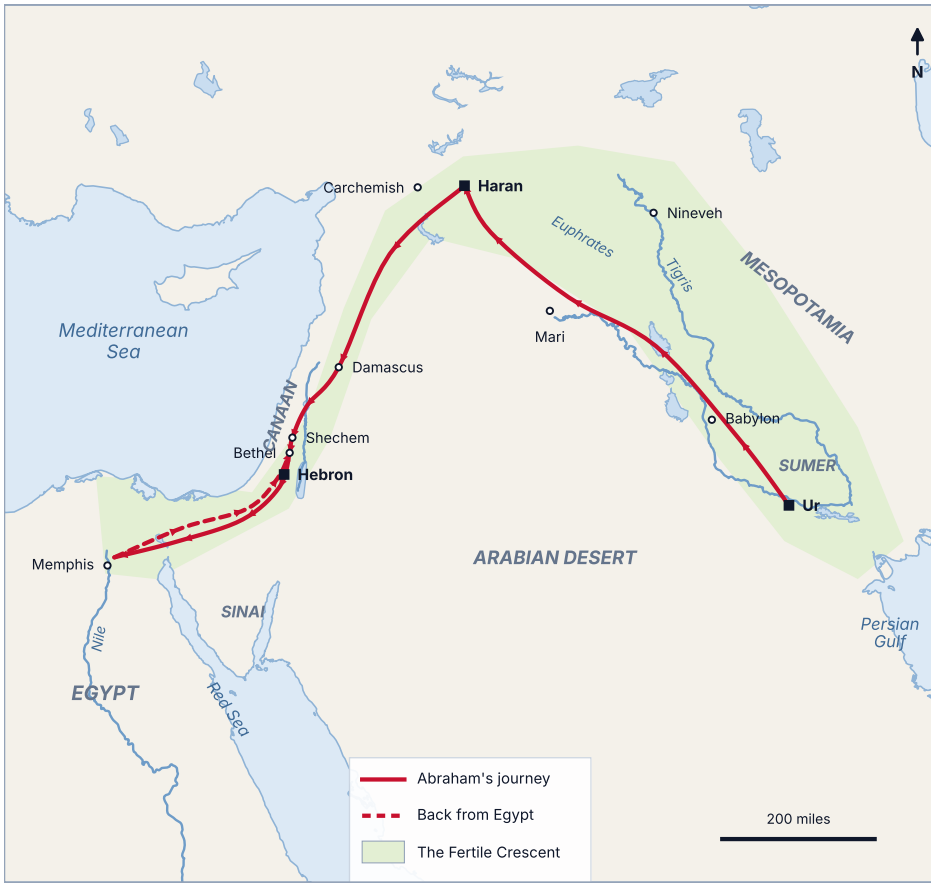
4 So Abram departed, as Yahweh had di-
rected him, and Lot went with him. Abram
was seventy-five years old when he left

- **GEN 11:31 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Excavated 1922-1934 by Leonard Woolley; confirmed sophisticated city in Abraham's era → FIELD NOTES p.65
- **GEN 12:1 [PROPHECY]** God promised Abraham a land, descendants, and that he would father a great nation → GEN 22:17; EX 1:7 p.77
- **GEN 12:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:3 p.1750
- **GEN 12:3 [PROPHECY]** Through Abraham's seed all nations would be blessed → GAL 3:8; ACTS 3:25-26 p.1868
- **GEN 12:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:8 p.1868

MAP · GENESIS 11 TO 13

The World of Abraham

From Ur to the land God promised



FROM UR TO HARAN Abram grew up in Ur. His father Terah moved the family up the Euphrates River to Haran, Genesis 11:31.

INTO CANAAN He camped at Shechem and Bethel and built altars, Genesis 12:6 to 8. Later he settled near Hebron, Genesis 13:18.

THE CALL God called Abram in Ur, Acts 7:2, and again in Haran, Genesis 12:1 to 4. Abram left Haran at 75 years old.

DOWN TO EGYPT A famine sent him to Egypt and back again, Genesis 12:10 to 13:3. In all he walked well over 1,000 miles.

Most scholars place Ur in southern Iraq. A few think Genesis means a northern Ur near Haran. The route is approximate.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Haran. 5 And Abram took his wife Sarai, his nephew Lot, and all the possessions and people they had acquired in Haran, and set out for the land of Canaan.

When they came to the land of Canaan, 6 Abram traveled through the land as far as the site of the Oak of Moreh at Shechem. And at that time the Canaanites were in the land.

7 *Then Yahweh appeared to Abram and said, "I will give this land to your offspring." So Abram built an altar there to Yahweh, who had appeared to him.*

8 From there Abram moved on to the hill country east of Bethel and pitched his tent, with Bethel to the west and Ai to the east. There he built an altar to Yahweh, and he called on the name of Yahweh.

9 And Abram journeyed on toward the Negev.

ABRAM AND SARAI IN EGYPT

10 Now there was a famine in the land. So Abram went down to Egypt to live there for a while because the famine was severe. 11 As he was about to enter Egypt, he said to his wife Sarai, "Look, I know that you are a beautiful woman, 12 and when the Egyptians see you, they will say, 'This is his wife.' Then they will kill me but will let you live. 13 Please say you are my sister, so that I will be treated well for your sake, and on account of you my life will be spared."

14 So when Abram entered Egypt, the Egyptians saw that the woman was very beautiful. 15 When Pharaoh's officials saw Sarai, they commended her to him, and she was taken into the palace of Pharaoh. 16 He treated Abram well on her account, and Abram acquired sheep and cattle, male and female donkeys, menservants and maidservants, and camels.

17 Yahweh, however, afflicted Pharaoh and his household with severe plagues because of Abram's wife Sarai. 18 So Pharaoh summoned Abram and asked, "What have you done to me? Why didn't you tell me she was your wife? 19 Why did you say, 'She is my sister,' so that I took her as my wife? Now then, here is your wife. Take her and go!"

20 Then Pharaoh gave his men orders concerning Abram, and they sent him away with his wife and all his possessions.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Abram and his nephew Lot have so many animals that their herdsmen start fighting. Abram lets Lot choose first, and Lot picks the green valley near Sodom, which is like buying the house next door to a crime scene. Abram takes what is left. Then God tells him to look north, south, east and west, because all of it will belong to his family.

ABRAM AND LOT PART WAYS

1 So Abram went up out of Egypt into the Negev—he and his wife and all his possessions—and Lot was with him. 2 And Abram had become extremely wealthy in livestock and silver and gold.

3 From the Negev he journeyed from place to place toward Bethel, until he came to the place between Bethel and Ai where his tent had formerly been pitched, 4 to the site where he had built the altar. And there Abram called on the name of Yahweh.

5 Now Lot, who was traveling with Abram, also had flocks and herds and tents. 6 But the land was unable to support both of them while they stayed together, for they had so many possessions that they were unable to coexist. 7 And there was discord between the herdsmen of Abram and the herdsmen of Lot. At that time the Canaanites and the Perizzites were also living in the land.

8 So Abram said to Lot, "Please let there be no contention between you and me, or between your herdsmen and my herdsmen. After all, we are kinsmen. 9 Is not the whole land before you? Now separate yourself from me. If you go to the left, I will go to the right; if you go to the right, I will go to the left."

GEN 12:7 [PROPHECY] The promise of land and inheritance given to Abraham's Seed (singular) → GAL 3:16 p.1869
GEN 12:7 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:16 p.1869

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE CITY, MEDIUM FOR THE LINK TO ABRAHAM

UR OF THE CHALDEANS

GENESIS 11:28 TO 31 · GENESIS 15:7 · NEHEMIAH 9:7



The Great Ziggurat of Ur in southern Iraq. The lower levels were rebuilt in the 1980s.

WHAT IT IS

A great city in southern Iraq near the Euphrates River. Its biggest building was a huge stepped temple tower called a ziggurat, built for the moon god Nanna.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived at Ur from before 4000 BC. The Royal Tombs are from about 2600 BC, and the ziggurat was built about 2100 BC by King Ur Nammu. When Abraham lived is disputed, but most guesses fall between 2100 and 1800 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Dug up by the British archaeologist Leonard Woolley from 1922 to 1934.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

The Royal Tombs of Ur, full of gold helmets, jewelry, harps and a box covered in shell and blue stone called the Standard of Ur.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The rebuilt ziggurat still stands near Nasiriyah, Iraq. Many finds are in the British Museum in London and the Penn Museum in Philadelphia.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Ur was a rich, crowded city full of idol worship. That fits Joshua 24:2, which says Abraham's family served other gods beyond the river. God called Abram out of a real place and a real culture.

THE GREAT DEATH PIT

In one royal grave Woolley found 74 bodies, most of them women in fine gold headdresses, laid out in neat rows. Servants seem to have died to serve their ruler after death. A CT scan of two skulls from the royal graves, one from this pit and one from a nearby grave, showed both people were killed by a hard blow to the head.

THE RAM IN A THICKET

Two famous statues of a goat standing up to reach a bush came from the same pit. Woolley named them the Ram in a Thicket, after Genesis 22:13, where Abraham finds a ram caught in a thicket. One is in the British Museum and one is in Philadelphia.

FROM ONE MOON CITY TO ANOTHER

Ur and Haran were the two great cities of the moon god, called Nanna in the old Sumerian language and Sin in the later language of the region. Genesis 11:31 says Terah took his family from Ur to Haran, from one moon city to the other.

WOOLLEY'S FLOOD

Woolley dug deeper and hit a layer of clean mud about 8 feet thick. He thought he had found Noah's Flood. Experts now say it was a big local river flood, since nearby cities flooded at other times.

WHY OF THE CHALDEANS

The Chaldeans lived in southern Iraq from about 900 BC on. The name told later readers which Ur was meant.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing found at Ur names Abraham. Most scholars link Genesis to this Ur, but some think Abraham came from a northern Ur closer to Haran.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

LOT PROCEEDS TOWARD SODOM

10 And Lot looked out and saw that the
whole plain of the Jordan, all the way to
Zoar, was well watered like the garden of
Yahweh, like the land of Egypt. (This was
before Yahweh destroyed Sodom and Go-
morrah.) 11 So Lot chose the whole plain of
the Jordan for himself and set out toward
the east. And Abram and Lot parted com-
pany.

12 Abram lived in the land of Canaan, but
Lot settled in the cities of the plain and
pitched his tent toward Sodom. 13 But the
men of Sodom were wicked, sinning
greatly against Yahweh.

GOD RENEWS THE PROMISE TO ABRAM

14 After Lot had departed, Yahweh said to
Abram, "Now lift up your eyes from the
place where you are, and look to the north
and south and east and west, 15 *for all the
land that you see, I will give to you and your
offspring forever.*
16 I will make your offspring like the dust of
the earth, so that if one could count the
dust of the earth, then your offspring
could be counted. 17 Get up and walk
around the land, through its length and
breadth, for I will give it to you."

18 So Abram moved his tent and went to
live near the Oaks of Mamre at Hebron,
where he built an altar to Yahweh.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Four kings from the east raid Sodom and carry off Lot. Abram gathers 318 trained men and rescues him, which makes him a shepherd with a side job in special forces. Then a mysterious priest king named Melchizedek brings out bread and wine and blesses him. Abram gives him a tenth of everything and refuses to take so much as a thread from the king of Sodom.

THE WAR OF THE KINGS

1 In those days Amraphel king of Shinar,
Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king
of Elam, and Tidal king of Goiim 2 went to
war against Bera king of Sodom, Birsha
king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah,
Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king
of Bela (that is, Zoar).

3 The latter five came as allies to the Val-
ley of Siddim (that is, the Salt Sea). 4 For
twelve years they had been subject to
Chedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year
they rebelled.

5 In the fourteenth year, Chedorlaomer and
the kings allied with him went out and de-
feated the Rephaites in Ashteroth-kar-
naim, the Zuzites in Ham, the Emites in
Shaveh-kiriathaim, 6 and the Horites in the
area of Mount Seir, as far as El-paran,
which is near the desert. 7 Then they
turned back to invade En-mishpat (that is,
Kadesh), and they conquered the whole
territory of the Amalekites, as well as the
Amorites who lived in Hazazon-tamar.

8 Then the king of Sodom, the king of Go-
morrah, the king of Admah, the king of
Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (that is,
Zoar) marched out and arrayed them-
selves for battle in the Valley of Siddim 9
against Chedorlaomer king of Elam, Tidal
king of Goiim, Amraphel king of Shinar,
and Arioch king of Ellasar—four kings
against five.

ABRAM RESCUES LOT

10 Now the Valley of Siddim was full of tar
pits, and as the kings of Sodom and Go-
morrah fled, some men fell into the pits,
but the survivors fled to the hill country.

11 The four kings seized all the goods of
Sodom and Gomorrah and all their food,
and they went on their way. 12 They also
carried off Abram's nephew Lot and his
possessions, since Lot was living in
Sodom.

13 Then an escapee came and reported
this to Abram the Hebrew. Now Abram
was living near the Oaks of Mamre the
Amorite, a brother of Eshcol and Aner, all
of whom were bound by treaty to Abram.
14 And when Abram heard that his relative
had been captured, he mobilized the 318
trained men born in his household, and
they set out in pursuit as far as Dan.

■ **GEN 13:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:16 p.1869
■ **GEN 14:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Names of Mesopotamian kings (Chedorlaomer, Tidal, Arioch) plausibly verified in cuneiform records

■ **GEN 14:5 [DEMONIC]** Kedorlaomer defeats the Rephaim, Zuzim, and Emim

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

15 During the night, Abram divided his
forces and routed Chedorlaomer's army,
pursuing them as far as Hobah, north of
Damascus. 16 He retrieved all the goods,
as well as his relative Lot and his posses-
sions, together with the women and the
rest of the people.

MELCHIZEDEK BLESSES ABRAM // PSALM 110:1–7; HEBREWS 7:1–10

17 After Abram returned from defeating
Chedorlaomer and the kings allied with
him, the king of Sodom went out to meet
him in the Valley of Shaveh (that is, the
King's Valley).

18 Then Melchizedek king of Salem
brought out bread and wine—since he
was priest of God Most High— 19 and he
blessed Abram and said:

"Blessed be Abram by God Most High,
Creator of heaven and earth,
20 and blessed be God Most High,
who has delivered your enemies into
your hand."

Then Abram gave Melchizedek a tenth of
everything.

21 The king of Sodom said to Abram, "Give
me the people, but take the goods for
yourself."

22 But Abram replied to the king of Sodom,
"I have raised my hand to Yahweh God
Most High, Creator of heaven and earth,
23 that I will not accept even a thread, or a
strap of a sandal, or anything that belongs
to you, lest you should say, 'I have made
Abram rich.' 24 I will accept nothing but
what my men have eaten and the share
for the men who went with me—Aner, Es-
hcol, and Mamre. They may take their
portion."

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Abram asks God how he can have a great family when he still has no son. God takes him outside and says, Count the stars. Abram believed Yahweh, and it was credited to him as righteousness, one of the most quoted verses in the New Testament. Then a smoking pot and a flaming torch pass between the cut animals while Abram sleeps. God put the whole promise on Himself.

GOD'S COVENANT WITH ABRAM // ROMANS 4:1–12; HEBREWS 11:8–19

1 After these events, the word of Yahweh
came to Abram in a vision:

"Do not be afraid, Abram.
I am your shield,
your very great reward."

2 But Abram replied, "O Lord Yahweh,
what can You give me, since I remain
childless, and the heir of my house is
Eliezer of Damascus?" 3 Abram continued,
"Behold, You have given me no offspring,
so a servant in my household will be my
heir."

4 Then the word of Yahweh came to
Abram, saying, "This one will not be your
heir, but one who comes from your own
body will be your heir." 5 *And Yahweh took
him outside and said, "Now look to the heav-
ens and count the stars, if you are able." Then
He told him, "So shall your offspring be."*

6 *Abram believed Yahweh, and it was credited
to him as righteousness.*

7 Yahweh also told him, "I am Yahweh,
who brought you out of Ur of the
Chaldeans to give you this land to pos-
sess."

- **GEN 14:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 7:1-2 p.1985
- **GEN 14:18 [PROPHECY]** A priest in the order of Melchizedek → HEB 6:20 p.1985
- **GEN 14:18 [PROPHECY]** King of righteousness and king of peace (Salem) → HEB 7:2 p.1985
- **GEN 14:18 [PROPHECY]** Melchizedek's bread and wine foreshadow the Lord's Supper → MT 26:26-29 · MEDIUM p.1592
- **GEN 14:18 [WHO WAS HE]** Some scholars speculate that Melchizedek was really Jesus, appearing to Abram long before He was born in Bethlehem. Hebrews 7:3 says Melchizedek had no father, no mother and no family line, no beginning of days and no end of life, and was like the Son of God. Others say Genesis simply never names his parents, which makes him a picture of Jesus, our King and Priest forever.

- **GEN 15:5 [PROPHECY]** Abraham's offspring would be as many as the stars → DT 1:10; HEB 11:12 p.284
- **GEN 15:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 4:18 p.1804
- **GEN 15:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 4:3 p.1803
- **GEN 15:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 4:9 p.1803
- **GEN 15:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 4:22 p.1804
- **GEN 15:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:6 p.1868
- **GEN 15:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 2:23 p.2004

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

GOD CONFIRMS HIS PROMISE // NUMBERS 34:1–15; ROMANS 4:13–25

8 But Abram replied, "Lord Yahweh, how
can I know that I will possess it?"
9 And Yahweh said to him, "Bring Me a
heifer, a goat, and a ram, each three years
old, along with a turtledove and a young
pigeon."
10 So Abram brought all these to Him, split
each of them down the middle, and laid
the halves opposite each other. The birds,
however, he did not cut in half. 11 And the
birds of prey descended on the car-
casses, but Abram drove them away. 12 As
the sun was setting, Abram fell into a
deep sleep, and suddenly great terror and
darkness overwhelmed him.
13 *Then Yahweh said to Abram, "Know for cer-*
tain that your descendants will be strangers in
a land that is not their own, and they will be
enslaved and mistreated four hundred years. 14
But I will judge the nation they serve as slaves,
and afterward they will depart with many
possessions. 15 You, however, will go to your
fathers in peace and be buried at a ripe
old age. 16 In the fourth generation your
descendants will return here, for the iniq-
uity of the Amorites is not yet complete."
17 When the sun had set and darkness had
fallen, behold, a smoking firepot and a
flaming torch appeared and passed be-
tween the halves of the carcasses. 18 On
that day Yahweh made a covenant with
Abram, saying, "To your descendants I
have given this land—from the river of
Egypt to the great River Euphrates— 19 the
land of the Kenites, Kenizzites, Kad-
monites, 20 Hittites, Perizzites, Rephaites,
21 Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and
Jebusites."

- **GEN 15:13 [PROPHECY]** God told Abraham his descendants would be enslaved 400 years in a foreign land then leave with great wealth → EX 12:35-41 p.137
- **GEN 15:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:6-7 p.1750
- **GEN 15:15 [PROPHECY]** Abraham would die in peace at a good old age → GEN 25:8 p.81
- **GEN 15:16 [PROPHECY]** The fourth generation would return → JOSH 10:40-42; 11:23 p.357
- **GEN 15:17 [MIRACLE]** A smoking firepot and a flaming torch pass between the pieces
- **GEN 15:18 [PROPHECY]** The land from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates would belong to Abraham's descendants → 1KI 4:21; 2CH 9:26 p.549
- **GEN 15:20 [DEMONIC]** The Rephaim listed among the peoples of Canaan

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Sarai gets tired of waiting and gives her servant Hagar to Abram, and the plan works about as well as you would expect. Hagar gets pregnant, Sarai gets jealous, and Hagar runs away into the desert. The angel of Yahweh finds her by a spring, and she gives God a new name: the God who sees me. Ishmael is born when Abram is 86.

HAGAR AND ISHMAEL

1 Now Abram's wife Sarai had borne him
no children, but she had an Egyptian
maidservant named Hagar. 2 So Sarai said
to Abram, "Look now, Yahweh has pre-
vented me from bearing children. Please
go to my maidservant; perhaps I can build
a family by her."
And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.
3 So after he had lived in Canaan for ten
years, his wife Sarai took her Egyptian
maidservant Hagar and gave her to Abram
to be his wife. 4 And he slept with Hagar,
and she conceived. But when Hagar real-
ized that she was pregnant, she began to
despise her mistress.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE NUZI TABLETS

GENESIS 16:1 TO 4 · GENESIS 30:3 TO 9



Clay tablets from Nuzi, written in cuneiform.

WHAT IT IS

About 5,000 clay tablets written in cuneiform, the wedge shaped writing of ancient Iraq. Most are family and business records like marriage contracts, adoptions and wills.

- **GEN 16:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Nuzi tablets → FIELD NOTES p.68

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

HOW OLD IT IS
About 1500 to 1350 BC. That is a few hundred years after the traditional date for Abraham, which is one reason scholars no longer use them to date him.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
At the ancient town of Nuzi near Kirkuk in northern Iraq, dug up from 1925 to 1931.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
Most are at the Harvard Semitic Museum and the Iraq Museum in Baghdad.

WHAT IT SHOWS
One marriage contract says that if the wife has no children, she must give her husband a servant woman to have children for her. That is exactly what Sarai did with Hagar, and what Rachel and Leah later did with their servants.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Scholars once said customs like this proved the stories of Abraham were very old. Today most say these customs show up in many times and places, so they cannot date Abraham. They do show the story fits the real ancient world.

5 Then Sarai said to Abram, "May the
wrong done to me be upon you! I delivered my servant into your arms, and ever
since she saw that she was pregnant, she
has treated me with contempt. May Yahweh judge between you and me."

6 "Here," said Abram, "your servant is in
your hands. Do whatever you want with
her." Then Sarai treated Hagar so harshly
that she fled from her.

7 Now the angel of Yahweh found Hagar
by a spring of water in the desert—the
spring along the road to Shur. 8 "Hagar,
servant of Sarai," he said, "where have
you come from, and where are you going?"

"I am running away from my mistress
Sarai," she replied.

9 So the angel of Yahweh told her, "Return
to your mistress and submit to her authority." 10 Then the angel added, "I will greatly
multiply your offspring so that they will be
too numerous to count."

11 The angel of Yahweh proceeded:

"Behold, you have conceived and will bear
a son.
And you shall name him Ishmael,
for Yahweh has heard your cry of affliction.
12 He will be a wild donkey of a man,
and his hand will be against everyone,
and everyone's hand against him;
he will live in hostility
toward all his brothers."

13 So Hagar gave this name to Yahweh
who had spoken to her: "You are the God
who sees me," for she said, "Here I have
seen the One who sees me!" 14 Therefore
the well was called Beer-lahai-roi. It is located between Kadesh and Bered.

15 And Hagar bore Abram a son, and
Abram gave the name Ishmael to the son
she had borne. 16 Abram was eighty-six
years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to
him.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS
Abram is 99 when God appears again and changes his name to Abraham, father of many nations, and Sarai to Sarah. God gives the sign of the covenant, circumcision, and every man in the house gets it the same day. Abraham falls on his face laughing when God says Sarah will have a son at 90. So God names the baby Isaac, which means he laughs.

ABRAHAM TO FATHER MANY NATIONS

1 When Abram was ninety-nine years old,
Yahweh appeared to him and said, "I am
God Almighty. Walk before Me and be
blameless. 2 I will establish My covenant

GEN 16:7 [MIRACLE] The angel of Yahweh finds Hagar in the wilderness

GEN 16:11 [PROPHECY] Ishmael would father a numerous people, dwelling east of his brothers, in conflict → GEN 25:12-18 p.81

GEN 16:13 [MIRACLE] The angel of Yahweh finds Hagar in the wilderness

GEN 16:15 [NOTABLE] Ishmael is born. Arabs have long seen Ishmael as their ancestor. Islamic tradition says Muhammad, who started Islam around AD 610, came from Ishmael's family line, most often through his son Kedar in 25:13. Muslim historians agree Muhammad descended from a man named Adnan, but even they do not agree on the names between Adnan and Ishmael. The Bible itself never names Muhammad.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

between Me and you, and I will multiply you exceedingly."

3 Then Abram fell facedown, and God said to him, 4 "As for Me, this is My covenant with you: You will be the father of many nations. 5 *No longer will you be called Abram, but your name will be Abraham, for I have made you a father of many nations.*

6 I will make you exceedingly fruitful; I will make nations of you, and kings will descend from you.

7 I will establish My covenant as an everlasting covenant between Me and you and your descendants after you, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you.

8 *And to you and your descendants I will give the land where you are residing—all the land of Canaan—as an eternal possession; and I will be their God."*

THE COVENANT OF CIRCUMCISION

9 God also said to Abraham, "You must keep My covenant—you and your descendants in the generations after you. 10 This is My covenant with you and your descendants after you, which you are to keep: Every male among you must be circumcised. 11 You are to circumcise the flesh of your foreskin, and this will be a sign of the covenant between Me and you.

12 Generation after generation, every male must be circumcised when he is eight days old, including those born in your household and those purchased from a foreigner—even those who are not your offspring. 13 Whether they are born in your household or purchased, they must be circumcised. My covenant in your flesh will be an everlasting covenant.

14 But if any male is not circumcised, he will be cut off from his people; he has broken My covenant."

15 Then God said to Abraham, "As for Sarai your wife, do not call her Sarai, for her name is to be Sarah. 16 And I will bless her and will surely give you a son by her. I will bless her, and she will be the mother of nations; kings of peoples will descend from her."

17 Abraham fell facedown. Then he laughed and said to himself, "Can a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old? Can Sarah give birth at the age of ninety?" 18 And Abraham said to God, "O that Ishmael might live under Your blessing!"

19 But God replied, "Your wife Sarah will indeed bear you a son, and you are to name him Isaac. I will establish My covenant with him as an everlasting covenant for his descendants after him. 20 As for Ishmael, I have heard you, and I will surely bless him; I will make him fruitful and multiply him greatly. He will become the father of twelve rulers, and I will make him into a great nation. 21 But I will establish My covenant with Isaac, whom Sarah will bear to you at this time next year."

22 When He had finished speaking with Abraham, God went up from him.

23 On that very day Abraham took his son Ishmael and all those born in his household or purchased with his money—every male among the members of Abraham's household—and he circumcised them, just as God had told him.

24 So Abraham was ninety-nine years old when he was circumcised, 25 and his son Ishmael was thirteen; 26 Abraham and his son Ishmael were circumcised on the same day. 27 And all the men of Abraham's household—both servants born in his household and those purchased from foreigners—were circumcised with him.

- **GEN 17:1 [MIRACLE]** Yahweh appears to Abram at age ninety nine
- **GEN 17:4 [PROPHECY]** Abraham would be the father of many nations and kings would come from him → GEN 36:31; 2SA 5:3; ROM 4:16-17 p.97
- **GEN 17:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 4:17 p.1804
- **GEN 17:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:5 p.1750
- **GEN 17:19 [PROPHECY]** The Messianic line continues through Isaac, not Ishmael → LK 3:34 p.1654
- **GEN 17:19 [PROPHECY]** Sarah specifically (not Hagar) would bear Isaac the next year → GEN 21:1-3 p.75
- **GEN 17:20 [PROPHECY]** Ishmael would father twelve rulers and become a great nation → GEN 25:13-16 p.81

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*
GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Three visitors come for lunch, and one of them is Yahweh. He says Sarah will have a son by this time next year, and Sarah laughs behind the tent door and then denies it. Then Abraham bargains with God over Sodom like a buyer working a deal, from fifty righteous people all the way down to ten. God says yes every time.

THE THREE VISITORS

1 Then Yahweh appeared to Abraham by
the Oaks of Mamre in the heat of the day,
while he was sitting at the entrance of his
tent. 2 And Abraham looked up and saw
three men standing nearby. When he saw
them, he ran from the entrance of his tent
to meet them and bowed low to the
ground.

3 "My lord," said Abraham, "if I have found
favor in your sight, please do not pass
your servant by. 4 Let a little water be
brought, that you may wash your feet and
rest yourselves under the tree. 5 And I will
bring a bit of bread so that you may re-
fresh yourselves. This is why you have
passed your servant's way. After that, you
may continue on your way."

"Yes," they replied, "you may do as you
have said."

6 So Abraham hurried into the tent and
said to Sarah, "Quick! Prepare eighteen
quarts of fine flour, knead it, and bake
some bread."

7 Meanwhile, Abraham ran to the herd, se-
lected a tender and choice calf, and gave
it to a servant, who hurried to prepare it. 8
Then Abraham brought curds and milk
and the calf that had been prepared, and
he set them before the men and stood by
them under the tree as they ate.

SARAH LAUGHS AT THE PROMISE

9 "Where is your wife Sarah?" they asked.

"There, in the tent," he replied.

10 *Then Yahweh said, "I will surely return to
you at this time next year, and your wife
Sarah will have a son!"*

*Now Sarah was behind him, listening at the
entrance to the tent.* 11 And Abraham and
Sarah were already old and well along in
years; Sarah had passed the age of child-
bearing. 12 So she laughed to herself, say-
ing, "After I am worn out and my master is
old, will I now have this pleasure?"

13 And Yahweh asked Abraham, "Why did
Sarah laugh and say, 'Can I really bear a
child when I am old?' 14 *Is anything too diffi-
cult for Yahweh? At the appointed time I will
return to you—in about a year—and Sarah will
have a son."*

15 But Sarah was afraid, so she denied it
and said, "I did not laugh."

"No," replied Yahweh, "but you did laugh."

ABRAHAM INTERCEDES FOR SODOM

16 When the men got up to leave, they
looked out over Sodom, and Abraham
walked along with them to see them off.

17 And Yahweh said, "Shall I hide from
Abraham what I am about to do? 18 *Abra-
ham will surely become a great and powerful
nation, and through him all the nations of the
earth will be blessed.* 19 For I have chosen
him, so that he will command his children
and his household after him to keep the
way of Yahweh by doing what is right and
just, in order that Yahweh may bring upon
Abraham what He has promised."

20 Then Yahweh said, "The outcry against
Sodom and Gomorrah is great. Because
their sin is so grievous, 21 I will go down to
see if their actions fully justify the outcry
that has reached Me. If not, I will find out."

22 And the two men turned away and went
toward Sodom, but Abraham remained
standing before Yahweh.

23 Abraham stepped forward and said,
"Will You really sweep away the righteous

- **GEN 18:1 [MIRACLE]** Yahweh appears to Abraham as three visitors
- **GEN 18:10 [PROPHECY]** Sarah would have a son at this time next year → GEN 21:1-2; ROM 9:9 p.75
- **GEN 18:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:9 p.1811
- **GEN 18:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 3:6 p.2014
- **GEN 18:13 [MIRACLE]** Is anything too hard for Yahweh?
- **GEN 18:14 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 1:37 p.1646
- **GEN 18:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:9 p.1811
- **GEN 18:18 [PROPHECY]** All nations would be blessed through Abraham → GAL 3:8; ACTS 3:25-26 p.1868
- **GEN 18:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:8 p.1868

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

with the wicked? 24 What if there are fifty
righteous ones in the city? Will You really
sweep it away and not spare the place for
the sake of the fifty righteous ones who
are there? 25 Far be it from You to do such
a thing—to kill the righteous with the
wicked, so that the righteous and the
wicked are treated alike. Far be it from
You! Will not the Judge of all the earth do
what is right?"

26 So Yahweh replied, "If I find fifty right-
eous ones within the city of Sodom, on
their account I will spare the whole place."

27 Then Abraham answered, "Now that I
have ventured to speak to the
Lord—though I am but dust and ashes—
28 suppose the fifty righteous ones lack
five. Will You destroy the whole city for
the lack of five?"

He replied, "If I find forty-five there, I will
not destroy it."

29 Once again Abraham spoke to Yahweh,
"Suppose forty are found there?"

He answered, "On account of the forty, I
will not do it."

30 Then Abraham said, "May the Lord not
be angry, but let me speak further. Sup-
pose thirty are found there?"

He replied, "If I find thirty there, I will not
do it."

31 And Abraham said, "Now that I have
ventured to speak to the Lord, suppose
twenty are found there?"

He answered, "On account of the twenty, I
will not destroy it."

32 Finally, Abraham said, "May the Lord not
be angry, but let me speak once more.
Suppose ten are found there?"

And He answered, "On account of the ten,
I will not destroy it."

33 When Yahweh had finished speaking
with Abraham, He departed, and Abraham
returned home.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Two angels arrive in Sodom, and the men of the city surround Lot's house to attack them. The angels strike the mob blind and pull Lot's family out by the hand. Fire and burning sulfur fall on Sodom and Gomorrah, and Lot's wife looks back and becomes a pillar of salt. The chapter ends with a sad family story that explains where two enemy nations came from.

LOT WELCOMES THE ANGELS // JUDGES 19:1–30

1 Now the two angels arrived at Sodom in
the evening, and Lot was sitting in the
gateway of the city. When Lot saw them,
he got up to meet them, bowed facedown,
2 and said, "My lords, please turn aside
into the house of your servant; wash your
feet and spend the night. Then you can
rise early and go on your way."

"No," they answered, "we will spend the
night in the square."

3 But Lot insisted so strongly that they fol-
lowed him into his house. He prepared a
feast for them and baked unleavened
bread, and they ate.

4 Before they had gone to bed, all the men
of the city of Sodom, both young and old,
surrounded the house. 5 They called out to
Lot, saying, "Where are the men who
came to you tonight? Send them out to us
so we can have relations with them!"

6 Lot went outside to meet them, shutting
the door behind him. 7 "Please, my broth-
ers," he pleaded, "don't do such a wicked
thing! 8 Look, I have two daughters who
have never slept with a man. Let me bring
them to you, and you can do to them as
you please. But do not do anything to
these men, for they have come under the
protection of my roof."

9 "Get out of the way!" they replied. And
they declared, "This one came here as a
foreigner, and he is already acting like a
judge! Now we will treat you worse than
them." And they pressed in on Lot and
moved in to break down the door.

10 But the men inside reached out, pulled
Lot into the house with them, and shut the
door. 11 And they struck the men at the en-

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

trance, young and old, with blindness, so that they wearied themselves trying to find the door.

LOT FLEES TO ZOAR

12 Then the two men said to Lot, "Do you have anyone else here—a son-in-law, your sons or daughters, or anyone else in the city who belongs to you? Get them out of here, 13 because we are about to destroy this place. For the outcry to Yahweh against its people is so great that He has sent us to destroy it."

14 So Lot went out and spoke to the sons-in-law who were pledged in marriage to his daughters. "Get up," he said. "Get out of this place, for Yahweh is about to destroy the city!" But his sons-in-law thought he was joking.

15 At daybreak the angels hurried Lot along, saying, "Get up! Take your wife and your two daughters who are here, or you will be swept away in the punishment of the city." 16 But when Lot hesitated, the men grabbed his hand and the hands of his wife and his two daughters. And they led them safely out of the city, because of Yahweh's compassion for them.

17 As soon as the men had brought them out, one of them said, "Run for your lives! Do not look back, and do not stop anywhere on the plain! Flee to the mountains, or you will be swept away!"

18 But Lot replied, "No, my lords, please! 19 Your servant has indeed found favor in your sight, and you have shown me great kindness by sparing my life. But I cannot run to the mountains; the disaster will overtake me, and I will die. 20 Look, there is a town nearby where I can flee, and it is a small place. Please let me flee there—is it not a small place? Then my life will be saved."

21 "Very well," he answered, "I will grant this request as well, and will not demolish the town you indicate. 22 Hurry! Run there quickly, for I cannot do anything until you reach it." That is why the town was called Zoar.

23 And by the time the sun had risen over the land, Lot had reached Zoar.

THE DESTRUCTION OF SODOM AND GOMORRAH // LUKE 17:20–37

24 Then Yahweh rained down sulfur and fire on Sodom and Gomorrah—from Yahweh out of the heavens. 25 Thus He destroyed these cities and the entire plain, including all the inhabitants of the cities and everything that grew on the ground.

26 But Lot's wife looked back, and she became a pillar of salt.

27 Early the next morning, Abraham got up and returned to the place where he had stood before Yahweh. 28 He looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and all the land of the plain, and he saw the smoke rising from the land like smoke from a furnace.

29 So when God destroyed the cities of the plain, He remembered Abraham, and He brought Lot out of the catastrophe that destroyed the cities where he had lived.

LOT AND HIS DAUGHTERS

30 Lot and his two daughters left Zoar and settled in the mountains—for he was afraid to stay in Zoar—where they lived in a cave.

31 One day the older daughter said to the younger, "Our father is old, and there is no man in the land to sleep with us, as is the custom over all the earth. 32 Come, let us get our father drunk with wine so we can sleep with him and preserve his line."

33 So that night they got their father drunk with wine, and the firstborn went in and slept with her father; he was not aware when she lay down or when she got up.

34 The next day the older daughter said to the younger, "Look, I slept with my father last night. Let us get him drunk with wine

- **GEN 19:10 [MIRACLE]** The two angels strike the men of Sodom with blindness
- **GEN 19:13 [PROPHECY]** The angels said God was about to destroy Sodom → GEN 19:24-25 p.73
- **GEN 19:16 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 2:7 p.2030
- **GEN 19:24 [MIRACLE]** Fire from heaven on Sodom and Gomorrah; Lot's wife to pillar of salt
- **GEN 19:24 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 2:6 p.2030
- **GEN 19:24 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:7 p.2068
- **GEN 19:24 [FULFILLS]** The angels said God was about to destroy Sodom ← GEN 19:13 p.73

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

again tonight so you can go in and sleep with him and we can preserve our father's line."

35 So again that night they got their father drunk with wine, and the younger daughter went in and slept with him; he was not aware when she lay down or when she got up.

36 Thus both of Lot's daughters became pregnant by their father. 37 The older daughter gave birth to a son and named him Moab. He is the father of the Moabites of today. 38 The younger daughter also gave birth to a son, and she named him Ben-ammi. He is the father of the Ammonites of today.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Abraham tells the same lie again, that Sarah is his sister, this time to King Abimelech of Gerar. God warns Abimelech in a dream that he is as good as dead if he touches her. The pagan king ends up acting more honest than the prophet, and Abraham has to pray for him to clean up the mess.

ABRAHAM, SARAH, AND ABIMELECH

1 Now Abraham journeyed from there to the region of the Negev and settled between Kadesh and Shur. While he was staying in Gerar, 2 Abraham said of his wife Sarah, "She is my sister." So Abimelech king of Gerar had Sarah brought to him.

3 One night, however, God came to Abimelech in a dream and told him, "You are as good as dead because of the woman you have taken, for she is a married woman."

4 Now Abimelech had not gone near her, so he replied, "Lord, would You destroy a nation even though it is innocent? 5 Didn't Abraham tell me, 'She is my sister'? And she herself said, 'He is my brother.' I have done this in the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands."

6 Then God said to Abimelech in the dream, "Yes, I know that you did this with a clear conscience, and so I have kept you from sinning against Me. That is why I did not let you touch her. 7 Now return the man's wife, for he is a prophet; he will pray for you and you will live. But if you do not restore her, be aware that you will surely die—you and all who belong to you."

8 Early the next morning Abimelech got up and summoned all his servants; and when he described to them all that had happened, the men were terrified.

9 Then Abimelech called Abraham and asked, "What have you done to us? How have I sinned against you, that you have brought such tremendous guilt upon me and my kingdom? You have done things to me that should not be done." 10 Abimelech also asked Abraham, "What prompted you to do such a thing?"

11 Abraham replied, "I thought to myself, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place. They will kill me on account of my wife.' 12 Besides, she really is my sister, the daughter of my father—though not the daughter of my mother—and she became my wife. 13 So when God had me journey from my father's house, I said to Sarah, 'This is how you can show your loyalty to me: Wherever we go, say of me, "He is my brother."'"

14 So Abimelech brought sheep and cattle, menservants and maidservants, and he gave them to Abraham and restored his wife Sarah to him. 15 And Abimelech said, "Look, my land is before you. Settle wherever you please." 16 And he said to Sarah, "See, I am giving your brother a thousand pieces of silver. It is your vindication before all who are with you; you are completely cleared."

17 Then Abraham prayed to God, and God healed Abimelech and his wife and his maidservants, so that they could again bear children— 18 for on account of Abraham's wife Sarah, Yahweh had completely closed all the wombs in Abimelech's household.

GEN 20:3 [MIRACLE] God warns Abimelech in a dream

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW | NOTABLE | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaac is finally born, right on schedule, and Sarah says God has made her laugh. Hagar and Ishmael are sent away and nearly die of thirst in the desert, but God hears the boy crying and opens Hagar's eyes to see a well. Abraham makes a peace treaty over a well at Beersheba and calls on the name of the Everlasting God.

THE BIRTH OF ISAAC

1 Now Yahweh attended to Sarah as He
had said, and Yahweh did for Sarah what
He had promised. 2 So Sarah conceived
and bore a son to Abraham in his old age,
at the very time God had promised.

3 And Abraham gave the name Isaac to the
son Sarah bore to him. 4 When his son
Isaac was eight days old, Abraham cir-
cumcised him, as God had commanded
him. 5 Abraham was a hundred years old
when his son Isaac was born to him.

6 Then Sarah said, "God has made me
laugh, and everyone who hears of this will
laugh with me." 7 She added, "Who would
have told Abraham that Sarah would nurse
children? Yet I have borne him a son in his
old age."

8 So the child grew and was weaned, and
Abraham held a great feast on the day
Isaac was weaned.

SARAH TURNS AGAINST HAGAR // GALATIANS 4:21–30

9 But Sarah saw that the son whom Hagar
the Egyptian had borne to Abraham was
mocking her son, 10 *and she said to Abra-
ham, "Expel the slave woman and her son, for
the slave woman's son will never share in the
inheritance with my son Isaac!"*

11 Now this matter distressed Abraham
greatly because it concerned his son Ish-
mael. 12 *But God said to Abraham,* "Do not be
distressed about the boy and your maidser-
vant. Listen to everything that Sarah tells you,
for through Isaac your offspring will be reck-
oned. 13 But I will also make a nation of the
slave woman's son, because he is your
offspring."

14 Early in the morning, Abraham got up,
took bread and a skin of water, put them
on Hagar's shoulders, and sent her away
with the boy. She left and wandered in the
Wilderness of Beersheba. 15 When the wa-
ter in the skin was gone, she left the boy
under one of the bushes. 16 Then she went
off and sat down nearby, about a bowshot
away, for she said, "I cannot bear to
watch the boy die!" And as she sat
nearby, she lifted up her voice and wept.

17 Then God heard the voice of the boy,
and the angel of God called to Hagar from
heaven, "What is wrong, Hagar? Do not
be afraid, for God has heard the voice of
the boy where he lies. 18 Get up, lift up the
boy, and take him by the hand, for I will
make him into a great nation." 19 Then God
opened her eyes, and she saw a well of
water. So she went and filled the skin with
water and gave the boy a drink.

20 And God was with the boy, and he grew
up and settled in the wilderness and be-
came a great archer. 21 And while he was
dwelling in the Wilderness of Paran, his

- **GEN 21:1 [MIRACLE]** Sarah gives birth to Isaac in her old age
- **GEN 21:1 [FULFILLS]** Sarah specifically (not Hagar) would bear Isaac the next year ← GEN 17:19-21 p.70
- **GEN 21:1 [FULFILLS]** Sarah would have a son at this time next year ← GEN 18:10 p.71
- **GEN 21:9 [NOTABLE]** Ishmael, now a teenager, mocks little Isaac, and Paul later calls it persecution in Galatians 4:29. Sarah demands that Hagar and Ishmael leave, and Abraham sends them into the desert with bread and water. Here the family splits in two. Isaac's line becomes the Jewish people, and Ishmael's line is seen as the father of the Arab peoples. Many Bible teachers trace the tension between Israel and her neighbors back to this family break. Today's wars also have modern causes like land, politics and religion, but the family split starts right here.
- **GEN 21:10 [FORESHADOW]** Sending away the slave woman and her son pictures the old covenant giving way to the new → GAL 4:22-31 p.1872
- **GEN 21:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 4:30 p.1872
- **GEN 21:12 [PROPHECY]** Abraham's promised offspring would come through Isaac → ROM 9:7; HEB 11:18 p.1811
- **GEN 21:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:7 p.1811
- **GEN 21:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 11:18 p.1993
- **GEN 21:13 [NOTABLE]** God does not forget Ishmael. He promises to make him a nation too, because he is Abraham's son. That promise comes true in 25:12 to 18, where Ishmael's twelve sons become twelve tribal rulers. God cares about both sides of this family.
- **GEN 21:14 [NOTABLE]** Early the next morning Abraham sends Hagar and Ishmael away with only bread and a skin of water, and they wander in the desert near Beersheba. This is the moment the two halves of Abraham's family go their separate ways.
- **GEN 21:17 [MIRACLE]** The angel of God calls to Hagar and opens her eyes to a well

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

mother got a wife for him from the land of Egypt.

THE COVENANT AT BEERSHEBA

22 At that time Abimelech and Phicol the commander of his army said to Abraham, "God is with you in all that you do. 23 Now, therefore, swear to me here before God that you will not deal falsely with me or my children or descendants. Show to me and to the country in which you reside the same kindness that I have shown to you."

24 And Abraham replied, "I swear it."

25 But when Abraham complained to Abimelech about a well that Abimelech's servants had seized, 26 Abimelech replied, "I do not know who has done this. You did not tell me, so I have not heard about it until today."

27 So Abraham brought sheep and cattle and gave them to Abimelech, and the two men made a covenant. 28 Abraham separated seven ewe lambs from the flock, 29 and Abimelech asked him, "Why have you set apart these seven ewe lambs?"

30 He replied, "You are to accept the seven ewe lambs from my hand as my witness that I dug this well." 31 So that place was called Beersheba, because it was there that the two of them swore an oath. 32 After they had made the covenant at Beersheba, Abimelech and Phicol the commander of his army got up and returned to the land of the Philistines.

33 And Abraham planted a tamarisk tree in Beersheba, and there he called upon the name of Yahweh, the Eternal God. 34 And Abraham resided in the land of the Philistines for a long time.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

The hardest test in the whole book. God tells Abraham to offer his only son Isaac on a mountain in Moriah. Isaac carries the wood and asks where the lamb is, and Abraham answers, God Himself will provide the lamb. At the last second the angel of Yahweh stops him, and a ram caught in a bush takes Isaac's place. About two thousand years later God did not spare His own Son.

THE OFFERING OF ISAAC // JOHN 3:1–21

1 Some time later God tested Abraham and said to him, "Abraham!"

"Here I am," he answered.

2 "Take your son," God said, "your only son Isaac, whom you love, and go to the land of Moriah. Offer him there as a burnt offering on one of the mountains, which I will show you."

3 So Abraham got up early the next morning, saddled his donkey, and took along two of his servants and his son Isaac. He split the wood for a burnt offering and set out for the place God had designated.

4 On the third day Abraham looked up and saw the place in the distance. 5 "Stay here with the donkey," Abraham told his servants. "The boy and I will go over there to worship, and then we will return to you."

6 Abraham took the wood for the burnt offering and placed it on his son Isaac. He himself carried the fire and the sacrificial knife, and the two of them walked on together.

7 Then Isaac said to his father Abraham, "My father!"

"Here I am, my son," he replied.

"The fire and the wood are here," said Isaac, "but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?"

8 Abraham answered, "God Himself will provide the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." And the two walked on together.

9 When they arrived at the place God had designated, Abraham built the altar there and arranged the wood. He bound his son Isaac and placed him on the altar, atop the wood. 10 Then Abraham reached out his hand and took the knife to slaughter his son.

YAHWEH PROVIDES THE SACRIFICE

11 Just then the angel of Yahweh called out to him from heaven, "Abraham, Abraham!"

"Here I am," he replied.

- **GEN 22:2 [FORESHADOW]** Abraham was told to offer his only son whom he loved → JN 3:16; HEB 11:17-19 p.1702
- **GEN 22:6 [FORESHADOW]** Isaac carried the wood for his own sacrifice up the mountain → JN 19:17 · MEDIUM p.1732
- **GEN 22:8 [FORESHADOW]** God Himself would provide the Lamb for sacrifice → JN 1:29 p.1699

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | ARCHAEOLOGY | MIRACLES
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

12 "Do not lay a hand on the boy or do anything to him," said the angel, "for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your only son from me."

13 Then Abraham looked up and saw behind him a ram in a thicket, caught by its horns. So he went and took the ram and offered it as a burnt offering in place of his son. 14 And Abraham called that place Yahweh Will Provide. So to this day it is said, "On the mountain of Yahweh it will be provided."

15 And the angel of Yahweh called to Abraham from heaven a second time, 16 *saying, "By Myself I have sworn, declares Yahweh, that because you have done this and have not withheld your only son, 17 I will surely bless you, and I will multiply your descendants like the stars in the sky and the sand on the seashore. Your descendants will possess the gates of their enemies. 18 And through your offspring all nations of the earth will be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice."*

19 Abraham went back to his servants, and they got up and set out together for Beersheba. And Abraham settled in Beersheba.

THE SONS OF NAHOR

20 Some time later, Abraham was told, "Milcah has also borne sons to your brother Nahor: 21 Uz the firstborn, his brother Buz, Kemuel (the father of Aram), 22 Chesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel."

23 And Bethuel became the father of Rebekah. Milcah bore these eight sons to Abraham's brother Nahor. 24 Moreover, Nahor's concubine, whose name was Reumah, bore Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah.

- **GEN 22:11 [MIRACLE]** Angel of Yahweh stayed Abraham's hand at Isaac's sacrifice
- **GEN 22:13 [FORESHADOW]** A ram died in Isaac's place on the mountain where Yahweh would provide → 2CH 3:1; JN 1:29; MK 10:45 · MEDIUM p.713
- **GEN 22:16 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 6:13-14 p.1984
- **GEN 22:17 [FULFILLS]** God promised Abraham a land, descendants, and that he would father a great nation ← GEN 12:1-3 p.62
- **GEN 22:18 [PROPHECY]** Isaac's seed would bless all nations → GAL 3:16 p.1869
- **GEN 22:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 3:25 p.1746

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Sarah dies at 127, and Abraham needs a place to bury her. He buys the cave of Machpelah from Ephron the Hittite in front of witnesses at the city gate, the most polite and most expensive real estate deal in the Bible. Ephron keeps offering the land for free while naming his price, ten pounds of silver. Abraham pays in full and owns his first piece of the Promised Land.

THE DEATH AND BURIAL OF SARAH

1 Now Sarah lived to be 127 years old. 2 She died in Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron) in the land of Canaan, and Abraham went out to mourn and to weep for her.

3 Then Abraham got up from beside his dead wife and said to the Hittites, 4 "I am a foreigner and an outsider among you. Give me a burial site among you so that I can bury my dead."

5 The Hittites replied to Abraham, 6 "Listen to us, sir. You are God's chosen one among us. Bury your dead in the finest of our tombs. None of us will withhold his tomb for burying your dead."

7 Then Abraham rose and bowed down before the people of the land, the Hittites. 8 "If you are willing for me to bury my dead," he said to them, "listen to me, and approach Ephron son of Zohar on my behalf 9 to sell me the cave of Machpelah that belongs to him; it is at the end of his field. Let him sell it to me in your presence for full price, so that I may have a burial site."

10 Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth. So in the presence of all the Hittites who had come to the gate of his city, Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham, 11 "No, my lord. Listen to me. I give you the field, and I give you the cave that is in it. I give it to you in the presence of my people. Bury your dead."

12 Again Abraham bowed down before the people of the land 13 and said to Ephron in their presence, "If you will please listen to me, I will pay you the price of the field.

- **GEN 23:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Hittites confirmed as major Bronze Age power; pre-1906 critics doubted their existence → FIELD NOTES p.78

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Accept it from me, so that I may bury my dead there."

14 Ephron answered Abraham, 15 "Listen to me, my lord. The land is worth ten pounds of silver, but what is that between you and me? Bury your dead."

16 Abraham agreed to Ephron's terms and weighed out for him the price he had named in the hearing of the Hittites: ten pounds of silver, according to the standard of the merchants.

17 So Ephron's field at Machpelah near Mamre, the cave that was in it, and all the trees within the boundaries of the field were deeded over 18 to Abraham's possession in the presence of all the Hittites who had come to the gate of his city. 19 After this, Abraham buried his wife Sarah in the cave of the field at Machpelah near Mamre (that is, Hebron) in the land of Canaan. 20 So the field and its cave were deeded by the Hittites to Abraham as a burial site.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE HITTITES, MEDIUM FOR THE LINK

THE LOST HITTITE EMPIRE

GENESIS 23:3 TO 20 · GENESIS 26:34 · JOSHUA 1:4 · 2 KINGS 7:6



The Lion Gate at Hattusa, the Hittite capital, in central Turkey.

WHAT IT IS

Hattusa, the capital city of the Hittite empire, one of the great powers of the Bronze Age. Its walls, gates and temples still stand in central Turkey.

HOW OLD IT IS

Hattusa was the Hittite capital from about 1650 to 1180 BC. The peace treaty with Ramesses II is from about 1259 BC. That is later than the traditional date for Abraham, so whether the Hittites of Hebron were part of this empire is disputed.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

German archaeologist Hugo Winckler began digging at Bogazkoy in 1906 and found a royal archive of thousands of clay tablets.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

Among the tablets was a copy of a peace treaty between the Hittite king and Pharaoh Ramesses II of Egypt.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The ruins are a World Heritage Site near Bogazkale, Turkey. Many tablets are in the Museum of Anatolian Civilizations in Ankara and the Istanbul Archaeology Museums.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

In the 1800s some critics doubted the Hittites of the Bible, because so little was known about them. Once their capital was dug up, nobody could doubt they were real.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The Hittite empire was far to the north in Turkey. The sons of Heth living in Hebron may be a different, smaller group with a similar name. Scholars still debate the link.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Abraham sends his oldest servant to find a wife for Isaac among his relatives. The servant prays for a very specific sign, and before he finishes praying Rebekah shows up and offers to water all ten of his camels. That is a lot of water, since one thirsty camel can drink about 30 gallons. Isaac meets her in a field at sunset, and he loves her.

A WIFE FOR ISAAC

1 By now Abraham was old and well along in years, and Yahweh had blessed him in every way. 2 So Abraham instructed the chief servant of his household, who managed all he owned, "Place your hand under my thigh, 3 and I will have you swear by Yahweh, the God of heaven and the God of earth, that you will not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Canaanites among whom I am dwelling, 4 but will go to my country and my kindred to take a wife for my son Isaac."

5 The servant asked him, "What if the woman is unwilling to follow me to this land? Shall I then take your son back to the land from which you came?"

6 Abraham replied, "Make sure that you do not take my son back there. 7 Yahweh, the God of heaven, who brought me from my father's house and my native land, who spoke to me and promised me on oath, saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land'—He will send His angel before you so that you can take a wife for my son from there. 8 And if the woman is unwilling to follow you, then you are released from this oath of mine. Only do not take my son back there."

9 So the servant placed his hand under the thigh of his master Abraham and swore an oath to him concerning this matter.

10 Then the servant took ten of his master's camels and departed with all manner of good things from his master in hand. And he set out for Nahor's hometown in Aram-naharaim. 11 As evening approached, he made the camels kneel down near the well outside the town at the time when the women went out to draw water.

12 "O Yahweh, God of my master Abraham," he prayed, "please grant me success today, and show kindness to my master Abraham. 13 Here I am, standing beside the spring, and the daughters of the townspeople are coming out to draw water. 14 Now may it happen that the girl to whom I say, 'Please let down your jar that I may drink,' and who responds, 'Drink, and I will water your camels as well'—let her be the one You have appointed for Your servant Isaac. By this I will know that You have shown kindness to my master."

REBEKAH IS CHOSEN

15 Before the servant had finished praying, Rebekah came out with her jar on her shoulder. She was the daughter of Bethuel son of Milcah, the wife of Abraham's brother Nahor. 16 Now the girl was very beautiful, a virgin who had not had relations with any man. She went down to the spring, filled her jar, and came up again.

17 So the servant ran to meet her and said, "Please let me have a little water from your jar."

18 "Drink, my lord," she replied, and she quickly lowered her jar to her hands and gave him a drink.

19 After she had given him a drink, she said, "I will also draw water for your camels, until they have had enough to drink." 20 And she quickly emptied her jar into the trough and ran back to the well to draw water, until she had drawn water for all his camels.

21 Meanwhile, the man watched her silently to see whether or not Yahweh had made his journey a success.

22 And after the camels had finished drinking, he took out a gold ring weighing a fifth of an ounce, and two gold bracelets for her wrists weighing four ounces. 23 "Whose daughter are you?" he asked. "Please tell me, is there room in your father's house for us to spend the night?"

24 She replied, "I am the daughter of Bethuel, the son that Milcah bore to Nahor." 25 Then she added, "We have plenty of straw and feed, as well as a place for you to spend the night."

26 Then the man bowed down and worshiped Yahweh, 27 saying, "Blessed be Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who has not withheld His kindness and faithfulness from my master. As for me, Yahweh has led me on the journey to the house of my master's relatives."

28 The girl ran and told her mother's household about these things. 29 Now Rebekah had a brother named Laban, and he rushed out to the man at the spring. 30 As soon as he saw the ring, and the bracelets on his sister's wrists, and heard Rebekah's words, "The man said this to me," he went and found the man standing by the camels near the spring.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

31 "Come, you who are blessed by Yahweh," said Laban. "Why are you standing
out here? I have prepared the house and a
place for the camels." 32 So the man came
to the house, and the camels were unloaded. Straw and feed were brought to
the camels, and water to wash his feet
and the feet of his companions.
33 Then a meal was set before the man,
but he said, "I will not eat until I have told
you what I came to say."
So Laban said, "Please speak."
34 "I am Abraham's servant," he replied. 35
"Yahweh has greatly blessed my master,
and he has become rich. He has given
him sheep and cattle, silver and gold,
menservants and maidservants, camels
and donkeys. 36 My master's wife Sarah
has borne him a son in her old age, and
my master has given him everything he
owns.
37 My master made me swear an oath and
said, 'You shall not take a wife for my son
from the daughters of the Canaanites in
whose land I dwell, 38 but you shall go to
my father's house and to my kindred to
take a wife for my son.'
39 Then I asked my master, 'What if the
woman will not come back with me?'
40 And he told me, 'Yahweh, before whom I
have walked, will send His angel with you
and make your journey a success, so that
you may take a wife for my son from my
kindred and from my father's house. 41 And
when you go to my kindred, if they refuse
to give her to you, then you will be released from my oath.'
42 So when I came to the spring today, I
prayed: O Yahweh, God of my master
Abraham, if only You would make my journey a success! 43 Here I am, standing beside this spring. Now if a maiden comes
out to draw water and I say to her, 'Please
let me drink a little water from your jar,' 44
and she replies, 'Drink, and I will draw water for your camels as well,' may she be
the woman Yahweh has appointed for my
master's son.
45 And before I had finished praying in my
heart, there was Rebekah coming out with
her jar on her shoulder, and she went
down to the spring and drew water. So I
said to her, 'Please give me a drink.'
46 She quickly lowered her jar from her
shoulder and said, 'Drink, and I will water
your camels as well.' So I drank, and she
also watered the camels.
47 Then I asked her, 'Whose daughter are
you?'
She replied, 'The daughter of Bethuel son
of Nahor, whom Milcah bore to him.' So I
put the ring on her nose and the bracelets
on her wrists. 48 Then I bowed down and
worshiped Yahweh; and I blessed Yahweh, the God of my master Abraham, who
led me on the right road to take the
granddaughter of my master's brother for
his son.
49 Now if you will show kindness and faithfulness to my master, tell me; but if not, let
me know, so that I may go elsewhere."
50 Laban and Bethuel answered, "This is
from Yahweh; we have no choice in the
matter. 51 Rebekah is here before you.
Take her and go, and let her become the
wife of your master's son, just as Yahweh
has decreed."
52 When Abraham's servant heard their
words, he bowed down to the ground before Yahweh. 53 Then he brought out jewels of silver and gold, and articles of
clothing, and he gave them to Rebekah.
He also gave precious gifts to her brother
and her mother. 54 Then he and the men
with him ate and drank and spent the
night there.
When they got up the next morning, he
said, "Send me on my way to my master."
55 But her brother and mother said, "Let
the girl remain with us ten days or so. After that, she may go."
56 But he replied, "Do not delay me, since
Yahweh has made my journey a success.
Send me on my way so that I may go to
my master."
57 So they said, "We will call the girl and
ask her opinion."

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

58 They called Rebekah and asked her,
"Will you go with this man?"
"I will go," she replied.
59 So they sent their sister Rebekah on her
way, along with her nurse and Abraham's
servant and his men. 60 And they blessed
Rebekah and said to her,
"Our sister, may you become the mother
of thousands upon thousands.
May your offspring possess
the gates of their enemies."
61 Then Rebekah and her servant girls got
ready, mounted the camels, and followed
the man. So the servant took Rebekah and
left.

ISAAC MARRIES REBEKAH

62 Now Isaac had just returned from Beer-
lahai-roi, for he was living in the Negev. 63
Early in the evening, Isaac went out to the
field to meditate, and looking up, he saw
the camels approaching.
64 And when Rebekah looked up and saw
Isaac, she got down from her camel 65 and
asked the servant, "Who is that man in the
field coming to meet us?"
"It is my master," the servant answered.
So she took her veil and covered herself.
66 Then the servant told Isaac all that he
had done.
67 And Isaac brought her into the tent of
his mother Sarah and took Rebekah as his
wife. And Isaac loved her and was com-
forted after his mother's death.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Abraham dies at 175 and is buried next to Sarah. Rebekah has twins who are already wrestling before they are born, and God says the older will serve the younger. Esau grows up hairy and outdoorsy, and Jacob grows up quiet and clever. One day Esau comes home starving and trades his birthright for a bowl of red stew, the worst deal in history.

ABRAHAM AND KETURAH // 1 CHRONICLES 1:32–33

1 Now Abraham had taken another wife,
named Keturah, 2 and she bore him Zim-
ran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and
Shuah.
3 Jokshan was the father of Sheba and
Dedan. And the sons of Dedan were the
Asshurites, the Letushites, and the Leum-
mites.
4 The sons of Midian were Ephah, Epher,
Hanoch, Abida, and Eldaah.
All these were descendants of Keturah.
5 Abraham left everything he owned to
Isaac. 6 But while he was still alive, Abra-
ham gave gifts to the sons of his concu-
bines and sent them away from his son
Isaac to the land of the east.

THE DEATH OF ABRAHAM

7 Abraham lived a total of 175 years. 8 And
at a ripe old age he breathed his last and
died, old and contented, and was gath-
ered to his people.
9 His sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him in
the cave of Machpelah near Mamre, in the
field of Ephron son of Zohar the Hittite. 10
This was the field that Abraham had
bought from the Hittites. Abraham was
buried there with his wife Sarah.
11 After Abraham's death, God blessed his
son Isaac, who lived near Beer-lahai-roi.

THE DESCENDANTS OF ISHMAEL // 1 CHRONICLES 1:28–31

12 This is the account of Abraham's son
Ishmael, whom Hagar the Egyptian,
Sarah's maidservant, bore to Abraham. 13
These are the names of the sons of Ish-
mael in the order of their birth: Nebaioth
the firstborn of Ishmael, then Kedar, Ad-
beel, Mibsam, 14 Mishma, Dumah, Massa,
15 Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and
Kedemah.
16 These were the sons of Ishmael, and
these were their names by their villages
and encampments—twelve princes of
their tribes. 17 Ishmael lived a total of 137
years. Then he breathed his last and died,
and was gathered to his people.
18 Ishmael's descendants settled from
Havilah to Shur, which is near the border

- **GEN 25:8 [FULFILLS]** Abraham would die in peace at a good old age ← GEN 15:15 p.68
- **GEN 25:12 [FULFILLS]** Ishmael would father a numerous people, dwelling east of his brothers, in conflict ← GEN 16:11-12 p.69
- **GEN 25:13 [FULFILLS]** Ishmael would father twelve rulers and become a great nation ← GEN 17:20 p.70

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

of Egypt as you go toward Asshur. And they lived in hostility toward all their brothers.

JACOB AND ESAU // MALACHI 1:1–5; ROMANS 9:6–29

19 This is the account of Abraham's son Isaac. Abraham became the father of Isaac, 20 and Isaac was forty years old when he married Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan-aram and the sister of Laban the Aramean.

21 Later, Isaac prayed to Yahweh on behalf of his wife, because she was barren. And Yahweh heard his prayer, and his wife Rebekah conceived.

22 But the children inside her struggled with each other, and she said, "Why is this happening to me?" So Rebekah went to inquire of Yahweh, 23 *and He declared to her:*

"Two nations are in your womb,
and two peoples from within you will be separated;
one people will be stronger than the other,
and the older will serve the younger."

24 When her time came to give birth, there were indeed twins in her womb. 25 The first one came out red, covered with hair like a fur coat; so they named him Esau. 26 After this, his brother came out grasping Esau's heel; so he was named Jacob. And Isaac was sixty years old when the twins were born.

27 When the boys grew up, Esau became a skillful hunter, a man of the field, while Jacob was a quiet man who stayed at home. 28 Because Isaac had a taste for wild game, he loved Esau; but Rebekah loved Jacob.

ESAU SELLS HIS BIRTHRIGHT

29 One day, while Jacob was cooking some stew, Esau came in from the field and was famished. 30 He said to Jacob, "Let me eat some of that red stew, for I am famished." (That is why he was also called Edom.)

31 "First sell me your birthright," Jacob replied.

32 "Look," said Esau, "I am about to die, so what good is a birthright to me?"

33 "Swear to me first," Jacob said.

So Esau swore to Jacob and sold him the birthright. 34 Then Jacob gave some bread and lentil stew to Esau, who ate and drank and then got up and went away. Thus Esau despised his birthright.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

A famine hits, and God tells Isaac to stay in the land because He will keep every promise He made to Abraham. Isaac then tells the exact same lie his father told, that his wife is his sister. Like father, like son. Isaac's men keep digging wells and the locals keep taking them, until he finally finds one nobody fights over and names it Room.

GOD'S PROMISE TO ISAAC // GENESIS 12:1–9

1 Now there was another famine in the land, subsequent to the one that had occurred in Abraham's time. And Isaac went to Abimelech king of the Philistines at Gerar.

2 Yahweh appeared to Isaac and said, "Do not go down to Egypt. Settle in the land where I tell you. 3 Stay in this land as a foreigner, and I will be with you and bless you. For I will give all these lands to you and your offspring, and I will confirm the oath that I swore to your father Abraham. 4 *I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky, and I will give them all these lands, and through your offspring all nations of the earth will be blessed,* 5 because Abraham listened to My voice and kept My charge, My commandments, My statutes, and My laws."

- **GEN 25:23 [PROPHECY]** Two nations from Rebekah's womb → GEN 27:29; 2SA 8:14 p.85
- **GEN 25:23 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:12 p.1811
- **GEN 25:29 [NOTABLE]** The birthright meant a double share of the family wealth and the right to lead the family after the father died. Esau traded all of it for one bowl of soup because he was hungry right now. Hebrews 12:16 to 17 uses him as a warning: do not trade what God has promised you for something that feels good today. Jacob does not look great here either, since he took advantage of his brother. Esau's nickname Edom means red, and his family became the Edomites, who fought with Israel for centuries.
- **GEN 26:2 [PROPHECY]** The covenant promise reaffirmed through Isaac's line → GAL 3:8; ACTS 3:25 · MEDIUM p.1868
- **GEN 26:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 3:25 p.1746

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ISAAC DECEIVES ABIMELECH

6 So Isaac settled in Gerar. 7 But when the
men of that place asked about his wife, he
said, "She is my sister." For he was afraid
to say, "She is my wife," since he thought
to himself, "The men of this place will kill
me on account of Rebekah, because she
is so beautiful."

8 When Isaac had been there a long time,
Abimelech king of the Philistines looked
down from the window and was surprised
to see Isaac caressing his wife Rebekah. 9
Abimelech sent for Isaac and said, "So
she is really your wife! How could you say,
'She is my sister'?"

Isaac replied, "Because I thought I might
die on account of her."

10 "What is this you have done to us?"
asked Abimelech. "One of the people
could easily have slept with your wife, and
you would have brought guilt upon us." 11
So Abimelech warned all the people, say-
ing, "Whoever harms this man or his wife
will surely be put to death."

ISAAC'S PROSPERITY

12 Now Isaac sowed seed in the land, and
that very year he reaped a hundredfold.
And Yahweh blessed him, 13 and he be-
came richer and richer, until he was ex-
ceedingly wealthy. 14 He owned so many
flocks and herds and servants that the
Philistines envied him. 15 So the Philistines
took dirt and stopped up all the wells that
his father's servants had dug in the days
of his father Abraham.

16 Then Abimelech said to Isaac, "Depart
from us, for you are much too powerful
for us."

17 So Isaac left that place and encamped in
the Valley of Gerar and settled there. 18
Isaac reopened the wells that had been
dug in the days of his father Abraham,
which the Philistines had stopped up after
Abraham died. And he gave these wells
the same names his father had given
them.

19 Then Isaac's servants dug in the valley
and found a well of fresh water there. 20
But the herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with
Isaac's herdsmen and said, "The water is
ours!" So he named the well Esek, be-
cause they contended with him.

21 Then they dug another well and quar-
reled over that one also; so he named it
Sitnah.

22 He moved on from there and dug an-
other well, and they did not quarrel over it.
He named it Rehoboth and said, "At last
Yahweh has made room for us, and we
will be fruitful in the land."

23 From there Isaac went up to Beersheba,
24 and that night Yahweh appeared to him
and said, "I am the God of your father
Abraham. Do not be afraid, for I am with
you. I will bless you and multiply your de-
scendants for the sake of My servant
Abraham."

25 So Isaac built an altar there and called
on the name of Yahweh, and he pitched
his tent there. His servants also dug a well
there.

ISAAC'S COVENANT WITH ABIMELECH

26 Later, Abimelech came to Isaac from
Gerar, with Ahuzzath his adviser and Phi-
col the commander of his army.

27 "Why have you come to me?" Isaac
asked them. "You hated me and sent me
away."

28 "We can plainly see that Yahweh has
been with you," they replied. "We recom-
mend that there should now be an oath
between us and you. Let us make a
covenant with you 29 that you will not harm
us, just as we have not harmed you but
have done only good to you, sending you
on your way in peace. And now you are
blessed by Yahweh."

30 So Isaac prepared a feast for them, and
they ate and drank. 31 And they got up
early the next morning and swore an oath
to each other. Then Isaac sent them on
their way, and they left him in peace.

32 On that same day, Isaac's servants
came and told him about the well they had
dug. "We have found water!" they told

GEN 26:24 [MIRACLE] Yahweh appears to Isaac at night at Beersheba

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

him. 33 So he called it Shibah, and to this day the name of the city is Beersheba.

ESAU'S WIVES

34 When Esau was forty years old, he took as his wives Judith daughter of Beeri the Hittite and Basemath daughter of Elon the Hittite. 35 And they brought grief to Isaac and Rebekah.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaac is old and blind and ready to bless Esau. Rebekah dresses Jacob in Esau's clothes and puts goat skins on his arms so he feels hairy, and the trick works. Jacob steals the blessing. Esau comes home, finds out and plans to kill his brother as soon as their father dies. This family has some issues.

ISAAC BLESSES JACOB // HEBREWS 11:20

1 When Isaac was old and his eyes were so weak that he could no longer see, he called his older son Esau and said to him, "My son."

"Here I am," Esau replied.

2 "Look," said Isaac, "I am now old, and I do not know the day of my death. 3 Take your weapons—your quiver and bow—and go out into the field to hunt some game for me. 4 Then prepare a tasty dish that I love and bring it to me to eat, so that I may bless you before I die."

5 Now Rebekah was listening to what Isaac told his son Esau. So when Esau went into the field to hunt game and bring it back, 6 Rebekah said to her son Jacob, "Behold, I overheard your father saying to your brother Esau, 7 'Bring me some game and prepare me a tasty dish to eat, so that I may bless you in the presence of Yahweh before I die.'

8 Now, my son, listen to my voice and do exactly as I tell you. 9 Go out to the flock and bring me two choice young goats, so that I can make them into a tasty dish for your father—the kind he loves. 10 Then take it to your father to eat, so that he may bless you before he dies."

11 Jacob answered his mother Rebekah, "Look, my brother Esau is a hairy man, but I am smooth-skinned. 12 What if my father touches me? Then I would be revealed to him as a deceiver, and I would bring upon myself a curse rather than a blessing."

13 His mother replied, "Your curse be on me, my son. Just obey my voice and go get them for me."

14 So Jacob went and got two goats and brought them to his mother, who made the tasty food his father loved. 15 And Rebekah took the finest clothes in the house that belonged to her older son Esau, and she put them on her younger son Jacob. 16 She also put the skins of the young goats on his hands and on the smooth part of his neck. 17 Then she handed her son Jacob the tasty food and bread she had made.

18 So Jacob went to his father and said, "My father."

"Here I am!" he answered. "Which one are you, my son?"

19 Jacob said to his father, "I am Esau, your firstborn. I have done as you told me. Please sit up and eat some of my game, so that you may bless me."

20 But Isaac asked his son, "How did you ever find it so quickly, my son?"

"Because Yahweh your God brought it to me," he replied.

21 Then Isaac said to Jacob, "Please come closer so I can touch you, my son. Are you really my son Esau, or not?"

22 So Jacob came close to his father Isaac, who touched him and said, "The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau." 23 Isaac did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like those of his brother Esau; so he blessed him.

24 Again he asked, "Are you really my son Esau?"

And he replied, "I am."

25 "Serve me," said Isaac, "and let me eat some of my son's game, so that I may bless you."

Jacob brought it to him, and he ate; then he brought him wine, and he drank.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

26 Then his father Isaac said to him,
"Please come near and kiss me, my son."
27 So he came near and kissed him. When
Isaac smelled his clothing, he blessed him
and said:

"Ah, the smell of my son
is like the smell of a field
that Yahweh has blessed.
28 May God give to you the dew of heaven
and the richness of the earth—
an abundance of grain and new wine.
29 May peoples serve you
and nations bow down to you.
May you be the master of your brothers,
and may the sons of your mother bow
down to you.
May those who curse you be cursed,
and those who bless you be blessed."

ESAU'S LOST HOPE

30 As soon as Isaac had finished blessing
him and Jacob had left his father's pres-
ence, his brother Esau returned from the
hunt. 31 He too made some tasty food,
brought it to his father, and said to him,
"My father, sit up and eat of your son's
game, so that you may bless me."
32 But his father Isaac replied, "Who are
you?"
"I am Esau, your firstborn son," he an-
swered.
33 Isaac began to tremble violently and
said, "Who was it, then, who hunted the
game and brought it to me? Before you
came in, I ate it all and blessed him—and
indeed, he will be blessed!"
34 When Esau heard his father's words, he
let out a loud and bitter cry and said to his
father, "Bless me too, O my father!"
35 But Isaac replied, "Your brother came
deceitfully and took your blessing."
36 So Esau declared, "Is he not rightly
named Jacob? For he has cheated me
twice. He took my birthright, and now he
has taken my blessing." Then he asked,
"Haven't you saved a blessing for me?"
37 But Isaac answered Esau: "Look, I have
made him your master and given him all
his relatives as servants; I have sustained
him with grain and new wine. What is left
that I can do for you, my son?"
38 Esau said to his father, "Do you have
only one blessing, my father? Bless me
too, O my father!" Then Esau wept aloud.
39 His father Isaac answered him:

"Behold, your dwelling place shall be
away from the richness of the land,
away from the dew of heaven above.
40 You shall live by the sword
and serve your brother.
But when you rebel,
you will tear his yoke from your neck."

41 Esau held a grudge against Jacob be-
cause of the blessing his father had given
him. And Esau said in his heart, "The days
of mourning for my father are at hand;
then I will kill my brother Jacob."
42 When the words of her older son Esau
were relayed to Rebekah, she sent for her
younger son Jacob and told him, "Look,
your brother Esau is consoling himself by
plotting to kill you. 43 So now, my son,
obey my voice and flee at once to my
brother Laban in Haran. 44 Stay with him
for a while, until your brother's fury
subsides— 45 until your brother's rage
against you wanes and he forgets what
you have done to him. Then I will send for
you and bring you back from there. Why
should I lose both of you in one day?"
46 Then Rebekah said to Isaac, "I am
weary of my life because of these Hittite
women. If Jacob takes a Hittite wife from
among them, what good is my life?"

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob runs for his life toward his uncle Laban's house. He sleeps outside with a rock for a pillow and dreams of a stairway reaching to heaven, with angels going up and down on it. Yahweh stands above it and repeats the promise He made to Abraham. Jacob wakes up and says, Surely Yahweh is in this place, and I did not know it.

GEN 27:29 [FULFILLS] Two nations from Rebekah's womb ← GEN 25:23 p.82

GEN 27:39 [PROPHECY] Isaac's prophecy that Esau would live by the sword and eventually break Jacob's yoke → 2KI 8:20-22 p.615

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JACOB'S DEPARTURE

1 So Isaac called for Jacob and blessed
him. "Do not take a wife from the Canaan-
ite women," he commanded. 2 "Go at once
to Paddan-aram, to the house of your
mother's father Bethuel, and take a wife
from among the daughters of Laban, your
mother's brother. 3 May God Almighty
bless you and make you fruitful and multi-
ply you, so that you may become a com-
pany of peoples. 4 And may He give the
blessing of Abraham to you and your de-
scendants, so that you may possess the
land where you dwell as a foreigner, the
land God gave to Abraham."

5 So Isaac sent Jacob to Paddan-aram, to
Laban son of Bethuel the Aramean, the
brother of Rebekah, who was the mother
of Jacob and Esau.

ESAU MARRIES MAHALATH

6 Now Esau learned that Isaac had blessed
Jacob and sent him to Paddan-aram to
take a wife there, commanding him, "Do
not marry a Canaanite woman," 7 and that
Jacob had obeyed his father and mother
and gone to Paddan-aram.

8 And seeing that his father Isaac disap-
proved of the Canaanite women, 9 Esau
went to Ishmael and married Mahalath,
the sister of Nebaioth and daughter of
Abraham's son Ishmael, in addition to the
wives he already had.

JACOB'S LADDER

10 Meanwhile Jacob left Beersheba and set
out for Haran. 11 On reaching a certain
place, he spent the night there because
the sun had set. And taking one of the
stones from that place, he put it under his
head and lay down to sleep.

12 And Jacob had a dream about a ladder
that rested on the earth with its top reach-
ing up to heaven, and God's angels were
going up and down the ladder. 13 And
there at the top Yahweh was standing and
saying, "I am Yahweh, the God of your fa-
ther Abraham and the God of Isaac. I will
give you and your descendants the land
on which you now lie. 14 Your descendants
will be like the dust of the earth, and you
will spread out to the west and east and
north and south. All the families of the
earth will be blessed through you and
your offspring. 15 Look, I am with you, and I
will watch over you wherever you go, and
I will bring you back to this land. For I will
not leave you until I have done what I have
promised you."

16 When Jacob woke up, he said, "Surely
Yahweh is in this place, and I was un-
aware of it." 17 And he was afraid and said,
"How awesome is this place! This is none
other than the house of God; this is the
gate of heaven!"

THE STONE OF BETHEL

18 Early the next morning, Jacob took the
stone that he had placed under his head,
and he set it up as a pillar. He poured oil
on top of it, 19 and he called that place
Bethel, though previously the city had
been named Luz.

20 Then Jacob made a vow, saying, "If God
will be with me and watch over me on this
journey, and if He will provide me with
food to eat and clothes to wear, 21 so that I
may return safely to my father's house,
then Yahweh will be my God. 22 And this
stone I have set up as a pillar will be God's
house, and of all that You give me I will
surely give You a tenth."

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob meets Rachel at a well and falls hard. He works seven years for her, and they feel like only a few days because he loves her so much. Then on the wedding night Laban switches brides, and in the morning, surprise, it is Leah. The trickster finally gets tricked, and Jacob works seven more years for Rachel.

JACOB MEETS RACHEL

1 Jacob resumed his journey and came to
the land of the people of the east. 2 He

GEN 28:12 [FORESHADOW] Jacob's ladder prefigures Christ as the bridge between heaven and earth → JN 1:51 p.1700

GEN 28:12 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JN 1:51 p.1700

GEN 28:14 [PROPHECY] The Messiah would descend from Jacob → LK 3:34 p.1654

GEN 28:15 [PROPHECY] God promised to bring Jacob back to the land → GEN 33:18; GEN 35:6 p.93

GEN 28:16 [MIRACLE] Jacob wakes and says this is the gate of heaven

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

looked and saw a well in the field, and near it lay three flocks of sheep, because the sheep were watered from this well. And a large stone covered the mouth of the well. 3 When all the flocks had been gathered there, the shepherds would roll away the stone from the mouth of the well and water the sheep. Then they would return the stone to its place over the mouth of the well.

4 "My brothers," Jacob asked the shepherds, "where are you from?"

"We are from Haran," they answered.

5 "Do you know Laban the grandson of Nahor?" Jacob asked.

"We know him," they replied.

6 "Is he well?" Jacob inquired.

"Yes," they answered, "and here comes his daughter Rachel with his sheep."

7 "Look," said Jacob, "it is still broad daylight; it is not yet time to gather the livestock. Water the sheep and take them back to pasture."

8 But they replied, "We cannot, until all the flocks have been gathered and the stone has been rolled away from the mouth of the well. Then we will water the sheep."

9 While he was still speaking with them, Rachel arrived with her father's sheep, for she was a shepherdess. 10 As soon as Jacob saw Rachel, the daughter of his mother's brother Laban, with Laban's sheep, he went up and rolled the stone away from the mouth of the well and watered his uncle's sheep. 11 Then Jacob kissed Rachel and wept aloud. 12 He told Rachel that he was Rebekah's son, a relative of her father, and she ran and told her father.

13 When Laban heard the news about his sister's son Jacob, he ran out to meet him. He embraced him and kissed him and brought him to his home, where Jacob told him all that had happened.

JACOB MARRIES LEAH AND RACHEL

14 Then Laban declared, "You are indeed my own flesh and blood."

After Jacob had stayed with him a month, 15 Laban said to him, "Just because you are my relative, should you work for nothing? Tell me what your wages should be."

16 Now Laban had two daughters; the older was named Leah, and the younger was named Rachel. 17 Leah had weak eyes, but Rachel was shapely and beautiful. 18 Since Jacob loved Rachel, he answered, "I will serve you seven years for your younger daughter Rachel."

19 Laban replied, "Better that I give her to you than to another. Stay here with me."

20 So Jacob served seven years for Rachel, yet it seemed but a few days because of his love for her.

21 Finally Jacob said to Laban, "Grant me my wife, for my time is complete, and I want to sleep with her."

22 So Laban invited all the men of that place and prepared a feast. 23 But when evening came, Laban took his daughter Leah and gave her to Jacob, and he slept with her. 24 And Laban gave his servant girl Zilpah to his daughter Leah as her maidservant.

25 When morning came, there was Leah! "What have you done to me?" Jacob said to Laban. "Wasn't it for Rachel that I served you? Why have you deceived me?"

26 Laban replied, "It is not our custom here to give the younger daughter in marriage before the older. 27 Finish this week's celebration, and we will give you the younger one in return for another seven years of work."

28 And Jacob did just that. He finished the week's celebration, and Laban gave him his daughter Rachel as his wife. 29 Laban also gave his servant girl Bilhah to his daughter Rachel as her maidservant.

30 Jacob slept with Rachel as well, and indeed, he loved Rachel more than Leah. So he worked for Laban another seven years.

REUBEN, SIMEON, LEVI, AND JUDAH

31 When Yahweh saw that Leah was unloved, He opened her womb; but Rachel was barren. 32 And Leah conceived and gave birth to a son, and she named

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

him Reuben, for she said, "Yahweh has seen my affliction. Surely my husband will love me now."

33 Again she conceived and gave birth to a son, and she said, "Because Yahweh has heard that I am unloved, He has given me this son as well." So she named him Simeon.

34 Once again Leah conceived and gave birth to a son, and she said, "Now at last my husband will become attached to me, because I have borne him three sons." So he was named Levi.

35 And once more she conceived and gave birth to a son and said, "This time I will praise Yahweh." So she named him Judah. Then Leah stopped having children.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

The two sisters get into a baby race, and they even bring their servants into it. By the end of the chapter Jacob has eleven sons and a daughter, which is a very full tent. Then Jacob and Laban make a deal about spotted and speckled goats. Laban keeps trying to outsmart Jacob, and God keeps blessing Jacob anyway.

DAN AND NAPHTALI

1 When Rachel saw that she was not bearing any children for Jacob, she envied her sister. "Give me children, or I will die!" she said to Jacob.

2 Jacob became angry with Rachel and said, "Am I in the place of God, who has withheld children from you?"

3 Then she said, "Here is my maidservant Bilhah. Sleep with her, that she may bear children for me, so that through her I too can build a family."

4 So Rachel gave Jacob her servant Bilhah as a wife, and he slept with her, 5 and Bilhah conceived and bore him a son. 6 Then Rachel said, "God has vindicated me; He has heard my plea and given me a son." So she named him Dan.

7 And Rachel's servant Bilhah conceived again and bore Jacob a second son. 8 Then Rachel said, "In my great struggles, I have wrestled with my sister and won." So she named him Naphtali.

GAD AND ASHER

9 When Leah saw that she had stopped having children, she gave her servant Zilpah to Jacob as a wife. 10 And Leah's servant Zilpah bore Jacob a son. 11 Then Leah said, "How fortunate!" So she named him Gad.

12 When Leah's servant Zilpah bore Jacob a second son, 13 Leah said, "How happy I am! For the women call me happy." So she named him Asher.

14 Now during the wheat harvest, Reuben went out and found some mandrakes in the field. When he brought them to his mother, Rachel begged Leah, "Please give me some of your son's mandrakes."

15 But Leah replied, "Is it not enough that you have taken away my husband? Now you want to take my son's mandrakes as well?"

"Very well," said Rachel, "he may sleep with you tonight in exchange for your son's mandrakes."

16 When Jacob came in from the field that evening, Leah went out to meet him and said, "You must come with me, for I have hired you with my son's mandrakes." So he slept with her that night.

ISSACHAR, ZEBULUN, AND DINAH

17 And God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore a fifth son to Jacob. 18 Then Leah said, "God has rewarded me for giving my maidservant to my husband." So she named him Issachar.

19 Again Leah conceived and bore a sixth son to Jacob. 20 "God has given me a good gift," she said. "This time my husband will honor me, because I have borne him six sons." And she named him Zebulun.

21 After that, Leah gave birth to a daughter and named her Dinah.

JOSEPH

22 Then God remembered Rachel. He listened to her and opened her womb, 23 and she conceived and gave birth to a son. "God has taken away my shame," she said. 24 She named him Joseph, and said, "May Yahweh add to me another son."

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JACOB PROSPERS

25 Now after Rachel had given birth to
Joseph, Jacob said to Laban, "Send me
on my way so I can return to my home-
land. 26 Give me my wives and children for
whom I have served you, that I may go on
my way. You know how hard I have
worked for you."

27 But Laban replied, "If I have found favor
in your eyes, please stay. I have learned
by divination that Yahweh has blessed me
because of you." 28 And he added, "Name
your wages, and I will pay them."

29 Then Jacob answered, "You know how I
have served you and how your livestock
have thrived under my care. 30 Indeed, you
had very little before my arrival, but now
your wealth has increased many times
over. Yahweh has blessed you wherever I
set foot. But now, when may I also provide
for my own household?"

31 "What can I give you?" Laban asked.

"You do not need to give me anything,"
Jacob replied. "If you do this one thing for
me, I will keep on shepherding and keep-
ing your flocks. 32 Let me go through all
your flocks today and remove from them
every speckled or spotted sheep, every
dark-colored lamb, and every spotted or
speckled goat. These will be my wages.
33 So my honesty will testify for me when
you come to check on my wages in the
future. If I have any goats that are not
speckled or spotted, or any lambs that are
not dark-colored, they will be considered
stolen."

34 "Agreed," said Laban. "Let it be as you
have said."

35 That very day Laban removed all the
streaked or spotted male goats and every
speckled or spotted female goat—every
one that had any white on it—and every
dark-colored lamb, and he placed them
under the care of his sons. 36 Then he put
a three-day journey between himself and
Jacob, while Jacob was shepherding the
rest of Laban's flocks.

37 Jacob, however, took fresh branches of
poplar, almond, and plane trees, and
peeled the bark, exposing the white inner
wood of the branches. 38 Then he set the
peeled branches in the watering troughs
in front of the flocks coming in to drink.
So when the flocks were in heat and came
to drink, 39 they mated in front of the
branches. And they bore young that were
streaked or speckled or spotted. 40 Jacob
set apart the young, but made the rest
face the streaked dark-colored sheep in
Laban's flocks. Then he set his own stock
apart and did not put them with Laban's
animals.

41 Whenever the stronger females of the
flock were in heat, Jacob would place the
branches in the troughs, in full view of the
animals, so that they would breed in front
of the branches. 42 But if the animals were
weak, he did not set out the branches. So
the weaker animals went to Laban and the
stronger ones to Jacob.

43 Thus Jacob became exceedingly pros-
perous. He owned large flocks, maidser-
vants and menservants, and camels and
donkeys.

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Jacob it is time to go home. Jacob sneaks away with his family and flocks, and Rachel secretly steals her father's household idols. Laban chases them down and searches every tent, but he never finds the idols, because Rachel is sitting on them. They finally set up a pile of stones and promise to stay on their own sides of it.

JACOB FLEES FROM LABAN

1 Now Jacob heard that Laban's sons were
saying, "Jacob has taken away all that be-
longed to our father and built all this
wealth at our father's expense." 2 And Ja-
cob saw from the countenance of Laban
that his attitude toward him had changed.

3 Then Yahweh said to Jacob, "Go back to
the land of your fathers and to your kin-
dred, and I will be with you."

4 So Jacob sent word and called Rachel
and Leah to the field where his flocks

GEN 30:27 [DEMONIC] Laban says he learned by divination that God blessed him

MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

were, 5 and he told them, "I can see from your father's countenance that his attitude toward me has changed; but the God of my father has been with me. 6 You know that I have served your father with all my strength. 7 And although he has cheated me and changed my wages ten times, God has not allowed him to harm me. 8 If he said, 'The speckled will be your wages,' then the whole flock bore speckled offspring. If he said, 'The streaked will be your wages,' then the whole flock bore streaked offspring. 9 Thus God has taken away your father's livestock and given them to me.

10 When the flocks were breeding, I saw in a dream that the streaked, spotted, and speckled males were mating with the females. 11 In that dream the angel of God said to me, 'Jacob!'

And I replied, 'Here I am.'

12 'Look up,' he said, 'and see that all the males that are mating with the flock are streaked, spotted, or speckled; for I have seen all that Laban has done to you. 13 I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed the pillar and made a solemn vow to Me. Now get up, leave this land at once, and return to your native land.'"

14 And Rachel and Leah replied, "Do we have any portion or inheritance left in our father's house? 15 Are we not regarded by him as outsiders? Not only has he sold us, but he has certainly squandered what was paid for us. 16 Surely all the wealth that God has taken away from our father belongs to us and to our children. So do whatever God has told you."

17 Then Jacob got up and put his children and his wives on camels, 18 and he drove all his livestock before him, along with all the possessions he had acquired in Paddan-aram, to go to his father Isaac in the land in Canaan.

19 Now while Laban was out shearing his sheep, Rachel stole her father's household idols. 20 Moreover, Jacob deceived Laban the Aramean by not telling him that he was running away. 21 So he fled with all his possessions, crossed the Euphrates, and headed for the hill country of Gilead.

LABAN PURSUES JACOB

22 On the third day Laban was informed that Jacob had fled. 23 So he took his relatives with him, pursued Jacob for seven days, and overtook him in the hill country of Gilead. 24 But that night God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream and warned him, "Be careful not to say anything to Jacob, either good or bad."

25 Now Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country of Gilead when Laban overtook him, and Laban and his relatives camped there as well. 26 Then Laban said to Jacob, "What have you done? You have deceived me and carried off my daughters like captives of war! 27 Why did you run away secretly and deceive me, without even telling me? I would have sent you away with joy and singing, with tambourines and harps. 28 But you did not even let me kiss my grandchildren and my daughters goodbye. Now you have done a foolish thing.

29 I have power to do you great harm, but last night the God of your father said to me, 'Be careful not to say anything to Jacob, either good or bad.' 30 Now you have gone off because you long for your father's house. But why have you stolen my gods?"

31 "I was afraid," Jacob answered, "for I thought you would take your daughters from me by force. 32 If you find your gods with anyone here, he shall not live! In the presence of our relatives, see for yourself if anything is yours, and take it back." For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen the idols.

33 So Laban went into Jacob's tent, then Leah's tent, and then the tents of the two maidservants, but he found nothing. Then he left Leah's tent and entered Rachel's tent. 34 Now Rachel had taken Laban's

GEN 31:10 [MIRACLE] The angel of God speaks to Jacob in a dream
GEN 31:19 [DEMONIC] Rachel steals her father's household idols

GEN 31:24 [MIRACLE] God warns Laban in a dream
GEN 31:30 [DEMONIC] Laban searches for his stolen gods while Rachel hides them

MIRACLES DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

household idols, put them in the saddle-bag of her camel, and was sitting on them. And Laban searched everything in the tent but found nothing.

35 Rachel said to her father, "Sir, do not be angry that I cannot stand up before you; for I am having my period." So Laban searched but could not find the household idols.

36 Then Jacob became incensed and challenged Laban. "What is my crime?" he said. "For what sin of mine have you so hotly pursued me? 37 You have searched all my goods! Have you found anything that belongs to you? Put it here before my brothers and yours, that they may judge between the two of us.

38 I have been with you for twenty years now. Your sheep and goats have not miscarried, nor have I eaten the rams of your flock. 39 I did not bring you anything torn by wild beasts; I bore the loss myself. And you demanded payment from me for what was stolen by day or night. 40 As it was, the heat consumed me by day and the frost by night, and sleep fled from my eyes.

41 Thus for twenty years I have served in your household—fourteen years for your two daughters and six years for your flocks—and you have changed my wages ten times! 42 If the God of my father, the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac, had not been with me, surely by now you would have sent me away empty-handed. But God has seen my affliction and the toil of my hands, and last night He rendered judgment."

JACOB'S COVENANT WITH LABAN

43 But Laban answered Jacob, "These daughters are my daughters, these sons are my sons, and these flocks are my flocks! Everything you see is mine! Yet what can I do today about these daughters of mine or the children they have borne? 44 Come now, let us make a covenant, you and I, and let it serve as a witness between you and me."

45 So Jacob picked out a stone and set it up as a pillar, 46 and he said to his relatives, "Gather some stones." So they took stones and made a mound, and there by the mound they ate. 47 Laban called it Jegar-sahadutha, and Jacob called it Galeed.

48 Then Laban declared, "This mound is a witness between you and me this day."

Therefore the place was called Galeed. 49 It was also called Mizpah, because Laban said, "May Yahweh keep watch between you and me when we are absent from each other. 50 If you mistreat my daughters or take other wives, although no one is with us, remember that God is a witness between you and me."

51 Laban also said to Jacob, "Here is the mound, and here is the pillar I have set up between you and me. 52 This mound is a witness, and this pillar is a witness, that I will not go past this mound to harm you, and you will not go past this mound and pillar to harm me. 53 May the God of Abraham and the God of Nahor, the God of their father, judge between us."

So Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac.

54 Then Jacob offered a sacrifice on the mountain and invited his relatives to eat a meal. And after they had eaten, they spent the night on the mountain. 55 Early the next morning, Laban got up and kissed his grandchildren and daughters and blessed them. Then he left to return home.

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob hears that Esau is coming to meet him with 400 men, and he is terrified. He prays, sends wave after wave of gifts ahead and spends the night alone. A Man wrestles with him until daybreak, and Jacob will not let go until he is blessed. He walks away with a new name, Israel, and a limp he will have for the rest of his life.

JACOB PREPARES TO MEET ESAU

1 Jacob also went on his way, and the angels of God met him. 2 When Jacob saw

GEN 32:1 [MIRACLE] The angels of God meet Jacob at Mahanaim

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

them, he said, "This is the camp of God." So he named that place Mahanaim.

3 Jacob sent messengers ahead of him to
his brother Esau in the land of Seir, the
country of Edom. 4 He instructed them,
"You are to say to my master Esau, 'Your
servant Jacob says: I have been staying
with Laban and have remained there until
now. 5 I have oxen, donkeys, flocks,
menservants, and maidservants. I have
sent this message to inform my master, so
that I may find favor in your sight.'"

6 When the messengers returned to Ja-
cob, they said, "We went to your brother
Esau, and now he is coming to meet
you—he and four hundred men with him."

7 In great fear and distress, Jacob divided
his people into two camps, as well as the
flocks and herds and camels. 8 He
thought, "If Esau comes and attacks one
camp, then the other camp can escape."

9 Then Jacob declared, "O God of my fa-
ther Abraham, God of my father Isaac,
Yahweh who told me, 'Go back to your
country and to your kindred, and I will
make you prosper,' 10 I am unworthy of all
the kindness and faithfulness You have
shown Your servant. Indeed, with only my
staff I came across the Jordan, but now I
have become two camps. 11 Please deliver
me from the hand of my brother Esau, for
I am afraid that he may come and attack
me and the mothers and children with me.
12 But You have said, 'I will surely make
you prosper, and I will make your off-
spring like the sand of the sea, too numer-
ous to count.'"

13 Jacob spent the night there, and from
what he had brought with him, he se-
lected a gift for his brother Esau: 14 200 fe-
male goats, 20 male goats, 200 ewes, 20
rams, 15 30 milk camels with their young,
40 cows, 10 bulls, 20 female donkeys, and
10 male donkeys. 16 He entrusted them to
his servants in separate herds and told
them, "Go on ahead of me, and keep
some distance between the herds."

17 He instructed the one in the lead, "When
my brother Esau meets you and asks, 'To
whom do you belong, where are you go-
ing, and whose animals are these before
you?' 18 then you are to say, 'They belong
to your servant Jacob. They are a gift,
sent to my lord Esau. And behold, Jacob
is behind us.'"

19 He also instructed the second, the third,
and all those following behind the herds:
"When you meet Esau, you are to say the
same thing to him. 20 You are also to say,
'Look, your servant Jacob is right behind
us.'" For he thought, "I will appease Esau
with the gift that is going before me. After
that I can face him, and perhaps he will
accept me."

21 So Jacob's gifts went on before him,
while he spent the night in the camp.

JACOB WRESTLES WITH GOD

22 During the night Jacob got up and took
his two wives, his two maidservants, and
his eleven sons, and crossed the ford of
the Jabbok. 23 He took them and sent
them across the stream, along with all his
possessions.

24 So Jacob was left all alone, and there a
man wrestled with him until daybreak. 25
When the man saw that he could not
overpower Jacob, he struck the socket of
Jacob's hip and dislocated it as they
wrestled. 26 Then the man said, "Let me
go, for it is daybreak."

But Jacob replied, "I will not let you go
unless you bless me."

27 "What is your name?" the man asked.

"Jacob," he replied.

28 Then the man said, "Your name will no
longer be Jacob, but Israel, because you
have struggled with God and with men,
and you have prevailed."

29 And Jacob requested, "Please tell me
your name."

But he replied, "Why do you ask my
name?" Then he blessed Jacob there.

30 So Jacob named the place Peniel, say-
ing, "Indeed, I have seen God face to
face, and yet my life was spared."

GEN 32:24 [MIRACLE] Jacob wrestles with a man until daybreak; named Israel

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

31 The sun rose above him as he passed
by Penuel, and he was limping because of
his hip. 32 Therefore to this day the Is-
raelites do not eat the tendon attached to
the socket of the hip, because the socket
of Jacob's hip was struck near that ten-
don.

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob bows to the ground seven times as Esau walks up, expecting the worst. Instead Esau runs to him, hugs him and kisses him, and they both cry. Twenty years of fear melt away in one hug. Jacob tells Esau that seeing his face is like seeing the face of God, and then he settles near Shechem and builds an altar.

JACOB MEETS ESAU

1 Now Jacob looked up and saw Esau
coming toward him with four hundred
men. So he divided the children among
Leah, Rachel, and the two maidservants. 2
He put the maidservants and their chil-
dren in front, Leah and her children next,
and Rachel and Joseph at the rear. 3 But
Jacob himself went on ahead and bowed
to the ground seven times as he ap-
proached his brother.

4 Esau, however, ran to him and embraced
him, threw his arms around his neck, and
kissed him. And they both wept.

5 When Esau looked up and saw the
women and children, he asked, "Who are
these with you?"

Jacob answered, "These are the children
God has graciously given your servant." 6
Then the maidservants and their children
approached and bowed down. 7 Leah and
her children also approached and bowed
down, and then Joseph and Rachel ap-
proached and bowed down.

8 "What do you mean by sending this
whole company to meet me?" asked Esau.

"To find favor in your sight, my lord," Ja-
cob answered.

9 "I already have plenty, my brother," Esau
replied. "Keep what belongs to you."

10 But Jacob insisted, "No, please! If I have
found favor in your sight, then receive this
gift from my hand. For indeed, I have seen
your face, and it is like seeing the face of
God, since you have received me favor-
ably. 11 Please accept my gift that was
brought to you, because God has been
gracious to me and I have all I need." So
Jacob pressed him until he accepted.

12 Then Esau said, "Let us be on our way,
and I will go ahead of you."

13 But Jacob replied, "My lord knows that
the children are frail, and I must care for
sheep and cattle that are nursing their
young. If they are driven hard for even a
day, all the animals will die. 14 Please let
my lord go ahead of his servant. I will
continue on slowly, at a comfortable pace
for the livestock and children, until I come
to my lord at Seir."

15 "Let me leave some of my people with
you," Esau said.

But Jacob replied, "Why do that? Let me
find favor in the sight of my lord."

16 So that day Esau started on his way
back to Seir, 17 but Jacob went on to Suc-
coth, where he built a house for himself
and shelters for his livestock; that is why
the place was called Succoth.

JACOB SETTLES IN SHECHEM

18 After Jacob had come from Paddan-
aram, he arrived safely at the city of
Shechem in the land of Canaan, and he
camped just outside the city. 19 And the
plot of ground where he pitched his tent,
he purchased from the sons of Hamor,
Shechem's father, for a hundred pieces of
silver. 20 There he set up an altar and
called it El-Elohe-Israel.

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

This is one of the darkest chapters in Genesis. Jacob's daughter Dinah is violated by Shechem, the son of the local ruler. Her brothers Simeon and Levi pretend to make a peace deal, then attack the whole city while the men are still recovering. Jacob is furious, and he brings it up again on his deathbed.

GEN 33:18 [FULFILLS] God promised to bring Jacob back to the land ← GEN 28:15 p.86

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE DEFILING OF DINAH

1 Now Dinah, the daughter Leah had borne
to Jacob, went out to visit the daughters
of the land. 2 When Shechem son of
Hamor the Hivite, the prince of the region,
saw her, he took her and lay with her by
force. 3 And his soul was drawn to Dinah,
the daughter of Jacob. He loved the
young girl and spoke to her tenderly. 4 So
Shechem told his father Hamor, "Get me
this girl as a wife."

5 Jacob heard that Shechem had defiled
his daughter Dinah, but since his sons
were with his livestock in the field, he re-
mained silent about it until they returned.
6 Meanwhile, Shechem's father Hamor
came to speak with Jacob. 7 When
Jacob's sons heard what had happened,
they returned from the field. They were
filled with grief and fury, because
Shechem had committed an outrage in Is-
rael by lying with Jacob's daughter—a
thing that should not be done.

8 But Hamor said to them, "My son
Shechem longs for your daughter. Please
give her to him as his wife. 9 Intermarry
with us; give us your daughters and take
our daughters for yourselves. 10 You may
settle among us, and the land will be open
to you. Live here, move about freely, and
acquire your own property."

11 Then Shechem said to Dinah's father and
brothers, "Grant me this favor, and I will
give you whatever you ask. 12 Demand a
high dowry and an expensive gift, and I
will give you whatever you ask. Only give
me the girl as my wife!"

THE REVENGE OF DINAH'S BROTHERS

13 But because Shechem had defiled their
sister Dinah, Jacob's sons answered him
and his father Hamor deceitfully. 14 "We
cannot do such a thing," they said. "To
give our sister to an uncircumcised man
would be a disgrace to us. 15 We will con-
sent to this on one condition, that you be-
come circumcised like us—every one of
your males. 16 Then we will give you our
daughters and take your daughters for
ourselves. We will dwell among you and
become one people. 17 But if you will not
agree to be circumcised, then we will take
our sister and go."

18 Their offer seemed good to Hamor and
his son Shechem. 19 The young man, who
was the most respected of all his father's
household, did not hesitate to fulfill this
request, because he was delighted with
Jacob's daughter.

20 So Hamor and his son Shechem went to
the gate of their city and addressed the
men of their city: 21 "These men are at
peace with us. Let them live and trade in
our land; indeed, it is large enough for
them. Let us take their daughters in mar-
riage and give our daughters to them. 22
But only on this condition will the men
agree to dwell with us and be one people:
if all our men are circumcised as they are.
23 Will not their livestock, their posses-
sions, and all their animals become ours?
Only let us consent to them, and they will
dwell among us."

24 All the men who went out of the city
gate listened to Hamor and his son
Shechem, and every male of the city was
circumcised.

25 Three days later, while they were still in
pain, two of Jacob's sons (Dinah's broth-
ers Simeon and Levi) took their swords,
went into the unsuspecting city, and
slaughtered every male. 26 They killed
Hamor and his son Shechem with their
swords, took Dinah out of Shechem's
house, and went away.

27 Jacob's other sons came upon the
slaughter and looted the city, because
their sister had been defiled. 28 They took
their flocks and herds and donkeys, and
everything else in the city or in the field.
29 They carried off all their possessions
and women and children, and they plun-
dered everything in their houses.

30 Then Jacob said to Simeon and Levi,
"You have brought trouble upon me by
making me a stench to the Canaanites
and Perizzites, the people of this land. We
are few in number; if they unite against
me and attack me, I and my household
will be destroyed."

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

31 But they replied, "Should he have
treated our sister like a prostitute?"

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Jacob to go back to Bethel, where he first saw the stairway. Jacob tells his family to get rid of their idols, and they bury them under a tree. God confirms his new name, Israel. Then comes heartbreak. Rachel dies giving birth to Benjamin, and Isaac dies old and full of years.

JACOB RETURNS TO BETHEL

1 Then God said to Jacob, "Arise, go up to
Bethel, and settle there. Build an altar
there to the God who appeared to you
when you fled from your brother Esau."

2 So Jacob told his household and all who
were with him, "Get rid of the foreign gods
that are among you. Purify yourselves and
change your garments. 3 Then let us arise
and go to Bethel. I will build an altar there
to God, who answered me in my day of
distress. He has been with me wherever I
have gone."

4 So they gave Jacob all their foreign gods
and all their earrings, and Jacob buried
them under the oak near Shechem.

5 As they set out, a terror from God fell
over the surrounding cities, so that they
did not pursue Jacob's sons. 6 So Jacob
and everyone with him arrived in Luz (that
is, Bethel) in the land of Canaan. 7 There
Jacob built an altar, and he called that
place El-bethel, because it was there that
God had revealed Himself to Jacob as he
fled from his brother.

8 Now Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, died and
was buried under the oak below Bethel.
So Jacob named it Allon-bacuth.

9 After Jacob had returned from Paddan-
aram, God appeared to him again and
blessed him. 10 And God said to him,
"Though your name is Jacob, you will no
longer be called Jacob. Instead, your
name will be Israel." So God named him
Israel.

11 And God told him, "I am God Almighty.
Be fruitful and multiply. A nation—even a
company of nations—shall come from
you, and kings shall descend from you. 12
The land that I gave to Abraham and Isaac
I will give to you, and I will give this land to
your descendants after you."

13 Then God went up from the place where
He had spoken with him.

14 So Jacob set up a pillar in the place
where God had spoken with him—a stone
marker—and he poured out a drink offer-
ing on it and anointed it with oil. 15 Jacob
called the place where God had spoken
with him Bethel.

BENJAMIN BORN, RACHEL DIES

16 Later, they set out from Bethel, and
while they were still some distance from
Ephrath, Rachel began to give birth, and
her labor was difficult. 17 During her severe
labor, the midwife said to her, "Do not be
afraid, for you are having another son."

18 And with her last breath—for she was
dying—she named him Ben-oni. But his
father called him Benjamin.

19 So Rachel died and was buried on the
way to Ephrath (that is, Bethlehem). 20 Ja-
cob set up a pillar on her grave; it marks
Rachel's tomb to this day.

THE SONS OF JACOB // 1 CHRONICLES 2:1–2

21 Israel again set out and pitched his tent
beyond the Tower of Eder. 22 While Israel
was living in that region, Reuben went in
and slept with his father's concubine Bil-
hah, and Israel heard about it.

Jacob had twelve sons:

23 The sons of Leah were Reuben the first-
born of Jacob, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Is-
sachar, and Zebulun.

24 The sons of Rachel were Joseph and
Benjamin.

25 The sons of Rachel's maidservant Bilhah
were Dan and Naphtali.

26 And the sons of Leah's maidservant Zil-
pah were Gad and Asher.

These are the sons of Jacob, who were
born to him in Paddan-aram.

GEN 35:2 [DEMONIC] Jacob tells his family to get rid of their foreign gods
GEN 35:6 [FULFILLS] God promised to bring Jacob back to the land ← GEN 28:15 p.86
GEN 35:9 [MIRACLE] God appears to Jacob again and confirms the name Israel

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE DEATH OF ISAAC

27 Jacob returned to his father Isaac at
Mamre, near Kiriath-arba (that is, He-
bron), where Abraham and Isaac had
stayed.

28 And Isaac lived 180 years. 29 Then he
breathed his last and died and was gath-
ered to his people, old and full of years.
And his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

This is the family tree of Esau, who is also called Edom. It is a long list of sons, chiefs and kings, and it reads a little like a phone book. But it shows God kept His promise that Esau would become a nation too. Edom had kings long before any king ruled Israel.

THE DESCENDANTS OF ESAU // 1 CHRONICLES 1:35–37

1 This is the account of Esau (that is,
Edom). 2 Esau took his wives from the
daughters of Canaan: Adah daughter of
Elon the Hittite, Oholibamah daughter of
Anah and granddaughter of Zibeon the
Hivite, 3 and Basemath daughter of Ish-
mael and sister of Nebaioth. 4 And Adah
bore Eliphaz to Esau, Basemath gave birth
to Reuel, 5 and Oholibamah gave birth to
Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. These were the
sons of Esau, who were born to him in the
land of Canaan.

6 Later, Esau took his wives and sons and
daughters and all the people of his house-
hold, along with his livestock, all his other
animals, and all the property he had ac-
quired in Canaan, and he moved to a land
far away from his brother Jacob. 7 For
their possessions were too great for them
to dwell together; the land where they
stayed could not support them because of
their livestock. 8 So Esau (that is, Edom)
settled in the area of Mount Seir.

9 This is the account of Esau, the father of
the Edomites, in the area of Mount Seir.

10 These are the names of Esau's sons:
Eliphaz son of Esau's wife Adah, and
Reuel son of Esau's wife Basemath.

11 The sons of Eliphaz were Teman, Omar,
Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz. 12 Additionally,
Timna, a concubine of Esau's son Eliphaz,
gave birth to Amalek. These are the
grandsons of Esau's wife Adah.

13 These are the sons of Reuel: Nahath,
Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. They are
the grandsons of Esau's wife Basemath.

14 These are the sons of Esau's wife
Oholibamah (daughter of Anah and grand-
daughter of Zibeon) whom she bore to
Esau: Jeush, Jalam, and Korah.

15 These are the chiefs among the sons of
Esau. The sons of Eliphaz the firstborn of
Esau: Chiefs Teman, Omar, Zepho, Kenaz,
16 Korah, Gatam, and Amalek. They are the
chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom, and
they are the grandsons of Adah.

17 These are the sons of Esau's son Reuel:
Chiefs Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Miz-
zah. They are the chiefs descended from
Reuel in the land of Edom, and they are
the grandsons of Esau's wife Basemath.

18 These are the sons of Esau's wife
Oholibamah: Chiefs Jeush, Jalam, and
Korah. They are the chiefs descended
from Esau's wife Oholibamah, the daugh-
ter of Anah.

19 All these are the sons of Esau (that is,
Edom), and they were their chiefs.

THE DESCENDANTS OF SEIR // 1 CHRONICLES 1:38–42

20 These are the sons of Seir the Horite,
who were living in the land: Lotan, Shobal,
Zibeon, Anah, 21 Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan.
They are the chiefs of the Horites, the de-
scendants of Seir in the land of Edom.

22 The sons of Lotan were Hori and
Hemam. Timna was Lotan's sister.

23 These are the sons of Shobal: Alvan,
Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

24 These are the sons of Zibeon: Aiah and
Anah. (This is the Anah who found the hot
springs in the wilderness as he was pas-
turing the donkeys of his father Zibeon.)

25 These are the children of Anah: Dishon
and Oholibamah daughter of Anah.

26 These are the sons of Dishon: Hemdan,
Eshban, Ithran, and Cheran.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

27 These are the sons of Ezer: Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.

28 These are the sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

29 These are the chiefs of the Horites: Chiefs Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. They are the chiefs of the Horites, according to their divisions in the land of Seir.

THE KINGS OF EDOM // 1 CHRONICLES 1:43–54

31 These are the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Israelites:

32 Bela son of Beor reigned in Edom; the name of his city was Dinhabah.

33 When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place.

34 When Jobab died, Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.

35 When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad, who defeated Midian in the country of Moab, reigned in his place. And the name of his city was Avith.

36 When Hadad died, Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place.

37 When Samlah died, Shaul from Rehoboth on the Euphrates reigned in his place.

38 When Shaul died, Baal-hanan son of Achbor reigned in his place.

39 When Baal-hanan son of Achbor died, Hadad reigned in his place. His city was named Pau, and his wife's name was Mehetabel daughter of Matred, the daughter of Me-zahab.

40 These are the names of Esau's chiefs, according to their families and regions, by their names: Chiefs Timna, Alvah, Jetheth, 41 Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon, 42 Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar, 43 Magdiel, and Iram. These were the chiefs of Edom, according to their settlements in the land they possessed. Esau was the father of the Edomites.

GEN 36:31 **[FULFILLS]** Abraham would be the father of many nations and kings would come from him ← GEN 17:4-6 p.70

37

CHAPTER 37 IN 30 SECONDS

Joseph is seventeen, his father's favorite and the owner of a very fancy robe. He has two dreams about his whole family bowing down to him, and he makes the mistake of telling them. His brothers throw him in a pit, sell him to traders for twenty pieces of silver and dip his robe in goat's blood to fool their father. Jacob is crushed.

JOSEPH'S DREAMS

1 Now Jacob lived in the land where his father had resided, the land of Canaan.

2 This is the account of Jacob. When Joseph was seventeen years old, he was tending the flock with his brothers, the sons of his father's wives Bilhah and Zilpah, and he brought their father a bad report about them.

3 Now Israel loved Joseph more than his other sons, because Joseph had been born to him in his old age; so he made him a robe of many colors. 4 When Joseph's brothers saw that their father loved him more than any of them, they hated him and could not speak a kind word to him.

5 Then Joseph had a dream, and when he told it to his brothers, they hated him even more. 6 He said to them, "Listen to this dream I had: 7 We were binding sheaves of grain in the field, and suddenly my sheaf rose and stood upright, while your sheaves gathered around and bowed down to mine."

8 "Do you intend to reign over us?" his brothers asked. "Will you actually rule us?" So they hated him even more because of his dream and his statements.

9 Then Joseph had another dream and told it to his brothers. "Look," he said, "I had another dream, and this time the sun and moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me."

10 He told his father and brothers, but his father rebuked him and said, "What is this

GEN 37:5 **[MIRACLE]** Joseph dreams that his family will bow to him

GEN 37:7 **[PROPHECY]** Joseph dreamed his brothers and family would bow down to him → GEN 42:6; GEN 43:26; GEN 50:18 p.104

GEN 37:9 **[ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 12:1 p.2098

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

dream that you have had? Will your mother and brothers and I actually come and bow down to the ground before you?"
11 And his brothers were jealous of him, but his father kept in mind what he had said.

JOSEPH SOLD INTO EGYPT // ACTS 7:9–14

12 Some time later, Joseph's brothers had gone to pasture their father's flocks near Shechem. 13 Israel said to him, "Are not your brothers pasturing the flocks at Shechem? Get ready; I am sending you to them."

"I am ready," Joseph replied.

14 Then Israel told him, "Go now and see how your brothers and the flocks are faring, and bring word back to me."

So he sent him off from the Valley of Hebron. And when Joseph arrived in Shechem, 15 a man found him wandering in the field and asked, "What are you looking for?"

16 "I am looking for my brothers," Joseph replied. "Can you please tell me where they are pasturing their flocks?"

17 "They have moved on from here," the man answered. "I heard them say, 'Let us go to Dothan.'" So Joseph set out after his brothers and found them at Dothan.

18 Now Joseph's brothers saw him in the distance, and before he arrived, they plotted to kill him. 19 "Here comes that dreamer!" they said to one another. 20 "Come now, let us kill him and throw him into one of the pits. We can say that a vicious animal has devoured him. Then we shall see what becomes of his dreams!"

21 When Reuben heard this, he tried to rescue Joseph from their hands. "Let us not take his life," he said. 22 "Do not shed his blood. Throw him into this pit in the wilderness, but do not lay a hand on him." Reuben said this so that he could rescue Joseph from their hands and return him to his father.

23 So when Joseph came to his brothers, they stripped him of his robe—the robe of many colors he was wearing— 24 and they took him and threw him into the pit. Now the pit was empty, with no water in it.

25 And as they sat down to eat a meal, they looked up and saw a caravan of Ishmaelites coming from Gilead. Their camels were carrying spices, balm, and myrrh on their way down to Egypt.

26 Then Judah said to his brothers, "What profit will we gain if we kill our brother and cover up his blood? 27 Come, let us sell him to the Ishmaelites and not lay a hand on him; for he is our brother, our own flesh." And they agreed. 28 So when the Midianite traders passed by, his brothers pulled Joseph out of the pit and sold him for eight ounces of silver to the Ishmaelites, who took him to Egypt.

29 When Reuben returned to the pit and saw that Joseph was not there, he tore his clothes, 30 returned to his brothers, and said, "The boy is gone! What am I going to do?"

JACOB MOURNS JOSEPH

31 Then they took Joseph's robe, slaughtered a young goat, and dipped the robe in its blood. 32 They sent the robe of many colors to their father and said, "We found this. Examine it to see whether it is your son's robe or not."

33 His father recognized it and said, "It is my son's robe! A vicious animal has devoured him. Joseph has surely been torn to pieces!" 34 Then Jacob tore his clothes, put sackcloth around his waist, and mourned for his son many days. 35 All his sons and daughters tried to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted. "No," he said. "I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son." So his father wept for him.

36 Meanwhile, the Midianites sold Joseph in Egypt to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh and captain of the guard.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

38

CHAPTER 38 IN 30 SECONDS

A detour into Judah's family, and it is messy. Two of Judah's sons die, and he will not give his widowed daughter in law Tamar his last son as the custom required. So Tamar disguises herself and tricks Judah himself. When the truth comes out, Judah admits, She is more righteous than I. Their son Perez ends up in the family line of Jesus.

JUDAH AND TAMAR // 1 CHRONICLES 2:3–4

1 About that time, Judah left his brothers
and settled near a man named Hirah, an
Adullamite. 2 There Judah saw the daugh-
ter of a Canaanite man named Shua, and
he took her as a wife and slept with her. 3
So she conceived and gave birth to a son,
and Judah named him Er. 4 Again she con-
ceived and gave birth to a son, and she
named him Onan. 5 Then she gave birth to
another son and named him Shelah; it was
at Chezib that she gave birth to him.

6 Now Judah acquired a wife for Er, his
firstborn, and her name was Tamar. 7 But
Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the
sight of Yahweh; so Yahweh put him to
death. 8 Then Judah said to Onan, "Sleep
with your brother's wife. Perform your
duty as her brother-in-law and raise up
offspring for your brother."

9 But Onan knew that the offspring would
not belong to him; so whenever he would
sleep with his brother's wife, he would
spill his seed on the ground so that he
would not produce offspring for his
brother. 10 What he did was wicked in the
sight of Yahweh, so He put Onan to death
as well.

11 Then Judah said to his daughter-in-law
Tamar, "Live as a widow in your father's
house until my son Shelah grows up." For
he thought, "He may die too, like his
brothers." So Tamar went to live in her
father's house.

12 After a long time Judah's wife, the
daughter of Shua, died. When Judah had
finished mourning, he and his friend Hirah
the Adullamite went up to his sheepshear-
ers at Timnah. 13 When Tamar was told,
"Your father-in-law is going up to Timnah
to shear his sheep," 14 she removed her
widow's garments, covered her face with
a veil to disguise herself, and sat at the
entrance to Enaim, which is on the way to
Timnah. For she saw that although Shelah
had grown up, she had not been given to
him as a wife.

15 When Judah saw her, he thought she
was a prostitute because she had covered
her face. 16 Not realizing that she was his
daughter-in-law, he went over to her and
said, "Come now, let me sleep with you."

"What will you give me for sleeping with
you?" she inquired.

17 "I will send you a young goat from my
flock," Judah answered.

But she replied, "Only if you leave me
something as a pledge until you send it."

18 "What pledge should I give you?" he
asked.

She answered, "Your seal and your cord,
and the staff in your hand." So he gave
them to her and slept with her, and she
became pregnant by him. 19 Then Tamar
got up and departed. And she removed
her veil and put on her widow's garments
again.

20 Now when Judah sent his friend Hirah
the Adullamite with the young goat to col-
lect the items he had left with the woman,
he could not find her. 21 He asked the men
of that place, "Where is the shrine prosti-
tute who was beside the road at Enaim?"

"No shrine prostitute has been here," they
answered.

22 So Hirah returned to Judah and said, "I
could not find her, and furthermore, the
men of that place said, 'No shrine prosti-
tute has been here.'"

23 "Let her keep the items," Judah replied.
"Otherwise we will become a laughing-
stock. After all, I did send her this young
goat, but you could not find her."

24 About three months later, Judah was
told, "Your daughter-in-law Tamar has
prostituted herself, and now she is preg-
nant."

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

"Bring her out!" Judah replied. "Let her be burned to death!"

25 As she was being brought out, Tamar sent a message to her father-in-law: "I am pregnant by the man to whom these items belong." And she added, "Please examine them. Whose seal and cord and staff are these?"

26 Judah recognized the items and said, "She is more righteous than I, since I did not give her to my son Shelah." And he did not have relations with her again.

THE BIRTH OF PEREZ AND ZERAH

27 When the time came for Tamar to give birth, there were twins in her womb. 28 And as she was giving birth, one of them put out his hand; so the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it around his wrist. "This one came out first," she announced. 29 But when he pulled his hand back and his brother came out, she said, "You have broken out first!" So he was named Perez. 30 Then his brother came out with the scarlet thread around his wrist, and he was named Zerah.

39

CHAPTER 39 IN 30 SECONDS

Joseph becomes a slave in the house of Potiphar, and God makes everything he does succeed. Potiphar's wife keeps trying to get him into bed, and Joseph keeps saying no. One day she grabs his cloak, he runs out without it, and she lies about him. Joseph lands in prison, but Yahweh is with him there too.

JOSEPH AND POTIPHAR'S WIFE

1 Meanwhile, Joseph had been taken down to Egypt, where an Egyptian named Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh and captain of the guard, bought him from the Ishmaelites who had taken him there. 2 And Yahweh was with Joseph, and he became a successful man, serving in the household of his Egyptian master.

3 When his master saw that Yahweh was with him and made him prosper in all he did, 4 Joseph found favor in his sight and became his personal attendant.

Potiphar put him in charge of his household and entrusted him with everything he owned. 5 From the time that he put Joseph in charge of his household and all he owned, Yahweh blessed the Egyptian's household on account of him. Yahweh's blessing was on everything he owned, both in his house and in his field. 6 So Potiphar left all that he owned in Joseph's care; he did not concern himself with anything except the food he ate.

Now Joseph was well-built and handsome, 7 and after some time his master's wife cast her eyes upon Joseph and said, "Sleep with me."

8 But he refused. "Look," he said to his master's wife, "with me here, my master does not concern himself with anything in his house, and he has entrusted everything he owns to my care. 9 No one in this house is greater than I am. He has withheld nothing from me except you, because you are his wife. So how could I do such a great evil and sin against God?"

10 Although Potiphar's wife spoke to Joseph day after day, he refused to go to bed with her or even be near her. 11 One day, however, Joseph went into the house to attend to his work, and not a single household servant was inside. 12 She grabbed Joseph by his cloak and said, "Sleep with me!" But leaving his cloak in her hand, he escaped and ran outside.

JOSEPH FALSELY IMPRISONED

13 When she saw that he had left his cloak in her hand and had run out of the house, 14 she called her household servants. "Look," she said, "this Hebrew has been brought to us to make sport of us. He came to me so he could sleep with me, but I screamed as loud as I could. 15 When he heard me scream for help, he left his

GEN 39:7 [NOTABLE] One of the oldest recorded false accusations of sexual assault. Joseph does everything right. He says no, he will not even be near her, and when she grabs him he runs. She keeps his cloak as evidence, tells her story first, and he goes to prison with no trial. Today the MeToo movement, which took off in 2017, gave real victims the courage to speak up. The HimToo movement, which started in 2018, warned that men can be falsely accused too. This story shows both matter: sexual sin is real, and so are false accusations. God's law says to hear every side and require more than one witness, Deuteronomy 19:15. And Yahweh was with Joseph, even in prison, 39:21.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE

cloak beside me and ran out of the house."

16 So Potiphar's wife kept Joseph's cloak beside her until his master came home. 17 Then she told him the same story: "The Hebrew slave you brought us came to me to make sport of me, 18 but when I screamed for help, he left his cloak beside me and ran out of the house."

19 When his master heard the story his wife told him, saying, "This is what your slave did to me," he burned with anger. 20 So Joseph's master took him and had him thrown into the prison where the king's prisoners were confined.

While Joseph was there in the prison, 21 Yahweh was with him and extended kindness to him, granting him favor in the eyes of the prison warden. 22 And the warden put all the prisoners under Joseph's care, so that he was responsible for all that was done in the prison. 23 The warden did not concern himself with anything under Joseph's care, because Yahweh was with Joseph and gave him success in whatever he did.

40

CHAPTER 40 IN 30 SECONDS

In prison Joseph meets Pharaoh's cupbearer and baker, and both of them have strange dreams. Joseph explains them: in three days the cupbearer gets his job back and the baker gets hanged. Both come true exactly. Joseph asks the cupbearer to remember him, and the cupbearer promptly forgets him for two more years.

THE CUPBEARER AND THE BAKER

1 Some time later, the king's cupbearer and baker offended their master, the king of Egypt. 2 Pharaoh was angry with his two officers, the chief cupbearer and the chief baker, 3 and imprisoned them in the house of the captain of the guard, the same prison where Joseph was confined. 4 The captain of the guard assigned them to Joseph, and he became their personal attendant.

After they had been in custody for some time, 5 both of these men—the Egyptian king's cupbearer and baker, who were being held in the prison—had a dream on the same night, and each dream had its own meaning.

6 When Joseph came to them in the morning, he saw that they were distraught. 7 So he asked the officials of Pharaoh who were in custody with him in his master's house, "Why are your faces so downcast today?"

8 "We both had dreams," they replied, "but there is no one to interpret them."

Then Joseph said to them, "Don't interpretations belong to God? Tell me your dreams."

9 So the chief cupbearer told Joseph his dream: "In my dream there was a vine before me, 10 and on the vine were three branches. As it budded, its blossoms opened and its clusters ripened into grapes. 11 Pharaoh's cup was in my hand, and I took the grapes, squeezed them into his cup, and placed the cup in his hand."

12 Joseph replied, "This is the interpretation: The three branches are three days. 13 Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore your position. You will put Pharaoh's cup in his hand, just as you did when you were his cupbearer. 14 But when it goes well for you, please remember me and show me kindness by mentioning me to Pharaoh, that he might bring me out of this prison. 15 For I was kidnapped from the land of the Hebrews, and even here I have done nothing for which they should have put me in this dungeon."

16 When the chief baker saw that the interpretation was favorable, he said to Joseph, "I too had a dream: There were three baskets of white bread on my head. 17 In the top basket were all sorts of baked goods for Pharaoh, but the birds were eating them out of the basket on my head."

18 Joseph replied, "This is the interpretation: The three baskets are three days. 19 Within three days Pharaoh will lift off your

GEN 40:12 [PROPHECY] Joseph said the cupbearer would get his job back in three days → GEN 40:20-21 p.102
GEN 40:18 [PROPHECY] Joseph said the baker would be hanged in three days → GEN 40:20-22 p.102

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

head and hang you on a tree. Then the
birds will eat the flesh of your body."
20 On the third day, which was Pharaoh's
birthday, he held a feast for all his offi-
cials, and in their presence he lifted up the
heads of the chief cupbearer and the
chief baker. 21 Pharaoh restored the chief
cupbearer to his position, so that he once
again placed the cup in Pharaoh's hand. 22
But Pharaoh hanged the chief baker, just
as Joseph had described to them in his
interpretation.
23 The chief cupbearer, however, did not
remember Joseph; he forgot all about
him.

41

CHAPTER 41 IN 30 SECONDS

Pharaoh dreams about seven fat cows being eaten by seven skinny cows, and nobody in Egypt can explain it. Suddenly the cupbearer remembers Joseph. Joseph tells Pharaoh that God is warning of seven good years and then seven years of famine. Pharaoh puts Joseph in charge of all Egypt at age thirty. From the prison to the palace in one day.

THE DREAMS OF PHARAOH

1 After two full years had passed, Pharaoh
had a dream: He was standing beside the
Nile, 2 when seven cows, sleek and well-
fed, came up from the river and began to
graze among the reeds. 3 After them,
seven other cows, sickly and thin, came
up from the Nile and stood beside the
well-fed cows on the bank of the river. 4
And the cows that were sickly and thin
devoured the seven sleek, well-fed cows.
Then Pharaoh woke up, 5 but he fell back
asleep and dreamed a second time: Seven
heads of grain, plump and ripe, came up
on one stalk. 6 After them, seven other
heads of grain sprouted, thin and
scorched by the east wind. 7 And the thin
heads of grain swallowed up the seven
plump, ripe ones. Then Pharaoh awoke
and realized it was a dream.
8 In the morning his spirit was troubled, so
he summoned all the magicians and wise
men of Egypt. Pharaoh told them his
dreams, but no one could interpret them
for him.
9 Then the chief cupbearer said to
Pharaoh, "Today I recall my failures. 10
Pharaoh was once angry with his ser-
vants, and he put me and the chief baker
in the custody of the captain of the guard.
11 One night both the chief baker and I had
dreams, and each dream had its own
meaning. 12 Now a young Hebrew was
there with us, a servant of the captain of
the guard. We told him our dreams and he
interpreted them for us individually. 13 And
it happened to us just as he had inter-
preted: I was restored to my position, and
the other man was hanged."

JOSEPH INTERPRETS PHARAOH'S DREAMS

14 So Pharaoh sent for Joseph, who was
quickly brought out of the dungeon. After
he had shaved and changed his clothes,
he went in before Pharaoh.
15 Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I had a dream,
and no one can interpret it. But I have
heard it said of you that when you hear a
dream you can interpret it."
16 "I myself cannot do it," Joseph replied,
"but God will give Pharaoh a sound an-
swer."
17 Then Pharaoh said to Joseph: "In my
dream I was standing on the bank of the
Nile, 18 when seven cows, well-fed and
sleek, came up from the river and began
to graze among the reeds. 19 After them,
seven other cows—sickly, ugly, and
thin—came up. I have never seen such
ugly cows in all the land of Egypt! 20 Then
the thin, ugly cows devoured the seven
well-fed cows that were there first. 21
When they had devoured them, however,
no one could tell that they had done so;
their appearance was as ugly as it had
been before. Then I awoke.
22 In my dream I also saw seven heads of
grain, plump and ripe, growing on a single
stalk. 23 After them, seven other heads of

GEN 40:20 [FULFILLS] Joseph said the cupbearer would get his job back in three days ← GEN 40:12-13 p.101
GEN 40:20 [FULFILLS] Joseph said the baker would be hanged in three days ← GEN 40:18-19 p.101

GEN 41:8 [DEMONIC] Pharaoh calls the magicians of Egypt but they cannot interpret

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

grain sprouted—withered, thin, and scorched by the east wind. 24 And the thin heads of grain swallowed the seven plump ones.

I told this dream to the magicians, but no one could explain it to me."

25 At this, Joseph said to Pharaoh, "The dreams of Pharaoh are one and the same. God has revealed to Pharaoh what He is about to do. 26 The seven good cows are seven years, and the seven ripe heads of grain are seven years. The dreams have the same meaning. 27 Moreover, the seven thin, ugly cows that came up after them are seven years, and so are the seven worthless heads of grain scorched by the east wind—they are seven years of famine.

28 It is just as I said to Pharaoh: God has shown Pharaoh what He is about to do. 29 Behold, seven years of great abundance are coming throughout the land of Egypt, 30 but seven years of famine will follow them. Then all the abundance in the land of Egypt will be forgotten, and the famine will devastate the land. 31 The abundance in the land will not be remembered, since the famine that follows it will be so severe.

32 Moreover, because the dream was given to Pharaoh in two versions, the matter has been decreed by God, and He will carry it out shortly.

33 Now, therefore, Pharaoh should look for a discerning and wise man and set him over the land of Egypt. 34 Let Pharaoh take action and appoint commissioners over the land to take a fifth of the harvest of Egypt during the seven years of abundance. 35 Under the authority of Pharaoh, let them collect all the excess food from these good years, that they may come and lay up the grain to be preserved as food in the cities. 36 This food will be a reserve for the land during the seven years of famine to come upon the land of Egypt. Then the country will not perish in the famine."

JOSEPH GIVEN CHARGE OF EGYPT

37 This proposal pleased Pharaoh and all his officials. 38 So Pharaoh asked them, "Can we find anyone like this man, in whom the Spirit of God abides?"

39 Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Since God has made all this known to you, there is no one as discerning and wise as you. 40 You shall be in charge of my house, and all my people are to obey your commands. Only with regard to the throne will I be greater than you."

41 Pharaoh also told Joseph, "I hereby place you over all the land of Egypt." 42 Then Pharaoh removed the signet ring from his finger, put it on Joseph's finger, clothed him in garments of fine linen, and placed a gold chain around his neck. 43 He had Joseph ride in his second chariot, with men calling out before him, "Bow the knee!" So he placed him over all the land of Egypt.

44 And Pharaoh declared to Joseph, "I am Pharaoh, but without your permission, no one in all the land of Egypt shall lift his hand or foot."

45 Pharaoh gave Joseph the name Zaphenath-paneah, and he gave him Asenath daughter of Potiphera, priest of On, to be his wife. And Joseph took charge of all the land of Egypt.

THE SEVEN YEARS OF PLENTY

46 Now Joseph was thirty years old when he entered the service of Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph left Pharaoh's presence and traveled throughout the land of Egypt.

47 During the seven years of abundance, the land brought forth bountifully. 48 During those seven years, Joseph collected all the excess food in the land of Egypt and stored it in the cities. In every city he laid up the food from the fields around it.

49 So Joseph stored up grain in such abundance, like the sand of the sea, that he stopped keeping track of it; for it was beyond measure.

GEN 41:24 [DEMONIC] Pharaoh says the magicians could not explain his dream

GEN 41:25 [PROPHECY] Joseph predicted 7 years of plenty followed by 7 years of severe famine in Egypt → GEN 41:53-57 p.104

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

50 Before the years of famine arrived, two
sons were born to Joseph by Asenath
daughter of Potiphera, priest of On. 51
Joseph named the firstborn Manasseh,
saying, "God has made me forget all my
hardship and all my father's household."
52 And the second son he named Ephraim,
saying, "God has made me fruitful in the
land of my affliction."

THE FAMINE BEGINS

53 When the seven years of abundance in
the land of Egypt came to an end, 54 the
seven years of famine began, just as
Joseph had said. And although there was
famine in every country, there was food
throughout the land of Egypt. 55 When ex-
treme hunger came to all the land of
Egypt and the people cried out to Pharaoh
for food, he told all the Egyptians, "Go to
Joseph and do whatever he tells you."
56 When the famine had spread over all the
land, Joseph opened up all the store-
houses and sold grain to the Egyptians;
for the famine was severe in the land of
Egypt. 57 And every nation came to Joseph
in Egypt to buy grain, because the famine
was severe over all the earth.

42

CHAPTER 42 IN 30 SECONDS

The famine hits Canaan, and Jacob sends ten sons to Egypt to buy grain. They bow down to the Egyptian governor with no idea he is Joseph. Joseph remembers his dreams and tests them, calling them spies and keeping Simeon in jail. The brothers start saying out loud that this is payback for what they did to Joseph.

JOSEPH'S BROTHERS SENT TO EGYPT

1 When Jacob learned that there was grain
in Egypt, he said to his sons, "Why are
you staring at one another?"
2 "Look," he added, "I have heard that
there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and
buy some for us, so that we may live and
not die."
3 So ten of Joseph's brothers went down
to buy grain from Egypt. 4 But Jacob did
not send Joseph's brother Benjamin with
his brothers, for he said, "I am afraid that
harm might befall him."
5 So the sons of Israel were among those
who came to buy grain, since the famine
had also spread to the land of Canaan.
6 Now Joseph was the ruler of the land; he
was the one who sold grain to all its peo-
ple. So when his brothers arrived, they
bowed down before him with their faces
to the ground. 7 And when Joseph saw his
brothers, he recognized them, but he
treated them as strangers and spoke
harshly to them. "Where have you come
from?" he asked.
"From the land of Canaan," they replied.
"We are here to buy food."
8 Although Joseph recognized his broth-
ers, they did not recognize him. 9 Joseph
remembered his dreams about them and
said, "You are spies! You have come to
see if our land is vulnerable."
10 "Not so, my lord," they replied. "Your
servants have come to buy food. 11 We are
all sons of one man. Your servants are
honest men, not spies."
12 "No," he told them. "You have come to
see if our land is vulnerable."
13 But they answered, "Your servants are
twelve brothers, the sons of one man in
the land of Canaan. The youngest is now
with our father, and one is no more."
14 Then Joseph declared, "Just as I said,
you are spies! 15 And this is how you will
be tested: As surely as Pharaoh lives, you
shall not leave this place unless your
youngest brother comes here. 16 Send one
of your number to get your brother; the
rest of you will be confined so that the
truth of your words may be tested. If they
are untrue, then as surely as Pharaoh
lives, you are spies!"
17 So Joseph imprisoned them for three
days, 18 and on the third day he said to
them, "I fear God. So do this and you will
live: 19 If you are honest, leave one of your
brothers in custody while the rest of you
go and take back grain to relieve the

GEN 41:53 [FULFILLS] Joseph predicted 7 years of plenty followed by 7 years of severe famine in Egypt ← GEN 41:25-32 p.103

GEN 42:6 [FULFILLS] Joseph dreamed his brothers and family would bow down to him ← GEN 37:7-9 p.97

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

hunger of your households. 20 Then bring your youngest brother to me so that your words can be verified, that you may not die."

And to this they consented.

21 Then they said to one another, "Surely we are being punished because of our brother. We saw his anguish when he pleaded with us, but we would not listen. That is why this distress has come upon us."

22 And Reuben responded, "Didn't I tell you not to sin against the boy? But you would not listen. Now we must account for his blood!"

23 They did not realize that Joseph understood them, since there was an interpreter between them. 24 And he turned away from them and wept. When he turned back and spoke to them, he took Simeon from them and had him bound before their eyes.

JOSEPH'S BROTHERS RETURN TO CANAAN

25 Then Joseph gave orders to fill their bags with grain, to return each man's silver to his sack, and to give them provisions for their journey. This order was carried out, 26 and they loaded the grain on their donkeys and departed.

27 At the place where they lodged for the night, one of them opened his sack to get feed for his donkey, and he saw his silver in the mouth of the sack. 28 "My silver has been returned!" he said to his brothers. "It is here in my sack."

Their hearts sank, and trembling, they turned to one another and said, "What is this that God has done to us?"

29 When they reached their father Jacob in the land of Canaan, they described to him all that had happened to them: 30 "The man who is lord of the land spoke harshly to us and accused us of spying on the country.

31 But we told him, 'We are honest men, not spies. 32 We are twelve brothers, sons of one father. One is no more, and the youngest is now with our father in the land of Canaan.'

33 Then the man who is lord of the land said to us, 'This is how I will know whether you are honest: Leave one brother with me, take food to relieve the hunger of your households, and go. 34 But bring your youngest brother back to me so I will know that you are not spies but honest men. Then I will give your brother back to you, and you can trade in the land.'"

35 As they began emptying their sacks, there in each man's sack was his bag of silver! And when they and their father saw the bags of silver, they were dismayed.

36 Their father Jacob said to them, "You have deprived me of my sons. Joseph is gone and Simeon is no more. Now you want to take Benjamin. Everything is going against me!"

37 Then Reuben said to his father, "You may kill my two sons if I fail to bring him back to you. Put him in my care, and I will return him."

38 But Jacob replied, "My son will not go down there with you, for his brother is dead, and he alone is left. If any harm comes to him on your journey, you will bring my gray hair down to Sheol in sorrow."

43

CHAPTER 43 IN 30 SECONDS

The food runs out, and Jacob finally lets Benjamin go to Egypt. Joseph sees his little brother, has to leave the room to cry, then comes back and throws them a feast. He seats the brothers in birth order, oldest to youngest, and they stare at each other in shock. Benjamin gets five times as much food as everyone else.

THE RETURN TO EGYPT WITH BENJAMIN

1 Now the famine was still severe in the land. 2 So when Jacob's sons had eaten all the grain they had brought from Egypt, their father said to them, "Go back and buy us a little more food."

3 But Judah replied, "The man solemnly warned us, 'You will not see my face again unless your brother is with you.' 4 If you will send our brother with us, we will go down and buy food for you. 5 But if you

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

will not send him, we will not go; for the man told us, 'You will not see my face again unless your brother is with you.'"

6 "Why did you bring this trouble upon me?" Israel asked. "Why did you tell the man you had another brother?"

7 They replied, "The man questioned us in detail about ourselves and our family: 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?' And we answered him accordingly. How could we possibly know that he would say, 'Bring your brother here'?"

8 And Judah said to his father Israel, "Send the boy with me, and we will go at once, so that we may live and not die—neither we, nor you, nor our children. 9 I will guarantee his safety. You may hold me personally responsible. If I do not bring him back and set him before you, then may I bear the guilt before you all my life. 10 If we had not delayed, we could have come and gone twice by now."

11 Then their father Israel said to them, "If it must be so, then do this: Put some of the best products of the land in your packs and carry them down as a gift for the man—a little balm and a little honey, spices and myrrh, pistachios and almonds. 12 Take double the silver with you so that you may return the silver that was put back into the mouths of your sacks. Perhaps it was a mistake. 13 Take your brother as well, and return to the man at once. 14 May God Almighty grant you mercy before the man, that he may release your other brother along with Benjamin. As for me, if I am bereaved, I am bereaved."

15 So the men took these gifts, along with double the amount of silver, and Benjamin as well. Then they hurried down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.

JOSEPH'S HOSPITALITY TO HIS BROTHERS

16 When Joseph saw Benjamin with his brothers, he said to the steward of his house, "Take these men to my house. Slaughter an animal and prepare it, for they shall dine with me at noon." 17 The man did as Joseph had commanded and took the brothers to Joseph's house.

18 But the brothers were frightened that they had been taken to Joseph's house. "We have been brought here because of the silver that was returned in our bags the first time," they said. "They intend to overpower us and take us as slaves, along with our donkeys."

19 So they approached Joseph's steward and spoke to him at the entrance to the house. 20 "Please, sir," they said, "we really did come down here the first time to buy food. 21 But when we came to the place we lodged for the night, we opened our sacks and, behold, each of us found his silver in the mouth of his sack! It was the full amount of our silver, and we have brought it back with us. 22 We have brought additional silver with us to buy food. We do not know who put our silver in our sacks."

23 "It is fine," said the steward. "Do not be afraid. Your God, the God of your father, gave you the treasure that was in your sacks. I received your silver." Then he brought Simeon out to them. 24 And the steward took the men into Joseph's house, gave them water to wash their feet, and provided food for their donkeys.

25 Since the brothers had been told that they were going to eat a meal there, they prepared their gift for Joseph's arrival at noon. 26 When Joseph came home, they presented him with the gifts they had brought, and they bowed to the ground before him.

27 He asked if they were well, and then he asked, "How is your elderly father you told me about? Is he still alive?"

28 "Your servant our father is well," they answered. "He is still alive." And they bowed down to honor him.

29 When Joseph looked up and saw his brother Benjamin, his own mother's son, he asked, "Is this your youngest brother, the one you told me about?" Then he de-

GEN 43:26 [FULFILLS] Joseph dreamed his brothers and family would bow down to him ← GEN 37:7-9 p.97

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

clared, "May God be gracious to you, my son."

30 Joseph hurried out because he was moved to tears for his brother, and he went to a private room to weep. 31 Then he washed his face and came back out. Regaining his composure, he said, "Serve the meal."

32 They separately served Joseph, his brothers, and the Egyptians. They ate separately because the Egyptians would not eat with the Hebrews, since that was detestable to them. 33 They were seated before Joseph in order by age, from the firstborn to the youngest, and the men looked at one another in astonishment. 34 When the portions were served to them from Joseph's table, Benjamin's portion was five times larger than any of the others. So they feasted and drank freely with Joseph.

44

CHAPTER 44 IN 30 SECONDS

Joseph hides his silver cup in Benjamin's sack, then has the brothers stopped on the road home. It is the final test. Will they abandon Benjamin the way they abandoned Joseph? Judah steps up and offers to stay as a slave in Benjamin's place so their father will not die of grief. The brother who once sold Joseph now gives himself for Benjamin.

BENJAMIN AND THE SILVER CUP

1 Then Joseph instructed his steward: "Fill the men's sacks with as much food as they can carry, and put each one's silver in the mouth of his sack. 2 Put my cup, the silver one, in the mouth of the youngest one's sack, along with the silver for his grain."

So the steward did as Joseph had instructed.

3 At daybreak, the men were sent on their way with their donkeys. 4 They had not gone far from the city when Joseph told his steward, "Pursue the men at once, and when you overtake them, ask, 'Why have you repaid good with evil? 5 Is this not the cup my master drinks from and uses for divination? What you have done is wicked!'"

6 When the steward overtook them, he relayed these words to them.

7 "Why does my lord say these things?" they asked. "Your servants could not possibly do such a thing. 8 We even brought back to you from the land of Canaan the silver we found in the mouths of our sacks. Why would we steal silver or gold from your master's house? 9 If any of your servants is found to have it, he must die, and the rest will become slaves of my lord."

10 "As you say," replied the steward. "But only the one who is found with the cup will be my slave, and the rest of you shall be free of blame."

11 So each one quickly lowered his sack to the ground and opened it. 12 The steward searched, beginning with the oldest and ending with the youngest—and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack. 13 Then they all tore their clothes, loaded their donkeys, and returned to the city.

14 When Judah and his brothers arrived at Joseph's house, he was still there, and they fell to the ground before him.

15 "What is this deed you have done?" Joseph declared. "Do you not know that a man like me can surely divine the truth?"

16 "What can we say to my lord?" Judah replied. "How can we plead? How can we justify ourselves? God has exposed the iniquity of your servants. We are now my lord's slaves—both we and the one who was found with the cup."

17 But Joseph replied, "Far be it from me to do this. The man who was found with the cup will be my slave. The rest of you may return to your father in peace."

JUDAH PLEADS FOR BENJAMIN

18 Then Judah approached Joseph and said, "Sir, please let your servant speak personally to my lord. Do not be angry with your servant, for you are equal to

GEN 44:5 [DEMONIC] Joseph's steward says the silver cup is used for divination
GEN 44:15 [DEMONIC] Joseph claims a man like him can divine the truth

Pharaoh himself. 19 My lord asked his servants, 'Do you have a father or a brother?'
20 And we answered, 'We have an elderly father and a younger brother, the child of his old age. The boy's brother is dead. He is the only one of his mother's sons left, and his father loves him.'
21 Then you told your servants, 'Bring him down to me so that I can see him for myself.'
22 So we said to my lord, 'The boy cannot leave his father. If he were to leave, his father would die.'
23 But you said to your servants, 'Unless your younger brother comes down with you, you will not see my face again.'
24 Now when we returned to your servant my father, we relayed your words to him.
25 Then our father said, 'Go back and buy us some food.'
26 But we answered, 'We cannot go down there unless our younger brother goes with us. So if our younger brother is not with us, we cannot see the man.'
27 And your servant my father said to us, 'You know that my wife bore me two sons.
28 When one of them was gone, I said: "Surely he has been torn to pieces." And I have not seen him since. 29 Now if you also take this one from me and harm comes to him, you will bring my gray hair down to Sheol in sorrow.'
30 So if the boy is not with us when I return to your servant, and if my father, whose life is wrapped up in the boy's life, 31 sees that the boy is not with us, he will die. Then your servants will have brought the gray hair of your servant our father down to Sheol in sorrow. 32 Indeed, your servant guaranteed the boy's safety to my father, saying, 'If I do not return him to you, I will bear the guilt before you, my father, all my life.'
33 Now please let your servant stay here as my lord's slave in place of the boy. Let him return with his brothers. 34 For how can I go back to my father without the boy? I could not bear to see the misery that would overwhelm him."

45

CHAPTER 45 IN 30 SECONDS

Joseph cannot hold it in anymore. He sends the Egyptians out, weeps so loudly the whole palace hears it and says, I am Joseph. His brothers are terrified, but Joseph tells them it was not them who sent him here, it was God, to save lives. When Jacob hears his son is alive and running Egypt, his spirit comes back to life.

JOSEPH REVEALS HIS IDENTITY

1 Then Joseph could no longer control himself before all his attendants, and he cried out, "Send everyone away from me!"
So none of them were with Joseph when he made himself known to his brothers. 2 But he wept so loudly that the Egyptians heard him, and Pharaoh's household soon heard of it.
3 Joseph said to his brothers, "I am Joseph! Is my father still alive?"
But they were unable to answer him, because they were terrified in his presence.
4 Then Joseph said to his brothers, "Please come near me." And they did so.
"I am Joseph, your brother," he said, "the one you sold into Egypt! 5 And now, do not be distressed or angry with yourselves that you sold me into this place, because it was to save lives that God sent me before you. 6 For the famine has covered the land these two years, and there will be five more years without plowing or harvesting. 7 God sent me before you to preserve you as a remnant on the earth and to save your lives by a great deliverance.
8 Therefore it was not you who sent me here, but God, who has made me a father to Pharaoh—lord of all his household and ruler over all the land of Egypt.

JOSEPH SENDS FOR HIS FATHER

9 Now return quickly to my father and tell him, 'This is what your son Joseph says: God has made me lord of all Egypt. Come down to me without delay. 10 You shall settle in the land of Goshen and be near me—you and your children and grandchildren, your flocks and herds, and everything you own. 11 And there I will provide for you, because there will be five more

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

years of famine. Otherwise, you and your household and everything you own will come to destitution.'

12 Behold! You and my brother Benjamin can see that I, Joseph, am the one speaking with you. 13 Tell my father about all my splendor in Egypt and everything you have seen. And bring my father down here quickly."

14 Then Joseph threw his arms around his brother Benjamin and wept, and Benjamin wept as they embraced. 15 Joseph kissed each of his brothers as he wept over them. And afterward his brothers talked with him.

PHARAOH INVITES JACOB TO EGYPT

16 When the news reached Pharaoh's house that Joseph's brothers had come, Pharaoh and his servants were pleased.

17 Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Tell your brothers, 'Do as follows: Load your animals and return to the land of Canaan. 18 Then bring your father and your families and return to me. I will give you the best of the land of Egypt, and you shall eat from the fat of the land.' 19 You are also directed to tell them: 'Take wagons from the land of Egypt for your young children and your wives, and bring your father and come back. 20 But pay no regard to your belongings, for the best of all the land of Egypt is yours.'"

21 So the sons of Israel did as they were told. Joseph gave them wagons as Pharaoh had instructed, and he also gave them provisions for their journey. 22 He gave new garments to each of them, but to Benjamin he gave 7½ pounds of silver and five sets of clothes. 23 And he sent to his father the following: ten donkeys loaded with the best of Egypt, and ten female donkeys loaded with grain and bread and provisions for his father's journey.

24 Then Joseph sent his brothers on their way, and as they were leaving, he said to them, "Do not quarrel on the way!"

THE REVIVAL OF JACOB

25 So the brothers went up out of Egypt and came to their father Jacob in the land of Canaan. 26 "Joseph is still alive," they said, "and he is ruler over all the land of Egypt!"

But Jacob was stunned, for he did not believe them. 27 However, when they relayed all that Joseph had told them, and when he saw the wagons that Joseph had sent to carry him back, the spirit of their father Jacob was revived.

28 "Enough!" declared Israel. "My son Joseph is still alive! I will go to see him before I die."

46

CHAPTER 46 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Jacob not to be afraid to go down to Egypt, because He will make him a great nation there. Seventy members of the family make the trip. Jacob and Joseph meet after more than twenty years, and Joseph weeps on his father's neck for a long time. Jacob says he can die happy now.

JACOB'S JOURNEY TO EGYPT

1 So Israel set out with all that he had, and when he came to Beersheba, he offered sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac. 2 And that night God spoke to Israel in a vision: "Jacob, Jacob!" He said.

"Here I am," replied Jacob.

3 "I am God," He said, "the God of your father. Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, for I will make you into a great nation there. 4 I will go down with you to Egypt, and I will surely bring you back. And Joseph's own hands will close your eyes."

5 Then Jacob departed from Beersheba, and the sons of Israel took their father Jacob in the wagons Pharaoh had sent to carry him, along with their children and wives. 6 They also took the livestock and possessions they had acquired in the land of Canaan, and Jacob and all his offspring went to Egypt.

- **GEN 46:2 [MIRACLE]** God speaks to Jacob in visions of the night
- **GEN 46:3 [PROPHECY]** God told Jacob he would become a great nation in Egypt, be brought back, and Joseph would close his eyes → EX 1:7; GEN 50:1; GEN 50:13 p.120
- **GEN 46:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Beni Hasan tomb painting → FIELD NOTES p.110

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE BENI HASAN TOMB PAINTING

GENESIS 46:5 TO 7 · GENESIS 12:10 · GENESIS 42:5



A painted copy of the travelers from Canaan in the tomb of Khnumhotep II at Beni Hasan.

WHAT IT IS

A colorful wall painting of 37 foreigners from the area of Canaan arriving in Egypt with their donkeys, weapons, a lyre and bright patterned clothes. Their leader is named Abisha.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1890 BC. An inscription in the painting dates it to the sixth year of Pharaoh Senusret II, so this date is firm.

WHERE AND WHEN MADE

Painted about 1890 BC in the tomb of an Egyptian governor named Khnumhotep II at Beni Hasan, on the Nile in Middle Egypt. Explorers copied it in the 1800s.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Still on the tomb wall at Beni Hasan, Egypt.

WHAT IT SHOWS

People from Canaan really did travel down to Egypt with their families and animals. It is the same kind of trip Abram made during a famine and Jacob's family made in chapter 46.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This is not Jacob's family. It shows what a trip like theirs looked like.

THOSE WHO WENT TO EGYPT // EXODUS 1:1–7

7 Jacob took with him to Egypt his sons
and grandsons, and his daughters and
granddaughters—all his offspring.

THE CHILDREN OF LEAH

8 Now these are the names of the sons of
Israel (Jacob and his descendants) who
went to Egypt: Reuben, Jacob's firstborn.
9 The sons of Reuben: Hanoch, Pallu,
Hezron, and Carmi.
10 The sons of Simeon: Jemuel, Jamin,
Ohad, Jachin, Zohar, and Shaul the
son of a Canaanite woman.
11 The sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, and
Merari.
12 The sons of Judah: Er, Onan, Shelah,
Perez, and Zerah; but Er and Onan
died in the land of Canaan.
The sons of Perez: Hezron and Hamul.
13 The sons of Issachar: Tola, Puvah, Job,
and Shimron.
14 The sons of Zebulun: Sered, Elon, and
Jahleel.
15 These are the sons of Leah born to Ja-
cob in Paddan-aram, in addition to his
daughter Dinah. The total number of
sons and daughters was thirty-three.

THE CHILDREN OF ZILPAH

16 The sons of Gad: Ziphion, Haggi, Shuni,
Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

17 The children of Asher: Imnah, Ishvah,
Ishvi, Beriah, and their sister Serah.
The sons of Beriah: Heber and Malchiel.
18 These are the sons of Jacob born to
Zilpah—whom Laban gave to his
daughter Leah—sixteen in all.

THE CHILDREN OF RACHEL

19 The sons of Jacob's wife Rachel:
Joseph and Benjamin.
20 Manasseh and Ephraim were born to
Joseph in the land of Egypt by Asen-
ath daughter of Potiphera, priest of
On.
21 The sons of Benjamin: Bela, Becher,
Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh,
Muppim, Huppim, and Ard.
22 These are the sons of Rachel born to
Jacob—fourteen in all.

THE CHILDREN OF BILHAH

23 The son of Dan: Hushim.
24 The sons of Naphtali: Jahzeel, Guni,
Jezer, and Shillem.
25 These are the sons of Jacob born to Bil-
hah, whom Laban gave to his daughter
Rachel—seven in all.
26 All those belonging to Jacob who came
to Egypt—his direct descendants, besides
the wives of Jacob's sons—numbered
sixty-six persons. 27 And with the two sons
who had been born to Joseph in Egypt,
the members of Jacob's family who went
to Egypt were seventy in all.

JACOB ARRIVES IN EGYPT

28 Now Jacob had sent Judah ahead of
him to Joseph to get directions to Goshen.
When Jacob's family arrived in the land of
Goshen, 29 Joseph prepared his chariot
and went there to meet his father Israel.
Joseph presented himself to him, em-
braced him, and wept profusely.
30 Then Israel said to Joseph, "Finally I can
die, now that I have seen your face and
know that you are still alive!"
31 Joseph said to his brothers and to his
father's household, "I will go up and in-
form Pharaoh: 'My brothers and my
father's household from the land of
Canaan have come to me. 32 The men are
shepherds; they raise livestock, and they
have brought their flocks and herds and
all that they own.'
33 When Pharaoh summons you and asks,
'What is your occupation?' 34 you are to
say, 'Your servants have raised livestock
ever since our youth—both we and our fa-
thers.' Then you will be allowed to settle in
the land of Goshen, since all shepherds
are detestable to the Egyptians."

47

CHAPTER 47 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob meets Pharaoh and actually blesses him. The family settles in Goshen, the best land in Egypt. The famine gets so bad that the Egyptians trade their money, then their animals and finally their land to Pharaoh for food, and Joseph runs the whole economy. Jacob makes Joseph promise to bury him back in Canaan.

JACOB SETTLES IN GOSHEN

1 So Joseph went and told Pharaoh: "My
father and my brothers, with their flocks
and herds and all they own, have come
from the land of Canaan and are now in
Goshen."
2 And he chose five of his brothers and
presented them before Pharaoh.
3 "What is your occupation?" Pharaoh
asked Joseph's brothers.
"Your servants are shepherds," they
replied, "both we and our fathers."
4 Then they said to Pharaoh, "We have
come to live in the land for a time, be-
cause there is no pasture for the flocks of
your servants, since the famine in the land
of Canaan has been severe. So now,
please allow your servants to settle in the
land of Goshen."
5 Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Now that your
father and brothers have come to you, 6
the land of Egypt is before you; settle your
father and brothers in the best part of the
land. They may dwell in the land of
Goshen. And if you know of any talented
men among them, put them in charge of
my own livestock."
7 Then Joseph brought in his father Jacob
and presented him before Pharaoh, and
Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

8 "How many years have you lived?"
Pharaoh asked.
9 "My travels have lasted 130 years," Jacob replied. "My years have been few and hard, and they have not matched the years of the travels of my fathers."
10 Then Jacob blessed Pharaoh and departed from his presence.
11 So Joseph settled his father and brothers in the land of Egypt and gave them property in the best part of the land, the district of Rameses, as Pharaoh had commanded. 12 Joseph also provided his father and brothers and all his father's household with food for their families.

THE FAMINE CONTINUES

13 There was no food, however, in all that region, because the famine was so severe; the lands of Egypt and Canaan had been exhausted by the famine. 14 Joseph collected all the money to be found in the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan in exchange for the grain they were buying, and he brought it into Pharaoh's palace. 15 When the money from the lands of Egypt and Canaan was gone, all the Egyptians came to Joseph and said, "Give us food. Why should we die before your eyes? For our funds have run out!"
16 "Then bring me your livestock," said Joseph. "Since the money is gone, I will sell you food in exchange for your livestock." 17 So they brought their livestock to Joseph, and he gave them food in exchange for their horses, their flocks and herds, and their donkeys. Throughout that year he provided them with food in exchange for all their livestock.
18 When that year was over, they came to him the second year and said, "We cannot hide from our lord that our money is gone and all our livestock belongs to you. There is nothing left for our lord except our bodies and our land. 19 Why should we perish before your eyes—we and our land as well? Purchase us and our land in exchange for food. Then we, along with our land, will be slaves to Pharaoh. Give us seed that we may live and not die, and that the land may not become desolate."
20 So Joseph acquired for Pharaoh all the land in Egypt; the Egyptians, one and all, sold their fields because the famine was so severe upon them. The land became Pharaoh's, 21 and Joseph reduced the people to servitude from one end of Egypt to the other. 22 However, he did not acquire the priests' portion of the land, for it had been given to them by Pharaoh. They ate the rations that Pharaoh supplied; so they did not sell their land.
23 Then Joseph said to the people, "Now that I have acquired you and your land for Pharaoh this day, here is seed for you to sow in the land. 24 At harvest time, you are to give a fifth of it to Pharaoh, and four-fifths will be yours as seed for the field and food for yourselves and your households and children."
25 "You have saved our lives," they said. "We have found favor in our lord's eyes, and we will be Pharaoh's servants." 26 So Joseph established a law that a fifth of the produce belongs to Pharaoh, and it is in effect in the land of Egypt to this day. Only the priests' land does not belong to Pharaoh.

THE ISRAELITES PROSPER IN GOSHEN

27 Now the Israelites settled in the land of Egypt, in the region of Goshen. They acquired property there and became fruitful and increased greatly in number. 28 And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, and the length of his life was 147 years.
29 When the time drew near for Israel to die, he called his son Joseph and said to him, "If I have found favor in your eyes, put your hand under my thigh and promise to show me kindness and faithfulness. Do not bury me in Egypt, 30 but when I lie down with my fathers, carry me out of Egypt and bury me with them."
Joseph answered, "I will do as you have requested."
31 *"Swear to me," Jacob said.*

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

So Joseph swore to him, and Israel bowed in worship at the head of his bed.

48

CHAPTER 48 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob is dying, and he blesses Joseph's two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim. He crosses his arms and puts his right hand on the younger boy, and Joseph tries to fix it. Jacob says he knows exactly what he is doing. In Genesis the younger brother keeps getting the blessing, which is great news for younger brothers everywhere.

JACOB BLESSES EPHRAIM AND MANASSEH

1 Some time later Joseph was told, "Your
father is ill." So he set out with his two
sons, Manasseh and Ephraim. 2 When Ja-
cob was told, "Your son Joseph has come
to you," Israel rallied his strength and sat
up in bed.

3 Jacob said to Joseph, "God Almighty ap-
peared to me at Luz in the land of Canaan,
and there He blessed me 4 *and told me, 'Be-
hold, I will make you fruitful and multiply
you; I will make you a multitude of peoples,
and will give this land to your descendants af-
ter you as an everlasting possession.'*

5 And now your two sons born to you in
Egypt before I came to you here shall be
reckoned as mine; Ephraim and Manasseh
shall be mine, just as Reuben and Simeon
are mine. 6 Any children born to you after
them shall be yours, and they shall be
called by the names of their brothers in
the territory they inherit.

7 Now as for me, when I was returning
from Paddan, to my sorrow Rachel died
along the way in the land of Canaan,
some distance from Ephrath. So I buried
her there beside the road to Ephrath" (that
is, Bethlehem).

8 When Israel saw the sons of Joseph, he
asked, "Who are these?"

9 Joseph said to his father, "They are the
sons God has given me in this place."

So Jacob said, "Please bring them to me,
that I may bless them."

10 Now Israel's eyesight was poor because
of old age; he could hardly see. Joseph
brought his sons to him, and his father
kissed them and embraced them.

11 "I never expected to see your face
again," Israel said to Joseph, "but now
God has let me see your children as well."

12 Then Joseph removed his sons from his
father's knees and bowed facedown.

13 And Joseph took both of them—with
Ephraim in his right hand toward Israel's
left hand, and Manasseh in his left hand
toward Israel's right hand—and brought
them close to him. 14 But Israel stretched
out his right hand and put it on the head
of Ephraim, the younger; and crossing his
hands, he put his left on Manasseh's
head, although Manasseh was the first-
born. 15 Then he blessed Joseph and said:

"May the God before whom my fathers
Abraham and Isaac walked,
the God who has been my shepherd all
my life to this day,
16 the angel who has redeemed me from
all harm—
may He bless these boys.
And may they be called by my name
and the names of my fathers Abraham
and Isaac,
and may they grow into a multitude
upon the earth."

17 When Joseph saw that his father had
placed his right hand on Ephraim's head,
he was displeased and took his father's
hand to move it from Ephraim's head to
Manasseh's. 18 "Not so, my father!" Joseph
said. "This one is the firstborn; put your
right hand on his head."

19 But his father refused. "I know, my son, I
know!" he said. "He too shall become a
people, and he too shall be great; never-
theless, his younger brother shall be
greater than he, and his offspring shall
become a multitude of nations."

20 So that day Jacob blessed them and
said:

■ **GEN 47:31 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 11:21 p.1993
■ **GEN 48:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:5 p.1750

GEN 48:19 [PROPHECY] Jacob said Ephraim the younger would be greater than Manasseh → NUM 1:33-35; DT 33:17 p.225

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

"By you shall Israel pronounce this blessing:
'May God make you like Ephraim and Manasseh.'"
So he put Ephraim before Manasseh.
21 Then Israel said to Joseph, "Look, I am about to die, but God will be with you and bring you back to the land of your fathers.
22 And to you, as one who is above your brothers, I give the ridge of land that I took from the Amorites with my sword and bow."

49

CHAPTER 49 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob gathers his twelve sons and tells them what will happen to their families in the days to come. Some get praise and some get called out. Judah gets the big one: the scepter will not depart from Judah until the One comes to whom it belongs. Then Jacob pulls his feet into the bed and breathes his last.

JACOB BLESSES HIS SONS

1 Then Jacob called for his sons and said, "Gather around so that I can tell you what will happen to you in the days to come:

2 Come together and listen, O sons of Jacob
listen to your father Israel.

3 Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might,
and the beginning of my strength,
excelling in honor,
excelling in power.
4 Uncontrolled as the waters,
you will no longer excel,
because you went up to your father's bed,
onto my couch, and defiled it.

5 Simeon and Levi are brothers;
their swords are weapons of violence.
6 May I never enter their council;
may I never join their assembly.
For they kill men in their anger,
and hamstring oxen on a whim.
7 Cursed be their anger, for it is strong,
and their wrath, for it is cruel!
I will disperse them in Jacob
and scatter them in Israel.

8 Judah, your brothers shall praise you.
Your hand shall be on the necks of your enemies;
your father's sons shall bow down to you.
9 Judah is a young lion—
my son, you return from the prey.
Like a lion he crouches and lies down;
like a lioness, who dares to rouse him?
10 The scepter will not depart from Judah,
nor the staff from between his feet,
until Shiloh comes
and the allegiance of the nations is his.
11 He ties his donkey to the vine,
his colt to the choicest branch.
He washes his garments in wine,
his robes in the blood of grapes.
12 His eyes are darker than wine,
and his teeth are whiter than milk.

13 Zebulun shall dwell by the seashore
and become a harbor for ships;
his border shall extend to Sidon.

14 Issachar is a strong donkey,
lying down between the sheepfolds.
15 He saw that his resting place was good
and that his land was pleasant,
so he bent his shoulder to the burden
and submitted to labor as a servant.

16 Dan shall provide justice for his people
as one of the tribes of Israel.
17 He will be a snake by the road,
a viper in the path
that bites the horse's heels
so that its rider tumbles backward.

- **GEN 49:3 [PROPHECY]** Reuben → 1CH 5:1 p.673
- **GEN 49:5 [PROPHECY]** Simeon and Levi → Fulfilled
- **GEN 49:8 [PROPHECY]** Judah's brothers would bow to him and he would rule over his enemies → 1CH 5:2; 2SA 5:1-3 p.673
- **GEN 49:9 [PROPHECY]** Judah is a young lion → REV 5:5 p.2091
- **GEN 49:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 5:5 p.2091
- **GEN 49:10 [PROPHECY]** The Messiah would come before the scepter departed from Judah → LK 2:1-7; GAL 4:4 · MEDIUM p.1647
- **GEN 49:10 [PROPHECY]** Messiah would come from the tribe of Judah → LK 3:33 p.1654
- **GEN 49:10 [PROPHECY]** To Him the obedience of the peoples would belong → JN 10:16 p.1717
- **GEN 49:11 [PROPHECY]** He ties his donkey's colt to the vine and washes his robes in wine → MT 21:2-7; REV 19:13 · MEDIUM p.1580
- **GEN 49:13 [PROPHECY]** Zebulun shall dwell by the seashore; he shall become a haven for ships → Fulfilled
- **GEN 49:14 [PROPHECY]** Issachar → Fulfilled · MEDIUM
- **GEN 49:16 [PROPHECY]** Dan would provide justice for his people → JUDG 13:2; JUDG 16:31 · MEDIUM p.401

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

18 I await Your salvation, O Yahweh.

19 Gad will be attacked by raiders,
but he will attack their heels.

20 Asher's food will be rich;
he shall provide royal delicacies.

21 Naphtali is a doe set free
that bears beautiful fawns.

22 Joseph is a fruitful vine—
a fruitful vine by a spring,
whose branches scale the wall.
23 The archers attacked him with bitterness;
they aimed at him in hostility.
24 Yet he steadied his bow,
and his strong arms were tempered
by the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob,
in the name of the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel,
25 by the God of your father who helps you,
and by the Almighty who blesses you,
with blessings of the heavens above,
with blessings of the depths below,
with blessings of the breasts and womb.
26 The blessings of your father have surpassed
the blessings of the ancient mountains
and the bounty of the everlasting hills.
May they rest on the head of Joseph,
on the brow of the prince of his brothers.

27 Benjamin is a ravenous wolf;
in the morning he devours the prey,
in the evening he divides the plunder."

28 These are the tribes of Israel, twelve in all, and this was what their father said to them. He blessed them, and he blessed each one with a suitable blessing.

- **GEN 49:17 [PROPHECY]** Dan would be like a snake by the road that strikes suddenly → JUDG 18:27-30 · MEDIUM p.410
- **GEN 49:18 [FORESHADOW]** Jacob waits for Yahweh's salvation → LK 2:30 · MEDIUM p.1650
- **GEN 49:19 [PROPHECY]** Gad → 1CH 5:18-22 · MEDIUM p.674
- **GEN 49:20 [PROPHECY]** Asher → DT 33:24 · MEDIUM p.331
- **GEN 49:21 [PROPHECY]** Naphtali is a deer let loose; he uses beautiful words → JUDG 4:6; 5:18 · MEDIUM p.386
- **GEN 49:22 [PROPHECY]** Joseph → Fulfilled in Joseph's history; his sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the largest tribes
- **GEN 49:27 [PROPHECY]** Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night divide the spoil → JUDG 20:15-16; 1SA 9:1-2 · MEDIUM p.415

THE DEATH OF JACOB

29 Then Jacob instructed them, "I am about to be gathered to my people. Bury me with my fathers in the cave in the field of Ephron the Hittite. 30 The cave is in the field of Machpelah near Mamre, in the land of Canaan. This is the field Abraham purchased from Ephron the Hittite as a burial site. 31 There Abraham and his wife Sarah are buried, there Isaac and his wife Rebekah are buried, and there I buried Leah. 32 The field and the cave that is in it were purchased from the Hittites."

33 When Jacob had finished instructing his sons, he pulled his feet into the bed and breathed his last, and he was gathered to his people.

50

CHAPTER 50 IN 30 SECONDS

Egypt mourns Jacob for seventy days, and Joseph carries him home to the family cave. The brothers panic that Joseph will finally get revenge now that Dad is gone. Joseph weeps and says, You meant evil against me, but God meant it for good. Joseph dies at 110 and makes them promise to carry his bones home when God brings them out.

MOURNING AND BURIAL FOR JACOB

1 Then Joseph fell upon his father's face, wept over him, and kissed him.

2 And Joseph directed the physicians in his service to embalm his father Israel. So they embalmed him, 3 taking the forty days required to complete the embalming. And the Egyptians mourned for him seventy days.

4 When the days of mourning had passed, Joseph said to Pharaoh's court, "If I have found favor in your eyes, please tell Pharaoh that 5 my father made me swear an oath when he said, 'I am about to die. You must bury me in the tomb that I dug for myself in the land of Canaan.' Now let me go and bury my father, and then return."

6 Pharaoh replied, "Go up and bury your father, as he made you swear to do."

- **GEN 50:1 [FULFILLS]** God told Jacob he would become a great nation in Egypt, be brought back, and Joseph would close his eyes ← GEN 46:3-4 p.109

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

7 Then Joseph went to bury his father, and
all the servants of Pharaoh accompanied
him—the elders of Pharaoh's household
and all the elders of the land of Egypt— 8
along with all of Joseph's household, and
his brothers, and his father's household.
Only their children and flocks and herds
were left in Goshen.

9 Chariots and horsemen alike went up
with him, and it was an exceedingly large
procession. 10 When they reached the
threshing floor of Atad, which is across
the Jordan, they lamented and wailed
loudly, and Joseph mourned for his father
seven days.

11 When the Canaanites of the land saw the
mourning at the threshing floor of Atad,
they said, "This is a solemn ceremony of
mourning by the Egyptians." Thus the
place across the Jordan is called Abel-
mizraim.

12 So Jacob's sons did as he had charged
them. 13 They carried him to the land of
Canaan and buried him in the cave at
Machpelah in the field near Mamre, which
Abraham had purchased from Ephron the
Hittite as a burial site.

14 After Joseph had buried his father, he
returned to Egypt with his brothers and all
who had gone with him to bury his father.

JOSEPH COMFORTS HIS BROTHERS

15 When Joseph's brothers saw that their
father was dead, they said, "What if
Joseph bears a grudge? Then he will
surely repay us for all the evil that we did
to him."

16 So they sent word to Joseph, saying,
"Before he died, your father commanded,
17 'This is what you are to say to Joseph: I
beg you, please forgive the transgression
and sin of your brothers, for they did you
wrong.' So now, Joseph, please forgive
the transgression of the servants of the
God of your father."

When their message came to him, Joseph
wept. 18 His brothers also came to him,
bowed down before him, and said, "We
are your slaves!"

19 But Joseph replied, "Do not be afraid.
Am I in the place of God? 20 As for you,
what you intended against me for evil,
God intended for good, in order to accom-
plish a day like this—to preserve the lives
of many people. 21 Therefore do not be
afraid. I will provide for you and your little
ones." So Joseph reassured his brothers
and spoke kindly to them.

THE DEATH OF JOSEPH

22 Now Joseph and his father's household
remained in Egypt, and Joseph lived to
the age of 110. 23 He saw Ephraim's sons
to the third generation, and indeed the
sons of Machir son of Manasseh were
brought up on Joseph's knees.

24 Then Joseph said to his brothers, "I am
about to die, but God will surely visit you
and bring you up from this land to the land
He promised on oath to Abraham, Isaac,
and Jacob." 25 And Joseph made the sons
of Israel take an oath and said, "God will
surely attend to you, and then you must
carry my bones up from this place."

26 So Joseph died at the age of 110. And
they embalmed his body and placed it in a
coffin in Egypt.

GEN 50:13 [FULFILLS] God told Jacob he would become a great nation in Egypt, be brought back, and Joseph would close his eyes ← GEN 46:3-4 p.109

GEN 50:18 [FULFILLS] Joseph dreamed his brothers and family would bow down to him ← GEN 37:7-9 p.97

GEN 50:20 [FORESHADOW] What Joseph's brothers meant for evil, God meant for good to save many lives → ACTS 7:9-10; ACTS 2:23 · MEDIUM p.1750

GEN 50:20 [HEART] Joseph tells his brothers you meant it for evil, but God meant it for good. God sees the intention behind the act.

GEN 50:24 [PROPHECY] Joseph said God would bring Israel out of Egypt and to take his bones with them → EX 13:19; JOSH 24:32 p.139

BOOK 2 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · BOOKS OF MOSES

EXODUS

Let My people go

AUTHOR	Moses, according to Jewish and Christian tradition. Jesus called it the book of Moses Mark 12:26. Many modern scholars think it was put together from older sources over time.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From slavery in Egypt to the tabernacle at Mount Sinai. The date is debated: about 1446 BC from 1 Kings 6:1, or about 1270 BC in the time of Ramesses II.
DATE WRITTEN	Traditionally about 1440 to 1400 BC, during the forty years in the wilderness. Many scholars say it reached its final form much later, around 500 BC.
WRITTEN TO	The people of Israel, so they would never forget who rescued them.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	About fifteen copies of Exodus were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. It was also translated into Greek, in the Septuagint, around 250 BC.
KEY VERSE	Exodus 20:2. I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.



ONE OF THE OLDEST PIECES OF EXODUS
This scroll is called 4QExod Lev f, which means a copy of Exodus and Leviticus from Cave 4 at Qumran. It was found with the Dead Sea Scrolls, and the photo shows all of its surviving pieces. They hold parts of the last chapters of Exodus and the first chapter of Leviticus, all on one scroll. Experts date it by its handwriting to about 250 BC, which makes it one of the oldest Bible scrolls ever found. That is about 250 years before Jesus was born. It is kept in Jerusalem.

Historical Setting

Egypt was the richest and strongest nation on earth. Its Pharaohs were worshiped as gods, and so were the Nile, the sun, frogs and cows. Jacob's family had moved there in a famine, and they settled in Goshen, the green land of the Nile Delta. Over time they grew into a huge nation, and a new Pharaoh made them slaves. Which Pharaoh is not named. The early date points to Thutmose III or Amenhotep II, the late date to Ramesses II, one of Egypt's most famous builders.

What Was Going Wrong

SLAVERY AND MURDER. Pharaoh worked Israel without mercy and ordered every Hebrew baby boy thrown into the Nile 1:13 to 14, 1:22.
THE GODS OF EGYPT. Egypt worshiped many gods, and God said He would bring judgment on all of them 12:12.
A HARD HEART. Pharaoh hardened his heart again and again, even when he could see what God was doing 8:15, 8:32, 9:34.
A LEADER FULL OF EXCUSES. Moses told God five different ways that he was the wrong man for the job 3:11, 3:13, 4:1, 4:10, 4:13.
GRUMBLING. Days after the sea parted, the people were complaining about water, food and Moses 15:24, 16:2 to 3, 17:3.
THE GOLDEN CALF. Forty days after they promised to obey, they made an idol and threw a party for it 24:7, 32:1 to 6.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Exodus means the way out. It is the great rescue story of the Old Testament. God hears His people crying in slavery and sends Moses to Pharaoh with one message: Let My people go. Ten plagues later, the blood of the Passover lamb saves Israel, and they walk out of Egypt through the middle of the sea. At Mount Sinai God gives them His law and makes them His own nation. Then He gives them plans for a tent so He can live in the middle of their camp. The book ends with His glory filling the tabernacle.

Exodus at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**SLAVES IN EGYPT** Israel grows, Pharaoh panics, and baby Moses floats down the Nile.
CH 3 to 4	**THE BURNING BUSH** God calls Moses and tells him His name.
CH 5 to 11	**THE PLAGUES** Ten plagues show Egypt who the real God is.
CH 12 to 15	**PASSOVER AND THE SEA** The blood of the lamb, the night of escape and the sea that splits.
CH 15 to 18	**THE WILDERNESS** Bitter water, manna, water from the rock and a battle.
CH 19 to 24	**MOUNT SINAI** The Ten Commandments and the covenant.
CH 25 to 31	**THE PLANS** God's blueprint for the tabernacle and the priests.
CH 32 to 34	**THE GOLDEN CALF** Israel breaks the covenant, Moses prays and God renews it.
CH 35 to 40	**THE BUILD** The tabernacle goes up, and God's glory moves in.

Where Jesus Shows Up

EXODUS 3:14 God's name I AM. Jesus said, Before Abraham was born, I am, in John 8:58.

EXODUS 12:5 TO 13 The spotless Passover lamb. Christ is our Passover lamb, 1 Corinthians 5:7.

EXODUS 12:46 Not one bone of the lamb was to be broken, fulfilled at the cross, John 19:36.

EXODUS 16:4 Bread from heaven. Jesus is the true bread from heaven, John 6:32 to 35.

EXODUS 17:6 Water from the rock. Paul says that rock was Christ in 1 Corinthians 10:4.

EXODUS 25:8 God's tent among His people. The Word pitched His tent among us, John 1:14.

GOD'S NAMES IN EXODUS

Exodus is where God tells His name: I AM WHO I AM 3:14, and His personal name, YHWH, printed Yahweh 3:15. Abraham, Isaac and Jacob knew Him as God Almighty 6:3. You also meet Yahweh who heals you 15:26, Yahweh is my banner 17:15 and Yahweh whose name is Jealous 34:14.

What to Watch for in Exodus

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (14)	3:13-15, 12:5, 12:13, 12:21-27, 12:46, 14:22, 16:4 and 7 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (18)	1:7, 3:12, 3:18-22, 4:22-23, 7:1-25, 8:1-32, 9:1-35 and 16 more
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	32:4
THE HEART (4)	25:2, 35:5, 35:21, 35:29
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	1:11
MIRACLES (17)	3:1-6, 4:1-9, 13:21-22, 14:19-21, 14:26-28, 15:23-25, 17:1-5 and 9 more
DEMONIC (13)	20:3-5, 20:23, 22:18, 22:20, 23:13, 23:24, 23:32-33 and 6 more
NOTABLE (4)	25:10, 27:21, 30:23-24, 30:34
GOD SPEAKING (562 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (2 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE TEN COMMANDMENTS SHOW UP TWICE

They are in Exodus 20 and Deuteronomy 5, with small differences, mostly in the Sabbath command. Before the Dead Sea Scrolls, the oldest Hebrew Bible text known was the Nash Papyrus, with the Ten Commandments on it.

WHY MOSES HAS HORNS

Exodus 34:29 says Moses' face was shining. The Hebrew word for shine is close to horn, and the old Latin Bible said horned. So Michelangelo's Moses has two little horns.

WHAT IS IT

Manna comes from man hu, Hebrew for What is it? Israel ate a question for forty years.

THE FIRST SPIRIT FILLED ARTIST

Bezalel is filled with God's Spirit to do art, 31:2 to 5. God cares about beauty.

THE BLUEPRINTS TAKE UP A THIRD

Thirteen of forty chapters are about the tabernacle, where God would meet His people.

THE FIRSTBORN ARE BOUGHT BACK

Every firstborn belongs to God, but Israel buys back each firstborn son instead of sacrificing him 13:13, 34:20. The nations burned children, which God hated Leviticus 18:21.

Did Anybody Listen?

Sometimes. Forty days after promising to obey, they made a golden calf. But Moses prayed, God forgave them, and Exodus ends with God's glory filling the tent.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | ARCHAEOLOGY | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Jacob's family grows from seventy people into a nation, and a new Pharaoh who never knew Joseph gets nervous. He turns them into slaves and makes them build store cities. When that does not slow them down, he orders the Hebrew midwives to kill the baby boys. The midwives fear God more than Pharaoh and quietly refuse.

THE ISRAELITES MULTIPLY IN EGYPT // GENESIS 46:7–27

1 These are the names of the sons of Israel
who went to Egypt with Jacob, each with
his family:
2 Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah;
3 Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin;
4 Dan and Naphtali;
Gad and Asher.
5 The descendants of Jacob numbered
seventy in all, including Joseph, who was
already in Egypt.
6 Now Joseph and all his brothers and all
that generation died, 7 but the Israelites
were fruitful and increased rapidly; they
multiplied and became exceedingly numerous, so that the land was filled with
them.

OPPRESSION BY A NEW KING // ACTS 7:15–19

8 *Then a new king, who did not know Joseph,*
came to power in Egypt. 9 "Look," he said to
his people, "the Israelites have become
too numerous and too powerful for us. 10
Come, let us deal shrewdly with them, or
they will increase even more; and if a war
breaks out, they may join our enemies,
fight against us, and leave the country."
11 So the Egyptians appointed taskmasters
over the Israelites to oppress them with
forced labor. As a result, they built Pithom
and Rameses as store cities for Pharaoh.
12 But the more they were oppressed, the
more they multiplied and flourished; so
the Egyptians came to dread the Israelites.

- **EX 1:7 [FULFILLS]** God promised Abraham a land, descendants, and that he would father a great nation ← GEN 12:1-3 p.62
- **EX 1:7 [FULFILLS]** God told Jacob he would become a great nation in Egypt, be brought back, and Joseph would close his eyes ← GEN 46:3-4 p.109
- **EX 1:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:18 p.1751
- **EX 1:11 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The store cities named in Exodus are real Egyptian sites → FIELD NOTES p.120
- **EX 1:11 [NOTE]** WHEN? See When Was the Exodus?

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

PITHOM AND PI RAMESSES

EXODUS 1:11 · EXODUS 12:37 · GENESIS 47:11



The feet of a giant statue of Ramesses II, still lying in a farm field at Qantir, the site of Pi Ramesses.

WHAT IT IS

Two real Egyptian cities in the eastern Nile Delta, the same area as the land of Goshen. Raamses was Pi Ramesses, which means House of Ramesses, the giant capital city of Pharaoh Ramesses II. Pithom means House of the god Atum.

HOW OLD IT IS

Pi Ramesses was built by Ramesses II starting about 1270 BC, right on top of an older city called Avaris, which goes back to about 1800 BC. Many people from Canaan lived at Avaris. Pithom is either Tell el Retaba, which was busy in the time of Ramesses, or Tell el Maskhuta, which is mostly from about 600 BC. Which site is Pithom is disputed.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

People once thought Pi Ramesses was Tanis, because statues of Ramesses were found there. Then Manfred Bietak, starting in 1966, and Edgar Pusch, starting in 1980, showed the real city was at Tell el Dab'a and Qantir. Later Pharaohs had hauled its stones to Tanis. Edouard Naville dug at Tell el Maskhuta in 1883, and a Polish and Slovak team has worked at Tell el Retaba since 2007.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

Scans under the fields at Qantir show palaces, temples and stables for hun-

dreds of chariot horses, built with mud brick, the work Exodus 1:14 describes.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The sites are mostly farm fields and mounds in the Nile Delta of Egypt. Many finds are in Egyptian museums and the Roemer and Pelizaeus Museum in Hildesheim, Germany.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The cities in Exodus 1:11 were real places in the right part of Egypt, with huge building projects going on.

THE BIG DEBATE

The name Raamses points many scholars to the late date, about 1270 BC. People who hold the early date, about 1446 BC, say a later writer updated the city name, just as Genesis 47:11 says land of Rameses long before any Ramesses was born.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No record found so far names Hebrew slaves or Moses at these cities. The cities fit the story, but direct evidence of Israel there has not been found.

13 They worked the Israelites ruthlessly 14 and made their lives bitter with hard labor in brick and mortar, and with all kinds of work in the fields. Every service they imposed was harsh.

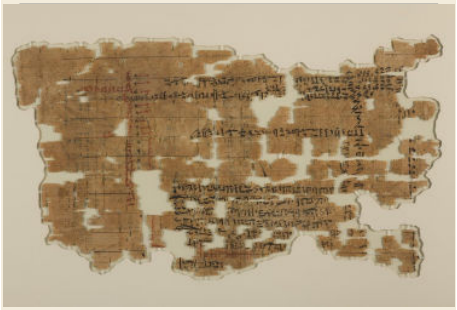
15 Then the king of Egypt said to the Hebrew midwives, whose names were Shiphrah and Puah, 16 "When you help the Hebrew women give birth, observe them on the birthstools. If the child is a son, kill him; but if it is a daughter, let her live."

■ **EX 1:15 [FIELD NOTES]** An Egyptian list of household servants from about 1740 BC includes a woman named Shiphrah. See the Brooklyn Papyrus Field Notes page, p.121.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE PAPYRUS, MEDIUM FOR THE LINK

THE BROOKLYN PAPYRUS

EXODUS 1:13 TO 15 · GENESIS 39:1



The Brooklyn Papyrus, written in hieratic, a fast handwritten form of Egyptian writing.

WHAT IT IS

A long Egyptian papyrus scroll. On one side are prison and court records. On the other side is a list of 95 servants who belonged to one wealthy Egyptian household.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1740 BC, in the time of Pharaoh Sobekhotep III. Experts date it by the names of the kings and officials written in it, so this date is fairly firm.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

An American collector named Charles Edwin Wilbour bought it in Egypt in the 1880s. It went to the Brooklyn Museum in 1935, and the Egyptologist William Hayes published it in 1955.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

About 45 of the 95 servants are called Aamu, the Egyptian word for people from Canaan and Syria. Many have Semitic names, the same family of languages as Hebrew. One woman on the list is named Shiphrah, the same name as one of the Hebrew midwives in Exodus 1:15. Some scholars think they also see names like Asher and Issachar, but those readings are debated.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Brooklyn Museum in New York City.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

People from Canaan really lived and worked as servants in Egyptian homes, with Semitic names that sound like names in the Bible. The life of Joseph as a slave in Potiphar's house and the

Hebrew servants in Exodus fit this world.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This Shiphrah is not the midwife from Exodus. She is a different woman with the same name. The list does not mention Israel, Moses or the Exodus.

17 The midwives, however, feared God and
did not do as the king of Egypt had in-
structed; they let the boys live. 18 So the
king of Egypt summoned the midwives
and asked them, "Why have you done
this? Why have you let the boys live?"
19 The midwives answered Pharaoh, "The
Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian
women, for they are vigorous and give
birth before a midwife arrives."
20 So God was good to the midwives, and
the people multiplied and became even
more numerous. 21 And because the mid-
wives feared God, He gave them families
of their own.
22 Then Pharaoh commanded all his peo-
ple: "Every son born to the Hebrews you
must throw into the Nile, but every daugh-
ter you may allow to live."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS THE EXODUS?

Two Dates, One Story

EXODUS 1:11 · 12:40 TO 41 · 1 KINGS 6:1 · JUDGES 11:26 · JOSHUA 6 AND 11

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Solomon began the temple in the 480th year after Israel came out of Egypt, in the fourth year of his reign, 1 Kings 6:1. That was about 966 BC, which puts the Exodus about 1446 BC. Jephthah says Israel had lived in the land about 300 years, Judges 11:26. But Exodus 1:11 says the Hebrew slaves built the store cities Pithom and Rameses, and the great city of Pi Ramesses was built by Pharaoh Ramesses II, who ruled about 1279 to 1213 BC.

THE EARLY DATE, ABOUT 1446 BC

Take 1 Kings 6:1 at face value. Pharaoh would be Thutmose III or Amenhotep II. The name Rameses was updated by a later writer, just as Genesis 47:11 says land of Rameses long before any Ramesses was born. In the 1930s John Garstang dated the fall of Jericho's walls to about 1400 BC, and in 1990 Bryant Wood argued for that date again from the pottery. Letters found at Amarna in Egypt, from the 1300s BC, complain of raiders called Habiru in Canaan, which some link to the Hebrews.

THE LATE DATE, ABOUT 1270 BC

Pharaoh is Ramesses II, or his father Seti I. The 480 years is twelve generations of 40 years, a round number; real generations are closer to 25 years, which gives about 300 years. In the 1950s Kathleen Kenyon dated Jericho's fall to about 1550 BC, with little there in 1400. Hazor, which Joshua burned, 11:11, was destroyed in the 1200s BC.

THE 430 YEARS

Israel lived in Egypt 430 years, 12:40. The Greek Septuagint and the Samaritan text say in Egypt and Canaan, counting from Abraham, and Paul counts 430 years from the promise to the Law, Galatians 3:17. So some say Israel was in Egypt only about 215 years. This changes the story of the patriarchs, not the date of the Exodus itself.

What the Ground Says

EXODUS 12:37 TO 41 · 14:28 · JOSHUA 11:10 TO 13

THE FIRM DATE

The Merneptah Stele, about 1208 BC, names Israel as a people in Canaan. So Israel was there by then. Both views fit, the late date just barely. See The Merneptah Stele Field Notes page, p.138.

THE SKEPTICAL VIEW

Some scholars think there was no large Exodus at all, or only a small group that escaped Egypt, and that Israel mostly grew up inside Canaan. They point out that Egyptian records never mention it. Others answer that Pharaohs did not carve their defeats in stone, and that the Bible's details about Egypt fit the times. See the Pithom and Pi Ramesses and Brooklyn Papyrus Field Notes pages, p.120.

BE CAREFUL WITH

The Ipuwer Papyrus is often called an

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

Egyptian record of the plagues, but most scholars date it centuries earlier; see its page, p.130. Claims of chariot wheels found in the Red Sea have never been backed by real archaeologists. Movies like The Ten Commandments, 1956, and The Prince of Egypt, 1998, made Ramesses II the Pharaoh of the Exodus, but the Bible never names him.

HOW MANY?

About 600,000 men on foot, besides women and children, 12:37, perhaps two million people. Some read the Hebrew word for thousand, elef, as a clan or military unit, which would make the number much smaller. Others take the number as written.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Every believing view agrees God brought Israel out of Egypt with a mighty hand, 13:3, and that the Passover points to Jesus, our Passover lamb, 1 Corinthians 5:7. The date changes the calendar, not the story.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

A Hebrew mom hides her baby boy, then floats him down the Nile in a basket. Pharaoh's own daughter finds him, adopts him and names him Moses, and his real mom gets paid to nurse him. Grown up Moses kills an Egyptian who was beating a Hebrew and runs for his life to Midian. Meanwhile God hears His people groaning.

THE BIRTH AND ADOPTION OF MOSES // ACTS 7:20–22; HEBREWS 11:23

1 Now a man of the house of Levi married
a Levite woman, 2 and she conceived and
gave birth to a son. When she saw that he
was a beautiful child, she hid him for three
months.

3 But when she could no longer hide him,
she got him a papyrus basket and coated
it with tar and pitch. Then she placed the
child in the basket and set it among the
reeds along the bank of the Nile. 4 And his
sister stood at a distance to see what
would happen to him.

5 Soon the daughter of Pharaoh went
down to bathe in the Nile, and her attendants were walking along the riverbank.
And when she saw the basket among the
reeds, she sent her maidservant to retrieve it. 6 When she opened it, she saw
the child, and behold, the little boy was
crying. So she had compassion on him
and said, "This is one of the Hebrew children."

7 Then his sister said to Pharaoh's daughter, "Shall I go and call one of the Hebrew
women to nurse the child for you?"

8 "Go ahead," Pharaoh's daughter told her.
And the girl went and called the boy's
mother.

9 Pharaoh's daughter said to her, "Take
this child and nurse him for me, and I will
pay your wages." So the woman took the
boy and nursed him.

10 When the child had grown older, she
brought him to Pharaoh's daughter, and he
became her son. She named him Moses
and explained, "I drew him out of the water."

THE REJECTION AND FLIGHT OF MOSES // ACTS 7:23–29

11 One day, after Moses had grown up, he
went out to his own people and observed
their hard labor. He saw an Egyptian beating a Hebrew, one of his own people. 12
After looking this way and that and seeing
no one, he struck down the Egyptian and
hid his body in the sand.

13 The next day Moses went out and saw
two Hebrews fighting. He asked the one in
the wrong, "Why are you attacking your
companion?"

14 *But the man replied, "Who made you ruler*
and judge over us? Are you planning to kill me
as you killed the Egyptian?"

Then Moses was afraid and thought, "This
thing I have done has surely become known."

15 When Pharaoh heard about this matter,
he sought to kill Moses. But Moses fled
from Pharaoh and settled in the land of
Midian, where he sat down beside a well.

16 Now the priest of Midian had seven
daughters, and they came to draw water

■ **EX 2:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:27-28 p.1751
■ **EX 2:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:35 p.1751

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

and fill the troughs to water their father's flock. 17 And when some shepherds came along and drove them away, Moses rose up to help them and watered their flock.

18 When the daughters returned to their father Reuel, he asked them, "Why have you returned so early today?"

19 "An Egyptian rescued us from the shepherds," they replied. "He even drew water for us and watered the flock."

20 "So where is he?" their father asked. "Why did you leave the man behind? Invite him to have something to eat."

21 Moses agreed to stay with the man, and he gave his daughter Zipporah to Moses in marriage. 22 And she gave birth to a son, and Moses named him Gershom, saying, "I have become a foreigner in a foreign land."

GOD HEARS THE CRY OF THE ISRAELITES

23 After a long time, the king of Egypt died. The Israelites groaned and cried out under their burden of slavery, and their cry for deliverance from bondage ascended to God.

24 So God heard their groaning, and He remembered His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. 25 God saw the Israelites and took notice.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses is watching sheep for forty years when a bush catches fire and does not burn up. God speaks from the flames and tells him to take off his sandals. God says He has seen His people suffer and is sending Moses to Pharaoh. Moses asks for God's name, and God says, I AM WHO I AM.

MOSES AT THE BURNING BUSH // ACTS 7:30–38

1 Meanwhile, Moses was shepherding the flock of his father-in-law Jethro, the priest of Midian. He led the flock to the far side of the wilderness and came to Horeb, the mountain of God. 2 There the angel of Yahweh appeared to him in a blazing fire from within a bush. Moses saw the bush ablaze with fire, but it was not consumed.

3 So Moses thought, "I must go over and see this marvelous sight. Why is the bush not burning up?"

4 When Yahweh saw that he had gone over to look, God called out to him from within the bush, "Moses, Moses!"

"Here I am," he answered.

5 *"Do not come any closer," God said. "Take off your sandals, for the place where you are standing is holy ground."* 6 *Then He said, "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob."*

At this, Moses hid his face, for he was afraid to look at God.

7 *Yahweh said, "I have indeed seen the affliction of My people in Egypt. I have heard them crying out because of their oppressors, and I am aware of their sufferings.* 8 *I have come down to rescue them from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring them up out of that land to a good and spacious land, a land flowing with milk and honey—the home of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites.*

9 And now the cry of the Israelites has reached Me, and I have seen how severely the Egyptians are oppressing them.

10 *Therefore, go! I am sending you to Pharaoh to bring My people the Israelites out of Egypt."*

11 But Moses asked God, "Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites out of Egypt?"

12 "I will surely be with you," God said, "and this will be the sign to you that I have sent you: When you have brought the people out of Egypt, all of you will worship God on this mountain."

- **EX 3:1 [MIRACLE]** Burning bush — fire that does not consume
- **EX 3:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:33-34 p.1751
- **EX 3:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 22:32 p.1584
- **EX 3:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:26 p.1630
- **EX 3:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 20:37 p.1684
- **EX 3:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 3:13 p.1746
- **EX 3:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:32 p.1751
- **EX 3:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:33-34 p.1751
- **EX 3:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:33-34 p.1751
- **EX 3:12 [PROPHECY]** God told Moses the people would worship Him on this same mountain → EX 19:1-2; EX 24:4-5 p.147

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | GOD SPEAKING

13 Then Moses asked God, "Suppose I go
to the Israelites and say to them, 'The God
of your fathers has sent me to you,' and
they ask me, 'What is His name?' What
should I tell them?"

14 God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM.
This is what you are to say to the Is-
raelites: 'I AM has sent me to you.'"

15 God also told Moses, "Say to the Is-
raelites, 'Yahweh, the God of your
fathers—the God of Abraham, the God of
Isaac, and the God of Jacob—has sent me
to you.' This is My name forever, and this
is how I am to be remembered in every
generation.

16 Go, assemble the elders of Israel and
say to them, 'Yahweh, the God of your
fathers—the God of Abraham, Isaac, and
Jacob—has appeared to me and said: I
have surely attended to you and have
seen what has been done to you in Egypt.
17 And I have promised to bring you up out
of your affliction in Egypt, into the land of
the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Per-
izzites, Hivites, and Jebusites—a land
flowing with milk and honey.'

18 The elders of Israel will listen to what
you say, and you must go with them to the
king of Egypt and tell him, 'Yahweh, the
God of the Hebrews, has met with us.
Now please let us take a three-day jour-
ney into the wilderness, so that we may
sacrifice to Yahweh our God.'

19 But I know that the king of Egypt will not
allow you to go unless a mighty hand
compels him. 20 So I will stretch out My
hand and strike the Egyptians with all the
wonders I will perform among them. And
after that, he will release you.

21 And I will grant this people such favor in
the sight of the Egyptians that when you
leave, you will not go away empty-
handed. 22 Every woman shall ask her
neighbor and any woman staying in her
house for silver and gold jewelry and
clothing, and you will put them on your
sons and daughters. So you will plunder
the Egyptians."

EX 3:13 [FORESHADOW] God reveals His name I AM → JN 8:58 · MEDIUM p.1714
EX 3:15 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 3:13 p.1746
EX 3:18 [PROPHECY] God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth → EX 7-12 p.129

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses has a long list of excuses. God turns his staff into a snake and back, and makes his hand sick and then healthy again. Moses says he is a bad speaker, and God says, Who made your mouth? Moses finally just asks God to send someone else. So God sends his brother Aaron along to do the talking.

MOSES' STAFF

1 Then Moses answered, "What if they do
not believe me or listen to my voice? For
they may say, 'Yahweh has not appeared
to you.'"

2 And Yahweh asked him, "What is that in
your hand?"

"A staff," he replied.

3 "Throw it on the ground," said Yahweh.
So Moses threw it on the ground, and it
became a snake, and he ran from it.

4 "Stretch out your hand and grab it by the
tail," Yahweh said to Moses, who reached
out his hand and caught the snake, and it
turned back into a staff in his hand. 5 "This
is so that they may believe that Yahweh,
the God of their fathers—the God of Abra-
ham, the God of Isaac, and the God of
Jacob—has appeared to you."

MOSES' HAND

6 Furthermore, Yahweh said to Moses,
"Put your hand inside your cloak." So he
put his hand inside his cloak, and when he
took it out, his hand was leprous, white as
snow.

7 "Put your hand back inside your cloak,"
said Yahweh.

So Moses put his hand back inside his
cloak, and when he took it out, it was re-
stored, like the rest of his skin.

8 And Yahweh said, "If they refuse to be-
lieve you or heed the witness of the first
sign, they may believe that of the second.
9 But if they do not believe even these two
signs or listen to your voice, take some

EX 4:1 [MIRACLE] Moses' staff to serpent; hand becomes leprous and is healed; water to blood

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

water from the Nile and pour it on the dry ground. Then the water you take from the Nile will become blood on the ground."

THE APPOINTMENT OF AARON

10 "Please, Lord," Moses replied, "I have never been eloquent, neither in the past nor since You have spoken to Your servant, for I am slow of speech and tongue."

11 And Yahweh said to him, "Who gave man his mouth? Or who makes the mute or the deaf, the sighted or the blind? Is it not I, Yahweh? 12 Now go! I will help you as you speak, and I will teach you what to say."

13 But Moses replied, "Please, Lord, send someone else."

14 Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Moses, and He said, "Is not Aaron the Levite your brother? I know that he can speak well, and he is now on his way to meet you. When he sees you, he will be glad in his heart. 15 You are to speak to him and put the words in his mouth. I will help both of you to speak, and I will teach you what to do. 16 He will speak to the people for you. He will be your spokesman, and it will be as if you were God to him. 17 But take this staff in your hand so you can perform signs with it."

MOSES LEAVES FOR EGYPT

18 Then Moses went back to his father-in-law Jethro and said to him, "Please let me return to my brothers in Egypt to see if they are still alive."

"Go in peace," Jethro replied.

19 Now Yahweh had said to Moses in Midian, "Go back to Egypt, for all the men who sought to kill you are dead." 20 So Moses took his wife and sons, put them on a donkey, and headed back to Egypt. And he took the staff of God in his hand.

21 Yahweh instructed Moses, "When you go back to Egypt, see that you perform before Pharaoh all the wonders that I have put within your power. But I will harden his heart so that he will not let the people go. 22 Then tell Pharaoh that this is what Yahweh says: 'Israel is My firstborn son, 23 and I told you to let My son go so that he may worship Me. But since you have refused to let him go, behold, I will kill your firstborn son!'"

24 Now at a lodging place along the way, Yahweh met Moses and was about to kill him. 25 But Zipporah took a flint knife, cut off her son's foreskin, and touched it to Moses' feet. "Surely you are a bridegroom of blood to me," she said.

26 So Yahweh let him alone. (When she said, "bridegroom of blood," she was referring to the circumcision.)

THE PEOPLE BELIEVE MOSES AND AARON

27 Meanwhile, Yahweh had said to Aaron, "Go and meet Moses in the wilderness." So he went and met Moses at the mountain of God and kissed him. 28 And Moses told Aaron everything Yahweh had sent him to say, and all the signs He had commanded him to perform.

29 Then Moses and Aaron went and assembled all the elders of the Israelites, 30 and Aaron relayed everything Yahweh had said to Moses.

And Moses performed the signs before the people, 31 and they believed. And when they heard that Yahweh had attended to the Israelites and had seen their affliction, they bowed down and worshiped.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses and Aaron tell Pharaoh, Let My people go, and Pharaoh says, Who is Yahweh? Then he makes the slaves gather their own straw and still make the same number of bricks. The workers blame Moses, and Moses blames God. Day one of the mission does not go well.

PHARAOH'S FIRST REFUSAL

1 After that, Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh and said, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Let My people go, so that they may hold a feast to Me in the wilderness.'"

2 But Pharaoh replied, "Who is Yahweh that I should obey His voice and let Israel

EX 4:22 [PROPHECY] If Pharaoh refused, God would kill Pharaoh's firstborn son → EX 12:29 p.136

GOD SPEAKING

go? I do not know Yahweh, and I will not let Israel go."

3 "The God of the Hebrews has met with us," they answered. "Please let us go on a three-day journey into the wilderness to sacrifice to Yahweh our God, or He may strike us with plagues or with the sword."

4 But the king of Egypt said to them, "Moses and Aaron, why do you draw the people away from their work? Get back to your labor!" 5 Pharaoh also said, "Look, the people of the land are now numerous, and you would be stopping them from their labor."

BRICKS AND STRAW

6 That same day Pharaoh commanded the taskmasters of the people and their foremen: 7 "You shall no longer supply the people with straw for making bricks. They must go and gather their own straw. 8 But require of them the same quota of bricks as before; do not reduce it. For they are lazy; that is why they are crying out, 'Let us go and sacrifice to our God.' 9 Make the work harder on the men so they will be occupied and pay no attention to these lies."

10 So the taskmasters and foremen of the people went out and said to them, "This is what Pharaoh says: 'I am no longer giving you straw. 11 Go and get your own straw wherever you can find it; but your workload will in no way be reduced.'"

12 So the people scattered all over the land of Egypt to gather stubble for straw. 13 The taskmasters kept pressing them, saying, "Fulfill your quota each day, just as you did when straw was provided."

14 Then the Israelite foremen, whom Pharaoh's taskmasters had set over the people, were beaten and asked, "Why have you not fulfilled your quota of bricks yesterday or today, as you did before?"

THE CRY OF THE ISRAELITES

15 So the Israelite foremen went and appealed to Pharaoh: "Why are you treating your servants this way? 16 No straw has been given to your servants, yet we are told, 'Make bricks!' Look, your servants are being beaten, but the fault is with your own people."

17 "You are slackers!" Pharaoh replied. "Slackers! That is why you keep saying, 'Let us go and sacrifice to Yahweh.' 18 Now get to work. You will be given no straw, yet you must deliver the full quota of bricks."

19 The Israelite foremen realized they were in trouble when they were told, "You must not reduce your daily quota of bricks." 20 When they left Pharaoh, they confronted Moses and Aaron, who stood waiting to meet them.

21 "May Yahweh look upon you and judge you," the foremen said, "for you have made us a stench before Pharaoh and his officials; you have placed in their hand a sword to kill us!"

22 So Moses returned to Yahweh and asked, "Lord, why have You brought trouble upon this people? Is this why You sent me? 23 Ever since I went to Pharaoh to speak in Your name, he has brought trouble on this people, and You have not delivered Your people in any way."

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

God answers Moses with seven I will promises: I will bring you out, I will rescue you, I will redeem you and more. The people are too crushed to listen. Then the story pauses for a family tree so we know exactly who Moses and Aaron are. Watch for Amminadab and Nahshon in verse 23, two names in the family line of Jesus.

GOD PROMISES DELIVERANCE

1 But Yahweh said to Moses, "Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh, for because of My mighty hand he will let the people go; because of My strong hand he will drive them out of his land."

2 God also told Moses, "I am Yahweh. 3 I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob as God Almighty, but by My name Yahweh I did not make Myself known to them. 4 I also established My covenant with them to give them the land of Canaan, the land where they lived as foreigners. 5 Furthermore, I have heard the

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

groaning of the Israelites, whom the Egyptians are enslaving, and I have remembered My covenant.

6 Therefore tell the Israelites: 'I am Yahweh, and I will bring you out from under the yoke of the Egyptians and deliver you from their bondage. I will redeem you with an outstretched arm and with mighty acts of judgment. 7 I will take you as My own people, and I will be your God. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from under the yoke of the Egyptians. 8 And I will bring you into the land that I swore to give to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. I will give it to you as a possession. I am Yahweh!'"

9 Moses relayed this message to the Israelites, but on account of their broken spirit and cruel bondage, they did not listen to him.

10 So Yahweh said to Moses, 11 "Go and tell Pharaoh king of Egypt to let the Israelites go out of his land."

12 But in Yahweh's presence Moses replied, "If the Israelites will not listen to me, then why would Pharaoh listen to me, since I am unskilled in speech?"

13 Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron and gave them a charge concerning both the Israelites and Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring the Israelites out of the land of Egypt.

GENEALOGIES OF MOSES AND AARON

14 These were the heads of their fathers' houses:

The sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel, were Hanoch and Pallu, Hezron and Carmi. These were the clans of Reuben.

15 The sons of Simeon were Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jachin, Zohar, and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman. These were the clans of Simeon.

16 These were the names of the sons of Levi according to their records: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi lived 137 years.

17 The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei, by their clans.

18 The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath lived 133 years.

19 The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi.

These were the clans of the Levites according to their records.

20 And Amram married his father's sister Jochebed, and she bore him Aaron and Moses. Amram lived 137 years.

21 The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri.

22 The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri.

23 And Aaron married Elisheba, the daughter of Amminadab and sister of Nahshon, and she bore him Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.

24 The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. These were the clans of the Korahites.

25 Aaron's son Eleazar married one of the daughters of Putiel, and she bore him Phinehas.

These were the heads of the Levite families by their clans.

26 It was this Aaron and Moses to whom Yahweh said, "Bring the Israelites out of the land of Egypt by their divisions." 27 Moses and Aaron were the ones who spoke to Pharaoh king of Egypt in order to bring the Israelites out of Egypt.

28 Now on the day that Yahweh spoke to Moses in Egypt, 29 He said to him, "I am Yahweh; tell Pharaoh king of Egypt everything I say to you."

30 But in Yahweh's presence Moses replied, "Since I am unskilled in speech, why would Pharaoh listen to me?"

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Aaron throws down his staff and it becomes a serpent. Pharaoh's magicians do the same trick, but Aaron's staff swallows theirs. Then the first plague hits. The Nile turns to blood, the fish die and the whole country stinks. The magicians copy it, which only makes things worse, and Pharaoh's heart stays hard.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

GOD COMMANDS MOSES AND AARON

1 Yahweh answered Moses, "See, I have
made you like God to Pharaoh, and your
brother Aaron will be your prophet. 2 You
are to speak all that I command you, and
your brother Aaron is to tell Pharaoh to let
the Israelites go out of his land.

3 But I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and
though I will multiply My signs and won-
ders in the land of Egypt, 4 Pharaoh will
not listen to you.

Then I will lay My hand on Egypt, and by
mighty acts of judgment I will bring the di-
visions of My people the Israelites out of
the land of Egypt. 5 And the Egyptians will
know that I am Yahweh, when I stretch out
My hand against Egypt and bring the Is-
raelites out from among them."

6 So Moses and Aaron did just as Yahweh
had commanded them. 7 Moses was
eighty years old and Aaron was eighty-
three when they spoke to Pharaoh.

AARON'S STAFF

8 Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 9
"When Pharaoh tells you, 'Perform a mira-
cle,' you are to say to Aaron, 'Take your
staff and throw it down before Pharaoh,'
and it will become a serpent."

10 So Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh
and did just as Yahweh had commanded.
Aaron threw his staff down before
Pharaoh and his officials, and it became a
serpent.

11 But Pharaoh called the wise men and
sorcerers and magicians of Egypt, and
they also did the same things by their
magic arts. 12 Each one threw down his
staff, and it became a serpent. But Aaron's
staff swallowed up the other staffs.

13 Still, Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and
he would not listen to them, just as Yah-
weh had said.

THE FIRST PLAGUE: BLOOD

14 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Pharaoh's
heart is unyielding; he refuses to let the
people go. 15 Go to Pharaoh in the morning
as you see him walking out to the water.
Wait on the bank of the Nile to meet him,
and take in your hand the staff that was
changed into a snake. 16 Then say to him,
'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has
sent me to tell you: Let My people go, so
that they may worship Me in the wilder-
ness. But until now you have not listened.
17 This is what Yahweh says: By this you
will know that I am Yahweh. Behold, with
the staff in my hand I will strike the water
of the Nile, and it will turn to blood. 18 The
fish in the Nile will die, the river will stink,
and the Egyptians will be unable to drink
its water.'"

19 And Yahweh said to Moses, "Tell Aaron,
'Take your staff and stretch out your hand
over the waters of Egypt—over their rivers
and canals and ponds and all the
reservoirs—that they may become blood.'
There will be blood throughout the land of
Egypt, even in the vessels of wood and
stone."

20 Moses and Aaron did just as Yahweh
had commanded; in the presence of
Pharaoh and his officials, Aaron raised the
staff and struck the water of the Nile, and
all the water was turned to blood. 21 The
fish in the Nile died, and the river smelled
so bad that the Egyptians could not drink
its water. And there was blood throughout
the land of Egypt.

EX 7:1 [FULFILLS] God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth ← EX 3:18-22 p.125

EX 7:11 [DEMONIC] Pharaoh's magicians copy the sign by their secret arts

EX 7:17 [PROPHECY] The Nile would be turned to blood → EX 7:20-21 p.129

EX 7:19 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:6 p.2097

EX 7:20 [MIRACLE] The Nile turns to blood

EX 7:20 [FULFILLS] The Nile would be turned to blood ← EX 7:17 p.129

EX 7:20 [FIELD NOTES] See the Ipuwer Papyrus Field Notes page, p.130.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: LOW

THE IPUWER PAPYRUS

EXODUS 7:20 TO 21 · EXODUS 10:22 · EXODUS 12:35 TO 36



A page of the Ipuwer Papyrus, written in hieratic.

WHAT IT IS

An Egyptian poem, also called the Admonitions of Ipuwer. A wise man named Ipuwer complains to the king that Egypt has fallen apart: the poor have become rich, the rich have become poor, and there is chaos everywhere.

HOW OLD IT IS

The only copy was written about 1250 BC. The poem itself is older, but how much older is disputed. Most Egyptologists date it to the Middle Kingdom, somewhere around 1850 BC or earlier.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The National Museum of Antiquities in Leiden, Netherlands, bought it in 1828 from the collection of Giovanni Anastasi, a merchant in Egypt. It probably came from Saqqara, near Memphis. Alan Gardiner published the first full English translation in 1909.

WHAT IT SAYS

Some lines sound a lot like Exodus. The river is blood, and people refuse to drink from it. Plague is all over the land. Gold and precious stones hang on the necks of servant girls. Fire has destroyed the land.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The National Museum of Antiquities in Leiden, Netherlands.

WHY SOME LINK IT TO THE PLAGUES

In 1952 a writer named Immanuel Velikovsky said Ipuwer was an Egyptian eyewitness to the plagues, and many Bible teachers have repeated it since. The river turned to blood and the Egyptians handing their gold to slaves are the two lines people point to most.

WHY MOST EXPERTS DISAGREE

It never mentions Israelites, Moses, a Passover or slaves leaving Egypt. Most experts say it is poetry about Egypt falling into disorder, and that a red river was a way to describe bloodshed. Its probable date is also hundreds of years before either date for the Exodus. We rate it LOW: interesting, but not evidence.

22 But the magicians of Egypt did the same
things by their magic arts. So Pharaoh's
heart was hardened, and he would not lis-
ten to Moses and Aaron, just as Yahweh
had said. 23 Instead, Pharaoh turned
around, went into his palace, and did not
take any of this to heart. 24 So all the
Egyptians dug around the Nile for water to
drink, because they could not drink the
water from the river.
25 And seven full days passed after Yah-
weh had struck the Nile.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Plague two is frogs: in the beds, in the ovens and in the bread bowls. Pharaoh begs for them to go away, and when Moses asks when, he says, Tomorrow. One more night with the frogs. Then come gnats, and the magicians give up and say, This is the finger of God. Then flies, everywhere except Goshen, where God's people live.

THE SECOND PLAGUE: FROGS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to
Pharaoh and tell him that this is what Yah-
weh says: 'Let My people go, so that they
may worship Me. 2 But if you refuse to let
them go, I will plague your whole country
with frogs. 3 The Nile will teem with frogs,
and they will come into your palace and
up to your bedroom and onto your bed,
into the houses of your officials and your
people, and into your ovens and kneading

EX 7:22 [DEMONIC] Egypt's magicians copy the water turning to blood
EX 8:1 [FULFILLS] God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth ← EX 3:18-22 p.125

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

bowls. 4 The frogs will come up on you
and your people and all your officials.'"
5 And Yahweh said to Moses, "Tell Aaron,
'Stretch out your hand with your staff over
the rivers and canals and ponds, and
cause the frogs to come up onto the land
of Egypt.'"
6 So Aaron stretched out his hand over the
waters of Egypt, and the frogs came up
and covered the land of Egypt.
7 But the magicians did the same thing by
their magic arts, and they also brought
frogs up onto the land of Egypt.
8 Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron
and said, "Pray to Yahweh to take the
frogs away from me and my people. Then
I will let your people go, that they may
sacrifice to Yahweh."
9 Moses said to Pharaoh, "You may have
the honor over me. When shall I pray for
you and your officials and your people
that the frogs (except for those in the Nile)
may be taken away from you and your
houses?"
10 "Tomorrow," Pharaoh answered.
"May it be as you say," Moses replied, "so
that you may know that there is no one
like Yahweh our God. 11 The frogs will de-
part from you and your houses and your
officials and your people; they will remain
only in the Nile."
12 After Moses and Aaron had left Pharaoh,
Moses cried out to Yahweh for help with
the frogs that He had brought against
Pharaoh. 13 And Yahweh did as Moses re-
quested, and the frogs in the houses, the
courtyards, and the fields died. 14 They
were piled into countless heaps, and there
was a terrible stench in the land.
15 When Pharaoh saw that there was relief,
however, he hardened his heart and
would not listen to Moses and Aaron, just
as Yahweh had said.

THE THIRD PLAGUE: GNATS

16 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Tell
Aaron, 'Stretch out your staff and strike
the dust of the earth, that it may turn into
swarms of gnats throughout the land of
Egypt.'"
17 This they did, and when Aaron stretched
out his hand with his staff and struck the
dust of the earth, gnats came upon man
and beast. All the dust of the earth turned
into gnats throughout the land of Egypt.
18 The magicians tried to produce gnats
using their magic arts, but they could not.
And the gnats remained on man and
beast.
19 "This is the finger of God," the magi-
cians said to Pharaoh. But Pharaoh's heart
was hardened, and he would not listen to
them, just as Yahweh had said.

THE FOURTH PLAGUE: FLIES

20 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up
early in the morning, and when Pharaoh
goes out to the water, stand before him
and tell him that this is what Yahweh says:
'Let My people go, so that they may wor-
ship Me. 21 But if you will not let My people
go, I will send swarms of flies upon you
and your officials and your people and
your houses. The houses of the Egyptians
and even the ground where they stand will
be full of flies.
22 But on that day I will give special treat-
ment to the land of Goshen, where My
people live; no swarms of flies will be
found there. In this way you will know that
I, Yahweh, am in the land. 23 I will make a
distinction between My people and your
people. This sign will take place tomor-
row.'"
24 And Yahweh did so. Thick swarms of
flies poured into Pharaoh's palace and into
the houses of his officials. Throughout
Egypt the land was ruined by swarms of
flies.

EX 8:6 [MIRACLE] Frogs cover the land of Egypt
EX 8:7 [DEMONIC] The magicians use magic arts to bring up frogs
EX 8:15 [HEART] When Pharaoh got relief, he hardened his heart and would not listen.

EX 8:17 [MIRACLE] Dust becomes gnats
EX 8:18 [DEMONIC] The magicians fail and say this is the finger of God
EX 8:22 [PROPHECY] God would spare the land of Goshen from the flies and set His people apart → EX 8:24 p.131
EX 8:24 [FULFILLS] God would spare the land of Goshen from the flies and set His people apart ← EX 8:22-23 p.131

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

25 Then Pharaoh summoned Moses and
Aaron and said, "Go, sacrifice to your God
within this land."

26 But Moses replied, "It would not be right
to do that, because the sacrifices we offer
to Yahweh our God would be detestable
to the Egyptians. If we offer sacrifices that
are detestable before the Egyptians, will
they not stone us? 27 We must make a
three-day journey into the wilderness and
sacrifice to Yahweh our God as He com-
mands us."

28 Pharaoh answered, "I will let you go and
sacrifice to Yahweh your God in the
wilderness, but you must not go very far.
Now pray for me."

29 "As soon as I leave you," Moses said, "I
will pray to Yahweh, so that tomorrow the
swarms of flies will depart from Pharaoh
and his officials and his people. But
Pharaoh must not act deceitfully again by
refusing to let the people go and sacrifice
to Yahweh."

30 Then Moses left Pharaoh and prayed to
Yahweh, 31 and Yahweh did as Moses re-
quested. He removed the swarms of flies
from Pharaoh and his officials and his
people; not one fly remained. 32 But
Pharaoh hardened his heart this time as
well, and he would not let the people go.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

The livestock of Egypt die, but Israel's animals are fine. Then painful boils break out on people and animals, even on the magicians, who cannot stand up in front of Moses. Then the worst hail-storm in Egypt's history falls with fire mixed in. Pharaoh says, I have sinned, then changes his mind again as soon as the hail stops.

THE FIFTH PLAGUE: LIVESTOCK

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to
Pharaoh and tell him that this is what Yah-
weh, the God of the Hebrews, says: 'Let
My people go, so that they may worship
Me. 2 But if you continue to restrain them
and refuse to let them go, 3 then the hand
of Yahweh will bring a severe plague on
your livestock in the field—on your
horses, donkeys, camels, herds, and
flocks. 4 But Yahweh will make a distinc-
tion between the livestock of Israel and
the livestock of Egypt, so that no animal
belonging to the Israelites will die.'"

5 Yahweh set a time, saying, "Tomorrow
Yahweh will do this in the land." 6 And the
next day Yahweh did just that. All the live-
stock of the Egyptians died, but not one
animal belonging to the Israelites died. 7
Pharaoh sent officials and found that none
of the livestock of the Israelites had died.
But Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he
would not let the people go.

THE SIXTH PLAGUE: BOILS

8 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron,
"Take handfuls of soot from the furnace;
in the sight of Pharaoh, Moses is to toss it
into the air. 9 It will become fine dust over
all the land of Egypt, and festering boils
will break out on man and beast through-
out the land."

10 So they took soot from the furnace and
stood before Pharaoh. Moses tossed it
into the air, and festering boils broke out
on man and beast. 11 The magicians could
not stand before Moses, because the
boils had broken out on them and on all
the Egyptians.

12 But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart,
and he would not listen to them, just as
Yahweh had said to Moses.

THE SEVENTH PLAGUE: HAIL

13 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up
early in the morning, stand before
Pharaoh, and tell him that this is what
Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says:
'Let My people go, so that they may wor-
ship Me. 14 Otherwise, I will send all My
plagues against you and your officials and
your people, so you may know that there
is no one like Me in all the earth.

- **EX 8:32 [HEART]** Pharaoh hardened his heart this time also.
- **EX 9:1 [FULFILLS]** God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth ← EX 3:18-22 p.125
- **EX 9:4 [PROPHECY]** Egypt's livestock would die tomorrow but not one animal of Israel → EX 9:6 p.132
- **EX 9:6 [FULFILLS]** Egypt's livestock would die tomorrow but not one animal of Israel ← EX 9:4-5 p.132
- **EX 9:11 [DEMONIC]** The magicians cannot stand before Moses because of boils

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

15 For by this time I could have stretched
out My hand and struck you and your
people with a plague to wipe you off the
earth. 16 *But I have raised you up for this very*
purpose, that I might display My power to you,
and that My name might be proclaimed in all
the earth. 17 Still, you lord it over My people
and do not allow them to go.

18 Behold, at this time tomorrow I will rain
down the worst hail that has ever fallen on
Egypt, from the day it was founded until
now. 19 So give orders now to shelter your
livestock and everything you have in the
field. Every man or beast that remains in
the field and is not brought inside will die
when the hail comes down upon them.'"

20 Those among Pharaoh's officials who
feared the word of Yahweh hurried to
bring their servants and livestock to shel-
ter, 21 but those who disregarded the word
of Yahweh left their servants and livestock
in the field.

22 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch
out your hand toward heaven, so that hail
may fall on all the land of Egypt—on man
and beast and every plant of the field
throughout the land of Egypt."

23 So Moses stretched out his staff toward
heaven, and Yahweh sent thunder and
hail, and lightning struck the earth. So
Yahweh rained down hail upon the land of
Egypt. 24 The hail fell and the lightning
continued flashing through it. The hail was
so severe that nothing like it had ever
been seen in all the land of Egypt from the
time it became a nation.

25 Throughout the land of Egypt, the hail
struck down everything in the field, both
man and beast; it beat down every plant
of the field and stripped every tree. 26 The
only place where it did not hail was in the
land of Goshen, where the Israelites lived.

27 Then Pharaoh summoned Moses and
Aaron. "This time I have sinned," he said.
"Yahweh is righteous, and I and my peo-
ple are wicked. 28 Pray to Yahweh, for
there has been enough of God's thunder
and hail. I will let you go; you do not need
to stay any longer."

29 Moses said to him, "When I have left the
city, I will spread out my hands to Yah-
weh. The thunder will cease, and there
will be no more hail, so that you may know
that the earth is Yahweh's. 30 But as for
you and your officials, I know that you still
do not fear Yahweh our God."

31 (Now the flax and barley were de-
stroyed, since the barley was ripe and the
flax was in bloom; 32 but the wheat and
spelt were not destroyed, because they
are late crops.)

33 Then Moses departed from Pharaoh,
went out of the city, and spread out his
hands to Yahweh. The thunder and hail
ceased, and the rain no longer poured
down on the land.

34 When Pharaoh saw that the rain and hail
and thunder had ceased, he sinned again
and hardened his heart—he and his offi-
cials. 35 So Pharaoh's heart was hardened,
and he would not let the Israelites go, just
as Yahweh had said through Moses.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Pharaoh's own officials beg him to give up, be-
cause Egypt is ruined. He refuses, and locusts eat
every green thing the hail missed. Then thick
darkness covers Egypt for three days, a darkness
you can feel. But all the Israelites have light where
they live. Pharaoh tells Moses never to show his
face again.

THE EIGHTH PLAGUE: LOCUSTS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to
Pharaoh, for I have hardened his heart
and the hearts of his officials, that I may
perform these miraculous signs of Mine
among them, 2 and that you may tell your
children and grandchildren how severely I
dealt with the Egyptians when I performed
miraculous signs among them, so that all
of you may know that I am Yahweh."

EX 9:16 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:17 p.1811
EX 9:18 [PROPHECY] The worst hail ever would fall at this time tomorrow → EX 9:23-25 p.133
EX 9:23 [MIRACLE] Thunder, hail, and fire fall on Egypt
EX 9:23 [FULFILLS] The worst hail ever would fall at this time tomorrow ← EX 9:18 p.133
EX 9:34 [HEART] Pharaoh sinned again and hardened his heart after the hail stopped.
EX 10:1 [FULFILLS] God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth ← EX 3:18-22 p.125

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

3 So Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh
and told him, "This is what Yahweh, the
God of the Hebrews, says: 'How long will
you refuse to humble yourself before Me?
Let My people go, so that they may wor-
ship Me. 4 But if you refuse to let My peo-
ple go, I will bring locusts into your terri-
tory tomorrow. 5 They will cover the face
of the land so that no one can see it. They
will devour whatever is left after the hail
and eat every tree that grows in your
fields. 6 They will fill your houses and the
houses of all your officials and every
Egyptian—something neither your fathers
nor your grandfathers have seen since the
day they came into this land.'"

Then Moses turned and left Pharaoh's
presence.

7 Pharaoh's officials asked him, "How long
will this man be a snare to us? Let the
people go, so that they may worship Yah-
weh their God. Do you not yet realize that
Egypt lies in ruins?"

8 So Moses and Aaron were brought back
to Pharaoh. "Go, worship Yahweh your
God," he said. "But who exactly will be
going?"

9 "We will go with our young and old,"
Moses replied. "We will go with our sons
and daughters, and with our flocks and
herds, for we must hold a feast to Yah-
weh."

10 Then Pharaoh told them, "May Yahweh
be with you if I ever let you go with your
little ones. Clearly you are bent on evil. 11
No, only the men may go and worship
Yahweh, since that is what you have been
requesting." And Moses and Aaron were
driven from Pharaoh's presence.

12 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch
out your hand over the land of Egypt, so
that the locusts may swarm over it and
devour every plant in the land—everything
that the hail has left behind."

13 So Moses stretched out his staff over
the land of Egypt, and throughout that day
and night Yahweh sent an east wind
across the land. By morning the east wind
had brought the locusts.

14 The locusts swarmed across the land
and settled over the entire territory of
Egypt. Never before had there been so
many locusts, and never again will there
be. 15 They covered the face of all the land
until it was black, and they consumed all
the plants on the ground and all the fruit
on the trees that the hail had left behind.
Nothing green was left on any tree or
plant in all the land of Egypt.

16 Pharaoh quickly summoned Moses and
Aaron and said, "I have sinned against
Yahweh your God and against you. 17 Now
please forgive my sin once more and ap-
peal to Yahweh your God, that He may re-
move this death from me."

18 So Moses left Pharaoh's presence and
appealed to Yahweh. 19 And Yahweh
changed the wind to a very strong west
wind that carried off the locusts and blew
them into the Red Sea. Not a single locust
remained anywhere in Egypt.

20 But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart,
and he would not let the Israelites go.

THE NINTH PLAGUE: DARKNESS

21 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch
out your hand toward heaven, so that
darkness may spread over the land of
Egypt—a palpable darkness."

22 So Moses stretched out his hand toward
heaven, and total darkness covered all the
land of Egypt for three days. 23 No one
could see anyone else, and for three days
no one left his place. Yet all the Israelites
had light in their dwellings.

24 Then Pharaoh summoned Moses and
said, "Go, worship Yahweh. Even your lit-
tle ones may go with you; only your flocks
and herds must stay behind."

25 But Moses replied, "You must also pro-
vide us with sacrifices and burnt offerings
to present to Yahweh our God. 26 Even our
livestock must go with us; not a hoof will
be left behind, for we will need some of

EX 10:4 [PROPHECY] Locusts would come into Egypt tomorrow → EX 10:13-15 p.134

EX 10:13 [FULFILLS] Locusts would come into Egypt tomorrow ← EX 10:4 p.134

EX 10:22 [MIRACLE] Darkness for three days, but Israel has light

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

them to worship Yahweh our God, and we will not know how we are to worship Yahweh until we arrive."

27 But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he was unwilling to let them go. 28 "Depart from me!" Pharaoh said to Moses. "Make sure you never see my face again, for on the day you see my face, you will die."

29 "As you say," Moses replied, "I will never see your face again."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

God says there is one more plague, and after this Pharaoh will practically chase you out. The Israelites ask their Egyptian neighbors for silver and gold, and the Egyptians just hand it over. Moses warns that at midnight every firstborn in Egypt will die. Then he walks out of the palace, hot with anger.

THE PLAGUE ON THE FIRSTBORN FORETOLD

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "I will bring upon Pharaoh and Egypt one more plague. After that, he will allow you to leave this place. And when he lets you go, he will drive you out completely. 2 Now announce to the people that men and women alike should ask their neighbors for articles of silver and gold."

3 And Yahweh gave the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians. Moreover, Moses himself was highly regarded in Egypt by Pharaoh's officials and by the people.

4 So Moses declared, "This is what Yahweh says: 'About midnight I will go throughout Egypt, 5 and every firstborn son in the land of Egypt will die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh who sits on his throne, to the firstborn of the servant girl behind the hand mill, as well as the firstborn of all the cattle. 6 Then a great cry will go out over all the land of Egypt. Such an outcry has never been heard before and will never be heard again. 7 But among all the Israelites, not even a dog will snarl at man or beast.'

Then you will know that Yahweh makes a distinction between Egypt and Israel. 8 And all these officials of yours will come and bow before me, saying, 'Go, you and all the people who follow you!' After that, I will depart."

And hot with anger, Moses left Pharaoh's presence.

9 Yahweh said to Moses, "Pharaoh will not listen to you, so that My wonders may be multiplied in the land of Egypt."

10 Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh, but Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart so that he would not let the Israelites go out of his land.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

The first Passover. Each family kills a spotless lamb and puts its blood on the doorframe, and the angel of death passes over every house with the blood. At midnight the firstborn of Egypt die, from the palace to the prison. Pharaoh finally says, Go. About 600,000 men plus women and children walk out after 430 years.

THE FIRST PASSOVER // NUMBERS 9:1–14

1 Now Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt, 2 "This month is the beginning of months for you; it shall be the first month of your year.

3 Tell the whole congregation of Israel that on the tenth day of this month each man must select a lamb for his family, one per household. 4 If the household is too small for a whole lamb, they are to share with the nearest neighbor based on the number of people, and apportion the lamb accordingly.

5 Your lamb must be an unblemished year-old male, and you may take it from the sheep or the goats. 6 You must keep it until the fourteenth day of the month, when the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel will slaughter the animals at twilight. 7 They are to take some of the blood and put it on the sides and tops of the

EX 11:1 [FULFILLS] God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth ← EX 3:18-22 p.125

EX 11:4 [PROPHECY] About midnight every firstborn in Egypt would die → EX 12:29-30 p.136

EX 12:1 [FULFILLS] God told Moses Pharaoh would refuse but Israel would leave with Egyptian wealth ← EX 3:18-22 p.125

EX 12:5 [FORESHADOW] A spotless, blemish-free Lamb required for atonement → HEB 9:14; 1PE 1:19 p.1990

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

doorframes of the houses where they eat the lambs.

8 They are to eat the meat that night, roasted over the fire, along with unleavened bread and bitter herbs.

9 Do not eat any of the meat raw or cooked in boiling water, but only roasted over the fire—its head and legs and inner parts. 10 Do not leave any of it until morning; before the morning you must burn up any part that is left over.

11 This is how you are to eat it: You must be fully dressed for travel, with your sandals on your feet and your staff in your hand. You are to eat in haste; it is Yahweh's Passover.

12 On that night I will pass through the land of Egypt and strike down every firstborn male, both man and beast, and I will execute judgment against all the gods of Egypt. I am Yahweh. 13 The blood on the houses where you are staying will be a sign; when I see the blood, I will pass over you. No plague will fall on you to destroy you when I strike the land of Egypt.

THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD // LEVITICUS 23:4–8; NUMBERS 28:16–25; DEUTERONOMY 16:1–8

14 And this day will be a memorial for you, and you are to celebrate it as a feast to Yahweh, as a permanent statute for the generations to come. 15 For seven days you must eat unleavened bread. On the first day you are to remove the leaven from your houses. Whoever eats anything leavened from the first day through the seventh must be cut off from Israel.

16 On the first day you are to hold a sacred assembly, and another on the seventh day. You must not do any work on those days, except to prepare the meals—that is all you may do.

17 So you are to keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread, for on this very day I brought your divisions out of the land of Egypt. You must keep this day as a permanent statute for the generations to come. 18 In the first month you are to eat unleavened bread, from the evening of the fourteenth day until the evening of the twenty-first day. 19 For seven days there must be no leaven found in your houses. If anyone eats something leavened, that person, whether a foreigner or native of the land, must be cut off from the congregation of Israel. 20 You are not to eat anything leavened; eat unleavened bread in all your homes."

21 Then Moses summoned all the elders of Israel and told them, "Go at once and select for yourselves a lamb for each family, and slaughter the Passover lamb. 22 Take a cluster of hyssop, dip it into the blood in the basin, and brush the blood on the top and sides of the doorframe. None of you shall go out the door of his house until morning.

23 When Yahweh passes through to strike down the Egyptians, He will see the blood on the top and sides of the doorframe and will pass over that doorway; so He will not allow the destroyer to enter your houses and strike you down.

24 And you are to keep this command as a permanent statute for you and your descendants. 25 When you enter the land that Yahweh will give you as He promised, you are to keep this service.

26 When your children ask you, 'What does this service mean to you?' 27 you are to reply, 'It is the Passover sacrifice to Yahweh, who passed over the houses of the Israelites in Egypt when He struck down the Egyptians and spared our homes.'"

Then the people bowed down and worshiped. 28 And the Israelites went and did just what Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron.

THE TENTH PLAGUE: DEATH OF THE FIRSTBORN

29 Now at midnight Yahweh struck down every firstborn male in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sat on his throne, to the firstborn of the prisoner in the dungeon, as well as all the firstborn among the livestock.

EX 12:12 [DEMONIC] God declares judgment on all the gods of Egypt
EX 12:13 [FORESHADOW] The blood of the Lamb saves from divine wrath → ROM 5:8 p.1804
EX 12:21 [FORESHADOW] The Passover ordinance fulfilled in Christ our Passover → 1CO 5:7 p.1827
EX 12:29 [MIRACLE] Yahweh strikes down every firstborn in Egypt at midnight

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

30 During the night Pharaoh got up—he
and all his officials and all the
Egyptians—and there was loud wailing in
Egypt; for there was no house without
someone dead.

THE EXODUS BEGINS

31 Then Pharaoh summoned Moses and
Aaron by night and said, "Get up, leave
my people, both you and the Israelites!
Go, worship Yahweh as you have re-
quested. 32 Take your flocks and herds as
well, just as you have said, and depart!
And bless me also."

33 And in order to send them out of the
land quickly, the Egyptians urged the peo-
ple on. "For otherwise," they said, "we are
all going to die!" 34 So the people took
their dough before it was leavened, carry-
ing it on their shoulders in kneading bowls
wrapped in clothing.

35 Furthermore, the Israelites acted on
Moses' word and asked the Egyptians for
articles of silver and gold, and for cloth-
ing. 36 And Yahweh gave the people such
favor in the sight of the Egyptians that
they granted their request. In this way
they plundered the Egyptians.

37 The Israelites journeyed from Rameses
to Succoth with about 600,000 men on
foot, besides women and children. 38 And
a mixed multitude also went up with them,
along with great droves of livestock, both
flocks and herds.

39 Since their dough had no leaven, the
people baked what they had brought out
of Egypt into unleavened loaves. For
when they had been driven out of Egypt,
they could not delay and had not prepared
any provisions for themselves.

40 Now the duration of the Israelites' stay
in Egypt was 430 years. 41 At the end of
the 430 years, to the very day, all
Yahweh's divisions went out of the land of
Egypt. 42 Because Yahweh kept a vigil that
night to bring them out of the land of
Egypt, this same night is to be a vigil to
Yahweh, to be observed by all the Is-
raelites for the generations to come.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE PASSOVER

43 And Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron,
"This is the statute of the Passover: No
foreigner is to eat of it. 44 But any slave
who has been purchased may eat of it, af-
ter you have circumcised him. 45 A tempo-
rary resident or hired hand shall not eat
the Passover.

46 *It must be eaten inside one house. You are
not to take any of the meat outside the house,
and you may not break any of the bones.*

47 The whole congregation of Israel must
celebrate it. 48 If a foreigner resides with
you and wants to celebrate Yahweh's
Passover, all the males in the household
must be circumcised; then he may come
near to celebrate it, and he shall be like a
native of the land. But no uncircumcised
man may eat of it. 49 The same law shall
apply to both the native and the foreigner
who resides among you."

50 Then all the Israelites did this—they did
just as Yahweh had commanded Moses
and Aaron. 51 And on that very day Yahweh
brought the Israelites out of the land of
Egypt by their divisions.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

*God says every firstborn belongs to Him, and Is-
rael will remember this rescue every year with
bread made without yeast. God leads them the
long way so they do not get scared and run back
to Egypt. Moses brings Joseph's bones along, just
as Joseph asked. A pillar of cloud by day and fire
by night shows them the way.*

THE DEDICATION OF THE FIRSTBORN //
DEUTERONOMY 15:19–23

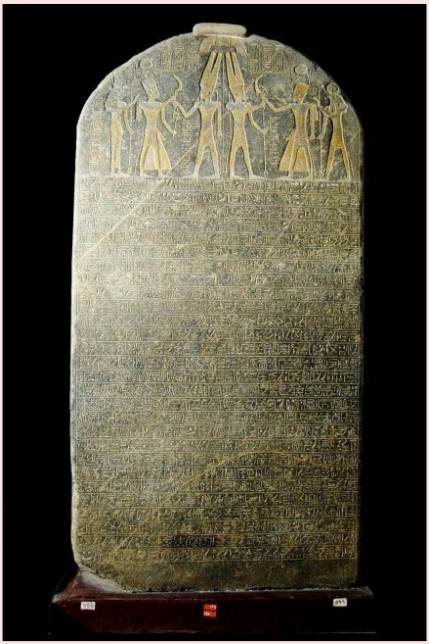
1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 *"Consecrate
to Me every firstborn male. The firstborn from*

- **EX 12:29 [FULFILLS]** If Pharaoh refused, God would kill Pharaoh's firstborn son ← EX 4:22-23 p.126
- **EX 12:29 [FULFILLS]** About midnight every firstborn in Egypt would die ← EX 11:4-6 p.135
- **EX 12:35 [FULFILLS]** God told Abraham his descendants would be enslaved 400 years in a foreign land then leave with great wealth ← GEN 15:13-14 p.68
- **EX 12:40 [TEXT]** The Hebrew text says Israel lived in Egypt 430 years. The Greek Septuagint and the Samaritan Torah say 430 years in Egypt and in Canaan, which would cut the time in Egypt about in half. Paul counts 430 years from the promise to Abraham in Galatians 3:17.
- **EX 12:41 [FIELD NOTES]** The oldest mention of Israel outside the Bible is carved on a stone from about 1208 BC. See the Merneptah Stele Field Notes page, p.138.
- **EX 12:46 [FORESHADOW]** Not one bone of the Passover Lamb to be broken → JN 19:31-36 p.1732
- **EX 12:46 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 19:36 p.1733

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE STELE, DEBATED FOR THE DATE OF THE EXODUS

THE MERNEPTAH STELE

EXODUS 12:40 TO 41 · EXODUS 1:7 · JOSHUA 24:13



The Merneptah Stele in the Egyptian Museum, Cairo. Israel is named near the bottom.

WHAT IT IS

A big slab of black granite, about ten feet tall, carved with a victory poem for Pharaoh Merneptah, the son of Ramesses II. Near the end it lists the enemies he defeated in Canaan, and one of them is Israel: Israel is laid waste, his seed is not.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1208 BC, in the fifth year of Merneptah's reign. The date comes from the stone itself, so it is firm within a few years.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The British archaeologist Flinders Petrie found it in 1896 in the ruins of Merneptah's temple at Thebes, which is modern Luxor. The stone was used twice. The back side has an older carving from Pharaoh Amenhotep III.

WHY IT MATTERS

It is the oldest mention of Israel anywhere outside the Bible that everyone agrees on. The Egyptian writing adds a little sign that means a people, not a city or a country, so Israel was already a group of people living in Canaan by about 1208 BC.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Egyptian Museum in Cairo, Egypt.

WHAT IT MEANS FOR THE DATE

If Israel was settled in Canaan by 1208 BC, the Exodus had to happen before that. People who hold the early date, about 1446 BC, say this fits easily. People who hold the late date, about 1270 BC, say it fits too, but just barely, with Israel arriving in Canaan only a few years earlier.

THE ISRAEL LINE

The lines around it name Canaan, Ashkelon, Gezer and Yenoam, each written with the Egyptian sign for a land or a city. Israel is the only name in the list written with the sign for a people.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not mention Moses, Egypt's slaves or the Exodus. Merneptah was bragging that he wiped Israel out, which turned out to be very wrong, since Israel is still here.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

every womb among the Israelites belongs to Me, both of man and beast."

3 So Moses told the people, "Remember this day, the day you came out of Egypt, out of the house of slavery; for Yahweh brought you out of it by the strength of His hand. And nothing leavened shall be eaten.

4 Today, in the month of Abib, you are leaving. 5 And when Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Hivites, and Jebusites—the land He swore to your fathers that He would give you, a land flowing with milk and honey—you shall keep this service in this month.

6 For seven days you are to eat unleavened bread, and on the seventh day there shall be a feast to Yahweh. 7 Unleavened bread shall be eaten during those seven days. Nothing leavened may be found among you, nor shall leaven be found anywhere within your borders.

8 And on that day you are to explain to your son, 'This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out of Egypt.' 9 It shall be a sign for you on your hand and a reminder on your forehead that the Law of Yahweh is to be on your lips. For with a mighty hand Yahweh brought you out of Egypt. 10 Therefore you shall keep this statute at the appointed time year after year.

11 And after Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites and gives it to you, as He swore to you and your fathers, 12 *you are to present to Yahweh the firstborn male of every womb. All the firstborn males of your livestock belong to Yahweh.* 13 You must redeem every firstborn donkey with a lamb, and if you do not redeem it, you are to break its neck. And every firstborn of your sons you must redeem.

14 In the future, when your son asks you, 'What does this mean?' you are to tell him, 'With a mighty hand Yahweh brought us out of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.

15 And when Pharaoh stubbornly refused to let us go, Yahweh killed every firstborn in the land of Egypt, both of man and beast. This is why I sacrifice to Yahweh the firstborn male of every womb, but I redeem all the firstborn of my sons.' 16 So it shall serve as a sign on your hand and a symbol on your forehead, for with a mighty hand Yahweh brought us out of Egypt."

THE PILLARS OF CLOUD AND FIRE

17 When Pharaoh let the people go, God did not lead them along the road through the land of the Philistines, though it was shorter. For God said, "If the people face war, they might change their minds and return to Egypt." 18 So God led the people around by the way of the wilderness toward the Red Sea. And the Israelites left the land of Egypt arrayed for battle.

19 Moses took the bones of Joseph with him because Joseph had made the sons of Israel swear a solemn oath when he said, "God will surely attend to you, and then you must carry my bones with you from this place."

20 They set out from Succoth and camped at Etham on the edge of the wilderness. 21 And Yahweh went before them in a pillar of cloud to guide their way by day, and in a pillar of fire to give them light by night, so that they could travel by day or night. 22 Neither the pillar of cloud by day nor the pillar of fire by night left its place before the people.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Pharaoh changes his mind one last time and chases them with 600 chariots. Israel is trapped between the army and the sea and starts to panic. Moses says, Yahweh will fight for you; you need only to be still. The sea splits, Israel walks through on dry ground, and the water comes crashing back down on Pharaoh's army.

- **EX 13:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 2:23 p.1650
- **EX 13:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 2:23 p.1650
- **EX 13:19 [FULFILLS]** Joseph said God would bring Israel out of Egypt and to take his bones with them ← GEN 50:24-25 p.116
- **EX 13:21 [MIRACLE]** The pillar of cloud by day and fire by night

MAP · EXODUS 12 TO 19 · NUMBERS 33

The Exodus and the Wilderness

Out of Egypt, through the sea, and forty years to the Jordan



OUT OF EGYPT Israel set out from Rameses to Succoth, Exodus 12:37. God led them the long way, not the coast road through Philistine land, Exodus 13:17 to 18.

WHERE IS SINAI? The old tradition, since the 300s, is Jebel Musa in southern Sinai. Others point to Har Karkom in the Negev or Jebel al Lawz in Arabia, the land of Midian.

WHICH SEA? The Hebrew is Yam Suph, the Sea of Reeds. Some place the crossing at the lakes near the Suez, some at the Gulf of Suez, and some at the Gulf of Aqaba.

FORTY YEARS From Kadesh to the brook Zered took Israel 38 years, Deuteronomy 2:14. Edom refused to let them pass, so they went around, Numbers 20:14 to 21.

Rameses, Kadesh and the plains of Moab are fairly certain. Most stops in between are not. Routes are approximate.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | GOD SPEAKING

PHARAOH PURSUES THE ISRAELITES

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Tell the
Israelites to turn back and encamp before
Pi-hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea.
You are to encamp by the sea, directly
opposite Baal-zephon.
3 For Pharaoh will say of the Israelites,
'They are wandering the land in confu-
sion; the wilderness has boxed them in.' 4
And I will harden Pharaoh's heart so that
he will pursue them. But I will gain honor
by means of Pharaoh and all his army, and
the Egyptians will know that I am Yah-
weh."

So this is what the Israelites did.

5 When the king of Egypt was told that the
people had fled, Pharaoh and his officials
changed their minds about them and said,
"What have we done? We have released
Israel from serving us."

6 So Pharaoh prepared his chariot and
took his army with him. 7 He took 600 of
the best chariots, and all the other chari-
ots of Egypt, with officers over all of them.

8 And Yahweh hardened the heart of
Pharaoh king of Egypt so that he pursued
the Israelites, who were marching out de-
fiantly. 9 The Egyptians—all Pharaoh's
horses and chariots, horsemen and
troops—pursued the Israelites and over-
took them as they camped by the sea
near Pi-hahiroth, opposite Baal-zephon.

10 As Pharaoh approached, the Israelites
looked up and saw the Egyptians march-
ing after them, and they were terrified and
cried out to Yahweh. 11 They said to
Moses, "Was it because there were no
graves in Egypt that you brought us into
the wilderness to die? What have you
done to us by bringing us out of Egypt? 12
Did we not say to you in Egypt, 'Leave us
alone so that we may serve the Egyp-
tians'? For it would have been better for
us to serve the Egyptians than to die in
the wilderness."

13 But Moses told the people, "Do not be
afraid. Stand firm and you will see
Yahweh's salvation, which He will accom-
plish for you today; for the Egyptians you
see today, you will never see again. 14
Yahweh will fight for you; you need only to
be still."

PARTING THE RED SEA

15 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Why are
you crying out to Me? Tell the Israelites to
go forward. 16 And as for you, lift up your
staff and stretch out your hand over the
sea and divide it, so that the Israelites can
go through the sea on dry ground. 17 And I
will harden the hearts of the Egyptians so
that they will go in after them. Then I will
gain honor by means of Pharaoh and all
his army and chariots and horsemen. 18
The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh
when I am honored through Pharaoh, his
chariots, and his horsemen."

19 And the angel of God, who had gone
before the camp of Israel, withdrew and
went behind them. The pillar of cloud also
moved from before them and stood be-
hind them, 20 so that it came between the
camps of Egypt and Israel. The cloud was
there in the darkness, but it lit up the
night. So all night long neither camp went
near the other.

21 Then Moses stretched out his hand over
the sea, and all that night Yahweh drove
back the sea with a strong east wind that
turned it into dry land. So the waters were
divided, 22 and the Israelites went through
the sea on dry ground, with walls of water
on their right and on their left.

23 And the Egyptians chased after
them—all Pharaoh's horses, chariots, and
horsemen—and followed them into the
sea. 24 At morning watch, however, Yah-
weh looked down on the army of the
Egyptians from the pillar of fire and cloud,
and He threw their camp into confusion.
25 He caused their chariot wheels to wob-
ble, so that they had difficulty driving. "Let
us flee from the Israelites," said the Egyp-
tians, "for Yahweh is fighting for them
against Egypt!"

- **EX 14:13 [PROPHECY]** The Egyptians you see today you will never see again → EX 14:30 p.142
- **EX 14:19 [MIRACLE]** The angel of God and the cloud move behind Israel
- **EX 14:21 [MIRACLE]** The sea parts and Israel walks through on dry ground
- **EX 14:22 [FORESHADOW]** Israel passed through the sea. Paul calls this a picture of baptism → 1CO 10:1-2 p.1833

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

26 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Stretch
out your hand over the sea, so that the
waters may flow back over the Egyptians
and their chariots and horsemen." 27 So
Moses stretched out his hand over the
sea, and at daybreak the sea returned to
its normal state. As the Egyptians were re-
treating, Yahweh swept them into the sea.
28 The waters flowed back and covered
the chariots and horsemen—the entire
army of Pharaoh that had chased the Is-
raelites into the sea. Not one of them sur-
vived.

29 But the Israelites had walked through
the sea on dry ground, with walls of water
on their right and on their left. 30 That day
Yahweh saved Israel from the hand of the
Egyptians, and Israel saw the Egyptians
dead on the shore. 31 When Israel saw the
great power that Yahweh had exercised
over the Egyptians, the people feared
Yahweh and believed in Him and in His
servant Moses.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses and Israel sing the first big worship song in the Bible, and Miriam leads the women with a tambourine. Then they walk three days with no water, and the water they finally find is bitter. The worship lasted about three days, and so did the gratitude. God shows Moses a piece of wood that makes the water sweet.

THE SONG AT THE SEA // JUDGES 5:1–31

1 Then Moses and the Israelites sang this
song to Yahweh:

"I will sing to Yahweh,
for He is highly exalted.
The horse and rider
He has thrown into the sea.
2 Yahweh is my strength and my song,
and He has become my salvation.
He is my God, and I will praise Him,
my father's God, and I will exalt Him.

3 Yahweh is a warrior,
Yahweh is His name.
4 Pharaoh's chariots and army
He has cast into the sea;
the finest of his officers
are drowned in the Red Sea.
5 The depths have covered them;
they sank there like a stone.

6 Your right hand, O Yahweh,
is majestic in power;
Your right hand, O Yahweh,
has shattered the enemy.
7 You overthrew Your adversaries
by Your great majesty.
You unleashed Your burning wrath;
it consumed them like stubble.
8 At the blast of Your nostrils
the waters piled up;
like a wall the currents stood firm;
the depths congealed in the heart of the
sea.

9 The enemy declared,
'I will pursue, I will overtake.
I will divide the spoils;
I will gorge myself on them.
I will draw my sword;
my hand will destroy them.'
10 But You blew with Your breath,
and the sea covered them.
They sank like lead
in the mighty waters.

11 Who among the gods is like You, O Yah-
weh?
Who is like You—majestic in holiness,
revered with praises,
performing wonders?
12 You stretched out Your right hand,
and the earth swallowed them up.
13 With loving devotion You will lead
the people You have redeemed;
with Your strength You will guide them
to Your holy dwelling.

14 The nations will hear and tremble;
anguish will grip the dwellers of Philistia.
15 Then the chiefs of Edom will be dis-
mayed;
trembling will seize the leaders of Moab;
those who dwell in Canaan will melt away,
16 and terror and dread will fall on them.
By the power of Your arm

EX 14:26 [MIRACLE] The waters return and cover Pharaoh's army
EX 14:30 [FULFILLS] The Egyptians you see today you will never see again ← EX 14:13 p.141
EX 15:1 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:3-4 p.2104
EX 15:14 [PROPHECY] The nations of Canaan would hear and melt in fear → JOSH 2:9-11; JOSH 5:1 p.339

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

they will be as still as a stone
until Your people pass by, O Yahweh,
until the people You have bought pass by.

17 You will bring them in and plant them
on the mountain of Your inheritance—
the place, O Yahweh, You have prepared for Your dwelling,
the sanctuary, O Lord, Your hands have established.

18 Yahweh will reign forever and ever!"

19 For when Pharaoh's horses, chariots, and horsemen went into the sea, Yahweh brought the waters of the sea back over them. But the Israelites walked through the sea on dry ground.

20 Then Miriam the prophetess, Aaron's sister, took a tambourine in her hand, and all the women followed her with tambourines and dancing. 21 And Miriam sang back to them:

"Sing to Yahweh,
for He is highly exalted;
the horse and rider
He has thrown into the sea."

THE WATERS OF MARAH

22 Then Moses led Israel from the Red Sea, and they went out into the Desert of Shur. For three days they walked in the desert without finding water. 23 And when they came to Marah, they could not drink the water there because it was bitter. (That is why it was named Marah.)

24 So the people grumbled against Moses, saying, "What are we to drink?" 25 And Moses cried out to Yahweh, and Yahweh showed him a log. And when he cast it into the waters, they were sweetened.

There Yahweh made for them a statute and an ordinance, and there He tested them, 26 saying, "If you will listen carefully to the voice of Yahweh your God, and do what is right in His eyes, and pay attention to His commands, and keep all His statutes, then I will not bring on you any of the diseases I inflicted on the Egyptians. For I am Yahweh who heals you."

EX 15:23 [MIRACLE] Bitter waters of Marah made sweet by a tree

27 Then they came to Elim, where there were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees, and they camped there by the waters.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

The people grumble that they had more food back in slavery. So God rains bread from heaven every morning. They call it manna, which means What is it? Anyone who keeps extra overnight finds worms in the morning, except on the Sabbath. They will eat manna for the next forty years.

MANNA AND QUAIL FROM HEAVEN

1 On the fifteenth day of the second month after they had left the land of Egypt, the whole congregation of Israel set out from Elim and came to the Desert of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai. 2 And there in the desert the whole congregation of Israel grumbled against Moses and Aaron. 3 "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt!" they said. "There we sat by pots of meat and ate our fill of bread, but you have brought us into this desert to starve this whole assembly to death!"

4 *Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Behold, I will rain down bread from heaven for you. Each day the people are to go out and gather enough for that day. In this way I will test whether or not they will follow My instructions.* 5 Then on the sixth day, when they prepare what they bring in, it will be twice as much as they gather on the other days."

6 So Moses and Aaron said to all the Israelites, "This evening you will know that it was Yahweh who brought you out of the land of Egypt, 7 and in the morning you will see Yahweh's glory, because He has heard your grumbling against Him. For who are we, that you should grumble against us?"

8 And Moses added, "Yahweh will give you meat to eat this evening and bread to fill you in the morning, for He has heard your

EX 16:4 [FORESHADOW] God would rain down bread from heaven → JN 6:32-35 p.1709

EX 16:4 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → JN 6:31 p.1709

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

grumbling against Him. Who are we? Your grumblings are not against us but against Yahweh."

9 Then Moses said to Aaron, "Tell the whole congregation of Israel, 'Come before Yahweh, for He has heard your grumbling.'"

10 And as Aaron was speaking to the whole congregation of Israel, they looked toward the desert, and there in a cloud the glory of Yahweh appeared.

11 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 12 "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'"

13 That evening quail came and covered the camp, and in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp. 14 When the layer of dew had evaporated, there were thin flakes on the desert floor, as fine as frost on the ground. 15 *When the Israelites saw it, they asked one another, "What is it?" For they did not know what it was.*

So Moses told them, "It is the bread that Yahweh has given you to eat. 16 This is what Yahweh has commanded: 'Each one is to gather as much as he needs. You may take two quarts for each person in your tent.'"

17 So the Israelites did this. Some gathered more, and some less. 18 *When they measured it out, he who gathered much had no excess, and he who gathered little had no shortfall. Each one gathered as much as he needed to eat.*

19 Then Moses said to them, "No one may keep any of it until morning." 20 But they did not listen to Moses; some people left part of it until morning, and it became infested with maggots and began to smell. So Moses was angry with them.

21 Every morning each one gathered as much as was needed, and when the sun grew hot, it melted away.

THE SABBATH OBSERVED // GENESIS 2:1–3; HEBREWS 4:1–11

22 On the sixth day, they gathered twice as much food—four quarts per person—and all the leaders of the congregation came and reported this to Moses. 23 He told them, "This is what Yahweh has said: 'Tomorrow is to be a day of complete rest, a holy Sabbath to Yahweh. So bake what you want to bake, and boil what you want to boil. Then set aside whatever remains and keep it until morning.'"

24 So they set it aside until morning as Moses had commanded, and it did not smell or contain any maggots. 25 "Eat it today," Moses said, "because today is a Sabbath to Yahweh. Today you will not find anything in the field. 26 For six days you may gather, but on the seventh day, the Sabbath, it will not be there."

27 Yet on the seventh day some of the people went out to gather, but they did not find anything. 28 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "How long will you refuse to keep My commandments and instructions? 29 Understand that Yahweh has given you the Sabbath; that is why on the sixth day He will give you bread for two days. On the seventh day, everyone must stay where he is; no one may leave his place."

30 So the people rested on the seventh day.

THE JAR OF MANNA

31 Now the house of Israel called the bread manna. It was white like coriander seed and tasted like wafers made with honey. 32 Moses said, "This is what Yahweh has commanded: 'Keep two quarts of manna for the generations to come, so that they may see the bread I fed you in the wilderness when I brought you out of the land of Egypt.'"

33 So Moses told Aaron, "Take a jar and fill it with two quarts of manna. Then place it before Yahweh to be preserved for the generations to come." 34 And Aaron placed it in front of the Testimony, to be pre-

- **EX 16:12 [PROPHECY]** They would eat meat at twilight and bread in the morning → EX 16:13-15 p.144
- **EX 16:13 [MIRACLE]** Quail at evening and manna in the morning
- **EX 16:13 [FULFILLS]** They would eat meat at twilight and bread in the morning ← EX 16:12 p.144
- **EX 16:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 6:31 p.1709
- **EX 16:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 8:15 p.1855

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · MIRACLES · GOD SPEAKING

served just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

35 The Israelites ate manna forty years,
until they came to a land where they could
settle; they ate manna until they reached
the border of Canaan. 36 (The measure
they used held about two quarts.)

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

No water again, and the people are ready to stone Moses. God tells him to strike a rock, and water pours out. Then the Amalekites attack. As long as Moses holds up his hands Israel wins, so Aaron and Hur hold up his arms until sunset. Teamwork makes the dream work.

WATER FROM THE ROCK // NUMBERS 20:1–13

1 Then the whole congregation of Israel
left the Desert of Sin, moving from place
to place as Yahweh commanded. They
camped at Rephidim, but there was no
water for the people to drink. 2 So the
people contended with Moses, "Give us
water to drink."

"Why do you contend with me?" Moses
replied. "Why do you test Yahweh?"

3 But the people thirsted for water there,
and they grumbled against Moses: "Why
have you brought us out of Egypt—to
make us and our children and livestock
die of thirst?"

4 Then Moses cried out to Yahweh, "What
should I do with these people? A little
more and they will stone me!"

5 And Yahweh said to Moses, "Walk on
ahead of the people and take some of the
elders of Israel with you. Take along in
your hand the staff with which you struck
the Nile, and go. 6 Behold, I will stand
there before you by the rock at Horeb.
And when you strike the rock, water will
come out of it for the people to drink."

So Moses did this in the sight of the el-
ders of Israel. 7 He named the place Mas-
sah and Meribah because the Israelites
quarreled, and because they tested Yah-
weh, saying, "Is Yahweh among us or
not?"

THE DEFEAT OF THE AMALEKITES

8 After this, the Amalekites came and at-
tacked the Israelites at Rephidim. 9 So
Moses said to Joshua, "Choose some of
our men and go out to fight the
Amalekites. Tomorrow I will stand on the
hilltop with the staff of God in my hand."

10 Joshua did as Moses had instructed him
and fought against the Amalekites, while
Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top
of the hill.

11 As long as Moses held up his hands, Is-
rael prevailed; but when he lowered them,
Amalek prevailed. 12 When Moses' hands
grew heavy, they took a stone and put it
under him, and he sat on it. Then Aaron
and Hur held his hands up, one on each
side, so that his hands remained steady
until the sun went down.

13 So Joshua overwhelmed Amalek and his
army with the sword.

14 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Write this
on a scroll as a reminder and recite it to
Joshua, because I will utterly blot out the
memory of Amalek from under heaven."

15 And Moses built an altar and named it
Yahweh Is My Banner. 16 "Indeed," he said,
"a hand was lifted up toward the throne of
Yahweh. Yahweh will war against Amalek
from generation to generation."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses' father in law Jethro comes to visit and watches Moses judge the people's cases from morning until evening. Jethro says, What you are doing is not good. You will wear yourself out. He tells Moses to pick honest leaders over groups of thousands, hundreds, fifties and tens. It is the first management seminar in the Bible.

- **EX 16:33 [FORESHADOW]** A jar of manna was kept before Yahweh for later generations → REV 2:17; HEB 9:4 · MEDIUM p.2084
- **EX 17:1 [MIRACLE]** Water from the rock at Horeb
- **EX 17:6 [FORESHADOW]** The Rock that gives life in the wilderness → 1CO 10:4 p.1834
- **EX 17:8 [MIRACLE]** Victory over Amalek while Moses' hands were lifted
- **EX 17:14 [PROPHECY]** God promised Amalek would be utterly blotted out from under heaven → 1SA 15:1-9; 1CH 4:43 p.458
- **EX 17:16 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh would war against Amalek from generation to generation → 1SA 15:7-8; 1CH 4:43 · MEDIUM p.458

THE VISIT OF JETHRO

1 Now Moses' father-in-law Jethro, the
priest of Midian, heard about all that God
had done for Moses and His people Israel,
and how Yahweh had brought Israel out of
Egypt.

2 After Moses had sent back his wife Zip-
porah, his father-in-law Jethro had re-
ceived her, 3 along with her two sons. One
son was named Gershom, for Moses had
said, "I have been a foreigner in a foreign
land." 4 The other son was named Eliezer,
for Moses had said, "The God of my fa-
ther was my helper and delivered me from
the sword of Pharaoh."

5 Moses' father-in-law Jethro, along with
Moses' wife and sons, came to him in the
desert, where he was encamped at the
mountain of God. 6 He sent word to
Moses, "I, your father-in-law Jethro, am
coming to you with your wife and her two
sons."

7 So Moses went out to meet his father-in-
law and bowed down and kissed him.
They greeted each other and went into
the tent. 8 Then Moses recounted to his
father-in-law all that Yahweh had done to
Pharaoh and the Egyptians for Israel's
sake, all the hardships they had encoun-
tered along the way, and how Yahweh had
delivered them.

9 And Jethro rejoiced over all the good
things Yahweh had done for Israel, whom
He had rescued from the hand of the
Egyptians. 10 Jethro declared, "Blessed be
Yahweh, who has delivered you from the
hand of the Egyptians and of Pharaoh,
and who has delivered the people from
the hand of the Egyptians. 11 Now I know
that Yahweh is greater than all other gods,
for He did this when they treated Israel
with arrogance."

12 Then Moses' father-in-law Jethro
brought a burnt offering and sacrifices to
God, and Aaron came with all the elders
of Israel to eat bread with Moses' father-
in-law in the presence of God.

JETHRO ADVISES MOSES // DEUTERONOMY 1:9–18

13 The next day Moses took his seat to
judge the people, and they stood around
him from morning until evening. 14 When
his father-in-law saw all that Moses was
doing for the people, he asked, "What is
this that you are doing for the people?
Why do you sit alone as judge, with all the
people standing around you from morning
till evening?"

15 "Because the people come to me to in-
quire of God," Moses replied. 16 "When-
ever they have a dispute, it is brought to
me to judge between one man and an-
other, and I make known to them the
statutes and laws of God."

17 But Moses' father-in-law said to him,
"What you are doing is not good. 18 Surely
you and these people with you will wear
yourselves out, because the task is too
heavy for you. You cannot handle it alone.

19 Now listen to me; I will give you some
advice, and may God be with you. You
must be the people's representative be-
fore God and bring their causes to Him. 20
Teach them the statutes and laws, and
show them the way to live and the work
they must do.

21 Furthermore, select capable men from
among the people—God-fearing, trust-
worthy men who are averse to dishonest
gain. Appoint them over the people as
leaders of thousands, of hundreds, of
fifties, and of tens.

22 Have these men judge the people at all
times. Then they can bring you any major
issue, but all minor cases they can judge
on their own, so that your load may be
lightened as they share it with you.

23 If you follow this advice and God so di-
rects you, then you will be able to endure,
and all these people can go home in
peace."

24 Moses listened to his father-in-law and
did everything he said. 25 So Moses chose
capable men from all Israel and made
them heads over the people as leaders of
thousands, of hundreds, of fifties, and of
tens. 26 And they judged the people at all

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

times; they would bring the difficult cases to Moses, but any minor issue they would judge themselves.

27 Then Moses sent his father-in-law on his way, and Jethro returned to his own land.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Three months after leaving Egypt, Israel camps at the foot of Mount Sinai. God says they will be His treasured possession, a kingdom of priests and a holy nation. The people wash up for three days. Then the mountain shakes, smokes like a furnace and blasts with a trumpet that keeps getting louder.

ISRAEL AT MOUNT SINAI

1 In the third month, on the same day of the month that the Israelites had left the land of Egypt, they came to the Wilderness of Sinai. 2 After they had set out from Rephidim, they entered the Wilderness of Sinai, and Israel camped there in front of the mountain.

3 Then Moses went up to God, and Yahweh called to him from the mountain, "This is what you are to tell the house of Jacob and explain to the sons of Israel: 4 'You have seen for yourselves what I did to Egypt, and how I carried you on eagles' wings and brought you to Myself. 5 Now if you will indeed obey My voice and keep My covenant, you will be My treasured possession out of all the nations—for the whole earth is Mine. 6 And unto Me you shall be a kingdom of priests and a holy nation.' These are the words that you are to speak to the Israelites."

7 So Moses went back and summoned the elders of the people and set before them all these words that Yahweh had commanded him. 8 And all the people answered together, "We will do everything that Yahweh has spoken."

So Moses brought their words back to Yahweh.

9 Yahweh said to Moses, "Behold, I will come to you in a dense cloud, so that the people will hear when I speak with you, and they will always put their trust in you."

And Moses relayed to Yahweh what the people had said.

10 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the people and consecrate them today and tomorrow. They must wash their clothes 11 and be prepared by the third day, for on the third day Yahweh will come down on Mount Sinai in the sight of all the people.

12 *And you are to set up a boundary for the people around the mountain and tell them, 'Be careful not to go up on the mountain or touch its base. Whoever touches the mountain shall surely be put to death. 13 No hand shall touch him, but he shall surely be stoned or shot with arrows—whether man or beast, he must not live.'*

Only when the ram's horn sounds a long blast may they approach the mountain."

14 When Moses came down from the mountain to the people, he consecrated them, and they washed their clothes. 15 "Be prepared for the third day," he said to the people. "Do not draw near to a woman."

YAHWEH VISITS SINAI

16 On the third day, when morning came, there was thunder and lightning. A thick cloud was upon the mountain, and a very loud blast of the ram's horn went out, so that all the people in the camp trembled. 17 Then Moses brought the people out of the camp to meet with God, and they stood at the foot of the mountain.

18 Mount Sinai was completely enveloped in smoke, because Yahweh had descended on it in fire. And the smoke rose like the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain quaked violently. 19 And as the sound of the ram's horn grew louder and

- **EX 19:1 [FULFILLS]** God told Moses the people would worship Him on this same mountain ← EX 3:12 p.124
- **EX 19:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:9 p.2013
- **EX 19:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:5 p.2013
- **EX 19:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:6 p.2080
- **EX 19:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 5:10 p.2091
- **EX 19:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:20 p.1994
- **EX 19:16 [MIRACLE]** Thunder, fire, and smoke as Yahweh comes down on Sinai

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

louder, Moses spoke and God answered him in the thunder.

20 Yahweh descended to the top of Mount Sinai and called Moses to the summit. So Moses went up, 21 and Yahweh said to him, "Go down and warn the people not to break through to see Yahweh, lest many of them perish. 22 Even the priests who approach Yahweh must consecrate themselves, or Yahweh will break out against them."

23 But Moses said to Yahweh, "The people cannot come up Mount Sinai, for You solemnly warned us, 'Put a boundary around the mountain and set it apart as holy.'"

24 And Yahweh replied, "Go down and bring Aaron with you. But the priests and the people must not break through to come up to Yahweh, or He will break out against them."

25 So Moses went down to the people and spoke to them.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

God speaks the Ten Commandments to the whole nation. One God, no idols, honor His name, keep the Sabbath, honor your parents, and no murder, adultery, stealing, lying or wanting what is not yours. The people are so terrified they ask Moses to do the listening from now on. Moses says the fear is there to keep them from sinning.

THE TEN COMMANDMENTS // DEUTERONOMY 5:6–21

1 And God spoke all these words:

2 "I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.

3 You shall have no other gods before Me.

4 You shall not make for yourself an idol in the form of anything in the heavens above, on the earth below, or in the waters beneath. 5 You shall not bow down to them or worship them; for I, Yahweh your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on their children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, 6 but showing loving devotion to a thousand generations of those who love Me and keep My commandments.

7 You shall not take the name of Yahweh your God in vain, for Yahweh will not leave anyone unpunished who takes His name in vain.

8 Remember the Sabbath day by keeping it holy. 9 Six days you shall labor and do all your work, 10 but the seventh day is a Sabbath to Yahweh your God, on which you must not do any work—neither you, nor your son or daughter, nor your manservant or maidservant or livestock, nor the foreigner within your gates. 11 For in six days Yahweh made the heavens and the earth and the sea and all that is in them, but on the seventh day He rested. Therefore Yahweh blessed the Sabbath day and set it apart as holy.

12 *Honor your father and mother, so that your days may be long in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.*

13 *You shall not murder.*

14 *You shall not commit adultery.*

15 *You shall not steal.*

16 *You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.*

17 *You shall not covet your neighbor's house. You shall not covet your neighbor's wife, or his manservant or maidservant, or his ox or donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor."*

EX 20:3 [DEMONIC] God commands no other gods and no idols

EX 20:5 [DEMONIC] Visiting iniquity to the third and fourth generation of those who hate Me

EX 20:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 4:24 p.1747

EX 20:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 14:15 p.1766

EX 20:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MT 15:4 p.1571

EX 20:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MT 19:18-19 p.1578

EX 20:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MK 7:10 p.1621

EX 20:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MK 10:19 p.1626

EX 20:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → LK 18:20 p.1680

EX 20:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → EPH 6:2-3 p.1888

EX 20:13 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:21 p.1557

EX 20:13 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 13:9 p.1815

EX 20:13 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 2:11 p.2003

EX 20:14 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:27 p.1557

MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

MOSES COMFORTS THE PEOPLE // DEUTERONOMY 5:22–33; HEBREWS 12:18–29

18 When all the people witnessed the thunder and lightning, the sounding of the ram's horn, and the mountain enveloped in smoke, they trembled and stood at a distance. 19 "Speak to us yourself and we will listen," they said to Moses. "But do not let God speak to us, or we will die."

20 "Do not be afraid," Moses replied. "For God has come to test you, so that the fear of Him may be before you, to keep you from sinning." 21 And the people stood at a distance as Moses approached the thick darkness where God was.

IDOLATRY FORBIDDEN // 1 CORINTHIANS 10:14–22

22 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "This is what you are to tell the Israelites: 'You have seen for yourselves that I have spoken to you from heaven. 23 You are not to make any gods alongside Me; you are not to make for yourselves gods of silver or gold.

24 You are to make for Me an altar of earth, and sacrifice on it your burnt offerings and peace offerings, your sheep and goats and cattle. In every place where I cause My name to be remembered, I will come to you and bless you.

25 Now if you make an altar of stones for Me, you must not build it with stones shaped by tools; for if you use a chisel on it, you will defile it. 26 And you must not go up to My altar on steps, lest your nakedness be exposed on it.'

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Now the details. Rules for servants, for fights, for injuries and for an ox that gores. This is where you find eye for eye and tooth for tooth. It sounds harsh, but it was really a limit, so the payback could never be bigger than the damage.

HEBREW SERVANTS // DEUTERONOMY 15:12–18

1 "These are the ordinances that you are to set before them:

2 If you buy a Hebrew servant, he is to serve you for six years. But in the seventh year, he shall go free without paying anything. 3 If he arrived alone, he is to leave alone; if he arrived with a wife, she is to leave with him. 4 If his master gives him a wife and she bears him sons or daughters, the woman and her children shall belong to her master, and only the man shall go free.

5 But if the servant declares, 'I love my master and my wife and children; I do not want to go free,' 6 then his master is to bring him before the judges. And he shall take him to the door or doorpost and pierce his ear with an awl. Then he shall serve his master for life.

7 And if a man sells his daughter as a servant, she is not to go free as the menservants do. 8 If she is displeasing in the eyes of her master who had designated her for himself, he must allow her to be redeemed. He has no right to sell her to foreigners, since he has broken faith with her. 9 And if he chooses her for his son, he must deal with her as with a daughter. 10 If he takes another wife, he must not reduce the food, clothing, or marital rights of his first wife. 11 If, however, he does not provide her with these three things, she is free to go without monetary payment.

PERSONAL INJURY LAWS

12 Whoever strikes and kills a man must surely be put to death. 13 If, however, he did not lie in wait, but God allowed it to happen, then I will appoint for you a place where he may flee.

14 But if a man schemes and acts willfully against his neighbor to kill him, you must take him away from My altar to be put to death.

15 Whoever strikes his father or mother must surely be put to death.

16 Whoever kidnaps another man must be put to death, whether he sells him or the man is found in his possession.

17 *Anyone who curses his father or mother must surely be put to death.*

- **EX 20:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 7:7 p.1806
- **EX 20:18 [MIRACLE]** The people tremble and stand far off
- **EX 20:23 [DEMONIC]** God forbids making gods of silver or gold
- **EX 21:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 15:4 p.1571

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

18 If men are quarreling and one strikes the
other with a stone or a fist, and he does
not die but is confined to bed, 19 then the
one who struck him shall go unpunished,
as long as the other can get up and walk
around outside with his staff. Neverthe-
less, he must compensate the man for his
lost work and see that he is completely
healed.

20 If a man strikes his manservant or maid-
servant with a rod, and the servant dies
by his hand, he shall surely be punished.
21 However, if the servant gets up after a
day or two, the owner shall not be pun-
ished, since the servant is his property.

22 If men who are fighting strike a preg-
nant woman and her child is born prema-
turely, but there is no further injury, he
shall surely be fined as the woman's hus-
band demands and as the court allows. 23
But if a serious injury results, then you
must require a life for a life— 24 *eye for eye,*
tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, 25
burn for burn, wound for wound, and
stripe for stripe.

26 If a man strikes and blinds the eye of his
manservant or maidservant, he must let
the servant go free as compensation for
the eye. 27 And if he knocks out the tooth
of his manservant or maidservant, he
must let the servant go free as compen-
sation for the tooth.

28 If an ox gores a man or woman to death,
the ox must surely be stoned, and its meat
must not be eaten. But the owner of the
ox shall not be held responsible.

29 But if the ox has a habit of goring, and
its owner has been warned yet does not
restrain it, and it kills a man or woman,
then the ox must be stoned and its owner
must also be put to death. 30 If payment is
demanded of him instead, he may redeem
his life by paying the full amount de-
manded of him.

31 If the ox gores a son or a daughter, it
shall be done to him according to the
same rule.

32 If the ox gores a manservant or maid-
servant, the owner must pay twelve
ounces of silver to the master of that ser-
vant, and the ox must be stoned.

33 If a man opens or digs a pit and fails to
cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it,
34 the owner of the pit shall make restitu-
tion; he must pay its owner, and the dead
animal will be his.

35 If a man's ox injures his neighbor's ox
and it dies, they must sell the live one and
divide the proceeds; they also must divide
the dead animal. 36 But if it was known that
the ox had a habit of goring, yet its owner
failed to restrain it, he shall pay full com-
pensation, ox for ox, and the dead animal
will be his.

- **EX 21:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 7:10 p.1621
- **EX 21:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:38 p.1557

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Laws about stealing, borrowed animals, fires that spread to a neighbor's field and loans. Do not mistreat the foreigner, the widow or the orphan, because God hears them when they cry out. If you take a poor man's coat as a pledge, give it back before sundown, because it is his blanket.

PROPERTY LAWS

1 "If a man steals an ox or a sheep and
slaughters or sells it, he must repay five
oxen for an ox and four sheep for a sheep.

2 If a thief is caught breaking in and is
beaten to death, no one shall be guilty of
bloodshed. 3 But if it happens after sun-
rise, there is guilt for his bloodshed.

A thief must make full restitution; if he has
nothing, he himself shall be sold for his
theft. 4 If what was stolen is actually found
alive in his possession—whether ox or
donkey or sheep—he must pay back dou-
ble.

5 If a man grazes his livestock in a field or
vineyard and allows them to stray so that
they graze in someone else's field, he
must make restitution from the best of his
own field or vineyard.

6 If a fire breaks out and spreads to thorn-
bushes so that it consumes stacked or
standing grain, or the whole field, the one
who started the fire must make full resti-
tution.

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

7 If a man gives his neighbor money or
goods for safekeeping and they are stolen
from the neighbor's house, the thief, if
caught, must pay back double. 8 If the
thief is not found, the owner of the house
must appear before the judges to deter-
mine whether he has taken his neighbor's
property.

9 In all cases of illegal possession of an ox,
a donkey, a sheep, a garment, or any lost
item that someone claims, 'This is mine,'
both parties shall bring their cases before
the judges. The one whom the judges find
guilty must pay back double to his neigh-
bor.

10 If a man gives a donkey, an ox, a sheep,
or any other animal to be cared for by his
neighbor, but it dies or is injured or stolen
while no one is watching, 11 an oath before
Yahweh shall be made between the par-
ties to determine whether or not the man
has taken his neighbor's property. The
owner must accept the oath and require
no restitution.

12 But if the animal was actually stolen
from the neighbor, he must make restitu-
tion to the owner.

13 If the animal was torn to pieces, he shall
bring it as evidence; he need not make
restitution for the torn carcass.

14 If a man borrows an animal from his
neighbor and it is injured or dies while its
owner is not present, he must make full
restitution. 15 If the owner was present, no
restitution is required. If the animal was
rented, the fee covers the loss.

LAWS OF SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY

16 If a man seduces a virgin who is not
pledged in marriage and sleeps with her,
he must pay the full dowry for her to be
his wife. 17 If her father absolutely refuses
to give her to him, the man still must pay
an amount comparable to the bridal price
of a virgin.

18 You must not allow a sorceress to live.

19 Whoever lies with an animal must surely
be put to death.

20 If anyone sacrifices to any god other
than Yahweh alone, he must be set apart
for destruction.

21 You must not exploit or oppress a for-
eign resident, for you yourselves were
foreigners in the land of Egypt.

22 You must not mistreat any widow or or-
phan. 23 If you do mistreat them, and they
cry out to Me in distress, I will surely hear
their cry. 24 My anger will be kindled, and I
will kill you with the sword; then your
wives will become widows and your chil-
dren will be fatherless.

25 If you lend money to one of My people
among you who is poor, you must not act
as a creditor to him; you are not to charge
him interest.

26 If you take your neighbor's cloak as col-
lateral, return it to him by sunset, 27 be-
cause his cloak is the only covering he
has for his body. What else will he sleep
in? And if he cries out to Me, I will hear,
for I am compassionate.

28 *You must not blaspheme God or curse the
ruler of your people.*

29 You must not hold back offerings from
your granaries or vats. You are to give Me
the firstborn of your sons. 30 You shall do
likewise with your cattle and your sheep.
Let them stay with their mothers for seven
days, but on the eighth day you are to
give them to Me.

31 You are to be My holy people. You must
not eat the meat of a mauled animal found
in the field; you are to throw it to the dogs.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not spread false rumors or follow the crowd to do wrong. If your enemy's donkey wanders off, take it back to him. Then come the three yearly feasts. God promises to send His angel ahead to guard them on the way and to drive out their enemies little by little.

EX 22:18 [DEMONIC] Do not allow a sorceress to live

EX 22:20 [DEMONIC] Sacrificing to any other god brings destruction

EX 22:28 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 23:5 p.1787

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

JUSTICE AND MERCY

1 "You shall not spread a false report. Do
not join the wicked by being a malicious
witness.

2 You shall not follow the crowd in wrong-
doing. When you testify in a lawsuit, do
not pervert justice by siding with the
crowd. 3 And do not show favoritism to a
poor man in his lawsuit.

4 If you encounter your enemy's stray ox
or donkey, you must return it to him.

5 If you see the donkey of one who hates
you fallen under its load, do not leave it
there; you must help him with it.

6 You shall not deny justice to the poor in
their lawsuits. 7 Stay far away from a false
accusation. Do not kill the innocent or the
just, for I will not acquit the guilty.

8 Do not accept a bribe, for a bribe blinds
those who see and twists the words of the
righteous.

9 Do not oppress a foreign resident, since
you yourselves know how it feels to be
foreigners; for you were foreigners in the
land of Egypt.

SABBATH LAWS // LEVITICUS 25:1–7; DEUTERONOMY 15:1–6

10 For six years you are to sow your land
and gather its produce, 11 but in the sev-
enth year you must let it rest and lie fal-
low, so that the poor among your people
may eat from the field and the wild ani-
mals may consume what they leave. Do
the same with your vineyard and olive
grove.

12 For six days you are to do your work,
but on the seventh day you must cease,
so that your ox and your donkey may rest
and the son of your maidservant may be
refreshed, as well as the foreign resident.

13 Pay close attention to everything I have
said to you. You must not invoke the
names of other gods; they must not be
heard on your lips.

THE THREE FEASTS OF PILGRIMAGE // LEVITICUS 23:1–3

14 Three times a year you are to celebrate
a feast to Me.

15 You are to keep the Feast of Unleavened
Bread as I commanded you: At the ap-
pointed time in the month of Abib you are
to eat unleavened bread for seven days,
because that was the month you came
out of Egypt. No one may appear before
Me empty-handed.

16 You are also to keep the Feast of Har-
vest with the firstfruits of the produce
from what you sow in the field.

And keep the Feast of Ingathering at the
end of the year, when you gather your
produce from the field.

17 Three times a year all your males are to
appear before the Lord Yahweh.

18 You must not offer the blood of My sac-
rifices with anything leavened, nor may
the fat of My feast remain until morning.

19 Bring the best of the firstfruits of your
soil to the house of Yahweh your God.

You must not cook a young goat in its
mother's milk.

GOD'S ANGEL TO LEAD // DEUTERONOMY 7:12–26

20 Behold, I am sending an angel before
you to protect you along the way and to
bring you to the place I have prepared. 21
Pay attention to him and listen to his
voice; do not defy him, for he will not for-
give rebellion, since My Name is in him.

22 But if you will listen carefully to his voice
and do everything I say, I will be an enemy
to your enemies and a foe to your foes. 23
For My angel will go before you and bring
you into the land of the Amorites, Hittites,
Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites, and Je-
busites, and I will annihilate them.

24 You must not bow down to their gods or
serve them or follow their practices. In-
stead, you are to demolish them and
smash their sacred stones to pieces.

25 So you shall serve Yahweh your God,
and He will bless your bread and your wa-
ter. And I will take away sickness from

EX 23:13 [DEMONIC] Do not even speak the names of other gods

EX 23:24 [DEMONIC] Do not bow to their gods but smash their sacred stones

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

among you. 26 No woman in your land will
miscarry or be barren; I will fulfill the
number of your days.
27 I will send My terror ahead of you and
throw into confusion every nation you en-
counter. I will make all your enemies turn
and run. 28 I will send the hornet before
you to drive the Hivites and Canaanites
and Hittites out of your way.
29 I will not drive them out before you in a
single year; otherwise the land would be-
come desolate and wild animals would
multiply against you. 30 Little by little I will
drive them out ahead of you, until you be-
come fruitful and possess the land.
31 And I will establish your borders from
the Red Sea to the Sea of the Philistines,
and from the desert to the Euphrates. For I
will deliver the inhabitants into your hand,
and you will drive them out before you. 32
You shall make no covenant with them or
with their gods. 33 They must not remain in
your land, lest they cause you to sin
against Me. For if you serve their gods, it
will surely be a snare to you."

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

The people say, All that Yahweh has spoken we will do. Moses splashes the blood of the covenant on them. Then Moses, Aaron and seventy elders go up the mountain, see the God of Israel, and eat and drink. Moses goes up into the cloud and stays forty days and forty nights.

THE COVENANT SEALED

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Come up
to Yahweh—you and Aaron, Nadab and
Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders—and
you are to worship at a distance. 2 Moses
alone shall approach Yahweh, but the oth-
ers must not come near. And the people
may not go up with him."
3 When Moses came and told the people
all the words and ordinances of Yahweh,
they all responded with one voice: "All the
words that Yahweh has spoken, we will
do."
4 And Moses wrote down all the words of
Yahweh.
Early the next morning he got up and built
an altar at the base of the mountain, along
with twelve pillars for the twelve tribes of
Israel. 5 Then he sent out some young men
of Israel, and they offered burnt offerings
and sacrificed young bulls as peace offer-
ings to Yahweh.
6 Moses took half of the blood and put it in
bowls, and the other half he splattered on
the altar. 7 Then he took the Book of the
Covenant and read it to the people, who
replied, "All that Yahweh has spoken we
will do, and we will be obedient."
8 *So Moses took the blood, splattered it on the*
people, and said, "This is the blood of the
covenant that Yahweh has made with you in
accordance with all these words."
9 Then Moses went up with Aaron, Nadab
and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of
Israel, 10 and they saw the God of Israel.
Under His feet was a work like a pave-
ment made of sapphire, as clear as the
sky itself. 11 But God did not lay His hand
on the nobles of Israel; they saw Him, and
they ate and drank.

MOSES ON THE MOUNTAIN

12 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Come up
to Me on the mountain and stay here, so
that I may give you the tablets of stone,
with the law and commandments I have
written for their instruction."
13 So Moses set out with Joshua his atten-
dant and went up on the mountain of God.
14 And he said to the elders, "Wait here for
us until we return to you. Aaron and Hur
are here with you. Whoever has a dispute
can go to them."
15 When Moses went up on the mountain,
the cloud covered it, 16 and the glory of
Yahweh settled on Mount Sinai. For six
days the cloud covered it, and on the sev-
enth day Yahweh called to Moses from

EX 23:32 [DEMONIC] No covenant with the nations or their gods

EX 24:4 [FULFILLS] God told Moses the people would worship Him on this same mountain ← EX 3:12 p.124
EX 24:8 [FORESHADOW] This is the blood of the covenant → MT 26:28; HEB 9:18-20 p.1592
EX 24:8 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 9:20 p.1990
EX 24:9 [MIRACLE] Moses and the seventy elders see the God of Israel

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

within the cloud. 17 And the sight of the glory of Yahweh was like a consuming fire on the mountaintop in the eyes of the Israelites.

18 Moses entered the cloud as he went up on the mountain, and he remained on the mountain forty days and forty nights.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

God gives Moses the plans for a tent where He will live among His people. The people are to give only what their hearts want to give. First comes the ark of the covenant with its golden mercy seat and two cherubim, then a table for bread and a solid gold lampstand. Build it exactly like the pattern on the mountain.

OFFERINGS FOR THE TABERNACLE // EXODUS 35:4–9

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Tell the Israelites to bring Me an offering. You are to receive My offering from every man whose heart compels him. 3 This is the offering you are to accept from them:

gold, silver, and bronze;
4 blue, purple, and scarlet yarn;
fine linen and goat hair;
5 ram skins dyed red and fine leather;
acacia wood;
6 olive oil for the light;
spices for the anointing oil and for the fragrant incense;
7 and onyx stones and gemstones to be mounted on the ephod and breastpiece.

8 And they are to make a sanctuary for Me, so that I may dwell among them. 9 You must make the tabernacle and design all its furnishings according to the pattern I show you.

THE ARK OF THE COVENANT // EXODUS 37:1–5

10 And they are to construct an ark of acacia wood, 45 inches long, 27 inches wide, and 27 inches high. 11 Overlay it with pure gold both inside and out, and make a gold molding around it.

12 Cast four gold rings for it and fasten them to its four feet, two rings on one side and two on the other. 13 And make poles of acacia wood and overlay them with gold. 14 Insert the poles into the rings on the sides of the ark, in order to carry it. 15 The poles are to remain in the rings of the ark; they must not be removed. 16 And place inside the ark the Testimony, which I will give you.

THE MERCY SEAT // EXODUS 37:6–9

17 And you are to construct a mercy seat of pure gold, 45 inches long and 27 inches wide. 18 Make two cherubim of hammered gold at the ends of the mercy seat, 19 one cherub on one end and one on the other, all made from one piece of gold. 20 And the cherubim are to have wings that spread upward, overshadowing the mercy seat. The cherubim are to face each other, looking toward the mercy seat.

21 Set the mercy seat atop the ark and put the Testimony that I will give you into the ark.

22 And I will meet with you there above the mercy seat, between the two cherubim that are over the ark of the Testimony; I will speak with you about all that I command you regarding the Israelites.

THE TABLE OF SHOWBREAD // EXODUS 37:10–16; LEVITICUS 24:5–9

23 You are also to make a table of acacia wood 36 inches long, 18 inches wide, and 27 inches high. 24 Overlay it with pure gold and make a gold molding around it. 25 And make a rim around it three inches wide and put a gold molding on the rim.

26 Make four gold rings for the table and fasten them to the four corners at its four legs. 27 The rings are to be close to the rim, to serve as holders for the poles used to carry the table. 28 Make the poles of acacia wood and overlay them with gold,

EX 24:16 [MIRACLE] The glory of Yahweh looks like a consuming fire on Sinai
EX 25:2 [HEART] God asked for offerings only from those whose hearts moved them to give.
EX 25:8 [FORESHADOW] God would dwell among His people in the tabernacle → JN 1:14; HEB 8:5 p.1698
EX 25:10 [NOTABLE] This is the first time the Bible mentions the ark of the covenant, a wooden chest covered in gold, about 45 inches long. It held the stone tablets of the Ten Commandments, and God said He would meet with Moses above its gold lid, the mercy seat. Nobody knows where it is today, which makes it one of the great mysteries of history.
EX 25:22 [FORESHADOW] God would meet His people above the mercy seat → ROM 3:25; HEB 9:5 · MEDIUM p.1803

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

so that the table may be carried with them.

29 You are also to make the plates and dishes, as well as the pitchers and bowls for pouring drink offerings. Make them out of pure gold.

30 And place the Bread of the Presence on the table before Me at all times.

THE LAMPSTAND // EXODUS 37:17–24; NUMBERS 8:1–4

31 Then you are to make a lampstand of pure, hammered gold. It shall be made of one piece, including its base and shaft, its cups, and its buds and petals.

32 Six branches are to extend from the sides of the lampstand—three on one side and three on the other. 33 There are to be three cups shaped like almond blossoms on the first branch, each with buds and petals, three on the next branch, and the same for all six branches that extend from the lampstand.

34 And on the lampstand there shall be four cups shaped like almond blossoms with buds and petals. 35 For the six branches that extend from the lampstand, a bud must be under the first pair of branches, a bud under the second pair, and a bud under the third pair. 36 The buds and branches are to be all of one piece with the lampstand, hammered out of pure gold.

37 Make seven lamps and set them up on the lampstand so that they illuminate the area in front of it. 38 The wick trimmers and their trays must be of pure gold. 39 The lampstand and all these utensils shall be made from 75 pounds of pure gold.

40 *See to it that you make everything according to the pattern shown you on the mountain.*

■ **EX 25:40 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 8:5 p.1987

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

The tabernacle itself: ten curtains of fine linen with cherubim woven in, coverings of goat hair and leather, and a frame of acacia wood covered with gold. A thick veil divides the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place. Behind that veil, God's presence will live.

THE TEN CURTAINS FOR THE TABERNACLE // EXODUS 36:8–13

1 "You are to construct the tabernacle itself with ten curtains of finely spun linen, each with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and cherubim skillfully worked into them. 2 Each curtain shall be 42 feet long and 6 feet wide—all curtains the same size.

3 Five of the curtains are to be joined together, and the other five joined as well. 4 Make loops of blue material on the edge of the end curtain in the first set, and do the same for the end curtain in the second set.

5 Make fifty loops on one curtain and fifty loops on the end curtain of the second set, so that the loops line up opposite one another. 6 Make fifty gold clasps as well, and join the curtains together with the clasps, so that the tabernacle will be a unit.

THE ELEVEN CURTAINS OF GOAT HAIR // EXODUS 36:14–19

7 You are to make curtains of goat hair for the tent over the tabernacle—eleven curtains in all. 8 Each of the eleven curtains is to be the same size—45 feet long and 6 feet wide.

9 Join five of the curtains into one set and the other six into another. Then fold the sixth curtain over double at the front of the tent.

10 Make fifty loops along the edge of the end curtain in the first set, and fifty loops along the edge of the corresponding curtain in the second set. 11 Make fifty bronze clasps and put them through the loops to join the tent together as a unit.

12 As for the overlap that remains of the tent curtains, the half curtain that is left over shall hang down over the back of the

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

tabernacle. 13 And the tent curtains will be eighteen inches longer on either side, and the excess will hang over the sides of the tabernacle to cover it.

14 Also make a covering for the tent out of ram skins dyed red, and over that a covering of fine leather.

THE FRAMES AND BASES // EXODUS 36:20–34

15 You are to construct upright frames of acacia wood for the tabernacle. 16 Each frame is to be 15 feet long and 27 inches wide. 17 Two tenons must be connected to each other for each frame. Make all the frames of the tabernacle in this way.

18 Construct twenty frames for the south side of the tabernacle, 19 with forty silver bases under the twenty frames—two bases for each frame, one under each tenon.

20 For the second side of the tabernacle, the north side, make twenty frames 21 and forty silver bases—two bases under each frame.

22 Make six frames for the rear of the tabernacle, the west side, 23 and two frames for the two back corners of the tabernacle, 24 coupled together from bottom to top and fitted into a single ring. These will serve as the two corners. 25 So there are to be eight frames and sixteen silver bases—two under each frame.

26 You are also to make five crossbars of acacia wood for the frames on one side of the tabernacle, 27 five for those on the other side, and five for those on the rear side of the tabernacle, to the west.

28 The central crossbar in the middle of the frames shall extend from one end to the other. 29 Overlay the frames with gold and make gold rings to hold the crossbars. Also overlay the crossbars with gold.

30 So you are to set up the tabernacle according to the pattern shown you on the mountain.

THE VEIL // EXODUS 36:35–36

31 Make a veil of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely spun linen, with cherubim skillfully worked into it. 32 Hang it with gold hooks on four posts of acacia wood, overlaid with gold and standing on four silver bases. 33 And hang the veil from the clasps and place the ark of the Testimony behind the veil. So the veil will separate the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place.

34 Put the mercy seat on the ark of the Testimony in the Most Holy Place. 35 And place the table outside the veil on the north side of the tabernacle, and put the lampstand opposite the table, on the south side.

THE CURTAIN FOR THE ENTRANCE // EXODUS 36:37–38

36 For the entrance to the tent, you are to make a curtain embroidered with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely spun linen. 37 Make five posts of acacia wood for the curtain, overlay them with gold, use hooks of gold, and cast five bronze bases for them.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

A bronze altar for burnt offerings stands in the courtyard. Around everything is a courtyard about 150 feet long, made of linen curtains hanging on posts. And the lamp in the tent must burn all night, every night, with pure olive oil.

THE BRONZE ALTAR // EXODUS 38:1–7

1 "You are to build an altar of acacia wood. The altar must be square, 7½ feet long, 7½ feet wide, and 4½ feet high. 2 Make a horn on each of its four corners, so that the horns are of one piece, and overlay it with bronze.

3 Make all its utensils of bronze—its pots for removing ashes, its shovels, its sprinkling bowls, its meat forks, and its firepans. 4 Construct for it a grate of bronze mesh, and make a bronze ring at each of the four corners of the mesh. 5 Set the grate beneath the ledge of the altar, so that the mesh comes halfway up the altar.

6 Additionally, make poles of acacia wood for the altar and overlay them with bronze. 7 The poles are to be inserted into the

EX 26:33 [FORESHADOW] The veil separated the people from the Most Holy Place → MT 27:51; HEB 10:19-20 p.1601

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

rings so that the poles are on two sides of the altar when it is carried.

8 Construct the altar with boards so that it is hollow. It is to be made just as you were shown on the mountain.

THE COURTYARD // EXODUS 38:9–20

9 You are also to make a courtyard for the tabernacle. On the south side of the courtyard make curtains of finely spun linen, 150 feet long on one side, 10 with twenty posts and twenty bronze bases, and silver hooks and bands on the posts.

11 Likewise there are to be curtains on the north side, 150 feet long, with twenty posts and twenty bronze bases, and with silver hooks and bands on the posts. 12 The curtains on the west side of the courtyard shall be 75 feet wide, with ten posts and ten bases.

13 The east side of the courtyard, toward the sunrise, is to be 75 feet wide. 14 Make the curtains on one side 22½ feet long, with three posts and three bases, 15 and the curtains on the other side 22½ feet long, with three posts and three bases.

16 The gate of the courtyard shall be 30 feet long, with a curtain embroidered with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely spun linen. It shall have four posts and four bases.

17 All the posts around the courtyard shall have silver bands, silver hooks, and bronze bases. 18 The entire courtyard shall be 150 feet long and 75 feet wide, with curtains of finely spun linen 7½ feet high, and with bronze bases. 19 All the utensils of the tabernacle for every use, including all its tent pegs and the tent pegs of the courtyard, shall be made of bronze.

THE OIL FOR THE LAMPS // LEVITICUS 24:1–4

20 And you are to command the Israelites to bring you pure oil of pressed olives for the light, to keep the lamps burning continually.

21 In the Tent of Meeting, outside the veil that is in front of the Testimony, Aaron and his sons are to tend the lamps before Yahweh from evening until morning. This is to be a permanent statute for the Israelites for the generations to come.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

Aaron and his sons are chosen to be priests, and God designs their clothes down to the stitching. The high priest wears an ephod and a breastpiece with twelve stones, one for each tribe, so he carries Israel over his heart. On his turban is a gold plate that says HOLY TO YAHWEH. Fashion, but make it holy.

GARMENTS FOR THE PRIESTS

1 "Next, have your brother Aaron brought to you from among the Israelites, along with his sons Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar, to serve Me as priests. 2 Make holy garments for your brother Aaron, to give him glory and splendor.

3 You are to instruct all the skilled craftsmen, whom I have filled with a spirit of wisdom, to make garments for Aaron's consecration, so that he may serve Me as priest. 4 These are the garments that they shall make: a breastpiece, an ephod, a robe, a woven tunic, a turban, and a sash. They are to make these holy garments for your brother Aaron and his sons, so that they may serve Me as priests. 5 They shall use gold, along with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and fine linen.

THE EPHOD // EXODUS 39:1–7

6 They are to make the ephod of finely spun linen embroidered with gold, and with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn. 7 It shall have two shoulder pieces attached at two of its corners, so it can be fastened. 8 And the skillfully woven waistband of the ephod must be of one piece, of the same workmanship—with gold, with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and with finely spun linen.

9 Take two onyx stones and engrave on them the names of the sons of Israel: 10 six of their names on one stone and the re-

EX 27:21 [NOTABLE] This is the first time the Bible uses the name Tent of Meeting. It was God's tent in the middle of the camp, the place where He met with His people, and it moved with Israel until Solomon built the temple. John 1:14 says Jesus came and pitched His tent among us.

EX 28:1 [FORESHADOW] Aaron was called by God to serve as high priest → HEB 5:4-5; HEB 7:26-27 p.1982

GOD SPEAKING

maining six on the other, in the order of their birth. 11 Engrave the names of the sons of Israel on the two stones the way a gem cutter engraves a seal. Then mount the stones in gold filigree settings. 12 Fasten both stones on the shoulder pieces of the ephod as memorial stones for the sons of Israel. Aaron is to bear their names on his two shoulders as a memorial before Yahweh.

13 Fashion gold filigree settings 14 and two chains of pure gold, made of braided cord work; and attach these chains to the settings.

THE BREASTPIECE // EXODUS 39:8–21

15 You are also to make a breastpiece of judgment with the same workmanship as the ephod. Construct it with gold, with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and with finely spun linen. 16 It must be square when folded over double, nine inches long and nine inches wide.

17 And mount on it a setting of gemstones, four rows of stones:

In the first row there shall be a ruby, a topaz, and an emerald;
18 in the second row a turquoise, a sapphire, and a diamond;
19 in the third row a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst;
20 and in the fourth row a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper.

Mount these stones in gold filigree settings. 21 The twelve stones are to correspond to the names of the sons of Israel, each engraved like a seal with the name of one of the twelve tribes.

22 For the breastpiece, make braided chains like cords of pure gold. 23 You are also to make two gold rings and fasten them to the two corners of the breastpiece. 24 Then fasten the two gold chains to the two gold rings at the corners of the breastpiece, 25 and fasten the other ends of the two chains to the two filigree settings, attaching them to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at the front.

26 Make two more gold rings and attach them to the other two corners of the breastpiece, on the inside edge next to the ephod.

27 Make two additional gold rings and attach them to the bottom of the two shoulder pieces of the ephod, on its front, near its seam just above its woven waistband. 28 The rings of the breastpiece shall be tied to the rings of the ephod with a cord of blue yarn, so that the breastpiece is above the waistband of the ephod and does not swing out from the ephod.

29 Whenever Aaron enters the Holy Place, he shall bear the names of the sons of Israel over his heart on the breastpiece of judgment, as a continual reminder before Yahweh.

30 And place the Urim and Thummim in the breastpiece of judgment, so that they will also be over Aaron's heart whenever he comes before Yahweh. Aaron will continually carry the judgment of the sons of Israel over his heart before Yahweh.

ADDITIONAL PRIESTLY GARMENTS // EXODUS 39:22–31

31 You are to make the robe of the ephod entirely of blue cloth, 32 with an opening at its top in the center. Around the opening shall be a woven collar with an opening like that of a garment, so that it will not tear.

33 Make pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn all the way around the lower hem, with gold bells between them, 34 alternating the gold bells and pomegranates around the lower hem of the robe.

35 Aaron must wear the robe whenever he ministers, and its sound will be heard when he enters or exits the sanctuary before Yahweh, so that he will not die.

36 You are to make a plate of pure gold and engrave on it as on a seal:

HOLY TO THE Yahweh.

37 Fasten to it a blue cord to mount it on the turban; it shall be on the front of the turban. 38 And it will be worn on Aaron's forehead, so that he may bear the iniquity of the holy things that the sons of Israel consecrate with regard to all their holy

GOD SPEAKING

gifts. It shall always be on his forehead, so that they may be acceptable before Yahweh.

39 You are to weave the tunic with fine linen, make the turban of fine linen, and fashion an embroidered sash. 40 Make tunics, sashes, and headbands for Aaron's sons, to give them glory and splendor.

41 After you put these garments on your brother Aaron and his sons, anoint them, ordain them, and consecrate them so that they may serve Me as priests.

42 Make linen undergarments to cover their bare flesh, extending from waist to thigh. 43 Aaron and his sons must wear them whenever they enter the Tent of Meeting or approach the altar to minister in the Holy Place, so that they will not incur guilt and die. This is to be a permanent statute for Aaron and his descendants.

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

A seven day ceremony to ordain the priests. They are washed, dressed and anointed with oil, and blood is put on the right ear, right thumb and right big toe, so they listen, work and walk for God. God says He will meet with Israel and live among them, and they will know He is Yahweh their God.

CONSECRATION OF THE PRIESTS // LEVITICUS 8:1–13

1 "Now this is what you are to do to consecrate Aaron and his sons to serve Me as priests: Take a young bull and two rams without blemish, 2 along with unleavened bread, unleavened cakes mixed with oil, and unleavened wafers anointed with oil. Make them out of fine wheat flour, 3 put them in a basket, and present them in the basket, along with the bull and the two rams.

4 Then present Aaron and his sons at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting and wash them with water. 5 Take the garments and clothe Aaron with the tunic, the robe of the ephod, the ephod itself, and the breastplate. Fasten the ephod on him with its woven waistband. 6 Put the turban on his head and attach the holy diadem to the turban. 7 Then take the anointing oil and anoint him by pouring it on his head.

8 Present his sons as well and clothe them with tunics. 9 Wrap the sashes around Aaron and his sons and tie headbands on them. The priesthood shall be theirs by a permanent statute. In this way you are to ordain Aaron and his sons.

THE ORDER OF THE SACRIFICES // LEVITICUS 8:22–36

10 You are to present the bull at the front of the Tent of Meeting, and Aaron and his sons are to lay their hands on its head. 11 And you shall slaughter the bull before Yahweh at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 12 Take some of the blood of the bull and put it on the horns of the altar with your finger; then pour out the rest of the blood at the base of the altar. 13 Take all the fat that covers the entrails and the lobe of the liver, and both kidneys with the fat on them, and burn them on the altar. 14 But burn the flesh of the bull and its hide and dung outside the camp; it is a sin offering.

15 Take one of the rams, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on its head. 16 You are to slaughter the ram, take its blood, and splatter it on all sides of the altar. 17 Cut the ram into pieces, wash the entrails and legs, and place them with its head and other pieces. 18 Then burn the entire ram on the altar; it is a burnt offering to Yahweh, a pleasing aroma, a food offering to Yahweh.

19 Take the second ram, and Aaron and his sons are to lay their hands on its head. 20 Slaughter the ram, take some of its blood, and put it on the right earlobes of Aaron and his sons, on the thumbs of their right hands, and on the big toes of their right feet. Splatter the remaining blood on all sides of the altar. 21 And take some of the blood on the altar and some of the anointing oil and sprinkle it on Aaron and his garments, as well as on his sons and their garments. Then he and his garments will be consecrated, as well as his sons and their garments.

GOD SPEAKING

22 Take the fat from the ram, the fat tail,
the fat covering the entrails, the lobe of
the liver, both kidneys with the fat on
them, and the right thigh (since this is a
ram for ordination), 23 along with one loaf
of bread, one cake of bread made with oil,
and one wafer from the basket of unleav-
ened bread that is before Yahweh. 24 Put
all these in the hands of Aaron and his
sons and wave them before Yahweh as a
wave offering. 25 Then take them from
their hands and burn them on the altar
atop the burnt offering as a pleasing
aroma before Yahweh; it is a food offering
to Yahweh.

26 Take the breast of the ram of Aaron's
ordination and wave it before Yahweh as a
wave offering, and it will be your portion.
27 Consecrate for Aaron and his sons the
breast of the wave offering that is waved
and the thigh of the heave offering that is
lifted up from the ram of ordination. 28 This
will belong to Aaron and his sons as a
regular portion from the Israelites, for it is
the heave offering the Israelites will make
to Yahweh from their peace offerings.

29 The holy garments that belong to Aaron
will belong to his sons after him, so they
can be anointed and ordained in them. 30
The son who succeeds him as priest and
enters the Tent of Meeting to minister in
the Holy Place must wear them for seven
days.

FOOD FOR THE PRIESTS

31 You are to take the ram of ordination and
boil its flesh in a holy place. 32 At the en-
trance to the Tent of Meeting, Aaron and
his sons are to eat the meat of the ram
and the bread that is in the basket. 33 They
must eat those things by which atonement
was made for their ordination and conse-
cration. But no outsider may eat them, be-
cause these things are sacred. 34 And if
any of the meat of ordination or any bread
is left until the morning, you are to burn up
the remainder. It must not be eaten, be-
cause it is sacred.

35 This is what you are to do for Aaron and
his sons based on all that I have com-
manded you, taking seven days to ordain
them. 36 Sacrifice a bull as a sin offering
each day for atonement. Purify the altar
by making atonement for it, and anoint it
to consecrate it. 37 For seven days you
shall make atonement for the altar and
consecrate it. Then the altar will become
most holy; whatever touches the altar will
be holy.

THE DAILY OFFERINGS // NUMBERS 28:1–8

38 This is what you are to offer regularly on
the altar, each day: two lambs that are a
year old. 39 Offer one lamb in the morning
and the other at twilight. 40 With the first
lamb offer two quarts of fine flour, mixed
with a quart of oil from pressed olives,
and a drink offering of a quart of wine. 41
And offer the second lamb at twilight with
the same grain offering and drink offering
as in the morning, as a pleasing aroma, a
food offering to Yahweh.

42 For the generations to come, this burnt
offering shall be made regularly at the en-
trance to the Tent of Meeting before Yah-
weh, where I will meet you to speak with
you. 43 I will also meet with the Israelites
there, and that place will be consecrated
by My glory. 44 So I will consecrate the
Tent of Meeting and the altar, and I will
consecrate Aaron and his sons to serve
Me as priests.

GOD WILL DWELL AMONG THE PEOPLE

45 Then I will dwell among the Israelites
and be their God. 46 And they will know
that I am Yahweh their God, who brought
them out of the land of Egypt so that I
might dwell among them.
I am Yahweh their God.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

An altar of incense made of gold, a census tax that is the same for rich and poor, and a bronze basin for washing. Then God gives the exact recipe for the holy anointing oil and the holy incense. Copy them for your own use and you are cut off from the people. This is not a home fragrance.

THE ALTAR OF INCENSE // EXODUS 37:25–29

1 "You are also to make an altar of acacia
wood for the burning of incense. 2 It is to

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

be square, 18 inches long, 18 inches wide, and 36 inches high. Its horns must be of one piece. 3 Overlay with pure gold the top and all the sides and horns, and make a molding of gold around it. 4 And make two gold rings below the molding on opposite sides to hold the poles used to carry it. 5 Make the poles of acacia wood and overlay them with gold.

6 Place the altar in front of the veil that is before the ark of the Testimony—before the mercy seat that is over the Testimony—where I will meet with you. 7 And Aaron is to burn fragrant incense on it every morning when he tends the lamps. 8 When Aaron sets up the lamps at twilight, he must burn the incense perpetually before Yahweh for the generations to come. 9 On this altar you must not offer unauthorized incense or a burnt offering or grain offering; nor are you to pour a drink offering on it.

10 Once a year Aaron shall make atonement on the horns of the altar. Throughout your generations he shall make atonement on it annually with the blood of the sin offering of atonement. The altar is most holy to Yahweh."

THE CENSUS OFFERING // 2 SAMUEL 24:1–9; 1 CHRONICLES 21:1–6

11 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 12 "When you take a census of the Israelites to number them, each man must pay Yahweh a ransom for his life when he is counted. Then no plague will come upon them when they are numbered. 13 Everyone who crosses over to those counted must pay a fifth of an ounce, weighed by the sanctuary standard. This fifth of an ounce is an offering to Yahweh.

14 Everyone twenty years of age or older who crosses over must give this offering to Yahweh. 15 In making the offering to Yahweh to atone for your lives, the rich shall not give more than a fifth of an ounce, nor shall the poor give less. 16 Take the atonement money from the Israelites and use it for the service of the Tent of Meeting. It will serve as a memorial for the Israelites before Yahweh to make atonement for your lives."

THE BRONZE BASIN // EXODUS 38:8

17 And Yahweh said to Moses, 18 "You are to make a bronze basin with a bronze stand for washing. Set it between the Tent of Meeting and the altar, and put water in it, 19 with which Aaron and his sons are to wash their hands and feet. 20 Whenever they enter the Tent of Meeting or approach the altar to minister by presenting a food offering to Yahweh, they must wash with water so that they will not die. 21 Thus they are to wash their hands and feet so that they will not die; this shall be a permanent statute for Aaron and his descendants for the generations to come."

THE ANOINTING OIL

22 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 23 "Take the finest spices: 12½ pounds of liquid myrrh, half that amount (6¼ pounds) of fragrant cinnamon, 6¼ pounds of kaneh bosem, 24 12½ pounds of cassia—all weighed by the sanctuary standard—and a gallon of olive oil. 25 Prepare from these a sacred anointing oil, a fragrant blend, the work of a perfumer; it will be a sacred anointing oil.

26 Use this oil to anoint the Tent of Meeting, the ark of the Testimony, 27 the table and all its utensils, the lampstand and its utensils, the altar of incense, 28 the altar of burnt offering and all its utensils, and the basin with its stand. 29 You are to consecrate them so that they will be most holy. Whatever touches them shall be holy. 30 Anoint Aaron and his sons and consecrate them to serve Me as priests.

31 And you are to tell the Israelites, 'This will be My sacred anointing oil for the generations to come. 32 It must not be used to anoint an ordinary man, and you must not make anything like it with the

EX 30:23 [NOTABLE] The recipe for the holy anointing oil. Most English Bibles call the third spice calamus, sweet cane or fragrant cane, but the Hebrew root words are kaneh bosem, which means fragrant reed. In 1936 a Polish scholar named Sula Benet pointed this out and made the case that kaneh bosem may have really been cannabis, the word she believed cannabis came from. The scholarly consensus is that it was not cannabis but a sweet smelling reed like calamus or lemongrass.

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

same formula. It is holy, and it must be holy to you. 33 Anyone who mixes perfume like it or puts it on an outsider shall be cut off from his people.'"

THE INCENSE

34 Yahweh also said to Moses, "Take fragrant spices—gum resin, onycha, galbanum, and pure frankincense—in equal measures, 35 and make a fragrant blend of incense, the work of a perfumer, seasoned with salt, pure and holy. 36 Grind some of it into fine powder and place it in front of the Testimony in the Tent of Meeting, where I will meet with you. It shall be most holy to you. 37 You are never to use this formula to make incense for yourselves; you shall regard it as holy to Yahweh. 38 Anyone who makes something like it to enjoy its fragrance shall be cut off from his people."

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

God fills a craftsman named Bezalel with His Spirit, with skill and with creativity. One of the first people in the Bible filled with the Spirit of God is an artist. God makes the Sabbath a sign between Him and Israel. Then He hands Moses two stone tablets written by the finger of God.

BEZALEL AND OHOLIAB // EXODUS 35:30–35

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "See, I have called by name Bezalel son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah. 3 And I have filled him with the Spirit of God, with skill, ability, and knowledge in all kinds of craftsmanship, 4 to design artistic works in gold, silver, and bronze, 5 to cut gemstones for settings, and to carve wood, so that he may be a master of every craft.

6 Moreover, I have selected Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, as his assistant.

I have also given skill to all the craftsmen, that they may fashion all that I have commanded you: 7 the Tent of Meeting, the ark of the Testimony and the mercy seat upon it, and all the other furnishings of the tent— 8 the table with its utensils, the pure gold lampstand with all its utensils, the altar of incense, 9 the altar of burnt offering with all its utensils, and the basin with its stand— 10 as well as the woven garments, both the holy garments for Aaron the priest and the garments for his sons to serve as priests, 11 in addition to the anointing oil and fragrant incense for the Holy Place. They are to make them according to all that I have commanded you."

THE SIGN OF THE SABBATH // NUMBERS 15:32–36

12 And Yahweh said to Moses, 13 "Tell the Israelites, 'Surely you must keep My Sabbaths, for this will be a sign between Me and you for the generations to come, so that you may know that I am Yahweh who sanctifies you. 14 Keep the Sabbath, for it is holy to you. Anyone who profanes it must surely be put to death. Whoever does any work on that day must be cut off from among his people. 15 For six days work may be done, but the seventh day is a Sabbath of complete rest, holy to Yahweh. Whoever does any work on the Sabbath day must surely be put to death.

16 The Israelites must keep the Sabbath, celebrating it as a permanent covenant for the generations to come. 17 It is a sign between Me and the Israelites forever; for in six days Yahweh made the heavens and the earth, but on the seventh day He rested and was refreshed.'"

MOSES RECEIVES THE TABLETS

18 When Yahweh had finished speaking with Moses on Mount Sinai, He gave him the two tablets of the Testimony, tablets of stone inscribed by the finger of God.

EX 30:34 [NOTABLE] The recipe for the holy incense, burned on the gold altar inside the tent every morning and evening, 30:7 to 8. Some point out that three of the four ingredients may be psychoactive, which means God was literally telling the Levite priests to light it up under a tent. Lab studies back this for frankincense, whose smoke acted on the brain in mice in a 2008 study, and for myrrh, a likely match for the gum resin, which eased pain in mice in 1996. Most scholars say the incense was a sweet smell picturing prayer rising to God, Psalm 141:2, and its effect on people is not proven.

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses is gone a long time, so the people ask Aaron to make them a god. He melts their gold earrings into a calf, and they throw a party. God tells Moses to go down, and Moses pleads for the people. When he sees the dancing, he smashes the tablets. Aaron's excuse is that he threw the gold into the fire, and out came this calf.

THE GOLDEN CALF // DEUTERONOMY 9:7–29; ACTS 7:39–43

1 *Now when the people saw that Moses was delayed in coming down from the mountain, they gathered around Aaron and said, "Come, make us gods who will go before us. As for this Moses who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him!"*

2 So Aaron told them, "Take off the gold earrings that are on your wives and sons and daughters, and bring them to me."

3 Then all the people took off their gold earrings and brought them to Aaron. 4 He took the gold from their hands, and with an engraving tool he fashioned it into a molten calf. And they said, "These, O Israel, are your gods, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt!"

5 When Aaron saw this, he built an altar before the calf and proclaimed: "Tomorrow shall be a feast to Yahweh."

6 *So the next day they arose, offered burnt offerings, and presented peace offerings. And the people sat down to eat and drink and got up to indulge in revelry.*

7 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down at once, for your people, whom you brought up out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves. 8 How quickly they have turned aside from the way that I commanded them! They have made for themselves a molten calf and have bowed down to it. They have sacrificed to it and said, 'These, O Israel, are your gods, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt.'"

9 Yahweh also said to Moses, "I have seen this people, and they are indeed a stiff-necked people. 10 Now leave Me alone, so that My anger may burn against them and consume them. Then I will make you into a great nation."

11 But Moses sought the favor of Yahweh his God, saying, "O Yahweh, why does Your anger burn against Your people, whom You brought out of the land of Egypt with great power and a mighty hand? 12 Why should the Egyptians declare, 'He brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and wipe them from the face of the earth'? Turn from Your fierce anger and relent from doing harm to Your people. 13 Remember Your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, to whom You swore by Your very self when You declared, 'I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky, and I will give your descendants all this land that I have promised, and it shall be their inheritance forever.'"

14 So Yahweh relented from the calamity He had threatened to bring on His people.

15 Then Moses turned and went down the mountain with the two tablets of the Testimony in his hands. They were inscribed on both sides, front and back. 16 The tablets were the work of God, and the writing was the writing of God, engraved on the tablets.

17 When Joshua heard the sound of the people shouting, he said to Moses, "The sound of war is in the camp."

18 But Moses replied:

"It is neither the cry of victory nor the cry
of defeat;
I hear the sound of singing!"

19 As Moses approached the camp and saw the calf and the dancing, he burned with anger and threw the tablets out of his hands, shattering them at the base of the mountain. 20 Then he took the calf they had made, burned it in the fire, ground it

- **EX 32:1 [DEMONIC]** Aaron makes a golden calf and the people worship it
- **EX 32:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:40 p.1752
- **EX 32:4 [FORESHADOW]** Aaron's golden calf would be copied by a later king → 1KI 12:28 · MEDIUM p.569
- **EX 32:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 10:7 p.1834

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

to powder, and scattered the powder over the face of the water. Then he forced the Israelites to drink it.

21 "What did this people do to you," Moses asked Aaron, "that you have led them into so great a sin?"

22 "Do not be enraged, my lord," Aaron replied. "You yourself know that the people are intent on evil. 23 *They told me, 'Make us gods who will go before us. As for this Moses who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him!'*

24 So I said to them, 'Whoever has gold, let him take it off,' and they gave it to me. And when I threw it into the fire, out came this calf!"

25 Moses saw that the people were out of control, for Aaron had let them run wild and become a laughingstock to their enemies. 26 So Moses stood at the entrance to the camp and said, "Whoever is for Yahweh, come to me."

And all the Levites gathered around him.

27 He told them, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Each of you men is to fasten his sword to his side, go back and forth through the camp from gate to gate, and slay his brother, his friend, and his neighbor.'"

28 The Levites did as Moses commanded, and that day about three thousand of the people fell dead.

29 Afterward, Moses said, "Today you have been ordained for service to Yahweh, since each man went against his son and his brother; so Yahweh has bestowed a blessing on you this day."

30 The next day Moses said to the people, "You have committed a great sin. Now I will go up to Yahweh; perhaps I can make atonement for your sin."

31 So Moses returned to Yahweh and said, "Oh, what a great sin these people have committed! They have made gods of gold for themselves. 32 Yet now, if You would only forgive their sin.... But if not, please blot me out of the book that You have written."

33 Yahweh replied to Moses, "Whoever has sinned against Me, I will blot out of My book. 34 Now go, lead the people to the place I described. Behold, My angel shall go before you. But on the day I settle accounts, I will punish them for their sin."

35 And Yahweh sent a plague on the people because of what they had done with the calf that Aaron had made.

- **EX 32:19 [DEMONIC]** Moses burns the golden calf and confronts Aaron
- **EX 32:23 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:40 p.1752
- **EX 32:30 [DEMONIC]** Moses tells God the people made gods of gold

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

God says He will send an angel but will not go with them Himself, and the people mourn. Moses meets God in the tent face to face, as a man speaks with his friend. Moses says, If Your Presence does not go with us, do not send us. Then he asks to see God's glory, and God hides him in a rock and lets him see His back.

THE COMMAND TO LEAVE SINAI // DEUTERONOMY 1:1–8

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Leave this place, you and the people you brought up out of the land of Egypt, and go to the land that I promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob when I said, 'I will give it to your descendants.' 2 And I will send an angel before you, and I will drive out the Canaanites, Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites. 3 Go up to a land flowing with milk and honey. But I will not go with you, because you are a stiff-necked people; otherwise, I might destroy you on the way."

4 When the people heard this bad news, they went into mourning, and no one put on any of his jewelry. 5 For Yahweh had said to Moses, "Tell the Israelites, 'You are a stiff-necked people. If I should go with you for a single moment, I would destroy you. Now take off your jewelry, and I will decide what to do with you.'"

6 So the Israelites stripped themselves of their jewelry from Mount Horeb onward.

- **EX 32:35 [DEMONIC]** God sends a plague because of the golden calf

MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

THE TENT OF MEETING

7 Now Moses used to take the tent and
pitch it at a distance outside the camp. He
called it the Tent of Meeting, and anyone
inquiring of Yahweh would go to the Tent
of Meeting outside the camp. 8 Then,
whenever Moses went out to the tent, all
the people would stand at the entrances
to their own tents and watch Moses until
he entered the tent. 9 As Moses entered
the tent, the pillar of cloud would come
down and remain at the entrance, and
Yahweh would speak with Moses. 10 When
all the people saw the pillar of cloud
standing at the entrance to the tent, they
would stand up and worship, each one at
the entrance to his own tent.

11 Thus Yahweh would speak to Moses
face to face, as a man speaks to his
friend. Then Moses would return to the
camp, but his young assistant Joshua son
of Nun would not leave the tent.

THE PROMISE OF GOD'S PRESENCE

12 Then Moses said to Yahweh, "Look, You
have been telling me, 'Lead this people
up,' but You have not let me know whom
You will send with me. Yet You have said,
'I know you by name, and you have found
favor in My sight.' 13 Now if indeed I have
found favor in Your sight, please let me
know Your ways, that I may know You and
find favor in Your sight. Remember that
this nation is Your people."

14 And Yahweh answered, "My Presence
will go with you, and I will give you rest."

15 "If Your Presence does not go with us,"
Moses replied, "do not lead us up from
here. 16 For how then can it be known that
Your people and I have found favor in
Your sight, unless You go with us? How
else will we be distinguished from all the
other people on the face of the earth?"

17 So Yahweh said to Moses, "I will do this
very thing you have asked, for you have
found favor in My sight, and I know you by
name."

18 Then Moses said, "Please show me Your
glory."

19 *"I will cause all My goodness to pass before
you," Yahweh replied, "and I will proclaim My
name—Yahweh—in your presence. I will have
mercy on whom I have mercy, and I will have
compassion on whom I have compassion."*

20 But He added, "You cannot see My
face, for no one can see Me and live."

21 Yahweh continued, "There is a place
near Me where you are to stand upon a
rock, 22 and when My glory passes by, I
will put you in a cleft of the rock and cover
you with My hand until I have passed by.
23 Then I will take My hand away, and you
will see My back; but My face must not be
seen."

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

New tablets. God passes by and calls out His own name: compassionate and gracious, slow to anger and full of loving devotion and faithfulness. Moses stays forty days and nights with no food or water. When he comes down, his face is shining so brightly that he wears a veil.

NEW STONE TABLETS // DEUTERONOMY 10:1–11

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Chisel out
two stone tablets like the originals, and I
will write on them the words that were on
the first tablets, which you broke. 2 Be
ready in the morning, and come up on
Mount Sinai to present yourself before Me
on the mountaintop. 3 No one may go up
with you; in fact, no one may be seen
anywhere on the mountain—not even the
flocks or herds may graze in front of the
mountain."

4 So Moses chiseled out two stone tablets
like the originals. He rose early in the
morning, and taking the two stone tablets
in his hands, he went up Mount Sinai as
Yahweh had commanded him.

5 And Yahweh descended in a cloud,
stood with him there, and proclaimed His
name, Yahweh. 6 Then Yahweh passed in
front of Moses and called out:
"Yahweh, Yahweh God,

- **EX 33:19 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:15 p.1811
- **EX 33:20 [MIRACLE]** God hides Moses in the rock and lets him see His back
- **EX 34:5 [MIRACLE]** Yahweh passes by Moses and proclaims His name

MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

is compassionate and gracious,
slow to anger,
abounding in loving devotion and faithfulness,
7 maintaining loving devotion to a thousand generations,
forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin.
Yet He will by no means leave the guilty unpunished;
He will visit the iniquity of the fathers on their children and grandchildren
to the third and fourth generations."

8 Moses immediately bowed down to the ground and worshiped. 9 "O Lord," he said, "if I have indeed found favor in Your sight, my Lord, please go with us. Although this is a stiff-necked people, forgive our iniquity and sin, and take us as Your inheritance."

YAHWEH RENEWS THE COVENANT // 2 CORINTHIANS 3:7–18

10 And Yahweh said, "Behold, I am making a covenant. Before all your people I will perform wonders that have never been done in any nation in all the world. All the people among whom you live will see Yahweh's work, for it is an awesome thing that I am doing with you.

11 Observe what I command you this day. I will drive out before you the Amorites, Canaanites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites. 12 Be careful not to make a treaty with the inhabitants of the land you are entering, lest they become a snare in your midst. 13 Rather, you must tear down their altars, smash their sacred stones, and chop down their Asherah poles. 14 For you must not worship any other god, for Yahweh, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God.

15 Do not make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land, for when they prostitute themselves to their gods and sacrifice to them, they will invite you, and you will eat their sacrifices. 16 And when you take some of their daughters as brides for your sons, their daughters will prostitute themselves to their gods and cause your sons to do the same.

17 You shall make no molten gods for yourselves.

18 You are to keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread. For seven days at the appointed time in the month of Abib, you are to eat unleavened bread as I commanded you. For in the month of Abib you came out of Egypt.

19 The first offspring of every womb belongs to Me, including all the firstborn males among your livestock, whether cattle or sheep. 20 You must redeem the firstborn of a donkey with a lamb; but if you do not redeem it, you are to break its neck. You must redeem all the firstborn of your sons. No one shall appear before Me empty-handed.

21 Six days you shall labor, but on the seventh day you shall rest; even in the seasons of plowing and harvesting, you must rest.

22 And you are to celebrate the Feast of Weeks with the firstfruits of the wheat harvest, and the Feast of Ingathering at the turn of the year. 23 Three times a year all your males are to appear before the Lord Yahweh, the God of Israel. 24 For I will drive out the nations before you and enlarge your borders, and no one will covet your land when you go up three times a year to appear before Yahweh your God.

25 Do not offer the blood of a sacrifice to Me along with anything leavened, and do not let any of the sacrifice from the Passover Feast remain until morning.

26 Bring the best of the firstfruits of your soil to the house of Yahweh your God.

You must not cook a young goat in its mother's milk."

27 Yahweh also said to Moses, "Write down these words, for in accordance with these words I have made a covenant with you and with Israel."

28 So Moses was there with Yahweh forty days and forty nights without eating bread or drinking water. He wrote on the tablets

EX 34:6 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this
→ JAS 5:11 p.2007
EX 34:7 [DEMONIC] Visiting iniquity to the third and fourth generation of those who hate Me
EX 34:13 [DEMONIC] Tear down their altars and make no molten gods

THE HEART MIRACLES

the words of the covenant—the Ten Commandments.

29 And when Moses came down from
Mount Sinai with the two tablets of the
Testimony in his hands, he was unaware
that his face had become radiant from
speaking with Yahweh. 30 Aaron and all the
Israelites looked at Moses, and behold,
his face was radiant. And they were afraid
to approach him.

31 But Moses called out to them; so Aaron
and all the leaders of the congregation re-
turned to him, and Moses spoke to them.
32 And after this all the Israelites came
near, and Moses commanded them to do
everything that Yahweh had told him on
Mount Sinai.

33 When Moses had finished speaking with
them, he put a veil over his face. 34 But
whenever Moses went in before Yahweh
to speak with Him, he would remove the
veil until he came out. And when he came
out, he would tell the Israelites what he
had been commanded, 35 and the Is-
raelites would see that the face of Moses
was radiant. So Moses would put the veil
back over his face until he went in to
speak with Yahweh.

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses gathers everyone and repeats the Sabbath rule. Then he asks for gifts for the tabernacle, and everyone whose heart is moved brings gold, yarn, wood, spices and jewels. The women spin goat hair. God fills Bezalel and Oholiab with skill to build everything and to teach others.

THE SABBATH

1 Then Moses assembled the whole con-
gregation of Israel and said to them,
"These are the things that Yahweh has
commanded you to do: 2 For six days work
may be done, but the seventh day shall be
your holy day, a Sabbath of complete rest
to Yahweh. Whoever does any work on
that day must be put to death. 3 Do not
light a fire in any of your dwellings on the
Sabbath day."

OFFERINGS FOR THE TABERNACLE // EXODUS 25:1–9

4 Moses also told the whole congregation
of Israel, "This is what Yahweh has com-
manded: 5 Take from among you an offer-
ing to Yahweh. Let everyone whose heart
is willing bring an offering to Yahweh:
gold, silver, and bronze;
6 blue, purple, and scarlet yarn;
fine linen and goat hair;
7 ram skins dyed red and fine leather;
acacia wood;
8 olive oil for the light;
spices for the anointing oil and for the fra-
grant incense;
9 and onyx stones and gemstones to be
mounted on the ephod and breast-
piece.

THE SKILLED CRAFTSMEN

10 Let every skilled craftsman among you
come and make everything that Yahweh
has commanded:
11 the tabernacle with its tent and covering,
its clasps and frames, its crossbars,
posts, and bases;
12 the ark with its poles and mercy seat,
and the veil to shield it;
13 the table with its poles, all its utensils,
and the Bread of the Presence;
14 the lampstand for light with its acces-
sories and lamps and oil for the light;
15 the altar of incense with its poles;
the anointing oil and fragrant incense;
the curtain for the doorway at the en-
trance to the tabernacle;
16 the altar of burnt offering with its bronze
grate, its poles, and all its utensils;
the basin with its stand;
17 the curtains of the courtyard with its
posts and bases, and the curtain for
the gate of the courtyard;
18 the tent pegs for the tabernacle and for
the courtyard, along with their ropes;
19 and the woven garments for ministering
in the holy place—both the holy gar-

EX 34:29 [MIRACLE] Moses' face shone from speaking with God

EX 34:34 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2CO 3:16 p.1850

EX 35:5 [HEART] Everyone with a willing heart brought an offering for the tabernacle.

THE HEART

ments for Aaron the priest and the garments for his sons to serve as priests."

THE PEOPLE OFFER GIFTS

20 Then the whole congregation of Israel withdrew from the presence of Moses. 21 And everyone whose heart stirred him and whose spirit prompted him came and brought an offering to Yahweh for the work on the Tent of Meeting, for all its services, and for the holy garments.

22 So all who had willing hearts, both men and women, came and brought brooches and earrings, rings and necklaces, and all kinds of gold jewelry. And they all presented their gold as a wave offering to Yahweh.

23 Everyone who had blue, purple, or scarlet yarn, or fine linen, goat hair, ram skins dyed red, or articles of fine leather, brought them. 24 And all who could present an offering of silver or bronze brought it as a contribution to Yahweh. Also, everyone who had acacia wood for any part of the service brought it.

25 Every skilled woman spun with her hands and brought what she had spun: blue, purple, or scarlet yarn, or fine linen. 26 And all the skilled women whose hearts were stirred spun the goat hair.

27 The leaders brought onyx stones and gemstones to mount on the ephod and breastpiece, 28 as well as spices and olive oil for the light, for the anointing oil, and for the fragrant incense.

29 So all the men and women of the Israelites whose hearts prompted them brought a freewill offering to Yahweh for all the work that Yahweh through Moses had commanded them to do.

BEZALEL AND OHOLIAB // EXODUS 31:1–11

30 Then Moses said to the Israelites, "See, Yahweh has called by name Bezalel son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah. 31 And He has filled him with the Spirit of God, with skill, ability, and knowledge in all kinds of craftsmanship, 32 to design artistic works in gold, silver, and bronze, 33 to cut gemstones for settings, and to carve wood, so that he may be a master of every artistic craft.

34 And Yahweh has given both him and Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, the ability to teach others. 35 He has filled them with skill to do all kinds of work as engravers, designers, embroiderers in blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and fine linen, and as weavers—as artistic designers of every kind of craft.

- **EX 35:21 [HEART]** Those whose hearts stirred them brought gifts for the work.
- **EX 35:29 [HEART]** The people gave freely because their hearts were willing.

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

The people keep bringing gifts every morning until the builders say, Stop, we have more than enough. It may be the only time in history a church had to ask people to stop giving. Then the work begins on the curtains, the coverings, the frames and the veil.

THE PEOPLE BRING MORE THAN ENOUGH

1 "So Bezalel, Oholiab, and every skilled person are to carry out everything commanded by Yahweh, who has given them skill and ability to know how to perform all the work of constructing the sanctuary."

2 Then Moses summoned Bezalel, Oholiab, and every skilled person whom Yahweh had gifted—everyone whose heart stirred him to come and do the work. 3 They received from Moses all the contributions that the Israelites had brought to carry out the service of constructing the sanctuary.

Meanwhile, the people continued to bring freewill offerings morning after morning, 4 so that all the skilled craftsmen who were doing all the work on the sanctuary left their work 5 and said to Moses, "The people are bringing more than enough for doing the work Yahweh has commanded us to do."

6 After Moses had given an order, they sent a proclamation throughout the camp: "No man or woman should make anything else as an offering for the sanctuary." So the people were restrained from bringing more, 7 since what they already had was more than enough to perform all the work.

THE TEN CURTAINS FOR THE TABERNACLE // EXODUS 26:1–6

8 All the skilled craftsmen among the
workmen made the ten curtains for the
tabernacle. They were made of finely
spun linen, as well as blue, purple, and
scarlet yarn, with cherubim skillfully
worked into them. 9 Each curtain was 42
feet long and 6 feet wide; all the curtains
were the same size. 10 And he joined five
of the curtains together, and the other five
he joined as well.

11 He made loops of blue material on the
edge of the end curtain in the first set,
and also on the end curtain in the second
set. 12 He made fifty loops on one curtain
and fifty loops on the end curtain of the
second set, so that the loops lined up op-
posite one another. 13 He also made fifty
gold clasps to join the curtains together,
so that the tabernacle was a unit.

THE ELEVEN CURTAINS OF GOAT HAIR // EXODUS 26:7–14

14 He then made curtains of goat hair for
the tent over the tabernacle—eleven cur-
tains in all. 15 Each of the eleven curtains
was the same size—45 feet long and 6
feet wide. 16 He joined five of the curtains
into one set and the other six into another.
17 He made fifty loops along the edge of
the end curtain in the first set, and fifty
loops along the edge of the correspond-
ing curtain in the second set. 18 He also
made fifty bronze clasps to join the tent
together as a unit.

19 Additionally, he made for the tent a cov-
ering of ram skins dyed red, and over that
a covering of fine leather.

THE FRAMES AND BASES // EXODUS 26:15–30

20 Next, he constructed upright frames of
acacia wood for the tabernacle. 21 Each
frame was 15 feet long and 27 inches
wide. 22 Two tenons were connected to
each other for each frame. He made all
the frames of the tabernacle in this way.

23 He constructed twenty frames for the
south side of the tabernacle, 24 with forty
silver bases to put under the twenty
frames—two bases for each frame, one
under each tenon.

25 For the second side of the tabernacle,
the north side, he made twenty frames 26
and forty silver bases—two bases under
each frame.

27 He made six frames for the rear of the
tabernacle, the west side, 28 and two
frames for the two back corners of the
tabernacle, 29 coupled together from bot-
tom to top and fitted into a single ring. He
made both corners in this way. 30 So there
were eight frames and sixteen silver
bases—two under each frame.

31 He also made five crossbars of acacia
wood for the frames on one side of the
tabernacle, 32 five for those on the other
side, and five for those on the rear side of
the tabernacle, to the west.

33 He made the central crossbar to run
through the center of the frames, from
one end to the other. 34 And he overlaid
the frames with gold and made gold rings
to hold the crossbars. He also overlaid the
crossbars with gold.

THE VEIL // EXODUS 26:31–35

35 Next, he made the veil of blue, purple,
and scarlet yarn, and finely spun linen,
with cherubim skillfully worked into it.

36 He also made four posts of acacia wood
for it and overlaid them with gold, along
with gold hooks; and he cast four silver
bases for the posts.

THE CURTAIN FOR THE ENTRANCE // EXODUS 26:36–37

37 For the entrance to the tent, he made a
curtain embroidered with blue, purple,
and scarlet yarn, and finely spun linen, 38
together with five posts and their hooks.

He overlaid the tops of the posts and their
bands with gold, and their five bases were
bronze.

37

CHAPTER 37 IN 30 SECONDS

Bezalel builds the furniture: the ark with its mercy seat and cherubim, the table, the golden lampstand with its seven lamps and the altar of incense. He also makes the anointing oil and the incense, exactly as the recipe said. Every piece matches the plans from chapter 25.

CONSTRUCTING THE ARK // EXODUS 25:10–16

1 Bezalel went on to construct the ark of
acacia wood, 45 inches long, 27 inches
wide, and 27 inches high. 2 He overlaid it
with pure gold, both inside and out, and
made a gold molding around it. 3 And he
cast four gold rings for its four feet, two
rings on one side and two on the other. 4
Then he made poles of acacia wood and
overlaid them with gold. 5 He inserted the
poles into the rings on the sides of the ark
in order to carry it.

THE MERCY SEAT // EXODUS 25:17–22

6 He constructed a mercy seat of pure
gold, 45 inches long and 27 inches wide.
7 He made two cherubim of hammered
gold at the ends of the mercy seat, 8 one
cherub on one end and one on the other,
all made from one piece of gold. 9 And the
cherubim had wings that spread upward,
overshadowing the mercy seat. The
cherubim faced each other, looking to-
ward the mercy seat.

THE TABLE OF SHOWBREAD // EXODUS 25:23–30; LEVITICUS 24:5–9

10 He also made the table of acacia wood
36 inches long, 18 inches wide, and 27
inches high. 11 He overlaid it with pure gold
and made a gold molding around it. 12 And
he made a rim around it three inches wide
and put a gold molding on the rim.

13 He cast four gold rings for the table and
fastened them to the four corners at its
four legs. 14 The rings were placed close
to the rim, to serve as holders for the
poles used to carry the table. 15 He made
the poles of acacia wood for carrying the
table and overlaid them with gold.

16 He also made the utensils for the table
out of pure gold: its plates and dishes, as
well as its bowls and pitchers for pouring
drink offerings.

THE LAMPSTAND // EXODUS 25:31–40; NUMBERS 8:1–4

17 Then he made the lampstand out of pure
hammered gold, all of one piece: its base
and shaft, its cups, and its buds and
petals. 18 Six branches extended from the
sides, three on one side and three on the
other. 19 There were three cups shaped
like almond blossoms on the first branch,
each with buds and petals, three on the
next branch, and the same for all six
branches that extended from the lamp-
stand.

20 And on the lampstand were four cups
shaped like almond blossoms with buds
and petals. 21 A bud was under the first
pair of branches that extended from the
lampstand, a bud under the second pair,
and a bud under the third pair. 22 The buds
and branches were all of one piece with
the lampstand, hammered out of pure
gold.

23 He also made its seven lamps, its wick
trimmers, and trays of pure gold. 24 He
made the lampstand and all its utensils
from 75 pounds of pure gold.

THE ALTAR OF INCENSE // EXODUS 30:1–10

25 He made the altar of incense out of aca-
cia wood. It was square, 18 inches long,
18 inches wide, and 36 inches high. Its
horns were of one piece. 26 And he over-
laid with pure gold the top and all the
sides and horns. Then he made a molding
of gold around it.

27 He made two gold rings below the
molding on opposite sides to hold the
poles used to carry it. 28 And he made the
poles of acacia wood and overlaid them
with gold.

29 He also made the sacred anointing oil
and the pure, fragrant incense, the work
of a perfumer.

38

CHAPTER 38 IN 30 SECONDS

*The bronze altar, the bronze basin and the court-
yard are built. The basin is made from the bronze
mirrors of the women who served at the tent en-
trance. Then comes an honest audit of the materi-
als, about a ton of gold, written down for every-
one to see.*

THE BRONZE ALTAR // EXODUS 27:1–8

1 Bezalel constructed the altar of burnt of-
fering from acacia wood. It was square,
7½ feet long, 7½ feet wide, and 4½ feet
high. 2 He made a horn at each of its four
corners, so that the horns and altar were

of one piece, and he overlaid the altar with bronze.

3 He made all the altar's utensils of bronze—its pots, shovels, sprinkling bowls, meat forks, and firepans. 4 He made a grate of bronze mesh for the altar under its ledge, halfway up from the bottom.

5 At the four corners of the bronze grate he cast four rings as holders for the poles. 6 And he made the poles of acacia wood and overlaid them with bronze. 7 Then he inserted the poles into the rings on the sides of the altar for carrying it. He made the altar with boards so that it was hollow.

THE BRONZE BASIN // EXODUS 30:17–21

8 Next he made the bronze basin and its stand from the mirrors of the women who served at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting.

THE COURTYARD // EXODUS 27:9–19

9 Then he constructed the courtyard. The south side of the courtyard was 150 feet long and had curtains of finely spun linen, 10 with twenty posts and twenty bronze bases, and with silver hooks and bands on the posts. 11 The north side was also 150 feet long, with twenty posts and twenty bronze bases. The hooks and bands of the posts were silver. 12 The west side was 75 feet long and had curtains, with ten posts and ten bases. The hooks and bands of the posts were silver. 13 And the east side, toward the sunrise, was also 75 feet long.

14 The curtains on one side of the entrance were 22½ feet long, with three posts and three bases. 15 And the curtains on the other side were also 22½ feet long, with three posts and three bases as well. 16 All the curtains around the courtyard were made of finely spun linen. 17 The bases for the posts were bronze, the hooks and bands were silver, and the plating for the tops of the posts was silver. So all the posts of the courtyard were banded with silver.

18 The curtain for the entrance to the courtyard was embroidered with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely spun linen. It was 30 feet long and, like the curtains of the courtyard, 7½ feet high, 19 with four posts and four bronze bases. Their hooks were silver, as well as the bands and the plating of their tops. 20 All the tent pegs for the tabernacle and for the surrounding courtyard were bronze.

AN INVENTORY OF MATERIALS // EZRA 2:68–70; NEHEMIAH 7:70–73

21 This is the inventory for the tabernacle, the tabernacle of the Testimony, as recorded at Moses' command by the Levites under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. 22 Bezalel son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, made everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses. 23 With him was Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, an engraver, designer, and embroiderer in blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and fine linen.

24 All the gold from the wave offering used for the work on the sanctuary totaled 2,193 pounds, weighed by the sanctuary standard.

25 The silver from those numbered among the congregation totaled 7,544 pounds, weighed by the sanctuary standard— 26 a fifth of an ounce per person, weighed by the sanctuary standard, from everyone twenty years of age or older who had crossed over to be numbered, a total of 603,550 men.

27 The 7,500 pounds of silver were used to cast the bases of the sanctuary and the bases of the veil—100 bases from the 7,500 pounds, 75 pounds per base.

28 With the 44 pounds he made the hooks for the posts, overlaid their tops, and supplied bands for them.

29 The bronze from the wave offering totaled 5,310 pounds. 30 He used it to make the bases for the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, the bronze altar and its bronze grating, all the utensils for the altar, 31 the bases for the surrounding courtyard and its gate, and all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and its surrounding courtyard.

39

CHAPTER 39 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests' clothes are made: the ephod, the breastpiece with twelve stones, the robe and the gold plate that says HOLY TO YAHWEH. Over and over it says they did it just as Yahweh had commanded Moses. Moses inspects all the work and blesses the people.

THE EPHOD // EXODUS 28:6–14

1 From the blue, purple, and scarlet yarn they made specially woven garments for ministry in the sanctuary, as well as the holy garments for Aaron, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

2 Bezalel made the ephod of finely spun linen embroidered with gold, and with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn. 3 They hammered out thin sheets of gold and cut threads from them to interweave with the blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and fine linen—the work of a skilled craftsman. 4 They made shoulder pieces for the ephod, which were attached at two of its corners, so it could be fastened. 5 And the skillfully woven waistband of the ephod was of one piece with the ephod, of the same workmanship—with gold, with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and with finely spun linen, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

6 They mounted the onyx stones in gold filigree settings, engraved like a seal with the names of the sons of Israel. 7 Then they fastened them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod as memorial stones for the sons of Israel, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

THE BREASTPIECE // EXODUS 28:15–30

8 He made the breastpiece with the same workmanship as the ephod, with gold, with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and with finely spun linen. 9 It was square when folded over double, nine inches long and nine inches wide.

10 And they mounted on it four rows of gemstones:

The first row had a ruby, a topaz, and an emerald;

11 the second row had a turquoise, a sapphire, and a diamond;

12 the third row had a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst;

13 and the fourth row had a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper.

These stones were mounted in gold filigree settings.

14 The twelve stones corresponded to the names of the sons of Israel. Each stone was engraved like a seal with the name of one of the twelve tribes.

15 For the breastpiece they made braided chains like cords of pure gold. 16 They also made two gold filigree settings and two gold rings, and fastened the two rings to the two corners of the breastpiece. 17 Then they fastened the two gold chains to the two gold rings at the corners of the breastpiece, 18 and they fastened the other ends of the two chains to the two filigree settings, attaching them to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at the front.

19 They made two more gold rings and attached them to the other two corners of the breastpiece, on the inside edge next to the ephod.

20 They made two additional gold rings and attached them to the bottom of the two shoulder pieces of the ephod, on its front, near the seam just above its woven waistband. 21 Then they tied the rings of the breastpiece to the rings of the ephod with a cord of blue yarn, so that the breastpiece was above the waistband of the ephod and would not swing out from the ephod, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ADDITIONAL PRIESTLY GARMENTS // EXODUS 28:31–43

22 They made the robe of the ephod entirely of blue cloth, the work of a weaver, 23 with an opening in the center of the robe like that of a garment, with a collar around the opening so that it would not tear.

24 They made pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and finely spun linen on the lower hem of the robe. 25 They also

GOD SPEAKING

made bells of pure gold and attached them around the hem between the pomegranates, 26 alternating the bells and pomegranates around the lower hem of the robe to be worn for ministry, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

27 For Aaron and his sons they made tunics of fine linen, the work of a weaver, 28 as well as the turban of fine linen, the ornate headbands and undergarments of finely spun linen, 29 and the sash of finely spun linen, embroidered with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

30 They also made the plate of the holy crown of pure gold, and they engraved on it, like an inscription on a seal:

HOLY TO THE Yahweh.

31 Then they fastened to it a blue cord to mount it on the turban, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

MOSES APPROVES THE WORK

32 So all the work for the tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting, was completed. The Israelites did everything just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

33 Then they brought the tabernacle to Moses:

the tent with all its furnishings, its clasps, its frames, its crossbars, and its posts and bases;

34 the covering of ram skins dyed red, the covering of fine leather, and the veil of the covering;

35 the ark of the Testimony with its poles and the mercy seat;

36 the table with all its utensils and the Bread of the Presence;

37 the pure gold lampstand with its row of lamps and all its utensils, as well as the oil for the light;

38 the gold altar, the anointing oil, the fragrant incense, and the curtain for the entrance to the tent;

39 the bronze altar with its bronze grating, its poles, and all its utensils;

the basin with its stand;

40 the curtains of the courtyard with its posts and bases;

the curtain for the gate of the courtyard, its ropes and tent pegs, and all the equipment for the service of the tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting;

41 and the woven garments for ministering in the sanctuary, both the holy garments for Aaron the priest and the garments for his sons to serve as priests.

42 The Israelites had done all the work just as Yahweh had commanded Moses. 43 And Moses inspected all the work and saw that they had accomplished it just as Yahweh had commanded. So Moses blessed them.

40

CHAPTER 40 IN 30 SECONDS

On the first day of the second year the tabernacle goes up. Moses sets up every piece and anoints it. Then the cloud covers the tent, and the glory of Yahweh fills it so completely that even Moses cannot go in. God has moved in with His people, and the cloud leads them on every step of the journey.

SETTING UP THE TABERNACLE // ACTS 7:44–47; HEBREWS 9:1–10

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "On the first day of the first month you are to set up the tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting. 3 Put the ark of the Testimony in it and screen off the ark with the veil. 4 Then bring in the table and set out its arrangement; bring in the lampstand as well, and set up its lamps.

5 Place the gold altar of incense in front of the ark of the Testimony, and hang the curtain at the entrance to the tabernacle. 6 Place the altar of burnt offering in front of the entrance to the tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting. 7 And place the basin between the Tent of Meeting and the altar, and put water in it.

8 Set up the surrounding courtyard and hang the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard.

9 Take the anointing oil and anoint the tabernacle and everything in it; consecrate it along with all its furnishings, and it shall be holy. 10 Anoint the altar of burnt offering and all its utensils; consecrate the

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

altar, and it shall be most holy. 11 Anoint the basin and its stand and consecrate them.

12 Then bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance to the Tent of Meeting and wash them with water. 13 And you are to clothe Aaron with the holy garments, anoint him, and consecrate him, so that he may serve Me as a priest. 14 Bring his sons forward and clothe them with tunics. 15 Anoint them just as you anointed their father, so that they may also serve Me as priests. Their anointing will qualify them for a permanent priesthood throughout their generations."

16 Moses did everything just as Yahweh had commanded him. 17 So the tabernacle was set up on the first day of the first month of the second year.

18 When Moses set up the tabernacle, he laid its bases, positioned its frames, inserted its crossbars, and set up its posts. 19 Then he spread the tent over the tabernacle and put the covering over the tent, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

20 Moses took the Testimony and placed it in the ark, attaching the poles to the ark; and he set the mercy seat atop the ark. 21 Then he brought the ark into the tabernacle, put up the veil for the screen, and shielded off the ark of the Testimony, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

22 Moses placed the table in the Tent of Meeting on the north side of the tabernacle, outside the veil. 23 He arranged the bread on it before Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

24 He also placed the lampstand in the Tent of Meeting opposite the table on the south side of the tabernacle 25 and set up the lamps before Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

26 Moses placed the gold altar in the Tent of Meeting, in front of the veil, 27 and he burned fragrant incense on it, just as Yahweh had commanded him. 28 Then he put up the curtain at the entrance to the tabernacle. 29 He placed the altar of burnt offering near the entrance to the tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting, and offered on it the burnt offering and the grain offering, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

30 He placed the basin between the Tent of Meeting and the altar and put water in it for washing; 31 and from it Moses, Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and feet. 32 They washed whenever they entered the Tent of Meeting or approached the altar, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

33 And Moses set up the courtyard around the tabernacle and the altar, and he hung the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard. So Moses finished the work.

THE CLOUD AND THE GLORY // NUMBERS 9:15–23

34 Then the cloud covered the Tent of Meeting, and the glory of Yahweh filled the tabernacle. 35 Moses was unable to enter the Tent of Meeting because the cloud had settled on it, and the glory of Yahweh filled the tabernacle.

36 Whenever the cloud was lifted from above the tabernacle, the Israelites would set out through all the stages of their journey. 37 If the cloud was not lifted, they would not set out until the day it was taken up. 38 For the cloud of Yahweh was over the tabernacle by day, and fire was in the cloud by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel through all their journeys.

EX 40:34 [MIRACLE] Shekinah glory filled the tabernacle

BOOK 3 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · BOOKS OF MOSES

LEVITICUS

Be holy, because I am holy

AUTHOR	Moses, according to Jewish and Christian tradition. Over and over the book says Yahweh spoke to Moses, and Jesus called the leper's offering the gift Moses commanded Matthew 8:4. Many modern scholars think priests put it together from older material over time.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	At Mount Sinai, in about one month. Exodus ends on the first day of the first month of the second year after Egypt, and Numbers starts on the first day of the second month.
DATE WRITTEN	Traditionally about 1440 to 1400 BC, in the wilderness. Many scholars say it reached its final form much later, around 500 BC.
WRITTEN TO	The priests from the tribe of Levi, and all Israel, so a holy God could live in the middle of an unholy camp.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	About fifteen copies of Leviticus were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, including Greek and Aramaic ones. It was also translated into Greek, in the Septuagint, around 250 BC.
KEY VERSE	Leviticus 19:2. Be holy because I, Yahweh your God, am holy.



LEVITICUS IN THE OLD HEBREW LETTERS
This is 11QpaleoLev a, the Paleo Hebrew Leviticus Scroll from Cave 11 at Qumran, found with the Dead Sea Scrolls in 1956. It is written in the old Hebrew alphabet that Israel used before the exile to Babylon, even though it was copied centuries later, about 100 BC by one count and in the first century AD by another. Most of what survives is Leviticus 22 to 27. The oldest copy of Leviticus found so far is a different scroll, 4QExod Lev f from Cave 4, about 250 BC, which holds the end of Exodus and the start of Leviticus on one scroll. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, CC BY SA 4.0.

Historical Setting

Israel is still camped at the foot of Mount Sinai. The tabernacle has just gone up, and God's glory has filled it so completely that even Moses could not go in, Exodus 40:35. Now the big question is how sinful people can live next door to a holy God and not be destroyed. Leviticus is the answer. Egypt with its many gods is behind them. Canaan is in front of them, where people sacrificed children to Molech and went to mediums. The name Leviticus means about the Levites, the tribe of priests. The Hebrew name is Vayikra, which means And He called, the first word of the book.

What Was Going Wrong

SIN IN THE CAMP. God was holy and the people were not. Without a way to deal with sin, they could not come near Him 16:2.
PLAYING WITH FIRE. On their first week on the job, Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu offered fire God never asked for, and they died on the spot 10:1 to 2.

GOAT DEMONS. Some people were offering sacrifices out in the open fields to goat demons instead of bringing them to God's tent 17:7.
THE WAYS OF CANAAN. The nations they were about to replace had filled the land with sexual sin, idols and mediums, and God said the land itself was vomiting them out 18:24 to 28.
A CURSE IN THE CAMP. A man whose father was Egyptian cursed the Name of God in the middle of a fight, and the whole camp had to deal with it 24:10 to 16.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Leviticus is the book most people quit on during their read the Bible in a year plan. But it answers one huge question: how can a holy God live in the middle of sinful people? His answer is sacrifice, priests and a whole new way of living. Every offering says sin is serious and it costs a life. Once a year, on the Day of Atonement, the sins of the whole nation are covered. Then God tells His people to be holy like Him, and holy turns out to look very practical: honest scales, help for the poor, respect for the old and love for your neighbor. Leviticus is the instruction manual for the tabernacle, and the New Testament says it all points to Jesus.

Leviticus at a Glance

CH 1 to 7	**THE OFFERINGS** Five kinds of sacrifices and how to bring them.
CH 8 to 10	**THE PRIESTS** Aaron and his sons are ordained, God sends fire, and two priests die.
CH 11 to 15	**CLEAN AND UNCLEAN** Food, childbirth, skin diseases, mold and bodily fluids.
CH 16	**THE DAY OF ATONEMENT** Once a year, all of Israel's sins are covered.
CH 17 to 22	**LIVING HOLY** Blood, family, love your neighbor, and rules for priests.
CH 23 to 25	**HOLY TIMES** The feasts, the Sabbath year and the Jubilee.
CH 26	**BLESSINGS AND WARNINGS** What happens if Israel obeys, and what happens if they do not.
CH 27	**VOWS AND TITHES** Keeping your promises to God.

Where Jesus Shows Up

LEVITICUS 1:3 TO 9 The burnt offering, all of it given to God, a pleasing aroma. Paul says Christ gave Himself up for us as a fragrant offering to God in Ephesians 5:2.

LEVITICUS 16:15 TO 22 The Day of Atonement and the goat that carried the people's sins away. Hebrews 9:11 to 12 says Jesus entered the Most Holy Place once for all with His own blood, and John 1:29 calls Him the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world.

LEVITICUS 16:27 The sin offering was burned outside the camp. Hebrews 13:11 to 12 says Jesus suffered outside the city gate.

LEVITICUS 17:11 The life is in the blood, and the blood makes atonement. Jesus said, This is My blood of the covenant, poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins, Matthew 26:28.

LEVITICUS 23:10 TO 11 The firstfruits were waved before God on the day after the Sabbath. Jesus rose on the day after the Sabbath, and Paul calls Him the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep, 1 Corinthians 15:20.

LEVITICUS 25:10 The Jubilee proclaimed liberty. Jesus began His ministry by reading that He came to proclaim liberty to the captives and the year of the Lord's favor, Luke 4:18 to 19.

GOD'S NAME IN LEVITICUS
God signs His laws with His name. I am Yahweh shows up 49 times in Leviticus, mostly in chapters 18 to 26, like a signature at the bottom of each command. He also calls Himself Yahweh who sanctifies you, or makes you holy 20:8, 21:8, 22:32. The word holy shows up more often in Leviticus than in any other book of the Bible. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Leviticus

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (1)	26:12
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (10)	1:9, 16:15-17, 16:21-22, 16:27, 17:11, 23:10-11, 23:15-16 and 2 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (4)	26:29, 26:31-32, 26:34-35, 26:44-45
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (1)	26:33
THE HEART (2)	19:17, 26:41
MIRACLES (2)	9:23-24, 10:1-2
DEMONIC (9)	16:8, 16:10, 16:26, 17:7, 18:21, 19:4, 19:26 and 5 more
NOTABLE (2)	8:10-12, 10:3
GOD SPEAKING (740 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR COMES FROM LEVITICUS
Jesus called it the second greatest commandment, and He was quoting Leviticus 19:18. The New Testament quotes that one verse nine times. Just a few verses later, 19:34 says love the foreigner as yourself too.

CHILD SACRIFICE WAS BANNED
Some nations near Israel gave their children to a god called Molech. God made it a crime punished by death and said He would set His face against anyone who did it, and against anyone who looked the other way 18:21, 20:2 to 5. The Canaanites did these things, and that is why God said the land was vomiting them out 18:24 to 28.

THE LIBERTY BELL QUOTES LEVITICUS
The famous bell in Philadelphia, made in 1752 and recast in 1753, has Leviticus 25:10 written around the top: Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.

WHERE SCAPEGOAT CAME FROM
When William Tyndale translated Leviticus 16 into English in 1530, he made up the word scapegoat, from escape goat. Today it means anyone who takes the blame for others.

THE FIRST BOOK JEWISH KIDS LEARNED
An old Jewish tradition says children began their Bible lessons with Leviticus, not Genesis. The rabbis said children are pure and the sacrifices are pure, so let the pure come and study purity.

THE GLEANING LAW
Farmers had to leave the edges of their fields for the poor and the foreigner 19:9 to 10. That is exactly how Ruth fed herself and Naomi in the field of Boaz, Ruth 2.

Did Anybody Listen?

At first, yes. Over and over Leviticus says the people did just as Yahweh commanded. But both stories about sin in the book end with a death, and chapter 26 warned what would happen if they turned away. It did: Babylon carried Judah into exile while the land enjoyed its Sabbath rest, 2 Chronicles 36:21.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God calls to Moses from the brand new tent and starts with the burnt offering. A bull, a sheep, a goat or a bird, and everything but the skin goes up in smoke on the altar. God calls it a pleasing aroma, which is a nice way of saying He loves a gift that costs you something.

LAWS FOR BURNT OFFERINGS // LEVITICUS 6:8–13

1 Then Yahweh called to Moses and spoke
to him from the Tent of Meeting, saying, 2
"Speak to the Israelites and tell them:
When any of you brings an offering to
Yahweh, you may bring as your offering
an animal from the herd or the flock.

3 If his offering is a burnt offering from the
herd, he is to present an unblemished
male. He must bring it to the entrance to
the Tent of Meeting for its acceptance be-
fore Yahweh. 4 He is to lay his hand on the
head of the burnt offering, so it can be
accepted on his behalf to make atone-
ment for him.

5 And he shall slaughter the young bull be-
fore Yahweh, and Aaron's sons the priests
are to present the blood and splatter it on
all sides of the altar at the entrance to the
Tent of Meeting. 6 Next, he is to skin the
burnt offering and cut it into pieces.

7 The sons of Aaron the priest shall put a
fire on the altar and arrange wood on the
fire. 8 Then Aaron's sons the priests are to
arrange the pieces, including the head
and the fat, atop the burning wood on the
altar. 9 The entrails and legs must be
washed with water, and the priest shall
burn all of it on the altar as a burnt offer-
ing, a food offering, a pleasing aroma to
Yahweh.

10 If, however, one's offering is a burnt of-
fering from the flock—from the sheep or
goats—he is to present an unblemished
male. 11 He shall slaughter it on the north
side of the altar before Yahweh, and
Aaron's sons the priests are to splatter its
blood against the altar on all sides. 12 He is
to cut the animal into pieces, and the
priest shall arrange them, including the
head and fat, atop the burning wood that
is on the altar. 13 The entrails and legs
must be washed with water, and the priest
shall present all of it and burn it on the al-
tar; it is a burnt offering, a food offering, a
pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

14 If, instead, one's offering to Yahweh is a
burnt offering of birds, he is to present a
turtledove or a young pigeon. 15 Then the
priest shall bring it to the altar, twist off its
head, and burn it on the altar; its blood
should be drained out on the side of the
altar. 16 And he is to remove the crop with
its contents and throw it to the east side
of the altar, in the place for ashes. 17 He
shall tear it open by its wings, without di-
viding the bird completely. And the priest
is to burn it on the altar atop the burning
wood. It is a burnt offering, a food offer-
ing, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

LEV 1:9 [FORESHADOW] The burnt offering was a pleasing aroma to Yahweh → EPH 5:2 p.1887

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The grain offering: fine flour, olive oil and frankincense, baked, fried or grilled. A handful is burned on the altar and the rest goes to the priests for dinner. No yeast and no honey allowed, but every offering gets salt. Even the cooking in Leviticus has rules.

LAWS FOR GRAIN OFFERINGS // LEVITICUS 6:14–23

1 "When anyone brings a grain offering to
Yahweh, his offering must consist of fine
flour. He is to pour olive oil on it, put
frankincense on it, 2 and bring it to Aaron's
sons the priests. The priest shall take a
handful of the flour and oil, together with
all the frankincense, and burn this as a
memorial portion on the altar, a food of-
fering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. 3 The
remainder of the grain offering shall be-
long to Aaron and his sons; it is a most
holy part of the food offerings to Yahweh.

4 Now if you bring an offering of grain
baked in an oven, it must consist of fine
flour, either unleavened cakes mixed with
oil or unleavened wafers coated with oil.

5 If your offering is a grain offering pre-
pared on a griddle, it must be unleavened
bread made of fine flour mixed with oil. 6

GOD SPEAKING

Crumble it and pour oil on it; it is a grain offering.

7 If your offering is a grain offering cooked in a pan, it must consist of fine flour with oil.

8 When you bring to Yahweh the grain offering made in any of these ways, it is to be presented to the priest, and he shall take it to the altar. 9 The priest is to remove the memorial portion from the grain offering and burn it on the altar as a food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. 10 But the remainder of the grain offering shall belong to Aaron and his sons; it is a most holy part of the food offerings to Yahweh.

11 No grain offering that you present to Yahweh may be made with leaven, for you are not to burn any leaven or honey as a food offering to Yahweh. 12 You may bring them to Yahweh as an offering of firstfruits, but they must not go up on the altar as a pleasing aroma. 13 And you shall season each of your grain offerings with salt. You must not leave the salt of the covenant of your God out of your grain offering; you are to add salt to each of your offerings.

14 If you bring a grain offering of firstfruits to Yahweh, you shall offer crushed heads of new grain roasted on the fire. 15 And you are to put oil and frankincense on it; it is a grain offering. 16 The priest shall then burn the memorial portion of the crushed grain and the oil, together with all its frankincense, as a food offering to Yahweh.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The peace offering is the one you get to eat. The fat and the kidneys go to God on the altar, and the family and the priests share the meat. It was a meal with God. And one rule for all time: do not eat the fat or the blood.

LAWS FOR PEACE OFFERINGS // LEVITICUS 7:11–21

1 "If one's offering is a peace offering and he offers an animal from the herd, whether male or female, he must present it without blemish before Yahweh. 2 He is to lay his hand on the head of the offering and slaughter it at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. Then Aaron's sons the priests shall splatter the blood on all sides of the altar.

3 From the peace offering he is to bring a food offering to Yahweh: the fat that covers the entrails, all the fat that is on them, 4 both kidneys with the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver, which he is to remove with the kidneys. 5 Then Aaron's sons are to burn it on the altar atop the burnt offering that is on the burning wood, as a food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

6 If, however, one's peace offering to Yahweh is from the flock, he must present a male or female without blemish.

7 If he is presenting a lamb for his offering, he must present it before Yahweh. 8 He is to lay his hand on the head of his offering and slaughter it in front of the Tent of Meeting. Then Aaron's sons shall splatter its blood on all sides of the altar.

9 And from the peace offering he shall bring a food offering to Yahweh consisting of its fat: the entire fat tail cut off close to the backbone, the fat that covers the entrails, all the fat that is on them, 10 both kidneys with the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver, which he is to remove with the kidneys. 11 Then the priest is to burn them on the altar as food, a food offering to Yahweh.

12 If one's offering is a goat, he is to present it before Yahweh. 13 He must lay his hand on its head and slaughter it in front of the Tent of Meeting. Then Aaron's sons shall splatter its blood on all sides of the altar.

14 And from his offering he shall present a food offering to Yahweh: the fat that covers the entrails, all the fat that is on them, 15 both kidneys with the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver, which he is to remove with the kidneys. 16 Then the priest is to burn the food on the altar as a food offering, a pleasing aroma. All the fat is Yahweh's.

GOD SPEAKING

17 This is a permanent statute for the generations to come, wherever you live: You must not eat any fat or any blood."

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

What happens when you sin and did not mean to? There is an offering for that. A priest, the whole nation, a leader or a regular person each bring a different animal. The bigger your job, the bigger the offering, because leaders who sin take a lot of people down with them.

LAWS FOR SIN OFFERINGS // LEVITICUS 5:1–13; LEVITICUS 6:24–30

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Tell the Israelites to do as follows with one who sins unintentionally against any of Yahweh's commandments and does what is forbidden by them:

3 If the anointed priest sins, bringing guilt on the people, he must bring to Yahweh a young bull without blemish as a sin offering for the sin he has committed. 4 He must bring the bull to the entrance to the Tent of Meeting before Yahweh, lay his hand on the bull's head, and slaughter it before Yahweh. 5 Then the anointed priest shall take some of the bull's blood and bring it into the Tent of Meeting. 6 The priest is to dip his finger in the blood and sprinkle some of it seven times before Yahweh, in front of the veil of the sanctuary. 7 The priest must then put some of the blood on the horns of the altar of fragrant incense that is before Yahweh in the Tent of Meeting. And he is to pour out the rest of the bull's blood at the base of the altar of burnt offering at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 8 Then he shall remove all the fat from the bull of the sin offering—the fat that covers the entrails, all the fat that is on them, 9 both kidneys with the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver, which he is to remove with the kidneys— 10 just as the fat is removed from the ox of the peace offering. Then the priest shall burn them on the altar of burnt offering. 11 But the hide of the bull and all its flesh, with its head and legs and its entrails and dung— 12 all the rest of the bull—he must take outside the camp to a ceremonially clean place where the ashes are poured out, and there he must burn it on a wood fire on the ash heap.

LEV 4:7 [FIELD NOTES] A real altar with four stone horns was found at Beersheba. See the Horned Altar of Beersheba Field Notes page, p.180.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE ALTAR, DEBATED FOR WHY IT WAS TAKEN APART

THE HORNED ALTAR OF BEERSHEBA

LEVITICUS 4:7 · EXODUS 27:2 · 1 KINGS 1:50 · 2 KINGS 18:4



The horned altar of Beersheba, put back together in the Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Gary Todd, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A big altar for burnt offerings made of cut sandstone blocks, with a horn sticking up at each of its four corners. Leviticus 4:7 tells the priest to put blood on the horns of the altar, and Exodus 27:2 says the altar in the tabernacle had horns on its four corners. This is what a real one looked like.

HOW OLD IT IS

About the 700s BC, in the days of the kings of Judah. Experts date it by the layer of the city where its stones were found, which was destroyed about 701 BC. Some scholars date that wall about a hundred years later.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Yohanan Aharoni's dig at Tel Beersheba found it in 1973. The altar had been taken apart, and its blocks were reused in the wall of a storehouse. More stones turned up in the dirt of the city's outer

GOD SPEAKING

slope. Aharoni put it back together and published it in 1974.

WHAT IT LOOKS LIKE

It stands about 63 inches tall, a little over 5 feet. The altar in Exodus 27:1 was about 4½ feet tall, so the two are close. Three of the horns are original. The fourth was missing, maybe cut off on purpose, so the one on display is rebuilt. One block has a snake carved into it.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Museum in Jerusalem. A copy stands at Tel Beersheba National Park.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Altars with horns at the corners were real in ancient Israel, just as the law describes. It also helps us picture Adonijah and Joab grabbing the horns of the altar to beg for their lives, 1 Kings 1:50 and 2:28.

THE BIG DEBATE

Why was it taken apart? Aharoni thought King Hezekiah did it when he removed the high places and worship sites outside Jerusalem, 2 Kings 18:4. Others think it happened later under Josiah, or for a reason that had nothing to do with reform. And one more puzzle: Exodus 20:25 says an altar of stones must not be cut with tools, and these stones were cut.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It is not the tabernacle altar, which was bronze over wood. It shows Judah offering sacrifices outside Jerusalem, which later kings tried to stop.

13 Now if the whole congregation of Israel
strays unintentionally and the matter es-
capes the notice of the assembly so that
they violate any of Yahweh's command-
ments and incur guilt by doing what is for-
bidden, 14 when they become aware of the
sin they have committed, then the assem-
bly must bring a young bull as a sin offer-
ing and present it before the Tent of
Meeting. 15 The elders of the congregation
are to lay their hands on the bull's head
before Yahweh, and it shall be slaugh-
tered before Yahweh. 16 Then the anointed
priest is to bring some of the bull's blood
into the Tent of Meeting, 17 and he is to dip
his finger in the blood and sprinkle it
seven times before Yahweh in front of the
veil. 18 He is also to put some of the blood
on the horns of the altar that is before
Yahweh in the Tent of Meeting, and he
must pour out the rest of the blood at the
base of the altar of burnt offering at the
entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 19 And he
is to remove all the fat from it and burn it
on the altar. 20 He shall offer this bull just
as he did the bull for the sin offering; in
this way the priest will make atonement
on their behalf, and they will be forgiven.
21 Then he is to take the bull outside the
camp and burn it, just as he burned the
first bull. It is the sin offering for the as-
sembly.

22 When a leader sins unintentionally and
does what is prohibited by any of the
commandments of Yahweh his God, he
incurs guilt. 23 When he becomes aware of
the sin he has committed, he must bring
an unblemished male goat as his offering.
24 He is to lay his hand on the head of the
goat and slaughter it at the place where
the burnt offering is slaughtered before
Yahweh. It is a sin offering. 25 Then the
priest is to take some of the blood of the
sin offering with his finger, put it on the
horns of the altar of burnt offering, and
pour out the rest of the blood at the base
of the altar. 26 He must burn all its fat on
the altar, like the fat of the peace offer-
ings; thus the priest will make atonement
for that man's sin, and he will be forgiven.

27 And if one of the common people sins
unintentionally and does what is prohib-
ited by any of Yahweh's commandments,
he incurs guilt. 28 When he becomes
aware of the sin he has committed, he
must bring an unblemished female goat as
his offering for that sin. 29 He is to lay his
hand on the head of the sin offering and
slaughter it at the place of the burnt offer-
ing. 30 Then the priest is to take some of
its blood with his finger, put it on the
horns of the altar of burnt offering, and
pour out the rest of the blood at the base

GOD SPEAKING

of the altar. 31 Then he is to remove all the fat, just as it is removed from the peace offering, and the priest is to burn it on the altar as a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. In this way the priest will make atonement for him, and he will be forgiven.

32 If, however, he brings a lamb as a sin offering, he must bring an unblemished female. 33 And he is to lay his hand on the head of the sin offering and slaughter it as a sin offering at the place where the burnt offering is slaughtered. 34 Then the priest is to take some of the blood of the sin offering with his finger, put it on the horns of the altar of burnt offering, and pour out the rest of its blood at the base of the altar. 35 And he shall remove all the fat, just as the fat of the lamb is removed from the peace offerings, and he shall burn it on the altar along with the food offerings to Yahweh. In this way the priest will make atonement for him for the sin he has committed, and he will be forgiven.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Some sins are about keeping quiet when you saw something, or touching something unclean, or making a careless promise. You confess and bring an offering. If you cannot afford a lamb, bring two birds. If you cannot afford birds, bring a little flour. Nobody is too poor to be forgiven.

SINS REQUIRING A SIN OFFERING // LEVITICUS 4:1–35; LEVITICUS 6:24–30

1 "If someone sins by failing to testify when he hears a public charge about something he has witnessed, whether he has seen it or learned of it, he shall bear the iniquity.

2 Or if a person touches anything unclean—whether the carcass of any unclean wild animal or livestock or crawling creature—even if he is unaware of it, he is unclean and guilty.

3 Or if he touches human uncleanness—anything by which one becomes unclean—even if he is unaware of it, when he realizes it, he is guilty.

4 Or if someone swears thoughtlessly with his lips to do anything good or evil—in whatever matter a man may rashly pronounce an oath—even if he is unaware of it, when he realizes it, he is guilty in the matter.

5 If someone incurs guilt in one of these ways, he must confess the sin he has committed, 6 and he must bring his guilt offering to Yahweh for the sin he has committed: a female lamb or goat from the flock as a sin offering. And the priest will make atonement for him concerning his sin.

7 If, however, he cannot afford a lamb, he may bring to Yahweh as restitution for his sin two turtledoves or two young pigeons—one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering. 8 He is to bring them to the priest, who shall first present the one for the sin offering. He is to twist its head at the front of its neck without severing it; 9 then he is to sprinkle some of the blood of the sin offering on the side of the altar, while the rest of the blood is drained out at the base of the altar. It is a sin offering. 10 And the priest must prepare the second bird as a burnt offering according to the ordinance. In this way the priest will make atonement for him for the sin he has committed, and he will be forgiven.

11 But if he cannot afford two turtledoves or two young pigeons, he may bring two quarts of fine flour as a sin offering. He must not put olive oil or frankincense on it, because it is a sin offering. 12 He is to bring it to the priest, who shall take a handful from it as a memorial portion and burn it on the altar atop the food offerings to Yahweh; it is a sin offering. 13 In this way the priest will make atonement for him for any of these sins he has committed, and he will be forgiven. The remainder will belong to the priest, like the grain offering."

LAWS FOR GUILT OFFERINGS // LEVITICUS 6:1–7; LEVITICUS 7:1–10

14 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 15 "If someone acts unfaithfully and sins unintentionally against any of Yahweh's holy things, he must bring his guilt offering to Yahweh: an unblemished ram from the flock, of

GOD SPEAKING

proper value in silver, weighed by the sanctuary standard; it is a guilt offering. 16 Regarding any holy thing he has harmed, he must make restitution by adding a fifth of its value to it and giving it to the priest, who will make atonement on his behalf with the ram as a guilt offering, and he will be forgiven.

17 If someone sins and violates any of Yahweh's commandments even though he was unaware, he is guilty and shall bear his punishment. 18 He is to bring to the priest an unblemished ram of proper value from the flock as a guilt offering. Then the priest will make atonement on his behalf for the wrong he has committed in ignorance, and he will be forgiven. 19 It is a guilt offering; he was certainly guilty before Yahweh."

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

If you cheat your neighbor, lie about something you found or keep what was left in your care, you pay it all back plus one fifth more, then bring your offering. Saying sorry includes paying for the damage. And the fire on the altar must never go out, day or night.

SINS REQUIRING A GUILT OFFERING // LEVITICUS 5:14–19; LEVITICUS 7:1–10

1 And Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "If someone sins and acts unfaithfully against Yahweh by deceiving his neighbor in regard to a deposit or security entrusted to him or stolen, or if he extorts his neighbor 3 or finds lost property and lies about it and swears falsely, or if he commits any such sin that a man might commit— 4 once he has sinned and becomes guilty, he must return what he has stolen or taken by extortion, or the deposit entrusted to him, or the lost property he found, 5 or anything else about which he has sworn falsely.

He must make restitution in full, add a fifth of the value, and pay it to the owner on the day he acknowledges his guilt. 6 Then he must bring to the priest his guilt offering to Yahweh: an unblemished ram of proper value from the flock. 7 In this way the priest will make atonement for him before Yahweh, and he will be forgiven for anything he may have done to incur guilt."

THE BURNT OFFERING // LEVITICUS 1:1–17

8 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 9 "Command Aaron and his sons that this is the law of the burnt offering: The burnt offering is to remain on the hearth of the altar all night, until morning, and the fire must be kept burning on the altar.

10 And the priest shall put on his linen robe and linen undergarments, and he shall remove from the altar the ashes of the burnt offering that the fire has consumed and place them beside it. 11 Then he must take off his garments, put on other clothes, and carry the ashes outside the camp to a ceremonially clean place.

12 The fire on the altar shall be kept burning; it must not be extinguished. Every morning the priest is to add wood to the fire, arrange the burnt offering on it, and burn the fat portions of the peace offerings on it. 13 The fire shall be kept burning on the altar continually; it must not be extinguished.

THE GRAIN OFFERING // LEVITICUS 2:1–16

14 Now this is the law of the grain offering: Aaron's sons shall present it before Yahweh in front of the altar. 15 The priest is to remove a handful of fine flour and olive oil, together with all the frankincense from the grain offering, and burn the memorial portion on the altar as a pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

16 Aaron and his sons are to eat the remainder. It must be eaten without leaven in a holy place; they are to eat it in the courtyard of the Tent of Meeting. 17 It must not be baked with leaven; I have assigned it as their portion of My food offerings. It is most holy, like the sin offering and the guilt offering. 18 Any male among the sons of Aaron may eat it. This is a permanent portion from the food offerings to Yahweh for the generations to come. Anything that touches them will become holy."

19 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 20 "This is the offering that Aaron and his sons must present to Yahweh on the day he is

GOD SPEAKING

anointed: two quarts of fine flour as a regular grain offering, half of it in the morning and half in the evening. 21 It shall be prepared with oil on a griddle; you are to bring it well-kneaded and present it as a grain offering broken in pieces, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. 22 The priest, who is one of Aaron's sons and will be anointed to take his place, is to prepare it. As a permanent portion for Yahweh, it must be burned completely. 23 Every grain offering for a priest shall be burned completely; it is not to be eaten."

THE SIN OFFERING // LEVITICUS 4:1–35; LEVITICUS 5:1–13

24 And Yahweh said to Moses, 25 "Tell Aaron and his sons that this is the law of the sin offering: In the place where the burnt offering is slaughtered, the sin offering shall be slaughtered before Yahweh; it is most holy. 26 The priest who offers it shall eat it; it must be eaten in a holy place, in the courtyard of the Tent of Meeting. 27 Anything that touches its flesh will become holy, and if any of the blood is spattered on a garment, you must wash it in a holy place.

28 The clay pot in which the sin offering is boiled must be broken; if it is boiled in a bronze pot, the pot must be scoured and rinsed with water. 29 Any male among the priests may eat it; it is most holy. 30 But no sin offering may be eaten if its blood has been brought into the Tent of Meeting to make atonement in the Holy Place; it must be burned.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

More rules for the priests about the guilt offering and the peace offering, and which parts are theirs to eat. The thank offering has to be eaten the same day, no leftovers. Again: no fat and no blood. The breast and the right thigh go to the priests as their pay.

THE GUILT OFFERING // LEVITICUS 5:14–19; LEVITICUS 6:1–7

1 "Now this is the law of the guilt offering, which is most holy: 2 The guilt offering must be slaughtered in the place where the burnt offering is slaughtered, and the priest shall splatter its blood on all sides of the altar. 3 And all the fat from it shall be offered: the fat tail, the fat that covers the entrails, 4 both kidneys with the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver, which is to be removed with the kidneys. 5 The priest shall burn them on the altar as a food offering to Yahweh; it is a guilt offering. 6 Every male among the priests may eat of it. It must be eaten in a holy place; it is most holy.

7 The guilt offering is like the sin offering; the same law applies to both. It belongs to the priest who makes atonement with it. 8 As for the priest who presents a burnt offering for anyone, the hide of that offering belongs to him. 9 Likewise, every grain offering that is baked in an oven or cooked in a pan or on a griddle belongs to the priest who presents it, 10 and every grain offering, whether dry or mixed with oil, belongs equally to all the sons of Aaron.

THE PEACE OFFERING // LEVITICUS 3:1–17

11 Now this is the law of the peace offering that one may present to Yahweh: 12 If he offers it in thanksgiving, then along with the sacrifice of thanksgiving he shall offer unleavened cakes mixed with olive oil, unleavened wafers coated with oil, and well-kneaded cakes of fine flour mixed with oil.

13 Along with his peace offering of thanksgiving he is to present an offering with cakes of leavened bread. 14 From the cakes he must present one portion of each offering as a contribution to Yahweh. It belongs to the priest who sprinkles the blood of the peace offering. 15 The meat of the sacrifice of his peace offering of thanksgiving must be eaten on the day he offers it; none of it may be left until morning.

16 If, however, the sacrifice he offers is a vow or a freewill offering, it shall be eaten on the day he presents his sacrifice, but the remainder may be eaten on the next day. 17 But any meat of the sacrifice remaining until the third day must be burned up. 18 If any of the meat from his peace offering is eaten on the third day, it will not

GOD SPEAKING

be accepted. It will not be credited to the one who presented it; it shall be an abomination, and the one who eats of it shall bear his iniquity.

19 Meat that touches anything unclean must not be eaten; it is to be burned up. As for any other meat, anyone who is ceremonially clean may eat it. 20 But if anyone who is unclean eats meat from the peace offering that belongs to Yahweh, that person must be cut off from his people. 21 If one touches anything unclean, whether human uncleanness, an unclean animal, or any unclean, detestable thing, and then eats any of the meat of the peace offering that belongs to Yahweh, that person must be cut off from his people."

FAT AND BLOOD FORBIDDEN

22 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 23 "Speak to the Israelites and say, 'You are not to eat any of the fat of an ox, a sheep, or a goat. 24 The fat of an animal found dead or mauled by wild beasts may be used for any other purpose, but you must not eat it.

25 If anyone eats the fat of an animal from which a food offering may be presented to Yahweh, the one who eats it must be cut off from his people. 26 You must not eat the blood of any bird or animal in any of your dwellings. 27 If anyone eats blood, that person must be cut off from his people.'"

THE PRIESTS' PORTION

28 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 29 "Speak to the Israelites and say, 'Anyone who presents a peace offering to Yahweh must bring it as his sacrifice to Yahweh. 30 With his own hands he is to bring the food offerings to Yahweh; he shall bring the fat, together with the breast, and wave the breast as a wave offering before Yahweh.

31 The priest is to burn the fat on the altar, but the breast belongs to Aaron and his sons. 32 And you are to give the right thigh to the priest as a contribution from your peace offering. 33 The son of Aaron who presents the blood and fat of the peace offering shall have the right thigh as a portion.

34 I have taken from the sons of Israel the breast of the wave offering and the thigh of the contribution of their peace offerings, and I have given them to Aaron the priest and his sons as a permanent portion from the sons of Israel.'"

35 This is the portion of the food offerings to Yahweh for Aaron and his sons since the day they were presented to serve Yahweh as priests. 36 On the day they were anointed, Yahweh commanded that this be given them by the sons of Israel. It is a permanent portion for the generations to come.

37 This is the law of the burnt offering, the grain offering, the sin offering, the guilt offering, the ordination offering, and the peace offering, 38 which Yahweh gave Moses on Mount Sinai on the day He commanded the Israelites to present their offerings to Yahweh in the Wilderness of Sinai.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses ordains Aaron and his sons as priests in front of the whole nation. He washes them, dresses them and pours the holy anointing oil on Aaron's head. Then blood goes on the right ear, the right thumb and the right big toe. They stay at the tent door for seven days.

MOSES CONSECRATES AARON AND HIS SONS // EXODUS 29:1–9

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Take Aaron and his sons, their garments, the anointing oil, the bull of the sin offering, the two rams, and the basket of unleavened bread, 3 and assemble the whole congregation at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting."

4 So Moses did as Yahweh had commanded him, and the assembly gathered at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 5 And Moses said to them, "This is what Yahweh has commanded to be done."

6 Then Moses presented Aaron and his sons and washed them with water. 7 He put the tunic on Aaron, tied the sash around him, clothed him with the robe, and put the ephod on him. He tied the wo-

NOTABLE

ven band of the ephod around him and fastened it to him. 8 Then he put the breastpiece on him and placed the Urim and Thummim in the breastpiece. 9 Moses also put the turban on Aaron's head and set the gold plate, the holy diadem, on the front of the turban, as Yahweh had commanded him.

10 Next, Moses took the anointing oil and anointed the tabernacle and everything in it; and so he consecrated them. 11 He sprinkled some of the oil on the altar seven times, anointing the altar and all its utensils, and the basin with its stand, to consecrate them.

12 He also poured some of the anointing oil on Aaron's head and anointed him to consecrate him. 13 Then Moses presented Aaron's sons, put tunics on them, wrapped sashes around them, and tied headbands on them, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

THE PRIESTS' SIN OFFERING

14 Moses then brought the bull near for the sin offering, and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on its head. 15 Moses slaughtered the bull, took some of the blood, and applied it with his finger to all four horns of the altar, purifying the altar. He poured out the rest of the blood at the base of the altar and consecrated it so that atonement could be made on it.

16 Moses also took all the fat that was on the entrails, the lobe of the liver, and both kidneys and their fat, and burned it all on the altar. 17 But the bull with its hide, flesh, and dung he burned outside the camp, as Yahweh had commanded him.

THE PRIESTS' BURNT OFFERING

18 Then Moses presented the ram for the burnt offering, and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on its head. 19 Moses slaughtered the ram and splattered the blood on all sides of the altar. 20 He cut the ram into pieces and burned the head, the pieces, and the fat. 21 He washed the entrails and legs with water and burned the entire ram on the altar as a burnt offering, a pleasing aroma, a food offering to Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

THE RAM OF ORDINATION // EXODUS 29:10–30

22 After that, Moses presented the other ram, the ram of ordination, and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on its head. 23 Moses slaughtered the ram and took some of its blood and put it on Aaron's right earlobe, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot. 24 Moses also presented Aaron's sons and put some of the blood on their right earlobes, on the thumbs of their right hands, and on the big toes of their right feet. Then he splattered the blood on all sides of the altar.

25 And Moses took the fat—the fat tail, all the fat that was on the entrails, the lobe of the liver, and both kidneys with their fat—as well as the right thigh. 26 And from the basket of unleavened bread that was before Yahweh, he took one cake of unleavened bread, one cake of bread made with oil, and one wafer, and he placed them on the fat portions and on the right thigh. 27 He put all these in the hands of Aaron and his sons and waved them before Yahweh as a wave offering.

28 Then Moses took these from their hands and burned them on the altar with the burnt offering. This was an ordination offering, a pleasing aroma, a food offering to Yahweh. 29 He also took the breast—Moses' portion of the ram of ordination—and waved it before Yahweh as a wave offering, as Yahweh had commanded him.

30 Next, Moses took some of the anointing oil and some of the blood that was on the altar and sprinkled them on Aaron and his garments, and on his sons and their garments. So he consecrated Aaron and his garments, as well as Aaron's sons and their garments.

31 And Moses said to Aaron and his sons, "Boil the meat at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting and eat it there with the bread

LEV 8:10 [NOTABLE] The full consecration ceremony; oil poured abundantly on the high priest

LEV 8:12 [NOTE] The holy anointing oil was made from the recipe in Exodus 30:23 to 25. See the Exodus 30:23 note on p.161.

that is in the basket of ordination offerings, as I commanded, saying, 'Aaron and his sons are to eat it.' 32 Then you must burn up the remainder of the meat and bread.

33 You must not go outside the entrance to the Tent of Meeting for seven days, until the days of your ordination are complete; for it will take seven days to ordain you. 34 What has been done today has been commanded by Yahweh in order to make atonement on your behalf. 35 You must remain at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting day and night for seven days and keep Yahweh's charge so that you will not die, for this is what I have been commanded."

36 So Aaron and his sons did everything Yahweh had commanded through Moses.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

On the eighth day the priests offer their first sacrifices. Aaron lifts his hands and blesses the people. Then the glory of Yahweh appears and fire comes out from His presence and burns up the offering. The people shout and fall on their faces. It is the best first day on the job ever.

AARON'S FIRST OFFERINGS

1 On the eighth day Moses summoned Aaron and his sons and the elders of Israel. 2 He said to Aaron, "Take for yourself a young bull for a sin offering and a ram for a burnt offering, both without blemish, and present them before Yahweh. 3 Then speak to the Israelites and say, 'Take a male goat for a sin offering, a calf and a lamb—both a year old and without blemish—for a burnt offering, 4 an ox and a ram for a peace offering to sacrifice before Yahweh, and a grain offering mixed with oil. For today Yahweh will appear to you.'"

5 So they took what Moses had commanded to the front of the Tent of Meeting, and the whole congregation drew near and stood before Yahweh. 6 And Moses said, "This is what Yahweh has commanded you to do, so that the glory of Yahweh may appear to you."

7 Then Moses said to Aaron, "Approach the altar and sacrifice your sin offering and your burnt offering to make atonement for yourself and for the people. And sacrifice the people's offering to make atonement for them, as Yahweh has commanded."

8 So Aaron approached the altar and slaughtered the calf as a sin offering for himself. 9 The sons of Aaron brought the blood to him, and he dipped his finger in the blood and applied it to the horns of the altar. And he poured out the rest of the blood at the base of the altar. 10 On the altar he burned the fat, the kidneys, and the lobe of the liver from the sin offering, as Yahweh had commanded Moses. 11 But he burned up the flesh and the hide outside the camp.

12 Then Aaron slaughtered the burnt offering. His sons brought him the blood, and he splattered it on all sides of the altar. 13 They brought him the burnt offering piece by piece, including the head, and he burned them on the altar. 14 He washed the entrails and the legs and burned them atop the burnt offering on the altar.

15 Aaron then presented the people's offering. He took the male goat for the people's sin offering, slaughtered it, and offered it for sin like the first one.

16 He presented the burnt offering and offered it according to the ordinance.

17 Next he presented the grain offering, took a handful of it, and burned it on the altar in addition to the morning's burnt offering.

18 Then he slaughtered the ox and the ram as the people's peace offering. His sons brought him the blood, and he splattered it on all sides of the altar.

19 They also brought the fat portions from the ox and the ram—the fat tail, the fat covering the entrails, the kidneys, and the lobe of the liver— 20 and placed these on the breasts. Aaron burned the fat portions on the altar, 21 but he waved the breasts and the right thigh as a wave offering before Yahweh, as Moses had commanded.

MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

22 Aaron lifted up his hands toward the
people and blessed them. And having
made the sin offering, the burnt offering,
and the peace offering, he stepped down.
23 Moses and Aaron then entered the Tent
of Meeting. When they came out, they
blessed the people, and the glory of Yah-
weh appeared to all the people. 24 Fire
came out from the presence of Yahweh
and consumed the burnt offering and the
fat portions on the altar. And when all the
people saw it, they shouted for joy and fell
facedown.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The very next thing, Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu offer fire God never asked for, and fire comes out and kills them on the spot. Aaron stays silent. God tells the priests no wine or strong drink before they serve. Holiness is not something to play around with.

THE SIN OF NADAB AND ABIHU // NUMBERS 3:1–4

1 Now Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu took
their censers, put fire in them and added
incense, and offered unauthorized fire be-
fore Yahweh, contrary to His command. 2
So fire came out from the presence of
Yahweh and consumed them, and they
died in the presence of Yahweh.
3 Then Moses said to Aaron, "This is what
Yahweh meant when He said:

'To those who come near Me
I will show My holiness,
and in the sight of all the people
I will reveal My glory.'"

But Aaron remained silent.

4 Moses summoned Mishael and Elza-
phan, sons of Aaron's uncle Uzziel, and
said to them, "Come here; carry the bod-
ies of your cousins outside the camp,
away from the front of the sanctuary." 5 So
they came forward and carried them, still
in their tunics, outside the camp, as
Moses had directed.
6 Then Moses said to Aaron and his sons
Eleazar and Ithamar, "Do not let your hair
become disheveled and do not tear your
garments, or else you will die, and Yah-
weh will be angry with the whole congre-
gation. But your brothers, the whole
house of Israel, may mourn on account of
the fire that Yahweh has ignited. 7 You
shall not go outside the entrance to the
Tent of Meeting, or you will die, for
Yahweh's anointing oil is on you."
So they did as Moses instructed.

RESTRICTIONS FOR PRIESTS

8 Then Yahweh said to Aaron, 9 "You and
your sons are not to drink wine or strong
drink when you enter the Tent of Meeting,
or else you will die; this is a permanent
statute for the generations to come. 10 You
must distinguish between the holy and the
common, between the clean and the un-
clean, 11 so that you may teach the Is-
raelites all the statutes that Yahweh has
given them through Moses."
12 And Moses said to Aaron and his re-
maining sons, Eleazar and Ithamar, "Take
the grain offering that remains from the
food offerings to Yahweh and eat it with-
out leaven beside the altar, because it is
most holy. 13 You shall eat it in a holy
place, because it is your share and your
sons' share of the food offerings to Yah-
weh; for this is what I have been com-
manded.
14 And you and your sons and daughters
may eat the breast of the wave offering
and the thigh of the contribution in a cere-
monially clean place, because these por-
tions have been assigned to you and your
children from the peace offerings of the
sons of Israel. 15 They are to bring the
thigh of the contribution and the breast of
the wave offering, together with the fat
portions of the food offerings, to wave as
a wave offering before Yahweh. It will be-
long permanently to you and your chil-
dren, as Yahweh has commanded."

- **LEV 9:23 [MIRACLE]** Fire from Yahweh consumes the first offering
- **LEV 10:1 [MIRACLE]** Fire from Yahweh consumes Nadab and Abihu
- **LEV 10:1 [NOTABLE]** Aaron's sons killed on the spot for offering unauthorized fire/incense; warning that God is holy and His worship is not to be improvised
- **LEV 10:1 [NOTE]** Unauthorized fire means fire God never asked for. The Hebrew says strange fire. Many think they used coals from somewhere other than the altar, or came in drunk, since God bans wine for priests right after, in 10:9.

GOD SPEAKING

16 Later, Moses searched carefully for the goat of the sin offering, and behold, it had been burned up. He was angry with Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's remaining sons, and asked, 17 "Why didn't you eat the sin offering in the holy place? For it is most holy; it was given to you to take away the guilt of the congregation by making atonement for them before Yahweh. 18 Since its blood was not brought inside the holy place, you should have eaten it in the sanctuary area, as I commanded."

19 But Aaron replied to Moses, "Behold, this very day they presented their sin offering and their burnt offering before Yahweh. Since these things have happened to me, if I had eaten the sin offering today, would it have been acceptable in the sight of Yahweh?"

20 And when Moses heard this explanation, he was satisfied.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

The menu. Land animals that chew the cud and have split hooves are clean, so cows yes and pigs no. Sea creatures need fins and scales, so no shrimp. A long list of birds and bugs is off limits, but locusts and grasshoppers are fine. The reason God gives is simple: Be holy, because I am holy.

CLEAN AND UNCLEAN ANIMALS // DEUTERONOMY 14:1–21; ACTS 10:9–16

1 Yahweh spoke again to Moses and Aaron, telling them, 2 "Say to the Israelites, 'Of all the beasts of the earth, these ones you may eat: 3 You may eat any animal that has a split hoof completely divided and that chews the cud.

4 But of those that only chew the cud or only have a divided hoof, you are not to eat the following:

The camel, though it chews the cud, does not have a divided hoof; it is unclean for you.

5 The rock badger, though it chews the cud, does not have a divided hoof; it is unclean for you.

6 The rabbit, though it chews the cud, does not have a divided hoof; it is unclean for you.

7 And the pig, though it has a split hoof completely divided, does not chew the cud; it is unclean for you.

8 You must not eat their meat or touch their carcasses; they are unclean for you.

9 Of all the creatures that live in the water, whether in the seas or in the streams, you may eat anything with fins and scales.

10 But the following among all the teeming life and creatures in the water are detestable to you: everything in the seas or streams that does not have fins and scales. 11 They shall be an abomination to you; you must not eat their meat, and you must detest their carcasses. 12 Everything in the water that does not have fins and scales shall be detestable to you.

13 Additionally, you are to detest the following birds, and they must not be eaten because they are detestable:

the eagle, the bearded vulture, the black vulture,

14 the kite, any kind of falcon,

15 any kind of raven,

16 the ostrich, the screech owl, the gull, any kind of hawk,

17 the little owl, the cormorant, the great owl,

18 the white owl, the desert owl, the osprey,

19 the stork, any kind of heron,

the hoopoe, and the bat.

20 All flying insects that walk on all fours are detestable to you. 21 However, you may eat the following kinds of flying insects that walk on all fours: those having jointed legs above their feet for hopping on the ground. 22 Of these you may eat any kind of locust, katydid, cricket, or grasshopper. 23 All other flying insects that have four legs are detestable to you.

24 These creatures will make you unclean. Whoever touches their carcasses will be unclean until evening, 25 and whoever picks up one of their carcasses must

LEV 11:2 [NOTE] CLEAN AND UNCLEAN? See the Clean and Unclean Food pages, p.190.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

wash his clothes, and he will be unclean until evening.

26 Every animal with hooves not completely divided or that does not chew the cud is unclean for you. Whoever touches any of them will be unclean.

27 All the four-footed animals that walk on their paws are unclean for you; whoever touches their carcasses will be unclean until evening, 28 and anyone who picks up a carcass must wash his clothes, and he will be unclean until evening. They are unclean for you.

29 The following creatures that move along the ground are unclean for you: the mole, the mouse, any kind of great lizard, 30 the gecko, the monitor lizard, the common lizard, the skink, and the chameleon.

31 These animals are unclean for you among all the crawling creatures. Whoever touches them when they are dead shall be unclean until evening. 32 When one of them dies and falls on something, that article becomes unclean; any article of wood, clothing, leather, sackcloth, or any implement used for work must be rinsed with water and will remain unclean until evening; then it will be clean. 33 If any of them falls into a clay pot, everything in it will be unclean; you must break the pot. 34 Any food coming into contact with water from that pot will be unclean, and any drink in such a container will be unclean.

35 Anything upon which one of their carcasses falls will be unclean. If it is an oven or cooking pot, it must be smashed; it is unclean and will remain unclean for you. 36 Nevertheless, a spring or cistern containing water will remain clean, but one who touches a carcass in it will be unclean. 37 If a carcass falls on any seed for sowing, the seed is clean; 38 but if water has been put on the seed and a carcass falls on it, it is unclean for you.

39 If an animal that you may eat dies, anyone who touches the carcass will be unclean until evening. 40 Whoever eats from the carcass must wash his clothes and will be unclean until evening, and anyone who picks up the carcass must wash his clothes and will be unclean until evening.

41 Every creature that moves along the ground is detestable; it must not be eaten. 42 Do not eat any creature that moves along the ground, whether it crawls on its belly or walks on four or more feet; for such creatures are detestable.

43 Do not defile yourselves by any crawling creature; do not become unclean or defiled by them. 44 *For I am Yahweh your God; consecrate yourselves, therefore, and be holy, because I am holy. You must not defile yourselves by any creature that crawls along the ground.* 45 *For I am Yahweh, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt so that I would be your God; therefore be holy, because I am holy.*

46 This is the law regarding animals, birds, all living creatures that move in the water, and all creatures that crawl along the ground. 47 You must distinguish between the unclean and the clean, between animals that may be eaten and those that may not.'"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

CLEAN AND UNCLEAN FOOD

Why No Pork?

LEVITICUS 11 · DEUTERONOMY 14 · DANIEL 1:8 · 1 MACCABEES 1:62 TO 63

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Land animals that chew the cud and have a split hoof are clean, so cows, sheep and goats are in, and pigs, camels and rabbits are out, 11:3 to 8. Water creatures need fins and scales. Most birds of prey and most insects are out, but locusts and grasshoppers are fine. The reason God gives is holiness: Be holy, because I am holy, 11:44 to 45. These rules set Israel apart from the nations, 20:25 to 26.

THE HEALTH VIEW

God was protecting His people from disease. Pigs can carry trichinosis, shellfish can carry toxins, and scavengers eat

- **LEV 11:44 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 1:16 p.2012
- **LEV 11:47 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 7:19 p.1621
- **LEV 11:47 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 10:14 p.1757

GOD SPEAKING

dead things. The Jewish teacher Maimonides gave this answer in his Guide for the Perplexed, about AD 1190. Many Christians still find it convincing.

THE HOLINESS VIEW

The point was not germs but being set apart. Every meal reminded Israel that they belonged to God. In 1966 the scholar Mary Douglas, in her book Purity and Danger, argued that clean animals were the ones that fit their category perfectly, like a fish with fins and scales, a picture of wholeness and holiness.

THE SYMBOL VIEW

Older Jewish and Christian writers read the animals as lessons. The Letter of Aristeas, about 150 BC, and Philo of Alexandria said chewing the cud pictures thinking over God's words. The Epistle of Barnabas, about AD 130, said the pig stands for people who only remember God when they are hungry.

PEOPLE DIED FOR THESE RULES

Daniel refused the king's food, Daniel 1:8. When the Greek king Antiochus tried to force Jews to eat pork about 167 BC, many chose to die instead, 1 Maccabees 1:62 to 63 and 2 Maccabees 7. For Jews, these laws were never small.

What About Today?

MARK 7:18 TO 19 · ACTS 10:9 TO 16 · ACTS 15:20, 29 · ROMANS 14:14, 20 · 1 TIMOTHY 4:3 TO 5

WHAT JESUS SAID

Nothing that goes into a man from the outside can defile him, because it goes into his stomach and then out of the body, Mark 7:18 to 19. Most modern Bibles translate the next words as, Thus He declared all foods clean. The King James reads purging all meats, because the Greek copies it used have one letter different.

PETER'S VISION

God showed Peter a sheet full of unclean animals and said, Get up, Peter, kill and eat. Peter said he had never eaten anything unclean, and God answered, Do not call anything impure that God has made clean, Acts 10:13 to 15. Peter said it meant he should not call any person unclean, 10:28.

MOST CHURCHES TODAY

Catholic, Orthodox and nearly all Protestant churches say the food laws were for Israel until Christ came. Paul says nothing is unclean in itself, Romans 14:14 and 14:20, and that every food is good when received with thanks, 1 Timothy 4:4. The early church council only asked Gentiles to avoid blood, strangled meat and food offered to idols, Acts 15:20 and 15:29.

THOSE WHO KEEP THEM

Messianic Jews often keep kosher as part of who they are as Jews. Seventh day Adventists avoid unclean meats because of Leviticus 11, and many add the health reason, which Ellen White taught. Some in the Hebrew Roots movement say every believer should keep them. Many of them read Peter's vision as about people, not food, and Mark 7 as about unwashed hands, 7:2 to 5.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The food laws taught Israel that God cares about everyday life, even dinner. And all sides agree with Paul: whoever eats and whoever does not should not judge each other, Romans 14:3. Eat with thanks, and do not wreck your brother's faith over a menu, 14:20.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

A new mom brings a burnt offering and a sin offering after her baby is born. If she cannot afford a lamb, two turtledoves or two young pigeons will do. Hundreds of years later Mary and Joseph bring exactly that, the offering of a poor family, when they take baby Jesus to the temple.

PURIFICATION AFTER CHILDBIRTH

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Say to the
Israelites, 'A woman who becomes pregnant and gives birth to a son will be unclean for seven days, as she is during the
days of her menstruation. 3 And on the
eighth day the flesh of the boy's foreskin
is to be circumcised.

4 The woman shall continue in purification
from her bleeding for thirty-three days.
She must not touch anything sacred or go
into the sanctuary until the days of her
purification are complete.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

5 If, however, she gives birth to a daughter,
the woman will be unclean for two weeks
as she is during her menstruation. Then
she must continue in purification from her
bleeding for sixty-six days.

6 When the days of her purification are
complete, whether for a son or for a
daughter, she is to bring to the priest at
the entrance to the Tent of Meeting a
year-old lamb for a burnt offering and a
young pigeon or a turtledove for a sin of-
fering. 7 And the priest will present them
before Yahweh and make atonement for
her; and she shall be ceremonially
cleansed from her flow of blood. This is
the law for a woman giving birth, whether
to a male or to a female.

8 *But if she cannot afford a lamb, she shall*
bring two turtledoves or two young pigeons,
one for a burnt offering and the other for a sin
offering. Then the priest will make atonement
for her, and she will be clean.'"

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

The priest becomes the skin doctor. Rashes, swellings and spots are checked, the person waits seven days and gets checked again. Anyone with a serious skin disease lives outside the camp and calls out Unclean so nobody gets too close. Moldy clothes get checked too, and sometimes burned.

LAWS ABOUT SKIN DISEASES // NUMBERS 5:1–4

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 2
"When someone has a swelling or rash or
bright spot on his skin that may be an in-
fectious skin disease, he must be brought
to Aaron the priest or to one of his sons
who is a priest.

3 The priest is to examine the infection on
his skin, and if the hair in the infection has
turned white and the sore appears to be
deeper than the skin, it is a skin disease.
After the priest examines him, he must
pronounce him unclean.

4 If, however, the spot on his skin is white
and does not appear to be deeper than
the skin, and the hair in it has not turned
white, the priest shall isolate the infected
person for seven days. 5 On the seventh
day the priest is to reexamine him, and if
he sees that the infection is unchanged
and has not spread on the skin, the priest
must isolate him for another seven days. 6
The priest will examine him again on the
seventh day, and if the sore has faded
and has not spread on the skin, the priest
shall pronounce him clean; it is a rash.
The person must wash his clothes and be
clean.

7 But if the rash spreads further on his skin
after he has shown himself to the priest
for his cleansing, he must present himself
again to the priest. 8 The priest will reex-
amine him, and if the rash has spread on
the skin, the priest must pronounce him
unclean; it is a skin disease.

9 When anyone develops a skin disease,
he must be brought to the priest. 10 The
priest will examine him, and if there is a
white swelling on the skin that has turned
the hair white, and there is raw flesh in the
swelling, 11 it is a chronic skin disease and
the priest must pronounce him unclean.
He need not isolate him, for he is unclean.

12 But if the skin disease breaks out all
over his skin so that it covers all the skin
of the infected person from head to foot,
as far as the priest can see, 13 the priest
shall examine him, and if the disease has
covered his entire body, he is to pro-
nounce the infected person clean. Since it
has all turned white, he is clean.

14 But whenever raw flesh appears on
someone, he will be unclean. 15 When the
priest sees the raw flesh, he must pro-
nounce him unclean. The raw flesh is un-
clean; it is a skin disease. 16 But if the raw
flesh changes and turns white, he must
go to the priest. 17 The priest will reexam-
ine him, and if the infection has turned
white, the priest is to pronounce the in-
fected person clean; then he is clean.

18 When a boil appears on someone's skin
and it heals, 19 and a white swelling or a
reddish-white spot develops where the
boil was, he must present himself to the
priest. 20 The priest shall examine it, and if

■ **LEV 12:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 2:22 p.1650
■ **LEV 12:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 2:24 p.1650

GOD SPEAKING

it appears to be beneath the skin and the hair in it has turned white, the priest shall pronounce him unclean; it is a diseased infection that has broken out in the boil.

21 But when the priest examines it, if there is no white hair in it, and it is not beneath the skin and has faded, the priest shall isolate him for seven days. 22 If it spreads any further on the skin, the priest must pronounce him unclean; it is an infection. 23 But if the spot remains unchanged and does not spread, it is only the scar from the boil, and the priest shall pronounce him clean.

24 When there is a burn on someone's skin and the raw area of the burn becomes reddish-white or white, 25 the priest must examine it. If the hair in the spot has turned white and the spot appears to be deeper than the skin, it is a disease that has broken out in the burn. The priest must pronounce him unclean; it is a diseased infection.

26 But if the priest examines it and there is no white hair in the spot, and it is not beneath the skin but has faded, the priest shall isolate him for seven days. 27 On the seventh day the priest is to reexamine him, and if it has spread further on the skin, the priest must pronounce him unclean; it is a diseased infection. 28 But if the spot is unchanged and has not spread on the skin but has faded, it is a swelling from the burn, and the priest is to pronounce him clean; for it is only the scar from the burn.

29 If a man or woman has an infection on the head or chin, 30 the priest shall examine the infection, and if it appears to be deeper than the skin and the hair in it is yellow and thin, the priest must pronounce him unclean; it is a scaly outbreak, an infectious disease of the head or chin.

31 But if the priest examines the scaly infection and it does not appear to be deeper than the skin, and there is no black hair in it, the priest shall isolate the infected person for seven days. 32 On the seventh day the priest is to reexamine the infection, and if the scaly outbreak has not spread and there is no yellow hair in it, and it does not appear to be deeper than the skin, 33 then the person must shave himself except for the scaly area. Then the priest shall isolate him for another seven days. 34 On the seventh day the priest shall examine the scaly outbreak, and if it has not spread on the skin and does not appear to be deeper than the skin, the priest is to pronounce him clean. He must wash his clothes, and he will be clean.

35 If, however, the scaly outbreak spreads further on the skin after his cleansing, 36 the priest is to examine him, and if the scaly outbreak has spread on the skin, the priest need not look for yellow hair; the person is unclean.

37 If, however, in his sight the scaly outbreak is unchanged and black hair has grown in it, then it has healed. He is clean, and the priest is to pronounce him clean.

38 When a man or a woman has white spots on the skin, 39 the priest shall examine them, and if the spots are dull white, it is a harmless rash that has broken out on the skin; the person is clean.

40 Now if a man loses his hair and is bald, he is still clean. 41 Or if his hairline recedes and he is bald on his forehead, he is still clean. 42 But if there is a reddish-white sore on the bald head or forehead, it is an infectious disease breaking out on it. 43 The priest is to examine him, and if the swelling of the infection on his bald head or forehead is reddish-white like a skin disease, 44 the man is diseased; he is unclean. The priest must pronounce him unclean because of the infection on his head.

45 A diseased person must wear torn clothes and let his hair hang loose, and he must cover his mouth and cry out, 'Unclean, unclean!' 46 As long as he has the infection, he remains unclean. He must live alone in a place outside the camp.

GOD SPEAKING

LAWS ABOUT MILDEW

47 If any fabric is contaminated with
mildew—any wool or linen garment, 48 any
weave or knit of linen or wool, or any arti-
cle of leather— 49 and if the mark in the
fabric, leather, weave, knit, or leather arti-
cle is green or red, then it is contaminated
with mildew and must be shown to the
priest. 50 And the priest is to examine the
mildew and isolate the contaminated fab-
ric for seven days.

51 On the seventh day the priest shall reex-
amine it, and if the mildew has spread in
the fabric, weave, knit, or leather, then re-
gardless of how it is used, it is a harmful
mildew; the article is unclean. 52 He is to
burn the fabric, weave, or knit, whether
the contaminated item is wool or linen or
leather. Since the mildew is harmful, the
article must be burned up.

53 But when the priest reexamines it, if the
mildew has not spread in the fabric,
weave, knit, or leather article, 54 the priest
is to order the contaminated article to be
washed and isolated for another seven
days. 55 After it has been washed, the
priest is to reexamine it, and if the
mildewed article has not changed in ap-
pearance, it is unclean. Even though the
mildew has not spread, you must burn it,
whether the rot is on the front or back.

56 If the priest examines it and the mildew
has faded after it has been washed, he
must cut the contaminated section out of
the fabric, leather, weave, or knit. 57 But if
it reappears in the fabric, weave, or knit,
or on any leather article, it is spreading.
You must burn the contaminated article.

58 If the mildew disappears from the fab-
ric, weave, or knit, or any leather article
after washing, then it is to be washed
again, and it will be clean.

59 This is the law concerning a mildew
contamination in wool or linen fabric,
weave, or knit, or any leather article, for
pronouncing it clean or unclean."

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

How a healed person comes back. Two birds, cedar wood, scarlet yarn and hyssop. One bird is killed and the other is dipped in its blood and set free. Then shaving, washing and offerings on the eighth day. Later there are rules for mold in the walls of a house, which might mean tearing out the stones.

CLEANSING FROM SKIN DISEASES // MATTHEW 8:1–4; MARK 1:40–45; LUKE 5:12–16

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "This is
the law for the one afflicted with a skin
disease on the day of his cleansing, when
he is brought to the priest. 3 The priest is
to go outside the camp to examine him,
and if the skin disease of the afflicted per-
son has healed, 4 the priest shall order
that two live clean birds, cedar wood,
scarlet yarn, and hyssop be brought for
the one to be cleansed.

5 Then the priest shall command that one
of the birds be slaughtered over fresh wa-
ter in a clay pot. 6 And he is to take the live
bird together with the cedar wood, scarlet
yarn, and hyssop, and dip them into the
blood of the bird that was slaughtered
over the fresh water. 7 Seven times he
shall sprinkle the one to be cleansed of
the skin disease. Then he shall pronounce
him clean and release the live bird into the
open field.

8 The one being cleansed must wash his
clothes, shave off all his hair, and bathe
with water; then he will be ceremonially
clean. Afterward, he may enter the camp,
but he must remain outside his tent for
seven days. 9 On the seventh day he must
shave off all his hair—his head, his beard,
his eyebrows, and the rest of his hair. He
must wash his clothes and bathe himself
with water, and he will be clean.

10 On the eighth day he is to bring two un-
blemished male lambs, an unblemished
ewe lamb a year old, a grain offering of

- **LEV 14:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 8:4 p.1560
- **LEV 14:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 1:44 p.1611
- **LEV 14:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 5:14 p.1656
- **LEV 14:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 17:14 p.1679

GOD SPEAKING

six quarts of fine flour mixed with olive oil, and a third of a quart of olive oil. 11 The priest who performs the cleansing shall present the one to be cleansed, together with these offerings, before Yahweh at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting.

12 Then the priest is to take one of the male lambs and present it as a guilt offering, along with the olive oil; and he must wave them as a wave offering before Yahweh. 13 Then he is to slaughter the lamb in the sanctuary area where the sin offering and burnt offering are slaughtered. Like the sin offering, the guilt offering belongs to the priest; it is most holy.

14 The priest is to take some of the blood from the guilt offering and put it on the right earlobe of the one to be cleansed, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot. 15 Then the priest shall take some of the olive oil, pour it into his left palm, 16 dip his right forefinger into the oil in his left palm, and sprinkle some of the oil with his finger seven times before Yahweh. 17 And the priest is to put some of the oil remaining in his palm on the right earlobe of the one to be cleansed, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot, on top of the blood of the guilt offering.

18 The rest of the oil in his palm, the priest is to put on the head of the one to be cleansed, to make atonement for him before Yahweh. 19 Then the priest is to sacrifice the sin offering and make atonement for the one to be cleansed from his uncleanness. After that, the priest shall slaughter the burnt offering 20 and offer it on the altar, with the grain offering, to make atonement for him, and he will be clean.

21 If, however, the person is poor and cannot afford these offerings, he is to take one male lamb as a guilt offering to be waved to make atonement for him, along with two quarts of fine flour mixed with olive oil for a grain offering, a third of a quart of olive oil, 22 and two turtledoves or two young pigeons, whichever he can afford, one to be a sin offering and the other a burnt offering.

23 On the eighth day he is to bring them for his cleansing to the priest at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting before Yahweh. 24 The priest shall take the lamb for the guilt offering, along with the olive oil, and wave them as a wave offering before Yahweh.

25 And after he slaughters the lamb for the guilt offering, the priest is to take some of the blood of the guilt offering and put it on the right earlobe of the one to be cleansed, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot. 26 Then the priest is to pour some of the oil into his left palm 27 and sprinkle with his right forefinger some of the oil in his left palm seven times before Yahweh. 28 The priest shall also put some of the oil in his palm on the right earlobe of the one to be cleansed, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot—on the same places as the blood of the guilt offering.

29 The rest of the oil in his palm, the priest is to put on the head of the one to be cleansed, to make atonement for him before Yahweh. 30 Then he must sacrifice the turtledoves or young pigeons, whichever he can afford, 31 one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering, together with the grain offering. In this way the priest will make atonement before Yahweh for the one to be cleansed.

32 This is the law for someone who has a skin disease and cannot afford the cost of his cleansing."

SIGNS OF HOME CONTAMINATION

33 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron,
34 "When you enter the land of Canaan, which I am giving you as your possession, and I put a contamination of mildew into a house in that land, 35 the owner of the house shall come and tell the priest, 'Something like mildew has appeared in my house.'

36 The priest must order that the house be cleared before he enters it to examine the mildew, so that nothing in the house will

GOD SPEAKING

become unclean. After this, the priest shall go in to inspect the house.

37 He is to examine the house, and if the mildew on the walls consists of green or red depressions that appear to be beneath the surface of the wall, 38 the priest shall go outside the doorway of the house and close it up for seven days.

39 On the seventh day the priest is to return and inspect the house. If the mildew has spread on the walls, 40 he must order that the contaminated stones be pulled out and thrown into an unclean place outside the city. 41 And he shall have the inside of the house scraped completely and the plaster that is scraped off dumped into an unclean place outside the city.

42 So different stones must be obtained to replace the contaminated ones, as well as additional mortar to replaster the house.

43 If the mildew reappears in the house after the stones have been torn out and the house has been scraped and replastered, 44 the priest must come and inspect it.

If the mildew has spread in the house, it is a destructive mildew; the house is unclean. 45 It must be torn down with its stones, its timbers, and all its plaster, and taken outside the city to an unclean place. 46 Anyone who enters the house during any of the days that it is closed up will be unclean until evening. 47 And anyone who sleeps in the house or eats in it must wash his clothes.

CLEANSING A HOME

48 If, however, the priest comes and inspects it, and the mildew has not spread after the house has been replastered, he shall pronounce the house clean, because the mildew is gone.

49 He is to take two birds, cedar wood, scarlet yarn, and hyssop to purify the house; 50 and he shall slaughter one of the birds over fresh water in a clay pot.

51 Then he shall take the cedar wood, the hyssop, the scarlet yarn, and the live bird, dip them in the blood of the slaughtered bird and the fresh water, and sprinkle the house seven times. 52 And he shall cleanse the house with the bird's blood, the fresh water, the live bird, the cedar wood, the hyssop, and the scarlet yarn.

53 Finally, he is to release the live bird into the open fields outside the city. In this way he will make atonement for the house, and it will be clean.

54 This is the law for any infectious skin disease, for a scaly outbreak, 55 for mildew in clothing or in a house, 56 and for a swelling, rash, or spot, 57 to determine when something is clean or unclean. This is the law regarding skin diseases and mildew."

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Rules about bodily fluids, for men and for women, and how to get clean again by washing and waiting. Yes, this is a whole chapter, and no, it will not be read aloud at your church picnic. God cared about the most private parts of life too.

THE UNCLEANNESS OF MEN // DEUTERONOMY 23:9–14

1 And Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 2 "Say to the Israelites, 'When any man has a bodily discharge, the discharge is unclean. 3 This uncleanness is from his discharge, whether his body allows the discharge to flow or blocks it. So his discharge will bring about uncleanness.

4 Any bed on which the man with the discharge lies will be unclean, and any furniture on which he sits will be unclean. 5 Anyone who touches his bed must wash his clothes and bathe with water, and he will be unclean until evening. 6 Whoever sits on furniture on which the man with the discharge was sitting must wash his clothes and bathe with water, and he will be unclean until evening.

7 Whoever touches the body of the man with a discharge must wash his clothes and bathe with water, and he will be unclean until evening. 8 If the man with the discharge spits on one who is clean, that person must wash his clothes and bathe with water, and he will be unclean until evening.

GOD SPEAKING

9 Any saddle on which the man with the
discharge rides will be unclean. 10 Who-
ever touches anything that was under him
will be unclean until evening, and whoever
carries such things must wash his clothes
and bathe with water, and he will be un-
clean until evening.

11 If the man with the discharge touches
anyone without first rinsing his hands with
water, the one who was touched must
wash his clothes and bathe with water,
and he will be unclean until evening. 12 Any
clay pot that the man with the discharge
touches must be broken, and any wooden
utensil must be rinsed with water.

THE CLEANSING OF MEN

13 When the man has been cleansed from
his discharge, he must count off seven
days for his cleansing, wash his clothes,
and bathe himself in fresh water, and he
shall be clean. 14 On the eighth day he is to
take two turtledoves or two young pi-
geons, come before Yahweh at the en-
trance to the Tent of Meeting, and give
them to the priest. 15 The priest is to sacri-
fice them, one as a sin offering and the
other as a burnt offering. In this way the
priest will make atonement for the man
before Yahweh because of his discharge.

16 When a man has an emission of semen,
he must bathe his whole body with water,
and he will be unclean until evening. 17 Any
clothing or leather on which there is an
emission of semen must be washed with
water, and it will remain unclean until
evening. 18 If a man lies with a woman and
there is an emission of semen, both must
bathe with water, and they will remain un-
clean until evening.

THE UNCLEANNESS OF WOMEN

19 When a woman has a discharge consist-
ing of blood from her body, she will be
unclean due to her menstruation for seven
days, and anyone who touches her will be
unclean until evening. 20 Anything on
which she lies or sits during her menstru-
ation will be unclean, 21 and anyone who
touches her bed must wash his clothes
and bathe with water, and he will be un-
clean until evening.

22 Whoever touches any furniture on
which she was sitting must wash his
clothes and bathe with water, and he will
be unclean until evening. 23 And whether it
is a bed or furniture on which she was sit-
ting, whoever touches it will be unclean
until evening.

24 If a man lies with her and her menstrual
flow touches him, he will be unclean for
seven days, and any bed on which he lies
will become unclean.

25 When a woman has a discharge of her
blood for many days at a time other than
her menstrual period, or if it continues be-
yond her period, she will be unclean all
the days of her unclean discharge, just as
she is during the days of her menstrua-
tion. 26 Any bed on which she lies or any
furniture on which she sits during the
days of her discharge will be unclean, like
her bed during her menstrual period. 27
Anyone who touches these things will be
unclean; he must wash his clothes and
bathe with water, and he will be unclean
until evening.

THE CLEANSING OF WOMEN

28 When a woman is cleansed of her dis-
charge, she must count off seven days,
and after that she will be ceremonially
clean. 29 On the eighth day she is to take
two turtledoves or two young pigeons and
bring them to the priest at the entrance to
the Tent of Meeting. 30 The priest is to
sacrifice one as a sin offering and the
other as a burnt offering. In this way the
priest will make atonement for her before
Yahweh for her unclean discharge.

31 You must keep the children of Israel
separate from their uncleanness, so that
they do not die by defiling My tabernacle,
which is among them.

32 This is the law of him who has a dis-
charge, of the man who has an emission
of semen whereby he is unclean, 33 of a
woman in her menstrual period, of any
male or female who has a discharge, and
of a man who lies with an unclean
woman.'"

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

The Day of Atonement, the biggest day of the year. Once a year the high priest goes behind the veil into the Most Holy Place with blood and a cloud of incense. Two goats: one is sacrificed, and the high priest confesses all of Israel's sins over the other one and sends it away into the wilderness.

THE DAY OF ATONEMENT // LEVITICUS 23:26–32; NUMBERS 29:7–11

1 Now Yahweh spoke to Moses after the death of two of Aaron's sons when they approached the presence of Yahweh. 2 And Yahweh said to Moses: "Tell your brother Aaron not to enter freely into the Most Holy Place behind the veil in front of the mercy seat on the ark, or else he will die, because I appear in the cloud above the mercy seat.

3 This is how Aaron is to enter the Holy Place: with a young bull for a sin offering and a ram for a burnt offering. 4 He is to wear the sacred linen tunic, with linen undergarments. He must tie a linen sash around him and put on the linen turban. These are holy garments, and he must bathe himself with water before he wears them. 5 And he shall take from the congregation of Israel two male goats for a sin offering and one ram for a burnt offering.

6 Aaron is to present the bull for his sin offering and make atonement for himself and his household. 7 Then he shall take the two goats and present them before Yahweh at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting.

8 After Aaron casts lots for the two goats, one for Yahweh and the other for the scapegoat, 9 he shall present the goat chosen by lot for Yahweh and sacrifice it as a sin offering. 10 But the goat chosen by lot as the scapegoat shall be presented alive before Yahweh to make atonement by sending it into the wilderness as the scapegoat.

11 When Aaron presents the bull for his sin offering and makes atonement for himself and his household, he is to slaughter the bull for his own sin offering. 12 Then he must take a censer full of burning coals from the altar before Yahweh, and two handfuls of finely ground fragrant incense, and take them inside the veil. 13 He is to put the incense on the fire before Yahweh, and the cloud of incense will cover the mercy seat above the Testimony, so that he will not die. 14 And he is to take some of the bull's blood and sprinkle it with his finger on the east side of the mercy seat; then he shall sprinkle some of it with his finger seven times before the mercy seat.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FINDS, DEBATED FOR WHY IT WAS BURIED

THE TEL ARAD SHRINE

LEVITICUS 16:12 TO 13 · LEVITICUS 10:1 · EXODUS 30:1 TO 10 · 2 KINGS 18:22



The holy of holies from the shrine at Arad, with its two incense altars and standing stone, in the Israel Museum. Photo Yair Haklai, CC BY SA 4.0.

- **LEV 16:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 9:7 p.1989
- **LEV 16:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 9:25 p.1990
- **LEV 16:8 [DEMONIC]** Azazel — the scapegoat sent into the wilderness
- **LEV 16:8 [TEXT]** Scapegoat is the Hebrew word Azazel, found only in this chapter. William Tyndale made up the English word scapegoat in 1530, from escape goat. See the Scapegoat and Azazel pages, p.200.
- **LEV 16:10 [DEMONIC]** Azazel — the scapegoat sent into the wilderness
- **LEV 16:12 [NOTE]** The holy incense was made from the recipe in Exodus 30:34 to 35. See the Exodus 30:34 note on p.162.
- **LEV 16:12 [FIELD NOTES]** Two incense altars from a Judean shrine are on display today. See the Tel Arad Shrine Field Notes page, p.198.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

WHAT IT IS
A small temple inside a royal fortress of Judah at Arad, in the Negev desert. Its inner room, a holy of holies, held two limestone incense altars on the steps and a standing stone behind them. It shows how incense was burned in Judah in the days of the kings.

HOW OLD IT IS
The shrine was built about 760 or 750 BC and went out of use about 715 BC. Experts date it by the layers of the fortress.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Yohanan Aharoni dug the fortress from 1962 to 1967. The two altars had been laid carefully on their sides and covered over, along with the standing stone, so they were found in good shape.

WHAT WAS INSIDE
In 2020 Eran Arie, Baruch Rosen and Dvory Namdar tested the black crust on top of the altars and published it in the journal Tel Aviv. The bigger altar, about 20 inches tall, had frankincense mixed with animal fat. The smaller one, about 16 inches tall, had cannabis mixed with animal dung to keep it burning. The researchers called it the first cannabis found in ancient Judah.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The holy of holies, with both altars and the standing stone, is on display in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Burning incense on small stone altars was real worship in Judah, and frankincense, one of the ingredients God names for the holy incense in Exodus 30:34, was being used there.

THE BIG DEBATE
Why was it buried? Many think King Hezekiah closed it when he removed the worship places outside Jerusalem, 2 Kings 18:4 and 18:22. Others think the people buried it to protect it before the Assyrians came. Scholars also debate whether this shrine was meant for Yahweh, and whether the cannabis was part of the worship everywhere or only here.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
It does not tell us what was in the incense of the tabernacle in Leviticus 16. This was a local shrine, the kind of worship site that later kings shut down. See the Exodus 30:34 note on p.162.

15 Aaron shall then slaughter the goat for
the sin offering for the people and bring
its blood behind the veil, and with its
blood he must do as he did with the bull's
blood: He is to sprinkle it against the
mercy seat and in front of it.
16 So he shall make atonement for the
Most Holy Place because of the impurities
and rebellious acts of the Israelites in regard to all their sins. He is to do the same
for the Tent of Meeting which abides
among them in the midst of their impurities. 17 No one may be in the Tent of Meeting from the time Aaron goes in to make
atonement in the Most Holy Place until he
leaves, after he has made atonement for
himself, his household, and the whole assembly of Israel.
18 Then he shall go out to the altar that is
before Yahweh and make atonement for it.
He is to take some of the bull's blood and
some of the goat's blood and put it on all
the horns of the altar. 19 He is to sprinkle
some of the blood on it with his finger
seven times to cleanse it and consecrate
it from the uncleanness of the Israelites.
20 When Aaron has finished purifying the
Most Holy Place, the Tent of Meeting, and
the altar, he is to bring forward the live
goat. 21 Then he is to lay both hands on
the head of the live goat and confess over
it all the iniquities and rebellious acts of
the Israelites in regard to all their sins. He
is to put them on the goat's head and
send it away into the wilderness by the
hand of a man appointed for the task. 22
The goat will carry on itself all their iniquities into a solitary place, and the man will
release it into the wilderness.

LEV 16:15 [FORESHADOW] Day of Atonement prefigures Christ's once-for-all sacrifice → HEB 9:7; HEB 9:11-12; HEB 9:24-26 p.1989
LEV 16:21 [FORESHADOW] The scapegoat carried the people's sins away into the wilderness → IS 53:6; JN 1:29; HEB 9:28 · MEDIUM p.1128

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

23 Then Aaron is to enter the Tent of Meeting, take off the linen garments he put on
before entering the Most Holy Place, and
leave them there. 24 He is to bathe himself
with water in a holy place and put on his
own clothes. Then he must go out and
sacrifice his burnt offering and the
people's burnt offering to make atonement
for himself and for the people. 25 He is also
to burn the fat of the sin offering on the
altar.

26 The man who released the goat as the
scapegoat must wash his clothes and
bathe himself with water; afterward he
may reenter the camp.

27 The bull for the sin offering and the goat
for the sin offering, whose blood was
brought into the Most Holy Place to make
atonement, must be taken outside the
camp; and their hides, flesh, and dung
must be burned up. 28 The one who burns
them must wash his clothes and bathe
himself with water, and afterward he may
reenter the camp.

29 This is to be a permanent statute for
you: On the tenth day of the seventh
month, you shall humble yourselves and
not do any work—whether the native or
the foreigner who resides among you— 30
because on this day atonement will be
made for you to cleanse you, and you will
be clean from all your sins before Yah-
weh. 31 It is a Sabbath of complete rest for
you, that you may humble yourselves; it is
a permanent statute.

32 The priest who is anointed and ordained
to succeed his father as high priest shall
make atonement. He will put on the sa-
cred linen garments 33 and make atone-
ment for the Most Holy Place, the Tent of
Meeting, and the altar, and for the priests
and all the people of the assembly. 34 This
is to be a permanent statute for you, to
make atonement once a year for the Is-
raelites because of all their sins."

And all this was done as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SCAPEGOAT AND AZAZEL

Who Was the Goat For?

LEVITICUS 16:8 TO 10, 20 TO 22, 26

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

On the Day of Atonement Aaron casts lots over two goats, one for Yahweh and one for Azazel, 16:8. The goat for Yahweh is sacrificed. Aaron lays both hands on the other goat, confesses all of Israel's sins over it, and a man leads it into the wilderness, where it carries their sins away to a solitary place, 16:21 to 22. The word Azazel shows up only in this chapter, four times, and nobody is sure what it means.

VIEW 1: THE GOAT THAT GOES AWAY

Azazel means the goat that leaves, or the sent away goat. The Greek Septuagint, about 250 BC, says the one sent away. The Latin Vulgate says the goat sent out. William Tyndale made up the English word scapegoat in 1530, from escape goat, and the King James kept it. This Bible says scapegoat too.

VIEW 2: A PLACE

Azazel is the name of a rough, rocky place in the desert. The Talmud, Yoma 67b, says the word means a hard place. The Mishnah, Yoma 6:6, says in later times the man pushed the goat backward off a cliff.

VIEW 3: A DEMON

Azazel is the name of a demon who lived in the desert. In 1 Enoch, Azazel is the fallen angel who taught people to make weapons and makeup, and God has him bound and thrown into darkness in the desert, 1 Enoch 8:1 and 10:4 to 8. A Dead Sea Scroll, 4Q180, and the Apocalypse of Abraham also name Azazel as an evil angel. That is why this Bible marks 16:8, 10 and 26 Gray.

LEV 16:26 [DEMONIC] Azazel — the scapegoat sent into the wilderness

LEV 16:27 [FORESHADOW] The sin-offering burned outside the camp foreshadows Christ's death outside Jerusalem → MT 27:33; HEB 13:11-12 p.1598

LEV 16:34 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → HEB 9:7 p.1989

LEV 16:34 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → HEB 9:25 p.1990

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

The Goat and the Cross

LEVITICUS 16:21 TO 22 · ISAIAH 53:6 · JOHN 1:29 · HEBREWS 9:11 TO 14, 28

BUT WHY SEND SINS TO A DEMON?

People who hold the demon view say the goat was not an offering to Azazel. Only the first goat was a sacrifice, and it went to Yahweh. The second goat was a way of sending sin back where it came from, out of God's camp and into the desert. Leviticus 17:7 bans sacrifices to goat demons in the very next chapter.

THE SCARLET THREAD

The Mishnah, Yoma 6:8, says a strip of red wool was tied in the temple, and when the goat reached the wilderness it turned white, a sign the sins were forgiven, Isaiah 1:18. The Talmud, Yoma 39b, says that for the last forty years before the temple was destroyed in AD 70 it never turned white. Many Christians note that is about when Jesus died. It is a rabbinic tradition, not Scripture.

HOW CHRISTIANS READ IT

The Epistle of Barnabas, about AD 130, said the goat that was sent away pictures Jesus, who carried our sins. Many Christians see both goats as Jesus: the one who died for sin and the one who carried it away. Yahweh laid on Him the iniquity of us all, Isaiah 53:6. Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world, John 1:29.

WHAT HEBREWS SAYS

Hebrews says the high priest went into the Most Holy Place once a year, never without blood, but Jesus went in once for all with His own blood and got eternal redemption, Hebrews 9:7 and 9:11 to 12. The yearly goats could never take away sins for good, 10:4. Jesus did it one time, 9:28.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Whatever Azazel means, the picture is clear: sin is carried far away and does not come back. As far as the east is from the west, so far has He removed our transgressions from us, Psalm 103:12. Jews still keep this day as Yom Kippur.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

All sacrifices must be brought to the tent, not offered out in the fields to goat demons. And do not eat blood, for the life of the flesh is in the blood, and God gave it to make atonement. That one verse explains why so much of the Bible talks about blood.

THE PLACE OF SACRIFICE

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to
Aaron, his sons, and all the Israelites and
tell them this is what Yahweh has com-
manded: 3 'Anyone from the house of Is-
rael who slaughters an ox, a lamb, or a
goat in the camp or outside of it 4 instead
of bringing it to the entrance to the Tent of
Meeting to present it as an offering to
Yahweh before His tabernacle—that man
shall incur bloodguilt. He has shed blood
and must be cut off from among his peo-
ple.

5 For this reason the Israelites will bring to
Yahweh the sacrifices they have been of-
fering in the open fields. They are to bring
them to the priest at the entrance to the
Tent of Meeting and offer them as sacri-
fices of peace offerings to Yahweh. 6 The
priest will then splatter the blood on the
altar of Yahweh at the entrance to the
Tent of Meeting and burn the fat as a
pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

7 They must no longer offer their sacrifices
to the goat demons to which they have
prostituted themselves. This will be a per-
manent statute for them for the genera-
tions to come.'

8 Tell them that if anyone from the house
of Israel or any foreigner living among
them offers a burnt offering or a sacrifice
9 but does not bring it to the entrance to
the Tent of Meeting to sacrifice it to Yah-
weh, that man must be cut off from his
people.

LAWS AGAINST EATING BLOOD

10 If anyone from the house of Israel or a
foreigner living among them eats any
blood, I will set My face against that per-
son and cut him off from among his peo-

LEV 17:7 [DEMONIC] Israel commanded not to sacrifice to 'goat-demons' (se'irim)

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

ple. 11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood, and I have given it to you to make atonement for your souls upon the altar; for it is the blood that makes atonement for the soul. 12 Therefore I say to the Israelites, 'None of you may eat blood, nor may any foreigner living among you eat blood.'

13 And if any Israelite or foreigner living among them hunts down a wild animal or bird that may be eaten, he must drain its blood and cover it with dirt. 14 For the life of all flesh is its blood. Therefore I have told the Israelites, 'You must not eat the blood of any living thing, because the life of all flesh is its blood; whoever eats it must be cut off.'

15 And any person, whether native or foreigner, who eats anything found dead or mauled by wild beasts must wash his clothes and bathe with water, and he will be unclean until evening; then he will be clean. 16 But if he does not wash his clothes and bathe himself, then he shall bear his iniquity."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Israel not to live like Egypt behind them or Canaan in front of them. Then comes a long list of forbidden sexual relationships, a rule against giving children to Molech, and a warning. The land vomited out the people before you, and it will do the same to you if you act like them.

UNLAWFUL SEXUAL RELATIONS // MATTHEW 5:27–30

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to the Israelites and tell them: I am Yahweh your God. 3 You must not follow the practices of the land of Egypt, where you used to live, and you must not follow the practices of the land of Canaan, into which I am bringing you. You must not walk in their customs.

4 You are to practice My judgments and keep My statutes by walking in them. I am Yahweh your God. 5 *Keep My statutes and My judgments, for the man who does these things will live by them. I am Yahweh.*

6 None of you are to approach any close relative to have sexual relations. I am Yahweh.

7 You must not expose the nakedness of your father by having sexual relations with your mother. She is your mother; you must not have sexual relations with her.

8 You must not have sexual relations with your father's wife; it would dishonor your father.

9 You must not have sexual relations with your sister, either your father's daughter or your mother's daughter, whether she was born in the same home or elsewhere.

10 You must not have sexual relations with your son's daughter or your daughter's daughter, for that would shame your family.

11 You must not have sexual relations with the daughter of your father's wife, born to your father; she is your sister.

12 You must not have sexual relations with your father's sister; she is your father's close relative.

13 You must not have sexual relations with your mother's sister, for she is your mother's close relative.

14 You must not dishonor your father's brother by approaching his wife to have sexual relations with her; she is your aunt.

15 You must not have sexual relations with your daughter-in-law. She is your son's wife; you are not to have sexual relations with her.

- **LEV 17:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 15:20 p.1767
- **LEV 17:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 15:29 p.1769
- **LEV 17:11 [FORESHADOW]** The life is in the blood → MT 26:28; MK 10:45 p.1592
- **LEV 17:11 [FORESHADOW]** It is the blood that makes atonement → ROM 3:23-24; 1JN 1:7 p.1803
- **LEV 18:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 10:28 p.1668
- **LEV 18:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:5 p.1812
- **LEV 18:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:12 p.1868
- **LEV 18:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 15:20 p.1767
- **LEV 18:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 15:29 p.1769
- **LEV 18:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1CO 5:1 p.1827

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

16 You must not have sexual relations with
your brother's wife; that would shame
your brother.
17 You must not have sexual relations with
both a woman and her daughter. You are
not to marry her son's daughter or her
daughter's daughter and have sexual rela-
tions with her. They are close relatives; it
is depraved.
18 You must not take your wife's sister as a
rival wife and have sexual relations with
her while your wife is still alive.
19 You must not approach a woman to
have sexual relations with her during her
menstrual period.
20 You must not lie carnally with your
neighbor's wife and thus defile yourself
with her.
21 You must not give any of your children
to be sacrificed to Molech, for you must
not profane the name of your God. I am
Yahweh.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SITE, DEBATED FOR HOW MANY WERE SACRIFICES

THE TOPHET OF CARTHAGE

LEVITICUS 18:21 · LEVITICUS 20:2 TO 5 · 2 KINGS 23:10 · JEREMIAH 7:31



Ancient stone markers still standing in the Tophet at Carthage, Tunisia. Photo BishkekRocks, public domain.

WHAT IT IS
A sacred burial ground at Carthage, a city in North Africa founded by Phoenicians from Tyre, the same people as the Canaanites up the coast from Israel. It holds about 20,000 clay jars with the burned bones of babies and young animals, under stone markers to the gods Baal Hammon and Tanit. Scholars call it a tophet, the Bible's own name for the place of child sacrifice outside Jerusalem, 2 Kings 23:10 and Jeremiah 7:31.

HOW OLD IT IS
It was used from about 750 BC until Rome destroyed Carthage in 146 BC, about 600 years.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
In 1921 a carved stone turned up in an illegal dig. Francois Icard and Paul Gielly bought it and started digging the site. Later teams dug there in the 1920s, the 1940s and the 1970s, when Lawrence Stager led an American dig.

WHAT ANCIENT WRITERS SAID
Greek and Roman writers said Carthage burned children to its gods. Diodorus of Sicily says that in a crisis in 310 BC the city sacrificed 200 children of noble families. Plutarch and the Christian writer Tertullian describe it too.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The site is in the Salammbo area of Tunis, Tunisia. Many markers and jars are in the Carthage National Museum and the Bardo Museum in Tunis, the Louvre in Paris and the British Museum in London.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Burning children to the gods was not a made up charge. Most scholars think the Canaanite world really did it, which is why God banned it in Leviticus 18:21 and 20:2 to 5. In 1935 Otto Eissfeldt argued that molk, a word on some Punic markers, was the name of this kind of sacrifice, and that the Bible's Molech is the same word.

THE BIG DEBATE
Were all of these children sacrificed? In 2010 Jeffrey Schwartz and his team studied the bones and argued that many babies died before or at birth and were

LEV 18:21 [DEMONIC] Do not give your children to be sacrificed to Molech
LEV 18:21 [FIELD NOTES] Child sacrifice was real in the ancient world. See the Tophet of Carthage Field Notes page, p.203.

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

buried there, not killed. Patricia Smith and her team answered in 2011 and 2013 that the ages point to sacrifice. Most scholars today think child sacrifice did happen there, but the debate goes on.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Carthage is not in the Bible, and its tophet is centuries after Moses and far from Canaan. It shows the custom among the same Phoenician people, not what happened in Israel.

22 You must not lie with a man as with a
woman; that is an abomination.
23 You must not lie carnally with any ani-
mal, thus defiling yourself with it; a
woman must not stand before an animal
to mate with it; that is a perversion.
24 Do not defile yourselves by any of these
practices, for by all these things the na-
tions I am driving out before you have de-
filed themselves. 25 Even the land has be-
come defiled, so I am punishing it for its
sin, and the land will vomit out its inhabi-
tants.
26 But you are to keep My statutes and or-
dinances, and you must not commit any of
these abominations—neither your native-
born nor the foreigner who lives among
you. 27 For the men who were in the land
before you committed all these abomina-
tions, and the land has become defiled. 28
So if you defile the land, it will vomit you
out as it spewed out the nations before
you.
29 Therefore anyone who commits any of
these abominations must be cut off from
among his people. 30 You must keep My
charge not to practice any of the abom-
inable customs that were practiced before
you, so that you do not defile yourselves
by them. I am Yahweh your God."

- **LEV 18:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1CO 6:9 p.1828
- **LEV 18:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1TI 1:10 p.1934

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Be holy, because I am holy, and here is what holy looks like on a Tuesday. Leave the edges of your field for the poor. Pay your workers the same day. Do not trip the blind. Stand up for the elderly. Use honest scales. Love the foreigner as yourself. And right in the middle: love your neighbor as yourself.

COMMANDMENTS FOR HOLINESS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 *"Speak to
the whole congregation of Israel and tell them:
Be holy because I, Yahweh your God, am holy.*
3 Each of you must respect his mother and
father, and you must keep My Sabbaths. I
am Yahweh your God.
4 Do not turn to idols or make for your-
selves molten gods. I am Yahweh your
God.
5 When you sacrifice a peace offering to
Yahweh, you shall offer it for your accep-
tance. 6 It shall be eaten on the day you
sacrifice it, or on the next day; but what
remains on the third day must be burned
up. 7 If any of it is eaten on the third day, it
is tainted and will not be accepted. 8 Who-
ever eats it will bear his iniquity, for he
has profaned what is holy to Yahweh.
That person must be cut off from his peo-
ple.

LOVE YOUR NEIGHBOR // ROMANS 13:8–10

9 When you reap the harvest of your land,
you are not to reap to the very edges of
your field or gather the gleanings of your
harvest. 10 You must not strip your vine-
yard bare or gather its fallen grapes.
Leave them for the poor and the foreigner.
I am Yahweh your God.
11 You must not steal. You must not lie or
deceive one another.
12 *You must not swear falsely by My name and
so profane the name of your God. I am Yah-
weh.*
13 You must not defraud your neighbor or
rob him.

- **LEV 19:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 1:16 p.2012
- **LEV 19:4 [DEMONIC]** Do not turn to idols or make molten gods
- **LEV 19:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:33 p.1557

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

You must not withhold until morning the wages due a hired hand.

14 You must not curse the deaf or place a stumbling block before the blind, but you shall fear your God. I am Yahweh.

15 You must not pervert justice; you must not show partiality to the poor or favoritism to the rich; you are to judge your neighbor fairly.

16 You must not go about spreading slander among your people.

You must not endanger the life of your neighbor. I am Yahweh.

17 You must not harbor hatred against your brother in your heart. Directly rebuke your neighbor, so that you will not incur guilt on account of him. 18 *Do not seek revenge or bear a grudge against any of your people, but love your neighbor as yourself. I am Yahweh.*

KEEP MY STATUTES

19 You are to keep My statutes. You shall not crossbreed two different kinds of livestock; you shall not sow your fields with two kinds of seed; and you shall not wear clothing made of two kinds of material.

20 If a man lies carnally with a slave girl promised to another man but who has not been redeemed or given her freedom, there must be due punishment. But they are not to be put to death, because she had not been freed. 21 The man, however, must bring a ram to the entrance to the Tent of Meeting as his guilt offering to Yahweh. 22 The priest shall make atonement on his behalf before Yahweh with the ram of the guilt offering for the sin he has committed, and he will be forgiven the sin he has committed.

23 When you enter the land and plant any kind of tree for food, you shall regard the fruit as forbidden. For three years it will be forbidden to you and must not be eaten. 24 In the fourth year all its fruit must be consecrated as a praise offering to Yahweh. 25 But in the fifth year you may eat its fruit; thus your harvest will be increased. I am Yahweh your God.

26 You must not eat anything with blood still in it.

You must not practice divination or sorcery.

27 You must not cut off the hair at the sides of your head or clip off the edges of your beard.

28 You must not make any cuts in your bodies for the dead or put tattoo marks on yourselves. I am Yahweh.

29 You must not defile your daughter by making her a prostitute, or the land will be prostituted and filled with depravity.

30 You must keep My Sabbaths and have reverence for My sanctuary. I am Yahweh.

31 You must not turn to mediums or spiritists; do not seek them out, or you will be defiled by them. I am Yahweh your God.

32 You are to rise in the presence of the elderly, honor the aged, and fear your God. I am Yahweh.

33 When a foreigner resides with you in your land, you must not oppress him. 34 You must treat the foreigner living among you as native-born and love him as yourself, for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt. I am Yahweh your God.

35 You must not use dishonest measures of length, weight, or volume. 36 You shall maintain honest scales and weights, an

- **LEV 19:17 [HEART]** Do not keep hatred for your brother in your heart. Talk to him instead. The next verse says love your neighbor as yourself.
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:43 p.1557
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 19:18-19 p.1578
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 22:39 p.1584
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:31 p.1630
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:33 p.1630
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 10:27 p.1668
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 13:9 p.1815
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 5:14 p.1873
- **LEV 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 2:8 p.2003
- **LEV 19:18 [NOTE]** KEEP THE LAW? Jesus called this the second greatest commandment. See Do Christians Have to Keep the Law?
- **LEV 19:26 [DEMONIC]** Do not practice divination or sorcery
- **LEV 19:28 [NOTE]** Cutting the body and marking the skin were ways people around Israel mourned the dead and honored their gods, 1 Kings 18:28, Jeremiah 16:6. Many Christians say this verse was about those pagan customs, not modern tattoos. Others say it still applies today.
- **LEV 19:31 [DEMONIC]** Mediums and familiar spirits — death penalty under the Law

GOD SPEAKING

honest dry measure, and an honest liquid measure. I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt.

37 You must keep all My statutes and all My ordinances and follow them. I am Yahweh."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DO CHRISTIANS HAVE TO KEEP THE LAW?

Three Kinds of Law?

MATTHEW 5:17 TO 19 · ACTS 15 · ROMANS 6:14 · GALATIANS 3:24 TO 25

THE PROBLEM

Leviticus says love your neighbor, 19:18, and in the very next verse says do not wear clothing woven of two kinds of material, 19:19. Christians keep the first and ignore the second. Is that fair? Jesus said He did not come to abolish the Law but to fulfill it, Matthew 5:17. Paul said we are not under law but under grace, Romans 6:14.

THE EARLY CHURCH

The first big church fight was about this. Some said Gentile believers had to be circumcised and keep the Law of Moses. The council in Jerusalem said no, and asked only that they avoid food offered to idols, blood, strangled animals and sexual immorality, Acts 15:1 to 29. Paul said the Law was a guardian until Christ came, Galatians 3:24 to 25.

THE THREE KINDS VIEW

Thomas Aquinas, about 1270, taught clearly that the Old Testament law has three kinds, building on older Christian ideas: moral laws like do not steal, ceremonial laws like sacrifices and clean food, and civil laws for running the nation, Summa Theologiae I II question 99. John Calvin taught the same in his Institutes, 4.20.14 to 16, and so does the Westminster Confession of 1646, chapter 19. The moral law still applies, the ceremonial law was fulfilled in Jesus, and the civil law ended with Israel's nation.

THE PUSHBACK

Leviticus itself never sorts its laws into three kinds. Love your neighbor and do not mix fabrics sit side by side. Critics say the split is a helpful tool but not something the Bible spells out.

Moses, Luther and the Hebrew Roots

JEREMIAH 31:31 TO 33 · ROMANS 10:4 · ROMANS 13:8 TO 10 · HEBREWS 8:13

LUTHER

In a 1525 sermon, How Christians Should Regard Moses, Martin Luther said the Law of Moses was given to the Jews, not to us. Christians keep the parts that match the law of nature written on every heart, like the Ten Commandments, and read the rest for its promises of Christ and its good examples. Lutherans stress Law and Gospel: the Law shows our sin, and the Gospel saves.

THE NEW COVENANT VIEW

Many Baptists and others say the whole Law of Moses ended as a code when Christ came, Romans 10:4 and Hebrews 8:13. Christians now live under the law of Christ, 1 Corinthians 9:21, and the old laws apply only as the New Testament repeats them. Nine of the Ten Commandments are repeated, but not the Sabbath. See Saturday or Sunday? in Acts on p.1782.

KEEP IT ALL

Rousas Rushdoony's Institutes of Biblical Law, 1973, argued that nations should still follow Moses' civil laws, a view called theonomy. Many Messianic Jews, organized in America since 1915, keep the Law as Jews who follow Jesus, not as a rule for Gentiles. The Hebrew Roots movement, growing since the 1980s and 1990s, teaches that Gentile Christians should keep the Sabbath, the feasts and the food laws too.

THE NEW COVENANT PROMISE

God promised a new covenant: I will put My law in their minds and write it on their hearts, Jeremiah 31:33. Christians of many views agree the Holy Spirit now does from the inside what the Law could only command from the outside, Romans 8:3 to 4.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Nobody is saved by keeping the Law, Galatians 2:16. And love sums it all up: Love your neighbor as yourself, straight

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

from Leviticus 19:18, is the fulfillment of the Law, Romans 13:8 to 10.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

The penalties for the worst sins in chapter 18. Giving a child to Molech means death. God will cut off anyone who turns to mediums, and a medium or spiritist must be put to death. God says He will set His face against anyone who does it and against anyone who looks the other way. Be holy, because I set you apart to be My own.

PUNISHMENTS FOR DISOBEDIENCE // LEVITICUS 26:14–39; DEUTERONOMY 28:15–68

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Tell the Israelites, 'Any Israelite or foreigner living in Israel who gives any of his children to Molech must be put to death. The people of the land are to stone him. 3 And I will set My face against that man and cut him off from his people, because by giving his offspring to Molech, he has defiled My sanctuary and profaned My holy name.

4 And if the people of the land ever hide their eyes and fail to put to death the man who gives one of his children to Molech, 5 then I will set My face against that man and his family and cut off from among their people both him and all who follow him in prostituting themselves with Molech.

6 Whoever turns to mediums or spiritists to prostitute himself with them, I will also set My face against that person and cut him off from his people.

7 *Consecrate yourselves, therefore, and be holy, because I am Yahweh your God.* 8 And you shall keep My statutes and practice them. I am Yahweh who sanctifies you.

9 *If anyone curses his father or mother, he must be put to death. He has cursed his father or mother; his blood shall be upon him.*

PUNISHMENTS FOR SEXUAL IMMORALITY // PROVERBS 5:1–23; 1 CORINTHIANS 5:1–8

10 If a man commits adultery with another man's wife—with the wife of his neighbor—both the adulterer and the adulteress must surely be put to death.

11 If a man lies with his father's wife, he has uncovered his father's nakedness. Both must surely be put to death; their blood is upon them.

12 If a man lies with his daughter-in-law, both must surely be put to death. They have acted perversely; their blood is upon them.

13 If a man lies with a man as with a woman, they have both committed an abomination. They must surely be put to death; their blood is upon them.

14 If a man marries both a woman and her mother, it is depraved. Both he and they must be burned in the fire, so that there will be no depravity among you.

15 If a man lies carnally with an animal, he must be put to death. And you are also to kill the animal.

16 If a woman approaches any animal to mate with it, you must kill both the woman and the animal. They must surely be put to death; their blood is upon them.

17 If a man marries his sister, whether the daughter of his father or of his mother, and they have sexual relations, it is a disgrace. They must be cut off in the sight of their people. He has uncovered the nakedness of his sister; he shall bear his iniquity.

18 If a man lies with a menstruating woman and has sexual relations with her, he has exposed the source of her flow, and she has uncovered the source of her blood.

- **LEV 20:2 [DEMONIC]** Anyone who gives a child to Molech must die
- **LEV 20:6 [DEMONIC]** Mediums and familiar spirits — death penalty under the Law
- **LEV 20:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 1:16 p.2012
- **LEV 20:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 15:4 p.1571
- **LEV 20:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 7:10 p.1621
- **LEV 20:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JN 8:5 p.1712
- **LEV 20:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1CO 6:9 p.1828
- **LEV 20:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1TI 1:10 p.1934
- **LEV 20:13 [TEXT]** Paul uses a rare Greek word, arsenokoitai, in 1 Corinthians 6:9 and 1 Timothy 1:10. It joins the two Greek words used in this verse in the Greek Old Testament, male and bed, so most churches read those verses as Paul applying this law. Some scholars argue Paul's word meant only abusive or exploitative sex.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Both of them must be cut off from among their people.

19 You must not have sexual relations with the sister of your mother or your father, for it is exposing one's own kin; both shall bear their iniquity.

20 If a man lies with his uncle's wife, he has uncovered the nakedness of his uncle. They will bear their sin; they shall die childless.

21 If a man marries his brother's wife, it is an act of impurity. He has uncovered the nakedness of his brother; they shall be childless.

DISTINGUISH BETWEEN CLEAN AND UNCLEAN

22 You are therefore to keep all My statutes and ordinances, so that the land where I am bringing you to live will not vomit you out. 23 You must not follow the statutes of the nations I am driving out before you. Because they did all these things, I abhorred them.

24 But I have told you that you will inherit their land, since I will give it to you as an inheritance—a land flowing with milk and honey. I am Yahweh your God, who has set you apart from the peoples.

25 You are therefore to distinguish between clean and unclean animals and birds. Do not become contaminated by any animal or bird, or by anything that crawls on the ground; I have set these apart as unclean for you. 26 You are to be holy to Me because I, Yahweh, am holy, and I have set you apart from the nations to be My own.

27 A man or a woman who is a medium or spiritist must surely be put to death. They shall be stoned; their blood is upon them.'"

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Rules for priests. They cannot shave their heads or cut themselves in mourning like the neighbors did. The high priest must marry an Israelite virgin and cannot even go near a dead body, not even his own parents. The closer you serve, the higher the bar.

HOLINESS REQUIRED OF PRIESTS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Speak to Aaron's sons, the priests, and tell them that a priest is not to defile himself for a dead person among his people, 2 except for his immediate family—his mother, father, son, daughter, or brother, 3 or his unmarried sister who is near to him, since she has no husband. 4 He is not to defile himself for those related to him by marriage, and so profane himself.

5 Priests must not make bald spots on their heads, shave off the edges of their beards, or make cuts in their bodies. 6 They must be holy to their God and not profane the name of their God. Because they present to Yahweh the food offerings, the food of their God, they must be holy.

7 A priest must not marry a woman defiled by prostitution or divorced by her husband, for the priest is holy to his God. 8 You are to regard him as holy, since he presents the food of your God. He shall be holy to you, because I Yahweh am holy—I who set you apart. 9 If a priest's daughter defiles herself by prostituting herself, she profanes her father; she must be burned in the fire.

10 The priest who is highest among his brothers, who has had the anointing oil poured on his head and has been ordained to wear the priestly garments, must not let his hair hang loose or tear his garments. 11 He must not go near any dead body; he must not defile himself, even for his father or mother. 12 He must not leave or desecrate the sanctuary of his God, for the consecration of the anointing oil of his God is on him. I am Yahweh.

LEV 20:27 [DEMONIC] Mediums and familiar spirits — death penalty under the Law

GOD SPEAKING

13 The woman he marries must be a virgin.
14 He is not to marry a widow, a divorced
woman, or one defiled by prostitution. He
is to marry a virgin from his own people, 15
so that he does not defile his offspring
among his people, for I am Yahweh who
sanctifies him."

RESTRICTIONS AGAINST THOSE WITH BLEMISHES

16 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 17 "Say to
Aaron, 'For the generations to come, none
of your descendants who has a physical
defect may approach to offer the food of
his God.
18 No man who has any defect may
approach—no man who is blind, lame,
disfigured, or deformed; 19 no man who
has a broken foot or hand, 20 or who is a
hunchback or dwarf, or who has an eye
defect, a festering rash, scabs, or a
crushed testicle.
21 No descendant of Aaron the priest who
has a defect shall approach to present the
food offerings to Yahweh. Since he has a
defect, he is not to come near to offer the
food of his God. 22 He may eat the most
holy food of his God as well as the holy
food, 23 but because he has a defect, he
must not go near the veil or approach the
altar, so as not to desecrate My sanctuaries. For I am Yahweh who sanctifies
them.'"
24 Moses told this to Aaron and his sons
and to all the Israelites.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

The holy food belongs to the priests and their households, not to visitors or hired workers. Any animal given to God must have no defect. You cannot hand God the blind, the lame or the sick ones you were going to get rid of anyway. God gets your best, not your leftovers.

RESTRICTIONS AGAINST THE UNCLEAN

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Tell Aaron
and his sons to treat with respect the sacred offerings that the Israelites have
consecrated to Me, so that they do not
profane My holy name. I am Yahweh.
3 Tell them that for the generations to
come, if any of their descendants in a
state of uncleanness approaches the sacred offerings that the Israelites consecrate to Yahweh, that person must be cut
off from My presence. I am Yahweh.
4 If a descendant of Aaron has a skin disease or a discharge, he may not eat the
sacred offerings until he is clean. Whoever touches anything defiled by a corpse
or by a man who has an emission of semen, 5 or whoever touches a crawling
creature or a person that makes him unclean, whatever the uncleanness may
be— 6 the man who touches any of these
will remain unclean until evening. He must
not eat from the sacred offerings unless
he has bathed himself with water.
7 When the sun has set, he will become
clean, and then he may eat from the sacred offerings, for they are his food. 8 He
must not eat anything found dead or torn
by wild animals, which would make him
unclean. I am Yahweh. 9 The priests must
keep My charge, lest they bear the guilt
and die because they profane it. I am Yahweh who sanctifies them.
10 No one outside a priest's family may eat
the sacred offering, nor may the guest of
a priest or his hired hand eat it. 11 But if a
priest buys a slave with his own money, or
if a slave is born in his household, that
slave may eat his food.
12 If the priest's daughter is married to a
man other than a priest, she is not to eat
of the sacred contributions. 13 But if a
priest's daughter with no children becomes widowed or divorced and returns
to her father's house, she may share her
father's food as in her youth. But no outsider may share it.
14 If anyone eats a sacred offering in error,
he must add a fifth to its value and give
the sacred offering to the priest. 15 The
priests must not profane the sacred offerings that the Israelites present to Yahweh
16 by allowing the people to eat the sacred
offerings and thus to bear the punishment
for guilt. For I am Yahweh who sanctifies
them."

GOD SPEAKING

WORTHY OFFERINGS

17 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 18 "Speak to
Aaron and his sons and all the Israelites
and tell them, 'Any man of the house of Is-
rael or any foreign resident who presents
a gift for a burnt offering to Yahweh,
whether to fulfill a vow or as a freewill of-
fering, 19 must offer an unblemished male
from the cattle, sheep, or goats in order
for it to be accepted on your behalf. 20 You
must not present anything with a defect,
because it will not be accepted on your
behalf.

21 When a man presents a peace offering
to Yahweh from the herd or flock to fulfill
a vow or as a freewill offering, it must be
without blemish or defect to be accept-
able. 22 You are not to present to Yahweh
any animal that is blind, injured, or
maimed, or anything with a running sore,
a festering rash, or a scab; you must not
put any of these on the altar as a food of-
fering to Yahweh.

23 You may present as a freewill offering
an ox or sheep that has a deformed or
stunted limb, but it is not acceptable in
fulfillment of a vow. 24 You are not to pre-
sent to Yahweh an animal whose testicles
are bruised, crushed, torn, or cut; you are
not to sacrifice them in your land. 25 Nei-
ther you nor a foreigner shall present food
to your God from any such animal. They
will not be accepted on your behalf, be-
cause they are deformed and flawed.'"

26 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 27 "When
an ox, a sheep, or a goat is born, it must
remain with its mother for seven days.
From the eighth day on, it will be accept-
able as a food offering presented to Yah-
weh. 28 But you must not slaughter an ox
or a sheep on the same day as its young.

29 When you sacrifice a thank offering to
Yahweh, offer it so that it may be accept-
able on your behalf. 30 It must be eaten
that same day. Do not leave any of it until
morning. I am Yahweh.

31 You are to keep My commandments and
practice them. I am Yahweh. 32 You must
not profane My holy name. I must be ac-
knowledged as holy among the Israelites.
I am Yahweh who sanctifies you, 33 who
brought you out of the land of Egypt to be
your God. I am Yahweh."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

God's calendar. The weekly Sabbath, then Passover, Unleavened Bread, the Firstfruits, the Feast of Weeks fifty days later, Trumpets, the Day of Atonement and the Feast of Booths, when everyone camps out in shelters for a week. Israel's year was one long reminder of what God had done.

FEASTS AND SABBATHS // EXODUS 23:14–19

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to
the Israelites and say to them, 'These are
My appointed feasts, the feasts of Yah-
weh that you are to proclaim as sacred
assemblies.

3 For six days work may be done, but the
seventh day is a Sabbath of complete
rest, a day of sacred assembly. You must
not do any work; wherever you live, it is a
Sabbath to Yahweh.

PASSOVER AND THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD // EXODUS 12:14–28; NUMBERS 28:16–25; DEUTERONOMY 16:1–8

4 These are Yahweh's appointed feasts,
the sacred assemblies you are to proclaim
at their appointed times. 5 The Passover to
Yahweh begins at twilight on the four-
teenth day of the first month. 6 On the fif-
teenth day of the same month begins the
Feast of Unleavened Bread to Yahweh.
For seven days you must eat unleavened
bread. 7 On the first day you are to hold a
sacred assembly; you are not to do any
regular work. 8 For seven days you are to
present a food offering to Yahweh. On the
seventh day there shall be a sacred as-
sembly; you must not do any regular
work.'"

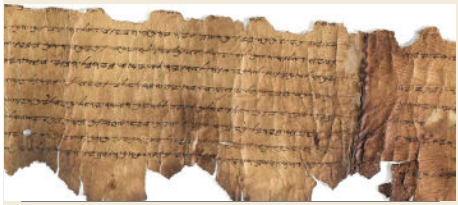
■ **LEV 22:21 [FIELD NOTES]** This verse is in one of the Dead Sea Scrolls, written in the old Hebrew letters. See the Paleo Hebrew Leviticus Scroll Field Notes page, p.211.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE PALEO HEBREW LEVITICUS SCROLL

LEVITICUS 22:21 TO 27 · 23:22 TO 29 · 24:9 TO 14 · 25:28 TO 36 · 26:17 TO 26 · 27:11 TO 19



A close up of the Paleo Hebrew Leviticus Scroll, 11QpaleoLev a. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A Dead Sea Scroll of Leviticus written in the old Hebrew alphabet, called Paleo Hebrew. It is the alphabet Israel used in the days of the kings. After the exile, the Jews slowly switched to the square letters still used today. Little dots separate the words.

HOW OLD IT IS

The scroll itself was copied long after the old alphabet went out of everyday use. Scholars who study the letters date it to about 100 BC, though some place it later, between about 30 BC and AD 68.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Bedouin of the Ta'amireh tribe found it in Cave 11 near Qumran in January 1956. David Noel Freedman and K. A. Mathews published the full scroll in 1985.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

One roll about 40 inches long and about 4 inches high, with seven columns, plus fifteen small pieces. The main columns hold parts of Leviticus 22 to 27, and the small pieces hold bits of earlier chapters, from chapter 4 to chapter 21.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Antiquities Authority in Jerusalem keeps it in its scroll lab.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Its words match the Hebrew text our Old Testament is translated from very closely, with only small spelling differences. Leviticus was being copied with great care about 1,000 years before the oldest complete Hebrew Bibles.

WHY THE OLD LETTERS?

Only a few Dead Sea Scrolls use the old alphabet, and nearly all of them are the five books of Moses or Job. Many scholars think the scribes used it to honor the books of Moses as the oldest and most sacred.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It is not the oldest copy of Leviticus. That is 4QExod Lev f from Cave 4, about 250 BC, which you can see on the Exodus title page, p.117.

THE FEAST OF FIRSTFRUITS

9 And Yahweh said to Moses, 10 "Speak to
the Israelites and say, 'When you enter the
land that I am giving you and you reap its
harvest, you are to bring to the priest a
sheaf of the firstfruits of your harvest. 11
And he shall wave the sheaf before Yah-
weh so that it may be accepted on your
behalf; the priest is to wave it on the day
after the Sabbath.

12 On the day you wave the sheaf, you
shall offer a year-old lamb without blem-
ish as a burnt offering to Yahweh, 13 along
with its grain offering of four quarts of fine
flour mixed with oil—a food offering to
Yahweh, a pleasing aroma—and its drink
offering of a quart of wine.

14 You must not eat any bread or roasted
or new grain until the very day you have
brought this offering to your God. This is
to be a permanent statute for the genera-
tions to come, wherever you live.

THE FEAST OF WEEKS // ACTS 2:1–13

15 From the day after the Sabbath, the day
you brought the sheaf of the wave offer-
ing, you are to count off seven full weeks.
16 You shall count off fifty days until the
day after the seventh Sabbath, and then
present an offering of new grain to Yah-
weh.

17 Bring two loaves of bread from your
dwellings as a wave offering, each made
from four quarts of fine flour, baked with
leaven, as the firstfruits to Yahweh.

18 Along with the bread you are to present
seven unblemished male lambs a year old,

LEV 23:10 [FORESHADOW] The firstfruits sheaf was waved on the day after the Sabbath → 1CO 15:20-23 p.1842
LEV 23:15 [FORESHADOW] Fifty days were counted to the feast of new grain → ACTS 2:1-4 · MEDIUM p.1741

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

one young bull, and two rams. They will be a burnt offering to Yahweh, together with their grain offerings and drink offerings—a food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

19 You shall also prepare one male goat as a sin offering and two male lambs a year old as a peace offering. 20 The priest is to wave the lambs as a wave offering before Yahweh, together with the bread of the firstfruits. The bread and the two lambs shall be holy to Yahweh for the priest.

21 On that same day you are to proclaim a sacred assembly, and you must not do any regular work. This is to be a permanent statute wherever you live for the generations to come.

22 When you reap the harvest of your land, do not reap all the way to the edges of your field or gather the gleanings of your harvest. Leave them for the poor and the foreign resident. I am Yahweh your God.'"

THE FEAST OF TRUMPETS // NUMBERS 29:1–6

23 Yahweh also said to Moses, 24 "Speak to the Israelites and say, 'On the first day of the seventh month you are to have a day of rest, a sacred assembly announced by trumpet blasts. 25 You must not do any regular work, but you are to present a food offering to Yahweh.'"

THE DAY OF ATONEMENT // LEVITICUS 16:1–34; NUMBERS 29:7–11

26 Again Yahweh said to Moses, 27 "The tenth day of this seventh month is the Day of Atonement. You shall hold a sacred assembly and humble yourselves, and present a food offering to Yahweh.

28 On this day you are not to do any work, for it is the Day of Atonement, when atonement is made for you before Yahweh your God. 29 If anyone does not humble himself on this day, he must be cut off from his people. 30 I will destroy from among his people anyone who does any work on this day.

31 You are not to do any work at all. This is a permanent statute for the generations to come, wherever you live. 32 It will be a Sabbath of complete rest for you, and you shall humble yourselves. From the evening of the ninth day of the month until the following evening you are to keep your Sabbath."

THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES // NEHEMIAH 8:13–18; ZECHARIAH 14:16–21

33 And Yahweh said to Moses, 34 "Speak to the Israelites and say, 'On the fifteenth day of the seventh month the Feast of Tabernacles to Yahweh begins, and it continues for seven days. 35 On the first day there shall be a sacred assembly. You must not do any regular work. 36 For seven days you are to present a food offering to Yahweh. On the eighth day you are to hold a sacred assembly and present a food offering to Yahweh. It is a solemn assembly; you must not do any regular work.

37 These are Yahweh's appointed feasts, which you are to proclaim as sacred assemblies for presenting food offerings to Yahweh—burnt offerings and grain offerings, sacrifices and drink offerings, each on its designated day. 38 These offerings are in addition to the offerings for Yahweh's Sabbaths, and in addition to your gifts, to all your vow offerings, and to all the freewill offerings you give to Yahweh.

39 On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, after you have gathered the produce of the land, you are to celebrate a feast to Yahweh for seven days. There shall be complete rest on the first day and also on the eighth day.

40 On the first day you are to gather the fruit of majestic trees, the branches of palm trees, and the boughs of leafy trees and of willows of the brook. And you are to rejoice before Yahweh your God for seven days. 41 You are to celebrate this as a feast to Yahweh for seven days each year. This is a permanent statute for the generations to come; you are to celebrate it in the seventh month.

42 You are to dwell in booths for seven days. All the native-born of Israel must

LEV 23:34 [FORESHADOW] The Feast of Tabernacles ended with a great eighth day → JN 7:37-38 · MEDIUM p.1711

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

dwell in booths, 43 so that your descendants may know that I made the Israelites dwell in booths when I brought them out of the land of Egypt. I am Yahweh your God.'"

44 So Moses announced to the Israelites the appointed feasts of Yahweh.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Pure olive oil keeps the lamp burning, and twelve loaves sit on the gold table every Sabbath. Then a man in the camp curses the Name of God. They hold him until God answers, and the answer is death. Then comes the law of eye for eye, so payback could never be bigger than the damage.

THE OIL FOR THE LAMPS // EXODUS 27:20–21

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Command the Israelites to bring you pure oil of pressed olives for the light, to keep the lamps burning continually.

3 Outside the veil of the Testimony in the Tent of Meeting, Aaron is to tend the lamps continually before Yahweh from evening until morning. This is to be a permanent statute for the generations to come. 4 He shall tend the lamps on the pure gold lampstand before Yahweh continually.

THE SHOWBREAD // EXODUS 25:23–30; EXODUS 37:10–16

5 You are also to take fine flour and bake twelve loaves, using four quarts for each loaf, 6 and set them in two rows—six per row—on the table of pure gold before Yahweh. 7 And you are to place pure frankincense near each row, so that it may serve as a memorial portion for the bread, a food offering to Yahweh.

8 Every Sabbath day the bread is to be set out before Yahweh on behalf of the Israelites as a permanent covenant. 9 It belongs to Aaron and his sons, who are to eat it in a holy place; for it is to him a most holy part of the food offerings to Yahweh—his portion forever."

PUNISHMENT FOR BLASPHEMY

10 Now the son of an Israelite mother and an Egyptian father went out among the Israelites, and a fight broke out in the camp between him and an Israelite. 11 The son of the Israelite woman blasphemed the Name with a curse. So they brought him to Moses. (His mother's name was Shelomith daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan.)

12 They placed him in custody until the will of Yahweh should be made clear to them.

13 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 14 "Take the blasphemer outside the camp, and have all who heard him lay their hands on his head; then have the whole assembly stone him.

15 And you are to tell the Israelites, 'If anyone curses his God, he shall bear the consequences of his sin. 16 Whoever blasphemes the name of Yahweh must surely be put to death; the whole assembly must surely stone him, whether he is a foreign resident or native; if he blasphemes the Name, he must be put to death.

AN EYE FOR AN EYE // MATTHEW 5:38–48

17 And if a man takes the life of anyone else, he must surely be put to death. 18 Whoever kills an animal must make restitution—life for life. 19 If anyone injures his neighbor, whatever he has done must be done to him: 20 *fracture for fracture, eye for eye, tooth for tooth. Just as he injured the other person, the same must be inflicted on him.*

21 Whoever kills an animal must make restitution, but whoever kills a man must be put to death. 22 You are to have the same standard of law for the foreign resident and the native; for I am Yahweh your God.'"

23 Then Moses spoke to the Israelites, and they took the blasphemer outside the camp and stoned him. So the Israelites did as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

- **LEV 24:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 12:4 p.1566
- **LEV 24:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 2:26 p.1613
- **LEV 24:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 6:4 p.1658
- **LEV 24:20 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:38 p.1557

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Every seventh year the land gets a Sabbath rest. Every fiftieth year is the Jubilee: land goes back to the family that first owned it, and Israelites who had to sell themselves go free. God says the land is Mine, and you are only guests. And do not charge a poor brother interest.

THE SEVENTH YEAR // EXODUS 23:10–13; DEUTERONOMY 15:1–6

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses on Mount
Sinai, 2 "Speak to the Israelites and say to
them: When you enter the land that I am
giving you, the land itself must observe a
Sabbath to Yahweh.

3 For six years you may sow your field and
prune your vineyard and gather its crops.
4 But in the seventh year there shall be a
Sabbath of complete rest for the land—a
Sabbath to Yahweh.

You are not to sow your field or prune
your vineyard. 5 You are not to reap the af-
tergrowth of your harvest or gather the
grapes of your untended vines. The land
must have a year of complete rest. 6
Whatever the land yields during the Sab-
bath year shall be food for you—for your-
self, your manservant and maidservant,
the hired hand or foreigner who stays with
you, 7 and for your livestock and the wild
animals in your land. All its growth may
serve as food.

THE YEAR OF JUBILEE

8 And you shall count off seven Sabbaths
of years—seven times seven years—so
that the seven Sabbaths of years amount
to forty-nine years. 9 Then you are to
sound the horn far and wide on the tenth
day of the seventh month, the Day of
Atonement. You shall sound it throughout
your land.

10 So you are to consecrate the fiftieth
year and proclaim liberty in the land for all
its inhabitants. It shall be your Jubilee,
when each of you is to return to his prop-
erty and to his clan.

LEV 25:10 [FORESHADOW] The Jubilee proclaimed liberty to all the people → LK 4:18-19 · MEDIUM p.1654

LEV 25:10 [NOTE] The Liberty Bell in Philadelphia has this verse on it, in the King James words: Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.

11 The fiftieth year will be a Jubilee for you;
you are not to sow the land or reap its af-
tergrowth or harvest the untended vines.
12 For it is a Jubilee; it shall be holy to you.
You may eat only the crops taken directly
from the field.

RETURN OF PROPERTY

13 In this Year of Jubilee, each of you shall
return to his own property.

14 If you make a sale to your neighbor or a
purchase from him, you must not take ad-
vantage of each other. 15 You are to buy
from your neighbor according to the num-
ber of years since the last Jubilee; he is to
sell to you according to the number of
harvest years remaining. 16 You shall in-
crease the price in proportion to a greater
number of years, or decrease it in propor-
tion to a lesser number of years; for he is
selling you a given number of harvests.

17 Do not take advantage of each other,
but fear your God; for I am Yahweh your
God.

THE BLESSING OF OBEDIENCE // DEUTERONOMY 28:1–14

18 You are to keep My statutes and care-
fully observe My judgments, so that you
may dwell securely in the land. 19 Then the
land will yield its fruit, so that you can eat
your fill and dwell in safety in the land.

20 Now you may wonder, 'What will we eat
in the seventh year if we do not sow or
gather our produce?' 21 But I will send My
blessing upon you in the sixth year, so
that the land will yield a crop sufficient for
three years. 22 While you are sowing in the
eighth year, you will be eating from the
previous harvest, until the ninth year's
harvest comes in.

THE LAW OF REDEMPTION

23 The land must not be sold permanently,
because it is Mine, and you are but for-
eigners and residents with Me. 24 Thus for
every piece of property you possess, you
must provide for the redemption of the
land.

25 If your brother becomes impoverished
and sells some of his property, his nearest
of kin may come and redeem what his

GOD SPEAKING

brother has sold. 26 Or if a man has no one
to redeem it for him, but he prospers and
acquires enough to redeem his land, 27 he
shall calculate the years since its sale, re-
pay the balance to the man to whom he
sold it, and return to his property. 28 But if
he cannot obtain enough to repay him,
what he sold will remain in possession of
the buyer until the Year of Jubilee. In the
Jubilee, however, it is to be released, so
that he may return to his property.

29 If a man sells a house in a walled city,
he retains his right of redemption until a
full year after its sale; during that year it
may be redeemed. 30 If it is not redeemed
by the end of a full year, then the house in
the walled city is permanently transferred
to its buyer and his descendants. It is not
to be released in the Jubilee. 31 But houses
in villages with no walls around them are
to be considered as open fields. They
may be redeemed, and they shall be re-
leased in the Jubilee.

32 As for the cities of the Levites, the
Levites always have the right to redeem
their houses in the cities they possess. 33
So whatever belongs to the Levites may
be redeemed—a house sold in a city they
possess—and must be released in the Ju-
bilee, because the houses in the cities of
the Levites are their possession among
the Israelites. 34 But the open pastureland
around their cities may not be sold, for
this is their permanent possession.

REDEMPTION OF THE POOR

35 Now if your countryman becomes desti-
tute and cannot support himself among
you, then you are to help him as you
would a foreigner or stranger, so that he
can continue to live among you. 36 Do not
take any interest or profit from him, but
fear your God, that your countryman may
live among you. 37 You must not lend him
your silver at interest or sell him your food
for profit. 38 I am Yahweh your God, who
brought you out of the land of Egypt to
give you the land of Canaan and to be
your God.

REDEMPTION OF BONDMEN

39 If a countryman among you becomes
destitute and sells himself to you, then
you must not force him into slave labor. 40
Let him stay with you as a hired worker or
temporary resident; he is to work for you
until the Year of Jubilee. 41 Then he and
his children are to be released, and he
may return to his clan and to the property
of his fathers.

42 Because the Israelites are My servants,
whom I brought out of the land of Egypt,
they are not to be sold as slaves. 43 You
are not to rule over them harshly, but you
shall fear your God.

44 Your menservants and maidservants
shall come from the nations around you,
from whom you may purchase them. 45
You may also purchase them from the for-
eigners residing among you or their clans
living among you who are born in your
land. These may become your property.
46 You may leave them to your sons after
you to inherit as property; you can make
them slaves for life. But as for your broth-
ers, the Israelites, no man may rule
harshly over his brother.

REDEMPTION OF SERVANTS

47 If a foreigner residing among you pros-
pers, but your countryman dwelling near
him becomes destitute and sells himself
to the foreigner or to a member of his
clan, 48 he retains the right of redemption
after he has sold himself. One of his
brothers may redeem him: 49 either his un-
cle or cousin or any close relative from his
clan may redeem him. Or if he prospers,
he may redeem himself.

50 He and his purchaser will then count the
time from the year he sold himself up to
the Year of Jubilee. The price of his sale
will be determined by the number of
years, based on the daily wages of a hired
hand. 51 If many years remain, he must pay
for his redemption in proportion to his
purchase price. 52 If only a few years re-
main until the Year of Jubilee, he is to cal-
culate and pay his redemption according
to his remaining years. 53 He shall be
treated like a man hired from year to year,

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

but a foreign owner must not rule over him harshly in your sight.

54 Even if he is not redeemed in any of these ways, he and his children shall be released in the Year of Jubilee. 55 For the Israelites are My servants. They are My servants, whom I brought out of the land of Egypt. I am Yahweh your God.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Blessings if Israel obeys: rain, harvest, peace, and God walking among them. Warnings if they turn away, worse each time, ending in exile while the land enjoys the Sabbaths they never gave it. Even then God will remember His covenant.

ADDITIONAL BLESSINGS OF OBEDIENCE

1 "You must not make idols for yourselves or set up a carved image or sacred pillar; you must not place a sculpted stone in your land to bow down to it. For I am Yahweh your God.

2 You must keep My Sabbaths and have reverence for My sanctuary. I am Yahweh.

3 If you follow My statutes and carefully keep My commandments, 4 I will give you rains in their season, and the land will yield its produce, and the trees of the field will bear their fruit. 5 Your threshing will continue until the grape harvest, and the grape harvest will continue until sowing time; you will have your fill of food to eat and will dwell securely in your land.

6 And I will give peace to the land, and you will lie down with nothing to fear. I will rid the land of dangerous animals, and no sword will pass through your land. 7 You will pursue your enemies, and they will fall by the sword before you. 8 Five of you will pursue a hundred, and a hundred of you will pursue ten thousand, and your enemies will fall by the sword before you.

9 I will turn toward you and make you fruitful and multiply you, and I will establish My covenant with you. 10 You will still be eating the old supply of grain when you need to clear it out to make room for the new.

11 And I will make My dwelling place among you, and My soul will not despise you. 12 *I will walk among you and be your God, and you will be My people.* 13 I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt so that you would no longer be slaves to the Egyptians. I broke the bars of your yoke and enabled you to walk in uprightness.

PUNISHMENTS FOR DISOBEDIENCE // LEVITICUS 20:1–9; DEUTERONOMY 28:15–68

14 If, however, you fail to obey Me and to carry out all these commandments, 15 and if you reject My statutes, despise My ordinances, and neglect to carry out all My commandments, and so break My covenant, 16 then this is what I will do to you: I will bring upon you sudden terror, wasting disease, and fever that will destroy your sight and drain your life. You will sow your seed in vain, because your enemies will eat it. 17 And I will set My face against you, so that you will be defeated by your enemies. Those who hate you will rule over you, and you will flee when no one pursues you.

18 And if after all this you will not obey Me, I will proceed to punish you sevenfold for your sins. 19 I will break down your stubborn pride and make your sky like iron and your land like bronze, 20 and your strength will be spent in vain. For your land will not yield its produce, and the trees of the land will not bear their fruit.

21 If you walk in hostility toward Me and refuse to obey Me, I will multiply your plagues seven times, according to your sins. 22 I will send wild animals against you to rob you of your children, destroy your livestock, and reduce your numbers, until your roads lie desolate.

23 And if in spite of these things you do not accept My discipline, but continue to walk in hostility toward Me, 24 then I will act with hostility toward you, and I will strike you sevenfold for your sins. 25 And I will

LEV 26:1 [DEMONIC] Do not make idols, carved images, or sacred pillars

LEV 26:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:3 p.2113

LEV 26:12 [PROPHECY] God would walk among His people and be their God → 2CO 6:16; REV 21:3 p.1853

LEV 26:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 6:16 p.1853

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

bring a sword against you to execute the vengeance of the covenant. Though you withdraw into your cities, I will send a plague among you, and you will be delivered into the hand of the enemy. 26 When I cut off your supply of bread, ten women will bake your bread in a single oven and dole out your bread by weight, so that you will eat but not be satisfied.

27 But if in spite of all this you do not obey Me, but continue to walk in hostility toward Me, 28 then I will walk in fury against you, and I, even I, will punish you sevenfold for your sins. 29 You will eat the flesh of your own sons and daughters. 30 I will destroy your high places, cut down your incense altars, and heap your lifeless bodies on the lifeless remains of your idols; and My soul will despise you.

31 I will reduce your cities to rubble and lay waste your sanctuaries, and I will refuse to smell the pleasing aroma of your sacrifices. 32 And I will lay waste the land, so that your enemies who dwell in it will be appalled. 33 But I will scatter you among the nations and will draw out a sword after you as your land becomes desolate and your cities are laid waste.

34 Then the land shall enjoy its Sabbaths all the days it lies desolate, while you are in the land of your enemies. At that time the land will rest and enjoy its Sabbaths. 35 As long as it lies desolate, the land will have the rest it did not receive during the Sabbaths when you lived in it.

36 As for those of you who survive, I will send a faintness into their hearts in the lands of their enemies, so that even the sound of a windblown leaf will put them to flight. And they will flee as one flees the sword, and fall when no one pursues them. 37 They will stumble over one another as before the sword, though no one is behind them. So you will not be able to stand against your enemies.

38 You will perish among the nations, and the land of your enemies will consume you. 39 Those of you who survive in the lands of your enemies will waste away in their iniquity and will decay in the sins of their fathers.

GOD REMEMBERS THOSE WHO REPENT

40 But if they will confess their iniquity and that of their fathers in the unfaithfulness that they practiced against Me, by which they have also walked in hostility toward Me— 41 and I acted with hostility toward them and brought them into the land of their enemies—and if their uncircumcised hearts will be humbled and they will make amends for their iniquity, 42 then I will remember My covenant with Jacob and My covenant with Isaac and My covenant with Abraham, and I will remember the land.

43 For the land will be abandoned by them, and it will enjoy its Sabbaths by lying desolate without them. And they will pay the penalty for their iniquity, because they rejected My ordinances and abhorred My statutes.

44 Yet in spite of this, when they are in the land of their enemies, I will not reject or despise them so as to destroy them and break My covenant with them; for I am Yahweh their God. 45 But for their sake I will remember the covenant with their fathers, whom I brought out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the nations, that I might be their God. I am Yahweh."

46 These are the statutes, ordinances, and laws that Yahweh established between Himself and the Israelites through Moses on Mount Sinai.

- **LEV 26:29 [PROPHECY]** In siege, people would eat their own children → 2KI 6:28-29; LAM 4:10 p.612
- **LEV 26:30 [DEMONIC]** God warns He will destroy their high places and idols
- **LEV 26:31 [PROPHECY]** Israel's cities and sanctuaries would be laid waste if they disobeyed → 2KI 25:9-10; 2CH 36:19 p.660
- **LEV 26:33 [PROPHECY]** I will scatter you among the heathen and draw out a sword after you → HISTORY: Rome burned Jerusalem and its temple in AD 70, and the Jews were killed, enslaved or scattered across the empire. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War 6.9.
- **LEV 26:34 [PROPHECY]** The land would rest and enjoy its Sabbaths while Israel was in exile → 2CH 36:21 p.759
- **LEV 26:41 [HEART]** When proud hearts are humbled, God remembers His covenant. Real circumcision is of the heart, Romans 2:29.
- **LEV 26:44 [PROPHECY]** Even in exile God would not reject Israel but remember His covenant → EZR 1:1-3; NEH 1:8-9 p.766

GOD SPEAKING

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Rules for vows. If you promised a person, an animal or a field to God, here is the price to buy it back. The book ends with the tithe: a tenth of everything is holy to Yahweh.

RULES ABOUT VALUATIONS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to
the Israelites and say to them, 'When
someone makes a special vow to Yahweh
involving the value of persons, 3 if the val-
uation concerns a male from twenty to
sixty years of age, then your valuation
shall be 1¼ pounds of silver, weighed by
the sanctuary standard. 4 Or if it is a fe-
male, then your valuation shall be 12
ounces of silver. 5 And if the person is
from five to twenty years of age, then
your valuation for the male shall be 8
ounces of silver, and for the female 4
ounces.

6 Now if the person is from one month to
five years of age, then your valuation for
the male shall be 2 ounces of silver, and
for the female 1¼ ounces of silver. 7 And if
the person is sixty years of age or older,
then your valuation shall be 6 ounces of
silver for the male and 4 ounces for the
female. 8 But if the one making the vow is
too poor to pay the valuation, he is to pre-
sent the person before the priest, who
shall set the value according to what the
one making the vow can afford.

9 If he vows an animal that may be brought
as an offering to Yahweh, any such animal
given to Yahweh shall be holy. 10 He must
not replace it or exchange it, either good
for bad or bad for good. But if he does
substitute one animal for another, both
that animal and its substitute will be holy.

11 But if the vow involves any of the un-
clean animals that may not be brought as
an offering to Yahweh, the animal must be
presented before the priest. 12 The priest
shall set its value, whether high or low; as
the priest values it, the price will be set. 13
If, however, the owner decides to redeem
the animal, he must add a fifth to its value.

14 Now if a man consecrates his house as
holy to Yahweh, then the priest shall value
it either as good or bad. The price will
stand just as the priest values it. 15 But if
he who consecrated his house redeems it,
he must add a fifth to the assessed value,
and it will belong to him.

16 If a man consecrates to Yahweh a parcel
of his land, then your valuation shall be
proportional to the seed required for
it—1¼ pounds of silver for every six
bushels of barley seed. 17 If he conse-
crates his field during the Year of Jubilee,
the price will stand according to your val-
uation.

18 But if he consecrates his field after the
Jubilee, the priest is to calculate the price
in proportion to the years left until the
next Year of Jubilee, so that your valua-
tion will be reduced. 19 And if the one who
consecrated the field decides to redeem
it, he must add a fifth to the assessed
value, and it shall belong to him.

20 If, however, he does not redeem the
field, or if he has sold it to another man, it
may no longer be redeemed. 21 When the
field is released in the Jubilee, it will be-
come holy, like a field devoted to Yahweh;
it becomes the property of the priests.

22 Now if a man consecrates to Yahweh a
field he has purchased, which is not a part
of his own property, 23 then the priest shall
calculate for him the value up to the Year
of Jubilee, and the man shall pay the as-
sessed value on that day as a sacred of-
fering to Yahweh. 24 In the Year of Jubilee
the field shall return to the one from
whom it was bought—the original owner
of the land. 25 Every valuation will be
weighed by the sanctuary standard.

26 But no one may consecrate a firstborn
of the livestock, because a firstborn be-
longs to Yahweh. Whether it is an ox or a
sheep, it is Yahweh's. 27 But if it is among
the unclean animals, then he may redeem
it according to your valuation and add a
fifth of its value. If it is not redeemed, then
it shall be sold according to your valua-
tion.

GOD SPEAKING

28 Nothing that a man sets apart to Yahweh from all he owns—whether a man, an animal, or his inherited land—can be sold or redeemed; everything so devoted is most holy to Yahweh.

29 No person set apart for destruction may be ransomed; he must surely be put to death.

INSTRUCTION ON TITHES // DEUTERONOMY 14:22–29; DEUTERONOMY 26:1–15; NEHEMIAH 13:10–14

30 Thus any tithe from the land, whether from the seed of the land or the fruit of the trees, belongs to Yahweh; it is holy to Yahweh. 31 If a man wishes to redeem part of his tithe, he must add a fifth to its value.

32 Every tenth animal from the herd or flock that passes under the shepherd's rod will be holy to Yahweh. 33 He must not inspect whether it is good or bad, and he shall not make any substitution. But if he does make a substitution, both the animal and its substitute shall become holy; they cannot be redeemed.'"

34 These are the commandments that Yahweh gave to Moses for the Israelites on Mount Sinai.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DOES THE TITHE STILL APPLY?

Ten Percent in the Bible

GENESIS 14:20 · LEVITICUS 27:30 TO 32 · NUMBERS 18:21 · DEUTERONOMY 14:22 TO 29 · MALACHI 3:8 TO 10

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

A tithe means a tenth. Abraham gave Melchizedek a tenth of everything, Genesis 14:20, and Jacob promised God a tenth, 28:22, both long before Moses. The Law says a tenth of the crops and every tenth animal is holy to Yahweh, Leviticus 27:30 to 32. The Levites had no land, so the tithe was their pay, Numbers 18:21.

HOW MANY TITHES?

Deuteronomy adds a tithe that families ate together at the festivals, 14:22 to 27, and a tithe every third year for the Levites, foreigners, orphans and widows, 14:28 to 29. Josephus and the book of Tobit describe more than one tithe, so some count the total as twenty percent or more, not ten. Others think the passages describe one tithe used in different ways.

THE MALACHI PROMISE

Will a man rob God? Yet you are robbing Me in tithes and offerings, Malachi 3:8. Bring the whole tithe into the storehouse, and see if I will not open the windows of heaven, 3:10. This is the verse most churches use to teach tithing. Others point out that Malachi was talking to Israel under the Law, and the storehouse was a room in the temple.

JESUS AND THE TITHE

Jesus told the Pharisees they tithed even their mint, dill and cumin but neglected justice, mercy and faithfulness. You should have practiced the latter, without neglecting the former, Matthew 23:23. The Pharisee in His story bragged that he tithed everything, Luke 18:12.

From the Church to the King

MATTHEW 23:23 · 1 CORINTHIANS 9:13 TO 14 · 1 CORINTHIANS 16:2 · 2 CORINTHIANS 9:6 TO 7 · HEBREWS 7:1 TO 10

THE EARLY CHURCH

No New Testament letter tells churches to tithe, though some point to Jesus' words in Matthew 23:23. The Didache, about AD 100, told Christians to give their firstfruits to the prophets. Over time churches asked for a tenth, and in AD 585 the Second Council of Macon ordered it under threat of being thrown out of the church. In 779 Charlemagne made the tithe the law of his empire. In England a tithe tax on land lasted until the Tithe Act of 1936, with its last payments ending in 1977.

VIEW 1: THE TITHE STILL APPLIES

Abraham tithed before the Law, Jesus said not to neglect it, Matthew 23:23, and Hebrews 7 points out that Abraham tithed to Melchizedek, a picture of Jesus. Malachi's promise still stands. Ten percent is the starting line, and offerings go beyond it.

VIEW 2: GRACE GIVING

The tithe was part of the Law that sup-

LEV 27:30 [NOTE] TITHING? See Does the Tithe Still Apply?

ported the Levites and the temple, and it ended with them. Christians give freely and generously: Each one should give what he has decided in his heart, not out of regret or compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver, 2 Corinthians 9:7. Some will give less than ten percent, and many should give more.

VIEW 3: A GOOD GUIDE

Many teach that the tithe is not a command for Christians but a wise place to start, since God's people gave at least that much under the old covenant. Paul does say workers in the gospel should be paid, 1 Corinthians 9:13 to 14, and to set money aside every Sunday, 16:2.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Everything already belongs to God, Psalm 24:1. Giving is worship, not a tax. And it starts in the heart: where your treasure is, there your heart will be also, Matthew 6:21.

BOOK 4 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · BOOKS OF MOSES

NUMBERS

Forty years of camping

AUTHOR	Moses, according to Jewish and Christian tradition. Numbers 33:2 says Moses wrote down the stages of the journey at Yahweh's command, and Jesus spoke of the books of Moses as his writings John 5:46 to 47. Many modern scholars think the book was put together from older sources and finished around 500 BC.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Mount Sinai to the plains of Moab across from Jericho, over almost forty years. It begins on the first day of the second month of the second year after Egypt 1:1, and the camp leaves Sinai on the twentieth day of that month 10:11.
DATE WRITTEN	Traditionally about 1440 to 1400 BC, near the end of the wilderness years. Those who date the Exodus later, in the 1200s BC, move that date down too.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, especially the new generation about to enter Canaan, so they would not repeat their parents' mistakes.
KEY VERSE	Numbers 14:18. Yahweh is slow to anger and abounding in loving devotion, forgiving iniquity and transgression.



NUMBERS IN THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS
These are pieces of 4QNum b, a scroll of Numbers from Cave 4 at Qumran, copied in the last century before Jesus, about 50 to 1 BC. It holds parts of Numbers 11 to 36, and a few passages are written in red ink. Some of its readings match the Samaritan Bible and the Greek Bible instead of the standard Hebrew text. About eleven copies of Numbers were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. The oldest is 4QLev Num a, from about 150 to 75 BC. But the oldest Bible words of all come from Numbers 6:24 to 26, on two silver scrolls from about 600 BC. See the Ketef Hinnom page, p.234.
Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

Israel has spent about a year at Mount Sinai. They have the law, the tabernacle and the priests. Now it is time to march to the Promised Land, which should take a few weeks. It takes forty years. The English name Numbers comes from the Greek Bible, which called it Arithmoi, because of the two big headcounts in chapters 1 and 26. The Hebrew name is Bemidbar, which means in the wilderness, from the first verse. That name tells you where the whole book happens.

What Was Going Wrong

COMPLAINING. Three days after leaving Sinai, the people start complaining, and they keep it up for the rest of the book 11:1, 14:2, 16:41, 21:5.
UNBELIEF. Ten of the twelve spies said the giants in Canaan were too big, and the people believed them instead of God 13:31 to 14:4.
REBELLION. Korah and 250 leaders challenged Moses and Aaron, and even Miriam and Aaron criticized Moses 12:1 to 2, 16:1 to 3.
IDOLS AT PEOR. On the edge of the Promised Land, Israel worshiped Baal of Peor and slept with Moabite women, and 24,000 died in the plague, 25:1 to 9.
MOSES SLIPPED TOO. Even Moses lost his temper and struck the rock instead of speaking to it, and God said he would not lead Israel into the land 20:10 to 12.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Numbers is the story of the longest detour in history. Israel leaves Mount Sinai with everything they need: God's law, God's presence in a cloud, and a land waiting for them. Then they complain, doubt, rebel and refuse to go in. So God lets that whole generation die in the wilderness, all except Joshua and Caleb, and raises up their kids instead. But God never leaves. The cloud keeps leading, the manna keeps falling and the water keeps flowing. Even a hired seer cannot curse the people God has blessed. Numbers shows that people can be faithless, but God stays faithful.

Numbers at a Glance

CH 1 to 10	**GETTING READY AT SINAI** The census, the camp, the Levites, and the cloud that leads the way.
CH 11 to 12	**TROUBLE ON THE ROAD** Complaining, quail and a family fight.
CH 13 to 14	**THE SPIES** Ten say no, two say yes, and a generation is turned back.
CH 15 to 19	**THE WILDERNESS YEARS** Laws, Korah's rebellion and Aaron's budding staff.
CH 20 to 21	**THE LAST LEG** Water from the rock, the bronze snake and the first victories.
CH 22 to 25	**BALAAM AND PEOR** A hired curse turns into blessings, then Israel falls into sin.
CH 26 to 36	**THE NEW GENERATION** A second census, Joshua chosen, and getting ready to cross the Jordan.

Where Jesus Shows Up

NUMBERS 9:12 Do not break any of the Passover lamb's bones. Fulfilled when the soldiers did not break Jesus' legs, John 19:36.

NUMBERS 11:7 TO 9 Manna fell from heaven. Jesus is the true bread from heaven, John 6:31 to 35.

NUMBERS 19:2 TO 9 The red heifer died outside the camp, and its ashes made people clean. Christ's blood cleanses far more, and He suffered outside the gate, Hebrews 9:13 to 14.

NUMBERS 20:11 Water from the rock. Paul says that Rock was Christ, 1 Corinthians 10:4.

NUMBERS 21:8 TO 9 Anyone who looked at the bronze snake on the pole lived. So the Son of Man must be lifted up, John 3:14 to 15.

NUMBERS 24:17 A star will come out of Jacob. Justin Martyr and Origen linked it to the wise men's star, Matthew 2:2, and Jesus is the bright Morning Star, Revelation 22:16.

NUMBERS 27:17 Not like sheep without a shepherd. Jesus saw the crowds that way and had compassion, Matthew 9:36, and called Himself the Good Shepherd, John 10:11.

GOD'S NAMES IN NUMBERS

Moses calls on the God of the spirits of all flesh, who gives every person life 16:22, 27:16. Balaam calls Him Shaddai, the Almighty, and Elyon, the Most High 24:4, 24:16.

What to Watch for in Numbers

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (2)	9:12, 24:17
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (6)	19:2-3, 20:8, 21:9, 23:21, 27:16, 35:11-12
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (12)	1:33-35, 11:18-20, 11:31-33, 14:24, 14:28-35, 14:42-43, 14:45 and 10 more
THE HEART (2)	15:39, 32:7-9
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	6:24-26, 22:5
MIRACLES (10)	11:1-3, 11:25, 12:5-15, 16:34-35, 16:46-50, 20:9-11, 21:6-8 and 2 more
DEMONIC (14)	13:22, 13:28, 13:32-33, 14:18, 21:29, 21:33-35, 22:7 and 7 more
NOTABLE (2)	4:1-20, 16:1-27, 16:36-40
GOD SPEAKING (481 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

JOSHUA HAS JESUS' NAME

In 13:16 Moses renames Hoshea as Joshua, Yehoshua, which means Yahweh saves. Jesus' Hebrew name Yeshua is a short form of it, and Greek spells both Iesous.

THE OLDEST BIBLE WORDS EVER FOUND

The priestly blessing in 6:24 to 26 is on two tiny silver scrolls from about 600 BC, the oldest known Bible words. Churches and synagogues still say it today.

A LOST BOOK

Numbers 21:14 quotes the Book of the Wars of Yahweh. Nobody has ever found a copy.

FIVE SISTERS WON THEIR CASE

Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah and Tirzah asked for their father's land, and God sided with them. Their case became law 27:1 to 11.

THE SNAKE ON A POLE

Moses' bronze snake was kept until King Hezekiah smashed it, 2 Kings 18:4. The snake on a staff on ambulances comes from Asclepius, a Greek healing god, not from Moses.

Did Anybody Listen?

The first generation did not. Except for Joshua and Caleb, they died in the wilderness, 26:64 to 65. But their children were counted, and the book ends with Israel across from Jericho, ready to go in.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Moses to count every man twenty years old or older who can fight. Tribe by tribe the totals come in, and the grand total is 603,550. The Levites are not counted, because their job is the tent, not the army. Yes, the book starts with a census. Hang in there.

THE FIRST CENSUS OF ISRAEL // NUMBERS 26:1–4

1 On the first day of the second month of
the second year after the Israelites had
come out of the land of Egypt, Yahweh
spoke to Moses in the Tent of Meeting in
the Wilderness of Sinai. He said: 2 "Take a
census of the whole congregation of Is-
rael by their clans and families, listing
every man by name, one by one.
3 You and Aaron are to number those who
are twenty years of age or older by their
divisions—everyone who can serve in
Israel's army. 4 And one man from each
tribe, the head of each family, must be
there with you.

THE LEADERS OF THE TRIBES

5 These are the names of the men who are
to assist you:
From the tribe of Reuben, Elizur son of
Shedeur;
6 from Simeon, Shelumiel son of Zurishad-
dai;
7 from Judah, Nahshon son of Amminadab
8 from Issachar, Nethanel son of Zuar;
9 from Zebulun, Eliab son of Helon;
10 from the sons of Joseph:
from Ephraim, Elishama son of Ammi-
hud,
and from Manasseh, Gamaliel son of
Pedahzur;
11 from Benjamin, Abidan son of Gideoni;
12 from Dan, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai;
13 from Asher, Pagiel son of Ocran;
14 from Gad, Eliasaph son of Deuel;
15 and from Naphtali, Ahira son of Enan."
16 These men were appointed from the
congregation; they were the leaders of
the tribes of their fathers, the heads of the
clans of Israel.

THE NUMBER OF EVERY TRIBE

17 So Moses and Aaron took these men
who had been designated by name, 18 and
on the first day of the second month they
assembled the whole congregation and
recorded their ancestry by clans and fam-
ilies, counting one by one the names of
those twenty years of age or older, 19 just
as Yahweh had commanded Moses.
So Moses numbered them in the Wilder-
ness of Sinai:
20 From the sons of Reuben, the firstborn
of Israel, according to the records of their
clans and families, counting one by one
the names of every male twenty years of
age or older who could serve in the army,
21 those registered to the tribe of Reuben
numbered 46,500.
22 From the sons of Simeon, according to
the records of their clans and families,
counting one by one the names of
every male twenty years of age or
older who could serve in the army, 23
those registered to the tribe of Simeon
numbered 59,300.
24 From the sons of Gad, according to the
records of their clans and families,
counting the names of all those twenty
years of age or older who could serve
in the army, 25 those registered to the
tribe of Gad numbered 45,650.
26 From the sons of Judah, according to
the records of their clans and families,
counting the names of all those twenty
years of age or older who could serve
in the army, 27 those registered to the
tribe of Judah numbered 74,600.
28 From the sons of Issachar, according to
the records of their clans and families,
counting the names of all those twenty
years of age or older who could serve
in the army, 29 those registered to the
tribe of Issachar numbered 54,400.
30 From the sons of Zebulun, according to
the records of their clans and families,
counting the names of all those twenty
years of age or older who could serve
in the army, 31 those registered to the
tribe of Zebulun numbered 57,400.
32 From the sons of Joseph:

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

From the sons of Ephraim, according to the records of their clans and families, counting the names of all those twenty years of age or older who could serve in the army, 33 those registered to the tribe of Ephraim numbered 40,500.

34 And from the sons of Manasseh, according to the records of their clans and families, counting the names of all those twenty years of age or older who could serve in the army, 35 those registered to the tribe of Manasseh numbered 32,200.

36 From the sons of Benjamin, according to the records of their clans and families, counting the names of all those twenty years of age or older who could serve in the army, 37 those registered to the tribe of Benjamin numbered 35,400.

38 From the sons of Dan, according to the records of their clans and families, counting the names of all those twenty years of age or older who could serve in the army, 39 those registered to the tribe of Dan numbered 62,700.

40 From the sons of Asher, according to the records of their clans and families, counting the names of all those twenty years of age or older who could serve in the army, 41 those registered to the tribe of Asher numbered 41,500.

42 From the sons of Naphtali, according to the records of their clans and families, counting the names of all those twenty years of age or older who could serve in the army, 43 those registered to the tribe of Naphtali numbered 53,400.

44 These were the men numbered by Moses and Aaron, with the assistance of the twelve leaders of Israel, each one representing his family. 45 So all the Israelites twenty years of age or older who could serve in Israel's army were counted according to their families. 46 And all those counted totaled 603,550.

NUM 1:33 [FULFILLS] Jacob said Ephraim the younger would be greater than Manasseh ← GEN 48:19 p.113

NUM 1:46 [NOTE] HOW MANY? Many read 603,550 fighting men as two million people or more. Not everyone reads the number that way. See the Big Question pages How Many Left Egypt?, p.225

THE EXEMPTION OF THE LEVITES

47 The Levites, however, were not numbered along with them by the tribe of their fathers. 48 For Yahweh had said to Moses:
49 "Do not number the tribe of Levi in the census with the other Israelites. 50 Instead, you are to appoint the Levites over the tabernacle of the Testimony, all its furnishings, and everything in it. They shall carry the tabernacle and all its articles, care for it, and camp around it.
51 Whenever the tabernacle is to move, the Levites are to take it down, and whenever it is to be pitched, the Levites are to set it up. Any outsider who goes near it must be put to death.
52 The Israelites are to camp by their divisions, each man in his own camp and under his own standard. 53 But the Levites are to camp around the tabernacle of the Testimony and watch over it, so that no wrath will fall on the congregation of Israel. So the Levites are responsible for the tabernacle of the Testimony."
54 Thus the Israelites did everything just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HOW MANY LEFT EGYPT?

Two Million, or Fewer?

NUMBERS 1:46 · 26:51 · EXODUS 12:37 · 38:26

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Exodus 12:37 says about 600,000 men on foot left Egypt, besides women and children. Numbers 1:46 counts 603,550 fighting men, and Exodus 38:26 gives the same number for the men who paid the silver tax. Forty years later the count is 601,730, Numbers 26:51. Add women, children, the elderly and the Levites, and you get two million people or more.

THE LITERAL VIEW

Many Christians and Jews read the numbers just as they are. God promised to make Abraham's family as many as the stars, and Exodus 1:7 says Israel multiplied greatly in Egypt. Feeding two million people in a desert would be impossible, but the Bible says God did it with manna and water from the rock.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Some rabbis even taught that Israelite mothers had six babies at a time.

THE CLAN VIEW

The Hebrew word for thousand, elef, can also mean a clan or a military unit. In 1906 Flinders Petrie suggested reading the numbers as units plus men. George Mendenhall in 1958 and Colin Humphreys in 1998 built on that idea. On Humphreys' reading, 603,550 becomes 598 units and 5,550 men, and the whole nation is closer to 20,000 people. Defenders of this view note that Deuteronomy 7:7 calls Israel the fewest of all peoples.

PROBLEMS WITH THE CLAN VIEW

The totals in Numbers add up as thousands, not as units, and Exodus 38:26 counts the silver paid by 603,550 men. Critics say the clan math runs into trouble in several tribes. And no Hebrew copy of Numbers reads the numbers any other way.

The Hard Questions

NUMBERS 3:43 · DEUTERONOMY 7:7 · PSALM 105:37

THE HARD VERSES

Numbers 3:43 counts 22,273 firstborn sons. With 603,550 men, that would mean each mother had dozens of sons. Experts also guess that all of Egypt had only about three or four million people at the time. Defenders of the literal view answer that God multiplied Israel in a supernatural way, and that the firstborn count may have been only those born after the Exodus.

THE LATER CENSUS VIEW

Some scholars, like William Albright, thought the lists came from a later census, maybe in King David's day, and were placed back in the wilderness story. Others say the numbers grew over time as the story was told. Nobody has found a copy of Numbers with smaller numbers.

THE SYMBOL VIEW

Some say the big numbers were never meant as a headcount. They show how great and strong God made His people. A few people have tried to find secret codes in the numbers, but none of these ideas has won over most scholars.

WHAT JOSEPHUS SAID

The Jewish historian Josephus, writing about AD 93, also said 600,000 men of fighting age left Egypt. He read the numbers as real numbers, just as most readers did for centuries.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The Hebrew copies say 603,550. The word elef can mean thousand, and sometimes clan. The big number fits God's promise to Abraham, and the small number fits Deuteronomy 7:7. Either way, the point of Numbers is the same: God led His people out, fed them and kept His promise. Christians who disagree here still trust the same Bible.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

God gives the camp a seating chart. Three tribes camp on each side of the Tent of Meeting, each under its own flag, with Judah on the east facing the sunrise. When the camp moves, they move in that order. A whole nation on the move, and nobody fights over parking.

THE ORDER OF THE CAMPS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron: 2 "The Israelites are to camp around the
Tent of Meeting at a distance from it, each
man under his standard, with the banners
of his family.

3 On the east side, toward the sunrise, the
divisions of Judah are to camp under their
standard:
The leader of the Judahites is Nahshon
son of Amminadab, 4 and his division
numbers 74,600.
5 The tribe of Issachar will camp next to it.
The leader of the Issacharites is
Nethanel son of Zuar, 6 and his division
numbers 54,400.
7 Next will be the tribe of Zebulun. The
leader of the Zebulunites is Eliab son
of Helon, 8 and his division numbers
57,400.
9 The total number of men in the divisions
of the camp of Judah is 186,400; they
shall set out first.

GOD SPEAKING

10 On the south side, the divisions of
Reuben are to camp under their standard:
The leader of the Reubenites is Elizur son
of Shedeur, 11 and his division numbers
46,500.
12 The tribe of Simeon will camp next to it.
The leader of the Simeonites is Shelu-
miel son of Zurishaddai, 13 and his divi-
sion numbers 59,300.
14 Next will be the tribe of Gad. The leader
of the Gadites is Eliasaph son of Deuel,
15 and his division numbers 45,650.
16 The total number of men in the divisions
of the camp of Reuben is 151,450; they
shall set out second.
17 In the middle of the camps, the Tent of
Meeting is to travel with the camp of the
Levites. They are to set out in the order
they encamped, each in his own place un-
der his standard.
18 On the west side, the divisions of
Ephraim are to camp under their standard:
The leader of the Ephraimites is Elishama
son of Ammihud, 19 and his division
numbers 40,500.
20 The tribe of Manasseh will be next to it.
The leader of the Manassites is
Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, 21 and his di-
vision numbers 32,200.
22 Next will be the tribe of Benjamin. The
leader of the Benjamites is Abidan son
of Gideoni, 23 and his division numbers
35,400.
24 The total number of men in the divisions
of the camp of Ephraim is 108,100; they
shall set out third.
25 On the north side, the divisions of Dan
are to camp under their standard:
The leader of the Danites is Ahiezer son
of Ammishaddai, 26 and his division
numbers 62,700.
27 The tribe of Asher will camp next to it.
The leader of the Asherites is Pagiel
son of Ocran, 28 and his division num-
bers 41,500.
29 Next will be the tribe of Naphtali. The
leader of the Naphtalites is Ahira son
of Enan, 30 and his division numbers
53,400.
31 The total number of men in the camp of
Dan is 157,600; they shall set out last, un-
der their standards."

32 These are the Israelites, numbered ac-
cording to their families. The total of those
counted in the camps, by their divisions,
was 603,550. 33 But the Levites were not
counted among the other Israelites, as
Yahweh had commanded Moses.

34 So the Israelites did everything Yahweh
commanded Moses; they camped under
their standards in this way and set out in
the same way, each man with his clan and
his family.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests are Aaron's sons, and the rest of the tribe of Levi serves them. God takes the Levites in place of every firstborn son of Israel. There are 22,273 firstborn and only 22,000 Levites, so the extra 273 are bought back with silver. God really does count everybody.

THE SONS OF AARON // LEVITICUS 10:1–7

1 This is the account of Aaron and Moses
at the time Yahweh spoke with Moses on
Mount Sinai.

2 These are the names of the sons of
Aaron: Nadab the firstborn, then Abihu,
Eleazar, and Ithamar. 3 These were Aaron's
sons, the anointed priests, who were or-
dained to serve as priests.

4 Nadab and Abihu, however, died in the
presence of Yahweh when they offered
unauthorized fire before Yahweh in the
Wilderness of Sinai. And since they had
no sons, only Eleazar and Ithamar served
as priests during the lifetime of their fa-
ther Aaron.

THE DUTIES OF THE LEVITES

5 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 6 "Bring the
tribe of Levi and present them to Aaron
the priest to assist him. 7 They are to per-
form duties for him and for the whole con-
gregation before the Tent of Meeting, at-
tending to the service of the tabernacle. 8
They shall take care of all the furnishings
of the Tent of Meeting and fulfill obliga-
tions for the Israelites by attending to the
service of the tabernacle.

GOD SPEAKING

9 Assign the Levites to Aaron and his sons;
they have been given exclusively to him
from among the Israelites. 10 So you shall
appoint Aaron and his sons to carry out
the duties of the priesthood; but any out-
sider who approaches the tabernacle
must be put to death."

11 Again Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,
12 "Behold, I have taken the Levites from
among the children of Israel in place of
every firstborn Israelite from the womb.
The Levites belong to Me, 13 for all the
firstborn are Mine. On the day I struck
down every firstborn in the land of Egypt,
I consecrated to Myself all the firstborn in
Israel, both man and beast. They are
Mine; I am Yahweh."

THE NUMBERING OF THE LEVITES

14 Then Yahweh spoke to Moses in the
Wilderness of Sinai, saying, 15 "Number
the Levites by their families and clans.
You are to count every male a month old
or more."

16 So Moses numbered them according to
the word of Yahweh, as he had been com-
manded.

17 These were the sons of Levi by name:
Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. 18 These
were the names of the sons of Gershon
by their clans: Libni and Shimei. 19 The
sons of Kohath by their clans were Am-
ram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. 20 And the
sons of Merari by their clans were Mahli
and Mushi. These were the clans of the
Levites, according to their families.

THE GERSHONITES // NUMBERS 4:21–28; 1 CHRONI-
CLES 23:7–11

21 From Gershon came the Libnite clan and
the Shimeite clan; these were the Ger-
shonite clans. 22 The number of all the
males a month old or more was 7,500.

23 The Gershonite clans were to camp on
the west, behind the tabernacle, 24 and the
leader of the families of the Gershonites
was Eliasaph son of Lael.

25 The duties of the Gershonites at the
Tent of Meeting were the tabernacle and
tent, its covering, the curtain for the en-
trance to the Tent of Meeting, 26 the cur-
tains of the courtyard, the curtain for the
entrance to the courtyard that surrounds
the tabernacle and altar, and the
cords—all the service for these items.

THE KOHATHITES // NUMBERS 4:1–20; 1 CHRONI-
CLES 23:12–20

27 From Kohath came the clans of the Am-
ramites, the Izharites, the Hebronites, and
the Uzzielites; these were the clans of the
Kohathites. 28 The number of all the males
a month old or more was 8,600. They
were responsible for the duties of the
sanctuary.

29 The clans of the Kohathites were to
camp on the south side of the tabernacle,
30 and the leader of the families of the Ko-
hathites was Elizaphan son of Uzziel.

31 Their duties were the ark, the table, the
lampstand, the altars, the articles of the
sanctuary used with them, and the
curtain—all the service for these items.

32 The chief of the leaders of the Levites
was Eleazar son of Aaron the priest; he
oversaw those responsible for the duties
of the sanctuary.

THE MERARITES // NUMBERS 4:29–33; 1 CHRONI-
CLES 23:21–23

33 From Merari came the clans of the
Mahlites and Mushites; these were the
Merarite clans. 34 The number of all the
males a month old or more was 6,200.

35 The leader of the families of the Mer-
arites was Zuriel son of Abihail; they were
to camp on the north side of the taberna-
cle.

36 The duties assigned to the sons of Mer-
ari were the tabernacle's frames, cross-
bars, posts, bases, and all its
equipment—all the service for these
items, 37 as well as the posts of the sur-
rounding courtyard with their bases, tent
pegs, and ropes.

MOSES AND AARON

38 Moses, Aaron, and Aaron's sons were to
camp to the east of the tabernacle, to-
ward the sunrise, before the Tent of Meet-
ing. They were to perform the duties of
the sanctuary as a service on behalf of
the Israelites; but any outsider who ap-

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

proached the sanctuary was to be put to death.

39 The total number of Levites that Moses and Aaron counted by their clans at Yahweh's command, including all the males a month old or more, was 22,000.

THE REDEMPTION OF THE FIRSTBORN

40 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Number every firstborn male of the Israelites a month old or more, and list their names. 41 You are to take the Levites for Me—I am Yahweh—in place of all the firstborn of Israel, and the livestock of the Levites in place of all the firstborn of the livestock of the Israelites."

42 So Moses numbered all the firstborn of the Israelites, as Yahweh had commanded him. 43 The total number of the firstborn males a month old or more, listed by name, was 22,273.

44 Again Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, 45 "Take the Levites in place of all the firstborn of Israel, and the livestock of the Levites in place of their livestock. The Levites belong to Me; I am Yahweh. 46 To redeem the 273 firstborn Israelites who outnumber the Levites, 47 you are to collect 2 ounces of silver for each one, weighed by the sanctuary standard. 48 Give the money to Aaron and his sons as the redemption price for the excess among the Israelites."

49 So Moses collected the redemption money from those in excess of the number redeemed by the Levites. 50 He collected the money from the firstborn of the Israelites: about 34 pounds of silver, weighed by the sanctuary standard. 51 And Moses gave the redemption money to Aaron and his sons in obedience to the word of Yahweh, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Job descriptions for the three Levite clans. The Kohathites carry the holiest things, but only after the priests cover them, because touching or even looking at them means death. The Gershonites carry the curtains and the Merarites carry the frames and posts. Every job mattered.

THE DUTIES OF THE KOHATHITES // NUMBERS 3:27–32; 1 CHRONICLES 23:12–20

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 2 "Take a census of the Kohathites among the Levites by their clans and families, 3 men from thirty to fifty years old—everyone who is qualified to serve in the work at the Tent of Meeting.

4 This service of the Kohathites at the Tent of Meeting regards the most holy things. 5 Whenever the camp sets out, Aaron and his sons are to go in, take down the veil of the curtain, and cover the ark of the Testimony with it. 6 They are to place over this a covering of fine leather, spread a solid blue cloth over it, and insert its poles.

7 Over the table of the Presence they are to spread a blue cloth and place the plates and cups on it, along with the bowls and pitchers for the drink offering. The regular bread offering is to remain on it. 8 And they shall spread a scarlet cloth over them, cover them with fine leather, and insert the poles.

9 They are to take a blue cloth and cover the lampstand used for light, together with its lamps, wick trimmers, and trays, as well as the jars of oil with which to supply it. 10 Then they shall wrap it and all its utensils inside a covering of fine leather and put it on the carrying frame.

11 Over the gold altar they are to spread a blue cloth, cover it with fine leather, and insert the poles. 12 They are to take all the utensils for serving in the sanctuary, place them in a blue cloth, cover them with fine leather, and put them on the carrying frame.

13 Then they shall remove the ashes from the bronze altar, spread a purple cloth

NUM 4:1 [NOTABLE] Strict rules for transporting the sacred objects; violation meant death

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

over it, 14 and place on it all the vessels used to serve there: the firepans, meat forks, shovels, and sprinkling bowls—all the equipment of the altar. They are to spread over it a covering of fine leather and insert the poles.

15 When Aaron and his sons have finished covering the holy objects and all their equipment, as soon as the camp is ready to move, the Kohathites shall come and do the carrying. But they must not touch the holy objects, or they will die. These are the transportation duties of the Kohathites regarding the Tent of Meeting.

16 Eleazar son of Aaron the priest shall oversee the oil for the light, the fragrant incense, the daily grain offering, and the anointing oil. He has oversight of the entire tabernacle and everything in it, including the holy objects and their utensils."

17 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 18 "Do not allow the Kohathite tribal clans to be cut off from among the Levites. 19 In order that they may live and not die when they come near the most holy things, do this for them: Aaron and his sons are to go in and assign each man his task and what he is to carry. 20 But the Kohathites are not to go in and look at the holy objects, even for a moment, or they will die."

THE DUTIES OF THE GERSHONITES // NUMBERS 3:21–26; 1 CHRONICLES 23:7–11

21 And Yahweh said to Moses, 22 "Take a census of the Gershonites as well, by their families and clans, 23 from thirty to fifty years old, counting everyone who comes to serve in the work at the Tent of Meeting.

24 This is the service of the Gershonite clans regarding work and transport: 25 They are to carry the curtains of the tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting with the covering of fine leather over it, the curtains for the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, 26 the curtains of the courtyard, and the curtains for the entrance at the gate of the courtyard that surrounds the tabernacle and altar, along with their ropes and all the equipment for their service. The Gershonites will do all that needs to be done with these items.

27 All the service of the Gershonites—all their transport duties and other work—is to be done at the direction of Aaron and his sons; you are to assign to them all that they are responsible to carry. 28 This is the service of the Gershonite clans at the Tent of Meeting, and their duties shall be under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest.

THE DUTIES OF THE MERARITES // NUMBERS 3:33–37; 1 CHRONICLES 23:21–23

29 As for the sons of Merari, you are to number them by their clans and families, 30 from thirty to fifty years old, counting everyone who comes to serve in the work of the Tent of Meeting.

31 This is the duty for all their service at the Tent of Meeting: to carry the frames of the tabernacle with its crossbars, posts, and bases, 32 and the posts of the surrounding courtyard with their bases, tent pegs, and ropes, including all their equipment and everything related to their use. You shall assign by name the items that they are responsible to carry.

33 This is the service of the Merarite clans according to all their work at the Tent of Meeting, under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest."

THE NUMBERING OF THE LEVITE CLANS

34 So Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of the congregation numbered the Kohathites by their clans and families, 35 everyone from thirty to fifty years old who came to serve in the work at the Tent of Meeting. 36 And those numbered by their clans totaled 2,750. 37 These were counted from the Kohathite clans, everyone who could serve at the Tent of Meeting. Moses and Aaron numbered them according to the command of Yahweh through Moses.

38 Then the Gershonites were numbered by their clans and families, 39 everyone from thirty to fifty years old who came to serve in the work at the Tent of Meeting. 40 And those numbered by their clans and families totaled 2,630. 41 These were counted from the Gershonite clans who

GOD SPEAKING

served at the Tent of Meeting, whom Moses and Aaron counted at Yahweh's command.

42 And the Merarites were numbered by their clans and families, 43 everyone from thirty to fifty years old who came to serve in the work at the Tent of Meeting. 44 The men registered by their clans numbered 3,200. 45 These were counted from the Merarite clans, whom Moses and Aaron numbered at Yahweh's command through Moses.

46 So Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of Israel numbered by their clans and families all the Levites 47 from thirty to fifty years old who came to do the work of serving and carrying the Tent of Meeting. 48 And the number of men was 8,580. 49 At Yahweh's command through Moses they were numbered, and each one was assigned his work and burden, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Anyone with a skin disease or who touched a dead body stays outside the camp. If you wrong someone, you confess, pay it back and add one fifth. Then comes a strange test for a wife whose husband suspects her, with holy water and dust from the floor. God, not the husband, decides.

CLEANSING THE CAMPS // LEVITICUS 13:1–46

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Command the Israelites to send away from the camp anyone with a skin disease, anyone who has a bodily discharge, and anyone who is defiled by a dead body. 3 You must send away male and female alike; send them outside the camp so they will not defile their camp, where I dwell among them."

4 So the Israelites did this, sending such people outside the camp. They did just as Yahweh had instructed Moses.

CONFESSION AND RESTITUTION // LUKE 19:1–10

5 And Yahweh said to Moses, 6 "Tell the Israelites that when a man or woman acts unfaithfully against Yahweh by committing any sin against another, that person is guilty 7 and must confess the sin he has committed. He must make full restitution, add a fifth to its value, and give all this to the one he has wronged.

8 But if the man has no relative to whom restitution can be made for the wrong, the restitution belongs to Yahweh and must be given to the priest along with the ram of atonement, by which the atonement is made for him.

9 Every sacred contribution the Israelites bring to the priest shall belong to him. 10 Each man's sacred gifts are his own, but whatever he gives to the priest will belong to the priest."

THE ADULTERY TEST

11 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 12 "Speak to the Israelites and tell them that if any man's wife goes astray and is unfaithful to him 13 by sleeping with another man, and it is concealed from her husband and her impurity is undetected (since there is no witness against her and she was not caught in the act), 14 and if a feeling of jealousy comes over her husband and he suspects his wife who has defiled herself—or if a feeling of jealousy comes over him and he suspects her even though she has not defiled herself— 15 then he is to bring his wife to the priest.

He must also bring for her an offering of two quarts of barley flour. He is not to pour oil over it or put frankincense on it, because it is a grain offering for jealousy, an offering of memorial as a reminder of iniquity.

16 The priest is to bring the wife forward and have her stand before Yahweh. 17 Then he is to take some holy water in a clay jar and put some of the dust from the tabernacle floor into the water.

18 After the priest has the woman stand before Yahweh, he is to let down her hair and place in her hands the grain offering of memorial, which is the grain offering for jealousy. The priest is to hold the bitter water that brings a curse. 19 And he is to put the woman under oath and say to her, 'If no other man has slept with you and you have not gone astray and become de-

GOD SPEAKING

filed while under your husband's authority, may you be immune to this bitter water that brings a curse. 20 But if you have gone astray while under your husband's authority and have defiled yourself and lain carnally with a man other than your husband'— 21 and the priest shall have the woman swear under the oath of the curse—' then may Yahweh make you an attested curse among your people by making your thigh shrivel and your belly swell. 22 May this water that brings a curse enter your stomach and cause your belly to swell and your thigh to shrivel.'

Then the woman is to say, 'Amen, Amen.'

23 And the priest shall write these curses on a scroll and wash them off into the bitter water. 24 He is to have the woman drink the bitter water that brings a curse, and it will enter her and may cause her bitter suffering. 25 The priest shall take from her hand the grain offering for jealousy, wave it before Yahweh, and bring it to the altar. 26 Then the priest is to take a handful of the grain offering as a memorial portion and burn it on the altar; after that he is to have the woman drink the water.

27 When he has made her drink the water, if she has defiled herself and been unfaithful to her husband, then the water that brings a curse will enter her and cause bitter suffering; her belly will swell, her thigh will shrivel, and she will become accursed among her people. 28 But if the woman has not defiled herself and is clean, she will be unaffected and able to conceive children.

29 This is the law of jealousy when a wife goes astray and defiles herself while under her husband's authority, 30 or when a feeling of jealousy comes over a husband and he suspects his wife. He is to have the woman stand before Yahweh, and the priest is to apply to her this entire law. 31 The husband will be free from guilt, but the woman shall bear her iniquity."

NUM 5:27 [NOTE] The test did not work by magic water. The text says God decides the outcome, so a jealous husband could not just accuse his wife and win. Bible scholars disagree on exactly what the curse in this verse describes.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Any man or woman can make a special vow and become a Nazirite. No wine, no grapes, not even raisins. No haircut. No going near a dead body. When the vow ends, they shave their head and put the hair on the fire under the peace offering. The chapter ends with the famous blessing: Yahweh bless you and keep you.

THE NAZIRITE VOW // JUDGES 13:1–25

1 And Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to the Israelites and tell them that if a man or woman makes a special vow, the vow of a Nazirite, to separate himself to Yahweh, 3 he is to abstain from wine and strong drink. He must not drink vinegar made from wine or strong drink, and he must not drink any grape juice or eat fresh grapes or raisins. 4 All the days of his separation, he is not to eat anything that comes from the grapevine, not even the seeds or skins.

5 For the entire period of his vow of separation, no razor shall touch his head. He must be holy until the time of his separation to Yahweh is complete; he must let the hair of his head grow long.

6 Throughout the days of his separation to Yahweh, he must not go near a dead body. 7 Even if his father or mother or brother or sister should die, he is not to defile himself, because the symbol of consecration to his God is upon his head. 8 Throughout the time of his separation, he is holy to Yahweh.

9 If someone suddenly dies in his presence and defiles his consecrated head of hair, he must shave his head on the day of his cleansing—the seventh day. 10 On the eighth day he must bring two turtledoves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 11 And the priest is to offer one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering to make atonement for him, because he has sinned by being in the presence of the dead body. On that day he must consecrate his head again. 12 He must rededicate his time of separation to Yahweh and bring a year-old male lamb as a guilt of-

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

fering. But the preceding days shall not be counted, because his separation was defiled.

13 Now this is the law of the Nazirite when his time of separation is complete: He must be brought to the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, 14 and he is to present an offering to Yahweh of an unblemished year-old male lamb as a burnt offering, an unblemished year-old female lamb as a sin offering, and an unblemished ram as a peace offering— 15 together with their grain offerings and drink offerings—and a basket of unleavened cakes made from fine flour mixed with oil and unleavened wafers coated with oil.

16 The priest is to present all these before Yahweh and make the sin offering and the burnt offering. 17 He shall also offer the ram as a peace offering to Yahweh, along with the basket of unleavened bread. And the priest is to offer the accompanying grain offering and drink offering.

18 Then at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, the Nazirite is to shave his consecrated head, take the hair, and put it on the fire under the peace offering. 19 And the priest is to take the boiled shoulder from the ram, one unleavened cake from the basket, and one unleavened wafer, and put them into the hands of the Nazirite who has just shaved the hair of his consecration. 20 The priest shall then wave them as a wave offering before Yahweh. This is a holy portion for the priest, in addition to the breast of the wave offering and the thigh that was presented. After that, the Nazirite may drink wine.

21 This is the law of the Nazirite who vows his offering to Yahweh for his separation, in addition to whatever else he can afford; he must fulfill whatever vow he makes, according to the law of his separation."

AARON'S BLESSING

22 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 23 "Tell Aaron and his sons: This is how you are to bless the Israelites. Say to them:

24 'May Yahweh bless you
and keep you;
25 may Yahweh cause His face to shine
upon you
and be gracious to you;
26 may Yahweh lift up His countenance toward you
and give you peace.'

27 So they shall put My name on the Israelites, and I will bless them."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

The twelve tribal leaders bring gifts for the new altar, one leader a day for twelve days. Every gift is exactly the same, and the Bible lists every one of them, twelve times. With 89 verses, it is the longest chapter in the books of Moses. Nobody got to be the favorite.

OFFERINGS OF DEDICATION

1 On the day Moses finished setting up the tabernacle, he anointed and consecrated it and all its furnishings, along with the altar and all its utensils. 2 And the leaders of Israel, the heads of their families, presented an offering. These men were the tribal leaders who had supervised the registration. 3 They brought as their offering before Yahweh six covered carts and twelve oxen—an ox from each leader and a cart from every two leaders—and presented them before the tabernacle.

4 And Yahweh said to Moses, 5 "Accept these gifts from them, that they may be used in the work of the Tent of Meeting. And give them to the Levites, to each man according to his service."

6 So Moses took the carts and oxen and gave them to the Levites. 7 He gave the Gershonites two carts and four oxen, as their service required, 8 and he gave the Merarites four carts and eight oxen, as their service required, all under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. 9 But he did not give any to the Kohathites, since they were to carry on their shoulders the holy objects for which they were responsible.

10 When the altar was anointed, the leaders approached with their offerings for its

NUM 6:24 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Ketef Hinnom Silver Scrolls
→ FIELD NOTES p.234

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIND, DEBATED FOR THE EXACT DATE

THE KETEF HINNOM SILVER SCROLLS

NUMBERS 6:24 TO 26 · DEUTERONOMY 7:9



The smaller silver scroll, KH2, unrolled. Public domain image, Wikimedia Commons.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

THE BIG DEBATE

The letters are tiny and damaged, so a few scholars argued for a later date, in the Persian or Greek period. In 2004 Barkay's team studied them with new imaging and stood by a date before 586 BC. Most scholars agree, but the debate is not over.

WHAT IT IS

Two tiny sheets of silver, rolled up and worn as charms, with the priestly blessing from Numbers 6:24 to 26 scratched into them in the old Hebrew letters. They are the oldest known words from the Bible ever found. No piece of any Bible scroll, in any language, is older.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most experts date them to about 600 BC, in the last years before Babylon destroyed Jerusalem in 586 BC. That makes them about 350 to 400 years older than the oldest Dead Sea Scrolls.

HOW BIG

The larger one, KH1, is about 1 inch wide and 4 inches long when unrolled. The smaller one, KH2, is about half an inch wide and 1½ inches long. The silver is about 99 percent pure.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In 1979 Gabriel Barkay was digging old burial caves at Ketef Hinnom, which means the shoulder of Hinnom, a hill just outside Jerusalem's Old City. It looks down on the Valley of Hinnom, where kings of Judah once burned children to Molech, Jeremiah 7:31. A 13 year old volunteer helped break into a pit under a burial bench that a fallen ceiling had sealed. Among more than 1,000 objects inside were the two tiny rolled up scrolls.

UNROLLING THEM

The silver was so thin and brittle that experts at the Israel Museum spent about three years working out how to open them without breaking them. Only then could anyone read what was inside.

WHAT THEY SAY

KH2 asks Yahweh to bless, keep, make His face shine and give peace, a shorter form of Numbers 6:24 to 26. KH1 has the blessing too, and also echoes Deuteronomy 7:9, the great God who keeps covenant and loving devotion with those who love Him and keep His commandments. Both scrolls have God's name, YHWH.

WHY IT MATTERS

Many scholars have argued that the books of Moses were mostly written down after the exile. These scrolls show that at least this blessing, word for word close to the Bible we read today, was already treasured in Jerusalem before the exile. Someone loved it enough to wear it and be buried with it, and the same blessing is still spoken in synagogues and churches today.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

These are charms with a blessing on them, not a copy of the book of Numbers, so they do not show that the whole book existed in that form.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

dedication and presented them before the altar. 11 And Yahweh said to Moses, "Each day one leader is to present his offering for the dedication of the altar."

12 On the first day Nahshon son of Amminadab from the tribe of Judah drew near with his offering. 13 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 14 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 15 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 16 one male goat for a sin offering; 17 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Nahshon son of Amminadab.

18 On the second day Nethanel son of Zuar, the leader of Issachar, drew near. 19 The offering he presented was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 20 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 21 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 22 one male goat for a sin offering; 23 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Nethanel son of Zuar.

24 On the third day Eliab son of Helon, the leader of the Zebulunites, drew near. 25 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 26 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 27 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 28 one male goat for a sin offering; 29 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Eliab son of Helon.

30 On the fourth day Elizur son of Shedeur, the leader of the Reubenites, drew near. 31 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 32 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 33 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 34 one male goat for a sin offering; 35 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Elizur son of Shedeur.

36 On the fifth day Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, the leader of the Simeonites, drew near. 37 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 38 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 39 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 40 one male goat for a sin offering; 41 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai.

42 On the sixth day Eliasaph son of Deuel, the leader of the Gadites, drew near. 43 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 44 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 45 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 46 one male goat for a sin offering; 47 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Eliasaph son of Deuel.

48 On the seventh day Elishama son of Ammihud, the leader of the Ephraimites, drew near. 49 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one sil-

ver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 50 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 51 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 52 one male goat for a sin offering; 53 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Elishama son of Ammihud.

54 On the eighth day Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, the leader of the Manassites, drew near. 55 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 56 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 57 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 58 one male goat for a sin offering; 59 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur.

60 On the ninth day Abidan son of Gideoni, the leader of the Benjamites, drew near. 61 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 62 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 63 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 64 one male goat for a sin offering; 65 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Abidan son of Gideoni.

66 On the tenth day Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, the leader of the Danites, drew near. 67 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 68 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 69 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 70 one male goat for a sin offering; 71 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai.

72 On the eleventh day Pagiel son of Ocran, the leader of the Asherites, drew near. 73 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 74 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 75 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 76 one male goat for a sin offering; 77 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Pagiel son of Ocran.

78 On the twelfth day Ahira son of Enan, the leader of the Naphtalites, drew near. 79 His offering was one silver platter weighing 3¼ pounds, and one silver bowl weighing 1¾ pounds, both weighed by the sanctuary standard and filled with fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; 80 one gold dish weighing 4 ounces, filled with incense; 81 one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb a year old for a burnt offering; 82 one male goat for a sin offering; 83 and a peace offering of two oxen, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs a year old. This was the offering of Ahira son of Enan.

84 So these were the offerings from the leaders of Israel for the dedication of the altar when it was anointed: twelve silver platters, twelve silver bowls, and twelve gold dishes.

85 Each silver platter weighed 3¼ pounds, and each silver bowl 1¾ pounds. The total weight of the silver articles was 60 pounds, weighed by the sanctuary standard.

86 The twelve gold dishes filled with incense weighed 4 ounces each, by the sanctuary standard. The total weight of the gold dishes was 3 pounds.

GOD SPEAKING

87 All the livestock for the burnt offering totaled twelve bulls, twelve rams, and twelve male lambs a year old—together with their grain offerings—and twelve male goats for the sin offering.

88 All the livestock sacrificed for the peace offering totaled twenty-four bulls, sixty rams, sixty male goats, and sixty male lambs a year old. This was the dedication offering for the altar after it was anointed.

89 When Moses entered the Tent of Meeting to speak with Yahweh, he heard the voice speaking to him from between the two cherubim above the mercy seat on the ark of the Testimony. Thus Yahweh spoke to him.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Aaron sets up the seven lamps of the gold lampstand. Then the Levites are washed, shaved and given to God as a wave offering in place of the firstborn. They start work at twenty five and retire at fifty, but they can still help out. God thought about retirement long before anyone else did.

THE LAMPSTAND // EXODUS 25:31–40; EXODUS 37:17–24

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to Aaron and tell him: 'When you set up the seven lamps, they are to light the area in front of the lampstand.'"

3 And Aaron did so; he set up the lamps facing toward the front of the lampstand, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

4 This is how the lampstand was constructed: it was made of hammered gold from its base to its blossoms, fashioned according to the pattern Yahweh had shown Moses.

CLEANSING THE LEVITES

5 Again Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, 6 "Take the Levites from among the Israelites and make them ceremonially clean. 7 This is what you must do to cleanse them: Sprinkle them with the water of purification. Have them shave their whole bodies and wash their clothes, and so purify themselves.

8 Then have them take a young bull with its grain offering of fine flour mixed with oil, and you are to take a second young bull for a sin offering. 9 Bring the Levites before the Tent of Meeting and assemble the whole congregation of Israel. 10 You are to present the Levites before Yahweh and have the Israelites lay their hands upon them. 11 Aaron is to present the Levites before Yahweh as a wave offering from the sons of Israel, so that they may perform the service of Yahweh. 12 And the Levites are to lay their hands on the heads of the bulls, and offer to Yahweh one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering, to make atonement for the Levites.

13 You are to have the Levites stand before Aaron and his sons and then present them before Yahweh as a wave offering. 14 In this way you shall separate the Levites from the rest of the Israelites, and the Levites will belong to Me. 15 After you have cleansed them and presented them as a wave offering, they may come to serve at the Tent of Meeting.

16 For the Levites have been wholly given to Me from among the sons of Israel. I have taken them for Myself in place of all who come first from the womb, the firstborn of all the sons of Israel. 17 For every firstborn male in Israel is Mine, both man and beast. I set them apart for Myself on the day I struck down all the firstborn in the land of Egypt. 18 But I have taken the Levites in place of all the firstborn among the sons of Israel. 19 And I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons from among the Israelites, to perform the service for the Israelites at the Tent of Meeting and to make atonement on their behalf, so that no plague will come against the Israelites when they approach the sanctuary."

20 So Moses, Aaron, and the whole congregation of Israel did with the Levites everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses they should do. 21 The Levites purified themselves and washed their clothes,

■ **NUM 7:89 [NOTE]** Chapter 7 is 89 verses, the longest chapter in the five books of Moses. Each tribe's gift gets its own full paragraph, even though all twelve are the same.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

and Aaron presented them as a wave offering before Yahweh. Aaron also made atonement for them to cleanse them. 22 After that, the Levites came to perform their service at the Tent of Meeting in the presence of Aaron and his sons. Thus they did with the Levites just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

RETIREMENT FOR LEVITES

23 And Yahweh said to Moses, 24 "This applies to the Levites: Men twenty-five years of age or older shall enter to perform the service in the work at the Tent of Meeting. 25 But at the age of fifty, they must retire from performing the work and no longer serve.

26 After that, they may assist their brothers in fulfilling their duties at the Tent of Meeting, but they themselves are not to do the work. This is how you are to assign responsibilities to the Levites."

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel keeps the Passover in the wilderness. Some men are unclean from a dead body and ask what to do, so God makes a second Passover a month later. Then the cloud: when it lifts, the camp moves. When it stays, they stay, whether for two days, a month or longer.

THE SECOND PASSOVER // EXODUS 12:1–13

1 In the first month of the second year after Israel had come out of the land of Egypt, Yahweh spoke to Moses in the Wilderness of Sinai: 2 "The Israelites are to observe the Passover at its appointed time. 3 You are to observe it at the appointed time, at twilight on the fourteenth day of this month, in accordance with its statutes and ordinances."

4 So Moses told the Israelites to observe the Passover, 5 and they did so in the Wilderness of Sinai, at twilight on the fourteenth day of the first month. The Israelites did everything just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

6 But there were some men who were unclean due to a dead body, so they could not observe the Passover on that day. And they came before Moses and Aaron that same day 7 and said to Moses, "We are unclean because of a dead body, but why should we be excluded from presenting Yahweh's offering with the other Israelites at the appointed time?"

8 "Wait here until I find out what Yahweh commands concerning you," Moses replied.

9 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 10 "Tell the Israelites: 'When any one of you or your descendants is unclean because of a dead body, or is away on a journey, he may still observe the Passover to Yahweh. 11 Such people are to observe it at twilight on the fourteenth day of the second month. They are to eat the lamb, together with unleavened bread and bitter herbs; 12 *they may not leave any of it until morning or break any of its bones. They must observe the Passover according to all its statutes.*

13 But if a man who is ceremonially clean and is not on a journey still fails to observe the Passover, he must be cut off from his people, because he did not present Yahweh's offering at its appointed time. That man will bear the consequences of his sin.

14 If a foreigner dwelling among you wants to observe the Passover to Yahweh, he is to do so according to the Passover statute and its ordinances. You are to apply the same statute to both the foreigner and the native of the land.'"

THE CLOUD ABOVE THE TABERNACLE // EXODUS 40:34–38

15 On the day that the tabernacle, the Tent of the Testimony, was set up, the cloud covered it and appeared like fire above the tabernacle from evening until morning. 16 It remained that way continually; the cloud would cover the tabernacle by day, and at night it would appear like fire. 17 Whenever the cloud was lifted from above the Tent, the Israelites would set out, and wherever the cloud settled, there the Israelites would camp. 18 At Yahweh's command the Israelites set out, and at

- **NUM 9:12 [PROPHECY]** Not a bone of Him would be broken → JN 19:31-36 p.1732
- **NUM 9:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 19:36 p.1733

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Yahweh's command they camped. As long as the cloud remained over the tabernacle, they remained encamped.

19 Even when the cloud lingered over the tabernacle for many days, the Israelites kept Yahweh's charge and did not set out. 20 Sometimes the cloud remained over the tabernacle for only a few days, and they would camp at Yahweh's command and set out at Yahweh's command. 21 Sometimes the cloud remained only from evening until morning, and when it lifted in the morning, they would set out. Whether it was by day or by night, when the cloud was taken up, they would set out.

22 Whether the cloud lingered for two days, a month, or longer, the Israelites camped and did not set out as long as the cloud remained over the tabernacle; but when it was lifted, they would set out. 23 They camped at Yahweh's command, and they set out at Yahweh's command; they carried out Yahweh's charge according to His command through Moses.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Moses to make two silver trumpets to call the camp and sound the alarm for war. Then, on the twentieth day of the second month, the cloud lifts and Israel finally leaves Mount Sinai. Every time the ark sets out, Moses prays, Rise up, O Yahweh. The road trip begins.

THE TWO SILVER TRUMPETS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Make two trumpets of hammered silver to be used for calling the congregation and for having the camps set out. 3 When both are sounded, the whole congregation is to assemble before you at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 4 But if only one is sounded, then the leaders, the heads of the clans of Israel, are to gather before you.

5 When you sound short blasts, the camps that lie on the east side are to set out. 6 When you sound the short blasts a second time, the camps that lie on the south side are to set out. The blasts are to signal them to set out. 7 To convene the assembly, you are to sound long blasts, not short ones. 8 The sons of Aaron, the priests, are to sound the trumpets. This shall be a permanent statute for you and the generations to come.

9 When you enter into battle in your land against an adversary who attacks you, sound short blasts on the trumpets, and you will be remembered before Yahweh your God and saved from your enemies. 10 And on your joyous occasions, your appointed feasts, and the beginning of each month, you are to blow the trumpets over your burnt offerings and peace offerings to serve as a reminder for you before your God. I am Yahweh your God."

FROM SINAI TO PARAN

11 On the twentieth day of the second month of the second year, the cloud was lifted from above the tabernacle of the Testimony, 12 and the Israelites set out from the Wilderness of Sinai, traveling from place to place until the cloud settled in the Wilderness of Paran. 13 They set out this first time according to Yahweh's command through Moses.

14 First, the divisions of the camp of Judah set out under their standard, with Nahshon son of Amminadab in command. 15 Nethanel son of Zuar was over the division of the tribe of Issachar, 16 and Eliab son of Helon was over the division of the tribe of Zebulun. 17 Then the tabernacle was taken down, and the Gershonites and the Merarites set out, transporting it.

18 Then the divisions of the camp of Reuben set out under their standard, with Elizur son of Shedeur in command. 19 Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai was over the division of the tribe of Simeon, 20 and Eliasaph son of Deuel was over the division of the tribe of Gad. 21 Then the Kohathites set out, transporting the holy objects; the tabernacle was to be set up before their arrival.

22 Next, the divisions of the camp of Ephraim set out under their standard, with Elishama son of Ammihud in command. 23 Gamaliel son of Pedahzur was over the division of the tribe of Manasseh, 24 and

MIRACLES

Abidan son of Gideoni was over the division of the tribe of Benjamin.

25 Finally, the divisions of the camp of Dan set out under their standard, serving as the rear guard for all units, with Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai in command. 26 Pagiel son of Ocran was over the division of the tribe of Asher, 27 and Ahira son of Enan was over the division of the tribe of Naphtali.

28 This was the order of march for the Israelite divisions as they set out.

29 Then Moses said to Hobab, the son of Moses' father-in-law Reuel the Midianite, "We are setting out for the place of which Yahweh said: 'I will give it to you.' Come with us, and we will treat you well, for Yahweh has promised good things to Israel."

30 "I will not go," Hobab replied. "Instead, I am going back to my own land and my own people."

31 "Please do not leave us," Moses said, "since you know where we should camp in the wilderness, and you can serve as our eyes. 32 If you come with us, we will share with you whatever good things Yahweh gives us."

33 So they set out on a three-day journey from the mountain of Yahweh, with the ark of the covenant of Yahweh traveling ahead of them for those three days to seek a resting place for them. 34 And the cloud of Yahweh was over them by day when they set out from the camp.

35 Whenever the ark set out, Moses would say,

"Rise up, O Yahweh!
May Your enemies be scattered;
may those who hate You flee before You."

36 And when it came to rest, he would say:

"Return, O Yahweh,
to the countless thousands of Israel."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Three days in, the complaining starts. Fire burns the edge of the camp. Then the people get sick of manna and cry for meat like they had in Egypt. Moses tells God he cannot carry them alone, so God puts His Spirit on seventy elders. Then God sends so many quail they get sick of it.

THE COMPLAINTS OF THE PEOPLE

1 Soon the people began to complain about their hardship in the hearing of Yahweh, and when He heard them, His anger was kindled, and fire from Yahweh blazed among them and consumed the outskirts of the camp. 2 And the people cried out to Moses, and he prayed to Yahweh, and the fire died down. 3 So that place was called Taberah, because the fire of Yahweh had burned among them.

4 Meanwhile, the rabble among them had a strong craving for other food, and again the Israelites wept and said, "Who will feed us meat? 5 We remember the fish we ate freely in Egypt, along with the cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions, and garlic. 6 But now our appetite is gone; there is nothing to see but this manna!"

7 Now the manna resembled coriander seed, and its appearance was like that of gum resin. 8 The people walked around and gathered it, ground it on a handmill or crushed it in a mortar, then boiled it in a cooking pot or shaped it into cakes. It tasted like pastry baked with fine oil. 9 When the dew fell on the camp at night, the manna would fall with it.

THE COMPLAINT OF MOSES

10 Then Moses heard the people of family after family weeping at the entrances to their tents, and the anger of Yahweh was kindled greatly, and Moses was also displeased.

11 So Moses asked Yahweh, "Why have You brought this trouble on Your servant? Why have I not found favor in Your sight, that You have laid upon me the burden of all these people? 12 Did I conceive all these people? Did I give them birth, so that You

NUM 11:1 [MIRACLE] Fire from Yahweh consumed parts of the camp at Taberah

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

should tell me, 'Carry them in your bosom, as a nurse carries an infant,' to the land that You swore to give their fathers?

13 Where can I get meat for all these people? For they keep crying out to me, 'Give us meat to eat!'

14 I cannot carry all these people by myself; it is too burdensome for me. 15 If this is how You are going to treat me, please kill me right now—if I have found favor in Your eyes—and let me not see my own wretchedness."

SEVENTY ELDERS ANOINTED

16 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Bring Me seventy of the elders of Israel known to you as leaders and officers of the people. Bring them to the Tent of Meeting and have them stand there with you.

17 And I will come down and speak with you there, and I will take some of the Spirit that is on you and put that Spirit on them. They will help you bear the burden of the people, so that you do not have to bear it by yourself.

18 And say to the people: Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, and you will eat meat, because you have cried out in the hearing of Yahweh, saying: 'Who will feed us meat? For we were better off in Egypt!' Therefore Yahweh will give you meat, and you will eat. 19 You will eat it not for one or two days, nor for five or ten or twenty days, 20 but for a whole month—until it comes out of your nostrils and makes you nauseous—because you have rejected Yahweh, who is among you, and have cried out before Him, saying, 'Why did we ever leave Egypt?'"

21 But Moses replied, "Here I am among 600,000 men on foot, yet You say, 'I will give them meat, and they will eat for a month.' 22 If all our flocks and herds were slaughtered for them, would they have enough? Or if all the fish in the sea were caught for them, would they have enough?"

23 Yahweh answered Moses, "Is Yahweh's arm too short? Now you will see whether or not My word will come to pass."

24 So Moses went out and relayed to the people the words of Yahweh, and he gathered seventy of the elders of the people and had them stand around the tent.

25 Then Yahweh came down in the cloud and spoke to him, and He took some of the Spirit that was on Moses and placed that Spirit on the seventy elders. As the Spirit rested on them, they prophesied—but they never did so again.

26 Two men, however, had remained in the camp—one named Eldad and the other Medad—and the Spirit rested on them. They were among those listed, but they had not gone out to the tent, and they prophesied in the camp. 27 A young man ran and reported to Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp."

28 Joshua son of Nun, the attendant to Moses since youth, spoke up and said, "Moses, my lord, stop them!"

29 But Moses replied, "Are you jealous on my account? I wish that all Yahweh's people were prophets and that Yahweh would place His Spirit on them!"

30 Then Moses returned to the camp, along with the elders of Israel.

THE QUAIL AND THE PLAGUE

31 Now a wind sent by Yahweh came up, drove in quail from the sea, and brought them near the camp, about three feet above the surface of the ground, for a day's journey in every direction around the camp. 32 All that day and night, and all the next day, the people stayed up gathering the quail. No one gathered less than sixty bushels, and they spread them out all around the camp.

33 But while the meat was still between their teeth, before it was chewed, the

NUM 11:18 [PROPHECY] Israel would eat meat for a whole month → NUM 11:31-33 p.241

NUM 11:25 [MIRACLE] The Spirit rests on the seventy elders and they prophesy

NUM 11:29 [NOTE] Moses wished all of God's people had the Spirit. At Pentecost Peter quoted Joel 2:28 to 29 to show God was pouring out His Spirit on all His people, Acts 2:17 to 18. Many see Moses' wish fulfilled there.

NUM 11:31 [MIRACLE] Quail driven by wind, covering camp three feet deep

NUM 11:31 [FULFILLS] Israel would eat meat for a whole month ← NUM 11:18-20 p.241

MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

anger of Yahweh burned against the people, and Yahweh struck them with a severe plague. 34 So they called that place
Kibroth-hattaavah, because there they
buried the people who had craved other
food.

35 From Kibroth-hattaavah the people
moved on to Hazeroth, where they remained for some time.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Miriam and Aaron criticize Moses for marrying a Cushite woman and ask, Doesn't God speak through us too? God calls all three to the tent and says Moses is different: He speaks to Moses face to face. Miriam turns white with a skin disease, Moses prays for her, and she waits outside the camp seven days.

THE COMPLAINT OF MIRIAM AND AARON

1 Then Miriam and Aaron criticized Moses
because of the Cushite woman he had
married, for he had taken a Cushite wife. 2
"Does Yahweh speak only through
Moses?" they said. "Does He not also
speak through us?" And Yahweh heard
this.

3 Now Moses was a very humble man,
more so than any man on the face of the
earth.

4 And suddenly Yahweh said to Moses,
Aaron, and Miriam, "You three, come out
to the Tent of Meeting." So the three went
out, 5 and Yahweh came down in a pillar of
cloud, stood at the entrance to the Tent,
and summoned Aaron and Miriam. When
both of them had stepped forward, 6 He
said, "Hear now My words:

If there is a prophet among you,
I, Yahweh, will reveal Myself to him in a vision;
I will speak to him in a dream.
7 *But this is not so with My servant Moses;*
he is faithful in all My house.
8 I speak with him face to face,
clearly and not in riddles;
he sees the form of Yahweh.

Why then were you unafraid to speak
against My servant Moses?" 9 So the
anger of Yahweh burned against them,
and He departed.

10 As the cloud lifted from above the Tent,
suddenly Miriam became leprous, white
as snow. Aaron turned toward her, saw
that she was leprous, 11 and said to Moses,
"My lord, please do not hold against us
this sin we have so foolishly committed. 12
Please do not let her be like a stillborn infant whose flesh is half consumed when
he comes out of his mother's womb."

13 So Moses cried out to Yahweh, "O God,
please heal her!"

14 But Yahweh answered Moses, "If her father had but spit in her face, would she
not have been in disgrace for seven days?
Let her be confined outside the camp for
seven days; after that she may be brought
back in."

15 So Miriam was confined outside the
camp for seven days, and the people did
not move on until she was brought in
again. 16 After that, the people set out from
Hazeroth and camped in the Wilderness
of Paran.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Twelve spies explore Canaan for forty days. They come back carrying a cluster of grapes so big it takes two men and a pole. The land is amazing, they say, but the people are giants and we looked like grasshoppers. Caleb says, We can do this. Ten spies say, No way.

THE SPIES EXPLORE CANAAN // DEUTERONOMY 1:19–25

1 And Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Send out
for yourself men to spy out the land of
Canaan, which I am giving to the Israelites. From each of their fathers' tribes
send one man who is a leader among
them."

- **NUM 12:3 [NOTE]** Who wrote that Moses was the most humble man on earth? Many think a later prophet or editor added this line. Others say Moses wrote it honestly as a fact, not a brag.
- **NUM 12:5 [MIRACLE]** Yahweh comes down in the cloud and speaks to Aaron and Miriam
- **NUM 12:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 3:2 p.1981
- **NUM 12:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 3:5 p.1981
- **NUM 12:9 [MIRACLE]** Miriam struck with leprosy for speaking against Moses; healed

DEMONIC

3 So at the command of Yahweh, Moses
sent them out from the Wilderness of
Paran. All the men were leaders of the Is-
raelites, 4 and these were their names:
From the tribe of Reuben, Shammua son
of Zaccur;
5 from the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat son of
Hori;
6 from the tribe of Judah, Caleb son of Je-
phunneh;
7 from the tribe of Issachar, Igal son of
Joseph;
8 from the tribe of Ephraim, Hoshea son of
Nun;
9 from the tribe of Benjamin, Palti son of
Raphu;
10 from the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel son of
Sodi;
11 from the tribe of Manasseh (a tribe of
Joseph), Gaddi son of Susi;
12 from the tribe of Dan, Ammiel son of
Gemalli;
13 from the tribe of Asher, Sethur son of
Michael;
14 from the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi son of
Vophsi;
15 and from the tribe of Gad, Geuel son of
Machi.
16 These were the names of the men
Moses sent to spy out the land; and
Moses gave to Hoshea son of Nun the
name Joshua.
17 When Moses sent them to spy out the
land of Canaan, he told them, "Go up
through the Negev and into the hill coun-
try. 18 See what the land is like and
whether its people are strong or weak,
few or many. 19 Is the land where they live
good or bad? Are the cities where they
dwell open camps or fortifications? 20 Is
the soil fertile or unproductive? Are there
trees in it or not? Be courageous and
bring back some of the fruit of the land."
(It was the season for the first ripe
grapes.)

21 So they went up and spied out the land
from the Wilderness of Zin as far as Re-
hob, toward Lebo-hamath. 22 They went
up through the Negev and came to He-
bron, where Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai,
the descendants of Anak, dwelled. It had
been built seven years before Zoan in
Egypt.
23 When they came to the Valley of Eshcol,
they cut down a branch with a single clus-
ter of grapes, which they carried on a
pole between two men. They also took
some pomegranates and figs. 24 Because
of the cluster of grapes the Israelites cut
there, that place was called the Valley of
Eshcol.

THE REPORTS OF THE SPIES

25 After forty days the men returned from
spying out the land, 26 and they went back
to Moses, Aaron, and the whole congre-
gation of Israel in the Wilderness of Paran
at Kadesh. They brought back a report for
the whole congregation and showed them
the fruit of the land.
27 And they gave this account to Moses:
"We went into the land to which you sent
us, and indeed, it is flowing with milk and
honey. Here is some of its fruit! 28 Never-
theless, the people living in the land are
strong, and the cities are large and forti-
fied. We even saw the descendants of
Anak there. 29 The Amalekites live in the
land of the Negev; the Hittites, Jebusites,
and Amorites live in the hill country; and
the Canaanites live by the sea and along
the Jordan."
30 Then Caleb quieted the people before
Moses and said, "We must go up and take
possession of the land, for we can cer-
tainly conquer it!"
31 But the men who had gone up with him
replied, "We cannot go up against the
people, for they are stronger than we are!"
32 So they gave the Israelites a bad report
about the land that they had spied out:

■ **NUM 13:16 [NOTE]** JOSHUA'S NEW NAME. Hoshea means salvation. Moses adds part of God's name and makes it Yehoshua, Yahweh saves. A short form of that name is Yeshua, the Hebrew name of Jesus. In Greek, Joshua and Jesus are the same word.

■ **NUM 13:22 [DEMONIC]** Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, the descendants of Anak, live at Hebron
■ **NUM 13:26 [FIELD NOTES]** Most scholars place Kadesh at an oasis in northern Sinai. See the Kadesh Barnea Field Notes page, p.244.
■ **NUM 13:28 [DEMONIC]** The spies report they saw the descendants of Anak

DEMONIC

"The land we explored devours its inhabitants, and all the people we saw there are great in stature. 33 We even saw the Nephilim there—the descendants of Anak that come from the Nephilim! We seemed like grasshoppers in our own sight, and we must have seemed the same to them!"

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, NOTHING FOUND FROM MOSES' TIME

KADESH BARNEA

NUMBERS 13:26 · 20:1 · 20:14 · 33:36 · DEUTERONOMY 2:14



The oasis at Ein el Qudeirat in northern Sinai, with the slope of the ancient mound in front. Photo Beno Rothenberg, 1967, Meitar Collection, National Library of Israel, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Kadesh was Israel's main camp in the wilderness. The spies reported there, Miriam died there, and Moses struck the rock nearby. Most scholars place it at Tell el Qudeirat, a mound next to Ein el Qudeirat, the richest spring and oasis in northern Sinai, in Egypt today.

HOW OLD IT IS

The ruins on the mound are three forts, one on top of another, from the 900s BC to 586 BC, the days of the kings of Judah. That is centuries after Moses.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Explorers first pointed to a smaller spring nearby, Ein Qedeis, in the 1840s. In 1914 Leonard Woolley and T. E. Lawrence, later famous as Lawrence of Arabia, surveyed the area and chose Ein el Qudeirat because it has much more water. Moshe Dothan dug there in 1956, and Rudolph Cohen dug ten seasons from 1976 to 1982.

WHAT WAS FOUND

An oval fort, then a fort with towers, then a big fort with double walls, burned about 586 BC. Pieces of pottery with Hebrew writing were found, including one with Egyptian number signs and Hebrew weights. Some pottery may go back to about the 1100s BC.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The site is in the Sinai, part of Egypt. Digging stopped in 1982 after Israel returned the Sinai under the peace treaty.

THE BIG DEBATE

Cohen himself asked where the remains from the time of Moses were. Nothing that old has been found. Some say Kadesh was somewhere else, like Ein Qedeis or near Petra. Some date the Exodus later, closer to the oldest pottery. Others say a camp of tents leaves almost no trace.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The best water in northern Sinai is right where Numbers puts Israel's main camp, on the edge of Canaan.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No sign or inscription names the place, and nothing has been found from Israel's forty years in the wilderness.

NUM 13:32 [DEMONIC] The spies report Nephilim in Canaan — sons of Anak

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

The people cry all night and talk about picking a new leader to take them back to Egypt. Joshua and Caleb beg them not to rebel. God is ready to wipe them out, but Moses prays for them. God forgives, but that generation will wander forty years and die in the wilderness. Then they attack anyway and lose.

ISRAEL'S REBELLION // DEUTERONOMY 1:26–33

1 Then the whole congregation lifted up their voices and cried out, and that night the people wept. 2 All the Israelites grumbled against Moses and Aaron, and the whole congregation said to them, "If only we had died in the land of Egypt, or if only we had died in this wilderness! 3 Why is

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Yahweh bringing us into this land to fall by the sword? Our wives and children will become plunder. Would it not be better for us to go back to Egypt?"

4 So they said to one another, "Let us appoint a leader and return to Egypt."

5 Then Moses and Aaron fell facedown before the whole assembly of the congregation of Israel.

6 Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh, who were among those who had spied out the land, tore their clothes 7 and said to the whole congregation of Israel, "The land we passed through and explored is an exceedingly good land. 8 If Yahweh delights in us, He will bring us into this land, a land flowing with milk and honey, and He will give it to us. 9 Only do not rebel against Yahweh, and do not be afraid of the people of the land, for they will be like bread for us. Their protection has been removed, and Yahweh is with us. Do not be afraid of them!"

10 But the whole congregation threatened to stone Joshua and Caleb.

Then the glory of Yahweh appeared to all the Israelites at the Tent of Meeting. 11 And Yahweh said to Moses, "How long will this people treat Me with contempt? How long will they refuse to believe in Me, despite all the signs I have performed among them? 12 I will strike them with a plague and destroy them—and I will make you into a nation greater and mightier than they are."

MOSES INTERCEDES FOR ISRAEL

13 But Moses said to Yahweh, "The Egyptians will hear of it, for by Your strength You brought this people from among them. 14 And they will tell it to the inhabitants of this land. They have already heard that You, O Yahweh, are in the midst of this people, that You, O Yahweh, have been seen face to face, that Your cloud stands over them, and that You go before them in a pillar of cloud by day and a pillar of fire by night.

15 If You kill this people as one man, the nations who have heard of Your fame will say, 16 'Because Yahweh was unable to bring this people into the land He swore to give them, He has slaughtered them in the wilderness.'

17 So now I pray, may the power of my Lord be magnified, just as You have declared: 18 'Yahweh is slow to anger and abounding in loving devotion, forgiving iniquity and transgression. Yet He will by no means leave the guilty unpunished; He will visit the iniquity of the fathers upon their children to the third and fourth generation.'

19 Pardon, I pray, the iniquity of this people, in keeping with the greatness of Your loving devotion, just as You have forgiven them ever since they left Egypt."

GOD'S FORGIVENESS AND JUDGMENT // DEUTERONOMY 1:34–40

20 "I have pardoned them as you requested," Yahweh replied. 21 "Yet as surely as I live and as surely as the whole earth is filled with the glory of Yahweh, 22 not one of the men who have seen My glory and the signs I performed in Egypt and in the wilderness—yet have tested Me and disobeyed Me these ten times— 23 not one will ever see the land that I swore to give their fathers. None of those who have treated Me with contempt will see it.

24 But because My servant Caleb has a different spirit and has followed Me wholeheartedly, I will bring him into the land he has entered, and his descendants will inherit it.

25 Now since the Amalekites and Canaanites are living in the valleys, turn back tomorrow and head for the wilderness along the route to the Red Sea."

26 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 27 "How long will this wicked congregation grumble against Me? I have heard the complaints that the Israelites are making against Me. 28 So tell them: As surely as I live, declares Yahweh, I will do to you exactly as I heard you say. 29 Your bodies will fall in this wilderness—all who were num-

NUM 14:18 [DEMONIC] Iniquity visited to third and fourth generation reaffirmed

NUM 14:24 [PROPHECY] Caleb would enter the land and his descendants would inherit it → JOSH 14:13-14 p.363

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

bered in the census, everyone twenty years of age or older—because you have grumbled against Me.

30 Surely none of you will enter the land in which I swore to settle you, except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun. 31 But I will bring your children, whom you said would become plunder, into the land you have rejected—and they will enjoy it. 32 As for you, however, your bodies will fall in this wilderness.

33 Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness for forty years, and they will suffer for your unfaithfulness until the last of your bodies lies in the wilderness. 34 In keeping with the forty days you spied out the land, you shall bear your guilt forty years—a year for each day—and you will experience My alienation.

35 I, Yahweh, have spoken, and I will surely do these things to this entire wicked congregation, which has conspired against Me. They will meet their end in the wilderness, and there they will die."

THE PLAGUE ON THE TEN SPIES

36 So the men Moses had sent to spy out the land, who had returned and made the whole congregation grumble against him by bringing out a bad report about the land— 37 those men who had brought out the bad report about the land—were struck down by a plague before Yahweh. 38 Of those men who had gone to spy out the land, only Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh remained alive.

39 And when Moses relayed these words to all the Israelites, the people mourned bitterly.

THE DEFEAT AT HORMAH // DEUTERONOMY 1:41–46

40 Early the next morning they got up and went up toward the ridge of the hill country. "We have indeed sinned," they said, "but we will go to the place Yahweh has promised."

41 But Moses said, "Why are you transgressing the commandment of Yahweh? This will not succeed! 42 Do not go up, lest you be struck down by your enemies, because Yahweh is not among you. 43 For there the Amalekites and Canaanites will face you, and you will fall by the sword. Because you have turned away from Yahweh, He will not be with you."

44 But they dared to go up to the ridge of the hill country, though neither Moses nor the ark of the covenant of Yahweh moved from the camp. 45 Then the Amalekites and Canaanites who lived in that part of the hill country came down, attacked them, and routed them all the way to Hormah.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Rules for offerings once they are in the land, and what to do about sins nobody meant to commit. A man gathering sticks on the Sabbath is put to death. Then God tells them to wear tassels with a blue cord on their clothes, so every time they look down, they remember His commands.

LAWS ABOUT OFFERINGS

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to the Israelites and tell them: After you enter the land that I am giving you as a home 3 and you present a food offering to Yahweh from the herd or flock to produce a pleasing aroma to Yahweh—either a burnt offering or a sacrifice, for a special vow or freewill offering or appointed feast— 4 then the one presenting his offering to Yahweh shall also present a grain offering of two quarts of fine flour mixed with a quart of olive oil. 5 With the burnt offering or sacrifice of each lamb, you are to prepare a quart of wine as a drink offering.

6 With a ram you are to prepare a grain offering of four quarts of fine flour mixed with a third of a gallon of olive oil, 7 and a third of a gallon of wine as a drink offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh.

8 When you prepare a young bull as a burnt offering or sacrifice to fulfill a vow or as a peace offering to Yahweh, 9 pre-

NUM 14:28 [PROPHECY] That generation would die in the wilderness over 40 years → NUM 26:64-65; JOSH 14:6-15 p.267

NUM 14:29 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:5 p.2068

NUM 14:42 [PROPHECY] If they went up without God they would fall by the sword → NUM 14:45 p.246

NUM 14:45 [FULFILLS] If they went up without God they would fall by the sword ← NUM 14:42-43 p.246

GOD SPEAKING

sent with the bull a grain offering of six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of olive oil. 10 Also present two quarts of wine as a drink offering. It is a food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. 11 This is to be done for each bull, ram, lamb, or goat. 12 This is how you must prepare each one, no matter how many.

13 Everyone who is native-born shall prepare these things in this way when he presents a food offering as a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. 14 And for the generations to come, if a foreigner residing with you or someone else among you wants to prepare a food offering as a pleasing aroma to Yahweh, he is to do exactly as you do. 15 The assembly is to have the same statute both for you and for the foreign resident; it is a permanent statute for the generations to come. You and the foreigner shall be the same before Yahweh. 16 The same law and the same ordinance will apply both to you and to the foreigner residing with you."

17 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 18 "Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When you enter the land to which I am bringing you 19 and you eat the food of the land, you shall lift up an offering to Yahweh. 20 From the first of your dough, you are to lift up a cake as a contribution; offer it just like an offering from the threshing floor. 21 Throughout your generations, you are to give Yahweh an offering from the first of your dough.

OFFERINGS FOR UNINTENTIONAL SINS

22 Now if you stray unintentionally and do not obey all these commandments that Yahweh has spoken to Moses— 23 all that Yahweh has commanded you through Moses from the day Yahweh gave them and continuing through the generations to come— 24 and if it was done unintentionally without the knowledge of the congregation, then the whole congregation is to prepare one young bull as a burnt offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh, with its grain offering and drink offering according to the regulation, and one male goat as a sin offering.

25 The priest is to make atonement for the whole congregation of Israel, so that they may be forgiven; for the sin was unintentional and they have brought to Yahweh a food offering and a sin offering, presented before Yahweh for their unintentional sin. 26 Then the whole congregation of Israel and the foreigners residing among them will be forgiven, since it happened to all the people unintentionally.

27 Also, if one person sins unintentionally, he is to present a year-old female goat as a sin offering. 28 And the priest shall make atonement before Yahweh on behalf of the person who erred by sinning unintentionally; and when atonement has been made for him, he will be forgiven. 29 You shall have the same law for the one who acts in error, whether he is a native-born Israelite or a foreigner residing among you.

30 But the person who sins defiantly, whether a native or foreigner, blasphemes Yahweh. That person shall be cut off from among his people. 31 He shall certainly be cut off, because he has despised the word of Yahweh and broken His commandment; his guilt remains on him."

A SABBATH-BREAKER STONED // EXODUS 31:12–17

32 While the Israelites were in the wilderness, a man was found gathering wood on the Sabbath day. 33 Those who found the man gathering wood brought him to Moses, Aaron, and the whole congregation, 34 and because it had not been declared what should be done to him, they placed him in custody.

35 And Yahweh said to Moses, "The man must surely be put to death. The whole congregation is to stone him outside the camp."

36 So the whole congregation took the man outside the camp and stoned him to death, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

THE LAW OF TASSELS

37 And Yahweh said to Moses, 38 "Speak to the Israelites and tell them that throughout the generations to come they are to make

THE HEART · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · GOD SPEAKING

for themselves tassels for the corners of their garments, with a blue cord on each tassel. 39 These will serve as tassels for you to look at, so that you may remember all the commandments of Yahweh, that you may obey them and not prostitute yourselves by following your own heart and your own eyes.

40 Then you will remember and obey all My commandments, and you will be holy to your God. 41 I am Yahweh your God who brought you out of the land of Egypt to be your God. I am Yahweh your God."

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Korah, a Levite, and Dathan and Abiram from Reuben lead 250 leaders against Moses and Aaron. Moses says, Tomorrow God will show who is His. The ground opens and swallows the rebels, and fire burns up the 250. The next day the people blame Moses, and a plague stops only when Aaron stands between the living and the dead.

KORAH'S REBELLION

1 Now Korah son of Izhar, the son of Kohath son of Levi, along with some Reubenites—Dathan and Abiram, sons of Eliab, and On son of Peleth—conducted 2 a rebellion against Moses, along with 250 men of Israel renowned as leaders of the congregation and representatives in the assembly. 3 They came together against Moses and Aaron and told them, "You have taken too much upon yourselves! For everyone in the entire congregation is holy, and Yahweh is in their midst. Why then do you exalt yourselves above the assembly of Yahweh?"

4 When Moses heard this, he fell facedown. 5 *Then he said to Korah and all his followers, "Tomorrow morning Yahweh will reveal who belongs to Him and who is holy, and He will bring that person near to Himself. The one He chooses He will bring near to Himself.*

6 You, Korah, and all your followers are to do as follows: Take censers, 7 and tomorrow you are to place fire and incense in them in the presence of Yahweh. Then the man Yahweh chooses will be the one who is holy. It is you sons of Levi who have taken too much upon yourselves!"

8 Moses also said to Korah, "Now listen, you sons of Levi! 9 Is it not enough for you that the God of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel and brought you near to Himself to perform the work at Yahweh's tabernacle, and to stand before the congregation to minister to them? 10 He has brought you near, you and all your fellow Levites, but you are seeking the priesthood as well. 11 Therefore, it is you and all your followers who have conspired against Yahweh! As for Aaron, who is he that you should grumble against him?"

12 Then Moses summoned Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, but they said, "We will not come! 13 Is it not enough that you have brought us up out of a land flowing with milk and honey to kill us in the wilderness? Must you also appoint yourself as ruler over us? 14 Moreover, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey or given us an inheritance of fields and vineyards. Will you gouge out the eyes of these men? No, we will not come!"

15 Then Moses became very angry and said to Yahweh, "Do not regard their offering. I have not taken one donkey from them or mistreated a single one of them."

16 And Moses said to Korah, "You and all your followers are to appear before Yahweh tomorrow—you and they and Aaron. 17 Each man is to take his censer, place incense in it, and present it before Yahweh—250 censers. You and Aaron are to present your censers as well."

18 So each man took his censer, put fire and incense in it, and stood with Moses and Aaron at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 19 When Korah had gathered his

NUM 15:39 [HEART] The tassels were a reminder not to chase whatever your own heart and eyes want. God knew the heart can lead you astray.

NUM 16:1 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:11 p.2068

NUM 16:1 [NOTABLE] Judgment on those who claim priestly authority without appointment; the censers were then hammered into a bronze covering for the altar as a memorial

NUM 16:5 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 2TI 2:19 p.1950

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

whole assembly against them at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, the glory of Yahweh appeared to the whole congregation.

20 And Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron,
21 "Separate yourselves from this congregation so that I may consume them in an instant."

22 But Moses and Aaron fell facedown and said, "O God, the God of the spirits of all flesh, when one man sins, will You be angry with the whole congregation?"

MOSES SEPARATES THE PEOPLE

23 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 24 "Tell the congregation to move away from the dwellings of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram."

25 So Moses got up and went to Dathan and Abiram, and the elders of Israel followed him. 26 And he warned the congregation, "Move away now from the tents of these wicked men. Do not touch anything that belongs to them, or you will be swept away because of all their sins."

27 So they moved away from the dwellings of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram. Meanwhile, Dathan and Abiram had come out and stood at the entrances to their tents with their wives and children and infants.

THE EARTH SWALLOWS KORAH

28 Then Moses said, "This is how you will know that Yahweh has sent me to do all these things, for it was not my own doing:
29 If these men die a natural death, or if they suffer the fate of all men, then Yahweh has not sent me. 30 But if Yahweh brings about something unprecedented, and the earth opens its mouth and swallows them and all that belongs to them so that they go down alive into Sheol, then you will know that these men have treated Yahweh with contempt."

31 As soon as Moses had finished saying all this, the ground beneath them split open, 32 and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them and their households—all Korah's men and all their possessions. 33 They went down alive into Sheol with all they owned. The earth closed over them, and they vanished from the assembly.

34 At their cries, all the people of Israel who were around them fled, saying, "The earth may swallow us too!" 35 And fire came forth from Yahweh and consumed the 250 men who were offering the incense.

THE CENSERS RESERVED FOR HOLY USE

36 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 37 "Tell Eleazar son of Aaron the priest to remove the censers from the flames and to scatter the coals far away, because the censers are holy. 38 As for the censers of those who sinned at the cost of their own lives, hammer them into sheets to overlay the altar, for these were presented before Yahweh, and so have become holy. They will serve as a sign to the Israelites."

39 So Eleazar the priest took the bronze censers brought by those who had been burned up, and he had them hammered out to overlay the altar, 40 just as Yahweh commanded him through Moses. This was to be a reminder to the Israelites that no outsider who is not a descendant of Aaron should approach to offer incense before Yahweh, lest he become like Korah and his followers.

MURMURING AND PLAGUE // 1 CORINTHIANS 10:1–13

41 The next day the whole congregation of Israel grumbled against Moses and Aaron, saying, "You have killed Yahweh's people!" 42 But when the congregation gathered against them, Moses and Aaron turned toward the Tent of Meeting, and suddenly the cloud covered it and the glory of Yahweh appeared.

43 Then Moses and Aaron went to the front of the Tent of Meeting, 44 and Yahweh said to Moses, 45 "Get away from this congregation so that I may consume them in an instant." And Moses and Aaron fell facedown.

- **NUM 16:28 [PROPHECY]** The earth would open and swallow Korah and his men → NUM 16:31-33 p.249
- **NUM 16:31 [MIRACLE]** Earth opened and swallowed Korah and his company; fire consumed 250
- **NUM 16:31 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:11 p.2068
- **NUM 16:31 [FULFILLS]** The earth would open and swallow Korah and his men ← NUM 16:28-30 p.249

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

46 Moses said to Aaron, "Take your censer,
place fire from the altar in it, and add in-
cense. Go quickly to the congregation and
make atonement for them, because wrath
has come out from Yahweh; the plague
has begun."

47 So Aaron took the censer as Moses had
ordered and ran into the midst of the as-
sembly. And seeing that the plague had
begun among the people, he offered the
incense and made atonement for the peo-
ple. 48 He stood between the living and the
dead, and the plague was halted. 49 But
those who died from the plague num-
bered 14,700, in addition to those who had
died on account of Korah.

50 Then Aaron returned to Moses at the
entrance to the Tent of Meeting, since the
plague had been halted.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

To end the argument about who God chose, each tribe puts a staff in the tent overnight. In the morning Aaron's staff has sprouted, budded, bloomed and grown ripe almonds. It is kept in front of the ark as a warning to rebels. Case closed.

AARON'S STAFF BUDS

1 And Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Speak to
the Israelites and take from them twelve
staffs, one from the leader of each tribe.
Write each man's name on his staff, 3 and
write Aaron's name on the staff of Levi,
because there must be one staff for the
head of each tribe. 4 Place the staffs in the
Tent of Meeting in front of the Testimony,
where I meet with you. 5 The staff belong-
ing to the man I choose will sprout, and I
will rid Myself of the constant grumbling
of the Israelites against you."

6 So Moses spoke to the Israelites, and
each of their leaders gave him a
staff—one for each of the leaders of their
tribes, twelve staffs in all. And Aaron's
staff was among them. 7 Then Moses
placed the staffs before Yahweh in the
Tent of the Testimony.

8 The next day Moses entered the Tent of
the Testimony and saw that Aaron's staff,
representing the house of Levi, had
sprouted, put forth buds, blossomed, and
produced almonds. 9 Then Moses brought
out all the staffs from Yahweh's presence
to all the Israelites. They saw them, and
each man took his own staff.

10 Yahweh said to Moses, "Put Aaron's
staff back in front of the Testimony, to be
kept as a sign for the rebellious, so that
you may put an end to their grumbling
against Me, lest they die." 11 So Moses did
as Yahweh had commanded him.

12 Then the Israelites declared to Moses,
"Look, we are perishing! We are lost; we
are all lost! 13 Anyone who comes near the
tabernacle of Yahweh will die. Are we all
going to perish?"

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests and Levites guard the tent so nobody else dies coming too close. They get no land. Instead God says, I am your inheritance, and they live on the tithes of Israel. Even the Levites have to give a tenth of what they get. Nobody gets out of tithing.

DUTIES OF PRIESTS AND LEVITES

1 So Yahweh said to Aaron, "You and your
sons and your father's house must bear
the iniquity involving the sanctuary. And
you and your sons alone must bear the in-
iquity involving your priesthood. 2 But
bring with you also your brothers from the
tribe of Levi, the tribe of your father, that
they may join you and assist you and your
sons before the Tent of the Testimony. 3
And they shall attend to your duties and to
all the duties of the Tent; but they must
not come near to the furnishings of the
sanctuary or the altar, or both they and
you will die. 4 They are to join you and at-
tend to the duties of the Tent of Meeting,

NUM 16:46 [MIRACLE] Aaron stands between the living and the dead and the plague stops
NUM 17:5 [PROPHECY] The staff of the man God chose would sprout → NUM 17:8; HEB 9:4 p.250
NUM 17:8 [MIRACLE] Aaron's rod budded, blossomed, yielded almonds overnight
NUM 17:8 [FULFILLS] The staff of the man God chose would sprout ← NUM 17:5 p.250

GOD SPEAKING

doing all the work at the Tent; but no outsider may come near you.

5 And you shall attend to the duties of the sanctuary and of the altar, so that wrath may not fall on the Israelites again. 6 Behold, I Myself have selected your fellow Levites from the Israelites as a gift to you, dedicated to Yahweh to perform the service for the Tent of Meeting. 7 But only you and your sons shall attend to your priesthood for everything concerning the altar and what is inside the veil, and you are to perform that service. I am giving you the work of the priesthood as a gift, but any outsider who comes near the sanctuary must be put to death."

OFFERINGS FOR PRIESTS AND LEVITES

8 Then Yahweh said to Aaron, "Behold, I have put you in charge of My offerings. As for all the sacred offerings of the Israelites, I have given them to you and your sons as a portion and a permanent statute. 9 A portion of the most holy offerings reserved from the fire will be yours. From all the offerings they render to Me as most holy offerings, whether grain offerings or sin offerings or guilt offerings, that part belongs to you and your sons. 10 You are to eat it as a most holy offering, and every male may eat it. You shall regard it as holy.

11 And this is yours as well: the offering of their gifts, along with all the wave offerings of the Israelites. I have given this to you and your sons and daughters as a permanent statute. Every ceremonially clean person in your household may eat it. 12 I give you all the freshest olive oil and all the finest new wine and grain that the Israelites give to Yahweh as their firstfruits. 13 The firstfruits of everything in their land that they bring to Yahweh will belong to you. Every ceremonially clean person in your household may eat them.

14 Every devoted thing in Israel belongs to you. 15 The firstborn of every womb, whether man or beast, that is offered to Yahweh belongs to you. But you must surely redeem every firstborn son and every firstborn male of unclean animals. 16 You are to pay the redemption price for a month-old male according to your valuation: 2 ounces of silver, weighed by the sanctuary standard.

17 But you must not redeem the firstborn of an ox, a sheep, or a goat; they are holy. You are to splatter their blood on the altar and burn their fat as a food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yahweh. 18 And their meat belongs to you, just as the breast and right thigh of the wave offering belong to you.

19 All the holy offerings that the Israelites present to Yahweh I give to you and to your sons and daughters as a permanent statute. It is a permanent covenant of salt before Yahweh for you and your offspring."

20 Then Yahweh said to Aaron, "You will have no inheritance in their land, nor will you have any portion among them. I am your portion and your inheritance among the Israelites.

21 Behold, I have given to the Levites all the tithes in Israel as an inheritance in return for the work they do, the service of the Tent of Meeting. 22 No longer may the Israelites come near to the Tent of Meeting, or they will incur guilt and die.

23 The Levites are to perform the work of the Tent of Meeting, and they must bear their iniquity. This is a permanent statute for the generations to come. The Levites will not receive an inheritance among the Israelites. 24 For I have given to the Levites as their inheritance the tithe that the Israelites present to Yahweh as a contribution. That is why I told them that they would not receive an inheritance among the Israelites."

25 And Yahweh instructed Moses, 26 "Speak to the Levites and tell them: 'When you receive from the Israelites the tithe that I have given you as your inheritance, you must present part of it as an offering to Yahweh—a tithe of the tithe. 27 Your offering will be reckoned to you as grain from the threshing floor or juice from the winepress. 28 So you are to present an of-

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

fering to Yahweh from all the tithes you receive from the Israelites, and from these you are to give Yahweh's offering to Aaron the priest. 29 You must present the offering due Yahweh from all the best of every gift, the holiest part of it.'

30 Therefore say to the Levites, 'When you have presented the best part, it will be reckoned to you as the produce of the threshing floor or winepress. 31 And you and your households may eat the rest of it anywhere; it is the compensation for your work at the Tent of Meeting. 32 Once you have presented the best part of it, you will not incur guilt because of it. But you must not defile the sacred offerings of the Israelites, or else you will die.'"

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

The red heifer: a perfect red cow with no defect, never yoked, is burned outside the camp with cedar, hyssop and red yarn. Its ashes are mixed with water to make clean anyone who touched a dead body. Even the priest who does it becomes unclean. It is one of the strangest laws in the Bible.

THE RED HEIFER

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 2 "This is the statute of the law that Yahweh has commanded: Instruct the Israelites to bring you an unblemished red heifer that has no defect and has never been placed under a yoke. 3 Give it to Eleazar the priest, and he will have it brought outside the camp and slaughtered in his presence.

4 Eleazar the priest is to take some of its blood on his finger and sprinkle it seven times toward the front of the Tent of Meeting. 5 Then the heifer must be burned in his sight. Its hide, its flesh, and its blood are to be burned, along with its dung. 6 The priest is to take cedar wood, hyssop, and scarlet wool and throw them onto the burning heifer.

7 Then the priest must wash his clothes and bathe his body in water; after that he may enter the camp, but he will be ceremonially unclean until evening. 8 The one who burned the heifer must also wash his clothes and bathe his body in water, and he too will be ceremonially unclean until evening.

9 Then a man who is ceremonially clean is to gather up the ashes of the heifer and store them in a ceremonially clean place outside the camp. They must be kept by the congregation of Israel for preparing the water of purification; this is for purification from sin. 10 The man who has gathered up the ashes of the heifer must also wash his clothes, and he will be ceremonially unclean until evening. This is a permanent statute for the Israelites and for the foreigner residing among them.

PURIFICATION OF THE UNCLEAN

11 Whoever touches any dead body will be unclean for seven days. 12 He must purify himself with the water on the third day and on the seventh day; then he will be clean. But if he does not purify himself on the third and seventh days, he will not be clean. 13 Anyone who touches a human corpse and fails to purify himself defiles the tabernacle of Yahweh. That person must be cut off from Israel. He remains unclean, because the water of purification has not been sprinkled on him, and his uncleanness is still on him.

14 This is the law when a person dies in a tent: Everyone who enters the tent and everyone already in the tent will be unclean for seven days, 15 and any open container without a lid fastened on it is unclean.

16 Anyone in the open field who touches someone who has been killed by the sword or has died of natural causes, or anyone who touches a human bone or a grave, will be unclean for seven days.

17 For the purification of the unclean person, take some of the ashes of the burnt sin offering, put them in a jar, and pour fresh water over them. 18 Then a man who is ceremonially clean is to take some hyssop, dip it in the water, and sprinkle the tent, all the furnishings, and the people

NUM 19:2 [FORESHADOW] A spotless red heifer was killed outside the camp for cleansing → HEB 9:13-14; HEB 13:12 · MEDIUM p.1989

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | GOD SPEAKING

who were there. He is also to sprinkle the one who touched a bone, a grave, or a person who has died or been slain.

19 The man who is ceremonially clean is to sprinkle the unclean person on the third day and on the seventh day. After he purifies the unclean person on the seventh day, the one being cleansed must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and that evening he will be clean. 20 But if a person who is unclean does not purify himself, he will be cut off from the assembly, because he has defiled the sanctuary of Yahweh. The water of purification has not been sprinkled on him; he is unclean.

21 This is a permanent statute for the people: The one who sprinkles the water of purification must wash his clothes, and whoever touches the water of purification will be unclean until evening. 22 Anything the unclean person touches will become unclean, and anyone who touches it will be unclean until evening."

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Miriam dies at Kadesh. The people have no water and blame Moses again. God tells him to speak to the rock, but Moses strikes it twice. Water comes out, but God tells Moses and Aaron they will not lead Israel into the land. Edom will not let them pass, and Aaron dies on Mount Hor.

WATER FROM THE ROCK // EXODUS 17:1–7

1 In the first month, the whole congregation of Israel entered the Wilderness of Zin and stayed in Kadesh. There Miriam died and was buried.

2 Now there was no water for the congregation, so they gathered against Moses and Aaron. 3 The people quarreled with Moses and said, "If only we had perished with our brothers before Yahweh! 4 Why have you brought Yahweh's assembly into this wilderness for us and our livestock to die here? 5 Why have you led us up out of Egypt to bring us to this wretched place? It is not a place of grain, figs, vines, or pomegranates—and there is no water to drink!"

6 Then Moses and Aaron went from the presence of the assembly to the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. They fell face-down, and the glory of Yahweh appeared to them. 7 And Yahweh said to Moses, 8 "Take the staff and assemble the congregation. You and your brother Aaron are to speak to the rock while they watch, and it will pour out its water. You will bring out water from the rock and provide drink for the congregation and their livestock."

9 So Moses took the staff from Yahweh's presence, just as he had been commanded. 10 Then Moses and Aaron gathered the assembly in front of the rock, and Moses said to them, "Listen now, you rebels, must we bring you water out of this rock?" 11 Then Moses raised his hand and struck the rock twice with his staff, so that a great amount of water gushed out, and the congregation and their livestock were able to drink.

12 But Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "Because you did not trust Me to show My holiness in the sight of the Israelites, you will not bring this assembly into the land that I have given them."

13 These were the waters of Meribah, where the Israelites quarreled with Yahweh, and He showed His holiness among them.

- **NUM 20:8 [FORESHADOW]** Water would flow from the rock for the people → 1CO 10:4 · MEDIUM p.1834
- **NUM 20:8 [MIRACLE]** Moses strikes the rock and water gushes out
- **NUM 20:11 [NOTE]** WHY WAS MOSES BANNED? See the Big Question pages after 20:13, p.254.
- **NUM 20:12 [PROPHECY]** Moses and Aaron would not enter the Promised Land because of their unbelief at the rock → NUM 20:24-29 (Aaron); DT 34 (Moses) p.255

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY WAS MOSES BANNED?

The Rock at Meribah

NUMBERS 20:2 TO 13 · 20:24 · 27:14 · PSALM 106:32 TO 33

WHAT HAPPENED

The people had no water and blamed Moses again. God told him to take the staff and speak to the rock in front of everyone. Moses said, Listen, you rebels, must we bring you water out of this rock? Then he struck the rock twice. Water poured out, but God said, Because you did not trust Me to show My holiness, you will not bring this assembly into the land, 20:12.

THE FIRST TIME

This was not the first rock. Almost forty years earlier, in Exodus 17:6, God told Moses to strike a rock at Horeb, and water came out. This time God told him to take the staff but speak to the rock. That difference is where most of the explanations start.

HE STRUCK INSTEAD OF SPEAKING

The great Jewish teacher Rashi, about AD 1100, said the sin was hitting the rock when God said to speak to it. Speaking would have shown God's power even more. Others, like Nachmanides, answered that God told Moses to take the staff, so some striking was expected.

HE LOST HIS TEMPER

Maimonides, about AD 1170, said the sin was anger. Moses called the people rebels when God was not angry with them, and the people thought God was. Psalm 106:32 to 33 says they made his spirit bitter and he spoke rashly with his lips.

HE TOOK THE CREDIT

Some Jewish teachers point to one word: must we bring you water? It sounded like Moses and Aaron were doing the miracle, not God. Numbers 27:14 says they failed to treat God as holy in front of the people.

The Rock Was Christ

DEUTERONOMY 1:37 · 3:26 · 1 CORINTHIANS 10:4 · MATTHEW 17:3

HE DID NOT BELIEVE

God names the problem in 20:12: you did not trust Me. John Calvin said unbelief was the root of it. The Bible teacher Matthew Poole said striking twice looked like Moses doubted one strike would do it.

BECAUSE OF YOU

In Deuteronomy 1:37 and 3:26 Moses tells Israel that God was angry with him because of you. Many read this as the people pushing Moses into his sin. Some scholars think Deuteronomy gives a different reason that goes back to the spies.

THE ROCK WAS CHRIST

Paul says Israel drank from the spiritual rock that followed them, and that Rock was Christ, 1 Corinthians 10:4. Old Jewish stories also told of a rock or well that rolled along with Israel. Many Christian teachers, especially from the 1800s on, say God struck the rock once in Exodus 17, a picture of Christ dying once. They say striking it again spoiled that picture, since Hebrews 10:10 says Christ was offered once for all.

A HAPPY ENDING

Moses never entered the land in his lifetime. But many preachers point out that centuries later he stood on a mountain in the Promised Land, talking with Jesus at the Transfiguration, Matthew 17:3.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God said speak, and Moses struck. He spoke harshly to the people. God said he did not trust Him or honor Him as holy in front of everyone. Even so, God still gave the water. Leaders are held to a higher standard, Numbers 20:12 and James 3:1.

EDOM REFUSES PASSAGE

14 From Kadesh, Moses sent messengers
to tell the king of Edom, "This is what your
brother Israel says: You know all the hard-
ship that has befallen us, 15 how our fa-
thers went down to Egypt, where we lived
many years. The Egyptians mistreated us
and our fathers, 16 and when we cried out

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | GOD SPEAKING

to Yahweh, He heard our voice, sent an angel, and brought us out of Egypt.

Now look, we are in Kadesh, a city on the edge of your territory. 17 Please let us pass through your land. We will not go through any field or vineyard, or drink water from any well. We will stay on the King's Highway; we will not turn to the right or to the left until we have passed through your territory."

18 But Edom answered, "You may not travel through our land, or we will come out and confront you with the sword."

19 "We will stay on the main road," the Israelites replied, "and if we or our herds drink your water, we will pay for it. There will be no problem; only let us pass through on foot."

20 But Edom insisted, "You may not pass through." And they came out to confront the Israelites with a large army and a strong hand. 21 So Edom refused to allow Israel to pass through their territory, and Israel turned away from them.

THE DEATH OF AARON

22 After they had set out from Kadesh, the whole congregation of Israel came to Mount Hor. 23 And at Mount Hor, near the border of the land of Edom, Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, 24 "Aaron will be gathered to his people; he will not enter the land that I have given the Israelites, because both of you rebelled against My command at the waters of Meribah. 25 Take Aaron and his son Eleazar and bring them up Mount Hor. 26 Remove Aaron's priestly garments and put them on his son Eleazar. Aaron will be gathered to his people and will die there."

27 So Moses did as Yahweh had commanded, and they climbed Mount Hor in the sight of the whole congregation. 28 After Moses had removed Aaron's garments and put them on his son Eleazar, Aaron died there on top of the mountain. Then Moses and Eleazar came down from the mountain. 29 When the whole congregation saw that Aaron had died, the entire house of Israel mourned for him thirty days.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel defeats the king of Arad. Then the people complain about the manna again, and venomous snakes bite them. God tells Moses to make a bronze snake on a pole, and anyone who looks at it lives. Then Israel sings at a well and defeats two kings, Sihon and Og.

THE DEFEAT OF ARAD

1 When the Canaanite king of Arad, who lived in the Negev, heard that Israel was coming along the road to Atharim, he attacked Israel and captured some prisoners. 2 So Israel made a vow to Yahweh: "If You will deliver this people into our hands, we will devote their cities to destruction."

3 And Yahweh heard Israel's plea and delivered up the Canaanites. Israel devoted them and their cities to destruction; so they named the place Hormah.

THE BRONZE SERPENT

4 Then they set out from Mount Hor along the route to the Red Sea, in order to bypass the land of Edom. But the people grew impatient on the journey 5 and spoke against God and against Moses: "Why have you led us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread or water, and we detest this wretched food!"

6 So Yahweh sent venomous snakes among the people, and many of the Israelites were bitten and died.

7 Then the people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned by speaking against Yahweh and against you. Intercede with Yahweh so He will take the snakes away from us." So Moses interceded for the people.

8 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Make a fiery serpent and mount it on a pole. When anyone who is bitten looks at it, he will live." 9 So Moses made a bronze snake and mounted it on a pole. If anyone who

NUM 20:24 [FULFILLS] Moses and Aaron would not enter the Promised Land because of their unbelief at the rock ← NUM 20:12 p.253

NUM 21:6 [MIRACLE] Bronze serpent — Israelites healed by looking

NUM 21:8 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JN 3:14 p.1702

was bitten looked at the bronze snake, he would live.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIND, DEBATED FOR ANY LINK TO MOSES

THE TIMNA COPPER SNAKE

NUMBERS 21:6 TO 9 · 2 KINGS 18:4 · JOHN 3:14 TO 15 · EXODUS 18:1



Site 200 at Timna today: the shrine under the cliff, with standing stones at the left. Photo Erez Ben Yosef, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small copper snake, about 5 inches long, with a head covered in gold. It was found in a desert shrine at Timna, the copper mines in the far south of Israel. Many say it reminds them of the bronze snake Moses made in Numbers 21:9.

HOW OLD IT IS

The snake comes from the shrine's last phase, when Midianites used it, about the 1100s BC. Experts date it by the layers of the site and the pottery found with it.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Beno Rothenberg dug the shrine, now called Site 200, in 1969. It sits at the foot of the red sandstone cliffs called Solomon's Pillars.

THE SHRINE

Egyptian miners built a small shrine to their goddess Hathor here, beginning around 1300 BC. After the Egyptians left, Midianites took it over. They scratched out Hathor's face, set up a row of standing stones, and covered the shrine with red and yellow wool cloth held up by poles, like a tent. Some scholars say it looks a lot like the tabernacle.

WHY MIDIANITES MATTER

Moses' father in law Jethro was a priest of Midian, Exodus 18:1, and Moses lived in Midian for forty years, Acts 7:30. Midian shows up again in Numbers 22, 25 and 31.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The snake is shown at the Eretz Israel Museum in Tel Aviv, in its Nehushtan Pavilion, named after the bronze snake in 2 Kings 18:4.

THE BIG DEBATE

Reports disagree on exactly where in the shrine the snake lay, and some scholars now think a local shrine was there before the Egyptians came, not after. There is no writing on the snake, so nobody knows who made it or why. Snakes were used as symbols of healing and protection all over the ancient world.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It is not Moses' snake, and it does not prove Numbers 21 happened. It shows that people in the same desert, in about the same age, made copper snakes for their worship.

NUM 21:9 [FORESHADOW] The bronze serpent lifted up foreshadows Christ lifted on the cross → JN 3:14-18; 12:32 p.1702

NUM 21:9 [NOTE] Israel kept this bronze snake for centuries, until King Hezekiah smashed it because people were burning incense to it, 2 Kings 18:4.

NUM 21:9 [FIELD NOTES] A small copper snake was found in a desert shrine at Timna. See the Timna Copper Snake Field Notes page, p.256.

THE JOURNEY TO MOAB

10 Then the Israelites set out and camped
at Oboth. 11 They journeyed from Oboth
and camped at Iye-abarim in the wilder-
ness opposite Moab to the east. 12 From
there they set out and camped in the Val-
ley of Zered. 13 From there they moved on
and camped on the other side of the
Arnon, in the wilderness that extends into
the Amorite territory.

Now the Arnon is the border between the
Moabites and the Amorites. 14 Therefore it
is stated in the Book of the Wars of Yah-
weh:

"Waheb in Suphah
and the wadis of the Arnon,

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

15 even the slopes of the wadis
that extend to the site of Ar
and lie along the border of Moab."

16 From there they went on to Beer, the well where Yahweh said to Moses, "Gather the people so that I may give them water." 17 Then Israel sang this song:

"Spring up, O well,
all of you sing to it!
18 The princes dug the well;
the nobles of the people hollowed it out with their scepters
and with their staffs."

From the wilderness the Israelites went on to Mattanah, 19 and from Mattanah to Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel to Bamoth, 20 and from Bamoth to the valley in Moab where the top of Pisgah overlooks the wasteland.

THE DEFEAT OF SIHON // DEUTERONOMY 2:24–37

21 Then Israel sent messengers to Sihon king of the Amorites, saying, 22 "Let us pass through your land. We will not turn aside into any field or vineyard, or drink water from any well. We will stay on the King's Highway until we have passed through your territory."

23 But Sihon would not let Israel pass through his territory. Instead, he gathered his whole army and went out to confront Israel in the wilderness. When he came to Jahaz, he fought against Israel. 24 And Israel put him to the sword and took possession of his land, from the Arnon to the Jabbok—but only up to the border of the Ammonites, because it was fortified.

25 Israel captured all the cities of the Amorites and occupied them, including Heshbon and all its villages. 26 Heshbon was the city of Sihon king of the Amorites, who had fought against the former king of Moab and taken all his land as far as the Arnon. 27 That is why the poets say:

"Come to Heshbon, let it be rebuilt;
let the city of Sihon be restored.
28 For a fire went out from Heshbon,
a blaze from the city of Sihon.
It consumed Ar of Moab,
the rulers of Arnon's heights.
29 Woe to you, O Moab!
You are destroyed, O people of Chemosh!
He gave up his sons as refugees,
and his daughters into captivity
to Sihon king of the Amorites.
30 But we have overthrown them;
Heshbon is destroyed as far as Dibon.
We demolished them as far as Nophah,
which reaches to Medeba."

THE DEFEAT OF OG // DEUTERONOMY 3:1–11

31 So Israel lived in the land of the Amorites. 32 After Moses had sent spies to Jazer, Israel captured its villages and drove out the Amorites who were there.

33 Then they turned and went up the road to Bashan, and Og king of Bashan and his whole army came out to meet them in battle at Edrei.

34 But Yahweh said to Moses, "Do not fear him, for I have delivered him into your hand, along with all his people and his land. Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites, who lived in Heshbon."

35 So they struck down Og, along with his sons and his whole army, until no remnant was left. And they took possession of his land.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Balak, king of Moab, is scared of Israel and hires Balaam, a famous seer, to curse them. God tells Balaam not to go, then lets him go but says to speak only what He says. On the way, the angel of Yahweh blocks the road, and Balaam's donkey sees him first and starts talking. The donkey wins the argument.

BALAK SUMMONS BALAAM

1 Then the Israelites traveled on and camped in the plains of Moab near the Jordan, across from Jericho.

2 Now Balak son of Zippor saw all that Israel had done to the Amorites, 3 and Moab was terrified of the people because they were numerous. Indeed, Moab dreaded

NUM 21:14 [NOTE] The Book of the Wars of Yahweh is a lost book. It is quoted only here, and no copy has ever been found.

NUM 21:29 [DEMONIC] Woe to Moab, the people of Chemosh
NUM 21:33 [DEMONIC] Israel defeats Og king of Bashan

ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

the Israelites. 4 So the Moabites said to the elders of Midian, "This horde will devour everything around us, as an ox licks up the grass of the field."

Since Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time, 5 he sent messengers to summon Balaam son of Beor at Pethor, which is by the Euphrates in the land of his people.

"Behold, a people has come out of Egypt," said Balak. "They cover the face of the land and have settled next to me. 6 So please come now and put a curse on this people, because they are too mighty for me. Perhaps I may be able to defeat them and drive them out of the land; for I know that those you bless are blessed, and those you curse are cursed."

7 The elders of Moab and Midian departed with the fees for divination in hand. They came to Balaam and relayed to him the words of Balak.

8 "Spend the night here," Balaam replied, "and I will give you the answer that Yahweh speaks to me." So the princes of Moab stayed with Balaam.

9 Then God came to Balaam and asked, "Who are these men with you?"

10 And Balaam said to God, "Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab, sent me this message: 11 'Behold, a people has come out of Egypt, and they cover the face of the land. Now come and put a curse on them for me. Perhaps I may be able to fight against them and drive them away.'"

12 But God said to Balaam, "Do not go with them. You are not to curse this people, for they are blessed."

13 So Balaam got up the next morning and said to Balak's princes, "Go back to your homeland, because Yahweh has refused to let me go with you."

14 And the princes of Moab arose, returned to Balak, and said, "Balaam refused to come with us."

15 Then Balak sent other princes, more numerous and more distinguished than the first messengers. 16 They came to Balaam and said, "This is what Balak son of Zippor says: 'Please let nothing hinder you from coming to me, 17 for I will honor you richly and do whatever you say. So please come and put a curse on this people for me!'"

18 But Balaam replied to the servants of Balak, "If Balak were to give me his house full of silver and gold, I could not do anything small or great to go beyond the command of Yahweh my God. 19 So now, please stay here overnight as the others did, that I may find out what else Yahweh has to tell me."

20 That night God came to Balaam and said, "Since these men have come to summon you, get up and go with them, but you must only do what I tell you." 21 So in the morning Balaam got up, saddled his donkey, and went with the princes of Moab.

THE ANGEL AND BALAAM'S DONKEY

22 Then God's anger was kindled because Balaam was going along, and the angel of Yahweh stood in the road to oppose him. Balaam was riding his donkey, and his two servants were with him.

23 When the donkey saw the angel of Yahweh standing in the road with a drawn sword in his hand, she turned off the path and went into a field. So Balaam beat her to return her to the path.

24 Then the angel of Yahweh stood in a narrow passage between two vineyards, with walls on either side. 25 And the donkey saw the angel of Yahweh and pressed herself against the wall, crushing Balaam's foot against it. So he beat her once again.

26 And the angel of Yahweh moved on ahead and stood in a narrow place where there was no room to turn to the right or left. 27 When the donkey saw the angel of Yahweh, she lay down under Balaam, and he became furious and beat her with his staff.

NUM 22:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Deir Alla Inscription → FIELD NOTES p.260

NUM 22:7 [DEMONIC] Moab's elders bring Balaam fees for divination

NUM 22:22 [MIRACLE] The angel of Yahweh with a drawn sword blocks Balaam's path

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

28 Then Yahweh opened the donkey's
mouth, and she said to Balaam, "What
have I done to you that you have beaten
me these three times?"
29 Balaam answered the donkey, "You
have made a fool of me! If I had a sword in
my hand, I would kill you right now!"
30 But the donkey said to Balaam, "Am I not
the donkey you have ridden all your life
until today? Have I ever treated you this
way before?"
"No," he replied.
31 Then Yahweh opened Balaam's eyes,
and he saw the angel of Yahweh standing
in the road with a drawn sword in his
hand. And Balaam bowed low and fell
facedown.
32 The angel of Yahweh asked him, "Why
have you beaten your donkey these three
times? Behold, I have come out to oppose
you, because your way is perverse before
me. 33 The donkey saw me and turned
away from me these three times. If she
had not turned away, then by now I would
surely have killed you and let her live."
34 "I have sinned," Balaam said to the an-
gel of Yahweh, "for I did not realize that
you were standing in the road to confront
me. And now, if this is displeasing in your
sight, I will go back home."
35 But the angel of Yahweh said to Balaam,
"Go with the men, but you are to speak
only what I tell you." So Balaam went with
the princes of Balak.
36 When Balak heard that Balaam was
coming, he went out to meet him at the
Moabite city on the Arnon border, at the
edge of his territory. 37 And he said to Bal-
aam, "Did I not send you an urgent sum-
mons? Why did you not come to me? Am I
really not able to reward you richly?"
38 "See, I have come to you," Balaam
replied, "but can I say just anything? I
must speak only the word that God puts in
my mouth."

39 So Balaam accompanied Balak, and
they came to Kiriath-huzoth. 40 Balak sac-
rificed cattle and sheep, and he gave por-
tions to Balaam and the princes who were
with him.
41 The next morning, Balak took Balaam
and brought him up to Bamoth-baal. From
there he could see the outskirts of the
camp of the people.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS
Balak builds seven altars and waits for a curse. Instead Balaam blesses Israel. Balak tries another hill and gets another blessing: God is not a man, that He should lie. Balak is having a very bad day.

BALAAM'S FIRST ORACLE

1 Then Balaam said to Balak, "Build for me
seven altars here, and prepare for me
seven bulls and seven rams."
2 So Balak did as Balaam had instructed,
and Balak and Balaam offered a bull and a
ram on each altar.
3 "Stay here by your burnt offering while I
am gone," Balaam said to Balak. "Perhaps
Yahweh will meet with me. And whatever
He reveals to me, I will tell you."
So Balaam went off to a barren height, 4
and God met with him. "I have set up
seven altars," Balaam said, "and on each
altar I have offered a bull and a ram."
5 Then Yahweh put a message in Balaam's
mouth, saying, "Return to Balak and give
him this message."
6 So he returned to Balak, who was stand-
ing there beside his burnt offering, with all
the princes of Moab.
7 And Balaam lifted up an oracle, saying:

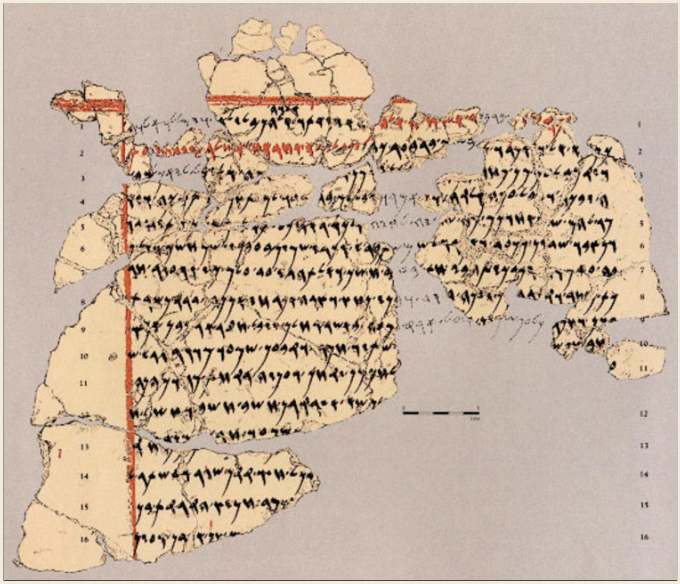
"Balak brought me from Aram,
the king of Moab from the mountains of
the east.
'Come,' he said, 'put a curse on Jacob for
me;
come and denounce Israel!'
8 How can I curse those whom God has
not cursed?
How can I denounce those whom Yah-
weh has not denounced?
9 For I see them from atop the rocky cliffs,

NUM 22:28 [MIRACLE] Yahweh opens the donkey's mouth and she speaks
NUM 22:28 [NOTE] PROPHET OR SORCERER? See the Big Question pages on Balaam after chapter 24, p.260.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE DEIR ALLA BALAAM INSCRIPTION

NUMBERS 22 TO 24 · 31:8 · JOSHUA 13:22



A drawing of the largest group of plaster pieces, Combination I. The red lines and words are in red ink on the wall. Drawing by Disdero, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Writing in black and red ink on a white plaster wall, found at Tell Deir Alla in the Jordan Valley. It begins, The book of Balaam son of Beor, a seer of the gods. It is the same name and the same father as the Balaam of Numbers 22:5.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 800 BC. Different experts give dates from about 840 to 700 BC. It was painted long after the time of Moses.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

A Dutch team from Leiden University led by H. J. Franken found it in 1967. An earthquake had knocked the wall down, leaving about 119 pieces of inked plaster. Jacob Hoftijzer and Gerrit van der Kooij put the pieces together and published them in 1976.

WHAT IT SAYS

The gods come to Balaam at night and show him a vision. The Shaddayin, gods whose name sounds like Shaddai, plan a disaster: darkness, no sun and fire. In the morning Balaam fasts and weeps, then tells his people what he saw. Much of the rest is broken and hard to read.

THE LANGUAGE

Scholars still argue. It has some things in common with Aramaic and some with Hebrew and the languages of Canaan. Many call it a local dialect from the east side of the Jordan.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In Amman, the capital of Jordan.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

People east of the Jordan were still telling stories about a famous seer named Balaam son of Beor, centuries after Numbers places him there. Like Numbers 24:4, it connects him with visions and with the name Shaddai.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It says nothing about Israel, Moab, Balak or a talking donkey. Its Balaam serves many gods. It shows the Bible's Balaam was a well known figure in the region, not that the events of Numbers 22 to 24 happened.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and I watch them from the hills.
Behold, a people dwelling apart,
not reckoning themselves among the nations.
10 Who can count the dust of Jacob
or number even a fourth of Israel?
Let me die the death of the righteous;
let my end be like theirs!"

11 Then Balak said to Balaam, "What have you done to me? I brought you here to curse my enemies, and behold, you have only blessed them!"

12 But Balaam replied, "Should I not speak exactly what Yahweh puts in my mouth?"

BALAAM'S SECOND ORACLE

13 Then Balak said to him, "Please come with me to another place where you can see them. You will only see the outskirts of their camp—not all of them. And from there, curse them for me."

14 So Balak took him to the field of Zophim, to the top of Pisgah, where he built seven altars and offered a bull and a ram on each altar.

15 Balaam said to Balak, "Stay here beside your burnt offering while I meet Yahweh over there."

16 And Yahweh met with Balaam and put a message in his mouth, saying, "Return to Balak and speak what I tell you."

17 So he returned to Balak, who was standing there by his burnt offering with the princes of Moab.

"What did Yahweh say?" Balak asked.

18 Then Balaam lifted up an oracle, saying:

"Arise, O Balak, and listen;
give ear to me, O son of Zippor.
19 God is not a man, that He should lie,
or a son of man, that He should change His mind.
Does He speak and not act?
Does He promise and not fulfill?
20 I have indeed received a command to bless;
He has blessed, and I cannot change it.
21 He considers no disaster for Jacob;
He sees no trouble for Israel.
Yahweh their God is with them,
and the shout of the King is among them.
22 God brought them out of Egypt
with strength like a wild ox.
23 For there is no spell against Jacob
and no divination against Israel.
It will now be said of Jacob and Israel,
'What great things God has done!'
24 Behold, the people rise like a lioness;
they rouse themselves like a lion,
not resting until they devour their prey
and drink the blood of the slain."

25 Now Balak said to Balaam, "Then neither curse them at all nor bless them at all!"

26 But Balaam replied, "Did I not tell you that whatever Yahweh says, I must do?"

27 "Please come," said Balak, "I will take you to another place. Perhaps it will please God that you curse them for me from there."

28 And Balak took Balaam to the top of Peor, which overlooks the wasteland.

29 Then Balaam said, "Build for me seven altars here, and prepare for me seven bulls and seven rams."

30 So Balak did as Balaam had instructed, and he offered a bull and a ram on each altar.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Balaam blesses Israel a third time, and Balak is furious. So Balaam gives him a bonus prophecy for free: A star will come out of Jacob, and a scepter will rise out of Israel. Then he prophesies against Moab, Edom and Amalek and goes home. Balak paid for a curse and got a sermon.

BALAAM'S THIRD ORACLE

1 And when Balaam saw that it pleased Yahweh to bless Israel, he did not seek omens as on previous occasions, but he turned his face toward the wilderness. 2 When Balaam looked up and saw Israel encamped tribe by tribe, the Spirit of God

- **NUM 23:21 [FORESHADOW]** 'The King is among them' → Matt 1:23 · MEDIUM p.1551
- **NUM 23:23 [DEMONIC]** No spell or divination works against Israel
- **NUM 24:1 [DEMONIC]** Balaam stops seeking omens and looks toward the desert

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

came upon him, 3 and he lifted up an oracle, saying:

"This is the prophecy of Balaam son of Beor,
the prophecy of a man whose eyes are open,
4 the prophecy of one who hears the words of God,
who sees a vision from the Almighty,
who bows down with eyes wide open:
5 How lovely are your tents, O Jacob,
your dwellings, O Israel!
6 They spread out like palm groves,
like gardens beside a stream,
like aloes Yahweh has planted,
like cedars beside the waters.
7 Water will flow from his buckets,
and his seed will have abundant water.
His king will be greater than Agag,
and his kingdom will be exalted.
8 God brought him out of Egypt
with strength like a wild ox,
to devour hostile nations and crush their bones,
to pierce them with arrows.
9 He crouches, he lies down like a lion,
like a lioness—who dares to rouse him?
Blessed are those who bless you
and cursed are those who curse you."

BALAK DISMISSES BALAAM

10 Then Balak's anger burned against Balaam, and he struck his hands together and said to Balaam, "I summoned you to curse my enemies, but behold, you have persisted in blessing them these three times. 11 Therefore, flee at once to your home! I said I would reward you richly, but instead Yahweh has denied your reward."

12 Balaam answered Balak, "Did I not already tell the messengers you sent me 13 that even if Balak were to give me his house full of silver and gold, I could not do anything of my own accord, good or bad, to go beyond the command of Yahweh? I must speak whatever Yahweh says. 14 Now I am going back to my people, but come, let me warn you what this people will do to your people in the days to come."

BALAAM'S FOURTH ORACLE

15 Then Balaam lifted up an oracle, saying,

"This is the prophecy of Balaam son of Beor,
the prophecy of a man whose eyes are open,
16 the prophecy of one who hears the words of God,
who has knowledge from the Most High,
who sees a vision from the Almighty,
who bows down with eyes wide open:
17 I see him, but not now;
I behold him, but not near.
A star will come forth from Jacob,
and a scepter will arise from Israel.
He will crush the skulls of Moab
and strike down all the sons of Sheth.
18 Edom will become a possession,
as will Seir, his enemy;
but Israel will perform with valor.
19 A ruler will come from Jacob
and destroy the survivors of the city."

BALAAM'S FINAL THREE ORACLES

20 Then Balaam saw Amalek and lifted up an oracle, saying:

"Amalek was first among the nations,
but his end is destruction."

21 Next he saw the Kenites and lifted up an oracle, saying:

"Your dwelling place is secure,
and your nest is set in a cliff.
22 Yet Kain will be destroyed
when Asshur takes you captive."

23 Once more Balaam lifted up an oracle, saying:

"Ah, who can live
unless God has ordained it?
24 Ships will come from the coasts of Cyprus;
they will subdue Asshur and Eber,
but they too will perish forever."

- **NUM 24:7 [PROPHECY]** Israel's king would be greater than Agag → 1SA 15:8 p.458
- **NUM 24:17 [PROPHECY]** Balaam's prophecy: a Star and Scepter to come out of Jacob → MT 2:2; REV 22:16; 2PE 1:19 p.1551
- **NUM 24:18 [PROPHECY]** Edom would become Israel's possession → 2SA 8:14 p.508
- **NUM 24:20 [PROPHECY]** Amalek's end would be destruction → 1SA 15:7-8; 1CH 4:43 · MEDIUM p.458

25 Then Balaam arose and returned to his homeland, and Balak also went on his way.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

BALAAM

Prophet or Sorcerer?

NUMBERS 22 TO 24 · 31:8, 16 · DEUTERONOMY 23:4 TO 5 · JOSHUA 13:22

WHAT NUMBERS SAYS

Balak, king of Moab, hired Balaam to curse Israel. God spoke to Balaam, the Spirit of God came on him, 24:2, and every time he opened his mouth to curse, a blessing came out. His last prophecy says a star will come out of Jacob, 24:17. Then he went home. But later Israel killed him with the kings of Midian, and Moses said the sin at Peor happened on Balaam's advice, 31:8 and 31:16.

WHAT THE REST OF THE BIBLE SAYS

Deuteronomy 23:4 to 5 and Nehemiah 13:2 say he was hired to curse and God turned it into a blessing. Joshua 13:22 calls him the diviner, a word for a fortune teller. Peter calls him a prophet who loved the wages of wickedness, 2 Peter 2:15 to 16. Jude 11 warns about Balaam's error for profit. Jesus says Balaam taught Balak to lead Israel into idol feasts and sexual sin, Revelation 2:14.

WHO WAS BALAAM?

He came from Pethor, near the Euphrates River, hundreds of miles away, 22:5. Balak's messengers brought him the fee for divination, 22:7, so he was a famous seer for hire. A wall inscription from about 800 BC, found in Jordan, also names Balaam son of Beor. See the Deir Alla Field Notes page, p.260.

THE TALKING DONKEY

Many readers take it as a real miracle, and 2 Peter 2:16 talks about it as something that happened. An old Jewish teaching says the donkey's mouth was one of the things God made on the evening of the sixth day of creation. Maimonides said the whole scene happened in a vision. A few later teachers thought Balaam only heard the donkey's cries as words.

The Star out of Jacob

NUMBERS 24:17 · MATTHEW 2:2 · REVELATION 22:16

A REAL PROPHET WHO WENT BAD

Some say God really spoke through Balaam, as Peter calls him a prophet, but his heart was set on money. He said the right words and still found another way to hurt Israel.

A SORCERER GOD USED ANYWAY

Others say Balaam was a pagan fortune teller, as Joshua 13:22 calls him, and God took over his mouth for a few days to show that nobody can curse what God has blessed.

JEWISH TRADITION

The rabbis remembered him two ways. One old teaching says no prophet like Moses arose in Israel, but one did among the nations, and names Balaam. Another says the students of Abraham have a good eye and a humble spirit, but the students of wicked Balaam have an evil eye, a proud spirit and endless greed.

THE STAR

An old Aramaic translation of 24:17 reads, a king will rise from Jacob, and the Messiah will be anointed from Israel. The Dead Sea Scrolls use the star verse too. About AD 132, Rabbi Akiva called the rebel leader Simon bar Kosiba the star and the Messiah, and his followers called him Bar Kokhba, son of the star. Christians like Origen linked the star to the one the wise men followed, Matthew 2:2.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Balaam was a famous seer from outside Israel, hired to curse, who blessed instead. Outside these chapters the Bible remembers him for greed and for Peor. His star prophecy became one of the most loved Messiah promises.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

What Balaam could not do with a curse, Moab and Midian do with sin. Israelite men sleep with Moabite women and worship Baal of Peor. A plague breaks out. When an Israelite brings a Midianite woman into his tent in front of everyone, Phinehas stops the plague with a spear. 24,000 die.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

MOAB SEDUCES ISRAEL // 1 CORINTHIANS 10:1–13

1 While Israel was staying in Shittim, the
men began to indulge in sexual immorality
with the daughters of Moab, 2 who also in-
vited them to the sacrifices for their gods.
And the people ate and bowed down to
these gods. 3 So Israel joined in worship-
ing Baal of Peor, and the anger of Yahweh
burned against them.

4 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Take all
the leaders of the people and execute
them in broad daylight before Yahweh, so
that His fierce anger may turn away from
Israel."

5 So Moses told the judges of Israel, "Each
of you must kill all of his men who have
joined in worshiping Baal of Peor."

THE ZEAL OF PHINEHAS

6 Just then an Israelite man brought to his family a Midianite woman in the sight of Moses and the whole congregation of Israel while they were weeping at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 7 On seeing this, Phinehas son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, got up from the assembly, took a spear in his hand, 8 followed the Israelite into the tent, and drove the spear through both of them—through the Israelite and on through the belly of the woman.

So the plague against the Israelites was halted, 9 but those who died in the plague numbered 24,000.

10 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 11 "Phinehas son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, has turned My wrath away from the Israelites; for he was zealous for My sake among them, so that I did not consume the Israelites in My zeal. 12 Declare, therefore, that I am granting him My covenant of peace. 13 It will be a covenant of permanent priesthood for him and his descendants, because he was zealous for his God and made atonement for the Israelites."

14 The name of the Israelite who was slain with the Midianite woman was Zimri son of Salu, the leader of a Simeonite family. 15 And the name of the slain Midianite woman was Cozbi, the daughter of Zur, a tribal chief of a Midianite family.

16 And Yahweh said to Moses, 17 "Attack the Midianites and strike them dead. 18 For they assailed you deceitfully when they seduced you in the matter of Peor and their sister Cozbi, the daughter of the Midianite leader, the woman who was killed on the day the plague came because of Peor."

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Forty years later, God orders a second census. The new total is 601,730. And of all the men counted at Sinai, only two are still alive besides Moses: Caleb and Joshua, just as God said. A whole generation is gone. The new one is ready.

THE SECOND CENSUS OF ISRAEL // NUMBERS 1:1–4

1 After the plague had ended, Yahweh said to Moses and Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, 2 "Take a census of the whole congregation of Israel by the houses of their fathers—all those twenty years of age or older who can serve in the army of Israel."

3 So on the plains of Moab by the Jordan, across from Jericho, Moses and Eleazar the priest issued the instruction, 4 "Take a census of the men twenty years of age or older, as Yahweh has commanded Moses."

And these were the Israelites who came out of the land of Egypt:

THE TRIBE OF REUBEN

5 Reuben was the firstborn of Israel. These were the descendants of Reuben:

The Hanochite clan from Hanoch,
the Palluite clan from Pallu,
6 the Hezronite clan from Hezron,
and the Carmite clan from Carmi.

7 These were the clans of Reuben, and their registration numbered 43,730.

NUM 25:1 [DEMONIC] Israel joins in worshiping Baal of Peor

NUM 25:9 [TEXT] Paul says 23,000 fell in one day, 1 Corinthians 10:8. Many say Paul counts those who died in one day and Numbers counts the whole plague. Others think Paul was quoting from memory or a different count.

NUM 25:18 [DEMONIC] Midian lured Israel into sin at Peor

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

8 Now the son of Pallu was Eliab, 9 and the
sons of Eliab were Nemuel, Dathan, and
Abiram.
It was Dathan and Abiram, chosen by the
congregation, who rebelled against
Moses and Aaron with the followers of
Korah who rebelled against Yahweh. 10
And the earth opened its mouth and swal-
lowed them along with Korah, whose fol-
lowers died when the fire consumed 250
men. They serve as a warning sign. 11
However, the line of Korah did not die out.

THE TRIBE OF SIMEON

12 These were the descendants of Simeon
by their clans:
The Nemuelite clan from Nemuel,
the Jaminite clan from Jamin,
the Jachinite clan from Jachin,
13 the Zerahite clan from Zerah,
and the Shaulite clan from Shaul.
14 These were the clans of Simeon, and
there were 22,200 men.

THE TRIBE OF GAD

15 These were the descendants of Gad by
their clans:
The Zephonite clan from Zephon,
the Haggite clan from Haggi,
the Shunite clan from Shuni,
16 the Oznite clan from Ozni,
the Erite clan from Eri,
17 the Arodite clan from Arod,
and the Arelite clan from Areli.
18 These were the clans of Gad, and their
registration numbered 40,500.

THE TRIBE OF JUDAH

19 The sons of Judah were Er and Onan,
but they died in the land of Canaan. 20
These were the descendants of Judah by
their clans:
The Shelanite clan from Shelah,
the Perezite clan from Perez,
and the Zerahite clan from Zerah.
21 And these were the descendants of
Perez:
the Hezronite clan from Hezron
and the Hamulite clan from Hamul.
22 These were the clans of Judah, and
their registration numbered 76,500.

THE TRIBE OF ISSACHAR

23 These were the descendants of Is-
sachar by their clans:
The Tolaite clan from Tola,
the Punite clan from Puvah,
24 the Jashubite clan from Jashub,
and the Shimronite clan from Shimron.
25 These were the clans of Issachar, and
their registration numbered 64,300.

THE TRIBE OF ZEBULUN

26 These were the descendants of Zebulun
by their clans:
The Seredite clan from Sered,
the Elonite clan from Elon,
and the Jahleelite clan from Jahleel.
27 These were the clans of Zebulun, and
their registration numbered 60,500.

THE TRIBE OF MANASSEH

28 The descendants of Joseph included
the clans of Manasseh and Ephraim.
29 These were the descendants of Man-
asseh:
The Machirite clan from Machir, the father
of Gilead,
and the Gileadite clan from Gilead.
30 These were the descendants of Gilead:
the Iezerite clan from Iezer,
the Helekite clan from Helek,
31 the Asrielite clan from Asriel,
the Shechemite clan from Shechem,
32 the Shemidaite clan from Shemida,
and the Hepherite clan from Hepher.
33 Now Zelophehad son of Hepher had
no sons but only daughters. The
names of his daughters were
Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and
Tirzah.
34 These were the clans of Manasseh, and
their registration numbered 52,700.

THE TRIBE OF EPHRAIM

35 These were the descendants of Ephraim
by their clans:
The Shuthelahite clan from Shuthelah,
the Becherite clan from Becher,
and the Tahanite clan from Tahan.
36 And the descendants of Shuthelah were
the Eranite clan from Eran.

GOD SPEAKING

37 These were the clans of Ephraim, and
their registration numbered 32,500.
These clans were the descendants of
Joseph.

THE TRIBE OF BENJAMIN

38 These were the descendants of Ben-
jamin by their clans:
The Belaite clan from Bela,
the Ashbelite clan from Ashbel,
the Ahiramite clan from Ahiram,
39 the Shuphamite clan from Shupham,
and the Huphamite clan from Hupham.
40 And the descendants of Bela from Ard
and Naaman were the Ardite clan from
Ard and the Naamite clan from Naaman.
41 These were the clans of Benjamin, and
their registration numbered 45,600.

THE TRIBE OF DAN

42 These were the descendants of Dan by
their clans:
The Shuhamite clan from Shuham.
These were the clans of Dan. 43 All of
them were Shuhamite clans, and their
registration numbered 64,400.

THE TRIBE OF ASHER

44 These were the descendants of Asher
by their clans:
The Imnite clan from Imnah,
the Ishvite clan from Ishvi,
and the Beriite clan from Beriah.
45 And these were the descendants of Be-
riah:
the Heberite clan from Heber
and the Malchielite clan from Malchiel.
46 And the name of Asher's daughter was
Serah.
47 These were the clans of Asher, and their
registration numbered 53,400.

THE TRIBE OF NAPHTALI

48 These were the descendants of Naph-
tali by their clans:
The Jahzeelite clan from Jahzeel,
the Gunite clan from Guni,
49 the Jezerite clan from Jezer,
and the Shillemite clan from Shillem.
50 These were the clans of Naphtali, and
their registration numbered 45,400.
51 These men of Israel numbered 601,730
in all.

INHERITANCE BY LOT

52 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 53 "The
land is to be divided among the tribes as
an inheritance, according to the number
of names. 54 Increase the inheritance for a
large tribe and decrease it for a small one;
each tribe is to receive its inheritance ac-
cording to the number of those registered.
55 Indeed, the land must be divided by lot;
they shall receive their inheritance ac-
cording to the names of the tribes of their
fathers. 56 Each inheritance is to be di-
vided by lot among the larger and smaller
tribes."

THE LEVITES NUMBERED

57 Now these were the Levites numbered
by their clans:
The Gershonite clan from Gershon,
the Kohathite clan from Kohath,
and the Merarite clan from Merari.
58 These were the families of the Levites:
The Libnite clan,
the Hebronite clan,
the Mahlite clan,
the Mushite clan,
and the Korahite clan.
Now Kohath was the father of Amram, 59
and Amram's wife was named Jochebed.
She was also a daughter of Levi, born to
Levi in Egypt. To Amram she bore Aaron,
Moses, and their sister Miriam. 60 Nadab,
Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar were born to
Aaron, 61 but Nadab and Abihu died when
they offered unauthorized fire before Yah-
weh.
62 The registration of the Levites totaled
23,000, every male a month old or more;
they were not numbered among the other
Israelites, because no inheritance was
given to them among the Israelites.

ONLY CALEB AND JOSHUA REMAIN

63 These were the ones numbered by
Moses and Eleazar the priest when they
counted the Israelites on the plains of
Moab by the Jordan, across from Jericho.

NUM 26:51 [NOTE] The new count is 601,730, almost the same as the first census, 603,550, forty years earlier.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

64 Among all these, however, there was not one who had been numbered by Moses and Aaron the priest when they counted the Israelites in the Wilderness of Sinai. 65 For Yahweh had told them that they would surely die in the wilderness. Not one was left except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Five sisters, the daughters of Zelophehad, ask Moses for their dead father's land, since he had no sons. God says they are right, and it becomes law. Then God shows Moses the land he will not enter, and Moses asks for a new shepherd. God picks Joshua.

THE DAUGHTERS OF ZELOPHEHAD // NUMBERS 36:1–13

1 Now the daughters of Zelophehad son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, belonged to the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph. These were the names of his daughters: Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. They approached 2 the entrance to the Tent of Meeting, stood before Moses, Eleazar the priest, the leaders, and the whole congregation, and said, 3 "Our father died in the wilderness, but he was not among the followers of Korah who gathered together against Yahweh. Instead, he died because of his own sin, and he had no sons. 4 Why should the name of our father disappear from his clan because he had no sons? Give us property among our father's brothers."

5 So Moses brought their case before Yahweh, 6 and Yahweh answered him, 7 "The daughters of Zelophehad speak correctly. You certainly must give them property as an inheritance among their father's brothers and transfer their father's inheritance to them.

8 Furthermore, you shall say to the Israelites, 'If a man dies and leaves no son, you are to transfer his inheritance to his daughter. 9 If he has no daughter, give his inheritance to his brothers. 10 If he has no brothers, give his inheritance to his father's brothers. 11 And if his father has no brothers, give his inheritance to the next of kin from his clan, that he may take possession of it. This is to be a statutory ordinance for the Israelites, as Yahweh has commanded Moses.'"

MOSES REQUESTS A SUCCESSOR // DEUTERONOMY 3:23–29

12 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go up this mountain of the Abarim range and see the land that I have given the Israelites. 13 After you have seen it, you too will be gathered to your people, as your brother Aaron was; 14 for when the congregation contended in the Wilderness of Zin, both of you rebelled against My command to show My holiness in their sight regarding the waters." Those were the waters of Meribah in Kadesh, in the Wilderness of Zin.

15 So Moses appealed to Yahweh, 16 "May Yahweh, the God of the spirits of all flesh, appoint a man over the congregation 17 who will go out and come in before them, and who will lead them out and bring them in, so that the congregation of Yahweh will not be like sheep without a shepherd."

JOSHUA TO SUCCEED MOSES // DEUTERONOMY 31:1–8

18 And Yahweh replied to Moses, "Take Joshua son of Nun, a man with the Spirit in him, and lay your hands on him. 19 Have him stand before Eleazar the priest and the whole congregation, and commission him in their sight. 20 Confer on him some of your authority, so that the whole congregation of Israel will obey him. 21 He shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who will seek counsel for him before Yahweh by the judgment of the Urim. At his command, he and all the Israelites with him—the entire congregation—will go out and come in."

NUM 26:64 [FULFILLS] That generation would die in the wilderness over 40 years ← NUM 14:28-35 p.245

NUM 27:1 [NOTE] Five sisters asked Moses for their father's land, and God said they were right. Their case became a law for every family with no sons.

NUM 27:16 [FORESHADOW] Moses' request for a leader so the congregation be not as sheep without a shepherd → Matt 9:36; JN 10:11 · MEDIUM p.1563

GOD SPEAKING

22 Moses did as Yahweh had commanded
him. He took Joshua, had him stand be-
fore Eleazar the priest and the whole con-
gregation, 23 and laid his hands on him and
commissioned him, as Yahweh had in-
structed through Moses.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

God's calendar of offerings: two lambs every day, morning and evening, more on the Sabbath, more on the first of each month, then Passover and the Feast of Weeks. Worship was not a once a week thing. It was all day, every day.

THE DAILY OFFERINGS // EXODUS 29:38–44

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Com-
mand the Israelites and say to them: See
that you present to Me at its appointed
time the food for My food offerings, as a
pleasing aroma to Me.

3 And tell them that this is the food offer-
ing you are to present to Yahweh as a reg-
ular burnt offering each day: two unblem-
ished year-old male lambs. 4 Offer one
lamb in the morning and the other at twi-
light, 5 along with two quarts of fine flour
as a grain offering, mixed with a quart of
oil from pressed olives.

6 This is a regular burnt offering estab-
lished at Mount Sinai as a pleasing aroma,
a food offering to Yahweh. 7 The drink of-
fering accompanying each lamb shall be a
quart of wine. Pour out the offering of fer-
mented drink to Yahweh in the sanctuary
area. 8 And offer the second lamb at twi-
light, with the same grain offering and
drink offering as in the morning. It is a
food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yah-
weh.

THE SABBATH OFFERINGS

9 On the Sabbath day, present two un-
blemished year-old male lambs, accom-
panied by a grain offering of four quarts
of fine flour mixed with oil, as well as a
drink offering.

10 This is the burnt offering for every Sab-
bath, in addition to the regular burnt offer-
ing and its drink offering.

THE MONTHLY OFFERINGS

11 At the beginning of every month, you are
to present to Yahweh a burnt offering of
two young bulls, one ram, and seven male
lambs a year old, all unblemished, 12 along
with six quarts of fine flour mixed with oil
as a grain offering with each bull, four
quarts of fine flour mixed with oil as a
grain offering with the ram, 13 and two
quarts of fine flour mixed with oil as a
grain offering with each lamb. This is a
burnt offering, a pleasing aroma, a food
offering to Yahweh.

14 Their drink offerings shall be two quarts
of wine with each bull, a third of a gallon
with the ram, and a quart with each lamb.
This is the monthly burnt offering to be
made at each new moon throughout the
year.

15 In addition to the regular burnt offering
with its drink offering, one male goat is to
be presented to Yahweh as a sin offering.

PASSOVER AND THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD // EXODUS 12:14–28; LEVITICUS 23:4–8; DEUTERONOMY 16:1–8

16 The fourteenth day of the first month is
Yahweh's Passover. 17 On the fifteenth day
of this month, there shall be a feast; for
seven days unleavened bread is to be
eaten.

18 On the first day there is to be a sacred
assembly; you must not do any regular
work. 19 Present to Yahweh a food offer-
ing, a burnt offering of two young bulls,
one ram, and seven male lambs a year
old, all unblemished. 20 The grain offering
shall consist of fine flour mixed with oil;
offer six quarts with each bull, four quarts
with the ram, 21 and two quarts with each
of the seven lambs. 22 Include one male
goat as a sin offering to make atonement
for you.

23 You are to present these in addition to
the regular morning burnt offering. 24 Offer
the same food each day for seven days as
a food offering, a pleasing aroma to Yah-
weh. It is to be offered with its drink offer-
ing and the regular burnt offering.

GOD SPEAKING

25 On the seventh day you shall hold a sacred assembly; you must not do any regular work.

THE FEAST OF WEEKS // DEUTERONOMY 16:9–12

26 On the day of firstfruits, when you present an offering of new grain to Yahweh during the Feast of Weeks, you are to hold a sacred assembly; you must not do any regular work.

27 Present a burnt offering of two young bulls, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old as a pleasing aroma to Yahweh, 28 together with their grain offerings of fine flour mixed with oil—six quarts with each bull, four quarts with the ram, 29 and two quarts with each of the seven lambs.

30 Include one male goat to make atonement for you. 31 Offer them with their drink offerings in addition to the regular burnt offering and its grain offering. The animals must be unblemished.

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

The busy seventh month: the Feast of Trumpets, the Day of Atonement and the Feast of Booths. During Booths the bulls count down each day, thirteen, then twelve, then eleven, all the way to seven. That adds up to seventy bulls in one week. Somebody had a lot of grilling to do.

THE FEAST OF TRUMPETS // LEVITICUS 23:23–25

1 "On the first day of the seventh month, you are to hold a sacred assembly, and you must not do any regular work. This will be a day for you to sound the trumpets.

2 As a pleasing aroma to Yahweh, you are to present a burnt offering of one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 3 together with their grain offerings of fine flour mixed with oil—six quarts with the bull, four quarts with the ram, 4 and two quarts with each of the seven male lambs.

5 Include one male goat as a sin offering to make atonement for you. 6 These are in addition to the monthly and daily burnt offerings with their prescribed grain offerings and drink offerings. They are a pleasing aroma, a food offering to Yahweh.

THE DAY OF ATONEMENT // LEVITICUS 16:1–34; LEVITICUS 23:26–32

7 On the tenth day of this seventh month, you are to hold a sacred assembly, and you shall humble yourselves; you must not do any work.

8 Present as a pleasing aroma to Yahweh a burnt offering of one young bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 9 together with their grain offerings of fine flour mixed with oil—six quarts with the bull, four quarts with the ram, 10 and two quarts with each of the seven lambs.

11 Include one male goat for a sin offering, in addition to the sin offering of atonement and the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offerings.

THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES // DEUTERONOMY 16:13–17

12 On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, you are to hold a sacred assembly; you must not do any regular work, and you shall observe a feast to Yahweh for seven days.

13 As a pleasing aroma to Yahweh, you are to present a food offering, a burnt offering of thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 14 along with the grain offering of six quarts of fine flour mixed with oil with each of the thirteen bulls, four quarts with each of the two rams, 15 and two quarts with each of the fourteen lambs. 16 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

17 On the second day you are to present twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 18 along with the grain and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 19 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

20 On the third day you are to present eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 21 along with the grain and drink offerings for the

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 22 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

23 On the fourth day you are to present ten bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 24 along with the grain and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 25 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

26 On the fifth day you are to present nine bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 27 along with the grain and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 28 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

29 On the sixth day you are to present eight bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 30 along with the grain and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 31 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

32 On the seventh day you are to present seven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 33 along with the grain and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 34 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

35 On the eighth day you are to hold a solemn assembly; you must not do any regular work. 36 As a pleasing aroma to Yahweh, you are to present a food offering, a burnt offering of one bull, one ram, and seven male lambs a year old, all unblemished, 37 along with the grain and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs, according to the number prescribed. 38 Include one male goat as a sin offering, in addition to the regular burnt offering with its grain offering and drink offering.

39 You are to present these offerings to Yahweh at your appointed times, in addition to your vow and freewill offerings, whether burnt offerings, grain offerings, drink offerings, or peace offerings."

40 So Moses spoke all this to the Israelites just as Yahweh had commanded him.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

Keep your vows. A man's promise to God stands. A young woman's vow or a wife's vow can be canceled by her father or husband, but only on the day he hears about it. If he says nothing, it stands. God takes your words seriously.

LAWS ABOUT VOWS // MATTHEW 5:33–37

1 Then Moses said to the heads of the tribes of Israel, "This is what Yahweh has commanded: 2 *If a man makes a vow to Yahweh or swears an oath to obligate himself by a pledge, he must not break his word; he must do everything he has promised.*

3 And if a woman in her father's house during her youth makes a vow to Yahweh or obligates herself by a pledge, 4 and her father hears about her vow or pledge but says nothing to her, then all the vows or pledges by which she has bound herself shall stand. 5 But if her father prohibits her on the day he hears about it, then none of the vows or pledges by which she has bound herself shall stand. Yahweh will absolve her because her father has prohibited her.

6 If a woman marries while under a vow or rash promise by which she has bound herself, 7 and her husband hears of it but says nothing to her on that day, then the vows or pledges by which she has bound herself shall stand. 8 But if her husband prohibits her when he hears of it, he nullifies the vow that binds her or the rash promise she has made, and Yahweh will absolve her.

■ **NUM 30:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:33 p.1557

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

9 Every vow a widow or divorced woman
pledges to fulfill is binding on her.
10 If a woman in her husband's house has
made a vow or put herself under an obligation with an oath, 11 and her husband
hears of it but says nothing to her and
does not prohibit her, then all the vows or
pledges by which she has bound herself
shall stand. 12 But if her husband nullifies
them on the day he hears of them, then
nothing that came from her lips, whether
her vows or pledges, shall stand. Her husband has nullified them, and Yahweh will
absolve her.
13 Her husband may confirm or nullify any
vow or any sworn pledge to deny herself.
14 But if her husband says nothing to her
from day to day, then he confirms all the
vows and pledges that bind her. He has
confirmed them, because he said nothing
to her on the day he heard about them. 15
But if he nullifies them after he hears of
them, then he will bear her iniquity."
16 These are the statutes that Yahweh
commanded Moses concerning the relationship between a man and his wife, and
between a father and a young daughter
still in his home.

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Moses to take vengeance on Midian for Peor. Israel sends 12,000 soldiers. They kill the five kings of Midian and Balaam too. Then Moses orders something terribly hard to read about the captives. The plunder is split, and not one Israelite soldier is lost.

VENGEANCE ON MIDIAN

1 And Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Take
vengeance on the Midianites for the Israelites. After that, you will be gathered to
your people."
3 So Moses told the people, "Arm some of
your men for war, that they may go
against the Midianites and execute
Yahweh's vengeance on them. 4 Send into
battle a thousand men from each tribe of
Israel."
5 So a thousand men were recruited from
each tribe of Israel—twelve thousand
armed for war. 6 And Moses sent the thousand from each tribe into battle, along
with Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest,
who took with him the vessels of the
sanctuary and the trumpets for signaling.
7 Then they waged war against Midian, as
Yahweh had commanded Moses, and they
killed every male. 8 Among the slain were
Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba—the five
kings of Midian. They also killed Balaam
son of Beor with the sword.
9 The Israelites captured the Midianite
women and their children, and they plundered all their herds, flocks, and goods. 10
Then they burned all the cities where the
Midianites had lived, as well as all their
encampments, 11 and carried away all the
plunder and spoils, both people and animals.
12 They brought the captives, spoils, and
plunder to Moses, to Eleazar the priest,
and to the congregation of Israel at the
camp on the plains of Moab, by the Jordan across from Jericho. 13 And Moses,
Eleazar the priest, and all the leaders of
the congregation went to meet them outside the camp.
14 But Moses was angry with the officers
of the army—the commanders of thousands and commanders of
hundreds—who were returning from the
battle. 15 "Have you spared all the
women?" he asked them. 16 "Look, these
women caused the sons of Israel, through
the counsel of Balaam, to turn unfaithfully
against Yahweh at Peor, so that the
plague struck the congregation of Yahweh. 17 So now, kill all the boys, as well as
every woman who has had relations with
a man, 18 but spare for yourselves every
girl who has never had relations with a
man.
19 All of you who have killed a person or
touched the dead are to remain outside
the camp for seven days. On the third day
and the seventh day you are to purify both

NUM 31:7 [NOTE] THE WAR ON MIDIAN. This is one of the hardest chapters in the Bible. See the Big Question pages after chapter 31, p.273.
NUM 31:16 [DEMONIC] Balaam's advice led Israel into sin at Peor

GOD SPEAKING

yourselves and your captives. 20 And purify every garment and leather good, everything made of goat's hair, and every article of wood."

21 Then Eleazar the priest said to the soldiers who had gone into battle, "This is the statute of the law which Yahweh has commanded Moses: 22 Only the gold, silver, bronze, iron, tin, and lead— 23 everything that can withstand the fire—must be put through the fire, and it will be clean. But it must still be purified with the water of purification. And everything that cannot withstand the fire must pass through the water. 24 On the seventh day you are to wash your clothes, and you will be clean. After that you may enter the camp."

DIVISION OF THE SPOILS

25 Yahweh said to Moses, 26 "You and Eleazar the priest and the family heads of the congregation are to take a count of what was captured, both of man and beast. 27 Then divide the captives between the troops who went out to battle and the rest of the congregation.

28 Set aside a tribute for Yahweh from what belongs to the soldiers who went into battle: one out of every five hundred, whether persons, cattle, donkeys, or sheep. 29 Take it from their half and give it to Eleazar the priest as an offering to Yahweh.

30 From the Israelites' half, take one out of every fifty, whether persons, cattle, donkeys, sheep, or other animals, and give them to the Levites who keep charge of the tabernacle of Yahweh."

31 So Moses and Eleazar the priest did as Yahweh had commanded Moses, 32 and this plunder remained from the spoils the soldiers had taken:
675,000 sheep,
33 72,000 cattle,
34 61,000 donkeys,
35 and 32,000 women who had not slept with a man.

36 This was the half portion for those who had gone to war:
337,500 sheep, 37 including a tribute to Yahweh of 675,
38 36,000 cattle, including a tribute to Yahweh of 72,
39 30,500 donkeys, including a tribute to Yahweh of 61,
40 and 16,000 people, including a tribute to Yahweh of 32.

41 Moses gave the tribute to Eleazar the priest as an offering for Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

42 From the Israelites' half, which Moses had set apart from the men who had gone to war, 43 this half belonged to the congregation:
337,500 sheep,
44 36,000 cattle,
45 30,500 donkeys,
46 and 16,000 people.

47 From the Israelites' half, Moses took one out of every fifty persons and animals and gave them to the Levites who kept charge of the tabernacle of Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him.

THE VOLUNTARY OFFERING

48 Then the officers who were over the units of the army—the commanders of thousands and of hundreds—approached Moses 49 and said, "Your servants have counted the soldiers under our command, and not one of us is missing. 50 So we have brought to Yahweh an offering of the gold articles each man acquired—armlets, bracelets, rings, earrings, and necklaces—to make atonement for ourselves before Yahweh."

51 So Moses and Eleazar the priest received from them all the articles made out of gold. 52 All the gold that the commanders of thousands and of hundreds presented as an offering to Yahweh weighed about 420 pounds. 53 Each of the soldiers had taken plunder for himself. 54 And Moses and Eleazar the priest received the gold from the commanders of thousands and of hundreds and brought it into the Tent of Meeting as a memorial for the Israelites before Yahweh.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE WAR ON MIDIAN

One of the Hardest Chapters

NUMBERS 25:1 TO 18 · 31:1 TO 54 · DEUTERONOMY 21:10 TO 14

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

God told Moses to take vengeance on Midian for Peor. Israel sent 12,000 soldiers and killed every man, the five kings of Midian and Balaam. They brought back the women and children. Moses was angry with the officers and ordered them to kill the boys and the women who had slept with a man, and to keep alive the girls who had not, 31:14 to 18. The text says 32,000 girls were spared and no Israelite soldier died.

WHY MIDIAN

At Peor, Moabite and Midianite women led Israel into idol worship and sexual sin, and 24,000 died in the plague, 25:1 to 9. Moses says it was Balaam's advice, 31:16. The text treats the war as God's judgment on that plan.

GOD'S JUDGMENT VIEW

Many Christians, from Augustine to today, say God has the right to judge nations, as He did in the flood and at Sodom. Augustine wrote that in a war God commands, Moses showed obedience, not cruelty. This was a one time judgment, not a pattern for anyone today.

MOSES ADDED IT VIEW

Some point out that God commanded the battle, and that the order about the captives in 31:15 to 18 comes from Moses, in anger, not as God speaking. Even the Jewish teacher Rashi said Moses' anger in this chapter led him into a mistake about another law, in 31:21.

How Christians Read It

JUDGES 6:1 TO 6 · MATTHEW 5:43 TO 44 · LUKE 9:54 TO 55

WHAT HAPPENED TO THE GIRLS?

Many say they became wives or servants, protected by the law in Deuteronomy 21:10 to 14, which gave a captive woman a month to mourn and forbade selling her or treating her as a slave. Others, including some Jewish scholars, say the plain words mean they were taken for sex. Numbers 31 itself does not say.

THE BIG LANGUAGE VIEW

Some scholars, like Paul Copan, say ancient war reports used sweeping words, like we say a team got wiped out. They point out that a few generations later Midian is back and strong, coming like locusts, Judges 6:5. Others answer that the chapter still reads as a real command.

THE LATER STORY VIEW

Many critical scholars say the chapter was written much later as a lesson about purity, and that this war never happened as told. They point to Midian in Judges 6 and to the round numbers, like no soldier lost.

WHAT THE EARLY CHURCH SAID

About AD 144, Marcion said the God of the Old Testament was a different, harsher god than the Father of Jesus. The church rejected that and said it is one God in both testaments. Origen read the Old Testament wars as pictures of our spiritual war against sin.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

This chapter is hard, and honest readers should feel it. It is not a pattern for Christians. Jesus told us to love our enemies, Matthew 5:44, and rebuked His disciples when they wanted to call fire down on a village, Luke 9:54 to 55.

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

The tribes of Reuben and Gad have lots of cattle and like the land east of the Jordan. Moses thinks they are pulling another Kadesh and refusing to fight. They promise to cross over and fight first, then come home. Moses agrees, and warns them: Be assured that your sin will find you out.

THE HEART

THE TRIBES EAST OF THE JORDAN // DEUTERONOMY 3:12–22; JOSHUA 13:8–14

1 Now the Reubenites and Gadites, who
had very large herds and flocks, surveyed
the lands of Jazer and Gilead, and they
saw that the region was suitable for live-
stock. 2 So the Gadites and Reubenites
came to Moses, Eleazar the priest, and
the leaders of the congregation, and said,
3 "Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon,
Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon, 4 which
Yahweh conquered before the congrega-
tion of Israel, are suitable for
livestock—and your servants have live-
stock."

5 "If we have found favor in your sight,"
they said, "let this land be given to your
servants as a possession. Do not make us
cross the Jordan."

6 But Moses asked the Gadites and
Reubenites, "Shall your brothers go to war
while you sit here? 7 Why are you discour-
aging the Israelites from crossing into the
land that Yahweh has given them? 8 This is
what your fathers did when I sent them
from Kadesh-barnea to inspect the land.
9 For when your fathers went up to the
Valley of Eshcol and saw the land, they
discouraged the Israelites from entering
the land that Yahweh had given them. 10
So the anger of Yahweh was kindled that
day, and He swore an oath, saying, 11 'Be-
cause they did not follow Me wholehear-
tedly, not one of the men twenty years of
age or older who came out of Egypt will
see the land that I swore to give Abraham,
Isaac, and Jacob— 12 not one except
Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite and
Joshua son of Nun—because they did fol-
low Yahweh wholeheartedly.' 13 The anger
of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He
made them wander in the wilderness forty
years, until the whole generation who had
done evil in His sight was gone.

14 Now behold, you, a brood of sinners,
have risen up in place of your fathers to
further stoke the burning anger of Yahweh
against Israel. 15 For if you turn away from
following Him, He will once again leave
this people in the wilderness, and you will
be the cause of their destruction."

16 Then the Gadites and Reubenites ap-
proached Moses and said, "We want to
build sheepfolds here for our livestock
and cities for our little ones. 17 But we will
arm ourselves and be ready to go ahead
of the Israelites until we have brought
them into their place. Meanwhile, our little
ones will remain in the fortified cities for
protection from the inhabitants of the
land. 18 We will not return to our homes
until every Israelite has taken possession
of his inheritance. 19 Yet we will not have
an inheritance with them across the Jor-
dan and beyond, because our inheritance
has come to us on the east side of the
Jordan."

20 Moses replied, "If you will do this—if
you will arm yourselves before Yahweh
for battle, 21 and if every one of your
armed men crosses the Jordan before
Yahweh, until He has driven His enemies
out before Him, 22 then when the land is
subdued before Yahweh, you may return
and be free of obligation to Yahweh and to
Israel. And this land will belong to you as
a possession before Yahweh. 23 But if you
do not do this, you will certainly sin
against Yahweh—and be assured that
your sin will find you out. 24 Build cities for
your little ones and folds for your flocks,
but do what you have promised."

25 The Gadites and Reubenites said to
Moses, "Your servants will do just as our
lord commands. 26 Our children, our wives,
our livestock, and all our animals will re-
main here in the cities of Gilead. 27 But
your servants are equipped for war, and
every man will cross over to the battle be-
fore Yahweh, just as our lord says."

28 So Moses gave orders about them to
Eleazar the priest, to Joshua son of Nun,
and to the family leaders of the tribes of
Israel. 29 And Moses said to them, "If the
Gadites and Reubenites cross the Jordan

NUM 32:7 [HEART] The spies saw the good land and still discouraged the hearts of the people. Moses warns Reuben and Gad not to do it again.

NUM 32:23 [NOTE] Be assured that your sin will find you out. The King James says, Be sure your sin will find you out. Moses said it to two tribes who were thinking about skipping the war, and it became a well known saying.

DEMONIC

with you, with every man armed for battle before Yahweh, and the land is subdued before you, then you are to give them the land of Gilead as a possession. 30 But if they do not arm themselves and go across with you, then they must accept their possession among you in the land of Canaan."

31 The Gadites and Reubenites replied, "As Yahweh has spoken to your servants, so we will do. 32 We will cross over into the land of Canaan armed before Yahweh, that we may have our inheritance on this side of the Jordan."

33 So Moses gave to the Gadites, to the Reubenites, and to the half-tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan—the land including its cities and the territory surrounding them.

34 And the Gadites built up Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer, 35 Atroth-shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah, 36 Beth-nimrah, and Beth-haran as fortified cities, and they built folds for their flocks.

37 The Reubenites built up Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim, 38 as well as Nebo and Baal-meon (whose names were changed), and Sibmah. And they renamed the cities they rebuilt.

39 The descendants of Machir son of Manasseh went to Gilead, captured it, and drove out the Amorites who were there. 40 So Moses gave Gilead to the clan of Machir son of Manasseh, and they settled there. 41 Jair, a descendant of Manasseh, went and captured their villages and called them Havvoth-jair. 42 And Nobah went and captured Kenath and its villages and called it Nobah, after his own name.

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

A travel log of the whole trip from Egypt to the plains of Moab, stop by stop, written down by Moses. Then God says to drive out the people of Canaan and destroy their idols, or they will become thorns in your sides. It is the wilderness road trip in one chapter.

FORTY-TWO JOURNEYS OF THE ISRAELITES

1 These are the journeys of the Israelites when they came out of the land of Egypt by their divisions under the leadership of Moses and Aaron. 2 At Yahweh's command, Moses recorded the stages of their journey. These are the stages listed by their starting points:

3 On the fifteenth day of the first month, on the day after the Passover, the Israelites set out from Rameses. They marched out defiantly in full view of all the Egyptians, 4 who were burying all their firstborn, whom Yahweh had struck down among them; for Yahweh had executed judgment against their gods. 5 The Israelites set out from Rameses and camped at Succoth.

6 They set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, on the edge of the wilderness.

7 They set out from Etham and turned back to Pi-hahiroth, opposite Baal-zephon, and they camped near Migdol.

8 They set out from Pi-hahiroth and crossed through the sea, into the wilderness, and they journeyed three days into the Wilderness of Etham and camped at Marah.

9 They set out from Marah and came to Elim, where there were twelve springs and seventy palm trees, and they camped there.

10 They set out from Elim and camped by the Red Sea.

11 They set out from the Red Sea and camped in the Desert of Sin.

12 They set out from the Desert of Sin and camped at Dophkah.

13 They set out from Dophkah and camped at Alush.

14 They set out from Alush and camped at Rephidim, where there was no water for the people to drink.

15 They set out from Rephidim and camped in the Wilderness of Sinai.

NUM 33:4 [DEMONIC] God executed judgment against Egypt's gods

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

16 They set out from the Wilderness of
Sinai and camped at Kibroth-hat-
taavah.
17 They set out from Kibroth-hattaavah and
camped at Hazeroth.
18 They set out from Hazeroth and camped
at Rithmah.
19 They set out from Rithmah and camped
at Rimmon-perez.
20 They set out from Rimmon-perez and
camped at Libnah.
21 They set out from Libnah and camped at
Rissah.
22 They set out from Rissah and camped at
Kehelathah.
23 They set out from Kehelathah and
camped at Mount Shepher.
24 They set out from Mount Shepher and
camped at Haradah.
25 They set out from Haradah and camped
at Makheloth.
26 They set out from Makheloth and
camped at Tahath.
27 They set out from Tahath and camped
at Terah.
28 They set out from Terah and camped at
Mithkah.
29 They set out from Mithkah and camped
at Hashmonah.
30 They set out from Hashmonah and
camped at Moseroth.
31 They set out from Moseroth and
camped at Bene-jaakan.
32 They set out from Bene-jaakan and
camped at Hor-haggidgad.
33 They set out from Hor-haggidgad and
camped at Jotbathah.
34 They set out from Jotbathah and
camped at Abronah.
35 They set out from Abronah and camped
at Ezion-geber.
36 They set out from Ezion-geber and
camped at Kadesh in the Wilderness
of Zin.
37 They set out from Kadesh and camped
at Mount Hor, on the outskirts of the
land of Edom. 38 At Yahweh's com-
mand, Aaron the priest climbed Mount
Hor and died there on the first day of
the fifth month, in the fortieth year af-
ter the Israelites had come out of the
land of Egypt. 39 Aaron was 123 years
old when he died on Mount Hor.
40 Now the Canaanite king of Arad, who
lived in the Negev in the land of
Canaan, heard that the Israelites were
coming. 41 And the Israelites set out
from Mount Hor and camped at Zal-
monah.
42 They set out from Zalmonah and
camped at Punon.
43 They set out from Punon and camped at
Oboth.
44 They set out from Oboth and camped at
Iye-abarim on the border of Moab.
45 They set out from Iyim and camped at
Dibon-gad.
46 They set out from Dibon-gad and
camped at Almon-diblathaim.
47 They set out from Almon-diblathaim and
camped in the mountains of Abarim
facing Nebo.
48 They set out from the mountains of
Abarim and camped on the plains of
Moab by the Jordan across from Jeri-
cho.
49 And there on the plains of Moab they
camped by the Jordan, from Beth-
jeshimoth to Abel-shittim.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR OCCUPYING CANAAN

50 On the plains of Moab by the Jordan
across from Jericho, Yahweh said to
Moses, 51 "Speak to the Israelites and tell
them: When you cross the Jordan into the
land of Canaan, 52 you must drive out be-
fore you all the inhabitants of the land, de-
stroy all their carved images and cast
idols, and demolish all their high places.
53 You are to take possession of the land
and settle in it, for I have given you the
land to possess. 54 And you are to divide
the land by lot according to your clans.
Give a larger inheritance to a larger clan
and a smaller inheritance to a smaller one.
Whatever falls to each one by lot will be
his. You will receive an inheritance ac-
cording to the tribes of your fathers.

NUM 33:52 [DEMONIC] Destroy their carved images, idols, and high places

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

55 But if you do not drive out the inhabitants of the land before you, those you allow to remain will become barbs in your eyes and thorns in your sides; they will harass you in the land where you settle. 56 And then I will do to you what I had planned to do to them."

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

God draws the borders of the Promised Land, from the Wilderness of Zin to the sea and up to the north. Then He names the leaders from each tribe who will divide it up. The map is ready. Now they just have to go in.

THE BOUNDARIES OF CANAAN // GENESIS 15:8–21

1 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 2 "Command the Israelites and say to them: When you enter the land of Canaan, it will be allotted to you as an inheritance with these boundaries:

3 Your southern border will extend from the Wilderness of Zin along the border of Edom. On the east, your southern border will run from the end of the Salt Sea, 4 cross south of the Ascent of Akrabbim, continue to Zin, and go south of Kadesh-barnea. Then it will go on to Hazar-addar and proceed to Azmon, 5 where it will turn from Azmon, join the Brook of Egypt, and end at the Sea.

6 Your western border will be the coastline of the Great Sea; this will be your boundary on the west.

7 Your northern border will run from the Great Sea directly to Mount Hor, 8 and from Mount Hor to Lebo-hamath, then extend to Zedad, 9 continue to Ziphron, and end at Hazar-enan. This will be your boundary on the north.

10 And your eastern border will run straight from Hazar-enan to Shepham, 11 then go down from Shepham to Riblah on the east side of Ain and continue along the slopes east of the Sea of Chinnereth. 12 Then the border will go down along the Jordan and end at the Salt Sea.

NUM 33:55 [PROPHECY] Nations left in the land would become thorns in Israel's sides → JUDG 2:1-3 p.381

This will be your land, defined by its borders on all sides."

13 So Moses commanded the Israelites, "Apportion this land by lot as an inheritance. Yahweh has commanded that it be given to the nine and a half tribes. 14 For the tribes of the Reubenites and Gadites, along with the half-tribe of Manasseh, have already received their inheritance. 15 These two and a half tribes have received their inheritance across the Jordan from Jericho, toward the sunrise."

LEADERS TO DIVIDE THE LAND

16 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 17 "These are the names of the men who are to assign the land as an inheritance for you: Eleazar the priest and Joshua son of Nun. 18 Appoint one leader from each tribe to distribute the land. 19 These are their names:

Caleb son of Jephunneh from the tribe of Judah;

20 Shemuel son of Ammihud from the tribe of Simeon;

21 Elidad son of Chislon from the tribe of Benjamin;

22 Bukki son of Jogli, a leader from the tribe of Dan;

23 Hanniel son of Ephod, a leader from the tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph;

24 Kemuel son of Shiphtan, a leader from the tribe of Ephraim;

25 Eli-zaphan son of Parnach, a leader from the tribe of Zebulun;

26 Paltiel son of Azzan, a leader from the tribe of Issachar;

27 Ahihud son of Shelomi, a leader from the tribe of Asher;

28 and Pedahel son of Ammihud, a leader from the tribe of Naphtali."

29 These are the ones whom Yahweh commanded to apportion the inheritance to the Israelites in the land of Canaan.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

The Levites get 48 cities with pastureland. Six of them are cities of refuge, where someone who killed by accident can run and be safe until the high priest dies. A murderer, though, is put to death. Blood pollutes the land, and God lives there with them.

FORTY-EIGHT CITIES FOR THE LEVITES // JOSHUA 21:1–45; 1 CHRONICLES 6:54–81

1 Again Yahweh spoke to Moses on the
plains of Moab by the Jordan across from
Jericho: 2 "Command the Israelites to give,
from the inheritance they will possess,
cities for the Levites to live in and pas-
turelands around the cities. 3 The cities
will be for them to live in, and the pasture-
lands will be for their herds, their flocks,
and all their other livestock.

4 The pasturelands around the cities you
are to give the Levites will extend 1,500
feet from the wall on every side. 5 You are
also to measure 3,000 feet outside the
city on the east, 3,000 feet on the south,
3,000 feet on the west, and 3,000 feet on
the north, with the city in the center.
These areas will serve as larger pasture-
lands for the cities.

6 Six of the cities you give the Levites are
to be appointed as cities of refuge, to
which a manslayer may flee. In addition to
these, give the Levites forty-two other
cities. 7 The total number of cities you give
the Levites will be forty-eight, with their
corresponding pasturelands. 8 The cities
that you apportion from the territory of the
Israelites should be given to the Levites in
proportion to the inheritance of each tribe:
more from a larger tribe and less from a
smaller one."

SIX CITIES OF REFUGE // DEUTERONOMY 4:41–43; DEUTERONOMY 19:1–14; JOSHUA 20:1–9

9 Then Yahweh said to Moses, 10 "Speak to
the Israelites and tell them: When you
cross the Jordan into the land of Canaan,
11 designate cities to serve as your cities of
refuge, so that a person who kills some-
one unintentionally may flee there. 12 You
are to have these cities as a refuge from
the avenger, so that the manslayer will not
die until he stands trial before the assem-
bly.

13 The cities you select will be your six
cities of refuge. 14 Select three cities
across the Jordan and three in the land of
Canaan as cities of refuge. 15 These six
cities will serve as a refuge for the Is-
raelites and for the foreigner or stranger
among them, so that anyone who kills a
person unintentionally may flee there.

16 If, however, anyone strikes a person with
an iron object and kills him, he is a mur-
derer; the murderer must surely be put to
death. 17 Or if anyone has in his hand a
stone of deadly size, and he strikes and
kills another, he is a murderer; the mur-
derer must surely be put to death. 18 If
anyone has in his hand a deadly object of
wood, and he strikes and kills another, he
is a murderer; the murderer must surely
be put to death.

19 The avenger of blood is to put the mur-
derer to death; when he finds him, he is to
kill him.

20 Likewise, if anyone maliciously pushes
another or intentionally throws an object
at him and kills him, 21 or if in hostility he
strikes him with his hand and he dies, the
one who struck him must surely be put to
death; he is a murderer. When the
avenger of blood finds the murderer, he is
to kill him.

22 But if anyone pushes a person sud-
denly, without hostility, or throws an ob-
ject at him unintentionally, 23 or without
looking drops a heavy stone that kills him,
but he was not an enemy and did not in-
tend to harm him, 24 then the congregation
must judge between the slayer and the
avenger of blood according to these ordi-
nances. 25 The assembly is to protect the
manslayer from the hand of the avenger
of blood. Then the assembly will return
him to the city of refuge to which he fled,
and he must live there until the death of

NUM 35:11 [FORESHADOW] Cities of refuge gave safety to those who fled there → HEB 6:18 · MEDIUM p.1985

NUM 35:11 [NOTE] Hebrews 6:18 says we have fled to take hold of the hope set before us, and many see the cities of refuge as a picture of Jesus.

GOD SPEAKING

the high priest, who was anointed with the holy oil.

26 But if the manslayer ever goes outside the limits of the city of refuge to which he fled 27 and the avenger of blood finds him outside of his city of refuge and kills him, then the avenger will not be guilty of bloodshed, 28 because the manslayer must remain in his city of refuge until the death of the high priest. Only after the death of the high priest may he return to the land he owns. 29 This will be a statutory ordinance for you for the generations to come, wherever you live.

30 If anyone kills a person, the murderer is to be put to death on the testimony of the witnesses. But no one is to be put to death based on the testimony of a lone witness.

31 You are not to accept a ransom for the life of a murderer who deserves to die; he must surely be put to death. 32 Nor should you accept a ransom for the person who flees to a city of refuge and allow him to return and live on his own land before the death of the high priest.

33 Do not pollute the land where you live, for bloodshed pollutes the land, and no atonement can be made for the land on which the blood is shed, except by the blood of the one who shed it. 34 Do not defile the land where you live and where I dwell. For I, Yahweh, dwell among the Israelites."

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

The family of Zelophehad's daughters worries that their land will leave the tribe if the sisters marry outside it. So Moses rules that they must marry within their own tribe, and they marry cousins. The book ends on the plains of Moab, across the Jordan from Jericho.

ZELOPHEHAD'S DAUGHTERS MARRY // NUMBERS 27:1–11

1 Now the family heads of the clan of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh, one of the clans of Joseph, approached Moses and the leaders who were the heads of the Israelite families and addressed them, 2 saying, "When Yahweh commanded my lord to give the land as an inheritance to the Israelites by lot, He also commanded him to give the inheritance of our brother Zelophehad to his daughters. 3 But if they marry any of the men from the other tribes of Israel, their inheritance will be withdrawn from the portion of our fathers and added to the tribe into which they marry. So our allotted inheritance would be taken away. 4 And when the Jubilee for the Israelites comes, their inheritance will be added to the tribe into which they marry and taken away from the tribe of our fathers."

5 So at the word of Yahweh, Moses commanded the Israelites: "The tribe of the sons of Joseph speaks correctly. 6 This is what Yahweh has commanded concerning the daughters of Zelophehad: They may marry anyone they please, provided they marry within a clan of the tribe of their father. 7 No inheritance in Israel may be transferred from tribe to tribe, because each of the Israelites is to retain the inheritance of the tribe of his fathers. 8 Every daughter who possesses an inheritance from any Israelite tribe must marry within a clan of the tribe of her father, so that every Israelite will possess the inheritance of his fathers. 9 No inheritance may be transferred from one tribe to another, for each tribe of Israel must retain its inheritance."

10 So the daughters of Zelophehad did as Yahweh had commanded Moses. 11 Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, were married to cousins on their father's side. 12 They married within the clans of the descendants of Manasseh son of Joseph, and their inheritance remained within the tribe of their father's clan.

13 These are the commandments and ordinances that Yahweh gave the Israelites through Moses on the plains of Moab by the Jordan across from Jericho.

BOOK 5 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · BOOKS OF MOSES

DEUTERONOMY

Moses' last words

AUTHOR	Moses, according to Jewish and Christian tradition. The book says Moses wrote down this law and gave it to the priests 31:9, 31:24, and Jesus quoted it as what Moses said Mark 10:3 to 5. Someone else wrote about Moses' death in chapter 34; the Talmud says Joshua did. Many modern scholars think most of the book was written in the 600s BC, around King Josiah's day.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	On the plains of Moab, across the Jordan from Jericho, in the fortieth year after Egypt. Moses begins speaking on the first day of the eleventh month 1:3. The whole book covers only about two months, ending with thirty days of mourning for Moses 34:8.
DATE WRITTEN	Traditionally about 1406 BC, just before Israel crossed the Jordan. Those who date the Exodus later, in the 1200s BC, move that date down too.
WRITTEN TO	The new generation of Israel, the children of the people who left Egypt, about to go into the Promised Land without Moses.
KEY VERSE	Deuteronomy 6:4 to 5. Hear, O Israel: Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One. And you shall love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.



THE TEN COMMANDMENTS IN THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS
This is 4QDeut n, called the All Souls Deuteronomy, a Dead Sea Scroll from Cave 4 at Qumran, copied about 30 to 1 BC. This piece holds Deuteronomy 5:1 to 6:1, the Ten Commandments. In its Sabbath command it gives both reasons, the rest after creation from Exodus 20:11 and the slavery in Egypt from Deuteronomy 5:15. Many scholars think it was a copy of favorite passages for study or worship, not the whole book. About thirty copies of Deuteronomy were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, more than any other book except Psalms. Deuteronomy is one of the books Jesus quoted most. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Forty years have passed. The generation that refused to enter the land has died in the wilderness, and Moses himself will not cross the Jordan. So before he dies, he gathers their children and preaches his heart out. He retells the journey, repeats the Ten Commandments, explains the law for life in the land, and begs them to love God and choose life. The English name comes from the Greek Bible, which turned the words a copy of this law in 17:18 into this second law, deuteronomion. The Hebrew name is Devarim, words, from the first verse.

What Was Going Wrong

A STUBBORN HISTORY. Moses reminds them of the fear at Kadesh and the golden calf. You have been rebelling against Yahweh since the day I came to know you 9:24.
FORGETTING HIM WHEN LIFE IS GOOD. Moses warns that once they are full and rich, they will say, The power and strength of my hands have made this wealth for me 8:12 to 17.
THE IDOLS OF CANAAN. The nations in the land worshiped idols, sorcery and the dead, and God warned that Israel would be pulled in 12:29 to 31, 18:9 to 12.
THE WARNING CAME TRUE. God told Moses that after his death Israel would turn to other gods and break the covenant 31:16 to 21. The rest of the Old Testament shows it happened.
MOSES SLIPPED TOO. Moses was not allowed to enter the land because of what happened at the waters of Meribah, and he begged God to change His mind 3:23 to 27, 32:51.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Deuteronomy is Moses' farewell sermon. He is 120 years old, he knows he will die before Israel crosses the Jordan, and he has one last chance to get through to them. So he tells their story again, from Mount Sinai to the plains of Moab. He reminds them that God chose them out of love, not because they were great or good. He gives them the law for life in the land and the greatest command of all: love Yahweh your God with all your heart. Then he lays out two roads, blessing and curse, life and death, and begs them to choose life. The book ends on Mount Nebo, where God shows Moses the land, and Moses dies with his work done.

Deuteronomy at a Glance

CH 1 to 4	**LOOKING BACK** Moses' first speech: forty years retold, and do not make idols.
CH 5 to 11	**THE HEART OF THE LAW** The Ten Commandments, the Shema, and love and remember.
CH 12 to 26	**LAWS FOR THE LAND** Worship, feasts, kings, prophets, justice, family and the poor.
CH 27 to 28	**BLESSINGS AND CURSES** Mount Ebal and Mount Gerizim, and what obedience brings.
CH 29 to 30	**CHOOSE LIFE** The covenant renewed on the plains of Moab.
CH 31 to 34	**MOSES SAYS GOODBYE** Joshua, the Song of Moses, the blessing and Moses' death.

Where Jesus Shows Up

DEUTERONOMY 8:3, 6:16, 6:13 When the devil tempted Jesus in the wilderness, all three of Jesus' answers came from Deuteronomy: man does not live on bread alone, do not put God to the test, and worship God only, Matthew 4:4, 7, 10.

DEUTERONOMY 6:4 TO 5 Jesus called this the greatest commandment, Mark 12:29 to 30.

DEUTERONOMY 18:15 TO 19 God promised a Prophet like Moses. Peter and Stephen said this Prophet is Jesus, Acts 3:22 to 23 and 7:37, and the crowds said, Truly this is the Prophet, John 6:14.

DEUTERONOMY 21:23 Anyone hung on a tree is under God's curse. Paul says Christ became a curse for us by hanging on the cross, Galatians 3:13.

DEUTERONOMY 30:12 TO 14 The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart. Paul uses these verses for the message of faith in Christ, Romans 10:6 to 8.

DEUTERONOMY 32:43 Let all God's angels worship Him. Hebrews 1:6 quotes this line about Jesus.

GOD'S NAMES IN DEUTERONOMY
Moses calls God the Rock five times in his song 32:4, 15, 18, 30, 31. He is a consuming fire, a jealous God 4:24, the God of gods and Lord of lords 10:17, and the eternal God whose everlasting arms are underneath 33:27. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Deuteronomy

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (8)	18:15-16, 18:18-19, 21:23, 30:6, 32:21, 32:43
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	16:3, 30:12-14
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (28)	1:8, 1:10, 3:27-28, 4:25-28, 12:5, 17:14, 28:15-19 and 9 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (4)	28:53-57, 28:63-68
THE HEART (11)	4:29, 6:5-6, 8:2, 8:14, 10:16, 11:16, 11:18 and 3 more
MIRACLES (1)	8:4
DEMONIC (39)	1:28, 2:10-11, 2:20-21, 3:11, 3:13, 4:3, 4:15-19 and 30 more
NOTABLE (3)	6:4, 6:7-9, 22:8, 24:5
GOD SPEAKING (86 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (2 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

JESUS QUOTED IT AGAINST THE DEVIL
All three answers Jesus gave Satan in the wilderness came from Deuteronomy 6 and 8.

A NAME FROM A TRANSLATION
Deuteronomy means second law. The Greek Bible got the name from 17:18, where the king must write a copy of this law. The book is not a new law. It is Moses explaining the same law again.

CHILD SACRIFICE WAS BANNED
The nations of Canaan burned their sons and daughters in the fire for their gods. Moses says Yahweh hates it, and no one in Israel may ever do it 12:31, 18:10.

SHAPED LIKE A TREATY
Deuteronomy follows the pattern of ancient treaties between a great king and his people: history, rules, witnesses, then blessings and curses. Scholars compare it to Hittite treaties from the 1300s BC and to Esarhaddon's treaty from 672 BC, and they argue over which it is closer to.

THE OLDEST TEN COMMANDMENTS
The Nash Papyrus, bought in Egypt in 1902, has the Ten Commandments and the Shema. It was the oldest known Bible text in Hebrew until the Dead Sea Scrolls were found. See the Field Notes page, p.292.

A KINDER LAW THAN YOU MIGHT THINK
Put a railing on your roof 22:8. A new husband gets a year off from the army 24:5. Leave some of the harvest for the poor 24:19. Do not muzzle the ox 25:4.

Did Anybody Listen?

For a while. Israel served Yahweh all the days of Joshua, Joshua 24:31. But the next generation forgot, just as Moses warned, Judges 2:10 to 11, and the curses of chapter 28 came true, all the way to exile. Centuries later King Josiah found the Book of the Law in the temple and led the nation back to God, 2 Kings 22 to 23. And Jesus called its command to love God the greatest one of all.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Forty years after Egypt, Moses stands on the plains of Moab and starts his farewell speech. He retells how he picked judges to help him, how twelve spies saw the land, and how the people refused to go in. So God turned them back into the desert. Moses is basically saying, Let's not do that again.

THE COMMAND TO LEAVE HOREB // EXODUS 33:1–6

1 These are the words that Moses spoke to
all Israel in the wilderness east of the
Jordan—in the Arabah opposite
Suph—between Paran and Tophel, Laban,
Hazeroth, and Dizahab.

2 It is an eleven-day journey from Horeb to
Kadesh-barnea by way of Mount Seir. 3 In
the fortieth year, on the first day of the
eleventh month, Moses proclaimed to the
Israelites all that Yahweh had commanded
him concerning them. 4 This was after he
had defeated Sihon king of the Amorites,
who lived in Heshbon, and then at Edrei
had defeated Og king of Bashan, who
lived in Ashtaroth.

5 On the east side of the Jordan in the land
of Moab, Moses began to explain this law,
saying:

6 Yahweh our God said to us at Horeb:
"You have stayed at this mountain long
enough. 7 Resume your journey and go to
the hill country of the Amorites; go to all
the neighboring peoples in the Arabah, in
the hill country, in the foothills, in the
Negev, and along the seacoast to the land
of the Canaanites and to Lebanon, as far
as the great River Euphrates.

8 See, I have placed the land before you.
Enter and possess the land that Yahweh
swore He would give to your fathers Abra-
ham, Isaac, and Jacob, and to their de-
scendants after them."

MOSES APPOINTS LEADERS // EXODUS 18:13–27

9 At that time I said to you, "I cannot carry
the burden for you alone. 10 Yahweh your
God has multiplied you, so that today you
are as numerous as the stars in the sky. 11
May Yahweh, the God of your fathers, in-
crease you a thousand times over and
bless you as He has promised. 12 But how
can I bear your troubles, burdens, and
disputes all by myself? 13 Choose for your-
selves wise, understanding, and re-
spected men from each of your tribes,
and I will appoint them as your leaders."

14 And you answered me and said, "What
you propose to do is good."

15 So I took the leaders of your tribes, wise
and respected men, and appointed them
as leaders over you—as commanders of
thousands, of hundreds, of fifties, and of
tens, and as officers for your tribes.

16 At that time I charged your judges: "Hear
the disputes between your brothers, and
judge fairly between a man and his
brother or a foreign resident. 17 Show no
partiality in judging; hear both small and
great alike. Do not be intimidated by any-
one, for judgment belongs to God. And
bring to me any case too difficult for you,
and I will hear it."

18 And at that time I commanded you all
the things you were to do.

TWELVE SPIES SENT OUT // NUMBERS 13:1–33

19 And just as Yahweh our God had com-
manded us, we set out from Horeb and
went toward the hill country of the Amor-
ites, through all the vast and terrifying
wilderness you have seen. When we
reached Kadesh-barnea, 20 I said: "You
have reached the hill country of the Amor-
ites, which Yahweh our God is giving us.
21 See, Yahweh your God has placed the
land before you. Go up and take posses-
sion of it as Yahweh, the God of your fa-
thers, has told you. Do not be afraid or
discouraged."

22 Then all of you approached me and
said, "Let us send men ahead of us to
search out the land and bring us word of

DT 1:1 [NOTE] Deuteronomy is three long speeches by Moses, then a song, a blessing and his death. The Hebrew name is Devarim, words, from this first verse.

DT 1:8 [PROPHECY] Israel would enter and possess the land sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob → JOSH 21:43-45 · MEDIUM p.371

DT 1:10 [FULFILLS] Abraham's offspring would be as many as the stars ← GEN 15:5 p.67

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

what route to follow and which cities to enter."

23 The plan seemed good to me, so I selected twelve men from among you, one from each tribe. 24 They left and went up into the hill country, and came to the Valley of Eshcol and spied out the land. 25 They took some of the fruit of the land in their hands, carried it down to us, and brought us word: "It is a good land that Yahweh our God is giving us."

ISRAEL'S REBELLION // NUMBERS 14:1–12

26 But you were unwilling to go up; you rebelled against the command of Yahweh your God. 27 You grumbled in your tents and said, "Because Yahweh hates us, He has brought us out of the land of Egypt to deliver us into the hand of the Amorites to be annihilated. 28 Where can we go? Our brothers have made our hearts melt, saying: 'The people are larger and taller than we are; the cities are large, with walls up to the heavens. We even saw the descendants of the Anakim there.'"

29 So I said to you: "Do not be terrified or afraid of them! 30 Yahweh your God, who goes before you, will fight for you, just as you saw Him do for you in Egypt 31 and in the wilderness, where Yahweh your God carried you, as a man carries his son, all the way by which you traveled until you reached this place."

32 But in spite of all this, you did not trust Yahweh your God, 33 who went before you on the journey, in the fire by night and in the cloud by day, to seek out a place for you to camp and to show you the road to travel.

ISRAEL'S PENALTY // NUMBERS 14:20–35

34 When Yahweh heard your words, He grew angry and swore an oath, saying, 35 "Not one of the men of this evil generation shall see the good land I swore to give your fathers, 36 except Caleb son of Jephunneh. He will see it, and I will give him and his descendants the land on which he has set foot, because he followed Yahweh wholeheartedly."

37 Yahweh was also angry with me on your account, and He said, "Not even you shall enter the land. 38 Joshua son of Nun, who stands before you, will enter it. Encourage him, for he will enable Israel to inherit the land. 39 And the little ones you said would become captives—your children who on that day did not know good from evil—will enter the land that I will give them, and they will possess it. 40 But you are to turn back and head for the wilderness along the route to the Red Sea."

THE DEFEAT AT HORMAH // NUMBERS 14:40–45

41 "We have sinned against Yahweh," you replied. "We will go up and fight, as Yahweh our God has commanded us." Then each of you put on his weapons of war, thinking it easy to go up into the hill country.

42 But Yahweh said to me, "Tell them not to go up and fight, for I am not with you to keep you from defeat by your enemies."

43 So I spoke to you, but you would not listen. You rebelled against the command of Yahweh and presumptuously went up into the hill country.

44 Then the Amorites who lived in the hills came out against you and chased you like a swarm of bees. They routed you from Seir all the way to Hormah. 45 And you returned and wept before Yahweh, but He would not listen to your voice or give ear to you.

46 For this reason you stayed in Kadesh for a long time—a very long time.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses retells the long walk around Edom, Moab and Ammon. God says to leave those nations alone, because He gave them their land too. Then Sihon, king of Heshbon, refuses to let Israel pass, and God hands his whole kingdom to Israel. The trip finally starts going somewhere.

WANDERINGS IN THE WILDERNESS

1 Then we turned back and headed for the wilderness by way of the Red Sea, as Yahweh had instructed me, and for many days we wandered around Mount Seir.

DT 1:28 [DEMONIC] The people are taller than we are, and we saw the Anakim

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

2 At this time Yahweh said to me, 3 "You
have been wandering around this hill
country long enough; turn to the north 4
and command the people: 'You will pass
through the territory of your brothers, the
descendants of Esau, who live in Seir.
They will be afraid of you, so you must be
very careful. 5 Do not provoke them, for I
will not give you any of their land, not
even a footprint, because I have given
Mount Seir to Esau as his possession. 6
You are to pay them in silver for the food
you eat and the water you drink.'"

7 Indeed, Yahweh your God has blessed
you in all the work of your hands. He has
watched over your journey through this
vast wilderness. Yahweh your God has
been with you these forty years, and you
have lacked nothing.

8 So we passed by our brothers, the de-
scendants of Esau, who live in Seir. We
turned away from the Arabah road, which
comes up from Elath and Ezion-geber,
and traveled along the road of the Wilder-
ness of Moab. 9 Then Yahweh said to me,
"Do not harass the Moabites or provoke
them to war, for I will not give you any of
their land, because I have given Ar to the
descendants of Lot as their possession."

10 (The Emites used to live there, a people
great and many, as tall as the Anakites. 11
Like the Anakites, they were also regarded
as Rephaim, though the Moabites called
them Emites. 12 The Horites used to live in
Seir, but the descendants of Esau drove
them out. They destroyed the Horites
from before them and settled in their
place, just as Israel did in the land that
Yahweh gave them as their possession.)

13 "Now arise and cross over the Brook of
Zered."

So we crossed over the Brook of Zered.

14 The time we spent traveling from
Kadesh-barnea until we crossed over the
Brook of Zered was thirty-eight years, un-
til that entire generation of fighting men
had perished from the camp, as Yahweh
had sworn to them. 15 Indeed, Yahweh's
hand was against them, to eliminate them
from the camp, until they had all perished.

16 Now when all the fighting men among
the people had died, 17 Yahweh said to me,
18 "Today you are going to cross the bor-
der of Moab at Ar. 19 But when you get
close to the Ammonites, do not harass
them or provoke them, for I will not give
you any of the land of the Ammonites. I
have given it to the descendants of Lot as
their possession."

20 (That too was regarded as the land of
the Rephaim, who used to live there,
though the Ammonites called them Za-
mzummites. 21 They were a people great
and many, as tall as the Anakites. But Yah-
weh destroyed them from before the Am-
monites, who drove them out and settled
in their place, 22 just as He had done for
the descendants of Esau who lived in Seir,
when He destroyed the Horites from be-
fore them. They drove them out and have
lived in their place to this day. 23 And the
Avvim, who lived in villages as far as
Gaza, were destroyed by the Caphtorites,
who came out of Caphtor and settled in
their place.)

THE DEFEAT OF SIHON // NUMBERS 21:21–30

24 "Arise, set out, and cross the Arnon Val-
ley. See, I have delivered into your hand
Sihon the Amorite, king of Heshbon, and
his land. Begin to take possession of it
and engage him in battle. 25 This very day I
will begin to put the dread and fear of you
upon all the nations under heaven. They
will hear the reports of you and tremble in
anguish because of you."

26 So from the Wilderness of Kedemoth I
sent messengers with an offer of peace to
Sihon king of Heshbon, saying, 27 "Let us
pass through your land; we will stay on
the main road. We will not turn to the right
or to the left. 28 You can sell us food to eat
and water to drink in exchange for silver.
Only let us pass through on foot, 29 just as
the descendants of Esau who live in Seir
and the Moabites who live in Ar did for us,

DT 2:10 [DEMONIC] Emim, Zamzummim, Rephaim — gi-
ant races destroyed by other nations

DT 2:20 [DEMONIC] Emim, Zamzummim, Rephaim — gi-
ant races destroyed by other nations

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

until we cross the Jordan into the land that Yahweh our God is giving us."

30 But Sihon king of Heshbon would not let us pass through, for Yahweh your God had made his spirit stubborn and his heart obstinate, that He might deliver him into your hand, as is the case this day.

31 Then Yahweh said to me, "See, I have begun to deliver Sihon and his land over to you. Now begin to conquer and possess his land."

32 So Sihon and his whole army came out for battle against us at Jahaz. 33 And Yahweh our God delivered him over to us, and we defeated him and his sons and his whole army.

34 At that time we captured all his cities and devoted to destruction the people of every city, including women and children. We left no survivors. 35 We carried off for ourselves only the livestock and the plunder from the cities we captured.

36 From Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley, along with the city in the valley, even as far as Gilead, not one city had walls too high for us. Yahweh our God gave us all of them. 37 But you did not go near the land of the Ammonites, or the land along the banks of the Jabbok River, or the cities of the hill country, or any place that Yahweh our God had forbidden.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Og, king of Bashan, comes out to fight and loses too. His iron bed was 13½ feet long, and it was still kept in Rabbah. Moses gives the land east of the Jordan to Reuben, Gad and half of Manasseh. Then he begs God to let him cross over, and God says, That is enough. Do not bring it up again.

THE DEFEAT OF OG // NUMBERS 21:31–35

1 Then we turned and went up the road to Bashan, and Og king of Bashan and his whole army came out to meet us in battle at Edrei. 2 But Yahweh said to me, "Do not fear him, for I have delivered him into your hand, along with all his people and his land. Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites, who lived in Heshbon."

3 So Yahweh our God also delivered Og king of Bashan and his whole army into our hands. We struck them down until no survivor was left.

4 At that time we captured all sixty of his cities. There was not a single city we failed to take—the entire region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan. 5 All these cities were fortified with high walls and gates and bars, and there were many more unwalled villages. 6 We devoted them to destruction, as we had done to Sihon king of Heshbon, utterly destroying the men, women, and children of every city.

7 But all the livestock and plunder of the cities we carried off for ourselves.

8 At that time we took from the two kings of the Amorites the land across the Jordan, from the Arnon Valley as far as Mount Hermon— 9 which the Sidonians call Sirion but the Amorites call Senir— 10 all the cities of the plateau, all of Gilead, and all of Bashan as far as the cities of Salecah and Edrei in the kingdom of Og.

11 (For only Og king of Bashan had remained of the remnant of the Rephaim. His bed of iron, 13½ feet long and 6 feet wide, is still in Rabbah of the Ammonites.)

LAND DIVISION EAST OF THE JORDAN // NUMBERS 32:1–42; JOSHUA 13:8–14

12 So at that time we took possession of this land. To the Reubenites and Gadites I gave the land beyond Aroer along the Arnon Valley, and half the hill country of Gilead, along with its cities.

13 To the half-tribe of Manasseh I gave the rest of Gilead and all of Bashan, the kingdom of Og. (The entire region of Argob, the whole territory of Bashan, used to be called the land of the Rephaim.) 14 Jair, a descendant of Manasseh, took the whole region of Argob as far as the border of the Geshurites and Maacathites. He renamed

- **DT 3:11 [DEMONIC]** Og king of Bashan had an iron bed 13½ feet long and 6 feet wide
- **DT 3:11 [NOTE]** Some think Og's iron bed was really a coffin made of black basalt, an iron colored stone. Hundreds of ancient stone tombs called dolmens still stand in the old land of Bashan.
- **DT 3:13 [DEMONIC]** Bashan was called the land of the Rephaim

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Bashan after himself, Havvoth-jair, by which it is called to this day.

15 To Machir I gave Gilead, 16 and to the Reubenites and Gadites I gave the territory from Gilead to the Arnon Valley (the middle of the valley was the border) and up to the Jabbok River, the border of the Ammonites. 17 The Jordan River in the Arabah bordered it from Chinnereth to the Sea of the Arabah (the Salt Sea) with the slopes of Pisgah to the east.

18 At that time I commanded you: "Yahweh your God has given you this land to possess. All your men of valor are to cross over, armed for battle, ahead of your brothers, the Israelites. 19 But your wives, your children, and your livestock—I know that you have much livestock—may remain in the cities I have given you, 20 until Yahweh gives rest to your brothers as He has to you, and they too have taken possession of the land that Yahweh your God is giving them across the Jordan. Then each of you may return to the possession I have given you."

21 And at that time I commanded Joshua: "Your own eyes have seen all that Yahweh your God has done to these two kings. Yahweh will do the same to all the kingdoms you are about to enter. 22 Do not be afraid of them, for Yahweh your God Himself will fight for you."

MOSES FORBIDDEN TO CROSS THE JORDAN // NUMBERS 27:12–17

23 At that time I also pleaded with Yahweh: 24 "O Lord Yahweh, You have begun to show Your greatness and power to Your servant. For what god in heaven or on earth can perform such works and mighty acts as Yours? 25 Please let me cross over and see the good land beyond the Jordan—that pleasant hill country as well as Lebanon!"

26 But Yahweh was angry with me on account of you, and He would not listen to me. "That is enough," Yahweh said to me. "Do not speak to Me again about this matter. 27 Go to the top of Pisgah and look to the west and north and south and east. See the land with your own eyes, for you will not cross this Jordan. 28 But commission Joshua, encourage him, and strengthen him, for he will cross over ahead of the people and enable them to inherit the land that you will see."

29 So we stayed in the valley opposite Beth-peor.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses pleads with Israel to obey. God spoke from the fire at Horeb, but they saw no shape, so do not make any idol of Him. If they do, God will scatter them, but if they seek Him with all their heart, they will find Him. No other nation has a God this near.

AN EXHORTATION TO OBEDIENCE // DEUTERONOMY 11:1–7

1 Hear now, O Israel, the statutes and ordinances I am teaching you to follow, so that you may live and may enter and take possession of the land that Yahweh, the God of your fathers, is giving you. 2 You must not add to or subtract from what I command you, so that you may keep the commandments of Yahweh your God that I am giving you.

3 Your eyes have seen what Yahweh did at Baal-peor, for Yahweh your God destroyed from among you all who followed Baal of Peor. 4 But you who held fast to Yahweh your God are alive to this day, every one of you.

5 See, I have taught you statutes and ordinances just as Yahweh my God has commanded me, so that you may follow them in the land that you are about to enter and possess. 6 Observe them carefully, for this will show your wisdom and understanding in the sight of the peoples, who will hear of all these statutes and say, "Surely this great nation is a wise and understanding people."

7 For what nation is great enough to have a god as near to them as Yahweh our God is to us whenever we call on Him? 8 And

DT 3:27 [PROPHECY] Moses would see the land but not cross over. Joshua would lead the people in → DT 34:4-5; JOSH 1:1-2 p.332

DT 4:3 [DEMONIC] God destroyed all who followed Baal of Peor

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

what nation is great enough to have righteous statutes and ordinances like this entire law I set before you today?

9 Only be on your guard and diligently watch yourselves, so that you do not forget the things your eyes have seen, and so that they do not slip from your heart as long as you live. Teach them to your children and grandchildren. 10 The day you stood before Yahweh your God at Horeb, Yahweh said to me, "Gather the people before Me to hear My words, so that they may learn to fear Me all the days they live on the earth, and that they may teach them to their children."

11 You came near and stood at the base of the mountain, a mountain blazing with fire to the heavens, with black clouds and deep darkness. 12 And Yahweh spoke to you out of the fire. You heard the sound of the words but saw no form; there was only a voice. 13 He declared to you His covenant, which He commanded you to follow—the Ten Commandments that He wrote on two tablets of stone.

14 At that time Yahweh commanded me to teach you the statutes and ordinances you are to follow in the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess.

A WARNING AGAINST IDOLATRY // DEUTERONOMY 12:29–32; EZEKIEL 6:1–7

15 So since you saw no form of any kind on the day Yahweh spoke to you out of the fire at Horeb, be careful 16 that you do not act corruptly and make an idol for yourselves of any form or shape, whether in the likeness of a male or female, 17 of any beast that is on the earth or bird that flies in the air, 18 or of any creature that crawls on the ground or fish that is in the waters below.

19 When you look to the heavens and see the sun and moon and stars—all the host of heaven—do not be enticed to bow down and worship what Yahweh your God has apportioned to all the nations under heaven. 20 Yet Yahweh has taken you and brought you out of the iron furnace, out of Egypt, to be the people of His inheritance, as you are today.

21 Yahweh, however, was angry with me on account of you, and He swore that I would not cross the Jordan to enter the good land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance. 22 For I will not be crossing the Jordan, because I must die in this land. But you shall cross over and take possession of that good land.

23 Be careful that you do not forget the covenant of Yahweh your God that He made with you; do not make an idol for yourselves in the form of anything He has forbidden you. 24 *For Yahweh your God is a consuming fire, a jealous God.*

25 After you have children and grandchildren and you have been in the land a long time, if you then act corruptly and make an idol of any form—doing evil in the sight of Yahweh your God and provoking Him to anger— 26 I call heaven and earth as witnesses against you this day that you will quickly perish from the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess. You will not live long upon it, but will be utterly destroyed.

27 Then Yahweh will scatter you among the peoples, and only a few of you will survive among the nations to which Yahweh will drive you. 28 And there you will serve man-made gods of wood and stone, which cannot see or hear or eat or smell.

29 But if from there you will seek Yahweh your God, you will find Him if you seek Him with all your heart and with all your soul. 30 When you are in distress and all these things have happened to you, then in later days you will return to Yahweh your God and listen to His voice. 31 For Yahweh your God is a merciful God; He will not abandon you or destroy you or forget the covenant with your fathers, which He swore to them by oath.

DT 4:15 [DEMONIC] Do not make any idol or worship the sun, moon, and stars

DT 4:23 [DEMONIC] Making idols will bring exile to gods of wood and stone

DT 4:24 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:29 p.1995

DT 4:25 [PROPHECY] Israel's eventual idolatry would lead to exile and scattering → 2KI 17:6; 2KI 17:18-23; 2KI 25:11; 2KI 25:21 p.635

DT 4:29 [HEART] If you seek God with all your heart and soul, you will find Him.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

YAHWEH ALONE IS GOD

32 Indeed, ask now from one end of the
heavens to the other about the days that
long preceded you, from the day that God
created man on earth: Has anything as
great as this ever happened or been re-
ported? 33 Has a people ever heard the
voice of God speaking out of the fire, as
you have, and lived? 34 Or has any god
tried to take as his own a nation out of an-
other nation—by trials, signs, wonders,
and war, by a strong hand and an out-
stretched arm, and by great terrors—as
Yahweh your God did for you in Egypt,
before your eyes?

35 *You were shown these things so that you*
would know that Yahweh is God; there is no
other besides Him.

36 He let you hear His voice from heaven
to discipline you, and on earth He showed
you His great fire, and you heard His
words out of the fire. 37 Because He loved
your fathers, He chose their descendants
after them and brought you out of Egypt
by His presence and great power, 38 to
drive out before you nations greater and
mightier than you, and to bring you into
their land and give it to you for your inher-
itance, as it is this day.

39 Know therefore this day and take to
heart that Yahweh is God in heaven above
and on the earth below; there is no other.
40 Keep His statutes and commandments,
which I am giving you today, so that you
and your children after you may prosper,
and that you may live long in the land that
Yahweh your God is giving you for all
time.

CITIES OF REFUGE // NUMBERS 35:9–34; DEUTERONOMY 19:1–14; JOSHUA 20:1–9

41 Then Moses set aside three cities
across the Jordan to the east 42 to which a
manslayer could flee after killing his
neighbor unintentionally without prior
malice.

To save one's own life, he could flee to
one of these cities: 43 Bezer in the wilder-
ness on the plateau belonging to the
Reubenites, Ramoth in Gilead belonging to
the Gadites, or Golan in Bashan belonging
to the Manassites.

INTRODUCTION TO THE LAW

44 This is the law that Moses set before
the Israelites. 45 These are the testimonies,
statutes, and ordinances that Moses pro-
claimed to them after they had come out
of Egypt, 46 while they were in the valley
across the Jordan facing Beth-peor in the
land of Sihon king of the Amorites, who
lived in Heshbon and was defeated by
Moses and the Israelites after they had
come out of Egypt.

47 They took possession of the land be-
longing to Sihon and to Og king of
Bashan—the two Amorite kings across the
Jordan to the east— 48 extending from
Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley as far
as Mount Siyon (that is, Hermon), 49 in-
cluding all the Arabah on the east side of
the Jordan and as far as the Sea of the
Arabah, below the slopes of Pisgah.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses calls all Israel together and repeats the Ten Commandments that God spoke from the fire. The people were so scared of God's voice that they asked Moses to go near and listen for them. God said they had spoken well. If only they would always have such a heart.

THE COVENANT AT HOREB

1 Then Moses summoned all Israel and
said to them:

Hear, O Israel, the statutes and ordi-
nances that I declare in your hearing this
day. Learn them and observe them care-
fully. 2 Yahweh our God made a covenant
with us at Horeb.

3 He did not make this covenant with our
fathers, but with all of us who are alive
here today. 4 Yahweh spoke with you face
to face out of the fire on the mountain.

THE TEN COMMANDMENTS // EXODUS 20:1–17

5 At that time I was standing between Yah-
weh and you to declare to you the word of
Yahweh, because you were afraid of the
fire and would not go up the mountain.
And He said: 6 "I am Yahweh your God,

DT 4:35 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:32 p.1630

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.
7 You shall have no other gods before Me.
8 You shall not make for yourself an idol in the form of anything in the heavens above, on the earth below, or in the waters beneath. 9 You shall not bow down to them or worship them; for I, Yahweh your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on their children to the third and fourth generations of those who hate Me, 10 but showing loving devotion to a thousand generations of those who love Me and keep My commandments.
11 You shall not take the name of Yahweh your God in vain, for Yahweh will not leave anyone unpunished who takes His name in vain.
12 Observe the Sabbath day by keeping it holy, as Yahweh your God has commanded you. 13 Six days you shall labor and do all your work, 14 but the seventh day is a Sabbath to Yahweh your God, on which you must not do any work—neither you, nor your son or daughter, nor your manservant or maidservant, nor your ox or donkey or any of your livestock, nor the foreigner within your gates, so that your manservant and maidservant may rest as you do. 15 Remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt, and that Yahweh your God brought you out of there with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm. That is why Yahweh your God has commanded you to keep the Sabbath day.
16 *Honor your father and your mother, as Yahweh your God has commanded you, so that your days may be long and that it may go well with you in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.*
17 *You shall not murder.*
18 *You shall not commit adultery.*
19 You shall not steal.
20 You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.
21 *You shall not covet your neighbor's wife. You shall not covet your neighbor's house or field, or his manservant or maidservant, or his ox or donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor."*

MOSES INTERCEDES FOR THE PEOPLE // EXODUS 20:18–21; HEBREWS 12:18–29

22 Yahweh spoke these commandments in a loud voice to your whole assembly out of the fire, the cloud, and the deep darkness on the mountain; He added nothing more. And He wrote them on two tablets of stone and gave them to me.
23 And when you heard the voice out of the darkness while the mountain was blazing with fire, all the heads of your tribes and your elders approached me, 24 and you said, "Behold, Yahweh our God has shown us His glory and greatness, and we have heard His voice out of the fire. Today we have seen that a man can live even if God speaks with him. 25 But now, why should we die? For this great fire will consume us, and we will die, if we hear the voice of Yahweh our God any longer. 26 For who of all flesh has heard the voice of the living God speaking out of the fire, as we have, and survived? 27 Go near and listen to all that Yahweh our God says. Then you can tell us everything Yahweh our God tells you; we will listen and obey."
28 And Yahweh heard the words you spoke to me, and He said to me, "I have heard the words that these people have spoken to you. They have done well in all that they have spoken. 29 If only they had such a heart to fear Me and keep all My commandments always, so that it might be

- **DT 5:6 [NOTE]** THE TEN COMMANDMENTS AGAIN. They match Exodus 20 almost word for word. Two changes stand out: here the Sabbath remembers slavery in Egypt, 5:15, not creation, and the wife comes before the house in the last command, 5:21.
- **DT 5:6 [FIELD NOTES]** A copy of the Ten Commandments from about 150 to 100 BC. See the Nash Papyrus Field Notes page, p.292.
- **DT 5:7 [DEMONIC]** No other gods and no idols
- **DT 5:9 [DEMONIC]** The command against idols warns of iniquity to the third and fourth generation
- **DT 5:16 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → EPH 6:2-3 p.1888
- **DT 5:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:21 p.1557
- **DT 5:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 2:11 p.2003
- **DT 5:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:27 p.1557
- **DT 5:21 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 7:7 p.1806

GOD SPEAKING

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIND, DEBATED FOR THE EXACT DATE

THE NASH PAPYRUS

DEUTERONOMY 5:6 TO 21 · 6:4 TO 5 · EXODUS 20:2 TO 17



The Nash Papyrus, MS Or.233, Cambridge University Library. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A single sheet of papyrus, put together from a few pieces, with 24 lines of Hebrew. It holds the Ten Commandments, a short line of introduction, and the start of the Shema, Deuteronomy 6:4 to 5.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most experts date it to about 150 to 100 BC, by the shape of its letters. That makes it about a hundred years older than Jesus.

HOW BIG

About 5½ inches tall and 2½ inches wide.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

W. L. Nash, secretary of the Society of Biblical Archaeology, bought it from a dealer in Egypt in 1902. It was said to come from the Fayyum. Stanley Cook published it in 1903.

WHAT IT SAYS

The Ten Commandments here mix Exodus 20 and Deuteronomy 5. The Sabbath command gives the reason from Exodus, creation. The order is do not commit adultery, then do not murder, then do not steal, the same order as some copies of the Greek Bible, Luke 18:20 and Romans 13:9.

WHY TOGETHER

In Jesus' day the priests in the temple said the Ten Commandments and the Shema together every morning, Mishnah Tamid 5:1. Many think this sheet was used for prayer or teaching, maybe even from a phylactery, not copied from a whole scroll.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Cambridge University Library in England, MS Or.233.

THE BIG DEBATE

Cook first dated it to the 100s AD. In 1937 William Albright dated it to the 100s BC, and the Dead Sea Scrolls later backed that up. Scholars still argue over whether it is a Bible text or a prayer sheet.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not prove who wrote Deuteronomy or when. It shows the Ten Commandments and the Shema were already being read together before Jesus was born.

well with them and with their children forever. 30 Go and tell them: 'Return to your tents.' 31 But you stand here with Me, that I may speak to you all the commandments and statutes and ordinances you are to teach them to follow in the land that I am giving them to possess."

32 So be careful to do as Yahweh your God has commanded you; you are not to turn aside to the right or to the left. 33 You must walk in all the ways that Yahweh your God

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

has commanded you, so that you may live and prosper and prolong your days in the land that you will possess.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Hear, O Israel: Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One. Love Him with all your heart, soul and strength. Talk about His words at home, on the road, at bedtime and at breakfast. When you get rich in the land, do not forget who got you there. And when your kids ask why, tell them the story.

THE GREATEST COMMANDMENT // MATTHEW 22:34–40; MARK 12:28–34

1 These are the commandments and statutes and ordinances that Yahweh your God has instructed me to teach you to follow in the land that you are about to enter and possess, 2 so that you and your children and grandchildren may fear Yahweh your God all the days of your lives by keeping all His statutes and commandments that I give you, and so that your days may be prolonged. 3 Hear, O Israel, and be careful to observe them, so that you may prosper and multiply greatly in a land flowing with milk and honey, just as Yahweh, the God of your fathers, has promised you.

4 *Hear, O Israel: Yahweh our God, Yahweh is One.* 5 *And you shall love Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength.*

6 These words I am commanding you today are to be upon your hearts. 7 And you shall teach them diligently to your children and speak of them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up. 8 Tie them as reminders on your hands and bind them on your foreheads. 9 Write them on the doorposts of your houses and on your gates.

10 And when Yahweh your God brings you into the land He swore to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, that He would give you—a land with great and splendid cities that you did not build, 11 with houses full of every good thing with which you did not fill them, with wells that you did not dig, and with vineyards and olive groves that you did not plant—and when you eat and are satisfied, 12 be careful not to forget Yahweh who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.

13 *Fear Yahweh your God, serve Him only, and take your oaths in His name.* 14 Do not follow other gods, the gods of the peoples around you. 15 For Yahweh your God, who is among you, is a jealous God. Otherwise the anger of Yahweh your God will be kindled against you, and He will wipe you off the face of the earth.

16 *Do not test Yahweh your God as you tested Him at Massah.* 17 You are to diligently keep the commandments of Yahweh your God and the testimonies and statutes He has given you. 18 Do what is right and good in the sight of Yahweh, so that it may be well with you and that you may enter and possess the good land that Yahweh your God swore to give your fathers, 19 driving out all your enemies before you, as Yahweh has said.

TEACH YOUR CHILDREN

20 In the future, when your son asks, "What is the meaning of the decrees and

- **DT 6:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:29-30 p.1630
- **DT 6:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:32 p.1630
- **DT 6:4 [NOTABLE]** The Shema, named for its first Hebrew word, hear. Jews still pray it every morning and evening, and Jesus called the next verse the greatest commandment, Mark 12:29 to 30.
- **DT 6:4 [NOTE]** THE SHEMA. Shema is Hebrew for hear. One is echad, the same word used when a man and wife become one flesh, Genesis 2:24.
- **DT 6:5 [HEART]** Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul and strength.
- **DT 6:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 22:37 p.1584
- **DT 6:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:33 p.1630
- **DT 6:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 10:27 p.1668
- **DT 6:6 [HEART]** These words are to be on your heart.
- **DT 6:8 [NOTE]** Many Jews still tie small leather boxes called tefillin, with these verses inside, on the arm and forehead, and put a mezuzah on the doorpost, 6:9. Jesus mentions them in Matthew 23:5, and tefillin were found at Qumran.
- **DT 6:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 4:10 p.1555
- **DT 6:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 4:8 p.1654
- **DT 6:14 [DEMONIC]** Do not follow the gods of the peoples around you
- **DT 6:16 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 4:7 p.1555
- **DT 6:16 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 4:12 p.1654

DEMONIC

statutes and ordinances that Yahweh our God has commanded you?" 21 then you are to tell him, "We were slaves of Pharaoh in Egypt, but Yahweh brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand. 22 Before our eyes Yahweh inflicted great and devastating signs and wonders on Egypt, on Pharaoh, and on all his household. 23 But He brought us out from there to lead us in and give us the land that He had sworn to our fathers.

24 And Yahweh commanded us to observe all these statutes and to fear Yahweh our God, that we may always be prosperous and preserved, as we are to this day. 25 And if we are careful to observe every one of these commandments before Yahweh our God, as He has commanded us, then that will be our righteousness."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel is to destroy the nations of Canaan and their idols and not marry into them. Why did God choose Israel? Not because they were big. They were the fewest of all peoples. He chose them because He loved them and kept His promise. God will drive the nations out little by little.

DRIVE OUT THE NATIONS

1 When Yahweh your God brings you into the land that you are entering to possess, and He drives out before you many nations—the Hittites, Girgashites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites, seven nations larger and stronger than you— 2 and when Yahweh your God has delivered them over to you to defeat them, then you must devote them to complete destruction. Make no treaty with them and show them no mercy.

3 Do not intermarry with them. Do not give your daughters to their sons or take their daughters for your sons, 4 because they will turn your sons away from following Me to serve other gods. Then the anger of Yahweh will burn against you, and He will swiftly destroy you.

5 Instead, this is what you are to do to them: tear down their altars, smash their sacred pillars, cut down their Asherah poles, and burn their idols in the fire. 6 For you are a people holy to Yahweh your God. Yahweh your God has chosen you to be a people for His prized possession out of all peoples on the face of the earth.

7 Yahweh did not set His affection on you and choose you because you were more numerous than the other peoples, for you were the fewest of all peoples. 8 But because Yahweh loved you and kept the oath He swore to your fathers, He brought you out with a mighty hand and redeemed you from the house of slavery, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.

9 Know therefore that Yahweh your God is God, the faithful God who keeps His covenant of loving devotion for a thousand generations of those who love Him and keep His commandments. 10 But those who hate Him He repays to their faces with destruction; He will not hesitate to repay to his face the one who hates Him.

11 So keep the commandments and statutes and ordinances that I am giving you to follow this day.

THE PROMISES OF GOD // EXODUS 23:20–33

12 If you listen to these ordinances and keep them carefully, then Yahweh your God will keep His covenant and the loving devotion that He swore to your fathers. 13 He will love you and bless you and multiply you. He will bless the fruit of your womb and the produce of your land—your grain, new wine, and oil, the young of your herds and the lambs of your flocks—in the land that He swore to your fathers to give you. 14 You will be blessed above all peoples; among you there will be no barren man or woman or livestock.

15 And Yahweh will remove from you all sickness. He will not lay upon you any of the terrible diseases you knew in Egypt, but He will inflict them on all who hate you. 16 You must destroy all the peoples Yahweh your God will deliver to you. Do

DT 7:2 [NOTE] HOLY WAR. This is one of the hardest commands in the Bible. See the Big Question pages Holy War and the Canaanites, p.295.

DT 7:4 [DEMONIC] Tear down their altars and burn their idols

DEMONIC

not look on them with pity. Do not worship their gods, for that will be a snare to you.

17 You may say in your heart, "These nations are greater than we are; how can we drive them out?" 18 But do not be afraid of them. Be sure to remember what Yahweh your God did to Pharaoh and all Egypt: 19 the great trials that you saw, the signs and wonders, and the mighty hand and outstretched arm by which Yahweh your God brought you out. Yahweh your God will do the same to all the peoples you now fear.

20 Moreover, Yahweh your God will send the hornet against them until even the survivors hiding from you have perished. 21 Do not be terrified by them, for Yahweh your God, who is among you, is a great and awesome God.

22 Yahweh your God will drive out these nations before you little by little. You will not be enabled to eliminate them all at once, or the wild animals would multiply around you. 23 But Yahweh your God will give them over to you and throw them into great confusion, until they are destroyed. 24 He will hand their kings over to you, and you will wipe out their names from under heaven. No one will be able to stand against you; you will annihilate them.

25 You must burn up the images of their gods; do not covet the silver and gold that is on them or take it for yourselves, or you will be ensnared by it; for it is detestable to Yahweh your God. 26 And you must not bring any detestable thing into your house, or you, like it, will be set apart for destruction. You are to utterly detest and abhor it, because it is set apart for destruction.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HOLY WAR AND THE CANAANITES

Do Not Spare Them?

DEUTERONOMY 7:1 TO 6 · 9:4 TO 5 · 20:10 TO 18 · GENESIS 15:16

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

God told Israel to completely destroy the seven nations of Canaan, make no treaty with them, show them no mercy and not marry them, 7:1 to 3. In 20:16 to 18 the rules of war say to leave nothing that breathes alive in those cities, so they would not teach Israel their detestable practices. Cities farther away were to be offered peace first, 20:10 to 15.

THE HEBREW WORD

The word is herem. It means something set apart for God, often by destroying it so no one could take it for themselves. Other nations used the same idea. King Mesha of Moab bragged on a stone monument, about 840 BC, that he devoted a whole Israelite town to his god Chemosh.

WHY, ACCORDING TO THE BIBLE

Not because Israel was better. Moses says it plainly: It is not because of your righteousness, but because of the wickedness of these nations, 9:4 to 5. God told Abraham more than four hundred years earlier that the sin of the Amorites was not yet complete, Genesis 15:16. Moses names the sins in 12:31 and 18:9 to 12: idols, sorcery and burning their children in the fire.

GOD JUDGES ISRAEL TOO

The same chapters warn that if Israel worships idols, God will destroy them the same way, 8:19 to 20. Later He sent Israel into exile for the same sins, 2 Kings 17.

DT 7:16 [DEMONIC] Do not worship their gods, for that will be a snare
DT 7:25 [DEMONIC] Burn the images of their gods and do not keep the gold

THE HEART MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

How Christians Read It

JOSHUA 2 · JOSHUA 11:23 · JUDGES 1:27 TO 36 · MATTHEW 5:44

GOD'S JUDGMENT VIEW

Many Christians, from Augustine to today, say God has the right to judge, as He did at the flood and at Sodom. He waited more than four hundred years, and Israel was His tool for a judgment that happened once, in one place, at one time. It was never a pattern for anyone after.

THE BIG LANGUAGE VIEW

Some scholars, like Paul Copan and Nicholas Wolterstorff, say ancient war reports used sweeping words, the way a fan says his team wiped out the other team. They point out that Joshua says all the land was taken, but Judges 1 says many Canaanites were still living there. Others answer that the commands still read as real commands.

DRIVE OUT, NOT ONLY DESTROY

Some point out that many verses say God would drive the nations out little by little, 7:22, and that people could leave or join Israel. Rahab the Canaanite and her family were saved, Joshua 6:25, and she is in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:5.

THE LATER STORY VIEW

Many critical scholars say these chapters were written centuries later, in Josiah's day, as a strong warning against idols, and that the conquest did not happen this way.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

These are some of the hardest verses in the Bible, and honest readers should feel that. They are not a command for anyone today. Jesus told us to love our enemies, Matthew 5:44. See also The War on Midian pages in Numbers, p.273.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Remember the desert. God let you go hungry and fed you manna to teach you that man does not live on bread alone. Your clothes did not wear out and your feet did not swell for forty years. When you are full and rich, do not say, I did this myself.

REMEMBER YAHWEH YOUR GOD

1 You must carefully follow every commandment I am giving you today, so that
you may live and multiply, and enter and
possess the land that Yahweh swore to
give your fathers. 2 Remember that these
forty years Yahweh your God led you all
the way in the wilderness, so that He
might humble you and test you in order to
know what was in your heart, whether or
not you would keep His commandments.
3 *He humbled you, and in your hunger He gave*
you manna to eat, which neither you nor your
fathers had known, so that you might under-
stand that man does not live on bread alone,
but on every word that comes from the mouth
of Yahweh. 4 Your clothing did not wear out
and your feet did not swell during these
forty years.
5 So know in your heart that just as a man
disciplines his son, so Yahweh your God
disciplines you. 6 Therefore you shall keep
the commandments of Yahweh your God,
walking in His ways and fearing Him.
7 For Yahweh your God is bringing you into
a good land, a land of brooks and fountains and springs that flow through the
valleys and hills; 8 a land of wheat, barley,
vines, fig trees, and pomegranates; a land
of olive oil and honey; 9 a land where you
will eat food without scarcity, where you
will lack nothing; a land whose rocks are
iron and whose hills are ready to be mined
for copper. 10 When you eat and are satisfied, you are to bless Yahweh your God
for the good land that He has given you.
11 Be careful not to forget Yahweh your
God by failing to keep His commandments
and ordinances and statutes, which I am
giving you this day. 12 Otherwise, when
you eat and are satisfied, when you build
fine houses in which to dwell, 13 and when
your herds and flocks grow large and your
silver and gold increase and all that you
have is multiplied, 14 then your heart will

- **DT 8:2 [HEART]** God tested Israel in the desert to show what was really in their heart.
- **DT 8:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 4:4 p.1554
- **DT 8:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 4:4 p.1654
- **DT 8:4 [MIRACLE]** Israel's clothes did not wear out for forty years

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

become proud, and you will forget Yahweh your God who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.

15 He led you through the vast and terrifying wilderness with its venomous snakes and scorpions, a thirsty and waterless land. He brought you water from the rock of flint. 16 He fed you in the wilderness with manna that your fathers had not known, in order to humble you and test you, so that in the end He might cause you to prosper.

17 You might say in your heart, "The power and strength of my hands have made this wealth for me." 18 But remember that it is Yahweh your God who gives you the power to gain wealth, in order to confirm His covenant that He swore to your fathers even to this day.

19 If you ever forget Yahweh your God and go after other gods to worship and bow down to them, I testify against you today that you will surely perish. 20 Like the nations that Yahweh has destroyed before you, so you will perish if you do not obey Yahweh your God.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not think God is giving you the land because you are such good people. You are stubborn. Moses retells the golden calf, how he smashed the tablets, and how he lay face down before God for forty days and nights to beg for their lives. This is not a pep talk. It is an honest one.

ASSURANCE OF VICTORY

1 Hear, O Israel: Today you are about to cross the Jordan to go in and dispossess nations greater and stronger than you, with large cities fortified to the heavens. 2 The people are strong and tall, the descendants of the Anakim. You know about them, and you have heard it said, "Who can stand up to the sons of Anak?" 3 But understand that today Yahweh your God goes across ahead of you as a consuming fire; He will destroy them and subdue them before you. And you will drive them out and annihilate them swiftly, as Yahweh has promised you.

4 When Yahweh your God has driven them out before you, do not say in your heart, "Because of my righteousness Yahweh has brought me in to possess this land." Rather, Yahweh is driving out these nations before you because of their wickedness.

5 It is not because of your righteousness or uprightness of heart that you are going in to possess their land, but it is because of their wickedness that Yahweh your God is driving out these nations before you, to keep the promise He swore to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. 6 Understand, then, that it is not because of your righteousness that Yahweh your God is giving you this good land to possess, for you are a stiff-necked people.

THE GOLDEN CALF // EXODUS 32:1–35; ACTS 7:39–43

7 Remember this, and never forget how you provoked Yahweh your God in the wilderness. From the day you left the land of Egypt until you reached this place, you have been rebelling against Yahweh.

8 At Horeb you provoked Yahweh, and He was angry enough to destroy you. 9 When I went up on the mountain to receive the tablets of stone, the tablets of the covenant that Yahweh made with you, I stayed on the mountain forty days and forty nights. I ate no bread and drank no water.

10 Then Yahweh gave me the two stone tablets, inscribed by the finger of God with the exact words that Yahweh spoke to you out of the fire on the mountain on the day of the assembly. 11 And at the end of forty days and forty nights, Yahweh gave me the two stone tablets, the tablets of the covenant. 12 And Yahweh said to me, "Get up and go down from here at once, for your people, whom you brought out of Egypt, have corrupted themselves. How quickly they have turned aside from the way that I commanded them! They

DT 8:14 **[HEART]** When you are full and rich, do not let your heart become proud and forget God.
DT 8:19 **[DEMONIC]** Going after other gods means you will surely perish
DT 9:1 **[DEMONIC]** Who can stand against the sons of Anak? God goes before you

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

have made for themselves a molten image."

13 Yahweh also said to me, "I have seen this people, and they are indeed a stiff-necked people. 14 Leave Me alone, so that I may destroy them and blot out their name from under heaven. Then I will make you into a nation mightier and greater than they are."

15 So I went back down the mountain while it was blazing with fire, with the two tablets of the covenant in my hands. 16 And I saw how you had sinned against Yahweh your God; you had made for yourselves a molten calf. You had turned aside quickly from the way that Yahweh had commanded you. 17 So I took the two tablets and threw them out of my hands, shattering them before your eyes.

18 Then I fell down before Yahweh for forty days and forty nights, as I had done the first time. I did not eat bread or drink water because of all the sin you had committed in doing what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and provoking Him to anger. 19 *For I was afraid of the anger and wrath that Yahweh had directed against you, enough to destroy you. But Yahweh listened to me this time as well.*

20 Yahweh was angry enough with Aaron to destroy him, but at that time I also prayed for Aaron. 21 And I took that sinful thing, the calf you had made, and burned it in the fire. Then I crushed it and ground it to powder as fine as dust, and I cast it into the stream that came down from the mountain.

22 You continued to provoke Yahweh at Taberah, at Massah, and at Kibroth-hattaavah. 23 And when Yahweh sent you out from Kadesh-barnea, He said, "Go up and possess the land that I have given you."

But you rebelled against the command of Yahweh your God. You neither believed Him nor obeyed Him. 24 You have been rebelling against Yahweh since the day I came to know you. 25 So I fell down before Yahweh for forty days and forty nights, because Yahweh had said He would destroy you.

26 And I prayed to Yahweh and said, "O Lord Yahweh, do not destroy Your people, Your inheritance, whom You redeemed through Your greatness and brought out of Egypt with a mighty hand. 27 Remember Your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Overlook the stubbornness of this people and the wickedness of their sin. 28 Otherwise, those in the land from which You brought us out will say, 'Because Yahweh was not able to bring them into the land He had promised them, and because He hated them, He has brought them out to kill them in the wilderness.' 29 But they are Your people, Your inheritance, whom You brought out by Your great power and outstretched arm."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Moses to cut two new tablets, and He writes the Ten Commandments again. They go in the ark. Then Moses asks, What does God want? To fear Him, walk in His ways, love Him and serve Him with all your heart. Circumcise your hearts. Love the foreigner, because you were foreigners in Egypt.

NEW STONE TABLETS // EXODUS 34:1–9

1 At that time Yahweh said to me, "Chisel out two stone tablets like the originals, come up to Me on the mountain, and make an ark of wood. 2 And I will write on the tablets the words that were on the first tablets, which you broke; and you are to place them in the ark."

3 So I made an ark of acacia wood, chiseled out two stone tablets like the originals, and went up the mountain with the two tablets in my hands. 4 And Yahweh wrote on the tablets what had been written previously, the Ten Commandments that He had spoken to you on the mountain out of the fire on the day of the assembly. Yahweh gave them to me, 5 and I went back down the mountain and placed the tablets in the ark I had made, as Yah-

DT 9:12 **[DEMONIC]** Moses retells the sin of the golden calf

DT 9:19 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:21 p.1995

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

weh had commanded me; and there they have remained.

6 The Israelites traveled from Beeroth Bene-jaakan to Moserah, where Aaron died and was buried, and Eleazar his son succeeded him as priest. 7 From there they traveled to Gudgodah, and from Gudgodah to Jotbathah, a land with streams of water.

8 At that time Yahweh set apart the tribe of Levi to carry the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, to stand before Yahweh to serve Him, and to pronounce blessings in His name, as they do to this day. 9 That is why Levi has no portion or inheritance among his brothers; Yahweh is his inheritance, as Yahweh your God promised him.

10 I stayed on the mountain forty days and forty nights, like the first time, and that time Yahweh again listened to me and agreed not to destroy you.

11 Then Yahweh said to me, "Get up. Continue your journey ahead of the people, that they may enter and possess the land that I swore to their fathers to give them."

A CALL TO OBEDIENCE // JOSHUA 24:14–28

12 And now, O Israel, what does Yahweh your God ask of you but to fear Yahweh your God by walking in all His ways, to love Him, to serve Yahweh your God with all your heart and with all your soul, 13 and to keep the commandments and statutes of Yahweh that I am giving you this day for your own good?

14 Behold, to Yahweh your God belong the heavens, even the highest heavens, and the earth and everything in it. 15 Yet Yahweh has set His affection on your fathers and loved them. And He has chosen you, their descendants after them, above all the peoples, even to this day.

16 Circumcise your hearts, therefore, and stiffen your necks no more. 17 For Yahweh your God is God of gods and Lord of lords, the great, mighty, and awesome God, showing no partiality and accepting no bribe. 18 He executes justice for the fatherless and widow, and He loves the foreigner, giving him food and clothing. 19 So you also must love the foreigner, since you yourselves were foreigners in the land of Egypt.

20 You are to fear Yahweh your God and serve Him. Hold fast to Him and take your oaths in His name. 21 He is your praise and He is your God, who has done for you these great and awesome wonders that your eyes have seen. 22 Your fathers went down to Egypt, seventy in all, and now Yahweh your God has made you as numerous as the stars in the sky.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Love God and keep His commands, and He will send the rain in its season. Teach these words to your kids and write them on your doorposts. Today you have a choice: a blessing on Mount Gerizim or a curse on Mount Ebal. Choose wisely. There will be a test.

OBEDIENCE AND DISCIPLINE // DEUTERONOMY 4:1–14

1 You shall therefore love Yahweh your God and always keep His charge, His statutes, His ordinances, and His commandments.

2 Know this day that it is not your children who have known and seen the discipline of Yahweh your God: His greatness, His mighty hand, and His outstretched arm; 3 the signs and works He did in Egypt to Pharaoh king of Egypt and all his land; 4 what He did to the Egyptian army and horses and chariots when He made the waters of the Red Sea engulf them as they pursued you, and how He destroyed them completely, even to this day; 5 what He did for you in the wilderness until you reached this place; 6 and what He did in the midst of all the Israelites to Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab the Reubenite, when the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them, their households, their tents, and every living thing that belonged to them.

7 For it is your own eyes that have seen every great work that Yahweh has done.

DT 10:16 [HEART] God tells Israel to cut away what covers their hearts and stop being stubborn. The heart, not just the body, has to belong to God.

THE HEART DEMONIC

GOD'S GREAT BLESSINGS // JOSHUA 1:1–9

8 You shall therefore keep every commandment I am giving you today, so that you may have the strength to go in and possess the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess, 9 and so that you may live long in the land that Yahweh swore to your fathers to give them and their descendants, a land flowing with milk and honey.

10 For the land that you are entering to possess is not like the land of Egypt, from which you have come, where you sowed your seed and irrigated on foot, like a vegetable garden. 11 But the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess is a land of mountains and valleys that drinks in the rain from heaven. 12 It is a land for which Yahweh your God cares; the eyes of Yahweh your God are always on it, from the beginning to the end of the year.

13 So if you carefully obey the commandments I am giving you today, to love Yahweh your God and to serve Him with all your heart and with all your soul, 14 then I will provide rain for your land in season, the autumn and spring rains, that you may gather your grain, new wine, and oil. 15 And I will provide grass in the fields for your livestock, and you will eat and be satisfied.

16 But be careful that you are not enticed to turn aside to worship and bow down to other gods, 17 or the anger of Yahweh will be kindled against you. He will shut the heavens so that there will be no rain, nor will the land yield its produce, and you will soon perish from the good land that Yahweh is giving you.

REMEMBER GOD'S WORDS

18 Fix these words of mine in your hearts and minds; tie them as reminders on your hands and bind them on your foreheads. 19 Teach them to your children, speaking about them when you sit at home and when you walk along the road, when you lie down and when you get up. 20 Write them on the doorposts of your houses and on your gates, 21 so that as long as the heavens are above the earth, your days and those of your children may be multiplied in the land that Yahweh swore to give your fathers.

22 For if you carefully keep all these commandments I am giving you to follow—to love Yahweh your God, to walk in all His ways, and to hold fast to Him— 23 then Yahweh will drive out all these nations before you, and you will dispossess nations greater and stronger than you. 24 Every place where the sole of your foot treads will be yours. Your territory will extend from the wilderness to Lebanon, and from the Euphrates River to the Western Sea. 25 No man will be able to stand against you; Yahweh your God will put the fear and dread of you upon all the land, wherever you set foot, as He has promised you.

A BLESSING AND A CURSE

26 See, today I am setting before you a blessing and a curse— 27 a blessing if you obey the commandments of Yahweh your God that I am giving you today, 28 but a curse if you disobey the commandments of Yahweh your God and turn aside from the path I command you today by following other gods, which you have not known.

29 When Yahweh your God brings you into the land you are entering to possess, you are to proclaim the blessing on Mount Gerizim and the curse on Mount Ebal. 30 Are not these mountains across the Jordan, west of the road toward the sunset, in the land of the Canaanites who live in the Arabah opposite Gilgal near the Oak of Moreh?

31 For you are about to cross the Jordan to enter and possess the land that Yahweh your God is giving you. When you take possession of it and settle in it, 32 be care-

DT 11:14 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:7 p.2007
DT 11:16 [HEART] Be careful or your heart will be deceived and you will turn to other gods.
DT 11:16 [DEMONIC] Do not be enticed to worship other gods
DT 11:18 [HEART] Fix these words in your hearts and minds.
DT 11:26 [DEMONIC] God sets before Israel a blessing and a curse

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

ful to follow all the statutes and ordinances that I am setting before you today.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

In the land, tear down every pagan shrine. Do not worship God however you want. Bring your offerings to the one place He will choose. You can eat meat at home, just not the blood. And never copy the nations, who even burned their own children for their gods.

ONE PLACE FOR WORSHIP

1 These are the statutes and ordinances you must be careful to follow all the days you live in the land that Yahweh, the God of your fathers, has given you to possess.

2 Destroy completely all the places where the nations you are dispossessing have served their gods—atop the high mountains, on the hills, and under every green tree. 3 Tear down their altars, smash their sacred pillars, burn up their Asherah poles, cut down the idols of their gods, and wipe out their names from every place. 4 You shall not worship Yahweh your God in this way.

5 Instead, you must seek the place Yahweh your God will choose from among all your tribes to establish as a dwelling for His Name, and there you must go. 6 To that place you are to bring your burnt offerings and sacrifices, your tithes and heave offerings, your vow offerings and freewill offerings, as well as the firstborn of your herds and flocks. 7 There, in the presence of Yahweh your God, you and your households shall eat and rejoice in all you do, because Yahweh your God has blessed you.

8 You are not to do as we are doing here today, where everyone does what seems right in his own eyes. 9 For you have not yet come to the resting place and the inheritance that Yahweh your God is giving you.

10 When you cross the Jordan and live in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance, and He gives you rest from all the enemies around you and you dwell securely, 11 then Yahweh your God will choose a dwelling for His Name. And there you are to bring everything I command you: your burnt offerings and sacrifices, your tithes and special gifts, and all the choice offerings you vow to Yahweh. 12 And you shall rejoice before Yahweh your God—you, your sons and daughters, your menservants and maidservants, and the Levite within your gates, since he has no portion or inheritance among you.

13 Be careful not to offer your burnt offerings in just any place you see; 14 you must offer them only in the place Yahweh will choose in one of your tribal territories, and there you shall do all that I command you.

15 But whenever you want, you may slaughter and eat meat within any of your gates, according to the blessing Yahweh your God has given you. Both the ceremonially clean and unclean may eat it as they would a gazelle or deer, 16 but you must not eat the blood; pour it on the ground like water.

17 Within your gates you must not eat the tithe of your grain or new wine or oil, the firstborn of your herds or flocks, any of the offerings that you have vowed to give, or your freewill offerings or special gifts. 18 Instead, you must eat them in the presence of Yahweh your God at the place Yahweh your God will choose—you, your sons and daughters, your menservants and maidservants, and the Levite within your gates. Rejoice before Yahweh your God in all you do, 19 and be careful not to neglect the Levites as long as you live in your land.

20 When Yahweh your God expands your territory as He has promised, and you crave meat and say, "I want to eat meat," you may eat it whenever you want. 21 If the place where Yahweh your God chooses to put His Name is too far from you, then you may slaughter any of the herd or flock He has given you, as I have commanded you,

DT 12:2 [DEMONIC] Destroy every place where the nations served their gods
DT 12:5 [PROPHECY] God would choose one place to put His Name → 1KI 8:29; 2CH 6:6 p.558

DEMONIC

and you may eat it within your gates whenever you want. 22 Indeed, you may eat it as you would eat a gazelle or deer; both the ceremonially unclean and the clean may eat it. 23 Only be sure not to eat the blood, because the blood is the life, and you must not eat the life with the meat. 24 You must not eat the blood; pour it on the ground like water. 25 Do not eat it, so that it may go well with you and your children after you, because you will be doing what is right in the eyes of Yahweh.

26 But you are to take your holy things and your vow offerings and go to the place Yahweh will choose. 27 Present the meat and blood of your burnt offerings on the altar of Yahweh your God. The blood of your other sacrifices must be poured out beside the altar of Yahweh your God, but you may eat the meat. 28 Be careful to obey all these things I command you, so that it may always go well with you and your children after you, because you will be doing what is good and right in the eyes of Yahweh your God.

A WARNING AGAINST IDOLATRY // DEUTERONOMY 4:15–31; EZEKIEL 6:1–7

29 When Yahweh your God cuts off before you the nations you are entering to dispossess, and you drive them out and live in their land, 30 be careful not to be ensnared by their ways after they have been destroyed before you. Do not inquire about their gods, asking, "How do these nations serve their gods? I will do likewise."

31 You must not worship Yahweh your God in this way, because they practice for their gods every abomination which Yahweh hates. They even burn their sons and daughters in the fire as sacrifices to their gods.

32 See that you do everything I command you; do not add to it or subtract from it.

DT 12:29 **[DEMONIC]** The nations burn their children for their gods

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

If a prophet does a real miracle and then says, Let's follow other gods, do not listen. God is testing you. Not even your brother, your child or your best friend gets a pass if they try to lead you away. A whole town that turns to idols must be destroyed.

IDOLATERS TO BE PUT TO DEATH

1 If a prophet or dreamer of dreams arises among you and proclaims a sign or wonder to you, 2 and if the sign or wonder he has spoken to you comes about, but he says, "Let us follow other gods (which you have not known) and let us worship them," 3 you must not listen to the words of that prophet or dreamer. For Yahweh your God is testing you to find out whether you love Him with all your heart and with all your soul. 4 You are to follow Yahweh your God and fear Him. Keep His commandments and listen to His voice; serve Him and hold fast to Him.

5 Such a prophet or dreamer must be put to death, because he has advocated rebellion against Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt and redeemed you from the house of slavery; he has tried to turn you from the way in which Yahweh your God has commanded you to walk. So you must purge the evil from among you.

6 If your very own brother, or your son or daughter, or the wife you embrace, or your closest friend secretly entices you, saying, "Let us go and worship other gods" (which neither you nor your fathers have known, 7 the gods of the peoples around you, whether near or far, whether from one end of the earth or the other), 8 you must not yield to him or listen to him. Show him no pity, and do not spare him or shield him.

9 Instead, you must surely kill him. Your hand must be the first against him to put him to death, and then the hands of all the people. 10 Stone him to death for trying to

DT 13:1 **[DEMONIC]** Do not listen to a prophet who says follow other gods

DT 13:5 **[DEMONIC]** Anyone who entices you to other gods must not be spared

DEMONIC

turn you away from Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. 11 Then all Israel will hear and be afraid, and will never again do such a wicked thing among you.

IDOLATROUS CITIES TO BE DESTROYED

12 If, regarding one of the cities Yahweh your God is giving you to inhabit, you hear it said 13 that wicked men have arisen from among you and have led the people of their city astray, saying, "Let us go and serve other gods" (which you have not known), 14 then you must inquire, investigate, and interrogate thoroughly. And if it is established with certainty that this abomination has been committed among you, 15 you must surely put the inhabitants of that city to the sword. Devote to destruction all its people and livestock.

16 And you are to gather all its plunder in the middle of the public square, and completely burn the city and all its plunder as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh your God. The city must remain a mound of ruins forever, never to be rebuilt.

17 Nothing devoted to destruction shall cling to your hands, so that Yahweh will turn from His fierce anger, grant you mercy, show you compassion, and multiply you as He swore to your fathers, 18 because you obey Yahweh your God, keeping all His commandments I am giving you today and doing what is right in the eyes of Yahweh your God.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

You are God's children, so no cutting yourselves for the dead. Here is the menu: cows, sheep and goats, yes. Camels, pigs and rabbits, no. Fish with fins and scales, yes. Shrimp, no. Set aside a tithe and throw a feast before God, and every third year share it with the Levite, the foreigner, the orphan and the widow.

CLEAN AND UNCLEAN ANIMALS // LEVITICUS 11:1–47; ACTS 10:9–16

1 You are sons of Yahweh your God; do not cut yourselves or shave your foreheads on behalf of the dead, 2 for you are a people holy to Yahweh your God. Yahweh has chosen you to be a people for His prized possession out of all the peoples on the face of the earth.

3 You must not eat any detestable thing. 4 These are the animals that you may eat:
The ox, the sheep, the goat,
5 the deer, the gazelle, the roe deer,
the wild goat, the ibex, the antelope,
and the mountain sheep.

6 You may eat any animal that has a split hoof divided in two and that chews the cud.

7 But of those that chew the cud or have a completely divided hoof, you are not to eat the following:

the camel,
the rabbit,
or the rock badger.
Although they chew the cud, they do not have a divided hoof. They are unclean for you, 8 as well as the pig; though it has a divided hoof, it does not chew the cud. It is unclean for you. You must not eat its meat or touch its carcass.

9 Of all the creatures that live in the water, you may eat anything with fins and scales, 10 but you may not eat anything that does not have fins and scales; it is unclean for you.

11 You may eat any clean bird, 12 but these you may not eat:

the eagle, the bearded vulture, the black vulture,
13 the red kite, the falcon, any kind of kite,
14 any kind of raven,
15 the ostrich, the screech owl, the gull, any kind of hawk,
16 the little owl, the great owl, the white owl,
17 the desert owl, the osprey, the cormorant,
18 the stork, any kind of heron,
the hoopoe, or the bat.

19 All flying insects are unclean for you; they may not be eaten. 20 But you may eat any clean bird.

DT 13:12 [DEMONIC] A town that turns to other gods must be destroyed

DT 14:2 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → TIT 2:14 p.1962

THE HEART

21 You are not to eat any carcass; you may
give it to the foreigner residing within your
gates, and he may eat it, or you may sell it
to a foreigner. For you are a holy people
belonging to Yahweh your God.

You must not cook a young goat in its
mother's milk.

GIVING TITHES // LEVITICUS 27:30–34; DEUTERONOMY 26:1–15; NEHEMIAH 13:10–14

22 You must be sure to set aside a tenth of
all the produce brought forth each year
from your fields. 23 And you are to eat a
tenth of your grain, new wine, and oil, and
the firstborn of your herds and flocks, in
the presence of Yahweh your God at the
place He will choose as a dwelling for His
Name, so that you may learn to fear Yah-
weh your God always.

24 But if the distance is too great for you to
carry that with which Yahweh your God
has blessed you, because the place
where Yahweh your God will choose to
put His Name is too far away, 25 then ex-
change it for money, take the money in
your hand, and go to the place Yahweh
your God will choose. 26 Then you may
spend the money on anything you desire:
cattle, sheep, wine, strong drink, or any-
thing you wish. You are to feast there in
the presence of Yahweh your God and re-
joice with your household. 27 And do not
neglect the Levite within your gates, since
he has no portion or inheritance among
you.

28 At the end of every three years, bring a
tenth of all your produce for that year and
lay it up within your gates. 29 Then the
Levite (because he has no portion or in-
heritance among you), the foreigner, the
fatherless, and the widow within your
gates may come and eat and be satisfied.
And Yahweh your God will bless you in all
the work of your hands.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Every seventh year, cancel your neighbor's debts. Do not get tightfisted as that year gets close. There will always be poor people, so open your hand wide. Set Hebrew servants free in the seventh year, and do not send them away empty handed. Remember, you were slaves too.

THE SEVENTH YEAR // EXODUS 23:10–13; LEVITICUS 25:1–7

1 At the end of every seven years you must
cancel debts. 2 This is the manner of re-
mission: Every creditor shall cancel what
he has loaned to his neighbor. He is not to
collect anything from his neighbor or
brother, because Yahweh's time of release
has been proclaimed. 3 You may collect
something from a foreigner, but you must
forgive whatever your brother owes you.

4 There will be no poor among you, how-
ever, because Yahweh will surely bless
you in the land that Yahweh your God is
giving you to possess as an inheritance, 5
if only you obey Yahweh your God and are
careful to follow all these commandments
I am giving you today. 6 When Yahweh
your God blesses you as He has
promised, you will lend to many nations
but borrow from none; you will rule over
many nations but be ruled by none.

GENEROSITY IN LENDING AND GIVING // MATTHEW 6:1–4

7 If there is a poor man among your broth-
ers within any of the gates in the land that
Yahweh your God is giving you, then you
are not to harden your heart or shut your
hand from your poor brother. 8 Instead,
you are to open your hand to him and
freely loan him whatever he needs.

9 Be careful not to harbor this wicked
thought in your heart: "The seventh year,
the year of release, is near," so that you
look upon your poor brother begrudgingly
and give him nothing. He will cry out to
Yahweh against you, and you will be guilty
of sin.

DT 14:21 [NOTE] This is the third time the Law says it, Exodus 23:19 and 34:26. Later rabbis built the Jewish rule of not mixing meat and milk on these three verses.

DT 15:9 [HEART] Do not let a selfish thought in your heart keep you from helping the poor. Give generously, and do not give with a grudging heart.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART

10 Give generously to him, and do not let
your heart be grieved when you do so.
And because of this Yahweh your God will
bless you in all your work and in every-
thing to which you put your hand. 11 For
there will never cease to be poor in the
land; that is why I am commanding you to
open wide your hand to your brother and
to the poor and needy in your land.

HEBREW SERVANTS // EXODUS 21:1–11

12 If a fellow Hebrew, a man or a woman, is
sold to you and serves you six years, then
in the seventh year you must set him free.
13 And when you release him, do not send
him away empty-handed. 14 You are to fur-
nish him liberally from your flock, your
threshing floor, and your winepress. You
shall give to him as Yahweh your God has
blessed you. 15 Remember that you were
slaves in the land of Egypt, and Yahweh
your God redeemed you; that is why I am
giving you this command today.
16 But if your servant says to you, 'I do not
want to leave you,' because he loves you
and your household and is well off with
you, 17 then take an awl and pierce it
through his ear into the door, and he will
become your servant for life. And treat
your maidservant the same way.
18 Do not regard it as a hardship to set your
servant free, because his six years of ser-
vice were worth twice the wages of a
hired hand. And Yahweh your God will
bless you in all you do.

FIRSTBORN ANIMALS // EXODUS 13:1–16

19 You must set apart to Yahweh your God
every firstborn male produced by your
herds and flocks. You are not to put the
firstborn of your oxen to work, nor are you
to shear the firstborn of your flock. 20 Each
year you and your household are to eat it
before Yahweh your God in the place Yah-
weh will choose.
21 But if an animal has a defect, is lame or
blind, or has any serious flaw, you must
not sacrifice it to Yahweh your God. 22 Eat
it within your gates; both the ceremonially
unclean and clean may eat it as they
would a gazelle or a deer. 23 But you must
not eat the blood; pour it on the ground
like water.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS
*Three times a year, every man goes to God's cho-
sen place for Passover, the Feast of Weeks and
the Feast of Booths. Nobody shows up empty
handed, and everybody is told to rejoice. Then
judges are to be appointed in every town. No
bribes, no favorites. Justice, and only justice.*

PASSOVER AND THE FEAST OF UNLEAVENED BREAD // EXODUS 12:14–28; LEVITICUS 23:4–8; NUM-
BERS 28:16–25

1 Observe the month of Abib and celebrate
the Passover to Yahweh your God, be-
cause in the month of Abib Yahweh your
God brought you out of Egypt by night.
2 You are to offer to Yahweh your God the
Passover sacrifice from the herd or flock
in the place Yahweh will choose as a
dwelling for His Name. 3 You must not eat
leavened bread with it; for seven days you
are to eat with it unleavened bread, the
bread of affliction, because you left the
land of Egypt in haste—so that you may
remember for the rest of your life the day
you left the land of Egypt.
4 No leaven is to be found in all your land
for seven days, and none of the meat you
sacrifice in the evening of the first day
shall remain until morning.
5 You are not to sacrifice the Passover ani-
mal in any of the towns that Yahweh your
God is giving you. 6 You must only offer
the Passover sacrifice at the place Yah-
weh your God will choose as a dwelling
for His Name. Do this in the evening as
the sun sets, at the same time you de-
parted from Egypt. 7 And you shall roast it
and eat it in the place Yahweh your God
will choose, and in the morning you shall
return to your tents.
8 For six days you must eat unleavened
bread, and on the seventh day you shall

DT 15:11 [NOTE] Jesus echoed this verse when He said, The poor you will always have with you, Matthew 26:11. Moses' point was to keep giving, not to give up.

DT 16:3 [FORESHADOW] Exodus deliverance extended to messianic deliverance → LK 22:15-20 p.1686

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

hold a solemn assembly to Yahweh your God, and you must not do any work.

THE FEAST OF WEEKS // NUMBERS 28:26–31

9 You are to count off seven weeks from the time you first put the sickle to the standing grain. 10 And you shall celebrate the Feast of Weeks to Yahweh your God with a freewill offering that you give in proportion to how Yahweh your God has blessed you, 11 and you shall rejoice before Yahweh your God in the place He will choose as a dwelling for His Name—you, your sons and daughters, your menservants and maidservants, and the Levite within your gates, as well as the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widows among you.

12 Remember that you were slaves in Egypt, and carefully follow these statutes.

THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES // NUMBERS 29:12–40

13 You are to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles for seven days after you have gathered the produce of your threshing floor and your winepress. 14 And you shall rejoice in your feast—you, your sons and daughters, your menservants and maidservants, and the Levite, as well as the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widows among you.

15 For seven days you shall celebrate a feast to Yahweh your God in the place He will choose, because Yahweh your God will bless you in all your produce and in all the work of your hands, so that your joy will be complete.

16 Three times a year all your men are to appear before Yahweh your God in the place He will choose: at the Feast of Unleavened Bread, the Feast of Weeks, and the Feast of Tabernacles. No one should appear before Yahweh empty-handed. 17 Everyone must appear with a gift as he is able, according to the blessing Yahweh your God has given you.

JUDGES AND JUSTICE

18 You are to appoint judges and officials for your tribes in every town that Yahweh your God is giving you. They are to judge the people with righteous judgment.

19 Do not deny justice or show partiality. Do not accept a bribe, for a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise and twists the words of the righteous.

20 Pursue justice, and justice alone, so that you may live, and you may possess the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.

FORBIDDEN FORMS OF WORSHIP

21 Do not set up any wooden Asherah pole next to the altar you will build for Yahweh your God, 22 and do not set up for yourselves a sacred pillar, which Yahweh your God hates.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Idol worshipers must be put to death, but only on the word of two or three witnesses. Hard cases go to the priests and the judge. If Israel wants a king, he must not collect horses, wives or gold, and he must write out his own copy of God's law and read it every day.

DETESTABLE SACRIFICES

1 You shall not sacrifice to Yahweh your God an ox or a sheep with any defect or serious flaw, for that is detestable to Yahweh your God.

PURGE THE IDOLATER

2 If a man or woman among you in one of the towns that Yahweh your God gives you is found doing evil in the sight of Yahweh your God by transgressing His covenant 3 and going to worship other gods, bowing down to them or to the sun or moon or any of the host of heaven—which I have forbidden— 4 and if it is reported and you hear about it, you must investigate it thoroughly.

If the report is true and such an abomination has happened in Israel, 5 you must bring out to your gates the man or woman who has done this evil thing, and you must stone that person to death. 6 *On the testimony of two or three witnesses a man shall be put to death, but he shall not be exe-*

DT 16:21 [DEMONIC] Do not set up an Asherah pole or sacred pillar

DT 17:2 [DEMONIC] Whoever worships other gods or the stars must be stoned

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

cuted on the testimony of a lone witness. 7 *The hands of the witnesses shall be the first in putting him to death, and after that, the hands of all the people. So you must purge the evil from among you.*

COURTS OF LAW

8 If a case is too difficult for you to judge, whether the controversy within your gates is regarding bloodshed, lawsuits, or assaults, you must go up to the place Yahweh your God will choose. 9 You are to go to the Levitical priests and to the judge who presides at that time. Inquire of them, and they will give you a verdict in the case.

10 You must abide by the verdict they give you at the place Yahweh will choose. Be careful to do everything they instruct you, 11 according to the terms of law they give and the verdict they proclaim. Do not turn aside to the right or to the left from the decision they declare to you.

12 But the man who acts presumptuously, refusing to listen either to the priest who stands there to serve Yahweh your God, or to the judge, must be put to death. You must purge the evil from Israel. 13 Then all the people will hear and be afraid, and will no longer behave arrogantly.

GUIDELINES FOR A KING // 1 SAMUEL 8:1–9

14 When you enter the land that Yahweh your God is giving you and have taken possession of it and settled in it, and you say, "Let us set a king over us like all the nations around us," 15 you are to appoint over yourselves the king whom Yahweh your God shall choose. Appoint a king from among your brothers; you are not to set over yourselves a foreigner who is not one of your brothers.

16 But the king must not acquire many horses for himself or send the people back to Egypt to acquire more horses, for Yahweh has said, 'You are never to go back that way again.' 17 He must not take many wives for himself, lest his heart go astray. He must not accumulate for himself large amounts of silver and gold.

18 When he is seated on his royal throne, he must write for himself a copy of this instruction on a scroll in the presence of the Levitical priests. 19 It is to remain with him, and he is to read from it all the days of his life, so that he may learn to fear Yahweh his God by carefully observing all the words of this instruction and these statutes. 20 Then his heart will not be exalted above his countrymen, and he will not turn aside from the commandment, to the right or to the left, in order that he and his sons may reign many years over his kingdom in Israel.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests and Levites get no land; God is their share. Israel must stay away from every kind of fortune telling, sorcery and talking to the dead, and from sacrificing children. Instead, God promises to raise up a Prophet like Moses. Listen to Him.

PROVISION FOR PRIESTS AND LEVITES // 1 CORINTHIANS 9:1–18

1 The Levitical priests—indeed the whole tribe of Levi—shall have no portion or inheritance with Israel. They are to eat the food offerings to Yahweh; that is their inheritance. 2 Although they have no inheritance among their brothers, Yahweh is their inheritance, as He promised them.

3 This shall be the priests' share from the people who offer a sacrifice, whether a bull or a sheep: the priests are to be given the shoulder, the jowls, and the stomach. 4 You are to give them the firstfruits of your grain, new wine, and oil, and the first wool sheared from your flock. 5 For Yahweh your God has chosen Levi and his

■ **DT 17:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 8:17 p.1712
■ **DT 17:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 10:28 p.1991
■ **DT 17:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 5:13 p.1828
■ **DT 17:14 [PROPHECY]** Israel would one day ask for a king like all the nations → 1SA 8:5 p.446

■ **DT 17:16 [NOTE]** Solomon broke all three rules: horses from Egypt, 1 Kings 10:28, seven hundred wives, 11:3, and so much gold that silver was worth nothing, 10:21.
■ **DT 17:17 [HEART]** A king must not collect many wives, or his heart will be led astray. It happened to Solomon, 1 Kings 11:3 to 4.
■ **DT 17:18 [NOTE]** The name Deuteronomy comes from this verse. The Greek Bible turned a copy of this law into this second law, deuteronomion.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

sons out of all your tribes to stand and minister in His name for all time.

6 Now if a Levite moves from any town of residence throughout Israel and comes in all earnestness to the place Yahweh will choose, 7 then he shall serve in the name of Yahweh his God like all his fellow Levites who stand there before Yahweh. 8 They shall eat equal portions, even though he has received money from the sale of his father's estate.

SORCERY FORBIDDEN // ACTS 8:9–25

9 When you enter the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, do not imitate the detestable ways of the nations there. 10 Let no one be found among you who sacrifices his son or daughter in the fire, practices divination or conjury, interprets omens, practices sorcery, 11 casts spells, consults a medium or spiritist, or inquires of the dead. 12 For whoever does these things is detestable to Yahweh. And because of these detestable things, Yahweh your God is driving out the nations before you.

13 You must be blameless before Yahweh your God. 14 Though these nations, which you will dispossess, listen to conjurers and diviners, Yahweh your God has not permitted you to do so.

A PROPHET LIKE MOSES // ACTS 3:11–26

15 *Yahweh your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your brothers. You must listen to him.* 16 *This is what you asked of Yahweh your God at Horeb on the day of the assembly, when you said, "Let us not hear the voice of Yahweh our God or see this great fire anymore, so that we will not die!"*

17 *Then Yahweh said to me, "They have spoken well.* 18 *I will raise up for them a prophet like you from among their brothers. I will put My words in his mouth, and he will tell them everything I command him.* 19 *And I will hold accountable anyone who does not listen to My words that the prophet speaks in My name.* 20 But if any prophet dares to speak a message in My name that I have not commanded him to speak, or to speak in the name of other gods, that prophet must be put to death."

21 You may ask in your heart, "How can we recognize a message that Yahweh has not spoken?" 22 When a prophet speaks in the name of Yahweh and the message does not come to pass or come true, that is a message Yahweh has not spoken. The prophet has spoken presumptuously. Do not be afraid of him.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE PROPHET LIKE MOSES

Who Is He?

DEUTERONOMY 18:15 TO 19 · 34:10 TO 12 · JOHN 1:21 · JOHN 6:14

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Moses said, Yahweh your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your brothers. You must listen to him, 18:15. God added, I will put My words in his mouth, and he will tell them everything I command him, 18:18. Anyone who will not listen will answer to God, 18:19.

STILL WAITING

The last verses of Deuteronomy say no prophet has risen in Israel like Moses, whom Yahweh knew face to face, 34:10. So whoever wrote that line was still waiting for the Prophet.

IN JESUS' DAY

People asked John the Baptist, Are you the Prophet? He said no, John 1:21. After Jesus fed the five thousand, the crowds said, Truly this is the Prophet who is to come into the world, John 6:14. At the Transfiguration God said, This is My

- **DT 18:9 [DEMONIC]** Comprehensive ban: divination, observer of times, enchanter, witch, charmer, medium, wizard, necromancer
- **DT 18:15 [PROPHECY]** A Prophet like Moses would arise → JN 6:14 p.1708
- **DT 18:15 [PROPHECY]** Believing Moses would lead one to believe in Christ → JN 5:45-47 p.1707
- **DT 18:15 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 17:5 p.1575
- **DT 18:15 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 9:7 p.1624
- **DT 18:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 3:22-23 p.1746
- **DT 18:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:37 p.1751
- **DT 18:15 [NOTE]** A PROPHET LIKE MOSES. Who is He? See the Big Question pages The Prophet like Moses, p.308.
- **DT 18:18 [PROPHECY]** Sent by the Father to speak God's words → JN 8:28-29 p.1713
- **DT 18:19 [PROPHECY]** Those who reject this Prophet would bear their own sin → ACTS 3:22-23 p.1746
- **DT 18:20 [DEMONIC]** A prophet who speaks for other gods must die

beloved Son. Listen to Him, Matthew 17:5, echoing listen to him in 18:15.

LIKE MOSES HOW?

At Mount Sinai the people were so afraid of God's voice that they begged for a go between, 18:16. God's answer was this Prophet. Like Moses, He would stand between God and the people, speak God's own words, and lead God's people. Moses also did signs and wonders, and gave Israel a covenant from God, 34:11.

WHAT THE APOSTLES SAID

Peter quoted 18:15 to 19 in the temple and said it was about Jesus, Acts 3:22 to 23. Stephen did the same before he was stoned, Acts 7:37.

One Prophet or Many?

JOSHUA 1:1 TO 2 · JEREMIAH 1:9 · HEBREWS 3:1 TO 6

THE LINE OF PROPHETS VIEW

Many Jewish teachers, like Rashi and Ibn Ezra, read prophet as a kind of person: God would keep sending true prophets, like Joshua, Samuel and Jeremiah, so Israel would not need fortune tellers. The verses right before, 18:9 to 14, are about sorcerers, and the verses after, 18:20 to 22, tell how to spot a false prophet.

THE ONE PROPHET VIEW

Most Christians, from the apostles on, read it as one special Prophet, the Messiah. Jesus spoke God's words, John 12:49, gave a new covenant, and is worthy of more glory than Moses, Hebrews 3:3. Many say both are true: a line of prophets, ending in the greatest one.

THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS

The people at Qumran waited for a prophet, and the Messiahs of Aaron and Israel. One scroll, 4QTestimonia, puts 18:18 to 19 next to the star of Jacob from Numbers 24:17.

THE SAMARITANS

The Samaritans, who kept only the five books of Moses, waited for the Taheb, the one who returns, a prophet like Moses. The Samaritan woman told Jesus, I know Messiah is coming. When He comes, He will explain everything to us, John 4:25.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God promised to keep speaking to His people through someone like Moses, and to hold them responsible to listen. Christians believe Jesus is that Prophet, and Jews read it as God's promise of true prophets.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Three cities of refuge, plus three more later, so a person who kills by accident can run there and be safe. Murderers do not get to hide there. Do not move your neighbor's boundary stone. One witness is not enough to convict, and a false witness gets the punishment he wanted for the other guy.

CITIES OF REFUGE // NUMBERS 35:9–34; DEUTERONOMY 4:41–43; JOSHUA 20:1–9

1 When Yahweh your God has cut off the
nations whose land He is giving you, and
when you have driven them out and set-
tled in their cities and houses, 2 then you
are to set apart for yourselves three cities
within the land that Yahweh your God is
giving you to possess. 3 You are to build
roads for yourselves and divide into three
regions the land that Yahweh your God is
giving you as an inheritance, so that any
manslayer can flee to these cities.

4 Now this is the situation regarding the
manslayer who flees to one of these cities
to save his life, having killed his neighbor
accidentally, without intending to harm
him: 5 If he goes into the forest with his
neighbor to cut timber and swings his axe
to chop down a tree, but the blade flies off
the handle and strikes and kills his neigh-
bor, he may flee to one of these cities to
save his life.

6 Otherwise, the avenger of blood might
pursue the manslayer in a rage, overtake
him if the distance is great, and strike him
dead though he did not deserve to die,
since he did not intend any harm. 7 This is
why I am commanding you to set apart for
yourselves three cities.

8 And if Yahweh your God enlarges your
territory, as He swore to your fathers, and
gives you all the land He promised them, 9
and if you carefully keep all these com-

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

mandments I am giving you today, loving Yahweh your God and walking in His ways at all times, then you are to add three more cities to these three.

10 Thus innocent blood will not be shed in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance, so that you will not be guilty of bloodshed.

11 If, however, a man hates his neighbor and lies in wait, attacks him and kills him, and then flees to one of these cities, 12 the elders of his city must send for him, bring him back, and hand him over to the avenger of blood to die. 13 You must show him no pity. You are to purge from Israel the guilt of shedding innocent blood, that it may go well with you.

14 You must not move your neighbor's boundary marker, which was set up by your ancestors to mark the inheritance you shall receive in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess.

THE TESTIMONY OF TWO OR THREE WITNESSES // MATTHEW 18:15–20

15 *A lone witness is not sufficient to establish any wrongdoing or sin against a man, regardless of what offense he may have committed. A matter must be established by the testimony of two or three witnesses.*

16 If a false witness testifies against someone, accusing him of a crime, 17 both parties to the dispute must stand in the presence of Yahweh, before the priests and judges who are in office at that time. 18 The judges shall investigate thoroughly, and if the witness is proven to be a liar who has falsely accused his brother, 19 you must do to him as he intended to do to his brother. So you must purge the evil from among you. 20 Then the rest of the people will hear and be afraid, and they will never again do anything so evil among you. 21 You must show no pity: life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, and foot for foot.

- **DT 19:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 18:16 p.1577
- **DT 19:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 8:17 p.1712
- **DT 19:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 13:1 p.1861
- **DT 19:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1TI 5:19 p.1942
- **DT 19:15 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 10:28 p.1991

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Rules for war. The priest tells the army, Do not be afraid. Anyone who just built a house, planted a vineyard or got engaged goes home, and so does anyone who is scared. Offer peace to distant cities first. And do not cut down fruit trees. The trees are not the enemy.

LAWS OF WARFARE

1 When you go out to war against your enemies and see horses, chariots, and an army larger than yours, do not be afraid of them; for Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, is with you. 2 When you are about to go into battle, the priest is to come forward and address the army, 3 saying to them, "Hear, O Israel, today you are going into battle with your enemies. Do not be fainthearted or afraid; do not be alarmed or terrified because of them. 4 For Yahweh your God goes with you to fight for you against your enemies, to give you the victory."

5 Furthermore, the officers are to address the army, saying, "Has any man built a new house and not dedicated it? Let him return home, or he may die in battle and another man dedicate it. 6 Has any man planted a vineyard and not begun to enjoy its fruit? Let him return home, or he may die in battle and another man enjoy its fruit. 7 Has any man become pledged to a woman and not married her? Let him return home, or he may die in battle and another man marry her."

8 Then the officers shall speak further to the army, saying, "Is any man afraid or fainthearted? Let him return home, so that the hearts of his brothers will not melt like his own."

9 When the officers have finished addressing the army, they are to appoint commanders to lead it.

10 When you approach a city to fight against it, you are to make an offer of peace. 11 If they accept your offer of peace

DEMONIC

and open their gates, all the people there will become forced laborers to serve you.

12 But if they refuse to make peace with you and wage war against you, lay siege to that city. 13 When Yahweh your God has delivered it into your hand, you must put every male to the sword. 14 But the women, children, livestock, and whatever else is in the city—all its spoil—you may take as plunder, and you shall use the spoil of your enemies that Yahweh your God gives you. 15 This is how you are to treat all the cities that are far away from you and do not belong to the nations nearby.

16 However, in the cities of the nations that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance, you must not leave alive anything that breathes. 17 For you must devote them to complete destruction—the Hittites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites—as Yahweh your God has commanded you, 18 so that they cannot teach you to do all the detestable things they do for their gods, and so cause you to sin against Yahweh your God.

19 When you lay siege to a city for an extended time while fighting against it to capture it, you must not destroy its trees by putting an axe to them, because you can eat their fruit. You must not cut them down. Are the trees of the field human, that you should besiege them? 20 But you may destroy the trees that you know do not produce fruit. Use them to build siege works against the city that is waging war against you, until it falls.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

If a body is found in a field, the nearest town makes atonement. Rules for marrying a captive woman, for protecting the firstborn son of an unloved wife, and for a son who is a stubborn drunk. And a hanged body must be buried the same day, because anyone hung on a tree is under God's curse.

DT 20:18 [DEMONIC] The nations would teach Israel their detestable worship

ATONEMENT FOR AN UNSOLVED MURDER

1 If one is found slain, lying in a field in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess, and it is not known who killed him, 2 your elders and judges must come out and measure the distance from the victim to the neighboring cities.

3 Then the elders of the city nearest the victim shall take a heifer that has never been yoked or used for work, 4 bring the heifer to a valley with running water that has not been plowed or sown, and break its neck there by the stream.

5 And the priests, the sons of Levi, shall come forward, for Yahweh your God has chosen them to serve Him and pronounce blessings in His name and to give a ruling in every dispute and case of assault. 6 Then all the elders of the city nearest the victim shall wash their hands by the stream over the heifer whose neck has been broken, 7 and they shall declare, "Our hands did not shed this blood, nor did our eyes see it. 8 Accept this atonement, O Yahweh, for Your people Israel whom You have redeemed, and do not hold the shedding of innocent blood against them."

And the bloodshed will be atoned for. 9 So you shall purge from among you the guilt of shedding innocent blood, since you have done what is right in the eyes of Yahweh.

MARRYING A CAPTIVE WOMAN

10 When you go to war against your enemies and Yahweh your God delivers them into your hand and you take them captive, 11 if you see a beautiful woman among them, and you desire her and want to take her as your wife, 12 then you shall bring her into your house. She must shave her head, trim her nails, 13 and put aside the clothing of her captivity.

After she has lived in your house a full month and mourned her father and mother, you may have relations with her and be her husband, and she shall be your wife. 14 And if you are not pleased with her, you are to let her go wherever she wishes. But you must not sell her for

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

money or treat her as a slave, since you have dishonored her.

INHERITANCE RIGHTS OF THE FIRSTBORN

15 If a man has two wives, one beloved and the other unloved, and both bear him sons, but the unloved wife has the firstborn son, 16 when that man assigns his inheritance to his sons he must not appoint the son of the beloved wife as the firstborn over the son of the unloved wife.

17 Instead, he must acknowledge the firstborn, the son of his unloved wife, by giving him a double portion of all that he has. For that son is the firstfruits of his father's strength; the right of the firstborn belongs to him.

A REBELLIOUS SON // LUKE 15:11–32

18 If a man has a stubborn and rebellious son who does not obey his father and mother and does not listen to them when disciplined, 19 his father and mother are to lay hold of him and bring him to the elders of his city, to the gate of his hometown, 20 and say to the elders, "This son of ours is stubborn and rebellious; he does not obey us. He is a glutton and a drunkard."

21 Then all the men of his city will stone him to death. So you must purge the evil from among you, and all Israel will hear and be afraid.

CURSED IS ANYONE HUNG ON A TREE

22 If a man has committed a sin worthy of death, and he is executed, and you hang his body on a tree, 23 *you must not leave the body on the tree overnight, but you must be sure to bury him that day, because anyone who is hung on a tree is under God's curse. You must not defile the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance.*

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Return your neighbor's lost ox. Help lift his fallen donkey. Put a railing around your flat roof so nobody falls off. Do not mix seeds, plow with an ox and a donkey together, or wear wool and linen together. Then come laws to protect a bride who is falsely accused and to punish adultery and rape.

VARIOUS LAWS

1 If you see your brother's ox or sheep straying, you must not ignore it; be sure to return it to your brother. 2 If your brother does not live near you, or if you do not know who he is, you are to take the animal home to remain with you until your brother comes seeking it; then you can return it to him. 3 And you shall do the same for his donkey, his cloak, or anything your brother has lost and you have found. You must not ignore it.

4 If you see your brother's donkey or ox fallen on the road, you must not ignore it; you must help him lift it up.

5 A woman must not wear men's clothing, and a man must not wear women's clothing, for whoever does these things is detestable to Yahweh your God.

6 If you come across a bird's nest with chicks or eggs, either in a tree or on the ground along the road, and the mother is sitting on the chicks or eggs, you must not take the mother along with the young. 7 You may take the young, but be sure to let the mother go, so that it may be well with you and that you may prolong your days.

8 If you build a new house, you are to construct a railing around your roof, so that you do not bring bloodguilt on your house if someone falls from it.

9 Do not plant your vineyard with two types of seed; if you do, the entire harvest will be defiled—both the crop you plant and the fruit of your vineyard.

10 Do not plow with an ox and a donkey yoked together.

DT 21:23 [PROPHECY] Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree → GAL 3:13 p.1869

DT 21:23 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:13 p.1869

DT 22:8 [NOTABLE] Flat roofs were living space, so God required a railing. It is one of the oldest building safety codes, and it teaches that loving your neighbor includes keeping them safe.

DEMONIC

11 Do not wear clothes of wool and linen
woven together.

12 You are to make tassels on the four corners of the cloak you wear.

MARRIAGE VIOLATIONS

13 Suppose a man marries a woman, has relations with her, and comes to hate her, 14 and he then accuses her of shameful conduct and gives her a bad name, saying, "I married this woman and had relations with her, but I discovered she was not a virgin."

15 Then the young woman's father and mother shall bring the proof of her virginity to the city elders at the gate 16 and say to the elders, "I gave my daughter in marriage to this man, but he has come to hate her. 17 And now he has accused her of shameful conduct, saying, 'I discovered that your daughter was not a virgin.' But here is the proof of her virginity." And they shall spread out the cloth before the city elders.

18 Then the elders of that city shall take the man and punish him. 19 They are also to fine him 2½ pounds of silver and give them to the young woman's father, because this man has given a virgin of Israel a bad name. And she shall remain his wife; he must not divorce her as long as he lives.

20 If, however, this accusation is true, and no proof of the young woman's virginity can be found, 21 she shall be brought to the door of her father's house, and there the men of her city will stone her to death. For she has committed an outrage in Israel by being promiscuous in her father's house. So you must purge the evil from among you.

22 If a man is found lying with another man's wife, both the man who slept with her and the woman must die. You must purge the evil from Israel.

23 If there is a virgin pledged in marriage to a man, and another man encounters her in the city and sleeps with her, 24 you must take both of them out to the gate of that city and stone them to death—the young woman because she did not cry out in the city, and the man because he has violated his neighbor's wife. So you must purge the evil from among you.

25 But if the man encounters a betrothed woman in the open country, and he overpowers her and lies with her, only the man who has done this must die. 26 Do nothing to the young woman, because she has committed no sin worthy of death. This case is just like one in which a man attacks his neighbor and murders him. 27 When he found her in the field, the betrothed woman cried out, but there was no one to save her.

28 If a man encounters a virgin who is not pledged in marriage, and he seizes her and lies with her, and they are discovered, 29 then the man who lay with her must pay the young woman's father 1¼ pounds of silver, and she must become his wife because he has violated her. He must not divorce her as long as he lives.

30 A man is not to marry his father's wife, so that he will not dishonor his father's marriage bed.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Who may join the assembly of Yahweh, and who may not. Keep the army camp clean, and yes, there is a rule about bathroom breaks with a shovel. Do not send a runaway slave back to his master. No interest on loans to fellow Israelites. And keep your vows.

EXCLUSION FROM THE CONGREGATION

1 No man with crushed or severed genitals may enter the assembly of Yahweh.

2 No one of illegitimate birth may enter the assembly of Yahweh, nor may any of his descendants, even to the tenth generation.

3 No Ammonite or Moabite or any of their descendants may enter the assembly of Yahweh, even to the tenth generation. 4 For they did not meet you with food and water on your way out of Egypt, and they

DT 22:22 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JN 8:5 p.1712

DT 23:2 [DEMONIC] Children of forbidden unions excluded to tenth generation; Ammonite/Moabite

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

hired Balaam son of Beor from Pethor in Aram-naharaim to curse you. 5 Yet Yahweh your God would not listen to Balaam, and Yahweh your God turned the curse into a blessing for you, because Yahweh your God loves you. 6 You are not to seek peace or prosperity from them as long as you live.

7 Do not despise an Edomite, for he is your brother. Do not despise an Egyptian, because you lived as a foreigner in his land. 8 The third generation of children born to them may enter the assembly of Yahweh.

UNCLEANNESS IN THE CAMP // LEVITICUS 15:1–12

9 When you are encamped against your enemies, then you shall keep yourself from every wicked thing. 10 If any man among you becomes unclean because of a nocturnal emission, he must leave the camp and stay outside. 11 When evening approaches, he must wash with water, and when the sun sets he may return to the camp.

12 You must have a place outside the camp to go and relieve yourself. 13 And you must have a digging tool in your equipment so that when you relieve yourself you can dig a hole and cover up your excrement.

14 For Yahweh your God walks throughout your camp to protect you and deliver your enemies to you. Your camp must be holy, lest He see anything unclean among you and turn away from you.

MISCELLANEOUS LAWS

15 Do not return a slave to his master if he has taken refuge with you. 16 Let him live among you wherever he chooses, in the town of his pleasing. Do not oppress him.

17 No daughter or son of Israel is to be a shrine prostitute. 18 You must not bring the wages of a prostitute, whether female or male, into the house of Yahweh your God to fulfill any vow, because both are detestable to Yahweh your God.

19 Do not charge your brother interest on money, food, or any other type of loan. 20 You may charge a foreigner interest, but not your brother, so that Yahweh your God may bless you in everything to which you put your hand in the land that you are entering to possess.

21 If you make a vow to Yahweh your God, do not be slow to keep it, because He will surely require it of you, and you will be guilty of sin. 22 But if you refrain from making a vow, you will not be guilty of sin. 23 Be careful to follow through on what comes from your lips, because you have freely vowed to Yahweh your God with your own mouth.

24 When you enter your neighbor's vineyard, you may eat your fill of grapes, but you must not put any in your basket.

25 When you enter your neighbor's grainfield, you may pluck the heads of grain with your hand, but you must not put a sickle to your neighbor's grain.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Laws about divorce and remarriage. A new husband gets a year off from the army to make his wife happy. Do not take a millstone as a pledge, because that is someone's living. Pay your workers before sunset. Leave some grain, olives and grapes for the foreigner, the orphan and the widow.

MARRIAGE AND DIVORCE LAWS // MATTHEW 5:31–32; LUKE 16:18

1 *If a man marries a woman, but she becomes displeasing to him because he finds some indecency in her, he may write her a certificate of divorce, hand it to her, and send her away from his house.*

2 If, after leaving his house, she goes and becomes another man's wife, 3 and the second man hates her, writes her a certificate of divorce, hands it to her, and sends her away from his house, or if he dies, 4 then the husband who divorced her first may not remarry her after she has been defiled, for that is an abomination to Yah-

- **DT 23:17 [DEMONIC]** No Israelite may be a shrine prostitute
- **DT 24:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 5:31 p.1557
- **DT 24:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 19:7 p.1578
- **DT 24:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 10:4 p.1625
- **DT 24:1 [NOTE]** Jesus said Moses allowed divorce because of hard hearts, but it was not so from the beginning, Matthew 19:8. In Jesus' day, rabbis argued over what something indecent meant.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE

weh. You must not bring sin upon the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance.

5 If a man is newly married, he must not be sent to war or be pressed into any duty. For one year he is free to stay at home and bring joy to the wife he has married.

ADDITIONAL LAWS

6 Do not take a pair of millstones or even an upper millstone as security for a debt, because that would be taking one's livelihood as security.

7 If a man is caught kidnapping one of his Israelite brothers, whether he treats him as a slave or sells him, the kidnapper must die. So you must purge the evil from among you.

8 In cases of infectious skin diseases, be careful to diligently follow everything the Levitical priests instruct you. Be careful to do as I have commanded them. 9 Remember what Yahweh your God did to Miriam on the journey after you came out of Egypt.

10 When you lend anything to your neighbor, do not enter his house to collect security. 11 You are to stand outside while the man to whom you are lending brings the security out to you. 12 If he is a poor man, you must not go to sleep with the security in your possession; 13 be sure to return it to him by sunset, so that he may sleep in his own cloak and bless you, and this will be credited to you as righteousness before Yahweh your God.

14 Do not oppress a hired hand who is poor and needy, whether he is a brother or a foreigner residing in one of your towns. 15 You are to pay his wages each day before sunset, because he is poor and depends on them. Otherwise he may cry out to Yahweh against you, and you will be guilty of sin.

16 Fathers shall not be put to death for their children, nor children for their fathers; each is to die for his own sin.

17 Do not deny justice to the foreigner or the fatherless, and do not take a widow's cloak as security. 18 Remember that you were slaves in Egypt, and Yahweh your God redeemed you from that place. Therefore I am commanding you to do this.

19 If you are harvesting in your field and forget a sheaf there, do not go back to get it. It is to be left for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow, so that Yahweh your God may bless you in all the work of your hands.

20 When you beat the olives from your trees, you must not go over the branches again. What remains will be for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow.

21 When you gather the grapes of your vineyard, you must not go over the vines again. What remains will be for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. 22 Remember that you were slaves in the land of Egypt. Therefore I am commanding you to do this.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

No more than forty lashes. Do not muzzle an ox while it treads the grain. If a man dies with no son, his brother should marry the widow, and if he refuses, she pulls off his sandal and spits in his face. Use honest weights. And remember what Amalek did.

FAIRNESS AND MERCY

1 If there is a dispute between men, they are to go to court to be judged, so that the innocent may be acquitted and the guilty condemned.

2 If the guilty man deserves to be beaten, the judge shall have him lie down and be flogged in his presence with the number of lashes his crime warrants. 3 He may receive no more than forty lashes, lest your brother be beaten any more than that and be degraded in your sight.

4 *Do not muzzle an ox while it is treading out the grain.*

DT 24:5 [NOTABLE] God gave a new husband a year off from the army and other duties so he could make his wife happy. Marriage mattered to God more than the war.

DT 24:14 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:4 p.2007

DT 25:4 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 9:9 p.1831

DT 25:4 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1TI 5:18 p.1942

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

WIDOWHOOD AND MARRIAGE

5 *When brothers dwell together and one of them dies without a son, the widow must not marry outside the family. Her husband's brother is to take her as his wife and fulfill the duty of a brother-in-law for her.* 6 The first son she bears will carry on the name of the dead brother, so that his name will not be blotted out from Israel.

7 But if the man does not want to marry his brother's widow, she is to go to the elders at the city gate and say, "My husband's brother refuses to preserve his brother's name in Israel. He is not willing to perform the duty of a brother-in-law for me."

8 Then the elders of his city shall summon him and speak with him. If he persists and says, "I do not want to marry her," 9 his brother's widow shall go up to him in the presence of the elders, remove his sandal, spit in his face, and declare, "This is what is done to the man who will not maintain his brother's line." 10 And his family name in Israel will be called "The House of the Unsandaled."

11 If two men are fighting, and the wife of one comes to rescue her husband from the one striking him, and she reaches out her hand and grabs his genitals, 12 you are to cut off her hand. You must show her no pity.

STANDARD WEIGHTS AND MEASURES // PROVERBS 11:1–3; EZEKIEL 45:10–12

13 You shall not have two differing weights in your bag, one heavy and one light. 14 You shall not have two differing measures in your house, one large and one small.

15 You must maintain accurate and honest weights and measures, so that you may live long in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you. 16 For everyone who behaves dishonestly in regard to these things is detestable to Yahweh your God.

- **DT 25:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 22:24 p.1584
- **DT 25:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:19 p.1629
- **DT 25:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 20:28 p.1684
- **DT 25:5 [NOTE]** This is the law behind Ruth and Boaz, Ruth 4, and behind the Sadducees' trick question to Jesus about seven brothers.

REVENGE ON THE AMALEKITES

17 Remember what the Amalekites did to you along your way from Egypt, 18 how they met you on your journey when you were tired and weary, and they attacked all your stragglers; they had no fear of God.

19 When Yahweh your God gives you rest from the enemies around you in the land that He is giving you to possess as an inheritance, you are to blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven. Do not forget!

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

In the land, bring the first of your harvest in a basket and tell the story: My father was a wandering Aramean. Every third year, give the tithe to the Levite, the foreigner, the orphan and the widow. Today Israel says, Yahweh is our God, and God says, You are My treasured people.

OFFERING FIRSTFRUITS AND TITHES // LEVITICUS 27:30–34; DEUTERONOMY 14:22–29; NEHEMIAH 13:10–14

1 When you enter the land that Yahweh your God is giving you as an inheritance, and you take possession of it and settle in it, 2 you are to take some of the firstfruits of all your produce from the soil of the land that Yahweh your God is giving you and put them in a basket. Then go to the place Yahweh your God will choose as a dwelling for His Name, 3 to the priest who is serving at that time, and say to him, "I declare today to Yahweh your God that I have entered the land that Yahweh swore to our fathers to give us."

4 Then the priest shall take the basket from your hands and place it before the altar of Yahweh your God, 5 and you are to declare before Yahweh your God, "My father was a wandering Aramean, and he went down to Egypt few in number and lived there and became a great nation, mighty and numerous. 6 But the Egyptians mistreated us and afflicted us, putting us to hard labor. 7 So we called out to Yahweh, the God of our fathers; and Yahweh

- **DT 26:5 [NOTE]** The wandering Aramean is Jacob. These words are still read at the Jewish Passover meal.

heard our voice and saw our affliction, toil, and oppression. 8 Then Yahweh brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm, with great terror, signs, and wonders. 9 And He brought us to this place and gave us this land, a land flowing with milk and honey. 10 And now, behold, I have brought the firstfruits of the land that You, O Yahweh, have given me."

Then you are to place the basket before Yahweh your God and bow down before Him. 11 So you shall rejoice—you, the Levite, and the foreigner dwelling among you—in all the good things Yahweh your God has given to you and your household.

12 When you have finished laying aside a tenth of all your produce in the third year, the year of the tithe, you are to give it to the Levite, the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow, that they may eat and be filled within your gates.

13 Then you shall declare in the presence of Yahweh your God, "I have removed from my house the sacred portion and have given it to the Levite, the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow, according to all the commandments You have given me. I have not transgressed or forgotten Your commandments. 14 I have not eaten any of the sacred portion while in mourning, or removed any of it while unclean, or offered any of it for the dead. I have obeyed Yahweh my God; I have done everything You commanded me. 15 Look down from Your holy habitation, from heaven, and bless Your people Israel and the land You have given us as You swore to our fathers—a land flowing with milk and honey."

OBEY YAHWEH'S COMMANDS

16 Yahweh your God commands you this day to follow these statutes and ordinances. You must be careful to follow them with all your heart and with all your soul.

17 Today you have proclaimed that Yahweh is your God and that you will walk in His ways, keep His statutes and commandments and ordinances, and listen to His voice.

18 And today Yahweh has proclaimed that you are His people and treasured possession as He promised, that you are to keep all His commandments, 19 that He will set you high in praise and name and honor above all the nations He has made, and that you will be a holy people to Yahweh your God, as He has promised.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

After crossing the Jordan, set up big stones on Mount Ebal, coat them with plaster and write the law on them, and build an altar of uncut stones. Half the tribes stand on Mount Gerizim and half on Mount Ebal, and the Levites shout twelve curses. After each one, all the people say Amen.

THE ALTAR ON MOUNT EBAL // JOSHUA 8:30–35

1 Then Moses and the elders of Israel commanded the people: "Keep all the commandments I am giving you today.

2 And on the day you cross the Jordan into the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, set up large stones and coat them with plaster. 3 Write on them all the words of this law when you have crossed over to enter the land that Yahweh your God is giving you, a land flowing with milk and honey, just as Yahweh, the God of your fathers, has promised you. 4 And when you have crossed the Jordan, you are to set up these stones on Mount Ebal, as I am commanding you today, and you are to coat them with plaster.

5 Moreover, you are to build there an altar to Yahweh your God, an altar of stones. You must not use any iron tool on them. 6 You shall build the altar of Yahweh your God with uncut stones and offer upon it burnt offerings to Yahweh your God. 7 There you are to sacrifice your peace offerings, eating them and rejoicing in the presence of Yahweh your God. 8 And you

■ **DT 27:4 [TEXT]** The Samaritan Bible reads Mount Gerizim here, the Samaritans' holy mountain. A few scholars think Gerizim was the first reading. Most Bibles follow Ebal.

■ **DT 27:4 [FIELD NOTES]** A stone structure on Mount Ebal may be an altar. See the Mount Ebal Altar Field Notes page, p.318.

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

shall write distinctly upon these stones all the words of this law."

9 Then Moses and the Levitical priests spoke to all Israel: "Be silent, O Israel, and listen! This day you have become the people of Yahweh your God. 10 You shall therefore obey the voice of Yahweh your God and follow His commandments and statutes I am giving you today."

CURSES PRONOUNCED FROM EBAL

11 On that day Moses commanded the people: 12 "When you have crossed the Jordan, these tribes shall stand on Mount Gerizim to bless the people: Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Joseph, and Benjamin. 13 And these tribes shall stand on Mount Ebal to deliver the curse: Reuben, Gad, Asher, Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali.

14 Then the Levites shall proclaim in a loud voice to every Israelite:

15 'Cursed is the man who makes a carved idol or molten image—an abomination to Yahweh, the work of the hands of a craftsman—and sets it up in secret.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

16 'Cursed is he who dishonors his father or mother.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

17 'Cursed is he who moves his neighbor's boundary stone.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

18 'Cursed is he who lets a blind man wander in the road.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

19 'Cursed is he who withholds justice from the foreigner, the fatherless, or the widow.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

20 'Cursed is he who sleeps with his father's wife, for he has violated his father's marriage bed.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

21 'Cursed is he who lies with any animal.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

22 'Cursed is he who sleeps with his sister, the daughter of his father or the daughter of his mother.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

23 'Cursed is he who sleeps with his mother-in-law.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

24 'Cursed is he who strikes down his neighbor in secret.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

25 'Cursed is he who accepts a bribe to kill an innocent person.'
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

26 *'Cursed is he who does not put the words of this law into practice.'*
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, ALTAR OR NOT IS DEBATED

THE MOUNT EBAL ALTAR

DEUTERONOMY 11:29 · 27:2 TO 8 · JOSHUA 8:30 TO 35



The stone structure on Mount Ebal that Adam Zertal called an altar. Photo Hoshvilim, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A large stone platform near the top of Mount Ebal, above the city of Shechem, Nablus today. Moses told Israel to build an altar of uncut stones on Mount Ebal after crossing the Jordan, 27:4 to 8, and Joshua 8:30 to 31 says Joshua did.

HOW OLD IT IS

The pottery is from the early Iron Age, the late 1200s and the 1100s BC. Zertal found an earlier, smaller phase under the big platform, and dated two Egyptian scarabs from the site to the late 1200s BC.

HOW BIG

About 30 by 23 feet and about 10 to 13 feet high, filled with layers of stones, earth, ash and bones. A ramp about 23 feet long leads up to it, not steps. Exodus 20:26 says not to go up to an altar by steps.

DT 27:15 [DEMONIC] Cursed is anyone who makes an idol in secret

DT 27:26 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:10 p.1868

DEMONIC

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Israeli archaeologist Adam Zertal found it during a survey in 1980 and dug it from 1982 to 1989 for the University of Haifa.

WHAT WAS FOUND
Burned bones of young bulls, sheep, goats and fallow deer, all clean animals, and no pigs. The Law never lists deer as a sacrifice, so scholars argue over that. There were also many small stone installations with ash and pottery around the platform.

THE BIG DEBATE
Zertal said it was Joshua's altar. Aharon Kempinski said it was a watchtower, and Israel Finkelstein doubted it too. Amihai Mazar said Zertal may be wrong in the details, but the site does look like a place of worship. Many scholars agree it was a place of worship but not that Joshua built it.

THE LEAD TABLET
In 2022 Scott Stripling's team said a tiny folded lead tablet, found in 2019 by sifting Zertal's old dirt piles, has a curse with God's name in very old letters. Many experts say no letters can be seen, and one said it may be a fishing net weight. The claim is strongly disputed.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No inscription names Joshua or Israel, so it does not prove this is the altar of 27:4. It does show a place of worship on Mount Ebal from about the time the Bible places Israel there.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS
Obey, and you will be blessed in the city and in the country, coming in and going out. Disobey, and the curses come: drought, disease, defeat, siege and exile. This is the longest chapter in Deuteronomy, and most of it is curses. Israel's later history reads like it was checking them off.

THE BLESSINGS OF OBEDIENCE // LEVITICUS 25:18–22

1 "Now if you faithfully obey the voice of
Yahweh your God and are careful to follow all His commandments I am giving
you today, Yahweh your God will set you
high above all the nations of the earth. 2
And all these blessings will come upon
you and overtake you, if you will obey the
voice of Yahweh your God:

3 You will be blessed in the city
and blessed in the country.

4 The fruit of your womb will be blessed,
as well as the produce of your land
and the offspring of your livestock—
the calves of your herds
and the lambs of your flocks.

5 Your basket and kneading bowl will be
blessed.

6 You will be blessed when you come in
and blessed when you go out.

7 Yahweh will cause the enemies who rise
up against you to be defeated before you.
They will march out against you in one direction but flee from you in seven.

8 Yahweh will decree a blessing on your
barns and on everything to which you put
your hand; Yahweh your God will bless
you in the land He is giving you. 9 Yahweh
will establish you as His holy people, just
as He has sworn to you, if you keep the
commandments of Yahweh your God and
walk in His ways. 10 Then all the peoples of
the earth will see that you are called by
the name of Yahweh, and they will stand
in awe of you.

11 Yahweh will make you prosper
abundantly—in the fruit of your womb, the
offspring of your livestock, and the produce of your land—in the land that Yahweh swore to your fathers to give you.

12 Yahweh will open the heavens, His
abundant storehouse, to send rain on your
land in season and to bless all the work of
your hands. You will lend to many nations,
but borrow from none.

13 Yahweh will make you the head and not
the tail; you will only move upward and
never downward, if you hear and carefully
follow the commandments of Yahweh
your God, which I am giving you today. 14
Do not turn aside to the right or to the left
from any of the words I command you to-

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

day, and do not go after other gods to serve them.

THE CURSES OF DISOBEDIENCE // LEVITICUS 20:1–9; LEVITICUS 26:14–39

15 If, however, you do not obey Yahweh your God by carefully following all His commandments and statutes I am giving you today, all these curses will come upon you and overtake you:

16 You will be cursed in the city
and cursed in the country.

17 Your basket and kneading bowl will be
cursed.

18 The fruit of your womb will be cursed,
as well as the produce of your land,
the calves of your herds,
and the lambs of your flocks.

19 You will be cursed when you come in
and cursed when you go out.

20 Yahweh will send curses upon you, confusion and reproof in all to which you put your hand, until you are destroyed and quickly perish because of the wickedness you have committed in forsaking Him.

21 Yahweh will make the plague cling to you until He has exterminated you from the land that you are entering to possess.

22 Yahweh will strike you with wasting disease, with fever and inflammation, with scorching heat and drought, and with blight and mildew; these will pursue you until you perish. 23 The sky over your head will be bronze, and the earth beneath you iron.

24 Yahweh will turn the rain of your land into dust and powder; it will descend on you from the sky until you are destroyed.

25 Yahweh will cause you to be defeated before your enemies. You will march out against them in one direction but flee from them in seven. You will be an object of horror to all the kingdoms of the earth. 26 Your corpses will be food for all the birds of the air and beasts of the earth, with no one to scare them away.

27 Yahweh will afflict you with the boils of Egypt, with tumors and scabs and itch from which you cannot be cured.

28 Yahweh will afflict you with madness, blindness, and confusion of mind, 29 and at noon you will grope about like a blind man in the darkness. You will not prosper in your ways. Day after day you will be oppressed and plundered, with no one to save you.

30 You will be pledged in marriage to a woman, but another man will violate her. You will build a house but will not live in it. You will plant a vineyard but will not enjoy its fruit. 31 Your ox will be slaughtered before your eyes, but you will not eat any of it. Your donkey will be taken away and not returned to you. Your flock will be given to your enemies, and no one will save you.

32 Your sons and daughters will be given to another nation, while your eyes grow weary looking for them day after day, with no power in your hand. 33 A people you do not know will eat the produce of your land and of all your toil. All your days you will be oppressed and crushed. 34 You will be driven mad by the sights you see.

35 Yahweh will afflict you with painful, incurable boils on your knees and thighs, from the soles of your feet to the top of your head.

36 Yahweh will bring you and the king you appoint to a nation neither you nor your fathers have known, and there you will worship other gods—gods of wood and stone. 37 You will become an object of horror, scorn, and ridicule among all the nations to which Yahweh will drive you.

- **DT 28:14 [DEMONIC]** Do not go after other gods to serve them
- **DT 28:15 [PROPHECY]** Curses in the city and country if you do not obey → Fulfilled repeatedly throughout Israel's history during periods of apostasy
- **DT 28:23 [PROPHECY]** The heavens above your head shall be bronze, the earth beneath you iron; rain turned to powder and dust → Fulfilled in droughts in Elijah's day (1Kl 17) and others p.580
- **DT 28:25 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh will cause you to be defeated before your enemies; you shall go out one way against them and flee seven ways → Fulfilled in Israel's military defeats
- **DT 28:36 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh will bring you and your king to a nation you have not known; you shall become an astonishment, a proverb, a byword → Fulfilled in Assyrian exile of northern kingdom and Babylonian exile of Judah
- **DT 28:36 [DEMONIC]** In exile you will serve gods of wood and stone

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY

38 You will sow much seed in the field but
harvest little, because the locusts will
consume it. 39 You will plant and cultivate
vineyards, but will neither drink the wine
nor gather the grapes, because worms
will eat them. 40 You will have olive trees
throughout your territory but will never
anoint yourself with oil, because the
olives will drop off. 41 You will father sons
and daughters, but they will not remain
yours, because they will go into captivity.
42 Swarms of locusts will consume all your
trees and the produce of your land.

43 The foreigner living among you will rise
higher and higher above you, while you
sink down lower and lower. 44 He will lend
to you, but you will not lend to him. He will
be the head, and you will be the tail.

45 All these curses will come upon you.
They will pursue you and overtake you
until you are destroyed, since you did not
obey Yahweh your God and keep the
commandments and statutes He gave
you. 46 These curses will be a sign and a
wonder upon you and your descendants
forever.

47 Because you did not serve Yahweh your
God with joy and gladness of heart in all
your abundance, 48 you will serve your en-
emies Yahweh will send against you in
famine, thirst, nakedness, and destitution.
He will place an iron yoke on your neck
until He has destroyed you.

49 Yahweh will bring a nation from afar,
from the ends of the earth, to swoop
down upon you like an eagle—a nation
whose language you will not understand,
50 a ruthless nation with no respect for the
old and no pity for the young. 51 They will
eat the offspring of your livestock and the
produce of your land until you are de-
stroyed. They will leave you no grain or
new wine or oil, no calves of your herds
or lambs of your flocks, until they have
caused you to perish. 52 They will besiege
all the cities throughout your land, until
the high and fortified walls in which you
trust have fallen. They will besiege all
your cities throughout the land that Yah-
weh your God has given you.

53 Then you will eat the fruit of your womb,
the flesh of the sons and daughters whom
Yahweh your God has given you, in the
siege and distress that your enemy will in-
flict on you.

54 The most gentle and refined man
among you will begrudge his brother, the
wife he embraces, and the rest of his chil-
dren who have survived, 55 refusing to
share with any of them the flesh of his
children he will eat because he has noth-
ing left in the siege and distress that your
enemy will inflict on you within all your
gates.

56 The most gentle and refined woman
among you, so gentle and refined she
would not venture to set the sole of her
foot on the ground, will begrudge the hus-
band she embraces and her son and
daughter 57 the afterbirth that comes from
between her legs and the children she
bears, because she will secretly eat them
for lack of anything else in the siege and
distress that your enemy will inflict on you
within your gates.

58 If you are not careful to observe all the
words of this law which are written in this
book, that you may fear this glorious and
awesome name—Yahweh your God— 59
He will bring upon you and your descen-
dants extraordinary disasters, severe and
lasting plagues, and terrible and chronic
sicknesses. 60 He will afflict you again with
all the diseases you dreaded in Egypt, and
they will cling to you.

61 Yahweh will also bring upon you every
sickness and plague not recorded in this
Book of the Law, until you are destroyed.
62 You who were as numerous as the stars
in the sky will be left few in number, be-
cause you would not obey the voice of
Yahweh your God.

DT 28:49 [PROPHECY] Yahweh will bring a nation against you from afar, from the ends of the earth, as swift as the eagle flies, whose language you shall not understand; a nation of fierce countenance → 2KI 25:1-4 p.660

DT 28:53 [PROPHECY] You shall eat the fruit of your own body, the flesh of your sons and daughters, in the siege → HISTORY: During the Roman siege of Jerusalem in AD 70, starving people ate anything, and a mother named Mary ate her own son. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War 6.3.4.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

63 Just as it pleased Yahweh to make you prosper and multiply, so also it will please Him to annihilate you and destroy you. And you will be uprooted from the land you are entering to possess.

64 Then Yahweh will scatter you among all the nations, from one end of the earth to the other, and there you will worship other gods, gods of wood and stone, which neither you nor your fathers have known. 65 Among those nations you will find no repose, not even a resting place for the sole of your foot. There Yahweh will give you a trembling heart, failing eyes, and a despairing soul.

66 So your life will hang in doubt before you, and you will be afraid night and day, never certain of survival. 67 In the morning you will say, 'If only it were evening!' and in the evening you will say, 'If only it were morning!'—because of the dread in your hearts of the terrifying sights you will see.

68 Yahweh will return you to Egypt in ships by a route that I said you should never see again. There you will sell yourselves to your enemies as male and female slaves, but no one will buy you."

- **DT 28:63 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh will scatter you among all peoples, from one end of the earth to the other; you shall serve other gods there → HISTORY: Babylon carried the Jews away in 597 and 586 BC, and Rome scattered them again after AD 70 and AD 135. Found in the Babylonian Chronicle and recorded by Josephus and Cassius Dio.
- **DT 28:64 [DEMONIC]** Scattered among the nations you will worship other gods
- **DT 28:65 [PROPHECY]** Among those nations you shall find no rest; you shall fear day and night, and have no assurance of life → HISTORY: Jews were driven out of England in 1290 and Spain in 1492, and about six million were murdered in the Holocaust, 1939 to 1945. Recorded in the royal orders of expulsion and Nazi records.
- **DT 28:68 [PROPHECY]** Israel would be taken back to Egypt and sold as slaves, but no one would buy → HISTORY: After Rome took Jerusalem in AD 70, captives were sent in chains to Egypt's mines. So many were sold that buyers were few and the price was very low. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War 6.8.2 and 6.9.2. · MEDIUM

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

For forty years, Moses reminds them, their clothes and sandals did not wear out. Now he renews the covenant on the plains of Moab with everyone there, and with those who are not there today. Anyone who thinks, I will be safe even if I go my own way, is a poisonous root. The secret things belong to God.

THE COVENANT IN MOAB

1 These are the words of the covenant that Yahweh commanded Moses to make with the Israelites in the land of Moab, in addition to the covenant He had made with them at Horeb.

2 Moses summoned all Israel and proclaimed to them, "You have seen with your own eyes everything Yahweh did in Egypt to Pharaoh, to all his officials, and to all his land. 3 You saw with your own eyes the great trials, and those miraculous signs and wonders. 4 *Yet to this day Yahweh has not given you a heart to understand, eyes to see, or ears to hear.*

5 For forty years I led you in the wilderness,
yet your clothes and sandals did not wear out.
6 You ate no bread and drank no wine or strong drink,
so that you might know that I am Yahweh your God.

7 When you reached this place, Sihon king of Heshbon and Og king of Bashan came out against us in battle, but we defeated them. 8 We took their land and gave it as an inheritance to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. 9 So keep and follow the words of this covenant, that you may prosper in all you do.

10 All of you are standing today before Yahweh your God—you leaders of tribes, elders, officials, and all the men of Israel, 11 your children and wives, and the foreigners in your camps who cut your wood

- **DT 29:4 [HEART]** After forty years of miracles, God had still not given them a heart to understand. Seeing is not the same as believing.
- **DT 29:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:8 p.1813

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

and draw your water— 12 so that you may enter into the covenant of Yahweh your God, which He is making with you today, and into His oath, 13 and so that He may establish you today as His people, and He may be your God as He promised you and as He swore to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

14 I am making this covenant and this oath not only with you, 15 but also with those who are standing here with us today in the presence of Yahweh our God, as well as with those who are not here today.

16 For you yourselves know how we lived in the land of Egypt and how we passed through the nations on the way here. 17 You saw the abominations and idols among them made of wood and stone, of silver and gold.

18 Make sure there is no man or woman, clan or tribe among you today whose heart turns away from Yahweh our God to go and worship the gods of those nations. Make sure there is no root among you that bears such poisonous and bitter fruit, 19 because when such a person hears the words of this oath, he invokes a blessing on himself, saying, 'I will have peace, even though I walk in the stubbornness of my own heart.'

This will bring disaster on the watered land as well as the dry. 20 Yahweh will never be willing to forgive him. Instead, His anger and jealousy will burn against that man, and every curse written in this book will fall upon him. Yahweh will blot out his name from under heaven 21 and single him out from all the tribes of Israel for disaster, according to all the curses of the covenant written in this Book of the Law.

22 Then the generation to come—your sons who follow you and the foreigner who comes from a distant land—will see the plagues of the land and the sicknesses Yahweh has inflicted on it. 23 All its soil will be a burning waste of sulfur and salt, unsown and unproductive, with no plant growing on it, just like the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, Admah and Zeboiim, which Yahweh overthrew in His fierce anger.

24 So all the nations will ask, 'Why has Yahweh done such a thing to this land? Why this great outburst of anger?'

25 And the people will answer, 'It is because they abandoned the covenant of Yahweh, the God of their fathers, which He made with them when He brought them out of the land of Egypt. 26 They went and served other gods, and they worshiped gods they had not known—gods that Yahweh had not given to them. 27 Therefore the anger of Yahweh burned against this land, and He brought upon it every curse written in this book. 28 Yahweh uprooted them from their land in His anger, rage, and great wrath, and He cast them into another land, where they are today.'

29 The secret things belong to Yahweh our God, but the things revealed belong to us and to our children forever, so that we may follow all the words of this law.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

Even if Israel ends up scattered, God will bring them back if they return to Him. He will circumcise their hearts so they can love Him. His command is not too hard or too far away. It is in your mouth and in your heart. I set before you life and death. Choose life.

THE PROMISE OF RESTORATION // NEHEMIAH 1:1–11

1 "When all these things come upon you—the blessings and curses I have set before you—and you call them to mind in all the nations to which Yahweh your God has banished you, 2 and when you and your children return to Yahweh your God

- **DT 29:17 [DEMONIC]** Israel saw the idols of wood, stone, silver, and gold
- **DT 29:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 12:15 p.1994
- **DT 29:25 [DEMONIC]** The land is ruined because they served other gods
- **DT 29:29 [NOTE]** God does not tell us everything. What He has told us is enough to obey.
- **DT 30:1 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh will gather you again from all the nations where He has scattered you; if any are driven to the farthest parts under heaven, He will bring you back → EZR 1:1-5; NEH 1:8-9. Many Christians see a further fulfillment in the modern State of Israel since 1948; others read it differently. · MEDIUM p.766

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | DEMONIC

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

and obey His voice with all your heart and all your soul according to everything I am giving you today, 3 then He will restore you from captivity and have compassion on you and gather you from all the nations to which Yahweh your God has scattered you. 4 Even if you have been banished to the farthest horizon, He will gather you and return you from there.

5 And Yahweh your God will bring you into the land your fathers possessed, and you will take possession of it. He will cause you to prosper and multiply more than your fathers. 6 Yahweh your God will circumcise your hearts and the hearts of your descendants, and you will love Him with all your heart and with all your soul, so that you may live.

7 Then Yahweh your God will put all these curses upon your enemies who hate you and persecute you. 8 And you will again obey the voice of Yahweh and follow all His commandments I am giving you today. 9 So Yahweh your God will make you abound in all the work of your hands and in the fruit of your womb, the offspring of your livestock, and the produce of your land. Indeed, Yahweh will again delight in your prosperity, as He delighted in that of your fathers, 10 if you obey Yahweh your God by keeping His commandments and statutes that are written in this Book of the Law, and if you turn to Him with all your heart and with all your soul.

THE CHOICE OF LIFE OR DEATH

11 For this commandment I give you today is not too difficult for you or beyond your reach. 12 *It is not in heaven, that you should need to ask, 'Who will ascend into heaven to get it for us and proclaim it, that we may obey it?'* 13 *And it is not beyond the sea, that you should need to ask, 'Who will cross the sea to get it for us and proclaim it, that we may obey it?'* 14 *But the word is very near you; it is in your mouth and in your heart, so that you may obey it.*

15 See, I have set before you today life and prosperity, as well as death and disaster. 16 For I am commanding you today to love Yahweh your God, to walk in His ways, and to keep His commandments, statutes, and ordinances, so that you may live and increase, and Yahweh your God may bless you in the land that you are entering to possess.

17 But if your heart turns away and you do not listen, but are drawn away to bow down to other gods and worship them, 18 I declare to you today that you will surely perish; you shall not prolong your days in the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess.

19 I call heaven and earth as witnesses against you today that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing. Therefore choose life, so that you and your descendants may live, 20 and that you may love Yahweh your God, obey Him, and hold fast to Him. For He is your life, and He will prolong your life in the land that Yahweh swore to give to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob."

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses is 120 and cannot go with them. He tells Joshua, Be strong and courageous. He writes the law and orders it read every seven years. Then God tells Moses the hard truth: after you die, they will turn to other gods. So He gives Moses a song to teach them, as a witness against them.

JOSHUA TO SUCCEED MOSES // NUMBERS 27:18–23

1 When Moses had finished speaking these words to all Israel, 2 he said to them, "I am now a hundred and twenty years old; I am no longer able to come and go, and Yahweh has said to me, 'You shall not cross the Jordan.'

- **DT 30:6 [PROPHECY]** God would circumcise the hearts of His people so they would love Him → ROM 2:29; COL 2:11 · MEDIUM p.1802
- **DT 30:12 [FORESHADOW]** The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart → ROM 10:6-8 · MEDIUM p.1812
- **DT 30:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:6-8 p.1812
- **DT 30:14 [HEART]** The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart, so you can obey it.
- **DT 30:17 [DEMONIC]** If you bow to other gods you will surely perish
- **DT 30:19 [DEMONIC]** I set before you life and death, blessing and curse

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

3 Yahweh your God Himself will cross over
ahead of you. He will destroy these na-
tions before you, and you will dispossess
them. Joshua will cross ahead of you, as
Yahweh has said. 4 And Yahweh will do to
them as He did to Sihon and Og, the kings
of the Amorites, when He destroyed them
along with their land.

5 Yahweh will deliver them over to you,
and you must do to them exactly as I have
commanded you. 6 *Be strong and coura-
geous; do not be afraid or terrified of them, for
it is Yahweh your God who goes with you; He
will never leave you nor forsake you.*"

7 Then Moses called for Joshua and said
to him in the presence of all Israel, "Be
strong and courageous, for you will go
with this people into the land that Yahweh
swore to their fathers to give them, and
you shall give it to them as an inheritance.
8 *Yahweh Himself goes before you; He will be
with you. He will never leave you nor forsake
you. Do not be afraid or discouraged.*"

THE READING OF THE LAW // NEHEMIAH 8:1–8

9 So Moses wrote down this law and gave
it to the priests, the sons of Levi, who car-
ried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh,
and to all the elders of Israel.

10 Then Moses commanded them, "At the
end of every seven years, at the ap-
pointed time in the year of remission of
debt, during the Feast of Tabernacles, 11
when all Israel comes before Yahweh your
God at the place He will choose, you are
to read this law in the hearing of all Israel.

12 Assemble the people—men, women,
children, and the foreigners within your
gates—so that they may listen and learn
to fear Yahweh your God and to follow
carefully all the words of this law. 13 Then
their children who do not know the law
will listen and learn to fear Yahweh your
God, as long as you live in the land that
you are crossing the Jordan to possess."

GOD COMMISSIONS JOSHUA

14 Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Behold,
the time of your death is near. Call Joshua
and present yourselves at the Tent of
Meeting, so that I may commission him."

So Moses and Joshua went and pre-
sented themselves at the Tent of Meeting.
15 Then Yahweh appeared at the tent in a
pillar of cloud, and the cloud stood over
the entrance to the tent.

16 And Yahweh said to Moses, "You will
soon rest with your fathers, and these
people will rise up and prostitute them-
selves with the foreign gods of the land
they are entering. They will forsake Me
and break the covenant I have made with
them.

17 On that day My anger will burn against
them, and I will abandon them and hide
My face from them, so that they will be
consumed, and many troubles and afflic-
tions will befall them.

On that day they will say, 'Have not these
disasters come upon us because our God
is no longer with us?'

18 And on that day I will surely hide My
face because of all the evil they have
done by turning to other gods.

19 Now therefore, write down for your-
selves this song and teach it to the Is-
raelites; have them recite it, so that it may
be a witness for Me against them. 20 When
I have brought them into the land that I
swore to give their fathers, a land flowing
with milk and honey, they will eat their fill
and prosper. Then they will turn to other
gods and worship them, and they will re-
ject Me and break My covenant. 21 And
when many troubles and afflictions have
come upon them, this song will testify
against them, because it will not be for-
gotten from the lips of their descendants.
For I know their inclination, even before I
bring them into the land that I swore to
give them."

22 So that very day Moses wrote down this
song and taught it to the Israelites.

- **DT 31:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 13:5 p.1995
- **DT 31:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 13:5 p.1995
- **DT 31:16 [PROPHECY]** After Moses' death Israel would forsake God, leading to disasters foretold in the Song of Moses → Judges-Kings
- **DT 31:16 [DEMONIC]** God foretells Israel will chase foreign gods
- **DT 31:20 [DEMONIC]** Once they are full they will turn to other gods

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

23 Then Yahweh commissioned Joshua
son of Nun and said, "Be strong and
courageous, for you will bring the Is-
raelites into the land that I swore to give
them, and I will be with you."

THE LAW PLACED IN THE ARK

24 When Moses had finished writing in a
book the words of this law from beginning
to end, 25 he gave this command to the
Levites who carried the ark of the
covenant of Yahweh: 26 "Take this Book of
the Law and place it beside the ark of the
covenant of Yahweh your God, so that it
may remain there as a witness against
you. 27 For I know how rebellious and stiff-
necked you are. If you are already re-
belling against Yahweh while I am still
alive, how much more will you rebel after
my death!

28 Assemble before me all the elders of
your tribes and all your officers so that I
may speak these words in their hearing
and call heaven and earth to witness
against them. 29 For I know that after my
death you will become utterly corrupt and
turn from the path I have commanded
you. And in the days to come, disaster will
befall you because you will do evil in the
sight of Yahweh to provoke Him to anger
by the work of your hands."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SCROLL FOUND IN THE TEMPLE

Lost and Found

DEUTERONOMY 31:24 TO 26 · 2 KINGS 22 TO 23 · 2 CHRONICLES 34

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

About 622 BC, while workers were repairing the temple, the high priest Hilkiah found the Book of the Law. When King Josiah heard it read, he tore his clothes in fear. He asked the prophetess Huldah what it meant, then read it to the whole nation, smashed the idols and high places, and held a Passover like no other since the judges, 2 Kings 22 and 23.

WHY MANY THINK IT WAS DEUTERONOMY

Josiah did what Deuteronomy commands. He shut down worship everywhere except the one place God chose, 12:5. He removed mediums and spiritists, 18:11. He kept the Passover at Jerusalem, 16:5 to 6. And the book is called the Book of the Covenant, like Deuteronomy 29:1.

THE OLD VIEW

Church fathers like Jerome, Athanasius and John Chrysostom already said Josiah's book was Deuteronomy. Some later Jewish and Christian teachers thought it was all five books of Moses.

HOW COULD IT BE LOST?

King Manasseh, Josiah's grandfather, ruled 55 years and filled the temple with idols, 2 Kings 21. Many say the scroll was hidden or forgotten during those years. Deuteronomy 31:26 had said to keep it beside the ark.

Found or Written?

2 KINGS 22:8 TO 13 · 2 KINGS 23:25 · DEUTERONOMY 17:18

THE LOST AND FOUND VIEW

The traditional view: Moses wrote it, it was kept by the priests, and it was neglected or hidden during the evil years. Josiah found an old book, and his reaction shows he believed it was old and true.

THE NEW BOOK VIEW

In 1805 the German scholar W. M. L. de

DT 31:26 [NOTE] LOST AND FOUND. Centuries later a Book of the Law was found in the temple in King Josiah's day. Was it this book? See the Big Question pages The Scroll Found in the Temple, p.326.

DT 31:29 [PROPHECY] After Moses died Israel would turn corrupt and disaster would come → JUDG 2:11-15 p.383

DT 31:29 [DEMONIC] Israel will provoke God with the work of their hands

Wette argued that the book was written not long before it was found, to support Josiah's reforms. Many critical scholars still hold some form of this view and date the core of Deuteronomy to the 600s BC.

THE IN BETWEEN VIEW

Others say the laws and speeches are much older, maybe saved by Levites or prophets in the northern kingdom, and were collected and edited later. They point out that some laws fit an early time, not Josiah's.

THE TREATY CLUE

Deuteronomy is shaped like ancient treaties. Some, like Kenneth Kitchen, say it fits Hittite treaties from the 1300s BC, Moses' general time. Others, like Moshe Weinfeld, say its curses look most like Esarhaddon's Assyrian treaty from 672 BC, in Josiah's century.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

A scroll was found in the temple in Josiah's day, and it changed the nation. Most scholars on every side think it held at least part of Deuteronomy. It shows how God's Word, once forgotten, can bring a whole nation back.

MOSES BEGINS HIS SONG

30 Then Moses recited aloud to the whole assembly of Israel the words of this song from beginning to end:

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

The Song of Moses. God is the Rock, and His works are perfect, but His people turned to idols and gods they never knew. God will judge them, and then He will rescue them and judge their enemies. Then God tells Moses to climb Mount Nebo, see the land and die there.

THE SONG OF MOSES // REVELATION 15:1–4

1 Give ear, O heavens, and I will speak;
hear, O earth, the words of my mouth.
2 Let my teaching fall like rain
and my speech settle like dew,
like gentle rain on new grass,
like showers on tender plants.
3 For I will proclaim the name of Yahweh.
Ascribe greatness to our God!
4 He is the Rock, His work is perfect;
all His ways are just.
A God of faithfulness without injustice,
righteous and upright is He.
5 His people have acted corruptly toward Him;
the blemish on them is not that of His children,
but of a perverse and crooked generation.
6 Is this how you repay Yahweh,
O foolish and senseless people?
Is He not your Father and Creator?
Has He not made you and established you?
7 Remember the days of old;
consider the years long past.
Ask your father, and he will tell you,
your elders, and they will inform you.
8 When the Most High gave the nations their inheritance,
when He divided the sons of man,
He set the boundaries of the peoples
according to the number of the sons of God.
9 But Yahweh's portion is His people,
Jacob His allotted inheritance.
10 He found him in a desert land,
in a barren, howling wilderness;
He surrounded him, He instructed him,
He guarded him as the apple of His eye.
11 As an eagle stirs up its nest
and hovers over its young,
He spread His wings to catch them
and carried them on His pinions.
12 Yahweh alone led him,
and no foreign god was with him.
13 He made him ride on the heights of the land
and fed him the produce of the field.
He nourished him with honey from the rock
and oil from the flinty crag,
14 with curds from the herd and milk from the flock,
with the fat of lambs,

■ **DT 32:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → PHIL 2:15 p.1897

■ **DT 32:8 [TEXT]** The oldest Hebrew copy, a Dead Sea Scroll, says sons of God here, and most Greek copies say angels of God. The standard Hebrew text says sons of Israel. Many Bibles, like this one, follow the older reading.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

with rams from Bashan, and goats,
with the choicest grains of wheat.
From the juice of the finest grapes
you drank the wine.

15 But Jeshurun grew fat and kicked—
becoming fat, bloated, and gorged.
He abandoned the God who made him
and scorned the Rock of his salvation.
16 They provoked His jealousy with foreign gods;
they enraged Him with abominations.
17 They sacrificed to demons, not to God,
to gods they had not known,
to newly arrived gods,
which your fathers did not fear.
18 You ignored the Rock who brought you forth;
you forgot the God who gave you birth.

19 When Yahweh saw this, He rejected them,
provoked to anger by His sons and daughters.
20 He said: "I will hide My face from them;
I will see what will be their end.
For they are a perverse generation—
children of unfaithfulness.
21 *They have provoked My jealousy by that which is not God;*
they have enraged Me with their worthless idols.
So I will make them jealous by those who are not a people;
I will make them angry by a nation without understanding.
22 For a fire has been kindled by My anger,
and it burns to the depths of Sheol;
it consumes the earth and its produce,
and scorches the foundations of the mountains.

23 I will heap disasters upon them;
I will spend My arrows against them.
24 They will be wasted from hunger
and ravaged by pestilence and bitter plague;
I will send the fangs of wild beasts against them,
with the venom of vipers that slither in the dust.
25 Outside, the sword will take their children,
and inside, terror will strike
the young man and the young woman,
the infant and the gray-haired man.
26 I would have said that I would cut them to pieces
and blot out their memory from mankind,
27 if I had not dreaded the taunt of the enemy,
lest their adversaries misunderstand and say:
'Our own hand has prevailed;
it was not Yahweh who did all this.'"

28 Israel is a nation devoid of counsel,
with no understanding among them.
29 If only they were wise, they would understand it;
they would comprehend their fate.
30 How could one man pursue a thousand,
or two put ten thousand to flight,
unless their Rock had sold them,
unless Yahweh had given them up?
31 For their rock is not like our Rock,
even our enemies concede.
32 But their vine is from the vine of Sodom
and from the fields of Gomorrah.
Their grapes are poisonous;
their clusters are bitter.
33 Their wine is the venom of serpents,
the deadly poison of cobras.

34 "Have I not stored up these things,
sealed up within My vaults?
35 *Vengeance is Mine; I will repay.*
In due time their foot will slip;
for their day of disaster is near,
and their doom is coming quickly."

36 *For Yahweh will vindicate His people*
and have compassion on His servants

- **DT 32:16 [DEMONIC]** They made God jealous with foreign gods
- **DT 32:17 [DEMONIC]** They sacrificed to demons, not to God — to gods they had not known
- **DT 32:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1CO 10:20 p.1834
- **DT 32:21 [PROPHECY]** God would make Israel jealous through a people who were not a nation → ROM 10:19; ROM 11:11 p.1813
- **DT 32:21 [DEMONIC]** They angered God with worthless idols
- **DT 32:21 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:19 p.1813
- **DT 32:35 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 12:19 p.1815
- **DT 32:35 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 10:30 p.1991

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING

when He sees that their strength is gone
and no one remains, slave or free.
37 He will say: "Where are their gods,
the rock in which they took refuge,
38 which ate the fat of their sacrifices
and drank the wine of their drink offerings?
Let them rise up and help you;
let them give you shelter!
39 See now that I am He;
there is no God besides Me.
I bring death and I give life;
I wound and I heal,
and there is no one
who can deliver from My hand.
40 For I lift up My hand to heaven and declare:
As surely as I live forever,
41 when I sharpen My flashing sword,
and My hand grasps it in judgment,
I will take vengeance on My adversaries
and repay those who hate Me.
42 I will make My arrows drunk with blood,
while My sword devours flesh—
the blood of the slain and captives,
the heads of the enemy leaders."

43 *Rejoice, O heavens, with Him, and let all*
God's angels worship Him.
Rejoice, O nations, with His people;
for He will avenge the blood of His children.
He will take vengeance on His adversaries and
repay those who hate Him;
He will cleanse His land
and His people.

44 Then Moses came with Joshua son of Nun and recited all the words of this song in the hearing of the people. 45 When Moses had finished reciting all these words to all Israel, 46 he said to them, "Take to heart all the words I have solemnly declared to you this day, so that you may command your children to carefully follow all the words of this law. 47 For they are not idle words to you, because they are your life, and by them you will live long in the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess."

DT 32:37 **[DEMONIC]** Where are their gods now? Let them rise up and help
DT 32:43 **[PROPHECY]** The nations would rejoice with God's people and angels would worship Him → ROM 15:10; HEB 1:6 p.1817
DT 32:43 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:10 p.1817
DT 32:43 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:6 p.1978
DT 32:43 **[TEXT]** A Dead Sea Scroll and the Greek Bible have a longer verse here. Hebrews 1:6 quotes the line let all God's angels worship Him. This Bible follows the longer verse.
DT 32:43 **[FIELD NOTES]** See the Song of Moses Scroll Field Notes page, p.329.

DEBATED · FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIND, DEBATED FOR WHICH READING IS FIRST

THE SONG OF MOSES SCROLL

DEUTERONOMY 32:8 · 32:43 · HEBREWS 1:6 · ROMANS 15:10



Cave 4 at Qumran, where 4QDeut q and hundreds of other scrolls were found. No free photo of the fragment itself is available. Photo Bahnfrend, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

4QDeut q is a small Dead Sea Scroll with part of the Song of Moses, Deuteronomy 32. Its last column ends at 32:43, with blank space after it, so it may have held only the song, not the whole book. The poem is written in short lines, like a song sheet.

HOW OLD IT IS

Copied in the last century before Jesus, about 50 to 1 BC, judging by the shape of its letters.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In Cave 4 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea, in 1952. That one cave held pieces of more than five hundred scrolls.

WHAT IT SAYS

The standard Hebrew text of 32:43 is short: Rejoice, O nations, with His people. This scroll reads, Rejoice, O heavens, with Him, and bow down to Him, all you gods. The Greek Bible is longer still, and some Greek copies say, let all God's angels worship Him. Hebrews 1:6

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

quotes that line about Jesus, and Romans 15:10 quotes the nations line.

THE SONS OF GOD

Another scroll from the same cave, 4QDeut j, reads sons of God in 32:8, where the standard Hebrew text says sons of Israel. The Greek Bible says much the same, angels of God. This Bible follows the older readings in both verses.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Antiquities Authority in Jerusalem keeps it.

THE BIG DEBATE

Many scholars think the scroll keeps the older wording, and later scribes shortened the verse so it would not speak of other gods or heavenly beings. Others think the longer form grew over time. Either way, the scroll shows Hebrews was quoting a real reading of Deuteronomy, not making one up.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not change what the Song teaches. The verse in every form calls heaven and earth to praise God, who will judge His enemies and cleanse His land and His people.

MOSES' DEATH FORETOLD

48 On that same day Yahweh said to
Moses, 49 "Go up into the Abarim Range to
Mount Nebo, in the land of Moab across
from Jericho, and view the land of
Canaan, which I am giving to the Israelites
as their own possession.
50 And there on the mountain that you
climb, you will die and be gathered to your
people, just as your brother Aaron died on
Mount Hor and was gathered to his people.
51 For at the waters of Meribah-kadesh in
the Wilderness of Zin, both of you broke
faith with Me among the Israelites by failing to treat Me as holy in their presence.
52 Although you shall see from a distance
the land that I am giving the Israelites, you
shall not enter it."

- **DT 32:52 [PROPHECY]** Moses would see the land from far away but not enter it → DT 34:1-5 p.332

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

Before he dies, Moses blesses the tribes one by one, a lot like Jacob did in Genesis 49. Levi gets the priesthood, Benjamin rests on God's shoulders, and Joseph gets the best of the land. The eternal God is your refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms.

MOSES BLESSES THE TWELVE TRIBES

1 This is the blessing that Moses the man
of God pronounced upon the Israelites
before his death. 2 He said:

"Yahweh came from Sinai
and dawned upon us from Seir;
He shone forth from Mount Paran
and came with myriads of holy ones,
with flaming fire at His right hand.
3 Surely You love the people;
all the holy ones are in Your hand,
and they sit down at Your feet;
each receives Your words—
4 the law that Moses gave us,
the possession of the assembly of Jacob.
5 So Yahweh became King in Jeshurun
when the leaders of the people gathered,
when the tribes of Israel came together.

6 Let Reuben live and not die,
nor his men be few."

7 And concerning Judah he said:

"O Yahweh, hear the cry of Judah
and bring him to his people.
With his own hands he defends his cause,
but may You be a help against his foes."

8 Concerning Levi he said:

"Give Your Thummim to Levi
and Your Urim to Your godly one,
whom You tested at Massah
and contested at the waters of Meribah.
9 He said of his father and mother,
'I do not consider them.'
He disregarded his brothers
and did not know his own sons,

- **DT 33:6 [PROPHECY]** Let Reuben live and not die, nor let his men be few → Partially fulfilled · MEDIUM
- **DT 33:7 [PROPHECY]** Moses prayed that God would help Judah against his foes → JUDG 1:1-2 · MEDIUM p.380
- **DT 33:8 [PROPHECY]** Levi → Fulfilled in the Levitical priesthood and their teaching role throughout Israel's history

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

for he kept Your word
and maintained Your covenant.
10 He will teach Your ordinances to Jacob
and Your law to Israel;
he will set incense before You
and whole burnt offerings on Your altar.
11 Bless his substance, O Yahweh,
and accept the work of his hands.
Smash the loins of those who rise against him,
and of his foes so they can rise no more."

12 Concerning Benjamin he said:

"May the beloved of Yahweh
rest secure in Him;
God shields him all day long,
and upon His shoulders he rests."

13 Concerning Joseph he said:

"May his land be blessed by Yahweh
with the precious dew from heaven above
and the deep waters that lie beneath,
14 with the bountiful harvest from the sun
and the abundant yield of the seasons,
15 with the best of the ancient mountains
and the bounty of the everlasting hills,
16 with the choice gifts of the land and everything in it,
and with the favor of Him who dwelt in the burning bush.
May these rest on the head of Joseph
and crown the brow of the prince of his brothers.
17 His majesty is like a firstborn bull,
and his horns are like those of a wild ox.
With them he will gore the nations,
even to the ends of the earth.
Such are the myriads of Ephraim,
and such are the thousands of Manasseh."

18 Concerning Zebulun he said:

"Rejoice, Zebulun, in your journeys,
and Issachar, in your tents.
19 They will call the peoples to a mountain;
there they will offer sacrifices of righteousness.
For they will feast on the abundance of the seas
and the hidden treasures of the sand."

20 Concerning Gad he said:

"Blessed is he who enlarges the domain of Gad!
He lies down like a lion
and tears off an arm or a head.
21 He chose the best land for himself,
because a ruler's portion was reserved for him there.
He came with the leaders of the people;
he administered Yahweh's justice
and His ordinances for Israel."

22 Concerning Dan he said:

"Dan is a lion's cub,
leaping out of Bashan."

23 Concerning Naphtali he said:

"Naphtali is abounding with favor,
full of the blessing of Yahweh;
he shall take possession
of the sea and the south."

24 And concerning Asher he said:

"May Asher be the most blessed of sons;
may he be the most favored among his brothers
and dip his foot in oil.
25 May the bolts of your gate be iron and bronze,
and may your strength match your days."

26 "There is none like the God of Jeshurun,
who rides the heavens to your aid,
and the clouds in His majesty.
27 The eternal God is your dwelling place,
and underneath are the everlasting arms.

- **DT 33:12 [PROPHECY]** Benjamin → JOSH 18:16; JOSH 18:28 · MEDIUM p.367
- **DT 33:13 [PROPHECY]** Joseph → Fulfilled in Ephraim and Manasseh's wealth, size, and dominance in the northern kingdom
- **DT 33:17 [FULFILLS]** Jacob said Ephraim the younger would be greater than Manasseh ← GEN 48:19 p.113
- **DT 33:18 [PROPHECY]** Zebulun and Issachar → Fulfilled in their trading and coastal wealth · MEDIUM
- **DT 33:20 [PROPHECY]** Gad → Fulfilled in Gad's warrior reputation (1 Chr 12:8) and their eastern land inheritance
- **DT 33:22 [PROPHECY]** Dan is a lion's whelp; he shall leap from Bashan → JUDG 18:27-29 · MEDIUM p.410
- **DT 33:23 [PROPHECY]** Naphtali → Fulfilled in Naphtali's fertile northern territory around the Sea of Galilee · MEDIUM
- **DT 33:24 [PROPHECY]** Asher → Fulfilled in Asher's coastal olive oil abundance and Phoenician trade wealth
- **DT 33:24 [FULFILLS]** Asher ← GEN 49:20 · MEDIUM p.115

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

He drives out the enemy before you,
giving the command, 'Destroy him!'
28 So Israel dwells securely;
the fountain of Jacob lives untroubled
in a land of grain and new wine,
where even the heavens drip with dew.
29 Blessed are you, O Israel!
Who is like you, a people saved by Yahweh?
He is the shield that protects you,
the sword in which you boast.
Your enemies will cower before you,
and you shall trample their high places."

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses climbs Mount Nebo, and God shows him the whole land. Then Moses dies there at 120, his eyes still sharp and his strength not gone. God buries him, and nobody knows where. Israel mourns thirty days, Joshua takes over, and the book ends with this: no prophet has ever been like Moses.

THE DEATH OF MOSES

1 Then Moses went up from the plains of Moab to Mount Nebo, to the top of Pisgah, which faces Jericho. And Yahweh showed him the whole land—from Gilead as far as Dan, 2 all of Naphtali, the land of Ephraim and Manasseh, all the land of Judah as far as the Western Sea, 3 the Negev, and the region from the Valley of Jericho (the City of Palms) all the way to Zoar.

4 And Yahweh said to him, "This is the land that I swore to give Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob when I said, 'I will give it to your descendants.' I have let you see it with your own eyes, but you will not cross into it."

5 So Moses the servant of Yahweh died there in the land of Moab, as Yahweh had said. 6 And He buried him in a valley in the land of Moab facing Beth-peor, and no one to this day knows the location of his grave.

7 Moses was a hundred and twenty years old when he died, yet his eyes were not weak, and his vitality had not diminished. 8 The Israelites grieved for Moses in the plains of Moab thirty days, until the time of weeping and mourning for Moses came to an end.

9 Now Joshua son of Nun was filled with the spirit of wisdom because Moses had laid his hands on him. So the Israelites obeyed him and did as Yahweh had commanded Moses. 10 Since that time, no prophet has risen in Israel like Moses, whom Yahweh knew face to face— 11 no prophet who did all the signs and wonders that Yahweh sent Moses to do in the land of Egypt to Pharaoh and to all his officials and all his land, 12 and no prophet who performed all the mighty acts of power and awesome deeds that Moses did in the sight of all Israel.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE CHURCH, MEDIUM FOR THE EXACT PEAK

MOUNT NEBO

DEUTERONOMY 3:27 · 32:49 TO 52 · 34:1 TO 6 · JUDE 9



The hunting and herding mosaic in the baptistery of the Moses Memorial Church on Mount Nebo, dated by its Greek inscription to about AD 530. Photo Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0.

- DT 34:1 [FULFILLS] Moses and Aaron would not enter the Promised Land because of their unbelief at the rock ← NUM 20:12 p.253
- DT 34:1 [FULFILLS] Moses would see the land from far away but not enter it ← DT 32:52 p.330
- DT 34:1 [FIELD NOTES] See the Mount Nebo Field Notes page, p.332.
- DT 34:4 [FULFILLS] Moses would see the land but not cross over. Joshua would lead the people in ← DT 3:27-28 p.288
- DT 34:6 [NOTE] Jude 9 says the archangel Michael argued with the devil over Moses' body. Nobody knows where the grave is.
- DT 34:10 [NOTABLE] The last words of the five books of Moses. Israel waited for the Prophet like Moses that 18:15 promised, and the New Testament says Jesus is that Prophet, Acts 3:22.
- DT 34:12 [NOTE] WHO WROTE MOSES' DEATH? See the Big Question pages Who Wrote Deuteronomy?, p.333

WHAT IT IS
Mount Nebo is a ridge in Jordan, about 2,300 feet above sea level, across from Jericho. From here God showed Moses the land, and Moses died nearby, 34:1 to 5. Christians built a church on its western peak, Siyagha, to remember him.

HOW OLD IT IS
A pilgrim named Egeria visited about AD 384 and saw a small church there. It was rebuilt and enlarged in the 500s AD. The mosaic in the photo is dated by its own Greek inscription to about AD 530 and names three artists, Soelos, Kaiomos and Elias.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
The Franciscans bought the site in 1932 and began digging in 1933. In 1976 Father Michele Piccirillo found this mosaic hidden under a plainer mosaic floor in the church's north hall.

WHAT IT SHOWS
A shepherd fights a lion, horsemen hunt a bear and a boar, shepherds guard their flocks, and men lead an ostrich, a zebra and a camel. It decorated the room that also held the church's first baptism font.

THE VIEW
On a clear day you can see the Jordan Valley, Jericho, the Dead Sea and sometimes Jerusalem's hills. Deuteronomy 34:1 to 3 says God showed Moses the land from Gilead to Dan and as far as the western sea, more than eyes alone can see. Many read it as God giving Moses a special view.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The church, now called the Memorial of Moses, is cared for by the Franciscans. Pope John Paul II visited in 2000, and the church reopened in 2016 after years of work.

THE BIG DEBATE
34:1 says Mount Nebo, to the top of Pisgah. Some think Pisgah is the Siyagha peak, others a nearby ridge. And nobody knows where Moses is buried. 34:6 says no one knows his grave to this day.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The church shows where Christians remembered Moses from the 300s AD on. It does not mark his grave, and nothing on the mountain comes from Moses' own time.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE DEUTERONOMY?

The Traditional View

DEUTERONOMY 1:1 · 31:9 · 31:24 · 34:5 TO 12 · MARK 10:3 TO 5

WHAT THE BOOK SAYS
These are the words Moses spoke to all Israel, 1:1. Moses wrote down this law and gave it to the priests, 31:9, and when he finished writing the words of this law in a book, he had it put beside the ark, 31:24 to 26. But chapter 34 tells about Moses' death and burial, and says no prophet since has been like him.

MOSES WROTE IT
The traditional Jewish and Christian view is that Moses wrote Deuteronomy, as the book says. Jesus quoted it as what Moses wrote and commanded, Mark 10:3 to 5 and Matthew 19:7 to 8, and Paul did too, Romans 10:19, 1 Corinthians 9:9.

WHO WROTE CHAPTER 34?
The Talmud, Bava Batra 14b to 15a, says Joshua wrote the last eight verses. One rabbi there says Moses wrote them with tears as God told him what would happen. Others say a later prophet or Ezra added them. Philo and Josephus thought Moses wrote of his own death by prophecy.

OTHER LATER TOUCHES
A few lines sound like they were added later, like to this day in 3:14 and 34:6, and the note about Og's bed still being in Rabbah, 3:11. Many who believe Moses wrote the book see these as small updates by a later editor, like Joshua or Samuel.

The Scholarly View

2 KINGS 22 · JOSHUA 1:7 TO 8 · NEHEMIAH 8

THE JOSIAH VIEW

Since de Wette in 1805, many scholars say the core of Deuteronomy, chapters 12 to 26, was written in the 600s BC and is the book found in the temple in 622 BC. They point to its one place of worship rule, its style, and how closely it matches Josiah's reforms. See The Scroll Found in the Temple pages near chapter 31, p.326.

LAYERS OVER TIME

Many think the book grew in layers: old laws, then Josiah's edition, then more chapters added during the exile in Babylon, like 4:25 to 31 and 30:1 to 10, which talk about scattering and coming home. Martin Noth in 1943 linked Deuteronomy with Joshua through 2 Kings as one long history.

THE EARLY DATE VIEW

Other scholars, like Kenneth Kitchen and Meredith Kline, say its treaty shape fits the 1300s BC, its world fits the time before Israel had a king or a temple, and the book should be read as Moses' words.

WHAT THE OLDEST COPIES SHOW

About thirty copies were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, from the 100s BC on. They differ in small ways, but they are the same much loved book.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

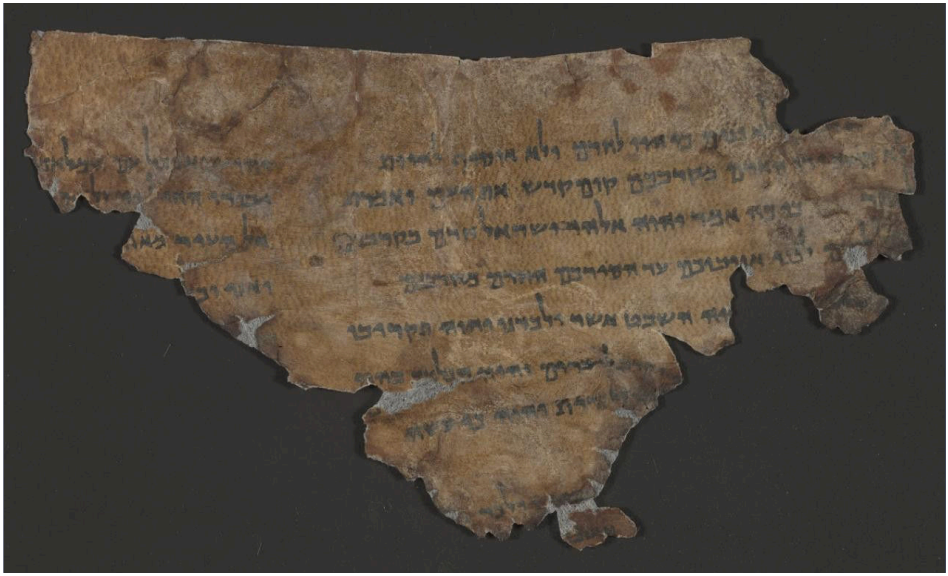
Deuteronomy presents itself as Moses' last words, Jesus and the apostles treated it as Scripture, and Christians who disagree on the date still read it as God's Word.

BOOK 6 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

JOSHUA

They finally make it to the Promised Land!

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Joshua wrote it, Eleazar added Joshua's death, and Phinehas added Eleazar's. Joshua did write some things down, 24:26. Lines like to this day show someone also put it together later. Many modern scholars think it was finished in the 600s or 500s BC.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From the Jordan crossing to Joshua's death. The Bible does not say how long; the historian Josephus said about 25 years. The fighting took about seven years, 14:7 to 10.
DATE	The early date puts the crossing about 1406 BC, based on 1 Kings 6:1. The late date puts it in the 1200s BC. See When Was the Conquest?
WRITTEN TO	Israel, so every generation would remember that God kept His promise of the land.
KEY VERSE	Joshua 21:45. Not one of all Yahweh's good promises to the house of Israel had failed; everything was fulfilled.



THE OLDEST COPY OF JOSHUA
This is a piece of 4QJosh a, a scroll of Joshua found in Cave 4 at Qumran and copied in the last two centuries before Jesus. 4QJosh a puts the reading of the Law, 8:34 to 35, right after the Jordan crossing, in a different place than most Bibles. A second scroll from the same cave, 4QJosh b, is from about the same time.

After the scrolls, the oldest copies are in Greek, like Codex Vaticanus, and in Coptic, the language of Egypt's early Christians, like a papyrus book of Joshua from the 300s, kept partly in Dublin and partly in Geneva. The Greek Bible's Joshua is a little shorter in places. Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

Moses is dead, and Israel is camped on the east side of the Jordan, across from Jericho. Forty years earlier their parents refused to go in. Now their children get their turn. Canaan is a land of walled city states, each with its own king, worshiping Baal and other gods. Joshua, Moses' assistant and one of the only two faithful spies, takes over.

What Was Going Wrong

HIDDEN SIN. Achan stole from Jericho and hid it in his tent, and Israel lost at Ai 7:1 to 26.
NOT PRAYING FIRST. Israel made a treaty with the Gibeonites without asking Yahweh 9:14.
HALF FINISHED. Several tribes did not drive out the Canaanites. Judah could not take Jerusalem, and Ephraim and Manasseh let Canaanites stay 15:63, 16:10, 17:12 to 13.
IDOLS IN THE TENT. Even at the end, Joshua had to tell the people to throw away the foreign gods still among them 24:14, 24:23.
A MISUNDERSTANDING. The tribes nearly went to war over an altar that turned out to be a memorial 22:10 to 34.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Joshua is the book where God's promise to Abraham finally comes true. Hundreds of years earlier, God told Abraham, To your offspring I will give this land, Genesis 12:7. Now Abraham's family crosses the Jordan on dry ground, watches Jericho's walls fall, and takes the land city by city. Then, with the fighting mostly done, Joshua divides the land among the twelve tribes, down to the last town and spring. The book ends with an old man calling the nation to choose. Serve the gods your fathers served, or serve Yahweh. As for me and my house, we will serve Yahweh.

Joshua at a Glance

CH 1 to 5	**GETTING READY** A new leader, Rahab and the spies, the Jordan crossing, Gilgal.
CH 6 to 8	**JERICHO AND AI** Walls fall, Achan sins, Ai falls on the second try.
CH 9 to 12	**THE BIG CAMPAIGNS** The Gibeonite trick, the long day, the south, the north, and Hazor.
CH 13 to 21	**DIVIDING THE LAND** Every tribe's borders, Caleb, Shiloh, refuge cities, Levite towns.
CH 22 to 24	**LAST WORDS** The altar by the Jordan, Joshua's farewell, the covenant at Shechem.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JOSHUA 1:1 Joshua and Jesus have the same name. Yehoshua means Yahweh saves. Joshua led Israel into the land; Jesus leads His people into a better rest, Hebrews 4:8 to 10.

JOSHUA 2:18 The scarlet cord in Rahab's window saved everyone inside her house. Clement of Rome, about AD 96, said it showed that redemption would come through the blood of the Lord.

JOSHUA 2:1 Rahab, a Canaanite prostitute, became the great great grandmother of King David and is named in Jesus' family tree, Matthew 1:5.

JOSHUA 5:13 TO 15 The Commander of Yahweh's army accepts Joshua's worship. Many believe this is Jesus before He was born.

JOSHUA 1:5 I will never leave you nor forsake you. Hebrews 13:5 quotes God's promise to every believer.

GOD'S NAMES IN JOSHUA
Joshua calls God the living God 3:10 and the Lord of all the earth 3:11, 13. Rahab confesses that Yahweh your God is God in heaven above and on the earth below 2:11. Joshua warns that He is a holy God and a jealous God 24:19. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Joshua

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	2:18, 5:14-15
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (11)	1:1-2, 2:9-11, 5:1, 6:5, 6:26, 9:23, 10:40-42 and 6 more
THE HEART (4)	11:20, 22:5, 23:14, 24:23
ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	6:20, 8:28, 11:10-11
MIRACLES (4)	3:14-17, 5:13, 10:11-14
DEMONIC (11)	11:21-22, 12:4, 13:22, 15:13-14, 17:15, 22:17, 23:7 and 5 more
NOTABLE (5)	1:8-9, 4:6-7, 7:20-21, 9:14, 24:15
GOD SPEAKING (56 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE WALLS CAME TUMBLING DOWN
Jericho is one of the oldest cities on earth, with a stone tower built thousands of years before Joshua. See the Jericho Field Notes page, p.347.

THE SUN STOOD STILL
The most argued over day in the Bible. Even Martin Luther used it against Copernicus. See the Big Question pages, p.354.

CALEB AT 85
He asked for the hill country with the giants in it 14:10 to 12.

AS FOR ME AND MY HOUSE
Joshua 24:15 hangs on the walls of more homes than almost any other verse.

Did It Last?

For a while. Israel served Yahweh all the days of Joshua and of the elders who outlived him, 24:31. But the next generation did not know Yahweh or what He had done, Judges 2:10, and the book of Judges begins. Still, the land was theirs, and God's promise to Abraham had come true.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses is dead, and Joshua is in charge. God gives him a pep talk: Be strong and courageous, keep My word on your lips, and I will be with you. Three times God says it, because Joshua needed to hear it three times.

GOD INSTRUCTS JOSHUA // DEUTERONOMY 11:8–17

1 Now after the death of His servant
Moses, Yahweh spoke to Joshua son of
Nun, Moses' assistant, saying, 2 "Moses
My servant is dead. Now therefore arise,
you and all these people, and cross over
the Jordan into the land that I am giving to
the children of Israel.

3 I have given you every place where the
sole of your foot will tread, just as I
promised to Moses. 4 Your territory shall
extend from the wilderness and Lebanon
to the great River Euphrates—all the land
of the Hittites—and west as far as the
Great Sea.

5 *No one shall stand against you all the days of your life. As I was with Moses, so will I be with you; I will never leave you nor forsake you.*

6 Be strong and courageous, for you shall
give these people the inheritance of the
land that I swore to their fathers I would
give them.

7 Above all, be strong and very coura-
geous. Be careful to observe all the law
that My servant Moses commanded you.
Do not turn from it to the right or to the
left, so that you may prosper wherever
you go. 8 This Book of the Law must not
depart from your mouth; meditate on it
day and night, so that you may be careful
to do everything written in it. For then you
will prosper and succeed in all you do.

9 Have I not commanded you to be strong
and courageous? Do not be afraid; do not
be discouraged, for Yahweh your God is
with you wherever you go."

JOSHUA TAKES CHARGE

10 Then Joshua commanded the officers of
the people: 11 "Go through the camp and
tell the people, 'Prepare your provisions,
for within three days you will cross the
Jordan to go in and take possession of
the land that Yahweh your God is giving
you to possess.'"

12 But to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and
the half-tribe of Manasseh, Joshua said,
13 "Remember what Moses the servant of
Yahweh commanded you when he said,
'Yahweh your God will give you rest, and
He will give you this land.' 14 Your wives,
your young children, and your livestock
may remain in the land that Moses gave
you on this side of the Jordan. But all your
mighty men of valor must be armed for
battle to cross over ahead of your broth-
ers and help them, 15 until Yahweh gives
them rest as He has done for you, and
your brothers also possess the land that
Yahweh your God is giving them. Then
you may return to the land of your inheri-
tance and take possession of that which
Moses the servant of Yahweh gave you
on the east side of the Jordan."

16 So they answered Joshua, "Everything
you have commanded us we will do, and
everywhere you send us we will go. 17 Just
as we obeyed Moses in all things, so we
will obey you. And may Yahweh your God
be with you, as He was with Moses. 18
Anyone who rebels against your order and
does not obey your words, all that you
command him, will be put to death. Above
all, be strong and courageous!"

JOSH 1:1 [FULFILLS] Moses would see the land but not cross over. Joshua would lead the people in ← DT 3:27-28 p.288

JOSH 1:1 [NOTE] JOSHUA'S NAME. Moses renamed him Yehoshua, Yahweh saves, Numbers 13:16. In Greek it is Iesous, the same name as Jesus, so the King James says Jesus in Acts 7:45 and Hebrews 4:8 when it means Joshua.

JOSH 1:5 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 13:5 p.1995

JOSH 1:8 [NOTABLE] God's pep talk to a nervous new leader. Success is tied to knowing and doing God's word, and courage comes from God being with you, not from being fearless.

JOSH 1:8 [NOTE] Meditate is the Hebrew hagah, to mutter. Ancient people read out loud, so meditating meant saying God's word over and over under your breath.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Joshua sends two spies into Jericho, and they end up at the house of Rahab, a prostitute. She hides them on her roof, lies to the king's men, and makes a deal: save my family. The sign is a scarlet cord in her window. Not your typical Sunday school hero, but God picked her anyway.

RAHAB WELCOMES THE SPIES // HEBREWS 11:30–31

1 Then Joshua son of Nun secretly sent
two spies from Shittim, saying, "Go, in-
spect the land, especially Jericho." So
they went and entered the house of a
prostitute named Rahab and stayed there.
2 And it was reported to the king of Jeri-
cho: "Behold, some men of Israel have
come here tonight to spy out the land."
3 So the king of Jericho sent to Rahab and
said, "Bring out the men who came to you
and entered your house, for they have
come to spy out the whole land."
4 But the woman had taken the two men
and hidden them. So she said, "Yes, the
men did come to me, but I did not know
where they had come from. 5 At dusk,
when the gate was about to close, the
men went out, and I do not know which
way they went. Pursue them quickly, and
you may catch them!" 6 (But Rahab had
taken them up to the roof and hidden
them among the stalks of flax that she
had laid out there.)
7 So the king's men set out in pursuit of
the spies along the road to the fords of
the Jordan, and as soon as they had gone
out, the gate was shut.

THE PROMISE TO RAHAB

8 Before the spies lay down for the night,
Rahab went up on the roof 9 and said to
them, "I know that Yahweh has given you
this land and that the fear of you has
fallen on us, so that all who dwell in the
land are melting in fear of you. 10 For we
have heard how Yahweh dried up the wa-
ters of the Red Sea before you when you
came out of Egypt, and what you did to
Sihon and Og, the two kings of the Amor-
ites across the Jordan, whom you devoted
to destruction. 11 When we heard this, our
hearts melted and everyone's courage
failed because of you, for Yahweh your
God is God in the heavens above and on
the earth below.
12 Now therefore, please swear to me by
Yahweh that you will indeed show kind-
ness to my family, because I showed
kindness to you. Give me a sure sign 13
that you will spare the lives of my father
and mother, my brothers and sisters, and
all who belong to them, and that you will
deliver us from death."
14 "Our lives for your lives!" the men
agreed. "If you do not report our mission,
we will show you kindness and faithful-
ness when Yahweh gives us the land."
15 Then Rahab let them down by a rope
through the window, since the house
where she lived was built into the wall of
the city. 16 "Go to the hill country," she
said, "so that your pursuers will not find
you. Hide yourselves there for three days
until they have returned; then go on your
way."
17 The men said to her, "We will not be
bound by this oath you made us swear 18
unless, when we enter the land, you have
tied this scarlet cord in the window
through which you let us down, and un-
less you have brought your father and
mother and brothers and all your family
into your house. 19 If anyone goes out the
door of your house into the street, his
blood will be on his own head, and we will
be innocent. But if a hand is laid on any-
one with you in the house, his blood will

- **JOSH 2:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:31 p.1993
- **JOSH 2:1 [NOTE]** RAHAB. The Hebrew word is zonah, a prostitute, and Hebrews 11:31 and James 2:25 use the Greek word for prostitute too. In today's words, never underestimate the OnlyFans girl. God can use anyone. She ended up in Jesus' family tree, Matthew 1:5. See the Big Question pages Rahab: God Uses Anyone, p.340.
- **JOSH 2:4 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 2:25 p.2004
- **JOSH 2:5 [NOTE]** SHE LIED. Was that okay? Christians have argued about it since the early church. See Rahab's Lie in the Big Question pages, p.340.
- **JOSH 2:9 [FULFILLS]** The nations of Canaan would hear and melt in fear ← EX 15:14-16 p.142
- **JOSH 2:15 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 2:25 p.2004
- **JOSH 2:18 [FORESHADOW]** The scarlet cord in Rahab's window saved her whole household → HEB 11:31; JAS 2:25 · MEDIUM p.1993

be on our heads. 20 And if you report our mission, we will be released from the oath you made us swear."

21 "Let it be as you say," she replied, and she sent them away. And when they had gone, she tied the scarlet cord in the window.

22 So the spies went out into the hill country and stayed there three days, until their pursuers had returned without finding them, having searched all along the road. 23 Then the two men started back, came down from the hill country, and crossed the river. So they came to Joshua son of Nun and reported all that had happened to them.

24 "Yahweh has surely delivered the entire land into our hands," they said to Joshua. "Indeed, all who dwell in the land are melting in fear of us."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

RAHAB

God Uses Anyone

JOSHUA 2 · 6:17 TO 25 · MATTHEW 1:5 · HEBREWS 11:31 · JAMES 2:25

WHO SHE WAS

A Canaanite woman living in Jericho's wall. The Hebrew calls her zonah, a prostitute, and so do Hebrews 11:31 and James 2:25. The Jewish historian Josephus, about AD 93, called her an innkeeper, and some old Jewish writers did too, but the plain word is prostitute.

WHAT SHE KNEW

She had heard about the Red Sea and the kings east of the Jordan, and she made one of the clearest statements of faith in the Old Testament: Yahweh your God is God in heaven above and on the earth below, 2:11. Her whole city heard the same news and melted in fear. Only Rahab acted on it.

THE SCARLET CORD

She tied a scarlet cord in her window, 2:18, and everyone inside her house was saved, like the blood on the doors at Passover, Exodus 12:13. Clement of Rome, about AD 96, wrote that the cord showed that redemption would come through the blood of the Lord.

INTO THE FAMILY

Rahab lived among Israel from then on, 6:25. Matthew 1:5 says she married Salmon and became the mother of Boaz, so she was the great great grandmother of King David. Matthew names only four women before Mary in Jesus' family tree: Tamar, Rahab, Ruth and the wife of Uriah, Bathsheba. Every one has a story. A Jewish tradition in the Talmud says instead that she married Joshua.

NEVER UNDERESTIMATE HER

In today's words, never underestimate the OnlyFans girl. God can use anyone. Jesus told the religious leaders that tax collectors and prostitutes were entering the kingdom of God ahead of them, Matthew 21:31. Rahab is proof that your past is not your future.

Every View

JOSHUA 2:4 TO 6 · EXODUS 1:19 TO 20 · HEBREWS 11:31 · JAMES 2:25

WHAT SHE DID

When the king's men came, Rahab hid the spies under flax on her roof and said they had already left, 2:4 to 6. It was a lie, and it saved their lives. The Bible praises her faith but never says a word about the lie itself.

VIEW 1: A LIE IS ALWAYS WRONG

Augustine, about AD 420, said God rewarded Rahab's kindness and faith, not her lie. John Calvin agreed that she was not free from fault. The philosopher Immanuel Kant said in 1797 that you may not lie even to a murderer at your door. These say she should have trusted God or kept silent.

VIEW 2: THE GREATER DUTY

Some teach that when two duties clash, you obey the greater one. Saving innocent life outranks telling the truth to killers. The Hebrew midwives lied to Pharaoh, and God was good to them, Exodus 1:19 to 20. Norman Geisler called this graded absolutism, obeying the bigger rule.

VIEW 3: NO RIGHT TO THE TRUTH

Others say lying means deceiving someone who has a right to the truth. A killer has no right to know where his victims are. Dietrich Bonhoeffer, who stood

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

against Hitler, wrote in 1943 that telling the truth means more than just saying true words.

VIEW 4: WAR IS DIFFERENT

Rahab had already switched sides. In war, hiding and tricking the enemy is expected. God Himself told Joshua to set an ambush at Ai, 8:2.

A REAL QUESTION

Christians who hid Jews from the Nazis faced the same question, and they did not all answer it the same way.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Hebrews 11:31 praises her faith. James 2:25 says she was justified by what she did when she welcomed the spies and sent them off on another route. Her faith acted, and God saved her.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests carry the ark into the Jordan at flood stage. The moment their feet touch the water, the river stops and piles up far upstream at a town called Adam. All Israel walks across on dry ground. Forty years after the Red Sea, God does it again for the kids.

CROSSING THE JORDAN

1 Early the next morning Joshua got up
and left Shittim with all the Israelites. They
went as far as the Jordan, where they
camped before crossing over.

2 After three days the officers went
through the camp 3 and commanded the
people: "When you see the ark of the
covenant of Yahweh your God being car-
ried by the Levitical priests, you are to set
out from your positions and follow it. 4 But
keep a distance of about three thousand
feet between yourselves and the ark. Do
not go near it, so that you can see the way
to go, since you have never traveled this
way before."

5 Then Joshua told the people, "Conse-
crate yourselves, for tomorrow Yahweh
will do wonders among you." 6 And he said
to the priests, "Take the ark of the
covenant and go on ahead of the people."
So they carried the ark of the covenant
and went ahead of them.

7 Now Yahweh said to Joshua, "Today I
will begin to exalt you in the sight of all Is-
rael, so they may know that I am with you
just as I was with Moses. 8 Command the
priests carrying the ark of the covenant:
'When you reach the edge of the waters,
stand in the Jordan.'"

9 So Joshua told the Israelites, "Come here
and listen to the words of Yahweh your
God." 10 He continued, "This is how you
will know that the living God is among you
and that He will surely drive out before
you the Canaanites, Hittites, Hivites, Per-
izzites, Girgashites, Amorites, and Je-
busites. 11 Behold, the ark of the covenant
of the Lord of all the earth will go ahead
of you into the Jordan.

12 Now choose twelve men from the tribes
of Israel, one from each tribe. 13 When the
feet of the priests who carry the ark of
Yahweh—the Lord of all the earth—touch
down in the waters of the Jordan, its flow-
ing waters will be cut off and will stand up
in a heap."

14 So when the people broke camp to
cross the Jordan, the priests carried the
ark of the covenant ahead of them.

15 Now the Jordan overflows its banks
throughout the harvest season. But as
soon as the priests carrying the ark
reached the Jordan and their feet touched
the water's edge, 16 the flowing water
stood still. It backed up as far upstream as
Adam, a city in the area of Zarethan, while
the water flowing toward the Sea of the
Arabah (the Salt Sea) was completely cut
off. So the people crossed over opposite
Jericho. 17 The priests carrying the ark of
the covenant of Yahweh stood firm on dry
ground in the middle of the Jordan, while
all Israel crossed over the dry ground, un-
til the entire nation had crossed the Jor-
dan.

JOSH 3:14 [MIRACLE] Jordan River stopped flowing while Israel crossed

JOSH 3:16 [NOTE] The water piled up at Adam, about 18 miles upstream. In 1927 an earthquake dropped the high banks near Adam, today Damiya, into the river and stopped the Jordan for about 21 hours. Some think God used something like that here. The Bible's point is the timing, the moment the priests' feet touched the water, 3:15.

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Twelve men carry twelve stones out of the river and stack them at Gilgal. When your children ask, What do these stones mean? tell them the story. The priests step out, and the river comes rushing back.

TWELVE STONES FROM THE JORDAN

1 When the whole nation had finished
crossing the Jordan, Yahweh said to
Joshua, 2 "Choose twelve men from
among the people, one from each tribe, 3
and command them: 'Take up for your-
selves twelve stones from the middle of
the Jordan where the priests were stand-
ing, carry them with you, and set them
down in the place where you spend the
night.'"

4 So Joshua summoned the twelve men he
had appointed from the Israelites, one
from each tribe, 5 and said to them, "Cross
over before the ark of Yahweh your God
into the middle of the Jordan. Each of you
is to take a stone upon his shoulder, ac-
cording to the number of the tribes of Is-
rael, 6 to serve as a sign among you. In the
future, when your children ask, 'What do
these stones mean to you?' 7 you are to
tell them, 'The waters of the Jordan were
cut off before the ark of the covenant of
Yahweh. When it crossed the Jordan, the
waters were cut off.' Therefore these
stones will be a memorial to the Israelites
forever."

8 Thus the Israelites did as Joshua had
commanded them. They took up twelve
stones from the middle of the Jordan, one
for each tribe of Israel, just as Yahweh
had told Joshua; and they carried them to
the camp, where they set them down.

9 Joshua also set up twelve stones in the
middle of the Jordan, in the place where
the priests who carried the ark of the
covenant stood. And the stones are there
to this day.

10 Now the priests who carried the ark re-
mained standing in the middle of the Jor-
dan until the people had completed every-
thing Yahweh had commanded Joshua to
tell them, just as Moses had directed
Joshua. The people hurried across, 11 and
after everyone had finished crossing, the
priests with the ark of Yahweh crossed in
the sight of the people. 12 The Reubenites,
the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Man-
asseh crossed over before the Israelites,
armed for battle as Moses had instructed
them. 13 About 40,000 troops armed for
battle crossed over before Yahweh into
the plains of Jericho.

14 On that day Yahweh exalted Joshua in
the sight of all Israel, and they revered him
all the days of his life, just as they had
revered Moses.

15 Then Yahweh said to Joshua, 16 "Com-
mand the priests who carry the ark of the
Testimony to come up from the Jordan."

17 So Joshua commanded the priests,
"Come up from the Jordan."

18 When the priests carrying the ark of the
covenant of Yahweh came up out of the
Jordan and their feet touched the dry
land, the waters of the Jordan returned to
their course and overflowed all the banks
as before.

THE CAMP AT GILGAL

19 On the tenth day of the first month the
people went up from the Jordan and
camped at Gilgal on the eastern border of
Jericho. 20 And there at Gilgal Joshua set
up the twelve stones they had taken from
the Jordan.

21 Then Joshua said to the Israelites, "In
the future, when your children ask their
fathers, 'What is the meaning of these
stones?' 22 you are to tell them, 'Israel
crossed the Jordan on dry ground.' 23 For
Yahweh your God dried up the waters of
the Jordan before you until you had
crossed over, just as He did to the Red
Sea, which He dried up before us until we
had crossed over. 24 He did this so that all
the peoples of the earth may know that

JOSH 4:6 [NOTABLE] God wanted a pile of rocks that would make kids ask questions. Faith is passed on by telling the story of what God did.

JOSH 4:9 [NOTE] The Hebrew says Joshua also set up twelve stones in the middle of the Jordan, where the priests stood. Many Bibles read it as a second pile; some read it as the same stones.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

the hand of Yahweh is mighty, and so that you may always fear Yahweh your God."

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

The kings of Canaan hear about the river and lose their nerve. Israel's sons born in the desert are circumcised at Gilgal, they keep the Passover, and the manna stops for good. Then a Man with a drawn sword meets Joshua near Jericho. He says He is the Commander of Yahweh's army, and Joshua takes off his sandals.

THE CIRCUMCISION AND PASSOVER AT GILGAL

1 Now when all the Amorite kings west of the Jordan and all the Canaanite kings along the coast heard how Yahweh had dried up the waters of the Jordan before the Israelites until they had crossed over, their hearts melted and their spirits failed for fear of the Israelites.

2 At that time Yahweh said to Joshua, "Make flint knives and circumcise the sons of Israel once again." 3 So Joshua made flint knives and circumcised the sons of Israel at Gibeath-haaraloth.

4 Now this is why Joshua circumcised them: All those who came out of Egypt—all the men of war—had died on the journey in the wilderness after they had left Egypt. 5 Though all who had come out were circumcised, none of those born in the wilderness on the journey from Egypt had been circumcised.

6 For the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness forty years, until all the nation's men of war who had come out of Egypt had died, since they did not obey Yahweh. So Yahweh vowed never to let them see the land He had sworn to their fathers to give us, a land flowing with milk and honey. 7 And He raised up their sons in their place, and these were the ones Joshua circumcised. Until this time they were still uncircumcised, since they had not been circumcised along the way.

8 And after all the nation had been circumcised, they stayed there in the camp until they were healed.

9 Then Yahweh said to Joshua, "Today I have rolled away the reproach of Egypt from you." So that place has been called Gilgal to this day.

10 On the evening of the fourteenth day of the month, while the Israelites were camped at Gilgal on the plains of Jericho, they kept the Passover. 11 The day after the Passover, on that very day, they ate unleavened bread and roasted grain from the produce of the land.

12 And the day after they had eaten from the produce of the land, the manna ceased. There was no more manna for the Israelites, so that year they began to eat the crops of the land of Canaan.

THE COMMANDER OF YAHWEH'S ARMY

13 Now when Joshua was near Jericho, he looked up and saw a man standing in front of him with a drawn sword in His hand. Joshua approached Him and asked, "Are You for us or for our enemies?"

14 "Neither," He replied. "I have now come as Commander of Yahweh's army."

Then Joshua fell facedown in reverence and asked Him, "What does my Lord have to say to His servant?"

15 The Commander of Yahweh's army replied, "Take off your sandals, for the place where you are standing is holy."

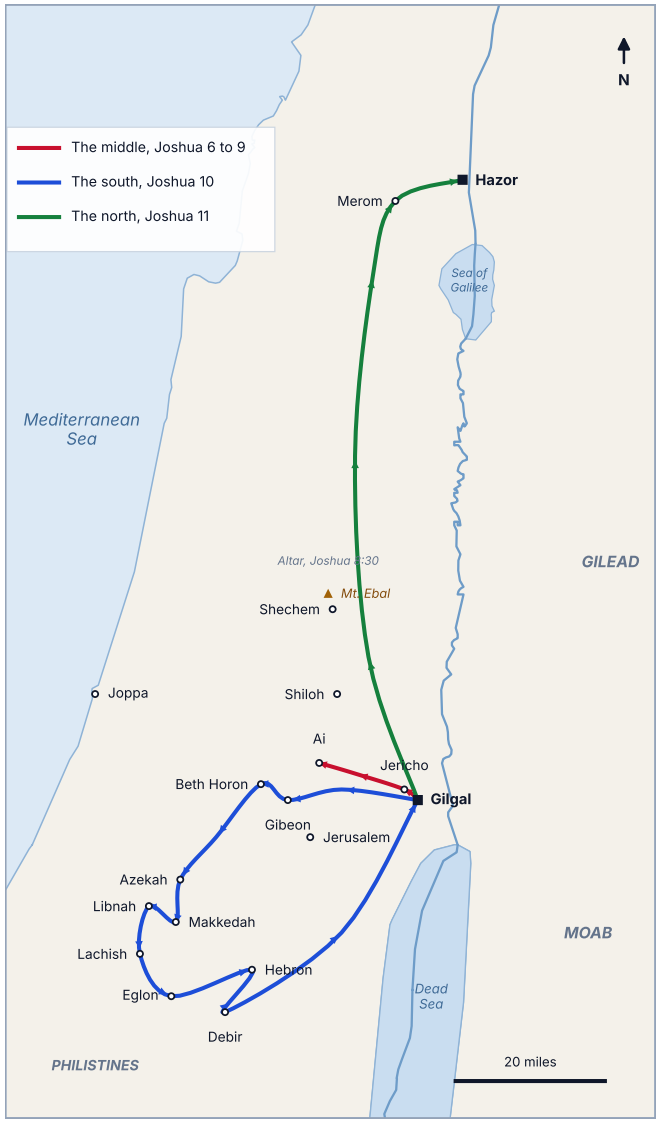
And Joshua did so.

- **JOSH 5:1 [FULFILLS]** The nations of Canaan would hear and melt in fear ← EX 15:14-16 p.142
- **JOSH 5:2 [NOTE]** A whole army healing from circumcision right next to the enemy. It only makes sense if God was going to fight for them. Genesis 34:25 shows how risky it was.
- **JOSH 5:12 [NOTE]** Forty years of manna ended the day after they ate food from the land. God provides in different ways, but He provides.
- **JOSH 5:13 [MIRACLE]** Commander of Yahweh's army appears to Joshua
- **JOSH 5:13 [NOTE]** WHO IS THIS? He accepts Joshua's worship, and the ground is holy, like the burning bush in Exodus 3:5. Many believe He is Jesus before His birth, so His words are red; others say a high angel. See the Big Question pages Who Was the Commander?, p.345
- **JOSH 5:14 [FORESHADOW]** The Captain of the Lord's host → HEB 2:10 · MEDIUM p.1979

MAP · JOSHUA 3 TO 11

Joshua Takes the Land

Three campaigns: the middle, the south and the north



THE MIDDLE Israel crossed the Jordan and camped at Gilgal, Joshua 4:19. Jericho fell first, then Ai, Joshua 6 to 8. Gibeon made peace by a trick, Joshua 9.

THE NORTH Jabin king of Hazor gathered the northern kings at the waters of Merom. Joshua beat them and burned Hazor, Joshua 11:1 to 13.

THE SOUTH Five kings attacked Gibeon. Joshua marched all night from Gilgal, won at Gibeon, chased them past Beth Horon, then took the southern cities, Joshua 10.

ONLY THREE BURNED The book names only three cities burned: Jericho, Ai and Hazor, Joshua 6:24, 8:28 and 11:13. Israel moved into the rest.

Jericho, Gibeon, Lachish and Hazor are certain. Ai, Makkedah, Libnah, Eglon and Merom are debated. Routes are approximate.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

God's battle plan: march around Jericho once a day for six days, seven times on the seventh, blow the horns and shout. Nobody would teach this at a military academy. The walls fall, the city is destroyed, and Rahab and her family are saved, just as promised.

THE WALLS OF JERICHO

1 Now Jericho was tightly shut up because
of the Israelites. No one went out and no
one came in.

2 And Yahweh said to Joshua, "Behold, I
have delivered Jericho into your hand,
along with its king and its mighty men of
valor. 3 March around the city with all the
men of war, circling the city one time. Do
this for six days. 4 Have seven priests
carry seven rams' horns in front of the
ark. Then on the seventh day, march
around the city seven times, while the
priests blow the horns. 5 And when there
is a long blast of the ram's horn and you
hear its sound, have all the people give a
mighty shout. Then the wall of the city will
collapse and all your people will charge
straight into the city."

THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WAS THE COMMANDER?

The Man with the Drawn Sword

JOSHUA 5:13 TO 6:2 · EXODUS 3:5 · HEBREWS 2:10

WHAT HAPPENED

Near Jericho, Joshua sees a Man with a drawn sword and asks, Are You for us or for our enemies? He answers, Neither. I have now come as Commander of Yahweh's army. Joshua falls facedown and worships, and the Commander tells him to take off his sandals, because the place is holy, 5:13 to 15.

CLUE 1: HE ACCEPTS WORSHIP

When John fell down before an angel, the angel said, Do not do that! Worship God, Revelation 22:8 to 9. This Commander does not stop Joshua.

CLUE 2: HOLY GROUND

Take off your sandals is almost word for word what God said to Moses at the burning bush, Exodus 3:5. There, the angel of Yahweh in the fire turned out to be God speaking.

CLUE 3: THE NEXT VERSE

Right after this, Yahweh speaks to Joshua and gives him the battle plan for Jericho, 6:2. Many read 6:2 as the same conversation going on.

WHAT THE EARLY CHURCH SAID

Justin Martyr, about AD 155, said this Commander was Christ before He became a man. Origen, about AD 250, said the same in his sermons on Joshua.

THE QUESTION BEHIND THE QUESTION

Joshua asked whose side He was on. The answer was, Neither. The Commander did not come to join Joshua's side. The real question is whether we are on His.

Every View

JOSHUA 5:13 TO 15 · DANIEL 10:13 · 12:1 · REVELATION 12:7

VIEW 1: JESUS BEFORE HIS BIRTH

Many Christians believe this is the Son of God appearing before He was born in Bethlehem. The worship, the holy ground and 6:2 point to Him. Hebrews 2:10 calls Jesus the captain of their salvation in the King James. This is why His words are printed in red.

VIEW 2: THE ARCHANGEL MICHAEL

Daniel calls Michael one of the chief princes and the great prince who stands over Israel, Daniel 10:13 and 12:1, and Revelation 12:7 shows Michael leading God's armies. Some Jewish teachers linked him to Michael. David Kimhi, about AD 1200, explained the Commander by pointing to Michael, the great prince.

VIEW 3: A HIGH ANGEL

Others say He was a high angel. The ground was holy because God was present, and Joshua bowed in respect, as people sometimes bowed to angels and kings.

THE ANGEL OF YAHWEH

Elsewhere the angel of Yahweh speaks as God Himself. Hagar said, You are the God who sees me, Genesis 16:13, and Manoah said, We have seen God, Judges 13:22. Many link the Commander

JOSH 6:5 [PROPHECY] God said the wall of Jericho would fall when the people shouted → JOSH 6:20 p.346

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

to this angel, and many see both as the Son before His birth.

A DIFFERENT TEACHING

Jehovah's Witnesses teach that Jesus is the archangel Michael. Most churches reject that, because Hebrews 1:5 to 6 says God never called an angel His Son and tells all the angels to worship Him.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Joshua was not in charge of this war. God's army was already there before Joshua drew a sword, and the first thing Joshua had to do was bow.

6 So Joshua son of Nun summoned the
priests and said, "Take up the ark of the
covenant and have seven priests carry
seven rams' horns in front of the ark of
Yahweh."
7 And he told the people, "Advance and
march around the city, with the armed
troops going ahead of the ark of Yahweh."
8 After Joshua had spoken to the people,
seven priests carrying seven rams' horns
before Yahweh advanced and blew the
horns, and the ark of the covenant of Yah-
weh followed them. 9 While the horns con-
tinued to sound, the armed troops
marched ahead of the priests who blew
the horns, and the rear guard followed the
ark.
10 But Joshua had commanded the people:
"Do not give a battle cry or let your voice
be heard; do not let one word come out of
your mouth until the day I tell you to
shout. Then you are to shout!" 11 So he had
the ark of Yahweh carried around the city,
circling it once. And the people returned
to the camp and spent the night there.
12 Joshua got up early the next morning,
and the priests took the ark of Yahweh. 13
And the seven priests carrying seven
rams' horns kept marching ahead of the
ark of Yahweh and blowing the horns. The
armed troops went in front of them and
the rear guard followed the ark of Yah-
weh, while the horns kept sounding. 14 So
on the second day they marched around
the city once and returned to the camp.
They did this for six days.
15 Then on the seventh day, they got up at
dawn and marched around the city seven
times in the same manner. That was the
only day they circled the city seven times.
16 After the seventh time around, the
priests blew the horns, and Joshua com-
manded the people, "Shout! For Yahweh
has given you the city! 17 Now the city and
everything in it must be devoted to Yah-
weh for destruction. Only Rahab the pros-
titute and all those with her in her house
will live, because she hid the spies we
sent. 18 But keep away from the things de-
voted to destruction, lest you yourself be
set apart for destruction. If you take any
of these, you will set apart the camp of Is-
rael for destruction and bring disaster
upon it. 19 For all the silver and gold and all
the articles of bronze and iron are holy to
Yahweh; they must go into His treasury."
20 So when the rams' horns sounded, the
people shouted. When they heard the
blast of the horn, the people gave a great
shout, and the wall collapsed. Then all the
people charged straight into the city and
captured it. 21 With the edge of the sword
they devoted to destruction everything in
the city—man and woman, young and old,
oxen, sheep, and donkeys.
22 Meanwhile, Joshua told the two men
who had spied out the land, "Go into the
house of the prostitute and bring out the
woman and all who are with her, just as
you promised her." 23 So the young spies
went in and brought out Rahab, her father
and mother and brothers, and all who be-
longed to her. They brought out her whole
family and settled them outside the camp
of Israel.

- **JOSH 6:17 [NOTE]** DEVOTED TO DESTRUCTION. The Hebrew word is herem, set apart for God. Why did God command this? See Holy War and the Canaanites in Deuteronomy, p.295.
- **JOSH 6:20 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Kathleen Kenyon's debated dating; Bryant Wood's reanalysis supports Late Bronze destruction matching biblical chronology → FIELD NOTES p.347
- **JOSH 6:20 [MIRACLE]** Walls of Jericho fell after seven days of marching
- **JOSH 6:20 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:30 p.1993
- **JOSH 6:20 [FULFILLS]** God said the wall of Jericho would fall when the people shouted ← JOSH 6:5 p.345
- **JOSH 6:23 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:31 p.1993

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, THE DATE IS DEBATED

JERICHO

JOSHUA 2:1 TO 24 · 6:1 TO 27 · 1 KINGS 16:34 · HEBREWS 11:30



Tell es Sultan, ancient Jericho, with the deep trench Kathleen Kenyon dug in the 1950s. Photo Berthold Werner. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

Tell es Sultan, the ruin hill of ancient Jericho, next to a big spring in the Jordan Valley, about 850 feet below sea level. Jericho is one of the oldest towns on earth.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived here more than 10,000 years ago. A stone tower about 28 feet tall was built about 8000 BC, thousands of years before Joshua. The city walls Joshua's story is about are much later. Their date is the big debate below.

WHERE AND WHEN DUG

Ernst Sellin and Carl Watzinger, 1907 to 1909. John Garstang, 1930 to 1936. Kathleen Kenyon, 1952 to 1958. An Italian and Palestinian team from 1997. In 2023 it was named a World Heritage Site.

WHAT WAS FOUND

A city surrounded by a stone retaining wall with a mudbrick wall on top. A thick layer of ash. Fallen mudbricks piled at the foot of the wall. Many jars still full of grain, burned. Joshua 6 says the city was burned and nothing was to be taken. Grain is usually the first thing an army steals.

THE BIG DEBATE

Garstang said the city fell about 1400 BC, just when the early date puts Joshua. Kenyon redated it to about 1550 BC and said Jericho had no real city around 1400. In 1990 Bryant Wood looked again at the pottery and Egyptian scarabs and argued for about 1400. A 1995 carbon test on burned grain gave about 1560 BC. Most archaeologists still follow Kenyon, but the debate is not over.

THE SPRING

Jericho sits beside a big spring that still flows today, Ein es Sultan. Christians call it Elisha's Spring, because Elisha made its bad water good, 2 Kings 2:19 to 22. That spring is why people lived here for ten thousand years.

LATER JERICHOS

Hiel rebuilt the city in Ahab's day, 1 Kings 16:34. The Jericho of Jesus, where He met Zacchaeus, Luke 19:1 to 10, was a newer town a mile or two to the south, with King Herod's winter palaces.

RIGHT AFTER HARVEST

Joshua 3:15 says the Jordan was flooding at harvest time, in the spring. Those who hold the early date say the full grain jars fit a city taken right after harvest after a short siege, because the food was never eaten up.

RAHAB'S HOUSE

Joshua 2:15 says Rahab's house was built into the city wall. The German team found houses between the inner and outer walls, where a stretch of wall did not fall. Some see Rahab's house there, but most archaeologists date those houses earlier.

THE WALLS FELL OUT

The diggers found mudbricks lying in a heap at the foot of the stone wall, as if the wall above had tumbled outward. A pile like that makes a ramp, and Joshua 6:20 says the people went straight up into the city.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No inscription names Joshua or Israel. It shows a walled city that burned with its grain inside. Whether that was Joshua's Jericho depends on which date is right.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

24 Then the Israelites burned up the city
and everything in it. However, they put the
silver and gold and articles of bronze and
iron into the treasury of Yahweh's house.
25 And Joshua spared Rahab the prosti-
tute, with her father's household and all
who belonged to her, because she hid the
men Joshua had sent to spy out Jericho.
So she has lived among the Israelites to
this day.

26 At that time Joshua invoked this solemn
oath:

"Cursed before Yahweh is the man who
rises up
and rebuilds this city, Jericho;
at the cost of his firstborn
he will lay its foundations;
at the cost of his youngest
he will set up its gates."

27 So Yahweh was with Joshua, and his
fame spread throughout the land.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel attacks the little town of Ai and loses. Joshua falls on his face, and God tells him why: someone stole from the things devoted to Him. Achan confesses. I saw, I wanted, I took, I hid. It does not end well for Achan.

THE DEFEAT AT AI

1 The Israelites, however, acted unfaith-
fully regarding the things devoted to de-
struction. Achan son of Carmi, the son of
Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Ju-
dah, took some of what was set apart. So
the anger of Yahweh burned against the
Israelites.

2 Meanwhile, Joshua sent men from Jeri-
cho to Ai, which is near Beth-aven to the
east of Bethel, and told them, "Go up and
spy out the land." So the men went up and
spied out Ai.

3 On returning to Joshua, they reported,
"There is no need to send all the people;
two or three thousand men are enough to
go up and attack Ai. Since the people of
Ai are so few, you need not wear out all
our people there."

4 So about three thousand men went up,
but they fled before the men of Ai. 5 And
the men of Ai struck down about thirty-six
of them, chasing them from the gate as
far as the quarries and striking them down
on the slopes. So the hearts of the people
melted and became like water.

6 Then Joshua tore his clothes and fell
facedown before the ark of Yahweh until
evening, as did the elders of Israel; and
they all sprinkled dust on their heads.

7 "O, Lord Yahweh," Joshua said, "why did
You ever bring this people across the Jor-
dan to deliver us into the hand of the
Amorites to be destroyed? If only we had
been content to stay on the other side of
the Jordan! 8 O Lord, what can I say, now
that Israel has turned its back and run
from its enemies? 9 When the Canaanites
and all who live in the land hear about
this, they will surround us and wipe out
our name from the earth. Then what will
You do for Your great name?"

10 But Yahweh said to Joshua, "Stand up!
Why have you fallen on your face? 11 Israel
has sinned; they have transgressed My
covenant that I commanded them, and
they have taken some of what was de-
voted to destruction. Indeed, they have
stolen and lied, and they have put these
things with their own possessions. 12 This
is why the Israelites cannot stand against
their enemies. They will turn their backs
and run from their enemies, because they
themselves have been set apart for de-
struction. I will no longer be with you un-
less you remove from among you what-
ever is devoted to destruction.

13 Get up and consecrate the people, say-
ing, 'Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow,
for this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel,
says: Among you, O Israel, there are
things devoted to destruction. You cannot
stand against your enemies until you re-

JOSH 6:26 [PROPHECY] Joshua cursed the rebuilder of Jericho: would lay its foundation at the cost of his first-born and gate at the cost of his youngest → 1Kl 16:34 p.580

JOSH 6:26 [NOTE] Centuries later, Hiel of Bethel rebuilt Jericho and lost his oldest and youngest sons, 1 Kings 16:34. Some think he buried them in the foundations as a pagan sacrifice; others think they simply died.

JOSH 7:1 [NOTE] One man stole, but the verse says the Israelites acted unfaithfully. In God's eyes the whole camp was tied together.

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

move them. 14 In the morning you must present yourselves tribe by tribe. The tribe that Yahweh selects shall come forward clan by clan, and the clan that Yahweh selects shall come forward family by family, and the family that Yahweh selects shall come forward man by man. 15 The one who is caught with the things devoted to destruction must be burned, along with all that belongs to him, because he has transgressed the covenant of Yahweh and committed an outrage in Israel.'"

THE SIN OF ACHAN

16 So Joshua arose early the next morning and had Israel come forward tribe by tribe, and the tribe of Judah was selected. 17 He had the clans of Judah come forward, and the clan of the Zerahites was selected. He had the clan of the Zerahites come forward, and the family of Zabdi was selected. 18 And he had the family of Zabdi come forward man by man, and Achan son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, was selected.

19 So Joshua said to Achan, "My son, give glory to Yahweh, the God of Israel, and make a confession to Him. I urge you to tell me what you have done; do not hide it from me."

20 "It is true," Achan replied, "I have sinned against Yahweh, the God of Israel. This is what I did: 21 When I saw among the spoils a beautiful cloak from Shinar, five pounds of silver, and a bar of gold weighing a pound and a quarter, I coveted them and took them. They are hidden in the ground inside my tent, with the silver underneath."

22 So Joshua sent messengers who ran to the tent, and there it all was, hidden in his tent, with the silver underneath. 23 They took the things from inside the tent, brought them to Joshua and all the Israelites, and spread them out before Yahweh.

24 Then Joshua, together with all Israel, took Achan son of Zerah, the silver, the cloak, the bar of gold, his sons and daughters, his oxen and donkeys and sheep, his tent, and everything else he owned, and brought them to the Valley of Achor.

25 "Why have you brought this trouble upon us?" said Joshua. "Today Yahweh will bring trouble upon you!" And all Israel stoned him to death. Then they stoned the others and burned their bodies. 26 And they heaped over Achan a large pile of rocks that remains to this day. So Yahweh turned from His burning anger. Therefore that place is called the Valley of Achor to this day.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Round two at Ai. Joshua sets an ambush, pretends to run, and the whole army of Ai chases him out of town. The ambush takes the empty city and burns it. Then Joshua builds an altar on Mount Ebal and reads the whole Law to the people, just as Moses said.

THE CONQUEST OF AI

1 Then Yahweh said to Joshua, "Do not be afraid or discouraged. Take the whole army with you, and go up and attack Ai. See, I have delivered into your hand the king of Ai, his people, his city, and his land. 2 And you shall do to Ai and its king as you did to Jericho and its king, except that you may carry off their plunder and livestock for yourselves. Set up an ambush behind the city."

3 So Joshua and the whole army set out to attack Ai. Joshua chose 30,000 mighty men of valor and sent them out at night 4 with these orders: "Pay attention. You are to lie in ambush behind the city, not too far from it. All of you must be ready. 5 Then I and all the troops with me will advance on the city. When they come out against us as they did the first time, we will flee from them. 6 They will pursue us until we have drawn them away from the

JOSH 7:20 [NOTABLE] Saw, coveted, took, hid: the same steps as Eve in Genesis 3:6. One man's hidden sin cost Israel the battle at Ai and 36 lives.

JOSH 7:26 [NOTE] Achor means trouble. Centuries later God promised to make the Valley of Achor a door of hope, Hosea 2:15.

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

city, for they will say, 'The Israelites are running away from us as they did before.' So as we flee from them, 7 you are to rise from the ambush and seize the city, for Yahweh your God will deliver it into your hand. 8 And when you have taken the city, set it on fire. Do as Yahweh has commanded! See, I have given you orders."

9 So Joshua sent them out, and they went to the place of ambush and lay in wait between Bethel and Ai, to the west of Ai. But Joshua spent that night among the people.

10 Joshua got up early the next morning and mobilized his men, and he and the elders of Israel marched before them up to Ai. 11 Then all the troops who were with him marched up and approached the city. They arrived in front of Ai and camped to the north of it, with the valley between them and the city.

12 Now Joshua had taken about five thousand men and set up an ambush between Bethel and Ai, to the west of the city. 13 So the forces were stationed with the main camp to the north of the city and the rear guard to the west of the city. And that night Joshua went into the valley.

14 When the king of Ai saw the Israelites, he hurried out early in the morning with the men of the city to engage them in battle at an appointed place overlooking the Arabah. But he did not know that an ambush had been set up against him behind the city. 15 Joshua and all Israel let themselves be beaten back before them, and they fled toward the wilderness. 16 Then all the men of Ai were summoned to pursue them, and they followed Joshua and were drawn away from the city. 17 Not a man was left in Ai or Bethel who did not go out after Israel, leaving the city wide open while they pursued Israel.

18 Then Yahweh said to Joshua, "Hold out your battle lance toward Ai, for into your hand I will deliver the city." So Joshua held out his battle lance toward Ai, 19 and as soon as he did so, the men in ambush rose quickly from their position. They rushed forward, entered the city, captured it, and immediately set it on fire.

20 When the men of Ai turned and looked back, the smoke of the city was rising into the sky. They could not escape in any direction, and the troops who had fled to the wilderness now turned against their pursuers. 21 When Joshua and all Israel saw that the men in ambush had captured the city and that smoke was rising from it, they turned around and struck down the men of Ai. 22 Meanwhile, those in the ambush came out of the city against them, and the men of Ai were trapped between the Israelite forces on both sides. So Israel struck them down until no survivor or fugitive remained. 23 But they took the king of Ai alive and brought him to Joshua.

24 When Israel had finished killing all the men of Ai who had pursued them into the field and wilderness, and when every last one of them had fallen by the sword, all the Israelites returned to Ai and put it to the sword as well. 25 A total of twelve thousand men and women fell that day—all the people of Ai. 26 Joshua did not draw back the hand that held his battle lance until he had devoted to destruction all who lived in Ai. 27 Israel took for themselves only the cattle and plunder of that city, as Yahweh had commanded Joshua.

28 So Joshua burned Ai and made it a permanent heap of ruins, a desolation to this day. 29 He hung the king of Ai on a tree until evening, and at sunset Joshua commanded that they take down the body from the tree and throw it down at the entrance of the city gate. And over it they raised a large pile of rocks, which remains to this day.

JOSHUA RENEWS THE COVENANT // DEUTERONOMY 27:1–10

30 At that time Joshua built an altar on Mount Ebal to Yahweh, the God of Israel,

- **JOSH 8:28 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Khirbet el-Maqatir excavations support a Late Bronze Age destruction at this site → FIELD NOTES p.351
- **JOSH 8:30 [FIELD NOTES]** A stone platform found on Mount Ebal may be this altar. See the Mount Ebal Altar Field Notes page in Deuteronomy, p.318.
- **JOSH 8:30 [TEXT]** The oldest Hebrew copy of Joshua, a Dead Sea Scroll called 4QJosh a, puts the reading of the Law, 8:34 to 35, right after the Jordan crossing, before

31 just as Moses the servant of Yahweh had commanded the Israelites. He built it according to what is written in the Book of the Law of Moses: "an altar of uncut stones on which no iron tool has been used." And on it they offered burnt offerings to Yahweh, and they sacrificed peace offerings.

32 And there in the presence of the Israelites, Joshua inscribed on the stones a copy of the law of Moses, which he had written. 33 All Israel, foreigners and citizens alike, with their elders, officers, and judges, stood on both sides of the ark of the covenant of Yahweh facing the Levitical priests who carried it. Half of the people stood in front of Mount Gerizim and half of them in front of Mount Ebal, as Moses the servant of Yahweh had commanded earlier, to bless the people of Israel.

34 Afterward, Joshua read aloud all the words of the law—the blessings and the curses—according to all that is written in the Book of the Law. 35 There was not a word of all that Moses had commanded that Joshua failed to read before the whole assembly of Israel, including the women, the little ones, and the foreigners who lived among them.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, THE SITE IS DEBATED

WHERE WAS AI?

JOSHUA 7:2 · 8:1 TO 29 · GENESIS 12:8



Left, et Tell, the traditional site of Ai, with walls from about 2400 BC. Photo Alex Ostrovski, CC BY SA 4.0. Right, Khirbet el Maqatir. Photo Tom Miller, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

Ai was a small town east of Bethel, 7:2. Its name means the ruin. Joshua burned it and made it a heap forever, 8:28. The question is which ruin is Ai.

THE TRADITIONAL SITE

Et Tell, about ten miles north of Jerusalem. Judith Marquet Krause dug it from 1933 to 1935 and Joseph Callaway from 1964 to 1972. They found a big city destroyed about 2400 BC, then nothing until a small village about 1200 BC. No city stood there in Joshua's day by either date.

HOW OLD IT IS

Et Tell's walls are from about 3000 to 2400 BC, more than a thousand years before Joshua. That is the problem.

ANOTHER CANDIDATE

Bryant Wood, Scott Stripling and the Associates for Biblical Research dug Khirbet el Maqatir, less than a mile west of et Tell, from 1995 to 2001 and 2009 to 2016. They found a small fort from the Late Bronze Age, about the size the Bible describes, with a gate on the north and signs that it burned. They argue it fits Joshua 7 and 8 better.

THE BIG DEBATE

Most archaeologists say et Tell is Ai and the story is not history, or that the name was given to a ruin people already knew. Some say Bethel itself is in the wrong place, which would move Ai too. Supporters of Maqatir say et Tell was simply the wrong guess. Maqatir also has later ruins, from the time of Jesus and a Byzantine monastery.

WHAT JOSHUA 8 DESCRIBES

A small town. The spies said two or three thousand men could take it, 7:3. Its men chased Israel and left the gates open, 8:17. Joshua burned it and made it a heap, a tel, and piled stones over its king's body at the gate, 8:28 to 29.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No sign at either site says Ai. The debate is about which hill fits the Bible's map and dates.

5:2. Many scholars think the altar story stood there too. The Greek Bible puts it after 9:2. Copies did not all agree on where the story belongs.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

The people of Gibeon show up in worn out sandals with moldy bread and say, We come from a very far country. Israel never asks God and signs a peace treaty. Three days later they find out the Gibeonites live next door. A promise is a promise, so the Gibeonites become woodcutters and water carriers.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE

THE DECEIT OF THE GIBEONITES

1 Now when news of this reached all the
kings west of the Jordan—those in the hill
country, the foothills, and all along the
coast of the Great Sea toward Lebanon
(the Hittites, Amorites, Canaanites, Per-
izzites, Hivites, and Jebusites)— 2 they
came together to wage war against
Joshua and Israel.

3 But the people of Gibeon, having heard
what Joshua had done to Jericho and Ai,
4 acted deceptively and set out as envoys,
carrying on their donkeys worn-out sacks
and old wineskins, cracked and mended.
5 They put worn, patched sandals on their
feet and threadbare clothing on their bod-
ies, and their whole supply of bread was
dry and moldy. 6 They went to Joshua in
the camp at Gilgal and said to him and the
men of Israel, "We have come from a dis-
tant land; please make a treaty with us."

7 But the men of Israel said to the Hivites,
"Perhaps you dwell near us. How can we
make a treaty with you?"

8 "We are your servants," they said to
Joshua.

Then Joshua asked them, "Who are you
and where have you come from?"

9 "Your servants have come from a very
distant land," they replied, "because of
the fame of Yahweh your God. For we
have heard the reports about Him: all that
He did in Egypt, 10 and all that He did to
the two kings of the Amorites beyond the
Jordan—Sihon king of Heshbon and Og
king of Bashan, who reigned in Ashtaroth.
11 So the elders and inhabitants of our land
told us, 'Take provisions for your journey;
go to meet them and say to them: We are
your servants. Please make a treaty with
us.'

12 This bread of ours was warm when we
packed it at home on the day we left to
come to you. But look, it is now dry and
moldy. 13 These wineskins were new when
we filled them, but look, they are cracked.
And these clothes and sandals are worn
out from our very long journey."

14 Then the men of Israel sampled their
provisions but did not seek the counsel of
Yahweh. 15 And Joshua made a treaty of
peace with them to let them live, and the
leaders of the congregation swore an oath
to them.

16 Three days after they had made the
treaty with the Gibeonites, the Israelites
learned that they were neighbors, living
among them. 17 So the Israelites set out
and on the third day arrived at their
cities—Gibeon, Chephirah, Beeroth, and
Kiriath-jearim. 18 But the Israelites did not
attack them, because the leaders of the
congregation had sworn an oath to them
by Yahweh, the God of Israel. And the
whole congregation grumbled against the
leaders.

19 All the leaders answered, "We have
sworn an oath to them by Yahweh, the
God of Israel, and now we cannot touch
them. 20 This is how we will treat them: We
will let them live, so that no wrath will fall
on us because of the oath we swore to
them." 21 They continued, "Let them live,
but let them be woodcutters and water
carriers for the whole congregation." So
the leaders kept their promise.

22 Then Joshua summoned the Gibeonites
and said, "Why did you deceive us by
telling us you live far away from us, when
in fact you live among us? 23 Now there-
fore you are under a curse and will per-
petually serve as woodcutters and water
carriers for the house of my God."

24 The Gibeonites answered, "Your ser-
vants were told clearly that Yahweh your
God had commanded His servant Moses
to give you all the land and wipe out all its
inhabitants before you. So we greatly
feared for our lives because of you, and
that is why we have done this. 25 Now we
are in your hands. Do to us whatever
seems good and right to you."

JOSH 9:3 [FIELD NOTES] Gibeon has been found and dug. See the Pool of Gibeon Field Notes page, p.353.

JOSH 9:4 [NOTE] The oldest trick in the book: dress the part. Worn sacks, cracked wineskins, patched sandals and dry, moldy bread.

JOSH 9:14 [NOTABLE] The Gibeonites fooled Israel with moldy bread and worn out sandals. Israel trusted their own eyes and never prayed about it.

JOSH 9:23 [FULFILLS] Noah said Canaan would become a servant to his brothers ← GEN 9:25 · MEDIUM p.60

26 So Joshua did this and delivered them
from the hands of the Israelites, and they
did not kill the Gibeonites. 27 On that day
he made them woodcutters and water
carriers, as they are to this day for the
congregation of Yahweh and for the altar
at the place He would choose.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR GIBEON, LATER THAN JOSHUA FOR THE POOL

THE POOL OF GIBEON

JOSHUA 9:3 TO 27 · 10:1 TO 12 · 2 SAMUEL 2:13 · JEREMIAH 41:12



The steps cut into the rock inside the great pool at el Jib, ancient Gibeon. Photo PikiWiki Israel, CC BY 2.5.

WHAT IT IS

A round shaft cut into solid rock, about 37 feet across and 35 feet deep, with steps spiraling down the side. A tunnel keeps going down to water, about 80 feet below the top. It is at el Jib, a village about six miles northwest of Jerusalem.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was cut in the Iron Age, the time of Israel's judges and kings, about 1100 to 700 BC. That is after Joshua.

HOW WE KNOW IT IS GIBEON

James Pritchard dug here from 1956 to 1962 and found dozens of jar handles with the name Gibeon scratched on them in old Hebrew letters. The site is no longer a guess.

WHAT ELSE WAS FOUND

Dozens of cellars cut into the rock, which Pritchard thought could hold about 25,000 gallons of wine. Gibeon was a wine town.

IN THE BIBLE

The Gibeonites tricked Joshua, chapter 9, and Joshua's long day happened over Gibeon, 10:12. Later Joab and Abner's men met by the pool of Gibeon, 2 Samuel 2:13, and Jeremiah 41:12 mentions the great pool in Gibeon.

THE BIG DEBATE

Pritchard found tombs from Joshua's age but very little of a town. Some say the town of that time has not been found under the village; others see a problem for the story.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The pool is later than Joshua. It shows that Gibeon was real, was where the Bible says, and kept its name for thousands of years.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Five Amorite kings attack Gibeon, and Joshua marches all night to help. God throws hailstones, and Joshua asks the sun to stand still over Gibeon. It does. The five kings hide in a cave and get found. Then Joshua sweeps through the south.

THE DAY THE SUN STOOD STILL

1 Now Adoni-zedek king of Jerusalem
heard that Joshua had captured Ai and
devoted it to destruction—doing to Ai and
its king as he had done to Jericho and its
king—and that the people of Gibeon had
made peace with Israel and were living
near them. 2 So Adoni-zedek and his people were greatly alarmed, because Gibeon
was a great city, like one of the royal
cities; it was larger than Ai, and all its men
were mighty.

3 Therefore Adoni-zedek king of
Jerusalem sent word to Hoham king of
Hebron, Piram king of Jarmuth, Japhia
king of Lachish, and Debir king of Eglon,
saying, 4 "Come up and help me. We will
attack Gibeon, because they have made
peace with Joshua and the Israelites."

5 So the five kings of the Amorites—the
kings of Jerusalem, Hebron, Jarmuth,
Lachish, and Eglon—joined forces and advanced with all their armies. They camped
before Gibeon and made war against it.

JOSH 10:1 [FIELD NOTES] In the 1300s BC a king of Jerusalem named Abdi Heba wrote to Pharaoh for help. See the Amarna Letters Field Notes page, p.355.

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

6 Then the men of Gibeon sent word to
Joshua in the camp at Gilgal: "Do not
abandon your servants. Come quickly and
save us! Help us, because all the kings of
the Amorites from the hill country have
joined forces against us."
7 So Joshua and his whole army, including
all the mighty men of valor, came from
Gilgal.
8 Yahweh said to Joshua, "Do not be afraid
of them, for I have delivered them into
your hand. Not one of them shall stand
against you."
9 After marching all night from Gilgal,
Joshua caught them by surprise. 10 And
Yahweh threw them into confusion before
Israel, who defeated them in a great
slaughter at Gibeon, pursued them along
the ascent to Beth-horon, and struck them
down as far as Azekah and Makkedah. 11
As they fled before Israel along the de-
scent from Beth-horon to Azekah, Yahweh
cast down on them large hailstones from
the sky, and more of them were killed by
the hailstones than by the swords of the
Israelites.
12 On the day that Yahweh gave the Amor-
ites over to the Israelites, Joshua spoke to
Yahweh in the presence of Israel:

"O sun, stand still over Gibeon,
O moon, over the Valley of Aijalon."

13 So the sun stood still
and the moon stopped
until the nation took vengeance
upon its enemies.
Is this not written in the Book of Jashar?

"So the sun stopped
in the middle of the sky
and delayed going down
about a full day."

14 There has been no day like it before or
since, when Yahweh listened to the voice
of a man, because Yahweh fought for Is-
rael.
15 Then Joshua returned with all Israel to
the camp at Gilgal.

- **JOSH 10:11 [MIRACLE]** Large hailstones killed more enemies than Israel's sword
- **JOSH 10:12 [MIRACLE]** Sun stood still over Gibeon — Joshua's long day
- **JOSH 10:12 [NOTE]** THE LONG DAY. Did the earth stop turning? See the Big Question pages Did the Sun Stand Still?, p.354
- **JOSH 10:13 [NOTE]** The Book of Jashar, the Book of the Upright One, was a book of old songs and poems. It is quoted again in 2 Samuel 1:18 and has been lost. The Book of Jashar sold today was written in later centuries.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DID THE SUN STAND STILL?

Joshua's Long Day

JOSHUA 10:12 TO 14 · HABAKKUK 3:11 · ISAIAH 38:8

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

During the battle for Gibeon, Joshua said, O sun, stand still over Gibeon, O moon, over the Valley of Aijalon. The sun stopped in the middle of the sky and delayed going down about a full day. There has been no day like it, before or since, 10:12 to 14. Habakkuk 3:11 remembers it too.

WHERE IT HAPPENED

Joshua had marched all night from Gilgal and chased the five kings down the pass of Beth Horon, 10:9 to 11. The sun was over Gibeon in the east and the moon over the Valley of Aijalon in the west. Isaiah 28:21 remembers what God did in the Valley of Gibeon.

THE HEBREW WORDS

The word for stand still, dom, usually means be silent or be still. In 10:13 the sun stood, amad. Those words are why people read the verse different ways.

A POEM INSIDE THE STORY

The lines Joshua spoke are a poem, and 10:13 says they were written in the Book of Jashar, a lost book of songs. The prose around them says the day was longer than any other.

THE GALILEO FIGHT

Martin Luther, at his dinner table in 1539, laughed off Copernicus' new idea that the earth moves around the sun. Joshua told the sun to stand still, he said, not the earth. Galileo answered with this very verse in his 1615 Letter to the Grand Duchess Christina. The Catholic Church condemned his view in 1616 and put him on trial in 1633.

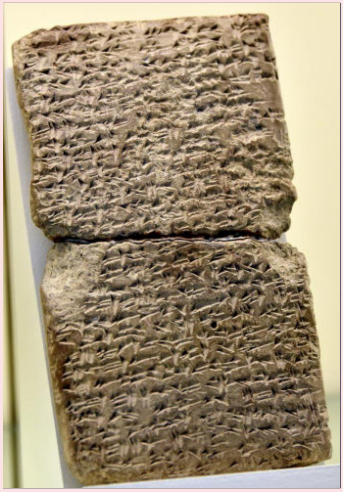
THE NASA STORY

For years a story went around that NASA computers found a missing day that

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE LETTERS, DEBATED FOR THE HABIRU

THE AMARNA LETTERS

JOSHUA 10:1 TO 5 · 11:1 · 24:1



A letter from Abdi Heba, king of Jerusalem, to Pharaoh. Vorderasiatisches Museum, Berlin. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

About 380 clay tablets, mostly letters, written in cuneiform to Pharaohs Amenhotep III and Akhenaten. Many come from kings of Canaanite cities that Joshua names: Jerusalem, Hazor, Gezer, Lachish and Shechem.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1360 to 1335 BC. That is after Joshua by the early date and before him by the late date.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In 1887 a local woman digging at Tell el Amarna, Akhenaten's capital in Egypt, found them. They are now in museums in Berlin, London, Cairo and elsewhere.

WHAT THEY SAY

The kings fight each other and beg Pharaoh for soldiers. Abdi Heba of Jerusalem writes that the Habiru are plundering all the king's lands, and that the land of Shechem was handed to the Habiru. Joshua 10 says another king of Jerusalem, Adoni Zedek, led five kings against Israel.

WHO WERE THE HABIRU?

The word was used for outsiders, raiders and hired soldiers all over the Near East for hundreds of years, from Syria to Egypt. It sounds like Hebrew, ivri.

THE BIG DEBATE

Some who hold the early date think some Habiru were the Israelites, or that the letters show Canaan in chaos after Joshua. Most scholars say Habiru was a social group, not a people, though the Hebrews may have been counted among them. The letters never name Israel or Joshua.

A SHECHEM CLUE

Joshua never tells of a battle for Shechem, yet Israel gathers at Mount Ebal beside Shechem in 8:30 to 35, and at Shechem itself in 24:1. The Amarna letters show Shechem already working with the Habiru, which some find interesting.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

They do not prove the conquest. They show what Canaan was like: many small kings, walled cities, and no help coming from Egypt.

proved Joshua's long day. NASA says it never happened, and computers cannot find a missing day.

Every View

JOSHUA 10:11 TO 14 · 2 KINGS 20:9 TO 11

VIEW 1: THE EARTH STOPPED

God slowed or stopped the earth's turning and held everything else in place.

~~The God who made the sun can stop it.~~

2 Kings 20:9 to 11 tells of a shadow going backward.

VIEW 2: THE LIGHT STAYED
God did not stop the earth but made the light last, perhaps by bending sunlight, so the land stayed bright for the battle.
VIEW 3: STOP SHINING
Since dom can mean be silent, some say Joshua asked the sun to stop beating down on his tired men, and God sent the hailstorm of 10:11 to cool and darken the sky.
VIEW 4: AN ECLIPSE
In 2017 Colin Humphreys and Graeme Waddington argued that it was an eclipse of the sun visible in Canaan on October 30, 1207 BC. Back in 1918 Robert Dick Wilson of Princeton argued that the Hebrew words meant the sun was eclipsed. Others say an eclipse does not fit a day that lasted longer.
VIEW 5: A SIGN IN THE SKY
John Walton and others point out that ancient peoples read the sun and moon as signs. They think Joshua asked for the sun and moon to be in a position that meant victory for Israel and doom for the enemy.
VIEW 6: POETIC LANGUAGE
Some read it as poetry from the Book of Jashar, the way Judges 5:20 says the stars fought from heaven. The point is that God fought for Israel.
WHAT ALL AGREE ON
Something happened that day that had never happened before. Yahweh listened to a man, because Yahweh fought for Israel, 10:14. And the hailstones killed more than the swords did, 10:11.

THE VICTORY AT MAKKEDAH

16 Now the five kings had fled and hidden
in the cave at Makkedah. 17 And Joshua
was informed: "The five kings have been
found; they are hiding in the cave at
Makkedah."
18 So Joshua said, "Roll large stones
against the mouth of the cave, and post
men there to guard them. 19 But you, do
not stop there. Pursue your enemies and
attack them from behind. Do not let them
reach their cities, for Yahweh your God
has delivered them into your hand."
20 So Joshua and the Israelites continued
to inflict a terrible slaughter until they had
finished them off, and the remaining sur-
vivors retreated to the fortified cities. 21
The whole army returned safely to Joshua
in the camp at Makkedah, and no one
dared to utter a word against the Is-
raelites.
22 Then Joshua said, "Open the mouth of
the cave and bring those five kings out to
me." 23 So they brought the five kings out
of the cave—the kings of Jerusalem, He-
bron, Jarmuth, Lachish, and Eglon.
24 When they had brought the kings to
Joshua, he summoned all the men of Is-
rael and said to the army commanders
who had accompanied him, "Come here
and put your feet on the necks of these
kings."
So the commanders came forward and
put their feet on their necks.
25 "Do not be afraid or discouraged,"
Joshua said. "Be strong and courageous,
for Yahweh will do this to all the enemies
you fight."
26 After this, Joshua struck down and
killed the kings, and he hung their bodies
on five trees and left them there until
evening. 27 At sunset Joshua ordered that
they be taken down from the trees and
thrown into the cave in which they had
hidden. Then large stones were placed
against the mouth of the cave, and the
stones are there to this day.
28 On that day Joshua captured Makkedah
and put it to the sword, along with its king.
He devoted to destruction everyone in the
city, leaving no survivors. So he did to the
king of Makkedah as he had done to the
king of Jericho.

CONQUEST OF THE SOUTHERN CITIES

29 Then Joshua and all Israel with him
moved on from Makkedah to Libnah and
fought against Libnah. 30 And Yahweh also
delivered that city and its king into the
hand of Israel, and Joshua put all the peo-
ple to the sword, leaving no survivors.
And he did to the king of Libnah as he had
done to the king of Jericho.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

31 And Joshua and all Israel with him
moved on from Libnah to Lachish. They
laid siege to it and fought against it. 32 And
Yahweh delivered Lachish into the hand of
Israel, and Joshua captured it on the sec-
ond day. He put all the people to the
sword, just as he had done to Libnah.
33 At that time Horam king of Gezer went
to help Lachish, but Joshua struck him
down along with his people, leaving no
survivors.
34 So Joshua moved on from Lachish to
Eglon, and all Israel with him. They laid
siege to it and fought against it. 35 That
day they captured Eglon and put it to the
sword, and Joshua devoted to destruction
everyone in the city, just as he had done
to Lachish.
36 Then Joshua and all Israel with him
went up from Eglon to Hebron and fought
against it. 37 They captured it and put to
the sword its king, all its villages, and all
the people. Joshua left no survivors, just
as he had done at Eglon; he devoted to
destruction Hebron and everyone in it.
38 Finally Joshua and all Israel with him
turned toward Debir and fought against it.
39 And they captured Debir, its king, and all
its villages. They put them to the sword
and devoted to destruction everyone in
the city, leaving no survivors. Joshua did
to Debir and its king as he had done to
Hebron and as he had done to Libnah and
its king.
40 So Joshua conquered the whole
region—the hill country, the Negev, the
foothills, and the slopes, together with all
their kings—leaving no survivors. He de-
voted to destruction everything that
breathed, just as Yahweh, the God of Is-
rael, had commanded. 41 Joshua con-
quered the area from Kadesh-barnea to
Gaza, and the whole region of Goshen as
far as Gibeon.
42 And because Yahweh, the God of Israel,
fought for Israel, Joshua captured all
these kings and their land in one cam-
paign. 43 Then Joshua returned with all Is-
rael to the camp at Gilgal.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

The kings of the north gather an army like the sand on the seashore, with horses and chariots. God says, Do not be afraid. Joshua wins, burns Hazor, the head of all those kingdoms, and takes the land. And the land had rest from war.

CONQUEST OF THE NORTHERN CITIES

1 Now when Jabin king of Hazor heard
about these things, he sent word to Jobab
king of Madon; to the kings of Shimron
and Achshaph; 2 to the kings of the north
in the mountains, in the Arabah south of
Chinnereth, in the foothills, and in
Naphoth-dor to the west; 3 to the Canaan-
ites in the east and west; to the Amorites,
Hittites, Perizzites, and Jebusites in the
hill country; and to the Hivites at the foot
of Hermon in the land of Mizpah.
4 So these kings came out with all their
armies, a multitude as numerous as the
sand on the seashore, along with a great
number of horses and chariots. 5 All these
kings joined forces and encamped at the
waters of Merom to fight against Israel.
6 Then Yahweh said to Joshua, "Do not be
afraid of them, for by this time tomorrow I
will deliver all of them slain before Israel.
You are to hamstring their horses and
burn up their chariots."
7 So by the waters of Merom, Joshua and
his whole army came upon them suddenly
and attacked them, 8 and Yahweh deliv-
ered them into the hand of Israel, who
struck them down and pursued them all
the way to Greater Sidon and Misrephoth-
maim, and eastward as far as the Valley of
Mizpeh. They struck them down, leaving
no survivors. 9 Joshua treated them as
Yahweh had told him; he hamstrung their
horses and burned up their chariots.
10 At that time Joshua turned back and
captured Hazor and put its king to the
sword, because Hazor was formerly the
head of all these kingdoms. 11 The Is-

JOSH 10:40 [FULFILLS] The fourth generation would return ← GEN 15:16 p.68

JOSH 11:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Hazor destruction by fire → FIELD NOTES p.358

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · THE HEART · DEMONIC

raelites put everyone in Hazor to the sword, devoting them to destruction. Nothing that breathed remained, and Joshua burned down Hazor itself.

12 Joshua captured all these kings and their cities and put them to the sword. He devoted them to destruction, as Moses Yahweh's servant had commanded. 13 Yet Israel did not burn any of the cities built on their mounds, except Hazor, which Joshua burned.

14 The Israelites took for themselves all the plunder and livestock of these cities, but they put all the people to the sword until they had completely destroyed them, not sparing anyone who breathed. 15 As Yahweh had commanded His servant Moses, so Moses commanded Joshua. That is what Joshua did, leaving nothing undone of all that Yahweh had commanded Moses.

JOSHUA TAKES THE WHOLE LAND

16 So Joshua took this entire region: the hill country, all the Negev, all the land of Goshen, the western foothills, the Arabah, and the mountains of Israel and their foothills, 17 from Mount Halak, which rises toward Seir, as far as Baal-gad in the Valley of Lebanon at the foot of Mount Hermon. He captured all their kings and struck them down, putting them to death.

18 Joshua waged war against all these kings for a long period of time. 19 No city made peace with the Israelites except the Hivites living in Gibeon; all others were taken in battle. 20 For it was of Yahweh to harden their hearts to engage Israel in battle, so that they would be set apart for destruction and would receive no mercy, being annihilated as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

21 At that time Joshua proceeded to eliminate the Anakim from the hill country of Hebron, Debir, and Anab, and from all the hill country of Judah and of Israel. Joshua devoted them to destruction, along with their cities. 22 No Anakim were left in the land of the Israelites; only in Gaza, Gath, and Ashdod did any survive.

23 So Joshua took the entire land, in keeping with all that Yahweh had spoken to Moses. And Joshua gave it as an inheritance to Israel according to the allotments to their tribes. Then the land had rest from war.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIRE, DEBATED FOR WHO SET IT

HAZOR BURNED

JOSHUA 11:1 TO 15 · JUDGES 4:2 · 1 KINGS 9:15



Stones of the Late Bronze Age palace at Hazor, cracked by the fire that burned the city. A modern roof now shelters them. Photo Bukvoed, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Tel Hazor, north of the Sea of Galilee, was the biggest Canaanite city in the land, about 200 acres. Joshua 11:10 calls it the head of all those kingdoms, and 11:13 says it was the only northern city Joshua burned.

HOW OLD IT IS

The great Canaanite city lasted from about 1750 BC until a huge fire in the 1200s BC. Hazor's king is even named in letters from the 1700s BC found at Mari in Syria, and in letters from the 1300s BC found in Egypt.

WHERE AND WHEN DUG

Yigael Yadin, 1955 to 1958 and 1968. Amnon Ben Tor of the Hebrew University, from 1990. It is a World Heritage Site.

WHAT WAS FOUND

A thick burn layer over the whole city. In the palace the fire was so hot that the

JOSH 11:13 [NOTE] ONLY THREE CITIES BURNED. The book names only three cities Joshua burned: Jericho, 6:24, Ai, 8:28, and Hazor, 11:13. Israel moved into the other cities, Deuteronomy 6:10 to 11. That matters for archaeology. See When Was the Conquest? in the Big Question pages, p.359.

JOSH 11:20 [HEART] God hardened the hearts of the Canaanite kings so they would fight. Some see God confirming a choice they had already made, like Pharaoh's; others see His judgment at work.

JOSH 11:21 [DEMONIC] Joshua cut off the Anakim from the mountains; remnant only in Gaza, Gath, Ashdod

JOSH 11:23 [FULFILLS] The fourth generation would return ← GEN 15:16 p.68

basalt slabs cracked and the mudbrick turned partly to glass. Statues of gods and kings were found with their heads and hands cut off, as if the attackers hated the city's religion.

THE BIG DEBATE

Ben Tor thinks the Israelites burned it, and points to the broken idols, Deuteronomy 7:5. Others blame the Egyptians, the Sea Peoples, or a revolt of Hazor's own poor. Those who hold the early date say this 1200s fire was in Deborah's time, Judges 4, and look for Joshua's fire in an earlier layer.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No inscription says who lit the fire. It does show that Hazor was a great city, burned, with its idols smashed, as Joshua 11 describes.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS THE CONQUEST?

The Early Date and the Late Date

1 KINGS 6:1 · JUDGES 11:26 · EXODUS 1:11 · JOSHUA 11:13

THE EARLY DATE

1 Kings 6:1 says Solomon began the temple 480 years after Israel left Egypt. Solomon's fourth year was about 966 BC, so the Exodus was about 1446 BC and the Jordan crossing about 1406 BC. Judges 11:26 says Israel had lived in the land for three hundred years by Jephthah's time. John Garstang's Jericho findings in the 1930s fit this date.

THE LATE DATE

Exodus 1:11 says Israel built the city of Rameses, a name tied to pharaohs of the 1200s BC. The Merneptah Stele, about 1208 BC, already names Israel in Canaan. Several cities burned in the 1200s BC. William Albright and many others put the conquest about 1230 BC and read the 480 years as twelve generations of forty years.

THE EXODUS QUESTION

Both dates depend on when the Exodus happened. See When Was the Exodus? in Exodus, p.122, and the Merneptah Stele Field Notes page there, p.138.

A KEY VERSE FOR ARCHAEOLOGY

The book names only three cities that Joshua burned: Jericho, 6:24, Ai, 8:28, and Hazor, 11:13. The rest they moved into. So most cities would not show a burn layer from Joshua at all, and digging for burned cities everywhere misreads the book.

THE BIBLE'S OWN PICTURE

Joshua 11:23 says Joshua took the whole land, but 13:1 says very much land remained, and Judges 1 lists towns never taken. The book describes armies beaten and kings killed, followed by a long, slow settling.

Every View

JOSHUA 11:13 · 13:1 · 24:13 · JUDGES 1

VIEW 1: A REAL CONQUEST

Joshua happened much as written. Early date supporters like Bryant Wood point to Jericho, Khirbet el Maqatir and an earlier burn at Hazor. Late date supporters, like Albright and G. Ernest Wright in the mid 1900s, pointed to cities burned in the 1200s BC.

VIEW 2: A SLOW MOVE IN

Albrecht Alt in 1925 and Martin Noth said Israel's tribes drifted into the empty hill country over many years, mostly in peace, and the battle stories came later.

VIEW 3: A REVOLT

George Mendenhall in 1962 and Norman Gottwald in 1979 said poor Canaanite farmers rose up against their city kings and joined a new faith in Yahweh.

VIEW 4: ISRAEL CAME FROM CANAAN

Israel Finkelstein, William Dever and others say Israel grew up inside Canaan. Surveys found about 250 new villages in the hill country about 1200 to 1000 BC, mostly without pig bones, unlike their neighbors. They see these villages as the first Israelites.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

Critics say Jericho and Ai were empty in Joshua's day. Supporters answer that the dates or the sites are wrong, that 11:13 means few burn layers, and that the villages fit people who moved in after the war.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Most scholars agree that by about 1200 BC a people called Israel lived in the hill country of Canaan, worshiped a God named Yahweh, and remembered that

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

He gave them the land. Joshua 24:13 says it plainly: a land you did not work for, cities you did not build.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

A list of the kings Israel defeated: two east of the Jordan under Moses and thirty one west of it under Joshua. It reads like a scoreboard. God kept every promise, and somebody wrote it down.

THE KINGS DEFEATED EAST OF THE JORDAN

1 Now these are the kings of the land
whom the Israelites struck down and
whose lands they took beyond the Jordan
to the east, from the Arnon Valley to
Mount Hermon, including all the Arabah
eastward:

2 Sihon king of the Amorites, who lived in
Heshbon. He ruled from Aroer on the rim
of the Arnon Valley, along the middle of
the valley, up to the Jabbok River (the
border of the Ammonites), that is, half of
Gilead, 3 as well as the Arabah east of the
Sea of Chinnereth to the Sea of the
Arabah (the Salt Sea), eastward through
Beth-jeshimoth, and southward below the
slopes of Pisgah.

4 And Og king of Bashan, one of the remnant of the Rephaim, who lived in Ashtaroth and Edrei. 5 He ruled over Mount Hermon, Salecah, all of Bashan up to the border of the Geshurites and Maacathites, and half of Gilead to the border of Sihon king of Heshbon.

6 Moses, the servant of Yahweh, and the
Israelites had struck them down and given
their land as an inheritance to the
Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe
of Manasseh.

THE KINGS DEFEATED WEST OF THE JORDAN

7 And these are the kings of the land that
Joshua and the Israelites conquered be-
yond the Jordan to the west, from Baal-
gad in the Valley of Lebanon to Mount Ha-
lak, which rises toward Seir (according to
the allotments to the tribes of Israel,
Joshua gave them as an inheritance 8 the
hill country, the foothills, the Arabah, the
slopes, the wilderness, and the
Negev—the lands of the Hittites, Amor-
ites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and
Jebusites):

9 the king of Jericho, one;
the king of Ai, which is near Bethel, one;
10 the king of Jerusalem, one;
the king of Hebron, one;
11 the king of Jarmuth, one;
the king of Lachish, one;
12 the king of Eglon, one;
the king of Gezer, one;
13 the king of Debir, one;
the king of Geder, one;
14 the king of Hormah, one;
the king of Arad, one;
15 the king of Libnah, one;
the king of Adullam, one;
16 the king of Makkedah, one;
the king of Bethel, one;
17 the king of Tappuah, one;
the king of Hepher, one;
18 the king of Aphek, one;
the king of Lasharon, one;
19 the king of Madon, one;
the king of Hazor, one;
20 the king of Shimron-meron, one;
the king of Achshaph, one;
21 the king of Taanach, one;
the king of Megiddo, one;
22 the king of Kedesh, one;
the king of Jokneam in Carmel, one;
23 the king of Dor in Naphath-dor, one;
the king of Goiim in Gilgal, one;
24 and the king of Tirzah, one.

So there were thirty-one kings in all.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Joshua is old, and much land is still not taken. God tells him to divide it anyway. The tribes east of the Jordan get their land, and the Levites get no land, because God Himself is their inheritance. Balaam shows up one last time, as a casualty.

LANDS YET UNCONQUERED // JUDGES 1:1–7

1 Now Joshua was old and well along in
years, and Yahweh said to him, "You are
old and well along in years, but very much

JOSH 12:4 [DEMONIC] Og, one of the last of the Rephaim

MAP · JOSHUA 13 TO 19

The Land of the Twelve Tribes

Who got what when Joshua divided the land



EAST OF THE JORDAN Reuben, Gad and half of Manasseh chose the grazing land east of the river, Numbers 32 and Joshua 13.

TRIBES THAT MOVED Simeon got towns inside Judah, Joshua 19:1 to 9. Dan could not hold its land and moved north to Laish, Judges 18.

WHY STILL TWELVE? Levi got no land, just 48 towns among the others, Joshua 21:41. Joseph got two shares, one for Ephraim and one for Manasseh.

NOT ALL TAKEN The Philistines kept the coast, Joshua 13:2 to 3, and the Jebusites kept Jerusalem until David, Joshua 15:63.

Town locations are well known. Tribe borders are approximate, drawn from the town lists in Joshua 13 to 19.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

of the land remains to be possessed. 2 This is the land that remains:

All the territory of the Philistines and the Geshurites, 3 from the Shihor east of Egypt to the territory of Ekron on the north (considered to be Canaanite territory)—that of the five Philistine rulers of Gaza, Ashdod, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron, as well as that of the Avvites;
4 to the south, all the land of the Canaanites, from Mearah of the Sidonians to Aphek, as far as the border of the Amorites;
5 the land of the Gebalites;
and all Lebanon to the east, from Baal-gad below Mount Hermon to Lebo-hamath.

6 All the inhabitants of the hill country from Lebanon to Misrephoth-maim—all the Sidonians—I Myself will drive out before the Israelites. Be sure to divide it by lot as an inheritance to Israel, as I have commanded you. 7 Now therefore divide this land as an inheritance to the nine tribes and the half-tribe of Manasseh."

THE INHERITANCE EAST OF THE JORDAN // NUMBERS 32:1–42; DEUTERONOMY 3:12–22

8 The other half of Manasseh, along with the Reubenites and Gadites, had received the inheritance Moses had given them beyond the Jordan to the east, just as Moses the servant of Yahweh had assigned to them:

9 The area from Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley, along with the city in the middle of the valley, the whole plateau of Medeba as far as Dibon, 10 and all the cities of Sihon king of the Amorites who reigned in Heshbon, as far as the border of the Ammonites;
11 also Gilead and the territory of the Geshurites and Maacathites, all of Mount Hermon, and all Bashan as far as Salecah— 12 the whole kingdom of Og in Bashan, who had reigned in Ashtaroth and Edrei and had remained as a remnant of the Rephaim.
Moses had struck them down and dispossessed them, 13 but the Israelites did not drive out the Geshurites or the Maacathites. So Geshur and Maacath dwell among the Israelites to this day.

14 To the tribe of Levi, however, Moses had given no inheritance. The food offerings to Yahweh, the God of Israel, are their inheritance, just as He had promised them.

REUBEN'S INHERITANCE

15 This is what Moses had given to the clans of the tribe of Reuben:

16 The territory from Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley, along with the city in the middle of the valley, to the whole plateau beyond Medeba, 17 to Heshbon and all its cities on the plateau, including Dibon, Bamoth-baal, Beth-baal-meon, 18 Jahaz, Kedemoth, Mephaath, 19 Kiriathaim, Sibmah, Zereth-shahar on the hill in the valley, 20 Beth-peor, the slopes of Pisgah, and Beth-jeshimoth— 21 all the cities of the plateau and all the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, who reigned in Heshbon until Moses killed him and the chiefs of Midian (Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba), the princes of Sihon who lived in the land.
22 The Israelites also killed the diviner Balaam son of Beor along with the others they put to the sword. 23 And the border of the Reubenites was the bank of the Jordan.

This was the inheritance of the clans of the Reubenites, including the cities and villages.

GAD'S INHERITANCE

24 This is what Moses had given to the clans of the tribe of Gad:

25 The territory of Jazer, all the cities of Gilead, and half the land of the Ammonites as far as Aroer, near Rabbah;
26 the territory from Heshbon to Ramath-mizpeh and Betonim, and from Mahanaim to the border of Debir;
27 and in the valley, Beth-haram, Beth-nimrah, Succoth, and Zaphon, with the rest of the kingdom of Sihon king of Heshbon (the territory on the east side

JOSH 13:1 [NOTE] Joshua 11:23 says Joshua took the whole land, but here much land is still left. The first is the big picture: the armies were beaten. The second is the work still to do: settling every town.

JOSH 13:22 [DEMONIC] Balaam son of Beor, who practiced divination

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

of the Jordan up to the edge of the Sea of Chinnereth).

28 This was the inheritance of the clans of the Gadites, including the cities and villages.

MANASSEH'S EASTERN INHERITANCE

29 This is what Moses had given to the clans of the half-tribe of Manasseh, that is, to half the tribe of the descendants of Manasseh:

30 The territory from Mahanaim through all Bashan—all the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, including all the towns of Jair that are in Bashan, sixty cities; 31 half of Gilead; and Ashtaroth and Edrei, the royal cities of Og in Bashan.

All this was for the clans of the descendants of Machir son of Manasseh, that is, half of the descendants of Machir.

32 These were the portions Moses had given them on the plains of Moab beyond the Jordan, east of Jericho.

33 To the tribe of Levi, however, Moses had given no inheritance. Yahweh, the God of Israel, is their inheritance, just as He had promised them.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Caleb is eighty five and still strong. He reminds Joshua that forty five years ago he gave an honest report, and Moses promised him Hebron. Give me this hill country, he says, giants and all. Retirement is for other people.

LAND DIVISION WEST OF THE JORDAN

1 Now these are the portions that the Israelites inherited in the land of Canaan, as distributed by Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the heads of the families of the tribes of Israel. 2 Their inheritance was assigned by lot for the nine and a half tribes, as Yahweh had commanded through Moses. 3 For Moses had given the inheritance east of the Jordan to the other two and a half tribes. But he granted no inheritance among them to the Levites.

4 The descendants of Joseph became two tribes, Manasseh and Ephraim. And no portion of the land was given to the Levites, except for cities in which to live, along with pasturelands for their flocks and herds.

5 So the Israelites did as Yahweh had commanded Moses, and they divided the land.

CALEB REQUESTS HEBRON

6 Then the sons of Judah approached Joshua at Gilgal, and Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite said to him, "You know what Yahweh said to Moses the man of God at Kadesh-barnea about you and me. 7 I was forty years old when Moses the servant of Yahweh sent me from Kadesh-barnea to spy out the land, and I brought back to him an honest report.

8 Although my brothers who went with me made the hearts of the people melt with fear, I remained loyal to Yahweh my God. 9 On that day Moses swore to me, saying, 'Surely the land on which you have set foot will be an inheritance to you and your children forever, because you have wholly followed Yahweh my God.'

10 Now behold, as Yahweh promised, He has kept me alive these forty-five years since He spoke this word to Moses, while Israel wandered in the wilderness. So here I am today, eighty-five years old, 11 still as strong today as I was the day Moses sent me out. As my strength was then, so it is now for war, for going out, and for coming in.

12 Now therefore give me this hill country that Yahweh promised me on that day, for you yourself heard then that the Anakim were there, with great and fortified cities. Perhaps with Yahweh's help I will drive them out, as Yahweh has spoken."

13 Then Joshua blessed Caleb son of Jephunneh and gave him Hebron as his inheritance. 14 Therefore Hebron belongs to

- **JOSH 14:6 [FULFILLS]** That generation would die in the wilderness over 40 years ← NUM 14:28-35 p.245
- **JOSH 14:7 [HEART]** Caleb told the truth that was in his heart. The other spies made the people's hearts melt.
- **JOSH 14:10 [NOTE]** Caleb was forty when Moses sent the spies, 14:7, and eighty five now. Israel wandered thirty eight more years after the spies, Deuteronomy 2:14, so the fighting in the land took about seven years.
- **JOSH 14:12 [DEMONIC]** Caleb requested Hebron — driving out the Anakim
- **JOSH 14:13 [FULFILLS]** Caleb would enter the land and his descendants would inherit it ← NUM 14:24 p.245

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite as an inheritance to this day, because he wholly followed Yahweh, the God of Israel. 15 (Hebron used to be called Kiriath-arba, after Arba, the greatest man among the Anakim.)

Then the land had rest from war.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Judah's borders, town by town. Caleb drives out three sons of Anak and offers his daughter Achsah to the man who takes Kiriath Sepher. Achsah asks her dad for springs of water, and gets two. But Judah could not drive the Jebusites out of Jerusalem.

JUDAH'S INHERITANCE

1 Now the allotment for the clans of the
tribe of Judah extended to the border of
Edom, to the Wilderness of Zin at the ex-
treme southern boundary:

2 Their southern border started at the bay
on the southern tip of the Salt Sea, 3 pro-
ceeded south of the Ascent of Akrabbim,
continued on to Zin, went over to the
south of Kadesh-barnea, ran past Hezron
up to Addar, and curved toward Karka. 4 It
proceeded to Azmon, joined the Brook of
Egypt, and ended at the Sea. This was
their southern border.

5 The eastern border was the Salt Sea as
far as the mouth of the Jordan.

The northern border started from the bay
of the sea at the mouth of the Jordan,
6 went up to Beth-hoglah, proceeded
north of Beth-arabah, and went up to
the Stone of Bohan son of Reuben. 7
Then the border went up to Debir from
the Valley of Achor, turning north to
Gilgal, which faces the Ascent of Ad-
ummim south of the ravine. It contin-
ued along the waters of En-shemesh
and came out at En-rogel. 8 From there
the border went up the Valley of Ben-
hinnom along the southern slope of
the Jebusites (that is, Jerusalem) and
ascended to the top of the hill that
faces the Valley of Hinnom on the
west, at the northern end of the Valley
of Rephaim. 9 From the hilltop the bor-
der curved to the spring of the Waters
of Nephtoah, proceeded to the cities
of Mount Ephron, and then bent
around toward Baalah (that is, Kiriath-
jearim). 10 The border curled westward
from Baalah to Mount Seir, ran along
the northern slope of Mount Jearim
(that is, Chesalon), went down to Beth-
shemesh, and crossed to Timnah. 11
Then it went out to the northern slope
of Ekron, curved toward Shikkeron,
proceeded to Mount Baalah, went on
to Jabneel, and ended at the Sea.

12 And the western border was the coast-
line of the Great Sea.

These are the boundaries around the
clans of the descendants of Judah.

CALEB'S PORTION AND CONQUEST // JUDGES 1:8–26

13 According to Yahweh's command to him,
Joshua gave Caleb son of Jephunneh a
portion among the sons of
Judah—Kiriath-arba, that is, Hebron.
(Arba was the forefather of Anak.) 14 And
Caleb drove out from there the three sons
of Anak—the descendants of Sheshai,
Ahiman, and Talmai, the children of Anak.

15 From there he marched against the in-
habitants of Debir (formerly known as
Kiriath-sepher). 16 And Caleb said, "To the
man who strikes down Kiriath-sepher and
captures it, I will give my daughter Acsah
in marriage." 17 So Othniel son of Caleb's
brother Kenaz captured the city, and
Caleb gave his daughter Acsah to him in
marriage.

18 One day Acsah came to Othniel and
urged him to ask her father for a field.
When she got off her donkey, Caleb
asked her, "What do you desire?"

19 "Give me a blessing," she answered.
"Since you have given me land in the
Negev, give me springs of water as well."
So Caleb gave her both the upper and
lower springs.

THE CITIES OF JUDAH

20 This is the inheritance of the clans of
the tribe of Judah. 21 These were the

JOSH 15:13 [DEMONIC] Caleb drives out the three sons of Anak from Hebron

southernmost cities of the tribe of Judah in the Negev toward the border of Edom:

Kabzeel, Eder, Jagur, 22 Kinah, Dimonah, Adadah, 23 Kedesh, Hazor, Ithnan, 24 Ziph, Telem, Bealoth, 25 Hazor-hadattah, Kerioth-hezron (that is, Hazor), 26 Amam, Shema, Moladah, 27 Hazar-gaddah, Heshmon, Beth-pelet, 28 Hazar-shual, Beersheba, Biziothiah, 29 Baalah, Iim, Ezem, 30 Eltolad, Chesil, Hormah, 31 Ziklag, Madmannah, Sansannah, 32 Lebaoth, Shilhim, Ain, and Rimmon—twenty-nine cities in all, along with their villages.

33 These were in the foothills:

Eshtaol, Zorah, Ashnah, 34 Zanoah, Engannim, Tappuah, Enam, 35 Jarmuth, Adullam, Socoh, Azekah, 36 Shaaraim, Adithaim, and Gederah (or Gederothaim)—fourteen cities, along with their villages.

37 Zenan, Hadashah, Migdal-gad, 38 Dilan, Mizpeh, Joktheel, 39 Lachish, Bozkath, Eglon, 40 Cabbon, Lahmas, Chitlish, 41 Gederoth, Beth-dagon, Naamah, and Makkedah—sixteen cities, along with their villages.

42 Libnah, Ether, Ashan, 43 Iphtah, Ashnah, Nezib, 44 Keilah, Achzib, and Mareshah—nine cities, along with their villages.

45 Ekron, with its towns and villages; 46 from Ekron to the sea, all the cities near Ashdod, along with their villages; 47 Ashdod, with its towns and villages; Gaza, with its towns and villages, as far as the Brook of Egypt and the coastline of the Great Sea.

48 These were in the hill country:

Shamir, Jattir, Socoh, 49 Dannah, Kiriath-sannah (that is, Debir), 50 Anab, Eshtemoh, Anim, 51 Goshen, Holon, and Giloh—eleven cities, along with their villages.

52 Arab, Dumah, Eshan, 53 Janim, Beth-tappuah, Aphekah, 54 Humtah, Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron), and Zior—nine cities, along with their villages.

55 Maon, Carmel, Ziph, Juttah, 56 Jezreel, Jokdeam, Zanoah, 57 Kain, Gibeah, and Timnah—ten cities, along with their villages.

58 Halhul, Beth-zur, Gedor, 59 Maarath, Beth-anoth, and Eltekon—six cities, along with their villages.

60 Kiriath-baal (that is, Kiriath-jearim), and Rabbah—two cities, along with their villages.

61 These were in the wilderness:

Beth-arabah, Middin, Secacah, 62 Nibshan, the City of Salt, and En-gedi—six cities, along with their villages.

63 But the descendants of Judah could not drive out the Jebusites living in Jerusalem. So to this day the Jebusites live there among the descendants of Judah.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

The land for Joseph's sons, starting with Ephraim. Ephraim does not drive out the Canaanites of Gezer, who end up as forced labor. Partial obedience is becoming a pattern.

EPHRAIM'S INHERITANCE

1 The allotment for the descendants of Joseph extended from the Jordan at Jericho to the waters of Jericho on the east, through the wilderness that goes up from Jericho into the hill country of Bethel. 2 It went on from Bethel (that is, Luz) and proceeded to the border of the Archites in Ataroth. 3 Then it descended westward to the border of the Japhletites as far as the border of Lower Beth-horon and on to Gezer, and it ended at the Sea.

4 So Ephraim and Manasseh, the sons of Joseph, received their inheritance. 5 This was the territory of the descendants of Ephraim by their clans:

The border of their inheritance went from Ataroth-addar in the east to Upper Beth-horon 6 and out toward the Sea. From Michmethath on the north it turned eastward toward Taanath-shiloh and passed by it to Janoah on the east. 7 From Janoah it went down to Ataroth and Naarah, and then reached Jericho and came out at the Jordan. 8 From Tappuah the border went

JOSH 15:63 [NOTE] Jerusalem stayed a Jebusite city until King David took it centuries later, 2 Samuel 5:6 to 7.

DEMONIC

westward to the Brook of Kanah and ended at the Sea.

This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Ephraim, [9] along with all the cities and villages set apart for the descendants of Ephraim within the inheritance of Manasseh. [10] But they did not drive out the Canaanites who lived in Gezer. So the Canaanites dwell among the Ephraimites to this day, but they are forced laborers.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Half of Manasseh gets its land, and the daughters of Zelophehad claim the inheritance Moses promised them. The tribe of Joseph complains that it is too crowded. Joshua says, Then go clear the forest. You are many, you can handle it.

MANASSEH'S WESTERN INHERITANCE

[1] Now this was the allotment for the tribe of Manasseh as Joseph's firstborn son, namely for Machir the firstborn of Manasseh and father of the Gileadites, who had received Gilead and Bashan because Machir was a man of war. [2] So this allotment was for the rest of the descendants of Manasseh—the clans of Abiezer, Helek, Asriel, Shechem, Hepher, and Shemida. These are the other male descendants of the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph.

[3] But Zelophehad son of Hepher (the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh) had no sons but only daughters. These are the names of his daughters: Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. [4] They approached Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the leaders, and said, "Yahweh commanded Moses to give us an inheritance among our brothers."

So Joshua gave them an inheritance among their father's brothers, in keeping with the command of Yahweh. [5] Thus ten shares fell to Manasseh, in addition to the land of Gilead and Bashan beyond the Jordan, [6] because the daughters of Manasseh received an inheritance among his sons. And the land of Gilead belonged to the rest of the sons of Manasseh.

[7] Now the border of Manasseh went from Asher to Michmethath near Shechem, then southward to include the inhabitants of En-tappuah. [8] The region of Tappuah belonged to Manasseh, but Tappuah itself, on the border of Manasseh, belonged to Ephraim. [9] From there the border continued southward to the Brook of Kanah. There were cities belonging to Ephraim among the cities of Manasseh, but the border of Manasseh was on the north side of the brook and ended at the Sea. [10] Ephraim's territory was to the south, and Manasseh's was to the north, having the Sea as its border and adjoining Asher on the north and Issachar on the east.

[11] Within Issachar and Asher, Manasseh was assigned Beth-shean, Ibleam, Dor (that is, Naphath), Endor, Taanach, and Megiddo, each with their surrounding settlements.

[12] But the descendants of Manasseh were unable to occupy these cities, because the Canaanites were determined to stay in this land. [13] However, when the Israelites grew stronger, they put the Canaanites to forced labor; but they failed to drive them out completely.

[14] Then the sons of Joseph said to Joshua, "Why have you given us only one portion as an inheritance? We have many people, because Yahweh has blessed us abundantly."

[15] Joshua answered them, "If you have so many people that the hill country of Ephraim is too small for you, go to the forest and clear for yourself an area in the land of the Perizzites and the Rephaim."

[16] "The hill country is not enough for us," they replied, "and all the Canaanites who live in the valley have iron chariots, both in Beth-shean with its towns and in the Valley of Jezreel."

[17] So Joshua said to the house of Joseph—to Ephraim and Manasseh—"You have many people and great strength. You shall not have just one allotment, [18] because the hill country will be yours as

JOSH 17:15 [DEMONIC] Clear the forest in the land of the Rephaim

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

well. It is a forest; clear it, and its farthest limits will be yours. Although the Canaanites have iron chariots and although they are strong, you can drive them out."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

The tabernacle is set up at Shiloh. Seven tribes still have no land, and Joshua asks, How long will you wait? He sends surveyors to map the land, then casts lots before Yahweh. Benjamin's land lands between Judah and Joseph.

THE REMAINDER DIVIDED

1 Then the whole congregation of Israel
assembled at Shiloh and set up the Tent
of Meeting there. And though the land
was subdued before them, 2 there were
still seven tribes of Israel who had not yet
received their inheritance.

3 So Joshua said to the Israelites, "How
long will you put off entering and pos-
sessing the land that Yahweh, the God of
your fathers, has given you? 4 Appoint
three men from each tribe, and I will send
them out to survey the land and map it
out, according to the inheritance of each.
Then they will return to me 5 and divide
the land into seven portions. Judah shall
remain in their territory in the south, and
the house of Joseph shall remain in their
territory in the north. 6 When you have
mapped out the seven portions of land
and brought it to me, I will cast lots for
you here in the presence of Yahweh our
God.

7 The Levites, however, have no portion
among you, because their inheritance is
the priesthood of Yahweh. And Gad,
Reuben, and half the tribe of Manasseh
have already received the inheritance that
Moses the servant of Yahweh gave them
beyond the Jordan to the east."

8 As the men got up to go out, Joshua
commanded them to map out the land,
saying, "Go and survey the land, map it
out, and return to me. Then I will cast lots
for you here in Shiloh in the presence of
Yahweh."

9 So the men departed and went through-
out the land, mapping it city by city into
seven portions. Then they returned with
the document to Joshua at the camp in
Shiloh.

10 And Joshua cast lots for them in the
presence of Yahweh at Shiloh, where he
distributed the land to the Israelites ac-
cording to their divisions.

BENJAMIN'S INHERITANCE

11 The first lot came up for the clans of the
tribe of Benjamin. Their allotted territory
lay between the tribes of Judah and
Joseph:

12 On the north side their border began at
the Jordan, went up past the northern
slope of Jericho, headed west through the
hill country, and came out at the wilder-
ness of Beth-aven. 13 From there the bor-
der crossed over to the southern slope of
Luz (that is, Bethel) and went down to
Ataroth-addar on the hill south of Lower
Beth-horon.

14 On the west side the border curved
southward from the hill facing Beth-
horon on the south and came out at
Kiriath-baal (that is, Kiriath-jearim), a
city of the sons of Judah. This was the
western side.

15 On the south side the border began at
the outskirts of Kiriath-jearim and ex-
tended westward to the spring at the
Waters of Nephtoah. 16 Then it went
down to the foot of the hill that faces
the Valley of Ben-hinnom at the north-
ern end of the Valley of Rephaim and
ran down the Valley of Hinnom toward
the southern slope of the Jebusites
and downward to En-rogel. 17 From
there it curved northward and pro-
ceeded to En-shemesh and on to
Geliloth facing the Ascent of Adum-
mim, and continued down to the Stone
of Bohan son of Reuben. 18 Then it
went on to the northern slope of Beth-
arabah and went down into the valley.

JOSH 18:1 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 7:45 p.1752

JOSH 18:1 [NOTE] Shiloh became Israel's worship center until the days of Eli and young Samuel, 1 Samuel 1 to 4.

JOSH 18:16 [FULFILLS] Benjamin ← DT 33:12 · MEDIUM p.331

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

19 The border continued to the northern
slope of Beth-hoglah and came out at
the northern bay of the Salt Sea, at the
mouth of the Jordan. This was the
southern border.
20 On the east side the border was the
Jordan.

These were the borders around the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Benjamin.

21 These were the cities of the clans of the tribe of Benjamin:

Jericho, Beth-hoglah, Emek-keziz, 22 Beth-arabah, Zemaraim, Bethel, 23 Avvim, Parah, Ophrah, 24 Chephar-ammoni, Ophni, and Geba—twelve cities, along with their villages.

25 Gibeon, Ramah, Beeroth, 26 Mizpeh,
Chephirah, Mozah, 27 Rekem, Irpeel,
Taralah, 28 Zelah, Haeleph, Jebus (that
is, Jerusalem), Gibeah, and Kiriath-
jearim—fourteen cities, along with
their villages.

This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Benjamin.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Simeon, Zebulun, Issachar, Asher, Naphtali and Dan get their land. Dan loses part of its land and has to go north to find more. Last of all, Israel gives Joshua the town he asks for. The leader gets his share after everyone else.

SIMEON'S INHERITANCE

1 The second lot came out for the clans of the tribe of Simeon:

Their inheritance lay within the territory of Judah 2 and included Beersheba (or Sheba), Moladah, 3 Hazar-shual, Balah, Ezem, 4 Eltolad, Bethul, Hormah, 5 Ziklag, Beth-marcaboth, Hazar-susah, 6 Beth-lebaoth, and Sharuhen—thirteen cities, along with their villages.

7 Ain, Rimmon, Ether, and Ashan—four
cities, along with their villages, 8 and all
the villages surrounding these cities as
far as Baalath-beer (Ramah of the
Negev).

This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Simeon. 9 The inheritance of the Simeonites was taken from the territory of Judah, because the share for Judah's descendants was too large for them. So the Simeonites received an inheritance within Judah's portion.

ZEBULUN'S INHERITANCE

10 The third lot came up for the clans of the tribe of Zebulun:

The border of their inheritance stretched as far as Sarid. 11 It went up westward to Maralah, reached Dabbesheth, and met the brook east of Jokneam. 12 From Sarid it turned eastward along the border of Chisloth-tabor and went on to Daberath and up to Japhia. 13 From there it crossed eastward to Gath-hepher and to Eth-kazin; it extended to Rimmon and curved around toward Neah. 14 Then the border circled around the north side of Neah to Hannathon and ended at the Valley of Iphtah-el. 15 It also included Kattath, Nahalal, Shimron, Idalah, and Bethlehem. There were twelve cities, along with their villages.

16 This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Zebulun, including these cities and their villages.

ISSACHAR'S INHERITANCE

17 The fourth lot came out for the clans of the tribe of Issachar:

18 Their territory included Jezreel, Chesulloth, Shunem, 19 Hapharaim, Shion, Anaharath, 20 Rabbith, Kishion, Ebez, 21 Remeth, En-gannim, En-haddah, and Beth-pazzez. 22 The border reached Tabor, Shahazumah, and Beth-shemesh, and ended at the Jordan. There were sixteen cities, along with their villages.

23 This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Issachar, including these cities and their villages.

ASHER'S INHERITANCE

24 The fifth lot came out for the clans of the tribe of Asher:

25 Their territory included Helkath, Hali, Beten, Achshaph, 26 Allammelech, Amad, and Mishal. On the west the border

JOSH 18:28 [FULFILLS] Benjamin ← DT 33:12 · MEDIUM p.331

GOD SPEAKING

touched Carmel and Shihor-libnath, 27 then turned eastward toward Beth-dagon, touched Zebulun and the Valley of Iphtah-el, and went north to Beth-emek and Neiel, passing Cabul on the left. 28 It went on to Ebron, Rehob, Hammon, and Kanah, as far as Greater Sidon. 29 The border then turned back toward Ramah as far as the fortified city of Tyre, turned toward Hosah, and came out at the Sea in the region of Achzib, 30 Ummah, Aphek, and Rehob. There were twenty-two cities, along with their villages.

31 This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Asher, including these cities and their villages.

NAPHTALI'S INHERITANCE

32 The sixth lot came out for the clans of the tribe of Naphtali:

33 Their border started at Heleph and the great tree of Zaanannim, passing Adami-nekeb and Jabneel as far as Lakkum and ending at the Jordan. 34 Then the border turned westward to Aznoth-tabor and ran from there to Hukkok, touching Zebulun on the south side, Asher on the west, and Judah at the Jordan on the east. 35 The fortified cities were Ziddim, Zer, Hammath, Rakkath, Chinnereth, 36 Adamah, Ramah, Hazor, 37 Kedesh, Edrei, En-hazor, 38 Iron, Migdal-el, Horem, Beth-anath, and Beth-shemesh. There were nineteen cities, along with their villages.

39 This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Naphtali, including these cities and their villages.

DAN'S INHERITANCE

40 The seventh lot came out for the clans of the tribe of Dan:

41 The territory of their inheritance included Zorah, Eshtaol, Ir-shemesh, 42 Shaalabbin, Aijalon, Ithlah, 43 Elon, Timnah, Ekron, 44 Eltekeh, Gibbethon, Baalath, 45 Jehud, Bene-berak, Gath-rimmon, 46 Me-jarkon, and Rakkon, including the territory across from Joppa.

47 (Later, when the territory of the Danites was lost to them, they went up and fought against Leshem, captured it, and put it to the sword. So they took possession of Leshem, settled there, and renamed it after their father Dan.)

48 This was the inheritance of the clans of the tribe of Dan, including these cities and their villages.

JOSHUA'S INHERITANCE

49 When they had finished distributing the land into its territories, the Israelites gave Joshua son of Nun an inheritance among them, 50 as Yahweh had commanded. They gave him the city of Timnath-serah in the hill country of Ephraim, as he requested. He rebuilt the city and settled in it.

51 These are the inheritances that Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the heads of the families distributed by lot to the tribes of Israel at Shiloh before Yahweh at the entrance to the Tent of Meeting. So they finished dividing up the land.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Six cities of refuge, three on each side of the Jordan, where someone who kills a person by accident can run and be safe until a fair trial. God built mercy into the map.

SIX CITIES OF REFUGE // NUMBERS 35:9–34; DEUTERONOMY 4:41–43; DEUTERONOMY 19:1–14

1 Then Yahweh said to Joshua, 2 "Tell the Israelites to designate the cities of refuge, as I instructed you through Moses, 3 so that anyone who kills another unintentionally or accidentally may flee there. These will be your refuge from the avenger of blood. 4 When someone flees to one of these cities, stands at the entrance of the city gate, and states his case before its elders, they are to bring him into the city and give him a place to live among them.

5 Now if the avenger of blood pursues him, they must not surrender the manslayer into his hand, because that man killed his neighbor accidentally without prior malice. 6 He is to stay in that city until he stands trial before the assembly and until

JOSH 20:2 [NOTE] God first gave this law to Moses, Numbers 35 and Deuteronomy 19. Now it goes on the map.

the death of the high priest serving at that time. Then the manslayer may return to his own home in the city from which he fled."

7 So they set apart Kedesh in Galilee in the hill country of Naphtali, Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim, and Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron) in the hill country of Judah.

8 And beyond the Jordan, east of Jericho, they designated Bezer on the wilderness plateau from the tribe of Reuben, Ramoth in Gilead from the tribe of Gad, and Golan in Bashan from the tribe of Manasseh.

9 These are the cities appointed for all the Israelites and foreigners among them, so that anyone who kills a person unintentionally may flee there and not die by the hand of the avenger of blood prior to standing trial before the assembly.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

The Levites get forty eight towns with pasturelands, spread through every tribe. Then the big summary: Yahweh gave Israel all the land He promised. Not one of His good promises failed. Every one came true.

FORTY-EIGHT CITIES FOR THE LEVITES // NUMBERS 35:1–8; 1 CHRONICLES 6:54–81

1 Now the family heads of the Levites approached Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the heads of the other tribes of Israel 2 at Shiloh in the land of Canaan and said to them, "Yahweh commanded through Moses that we be given cities in which to live, together with pasturelands for our livestock."

3 So by the command of Yahweh, the Israelites gave the Levites these cities and their pasturelands out of their own inheritance:

4 The first lot came out for the Kohathite clans. The Levites who were descendants of Aaron the priest received thirteen cities by lot from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin.

5 The remaining descendants of Kohath received ten cities by lot from the tribes of Ephraim, Dan, and the half-tribe of Manasseh.

6 The descendants of Gershon received thirteen cities by lot from the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and the half-tribe of Manasseh in Bashan.

7 And the descendants of Merari received twelve cities from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun.

8 So the Israelites allotted to the Levites these cities, together with their pasturelands, as Yahweh had commanded through Moses.

9 From the tribes of Judah and Simeon, they designated these cities by name 10 to the descendants of Aaron from the Kohathite clans of the Levites, because the first lot fell to them:

11 They gave them Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron), with its surrounding pasturelands, in the hill country of Judah. (Arba was the father of Anak.) 12 But they had given the fields and villages around the city to Caleb son of Jephunneh as his possession.

13 So to the descendants of Aaron the priest they gave these cities, together with their pasturelands: Hebron, a city of refuge for the manslayer, Libnah, 14 Jattir, Eshtemoa, 15 Holon, Debir, 16 Ain, Juttah, and Beth-shemesh—nine cities from these two tribes, together with their pasturelands.

17 And from the tribe of Benjamin they gave them Gibeon, Geba, 18 Anathoth, and Almon—four cities, together with their pasturelands.

19 In all, thirteen cities, together with their pasturelands, were given to the priests, the descendants of Aaron.

20 The remaining Kohathite clans of the Levites were allotted these cities:

From the tribe of Ephraim 21 they were given Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim (a city of refuge for the manslayer), Gezer, 22 Kibzaim, and Beth-horon—four cities, together with their pasturelands.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART

23 From the tribe of Dan they were given
Elteke, Gibbethon, 24 Aijalon, and Gath-
rimmon—four cities, together with
their pasturelands.
25 And from the half-tribe of Manasseh
they were given Taanach and Gath-
rimmon—two cities, together with their
pasturelands.
26 In all, ten cities, together with their pas-
turelands, were given to the rest of the
Kohathite clans.
27 This is what the Levite clans of the Ger-
shonites were given:
From the half-tribe of Manasseh they
were given Golan in Bashan, a city of
refuge for the manslayer, and
Beeshterah—two cities, together with
their pasturelands.
28 From the tribe of Issachar they were
given Kishion, Daberath, 29 Jarmuth,
and En-gannim—four cities, together
with their pasturelands.
30 From the tribe of Asher they were given
Mishal, Abdon, 31 Helkath, and
Rehob—four cities, together with their
pasturelands.
32 And from the tribe of Naphtali they were
given Kedesh in Galilee (a city of
refuge for the manslayer), Hammoth-
dor, and Kartan—three cities, together
with their pasturelands.
33 In all, thirteen cities, together with their
pasturelands, were given to the Ger-
shonite clans.
34 This is what the Merarite clan (the rest
of the Levites) were given:
From the tribe of Zebulun they were given
Jokneam, Kartah, 35 Dimnah, and
Nahalal—four cities, together with their
pasturelands.
36 From the tribe of Reuben they were
given Bezer, Jahaz, 37 Kedemoth, and
Mephaath—four cities, together with
their pasturelands.
38 And from the tribe of Gad they were
given Ramoth in Gilead, a city of
refuge for the manslayer, Mahanaim,
39 Heshbon, and Jazer—four cities in
all, together with their pasturelands.
40 In all, twelve cities were allotted to the
clans of Merari, the remaining Levite
clans.
41 For the Levites, then, there were forty-
eight cities in all, together with their pas-
turelands, within the territory of the Is-
raelites. 42 Each of these cities had its own
surrounding pasturelands; this was true
for all the cities.
43 Thus Yahweh gave Israel all the land He
had sworn to give their fathers, and they
took possession of it and settled in it.
44 And Yahweh gave them rest on every
side, just as He had sworn to their fathers.
None of their enemies could stand against
them, for Yahweh delivered all their ene-
mies into their hand.
45 Not one of all Yahweh's good promises
to the house of Israel had failed; every-
thing was fulfilled.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS
The eastern tribes go home and build a huge altar by the Jordan. The other tribes almost go to war, thinking it is rebellion. It turns out to be a memorial, a witness that we serve Yahweh too. Talking first saves a civil war.

THE EASTERN TRIBES RETURN HOME

1 Then Joshua summoned the Reubenites,
the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Man-
asseh 2 and told them, "You have done all
that Moses the servant of Yahweh com-
manded you, and you have obeyed my
voice in all that I commanded you. 3 All this
time you have not deserted your brothers,
up to this very day, but have kept the
charge given you by Yahweh your God.
4 And now that Yahweh your God has
given your brothers rest as He promised
them, you may return to your homes in the
land that Moses the servant of Yahweh
gave you across the Jordan. 5 But be very
careful to observe the commandment and
the law that Moses the servant of Yahweh

JOSH 21:43 [FULFILLS] Israel would enter and possess the land sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob ← DT 1:8 · MEDIUM p.284
JOSH 21:44 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → HEB 4:8 p.1982
JOSH 22:4 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → HEB 4:8 p.1982

DEMONIC

gave you: to love Yahweh your God, to walk in all His ways, to keep His commandments, to hold fast to Him, and to serve Him with all your heart and with all your soul."

6 So Joshua blessed them and sent them on their way, and they went to their homes. 7 (To the half-tribe of Manasseh Moses had given land in Bashan, and to the other half Joshua gave land on the west side of the Jordan among their brothers.) When Joshua sent them to their homes he blessed them, 8 saying, "Return to your homes with your great wealth, with immense herds of livestock, with silver, gold, bronze, iron, and very many clothes. Divide with your brothers the spoil of your enemies."

THE ALTAR OF WITNESS

9 So the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh left the Israelites at Shiloh in the land of Canaan to return to their own land of Gilead, which they had acquired according to the command of Yahweh through Moses. 10 And when they came to Geliloth near the Jordan in the land of Canaan, the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh built an imposing altar there by the Jordan.

11 Then the Israelites received the report: "Behold, the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh have built an altar on the border of the land of Canaan, at Geliloth near the Jordan on the Israelite side." 12 And when they heard this, the whole congregation of Israel assembled at Shiloh to go to war against them.

13 The Israelites sent Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest to the land of Gilead, to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. 14 With him they sent ten chiefs—one family leader from each tribe of Israel, each the head of a family among the clans of Israel.

15 They went to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh in the land of Gilead and said to them, 16 "This is what the whole congregation of Yahweh says: 'What is this breach of faith you have committed today against the God of Israel by turning away from Yahweh and building for yourselves an altar, that you might rebel against Yahweh this day?

17 Was not the sin of Peor enough for us, from which we have not cleansed ourselves to this day? It even brought a plague upon the congregation of Yahweh. 18 And now, would you turn away from Yahweh? If you rebel today against Yahweh, tomorrow He will be angry with the whole congregation of Israel.

19 If indeed the land of your inheritance is unclean, then cross over to the land of Yahweh's possession, where Yahweh's tabernacle stands, and take possession of it among us. But do not rebel against Yahweh or against us by building for yourselves an altar other than the altar of Yahweh our God.

20 Was not Achan son of Zerah unfaithful regarding what was set apart for destruction, bringing wrath upon the whole congregation of Israel? Yet it was not only Achan who perished because of his sin!'"

21 Then the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh answered the leaders of the clans of Israel: 22 "Yahweh, the Mighty One, is God! Yahweh, the Mighty One, is God! He knows, and may Israel also know. If this was in rebellion or breach of faith against Yahweh, do not spare us today. 23 If we have built for ourselves an altar to turn away from Him and to offer burnt offerings and grain offerings on it, or to sacrifice peace offerings on it, may Yahweh Himself hold us accountable.

24 But in fact we have done this for fear that in the future your descendants might say to ours, 'What have you to do with Yahweh, the God of Israel? 25 For Yahweh has made the Jordan a border between us and you Reubenites and Gadites. You

JOSH 22:5 [HEART] Be careful to obey the law, and serve God with all your heart.

JOSH 22:10 [NOTE] The other tribes thought this altar broke God's law of one place of sacrifice, Deuteronomy 12. They were ready to fight, but Phinehas asked questions first.

JOSH 22:17 [DEMONIC] The sin of Peor still stains Israel

DEMONIC

have no share in Yahweh!' So your descendants could cause ours to stop fearing Yahweh.

26 That is why we said, 'Let us take action and build an altar for ourselves, but not for burnt offerings or sacrifices. 27 Rather, let it be a witness between us and you and the generations to come, that we will worship Yahweh in His presence with our burnt offerings, sacrifices, and peace offerings.' Then in the future, your descendants cannot say to ours, 'You have no share in Yahweh!'

28 Therefore we said, 'If they ever say this to us or to our descendants, we will answer: Look at the replica of the altar of Yahweh that our fathers made, not for burnt offerings or sacrifices, but as a witness between us and you.'

29 Far be it from us to rebel against Yahweh and turn away from Him today by building an altar for burnt offerings, grain offerings, or sacrifices, other than the altar of Yahweh our God, which stands before His tabernacle."

30 When Phinehas the priest and the chiefs of the congregation—the heads of Israel's clans who were with him—heard what the descendants of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh had to say, they were satisfied. 31 Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest said to the descendants of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh, "Today we know that Yahweh is among us, because you have not committed this breach of faith against Him. Consequently, you have delivered the Israelites from the hand of Yahweh."

32 Then Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, together with the other leaders, returned to the Israelites in the land of Canaan and brought back a report regarding the Reubenites and Gadites in the land of Gilead. 33 The Israelites were satisfied with the report, and they blessed God and spoke no more about going to war against them to destroy the land where the Reubenites and Gadites lived. 34 So the Reubenites and Gadites named the altar Witness, for they said, "It is a witness between us that Yahweh is God."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Joshua is very old and gathers the leaders. You know with all your heart, he says, that not one promise failed. So love Yahweh, do not mix with the nations or their gods, because the warnings will come true too.

JOSHUA'S CHARGE TO LEADERS

1 A long time after Yahweh had given Israel rest from all the enemies around them, when Joshua was old and well along in years, 2 he summoned all Israel, including its elders, leaders, judges, and officers. "I am old and well along in years," he said, 3 "and you have seen everything that Yahweh your God has done to all these nations for your sake, because it was Yahweh your God who fought for you.

4 See, I have allotted as an inheritance to your tribes these remaining nations, including all the nations I have already cut off, from the Jordan westward to the Great Sea. 5 Yahweh your God will push them out of your way and drive them out before you, so that you can take possession of their land, as Yahweh your God promised you.

6 Be very strong, then, so that you can keep and obey all that is written in the Book of the Law of Moses, not turning aside from it to the right or to the left. 7 So you are not to associate with these nations that remain among you. You must not call on the names of their gods or swear by them, and you must not serve them or bow down to them. 8 Instead, you shall hold fast to Yahweh your God, as you have done to this day.

9 Yahweh has driven out great and powerful nations before you, and to this day no one can stand against you. 10 One of you can put a thousand to flight, because Yahweh your God fights for you, just as He promised. 11 Therefore watch yourselves carefully, that you love Yahweh your God. 12 For if you turn away and cling to the rest of these nations that remain among you, and if you intermarry and as-

JOSH 23:7 [DEMONIC] Do not call on or swear by the names of their gods

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

sociate with them, 13 know for sure that Yahweh your God will no longer drive out these nations before you. Instead, they will become for you a snare and a trap, a scourge in your sides and thorns in your eyes, until you perish from this good land that Yahweh your God has given you.

14 Now behold, today I am going the way of all the earth, and you know with all your heart and soul that not one of the good promises Yahweh your God made to you has failed. Everything was fulfilled for you; not one promise has failed. 15 But just as every good thing Yahweh your God promised you has come to pass, likewise Yahweh will bring upon you the calamity He has threatened, until He has destroyed you from this good land He has given you. 16 If you transgress the covenant of Yahweh your God, which He commanded you, and go and serve other gods and bow down to them, then the anger of Yahweh will burn against you, and you will quickly perish from this good land He has given you."

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

At Shechem Joshua retells the whole story, from Abraham's idol worshiping family to the land, in God's own words. Then he puts the choice on the table. Choose this day whom you will serve. As for me and my house, we will serve Yahweh. Joshua dies at 110, and Joseph's bones are finally buried at Shechem.

JOSHUA REVIEWS ISRAEL'S HISTORY

1 Then Joshua assembled all the tribes of Israel at Shechem. He summoned the elders, leaders, judges, and officers of Israel, and they presented themselves before God.

2 And Joshua said to all the people, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Long ago your fathers, including Terah the father of Abraham and Nahor, lived beyond the Euphrates and worshiped other gods. 3 But I took your father Abraham from beyond the Euphrates and led him through all the land of Canaan, and I multiplied his descendants. I gave him Isaac, 4 and to Isaac I gave Jacob and Esau. I gave Esau Mount Seir to possess, but Jacob and his sons went down to Egypt.

5 Then I sent Moses and Aaron, and I afflicted the Egyptians by what I did there, and afterward I brought you out. 6 When I brought your fathers out of Egypt and you reached the Red Sea, the Egyptians pursued them with chariots and horsemen as far as the Red Sea. 7 So your fathers cried out to Yahweh, and He put darkness between you and the Egyptians, over whom He brought the sea and engulfed them. Your very eyes saw what I did to the Egyptians. Then you lived in the wilderness for a long time.

8 Later, I brought you to the land of the Amorites who lived beyond the Jordan. They fought against you, but I delivered them into your hand, that you should possess their land when I destroyed them before you. 9 Then Balak son of Zippor, the king of Moab, set out to fight against Israel. He sent for Balaam son of Beor to curse you, 10 but I would not listen to Balaam. So he blessed you again and again, and I delivered you from his hand.

11 After this, you crossed the Jordan and came to Jericho. The people of Jericho fought against you, as did the Amorites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hittites, Girgashites, Hivites, and Jebusites, and I delivered them into your hand. 12 I sent the hornet ahead of you, and it drove out the two Amorite kings before you, but not by your own sword or bow. 13 So I gave you a land on which you did not toil and cities that you did not build, and now you live in them and eat from vineyards and olive groves that you did not plant.'

JOSH 23:14 [HEART] Joshua tells them to know it in all their hearts: not one of God's good promises failed.
JOSH 23:14 [NOTABLE] An old man's testimony at the end of his life. Joshua had seen every promise kept, and he wanted Israel to know it in their bones.
JOSH 23:16 [DEMONIC] Serving other gods will cause Israel to perish

JOSH 24:2 [DEMONIC] Abraham's family once worshiped other gods
JOSH 24:2 [NOTE] RED LETTERS. Joshua is passing on God's words, so only God's words are red, from Long ago to the end of 24:13.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE

CHOOSE WHOM YOU WILL SERVE // DEUTERONOMY 10:12–22

14 Now, therefore, fear Yahweh and serve
Him in sincerity and truth; cast aside the
gods your fathers served beyond the Euphrates and in Egypt, and serve Yahweh.
15 But if it is unpleasing in your sight to
serve Yahweh, then choose for yourselves this day whom you will serve,
whether the gods your fathers served beyond the Euphrates, or the gods of the
Amorites in whose land you are living. As
for me and my house, we will serve Yahweh!"

16 The people replied, "Far be it from us to
forsake Yahweh to serve other gods! 17 For
Yahweh our God brought us and our fathers out of the land of Egypt, out of the
house of slavery, and performed these
great signs before our eyes. He also protected us throughout our journey and
among all the nations through which we
traveled. 18 And Yahweh drove out before
us all the nations, including the Amorites
who lived in the land. We too will serve
Yahweh, because He is our God!"

19 But Joshua said to the people, "You are
not able to serve Yahweh, for He is a holy
God; He is a jealous God; He will not forgive your rebellion or your sins. 20 If you
forsake Yahweh and serve foreign gods,
He will turn and bring disaster on you and
consume you, even after He has been
good to you."

21 "No!" replied the people. "We will serve
Yahweh!"

22 Then Joshua told them, "You are witnesses against yourselves that you have
chosen to serve Yahweh."

"We are witnesses!" they said.

23 "Now, therefore," he said, "get rid of the
foreign gods among you and incline your
hearts to Yahweh, the God of Israel."

24 So the people said to Joshua, "We will
serve Yahweh our God and obey His
voice."

25 On that day Joshua made a covenant
for the people, and there at Shechem he
established for them a statute and ordinance. 26 Joshua recorded these things in
the Book of the Law of God. Then he took
a large stone and set it up there under the
oak that was near the sanctuary of Yahweh. 27 And Joshua said to all the people,
"You see this stone. It will be a witness
against us, for it has heard all the words
Yahweh has spoken to us, and it will be a
witness against you if you ever deny your
God."

28 Then Joshua sent the people away,
each to his own inheritance.

JOSHUA'S DEATH AND BURIAL // JUDGES 2:6–9

29 Some time later, Joshua son of Nun, the
servant of Yahweh, died at the age of 110.
30 And they buried him in the land of his
inheritance, at Timnath-serah in the hill
country of Ephraim, north of Mount
Gaash. 31 Israel had served Yahweh
throughout the days of Joshua and of the
elders who outlived him and who had experienced all the works that Yahweh had
done for Israel.

32 And the bones of Joseph, which the Israelites had brought up out of Egypt, were
buried at Shechem in the plot of land that
Jacob had purchased from the sons of
Hamor, Shechem's father, for a hundred
pieces of silver. So it became an inheritance for Joseph's descendants.

33 Eleazar son of Aaron also died, and they
buried him at Gibeah, which had been
given to his son Phinehas in the hill country of Ephraim.

- **JOSH 24:14 [DEMONIC]** Choose this day whom you will serve
- **JOSH 24:15 [NOTABLE]** One of the most quoted verses on home signs. Joshua made the choice for his family first, out loud, before the people answered.
- **JOSH 24:16 [DEMONIC]** Choose this day whom you will serve
- **JOSH 24:19 [DEMONIC]** Serving foreign gods will bring disaster
- **JOSH 24:23 [HEART]** Get rid of the foreign gods and turn your hearts to Yahweh. Idols in the tent mean a divided heart.
- **JOSH 24:23 [DEMONIC]** Get rid of the foreign gods among you
- **JOSH 24:26 [FIELD NOTES]** A huge standing stone still stands at the temple of ancient Shechem. See Shechem's Standing Stone Field Notes page, p.376.
- **JOSH 24:29 [NOTE]** Joshua died at 110, the same age as Joseph, Genesis 50:26. Egyptians thought 110 was the perfect lifespan.
- **JOSH 24:32 [FULFILLS]** Joseph said God would bring Israel out of Egypt and to take his bones with them ← GEN 50:24-25 p.116

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, THE LINK TO JOSHUA IS DEBATED

SHECHEM'S STANDING STONE

JOSHUA 24:1 · 24:25 TO 27 · GENESIS 12:6 · JUDGES 9:46



The standing stone, top left, above the thick walls of the temple at Tell Balata, ancient Shechem. Photo Daniel Ventura, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A tall slab of white limestone standing in front of a big temple at Tell Balata, the ruins of Shechem, inside the city of Nablus today. Joshua 24:26 says Joshua set up a large stone under the oak by the sanctuary of Yahweh at Shechem, as a witness.

HOW OLD IT IS

The temple was built about 1650 BC and used until about 1100 BC. Its walls are about 17 feet thick. The standing stone belongs to the later phase of the temple, in the Late Bronze Age.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Ernst Sellin dug Shechem in the 1910s and 1920s and found the broken stone. An American team led by G. Ernest Wright dug from 1956 to 1973 and set the stone back up in its socket.

IN THE BIBLE

Abraham built his first altar in the land at Shechem, Genesis 12:6 to 7. Joseph's bones were buried there, Joshua 24:32. Later the temple of Baal Berith, also called El Berith, and its tower burned there, Judges 9:46 to 49.

THE BIG DEBATE

Wright thought this was the temple of Judges 9, and some think the stone could be Joshua's. Others say it was a Canaanite sacred stone, the kind the Law told Israel to tear down, Deuteronomy 7:5.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No writing is on the stone. It shows that Shechem had a temple and a great standing stone in Joshua's era, the kind of place where Joshua 24 says the covenant was made.

BOOK 7 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

JUDGES

12 Tribes, 12 Districts, No King

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Samuel wrote it. The line In those days there was no king in Israel shows it was written after Israel had kings, and 18:30 mentions the captivity of the land, so someone also finished it later. Many scholars think it was put together in the 600s or 500s BC.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Joshua's death until just before Samuel. Jephthah says Israel had been in the land three hundred years, 11:26. Adding up every number in the book gives about 410 years, but some judges lived at the same time in different parts of the land.
DATE	The early date puts the judges from about 1380 to 1050 BC. The late date puts them from about 1200 to 1050 BC. See When Was the Conquest? in Joshua.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, to show what happens when everyone does what is right in his own eyes, and why the nation needed a king who followed God.
KEY VERSE	Judges 21:25. In those days there was no king in Israel; everyone did what was right in his own eyes.



THE OLDEST COPY OF JUDGES
These two pieces of leather come from 4QJudg a, a scroll of Judges found in Cave 4 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. It was copied about 50 to 25 BC, around the time Herod the Great became king. It is the oldest copy of Judges known.

It holds parts of Judges 6, the call of Gideon. One thing stands out. It goes straight from 6:6 to 6:11 and does not have the prophet's speech in 6:7 to 10. Scholars still argue whether those verses were added to later copies or left out of this one. See the TEXT note at 6:7.

Pieces of two more Judges scrolls were found at Qumran. The Greek Bible has two different forms of Judges, one in Codex Alexandrinus and one in Codex Vaticanus. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Joshua already split the Promised Land into tribal districts, Joshua 13 to 21. Now Joshua is dead, and no one is in charge. Think of 12 counties in one state, but no governor, no capital and no army. Each tribe runs its own district, and they do not always get along. The Canaanites still live among them, and so do their gods. When trouble comes, God raises up a judge, a local hero, to the rescue.

What Was Going Wrong

HALF FINISHED. Tribe after tribe did not drive out the Canaanites 1:19 to 35.
IDOLS EVERYWHERE. Israel served the Baals and the Ashtoreths again and again 2:11 to 13, 10:6. Even Gideon made a gold ephod that became an idol 8:27.
CHILD SACRIFICE. Jephthah vowed to offer whatever came out his door, and his only daughter came out. Most ancient readers, and most scholars today, say he really sacrificed her; others say she served God for life and never married. God never asked for it and hated child sacrifice Deuteronomy 12:31. Hebrews 11:32 praises Jephthah's faith, not his vow 11:30 to 40.
BROTHER AGAINST BROTHER. Abimelech killed seventy brothers 9:5, Gilead fought Ephraim 12:1 to 6, and all Israel fought Benjamin 20:1 to 48.
NO KING. Everyone did what was right in his own eyes 17:6, 21:25. The book ends with stolen idols, a murdered woman and a civil war (17 to 21).

The Idiot Proof Summary

Judges is the story of what happened after the Promised Land was divided up. The tribes settled into their districts, but they did not finish driving out the Canaanites, and soon they were worshiping Canaanite gods. Then the same thing happened over and over. Israel turned to idols, God let an enemy rule them, they cried out, and God raised up a judge to save them. When the judge died, they went right back. The judges get worse as the book goes on, and the last five chapters have no judge at all. The book's answer is in its last line: Israel needed a king.

Judges at a Glance

CH 1 to 3:6	**HALF FINISHED** The tribes stop short, and the cycle begins.
CH 3:7 to 5	**THE FIRST JUDGES** Othniel, Ehud, Shamgar, Deborah, Barak and Jael.
CH 6 to 9	**GIDEON AND HIS SON** The fleece, the three hundred, and Abimelech.
CH 10 to 12	**JEPHTHAH** A rash vow and a password at the river.
CH 13 to 16	**SAMSON** A Nazirite from birth, a lion, foxes and Delilah.
CH 17 to 21	**NO KING** Micah's idol, Dan moves north, and a civil war.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JUDGES 2:16 Yahweh raised up judges, who saved them. Every judge was a small savior who died. Jesus is the Savior and Judge who never dies, Acts 17:31.

JUDGES 13:3 TO 5 An angel tells a woman she will have a son who will begin to save Israel. Centuries later an angel tells Joseph that Mary will have a Son who will save His people from their sins, Matthew 1:21.

JUDGES 16:30 Samson won his greatest victory in his death, with his arms stretched out between two pillars. Many see a picture of the cross.

JUDGES 21:25 There was no king in Israel. The whole book points ahead to a King, first David, and then the Son of David, Jesus.

GOD'S NAMES IN JUDGES
Gideon called his altar Yahweh Is Peace, 6:24. Jephthah called Him Yahweh, the Judge, 11:27, the only time the book calls God a judge. Again and again the Spirit of Yahweh came upon the judges, 3:10, 6:34, 11:29, 14:6. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Judges

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (13)	1:2, 1:28, 2:1-3, 2:11-15, 4:6, 4:9, 4:21 and 12 more
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	2:18-19, 3:7-9, 3:12, 4:1, 6:1
THE HEART (2)	9:3, 16:15-17
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	1:1
MIRACLES (12)	2:4, 6:11-12, 6:21-22, 6:36-40, 7:13-15, 7:20-21, 13:3 and 5 more
DEMONIC (27)	1:20, 2:17, 3:6, 3:19, 3:26, 5:8, 6:10 and 20 more
NOTABLE (4)	2:10, 7:2, 16:20, 17:6, 21:25
GOD SPEAKING (43 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (1 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE LEFT HANDED ASSASSIN
Ehud hid a sword on his right thigh, where nobody checked, 3:16 to 22.

SHIBBOLETH
A password from 12:6 that is still an English word.

PUTTING OUT A FLEECE
Gideon's wool fleece became a saying for asking God for a sign, 6:36 to 40.

A VERY OLD SONG
The Song of Deborah in chapter 5 may be one of the oldest poems in the Bible.

Did It Get Better?

No. It got worse, all the way to a civil war. But God never gave up on them. Ruth, a love story from the days of the judges, ends with the name David, and Samuel, the last judge, anoints Israel's first kings.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Joshua is dead, and the tribes go out to finish the job. Judah does well. Then the list turns into a report card full of the same comment: did not drive them out. Benjamin, Manasseh, Ephraim, Zebulun, Asher, Naphtali, Dan. The Canaanites are not going anywhere.

THE CONQUEST OF CANAAN PROCEEDS // JOSHUA 13:1–7

1 After the death of Joshua, the Israelites
inquired of Yahweh, "Who will be the first
to go up and fight for us against the
Canaanites?"

2 "Judah shall go up," answered Yahweh.
"Indeed, I have delivered the land into
their hands."

3 Then the men of Judah said to their
brothers the Simeonites, "Come up with
us to our allotted territory, and let us fight
against the Canaanites. And we likewise
will go with you to your territory." So the
Simeonites went with them.

4 When Judah attacked, Yahweh delivered
the Canaanites and Perizzites into their
hands, and they struck down ten thou-
sand men at Bezek. 5 And there they found
Adoni-bezek and fought against him,
striking down the Canaanites and Per-
izzites. 6 As Adoni-bezek

fled, they pursued him, seized him, and
cut off his thumbs and big toes. 7 Then
Adoni-bezek said, "Seventy kings with
their thumbs and big toes cut off have
gathered the scraps under my table. As I
have done to them, so God has repaid
me." And they brought him to Jerusalem,
where he died.

JUDG 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The first mention of Israel outside the Bible, as a people in Canaan → FIELD NOTES p.382

JUDG 1:1 [FULFILLS] Moses prayed that God would help Judah against his foes ← DT 33:7 · MEDIUM p.330

JUDG 1:1 [NOTE] JUDGES. The Hebrew word shophet means more than a judge in a courtroom. These were leaders God raised up to rescue Israel: Yahweh raised up judges, who saved them, 2:16.

JUDG 1:1 [NOTE] To see where each tribe lived, look at the map The Land of the Twelve Tribes in Joshua, p.361.

JUDG 1:7 [NOTE] Cutting off thumbs and big toes meant a man could never hold a sword or run into battle again. Adoni Bezek admits he got what he gave.

THE CAPTURE OF JERUSALEM AND HEBRON // JOSHUA 15:13–19

8 Then the men of Judah fought against
Jerusalem and captured it. They put the
city to the sword and set it on fire. 9 After-
ward, the men of Judah marched down to
fight against the Canaanites living in the
hill country, in the Negev, and in the
foothills.

10 Judah also marched against the
Canaanites who were living in Hebron
(formerly known as Kiriath-arba), and
they struck down Sheshai, Ahiman, and
Talmai.

11 From there they marched against the in-
habitants of Debir (formerly known as
Kiriath-sepher). 12 And Caleb said, "To the
man who strikes down Kiriath-sepher and
captures it, I will give my daughter Acsah
in marriage." 13 So Othniel son of Caleb's
younger brother Kenaz captured the city,
and Caleb gave his daughter Acsah to him
in marriage.

14 One day Acsah came to Othniel and
urged him to ask her father for a field.
When she got off her donkey, Caleb
asked her, "What do you desire?"

15 "Give me a blessing," she answered.
"Since you have given me land in the
Negev, give me springs of water as well."

So Caleb gave her both the upper and
lower springs.

16 Now the descendants of Moses' father-
in-law, the Kenite, went up with the men
of Judah from the City of Palms to the
Wilderness of Judah in the Negev near
Arad. They went to live among the people.

17 Then the men of Judah went with their
brothers the Simeonites, attacked the
Canaanites living in Zephath, and devoted
the city to destruction. So it was called
Hormah. 18 And Judah also captured Gaza,
Ashkelon, and Ekron—each with its terri-
tory. 19 Yahweh was with Judah, and they
took possession of the hill country; but
they could not drive out the inhabitants of
the plains because they had chariots of
iron.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

20 Just as Moses had promised, Judah
gave Hebron to Caleb, who drove out the
descendants of the three sons of Anak.
21 The Benjamites, however, failed to drive
out the Jebusites living in Jerusalem. So
to this day the Jebusites live there among
the Benjamites.
22 The house of Joseph also attacked
Bethel, and Yahweh was with them. 23
They sent spies to Bethel (formerly known
as Luz), 24 and when the spies saw a man
coming out of the city, they said to him,
"Please show us how to get into the city,
and we will treat you kindly."
25 So the man showed them the entrance
to the city, and they put the city to the
sword but released that man and all his
family. 26 And the man went to the land of
the Hittites, built a city, and called it Luz,
which is its name to this day.

THE FAILURE TO COMPLETE THE CONQUEST

27 At that time Manasseh failed to drive out
the inhabitants of Beth-shean, Taanach,
Dor, Ibleam, Megiddo, and their villages;
for the Canaanites were determined to
dwell in that land. 28 When Israel became
stronger, they pressed the Canaanites into
forced labor, but they never drove them
out completely.
29 Ephraim also failed to drive out the
Canaanites living in Gezer; so the
Canaanites continued to dwell among
them in Gezer.
30 Zebulun failed to drive out the inhabi-
tants of Kitron and Nahalol; so the
Canaanites lived among them and served
as forced laborers.
31 Asher failed to drive out the inhabitants
of Acco, Sidon, Ahlab, Achzib, Helbah,
Aphik, and Rehob. 32 So the Asherites
lived among the Canaanite inhabitants of
the land, because they did not drive them
out.
33 Naphtali failed to drive out the inhabi-
tants of Beth-shemesh and Beth-anath.
So the Naphtalites also lived among the
Canaanite inhabitants of the land, but the
inhabitants of Beth-shemesh and Beth-
anath served them as forced laborers.
34 The Amorites forced the Danites into the
hill country and did not allow them to
come down into the plain. 35 And the
Amorites were determined to dwell in
Mount Heres, Aijalon, and Shaalbim. But
when the house of Joseph grew in
strength, they pressed the Amorites into
forced labor. 36 And the border of the
Amorites extended from the Ascent of
Akrabbim to Sela and beyond.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The angel of Yahweh shows up at Bochim and says, You did not obey Me, so these nations will be thorns in your sides. The people cry. Then a new generation grows up that does not know Yahweh, and the cycle begins: sin, slavery, crying out, a judge to the rescue, and back to sin.

ISRAEL REBUKED AT BOCHIM

1 Now the angel of Yahweh went up from
Gilgal to Bochim and said, "I brought you
up out of Egypt and led you into the land
that I had promised to your fathers, and I
said, 'I will never break My covenant with
you, 2 and you are not to make a covenant
with the people of this land, but you shall
tear down their altars.'
Yet you have not obeyed My voice. What
is this you have done? 3 So now I tell you
that I will not drive out these people be-
fore you; they will be thorns in your sides,
and their gods will be a snare to you."
4 When the angel of Yahweh had spoken
these words to all the Israelites, the peo-
ple lifted up their voices and wept. 5 So

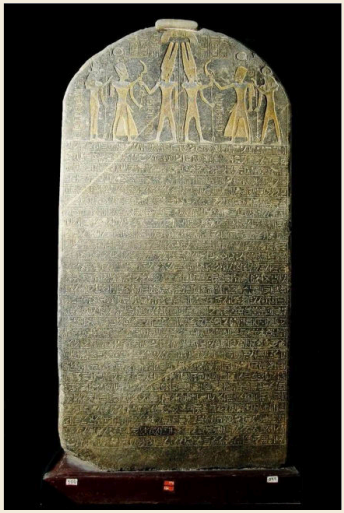
JUDG 1:20 [DEMONIC] Caleb drives out the three sons of Anak
JUDG 1:21 [NOTE] Judah burned Jerusalem in 1:8 but did not keep it. The Jebusites held the city until King David took it, 2 Samuel 5:6 to 7.
JUDG 1:28 [FULFILLS] Noah said Canaan would become a servant to his brothers ← GEN 9:25 · MEDIUM p.60

JUDG 2:1 [MIRACLE] The angel of Yahweh rebukes Israel at Bochim
JUDG 2:1 [FULFILLS] Nations left in the land would become thorns in Israel's sides ← NUM 33:55 p.277
JUDG 2:1 [NOTE] THE ANGEL OF YAHWEH. He speaks as God Himself: I brought you up out of Egypt. Many believe He is the Son of God before His birth, so His words are red, like the Commander in Joshua. Others say He is an angel speaking for God. See Who Was the Commander? in Joshua, p.345.
JUDG 2:2 [DEMONIC] Their gods will be a snare to you

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE STELE AND ITS DATE

THE MERNEPTAH STELE

JUDGES 1:1 · 1:18 · 17:6 · EXODUS 12:40 TO 41



The Merneptah Stele in the Egyptian Museum, Cairo. Israel is named near the bottom.

WHAT IT IS

A big slab of black granite, about ten feet tall, carved with a victory poem for Pharaoh Merneptah, the son of Ramesses II. Near the end it lists the enemies he says he beat in Canaan, and one of them is Israel: Israel is laid waste, his seed is not.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1208 BC, in the fifth year of Merneptah's reign. The date comes from the stone itself. By the early date or the late date, that is the time of the judges.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The British archaeologist Flinders Petrie found it in 1896 in the ruins of Merneptah's temple at Thebes, which is modern Luxor. It is in the Egyptian Museum in Cairo.

A PEOPLE, NOT A KINGDOM

The poem names Ashkelon, Gezer and Yenoam with a sign that means a city or a land. For Israel it uses a different sign, the one for a people. That is the Israel of Judges: twelve tribes in their own districts, with no king and no capital, 17:6.

NAMES FROM JUDGES

Ashkelon, which Judah took in 1:18, and Gezer, where Ephraim did not drive out the Canaanites, 1:29, are both in the poem.

THE BIG DEBATE

Frank Yurco argued that battle scenes carved at Karnak show this same war, and that one group in them is Israel. Others think those scenes belong to Ramesses II. A few scholars have asked whether the name reads Israel at all, but nearly everyone agrees it does.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It names no judge and no battle from the book. Merneptah bragged that Israel was wiped out, which turned out to be very wrong. It shows that Israel was already a people living in Canaan by about 1208 BC. See the Exodus page, p.138, for what it means for the date of the Exodus.

they called that place Bochim and offered sacrifices there to Yahweh.

JOSHUA'S DEATH AND BURIAL // JOSHUA 24:29–33

6 After Joshua had dismissed the people,
the Israelites went out to take possession
of the land, each to his own inheritance. 7
And the people served Yahweh through-
out the days of Joshua and of the elders
who outlived him, who had seen all the
great works that Yahweh had done for Is-
rael.

8 And Joshua son of Nun, the servant of
Yahweh, died at the age of 110. 9 They
buried him in the land of his inheritance,

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

at Timnath-heres in the hill country of Ephraim, north of Mount Gaash.

ISRAEL'S UNFAITHFULNESS // ISAIAH 43:22–28; JEREMIAH 2:23–37

10 After that whole generation had also been gathered to their fathers, another generation rose up who did not know Yahweh or the works that He had done for Israel. 11 And the Israelites did evil in the sight of Yahweh and served the Baals.

12 Thus they forsook Yahweh, the God of their fathers, who had brought them out of the land of Egypt, and they followed after various gods of the peoples around them. They bowed down to them and provoked Yahweh to anger, 13 for they forsook Him and served Baal and the Ashtoreths.

14 Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He delivered them into the hands of those who plundered them. He sold them into the hands of their enemies all around, whom they were no longer able to resist. 15 Wherever Israel marched out, the hand of Yahweh was against them to bring calamity, just as He had sworn to them. So they were greatly distressed.

JUDGES RAISED UP

16 Then Yahweh raised up judges, who saved them from the hands of those who plundered them.

17 Israel, however, did not listen to their judges. Instead, they prostituted themselves with other gods and bowed down to them. They quickly turned from the way of their fathers, who had walked in obedience to Yahweh's commandments; they did not do as their fathers had done.

18 Whenever Yahweh raised up a judge for the Israelites, He was with that judge and saved them from the hands of their enemies while the judge was still alive; for Yahweh was moved to pity by their groaning under those who oppressed them and afflicted them. 19 But when the judge died, the Israelites became even more corrupt than their fathers, going after other gods to serve them and bow down to them. They would not give up their evil practices and stubborn ways.

20 So the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He said, "Because this nation has transgressed the covenant I laid down for their fathers and has not heeded My voice, 21 I will no longer drive out before them any of the nations Joshua left when he died. 22 In this way I will test whether Israel will keep the way of Yahweh by walking in it as their fathers did."

23 That is why Yahweh had left those nations in place and had not driven them out immediately by delivering them into the hand of Joshua.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The first three judges. Othniel beats a king with a name like a sneeze. Ehud, a left handed man, hides a sword on his right thigh and visits Eglon, a very fat king of Moab, in his private room. The servants think the king is using the bathroom. He is not. Shamgar gets one verse of his own and six hundred Philistines.

NATIONS LEFT TO TEST ISRAEL

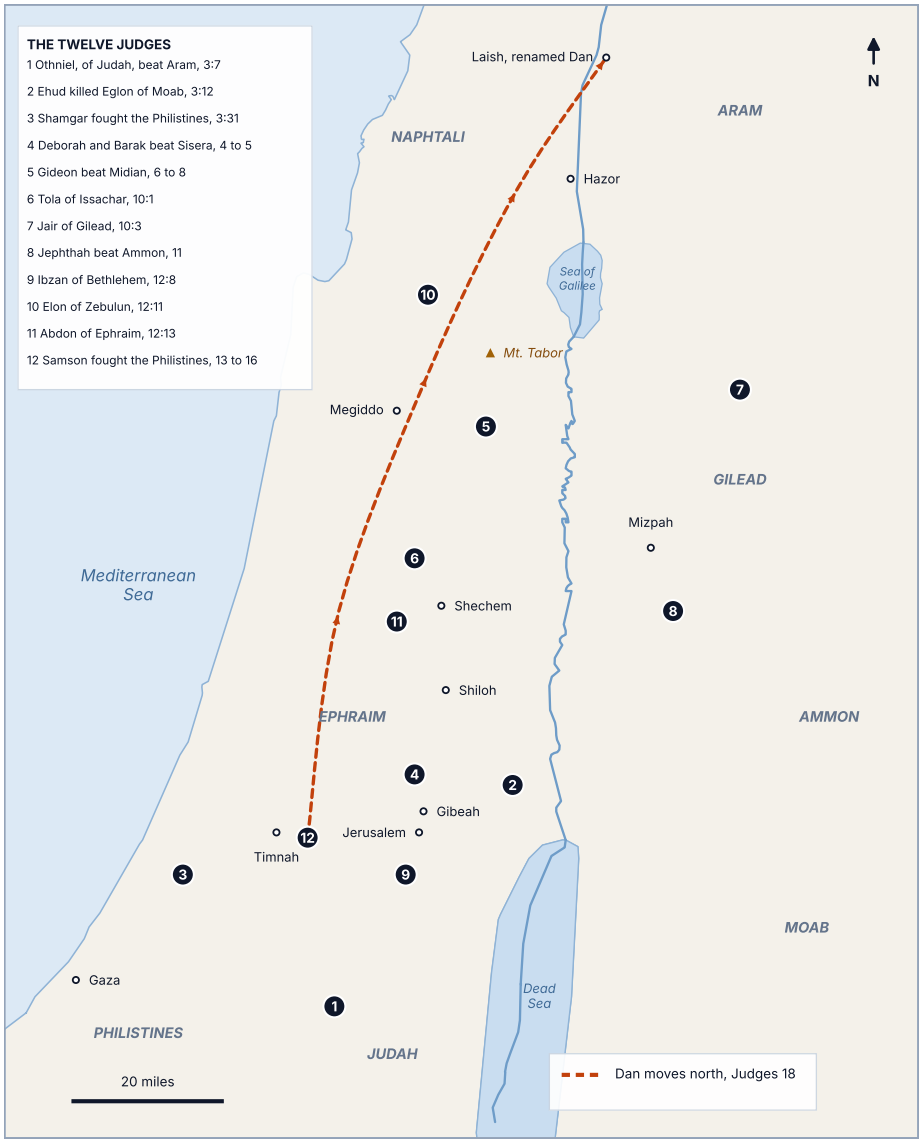
1 These are the nations that Yahweh left to test all the Israelites who had not known any of the wars in Canaan, 2 if only to teach warfare to the subsequent generations of Israel, especially to those who had not known it formerly: 3 the five rulers of the Philistines, all the Canaanites, the Sidonians, and the Hivites who lived in the mountains of Lebanon from Mount Baal-hermon to Lebo-hamath.

- **JUDG 2:10 [NOTABLE]** Faith is always one generation from being lost. Their parents saw the Jordan stop, but nobody told the kids.
- **JUDG 2:10 [NOTE]** Joshua's generation saw the Jordan stop and the walls fall. Their children never heard the story. Faith is never more than one generation from being lost.
- **JUDG 2:11 [DEMONIC]** Israel serves the Baals and the Ashtoreths
- **JUDG 2:11 [FULFILLS]** After Moses died Israel would turn corrupt and disaster would come ← DT 31:29 p.326
- **JUDG 2:16 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 13:20 p.1764
- **JUDG 2:17 [DEMONIC]** Israel prostitutes itself with other gods
- **JUDG 2:18 [FORESHADOW]** When each judge died, Israel would turn back to idols and the cycle would start again → JUDG 3:7-9; JUDG 3:12; JUDG 4:1; JUDG 6:1 · MEDIUM p.385
- **JUDG 2:19 [DEMONIC]** After each judge dies Israel returns to other gods
- **JUDG 2:19 [NOTE]** THE CYCLE. Sin, then slavery, then crying out, then a judge to the rescue, then rest. It happens again and again, and it gets worse each time.

MAP · JUDGES 3 TO 16

Where the Judges Fought

Twelve judges, twelve hot spots, one cycle that kept repeating



THE CYCLE Israel sins, an enemy takes over, Israel cries out, God sends a judge, there is peace, and then it starts again, Judges 2:16 to 19.

DAN MOVES The tribe of Dan gave up its land near the Philistines and took Laish in the far north, Judges 18.

DEBORAH AND GIDEON Deborah judged under a palm tree between Ramah and Bethel, 4:5. Her battle was at Mount Tabor and the Kishon. Gideon fought at the spring of Harod, 7:1.

NO KING Everyone did what was right in his own eyes, Judges 21:25. The book ends in civil war after a crime at Gibeah, Judges 19 to 20.

Numbers show each judge in order. Some hometowns are certain, others, like Ibzan's Bethlehem and Shamgar's, are not.

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC

4 These nations were left to test the Israelites, to find out whether they would keep the commandments of Yahweh, which He had given their fathers through Moses. 5 Thus the Israelites continued to live among the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites. 6 And they took the daughters of these people in marriage, gave their own daughters to their sons, and served their gods.

OTHNIEL

7 So the Israelites did evil in the sight of Yahweh; they forgot Yahweh their God and served the Baals and the Asherahs. 8 Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He sold them into the hand of Cushan-rishathaim king of Aram-naharaim, and the Israelites served him eight years.

9 But when the Israelites cried out to Yahweh, He raised up Othniel son of Caleb's younger brother Kenaz as a deliverer to save them. 10 The Spirit of Yahweh came upon him, and he became Israel's judge and went out to war. And Yahweh delivered Cushan-rishathaim king of Aram into the hand of Othniel, who prevailed against him.

11 So the land had rest for forty years, until Othniel son of Kenaz died.

EHUD

12 Once again the Israelites did evil in the sight of Yahweh. So He gave Eglon king of Moab power over Israel, because they had done evil in the sight of Yahweh. 13 After enlisting the Ammonites and Amalekites to join forces with him, Eglon attacked and defeated Israel, taking possession of the City of Palms.

14 The Israelites served Eglon king of Moab eighteen years. 15 And again they cried out to Yahweh, and He raised up Ehud son of Gera, a left-handed Benjamite, as their deliverer. So they sent him with tribute to Eglon king of Moab.

16 Now Ehud had made for himself a double-edged sword a foot and a half long. He strapped it to his right thigh under his cloak 17 and brought the tribute to Eglon king of Moab, who was an obese man.

18 After Ehud had finished presenting the tribute, he ushered out those who had carried it. 19 But upon reaching the idols near Gilgal, he himself turned back and said, "I have a secret message for you, O king."

"Silence," said the king, and all his attendants left him.

20 Then Ehud approached him while he was sitting alone in the coolness of his upper room. "I have a word from God for you," Ehud said, and the king rose from his seat.

21 And Ehud reached with his left hand, pulled the sword from his right thigh, and plunged it into Eglon's belly. 22 Even the handle sank in after the blade, and Eglon's fat closed in over it, so that Ehud did not withdraw the sword from his belly. And Eglon's bowels emptied. 23 Then Ehud went out through the porch, closing and locking the doors of the upper room behind him.

24 After Ehud was gone, Eglon's servants came in and found the doors of the upper room locked. "He must be relieving himself in the cool room," they said. 25 So they waited until they became worried and saw that he had still not opened the doors of the upper room. Then they took the key and opened the doors—and there was their lord lying dead on the floor.

26 Ehud, however, had escaped while the servants waited. He passed by the idols and escaped to Seirah.

27 On arriving in Seirah, he blew the ram's horn throughout the hill country of

- **JUDG 3:6 [DEMONIC]** Israel serves the Baals and the Asherahs
- **JUDG 3:7 [FULFILLS]** When each judge died, Israel would turn back to idols and the cycle would start again ← JUDG 2:18-19 · MEDIUM p.383
- **JUDG 3:12 [FULFILLS]** When each judge died, Israel would turn back to idols and the cycle would start again ← JUDG 2:18-19 · MEDIUM p.383
- **JUDG 3:15 [NOTE]** The Hebrew says Ehud was bound in his right hand. Benjamin means son of the right hand, yet the tribe was famous for left handers, 20:16. Guards would expect a sword on the left thigh, where right handed men wore it.
- **JUDG 3:19 [DEMONIC]** Ehud turns back at the carved idols near Gilgal
- **JUDG 3:26 [DEMONIC]** Ehud escapes past the idols

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHETIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

Ephraim. The Israelites came down with him from the hills, and he became their leader. 28 "Follow me," he told them, "for Yahweh has delivered your enemies the Moabites into your hand."

So they followed him down and seized the fords of the Jordan leading to Moab, and they did not allow anyone to cross over. 29 At that time they struck down about ten thousand Moabites, all robust and valiant men. Not one of them escaped.

30 So Moab was subdued under the hand of Israel that day, and the land had rest for eighty years.

SHAMGAR

31 After Ehud came Shamgar son of Anath. And he too saved Israel, striking down six hundred Philistines with an oxgoad.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Jabin of Hazor and his general Sisera have nine hundred iron chariots. Deborah, a prophetess and judge, tells Barak to go fight. He says he will only go if she comes too. She goes, but warns him the honor will go to a woman. Sisera runs away and hides in Jael's tent. That does not end well for Sisera.

DEBORAH AND BARAK

1 After Ehud died, the Israelites again did evil in the sight of Yahweh. 2 So Yahweh sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan, who reigned in Hazor. The commander of his forces was Sisera, who lived in Harosheth-hagoyim. 3 Then the Israelites cried out to Yahweh, because Jabin had nine hundred chariots of iron, and he had harshly oppressed the Israelites for twenty years.

4 Now Deborah, a prophetess, the wife of Lappidoth, was judging Israel at that time. 5 And she would sit under the Palm of Deborah between Ramah and Bethel in the hill country of Ephraim, where the Israelites would go up to her for judgment.

6 She summoned Barak son of Abinoam from Kedesh in Naphtali and said to him, "Surely Yahweh, the God of Israel, is commanding you: 'Go and march to Mount Tabor, taking with you ten thousand men of Naphtali and Zebulun. 7 And I will draw out Sisera the commander of Jabin's army, his chariots, and his troops to the River Kishon, and I will deliver him into your hand.'"

8 Barak said to her, "If you will go with me, I will go; but if you will not go with me, I will not go."

9 "I will certainly go with you," Deborah replied, "but the road you are taking will bring you no honor, because Yahweh will be selling Sisera into the hand of a woman." So Deborah got up and went with Barak to Kedesh, 10 where he summoned Zebulun and Naphtali. Ten thousand men followed him, and Deborah also went with him.

11 Now Heber the Kenite had moved away from the Kenites, the descendants of Hobab the father-in-law of Moses, and had pitched his tent by the great tree of Zaanannim, which was near Kedesh.

12 When Sisera was told that Barak son of Abinoam had gone up Mount Tabor, 13 he summoned all nine hundred of his iron chariots and all the men with him, from Harosheth-hagoyim to the River Kishon.

14 Then Deborah said to Barak, "Arise, for this is the day that Yahweh has delivered Sisera into your hand. Has not Yahweh gone before you?"

So Barak came down from Mount Tabor with ten thousand men following him. 15

- **JUDG 3:31 [NOTE]** An oxgoad was a long stick with a metal point for driving oxen. Anath was the name of a Canaanite war goddess. Son of Anath may point to her, to his family, or to his hometown, maybe Beth Anath, 1:33.
- **JUDG 4:1 [FULFILLS]** When each judge died, Israel would turn back to idols and the cycle would start again ← JUDG 2:18-19 · MEDIUM p.383
- **JUDG 4:2 [FIELD NOTES]** Hazor was dug by Yigael Yadin and Amnon Ben Tor. Its great fire is debated, and some date it to Deborah's time. See the Hazor Burned Field Notes page in Joshua, p.358.
- **JUDG 4:4 [NOTE]** Deborah was a prophetess and the judge of all Israel, the only woman judge in the book. See the Big Question pages Deborah: A Woman Leading Israel, p.389.
- **JUDG 4:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:32 p.1993
- **JUDG 4:6 [FULFILLS]** Naphtali is a deer let loose; he uses beautiful words ← GEN 49:21 · MEDIUM p.115
- **JUDG 4:6 [NOTE]** RED LETTERS. Deborah is passing on God's words, so only His words are red, from Go to the end of 4:7.
- **JUDG 4:9 [PROPHECY]** Deborah prophesied Sisera would be killed by a woman, not Barak → JUDG 4:21 p.387

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

And in front of him Yahweh routed with the sword Sisera, all his charioteers, and all his army. Sisera abandoned his chariot and fled on foot.

16 Then Barak pursued the chariots and army as far as Harosheth-hagoyim, and the whole army of Sisera fell by the sword; not a single man was left.

JAEL KILLS SISERA

17 Meanwhile, Sisera had fled on foot to the tent of Jael, the wife of Heber the Kenite, because there was peace between Jabin king of Hazor and the house of Heber the Kenite. 18 Jael went out to greet Sisera and said to him, "Come in, my lord. Come in with me. Do not be afraid." So he entered her tent, and she covered him with a blanket.

19 Sisera said to her, "Please give me a little water to drink, for I am thirsty." So she opened a container of milk, gave him a drink, and covered him again.

20 "Stand at the entrance to the tent," he said, "and if anyone comes and asks you, 'Is there a man here?' say, 'No.'"

21 But as he lay sleeping from exhaustion, Heber's wife Jael took a tent peg, grabbed a hammer, and went silently to Sisera. She drove the peg through his temple and into the ground, and he died.

22 When Barak arrived in pursuit of Sisera, Jael went out to greet him and said to him, "Come, and I will show you the man you are seeking." So he went in with her, and there lay Sisera dead, with a tent peg through his temple.

23 On that day God subdued Jabin king of Canaan before the Israelites. 24 And the hand of the Israelites grew stronger and stronger against Jabin king of Canaan until they destroyed him.

JUDG 4:21 [FULFILLS] Deborah prophesied Sisera would be killed by a woman, not Barak ← JUDG 4:9 p.386

JUDG 4:21 [NOTE] In that culture the women set up the tents, so Jael knew exactly how to use a tent peg and a hammer. Deborah's word in 4:9 came true: the honor went to a woman.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Deborah and Barak sing a victory song about the same battle. Rain floods the Kishon, the river sweeps the enemy away, and the stars themselves fight against Sisera. The song roasts the tribes that stayed home and ends with Sisera's mother waiting at the window for a son who is never coming back.

THE SONG OF DEBORAH AND BARAK // EXODUS 15:1–21

1 On that day Deborah and Barak son of Abinoam sang this song:

2 "When the princes take the lead in Israel,
when the people volunteer,
bless Yahweh.
3 Listen, O kings! Give ear, O princes!
I will sing to Yahweh;
I will sing praise to Yahweh,
the God of Israel.
4 O Yahweh, when You went out from Seir,
when You marched from the land of Edom,
the earth trembled, the heavens poured out rain,
and the clouds poured down water.
5 The mountains quaked before Yahweh,
the One of Sinai,
before Yahweh,
the God of Israel.

6 In the days of Shamgar son of Anath,
in the days of Jael,
the highways were deserted
and the travelers took the byways.
7 Life in the villages ceased;
it ended in Israel,
until I, Deborah, arose,
a mother in Israel.
8 When they chose new gods,
then war came to their gates.
Not a shield or spear was found
among forty thousand in Israel.
9 My heart is with the princes of Israel,
with the volunteers among the people.
Bless Yahweh!

10 You who ride white donkeys,

JUDG 5:1 [NOTE] THE SONG OF DEBORAH. Many scholars think its Hebrew is some of the oldest in the Bible, from close to the time of the battle itself.

JUDG 5:8 [DEMONIC] When they chose new gods, war came to their gates

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

who sit on saddle blankets,
and you who travel the road,
ponder 11 the voices of the singers
at the watering places.
There they shall recount the righteous
acts of Yahweh,
the righteous deeds of His villagers in
Israel.

Then the people of Yahweh
went down to the gates:
12 'Awake, awake, O Deborah!
Awake, awake, sing a song!
Arise, O Barak,
and take hold of your captives, O son of
Abinoam!'

13 Then the survivors came down to the
nobles;
the people of Yahweh came down to me
against the mighty.
14 Some came from Ephraim, with their
roots in Amalek;
Benjamin came with your people after
you.
The commanders came down from
Machir,
the bearers of the marshal's staff from
Zebulun.

15 The princes of Issachar were with Debo-
rah,
and Issachar was with Barak,
rushing into the valley at his heels.
In the clans of Reuben
there was great indecision.
16 Why did you sit among the sheepfolds
to hear the whistling for the flocks?
In the clans of Reuben
there was great indecision.

17 Gilead remained beyond the Jordan.
Dan, why did you linger by the ships?
Asher stayed at the coast
and remained in his harbors.
18 Zebulun was a people who risked their
lives;
Naphtali, too, on the heights of the bat-
tlefield.
19 Kings came and fought;
then the kings of Canaan fought at
Taanach
by the waters of Megiddo,
but they took no plunder of silver.

20 From the heavens the stars fought;
from their courses they fought against
Sisera.
21 The River Kishon swept them away,
the ancient river, the River Kishon.

March on, O my soul, in strength!

22 Then the hooves of horses thundered—
the mad galloping of his stallions.
23 'Curse Meroz,' says the angel of Yah-
weh.
'Bitterly curse her inhabitants;
for they did not come to help Yahweh,
to help Yahweh against the mighty.'

24 Most blessed among women is Jael,
the wife of Heber the Kenite,
most blessed of tent-dwelling women.
25 He asked for water, and she gave him
milk.
In a magnificent bowl she brought him
curds.
26 She reached for the tent peg,
her right hand for the workman's ham-
mer.
She struck Sisera and crushed his skull;
she shattered and pierced his temple.
27 At her feet he collapsed, he fell,
there he lay still;
at her feet he collapsed, he fell;
where he collapsed, there he fell dead.

28 Sisera's mother looked through the win-
dow;
she peered through the lattice and
lamented:
'Why is his chariot so long in coming?
What has delayed the clatter of his
chariots?'
29 Her wisest ladies answer;
indeed she keeps telling herself,
30 'Are they not finding and dividing the
spoil—
a girl or two for each warrior,
a plunder of dyed garments for Sisera,

JUDG 5:18 [FULFILLS] Naphtali is a deer let loose; he uses beautiful words ← GEN 49:21 · MEDIUM p.115

JUDG 5:19 [FIELD NOTES] Megiddo became the most famous battlefield in the world. See the Megiddo Field Notes page in Revelation, p.2106.

JUDG 5:21 [NOTE] The song explains the battle in chapter 4. Many think a storm flooded the Kishon, 5:4, and the nine hundred iron chariots got stuck in the mud.

JUDG 5:23 [NOTE] RED LETTERS. Deborah's song quotes the angel of Yahweh, so only his words are red.

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW

the spoil of embroidered garments
for the neck of the looter?'

31 So may all Your enemies perish,
O Yahweh!
But may those who love You
shine like the sun at its brightest."
And the land had rest for forty years.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DEBORAH

A Woman Leading Israel

JUDGES 4 TO 5 · EXODUS 15:20 · 2 KINGS 22:14 · ACTS 21:9

WHO SHE WAS

Deborah was a prophetess, the wife of Lappidoth, and she was judging Israel, 4:4. She sat under the Palm of Deborah between Ramah and Bethel, and the Israelites came to her to settle their disputes, 4:5. She is the only judge in the book shown doing the work of a judge in court.

WHAT SHE DID

She called Barak and gave him God's command to fight Sisera, 4:6 to 7. When Barak said he would only go if she went too, she went, 4:8 to 9. After the battle she and Barak sang the Song of Deborah, where she calls herself a mother in Israel, 5:7.

BARAK AND JAEL

Deborah told Barak the honor would go to a woman, 4:9. It did, but not to Deborah. Jael killed Sisera, 4:21. Hebrews 11:32 names Barak in its list of faith, not Deborah.

OTHER WOMEN WHO SPOKE FOR GOD

Miriam, Exodus 15:20. Huldah, who explained the Book of the Law to the king's men, 2 Kings 22:14 to 20. Anna, Luke 2:36. Philip's four daughters, Acts 21:9. And Joel 2:28 says your sons and daughters will prophesy.

WHY THIS COMES UP TODAY

Christians who disagree about women as pastors both talk about Deborah. Read 1 Timothy 2:12, the verse at the center of the debate, and the Big Question pages Women in the Church in 1 Timothy, p.1936.

Every View

JUDGES 4:4 TO 9 · 1 TIMOTHY 2:12 · GALATIANS 3:28 · ACTS 2:17 TO 18

VIEW 1: A SPECIAL CASE

Many churches teach that men should lead as pastors and elders, 1 Timothy 2:12 and 3:2. They say Deborah was a prophet God chose in a time when the men had failed, and point to 4:9 as a rebuke to Barak. They note she sent Barak to lead the army instead of leading it herself, and judged under a tree rather than ruling as a king. This view is often called complementarian.

VIEW 2: A PATTERN FOR TODAY

Other churches teach that every role is open to women. They say God chose Deborah and the Bible never criticizes her, that she led the whole nation, and that God still pours out His Spirit on sons and daughters, Acts 2:17 to 18, and in Christ there is neither male nor female, Galatians 3:28. This view is often called egalitarian.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

The first side says Deborah was a prophet and a judge in Israel, not an elder in the church, so 1 Timothy still applies. The second side says if God could put a woman over all Israel, the New Testament rules must have been about something more local.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

God used Deborah, and the Bible honors her. She spoke God's word, she was brave when a general was scared, and in her song she gave all the credit to Yahweh, 5:2 to 3.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Midian raids Israel every harvest like locusts. Gideon is hiding in a winepress when the angel of Yahweh calls him a mighty man of valor. Gideon tears down his father's Baal altar at night, then asks for a sign with a wool fleece. Then he asks again, the other way around.

MIDIAN OPPRESSES ISRAEL

1 Again the Israelites did evil in the sight of Yahweh; so He delivered them into the hand of Midian for seven years, 2 and the hand of Midian prevailed against Israel.

MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Because of the Midianites, the Israelites prepared shelters for themselves in the mountains, caves, and strongholds.

3 Whenever the Israelites planted their crops, the Midianites, Amalekites, and other people of the east would come up and invade them, 4 encamping against them as far as Gaza and destroying the produce of the land. They left Israel with no sustenance, neither sheep nor oxen nor donkeys. 5 For the Midianites came with their livestock and their tents like a great swarm of locusts. They and their camels were innumerable, and they entered the land to ravage it.

6 Israel was greatly impoverished by Midian, and the Israelites cried out to Yahweh.

7 Now when the Israelites cried out to Yahweh because of Midian, 8 He sent them a prophet, who told them, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: I brought you up out of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. 9 I delivered you out of the hands of Egypt and all your oppressors. I drove them out before you and gave you their land. 10 And I said to you: 'I am Yahweh your God. You must not fear the gods of the Amorites, in whose land you dwell.' But you did not obey Me."

THE CALL OF GIDEON

11 Then the angel of Yahweh came and sat down under the oak in Ophrah that belonged to Joash the Abiezrite, where his son Gideon was threshing wheat in a winepress to hide it from the Midianites. 12 And the angel of Yahweh appeared to Gideon and said, "Yahweh is with you, O mighty man of valor."

13 "Please, my Lord," Gideon replied, "if Yahweh is with us, why has all this happened to us? And where are all His wonders of which our fathers told us, saying, 'Has not Yahweh brought us up out of Egypt?' But now Yahweh has forsaken us and delivered us into the hand of Midian."

14 Yahweh turned to him and said, "Go in the strength you have and save Israel from the hand of Midian. Am I not sending you?"

15 "Please, my Lord," Gideon replied, "how can I save Israel? Indeed, my clan is the weakest in Manasseh, and I am the youngest in my father's house."

16 "Surely I will be with you," Yahweh replied, "and you will strike down all the Midianites as one man."

17 Gideon answered, "If I have found favor in Your sight, give me a sign that it is You speaking with me. 18 Please do not depart from this place until I return to You. Let me bring my offering and set it before You."

And Yahweh said, "I will stay until you return."

19 So Gideon went in and prepared a young goat and unleavened bread from half a bushel of flour. He placed the meat in a basket and the broth in a pot and brought them out to present to Him under the oak.

20 And the angel of God said to him, "Take the meat and the unleavened bread, lay them on this rock, and pour out the broth." And Gideon did so.

21 Then the angel of Yahweh extended the tip of the staff that was in his hand and touched the meat and the unleavened bread. And fire flared from the rock and consumed the meat and the unleavened bread. Then the angel of Yahweh vanished from his sight.

- **JUDG 6:1 [FULFILLS]** When each judge died, Israel would turn back to idols and the cycle would start again ← JUDG 2:18-19 · MEDIUM p.383
- **JUDG 6:7 [TEXT]** The oldest copy of Judges, a Dead Sea Scroll called 4QJudg a, goes straight from 6:6 to 6:11. It does not have the prophet's speech in 6:7 to 10. Some scholars think those verses were added later; others think the scroll left them out.
- **JUDG 6:8 [NOTE]** RED LETTERS. A prophet is passing on God's words, so only God's words are red, from I brought you up to the end of 6:10.
- **JUDG 6:10 [DEMONIC]** Do not fear the gods of the Amorites
- **JUDG 6:11 [MIRACLE]** The angel of Yahweh calls Gideon a mighty man of valor
- **JUDG 6:11 [NOTE]** Wheat was threshed on an open hilltop so the wind could blow the chaff away. Gideon was threshing in a winepress, a pit in the ground, to hide his food from the Midianites.
- **JUDG 6:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:32 p.1993
- **JUDG 6:12 [NOTABLE]** Gideon was hiding in a winepress when God called him a mighty man of valor. God names people by what He will make them, not by what they are today.
- **JUDG 6:14 [NOTE]** In 6:12 the angel of Yahweh speaks; in 6:14 the text says Yahweh turned to him. The same Person seems to be both. This is one reason many see the angel of Yahweh as God Himself.

MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

22 When Gideon realized that it was the
angel of Yahweh, he said, "Oh no, Lord
Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh
face to face!"

23 But Yahweh said to him, "Peace be with
you. Do not be afraid, for you will not die."

24 So Gideon built an altar to Yahweh there
and called it Yahweh Is Peace. To this day
it stands in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

GIDEON DESTROYS BAAL'S ALTAR

25 On that very night Yahweh said to
Gideon, "Take your father's young bull
and a second bull seven years old, tear
down your father's altar to Baal, and cut
down the Asherah pole beside it. 26 Then
build a proper altar to Yahweh your God
on the top of this stronghold. And with the
wood of the Asherah pole you cut down,
take the second bull and offer it as a burnt
offering."

27 So Gideon took ten of his servants and
did as Yahweh had told him. But because
he was too afraid of his father's house-
hold and the men of the city, he did it by
night rather than in the daytime.

28 When the men of the city got up in the
morning, there was Baal's altar torn down,
with the Asherah pole cut down beside it
and the second bull offered up on the
newly built altar. 29 "Who did this?" they
said to one another.

And after they had investigated thor-
oughly, they were told, "Gideon son of
Joash did it."

30 Then the men of the city said to Joash,
"Bring out your son. He must die, because
he has torn down Baal's altar and cut
down the Asherah pole beside it."

31 But Joash said to all who stood against
him, "Are you contending for Baal? Are
you trying to save him? Whoever pleads
his case will be put to death by morning! If
Baal is a god, let him contend for himself
with the one who has torn down his altar."

32 So on that day Gideon was called
Jerubbaal, that is to say, "Let Baal con-
tend with him," because he had torn down
Baal's altar.

THE SIGN OF THE FLEECE

33 Then all the Midianites, Amalekites, and
other people of the east gathered to-
gether, crossed over the Jordan, and
camped in the Valley of Jezreel.

34 So the Spirit of Yahweh came upon
Gideon, who blew the ram's horn and ral-
lied the Abiezrites behind him. 35 Calling
them to arms, Gideon sent messengers
throughout Manasseh, as well as Asher,
Zebulun, and Naphtali, so that they came
up to meet him.

36 Then Gideon said to God, "If You are
going to save Israel by my hand, as You
have said, 37 then behold, I will place a
fleece of wool on the threshing floor. If
there is dew only on the fleece and all the
ground is dry, then I will know that You are
going to save Israel by my hand, as You
have said."

38 And that is what happened. When
Gideon arose the next morning, he
squeezed the fleece and wrung out the
dew—a bowlful of water.

39 Then Gideon said to God, "Do not be
angry with me; let me speak one more
time. Please allow me one more test with
the fleece. This time let it be dry, and the
ground covered with dew."

40 And that night God did so. Only the
fleece was dry, and dew covered the
ground.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Gideon has 32,000 men. God says, Too many. Twenty two thousand scared men go home. Still too many. The ones who lap water like dogs stay: 300 men. They attack at night with rams' horns, torches and clay jars, and the enemy army turns on itself.

- **JUDG 6:21 [MIRACLE]** Fire from the rock consumes Gideon's offering
- **JUDG 6:22 [NOTE]** Gideon thought he would die, because no one could see God and live, Exodus 33:20. God answered, Peace be with you. Do not be afraid, for you will not die, 6:23.
- **JUDG 6:25 [DEMONIC]** Gideon tears down his father's Baal altar and Asherah

- **JUDG 6:36 [MIRACLE]** Gideon's fleece, wet and then dry
- **JUDG 6:36 [NOTE]** THE FLEECE. God had already promised Gideon the victory, 6:14 and 6:16. Gideon asked for a sign anyway, then a second one. God was patient with his fear. Today, asking God for a sign is called putting out a fleece.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

GIDEON'S ARMY OF THREE HUNDRED

1 Early in the morning Jerubbaal (that is,
Gideon) and all the men with him camped
beside the spring of Harod. And the camp
of Midian was north of them in the valley
near the hill of Moreh.

2 Then Yahweh said to Gideon, "You have
too many men for Me to deliver Midian
into their hands, lest Israel glorify them-
selves over Me, saying, 'My own hand has
saved me.' 3 Now, therefore, proclaim in
the hearing of the men: 'Whoever is fear-
ful and trembling may turn back and leave
Mount Gilead.'"

So twenty-two thousand of them turned
back, but ten thousand remained.

4 Then Yahweh said to Gideon, "There are
still too many men. Take them down to the
water, and I will sift them for you there. If I
say to you, 'This one shall go with you,' he
shall go. But if I say, 'This one shall not go
with you,' he shall not go."

5 So Gideon brought the men down to the
water, and Yahweh said to him, "Separate
those who lap the water with their
tongues like a dog from those who kneel
to drink." 6 And the number of those who
lapped the water with their hands to their
mouths was three hundred men; all the
others knelt to drink.

7 Then Yahweh said to Gideon, "With the
three hundred men who lapped the water
I will save you and deliver the Midianites
into your hand. But all the others are to go
home."

8 So Gideon sent the rest of the Israelites
to their tents but kept the three hundred
men, who took charge of the provisions
and rams' horns of the others. And the
camp of Midian lay below him in the val-
ley.

JUDG 7:2 [NOTABLE] God cut Gideon's army from 32,000 to 300 so nobody could brag. When the odds are impossible, everyone knows who won the battle.

JUDG 7:5 [NOTE] People have guessed for centuries why the lappers were chosen: more alert, or just fewer. The Bible's reason is 7:2. God wanted so few men that no one could brag.

JUDG 7:7 [PROPHECY] God said He would save Israel from Midian with only three hundred men → JUDG 7:22 p.393

THE SWORD OF GIDEON

9 That night Yahweh said to Gideon, "Get
up and go down against the camp, for I
have delivered it into your hand. 10 But if
you are afraid to do so, then go down to
the camp with your servant Purah 11 and
listen to what they are saying. Then your
hands will be strengthened to attack the
camp." So he went with Purah his servant
to the outposts where armed men were
guarding the camp.

12 Now the Midianites, Amalekites, and all
the other people of the east had settled in
the valley like a swarm of locusts, and
their camels were as countless as the
sand on the seashore. 13 And as Gideon
arrived, a man was telling his friend about
a dream. "Behold, I had a dream," he said,
"and I saw a loaf of barley bread come
tumbling into the Midianite camp. It struck
the tent so hard that the tent overturned
and collapsed."

14 His friend replied: "This is nothing less
than the sword of Gideon son of Joash,
the Israelite. God has delivered Midian
and the whole camp into his hand."

GIDEON DEFEATS MIDIAN

15 When Gideon heard the dream and its
interpretation, he bowed in worship. He
returned to the camp of Israel and said,
"Get up, for Yahweh has delivered the
camp of Midian into your hand." 16 And he
divided the three hundred men into three
companies and gave each man a ram's
horn in one hand and a large jar in the
other, containing a torch.

17 "Watch me and do as I do," Gideon said.
"When I come to the outskirts of the
camp, do exactly as I do. 18 When I and all
who are with me blow our horns, then you
are also to blow your horns from all
around the camp and shout, 'For Yahweh
and for Gideon!'"

19 Gideon and the hundred men with him
reached the outskirts of the camp at the
beginning of the middle watch, just after
the changing of the guard. They blew
their horns and broke the jars that were in

JUDG 7:13 [MIRACLE] A Midianite dreams of a barley loaf flattening the tent

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

their hands. 20 The three companies blew their horns and shattered their jars. Holding the torches in their left hands and the horns in their right hands, they shouted, "A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon!"

21 Each Israelite took his position around the camp, and the entire Midianite army fled, crying out as they ran. 22 And when the three hundred rams' horns sounded, Yahweh set all the men in the camp against one another with their swords. The army fled to Beth-shittah toward Zererah as far as the border of Abel-meholah near Tabbath. 23 Then the men of Israel were called out from Naphtali, Asher, and all Manasseh, and they pursued the Midianites.

24 Gideon sent messengers throughout the hill country of Ephraim to say, "Come down against the Midianites and seize the waters of the Jordan ahead of them as far as Beth-barah." So all the men of Ephraim were called out, and they captured the waters of the Jordan as far as Beth-barah. 25 They also captured Oreb and Zeeb, the two princes of Midian; and they killed Oreb at the rock of Oreb and Zeeb at the winepress of Zeeb. So they pursued the Midianites and brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon on the other side of the Jordan.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Gideon chases the two kings of Midian, punishes two towns that refused to feed his men, and turns down the job of king. Then he collects gold earrings and makes an ephod that becomes an idol. Not his best ending.

GIDEON DEFEATS ZEBAH AND ZALMUNNA

1 Then the men of Ephraim said to Gideon, "Why have you done this to us? Why did you fail to call us when you went to fight against Midian?" And they contended with him violently.

2 But Gideon answered them, "Now what have I accomplished compared to you? Are not the gleanings of Ephraim better than the grape harvest of Abiezer? 3 God has delivered Oreb and Zeeb, the two princes of Midian, into your hand. What was I able to do compared to you?" When he had said this, their anger against him subsided.

4 Then Gideon and his three hundred men came to the Jordan and crossed it, exhausted yet still in pursuit. 5 So Gideon said to the men of Succoth, "Please give my troops some bread, for they are exhausted, and I am still pursuing Zebah and Zalmunna, the kings of Midian."

6 But the leaders of Succoth asked, "Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna already in your possession, that we should give bread to your army?"

7 "Very well," Gideon replied, "when Yahweh has delivered Zebah and Zalmunna into my hand, I will tear your flesh with the thorns and briers of the wilderness!"

8 From there he went up to Penuel and asked the same from them, but the men of Penuel gave the same response as the men of Succoth. 9 So Gideon told the men of Penuel, "When I return in triumph, I will tear down this tower!"

10 Now Zebah and Zalmunna were in Karkor with their army of about fifteen thousand men—all that were left of the armies of the people of the east. A hundred and twenty thousand swordsmen had already fallen. 11 And Gideon went up by way of the caravan route east of Nobah and Jogbehah, and he attacked their army, taking them by surprise. 12 When Zebah and Zalmunna fled, Gideon pursued and captured these two kings of Midian, routing their entire army.

13 After this, Gideon son of Joash returned from the battle along the Ascent of Heres. 14 There he captured a young man of Succoth and interrogated him. The young man wrote down for him the names of the

JUDG 7:20 [MIRACLE] Yahweh turns the Midianites against each other

JUDG 7:20 [NOTE] Three hundred rams' horns, three hundred torches and the crash of breaking jars, in the middle of the night. The Midianites panicked and turned their swords on each other, 7:22.

JUDG 7:22 [FULFILLS] God said He would save Israel from Midian with only three hundred men ← JUDG 7:7 p.392

DEMONIC

seventy-seven leaders and elders of Succoth.

15 And Gideon went to the men of Succoth and said, "Here are Zebah and Zalmunna, about whom you taunted me, saying, 'Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna already in your possession, that we should give bread to your weary men?'" 16 Then he took the elders of the city, and using the thorns and briers of the wilderness, he disciplined the men of Succoth. 17 He also pulled down the tower of Penuel and killed the men of the city.

18 Next, Gideon asked Zebah and Zalmunna, "What kind of men did you kill at Tabor?"

"Men like you," they answered, "each one resembling the son of a king."

19 "They were my brothers," Gideon replied, "the sons of my mother! As surely as Yahweh lives, if you had let them live, I would not kill you."

20 So he said to Jether, his firstborn, "Get up and kill them." But the young man did not draw his sword; he was fearful because he was still a youth.

21 Then Zebah and Zalmunna said, "Get up and kill us yourself, for as the man is, so is his strength." So Gideon got up and killed Zebah and Zalmunna, and he took the crescent ornaments from the necks of their camels.

GIDEON'S EPHOD

22 Then the Israelites said to Gideon, "Rule over us—you and your son and grandson—for you have saved us from the hand of Midian."

23 But Gideon replied, "I will not rule over you, nor will my son. Yahweh shall rule over you."

24 Then he added, "Let me make a request of you, that each of you give me an earring from his plunder." (For the enemies had gold earrings because they were Ishmaelites.)

25 "We will give them gladly," they replied. So they spread out a garment, and each man threw an earring from his plunder onto it. 26 The weight of the gold earrings he had requested was about 43 pounds, in addition to the crescent ornaments, the pendants, the purple garments of the kings of Midian, and the chains from the necks of their camels.

27 From all this Gideon made an ephod, which he placed in Ophrah, his hometown. But soon all Israel prostituted themselves by worshiping it there, and it became a snare to Gideon and his household.

FORTY YEARS OF PEACE

28 In this way Midian was subdued before the Israelites and did not raise its head again. So the land had rest for forty years in the days of Gideon, 29 and he—Jerubbaal son of Joash—returned home and settled down.

30 Gideon had seventy sons of his own, since he had many wives. 31 His concubine, who dwelt in Shechem, also bore him a son, and he named him Abimelech.

GIDEON'S DEATH

32 Later, Gideon son of Joash died at a ripe old age and was buried in the tomb of his father Joash in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

33 And as soon as Gideon was dead, the Israelites turned and prostituted themselves with the Baals, and they set up Baal-berith as their god.

34 The Israelites failed to remember Yahweh their God who had delivered them from the hands of all their enemies on every side. 35 They did not show kindness to the house of Jerubbaal (that is, Gideon) for all the good things he had done for Israel.

JUDG 8:23 [NOTE] Gideon said no to being king, Yahweh shall rule over you. Then he named a son Abimelech, which means my father is king, 8:31. His son took the hint, chapter 9.

JUDG 8:27 [DEMONIC] Gideon makes a gold ephod and Israel worships it

JUDG 8:33 [DEMONIC] Israel sets up Baal Berith as their god

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Gideon's son Abimelech wants to be king, so he kills seventy of his brothers on one stone. Only Jotham escapes, and he tells a story about trees picking a thornbush for king. Three years later Abimelech and Shechem destroy each other, and a woman drops a millstone on his head.

ABIMELECH'S CONSPIRACY

1 Now Abimelech son of Jerubbaal went to
his mother's brothers at Shechem and
said to them and to all the clan of his
mother, 2 "Please ask all the leaders of
Shechem, 'Is it better for you that seventy
men, all the sons of Jerubbaal, rule over
you, or just one man?' Remember that I
am your own flesh and blood."

3 And when his mother's brothers spoke all
these words about him in the presence of
all the leaders of Shechem, their hearts
were inclined to follow Abimelech, for
they said, "He is our brother." 4 So they
gave him 1¾ pounds of silver from the
temple of Baal-berith, with which Abim-
elech hired some worthless and reckless
men to follow him. 5 He went to his father's
house in Ophrah, and on one stone mur-
dered his seventy brothers, the sons of
Jerubbaal. But Jotham, the youngest son
of Jerubbaal, survived, because he hid
himself.

6 Then all the leaders of Shechem and
Beth-millo gathered beside the oak at the
pillar in Shechem and proceeded to make
Abimelech their king.

JOTHAM'S PARABLE

7 When this was reported to Jotham, he
climbed to the top of Mount Gerizim,
raised his voice, and cried out:

"Listen to me, O leaders of Shechem,
and may God listen to you.

8 One day the trees set out
to anoint a king for themselves.
They said to the olive tree,
'Reign over us.'

9 But the olive tree replied,
'Should I stop giving my oil
that honors both God and man,
to hold sway over the trees?'

10 Then the trees said to the fig tree,
'Come and reign over us.'

11 But the fig tree replied,
'Should I stop giving my sweetness
and my good fruit,
to hold sway over the trees?'

12 Then the trees said to the grapevine,
'Come and reign over us.'

13 But the grapevine replied,
'Should I stop giving my wine
that cheers both God and man,
to hold sway over the trees?'

14 Finally all the trees said to the thorn-
bush,
'Come and reign over us.'

15 But the thornbush replied,
'If you really are anointing me as king
over you,
come and find refuge in my shade.
But if not, may fire come out of the thorn-
bush
and consume the cedars of Lebanon.'

16 Now if you have acted faithfully and
honestly in making Abimelech king, if you
have done well by Jerubbaal and his fam-
ily, and if you have done to him as he
deserves— 17 for my father fought for you
and risked his life to deliver you from the
hand of Midian, 18 but you have risen up
against my father's house this day and
killed his seventy sons on a single stone,
and you have made Abimelech, the son of
his maidservant, king over the leaders of
Shechem because he is your brother— 19
if you have acted faithfully and honestly
toward Jerubbaal and his house this day,
then may you rejoice in Abimelech, and he
in you.

20 But if not, may fire come from Abim-
elech and consume the leaders of
Shechem and Beth-millo, and may fire

JUDG 9:3 [HEART] The leaders of Shechem let their hearts lean toward Abimelech because he was family. He is our brother was all it took, and it ended in murder and fire.

JUDG 9:4 [DEMONIC] Abimelech is paid from the temple of Baal Berith

JUDG 9:7 [NOTE] JOTHAM'S STORY is the first fable in the Bible. The good trees are too busy being useful to rule, so the useless thornbush becomes king. That thornbush is Abimelech.

DEMONIC

come from the leaders of Shechem and Beth-millo and consume Abimelech."

21 Then Jotham ran away, escaping to Beer, and he lived there for fear of his brother Abimelech.

GAAL CONSPIRES WITH THE SHECHEMITES

22 After Abimelech had reigned over Israel for three years, 23 God sent a spirit of animosity between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem and caused them to treat Abimelech deceitfully, 24 in order that the crime against the seventy sons of Jerubbaal might come to justice and their blood be avenged on their brother Abimelech and on the leaders of Shechem, who had helped him murder his brothers.

25 The leaders of Shechem set up an ambush against Abimelech on the hilltops, and they robbed all who passed by them on the road. So this was reported to Abimelech.

26 Meanwhile, Gaal son of Ebed came with his brothers and crossed into Shechem, and the leaders of Shechem put their confidence in him. 27 And after they had gone out into the fields, gathered grapes from their vineyards, and trodden them, they held a festival and went into the house of their god; and as they ate and drank, they cursed Abimelech.

28 Then Gaal son of Ebed said, "Who is Abimelech, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him? Is he not the son of Jerubbaal, and is not Zebul his officer? You are to serve the men of Hamor, the father of Shechem. Why should we serve Abimelech? 29 If only this people were under my authority, I would remove Abimelech; I would say to him, 'Muster your army and come out!'"

THE FALL OF SHECHEM

30 When Zebul the governor of the city heard the words of Gaal son of Ebed, he burned with anger. 31 So he covertly sent messengers to Abimelech to say, "Look, Gaal son of Ebed and his brothers have come to Shechem and are stirring up the city against you. 32 Now then, tonight you and the people with you are to come and lie in wait in the fields. 33 And in the morning at sunrise, get up and advance against the city. When Gaal and his men come out against you, do to them whatever you are able."

34 So Abimelech and all his troops set out by night and lay in wait against Shechem in four companies.

35 Now Gaal son of Ebed went out and stood at the entrance of the city gate just as Abimelech and his men came out from their hiding places.

36 When Gaal saw the people, he said to Zebul, "Look, people are coming down from the mountains!"

But Zebul replied, "The shadows of the mountains look like men to you."

37 Then Gaal spoke up again, "Look, people are coming down from the center of the land, and one company is coming by way of the Diviners' Oak."

38 "Where is your gloating now?" Zebul replied. "You said, 'Who is Abimelech that we should serve him?' Are these not the people you ridiculed? Go out now and fight them!"

39 So Gaal went out before the leaders of Shechem and fought against Abimelech, 40 but Abimelech pursued him, and Gaal fled before him. And many Shechemites fell wounded all the way to the entrance of the gate. 41 Abimelech stayed in Arumah, and Zebul drove Gaal and his brothers out of Shechem.

42 The next day the people of Shechem went out into the fields, and this was reported to Abimelech. 43 So he took his men, divided them into three companies, and lay in wait in the fields. When he saw the people coming out of the city, he rose up against them and attacked them.

44 Then Abimelech and the companies with him rushed forward and took their stand at the entrance of the city gate. The other two companies rushed against all

- **JUDG 9:20 [PROPHECY]** Jotham said fire would come between Abimelech and the men of Shechem to destroy both → JUDG 9:56-57 p.397
- **JUDG 9:23 [DEMONIC]** God sends a spirit of ill will between Abimelech and Shechem
- **JUDG 9:27 [DEMONIC]** Shechem feasts in the house of their god

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

who were in the fields and struck them down. 45 And all that day Abimelech fought against the city until he had captured it and killed its people. Then he demolished the city and sowed it with salt.

46 On hearing of this, all the leaders in the tower of Shechem entered the inner chamber of the temple of El-berith. 47 And when Abimelech was told that all the leaders in the tower of Shechem were gathered there, 48 he and all his men went up to Mount Zalmon. Abimelech took his axe in his hand and cut a branch from the trees, which he lifted to his shoulder, saying to his men, "Hurry and do what you have seen me do."

49 So each man also cut his own branch and followed Abimelech. Then they piled the branches against the inner chamber and set it on fire above them, killing everyone in the tower of Shechem, about a thousand men and women.

ABIMELECH'S PUNISHMENT

50 Then Abimelech went to Thebez, encamped against it, and captured it. 51 But there was a strong tower inside the city, and all the men, women, and leaders of the city fled there. They locked themselves in and went up to the roof of the tower.

52 When Abimelech came to attack the tower, he approached its entrance to set it on fire. 53 But a woman dropped an upper millstone on Abimelech's head, crushing his skull. 54 He quickly called his armor-bearer, saying, "Draw your sword and kill me, lest they say of me, 'A woman killed him.'"

So Abimelech's armor-bearer ran his sword through him, and he died. 55 And when the Israelites saw that Abimelech was dead, they all went home.

56 In this way God repaid the wickedness that Abimelech had done to his father in murdering his seventy brothers. 57 And God also brought all the wickedness of the men of Shechem back upon their own heads. So the curse of Jotham son of Jerubbaal came upon them.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Two quiet judges, Tola and Jair. Jair had thirty sons riding thirty donkeys. Then Israel worships seven different sets of gods, and God says, Go cry out to the gods you chose. The people throw away their idols, and God could not stand Israel's misery any longer.

TOLA

1 After the time of Abimelech, a man of Issachar, Tola son of Puah, the son of Dodo, rose up to save Israel. He lived in Shamir, in the hill country of Ephraim.

2 Tola judged Israel twenty-three years, and when he died, he was buried in Shamir.

JAIR

3 Tola was followed by Jair the Gileadite, who judged Israel twenty-two years. 4 He had thirty sons who rode on thirty donkeys. And they had thirty towns in the land of Gilead, which to this day are called Havvoth-jair.

5 When Jair died, he was buried in Kamon.

OPPRESSION BY THE PHILISTINES AND AMMONITES

6 And again the Israelites did evil in the sight of Yahweh. They served the Baals, the Ashtoreths, the gods of Aram, Sidon, and Moab, and the gods of the Ammonites and Philistines. Thus they forsook Yahweh and did not serve Him.

7 So the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He sold them into the hands of the Philistines and Ammonites, 8 who that very year harassed and oppressed the Is-

- **JUDG 9:46 [DEMONIC]** Shechem's leaders hide in the temple of El Berith
- **JUDG 9:46 [FIELD NOTES]** A huge temple with thick walls has been dug at Shechem, and some think it is the temple of El Berith. See Shechem's Standing Stone Field Notes page in Joshua, p.376.
- **JUDG 9:53 [NOTE]** Grinding grain was women's work, so a woman on the tower had a millstone handy. Abimelech's death was still remembered in David's day, 2 Samuel 11:21.

- **JUDG 9:56 [FULFILLS]** Jotham said fire would come between Abimelech and the men of Shechem to destroy both ← JUDG 9:20 p.395
- **JUDG 10:6 [DEMONIC]** Israel serves the Baals and the gods of many nations
- **JUDG 10:6 [NOTE]** Seven sets of gods are named here. Israel did not just drift from Yahweh; they collected idols from every neighbor.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

raelites, and they did so for eighteen years to all the Israelites on the other side of the Jordan in Gilead, the land of the Amorites.

9 The Ammonites also crossed the Jordan to fight against Judah, Benjamin, and the house of Ephraim, and Israel was in deep distress.

10 Then the Israelites cried out to Yahweh, saying, "We have sinned against You, for we have indeed forsaken our God and served the Baals."

11 Yahweh replied, "When the Egyptians, Amorites, Ammonites, Philistines, 12 Sidonians, Amalekites, and Maonites oppressed you and you cried out to Me, did I not save you from their hands? 13 But you have forsaken Me and served other gods, so I will no longer save you. 14 Go and cry out to the gods you have chosen. Let them save you in your time of trouble."

15 "We have sinned," the Israelites said to Yahweh. "Deal with us as You see fit; but please deliver us today!" 16 So they put away the foreign gods from among them and served Yahweh, and He could no longer bear the misery of Israel.

17 Then the Ammonites were called to arms and camped in Gilead, and the Israelites assembled and camped at Mizpah. 18 And the rulers of Gilead said to one another, "Whoever will launch the attack against the Ammonites will be the head of all who live in Gilead."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Jephthah, the son of a prostitute, was driven out by his brothers. Now the elders need a fighter, so they come crawling back. He sends the king of Ammon a history lesson, then makes a rash vow, wins the battle, and sees his only daughter come out the door. The saddest chapter so far.

JEPHTHAH DELIVERS ISRAEL

1 Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty man of valor; he was the son of a prostitute, and Gilead was his father. 2 And Gilead's wife bore him sons who grew up, drove Jephthah out, and said to him, "You shall have no inheritance in our father's house, because you are the son of another woman."

3 So Jephthah fled from his brothers and settled in the land of Tob, where worthless men gathered around him and traveled with him.

4 Some time later, when the Ammonites fought against Israel 5 and made war with them, the elders of Gilead went to get Jephthah from the land of Tob. 6 "Come," they said, "be our commander, so that we can fight against the Ammonites."

7 Jephthah replied to the elders of Gilead, "Did you not hate me and expel me from my father's house? Why then have you come to me now, when you are in distress?"

8 They answered Jephthah, "This is why we now turn to you, that you may go with us, fight the Ammonites, and become leader over all of us who live in Gilead."

9 But Jephthah asked them, "If you take me back to fight the Ammonites and Yahweh gives them to me, will I really be your leader?"

10 And the elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "Yahweh is our witness if we do not do as you say."

11 So Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people made him their leader and commander. And Jephthah repeated all his terms in the presence of Yahweh at Mizpah.

12 Then Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the Ammonites, saying, "What do you have against me that you have come to fight against my land?"

13 The king of the Ammonites answered Jephthah's messengers, "When Israel came up out of Egypt, they seized my land, from the Arnon to the Jabbok and all

- **JUDG 10:10 [DEMONIC]** Israel confesses they served the Baals
- **JUDG 10:13 [DEMONIC]** Go cry out to the gods you have chosen
- **JUDG 10:16 [DEMONIC]** Israel puts away the foreign gods

- **JUDG 11:1 [NOTE]** Jephthah's mother was a prostitute, zonah, the same word used for Rahab. His half brothers threw him out. God still used him, and Hebrews 11:32 names him for his faith.

DEMONIC

the way to the Jordan. Now, therefore, restore it peaceably."

14 Jephthah again sent messengers to the king of the Ammonites 15 to tell him, "This is what Jephthah says: Israel did not take away the land of Moab or of the Ammonites. 16 But when Israel came up out of Egypt, they traveled through the wilderness to the Red Sea and came to Kadesh. 17 Then Israel sent messengers to the king of Edom, saying, 'Please let us pass through your land,' but the king of Edom would not listen. They also sent messengers to the king of Moab, but he would not consent. So Israel stayed in Kadesh.

18 Then Israel traveled through the wilderness and bypassed the lands of Edom and Moab. They came to the east side of the land of Moab and camped on the other side of the Arnon. But they did not enter the territory of Moab, since the Arnon was its border.

19 And Israel sent messengers to Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled in Heshbon, and said to him, 'Please let us pass through your land into our own place.' 20 But Sihon would not trust Israel to pass through his territory. So he gathered all his people, encamped in Jahaz, and fought with Israel.

21 Then Yahweh, the God of Israel, delivered Sihon and all his people into the hand of Israel, who defeated them. So Israel took possession of all the land of the Amorites who inhabited that country, 22 seizing all the land from the Arnon to the Jabbok and from the wilderness to the Jordan.

23 Now since Yahweh, the God of Israel, has driven out the Amorites from before His people Israel, should you now possess it? 24 Do you not possess whatever your god Chemosh grants you? So also, we possess whatever Yahweh our God has granted us. 25 Are you now so much better than Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab? Did he ever contend with Israel or fight against them?

- **JUDG 11:24 [DEMONIC]** Jephthah speaks of Ammon's god Chemosh

26 For three hundred years Israel has lived in Heshbon, Aroer, and their villages, as well as all the cities along the banks of the Arnon. Why did you not take them back during that time? 27 I have not sinned against you, but you have done me wrong by waging war against me. May Yahweh, the Judge, decide today between the Israelites and the Ammonites."

28 But the king of the Ammonites paid no heed to the message Jephthah sent him.

JEPHTHAH'S TRAGIC VOW

29 Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon Jephthah, and he passed through Gilead and Manasseh, then through Mizpah of Gilead. And from there he advanced against the Ammonites.

30 Jephthah made this vow to Yahweh: "If indeed You will deliver the Ammonites into my hand, 31 then whatever comes out the door of my house to greet me on my triumphant return from the Ammonites will belong to Yahweh, and I will offer it up as a burnt offering."

32 So Jephthah crossed over to the Ammonites to fight against them, and Yahweh delivered them into his hand. 33 With a great blow he devastated twenty cities from Aroer to the vicinity of Minnith, as far as Abel-keramim. So the Ammonites were subdued before the Israelites.

34 And when Jephthah returned home to Mizpah, there was his daughter coming out to meet him with tambourines and dancing! She was his only child; he had no son or daughter besides her.

35 As soon as Jephthah saw her, he tore his clothes and said, "No! Not my daughter! You have brought me to my knees! You have brought great misery upon me,

- **JUDG 11:26 [NOTE]** Jephthah says Israel had lived east of the Jordan for three hundred years. This verse matters in the debate about when the Exodus happened. See When Was the Conquest? in Joshua, p.359.
- **JUDG 11:29 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:32 p.1993
- **JUDG 11:30 [DEMONIC]** Jephthah vows a burnt offering of whatever greets him
- **JUDG 11:30 [NOTE]** JEPHTHAH'S VOW. Whatever comes out the door of my house. God never asked for this vow. See the Big Question pages Jephthah's Vow, p.400.
- **JUDG 11:34 [DEMONIC]** Jephthah's daughter becomes the victim of his vow

DEMONIC

for I have given my word to Yahweh and cannot take it back."

36 "My father," she replied, "you have given your word to Yahweh. Do to me as you have said, for Yahweh has avenged you of your enemies, the Ammonites." 37 She also said to her father, "Let me do this one thing: Let me wander for two months through the mountains with my friends and mourn my virginity."

38 "Go," he said. And he sent her away for two months.

So she left with her friends and mourned her virginity upon the mountains. 39 After two months, she returned to her father, and he did to her as he had vowed. And she had never had relations with a man.

So it has become a custom in Israel 40 that each year the young women of Israel go out for four days to lament the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

JEPHTHAH'S VOW

What Happened

JUDGES 11:29 TO 40 · LEVITICUS 27:1 TO 8 · DEUTERONOMY 12:31 · HEBREWS 11:32

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

The Spirit of Yahweh came upon Jephthah, 11:29. Then he vowed that if God gave him the victory, whatever came out the door of his house to meet him would belong to Yahweh, and he would offer it up as a burnt offering, 11:31. He won. His only child, his daughter, came out dancing, 11:34. He tore his clothes. She told him to keep his word, asked for two months to mourn her virginity with her friends, and then he did to her as he had vowed, 11:35 to 39.

THE WORDS OF THE VOW

The Hebrew can mean whatever or whoever comes out. Some say he expected an animal, since families often kept animals in the house. Others say only a person would come out to greet a returning hero.

JUDG 11:39 [NOTE] He did to her as he had vowed. Most ancient readers took this to mean he sacrificed her; others say she was given to God's service for life and never married. See Jephthah's Vow in the Big Question pages, p.400.

WHAT GOD'S LAW SAID

God hated child sacrifice and banned it, Leviticus 18:21, Deuteronomy 12:31 and 18:10. A person vowed to God could be bought back with silver, Leviticus 27:1 to 8. Jephthah never asked.

A YEARLY CUSTOM

Every year the young women of Israel went out for four days to remember Jephthah's daughter, 11:40.

HEBREWS 11:32

The New Testament names Jephthah among the heroes of faith, with Gideon, Barak and Samson. It praises his faith, not his vow.

Every View

JUDGES 11:31 · 11:37 TO 40 · EXODUS 38:8 · 1 SAMUEL 1:11

VIEW 1: HE SACRIFICED HER

Its supporters call this the plain reading. It was held by the Jewish historian Josephus, about AD 93, the old Jewish Aramaic Targum, the early church writers, and Martin Luther, and by most scholars today. A burnt offering means a burnt offering, and he did to her as he had vowed, 11:39. The yearly mourning fits a death. The book is showing how far Israel had fallen.

VIEW 2: SHE SERVED GOD FOR LIFE

Some Jewish teachers in the Middle Ages, like David Kimhi, and some Christian scholars since, say she was given to God's service and never married. She mourned her virginity, not her death, 11:37 to 38. The verse adds that she never had relations with a man, 11:39, which matters most if she lived. Women served at the tabernacle door, Exodus 38:8, and Hannah gave Samuel to God for life, 1 Samuel 1:11.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

The first side says the Hebrew of the vow, a burnt offering, cannot mean a life of service, and that nothing in Israel's law set apart women for lifelong virginity. The second side says God would not have let a man He used be praised in Hebrews after a human sacrifice, and that the and in the vow can mean or.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

God never asked for this vow. Rash

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

promises to God are dangerous, Ecclesiastes 5:2 to 5. Judges records what people did, not always what God wanted. A father lost his only child because he made a deal God never asked for.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

The tribe of Ephraim is mad that it was not invited to the battle, again. Jephthah fights them, and his men guard the Jordan with a password test. Say Shibboleth. If you say Sibboleth, you lose. Then three quick judges, two of them with a lot of kids, and one with seventy donkeys.

JEPHTHAH DEFEATS EPHRAIM

1 Then the men of Ephraim assembled and
crossed the Jordan to Zaphon. They said
to Jephthah, "Why have you crossed over
to fight the Ammonites without calling us
to go with you? We will burn your house
down with you inside!"

2 But Jephthah replied, "My people and I
had a serious conflict with the Ammonites, and when I called, you did not
save me out of their hands. 3 When I saw
that you would not save me, I risked my
life and crossed over to the Ammonites,
and Yahweh delivered them into my hand.
Why then have you come today to fight
against me?"

4 Jephthah then gathered all the men of
Gilead and fought against Ephraim. And
the men of Gilead struck them down because the Ephraimites had said, "You
Gileadites are fugitives in Ephraim, living
in the territories of Ephraim and Manasseh."

5 The Gileadites captured the fords of the
Jordan leading to Ephraim, and whenever
a fugitive from Ephraim would say, "Let
me cross over," the Gileadites would ask
him, "Are you an Ephraimite?"

If he answered, "No," 6 they told him,
"Please say Shibboleth."

If he said, "Sibboleth," because he could
not pronounce it correctly, they seized
him and killed him at the fords of the Jordan. So at that time 42,000 Ephraimites
were killed.

7 Jephthah judged Israel six years, and
when he died, he was buried in one of the
cities of Gilead.

IBZAN, ELON, AND ABDON

8 After Jephthah, Ibzan of Bethlehem
judged Israel. 9 He had thirty sons, as well
as thirty daughters whom he gave in marriage to men outside his clan; and for his
sons he brought back thirty wives from
elsewhere. Ibzan judged Israel seven
years. 10 Then Ibzan died, and he was
buried in Bethlehem.

11 After Ibzan, Elon the Zebulunite judged
Israel ten years. 12 Then Elon the Zebulunite died, and he was buried in Aijalon in
the land of Zebulun.

13 After Elon, Abdon son of Hillel, from Pirathon, judged Israel. 14 He had forty sons
and thirty grandsons, who rode on seventy donkeys. And he judged Israel eight
years. 15 Then Abdon son of Hillel, from Pirathon, died, and he was buried at Pirathon in Ephraim, in the hill country of the
Amalekites.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

An angel tells a woman who could not have children that she will have a son, a Nazirite from birth: no wine, no razor, nothing unclean. Her husband Manoah wants to hear it for himself. The angel will not tell his name, and goes up to heaven in the flame of the altar.

THE BIRTH OF SAMSON // NUMBERS 6:1–21

1 Again the Israelites did evil in the sight of
Yahweh, so He delivered them into the
hand of the Philistines for forty years.

2 Now there was a man from Zorah named
Manoah, from the clan of the Danites,
whose wife was barren and had no children. 3 The angel of Yahweh appeared to
the woman and said to her, "It is true that
you are barren and have no children; but

JUDG 12:6 [NOTE] SHIBBOLETH means an ear of grain or a stream. The men of Ephraim could not say the sh sound. Today a shibboleth is any word or habit that shows which group you belong to.

JUDG 13:2 [FULFILLS] Dan would provide justice for his people ← GEN 49:16 · MEDIUM p.114

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

you will conceive and give birth to a son. 4 Now please be careful not to drink wine or strong drink, and not to eat anything unclean. 5 For behold, you will conceive and give birth to a son. And no razor shall touch his head, because the boy will be a Nazirite to God from the womb, and he will begin the deliverance of Israel from the hand of the Philistines."

6 So the woman went and told her husband, "A man of God came to me. His appearance was like the angel of God, exceedingly awesome. I did not ask him where he came from, and he did not tell me his name. 7 But he said to me, 'Behold, you will conceive and give birth to a son. Now, therefore, do not drink wine or strong drink, and do not eat anything unclean, because the boy will be a Nazirite to God from the womb until the day of his death.'"

8 Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh, "Please, O Lord, let the man of God You sent us come to us again to teach us how to raise the boy who is to be born."

9 And God listened to the voice of Manoah, and the angel of God returned to the woman as she was sitting in the field; but her husband Manoah was not with her. 10 The woman ran quickly to tell her husband, "Behold, the man who came to me the other day has reappeared!"

11 So Manoah got up and followed his wife. When he came to the man, he asked, "Are you the man who spoke to my wife?"

"I am," he said.

12 Then Manoah asked, "When your words come to pass, what will be the boy's rule of life and mission?"

13 So the angel of Yahweh answered Manoah, "Your wife is to do everything I told her. 14 She must not eat anything that comes from the vine, nor drink any wine or strong drink, nor eat anything unclean. She must do everything I have commanded her."

15 "Please stay here," Manoah said to the angel of Yahweh, "and we will prepare a young goat for you."

16 And the angel of Yahweh replied, "Even if I stay, I will not eat your food. But if you prepare a burnt offering, offer it to Yahweh." For Manoah did not know that it was the angel of Yahweh.

17 Then Manoah said to the angel of Yahweh, "What is your name, so that we may honor you when your word comes to pass?"

18 "Why do you ask my name," said the angel of Yahweh, "since it is beyond comprehension?"

19 Then Manoah took a young goat and a grain offering and offered them on a rock to Yahweh. And as Manoah and his wife looked on, Yahweh did a marvelous thing. 20 When the flame went up from the altar to the sky, the angel of Yahweh ascended in the flame.

When Manoah and his wife saw this, they fell facedown to the ground. 21 And when the angel of Yahweh did not appear again to Manoah and his wife, Manoah realized that it had been the angel of Yahweh.

22 "We are going to die," he said to his wife, "for we have seen God!"

23 But his wife replied, "If Yahweh had intended to kill us, He would not have accepted the burnt offering and the grain offering from our hands, nor would He have shown us all these things or spoken to us this way."

24 So the woman gave birth to a son and named him Samson. The boy grew, and Yahweh blessed him. 25 And the Spirit of

- **JUDG 13:3 [MIRACLE]** The angel of Yahweh appears to Manoah's wife
- **JUDG 13:5 [PROPHECY]** Angel foretold Samson would be a Nazirite from birth and begin Israel's deliverance from Philistines → JUDG 14:4; JUDG 15:14-15; JUDG 16:30 p.403
- **JUDG 13:5 [NOTE]** THE NAZIRITE VOW. The rules are in Numbers 6:1 to 21. Most Nazirite vows were for a short time and chosen by the person. Samson's was for life and chosen by God before he was born. See the Big Question pages Samson, p.403.
- **JUDG 13:18 [NOTE]** Beyond comprehension is the Hebrew word peli, wonderful. It comes from the same root as Wonderful Counselor in Isaiah 9:6, a name for the coming Messiah. The King James says secret.
- **JUDG 13:20 [MIRACLE]** The angel goes up in the flame from the altar
- **JUDG 13:22 [NOTE]** Manoah said, We have seen God. The man who would not give his name had gone up in the flame of the altar, 13:20.
- **JUDG 13:24 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:32 p.1993

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

Yahweh began to stir him at Mahaneh-dan, between Zorah and Eshtaol.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SAMSON

The Nazirite Vow

JUDGES 13 TO 16 · NUMBERS 6:1 TO 21

THE RULES

A Nazirite was a person set apart to God. Numbers 6 gave three rules: no wine or anything from grapes, no razor on the head, and no going near a dead body. Most vows lasted a set time, and the person chose it.

SAMSON WAS DIFFERENT

Samson's vow came from God before he was born, and it was for life, 13:5 and 13:7. Even his mother had to stay away from wine and anything unclean while she was pregnant, 13:4. Samuel and John the Baptist were also set apart for God from birth, 1 Samuel 1:11 and Luke 1:15.

WAS THE STRENGTH IN HIS HAIR?

The Bible says the Spirit of Yahweh rushed on Samson, 14:6, 14:19 and 15:14. When his hair was cut, the text says Yahweh had left him, 16:20. The hair was the last sign of his vow. When his hair grew back he prayed, and God answered, 16:22 and 16:28.

HOW MANY RULES DID HE BREAK?

Many think he broke all three. The honey from the lion's carcass, 14:8 to 9. The wedding feast, a drinking party, 14:10. And the haircut, 16:19. Others say the dead body rule was about people, and the text never says he drank. All agree the haircut broke the vow.

Hero or Warning?

JUDGES 14:4 · 16:28 TO 30 · HEBREWS 11:32

VIEW 1: A HERO OF FAITH

Hebrews 11:32 names Samson among the heroes of faith. He fought the Philistines alone when his own tribe handed him over, 15:12. He died praying, and he killed more Philistines in his death than in his life, 16:30. Many Christians see in his death a picture of Christ.

VIEW 2: A WARNING

Samson never led an army, chased women, 14:2, 16:1 and 16:4, and fought mostly for revenge, 15:7 and 15:11. He kept playing with his secret until it was gone. He did not even know that Yahweh had left him, 16:20.

VIEW 3: BOTH

God used a deeply flawed man. His parents did not know that God was at work in his choices, seeking an occasion against the Philistines, 14:4. Samson's story shows God's patience more than Samson's goodness.

SAMSON AND JESUS

Many see a picture of Jesus in Samson. An angel announced both births. Both were set apart from the womb. Both were handed over by their own people, 15:12 to 13, and sold for silver, 16:5. Both were mocked by their enemies, 16:25, and won the victory in their death. The difference matters too. Samson prayed for revenge for his two eyes, 16:28; Jesus prayed, Father, forgive them, Luke 23:34.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Strength is a gift, not a reward. Samson's power came from God, and when he finally knew he was weak, he asked God for help, and God answered, 16:28.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Samson sees a Philistine woman and says, Get her for me. On the way, he tears a lion apart with his bare hands. At the wedding feast he tells a riddle about it, the guests cheat by pressuring his bride, and Samson pays his bet with the clothes of thirty dead Philistines.

SAMSON'S MARRIAGE

1 One day Samson went down to Timnah,
where he saw a young Philistine woman. 2
So he returned and told his father and
mother, "I have seen a daughter of the
Philistines in Timnah. Now get her for me
as a wife."

3 But his father and mother replied, "Can't
you find a young woman among your relatives or among any of our people? Must
you go to the uncircumcised Philistines to
get a wife?"

But Samson told his father, "Get her for
me, for she is pleasing to my eyes." 4

MIRACLES

(Now his father and mother did not know this was from Yahweh, who was seeking an occasion to move against the Philistines; for at that time the Philistines were ruling over Israel.)

5 Then Samson went down to Timnah with his father and mother and came to the vineyards of Timnah. Suddenly a young lion came roaring at him, 6 and the Spirit of Yahweh came powerfully upon him, and he tore the lion apart with his bare hands as one would tear a young goat. But he did not tell his father or mother what he had done. 7 Then Samson continued on his way down and spoke to the woman, because she was pleasing to his eyes.

SAMSON'S RIDDLE

8 When Samson returned later to take her, he left the road to see the lion's carcass, and in it was a swarm of bees, along with their honey. 9 So he scooped some honey into his hands and ate it as he went along. And when he returned to his father and mother, he gave some to them and they ate it. But he did not tell them that he had taken the honey from the lion's carcass.

10 Then his father went to visit the woman, and Samson prepared a feast there, as was customary for the bridegroom. 11 And when the Philistines saw him, they selected thirty men to accompany him.

12 "Let me tell you a riddle," Samson said to them. "If you can solve it for me within the seven days of the feast, I will give you thirty linen garments and thirty sets of clothes. 13 But if you cannot solve it, you must give me thirty linen garments and thirty sets of clothes."

"Tell us your riddle," they replied. "Let us hear it."

14 So he said to them:

"Out of the eater came something to eat,
and out of the strong came something sweet."

For three days they were unable to explain the riddle. 15 So on the fourth day they said to Samson's wife, "Entice your husband to explain the riddle to us, or we will burn you and your father's household to death. Did you invite us here to rob us?"

16 Then Samson's wife came to him, weeping, and said, "You hate me! You do not really love me! You have posed to my people a riddle, but have not explained it to me."

"Look," he said, "I have not even explained it to my father or mother, so why should I explain it to you?"

17 She wept the whole seven days of the feast, and finally on the seventh day, because she had pressed him so much, he told her the answer. And in turn she explained the riddle to her people.

18 Before sunset on the seventh day, the men of the city said to Samson:

"What is sweeter than honey?
And what is stronger than a lion?"

So he said to them:

"If you had not plowed with my heifer,
you would not have solved my riddle!"

19 Then the Spirit of Yahweh came mightily upon him, and he went down to Ashkelon, killed thirty of their men, took their apparel, and gave their clothes to those who had solved the riddle. And burning with anger, Samson returned to his father's house, 20 and his wife was given to one of the men who had accompanied him.

- **JUDG 14:4 [FULFILLS]** Angel foretold Samson would be a Nazirite from birth and begin Israel's deliverance from Philistines ← JUDG 13:5 p.402
- **JUDG 14:4 [NOTE]** Samson's choices were his own, but God was at work through them, seeking an occasion against the Philistines, who ruled Israel.
- **JUDG 14:5 [MIRACLE]** Samson tears a lion apart by the Spirit of Yahweh
- **JUDG 14:9 [NOTE]** Nazirites had to stay away from dead bodies, Numbers 6:6. Many think honey from a lion's carcass broke that rule; others say the rule was about dead people. Samson did not tell his parents where the honey came from.
- **JUDG 14:10 [NOTE]** The Hebrew word for feast is mishteh, a drinking party. Many think wine flowed, which a Nazirite was never to touch.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Samson's wife was given to another man, so he ties torches to the tails of three hundred foxes and burns the Philistine fields. Things escalate. His own people hand him over tied up, the ropes melt like flax, and he kills a thousand men with a donkey's jawbone.

SAMSON'S REVENGE

1 Later on, at the time of the wheat harvest, Samson took a young goat and went to visit his wife. "I want to go to my wife in her room," he said. But her father would not let him enter.

2 "I was sure that you thoroughly hated her," said her father, "so I gave her to one of the men who accompanied you. Is not her younger sister more beautiful than she? Please take her instead."

3 Samson said to them, "This time I will be blameless in doing harm to the Philistines."

4 Then Samson went out and caught three hundred foxes. And he took torches, turned the foxes tail-to-tail, and fastened a torch between each pair of tails. 5 Then he lit the torches and released the foxes into the standing grain of the Philistines, burning up the piles of grain and the standing grain, as well as the vineyards and olive groves.

6 "Who did this?" the Philistines demanded.

"It was Samson, the son-in-law of the Timnite," they were told. "For his wife was given to his companion."

So the Philistines went up and burned her and her father to death.

7 And Samson told them, "Because you have done this, I will not rest until I have taken vengeance upon you." 8 And he struck them ruthlessly with a great slaughter, and then went down and stayed in the cave at the rock of Etam.

9 Then the Philistines went up, camped in Judah, and deployed themselves near the town of Lehi.

10 "Why have you attacked us?" said the men of Judah.

The Philistines replied, "We have come to arrest Samson and pay him back for what he has done to us."

11 In response, three thousand men of Judah went to the cave at the rock of Etam, and they asked Samson, "Do you not realize that the Philistines rule over us? What have you done to us?"

"I have done to them what they did to me," he replied.

12 But they said to him, "We have come down to arrest you and hand you over to the Philistines."

Samson replied, "Swear to me that you will not kill me yourselves."

13 "No," they answered, "we will not kill you, but we will tie you up securely and hand you over to them." So they bound him with two new ropes and led him up from the rock.

14 When Samson arrived in Lehi, the Philistines came out shouting against him. And the Spirit of Yahweh came mightily upon him. The ropes on his arms became like burnt flax, and the bonds broke loose from his hands. 15 He found the fresh jawbone of a donkey, reached out his hand and took it, and struck down a thousand men. 16 Then Samson said:

"With the jawbone of a donkey
I have piled them into heaps.
With the jawbone of a donkey
I have slain a thousand men."

17 And when Samson had finished speaking, he cast the jawbone from his hand; and he named that place Ramath-lehi.

18 And being very thirsty, Samson cried out to Yahweh, "You have accomplished this great deliverance through Your servant.

JUDG 15:4 [NOTE] The Hebrew word shual can mean fox or jackal. Jackals run in packs, so many think they were jackals.

JUDG 15:14 [MIRACLE] Samson strikes down a thousand men with a jawbone

JUDG 15:14 [FULFILLS] Angel foretold Samson would be a Nazirite from birth and begin Israel's deliverance from Philistines ← JUDG 13:5 p.402

THE HEART MIRACLES

Must I now die of thirst and fall into the hands of the uncircumcised?"

19 So God opened up the hollow place in Lehi, and water came out of it. When Samson drank, his strength returned, and he was revived. That is why he named it En-hakkore, and it remains in Lehi to this day.

20 And Samson judged Israel for twenty years in the days of the Philistines.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Samson carries off the city gates of Gaza. Then he meets Delilah. Three times she tries to learn his secret, three times he lies, and the fourth time he tells her the truth. They shave him, blind him and put him to work grinding grain. His hair grows back, and he brings down Dagon's temple.

SAMSON ESCAPES GAZA

1 One day Samson went to Gaza, where he saw a prostitute and went in to spend the night with her.

2 When the Gazites heard that Samson was there, they surrounded that place and lay in wait for him all night at the city gate. They were quiet throughout the night, saying, "Let us wait until dawn; then we will kill him."

3 But Samson lay there only until midnight, when he got up, took hold of the doors of the city gate and both gateposts, and pulled them out, bar and all. Then he put them on his shoulders and took them to the top of the mountain overlooking Hebron.

SAMSON AND DELILAH

4 Some time later, Samson fell in love with a woman in the Valley of Sorek, whose name was Delilah. 5 The lords of the Philistines went to her and said, "Entice him and find out the source of his great strength and how we can overpower him to tie him up and subdue him. Then each one of us will give you 27½ pounds of silver."

6 So Delilah said to Samson, "Please tell me the source of your great strength and how you can be tied up and subdued."

7 Samson told her, "If they tie me up with seven fresh bowstrings that have not been dried, I will become as weak as any other man."

8 So the lords of the Philistines brought her seven fresh bowstrings that had not been dried, and she tied him up with them. 9 While the men were hidden in her room, she called out, "Samson, the Philistines are here!"

But he snapped the bowstrings like a strand of yarn seared by a flame. So the source of his strength remained unknown.

10 Then Delilah said to Samson, "You have mocked me and lied to me! Now please tell me how you can be tied up."

11 He replied, "If they tie me up with new ropes that have never been used, I will become as weak as any other man."

12 So Delilah took new ropes, tied him up with them, and called out, "Samson, the Philistines are here!"

But while the men were hidden in her room, he snapped the ropes off his arms like they were threads.

13 Then Delilah said to Samson, "You have mocked me and lied to me all along! Tell me how you can be tied up."

He told her, "If you weave the seven braids of my head into the web of a loom and tighten it with a pin, I will become as weak as any other man."

14 So while he slept, Delilah took the seven braids of his hair and wove them into the web. with a pin and called to him, "Samson, the Philistines are here!"

But he awoke from his sleep and pulled out the pin with the loom and the web.

DELILAH LEARNS THE SECRET

15 "How can you say, 'I love you,'" she asked, "when your heart is not with me? This is the third time you have mocked me

- **JUDG 15:18 [MIRACLE]** God opens a hollow place and water flows for Samson
- **JUDG 16:3 [MIRACLE]** Samson carries off the gates of Gaza
- **JUDG 16:4 [NOTE]** Delilah is never called a Philistine. She lived in the Valley of Sorek, on the border between Israel and the Philistines. Her name may be from the Hebrew for to weaken.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

and failed to reveal to me the source of your great strength!"

16 Finally, after she had pressed him daily with her words and pleaded until he was sick to death, 17 Samson told her all that was in his heart: "My hair has never been cut, because I have been a Nazirite to God from my mother's womb. If I am shaved, my strength will leave me, and I will become as weak as any other man."

18 When Delilah realized that he had revealed to her all that was in his heart, she sent this message to the lords of the Philistines: "Come up once more, for he has revealed to me all that is in his heart."

Then the lords of the Philistines came to her, bringing the money in their hands.

19 And having lulled him to sleep on her lap, she called a man to shave off the seven braids of his head. In this way she began to subdue him, and his strength left him. 20 Then she called out, "Samson, the Philistines are here!"

When Samson awoke from his sleep, he thought, "I will escape as I did before and shake myself free." But he did not know that Yahweh had departed from him.

21 Then the Philistines seized him, gouged out his eyes, and brought him down to Gaza, where he was bound with bronze shackles and forced to grind grain in the prison.

22 However, the hair of his head began to grow back after it had been shaved.

SAMSON'S VENGEANCE AND DEATH

23 Now the lords of the Philistines gathered together to offer a great sacrifice to their god Dagon. They rejoiced and said, "Our god has delivered Samson our enemy into our hands."

24 And when the people saw him, they praised their god, saying:

"Our god has delivered into our hands
our enemy who destroyed our land
and multiplied our dead."

25 And while their hearts were merry, they said, "Call for Samson to entertain us." So they called Samson out of the prison to entertain them. And they stationed him between the pillars.

26 Samson said to the servant who held his hand, "Lead me where I can feel the pillars supporting the temple, so I can lean against them."

27 Now the temple was full of men and women; all the lords of the Philistines were there, and about three thousand men and women were on the roof watching Samson entertain them.

28 Then Samson called out to Yahweh: "O Lord Yahweh, please remember me. Strengthen me, O God, just once more, so that with one vengeful blow I may pay back the Philistines for my two eyes."

29 And Samson reached out for the two central pillars supporting the temple. Bracing himself against them with his right hand on one pillar and his left hand on the other, 30 Samson said, "Let me die with the Philistines."

Then he pushed with all his might, and the temple fell on the lords and all the people in it. So in his death he killed more than he had killed in his life.

31 Then Samson's brothers and his father's family came down, carried him back, and buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol in

- **JUDG 16:15 [HEART]** Delilah said Samson's heart was not with her, and he finally told her all that was in his heart. The secret he should have guarded cost him everything.
- **JUDG 16:17 [NOTE]** The strength was never in the hair. The Spirit of Yahweh came on Samson, 14:6, 14:19, 15:14. The hair was the sign of his vow, and when it was gone, Yahweh had left him, 16:20.
- **JUDG 16:20 [NOTABLE]** One of the saddest lines in the Bible. Samson kept playing with sin until the strength was gone, and he did not even notice.
- **JUDG 16:21 [NOTE]** Grinding grain at a mill was work for slaves and women. The strongest man in Israel was put to the lowest job.
- **JUDG 16:23 [DEMONIC]** The Philistines praise Dagon for capturing Samson
- **JUDG 16:23 [NOTE]** Dagon was once thought to be a fish god. Many scholars now link his name to dagan, the Hebrew word for grain. Dagon shows up again in 1 Samuel 5, in his temple at Ashdod.
- **JUDG 16:28 [MIRACLE]** God gives Samson strength one last time to bring down the temple
- **JUDG 16:29 [FIELD NOTES]** A Philistine temple dug at Tell Qasile had its roof resting on two central wooden pillars. See The Philistines Field Notes page, p.408.
- **JUDG 16:30 [DEMONIC]** Samson brings down the temple of Dagon
- **JUDG 16:30 [FULFILLS]** Angel foretold Samson would be a Nazirite from birth and begin Israel's deliverance from Philistines ← JUDG 13:5 p.402
- **JUDG 16:30 [NOTE]** Samson killed more Philistines in his death than in his life. Many Christians see a picture of Christ, whose greatest victory came through His death.

DEMONIC

the tomb of his father Manoah. And he had judged Israel twenty years.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE PHILISTINES, NO SIGN OF SAMSON

THE PHILISTINES

JUDGES 13:1 · 14 TO 16 · 16:23 TO 30 · AMOS 9:7



Philistine prisoners with their tall headdresses, carved on Ramesses III's temple at Medinet Habu, Egypt. Photo Rmih, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

Carvings on the walls of the temple of Pharaoh Ramesses III at Medinet Habu, near Luxor in Egypt. They show his war against the Sea Peoples, raiders from across the Mediterranean. One group is the Peleset, the Philistines, shown with tall headdresses.

HOW OLD IT IS

The battle was in the eighth year of Ramesses III, about 1177 BC. Soon after, the Philistines settled on the coast of Canaan, right in Samson's day by both dates for the judges.

WHO THE PHILISTINES WERE

The Bible says they came from Caphtor, Amos 9:7, probably Crete. Their five cities were Gaza, Ashkelon, Ashdod, Ekron and Gath, Joshua 13:3. Their pottery looks like Greek pottery, and they ate pork and even dogs. A 2019 DNA study of graves at Ashkelon found newcomers from southern Europe in the time of the judges.

A TEMPLE WITH TWO PILLARS

At Tell Qasile, in modern Tel Aviv, Amihai Mazar dug a Philistine temple from the 1000s BC. Its roof rested on two wooden pillars on stone bases, standing close together in the middle of the hall. It is the kind of building Judges 16:29 describes, though it is not the temple of Gaza.

DAGON

Dagon was worshiped in Gaza, 16:23, and at Ashdod, where his statue fell before the ark, 1 Samuel 5:1 to 5. He was an old god of the region, probably a grain god, that the Philistines took up.

THE BIG DEBATE

Genesis 21 and 26 name Philistines in Abraham's and Isaac's day, centuries before the Sea Peoples. Some say the writer used the later name for the people living there; others think earlier groups from the Aegean were already on the coast.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing names Samson. It shows that the Philistines were real newcomers who ruled the coast, just when Judges says they ruled over Israel, 14:4.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

A man named Micah steals about 27 pounds of silver from his mother, gives it back, and she has an idol made from it. Then he hires a traveling Levite as his own private priest. Everyone did what was right in his own eyes, and it shows.

MICAH'S IDOLATRY

1 Now a man named Micah from the hill
country of Ephraim 2 said to his mother,
"The 27½ pounds of silver that were taken
from you and about which I heard you ut-
ter a curse—I have the silver here with
me; I took it."

Then his mother said, "Blessed be my son
by Yahweh!"

3 And when he had returned the 27½
pounds of silver to his mother, she said, "I
wholly dedicate the silver to Yahweh for
my son's benefit, to make a graven image
and a molten idol. Therefore I will now re-
turn it to you."

JUDG 16:31 [FULFILLS] Dan would provide justice for his people ← GEN 49:16 · MEDIUM p.114

JUDG 17:1 [NOTE] CHAPTERS 17 TO 21 are not in time order. Moses' grandson is a priest in 18:30, and Aaron's grandson Phinehas is high priest in 20:28, so these stories probably happened early in the time of the judges.

JUDG 17:3 [DEMONIC] Micah's mother makes an idol and he sets up a shrine

DEMONIC NOTABLE

4 So he returned the silver to his mother,
and she took five pounds of silver and
gave them to a silversmith, who made
them into a graven image and a molten
idol. And they were placed in the house of
Micah.

5 Now this man Micah had a shrine, and he
made an ephod and some household
idols, and ordained one of his sons as his
priest. 6 In those days there was no king in
Israel; everyone did what was right in his
own eyes.

7 And there was a young Levite from Beth-
lehem in Judah who had been residing
within the clan of Judah. 8 This man left
the city of Bethlehem in Judah to settle
where he could find a place. And as he
traveled, he came to Micah's house in the
hill country of Ephraim.

9 "Where are you from?" Micah asked him.

"I am a Levite from Bethlehem in Judah,"
he replied, "and I am on my way to settle
wherever I can find a place."

10 "Stay with me," Micah said to him, "and
be my father and priest, and I will give you
four ounces of silver per year, a suit of
clothes, and your provisions."

So the Levite went in 11 and agreed to stay
with him, and the young man became like
a son to Micah.

12 Micah ordained the Levite, and the
young man became his priest and lived in
his house. 13 Then Micah said, "Now I
know that Yahweh will be good to me, be-
cause a Levite has become my priest."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

The tribe of Dan is looking for land. Its spies stop at Micah's house, then find Laish, a quiet town far to the north. Six hundred Danites march north, steal Micah's idol and his priest on the way, burn Laish and rename it Dan.

THE DANITES SETTLE IN LAISH

1 In those days there was no king in Israel,
and the tribe of the Danites was looking
for territory to occupy. For up to that time
they had not come into an inheritance
among the tribes of Israel. 2 So the Danites
sent out five men from their clans, men of
valor from Zorah and Eshtaol, to spy out
the land and explore it. "Go and explore
the land," they told them.

The men entered the hill country of
Ephraim and came to the house of Micah,
where they spent the night. 3 And while
they were near Micah's house, they rec-
ognized the voice of the young Levite; so
they went over and asked him, "Who
brought you here? What are you doing in
this place? Why are you here?"

4 "Micah has done this and that for me,"
he replied, "and he has hired me to be his
priest."

5 Then they said to him, "Please inquire of
God to determine whether we will have a
successful journey."

6 And the priest told them, "Go in peace.
Yahweh is watching over your journey."

7 So the five men departed and came to
Laish, where they saw that the people
were living securely, like the Sidonians,
quiet and unsuspecting. There was noth-
ing lacking in the land and no oppressive
ruler. And they were far away from the
Sidonians and had no alliance with any-
one.

8 When the men returned to Zorah and Es-
htaol, their brothers asked them, "What
did you find?"

9 They answered, "Come on, let us go up
against them, for we have seen the land,
and it is very good. Why would you fail to
act? Do not hesitate to go there and take
possession of the land! 10 When you enter,
you will come to an unsuspecting people
and a spacious land, for God has deliv-
ered it into your hand. It is a place where
nothing on earth is lacking."

JUDG 17:6 [NOTABLE] The theme of the whole book, said twice. With no king and no shared standard, everyone made up their own rules, and chapters 17 to 21 show where that leads.

JUDG 17:6 [NOTE] NO KING. This line, or part of it, shows up four times, 17:6, 18:1, 19:1 and 21:25. It ties the last five chapters together and points ahead to Israel's kings.

JUDG 17:12 [DEMONIC] Micah hires a Levite as priest of his idol shrine

JUDG 18:1 [FIELD NOTES] The mud brick gate of Laish still stands. See The Gate of Laish Field Notes page, p.411.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

11 So six hundred Danites departed from
Zorah and Eshtaol, armed with weapons
of war. 12 They went up and camped at
Kiriath-jearim in Judah. That is why the
place west of Kiriath-jearim is called Ma-
haneh-dan to this day. 13 And from there
they traveled to the hill country of Ephraim
and came to Micah's house.

THE DANITES TAKE MICAH'S IDOLS

14 Then the five men who had gone to spy
out the land of Laish said to their brothers,
"Did you know that one of these houses
has an ephod, household gods, a graven
image, and a molten idol? Now think about
what you should do."

15 So they turned aside there and went to
the home of the young Levite, the house
of Micah, and greeted him.

16 The six hundred Danites stood at the
entrance of the gate, armed with their
weapons of war. 17 And the five men who
had gone to spy out the land went inside
and took the graven image, the ephod, the
household idols, and the molten idol,
while the priest stood at the entrance of
the gate with the six hundred armed men.

18 When they entered Micah's house and
took the graven image, the ephod, the
household idols, and the molten idol, the
priest said to them, "What are you doing?"

19 "Be quiet," they told him. "Put your hand
over your mouth and come with us and be
a father and a priest to us. Is it better for
you to be a priest for the house of one
person or a priest for a tribe and family in
Israel?"

20 So the priest was glad and took the
ephod, the household idols, and the
graven image, and went with the people.
21 Putting their small children, their live-
stock, and their possessions in front of
them, they turned and departed.

22 After they were some distance from
Micah's house, the men in the houses
near Micah's house mobilized and over-
took the Danites. 23 When they called out
after them, the Danites turned to face
them and said to Micah, "What is the mat-
ter with you that you have called out such
a company?"

24 He replied, "You took the gods I had
made, and my priest, and went away.
What else do I have? How can you say to
me, 'What is the matter with you?'"

25 The Danites said to him, "Do not raise
your voice against us, or angry men will
attack you, and you and your family will
lose your lives."

26 So the Danites went on their way, and
Micah turned to go back home, because
he saw that they were too strong for him.

27 After they had taken Micah's idols and
his priest, they went to Laish, to a quiet
and unsuspecting people, and they struck
them with their swords and burned down
the city. 28 There was no one to deliver
them, because the city was far from Sidon
and had no alliance with anyone; it was in
a valley near Beth-rehob.

And the Danites rebuilt the city and lived
there. 29 They named it Dan, after their
forefather Dan, who was born to
Israel—though the city was formerly
named Laish.

30 The Danites set up idols for themselves,
and Jonathan son of Gershom, the son of
Moses, and his sons were priests for the
tribe of Dan until the day of the captivity
of the land.

31 So they set up for themselves Micah's
graven image, and it was there the whole
time the house of God was in Shiloh.

- **JUDG 18:14 [DEMONIC]** The Danites steal Micah's idols and his priest
- **JUDG 18:24 [DEMONIC]** Micah cries that they took the gods he made
- **JUDG 18:27 [DEMONIC]** The Danites carry Micah's idols to Laish
- **JUDG 18:27 [FULFILLS]** Dan would be like a snake by the road that strikes suddenly ← GEN 49:17 · MEDIUM p.114
- **JUDG 18:27 [FULFILLS]** Dan is a lion's whelp; he shall leap from Bashan ← DT 33:22 · MEDIUM p.331
- **JUDG 18:30 [DEMONIC]** The Danites set up Micah's idol at Dan
- **JUDG 18:30 [TEXT]** Son of Moses. The Hebrew text writes the name Moses with a small raised letter n added, so it reads Manasseh. Jewish tradition says this was done to protect Moses' name from the shame of his grandson's idol shrine. The King James says Manasseh; many modern Bibles say Moses.
- **JUDG 18:31 [FIELD NOTES]** Shiloh has been dug since the 1920s. See the Shiloh Field Notes page, p.412.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

One of the darkest chapters in the Bible. A Levite brings his concubine home from Bethlehem, and they stop for the night in Gibeah of Benjamin. The men of the town act like Sodom. In the morning she lies at the door and does not answer, and the Levite sends pieces of her body to the twelve tribes. It is meant to shock, and it does.

THE CRIME OF THE BENJAMITES // GENESIS 19:1–11

1 Now in those days, when there was no
king in Israel, a Levite who lived in the re-
mote hill country of Ephraim took for him-
self a concubine from Bethlehem in Ju-
dah. 2 But she was unfaithful to him and
left him to return to her father's house in
Bethlehem in Judah.

After she had been there four months, 3
her husband got up and went after her to
speak kindly to her and bring her back,
taking his servant and a pair of donkeys.
So the girl brought him into her father's
house, and when her father saw him, he
gladly welcomed him. 4 His father-in-law,
the girl's father, persuaded him to stay, so
he remained with him three days, eating,
drinking, and lodging there.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE GATE, OLDER THAN THE DANITES

THE GATE OF LAISH

JUDGES 18:7 TO 29 · GENESIS 14:14 · 1 KINGS 12:29



The mud brick gate of Laish at Tel Dan, with its arch over the doorway. The wooden door frame and the shade roof are modern, added to protect it. Photo Hanay, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A city gate built of mud bricks, with an arched doorway, at Tel Dan in the far north of Israel, beside one of the springs of the Jordan River. Before the tribe of Dan took the city it was called Laish, 18:29. It is one of the oldest arched gates in the world still standing.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1750 BC, in the Middle Bronze Age, centuries before the Danites came. The gate was soon buried inside the huge earth rampart around the city, and that is why its mud bricks survived.

WHERE AND WHEN DUG

Avraham Biran dug Tel Dan for over thirty years, starting in 1966. His team uncovered the gate in 1979. It has been restored and is now kept under a shade roof.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Laish was a strong, rich city with big walls. Judges 18:7 says its people lived quiet and unsuspecting, far from the Sidonians, with no alliance with anyone.

THE BIG DEBATE

Biran found that in the 1100s BC a new kind of village grew up on top of the old city, full of pits for storing grain. He linked that change to the Danites. Others are not sure who lived in that village. The gate itself was already buried, so the Danites never walked through it.

LATER AT DAN

King Jeroboam set up a golden calf at Dan, 1 Kings 12:29, and the platform of his high place has been dug there. A stone found at Dan in 1993 names the House of David, one of the first mentions of King David outside the Bible.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing from Laish names the Danites or Micah's idol. It shows that Laish was real, was where Judges puts it, and was later called Dan.

JUDG 19:1 [NOTE] A HARD CHAPTER. Chapters 19 to 21 tell the worst things in the book, on purpose. See the Big Question pages The Levite's Concubine, p.413. A concubine was a wife of lower rank.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SITE, DEBATED FOR THE TABERNACLE SPOT

SHILOH

JOSHUA 18:1 · JUDGES 18:31 · 21:19 TO 21 · 1 SAMUEL 1 TO 4 · JEREMIAH 7:12



Ruined stone walls on the slope of Tel Shiloh. Photo Deror Avi, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Tel Shiloh, Khirbet Seilun in Arabic, a hill about 20 miles north of Jerusalem. The tabernacle stood here from Joshua's day until the time of Eli and young Samuel, Joshua 18:1 and 1 Samuel 1 to 4.

HOW WE KNOW IT IS SHILOH

Judges 21:19 says it is north of Bethel, east of the road from Bethel to Shechem, and south of Lebonah. The ruins are right there, and the Arabic name Seilun keeps the old name.

HOW OLD IT IS

People first settled here about 1750 BC. Big stone walls were built in the Middle Bronze Age. The town was an Israelite worship center in the time of the judges, and it was destroyed by fire about 1050 BC. Later, Byzantine Christians built churches there.

WHERE AND WHEN DUG

A Danish team led by Hans Kjaer, 1926 to 1932. Israel Finkelstein, 1981 to 1984. Scott Stripling and the Associates for Biblical Research, from 2017.

WHAT WAS FOUND

Finkelstein found buildings full of storage jars from the 1100s BC, burned about 1050 BC. Many link the fire to the Philistines, after they took the ark, 1 Samuel 4. Jeremiah 7:12 says, Go now to the place in Shiloh, and see what I did to it. Stripling's team reports animal bones mostly from the right side, the priests' share in Leviticus 7:32, and pieces that may be from horned altars.

THE BIG DEBATE

Where did the tabernacle stand? Some point to a flat area on the north side of the hill, about the right size, with ledges cut in the rock. Others say no one can tell where a tent stood. Many of the newest finds are not fully published yet.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

A tent leaves no walls. It shows that Shiloh was where the Bible says, that it was busy in the time of the judges, and that it burned.

5 On the fourth day, they got up early in
the morning and prepared to depart, but
the girl's father said to his son-in-law,
"Refresh your heart with a morsel of
bread, and then you can go." 6 So they sat
down and the two of them ate and drank
together. Then the girl's father said to the
man, "Please agree to stay overnight and
let your heart be merry." 7 The man got up
to depart, but his father-in-law persuaded
him, so he stayed there that night.
8 On the fifth day, he got up early in the
morning to depart, but the girl's father
said, "Please refresh your heart." So they
waited until late afternoon and the two of
them ate. 9 When the man got up to depart
with his concubine and his servant, his fa-
ther-in-law, the girl's father, said to him,
"Look, the day is drawing to a close.
Please spend the night. See, the day is al-
most over. Spend the night here, that your
heart may be merry. Then you can get up
early tomorrow for your journey home."
10 But the man was unwilling to spend the
night. He got up and departed, and ar-
rived opposite Jebus (that is, Jerusalem),
with his two saddled donkeys and his
concubine. 11 When they were near Jebus
and the day was almost gone, the servant
said to his master, "Please, let us stop at
this Jebusite city and spend the night
here."
12 But his master replied, "We will not turn
aside to the city of foreigners, where
there are no Israelites. We will go on to

Gibeah." 13 He continued, "Come, let us try to reach one of these towns to spend the night in Gibeah or Ramah."

14 So they continued on their journey, and the sun set as they neared Gibeah in Benjamin. 15 They stopped to go in and lodge in Gibeah. The Levite went in and sat down in the city square, but no one would take them into his home for the night.

16 That evening an old man from the hill country of Ephraim, who was residing in Gibeah (the men of that place were Benjamites), came in from his work in the field. 17 When he looked up and saw the traveler in the city square, the old man asked, "Where are you going, and where have you come from?"

18 The Levite replied, "We are traveling from Bethlehem in Judah to the remote hill country of Ephraim, where I am from. I went to Bethlehem in Judah, and now I am going to the house of Yahweh; but no one has taken me into his home, 19 even though there is both straw and feed for our donkeys, and bread and wine for me and the maidservant and young man with me. There is nothing that we, your servants, lack."

20 "Peace to you," said the old man. "Let me supply everything you need. Only do not spend the night in the square." 21 So he brought him to his house and fed his donkeys. And they washed their feet and ate and drank.

22 While they were enjoying themselves, suddenly the wicked men of the city surrounded the house. Pounding on the door, they said to the old man who owned the house, "Bring out the man who came to your house, so we can have relations with him!"

23 The owner of the house went out and said to them, "No, my brothers, do not do this wicked thing! After all, this man is a guest in my house. Do not commit this outrage. 24 Look, let me bring out my virgin daughter and the man's concubine, and you can use them and do with them as you wish. But do not do such a vile thing to this man."

25 But the men would not listen to him. So the Levite took his concubine and sent her outside to them, and they raped her and abused her throughout the night, and at dawn they let her go. 26 Early that morning, the woman went back to the house where her master was staying, collapsed at the doorway, and lay there until it was light.

27 In the morning, when her master got up and opened the doors of the house to go out on his journey, there was his concubine, collapsed in the doorway of the house, with her hands on the threshold. 28 "Get up," he told her. "Let us go." But there was no response. So the man put her on his donkey and set out for home.

29 When he reached his house, he picked up a knife, took hold of his concubine, cut her limb by limb into twelve pieces, and sent her throughout the territory of Israel. 30 And everyone who saw it said, "Nothing like this has been seen or done from the day the Israelites came out of the land of Egypt until this day. Think it over, take counsel, and speak up!"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE LEVITE'S CONCUBINE

The Darkest Chapters

JUDGES 19 TO 21 · GENESIS 19:1 TO 11 · HOSEA 9:9

WHAT HAPPENS

A Levite and his concubine, a wife of lower rank, stopped for the night at Gibeah, a town of Benjamin. The men of the town surrounded the house. The Levite pushed her out to them, and they abused her all night. In the morning she lay at the door with her hands on the threshold, and when he told her to get up, there was no answer, 19:22 to 28. He cut her body into twelve pieces and sent them to the tribes, 19:29.

WHAT CAME NEXT

Israel demanded that Benjamin hand

JUDG 19:22 [NOTE] Almost word for word the same as Sodom in Genesis 19:4 to 8. The writer is saying that Israel had become Sodom.

JUDG 19:29 [NOTE] King Saul, from this same town of Gibeah, later cut up a pair of oxen and sent the pieces through Israel to call the tribes to war, 1 Samuel 11:7.

over the guilty men, and Benjamin refused. A civil war killed tens of thousands and left only six hundred men of Benjamin, 20:47. Then, to find them wives, Israel destroyed the town of Jabesh Gilead and let the Benjamites seize the girls dancing at Shiloh, chapter 21.

JUST LIKE SODOM

The words in 19:22 to 24 are almost the same as Genesis 19:4 to 8. The writer is saying Israel had become Sodom.

WHERE WAS GOD?

Israel asked God at Bethel before each battle, and He answered, 20:18, 20:23 and 20:28. Israel still lost twice, and 40,000 of its own men died before it won. Many see God judging the whole nation, not only Benjamin, for the evil they all allowed.

WHY IT IS IN THE BIBLE

The writer does not say any of this was right. He tells it so the reader will be shocked. Everyone who saw it said, Nothing like this has been seen or done since the day the Israelites came out of Egypt. Think it over, take counsel, and speak up, 19:30. Centuries later Hosea still remembered the days of Gibeah as Israel's lowest point, Hosea 9:9 and 10:9.

How Readers Take It

JUDGES 19:1 · 21:25 · 1 SAMUEL 10:26 · PSALM 34:18

VIEW 1: A MIRROR

No one in the story is a hero. The Levite, the old man, the men of Gibeah and the tribes all fail. Many read it as a mirror held up to God's people: this is who we become without Him.

VIEW 2: A CASE FOR A KING

The story starts with a woman from Bethlehem, David's town, and goes wrong in Gibeah, the hometown of King Saul, 1 Samuel 10:26. Many scholars think the writer was pointing ahead: Israel needed a king, and the right kind of king.

VIEW 3: A VOICE FOR THE VICTIM

The woman never speaks and is never named. Writers like Phyllis Trible, in her 1984 book Texts of Terror, ask readers to remember her and grieve for her, and to see how the men around her failed her.

WHY NOT SKIP IT?

The Bible tells the truth about people, even when the truth is ugly. Paul wrote that everything written in the past was written to teach us, Romans 15:4. A Bible that hid its darkest pages would be easier to read, but harder to trust.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Judges records this as evil, not as an example. God is not silent about the hurting. Yahweh is near to the brokenhearted, Psalm 34:18. If anyone reading this has been hurt by someone else, it was not your fault, and God sees you.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

All Israel gathers and demands that Benjamin hand over the men of Gibeah. Benjamin refuses, and a civil war begins. Israel loses twice, then wins, and nearly wipes out the whole tribe of Benjamin. Only six hundred men survive.

THE DECREE OF THE ASSEMBLY

1 Then all the Israelites from Dan to Beer-
sheba and from the land of Gilead came
out, and the congregation assembled as
one man before Yahweh at Mizpah. 2 The
leaders of all the people and all the tribes
of Israel presented themselves in the as-
sembly of God's people: 400,000 men on
foot, armed with swords. 3 (Meanwhile the
Benjamites heard that the Israelites had
gone up to Mizpah.) And the Israelites
asked, "Tell us, how did this wicked thing
happen?"

4 So the Levite, the husband of the mur-
dered woman, answered: "I and my con-
cubine came to Gibeah in Benjamin to
spend the night. 5 And during the night,
the men of Gibeah rose up against me and
surrounded the house. They intended to
kill me, but they abused my concubine,
and she died. 6 Then I took my concubine,
cut her into pieces, and sent her through-
out the land of Israel's inheritance, be-
cause they had committed a lewd and dis-
graceful act in Israel. 7 Behold, all you Is-

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

raelites, give your advice and verdict here and now."

8 Then all the people stood as one man and said, "Not one of us will return to his tent or to his house. 9 Now this is what we will do to Gibeah: We will go against it as the lot dictates. 10 We will take ten men out of every hundred from all the tribes of Israel, and a hundred out of every thousand, and a thousand out of every ten thousand, to supply provisions for the army when they go to Gibeah in Benjamin to punish them for the atrocity they have committed in Israel."

11 So all the men of Israel gathered as one man, united against the city. 12 And the tribes of Israel sent men throughout the tribe of Benjamin, saying, "What is this wickedness that has occurred among you? 13 Hand over the wicked men of Gibeah so we can put them to death and purge Israel of this evil."

But the Benjamites refused to heed the voice of their fellow Israelites. 14 And from their cities they came together at Gibeah to go out and fight against the Israelites. 15 On that day the Benjamites mobilized 26,000 swordsmen from their cities, in addition to the 700 select men of Gibeah. 16 Among all these soldiers there were 700 select left-handers, each of whom could sling a stone at a hair without missing.

17 The Israelites, apart from Benjamin, mobilized 400,000 swordsmen, each one an experienced warrior.

CIVIL WAR AGAINST BENJAMIN

18 The Israelites set out, went up to Bethel, and inquired of God, "Who of us shall go up first to fight against the Benjamites?"

"Judah will be first," Yahweh replied.

19 The next morning the Israelites set out and camped near Gibeah. 20 And the men of Israel went out to fight against Benjamin and took up their battle positions at Gibeah.

21 And the Benjamites came out of Gibeah and cut down 22,000 Israelites on the battlefield that day.

22 But the Israelite army took courage and again took their battle positions in the same place where they had arrayed themselves on the first day. 23 They went up and wept before Yahweh until evening, inquiring of Him, "Should we again draw near for battle against our brothers the Benjamites?"

And Yahweh answered, "Go up against them."

24 On the second day the Israelites advanced against the Benjamites. 25 That same day the Benjamites came out against them from Gibeah and cut down another 18,000 Israelites, all of them armed with swords.

26 Then the Israelites, all the people, went up to Bethel, where they sat weeping before Yahweh. That day they fasted until evening and presented burnt offerings and peace offerings to Yahweh. 27 And the Israelites inquired of Yahweh. (In those days the ark of the covenant of God was there, 28 and Phinehas son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, served before it.) The Israelites asked, "Should we again go out to battle against our brothers the Benjamites, or should we stop?"

Yahweh answered, "Fight, for tomorrow I will deliver them into your hand."

29 So Israel set up an ambush around Gibeah. 30 On the third day the Israelites went up against the Benjamites and arrayed themselves against Gibeah as they had done before. 31 The Benjamites came out against them and were drawn away from the city. They began to attack the people as before, killing about thirty men of Israel in the fields and on the roads, one of which led up to Bethel and the other to Gibeah.

32 "We are defeating them as before," said the Benjamites.

But the Israelites said, "Let us retreat and draw them away from the city onto the roads."

JUDG 20:15 [FULFILLS] Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night divide the spoil ← GEN 49:27 · MEDIUM p.115

JUDG 20:16 [NOTE] A skilled slinger could throw a stone as fast as a big league fastball. Seven hundred left handed slingers who never missed were a deadly unit.

33 So all the men of Israel got up from their
places and arrayed themselves at Baal-
tamar, and the Israelites in ambush
charged from their positions west of
Gibeah. 34 Then 10,000 select men from all
Israel made a frontal assault against
Gibeah, and the battle was fierce. But the
Benjamites did not realize that disaster
was upon them. 35 Yahweh defeated Ben-
jamin in the presence of Israel, and on
that day the Israelites slaughtered 25,100
Benjamites, all armed with swords. 36 Then
the Benjamites realized they had been de-
feated.

Now the men of Israel had retreated be-
fore Benjamin because they were relying
on the ambush they had set against
Gibeah. 37 The men in ambush rushed
suddenly against Gibeah; they advanced
and put the whole city to the sword.

38 The men of Israel had arranged a signal
with the men in ambush: When they sent
up a great cloud of smoke from the city,
39 the men of Israel would turn in the bat-
tle.

When the Benjamites had begun to strike
them down, killing about thirty men of Is-
rael, they said, "They are defeated before
us as in the first battle." 40 But when the
column of smoke began to go up from the
city, the Benjamites looked behind them
and saw the whole city going up in
smoke.

41 Then the men of Israel turned back on
them, and the men of Benjamin were terri-
fied when they realized that disaster had
come upon them. 42 So they fled before
the men of Israel toward the wilderness,
but the battle overtook them, and the men
coming out of the cities struck them down
there. 43 They surrounded the Benjamites,
pursued them, and easily overtook them
in the vicinity of Gibeah on the east. 44
And 18,000 Benjamites fell, all men of
valor.

45 Then the Benjamites turned and fled to-
ward the wilderness to the rock of Rim-
mon, and Israel cut down 5,000 men on
the roads. And they overtook them at
Gidom and struck down 2,000 more.

46 That day 25,000 Benjamite swordsmen
fell, all men of valor. 47 But 600 men
turned and fled into the wilderness to the
rock of Rimmon, where they stayed four
months. 48 And the men of Israel turned
back against the other Benjamites and put
to the sword all the cities, including the
animals and everything else they found.
And they burned down all the cities in
their path.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel had sworn not to give its daughters to Benjamin, and now regrets it. Their fixes are terrible: they wipe out Jabesh Gilead for wives, then tell the Benjamites to grab girls dancing at Shiloh. The book ends where it began. In those days there was no king in Israel; everyone did what was right in his own eyes.

WIVES FOR THE BENJAMITES

1 Now the men of Israel had sworn an oath
at Mizpah, saying, "Not one of us will give
his daughter in marriage to a Benjamite."

2 So the people came to Bethel and sat
there before God until evening, lifting up
their voices and weeping bitterly. 3 "Why,
O Yahweh God of Israel," they cried out,
"has this happened in Israel? Today in Is-
rael one tribe is missing!"

4 The next day the people got up early,
built an altar there, and presented burnt
offerings and peace offerings. 5 The Is-
raelites asked, "Who among all the tribes
of Israel did not come to the assembly be-
fore Yahweh?" For they had taken a
solemn oath that anyone who failed to
come up before Yahweh at Mizpah would
surely be put to death.

6 And the Israelites grieved for their broth-
ers, the Benjamites, and said, "Today a
tribe is cut off from Israel. 7 What should
we do about wives for the survivors, since
we have sworn by Yahweh not to give
them our daughters in marriage?"

8 So they asked, "Which one of the tribes
of Israel failed to come up before Yahweh
at Mizpah?" And, in fact, no one from
Jabesh-gilead had come to the camp for
the assembly. 9 For when the people were

NOTABLE

counted, none of the residents of Jabesh-gilead were there.

10 So the congregation sent 12,000 of their most valiant men and commanded them: "Go and put to the sword those living in Jabesh-gilead, including women and children. 11 This is what you are to do: Devote to destruction every male, as well as every female who has had relations with a man."

12 So they found among the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead four hundred young women who had not had relations with a man, and they brought them to the camp at Shiloh in the land of Canaan.

13 Then the whole congregation sent a message of peace to the Benjamites who were at the rock of Rimmon. 14 And at that time the Benjamites returned and were given the women who were spared from Jabesh-gilead. But there were not enough women for all of them.

15 The people grieved for Benjamin, because Yahweh had made a void in the tribes of Israel.

16 Then the elders of the congregation said, "What should we do about wives for those who remain, since the women of Benjamin have been destroyed?" 17 They added, "There must be heirs for the survivors of Benjamin, so that a tribe of Israel will not be wiped out. 18 But we cannot give them our daughters as wives."

For the Israelites had sworn, "Cursed is he who gives a wife to a Benjamite."

19 "But look," they said, "there is a yearly feast to Yahweh in Shiloh, which is north of Bethel east of the road that goes up from Bethel to Shechem, and south of Lebonah."

20 So they commanded the Benjamites: "Go, hide in the vineyards 21 and watch. When you see the daughters of Shiloh come out to perform their dances, each of you is to come out of the vineyards, catch for himself a wife from the daughters of Shiloh, and go to the land of Benjamin. 22 When their fathers or brothers come to us to complain, we will tell them, 'Do us a favor by helping them, since we did not get wives for each of them in the war. Since you did not actually give them your daughters, you have no guilt.'"

23 The Benjamites did as instructed and carried away the number of women they needed from the dancers they caught. They went back to their own inheritance, rebuilt their cities, and settled in them. 24 And at that time, each of the Israelites returned from there to his own tribe and clan, each to his own inheritance.

25 In those days there was no king in Israel; everyone did what was right in his own eyes.

■ **JUDG 21:19 [NOTE]** This verse gives exact directions to Shiloh, and the ruins of Shiloh are right where it says. See the Shiloh Field Notes page, p.412.

■ **JUDG 21:25 [NOTABLE]** The theme of the whole book, said twice. With no king and no shared standard, everyone made up their own rules, and chapters 17 to 21 show where that leads.

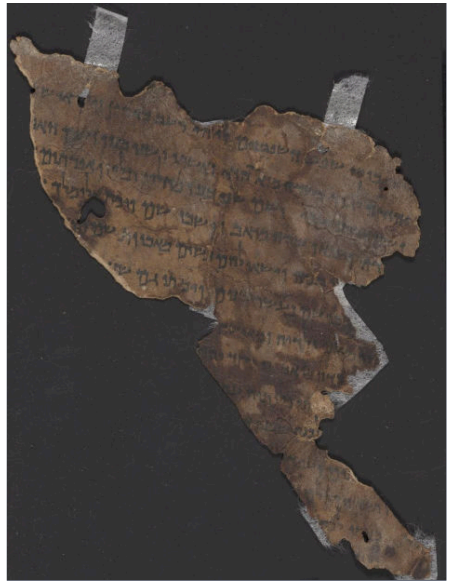
■ **JUDG 21:25 [NOTE]** The last line of the book. Ruth, which happens in the days of the judges, comes next, and it ends with the name David.

BOOK 8 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

RUTH

From Moab to the Messiah

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Samuel wrote it. It ends with the name David, so it was written in David's time or later. Many scholars think it was written down after the exile, in the 500s or 400s BC.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	In the days when the judges ruled, 1:1. About ten years in Moab, 1:4, then one harvest season in Bethlehem, from the barley harvest to the end of the wheat harvest, 2:23.
DATE	Counting back three generations from David, about 1100 BC. If Rahab was Boaz's own mother, Matthew 1:5, it was earlier, near the start of the judges. See The Missing Generations in the Big Question pages, p.432.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, to show how God's loyal love worked through ordinary loyal people, and how a Moabite widow became the great grandmother of King David.
KEY VERSE	Ruth 1:16. Your people will be my people, and your God will be my God.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF RUTH
This piece of leather comes from 4QRuth a, a scroll of Ruth found in Cave 4 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. It was copied about 50 BC and holds part of Ruth chapter 1, where the word Moab shows up again and again.

Four scrolls of Ruth were found at Qumran, two in Cave 2 and two in Cave 4. Their wording is very close to the Hebrew text behind this Bible. Most of the differences are small changes in spelling.

In the Hebrew Bible, Ruth is one of five short scrolls read on special days each year. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Two places. Bethlehem in Judah, a farm town about six miles south of Jerusalem, and Moab, across the Dead Sea to the east, where people worshiped a god named Chemosh. It is the same time as the book of Judges, when everyone did what was right in his own eyes. Ruth is a quiet story about a few people who did what was right in God's eyes.

What Was Going Wrong

FAMINE. There was no bread in Bethlehem, the house of bread 1:1.
LEAVING HOME. Elimelech took his family out of the Promised Land to live in Moab 1:1 to 2.
THREE FUNERALS. Naomi lost her husband and both sons, and she had no grandchildren 1:3 to 5.
BITTERNESS. Naomi said the Almighty had dealt bitterly with her, and she came home empty 1:20 to 21.
A NAME DYING OUT. With no son, the family's land and name would be lost forever 4:5 to 10.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Ruth is a short, beautiful story set in an ugly time. A family from Bethlehem runs from a famine to Moab, and only the women come back: Naomi, bitter and empty, and her Moabite daughter in law Ruth, who refuses to leave her. Ruth gleans leftover grain to keep them alive and lands in the field of Boaz, a relative who can redeem the family. Naomi makes a bold plan, Boaz does everything the right way, and the two marry. Their son Obed is King David's grandfather. God never speaks in Ruth and does no miracles, but His hand is behind every page.

Ruth at a Glance

CH 1	**EMPTY** A famine, three funerals, and a promise on the road home.
CH 2	**GLEANING** Ruth works in the field of Boaz.
CH 3	**THE THRESHING FLOOR** A midnight request.
CH 4:1 to 12	**AT THE GATE** Boaz buys back the land and marries Ruth.
CH 4:13 to 22	**FULL** A baby, and the family line to David.

Where Jesus Shows Up

RUTH 2:12 Boaz prays that Ruth will find shelter under God's wings. Jesus said He longed to gather Jerusalem like a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, Matthew 23:37.

RUTH 4:9 TO 10 Boaz, a close relative, pays the price to buy back the land and the family. Jesus became our relative by becoming human and paid the price to redeem us, Galatians 4:4 to 5 and Ephesians 1:7.

RUTH 4:17 Obed, Jesse, David. Matthew 1:5 to 6 names Boaz, Ruth and Obed in the family line of Jesus, the Son of David.

GOD'S NAMES IN RUTH
Yahweh, eighteen times, mostly in blessings people speak to each other, like Yahweh be

with you, 2:4. Naomi calls Him Shaddai, the Almighty, 1:20 to 21. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Ruth

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	4:9-10
THE HEART (2)	2:13, 3:7
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	4:17
DEMONIC (1)	1:15
NOTABLE (3)	1:16-17, 2:12, 4:14-15
GOD SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (71 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

NO MIRACLES
God never speaks and does no miracle in Ruth. The writer only says Yahweh acted twice, 1:6 and 4:13, yet He is behind the whole story.

MR. SO AND SO
Boaz calls the other redeemer peloni almoni, the Hebrew for Mr. So and So, 4:1.

BOOKS NAMED FOR WOMEN
Ruth and Esther are the only two books in this Bible named for women. Ruth, a foreigner, married a man of Judah. Esther, a Jewish woman, married a foreign king.

READ AT PENTECOST
Jewish people read Ruth every year at Shavuot, the Feast of Weeks, the wheat harvest feast the New Testament calls Pentecost.

How Did It Turn Out?

Naomi went from empty to full. A Moabite widow found a home, a husband and a God. Her great grandson was King David, and Matthew 1:5 puts her in the family line of Jesus. Next comes 1 Samuel, where the last judge anoints David.

DEMONIC NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

A famine hits Bethlehem, which means house of bread, so Elimelech moves his family to Moab. Then he dies, and so do both his sons. Naomi heads home with nothing. One daughter in law goes back. The other, Ruth, refuses to leave: Where you go, I will go. Naomi gets back to Bethlehem and says, Don't call me Pleasant. Call me Bitter.

NAOMI BECOMES A WIDOW // 1 TIMOTHY 5:3–16

1 In the days when the judges ruled, there
was a famine in the land. And a certain
man from Bethlehem in Judah, with his
wife and two sons, went to reside in the
land of Moab. 2 The man's name was Elim-
elech, his wife's name was Naomi, and the
names of his two sons were Mahlon and
Chilion. They were Ephrathites from Beth-
lehem in Judah, and they entered the land
of Moab and settled there.

3 Then Naomi's husband Elimelech died,
and she was left with her two sons, 4 who
took Moabite women as their wives, one
named Orpah and the other named Ruth.
And after they had lived in Moab about
ten years, 5 both Mahlon and Chilion also
died, and Naomi was left without her two
sons and without her husband.

RUTH'S LOYALTY TO NAOMI

6 When Naomi heard in Moab that Yahweh
had attended to His people by providing
them with food, she and her daughters-in-
law prepared to leave the land of Moab. 7
Accompanied by her two daughters-in-
law, she left the place where she had
been living and set out on the road lead-
ing back to the land of Judah.

8 Then Naomi said to her two daughters-
in-law, "Go back, each of you to your
mother's home. May Yahweh show you
loving devotion, as you have shown to
your dead and to me. 9 May Yahweh en-
able each of you to find rest in the home
of your new husband."

And she kissed them as they wept aloud
10 and said, "Surely we will return with you
to your people."

11 But Naomi replied, "Return home, my
daughters. Why would you go with me?
Are there still sons in my womb to become
your husbands? 12 Return home, my
daughters. Go on, for I am too old to have
another husband. Even if I thought there
was hope for me to have a husband
tonight and to bear sons, 13 would you wait
for them to grow up? Would you refrain
from having husbands? No, my daughters,
it is much more bitter for me than for you,
because the hand of Yahweh has gone
out against me."

14 Again they wept aloud, and Orpah
kissed her mother-in-law goodbye, but
Ruth clung to her.

15 "Look," said Naomi, "your sister-in-law
has gone back to her people and her
gods; follow her back home."

16 But Ruth replied:

"Do not urge me to leave you
or to turn from following you.
For wherever you go, I will go,
and wherever you live, I will live;
your people will be my people,
and your God will be my God.

- **RUTH 1:1 [NOTE]** IN THE DAYS WHEN THE JUDGES RULED. Ruth happens in the same dark days as the book of Judges. Bethlehem means house of bread, and the house of bread had no bread.
- **RUTH 1:1 [FIELD NOTES]** Moab was a real kingdom east of the Dead Sea, and its own king carved a stone about 840 BC. See The Mesha Stele Field Notes page, p.424.
- **RUTH 1:2 [NOTE]** Elimelech means my God is king. Naomi means pleasant. Many think Mahlon and Chilion mean sickly and failing, which fits what happened to them. Ephrathites were people from Ephrathah, the old name for the Bethlehem area, Genesis 35:19 and Micah 5:2.
- **RUTH 1:4 [NOTE]** The Moabites came from Lot, Abraham's nephew, Genesis 19:37. God's law kept Moabites out of the assembly of Yahweh, Deuteronomy 23:3. See the Big Question pages A Moabite in Jesus' Family?, p.423

- **RUTH 1:8 [NOTE]** LOVING DEVOTION is the Hebrew word hesed: loyal love that keeps showing up. It is the big word of this book, 1:8, 2:20 and 3:10.
- **RUTH 1:15 [DEMONIC]** Orpah goes back to her people and her gods
- **RUTH 1:16 [NOTABLE]** One of the greatest promises of loyalty ever spoken, and a Moabite widow said it. Ruth chose Naomi's people and Naomi's God for life. It is still read at weddings.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

A MOABITE IN JESUS' FAMILY?

The Problem

RUTH 1:4 · DEUTERONOMY 23:3 TO 6 · GENESIS 19:30 TO 38 · NEHEMIAH 13:1 TO 3 · MATTHEW 1:5

WHERE MOAB CAME FROM

The Moabites came from Lot, Abraham's nephew, through his older daughter, Genesis 19:30 to 37. They lived east of the Dead Sea.

THE LAW

No Ammonite or Moabite or any of their descendants may enter the assembly of Yahweh, even to the tenth generation, Deuteronomy 23:3. The reason: they did not meet Israel with bread and water in the wilderness, and they hired Balaam to curse Israel, 23:4. Later, Moabite women led Israel into the worship of Baal of Peor, Numbers 25:1 to 3.

STILL IN FORCE LATER

After the exile, Nehemiah read this law aloud, and the people separated from foreigners, Nehemiah 13:1 to 3. Ezra had the men send away their foreign wives, Ezra 9 to 10.

AND YET

Ruth the Moabitess married Boaz, an important man of Judah, and her great grandson became King David. Matthew 1:5 names her in the family line of Jesus. David even sent his parents to the king of Moab to keep them safe, 1 Samuel 22:3 to 4.

THE QUESTION

How could a Moabite be the great grandmother of Israel's greatest king and an ancestor of the Messiah, when the law kept Moabites out?

Every View

DEUTERONOMY 23:3 · RUTH 1:16 · ISAIAH 56:3 TO 7 · GALATIANS 3:28

VIEW 1: MOABITE MEN, NOT WOMEN

The Mishnah, a Jewish book of law from about AD 200, says the ban was on a Moabite man, not a Moabite woman. Later rabbis in the Talmud gave the reason: Moab did not bring Israel bread and water, and that was the men's job. Jewish teachers used this to explain Ruth.

VIEW 2: FAITH BRINGS YOU IN

Ruth left Chemosh and chose Yahweh: your God will be my God, 1:16. She came under God's wings, 2:12. Many Christians say the law kept out Moab as a nation of enemies, not a person who turned to God, just like Rahab of Jericho. Isaiah 56:3 to 7 says foreigners who hold on to God's covenant will be welcome in His house.

VIEW 3: WHAT THE ASSEMBLY MEANT

Some say the assembly of Yahweh meant the official gathering of Israel for worship and leadership, so the law did not ban marriage. Others point out that the ban lasted to the tenth generation, and David was only the third.

VIEW 4: A STORY WITH A MESSAGE

Many scholars think the book was written, or written down, to answer strict rules against foreign wives in the days of Ezra and Nehemiah. Others date it much earlier, but agree it welcomes outsiders.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

God's grace is bigger than anyone expected. Jesus' family tree in Matthew names four women besides Mary. Rahab and Ruth were foreigners, Tamar was most likely a Canaanite, and Bathsheba had been the wife of Uriah the Hittite. In Christ there is neither Jew nor Greek, Galatians 3:28.

17 Where you die, I will die,
and there I will be buried.
May Yahweh punish me,
and ever so severely,
if anything but death
separates you and me."

18 When Naomi saw that Ruth was determined to go with her, she stopped trying to persuade her.

THE RETURN TO BETHLEHEM

19 So Naomi and Ruth traveled until they came to Bethlehem. When they entered Bethlehem, the whole town was stirred because of them, and the women of the town exclaimed, "Can this be Naomi?"

- **RUTH 1:17 [NOTE]** Ruth swears by Yahweh, the God of Israel, by name. A Moabite woman is now calling on Naomi's God.
- **RUTH 1:19 [FIELD NOTES]** A clay seal found in Jerusalem names Bethlehem. See the Bethlehem Field Notes page, p.425.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE STONE, DEBATED FOR DAVID

THE MESHA STELE

RUTH 1:1 · 1:15 · NUMBERS 21:29 · 2 KINGS 3:4 TO 27



The Mesha Stele in the Louvre, Paris. The dark, rough pieces are the original stone. The smooth parts were filled in from a paper copy made before it broke. Public domain photo.

WHAT IT IS

A black stone almost four feet tall, carved for Mesha, king of Moab. In 34 lines he brags about how he won Moab's freedom from Israel. It is also called the Moabite Stone.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 840 BC, in the time of King Ahab's sons. That is two or three centuries after Ruth, but it is Moab speaking in its own words, in a language very close to Hebrew.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Dhiban in Jordan, the Bible's Dibon, in 1868. Before it could be bought, local people heated it and poured cold water on it, and it broke into pieces. A paper copy pressed onto it before it broke saved most of the words. The pieces are in the Louvre in Paris.

WHAT IT SAYS

Omri king of Israel humbled Moab many days, because Chemosh was angry with his land. Mesha says Chemosh gave Moab back. He says he took the holy things of Yahweh from Nebo, most likely the temple vessels, and dragged them before Chemosh. It is the oldest sure writing of God's name, YHWH, ever found outside the Bible.

WHY IT MATTERS FOR RUTH

Orpah went back to her people and her gods, 1:15, and Moab's god was Chemosh, Numbers 21:29. Ruth chose the other God on the stone: Your God will be my God, 1:16. The stone shows Moab as a real kingdom with its own king, god and language, right across the Dead Sea from Bethlehem.

THE HOUSE OF DAVID?

In 1994 the French scholar André Lemaire read a broken part of line 31 as the House of David. Some scholars read it as another name, and others say it is too damaged to tell. The debate is not settled.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing on it names Ruth, Naomi or Boaz. It shows that Moab, Chemosh and the God of Israel were real names in Ruth's world.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

20 "Do not call me Naomi," she replied.
"Call me Mara, because the Almighty has
dealt quite bitterly with me. 21 I went away
full, but Yahweh has brought me back
empty. Why call me Naomi? After all, Yah-
weh has testified against me, and the
Almighty has afflicted me."

22 So Naomi returned from the land of
Moab with her daughter-in-law Ruth the
Moabitess. And they arrived in Bethlehem
at the beginning of the barley harvest.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Ruth goes out to pick up leftover grain behind the harvesters, and she just happens to land in the field of Boaz, a rich relative of Naomi's. Boaz tells his young men to leave her alone and drop a little extra on purpose. Ruth comes home with about half a bushel of barley, and Naomi's matchmaking brain wakes up.

BOAZ MEETS RUTH

1 Now Naomi had a relative on her
husband's side, a prominent man of noble
character from the clan of Elimelech,
whose name was Boaz.

2 And Ruth the Moabitess said to Naomi,
"Please let me go into the fields and glean
heads of grain after someone in whose
sight I may find favor."

"Go ahead, my daughter," Naomi replied.

3 So Ruth departed and went out into the
field and gleaned after the harvesters.
And she happened to come to the part of
the field belonging to Boaz, who was from
the clan of Elimelech.

- **RUTH 1:20 [NOTE]** Mara means bitter. The Almighty is the Hebrew name Shaddai, the name God used with Abraham, Genesis 17:1. Naomi is honest with God about her pain, and the book does not scold her for it.
- **RUTH 1:22 [FIELD NOTES]** The barley harvest came in spring, about April. A farm calendar from about the 900s BC gives it a month of its own. See The Gezer Calendar Field Notes page, p.426.
- **RUTH 2:2 [NOTE]** GLEANING. God's law told farmers to leave the edges of the field and the grain they dropped for the poor, the foreigner and the widow, Leviticus 19:9 to 10 and Deuteronomy 24:19. Ruth was all three.
- **RUTH 2:3 [NOTE]** She happened to come to the field of Boaz. The writer is smiling here. In this book nothing just happens.
- **RUTH 2:3 [FIELD NOTES]** A real harvester's letter, written on a piece of pottery about 630 BC, begs an official to give back his cloak. See The Harvester's Complaint Field Notes page, p.427.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE SEAL, THE PHOTO SHOWS A LATER FIND

BETHLEHEM

RUTH 1:19 · 4:11 · 1 SAMUEL 16:1 · MICAH 5:2 · MATTHEW 2:1



Part of the mosaic floor of Emperor Constantine's Church of the Nativity in Bethlehem, AD 330s. The seal itself is not shown. No free photo of it exists. The wooden frames are modern. Photo Wknight94, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny lump of clay, called a bulla, smaller than a dime, pressed with a seal. Experts read its three lines of old Hebrew writing as In the seventh, Bethlehem, for the king. One scholar thinks one letter is different and the town is not Bethlehem, but most accept the reading. It is not in the photo. No free photo of it exists.

HOW OLD IT IS

About the 700s or 600s BC, when kings of Judah ruled in Jerusalem. It is the oldest object found in Israel that names Bethlehem. A letter from about 1350 BC, found at Amarna in Egypt, names a town near Jerusalem that some think was Bethlehem, but most scholars doubt it.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It was found in soil sifted from the City of David dig in Jerusalem, led by Eli Shukron. The Israel Antiquities Authority announced it in 2012.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Many think it sealed a shipment of taxes, like grain or wine, sent from Bethlehem to the king in the seventh year of his reign. Bethlehem was a real farm town of Judah, just as Ruth shows it.

THE PHOTO

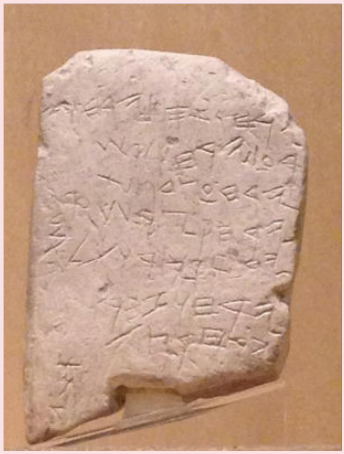
This mosaic floor is from the first Church of the Nativity, built in Bethlehem by Emperor Constantine in the AD

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE TABLET, DEBATED FOR ITS PURPOSE

THE GEZER CALENDAR

RUTH 1:22 · 2:23 · EXODUS 9:31 TO 32 · LEVITICUS 23:10 TO 16



The Gezer Calendar, Istanbul Archaeology Museums. Photo oncenawhile, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small limestone tablet, about four inches tall, with seven lines about the farm year scratched into it, and a name scratched at the side. It lists the year month by month. It is one of the oldest writings ever found in a language close to Hebrew.

HOW OLD IT IS

About the 900s BC, around the time of King Solomon. Some scholars say its language is an early form of Hebrew. Others call it Phoenician or a related Canaanite language.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The Irish archaeologist R. A. S. Macalister found it in 1908 at Gezer, between Jerusalem and the coast. It is in Istanbul, because the Ottoman Empire ruled the land then.

WHAT IT SAYS

Two months of gathering, two months of planting, two months of late planting, a month of cutting flax, a month of barley harvest, a month of harvest and measuring, two months of pruning vines, a month of summer fruit.

WHY IT MATTERS FOR RUTH

Naomi and Ruth came home at the beginning of barley harvest, 1:22, and Ruth gleaned through the barley and wheat harvests, 2:23. That is the barley month and the harvest month on this tablet, about April to June.

THE BIG DEBATE

Who wrote it, and why? Many think it was a school exercise, a little song students copied, because the stone was scraped clean and used again. Others think it was a list for collecting taxes.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It names no one from Ruth. It shows the farm year Ruth lived in, the same seasons the book follows.

330s. It is real and ancient, but it is more than a thousand years after Ruth.

BETHLEHEM IN THE BIBLE

Bethlehem means house of bread. Rachel was buried on the way there, Genesis 35:19. Ruth and Boaz lived there, David was born there, 1 Samuel 16:1, and Micah 5:2 said the Messiah would come from there, Matthew 2:1.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The seal is centuries after Ruth and names no one from the book. It shows that Bethlehem was a real town of Judah in Bible times.

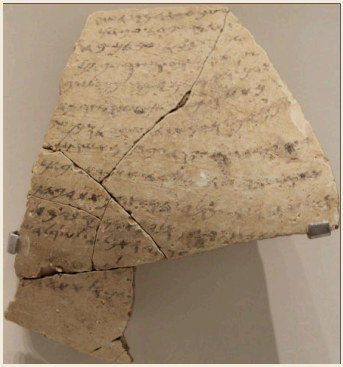
4 Just then Boaz arrived from Bethlehem
and said to the harvesters, "Yahweh be
with you."
"Yahweh bless you," they replied.
5 And Boaz asked the foreman of his harvesters, "Whose young woman is this?"

THE HEART NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · CENTURIES AFTER RUTH

THE HARVESTER'S COMPLAINT

RUTH 2:3 TO 9 · DEUTERONOMY 24:12 TO 15 · LEVITICUS 19:9 TO 10



The Mesad Hashavyahu ostracon, Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Paamei Elyon, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A broken piece of pottery with 14 lines of ancient Hebrew written in ink. It is a letter from a farm worker to the official in charge of a small fort.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 630 to 609 BC, in the days of King Josiah. The Israeli scholar Joseph Naveh found it in 1960 at Mesad Hashavyahu, a fort near the coast south of where Tel Aviv is today.

WHAT IT SAYS

The worker says he was harvesting and finished his work, but a man named Hoshayahu son of Shobai took his cloak. His fellow workers in the heat can swear he did nothing wrong. He begs the official to give his cloak back.

WHY IT MATTERS FOR RUTH

It shows what a harvest field was like: hired workers, a foreman, long days in the heat, and poor people who could be pushed around. That is why Boaz ordered his young men not to touch Ruth or shame her, 2:9 and 2:15.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

We do not know if the worker got his cloak back. The letter is centuries after Ruth and has nothing to do with Boaz's field.

6 The foreman answered, "She is the
Moabitess who returned with Naomi from
the land of Moab. 7 She has said, 'Please
let me glean and gather among the
sheaves after the harvesters.' So she
came out and has continued from morning until now, except that she rested a
short time in the shelter."

8 Then Boaz said to Ruth, "Listen, my
daughter. Do not go and glean in another
field, and do not go away from this place,
but stay here close to my servant girls. 9
Let your eyes be on the field they are harvesting, and follow along after these girls.
Indeed, I have ordered the young men not
to touch you. And when you are thirsty, go
and drink from the jars the young men
have filled."

10 At this, she fell on her face, bowing low
to the ground, and said to him, "Why have
I found such favor in your eyes that you
should take notice of me, even though I
am a foreigner?"

11 Boaz replied, "I have been made fully
aware of all you have done for your
mother-in-law since the death of your
husband, how you left your father and
mother and the land of your birth, and
how you came to a people you did not
know before. 12 May Yahweh repay your
work, and may you receive a rich reward
from Yahweh, the God of Israel, under
whose wings you have taken refuge."

13 "My lord," she said, "may I continue to
find favor in your eyes, for you have comforted and spoken to the heart of your
maidservant, though I am not like one of
your servant girls."

RUTH 2:12 [NOTABLE] Boaz prays that God will reward Ruth for hiding under His wings. Then Boaz becomes the answer to his own prayer, when Ruth asks him to spread the corner of his garment, the same Hebrew word as wings, over her, 3:9.

RUTH 2:13 [HEART] Ruth says Boaz spoke to her heart. In Hebrew that means he comforted her tenderly, the

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

14 At mealtime Boaz said to her, "Come
over here; have some bread and dip it into
the vinegar sauce." So she sat down be-
side the harvesters, and he offered her
roasted grain, and she ate and was satis-
fied and had some left over.

15 When Ruth got up to glean, Boaz or-
dered his young men, "Even if she gathers
among the sheaves, do not insult her. 16
Rather, pull out for her some stalks from
the bundles and leave them for her to
gather. Do not rebuke her."

17 So Ruth gathered grain in the field until
evening. And when she beat out what she
had gleaned, it was about half a bushel of
barley. 18 She picked up the grain and
went into the town, where her mother-in-
law saw what she had gleaned. And she
brought out what she had saved from her
meal and gave it to Naomi.

19 Then her mother-in-law asked her,
"Where did you glean today, and where
did you work? Blessed be the man who
noticed you."

So she told her mother-in-law where she
had worked. "The name of the man I
worked with today is Boaz," she said.

20 Then Naomi said to her daughter-in-law,
"May he be blessed by Yahweh, who has
not withdrawn His kindness from the liv-
ing or the dead." Naomi continued, "The
man is a close relative. He is one of our
kinsman-redeemers."

21 Then Ruth the Moabitess said, "He also
told me, 'Stay with my young men until
they have finished gathering all my har-
vest.'"

22 And Naomi said to her daughter-in-law
Ruth, "My daughter, it is good for you to
work with his young women, so that noth-
ing will happen to you in another field."

23 So Ruth stayed close to the servant girls
of Boaz to glean grain until the barley and
wheat harvests were finished. And she
lived with her mother-in-law.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE KINSMAN REDEEMER

What a Goel Was

RUTH 2:20 · 3:9 TO 13 · 4:1 TO 10 · LEVITICUS 25:25 TO 49 · DEUTERONOMY 25:5 TO 10

THE HEBREW WORD

Goel comes from gaal, to buy back or redeem. A goel was the closest male relative, the one who stepped in when a family was in trouble.

WHAT A REDEEMER DID

He bought back land a poor relative had to sell, Leviticus 25:25. He bought back a relative who had sold himself as a slave, Leviticus 25:47 to 49. In Ruth, redeeming the land also meant marrying the widow, so a son could carry on the dead man's name, 4:5 and 4:10. That is close to the brother in law law of Deuteronomy 25:5 to 10.

THREE THINGS HE NEEDED

Bible teachers often say a redeemer had to be a close relative, able to pay, and willing. The nearer relative was close and able, but not willing, 4:6. Boaz was all three.

WHAT BOAZ DID

He did it in public, at the gate, before ten elders, 4:2 and 4:9. He bought Naomi's land and married Ruth. When Obed was born, the women said, A son has been born to Naomi, 4:17. The family name lived on.

GOD THE REDEEMER

The Old Testament calls God Himself Israel's Redeemer, the same word: I will redeem you with an outstretched arm, Exodus 6:6, and your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel, Isaiah 41:14. Job said, I know that my Redeemer lives, Job 19:25.

same words used for God's comfort to His people in Isaiah 40:2 and Hosea 2:14.

■ **RUTH 2:20 [NOTE]** KINSMAN REDEEMER is the Hebrew word goel, a close relative who buys back what a family lost, Leviticus 25:25. See the Big Question pages The Kinsman Redeemer, p.428.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Is Boaz a Picture of Jesus?

RUTH 4:9 TO 10 · GALATIANS 4:4 TO 5 · EPHESIANS 1:7 · HEBREWS 2:14 TO 17 · 1 PETER 1:18 TO 19

VIEW 1: A PICTURE OF CHRIST

Many Christians, from the early church to today, see Boaz as a picture of Jesus. Jesus became our relative by becoming human, Hebrews 2:14 to 17. He was able and willing to pay the price, not with silver but with His own blood, 1 Peter 1:18 to 19. He came to redeem those under the law, Galatians 4:4 to 5. Ruth, a foreigner, pictures people from every nation brought into God's family. This Bible marks 4:9 to 10 as a messianic foreshadow.

VIEW 2: A TRUE STORY FIRST

Many scholars say Ruth is first of all a true story about loyal love. The New Testament names Ruth and Boaz in Jesus' family tree, Matthew 1:5, but never calls Boaz a picture of Christ. They warn that turning every detail into a symbol can make the Bible say things it does not say.

VIEW 3: THE JEWISH READING

Jewish readers love Boaz as a model of hesed, loyal kindness that goes beyond what the law requires. They read the book as the story of how God prepared the family of King David, who leads to the Messiah.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

The first side says the redeemer idea runs through the whole Bible and ends in Jesus, so it is fair to see Him here. The second side agrees Jesus is the great Redeemer, but says the story should be read for what it meant to its first readers before it is read as a picture.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

God's kindness came through people's kindness. Ruth was loyal to Naomi, Boaz was kind to Ruth, and God used both to bring King David, and later Jesus, into the world.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Naomi has a plan. Take a bath, put on perfume, go to the threshing floor at night, and lie down at Boaz's feet. At midnight Boaz wakes up and finds a woman there. Ruth asks him to spread the corner of his garment over her. Boaz says yes, but there is a closer relative who gets first dibs.

RUTH'S REDEMPTION ASSURED

1 One day Ruth's mother-in-law Naomi said
to her, "My daughter, should I not seek a
resting place for you, that it may be well
with you? 2 Now is not Boaz, with whose
servant girls you have been working, a
relative of ours? In fact, tonight he is win-
nowing barley on the threshing floor. 3
Therefore wash yourself, put on perfume,
and wear your best clothes. Go down to
the threshing floor, but do not let the man
know you are there until he has finished
eating and drinking. 4 When he lies down,
note the place where he lies. Then go in
and uncover his feet, and lie down, and he
will explain to you what you should do."
5 "I will do everything you say," Ruth an-
swered. 6 So she went down to the thresh-
ing floor and did everything her mother-
in-law had instructed her to do.
7 After Boaz had finished eating and drink-
ing and his heart was merry, he went to lie
down at the end of the heap of grain.
Then Ruth went in secretly, uncovered his
feet, and lay down.
8 At midnight, Boaz was startled, turned
over, and there lying at his feet was a
woman!
9 "Who are you?" he asked.
"I am your servant Ruth," she replied.
"Spread the corner of your garment over
me, for you are a kinsman-redeemer."

- **RUTH 3:2 [NOTE]** A threshing floor was a flat open place where grain was beaten loose and tossed in the evening wind, so the chaff blew away. At harvest time the men slept there to guard the grain.
- **RUTH 3:4 [NOTE]** UNCOVER HIS FEET. Most readers, Jewish and Christian, take this as a bold but pure way for Ruth to ask Boaz to marry her. Some scholars think the words have a double meaning. See the Big Question pages The Threshing Floor, p.430.
- **RUTH 3:7 [HEART]** After the harvest meal Boaz's heart was merry. The Hebrew says his heart was good: full, happy and at peace after a hard day's work.
- **RUTH 3:9 [NOTE]** SPREAD THE CORNER OF YOUR GARMENT. The Hebrew says your wing, kanaf, the same

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

10 Then Boaz said, "May Yahweh bless
you, my daughter. You have shown more
kindness now than before, because you
have not run after the younger men,
whether rich or poor. 11 And now do not be
afraid, my daughter. I will do for you what-
ever you request, since all my fellow
townspeople know that you are a woman
of noble character. 12 Yes, it is true that I
am a kinsman-redeemer, but there is a re-
deemer nearer than I. 13 Stay here tonight,
and in the morning, if he wants to redeem
you, good. Let him redeem you. But if he
does not want to redeem you, as surely as
Yahweh lives, I will. Now lie here until
morning."

14 So she lay down at his feet until morn-
ing, but she got up before anyone else
could recognize her.

Then Boaz said, "Do not let it be known
that a woman came to the threshing floor."
15 And he told her, "Bring the shawl you
are wearing and hold it out." When she did
so, he poured in six measures of barley
and placed it on her. Then he went into
the city.

16 When Ruth returned to her mother-in-
law, Naomi asked her, "How did it go, my
daughter?"

Then Ruth told her all that Boaz had done
for her. 17 And she said, "He gave me
these six measures of barley, for he said,
'Do not go back to your mother-in-law
empty-handed.'"

18 "Wait, my daughter," said Naomi, "until
you find out how things go, for he will not
rest unless he has resolved the matter to-
day."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE THRESHING FLOOR

What Happened That Night?

RUTH 3:1 TO 18 · EZEKIEL 16:8 · PROVERBS 31:10

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Naomi told Ruth to wash, put on perfume and her best clothes, go to the threshing floor, wait until Boaz lay down, then uncover his feet and lie down, 3:3 to 4. At midnight Boaz woke up startled and found her at his feet, 3:8. She asked him to spread the corner of his garment over her, for he was a redeemer, 3:9. He said yes, told her to stay until morning, and she left before anyone could recognize her, 3:13 to 14.

WHAT A THRESHING FLOOR WAS

A flat, open place where grain was beaten loose and tossed into the evening breeze. At harvest the men ate there, celebrated and slept beside the grain to guard it.

SPREAD YOUR WING OVER ME

Ruth used the same word Boaz had used in his prayer, the wings of God, 2:12. In Ezekiel 16:8 God spreads the corner of His garment over Jerusalem, a picture of His people, and makes a marriage covenant with her. Ruth was asking Boaz to marry her.

WHY AT NIGHT?

Women did not usually ask men to marry them, and a widow from Moab had no father or brother to ask for her. A private request let Boaz say yes or no without public shame. Boaz kept it quiet to protect her name, 3:14, and then did everything in public at the gate the next morning, 4:1.

A WOMAN OF NOBLE CHARACTER

Boaz blessed her and called her a woman of noble character, 3:10 to 11, the same words as Proverbs 31:10.

word as His wings in 2:12. It was a way to ask for marriage, Ezekiel 16:8. Boaz prayed for God to cover Ruth, and now he can be the answer.

■ **RUTH 3:11 [NOTE]** A WOMAN OF NOBLE CHARACTER is the same Hebrew phrase as Proverbs 31:10. In the oldest complete Hebrew Bible, Ruth comes right after Proverbs.

■ **RUTH 3:15 [NOTE]** SIX MEASURES. The Hebrew says only six of barley and does not name the measure. It was a big gift, as much as Ruth could carry home.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View

RUTH 3:4 · 3:7 TO 14 · DEUTERONOMY 23:3 · PROVERBS 31:10

VIEW 1: A BOLD BUT PURE PROPOSAL

This is how most Jewish and Christian readers have taken it for centuries. Feet means feet: Ruth uncovered his feet so the cold night air would wake him, and she lay at his feet, 3:14. Old Jewish writings praise Boaz for his self control that night. Boaz blessed her for her kindness, called her a woman of noble character, and waited to marry her until the legal matter was settled. He would not have said those things if she had come to seduce him.

VIEW 2: DOUBLE MEANINGS

Some scholars point out that the Hebrew words for feet, lie down and uncover can sometimes be polite ways to talk about sex. They think the writer used words with a double meaning on purpose, so the reader holds his breath. A few think the two slept together that night. Most who see the double meanings still say the point of the scene is that both acted with honor.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

The first side says the book praises both people again and again, and the text never says anything improper happened. The second side says the writer chose risky words on purpose to build suspense, and the story is about how they handled the risk.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Ruth took a huge risk. Boaz protected her reputation, sent her home with a gift, and settled everything the right way, in public, the next morning. Nobody in the story treats her as cheap. He calls her a woman of noble character.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Boaz goes to the town gate and calls over the closer relative, Mr. So and So. He wants the field until he hears that Ruth comes with it, so he takes off his sandal and backs out. Boaz marries Ruth, and the women of the town name their baby Obed. And Obed? He is King David's grandfather.

BOAZ REDEEMS RUTH

1 Meanwhile, Boaz went to the gate and
sat down there. Soon the kinsman-re-
deemer of whom he had spoken came
along, and Boaz said, "Come over here,
my friend, and sit down." So he went over
and sat down.

2 Then Boaz took ten of the elders of the
city and said, "Sit here," and they did so.

3 And he said to the kinsman-redeemer,
"Naomi, who has returned from the land
of Moab, is selling the piece of land that
belonged to our brother Elimelech. 4 I
thought I should inform you that you may
buy it back in the presence of those
seated here and in the presence of the el-
ders of my people. If you want to redeem
it, do so. But if you will not redeem it, tell
me so I may know, because there is no
one but you to redeem it, and I am next
after you."

"I will redeem it," he replied.

5 Then Boaz said, "On the day you buy the
land from Naomi and also from Ruth the
Moabitess, you must also acquire the
widow of the deceased in order to raise
up the name of the deceased on his in-
heritance."

6 The kinsman-redeemer replied, "I cannot
redeem it myself, or I would jeopardize my
own inheritance. Take my right of re-
demption, because I cannot redeem it."

7 Now in former times in Israel, concerning
the redemption or exchange of property,
to make any matter legally binding a man
would remove his sandal and give it to the
other party, and this was a confirmation in
Israel. 8 So the kinsman-redeemer re-
moved his sandal and said to Boaz, "Buy it
for yourself."

9 At this, Boaz said to the elders and all the
people, "You are witnesses today that I
am buying from Naomi all that belonged
to Elimelech, Chilion, and Mahlon. 10 More-

- **RUTH 4:1 [NOTE]** THE GATE was the town courthouse, where the elders settled business. Boaz calls the other man peloni almoni, a Hebrew way of saying Mr. So and So. The man who would not keep a dead man's name alive does not get his own name in the book.
- **RUTH 4:7 [NOTE]** A custom so old the writer had to explain it. Compare Deuteronomy 25:9, where the widow pulls off the sandal.

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

over, I have acquired Ruth the Moabitess, Mahlon's widow, as my wife, to raise up the name of the deceased through his inheritance, so that his name will not disappear from among his brothers or from the gate of his home. You are witnesses today."

11 "We are witnesses," said the elders and all the people at the gate. "May Yahweh make the woman entering your home like Rachel and Leah, who together built up the house of Israel. May you be prosperous in Ephrathah and famous in Bethlehem. 12 And may your house become like the house of Perez, whom Tamar bore to Judah, because of the offspring Yahweh will give you by this young woman."

BOAZ MARRIES RUTH

13 So Boaz took Ruth, and she became his wife. And when he had relations with her, Yahweh enabled her to conceive, and she gave birth to a son.

14 Then the women said to Naomi, "Blessed be Yahweh, who has not left you this day without a kinsman-redeemer. May his name become famous in Israel. 15 He will renew your life and sustain you in your old age. For your daughter-in-law, who loves you and is better to you than seven sons, has given him birth."

16 And Naomi took the child, placed him on her lap, and became a nurse to him. 17 The neighbor women said, "A son has been born to Naomi," and they named him Obed. He became the father of Jesse, the father of David.

THE LINE OF DAVID // MATTHEW 1:1–17; LUKE 3:23–38

18 Now these are the generations of Perez:
Perez was the father of Hezron,
19 Hezron was the father of Ram,
Ram was the father of Amminadab,
20 Amminadab was the father of Nahshon,
Nahshon was the father of Salmon,
21 Salmon was the father of Boaz,
Boaz was the father of Obed,
22 Obed was the father of Jesse,
and Jesse was the father of David.

- **RUTH 4:9 [FORESHADOW]** Boaz the kinsman redeemer buys back the land and takes Ruth as his wife → EPH 1:7; GAL 4:4-5 p.1878
- **RUTH 4:14 [NOTABLE]** Naomi came home empty, 1:21. Now she has a redeemer, and Ruth is better than seven sons.
- **RUTH 4:17 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** On the Tel Dan Stele
- **RUTH 4:17 [NOTABLE]** The last surprise: a Moabite widow's baby is King David's grandfather, in the line of the Messiah.
- **RUTH 4:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:3-6 p.1550
- **RUTH 4:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:31-33 p.1653

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE MISSING GENERATIONS

Ten Names from Perez to David

RUTH 4:18 TO 22 · NUMBERS 1:7 · MATTHEW 1:3 TO 6 · JOSHUA 2

THE LIST

Perez, Hezron, Ram, Amminadab, Nahshon, Salmon, Boaz, Obed, Jesse, David, 4:18 to 22. The same line is in 1 Chronicles 2:5 to 15, Matthew 1:3 to 6 and Luke 3:31 to 33.

THE MATH

Nahshon led the tribe of Judah in the wilderness, Numbers 1:7, so his son Salmon was alive when Israel entered the land. David was born about 1040 BC. By the early date for the Exodus, that leaves more than 350 years for just four men: Salmon, Boaz, Obed and Jesse. By the late date, it leaves about 170 years.

RAHAB

Matthew 1:5 says Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab, the woman of Jericho, Joshua 2. If Rahab was really Boaz's mother, then Ruth's story happened early in the days of the judges.

AN OLD JEWISH GUESS

The Talmud says Boaz was the same man as Ibzan of Bethlehem, a judge who had thirty sons and thirty daughters, Judges 12:8 to 10. The Bible does not say so.

WHY THE LIST IS HERE

The story could have ended at 4:17. The list ties Ruth back to Perez and Tamar in Genesis 38 and forward to King David, so the reader sees that a small family story was part of God's big plan.

Every View

MATTHEW 1:8 · GENESIS 5 · GENESIS 11:10 TO 26 · GENESIS 49:10

VIEW 1: SOME NAMES ARE SKIPPED

Bible family lists often skip generations, and father of can mean ancestor of. Matthew 1:8 skips three kings of Judah, which helps him count fourteen generations, 1:17. Lists of ten names, like Genesis 5 and Genesis 11, may be built to be easy to remember. So the list gives the famous names, not every one.

VIEW 2: THE LIST IS COMPLETE

Others say every name is there, and these men had sons late in life. Boaz was clearly older than Ruth, 3:10. With the late date for the Exodus, four generations is easier to fit.

VIEW 3: RAHAB AS AN ANCESTOR

Some say Matthew means Rahab was an ancestor of Boaz, not his own mother, the way father can mean ancestor. Others say Matthew means she really was his mother, and that fits the skipped names view.

THE SAME LIST, FOUR TIMES

Ruth, 1 Chronicles 2, Matthew 1 and Luke 3 agree on these names, with small differences. Luke calls Salmon Sala, calls Ram Arni, and adds a name, Admin.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

The point of the list is that David came from Perez, the son of Judah, the tribe that would hold the scepter, Genesis 49:10. God was keeping His promise across hundreds of years, one ordinary family at a time.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE RUTH?

The Traditional View

RUTH 1:1 · 4:7 · 4:17 TO 22 · 1 SAMUEL 16:1

THE BOOK DOES NOT SAY

Ruth never names its writer. What we know comes from tradition and clues in the book.

THE TALMUD

An old Jewish teaching in the Talmud, Bava Batra 14b, says Samuel wrote the book that bears his name, Judges and Ruth.

CLUES IN THE BOOK

It starts In the days when the judges ruled, 1:1, looking back on those days. It explains a custom from former times, 4:7. It ends with David's name, 4:17 and 4:22, so it was written after David was born, and many think after he was famous. It never mentions Solomon, so many traditional scholars think it was written in David's time.

WHERE IT SITS

English Bibles put Ruth right after Judges, like the old Greek Bible. The Hebrew Bible puts it in the third section, the Writings, as one of five short scrolls read on special days each year. Ruth is read at Shavuot, the Feast of Weeks.

WHY IT WAS WRITTEN

To show that David's family came from God's hidden kindness, and that a foreign woman who trusted Yahweh was welcomed into His people.

Every View

RUTH 4:18 TO 22 · 1 CHRONICLES 2:5 TO 15 · EZRA 9 TO 10 · NEHEMIAH 13:23 TO 27

VIEW 1: EARLY, IN DAVID'S TIME

Samuel or someone close to David's court wrote it, to show that David's family was God's choice. Supporters point to the old style of its Hebrew and to the fact that Solomon is never named.

VIEW 2: LATE, AFTER THE EXILE

Many scholars date it to the 500s or 400s BC, pointing to a few later Hebrew words and the way it explains old customs. They think its welcome of a Moabite answered the strict rules about foreign wives in Ezra and Nehemiah's day.

VIEW 3: AN OLD STORY WRITTEN DOWN LATER

Some say the story was told for generations and written down later, and that the family list in 4:18 to 22, which matches 1 Chronicles 2, was added at the end.

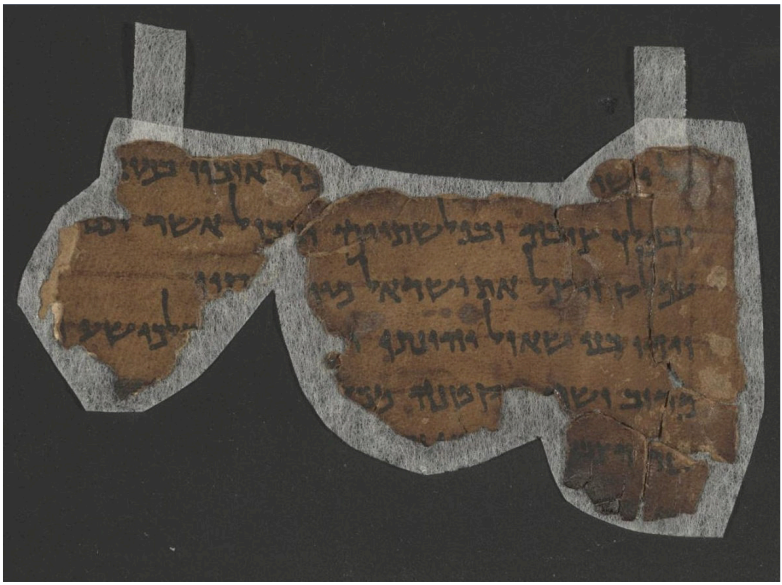
WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Whoever wrote it was a master storyteller. God never speaks and does no miracles in the book, yet the reader ends knowing God was in every step, from a famine in Bethlehem to the birth of a king.

1 SAMUEL

Give Us a King

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Samuel wrote it, and Gad the seer and Nathan the prophet finished it after Samuel died, 25:1. 1 Chronicles 29:29 names the records of Samuel, Nathan and Gad.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Samuel's birth to Saul's death, about one hundred years.
DATE	About 1100 to 1010 BC. Saul became king about 1050 BC and died about 1010 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, to show how God gave them kings, why Saul lost the throne, and why God chose David.
KEY VERSE	1 Samuel 16:7. Man sees the outward appearance, but Yahweh sees the heart.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF SAMUEL
This piece of leather comes from 4QSam a, a scroll of 1 and 2 Samuel found in Cave 4 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. It was copied about 50 to 25 BC. The words Israel and Saul can be read on it.

The scroll is broken into hundreds of pieces. Its wording often matches the old Greek Bible instead of the standard Hebrew text. It gives Goliath's height as about six feet nine inches, 17:4, and it has a paragraph about Nahash that the Hebrew text lacks, 10:27.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

The hill country of Israel, from Shiloh and Ramah in the north to Bethlehem in the south, with the Philistines living along the coast to the west. The Philistines controlled the blacksmiths, 13:19, and had five strong cities, and Israel had no king. 1 Samuel opens at the end of the time of the judges and closes on the day Israel's first king dies.

What Was Going Wrong

BAD PRIESTS. Eli's sons stole from the offerings and slept with the women who served at the tabernacle 2:12 to 17, 2:22.
A LUCKY CHARM. Israel carried the ark into battle as if it were magic, and lost it 4:3 to 11.
IDOLS. Israel served the Baals and the Ashtoreths 7:3 to 4.
BRIBES. Samuel's sons took bribes and twisted justice 8:3.
GIVE US A KING. The people wanted a king like the nations, and God said they had rejected Him 8:5 to 7.
A KING WHO WOULD NOT OBEY. Saul offered a sacrifice he was told to wait for, and spared what God told him to destroy 13:8 to 14, 15:9.
JEALOUSY AND MURDER. Saul tried again and again to kill David, and he had 85 priests killed at Nob 18:11, 22:18.
A KING AT A MEDIUM'S DOOR. Saul asked a medium to bring up Samuel from the dead 28:7 to 8.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Samuel is the story of how Israel got its first kings. It starts with Hannah, a woman who could not have children, praying at Shiloh. Her son Samuel becomes the last judge and a prophet, and he offers sacrifices like a priest. When Samuel grows old, the people demand a king like the other nations. God gives them Saul, tall and good looking, but Saul does not obey God and loses the kingdom. Then God sends Samuel to Bethlehem to anoint the youngest son of Jesse, a shepherd boy named David. David kills Goliath, wins Israel's heart and spends years running from a jealous King Saul. The book ends with Saul's death on Mount Gilboa, with David still waiting for the throne.

1 Samuel at a Glance

CH 1 to 3	**SAMUEL** A praying mother and a boy who hears God.
CH 4 to 7	**THE ARK** Captured by the Philistines, and sent back.
CH 8 to 12	**GIVE US A KING** Saul is chosen and crowned.
CH 13 to 15	**SAUL'S FALL** Two acts of disobedience, and a lost kingdom.
CH 16 to 17	**DAVID** Anointed by Samuel, and Goliath falls.
CH 18 to 27	**ON THE RUN** Saul hunts David, and David will not strike back.
CH 28 to 31	**SAUL'S LAST NIGHT** Endor, Ziklag and Mount Gilboa.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 SAMUEL 2:10 Hannah sings of God's king and His anointed, the Hebrew word that gives us Messiah. Mary's song in Luke 1:46 to 55 echoes Hannah's.

1 SAMUEL 16:13 Samuel anoints David in Bethlehem. Jesus was born in Bethlehem as the Son of David, the King God promised, Luke 2:4 and 2:11.

1 SAMUEL 21:6 David eats the holy bread. Jesus told this story to show that He is Lord of the Sabbath, Matthew 12:3 to 8.

GOD'S NAMES IN 1 SAMUEL

Yahweh, again and again. Yahweh of Hosts, the armies of heaven, first used in 1:3. Hannah calls Him the Rock, 2:2, and Samuel calls Him the Glory of Israel, 15:29. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in 1 Samuel

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (1)	2:10
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	2:35
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (15)	2:31-34, 3:11-14, 4:1-22, 8:5, 8:17-18, 9:1-2, 9:16-17 and 9 more
THE HEART (8)	1:13, 2:1, 6:6, 12:24, 16:7, 17:28, 24:5 and 1 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	17:1-2
MIRACLES (7)	3:10, 5:3-4, 5:6, 6:19, 7:10, 12:17-18, 19:20-24
DEMONIC (21)	5:1-2, 5:5, 5:7, 6:2, 7:3-4, 8:8, 12:10 and 15 more
NOTABLE (5)	2:2, 7:12, 15:22, 17:45-47, 30:6
GOD SPEAKING (38 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (311 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

YAHWEH OF HOSTS

This name, Yahweh of the armies of heaven, is first used in the Bible in 1:3.

A HEAD TALLER

Saul was a head taller than anyone in Israel, 9:2, and he still hid in the baggage, 10:22.

THE CHEESE DELIVERY

David only came to the battle to bring food to his brothers, 17:17 to 18.

1, 2, 3 AND 4 KINGS

1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings used to be called 1, 2, 3 and 4 Kings, because they tell one long story, from Samuel's birth to the fall of Jerusalem. The old Greek Bible named them 1 to 4 Kingdoms, and Latin Bibles named them 1 to 4 Kings. The King James still calls this book The First Book of Samuel, otherwise called The First Book of the Kings. In the Hebrew Bible, 1 and 2 Samuel are one book.

How Did It Turn Out?

Saul and three of his sons died in battle on Mount Gilboa. The people asked for a king like the nations, and they got one, with all the trouble Samuel warned them about. But God had already chosen a man after His own heart. Next comes 2 Samuel, where David finally becomes king.

THE HEART

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Hannah can't have kids, and her husband's other wife rubs it in every single year. Hannah prays so hard at Shiloh that her lips move with no sound, and Eli the priest thinks she is drunk. God hears her anyway. She has a baby, names him Samuel, and keeps her promise: she gives him back to God.

ELKANAH AND HIS WIVES // PSALM 113:1–9

1 Now there was a man named Elkanah
who was from Ramathaim-zophim in the
hill country of Ephraim. He was the son of
Jeroham, the son of Elihu, the son of
Tohu, the son of Zuph, an Ephraimite. 2 He
had two wives, one named Hannah and
the other Peninnah. And Peninnah had
children, but Hannah had none.

3 Year after year Elkanah would go up
from his city to worship and sacrifice to
Yahweh of Hosts at Shiloh, where Eli's two
sons, Hophni and Phinehas, were priests
to Yahweh. 4 And whenever the day came
for Elkanah to present his sacrifice, he
would give portions to his wife Peninnah
and to all her sons and daughters. 5 But to
Hannah he would give a double portion,
for he loved her even though Yahweh had
closed her womb.

6 Because Yahweh had closed Hannah's
womb, her rival would provoke her vi-
ciously to taunt her. 7 And this went on
year after year. Whenever Hannah went
up to the house of Yahweh, her rival
taunted her until she wept and would not
eat.

8 "Hannah, why are you crying?" her hus-
band Elkanah asked. "Why won't you eat?
Why is your heart so grieved? Am I not
better to you than ten sons?"

HANNAH PRAYS FOR A SON

9 So after they had finished eating and
drinking in Shiloh, Hannah stood up. Now
Eli the priest was sitting on a chair by the
doorpost of the temple of Yahweh.

10 In her bitter distress, Hannah prayed to
Yahweh and wept with many tears. 11 And
she made a vow, saying, "O Yahweh of
Hosts, if only You will look upon the afflic-
tion of Your maidservant and remember
me, not forgetting Your maidservant but
giving her a son, then I will dedicate him
to Yahweh all the days of his life, and no
razor shall ever touch his head."

12 As Hannah kept on praying before Yah-
weh, Eli watched her mouth. 13 Hannah
was praying in her heart, and though her
lips were moving, her voice could not be
heard.

So Eli thought she was drunk 14 and said to
her, "How long will you be drunk? Put
away your wine!"

15 "No, my lord," Hannah replied. "I am a
woman troubled in spirit. I have not had
any wine or strong drink, but I have
poured out my soul before Yahweh. 16 Do
not take your servant for a wicked
woman, for all this time I have been pray-
ing out of the depth of my anguish and
grief."

17 "Go in peace," Eli replied, "and may the
God of Israel grant the petition you have
asked of Him."

18 "May your maidservant find favor with
you," said Hannah. Then she went on her
way, and she began to eat, and her face
was no longer downcast.

THE BIRTH OF SAMUEL

19 The next morning they got up early to
bow in worship before Yahweh, and then
they returned home to Ramah.

And Elkanah had relations with his wife
Hannah, and Yahweh remembered her. 20
So in the course of time, Hannah con-
ceived and gave birth to a son. She
named him Samuel, saying, "Because I
have asked for him from Yahweh."

- **1SA 1:3 [NOTE]** YAHWEH OF HOSTS means Yahweh of the armies of heaven. This verse is the first time the Bible uses this name. It is used more than 200 times in the Bible.
- **1SA 1:3 [FIELD NOTES]** Shiloh was a real town where the tabernacle stood. See the Shiloh Field Notes page in Judges, p.412.
- **1SA 1:11 [NOTE]** NO RAZOR. Hannah promises a son who never cuts his hair, like a Nazirite, Numbers 6:5, and like Samson, Judges 13:5.
- **1SA 1:13 [HEART]** Hannah prayed in her heart. Her lips moved but no sound came out. God heard what Eli could not.
- **1SA 1:20 [NOTE]** Samuel sounds like the Hebrew for heard by God, or asked of God. His mother asked, and God heard.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART NOTABLE

21 Then Elkanah and all his house went up
to make the annual sacrifice to Yahweh
and to fulfill his vow, 22 but Hannah did not
go. "After the boy is weaned," she said to
her husband, "I will take him to appear be-
fore Yahweh and to stay there perma-
nently."

23 "Do what you think is best," her hus-
band Elkanah replied, "and stay here until
you have weaned him. Only may Yahweh
confirm His word."

So Hannah stayed and nursed her son un-
til she had weaned him.

24 Once she had weaned him, Hannah took
the boy with her, along with a three-year-
old bull, half a bushel of flour, and a skin
of wine. Though the boy was still young,
she brought him to the house of Yahweh
at Shiloh. 25 And when they had slaugh-
tered the bull, they brought the boy to Eli.

26 "Please, my lord," said Hannah, "as
surely as you live, my lord, I am the
woman who stood here beside you pray-
ing to Yahweh. 27 I prayed for this boy, and
since Yahweh has granted me what I
asked of Him, 28 I now dedicate the boy to
Yahweh. For as long as he lives, he is
dedicated to Yahweh."

So they worshiped Yahweh there.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Hannah sings a song about a God who lifts up the poor and brings down the proud. Meanwhile, Eli's sons are priests who steal the best meat and sleep with the women at the tabernacle door. A man of God shows up with bad news for Eli's family. Little Samuel just keeps growing in favor with God and people.

HANNAH'S PRAYER OF THANKSGIVING // LUKE 1:46–56

1 At that time Hannah prayed:

"My heart rejoices in Yahweh;
my horn is exalted in Yahweh.
My mouth speaks boldly against my ene-
mies,
for I rejoice in Your salvation.

2 There is no one holy like Yahweh.
Indeed, there is no one besides You!
And there is no Rock like our God.

3 Do not boast so proudly,
or let arrogance come from your mouth,
for Yahweh is a God who knows,
and by Him actions are weighed.

4 The bows of the mighty are broken,
but the feeble are equipped with
strength.
5 The well-fed hire themselves out for
food,
but the starving hunger no more.
The barren woman gives birth to seven,
but she who has many sons pines away.

6 Yahweh brings death and gives life;
He brings down to Sheol and raises up.
7 Yahweh sends poverty and wealth;
He humbles and He exalts.
8 He raises the poor from the dust
and lifts the needy from the ash heap.
He seats them among princes
and bestows on them a throne of honor.

For the foundations of the earth are
Yahweh's,
and upon them He has set the world.
9 He guards the steps of His faithful ones,
but the wicked perish in darkness;
for by his own strength shall no man
prevail.

10 Those who oppose Yahweh will be shat-
tered.
He will thunder from heaven against
them.
Yahweh will judge the ends of the earth
and will give power to His king.
He will exalt the horn of His anointed."

11 Then Elkanah went home to Ramah, but
the boy began ministering to Yahweh be-
fore Eli the priest.

- **1SA 2:1 [HEART]** My heart rejoices in Yahweh. Hannah's song starts in her heart, not in her circumstances.
- **1SA 2:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 1:46-55 p.1646
- **1SA 2:2 [NOTABLE]** Hannah's song. Moses called God the Rock in Deuteronomy 32:4, and Hannah sings it too: there is no Rock like our God. Mary sang the same kind of song in Luke 1.
- **1SA 2:10 [PROPHECY]** The Lord's Anointed King → MT 28:18; JN 12:15 · MEDIUM p.1602
- **1SA 2:10 [NOTE]** HIS ANOINTED. The Hebrew word is mashiach, where we get Messiah. Hannah speaks of God's king and His anointed before Israel even had a king.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

ELI'S WICKED SONS

12 Now the sons of Eli were wicked men;
they had no regard for Yahweh 13 or for the
custom of the priests with the people.
When any man offered a sacrifice, the
servant of the priest would come with a
three-pronged meat fork while the meat
was boiling 14 and plunge it into the pan or
kettle or cauldron or cooking pot. And the
priest would claim for himself whatever
the meat fork brought up. This is how they
treated all the Israelites who came to
Shiloh.
15 Even before the fat was burned, the ser-
vant of the priest would come and say to
the man who was sacrificing, "Give the
priest some meat to roast, because he will
not accept boiled meat from you, but only
raw."
16 And if any man said to him, "The fat
must be burned first; then you may take
whatever you want," the servant would re-
ply, "No, you must give it to me right now.
If you refuse, I will take it by force!"
17 Thus the sin of these young men was
severe in the sight of Yahweh, for they
were treating Yahweh's offering with con-
tempt.
18 Now Samuel was ministering before
Yahweh—a boy wearing a linen ephod. 19
Each year his mother would make him a
little robe and bring it to him when she
went with her husband to offer the annual
sacrifice. 20 And Eli would bless Elkanah
and his wife, saying, "May Yahweh give
you children by this woman in place of the
one she dedicated to Yahweh." Then they
would go home.
21 So Yahweh attended to Hannah, and she
conceived and gave birth to three sons
and two daughters.
Meanwhile, the boy Samuel grew up in the
presence of Yahweh.
22 Now Eli was very old, and he heard
about everything his sons were doing to
all Israel and how they were sleeping with
the women who served at the entrance to
the Tent of Meeting.
23 "Why are you doing these things?" Eli
said to his sons. "I hear about your wicked
deeds from all these people. 24 No, my
sons; it is not a good report I hear circu-
lating among Yahweh's people. 25 If a man
sins against another man, God can inter-
cede for him; but if a man sins against
Yahweh, who can intercede for him?"
But they would not listen to their father,
since Yahweh intended to put them to
death.
26 And the boy Samuel continued to grow
in stature and in favor with Yahweh and
with man.

A PROPHECY AGAINST THE HOUSE OF ELI

27 Then a man of God came to Eli and told
him, "This is what Yahweh says: 'Did I not
clearly reveal Myself to your father's
house when they were in Egypt under
Pharaoh's house? 28 And out of all the
tribes of Israel I selected your father to be
My priest, to offer sacrifices on My altar,
to burn incense, and to wear an ephod in
My presence. I also gave to the house of
your father all the food offerings of the Is-
raelites.
29 Why then do you kick at My sacrifice
and offering that I have prescribed for My
dwelling place? You have honored your
sons more than Me by fattening your-
selves with the best of all the offerings of
My people Israel.'
30 Therefore, Yahweh, the God of Israel,
declares:

'I did indeed say that your house
and the house of your father
would walk before Me forever.

But now Yahweh declares:
Far be it from Me!
For I will honor those who honor Me,
but those who despise Me will be dis-
dained.

31 Behold, the days are coming when I will
cut off your strength and the strength of
your father's house, so that no one in it

1SA 2:12 [NOTE] WICKED MEN. The Hebrew says sons of Belial, sons of worthlessness. Paul uses Belial as a name for Satan in 2 Corinthians 6:15.

1SA 2:27 [NOTE] A MESSAGE FROM HEAVEN. A man of God brings God's own words, in red, from here to 2:36.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

will reach old age. 32 You will see distress
in My dwelling place. Despite all that is
good in Israel, no one in your house will
ever again reach old age. 33 And every one
of you that I do not cut off from My altar, I
will cause your eyes to fail and your heart
to grieve. All your descendants will die by
the sword of men.
34 And this sign shall come to you con-
cerning your two sons Hophni and Phine-
has: They will both die on the same day.
35 Then I will raise up for Myself a faithful
priest. He will do whatever is in My heart
and mind. And I will build for him an en-
during house, and he will walk before My
anointed one for all time.
36 And everyone left in your house will
come and bow down to him for a piece of
silver or a morsel of bread, pleading,
"Please appoint me to some priestly office
so that I can eat a piece of bread."'"

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

God's word is rare in those days. One night a voice calls, Samuel! Samuel runs to Eli three times. Eli finally figures out it is God and tells him to say, Speak, for Your servant is listening. Samuel's first message from God is the hardest one a kid could carry: judgment on Eli's house.

YAHWEH CALLS SAMUEL

1 And the boy Samuel ministered to Yah-
weh before Eli.
Now in those days the word of Yahweh
was rare, and visions were scarce. 2 And
at that time Eli, whose eyesight had grown
so dim that he could not see, was lying in
his room.
3 Before the lamp of God had gone out,
Samuel was lying down in the temple of
Yahweh, where the ark of God was lo-
cated.
4 Then Yahweh called to Samuel, and he
answered, "Here I am."
5 He ran to Eli and said, "Here I am, for you
have called me."
"I did not call," Eli replied. "Go back and
lie down."
So he went and lay down.
6 Once again Yahweh called, "Samuel!"
So Samuel got up, went to Eli, and said,
"Here I am, for you have called me."
"My son, I did not call," Eli replied. "Go
back and lie down."
7 Now Samuel did not yet know Yahweh,
because the word of Yahweh had not yet
been revealed to him. 8 Once again, for the
third time, Yahweh called to Samuel. He
got up, went to Eli, and said, "Here I am,
for you have called me."
Then Eli realized that it was Yahweh who
was calling the boy. 9 "Go and lie down,"
he said to Samuel, "and if He calls you,
say, 'Speak, Yahweh, for Your servant is
listening.'"
So Samuel went and lay down in his
place.
10 Then Yahweh came and stood there,
calling as before, "Samuel! Samuel!"
And Samuel answered, "Speak, for Your
servant is listening."
11 Then Yahweh said to Samuel, "I am
about to do something in Israel at which
the ears of all who hear it will tingle. 12 On
that day I will carry out against Eli every-
thing I have spoken about his house, from
beginning to end. 13 I told him that I would
judge his house forever for the iniquity of
which he knows, because his sons blas-
phemed God and he did not restrain them.
14 Therefore I have sworn to the house of
Eli, 'The iniquity of Eli's house shall never
be atoned for by sacrifice or offering.'"

- **1SA 2:31 [PROPHECY]** Eli's family line would be cut off and lose its strength → 1SA 22:18-20; 1KI 2:27 p.474
- **1SA 2:34 [PROPHECY]** Eli's two sons Hophni and Phinehas would die on the same day → 1SA 4:11 p.443
- **1SA 2:35 [FORESHADOW]** A faithful and lasting High Priest would arise → 1KI 2:35; HEB 2:17; HEB 7:24-25 · MEDIUM p.546
- **1SA 3:1 [NOTE]** The word of Yahweh was rare in those days. Samuel was likely a boy, not yet a teenager. Josephus says he was twelve.
- **1SA 3:10 [MIRACLE]** Yahweh comes and stands and calls Samuel by name
- **1SA 3:10 [NOTABLE]** A boy's simple prayer that has become the prayer of every believer who wants to hear God. Samuel did not know God's voice yet, but he was willing.
- **1SA 3:11 [PROPHECY]** Samuel told judgment was coming on Eli's house that 'both ears would tingle' to hear → 1SA 4 p.442

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

SAMUEL SHARES THE VISION

15 Samuel lay down until the morning; then
he opened the doors of the house of Yah-
weh. He was afraid to tell Eli the vision, 16
but Eli called to him and said, "Samuel, my
son."

"Here I am," answered Samuel.

17 "What was the message He gave you?"
Eli asked. "Do not hide it from me. May
God punish you, and ever so severely, if
you hide from me anything He said to
you."

18 So Samuel told him everything and did
not hide a thing from him.

"He is Yahweh," replied Eli. "Let Him do
what is good in His eyes."

19 And Samuel grew, and Yahweh was with
him, and He let none of Samuel's words
fall to the ground.

20 So all Israel from Dan to Beersheba
knew that Samuel was confirmed as a
prophet of Yahweh. 21 And Yahweh contin-
ued to appear at Shiloh, because there He
revealed Himself to Samuel by His word.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel loses a battle to the Philistines, so they bring the ark of God into camp like a lucky charm. It doesn't work. Israel loses again, the ark is captured, and Eli's two sons die. When Eli hears the news, he falls backward and breaks his neck. A baby is born and named Ichabod: the glory is gone.

THE PHILISTINES CAPTURE THE ARK

1 Thus the word of Samuel came to all Is-
rael.

Now the Israelites went out to meet the
Philistines in battle and camped at
Ebenezer, while the Philistines camped at
Aphek. 2 The Philistines arrayed them-
selves against Israel, and as the battle
spread, Israel was defeated by the
Philistines, who struck down about four
thousand men on the battlefield.

3 When the troops returned to the camp,
the elders of Israel asked, "Why has Yah-
weh brought defeat on us before the
Philistines today? Let us bring the ark of
the covenant of Yahweh from Shiloh, so
that it may go with us to save us from the
hand of our enemies."

4 So the people sent men to Shiloh, and
they brought back the ark of the covenant
of Yahweh of Hosts, who sits enthroned
between the cherubim. And the two sons
of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were there
with the ark of the covenant of God.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SITE, DEBATED AS EBENEZER

IZBET SARTAH

1 SAMUEL 4:1 · 5:1 · 7:12



A stone lined pit at Izbet Sartah, likely for storing grain. The ostracon itself is not shown. No free photo of it exists. Photo Bukvoed, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small farm village on a hill about two miles east of Aphek, where the Philistines camped, 4:1. Many scholars think it was Ebenezer, where Israel camped before the battle.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was built in the late 1200s or 1100s BC and left empty around the time of the battle in chapter 4. Some link that to Israel's defeat. Others say it cannot be proved.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Moshe Kochavi and Israel Finkelstein of

1SA 3:20 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:32 p.1993

1SA 4:1 [FULFILLS] Samuel told judgment was coming on Eli's house that 'both ears would tingle' to hear ← 1SA 3:11-14 p.441

1SA 4:1 [FIELD NOTES] A village near Aphek may be the Ebenezer where Israel camped. It had one of the oldest alphabets ever found. See the Izbet Sartah Field Notes page, p.442.

1SA 4:3 [NOTE] A LUCKY CHARM. Israel thought the ark would make God fight for them. They brought the box but not their hearts.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

Tel Aviv University dug it from 1976 to 1978, in what is now the city of Rosh HaAyin.

THE OSTRACON

A piece of pottery with five lines of letters scratched into it. The bottom line is the alphabet, in order. It was likely a student practicing writing, about 1100 BC. It is one of the oldest alphabet writings ever found in the land.

SILOS

The village had dozens of stone lined pits to store grain, like the one in the photo. Farmers lived here, not soldiers.

WHY IT MATTERS

It shows that simple farmers in the hill country could learn to write in the days of Samuel. It also gives a real place for the battle line between Ebenezer and Aphek.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No sign names the village Ebenezer. The match is a good guess, not a sure thing.

5 When the ark of the covenant of Yahweh
entered the camp, all the Israelites raised
such a great shout that the ground shook.
6 On hearing the noise of the shout, the
Philistines asked, "What is this loud
shouting in the camp of the Hebrews?"
And when they realized that the ark of
Yahweh had entered the camp, 7 the
Philistines were afraid. "The gods have
entered their camp!" they said. "Woe to
us, for nothing like this has happened be-
fore. 8 Woe to us! Who will deliver us from
the hand of these mighty gods? These are
the gods who struck the Egyptians with all
kinds of plagues in the wilderness. 9 Take
courage and be men, O Philistines! Other-
wise, you will serve the Hebrews just as
they served you. Now be men and fight!"
10 So the Philistines fought, and Israel was
defeated, and each man fled to his tent.
The slaughter was very great—thirty
thousand foot soldiers of Israel fell. 11 The
ark of God was captured, and Eli's two
sons, Hophni and Phinehas, died.

1SA 4:11 [FULFILLS] Eli's two sons Hophni and Phinehas would die on the same day ← 1SA 2:34 p.441

THE DEATH OF ELI

12 That same day a Benjamite ran from the
battle line all the way to Shiloh, with his
clothes torn and dirt on his head. 13 When
he arrived, there was Eli, sitting on his
chair beside the road and watching, be-
cause his heart trembled for the ark of
God.
When the man entered the city to give a
report, the whole city cried out.
14 Eli heard the outcry and asked, "Why
this commotion?"
So the man hurried over and reported to
Eli. 15 Now Eli was ninety-eight years old,
and his gaze was fixed because he could
not see.
16 "I have just come from the battle," the
man said to Eli. "I fled from there today."
"What happened, my son?" Eli asked.
17 The messenger answered, "Israel has
fled before the Philistines, and there has
been a great slaughter among the people.
Your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, are
both dead, and the ark of God has been
captured."
18 As soon as the ark of God was men-
tioned, Eli fell backward from his chair by
the city gate, and being old and heavy, he
broke his neck and died. And Eli had
judged Israel forty years.
19 Now Eli's daughter-in-law, the wife of
Phinehas, was pregnant and about to give
birth. When she heard the news of the
capture of God's ark and the deaths of her
father-in-law and her husband, she col-
lapsed and gave birth, for her labor pains
overtook her.
20 As she was dying, the women attending
to her said, "Do not be afraid, for you have
given birth to a son!"
But she did not respond or pay any heed.
21 And she named the boy Ichabod, saying,
"The glory has departed from Israel," be-
cause the ark of God had been captured
and her father-in-law and her husband
had been killed.

1SA 4:21 [NOTE] ICHABOD means Where is the glory? The glory of God, His presence with Israel, seemed to be gone.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC

22 "The glory has departed from Israel,"
she said, "for the ark of God has been
captured."

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

The Philistines put the ark in the temple of their god Dagon. Next morning, Dagon is face down on the floor. They stand him back up. Next morning, Dagon is face down again, and this time his head and hands are broken off. Then tumors break out in every city that keeps the ark. Nobody wants it.

THE ARK AFFLICTS THE PHILISTINES

1 After the Philistines had captured the ark
of God, they took it from Ebenezer to Ash-
dod, 2 carried it into the temple of Dagon,
and set it beside his statue.

3 When the people of Ashdod got up early
the next morning, there was Dagon, fallen
on his face before the ark of Yahweh. So
they took Dagon and returned him to his
place.

4 But when they got up early the next
morning, there was Dagon, fallen on his
face before the ark of Yahweh, with his
head and his hands broken off and lying
on the threshold. Only the torso remained.
5 That is why, to this day, the priests of
Dagon and all who enter the temple of
Dagon in Ashdod do not step on the
threshold.

6 Now the hand of Yahweh was heavy on
the people of Ashdod and its vicinity, rav-
aging them and afflicting them with tu-
mors. 7 And when the men of Ashdod saw
what was happening, they said, "The ark
of the God of Israel must not stay here
with us, because His hand is heavy upon
us and upon our god Dagon."

8 So they called together all the rulers of
the Philistines and asked, "What shall we
do with the ark of the God of Israel?"

"It must be moved to Gath," they replied.
So they carried away the ark of the God
of Israel.

9 But after they had moved the ark to Gath,
Yahweh's hand was also against that city,
throwing it into great confusion and af-
flicting the men of the city, both young
and old, with an outbreak of tumors.

10 So they sent the ark of God to Ekron, but
as it arrived, the Ekronites cried out,
"They have brought us the ark of the God
of Israel in order to kill us and our people!"

11 Then the Ekronites called together all the
rulers of the Philistines and said, "Send
away the ark of the God of Israel. It must
return to its place, so that it will not kill us
and our people!"

For a deadly confusion had pervaded the
city; the hand of God was very heavy
upon it. 12 Those who did not die were af-
flicted with tumors, and the outcry of the
city went up to heaven.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

After seven months, the Philistines are done. They send the ark back on a new cart pulled by two mother cows, with a gift of five gold tumors and five gold rats. The cows walk straight to Israel, mooing the whole way. Some men of Beth Shemesh look inside the ark, and it costs them their lives.

THE ARK RETURNED TO ISRAEL

1 When the ark of Yahweh had been in the
land of the Philistines seven months, 2 the
Philistines summoned the priests and di-
viners, saying, "What shall we do with the
ark of Yahweh? Tell us how to send it
back to its place."

3 They replied, "If you return the ark of the
God of Israel, do not send it away empty,
but by all means return it to Him with a
guilt offering. Then you will be healed,
and you will understand why His hand has
not been lifted from you."

4 "What guilt offering should we send back
to Him?" asked the Philistines.

"Five gold tumors and five gold rats," they
said, "according to the number of rulers
of the Philistines, since the same plague
has struck both you and your rulers. 5

1SA 5:1 [DEMONIC] Dagon falls on his face before the ark of God
1SA 5:3 [MIRACLE] Dagon falls on his face before the ark
1SA 5:6 [MIRACLE] Yahweh strikes the people of Ashdod with tumors

1SA 6:2 [DEMONIC] The Philistines ask their priests and diviners about the ark

THE HEART MIRACLES

Make images of your tumors and of the rats that are ravaging the land. Give glory to the God of Israel, and perhaps He will lift His hand from you and your gods and your land.

6 Why harden your hearts as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened theirs? When He afflicted them, did they not send the people out so they could go on their way?

7 Now, therefore, prepare one new cart with two milk cows that have never been yoked. Hitch the cows to the cart, but take their calves away and pen them up. 8 Take the ark of Yahweh, set it on the cart, and in a chest beside it put the gold objects you are sending back to Him as a guilt offering.

Then send the ark on its way, 9 but keep watching it. If it goes up the road to its homeland, toward Beth-shemesh, it is Yahweh who has brought on us this great disaster. But if it does not, then we will know that it was not His hand that punished us and that it happened by chance."

10 So the men did as instructed. They took two milk cows, hitched them to the cart, and penned up their calves. 11 Then they put the ark of Yahweh on the cart, along with the chest containing the gold rats and the images of the tumors.

12 And the cows headed straight up the road toward Beth-shemesh, staying on that one highway and lowing as they went, never straying to the right or to the left. The rulers of the Philistines followed behind them to the border of Beth-shemesh.

13 Now the people of Beth-shemesh were harvesting wheat in the valley, and when they looked up and saw the ark, they were overjoyed at the sight.

14 The cart came to the field of Joshua of Beth-shemesh and stopped there near a large rock. The people chopped up the cart and offered the cows as a burnt offering to Yahweh. 15 And the Levites took down the ark of Yahweh and the chest containing the gold objects, and they placed them on the large rock. That day the men of Beth-shemesh offered burnt offerings and made sacrifices to Yahweh.

16 And when the five rulers of the Philistines saw this, they returned to Ekron that same day.

17 As a guilt offering to Yahweh, the Philistines had sent back one gold tumor for each city: Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron. 18 The number of gold rats also corresponded to the number of Philistine cities belonging to the five rulers—the fortified cities and their outlying villages. And the large rock on which they placed the ark of Yahweh stands to this day in the field of Joshua of Beth-shemesh.

19 But God struck down some of the people of Beth-shemesh because they looked inside the ark of Yahweh. He struck down seventy men, and the people mourned because Yahweh had struck them with a great slaughter.

20 The men of Beth-shemesh asked, "Who can stand in the presence of Yahweh, this holy God? To whom should the ark go up from here?"

21 So they sent messengers to the people of Kiriath-jearim, saying, "The Philistines have returned the ark of Yahweh. Come down and take it up with you."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Twenty years later Israel finally gets serious. They throw out their idols, and Samuel gathers them at Mizpah to pray. The Philistines attack, God thunders from heaven, and the Philistines run. Samuel sets up a stone and calls it Ebenezer: thus far Yahweh has helped us.

SAMUEL SUBDUES THE PHILISTINES

1 Then the men of Kiriath-jearim came for the ark of Yahweh and took it into Abinadab's house on the hill. And they

1SA 6:6 [HEART] The Philistines asked why they should harden their hearts like Pharaoh did.

1SA 6:19 [MIRACLE] Men of Beth Shemesh struck down for looking into the ark

1SA 6:19 [TEXT] SEVENTY MEN. The standard Hebrew text says seventy men, fifty thousand men. Most think the large number is a copying mistake. A few Hebrew copies and Josephus have only seventy. The King James says fifty thousand and threescore and ten.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

consecrated his son Eleazar to guard the ark of Yahweh.

2 And from that day a long time passed, twenty years in all, as the ark remained at Kiriath-jearim. And all the house of Israel mournfully sought Yahweh.

3 Then Samuel said to all the house of Israel, "If you are returning to Yahweh with all your hearts, then put away the foreign gods and Ashtoreths among you, prepare your hearts for Yahweh, and serve Him only. And He will deliver you from the hand of the Philistines."

4 So the Israelites put away the Baals and Ashtoreths and served only Yahweh.

5 Then Samuel said, "Gather all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to Yahweh on your behalf."

6 When they had gathered at Mizpah, they drew water and poured it out before Yahweh. On that day they fasted, and there they confessed, "We have sinned against Yahweh." And Samuel judged the Israelites at Mizpah.

7 When the Philistines heard that the Israelites had gathered at Mizpah, their rulers marched up toward Israel. And when the Israelites learned of this, they feared the Philistines 8 and said to Samuel, "Do not stop crying out to Yahweh our God for us, that He may save us from the hand of the Philistines."

9 Then Samuel took a suckling lamb and offered it as a whole burnt offering to Yahweh. He cried out to Yahweh on behalf of Israel, and Yahweh answered him. 10 As the Philistines drew near to fight against Israel, Samuel was offering up the burnt offering. But that day Yahweh thundered loudly against the Philistines and threw them into such confusion that they fled before Israel.

11 Then the men of Israel charged out of Mizpah and pursued the Philistines, striking them down all the way to an area below Beth-car.

12 Afterward, Samuel took a stone and set it up between Mizpah and Shen. He named it Ebenezer, saying, "Thus far Yahweh has helped us."

13 So the Philistines were subdued, and they stopped invading the territory of Israel. And the hand of Yahweh was against the Philistines all the days of Samuel. 14 The cities from Ekron to Gath, which the Philistines had taken, were restored to Israel, who also delivered the surrounding territory from the hand of the Philistines. And there was peace between the Israelites and the Amorites.

15 So Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life. 16 Every year he would go on a circuit from Bethel to Gilgal to Mizpah, judging Israel in all these places. 17 Then he would return to Ramah because his home was there, and there he judged Israel and built an altar to Yahweh.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Samuel gets old, and his sons take bribes. The elders say, Give us a king like all the other nations. Samuel takes it personally. God tells him, They have not rejected you. They have rejected Me. Samuel warns them that a king will take their sons, their fields and their money. They want one anyway.

ISRAEL DEMANDS A KING // DEUTERONOMY 17:14–20

1 When Samuel grew old, he appointed his sons as judges over Israel. 2 The name of his firstborn son was Joel, and the name of his second was Abijah. They were judges in Beersheba. 3 But his sons did not walk in his ways; they turned aside toward dishonest gain, accepting bribes and perverting justice.

4 So all the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah. 5 "Look," they said, "you are old, and your sons do not walk in your ways. Now ap-

1SA 7:3 [DEMONIC] Israel puts away the Baals and Ashtoreths

1SA 7:10 [MIRACLE] Yahweh thunders and throws the Philistines into confusion

1SA 7:12 [NOTABLE] Ebenezer means stone of help. It is the same name as the place where Israel lost the ark in chapter 4. Now the name stands for God's help. The old hymn says, Here I raise my Ebenezer.

1SA 7:12 [NOTE] EBENEZER means stone of help. It is the same name as the place where Israel lost the ark in 4:1. The old hymn says, Here I raise my Ebenezer.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

point a king to judge us like all the other nations."

6 But when they said, "Give us a king to judge us," their demand was displeasing in the sight of Samuel; so he prayed to Yahweh.

7 And Yahweh said to Samuel, "Listen to the voice of the people in all that they say to you. For it is not you they have rejected, but they have rejected Me as their king. 8 Just as they have done from the day I brought them up out of Egypt until this day, forsaking Me and serving other gods, so they are doing to you. 9 Now listen to their voice; but you must solemnly warn them and show them the manner of the king who will reign over them."

SAMUEL'S WARNING

10 So Samuel spoke all the words of Yahweh to the people who were asking him for a king. 11 He said, "This will be the manner of the king who will reign over you: He will take your sons and appoint them to serve his own chariots and horses, and to run in front of his chariots.

12 He will appoint some for himself as commanders of thousands and of fifties, and others to plow his ground, to reap his harvest, and to make his weapons of war and equipment for his chariots.

13 And he will take your daughters to be perfumers, cooks, and bakers.

14 He will take the best of your fields and vineyards and olive groves and give them to his servants. 15 He will take a tenth of your grain and grape harvest and give it to his officials and servants. 16 And he will take your menservants and maidservants and your best cattle and donkeys and put them to his own use.

17 He will take a tenth of your flocks, and you yourselves will become his slaves. 18 When that day comes, you will beg for relief from the king you have chosen, but Yahweh will not answer you on that day."

GOD GRANTS THE REQUEST

19 Nevertheless, the people refused to listen to Samuel. "No!" they said. "We must have a king over us. 20 Then we will be like all the other nations, with a king to judge us, to go out before us, and to fight our battles."

21 Samuel listened to all the words of the people and repeated them in the hearing of Yahweh.

22 "Listen to their voice," Yahweh said to Samuel. "Appoint a king for them."

Then Samuel told the men of Israel, "Everyone must go back to his city."

- **1SA 8:5 [FULFILLS]** Israel would one day ask for a king like all the nations ← DT 17:14 p.307
- **1SA 8:5 [NOTE]** LIKE ALL THE NATIONS. Deuteronomy 17:14 to 20 said a king could come someday. See the Big Question pages Why Did Israel Want a King?, p.447
- **1SA 8:8 [DEMONIC]** Israel has served other gods since Egypt
- **1SA 8:17 [PROPHECY]** Samuel warned that a king would take their goods and they would cry out to be free of him → 1KI 12:4 · MEDIUM p.567

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DID ISRAEL WANT A KING?

What Happened

1 SAMUEL 8:1 TO 22 · 10:17 TO 19 · 12:12 TO 19 · DEUTERONOMY 17:14 TO 20

THE ASK

Samuel was old, and his sons took bribes. So the elders came to him at Ramah and said, Give us a king to judge us like all the other nations, 8:5. Later they added, We want a king to go out before us and fight our battles, 8:20.

GOD'S ANSWER

Samuel was upset. God told him, They have not rejected you. They have rejected Me as their king, 8:7. Then God told Samuel to give them a king anyway, but to warn them first.

THE WARNING

A king will take, Samuel said, again and again: your sons for his army, your daughters for his kitchen, your best fields, a tenth of your grain and flocks, and you yourselves will be his servants, 8:11 to 17. The people said, No, we want a king, 8:19.

BUT A KING WAS ALLOWED

Hundreds of years earlier, Deuteronomy 17:14 to 20 said that when Israel asked for a king like the nations, they could have one, if he was the king God chose. He must not pile up horses, wives or gold, and he must copy God's law and

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

read it every day. God had also promised Abraham that kings would come from him, Genesis 17:6.

THE QUESTION

If God allowed a king, why was it wrong to ask for one?

Every View

1 SAMUEL 8:7 · 12:12 · 12:20 TO 24 · GENESIS 49:10 · JUDGES 8:23

VIEW 1: THE WRONG REASON

A king was not the problem. Their reason was. They wanted to be like the nations and trust a man with an army instead of trusting God. When Nahash attacked, they asked for a king even though Yahweh was their king, 12:12. Gideon had said it long before: Yahweh will rule over you, Judges 8:23.

VIEW 2: THE WRONG TIME

God planned a king all along, from the tribe of Judah, Genesis 49:10. Israel jumped ahead of God. They got Saul from Benjamin first, and then God gave them David from Judah, the king He had in mind.

VIEW 3: TWO VOICES

Many scholars notice that some chapters sound for the king, like 9:1 to 10:16, and some sound against it, like 8, 10:17 to 27 and 12. Some think the writer joined older stories. Others say one writer showed both sides on purpose, because a king was both a gift and a danger.

WHAT HAPPENED NEXT

Everything Samuel warned about came true. Solomon took heavy taxes and forced labor, and the kingdom split over it, 1 Kings 12:4. Yet God still worked through the kings and promised David a forever throne, 2 Samuel 7:16.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Samuel told them, Do not be afraid. Serve Yahweh with all your heart, and He will not abandon you, 12:20 to 22. Christians believe the perfect King came at last: Jesus, the Son of David.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Saul is tall, handsome, and out looking for his dad's lost donkeys. He never finds the donkeys. Instead he finds Samuel, who has saved him the best piece of meat at dinner. God had told Samuel the day before: this is the man.

SAUL CHOSEN AS KING

1 Now there was a Benjamite, a powerful
man, whose name was Kish son of Abiel,
the son of Zeror, the son of Becorath, the
son of Aphiah of Benjamin. 2 And he had a
son named Saul, choice and handsome,
without equal among the Israelites—a
head taller than any of the people.

3 One day the donkeys of Saul's father
Kish wandered off, and Kish said to his
son Saul, "Take one of the servants and
go look for the donkeys."

4 So Saul passed through the hill country
of Ephraim and then through the land of
Shalishah, but they did not find the don-
keys. He and the servant went through the
region of Shaalim, but they were not
there. Then they went through the land of
Benjamin, and still they did not find them.

5 When they reached the land of Zuph,
Saul said to his servant, "Come, let us go
back, or my father will stop worrying
about the donkeys and start worrying
about us."

6 "Look," said the servant, "in this city
there is a man of God who is highly re-
spected; everything he says surely comes
to pass. Let us go there now. Perhaps he
will tell us which way to go."

7 "If we do go," Saul replied, "what can we
give the man? For the bread in our packs
is gone, and there is no gift to take to the
man of God. What do we have?"

8 The servant answered him again. "Look,"
he said, "I have here in my hand a tenth of
an ounce of silver. I will give it to the man
of God, and he will tell us our way."

9 (Formerly in Israel, a man on his way to
inquire of God would say, "Come, let us

1SA 9:1 [FULFILLS] Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; in the morning he shall devour the prey, and at night divide the spoil ← GEN 49:27 · MEDIUM p.115

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

go to the seer." For the prophet of today was formerly called the seer.)

10 "Good," said Saul to his servant. "Come, let us go." So they set out for the city where the man of God was. 11 And as they were climbing the hill to the city, they met some young women coming out to draw water and asked, "Is the seer here?"

12 "Yes, he is ahead of you," they answered. "Hurry now, for today he has come to the city because the people have a sacrifice on the high place. 13 As soon as you enter the city, you will find him before he goes up to the high place to eat. The people will not eat until he comes, because he must bless the sacrifice; after that, the guests will eat. Go up at once; you will find him."

14 So Saul and his servant went up toward the city, and as they were entering it, there was Samuel coming toward them on his way up to the high place.

15 Now on the day before Saul's arrival, Yahweh had revealed to Samuel, 16 "At this time tomorrow I will send you a man from the land of Benjamin, and you are to anoint him ruler over My people Israel; he will save them from the hand of the Philistines. For I have looked upon My people, because their cry has come to Me."

17 When Samuel saw Saul, Yahweh told him, "Here is the man of whom I spoke; he shall rule over My people."

18 Saul approached Samuel in the gateway and asked, "Would you please tell me where the seer's house is?"

19 "I am the seer," Samuel replied. "Go up before me to the high place, for you shall eat with me today. And when I send you off in the morning, I will tell you all that is in your heart. 20 As for the donkeys you lost three days ago, do not worry about them, for they have been found. And upon whom is all the desire of Israel, if not upon you and all your father's house?"

21 Saul replied, "Am I not a Benjamite from the smallest tribe of Israel, and is not my clan the least of all the clans of Benjamin? So why would you say such a thing to me?"

22 Then Samuel took Saul and his servant, brought them into the hall, and seated them in the place of honor among those who were invited—about thirty in all. 23 And Samuel said to the cook, "Bring the portion I gave you and told you to set aside."

24 So the cook picked up the leg and what was attached to it and set it before Saul. Then Samuel said, "Here is what was kept back. It was set apart for you. Eat, for it has been kept for you for this occasion, from the time I said, 'I have invited the people.'" So Saul dined with Samuel that day.

25 And after they had come down from the high place into the city, Samuel spoke with Saul on the roof of his house.

26 They got up early in the morning, and just before dawn Samuel called to Saul on the roof, "Get ready, and I will send you on your way!" So Saul got ready, and both he and Samuel went outside together.

27 As they were going down to the edge of the city, Samuel said to Saul, "Tell the servant to go on ahead of us, but you stay for a while, and I will reveal to you the word of God." So the servant went on.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Samuel pours oil on Saul's head and kisses him. Everything Samuel said would happen on the way home happens, and Saul even prophesies with a band of prophets. At the big public pick, Saul is chosen, but nobody can find him. He is hiding in the baggage. God points him out.

SAMUEL ANOINTS SAUL

1 Then Samuel took a flask of oil, poured it on Saul's head, kissed him, and said, "Has not Yahweh anointed you ruler over His inheritance? 2 When you leave me today, you will find two men at Rachel's tomb in

1SA 9:9 [NOTE] SEER. A writer added this note for later readers who no longer used the old word seer.
1SA 9:16 [PROPHECY] God told Samuel a man from Benjamin would come to him the next day to be anointed king → 1SA 9:17; 1SA 10:1 p.449
1SA 9:17 [FULFILLS] God told Samuel a man from Benjamin would come to him the next day to be anointed king ← 1SA 9:16 p.449

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

Zelzah on the border of Benjamin. They will say to you, 'The donkeys you seek have been found, and now your father has stopped worrying about the donkeys and started worrying about you, asking, "What should I do about my son?"'

3 Then you will go on from there until you come to the Oak of Tabor. Three men going up to God at Bethel will meet you there, one carrying three young goats, another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a skin of wine. 4 They will greet you and give you two loaves of bread, which you will accept from their hands.

5 After that you will come to Gibeah of God, where the Philistines have an outpost. As you approach the city, you will meet a group of prophets coming down from the high place, preceded by harps, tambourines, flutes, and lyres, and they will be prophesying.

6 Then the Spirit of Yahweh will rush upon you, and you will prophesy with them; and you will be transformed into a different person.

7 When these signs have come, do as the occasion demands, for God is with you. 8 And you shall go before me to Gilgal, and surely I will come to you to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice peace offerings. Wait seven days until I come to you and show you what you are to do."

SAMUEL'S SIGNS FULFILLED

9 As Saul turned to leave Samuel, God changed Saul's heart, and all the signs came to pass that day. 10 When Saul and his servant arrived at Gibeah, a group of prophets met him. Then the Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he prophesied along with them.

11 When all those who had formerly known Saul saw him prophesying with the prophets, they asked one another, "What has happened to the son of Kish? Is Saul also among the prophets?"

12 Then a man who lived there replied, "And who is their father?" So the saying became a proverb: "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

13 And when Saul had finished prophesying, he went up to the high place.

14 Now Saul's uncle asked him and his servant, "Where did you go?"

"To look for the donkeys," Saul replied. "When we saw they were not to be found, we went to Samuel."

15 "Tell me," Saul's uncle asked, "what did Samuel say to you?"

16 And Saul replied, "He assured us that the donkeys had been found." But Saul did not tell his uncle what Samuel had said about the kingship.

SAUL PROCLAIMED KING

17 After this, Samuel summoned the people to Yahweh at Mizpah 18 and said to the Israelites, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'I brought Israel up out of Egypt, and I rescued you from the hands of the Egyptians and of all the kingdoms that oppressed you.'

19 But today you have rejected your God, who saves you from all your troubles and afflictions, and you have said to Him, 'No, set a king over us.' Now therefore present yourselves before Yahweh by your tribes and clans."

20 Thus Samuel had all the tribes of Israel come forward, and the tribe of Benjamin was selected. 21 Then he had the tribe of Benjamin come forward by its clans, and the clan of Matri was selected. Finally, Saul son of Kish was selected. But when they looked for him, they could not find him. 22 So again they inquired of Yahweh, "Has the man come here yet?"

- **1SA 10:1 [NOTABLE]** The first anointing of an Israelite king; the beginning of the monarchy
- **1SA 10:1 [FULFILLS]** God told Samuel a man from Benjamin would come to him the next day to be anointed king ← 1SA 9:16 p.449
- **1SA 10:2 [PROPHECY]** Samuel gave Saul signs of who he would meet on the road home → 1SA 10:9-10 p.450
- **1SA 10:9 [HEART]** God changed Saul's heart. The Hebrew says God gave him another heart.
- **1SA 10:9 [MIRACLE]** God changes Saul's heart and the Spirit comes on him
- **1SA 10:9 [FULFILLS]** Samuel gave Saul signs of who he would meet on the road home ← 1SA 10:2 p.449

- **1SA 10:11 [NOTE]** IS SAUL ALSO AMONG THE PROPHETS? This became a saying, used again in 19:24, for someone acting very unlike himself.

GOD SPEAKING

And Yahweh replied, "Behold, he has hidden himself among the baggage."

23 So they ran and brought Saul, and when he stood among the people, he was a head taller than any of the others. 24 Samuel said to all the people, "Do you see the one Yahweh has chosen? There is no one like him among all the people."

And all the people shouted, "Long live the king!"

25 Then Samuel explained to the people the rights of kingship. He wrote them on a scroll and laid it up before Yahweh. And Samuel sent all the people away, each to his own home.

26 Saul also went to his home in Gibeah, and the men of valor whose hearts God had touched went with him.

27 But some worthless men said, "How can this man save us?" So they despised him and brought him no gifts; but Saul remained silent about it.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Nahash the Ammonite offers the town of Jabesh Gilead a deal: surrender, and he will gouge out everyone's right eye. Saul hears about it, the Spirit of God comes on him, and he rallies 330,000 men. Jabesh is rescued, and Israel crowns Saul king at Gilgal.

SAUL DEFEATS THE AMMONITES

1 Then Nahash the Ammonite came up and laid siege to Jabesh-gilead. All the men of Jabesh said to him, "Make a treaty with us, and we will serve you."

2 But Nahash the Ammonite replied, "I will make a treaty with you on one condition, that I may put out everyone's right eye and bring reproach upon all Israel."

3 "Hold off for seven days," replied the elders of Jabesh, "and let us send messengers throughout Israel. If there is no one to save us, we will surrender to you."

4 When the messengers came to Gibeah of Saul and relayed these words in the hearing of the people, they all wept aloud.

5 Just then Saul was returning from the field, behind his oxen. "What troubles the people?" asked Saul. "Why are they weeping?" And they relayed to him the words of the men from Jabesh.

6 When Saul heard their words, the Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he burned with great anger. 7 He took a pair of oxen, cut them into pieces, and sent them by messengers throughout the land of Israel, proclaiming, "This is what will be done to the oxen of anyone who does not march behind Saul and Samuel."

Then the terror of Yahweh fell upon the people, and they came out together as one man. 8 And when Saul numbered them at Bezek, there were 300,000 Israelites and 30,000 men of Judah. 9 So they said to the messengers who had come, "Tell the men of Jabesh-gilead: 'Deliverance will be yours tomorrow by the time the sun is hot.'"

And when the messengers relayed this to the men of Jabesh, they rejoiced.

10 Then the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, "Tomorrow we will come out, and you can do with us whatever seems good to you."

11 The next day Saul organized the troops into three divisions, and during the morning watch they invaded the camp of the Ammonites and slaughtered them, until the hottest part of the day. And the survivors were so scattered that no two of them were left together.

SAUL CONFIRMED AS KING

12 Then the people said to Samuel, "Who said that Saul should not reign over us? Bring those men here so we can kill them!"

13 But Saul ordered, "No one shall be put to death this day, for today Yahweh has worked salvation in Israel."

14 Then Samuel said to the people, "Come, let us go to Gilgal and renew the kingship there."

1SA 10:27 [TEXT] A MISSING PARAGRAPH? A Dead Sea Scroll, 4QSam a, has a paragraph here that the Hebrew text does not. It says Nahash king of the Ammonites had been cruelly oppressing Gad and Reuben, gouging out each man's right eye, and 7,000 men had escaped to Jabesh Gilead. Josephus tells the same story. The NRSV prints it. Most Bibles, like this one, do not.

MIRACLES DEMONIC

15 So all the people went to Gilgal and confirmed Saul as king in the presence of
Yahweh. There they sacrificed peace offerings before Yahweh, and Saul and all
the Israelites rejoiced greatly.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Samuel gives his farewell speech. Did I ever steal from any of you? Nobody can think of a thing. He reminds them that asking for a king was wrong, then he prays, and God sends thunder and rain in the middle of the dry harvest season. The people get the point.

SAMUEL'S FAREWELL ADDRESS

1 Then Samuel said to all Israel, "I have listened to your voice in all that you have
said to me, and I have set over you a king.
2 Now here is the king walking before you,
and I am old and gray, and my sons are
here with you. I have walked before you
from my youth until this day.
3 Here I am. Bear witness against me before Yahweh and before His anointed:
Whose ox or donkey have I taken? Whom
have I cheated or oppressed? From
whose hand have I accepted a bribe and
closed my eyes? Tell me, and I will restore
it to you."
4 "You have not cheated us or oppressed
us," they replied, "nor have you taken
anything from the hand of man."
5 Samuel said to them, "Yahweh is a witness against you, and His anointed is a
witness today, that you have not found
anything in my hand."
"He is a witness," they replied.
6 Then Samuel said to the people, "Yahweh is the One who appointed Moses and
Aaron, and who brought your fathers up
out of the land of Egypt. 7 Now present
yourselves, so that I may confront you before Yahweh with all the righteous acts He
has done for you and your fathers.
8 When Jacob went to Egypt, your fathers
cried out to Yahweh, and He sent them
Moses and Aaron, who brought your fathers out of Egypt and settled them in this
place. 9 But they forgot Yahweh their God,
and He sold them into the hand of Sisera
the commander of the army of Hazor, and
into the hands of the Philistines and the
king of Moab, who fought against them.
10 Then they cried out to Yahweh and said,
'We have sinned, for we have forsaken
Yahweh and served the Baals and Ashtoreths. Now deliver us from the hands of
our enemies, that we may serve You.'
11 So Yahweh sent Jerubbaal, Barak, Jephthah, and Samuel, and He delivered you
from the hands of your enemies on every
side, and you dwelt securely. 12 But when
you saw that Nahash king of the Ammonites was moving against you, you said
to me, 'No, we must have a king to rule
over us'—even though Yahweh your God
was your king.
13 Now here is the king you have chosen,
the one you requested. Behold, Yahweh
has placed a king over you.
14 If you fear Yahweh and serve Him and
obey His voice, and if you do not rebel
against the command of Yahweh, and if
both you and the king who rules over you
follow Yahweh your God, then all will be
well. 15 But if you disobey Yahweh and
rebel against His command, then the hand
of Yahweh will be against you as it was
against your fathers.
16 Now, therefore, present yourselves and
see this great thing that Yahweh will do
before your eyes. 17 Is it not the wheat harvest today? I will call on Yahweh to send
thunder and rain, so that you will know
and see what a great evil you have committed in the sight of Yahweh by asking
for a king."
18 So Samuel called to Yahweh, and on that
day Yahweh sent thunder and rain.
As a result, all the people greatly feared
Yahweh and Samuel. 19 They pleaded with
Samuel, "Pray to Yahweh your God for
your servants so that we will not die! For
we have added to all our sins the evil of
asking for a king."

1SA 12:10 [DEMONIC] Israel confesses serving the Baals and Ashtoreths
1SA 12:17 [MIRACLE] Thunder and rain in wheat harvest at Samuel's prayer

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

20 "Do not be afraid," Samuel replied. "Even though you have committed all this evil, do not turn aside from following Yahweh, but serve Yahweh with all your heart. 21 Do not turn aside after worthless things that cannot profit you or deliver you, for they are empty. 22 Indeed, for the sake of His great name, Yahweh will not abandon His people, because He was pleased to make you His own.

23 As for me, far be it from me that I should sin against Yahweh by ceasing to pray for you. And I will continue to teach you the good and right way.

24 Above all, fear Yahweh and serve Him faithfully with all your heart; consider what great things He has done for you. 25 But if you persist in doing evil, both you and your king will be swept away."

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

The Philistines gather a huge army, and Saul's men start sneaking away. Samuel said to wait seven days. Saul waits, Samuel is late, and Saul offers the sacrifice himself. Samuel walks in as he finishes. Your kingdom will not last, Samuel says. Also, the Philistines won't let Israel have blacksmiths.

WAR WITH THE PHILISTINES

1 Saul was thirty years old when he became king, and he reigned over Israel forty-two years. 2 He chose for himself three thousand men of Israel: Two thousand were with Saul at Michmash and in the hill country of Bethel, and a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin. And the rest of the troops he sent away, each to his own home.

3 Then Jonathan attacked the Philistine outpost at Geba, and the Philistines heard about it. So Saul blew the ram's horn throughout the land, saying, "Let the Hebrews hear!"

4 And all Israel heard the news: "Saul has attacked an outpost of the Philistines, and now Israel has become a stench to the Philistines!" Then the people were summoned to join Saul at Gilgal.

5 Now the Philistines assembled to fight against Israel with three thousand chariots, six thousand horsemen, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. They went up and camped at Michmash, east of Beth-aven.

6 Seeing that they were in danger because their troops were hard-pressed, the men of Israel hid in caves and thickets, among the rocks, and in cellars and cisterns. 7 Some Hebrews even crossed the Jordan into the land of Gad and Gilead. Saul, however, remained at Gilgal, and all his troops were quaking in fear.

SAUL'S UNLAWFUL SACRIFICE

8 And Saul waited seven days for the time appointed by Samuel, but Samuel did not come to Gilgal, and the troops began to desert Saul. 9 So he said, "Bring me the burnt offering and the peace offerings." And he offered up the burnt offering.

10 Just as he finished offering the burnt offering, Samuel arrived, and Saul went out to greet him.

11 "What have you done?" Samuel asked.

And Saul replied, "When I saw that the troops were deserting me, and that you did not come at the appointed time and the Philistines were gathering at Michmash, 12 I thought, 'Now the Philistines will descend upon me at Gilgal, and I have not sought the favor of Yahweh.' So I felt compelled to offer the burnt offering."

13 "You have acted foolishly," Samuel declared. "You have not kept the command that Yahweh your God gave you; if you had, Yahweh would have established your kingdom over Israel for all time. 14 *But now your kingdom will not endure; Yahweh has sought a man after His own heart and appointed him ruler over His people, because you have not kept the command of Yahweh."*

1SA 12:21 [DEMONIC] Do not turn aside after worthless things

1SA 12:24 [HEART] Fear the Lord and serve Him faithfully with all your heart.

1SA 13:1 [TEXT] SAUL'S AGE. The Hebrew text is damaged here. It says Saul was a year old when he became king, and he reigned two years. Numbers were lost in copying. This Bible says thirty, from a few Greek copies. Forty two years is a best guess that adds forty to the two. Acts 13:21 says Saul reigned forty years.

1SA 13:9 [NOTE] Saul was not a priest, and Samuel had told him to wait seven days, 10:8. See the Big Question pages Saul's Lost Kingdom, p.455.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE PIM WEIGHT

1 SAMUEL 13:19 TO 22



A stone weight marked pim in old Hebrew letters. It is in a private collection, and where it was found is not known. Public domain photo.

WHAT IT IS

A small, smooth stone weight, rounded like a dome, used to weigh silver. The Hebrew letters on top spell pim.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most pim weights found so far come from Judah in the 700s and 600s BC, the days of the later kings.

THE MYSTERY WORD

Pim shows up only once in the whole Bible, here in 13:21. For centuries nobody knew what it meant. The King James guessed it was a file, a tool for sharpening.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the early 1900s, archaeologists began finding little stone weights marked pim at sites in Israel. Many have been found since.

WHAT THEY SHOW

A pim weighs about a quarter of an ounce. So pim was a price: the Philistines charged a pim of silver to sharpen a plow.

WHY IT MATTERS

A word that went out of use was explained by a stone pulled out of the ground. Some scholars also say the word shows the story was written while pim was still a known weight. Others say the dates of the weights do not settle when the book was written.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The weights are from centuries after Saul. They show what the word meant, not who paid it.

15 Then Samuel set out from Gilgal and
went up to Gibeah in Benjamin. And Saul
numbered the troops who were with him,
about six hundred men.

ISRAEL WITHOUT WEAPONS

16 Now Saul and Jonathan his son and the
troops with them were staying in Geba of
Benjamin, while the Philistines camped at
Michmash. 17 And raiders went out of the
Philistine camp in three divisions. One
headed toward Ophrah in the land of
Shual, 18 another toward Beth-horon, and
the third down the border road overlooking the Valley of Zeboim facing the wilderness.

19 And no blacksmith could be found in all
the land of Israel, because the Philistines
had said, "The Hebrews must not be allowed to make swords or spears." 20 Instead, all the Israelites would go down to
the Philistines to sharpen their plowshares, mattocks, axes, and sickles. 21 The
charge was a pim, about a quarter ounce
of silver, for sharpening a plowshare or
mattock, an eighth of an ounce for sharpening a pitchfork or an axe, and an eighth
of an ounce for repointing an oxgoad.

1SA 13:14 [PROPHECY] Saul's kingdom would not last and God would choose a man after His own heart → 1SA 16:13; ACTS 13:22 p.461

1SA 13:14 [HEART] God looked for a man after His own heart.

1SA 13:14 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:22 p.1764

1SA 13:19 [NOTE] NO BLACKSMITHS. The Philistines kept iron working to themselves so Israel could not make weapons. Israel had to pay the Philistines even to sharpen a plow.

22 So on the day of battle not a sword or spear could be found in the hands of the troops with Saul and Jonathan; only Saul and his son Jonathan had weapons.
23 And a garrison of the Philistines had gone out to the pass at Michmash.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SAUL'S LOST KINGDOM

What Saul Did

1 SAMUEL 9:21 · 10:8 · 13:8 TO 14 · 15:9 TO 30

A GOOD START

Saul started humble. He said he was from the smallest tribe, 9:21, and he hid in the baggage when they picked him, 10:22. The Spirit of God came on him, and he saved Jabesh Gilead, 11:6 to 11.

FIRST FAILURE: HE COULD NOT WAIT

Samuel told Saul to wait seven days at Gilgal until he came to offer the sacrifices, 10:8. The Philistines gathered, and Saul's men started slipping away. On the seventh day Saul offered the burnt offering himself. Samuel arrived right as he finished, 13:8 to 10. Your kingdom will not endure, Samuel said, 13:14.

SECOND FAILURE: HALF OBEDIENCE

God told Saul to destroy Amalek completely. Saul spared King Agag and the best animals, then set up a monument for himself, 15:9 and 15:12. He said he had obeyed. Then he blamed the troops, 15:15 and 15:21.

SAMUEL'S ANSWER

To obey is better than sacrifice. Rebellion is like the sin of divination. Because you have rejected the word of Yahweh, He has rejected you as king, 15:22 to 23.

THE QUESTION

David later did worse things, adultery and murder, and kept his throne. Why did Saul lose his?

Every View

1 SAMUEL 15:11 · 15:24 TO 30 · 15:29 · 2 SAMUEL 12:13 · PSALM 51 · GENESIS 49:10

VIEW 1: THE HEART

Saul made excuses and worried about what people thought. I was afraid of the troops, he said, 15:24, and then, honor me before the elders, 15:30. When David was caught, he said, I have sinned against Yahweh, 2 Samuel 12:13, and wrote Psalm 51. God looks at the heart, 16:7.

VIEW 2: THE KING AND THE PROPHET

Some say Saul's sin in chapter 13 was acting like a priest. Others point out that David and Solomon offered sacrifices too, so the real sin was disobeying the prophet's direct command. Either way, Saul put himself above God's word.

VIEW 3: GOD'S BIGGER PLAN

God had promised the scepter to Judah, Genesis 49:10, and Saul was from Benjamin. Some say Saul's family line was never going to last, and his sins showed why God's choice was better.

GOD REGRETTED?

God said, I regret that I made Saul king, 15:11, yet Samuel said God does not change His mind, 15:29. Most teachers say God truly grieves over sin, but His plans and His character never change. The Bible uses human words so we can understand God's heart.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Partial obedience is still disobedience. Being sorry you got caught is not the same as turning back to God. And God was not done with Israel. He had a man after His own heart ready, 13:14.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Jonathan and his armor bearer climb a cliff and take on a whole Philistine outpost by themselves. God shakes the ground, and the Philistines panic. Then Saul makes a silly oath that nobody eats until evening, Jonathan eats some honey without knowing it, and the army has to save Jonathan from his own father.

JONATHAN'S VICTORY OVER THE PHILISTINES

1 One day Jonathan son of Saul said to the young man bearing his armor, "Come, let

■ **1SA 13:21 [FIELD NOTES]** Nobody knew what a pim was until stone weights marked pim were dug up. See The Pim Weight Field Notes page, p.454.

us cross over to the Philistine outpost on the other side." But Jonathan did not tell his father.

2 Meanwhile, Saul was staying under the pomegranate tree in Migron on the outskirts of Gibeah. And the troops who were with him numbered about six hundred men, 3 including Ahijah, who was wearing an ephod. He was the son of Ichabod's brother Ahitub son of Phinehas, the son of Eli the priest of Yahweh in Shiloh. But the troops did not know that Jonathan had left.

4 Now there were cliffs on both sides of the pass that Jonathan intended to cross to reach the Philistine outpost. One was named Bozez and the other Seneh. 5 One cliff stood to the north toward Michmash, and the other to the south toward Geba.

6 Jonathan said to the young man bearing his armor, "Come, let us cross over to the outpost of these uncircumcised men. Perhaps Yahweh will work on our behalf. Nothing can hinder Yahweh from saving, whether by many or by few."

7 His armor-bearer replied, "Do all that is in your heart. Go ahead; I am with you heart and soul."

8 "Very well," said Jonathan, "we will cross over toward these men and show ourselves to them. 9 If they say, 'Wait until we come to you,' then we will stay where we are and will not go up to them. 10 But if they say, 'Come on up,' then we will go up, because this will be our sign that Yahweh has delivered them into our hands."

11 So the two of them showed themselves to the outpost of the Philistines, who exclaimed, "Look, the Hebrews are coming out of the holes in which they were hiding!"

12 So the men of the outpost called out to Jonathan and his armor-bearer, "Come on up, and we will teach you a lesson!"

"Follow me," Jonathan told his armor-bearer, "for Yahweh has delivered them into the hand of Israel."

13 So Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet, with his armor-bearer behind him. And the Philistines fell before Jonathan, and his armor-bearer followed and finished them off. 14 In that first assault, Jonathan and his armor-bearer struck down about twenty men in about half an acre of land.

15 Then panic struck the Philistines in the camp, in the field, and among all the people. Even those in the outposts and raiding parties trembled. Indeed, the earth quaked, and panic spread from God.

16 Now when Saul's watchmen at Gibeah in Benjamin looked and saw the troops melting away and scattering in every direction, 17 Saul said to the troops who were with him, "Call the roll and see who has left us."

And when they had called the roll, they saw that Jonathan and his armor-bearer were not there.

18 Then Saul said to Ahijah, "Bring the ark of God." (For at that time it was with the Israelites.) 19 While Saul was talking to the priest, the commotion in the Philistine camp continued to increase. So Saul said to the priest, "Withdraw your hand."

20 Then Saul and all his troops assembled and marched to the battle, and they found the Philistines in total confusion, with each man wielding the sword against his neighbor. 21 And the Hebrews who had previously gone up into the surrounding camps to join the Philistines now went over to the Israelites who were with Saul and Jonathan. 22 When all the Israelites who had been hiding in the hill country of Ephraim heard that the Philistines were fleeing, they also joined the battle in close pursuit.

23 So Yahweh saved Israel that day, and the battle moved on beyond Beth-aven.

JONATHAN EATS THE HONEY

24 Now the men of Israel were in distress that day, for Saul had placed the troops under an oath, saying, "Cursed is the man who eats any food before evening, before

1SA 14:6 [NOTE] Nothing can hinder Yahweh from saving, whether by many or by few. Jonathan's faith in one sentence.

I have taken vengeance on my enemies."
So none of the troops tasted any food.
25 Then all the troops entered the forest,
and there was honey on the ground. 26
And when they entered the forest and saw
the flowing honey, not one of them put his
hand to his mouth, because they feared
the oath.
27 Jonathan, however, had not heard that
his father had bound the people with the
oath. So he reached out the end of the
staff in his hand, dipped it into the honey-
comb, and put his hand to his mouth, and
his eyes brightened. 28 Then one of the
soldiers told him, "Your father bound the
troops with a solemn oath, saying,
'Cursed is the man who eats food today.'
That is why the people are faint."
29 "My father has brought trouble to the
land," Jonathan replied. "Just look at how
my eyes have brightened because I tasted
a little of this honey. 30 How much better it
would have been if the troops had eaten
freely today from the plunder they took
from their enemies! Would not the slaugh-
ter of the Philistines have been much
greater?"
31 That day, after the Israelites had struck
down the Philistines from Michmash to Ai-
jalon, the people were very faint. 32 So
they rushed greedily to the plunder, taking
sheep, cattle, and calves. They slaugh-
tered them on the ground and ate meat
with the blood still in it.
33 Then someone reported to Saul: "Look,
the troops are sinning against Yahweh by
eating meat with the blood still in it."
"You have broken faith," said Saul. "Roll a
large stone over here at once." 34 Then he
said, "Go among the troops and tell them,
'Each man must bring me his ox or his
sheep, slaughter them in this place, and
then eat. Do not sin against Yahweh by
eating meat with the blood still in it.'"
So that night everyone brought his ox and
slaughtered it there. 35 Then Saul built an
altar to Yahweh; it was the first time he
had built an altar to Yahweh.
36 And Saul said, "Let us go down after the
Philistines by night and plunder them until
dawn, leaving no man alive!"
"Do what seems good to you," the troops
replied.
But the priest said, "We must consult God
here."

THE PEOPLE SAVE JONATHAN

37 So Saul inquired of God, "Shall I go
down after the Philistines? Will You give
them into the hand of Israel?"
But God did not answer him that day.
38 Therefore Saul said, "Come here, all you
leaders of the troops, and let us investi-
gate how this sin has occurred today. 39
As surely as Yahweh who saves Israel
lives, even if it is my son Jonathan, he
must die!"
But not one of the troops said a word.
40 Then Saul said to all Israel, "You stand
on one side, and I and my son Jonathan
will stand on the other side."
"Do what seems good to you," the troops
replied.
41 So Saul said to Yahweh, the God of Is-
rael, "Why have You not answered Your
servant this day? If the fault is with me or
my son Jonathan, respond with Urim, but
if the fault is with the men of Israel, re-
spond with Thummim." And Jonathan and
Saul were selected, but the people were
cleared of the charge.
42 Then Saul said, "Cast the lot between
me and my son Jonathan." And Jonathan
was selected.
43 "Tell me what you have done," Saul
commanded him.
So Jonathan told him, "I only tasted a little
honey with the end of the staff that was in
my hand. And now I must die?"
44 And Saul declared, "May God punish
me, and ever so severely, if you,
Jonathan, do not surely die!"
45 But the people said to Saul, "Must
Jonathan die—he who accomplished such
a great deliverance for Israel? Never! As
surely as Yahweh lives, not a hair of his

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

head will fall to the ground, for with God's help he has accomplished this today."

So the people rescued Jonathan, and he did not die. 46 Then Saul gave up his pursuit of the Philistines, and the Philistines returned to their own land.

SAUL'S VICTORIES

47 After Saul had assumed the kingship over Israel, he fought against all his enemies on every side—the Moabites, the Ammonites, the Edomites, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever he turned, he routed them. 48 He fought valiantly and defeated the Amalekites, delivering Israel from the hands of its plunderers.

49 Now the sons of Saul were Jonathan, Ishvi, and Malchishua. His two daughters were named Merab (his firstborn) and Michal (his younger daughter). 50 His wife's name was Ahinoam daughter of Ahimaaz. The name of the commander of his army was Abner, the son of Saul's uncle Ner. 51 Saul's father Kish and Abner's father Ner were sons of Abiel.

52 And the war with the Philistines was fierce for all the days of Saul. So whenever he noticed any strong or brave man, Saul would enlist him.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Saul to destroy the Amalekites completely. Saul spares King Agag and keeps the best animals, then builds a monument to himself. When Samuel shows up, Saul blames the troops. To obey is better than sacrifice, Samuel says. God has rejected Saul as king.

SAUL'S DISOBEDIENCE

1 Then Samuel said to Saul, "Yahweh sent me to anoint you king over His people Israel. Now therefore, listen to the words of Yahweh. 2 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'I witnessed what the Amalekites did to the Israelites when they opposed them on their way up from Egypt. 3 Now go and attack the Amalekites and devote to destruction all that belongs to them. Do not spare them, but put to death men and women, children and infants, oxen and sheep, camels and donkeys.'"

4 So Saul summoned the troops and numbered them at Telaim—200,000 foot soldiers and 10,000 men of Judah. 5 Saul came to the city of Amalek and lay in wait in the valley. 6 And he warned the Kenites, "Since you showed kindness to all the Israelites when they came up out of Egypt, go on and get away from the Amalekites. Otherwise I will sweep you away with them."

So the Kenites moved away from the Amalekites.

7 Then Saul struck down the Amalekites all the way from Havilah to Shur, which is east of Egypt. 8 He captured Agag king of Amalek alive, but devoted all the others to destruction with the sword.

9 Saul and his troops spared Agag, along with the best of the sheep and cattle, the fat calves and lambs, and the best of everything else. They were unwilling to devote them to destruction, but they devoted to destruction all that was despised and worthless.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE AMALEKITES

Who They Were

1 SAMUEL 15:1 TO 9 · EXODUS 17:8 TO 16 · DEUTERONOMY 25:17 TO 19 · GENESIS 36:12

WHO THEY WERE

The Amalekites came from Amalek, a grandson of Esau, Genesis 36:12. They were raiders who lived in the deserts south of Israel.

WHAT THEY DID

When Israel came out of Egypt, Amalek attacked them in the wilderness, Exodus 17:8. They struck from behind, killing the tired and weak who lagged at the back, Deuteronomy 25:18. They kept raiding

1SA 15:1 [FULFILLS] God promised Amalek would be utterly blotted out from under heaven ← EX 17:14 p.145

1SA 15:3 [NOTE] DEVOTE TO DESTRUCTION is the Hebrew word herem, the same command given against the Canaanites. See the Big Question pages The Amalekites, p.458.

1SA 15:7 [FULFILLS] Yahweh would war against Amalek from generation to generation ← EX 17:16 · MEDIUM p.145

1SA 15:7 [FULFILLS] Amalek's end would be destruction ← NUM 24:20 · MEDIUM p.262

1SA 15:8 [FULFILLS] Israel's king would be greater than Agag ← NUM 24:7 p.262

GOD SPEAKING

Israel for centuries, Judges 6:3 and 1 Samuel 30:1 to 2.

GOD'S WORD ABOUT THEM

God swore to blot out the memory of Amalek and to be at war with Amalek from generation to generation, Exodus 17:14 to 16. Hundreds of years later, He told Saul to do it.

THE COMMAND

Devote to destruction all that belongs to them, men and women, children and infants, oxen and sheep, 15:3. The Hebrew word is herem: everything given over to God, with nothing kept for loot. Saul first warned the Kenites to leave, because they had been kind to Israel, 15:6.

THE QUESTION

How could a good God command the death of children? This is one of the hardest questions in the Bible, and Christians have wrestled with it for centuries.

Every View

GENESIS 15:16 · EZEKIEL 18:23 · 1 SAMUEL 27:8 · 30:1 · ESTHER 3:1 · MATTHEW 5:44

VIEW 1: GOD'S JUST JUDGMENT

This is the traditional view. God is the Judge of all the earth and the giver of life. He waited hundreds of years while Amalek kept killing, just as He waited for the Amorites, Genesis 15:16. The command was a judgment on a nation, not a hatred of people. God takes no pleasure in the death of the wicked, Ezekiel 18:23.

VIEW 2: WAR LANGUAGE

Many Christian scholars point out that ancient war reports used total words, like destroy them all, to mean win completely. Amalekites are still around in 27:8 and 30:1, and four hundred of them escape from David on camels, 30:17. They say the command was real, but the words may not mean every last person.

VIEW 3: THE CHILDREN

Many Christians believe children who die go to be with God. Some say God took them before they grew up in a nation that lived to kill. Others admit honestly that this is still hard, and they trust God's goodness where they cannot see the whole picture.

VIEW 4: A MISTAKEN COMMAND

Some modern scholars think Israel believed God wanted this, but did not understand Him rightly. Most Christians and Jews reject this view, because the text says plainly that God commanded it.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

No one today is told to do this to any people. Jesus said, Love your enemies, Matthew 5:44. And the chapter's main lesson is about Saul: To obey is better than sacrifice, 15:22.

SAMUEL DENOUNCES SAUL

10 Then the word of Yahweh came to
Samuel, saying, 11 "I regret that I have
made Saul king, for he has turned away
from following Me and has not carried out
My instructions."

And Samuel was distressed and cried out to Yahweh all that night.

12 Early in the morning Samuel got up to confront Saul, but he was told, "Saul has gone to Carmel, and behold, he has set up a monument for himself and has turned and gone down to Gilgal."

13 When Samuel reached him, Saul said to him, "May Yahweh bless you. I have carried out Yahweh's instructions."

14 But Samuel replied, "Then what is this bleating of sheep and lowing of cattle that I hear?"

15 Saul answered, "The troops brought them from the Amalekites; they spared the best sheep and cattle to sacrifice to Yahweh your God, but the rest we devoted to destruction."

16 "Stop!" exclaimed Samuel. "Let me tell you what Yahweh said to me last night."

"Tell me," Saul replied.

17 And Samuel said, "Although you were once small in your own eyes, have you not become the head of the tribes of Israel? Yahweh anointed you king over Israel 18 and sent you on a mission, saying, 'Go and devote to destruction the sinful Amalekites. Fight against them until you have wiped them out.' 19 So why did you not obey Yahweh? Why did you rush upon

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

the plunder and do evil in the sight of Yahweh?"

20 "But I did obey Yahweh," Saul replied. "I went on the mission that Yahweh gave me. I brought back Agag king of Amalek and devoted the Amalekites to destruction. 21 The troops took sheep and cattle from the plunder, the best of the things devoted to destruction, in order to sacrifice them to Yahweh your God at Gilgal."

22 But Samuel declared:

"Does Yahweh delight in burnt offerings
and sacrifices
as much as in obedience to His voice?
Behold, obedience is better than sacrifice,
and attentiveness is better than the fat
of rams.
23 For rebellion is like the sin of divination,
and arrogance is like the wickedness of
idolatry.
Because you have rejected the word of
Yahweh,
He has rejected you as king."

SAUL'S CONFESSION

24 Then Saul said to Samuel, "I have sinned; I have transgressed Yahweh's commandment and your instructions, because I feared the people and obeyed their voice. 25 Now therefore, please forgive my sin and return with me so I can worship Yahweh."

26 "I will not return with you," Samuel replied. "For you have rejected the word of Yahweh, and He has rejected you as king over Israel."

27 As Samuel turned to go, Saul grabbed the hem of his robe, and it tore. 28 So Samuel said to him, "Yahweh has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today and has given it to your neighbor who is better than you. 29 Moreover, the Glory of Israel does not lie or change His mind, for He is not a man, that He should change His mind."

30 "I have sinned," Saul replied. "Please honor me now before the elders of my people and before Israel. Come back with me, so that I may worship Yahweh your God."

31 So Samuel went back with Saul, and Saul worshiped Yahweh.

32 Then Samuel said, "Bring me Agag king of the Amalekites."

Agag came to him cheerfully, for he thought, "Surely the bitterness of death is past."

33 But Samuel declared:

"As your sword has made women childless,
so your mother will be childless among
women."

And Samuel hacked Agag to pieces before Yahweh at Gilgal.

34 Then Samuel went to Ramah, but Saul went up to his home in Gibeah of Saul. 35 And to the day of his death, Samuel never again visited Saul. Samuel mourned for Saul, and Yahweh regretted that He had made Saul king over Israel.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

God sends Samuel to Bethlehem to anoint a new king from Jesse's sons. Tall, good looking Eliab seems like the one, but God says, I look at the heart. The youngest, David, is out with the sheep. He gets the oil. Meanwhile, a troubling spirit torments Saul, and they hire a harp player. It is David.

SAMUEL ANOINTS DAVID

1 Now Yahweh said to Samuel, "How long are you going to mourn for Saul, since I have rejected him as king over Israel? Fill your horn with oil and go. I am sending you to Jesse of Bethlehem, for I have selected from his sons a king for Myself."

2 "How can I go?" Samuel asked. "Saul will hear of it and kill me!"

1SA 15:22 [NOTABLE] Saul tried to cover disobedience with a big offering. God wants a heart that listens more than a show of religion. Jesus made the same point in Matthew 9:13.

1SA 15:23 [DEMONIC] Rebellion is like the sin of divination

1SA 15:28 [PROPHECY] Samuel told Saul his kingdom would be torn from him and given to a better neighbor → 1SA 16:13; 2SA 5:3 p.461

1SA 15:29 [NOTE] HE DOES NOT CHANGE HIS MIND, yet in 15:11 and 15:35 He regretted making Saul king. See the Big Question pages Saul's Lost Kingdom, p.455.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Yahweh answered, "Take a heifer with you and say, 'I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh.' 3 Then invite Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show you what you are to do. You are to anoint for Me the one I indicate."

4 So Samuel did what Yahweh had said and went to Bethlehem. When the elders of the town met him, they trembled and asked, "Do you come in peace?"

5 "In peace," he replied. "I have come to sacrifice to Yahweh. Consecrate yourselves and come with me to the sacrifice."

Then he consecrated Jesse and his sons and invited them to the sacrifice. 6 When they arrived, Samuel saw Eliab and said, "Surely here before Yahweh is His anointed."

7 But Yahweh said to Samuel, "Do not consider his appearance or height, for I have rejected him; Yahweh does not see as man does. For man sees the outward appearance, but Yahweh sees the heart."

8 Then Jesse called Abinadab and presented him to Samuel, who said, "Yahweh has not chosen this one either."

9 Next Jesse presented Shammah, but Samuel said, "Yahweh has not chosen this one either."

10 Thus Jesse made seven of his sons pass before Samuel, but Samuel told him, "Yahweh has not chosen any of these."

11 And Samuel asked him, "Are these all the sons you have?"

"There is still the youngest," Jesse replied, "but he is tending the sheep."

"Send for him," Samuel replied. "For we will not sit down to eat until he arrives."

12 So Jesse sent for his youngest son and brought him in. He was ruddy, with beautiful eyes and a handsome appearance. And Yahweh said, "Rise and anoint him, for he is the one."

13 So Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the presence of his brothers, and the Spirit of Yahweh rushed upon David from that day forward. Then Samuel set out and went to Ramah.

DAVID SERVES SAUL

14 Now the Spirit of Yahweh departed from Saul, and an evil spirit from Yahweh began to torment him. 15 Saul's servants said to him, "Surely an evil spirit from God is tormenting you. 16 Let our lord command your servants here to seek out someone who can skillfully play the harp. Whenever the evil spirit from God is upon you, he is to play it, and you will be well."

17 And Saul commanded his servants, "Find me someone who plays well, and bring him to me."

18 One of the servants answered, "I have seen a son of Jesse of Bethlehem who knows how to play the harp. He is a mighty man of valor, a warrior, eloquent and handsome, and Yahweh is with him."

19 So Saul sent messengers to Jesse and said, "Send me your son David, who is with the sheep."

20 And Jesse took a donkey loaded with bread, a skin of wine, and one young goat and sent them to Saul with his son David. 21 When David came to Saul and entered his service, Saul loved him very much, and David became his armor-bearer.

22 Then Saul sent word to Jesse, saying, "Let David remain in my service, for I am pleased with him." 23 And whenever the spirit from God came upon Saul, David would pick up his harp and play. Then

- **1SA 16:7 [HEART]** God does not judge by looks. He looks at the heart.
- **1SA 16:11 [NOTE]** PSALM 151, the last psalm in this Bible, is in David's voice and retells this day: the youngest son, keeping his father's sheep, anointed with oil. It is in the Greek Bible and the Dead Sea Scrolls, but not in the Hebrew Bible. See Psalm 151, p.983.
- **1SA 16:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:32 p.1993
- **1SA 16:13 [NOTABLE]** The anointing that transfers the kingdom from Saul to David; oil and Spirit connected
- **1SA 16:13 [FULFILLS]** Saul's kingdom would not last and God would choose a man after His own heart ← 1SA 13:14 p.453
- **1SA 16:13 [FULFILLS]** Samuel told Saul his kingdom would be torn from him and given to a better neighbor ← 1SA 15:28 p.460
- **1SA 16:13 [NOTE]** The oil and the Spirit come together. David is anointed in secret, but he will wait many years to be king.
- **1SA 16:14 [DEMONIC]** An evil spirit from Yahweh troubled Saul; David's harp soothed him
- **1SA 16:14 [NOTE]** AN EVIL SPIRIT. The Hebrew is ruach raah, like the King James. Some Bibles say a spirit of distress. See the Big Question pages The Evil Spirit from Yahweh, p.462.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC

Saul would find relief and feel better, and the evil spirit would depart from him.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Goliath of Gath, a giant in bronze armor, dares Israel to send out one man to fight him. For forty days nobody goes. Then a shepherd boy delivering cheese and bread to his brothers says, Who is this Philistine? David turns down Saul's armor, picks up five smooth stones, and ends it with one.

GOLIATH'S CHALLENGE

1 Now the Philistines gathered their forces
for war at Socoh in Judah, and they
camped between Socoh and Azekah in
Ephes-dammim. 2 Saul and the men of Is-
rael assembled and camped in the Valley
of Elah, arraying themselves for battle
against the Philistines.

3 The Philistines stood on one hill and the
Israelites stood on another, with the valley
between them.

4 Then a champion named Goliath, who
was from Gath, came out from the Philis-
tine camp. He was nine feet nine inches
tall, 5 and he had a bronze helmet on his
head. He wore a bronze coat of mail
weighing 125 pounds, 6 and he had armor
of bronze on his legs and a javelin of
bronze slung between his shoulders. 7 The
shaft of his spear was like a weaver's
beam, and its iron point weighed fifteen
pounds. In addition, his shield bearer went
before him.

1SA 17:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Khirbet Qeiyafa → FIELD NOTES p.463

1SA 17:1 [NOTE] SOCOH AND AZEKAH are real places in the Valley of Elah, about fifteen miles west of Bethlehem. The valley still has the same name.

1SA 17:4 [DEMONIC] Goliath of Gath, about nine feet nine inches tall, with a spear point weighing fifteen pounds

1SA 17:4 [TEXT] HOW TALL? The standard Hebrew text says about nine feet nine inches. The oldest copy of this verse, a Dead Sea Scroll called 4QSam a, plus the Greek and Josephus, say about six feet nine inches. See the Big Question pages David and Goliath, p.465.

1SA 17:4 [FIELD NOTES] Goliath came from Gath, a Philistine city that has been found and dug. See the Gath Field Notes page, p.465.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE EVIL SPIRIT FROM YAHWEH

What the Bible Says

1 SAMUEL 16:14 TO 23 · 18:10 TO 11 · 19:9 TO 10 · JUDGES 9:23 · 1 KINGS 22:19 TO 23

THE VERSE

The Spirit of Yahweh left Saul, and an evil spirit from Yahweh began to torment him, 16:14. The Hebrew says ruach raah, an evil spirit, like the King James. Some Bibles say a spirit of distress.

WHAT IT DID

It terrified Saul. When David played the harp, Saul felt better and the spirit left, 16:23. Later it came on Saul and he raved in his house and threw a spear at David, 18:10 to 11 and 19:9 to 10.

THE SAME WORDS ELSEWHERE

God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the men of Shechem, and they turned on each other, Judges 9:23. In 1 Kings 22:19 to 23 a lying spirit goes out from God's throne to fool wicked King Ahab.

WHAT THE WORD EVIL MEANS

The Hebrew word ra can mean morally wicked, but it can also mean harmful, painful or trouble. The same word is used of a bad fig, Jeremiah 24:2, and of trouble God sends as judgment, Isaiah 45:7.

THE QUESTION

How can a spirit that torments someone come from God? And was it a demon, a judgment, or an illness?

Every View

JOB 1:6 TO 12 · 2 CORINTHIANS 12:7 · PSALM 51:11 · EPHESIANS 4:30

VIEW 1: A REAL DEMON GOD ALLOWED

Many Jewish and Christian readers through history say it was an evil spirit, a demon, that God allowed to trouble Saul, like Satan with Job, Job 1 and 2. Josephus said demons troubled Saul. From Yahweh means God was still in charge, not that God is evil.

VIEW 2: A SPIRIT OF JUDGMENT

Some say it was a harmful spirit God sent as judgment, not one of Satan's

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

KHIRBET QEIYAFA

1 SAMUEL 17:1 TO 3 · 17:52 · JOSHUA 15:35 TO 36



Stone walls at Khirbet Qeiyafa, with the farms of the Elah Valley below. Photo Davidbena, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

A small town on a hilltop above the Valley of Elah, surrounded by a strong stone wall. It covers almost six acres. It has two gates, which is very unusual for a town that small.

HOW OLD IT IS

Burned olive pits found there were tested by radiocarbon. They date the town to about 1020 to 980 BC, the days of Saul and David. It was only lived in for a short time.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Yosef Garfinkel and Saar Ganor dug it from 2007 to 2013. It sits on the hills above the valley near Socoh and Azekah, where the two armies faced each other, 17:1 to 3.

WHAT THEY FOUND

A city wall built of huge stones, houses built into the wall, two gates, and a piece of pottery with five lines of ink writing, one of the oldest long writings ever found in the land. They found no pig bones, which many see as a sign that the people kept Israel's food laws.

TWO GATES

Shaaraim means two gates. 1 Samuel 17:52 says the Philistines ran along the Shaaraim road, and Joshua 15:36 lists Shaaraim in this area. The diggers think this town is Shaaraim.

THE BIG DEBATE

Garfinkel thinks it was a town of Judah in David's day. Other scholars think it belonged to Saul's kingdom, to the Philistines, or to Canaanites. The writing on the pottery is also debated.

THE WRITING ON THE POT

The pottery piece has five lines of faded ink in an early alphabet. Some read words like judge, slave, widow and king. Others say too little can be read to be sure.

A PLANNED TOWN

The wall is a double wall with rooms inside it, and the houses use those rooms as back rooms. The diggers say later towns of Judah used the same plan.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing found there names David or Goliath. It shows that a strong, organized town stood above this valley in the time the Bible gives for this battle.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

demons. Saul turned away from God, and God let trouble fill the empty place.

VIEW 3: DEEP DISTRESS

Many modern readers think Saul suffered something like dark depression or rage, and the Bible describes it in spiritual words. Some Bibles say spirit of distress or harmful spirit. Most who hold this view still see God's hand in it.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

The first side says the text calls it a spirit, it came and went, and it moved Saul to murder. The other sides say the Bible often speaks of God sending what He allows, and the point is Saul's broken relationship with God, not the kind of spirit.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Saul's trouble started when he turned from God. God is in control even of the dark things. And music played by a man of faith brought relief, 16:23. David later prayed, Do not take Your Holy Spirit from me, Psalm 51:11.

8 And Goliath stood and shouted to the ranks of Israel, "Why do you come out and array yourselves for battle? Am I not a Philistine, and are you not servants of Saul? Choose one of your men and have him come down against me. 9 If he is able to fight me and kill me, then we will be your servants. But if I prevail against him and kill him, then you shall be our servants and work for us."

10 Then the Philistine said, "I defy the ranks of Israel this day! Give me a man to fight!"

11 On hearing the words of the Philistine, Saul and all the Israelites were dismayed and greatly afraid.

DAVID ACCEPTS THE CHALLENGE

12 Now David was the son of a man named Jesse, an Ephrathite from Bethlehem of Judah who had eight sons. And in the days of Saul, Jesse was old and well along in years. 13 The three older sons of Jesse had followed Saul into battle: The firstborn was Eliab, the second was Abinadab, and the third was Shammah. 14 And David was the youngest.

The three oldest had followed Saul, 15 but David went back and forth from Saul to tend his father's sheep in Bethlehem.

16 For forty days the Philistine came forward every morning and evening to take his stand.

17 One day Jesse said to his son David, "Take this half bushel of roasted grain and these ten loaves of bread for your brothers and hurry to their camp. 18 Take also these ten portions of cheese to the commander of their unit. Check on the welfare of your brothers and bring back an assurance from them. 19 They are with Saul and all the men of Israel in the Valley of Elah, fighting against the Philistines."

20 So David got up early in the morning, left the flock with a keeper, loaded up, and set out as Jesse had instructed him. He reached the camp as the army was marching out to its position and shouting the battle cry. 21 And Israel and the Philistines arrayed in formation against each other.

22 Then David left his supplies in the care of the quartermaster and ran to the battle line. When he arrived, he asked his brothers how they were doing. 23 And as he was speaking with them, suddenly the champion named Goliath, the Philistine from Gath, came forward from the ranks of the Philistines and shouted his usual words, which David also heard.

1SA 17:12 [TEXT] THE SHORTER GREEK STORY. The oldest Greek copies leave out 17:12 to 31, 17:41, 17:50, 17:55 to 18:5 and a few more verses, more than a third of chapters 17 and 18. See the Big Question pages David and Goliath, p.465.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR GATH, DEBATED FOR THE NAMES

GATH

1 SAMUEL 17:4 · 21:10 · 27:2 · JOSHUA 11:22 · 2 KINGS 12:17



Stone walls dug up on Tell es Safi, Philistine Gath. The wooden post is a modern marker. Photo Ori , Attribution license.

WHAT IT IS

Tell es Safi, a big hill of ruins between Jerusalem and the coast. Most scholars agree it is Gath, one of the five Philistine cities and Goliath's hometown, 17:4.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived there for thousands of years. In the 900s BC, around the time of David and Solomon, Gath was one of the largest cities in the land.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Aren Maeir of Bar Ilan University led digs there every summer from 1996 for more than twenty years.

WHAT THEY FOUND

Philistine pottery, a temple, a city gate, an altar with two horns, and a deep trench dug all the way around the city by an army. Many link the trench to Hazael king of Aram, who took Gath about 830 BC, 2 Kings 12:17.

THE GOLIATH SHARD

In 2005 they found a piece of pottery from about 950 BC with two names scratched on it, Alwat and Walat. They are not Goliath, but they are the same kind of non Hebrew name. Some scholars think the readings or the link are uncertain.

DAVID IN GATH

David ran to Gath and pretended to be crazy, 21:10 to 15. Later King Achish of Gath gave him Ziklag, 27:6.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing found there names Goliath. It shows that Gath was a real Philistine city, big and strong in Bible times.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DAVID AND GOLIATH

How Big Was He?

1 SAMUEL 17:4 TO 11 · 17:40 TO 51 · JOSHUA 11:22 · JUDGES 20:16

TWO HEIGHTS

The standard Hebrew text says about nine feet nine inches, 17:4. The oldest copy of this verse, the Dead Sea Scroll 4QSam a, says about six feet nine inches. The old Greek Bible and Josephus agree with the scroll.

STILL A GIANT

Most men then stood a little over five feet tall. At six feet nine inches, Goliath would still tower over an army. His bronze armor weighed about 125 pounds, and his spear point weighed about fifteen pounds, 17:5 and 17:7.

WHERE HE CAME FROM

Joshua 11:22 says some of the Anakim, the giant clans, were left in Gath, Gaza and Ashdod. Goliath was from Gath.

ONE ON ONE

Sending out one champion to fight for a whole army was a real custom in the ancient world. An Egyptian story, the Tale of Sinuhe, tells of a hero who fights a mighty champion for his tribe and wins.

THE SLING

A sling is not a toy. Armies had trained slingers, and Judges 20:16 says 700 men of Benjamin could sling a stone at a hair and not miss. David was not lucky. He was skilled, and he trusted God.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Two Puzzles

1 SAMUEL 16:21 TO 23 · 17:55 TO 58 · 2 SAMUEL 21:19 · 1 CHRONICLES 20:5

PUZZLE 1: WHOSE SON IS THIS?

David already played the harp for Saul, 16:21 to 23, yet after the fight Saul asks, Whose son is this young man? 17:55. Some say Saul knew David but asked about his family, since he had promised his daughter to the winner, 17:25. Others say time had passed, or Saul's illness clouded his mind.

THE SHORTER GREEK STORY

The oldest Greek copies leave out more than a third of chapters 17 and 18, including 17:12 to 31 and 17:55 to 18:5, the parts that make the puzzle. Some scholars think the Greek translator cut verses to fix it. Others think the Hebrew joined two old tellings of the story.

PUZZLE 2: WHO KILLED GOLIATH?

In the Hebrew, 2 Samuel 21:19 says Elhanan of Bethlehem killed Goliath the Gittite. This Bible adds the brother of, like the King James, from 1 Chronicles 20:5. 1 Chronicles 20:5 says Elhanan killed Lahmi, the brother of Goliath. Most conservative scholars say a copyist slipped in 2 Samuel and Chronicles kept the right reading. Old Jewish teachers said Elhanan was another name for David. Some critical scholars think a later hero's story was told about David.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

Some say the Hebrew is the first form, the puzzles have good answers, and the Greek shortened it. Others say the Hebrew joined two old tellings. Both sides agree the copies we have are very old and the story is the same.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

The point of the story is 17:45 to 47. You come against me with sword and spear, but I come against you in the name of Yahweh of Hosts. The battle is Yahweh's.

24 When all the men of Israel saw Goliath,
they fled from him in great fear.
25 Now the men of Israel had been saying,
"Do you see how this man keeps coming
out to defy Israel? To the man who kills
him the king will give great riches. And he
will give him his daughter in marriage and
exempt his father's house from taxation in
Israel."
26 David asked the men who were stand-
ing with him, "What will be done for the
man who kills this Philistine and removes
this disgrace from Israel? Just who is this
uncircumcised Philistine, that he should
defy the armies of the living God?"
27 The people told him about the offer,
saying, "That is what will be done for the
man who kills him."
28 Now when David's oldest brother Eliab
heard him speaking to the men, his anger
burned against David. "Why have you
come down here?" he asked. "And with
whom did you leave those few sheep in
the wilderness? I know your pride and
wickedness of heart—you have come
down to see the battle!"
29 "What have I done now?" said David.
"Was it not just a question?" 30 Then he
turned from him toward another and
asked about the offer, and those people
answered him just as the first ones had
answered.
31 Now David's words were overheard and
reported to Saul, who sent for him.
32 And David said to Saul, "Let no man's
heart fail on account of this Philistine.
Your servant will go and fight him!"
33 But Saul replied, "You cannot go out
against this Philistine to fight him. You are
just a boy, and he has been a warrior from
his youth."
34 David replied, "Your servant has been
tending his father's sheep, and whenever
a lion or a bear came and carried off a
lamb from the flock, 35 I went after it,
struck it down, and delivered the lamb
from its mouth. If it reared up against me, I
would grab it by its fur, strike it down, and
kill it. 36 Your servant has killed lions and
bears; this uncircumcised Philistine will be
like one of them, for he has defied the
armies of the living God."

1SA 17:28 [HEART] Eliab said he knew the wickedness of David's heart. He judged his little brother's heart and got it wrong.

DEMONIC NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

37 David added, "Yahweh, who delivered
me from the claws of the lion and the
bear, will deliver me from the hand of this
Philistine."

"Go," said Saul, "and may Yahweh be with
you."

DAVID SLAYS GOLIATH

38 Then Saul clothed David in his own tu-
nic, put a bronze helmet on his head, and
dressed him in armor. 39 David strapped
his sword over the tunic and tried to walk,
but he was not accustomed to them.

"I cannot walk in these," David said to
Saul. "I am not accustomed to them." So
David took them off. 40 And David took his
staff in his hand, selected five smooth
stones from the brook, and put them in
the pouch of his shepherd's bag. And with
his sling in hand, he approached the
Philistine.

41 Now the Philistine came closer and
closer to David, with his shield-bearer be-
fore him. 42 When the Philistine looked and
saw David, he despised him because he
was just a boy, ruddy and handsome. 43
"Am I a dog," he said to David, "that you
come at me with sticks?" And the Philis-
tine cursed David by his gods. 44 "Come
here," he called to David, "and I will give
your flesh to the birds of the air and the
beasts of the field!"

45 But David said to the Philistine, "You
come against me with sword and spear
and javelin, but I come against you in the
name of Yahweh of Hosts, the God of the
armies of Israel, whom you have defied.
46 This day Yahweh will deliver you into my
hand. This day I will strike you down, cut
off your head, and give the carcasses of
the Philistine army to the birds of the air
and the creatures of the earth. Then the
whole world will know that there is a God
in Israel. 47 And all those assembled here
will know that it is not by sword or spear
that Yahweh saves; for the battle is
Yahweh's, and He will give all of you into
our hands."

48 As the Philistine started forward to at-
tack him, David ran quickly toward the
battle line to meet him. 49 Then David
reached into his bag, took out a stone,
and slung it, striking the Philistine on the
forehead. The stone sank into his fore-
head, and he fell facedown on the ground.

50 Thus David prevailed over the Philistine
with a sling and a stone; without a sword
in his hand he struck down the Philistine
and killed him. 51 David ran and stood over
him. He grabbed the Philistine's sword
and pulled it from its sheath and killed
him, and he cut off his head with the
sword.

When the Philistines saw that their hero
was dead, they turned and ran. 52 Then
the men of Israel and Judah charged for-
ward with a shout and pursued the
Philistines to the entrance of Gath and to
the gates of Ekron. And the bodies of the
Philistines were strewn along the
Shaaraim road to Gath and Ekron.

53 When the Israelites returned from their
pursuit of the Philistines, they plundered
their camps. 54 David took the head of the
Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem, and
he put Goliath's weapons in his own tent.

55 As Saul had watched David going out to
confront the Philistine, he said to Abner
the commander of the army, "Abner,
whose son is this young man?"

"As surely as you live, O king," Abner
replied, "I do not know."

56 "Find out whose son this young man is!"
said the king.

57 So when David returned from killing the
Philistine, still holding his head in his
hand, Abner took him and brought him
before Saul.

58 "Whose son are you, young man?"
asked Saul.

1SA 17:40 [NOTE] THE SLING was a real weapon. Armies had trained slingers who could hit a target from far away, Judges 20:16. Psalm 151 also retells this fight, p.983.

1SA 17:43 [DEMONIC] Goliath curses David by his gods

1SA 17:45 [NOTABLE] David's speech to Goliath. The fight is not about size or weapons but about whose name you come in. The battle is Yahweh's.

1SA 17:48 [DEMONIC] David kills Goliath with a sling and a stone

1SA 17:52 [NOTE] SHAARAIM means two gates. Khirbet Qeiyafa, the walled town above the valley, has two gates, and its diggers think it is Shaaraim.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

"I am the son of your servant Jesse of Bethlehem," David replied.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Jonathan, Saul's son, loves David like his own soul and gives him his robe and his sword. The women sing, Saul has killed his thousands, and David his tens of thousands. Saul does not love this song. He throws a spear at David twice and makes him a deal: marry my daughter for a hundred dead Philistines.

JONATHAN BEFRIENDS DAVID

1 After David had finished speaking with
Saul, the souls of Jonathan and David
were knit together, and Jonathan loved
him as himself. 2 And from that day Saul
kept David with him and did not let him re-
turn to his father's house.

3 Then Jonathan made a covenant with
David because he loved him as himself. 4
And Jonathan removed the robe he was
wearing and gave it to David, along with
his tunic, his sword, his bow, and his belt.

SAUL ENVIES DAVID

5 So David marched out and prospered in
everything Saul sent him to do, and Saul
set him over the men of war. And this was
pleasing in the sight of all the people, and
of Saul's officers as well.

6 As the troops were returning home after
David had killed the Philistine, the women
came out of all the cities of Israel to meet
King Saul with singing and dancing, with
joyful songs, and with tambourines and
other instruments. 7 And as the women
danced, they sang out:

"Saul has slain his thousands,
and David his tens of thousands."

8 And Saul was furious and resented this
song. "They have ascribed tens of thou-
sands to David," he said, "but only thou-
sands to me. What more can he have but
the kingdom?" 9 And from that day for-
ward Saul kept a jealous eye on David.

1SA 18:1 [NOTE] KNIT TOGETHER. See the Big Question pages David and Jonathan, p.468.

1SA 18:7 [NOTE] Thousands and tens of thousands was a common way to praise in a song. Saul heard it as an insult.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DAVID AND JONATHAN

A Covenant Friendship

1 SAMUEL 18:1 TO 4 · 20:14 TO 17 · 20:41 TO 42 · 23:16 TO 18 · 2 SAMUEL 1:26 · 9:1 TO 7

KNIT TOGETHER

After David beat Goliath, the souls of Jonathan and David were knit together, and Jonathan loved him as himself, 18:1. They made a covenant, a sworn promise, 18:3.

THE ROBE AND THE SWORD

Jonathan gave David his robe, tunic, sword, bow and belt, 18:4. Jonathan was the king's son and next in line for the throne. Many see this as Jonathan handing David the things of a prince, as if to say, You should be king, not me.

A FRIEND WHO RISKED HIS LIFE

Jonathan warned David when Saul wanted him dead, 19:2, and his father threw a spear at him for it, 20:33. Later he found David in the wilderness and said, You will be king over Israel, and I will be second to you, 23:17.

A PROMISE FOR THEIR CHILDREN

They swore to be kind to each other's families forever, 20:14 to 17 and 20:42. Years later David kept that promise and gave Jonathan's son Mephibosheth a seat at his table, 2 Samuel 9:7.

THE GOODBYE

They kissed each other and wept, and David wept the most, 20:41. When Jonathan died, David sang, Your love to me was more wonderful than the love of women, 2 Samuel 1:26.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View

GENESIS 33:4 · 45:14 TO 15 · 1 KINGS 5:1 · PROVERBS 18:24 · JOHN 15:13

VIEW 1: A COVENANT FRIENDSHIP

This is how Jewish and Christian readers have understood it for many centuries. Love in Bible covenants often means loyalty. The Hebrew of 1 Kings 5:1 says King Hiram loved David, where this Bible says friend. Men in the ancient world kissed and wept openly, like Jacob and Esau, Genesis 33:4, and Joseph and his brothers, Genesis 45:14 to 15. Both men married and had children. An old Jewish teaching in the Mishnah calls their love the kind that never ends because it did not depend on getting something.

VIEW 2: SOMETHING MORE

Some modern writers read the story as a romance between two men, pointing to the strong words of love, the kiss and David's line about the love of women.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

Traditional readers answer that the covenant words, the politics of the throne and both men's marriages point to friendship. The other side says love language between men can mean more than loyalty.

MORE THAN THE LOVE OF WOMEN

David had just lost his best friend in battle. Many readers take this line to mean that Jonathan's loyalty was greater than anything David found in his marriages, which were often about politics.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Jonathan should have been king, and he gave it up gladly for the one God chose. He risked his life for his friend. There is a friend who sticks closer than a brother, Proverbs 18:24. Greater love has no one than this, that he lay down his life for his friends, John 15:13.

10 The next day an evil spirit sent from God
came upon Saul, and he prophesied in-
side the house while David played the
harp as usual. Now Saul was holding a
spear, 11 and he hurled it, thinking, "I will
pin David to the wall." But David eluded
him twice.

1SA 18:10 [DEMONIC] Evil spirit returned to Saul as he attempted to kill David

12 So Saul was afraid of David, because
Yahweh was with David but had departed
from Saul. 13 Therefore Saul sent David
away and gave him command of a thou-
sand men. David led the troops out to bat-
tle and back, 14 and he continued to pros-
per in all his ways, because Yahweh was
with him.

15 When Saul saw that David was very
successful, he was afraid of him. 16 But all
Israel and Judah loved David, because he
was leading them out to battle and back.

DAVID MARRIES MICHAL

17 Then Saul said to David, "Here is my
older daughter Merab. I will give her to
you in marriage. Only be valiant for me
and fight Yahweh's battles." But Saul was
thinking, "I need not raise my hand
against him; let the hand of the Philistines
be against him."

18 And David said to Saul, "Who am I, and
what is my family or my father's clan in Is-
rael, that I should become the son-in-law
of the king?" 19 So when it was time to give
Saul's daughter Merab to David, she was
given in marriage to Adriel of Meholah.

20 Now Saul's daughter Michal loved
David, and when this was reported to
Saul, it pleased him. 21 "I will give her to
David," Saul thought, "so that she may be
a snare to him, and the hand of the
Philistines may be against him." So Saul
said to David, "For a second time now you
can be my son-in-law."

22 Then Saul ordered his servants, "Speak
to David privately and tell him, 'Behold,
the king is pleased with you, and all his
servants love you. Now therefore, become
his son-in-law.'"

23 But when Saul's servants relayed these
words to David, he replied, "Does it seem
trivial in your sight to be the son-in-law of
the king? I am a poor man and lightly es-
teemed."

24 And the servants told Saul what David
had said.

25 Saul replied, "Say to David, 'The king
desires no other dowry but a hundred
Philistine foreskins as revenge on his ene-

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

mies.'" But Saul intended to cause David's death at the hands of the Philistines.

26 When the servants reported these terms to David, he was pleased to become the king's son-in-law. Before the wedding day arrived, 27 David and his men went out and killed two hundred Philistines. He brought their foreskins and presented them as payment in full to become the king's son-in-law. Then Saul gave his daughter Michal to David in marriage.

28 When Saul realized that Yahweh was with David and that his daughter Michal loved David, 29 he grew even more afraid of David. So from then on Saul was David's enemy.

30 Every time the Philistine commanders came out for battle, David was more successful than all of Saul's officers, so that his name was highly esteemed.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Saul tells everyone to kill David. Michal helps David escape out a window and puts a household idol in his bed with goat hair on its head. Saul sends men to grab David at Ramah, but the Spirit of God makes them all prophesy. Then Saul goes himself, and the Spirit gets him too.

SAUL TRIES TO KILL DAVID // PSALM 59:1–17

1 Then Saul ordered his son Jonathan and all his servants to kill David.

But Jonathan delighted greatly in David, 2 so he warned David, saying, "My father Saul intends to kill you. Be on your guard in the morning; find a secret place and hide there. 3 I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where you are, so I can ask about you. And if I find out anything, I will tell you."

4 Then Jonathan spoke well of David to his father Saul and said to him, "The king should not sin against his servant David he has not sinned against you. In fact, his actions have been highly beneficial to you. 5 He took his life in his hands when he struck down the Philistine, and Yahweh worked a great salvation for all Israel. You saw it and rejoiced, so why would you sin against innocent blood by killing David for no reason?"

6 Saul listened to the voice of Jonathan and swore an oath: "As surely as Yahweh lives, David will not be put to death."

7 So Jonathan summoned David and told him all these things. Then Jonathan brought David to Saul, and David was with Saul as before.

8 When war broke out again, David went out and fought the Philistines and struck them with such a mighty blow that they fled before him.

9 But as Saul was sitting in his house with his spear in his hand, an evil spirit from Yahweh came upon him. While David was playing the harp, 10 Saul tried to pin him to the wall with his spear. But David eluded him and the spear struck the wall. And David fled and escaped that night.

11 Then Saul sent messengers to David's house to watch him and kill him in the morning. But David's wife Michal warned him, "If you do not run for your life tonight, tomorrow you will be dead!" 12 So Michal lowered David from the window, and he ran away and escaped.

13 Then Michal took a household idol and laid it in the bed, placed some goat hair on its head, and covered it with a garment. 14 When Saul sent the messengers to seize David, Michal said, "He is ill."

15 But Saul sent the messengers back to see David and told them, "Bring him up to me in his bed so I can kill him." 16 And when the messengers entered, there was the idol in the bed with the goat hair on its head.

17 And Saul said to Michal, "Why did you deceive me like this? You sent my enemy away, and he has escaped!"

Michal replied, "He said to me, 'Help me get away, or I will kill you!'"

18 So David ran away and escaped. And he went to Samuel at Ramah and told him all

- **1SA 19:9 [DEMONIC]** Evil spirit returned to Saul as he attempted to kill David
- **1SA 19:13 [DEMONIC]** Michal puts a household idol in David's bed
- **1SA 19:16 [DEMONIC]** The messengers find the household idol in the bed

MIRACLES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

that Saul had done to him. Then he and Samuel went to Naioth and stayed there.

19 When Saul was told that David was at Naioth in Ramah, 20 he sent messengers to seize him. But when they saw the group of prophets prophesying, with Samuel leading them, the Spirit of God came upon them, and Saul's messengers also began to prophesy.

21 When this was reported to Saul, he sent more messengers, but they began to prophesy as well.

So Saul tried again and sent messengers a third time, and even they began to prophesy.

22 Finally, Saul himself left for Ramah and came to the large cistern at Secu, where he asked, "Where are Samuel and David?"

"At Naioth in Ramah," he was told.

23 So Saul went to Naioth in Ramah. But the Spirit of God came upon even Saul, and he walked along prophesying until he came to Naioth in Ramah. 24 Then Saul stripped off his robes and also prophesied before Samuel. And he collapsed and lay naked all that day and night. That is why it is said, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

David asks Jonathan, What did I do? Jonathan finds out his father really wants David dead. They make a plan with arrows in a field: if Jonathan says the arrows are beyond you, run. He says it. The two friends kiss, weep and say goodbye.

JONATHAN HELPS DAVID

1 Then David fled from Naioth in Ramah. He came to Jonathan and asked, "What have I done? What is my iniquity? How have I sinned against your father, that he wants to take my life?"

2 "Far from it!" Jonathan replied. "You will not die. Indeed, my father does nothing, great or small, without telling me. So why would he hide this matter from me? This cannot be true!"

3 But David again vowed, "Your father knows very well that I have found favor in your eyes, and he has said, 'Jonathan must not know of this, or he will be grieved.' As surely as Yahweh lives and as you yourself live, there is but a step between me and death."

4 Then Jonathan said to David, "Whatever you desire, I will do for you."

5 So David told him, "Look, tomorrow is the New Moon, and I am supposed to dine with the king. Instead, let me go and hide in the field until the third evening from now. 6 If your father misses me at all, tell him, 'David urgently requested my permission to hurry to Bethlehem, his hometown, because there is an annual sacrifice for his whole clan.' 7 If he says, 'Good,' then your servant is safe, but if he is enraged, you will know he has evil intentions. 8 Therefore show kindness to your servant, for you have brought me into a covenant with you before Yahweh. If there is iniquity in me, then kill me yourself; why should you bring me to your father?"

9 "Never!" Jonathan replied. "If I ever found out that my father had evil intentions against you, would I not tell you?"

JONATHAN AND DAVID RENEW THEIR COVENANT

10 Then David asked Jonathan, "Who will tell me if your father answers you harshly?"

11 "Come," he replied, "let us go out to the field."

So the two of them went out into the field, 12 and Jonathan said, "By Yahweh, the God of Israel, I will sound out my father by this time tomorrow or the next day. If he is favorable toward you, will I not send for you and tell you? 13 But if my father intends to bring evil on you, then may Yahweh punish me, and ever so severely, if I do not tell you and send you on your way in safety. May Yahweh be with you, just as He has been with my father. 14 And as long as I live, treat me with Yahweh's loving devotion, that I may not die, 15 and do not ever cut off your loving devotion from my household—not even when Yahweh cuts

1SA 19:20 [MIRACLE] The Spirit makes Saul's men and then Saul prophesy

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

off every one of David's enemies from the face of the earth."

16 So Jonathan made a covenant with the house of David, saying, "May Yahweh hold David's enemies accountable." 17 And Jonathan had David reaffirm his vow out of love for him, for Jonathan loved David as he loved himself.

18 Then Jonathan said to David, "Tomorrow is the New Moon, and you will be missed, because your seat will be empty. 19 When you have stayed three days, hurry down to the place you hid on the day this trouble began, and remain beside the stone Ezel. 20 I will shoot three arrows to the side of it, as if I were aiming at a target. 21 Then I will send a boy and say, 'Go, find the arrows!' Now, if I expressly say to him, 'Look, the arrows are on this side of you; bring them,' then come, because as surely as Yahweh lives, it is safe for you, and there is no danger. 22 But if I say to the young man, 'Look, the arrows are beyond you,' then you must go, for Yahweh has sent you away. 23 And as for the matter you and I have discussed, Yahweh is a witness between you and me forever."

24 So David hid in the field, and when the New Moon had come, the king sat down to eat. 25 He sat in his usual place by the wall, opposite Jonathan and beside Abner, but David's place was empty. 26 Saul said nothing that day because he thought, "Something has happened to David to make him ceremonially unclean—surely he is unclean."

27 But on the day after the New Moon, the second day, David's place was still empty, and Saul asked his son Jonathan, "Why hasn't the son of Jesse come to the meal either yesterday or today?"

28 Jonathan answered, "David urgently requested my permission to go to Bethlehem, 29 saying, 'Please let me go, because our clan is holding a sacrifice in the city, and my brother has told me to be there. So now, if I have found favor in your eyes, please let me go and see my brothers.' That is why he has not come to the king's table."

SAUL SEEKS TO KILL JONATHAN

30 Then Saul's anger burned against Jonathan, and he said to him, "You son of a perverse and rebellious woman! Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse to your own shame and to the shame of the mother who bore you? 31 For as long as the son of Jesse lives on this earth, neither you nor your kingdom shall be established. Now send for him and bring him to me, for he must surely die!"

32 "Why must he be put to death?" Jonathan replied. "What has he done?"

33 Then Saul hurled his spear at Jonathan to kill him. So Jonathan knew that his father was determined to kill David. 34 Jonathan got up from the table in fierce anger and did not eat any food that second day of the month, for he was grieved by his father's shameful treatment of David.

35 In the morning Jonathan went out to the field for the appointment with David, and a small boy was with him. 36 He said to the boy, "Run and find the arrows I shoot." And as the boy ran, Jonathan shot an arrow beyond him.

37 When the boy reached the place where Jonathan's arrow had fallen, Jonathan called to him, "Isn't the arrow beyond you?" 38 Then Jonathan cried out, "Hurry! Make haste! Do not delay!" So the boy picked up the arrow and returned to his master.

39 But the boy did not know anything; only Jonathan and David knew the arrangement. 40 Then Jonathan gave his equipment to the boy and said, "Go, take it back to the city."

41 When the young man had gone, David got up from the south side of the stone, fell facedown, and bowed three times. Then he and Jonathan kissed each other and wept together—though David wept more.

42 And Jonathan said to David, "Go in peace, for the two of us have sworn in the name of Yahweh, saying, 'May Yahweh be a witness between you and me, and be-

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

tween your descendants and mine forever.'" Then David got up and departed, and Jonathan went back into the city.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

David is on the run with no food and no sword. At Nob, the priest gives him the holy bread and Goliath's own sword. Then David runs to Gath, Goliath's hometown, of all places. When they recognize him, he pretends to be crazy and drools on his beard. It works.

DAVID TAKES THE CONSECRATED BREAD // MATTHEW 12:1–8; MARK 2:23–28; LUKE 6:1–5

1 Then David came to Nob, to Ahimelech the priest. And when Ahimelech met David, he trembled and asked him, "Why are you alone? Why is no one with you?"

2 "The king has given me a mission," David replied. "He told me no one is to know about the mission on which I am sending you. And I have directed my young men to meet me at a certain place. 3 Now then, what do you have on hand? Give me five loaves of bread, or whatever can be found."

4 "There is no common bread on hand," the priest replied, "but there is some consecrated bread—provided that the young men have kept themselves from women."

5 David answered, "Women have indeed been kept from us, as is usual when I set out. And the bodies of the young men are holy even on common missions. How much more so today!"

6 So the priest gave him the consecrated bread, since there was no bread there but the Bread of the Presence, which had been removed from before Yahweh and replaced with hot bread on the day it was taken away.

7 Now one of Saul's servants was there that day, detained before Yahweh. And his name was Doeg the Edomite, the chief shepherd for Saul.

DAVID FLEES TO GATH // PSALM 34:1–22; PSALM 56:1–13

8 Then David asked Ahimelech, "Is there not a spear or sword on hand here? For I have brought neither my sword nor my weapons with me, because the king's mission was urgent."

9 The priest replied, "The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom you killed in the Valley of Elah, is here; it is wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod. If you want, you may take it. For there is no other but this one here."

And David said, "There is none like it; give it to me."

10 That day David fled from Saul and went to Achish king of Gath. 11 But the servants of Achish said to him, "Is this not David, the king of the land? Did they not sing about him in their dances, saying:

'Saul has slain his thousands,
and David his tens of thousands'?"

12 Now David took these words to heart and was very much afraid of Achish the king of Gath. 13 So he changed his behavior before them and feigned madness in their hands; he scratched on the doors of the gate and let his saliva run down his beard.

14 Then Achish said to his servants, "Look, you can see that the man is insane! Why have you brought him to me? 15 Am I in need of madmen, that you have brought this man to rave in my presence? Must this man come into my house?"

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

David hides in a cave at Adullam, and four hundred men in trouble, in debt or just plain bitter join him. Saul finds out the priests at Nob helped David. When his own men refuse to kill priests, Doeg the Edomite does it. Only one priest, Abiathar, escapes to David.

- **1SA 21:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 12:3-4 p.1566
- **1SA 21:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 2:25-26 p.1613
- **1SA 21:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 6:3-4 p.1658
- **1SA 21:1 [NOTE]** NOB was a town of priests near Jerusalem. Jesus told this story in Matthew 12:3 to 4. Mark 2:26 says it happened in the days of Abiathar the high priest. Abiathar was Ahimelech's son, who escaped in 22:20 and became David's high priest. Some think Mark means the days of the better known Abiathar. Others think he means the part of Scripture about Abiathar.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DAVID FLEES TO ADULLAM AND MIZPEH // PSALM 57:1–11; PSALM 142:1–7

1 So David left Gath and took refuge in the
cave of Adullam. When his brothers and
the rest of his father's household heard
about it, they went down to him there. 2
And all who were distressed or indebted
or discontented rallied around him, and he
became their leader. About four hundred
men were with him.

3 From there David went to Mizpeh of
Moab, where he said to the king of Moab,
"Please let my father and mother stay with
you until I learn what God will do for me."
4 So he left them in the care of the king of
Moab, and they stayed with him the whole
time David was in the stronghold.

5 Then the prophet Gad said to David, "Do
not stay in the stronghold. Depart and go
into the land of Judah." So David left and
went to the forest of Hereth.

SAUL SLAYS THE PRIESTS OF NOB // PSALM 52:1–9

6 Soon Saul learned that David and his
men had been discovered. At that time
Saul was sitting under the tamarisk tree
on the hill at Gibeah, with his spear in
hand and all his servants standing around
him.

7 Then Saul said to his servants, "Listen,
men of Benjamin! Is the son of Jesse giv-
ing all of you fields and vineyards and
making you commanders of thousands or
hundreds? 8 Is that why all of you have
conspired against me? Not one of you told
me that my own son had made a covenant
with the son of Jesse. Not one of you has
shown concern for me or revealed to me
that my son has stirred up my own ser-
vant to lie in wait against me, as is the
case today."

9 But Doeg the Edomite, who had sta-
tioned himself with Saul's servants, an-
swered: "I saw the son of Jesse come to
Ahimelech son of Ahitub at Nob. 10 Ahim-
elech inquired of Yahweh for him and
gave him provisions. He also gave him the
sword of Goliath the Philistine."

11 Then the king sent messengers to sum-
mon Ahimelech the priest, the son of Ahi-
tub, and his father's whole family, who
were priests at Nob. And all of them came
to the king. 12 "Listen now, son of Ahitub,"
said Saul.

"Here I am, my lord," he replied.

13 And Saul asked him, "Why have you and
the son of Jesse conspired against me?
You gave him bread and a sword and in-
quired of God for him so that he could rise
up against me to lie in wait, as he is doing
today."

14 Ahimelech answered the king, "Who
among all your servants is as faithful as
David, the king's son-in-law, the captain
of your bodyguard and honored in your
house? 15 Was that day the first time I in-
quired of God for him? Far be it from me!
Let not the king accuse your servant or
any of my father's household, for your
servant knew nothing of this whole
affair—not in part or in whole."

16 But the king replied, "You will surely die,
Ahimelech, you and all your father's
house!"

17 Then the king ordered the guards at his
side, "Turn and kill the priests of Yahweh,
because they too sided with David. For
they knew he was fleeing, but they did not
tell me."

But the king's servants would not lift a
hand to strike the priests of Yahweh.

18 So the king ordered Doeg, "You turn and
strike down the priests!"

And Doeg the Edomite turned and struck
down the priests himself. On that day he
killed eighty-five men who wore the linen
ephod. 19 He also put to the sword Nob,
the city of the priests, with its men and
women, children and infants, oxen, don-
keys, and sheep.

20 But one of the sons of Ahimelech son of
Ahitub escaped. His name was Abiathar,
and he fled to David. 21 And Abiathar told
David that Saul had killed the priests of
Yahweh.

1SA 22:18 [FULFILLS] Eli's family line would be cut off and lose its strength ← 1SA 2:31-33 p.440

1SA 22:18 [NOTE] Doeg killed 85 priests. Many see this as part of the judgment on Eli's house, 2:31 to 33. It was finished when Solomon removed Abiathar, 1 Kings 2:27.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

22 Then David said to Abiathar, "I knew
that Doeg the Edomite was there that day,
and that he was sure to tell Saul. I myself
am responsible for the lives of everyone in
your father's house. 23 Stay with me; do
not be afraid, for he who seeks your life is
seeking mine as well. You will be safe with
me."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

David saves the town of Keilah from the Philistines, and then he finds out they would hand him over to Saul. God tells him the truth, and David leaves. Saul chases him through the wilderness. Just as Saul is closing in, a messenger runs up: The Philistines are raiding! Saul has to go.

DAVID DELIVERS KEILAH

1 Now it was reported to David, "Look, the
Philistines are fighting against Keilah and
looting the threshing floors."

2 So David inquired of Yahweh, "Should I
go and attack these Philistines?"

And Yahweh said to David, "Go and attack
the Philistines and save Keilah."

3 But David's men said to him, "Look, we
are afraid here in Judah; how much more
if we go to Keilah against the armies of
the Philistines?"

4 Once again, David inquired of Yahweh,
and Yahweh answered him: "Go at once to
Keilah, for I will deliver the Philistines into
your hand."

5 Then David and his men went to Keilah,
fought against the Philistines, and carried
off their livestock, striking them with a
mighty blow. So David saved the people
of Keilah.

6 (Now Abiathar son of Ahimelech had
brought the ephod with him when he fled
to David at Keilah.)

SAUL PURSUES DAVID // PSALM 54:1–7

7 When Saul was told that David had gone
to Keilah, he said, "God has delivered him
into my hand, for he has trapped himself
by entering a town with gates and bars."

8 Then Saul summoned all his troops to go
to war at Keilah and besiege David and his
men.

9 When David learned that Saul was plot-
ting evil against him, he said to Abiathar
the priest, "Bring the ephod."

10 And David said, "O Yahweh, God of Is-
rael, Your servant has heard that Saul in-
tends to come to Keilah and destroy the
city on my account. 11 Will the citizens of
Keilah surrender me into his hand? Will
Saul come down, as Your servant has
heard? O Yahweh, God of Israel, please
tell Your servant."

"He will," said Yahweh.

12 So David asked, "Will the citizens of
Keilah surrender me and my men into the
hand of Saul?"

"They will," said Yahweh.

13 Then David and his men, about six hun-
dred strong, set out and departed from
Keilah, moving from place to place. When
Saul was told that David had escaped
from Keilah, he declined to go forth.

14 And David stayed in the wilderness
strongholds and in the hill country of the
Wilderness of Ziph. Day after day Saul
searched for him, but God would not de-
liver David into his hand.

15 While David was in Horesh in the
Wilderness of Ziph, he saw that Saul had
come out to take his life. 16 And Saul's son
Jonathan came to David in Horesh and
strengthened his hand in God, 17 saying,
"Do not be afraid, for my father Saul will
never lay a hand on you. And you will be
king over Israel, and I will be your second-
in-command. Even my father Saul knows
this is true."

18 So the two of them made a covenant
before Yahweh. And David remained in
Horesh, while Jonathan went home.

19 Then the Ziphites came up to Saul at
Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding
among us in the strongholds at Horesh, on
the hill of Hachilah south of Jeshimon? 20
Now, O king, come down whenever your
soul desires, and we will be responsible
for delivering him into your hand."

21 "May you be blessed by Yahweh,"
replied Saul, "for you have had compas-
sion on me. 22 Please go and prepare fur-

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ther. Investigate and watch carefully where he goes and who has seen him there, for I am told that he is extremely cunning. 23 Observe and find out all the places where he hides. Then come back to me with certainty, and I will go with you. If he is in the land, I will search him out among all the clans of Judah."

24 So they set out and went to Ziph ahead of Saul. Now David and his men were in the Wilderness of Maon in the Arabah south of Jeshimon, 25 and Saul and his men went to seek him. When David was told about it, he went down to the rock and stayed in the Wilderness of Maon. And when Saul heard of this, he pursued David there.

26 Saul was proceeding along one side of the mountain, and David and his men along the other side. Even though David was hurrying to get away, Saul and his men were closing in on David and his men to capture them.

27 Then a messenger came to Saul, saying, "Come quickly, for the Philistines have raided the land!" 28 So Saul broke off his pursuit of David and went to meet the Philistines. That is why that place is called Sela-hammahlekoth. 29 And David went up from there and lived in the strongholds of En-gedi.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Saul goes into a cave at En Gedi to relieve himself. It happens to be the very cave where David and his men are hiding. David's men say, This is your chance! David sneaks up and cuts off the corner of Saul's robe, and then even that bothers him. He will not touch Yahweh's anointed.

DAVID SPARES SAUL

1 After Saul had returned from pursuing the Philistines, he was told, "David is in the wilderness of En-gedi." 2 So Saul took three thousand chosen men from all Israel and went to look for David and his men in the region of the Rocks of the Wild Goats.

3 Soon Saul came to the sheepfolds along the road, where there was a cave, and he went in to relieve himself. And David and his men were hiding in the recesses of the cave. 4 So David's men said to him, "This is the day about which Yahweh said to you, 'Behold, I will deliver your enemy into your hand, that you may do with him as you wish.'"

Then David crept up and stealthily cut off a corner of Saul's robe.

5 Afterward, David's heart struck him because he had cut off the corner of Saul's robe. 6 So he said to his men, "Yahweh forbid that I should do such a thing to my master, Yahweh's anointed. May I never lift my hand against him, since he is Yahweh's anointed."

7 With these words David restrained his men, and he did not let them rise up against Saul. Then Saul left the cave and went on his way.

8 After that, David got up, went out of the cave, and called out to Saul, "My lord the king!"

When Saul looked behind him, David bowed facedown in reverence 9 and said to Saul, "Why do you listen to the words of men who say, 'Look, David intends to harm you'? 10 Behold, this day you have seen with your own eyes that Yahweh delivered you into my hand in the cave. I was told to kill you, but I spared you and said, 'I will not lift my hand against my lord, since he is Yahweh's anointed.'

11 See, my father, look at the corner of your robe in my hand. For I cut it off, but I did not kill you. Know and see that there is no evil or rebellion in my hands. I have not sinned against you, even though you are hunting me down to take my life.

12 May Yahweh judge between you and me, and may Yahweh take vengeance on you, but my hand will never be against you. 13 As the old proverb says, 'Wickedness proceeds from the wicked.' But my hand will never be against you.

1SA 24:5 [HEART] David's heart struck him because he cut the corner of Saul's robe. A soft heart feels even small sins.

1SA 24:6 [NOTE] YAHWEH'S ANOINTED. David will not touch Saul, because God put him there. He waits for God to give him the throne.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

14 Against whom has the king of Israel
come out? Whom are you pursuing? A
dead dog? A flea? 15 May Yahweh be our
judge and decide between you and me.
May He take notice and plead my case
and deliver me from your hand."

DAVID'S OATH TO SAUL

16 When David had finished saying these
things, Saul called back, "Is that your
voice, David my son?"

Then Saul wept aloud 17 and said to David,
"You are more righteous than I, for you
have rewarded me with good, though I
have rewarded you with evil. 18 And you
have declared this day how you have
treated me well, for when Yahweh deliv-
ered me into your hand, you did not kill
me. 19 When a man finds his enemy, does
he let him go away unharmed? May Yah-
weh reward you with good for what you
have done for me this day.

20 Now I know for sure that you will be
king and that the kingdom of Israel will be
established in your hands. 21 So now,
swear to me by Yahweh that you will not
cut off my descendants or wipe out my
name from my father's house."

22 So David gave his oath to Saul. Then
Saul returned home, but David and his
men went up to the stronghold.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Samuel dies. David asks a rich man named Nabal for food after protecting his flocks. Nabal, whose name means fool, says no and insults him. David straps on his sword. Nabal's wise wife Abigail rushes out with food and talks him down. Ten days later God strikes Nabal, and David marries Abigail.

THE DEATH OF SAMUEL

1 When Samuel died, all Israel gathered to
mourn for him; and they buried him at his
home in Ramah.

Then David set out and went down to the
Wilderness of Paran.

1SA 25:1 [NOTE] Samuel died. All Israel mourned him at his home in Ramah.

DAVID, NABAL, AND ABIGAIL

2 Now there was a man in Maon whose
business was in Carmel. He was a very
wealthy man with a thousand goats and
three thousand sheep, which he was
shearing in Carmel. 3 His name was Nabal,
and his wife's name was Abigail. She was
an intelligent and beautiful woman, but
her husband, a Calebite, was harsh and
evil in his dealings.

4 While David was in the wilderness, he
heard that Nabal was shearing sheep. 5 So
David sent ten young men and instructed
them, "Go up to Nabal at Carmel. Greet
him in my name 6 and say to him, 'Long life
to you, and peace to you and to your
house and to all that belongs to you. 7 Now
I hear that it is time for shearing. When
your shepherds were with us, we did not
harass them, and nothing of theirs was
missing the whole time they were in
Carmel. 8 Ask your young men, and they
will tell you. So let my young men find fa-
vor with you, for we have come on the
day of a feast. Please give whatever you
can spare to your servants and to your
son David.'"

9 When David's young men arrived, they
relayed all these words to Nabal on behalf
of David. Then they waited.

10 But Nabal asked them, "Who is David?
Who is this son of Jesse? Many servants
these days are breaking away from their
masters. 11 Why should I take my bread
and water and the meat I have slaugh-
tered for my shearers, and give them to
these men whose origin I do not know?"

12 So David's men turned around and went
back, and they relayed to him all these
words.

13 And David said to his men, "Strap on
your swords!" So David and all his men
strapped on their swords, and about four
hundred men followed David, while two
hundred stayed with the supplies.

14 Meanwhile, one of Nabal's young men
informed Nabal's wife Abigail, "Look,
David sent messengers from the wilder-
ness to greet our master, but he screamed

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

at them. 15 Yet these men were very good to us. When we were in the field, we were not harassed, and nothing of ours went missing the whole time we lived among them. 16 They were a wall around us, both day and night, the whole time we were herding our sheep near them. 17 Now consider carefully what you must do, because disaster looms over our master and all his household. For he is such a scoundrel that nobody can speak to him!"

ABIGAIL INTERCEDES FOR NABAL

18 Then Abigail hurried and took two hundred loaves of bread, two skins of wine, five butchered sheep, a bushel of roasted grain, a hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred cakes of figs. She loaded them on donkeys 19 and said to her young men, "Go ahead of me. I will be right behind you." But she did not tell her husband Nabal.

20 As Abigail came riding her donkey into a mountain ravine, she saw David and his men coming down toward her, and she met them.

21 Now David had just said, "In vain I have protected all that belonged to this man in the wilderness. Nothing that belongs to him has gone missing, yet he has paid me back evil for good. 22 May God punish David, and ever so severely, if I let one male belonging to Nabal survive until morning."

23 When Abigail saw David, she quickly got off the donkey, fell facedown, and bowed before him. 24 She fell at his feet and said, "My lord, may the blame be on me alone, but please let your servant speak to you; hear the words of your servant. 25 My lord should pay no attention to this scoundrel Nabal, for he lives up to his name: His name means Fool, and folly accompanies him. I, your servant, did not see my lord's young men whom you sent.

26 Now, my lord, as surely as Yahweh lives and you yourself live, since Yahweh has held you back from bloodshed and from avenging yourself with your own hand, may your enemies and those who seek harm for my lord be like Nabal.

27 Now let this gift your servant has brought to my lord be given to the young men who follow you. 28 Please forgive your servant's offense, for Yahweh will surely make a lasting dynasty for my lord, because he fights Yahweh's battles. May no evil be found in you as long as you live.

29 And should someone pursue you and seek your life, then the life of my lord will be bound securely by Yahweh your God in the bundle of the living. But He shall fling away the lives of your enemies like stones from a sling.

30 When Yahweh has done for my lord all the good He promised, and when He has appointed you ruler over Israel, 31 then my lord will have no remorse or guilt of conscience over needless bloodshed and revenge. And when Yahweh has dealt well with my lord, may you remember your servant."

32 Then David said to Abigail, "Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel, who sent you to meet me this day! 33 Blessed is your discernment, and blessed are you, because today you kept me from bloodshed and from avenging myself by my own hand. 34 Otherwise, as surely as Yahweh, the God of Israel, lives, who has restrained me from harming you, if you had not come quickly to meet me, then surely no male belonging to Nabal would have been left alive by morning light."

35 Then David accepted from her hand what she had brought him, and he said to her, "Go home in peace. See, I have heeded your voice and granted your request."

36 When Abigail returned to Nabal, there he was in the house, holding a feast fit for a king, in high spirits and very drunk. So she told him nothing until morning light.

37 In the morning when Nabal was sober, his wife told him about these events, and his heart failed within him, and he became like a stone. 38 About ten days later, Yahweh struck Nabal dead.

1SA 25:25 [NOTE] Nabal means fool. His wife, Abigail, said so herself.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DAVID MARRIES ABIGAIL

39 On hearing that Nabal was dead, David said, "Blessed be Yahweh, who has upheld my cause against the reproach of Nabal and has restrained His servant from evil. For Yahweh has brought the wickedness of Nabal down upon his own head."

Then David sent word to Abigail, asking her to become his wife. 40 When his servants came to Abigail at Carmel, they said, "David has sent us to take you as his wife."

41 She arose, bowed facedown, and said, "Here is your servant, ready to serve and to wash the feet of my lord's servants."

42 So Abigail hurried and got on a donkey, and attended by five of her maidens, she followed David's messengers and became his wife.

43 David had also married Ahinoam of Jezreel. So she and Abigail were both his wives. 44 But Saul had given his daughter Michal, David's wife, to Palti son of Laish, who was from Gallim.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Saul is chasing David again. David and Abishai sneak into Saul's camp at night while everyone is asleep, and they take Saul's spear and water jug. David yells from a hilltop at Abner: Some bodyguard you are! Saul admits, I have sinned. David still doesn't trust him.

DAVID AGAIN SPARES SAUL

1 Then the Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is not David hiding on the hill of Hachilah, opposite Jeshimon?" 2 So Saul, accompanied by three thousand chosen men of Israel, went down to the Wilderness of Ziph to search for David there.

3 Saul camped beside the road at the hill of Hachilah opposite Jeshimon, but David was living in the wilderness. When he realized that Saul had followed him there, 4 David sent out spies to verify that Saul had arrived.

5 Then David set out and went to the place where Saul had camped. He saw the place where Saul and Abner son of Ner, the general of his army, had lain down. Saul was lying inside the inner circle of the camp, with the troops camped around him. 6 And David asked Ahimelech the Hittite and Abishai son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, "Who will go down with me to Saul in the camp?"

"I will go with you," answered Abishai.

7 That night David and Abishai came to the troops, and Saul was lying there asleep in the inner circle of the camp, with his spear stuck in the ground by his head. And Abner and the troops were lying around him.

8 Abishai said to David, "Today God has delivered your enemy into your hand. Now, therefore, please let me thrust the spear through him into the ground with one stroke. I will not need to strike him twice!"

9 But David said to Abishai, "Do not destroy him, for who can extend a hand against Yahweh's anointed and be guiltless?" 10 David added, "As surely as Yahweh lives, Yahweh Himself will strike him down; either his day will come and he will die, or he will go into battle and perish. 11 But Yahweh forbid that I should extend my hand against Yahweh's anointed. Instead, take the spear and water jug by his head, and let us go."

12 So David took the spear and water jug by Saul's head, and they departed. No one saw them or knew about it, nor did anyone wake up; they all remained asleep, because a deep sleep from Yahweh had fallen on them.

DAVID REPROVES ABNER

13 Then David crossed to the other side and stood atop the mountain at a distance; there was a wide gulf between them. 14 And David shouted to the troops and to Abner son of Ner, "Will you not answer me, Abner?"

"Who are you who calls to the king?" Abner replied.

1SA 25:37 [HEART] Nabal's heart died within him, and he became like a stone. The man who hardened his heart toward David ended with a heart of stone.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

15 So David said to Abner, "You are a man,
aren't you? And who in Israel is your
equal? Why then did you not protect your
lord the king when one of the people
came to destroy him? 16 This thing you
have done is not good. As surely as Yah-
weh lives, all of you deserve to die, since
you did not protect your lord, Yahweh's
anointed. Now look around. Where are the
king's spear and water jug that were by
his head?"

17 Then Saul recognized David's voice and
asked, "Is that your voice, David my son?"

"It is my voice, my lord and king," David
said.

18 And he continued, "Why is my lord pur-
suing his servant? What have I done?
What evil is in my hand? 19 Now please,
may my lord the king hear the words of
his servant: If Yahweh has stirred you up
against me, then may He accept an offer-
ing. But if men have done it, may they be
cursed in the presence of Yahweh! For to-
day they have driven me away from shar-
ing in the inheritance of Yahweh, saying,
'Go, serve other gods.' 20 So do not let my
blood fall to the ground far from the pres-
ence of Yahweh. For the king of Israel has
come out to look for a flea, like one who
hunts a partridge in the mountains."

SAUL ACKNOWLEDGES HIS SIN

21 Then Saul replied, "I have sinned. Come
back, David my son. I will never harm you
again, because today you considered my
life precious. I have played the fool and
have committed a grave error!"

22 "Here is the king's spear," David an-
swered. "Let one of the young men come
over and get it. 23 May Yahweh repay
every man for his righteousness and faith-
fulness. For Yahweh delivered you into my
hand today, but I would not extend my
hand against Yahweh's anointed. 24 As
surely as I valued your life today, so may
Yahweh value my life and rescue me from
all trouble."

25 Saul said to him, "May you be blessed,
David my son. You will accomplish great
things and will surely prevail."

So David went on his way, and Saul re-
turned home.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

David decides he will be safer living among the Philistines. King Achish of Gath gives him the town of Ziklag. David raids Israel's old enemies, but tells Achish he is raiding Judah. Achish thinks David's own people must hate him now.

DAVID AND THE PHILISTINES

1 David, however, said to himself, "One of
these days now I will be swept away by
the hand of Saul. There is nothing better
for me than to escape to the land of the
Philistines. Then Saul will stop searching
for me all over Israel, and I will slip out of
his hand."

2 So David set out with his six hundred
men and went to Achish son of Maoch,
the king of Gath. 3 David and his men set-
tled in Gath with Achish. Each man had his
family with him, and David had his two
wives: Ahinoam of Jezreel and Abigail of
Carmel, the widow of Nabal. 4 And when
Saul learned that David had fled to Gath,
he no longer searched for him.

5 Then David said to Achish, "If I have
found favor in your eyes, let me be as-
signed a place in one of the outlying
towns, so I can live there. For why should
your servant live in the royal city with
you?"

6 That day Achish gave him Ziklag, and to
this day it still belongs to the kings of Ju-
dah. 7 And the time that David lived in
Philistine territory amounted to a year and
four months.

8 Now David and his men went up and
raided the Geshurites, the Girzites, and
the Amalekites. (From ancient times these
people had inhabited the land extending
to Shur and Egypt.) 9 Whenever David at-

1SA 26:19 [DEMONIC] David says they drove him out to serve other gods

1SA 27:6 [NOTE] TO THIS DAY IT STILL BELONGS TO THE KINGS OF JUDAH. This line sounds like it was written after the kingdom split into Israel and Judah. See the Big Question pages Who Wrote 1 Samuel?, p.481

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

tacked a territory, he did not leave a man or woman alive, but he took the flocks and herds, the donkeys, camels, and clothing.

Then he would return to Achish, 10 who would ask him, "What have you raided today?"

And David would reply, "The Negev of Judah," or "The Negev of Jerahmeel," or "The Negev of the Kenites."

11 David did not leave a man or woman alive to be brought to Gath, for he said, "Otherwise they will report us, saying, 'This is what David did.'" And this was David's custom the whole time he lived in Philistine territory.

12 So Achish trusted David, thinking, "Since he has made himself an utter stench to his people Israel, he will be my servant forever."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE 1 SAMUEL?

The Traditional View

1 SAMUEL 9:9 · 25:1 · 27:6 · 1 CHRONICLES 29:29

THE BOOK DOES NOT SAY

1 Samuel never names its writer. It is named for Samuel because he is the main person in the first half and he anointed both kings.

THE TALMUD

An old Jewish teaching in the Talmud, Bava Batra 14b and 15a, says Samuel wrote his book, and that Gad the seer and Nathan the prophet finished it, since Samuel dies in 25:1.

THE RECORDS

1 Chronicles 29:29 says the acts of King David are written in the records of Samuel the seer, Nathan the prophet and Gad the seer. All three men knew David.

CLUES IN THE BOOK

The writer explains old words, like seer, 9:9. He says Ziklag belongs to the kings of Judah to this day, 27:6, which sounds like a time after the kingdom split into Israel and Judah, after Solomon.

ONE BOOK

In the Hebrew Bible, 1 and 2 Samuel are one book. The old Greek Bible split it into two and joined it with Kings, so 1 and 2 Samuel were 1 and 2 Kingdoms, and 1 and 2 Kings were 3 and 4 Kingdoms. Printed Hebrew Bibles started splitting Samuel in the 1500s.

Every View

1 SAMUEL 13:1 · 17:4 · 10:27 · DEUTERONOMY TO 2 KINGS

VIEW 1: SAMUEL, NATHAN AND GAD

Samuel and the prophets who knew David kept records, and an editor put them together not long after David and Solomon, or soon after the kingdom split. The book knows the land, the names and the places very well.

VIEW 2: PART OF A BIGGER HISTORY

Many scholars think Deuteronomy through 2 Kings were put together as one long history near the time of the exile, in the 500s BC, using much older sources. This idea was first proposed by the German scholar Martin Noth in 1943.

VIEW 3: OLDER STORIES INSIDE

Scholars often see older stories inside the book: the ark story, chapters 4 to 6, and the rise of David, from chapter 16 into 2 Samuel. Many think they were written close to the events.

THE TEXT ITSELF

The Hebrew text of Samuel has more copying problems than most books, like Saul's age in 13:1. The Dead Sea Scroll 4QSam a and the old Greek Bible help with some gaps, like Goliath's height, 17:4. The scroll alone has the Nahash paragraph, 10:27.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Whoever wrote it told the truth about Israel's heroes, faults and all. It shows a God who raises up the humble and brings down the proud, just as Hannah sang, 2:7 to 8.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

The Philistines gather for war, and Saul is terrified. God will not answer him. So the king who threw the mediums out of the land disguises himself and visits a medium at Endor. Bring up Samuel, he says. What comes up has the worst news of Saul's life: tomorrow you will be with me.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE PHILISTINES GATHER AGAINST ISRAEL

1 Now in those days the Philistines gathered their forces for warfare against Israel. So Achish said to David, "You must understand that you and your men are to go out to battle with me."

2 David replied, "Then you will come to know what your servant can do."

"Very well," said Achish. "I will make you my bodyguard for life."

3 Now by this time Samuel had died, and all Israel had mourned for him and buried him in Ramah, his own city. And Saul had removed the mediums and spiritists from the land.

4 The Philistines gathered together and camped at Shunem, while Saul gathered all Israel and camped at Gilboa. 5 When Saul saw the Philistine army, he was afraid and trembled violently. 6 He inquired of Yahweh, but Yahweh did not answer him by dreams or Urim or prophets.

SAUL AND THE MEDIUM OF ENDOR

7 Then Saul said to his servants, "Find me a woman who is a medium, so I can go and consult her."

"There is a medium at Endor," his servants replied.

8 So Saul disguised himself by putting on different clothes, and he set out with two of his men. They came to the woman at night, and Saul said, "Consult a spirit for me. Bring up for me the one I name."

9 But the woman replied, "Surely you know what Saul has done, how he has killed the mediums and spiritists in the land. Why have you set a trap to get me killed?"

10 Then Saul swore to her by Yahweh: "As surely as Yahweh lives, no punishment shall come upon you for this."

11 "Whom shall I bring up for you?" the woman asked.

"Bring up Samuel," he replied.

12 But when the woman saw Samuel, she cried out in a loud voice and said to Saul, "Why have you deceived me? You are Saul!"

13 "Do not be afraid," the king replied. "What do you see?"

"I see a god coming up out of the earth," the woman answered.

14 "What does he look like?" asked Saul.

"An old man is coming up," she replied. "And he is wearing a robe."

So Saul knew that it was Samuel, and he bowed facedown in reverence.

15 Then Samuel said to Saul, "Why have you disturbed me by bringing me up?"

"I am deeply distressed," replied Saul. "The Philistines are fighting against me, and God has turned away from me. He no longer answers me, either by prophets or by dreams. So I have called on you to tell me what to do."

16 "Why do you consult me," asked Samuel, "since Yahweh has turned away from you and become your enemy? 17 He has done exactly what He spoke through me: Yahweh has torn the kingdom out of your hand and given it to your neighbor David. 18 Because you did not obey Yahweh or carry out His burning anger against Amalek, Yahweh has done this to you today. 19 Moreover, Yahweh will deliver Israel with you into the hand of the Philistines, and tomorrow you and your sons will be with me. And Yahweh will deliver the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines."

- **1SA 28:3 [DEMONIC]** Saul had removed the mediums and spiritists
- **1SA 28:7 [DEMONIC]** Saul disguises himself and seeks a medium
- **1SA 28:7 [NOTE]** A MEDIUM claimed to talk with the dead. God's law banned it, Leviticus 19:31 and Deuteronomy 18:10 to 12, and Saul himself had thrown them out, 28:3. See the Big Question pages The Medium of Endor, p.483.
- **1SA 28:9 [DEMONIC]** The medium reminds Saul he killed the mediums
- **1SA 28:11 [DEMONIC]** The medium sees Samuel come up
- **1SA 28:15 [DEMONIC]** Samuel asks Saul why he disturbed him
- **1SA 28:15 [NOTE]** WHO IS SPEAKING? The text calls him Samuel. His words are not printed red, because this is not God speaking. Readers disagree about what really came up.
- **1SA 28:19 [PROPHECY]** At Endor, Samuel said Saul and his sons would die the next day → 1SA 31:6 p.486

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE MEDIUM OF ENDOR

What Happened

1 SAMUEL 28:3 TO 25 · LEVITICUS 19:31 · DEUTERONOMY 18:10 TO 12 · 1 CHRONICLES 10:13 TO 14

THE LAW

God's law banned mediums and anyone who calls up the dead, Deuteronomy 18:10 to 12. Saul himself had thrown them out of the land, 28:3.

A KING WITH NO ANSWER

The Philistines gathered at Shunem, and Saul was terrified. He asked Yahweh, but God did not answer him by dreams, by the Urim or by prophets, 28:6. So Saul put on a disguise and went at night to a medium at Endor, 28:8.

WHAT SHE SAW

Saul said, Bring up Samuel. When the woman saw Samuel, she screamed, 28:12. She said, I see a god coming up out of the earth. The Hebrew word is elohim, which can mean a god or a spirit being. She described an old man wrapped in a robe, and Saul bowed down, 28:13 to 14.

THE MESSAGE

Samuel said Yahweh had torn the kingdom from Saul and given it to David, and tomorrow you and your sons will be with me, 28:17 to 19. Soon after, Saul and three of his sons died in battle, 31:6.

THE VERDICT

1 Chronicles 10:13 to 14 says Saul died because he was unfaithful to Yahweh, and because he asked a medium for guidance instead of asking Yahweh.

Was It Really Samuel?

1 SAMUEL 28:12 TO 19 · ISAIAH 8:19 · LUKE 16:26 · MATTHEW 17:3

VIEW 1: GOD SENT SAMUEL

Many Jewish and Christian teachers say it really was Samuel, sent by God, not called up by her power. Her scream shows she did not expect it. The writer calls him Samuel again and again, and his words came true. The old Jewish book Sirach says Samuel prophesied even after he died, Sirach 46:20.

VIEW 2: A DEMON IN DISGUISE

Many others, including Martin Luther and John Calvin, said it was an evil spirit pretending to be Samuel. They point out that God's law forbids this, the dead do not come and go at a medium's call, Luke 16:26, and demons can know and use true things.

VIEW 3: A TRICK

A few say the woman faked it, using a hidden voice. Most reject this, because the message was true and Saul was in disguise, yet she found out who he was.

WHAT EACH SIDE ANSWERS

The first side says God can do something rare without blessing the medium's trade, like Moses and Elijah appearing with Jesus, Matthew 17:3. The second side says God would not answer Saul through the very sin He had banned.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

Saul broke God's law and it did not help him. Isaiah 8:19 says, Should not a people ask their God? Why ask the dead on behalf of the living? Nobody in the Bible is ever told to try this. Ask God.

20 Immediately Saul fell flat on the ground,
terrified by the words of Samuel. And his
strength was gone, because he had not
eaten anything all that day and night.
21 When the woman came to Saul and saw
how distraught he was, she said to him,
"Look, your maidservant has obeyed your
voice. I took my life in my hands and did
as you told me. 22 Now please listen to
your servant and let me set a morsel of
bread before you so you may eat and
have the strength to go on your way."
23 Saul refused, saying, "I will not eat." But
his servants joined the woman in urging
him, and he heeded their voice. He got up
from the ground and sat on the bed.
24 The woman had a fattened calf at her
house, and she quickly slaughtered it. She
also took flour, kneaded it, and baked unleavened bread. 25 She served it to Saul
and his servants, and they ate. And that
night they got up and left.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

David and his men march out with the Philistine army against Israel. Awkward. The other Philistine lords say, Isn't this the David they sing about? Get him out of here. Achish sends David home. God gets David out of fighting his own people.

THE PHILISTINES REJECT DAVID

1 Now the Philistines brought all their
forces together at Aphek, while Israel
camped by the spring in Jezreel. 2 As the
Philistine leaders marched out with their
units of hundreds and thousands, David
and his men marched behind them with
Achish.

3 Then the commanders of the Philistines
asked, "What about these Hebrews?"

Achish replied, "Is this not David, the servant of King Saul of Israel? He has been with me all these days, even years, and from the day he defected until today I have found no fault in him."

4 But the commanders of the Philistines
were angry with Achish and told him,
"Send that man back and let him return to
the place you assigned him. He must not
go down with us into battle only to become our adversary during the war. What
better way for him to regain the favor of
his master than with the heads of our
men? 5 Is this not the David about whom
they sing in their dances:

'Saul has slain his thousands,
and David his tens of thousands'?"

6 So Achish summoned David and told
him, "As surely as Yahweh lives, you have
been upright, and it seems right in my
sight that you should march in and out
with me in the army, because I have found
no fault in you from the day you came to
me until this day. But you are not good in
the sight of the leaders. 7 Therefore turn
back now and go in peace, so that you
will not do anything to displease the leaders of the Philistines."

8 "But what have I done?" David replied.
"What have you found against your servant, from the day I came to you until today, to keep me from going along to fight
against the enemies of my lord the king?"

9 Achish replied, "I know that you are as
pleasing in my sight as an angel of God.
But the commanders of the Philistines
have said, 'He must not go into battle with
us.' 10 Now then, get up early in the morning, along with your master's servants
who came with you, and go as soon as it
is light."

11 So David and his men got up early in the
morning to return to the land of the
Philistines. And the Philistines went up to
Jezreel.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

David gets home to Ziklag and finds it burned and every family taken by the Amalekites. His own men talk about stoning him. David finds his strength in Yahweh, asks God what to do, and chases the raiders. He gets back everyone and everything, and he makes sure even the tired men get a share.

THE AMALEKITES RAID ZIKLAG

1 On the third day David and his men ar-
rived in Ziklag, and the Amalekites had
raided the Negev, attacked Ziklag, and
burned it down. 2 They had taken captive
the women and all who were there, both
young and old. They had not killed anyone, but had carried them off as they
went on their way.

3 When David and his men came to the
city, they found it burned down and their
wives and sons and daughters taken captive. 4 So David and the troops with him
lifted up their voices and wept until they
had no strength left to weep.

5 David's two wives, Ahinoam of Jezreel
and Abigail the widow of Nabal of Carmel,
had been taken captive. 6 And David was
greatly distressed because the people
spoke of stoning him, because the soul of
every man grieved for his sons and
daughters. But David found strength in
Yahweh his God.

1SA 30:6 [NOTABLE] David's lowest day: his town burned, his family taken, and his own men ready to stone him. He did not quit. He found his strength in God first, then he acted.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DAVID DESTROYS THE AMALEKITES

7 Then David said to Abiathar the priest,
the son of Ahimelech, "Bring me the
ephod."

So Abiathar brought it to him, 8 and David
inquired of Yahweh: "Should I pursue
these raiders? Will I overtake them?"

"Pursue them," Yahweh replied, "for you
will surely overtake them and rescue the
captives."

9 So David and his six hundred men went
to the Brook of Besor, where some stayed
behind 10 because two hundred men were
too exhausted to cross the brook. But
David and four hundred men continued in
pursuit.

11 Now his men found an Egyptian in the
field and brought him to David. They gave
the man water to drink and food to eat—
12 a piece of a fig cake and two clusters of
raisins. So he ate and was revived, for he
had not had any food or water for three
days and three nights.

13 Then David asked him, "To whom do
you belong, and where are you from?"

"I am an Egyptian," he replied, "the slave
of an Amalekite. My master abandoned
me three days ago when I fell ill. 14 We
raided the Negev of the Cherethites, the
territory of Judah, and the Negev of
Caleb, and we burned down Ziklag."

15 "Will you lead me to these raiders?"
David asked.

And the man replied, "Swear to me by
God that you will not kill me or deliver me
into the hand of my master, and I will lead
you to them."

16 So he led David down, and there were
the Amalekites spread out over all the
land, eating, drinking, and celebrating the
great amount of plunder they had taken
from the land of the Philistines and the
land of Judah. 17 And David struck them
down from twilight until the evening of the
next day. Not a man escaped, except four
hundred young men who fled, riding off
on camels.

18 So David recovered everything the
Amalekites had taken, including his two
wives. 19 Nothing was missing, young or
old, son or daughter, or any of the plunder
the Amalekites had taken. David brought
everything back. 20 And he took all the
flocks and herds, which his men drove
ahead of the other livestock, calling out,
"This is David's plunder!"

THE SPOILS ARE DIVIDED

21 When David came to the two hundred
men who had been too exhausted to fol-
low him and who were left behind at the
Brook of Besor, they came out to meet
him and the troops with him. As David ap-
proached the men, he greeted them, 22 but
all the wicked and worthless men among
those who had gone with David said, "Be-
cause they did not go with us, we will not
share with them the plunder we recov-
ered, except for each man's wife and chil-
dren. They may take them and go."

23 But David said, "My brothers, you must
not do this with what Yahweh has given
us. He has protected us and delivered into
our hands the raiders who came against
us. 24 Who will listen to your proposal? The
share of the one who went to battle will
match the share of the one who stayed
with the supplies. They will share alike."

25 And so it has been from that day for-
ward. David established this statute and
ordinance for Israel to this very day.

26 When David arrived in Ziklag, he sent
some of the plunder to his friends, the el-
ders of Judah, saying, "Here is a gift for
you from the plunder of Yahweh's ene-
mies." 27 He sent gifts to those in Bethel,
Ramoth Negev, and Jattir; 28 to those in
Aroer, Siphmoth, and Eshtemoa; 29 to
those in Racal and in the cities of the Jer-
ahmeelites and Kenites; 30 to those in
Hormah, Bor-ashan, and Athach; 31 and to
those in Hebron and in all the places
where David and his men had roamed.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

The Philistines win on Mount Gilboa. Jonathan and two of his brothers die, and Saul, badly wounded, falls on his own sword. The Philistines hang the bodies on the wall of Beth Shan. The men of Jabesh Gilead, whom Saul rescued in chapter 11, walk all night to bring them home.

SAUL'S OVERTHROW AND DEATH // 2 SAMUEL 1:1–16; 1 CHRONICLES 10:1–6

1 Now the Philistines fought against Israel,
and the men of Israel fled before them,
and many fell slain on Mount Gilboa.
2 The Philistines hotly pursued Saul and
his sons, and they killed Saul's sons
Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchishua. 3
When the battle intensified against Saul,
the archers overtook him and wounded
him critically.
4 Then Saul said to his armor-bearer,
"Draw your sword and run me through
with it, or these uncircumcised men will
come and run me through and torture
me!"
But his armor-bearer was terrified and re-
fused to do it. So Saul took his own sword
and fell on it.
5 When his armor-bearer saw that Saul
was dead, he too fell on his own sword
and died with him.
6 So Saul, his three sons, his armor-bearer,
and all his men died together that same
day.

THE PHILISTINES POSSESS THE TOWNS // 1 CHRONICLES 10:7–10

7 When the Israelites along the valley and
those on the other side of the Jordan saw
that the army of Israel had fled and that
Saul and his sons had died, they aban-
doned their cities and ran away. So the
Philistines came and occupied their cities.
8 The next day, when the Philistines came
to strip the dead, they found Saul and his
three sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. 9 They
cut off Saul's head, stripped off his armor,
and sent messengers throughout the land
of the Philistines to proclaim the news in
the temples of their idols and among their
people. 10 They put his armor in the temple
of the Ashtoreths and hung his body on
the wall of Beth-shan.

JABESH-GILEAD'S TRIBUTE TO SAUL // 1 CHRONICLES 10:11–14

11 When the people of Jabesh-gilead heard
what the Philistines had done to Saul, 12 all
their men of valor set out, journeyed all
night, and retrieved the bodies of Saul and
his sons from the wall of Beth-shan.
When they arrived at Jabesh, they burned
the bodies there. 13 Then they took their
bones and buried them under the
tamarisk tree in Jabesh, and they fasted
seven days.

1SA 31:4 [NOTE] 2 Samuel 1:6 to 10 tells it differently. An Amalekite says he killed Saul. Many think he lied to win a reward from David.

1SA 31:6 [FULFILLS] At Endor, Samuel said Saul and his sons would die the next day ← 1SA 28:19 p.482

1SA 31:9 [DEMONIC] The Philistines put Saul's armor in the temple of the Ashtoreths

1SA 31:10 [FIELD NOTES] Beth Shan was a real city with Egyptian and Canaanite ruins. See the Beth Shean Field Notes page, p.487.

1SA 31:11 [NOTE] JABESH GILEAD remembered. Saul's first victory as king was saving their town, chapter 11. They never forgot it.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE CITY, DEBATED FOR THE TEMPLES

BETH SHEAN

1 SAMUEL 31:8 TO 13 · JOSHUA 17:11 TO 12 · JUDGES 1:27 · 1 CHRONICLES 10:10



Ruins of the Egyptian governor's house at Tel Beth Shean, from the 1100s BC. The metal frame and the tops of the walls are modern, added to protect the ruins. Photo A. Sobkowski, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

Tel Beth Shean is a huge hill of ruins where the Jezreel Valley meets the Jordan Valley. The Bible calls it Beth Shan. The Philistines hung Saul's body on its wall, 31:10.

HOW OLD IT IS

The city is more than 5,000 years old. For about three hundred years, until about 1130 BC, it was an Egyptian army base that guarded the road.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The University of Pennsylvania dug it from 1921 to 1933. Amihai Mazar of the Hebrew University dug it again from 1989 to 1996.

WHAT THEY FOUND

The Egyptian governor's house in the photo, stone monuments of the Egyptian kings Seti I and Ramesses II, and clay coffins with faces on the lids. Some think the people buried in those coffins were soldiers from the Sea Peoples, like the Philistines.

THE TEMPLES

The first diggers found two temples and said they were the temple of the Ashtoreths, 31:10, and the temple of Dagon, 1 Chronicles 10:10. Later scholars are not sure. The dates and who used them are still debated.

JABESH GILEAD

The men of Jabesh walked all night, across the Jordan, to take down the bodies, 31:12. It was a long walk through the night, in the dark and in enemy land.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

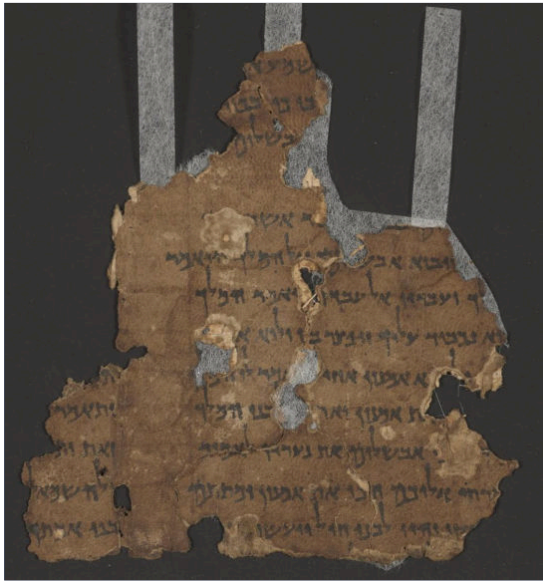
Nothing found there names Saul. It shows that Beth Shan was a strong city in Saul's day, not held by Israel, Judges 1:27.

BOOK 10 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

2 SAMUEL

The King David Show

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Samuel began the book, and Gad the seer and Nathan the prophet finished it. 1 Chronicles 29:29 names the records of Samuel, Nathan and Gad.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	The forty years David was king, from Saul's death to near the end of David's life.
DATE	About 1010 to 970 BC. David ruled Judah from Hebron for seven and a half years, then all Israel from Jerusalem for thirty three years, 5:5.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, to show how God made David king, the forever promise God gave him, and what David's sin cost his family.
KEY VERSE	2 Samuel 7:16. Your house and kingdom will endure forever before Me, and your throne will be established forever.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF 2 SAMUEL
This piece of leather comes from 4QSam a, a scroll of 1 and 2 Samuel found in Cave 4 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. It was copied about 50 to 25 BC. Its right column holds 2 Samuel 13:24 to 29, where Absalom invites the king's sons to his sheepshearing and tells his servants to strike Amnon. The names Absalom and Amnon can still be read. The white strips are thin modern paper that holds the piece together.

THE OLDEST COPIES. 4QSam c and 4QSam a are the oldest copies of 2 Samuel known so far. 4QSam c is a smaller scroll copied about 100 to 75 BC, even older than 4QSam a, and it holds parts of chapters 14 and 15. 4QSam a often matches the old Greek Bible instead of the standard Hebrew text, and 4QSam c sometimes does too.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

2 Samuel starts in Hebron, in the hills of Judah, where David is crowned by his own tribe. Then David takes Jerusalem from the Jebusites and makes it his capital, the City of David. From there he fights the Philistines on the coast, Moab and Ammon across the Jordan, the Arameans in the north and Edom in the south.

What Was Going Wrong

CIVIL WAR. Saul's house and David's house fought for years 2:12 to 3:1.
MURDERS. Joab murdered Abner and Amasa, and two captains murdered Ish bosheth 3:27, 4:5 to 7, 20:10.
THE WRONG WAY. The ark rode on a cart instead of being carried as God's law said, and Uzzah died 6:3 to 7.
THE KING'S SIN. David took Bathsheba and had her husband Uriah killed 11:4, 11:15 to 17.
RAPE IN THE PALACE. Amnon raped his half sister Tamar, and David did nothing 13:14, 13:21.
A SON'S REVOLT. Absalom killed Amnon, stole Israel's hearts and took his father's throne 13:28 to 29, 15:6 to 12.
BROKEN OATHS. Saul broke Israel's oath to the Gibeonites, and the land suffered a famine 21:1 to 2.
A PROUD COUNT. David counted his fighting men, and a plague followed 24:1 to 15.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Samuel is the story of King David, the good, the bad and the very sad. Saul is dead, and David is crowned, first by Judah, then by all twelve tribes. He takes Jerusalem, and God promises him a house and a throne that will last forever. Then, at the top of his success, David takes another man's wife and has the husband killed. The prophet Nathan tells him, You are that man. David repents, and God forgives him, but the sword never leaves his house. His son Absalom even steals the throne, and David weeps when he dies. The book ends with David's song of praise, his last words and an altar on a threshing floor where the temple will one day stand.

2 Samuel at a Glance

CH 1 to 4	**KING OF JUDAH** David rules in Hebron while Saul's house fades.
CH 5 to 10	**KING OF ALL ISRAEL** Jerusalem, the ark and God's forever promise.
CH 11 to 12	**DAVID'S SIN** Bathsheba, Uriah and Nathan's story.
CH 13 to 18	**TROUBLE AT HOME** Amnon, Tamar and Absalom's revolt.
CH 19 to 20	**BACK TO JERUSALEM** The king returns to a divided kingdom.
CH 21 to 24	**THE LAST WORDS** Giants, songs, mighty men and a threshing floor.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 SAMUEL 7:12 TO 16 God promised David a son whose throne would last forever. The angel told Mary that Jesus would get the throne of His father David, Luke 1:32 to 33.

2 SAMUEL 7:14 I will be his Father, and he will be My son. Hebrews 1:5 uses these words for Jesus, God's Son.

2 SAMUEL 22:50 Paul quotes this in Romans 15:9 to show the Gentiles would praise God through Christ.

GOD'S NAMES IN 2 SAMUEL

Yahweh, again and again, and Yahweh of Hosts, 6:2. In his prayer in chapter 7, David calls Him Lord Yahweh seven times. He calls Him my Rock, 22:2, and the Rock of Israel, 23:3. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in 2 Samuel

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (6)	7:12-14, 7:16, 22:50, 23:1
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	23:3-4
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (6)	5:1-3, 8:14, 12:10-14, 12:18, 16:21-22
THE HEART (7)	6:16, 7:3, 7:21, 7:27, 15:6, 15:13, 24:10
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	2:13
MIRACLES (4)	5:23-25, 6:6-7, 22:8-16, 24:15-17
DEMONIC (2)	5:21, 21:15-22
NOTABLE (8)	6:1-5, 6:8-11, 7:18, 9:7, 12:7, 12:23, 18:33 and 2 more
GOD SPEAKING (30 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (276 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

1, 2, 3 AND 4 KINGS

1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings used to be called 1, 2, 3 and 4 Kings, because they tell one long story. That makes this book the Second Book of the Kings. The old Greek Bible named it 2 Kingdoms, and Latin Bibles named it 2 Kings. The King James still calls it The Second Book of Samuel, otherwise called The Second Book of the Kings. In old Hebrew Bibles, 1 and 2 Samuel were one book.

HOUSE OF DAVID IN STONE

An enemy king's stone from about 130 years after David names the House of David. See the Tel Dan Stele page.

A SEAT AT THE TABLE

David gave Jonathan's lame son a place at the king's table for life, 9:7 to 13.

How Did It Turn Out?

David ended as king of a united Israel, with a broken family. Next comes 1 Kings, where Solomon builds the temple on David's threshing floor.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

A young Amalekite runs into David's camp with Saul's crown and a story: I killed Saul for you. He expects a reward. He gets the opposite. Then David writes a song for Saul and Jonathan, How the mighty have fallen, and teaches it to Judah.

SAUL'S DEATH REPORTED TO DAVID // 1 SAMUEL 31:1–6; 1 CHRONICLES 10:1–6

1 After the death of Saul, David returned
from the slaughter of the Amalekites and
stayed in Ziklag two days. 2 On the third
day a man with torn clothes and dust on
his head arrived from Saul's camp. When
he came to David, he fell to the ground to
pay him homage.

3 "Where have you come from?" David
asked.

"I have escaped from the Israelite camp,"
he replied.

4 "What was the outcome?" David asked.
"Please tell me."

"The troops fled from the battle," he
replied. "Many of them fell and died. And
Saul and his son Jonathan are also dead."

5 Then David asked the young man who
had brought him the report, "How do you
know that Saul and his son Jonathan are
dead?"

6 "I happened to be on Mount Gilboa," he
replied, "and there was Saul, leaning on
his spear, with the chariots and the cav-
alry closing in on him. 7 When he turned
around and saw me, he called out to me,
and I answered, 'Here I am!'

8 'Who are you?' he asked.

So I told him, 'I am an Amalekite.'

9 Then he begged me, 'Stand over me and
kill me, for agony has seized me, but my
life still lingers.'

10 So I stood over him and killed him, be-
cause I knew that after he had fallen he
could not survive. And I took the crown
that was on his head and the band that
was on his arm, and I have brought them
here to my lord."

11 Then David took hold of his own clothes
and tore them, and all the men who were
with him did the same. 12 They mourned
and wept and fasted until evening for Saul
and his son Jonathan, and for the people
of Yahweh and the house of Israel, be-
cause they had fallen by the sword.

13 And David inquired of the young man
who had brought him the report, "Where
are you from?"

"I am the son of a foreigner," he an-
swered. "I am an Amalekite."

14 So David asked him, "Why were you not
afraid to lift your hand to destroy
Yahweh's anointed?" 15 Then David sum-
moned one of the young men and said,
"Go, execute him!" So the young man
struck him down, and he died. 16 For David
had said to the Amalekite, "Your blood be
on your own head because your own
mouth has testified against you, saying, 'I
killed Yahweh's anointed.'"

DAVID'S SONG FOR SAUL AND JONATHAN

17 Then David took up this lament for Saul
and his son Jonathan, 18 and he ordered
that the sons of Judah be taught the Song
of the Bow. It is written in the Book of
Jashar:

19 "Your glory, O Israel, lies slain on your
heights.
How the mighty have fallen!

20 Tell it not in Gath;
proclaim it not in the streets of
Ashkelon,
lest the daughters of the Philistines re-
joice,
and the daughters of the uncircumcised
exult.
21 O mountains of Gilboa,
may you have no dew or rain,
no fields yielding offerings of grain.
For there the shield of the mighty was de-
filed,

2SA 1:1 [NOTE] SECOND BOOK OF THE KINGS. 1 and 2 Samuel were once one book. 2 Samuel picks up the day after Saul died, 1 Samuel 31.

2SA 1:10 [NOTE] WHO KILLED SAUL? 1 Samuel 31:4 says Saul fell on his own sword. This Amalekite says he finished Saul off. Most think he lied to win a reward from David.

2SA 1:18 [NOTE] THE BOOK OF JASHAR, the Book of the Upright, was an old book of songs and poems. It is also quoted in Joshua 10:13. It has been lost.

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

the shield of Saul, no longer anointed
with oil.

22 From the blood of the slain,
from the fat of the mighty,
the bow of Jonathan did not retreat,
and the sword of Saul did not return
empty.
23 Saul and Jonathan, beloved and delightful in life,
were not divided in death.
They were swifter than eagles;
they were stronger than lions.

24 O daughters of Israel,
weep for Saul,
who clothed you in scarlet and luxury,
who decked your garments with ornaments of gold.
25 How the mighty have fallen in the thick of battle!
Jonathan lies slain on your heights.

26 I grieve for you, Jonathan, my brother.
You were delightful to me;
your love to me was extraordinary,
surpassing the love of women.
27 How the mighty have fallen,
and the weapons of war have perished!"

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Judah crowns David king in Hebron, but Abner, Saul's general, makes Saul's son Ish bosheth king of everyone else. The two sides meet at the pool of Gibeon for a contest that turns into a battle. Abner kills Joab's fast little brother Asahel, and that starts a long feud.

DAVID ANOINTED KING OF JUDAH

1 Some time later, David inquired of Yahweh, "Should I go up to one of the towns of Judah?"

"Go up," Yahweh answered.

Then David asked, "Where should I go?"

"To Hebron," replied Yahweh.

2 So David went there with his two wives, Ahinoam of Jezreel and Abigail the widow of Nabal of Carmel. 3 David also took the men who were with him, each with his household, and they settled in the towns near Hebron.

4 Then the men of Judah came to Hebron, and there they anointed David king over the house of Judah. And they told David, "It was the men of Jabesh-gilead who buried Saul."

5 So David sent messengers to the men of Jabesh-gilead to tell them, "Yahweh bless you, because you showed this kindness to Saul your lord when you buried him. 6 Now may Yahweh show you loving devotion and faithfulness, and I will also show you the same favor because you have done this. 7 Now then, be strong and courageous, for though Saul your lord is dead, the house of Judah has anointed me as their king."

ISH-BOSHETH MADE KING OF ISRAEL

8 Meanwhile, Abner son of Ner, the commander of Saul's army, took Saul's son Ish-bosheth, moved him to Mahanaim, 9 and made him king over Gilead, Asher, Jezreel, Ephraim, and Benjamin—over all Israel.

10 Saul's son Ish-bosheth was forty years old when he began to reign over Israel, and he reigned for two years.

The house of Judah, however, followed David. 11 And the length of time that David was king in Hebron over the house of Judah was seven years and six months.

THE BATTLE OF GIBEON

12 One day Abner son of Ner and the servants of Ish-bosheth son of Saul marched out from Mahanaim to Gibeon. 13 So Joab son of Zeruiah and the servants of David marched out and met them by the pool of Gibeon. And the two groups took up positions on opposite sides of the pool.

2SA 1:26 [NOTE] SURPASSING THE LOVE OF WOMEN. David means Jonathan's loyal, covenant love, 1 Samuel 18:3 and 20:17. See the Big Question pages David and Jonathan in 1 Samuel, p.468.

2SA 2:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The Pool of Gibeon → FIELD NOTES p.494

2SA 2:13 [FIELD NOTES] The pool at Gibeon has been found, a huge round shaft cut into the rock with steps going down. See The Pool of Gibeon Field Notes page, p.494.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE POOL OF GIBEON

2 SAMUEL 2:12 TO 17 · JEREMIAH 41:12 · JOSHUA 9:3 · 2 SAMUEL 21:1 TO 9



Visitors stand at the rim of the great rock cut pool at el Jib, ancient Gibeon. Photo Ronnie Kenigsberg, PikiWiki Israel, CC BY 2.5.

WHAT IT IS

A giant round hole cut straight down into solid rock, about 37 feet across and 35 feet deep. A staircase winds down its side. At the bottom it turns into a tunnel and keeps going down to a water room about 80 feet below the ground. There are 79 steps in all.

HOW OLD IT IS

James Pritchard, who dug it, thought it was cut in the early Iron Age, around or before the time of David. Other scholars think it is later, from the 900s to the 700s BC. The date is still debated.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At el Jib, a village about six miles north of Jerusalem. Pritchard dug there from 1956 to 1962. Thousands of tons of rock had been chipped out by hand to make the pool.

HOW WE KNOW IT IS GIBEON

Inside the pool's fill, the diggers found jar handles with the name Gibeon written on them in old Hebrew letters. So we know for sure this is Gibeon. They also found dozens of rock cut wine cellars. Gibeon made wine.

THE POOL IN THE BIBLE

Joab's men and Abner's men sat on opposite sides of the pool of Gibeon, 2:13. Jeremiah 41:12 also names the great pool in Gibeon.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nobody can be sure this is the exact pool of 2:13. If Pritchard's date is right, it was there in David's day. If the later date is right, the Bible's pool was another one nearby.

14 Then Abner said to Joab, "Let us have
the young men get up and compete be-
fore us."

"Let them get up," Joab replied.

15 So they got up and were counted
off—twelve for Benjamin and Ish-bosheth
son of Saul, and twelve for David. 16 Then
each man grabbed his opponent by the
head and thrust his sword into his
opponent's side, and they all fell together.
So this place, which is in Gibeon, is called
Helkath-hazzurim.

17 The battle that day was intense, and Ab-
ner and the men of Israel were defeated
by the servants of David.

18 The three sons of Zeruiah were there:
Joab, Abishai, and Asahel. Now Asahel
was fleet of foot like a wild gazelle, 19 and
he chased Abner, not turning to the right
or to the left in his pursuit. 20 And Abner
glanced back and said, "Is that you, Asa-
hel?"

"It is," Asahel replied.

21 So Abner told him, "Turn to your right or
to your left, seize one of the young men,
and take his equipment for yourself."

But Asahel would not stop chasing him.

22 Once again, Abner warned Asahel,
"Stop chasing me. Why should I strike you
to the ground? How could I show my face
to your brother Joab?"

23 But Asahel refused to turn away. So Ab-
ner thrust the butt of his spear into his
stomach, and it came out his back, and he
fell dead on the spot. And every man
paused when he came to the place where
Asahel had fallen and died. 24 But Joab
and Abishai pursued Abner. By sunset,
they had gone as far as the hill of Ammah
opposite Giah on the way to the wilder-
ness of Gibeon.

25 The Benjamites rallied to Abner, formed
a single unit, and took their stand atop a
hill. 26 Then Abner called out to Joab:
"Must the sword devour forever? Do you

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

not realize that this will only end in bitterness? How long before you tell the troops to stop pursuing their brothers?"

27 "As surely as God lives," Joab replied, "if you had not spoken up, the troops would have continued pursuing their brothers until morning."

28 So Joab blew the ram's horn, and all the troops stopped; they no longer pursued Israel or continued to fight. 29 And all that night Abner and his men marched through the Arabah. They crossed the Jordan, marched all morning, and arrived at Mahanaim.

30 When Joab returned from pursuing Abner, he gathered all the troops.

In addition to Asahel, nineteen of David's servants were missing, 31 but they had struck down 360 Benjamites who were with Abner. 32 And they took Asahel and buried him in his father's tomb in Bethlehem. Then Joab and his men marched all night and reached Hebron at daybreak.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The war drags on, and David's side keeps getting stronger. Abner fights with Ish bosheth and switches to David. David welcomes him and sends him off in peace. Joab, still angry about Asahel, pulls Abner aside at the gate and kills him. David mourns out loud so everyone knows he had nothing to do with it.

THE HOUSE OF DAVID STRENGTHENED // 1 CHRONICLES 3:1–9

1 Now the war between the house of Saul and the house of David was protracted. And David grew stronger and stronger, while the house of Saul grew weaker and weaker.

2 And sons were born to David in Hebron:

His firstborn was Amnon, by Ahinoam of Jezreel;

3 his second was Chileab, by Abigail the widow of Nabal of Carmel;

his third was Absalom, the son of Maacah daughter of King Talmai of Geshur;

4 his fourth was Adonijah, the son of Haggith;

his fifth was Shephatiah, the son of Abital;

5 and his sixth was Ithream, by David's wife Eglah.

These sons were born to David in Hebron.

ABNER JOINS DAVID

6 During the war between the house of Saul and the house of David, Abner had continued to strengthen his position in the house of Saul. 7 Now Saul had a concubine named Rizpah, the daughter of Aiah. So Ish-bosheth questioned Abner, "Why did you sleep with my father's concubine?"

8 Abner was furious over Ish-bosheth's accusation. "Am I the head of a dog that belongs to Judah?" he asked. "All this time I have been loyal to the house of your father Saul, to his brothers, and to his friends. I have not delivered you into the hand of David, but now you accuse me of wrongdoing with this woman! 9 May God punish Abner, and ever so severely, if I do not do for David what Yahweh has sworn to him: 10 to transfer the kingdom from the house of Saul and to establish the throne of David over Israel and Judah, from Dan to Beersheba."

11 And for fear of Abner, Ish-bosheth did not dare to say another word to him.

12 Then Abner sent messengers on his behalf to say to David, "To whom does the land belong? Make your covenant with me, and surely my hand will be with you to bring all Israel over to you."

13 "Good," replied David, "I will make a covenant with you. But there is one thing I require of you: Do not appear before me unless you bring Saul's daughter Michal when you come to see me."

14 Then David sent messengers to say to Ish-bosheth son of Saul, "Give me back my wife, Michal, whom I betrothed to myself for a hundred Philistine foreskins."

15 So Ish-bosheth sent and took Michal from her husband Paltiel son of Laish. 16 Her husband followed her, weeping all the way to Bahurim. Then Abner said to him, "Go back." So he returned home.

17 Now Abner conferred with the elders of Israel and said, "In the past you sought

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

David as your king. 18 Now take action, because Yahweh has said to David, 'Through My servant David I will save My people Israel from the hands of the Philistines and of all their enemies.'"

19 Abner also spoke to the Benjamites. Then he went to Hebron to tell David all that seemed good to Israel and to the whole house of Benjamin. 20 When Abner and twenty of his men came to David at Hebron, David held a feast for them.

21 Then Abner said to David, "Let me go at once, and I will gather all Israel to my lord the king, that they may make a covenant with you, and that you may rule over all that your heart desires."

So David dismissed Abner, and he went in peace.

JOAB MURDERS ABNER

22 Just then David's soldiers and Joab returned from a raid, bringing with them a great plunder. But Abner was not with David in Hebron, because David had sent him on his way in peace. 23 When Joab and all his troops arrived, he was informed, "Abner son of Ner came to see the king, who sent him on his way in peace."

24 So Joab went to the king and said, "What have you done? Look, Abner came to you. Why did you dismiss him? Now he is getting away! 25 Surely you realize that Abner son of Ner came to deceive you and to track your movements and all that you are doing."

26 As soon as Joab had left David, he sent messengers after Abner, who brought him back from the well of Sirah. But David was unaware of it.

27 When Abner returned to Hebron, Joab pulled him aside into the gateway, as if to speak to him privately, and there Joab stabbed him in the stomach. So Abner died on account of the blood of Joab's brother Asahel.

28 Afterward, David heard about this and said, "I and my kingdom are forever guiltless before Yahweh concerning the blood of Abner son of Ner. 29 May it whirl over the head of Joab and over the entire house of his father, and may the house of Joab never be without one having a discharge or skin disease, or one who leans on a staff or falls by the sword or lacks food."

30 (Joab and his brother Abishai murdered Abner because he had killed their brother Asahel in the battle at Gibeon.)

DAVID MOURNS FOR ABNER

31 Then David ordered Joab and all the people with him, "Tear your clothes, put on sackcloth, and mourn before Abner." And King David himself walked behind the funeral bier.

32 When they buried Abner in Hebron, the king wept aloud at Abner's tomb, and all the people wept. 33 And the king sang this lament for Abner:

"Should Abner die
the death of a fool?
34 Your hands were not bound,
your feet were not fettered.
As a man falls before the wicked,
so also you fell."

And all the people wept over him even more.

35 Then all the people came and urged David to eat something while it was still day, but David took an oath, saying, "May God punish me, and ever so severely, if I taste bread or anything else before the sun sets!"

36 All the people took note and were pleased. In fact, everything the king did pleased them. 37 So on that day all the troops and all Israel were convinced that the king had no part in the murder of Abner son of Ner.

38 Then the king said to his servants, "Do you not realize that a great prince has fallen today in Israel? 39 And I am weak this day, though anointed as king, and these men, the sons of Zeruiah, are too fierce for me. May Yahweh repay the evildoer according to his evil!"

■ **2SA 3:39 [NOTE]** THE SONS OF ZERUIAH are Joab, Abishai and Asahel, David's nephews, 1 Chronicles 2:16. They were tough, loyal and hard to control.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Two of Ish bosheth's own captains sneak into his house during his nap and kill him. They bring his head to David, expecting a reward. Bad idea. David has them executed. We also meet Jonathan's son Mephibosheth, who was dropped by his nurse at age five and is lame in both feet.

THE MURDER OF ISH-BOSHETH

1 Now when Ish-bosheth son of Saul heard that Abner had died in Hebron, he lost courage, and all Israel was dismayed. 2 Saul's son had two men who were leaders of raiding parties. One was named Baanah and the other Rechab; they were sons of Rimmon the Beerothite of the tribe of Benjamin—Beeroth is considered part of Benjamin, 3 because the Beerothites fled to Gittaim and have lived there as foreigners to this day.

4 And Jonathan son of Saul had a son who was lame in his feet. He was five years old when the report about Saul and Jonathan came from Jezreel. His nurse picked him up and fled, but as she was hurrying to escape, he fell and became lame. His name was Mephibosheth.

5 Now Rechab and Baanah, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, set out and arrived at the house of Ish-bosheth in the heat of the day, while the king was taking his midday nap. 6 They entered the interior of the house as if to get some wheat, and they stabbed him in the stomach. Then Rechab and his brother Baanah slipped away.

7 They had entered the house while Ish-bosheth was lying on his bed, and having stabbed and killed him, they beheaded him, took his head, and traveled all night by way of the Arabah. 8 They brought the head of Ish-bosheth to David at Hebron and said to the king, "Here is the head of Ish-bosheth son of Saul, your enemy who sought your life. Today Yahweh has granted vengeance to my lord the king against Saul and his offspring."

THE EXECUTION OF RECHAB AND BAANAH

9 But David answered Rechab and his brother Baanah, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, "As surely as Yahweh lives, who has redeemed my life from all distress, 10 when someone told me, 'Look, Saul is dead,' and thought he was a bearer of good news, I seized him and put him to death at Ziklag. That was his reward for his news! 11 How much more, when wicked men kill a righteous man in his own house and on his own bed, shall I not now require his blood from your hands and remove you from the earth!"

12 So David commanded his young men, and they killed Rechab and Baanah. They cut off their hands and feet and hung their bodies by the pool in Hebron, but they took the head of Ish-bosheth and buried it in Abner's tomb in Hebron.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

All twelve tribes finally make David king. He takes Jerusalem from the Jebusites, who bragged that even the blind and the lame could keep him out. David moves in, calls it the City of David, and beats the Philistines twice. The second time, God says, Wait for the marching in the treetops.

DAVID ANOINTED KING OF ALL ISRAEL // 1 CHRONICLES 11:1–3

1 Then all the tribes of Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Here we are, your own flesh and blood. 2 Even in times past, while Saul was king over us, you were the one who led Israel out and brought them back. And to you Yahweh said, 'You will shepherd My people Israel, and you will be ruler over them.'"

3 So all the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, where King David made with them a covenant before Yahweh. And they anointed him king over Israel.

2SA 4:4 [NOTE] MEPHIBOSHETH is called Merib baal in 1 Chronicles 8:34. Bosheth means shame. Many think later writers swapped baal, an idol's name, for shame. Ish bosheth was also called Eshbaal, 1 Chronicles 8:33.

2SA 5:1 [FULFILLS] Judah's brothers would bow to him and he would rule over his enemies ← GEN 49:8 p.114

2SA 5:3 [FULFILLS] Abraham would be the father of many nations and kings would come from him ← GEN 17:4-6 p.70

2SA 5:3 [FULFILLS] Samuel told Saul his kingdom would be torn from him and given to a better neighbor ← 1SA 15:28 p.460

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

4 David was thirty years old when he became king, and he reigned forty years. 5 In Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months, and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty-three years over all Israel and Judah.

DAVID CONQUERS JERUSALEM // 1 CHRONICLES 11:4–9

6 Now the king and his men marched to Jerusalem against the Jebusites who inhabited the land. The Jebusites said to David: "You will never get in here. Even the blind and lame can repel you." For they thought, "David cannot get in here."

7 Nevertheless, David captured the fortress of Zion (that is, the City of David). 8 On that day he said, "Whoever attacks the Jebusites must use the water shaft to reach the lame and blind who are despised by David." That is why it is said, "The blind and the lame will never enter the palace."

9 So David took up residence in the fortress and called it the City of David. He built it up all the way around, from the supporting terraces inward. 10 And David became greater and greater, for Yahweh God of Hosts was with him.

11 Now Hiram king of Tyre sent envoys to David, along with cedar logs, carpenters, and stonemasons, and they built a palace for David.

DAVID'S FAMILY GROWS // 1 CHRONICLES 14:1–7

12 And David realized that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel and had exalted his kingdom for the sake of His people Israel.

13 After he had arrived from Hebron, David took more concubines and wives from Jerusalem, and more sons and daughters were born to him. 14 These are the names of the children born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon, 15 Ibhar, Elishua, Nepheg, Japhia, 16 Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet.

TWO VICTORIES OVER THE PHILISTINES // 1 CHRONICLES 14:8–17

17 When the Philistines heard that David had been anointed king over Israel, they all went in search of him; but David learned of this and went down to the stronghold.

18 Now the Philistines had come and spread out in the Valley of Rephaim. 19 So David inquired of Yahweh, "Should I go up against the Philistines? Will You deliver them into my hand?"

"Go up," replied Yahweh, "for I will surely deliver the Philistines into your hand."

20 So David went to Baal-perazim, where he defeated the Philistines and said, "Like a bursting flood, Yahweh has burst out against my enemies before me." So he called that place Baal-perazim. 21 There the Philistines abandoned their idols, and David and his men carried them away.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE CITY OF DAVID

2 SAMUEL 5:6 TO 12 · 1 KINGS 9:15 · 1 CHRONICLES 11:4 TO 8



The Stepped Stone Structure on the east slope of the City of David, seen from above. The smooth walls at the top and the metal at the bottom are modern. Photo Ian Scott, CC BY SA 2.0.

- **2SA 5:4 [NOTE]** THIRTY YEARS OLD. David became king at thirty and reigned forty years. Jesus began His work at about thirty, Luke 3:23.
- **2SA 5:7 [NOTE]** ZION first appears in the Bible here. It was the Jebusite fortress on the hill south of the later temple. Later the name stood for all of Jerusalem and for God's people.
- **2SA 5:8 [FIELD NOTES]** WATER SHAFT. The Hebrew word tsinnor shows up only here and in Psalm 42:7. See the Warren's Shaft Field Notes page, p.499.
- **2SA 5:9 [FIELD NOTES]** SUPPORTING TERRACES is the Hebrew Millo, which means filling. Some think the huge stepped stone wall in the City of David is the Millo. See the City of David Field Notes page, p.498.
- **2SA 5:14 [NOTE]** NATHAN, David's son, is not Nathan the prophet. Jesus' family line in Luke 3:31 runs through this Nathan. Matthew 1:6 runs through Solomon.
- **2SA 5:21 [DEMONIC]** The Philistines abandon their idols and David carries them off

WHAT IT IS
A huge wall of stone steps running down the east side of the hill south of the Temple Mount, the oldest part of Jerusalem. It is about 60 feet tall, one of the biggest buildings from Israel's Iron Age. At its top, Eilat Mazar dug the walls of a large stone building she called the Large Stone Structure.

HOW OLD IT IS
Debated. Many date the stepped wall to about 1100 to 900 BC, around David's time. Others date parts of it later, to the 800s BC or after. Mazar dated the building on top to the 900s BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Parts were dug by R. A. S. Macalister in the 1920s, Kathleen Kenyon in the 1960s and Yigal Shiloh from 1978 to 1985. Mazar dug the building on top from 2005.

THE MILLO
In 5:9 David built from the supporting terraces inward. The Hebrew is the Millo, which means filling. Many think the Millo was a huge filled support like this stepped wall.

DAVID'S PALACE?
Mazar thought the Large Stone Structure was the palace Hiram's workers built for David, 5:11. Others say its walls come from different times, or it was a Jebusite fortress, or something later.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No writing found there names David. It shows that a large, strong building stood in the City of David at about the time the Bible gives for David, if the early dates are right.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

WARREN'S SHAFT

2 SAMUEL 5:6 TO 8 · 1 CHRONICLES 11:4 TO 6 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:30



A rock cut passage inside the Warren's Shaft system in the City of David, lit by modern lamps. Photo Davidbena, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS
A sloping tunnel and a deep shaft, about 43 feet straight down, inside the hill of the City of David. The tunnel leads from inside the old city wall toward the Gihon Spring, Jerusalem's main spring.

HOW OLD IT IS
The tunnel was cut long before Hezekiah's famous tunnel of about 700 BC. Its first date is debated. Newer digs found a huge stone tower guarding the spring. Its diggers dated it to about 1800 BC, but carbon tests in 2017 suggest about 800 BC. The date is still debated.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Charles Warren, a British army engineer, found it in 1867. Ronny Reich and Eli Shukron dug the area again from 1995.

THE OLD IDEA
For over a hundred years, many thought Joab climbed up this shaft to get inside the Jebusite city, 5:8 and 1 Chronicles 11:6. The Hebrew word in 5:8 is tsinnor, often read as water shaft.

THE NEW FINDINGS
Reich and Shukron found the shaft is a natural crack in the rock. In David's day its top was likely not even reachable, because the tunnel floor was lowered later. People most likely drew water from a rock cut pool near the spring instead.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The word tsinnor is rare, and some think

MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

it means a channel, a throat or even a hook. Many still think Joab's men came in through the city's water system, but likely not up this shaft.

22 Once again the Philistines came up and
spread out in the Valley of Rephaim. 23 So
David inquired of Yahweh, who answered,
"Do not march straight up, but circle
around behind them and attack them in
front of the balsam trees. 24 As soon as
you hear the sound of marching in the
tops of the balsam trees, move quickly,
because this will mean that Yahweh has
gone out before you to strike the camp of
the Philistines."
25 So David did as Yahweh had com-
manded him, and he struck down the
Philistines all the way from Gibeon to
Gezer.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

David brings the ark to Jerusalem on a brand new cart. The oxen stumble, Uzzah grabs the ark, and God strikes him dead. Three months later David tries again, the right way, and dances before Yahweh with all his might. His wife Michal watches from a window and is not impressed.

DAVID FETCHES THE ARK // 1 CHRONICLES 13:1–7

1 David again assembled the chosen men
of Israel, thirty thousand in all. 2 And he
and all his troops set out for Baale of Ju-
dah to bring up from there the ark of God,
which is called by the Name—the name of
Yahweh of Hosts, who is enthroned be-
tween the cherubim that are on it.
3 They set the ark of God on a new cart
and brought it from the house of Abi-
nadab, which was on the hill. Uzzah and
Ahio, the sons of Abinadab, were guiding
the new cart, 4 bringing with it the ark of
God. And Ahio was walking in front of the
ark.

- 2SA 5:23 [MIRACLE] Sound of marching in the balsam trees signals David to attack
- 2SA 6:1 [NOTABLE] The ark was being transported wrongly (on a cart, not carried by Kohathites); Uzzah's death shows even good intentions cannot violate God's holiness protocols
- 2SA 6:3 [NOTE] A NEW CART. The Philistines moved the ark this way, 1 Samuel 6:7. God's law said Levites must carry it on their shoulders, Numbers 7:9.

UZZAH TOUCHES THE ARK // 1 CHRONICLES 13:8–14

5 David and all the house of Israel were
celebrating before Yahweh with all kinds
of wood instruments, harps, stringed in-
struments, tambourines, sistrums, and
cymbals.
6 When they came to the threshing floor of
Nacon, Uzzah reached out and took hold
of the ark of God, because the oxen had
stumbled. 7 And the anger of Yahweh
burned against Uzzah, and God struck
him down on the spot for his irreverence,
and he died there beside the ark of God.
8 Then David became angry because Yah-
weh had burst forth against Uzzah. So he
named that place Perez-uzzah, as it is
called to this day.
9 That day David feared Yahweh and
asked, "How can the ark of Yahweh ever
come to me?" 10 So he was unwilling to
move the ark of Yahweh to the City of
David instead, he took it aside to the
house of Obed-edom the Gittite. 11 Thus
the ark of Yahweh remained in the house
of Obed-edom the Gittite for three
months, and Yahweh blessed him and all
his household.

THE ARK BROUGHT TO JERUSALEM // 1 CHRONICLES 15:1–28

12 Now it was reported to King David,
"Yahweh has blessed the house of Obed-
edom and all that belongs to him, because
of the ark of God."
So David went and had the ark of God
brought up from the house of Obed-edom
into the City of David with rejoicing. 13
When those carrying the ark of Yahweh
had advanced six paces, he sacrificed an
ox and a fattened calf.
14 And David, wearing a linen ephod,
danced with all his might before Yahweh,
15 while he and all the house of Israel
brought up the ark of Yahweh with shout-
ing and the sounding of the ram's horn.

- 2SA 6:6 [MIRACLE] God strikes Uzzah dead for touching the ark
- 2SA 6:7 [NOTE] WHY UZZAH? See the Big Question pages Uzzah and the Ark, p.501.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

UZZAH AND THE ARK

What Happened

2 SAMUEL 6:1 TO 11 · 1 CHRONICLES 13:1 TO 14 · 15:1 TO 15 · NUMBERS 4:15 · 7:9

THE BIG PARADE

David gathered 30,000 men to bring the ark of God up to Jerusalem. They set it on a new cart, and there was music, harps and tambourines, 6:3 to 5. It looked like worship.

THE MOMENT

At the threshing floor of Nacon, the oxen stumbled. Uzzah reached out and took hold of the ark. God struck him down, and he died right beside it, 6:6 to 7.

DAVID'S REACTION

David was angry, and then afraid. How can the ark of Yahweh ever come to me? 6:8 to 9. He left it at the house of Obed edom, and God blessed that house for three months.

WHAT THE LAW SAID

The ark was to be carried on the shoulders of Levites from the family of Kohath, Numbers 7:9, using poles, Exodus 25:14. Even they must not touch the holy things, or they would die, Numbers 4:15. A cart was how the Philistines moved it, 1 Samuel 6:7.

THE SECOND TRY

This time the Levites carried it on their shoulders with the poles, 1 Chronicles 15:15, and they offered sacrifices after six steps, 6:13. David later said, Yahweh our God broke out against us because we did not seek Him in the way He ordered, 1 Chronicles 15:13.

THE QUESTION

Uzzah was trying to help. Why did God strike him?

Every View

LEVITICUS 10:1 TO 3 · 1 SAMUEL 6:19 · HEBREWS 12:28 TO 29 · ACTS 5:1 TO 11

VIEW 1: GOD'S HOLINESS IS REAL

Many say the point is that God is holy, and His holiness is not a decoration. The ark was the throne of the God enthroned between the cherubim, 6:2. The rules were not small, and the leaders had ignored them. Like Nadab and Abihu, Leviticus 10, a careless start got a hard warning.

VIEW 2: UZZAH SHOULD HAVE KNOWN

The ark had been in Uzzah's family's house for many years, at least twenty, 1 Samuel 7:1 to 2. Some think he had grown too used to it, and treated it like furniture. The text says God struck him for his irreverence, 6:7.

VIEW 3: THE WHOLE PLAN WAS WRONG

Others put the blame on David and the leaders. They copied the Philistines' cart instead of asking how God said to do it. Uzzah paid for a plan that was wrong from the start, and David learned from it, 1 Chronicles 15:13.

THE HARD PART

It still feels unfair to many readers. Some answer that God's mercy is the surprise, not His judgment: sinful people live near a holy God every day only because He makes a way. Christians point to Jesus, who made a way to come near, Hebrews 10:19 to 22.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Good intentions are not enough when God has said how to come to Him. David did not give up. He tried again, God's way, and danced before Yahweh with all his might, 6:14.

MICHAL'S CONTEMPT FOR DAVID // 1 CHRONICLES 15:29–16:3

16 As the ark of Yahweh was entering the City of David, Saul's daughter Michal looked down from a window and saw King David leaping and dancing before Yahweh, and she despised him in her heart.

2SA 6:16 [HEART] Michal watched David dance before Yahweh, and she despised him in her heart. The joy was outside, the contempt was inside.

2SA 6:16 [NOTE] MICHAL was Saul's daughter and David's first wife. See the Big Question pages Michal and David, p.502.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

17 So they brought the ark of Yahweh and
set it in its place inside the tent that David
had pitched for it. Then David offered
burnt offerings and peace offerings be-
fore Yahweh.

18 When David had finished sacrificing the
burnt offerings and peace offerings, he
blessed the people in the name of Yahweh
of Hosts. 19 Then he distributed to every
man and woman among the multitude of
Israel a loaf of bread, a date cake, and a
raisin cake. And all the people departed,
each to his own home.

20 When David returned home to bless his
own household, Saul's daughter Michal
came out to meet him. "How the king of
Israel has distinguished himself today!"
she said. "He has uncovered himself to-
day in the sight of the maidservants of his
subjects, like a vulgar person would do."

21 But David said to Michal, "I was dancing
before Yahweh, who chose me over your
father and all his house when He ap-
pointed me ruler over Yahweh's people Is-
rael. I will celebrate before Yahweh, 22 and
I will humiliate and humble myself even
more than this. Yet I will be honored by
the maidservants of whom you have spo-
ken."

23 And Michal the daughter of Saul had no
children to the day of her death.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

MICHAL AND DAVID

Her Story

1 SAMUEL 18:20 TO 28 · 19:11 TO 17 · 25:44 · 2 SAMUEL 3:13 TO 16 · 6:16 TO 23

SHE LOVED DAVID

Michal is the only woman in the Bible's stories who is said to love a man, 1 Samuel 18:20. Saul gave her to David, hoping the price would get David killed. It didn't.

SHE SAVED HIS LIFE

When Saul sent men to kill David, Michal let him down through a window and put a household idol in his bed, 1 Samuel 19:11 to 17.

SHE WAS GIVEN AWAY

While David was on the run, Saul gave her to another man, Paltiel, 1 Samuel 25:44. David had married Abigail and Ahinoam by then.

SHE WAS TAKEN BACK

When David was about to become king of all Israel, he demanded Michal back. Her husband Paltiel followed her, weeping, until Abner sent him home, 3:13 to 16. The Bible never says how Michal felt.

THE WINDOW AGAIN

When the ark came in, Michal looked out a window and saw David leaping and dancing before Yahweh, and she despised him in her heart, 6:16. She met him with sarcasm: the king uncovered himself like a vulgar person, 6:20.

DAVID'S ANSWER

It was before Yahweh, who chose me over your father, 6:21. I will be even more humble than this. Then the chapter ends: Michal had no children to the day of her death, 6:23.

THE QUESTION

Who was right, and why did she have no children?

Every View

2 SAMUEL 6:14 · 6:20 TO 23 · 21:8 · PROVERBS 16:18 · MATTHEW 23:12

WHAT WAS WRONG WITH THE DANCE?

David wore a linen ephod, a short priestly garment, 6:14. Michal said he uncovered himself in front of servant girls. Some think he was barely covered. Others think she meant he set aside his royal robes and acted like a common man.

VIEW 1: SHE DESPISED WORSHIP

The traditional view. Michal cared more about royal dignity than about God. David humbled himself before Yahweh, and she looked down on it. Pride looks down, and the Bible says God brings the proud low.

VIEW 2: A WOUNDED WOMAN

Many readers also feel for her. She was traded between men, separated from Paltiel and brought back to a husband with other wives. Some think her bitterness came from years of being used by Saul and by David.

WHY NO CHILDREN?

Some say God closed her womb as a

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

judgment. Others say David never slept with her again. Others say the verse simply tells us Saul's line would not come to the throne through her. The text does not say which.

ABOUT 21:8

Most Hebrew copies of 21:8 say Michal had five sons. This Bible follows the copies that say Merab, her sister, who married Adriel, so 6:23 stands.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Worship that looks silly to people can be precious to God. And the Bible tells Michal's story honestly, with her love, her losses and her contempt.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

David says, I live in a cedar house, and God's ark lives in a tent. Let me build Him a house. That night God tells Nathan: No, I will build you a house. Your son will build My temple, and your throne will last forever. David sits before Yahweh and says, Who am I?

GOD'S COVENANT WITH DAVID // 1 CHRONICLES 17:1–15

1 After the king had settled into his palace
and Yahweh had given him rest from all
his enemies around him, 2 he said to
Nathan the prophet, "Here I am, living in a
house of cedar, while the ark of God re-
mains in a tent."

3 And Nathan replied to the king, "Go and
do all that is in your heart, for Yahweh is
with you."

4 But that night the word of Yahweh came
to Nathan, saying, 5 "Go and tell My ser-
vant David that this is what Yahweh says:
Are you the one to build for Me a house to
dwell in? 6 For I have not dwelt in a house
from the day I brought the Israelites up
out of Egypt until this day, but I have
moved about with a tent as My dwelling. 7
In all My journeys with all the Israelites,
have I ever asked any of the leaders I ap-
pointed to shepherd My people Israel,
'Why haven't you built Me a house of
cedar?'

8 Now then, you are to tell My servant
David that this is what Yahweh of Hosts
says: I took you from the pasture, from
following the flock, to be the ruler over My
people Israel. 9 I have been with you wher-
ever you have gone, and I have cut off all
your enemies from before you. Now I will
make for you a name like that of the
greatest in the land.

10 And I will provide a place for My people
Israel and will plant them so that they may
dwell in a place of their own and be dis-
turbed no more. No longer will the sons of
wickedness oppress them as they did at
the beginning 11 and have done since the
day I appointed judges over My people Is-
rael. I will give you rest from all your ene-
mies.

Yahweh declares to you that He Himself
will establish a house for you. 12 *And when
your days are fulfilled and you rest with your
fathers, I will raise up your descendant after
you, who will come from your own body, and I
will establish his kingdom.* 13 He will build a
house for My Name, and I will establish
the throne of his kingdom forever. 14 *I will
be his Father, and he will be My son. When he
does wrong, I will discipline him with the rod
of men and with the blows of the sons of men.*

15 But My loving devotion will never be re-
moved from him as I removed it from Saul,
whom I removed from before you. 16 Your
house and kingdom will endure forever

- **2SA 7:3 [HEART]** Nathan told David to do all that was in his heart. It was a good heart, but God had a different plan.

- **2SA 7:12 [PROPHECY]** Messiah would be of David's lineage → MT 1:1; 2TI 2:8 p.1550
- **2SA 7:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 1:32-33 p.1645
- **2SA 7:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JN 7:42 p.1711
- **2SA 7:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 2:30 p.1743
- **2SA 7:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 13:23 p.1764
- **2SA 7:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ROM 1:3 p.1800
- **2SA 7:12 [NOTE]** A HOUSE FOREVER. God promised David a son, a throne and a kingdom that would never end. See the Big Question pages God's Promise to David, p.505.
- **2SA 7:13 [PROPHECY]** His kingdom would be everlasting → 2PE 1:11 p.2028
- **2SA 7:14 [PROPHECY]** He would be called the Son of God → HEB 1:5; LK 1:32 p.1978
- **2SA 7:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 6:18 p.1854
- **2SA 7:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:5b p.1978
- **2SA 7:14 [NOTE]** WHEN HE DOES WRONG. This part fits Solomon. Hebrews 1:5 uses the first half, I will be his Father, for Jesus, the Son who never sinned.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE TEL DAN STELE

2 SAMUEL 7:16 · 2 KINGS 8:28 TO 29 · 9:14 TO 28 · 1 KINGS 15:20



The Tel Dan Stele in the Israel Museum. The white letters near the middle of the right side spell the House of David. Photo Oren Rozen, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Pieces of a black stone monument with writing in Aramaic, the language of Israel's neighbors in Damascus. A king of Aram, most likely Hazael, set it up to brag about beating Israel and Judah.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 840 BC, around 130 years after David died.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Tel Dan in the far north of Israel. Gila Cook, a surveyor on Avraham Biran's dig, spotted the biggest piece in a later wall in July 1993. Two more pieces were found in 1994. It is in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT SAYS

The king says he killed the king of Israel, son of [Ahab], and the king of the House of David, [Ahazi]ah son of [Jehoram]. The words in brackets are broken off and filled in by scholars. The letters BYTDWD mean House of David.

WHY IT MATTERS

It is the first clear mention of David ever found outside the Bible. It shows that about 130 years after his death, even Israel's enemies called Judah's royal family the House of David, just as God promised David a house in 7:16.

THE BIG DEBATE

A few scholars first argued BYTDWD meant a place or a god, because the words are written without the dot this stone uses to split words. Most scholars now read it as House of David. The Bible says Jehu killed Joram and Ahaziah, 2 Kings 9. Hazael may have taken credit, or Jehu may have worked for him. Some also see House of David on the Mesha Stele, but that is less sure.

BROKEN ON PURPOSE

The stone was smashed long ago, and its pieces were reused as building stones. Many think the men of Israel broke it when they took Dan back from Aram.

HOW THE PIECES FIT

The biggest piece has thirteen broken lines. The two smaller pieces fit each other, and most scholars place them to the left of the big piece, but a few think they belong somewhere else on the stone.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

before Me, and your throne will be established forever."

17 So Nathan relayed to David all the words of this entire revelation.

THE BIG QUESTION

GOD'S PROMISE TO DAVID

What God Promised

2 SAMUEL 7:1 TO 17 · 1 CHRONICLES 17:1 TO 15 · PSALM 89:3 TO 4 · PSALM 132:11 TO 12

DAVID'S IDEA

David lived in a cedar palace while the ark of God sat in a tent. So he wanted to build God a house, a temple. Nathan the prophet said, Go for it, 7:3.

GOD'S ANSWER

That night God told Nathan: You will not build Me a house. I will build you a house, 7:11. A house here means a family line of kings, a dynasty.

FIVE PROMISES

1. A great name, 7:9. 2. A safe place for Israel, 7:10. 3. A son from David's own body who would build God's house, 7:12 to 13. 4. God would be his Father, and he would be God's son, 7:14. 5. David's house, kingdom and throne would last forever, 7:16.

A COVENANT

The chapter never uses the word covenant, but the Bible calls it one later. David calls it an everlasting covenant in 23:5, and Psalm 89:3 says, I have made a covenant with My chosen one, I have sworn to David My servant.

WHEN HE DOES WRONG

God said He would discipline this son when he did wrong, but He would never take His loving devotion away, as He did from Saul, 7:14 to 15. The promise did not depend on the sons being good.

DAVID'S PRAYER

David went in, sat before Yahweh and said, Who am I? 7:18. He did not ask for more. He thanked God and asked Him to do what He said.

THE QUESTION

Who is the son in this promise? Solomon, Jesus, or both?

Every View

LUKE 1:32 TO 33 · ACTS 2:29 TO 36 · ACTS 13:22 TO 23 · HEBREWS 1:5 · ISAIAH 9:6 TO 7 · JEREMIAH 33:17

VIEW 1: SOLOMON FIRST, THEN JESUS

Most Christians through history read it this way. Solomon built the temple and sinned, so the part about wrongdoing fits him. But no son of David lasted forever until Jesus, the Son of David who rose from the dead and rules forever. The promise was fulfilled in part by Solomon and fully by Jesus.

VIEW 2: ABOUT JESUS FROM THE START

Some say the forever part was always about the Messiah. The New Testament quotes it for Jesus, Hebrews 1:5, and the angel told Mary, The Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David, Luke 1:32.

VIEW 3: A ROYAL PROMISE FOR ISRAEL

Many Jewish readers see it as God's promise to the kings of Judah and a future Messiah from David's line who has not yet come. Many critical scholars see it as a promise that supported David's dynasty, later read as about a coming king.

THE GAP

Judah's last king was taken to Babylon in 586 BC, and no son of David sat on a throne for centuries. Psalm 89:38 to 51 cries out, You have renounced the covenant. The prophets kept the hope alive: a shoot from the stump of Jesse, Isaiah 11:1, and a righteous Branch for David, Jeremiah 23:5.

HOW THE NEW TESTAMENT USES IT

Matthew 1:1 calls Jesus the son of David. Peter says David knew God swore to seat one of his descendants on his throne, and he saw the resurrection ahead of time, Acts 2:30 to 31. Paul says Jesus was a descendant of David, Romans 1:3.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

This chapter is one of the biggest in the Old Testament. It is where the hope of a Messiah, an anointed King from David's family, takes its shape.

2SA 7:16 [PROPHECY] David's house and throne established forever → LK 3:31; REV 22:16 p.1653

2SA 7:16 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Aramaic inscription that names the House of David → FIELD NOTES p.504

DAVID'S PRAYER OF THANKSGIVING // 1 CHRONICLES 17:16–27

18 Then King David went in, sat before Yahweh, and said, "Who am I, O Lord Yah-

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

weh, and what is my house, that You have brought me this far? 19 And as if this was a small thing in Your eyes, O Lord Yahweh, You have also spoken about the future of the house of Your servant. Is this Your custom with man, O Lord Yahweh? 20 What more can David say to You? For You know Your servant, O Lord Yahweh. 21 For the sake of Your word and according to Your own heart, You have accomplished this great thing and revealed it to Your servant.

22 How great You are, O Lord Yahweh! For there is none like You, and there is no God but You, according to everything we have heard with our own ears. 23 And who is like Your people Israel—the one nation on earth whom God went out to redeem as a people for Himself and to make a name for Himself? You performed great and awesome wonders by driving out nations and their gods from before Your people, whom You redeemed for Yourself from Egypt. 24 For You have established Your people Israel as Your very own forever, and You, O Yahweh, have become their God.

25 And now, O Yahweh God, confirm forever the word You have spoken concerning Your servant and his house. Do as You have promised, 26 so that Your name will be magnified forever when it is said, 'Yahweh of Hosts is God over Israel.' And the house of Your servant David will be established before You. 27 For You, O Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, have revealed this to Your servant when You said, 'I will build a house for you.' Therefore Your servant has found his heart to offer this prayer to You.

28 And now, O Lord Yahweh, You are God! Your words are true, and You have promised this goodness to Your servant. 29 Now therefore, may it please You to bless the house of Your servant, that it may continue forever before You. For You, O Lord Yahweh, have spoken, and with Your blessing the house of Your servant will be blessed forever."

- **2SA 7:18 [NOTABLE]** God just promised David a house forever, and David does not brag. He sits before Yahweh and asks, Who am I? Real thanks starts with being amazed at grace.
- **2SA 7:21 [HEART]** God made His promise to David because of His own word and His own heart, not because David earned it.
- **2SA 7:27 [HEART]** David found his heart to pray this prayer. God's promise gave him the courage to ask.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

David wins everywhere: the Philistines, Moab, Zobah, the Arameans and Edom. Kings send him gifts, and he gives the gold and silver to Yahweh. The chapter ends with a list of David's officials, like the staff page of a new kingdom.

DAVID'S TRIUMPHS // 1 CHRONICLES 18:1–13; PSALM 60:1–12

1 Some time later, David defeated the Philistines, subdued them, and took Metheg-ammah from the hand of the Philistines.

2 David also defeated the Moabites, made them lie down on the ground, and measured them off with a cord. He measured off with two lengths those to be put to death, and with one length those to be spared. So the Moabites became subject to David and brought him tribute.

3 David also defeated Hadadezer son of Rehob, king of Zobah, who had marched out to restore his dominion along the Euphrates River. 4 David captured from him a thousand chariots, seven thousand charioteers, and twenty thousand foot soldiers, and he hamstrung all the horses except a hundred he kept for the chariots.

5 When the Arameans of Damascus came to help King Hadadezer of Zobah, David struck down twenty-two thousand of their men. 6 Then he placed garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became subject to David and brought him tribute. So Yahweh made David victorious wherever he went.

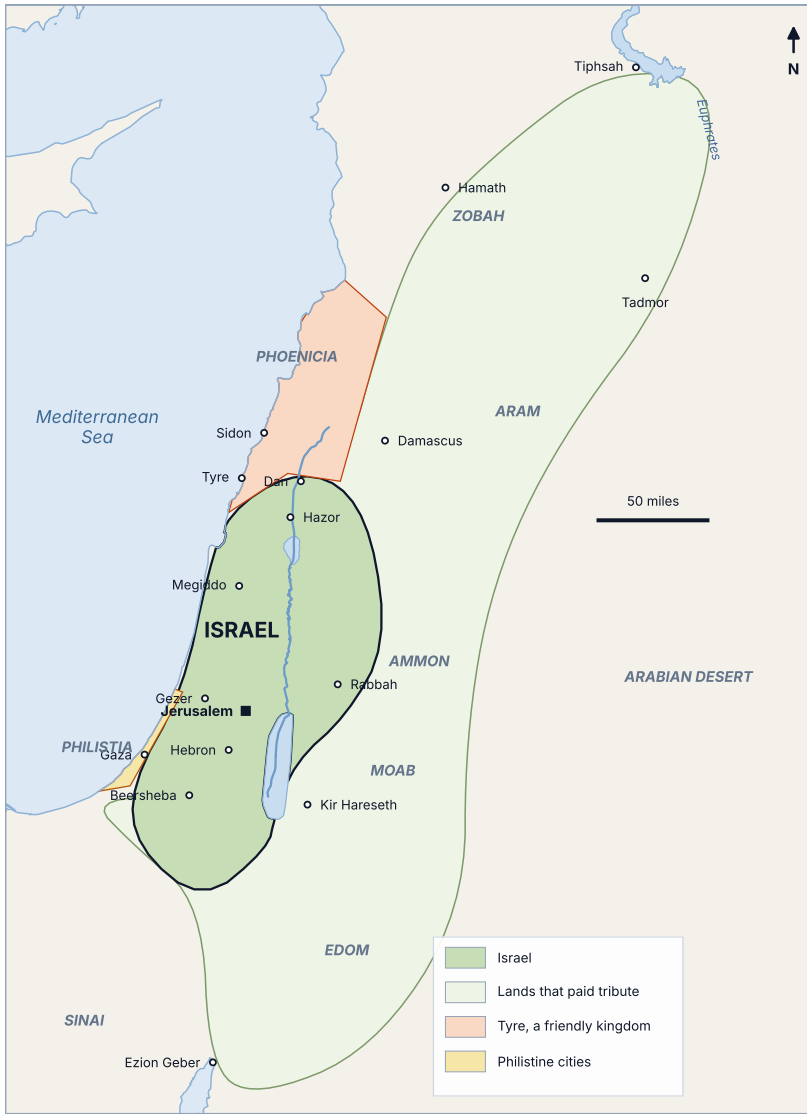
7 And David took the gold shields that belonged to the officers of Hadadezer and brought them to Jerusalem. 8 And from

- **2SA 8:4 [TEXT]** HOW MANY? The standard Hebrew text of Samuel says 1,700 horsemen. This Bible follows a Dead Sea Scroll, the Greek and 1 Chronicles 18:4: a thousand chariots and seven thousand charioteers. See the Big Question pages Samuel and Chronicles, p.532.

MAP · 2 SAMUEL 5 TO 10 · 1 KINGS 4 TO 10

The Kingdom of David and Solomon

Israel at its biggest, about 1000 to 930 BC



A NEW CAPITAL David ruled from Hebron for seven and a half years, then took Jerusalem from the Jebusites and made it his capital, 2 Samuel 5:5 to 9.

SOLOMON'S REACH Solomon ruled from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines and the border of Egypt, 1 Kings 4:21. Hiram of Tyre was his friend and partner, 1 Kings 5.

DAVID'S WARS David beat the Philistines, Moab, Aram, Edom and Ammon, 2 Samuel 8 and 10. Their lands paid him tribute.

BUILDINGS AND SHIPS Solomon built up Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer, 1 Kings 9:15, and sent ships from Ezion Geber on the Red Sea, 1 Kings 9:26.

Borders are approximate. Lands outside Israel were ruled through tribute and treaties, not settled by Israel.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Betah and Berothai, cities of Hadadezer,
King David took a large amount of bronze.
9 When King Toi of Hamath heard that
David had defeated the entire army of
Hadadezer, 10 he sent his son Joram to
greet King David and bless him for fight-
ing and defeating Hadadezer, who had
been at war with Toi. Joram brought with
him articles of silver and gold and bronze,
11 and King David dedicated these to Yah-
weh, along with the silver and gold he had
dedicated from all the nations he had
subdued— 12 from Edom and Moab, from
the Ammonites and Philistines and
Amalekites, and from the spoil of
Hadadezer son of Rehob, king of Zobah.
13 And David made a name for himself
when he returned from striking down
eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley
of Salt. 14 He placed garrisons throughout
Edom, and all the Edomites were subject
to David. So Yahweh made David victori-
ous wherever he went.

DAVID'S OFFICERS // 1 CHRONICLES 18:14–17

15 Thus David reigned over all Israel and
administered justice and righteousness
for all his people:
16 Joab son of Zeruiah was over the army;
Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the
recorder;
17 Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son
of Abiathar were priests;
Seraiah was the scribe;
18 Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the
Cherethites and Pelethites;
and David's sons were priestly leaders.

2SA 8:13 [NOTE] EDOMITES. Most Hebrew copies say Arameans here. A few Hebrew copies, the Greek and 1 Chronicles 18:12 say Edomites, and this Bible follows them. In Hebrew the two words differ by one letter.

2SA 8:14 [FULFILLS] Two nations from Rebekah's womb ← GEN 25:23 p.82

2SA 8:14 [FULFILLS] Edom would become Israel's possession ← NUM 24:18 p.262

2SA 8:18 [NOTE] PRIESTLY LEADERS. The Hebrew word is kohanim, priests. 1 Chronicles 18:17 says David's sons were chief officials beside the king. Some think they were royal advisers. Others think they really served as priests in some way. The text does not say.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

David asks, Is anyone left from Saul's family I can be kind to, for Jonathan's sake? They find Mephibosheth, Jonathan's lame son, who shows up scared to death. David gives him back Saul's land and a permanent seat at the king's table.

DAVID AND MEPHIBOSHETH

1 Then David asked, "Is there anyone left
from the house of Saul to whom I can
show kindness for the sake of Jonathan?"
2 And there was a servant of the house of
Saul named Ziba. They summoned him to
David, and the king inquired, "Are you
Ziba?"
"I am your servant," he replied.
3 So the king asked, "Is there anyone left
of the house of Saul to whom I can show
the kindness of God?"
Ziba answered, "There is still Jonathan's
son, who is lame in both feet."
4 "Where is he?" replied the king.
And Ziba said, "Indeed, he is in Lo-debar
at the house of Machir son of Ammiel."
5 So King David had him brought from the
house of Machir son of Ammiel in Lo-de-
bar. 6 And when Mephibosheth son of
Jonathan, the son of Saul, came to David,
he fell facedown in reverence.
Then David said, "Mephibosheth!"
"I am your servant," he replied.
7 "Do not be afraid," said David, "for surely
I will show you kindness for the sake of
your father Jonathan. I will restore to you
all the land of your grandfather Saul, and
you will always eat at my table."
8 Mephibosheth bowed down and said,
"What is your servant, that you should
show regard for a dead dog like me?"
9 Then the king summoned Saul's servant
Ziba and said to him, "I have given to your
master's grandson all that belonged to
Saul and to all his house. 10 You and your
sons and servants are to work the ground

2SA 9:7 [NOTABLE] Mephibosheth was lame, afraid and from the family of David's old enemy. David brought him to eat at the king's table like one of his sons. Many see a picture of grace: we are brought to the King's table, not because of our feet, but because of a promise.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

for him and bring in the harvest, so that your master's grandson may have food to eat. But Mephibosheth, your master's grandson, is always to eat at my table."

Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants. 11 And Ziba said to the king, "Your servant will do all that my lord the king has commanded."

So Mephibosheth ate at David's table like one of the king's own sons. 12 And Mephibosheth had a young son named Mica, and all who dwelt in the house of Ziba were servants of Mephibosheth. 13 So Mephibosheth lived in Jerusalem, because he always ate at the king's table, and he was lame in both feet.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The new Ammonite king thinks David's sympathy messengers are spies. He shaves off half their beards, cuts their robes off at the hips and sends them home. David tells them to stay in Jericho until their beards grow back. Then war, and the Ammonites and their hired Arameans lose.

DAVID'S MESSENGERS DISGRACED // 1 CHRONICLES 19:1–9

1 Some time later, the king of the Ammonites died and was succeeded by his son Hanun. 2 And David said, "I will show kindness to Hanun son of Nahash, just as his father showed kindness to me."

So David sent some of his servants to console Hanun concerning his father. But when they arrived in the land of the Ammonites, 3 the princes of the Ammonites said to Hanun their lord, "Just because David has sent you comforters, do you really believe he is showing respect for your father? Has not David instead sent his servants to explore the city, spy it out, and overthrow it?"

4 So Hanun took David's servants, shaved off half of each man's beard, cut off their garments at the hips, and sent them away.

5 When this was reported to David, he sent messengers to meet the men, since they had been thoroughly humiliated. The king told them, "Stay in Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return."

6 When the Ammonites realized that they had become a stench to David, they hired twenty thousand Aramean foot soldiers from Beth-rehob and Zoba, as well as a thousand men from the king of Maacah and twelve thousand men from Tob.

7 On hearing this, David sent Joab and the entire army of mighty men. 8 The Ammonites marched out and arrayed themselves for battle at the entrance of the city gate, while the Arameans of Zobah and Rehob and the men of Tob and Maacah were by themselves in the open country.

DAVID DEFEATS AMMON AND ARAM // 1 CHRONICLES 19:10–19

9 When Joab saw the battle lines before him and behind him, he selected some of the best men of Israel and arrayed them against the Arameans. 10 And he placed the rest of the troops under the command of his brother Abishai, who arrayed them against the Ammonites.

11 "If the Arameans are too strong for me," said Joab, "then you will come to my rescue. And if the Ammonites are too strong for you, then I will come to your rescue. 12 Be strong and let us fight bravely for our people and for the cities of our God. May Yahweh do what is good in His sight."

13 So Joab and his troops advanced to fight the Arameans, who fled before him. 14 When the Ammonites saw that the Arameans had fled, they too fled before Abishai, and they entered the city. So Joab returned from fighting against the Ammonites and came to Jerusalem.

15 When the Arameans saw that they had been defeated by Israel, they regrouped. 16 Hadadezer sent messengers to bring more Arameans from beyond the Euphrates, and they came to Helam with Shobach the commander of Hadadezer's army leading them.

17 When this was reported to David, he gathered all Israel, crossed the Jordan, and went to Helam. Then the Arameans

■ **2SA 10:4 [NOTE]** HALF A BEARD. In that world, a man's beard was his honor. Shaving half of it was a public insult to David himself.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

arrayed themselves against David and fought against him. 18 But the Arameans fled before Israel, and David killed seven hundred charioteers and forty thousand foot soldiers. He also struck down Shobach the commander of their army, who died there.

19 When all the kings who were subject to Hadadezer saw that they had been defeated by Israel, they made peace with Israel and became subject to them. So the Arameans were afraid to help the Ammonites anymore.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

In the spring, when kings go to war, David stays home. From his roof he sees Bathsheba bathing, sends for her, and she becomes pregnant. Her husband Uriah is one of David's best soldiers. David tries to cover it up, then has Uriah sent to the front line to die. It works. God sees it.

DAVID AND BATHSHEBA

1 In the spring, at the time when kings march out to war, David sent out Joab and his servants with the whole army of Israel. They destroyed the Ammonites and besieged Rabbah, but David remained in Jerusalem.

2 One evening David got up from his bed and strolled around on the roof of the palace. And from the roof he saw a woman bathing—a very beautiful woman. 3 So David sent and inquired about the woman, and he was told, "This is Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam and the wife of Uriah the Hittite."

4 Then David sent messengers to get her, and when she came to him, he slept with her. (Now she had just purified herself from her uncleanness.) Then she returned home. 5 And the woman conceived and sent word to David, saying, "I am pregnant."

6 At this, David sent orders to Joab: "Send me Uriah the Hittite." So Joab sent him to David.

7 When Uriah came to him, David asked how Joab and the troops were doing and how the war was going. 8 Then he said to Uriah, "Go down to your house and wash your feet."

So Uriah left the palace, and a gift from the king followed him. 9 But Uriah slept at the door of the palace with all his master's servants; he did not go down to his house.

10 And David was told, "Uriah did not go home."

"Haven't you just arrived from a journey?" David asked Uriah. "Why didn't you go home?"

11 Uriah answered, "The ark and Israel and Judah are dwelling in tents, and my master Joab and his soldiers are camped in the open field. How can I go to my house to eat and drink and sleep with my wife? As surely as you live, and as your soul lives, I will not do such a thing!"

12 "Stay here one more day," David said to Uriah, "and tomorrow I will send you back." So Uriah stayed in Jerusalem that day and the next.

13 Then David invited Uriah to eat and drink with him, and he got Uriah drunk. And in the evening Uriah went out to lie down on his cot with his master's servants, but he did not go home.

DAVID ARRANGES URIAH'S DEATH

14 The next morning David wrote a letter to Joab and sent it with Uriah. 15 In the letter he wrote: "Put Uriah at the front of the fiercest battle; then withdraw from him, so that he may be struck down and killed."

16 So as Joab besieged the city, he assigned Uriah to a place where he knew the strongest enemy soldiers were. 17 And when the men of the city came out and fought against Joab, some of David's servants fell, and Uriah the Hittite also died.

- **2SA 10:18 [TEXT]** 700 OR 7,000? This verse says 700 charioteers. 1 Chronicles 19:18 says 7,000. See the Big Question pages Samuel and Chronicles, p.532.
- **2SA 11:1 [NOTE]** WHEN KINGS MARCH OUT TO WAR. Spring, after the winter rains. David should have been with his army. See the Big Question pages David and Bathsheba, p.511.
- **2SA 11:3 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:6 p.1550
- **2SA 11:3 [NOTE]** URIAH THE HITTITE was one of David's Thirty, his elite soldiers, 23:39. Bathsheba's father, Eliam, was one too, 23:34. Matthew 1:6 names her only as the wife of Uriah.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

18 Joab sent to David a full account of the
battle 19 and instructed the messenger,
"When you have finished giving the king a
full account of the battle, 20 if the king's
anger flares, he may ask you, 'Why did
you get so close to the city to fight? Did
you not realize they would shoot from
atop the wall? 21 Who struck Abimelech
son of Jerubbesheth? Was it not a woman
who dropped an upper millstone on him
from the wall, so that he died in Thebez?
Why did you get so close to the wall?'
If he asks you this, then you are to say,
'Your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead as
well.'"

22 So the messenger set out and reported
to David all that Joab had sent him to say.
23 The messenger said to David, "The men
overpowered us and came out against us
in the field, but we drove them back to the
entrance of the gate. 24 Then the archers
shot at your servants from the wall, and
some of the king's servants were killed.
And your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead
as well."

25 Then David told the messenger, "Say
this to Joab: 'Do not let this matter upset
you, for the sword devours one as well as
another. Strengthen your attack against
the city and demolish it.' Encourage him
with these words."

DAVID MARRIES BATHSHEBA

26 When Uriah's wife heard that her hus-
band was dead, she mourned for him. 27
And when the time of mourning was over,
David had her brought to his house, and
she became his wife and bore him a son.
But the thing that David had done was evil
in the sight of Yahweh.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DAVID AND BATHSHEBA

What Happened

2 SAMUEL 11:1 TO 27 · 12:1 TO 25 · PSALM 51 · MATTHEW 1:6

HE STAYED HOME

In the spring, when kings went to war, David sent Joab and stayed in Jerusalem, 11:1. One evening he walked on his roof and saw a beautiful woman bathing, 11:2.

HE ASKED, AND HE SENT

David asked who she was. He was told: Bathsheba, the wife of Uriah the Hittite, 11:3. He sent messengers to get her, and he slept with her. She became pregnant, 11:4 to 5.

THE COVER UP

David called Uriah home and told him to go to his house, hoping he would sleep with his wife. Uriah would not, because his fellow soldiers were camping in the field, 11:11. The next night David got him drunk, and he still would not go home, 11:13. So David sent a letter by Uriah's own hand telling Joab to put him on the front line and pull back, 11:14 to 15.

THE MURDER

Uriah died, and other soldiers died with him, 11:17. After her mourning, David married Bathsheba. But the thing David had done was evil in the sight of Yahweh, 11:27.

THE STORY

God sent Nathan with a story about a rich man who stole a poor man's one little lamb. David said that man deserves to die. Nathan said, You are that man, 12:7. David said, I have sinned against Yahweh, 12:13.

THE QUESTION

Was Bathsheba a willing partner, or a victim of a powerful king?

■ **2SA 11:27 [NOTE]** EVIL IN THE SIGHT OF YAHWEH. The narrator says almost nothing about God in this chapter until this last line. It says enough.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View

2 SAMUEL 12:1 TO 14 · 12:24 · 1 KINGS 1:11 TO 31 · PSALM 51 · MATTHEW 1:6

VIEW 1: A SIN OF POWER

Many today read it this way. David was the king. He sent men, and she came. A woman could hardly say no to the king's messengers. Nathan's story blames only the rich man, and the lamb did nothing wrong, 12:1 to 4. God's words in 12:9 blame David alone.

VIEW 2: BOTH SINNED

The older common view. Some say she should not have bathed where she could be seen, or she could have refused. Others answer that she was washing as the law required, 11:4, likely in her own courtyard, and the king was the one on the roof.

WHAT THE TEXT STRESSES

The verbs are David's: he saw, he sent, he took, he slept. God's judgment falls on David: the sword will never depart from your house, 12:10. The story never blames Bathsheba.

REPENTANCE

David did not excuse himself. Psalm 51 is his prayer: Against You, You only, have I sinned. Create in me a clean heart, O God. God forgave him, 12:13, but the baby died, and the trouble in his family followed.

GRACE

Bathsheba became the mother of Solomon, the next king, 12:24. She is named in Jesus' family line as the wife of Uriah, Matthew 1:6. God brought His promise through broken people.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Even the man after God's own heart fell hard. Sin hides, grows and hurts many people, and God sees it all. Real repentance is met with real forgiveness.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Nathan tells David a story about a rich man who stole a poor man's only lamb. David is furious: that man deserves to die! Nathan says, You are that man. David says, I have sinned. God forgives him, but the baby dies, and the sword will never leave his house. Then Solomon is born.

NATHAN REBUKES DAVID // PSALM 51:1–19

1 Then Yahweh sent Nathan to David, and
when he arrived, he said, "There were two
men in a certain city, one rich and the
other poor. 2 The rich man had a great
number of sheep and cattle, 3 but the poor
man had nothing except one small ewe
lamb that he had bought. He raised it, and
it grew up with him and his children. It
shared his food and drank from his cup; it
slept in his arms and was like a daughter
to him.

4 Now a traveler came to the rich man,
who refrained from taking one of his own
sheep or cattle to prepare for the traveler
who had come to him. Instead, he took
the poor man's lamb and prepared it for
his guest."

5 David burned with anger against the man
and said to Nathan: "As surely as Yahweh
lives, the man who did this deserves to
die! 6 Because he has done this thing and
has shown no pity, he must pay for the
lamb four times over."

7 Then Nathan said to David, "You are that
man! This is what Yahweh, the God of Is-
rael, says: 'I anointed you king over Israel,
and I delivered you from the hand of Saul.
8 I gave your master's house to you and
your master's wives into your arms. I gave
you the house of Israel and Judah, and if
that was not enough, I would have given
you even more.

9 Why then have you despised the com-
mand of Yahweh by doing evil in His
sight? You put Uriah the Hittite to the
sword and took his wife as your own. You
have slain him with the sword of the Am-
monites. 10 Now, therefore, the sword will
never depart from your house, because
you have despised Me and have taken the
wife of Uriah the Hittite to be your own.'

2SA 12:7 [NOTABLE] Four words that broke a king. Nathan told a story, let David judge it, then turned the story around. Sin we condemn in others is often sin we hide in ourselves.

2SA 12:10 [PROPHECY] Nathan told David the sword would never depart from his house; his child by Bathsheba would die; his wives would be publicly violated → 2SA 12:18 (child dies); 2SA 16:21-22 (Absalom takes David's concubines on the roof); ongoing strife in David's family p.513

2SA 12:10 [DEMONIC] Sword shall never depart from David's house due to Bathsheba sin

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

11 This is what Yahweh says: 'I will raise up adversity against you from your own house. Before your very eyes I will take your wives and give them to another, and he will lie with them in broad daylight. 12 You have acted in secret, but I will do this thing in broad daylight before all Israel.'"

DAVID'S LOSS AND REPENTANCE

13 Then David said to Nathan, "I have sinned against Yahweh."

"Yahweh has taken away your sin," Nathan replied. "You will not die. 14 Nevertheless, because by this deed you have shown utter contempt for the word of Yahweh, the son born to you will surely die."

15 After Nathan had gone home, Yahweh struck the child that Uriah's wife had borne to David, and he became ill. 16 David pleaded with God for the boy. He fasted and went into his house and spent the night lying in sackcloth on the ground. 17 The elders of his household stood beside him to help him up from the ground, but he was unwilling and would not eat anything with them.

18 On the seventh day the child died. But David's servants were afraid to tell him that the child was dead, for they said, "Look, while the child was alive, we spoke to him, and he would not listen to us. So how can we tell him the child is dead? He may even harm himself."

19 When David saw that his servants were whispering to one another, he perceived that the child was dead. So he asked his servants, "Is the child dead?"

"He is dead," they replied.

20 Then David got up from the ground, washed and anointed himself, changed his clothes, and went into the house of Yahweh and worshiped. Then he went to his own house, and at his request they set food before him, and he ate.

21 "What is this you have done?" his servants asked. "While the child was alive, you fasted and wept, but when he died, you got up and ate."

22 David answered, "While the child was alive, I fasted and wept, for I said, 'Who knows? Yahweh may be gracious to me and let him live.' 23 But now that he is dead, why should I fast? Can I bring him back again? I will go to him, but he will not return to me."

SOLOMON'S BIRTH

24 Then David comforted his wife Bathsheba, and he went to her and lay with her. So she gave birth to a son, and they named him Solomon.

Now Yahweh loved the child 25 and sent word through Nathan the prophet to name him Jedidiah because Yahweh loved him.

THE CAPTURE OF RABBAH // 1 CHRONICLES 20:1–3

26 Meanwhile, Joab fought against Rabbah of the Ammonites and captured the royal fortress. 27 Then Joab sent messengers to David to say, "I have fought against Rabbah and have captured the water supply of the city. 28 Now, therefore, assemble the rest of the troops, lay siege to the city, and capture it. Otherwise I will capture the city, and it will be named after me."

29 So David assembled all the troops and went to Rabbah; and he fought against it and captured it. 30 Then he took the crown from the head of their king. It weighed 75 pounds of gold and was set with precious stones, and it was placed on David's head. And David took a great amount of plunder from the city.

31 David brought out the people who were there and put them to work with saws, iron picks, and axes, and he made them

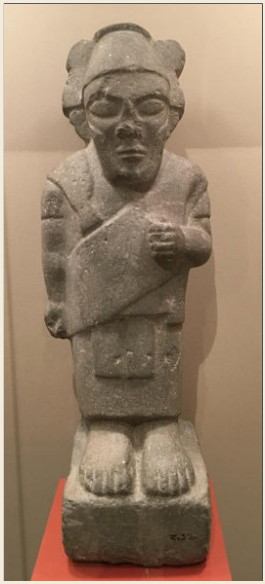
- **2SA 12:13 [NOTE]** I HAVE SINNED. David's prayer after this is Psalm 51, Create in me a clean heart, O God. Its heading says so.
- **2SA 12:18 [FULFILLS]** Nathan told David the sword would never depart from his house; his child by Bathsheba would die; his wives would be publicly violated ← 2SA 12:10-14 p.512
- **2SA 12:23 [NOTABLE]** David's baby son died, and David got up, washed and worshiped. Many have taken comfort from these words: a parent who loses a little child can hope to see that child again.
- **2SA 12:23 [NOTE]** I WILL GO TO HIM. Many find comfort here for parents who lose a little child.
- **2SA 12:24 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:6 p.1550
- **2SA 12:25 [NOTE]** JEDIDIAH means loved by Yahweh. It was God's own name for Solomon.
- **2SA 12:30 [NOTE]** THEIR KING. The Hebrew is malkam. The Greek and many scholars read it as Milcom, the god of the Ammonites, 1 Kings 11:5. Then the heavy crown came off an idol's statue. See the Rabbah Field Notes page, p.514.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

RABBAH OF THE AMMONITES

2 SAMUEL 11:1 · 12:26 TO 31 · DEUTERONOMY 3:11 · 1 KINGS 11:5



An Ammonite stone statue wearing a tall crown, from the area of Amman, now in the Jordan Museum. Photo Makeandtoss, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

Rabbah, also called Rabbath Ammon, was the capital of the Ammonites. It is Amman, the capital of Jordan today. Its old high hill, the Amman Citadel, still has ruins from many centuries.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived on the Citadel hill long before David. The Ammonite stone statues found in and around Amman, like the one shown here, come from about the 800s to 600s BC, after David's time.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The statues were found in Amman during the 1900s. A stone with Ammonite writing, the Amman Citadel Inscription, was found on the hill in 1961 and likely names the god Milcom.

THE HEAVY CROWN

The crown David took weighed about 75 pounds, 12:30. That is too heavy to wear for long. The Hebrew says their king, malkam. The Greek and many scholars read it as Milcom, the Ammonite god. Then the crown sat on an idol's statue, and David wore it only for a moment.

URIAH'S LAST BATTLE

Uriah the Hittite died at the wall of Rabbah, 11:16 to 17. Joab took the water supply of the city, 12:27, and then David came and took the rest.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The statue shown is not the crown of 12:30 or a statue of Milcom. It shows how the Ammonites pictured kings or gods with tall crowns.

work at the brick kilns. He did the same to all the Ammonite cities. Then David and all his troops returned to Jerusalem.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

David's son Amnon falls for his half sister Tamar, tricks her into his room and rapes her. Then he throws her out. David is angry but does nothing. Her brother Absalom waits two years, throws a party and has Amnon killed. Absalom runs away to his grandfather in Geshur.

AMNON AND TAMAR

1 After some time, David's son Amnon fell
in love with Tamar, the beautiful sister of
David's son Absalom. 2 Amnon was sick
with frustration over his sister Tamar, for
she was a virgin, and it seemed implausible for him to do anything to her.

3 Now Amnon had a friend named Jonadab, the son of David's brother Shimeah.
Jonadab was a very shrewd man, 4 and he
asked Amnon, "Why are you, the son of
the king, so depressed morning after
morning? Won't you tell me?"

Amnon replied, "I am in love with Tamar,
my brother Absalom's sister."

5 Jonadab told him, "Lie down on your bed
and pretend you are ill. When your father
comes to see you, say to him, 'Please let
my sister Tamar come and give me something to eat. Let her prepare it in my sight
so I may watch her and eat it from her
hand.'"

2SA 12:31 [NOTE] SAWS AND PICKS. Some old Bibles, like the King James, read this as torture. Most Bibles today read it as forced labor, as this Bible does.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

6 So Amnon lay down and feigned illness. When the king came to see him, Amnon said, "Please let my sister Tamar come and make a couple of cakes in my sight, so that I may eat from her hand."

7 Then David sent word to Tamar at the palace: "Please go to the house of Amnon your brother and prepare a meal for him."

8 So Tamar went to the house of her brother Amnon, who was lying down. She took some dough, kneaded it, made cakes in his sight, and baked them. 9 Then she brought the pan and set it down before him, but he refused to eat. "Send everyone away!" said Amnon. And everyone went out.

10 Then Amnon said to Tamar, "Bring the food into the bedroom, so that I may eat it from your hand."

Tamar took the cakes she had made and went to her brother Amnon's bedroom. 11 And when she had brought them to him to eat, he took hold of her and said, "Come lie with me, my sister!"

12 "No, my brother!" she cried. "Do not violate me, for such a thing should never be done in Israel. Do not do this disgraceful thing! 13 Where could I ever take my shame? And you would be like one of the fools in Israel! Please speak to the king, for he will not withhold me from you."

14 But Amnon refused to listen to her, and being stronger, he violated her and lay with her.

15 Then Amnon hated Tamar with such intensity that his hatred was greater than the love he previously had. "Get up!" he said to her. "Be gone!"

16 "No," she replied, "sending me away is worse than this great wrong you have already done to me!"

But he refused to listen to her. 17 Instead, he called to his attendant and said, "Throw this woman out and bolt the door behind her!"

18 So Amnon's attendant threw her out and bolted the door behind her. Now Tamar was wearing a robe of many colors, because this is what the king's virgin daughters wore. 19 And Tamar put ashes on her head and tore her robe. And putting her hand on her head, she went away crying aloud.

20 Her brother Absalom said to her, "Has your brother Amnon been with you? Be quiet for now, my sister. He is your brother. Do not take this thing to heart."

So Tamar lived as a desolate woman in the house of her brother Absalom.

21 When King David heard all this, he was furious. 22 And Absalom never said a word to Amnon, either good or bad, because he hated Amnon for violating his sister Tamar.

ABSALOM'S REVENGE ON AMNON

23 Two years later, when Absalom's sheepshearers were at Baal-hazor near Ephraim, he invited all the sons of the king. 24 And he went to the king and said, "Your servant has just hired shearers. Will the king and his servants please come with me?"

25 "No, my son," the king replied, "we should not all go, or we would be a burden to you." Although Absalom urged him, he was not willing to go, but gave him his blessing.

26 "If not," said Absalom, "please let my brother Amnon go with us."

"Why should he go with you?" the king asked.

27 But Absalom urged him, so the king sent Amnon and the rest of his sons.

28 Now Absalom had ordered his young men, "Watch Amnon until his heart is merry with wine, and when I order you to strike Amnon down, you are to kill him. Do not be afraid. Have I not commanded you? Be courageous and valiant!"

29 So Absalom's young men did to Amnon just as Absalom had ordered. Then all the other sons of the king got up, and each one fled on his mule.

■ **2SA 13:12 [NOTE]** Tamar said no. This was rape, and the Bible calls it a disgrace. David's silence, 13:21, opened the door to Absalom's revenge. See the Big Question pages Absalom's Revolt, p.518.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

30 While they were on the way, a report
reached David: "Absalom has struck down
all the sons of the king; not one of them is
left!"
31 Then the king stood up, tore his clothes,
and lay down on the ground. And all his
servants stood by with their clothes torn.
32 But Jonadab, the son of David's brother
Shimeah, spoke up: "My lord must not
think they have killed all the sons of the
king, for only Amnon is dead. In fact, Ab-
salom has planned this since the day Am-
non violated his sister Tamar. 33 So now,
my lord the king, do not take to heart the
report that all the sons of the king are
dead. Only Amnon is dead."

ABSALOM FLEES TO GESHUR

34 Meanwhile, Absalom had fled. When the
young man standing watch looked up, he
saw many people coming down the road
west of him, along the side of the hill. And
the watchman went and reported to the
king, "I see men coming from the direction
of Horonaim, along the side of the hill."
35 So Jonadab said to the king, "Look, the
sons of the king have arrived! It is just as
your servant said."
36 And as he finished speaking, the sons
of the king came in, wailing loudly. Then
the king and all his servants also wept
very bitterly.
37 Now Absalom fled and went to Talmai
son of Ammihud, the king of Geshur. But
David mourned for his son every day.
38 After Absalom had fled and gone to
Geshur, he stayed there three years. 39
And King David longed to go to Absalom,
for he had been consoled over Amnon's
death.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Joab sees David missing Absalom, so he sends a wise woman from Tekoa with a made up story to change the king's mind. It works. Absalom comes home, but David won't see him for two years. Absalom gets Joab's attention by setting his barley field on fire. Father and son finally kiss.

ABSALOM'S RETURN TO JERUSALEM

1 Now Joab son of Zeruiah perceived that
the king's heart longed for Absalom. 2 So
Joab sent to Tekoa to bring a wise woman
from there. He told her, "Please pretend to
be a mourner; put on clothes for mourning
and do not anoint yourself with oil. Act like
a woman who has mourned for the dead a
long time. 3 Then go to the king and speak
these words to him." And Joab put the
words in her mouth.
4 When the woman from Tekoa went to the
king, she fell facedown in homage and
said, "Help me, O king!"
5 "What troubles you?" the king asked her.
"Indeed," she said, "I am a widow, for my
husband is dead. 6 And your maidservant
had two sons who were fighting in the
field with no one to separate them, and
one struck the other and killed him. 7 Now
the whole clan has risen up against your
maidservant and said, 'Hand over the one
who struck down his brother, that we may
put him to death for the life of the brother
whom he killed. Then we will cut off the
heir as well!' So they would extinguish my
one remaining ember by not preserving
my husband's name or posterity on the
earth."
8 "Go home," the king said to the woman,
"and I will give orders on your behalf."
9 But the woman of Tekoa said to the king,
"My lord the king, may any blame be on
me and on my father's house, and may the
king and his throne be guiltless."
10 "If anyone speaks to you," said the king,
"bring him to me, and he will not trouble
you again!"
11 "Please," she replied, "may the king in-
voke Yahweh your God to prevent the
avenger of blood from increasing the dev-
astation, so that my son may not be de-
stroyed!"
"As surely as Yahweh lives," he vowed,
"not a hair of your son's head will fall to
the ground."
12 Then the woman said, "Please, may your
servant speak a word to my lord the
king?"

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

"Speak," he replied.

13 The woman asked, "Why have you devised a thing like this against the people of God? When the king says this, does he not convict himself, since he has not brought back his own banished son? 14 For we will surely die and be like water poured out on the ground, which cannot be recovered. Yet God does not take away a life, but He devises ways that the banished one may not be cast out from Him.

15 Now therefore, I have come to present this matter to my lord the king because the people have made me afraid. Your servant thought, 'I will speak to the king. Perhaps he will grant the request of his maidservant. 16 For the king will hear and deliver his maidservant from the hand of the man who would cut off both me and my son from God's inheritance.'

17 And now your servant says, 'May the word of my lord the king bring me rest, for my lord the king is able to discern good and evil, just like the angel of God. May Yahweh your God be with you.'"

18 Then the king said to the woman, "I am going to ask you something; do not conceal it from me!"

"Let my lord the king speak," she replied.

19 So the king asked, "Is the hand of Joab behind all this?"

The woman answered, "As surely as you live, my lord the king, no one can turn to the right or to the left from anything that my lord the king says. Yes, your servant Joab is the one who gave me orders; he told your maidservant exactly what to say. 20 Joab your servant has done this to bring about this change of affairs, but my lord has wisdom like the wisdom of the angel of God, to know everything that happens in the land."

21 Then the king said to Joab, "I hereby grant this request. Go, bring back the young man Absalom."

22 Joab fell facedown in homage and blessed the king. "Today," said Joab, "your servant knows that he has found favor in your eyes, my lord the king, because the king has granted his request."

23 So Joab got up, went to Geshur, and brought Absalom to Jerusalem. 24 But the king added, "He may return to his house, but he must not see my face." So Absalom returned to his own house, but he did not see the face of the king.

25 Now there was not a man in all Israel as handsome and highly praised as Absalom. From the sole of his foot to the top of his head, he did not have a single flaw. 26 And when he cut the hair of his head—he shaved it every year because his hair got so heavy—he would weigh it out to be five pounds, according to the royal standard.

27 Three sons were born to Absalom, and a daughter named Tamar, who was a beautiful woman.

ABSALOM RECONCILED TO DAVID

28 Now Absalom lived in Jerusalem two years without seeing the face of the king. 29 Then he sent for Joab to send him to the king, but Joab refused to come to him.

So Absalom sent a second time, but Joab still would not come.

30 Then Absalom said to his servants, "Look, Joab's field is next to mine, and he has barley there. Go and set it on fire!"

And Absalom's servants set the field on fire.

31 Then Joab came to Absalom's house and demanded, "Why did your servants set my field on fire?"

32 "Look," said Absalom, "I sent for you and said, 'Come here. I want to send you to the king to ask: Why have I come back from Geshur? It would be better for me if I were still there.' So now, let me see the king's face, and if there is iniquity in me, let him kill me."

33 So Joab went and told the king, and David summoned Absalom, who came to him and bowed facedown before him. Then the king kissed Absalom.

■ **2SA 14:26 [NOTE]** FIVE POUNDS OF HAIR a year. Many think his long hair is how he got stuck in a tree in 18:9.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Absalom sits at the city gate, shakes hands, kisses people and tells them, If I were judge, you would get justice. He steals the hearts of Israel. Then he declares himself king in Hebron. David runs from Jerusalem barefoot, weeping, up the Mount of Olives.

ABSALOM'S CONSPIRACY

1 Some time later, Absalom provided for
himself a chariot with horses and fifty
men to run ahead of him. 2 He would get
up early and stand beside the road lead-
ing to the city gate.

Whenever anyone had a grievance to
bring before the king for a decision, Absa-
lom would call out and ask, "What city are
you from?" And if he replied, "Your ser-
vant is from one of the tribes of Israel," 3
Absalom would say, "Look, your claims
are good and right, but the king has no
deputy to hear you."

4 And he would add, "If only someone
would appoint me judge in the land, then
everyone with a grievance or dispute
could come to me, and I would give him
justice."

5 Also, when anyone approached to bow
down to him, Absalom would reach out his
hand, take hold of him, and kiss him. 6 Ab-
salom did this to all the Israelites who
came to the king for justice. In this way he
stole the hearts of the men of Israel.

7 After four years had passed, Absalom
said to the king, "Please let me go to He-
bron to fulfill a vow I have made to Yah-
weh. 8 For your servant made a vow while
dwelling in Geshur of Aram, saying: 'If in-
deed Yahweh brings me back to
Jerusalem, I will worship Yahweh in He-
bron.'"

9 "Go in peace," said the king. So Absalom
got up and went to Hebron.

10 Then Absalom sent spies throughout the
tribes of Israel with this message: "When
you hear the sound of the horn, you are to
say, 'Absalom reigns in Hebron!'"

11 Two hundred men from Jerusalem ac-
companied Absalom. They had been in-
vited as guests and they went along inno-
cently, for they knew nothing about the
matter. 12 While Absalom was offering the
sacrifices, he sent for Ahithophel the
Gilonite, David's counselor, to come from
his hometown of Giloh.

So the conspiracy gained strength, and
Absalom's following kept increasing.

DAVID FLEES JERUSALEM // PSALM 3:1–8

13 Then a messenger came to David and
reported, "The hearts of the men of Israel
are with Absalom."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ABSALOM'S REVOLT

How It Happened

2 SAMUEL 12:10 TO 12 · 13:1 TO 39 · 14:1 TO 33 · 15:1 TO 12

THE SWORD

After David's sin, God said through Nathan: the sword will never depart from your house, and I will raise up trouble against you from your own house, 12:10 to 11. Then it began.

AMNON AND TAMAR

David's oldest son, Amnon, raped his half sister Tamar, 13:14. David was furious, but he did nothing, 13:21. Tamar lived in her brother Absalom's house, a desolate woman, 13:20.

ABSALOM'S REVENGE

Absalom waited two years. Then he had Amnon killed at a sheep shearing party and ran to Geshur for three years, 13:28 to 38.

HALFWAY HOME

Joab used a wise woman from Tekoa to get Absalom brought back. But David would not see his son for two more years, 14:24 to 28. Absalom set Joab's field on fire to get a meeting, and David finally kissed him, 14:30 to 33.

STEALING HEARTS

For four years, Absalom rose early,

2SA 15:6 [HEART] Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel with handshakes, kisses and promises.

2SA 15:6 [NOTE] HE STOLE THE HEARTS. See the Big Question pages Absalom's Revolt, p.518.

2SA 15:7 [TEXT] FOUR OR FORTY? The standard Hebrew text says forty years. Some Greek copies, the Syriac and Josephus say four, and this Bible follows them. Forty does not fit Absalom's age.

2SA 15:13 [HEART] The hearts of the men of Israel are with Absalom. The stolen hearts followed the thief.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

stood by the city gate, shook hands, kissed people and said, If only I were judge. He stole the hearts of the men of Israel, 15:6. Then he had himself crowned in Hebron, 15:10.

THE QUESTION

How much of this was David's fault, and why did he still weep for Absalom?

Every View

2 SAMUEL 16:21 TO 22 · 18:5 · 18:9 TO 15 · 18:33 · 1 KINGS 1:5 TO 6

VIEW 1: GOD'S JUDGMENT

Many see the revolt as the sword Nathan promised, step by step. Even Absalom sleeping with David's concubines on the palace roof, 16:22, was exactly what God said would happen in broad daylight, 12:11 to 12.

VIEW 2: A FATHER WHO DID NOT ACT

Others stress David's choices. He did not punish Amnon. He let Absalom stay away, then would not see him. Later, 1 Kings 1:6 says of another son, his father had never once corrected him. Silence at home left room for anger to grow.

VIEW 3: ABSALOM'S OWN PRIDE

Absalom was handsome, popular and proud. He even built a monument to himself, 18:18. Some think he would have reached for the throne no matter what David did.

ALL THREE AT ONCE

Many readers say the text holds all three together. God's judgment came through real choices by David, Amnon, Absalom, Joab and Ahithophel, and each one was responsible.

O ABSALOM, MY SON

David told his generals, Be gentle with the young man Absalom, 18:5. Joab killed him anyway. David wept, If only I had died instead of you, 18:33. Many Christians see a picture of God the Father, who loves rebel children, and of Jesus, who did die in our place.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Sin in a family does not stay small. And a father's love can outlast a son's rebellion.

14 And David said to all the servants with him in Jerusalem, "Arise and let us flee, or we will not escape from Absalom! We must leave quickly, or he will soon overtake us, heap disaster on us, and put the city to the sword."

15 The king's servants replied, "Whatever our lord the king decides, we are your servants."

16 Then the king set out, and his entire household followed him. But he left behind ten concubines to take care of the palace.

17 So the king set out with all the people following him. He stopped at the last house, 18 and all his servants marched past him—all the Cherethites and Pelethites, and six hundred Gittites who had followed him from Gath.

19 Then the king said to Ittai the Gittite, "Why should you also go with us? Go back and stay with the new king, since you are both a foreigner and an exile from your homeland. 20 In fact, you arrived only yesterday; should I make you wander around with us today while I do not know where I am going? Go back and take your brothers with you. May Yahweh show you loving devotion and faithfulness."

21 But Ittai answered the king, "As surely as Yahweh lives, and as my lord the king lives, wherever my lord the king may be, whether it means life or death, there will your servant be!"

22 "March on then," said David to Ittai. So Ittai the Gittite marched past with all his men and all the little ones who were with him.

23 Everyone in the countryside was weeping loudly as all the people passed by. And as the king crossed the Kidron Valley, all the people also passed toward the way of the wilderness.

24 Zadok was also there, and all the Levites with him were carrying the ark of the covenant of God. And they set down the ark of God, and Abiathar offered sacrifices until all the people had passed out of the city.

25 Then the king said to Zadok, "Return the ark of God to the city. If I find favor in the

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

eyes of Yahweh, He will bring me back and let me see both it and His dwelling place again. 26 But if He should say, 'I do not delight in you,' then here I am; let Him do to me whatever seems good to Him."

27 The king also said to Zadok the priest, "Are you not a seer? Return to the city in peace—you with your son Ahimaaz, and Abiathar with his son Jonathan. 28 See, I will wait at the fords of the wilderness until word comes from you to inform me."

29 So Zadok and Abiathar returned the ark of God to Jerusalem and stayed there.

DAVID WEEPS AT THE MOUNT OF OLIVES // PSALM 63:1–11

30 But David continued up the Mount of Olives, weeping as he went up. His head was covered, and he was walking barefoot. And all the people with him covered their heads and went up, weeping as they went.

31 Now someone told David: "Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom."

So David pleaded, "O Yahweh, please turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness!"

32 When David came to the summit, where he used to worship God, Hushai the Archite was there to meet him with his robe torn and dust on his head.

33 David said to him, "If you go on with me, you will be a burden to me. 34 But you can thwart the counsel of Ahithophel for me if you return to the city and say to Absalom: 'I will be your servant, my king; in the past I was your father's servant, but now I will be your servant.'

35 Will not Zadok and Abiathar the priests be there with you? Report to them everything you hear from the king's palace. 36 Indeed, their two sons, Ahimaaz son of Zadok and Jonathan son of Abiathar, are there with them. Send them to me with everything you hear."

37 So David's friend Hushai arrived in Jerusalem just as Absalom was entering the city.

2SA 15:30 [NOTE] THE MOUNT OF OLIVES. About a thousand years later, Jesus wept over Jerusalem and was betrayed on the same hill, Luke 19:41 and 22:39.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

On the road, Ziba brings David food and accuses his master Mephibosheth. Shimei from Saul's family throws rocks and curses David the whole way, and David lets him. In Jerusalem, Absalom takes Ahithophel's advice and sleeps with David's concubines on the roof, just as Nathan said.

DAVID AND ZIBA

1 When David had gone a little beyond the summit, Ziba the servant of Mephibosheth was there to meet him. He had a pair of saddled donkeys loaded with two hundred loaves of bread, a hundred clusters of raisins, a hundred summer fruits, and a skin of wine.

2 "Why do you have these?" asked the king.

Ziba replied, "The donkeys are for the king's household to ride, the bread and summer fruit are for the young men to eat, and the wine is to refresh those who become exhausted in the wilderness."

3 "Where is your master's grandson?" asked the king.

And Ziba answered, "Indeed, he is staying in Jerusalem, for he has said, 'Today, the house of Israel will restore to me the kingdom of my grandfather.'"

4 So the king said to Ziba, "All that belongs to Mephibosheth is now yours!"

"I humbly bow before you," said Ziba. "May I find favor in your eyes, my lord the king!"

SHIMEI CURSES DAVID

5 As King David approached Bahurim, a man from the family of the house of Saul was just coming out. His name was Shimei son of Gera, and as he approached, he kept yelling out curses. 6 He threw stones at David and at all the servants of the king, though the troops and all the mighty men were on David's right and left.

7 And as he yelled curses, Shimei said, "Get out, get out, you worthless man of bloodshed! 8 Yahweh has paid you back for all the blood of the house of Saul, in whose place you have reigned, and Yah-

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

weh has delivered the kingdom into the hand of your son Absalom. See, you have come to ruin because you are a man of bloodshed!"

9 Then Abishai son of Zeruiah said to the king, "Why should this dead dog curse my lord the king? Let me go over and cut off his head!"

10 But the king replied, "What have I to do with you, O sons of Zeruiah? If he curses me because Yahweh told him, 'Curse David,' who can ask, 'Why did you do this?'"

11 Then David said to Abishai and to all his servants, "Behold, my own son, my own flesh and blood, seeks my life. How much more, then, this Benjamite! Leave him alone and let him curse me, for Yahweh has told him so. 12 Perhaps Yahweh will see my affliction and repay me with good for the cursing I receive today."

13 So David and his men proceeded along the road as Shimei went along the ridge of the hill opposite him. As Shimei went, he yelled curses, threw stones, and flung dust at David. 14 Finally, the king and all the people with him arrived, exhausted. And there he refreshed himself.

THE COUNSEL OF AHITHOPHEL AND HUSHAI

15 Then Absalom and all the men of Israel came to Jerusalem, and Ahithophel was with him. 16 And David's friend Hushai the Archite went to Absalom and said to him, "Long live the king! Long live the king!"

17 "Is this the loyalty you show your friend?" Absalom replied. "Why did you not go with your friend?"

18 "Not at all," Hushai answered. "For the one chosen by Yahweh, by this people, and by all the men of Israel—his I will be, and with him I will remain. 19 Furthermore, whom should I serve if not his son? As I served in your father's presence, so also I will serve in yours."

20 Then Absalom said to Ahithophel, "Give me counsel. What should we do?"

21 Ahithophel replied, "Sleep with your father's concubines, whom he has left to take care of the palace. When all Israel hears that you have become a stench to your father, then the hands of all who are with you will be strengthened."

22 So they pitched a tent for Absalom on the roof, and he slept with his father's concubines in the sight of all Israel.

23 Now in those days the advice of Ahithophel was like the consultation of the word of God. Such was the regard that both David and Absalom had for Ahithophel's advice.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Ahithophel says, Give me 12,000 men and I'll catch David tonight. Hushai, David's secret friend, says, Wait and gather all Israel. Absalom picks Hushai's plan, because God was making Ahithophel's good advice fail. Two young messengers hide in a well to warn David. Ahithophel goes home and hangs himself.

HUSHAI COUNTERS AHITHOPHEL'S ADVICE

1 Furthermore, Ahithophel said to Absalom, "Let me choose twelve thousand men and set out tonight in pursuit of David. 2 I will attack him while he is weak and weary; I will throw him into a panic, and all the people with him will flee; I will strike down only the king 3 and bring all the people back to you as a bride returning to her husband. You seek the life of only one man; then all the people will be at peace."

4 This proposal seemed good to Absalom and all the elders of Israel.

5 Then Absalom said, "Summon Hushai the Archite as well, and let us hear what he too has to say."

6 So Hushai came to Absalom, who told him, "Ahithophel has spoken this proposal. Should we carry it out? If not, what do you say?"

7 Hushai replied, "This time the advice of Ahithophel is not sound."

8 He continued, "You know your father and his men. They are mighty men, and as

2SA 16:21 [FULFILLS] Nathan told David the sword would never depart from his house; his child by Bathsheba would die; his wives would be publicly violated ← 2SA 12:10-14 p.512

2SA 16:22 [NOTE] ON THE ROOF, the same roof where David first saw Bathsheba, 11:2. Nathan said this would happen in broad daylight, 12:11 to 12.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

fierce as a wild bear robbed of her cubs. Moreover, your father is a man of war who will not spend the night with the troops. 9 Surely by now he is hiding in a cave or some other location. If some of your troops fall first, whoever hears of it will say, 'There has been a slaughter among the troops who follow Absalom.' 10 Then even the most valiant soldier with the heart of a lion will melt with fear, because all Israel knows that your father is a mighty man who has valiant men with him.

11 Instead, I advise that all Israel from Dan to Beersheba—a multitude like the sand on the seashore—be gathered to you, and that you yourself lead them into battle. 12 Then we will attack David wherever we find him, and we will descend on him like dew on the ground. And of all the men with him, not even one will remain.

13 If he retreats to a city, all Israel will bring ropes to that city, and we will drag it down to the valley until not even a pebble can be found there."

14 Then Absalom and all the men of Israel said, "The advice of Hushai the Archite is better than that of Ahithophel." For Yahweh had purposed to thwart the good counsel of Ahithophel in order to bring disaster on Absalom.

HUSHAI'S WARNING SAVES DAVID // PSALM 55:1–23

15 So Hushai told Zadok and Abiathar, the priests, "This is what Ahithophel has advised Absalom and the elders of Israel, and this is what I have advised. 16 Now send quickly and tell David, 'Do not spend the night at the fords of the wilderness, but be sure to cross over. Otherwise the king and all the people with him will be swallowed up.'"

17 Now Jonathan and Ahimaaz were staying at En-rogel, where a servant girl would come and pass along information to them. They in turn would go and inform King David, for they dared not be seen entering the city. 18 But a young man did see them and told Absalom. So the two left quickly and came to the house of a man in Bahurim. He had a well in his courtyard, and they climbed down into it. 19 Then the man's wife took a covering, spread it over the mouth of the well, and scattered grain over it so nobody would know a thing.

20 When Absalom's servants came to the woman at the house, they asked, "Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan?"

"They have crossed over the brook," she replied. The men searched but did not find them, so they returned to Jerusalem.

21 After the men had gone, Ahimaaz and Jonathan climbed up out of the well and went to inform King David, saying, "Get up and cross over the river at once, for Ahithophel has given this advice against you."

22 So David and all the people with him got up and crossed the Jordan. By daybreak, there was no one left who had not crossed the Jordan.

23 When Ahithophel saw that his advice had not been followed, he saddled his donkey and set out for his house in his hometown. He put his affairs in order and hanged himself. So he died and was buried in his father's tomb.

24 Then David went to Mahanaim, and Absalom crossed the Jordan with all the men of Israel. 25 Absalom had appointed Amasa over the army in place of Joab. Amasa was the son of a man named Ithra, the Ishmaelite who had married Abigail, the daughter of Nahash and sister of Zeruiah the mother of Joab. 26 So the Israelites and Absalom camped in the land of Gilead.

27 When David came to Mahanaim, he was met by Shobi son of Nahash from Rabbah of the Ammonites, Machir son of Ammiel from Lo-debar, and Barzillai the Gileadite from Rogelim. 28 They brought beds, basins, and earthen vessels, as well as wheat, barley, flour, roasted grain, beans, lentils, 29 honey, curds, sheep, and cheese from the herd for David and his people to eat. For they said, "The people have be-

■ **2SA 17:23 [NOTE]** AHITHOPHEL may have been Bathsheba's grandfather. His son was named Eliam, 23:34, and so was her father, 11:3. Many think it is the same man. He hanged himself, like Judas, who also betrayed his king.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

come hungry, exhausted, and thirsty in the wilderness."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

David's army fights Absalom's in the forest of Ephraim. David tells his generals, Be gentle with Absalom. Absalom's head gets caught in an oak tree while his mule keeps going. Joab kills him anyway. When David hears, he cries, O my son Absalom, if only I had died instead of you.

ABSALOM KILLED

1 Then David reviewed his troops and appointed over them commanders of thousands and of hundreds. 2 He sent out the troops, a third under Joab, a third under Joab's brother Abishai son of Zeruiah, and a third under Ittai the Gittite. And the king said to the troops, "I will surely march out with you as well."

3 But the people pleaded, "You must not go out! For if we have to flee, they will not care about us. Even if half of us die, they will not care. But you are worth ten thousand of us. It is better now if you support us from the city."

4 "I will do whatever seems best to you," the king replied. So he stood beside the gate, while all the troops marched out by hundreds and by thousands.

5 Now the king had commanded Joab, Abishai, and Ittai, "Treat the young man Absalom gently for my sake." And all the people heard the king's orders to each of the commanders regarding Absalom.

6 So David's army marched into the field to engage Israel, and the battle took place in the forest of Ephraim. 7 There the people of Israel were defeated by David's servants, and the slaughter was great that day—twenty thousand men. 8 The battle spread over the whole countryside, and that day the forest devoured more people than the sword.

9 Now Absalom was riding on his mule when he met the servants of David, and as the mule went under the thick branches of a large oak, Absalom's head was caught fast in the tree. The mule under him kept going, so that he was suspended in midair. 10 When one of the men saw this, he told Joab, "I just saw Absalom hanging in an oak tree!"

11 "You just saw him!" Joab exclaimed. "Why did you not strike him to the ground right there? I would have given you four ounces of silver and a warrior's belt!"

12 The man replied, "Even if 25 pounds of silver were weighed out into my hands, I would not raise my hand against the son of the king. For we heard the king command you and Abishai and Ittai, 'Protect the young man Absalom for my sake.' 13 If I had jeopardized my own life—and nothing is hidden from the king—you would have abandoned me."

14 But Joab declared, "I am not going to wait like this with you!" And he took three spears in his hand and thrust them through the heart of Absalom while he was still alive in the oak tree. 15 And ten young men who carried Joab's armor surrounded Absalom, struck him, and killed him.

16 Then Joab blew the ram's horn, and the troops broke off their pursuit of Israel because Joab had restrained them. 17 They took Absalom, cast him into a large pit in the forest, and piled a huge mound of stones over him. Meanwhile, all the Israelites fled, each to his home.

18 During his lifetime, Absalom had set up for himself a pillar in the King's Valley, for he had said, "I have no son to preserve the memory of my name." So he gave the pillar his name, and to this day it is called Absalom's Monument.

DAVID MOURNS FOR ABSALOM

19 Then Ahimaaz son of Zadok said, "Please let me run and tell the king the good news that Yahweh has avenged him of his enemies."

20 But Joab replied, "You are not the man to take good news today. You may do it

■ **2SA 18:9 [NOTE]** CAUGHT BY THE HEAD. The text does not say hair, but many think his famous hair, 14:26, got caught.

■ **2SA 18:18 [NOTE]** ABSALOM'S MONUMENT. The tall stone tomb in the Kidron Valley now called Absalom's Pillar was built about a thousand years later. It is not this one.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

another day, but you must not do so today, because the king's son is dead."

21 So Joab said to a Cushite, "Go, tell the king what you have seen." The Cushite bowed to Joab and took off running.

22 Ahimaaz son of Zadok, however, persisted and said to Joab, "No matter what, please let me also run behind the Cushite!"

"My son," Joab replied, "why do you want to run, since you will not receive a reward?"

23 "No matter what, I want to run!" he replied.

"Then run!" Joab told him.

So Ahimaaz ran by way of the plain and outran the Cushite.

24 Now David was sitting between the two gates when the watchman went up to the roof of the gateway by the wall, looked out, and saw a man running alone. 25 So he called out and told the king.

"If he is alone," the king replied, "he bears good news."

As the first runner drew near, 26 the watchman saw another man running, and he called out to the gatekeeper, "Look! Another man is running alone!"

"This one also brings good news," said the king.

27 The watchman said, "The first man appears to me to be running like Ahimaaz son of Zadok."

"This is a good man," said the king. "He comes with good news."

28 Then Ahimaaz called out to the king, "All is well!" And he bowed facedown before the king.

He continued, "Blessed be Yahweh your God! He has delivered up the men who raised their hands against my lord the king."

29 The king asked, "Is the young man Absalom all right?"

And Ahimaaz replied, "When Joab sent the king's servant and your servant, I saw a great tumult, but I do not know what it was."

30 "Move aside," said the king, "and stand here."

So he stepped aside.

31 Just then the Cushite came and said, "May my lord the king hear the good news: Today Yahweh has avenged you of all who rose up against you!"

32 The king asked the Cushite, "Is the young man Absalom all right?"

And the Cushite replied, "May the enemies of my lord the king and all who rise up against you to harm you be like that young man."

33 The king was shaken and went up to the chamber over the gate and wept. And as he walked, he cried out, "O my son Absalom! My son, my son Absalom! If only I had died instead of you, O Absalom, my son, my son!"

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

The army sneaks back like it lost, because the king is weeping. Joab tells David to get up or lose everyone. David returns to Jerusalem, forgives Shimei, hears Mephibosheth's side, and thanks old Barzillai. Then Judah and Israel argue about who loves the king more.

JOAB REPROVES DAVID

1 Then it was reported to Joab, "The king is weeping and mourning over Absalom."
2 And that day's victory was turned into mourning for all the people, because on that day they were told, "The king is grieving over his son."

3 So they returned to the city quietly that day, as people steal away in humiliation after fleeing a battle. 4 But the king covered his face and cried out at the top of his voice, "O my son Absalom! O Absalom, my son, my son!"

5 Then Joab went into the house and said to the king, "Today you have disgraced all your servants who have saved your life and the lives of your sons and daughters, of your wives, and of your concubines. 6

2SA 18:33 [NOTABLE] One of the saddest cries in the Bible. Absalom tried to kill his father and take his throne, and David still wished he had died in his place. A father's love does not quit.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

You love those who hate you and hate
those who love you! For you have made it
clear today that the commanders and sol-
diers mean nothing to you. I know today
that if Absalom were alive and all of us
were dead, it would have pleased you!
7 Now therefore get up! Go out and speak
comfort to your servants, for I swear by
Yahweh that if you do not go out, not a
man will remain with you tonight. This will
be worse for you than all the adversity
that has befallen you from your youth until
now!"

DAVID RESTORED AS KING

8 So the king got up and sat in the gate,
and all the people were told: "Behold, the
king is sitting in the gate." So they all
came before the king.

Meanwhile, the Israelites had fled, each
man to his home. 9 And all the people
throughout the tribes of Israel were argu-
ing, "The king rescued us from the hand
of our enemies and delivered us from the
hand of the Philistines, but now he has
fled the land because of Absalom. 10 But
Absalom, the man we anointed over us,
has died in battle. So why do you say
nothing about restoring the king?"

11 Then King David sent this message to
Zadok and Abiathar, the priests: "Say to
the elders of Judah, 'Why should you be
the last to restore the king to his palace,
since the talk of all Israel has reached the
king at his quarters? 12 You are my broth-
ers, my own flesh and blood. So why
should you be the last to restore the king?'
13 And say to Amasa, 'Aren't you my flesh
and blood? May God punish me, and ever
so severely, if from now on you are not
the commander of my army in place of
Joab!'"

14 So he swayed the hearts of all the men
of Judah as though they were one man,
and they sent word to the king: "Return,
you and all your servants."

15 So the king returned, and when he ar-
rived at the Jordan, the men of Judah
came to Gilgal to meet him and escort him
across the Jordan.

SHIMEI PARDONED

16 Then Shimei son of Gera, a Benjamite
from Bahurim, hurried down with the men
of Judah to meet King David, 17 along with
a thousand men of Benjamin, as well as
Ziba the steward of the house of Saul and
his fifteen sons and twenty servants.

They rushed down to the Jordan before
the king 18 and crossed at the ford to carry
over the king's household and to do what
was good in his sight.

When Shimei son of Gera crossed the
Jordan, he fell down before the king 19 and
said, "My lord, do not hold me guilty, and
do not remember your servant's wrongdo-
ing on the day my lord the king left
Jerusalem. May the king not take it to
heart. 20 For your servant knows that I
have sinned, so here I am today as the
first of all the house of Joseph to come
down to meet my lord the king."

21 But Abishai son of Zeruiah said,
"Shouldn't Shimei be put to death for this,
because he cursed Yahweh's anointed?"

22 And David replied, "Sons of Zeruiah,
what have I to do with you, that you
should be my adversaries today? Should
any man be put to death in Israel today?
Am I not indeed aware that today I am
king over Israel?"

23 So the king said to Shimei, "You shall
not die." And the king swore an oath to
him.

MEPHIBOSHETH EXCUSED

24 Then Mephibosheth, Saul's grandson,
went down to meet the king. He had not
cared for his feet or trimmed his mus-
tache or washed his clothes from the day
the king had left until the day he returned
safely. 25 And he came from Jerusalem to
meet the king, who asked him, "Mephi-
bosheth, why did you not go with me?"

26 "My lord the king," he replied, "because
I am lame, I said, 'I will have my donkey
saddled so that I may ride on it and go
with the king.' But my servant Ziba de-
ceived me, 27 and he has slandered your
servant to my lord the king.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Yet my lord the king is like the angel of
God, so do what is good in your eyes. 28
For all the house of my grandfather de-
serves death from my lord the king, yet
you have set your servant among those
who eat at your table. What further right,
then, do I have to keep appealing to the
king?"

29 The king replied, "Why say any more? I
hereby declare that you and Ziba are to
divide the land."

30 And Mephibosheth said to the king, "In-
stead, since my lord the king has safely
come to his own house, let Ziba take it
all!"

DAVID'S KINDNESS TO BARZILLAI

31 Now Barzillai the Gileadite had come
down from Rogelim to cross the Jordan
with the king and send him on his way
from there. 32 Barzillai was quite old,
eighty years of age, and since he was a
very wealthy man, he had provided for the
king while he stayed in Mahanaim.

33 The king said to Barzillai, "Cross over
with me, and I will provide for you at my
side in Jerusalem."

34 But Barzillai replied, "How many years
of my life remain, that I should go up to
Jerusalem with the king? 35 I am now
eighty years old. Can I discern what is
good and what is not? Can your servant
taste what he eats or drinks? Can I still
hear the voice of singing men and
women? Why should your servant be an
added burden to my lord the king?

36 Your servant will go with the king only a
short distance past the Jordan; why
should the king repay me with such a re-
ward? 37 Please let your servant return,
that I may die in my own city near the
tomb of my father and mother. But here is
your servant Chimham. Let him cross over
with my lord the king, and do for him what
is good in your sight."

38 The king replied, "Chimham will cross
over with me, and I will do for him what is
good in your sight, and I will do for you
whatever you desire of me."

39 So all the people crossed the Jordan,
and then the king crossed over. The king
kissed Barzillai and blessed him, and
Barzillai returned home.

40 Then the king crossed over to Gilgal,
and Chimham crossed over with him. All
the troops of Judah and half the troops of
Israel escorted the king.

CONTENTION OVER THE KING

41 Soon all the men of Israel came to the
king and asked, "Why did our brothers,
the men of Judah, take you away secretly
and bring the king and his household
across the Jordan, together with all of
David's men?"

42 And all the men of Judah replied to the
men of Israel, "We did this because the
king is our relative. Why does this anger
you? Have we ever eaten at the king's ex-
pense or received anything for our-
selves?"

43 "We have ten shares in the king," an-
swered the men of Israel, "so we have
more claim to David than you. Why then
do you despise us? Were we not the first
to speak of restoring our king?"

But the men of Judah spoke more fiercely
than the men of Israel.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

A troublemaker named Sheba blows a horn and says, We have no share in David! Israel follows him. Joab kills Amasa, the new general, with a fake friendly kiss, and chases Sheba to the town of Abel. A wise woman talks to Joab from the wall, and Sheba's head comes over it.

SHEBA'S REBELLION

1 Now a worthless man named Sheba son
of Bichri, a Benjamite, happened to be
there, and he blew the ram's horn and
shouted:

"We have no share in David,
no inheritance in Jesse's son.
Every man to his tent,
O Israel!"

2 So all the men of Israel deserted David to
follow Sheba son of Bichri. But the men of

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Judah stayed by their king all the way
from the Jordan to Jerusalem.

3 When David returned to his palace in
Jerusalem, he took the ten concubines he
had left to take care of the palace, and he
placed them in a house under guard. He
provided for them, but he no longer slept
with them. They were confined until the
day of their death, living as widows.

4 Then the king said to Amasa, "Summon
the men of Judah to come to me within
three days, and be here yourself."

5 So Amasa went to summon Judah, but
he took longer than the time allotted him.

6 And David said to Abishai, "Now Sheba
the son of Bichri will do us more harm
than Absalom. Take your lord's servants
and pursue him, or he will find fortified
cities and elude us."

7 So Joab's men, along with the
Cherethites, the Pelethites, and all the
mighty men, marched out of Jerusalem in
pursuit of Sheba son of Bichri. 8 And while
they were at the great stone in Gibeon,
Amasa joined them.

Now Joab was dressed in military attire,
with a dagger strapped to his belt. And as
he stepped forward, he slipped the dag-
ger from its sheath. 9 "Are you well, my
brother?" Joab asked Amasa. And with his
right hand Joab grabbed Amasa by the
beard to kiss him.

10 Amasa was not on guard against the
dagger in Joab's hand, and Joab stabbed
him in the stomach and spilled out his in-
testines on the ground. And Joab did not
need to strike him again, for Amasa was
dead. Then Joab and his brother Abishai
pursued Sheba son of Bichri.

11 One of Joab's young men stood near
Amasa and said, "Whoever favors Joab,
and whoever is for David, let him follow
Joab!" 12 But Amasa wallowed in his blood
in the middle of the road, and when the
man saw that all the troops were stopping
there, he dragged the body off the road
into a field and threw a garment over it. 13
As soon as Amasa's body was removed
from the road, all the men went on with
Joab to pursue Sheba son of Bichri.

14 Sheba passed through all the tribes of
Israel to Abel-beth-maacah and through
the entire region of the Berites, who gath-
ered together and followed him.

15 And Joab's troops came and besieged
Sheba in Abel-beth-maacah and built a
siege ramp against the outer rampart of
the city.

As all the troops with Joab were battering
the wall to topple it, 16 a wise woman
called out from the city, "Listen! Listen!
Please tell Joab to come here so that I
may speak with him."

17 When he had come near to her, the
woman asked, "Are you Joab?"

"I am," he replied.

"Listen to the words of your servant," she
said.

"I am listening," he answered.

18 Then the woman said, "Long ago they
used to say, 'Seek counsel at Abel,' and
that is how disputes were settled. 19 I am
among the peaceable and faithful in Is-
rael, but you are trying to destroy a city
that is a mother in Israel. Why would you
swallow up Yahweh's inheritance?"

20 "Far be it!" Joab declared. "Far be it
from me to swallow up or destroy! 21 That
is not the case. But a man named Sheba
son of Bichri, from the hill country of
Ephraim, has lifted up his hand against the
king, against David. Deliver him alone, and
I will depart from the city."

"Look," the woman replied, "his head will
be thrown to you over the wall."

22 Then the woman went to all the people
with her wise counsel, and they cut off the
head of Sheba son of Bichri and threw it
to Joab. So he blew the ram's horn and
his men dispersed from the city, each to
his own home. And Joab returned to the
king in Jerusalem.

23 Now Joab was over the whole army of
Israel; Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over
the Cherethites and Pelethites; 24 Adoram

■ **2SA 20:10 [NOTE]** JOAB again. He killed Abner, 3:27, and now Amasa, both in a fake friendly moment. David tells Solomon to deal with him, 1 Kings 2:5 to 6.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

was in charge of the forced labor; Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the recorder; 25 Sheva was the scribe; Zadok and Abiathar were priests; 26 and Ira the Jairite was David's priest.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

A famine lasts three years. God says it is because Saul killed the Gibeonites. They ask for seven of Saul's sons and grandsons, and David hands them over. Rizpah, the mother of two of them, guards their bodies for months. Then David's men kill four Philistine giants, one with six fingers on each hand.

DAVID AVENGES THE GIBEONITES

1 During the reign of David there was a famine for three successive years, and David sought the face of Yahweh.

And Yahweh said, "It is because of the blood shed by Saul and his family, because he killed the Gibeonites."

2 At this, David summoned the Gibeonites and spoke to them. (Now the Gibeonites were not Israelites, but a remnant of the Amorites. The Israelites had taken an oath concerning them, but in his zeal for Israel and Judah, Saul had sought to kill them.)

3 So David asked the Gibeonites, "What shall I do for you? How can I make amends so that you may bless the inheritance of Yahweh?"

4 The Gibeonites said to him, "We need no silver or gold from Saul or his house, nor should you put to death anyone in Israel for us."

"Whatever you ask, I will do for you," he replied.

5 And they answered the king, "As for the man who consumed us and plotted against us to exterminate us from existing within any border of Israel, 6 let seven of his male descendants be delivered to us so that we may hang them before Yahweh at Gibeah of Saul, the chosen of Yahweh."

"I will give them to you," said the king.

7 Now the king spared Mephibosheth son of Jonathan, the son of Saul, because of the oath before Yahweh between David and Jonathan son of Saul. 8 But the king took Armoni and Mephibosheth, the two sons whom Rizpah daughter of Aiah had borne to Saul, as well as the five sons whom Merab daughter of Saul had borne to Adriel son of Barzillai the Meholathite. 9 And he delivered them into the hands of the Gibeonites, and they hanged them on the hill before Yahweh. So all seven of them fell together; they were put to death in the first days of the harvest, at the beginning of the barley harvest.

10 And Rizpah the daughter of Aiah took sackcloth and spread it out for herself on a rock. From the beginning of the harvest until the rain from heaven poured down on the bodies, she did not allow the birds of the air to rest on them by day, nor the beasts of the field by night.

11 When David was told what Saul's concubine Rizpah, daughter of Aiah, had done, 12 he went and took the bones of Saul and his son Jonathan from the men of Jabesh-gilead, who had stolen them from the public square of Beth-shan where the Philistines had hung the bodies after they had struck down Saul at Gilboa.

13 So David had the bones of Saul and his son Jonathan brought from there, and they also gathered the bones of those who had been hanged. 14 And they buried the bones of Saul and his son Jonathan in Zela in the land of Benjamin, in the tomb of Saul's father Kish.

After they had done everything the king had commanded, God answered their prayers for the land.

■ **2SA 21:1 [NOTE]** THE GIBEONITES tricked Joshua into a peace treaty, Joshua 9, and Israel swore by Yahweh to spare them. Saul broke that oath. See the Big Question pages Saul's Sons and the Gibeonites, p.529.

■ **2SA 21:8 [TEXT]** MERAB OR MICHAL? Most Hebrew copies say Michal. A few Hebrew copies and some Greek copies say Merab, and this Bible follows them. Merab was the one who married Adriel, 1 Samuel 18:19. Michal had no children, 6:23.

■ **2SA 21:9 [NOTE]** NOT CHILD SACRIFICE. These were grown men put to death for the bloodshed of Saul's house, not children offered to a god.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SAUL'S SONS AND THE GIBEONITES

What Happened

2 SAMUEL 21:1 TO 14 · JOSHUA 9:3 TO 27 · NUMBERS 35:33 · DEUTERONOMY 24:16

A THREE YEAR FAMINE

David asked Yahweh why. God said, It is because of the blood shed by Saul and his family, because he killed the Gibeonites, 21:1.

WHO WERE THE GIBEONITES?

Canaanites who tricked Joshua into a peace treaty hundreds of years earlier. Israel swore by Yahweh not to kill them, Joshua 9:15 to 20. Saul tried to wipe them out anyway, 21:2. The Bible does not tell that story anywhere else.

WHAT THEY ASKED

The Gibeonites did not want money. They asked for seven of Saul's male descendants to put to death before Yahweh at Gibeah, Saul's town, 21:4 to 6. David agreed, but he spared Mephibosheth because of his oath to Jonathan, 21:7.

RIZPAH

Two of the seven were sons of Rizpah, Saul's concubine. She spread sackcloth on a rock and guarded their bodies from birds and wild animals from the barley harvest until the rain came, 21:10.

THE END

David heard what Rizpah did. He gathered the bones of the seven, and he buried the bones of Saul and Jonathan in the family tomb of Kish. After that, God answered prayer for the land, 21:14.

THE QUESTION

Why did seven men die for what Saul did? Did God want this?

Every View

DEUTERONOMY 24:16 · EZEKIEL 18:20 · JOSHUA 9:19 TO 20 · NUMBERS 35:33 · PSALM 15:4

A BROKEN OATH

Everyone agrees the first problem was Saul breaking an oath made in God's name. The land was stained by blood that was never answered for, Numbers 35:33. God takes promises seriously, even promises made to people who tricked you, Joshua 9:19.

VIEW 1: JUSTICE THE GIBEONITES ASKED FOR

Some say God named the cause, but the Gibeonites chose the price, and David agreed. The text does not say God asked for seven men. The famine ended only after the bones were buried, 21:14, not right after the deaths.

VIEW 2: SAUL'S HOUSE SHARED THE GUILT

Others point to the words Saul and his house, or family, of blood, 21:1. They think some of these men took part in the killing, so they were not innocent.

VIEW 3: A HARD STORY TOLD HONESTLY

Others say it is right to be troubled. Deuteronomy 24:16 says children must not be put to death for their fathers' sins. Some think David was wrong to agree, and the Bible reports it without praising it.

NOT CHILD SACRIFICE

These were grown men executed for blood guilt, not children offered to a god. God hated child sacrifice, Deuteronomy 12:31.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Rizpah is the hero of the chapter. A grieving mother's love moved the king to give Saul's family an honorable burial. After that, God answered prayer for the land, 21:14.

FOUR BATTLES AGAINST THE PHILISTINES // 1 CHRONICLES 20:4–8

15 Once again the Philistines waged war against Israel, and David and his servants went down and fought against the Philistines. But David became exhausted.

16 Then Ishbi-benob, a descendant of Rapha, whose bronze spear weighed 7½ pounds and who was bearing a new

2SA 21:15 [DEMONIC] Four giants of Gath, descendants of Rapha, killed by David's men: Ishbi-benob, Saph, Goliath's brother, and the six fingered man

MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

sword, resolved to kill David. 17 But Abishai son of Zeruiah came to his aid, struck the Philistine, and killed him.

Then David's men swore to him, "You must never again go out with us to battle, so that the lamp of Israel may not be extinguished."

18 Some time later at Gob, there was another battle with the Philistines. At that time Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Saph, a descendant of Rapha.

19 Once again there was a battle with the Philistines at Gob, and Elhanan son of Jair the Bethlehemite killed the brother of Goliath the Gittite, the shaft of whose spear was like a weaver's beam.

20 And there was also a battle at Gath, where there was a man of great stature with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot—twenty-four in all. He too was descended from Rapha, 21 and when he taunted Israel, Jonathan the son of David's brother Shimei killed him.

22 So these four descendants of Rapha in Gath fell at the hands of David and his servants.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

David's song of thanks for the day God saved him from all his enemies and from Saul. Yahweh is my rock, my fortress and my deliverer. The earth shakes, God rides on the wings of the wind, and He reaches down and pulls David out of deep waters. The same song is Psalm 18.

DAVID'S SONG OF DELIVERANCE // PSALM 18:1–50

1 And David sang this song to Yahweh on the day Yahweh had delivered him from the hand of all his enemies and from the hand of Saul. 2 He said:

"Yahweh is my rock,
my fortress, and my deliverer.
3 My God is my rock, in whom I take refuge,
my shield, and the horn of my salvation.
My stronghold, my refuge, and my Savior,
You save me from violence.
4 I will call upon Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised;
so shall I be saved from my enemies.

5 For the waves of death engulfed me;
the torrents of chaos overwhelmed me.
6 The cords of Sheol entangled me;
the snares of death confronted me.
7 In my distress I called upon Yahweh;
I cried out to my God.
And from His temple He heard my voice,
and my cry for help reached His ears.

8 Then the earth shook and quaked;
the foundations of the heavens trembled;
they were shaken because He burned with anger.
9 Smoke rose from His nostrils,
and consuming fire came from His mouth;
glowing coals blazed forth.

10 He parted the heavens and came down
with dark clouds beneath His feet.
11 He mounted a cherub and flew;
He soared on the wings of the wind.
12 He made darkness a canopy around Him,
a gathering of water and thick clouds.
13 From the brightness of His presence
coals of fire blazed forth.

14 Yahweh thundered from heaven;
the voice of the Most High resounded.
15 He shot His arrows and scattered the foes;
He hurled lightning and routed them.
16 The channels of the sea appeared,
and the foundations of the world were exposed
at the rebuke of Yahweh,
at the blast of the breath of His nostrils.

17 He reached down from on high and took hold of me;

2SA 21:19 [TEXT] WHO KILLED GOLIATH? The Hebrew says Elhanan killed Goliath the Gittite. This Bible adds the brother of, from 1 Chronicles 20:5, like the King James. See Who Killed Goliath? on the David and Goliath Big Question pages in 1 Samuel, p.465.

2SA 22:1 [NOTE] THE SAME SONG is Psalm 18, with small differences. Old Hebrew Bibles like the Aleppo Codex write this song in a brick pattern, with gaps that line up like a brick wall.

2SA 22:2 [NOTABLE] David's song after God saved him from all his enemies. The same song is Psalm 18. A hunted man who hid in rocks and caves found his real hiding place in God.

2SA 22:8 [MIRACLE] Cosmic disturbances at David's deliverance from Saul

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

He drew me out of deep waters.
18 He rescued me from my powerful enemy,
from foes too mighty for me.
19 They confronted me in my day of calamity,
but Yahweh was my support.
20 He brought me out into the open;
He rescued me because He delighted in me.

21 Yahweh has rewarded me according to my righteousness;
He has repaid me according to the cleanness of my hands.
22 For I have kept the ways of Yahweh
and have not wickedly departed from my God.
23 For all His ordinances are before me;
I have not disregarded His statutes.
24 And I have been blameless before Him
and kept myself from iniquity.
25 So Yahweh has repaid me according to my righteousness,
according to my cleanness in His sight.

26 To the faithful You show Yourself faithful,
to the blameless You show Yourself blameless;
27 to the pure You show Yourself pure,
but to the crooked You show Yourself shrewd.
28 You save an afflicted people,
but Your eyes are on the haughty to bring them down.

29 For You, O Yahweh, are my lamp;
Yahweh lights up my darkness.
30 For in You I can charge an army;
with my God I can scale a wall.
31 As for God, His way is perfect;
the word of Yahweh is flawless.
He is a shield to all
who take refuge in Him.

32 For who is God besides Yahweh?
And who is the Rock except our God?
33 God is my strong fortress,
and He makes my way clear.
34 He makes my feet like those of a deer
and stations me upon the heights.
35 He trains my hands for battle;
my arms can bend a bow of bronze.

36 You have given me Your shield of salvation,
and Your gentleness exalts me.
37 You broaden the path beneath me
so that my ankles do not give way.
38 I pursued my enemies and destroyed them;
I did not turn back until they were consumed.
39 I devoured and crushed them so they could not rise;
they have fallen under my feet.

40 You have armed me with strength for battle;
You have subdued my foes beneath me.
41 You have made my enemies retreat before me;
I destroyed those who hated me.
42 They looked, but there was no one to save them—
to Yahweh, but He did not answer.
43 I ground them as the dust of the earth;
I crushed and trampled them like mud in the streets.

44 You have delivered me from the strife of my people;
You have preserved me as the head of nations;
a people I had not known shall serve me.
45 Foreigners cower before me;
when they hear me, they obey me.
46 Foreigners lose heart
and come trembling from their strongholds.

47 Yahweh lives, and blessed be my Rock!
And may God, the Rock of my salvation, be exalted—
48 the God who avenges me
and brings down nations beneath me,
49 who frees me from my enemies.
You exalt me above my foes;
You rescue me from violent men.
50 *Therefore I will praise You, O Yahweh,*
among the nations;
I will sing praises to Your name.

2SA 22:50 [PROPHECY] The king would praise God among the nations → ROM 15:9 p.1817

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

51 Great salvation He brings to His king.
He shows loving devotion to His
anointed,
to David and his descendants forever."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

David's last words: a king who rules with justice is like the sunrise after rain. Then a list of David's mighty men and their wild stories. One killed a lion in a pit on a snowy day. Three broke through the Philistine lines just to bring David a drink from the well at Bethlehem. The last name on the list is Uriah the Hittite.

DAVID'S LAST SONG

1 These are the last words of David:

"The oracle of David son of Jesse,
the oracle of the man raised on high,
the one anointed by the God of Jacob,
and the sweet psalmist of Israel:

2 The Spirit of Yahweh spoke through me;
His word was on my tongue.
3 The God of Israel spoke;
the Rock of Israel said to me,
'He who rules the people with justice,
who rules in the fear of God,
4 is like the light of the morning
at sunrise of a cloudless dawn,
the glistening after the rain
on the sprouting grass of the earth.'

5 Is not my house right with God?
For He has established with me
an everlasting covenant,
ordered and secured in every part.
Will He not bring about my full salvation
and my every desire?

6 But the worthless are all like thorns raked
aside,
for they can never be gathered by hand.
7 The man who touches them must be
armed with iron
or with the shaft of a spear.
The fire burns them to ashes
in the place where they lie."

DAVID'S MIGHTY MEN // 1 CHRONICLES 11:10–47

8 These are the names of David's mighty men:

Josheb-basshebeth the Tahchemonite was chief of the Three. He wielded his spear against eight hundred men, whom he killed at one time.

9 Next in command was Eleazar son of Dodo the Ahohite. As one of the three mighty men, he went with David to taunt the Philistines who had gathered for battle at Pas-dammim. The men of Israel retreated, 10 but Eleazar stood his ground and struck the Philistines until his hand grew weary and stuck to his sword. Yahweh brought about a great victory that day. Then the troops returned to him, but only to plunder the dead.

11 And after him was Shammah son of Agee the Hararite. When the Philistines had banded together near a field full of lentils, Israel's troops fled from them. 12 But Shammah took his stand in the middle of the field, defended it, and struck down the Philistines. So Yahweh brought about a great victory.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SAMUEL AND CHRONICLES

Why the Numbers Differ

2 SAMUEL 8:4 · 10:18 · 23:8 · 24:9 · 24:13 · 24:24 · 1 CHRONICLES 11 TO 21

TWO BOOKS, ONE STORY

1 Chronicles 11 to 21 tells many of the same stories as 2 Samuel. It was written later, after the exile, and often copies Samuel word for word. That is why small differences stand out.

8:4

Samuel's standard Hebrew text says 1,700 horsemen. 1 Chronicles 18:4 says a thousand chariots and seven thousand

- **2SA 22:50 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:9 p.1817
- **2SA 22:50 [NOTE]** AMONG THE NATIONS. Paul quotes this in Romans 15:9 to show God always planned to save the Gentiles too.
- **2SA 23:1 [PROPHECY]** 'The last words of David' prophesying of the latter messianic days → ACTS 2:30-31 · MEDIUM p.1743
- **2SA 23:1 [NOTE]** THE LAST WORDS OF DAVID. Only the words the Rock of Israel spoke to David, 23:3 to 4, print red.
- **2SA 23:3 [FORESHADOW]** 'He who rules over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God' → HEB 1:8-9; JN 5:30 · MEDIUM p.1978
- **2SA 23:4 [FORESHADOW]** Morning light at sunrise → LK 1:78; 2PE 1:19 · MEDIUM p.1647
- **2SA 23:8 [TEXT]** 800 OR 300? This verse says 800 men. 1 Chronicles 11:11 says 300. See the Big Question pages Samuel and Chronicles, p.532.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

charioteers. A Dead Sea Scroll of Samuel and the Greek match Chronicles, and this Bible follows them.

10:18
Samuel's standard Hebrew text says 700 charioteers and 40,000 horsemen. This Bible says foot soldiers, like 1 Chronicles 19:18, which says 7,000 charioteers.

23:8
Samuel says the chief of the Three killed 800 men. 1 Chronicles 11:11 says 300. Verse 18 says Abishai killed 300, so some think an eye slipped.

24:9
Samuel says 800,000 in Israel and 500,000 in Judah. 1 Chronicles 21:5 says 1,100,000 and 470,000, and adds that Joab did not count Levi and Benjamin, 21:6.

24:13 AND 24:24
The Hebrew of Samuel says seven years of famine, and Chronicles says three. This Bible follows the Greek, which says three. Samuel says David paid 1¼ pounds of silver for the floor and oxen. Chronicles says about 15 pounds of gold for the site.

THE QUESTION
Do these differences mean the Bible has mistakes?

Every View
JEREMIAH 36:27 TO 32 · PSALM 12:6 · 2 TIMOTHY 3:16 · DEUTERONOMY 4:2

VIEW 1: COPYING SLIPS
The most common answer among Bible believing scholars. Old Hebrew wrote numbers as words or as letters, and a hundred or a thousand could be misread by a tired copyist over many centuries. They say the first writings had no errors, and copies picked up small slips.

VIEW 2: DIFFERENT WAYS OF COUNTING
Some differences may be real, not mistakes. 24:9 may count only the trained army in one book and every man of age in the other. 24:24 may be the price of the floor and oxen in Samuel, and of the whole hilltop in Chronicles.

VIEW 3: THE WRITERS ROUNDED OR CHANGED
Many critical scholars think the writer of Chronicles used a copy of Samuel that read differently, and sometimes rounded or raised numbers to make a point.

THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS HELP
4QSam a, a scroll of Samuel from about 50 to 25 BC, often matches Chronicles where today's Hebrew of Samuel is different. That suggests Chronicles copied a good old text of Samuel, and some differences came in later.

WHAT IS NOT AT STAKE
No teaching about God, salvation or Jesus depends on any of these numbers. The copies agree on almost every word.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The Bible's copyists left these differences in instead of fixing them. That honesty is one reason scholars can study the text so carefully today.

13 At harvest time, three of the thirty chief
men went down to David at the cave of
Adullam, while a company of Philistines
was encamped in the Valley of Rephaim.
14 At that time David was in the stronghold,
and the garrison of the Philistines was at
Bethlehem. 15 David longed for water and
said, "Oh, that someone would get me a
drink of water from the well near the gate
of Bethlehem!"
16 So the three mighty men broke through
the Philistine camp, drew water from the
well near the gate of Bethlehem, and
brought it back to David. But he refused to
drink it; instead, he poured it out to Yah-
weh, 17 saying, "Far be it from me, O Yah-
weh, to do this! Is this not the blood of the
men who risked their lives?" So he re-
fused to drink it.
Such were the exploits of the three mighty
men.
18 Now Abishai, the brother of Joab and
son of Zeruiah, was chief of the Three,
and he wielded his spear against three
hundred men, killed them, and won a
name along with the Three. 19 Was he not
more honored than the Three? And he be-
came their commander, even though he
was not included among the Three.

2SA 23:16 [NOTE] He poured it out to Yahweh. David would not drink water his men had risked their lives for. He gave it to God as an offering.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

20 And Benaiah son of Jehoiada was a
man of valor from Kabzeel, a man of many
exploits. He struck down two champions
of Moab, and on a snowy day he went
down into a pit and killed a lion. 21 He also
struck down an Egyptian, a huge man. Al-
though the Egyptian had a spear in his
hand, Benaiah went against him with a
club, snatched the spear from his hand,
and killed the Egyptian with his own spear.
22 These were the exploits of Benaiah son
of Jehoiada, who won a name along with
the three mighty men. 23 He was most
honored among the Thirty, but he did not
become one of the Three. And David ap-
pointed him over his guard.

24 Now these were members of the Thirty:
Asahel the brother of Joab,
Elhanan son of Dodo of Bethlehem,
25 Shammah the Harodite,
Elika the Harodite,
26 Helez the Paltite,
Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,
27 Abiezer the Anathothite,
Mebunnai the Hushathite,
28 Zalmon the Ahohite,
Maharai the Netophathite,
29 Heled son of Baanah the Netophathite,
Ittai son of Ribai from Gibeah of the Ben-
jamites,
30 Benaiah the Pirathonite,
Hiddai from the brooks of Gaash,
31 Abi-albon the Arbathite,
Azmaveth the Barhumite,
32 Eliahba the Shaalbonite,
the sons of Jashen,
Jonathan 33 son of Shammah the Hararite,
Ahiam son of Sharar the Hararite,
34 Eliphelet son of Ahasbai the Maacathite,
Eliam son of Ahithophel the Gilonite,
35 Hezro the Carmelite,
Paarai the Arbite,
36 Igal son of Nathan of Zobah,
Bani the Gadite,
37 Zelek the Ammonite,
Naharai the Beerothite, the armor-bearer
of Joab son of Zeruiah,
38 Ira the Ithrite,
Gareb the Ithrite,
39 and Uriah the Hittite.
There were thirty-seven in all.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

David orders a census of his fighting men. Even Joab says, Why do this? Afterward David's heart strikes him. God gives him three choices, and David says, Let me fall into Yahweh's hands. A plague hits, and the angel stops at Araunah's threshing floor. David buys it and builds an altar. I will not give God something that costs me nothing.

DAVID'S MILITARY CENSUS // EXODUS 30:11–16; 1 CHRONICLES 21:1–6

1 Again the anger of Yahweh burned
against Israel, and He stirred up David
against them, saying, "Go and take a cen-
sus of Israel and Judah."

2 So the king said to Joab the commander
of his army, who was with him, "Go now
throughout the tribes of Israel from Dan to
Beersheba and register the troops, so that
I may know their number."

3 But Joab replied to the king, "May Yah-
weh your God multiply the troops a hun-
dred times over, and may the eyes of my
lord the king see it. But why does my lord
the king want to do such a thing?"

4 Nevertheless, the king's word prevailed
against Joab and against the comman-
ders of the army. So Joab and the com-
manders of the army departed from the
presence of the king to register the troops
of Israel.

5 They crossed the Jordan and camped
near Aroer, south of the town in the mid-
dle of the valley, and proceeded toward
Gad and Jazer. 6 Then they went to Gilead
and the land of Tahtim-hodshi, and on to
Dan-jaan and around to Sidon. 7 They
went toward the fortress of Tyre and all
the cities of the Hivites and Canaanites.
Finally, they went on to the Negev of Ju-
dah, to Beersheba.

8 At the end of nine months and twenty
days, having gone through the whole
land, they returned to Jerusalem. 9 And

■ **2SA 23:39 [NOTE]** URIAH THE HITTITE is the last name on the list of David's mighty men. The writer does not let us forget him.
■ **2SA 24:1 [TEXT]** WHO STIRRED UP DAVID? This verse says Yahweh did. 1 Chronicles 21:1 says Satan did. See the Big Question pages Who Caused the Census?, p.535

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Joab reported to the king the total number of the troops. In Israel there were 800,000 men of valor who drew the sword, and in Judah there were 500,000.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO CAUSED THE CENSUS?

Two Accounts

2 SAMUEL 24:1 TO 17 · 1 CHRONICLES 21:1 TO 17 · EXODUS 30:12

2 SAMUEL SAYS

Again the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He stirred up David against them, saying, Go and take a census of Israel and Judah, 24:1.

1 CHRONICLES SAYS

Then Satan rose up against Israel and incited David to take a census of Israel, 1 Chronicles 21:1. The Hebrew word satan means adversary, and here it has no the in front of it.

WHAT DAVID DID

He sent Joab to count the fighting men. Joab pushed back: why does my lord want to do this? 24:3. It took almost ten months, 24:8.

WHY WAS IT WRONG?

The Bible does not say exactly. Many think David was trusting in the size of his army instead of in God. Some point to Exodus 30:12, where a count needed a ransom payment to avoid a plague. Afterward David's own heart struck him, and he said, I have sinned greatly, 24:10.

THREE CHOICES

God offered three years of famine, three months of running from enemies, or three days of plague. David said, Let us fall into the hand of Yahweh, for His mercies are great, 24:14.

THE QUESTION

Who stirred David up, God or Satan? How can both books be right?

Every View

JOB 1:6 TO 12 · 2:1 TO 7 · 1 KINGS 22:19 TO 23 · JAMES 1:13 · GENESIS 50:20

VIEW 1: GOD ALLOWED, SATAN DID

The most common Christian view. Like Job 1 and 2, God allowed Satan to test David. 2 Samuel names the One who is over everything, and Chronicles names the one who did it. James 1:13 says God tempts no one, so God allowed it, and Satan tempted.

VIEW 2: GOD USED IT FOR JUDGMENT

God was already angry with Israel, 24:1, likely for the revolts of Absalom and Sheba. He used David's pride to bring that judgment. Chronicles adds who stood behind the temptation. God can use even evil for His purposes, Genesis 50:20.

VIEW 3: AN ADVERSARY, NOT THE DEVIL

Some scholars note that satan without the can mean an adversary, maybe a human enemy or an accusing angel. They think Chronicles, written later, explains the story so God is not the one doing wrong.

VIEW 4: TWO WRITERS, TWO AIMS

Many critical scholars say the later writer of Chronicles changed the earlier story on purpose, as Jewish thinking about Satan grew. Others reply that both writers tell the truth from different sides, and both books are God's word.

THE GOOD ENDING

Both books end at the same threshing floor. The angel stopped there, David built an altar there, and the temple was built there, 1 Chronicles 22:1 and 2 Chronicles 3:1. God turned the place of judgment into the place of worship.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God is in charge, sin is real, and David took the blame himself: I, the shepherd, have sinned, but these sheep, what have they done? 24:17.

JUDGMENT FOR DAVID'S SIN // 1 CHRONICLES 21:7–13

10 After David had numbered the troops, David's heart struck him and he said to Yahweh, "I have sinned greatly in what I have done. Now, O Yahweh, I beg You to

■ **2SA 24:9 [TEXT]** THE TOTALS. 1 Chronicles 21:5 gives 1,100,000 for Israel and 470,000 for Judah. See the Big Question pages Samuel and Chronicles, p.532.

MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

take away the iniquity of Your servant, for I have acted very foolishly."

11 When David got up in the morning, the word of Yahweh had come to Gad the prophet, David's seer: 12 "Go and tell David that this is what Yahweh says: 'I am offering you three options. Choose one of them, and I will carry it out against you.'"

13 So Gad went and said to David, "Do you choose to endure three years of famine in your land, three months of fleeing the pursuit of your enemies, or three days of plague upon your land? Now then, think it over and decide how I should reply to Him who sent me."

14 David answered Gad, "I am deeply distressed. Please, let us fall into the hand of Yahweh, for His mercies are great; but do not let me fall into the hands of men."

A PLAGUE ON ISRAEL // 1 CHRONICLES 21:14–17

15 So Yahweh sent a plague upon Israel from that morning until the appointed time, and seventy thousand of the people from Dan to Beersheba died.

16 But when the angel stretched out his hand to destroy Jerusalem, Yahweh relented from the calamity and said to the angel who was destroying the people, "Enough! Withdraw your hand now!" At that time the angel of Yahweh was by the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite.

17 When David saw the angel striking down the people, he said to Yahweh, "Surely I, the shepherd, have sinned and acted wickedly. But these sheep, what have they done? Please, let Your hand fall upon me and my father's house."

DAVID BUILDS AN ALTAR // 1 CHRONICLES 21:18–30

18 And that day Gad came to David and said to him, "Go up and build an altar to Yahweh on the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite." 19 So David went up at the word of Gad, just as Yahweh had commanded.

20 When Araunah looked out and saw the king and his servants coming toward him, he went out and bowed facedown before the king. 21 "Why has my lord the king come to his servant?" Araunah said.

"To buy your threshing floor," David replied, "that I may build an altar to Yahweh, so that the plague upon the people may be halted."

22 Araunah said to David, "May my lord the king take whatever seems good to him and offer it up. Here are the oxen for a burnt offering and the threshing sledges and ox yokes for the wood. 23 O king, Araunah gives all these to the king." He also said to the king, "May Yahweh your God accept you."

24 "No," replied the king, "I insist on paying a price, for I will not offer to Yahweh my God burnt offerings that cost me nothing." So David bought the threshing floor and the oxen for 1¼ pounds of silver. 25 And there he built an altar to Yahweh and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings.

Then Yahweh answered the prayers on behalf of the land, and the plague upon Israel was halted.

- **2SA 24:10 [HEART]** David's heart struck him after the census, the same words as when he cut Saul's robe, 1 Samuel 24:5.
- **2SA 24:13 [TEXT]** THREE OR SEVEN? The standard Hebrew text says seven years of famine. The Greek and 1 Chronicles 21:12 say three, and this Bible follows them.
- **2SA 24:15 [MIRACLE]** Angel of Yahweh stretched out hand to destroy Jerusalem; stopped at the threshing floor
- **2SA 24:16 [NOTE]** ENOUGH! God speaks these words to the angel, so they print red. 1 Chronicles 21:16 says David saw the angel with a drawn sword over Jerusalem.
- **2SA 24:18 [FIELD NOTES]** Solomon later built the temple on this threshing floor, 2 Chronicles 3:1. See the Araunah's Threshing Floor Field Notes page, p.537.
- **2SA 24:24 [NOTABLE]** Araunah offered his land and his oxen for free. David said no. Giving God what costs us nothing is not really giving. The temple was later built on this very spot, 2 Chronicles 3:1.
- **2SA 24:24 [NOTE]** 1 Chronicles 21:25 says about 15 pounds of gold for the site. Many think Samuel gives the price of the floor and oxen, and Chronicles the price of the whole hilltop.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

ARAUNAH'S THRESHING FLOOR

2 SAMUEL 24:16 TO 25 · 1 CHRONICLES 21:15 TO 22:1 · 2 CHRONICLES 3:1 · GENESIS 22:2



The Foundation Stone, the top of the rock under the Dome of the Rock in Jerusalem. The building around it is from 691 AD, and the lamp and screens are modern. Photo Virtutepetens, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A threshing floor was a flat, open place on a windy hill where farmers beat grain loose and tossed it in the air so the wind blew the chaff away. Araunah the Jebusite had one on the hill north of the City of David.

HOW OLD IT IS

The rock itself is natural bedrock. The bare rock top shown here is the highest point of the Temple Mount and is often called the Foundation Stone.

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

The angel stopped at Araunah's threshing floor, 24:16. David bought it and built an altar, 24:24 to 25. Solomon built the temple there, on Mount Moriah, 2 Chronicles 3:1, the same name as the land where Abraham offered Isaac, Genesis 22:2.

THE TRADITION

Jewish tradition says the Holy of Holies stood on the Foundation Stone, and many think the altar or the threshing floor was near it.

WHY NOBODY HAS DUG

Digging on the Temple Mount is not allowed, because it is holy to Jews and Muslims, so scholars still debate exactly where the temple and David's altar stood.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

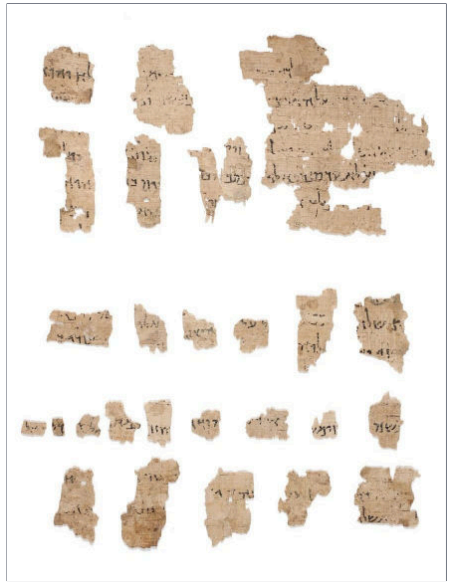
No sign marks David's altar. What is sure is that the temple stood on this hill, 2 Chronicles 3:1.

BOOK 11 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

1 KINGS

The King Solomon Show

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Jeremiah wrote Kings. Many scholars think a writer during the exile put it together from older records the book names, like the Book of the Acts of Solomon, 11:41.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About 120 years, from David's last days to the death of Ahab and the start of his son Ahaziah's reign.
DATE	About 970 to 850 BC. Solomon reigned forty years, 11:42, and the kingdom split in two about 930 BC.
WRITTEN TO	God's people, most likely in exile, to show why the kingdoms fell: their kings turned away from God.
KEY VERSE	1 Kings 9:4 to 5. As for you, if you walk before Me as your father David walked, with integrity of heart and uprightness, I will establish your royal throne.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF KINGS
These pieces of papyrus, a kind of paper made from a tall water plant, come from 6QpapKings, a scroll of Kings found in Cave 6 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. It was copied about 150 to 75 BC, more than a thousand years older than the oldest complete Hebrew Bibles, and it is one of the oldest copies of Kings known. Its pieces hold bits of 1 Kings 3, 12 and 22 and of 2 Kings 5 to 10.

Pieces of two more Kings scrolls were found at Qumran, in Caves 4 and 5. The old Greek Bible's Kings is different in places. It has extra passages in 1 Kings 2, 12 and 16, and it puts chapters 20 and 21 in the other order.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

1 Kings starts in Jerusalem, where Solomon builds the temple and rules a kingdom that reaches from the Euphrates River toward Egypt. After the split, Judah stays in the south with Jerusalem. Israel in the north rules from Shechem, then Tirzah, then the new city of Samaria. Elijah's story moves from Gilead to a brook, to Zarephath on the coast of Sidon, to Mount Carmel, to Jezreel, and all the way south to Mount Horeb.

What Was Going Wrong

A FIGHT FOR THE THRONE. Adonijah tried to make himself king before David died 1:5 to 10.
TOO MANY WIVES. Solomon's 700 wives turned his heart to other gods 11:1 to 4.
CHILD SACRIFICE. Solomon built a high place for Molech, the god whose worship burned children 11:7. Hiel rebuilt Jericho at the cost of his oldest and youngest sons. Many think he sacrificed them; others think Joshua's curse struck them 16:34.
A HARSH KING. Rehoboam promised an even heavier yoke, and ten tribes walked away 12:14 to 16.
GOLDEN CALVES. Jeroboam set up calves at Bethel and Dan so his people would not go to Jerusalem 12:28 to 30.
KINGS KILLING KINGS. Baasha, Zimri and Omri all took the throne by force 15:27, 16:9 to 10, 16:16 to 18.
BAAL AND JEZEBEL. Ahab married Jezebel, built a temple for Baal, and she killed the prophets of Yahweh 16:31 to 32, 18:4.
MURDER FOR A VINEYARD. Jezebel had Naboth stoned so Ahab could take his land 21:8 to 16.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Kings is the story of the wisest king who ever lived and how he fell. David is old, and Solomon takes the throne. God offers Solomon anything, and he asks for wisdom. He builds the temple, and God's glory fills it. Kings and queens come to hear him, and gold pours in. But Solomon's many wives turn his heart to other gods. After he dies, the kingdom splits in two: Israel in the north, Judah in the south. Israel's kings get worse and worse, until Ahab and Jezebel make Baal the national god. Then a prophet named Elijah shows up. He stops the rain, calls down fire on Mount Carmel, runs for his life, and hears God in a whisper. Near the end of the book, Ahab dies in battle, just as God's prophets said.

1 Kings at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**SOLOMON TAKES THE THRONE** David's last days and a new king.
CH 3 to 4	**WISDOM FROM HEAVEN** Solomon asks for an understanding heart.
CH 5 to 8	**THE TEMPLE** Built, filled with glory and dedicated.
CH 9 to 11	**GLORY AND FALL** Gold, Sheba, and a heart turned away.
CH 12 to 16	**THE KINGDOM SPLITS** Two kingdoms and a parade of kings.
CH 17 to 22	**ELIJAH AND AHAB** Fire from heaven and a stolen vineyard.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 KINGS 10:1 TO 10 The queen of Sheba came from far away to hear Solomon's wisdom. Jesus said, One greater than Solomon is here, Matthew 12:42.

1 KINGS 8:10 TO 11 God's glory filled the temple. John says the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we saw His glory, John 1:14. Jesus called His body a temple, John 2:19 to 21.

1 KINGS 17:8 TO 24 Elijah fed a widow and raised her son. Jesus pointed to this widow, Luke 4:25 to 26, and raised a widow's only son at Nain, Luke 7:11 to 17.

GOD'S NAMES IN 1 KINGS

Yahweh, again and again, Yahweh of Hosts, 18:15, and Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, 18:36. On Carmel the people shout, Yahweh, He is God! 18:39. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in 1 Kings

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	2:35
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (28)	2:27, 3:12-13, 4:21, 4:24-25, 4:30-31, 6:14, 8:29 and 34 more
THE HEART (9)	3:9, 8:39, 8:61, 9:4, 10:24, 11:4, 11:9 and 2 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (10)	9:15, 11:40, 12:29, 14:25-26, 16:16, 16:28-29, 19:15-16 and 1 more
MIRACLES (12)	3:5-8, 3:10-11, 3:14, 8:10-11, 9:2-3, 13:4, 13:6 and 10 more
DEMONIC (21)	9:6, 9:9, 11:2-3, 11:5-8, 11:10, 11:33, 13:32-34 and 15 more
NOTABLE (2)	1:39, 8:27
GOD SPEAKING (80 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (340 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

1, 2, 3 AND 4 KINGS

In old Greek and Latin Bibles, 1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings were counted as four books of Kingdoms or Kings, because they tell one long story. That makes this book the Third Book of the Kings. The old Greek Bible named it 3 Kingdoms, and Latin Bibles named it 3 Kings. The King James calls it The First Book of the Kings, commonly called The Third Book of the Kings.

AHAB IN STONE

An Assyrian king's stone names Ahab the Israelite and his 2,000 chariots. See the Kurkh Monolith page.

FIRE ON CARMEL

Elijah soaked his altar with water, and fire from heaven burned it all up, 18:38.

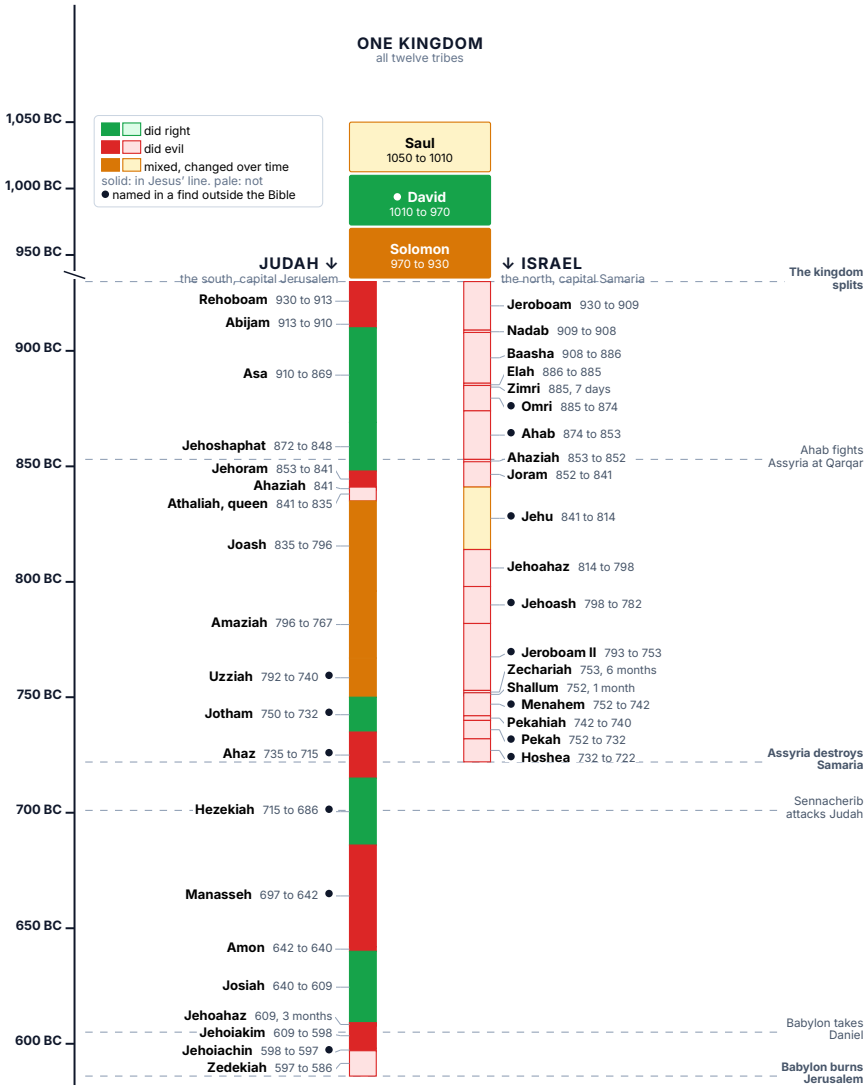
How Did It Turn Out?

The kingdom ended split in two, and Ahab died just as Elijah said. Next comes 2 Kings, where Elijah goes up in a whirlwind and both kingdoms fall.

SAMUEL · KINGS · CHRONICLES

The Kings of Israel and Judah

Who ruled, for how long, and how God judged them



HOW TO READ IT Time runs down the page. Each bar is one reign. Green kings did what was right, red did evil, and gold started one way and ended another.

FOUND OUTSIDE THE BIBLE A dot means the king is named on a stone, seal or royal record found by archaeologists, like the Tel Dan Stele, the Black Obelisk or Hezekiah's seal.

JESUS' FAMILY LINE Solid bars are kings in Jesus' family line through Joseph, Matthew 1. Matthew skips Ahaziah, Joash, Amaziah and Jehoiakim, but they were still in the line.

TWO KINGS AT ONCE Some sons ruled beside their fathers for a few years, so some dates overlap. That is why the numbers in Kings can be hard to add up.

Dates are approximate. Manasseh did great evil but repented late in life, 2 Chronicles 33:12 to 13. Tibni, who fought Omri for the throne, is left out. Shallum ruled one month, and the Bible gives no verdict on him.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

King David is old and cold, and his son Adonijah throws himself a party and says, I will be king. Nathan the prophet and Bathsheba hurry to remind David of his promise. David says, Solomon will be king, today. Trumpets blow, the people shout, and Adonijah's party guests suddenly remember they have other plans.

ABISHAG CARES FOR DAVID

1 Now King David was old and well along
in years, and though they covered him
with blankets, he could not keep warm. 2
So his servants said to him, "Let us search
for a young virgin for our lord the king, to
attend to him and care for him and lie by
his side to keep him warm."

3 Then they searched throughout Israel for
a beautiful girl, and they found Abishag
the Shunammite and brought her to the
king. 4 The girl was unsurpassed in
beauty; she cared for the king and served
him, but he had no relations with her.

ADONIJAH USURPS THE KINGDOM

5 At that time Adonijah, David's son by
Haggith, began to exalt himself, saying, "I
will be king!" And he acquired chariots
and horsemen and fifty men to run ahead
of him.

6 (His father had never once reprimanded
him by saying, "Why do you act this way?"
Adonijah was also very handsome, born
next after Absalom.)

7 So Adonijah conferred with Joab son of
Zeruiah and with Abiathar the priest, who
supported him. 8 But Zadok the priest, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, Nathan the
prophet, Shimei, Rei, and David's mighty
men would not join Adonijah.

9 And Adonijah sacrificed sheep, oxen,
and fattened calves near the stone of Zoheleth, which is next to En-rogel. He invited all his royal brothers and all the men
of Judah who were servants of the king.

10 But he did not invite Nathan the prophet,
Benaiah, the mighty men, or his brother
Solomon.

NATHAN AND BATHSHEBA BEFORE DAVID

11 Then Nathan said to Bathsheba the
mother of Solomon, "Have you not heard
that Adonijah son of Haggith has become
king, and our lord David does not know it?
12 Now please, come and let me advise
you. Save your own life and the life of
your son Solomon. 13 Go at once to King
David and say, 'My lord the king, did you
not swear to your maidservant, "Surely
your son Solomon will reign after me, and
he will sit on my throne"? Why then has
Adonijah become king?' 14 Then, while you
are still there speaking with the king, I will
come in after you and confirm your
words."

15 So Bathsheba went to see the king in his
bedroom. Since the king was very old,
Abishag the Shunammite was serving him.
16 And Bathsheba bowed down in homage
to the king, who asked, "What is your desire?"

17 "My lord," she replied, "you yourself
swore to your maidservant by Yahweh
your God: 'Surely your son Solomon will
reign after me, and he will sit on my
throne.' 18 But now, behold, Adonijah has
become king, and you, my lord the king,
do not know it. 19 And he has sacrificed an
abundance of oxen, fattened calves, and
sheep, and has invited all the other sons
of the king, as well as Abiathar the priest
and Joab the commander of the army. But
he has not invited your servant Solomon.
20 And as for you, my lord the king, the
eyes of all Israel are upon you to tell them
who will sit on the throne of my lord the
king after him. 21 Otherwise, when my lord
the king rests with his fathers, I and my
son Solomon will be counted as criminals."

22 And just then, while Bathsheba was still
speaking with the king, Nathan the
prophet arrived. 23 So the king was told,
"Nathan the prophet is here." And Nathan
went in and bowed facedown before the
king.

■ **1KI 1:1 [NOTE]** THIRD BOOK OF THE KINGS. 1 and 2 Kings were once one book. 1 Kings picks up near the end of David's life, about 970 BC.
■ **1KI 1:5 [NOTE]** ADONIJAH was David's fourth son, born after Absalom, 2 Samuel 3:4. His older brothers Amnon and Absalom were dead, and Kileab is never heard of again, so he thought the throne was his.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

24 "My lord the king," said Nathan, "did you
say, 'Adonijah will reign after me, and he
will sit on my throne'? 25 For today he has
gone down and sacrificed an abundance
of oxen, fattened calves, and sheep, and
has invited all the sons of the king, the
commanders of the army, and Abiathar
the priest. And behold, they are eating
and drinking before him, saying, 'Long live
King Adonijah!' 26 But me your servant he
has not invited, nor Zadok the priest, nor
Benaiah son of Jehoiada, nor your servant
Solomon. 27 Has my lord the king let this
happen without informing your servant
who should sit on the throne after my lord
the king?"

DAVID RENEWS HIS OATH TO BATHSHEBA

28 Then King David said, "Call in
Bathsheba for me." So she came into the
king's presence and stood before him.

29 And the king swore an oath, saying, "As
surely as Yahweh lives, who has re-
deemed my life from all distress, 30 I will
carry out this very day exactly what I
swore to you by Yahweh, the God of Is-
rael: Surely your son Solomon will reign
after me, and he will sit on my throne in
my place."

31 Bathsheba bowed facedown in homage
to the king and said, "May my lord King
David live forever!"

SOLOMON ANOINTED KING // 1 CHRONICLES 29:21–25

32 Then King David said, "Call in for me
Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, and
Benaiah son of Jehoiada." So they came
before the king.

33 "Take my servants with you," said the
king. "Set my son Solomon on my own
mule and take him down to Gihon. 34 There
Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet
are to anoint him king over Israel. You are
to blow the ram's horn and declare, 'Long
live King Solomon!' 35 Then you shall go
up with him, and he is to come and sit on
my throne and reign in my place. For I
have appointed him ruler over Israel and
Judah."

36 "Amen," replied Benaiah son of Je-
hoiada. "May Yahweh, the God of my lord
the king, so declare it. 37 Just as Yahweh
was with my lord the king, so may He be
with Solomon and make his throne even
greater than that of my lord King David."

38 Then Zadok the priest, Nathan the
prophet, and Benaiah son of Jehoiada,
along with the Cherethites and Pelethites,
went down and set Solomon on King
David's mule, and they escorted him to Gi-
hon. 39 Zadok the priest took the horn of
oil from the tabernacle and anointed
Solomon. Then they blew the ram's horn,
and all the people proclaimed, "Long live
King Solomon!"

40 All the people followed him, playing
flutes and rejoicing with such a great joy
that the earth was split by the sound.

ADONIJAH LEARNS OF SOLOMON'S KINGSHIP

41 Now Adonijah and all his guests were
finishing their feast when they heard the
sound of the ram's horn. "Why is the city
in such a loud uproar?" asked Joab.

42 As he was speaking, suddenly Jonathan
the son of Abiathar the priest arrived.
"Come in," said Adonijah, "for you are a
man of valor. You must be bringing good
news."

43 "Not at all," Jonathan replied. "Our lord
King David has made Solomon king. 44
And with Solomon, the king has sent
Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, and
Benaiah son of Jehoiada, along with the
Cherethites and Pelethites, and they have
set him on the king's mule. 45 Zadok the
priest and Nathan the prophet have
anointed him king at Gihon, and they have
gone up from there with rejoicing that
rings out in the city. That is the noise you
hear.

46 Moreover, Solomon has taken his seat
on the royal throne.

47 The king's servants have also gone to
congratulate our lord King David, saying,
'May your God make the name of
Solomon more famous than your own
name, and may He make his throne
greater than your throne.'

1KI 1:39 [NOTABLE] Solomon's anointing establishes him as David's successor and stops Adonijah's coup

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

And the king has bowed in worship on his bed, 48 saying, 'Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel! Today He has provided one to sit on my throne, and my eyes have seen it.'"

49 At this, all the guests of Adonijah arose in terror and scattered. 50 But Adonijah, in fear of Solomon, got up and went to take hold of the horns of the altar.

51 It was reported to Solomon: "Behold, Adonijah fears King Solomon, and he has taken hold of the horns of the altar, saying, 'Let King Solomon first swear to me not to put his servant to the sword.'"

52 And Solomon replied, "If he is a man of character, not a single hair of his will fall to the ground. But if evil is found in him, he will die."

53 So King Solomon summoned Adonijah down from the altar, and he came and bowed down before King Solomon, who said to him, "Go to your home."

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

David gives Solomon his last advice: be strong, keep God's law, and deal with a few old enemies. Then David dies. Adonijah asks to marry David's last companion, Abishag, and Solomon sees it as a grab for the throne. Adonijah, Joab and Shimei are put to death, and the kingdom is firmly in Solomon's hands.

DAVID INSTRUCTS SOLOMON // PSALM 37:1–40

1 As the time drew near for David to die, he charged his son Solomon, 2 "I am about to go the way of all the earth. So be strong and prove yourself a man. 3 And keep the charge of Yahweh your God to walk in His ways and to keep His statutes, commandments, ordinances, and decrees, as written in the Law of Moses, so that you may prosper in all you do and wherever you turn, 4 and so that Yahweh may fulfill His promise to me: 'If your descendants take heed to walk faithfully before Me with all their heart and soul, you will never fail to have a man on the throne of Israel.'

5 Moreover, you know what Joab son of Zeruiah did to me—what he did to Abner son of Ner and Amasa son of Jether, the two commanders of the armies of Israel. He killed them in peacetime to avenge the blood of war. He stained with the blood of war the belt around his waist and the sandals on his feet. 6 So act according to your wisdom, and do not let his gray head go down to Sheol in peace.

7 But show loving devotion to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them be among those who eat at your table, because they stood by me when I fled from your brother Absalom.

8 Keep an eye on Shimei the son of Gera, the Benjamite from Bahurim who is with you. He called down bitter curses against me on the day I went to Mahanaim, but when he came down to meet me at the Jordan, I swore to him by Yahweh: 'I will never put you to the sword.' 9 Now therefore, do not hold him guiltless, for you are a wise man. You know what you ought to do to him to bring his gray head down to Sheol in blood."

DAVID'S REIGN AND DEATH // 1 CHRONICLES 29:26–30

10 Then David rested with his fathers and was buried in the City of David. 11 The length of David's reign over Israel was forty years—seven years in Hebron and thirty-three years in Jerusalem.

12 So Solomon sat on the throne of his father David, and his kingdom was firmly established.

THE EXECUTION OF ADONIJAH

13 Now Adonijah son of Haggith went to Bathsheba the mother of Solomon, and she asked, "Do you come in peace?"

"Yes, in peace," he replied. 14 Then he said, "I have something to tell you."

"Say it," she answered.

15 "You know that the kingship was mine," he said. "All Israel expected that I should reign, but the kingship has turned to my brother, for it has come to him from Yahweh. 16 So now I have just one request of you; do not deny me."

"State your request," she told him.

■ **1KI 2:5 [NOTE]** JOAB killed Abner and Amasa during times of peace, 2 Samuel 3:27 and 20:10. David never punished him, and he left it to Solomon.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

17 Adonijah replied, "Please speak to King
Solomon, since he will not turn you down.
Let him give me Abishag the Shunammite
as my wife."

18 "Very well," Bathsheba replied. "I will
speak to the king for you."

19 So Bathsheba went to King Solomon to
speak to him for Adonijah. The king stood
up to greet her, bowed to her, and sat
down on his throne. Then the king had a
throne brought for his mother, who sat
down at his right hand.

20 "I have just one small request of you,"
she said. "Do not deny me."

"Make your request, my mother," the king
replied, "for I will not deny you."

21 So Bathsheba said, "Let Abishag the
Shunammite be given to your brother
Adonijah as his wife."

22 King Solomon answered his mother,
"Why do you request Abishag the Shu-
nammite for Adonijah? Since he is my
older brother, you might as well request
the kingdom for him and for Abiathar the
priest and for Joab son of Zeruiah!"

23 Then King Solomon swore by Yahweh:
"May God punish me, and ever so se-
verely, if Adonijah has not made this re-
quest at the expense of his life. 24 And
now, as surely as Yahweh lives—the One
who established me, who set me on the
throne of my father David, and who
founded for me a dynasty as He
promised—surely Adonijah shall be put to
death today!"

25 So King Solomon gave orders to Bena-
iah son of Jehoiada, and he struck down
Adonijah and he died.

26 Then the king said to Abiathar the
priest, "Go back to your fields in Anathoth.
Even though you deserve to die, I will not
put you to death at this time, since you
carried the ark of the Lord Yahweh before
my father David, and you suffered through
all that my father suffered." 27 So Solomon
banished Abiathar from the priesthood of
Yahweh and thus fulfilled the word that
Yahweh had spoken at Shiloh against the
house of Eli.

THE EXECUTION OF JOAB

28 When the news reached Joab, who had
conspired with Adonijah but not with Ab-
salom, he fled to the tent of Yahweh and
took hold of the horns of the altar.

29 It was reported to King Solomon: "Joab
has fled to the tent of Yahweh and is now
beside the altar."

So Solomon sent Benaiah son of Je-
hoiada, saying, "Go, strike him down!"

30 And Benaiah entered the tent of Yahweh
and said to Joab, "The king says, 'Come
out!'"

But Joab replied, "No, I will die here."

So Benaiah relayed the message to the
king, saying, "This is how Joab answered
me."

31 And the king replied, "Do just as he
says. Strike him down and bury him, and
so remove from me and from the house of
my father the innocent blood that Joab
shed. 32 Yahweh will bring his bloodshed
back upon his own head, for without the
knowledge of my father David he struck
down two men more righteous and better
than he when he put to the sword Abner
son of Ner, commander of Israel's army,
and Amasa son of Jether, commander of
Judah's army. 33 Their blood will come
back upon the heads of Joab and his de-
scendants forever; but for David, his de-
scendants, his house, and his throne,
there shall be peace from Yahweh for-
ever."

34 So Benaiah son of Jehoiada went up,
struck down Joab, and killed him. He was
buried at his own home in the wilderness.
35 And the king appointed Benaiah son of
Jehoiada in Joab's place over the army,
and he appointed Zadok the priest in
Abiathar's place.

THE EXECUTION OF SHIMEI

36 Then the king summoned Shimei and
said to him, "Build a house for yourself in
Jerusalem and live there, but do not go
anywhere else. 37 On the day you go out

1KI 2:27 [FULFILLS] Eli's family line would be cut off and lose its strength ← 1SA 2:31-33 p.440
1KI 2:35 [FULFILLS] A faithful and lasting High Priest would arise ← 1SA 2:35 · MEDIUM p.441

THE HEART MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and cross the Kidron Valley, know for sure that you will die; your blood will be on your own head."

38 "The sentence is fair," Shimei replied. "Your servant will do as my lord the king has spoken." And Shimei lived in Jerusalem for a long time.

39 After three years, however, two of Shimei's slaves ran away to Achish son of Maacah, king of Gath. And Shimei was told, "Look, your slaves are in Gath."

40 So Shimei saddled his donkey and set out to Achish at Gath in search of his slaves, and he brought them back from Gath.

41 When Solomon was told that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath and had returned, 42 the king summoned Shimei and said to him, "Did I not make you swear by Yahweh and warn you, 'On the day you leave and go elsewhere, know for sure that you will die'? And you told me, 'The sentence is fair; I will comply.' 43 So why have you not kept your oath to Yahweh and the command that I gave you?"

44 The king also said, "You know in your heart all the evil that you did to my father David. Therefore Yahweh will bring your evil back upon your head. 45 But King Solomon will be blessed and David's throne will remain secure before Yahweh forever."

46 Then the king commanded Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he went out and struck Shimei down, and he died. Thus the kingdom was firmly established in the hand of Solomon.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

God appears to Solomon in a dream and says, Ask for anything. Solomon asks for an understanding heart to lead God's people. God is so pleased He throws in riches and honor too. Then two women fight over one baby, and Solomon calls for a sword. The real mother is the one who would rather give her baby away than see him hurt.

SOLOMON'S PRAYER FOR WISDOM // 2 CHRONICLES 1:1–13; PSALM 45:1–17; PSALM 72:1–20

1 Later, Solomon formed an alliance with Pharaoh king of Egypt by marrying his daughter. Solomon brought her to the City of David until he had finished building his palace and the house of Yahweh, as well as the wall around Jerusalem.

2 The people, however, were still sacrificing on the high places because a house for the Name of Yahweh had not yet been built. 3 And Solomon loved Yahweh and walked in the statutes of his father David, except that he sacrificed and burned incense on the high places.

4 Now the king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there, for it was the great high place. Solomon offered a thousand burnt offerings on the altar there.

5 One night at Gibeon Yahweh appeared to Solomon in a dream, and God said, "Ask, and I will give it to you!"

6 Solomon replied, "You have shown much loving devotion to Your servant, my father David, because he walked before You in faithfulness, righteousness, and uprightness of heart. And You have maintained this loving devotion by giving him a son to sit on his throne this very day.

7 And now, O Yahweh my God, You have made Your servant king in my father David's place. But I am only a little child, not knowing how to go out or come in. 8 Your servant is here among the people You have chosen, a people too numerous to count or number.

9 Therefore give Your servant an understanding heart to judge Your people and to discern between good and evil. For who is able to govern this great people of Yours?"

10 Now it pleased the Lord that Solomon had made this request. 11 So God said to him, "Since you have asked for this in-

- **1KI 3:5 [MIRACLE]** God appears to Solomon in a dream at Gibeon
- **1KI 3:9 [HEART]** Solomon asked God for an understanding heart to judge the people.
- **1KI 3:9 [NOTABLE]** God said Ask, and Solomon could have asked for money, long life or the death of his enemies. He asked for wisdom to serve people well. God liked that prayer so much He gave him the rest too.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

stead of requesting long life or wealth for yourself or death for your enemies—but you have asked for discernment to administer justice— 12 behold, I will do what you have asked. I will give you a wise and discerning heart, so that there will never have been another like you, nor will there ever be.

13 Moreover, I will give you what you did not request—both riches and honor—so that during all your days no man in any kingdom will be your equal. 14 So if you walk in My ways and keep My statutes and commandments, just as your father David did, I will prolong your days."

15 Then Solomon awoke, and indeed it had been a dream. So he returned to Jerusalem, stood before the ark of the covenant of the Lord, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. Then he held a feast for all his servants.

SOLOMON JUDGES WISELY

16 At that time two prostitutes came to the king and stood before him.

17 One woman said, "Please, my lord, this woman and I live in the same house, and I gave birth while she was in the house. 18 On the third day after I gave birth, this woman also had a baby. We were alone, with no one in the house but the two of us. 19 During the night this woman's son died because she rolled over on him. 20 So she got up in the middle of the night and took my son from my side while I was asleep. She laid him in her bosom and put her dead son at my bosom. 21 The next morning, when I got up to nurse my son, I discovered he was dead. But when I examined him, I realized that he was not the son I had borne."

22 "No," said the other woman, "the living one is my son and the dead one is your son."

But the first woman insisted, "No, the dead one is yours and the living one is mine." So they argued before the king.

23 Then the king replied, "This woman says, 'My son is alive and yours is dead,' but that woman says, 'No, your son is dead and mine is alive.'"

24 The king continued, "Bring me a sword." So they brought him a sword, 25 and the king declared, "Cut the living child in two and give half to one and half to the other."

26 Then the woman whose son was alive spoke to the king because she yearned with compassion for her son. "Please, my lord," she said, "give her the living baby. Do not kill him!"

But the other woman said, "He will be neither mine nor yours. Cut him in two!"

27 Then the king gave his ruling: "Give the living baby to the first woman. By no means should you kill him; she is his mother."

28 When all Israel heard of the judgment the king had given, they stood in awe of him, for they saw that the wisdom of God was in him to administer justice.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon's officials, his twelve district governors, and his daily grocery list, which is huge. Judah and Israel are as many as the sand by the sea, eating, drinking and happy. Solomon's wisdom is greater than all the wise men of the east, and he speaks 3,000 proverbs and 1,005 songs.

SOLOMON'S PRINCES

1 So King Solomon ruled over Israel, 2 and these were his chief officials:

Azariah son of Zadok was the priest;
3 Elihoreph and Ahijah, the sons of Shisha, were secretaries;
Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the recorder;
4 Benaiah son of Jehoiada was in charge of the army;
Zadok and Abiathar were priests;
5 Azariah son of Nathan was in charge of the governors;

1KI 3:12 [PROPHECY] God promised Solomon unmatched wisdom plus riches and honor → 1KI 4:30-31; 1KI 10:23 p.550

1KI 3:12 [HEART] God gave Solomon what he asked for: a wise and discerning heart, like no one before or after him.

1KI 3:16 [NOTE] TWO PROSTITUTES. Even the poorest and most looked down on people could bring their case to the king, and Solomon gave them justice.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Zabud son of Nathan was a priest and adviser to the king;
6 Ahishar was in charge of the palace;
and Adoniram son of Abda was in charge of the forced labor.

SOLOMON'S TWELVE OFFICERS

7 Solomon had twelve governors over all Israel to provide food for the king and his household. Each one would arrange provisions for one month of the year, 8 and these were their names:

Ben-hur in the hill country of Ephraim;
9 Ben-deker in Makaz, in Shaalbim, in Beth-shemesh, and in Elon-beth-hanan;
10 Ben-hesed in Arubboth (Socoh and all the land of Hepher belonged to him);
11 Ben-abinadab in Naphath-dor (Taphath, a daughter of Solomon, was his wife);
12 Baana son of Ahilud in Taanach, in Megiddo, and in all of Beth-shean next to Zarethan below Jezreel, from Beth-shean to Abel-meholah and on past Jokmeam;
13 Ben-geber in Ramoth-gilead (the villages of Jair son of Manasseh in Gilead belonged to him, as well as the region of Argob in Bashan with its sixty great cities with walls and bronze bars);
14 Ahinadab son of Iddo in Mahanaim;
15 Ahimaaz in Naphtali (he had married Basemath, a daughter of Solomon);
16 Baana son of Hushai in Asher and in Aloth;
17 Jehoshaphat son of Paruah in Issachar;
18 Shimei son of Ela in Benjamin;
19 Geber son of Uri in the land of Gilead, including the territories of Sihon king of the Amorites and of Og king of Bashan.

There was also one governor in the land of Judah.

SOLOMON'S PROSPERITY

20 The people of Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand on the seashore, and they were eating and drinking and rejoicing. 21 And Solomon reigned over all the kingdoms from the Euphrates to the land of the Philistines, as far as the border of Egypt. These kingdoms offered tribute and served Solomon all the days of his life.

22 Solomon's provisions for a single day were 180 bushels of fine flour, 360 bushels of meal, 23 ten fat oxen, twenty range oxen, and a hundred sheep, as well as deer, gazelles, roebucks, and fattened poultry. 24 For Solomon had dominion over everything west of the Euphrates—over all the kingdoms from Tiphsah to Gaza—and he had peace on all sides. 25 Throughout the days of Solomon, Judah and Israel dwelt securely from Dan to Beersheba, each man under his own vine and his own fig tree.

26 Solomon had 4,000 stalls for his chariot horses and 12,000 horses. 27 Each month the governors in turn provided food for King Solomon and all who came to his table. They saw to it that nothing was lacking. 28 Each one also brought to the required place their quotas of barley and straw for the chariot horses and other horses.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SOLOMON'S KINGDOM

How Big Was It?

1 KINGS 4:20 TO 34 · 9:15 TO 28 · 10:14 TO 29 · GENESIS 15:18 · 2 CHRONICLES 9:26

FROM THE EUPHRATES TO EGYPT

Solomon ruled over all the kingdoms from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines and the border of Egypt, 4:21. That is the land God promised Abraham, Genesis 15:18.

WHAT IT MEANS

Most scholars read this as a ring of smaller kingdoms that paid Solomon tribute, not land Israel lived on. Israel it-

1KI 4:21 [FULFILLS] The land from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates would belong to Abraham's descendants ← GEN 15:18 p.68

1KI 4:21 [NOTE] FROM THE EUPHRATES TO EGYPT. This matches the land God promised Abraham, Genesis 15:18. How big Solomon's kingdom really was is debated. See the Big Question pages Solomon's Kingdom, p.549.

1KI 4:24 [FULFILLS] David would have a son named Solomon, a man of peace who would build God's house ← 1CH 22:9-10 p.697

1KI 4:26 [TEXT] 4,000 OR 40,000? The standard Hebrew text says 40,000 stalls. Some Greek copies and 2 Chronicles 9:25 say 4,000, and this Bible follows them.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

self was still from Dan to Beersheba, 4:25.

THE RICHES

About 25 tons of gold a year, 10:14, plus gold from Ophir and gifts from Sheba, 9:28 and 10:10. Ships that came every three years with gold, silver, ivory, apes and peacocks, 10:22. Horses and chariots bought from Egypt and Kue, 10:28 to 29.

THE BUILDING

The temple, Solomon's palace, the House of the Forest of Lebanon, the wall of Jerusalem, and the cities of Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer, 9:15.

THE QUESTION

Was Solomon's kingdom really this big and rich? What do the diggers say?

WHY IT IS DEBATED

No writing from outside the Bible names Solomon. And the dates of buildings from his time are argued over by 50 to 100 years, which makes a big difference.

Every View

1 KINGS 9:15 · 10:1 TO 13 · 11:14 TO 25 · 2 SAMUEL 8

VIEW 1: A REAL KINGDOM, AS DESCRIBED

Many scholars, like Amihai Mazar and William Dever, think the gates of Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer, the big walls at Khirbet Qeiyafa and the big buildings in Jerusalem show a real kingdom with a strong king in the 900s BC. The finds fit the Bible's picture of a kingdom ruled from Jerusalem.

VIEW 2: SMALLER THAN IT SOUNDS

Some say Solomon was a real king, but his kingdom was smaller and poorer than later readers imagined. The words of 4:21 may describe a time of tribute from neighbors, not a big empire with an army in every land.

VIEW 3: A LOCAL CHIEFDOM

Israel Finkelstein and others in the low chronology school redate many big buildings to about 50 to 100 years later, the time of Omri and Ahab. They think Solomon's Jerusalem was a small hill town, and the golden age stories grew bigger later.

WHAT THE DIG SAYS SO FAR

Carbon dating at many sites has narrowed the debate. Many now place the six room gate at Gezer in the 900s BC. Khirbet Qeiyafa, a fortified town from about 1000 BC that many think was Judean, surprised many skeptics. The debate is not over.

WHY SILENCE IS NOT PROOF

Egypt and Assyria were weak in Solomon's day, so there were no great empires writing about their neighbors. Very little writing from that whole region in the 900s BC has survived at all.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

A kingdom called the House of David existed by the 800s BC, Tel Dan Stele. Israel had a royal family, a capital in Jerusalem and a temple. The size of Solomon's power is the question, not whether there was a kingdom.

SOLOMON'S WISDOM

29 And God gave Solomon wisdom, exceedingly deep insight, and largeness of heart, like the sand on the seashore. 30 Solomon's wisdom was greater than that of all the men of the East, greater than all the wisdom of Egypt. 31 He was wiser than all men—wiser than Ethan the Ezrahite, and wiser than Heman, Calcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol. And his fame spread throughout the surrounding nations.

32 Solomon composed three thousand proverbs, and his songs numbered a thousand and five. 33 He spoke of trees, from the cedar in Lebanon to the hyssop growing in the wall, and he taught about animals, birds, reptiles, and fish.

34 So men of all nations came to listen to Solomon's wisdom, sent by all the kings of the earth, who had heard of his wisdom.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Hiram king of Tyre was always David's friend, so Solomon asks him for cedar logs from Lebanon. Hiram floats them down the coast on rafts. Solomon pays in wheat and olive oil and drafts tens of thousands of workers to cut stone for the temple.

1KI 4:30 [FULFILLS] God promised Solomon unmatched wisdom plus riches and honor ← 1KI 3:12-13 p.548

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

PREPARATIONS FOR THE TEMPLE // 2 CHRONICLES 2:1–10

1 Now when Hiram king of Tyre heard that Solomon had been anointed king in his
father's place, he sent envoys to Solomon
for Hiram had always been a friend of
David.
2 And Solomon relayed this message to
Hiram:
3 "As you are well aware, due to the wars
waged on all sides against my father
David, he could not build a house for the
Name of Yahweh his God until Yahweh
had put his enemies under his feet. 4 But
now Yahweh my God has given me rest
on every side, and there is no adversary
or crisis.
5 So behold, I plan to build a house for the
Name of Yahweh my God, according
to what Yahweh said to my father
David: 'I will put your son on your
throne in your place, and he will build
the house for My Name.'
6 Now therefore, order that cedars of
Lebanon be cut down for me. My ser-
vants will be with your servants, and I
will pay your servants whatever wages
you set, for you know that there are
none among us as skilled in logging as
the Sidonians."

HIRAM'S REPLY TO SOLOMON // 2 CHRONICLES 2:11–18

7 When Hiram received Solomon's mes-
sage, he rejoiced greatly and said,
"Blessed be Yahweh this day! He has
given David a wise son over this great
people!" 8 Then Hiram sent a reply to
Solomon, saying:
"I have received your message; I will do
all you desire regarding the cedar and cy-
press timber. 9 My servants will haul the
logs from Lebanon to the Sea, and I will
float them as rafts by sea to the place you
specify. There I will separate the logs, and
you can take them away. And in ex-
change, you can meet my needs by pro-
viding my household with food."
10 So Hiram provided Solomon with all the
cedar and cypress timber he wanted, 11
and year after year Solomon would pro-
vide Hiram with 120,000 bushels of wheat
as food for his household, as well as
110,000 gallons of pure olive oil.
12 And Yahweh gave Solomon wisdom, as
He had promised him. There was peace
between Hiram and Solomon, and the two
of them made a treaty.

SOLOMON'S LABOR FORCE

13 Then King Solomon conscripted a labor
force of 30,000 men from all Israel. 14 He
sent them to Lebanon in monthly shifts of
10,000 men, so that they would spend one
month in Lebanon and two months at
home. And Adoniram was in charge of the
forced labor.
15 Solomon had 70,000 porters and 80,000
stonecutters in the mountains, 16 not in-
cluding his 3,300 foremen who super-
vised the workers.
17 And the king commanded them to
quarry large, costly stones to lay the
foundation of the temple with dressed
stones. 18 So Solomon's and Hiram's
builders, along with the Gebalites, quar-
ried the stone and prepared the timber
and stone for the construction of the tem-
ple.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon builds the temple, starting 480 years after the Exodus. The stones are cut at the quarry, so no hammer is heard at the building site. Inside it is all cedar and gold, with two giant cherubim in the Most Holy Place. Seven years later it is finished.

TEMPLE CONSTRUCTION BEGINS // 2 CHRONICLES 3:1–2

1 In the four hundred and eightieth year af-
ter the Israelites had come out of the land
of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's
reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv, the
second month, he began to build the
house of Yahweh.

■ **1KI 5:11 [TEXT]** HOW MUCH OIL? The standard Hebrew text says about 1,100 gallons of oil. The Greek and 2 Chronicles 2:10 say about 110,000 gallons, and this Bible follows them.
■ **1KI 5:16 [TEXT]** 3,300 OR 3,600? 2 Chronicles 2:18 says 3,600 foremen. But add the 550 chief officers in 9:23, and Kings has 3,850 in all. Chronicles has 3,600 plus 250 in 2 Chronicles 8:10, also 3,850. The two books count the same men in different groups.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

2 The house that King Solomon built for
Yahweh was 90 feet long, 30 feet wide,
and 45 feet high. 3 The portico at the front
of the main hall of the temple was 30 feet
long, extending across the width of the
temple and projecting out 15 feet in front
of the temple.

4 He also had narrow windows framed
high in the temple.

THE CHAMBERS

5 Against the walls of the temple and the
inner sanctuary, Solomon built a cham-
bered structure around the temple, in
which he constructed the side rooms. 6
The bottom floor was 7½ feet wide, the
middle floor 9 feet, and the third floor 10½
feet. He also placed offset ledges around
the outside of the temple, so that nothing
would be inserted into its walls.

7 The temple was constructed using fin-
ished stones cut at the quarry, so that no
hammer or chisel or any other iron tool
was heard in the temple while it was being
built.

8 The entrance to the bottom floor was on
the south side of the temple. A stairway
led up to the middle level, and from there
to the third floor.

9 So Solomon built the temple and finished
it, roofing it with beams and planks of
cedar. 10 He built chambers all along the
temple, each 7½ feet high and attached to
the temple with beams of cedar.

- **1KI 6:1 [NOTE]** 480 YEARS. Counting back from Solomon's fourth year, about 966 BC, puts the Exodus about 1446 BC. Many scholars date the Exodus about 1270 BC instead and read 480 as twelve generations of forty years. See the Big Question pages Who Wrote Kings?, p.566
- **1KI 6:2 [FIELD NOTES]** A temple with the same three room plan was found at Ain Dara in Syria. See the Solomon's Temple and Ain Dara Field Notes page, p.552 and the Big Question pages The Temple, p.552.
- **1KI 6:7 [NOTE]** NO HAMMER. The stones were cut and shaped at the quarry, so the building site stayed quiet. Many see a picture of God's quiet work in His people, 1 Peter 2:5.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

SOLOMON'S TEMPLE AND AIN DARA

1 KINGS 6:1 TO 38 · 7:13 TO 51 · 2 CHRONICLES 3 TO 4 · EZEKIEL 40 TO 42



Giant footprints carved into the doorway of the Ain Dara temple in Syria, photographed before the temple was damaged in 2018. Photo Verity Cridland, CC BY 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

No stone of Solomon's temple has ever been found. It stood on the Temple Mount, where nobody is allowed to dig. But a temple found at Ain Dara in northern Syria has almost the same floor plan, so scholars use it to picture what Solomon built.

HOW OLD IT IS

The Ain Dara temple was first built about 1300 BC and was rebuilt and used until about 740 BC. So it was standing in Solomon's day, about 960 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

A huge stone lion was found by chance in 1955. Feisal Seirafi dug there in the 1950s and 1960s, and Ali Abu Assaf uncovered the temple from 1980 to 1985. In 2018 bombs badly damaged it during the war in Syria.

THE SAME PLAN

Both temples had three rooms in a row: a porch, a main hall, and an inner room for the god. Both stood on a raised platform with two pillars at the front, like Jachin and Boaz, 7:21. Both had side rooms built against the outer walls, 6:5. Both were decorated with lions, cherubim like creatures, palm trees and flowers, 6:29 and 7:29.

THE FOOTPRINTS

Giant footprints, each about three feet long, are carved into the doorway, as if the god had walked in to live there. Israel's God did not need a footprint. His

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

glory filled His house in a cloud, 8:10 to 11.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Ain Dara was built for a pagan god, not for Yahweh, and it does not prove Solomon's temple was real. It shows that a temple like the one 1 Kings describes fits the time and place the Bible gives.

GOD'S PROMISE TO SOLOMON

11 Then the word of Yahweh came to Solomon, saying: 12 "As for this temple you are building, if you walk in My statutes, carry out My ordinances, and keep all My commandments by walking in them, I will fulfill through you the promise I made to your father David. 13 And I will dwell among the Israelites and will not abandon My people Israel."

THE TEMPLE'S INTERIOR // 2 CHRONICLES 3:5–9

14 So Solomon built the temple and finished it. 15 He lined the interior walls with cedar paneling from the floor of the temple to the ceiling, and he covered the floor with cypress boards.

16 He partitioned off the 30 feet at the rear of the temple with cedar boards from floor to ceiling to form within the temple an inner sanctuary, the Most Holy Place. 17 And the main hall in front of this room was 60 feet long.

18 The cedar paneling inside the temple was carved with gourds and open flowers. Everything was cedar; not a stone could be seen.

19 Solomon also prepared the inner sanctuary within the temple to set the ark of the covenant of Yahweh there. 20 The inner sanctuary was 30 feet long, 30 feet wide, and 30 feet high. He overlaid the inside with pure gold, and he also overlaid the altar of cedar.

21 So Solomon overlaid the inside of the temple with pure gold, and he extended gold chains across the front of the inner sanctuary, which was overlaid with gold. 22 So he overlaid with gold the whole interior of the temple, until everything was completely finished. He also overlaid with gold the entire altar that belonged to the inner sanctuary.

THE CHERUBIM // 2 CHRONICLES 3:10–13

23 In the inner sanctuary he made two cherubim, each 15 feet high, out of olive wood. 24 One wing of the first cherub was 7½ feet long, and the other wing was 7½ feet long as well. So the full wingspan was 15 feet. 25 The second cherub also measured 15 feet; both cherubim had the same size and shape, 26 and the height of each cherub was 15 feet.

27 And he placed the cherubim inside the innermost room of the temple. Since their wings were spread out, the wing of the first cherub touched one wall, while the wing of the second cherub touched the other wall, and in the middle of the room their wingtips touched. 28 He also overlaid the cherubim with gold.

29 Then he carved the walls all around the temple, in both the inner and outer sanctuaries, with carved engravings of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers. 30 And he overlaid the temple floor with gold in both the inner and outer sanctuaries.

THE DOORS

31 For the entrance to the inner sanctuary, Solomon constructed doors of olive wood with five-sided doorposts. 32 The double doors were made of olive wood, and he carved into them cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers and overlaid the cherubim and palm trees with hammered gold.

33 In the same way he made four-sided doorposts of olive wood for the sanctuary entrance. 34 The two doors were made of cypress wood, and each had two folding panels. 35 He carved into them cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers, and he overlaid them with gold hammered evenly over the carvings.

1KI 6:14 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this
→ ACTS 7:47 p.1752
1KI 6:14 [FULFILLS] David would have a son named Solomon, a man of peace who would build God's house
← 1CH 22:9-10 p.697

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE COURTYARD

36 Solomon built the inner courtyard with
three rows of dressed stone and one row
of trimmed cedar beams.

37 The foundation of the house of Yahweh
was laid in the fourth year of Solomon's
reign, in the month of Ziv. 38 In the
eleventh year, in the month of Bul, the
eighth month, the temple was finished in
every detail and according to every speci-
fication. So he built the temple in seven
years.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon spends thirteen years on his own palace, plus a great hall called the House of the Forest of Lebanon. A bronze worker named Huram makes two huge pillars, named Jachin and Boaz, a giant bronze basin called the Sea, ten bronze stands on wheels, and the rest of the temple tools.

SOLOMON'S PALACE COMPLEX

1 Solomon, however, took thirteen years to
complete the construction of his entire
palace.

2 He built the House of the Forest of
Lebanon 150 feet long, 75 feet wide, and
45 feet high, with four rows of cedar pil-
lars supporting the cedar beams.

3 The house was roofed with cedar above
the beams that rested on the
pillars—forty-five beams, fifteen per row.
4 There were three rows of high windows
facing one another in three tiers. 5 All the
doorways had rectangular frames, with
the openings facing one another in three
tiers.

6 Solomon made his colonnade 75 feet
long and 45 feet wide, with a portico in
front of it and a canopy with pillars in front
of the portico.

7 In addition, he built a hall for the throne,
the Hall of Justice, where he was to
judge. It was paneled with cedar from
floor to ceiling.

8 And the palace where Solomon would
live, set further back, was of similar con-
struction. He also made a palace like this
hall for Pharaoh's daughter, whom he had
married.

9 All these buildings were constructed with
costly stones, cut to size and trimmed
with saws inside and out from the founda-
tion to the eaves, and from the outside to
the great courtyard. 10 The foundations
were laid with large, costly stones, some
15 feet long and some 12 feet long. 11
Above these were costly stones, cut to
size, and cedar beams.

12 The great courtyard was surrounded by
three rows of dressed stone and a row of
trimmed cedar beams, as were the inner
courtyard and portico of the house of
Yahweh.

THE PILLARS AND CAPITALS // 2 CHRONICLES 3:14–17

13 Now King Solomon sent to bring Huram
from Tyre. 14 He was the son of a widow
from the tribe of Naphtali, and his father
was a man of Tyre, a craftsman in bronze.
Huram had great skill, understanding, and
knowledge for every kind of bronze work.
So he came to King Solomon and carried
out all his work.

15 He cast two pillars of bronze, each 27
feet high and 18 feet in circumference. 16
He also made two capitals of cast bronze
to set on top of the pillars, each capital 7½
feet high. 17 For the capitals on top of the
pillars he made a network of lattice, with
wreaths of chainwork, seven for each
capital.

18 Likewise, he made the pillars with two
rows of pomegranates around each grat-
ing to cover each capital atop the pillars.
19 And the capitals atop the pillars in the
portico were shaped like lilies, six feet
high. 20 On the capitals of both pillars, just
above the rounded projection next to the
network, were the two hundred pome-
granates in rows encircling each capital.

21 Thus he set up the pillars at the portico
of the temple. The pillar to the south he
named Jachin, and the pillar to the north
he named Boaz. 22 And the tops of the pil-
lars were shaped like lilies. So the work of
the pillars was completed.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE MOLTEN SEA // 2 CHRONICLES 4:1–5

23 He also made the Sea of cast metal. It
was circular in shape, measuring 15 feet
from rim to rim, 7½ feet in height, and 45
feet in circumference. 24 Below the rim, or-
namental buds encircled it, ten every half
yard all the way around the Sea, cast in
two rows as a part of the Sea.

25 The Sea stood on twelve oxen, three
facing north, three facing west, three fac-
ing south, and three facing east. The Sea
rested on them, with all their hindquarters
toward the center. 26 It was three inches
thick, and its rim was fashioned like the
brim of a cup, like a lily blossom. It could
hold 11,000 gallons.

THE TEN BRONZE STANDS

27 In addition, he made ten movable stands
of bronze, each six feet long, six feet
wide, and 4½ feet high.

28 This was the design of the stands: They
had side panels attached to uprights, 29
and on the panels between the uprights
were lions, oxen, and cherubim. On the
uprights was a pedestal above, and below
the lions and oxen were wreaths of
beveled work.

30 Each stand had four bronze wheels with
bronze axles and a basin resting on four
supports, with wreaths at each side. 31 The
opening to each stand inside the crown at
the top was 18 inches deep, with a round
opening like the design of a pedestal, 27
inches wide. And around its opening were
engravings, but the panels of the stands
were square, not round.

32 There were four wheels under the pan-
els, and the axles of the wheels were at-
tached to the stand; each wheel was 27
inches in diameter. 33 The wheels were
made like chariot wheels; their axles, rims,
spokes, and hubs were all of cast metal.

34 Each stand had four handles, one for
each corner, projecting from the stand. 35
At the top of each stand was a circular
band nine inches high. The supports and
panels were cast as a unit with the top of
the stand.

36 He engraved cherubim, lions, and palm
trees on the surfaces of the supports and
panels, wherever each had space, with
wreaths all around. 37 In this way he made
the ten stands, each with the same cast-
ing, dimensions, and shape.

THE TEN BRONZE BASINS // 2 CHRONICLES 4:6–8

38 He also made ten bronze basins, each
holding 220 gallons and measuring six
feet across, one basin for each of the ten
stands.

39 He set five stands on the south side of
the temple and five on the north, and he
put the Sea on the south side, at the
southeast corner of the temple.

COMPLETION OF THE BRONZE WORKS // 2
CHRONICLES 4:11–18

40 Additionally, Huram made the pots,
shovels, and sprinkling bowls.

So Huram finished all the work that he had
undertaken for King Solomon in the house
of Yahweh:

41 the two pillars;
the two bowl-shaped capitals atop the pil-
lars;
the two sets of network covering both
bowls of the capitals atop the pillars;
42 the four hundred pomegranates for the
two sets of network (two rows of
pomegranates for each network cov-
ering both the bowl-shaped capitals
atop the pillars);
43 the ten stands;
the ten basins on the stands;
44 the Sea;
the twelve oxen underneath the Sea;
45 and the pots, shovels, and sprinkling
bowls.

All the articles that Huram made for King
Solomon in the house of Yahweh were
made of burnished bronze. 46 The king
had them cast in clay molds in the plain of
the Jordan between Succoth and

■ **1KI 7:23 [NOTE]** 15 FEET ACROSS AND 45 AROUND. Some say this makes pi equal 3. Many think the 15 feet was measured across the outside of the rim and the 45 feet around the inside, under a rim three inches thick. Others say the numbers are simply rounded.

■ **1KI 7:26 [TEXT]** 11,000 OR 16,500 GALLONS? 2 Chronicles 4:5 says the Sea held about 16,500 gallons. Some think Chronicles gives how much it could hold when full, and Kings how much it usually held. Others think a copy slipped.

MIRACLES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Zarethan. 47 Solomon left all these articles unweighed, because there were so many. The weight of the bronze could not be determined.

COMPLETION OF THE GOLD FURNISHINGS // 2 CHRONICLES 4:19–22

48 Solomon also made all the furnishings for the house of Yahweh:

the golden altar;
the golden table on which was placed the Bread of the Presence;
49 the lampstands of pure gold in front of the inner sanctuary, five on the right side and five on the left;
the gold flowers, lamps, and tongs;
50 the pure gold basins, wick trimmers, sprinkling bowls, ladles, and censers;
and the gold hinges for the doors of the inner temple (that is, the Most Holy Place) as well as for the doors of the main hall of the temple.

51 So all the work that King Solomon had performed for the house of Yahweh was completed.

Then Solomon brought in the items his father David had dedicated—the silver, the gold, and the furnishings—and he placed them in the treasuries of the house of Yahweh.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests carry the ark into the Most Holy Place, and the cloud of God's glory fills the temple so thick the priests cannot keep working. Solomon prays a long prayer: heaven cannot contain You, much less this house, but please hear us when we pray toward it. Then a party with 22,000 oxen and 120,000 sheep.

THE ARK ENTERS THE TEMPLE // 2 CHRONICLES 5:1–14

1 At that time Solomon assembled before him in Jerusalem the elders of Israel—all the tribal heads and family leaders of the Israelites—to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from Zion, the City of David. 2 And all the men of Israel came together to King Solomon at the feast in the seventh month, the month of Ethanim.

3 When all the elders of Israel had arrived, the priests took up the ark, 4 and they brought up the ark of Yahweh and the Tent of Meeting with all its sacred furnishings. So the priests and Levites carried them up.

5 There, before the ark, King Solomon and the whole congregation of Israel who had assembled with him sacrificed so many sheep and oxen that they could not be counted or numbered.

6 Then the priests brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to its place in the inner sanctuary of the temple, the Most Holy Place, beneath the wings of the cherubim. 7 For the cherubim spread their wings over the place of the ark and overshadowed the ark and its poles.

8 The poles extended far enough that their ends were visible from the Holy Place in front of the inner sanctuary, but not from outside the Holy Place; and they are there to this day.

9 There was nothing in the ark except the two stone tablets that Moses had placed in it at Horeb, where Yahweh had made a covenant with the Israelites after they had come out of the land of Egypt.

10 And when the priests came out of the Holy Place, the cloud filled the house of Yahweh 11 so that the priests could not stand there to minister because of the cloud. For the glory of Yahweh filled the house of Yahweh.

SOLOMON BLESSES YAHWEH // 2 CHRONICLES 6:1–11

12 Then Solomon declared:

"Yahweh has said that He would dwell
in the thick cloud.
13 I have indeed built You an exalted
house,
a place for You to dwell forever."

■ **1KI 8:9 [NOTE]** ONLY THE TWO STONE TABLETS. Hebrews 9:4 says the ark once held a jar of manna and Aaron's staff too. By Solomon's day, only the tablets were left.
■ **1KI 8:10 [MIRACLE]** The cloud of glory fills Solomon's temple
■ **1KI 8:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:8 p.2104

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

14 And as the whole assembly of Israel
stood there, the king turned around and
blessed them all 15 and said:

"Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel,
who has fulfilled with His own hand what
He spoke with His mouth to my father
David, saying, 16 'Since the day I brought
My people Israel out of Egypt, I have not
chosen a city from any tribe of Israel in
which to build a house so that My Name
would be there. But I have chosen David
to be over My people Israel.'

17 Now it was in the heart of my father
David to build a house for the Name of
Yahweh, the God of Israel. 18 But Yahweh
said to my father David, 'Since it was in
your heart to build a house for My Name,
you have done well to have this in your
heart. 19 Nevertheless, you are not the one
to build it; but your son, your own off-
spring, will build the house for My Name.'

20 Now Yahweh has fulfilled the word that
He spoke. I have succeeded my father
David, and I sit on the throne of Israel, as
Yahweh promised. I have built the house
for the Name of Yahweh, the God of Is-
rael. 21 And there I have provided a place
for the ark, which contains the covenant
of Yahweh that He made with our fathers
when He brought them out of the land of
Egypt."

THE BIG QUESTION

THE TEMPLE

What It Was

1 KINGS 6 TO 8 · 2 CHRONICLES 3 TO 7 · EXODUS 25 TO 27 · HEBREWS 9:1 TO 12

A HOUSE FOR GOD'S NAME

David wanted to build God a house, and God said his son would do it, 2 Samuel 7:13. Solomon began in his fourth year, 6:1, on Mount Moriah, where Yahweh appeared to David, 2 Chronicles 3:1. It took seven years, 6:38.

THE SHAPE

The building was 90 feet long, 30 wide and 45 high, 6:2. It had a porch, a main hall called the Holy Place, and an inner room 30 feet on every side, the Most Holy Place, 6:20. It was twice the size of the tabernacle Moses built, with the same plan.

INSIDE

Cedar walls carved with cherubim, palm trees and open flowers, all covered in gold, 6:29 to 30. In the Most Holy Place stood two cherubim of olive wood 15 feet tall, with wings touching wall to wall, over the ark, 6:23 to 28.

OUTSIDE

Two bronze pillars named Jachin, He establishes, and Boaz, In Him is strength, 7:21. A huge bronze basin called the Sea, resting on twelve bronze bulls, 7:23 to 25. Ten bronze stands on wheels for washing, 7:27 to 39.

THE GLORY

When the ark was brought in, a cloud filled the house, and the priests could not stand to minister, for the glory of Yahweh filled it, 8:10 to 11. The same thing happened at the tabernacle, Exodus 40:34 to 35.

THE QUESTION

If heaven cannot contain God, 8:27, why build Him a house? What was the temple for?

What It Meant

JOHN 1:14 · 2:19 TO 21 · 1 CORINTHIANS 3:16 · 6:19 · REVELATION 21:22

A PLACE TO MEET

Solomon knew God does not live in a building, 8:27. He prayed that God's eyes would be on this house, and that He would hear prayers prayed toward it, 8:29 to 30. The temple was where heaven and earth met, where sins were covered by sacrifice.

A PICTURE OF EDEN

Many scholars see the garden of Eden in the temple: cherubim guarding the way in, Genesis 3:24, palm trees and flowers on the walls, and an entrance facing east. God's presence among His people was being restored.

WHAT HAPPENED TO IT

Babylon burned Solomon's temple in 586 BC, 2 Kings 25:9. A smaller second temple was built about 70 years later, Ezra 6:15. Herod made that one huge, and

1KI 8:15 [NOTE] Solomon quotes God's promise to David in 8:16, 8:18 to 19 and 8:25. God's own words print red, even when someone else quotes them.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Rome destroyed it in AD 70, just as Jesus said, Matthew 24:2.

JESUS, THE TRUE TEMPLE

John says the Word became flesh and dwelt, or tabernacled, among us, John 1:14. Jesus said, Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up. He was speaking about His body, John 2:19 to 21.

GOD'S PEOPLE, THE TEMPLE

Paul says believers together are God's temple, and God's Spirit lives in them, 1 Corinthians 3:16. In the new Jerusalem there is no temple, because God and the Lamb are its temple, Revelation 21:22.

A THIRD TEMPLE?

Some Christians and many Jews expect a rebuilt temple in Jerusalem before the end, from Ezekiel 40 to 48 and 2 Thessalonians 2:4. Others read those passages as pictures of Christ and His church. Christians disagree, and this Bible does not take a side.

SOLOMON'S PRAYER OF DEDICATION // 2 CHRONICLES 6:12–42

22 Then Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh in front of the whole assembly of Israel, spread out his hands toward heaven, 23 and said:

"O Yahweh, God of Israel, there is no God like You in heaven above or on earth below, keeping Your covenant of loving devotion with Your servants who walk before You with all their hearts. 24 You have kept Your promise to Your servant, my father David. What You spoke with Your mouth You have fulfilled with Your hand this day.

25 Therefore now, O Yahweh, God of Israel, keep for Your servant, my father David, what You promised when You said: 'You will never fail to have a man to sit before Me on the throne of Israel, if only your descendants guard their way to walk before Me as you have done.' 26 And now, O God of Israel, please confirm what You promised to Your servant, my father David.

27 But will God indeed dwell upon the earth? The heavens, even the highest heavens, cannot contain You, much less this temple I have built. 28 Yet regard the prayer and plea of Your servant, O Yahweh my God, so that You may hear the cry and the prayer that Your servant is praying before You today.

29 May Your eyes be open toward this temple night and day, toward the place of which You said, 'My Name shall be there,' so that You may hear the prayer that Your servant prays toward this place. 30 Hear the plea of Your servant and of Your people Israel when they pray toward this place. May You hear from heaven, Your dwelling place. May You hear and forgive.

31 When a man sins against his neighbor and is required to take an oath, and he comes to take an oath before Your altar in this temple, 32 then may You hear from heaven and act. May You judge Your servants, condemning the wicked man by bringing down on his own head what he has done, and justifying the righteous man by rewarding him according to his righteousness.

33 When Your people Israel are defeated before an enemy because they have sinned against You, and they return to You and confess Your name, praying and pleading with You in this temple, 34 then may You hear from heaven and forgive the sin of Your people Israel. May You restore them to the land You gave to their fathers.

35 When the skies are shut and there is no rain because Your people have sinned against You, and they pray toward this place and confess Your name, and they turn from their sins because You have afflicted them, 36 then may You hear from heaven and forgive the sin of Your servants, Your people Israel, so that You may teach them the good way in which they should walk. May You send rain on the

1KI 8:27 [NOTABLE] Solomon built the finest building Israel ever had and then said it was too small for God. God is not stuck in a building. Yet He chose to put His Name there, and later He came to live among us in Jesus, John 1:14.

1KI 8:29 [FULFILLS] God would choose one place to put His Name ← DT 12:5 p.301

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

land that You gave Your people as an inheritance.

37 When famine or plague comes upon the land, or blight or mildew or locusts or grasshoppers, or when their enemy besieges them in their cities, whatever plague or sickness may come, 38 then may whatever prayer or petition Your people Israel make—each knowing his own afflictions and spreading out his hands toward this temple— 39 be heard by You from heaven, Your dwelling place. And may You forgive and act, and repay each man according to all his ways, since You know his heart—for You alone know the hearts of all men— 40 so that they may fear You all the days they live in the land that You gave to our fathers.

41 And as for the foreigner who is not of Your people Israel but has come from a distant land because of Your name— 42 for they will hear of Your great name and mighty hand and outstretched arm—when he comes and prays toward this temple, 43 then may You hear from heaven, Your dwelling place, and do according to all for which the foreigner calls to You. Then all the peoples of the earth will know Your name and fear You, as do Your people Israel, and they will know that this house I have built is called by Your Name.

44 When Your people go to war against their enemies, wherever You send them, and when they pray to Yahweh in the direction of the city You have chosen and the house I have built for Your Name, 45 then may You hear from heaven their prayer and their plea, and may You uphold their cause.

46 When they sin against You—for there is no one who does not sin—and You become angry with them and deliver them to an enemy who takes them as captives to his own land, whether far or near, 47 and when they take it to heart in the land to which they were taken, and they repent and plead with You in the land of their captors, saying, 'We have sinned and done wrong; we have acted wickedly,' 48 and when they return to You with all their heart and soul in the land of the enemies who took them captive, and when they pray to You in the direction of the land that You gave to their fathers, the city You have chosen, and the house I have built for Your Name, 49 then may You hear from heaven, Your dwelling place, their prayer and petition, and may You uphold their cause. 50 May You forgive Your people who have sinned against You and all the transgressions they have committed against You, and may You grant them compassion in the eyes of their captors to show them mercy.

51 For they are Your people and Your inheritance; You brought them out of Egypt, out of the furnace for iron. 52 May Your eyes be open to the pleas of Your servant and of Your people Israel, and may You listen to them whenever they call to You. 53 For You, O Lord Yahweh, have set them apart from all the peoples of the earth as Your inheritance, as You spoke through Your servant Moses when You brought our fathers out of Egypt."

SOLOMON'S BENEDICTION

54 Now when Solomon had finished praying this entire prayer and petition to Yahweh, he got up before the altar of Yahweh, where he had been kneeling with his hands spread out toward heaven. 55 And he stood and blessed the whole assembly of Israel in a loud voice, saying:

56 "Blessed be Yahweh, who has given rest to His people Israel according to all that He promised. Not one word has failed of all the good promises He made through His servant Moses.

57 May Yahweh our God be with us, as He was with our fathers. May He never leave us or forsake us. 58 May He incline our hearts to Himself, to walk in all His ways and to keep the commandments and statutes and ordinances He commanded our fathers.

59 And may these words with which I have made my petition before Yahweh be near to Yahweh our God day and night, so that

1KI 8:39 [HEART] Only God knows every human heart, so He repays each person by what is inside.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · THE HEART · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

He may uphold the cause of His servant
and of His people Israel as each day re-
quires, 60 so that all the peoples of the
earth may know that Yahweh is God.
There is no other!

61 So let your heart be fully devoted to
Yahweh our God, as it is this day, to walk
in His statutes and to keep His command-
ments."

SACRIFICES OF DEDICATION // 2 CHRONICLES 7:4–10

62 Then the king and all Israel with him of-
fered sacrifices before Yahweh. 63 And
Solomon offered as peace offerings to
Yahweh 22,000 oxen and 120,000 sheep.
So the king and all the Israelites dedicated
the house of Yahweh.

64 On that same day the king consecrated
the middle of the courtyard in front of the
house of Yahweh, and there he offered
the burnt offerings, the grain offerings,
and the fat of the peace offerings, since
the bronze altar before Yahweh was too
small to contain all these offerings.

65 So at that time Solomon and all Israel
with him—a great assembly of people
from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of
Egypt—kept the feast before Yahweh our
God for seven days and seven more
days—fourteen days in all.

66 On the fifteenth day Solomon sent the
people away. So they blessed the king
and went home, joyful and glad in heart
for all the good things that Yahweh had
done for His servant David and for His
people Israel.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

God appears to Solomon a second time: I have heard your prayer. Walk with Me, and your throne will last. Turn away, and this temple will become a heap of ruins. Solomon builds cities and gates, uses forced labor, and starts a navy on the Red Sea that brings back gold from Ophir.

YAHWEH'S RESPONSE TO SOLOMON // 2 CHRONICLES 7:11–22

1 Now when Solomon had finished building
the house of Yahweh and the royal
palace, and had achieved all that he had
desired to do, 2 Yahweh appeared to him a
second time, as He had appeared to him
at Gibeon. 3 And Yahweh said to him:

"I have heard your prayer and petition be-
fore Me. I have consecrated this temple,
which you have built, by putting My Name
there forever; My eyes and My heart will
be there for all time.

4 And as for you, if you walk before Me as
your father David walked, with a heart of
integrity and uprightness, doing all I have
commanded you, and if you keep My
statutes and ordinances, 5 then I will es-
tablish your royal throne over Israel for-
ever, as I promised your father David
when I said, 'You will never fail to have a
man on the throne of Israel.'

6 But if indeed you or your sons turn away
from following Me and do not keep the
commandments and statutes I have set
before you, and if you go off to serve and
worship other gods, 7 then I will cut off Is-
rael from the land that I have given them,
and I will banish from My presence this
temple I have sanctified for My Name.
Then Israel will become an object of
scorn and ridicule among all peoples.

8 And when this temple has become a
heap of rubble, all who pass by it will be
appalled and will hiss and say, 'Why has
Yahweh done such a thing to this land and
to this temple?' 9 And others will answer,
'Because they have forsaken Yahweh their
God who brought their fathers out of the
land of Egypt, and have embraced other
gods, worshiping and serving them—be-
cause of this, Yahweh has brought all this
disaster upon them.'"

1KI 8:61 [HEART] Solomon urged Israel to keep their hearts fully devoted to Yahweh. Sadly, his own heart did not stay that way, 11:4.

1KI 9:2 [MIRACLE] God appears to Solomon a second time
1KI 9:4 [HEART] God told Solomon to walk with integrity of heart like David.
1KI 9:6 [DEMONIC] God warns Solomon not to serve other gods
1KI 9:7 [PROPHECY] If Israel turned to idols the temple would become a heap and Israel would be cut off → 2KI 25:9; 2KI 25:21 · MEDIUM p.660
1KI 9:9 [DEMONIC] Disaster comes because they embraced other gods

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

SOLOMON'S ADDITIONAL ACHIEVEMENTS // 2 CHRONICLES 8:1–18

10 Now at the end of the twenty years during which Solomon built these two houses, the house of Yahweh and the royal palace, 11 King Solomon gave twenty towns in the land of Galilee to Hiram king of Tyre, who had supplied him with cedar and cypress logs and gold for his every desire. 12 So Hiram went out from Tyre to inspect the towns that Solomon had given him, but he was not pleased with them.

13 "What are these towns you have given me, my brother?" asked Hiram, and he called them the Land of Cabul, as they are called to this day.

14 And Hiram had sent the king 4½ tons of gold.

15 This is the account of the forced labor that King Solomon imposed to build the house of Yahweh, his own palace, the supporting terraces, and the wall of Jerusalem, as well as Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer.

16 Pharaoh king of Egypt had attacked and captured Gezer. He had set it on fire, killed the Canaanites who lived in the city, and given it as a dowry to his daughter, Solomon's wife. 17 So Solomon rebuilt Gezer, Lower Beth-horon, 18 Baalath, and Tamar in the Wilderness of Judah, 19 as well as all the store cities that Solomon had for his chariots and horses—whatever he desired to build in Jerusalem, Lebanon, and throughout the land of his dominion.

20 As for all the people who remained of the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites (the people who were not Israelites)— 21 their descendants who remained in the land, those whom the Israelites were unable to devote to destruction—Solomon conscripted these people to be forced laborers, as they are to this day.

22 But Solomon did not consign any of the Israelites to slavery, because they were his men of war, his servants, his officers, his captains, and the commanders of his chariots and cavalry. 23 They were also the chief officers over Solomon's projects: 550 supervisors over the people who did the work.

24 As soon as Pharaoh's daughter had come up from the City of David to the palace that Solomon had built for her, he built the supporting terraces.

25 Three times a year Solomon offered burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar he had built for Yahweh, burning incense with them before Yahweh. So he completed the temple.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

SOLOMON'S GATES

1 KINGS 9:15 TO 19 · 2 CHRONICLES 8:1 TO 6 · JOSHUA 16:10



The six room gate at Tel Gezer. The low stone walls mark the rooms on each side of the passage. Photo Ian Scott, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

City gates with six rooms, three on each side of the road through the gate. Guards stood in the rooms, and elders sat there to judge cases. Gates with the same plan and almost the same size were found at Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer, the three cities named in 9:15.

HOW OLD IT IS

Debated. Yigael Yadin dated the gates to the 900s BC, the time of Solomon. Israel Finkelstein and others date them about 50 to 100 years later, to the time of Omri and Ahab. Newer carbon tests

1KI 9:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Yigael Yadin identified gates with six rooms at all three cities, built to the same plan → FIELD NOTES p.561

1KI 9:15 [FIELD NOTES] Gates with the same plan, six rooms each, were found at Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer. See the Solomon's Gates Field Notes page, p.561.

1KI 9:20 [FULFILLS] Noah said Canaan would become a servant to his brothers ← GEN 9:25 · MEDIUM p.60

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

at Gezer support the earlier date, but the debate goes on.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Megiddo's gate was dug in the 1930s. Yadin found the Hazor gate in the 1950s. He then spotted the Gezer gate in old drawings from R. A. S. Macalister's dig, which had called it a Maccabean castle. William Dever's team dug it out in the late 1960s and early 1970s and found he was right.

THE MATCHING GATES

1 Kings 9:15 says Solomon built Jerusalem's wall, Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer. Finding the same gate plan at all three cities made many think one king's builders made them all.

THE BIG DEBATE

Six room gates have also been found at Lachish, Ashdod and other places, some from later times. So the plan may have been popular for a long time, not just Solomon's design. Some also think the Megiddo gate is later than the walls next to it.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No writing on the gates names Solomon. If the early date is right, they are a strong match for 9:15. If the later date is right, Solomon's gates are still under the ground or gone.

26 King Solomon also assembled a fleet of
ships at Ezion-geber, which is near Eloth
in Edom, on the shore of the Red Sea. 27
And Hiram sent his servants, sailors who
knew the sea, to serve in the fleet with
Solomon's servants. 28 They sailed to
Ophir and imported gold from
there—about 16 tons—and delivered it to
Solomon.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The queen of Sheba comes with a long camel train to test Solomon with hard questions. He answers every one, and she is left breathless. Solomon's gold pours in, about 25 tons a year. Silver is as common as stones in Jerusalem. Everyone wants to hear his wisdom.

THE QUEEN OF SHEBA // 2 CHRONICLES 9:1–12

1 Now when the queen of Sheba heard
about the fame of Solomon concerning
the name of Yahweh, she came to test him
with difficult questions. 2 She arrived in
Jerusalem with a very large
caravan—with camels bearing spices,
gold in great abundance, and precious
stones.

And she came to Solomon and spoke to
him all that was in her heart. 3 And
Solomon answered all her questions;
nothing was too difficult for the king to
explain.

4 When the queen of Sheba saw all the
wisdom of Solomon, the palace he had
built, 5 the food at his table, the seating of
his servants, the service and attire of his
attendants, his cupbearers, and the burnt
offerings he presented at the house of
Yahweh, it took her breath away.

6 She said to the king, "The report I heard
in my own country about your words and
wisdom is true. 7 But I did not believe
these things until I came and saw with my
own eyes. Indeed, not even half was told
to me. Your wisdom and prosperity have
far exceeded the report I heard. 8 How
blessed are your men! How blessed are
these servants of yours who stand continually before you and hear your wisdom! 9
Blessed be Yahweh your God, who has
delighted in you to set you on the throne
of Israel. Because of Yahweh's eternal

- **1KI 9:26 [NOTE]** EZION GEBER was on the north tip of the Red Sea's Gulf of Aqaba, near Eilat today. Ophir was a land famous for gold. Nobody knows for sure where it was. Arabia, Africa and India have all been suggested.
- **1KI 9:28 [TEXT]** 16 OR 17 TONS? 2 Chronicles 8:18 says about 17 tons of gold from Ophir. A copy may have slipped, or the two books count the gold a little differently.
- **1KI 10:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 12:42 p.1567
- **1KI 10:1 [NOTE]** THE QUEEN OF SHEBA. Sheba was most likely Saba, a rich kingdom in south Arabia, in Yemen today. Ethiopian tradition calls her Makeda. Jesus said she will rise at the judgment and condemn His generation, for One greater than Solomon is here, Matthew 12:42.
- **1KI 10:4 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 6:29 p.1559

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

love for Israel, He has made you king to carry out justice and righteousness."

10 Then she gave the king 4½ tons of gold, a great quantity of spices, and precious stones. Never again were spices in such abundance brought in as those the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon.

11 (The fleet of Hiram that brought gold from Ophir also brought from Ophir a great cargo of almug wood and precious stones. 12 The king made the almug wood into steps for the house of Yahweh and for the king's palace, and into lyres and harps for the singers. Never before had such almug wood been brought in, nor has such been seen again to this day.)

13 King Solomon gave the queen of Sheba all she desired—whatever she asked—besides what he had given her out of his royal bounty. Then she left and returned to her own country, along with her servants.

SOLOMON'S WEALTH AND SPLENDOR // 2 CHRONICLES 1:14–17; 2 CHRONICLES 9:13–28

14 The weight of gold that came to Solomon each year was about 25 tons, 15 not including the revenue from the merchants, traders, and all the Arabian kings and governors of the land.

16 King Solomon made two hundred large shields of hammered gold; 15 pounds of gold went into each shield. 17 He also made three hundred small shields of hammered gold; 3¾ pounds of gold went into each shield. And the king put them in the House of the Forest of Lebanon.

18 Additionally, the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with pure gold. 19 The throne had six steps, and its back had a rounded top. There were armrests on both sides of the seat, with a lion standing beside each armrest. 20 Twelve lions stood on the six steps, one at either end of each step. Nothing like this had ever been made for any kingdom.

21 All King Solomon's drinking cups were gold, and all the utensils of the House of the Forest of Lebanon were pure gold. There was no silver, because it was accounted as nothing in the days of Solomon. 22 For the king had the ships of Tarshish at sea with Hiram's fleet, and once every three years the ships of Tarshish would arrive bearing gold, silver, ivory, apes, and peacocks.

23 So King Solomon surpassed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom. 24 The whole world sought an audience with Solomon to hear the wisdom that God had put in his heart. 25 Year after year, each visitor would bring his tribute: articles of silver and gold, clothing, weapons, spices, horses, and mules.

26 Solomon accumulated 1,400 chariots and 12,000 horses, which he stationed in the chariot cities and also with him in Jerusalem. 27 The king made silver as common in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar as abundant as sycamore in the foothills.

28 Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and Kue; the royal merchants purchased them from Kue. 29 A chariot could be imported from Egypt for 15 pounds of silver, and a horse for 3¾ pounds. Likewise, they exported them to all the kings of the Hittites and to the kings of Aram.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon loves many foreign women: 700 wives and 300 concubines. When he is old, they turn his heart to their gods, and he builds high places for Chemosh and Molech. God says, I will tear the kingdom away from your son, but not all of it. The prophet Ahijah tears his new cloak into twelve pieces and hands ten to Jeroboam.

SOLOMON'S FOREIGN WIVES

1 King Solomon, however, loved many foreign women along with the daughter of Pharaoh—women of Moab, Ammon, Edom, and Sidon, as well as Hittite

1KI 10:14 [NOTE] 666. In the Hebrew, the number here is 666, the same number as Revelation 13:18. Most see no link beyond the number. Some see Solomon's piles of gold as part of his fall, because the king was told not to gather great amounts of gold, Deuteronomy 17:17.

1KI 10:23 [FULFILLS] God promised Solomon unmatched wisdom plus riches and honor ← 1KI 3:12-13 p.548

1KI 10:24 [HEART] The whole world came to hear the wisdom God had put in Solomon's heart. The gift came from God, not from Solomon.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

women. 2 These women were from the nations about which Yahweh had told the Israelites, "You must not intermarry with them, for surely they will turn your hearts after their gods." Yet Solomon clung to these women in love. 3 He had seven hundred wives of royal birth and three hundred concubines—and his wives turned his heart away.

4 For when Solomon grew old, his wives turned his heart after other gods, and he was not wholeheartedly devoted to Yahweh his God, as his father David had been. 5 Solomon followed Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians and Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites. 6 So Solomon did evil in the sight of Yahweh; unlike his father David, he did not follow Yahweh completely.

7 At that time on a hill east of Jerusalem, Solomon built a high place for Chemosh the abomination of Moab and for Molech the abomination of the Ammonites. 8 He did the same for all his foreign wives, who burned incense and sacrificed to their gods.

GOD'S ANGER AGAINST SOLOMON

9 Now Yahweh grew angry with Solomon, because his heart had turned away from Yahweh, the God of Israel, who had appeared to him twice. 10 Although He had warned Solomon explicitly not to follow other gods, Solomon did not keep Yahweh's command.

11 Then Yahweh said to Solomon, "Because you have done this and have not kept My covenant and My statutes, which I have commanded you, I will tear the kingdom away from you and give it to your servant.

12 Nevertheless, for the sake of your father David, I will not do it during your lifetime; I will tear it out of the hand of your son. 13 Yet I will not tear the whole kingdom away from him. I will give one tribe to your son for the sake of My servant David and for the sake of Jerusalem, which I have chosen."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SOLOMON'S WISDOM AND 700 WIVES

What Happened

1 KINGS 3:5 TO 14 · 4:29 TO 34 · 11:1 TO 13 · DEUTERONOMY 17:14 TO 17

THE BEST START

God said to young Solomon, Ask for whatever you want. Solomon asked for an understanding heart to lead God's people well, 3:9. God gave him wisdom like no one before or after, and riches and honor too, 3:12 to 13.

THE WISEST MAN

Solomon spoke 3,000 proverbs and 1,005 songs. He taught about trees, animals, birds and fish, 4:32 to 33. Kings sent people to hear him, 4:34, and the queen of Sheba said she had not heard the half of it, 10:7.

THE RULES FOR KINGS

Long before, Moses wrote that a king must not gather many horses, especially from Egypt, must not take many wives, or his heart would turn away, and must not pile up silver and gold, Deuteronomy 17:16 to 17.

SOLOMON BROKE ALL THREE

He bought horses from Egypt, 10:28. Silver became as common as stones in Jerusalem, 10:27. And he had 700 wives of royal birth and 300 concubines, 11:3.

THE FALL

When Solomon was old, his wives turned his heart after other gods. He built high places for Chemosh and Molech on a hill east of Jerusalem, 11:4 to 8. God was angry, because He had appeared to Solomon twice, 11:9.

1KI 11:2 [DEMONIC] Solomon's wives turn his heart to Ashtoreth, Chemosh, and Molech

1KI 11:3 [NOTE] 700 WIVES. The king was told not to take many wives, or his heart would turn away, Deuteronomy 17:17. See the Big Question pages Solomon's Wisdom and 700 Wives, p.564.

1KI 11:4 [HEART] Solomon's wives turned his heart away. His heart was not fully devoted like David's.

1KI 11:7 [NOTE] MOLECH. Worship of Molech included burning children in the fire. God's law forbade it, Leviticus 18:21. The wisest king built a shrine for that god. About 300 years later, King Josiah tore it down, 2 Kings 23:13.

1KI 11:9 [HEART] Yahweh was angry with Solomon because his heart had turned away, even though God had appeared to him twice.

1KI 11:11 [PROPHECY] God told Solomon the kingdom would be torn from his son but one tribe spared for David's sake → 1KI 12 p.567

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE QUESTION
How could the wisest man who ever lived do something so foolish?

Every View
NEHEMIAH 13:26 · PROVERBS 4:23 · ECCLESIASTES 2:1 TO 11 · 12:13 · JAMES 1:5

VIEW 1: WISDOM IS NOT THE SAME AS OBEYING
Many say Solomon knew what was right but stopped doing it. Wisdom is a gift, but it does not keep working on its own. Guard your heart, for out of it flow the springs of life, Proverbs 4:23. Solomon did not guard his.

VIEW 2: A SLOW DRIFT
The fall did not happen in one day. It started with a marriage to Pharaoh's daughter for politics, 3:1, then more treaties sealed by marriages. Each wife came with her own gods. Little by little, his heart was divided.

VIEW 3: POWER AND MONEY
Some point to the riches. A king with everything may start to think the rules are for other people. Solomon's forced labor and heavy taxes also show a king who used people, 5:13 and 12:4.

700 WIVES?
Many royal marriages in that world sealed treaties between kingdoms. Some scholars think the numbers are rounded or count every woman in the palace. Others take them as written. Either way, the Bible does not praise it. It blames it.

DID HE TURN BACK?
The Bible does not say. Many Jewish and Christian teachers think Solomon wrote Ecclesiastes in old age, looking back on a life chasing everything under the sun, and ending with fear God and keep His commands, Ecclesiastes 12:13. Others think a later writer wrote Ecclesiastes in Solomon's voice.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Nehemiah 13:26 says it plainly: there was no king like Solomon, loved by his God, and yet foreign women made even him sin. A good start does not guarantee a good finish.

HADAD'S RETURN

14 Then Yahweh raised up against Solomon an adversary, Hadad the
Edomite, from the royal line of Edom.
15 Earlier, when David was in Edom, Joab
the commander of the army had gone to
bury the dead and had struck down every
male in Edom. 16 Joab and all Israel had
stayed there six months, until he had
killed every male in Edom. 17 But Hadad,
still just a young boy, had fled to Egypt,
along with some Edomites who were servants of his father.
18 Hadad and his men set out from Midian
and went to Paran. They took men from
Paran with them and went to Egypt, to
Pharaoh king of Egypt, who gave Hadad a
house and land and provided him with
food.
19 There Hadad found such great favor in
the sight of Pharaoh that he gave to him in
marriage the sister of Queen Tahpenes,
his own wife. 20 And the sister of Tahpenes bore Hadad a son named Genubath. Tahpenes herself weaned him in
Pharaoh's palace, and Genubath lived
there among the sons of Pharaoh.
21 When Hadad heard in Egypt that David
had rested with his fathers and that Joab,
the commander of the army, was dead, he
said to Pharaoh, "Let me go, that I may return to my own country."
22 But Pharaoh asked him, "What have you
lacked here with me that you suddenly
want to go back to your own country?"
"Nothing," Hadad replied, "but please let
me go."

REZON'S HOSTILITY

23 And God raised up against Solomon another adversary, Rezon the son of Eliada,
who had fled from his master, Hadadezer
king of Zobah, 24 and had gathered men to
himself. When David killed the Zobaites,
Rezon captained a band of raiders and
went to Damascus, where they settled
and gained control.
25 Rezon was Israel's enemy throughout
the days of Solomon, adding to the trou-

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ble caused by Hadad. So Rezon ruled over Aram with hostility toward Israel.

JEROBOAM'S REBELLION

26 Now Jeroboam son of Nebat was an Ephraimite from Zeredah whose mother was a widow named Zeruah. Jeroboam was a servant of Solomon, but he rebelled against the king, 27 and this is the account of his rebellion against the king.

Solomon had built the supporting terraces and repaired the gap in the wall of the city of his father David. 28 Now Jeroboam was a mighty man of valor. So when Solomon noticed that the young man was industrious, he put him in charge of the whole labor force of the house of Joseph.

29 During that time, the prophet Ahijah the Shilonite met Jeroboam on the road as he was going out of Jerusalem. Now Ahijah had wrapped himself in a new cloak, and the two of them were alone in the open field.

30 And Ahijah took hold of the new cloak he was wearing, tore it into twelve pieces, 31 and said to Jeroboam, "Take ten pieces for yourself, for this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Behold, I will tear the kingdom out of the hand of Solomon, and I will give you ten tribes. 32 But one tribe will remain for the sake of My servant David and for the sake of Jerusalem, the city I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel.

33 For they have forsaken Me to worship Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, Chemosh the god of the Moabites, and Milcom the god of the Ammonites. They have not walked in My ways, nor done what is right in My eyes, nor kept My statutes and judgments, as Solomon's father David did.

34 Nevertheless, I will not take the whole kingdom out of Solomon's hand, because I have made him ruler all the days of his life for the sake of David My servant, whom I chose because he kept My commandments and statutes. 35 But I will take ten tribes of the kingdom from the hand of his son and give them to you. 36 I will give one tribe to his son, so that My servant David will always have a lamp before Me in Jerusalem, the city where I chose to put My Name. 37 But as for you, I will take you, and you shall reign over all that your heart desires, and you will be king over Israel.

38 If you listen to all that I command you, walk in My ways, and do what is right in My sight in order to keep My statutes and commandments as My servant David did, then I will be with you. I will build you a lasting dynasty just as I built for David, and I will give Israel to you. 39 Because of this, I will humble David's descendants—but not forever.'"

40 Solomon therefore sought to kill Jeroboam. But Jeroboam arose and fled to Egypt, to Shishak king of Egypt, where he remained until the death of Solomon.

THE DEATH OF SOLOMON // 2 CHRONICLES 9:29–31

41 As for the rest of the acts of Solomon—all that he did, as well as his wisdom—are they not written in the Book of the Acts of Solomon? 42 Thus the time that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel was forty years.

43 And Solomon rested with his fathers and was buried in the city of his father David. And his son Rehoboam reigned in his place.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE KINGS?

What the Book Says

1 KINGS 11:41 · 14:19 · 14:29 · 6:1 · 2 KINGS 25:27 TO 30

ONE BOOK

1 and 2 Kings were one book in the Hebrew Bible. The Greek translation split it in two, and later Hebrew Bibles did the same.

1KI 11:31 [PROPHECY] Ahijah tore his cloak into twelve pieces and gave Jeroboam ten tribes → 1KI 12:16; 1KI 12:20 p.568

1KI 11:33 [DEMONIC] Israel forsook God for Ashtoreth, Chemosh, and Milcom

1KI 11:35 [PROPHECY] One tribe would stay with Solomon's son so David would always have a lamp in Jerusalem → 1KI 12:20 p.568

1KI 11:40 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Pharaoh Shishak, Sheshonq I, is named on his own victory carving at Karnak, see the Shishak at Karnak Field Notes page, p.576

1KI 11:41 [NOTE] THE BOOK OF THE ACTS OF SOLOMON is one of the old sources the writer of Kings names. It has been lost. See the Big Question pages Who Wrote Kings?, p.566

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

NO NAME
The book never says who wrote it. It ends in Babylon about 560 BC, when King Jehoiachin is let out of prison, 2 Kings 25:27 to 30. So it was finished during the exile or soon after.

ITS SOURCES
The writer names three older books: the Book of the Acts of Solomon, 11:41, the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel, 14:19, and the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah, 14:29. They are lost. Many think they were royal records kept at court.

THE PATTERN
Each king gets a short report card: when he began, how long he reigned, and whether he did right or evil in Yahweh's eyes. The kings of Israel all fail. Only a few kings of Judah do right.

480 YEARS
6:1 says Solomon started the temple 480 years after the Exodus. This number is the main reason many date the Exodus about 1446 BC.

THE QUESTION
Who put this book together, and how should we read the 480 years?

Every View
JEREMIAH 52 · 2 KINGS 24:18 TO 25:30 · EXODUS 1:11 · JUDGES 11:26

VIEW 1: JEREMIAH
The Talmud, Bava Batra 15a, says Jeremiah wrote Kings. Jeremiah lived when Jerusalem fell, and the last chapter of Kings is almost the same as Jeremiah 52. But Jeremiah was likely in Egypt, not Babylon, at the end, Jeremiah 43.

VIEW 2: A PROPHET IN EXILE
Many think a prophet or scribe among the exiles in Babylon put the book together from the royal records and the stories of the prophets. Its message fits a people asking why God let them lose everything.

VIEW 3: THE DEUTERONOMY SCHOOL
Martin Noth, in 1943, thought one writer in the exile wrote Deuteronomy through Kings as one history, judging every king by Deuteronomy's laws. Many critical scholars since think it came out in two or more editions.

THE 480 YEARS: EARLY DATE
Read as written, Solomon's fourth year, about 966 BC, plus 480 gives an Exodus about 1446 BC. Judges 11:26 says Israel had been in the land 300 years by Jephthah's day, which fits an early date.

THE 480 YEARS: LATE DATE
Many scholars date the Exodus about 1270 BC, because Exodus 1:11 names the city of Rameses, and they read 480 as twelve generations of forty years, a round number. Others answer that the name Rameses may be an updated place name.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Kings is history told with a purpose: to show that God keeps His word, both His warnings and His promises. Even the last scene leaves hope, a son of David still alive and eating at the king's table, 2 Kings 25:29.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS
Solomon's son Rehoboam is asked to lighten the people's heavy load. He listens to his young friends instead of the wise old advisers: My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. Ten tribes walk away and make Jeroboam king. Jeroboam is afraid they will go back to Jerusalem to worship, so he makes two golden calves.

REBELLION AGAINST REHOBOAM // 2 CHRONICLES 10:1–15

1 Then Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all
Israel had gone there to make him king. 2
When Jeroboam son of Nebat heard
about this, he was still in Egypt where he
had fled from King Solomon and had been
living ever since. 3 So they sent for Jer-
oboam, and he and the whole assembly of
Israel came to Rehoboam and said, 4 "Your
father put a heavy yoke on us. But now
you must lighten the burden of your
father's service and the heavy yoke he put
on us, and we will serve you."

1KI 12:1 [FULFILLS] God told Solomon the kingdom would be torn from his son but one tribe spared for David's sake ← 1KI 11:11-13 p.564
1KI 12:4 [FULFILLS] Samuel warned that a king would take their goods and they would cry out to be free of him ← 1SA 8:17-18 · MEDIUM p.447

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

5 Rehoboam answered, "Go away for three
days and then return to me." So the peo-
ple departed.

6 Then King Rehoboam consulted with the
elders who had served his father Solomon
during his lifetime. "How do you advise
me to respond to these people?" he
asked.

7 They replied, "If you will be a servant to
these people and serve them this day, and
if you will respond by speaking kind
words to them, they will be your servants
forever."

8 But Rehoboam rejected the advice of the
elders; instead, he consulted the young
men who had grown up with him and
served him. 9 He asked them, "What mes-
sage do you advise that we send back to
these people who have spoken to me,
saying, 'Lighten the yoke your father put
on us'?"

10 The young men who had grown up with
him replied, "This is how you should an-
swer these people who said to you, 'Your
father made our yoke heavy, but you must
make it lighter.' This is what you should
tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than
my father's waist! 11 Whereas my father
burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will
add to your yoke. Whereas my father
scourged you with whips, I will scourge
you with scorpions.'"

12 After three days, Jeroboam and all the
people returned to Rehoboam, since the
king had said, "Come back to me on the
third day." 13 And the king answered the
people harshly. He rejected the advice of
the elders 14 and spoke to them as the
young men had advised, saying,
"Whereas my father made your yoke
heavy, I will add to your yoke. Whereas
my father scourged you with whips, I will
scourge you with scorpions."

15 So the king did not listen to the people,
and indeed this turn of events was from
Yahweh, to fulfill the word He had spoken
to Jeroboam son of Nebat through Ahijah
the Shilonite.

THE KINGDOM DIVIDED // 2 CHRONICLES 10:16–19

16 When all Israel saw that the king had re-
fused to listen to them, they answered the
king:

"What portion do we have in David,
and what inheritance in the son of
Jesse?
To your tents, O Israel!
Look now to your own house, O David!"

So the Israelites went home, 17 but Re-
hoboam still reigned over the Israelites liv-
ing in the cities of Judah.

18 Then King Rehoboam sent out Adoram,
who was in charge of the forced labor, but
all Israel stoned him to death. And King
Rehoboam mounted his chariot in haste
and escaped to Jerusalem. 19 So to this
day Israel has been in rebellion against
the house of David.

SHEMAIAH'S PROPHECY // 2 CHRONICLES 11:1–4

20 When all Israel heard that Jeroboam had
returned, they summoned him to the as-
sembly and made him king over all Israel.
Only the tribe of Judah followed the
house of David.

21 And when Rehoboam arrived in
Jerusalem, he mobilized the whole house
of Judah and the tribe of
Benjamin—180,000 chosen warriors—to
fight against the house of Israel and re-
store the kingdom to Rehoboam son of
Solomon.

22 But the word of God came to Shemaiah
the man of God: 23 "Tell Rehoboam son of
Solomon king of Judah, all the house of
Judah and Benjamin, and the rest of the
people 24 that this is what Yahweh says:
'You are not to go up and fight against
your brothers, the Israelites. Each of you
must return home, for this is My doing.'"

1KI 12:16 [FULFILLS] Ahijah tore his cloak into twelve pieces and gave Jeroboam ten tribes ← 1KI 11:31 p.566

1KI 12:16 [NOTE] TO YOUR TENTS, O ISRAEL! The same cry Sheba used against David, 2 Samuel 20:1. See the Big Question pages Why the Kingdom Split, p.569.

1KI 12:20 [FULFILLS] Ahijah tore his cloak into twelve pieces and gave Jeroboam ten tribes ← 1KI 11:31 p.566

1KI 12:20 [FULFILLS] One tribe would stay with Solomon's son so David would always have a lamp in Jerusalem ← 1KI 11:35-36 p.566

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

So they listened to the word of Yahweh and turned back according to the word of Yahweh.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY THE KINGDOM SPLIT

What Happened

1 KINGS 11:9 TO 13 · 11:26 TO 40 · 12:1 TO 24 · 2 CHRONICLES 10 TO 11

GOD'S WARNING

Because Solomon turned to other gods, God said, I will tear the kingdom away from you, but not in your lifetime, and not all of it. One tribe would stay with his son for David's sake, 11:11 to 13.

THE TORN CLOAK

The prophet Ahijah met Jeroboam, one of Solomon's work bosses, tore his new cloak into twelve pieces, and told him to take ten, 11:29 to 31. Solomon tried to kill Jeroboam, and he ran to Egypt, 11:40.

THE MEETING AT SHECHEM

After Solomon died, the people asked Rehoboam to lighten the heavy yoke his father put on them. The old advisers said, Serve them, and they will serve you forever. His young friends said, Tell them my little finger is thicker than my father's waist, 12:7 to 10.

THE ANSWER

Rehoboam took the young men's advice. Israel answered, What portion do we have in David? To your tents, O Israel! 12:16. Ten tribes made Jeroboam king. Only Judah, with Benjamin, stayed with Rehoboam, 12:20 to 21.

THE CIVIL WAR THAT DID NOT HAPPEN

Rehoboam gathered an army to win the tribes back, but God told the prophet Shemaiah, Do not fight your brothers, for this is My doing, 12:24. They listened.

THE QUESTION

Who caused the split: Solomon, Rehoboam, Jeroboam, or God?

Every View

1 KINGS 12:15 · 2 SAMUEL 19:41 TO 43 · 20:1 TO 2 · EZEKIEL 37:15 TO 28

VIEW 1: SOLOMON'S IDOLS

The Bible's main answer. God tore the kingdom away because Solomon worshiped other gods, 11:33. The split was God's judgment.

VIEW 2: REHOBOAM'S PRIDE

Rehoboam could have kept the kingdom with kind words, 12:7. He chose to show off his power. The Bible says the turn of events was from Yahweh, to fulfill His word, 12:15. God used a proud king's foolish choice.

VIEW 3: AN OLD CRACK

The north and the south had argued for a long time. They fought under David, 2 Samuel 2 to 4, and again when Sheba cried, We have no share in David, 2 Samuel 20:1. Rehoboam's heavy taxes broke an old crack wide open.

JEROBOAM'S FEAR

God promised Jeroboam a lasting house if he obeyed, 11:38. But he was afraid the people would go back to Jerusalem, so he made the golden calves, 12:26 to 30. The north never recovered from that sin.

WHAT CAME NEXT

The two kingdoms lasted side by side for about 200 years. Israel in the north fell to Assyria in 722 BC. Judah in the south fell to Babylon in 586 BC.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God kept His promise to David even through the split: a lamp always before Him in Jerusalem, 11:36. The prophets looked ahead to a day when the two would become one again under one King, Ezekiel 37:22 to 24.

JEROBOAM'S IDOLATRY

25 Then Jeroboam built Shechem in the hill
country of Ephraim and lived there. And
from there he went out and built Penuel.
26 Jeroboam said in his heart, "Now the
kingdom might revert to the house of
David. 27 If these people go up to offer
sacrifices in the house of Yahweh at
Jerusalem, their hearts will return to their
lord, Rehoboam king of Judah; then they
will kill me and return to Rehoboam king
of Judah."
28 After seeking advice, the king made two
golden calves and said to the people,
"Going up to Jerusalem is too much for

1KI 12:26 [HEART] Jeroboam said in his heart that the people might go back to David's family. Fear in his heart led him to make the golden calves.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY

you. Here, O Israel, are your gods, who
brought you up out of the land of Egypt."
29 One calf he set up in Bethel, and the
other in Dan. 30 And this thing became a
sin; the people walked as far as Dan to
worship before one of the calves.
31 Jeroboam also built shrines on the high
places and appointed from every class of
people priests who were not Levites. 32
And Jeroboam ordained a feast on the fif-
teenth day of the eighth month, like the
feast that was in Judah, and he offered
sacrifices on the altar; he made this offer-
ing in Bethel to sacrifice to the calves he
had set up, and he installed priests in
Bethel for the high places he had set up.
33 On the fifteenth day of the eighth
month, a month of his own choosing, Jer-
oboam offered sacrifices on the altar he
had set up in Bethel. So he ordained a
feast for the Israelites, offered sacrifices
on the altar, and burned incense.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE HIGH PLACE AT DAN

1 KINGS 12:25 TO 33 · JUDGES 18:30 TO 31 · AMOS 8:14 · 2 KINGS 10:29



The high place at Tel Dan. The stone platform with steps is at the right. The metal frame in the middle is modern and shows the size of the altar that once stood there. Photo Mboesch, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A big square platform of cut stone, about 60 feet on each side, with a wide stairway up its front. In front of it was a walled yard with a large altar. Diggers found small altars, three iron shovels for ashes, incense stands and bones of animals offered there.

HOW OLD IT IS

The diggers dated the first platform to the late 900s BC, the time of Jeroboam I. They think it was made bigger in the 800s BC, likely under Ahab, and the stairway was added in the 700s BC. Scholars still discuss who built each stage.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Tel Dan, in the far north of Israel by one of the springs of the Jordan River. Avraham Biran dug there from 1966 to 1999. The same dig found the Tel Dan Stele and the old gate of Laish.

THE GOLDEN CALF

Jeroboam set up one golden calf at Bethel and one at Dan, 12:29. He built houses on the high places and made priests who were not Levites, 12:31. This sin is named again and again for the rest of Kings.

STILL GOING

Amos, about 170 years later, warned those who swear by the god of Dan, Amos 8:14. Even Jehu, who wiped out Baal worship, kept the calves at Bethel and Dan, 2 Kings 10:29.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No golden calf was found. Gold would have been taken long ago. The platform shows a large royal worship place at Dan in the right time and place for 1 Kings 12.

- **1KI 12:28 [DEMONIC]** Jeroboam makes two golden calves at Bethel and Dan
- **1KI 12:28 [FULFILLS]** Aaron's golden calf would be copied by a later king ← EX 32:4 · MEDIUM p.163
- **1KI 12:28 [NOTE]** HERE ARE YOUR GODS, O ISRAEL. Almost the same words Aaron said about the golden calf, Exodus 32:4. Many think Jeroboam meant the calves as the throne or pedestal for Yahweh, but the people worshiped them.
- **1KI 12:29 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The high place at Tel Dan → FIELD NOTES p.570
- **1KI 12:29 [FIELD NOTES]** The stone platform of the high place at Dan has been found. See the High Place at Dan Field Notes page, p.570.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

A man of God from Judah cries out against Jeroboam's altar and names a future king, Josiah. The altar splits, and Jeroboam's hand dries up and is healed. The man of God was told not to eat there, but an old prophet lies to him and invites him to dinner. On the way home, a lion kills him and then just stands there next to the donkey.

MAP · 1 KINGS 12

The Kingdom Splits in Two

Israel in the north, Judah in the south, from about 930 BC



WHY IT SPLIT Rehoboam promised heavier burdens, so ten tribes made Jeroboam their king, 1 Kings 12:14 to 20. Judah and Benjamin stayed with David's family, 12:21.

MOVING CAPITALS Israel's capital moved from Shechem to Tirzah, then King Omri built Samaria, 1 Kings 16:24. Judah kept Jerusalem the whole time.

TWO GOLDEN CALVES So his people would not go to Jerusalem to worship, Jeroboam set up golden calves at Bethel and Dan, 1 Kings 12:28 to 29.

HOW IT ENDED Assyria destroyed Israel in 722 BC, 2 Kings 17. Babylon destroyed Judah and Jerusalem about 586 BC, 2 Kings 25.

The border between Israel and Judah moved over the years. This shows it about 900 BC. Borders are approximate.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JEROBOAM'S HAND WITHERS // 2 KINGS 23:4–20; 2 CHRONICLES 34:3–7

1 Suddenly, as Jeroboam was standing beside the altar to burn incense, there came
a man of God from Judah to Bethel by the
word of Yahweh. 2 And he cried out
against the altar by the word of Yahweh,
"O altar, O altar, this is what Yahweh says:
'A son named Josiah will be born to the
house of David, and upon you he will sacrifice the priests of the high places who
burn incense upon you, and human bones
will be burned upon you.'"

3 That day the man of God gave a sign,
saying, "Yahweh has spoken this sign:
'Surely the altar will be split apart, and the
ashes upon it will be poured out.'"

4 Now when King Jeroboam, who was at
the altar in Bethel, heard the word that the
man of God had cried out against it, he
stretched out his hand and said, "Seize
him!" But the hand he stretched out toward him withered, so that he could not
pull it back. 5 And the altar was split apart,
and the ashes poured out, according to
the sign that the man of God had given by
the word of Yahweh.

6 Then the king responded to the man of
God, "Intercede with Yahweh your God
and pray for me that my hand may be restored."

So the man of God interceded with Yahweh, and the king's hand was restored to
him as it was before.

7 Then the king said to the man of God,
"Come home with me and refresh yourself, and I will give you a reward."

8 But the man of God replied, "If you were
to give me half your possessions, I still
would not go with you, nor would I eat
bread or drink water in this place. 9 For
this is what I was commanded by the
word of Yahweh: 'You must not eat bread
or drink water or return by the way you
came.'"

10 So the man of God went another way
and did not return by the way he had
come to Bethel.

THE OLD PROPHET AND THE MAN OF GOD

11 Now a certain old prophet was living in
Bethel, and his sons came and told him all
the deeds that the man of God had done
that day in Bethel. They also told their father the words that the man had spoken to
the king.

12 "Which way did he go?" their father
asked.

And his sons showed him the way taken
by the man of God, who had come from
Judah. 13 So the prophet said to his sons,
"Saddle the donkey for me."

Then they saddled the donkey for him,
and he mounted it 14 and went after the
man of God. He found him sitting under an
oak tree and asked, "Are you the man of
God who came from Judah?"

"I am," he replied.

15 So the prophet said to the man of God,
"Come home with me and eat some
bread."

16 But the man replied, "I cannot go home
with you, and I will not eat bread or drink
water with you in this place. 17 For I have
been told by the word of Yahweh: 'You
must not eat bread or drink water there or
return by the way you came.'"

18 Then the prophet replied, "I too am a
prophet like you, and an angel spoke to
me by the word of Yahweh, saying, 'Bring
him back with you to your house, so that
he may eat bread and drink water.'"

The old prophet was lying to him, 19 but
the man of God went back with him, ate
bread in his house, and drank water.

20 While they were sitting at the table, the
word of Yahweh came to the prophet who
had brought him back, 21 and the prophet
cried out to the man of God who had
come from Judah, "This is what Yahweh
says: 'Because you have defied the word

- **1KI 13:1 [PROPHECY]** A man of God named King Josiah about 300 years before he reigned → 2KI 23:15-16 p.656
- **1KI 13:1 [DEMONIC]** A man of God curses Jeroboam's altar at Bethel
- **1KI 13:2 [NOTE]** JOSIAH BY NAME. About 300 years later King Josiah burned bones on this very altar, 2 Kings 23:15 to 16.
- **1KI 13:3 [PROPHECY]** The man of God said the altar at Bethel would split and its ashes pour out → 1KI 13:5 p.572
- **1KI 13:3 [MIRACLE]** The altar splits and King Jeroboam's hand withers and is healed
- **1KI 13:5 [FULFILLS]** The man of God said the altar at Bethel would split and its ashes pour out ← 1KI 13:3 p.572

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

of Yahweh and have not kept the commandment that Yahweh your God gave you, 22 but you went back and ate bread and drank water in the place where He told you not to do so, your body shall never reach the tomb of your fathers.'"

23 And after the man of God had finished eating and drinking, the old prophet who had brought him back saddled the donkey for him. 24 As he went on his way, a lion met him on the road and killed him, and his body was left lying in the road, with the donkey and the lion standing beside it.

25 And there were men passing by who saw the body lying in the road with the lion standing beside it, and they went and reported this in the city where the old prophet lived.

26 When the prophet who had brought him back from his journey heard this, he said, "It is the man of God who disobeyed the command of Yahweh. Therefore Yahweh has delivered him to the lion, and it has mauled him and killed him, according to the word that Yahweh had spoken to him."

27 Then the old prophet instructed his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." So they saddled it, 28 and he went and found the body lying in the road, with the donkey and the lion standing beside it. The lion had not eaten the body or mauled the donkey. 29 So the old prophet lifted up the body of the man of God, laid it on the donkey, and brought it back to his own city to mourn for him and bury him. 30 Then he laid the body in his own tomb, and they lamented over him, "Oh, my brother!"

31 After he had buried him, the prophet said to his sons, "When I die, you must bury me in the tomb where the man of God is buried. Lay my bones beside his bones, 32 for the message that he cried out by the word of Yahweh against the altar in Bethel and against all the shrines on the high places in the cities of Samaria will surely come to pass."

33 Even after these events, Jeroboam did not repent of his evil ways, but again he appointed priests for the high places from every class of people. He ordained anyone who desired to be a priest of the high places. 34 And this was the sin of the house of Jeroboam that led to its extermination and destruction from the face of the earth.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeroboam's son is sick, so his wife puts on a disguise to visit the blind prophet Ahijah. It does not work. God tells Ahijah she is coming, and the news is bad. In Judah, Rehoboam's people build idol shrines, and Shishak king of Egypt carries off the treasures of the temple and the palace, and Solomon's gold shields. Rehoboam replaces them with bronze.

AHIJAH'S PROPHECY AGAINST JEROBOAM

1 At that time Abijah son of Jeroboam became ill, 2 and Jeroboam said to his wife, "Now get up, disguise yourself so they will not recognize you as my wife, and go to Shiloh. For Ahijah the prophet is there; it was he who spoke about my kingship over this people. 3 Take with you ten loaves of bread, some cakes, and a jar of honey, and go to him. He will tell you what will become of the boy."

4 Jeroboam's wife did as instructed; she arose and went to Shiloh and arrived at Ahijah's house. Now Ahijah could not see, for his eyes were dim because of his age. 5 But Yahweh had said to Ahijah, "Behold, the wife of Jeroboam is coming to ask you about her son, for he is ill. You are to say such and such to her, because when she arrives, she will be disguised."

6 So when Ahijah heard the sound of her feet entering the door, he said, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam! Why are you disguised? For I have been sent to you with bad news. 7 Go, tell Jeroboam that this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'I raised you up from among the people and

- **1KI 13:22 [PROPHECY]** The disobedient man of God would not be buried with his fathers → 1KI 13:24 p.573
- **1KI 13:24 [MIRACLE]** A lion kills the disobedient prophet but does not eat him or the donkey
- **1KI 13:24 [FULFILLS]** The disobedient man of God would not be buried with his fathers ← 1KI 13:22 p.573
- **1KI 13:32 [DEMONIC]** Jeroboam keeps appointing priests for the high places

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

appointed you ruler over My people Israel.
8 I tore the kingdom away from the house
of David and gave it to you. But you have
not been like My servant David, who kept
My commandments and followed Me with
all his heart, doing only what was right in
My eyes.
9 You have done more evil than all who
came before you. You have proceeded to
make for yourself other gods and molten
images to provoke Me, and you have flung
Me behind your back. 10 Because of all
this, behold, I am bringing disaster on the
house of Jeroboam:

I will cut off from Jeroboam every male,
both slave and free,
in Israel;
I will burn up the house of Jeroboam
as one burns up dung until it is gone!
11 Anyone belonging to Jeroboam who dies
in the city
will be eaten by dogs,
and anyone who dies in the field
will be eaten by the birds of the air.'
For Yahweh has spoken.

12 As for you, get up and go home. When
your feet enter the city, the child will die.
13 All Israel will mourn for him and bury
him. For this is the only one belonging to
Jeroboam who will receive a proper bur-
ial, because only in him has Yahweh, the
God of Israel, found any good in the
house of Jeroboam.
14 Moreover, Yahweh will raise up for Him-
self a king over Israel who will cut off the
house of Jeroboam. This is the day—yes,
even today! 15 For Yahweh will strike Israel
as a reed is shaken in the water. He will
uproot Israel from this good land that He
gave their fathers, and He will scatter
them beyond the Euphrates, because they
have made their Asherah poles, provoking
Yahweh to anger. 16 So He will give Israel
over on account of the sins Jeroboam has
committed and has caused Israel to com-
mit."

17 Then Jeroboam's wife got up and de-
parted for Tirzah, and as soon as she
stepped over the threshold of the house,
the boy died. 18 And they buried him, and
all Israel mourned for him, according to
the word that Yahweh had spoken through
His servant Ahijah the prophet.

NADAB SUCCEEDS JEROBOAM

19 As for the rest of the acts of Jeroboam,
how he waged war and how he reigned,
they are indeed written in the Book of the
Chronicles of the Kings of Israel.
20 And the length of Jeroboam's reign was
twenty-two years, and he rested with his
fathers, and his son Nadab reigned in his
place.

REHOBOAM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 12:13–14

21 Meanwhile, Rehoboam son of Solomon
reigned in Judah. He was forty-one years
old when he became king, and he reigned
seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city
Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes of
Israel in which to put His Name. His
mother's name was Naamah the Am-
monite.
22 And Judah did evil in the sight of Yah-
weh, and by the sins they committed they
provoked Him to jealous anger more than
all their fathers had done. 23 They also
built for themselves high places, sacred
pillars, and Asherah poles on every high
hill and under every green tree. 24 There
were even male shrine prostitutes in the
land. They imitated all the abominations of
the nations Yahweh had driven out before
the Israelites.

SHISHAK RAIDS JERUSALEM // 2 CHRONICLES 12:1–12

25 In the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign,
Shishak king of Egypt attacked
Jerusalem. 26 He seized the treasures of

- **1KI 14:9 [DEMONIC]** Jeroboam made other gods and molten images
- **1KI 14:10 [PROPHECY]** Every male of Jeroboam's house would be cut off → 1KI 15:29 p.578
- **1KI 14:12 [PROPHECY]** Jeroboam's son would die the moment his mother stepped into the city → 1KI 14:17 p.574
- **1KI 14:15 [PROPHECY]** Israel would be uprooted and scattered beyond the Euphrates → 2KI 17:6 p.635
- **1KI 14:15 [DEMONIC]** Israel will be scattered because of their Asherah poles
- **1KI 14:17 [FULFILLS]** Jeroboam's son would die the moment his mother stepped into the city ← 1KI 14:12 p.574
- **1KI 14:23 [DEMONIC]** Judah builds high places, pillars, and Asherah poles everywhere
- **1KI 14:25 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Karnak Temple relief records Shishak's campaign into Israel and Judah → FIELD NOTES p.576

THE HEART DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

the house of Yahweh and of the royal palace. He took everything, including all the gold shields that Solomon had made.

27 Then King Rehoboam made bronze shields in their place and committed them to the care of the captains of the guard on duty at the entrance to the royal palace. 28 And whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would bear the shields, and later they would return them to the guardroom.

29 As for the rest of the acts of Rehoboam, along with all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

30 There was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam throughout their days. 31 And Rehoboam rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the City of David his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite. And his son Abijam reigned in his place.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Abijam rules Judah for three years and does not follow God with his whole heart. His son Asa is different. He gets rid of the idols and even removes his grandmother as queen mother for her Asherah pole. In Israel, Baasha kills Jeroboam's son and wipes out Jeroboam's family.

ABIJAM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 13:1–3

1 In the eighteenth year of the reign of Jeroboam son of Nebat, Abijam became king of Judah, 2 and he reigned in Jerusalem three years. His mother's name was Maacah daughter of Abishalom.

3 And Abijam walked in all the sins that his father before him had committed, and his heart was not as fully devoted to Yahweh his God as the heart of David his forefather had been. 4 Nevertheless, for the sake of David, Yahweh his God gave him a lamp in Jerusalem by raising up a son to succeed him and to make Jerusalem strong. 5 For David had done what was right in the eyes of Yahweh and had not turned aside from anything Yahweh commanded all the days of his life, except in the matter of Uriah the Hittite.

6 And there was war between the houses of Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days of Abijam's life.

7 As for the rest of the acts of Abijam, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah? And there was war between Abijam and Jeroboam.

8 And Abijam rested with his fathers and was buried in the City of David, and his son Asa reigned in his place.

ASA REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 14:1–15; 2 CHRONICLES 15:8–19

9 In the twentieth year of Jeroboam's reign over Israel, Asa became king of Judah, 10 and he reigned in Jerusalem forty-one years. His grandmother's name was Maacah daughter of Abishalom.

11 And Asa did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as his father David had done. 12 He banished the male shrine prostitutes from the land and removed all the idols that his fathers had made. 13 He also removed his grandmother Maacah from her position as queen mother because she had made a detestable Asherah pole. Asa chopped down the pole and burned it in the Kidron Valley.

14 The high places were not removed, but Asa's heart was fully devoted to Yahweh all his days. 15 And he brought into the house of Yahweh the silver and gold and the articles that he and his father had dedicated.

WAR BETWEEN ASA AND BAASHA // 2 CHRONICLES 16:1–6

16 Now there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel throughout their days. 17 Baasha king of Israel went to war against Judah and fortified Ramah to pre-

1KI 14:25 [FIELD NOTES] Pharaoh Shishak carved a list of the towns he attacked on a temple wall in Egypt. See the Shishak at Karnak Field Notes page, p.576.

1KI 15:3 [HEART] Abijam's heart was not fully devoted to the Lord like David's.

1KI 15:12 [DEMONIC] Asa removes idols and burns his grandmother's Asherah

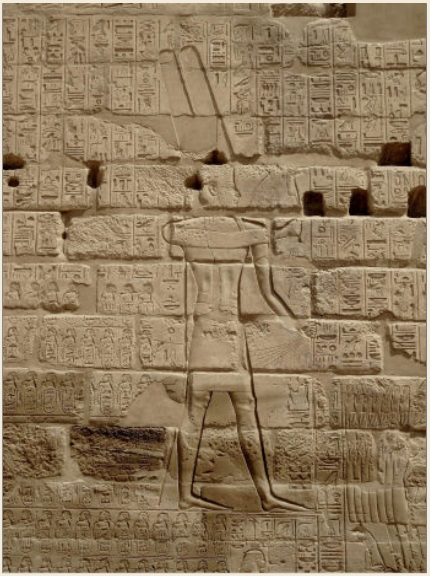
1KI 15:14 [DEMONIC] The high places were not removed

1KI 15:14 [FIELD NOTES] HIGH PLACES were local shrines on hills, outside the temple. A real Judean shrine has been found at Arad. See The Arad Shrine Field Notes page, p.577.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

SHISHAK AT KARNAK

1 KINGS 14:25 TO 28 · 11:40 · 2 CHRONICLES 12:1 TO 12



Part of Shishak's victory carving at Karnak. The tall figure is the god Amun, holding ropes tied to rows of prisoners. Each prisoner's head and shoulders rise from an oval with the name of a town Shishak attacked. Photo Olaf Tausch, CC BY 3.0.

GOLD TO BRONZE

Shishak carried off the gold shields Solomon had made, and Rehoboam made bronze shields to take their place, 14:26 to 27. Whenever the king went to the temple, the guards carried them and then put them back in the guardroom, 14:28. Gold to bronze in five years shows how fast the glory faded.

THE FIELD OF ABRAM?

One name in the Negev part of the list may read the Field of Abram. Some think it is the oldest mention of Abraham's name outside the Bible, but the reading is debated.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The list does not tell the story the way the Bible does, and scholars debate the route the army took. It does show that a pharaoh named Sheshonq raided this land at about the time 1 Kings gives.

WHAT IT IS

A giant carving on an outside wall of the temple of Amun at Karnak, in Luxor, Egypt. It shows Pharaoh Sheshonq I, the Bible's Shishak, and long rows of tied up prisoners. Each prisoner stands for a town, with its name written in an oval.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 925 BC. Sheshonq I ruled Egypt from about 943 to 922 BC. His raid came in the fifth year of Rehoboam, 14:25.

WHAT IT SAYS

Over 150 places are listed. Readable names include Megiddo, Taanach, Beth Shean, Gibeon and Mahanaim, plus many towns in the Negev. Jerusalem is not named in the parts that can still be read. 2 Chronicles 12:7 to 9 says Rehoboam humbled himself, and Shishak took the treasures instead of destroying the city.

MORE PROOF

A broken piece of a victory stone with Sheshonq's name was found at Megiddo in the 1920s. Jeroboam had once run away to Shishak in Egypt, 11:40.

WHO WAS SHISHAK?

He started a new family of pharaohs, the 22nd Dynasty, whose fathers had come to Egypt from Libya. Egypt had been weak for years, and he wanted to make it strong again.

THE BUBASTITE GATE

The carving is beside a temple gate called the Bubastite Portal, named after Bubastis, the Nile Delta city his family was said to come from. The rest of his building work there was never finished.

STILL ON THE WALL

It is still on the temple wall at Karnak, where visitors can see it today. Many of the town names have worn away in the 2,900 years since it was carved.

BOTH KINGDOMS

Many towns on the list, like Megiddo and Beth Shean, were in Jeroboam's northern kingdom, even though Jeroboam had once hidden at Shishak's court. The raid hit both kingdoms, not only Judah.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

vent anyone from leaving or entering the territory of Asa king of Judah.

18 So Asa withdrew all the silver and gold that remained in the treasuries of the house of Yahweh and the royal palace. He entrusted it to his servants and sent them with this message to Ben-hadad son of Tabrimmon, the son of Hezion, the king of Aram, who was ruling in Damascus: 19 "Let there be a treaty between me and you as there was between my father and your father. See, I have sent you a gift of silver and gold. Now go and break your treaty with Baasha king of Israel, so that he will withdraw from me."

20 And Ben-hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies against the cities of Israel, conquering Ijon, Dan, Abel-beth-maacah, and the whole land of Naphtali, including the region of Chinnereth.

21 When Baasha learned of this, he stopped fortifying Ramah and withdrew to Tirzah. 22 Then King Asa summoned all the men of Judah, with no exceptions, and they carried away the stones of Ramah and the timbers Baasha had used for building. And with these materials King Asa built up Geba of Benjamin, as well as Mizpah.

JEHOSHAPHAT SUCCEEDS ASA // 2 CHRONICLES 17:1–19

23 Now the rest of the acts of Asa, along with all his might, all his accomplishments, and the cities he built, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah? In his old age, however, he became diseased in his feet.

24 And Asa rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the city of his father David, and his son Jehoshaphat reigned in his place.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE ARAD SHRINE

1 KINGS 15:14 · 22:43 · 2 KINGS 18:4 AND 22 · DEUTERONOMY 12:5 TO 14



The holy of holies from the shrine at Arad, with its two incense altars and standing stone, in the Israel Museum. Photo Yair Haklai, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small temple inside a Judean fort at Arad in the Negev desert. It had a yard with an altar for burnt offerings and a small back room, a holy of holies, with two stone incense altars and at least one standing stone. The Leviticus Field Notes page shows the same shrine.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most now date the shrine to the 700s BC. It was used for only a short time and then carefully buried and covered over.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Yohanan Aharoni dug Tel Arad from 1962 to 1967. Writing on broken pottery found in the fort mentions the house of Yahweh, most likely the temple in Jerusalem.

HIGH PLACES

God told Israel to bring their offerings to the one place He would choose, Deuteronomy 12:5. But the people kept offering on local high places. Even good kings like Asa and Jehoshaphat did not remove them, 15:14 and 22:43.

WHO CLOSED IT?

Many think the shrine was closed when King Hezekiah removed the high places and told Judah to worship only in Jerusalem, 2 Kings 18:4 and 22. Others link it to Josiah's reforms or to other causes.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Arad is not named in 1 Kings, and its

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

shrine is later than Asa. It shows what a high place for Yahweh in Judah looked like, the kind 1 Kings says was not removed.

NADAB REIGNS IN ISRAEL

25 In the second year of Asa's reign over Judah, Nadab son of Jeroboam became king of Israel, and he reigned two years. 26 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of his father and in his sin, which he had caused Israel to commit.

27 Then Baasha son of Ahijah of the house of Issachar conspired against Nadab, and Baasha struck him down at Gibbethon of the Philistines while Nadab and all Israel were besieging the city. 28 In the third year of Asa's reign over Judah, Baasha killed Nadab and reigned in his place.

29 As soon as Baasha became king, he struck down the entire household of Jeroboam. He did not leave to Jeroboam anyone who breathed, but destroyed them all according to the word that Yahweh had spoken through His servant Ahijah the Shilonite, 30 because of the sins Jeroboam had committed and had caused Israel to commit, and because he had provoked Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger.

31 As for the rest of the acts of Nadab, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel? 32 And there was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel throughout their days.

BAASHA REIGNS IN ISRAEL

33 In the third year of Asa's reign over Judah, Baasha son of Ahijah became king of all Israel, and he reigned in Tirzah twenty-four years.

34 And Baasha did evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked in the way of Jeroboam and in his sin, which he had caused Israel to commit.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Kings come and go fast in Israel. Zimri rules for seven days, then burns the palace down on himself. Omri builds a new capital, Samaria. His son Ahab marries Jezebel and builds a temple for Baal. He does more to anger God than all the kings before him.

JEHU'S PROPHECY AGAINST BAASHA

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jehu son of Hanani against Baasha, saying: 2 "Even though I lifted you out of the dust
and made you ruler over My people Israel,
you have walked in the way of Jeroboam
and have caused My people Israel to sin
and to provoke Me to anger by their sins.
3 So now I will consume Baasha and his
house, and I will make your house like that
of Jeroboam son of Nebat:

4 Anyone belonging to Baasha who dies in
the city
will be eaten by dogs,
and anyone who dies in the field
will be eaten by the birds of the air."

5 As for the rest of the acts of Baasha, along with his accomplishments and might, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel? 6 And Baasha rested with his fathers and was buried in Tirzah, and his son Elah reigned in his place.

7 Moreover, the word of Yahweh came through the prophet Jehu son of Hanani against Baasha and his house, because of all the evil he had done in the sight of Yahweh, provoking Him to anger with the work of his hands and becoming like the house of Jeroboam, and also because Baasha had struck down the house of Jeroboam.

ELAH REIGNS IN ISRAEL

8 In the twenty-sixth year of Asa's reign over Judah, Elah son of Baasha became king of Israel, and he reigned in Tirzah two years.

9 However, while Elah was in Tirzah getting drunk in the house of Arza the stew-

1KI 15:29 [FULFILLS] Every male of Jeroboam's house would be cut off ← 1KI 14:10-11 p.574

1KI 16:1 [PROPHECY] Jehu prophesied Baasha's dynasty would be wiped out like Jeroboam's → 1KI 16:11-12 p.579

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ard of his household there, Elah's servant Zimri, the commander of half his chariots, conspired against him. 10 So in the twenty-seventh year of Asa's reign over Judah, Zimri went in, struck Elah down, and killed him. And Zimri reigned in his place.

11 As soon as Zimri began to reign and was seated on the throne, he struck down the entire household of Baasha. He did not leave a single male, whether a kinsman or friend. 12 So Zimri destroyed the entire household of Baasha, according to the word that Yahweh had spoken against Baasha through Jehu the prophet. 13 This happened because of all the sins Baasha and his son Elah had committed and had caused Israel to commit, provoking Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their worthless idols.

14 As for the rest of the acts of Elah, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

ZIMRI REIGNS IN ISRAEL

15 In the twenty-seventh year of Asa's reign over Judah, Zimri reigned in Tirzah for seven days. Now the troops were encamped against Gibbethon of the Philistines, 16 and the people in the camp heard that Zimri had conspired against the king and struck him down. So there in the camp that very day, all Israel proclaimed Omri, the commander of the army, king over Israel.

17 Then Omri and all the Israelites marched up from Gibbethon and besieged Tirzah. 18 When Zimri saw that the city was captured, he entered the citadel of the royal palace and burned it down upon himself. So he died 19 because of the sins he had committed, doing evil in the sight of Yahweh and following the example of Jeroboam and the sin he had committed and had caused Israel to commit.

20 As for the rest of the acts of Zimri and the treason he committed, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

OMRI REIGNS IN ISRAEL

21 At that time the people of Israel were divided: Half of the people supported Tibni son of Ginath as king, and half supported Omri. 22 But the followers of Omri proved stronger than those of Tibni son of Ginath. So Tibni died and Omri became king.

23 In the thirty-first year of Asa's reign over Judah, Omri became king of Israel, and he reigned twelve years, six of them in Tirzah. 24 He bought the hill of Samaria from Shemer for 150 pounds of silver and built a city there, calling it Samaria after the name of Shemer, who had owned the hill.

25 But Omri did evil in the sight of Yahweh and acted more wickedly than all who were before him. 26 For he walked in all the ways of Jeroboam son of Nebat and in his sins, which he caused Israel to commit, provoking Yahweh, the God of Israel, to anger with their worthless idols.

27 As for the rest of the acts of Omri, along with his accomplishments and the might he exercised, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

28 And Omri rested with his fathers and was buried in Samaria, and his son Ahab reigned in his place.

AHAB REIGNS IN ISRAEL, MARRIES JEZEBEL

29 In the thirty-eighth year of Asa's reign over Judah, Ahab son of Omri became king of Israel, and he reigned in Samaria twenty-two years.

- **1KI 16:11 [FULFILLS]** Jehu prophesied Baasha's dynasty would be wiped out like Jeroboam's ← 1KI 16:1-4 p.578
- **1KI 16:13 [DEMONIC]** Baasha and Elah angered God with worthless idols
- **1KI 16:16 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** King Omri is named outside the Bible on the Mesha Stele and in Assyrian records, see The Mesha Stele Field Notes page, p.424
- **1KI 16:23 [FIELD NOTES]** OMRI ruled only twelve years, but other nations remembered him. A Moabite king named him on a stone. See The Mesha Stele Field Notes page in Ruth, p.424.
- **1KI 16:26 [DEMONIC]** Omri angers God with worthless idols
- **1KI 16:28 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** King Ahab is named outside the Bible on the Kurkh Monolith, see The Kurkh Monolith Field Notes page, p.582
- **1KI 16:29 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Kurkh Monolith of Shalmaneser III → FIELD NOTES p.582
- **1KI 16:29 [FIELD NOTES]** An Assyrian king's stone names Ahab and his 2,000 chariots. See The Kurkh Monolith Field Notes page, p.582.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

30 However, Ahab son of Omri did evil in
the sight of Yahweh, more than all who
were before him. 31 And as if it were not
enough for him to walk in the sins of Jer-
oboam son of Nebat, he even married
Jezebel the daughter of Ethbaal king of
the Sidonians, and he then proceeded to
serve and worship Baal.

32 First, Ahab set up an altar for Baal in the
temple of Baal that he had built in
Samaria. 33 Then he set up an Asherah
pole. Thus Ahab did more to provoke Yah-
weh, the God of Israel, to anger than all
the kings of Israel before him.

34 In Ahab's days, Hiel the Bethelite rebuilt
Jericho. At the cost of Abiram his first-
born he laid its foundation, and at the cost
of Segub his youngest he set up its gates,
according to the word that Yahweh had
spoken through Joshua son of Nun.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Elijah walks into the story and tells King Ahab: no rain until I say so. God feeds Elijah by a brook using ravens, then sends him to a widow in Zarephath. Her flour and oil do not run out. When her son dies, Elijah stretches out on him three times and prays, and the boy comes back to life.

THE RAVENS FEED ELIJAH

1 Now Elijah the Tishbite, who was among
the settlers of Gilead, said to Ahab, "As
surely as Yahweh, the God of Israel, lives,
before whom I stand, there will be neither
dew nor rain in these years except at my
word!"

- **1KI 16:31 [DEMONIC]** Ahab marries Jezebel and builds a temple for Baal
- **1KI 16:31 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 2:20 p.2085
- **1KI 16:34 [DEMONIC]** Joshua's curse on Jericho's rebuilder fulfilled in Hiel of Bethel's sons
- **1KI 16:34 [FULFILLS]** Joshua cursed the rebuilder of Jericho: would lay its foundation at the cost of his firstborn and gate at the cost of his youngest ← JOSH 6:26 p.348
- **1KI 16:34 [NOTE]** HIEL'S SONS. Many think Hiel offered his sons as a sacrifice and buried them in the foundations, a pagan custom. Others think his sons simply died as Joshua's curse said, Joshua 6:26. Either way, God's word came true.
- **1KI 17:1 [PROPHECY]** Elijah said there would be no dew or rain until he said so → 1KI 18:45; JAS 5:17 p.585
- **1KI 17:1 [MIRACLE]** Elijah announces that no dew or rain will fall until he says so
- **1KI 17:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:17-18 p.2007
- **1KI 17:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:6 p.2097

2 Then a revelation from Yahweh came to
Elijah: 3 "Leave here, turn eastward, and
hide yourself by the Brook of Cherith, east
of the Jordan. 4 And you are to drink from
the brook, and I have commanded the
ravens to feed you there."

5 So Elijah did what Yahweh had told him,
and he went and lived by the Brook of
Cherith, east of the Jordan. 6 The ravens
would bring him bread and meat in the
morning and evening, and he would drink
from the brook. 7 Some time later, how-
ever, the brook dried up because there
had been no rain in the land.

THE WIDOW OF ZAREPHATH

8 Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah:
9 "Get up and go to Zarephath of Sidon,
and stay there. Behold, I have com-
manded a widow there to provide for
you."

10 So Elijah got up and went to Zarephath.
When he arrived at the city gate, there
was a widow gathering sticks. Elijah
called to her and said, "Please bring me a
little water in a cup, so that I may drink." 11
And as she was going to get it, he called
to her and said, "Please bring me a piece
of bread."

12 But she replied, "As surely as Yahweh
your God lives, I have no bread—only a
handful of flour in a jar and a little oil in a
jug. Look, I am gathering a couple of
sticks to take home and prepare a meal
for myself and my son, so that we may eat
it and die."

13 "Do not be afraid," Elijah said to her. "Go
and do as you have said. But first make
me a small cake of bread from what you
have, and bring it out to me. Afterward,
make some for yourself and your son, 14
for this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel,
says: 'The jar of flour will not be ex-
hausted and the jug of oil will not run dry
until the day Yahweh sends rain upon the
face of the earth.'"

- **1KI 17:1 [NOTE]** ELIJAH'S NAME means my God is Yahweh. His whole life fought Baal worship.
- **1KI 17:4 [MIRACLE]** Ravens fed Elijah at Brook Cherith
- **1KI 17:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 4:25-26 p.1655
- **1KI 17:14 [PROPHECY]** The widow's flour and oil would not run out until the rain came → 1KI 17:16 p.581

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

15 So she went and did according to the
word of Elijah, and there was food every
day for Elijah and the woman and her
household. 16 The jar of flour was not ex-
hausted and the jug of oil did not run dry,
according to the word that Yahweh had
spoken through Elijah.

ELIJAH RAISES THE WIDOW'S SON

17 Later, the son of the woman who owned
the house became ill, and his sickness
grew worse and worse, until no breath re-
mained in him. 18 "O man of God," said the
woman to Elijah, "what have you done to
me? Have you come to remind me of my
iniquity and cause the death of my son?"

19 But Elijah said to her, "Give me your
son."

So he took him from her arms, carried him
to the upper room where he was staying,
and laid him on his own bed. 20 Then he
cried out to Yahweh, "O Yahweh my God,
have You also brought tragedy on this
widow who has opened her home to me,
by causing her son to die?" 21 Then he
stretched himself out over the child three
times and cried out to Yahweh, "O Yah-
weh my God, please let this boy's life re-
turn to him!"

22 And Yahweh listened to the voice of Eli-
jah, and the child's life returned to him,
and he lived. 23 Then Elijah took the child,
brought him down from the upper room
into the house, and gave him to his
mother. "Look, your son is alive," Elijah
declared.

24 Then the woman said to Elijah, "Now I
know that you are a man of God and that
the word of Yahweh from your mouth is
truth."

- 1KI 17:14 **[MIRACLE]** Widow's flour and oil did not run out during the drought
- 1KI 17:16 **[FULFILLS]** The widow's flour and oil would not run out until the rain came ← 1KI 17:14 p.580
- 1KI 17:17 **[MIRACLE]** Elijah raised the widow's son from death

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Three years later, Elijah challenges 450 prophets of Baal to a showdown on Mount Carmel. Two altars, two bulls, no matches. Baal's prophets shout and dance all day. Nothing. Elijah soaks his altar with water, prays one short prayer, and fire falls from heaven. Then it rains.

ELIJAH'S MESSAGE TO AHAB

1 After a long time, in the third year of the
drought, the word of Yahweh came to Eli-
jah: "Go and present yourself to Ahab, and
I will send rain upon the face of the earth."

2 So Elijah went to present himself to
Ahab. The famine was severe in Samaria,
3 and Ahab summoned Obadiah, who was
in charge of the palace.

(Now Obadiah greatly feared Yahweh, 4
for when Jezebel had slaughtered the
prophets of Yahweh, Obadiah had taken a
hundred prophets and hidden them, fifty
men per cave, providing them with food
and water.)

5 Then Ahab said to Obadiah, "Go
throughout the land to every spring and
every valley. Perhaps we will find grass to
keep the horses and mules alive so that
we will not have to destroy any livestock."

6 So they divided the land to explore. Ahab
went one way by himself, and Obadiah
went the other way by himself.

7 Now as Obadiah went on his way, Elijah
suddenly met him. When Obadiah recog-
nized him, he fell facedown and said, "Is it
you, my lord Elijah?"

8 "It is I," he answered. "Go tell your mas-
ter, 'Elijah is here!'"

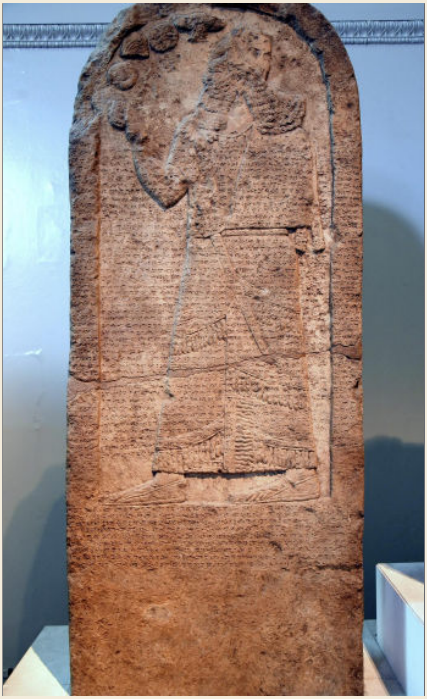
9 But Obadiah replied, "How have I sinned,
that you are handing your servant over to
Ahab to put me to death? 10 As surely as
Yahweh your God lives, there is no nation
or kingdom where my lord has not sent
someone to search for you. When they
said, 'He is not here,' he made that king-
dom or nation swear that they had not
found you. 11 And now you say, 'Go tell
your master that Elijah is here!'

12 I do not know where the Spirit of Yah-
weh may carry you off when I leave you.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE KURKH MONOLITH

1 KINGS 16:29 · 20:1 TO 34 · 22:1 TO 4



The Kurkh Monolith of Shalmaneser III in the British Museum. The king stands before the signs of his gods, and cuneiform writing covers the stone. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

A MESSY STONE

The writing has many copying mistakes, so scholars use its numbers with care. Shalmaneser told this battle again on later stones, and the number of enemies he says he killed grows each time, from 14,000 to 25,000 and more.

NEAR THE BLACK OBELISK

It stands in the British Museum's Assyrian rooms, not far from the Black Obelisk, which shows Jehu, the man who killed Ahab's son Joram, 2 Kings 9.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Shalmaneser said he won, but he did not march on for years, so many think the battle was closer than he admits. The stone is one of the oldest mentions of a king of Israel outside the Bible.

WHAT IT IS

A tall stone with a carving of King Shalmaneser III of Assyria, covered in wedge shaped cuneiform writing about his wars.

HOW OLD IT IS

It tells about the battle of Qarqar in 853 BC and was made soon after, about 852 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Kurkh, near Diyarbakir in southeast Turkey, by J. G. Taylor, the British consul there, in 1861. It is in the British Museum in London.

AHAB THE ISRAELITE

The stone says twelve kings fought Shalmaneser at Qarqar in Syria and names eleven of them. One is Ahab the Israelite, with 2,000 chariots and 10,000 soldiers, the most chariots of anyone. Some think 2,000 is a copying slip for 200. Either way, Ahab was a strong king.

THE BIBLE AND QARQAR

The Bible does not tell about this battle. But 1 Kings 22:1 says there were three years without war between Aram and Israel, and 20:34 says Ahab made a treaty with Ben hadad. Many think that is when Israel and Aram fought side by side against Assyria.

WHO ELSE FOUGHT

Hadadezer of Damascus brought 1,200 chariots, 1,200 horsemen and 20,000 soldiers. Others came from Hamath, Egypt and Arabia. Gindibu the Arab brought 1,000 camels, the first known mention of Arabs in any record.

AHAB IN THE BIBLE

1 Kings says Ahab built an ivory house and many cities, 22:39, and fought Aram more than once, chapters 20 and 22. A king with that many chariots fits a strong, rich Israel, even though the Bible cares more about his idols than his army.

A DATE TO COUNT FROM

Assyria named every year after an official, and one of those years had a solar eclipse that we know happened in 763 BC. Counting from there, Qarqar was 853 BC, so Ahab's reign can be dated within a few years. It is one of the anchor dates for all the kings of Israel and Judah.

DEMONIC

Then when I go and tell Ahab and he does not find you, he will kill me. But I, your servant, have feared Yahweh from my youth. 13 Was it not reported to my lord what I did when Jezebel slaughtered the prophets of Yahweh? I hid a hundred prophets of Yahweh, fifty men per cave, and I provided them with food and water. 14 And now you say, 'Go tell your lord that Elijah is here!' He will kill me!"

15 Then Elijah said, "As surely as Yahweh of Hosts lives, before whom I stand, I will present myself to Ahab today."

ELIJAH ON MOUNT CARMEL

16 So Obadiah went to inform Ahab, who went to meet Elijah. 17 When Ahab saw Elijah, he said to him, "Is that you, O troubler of Israel?"

18 "I have not troubled Israel," Elijah replied, "but you and your father's house have, for you have forsaken the commandments of Yahweh and have followed the Baals. 19 Now summon all Israel to meet me on Mount Carmel, along with the four hundred and fifty prophets of Baal and the four hundred prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel's table."

20 So Ahab summoned all the Israelites and assembled the prophets on Mount Carmel. 21 Then Elijah approached all the people and said, "How long will you waver between two opinions? If Yahweh is God, follow Him. But if Baal is God, follow him."

But the people did not answer a word.

22 Then Elijah said to the people, "I am the only remaining prophet of Yahweh, but Baal has four hundred and fifty prophets. 23 Get two bulls for us. Let the prophets of Baal choose one bull for themselves, cut it into pieces, and place it on the wood but not light the fire. And I will prepare the other bull and place it on the wood but not light the fire. 24 Then you may call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of Yahweh. The God who answers by fire, He is God."

And all the people answered, "What you say is good."

25 Then Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, "Since you are so numerous, choose for yourselves one bull and prepare it first. Then call on the name of your god, but do not light the fire."

26 And they took the bull that was given them, prepared it, and called on the name of Baal from morning until noon, shouting, "O Baal, answer us!"

But there was no sound, and no one answered as they leaped around the altar they had made.

27 At noon Elijah began to taunt them, saying, "Shout louder, for he is a god! Perhaps he is deep in thought, or occupied, or on a journey. Perhaps he is sleeping and must be awakened!"

28 So they shouted louder and cut themselves with knives and lances, as was their custom, until the blood gushed over them.

29 Midday passed, and they kept on raving until the time of the evening sacrifice. But there was no response; no one answered, no one paid attention.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ELIJAH ON MOUNT CARMEL

What Happened

1 KINGS 17:1 · 18:1 TO 46 · DEUTERONOMY 11:16 TO 17 · JAMES 5:17 TO 18

WHY BAAL?

Baal was the Canaanite storm god. People believed he sent the rain and made crops grow. Ahab and Jezebel made Baal worship the religion of Israel, 16:31 to 33.

THE DROUGHT

Elijah told Ahab there would be no dew or rain except at his word, 17:1. If Baal was the god of rain, three dry years were a public insult to him. Moses had warned that turning to other gods would shut up the sky, Deuteronomy 11:16 to 17.

1KI 18:18 [DEMONIC] Elijah challenges the prophets of Baal on Mount Carmel

1KI 18:19 [NOTE] MOUNT CARMEL is a ridge by the sea in northern Israel. See the Big Question pages Elijah on Mount Carmel, p.583.

1KI 18:21 [NOTABLE] Elijah's challenge still lands today. You cannot keep one foot in each camp. Pick a side. The people did not answer a word.

1KI 18:27 [NOTE] OCCUPIED. The Hebrew word may be a polite way of saying Baal had gone off to relieve himself. Elijah was mocking them.

THE HEART MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

THE CHALLENGE
Elijah called 450 prophets of Baal and 400 prophets of Asherah to Mount Carmel. Two bulls, two altars, no fire. The god who answers by fire, He is God, 18:24.

BAAL'S TURN
They shouted from morning until noon and danced around the altar. Elijah mocked them: Shout louder! Maybe he is busy, or traveling, or asleep! They cut themselves until the blood flowed. No answer, 18:26 to 29.

ELIJAH'S TURN
He rebuilt Yahweh's altar with twelve stones, dug a trench, and had twelve jars of water poured on it all. He prayed a short prayer. Fire fell and burned up the sacrifice, the wood, the stones, the dust and the water, 18:30 to 38.

THE QUESTION
Was the fire a real miracle? And why did Elijah have the prophets of Baal killed?

Every View
DEUTERONOMY 13:1 TO 5 · 18:20 · LUKE 9:51 TO 56 · ROMANS 12:19

VIEW 1: A REAL MIRACLE
Most Christians and Jews through history read it as written: God sent fire from heaven in front of everyone. The people fell on their faces and said, Yahweh, He is God! 18:39.

VIEW 2: LIGHTNING SENT BY GOD
Some think God sent a bolt of lightning, the fire of God, Job 1:16, right before the storm that ended the drought, 18:45. Even then, the timing and the soaked altar make it no less a miracle.

VIEW 3: A STORY TOLD TO TEACH
Many critical scholars see the story as told to show Yahweh rules the rain and fire, not Baal, without saying how much happened as written.

THE KILLING OF BAAL'S PROPHETS
Elijah had the 450 prophets of Baal killed at the brook Kishon, 18:40. Under Moses' law, a prophet who led Israel to other gods was to die, Deuteronomy 13:5. Jezebel had already killed Yahweh's prophets, 18:4. Many see it as Israel's law, not personal revenge.

NOT FOR TODAY
When James and John wanted to call down fire like Elijah, Jesus turned and rebuked them, Luke 9:54 to 55. Christians do not use violence for God. Vengeance belongs to God, Romans 12:19.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The question on Carmel is still the question: How long will you waver between two opinions? If Yahweh is God, follow Him, 18:21.

30 Then Elijah said to all the people, "Come
near to me." So all the people approached
him, and he repaired the altar of Yahweh
that had been torn down.
31 And Elijah took twelve stones, one for
each tribe of the sons of Jacob, to whom
the word of Yahweh had come and said,
"Israel shall be your name." 32 And with the
stones, Elijah built an altar in the name of
Yahweh. Then he dug a trench around the
altar large enough to hold about four gallons of seed.
33 Next, he arranged the wood, cut up the
bull, placed it on the wood, 34 and said,
"Fill four waterpots and pour the water on
the offering and on the wood."
"Do it a second time," he said, and they
did it a second time.
"Do it a third time," he said, and they did it
a third time.
35 So the water ran down around the altar
and even filled the trench.

ELIJAH'S PRAYER

36 At the time of the evening sacrifice, Elijah the prophet approached the altar and
said, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac,
and Israel, let it be known this day that
You are God in Israel and that I am Your
servant and have done all these things at
Your command. 37 Answer me, O Yahweh!
Answer me, so that this people will know
that You, Yahweh, are God, and that You
have turned their hearts back again."

1KI 18:36 [MIRACLE] Fire from heaven burns up Elijah's soaked sacrifice on Mount Carmel
1KI 18:37 [HEART] Elijah prayed that the people would know God was turning their hearts back to Him. The fire was for their hearts.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

38 Then the fire of Yahweh fell and consumed the sacrifice, the wood, the stones, and the dust, and it licked up the water in the trench.

39 When all the people saw this, they fell facedown and said, "Yahweh, He is God! Yahweh, He is God!"

40 Then Elijah ordered them, "Seize the prophets of Baal! Do not let a single one escape." So they seized them, and Elijah brought them down to the Kishon Valley and slaughtered them there.

YAHWEH SENDS RAIN

41 And Elijah said to Ahab, "Go up, eat and drink, for there is the sound of a heavy rain."

42 So Ahab went up to eat and drink. But Elijah climbed to the summit of Carmel, bent down on the ground, and put his face between his knees. 43 "Go and look toward the sea," he said to his servant.

So the servant went and looked, and he said, "There is nothing there."

Seven times Elijah said, "Go back."

44 On the seventh time the servant reported, "There is a cloud as small as a man's hand rising from the sea."

And Elijah replied, "Go and tell Ahab, 'Prepare your chariot and go down before the rain stops you.'"

45 Meanwhile, the sky grew dark with clouds and wind, and a heavy rain began to fall. So Ahab rode away and went to Jezreel.

46 And the hand of Yahweh came upon Elijah, and he tucked his cloak into his belt and ran ahead of Ahab all the way to Jezreel.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Jezebel threatens to kill Elijah, and the great prophet runs for his life and asks God to let him die. An angel feeds him, and he walks forty days to Mount Horeb. God is not in the wind, the earthquake or the fire. Then comes a still, small voice. Then Elijah throws his cloak on Elisha.

ELIJAH FLEES FROM JEZEBEL

1 Now Ahab told Jezebel everything that Elijah had done and how he had killed all the prophets with the sword. 2 So Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, "May the gods deal with me, and ever so severely, if by this time tomorrow I have not made your life like the lives of those you killed!"

3 And Elijah was afraid and ran for his life. When he came to Beersheba in Judah, he left his servant there, 4 while he himself went a day's journey into the wilderness. He sat down under a broom tree and prayed that he might die. "I have had enough, Yahweh," he said. "Take my life, for I am no better than my fathers."

5 Then he lay down under the broom tree and fell asleep.

Suddenly an angel touched him and said, "Get up and eat."

6 And he looked around, and there by his head was a cake of bread baked over hot coals, and a jar of water. So he ate and drank and lay down again.

7 A second time the angel of Yahweh returned and touched him, saying, "Get up and eat, or the journey will be too much for you."

8 So he got up and ate and drank. And strengthened by that food, he walked forty days and forty nights until he reached Horeb, the mountain of God.

1KI 18:39 [DEMONIC] The people cry that God is God and Baal's prophets die
1KI 18:39 [NOTABLE] Elijah's name means my God is Yahweh, and here the whole crowd shouts his name back as a confession. The fire settled the question.
1KI 18:41 [MIRACLE] The drought ends when Elijah prays, and Elijah outruns Ahab's chariot by the power of Yahweh
1KI 18:42 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:17-18 p.2007
1KI 18:45 [FULFILLS] Elijah said there would be no dew or rain until he said so ← 1KI 17:1 p.580

1KI 19:2 [DEMONIC] Jezebel swears by her gods to kill Elijah
1KI 19:5 [MIRACLE] An angel feeds Elijah twice, and that food gives him strength for forty days and nights
1KI 19:5 [NOTE] THE ANGEL. 19:7 calls him the angel of Yahweh, so his words print red, like the angel of Yahweh in Judges. Some think he was an angel God sent, and others think it was God Himself appearing.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING

YAHWEH SPEAKS TO ELIJAH AT HOREB

9 There Elijah entered a cave and spent
the night. And the word of Yahweh came
to him, saying, "What are you doing here,
Elijah?"

10 *"I have been very zealous for Yahweh, the
God of Hosts," he replied, "but the Israelites
have forsaken Your covenant, torn down Your
altars, and killed Your prophets with the
sword. I am the only one left, and they are
seeking my life as well."*

11 Then Yahweh said, "Go out and stand on
the mountain before Yahweh. Behold,
Yahweh is about to pass by."

And a great and mighty wind tore into the
mountains and shattered the rocks before
Yahweh, but Yahweh was not in the wind.

After the wind there was an earthquake,
but Yahweh was not in the earthquake.

12 After the earthquake there was a fire,
but Yahweh was not in the fire.

And after the fire came a still, small voice.

13 When Elijah heard it, he wrapped his
face in his cloak and went out and stood
at the mouth of the cave. Suddenly a
voice came to him and said, "What are
you doing here, Elijah?"

14 *"I have been very zealous for Yahweh, the
God of Hosts," he replied, "but the Israelites
have forsaken Your covenant, torn down Your
altars, and killed Your prophets with the
sword. I am the only one left, and they are
seeking my life as well."*

15 Then Yahweh said to him, "Go back by
the way you came, and go to the Desert
of Damascus. When you arrive, you are to
anoint Hazael as king over Aram. 16 You
are also to anoint Jehu son of Nimshi as
king over Israel and Elisha son of Shaphat
from Abel-meholah to succeed you as
prophet.

17 Then Jehu will put to death whoever es-
capes the sword of Hazael, and Elisha will
put to death whoever escapes the sword
of Jehu.

18 *Nevertheless, I have reserved seven thousand
in Israel—all whose knees have not bowed to
Baal and whose mouths have not kissed him."*

- **1KI 19:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:3 p.1813
- **1KI 19:11 [MIRACLE]** Wind, earthquake, fire, then the still small voice
- **1KI 19:12 [NOTABLE]** God was not in the wind, the earthquake or the fire. He came to a tired, scared prophet in a whisper. Big shows are not the only way God speaks.
- **1KI 19:12 [NOTE]** A STILL, SMALL VOICE. The Hebrew can also mean a gentle whisper or a sound of thin silence. See the Big Question pages The Still Small Voice, p.586.
- **1KI 19:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:3 p.1813
- **1KI 19:15 [PROPHECY]** Elijah was told to anoint Hazael, Jehu, and Elisha, and judgment would come through them → 1KI 19:19; 2KI 8:13; 2KI 9:6 p.587
- **1KI 19:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Hazael king of Aram is named in Shalmaneser III's records and on ivory and bronze pieces carried off from Damascus

THE BIG QUESTION

THE STILL SMALL VOICE

What Happened

1 KINGS 19:1 TO 18 · EXODUS 33:18 TO 23 · 34:5 TO 7 · ROMANS 11:2 TO 5

FROM VICTORY TO DESPAIR

Right after the fire on Carmel, Jezebel sent word that Elijah would be dead by tomorrow. Elijah ran for his life, sat under a broom tree in the desert, and asked God to let him die, 19:1 to 4.

GOD'S FIRST ANSWER

No lecture. God let him sleep, and an angel brought food and water, twice, 19:5 to 8. On that food he walked forty days and nights to Horeb, the mountain of God, also called Sinai.

WHAT ARE YOU DOING HERE?

In a cave God asked, What are you doing here, Elijah? He answered, I alone am left, and they want to kill me too, 19:9 to 10.

WIND, EARTHQUAKE, FIRE

A great wind tore the mountains, but Yahweh was not in the wind. Then an earthquake, and a fire, but He was not in them. After the fire came a still, small voice, 19:11 to 12.

THE SAME MOUNTAIN

Moses met God on this same mountain with fire, smoke and earthquake, Exodus 19:18. And on this mountain God hid

- **1KI 19:15 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Hazael Field Notes page in 2 Chronicles, p.736.
- **1KI 19:16 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** King Jehu is named, and likely pictured, on the Black Obelisk, see the Jehu on the Black Obelisk Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.617
- **1KI 19:18 [DEMONIC]** Seven thousand have not bowed to Baal
- **1KI 19:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:4 p.1813
- **1KI 19:18 [NOTABLE]** Elijah thought he was the only one left. God said there were seven thousand more. You are never as alone as you feel. Paul uses this verse in Romans 11:4.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

Moses in a cleft of the rock and passed by, Exodus 33:22. Now Elijah stood at the mouth of a cave as Yahweh passed by.

THE QUESTION

What does the still small voice mean? Does God usually speak in a whisper?

Every View

PSALM 46:10 · ISAIAH 30:15 · ZECHARIAH 4:6 · JOHN 10:27 · HEBREWS 1:1 TO 2

THE WORDS

The Hebrew is qol demamah daqqah, a voice, a sound, of thin quiet. Bibles translate it a still small voice, a gentle whisper, a low murmur, or the sound of sheer silence.

VIEW 1: GOD WORKS QUIETLY TOO

Many say Elijah wanted God to win by fire and storm every time. God showed him that He also works quietly, through a faithful few and a new prophet, Elisha. Not by might nor by power, but by My Spirit, Zechariah 4:6.

VIEW 2: GOD MET A TIRED MAN GENTLY

Others see God's kindness. Elijah was burned out and afraid. God did not shout. He came near softly, asked questions, and gave him a next step.

VIEW 3: A WHISPER IN THE HEART

Many Christians use this verse to talk about God's leading in prayer, a quiet sense in the heart. Others warn that the verse is about one prophet's meeting with God, and that God's sure word to us is the Bible, Hebrews 1:1 to 2 and 2 Timothy 3:16.

YOU ARE NOT ALONE

Elijah said, I alone am left. God said, I have reserved seven thousand in Israel who have not bowed to Baal, 19:18. Paul uses this in Romans 11:2 to 5 to say God always keeps a faithful remnant.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God was there in the quiet as surely as in the fire. And He did not leave Elijah in the cave. He gave him work to do, 19:15 to 16.

THE CALL OF ELISHA

19 So Elijah departed and found Elisha son of Shaphat. He was plowing with twelve teams of oxen, and he was with the twelfth team. Elijah passed by him and threw his cloak around him.

20 So Elisha left the oxen, ran after Elijah, and said, "Please let me kiss my father and mother goodbye, and then I will follow you."

"Go on back," Elijah replied, "for what have I done to you?"

21 So Elisha turned back from him, took his pair of oxen, and slaughtered them. Using the oxen's equipment for fuel, he cooked the meat and gave it to the people, and they ate. Then he set out to follow and serve Elijah.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Ben hadad king of Aram surrounds Samaria and makes outrageous demands. A prophet tells Ahab that God will give him the victory, and He does, twice. But Ahab lets Ben hadad go with a peace deal, and another prophet tells him he will pay for it with his own life.

BEN-HADAD ATTACKS SAMARIA

1 Now Ben-hadad king of Aram assembled his entire army. Accompanied by thirty-two kings with their horses and chariots, he marched up, besieged Samaria, and waged war against it. 2 Then he sent messengers into the city to Ahab king of Israel, 3 saying, "This is what Ben-hadad says: 'Your silver and gold are mine, and your best wives and children are mine!'"

4 And the king of Israel replied, "Just as you say, my lord the king: I am yours, along with all that I have."

5 The messengers came back and said, "This is what Ben-hadad says: 'I have sent to you to demand your silver, your gold, your wives, and your children. 6 But about this time tomorrow I will send my servants to search your palace and the houses of your servants. They will seize and carry away all that is precious to you.'"

1KI 19:19 [FULFILLS] Elijah was told to anoint Hazael, Jehu, and Elisha, and judgment would come through them ← 1KI 19:15-17 p.586

1KI 19:19 [NOTE] HIS CLOAK. Throwing his prophet's cloak on Elisha was Elijah's way of calling him to take his place, 2 Kings 2:13 to 14.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

7 Then the king of Israel summoned all the
elders of the land and said, "Please take
note and see that this man is looking for
trouble, for when he demanded my wives,
my children, my silver, and my gold, I did
not deny him."

8 And the elders and the people all said,
"Do not listen to him or consent to his
terms."

9 So Ahab answered the messengers of
Ben-hadad, "Tell my lord the king, 'All that
you demanded of your servant the first
time I will do, but this thing I cannot do.'"

So the messengers departed and relayed
the message to Ben-hadad.

10 Then Ben-hadad sent another message
to Ahab: "May the gods deal with me, and
ever so severely, if enough dust remains
of Samaria for each of my men to have a
handful."

11 And the king of Israel replied, "Tell him:
'The one putting on his armor should not
boast like one taking it off.'"

12 Ben-hadad received this message while
he and the kings were drinking in their
tents, and he said to his servants, "Take
your positions." So they stationed them-
selves against the city.

AHAB DEFEATS BEN-HADAD

13 Meanwhile a prophet approached Ahab
king of Israel and declared, "This is what
Yahweh says: 'Do you see this entire great
army? Behold, I will deliver it into your
hand this very day, and you will know that
I am Yahweh.'"

14 "By whom?" Ahab asked.

And the prophet replied, "This is what
Yahweh says: 'By the young officers of
the district governors.'"

"Who will start the battle?" asked Ahab.

"You will," answered the prophet.

15 So Ahab assembled the young officers
of the district governors, and there were
232 men. And after them, he assembled
the rest of the Israelite troops, 7,000 in all.

16 They marched out at noon while Ben-
hadad and the 32 kings allied with him
were in their tents getting drunk. 17 And the
young officers of the district governors
marched out first.

Now Ben-hadad had sent out scouts, who
reported to him, "Men are marching out of
Samaria."

18 "If they have marched out in peace," he
said, "take them alive. Even if they have
marched out for war, take them alive."

19 Meanwhile, these young officers of the
district governors marched out of the city,
with the army behind them, 20 and each
one struck down his opponent. So the
Arameans fled, with the Israelites in pur-
suit. But Ben-hadad king of Aram escaped
on horseback with the cavalry.

21 Then the king of Israel marched out and
attacked the horses and chariots, inflict-
ing a great slaughter on the Arameans.

22 Afterward, the prophet approached the
king of Israel and said, "Go and
strengthen your position, and take note
what you must do, for in the spring the
king of Aram will come up against you."

23 Meanwhile, the servants of the king of
Aram said to him, "Their gods are gods of
the hills. That is why they prevailed over
us. Instead, we should fight them on the
plains; surely then we will prevail. 24 So do
this: Dismiss all the kings from their posi-
tions and replace them with other officers.
25 And you must raise an army like the one
you have lost—horse for horse and char-
iot for chariot—so we can fight the Is-
raelites on the plain, where we will surely
prevail."

And the king approved their plan and
acted accordingly.

ANOTHER WAR WITH BEN-HADAD

26 In the spring, Ben-hadad mobilized the
Arameans and went up to Aphek to fight
against Israel. 27 The Israelites also mobi-
lized, gathered supplies, and marched out
to meet them.

1KI 20:13 [PROPHECY] A prophet told Ahab God would hand the huge Aramean army to him that day → 1KI 20:20-21 p.588

1KI 20:20 [FULFILLS] A prophet told Ahab God would hand the huge Aramean army to him that day ← 1KI 20:13 p.588

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

The Israelites camped before them like two small flocks of goats, while the Arameans covered the countryside.

28 Then the man of God approached the king of Israel and said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'Because the Arameans have said that Yahweh is a god of the hills and not of the valleys, I will deliver all this great army into your hand. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

29 For seven days the armies camped opposite each other, and on the seventh day the battle ensued, and the Israelites struck down the Arameans—a hundred thousand foot soldiers in one day.

30 The rest of them fled into the city of Aphek, where the wall fell on twenty-seven thousand of the remaining men. Ben-hadad also fled to the city and hid in an inner room.

AHAB SPARES BEN-HADAD

31 Then the servants of Ben-hadad said to him, "Look now, we have heard that the kings of the house of Israel are merciful. Let us go out to the king of Israel with sackcloth around our waists and ropes around our heads. Perhaps he will spare your life."

32 So with sackcloth around their waists and ropes around their heads, they went to the king of Israel and said, "Your servant Ben-hadad says, 'Please spare my life.'"

And the king answered, "Is he still alive? He is my brother."

33 Now the men were looking for a sign of hope, and they quickly grasped at this word and replied, "Yes, your brother Ben-hadad."

"Go and get him!" said the king.

Then Ben-hadad came out, and Ahab had him come up into his chariot.

34 Ben-hadad said to him, "I will restore the cities my father took from your father; you may set up your own marketplaces in Damascus, as my father did in Samaria."

"By this treaty I release you," Ahab replied. So he made a treaty with him and sent him away.

A PROPHET REPROVES AHAB

35 Meanwhile, by the word of Yahweh, one of the sons of the prophets said to his companion, "Strike me, please!"

But the man refused to strike him.

36 Then the prophet said to him, "Because you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh, as soon as you depart from me a lion will kill you."

And when he left, a lion found him and killed him.

37 Then the prophet found another man and said, "Strike me, please!"

So the man struck him and wounded him, 38 and the prophet went and waited on the road for the king, disguising himself with a bandage over his eyes.

39 As the king passed by, he cried out to the king: "Your servant had marched out into the middle of the battle, when suddenly a man came over with a captive and told me, 'Guard this man! If he goes missing for any reason, your life will be exchanged for his life, or you will weigh out 75 pounds of silver.' 40 But while your servant was busy here and there, the man disappeared."

And the king of Israel said to him, "So shall your judgment be; you have pronounced it on yourself."

41 Then the prophet quickly removed the bandage from his eyes, and the king of Israel recognized him as one of the prophets.

42 And the prophet said to the king, "This is what Yahweh says: 'Because you have let slip from your hand the man I had devoted to destruction, your life will be exchanged for his life, and your people for his people.'"

43 Sullen and angry, the king of Israel went home to Samaria.

1KI 20:28 [PROPHECY] God would give Israel victory in the valley to show He is Lord of hills and valleys → 1KI 20:29 p.589

1KI 20:29 [FULFILLS] God would give Israel victory in the valley to show He is Lord of hills and valleys ← 1KI 20:28 p.589

1KI 20:42 [PROPHECY] Ahab's life would be taken in place of the enemy king he let go → 1KI 22:35 p.594

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Ahab wants Naboth's vineyard, and Naboth will not sell his family land. Ahab sulks in bed. Jezebel writes letters in Ahab's name, and false witnesses get Naboth stoned. Elijah meets Ahab in the vineyard: the dogs will lick up your blood. Ahab humbles himself, and God delays the disaster.

NABOTH'S VINEYARD

1 Some time after these events, Naboth the
Jezreelite owned a vineyard in Jezreel
next to the palace of Ahab king of
Samaria. 2 So Ahab said to Naboth, "Give
me your vineyard to use as a vegetable
garden, since it is next to my palace. I will
give you a better vineyard in its place—or
if you prefer, I will give you its value in silver."

3 But Naboth replied, "Yahweh forbid that I
should give you the inheritance of my fathers."

4 So Ahab went to his palace, sullen and
angry because Naboth the Jezreelite had
told him, "I will not give you the inheritance of my fathers." He lay down on his
bed, turned his face away, and refused to
eat.

5 Soon his wife Jezebel came in and
asked, "Why are you so sullen that you
refuse to eat?"

6 Ahab answered, "Because I spoke to
Naboth the Jezreelite and told him, 'Give
me your vineyard for silver, or if you wish,
I will give you another vineyard in its
place.' And he replied, 'I will not give you
my vineyard!'"

7 But his wife Jezebel said to him, "Do you
not reign over Israel? Get up, eat some
food, and let your heart be glad, for I will
get you the vineyard of Naboth the
Jezreelite."

JEZEBEL'S PLOT

8 Then Jezebel wrote letters in Ahab's
name, sealed them with his seal, and sent
them to the elders and nobles who lived
with Naboth in his city. 9 In the letters she
wrote:

"Proclaim a fast and give Naboth a seat of
honor among the people. 10 But seat two
scoundrels opposite him and have them
testify, 'You have cursed both God and
the king!' Then take him out and stone him
to death."

11 So the elders and nobles who lived in
Naboth's city did as Jezebel had instructed in the letters she had written to
them. 12 They proclaimed a fast and gave
Naboth a seat of honor among the people.

13 And the two scoundrels came in and sat
opposite Naboth, and these men testified
against him before the people, saying,
"Naboth has cursed both God and the
king!"

So they took him outside the city and
stoned him to death. 14 Then they sent
word to Jezebel: "Naboth has been
stoned to death."

15 When Jezebel heard that Naboth had
been stoned to death, she said to Ahab,
"Get up and take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, who refused to give it to you for silver. For
Naboth is no longer alive, but dead."

16 And when Ahab heard that Naboth was
dead, he got up and went down to take
possession of the vineyard of Naboth the
Jezreelite.

1KI 21:1 [FIELD NOTES] The royal city of Jezreel has been dug, and wine presses were found in the land around it. See the Jezreel Field Notes page, p.591.

1KI 21:3 [NOTE] FAMILY LAND. God's law said a family's land should not be sold off forever, Leviticus 25:23 and Numbers 36:7. Naboth was being faithful, not stubborn.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

JEZREEL

1 KINGS 18:45 TO 46 · 21:1 TO 23 · 2 KINGS 9:30 TO 37 · HOSEA 1:4



The mound of ancient Jezreel above the valley. The metal grate in the middle and the buildings at the back are modern. Photo Ori , used with attribution.

WHAT IT IS

Jezreel was a royal city on a hill above the Jezreel Valley, the best farmland in Israel. Diggers found a large walled enclosure with towers at the corners and a deep dry moat cut into the rock around it.

HOW OLD IT IS

The diggers dated the royal enclosure to the 800s BC, the time of Omri's family, Ahab and Jezebel. It seems to have been used only a short time before it was destroyed.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

David Ussishkin and John Woodhead dug Tel Jezreel from 1990 to 1996. Norma Franklin and Jennie Ebeling surveyed and dug the area around it starting in 2012 and found many wine presses cut into the rock.

NABOTH'S VINEYARD

Naboth's vineyard was in Jezreel, next to Ahab's palace, 21:1. The wine presses show that this was grape country. One large wine press below the hill has been dated to the Iron Age, the time of the kings.

THE END OF JEZEBEL

Jezebel was thrown from a window in Jezreel, and the dogs ate her, just as Elijah said, 2 Kings 9:30 to 37 and 1 Kings 21:23.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No vineyard or wine press can be tied to Naboth by name. The finds show a royal city and a land of vineyards right where 1 Kings 21 puts them.

ELIJAH DENOUNCES AHAB AND JEZEBEL

17 Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah
the Tishbite, saying, 18 "Get up and go
down to meet Ahab king of Israel, who is
in Samaria. See, he is in the vineyard of
Naboth, where he has gone to take pos-
session of it.
19 Tell him that this is what Yahweh says:
'Have you not murdered a man and seized
his land?'
Then tell him that this is also what Yahweh
says: 'In the place where the dogs licked
up the blood of Naboth, there also the
dogs will lick up your blood—yes, yours!'"
20 When Elijah arrived, Ahab said to him,
"So you have found me out, my enemy."
He replied, "I have found you out because
you have sold yourself to do evil in the
sight of Yahweh. 21 This is what Yahweh
says:

'I will bring calamity on you
and consume your descendants;
I will cut off from Ahab every male in Is-
rael,
both slave and free.
22 I will make your house like that of Jer-
oboam son of Nebat
and like that of Baasha son of Ahijah,
because you have provoked My anger
and caused Israel to sin.'

23 And Yahweh also speaks concerning
Jezebel:

'The dogs will devour Jezebel
by the wall of Jezreel.'

24 Anyone belonging to Ahab who dies in
the city
will be eaten by dogs,
and anyone who dies in the field
will be eaten by the birds of the air."

1KI 21:19 [PROPHECY] Elijah told Ahab: dogs would lick his blood where they licked Naboth's; Jezebel would be eaten by dogs → 1KI 22:38; 2KI 9:35-36 p.594

1KI 21:21 [DEMONIC] Ahab's repentance delayed but did not cancel judgment on his house

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

AHAB'S REPENTANCE

25 (Surely there was never one like Ahab,
who sold himself to do evil in the sight of
Yahweh, incited by his wife Jezebel. 26 He
committed the most detestable acts by
going after idols, just like the Amorites
whom Yahweh had driven out before the
Israelites.)

27 When Ahab heard these words, he tore
his clothes, put on sackcloth, and fasted.
He lay down in sackcloth and walked
around meekly.

28 Then the word of Yahweh came to Elijah
the Tishbite, saying: 29 "Have you seen
how Ahab has humbled himself before
Me? Because he has humbled himself be-
fore Me, I will not bring the calamity dur-
ing his days, but I will bring it upon his
house in the days of his son."

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Ahab and King Jehoshaphat of Judah want to attack Ramoth Gilead. 400 prophets say, Go for it. One prophet, Micaiah, says Ahab will die. Ahab disguises himself in battle, but a random arrow finds the gap in his armor. The dogs lick his blood, just as Elijah said.

AHAB AND THE FALSE PROPHETS // 2 CHRONICLES 18:1–11

1 Then three years passed without war be-
tween Aram and Israel.

2 However, in the third year, Jehoshaphat
king of Judah went down to visit the king
of Israel, 3 who said to his servants, "Do
you not know that Ramoth-gilead is ours,
but we have failed to take it from the hand
of the king of Aram?"

4 So he asked Jehoshaphat, "Will you go
with me to fight against Ramoth-gilead?"

Jehoshaphat answered the king of Israel,
"I am as you are, my people are your peo-
ple, and my horses are your horses."

5 But Jehoshaphat also said to the king of
Israel, "Please inquire first for the word of
Yahweh."

6 So the king of Israel assembled the
prophets, about four hundred men, and
asked them, "Should I go to war against
Ramoth-gilead, or should I refrain?"

"Go up," they replied, "and the Lord will
deliver it into the hand of the king."

7 But Jehoshaphat asked, "Is there not still
a prophet of Yahweh here of whom we
can inquire?"

8 The king of Israel answered, "There is
still one man through whom we can in-
quire of Yahweh, but I hate him because
he never prophesies anything good for
me, but only bad. He is Micaiah son of Im-
lah."

"The king should not say that!" Je-
hoshaphat replied.

9 So the king of Israel called one of his of-
ficials and said, "Bring Micaiah son of Im-
lah at once."

10 Dressed in royal attire, the king of Israel
and Jehoshaphat king of Judah were sit-
ting on their thrones at the threshing floor
by the entrance of the gate of Samaria,
with all the prophets prophesying before
them.

11 Now Zedekiah son of Chenaanah had
made for himself iron horns and declared,
"This is what Yahweh says: 'With these
you shall gore the Arameans until they are
finished off.'"

12 And all the prophets were prophesying
the same, saying, "Go up to Ramoth-
gilead and triumph, for Yahweh will deliver
it into the hand of the king."

MICAIAH PROPHESIES AGAINST AHAB // 2 CHRONICLES 18:12–27

13 Then the messenger who had gone to
call Micaiah instructed him, "Behold now,
with one accord the words of the
prophets are favorable to the king. So
please let your words be like theirs, and
speak favorably."

14 But Micaiah said, "As surely as Yahweh
lives, I will speak whatever Yahweh tells
me."

15 When Micaiah arrived, the king asked
him, "Micaiah, should we go to war

1KI 21:29 [PROPHECY] Because Ahab humbled himself, the ruin of his house would come in his son's days → 2KI 9:25-26; 2KI 10:11 p.618

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

against Ramoth-gilead, or should we refrain?"

"Go up and triumph," Micaiah replied, "for Yahweh will deliver it into the hand of the king."

16 But the king said to him, "How many times must I make you swear not to tell me anything but the truth in the name of Yahweh?"

17 So Micaiah declared:

"I saw all Israel scattered on the hills
like sheep without a shepherd.
And Yahweh said, 'These people have no master;
let each one return home in peace.'"

18 Then the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you that he never prophesies good for me, but only bad?"

19 Micaiah continued, "Therefore hear the word of Yahweh: I saw Yahweh sitting on His throne, and all the host of heaven standing by Him on His right and on His left.

20 And Yahweh said, 'Who will entice Ahab to march up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?'

And one suggested this, and another that.

21 Then a spirit came forward, stood before Yahweh, and said, 'I will entice him.'

'By what means?' asked Yahweh.

22 And he replied, 'I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouths of all his prophets.'

'You will surely entice him and prevail,' said Yahweh. 'Go and do it.'

23 So you see, Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouths of all these prophets of yours, and Yahweh has pronounced disaster against you."

24 Then Zedekiah son of Chenaanah went up, struck Micaiah in the face, and demanded, "Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh go when He departed from me to speak with you?"

25 Micaiah replied, "You will soon see, on that day when you go and hide in an inner room."

26 And the king of Israel declared, "Take Micaiah and return him to Amon the governor of the city and to Joash the king's son, 27 and tell them that this is what the king says: 'Put this man in prison and feed him only bread and water until I return safely.'"

28 But Micaiah replied, "If you ever return safely, Yahweh has not spoken through me." Then he added, "Take heed, all you people!"

AHAB'S DEFEAT AND DEATH // 2 CHRONICLES 18:28–34

29 So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah went up to Ramoth-gilead. 30 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself and go into battle, but you wear your royal robes." So the king of Israel disguised himself and went into battle.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE LYING SPIRIT

What Happened

1 KINGS 22:1 TO 40 · 2 CHRONICLES 18 · JOB 1:6 TO 12 · ISAIAH 6:1 TO 8

400 YES MEN

Ahab and Jehoshaphat wanted to attack Ramoth Gilead. Ahab's 400 prophets all said, Go up, and the Lord will give it to you, 22:6. One of them even made iron horns to act it out, 22:11.

ONE MORE PROPHET

Jehoshaphat asked if there was a prophet of Yahweh too. Ahab said, There is Micaiah, but I hate him, because he never says anything good about me, 22:8.

THE VISION

Micaiah said: I saw Yahweh on His throne, with the host of heaven around Him. Yahweh asked, Who will entice Ahab to go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead?

1KI 22:17 [PROPHECY] Micaiah predicted Israel would scatter and Ahab would not return alive from Ramoth Gilead → 1KI 22:34-37 p.594

1KI 22:19 [DEMONIC] A lying spirit is sent to deceive Ahab's prophets

1KI 22:19 [NOTE] MICAIAH'S VISION. Only God's words in the vision print red. The lying spirit and Micaiah's own words stay black. See the Big Question pages The Lying Spirit, p.593.

1KI 22:28 [PROPHECY] Micaiah predicted Israel would scatter and Ahab would not return alive from Ramoth Gilead → 1KI 22:34-37 p.594

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

A spirit came forward and said, I will be a lying spirit in the mouths of all his prophets. Yahweh said, Go and do it, 22:19 to 22.

THE WARNING

Then Micaiah told Ahab the whole thing to his face: Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouths of these prophets, and He has pronounced disaster against you, 22:23. Ahab was told the truth and still went.

THE ARROW

Ahab disguised himself, but a man drew his bow at random and hit him between the plates of his armor. He died that evening, 22:34 to 37.

THE QUESTION

Does God lie or send liars? Who was the lying spirit?

Every View

NUMBERS 23:19 · TITUS 1:2 · 2 THESSALONIANS 2:9 TO 12 · 1 SAMUEL 16:14 · JOB 1:6 TO 12

GOD DOES NOT LIE

The Bible says plainly that God does not lie, Numbers 23:19 and Titus 1:2. All sides start there.

VIEW 1: AN EVIL SPIRIT GOD ALLOWED

Many think the spirit was a demon, or Satan himself, who offered to deceive Ahab, and God allowed it, like Job 1. God used evil to judge a man who had already chosen lies.

VIEW 2: GOD'S JUDGMENT ON LIARS

Others say God gave Ahab what he wanted. Ahab loved prophets who flattered him, so God let them deceive him. Paul says God sends a strong delusion on those who refused to love the truth, 2 Thessalonians 2:10 to 11.

VIEW 3: A PICTURE IN A VISION

Some think the throne room scene is a vision, like a parable, to show Ahab that God was behind his coming defeat. The point is the message, not the details of heaven's meetings.

GOD STILL WARNED HIM

Many point out that whatever the spirit was, God told Ahab the whole plan through Micaiah, 22:23. A God who wanted Ahab fooled would not have told him he was being fooled. Ahab chose the lie anyway.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God rules even over lying spirits, and no plan works against Him. The one true prophet was the one who said the hard thing. As surely as Yahweh lives, I will speak whatever Yahweh tells me, 22:14.

31 Now the king of Aram had ordered his
thirty-two chariot commanders, "Do not
fight with anyone, small or great, except
the king of Israel."
32 When the chariot commanders saw Je-
hoshaphat, they said, "Surely this is the
king of Israel!" So they turned to fight
against him, but Jehoshaphat cried out. 33
And when the chariot commanders saw
that he was not the king of Israel, they
turned back from pursuing him.
34 However, a certain man drew his bow
without taking special aim, and he struck
the king of Israel between the joints of his
armor. So the king said to his charioteer,
"Turn around and take me out of the bat-
tle, for I am badly wounded!"
35 The battle raged throughout that day,
and the king was propped up in his char-
iot facing the Arameans. And the blood
from his wound ran out onto the floor of
the chariot, and that evening he died. 36 As
the sun was setting, the cry rang out in
the army:

"Every man to his own city,
and every man to his own land!"

37 So the king died and was brought to
Samaria, where they buried him. 38 And
the chariot was washed at the pool of
Samaria where the prostitutes bathed, and
the dogs licked up Ahab's blood, accord-
ing to the word that Yahweh had spoken.
39 As for the rest of the acts of Ahab,
along with all his accomplishments and
the ivory palace and all the cities he built,
are they not written in the Book of the
Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

- **1KI 22:34 [FULFILLS]** Micaiah predicted Israel would scatter and Ahab would not return alive from Ramoth Gilead ← 1KI 22:17, 28 p.593
- **1KI 22:35 [FULFILLS]** Ahab's life would be taken in place of the enemy king he let go ← 1KI 20:42 p.589
- **1KI 22:38 [FULFILLS]** Elijah told Ahab: dogs would lick his blood where they licked Naboth's; Jezebel would be eaten by dogs ← 1KI 21:19-23 p.591

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

40 And Ahab rested with his fathers, and
his son Ahaziah reigned in his place.

JEHOSHAPHAT REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 20:31–34

41 In the fourth year of Ahab's reign over
Israel, Jehoshaphat son of Asa became
king of Judah. 42 Jehoshaphat was thirty-
five years old when he became king, and
he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-five
years. His mother's name was Azubah
daughter of Shilhi.

43 And Jehoshaphat walked in all the ways
of his father Asa he did not turn away
from them, but did what was right in the
eyes of Yahweh.

The high places, however, were not re-
moved; the people still sacrificed and
burned incense on the high places. 44 Je-
hoshaphat also made peace with the king
of Israel.

45 As for the rest of the acts of Je-
hoshaphat, along with the might he exer-
cised and how he waged war, are they not
written in the Book of the Chronicles of
the Kings of Judah? 46 He banished from
the land the male shrine prostitutes who
remained from the days of his father Asa.
47 And there was no king in Edom; a
deputy served as king.

48 Jehoshaphat built ships of Tarshish to
go to Ophir for gold, but they never set
sail, because they were wrecked at Ezion-
geber. 49 At that time Ahaziah son of Ahab
said to Jehoshaphat, "Let my servants sail
with your servants," but Jehoshaphat re-
fused.

50 And Jehoshaphat rested with his fathers
and was buried with them in the city of his
father David. And his son Jehoram
reigned in his place.

AHAZIAH REIGNS IN ISRAEL // 2 KINGS 1:1–16

51 In the seventeenth year of
Jehoshaphat's reign over Judah, Ahaziah
son of Ahab became king of Israel, and he
reigned in Samaria two years. 52 And he
did evil in the sight of Yahweh and walked
in the ways of his father and mother and
of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had
caused Israel to sin.

53 Ahaziah served and worshiped Baal,
provoking Yahweh, the God of Israel, to
anger, just as his father had done.

1KI 22:39 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Ivory inlays and ink written pottery found at Samaria fit Ahab's ivory palace and the houses of ivory in Amos 3:15 → FIELD NOTES p.596

1KI 22:39 [FIELD NOTES] Hundreds of carved ivory pieces were found at Samaria. See The Samaria Ivories Field Notes page, p.596.

1KI 22:43 [DEMONIC] Under Jehoshaphat the high places still remained

1KI 22:46 [DEMONIC] Jehoshaphat removes the remaining shrine prostitutes

1KI 22:53 [DEMONIC] Ahaziah serves and worships Baal

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE SAMARIA IVORIES

1 KINGS 22:39 · AMOS 3:15 · 6:4 · PSALM 45:8



Carved ivory pieces from Samaria, made to decorate furniture, now in the Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Gary Todd, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

Hundreds of small carved ivory pieces once set into furniture and wall panels. They show palm trees, lotus flowers, lions, sphinxes and a woman looking out a window.

HOW OLD IT IS

The 800s and 700s BC, from the time of Ahab and the kings after him.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the royal area of Samaria, the capital Omri built, 16:24, by John Crowfoot's team with Kathleen Kenyon, 1931 to 1935.

THE IVORY PALACE

1 Kings 22:39 mentions Ahab's ivory palace. Later Amos warned the rich of Samaria who lay on beds of ivory, Amos 6:4, and said the houses of ivory would be destroyed, 3:15.

WHO MADE THEM

The style is Phoenician, which fits Ahab's wife Jezebel, a princess of Sidon, 16:31.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

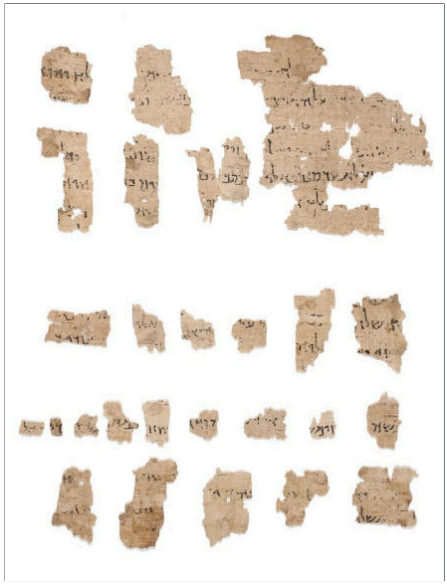
Nobody knows whether any piece belonged to Ahab himself. They show that Samaria's kings really lived with this kind of luxury.

BOOK 12 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

2 KINGS

Where Things Start To Go Downhill

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Jeremiah wrote Kings. Many scholars think a writer during the exile put it together from older records the book names, like the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah, 8:23.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About 290 years, from Ahaziah of Israel, about 852 BC, to King Jehoiachin let out of prison in Babylon, about 560 BC.
DATE	About 852 to 560 BC. Samaria fell to Assyria in 722 BC, and Jerusalem fell to Babylon in 586 BC.
WRITTEN TO	God's people in exile, to show why they lost their land: they kept turning away from God, even after He warned them again and again.
KEY VERSE	2 Kings 17:13. Yet through all His prophets and seers, Yahweh warned Israel and Judah, saying, Turn from your wicked ways and keep My commandments and statutes.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 2 KINGS
These pieces of papyrus, a kind of paper made from a tall water plant, come from 6QpapKings, a scroll of Kings found in Cave 6 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. It was copied about 150 to 75 BC. Its pieces hold bits of 2 Kings 5 to 10, and of 1 Kings 3, 12 and 22. It is the only Dead Sea Scroll with any of 2 Kings, so it is the oldest copy of 2 Kings known. The 1 Kings introduction shows the same scroll.

The oldest complete Hebrew copies of Kings are more than a thousand years younger: the Aleppo Codex, about 930 AD, and the Leningrad Codex, 1008 AD.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

2 Kings moves between two capitals: Samaria in the north and Jerusalem in the south. Elisha travels from Jericho and Bethel to Shunem, Mount Carmel, Dothan and Damascus. Assyria comes from the far north and east, takes Samaria and carries Israel away to Halah, Gozan and the cities of the Medes. Then Babylon carries Judah away to Babylon.

What Was Going Wrong

ONLY THREE LIKE DAVID. After Solomon, Israel had 19 kings and Judah had 19 kings and one queen. Not one king of Israel followed God. Only three kings of Judah, Asa, Hezekiah and Josiah, followed Him with their whole heart like David did 1 Kings 15:11, 2 Kings 18:3, 22:2. God finally had enough of the idols and child sacrifice 17:7 to 18, 21:10 to 15, 24:3 to 4.
CHILD SACRIFICE. The king of Moab burned his oldest son on the city wall 3:27. King Ahaz burned his son 16:3, Israel burned their sons and daughters 17:17, and King Manasseh burned his son 21:6.
THE GOLDEN CALVES STAYED. Even Jehu, who wiped out Baal worship, kept Jeroboam's calves at Bethel and Dan 10:29.
A QUEEN WHO KILLED HER GRANDCHILDREN. Athaliah tried to wipe out David's royal family so she could rule 11:1.
IGNORING THE PROPHETS. God sent prophet after prophet, and they would not listen 17:13 to 14.
MANASSEH. The worst king of all filled Jerusalem with innocent blood and idols in the temple 21:1 to 16.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Kings is where things start to go downhill. Elijah goes up to heaven in a whirlwind, and Elisha takes his cloak and carries on his work with many miracles. Jehu wipes out Ahab and Jezebel's family and Baal worship, but the golden calves stay. Israel's kings keep doing evil, and Assyria keeps getting stronger, until Samaria falls in 722 BC and Israel is carried away. Judah lasts longer. Hezekiah trusts God, and the angel of Yahweh destroys the Assyrian army. Josiah finds God's book in the temple and cleans out the idols. But Manasseh's sins go too deep, and Babylon burns Jerusalem and the temple in 586 BC. Even then, the last scene shows a son of David alive, eating at the king's table.

2 Kings at a Glance

CH 1 to 8	**ELISHA TAKES OVER** Elijah goes up, and Elisha's miracles begin.
CH 9 to 10	**JEHU** A new king wipes out Ahab's house and Baal.
CH 11 to 16	**KINGS COME AND GO** Good kings, bad kings and Assyria.
CH 17	**ISRAEL FALLS** Samaria falls to Assyria in 722 BC.
CH 18 to 23	**HEZEKIAH AND JOSIAH** Two good kings and the worst one between them.
CH 24 to 25	**JUDAH FALLS** Babylon burns Jerusalem in 586 BC.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 KINGS 2:11 Elijah was taken up into heaven alive. Jesus rose from the dead and was taken up into heaven in front of His followers, Acts 1:9.

2 KINGS 4:42 TO 44 Elisha fed a hundred men with twenty barley loaves, with some left over. Jesus fed 5,000 with five barley loaves, with twelve baskets left over, John 6:9 to 13.

2 KINGS 5:14 Naaman, a foreigner, was healed. Jesus said this showed that God's mercy was for the nations too, Luke 4:27.

GOD'S NAMES IN 2 KINGS

Yahweh, again and again, Yahweh of Hosts, 3:14 and 19:31, the Holy One of Israel, 19:22, and Yahweh, God of Israel, enthroned between the cherubim, 19:15. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in 2 Kings

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	2:11
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (80)	1:4, 1:16, 2:10, 2:12, 2:15, 3:17-18, 3:20 and 50 more
THE HEART (9)	5:26, 10:15, 10:31, 12:4, 14:10, 20:3, 22:19 and 2 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (34)	1:17, 3:4-5, 8:24, 8:28-29, 9:2, 13:3, 13:9 and 24 more
MIRACLES (18)	1:3, 1:9-15, 2:8, 2:14, 2:19-24, 3:16, 3:19 and 8 more
DEMONIC (29)	1:2, 1:5-6, 3:2, 3:27, 5:17-18, 5:27, 9:22 and 20 more
NOTABLE (3)	2:9, 19:15-17, 19:19, 22:13
GOD SPEAKING (67 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (260 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

1, 2, 3 AND 4 KINGS

In old Greek and Latin Bibles, 1 and 2 Samuel and 1 and 2 Kings were four books of Kingdoms or Kings, because they tell one long story. That makes this the Fourth Book of the Kings, 4 Kingdoms in Greek and 4 Kings in Latin. The King James calls it The Second Book of the Kings, commonly called The Fourth Book of the Kings.

TOPHETH CLOSED

Josiah ruined Topheth, the place where children were burned, so no one could sacrifice a son or daughter there again, 23:10.

How Did It Turn Out?

Both kingdoms fell, just as God warned. But the book ends with King Jehoiachin, a son of David, let out of prison and eating at the king's table, 25:27 to 30. God's promise to David was still alive, and Jesus came from his line, Matthew 1:12.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

King Ahaziah of Israel falls through a lattice and sends messengers to ask a Philistine god if he will get better. Elijah meets them on the road: Is there no God in Israel? The king sends soldiers to arrest Elijah. That goes badly for the first two groups of fifty. The third captain begs for mercy, and he gets to live.

ELIJAH DENOUNCES AHAZIAH // 1 KINGS 22:51–53

1 After the death of Ahab, Moab rebelled
against Israel.

2 Now Ahaziah had fallen through the lattice of his upper room in Samaria and injured himself. So he sent messengers and
instructed them: "Go inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron, whether I will recover from this injury."

3 But the angel of Yahweh said to Elijah the Tishbite, "Go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria and ask them, 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are on your way to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron?' 4 Therefore this is what Yahweh says: 'You will not get up from the bed on which you are lying. You will surely die.'"

So Elijah departed.

5 When the messengers returned to the king, he asked them, "Why have you returned?"

6 They replied, "A man came up to meet us and said, 'Go back to the king who sent you and tell him that this is what Yahweh says: Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are sending these men to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying. You will surely die.'"

7 The king asked them, "What sort of man came up to meet you and spoke these words to you?"

8 "He was a hairy man," they answered, "with a leather belt around his waist."

"It was Elijah the Tishbite," said the king.

- **2KI 1:1 [NOTE]** FOURTH BOOK OF THE KINGS. 1 and 2 Kings were once one book, so 2 Kings picks up right where 1 Kings stopped, with Ahab's son Ahaziah on Israel's throne.
- **2KI 1:2 [DEMONIC]** Ahaziah sends to ask Baal zebub, the god of Ekron
- **2KI 1:2 [FIELD NOTES]** BAAL ZEBUB means lord of the flies, likely a mocking twist on Baal zebul, prince Baal. Jesus' enemies called the devil Beelzebul, Matthew 12:24. A stone naming the kings of Ekron has been found. See The Ekron Inscription Field Notes page, p.600.
- **2KI 1:3 [MIRACLE]** The angel of Yahweh sends Elijah to meet the king's messengers
- **2KI 1:3 [DEMONIC]** Elijah rebukes the king for asking the god of Ekron
- **2KI 1:3 [NOTE]** THE ANGEL OF YAHWEH. His words print red, like the angel of Yahweh in Judges and 1 Kings 19:7. Some think he was an angel God sent, and others think it was God Himself appearing.
- **2KI 1:4 [PROPHECY]** Elijah told Ahaziah he would not get up from his bed but die → 2KI 1:17 p.601

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE EKRON INSCRIPTION

2 KINGS 1:2 TO 16 · 1 SAMUEL 5:10 · 6:17 · MATTHEW 12:24



The Ekron Inscription in the Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Oren Rozen, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A stone block with five lines of writing, set up in a temple by a king of Ekron. It says Achish son of Padi, ruler of Ekron, built the temple for his goddess and asks her to bless him.

HOW OLD IT IS

The early 600s BC, nearly 200 years after King Ahaziah sent his messengers to Ekron.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Tel Miqne in Israel, in 1996, inside the ruins of a large temple. Seymour Gitin and Trude Dothan led the dig. It is in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

IT SETTLED WHERE EKRON WAS

Ekron was one of the five big Philistine cities, 1 Samuel 6:17. Nobody knew for sure which mound it was until this stone named the city. Padi king of Ekron is also named on Sennacherib's Prism.

BAAL ZEBUB

Ahaziah sent to ask Baal zebub, the god of Ekron, if he would get well, 1:2. The name means lord of the flies. Many

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

think it mocks the real name Baal zebul, prince Baal. Jesus' enemies called the devil Beelzebul, Matthew 12:24.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The stone does not name Baal zebub. It shows that Ekron was a real city with its own temples and kings, right where the Bible puts it.

9 Then King Ahaziah sent to Elijah a captain with his company of fifty men. So the captain went up to Elijah, who was sitting on top of a hill, and said to him, "Man of God, the king declares, 'Come down!'"

10 Elijah answered the captain, "If I am a man of God, may fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men."

And fire came down from heaven and consumed the captain and his fifty men.

11 So the king sent to Elijah another captain with his fifty men. And the captain said to Elijah, "Man of God, the king declares, 'Come down at once!'"

12 Again Elijah replied, "If I am a man of God, may fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men."

And the fire of God came down from heaven and consumed the captain and his fifty men.

13 So the king sent a third captain with his fifty men. And the third captain went up, fell on his knees before Elijah, and begged him, "Man of God, may my life and the lives of these fifty servants of yours please be precious in your sight. 14 Behold, fire has come down from heaven and consumed the first two captains of fifty, with all their men. But now may my life be precious in your sight."

15 Then the angel of Yahweh said to Elijah, "Go down with him. Do not be afraid of him."

So Elijah got up and went down with him to the king.

- **2KI 1:9 [MIRACLE]** Fire from heaven burns up two captains and their fifty men sent to Elijah
- **2KI 1:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 9:54 p.1667
- **2KI 1:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 20:9 p.2111

16 And Elijah said to King Ahaziah, "This is what Yahweh says: Is there really no God in Israel for you to inquire of His word? Is that why you have sent messengers to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying. You will surely die."

JEHORAM SUCCEEDS AHAZIAH

17 So Ahaziah died according to the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken. And since he had no son, Jehoram succeeded him in the second year of the reign of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat over Judah.

18 As for the rest of the acts of Ahaziah, along with his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Elijah and Elisha take one last walk together. Elijah parts the Jordan with his cloak, and Elisha asks for a double portion of his spirit. A chariot of fire appears, and Elijah goes up to heaven in a whirlwind. Elisha picks up the cloak, parts the Jordan himself, heals a bad spring, and some young mockers meet two angry bears.

ELIJAH TAKEN UP TO HEAVEN

1 Shortly before Yahweh took Elijah up to heaven in a whirlwind, Elijah and Elisha were on their way from Gilgal, 2 and Elijah said to Elisha, "Please stay here, for Yahweh has sent me on to Bethel."

But Elisha replied, "As surely as Yahweh lives and as you yourself live, I will not leave you."

So they went down to Bethel.

3 Then the sons of the prophets at Bethel came out to Elisha and said, "Do you know that Yahweh will take your master away from you today?"

- **2KI 1:16 [PROPHECY]** Elijah told Ahaziah he would not get up from his bed but die → 2KI 1:17 p.601
- **2KI 1:16 [DEMONIC]** Ahaziah will die for seeking the god of Ekron
- **2KI 1:17 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Jehoram of Israel, also called Joram, is most likely named on the Tel Dan Stele, though part of the name is broken, see the note on 8:28
- **2KI 1:17 [FULFILLS]** Elijah told Ahaziah he would not get up from his bed but die ← 2KI 1:4, 16 p.600
- **2KI 2:1 [NOTE]** ELIJAH TAKEN UP. Only Enoch and Elijah left this world without dying, Genesis 5:24. See the Big Question pages Elijah's Whirlwind, p.603.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | NOTABLE

"Yes, I know," he replied. "Do not speak of it."

4 And Elijah said to Elisha, "Please stay here, for Yahweh has sent me on to Jericho."

But Elisha replied, "As surely as Yahweh lives and as you yourself live, I will not leave you."

So they went to Jericho.

5 Then the sons of the prophets at Jericho came up to Elisha and said, "Do you know that Yahweh will take your master away from you today?"

"Yes, I know," he replied. "Do not speak of it."

6 And Elijah said to Elisha, "Please stay here, for Yahweh has sent me on to the Jordan."

But Elisha replied, "As surely as Yahweh lives and as you yourself live, I will not leave you."

So the two of them went on.

7 Then a company of fifty of the sons of the prophets went and stood at a distance, facing Elijah and Elisha as the two of them stood by the Jordan. 8 And Elijah took his cloak, rolled it up, and struck the waters, which parted to the right and to the left, so that the two of them crossed over on dry ground.

9 After they had crossed over, Elijah said to Elisha, "Tell me, what can I do for you before I am taken away from you?"

"Please, let me inherit a double portion of your spirit," Elisha replied.

10 "You have requested a difficult thing," said Elijah. "Nevertheless, if you see me as I am taken from you, it will be yours. But if not, then it will not be so."

11 As they were walking along and talking together, suddenly a chariot of fire with horses of fire appeared and separated the two of them, and Elijah went up into heaven in a whirlwind.

12 As Elisha watched, he cried out, "My father, my father, the chariots and horsemen of Israel!" And he saw Elijah no more. So taking hold of his own clothes, he tore them in two.

13 Elisha also picked up the cloak that had fallen from Elijah, and he went back and stood on the bank of the Jordan. 14 Then he took the cloak of Elijah that had fallen from him and struck the waters. "Where now is Yahweh, the God of Elijah?" he asked.

And when he had struck the waters, they parted to the right and to the left, and Elisha crossed over.

ELISHA SUCCEEDS ELIJAH

15 When the sons of the prophets who were watching him from Jericho saw what had happened, they said, "The spirit of Elijah rests on Elisha." And they went to meet him and bowed down to the ground before him.

16 "Look now," they said to Elisha, "we your servants have fifty valiant men. Please let them go and search for your master. Perhaps the Spirit of Yahweh has taken him up and put him on one of the mountains or in one of the valleys."

"Do not send them," Elisha replied.

17 But when they pressed him to the point of embarrassment, he said, "Send them."

And they sent fifty men, who searched for three days but did not find Elijah.

18 When they returned to Elisha, who was staying in Jericho, he said to them, "Didn't I tell you not to go?"

- **2KI 2:8 [MIRACLE]** Elijah parted the Jordan with his mantle
- **2KI 2:9 [NOTABLE]** Elisha could have asked for anything. He asked for more of God's Spirit to carry on Elijah's work. The double portion was the oldest son's share, Deuteronomy 21:17.
- **2KI 2:9 [NOTE]** A DOUBLE PORTION. See the Big Question pages The Double Portion, p.603.
- **2KI 2:10 [PROPHECY]** If Elisha saw Elijah taken up he would receive the double portion → 2KI 2:12; 2KI 2:15 p.602
- **2KI 2:11 [FORESHADOW]** Elijah's bodily ascension foreshadows Christ's bodily ascension → LK 24:51 · MEDIUM p.1694
- **2KI 2:11 [MIRACLE]** Elijah taken up in a whirlwind with chariot of fire
- **2KI 2:12 [FULFILLS]** If Elisha saw Elijah taken up he would receive the double portion ← 2KI 2:10 p.602
- **2KI 2:14 [MIRACLE]** Elisha parts the Jordan, showing he received the double portion
- **2KI 2:15 [FULFILLS]** If Elisha saw Elijah taken up he would receive the double portion ← 2KI 2:10 p.602

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ELIJAH'S WHIRLWIND

What Happened

2 KINGS 2:1 TO 18 · GENESIS 5:24 · HEBREWS 11:5

THE LAST WALK

Elijah and Elisha walked from Gilgal to Bethel to Jericho to the Jordan. At every stop Elijah said, Stay here, and Elisha said, I will not leave you. Groups of prophets at Bethel and at Jericho already knew Elijah was about to be taken, 2:3 and 2:5.

THE JORDAN PARTS

Elijah rolled up his cloak and struck the water, and the river divided, so the two crossed on dry ground, 2:8. Moses had parted the Red Sea, and Joshua crossed the Jordan near this same spot.

CHARIOTS OF FIRE

As they walked and talked, a chariot of fire with horses of fire came between them, and Elijah went up into heaven in a whirlwind, 2:11. Paintings often show Elijah riding in the chariot, but the Bible says the whirlwind took him up.

ONLY TWO

Only two people in the Bible left this world without dying: Enoch, who walked with God, and God took him, Genesis 5:24 and Hebrews 11:5, and Elijah.

THE SEARCH

Fifty strong men searched the hills for three days, in case the Spirit had dropped him somewhere. They found nothing, 2:16 to 18.

THE QUESTION

Where did Elijah go, and will he come back?

Every View

MALACHI 4:5 · MATTHEW 11:14 · 17:3 · JOHN 1:21 · 3:13 · REVELATION 11:3 TO 6

VIEW 1: TO GOD IN HEAVEN

Most Jews and Christians through history believe God took Elijah, body and all, to be with Him, like Enoch. He did not die.

VIEW 2: UP INTO THE SKY

Jesus said no one has gone up into heaven except the One who came down from heaven, John 3:13. So some think Elijah went up into the sky, the heavens where birds fly, and God took him to a place we are not told about. Some point to a letter from Elijah in 2 Chronicles 21:12 to 15, sent to a later king. Others answer that he wrote it before he was taken.

HIS RETURN

Malachi 4:5 says God will send Elijah before the great day of Yahweh. Jews still set a cup for Elijah at the Passover meal. Jesus said John the Baptist was the Elijah who was to come, Matthew 11:14, though John said he was not Elijah himself, John 1:21. Luke 1:17 says John came in the spirit and power of Elijah.

ON THE MOUNTAIN

Elijah and Moses appeared with Jesus on the mountain and talked with Him, Matthew 17:3.

THE TWO WITNESSES

Revelation 11:6 says God's two witnesses can shut the sky so no rain falls, like Elijah. Many think one of them will be Elijah. Others think they stand for the church's witness. This Bible does not take a side.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God took Elijah, and the work went on through Elisha. Elijah's going up points ahead to Jesus, who rose from the dead and went up into heaven, Acts 1:9.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE DOUBLE PORTION

What Elisha Asked For

2 KINGS 2:9 TO 15 · DEUTERONOMY 21:15 TO 17 · 1 KINGS 19:16 TO 21

THE ASK

Before he was taken, Elijah said, Tell me, what can I do for you? Elisha said, Please, let me inherit a double portion of your spirit, 2:9.

WHAT IT MEANT

Under God's law, the firstborn son got a double portion, twice what each other son got, Deuteronomy 21:17. Elisha was asking to be Elijah's heir, the one who carried on his work.

A HARD THING

Elijah said, You have asked a hard thing. If you see me when I am taken, it will be yours, 2:10. Elisha saw.

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

THE CLOAK
Elisha picked up Elijah's cloak, struck the Jordan and cried, Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah? The water parted again, 2:13 to 14.

THE PROOF
The prophets at Jericho saw it and said, The spirit of Elijah rests on Elisha, and they bowed down to him, 2:15.

ELISHA'S CALL
Years before, Elijah threw his cloak over Elisha while he was plowing with twelve pairs of oxen. Elisha burned his plow, cooked the oxen for a farewell meal, and followed him, 1 Kings 19:19 to 21.

THE QUESTION
Did Elisha get twice the power of Elijah, or did he get the oldest son's share?

Every View
2 KINGS 13:20 TO 21 · JOHN 14:12 · ACTS 1:8 TO 9 · 2:1 TO 4

VIEW 1: THE OLDEST SON'S SHARE
Most scholars say Elisha was asking to be Elijah's main heir, the firstborn among the prophets, not to be twice as great. Elisha called Elijah My father, 2:12.

VIEW 2: TWICE THE POWER
Many teachers say Elisha really did get double. The Bible tells about more of his miracles than Elijah's.

COUNTING THE MIRACLES
One old Jewish count lists eight miracles for Elijah and sixteen for Elisha. In that count, the last one happened after Elisha died, when a dead man touched his bones and came back to life, 13:21. Other counts come out different.

VIEW 3: A PICTURE OF THE SPIRIT
Some Christians see a picture of Jesus going up and sending the Holy Spirit on His followers, Acts 1:8 to 9 and 2:1 to 4. Jesus said those who believe would do even greater works, because He was going to the Father, John 14:12.

WHAT HE DID NOT ASK FOR
Elisha could have asked for anything. He did not ask for money, safety or fame. He asked for more of God's Spirit to do God's work.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The power was never Elisha's own, or Elijah's. Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah? was the right question, 2:14. God was still with His people when their great prophet was gone.

ELISHA HEALS THE WATERS OF JERICHO

19 Then the men of the city said to Elisha,
"Please note, our lord, that the city's location is good, as you can see. But the water is bad and the land is unfruitful."

20 "Bring me a new bowl," he replied, "and put some salt in it."

So they brought it to him, 21 and Elisha went out to the spring, cast the salt into it, and said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'I have healed this water. No longer will it cause death or unfruitfulness.'"

22 And the waters there have been healthy to this day, according to the word spoken by Elisha.

ELISHA MOCKED

23 From there, Elisha went up to Bethel, and as he was walking up the road, a group of boys came out of the city and jeered at him, chanting, "Go up, you baldhead! Go up, you baldhead!"

24 Then he turned around, looked at them, and called down a curse on them in the name of Yahweh.

Suddenly two female bears came out of the woods and mauled forty-two of the boys.

25 And Elisha went on to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE BEARS AND THE BOYS

What Happened
2 KINGS 2:19 TO 25 · 1 KINGS 12:28 TO 29 · LEVITICUS 26:21 TO 22

RIGHT AFTER A KIND MIRACLE
Just before this, Elisha healed the bad water of Jericho so the city could live, 2:19 to 22. Then he walked up the road to Bethel.

- **2KI 2:19 [MIRACLE]** Elisha healed the waters of Jericho with salt
- **2KI 2:23 [MIRACLE]** Bears from the woods mauled 42 mocking youths after Elisha's curse
- **2KI 2:23 [NOTE]** BOYS. The Hebrew words can mean anything from small boys to young men. See the Big Question pages The Bears and the Boys, p.604.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

BETHEL
Bethel was the home of one of Jeroboam's golden calves, the center of false worship in Israel, 1 Kings 12:28 to 29.
THE CROWD
A group came out of the city and jeered at him, chanting, Go up, you baldhead! Go up, you baldhead! 2:23. Forty two of them were hurt, so the group must have been large.
THE CURSE
Elisha turned, looked at them, and called down a curse on them in the name of Yahweh. Two female bears came out of the woods and mauled forty two of them, 2:24.
WHAT THE BIBLE DOES NOT SAY
It does not say the bears killed them, though many think some died. It does not say how old they were, or what Elisha expected to happen.
BALDHEAD
Baldness was a shame in that world, Isaiah 3:24. Nobody knows if Elisha was really bald. Either way, it was meant as an insult.
THE QUESTION
Why would God's prophet curse a crowd of youths, and why would God send bears?

Every View
GENESIS 37:2 · 2 SAMUEL 18:5 · LUKE 6:28 · GALATIANS 6:7

VIEW 1: YOUNG MEN, NOT LITTLE KIDS
The Hebrew words can mean little boys, but the same word is used for Joseph at seventeen, Genesis 37:2, and for Absalom as a grown man, 2 Samuel 18:5. Many think this was a gang of young men, big enough to be a real threat to one man on a lonely road.
VIEW 2: MOCKING GOD
Go up may have mocked Elijah being taken up: go away like your master. Shouting it at God's prophet from the city of the golden calf was mocking Yahweh. God's law warned that if Israel kept rebelling, He would send wild animals against them, Leviticus 26:22.
VIEW 3: A STORY TOLD AS A WARNING
Some scholars think this was a story told among the prophets to warn people to respect God's messengers, without saying how it happened.
ELISHA DID NOT SEND THE BEARS
He spoke a curse in Yahweh's name. God decided what happened next. Jesus later taught His followers to bless those who curse them, Luke 6:28.
STILL HARD
Many Christians admit this is one of the hardest stories in the Bible, and that it should not be used to make God seem cruel or quick to hurt kids.
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Mocking God is serious, and God is not mocked, Galatians 6:7. And the same God healed Jericho's water in the verses right before, 2:19 to 22.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
Moab stops paying its tribute of lambs and wool. Israel, Judah and Edom march out together and run out of water in the desert. Elisha says, Dig ditches, and the next morning they are full of water. Moab sees the water shining red in the sun, thinks it is blood, and charges into a trap. Then the king of Moab does something horrible on his city wall.

MOAB'S REBELLION

1 In the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat's reign over Judah, Jehoram son of Ahab became king of Israel, and he reigned in Samaria twelve years. 2 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, but not as his father and mother had done. He removed the sacred pillar of Baal that his father had made.

3 Nevertheless, he clung to the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel to commit; he did not turn away from them.

4 Now Mesha king of Moab was a sheep breeder, and he would render to the king of Israel a hundred thousand lambs and the wool of a hundred thousand rams. 5

2KI 3:2 [DEMONIC] Joram removes the sacred pillar of Baal
2KI 3:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Mesha king of Moab tells how he broke free from Israel
2KI 3:4 [FIELD NOTES] Mesha bragged about this very revolt on a stone. See The Mesha Stele Field Notes page in Ruth, p.424.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

But after the death of Ahab, the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel. 6 So at that time King Jehoram set out from Samaria and mobilized all Israel. 7 And he sent a message to Jehoshaphat king of Judah: "The king of Moab has rebelled against me. Will you go with me to fight against Moab?"

"I will go," replied Jehoshaphat. "I am as you are, my people are your people, and my horses are your horses." 8 Then he asked, "Which way shall we go up?"

"By way of the Desert of Edom," replied Joram.

9 So the king of Israel, the king of Judah, and the king of Edom set out, and after they had traveled a roundabout route for seven days, they had no water for their army or for their animals.

10 "Alas," said the king of Israel, "for Yahweh has summoned these three kings to deliver them into the hand of Moab!"

11 But Jehoshaphat asked, "Is there no prophet of Yahweh here? Let us inquire of Yahweh through him."

And one of the servants of the king of Israel answered, "Elisha son of Shaphat is here. He used to pour water on the hands of Elijah."

12 Jehoshaphat affirmed, "The word of Yahweh is with him." So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat and the king of Edom went down to him.

13 Elisha, however, said to the king of Israel, "What have we to do with each other? Go to the prophets of your father and of your mother!"

"No," replied the king of Israel, "for it is Yahweh who has summoned these three kings to deliver them into the hand of Moab."

14 Then Elisha said, "As surely as Yahweh of Hosts lives, before whom I stand, were it not for my regard for the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not look at you or acknowledge you. 15 But now, bring me a harpist."

And while the harpist played, the hand of Yahweh came upon Elisha 16 and he said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'Dig this valley full of ditches.' 17 For Yahweh says, 'You will not see wind or rain, but the valley will be filled with water, and you will drink—you and your cattle and your animals.' 18 This is a simple matter in the sight of Yahweh, and He will also deliver the Moabites into your hand. 19 And you shall attack every fortified city and every city of importance. You shall cut down every good tree, stop up every spring, and ruin every good field with stones."

20 The next morning, at the time of the morning sacrifice, water suddenly flowed from the direction of Edom and filled the land.

21 Now all the Moabites had heard that the kings had come up to fight against them. So all who could bear arms, young and old, were summoned and stationed at the border. 22 When they got up early in the morning, the sun was shining on the water, and it looked as red as blood to the Moabites across the way.

23 "This is blood!" they exclaimed. "The kings have clashed swords and slaughtered one another. Now to the plunder, Moab!"

24 But when the Moabites came to the camp of Israel, the Israelites rose up and attacked them, and they fled before them. So the Israelites invaded their land and struck down the Moabites. 25 They destroyed the cities, and each man threw stones on every good field until it was covered. They stopped up every spring and cut down every good tree. Only Kir-haraseth was left with stones in place, but men with slings surrounded it and attacked it as well.

26 When the king of Moab saw that the battle was too fierce for him, he took with

- **2KI 3:16 [MIRACLE]** Trenches filled with water without rain or wind
- **2KI 3:17 [PROPHECY]** The dry valley would fill with water without rain and Moab would be defeated → 2KI 3:20; 2KI 3:24 p.606
- **2KI 3:20 [FULFILLS]** The dry valley would fill with water without rain and Moab would be defeated ← 2KI 3:17-18 p.606
- **2KI 3:24 [FULFILLS]** The dry valley would fill with water without rain and Moab would be defeated ← 2KI 3:17-18 p.606

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES DEMONIC

him seven hundred swordsmen to break through to the king of Edom, but they could not prevail. 27 So he took his firstborn son, who was to succeed him, and offered him as a burnt offering on the city wall.

And there was great fury against the Israelites, so they withdrew and returned to their own land.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Elisha's miracle month. A widow's last jar of oil fills every jar she can borrow. A kind couple in Shunem builds Elisha a guest room, and God gives them a son. When the boy dies, Elisha brings him back to life. A pot of poison stew is fixed with flour, and twenty loaves feed a hundred men with food left over.

THE WIDOW'S OIL

1 Now the wife of one of the sons of the prophets cried out to Elisha, "Your servant, my husband, is dead, and you know that your servant feared Yahweh. And now his creditor is coming to take my two children as his slaves!"

2 "How can I help you?" asked Elisha. "Tell me, what do you have in the house?"

She answered, "Your servant has nothing in the house but a jar of oil."

3 "Go," said Elisha, "borrow empty jars from all your neighbors. Do not gather just a few. 4 Then go inside, shut the door behind you and your sons, and pour oil into all these jars, setting the full ones aside."

5 So she left him, and after she had shut the door behind her and her sons, they kept bringing jars to her, and she kept pouring. 6 When all the jars were full, she said to her son, "Bring me another."

But he replied, "There are no more jars." Then the oil stopped flowing.

7 She went and told the man of God, and he said, "Go, sell the oil, and pay your debt. Then you and your sons can live on the remainder."

THE SHUNAMMITE WOMAN // MATTHEW 10:40–42

8 One day Elisha went to Shunem, and a prominent woman who lived there persuaded him to have a meal. So whenever he would pass by, he would stop there to eat.

9 Then the woman said to her husband, "Behold, now I know that the one who often comes our way is a holy man of God. 10 Please let us make a small room upstairs and put in it a bed, a table, a chair, and a lamp for him. Then when he comes to us, he can stay there."

11 One day Elisha came to visit and went to his upper room to lie down. 12 And he said to Gehazi his servant, "Call the Shunammite woman."

And when he had called her, she stood before him, 13 and Elisha said to Gehazi, "Now tell her, 'Look, you have gone to all this trouble for us. What can we do for you? Can we speak on your behalf to the king or the commander of the army?'"

"I have a home among my own people," she replied.

14 So he asked, "Then what should be done for her?"

"Well, she has no son," Gehazi replied, "and her husband is old."

15 "Call her," said Elisha.

So Gehazi called her, and she stood in the doorway. 16 And Elisha declared, "At this time next year, you will hold a son in your arms."

"No, my lord," she said. "Do not lie to your maidservant, O man of God."

17 But the woman did conceive, and at that time the next year she gave birth to a son, just as Elisha had told her.

2KI 3:27 [DEMONIC] The king of Moab burns his son as an offering

2KI 3:27 [NOTE] CHILD SACRIFICE. The king of Moab burned his oldest son as an offering to his god, in front of both armies. GREAT FURY: the Hebrew does not say whose. Some think Moab was stirred to fight harder, some think Israel was horrified and went home, and some think it was God's anger.

2KI 4:1 [MIRACLE] Widow's oil multiplied to fill all available jars

2KI 4:16 [PROPHECY] Elisha told the Shunammite woman she would hold a son in a year → 2KI 4:17 p.607

2KI 4:16 [MIRACLE] The Shunammite woman has a son as Elisha promised

2KI 4:17 [FULFILLS] Elisha told the Shunammite woman she would hold a son in a year ← 2KI 4:16 p.607

MIRACLES

ELISHA RAISES THE SHUNAMMITE'S SON // ACTS 20:7–12

18 And the child grew, and one day he went
out to his father, who was with the har-
vesters.
19 "My head! My head!" he complained to
his father.
So his father told a servant, "Carry him to
his mother."
20 After the servant had picked him up and
carried him to his mother, the boy sat on
her lap until noon, and then he died. 21 And
she went up and laid him on the bed of
the man of God. Then she shut the door
and went out.
22 And the woman called her husband and
said, "Please send me one of the servants
and one of the donkeys, that I may go
quickly to the man of God and return."
23 "Why would you go to him today?" he
replied. "It is not a New Moon or a Sab-
bath."
"Everything is all right," she said.
24 Then she saddled the donkey and told
her servant, "Drive onward; do not slow
the pace for me unless I tell you." 25 So
she set out and went to the man of God at
Mount Carmel.
When the man of God saw her at a dis-
tance, he said to his servant Gehazi,
"Look, there is the Shunammite woman. 26
Please run out now to meet her and ask,
'Are you all right? Is your husband all
right? Is your child all right?'"
And she answered, "Everything is all
right."
27 When she reached the man of God at
the mountain, she clung to his feet. Ge-
hazi came over to push her away, but the
man of God said, "Leave her alone, for her
soul is in deep distress, and Yahweh has
hidden it from me and has not told me."
28 Then she said, "Did I ask you for a son,
my lord? Didn't I say, 'Do not deceive
me?'"
29 So Elisha said to Gehazi, "Tie up your
garment, take my staff in your hand, and
go! If you meet anyone, do not greet him,
and if anyone greets you, do not answer
him. Then lay my staff on the boy's face."
30 And the mother of the boy said, "As
surely as Yahweh lives and as you your-
self live, I will not leave you." So he got up
and followed her.
31 Gehazi went on ahead of them and laid
the staff on the boy's face, but there was
no sound or response. So he went back to
meet Elisha and told him, "The boy has
not awakened."
32 When Elisha reached the house, there
was the boy lying dead on his bed. 33 So
he went in, closed the door behind the
two of them, and prayed to Yahweh.
34 Then Elisha got on the bed and lay on
the boy, mouth to mouth, eye to eye, and
hand to hand. As he stretched himself out
over him, the boy's body became warm.
35 Elisha turned away and paced back and
forth across the room. Then he got on the
bed and stretched himself out over the
boy again, and the boy sneezed seven
times and opened his eyes.
36 Elisha summoned Gehazi and said, "Call
the Shunammite woman." So he called her
and she came.
Then Elisha said, "Pick up your son."
37 She came in, fell at his feet, and bowed
to the ground. Then she picked up her
son and went out.

ELISHA PURIFIES THE POISONOUS STEW

38 When Elisha returned to Gilgal, there
was a famine in the land. As the sons of
the prophets were sitting at his feet, he
said to his attendant, "Put on the large pot
and boil some stew for the sons of the
prophets."
39 One of them went out to the field to
gather herbs, and he found a wild vine
from which he gathered as many wild
gourds as his garment could hold. Then
he came back and cut them up into the
pot of stew, though no one knew what
they were.

- **2KI 4:32 [MIRACLE]** Elisha raised the Shunammite's son
- **2KI 4:36 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 11:35 p.1993
- **2KI 4:38 [MIRACLE]** Poison pot of stew healed with flour

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

40 And they poured it out for the men to
eat, but when they tasted the stew they
cried out, "There is death in the pot, O
man of God!" And they could not eat it.
41 Then Elisha said, "Get some flour." He
threw it into the pot and said, "Pour it out
for the people to eat." And there was
nothing harmful in the pot.

FEEDING A HUNDRED MEN // MATTHEW 15:29–39; MARK 8:1–10

42 Now a man from Baal-shalishah came to
the man of God with a sack of twenty
loaves of barley bread from the first ripe
grain.
"Give it to the people to eat," said Elisha.
43 But his servant asked, "How am I to set
twenty loaves before a hundred men?"
"Give it to the people to eat," said Elisha,
"for this is what Yahweh says: 'They will
eat and have some left over.'"
44 So he set it before them, and they ate
and had some left over, according to the
word of Yahweh.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Naaman is a mighty Aramean general with leprosy. A captured Israelite girl tells him about the prophet in Samaria. Elisha does not even come to the door. He just says, Wash seven times in the Jordan. Naaman is insulted, then obeys, and his skin becomes like a little boy's. Elisha's servant Gehazi chases Naaman for money and goes home with the leprosy instead.

NAAMAN CURED OF LEPROSY // LUKE 17:11–19

1 Now Naaman, the commander of the
army of the king of Aram, was a great
man in his master's sight and highly re-
garded, for through him Yahweh had
given victory to Aram. And he was a
mighty man of valor, but he was a leper.
2 At this time the Arameans had gone out
in bands and had taken a young girl from
the land of Israel, and she was serving
Naaman's wife. 3 She said to her mistress,
"If only my master would go to the
prophet who is in Samaria, he would cure
him of his leprosy."
4 And Naaman went and told his master
what the girl from the land of Israel had
said.
5 "Go now," said the king of Aram, "and I
will send you with a letter to the king of Is-
rael."
So Naaman departed, taking with him 750
pounds of silver, 150 pounds of gold, and
ten sets of clothing.
6 And the letter that he took to the king of
Israel stated: "With this letter I am sending
my servant Naaman, so that you may cure
him of his leprosy."
7 When the king of Israel read the letter, he
tore his clothes and asked, "Am I God,
killing and giving life, that this man ex-
pects me to cure a leper? Surely you can
see that he is seeking a quarrel with me!"
8 Now when Elisha the man of God heard
that the king of Israel had torn his clothes,
he sent a message to the king: "Why have
you torn your clothes? Please let the man
come to me, and he will know that there is
a prophet in Israel."
9 So Naaman came with his horses and
chariots and stood at the door of Elisha's
house.
10 Then Elisha sent him a messenger, who
said, "Go and wash yourself seven times
in the Jordan, and your flesh will be re-
stored, and you will be clean."
11 But Naaman went away angry, saying, "I
thought that he would surely come out,
stand and call on the name of Yahweh his
God, and wave his hand over the spot to
cure my leprosy. 12 Are not the Abanah
and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, bet-
ter than all the waters of Israel? Could I
not have washed in them and been

- **2KI 4:42 [MIRACLE]** 20 loaves fed 100 men with left-overs
- **2KI 4:42 [NOTE]** BARLEY LOAVES. Jesus fed 5,000 with five barley loaves, and there were leftovers then too, John 6:9 to 13.
- **2KI 4:43 [PROPHECY]** Twenty loaves would feed a hundred men with food left over → 2KI 4:44 p.609
- **2KI 4:44 [FULFILLS]** Twenty loaves would feed a hundred men with food left over ← 2KI 4:43 p.609
- **2KI 5:1 [NOTE]** NAAMAN. Jesus said there were many lepers in Israel in Elisha's day, but only this foreigner was healed, Luke 4:27. See the Big Question pages Naaman, p.610.
- **2KI 5:10 [PROPHECY]** Naaman would be healed if he washed seven times in the Jordan → 2KI 5:14 p.610
- **2KI 5:10 [MIRACLE]** Elisha tells Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

cleansed?" So he turned and went away in a rage.

13 Naaman's servants, however, approached him and said, "My father, if the prophet had told you to do some great thing, would you not have done it? How much more, then, when he tells you, 'Wash and be cleansed'?"

14 So Naaman went down and dipped himself in the Jordan seven times, according to the word of the man of God, and his flesh was restored and became like that of a little child, and he was clean.

GEHAZI'S GREED AND LEPROSY

15 Then Naaman and all his attendants went back to the man of God, stood before him, and declared, "Now I know for sure that there is no God in all the earth except in Israel. So please accept a gift from your servant."

16 But Elisha replied, "As surely as Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I will not accept it." And although Naaman urged him to accept it, he refused.

17 "If you will not," said Naaman, "please let me, your servant, be given as much soil as a pair of mules can carry. For your servant will never again make a burnt offering or a sacrifice to any other god but Yahweh. 18 Yet may Yahweh forgive your servant this one thing: When my master goes into the temple of Rimmon to worship there, and he leans on my arm, and I bow down in the temple of Rimmon, may Yahweh forgive your servant in this matter."

19 "Go in peace," said Elisha.

But after Naaman had traveled a short distance, 20 Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of God, said, "Look, my master has spared this Aramean, Naaman, by not accepting what he brought. As surely as Yahweh lives, I will run after him and get something from him."

- **2KI 5:14 [MIRACLE]** Naaman's flesh is restored like a young boy's
- **2KI 5:14 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 4:27 p.1655
- **2KI 5:14 [FULFILLS]** Naaman would be healed if he washed seven times in the Jordan ← 2KI 5:10 p.609
- **2KI 5:17 [DEMONIC]** Naaman vows to worship only God but must enter Rimmon's temple

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

NAAMAN

A General Healed

2 KINGS 5:1 TO 27 · LEVITICUS 13 · LUKE 4:27

A GREAT MAN WITH A PROBLEM

Naaman was the commander of the army of Aram, a brave hero, but he had leprosy, 5:1. In the Bible, leprosy means a skin disease that made people unclean.

A LITTLE GIRL'S FAITH

A young girl taken captive from Israel served Naaman's wife. She said, If only my master would go to the prophet in Samaria! 5:2 to 3.

THE WRONG DOOR

The king of Aram sent Naaman to the king of Israel with money and a letter. The king of Israel tore his clothes: Am I God, to heal leprosy? 5:5 to 7.

WASH SEVEN TIMES

Elisha did not even come outside. He sent a messenger: Wash seven times in the Jordan. Naaman was furious. Are not the rivers of Damascus better? His servants said, If he had asked you to do something great, would you not have done it? So he washed, and his skin became like a little boy's, 5:10 to 14.

NO GOD BUT ISRAEL'S

Naaman went back and said, Now I know there is no God in all the earth except in Israel. Elisha would not take a single gift, 5:15 to 16.

THE QUESTION

Why did Naaman ask for dirt, and why did Elisha let him go into the temple of Rimmon?

Every View

2 KINGS 5:15 TO 19 · LUKE 4:24 TO 30 · MATTHEW 8:5 TO 13

THE DIRT

Naaman asked for two mule loads of Israel's soil, 5:17. People then believed each god belonged to his own land. Naaman wanted to worship Yahweh on Israel's ground, even back home in Damascus.

THE TEMPLE OF RIMMON

Rimmon, also called Hadad, was the storm god of Damascus. Naaman's king

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC

leaned on his arm when he bowed there. Naaman asked Yahweh to forgive him for bowing with his king, 5:18. Elisha said, Go in peace, 5:19.

VIEW 1: GOD WAS PATIENT

Many think Elisha did not approve of idols, but trusted God to keep working in a brand new believer who was far from home.

VIEW 2: ONLY A GOODBYE

Others say Go in peace was a normal farewell, not a yes. Elisha did not answer the question. He left it to God.

JESUS AND NAAMAN

Jesus said there were many lepers in Israel in Elisha's day, but only Naaman, a foreigner, was healed. The people of Nazareth were so angry they tried to throw Him off a cliff, Luke 4:27 to 29.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God's mercy reached an enemy general. Healing came by simple obedience, not by money. And Gehazi, who chased Naaman for silver, went home with the leprosy instead, 5:20 to 27.

21 So Gehazi pursued Naaman. And when
Naaman saw him running toward him, he
got down from the chariot to meet him
and asked, "Is everything all right?"

22 "Everything is all right," Gehazi replied.
"My master has sent me to say, 'Look, two
young men from the sons of the prophets
have just now come to me from the hill
country of Ephraim. Please give them 75
pounds of silver and two sets of cloth-
ing.'"

23 But Naaman insisted, "Please, take 150
pounds." And he urged Gehazi to accept
them. Then he tied up 150 pounds of sil-
ver in two bags along with two sets of
clothing and gave them to two of his ser-
vants, who carried them ahead of Gehazi.

24 When Gehazi came to the hill, he took
the gifts from the servants and stored
them in the house. Then he dismissed the
men, and they departed.

25 When Gehazi went in and stood before
his master, Elisha asked him, "Gehazi,
where have you been?"

"Your servant did not go anywhere," he replied.

26 But Elisha questioned him, "Did not my heart go with you when the man got down from his chariot to meet you? Is this the time to accept money and clothing, olive groves and vineyards, sheep and oxen, menservants and maidservants? 27 Therefore, the leprosy of Naaman will cling to you and your descendants forever!"

And as Gehazi left his presence, he was leprous—as white as snow.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

A borrowed axe head floats. The king of Aram keeps getting ambushed because Elisha tells Israel's king every plan, so he sends an army to capture one prophet. Elisha's servant panics, and God opens his eyes to see hills full of horses and chariots of fire. Then Samaria is surrounded, and the famine gets so bad that people do unthinkable things.

THE AXE HEAD FLOATS

1 Now the sons of the prophets said to Elisha, "Please take note that the place
where we meet with you is too small for
us. 2 Please let us go to the Jordan, where
each of us can get a log so we can build
ourselves a place to live there."

"Go," said Elisha.

3 Then one of them said, "Please come
with your servants."

"I will come," he replied.

4 So Elisha went with them, and when they
came to the Jordan, they began to cut
down some trees. 5 As one of them was
cutting down a tree, the iron axe head fell
into the water. "Oh, my master," he cried
out, "it was borrowed!"

6 "Where did it fall?" asked the man of God.

And when he showed him the place, the man of God cut a stick, threw it there, and made the iron float.

- **2KI 5:26 [HEART]** Elisha's heart went with Gehazi. God's prophet saw what was done in secret.
- **2KI 5:27 [DEMONIC]** Naaman's leprosy fell on Gehazi and his descendants forever
- **2KI 6:5 [MIRACLE]** Axe head floated when Elisha threw in a stick

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

7 "Lift it out," he said, and the man reached
out his hand and took it.

ELISHA CAPTURES THE BLINDED ARAMEANS

8 Now the king of Aram was at war against
Israel. After consulting with his servants,
he said, "My camp will be in such and
such a place."

9 Then the man of God sent word to the
king of Israel: "Be careful not to pass by
this place, for the Arameans are going
down there."

10 So the king of Israel sent word to the
place the man of God had pointed out.
Time and again Elisha warned the king, so
that he was on his guard in such places. 11
For this reason the king of Aram became
enraged and called his servants to de-
mand of them, "Tell me, which one of us
is on the side of the king of Israel?"

12 But one of his servants replied, "No one,
my lord the king. For Elisha, the prophet in
Israel, tells the king of Israel the very
words you speak in your bedroom."

13 So the king said, "Go and see where he
is, that I may send men to capture him."

On receiving the report, "Elisha is in
Dothan," 14 the king of Aram sent horses,
chariots, and a great army. They went
there by night and surrounded the city.

15 When the servant of the man of God got
up and went out early in the morning, be-
hold, an army with horses and chariots
had surrounded the city. So he asked El-
isha, "Oh, my master, what are we to do?"

16 "Do not be afraid," Elisha answered, "for
those who are with us are more than
those who are with them."

17 Then Elisha prayed, "O Yahweh, please
open his eyes that he may see."

And Yahweh opened the eyes of the
young man, and he saw that the hills were
full of horses and chariots of fire all
around Elisha.

18 As the Arameans came down against
him, Elisha prayed to Yahweh, "Please
strike these people with blindness." So He
struck them with blindness, according to
the word of Elisha.

19 And Elisha told them, "This is not the
way, and this is not the city. Follow me,
and I will take you to the man you are
seeking." And he led them to Samaria.

20 When they had entered Samaria, Elisha
said, "O Yahweh, open the eyes of these
men that they may see."

Then Yahweh opened their eyes, and they
looked around and discovered that they
were in Samaria.

21 And when the king of Israel saw them,
he asked Elisha, "My father, shall I kill
them? Shall I kill them?"

22 "Do not kill them," he replied. "Would
you kill those you have captured with your
own sword or bow? Set food and water
before them, that they may eat and drink
and then return to their master."

23 So the king prepared a great feast for
them, and after they had finished eating
and drinking, he sent them away, and they
returned to their master. And the Aramean
raiders did not come into the land of Israel
again.

THE SIEGE AND FAMINE OF SAMARIA

24 Some time later, Ben-hadad king of
Aram assembled his entire army and
marched up to besiege Samaria.

25 So there was a great famine in Samaria.
Indeed, they besieged the city so long
that a donkey's head sold for two pounds
of silver, and a cup of dove's dung sold for
two ounces of silver.

26 As the king of Israel was passing by on
the wall, a woman cried out to him, "Help
me, my lord the king!"

27 He answered, "If Yahweh does not help
you, where can I find help for you? From
the threshing floor or the winepress?" 28
Then the king asked her, "What is the
matter?"

2KI 6:15 [MIRACLE] Elisha's servant's eyes opened to see fiery horses and chariots
2KI 6:16 [NOTABLE] The servant saw an army. Elisha saw the hills full of horses and chariots of fire. God's help is often there before we can see it.
2KI 6:18 [MIRACLE] Aramean army struck blind, then sight restored in Samaria
2KI 6:25 [NOTE] DOVE'S DUNG. Some think this was a nickname for a cheap food, like a kind of bean or wild bulb. Others think hungry people really used it for food or fuel.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

And she answered, "This woman said to me, 'Give up your son, that we may eat him, and tomorrow we will eat my son.' 29 So we boiled my son and ate him, and the next day I said to her, 'Give up your son, that we may eat him.' But she had hidden her son."

30 When the king heard the words of the woman, he tore his clothes. And as he passed by on the wall, the people saw the sackcloth under his clothes next to his skin. 31 He announced, "May God punish me, and ever so severely, if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat remains on his shoulders through this day!"

32 Now Elisha was sitting in his house, and the elders were sitting with him. The king sent a messenger ahead, but before he arrived, Elisha said to the elders, "Do you see how this murderer has sent someone to cut off my head? Look, when the messenger comes, shut the door to keep him out. Is not the sound of his master's footsteps behind him?"

33 While Elisha was still speaking with them, the messenger came down to him. And the king said, "This calamity is from Yahweh. Why should I wait for Yahweh any longer?"

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Elisha says that by this time tomorrow food will be cheap. A royal officer laughs. That night God makes the Aramean army hear a huge army coming, and they run, leaving everything behind. Four men with leprosy find the empty camp, have a feast, then tell the city. Food is cheap the next day, and the officer gets trampled in the gate.

ELISHA'S PROPHECY OF PLENTY

1 Then Elisha said, "Hear the word of Yahweh! This is what Yahweh says: 'About this time tomorrow at the gate of Samaria, six quarts of fine flour will sell for half an ounce of silver, and twelve quarts of barley will sell for half an ounce of silver.'"

2 But the officer on whose arm the king leaned answered the man of God, "Look, even if Yahweh were to make windows in heaven, could this really happen?"

"You will see it with your own eyes," replied Elisha, "but you will not eat any of it."

THE ARAMEANS FLEE

3 Now there were four men with leprosy at the entrance of the city gate, and they said to one another, "Why just sit here until we die? 4 If we say, 'Let us go into the city,' we will die there from the famine in the city; but if we sit here, we will also die. So come now, let us go over to the camp of the Arameans. If they let us live, we will live; if they kill us, we will die."

5 So they arose at twilight and went to the camp of the Arameans. But when they came to the outskirts of the camp, there was not a man to be found. 6 For the Lord had caused the Arameans to hear the sound of chariots, horses, and a great army, so that they said to one another, "Look, the king of Israel must have hired the kings of the Hittites and Egyptians to attack us."

7 Thus the Arameans had arisen and fled at twilight, abandoning their tents and horses and donkeys. The camp was intact, and they had run for their lives.

8 When the lepers reached the edge of the camp, they went into a tent to eat and drink. Then they carried off the silver, gold, and clothing, and went and hid them. On returning, they entered another tent, carried off some items from there, and hid them.

9 Finally, they said to one another, "We are not doing what is right. Today is a day of good news. If we are silent and wait until morning light, our sin will overtake us. Now, therefore, let us go and tell the king's household."

10 So they went and called out to the gatekeepers of the city, saying, "We went to the Aramean camp and no one was

2KI 6:28 [FULFILLS] In siege, people would eat their own children ← LEV 26:29 p.217
2KI 7:1 [PROPHECY] Elisha predicted: famine over in 24 hours, food prices would crash; the king's officer would see it but not eat → 2KI 7:16-20 p.614

2KI 7:6 [MIRACLE] The Lord makes the Aramean army hear chariots and flee

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

there—not a trace—only tethered horses and donkeys, and the tents were intact."

11 The gatekeepers shouted the news, and it was reported to the king's household.

12 So the king got up in the night and said to his servants, "Let me tell you what the Arameans have done to us. They know we are starving, so they have left the camp to hide in the field, thinking, 'When they come out of the city, we will take them alive and enter the city.'"

13 But one of his servants replied, "Please, have scouts take five of the horses that remain in the city. Their plight will be no worse than all the Israelites who are left here. You can see that all the Israelites here are doomed. So let us send them and find out."

14 Then the scouts took two chariots with horses, and the king sent them after the Aramean army, saying, "Go and see." 15 And they tracked them as far as the Jordan, and indeed, the whole way was littered with the clothing and equipment the Arameans had thrown off in haste. So the scouts returned and told the king.

ELISHA'S PROPHECY FULFILLED

16 Then the people went out and plundered the camp of the Arameans. It was then that six quarts of fine flour sold for half an ounce of silver, and twelve quarts of barley sold for half an ounce of silver, according to the word of Yahweh.

17 Now the king had appointed the officer on whose arm he leaned to be in charge of the gate, but the people trampled him in the gateway, and he died, just as the man of God had foretold when the king had come to him. 18 It happened just as the man of God had told the king: "About this time tomorrow at the gate of Samaria, twelve quarts of barley will sell for half an ounce of silver, and six quarts of fine flour will sell for half an ounce of silver."

19 And the officer had answered the man of God, "Look, even if Yahweh were to make windows in heaven, could this really happen?"

So Elisha had replied, "You will see it with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it!"

20 And that is just what happened to him. The people trampled him in the gateway, and he died.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

The woman from Shunem gets her land back after a famine, right while Gehazi is telling the king her story. Elisha weeps when he sees what Hazael will do to Israel, and Hazael murders the king of Aram the next day. In Judah, King Jehoram marries Ahab's daughter and follows Ahab's ways.

THE SHUNAMMITE'S LAND RESTORED

1 Now Elisha had said to the woman whose son he had restored to life, "Arise, you and your household; go and live as a foreigner wherever you can. For Yahweh has decreed that a seven-year famine will come to the land."

2 So the woman had proceeded to do as the man of God had instructed. And she and her household lived as foreigners for seven years in the land of the Philistines.

3 At the end of seven years, when the woman returned from the land of the Philistines, she went to the king to appeal for her house and her land.

4 Now the king had been speaking to Gehazi, the servant of the man of God, saying, "Please relate to me all the great things Elisha has done."

5 And Gehazi was telling the king how Elisha had brought the dead back to life. Just then the woman whose son Elisha had revived came to appeal to the king for her house and her land. So Gehazi said, "My lord the king, this is the woman, and this is the son Elisha restored to life."

6 When the king asked the woman, she confirmed it. So the king appointed for her an officer, saying, "Restore all that was

2KI 7:16 [FULFILLS] Elisha predicted: famine over in 24 hours, food prices would crash; the king's officer would see it but not eat ← 2KI 7:1-2 p.613

2KI 8:1 [PROPHECY] Elisha warned of a famine that would last seven years → 2KI 8:2-3 p.614

2KI 8:2 [FULFILLS] Elisha warned of a famine that would last seven years ← 2KI 8:1 p.614

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

hers, along with all the proceeds of the field from the day that she left the country until now."

HAZAEL MURDERS BEN-HADAD

7 Then Elisha came to Damascus while Ben-hadad king of Aram was sick, and the king was told, "The man of God has come here."

8 So the king said to Hazael, "Take a gift in your hand, go to meet the man of God, and inquire of Yahweh through him, 'Will I recover from this illness?'"

9 So Hazael went to meet Elisha, taking with him a gift of forty camel loads of every good thing from Damascus. And he went in and stood before him and said, "Your son Ben-hadad king of Aram has sent me to ask, 'Will I recover from this illness?'"

10 Elisha answered, "Go and tell him, 'You will surely recover.' But Yahweh has shown me that in fact he will die."

11 Elisha fixed his gaze steadily on him until Hazael became uncomfortable. Then the man of God began to weep.

12 "Why is my lord weeping?" asked Hazael.

"Because I know the evil you will do to the Israelites," Elisha replied. "You will set fire to their fortresses, kill their young men with the sword, dash their little ones to pieces, and rip open their pregnant women."

13 "But how could your servant, a mere dog, do such a monstrous thing?" said Hazael.

And Elisha answered, "Yahweh has shown me that you will be king over Aram."

14 So Hazael left Elisha and went to his master, who asked him, "What did Elisha say to you?"

And he replied, "He told me that you would surely recover." 15 But the next day Hazael took a thick cloth, dipped it in water, and spread it over the king's face.

So Ben-hadad died, and Hazael reigned in his place.

JEHORAM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 21:1–7

16 In the fifth year of the reign of Joram son of Ahab over Israel, Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat succeeded his father as king of Judah. 17 Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years.

18 And Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, just as the house of Ahab had done. For he married a daughter of Ahab and did evil in the sight of Yahweh.

19 Yet for the sake of His servant David, Yahweh was unwilling to destroy Judah, since He had promised to maintain a lamp for David and his descendants forever.

EDOM AND LIBNAH REBEL // 2 CHRONICLES 21:8–11

20 In the days of Jehoram, Edom rebelled against the hand of Judah and appointed their own king. 21 So Jehoram crossed over to Zair with all his chariots. When the Edomites surrounded him and his chariot commanders, he rose up and attacked by night. His troops, however, fled to their homes.

22 So to this day Edom has been in rebellion against the hand of Judah. Likewise, Libnah rebelled at the same time.

23 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoram, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

24 And Jehoram rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the City of David. And his son Ahaziah reigned in his place.

- **2KI 8:10 [PROPHECY]** Elisha said Ben hadad would die, not recover → 2KI 8:15 p.615
- **2KI 8:12 [PROPHECY]** Elisha's tearful prophecy to Hazael → 2KI 10:32-33; 2KI 13:3; 2KI 13:22 p.621
- **2KI 8:13 [PROPHECY]** Elisha said Hazael would become king of Aram → 2KI 8:15 p.615
- **2KI 8:13 [FULFILLS]** Elijah was told to anoint Hazael, Jehu, and Elisha, and judgment would come through them ← 1KI 19:15-17 p.586
- **2KI 8:15 [FULFILLS]** Elisha said Ben hadad would die, not recover ← 2KI 8:10 p.615
- **2KI 8:15 [FULFILLS]** Elisha said Hazael would become king of Aram ← 2KI 8:13 p.615
- **2KI 8:20 [FULFILLS]** Isaac's prophecy that Esau would live by the sword and eventually break Jacob's yoke ← GEN 27:39-40 p.85
- **2KI 8:24 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Ahaziah of Judah is most likely named on the Tel Dan Stele, though part of the name is broken, see the note on 8:28
- **2KI 8:24 [NOTE]** TWO JORAMS. Judah's king Jehoram, also called Joram, and Israel's king Joram, also called Jehoram, ruled at the same time and were brothers in

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

AHAZIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 22:1–7

25 In the twelfth year of the reign of Joram
son of Ahab over Israel, Ahaziah son of
Jehoram became king of Judah. 26
Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when
he became king, and he reigned in
Jerusalem one year. His mother's name
was Athaliah, the granddaughter of Omri
king of Israel.

27 And Ahaziah walked in the ways of the
house of Ahab and did evil in the sight of
Yahweh like the house of Ahab, for he
was a son-in-law of the house of Ahab.

28 Then Ahaziah went with Joram son of
Ahab to fight against Hazael king of Aram
at Ramoth-gilead, and the Arameans
wounded Joram. 29 So King Joram re-
turned to Jezreel to recover from the
wounds that the Arameans had inflicted
on him at Ramah when he fought against
Hazael king of Aram. Then Ahaziah son of
Jehoram king of Judah went down to
Jezreel to visit Joram son of Ahab, be-
cause Joram had been wounded.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

A young prophet runs in, pours oil on Jehu's head, and runs out. Jehu becomes king and drives like a madman to Jezreel. He shoots King Joram of Israel with an arrow, has King Ahaziah of Judah shot too, and Jezebel is thrown out a window. The dogs leave almost nothing, just as Elijah said.

JEHU ANOINTED KING OF ISRAEL

1 Now Elisha the prophet summoned one
of the sons of the prophets and said to
him, "Tuck your cloak under your belt,
take this flask of oil, and go to Ramoth-
gilead. 2 When you arrive, look for Jehu
son of Jehoshaphat, the son of Nimshi.
Go in, get him away from his companions,
and take him to an inner room. 3 Then take
the flask of oil, pour it on his head, and
declare, 'This is what Yahweh says: I
anoint you king over Israel.' Then open the
door and run. Do not delay!"

4 So the young prophet went to Ramoth-
gilead, 5 and when he arrived, the army
commanders were sitting there. "I have a
message for you, commander," he said.

"For which of us?" asked Jehu.

"For you, commander," he replied.

6 So Jehu got up and went into the house,
where the young prophet poured the oil
on his head and declared, "This is what
Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'I anoint
you king over Yahweh's people Israel. 7
And you are to strike down the house of
your master Ahab, so that I may avenge
the blood of My servants the prophets
and the blood of all the servants of Yah-
weh shed by the hand of Jezebel. 8 The
whole house of Ahab will perish, and I will
cut off from Ahab every male, both slave
and free, in Israel. 9 I will make the house
of Ahab like the houses of Jeroboam son
of Nebat and Baasha son of Ahijah. 10 And
on the plot of ground at Jezreel the dogs
will devour Jezebel, and there will be no
one to bury her.'"

Then the young prophet opened the door
and ran.

11 When Jehu went out to the servants of
his master, they asked, "Is everything all
right? Why did this madman come to
you?"

"You know his kind and their babble," he
replied.

12 "That is a lie!" they said. "Tell us now!"

So Jehu answered, "He talked to me
about this and that, saying, 'This is what
Yahweh says: I anoint you king over Is-
rael.'"

law. Judah's Jehoram is in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:8, so only his name is underlined.

2KI 8:28 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Aramaic inscription that names the House of David

2KI 8:28 [FIELD NOTES] THE TEL DAN STELE. An Aramean king, most likely Hazael, bragged on a stone that he killed Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah of the House of David. Parts of both names are broken. The Bible says Jehu killed them, 9:24 and 9:27. See the Tel Dan Stele Field Notes page in 2 Samuel, p.504.

2KI 9:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Assyrian king's carving shows King Jehu of Israel, or his messenger, bowing with tribute → FIELD NOTES p.617

2KI 9:2 [FIELD NOTES] An Assyrian king carved a picture of Jehu, or his messenger, bowing before him. See the Jehu on the Black Obelisk Field Notes page, p.617.

2KI 9:6 [PROPHECY] Elisha sent a prophet to anoint Jehu and command him to wipe out Ahab's house → 2KI 9:24; 2KI 9:35-36; 2KI 10:11 p.618

2KI 9:6 [NOTABLE] The oil set Jehu apart for the hard job God gave him: to judge the house of Ahab.

2KI 9:6 [FULFILLS] Elijah was told to anoint Hazael, Jehu, and Elisha, and judgment would come through them ← 1KI 19:15-17 p.586

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

JEHU ON THE BLACK OBELISK

2 KINGS 9:1 TO 10:36 · 1 KINGS 19:16



The Jehu panel on the Black Obelisk, British Museum. The man bowing to the ground is Jehu, or his messenger, before Shalmaneser III. Photo Steven G. Johnson, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A black stone pillar about 6½ feet tall, carved on all four sides by Shalmaneser III, king of Assyria. Its five rows of pictures show kings bringing him gifts. One row shows a man bowing with his face to the ground.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 825 BC. The scene with Jehu comes from 841 BC, the year Jehu took the throne.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Nimrud in Iraq, ancient Calah, by Austen Henry Layard in 1846. It is in the British Museum in London.

WHAT IT SAYS

The words over the picture say: The tribute of Jehu, son of Omri. Silver, gold, a golden bowl, golden cups, golden buckets, tin, a staff for the king's hand and spears. Assyria called Israel the house of Omri, so even Jehu, who wiped out Omri's family, is called son of Omri.

THE ONLY PICTURE

This is the only known picture of a king of Israel, or of his messenger, made in his own lifetime. The Bible does not mention this gift. Jehu may have paid to keep Assyria on his side against Hazael of Aram, 10:32.

THE OTHER FOUR ROWS

The other rows show gifts from four other lands. Servants lead in two humped camels, an elephant and monkeys, and carry metal, cloth and tusks. Lions and a deer are carved on one row. A line of writing over each row names the king or land that sent them.

JEHU IN OTHER RECORDS

Shalmaneser's written records of his eighteenth year, 841 BC, also say he took tribute from Jehu, after he marched against Hazael of Damascus.

WHY JEHU BOWED

In 841 BC Jehu had just killed Joram of Israel and Ahaziah of Judah, 9:24 to 27. Hazael of Aram was pressing on his borders. Bowing to Assyria may have looked like the safest way to keep his new throne.

THE HOUSE OF OMRI

Assyria kept calling Israel the house of Omri for more than a hundred years after Omri died. Jehu wiped out Omri's family, 10:11, yet to Assyria he was still the son of Omri, the name of his country.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Some think the bowing man is Jehu's messenger, not Jehu himself. A few scholars think the name means Joram. Most read it as Jehu, the king 2 Kings 9 to 10 describes.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

13 Quickly, each man took his garment and
put it under Jehu on the bare steps. Then
they blew the ram's horn and proclaimed,
"Jehu is king!"

JEHU KILLS JORAM AND AHAZIAH // 2 CHRONICLES 22:8–9

14 Thus Jehu son of Jehoshaphat, the son
of Nimshi, conspired against Joram.
(Now Joram and all Israel had been de-
fending Ramoth-gilead against Hazael
king of Aram, 15 but King Joram had re-
turned to Jezreel to recover from the
wounds he had suffered at the hands of
the Arameans in the battle against Hazael
their king.)
So Jehu said, "If you commanders wish to
make me king, then do not let anyone es-
cape from the city to go and tell it in
Jezreel."
16 Then Jehu got into his chariot and went
to Jezreel, because Joram was laid up
there. And Ahaziah king of Judah had
gone down to see him.
17 Now the watchman standing on the
tower in Jezreel saw Jehu's troops ap-
proaching, and he called out, "I see a
company of troops!"
"Choose a rider," Joram commanded.
"Send him out to meet them and ask,
'Have you come in peace?'"
18 So a horseman rode off to meet Jehu
and said, "This is what the king asks:
'Have you come in peace?'"
"What do you know about peace?" Jehu
replied. "Fall in behind me."
And the watchman reported, "The mes-
senger reached them, but he is not com-
ing back."
19 So the king sent out a second horse-
man, who went to them and said, "This is
what the king asks: 'Have you come in
peace?'"
"What do you know about peace?" Jehu
replied. "Fall in behind me."
20 Again the watchman reported, "He
reached them, but he is not coming back.
And the charioteer is driving like Jehu son
of Nimshi—he is driving like a madman!"
21 "Harness!" Joram shouted, and they
harnessed his chariot.
Then Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah
king of Judah set out, each in his own
chariot, and met Jehu on the property of
Naboth the Jezreelite.
22 When Joram saw Jehu, he asked, "Have
you come in peace, Jehu?"
"How can there be peace," he replied, "as
long as the idolatry and witchcraft of your
mother Jezebel abound?"
23 Joram turned around and fled, calling
out to Ahaziah, "Treachery, Ahaziah!"
24 Then Jehu drew his bow and shot Jo-
ram between the shoulders. The arrow
pierced his heart, and he slumped down
in his chariot.
25 And Jehu said to Bidkar his officer,
"Pick him up and throw him into the field
of Naboth the Jezreelite. For remember
that when you and I were riding together
behind his father Ahab, Yahweh lifted up
this burden against him: 26 'As surely as I
saw the blood of Naboth and the blood of
his sons yesterday, declares Yahweh, so
will I repay you on this plot of ground, de-
clares Yahweh.' Now then, according to
the word of Yahweh, pick him up and
throw him on the plot of ground."
27 When King Ahaziah of Judah saw this,
he fled up the road toward Beth-haggan.
And Jehu pursued him, shouting, "Shoot
him too!"
So they shot Ahaziah in his chariot on the
Ascent of Gur, near Ibleam, and he fled to
Megiddo and died there. 28 Then his ser-
vants carried him by chariot to Jerusalem
and buried him with his fathers in his tomb
in the City of David.
29 (In the eleventh year of Joram son of
Ahab, Ahaziah had become king over Ju-
dah.)

- **2KI 9:22 [DEMONIC]** Jehu condemns the idolatry and witchcraft of Jezebel
- **2KI 9:24 [FULFILLS]** Elisha sent a prophet to anoint Jehu and command him to wipe out Ahab's house ← 2KI 9:6-10 p.616
- **2KI 9:25 [FULFILLS]** Because Ahab humbled himself, the ruin of his house would come in his son's days ← 1KI 21:29 p.592

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

JEZEBEL'S VIOLENT DEATH

30 Now when Jehu arrived in Jezreel,
Jezebel heard of it. So she painted her
eyes, adorned her head, and looked down
from a window. 31 And as Jehu entered the
gate, she asked, "Have you come in
peace, O Zimri, murderer of your master?"
32 He looked up at the window and called
out, "Who is on my side? Who?"
And two or three eunuchs looked down at
him.
33 "Throw her down!" yelled Jehu.
So they threw her down, and her blood
splattered on the wall and on the horses
as they trampled her underfoot.
34 Then Jehu went in and ate and drank.
"Take care of this cursed woman," he
said, "and bury her, for she was the
daughter of a king."
35 But when they went out to bury her,
they found nothing but her skull, her feet,
and the palms of her hands.
36 So they went back and told Jehu, who
replied, "This is the word of Yahweh,
which He spoke through His servant Elijah
the Tishbite: 'On the plot of ground at
Jezreel the dogs will devour the flesh of
Jezebel. 37 And Jezebel's body will lie like
dung in the field on the plot of ground at
Jezreel, so that no one can say: This is
Jezebel.'"

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Jehu wipes out the rest of Ahab's family. Then he throws a big party for Baal and invites every worshiper of Baal in Israel. It is a trap. Baal's temple becomes a public toilet. But Jehu keeps Jeroboam's golden calves, and Hazael begins to cut pieces off Israel.

AHAB'S SEVENTY SONS KILLED

1 Now Ahab had seventy sons in Samaria.
So Jehu wrote letters and sent them to
Samaria to the officials of Jezreel, to the
elders, and to the guardians of the sons of
Ahab, saying: 2 "When this letter arrives,
since your master's sons are with you and
you have chariots and horses, a fortified
city and weaponry, 3 select the best and
most worthy son of your master, set him
on his father's throne, and fight for your
master's house."
4 But they were terrified and reasoned, "If
two kings could not stand against him,
how can we?"
5 So the palace administrator, the overseer
of the city, the elders, and the guardians
sent a message to Jehu: "We are your
servants, and we will do whatever you
say. We will not make anyone king. Do
whatever is good in your sight."
6 Then Jehu wrote them a second letter
and said: "If you are on my side, and if
you will obey me, then bring the heads of
your master's sons to me at Jezreel by
this time tomorrow."
Now the sons of the king, seventy in all,
were being brought up by the leading men
of the city. 7 And when the letter arrived,
they took the sons of the king and slaughtered all seventy of them. They put their
heads in baskets and sent them to Jehu at
Jezreel.
8 When the messenger arrived, he told
Jehu, "They have brought the heads of
the sons of the king."
And Jehu ordered, "Pile them in two
heaps at the entrance of the gate until
morning."
9 The next morning, Jehu went out and
stood before all the people and said, "You
are innocent. It was I who conspired
against my master and killed him. But who
killed all these? 10 Know, then, that not a
word Yahweh has spoken against the
house of Ahab will fail, for Yahweh has
done what He promised through His servant Elijah."
11 So Jehu killed everyone in Jezreel who
remained of the house of Ahab, as well as
all his great men and close friends and
priests, leaving him without a single survivor.

2KI 9:35 [FULFILLS] Elijah told Ahab: dogs would lick his blood where they licked Naboth's; Jezebel would be eaten by dogs ← 1KI 21:19-23 p.591
2KI 9:35 [FULFILLS] Elisha sent a prophet to anoint Jehu and command him to wipe out Ahab's house ← 2KI 9:6-10 p.616

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

12 Then Jehu set out toward Samaria. At
Beth-eked of the Shepherds, 13 Jehu met
some relatives of Ahaziah king of Judah
and asked, "Who are you?"
"We are relatives of Ahaziah," they an-
swered, "and we have come down to
greet the sons of the king and of the
queen mother."
14 Then Jehu ordered, "Take them alive."
So his men took them alive, then slaugh-
tered them at the well of Beth-
eked—forty-two men. He spared none of
them.
15 When he left there, he found Jehonadab
son of Rechab, who was coming to meet
him. Jehu greeted him and asked, "Is your
heart as true to mine as my heart is to
yours?"
"It is!" Jehonadab replied.
"If it is," said Jehu, "give me your hand."
So he gave him his hand, and Jehu helped
him into his chariot, 16 saying, "Come with
me and see my zeal for Yahweh!" So he
had him ride in his chariot.
17 When Jehu came to Samaria, he struck
down everyone belonging to Ahab who
remained there, until he had destroyed
them, according to the word that Yahweh
had spoken to Elijah.

JEHU KILLS THE PRIESTS OF BAAL

18 Then Jehu brought all the people to-
gether and said, "Ahab served Baal a little,
but Jehu will serve him a lot. 19 Now,
therefore, summon to me all the prophets
of Baal, all his servants, and all his priests.
See that no one is missing, for I have a
great sacrifice for Baal. Whoever is miss-
ing will not live."
But Jehu was acting deceptively in order
to destroy the servants of Baal.
20 And Jehu commanded, "Proclaim a
solemn assembly for Baal." So they an-
nounced it.
21 Then Jehu sent word throughout Israel,
and all the servants of Baal came; there
was not a man who failed to show. They
entered the temple of Baal, and it was
filled from end to end.
22 And Jehu said to the keeper of the
wardrobe, "Bring out garments for all the
servants of Baal." So he brought out gar-
ments for them.
23 Next, Jehu and Jehonadab son of
Rechab entered the temple of Baal, and
Jehu said to the servants of Baal, "Look
around to see that there are no servants
of Yahweh here among you—only ser-
vants of Baal."
24 And they went in to offer sacrifices and
burnt offerings. Now Jehu had stationed
eighty men outside and warned them, "If
anyone allows one of the men I am deliv-
ering into your hands to escape, he will
forfeit his life for theirs."
25 When he had finished making the burnt
offering, Jehu said to the guards and offi-
cers, "Go in and kill them. Do not let any-
one out."
So the guards and officers put them to the
sword, threw the bodies out, and went
into the inner room of the temple of Baal.
26 They brought out the sacred pillar of the
temple of Baal and burned it. 27 They also
demolished the sacred pillar of Baal. Then
they tore down the temple of Baal and
made it into a latrine, which it is to this
day.

JEHU REPEATS JEROBOAM'S SINS

28 Thus Jehu eradicated Baal from Israel,
29 but he did not turn away from the sins
that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused
Israel to commit—the worship of the
golden calves at Bethel and Dan.
30 Nevertheless, Yahweh said to Jehu,
"Because you have done well in carrying
out what is right in My sight and have
done to the house of Ahab all that was in
My heart, four generations of your sons
will sit on the throne of Israel."

- **2KI 10:11 [FULFILLS]** Because Ahab humbled himself, the ruin of his house would come in his son's days ← 1KI 21:29 p.592
- **2KI 10:11 [FULFILLS]** Elisha sent a prophet to anoint Jehu and command him to wipe out Ahab's house ← 2KI 9:6-10 p.616
- **2KI 10:15 [HEART]** Jehu asked Jehonadab if his heart was true, as Jehu's heart was true to him.
- **2KI 10:18 [DEMONIC]** Jehu traps and destroys the worshipers of Baal

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

31 Yet Jehu was not careful to follow the
instruction of Yahweh, the God of Israel,
with all his heart. He did not turn away
from the sins that Jeroboam had caused
Israel to commit.

32 In those days Yahweh began to reduce
the size of Israel. Hazael defeated the Is-
raelites throughout their territory 33 from
the Jordan eastward through all the land
of Gilead (the region of Gad, Reuben, and
Manasseh), and from Aroer by the Arnon
Valley through Gilead to Bashan.

JEHOAHAZ SUCCEEDS JEHU IN ISRAEL

34 As for the rest of the acts of Jehu, along
with all his accomplishments and all his
might, are they not written in the Book of
the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

35 And Jehu rested with his fathers and
was buried in Samaria, and his son Je-
hoahaz reigned in his place. 36 So the du-
ration of Jehu's reign over Israel in
Samaria was twenty-eight years.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Athaliah, Ahab's daughter, sees her son is dead and kills the royal family so she can rule Judah. But baby Joash is hidden in the temple for six years. In the seventh year the priest Jehoiada brings out the boy king, the people clap and shout, Long live the king! and Athaliah's reign is over.

ATHALIAH AND JOASH // 2 CHRONICLES 22:10–12

1 When Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah
saw that her son was dead, she pro-
ceeded to annihilate all the royal heirs. 2
But Jehosheba daughter of King Joram,
the sister of Ahaziah, took Joash son of
Ahaziah and stole him away from among
the sons of the king who were being mur-
dered. She put him and his nurse in a
bedroom to hide him from Athaliah, and
he was not killed.

3 And Joash remained hidden with his
nurse in the house of Yahweh for six
years while Athaliah ruled the land.

JOASH ANOINTED KING OF JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 23:1–11

4 Then in the seventh year, Jehoiada sent
for the commanders of hundreds, the
Carites, and the guards, and had them
brought into the house of Yahweh. There
he made a covenant with them and put
them under oath.

He showed them the king's son 5 and
commanded them, "This is what you are
to do: A third of you who come on duty on
the Sabbath shall guard the royal palace,
6 a third shall be at the gate of Sur, and a
third at the gate behind the guards. You
are to take turns guarding the temple— 7
the two divisions that would go off duty
on the Sabbath are to guard the house of
Yahweh for the king. 8 You must surround
the king with weapons in hand, and any-
one who approaches the ranks must be
put to death. You must stay close to the
king wherever he goes."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

JEHU: HERO OR BUTCHER?

What Happened

2 KINGS 9:1 TO 10:36 · 1 KINGS 19:16 TO 17 · 21:21 TO 24

ANOINTED FOR A JOB

God had told Elijah to anoint Jehu, 1 Kings 19:16. Years later a young prophet poured oil on his head and gave God's command: strike down the house of Ahab, 9:6 to 10.

HE DRIVES LIKE A MADMAN

The watchman knew Jehu from far away by the way he drove, 9:20.

THE KILLINGS

Jehu shot Joram king of Israel, 9:24, had Ahaziah king of Judah shot, 9:27, and had Jezebel thrown from a window, 9:33. Then came the heads of Ahab's seventy sons, 10:7, forty two relatives of Ahaziah, 10:14, Ahab's officials and priests, 10:11, and every worshiper of Baal, 10:25.

2KI 10:30 [PROPHECY] God told Jehu his sons would sit on Israel's throne to the fourth generation → 2KI 15:12 p.630

2KI 10:30 [NOTE] JEHU. God praised him for wiping out Ahab's house, but Hosea 1:4 later judges his house for the blood of Jezreel. See the Big Question pages Jehu: Hero or Butcher?, p.621

2KI 10:31 [HEART] Jehu did some good things but was not careful to follow God with all his heart.

2KI 10:32 [FULFILLS] Elisha's tearful prophecy to Hazael ← 2KI 8:12 p.615

2KI 11:1 [NOTE] ATHALIAH was the daughter of Ahab and Jezebel, and the only queen who ruled Judah on her own. If she had found baby Joash, David's royal line would have ended.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

GOD'S PRAISE
God said to Jehu, You have done well, and your sons will sit on Israel's throne to the fourth generation, 10:30.
BUT
Jehu kept the golden calves at Bethel and Dan, 10:29, and was not careful to follow God with all his heart, 10:31.
THE QUESTION
Less than 100 years later God said through Hosea, I will punish the house of Jehu for the blood of Jezreel, Hosea 1:4. Was Jehu a hero or a butcher?

Every View
HOSEA 1:4 TO 5 · 2 CHRONICLES 22:7 TO 9 · 2 KINGS 15:8 TO 12

VIEW 1: THE RIGHT JOB, THE WRONG HEART
Many think God commanded the judgment on Ahab's house, but Jehu went further for his own power, like killing Ahaziah's relatives from Judah. Hosea judged the extra blood and the heart behind it.
VIEW 2: HIS SONS, NOT HIM
Others think Hosea judged Jehu's family for keeping up the same violence and idols in his name, not Jehu for obeying God's command.
VIEW 3: BOTH ARE TRUE
Some say God can praise the part a man obeyed and still judge the rest. God used Jehu, but He never praised his methods.
AHAZIAH OF JUDAH
2 Chronicles 22:7 to 9 says God brought about Ahaziah's death when he went to visit Joram, because he followed the house of Ahab.
FOUR GENERATIONS
Jehoahaz, Jehoash, Jeroboam II and Zechariah followed Jehu. Zechariah was murdered after six months, and God's word to Jehu came true, 15:8 to 12.
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Zeal for God without a whole heart for God is not enough. Jehu wiped out Baal, but he never let go of the calves.

9 So the commanders of hundreds did
everything that Jehoiada the priest had
ordered. Each of them took his
men—those coming on duty on the Sabbath and those going off duty—and came to Jehoiada the priest. 10 Then the priest gave to the commanders of hundreds the spears and shields of King David from the house of Yahweh. 11 And the guards stood with weapons in hand surrounding the king by the altar and the temple, from the south side to the north side of the temple.

12 Then Jehoiada brought out the king's son, put the crown on him, presented him with the Testimony, and proclaimed him king. They anointed him, and the people clapped their hands and declared, "Long live the king!"

THE DEATH OF ATHALIAH // 2 CHRONICLES 23:12–15

13 When Athaliah heard the noise from the guards and the people, she went out to the people in the house of Yahweh. 14 And she looked out and saw the king standing by the pillar, according to the custom. The officers and trumpeters were beside the king, and all the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets.

Then Athaliah tore her clothes and screamed, "Treason! Treason!"

15 And Jehoiada the priest ordered the commanders of hundreds in charge of the army, "Bring her out between the ranks, and put to the sword anyone who follows her." For the priest had said, "She must not be put to death in the house of Yahweh."

16 So they seized Athaliah as she reached the horses' entrance to the palace grounds, and there she was put to death.

JEHOIADA RESTORES THE WORSHIP OF YAHWEH // 2 CHRONICLES 23:16–21

17 Then Jehoiada made a covenant between Yahweh and the king and the people that they would be Yahweh's people. He also made a covenant between the king and the people.

18 So all the people of the land went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed the altars and idols to pieces, and they killed Mattan the priest of Baal in front of the altars.

THE HEART DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

And Jehoiada the priest posted guards for the house of Yahweh. 19 He took with him the commanders of hundreds, the Carites, the guards, and all the people of the land, and they brought the king down from the house of Yahweh and entered the royal palace by way of the Gate of the Guards.

Then Joash took his seat on the royal throne, 20 and all the people of the land rejoiced. And the city was quiet, because Athaliah had been put to the sword at the royal palace.

21 Joash was seven years old when he became king.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

King Joash collects money to repair the temple. Years go by, and nothing gets fixed. So Jehoiada puts a box with a hole in the lid next to the altar, and the money finally goes to the workers. Later Joash pays Hazael with the temple treasures to go away, and his own servants kill him.

JOASH REPAIRS THE TEMPLE // 2 CHRONICLES 24:1–14

1 In the seventh year of Jehu, Joash became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem forty years. His mother's name was Zibiah she was from Beersheba. 2 And Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the days he was instructed by Jehoiada the priest.

3 Nevertheless, the high places were not removed; the people continued sacrificing and burning incense there.

4 Then Joash said to the priests, "Collect all the money brought as sacred gifts into the house of Yahweh—the census money, the money from vows, and the money that comes into anyone's heart to bring into the house of Yahweh. 5 Let every priest receive it from his constituency, and let it be used to repair any damage found in the temple."

6 By the twenty-third year of the reign of Joash, however, the priests had not yet repaired the damage to the temple. 7 So King Joash called Jehoiada and the other priests and said, "Why have you not repaired the damage to the temple? Now, therefore, take no more money from your constituency, but hand it over for the repair of the temple."

8 So the priests agreed that they would not receive money from the people and that they would not repair the temple themselves.

9 Then Jehoiada the priest took a chest, bored a hole in its lid, and set it beside the altar on the right side as one enters the house of Yahweh. There the priests who guarded the threshold put all the money brought into the house of Yahweh.

10 Whenever they saw that there was a large amount of money in the chest, the royal scribe and the high priest would go up, count the money brought into the house of Yahweh, and tie it up in bags. 11 Then they would put the counted money into the hands of those who supervised the work on the house of Yahweh, who in turn would pay those doing the work—the carpenters, builders, 12 masons, and stonecutters. They also purchased timber and dressed stone to repair the damage to the house of Yahweh, and they paid the other expenses of the temple repairs.

13 However, the money brought into the house of Yahweh was not used for making silver basins, wick trimmers, sprinkling bowls, trumpets, or any articles of gold or silver for the house of Yahweh. 14 Instead, it was paid to those doing the work, and with it they repaired the house of Yahweh.

15 No accounting was required from the men who received the money to pay the workmen, because they acted with integrity. 16 The money from the guilt offerings and sin offerings was not brought into the house of Yahweh; it belonged to the priests.

THE DEATH OF JOASH // 2 CHRONICLES 24:23–27

17 At that time Hazael king of Aram marched up and fought against Gath and captured it. Then he decided to attack

2KI 11:18 [DEMONIC] The people tear down Baal's temple and kill his priest
2KI 12:3 [DEMONIC] The high places were not removed
2KI 12:4 [HEART] Joash collected money that came into anyone's heart to give for the temple.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Jerusalem. 18 So King Joash of Judah took all the sacred objects dedicated by his fathers—Jehoshaphat, Jehoram, and Ahaziah, the kings of Judah—along with his own consecrated items and all the gold found in the treasuries of the house of Yahweh and the royal palace, and he sent them to Hazael king of Aram. So Hazael withdrew from Jerusalem.

19 As for the rest of the acts of Joash, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

20 And the servants of Joash rose up and formed a conspiracy and killed him at Beth-millo, on the road down to Silla. 21 His servants Jozabad son of Shimeath and Jehozabad son of Shomer struck him down, and he died. And they buried him with his fathers in the City of David, and his son Amaziah reigned in his place.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel's kings keep doing evil, and Aram keeps beating them. Elisha is dying and tells King Jehoash to strike the ground with arrows. He strikes three times and stops, so he will beat Aram only three times. Elisha dies, and later a dead man thrown into his grave touches his bones and comes back to life.

JEHOAHAZ REIGNS IN ISRAEL

1 In the twenty-third year of the reign of Joash son of Ahaziah over Judah, Jehoahaz son of Jehu became king of Israel, and he reigned in Samaria seventeen years. 2 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh and followed the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel to commit; he did not turn away from them. 3 So the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and He delivered them continually into the hands of Hazael king of Aram and his son Ben-hadad.

4 Then Jehoahaz sought the favor of Yahweh, and Yahweh listened to him because He saw the oppression that the king of Aram had inflicted on Israel. 5 So Yahweh gave Israel a deliverer, and they escaped the power of the Arameans. Then the people of Israel lived in their own homes as they had before.

6 Nevertheless, they did not turn away from the sins that the house of Jeroboam had caused Israel to commit, but they continued to walk in them. The Asherah pole even remained standing in Samaria.

7 Jehoahaz had no army left, except fifty horsemen, ten chariots, and ten thousand foot soldiers, because the king of Aram had destroyed them and made them like the dust at threshing.

8 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoahaz, along with all his accomplishments and his might, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

9 And Jehoahaz rested with his fathers and was buried in Samaria. And his son Jehoash reigned in his place.

JEHOASH REIGNS IN ISRAEL

10 In the thirty-seventh year of the reign of Joash over Judah, Jehoash son of Jehoahaz became king of Israel in Samaria, and he reigned sixteen years. 11 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh and did not turn away from all the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel to commit, but he walked in them.

12 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoash, along with all his accomplishments and his might, including his war against Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

13 And Jehoash rested with his fathers, and Jeroboam succeeded him on the throne. Jehoash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.

ELISHA'S FINAL PROPHECY

14 When Elisha had fallen sick with the illness from which he would die, Jehoash

2KI 13:3 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Ben hadad son of Hazael is named as Bar hadad son of Hazael, king of Aram, on the stone of Zakkur king of Hamath
2KI 13:3 [FULFILLS] Elisha's tearful prophecy to Hazael ← 2KI 8:12 p.615

2KI 13:6 [DEMONIC] The Asherah pole remained standing in Samaria
2KI 13:9 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Assyrian stone names Joash the Samarian paying tribute → FIELD NOTES p.625
2KI 13:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A seal from Megiddo belonged to Shema, servant of Jeroboam → FIELD NOTES p.626

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

JOASH THE SAMARIAN

2 KINGS 13:5 · 13:9 TO 25 · 14:8 TO 16



The Tell al Rimah Stele of Adad nirari III in the Iraq Museum, Baghdad. The king stands before the signs of his gods, and the writing runs across his robe. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A stone with a rounded top, about four feet tall, carved with Adad nirari III, king of Assyria. Its writing tells about his wars in the west. One line says: I received the tribute of Joash the Samarian, of the Tyrian and of the Sidonian.

HOW OLD IT IS

The war it tells about is usually dated about 796 BC, early in the reign of Jehoash of Israel. Some scholars date it a few years earlier. The stone was set up not long after.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Tell al Rimah in northern Iraq, in 1967, inside a temple. David Oates led the British dig, and Stephanie Page published the stone in 1968. It is in the Iraq Museum in Baghdad.

SAMARIA IN STONE

Joash and Jehoash are two spellings of the same name. This is the first time the name Samaria shows up in Assyrian writing. Assyria usually called Israel the house of Omri.

A DELIVERER?

2 Kings 13:5 says God gave Israel a deliverer, so they escaped from Aram. Many think Adad nirari III was that deliverer, because his attacks weakened Damascus. The stone does not say so. Others think the deliverer was Jehoash or Jeroboam II, 13:25 and 14:27.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The stone tells nothing about Elisha or the arrows, 13:14 to 19. It shows that a king of Israel named Joash paid Assyria at the time the Bible gives.

king of Israel came down to him and wept
over him, saying, "My father, my father,
the chariots and horsemen of Israel!"
15 Elisha told him, "Take a bow and some
arrows."
So Jehoash took a bow and some arrows.
16 Then Elisha said to the king of Israel,
"Put your hand on the bow."
So the king put his hand on the bow, and
Elisha put his hands on the king's hands.
17 "Open the east window," said Elisha.
So he opened it and Elisha said, "Shoot!"
So he shot.
And Elisha declared:
"This is Yahweh's arrow of victory,
the arrow of victory over Aram,
for you shall strike the Arameans in Aphek
until you have put an end to them."
18 Then Elisha said, "Take the arrows!"
So he took them, and Elisha said to the
king of Israel, "Strike the ground!"
So he struck the ground three times and
stopped.
19 But the man of God was angry with him
and said, "You should have struck the
ground five or six times. Then you would
have struck down Aram until you had put
an end to it. But now you will strike down
Aram only three times."

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE SEAL OF SHEMA

2 KINGS 13:13 · 14:23 TO 29 · AMOS 1:1 · 7:9 TO 11



Tel Megiddo, where the seal was found. The seal itself was lost long ago and is not shown. Photo Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A jasper seal, about an inch and a half long, carved with a roaring lion and the words: Belonging to Shema, servant of Jeroboam. Servant of the king was a title for a high royal officer.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most date it to the 700s BC, the reign of Jeroboam II, about 793 to 753 BC. A few scholars think it belonged to an officer of Jeroboam I, about 150 years earlier.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Megiddo, by Gottlieb Schumacher's dig, in 1904. It was sent to the Ottoman sultan in Constantinople and was never seen again. A bronze cast made before it left, and old photos, are all that remain.

WHO WAS SHEMA?

Nobody knows. The Bible does not name him. His seal shows that Jeroboam's kingdom had officers with fine seals of their own, as a strong and rich kingdom would.

THE BIBLE'S JEROBOAM II

He reigned 41 years, won back Israel's borders as Jonah had said, 14:25, and did evil like the first Jeroboam, 14:24. Amos and Hosea preached in his day, Amos 1:1 and Hosea 1:1.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Since the seal is lost, scholars can study only the cast and the photos. A clay seal print with the same words was bought in the early 1980s. It was made by a smaller seal, not this one, and experts still argue whether it is real. The Megiddo seal itself was dug up by archaeologists, so nobody doubts it.

20 And Elisha died and was buried.

Now the Moabite raiders used to come into the land every spring. 21 Once, as the Israelites were burying a man, suddenly they saw a band of raiders, so they threw the man's body into Elisha's tomb. And as soon as his body touched the bones of Elisha, the man was revived and stood up on his feet.

22 And Hazael king of Aram oppressed Israel throughout the reign of Jehoahaz. 23 But Yahweh was gracious to Israel and had compassion on them, and He turned toward them because of His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. And to this day, Yahweh has been unwilling to destroy them or cast them from His presence.

24 When Hazael king of Aram died, his son Ben-hadad reigned in his place. 25 Then Jehoash son of Jehoahaz took back from Ben-hadad son of Hazael the cities that Hazael had taken in battle from his father Jehoahaz. Jehoash defeated Ben-hadad three times, and so recovered the cities of Israel.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

King Amaziah of Judah beats Edom and gets a big head. He challenges King Jehoash of Israel, who answers with a story about a thistle and a cedar. Amaziah does not listen, loses badly, and Jerusalem's wall is broken down. In Israel, Jeroboam II wins back land, just as the prophet Jonah said he would.

2KI 13:19 [PROPHECY] King Jehoash would beat Aram only three times → 2KI 13:25 p.626

2KI 13:20 [MIRACLE] Dead man revived by touching Elisha's bones

2KI 13:22 [FULFILLS] Elisha's tearful prophecy to Hazael ← 2KI 8:12 p.615

2KI 13:25 [FULFILLS] King Jehoash would beat Aram only three times ← 2KI 13:19 p.625

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

AMAZIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 25:1–4

1 In the second year of the reign of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz over Israel,
Amaziah son of Joash became king of Judah. 2 He was twenty-five years old when
he became king, and he reigned in
Jerusalem twenty-nine years. His
mother's name was Jehoaddan she was
from Jerusalem. 3 And he did what was
right in the eyes of Yahweh, but not as his
father David had done. He did everything
as his father Joash had done.

4 Nevertheless, the high places were not
taken away, and the people continued
sacrificing and burning incense on the
high places.

5 As soon as the kingdom was firmly in his
grasp, Amaziah executed the servants
who had murdered his father the king. 6
Yet he did not put the sons of the murderers to death, but acted according to what
is written in the Book of the Law of
Moses, where Yahweh commanded: "Fathers must not be put to death for their
children, and children must not be put to
death for their fathers; each is to die for
his own sin."

7 Amaziah struck down 10,000 Edomites in
the Valley of Salt. He took Sela in battle
and called it Joktheel, which is its name to
this very day.

JEHOASH DEFEATS AMAZIAH // 2 CHRONICLES 25:17–24

8 Then Amaziah sent messengers to the
king of Israel Jehoash son of Jehoahaz,
the son of Jehu. "Come, let us meet face
to face," he said.

9 But Jehoash king of Israel replied to
Amaziah king of Judah: "A thistle in
Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in
Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to
my son in marriage.' Then a wild beast in
Lebanon came along and trampled the
thistle. 10 You have indeed defeated Edom,
and your heart has become proud. Glory
in that and stay at home. Why should you
stir up trouble so that you fall—you and
Judah with you?"

11 But Amaziah would not listen, so Jehoash king of Israel advanced. He and
King Amaziah of Judah faced each other
at Beth-shemesh in Judah. 12 And Judah
was routed before Israel, and every man
fled to his home.

13 There at Beth-shemesh, Jehoash king of
Israel captured Amaziah king of Judah,
the son of Joash, the son of Ahaziah.

Then Jehoash went to Jerusalem and
broke down the wall of Jerusalem from
the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate—a
section of 600 feet. 14 He took all the gold
and silver and all the articles found in the
house of Yahweh and in the treasuries of
the royal palace, as well as some
hostages. Then he returned to Samaria.

JEROBOAM II SUCCEEDS JEHOASH IN ISRAEL

15 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoash,
along with his accomplishments, his
might, and how he waged war against
Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the
Kings of Israel?

16 And Jehoash rested with his fathers and
was buried in Samaria with the kings of
Israel. And his son Jeroboam reigned in
his place.

THE DEATH OF AMAZIAH // 2 CHRONICLES 25:25–28

17 Amaziah son of Joash king of Judah
lived for fifteen years after the death of
Jehoash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel. 18
As for the rest of the acts of Amaziah, are
they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

19 And conspirators plotted against
Amaziah in Jerusalem, and he fled to
Lachish. But men were sent after him to
Lachish, and they killed him there. 20 They
carried him back on horses and buried
him in Jerusalem with his fathers in the
City of David.

2KI 14:4 [DEMONIC] The high places were not taken away

2KI 14:6 [NOTE] The writer quotes God's law, Deuteronomy 24:16, so those words print red.

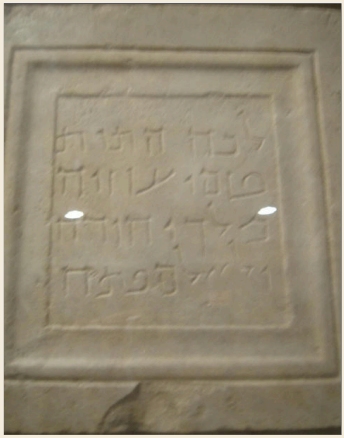
2KI 14:10 [HEART] Jehoash told Amaziah his heart had become proud after beating Edom. Pride came before his fall.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE UZZIAH PLAQUE

2 KINGS 14:21 TO 22 · 15:1 TO 7 · 2 CHRONICLES 26 · ISAIAH 6:1



The Uzziah burial plaque in the Israel Museum, Jerusalem. The two white spots are glare from the museum lights. Public domain photo.

WHAT IT IS

A stone plaque about 14 inches square, carved in Aramaic, the language most Jews spoke in Jesus' day. It reads: Here were brought the bones of Uzziah, king of Judah. Do not open.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was carved more than 700 years after Uzziah died, sometime between about 100 BC and AD 70, when his bones were moved to a new grave.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Eleazar Sukenik spotted it in 1931 in a collection of old objects at a Russian church on the Mount of Olives. Nobody knows where it was found before that. It is in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

SEALS FROM HIS OWN TIME

Two seals from the 700s BC belonged to officers called servant of Uzziah, one named Abiyaw and one named Shebanyaw. Both are in museums in Paris.

AZARIAH OR UZZIAH?

2 Kings calls him Azariah, Yahweh has helped, and also Uzziah, Yahweh is my strength, 15:13. 2 Chronicles 26:23 says he was buried in a field near the kings' tombs, because he had leprosy.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The plaque is not from Uzziah's time. A few scholars have doubted it. One called it a modern fake, and another thinks it was faked in ancient times. Most think it is real. It shows that Jews in Jesus' day remembered King Uzziah and honored his bones. The seals are from his own time.

AZARIAH SUCCEEDS AMAZIAH IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 26:1–2

21 Then all the people of Judah took Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah. 22 Azariah was the one who rebuilt Elath and restored it to Judah after King Amaziah rested with his fathers.

JEROBOAM II REIGNS IN ISRAEL

23 In the fifteenth year of the reign of Amaziah son of Joash over Judah, Jeroboam son of Jehoash became king of Israel, and he reigned in Samaria forty-one years. 24 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh and did not turn away from all the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel to commit.

25 This Jeroboam restored the boundary of Israel from Lebo-hamath to the Sea of the Arabah, according to the word that Yahweh, the God of Israel, had spoken through His servant Jonah son of Amittai, the prophet from Gath-hepher. 26 For Yahweh saw that the affliction of the Israelites, both slave and free, was very bit-

- **2KI 14:21 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Seals of his officials and a later burial plaque name King Uzziah, the Bible's Azariah → FIELD NOTES p.628
- **2KI 14:25 [PROPHECY]** Jonah son of Amittai foretold that Jeroboam II would win back Israel's borders → 2KI 14:25 p.628
- **2KI 14:25 [FULFILLS]** Jonah son of Amittai foretold that Jeroboam II would win back Israel's borders ← 2KI 14:25 p.628
- **2KI 14:25 [NOTE]** JONAH. The same Jonah who was swallowed by the great fish, Jonah 1:1. See the Big Question pages Jonah Son of Amittai, p.629.

ter. There was no one to help Israel, 27 and since Yahweh had said that He would not blot out the name of Israel from under heaven, He saved them by the hand of Jeroboam son of Jehoash.

28 As for the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, along with all his accomplishments and might, and how he waged war and recovered both Damascus and Hamath for Israel from Judah, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

29 And Jeroboam rested with his fathers, the kings of Israel. And his son Zechariah reigned in his place.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

JONAH SON OF AMITTAI

The Prophet in Kings

2 KINGS 14:23 TO 29 · JONAH 1:1 · JOSHUA 19:13 · JOHN 7:52

ONE VERSE

2 Kings 14:25 says Jeroboam II won back Israel's old borders, from Lebo hamath to the Dead Sea, just as Yahweh had said through His servant Jonah son of Amittai, the prophet from Gath hepher. Jonah 1:1 gives the same name.

GOD'S MERCY ON A BAD KING

Jeroboam II did evil, 14:24. But God saw how bitter Israel's suffering was, and that there was no one to help, so He saved them through Jeroboam, 14:26 to 27.

GATH HEPHER

Jonah's town was in Zebulun, Joshua 19:13, a few miles from Nazareth. Jesus' enemies said no prophet comes from Galilee, John 7:52, but Jonah did.

WHEN

Jeroboam II ruled about 793 to 753 BC. Assyria, with its capital Nineveh, was Israel's great enemy, and it would destroy Israel about 30 years after Jeroboam died.

THE SAME NAME

Jonah means dove, and Amittai means my truth. Jonah son of Amittai is named in only two places, 2 Kings 14:25 and Jonah 1:1, so almost everyone agrees they are the same man.

THE QUESTION

Is the Jonah of the great fish a real man of history, and why would he run from God?

Every View

MATTHEW 12:39 TO 41 · JONAH 4:1 TO 11 · NAHUM 3:1 TO 7

VIEW 1: A REAL PROPHET AND A REAL STORY

Most Jews and Christians through history take the book of Jonah as real history. 2 Kings puts Jonah in a real king's reign. Jesus spoke of Jonah's three days in the fish and of Nineveh turning to God as real events, Matthew 12:39 to 41.

VIEW 2: A REAL PROPHET, A TEACHING STORY

Some scholars agree Jonah was a real prophet, but think the book of Jonah tells a story about him to teach a lesson, like a parable, about God's mercy on enemies.

WHY JONAH RAN

Nineveh was Israel's enemy. Jonah knew God was gracious and slow to anger, and he did not want Nineveh spared, Jonah 4:2.

TWO KINDS OF MERCY

Jonah brought good news to Israel under a bad king, and later a warning that saved Nineveh. Both times God showed mercy no one deserved.

HIS TOMB

A mosque on a mound at Nineveh, Nebi Yunus, was said to hold Jonah's tomb. ISIS blew it up in 2014. Another old tradition puts his grave near Gath hepher.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God cares about people His prophets would rather see judged. Should I not have compassion on Nineveh? Jonah 4:11.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

A quick parade of kings. Azariah of Judah reigns 52 years but gets leprosy. In Israel, Zechariah lasts six months, Shallum one month, and Menahem pays off the king of Assyria. Pekah kills Pekahiah, and Hoshea kills Pekah. Assyria starts carrying Israelites away.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

AZARIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 26:3–23

1 In the twenty-seventh year of
Jeroboam's reign over Israel, Azariah son
of Amaziah became king of Judah. 2 He
was sixteen years old when he became
king, and he reigned in Jerusalem fifty-
two years. His mother's name was Jecol-
iah she was from Jerusalem. 3 And he did
what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just
as his father Amaziah had done.

4 Nevertheless, the high places were not
taken away; the people continued sacri-
ficing and burning incense there.

5 And Yahweh afflicted the king with lep-
rosy until the day he died, so that he lived
in a separate house while his son Jotham
had charge of the palace and governed
the people of the land.

6 As for the rest of the acts of Azariah,
along with all his accomplishments, are
they not written in the Book of the Chroni-
cles of the Kings of Judah?

7 And Azariah rested with his fathers and
was buried near them in the City of David.
And his son Jotham reigned in his place.

ZECHARIAH REIGNS IN ISRAEL

8 In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah's
reign over Judah, Zechariah son of Jer-
oboam became king of Israel, and he
reigned in Samaria six months. 9 And he
did evil in the sight of Yahweh, as his fa-
thers had done. He did not turn away from
the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had
caused Israel to commit.

10 Then Shallum son of Jabesh conspired
against Zechariah, struck him down and
killed him in front of the people, and
reigned in his place.

11 As for the rest of the acts of Zechariah,
they are indeed written in the Book of the
Chronicles of the Kings of Israel. 12 So the
word of Yahweh spoken to Jehu was ful-
filled: "Four generations of your sons will
sit on the throne of Israel."

SHALLUM REIGNS IN ISRAEL

13 In the thirty-ninth year of Uzziah's reign
over Judah, Shallum son of Jabesh be-
came king, and he reigned in Samaria one
full month.

14 Then Menahem son of Gadi went up
from Tirzah to Samaria, struck down and
killed Shallum son of Jabesh, and reigned
in his place.

15 As for the rest of the acts of Shallum,
along with the conspiracy he led, they are
indeed written in the Book of the Chroni-
cles of the Kings of Israel.

16 At that time Menahem, starting from
Tirzah, attacked Tiphsah and everyone in
its vicinity, because they would not open
their gates. So he attacked Tiphsah and
ripped open all the pregnant women.

MENAHEM REIGNS IN ISRAEL

17 In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah's reign
over Judah, Menahem son of Gadi be-
came king of Israel, and he reigned in
Samaria ten years. 18 And he did evil in the
sight of Yahweh, and throughout his reign
he did not turn away from the sins that
Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel
to commit.

19 Then Pul king of Assyria invaded the
land, and Menahem gave Pul 75,000
pounds of silver in order to gain his sup-
port and strengthen his own grip on the
kingdom. 20 Menahem exacted this money
from each of the wealthy men of
Israel—1¼ pounds of silver from each
man—to give to the king of Assyria. So

2KI 15:1 [NOTE] AZARIAH is also called Uzziah, 15:13 and Isaiah 6:1. 2 Chronicles 26:16 to 21 says he got leprosy for burning incense in the temple, which only priests could do.
2KI 15:4 [DEMONIC] The high places were not taken away
2KI 15:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY] King Jotham is named as the father of Ahaz on a clay seal impression, see The Seal of Ahaz Field Notes page, p.633
2KI 15:8 [FULFILLS] I will avenge the blood of Jezreel on the house of Jehu; I will break the bow of Israel in the Valley of Jezreel ← HOS 1:4-5 p.1356
2KI 15:8 [FULFILLS] God would rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword ← AMOS 7:9 p.1398

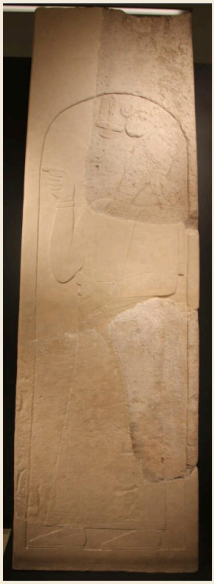
2KI 15:12 [FULFILLS] God told Jehu his sons would sit on Israel's throne to the fourth generation ← 2KI 10:30 p.620
2KI 15:14 [ARCHAEOLOGY] King Menahem of Samaria is named on the Iran Stele of Tiglath pileser III, see the Menahem's Tribute Field Notes page, p.631
2KI 15:19 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Assyrian records say Menahem of Samaria paid tribute to Tiglath pileser III → FIELD NOTES p.631
2KI 15:19 [FIELD NOTES] PUL is a nickname for Tiglath pileser III, king of Assyria, 1 Chronicles 5:26. His own stone names Menahem of Samaria. See the Menahem's Tribute Field Notes page, p.631.

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

MENAHEM'S TRIBUTE

2 KINGS 15:17 TO 22 · 1 CHRONICLES 5:26



The Iran Stele of Tiglath pileser III in the Israel Museum. The king stands with his hand raised. Writing runs across the lower part. Photo Gary Todd, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

A tall stone with a carving of Tiglath pileser III, king of Assyria from 745 to 727 BC. Its writing lists kings who paid him tribute. One of them is Menahem of Samaria.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 737 BC, in Menahem's own lifetime.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It is said to come from western Iran, but nobody knows the exact spot. It was first published in 1972 and is in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem. The king's annals from his palace at Nimrud also name Menahem.

WHO WAS PUL?

2 Kings 15:19 calls the king Pul. Babylonian records call Tiglath pileser by the name Pulu, and 1 Chronicles 5:26 names both. They are the same man.

THE BIBLE AND THE STONE

The Bible says Menahem paid 75,000 pounds of silver so Assyria would back him, and he made every rich man pay 1¼ pounds of silver, 15:19 to 20. The stone agrees that Menahem paid, along with Rezin of Damascus and Hiram of Tyre.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The stone does not give the amount Menahem paid. It shows that the king of Israel the Bible names really paid the king of Assyria the Bible names.

the king of Assyria withdrew and did not remain in the land.

21 As for the rest of the acts of Menahem, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel?

22 And Menahem rested with his fathers, and his son Pekahiah reigned in his place.

PEKAHIAH REIGNS IN ISRAEL

23 In the fiftieth year of Azariah's reign over Judah, Pekahiah son of Menahem became king of Israel and reigned in Samaria two years. 24 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh and did not turn away from the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel to commit.

25 Then his officer, Pekah son of Remaliah, conspired against him along with Argob, Arieh, and fifty men of Gilead. And at the citadel of the king's palace in Samaria, Pekah struck down and killed Pekahiah and reigned in his place.

26 As for the rest of the acts of Pekahiah, along with all his accomplishments, they are indeed written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel.

PEKAH REIGNS IN ISRAEL

27 In the fifty-second year of Azariah's reign over Judah, Pekah son of Remaliah became king of Israel, and he reigned in Samaria twenty years. 28 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh and did not turn away from the sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had caused Israel to commit.

29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel, Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria came and captured Ijon, Abel-beth-maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, Gilead, and Galilee, in-

2KI 15:25 [ARCHAEOLOGY] King Pekah is named in Tiglath pileser III's records, see the Pekah and Hoshea Field Notes page, p.632

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

cluding all the land of Naphtali, and he took the people as captives to Assyria.

30 Then Hoshea son of Elah led a conspiracy against Pekah son of Remaliah. In the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah, Hoshea attacked Pekah, killed him, and reigned in his place.

31 As for the rest of the acts of Pekah, along with all his accomplishments, they are indeed written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel.

JOTHAM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 27:1–9

32 In the second year of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah over Israel, Jotham son of Uzziah became king of Judah. 33 He was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem sixteen years. His mother's name was Jerusha daughter of Zadok. 34 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as his father Uzziah had done.

35 Nevertheless, the high places were not taken away; the people continued sacrificing and burning incense there.

Jotham rebuilt the Upper Gate of the house of Yahweh.

36 As for the rest of the acts of Jotham, along with his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

37 (In those days Yahweh began to send Rezin king of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah against Judah.)

38 And Jotham rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the City of David his father. And his son Ahaz reigned in his place.

- **2KI 15:29 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Tiglath pileser III inscriptions name Pekah and Hoshea → FIELD NOTES p.632
- **2KI 15:29 [FULFILLS]** Before the boy Maher shalal hash baz could say Father or Mother, Damascus's and Samaria's wealth would be carried off by Assyria ← IS 8:3-4 p.1070
- **2KI 15:29 [FIELD NOTES]** Assyrian carvings show whole families carried off in ox carts. See the Pekah and Hoshea Field Notes page, p.632.
- **2KI 15:35 [DEMONIC]** The high places were not taken away
- **2KI 15:37 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** King Rezin of Damascus is named on the Iran Stele and in Tiglath pileser III's records, see the Menahem's Tribute Field Notes page, p.631
- **2KI 15:38 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A clay seal impression reads, Belonging to Ahaz son of Jotham, king of Judah → FIELD NOTES p.633

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PEKAH AND HOSHEA

2 KINGS 15:27 TO 31 · 16:5 · 17:1 TO 6 · ISAIAH 7:1 TO 9



People carried away by Assyria in an ox cart, from Tiglath pileser III's palace at Nimrud, British Museum. These captives came from another land, but Israel's captives were taken away the same way. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Writing on stone slabs and clay tablets from the palace of Tiglath pileser III at Nimrud. The king tells how he took land from Israel, which he calls the house of Omri, and carried its people away.

HOW OLD IT IS

The events are from 733 to 732 BC. The records were written soon after.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the ruins of Nimrud, ancient Calah, in Iraq. Layard found palace slabs there in the 1840s, and later British digs found more of the king's records. Many are in the British Museum.

WHAT IT SAYS

The king says the people of Israel overthrew Pekah their king, and he set Hoshea as king over them, and took tribute from him. The Bible says Hoshea killed Pekah and became king, 15:30. Both say Hoshea took Pekah's place.

CARRIED AWAY

The Bible says Tiglath pileser took Galilee, Gilead and the land of Naphtali and carried the people to Assyria, 15:29. Assyria moved whole towns to new lands, so they could not rebel. The carving shows a family riding away in an ox cart.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Parts of the writing are broken, and the Assyrian king tells it his way. But two kings of Israel named in the Bible, and the way one followed the other, are in his records.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

King Ahaz of Judah burns his own son in the fire. When Aram and Israel attack him, he sends the temple's silver and gold to the king of Assyria and says, I am your servant. Then he visits Damascus, likes an altar he sees there, and has a copy built for the temple in Jerusalem.

AHAZ REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 28:1–4

1 In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah, Ahaz son of Jotham became king of Judah. 2 Ahaz was twenty years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem sixteen years. And unlike David his father, he did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh his God. 3 Instead, he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel and even sacrificed his son in the fire, according to the abominations of the nations that Yahweh had driven out before the Israelites. 4 And he sacrificed and burned incense on the high places, on the hills, and under every green tree.

5 Then Rezin king of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel came up to wage war against Jerusalem. They besieged Ahaz but could not overcome him.

6 At that time Rezin king of Aram recovered Elath for Aram, drove out the men of Judah, and sent the Edomites into Elath, where they live to this day.

2KI 16:3 **[DEMONIC]** Ahaz burns his son as an offering
2KI 16:3 **[NOTE]** CHILD SACRIFICE. 2 Chronicles 28:3 says Ahaz burned his sons in the Valley of Ben hinnom.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE SEAL OF AHAZ

2 KINGS 15:38 · 16:1 TO 20 · ISAIAH 7:1 TO 12



Not the seal of Ahaz. This is the seal of his son, which reads Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah, so it names Ahaz too. Photo Ouria Tadmor. Copyright Eilat Mazar.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny lump of clay stamped with a royal seal. It reads: Belonging to Ahaz son of Jotham, king of Judah. It names two kings at once. The back still shows the marks of the papyrus and string it once sealed.

HOW OLD IT IS

The 700s BC. Ahaz reigned about 732 to 716 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Nobody knows. It was sold on the antiquities market and bought by the collector Shlomo Moussaieff in the mid 1990s. Robert Deutsch published it in 1998. A fingerprint on its edge may be from the man who sealed it.

WHY SOME DOUBT IT

Objects bought from dealers, not dug up by archaeologists, can be fakes, and some seals like this have been. Many experts think this one is real. Others say it cannot be trusted, because nobody knows where it came from.

AHAZ ELSEWHERE

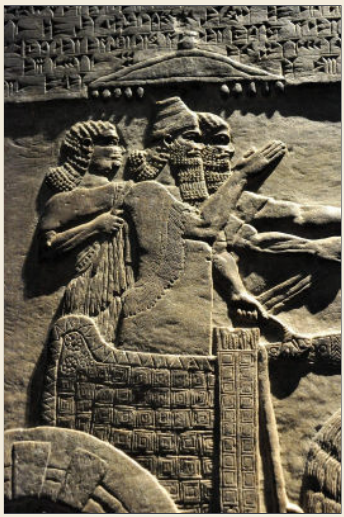
A Tiglath pileser III tablet dug up at Nimrud names him by his full name, Jehoahaz of Judah. See the Ahaz Pays Assyria page. And his son's seal, shown here, reads Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

AHAZ PAYS ASSYRIA

2 KINGS 16:5 TO 18 · 2 CHRONICLES 28:16 TO 21 · ISAIAH 7:1 TO 17



Tiglath pileser III in his royal chariot, part of a carving of his war that shows the capture of Astartu, Ashtaroth in the Bible. From his palace at Nimrud, British Museum. The tablet naming Ahaz is not shown. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A clay tablet with a list of kings who paid tribute to Tiglath pileser III. One of them is Jehoahaz of Judah, the full name of King Ahaz.

HOW OLD IT IS

The payment it records was made about 734 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Nimrud, ancient Calah, in Iraq, in the 1800s. It is in the British Museum in London.

THE BIBLE AND THE TABLET

When Aram and Israel attacked Judah, Ahaz sent silver and gold from the temple to the king of Assyria and said, I am your servant and your son, 16:7 to 8. Isaiah had begged him to trust God instead, Isaiah 7:4 to 9.

JEHOAHAZ OR AHAZ?

The name Jehoahaz means Yahweh has taken hold. The Bible always calls him Ahaz, without the part that means Yahweh. Many think the Bible's writers would not tie God's name to a king who burned his own son, 16:3.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The tablet lists names and gifts, not the story. It shows that Ahaz of Judah did pay Tiglath pileser, just as 2 Kings 16 says.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Even without this seal, Ahaz is in Assyria's records. The Bible's line of kings, Jotham, then Ahaz, then Hezekiah, 15:38 and 16:20, matches the seals.

7 So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglath-
pileser king of Assyria, saying, "I am your
servant and your son. Come up and save
me from the hands of the kings of Aram
and Israel, who are rising up against me."
8 Ahaz also took the silver and gold found
in the house of Yahweh and in the trea-
suries of the king's palace, and he sent it
as a gift to the king of Assyria. 9 So the
king of Assyria responded to him,
marched up to Damascus, and captured it.
He took its people to Kir as captives and
put Rezin to death.

THE IDOLATRY OF AHAZ // 2 CHRONICLES 28:16–27

10 Then King Ahaz went to Damascus to
meet Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria. On
seeing the altar in Damascus, King Ahaz
sent Uriah the priest a model of the altar
and complete plans for its construction. 11
And Uriah the priest built the altar accord-
ing to all the instructions King Ahaz had
sent from Damascus, and he completed it
before King Ahaz returned.
12 When the king came back from Damas-
cus and saw the altar, he approached it
and presented offerings on it. 13 He offered
his burnt offering and his grain offering,
poured out his drink offering, and splat-
tered the blood of his peace offerings on
the altar. 14 He also took the bronze altar
that stood before Yahweh from the front

2KI 16:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Tiglath pileser III tribute list names Ahaz of Judah → FIELD NOTES p.634

2KI 16:7 [FIELD NOTES] Tiglath pileser III listed Ahaz of Judah among the kings who paid him. See the Ahaz Pays Assyria Field Notes page, p.634.

2KI 16:9 [FULFILLS] Before a particular child knew good from evil, both Syria and Israel would be devastated and 3 more ← IS 7:16; IS 8:3-4; IS 17:1-3; AMOS 1:3-5 p.1070

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

of the temple (between the new altar and the house of Yahweh) and he put it on the north side of the new altar.

15 Then King Ahaz commanded Uriah the priest, "Offer on the great altar the morning burnt offering, the evening grain offering, and the king's burnt offering and grain offering, as well as the burnt offerings, grain offerings, and drink offerings of all the people of the land. Splatter on the altar all the blood of the burnt offerings and sacrifices. But I will use the bronze altar to seek guidance."

16 So Uriah the priest did just as King Ahaz had commanded.

17 King Ahaz also cut off the frames of the movable stands and removed the bronze basin from each of them. He took down the Sea from the bronze oxen that were under it and put it on a stone base. 18 And on account of the king of Assyria, he removed the Sabbath canopy they had built in the temple and closed the royal entryway outside the house of Yahweh.

19 As for the rest of the acts of Ahaz, along with his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

20 And Ahaz rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the City of David, and his son Hezekiah reigned in his place.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Hoshea stops paying Assyria and asks Egypt for help. Assyria surrounds Samaria for three years, and in 722 BC the northern kingdom of Israel falls. The people are carried away. The writer stops to explain why: they worshiped idols, burned their children and ignored every prophet God sent. New people move into the land, and they worship Yahweh and their own gods.

HOSHEA THE LAST KING OF ISRAEL

1 In the twelfth year of the reign of Ahaz over Judah, Hoshea son of Elah became king of Israel, and he reigned in Samaria nine years. 2 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, but not like the kings of Israel who preceded him.

3 Shalmaneser king of Assyria attacked him, and Hoshea became his vassal and paid him tribute. 4 But the king of Assyria discovered that Hoshea had conspired to send envoys to King So of Egypt, and that he had not paid tribute to the king of Assyria as in previous years. Therefore the king of Assyria arrested Hoshea and put him in prison.

ISRAEL CARRIED CAPTIVE TO ASSYRIA

5 Then the king of Assyria invaded the whole land, marched up to Samaria, and besieged it for three years.

6 In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria captured Samaria and carried away the Israelites to Assyria, where he settled them in Halah, in Gozan by the Habor River, and in the cities of the Medes.

7 All this happened because the people of Israel had sinned against Yahweh their God, who had brought them out of the land of Egypt from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. They had worshiped other gods 8 and walked in the customs of the nations that Yahweh had driven out before the Israelites, as well as in the practices introduced by the kings of Israel.

9 The Israelites secretly did things against Yahweh their God that were not right. From watchtower to fortified city, they built high places in all their cities. 10 They set up for themselves sacred pillars and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree. 11 They burned in-

2KI 16:20 [ARCHAEOLOGY] King Hezekiah is named on his own seal and in Sennacherib's records, see the Hezekiah's Seal Field Notes page, p.642

2KI 17:3 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Shalmaneser V of Assyria is named in his own inscriptions and in a Babylonian Chronicle that says he ruined Samaria, see The Fall of Samaria Field Notes page, p.637

2KI 17:5 [FULFILLS] The plot of Aram and Israel would fail and Ephraim would be shattered within 65 years and 2 more ← IS 7:7-8; HOS 13:16; MIC 1:6 p.1069

2KI 17:6 [FULFILLS] Israel's eventual idolatry would lead to exile and scattering and 7 more ← DT 4:25-28; 1KI 14:15; IS 5:13; IS 7:16; IS 17:1-3; HOS 1:6-7; AMOS 5:27; AMOS 7:17 p.289

2KI 17:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Sargon II's records say he captured Samaria and carried its people away → FIELD NOTES p.637

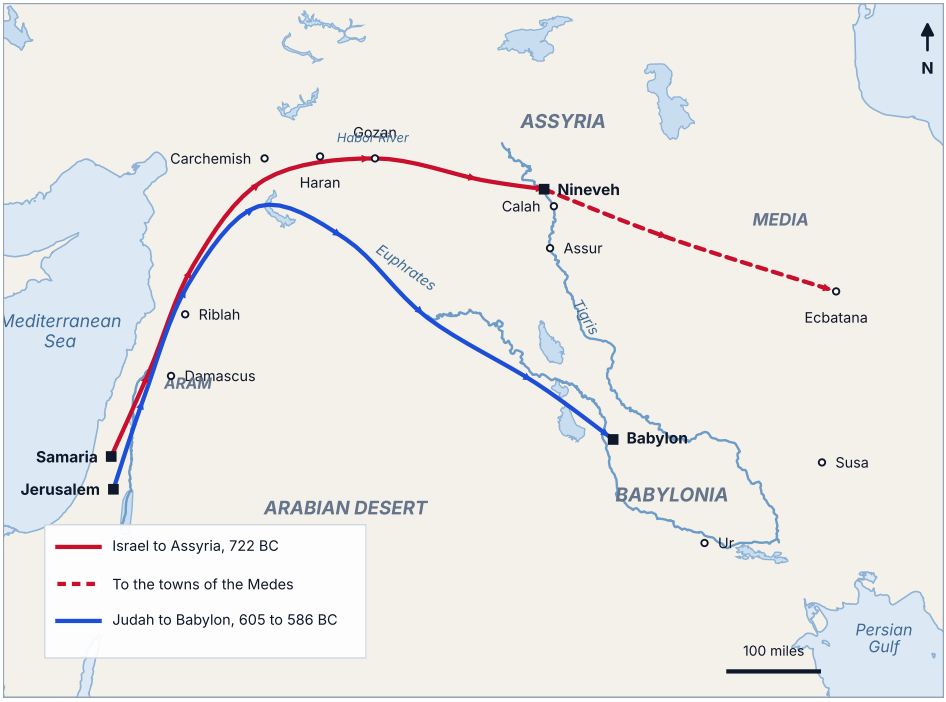
2KI 17:6 [FIELD NOTES] Sargon II claimed the capture of Samaria. See The Fall of Samaria Field Notes page, p.637 and the Big Question pages Why Israel Fell, p.637.

2KI 17:7 [DEMONIC] Israel worships idols, calves, Asherah, the stars, and Baal

MAP · 2 KINGS 17 AND 24 TO 25

Carried Away

Assyria takes Israel, then Babylon takes Judah



ISRAEL, 722 BC Assyria captured Samaria and moved the people to Halah, to Gozan on the Habor River and to the towns of the Medes, 2 Kings 17:6.

JERUSALEM FALLS About 586 BC Nebuchadnezzar burned the temple and broke down the walls, 2 Kings 25:8 to 10.

JUDAH, 605 TO ABOUT 586 BC Babylon took captives in waves. Daniel went in 605 BC, Daniel 1:1 to 6. King Jehoiachin went in 597 BC, 2 Kings 24:10 to 16, and Ezekiel with him, Ezekiel 1:2.

THE LONG WAY From Jerusalem to Babylon is about 550 miles straight across the desert, but armies and captives went the long way, up and around the Fertile Crescent, about 900 miles.

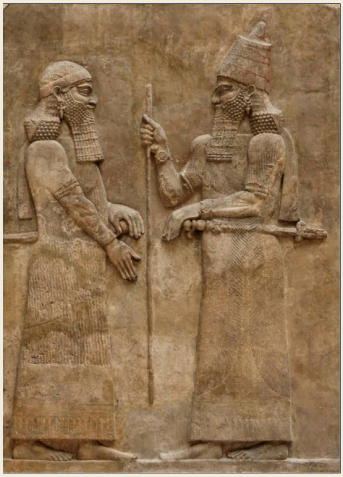
Routes are approximate. Captives walked the trade roads along the rivers, not straight across the desert.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE FALL OF SAMARIA

2 KINGS 17:1 TO 6 · 18:9 TO 12 · ISAIAH 20:1



Sargon II, right, in the tall crown, talking with an official. From his palace walls at Khorsabad. Louvre Museum, Paris.

WHAT IT IS

Writing from the palace of Sargon II, king of Assyria from 722 to 705 BC. He says he took Samaria and carried away 27,290 of its people, then brought in people from other lands to live there.

HOW OLD IT IS

Samaria fell in 722 BC. Sargon's records were carved soon after, about 717 to 707 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Khorsabad in Iraq, Sargon's new capital, by Paul Emile Botta in 1843. A clay prism from Nimrud tells the same story.

WHICH KING TOOK SAMARIA?

2 Kings 17:3 to 6 names Shalmaneser V as the king who came against Hoshea and laid siege for three years. Then it says the king of Assyria captured Samaria. A Babylonian record says Shalmaneser V ruined Samaria. Sargon took the throne about then and claimed it too. Many think Shalmaneser took the city and Sargon carried off the people.

THE FORGOTTEN KING

For a long time Sargon was known only from one verse, Isaiah 20:1, and scholars were not sure who he was. Then Botta found his palace.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Assyrian kings bragged and liked round numbers. But the fall of Samaria and the carrying away of Israel, 17:6, are in Assyria's own records.

cense on all the high places like the nations that Yahweh had driven out before them. They did wicked things, provoking Yahweh to anger. 12 They served idols, although Yahweh had told them, "You shall not do this thing."

13 Yet through all His prophets and seers, Yahweh warned Israel and Judah, saying, "Turn from your wicked ways and keep My commandments and statutes, according to the entire Law that I commanded your fathers and delivered to you through My servants the prophets."

14 But they would not listen, and they stiffened their necks like their fathers, who did not believe Yahweh their God. 15 They rejected His statutes and the covenant He had made with their fathers, as well as the decrees He had given them. They pursued worthless idols and became worthless themselves, going after the surrounding nations that Yahweh had commanded them not to imitate.

16 They abandoned all the commandments of Yahweh their God and made for themselves two cast idols of calves and an Asherah pole. They bowed down to all the host of heaven and served Baal. 17 They sacrificed their sons and daughters in the fire and practiced divination and soothsaying. They devoted themselves to doing evil in the sight of Yahweh, provoking Him to anger.

18 So Yahweh was very angry with Israel, and He removed them from His presence. Only the tribe of Judah remained, 19 and

2KI 17:13 [NOTE] The writer quotes God's own warnings here and in 17:35 to 39, so those words print red.

2KI 17:17 [DEMONIC] Israel practiced divination and sorcery

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

even Judah did not keep the commandments of Yahweh their God, but lived according to the customs Israel had introduced. 20 So Yahweh rejected all the descendants of Israel. He afflicted them and delivered them into the hands of plunderers, until He had banished them from His presence.

21 When Yahweh had torn Israel away from the house of David, they made Jeroboam son of Nebat king, and Jeroboam led Israel away from following Yahweh and caused them to commit a great sin. 22 The Israelites persisted in all the sins that Jeroboam had committed and did not turn away from them. 23 Finally, Yahweh removed Israel from His presence, as He had declared through all His servants the prophets. So Israel was exiled from their homeland into Assyria, where they are to this day.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY ISRAEL FELL

What the Book Says

2 KINGS 17:1 TO 23 · DEUTERONOMY 28:36 TO 37 · 28:63 TO 64

THE END

Hoshea, Israel's last king, stopped paying Assyria and asked Egypt for help. The king of Assyria put him in prison, besieged Samaria for three years, and in 722 BC carried Israel away, 17:3 to 6.

THE WRITER STOPS

Here the writer stops the story for his longest explanation, 17:7 to 23.

THE LIST

Israel worshiped other gods, built high places in every town, set up sacred pillars and Asherah poles, made two golden calves, bowed to the stars, served Baal, burned their sons and daughters in the fire, and practiced divination and sorcery, 17:7 to 17.

THE WARNINGS

God warned them through all His prophets and seers: Turn from your wicked ways. But they were stubborn and would not listen, 17:13 to 14.

JEROBOAM'S SIN

The kingdom started with Jeroboam's calves, and Israel never stopped walking in that sin until they were removed from God's sight, 17:21 to 23.

THE LAST KINGS

Four of Israel's last six kings were murdered, 15:10 to 30. Hoshea, the very last, ended up in an Assyrian prison, 17:4.

THE QUESTION

Why did God let His people be destroyed, and what happened to the ten tribes?

Every View

2 CHRONICLES 11:16 · 30:11 · LUKE 2:36 · JAMES 1:1 · EZEKIEL 37:15 TO 22

GOD'S REASON

Moses had warned that if Israel turned to other gods, they would be scattered among the nations, Deuteronomy 28:36 and 28:64. God was patient for about 200 years and sent prophet after prophet: Elijah, Elisha, Jonah, Amos and Hosea.

WHERE THEY WENT

Assyria sent them to Halah, to Gozan by the Habor River, and to the cities of the Medes, in what is now Syria, Iraq and Iran, 17:6. Then it brought other peoples to live in Israel, 17:24.

VIEW 1: LOST AMONG THE NATIONS

Many think most of the northern tribes married into the nations where they were sent and over time forgot who they were.

VIEW 2: NEVER FULLY LOST

Others point out that many from the northern tribes had already moved to Judah, 2 Chronicles 11:16 and 30:11. Anna in the temple was from the tribe of Asher, Luke 2:36, and James writes to the twelve tribes, James 1:1.

LEGENDS

Many groups around the world claim to come from the lost tribes. A few have real Jewish roots. Others, like the idea that the British are the lost tribes, have no good evidence.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God kept His word, both His warnings and His patience. And the prophets promised that one day the two kingdoms

2KI 17:18 [FULFILLS] Israel's eventual idolatry would lead to exile and scattering ← DT 4:25-28 p.289

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC

would be one again under one King, Ezekiel 37:15 to 22.

SAMARIA RESETTLED

24 Then the king of Assyria brought people from Babylon, Cuthah, Avva, Hamath, and Sepharvaim and settled them in the towns of Samaria to replace the Israelites. They took possession of Samaria and lived in its towns.

25 Now when the settlers first lived there, they did not worship Yahweh, so He sent lions among them, which killed some of them. 26 So they spoke to the king of Assyria, saying, "The peoples that you have removed and placed in the cities of Samaria do not know the requirements of the God of the land. Because of this, He has sent lions among them, which are indeed killing them off."

27 Then the king of Assyria commanded: "Send back one of the priests you carried off from Samaria, and have him go back to live there and teach the requirements of the God of the land."

28 Thus one of the priests they had carried away came and lived in Bethel, and he began to teach them how they should worship Yahweh.

29 Nevertheless, the people of each nation continued to make their own gods in the cities where they had settled, and they set them up in the shrines that the people of Samaria had made on the high places. 30 The men of Babylon made Succoth-benoth, the men of Cuth made Nergal, the men of Hamath made Ashima, 31 the Avvites made Nibhaz and Tartak, and the Sepharvites burned their children in the fire to Adrammelech and Anammelech the gods of Sepharvaim.

32 So the new residents worshiped Yahweh, but they also appointed for themselves priests of all sorts to serve in the shrines of the high places. 33 They worshiped Yahweh, but they also served their own gods according to the customs of the nations from which they had been carried away.

2KI 17:24 [FULFILLS] The plot of Aram and Israel would fail and Ephraim would be shattered within 65 years ← IS 7:7-8 p.1069

2KI 17:24 [NOTE] THE SETTLERS of Samaria were the ancestors of the Samaritans, John 4:9. See the Big Question pages Who Were the Samaritans?, p.639

2KI 17:29 [DEMONIC] The new settlers of Samaria worship God and their idols

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WERE THE SAMARITANS?

Where They Came From

2 KINGS 17:24 TO 41 · EZRA 4:1 TO 3 · JOHN 4:9 TO 22

NEW NEIGHBORS

After Israel was carried away, the king of Assyria brought people from Babylon, Cuthah, Avva, Hamath and Sepharvaim to live in the towns of Samaria, 17:24.

LIONS

They did not worship Yahweh, and God sent lions among them. They told the king, These people do not know what the god of the land requires, 17:25 to 26.

A PRIEST SENT BACK

The king sent back one of Israel's priests, who lived at Bethel and taught them how to worship Yahweh, 17:27 to 28.

MIXED WORSHIP

Each nation still made its own gods. Some even burned their children to their gods. They worshiped Yahweh, but they also served their idols, 17:29 to 33.

TO THIS DAY

The writer says their children kept doing it to his own day, 17:41.

SAMARIA

The name comes from the city of Samaria, which Omri built on a hill he bought from a man named Shemer, 1 Kings 16:24. Later the whole region around it was called Samaria.

THE QUESTION

Are these the Samaritans of the New Testament, and why did Jews and Samaritans not get along?

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View

JOHN 4:20 · LUKE 10:30 TO 37 · 17:15 TO 18 · ACTS 8:4 TO 25

VIEW 1: THE OLD JEWISH VIEW

Josephus and the rabbis called the Samaritans Cutheans, people from Cuthah, 17:24. They saw them as foreigners, not true Israelites. When the Jews came back from Babylon, they would not let them help rebuild the temple, Ezra 4:1 to 3.

VIEW 2: THE SAMARITAN VIEW

The Samaritans call themselves Shamerim, keepers of the Law. They say they come from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh and Levi, who never left the land, and that Mount Gerizim, not Jerusalem, is the place God chose, John 4:20.

VIEW 3: SOME OF BOTH

Many scholars think the Samaritans came from Israelites who stayed behind, mixed with the newcomers, and that the split with the Jews grew wider over hundreds of years. The Jewish ruler John Hyrcanus destroyed their temple on Mount Gerizim about 110 BC.

THEIR BIBLE

Samaritans keep only the five books of Moses, the Samaritan Pentateuch, written in an old Hebrew script.

JESUS AND THE SAMARITANS

Jews did not associate with Samaritans, John 4:9. Jesus talked with a Samaritan woman at a well, made a Samaritan the hero of a story, Luke 10:33, and praised the one leper who came back, a Samaritan, Luke 17:16. Philip preached in Samaria, Acts 8:5. About 900 Samaritans still live in Israel and the West Bank today.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

An old wall stood between Jews and Samaritans for centuries, and Jesus walked right through it.

34 To this day they are still practicing their former customs. None of them worship Yahweh or observe the statutes, ordinances, laws, and commandments that Yahweh gave the descendants of Jacob, whom He named Israel.

35 For Yahweh had made a covenant with the Israelites and commanded them, "Do not worship other gods or bow down to them; do not serve them or sacrifice to them. 36 Instead, worship Yahweh, who brought you out of the land of Egypt with great power and an outstretched arm. You are to bow down to Him and offer sacrifices to Him. 37 And you must always be careful to observe the statutes, ordinances, laws, and commandments He wrote for you. Do not worship other gods. 38 Do not forget the covenant I have made with you. Do not worship other gods, 39 but worship Yahweh your God, and He will deliver you from the hands of all your enemies."

40 But they would not listen, and they persisted in their former customs. 41 So these nations worshiped Yahweh but also served their idols, and to this day their children and grandchildren continue to do as their fathers did.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah is a different kind of king. He smashes the idols and even breaks Moses' bronze snake. He trusts Yahweh like no king before him. Then Sennacherib of Assyria takes the walled towns of Judah, and his spokesman stands outside Jerusalem mocking Yahweh in Hebrew, so everyone on the wall can hear.

HEZEKIAH DESTROYS IDOLATRY IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 29:1–2

1 In the third year of the reign of Hoshea son of Elah over Israel, Hezekiah son of Ahaz became king of Judah. 2 He was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-nine years. His mother's name was Abi, the daughter of Zechariah. 3 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as his father David had done. 4 He re-

2KI 18:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A clay seal impression reads, Belonging to Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah → FIELD NOTES p.642

2KI 18:1 [FIELD NOTES] Hezekiah's own seal has been found. See the Hezekiah's Seal Field Notes page, p.642.

2KI 18:2 [FULFILLS] God would add fifteen years to Hezekiah's life and save the city from Assyria ← 2KI 20:5-6 p.648

2KI 18:2 [FULFILLS] Hezekiah's life extended 15 years; sundial sign confirmed ← IS 38:5-8 p.1107

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

moved the high places, shattered the sacred pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. He also demolished the bronze snake called Nehushtan that Moses had made, for up to that time the Israelites had burned incense to it.

5 Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the God of Israel. No king of Judah was like him, either before him or after him. 6 He remained faithful to Yahweh and did not turn from following Him; he kept the commandments that Yahweh had given Moses.

7 And Yahweh was with Hezekiah, and he prospered wherever he went. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and refused to serve him. 8 He defeated the Philistines as far as Gaza and its borders, from watchtower to fortified city.

9 In the fourth year of Hezekiah's reign, which was the seventh year of the reign of Hoshea son of Elah over Israel, Shalmaneser king of Assyria marched against Samaria and besieged it. 10 And at the end of three years, the Assyrians captured it. So Samaria was captured in the sixth year of Hezekiah, which was the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel. 11 The king of Assyria exiled the Israelites to Assyria and settled them in Halah, in Gozan by the Habor River, and in the cities of the Medes. 12 This happened because they did not listen to the voice of Yahweh their God, but violated His covenant—all that Moses the servant of Yahweh had commanded—and would neither listen nor obey.

SENNACHERIB INVADES JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 32:1–8; PSALM 46:1–11

13 In the fourteenth year of Hezekiah's reign, Sennacherib king of Assyria attacked and captured all the fortified cities of Judah. 14 So Hezekiah king of Judah sent word to the king of Assyria at Lachish, saying, "I have done wrong; withdraw from me, and I will pay whatever you demand from me."

And the king of Assyria exacted from Hezekiah king of Judah eleven tons of silver and one ton of gold. 15 Hezekiah gave him all the silver that was found in the house of Yahweh and in the treasuries of the royal palace.

16 At that time Hezekiah stripped the gold with which he had plated the doors and doorposts of the temple of Yahweh, and he gave it to the king of Assyria.

SENNACHERIB THREATENS JERUSALEM // 2 CHRONICLES 32:9–19; ISAIAH 36:1–22

17 Nevertheless, the king of Assyria sent the Tartan, the Rabsaris, and the Rabshakeh, along with a great army, from Lachish to King Hezekiah at Jerusalem. They advanced up to Jerusalem and stationed themselves by the aqueduct of the upper pool, on the road to the Launderer's Field. 18 Then they called for the king. And Eliakim son of Hilkiah the palace administrator, Shebnah the scribe, and Joah son of Asaph the recorder, went out to them.

19 The Rabshakeh said to them, "Tell Hezekiah that this is what the great king, the king of Assyria, says: What is the basis of this confidence of yours? 20 You claim to have a strategy and strength for war, but these are empty words. In whom are you now trusting, that you have rebelled against me?

21 Look now, you are trusting in Egypt, that splintered reed of a staff that will pierce the hand of anyone who leans on it. Such is Pharaoh king of Egypt to all who trust in

- **2KI 18:4 [DEMONIC]** Hezekiah destroys the high places and the bronze snake
- **2KI 18:4 [NOTE]** NEHUSHTAN means a bronze thing. Moses' bronze snake, Numbers 21:9, was about 700 years old and had become an idol. Jesus compared His cross to it, John 3:14.
- **2KI 18:9 [FULFILLS]** Samaria would bear her guilt and her people would fall by the sword ← HOS 13:16 p.1372
- **2KI 18:9 [FULFILLS]** Samaria would become a heap of rubble and her stones poured into the valley ← MIC 1:6 p.1432
- **2KI 18:13 [FULFILLS]** God would bring the king of Assyria against Ahaz and Judah and 2 more ← IS 7:17; IS 8:7-8; MIC 1:9 p.1070
- **2KI 18:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Sennacherib says he took 46 walled cities and shut Hezekiah up like a bird in a cage, but he never says he took Jerusalem
- **2KI 18:13 [FIELD NOTES]** Sennacherib wrote his own story of this war. See the Sennacherib's Prism Field Notes page in Isaiah, p.1103, The Lachish Reliefs in Micah, p.1433, and The Lachish Siege Ramp Field Notes page, p.645.
- **2KI 18:14 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Lachish Reliefs of Sennacherib
- **2KI 18:18 [FULFILLS]** Shebna would lose his office and Eliakim would take it ← IS 22:19-20 p.1086
- **2KI 18:18 [FIELD NOTES]** SHEBNA. A tomb with a royal steward's name has been found in Jerusalem. See The Royal Steward's Tomb Field Notes page, p.643.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

HEZEKIAH'S SEAL

2 KINGS 18:1 TO 8 · 20:1 TO 21 · ISAIAH 36 TO 39



The clay seal impression of King Hezekiah, with the winged sun in the middle. Photo Ouria Tadmor. Copyright Eilat Mazar.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny lump of clay, about half an inch across, stamped with King Hezekiah's own seal. It was pressed onto a string that tied up a rolled document. It reads: Belonging to Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah.

HOW OLD IT IS

Hezekiah ruled about 715 to 686 BC, so the seal is from his reign.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In 2009, in a dump of old rubbish near a royal building on the Ophel, just south of the Temple Mount in Jerusalem. Eilat Mazar's team found it, and it was announced in 2015.

THE PICTURE

In the middle is a sun with two wings, and on each side an Egyptian sign for life. Many royal jar handles from Hezekiah's time carry a similar winged sign.

THE BIBLE'S HEZEKIAH

2 Kings 18:3 to 5 says Hezekiah did right like David, removed the high places, and trusted Yahweh like no king of Judah before or after him.

HOW SEALS WORKED

A king or an official pressed his stone seal into soft clay over the string tied around a letter or a sack. The back of this lump shows marks of thick cords and rough cloth, so it may have sealed a sack of food.

FIRST FROM A DIG

Other clay seals with Hezekiah's name are in private collections, but nobody knows where they came from. This was the first seal of a king of Israel or Judah found by archaeologists in a dig.

A SEAL OF ISAIAH?

In 2018 the same team announced another clay seal found about ten feet away. It reads Isaiah, and the next letters may spell prophet, but the end is broken off, so scholars are not sure.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The seal does not tell us about his faith or his reforms. It shows that Hezekiah son of Ahaz really was king of Judah, in Jerusalem, as the Bible says. Some think the Egyptian symbols fit a time when Judah looked to Egypt for help, 18:21.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

him. 22 But if you say to me, 'We trust in Yahweh our God,' is He not the One whose high places and altars Hezekiah has removed, saying to Judah and Jerusalem: 'You must worship before this altar in Jerusalem'?

23 Now, therefore, make a bargain with my master, the king of Assyria. I will give you two thousand horses—if you can put riders on them! 24 For how can you repel a single officer among the least of my master's servants when you depend on Egypt for chariots and horsemen? 25 So now, was it apart from Yahweh that I have come up against this place to destroy it? Yahweh Himself said to me, 'Go up against this land and destroy it.'"

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE ROYAL STEWARD'S TOMB

2 KINGS 18:18 · 18:26 · 18:37 · 19:2 · ISAIAH 22:15 TO 25



The doorway inscription from the royal steward's tomb in Silwan, with the letters filled in white. British Museum, London. Photo by Mustafaa, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

Writing cut over the door of a tomb in the rock, in the village of Silwan across from the City of David. It reads: This is the tomb of ...yahu, who is over the house. There is no silver and no gold here, only his bones and the bones of his wife with him. Cursed be the man who opens this.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 700 BC, from the time of Hezekiah.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Charles Clermont Ganneau found it in 1870 and had it cut out and taken to the British Museum. Nahman Avigad first read it in 1953.

SHEBNA

Over the house was the title of the king's chief steward. Isaiah scolded a steward named Shebna for cutting himself a fancy tomb in the rock, and said he would lose his job to Eliakim, Isaiah 22:15 to 20. In 2 Kings 18:18, Eliakim is over the house and Shebna is now the secretary.

THE NAME

The first part of the name is broken off. Only the ending yahu is left. Many think it was Shebnayahu, a longer form of Shebna.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nobody can be sure the tomb was Shebna's. It shows that a royal steward of Hezekiah's day had a rock tomb in this very place, just as Isaiah described. The Isaiah Field Notes page tells more, p.1088.

26 Then Eliakim son of Hilkiah, along with Shebnah and Joah, said to the Rabshakeh, "Please speak to your servants in Aramaic, since we understand it. Do not speak with us in Hebrew in the hearing of the people on the wall."

27 But the Rabshakeh replied, "Has my master sent me to speak these words only to you and your master, and not to the men sitting on the wall, who are destined with you to eat their own dung and drink their own urine?"

28 Then the Rabshakeh stood and called out loudly in Hebrew: "Hear the word of the great king, the king of Assyria! 29 This is what the king says: Do not let Hezekiah deceive you; he cannot deliver you from my hand. 30 Do not let Hezekiah persuade you to trust in Yahweh when he says, 'Yahweh will surely deliver us; this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.'

31 Do not listen to Hezekiah, for this is what the king of Assyria says: Make peace with me and come out to me. Then every one of you will eat from his own vine and his own fig tree and drink water from his own cistern, 32 until I come and take you away to a land like your own—a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of olive trees and honey—so that you may live and not die. But do not

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

listen to Hezekiah, for he misleads you when he says, 'Yahweh will deliver us.'

33 Has the god of any nation ever delivered his land from the hand of the king of Assyria? 34 Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Have they delivered Samaria from my hand? 35 Who among all the gods of these lands has delivered his land from my hand? How then can Yahweh deliver Jerusalem from my hand?"

36 But the people remained silent and did not answer a word, for Hezekiah had commanded, "Do not answer him."

37 Then Hilkiah's son Eliakim the palace administrator, Shebna the scribe, and Asaph's son Joah the recorder came to Hezekiah with their clothes torn, and they relayed to him the words of the Rabshakeh.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah takes Sennacherib's threatening letter into the temple and spreads it out before Yahweh. Isaiah sends God's answer: He will not enter this city. That night the angel of Yahweh strikes down 185,000 in the Assyrian camp. Sennacherib goes home, and years later his own sons kill him while he worships his god.

ISAIAH'S MESSAGE OF DELIVERANCE // ISAIAH 37:1–7

1 On hearing this report, King Hezekiah tore his clothes, put on sackcloth, and entered the house of Yahweh. 2 And he sent Eliakim the palace administrator, Shebna the scribe, and the leading priests, all wearing sackcloth, to the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz 3 to tell him, "This is what Hezekiah says: Today is a day of distress, rebuke, and disgrace; for children have come to the point of birth, but there is no strength to deliver them. 4 Perhaps Yahweh your God will hear all the words of the Rabshakeh, whom his master the king of Assyria has sent to defy the living God, and He will rebuke him for the words that Yahweh your God has heard. Therefore lift up a prayer for the remnant that still survives."

5 So the servants of King Hezekiah went to Isaiah, 6 who replied, "Tell your master that this is what Yahweh says: 'Do not be afraid of the words you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed Me. 7 Behold, I will put a spirit in him so that he will hear a rumor and return to his own land, where I will cause him to fall by the sword.'"

SENNACHERIB'S BLASPHEMOUS LETTER // ISAIAH 37:8–13

8 When the Rabshakeh heard that the king of Assyria had left Lachish, he withdrew and found the king fighting against Libnah.

9 Now Sennacherib had been warned about Tirhakah king of Cush: "Look, he has set out to fight against you."

So Sennacherib again sent messengers to Hezekiah, saying, 10 "Give this message to Hezekiah king of Judah:

'Do not let your God, in whom you trust, deceive you by saying that Jerusalem will not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria. 11 Surely you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all the other countries, devoting them to destruction. Will you then be spared? 12 Did the gods of the nations destroyed by my fathers rescue those nations—the gods of Gozan, Haran, and Rezeph, and of the people of Eden in Telassar? 13 Where are the kings of Hamath, Arpad, Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah?'"

HEZEKIAH'S PRAYER // ISAIAH 37:14–20

14 So Hezekiah received the letter from the messengers, read it, and went up to the house of Yahweh and spread it out before Yahweh. 15 And Hezekiah prayed before Yahweh:

"O Yahweh, God of Israel, enthroned between the cherubim, You alone are God

- **2KI 18:33 [DEMONIC]** Assyria boasts that no nation's gods could save them
- **2KI 19:7 [PROPHECY]** Sennacherib would hear a rumor, go home, and die by the sword in his own land → 2KI 19:37; IS 37:38 p.646
- **2KI 19:9 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Tirhakah is Pharaoh Taharqa of Egypt, known from his own statues and temples and from Assyrian records
- **2KI 19:12 [DEMONIC]** Assyria mocks the gods of the conquered nations

DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

over all the kingdoms of the earth. You made the heavens and the earth. 16 Incline Your ear, O Yahweh, and hear; open Your eyes, O Yahweh, and see. Listen to the words that Sennacherib has sent to defy the living God.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE LACHISH SIEGE RAMP

2 KINGS 18:13 TO 17 · 19:8 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:9 · MICAH 1:13



The Assyrian siege ramp at Tel Lachish, the slope of loose stones against the side of the mound. Photo Wilson44691, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS
A huge ramp of stones piled against the side of Lachish so soldiers and battering rams could reach the wall. It is the oldest siege ramp found anywhere in the world.

HOW OLD IT IS
701 BC, from Sennacherib's attack on Lachish.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
At Tel Lachish in Israel. James Starkey's British team dug there in the 1930s. David Ussishkin of Tel Aviv University led new digs there from 1973 to 1994. His team dug into the ramp and showed it was the one Sennacherib built.

WHAT ELSE WAS FOUND
Inside the wall, the people of Lachish piled up their own ramp to make the wall higher. Hundreds of iron arrowheads, sling stones and pieces of armor lay in the ruins, along with a burned city.

IT MATCHES THE PANELS
The ramp is right where the Lachish Reliefs show the Assyrians attacking, by the city gate side. The panels and the ground tell the same story.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Lachish fell, but Jerusalem did not. Isaiah said Sennacherib would not build a siege ramp against Jerusalem, 19:32, and none has ever been found there.

17 Truly, O Yahweh, the kings of Assyria
have laid waste these nations and their
lands. 18 They have cast their gods into
the fire and destroyed them, for they
were not gods, but only wood and
stone—the work of human hands.
19 And now, O Yahweh our God, please
save us from his hand, so that all the
kingdoms of the earth may know that
You alone, O Yahweh, are God."

SENNACHERIB'S FALL PROPHESIED // ISAIAH 37:21–35

20 Then Isaiah son of Amoz sent a message to Hezekiah: "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: I have heard your prayer concerning Sennacherib king of Assyria. 21 This is the word that Yahweh has spoken against him:

'The Virgin Daughter of Zion
despises you and mocks you;
the Daughter of Jerusalem
shakes her head behind you.
22 Whom have you taunted and blasphemed?
Against whom have you raised your voice
and lifted your eyes in pride?
Against the Holy One of Israel!
23 Through your servants you have taunted the Lord,
and you have said:

"With my many chariots
I have ascended
to the heights of the mountains,
to the remote peaks of Lebanon.
I have cut down its tallest cedars,
the finest of its cypresses.
I have reached its farthest outposts,
the densest of its forests.
24 I have dug wells

2KI 19:15 [NOTABLE] Hezekiah took the enemy's threatening letter into the temple, spread it out before God and prayed. A simple picture of what to do with a scary letter.

2KI 19:18 [DEMONIC] Their gods were only wood and stone

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and drunk foreign waters.
With the soles of my feet
I have dried up all the streams of Egypt."

25 Have you not heard?
Long ago I ordained it;
in days of old I planned it.
Now I have brought it to pass,
that you should crush fortified cities
into piles of rubble.
26 Therefore their inhabitants, devoid of power,
are dismayed and ashamed.
They are like plants in the field,
tender green shoots,
grass on the rooftops,
scorched before it is grown.

27 But I know your sitting down,
your going out and coming in,
and your raging against Me.
28 Because your rage and arrogance against Me
have reached My ears,
I will put My hook in your nose
and My bit in your mouth;
I will send you back
the way you came.'

29 And this will be a sign to you, O Hezekiah:

This year you will eat
what grows on its own,
and in the second year
what springs from the same.
But in the third year you will sow and reap;
you will plant vineyards and eat their fruit.
30 And the surviving remnant of the house of Judah
will again take root below
and bear fruit above.
31 For a remnant will go forth from Jerusalem,
and survivors from Mount Zion.
The zeal of Yahweh of Hosts
will accomplish this.

32 So this is what Yahweh says about the king of Assyria:

'He will not enter this
city or shoot an arrow
into it. He will not come before it with a shield
or build up a siege ramp against it.
33 He will go back the way he came,
and he will not enter this city,
declares Yahweh.
34 I will defend this city
and save it
for My own sake
and for the sake of My servant David.'"

JERUSALEM DELIVERED FROM THE ASSYRIANS // 2 CHRONICLES 32:20–23; ISAIAH 37:36–38

35 And that very night the angel of Yahweh went out and struck down 185,000 men in the camp of the Assyrians. When the people got up the next morning, there were all the dead bodies! 36 So Sennacherib king of Assyria broke camp and withdrew. He returned to Nineveh and stayed there.

37 One day, while he was worshiping in the temple of his god Nisroch, his sons Adrammelech and Sharezer put him to the sword and escaped to the land of Ararat. And his son Esar-haddon reigned in his place.

- **2KI 19:32 [PROPHECY]** Isaiah predicted Sennacherib would NOT enter Jerusalem; he would return the way he came → 2KI 19:35-36 p.646
- **2KI 19:35 [FULFILLS]** Isaiah predicted Sennacherib would NOT enter Jerusalem; he would return the way he came and 7 more ← 2KI 19:32-34; 2KI 20:5-6; IS 8:7-8; IS 10:12; IS 10:27; IS 17:13-14; IS 31:8; HOS 1:6-7 p.646
- **2KI 19:35 [MIRACLE]** Angel of Yahweh struck 185,000 Assyrians in one night
- **2KI 19:35 [NOTE]** 185,000. See the Big Question pages The 185,000 Assyrians, p.647.
- **2KI 19:36 [FULFILLS]** God would send Sennacherib back the way he came ← IS 37:29 p.1106
- **2KI 19:37 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Death of Sennacherib → FIELD NOTES p.648
- **2KI 19:37 [DEMONIC]** Sennacherib is killed while worshiping his god Nisroch
- **2KI 19:37 [FULFILLS]** Sennacherib would hear a rumor, go home, and die by the sword in his own land ← 2KI 19:7 p.644
- **2KI 19:37 [FULFILLS]** Sennacherib would hear a rumor, go home, and fall by the sword in his own land ← IS 37:7 p.1105
- **2KI 19:37 [FIELD NOTES]** Babylonian and Assyrian records also say Sennacherib was killed by a son. See The Death of Sennacherib Field Notes page, p.648.

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE 185,000 ASSYRIANS

What Happened

2 KINGS 18:13 TO 19:37 · ISAIAH 36 TO 37 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:1 TO 23

THE THREAT

Sennacherib had taken Judah's walled cities. His spokesman, the Rabshakeh, stood outside Jerusalem and shouted in Hebrew that no god had saved any nation from Assyria, so why would Yahweh save them? 18:28 to 35.

HEZEKIAH PRAYS

Hezekiah took the king's letter into the temple, spread it out before Yahweh and prayed, Save us, so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that You alone, Yahweh, are God, 19:14 to 19.

ISAIAH'S ANSWER

God said through Isaiah that the king of Assyria would not enter the city or shoot an arrow there. He will go back the way he came, 19:32 to 33.

THAT NIGHT

The angel of Yahweh went out and struck down 185,000 in the Assyrian camp. In the morning, there were the dead bodies, 19:35.

HE WENT HOME

Sennacherib broke camp, went home to Nineveh and stayed there, 19:36.

GOD'S PLAN, NOT ASSYRIA'S

God's message said it was He who had planned long ago that Assyria would crush cities, 19:25. Now He would put His hook in Sennacherib's nose and send him home, 19:28.

THE QUESTION

What happened to the army, and why does Sennacherib's own record not mention it?

Every View

EXODUS 12:23 · 2 SAMUEL 24:15 TO 16 · PSALM 46 · ISAIAH 10:12

VIEW 1: AN ANGEL STRUCK THEM

Most Jews and Christians read it as written: God's angel struck down the army in one night, like the destroyer in Egypt, Exodus 12:23.

VIEW 2: A PLAGUE SENT BY GOD

Some think the angel used a deadly sickness, as the angel of Yahweh brought a plague in David's day, 2 Samuel 24:15 to 16. That would still be God's doing.

THE MICE

The Greek writer Herodotus, about 430 BC, heard a story from Egyptian priests that Sennacherib's army was beaten in Egypt when mice chewed up their bowstrings in the night. Some see a memory of the same disaster, maybe a plague spread by mice.

SENNACHERIB'S SILENCE

Kings did not carve their defeats on stone. His prism says he shut Hezekiah up like a bird in a cage, but never says he took the city. He reigned twenty more years and never came back to Judah.

HOW MANY?

The Hebrew number is 185,000. Some scholars think the word for thousand can also mean a unit of soldiers, which would make the number smaller. Others take it as written.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jerusalem was not taken in 701 BC, and Hezekiah kept his throne. Even Sennacherib's own record agrees on that.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah gets sick, and Isaiah tells him to get ready to die. Hezekiah prays and weeps, and God adds fifteen years. As a sign, the shadow on the stairway goes back ten steps. Then Hezekiah proudly shows the envoys from Babylon all his treasures, and Isaiah says Babylon will one day carry it all away.

HEZEKIAH'S ILLNESS AND RECOVERY // 2 CHRONICLES 32:24–31; ISAIAH 38:1–8

1 In those days Hezekiah became mortally
ill. The prophet Isaiah son of Amoz came
to him and said, "This is what Yahweh
says: 'Put your house in order, for you are
about to die; you will not recover.'"

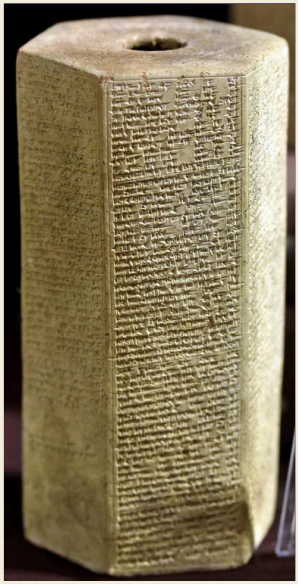
2 Then Hezekiah turned his face to the
wall and prayed to Yahweh, saying, 3
"Please, O Yahweh, remember how I have
walked before You faithfully and with
wholehearted devotion; I have done what
is good in Your sight." And Hezekiah wept
bitterly.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · MIRACLES · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE DEATH OF SENNACHERIB

2 KINGS 19:36 TO 37 · ISAIAH 37:37 TO 38 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:21



A six sided clay prism of Esarhaddon, the son who took Sennacherib's throne, from Nimrud. Iraq Museum, Baghdad. This prism tells of his building work. His story of his brothers' revolt is on another prism like it. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Records from Babylon and Assyria about Sennacherib's murder. A Babylonian Chronicle tablet says Sennacherib was killed by his son in a revolt. His son Esarhaddon wrote on clay prisms about how his brothers rebelled and how he chased them away and took the throne.

HOW OLD IT IS

Sennacherib died in 681 BC, twenty years after he left Judah. The records were written soon after.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The Babylonian Chronicle tablet is in the British Museum. Esarhaddon's prisms come from Nineveh and Nimrud, in Iraq.

THE KILLER'S NAME

2 Kings 19:37 names two sons, Adrammelech and Sharezer, who fled to the land of Ararat. In 1980 Simo Parpola showed that an Assyrian letter names the guilty son Arda Mulissu. Many scholars think that is the Bible's Adrammelech. Ararat is Urartu, a kingdom in the mountains to the north.

THE TEMPLE OF NISROCH

The Bible says he was killed while worshiping in the temple of his god Nisroch. The Assyrian records do not say where he died. Nobody is sure which god Nisroch was.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The records do not mention Isaiah's word. They do show that Sennacherib went home and was killed by the sword in his own land, as Isaiah said, 19:7.

4 Before Isaiah had left the middle courtyard, the word of Yahweh came to him, saying, 5 "Go back and tell Hezekiah the leader of My people that this is what Yahweh, the God of your father David, says: 'I have heard your prayer; I have seen your tears. I will surely heal you. On the third day from now you will go up to the house of Yahweh. 6 I will add fifteen years to your life. And I will deliver you and this city from the hand of the king of Assyria. I will defend this city for My sake and for the sake of My servant David.'"

7 Then Isaiah said, "Prepare a poultice of figs." So they brought it and applied it to the boil, and Hezekiah recovered.

8 Now Hezekiah had asked Isaiah, "What will be the sign that Yahweh will heal me and that I will go up to the house of Yahweh on the third day?"

9 And Isaiah had replied, "This will be a sign to you from Yahweh that He will do what He has promised: Would you like the shadow to go forward ten steps, or back ten steps?"

- **2KI 20:3 [HEART]** Hezekiah prayed that he had walked before God faithfully, with his whole heart.
- **2KI 20:5 [PROPHECY]** God would add fifteen years to Hezekiah's life and save the city from Assyria → 2KI 18:2; 2KI 19:35-36 p.640
- **2KI 20:5 [NOTABLE]** God said no, then changed His answer when Hezekiah wept and prayed. God sees our tears.
- **2KI 20:7 [MIRACLE]** Hezekiah recovers after the fig poultice is applied
- **2KI 20:8 [MIRACLE]** Sun's shadow went backward 10 steps as a sign to Hezekiah
- **2KI 20:9 [PROPHECY]** The shadow on the stairway would go back ten steps as a sign → 2KI 20:11 p.649
- **2KI 20:9 [NOTE]** THE SHADOW. See the Big Question pages Hezekiah's Sundial, p.649.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

10 "It is easy for the shadow to lengthen
ten steps," answered Hezekiah, "but not
for it to go back ten steps."

11 So Isaiah the prophet called out to Yah-
weh, and He brought the shadow back the
ten steps it had descended on the stair-
way of Ahaz.

HEZEKIAH SHOWS HIS TREASURES // ISAIAH 39:1–8

12 At that time Merodach-baladan son of
Baladan king of Babylon sent letters and a
gift to Hezekiah, for he had heard about
Hezekiah's illness. 13 And Hezekiah re-
ceived the envoys and showed them all
that was in his treasure house—the silver,
the gold, the spices, and the precious oil,
as well as his armory—all that was found
in his storehouses. There was nothing in
his palace or in all his dominion that
Hezekiah did not show them.

14 Then the prophet Isaiah went to King
Hezekiah and asked, "Where did those
men come from, and what did they say to
you?"

"They came from a distant land,"
Hezekiah replied, "from Babylon."

15 "What have they seen in your palace?"
Isaiah asked.

"They have seen everything in my
palace," answered Hezekiah. "There is
nothing among my treasures that I did not
show them."

16 Then Isaiah said to Hezekiah, "Hear the
word of Yahweh: 17 The time will surely
come when everything in your palace and
all that your fathers have stored up until
this day will be carried off to Babylon.
Nothing will be left, says Yahweh. 18 And
some of your descendants, your own
flesh and blood, will be taken away to be
eunuchs in the palace of the king of Baby-
lon."

19 But Hezekiah said to Isaiah, "The word
of Yahweh that you have spoken is good."
For he thought, "Will there not at least be
peace and security in my lifetime?"

- **2KI 20:11 [FULFILLS]** The shadow on the stairway would go back ten steps as a sign ← 2KI 20:9 p.648
- **2KI 20:11 [FULFILLS]** Hezekiah's life extended 15 years; sundial sign confirmed ← IS 38:5-8 p.1107
- **2KI 20:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Merodach baladan, Marduk apla iddina II, king of Babylon, is named in Assyrian records and on his own boundary stone
- **2KI 20:16 [PROPHECY]** Isaiah told Hezekiah his descendants would be carried to Babylon as eunuchs → 2KI 24:13-15; DAN 1:3 p.658

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HEZEKIAH'S SUNDIAL

What Happened

2 KINGS 20:1 TO 11 · ISAIAH 38:1 TO 8 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:24 TO 26

SICK TO DEATH
Hezekiah became mortally ill, and Isaiah told him, Put your house in order, for you are about to die, 20:1.

THE PRAYER
Hezekiah turned his face to the wall, prayed and wept bitterly, 20:2 to 3.

FIFTEEN YEARS
Before Isaiah had left the courtyard, God sent him back: I have heard your prayer; I have seen your tears. I will add fifteen years to your life, 20:4 to 6.

THE SIGN
Hezekiah asked for a sign. Isaiah said, Should the shadow go forward ten steps, or back ten steps? Hezekiah said going forward is easy, so let it go back. Isaiah cried out to Yahweh, and the shadow went back ten steps on the stairway of Ahaz, 20:8 to 11.

WHAT THE YEARS BROUGHT
In those fifteen years Hezekiah showed off his treasures to Babylon, 20:12 to 13, and his son Manasseh was born, 21:1.

ISAIAH'S CURE
Isaiah told them to put a lump of figs on Hezekiah's boil, and he recovered, 20:7. God healed him, and He used a simple remedy too.

THE QUESTION
What was the stairway of Ahaz, and did the sun really move backward?

Every View

2 CHRONICLES 32:31 · JOSHUA 10:12 TO 14 · ISAIAH 38:8

THE STAIRWAY
The Hebrew word means steps or stairs. Many think it was an outdoor stairway in the palace where the shadow crept up or down the steps as the day went on, like a clock. Others think it was a sundial Ahaz brought in from Assyria or Egypt.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

VIEW 1: A MIRACLE IN THE SKY
Some think God turned back the sun itself, or the turning of the earth, the biggest kind of miracle.

VIEW 2: A MIRACLE OF THE SHADOW
Many think God moved the light and shadow in that place only. 2 Chronicles 32:31 says envoys from Babylon came to ask about the sign that happened in the land, which may mean it was seen in Judah, not everywhere.

VIEW 3: AN ECLIPSE OR BENT LIGHT
Some have suggested a partial eclipse of the sun or an unusual bending of light. Others answer that a sign that came on request, at the time God said, is still a miracle.

THE NASA STORY
A popular story says NASA computers found a missing day in time, from Joshua's long day plus Hezekiah's ten steps. It is not true. NASA says it never happened, and no computer can find a missing day.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
God heard a sick man's prayer and saw his tears, 20:5. The sign was given to help Hezekiah believe God's promise.

MANASSEH SUCCEEDS HEZEKIAH

20 As for the rest of the acts of Hezekiah,
along with all his might and how he constructed the pool and the tunnel to bring
water into the city, are they not written in
the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of
Judah?

21 And Hezekiah rested with his fathers,
and his son Manasseh reigned in his
place.

- 2KI 20:20 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An underground water tunnel and a Hebrew inscription about its digging, about 701 BC
- 2KI 20:20 [FIELD NOTES] Hezekiah's tunnel can still be walked today. See The Siloam Tunnel Inscription Field Notes page in Isaiah, p.1087, and The Broad Wall Field Notes page, p.650.
- 2KI 20:21 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Assyrian records list Manasseh king of Judah among the kings who served Esarhaddon and Ashurbanipal → FIELD NOTES p.651

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS
Manasseh becomes king at twelve and reigns 55 years, the longest in Judah. He undoes everything his father did, builds altars to Baal and the stars inside the temple, practices sorcery and burns his own son. He fills Jerusalem with innocent blood. God says, I will wipe out Jerusalem as one wipes out a bowl.

MANASSEH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 33:1–9

1 Manasseh was twelve years old when he
became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem
fifty-five years. His mother's name was
Hephzibah. 2 And he did evil in the sight of
Yahweh by following the abominations of
the nations that Yahweh had driven out
before the Israelites. 3 For he rebuilt the
high places that his father Hezekiah had
destroyed, and he raised up altars for
Baal. He made an Asherah pole, as King
Ahab of Israel had done, and he worshiped and served all the host of heaven.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE BROAD WALL

2 CHRONICLES 32:5 · ISAIAH 22:10 · NEHEMIAH 3:8 · 2 KINGS 20:20



The Broad Wall in the Jewish Quarter of Jerusalem, with modern homes built around it. Photo by Ian Scott, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS
Part of a city wall about 23 feet thick, built of big rough stones. It protected new neighborhoods on Jerusalem's western hill.

- 2KI 21:1 [NOTE] MANASSEH. See the Big Question pages Manasseh, p.651.
- 2KI 21:2 [DEMONIC] Manasseh rebuilds high places and altars for Baal and the stars

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

MANASSEH IN ASSYRIA'S RECORDS

2 KINGS 20:21 · 21:1 TO 18 · 2 CHRONICLES 33:10 TO 13



A clay prism of Esarhaddon from Nimrud, Iraq Museum. The prism that names Manasseh is a different one, in the British Museum, and is not shown. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Clay prisms of two Assyrian kings, Esarhaddon and his son Ashurbanipal. Both list the kings of the west who served them, and both name Manasseh king of Judah.

HOW OLD IT IS

Esarhaddon's prism is from about 673 BC. Ashurbanipal's list tells about his war on Egypt in 667 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the ruins of Nineveh, in Iraq. R. Campbell Thompson's dig found the Esarhaddon prism in 1927 to 1928. It is in the British Museum in London.

WHAT THEY SAY

Esarhaddon says he made 22 kings, among them Baal king of Tyre and Manasseh king of Judah, carry timber and stone to Nineveh for his palace. Ashurbanipal says Manasseh and the others brought him gifts and sent soldiers with his army to Egypt.

CHAINS IN BABYLON

2 Chronicles 33:11 says the Assyrians took Manasseh to Babylon in chains. No Assyrian record tells that story. Many point out that Esarhaddon ruled Babylon too, so the trip fits the time. Others doubt it happened.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The prisms say nothing about Manasseh's idols or his turn to God. They show that Manasseh was a real king of Judah who served Assyria for a long time, which fits his 55 year reign, 21:1.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 700 BC, the time of Hezekiah.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the Jewish Quarter of Jerusalem's Old City, by Nahman Avigad in 1970. Part of it can still be seen today.

HOUSES TORN DOWN

The wall cuts right through older houses. Isaiah said, You counted the houses of Jerusalem and tore them down to strengthen the wall, Isaiah 22:10. 2 Chronicles 32:5 says Hezekiah built up the broken wall and built another wall outside it.

A CITY THAT GREW

Jerusalem grew fast in Hezekiah's day, maybe because people fled south when Israel fell in 722 BC. The wall showed that the city had spread far beyond the old City of David. Nehemiah later names the Broad Wall, Nehemiah 3:8.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No writing on the wall names Hezekiah. Its date, its size and the houses it cuts through fit the Bible's picture of Hezekiah getting Jerusalem ready for Assyria. The Isaiah Field Notes page tells more, p.1086.

4 Manasseh also built altars in the house
of Yahweh, of which Yahweh had said, "In
Jerusalem I will put My Name." 5 In both
courtyards of the house of Yahweh, he
built altars to all the host of heaven. 6 He
sacrificed his own son in the fire, prac-
ticed sorcery and divination, and con-
sulted mediums and spiritists. He did
great evil in the sight of Yahweh, provok-
ing Him to anger.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

7 Manasseh even took the carved Asherah pole he had made and set it up in the temple, of which Yahweh had said to David and his son Solomon, "In this temple and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will establish My Name forever. 8 I will never again cause the feet of the Israelites to wander from the land that I gave to their fathers, if only they are careful to do all I have commanded them—the whole Law that My servant Moses commanded them."

9 But the people did not listen and Manasseh led them astray, so that they did greater evil than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the Israelites.

THE BIG QUESTION

MANASSEH

The Worst King

2 KINGS 21:1 TO 18 · 23:26 · 24:3 TO 4 · JEREMIAH 15:4

THE BOY KING

Manasseh became king at twelve and reigned 55 years, longer than any other king of Judah, 21:1.

UNDOING HIS FATHER

He rebuilt the high places Hezekiah had torn down, built altars to Baal, made an Asherah pole like Ahab, and bowed to the stars, 21:3.

IDOLS IN THE TEMPLE

He built altars for the stars in the courts of the temple and set up a carved Asherah pole in the very house where God put His Name, 21:4 to 7.

THE OCCULT AND HIS SON

He burned his own son in the fire, practiced sorcery and divination, and consulted mediums and spiritists, 21:6.

INNOCENT BLOOD

He shed so much innocent blood that he filled Jerusalem from one end to the other, 21:16. An old Jewish tradition says he had Isaiah sawed in two, and many think Hebrews 11:37 remembers it.

GOD'S VERDICT

God said Manasseh did more evil than the Amorites who lived in the land before Israel, 21:11, and that He would wipe out Jerusalem as one wipes out a bowl, 21:13.

THE QUESTION

Was Manasseh beyond God's mercy? And why was Judah still punished for his sins after he died?

Every View

2 CHRONICLES 33:1 TO 20 · HEBREWS 11:37 · JEREMIAH 3:10

THE REST OF THE STORY

2 Chronicles 33:11 to 16 says the king of Assyria took Manasseh to Babylon with hooks and bronze chains. There he humbled himself and prayed, and God brought him back to Jerusalem. Then Manasseh knew that Yahweh is God, and he removed the idols from the temple.

WHY KINGS LEAVES IT OUT

Many think Kings tells how much damage Manasseh did to the nation, and Chronicles tells what happened in his own heart. Assyrian records list Manasseh of Judah among kings who served Assyria, so a trip in chains fits his time. Some critical scholars doubt the Chronicles story.

THE PRAYER OF MANASSEH

A short prayer of repentance in his name is in some old Bibles, among the books between the Testaments. Eastern Orthodox Christians read it as Scripture. Jews, Catholics and Protestants do not.

WHY JUDAH STILL FELL

2 Kings 24:3 to 4 says Judah fell for the sins of Manasseh and the innocent blood he shed, which God would not pardon. The people had followed him for 55 years. Even under Josiah, Jeremiah said Judah turned back only in pretense, Jeremiah 3:10.

FORGIVEN, BUT THE DAMAGE STAYED

Many say God forgave the man, but the nation never let go of what he taught it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

If God could forgive Manasseh, He can forgive anyone who turns to Him. But sin's damage can outlive the sinner.

2KI 21:6 [DEMONIC] Manasseh practiced soothsaying, used witchcraft and sorcery, consulted mediums

2KI 21:7 [DEMONIC] Manasseh sets up an Asherah pole in God's temple

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

MANASSEH'S IDOLATRIES REBUKED // 2 CHRONICLES 33:10–20

10 And Yahweh spoke through His servants the prophets, saying, 11 "Since Manasseh king of Judah has committed all these abominations, acting more wickedly than the Amorites who preceded him, and with his idols has caused Judah to sin, 12 this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Behold, I am bringing such calamity upon Jerusalem and Judah that the news will reverberate in the ears of all who hear it. 13 I will stretch out over Jerusalem the measuring line used against Samaria and the plumb line used against the house of Ahab, and I will wipe out Jerusalem as one wipes out a bowl—wiping it and turning it upside down. 14 So I will forsake the remnant of My inheritance and deliver them into the hands of their enemies. And they will become plunder and spoil to all their enemies, 15 because they have done evil in My sight and have provoked Me to anger from the day their fathers came out of Egypt until this day.'"

16 Moreover, Manasseh shed so much innocent blood that he filled Jerusalem from end to end, in addition to the sin that he had caused Judah to commit, doing evil in the sight of Yahweh.

17 As for the rest of the acts of Manasseh, along with all his accomplishments and the sin that he committed, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

18 And Manasseh rested with his fathers and was buried in his palace garden, the garden of Uzza. And his son Amon reigned in his place.

AMON REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 33:21–25

19 Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem two years. His mother's name was Meshullemeth daughter of Haruz; she was from Jotbah. 20 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, as his father Manasseh had done. 21 He walked in all the ways of his father, and he served and worshiped the idols his father had served. 22 He abandoned Yahweh, the God of his fathers, and did not walk in the way of Yahweh.

23 Then the servants of Amon conspired against him and killed the king in his palace. 24 But the people of the land killed all those who had conspired against King Amon, and they made his son Josiah king in his place.

25 As for the rest of the acts of Amon, along with his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah? 26 And he was buried in his tomb in the garden of Uzza, and his son Josiah reigned in his place.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Josiah becomes king at eight. While the temple is being repaired, the high priest finds the Book of the Law. When it is read to Josiah, he tears his clothes. The prophetess Huldah says disaster is coming, but because Josiah's heart was tender, it will not come in his lifetime.

JOSIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 34:1–2

1 Josiah was eight years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem thirty-one years. His mother's name was Jedidah daughter of Adaiah; she was from Bozkath. 2 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh and walked in all the ways of his father David he did not turn aside to the right or to the left.

FUNDING THE TEMPLE REPAIRS // 2 CHRONICLES 34:8–13

3 Now in the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah sent the scribe, Shaphan son of Azaliah, the son of Meshullam, to the house of Yahweh, saying, 4 "Go up to Hilkiah the high priest and have him count the money that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the doorkeepers have collected from the people. 5 And let them deliver it into the hands of the supervisors of those doing the work on the

2KI 21:11 [DEMONIC] Manasseh's idols cause Judah to sin

2KI 21:12 [PROPHECY] I am bringing calamity on Jerusalem and Judah; I will wipe Jerusalem as one wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down → Fulfilled in Babylonian destruction 586 BC

2KI 21:21 [DEMONIC] Amon worships the idols his father served

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

house of Yahweh, who in turn are to give it to the workmen repairing the damages to the house of Yahweh— 6 to the carpenters, builders, and masons—to buy timber and dressed stone to repair the temple. 7 But they need not account for the money put into their hands, since they work with integrity."

HILKIAH FINDS THE BOOK OF THE LAW // 2 CHRONICLES 34:14–21

8 Then Hilkiah the high priest said to Shaphan the scribe, "I have found the Book of the Law in the house of Yahweh!" And he gave it to Shaphan, who read it.

9 And Shaphan the scribe went to the king and reported, "Your servants have paid out the money that was found in the temple and have put it into the hands of the workers and supervisors of the house of Yahweh."

10 Moreover, Shaphan the scribe told the king, "Hilkiah the priest has given me a book." And Shaphan read it in the presence of the king.

11 When the king heard the words of the Book of the Law, he tore his clothes 12 and commanded Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Achbor son of Micaiah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah the servant of the king: 13 "Go and inquire of Yahweh for me, for the people, and for all Judah concerning the words in this book that has been found. For great is the wrath of Yahweh that burns against us because our fathers have not obeyed the words of this book by doing all that is written about us."

HULDAH'S PROPHECY // 2 CHRONICLES 34:22–28

14 So Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam, Achbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah went and spoke to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of Tikvah, the son of Harhas, the keeper of the wardrobe. She lived in Jerusalem, in the Second District.

15 And Huldah said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Tell the man who sent you 16 that this is what Yahweh says: I am about to bring calamity on this place and on its people, according to all the words of the book that the king of Judah has read, 17 because they have forsaken Me and burned incense to other gods, that they might provoke Me to anger with all the works of their hands. My wrath will be kindled against this place and will not be quenched.'

18 But as for the king of Judah, who sent you to inquire of Yahweh, tell him that this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'As for the words that you heard, 19 because your heart was tender and you humbled yourself before Yahweh when you heard what I spoke against this place and against its people, that they would become a desolation and a curse, and because you have torn your clothes and wept before Me, I have heard you,' declares Yahweh.

20 'Therefore I will indeed gather you to your fathers, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see all the calamity that I will bring on this place.'"

So they brought her answer back to the king.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

JOSIAH AND THE BOOK OF THE LAW

What Was Found

2 KINGS 22:1 TO 23:25 · 2 CHRONICLES 34 TO 35 · DEUTERONOMY 31:24 TO 26

AN EIGHT YEAR OLD KING

Josiah became king at eight, after his father Amon was murdered, 21:23 to 22:1. 2 Chronicles 34:3 says he began to seek God at sixteen.

2KI 22:8 [NOTE] THE BOOK OF THE LAW. See the Big Question pages Josiah and the Book of the Law, p.654.

2KI 22:13 [NOTABLE] When Josiah heard God's word read, he did not argue with it. He tore his clothes and asked what God wanted. That is how revival starts.

2KI 22:14 [NOTE] HULDAH was a prophetess, like Miriam and Deborah. Her message from God prints red, like the other prophets.

2KI 22:16 [PROPHECY] Huldah said disaster would come on Jerusalem because the people served other gods → 2KI 25:9 p.660

2KI 22:17 [DEMONIC] Judah burned incense to other gods

2KI 22:19 [HEART] Josiah's heart was tender and he humbled himself when he heard God's word, so God heard him.

2KI 22:20 [PROPHECY] Josiah would die before the disaster and not see it → 2KI 23:29-30 p.657

THE HEART

THE REPAIRS
In his eighteenth year, 622 BC, Josiah sent money to repair the temple, 22:3 to 7.

THE FIND
Hilkiah the high priest said, I have found the Book of the Law in the house of Yahweh, 22:8. Shaphan the secretary read it to the king.

THE KING TORE HIS CLOTHES
When Josiah heard the words, he tore his clothes and sent to ask Yahweh what to do, because God's anger burned against them for not obeying, 22:11 to 13.

THE REFORM
Josiah read the book to all the people, made a covenant, cleaned out the idols, and held a Passover like none since the judges, 23:1 to 25.

A PROPHECY 300 YEARS OLD
Josiah burned bones on Jeroboam's altar at Bethel, just as a man of God had said about 300 years before, naming Josiah, 1 Kings 13:2 and 2 Kings 23:15 to 16.

THE QUESTION
What book did they find, and how could God's law be lost in God's own temple?

Every View
DEUTERONOMY 12:1 TO 14 · 18:9 TO 12 · 28:15 TO 68 · JEREMIAH 11:1 TO 8

VIEW 1: DEUTERONOMY
Most scholars, and many who hold the traditional view, think it was Deuteronomy, or a large part of it. Josiah's reforms match it: one place to worship, Deuteronomy 12, no mediums, Deuteronomy 18, and the curses in Deuteronomy 28 that frightened the king.

VIEW 2: THE WHOLE LAW OF MOSES
Others think it was a copy of all five books of Moses, maybe the copy Moses had placed beside the ark, Deuteronomy 31:26.

VIEW 3: WRITTEN NEAR JOSIAH'S TIME
Since W. M. L. de Wette in 1805, many critical scholars have thought Deuteronomy was written or put together not long before it was found, to support the reform. Others answer that the people were afraid because the book was old, and that Deuteronomy fits the time of Moses.

HOW COULD IT BE LOST?
Manasseh had filled the temple with idols for 55 years. Books were copied by hand and were rare. Many think the copy had been hidden or forgotten in a storeroom.

HULDAH'S WORD
The prophetess Huldah said the book's warnings would come true, but not in Josiah's lifetime, because his heart was tender, 22:15 to 20.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
When God's word was read, a king humbled himself, and the greatest revival in Judah's history began.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS
Josiah reads the book to everyone and makes a covenant with God. Then he cleans house: Baal, Asherah, the horses for the sun, the altars on the roof, the high places, and the place where children were burned. He even burns bones on Jeroboam's altar at Bethel, just as a man of God said 300 years before. Then he dies fighting Pharaoh Neco.

JOSIAH RENEWS THE COVENANT // 2 CHRONICLES 34:29–33

1 Then the king summoned all the elders of
Judah and Jerusalem. 2 And he went up to
the house of Yahweh with all the people
of Judah and Jerusalem, as well as the
priests and the prophets—all the people
small and great—and in their hearing he
read all the words of the Book of the
Covenant that had been found in the
house of Yahweh.

3 So the king stood by the pillar and made
a covenant before Yahweh to follow Yah-
weh and to keep His commandments, de-
crees, and statutes with all his heart and
all his soul, and to carry out the words of
the covenant that were written in this
book. And all the people entered into the
covenant.

2KI 23:3 [HEART] Josiah promised before Yahweh to keep His commands with all his heart and soul.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · DEMONIC · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JOSIAH DESTROYS IDOLATRY // 1 KINGS 13:1–10; 2 CHRONICLES 34:3–7

4 Then the king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, the priests second in rank, and the doorkeepers to remove from the temple of Yahweh all the articles made for Baal, Asherah, and all the host of heaven. And he burned them outside Jerusalem in the fields of Kidron and carried their ashes to Bethel.

5 Josiah also did away with the idolatrous priests ordained by the kings of Judah to burn incense on the high places of the cities of Judah and in the places all around Jerusalem—those who had burned incense to Baal, to the sun and moon, to the constellations, and to all the host of heaven.

6 He brought the Asherah pole from the house of Yahweh to the Kidron Valley outside Jerusalem, and there he burned it, ground it to powder, and threw its dust on the graves of the common people. 7 He also tore down the quarters of the male shrine prostitutes that were in the house of Yahweh, where the women had woven tapestries for Asherah.

8 Then Josiah brought all the priests from the cities of Judah and desecrated the high places, from Geba to Beersheba, where the priests had burned incense. He tore down the high places of the gates at the entrance of the gate of Joshua the governor of the city, which was to the left of the city gate. 9 Although the priests of the high places did not come up to the altar of Yahweh in Jerusalem, they ate unleavened bread with their fellow priests.

10 He also desecrated Topheth in the Valley of Ben-hinnom so that no one could sacrifice his son or daughter in the fire to Molech. 11 And he removed from the entrance to the house of Yahweh the horses that the kings of Judah had dedicated to the sun. They were in the court near the chamber of an official named Nathan-melech. And Josiah burned up the chariots of the sun.

12 He pulled down the altars that the kings of Judah had set up on the roof near the upper chamber of Ahaz, and the altars that Manasseh had set up in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh. The king pulverized them there and threw their dust into the Kidron Valley.

13 The king also desecrated the high places east of Jerusalem, to the south of the Mount of Corruption, which King Solomon of Israel had built for Ashtoreth the abomination of the Sidonians, for Chemosh the abomination of the Moabites, and for Milcom the abomination of the Ammonites. 14 He smashed the sacred pillars to pieces, cut down the Asherah poles, and covered the sites with human bones.

15 He even pulled down the altar at Bethel, the high place set up by Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. Then he burned the high place, ground it to powder, and burned the Asherah pole. 16 And as Josiah turned, he saw the tombs there on the hillside, and he sent someone to take the bones out of the tombs, and he burned them on the altar to defile it, according to the word of Yahweh proclaimed by the man of God who had foretold these things.

17 Then the king asked, "What is this monument I see?"

And the men of the city replied, "It is the tomb of the man of God who came from Judah and proclaimed these things that you have done to the altar of Bethel."

18 "Let him rest," said Josiah. "Do not let anyone disturb his bones."

So they left his bones undisturbed, along with those of the prophet who had come from Samaria.

2KI 23:4 [DEMONIC] Josiah destroys the idols, high places, and Molech's Topheth

2KI 23:4 [FULFILLS] God would cut off every remnant of Baal and the pagan priests from Jerusalem ← ZEPH 1:4 · MEDIUM p.1468

2KI 23:10 [NOTE] TOPHETH. Josiah ruined the place in the Valley of Ben hinnom where children were burned, so no one could do it again. The valley's name, Ge Hinnom, became Gehenna, the word Jesus used for hell, Matthew 10:28.

2KI 23:15 [FULFILLS] A man of God named King Josiah about 300 years before he reigned ← 1KI 13:1-2 p.572

2KI 23:15 [FULFILLS] The altars of Bethel would be destroyed and the horns of the altar cut off ← AMOS 3:14 · MEDIUM p.1394

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

19 Just as Josiah had done at Bethel, so
also in the cities of Samaria he removed
all the shrines of the high places set up by
the kings of Israel who had provoked Yah-
weh to anger. 20 On the altars he slaugh-
tered all the priests of the high places,
and he burned human bones on them.
Then he returned to Jerusalem.

JOSIAH RESTORES THE PASSOVER // 2 CHRONICLES 35:1–19

21 The king commanded all the people,
"Keep the Passover of Yahweh your God,
as it is written in this Book of the
Covenant."

22 No such Passover had been observed
from the days of the judges who had gov-
erned Israel through all the days of the
kings of Israel and Judah. 23 But in the
eighteenth year of Josiah's reign, this
Passover was observed to Yahweh in
Jerusalem.

24 Furthermore, Josiah removed the medi-
ums and spiritists, the household gods
and idols, and all the abominations that
were seen in the land of Judah and in
Jerusalem. He did this to carry out the
words of the law written in the book that
Hilkiah the priest had found in the house
of Yahweh.

25 Neither before nor after Josiah was
there any king like him, who turned to
Yahweh with all his heart and with all his
soul and with all his strength, according to
all the Law of Moses.

26 Nevertheless, Yahweh did not turn away
from the fury of His burning anger, which
was kindled against Judah because of all
that Manasseh had done to provoke Him
to anger. 27 For Yahweh had said, "I will re-
move Judah from My sight, just as I re-
moved Israel. I will reject this city
Jerusalem, which I chose, and the temple
of which I said, 'My Name shall be there.'"

THE DEATH OF JOSIAH // 2 CHRONICLES 35:20–24

28 As for the rest of the acts of Josiah and
all his accomplishments, are they not writ-
ten in the Book of the Chronicles of the
Kings of Judah?

29 During Josiah's reign, Pharaoh Neco
king of Egypt marched up to help the king
of Assyria at the Euphrates River. King
Josiah went out to confront him, but Neco
faced him and killed him at Megiddo.

30 From Megiddo his servants carried his
body in a chariot, brought him to
Jerusalem, and buried him in his own
tomb. Then the people of the land took
Jehoahaz son of Josiah, anointed him,
and made him king in place of his father.

JEHOAHAZ SUCCEEDS JOSIAH // 2 CHRONICLES 36:1–4

31 Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old
when he became king, and he reigned in
Jerusalem three months. His mother's
name was Hamutal daughter of Jeremiah;
she was from Libnah. 32 And he did evil in
the sight of Yahweh, just as his fathers
had done.

33 And Pharaoh Neco imprisoned Jehoa-
haz at Riblah in the land of Hamath so that
he could not reign in Jerusalem, and he
imposed on Judah a levy of 7,500 pounds
of silver and 75 pounds of gold. 34 Then
Pharaoh Neco made Eliakim son of Josiah
king in place of his father Josiah, and he
changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. But
Neco took Jehoahaz and carried him off
to Egypt, where he died.

35 So Jehoiakim paid the silver and gold to
Pharaoh Neco, but to meet Pharaoh's de-
mand he taxed the land and exacted the
silver and the gold from the people, each
according to his wealth.

2KI 23:24 [DEMONIC] Josiah removes the mediums and spiritists
2KI 23:25 [HEART] No king before or after Josiah turned to Yahweh with all his heart, soul and strength.
2KI 23:25 [NOTABLE] Josiah lived out the greatest command, Deuteronomy 6:5, and Jesus quoted it, Mark 12:30. He started seeking God at sixteen, 2 Chronicles 34:3.
2KI 23:27 [PROPHECY] God would remove Judah and reject Jerusalem and the temple → 2KI 25:9; 2KI 25:21 p.660
2KI 23:29 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Pharaoh Neco is Necho II of Egypt, named on Egyptian monuments and by the Greek writer Herodotus
2KI 23:29 [FULFILLS] Josiah would die before the disaster and not see it ← 2KI 22:20 p.654
2KI 23:29 [NOTE] PHARAOH NECO was marching north to help Assyria against Babylon, 609 BC. 2 Chronicles 35:20 to 24 tells how Josiah died. See the Pharaoh Neco Field Notes page there, p.757.
2KI 23:34 [FULFILLS] Shallum, also called Jehoahaz, would die in exile and never see Judah again ← JER 22:11-12 p.1178

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JEHOIAKIM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 36:5–8

36 Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years. His mother's name was Zebidah daughter of Pedaiah; she was from Rumah. 37 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, just as his fathers had done.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Judah's last kings are puppets of Egypt and Babylon. Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon comes, and young King Jehoiachin surrenders after three months. He is taken to Babylon with the craftsmen, the soldiers and the temple treasures, and his uncle Zedekiah is made king.

BABYLON CONTROLS JEHOIAKIM

1 During Jehoiakim's reign, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon invaded. So Jehoiakim became his vassal for three years, until he turned and rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar.

2 And Yahweh sent Chaldean, Aramean, Moabite, and Ammonite raiders against Jehoiakim in order to destroy Judah, according to the word that Yahweh had spoken through His servants the prophets. 3 Surely this happened to Judah at Yahweh's command, to remove them from His presence because of the sins of Manasseh and all that he had done, 4 and also for the innocent blood he had shed. For he had filled Jerusalem with innocent blood, and Yahweh was unwilling to forgive.

5 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, along with all his accomplishments, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Judah?

JEHOIACHIN REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 36:9–10

6 And Jehoiakim rested with his fathers, and his son Jehoiachin reigned in his place.

7 Now the king of Egypt did not march out of his land again, because the king of Babylon had taken all his territory, from the Brook of Egypt to the Euphrates River.

8 Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem three months. His mother's name was Nehushta daughter of Elnathan; she was from Jerusalem. 9 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, just as his father had done.

THE CAPTIVITY OF JERUSALEM // LAMENTATIONS 1:1–22

10 At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon marched up to Jerusalem, and the city came under siege. 11 And Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came to the city while his servants were besieging it. 12 Jehoiachin king of Judah, his mother, his servants, his commanders, and his officials all surrendered to the king of Babylon.

So in the eighth year of his reign, the king of Babylon took him captive. 13 As Yahweh had declared, Nebuchadnezzar also carried off all the treasures from the house of Yahweh and the royal palace, and he cut into pieces all the gold articles that Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of Yahweh. 14 He carried into exile all Jerusalem—all the commanders and mighty men of valor, all the craftsmen and metalsmiths—ten thousand captives in all. Only the poorest people of the land remained.

15 Nebuchadnezzar carried away Jehoiachin to Babylon, as well as the king's mother, his wives, his officials, and the leading men of the land. He took them into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon. 16 The

- **2KI 24:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Nebuchadnezzar II is named on thousands of bricks and records from Babylon, see The Babylonian Chronicle Field Notes page, p.659
- **2KI 24:1 [FULFILLS]** God would raise up the Chaldeans (Babylonians) to punish Judah ← HAB 1:5-6 p.1456
- **2KI 24:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** King Jehoiachin is named on ration tablets from Babylon, see The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets Field Notes page, p.662
- **2KI 24:8 [TEXT]** 18 OR 8? Most Hebrew copies of 2 Chronicles 36:9 say eight. Some copies say eighteen, like this verse, and this Bible follows them there too.
- **2KI 24:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Babylonian Chronicle of Nebuchadnezzar → FIELD NOTES p.659
- **2KI 24:13 [FULFILLS]** Isaiah told Hezekiah his descendants would be carried to Babylon as eunuchs ← 2KI 20:16-18 p.649
- **2KI 24:14 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:11 p.1550
- **2KI 24:14 [FULFILLS]** Pashhur the priest and all his household would go into Babylonian captivity and die there ← JER 20:4-6 · MEDIUM p.1176

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE BABYLONIAN CHRONICLE

2 KINGS 24:1 TO 17 · 2 CHRONICLES 36:9 TO 10 · JEREMIAH 46:2



The Babylonian Chronicle tablet for 605 to 594 BC, British Museum. The lines about Jerusalem are on the back. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A clay tablet from Babylon's own yearly records of the first years of Nebuchadnezzar II. It tells about his wars from 605 to 594 BC.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was copied from Babylon's records kept at the time.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The British Museum bought it from a dealer in 1896. Nobody knows exactly where it was dug up. D. J. Wiseman published it in 1956.

WHAT IT SAYS

In his seventh year, the king of Babylon marched to the land of Hatti and camped against the city of Judah. On the second day of the month Adar he seized the city and captured the king. He appointed a king of his own choice and took heavy tribute to Babylon.

AN EXACT DATE

The second of Adar in Nebuchadnezzar's seventh year was March 15 or 16, 597 BC. It is one of the most exact dates in all of Bible history. The Bible says Jehoiachin gave himself up after three months as king, and Zedekiah was put in his place, 24:8 to 17.

THE LAND OF HATTI

Babylon called all the land west of the Euphrates River, Syria and Israel included, the land of Hatti, after the old Hittite kingdom.

A WHOLE SERIES

This tablet is one of a set of chronicles that list each year's main events in short, plain lines. Others in the set tell of the fall of Nineveh in 612 BC and of Cyrus taking Babylon in 539 BC.

DANIEL'S DAY

In 605 BC, the year of Carchemish, Nebuchadnezzar became king. Daniel 1:1 to 6 says that about this time Daniel and other young men of Judah were first taken to Babylon.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The tablet does not name Jehoiachin or Zedekiah. But it tells the same event as 2 Kings 24:10 to 17, from Babylon's side. The same tablet records the battle of Carchemish in 605 BC, Jeremiah 46:2.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

king of Babylon also brought into exile to Babylon all seven thousand men of valor and a thousand craftsmen and metalsmiths—all strong and fit for battle.

17 Then the king of Babylon made Mattaniah, Jehoiachin's uncle, king in his place and changed his name to Zedekiah.

ZEDEKIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 CHRONICLES 36:11–14; JEREMIAH 52:1–3

18 Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years. His mother's name was Hamutal daughter of Jeremiah; she was from Libnah.

19 And Zedekiah did evil in the sight of Yahweh, just as Jehoiakim had done. 20 For because of the anger of Yahweh, all this happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until He finally banished them from His presence.

And Zedekiah also rebelled against the king of Babylon.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Zedekiah rebels, and Babylon burns Jerusalem and the temple. But the book ends with a small light: King Jehoiachin is let out of prison and eats at the king's table.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR BESIEGES JERUSALEM // 2 CHRONICLES 36:15–21; JEREMIAH 39:1–10

1 So in the ninth year of Zedekiah's reign, on the tenth day of the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon marched against Jerusalem with his entire army. They encamped outside the city and built a siege wall all around it. 2 And the city was kept under siege until King Zedekiah's eleventh year.

3 By the ninth day of the fourth month, the famine in the city was so severe that the people of the land had no food. 4 Then the city was breached; and though the Chaldeans had surrounded the city, all the men of war fled by night by way of the gate between the two walls near the king's garden.

They headed toward the Arabah, 5 but the army of the Chaldeans pursued the king and overtook him in the plains of Jericho, and his whole army deserted him. 6 The Chaldeans seized the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah, where they pronounced judgment on him. 7 And they slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes. Then they put out his eyes, bound him with bronze shackles, and took him to Babylon.

THE TEMPLE DESTROYED // JEREMIAH 52:12–23

8 On the seventh day of the fifth month, in the nineteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign over Babylon, Nebuzaradan captain of the guard, a servant of the king of Babylon, entered Jerusalem. 9 He burned down the house of Yahweh, the royal palace, and all the houses of Jerusalem—every significant building. 10 And the whole army of the Chaldeans under the captain of the guard broke down the walls around Jerusalem.

11 Then Nebuzaradan captain of the guard carried into exile the people who remained in the city, along with the deserters who had defected to the king of Babylon and the rest of the population. 12 But the captain of the guard left behind some of the poorest of the land to tend the vineyards and fields.

13 Moreover, the Chaldeans broke up the bronze pillars and stands and the bronze

- **2KI 24:15 [FULFILLS]** Coniah and his mother would be hurled into a foreign land and die there ← JER 22:24-26 p.1179
- **2KI 24:20 [FULFILLS]** The king who broke his oath to Babylon would die in Babylon ← EZK 17:16 p.1270
- **2KI 25:1 [FULFILLS]** Yahweh will bring a nation against you from afar, from the ends of the earth, as swift as the eagle flies, whose language you shall not understand; a nation of fierce countenance and 4 more ← DT 28:49-52; IS 3:25-26; EZK 4:1-3; EZK 21:21-22; EZK 24:1-2 p.321
- **2KI 25:3 [FULFILLS]** A third would die of plague and famine, a third by sword, a third scattered ← EZK 5:12 p.1255
- **2KI 25:4 [FULFILLS]** A day of trampling and broken walls would come on Jerusalem ← IS 22:5 · MEDIUM p.1085
- **2KI 25:4 [FULFILLS]** The prince would leave at dusk through a hole in the wall with his face covered ← EZK 12:12 p.1263
- **2KI 25:6 [FULFILLS]** Zedekiah and the survivors would be handed over to Nebuchadnezzar ← JER 21:7 p.1177
- **2KI 25:7 [FULFILLS]** Zedekiah would be brought to Babylon but not see it (his eyes blinded) ← EZK 12:13 p.1263
- **2KI 25:8 [FULFILLS]** God would raise up the Chaldeans (Babylonians) to punish Judah ← HAB 1:5-6 p.1456
- **2KI 25:9 [FULFILLS]** Israel's cities and sanctuaries would be laid waste if they disobeyed and 10 more ← LEV 26:31-32; 1KI 9:7-8; 2KI 22:16-17; 2KI 23:27; JER 7:14; JER 13:9-10; JER 19:10-11; JER 37:7-8; AMOS 2:5; MIC 3:12; ZEPH 1:13 p.217
- **2KI 25:11 [FULFILLS]** Israel's eventual idolatry would lead to exile and scattering and 4 more ← DT 4:25-28; IS 5:13; IS 6:11-12; JER 20:4-6; MIC 4:10 p.289

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Sea in the house of Yahweh, and they carried the bronze to Babylon. 14 They also took away the pots, shovels, wick trimmers, dishes, and all the articles of bronze used in the temple service. 15 The captain of the guard also took away the censers and sprinkling bowls—anything made of pure gold or fine silver.

16 As for the two pillars, the Sea, and the movable stands that Solomon had made for the house of Yahweh, the weight of the bronze from all these articles was beyond measure. 17 Each pillar was 27 feet tall. The bronze capital atop one pillar was 4½ feet high, with a network of bronze pomegranates all around. The second pillar, with its network, was similar.

CAPTIVES CARRIED TO BABYLON // JEREMIAH 52:24–30

18 The captain of the guard also took away Seraiah the chief priest, Zephaniah the priest of second rank, and the three doorkeepers. 19 Of those still in the city, he took a court official who had been appointed over the men of war, as well as five royal advisors. He also took the scribe of the captain of the army, who had enlisted the people of the land, and sixty men who were found in the city.

20 Nebuzaradan captain of the guard took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah. 21 There at Riblah in the land of Hamath, the king of Babylon struck them down and put them to death. So Judah was taken into exile, away from its own land.

GEDALIAH GOVERNS IN JUDAH // JEREMIAH 40:1–16

22 Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, over the people he had left behind in the land of Judah.

23 When all the commanders of the armies and their men heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah as governor, they came to Gedaliah at Mizpah—Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan son of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah son of the Maacathite, as well as their men. 24 And Gedaliah took an oath before them and their men, assuring them, "Do not be afraid of the servants of the Chaldeans. Live in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will be well with you."

THE MURDER OF GEDALIAH // JEREMIAH 41:1–10

25 In the seventh month, however, Ishmael son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, who was a member of the royal family, came with ten men and struck down and killed Gedaliah, along with the Judeans and Chaldeans who were with him at Mizpah. 26 Then all the people small and great, together with the commanders of the army, arose and fled to Egypt for fear of the Chaldeans.

JEHOIACHIN RELEASED FROM PRISON // JEREMIAH 52:31–34

27 On the twenty-seventh day of the twelfth month of the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Judah's King Jehoiachin, in the year Evil-merodach became king of Babylon, he released King Jehoiachin of Judah from prison. 28 And he spoke kindly to Jehoiachin and set his throne above the thrones of the other kings who were with him in Babylon.

29 So Jehoiachin changed out of his prison clothes, and he dined regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life. 30 And the king provided Jehoiachin a daily portion for the rest of his life.

- **2KI 25:13 [FULFILLS]** The temple articles would be carried to Babylon and later brought back ← JER 27:21-22 p.1186
- **2KI 25:13 [FULFILLS]** The wealth of Jerusalem would be plundered and its houses laid waste ← ZEPH 1:13 p.1469
- **2KI 25:17 [TEXT]** 4½ OR 7½ FEET? 1 Kings 7:16 says 7½. A copy may have slipped.
- **2KI 25:21 [FULFILLS]** Israel's eventual idolatry would lead to exile and scattering and 3 more ← DT 4:25-28; 1KI 9:7-8; 2KI 23:27; IS 6:11-12 p.289
- **2KI 25:21 [FORESHADOW]** Judah was taken into exile away from its land, a pattern of being scattered and brought back → Many Christians see this in the Jewish return to the land in 1948; others read it differently. · MEDIUM
- **2KI 25:27 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Evil merodach is Amel Marduk, king of Babylon, named in Babylonian records and on a vase found at Susa
- **2KI 25:27 [NOTE]** EVIL MERODACH is Amel Marduk, man of Marduk. It has nothing to do with the English word evil.
- **2KI 25:29 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Jehoiachin Ration Tablets → FIELD NOTES p.662

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE JEHOIACHIN RATION TABLETS

2 KINGS 25:27 TO 30 · 24:12 TO 15 · JEREMIAH 52:31 TO 34



A clay tablet from Babylon that lists rations and names Jehoiachin, king of Judah. Vorderasiatisches Museum, Berlin. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Clay tablets from the royal storerooms of Babylon that list how much oil was given out to people who lived at the king's court. They name Jehoiachin, king of the land of Judah, and his five sons.

HOW OLD IT IS

One tablet is dated to Nebuchadnezzar's thirteenth year, 592 BC, about five years after Jehoiachin was taken to Babylon.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In Babylon, in Iraq, by Robert Koldewey's German team, which dug there from 1899 to 1917. They were found near the Ishtar Gate and first published by Ernst Weidner in 1939. They are in Berlin.

THE BIBLE AND THE TABLETS

2 Kings 25:29 to 30 says that 37 years after Jehoiachin was taken away, the new king Evil merodach let him out of prison, and he ate at the king's table and got a daily portion for the rest of his life.

A KING WITH SONS

The tablets list Jehoiachin's sons. Jeremiah said none of his descendants would prosper on David's throne, Jeremiah 22:30, and none of his sons ever ruled. Yet his line went on. Matthew 1:12 names his son Shealtiel and grandson Zerubbabel in Jesus' family line.

HIS NAME ON THE CLAY

The tablets spell his name Yaukin, king of the land of Yahud, which is Judah. Other lines list men from Ashkelon, Tyre, Egypt and the Greek coast, prisoners and workers who also got food from Babylon's palace.

WHERE KINGS ENDS

2 Kings ends with this scene, and Jeremiah 52:31 to 34 tells it the same way. Jerusalem has fallen and the temple is burned, but a son of David is still alive, eating at the king's table. Readers took it as a sign that God had not forgotten His promise to David.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

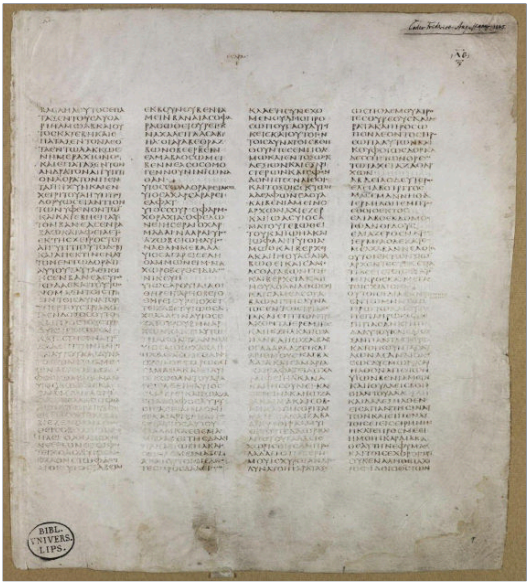
The tablets are older than the release in 25:27, so they do not record it. They show that the captive king of Judah the Bible names really lived at Babylon's court and was fed there.

BOOK 13 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

1 CHRONICLES

The Director's Cut

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Ezra wrote most of Chronicles and Nehemiah finished it. Many scholars think a priest or Levite in Jerusalem, often called the Chronicler, wrote it after the exile from older records the book names, like the records of Samuel, Nathan and Gad, 29:29.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	The family trees run from Adam to the families back from Babylon. The story itself covers about 40 years, from Saul's death, about 1010 BC, to David's death, about 970 BC.
DATE	About 450 BC if Ezra wrote it, as tradition says. Many scholars say about 400 to 250 BC, because the family line in 3:17 to 24 runs several generations past Zerubbabel.
WRITTEN TO	The Jews back home after the exile, rebuilding the temple and wondering if God's promises to David still stood.
KEY VERSE	1 Chronicles 17:14. But I will set him over My house and My kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF 1 CHRONICLES
This page of Codex Sinaiticus, a Greek Bible copied about 330 to 360 AD, holds 1 Chronicles 11:22 to 12:18. Its first column tells how Benaiah killed the huge Egyptian. This leaf is kept in Leipzig, Germany.

No Dead Sea Scroll of 1 Chronicles has been found. The only scroll that may be Chronicles, 4Q118, holds a few lines of 2 Chronicles 28 to 29. You may hear the scrolls hold every book but Esther. That counts 1 and 2 Chronicles as one book, as the Hebrew Bible does. So the oldest copies of 1 Chronicles are Greek: Codex Vaticanus, 300s AD, with the whole book, and Codex Sinaiticus, with 9:27 to

19:17. The oldest complete Hebrew copies are the Aleppo Codex, about 930 AD, and the Leningrad Codex, 1008 AD.

Photo Leipzig University Library, Cod. gr. 1, Codex Sinaiticus Project.

Historical Setting

Most of the story happens in Jerusalem. David is made king at Hebron, takes Jerusalem, and brings the ark from Kiriath jearim. The tabernacle and the old altar stand at Gibeon. The last chapters center on Ornan's threshing floor on the hill north of the City of David, where the temple will be built.

What Was Going Wrong

UNFAITHFUL KINGS AND TRIBES. Saul died because he was unfaithful and asked a medium instead of God 10:13 to 14. The tribes east of the Jordan chased other gods and were carried off to Assyria 5:25 to 26.
THE ARK THE WRONG WAY. David moved God's ark on a new cart instead of on the Levites' shoulders, and Uzzah died 13:9 to 10, 15:13.
DAVID'S CENSUS. Satan stirred up David to count the army, and 70,000 died in the plague that followed 21:1 to 14.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Chronicles is the director's cut of Israel's story. The first nine chapters are family trees, from Adam down to David and on to the families who came back from Babylon. Then the story picks up at Saul's death and stays with David. Chronicles skips the scenes with Bathsheba and Absalom and spends its time on the ark, the music and the temple. God promises David a family line that will rule forever. David cannot build the temple himself, but he buys the land, gathers the gold, organizes the priests and singers, and hands the plans to Solomon. The book ends with David's great prayer, Everything comes from You, and Solomon on the throne.

1 Chronicles at a Glance

CH 1 to 9	**THE FAMILY TREE** From Adam to the families back from Babylon.
CH 10 to 12	**DAVID BECOMES KING** Saul falls, and all Israel comes to David.
CH 13 to 16	**THE ARK COMES HOME** A failed try, then a big parade.
CH 17	**A FOREVER PROMISE** A son of David on the throne forever.
CH 18 to 21	**WARS AND A CENSUS** Victories, then a plague and an altar.
CH 22 to 29	**READY FOR THE TEMPLE** Plans, workers, gold and a new king.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 CHRONICLES 1 TO 3 The family line runs from Adam to David and on to Zerubbabel. Matthew 1 and Luke 3 follow these names to Jesus.

1 CHRONICLES 17:11 TO 14 God promised a son of David whose throne would last forever. The angel told Mary that Jesus would reign over the house of Jacob forever, Luke 1:32 to 33, and Hebrews 1:5 applies I will be His Father to Jesus.

1 CHRONICLES 24:10 David set up the priests' groups. Zechariah served in Abijah's group when the angel told him his son John would prepare the way for Jesus, Luke 1:5.

GOD'S NAMES IN 1 CHRONICLES

Yahweh, again and again, Yahweh of Hosts, 11:9 and 17:24, the God of Israel, the God of our fathers, 12:17, and Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, 29:18. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in 1 Chronicles

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (3)	17:11-13
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (7)	4:43, 5:1-2, 5:18-22, 22:9-10
THE HEART (10)	12:33, 12:38, 16:10, 17:2, 22:19, 28:2, 28:9 and 2 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	6:13
MIRACLES (2)	21:16, 21:26
DEMONIC (8)	5:25, 10:9-10, 10:13-14, 11:23, 14:12, 16:26, 20:4-8 and 1 more
NOTABLE (4)	4:10, 16:34, 21:24, 29:11
GOD SPEAKING (27 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (276 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

ONE BOOK, THE LAST BOOK

In the Hebrew Bible, 1 and 2 Chronicles are one book, Divrei Hayamim, the words of the days. It is the last book in printed Hebrew Bibles and in the Talmud's list, though the two oldest full Hebrew Bibles, the Aleppo and Leningrad codices, put it first in the Writings. Jesus spoke of the blood of Abel to the blood of Zechariah, Luke 11:51. Many think He meant the first and last murders in that order, 2 Chronicles 24:21. The Greek Bible split it in two and called it Paraleipomenon, the things left out. Jerome called it a chronicle of the whole sacred history, and the name Chronicles stuck.

THE DIRECTOR'S CUT

Chronicles leaves out Bathsheba, Absalom and most of Saul, and adds the family trees, the Levites, the singers, the prayer of Jabez and David's plans for the temple. See the Big Question pages Chronicles vs Samuel and Kings, p.682.

How Did It Turn Out?

David died old and full of days, and Solomon sat on the throne with the land bought, the gold gathered and the plans in hand, 29:26 to 28. The story goes on in 2 Chronicles with the temple, and the promise of a son of David on the throne forever came true in Jesus.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

The book opens with the longest family tree in the Bible: Adam, Seth, Enosh, and on and on. Noah's sons fill the world, Abraham has sons, Isaac has sons, and the kings of Edom get their turn too. If you ever wanted to know who Jobab's dad was, this is your chapter.

FROM ADAM TO ABRAHAM // GENESIS 5:1–32; GENESIS 10:1–32; GENESIS 11:10–26

1 Adam, Seth, Enosh,
2 Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared,
3 Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech, Noah.
4 The sons of Noah:
Shem, Ham, and Japheth.
5 The sons of Japheth: Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras.
6 The sons of Gomer: Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah. 7 And the sons of Javan: Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittites, and the Rodanites.
8 The sons of Ham: Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan. 9 The sons of Cush: Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah, and Sabteca. The sons of Raamah: Sheba and Dedan. 10 Cush was the father of Nimrod, who began to be a mighty one on the earth. 11 Mizraim was the father of the Ludites, the Anamites, the Lehabites, the Naphtuhites, 12 the Pathrusites, the Casluhites (from whom the Philistines came), and the Caphtorites. 13 And Canaan was the father of Sidon his firstborn, and of the Hittites, 14 the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites, 15 the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites, 16 the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites.
17 The sons of Shem: Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram. The sons of Aram: Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech. 18 Arphaxad was the father of Shelah, and Shelah was the father of Eber. 19 Two sons were born to Eber: One was named Peleg, because in his days the earth was divided, and his brother was named Joktan.
20 And Joktan was the father of Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, 21 Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, 22 Obal, Abimael, Sheba, 23 Ophir, Havilah, and Jobab. All these were sons of Joktan. 24 So from Shem came Arphaxad, Shelah, 25 Eber, Peleg, Reu, 26 Serug, Nahor, Terah, 27 and Abram (that is, Abraham).

THE DESCENDANTS OF ABRAHAM // GENESIS 25:12–18

28 The sons of Abraham were Isaac and Ishmael. 29 These are their genealogies:
Nebaioth the firstborn of Ishmael, then Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam, 30 Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad, Tema, 31 Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. These were the sons of Ishmael.
32 The sons born to Keturah, Abraham's concubine: Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah.
The sons of Jokshan: Sheba and Dedan.
33 The sons of Midian: Ephah, Epher, Hanoch, Abida, and Eldaah. All of these were Keturah's sons.
34 Abraham was the father of Isaac. The sons of Isaac: Esau and Israel.

THE DESCENDANTS OF ESAU // GENESIS 36:1–19

35 The sons of Esau: Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jalam, and Korah. 36 The sons of Eliphaz: Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz; and by Timna, Amalek. 37 The sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah.

THE DESCENDANTS OF SEIR // GENESIS 36:20–30

38 The sons of Seir:
Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. 39 The sons of Lotan: Hori and Homam. Timna was Lotan's sister. 40 The sons of Shobal: Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam. The sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah. 41 The son of Anah: Dishon.
The sons of Dishon: Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Cheran. 42 The sons

- **1CH 1:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:31-38 p.1653
- **1CH 1:1 [NOTE]** ADAM TO DAVID. The book starts with the first man and walks down the generations to David, the line Jesus came from, Luke 3:38. See the Big Question pages Why So Many Names?, p.667
- **1CH 1:24 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:31-38 p.1653
- **1CH 1:34 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:2-12 p.1550
- **1CH 1:34 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:31-38 p.1653

of Ezer: Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan.
The sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.

THE KINGS OF EDOM // GENESIS 36:31–43

43 These are the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the Israelites:

Bela son of Beor. His city was named Dinhabah.

44 When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place.

45 When Jobab died, Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.

46 When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad, who defeated Midian in the country of Moab, reigned in his place. And the name of his city was Avith.

47 When Hadad died, Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place.

48 When Samlah died, Shaul from Rehoboth on the Euphrates reigned in his place.

49 When Shaul died, Baal-hanan son of Achbor reigned in his place.

50 When Baal-hanan died, Hadad reigned in his place. His city was named Pau, and his wife's name was Mehetabel daughter of Matred, the daughter of Me-zahab.

51 Then Hadad died.

Now the chiefs of Edom were Timna, Alvah, Jetheth, 52 Oholibamah, Elah, Pinon, 53 Kenaz, Teman, Mibzar, 54 Magdiel, and Iram. These were the chiefs of Edom.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY SO MANY NAMES?

Nine Chapters of Family Trees

1 CHRONICLES 1 TO 9 · EZRA 2:59 TO 63 · NEHEMIAH 7:5

THE LONGEST LISTS

Chapters 1 to 9 hold more than 500 names. Some readers skip them. But the writer put them first on purpose.

ADAM TO DAVID

The lists start with Adam, 1:1, and walk down to Abraham, Isaac and Israel. Then they zoom in on Judah, the tribe of the kings, and on David's family, 2:1 to 3:24.

LEVI IN THE MIDDLE

Levi's family, the priests and singers, gets the long middle chapter, 6. The book cares about the temple and the people who served there.

PROOF OF BELONGING

After the exile, family records mattered. Some priests who could not find their names in the records were not allowed to serve, Ezra 2:62. Families needed their records to show who they were and where their land was.

A STORY HIDDEN INSIDE

Short stories hide in the lists: Jabez's prayer, 4:9 to 10, the eastern tribes crying out to God in battle, 5:20, and Reuben losing his birthright, 5:1.

THE QUESTION

Why would God's word spend nine chapters on names?

Every View

MATTHEW 1:1 TO 17 · LUKE 3:23 TO 38 · LUKE 10:20 · REVELATION 21:27

VIEW 1: GOD KEPT HIS PROMISE

The lists show that God kept His word through real families. The line of David did not die in Babylon, 3:17 to 24. The people back from exile could see they were still Abraham's children.

VIEW 2: SOME NAMES ARE PLACES

Some lists name clans and towns too. Salma was the father of Bethlehem, 2:51, which likely means he founded it or led it. So father of can mean leader of a town, not only a parent.

VIEW 3: THERE ARE GAPS

Family lists in the Bible often skip generations. Matthew skipped some kings, Matthew 1:8 and 1:11. So most scholars do not add up the names to date the world, though some do.

THE LINE TO JESUS

Matthew 1 and Luke 3 follow these same names, from Adam and Abraham to David, and on to Jesus.

GOD KNOWS NAMES

Jesus said, Rejoice that your names are written in heaven, Luke 10:20. The lists show that God knows people by name.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The names tie the people back from Babylon to Adam, Abraham and David, and point ahead to the Son of David.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Now the camera zooms in on Israel's twelve sons, and then on Judah. The line runs from Judah through Perez, Boaz and Jesse, all the way to David, the seventh son. Along the way we meet Caleb's big family and a man who married off his daughter to his Egyptian servant.

THE SONS OF ISRAEL // GENESIS 35:21–26; GENESIS 38:1–30

1 These were the sons of Israel:

Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar,
Zebulun, 2 Dan, Joseph, Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.

3 The sons of Judah: Er, Onan, and Shelah. These three were born to him by Bathshua the Canaanite. Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of Yahweh. So Yahweh put him to death. 4 Tamar, Judah's daughter-in-law, bore to him Perez and Zerah. Judah had five sons in all.

5 The sons of Perez: Hezron and Hamul.

6 The sons of Zerah: Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Calcol, and Dara—five in all.

7 The son of Carmi: Achar, who brought trouble upon Israel by violating the ban on devoted things.

8 The son of Ethan: Azariah.

9 The sons who were born to Hezron: Jerahmeel, Ram, and Caleb.

10 Ram was the father of Amminadab, and Amminadab was the father of Nahshon, a leader of the descendants of Judah.

11 Nahshon was the father of Salmon, and Salmon was the father of Boaz.

12 Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed was the father of Jesse.

13 Jesse was the father of Eliab his firstborn; Abinadab was born second, Shimea third, 14 Nethanel fourth, Raddai fifth, 15 Ozem sixth, and David seventh. 16 Their sisters were Zeruiah and Abigail. And the three sons of Zeruiah were Abishai, Joab, and Asahel. 17 Abigail was the mother of Amasa, whose father was Jether the Ishmaelite.

18 Caleb son of Hezron had children by his wife Azubah and by Jerioth. These were the sons of Azubah: Jesher, Shobab, and Ardon. 19 When Azubah died, Caleb married Ephrath, who bore to him Hur. 20 Hur was the father of Uri, and Uri was the father of Bezalel.

21 Later, Hezron slept with the daughter of Machir the father of Gilead. He had married her when he was sixty years old, and she bore to him Segub. 22 Segub was the father of Jair, who had twenty-three cities in the land of Gilead. 23 But Geshur and Aram captured Havvoth-jair, along with Kenath and its sixty surrounding villages. All these were descendants of Machir the father of Gilead.

24 After Hezron died in Caleb-ephrathah, his wife Abijah bore to him Ashhur the father of Tekoa.

25 The sons of Jerahmeel the firstborn of Hezron: Ram his firstborn, Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah. 26 Jerahmeel had another wife named Atarah, who was the mother of Onam.

27 The sons of Ram the firstborn of Jerahmeel: Maaz, Jamin, and Eker.

28 The sons of Onam: Shammai and Jada.

The sons of Shammai: Nadab and Abishur. 29 Abishur's wife was named Abihail, and she bore to him Ahban and Molid.

30 The sons of Nadab: Seled and Appaim. Seled died without children.

31 The son of Appaim: Ishi.

The son of Ishi: Sheshan.

The son of Sheshan: Ahlai.

32 The sons of Jada the brother of Shammai: Jether and Jonathan. Jether died without children.

33 The sons of Jonathan: Peleth and Zaza.

These were the descendants of Jerahmeel.

34 Sheshan had no sons, but only daughters. He also had an Egyptian servant

- **1CH 2:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:2-12 p.1550
- **1CH 2:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:31-38 p.1653
- **1CH 2:15 [TEXT]** SEVENTH OR EIGHTH? Here David is Jesse's seventh son. 1 Samuel 16:10 to 11 and 17:12 say Jesse had eight sons. Many think one son died young without children, so he is not listed here.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

named Jarha. 35 Sheshan gave his daughter in marriage to his servant Jarha, and she bore to him Attai.

36 Attai was the father of Nathan, Nathan was the father of Zabad, 37 Zabad was the father of Ephlal, Ephlal was the father of Obed, 38 Obed was the father of Jehu, Jehu was the father of Azariah, 39 Azariah was the father of Helez, Helez was the father of Elasah, 40 Elasah was the father of Sismai, Sismai was the father of Shallum, 41 Shallum was the father of Jekamiah, and Jekamiah was the father of Elishama.

42 The sons of Caleb the brother of Jerahmeel: Mesha his firstborn, who was the father of Ziph, and Mareshah his second son, who was the father of Hebron.

43 The sons of Hebron: Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema. 44 Shema was the father of Raham the father of Jorkeam, and Rekem was the father of Shammai. 45 The son of Shammai was Maon, and Maon was the father of Beth-zur.

46 Caleb's concubine Ephah was the mother of Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran was the father of Gazez.

47 The sons of Jahdai: Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph.

48 Caleb's concubine Maacah was the mother of Sheber and Tirhanah. 49 She was also the mother of Shaaph father of Madmannah, and of Sheva father of Machbenah and Gibea. Caleb's daughter was Acsah. 50 These were the descendants of Caleb.

The sons of Hur the firstborn of Ephrathah: Shobal the father of Kiriath-jearim, 51 Salma the father of Bethlehem, and Hareph the father of Beth-gader.

52 These were the descendants of Shobal the father of Kiriath-jearim: Haroeh, half the Manahathites, 53 and the clans of Kiriath-jearim—the Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites, and Mishraites. From these descended the Zorathites and Eshtaolites.

54 The descendants of Salma: Bethlehem, the Netophathites, Atroth-beth-joab, half the Manahathites, the Zorites, 55 and the clans of the scribes who lived at Jabez—the Tirathites, Shimeathites, and Sucathites. These are the Kenites who came from Hammath, the father of the house of Rechab.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

David's sons are listed, six born in Hebron and the rest in Jerusalem, including Solomon. Then come the kings of Judah, from Solomon to Josiah, and the royal family carried off to Babylon. The line keeps going after the exile through Zerubbabel. God's promise to David did not die in Babylon.

THE DESCENDANTS OF DAVID // 2 SAMUEL 3:1–5

1 These were the sons of David who were born to him in Hebron:

The firstborn was Amnon by Ahinoam of Jezreel;

the second was Daniel by Abigail of Carmel;

2 the third was Absalom the son of Maacah daughter of King Talmai of Geshur;

the fourth was Adonijah the son of Haggith;

3 the fifth was Shephatiah by Abital;

and the sixth was Ithream by his wife Eglah.

4 These six sons were born to David in Hebron, where he reigned seven years and six months.

And David reigned in Jerusalem thirty-three years, 5 and these sons were born to him in Jerusalem:

Shimea, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon. These four were born to him by Bathsheba daughter of Ammiel.

6 David's other sons were Ibhar, Elishua, Eliphelet, 7 Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia, 8 Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet—nine in all.

9 These were all the sons of David, besides the sons by his concubines. And Tamar was their sister.

- **1CH 3:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 1:2-12 p.1550
- **1CH 3:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:31-38 p.1653
- **1CH 3:5 [NOTE]** NATHAN AND SOLOMON. Matthew traces Jesus' family through Solomon, Matthew 1:6, and Luke traces it through Nathan, Luke 3:31. Both were sons of David and Bathsheba.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE DESCENDANTS OF SOLOMON

10 Solomon's son was Rehoboam: Abijah
was his son, Asa his son, Jehoshaphat his
son, 11 Joram his son, Ahaziah his son,
Joash his son, 12 Amaziah his son, Azariah
his son, Jotham his son, 13 Ahaz his son,
Hezekiah his son, Manasseh his son, 14
Amon his son, and Josiah his son.

15 The sons of Josiah: Johanan was the
firstborn, Jehoiakim the second, Zedekiah
the third, and Shallum the fourth.

16 The successors of Jehoiakim: Jeconiah
his son, and Zedekiah.

THE ROYAL LINE AFTER THE EXILE

17 The descendants of Jeconiah the cap-
tive: Shealtiel his son, 18 Malchiram, Peda-
iah, Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and
Nedabiah.

19 The sons of Pedaiah: Zerubbabel and
Shimei.

The children of Zerubbabel: Meshullam
and Hananiah, their sister Shelomith, 20
and five others: Hashubah, Ohel,
Berechiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab-hesed.

21 The descendants of Hananiah: Pelatiah,
Jeshaiah, and the sons of Rephaiah, of
Arnan, of Obadiah, and of Shecaniah.

22 The six descendants of Shecaniah were
Shemaiah and his sons: Hattush, Igal,
Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat.

23 The sons of Neariah: Elioenai, Hizkiah,
and Azrikam—three in all.

24 The sons of Elioenai: Hodaviah, Eliashib,
Pelaiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and
Anani—seven in all.

- **1CH 3:16 [NOTE]** JECONIAH is King Jehoiachin, 2 Kings 24:6. Matthew skips some kings in this list, like Ahaziah, Joash, Amaziah and Jehoiakim, many think to make three groups of fourteen, Matthew 1:17. They are still in Jesus' family line, so they are underlined here.
- **1CH 3:19 [TEXT]** WHOSE SON? Here Zerubbabel is the son of Pedaiah. Ezra 3:2, Haggai 1:1 and Matthew 1:12 call him the son of Shealtiel. Some think Pedaiah raised his brother Shealtiel's son, or married his widow to carry on his name, Deuteronomy 25:5 to 6. Some copies of the Greek say Shealtiel here.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE CHRONICLES?

The Traditional View

1 CHRONICLES 3:17 TO 24 · 29:29 · 2 CHRONICLES 36:22 TO 23 · EZRA 1:1 TO 3

THE BOOK DOES NOT SAY

Chronicles never names its writer. It does name its sources, like the records of Samuel the seer, Nathan the prophet and Gad the seer, 29:29, and the Book of the Kings of Israel, 9:1.

THE JEWISH TRADITION

The Talmud says Ezra wrote his own book and the family lists of Chronicles up to his time. Ezra was a priest and a skilled scribe in the Law of Moses, Ezra 7:6.

THE SAME ENDING AND BEGINNING

2 Chronicles ends with Cyrus telling the Jews to go home and build the temple, 36:22 to 23. Ezra begins with the same words, Ezra 1:1 to 3. Many see this as a sign the books came from the same hand or the same circle.

THE LAST WORD

In most printed Hebrew Bibles, Chronicles comes last, so the Hebrew Bible ends with Cyrus telling God's people, may he go up, 2 Chronicles 36:23.

WHO IT WAS WRITTEN FOR

The people back from Babylon, rebuilding the temple. The book shows them that God's promise to David and the worship David set up still mattered.

THE QUESTION

Did Ezra write Chronicles, or someone later?

Every View

1 CHRONICLES 9:1 · 29:7 · 2 CHRONICLES 9:29 · 12:15 · EZRA 7:6

VIEW 1: EZRA

Tradition says Ezra, about 450 BC. Supporters point to the priestly interests, the same ending and beginning, and the style shared with Ezra and Nehemiah.

VIEW 2: A LATER CHRONICLER

Many scholars say an unnamed priest or Levite wrote it about 400 to 250 BC. Their main reason is 3:17 to 24, where Zerubbabel's line runs on for several more generations. Zerubbabel led the people home about 538 to 520 BC.

NOTABLE

THE GOLD COINS CLUE
29:7 counts gifts in Persian gold coins first made about 515 BC. So the writer lived after that, in the Persian time or later. Everyone agrees this is not a word from David's day.

VIEW 3: TWO STAGES
Some think the book was written in Ezra's day and the last names in chapter 3 were added later, as the family records were kept up.

THE SOURCES
Most think the writer used Samuel and Kings, and often copies them word for word. He names more than a dozen other records, like the records of Nathan, Gad, Iddo and Shemaiah, which are now lost, 2 Chronicles 9:29 and 12:15.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Chronicles was written after the exile, by someone who loved the temple and its worship, to give hope to God's people back home.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS
More of Judah's clans. In the middle of the list a man named Jabez prays a short, bold prayer, and God answers it. Then come Simeon's families, who find good pasture and, in Hezekiah's day, finish off the last of the Amalekites.

THE DESCENDANTS OF JUDAH

1 The descendants of Judah:

Perez, Hezron, Carmi, Hur, and Shobal.

2 Reaiah son of Shobal was the father of Jahath, and Jahath was the father of Ahumai and Lahad. These were the clans of the Zorathites.

3 These were the sons of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash. And their sister was named Hazzelelponi. 4 Penuel was the father of Gedor, and Ezer was the father of Hushah.

These were the descendants of Hur, the firstborn of Ephrathah and the father of Bethlehem.

5 Ashhur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah. 6 Naarah bore to him Ahuzzam, Hepher, Temeni, and Haashtari. These were the descendants of Naarah. 7 The sons of Helah were Zereth, Zohar, Ethnan, 8 and Koz, who was the father of Anub and Zobebah and of the clans of Aharhel son of Harum.

THE PRAYER OF JABEZ

9 Now Jabez was more honorable than his brothers. His mother had named him Jabez, saying, "Because I bore him in pain."

10 And Jabez called out to the God of Israel, "If only You would bless me and enlarge my territory! May Your hand be with me and keep me from harm, so that I will be free from pain."

And God granted the request of Jabez.

MORE DESCENDANTS OF JUDAH

11 Chelub the brother of Shuhah was the father of Mehir, who was the father of Eshton. 12 Eshton was the father of Bethrapha, of Paseah, and of Tehinnah the father of Ir-nahash. These were the men of Recah.

13 The sons of Kenaz: Othniel and Seraiah.

The sons of Othniel: Hathath and Meonothai.

14 Meonothai was the father of Ophrah,
and Seraiah was the father of Joab,
the father of those living in Ge-harashim, which was given this name because its people were craftsmen.

15 The sons of Caleb son of Jephunneh: Iru, Elah, and Naam.

The son of Elah: Kenaz.

16 The sons of Jehallelel: Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel.

17 The sons of Ezrah: Jether, Mered, Epher, and Jalon. And Mered's wife Bithiah gave birth to Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah the father of Eshtemoa. 18 These were the children of Pharaoh's daughter Bithiah. Mered also took a Judean wife, who gave birth to Jered the father of Gedor, Heber

1CH 4:9 [NOTE] JABEZ sounds like the Hebrew word for pain. See the Big Question pages The Prayer of Jabez, p.672.
1CH 4:10 [NOTABLE] His name sounds like pain in Hebrew, but he asked God to bless him and keep him from harm, and God answered. A short prayer in a long list of names.

the father of Soco, and Jekuthiel the father of Zanoah.

19 The sons of Hodiah's wife, the sister of Naham, were the fathers of Keilah the Garmite and of Eshtemoa the Maacathite.

20 The sons of Shimon: Amnon, Rinnah, Ben-hanan, and Tilon.

The descendants of Ishi: Zoheth and Ben-zoheth.

21 The sons of Shelah son of Judah: Er the father of Lecah, Laadah the father of Mareshah and the clans of the linen workers at Beth-ashbea, 22 Jokim, the men of Cozeba, and Joash and Saraph, who ruled in Moab and Jashubi-lehem. (These names are from ancient records.) 23 These were the potters who lived at Netaim and Gederah. They lived there in the service of the king.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE PRAYER OF JABEZ

What He Prayed

1 CHRONICLES 4:9 TO 10 · 2:55 · MATTHEW 7:7 TO 11

A NAME THAT SOUNDED LIKE PAIN

His mother named him Jabez, saying, Because I bore him in pain, 4:9. In Hebrew, Jabez sounds like the word for pain.

MORE HONORABLE

Jabez was more honorable than his brothers. The Bible does not say why.

THE PRAYER

Jabez called out to the God of Israel: If only You would bless me and enlarge my territory! May Your hand be with me and keep me from harm, so that I will be free from pain. And God granted his request, 4:10.

FOUR ASKS

Bless me. Give me more land. Be with me. Keep me from harm and pain. It is short and bold.

IN THE MIDDLE OF A LIST

The prayer sits in the middle of Judah's family names, 4:1 to 23. The writer stops the list to tell this one story, then goes right back to the names.

THE BESTSELLER

In 2000 Bruce Wilkinson's little book The Prayer of Jabez sold millions of copies. It urged people to pray this prayer every day.

THE QUESTION

Is the prayer of Jabez a model for us, or one man's story?

Every View

JAMES 4:2 TO 3 · MATTHEW 6:9 TO 13 · JUDGES 3:9 TO 11

VIEW 1: PRAY BIG

Wilkinson and many others say God loves to answer bold prayers. James 4:2 says, You do not have because you do not ask. Jabez asked, and God answered.

VIEW 2: NOT A MAGIC FORMULA

Many pastors warned that the prayer was being used like a lucky charm to get money and success. They point to James 4:3, You ask with wrong motives, and say the prayer Jesus taught starts with God's name and God's will, Matthew 6:9 to 10.

VIEW 3: HIS TERRITORY WAS LAND

Some scholars say Jabez lived when Judah's families were settling their land. Territory meant real fields and borders, and pain may be a play on his name. They see a man asking God to undo the bad start his name gave him.

A JEWISH TRADITION

2:55 names a town called Jabez where families of scribes lived. Some Jewish teachers in the Talmud thought Jabez was Othniel, Israel's first judge, and that he prayed for students to teach.

WHAT IS NOT IN IT

The Bible does not say that everyone who repeats it will get the same answer.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God heard a man with a hard name who called on Him, and He answered. Anyone can bring their needs to God.

THE DESCENDANTS OF SIMEON

24 The descendants of Simeon:

Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul.

25 The sons of Shaul: Shallum, Mibsam, and Mishma.

26 The sons of Mishma: Hammuel, Zaccur, and Shimei.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

27 Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters, but his brothers did not have many
children, so their whole clan did not become as numerous as the sons of Judah.
28 They lived in Beersheba, Moladah,
Hazar-shual, 29 Bilhah, Ezem, Tolad, 30
Bethuel, Hormah, Ziklag, 31 Beth-marcaboth, Hazar-susim, Beth-biri, and
Shaaraim. These were their cities until the
reign of David. 32 And their villages were
Etam, Ain, Rimmon, Tochen, and
Ashan—five towns— 33 and all their surrounding villages as far as Baal. These
were their settlements, and they kept a
genealogical record:

34 Meshobab, Jamlech, Joshah son of
Amaziah, 35 Joel, Jehu son of
Joshibiah (son of Seraiah, son of
Asiel), 36 Elioenai, Jaakobah,
Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel,
Benaiah, 37 and Ziza son of Shiphi
(son of Allon, son of Jedaiah, son of
Shimri, son of Shemaiah).

38 These men listed by name were the
leaders of their clans. Their families increased greatly, 39 and they journeyed to
the entrance of Gedor, to the east side of
the valley, in search of pasture for their
flocks. 40 There they found rich, good pasture, and the land was spacious, peaceful,
and quiet; for some Hamites had lived
there formerly.

41 These who were noted by name came in
the days of Hezekiah king of Judah. They
attacked the Hamites in their dwellings as
well as the Meunites who were there, devoting them to destruction even to this
day. Then they settled in their place, because there was pasture for their flocks.
42 And five hundred of these Simeonites
led by Pelatiah, Neariah, Rephaiah, and
Uzziel, the sons of Ishi, went to Mount
Seir 43 and struck down the remnant of the
Amalekites who had escaped. And they
have lived there to this day.

1CH 4:43 [FULFILLS] God promised Amalek would be utterly blotted out from under heaven and 2 more ← EX 17:14; EX 17:16; NUM 24:20 p.145

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Reuben was the firstborn, but he lost the birthright because of what he did with his father's concubine. Reuben, Gad and half of Manasseh live east of the Jordan. They cry out to God in battle and win big. Later they chase other gods, and Assyria carries them away.

THE DESCENDANTS OF REUBEN

1 These were the sons of Reuben the firstborn of Israel. Though he was the firstborn, his birthright was given to the sons
of Joseph son of Israel, because Reuben
defiled his father's bed. So he is not reckoned according to birthright. 2 And though
Judah prevailed over his brothers and a
ruler came from him, the birthright belonged to Joseph. 3 The sons of Reuben,
the firstborn of Israel:

Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi.

4 The descendants of Joel: Shemaiah his
son, Gog his son, Shimei his son, 5 Micah
his son, Reaiah his son, Baal his son, 6 and
Beerah his son, whom Tiglath-pileser king
of Assyria carried into exile.

Beerah was a leader of the Reubenites. 7
His relatives by their clans are recorded in
their genealogy: Jeiel the chief,
Zechariah, 8 and Bela son of Azaz, the son
of Shema, the son of Joel. They settled in
Aroer and as far as Nebo and Baal-meon.
9 They also settled in the east as far as the
edge of the desert that extends to the Euphrates River, because their livestock had
increased in the land of Gilead. 10 During
the days of Saul they waged war against
the Hagrites, who were defeated at their
hands, and they occupied the dwellings of
the Hagrites throughout the region east of
Gilead.

THE DESCENDANTS OF GAD

11 The descendants of Gad lived next to
the Reubenites in the land of Bashan, as
far as Salecah:

1CH 5:1 [FULFILLS] Reuben ← GEN 49:3-4 p.114
1CH 5:1 [NOTE] REUBEN slept with his father's concubine Bilhah, Genesis 35:22, so the firstborn's double share went to Joseph's sons instead, Genesis 48:5.
1CH 5:2 [FULFILLS] Judah's brothers would bow to him and he would rule over his enemies ← GEN 49:8 p.114

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC

12 Joel was the chief, Shapham the second, then Jaanai and Shaphat, who lived in Bashan.

13 Their kinsmen by families were Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jacan, Zia, and Eber—seven in all. 14 These were the sons of Abihail son of Huri, the son of Jaroah, the son of Gilead, the son of Michael, the son of Jeshishai, the son of Jahdo, the son of Buz. 15 Ahi son of Abdiel, the son of Guni, was head of their family.

16 They lived in Gilead, in Bashan and its towns, and throughout the pasturelands of Sharon. 17 All of them were recorded in the genealogies during the reigns of Jotham king of Judah and Jeroboam king of Israel.

18 The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh had 44,760 warriors—valiant men who carried the shield and sword, drew the bow, and were trained for battle. 19 They waged war against the Hagrites, as well as Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab.

20 And because they cried out to God in battle, they were helped against their enemies, and the Hagrites and all their allies were delivered into their hands. Because they put their trust in God, He answered their prayers. 21 They seized the livestock of the Hagrites—50,000 camels, 250,000 sheep, and 2,000 donkeys. They also took 100,000 captives, 22 and many others fell slain, because the battle belonged to God. And they occupied the land until the exile.

THE HALF-TRIBE OF MANASSEH

23 Now the people of the half-tribe of Manasseh were numerous. They settled in the land from Bashan to Baal-hermon (that is, Senir, also known as Mount Hermon). 24 These were the heads of their families:

Epher, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, Jeremiah, Hodaviah, and Jahdiel.

They were mighty men of valor, famous men, and heads of their families. 25 But they were unfaithful to the God of their fathers, and they prostituted themselves with the gods of the peoples of the land, whom God had destroyed before them.

26 So the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria (that is, Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria) to take the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh into exile. And he brought them to Halah, Habor, Hara, and the river of Gozan, where they remain to this day.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Levi's family, the priests and the temple workers. The high priests are listed from Aaron to the one taken to Babylon. Then come the singers David put in charge of music, Heman, Asaph and Ethan, and the towns given to the Levites all over Israel.

THE DESCENDANTS OF LEVI

1 The sons of Levi:

Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

2 The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel.

3 The children of Amram: Aaron, Moses, and Miriam.

The sons of Aaron: Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. 4 Eleazar was the father of Phinehas, Phinehas was the father of Abishua, 5 Abishua was the father of Bukki, Bukki was the father of Uzzi, 6 Uzzi was the father of Zerahiah, Zerahiah was the father of Meraioth, 7 Meraioth was the father of Amariah, Amariah was the father of Ahitub, 8 Ahitub was the father of Zadok, Zadok was the father of Ahimaaz, 9 Ahimaaz was the father of Azariah, Azariah was the father of Johanan, 10 Johanan was the father of Azariah, who served as priest in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem, 11 Azariah was the father of Amariah, Amariah was the father of Ahitub, 12 Ahitub was the father of Zadok, Zadok was the father of Shallum, 13 Shallum was the father of Hilkiah, Hilkiah was the father of Azariah, 14

1CH 5:18 [FULFILLS] Gad ← GEN 49:19 · MEDIUM p.115

1CH 5:25 [DEMONIC] Eastern tribes chase the gods of the land

1CH 5:26 [NOTE] PUL is Tiglath pileser III. See the Menahem's Tribute Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.631.

1CH 6:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A clay seal of Azariah son of Hilkiah from just before 586 BC, maybe this priestly family → FIELD NOTES p.675

Azariah was the father of Seraiah, and
Seraiah was the father of Jehozadak.
15 Jehozadak went into captivity when
Yahweh sent Judah and Jerusalem into
exile by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.
16 The sons of Levi:
Gershom, Kohath, and Merari.
17 These are the names of the sons of Ger-
shom: Libni and Shimei.
18 The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, He-
bron, and Uzziel.
19 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi.
These are the clans of the Levites listed
according to their fathers:
20 Of Gershom: Libni his son, Jahath his
son, Zimmah his son, 21 Joah his son, Iddo
his son, Zerah his son, and Jeatherai his
son.
22 The descendants of Kohath: Ammi-
nadab his son, Korah his son, Assir his
son, 23 Elkanah his son, Ebiasaph his son,
Assir his son, 24 Tahath his son, Uriel his
son, Uzziah his son, and Shaul his son.
25 The descendants of Elkanah: Amasai,
Ahimoth, 26 Elkanah his son, Zophai his
son, Nahath his son, 27 Eliab his son, Jero-
ham his son, and Elkanah his son.
28 The sons of Samuel: Joel his firstborn
and Abijah his second son.
29 The descendants of Merari: Mahli, Libni
his son, Shimei his son, Uzzah his son, 30
Shimea his son, Haggiah his son, and
Asaiah his son.

■ **1CH 6:13 [FIELD NOTES]** A clay seal with the name Azariah son of Hilkiah was found in Jerusalem. See The Seal of Azariah Field Notes page, p.675.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE SEAL OF AZARIAH

1 CHRONICLES 6:13 · 9:11 · 2 KINGS 22:4 TO 14 · EZRA 7:1



The House of the Bullae in the City of David, Jerusalem, where the seal was found. The seal itself is not shown. The metal rods and the concrete wall are modern. Photo Deror avi, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A bulla, a small lump of clay pressed with a seal to close a rolled up document. It reads, Belonging to Azaryahu son of Hilqiyahu, the Hebrew spelling of Azariah son of Hilkiah.

HOW OLD IT IS

Just before 586 BC. It lay in a layer of ash from the fire when Babylon burned Jerusalem.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the City of David, Jerusalem, in a room now called the House of the Bullae, during Yigal Shiloh's dig of 1978 to 1985. It was one of 51 bullae found together. The fire burned the papyrus documents but baked the clay seals hard, so they lasted.

WHO WAS AZARIAH?

1 Chronicles 6:13 says Hilkiah was the father of Azariah. Hilkiah was the high priest who found the Book of the Law in Josiah's day, 2 Kings 22:8. Azariah was the father of Seraiah, 6:14. Seraiah's grandson Seraiah was the last high priest before the exile, 2 Kings 25:18, and Ezra came from this family, Ezra 7:1.

ANOTHER NAME IN THE SAME ROOM

Another bulla from the same room reads Gemaryahu son of Shaphan. Jeremiah 36:10 names Gemariah son of Shaphan, a royal scribe in the same years.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Both names were very common. The Bible has 8 Hilkiahs and 29 Azariahs, and the seal does not say priest. So

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

many think this was the high priest's son, but it is likely, not certain.

THE TEMPLE MUSICIANS

31 These are the men David put in charge
of the music in the house of Yahweh after
the ark rested there. 32 They ministered
with song before the tabernacle, the Tent
of Meeting, until Solomon built the house
of Yahweh in Jerusalem. And they per-
formed their duties according to the regu-
lations given them. 33 These are the men
who served, together with their sons.

From the Kohathites:

Heman the singer, the son of Joel, the
son of Samuel, 34 the son of Elkanah,
the son of Jeroham, the son of Eliel,
the son of Toah, 35 the son of Zuph,
the son of Elkanah, the son of Ma-
hath, the son of Amasai, 36 the son of
Elkanah, the son of Joel, the son of
Azariah, the son of Zephaniah, 37 the
son of Tahath, the son of Assir, the
son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, 38
the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath,
the son of Levi, the son of Israel.

39 Heman's kinsman was Asaph, who
served at his right hand: Asaph the son of
Berechiah, the son of Shimea, 40 the son
of Michael, the son of Baaseiah, the son
of Malchijah, 41 the son of Ethni, the son of
Zerah, the son of Adaiah, 42 the son of
Ethan, the son of Zimmah, the son of
Shimei, 43 the son of Jahath, the son of
Gershom, the son of Levi.

44 On the left were their kinsmen, the sons
of Merari: Ethan the son of Kishi, the son
of Abdi, the son of Malluch, 45 the son of
Hashabiah, the son of Amaziah, the son of
Hilkiah, 46 the son of Amzi, the son of Bani,
the son of Shemer, 47 the son of Mahli, the
son of Mushi, the son of Merari, the son
of Levi.

THE DESCENDANTS OF AARON

48 Their fellow Levites were assigned to
every kind of service of the tabernacle,
the house of God. 49 But Aaron and his
sons did all the work of the Most Holy
Place. They presented the offerings on
the altar of burnt offering and on the altar
of incense to make atonement for Israel,
according to all that Moses the servant of
God had commanded.

50 These were the descendants of Aaron:
Eleazar his son, Phinehas his son,
Abishua his son, 51 Bukki his son, Uzzi his
son, Zerahiah his son, 52 Meraioth his son,
Amariah his son, Ahitub his son, 53 Zadok
his son, and Ahimaaz his son.

TERRITORIES FOR THE LEVITES // NUMBERS 35:1–8; JOSHUA 21:1–45

54 Now these were the territories assigned
to the descendants of Aaron from the Ko-
hathite clan for their settlements, because
the first lot fell to them:

55 They were given Hebron in the land of
Judah and its surrounding pasturelands.
56 But the fields and villages around the
city were given to Caleb son of Jephun-
neh. 57 So the descendants of Aaron were
given Hebron (a city of refuge), Libnah,
Jattir, Eshtemoa, 58 Hilen, Debir, 59 Ashan,
Juttah, and Beth-shemesh, together with
their pasturelands.

60 And from the tribe of Benjamin they
were given Gibeon, Geba, Alemeth, and
Anathoth, together with their pasture-
lands. So they had thirteen cities in all
among their families.

61 To the rest of the Kohathites, ten cities
were allotted from the half-tribe of Man-
asseh.

62 The Gershomites, according to their
clans, were allotted thirteen cities from
the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and
Manasseh in Bashan.

63 The Merarites, according to their clans,
were allotted twelve cities from the tribes
of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun.

64 So the Israelites gave to the Levites
these cities and their pasturelands. 65
They assigned by lot the cities named
above from the tribes of Judah, Simeon,
and Benjamin.

66 And some of the clans of the Kohathites
were given cities from the tribe of
Ephraim for their territory:

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

67 They were given Shechem (a city of
refuge) with its pasturelands in the hill
country of Ephraim, and Gezer, 68 Jok-
meam, Beth-horon, 69 Aijalon, and Gath-
rimmon, together with their pasturelands.
70 And from the half-tribe of Manasseh the
rest of the clans of the Kohathites were
given Aner and Bileam, together with their
pasturelands.
71 The Gershomites received the following:
From the clan of the half-tribe of Man-
asseh they were given Golan in Bashan
and also Ashtaroth, together with their
pasturelands.
72 From the tribe of Issachar they were
given Kedesh, Daberath, 73 Ramoth, and
Anem, together with their pasturelands.
74 From the tribe of Asher they were given
Mashal, Abdon, 75 Hukok, and Rehob, to-
gether with their pasturelands.
76 And from the tribe of Naphtali they were
given Kedesh in Galilee, Hammon, and
Kiriathaim, together with their pasture-
lands.
77 The Merarites (the rest of the Levites)
received the following:
From the tribe of Zebulun they were given
Rimmono and Tabor, together with their
pasturelands.
78 From the tribe of Reuben east of the
Jordan opposite Jericho they were given
Bezer in the wilderness, Jahzah, 79 Kede-
moth, and Mephaath, together with their
pasturelands.
80 And from the tribe of Gad they were
given Ramoth in Gilead, Mahanaim, 81 Hes-
hbon, and Jazer, together with their pas-
turelands.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

*Six more tribes in one chapter: Issachar, Ben-
jamin, Naphtali, Manasseh, Ephraim and Asher.
Ephraim's sons are killed by the men of Gath
when they go after their cattle, and Ephraim
names a new son Beriah, because trouble came.
A woman named Sheerah builds three towns.
Joshua shows up in Ephraim's line.*

THE DESCENDANTS OF ISSACHAR

1 The sons of Issachar:
Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron—four in
all.
2 The sons of Tola: Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel,
Jahmai, Ibsam, and Shemuel, the heads of
their families. In the days of David, 22,600
descendants of Tola were numbered in
their genealogies as mighty men of valor.
3 The son of Uzzi: Izrahiah.
The sons of Izrahiah: Michael, Obadiah,
Joel, and Isshiah. All five of them were
chiefs. 4 In addition to them, according to
their genealogy, they had 36,000 troops
for battle, for they had many wives and
children.
5 Their kinsmen belonging to all the fami-
lies of Issachar who were mighty men of
valor totaled 87,000, as listed in their ge-
nealogies.

THE DESCENDANTS OF BENJAMIN

6 The three sons of Benjamin:
Bela, Becher, and Jediael.
7 The sons of Bela: Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel,
Jerimoth, and Iri, heads of their
families—five in all. There were 22,034
mighty men of valor listed in their ge-
nealogies.
8 The sons of Becher: Zemirah, Joash,
Eliezer, Elioenai, Omri, Jeremoth, Abijah,
Anathoth, and Alemeth; all these were
Becher's sons. 9 Their genealogies were
recorded according to the heads of their
families—20,200 mighty men of valor.
10 The son of Jediael: Bilhan.
The sons of Bilhan: Jeush, Benjamin,
Ehud, Chenaanah, Zethan, Tarshish, and
Ahishahar. 11 All these sons of Jediael were
heads of their families, mighty men of
valor; there were 17,200 fit for battle. 12
The Shuppites and Huppites were de-
scendants of Ir, and the Hushites were
descendants of Aher.

THE DESCENDANTS OF NAPHTALI

13 The sons of Naphtali:
Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shallum—the de-
scendants of Bilhah.

THE DESCENDANTS OF MANASSEH

14 The descendants of Manasseh: Asriel
through his Aramean concubine. She also
gave birth to Machir the father of Gilead.
15 Machir took a wife from among the Hup-
pites and Shuppites. The name of his sis-
ter was Maacah.
Another descendant was named Zelophe-
had, who had only daughters.
16 Machir's wife Maacah gave birth to a
son, and she named him Peresh. His
brother was named Sheresh, and his sons
were Ulam and Rekem.
17 The son of Ulam: Bedan.
These were the sons of Gilead son of
Machir, the son of Manasseh. 18 His sister
Hammolecheth gave birth to Ishhod,
Abiezer, and Mahlah.
19 And these were the sons of Shemida:
Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam.

THE DESCENDANTS OF EPHRAIM

20 The descendants of Ephraim:
Shuthelah, Bered his son, Tahath his son,
Eleadah his son, Tahath his son, 21 Zabad
his son, and Shuthelah his son.
Ezer and Elead were killed by the natives
of Gath, because they went down to steal
their livestock.
22 Their father Ephraim mourned for many
days, and his relatives came to comfort
him. 23 And again he slept with his wife,
and she conceived and gave birth to a
son. So he named him Beriah, because
tragedy had come upon his house. 24 His
daughter was Sheerah, who built Lower
and Upper Beth-horon, as well as Uzzen-
sheerah.
25 Additionally, Rephah was his son,
Resheph his son, Telah his son, Tahan his
son, 26 Ladan his son, Ammihud his son,
Elishama his son, 27 Nun his son, and
Joshua his son.
28 Their holdings and settlements included
Bethel and its villages, Naaran to the east,
Gezer and its villages to the west, and
Shechem and its villages as far as Ayyah
and its villages. 29 And along the borders
of Manasseh were Beth-shean, Taanach,
Megiddo, and Dor, together with their vil-
lages. The descendants of Joseph son of
Israel lived in these towns.

THE DESCENDANTS OF ASHER

30 The children of Asher:
Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, Beriah, and their sis-
ter Serah.
31 The sons of Beriah: Heber, as well as
Malchiel, who was the father of Birzaith.
32 Heber was the father of Japhlet,
Shomer, and Hotham, and of their sister
Shua.
33 The sons of Japhlet: Pasach, Bimhal,
and Ashvath. These were Japhlet's sons.
34 The sons of Shemer: Ahi, Rohgah, Hub-
bah, and Aram.
35 The sons of his brother Helem: Zophah,
Imna, Shelesh, and Amal.
36 The sons of Zophah: Suah, Harnepher,
Shual, Beri, Imrah, 37 Bezer, Hod, Shamma,
Shilshah, Ithran, and Beera.
38 The sons of Jether: Jephunneh, Pispa,
and Ara.
39 The sons of Ulla: Arah, Hanniel, and
Rizia.
40 All these were the descendants of
Asher—heads of their families, choice and
mighty men of valor, and chiefs among
the leaders. The number of men fit for
battle, recorded in their genealogies, was
26,000.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Benjamin's family again, this time with more detail. It ends with the family of King Saul, his sons, including Jonathan and Esh baal, and Jonathan's son Merib baal. Saul's line goes on for many generations, with a lot of very good archers.

GENEALOGY FROM BENJAMIN TO SAUL

1 Benjamin was the father of Bela his first-
born, Ashbel the second, Aharah the third,
2 Nohah the fourth, and Rapha the fifth.
3 The sons of Bela: Addar, Gera, Abihud, 4
Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah, 5 Gera, Shep-
huphan, and Huram.
6 These were the descendants of Ehud
who were the heads of the families living

in Geba and were exiled to Manahath: 7 Naaman, Ahijah, and Gera, who carried them into exile and who was the father of Uzza and Ahihud.

8 Shaharaim had sons in the country of Moab after he had divorced his wives Hushim and Baara. 9 His sons by his wife Hodesh: Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, Malcam, 10 Jeuz, Sachia, and Mirmah. These were his sons, heads of families.

11 He also had sons by Hushim: Abitub and Elpaal.

12 The sons of Elpaal: Eber, Misham, Shemed (who built Ono and Lod with its villages), 13 and Beriah and Shema (who were the heads of families living in Aijalon and who drove out the inhabitants of Gath).

14 Ahio, Shashak, Jeremoth, 15 Zebadiah, Arad, Eder, 16 Michael, Ishpah, and Joha were the sons of Beriah.

17 Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, Heber, 18 Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab were the sons of Elpaal.

19 Jakim, Zichri, Zabdi, 20 Elienai, Zillethai, Eliel, 21 Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath were the sons of Shimei.

22 Ishpan, Eber, Eliel, 23 Abdon, Zichri, Hanan, 24 Hananiah, Elam, Anthothijah, 25 Iphdeiah, and Penuel were the sons of Shashak.

26 Shamsherai, Shehariah, Athaliah, 27 Jaareshiah, Elijah, and Zichri were the sons of Jeroham.

28 All these were heads of families, the chiefs according to their genealogies, and they lived in Jerusalem.

29 Jeiel the father of Gibeon lived in Gibeon. His wife's name was Maacah, 30 and Abdon was his firstborn son, then Zur, Kish, Baal, Nadab, 31 Gedor, Ahio, Zecher, 32 and Mikloth, who was the father of Shimeah. They too lived alongside their relatives in Jerusalem.

THE FAMILY OF SAUL

33 Ner was the father of Kish, Kish was the father of Saul, and Saul was the father of Jonathan, Malchishua, Abinadab, and Esh-baal.

34 The son of Jonathan: Merib-baal, and Merib-baal was the father of Micah.

35 The sons of Micah: Pithon, Melech, Tarea, and Ahaz.

36 Ahaz was the father of Jehoaddah, Jehoaddah was the father of Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri, and Zimri was the father of Moza.

37 Moza was the father of Binea. Raphah was his son, Eleasah his son, and Azel his son.

38 Azel had six sons, and these were their names: Azrikam, Bocheru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were the sons of Azel.

39 The sons of his brother Eshek: Ulam was his firstborn, Jeush second, and Eliphelet third. 40 The sons of Ulam were mighty men of valor, archers, and they had many sons and grandsons—150 in all.

All these were the descendants of Benjamin.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

All Israel was listed in the records, and Judah was carried off to Babylon for being unfaithful. Then the people who came back are listed: families of Judah, Benjamin, the priests, the Levites and the gatekeepers who guarded the temple doors day and night. Saul's family tree is repeated as a bridge into the story.

THE PEOPLE OF JERUSALEM

1 So all Israel was recorded in the genealogies written in the Book of the Kings of Israel. But Judah was exiled to Babylon because of their unfaithfulness.

2 Now the first to resettle their own property in their cities were Israelites, priests, Levites, and temple servants.

3 Some of the descendants of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh lived in Jerusalem:

4 Uthai son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, a descendant of Perez son of Judah.

1CH 9:1 [NOTE] CARRIED OFF. This verse jumps ahead to the exile in Babylon, 586 BC. The lists that follow are of the families who came back.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

5 From the Shilonites: Asaiah the firstborn
and his sons.
6 From the Zerahites: Jeuel and 690 relatives.
7 From the Benjamites: Sallu son of
Meshullam, the son of Hodaviah, the son
of Hassenuah; 8 Ibneiah son of Jeroham;
Elah son of Uzzi, the son of Michri;
Meshullam son of Shephatiah, the son of
Reuel, the son of Ibnijah; 9 and 956 of their
relatives according to their genealogy. All
these men were heads of their families.
10 From the priests: Jedaiah, Jehoiarib,
and Jachin; 11 Azariah son of Hilkiah, the
son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the
son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the
chief official of God's temple; 12 Adaiah
son of Jeroham, the son of Pashhur, the
son of Malchijah; Maasai son of Adiel, the
son of Jahzerah, the son of Meshullam,
the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer;
13 and 1,760 of their relatives, the heads of
their families, able men for the work of the
service of the house of God.
14 From the Levites: Shemaiah son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of
Hashabiah, a descendant of Merari; 15
Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, and Mattaniah
son of Mica, the son of Zichri, the son of
Asaph; 16 Obadiah son of Shemaiah, the
son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun; and
Berechiah son of Asa, the son of Elkanah,
who lived in the villages of the Netophathites.
17 These were the gatekeepers: Shallum,
Akkub, Talmon, Ahiman, and their relatives. Shallum was their chief; 18 he was
previously stationed at the King's Gate on
the east side. These were the gatekeepers from the camp of the Levites. 19 Shallum son of Kore, the son of Ebiasaph, the
son of Korah, and his relatives from the
Korahites were assigned to guard the
thresholds of the Tent, just as their fathers
had been assigned to guard the entrance
to the dwelling of Yahweh. 20 In earlier
times Phinehas son of Eleazar had been in
charge of the gatekeepers, and Yahweh
was with him. 21 Zechariah son of
Meshelemiah was the gatekeeper at the
entrance to the Tent of Meeting. 22 The
number of those chosen to be gatekeepers at the thresholds was 212. They were
registered by genealogy in their villages.
David and Samuel the seer had appointed
them to their positions of trust.
23 So they and their descendants were assigned to guard the gates of the house of
Yahweh—the house called the Tent. 24 The
gatekeepers were stationed on the four
sides: east, west, north, and south. 25
Their relatives came from their villages at
fixed times to serve with them for seven-
day periods. 26 But the four chief gatekeepers, who were Levites, were entrusted with the rooms and the treasuries
of the house of God. 27 They would spend
the night stationed around the house of
God, because they were responsible for
guarding it and opening it every morning.
28 Some of them were in charge of the articles used in worship, to count them
whenever they were brought in or taken
out. 29 Others were put in charge of the
furnishings and other articles of the sanctuary, as well as the fine flour, wine, oil,
frankincense, and spices. 30 And some of
the sons of the priests mixed the spices.
31 A Levite named Mattithiah, the firstborn
son of Shallum the Korahite, was entrusted with baking the bread. 32 Some of
their Kohathite relatives were responsible
for preparing the rows of the showbread
every Sabbath.
33 Those who were musicians, the heads
of Levite families, stayed in the temple
chambers and were exempt from other
duties because they were on duty day
and night. 34 All these were heads of
Levite families, chiefs according to their
genealogies, and they lived in Jerusalem.

THE DESCENDANTS OF SAUL

35 Jeiel the father of Gibeon lived in
Gibeon. His wife's name was Maacah.
36 Abdon was his firstborn son, then Zur,
Kish, Baal, Ner, Nadab, 37 Gedor, Ahio,
Zechariah, and Mikloth.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

38 Mikloth was the father of Shimeam.
They too lived alongside their relatives in
Jerusalem.

39 Ner was the father of Kish, Kish was the
father of Saul, and Saul was the father of
Jonathan, Malchishua, Abinadab, and
Esh-baal.

40 The son of Jonathan:
Merib-baal, who was the father of
Micah.

41 The sons of Micah: Pithon, Melech,
Tahrea, and Ahaz. 42 Ahaz was the father
of Jarah; Jarah was the father of Alemeth,
Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri was the
father of Moza. 43 Moza was the father of
Binea. Rephaiah was his son, Elasah his
son, and Azel his son.

44 And Azel had six sons, and these were
their names: Azrikam, Bocheru, Ishmael,
Shearíah, Obadiah, and Hanan. These
were the sons of Azel.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS
The story finally starts, and it starts with a funeral. The Philistines beat Israel on Mount Gilboa. Saul is wounded, falls on his own sword, and his sons die with him. The Philistines hang his head in Dagon's temple. Saul died because he was unfaithful and asked a medium instead of God.

SAUL'S OVERTHROW AND DEATH // 1 SAMUEL 31:1–6; 2 SAMUEL 1:1–16

1 Now the Philistines fought against Israel,
and the men of Israel fled before them,
and many fell slain on Mount Gilboa.

2 The Philistines followed hard after Saul
and his sons, and they killed Saul's sons
Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchishua. 3
When the battle intensified against Saul,
the archers overtook him and wounded
him.

4 Then Saul said to his armor-bearer,
"Draw your sword and run me through
with it, or these uncircumcised men will
come and torture me!"
But his armor-bearer was terrified and re-
fused to do it. So Saul took his own sword
and fell on it.

5 When his armor-bearer saw that Saul
was dead, he too fell on his own sword
and died. 6 So Saul died together with his
three sons and all his house.

THE PHILISTINES POSSESS THE TOWNS // 1 SAMUEL 31:7–10

7 When all the Israelites in the valley saw
that the army had fled and that Saul and
his sons had died, they abandoned their
cities and ran away. So the Philistines
came and occupied their cities.

8 The next day, when the Philistines came
to strip the dead, they found Saul and his
sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. 9 They
stripped Saul, cut off his head, took his
armor, and sent messengers throughout
the land of the Philistines to proclaim the
news in the temple of their idols and
among their people. 10 They put his armor
in the temple of their gods and hung his
head in the temple of Dagon.

JABESH-GILEAD'S TRIBUTE TO SAUL // 1 SAMUEL 31:11–13

11 When all the people of Jabesh-gilead
heard about everything the Philistines had
done to Saul, 12 all their men of valor set
out and retrieved the bodies of Saul and
his sons and brought them to Jabesh. And
they buried their bones under the oak in
Jabesh and fasted seven days.

13 So Saul died for his unfaithfulness to
Yahweh, because he did not keep the
word of Yahweh and even consulted a
medium for guidance, 14 and he failed to
inquire of Yahweh. So Yahweh put him to
death and turned the kingdom over to
David son of Jesse.

- **1CH 10:9 [DEMONIC]** Philistines hang Saul's head in Dagon's temple
- **1CH 10:13 [DEMONIC]** Saul died because he consulted a medium
- **1CH 10:13 [NOTE]** THE MEDIUM. See the Big Question pages The Medium of Endor in 1 Samuel, p.483.
- **1CH 10:14 [NOTE]** THE STORY STARTS HERE. Chronicles tells almost nothing of Saul's reign, only his death. See the Big Question pages Chronicles vs Samuel and Kings, p.682.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

CHRONICLES VS SAMUEL AND KINGS

What Was Left Out

1 CHRONICLES 10 TO 29 · 2 SAMUEL 2 TO 20 · 1 KINGS 1 TO 11

THE SAME STORY AGAIN

1 Chronicles 10 to 29 retells the life of David from 1 and 2 Samuel, often word for word. 2 Chronicles retells Solomon and the kings of Judah from 1 and 2 Kings.

LEFT OUT

Almost all of Saul's reign, David running from Saul, the war with Saul's son Ish bosheth, Bathsheba and Uriah, Amnon and Tamar, and Absalom's revolt. 2 Chronicles also leaves out most of the northern kingdom's story. Elisha never appears, and Elijah only sends one letter, 2 Chronicles 21:12.

ADDED

The family trees, the Levites, the singers and gatekeepers, Jabez's prayer, David's mighty men from Saul's tribe, fire from heaven on David's altar, 21:26, and eight chapters of David getting ready for the temple, 22 to 29.

STILL HONEST

Chronicles still tells of Uzzah's death, 13:10, David's sinful census, 21:1 to 8, and God saying David had shed too much blood to build the temple, 22:8.

THE GREEK NAME

The Greek Bible calls the book Paraleipomenon, the things left out, as if it filled in what Samuel and Kings had skipped.

THE QUESTION

Why does Chronicles tell the story so differently?

Every View

2 SAMUEL 24 · 1 CHRONICLES 21 · 22:8 · JOHN 20:30 TO 31

VIEW 1: A DIFFERENT GOAL

Most Bible believing scholars say the writer chose what fit his purpose. His readers already knew Samuel and Kings. He wanted to show the people back from exile that God's promise to David and the temple worship still mattered.

VIEW 2: LIKE THE FOUR GOSPELS

Matthew, Mark, Luke and John tell the life of Jesus four ways, each choosing different stories, John 20:30 to 31. Chronicles and Samuel and Kings are two views of one history in the same way.

VIEW 3: A CLEANED UP DAVID

Some critical scholars say the writer polished David and Solomon to make them heroes, leaving out what made them look bad. Others answer that the census and the bloodshed are still in the book.

THE LESSON

Chronicles often shows quick results: kings who seek God do well, and kings who turn away suffer, especially in 2 Chronicles. Many think this was a call to the returned people to be faithful.

THE NUMBERS

Some numbers differ from Samuel. See Samuel and Chronicles, Why the Numbers Differ, in 2 Samuel, p.532.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Chronicles is the same history told for a new day, to give hope to people starting over with God.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

All Israel comes to Hebron and makes David king. David takes Jerusalem, and Joab is the first one in. Then we meet David's mighty men: one kills 300 men with a spear, three risk their lives for a cup of water, and Benaiah fights a lion in a pit on a snowy day.

DAVID ANOINTED KING OF ALL ISRAEL // 2 SAMUEL 5:1–5

1 Then all Israel came together to David at
Hebron and said, "Here we are, your own
flesh and blood. 2 Even in times past, while
Saul was king, you were the one who led
Israel out and brought them back. And
Yahweh your God said, 'You will shepherd
My people Israel, and you will be ruler
over them.'"

3 So all the elders of Israel came to the
king at Hebron, where David made a
covenant with them before Yahweh. And
they anointed him king over Israel, ac-

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

cording to the word of Yahweh through Samuel.

DAVID CONQUERS JERUSALEM // 2 SAMUEL 5:6–11

4 Then David and all the Israelites marched to Jerusalem (that is, Jebus), where the Jebusites inhabited the land.

5 The people of Jebus said to David, "You will never get in here."

Nevertheless, David captured the fortress of Zion (that is, the City of David).

6 Now David had said, "Whoever is the first to strike down a Jebusite will become chief commander."

And Joab son of Zeruiah went up first, and he became the chief.

7 So David took up residence in the fortress; that is why it was called the City of David. 8 He built up the city around it, from the supporting terraces to the surrounding wall, while Joab restored the rest of the city.

9 And David became greater and greater, for Yahweh of Hosts was with him.

DAVID'S MIGHTY MEN // 2 SAMUEL 23:8–39

10 Now these were the chiefs of David's mighty men, who, together with all Israel, bolstered and strengthened his kingdom, according to the word of Yahweh concerning Israel. 11 This is the list of David's mighty men:

Jashobeam son of Hachmoni was chief of the officers; he wielded his spear against three hundred men, whom he killed at one time.

12 Next in command was Eleazar son of Dodo the Ahohite, one of the three mighty men. 13 He was with David at Pas-dammim when the Philistines gathered there for battle. At a place with a field full of barley, the troops fled from the Philistines. 14 But Eleazar and David stationed themselves in the middle of the field and defended it. They struck down the Philistines, and Yahweh brought about a great victory.

15 Three of the thirty chief men went down to David, to the rock at the cave of Adullam, while a company of Philistines was encamped in the Valley of Rephaim. 16 At that time David was in the stronghold, and the garrison of the Philistines was at Bethlehem. 17 David longed for water and said, "Oh, that someone would get me a drink of water from the well near the gate of Bethlehem!"

18 So the Three broke through the Philistine camp, drew water from the well at the gate of Bethlehem, and brought it back to David. But he refused to drink it; instead, he poured it out to Yahweh, 19 saying, "Far be it from me, my God, to do this! How can I drink the blood of these men who risked their lives?" Because they had brought it at the risk of their lives, David refused to drink it.

Such were the exploits of the three mighty men.

20 Now Abishai, the brother of Joab, was chief of the Three, and he wielded his spear against three hundred men, killed them, and won a name along with the Three. 21 He was doubly honored above the Three, and he became their commander, even though he was not included among the Three.

22 And Benaiah son of Jehoiada was a man of valor from Kabzeel, a man of many exploits. He struck down two champions of Moab, and on a snowy day he went down into a pit and killed a lion. 23 He also struck down an Egyptian, a huge man 7½ feet tall. Although the Egyptian had a spear like a weaver's beam in his hand, Benaiah went against him with a club, snatched the spear from his hand, and killed the Egyptian with his own spear. 24 These were the exploits of Benaiah son of Jehoiada, who won a name along with the three mighty men. 25 He was most honored among the Thirty, but he did not become one of the Three. And David appointed him over his guard.

- **1CH 11:4 [FIELD NOTES]** See The City of David and Warren's Shaft Field Notes pages in 2 Samuel, p.498.
- **1CH 11:10 [NOTE]** THE MIGHTY MEN. See the Big Question pages David's Mighty Men, p.684.
- **1CH 11:11 [NOTE]** 300 OR 800? 2 Samuel 23:8 says 800. See Samuel and Chronicles, Why the Numbers Differ, the Big Question pages in 2 Samuel, p.532.
- **1CH 11:22 [NOTE]** The page of Codex Sinaiticus shown on the intro page begins in the middle of this verse.
- **1CH 11:23 [DEMONIC]** Benaiah kills an Egyptian 7½ feet tall

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DAVID'S MIGHTY MEN

Who They Were

1 CHRONICLES 11:10 TO 47 · 12:1 TO 40 · 2 SAMUEL 23:8 TO 39

THE THREE

Jashobeam raised his spear against 300 men and killed them at one time, 11:11. Eleazar stood in a barley field with David and struck down the Philistines, 11:12 to 14. 2 Samuel 23:11 names a third, Shammah.

WATER FROM BETHLEHEM

David said, Oh, that someone would get me a drink from the well of Bethlehem. Three men broke through the Philistine camp to bring it. David would not drink it. He poured it out to Yahweh, because they had risked their lives, 11:17 to 19.

BENAIAH

He went down into a pit on a snowy day and killed a lion. He fought a huge Egyptian armed only with a club, took the man's spear, and killed him with it, 11:22 to 23.

THE THIRTY

A larger group of heroes was called the Thirty. The list here has more than 30 names, 11:26 to 47, and 2 Samuel 23:39 counts 37 in all, so many think the Thirty was the name of a unit, not an exact number.

MEN FROM SAUL'S TRIBE

Chapter 12 lists men who joined David early, even relatives of Saul who could shoot arrows and sling stones with the right or left hand, 12:2.

THE QUESTION

Who were these men, and could they really do all that?

Every View

2 SAMUEL 11:3 · 23:39 · 1 CHRONICLES 11:41 · 11:46 · 12:18

VIEW 1: REAL HEROES, GOD'S POWER

Many believe these were real men who did these deeds with God's help, like Samson. 11:14 says Yahweh brought about a great victory.

VIEW 2: WAR STORY LANGUAGE

Some scholars think numbers like 300 or 800 in one battle may be the bold language of old war stories, meaning a huge number of the enemy, not a body count.

300 OR 800?

2 Samuel 23:8 says 800. See Samuel and Chronicles in 2 Samuel, p.532.

URIAH ON THE LIST

Uriah the Hittite is one of the Thirty, 11:41. Chronicles leaves out what David did to him, 2 Samuel 11, but keeps his name among the heroes.

FOREIGNERS TOO

The list includes Zelek the Ammonite and Ithmah the Moabite, 11:39 and 11:46. Men from many places followed David.

THE MEN OF ISSACHAR

200 leaders of Issachar understood the times and knew what Israel should do, 12:32. Many churches use this verse to call believers to understand the world they live in.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

David's kingdom was built by loyal friends who risked everything for him, and Amasai said it best, We are yours, O David! 12:18.

26 Now these were the mighty men:
Asahel the brother of Joab,
Elhanan son of Dodo of Bethlehem,
27 Shammoth the Harorite,
Helez the Pelonite,
28 Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite,
Abiezer the Anathothite,
29 Sibbecai the Hushathite,
Ilai the Ahohite,
30 Maharai the Netophathite,
Heled son of Baanah the Netophathite,
31 Ithai son of Ribai from Gibeah of the
Benjamites,
Benaiah the Pirathonite,
32 Hurai from the brooks of Gaash,
Abiel the Arbathite,
33 Azmaveth the Baharumite,
Eliahba the Shaalbonite,
34 the sons of Hashem the Gizonite,
Jonathan son of Shagee the Hararite,
35 Ahiam son of Sachar the Hararite,
Eliphal son of Ur,
36 Hepher the Mecherathite,
Ahijah the Pelonite,
37 Hezro the Carmelite,
Naarai son of Ezbai,

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

38 Joel the brother of Nathan,
Mibhar son of Hagri,
39 Zelek the Ammonite,
Naharai the Beerothite, the armor-bearer
of Joab son of Zeruiah,
40 Ira the Ithrite,
Gareb the Ithrite,
41 Uriah the Hittite,
Zabad son of Ahlai,
42 Adina son of Shiza the Reubenite, chief
of the Reubenites, and the thirty with
him,
43 Hanan son of Maacah,
Joshaphat the Mithnite,
44 Uzzia the Ashterathite,
Shama and Jeiel the sons of Hotham the
Aroerite,
45 Jediael son of Shimri and his brother
Joha the Tizite,
46 Eliel the Mahavite,
Jeribai and Joshaviah, the sons of El-
naam,
Ithmah the Moabite,
47 Eliel, Obed, and Jaasiel the Mezobaite.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

A who's who of the men who joined David before he was king. Some can sling stones with either hand. Some Gadites have faces like lions and run like gazelles. The men of Issachar understand the times. Then a huge army shows up at Hebron for a three day party to make David king.

THE MIGHTY MEN JOIN DAVID AT ZIKLAG

1 Now these were the men who came to
David at Ziklag, while he was still ban-
ished from the presence of Saul son of
Kish (they were among the mighty men
who helped him in battle; 2 they were
archers using both the right and left hands
to sling stones and shoot arrows; and they
were Saul's kinsmen from Benjamin):

3 Ahiezer their chief and Joash, who were
the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite;
Jeziel and Pelet, the sons of Azmaveth;
Beracah;
Jehu the Anathothite;
4 Ishmaiah the Gibeonite, a mighty man
among the Thirty and a leader over the
Thirty;
Jeremiah, Jahaziel, Johanan, and Joz-
abad the Gederathite;
5 Eluzai, Jerimoth, Bealiah, Shemariah, and
Shephatiah the Haruphite;
6 Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer, and
Jashobeam, who were Korahites;
7 and Joelah and Zebadiah, the sons of
Jeroham from Gedor.

8 Some Gadites defected to David at his
stronghold in the wilderness. They were
mighty men of valor, trained for battle, ex-
perts with the shield and spear, whose
faces were like the faces of lions and who
were as swift as gazelles on the moun-
tains:
9 Ezer the chief, Obadiah the second in
command, Eliab the third, 10 Mishman-
nah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth, 11 At-
tai the sixth, Eliel the seventh, 12 Jo-
hanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth, 13
Jeremiah the tenth, and Machbanai the
eleventh.

14 These Gadites were army commanders,
the least of whom was a match for a hun-
dred, and the greatest for a thousand.

15 These are the ones who crossed the
Jordan in the first month when it was
overflowing all its banks, and they put to
flight all those in the valleys, both to the
east and to the west.

16 Other Benjamites and some men from
Judah also came to David in his strong-
hold. 17 And David went out to meet them,
saying, "If you have come to me in peace
to help me, my heart will be united with
you; but if you have come to betray me to
my enemies when my hands are free of
violence, may the God of our fathers see
it and judge you."

18 Then the Spirit came upon Amasai, the
chief of the Thirty, and he said:

"We are yours, O David!
We are with you, O son of Jesse!
Peace, peace to you,
and peace to your helpers,
for your God helps you."

So David received them and made them
leaders of his troops.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

19 Some from Manasseh defected to David
when he went with the Philistines to fight
against Saul. (They did not help the
Philistines because the Philistine rulers
consulted and sent David away, saying, "It
will cost us our heads if he defects to his
master Saul.") 20 When David went to Zik-
lag, these men of Manasseh defected to
him:
Adnah, Jozabad, Jediael, Michael, Joz-
abad, Elihu, and Zillethai, chiefs of
thousands in Manasseh.
21 They helped David against the raiders,
for they were all mighty men of valor and
commanders in the army.
22 For at that time men came to David day
after day to help him, until he had a great
army, like the army of God.

DAVID'S ARMY GROWS AT HEBRON

23 Now these are the numbers of men
armed for battle who came to David at
Hebron to turn Saul's kingdom over to
him, in accordance with the word of Yah-
weh:
24 From Judah: 6,800 armed troops bear-
ing shields and spears.
25 From Simeon: 7,100 mighty men of valor,
ready for battle.
26 From Levi: 4,600, 27 including Jehoiada,
leader of the house of Aaron, with 3,700
men, 28 and Zadok, a mighty young man of
valor, with 22 commanders from his own
family.
29 From Benjamin, the kinsmen of Saul:
3,000, most of whom had remained loyal
to the house of Saul up to that time.
30 From Ephraim: 20,800 mighty men of
valor, famous among their own clans.
31 From the half-tribe of Manasseh: 18,000
designated by name to come and make
David king.
32 From Issachar, men who understood the
times and knew what Israel should do:
200 chiefs with all their kinsmen at their
command.
33 From Zebulun: 50,000 fit for service,
trained for battle with all kinds of weapons
of war, who with an undivided heart were
devoted to David.
34 From Naphtali: 1,000 commanders, ac-
companied by 37,000 men with shield and
spear.
35 From Dan: 28,600 prepared for battle.
36 From Asher: 40,000 fit for service, pre-
pared for battle.
37 And from east of the Jordan, from
Reuben, Gad, and the half-tribe of Man-
asseh there: 120,000 armed with every
kind of weapon of war.
38 All these men of war, arrayed for battle,
came to Hebron with a whole heart to
make David king over all Israel. And all the
rest of the Israelites were of one heart to
make David king.
39 They spent three days there eating and
drinking with David, for their relatives had
provided for them. 40 And their neighbors
from as far away as Issachar, Zebulun,
and Naphtali came bringing food on don-
keys, camels, mules, and oxen—abundant
supplies of flour, fig cakes and raisin
cakes, wine and oil, oxen and sheep. In-
deed, there was joy in Israel.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

David decides to bring God's ark to Jerusalem. They put it on a new cart, with music and dancing. The oxen stumble, Uzzah grabs the ark, and God strikes him dead. David gets scared and leaves the ark at Obed edom's house for three months, and God blesses that house.

DAVID FETCHES THE ARK // 2 SAMUEL 6:1–4

1 Then David conferred with all his leaders,
the commanders of thousands and of
hundreds. 2 And he said to the whole as-
sembly of Israel, "If it seems good to you,
and if this is of Yahweh our God, let us
send word far and wide to the rest of our
brothers in all the land of Israel, and also
to the priests and Levites in their cities
and pasturelands, so that they may join

1CH 12:32 [NOTE] UNDERSTOOD THE TIMES. The men of Issachar knew what was going on and what Israel should do. Jesus wanted people to read the signs of their own times too, Matthew 16:3.

1CH 12:33 [HEART] Zebulun's 50,000 came to help David with an undivided heart, not a double heart.

1CH 12:38 [HEART] Israel's army came with a whole heart, and all Israel was of one heart to make David king.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

us. 3 Then let us bring back the ark of our God, for we did not inquire of Him in the days of Saul."

4 And because this proposal seemed right to all the people, the whole assembly agreed to it. 5 So David assembled all Israel, from the River Shihor in Egypt to Lebo-hamath, to bring the ark of God from Kiriath-jearim.

6 David and all Israel went up to Baalah of Judah (that is, Kiriath-jearim) to bring up from there the ark of God Yahweh, who is enthroned between the cherubim—the ark that is called by the Name. 7 So they carried the ark of God from the house of Abinadab on a new cart, with Uzzah and Ahio guiding the cart.

UZZAH TOUCHES THE ARK // 2 SAMUEL 6:5–11

8 David and all the Israelites were celebrating before God with all their might, with songs and on harps and lyres, with tambourines, cymbals, and trumpets.

9 When they came to the threshing floor of Chidon, Uzzah reached out and took hold of the ark, because the oxen had stumbled. 10 And the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah, and He struck him down because he had put his hand on the ark. So he died there before God.

11 Then David became angry because Yahweh had burst forth against Uzzah. So he named that place Perez-uzzah, as it is called to this day.

12 That day David feared God and asked, "How can I ever bring the ark of God to me?" 13 So he did not move the ark with him to the City of David instead, he took it aside to the house of Obed-edom the Gittite. 14 Thus the ark of God remained with the family of Obed-edom in his house for three months, and Yahweh blessed his household and everything he owned.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Hiram king of Tyre sends cedar and builders for David's palace. David has more sons in Jerusalem. The Philistines attack twice. The first time God bursts out against them like a flood. The second time God tells David to wait for the sound of marching in the treetops.

DAVID'S FAMILY GROWS // 2 SAMUEL 5:12–16

1 Now Hiram king of Tyre sent envoys to David, along with cedar logs, stonemasons, and carpenters, to build a palace for him. 2 And David realized that Yahweh had established him as king over Israel and had highly exalted his kingdom for the sake of His people Israel.

3 And David took more wives in Jerusalem and became the father of more sons and daughters. 4 These are the names of the children born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, Solomon, 5 Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet, 6 Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia, 7 Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet.

TWO VICTORIES OVER THE PHILISTINES // 2 SAMUEL 5:17–25

8 When the Philistines heard that David had been anointed king over all Israel, they all went in search of him; but David learned of this and went out to face them.

9 Now the Philistines had come and raided the Valley of Rephaim. 10 So David inquired of God, "Should I go up against the Philistines? Will You deliver them into my hand?"

"Go," replied Yahweh, "for I will deliver them into your hand."

11 So David and his men went up to Baal-perazim, where he defeated the Philistines and said, "Like a bursting flood, God has burst out against my enemies by my hand." So they called that place Baal-perazim. 12 There the Philistines abandoned their gods, and David ordered that they be burned in the fire.

13 Once again the Philistines raided the valley. 14 So David again inquired of God,

1CH 13:10 [NOTE] UZZAH. See the Big Question pages Uzzah and the Ark in 2 Samuel, p.501. 15:13 explains: they had not carried the ark the way God said, on the Levites' shoulders with poles, 15:15 and Numbers 7:9.

1CH 14:10 [NOTE] God answers David here and in 14:14 to 15, so His words print red.

1CH 14:12 [DEMONIC] David burns the idols the Philistines left behind

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

who answered him, "Do not march up after them, but circle around them and attack them in front of the balsam trees. 15 As soon as you hear the sound of marching in the tops of the balsam trees, move out to battle, because this will mean that God has gone out before you to strike the camp of the Philistines."

16 So David did as God had commanded him, and they struck down the army of the Philistines all the way from Gibeon to Gezer. 17 And David's fame went out into every land, and Yahweh caused all nations to fear him.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Take two on the ark. This time the Levites carry it on poles, the way God said. David puts together a huge band with lyres, harps, cymbals and trumpets. David dances, and Michal looks out the window and despises him in her heart.

PREPARING TO MOVE THE ARK // 2 SAMUEL 6:12–15

1 David constructed buildings for himself in the City of David, and he prepared a place for the ark of God and pitched a tent for it. 2 Then David said, "No one but the Levites may carry the ark of God, because Yahweh has chosen them to carry the ark of Yahweh and to minister before Him forever."

3 And David assembled all Israel in Jerusalem to bring up the ark of Yahweh to the place he had prepared for it. 4 Then he gathered together the descendants of Aaron and the Levites:

5 From the Kohathites, Uriel the chief and 120 of his relatives;
6 from the Merarites, Asaiah the chief and 220 of his relatives;
7 from the Gershomites, Joel the chief and 130 of his relatives;
8 from the Elizaphanites, Shemaiah the chief and 200 of his relatives;
9 from the Hebronites, Eliel the chief and 80 of his relatives;
10 and from the Uzzielites, Amminadab the chief and 112 of his relatives.

11 David summoned the priests Zadok and Abiathar and the Levites Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab. 12 And he said to them, "You are the heads of the Levitical families. You and your relatives must consecrate yourselves so that you may bring the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel, to the place I have prepared for it. 13 It was because you Levites were not with us the first time that Yahweh our God burst forth in anger against us. For we did not consult Him about the proper order."

THE PRIESTS AND LEVITES CARRY THE ARK

14 So the priests and Levites consecrated themselves to bring up the ark of Yahweh, the God of Israel. 15 And the Levites carried the ark of God on their shoulders with the poles, as Moses had commanded in accordance with the word of Yahweh.

16 David also told the leaders of the Levites to appoint their relatives as singers to lift up their voices with joy, accompanied by musical instruments—harps, lyres, and cymbals. 17 So the Levites appointed Heman son of Joel; from his brothers, Asaph son of Berechiah; from their brothers the Merarites, Ethan son of Kushaiah; 18 and with them their brothers next in rank: Zechariah, Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, and the gatekeepers Obed-edom and Jeiel.

19 The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were to sound the bronze cymbals. 20 Zechariah, Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, and Benaiah were to play the harps according to Alamoth. 21 And Mattithiah, Eliphelehu, Mikneiah, Obed-edom, Jeiel, and Azaziah were to lead the music with lyres according to Sheminith. 22 Chenaniah the head Levite was the director of the music because he was highly skilled.

23 Berechiah and Elkanah were to be guardians of the ark. 24 Shebaniah, Joshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, Zechariah, Benaiah, and Eliezer—the priests—were to blow the trumpets before the ark of

■ **1CH 15:16 [FIELD NOTES]** DAVID'S BAND. See the Temple Music Field Notes page, p.689.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

God. Obed-edom and Jehiah were also to be guardians of the ark.

MOVING THE ARK TO JERUSALEM

25 So David, the elders of Israel, and the commanders of thousands went with rejoicing to bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the house of Obed-edom. 26 And because God helped the Levites who were carrying the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, they sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams.

27 Now David was dressed in a robe of fine linen, as were all the Levites who were carrying the ark, as well as the singers and Chenaniah, the director of music for the singers. David also wore a linen ephod. 28 So all Israel brought up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh with shouting, with the sounding of rams' horns and trumpets, and with cymbals and the music of harps and lyres.

MICHAL'S CONTEMPT FOR DAVID // 2 SAMUEL 6:16

29 As the ark of the covenant of Yahweh was entering the City of David, Saul's daughter Michal looked down from a window and saw King David dancing and celebrating, and she despised him in her heart.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

TEMPLE MUSIC

1 CHRONICLES 15:16 TO 28 · 16:4 TO 6 · 23:5 · 25:1 TO 7 · PSALM 150



An Assyrian soldier walks behind three men playing lyres, from Sennacherib's palace at Nineveh, British Museum. Photo Mike Peel, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A stone carving from the palace of Sennacherib, the king who attacked Jerusalem in Hezekiah's day. Three men with beards walk along playing lyres, with a soldier behind them.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 700 BC, almost 300 years after David.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Nineveh, in northern Iraq, in Sennacherib's palace, dug by Austen Henry Layard about 1850. It is in the British Museum.

WHO WERE THE PLAYERS?

The carving does not say. Some think they were captives from Judah, because the palace also shows Sennacherib's war on Lachish. Others say they could be from another land he conquered.

DAVID'S BAND

David put Levites in charge of music with lyres, harps, cymbals and trumpets, 15:16 to 24. The kinnor, which this Bible calls a harp in 1 Samuel 16:23, was a lyre, the kind David played for Saul. Bronze cymbals have been found in Israel, and silver trumpets were made by God's command, Numbers 10:2.

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

WHY IT MATTERS
David set 4,000 Levites to praise God with instruments, 23:5, and 288 trained singers, 25:7. Many of the psalms were written for this temple music.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS
The ark is set in a tent in Jerusalem. David gives a song of thanks that sounds a lot like Psalms 105, 96 and 106. Asaph and his family lead the music every day, and the priests keep offering sacrifices at the old tabernacle in Gibeon.

A TENT FOR THE ARK // 2 SAMUEL 6:17–19

1 So they brought the ark of God and
placed it inside the tent that David had
pitched for it. And they presented burnt
offerings and peace offerings before God.
2 When David had finished sacrificing the
burnt offerings and peace offerings, he
blessed the people in the name of Yah-
weh. 3 Then he distributed to every man
and woman of Israel a loaf of bread, a
date cake, and a raisin cake.

4 David appointed some of the Levites to
minister before the ark of Yahweh, to cel-
ebrate, to give thanks, and to praise Yah-
weh, the God of Israel. 5 Asaph was the
chief, Zechariah was second, then Jeiel,
Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Mattithiah, Eliab, Be-
naiah, Obed-edom, and Jeiel. They were
to play the harps and lyres, while Asaph
sounded the cymbals 6 and the priests Be-
naiah and Jahaziel blew the trumpets reg-
ularly before the ark of the covenant of
God.

DAVID'S PSALM OF THANKSGIVING // PSALM 105:1–15

7 On that day David first committed to As-
aph and his associates this song of
thanksgiving to Yahweh:

8 "Give thanks to Yahweh; call upon His
name;
make known His deeds among the na-
tions.
9 Sing to Him, sing praises to Him;
tell of all His wonders.
10 Glory in His holy name;
let the hearts of those who seek Yah-
weh rejoice.
11 Seek out Yahweh and His strength;
seek His face always.
12 Remember the wonders He has done,
His marvels, and the judgments He has
pronounced,
13 O offspring of His servant Israel,
O sons of Jacob, His chosen ones.

14 He is Yahweh our God;
His judgments carry throughout the
earth.
15 Remember His covenant forever,
the word He ordained for a thousand
generations—
16 the covenant He made with Abraham,
and the oath He swore to Isaac.
17 He confirmed it to Jacob as a decree,
to Israel as an everlasting covenant:
18 'I will give you the land of Canaan
as the portion of your inheritance.'

19 When they were few in number,
few indeed, and strangers in the land,
20 they wandered from nation to nation,
from one kingdom to another.
21 He let no man oppress them;
He rebuked kings on their behalf:
22 'Do not touch My anointed ones!
Do no harm to My prophets!'

SING TO YAHWEH, ALL THE EARTH // PSALM 96:1–13

23 Sing to Yahweh, all the earth.
Proclaim His salvation day after day.
24 Declare His glory among the nations,
His wonders among all peoples.

25 For great is Yahweh, and greatly to be
praised;
He is to be feared above all gods.
26 For all the gods of the nations are idols,
but it is Yahweh who made the heavens.
27 Splendor and majesty are before Him;
strength and joy fill His dwelling.

28 Ascribe to Yahweh, O families of the na-
tions,

1CH 16:8 [NOTE] ONE SONG, THREE PSALMS. 16:8 to 22 is Psalm 105:1 to 15, 16:23 to 33 is Psalm 96, and 16:34 to 36 is from Psalm 106:1 and 47 to 48. God's own words inside the song, 16:18 and 16:22, print red.

1CH 16:10 [HEART] Let the hearts of those who seek Yahweh rejoice.
1CH 16:26 [DEMONIC] All the gods of the nations are idols

THE HEART NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength.
29 Ascribe to Yahweh the glory due His name;
bring an offering and come before Him.
Worship Yahweh in the splendor of His holiness;
30 tremble before Him, all the earth.
The world is firmly established;
it cannot be moved.

31 Let the heavens be glad,
and the earth rejoice.
Let them say among the nations,
'Yahweh reigns!'
32 Let the sea resound,
and all that fills it;
let the fields exult,
and all that is in them.
33 Then the trees of the forest will sing for joy before Yahweh,
for He is coming to judge the earth.

34 Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever.
35 Then cry out: 'Save us, O God of our salvation;
gather and deliver us from the nations,
that we may give thanks to Your holy name,
that we may glory in Your praise.'

36 Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel,
from everlasting to everlasting."

Then all the people said, "Amen!" and "Praise Yahweh!"

WORSHIP BEFORE THE ARK

37 So David left Asaph and his associates there before the ark of the covenant of Yahweh, to minister there regularly according to the daily requirements, 38 along with Obed-edom and his sixty-eight relatives. Obed-edom son of Jeduthun, and also Hosah, were to be gatekeepers.

39 And David left Zadok the priest and his fellow priests before the tabernacle of Yahweh at the high place in Gibeon 40 to regularly present burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar of burnt offerings, morning and evening, according to all that was written in the Law of Yahweh, which He had commanded Israel to keep. 41 With them were Heman, Jeduthun, and the rest of those chosen and designated by name to give thanks to Yahweh, for "His loving devotion endures forever."

42 Heman and Jeduthun had with them trumpets and cymbals for the music and instruments for the songs of God. And the sons of Jeduthun were stationed at the gate.

43 Then all the people departed for their homes, and David returned home to bless his household.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

David wants to build God a house. God says no, I will build you a house, a family line that lasts forever. One of your sons will build My house, and I will be his Father. David sits before God and prays, Who am I that You have brought me this far?

GOD'S COVENANT WITH DAVID // 2 SAMUEL 7:1–17

1 After David had settled into his palace, he said to Nathan the prophet, "Here I am, living in a house of cedar, while the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is under a tent."

2 And Nathan replied to David, "Do all that is in your heart, for God is with you."

3 But that night the word of God came to Nathan, saying, 4 "Go and tell My servant David that this is what Yahweh says: You are not the one to build Me a house in which to dwell. 5 For I have not dwelt in a house from the day I brought Israel up out of Egypt until this day, but I have moved from tent to tent and dwelling to dwelling. 6 In all My journeys with all the Israelites, have I ever asked any of the leaders I appointed to shepherd My people, 'Why haven't you built Me a house of cedar?'

7 Now then, you are to tell My servant David that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: I took you from the pasture, from following the flock, to be the ruler over My

1CH 16:34 [NOTABLE] This line became the temple's theme song. It was sung when the temple was dedicated, 2 Chronicles 5:13 and 7:3, and it is the chorus of all 26 verses of Psalm 136.

1CH 17:1 [NOTE] THE SAME PROMISE. 2 Samuel 7 tells the same story. See the Big Question pages God's Promise to David in 2 Samuel, p.505.

1CH 17:2 [HEART] Nathan told David to do all that was in his heart, but God had a bigger plan.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

people Israel. 8 I have been with you wherever you have gone, and I have cut off all your enemies from before you. Now I will make for you a name like that of the greatest in the land.

9 And I will provide a place for My people Israel and will plant them so that they may dwell in a place of their own and be disturbed no more. No longer will the sons of wickedness oppress them as they did at the beginning 10 and have done since the day I appointed judges over My people Israel. And I will subdue all your enemies.

Moreover, I declare to you that Yahweh will build a house for you. 11 And when your days are fulfilled and you go to be with your fathers, I will raise up your descendant after you, one of your own sons, and I will establish his kingdom. 12 He will build a house for Me, and I will establish his throne forever. 13 I will be his Father, and he will be My son. And I will never remove My loving devotion from him as I removed it from your predecessor. 14 But I will set him over My house and My kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever."

15 So Nathan relayed to David all the words of this entire revelation.

DAVID'S PRAYER OF THANKSGIVING // 2 SAMUEL 7:18–29

16 Then King David went in, sat before Yahweh, and said, "Who am I, O Yahweh God, and what is my house, that You have brought me this far? 17 And as if this was a small thing in Your eyes, O God, You have spoken about the future of the house of Your servant and have regarded me as a man of great distinction, O Yahweh God. 18 What more can David say to You for honoring Your servant? For You know Your servant, 19 O Yahweh. For the sake of Your servant and according to Your own heart, You have accomplished this great thing and made known all these great promises.

20 O Yahweh, there is none like You, and there is no God but You, according to everything we have heard with our own ears. 21 And who is like Your people Israel—the one nation on earth whom God went out to redeem as a people for Himself? You made a name for Yourself through great and awesome wonders by driving out nations from before Your people, whom You redeemed from Egypt. 22 For You have made Your people Israel Your very own forever, and You, O Yahweh, have become their God.

23 And now, O Yahweh, let the word You have spoken concerning Your servant and his house be established forever. Do as You have promised, 24 so that Your name will be established and magnified forever when it is said, 'Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, is God over Israel.' And may the house of Your servant David be established before You. 25 For You, my God, have revealed to Your servant that You will build a house for him. Therefore Your servant has found the courage to pray before You.

26 And now, O Yahweh, You are God! And You have promised this goodness to Your servant. 27 So now You have been pleased to bless the house of Your servant, that it may continue forever before You. For You, O Yahweh, have blessed it, and it will be blessed forever."

- **1CH 17:11 [PROPHECY]** God would raise up one of David's own sons and set up his kingdom → MT 1:1; 9:27 p.1550
- **1CH 17:12 [PROPHECY]** He would reign on David's throne forever → LK 1:32-33 p.1645
- **1CH 17:13 [PROPHECY]** 'I will be His Father, and He will be My Son' → HEB 1:5 p.1978
- **1CH 17:13 [NOTE]** I WILL BE HIS FATHER. Hebrews 1:5 quotes this promise about Jesus. Here Chronicles leaves out the line about punishing him when he does wrong, 2 Samuel 7:14.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

David wins war after war: the Philistines, Moab, Hadadezer of Zobah, the Arameans and Edom. He brings home gold shields and piles of bronze. The bronze will later be used for the temple. David rules all Israel with justice.

DAVID'S TRIUMPHS // 2 SAMUEL 8:1–14; PSALM 60:1–12

1 Some time later, David defeated the Philistines, subdued them, and took Gath and its villages from the hand of the Philistines.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

2 David also defeated the Moabites, and they became subject to David and brought him tribute.

3 As far as Hamath, David also defeated King Hadadezer of Zobah, who had marched out to establish his dominion along the Euphrates River. 4 David captured from him a thousand chariots, seven thousand charioteers, and twenty thousand foot soldiers, and he hamstrung all the horses except a hundred he kept for the chariots.

5 When the Arameans of Damascus came to help King Hadadezer of Zobah, David struck down twenty-two thousand of their men. 6 Then he placed garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became subject to David and brought him tribute. So Yahweh made David victorious wherever he went.

7 And David took the gold shields that belonged to the officers of Hadadezer and brought them to Jerusalem. 8 And from Tibhath and Cun, cities of Hadadezer, David took a large amount of bronze, with which Solomon made the bronze Sea, the pillars, and various bronze articles.

9 When King Tou of Hamath heard that David had defeated the entire army of Hadadezer king of Zobah, 10 he sent his son Hadoram to greet King David and bless him for fighting and defeating Hadadezer, who had been at war with Tou. Hadoram brought all kinds of articles of gold and silver and bronze, 11 and King David dedicated these to Yahweh, along with the silver and gold he had carried off from all these nations—from Edom and Moab, and from the Ammonites, Philistines, and Amalekites.

12 Moreover, Abishai son of Zeruiah struck down eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt. 13 He placed garrisons in Edom, and all the Edomites were subject to David. So Yahweh made David victorious wherever he went.

1CH 18:4 [NOTE] THE NUMBERS. Chronicles and Samuel give different numbers in 19:18 and 21:5. Here and in 21:12 the Hebrew of Samuel differs too, but this Bible follows the Greek and a Dead Sea Scroll there, so they match. See Samuel and Chronicles in 2 Samuel, p.532.

DAVID'S OFFICERS // 2 SAMUEL 8:15–18

14 Thus David reigned over all Israel and administered justice and righteousness for all his people:

15 Joab son of Zeruiah was over the army;
Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the recorder;
16 Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar were priests;
Shavsha was the scribe;
17 Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and Pelethites;
and David's sons were chief officials at the king's side.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

David sends kind messengers to the new king of Ammon. The Ammonites shave their beards, cut off their robes and send them home. Then they hire a huge Aramean army. Joab and Abishai split the battle in two, and Israel wins both halves.

DAVID'S MESSENGERS DISGRACED // 2 SAMUEL 10:1–8

1 Some time later, Nahash king of the Ammonites died and was succeeded by his son. 2 And David said, "I will show kindness to Hanun son of Nahash, because his father showed kindness to me."

So David sent messengers to console Hanun concerning his father. But when David's servants arrived in the land of the Ammonites to console him, 3 the princes of the Ammonites said to Hanun, "Just because David has sent you comforters, do you really believe he is showing respect for your father? Have not his servants come to you to explore the land, spy it out, and overthrow it?"

4 So Hanun took David's servants, shaved their beards, cut off their garments at the hips, and sent them away.

5 When someone came and told David about his men, he sent messengers to meet them, since the men had been thoroughly humiliated. The king told them, "Stay in Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return."

6 When the Ammonites realized that they had become a stench to David, Hanun and

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

the Ammonites sent 38 tons of silver to hire for themselves chariots and horsemen from Aram-naharaim, Aram-maacah, and Zobah. 7 So they hired for themselves thirty-two thousand chariots, as well as the king of Maacah with his troops, who came and camped near Medeba while the Ammonites were mustered from their cities and marched out for battle.

8 On hearing this, David sent Joab and the entire army of mighty men. 9 The Ammonites marched out and arrayed themselves for battle at the entrance to the city, while the kings who had come stayed by themselves in the open country.

DAVID DEFEATS AMMON AND ARAM // 2 SAMUEL 10:9–19

10 When Joab saw the battle lines before him and behind him, he selected some of the best men of Israel and arrayed them against the Arameans. 11 And he placed the rest of the troops under the command of his brother Abishai, who arrayed them against the Ammonites.

12 "If the Arameans are too strong for me," said Joab, "then you will come to my rescue. And if the Ammonites are too strong for you, then I will come to your rescue. 13 Be strong and let us fight bravely for our people and for the cities of our God. May Yahweh do what is good in His sight."

14 So Joab and his troops advanced to fight the Arameans, who fled before him. 15 When the Ammonites saw that the Arameans had fled, they too fled before Joab's brother Abishai, and they entered the city. So Joab went back to Jerusalem.

16 When the Arameans saw that they had been defeated by Israel, they sent messengers to bring more Arameans from beyond the Euphrates, with Shophach the commander of Hadadezer's army leading them.

17 When this was reported to David, he gathered all Israel, crossed the Jordan, advanced toward the Arameans, and arrayed for battle against them. When David lined up to engage them in battle, they fought against him. 18 But the Arameans fled before Israel, and David killed seven thousand of their charioteers and forty thousand foot soldiers. He also killed Shophach the commander of their army.

19 When Hadadezer's subjects saw that they had been defeated by Israel, they made peace with David and became subject to him. So the Arameans were unwilling to help the Ammonites anymore.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

In the spring David's army takes Rabbah, and David wears the Ammonite crown. This book skips what happened with Bathsheba. Then David's men kill three giants from Gath, including Goliath's brother and a man with six fingers on each hand.

THE CAPTURE OF RABBAH // 2 SAMUEL 12:26–31

1 In the spring, at the time when kings march out to war, Joab led out the army and ravaged the land of the Ammonites. He came to Rabbah and besieged it, but David remained in Jerusalem. And Joab attacked Rabbah and demolished it.

2 Then David took the crown from the head of their king. It was found to weigh 75 pounds of gold and was set with precious stones, and it was placed on David's head. And David took a great amount of plunder from the city.

3 David brought out the people who were there and put them to work with saws, iron picks, and axes. And he did the same to all the Ammonite cities. Then David and all his troops returned to Jerusalem.

BATTLES AGAINST THE PHILISTINES // 2 SAMUEL 21:15–22

4 Some time later, war broke out with the Philistines at Gezer. At that time Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Sippai, a descendant of the Rephaim, and the Philistines were subdued.

1CH 20:1 [NOTE] LEFT OUT. 2 Samuel 11 and 12 tell what David did with Bathsheba while his army was at Rabbah. Chronicles skips it. See the Big Question pages Chronicles vs Samuel and Kings, p.682.

1CH 20:2 [NOTE] THEIR KING. The Hebrew is malkam. The Greek reads Milcom, the god of the Ammonites, 1 Kings 11:5, so the crown may have come off an idol's statue.

1CH 20:4 [DEMONIC] Sippai, Lahmi the brother of Goliath, and a giant with six fingers on each hand, killed by David's men

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

5 Once again there was a battle with the
Philistines, and Elhanan son of Jair killed
Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite,
the shaft of whose spear was like a
weaver's beam.

6 And there was also a battle at Gath,
where there was a man of great stature
with six fingers on each hand and six toes
on each foot—twenty-four in all. He too
was descended from Rapha, 7 and when
he taunted Israel, Jonathan the son of
David's brother Shimei killed him.

8 So these descendants of Rapha in Gath
fell at the hands of David and his ser-
vants.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Satan stirs David up to count Israel's fighting men. Joab says, Why? David does it anyway. God sends a plague, and an angel with a sword stands over Jerusalem. David buys Ornan's threshing floor, builds an altar, and God answers with fire from heaven.

DAVID'S MILITARY CENSUS // EXODUS 30:11–16; 2 SAMUEL 24:1–9

1 Then Satan rose up against Israel and in-
cited David to take a census of Israel. 2 So
David said to Joab and the commanders
of the troops, "Go and count the Israelites
from Beersheba to Dan and bring me a re-
port, so that I may know their number."

3 But Joab replied, "May Yahweh multiply
His troops a hundred times over. My lord
the king, are they not all servants of my
lord? Why does my lord want to do this?
Why should he bring guilt on Israel?"

4 Nevertheless, the king's word prevailed
against Joab. So Joab departed and trav-
eled throughout Israel, and then he re-
turned to Jerusalem. 5 And Joab reported
to David the total number of the troops. In
all Israel there were 1,100,000 men who
drew the sword, including 470,000 in Ju-
dah. 6 But Joab did not include Levi and
Benjamin in the count, because the king's
command was detestable to him.

JUDGMENT FOR DAVID'S SIN // 2 SAMUEL 24:10–14

7 This command was also evil in the sight
of God; so He struck Israel.

8 Then David said to God, "I have sinned
greatly because I have done this thing.
Now I beg You to take away the iniquity of
Your servant, for I have acted very fool-
ishly."

9 And Yahweh instructed Gad, David's
seer, 10 "Go and tell David that this is what
Yahweh says: 'I am offering you three op-
tions. Choose one of them, and I will carry
it out against you.'"

11 So Gad went and said to David, "This is
what Yahweh says: 'You must choose 12
between three years of famine, three
months of being swept away before your
enemies and overtaken by their swords,
or three days of the sword of
Yahweh—days of plague upon the land,
with the angel of Yahweh ravaging every
part of Israel.' Now then, decide how I
should reply to Him who sent me."

13 David answered Gad, "I am deeply dis-
tressed. Please, let me fall into the hand
of Yahweh, for His mercies are very great;
but do not let me fall into the hands of
men."

A PLAGUE ON ISRAEL // 2 SAMUEL 24:15–17

14 So Yahweh sent a plague upon Israel,
and seventy thousand men of Israel fell
dead.

15 Then God sent an angel to destroy
Jerusalem, but as the angel was doing so,
Yahweh saw it and relented from the
calamity, and He said to the angel who
was destroying the people, "Enough!
Withdraw your hand now!"

At that time the angel of Yahweh was
standing by the threshing floor of Ornan
the Jebusite.

■ **1CH 20:5 [TEXT]** GOLIATH'S BROTHER. This verse says Elhanan killed Lahmi the brother of Goliath. 2 Samuel 21:19 says Elhanan killed Goliath. This Bible adds the brother of there too, from this verse. See Who Killed Goliath? in 1 Samuel, p.465.

1CH 21:1 [DEMONIC] Satan rises against Israel and incites David to count the people

■ **1CH 21:1 [TEXT]** WHO STIRRED UP DAVID? 2 Samuel 24:1 says Yahweh stirred up David. This verse says Satan did. Many think this is the first time Satan is used as a name in the Bible. See the Big Question pages Who Caused the Census? in 2 Samuel, p.535.

■ **1CH 21:15 [NOTE]** ENOUGH! God speaks these words to the angel, so they print red.

MIRACLES NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

16 When David lifted up his eyes and saw
the angel of Yahweh standing between
heaven and earth, with a drawn sword in
his hand stretched out over Jerusalem,
David and the elders, clothed in sackcloth,
fell facedown. 17 And David said to God,
"Was it not I who gave the order to count
the people? I am the one who has sinned
and acted wickedly. But these sheep,
what have they done? O Yahweh my God,
please let Your hand fall upon me and my
father's house, but do not let this plague
remain upon Your people."

DAVID BUILDS AN ALTAR // 2 SAMUEL 24:18–25

18 Then the angel of Yahweh ordered Gad
to tell David to go up and build an altar to
Yahweh on the threshing floor of Ornan
the Jebusite. 19 So David went up at the
word that Gad had spoken in the name of
Yahweh.

20 Now Ornan was threshing wheat when
he turned and saw the angel; and his four
sons who were with him hid themselves.
21 David came to Ornan, and when Ornan
looked out and saw David, he left the
threshing floor and bowed facedown be-
fore David.

22 Then David said to Ornan, "Grant me the
site of this threshing floor, that I may build
an altar to Yahweh. Sell it to me for the full
price, so that the plague upon the people
may be halted."

23 Ornan said to David, "Take it! May my
lord the king do whatever seems good to
him. Look, I will give the oxen for the burnt
offerings, the threshing sledges for the
wood, and the wheat for the grain
offering—I will give it all."

24 "No," replied King David, "I insist on
paying the full price, for I will not take for
Yahweh what belongs to you, nor will I of-
fer burnt offerings that cost me nothing."

25 So David paid Ornan 15 pounds of gold
for the site. 26 And there he built an altar to
Yahweh and offered burnt offerings and
peace offerings. He called upon Yahweh,
who answered him with fire from heaven
on the altar of burnt offering.

27 Then Yahweh spoke to the angel, who
put his sword back into its sheath.

28 At that time, when David saw that Yah-
weh had answered him at the threshing
floor of Ornan the Jebusite, he offered
sacrifices there. 29 For the tabernacle of
Yahweh that Moses had made in the
wilderness and the altar of burnt offering
were presently at the high place in
Gibeon, 30 but David could not go before it
to inquire of God, because he was afraid
of the sword of the angel of Yahweh.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

David says, This is the place for God's house. He gathers stone, iron, bronze, cedar and gold, and tells Solomon why he could not build it himself: he was a man of war. Solomon will be a man of peace. Be strong, and get to work.

PREPARATIONS FOR THE TEMPLE

1 Then David said, "Here shall be the
house of Yahweh God, as well as the altar
of burnt offering for Israel."

2 So David gave orders to gather the for-
eigners in the land of Israel, from whom
he appointed stonecutters to prepare fin-
ished stones for building the house of
God.

3 David provided a large quantity of iron to
make the nails for the doors of the gate-
ways and for the fittings, together with
more bronze than could be weighed 4 and
more cedar logs than could be counted;
for the Sidonians and Tyrians had brought
a large quantity of cedar logs to David.

5 And David said, "My son Solomon is
young and inexperienced, and the house
to be built for Yahweh must be exceed-
ingly magnificent—famous and glorious

1CH 21:16 [MIRACLE] David sees the angel of Yahweh with a drawn sword over Jerusalem

1CH 21:18 [FIELD NOTES] ORNAN is Araunah in 2 Samuel 24:16. See the Araunah's Threshing Floor Field Notes page in 2 Samuel, p.537.

1CH 21:24 [NOTABLE] Ornan offered David everything for free. David said no. Real worship costs something.

1CH 21:25 [NOTE] 2 Samuel 24:24 says 1¼ pounds of silver. Many think Samuel gives the price of the floor and oxen, and Chronicles the price of the whole hilltop.

1CH 21:26 [MIRACLE] God answers David with fire from heaven on the altar

1CH 22:1 [NOTE] THE TEMPLE HILL. Solomon built the temple right here, on Mount Moriah, 2 Chronicles 3:1, likely the place where Abraham offered Isaac, Genesis 22:2.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

throughout all lands. Therefore I must make preparations for it." So David made lavish preparations before his death.

SOLOMON ANOINTED TO BUILD THE TEMPLE

6 Then David called for his son Solomon and instructed him to build a house for Yahweh, the God of Israel.

7 "My son," said David to Solomon, "it was in my heart to build a house for the Name of Yahweh my God, 8 but this word of Yahweh came to me: 'You have shed much blood and waged great wars. You are not to build a house for My Name because you have shed so much blood on the ground before Me. 9 But a son will be born to you who will be a man of rest. I will give him rest from all his enemies on every side; for his name will be Solomon, and I will grant to Israel peace and quiet during his reign. 10 He is the one who will build a house for My Name. He will be My son, and I will be his Father. And I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever.'

11 Now, my son, may Yahweh be with you, and may you succeed in building the house of Yahweh your God, as He said you would. 12 Above all, may Yahweh give you insight and understanding when He puts you in command over Israel, so that you may keep the Law of Yahweh your God. 13 Then you will succeed, if you carefully follow the statutes and ordinances that Yahweh commanded Moses for Israel. Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid or discouraged.

14 Now behold, I have taken great pains to provide for the house of Yahweh—3,775 tons of gold, 37,750 tons of silver, and bronze and iron too great to be weighed. I have also provided timber and stone, and you may add to them.

15 You also have many workers: stonecutters, masons, carpenters, and men skilled in every kind of work— 16 in gold and silver, bronze and iron—craftsmen beyond number. Now begin the work, and may Yahweh be with you."

17 Then David ordered all the leaders of Israel to help his son Solomon: 18 "Is not Yahweh your God with you, and has He not granted you rest on every side? For He has given the inhabitants of the land into my hand, and the land has been subdued before Yahweh and His people. 19 Now set your heart and soul to seek Yahweh your God. Begin building the sanctuary of Yahweh God, so that you may bring the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and the holy articles of God into the temple that will be built for the Name of Yahweh."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY COULDN'T DAVID BUILD IT?

What God Said

1 CHRONICLES 17:1 TO 14 · 22:6 TO 10 · 28:2 TO 7 · 1 KINGS 5:3 TO 5

DAVID'S DREAM

David said, Here I am, living in a house of cedar, while the ark of the covenant is under a tent, 17:1. He wanted to build God a house.

GOD SAID NO

God said, You are not the one to build Me a house, 17:4. Instead God promised to build David a house, a family line that would last forever, 17:10.

THE REASON

David told Solomon what God had said: You have shed much blood and waged great wars. You are not to build a house for My Name, 22:8. He said it again in 28:3: you are a man of war.

A MAN OF REST

God said David's son would be a man of rest. His name would be Solomon, which sounds like shalom, peace, and God would give Israel peace in his days, 22:9.

DAVID STILL HELPED

David bought the land, 21:24 to 25, gathered the stone, iron, bronze, cedar and gold, organized the priests and singers,

1CH 22:8 [NOTE] A MAN OF BLOOD. David quotes God, so God's words print red. See the Big Question pages Why Couldn't David Build It?, p.697

1CH 22:9 [PROPHECY] David would have a son named Solomon, a man of peace who would build God's house → 1KI 4:24-25; 1KI 6:14 p.549

1CH 22:19 [HEART] David told Israel's leaders to set their heart and soul to seek Yahweh.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and gave Solomon the plans, 22:2 to 5 and 28:11 to 19.

THE QUESTION

Was David being punished, or was something else going on?

Every View

ZECHARIAH 6:12 TO 13 · HEBREWS 3:3 TO 6 · 1 PETER 2:5 · ISAIAH 9:6

VIEW 1: BLOOD AND A HOLY HOUSE

Many think the bloodshed of war, even wars God approved, did not fit the house of a holy God. The temple was to be a place of peace and rest.

VIEW 2: TOO BUSY FIGHTING

1 Kings 5:3 says David could not build because of the wars on every side until God put his enemies under his feet. So some see it as timing more than fault.

VIEW 3: NOT A PUNISHMENT

Others point out that God praised David and gave him a forever promise in the same breath. They see the no as a role, not a rebuke: one man fights, the next builds.

A PICTURE OF JESUS

Many see Solomon, the man of peace who built God's house, as a picture of Jesus, the Prince of Peace, Isaiah 9:6, who builds God's house of living stones, 1 Peter 2:5 and Hebrews 3:6.

A HOUSE FOR A HOUSE

Some notice the wordplay: David wanted to build God a house, and God built David a house, his royal line, 17:10.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

David accepted God's no with a thankful prayer, 17:16 to 27, and gave his best so someone else could finish the work.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

David is old and makes Solomon king. Then he counts the Levites, 38,000 men, and gives them jobs: temple work, officials and judges, gatekeepers and musicians. Their old job of carrying the tabernacle is done, because God now has a place to stay.

THE DIVISIONS OF THE LEVITES

1 When David was old and full of years, he installed his son Solomon as king over Israel. 2 Then he gathered all the leaders of Israel, as well as the priests and Levites.

3 The Levites thirty years of age or older were counted, and the total number of men was 38,000. 4 "Of these," said David, "24,000 are to oversee the work of the house of Yahweh, 6,000 are to be officers and judges, 5 4,000 are to be gatekeepers, and 4,000 are to praise Yahweh with the instruments I have made for giving praise."

6 Then David divided the Levites into divisions according to the sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

THE GERSHONITES // NUMBERS 3:21–26; NUMBERS 4:21–28

7 The Gershonites: Ladan and Shimei.
8 The sons of Ladan: Jehiel the first, Zetham, and Joel—three in all.
9 The sons of Shimei: Shelomoth, Haziel, and Haran—three in all. These were the heads of the families of Ladan.
10 And the sons of Shimei: Jahath, Zina, Jeush, and Beriah. These were the sons of Shimei—four in all. 11 Jahath was the first and Zizah was the second; but Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so they were counted as one family and received a single assignment.

THE KOHATHITES // NUMBERS 3:27–32; NUMBERS 4:1–20

12 The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel—four in all.
13 The sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses. Aaron and his descendants were set apart forever to consecrate the most holy things, to burn incense before Yahweh, to minister before Him, and to pronounce blessings in His name forever. 14 As for Moses the man of God, his sons were named among the tribe of Levi.
15 The sons of Moses: Gershom and Eliezer.
16 The descendants of Gershom: Shebuel was the first.
17 The descendants of Eliezer: Rehabiah was the first. Eliezer did not have any

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

other sons, but the sons of Rehabiah were very numerous.
18 The sons of Izhar: Shelomith was the first.
19 The sons of Hebron: Jeriah was the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.
20 The sons of Uzziel: Micah was the first and Isshiah the second.

THE MERARITES // NUMBERS 3:33–37; NUMBERS 4:29–33

21 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi.
The sons of Mahli: Eleazar and Kish. 22 Eleazar died without having any sons; he had only daughters. Their cousins, the sons of Kish, married them.
23 The sons of Mushi: Mahli, Eder, and Jeremoth—three in all.

LEVITE DUTIES REVISED

24 These were the descendants of Levi by their families—the heads of families, registered individually by name—those twenty years of age or older who worked in the service of the house of Yahweh.
25 For David had said, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, has given rest to His people and has come to dwell in Jerusalem forever. 26 So now the Levites no longer need to carry the tabernacle or any of the articles for its service."
27 For according to the final instructions of David, the Levites twenty years of age or older were counted, 28 but their duty was to assist the descendants of Aaron with the service of the house of Yahweh, being responsible for the courts and chambers, the purification of all the holy things, and the work of the service of the house of God, 29 as well as for the rows of the showbread, the fine flour for the grain offering, the wafers of unleavened bread, the baking, the mixing, and all measurements of quantity and size.
30 They were also to stand every morning to give thanks and praise to Yahweh, and likewise in the evening. 31 Whenever burnt offerings were presented to Yahweh on the Sabbaths, New Moons, and appointed feasts, they were to serve regularly before Yahweh in the numbers prescribed for them. 32 So the Levites were to carry out the responsibilities for the Tent of Meeting and the Holy Place, and, under their brothers the descendants of Aaron, the service of the house of Yahweh.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

The priests are split into 24 groups by casting lots, so each group knows when it serves at the temple. The eighth group is Abijah's. Many years later Zechariah, the father of John the Baptist, served in that group, Luke 1:5.

TWENTY-FOUR DIVISIONS OF PRIESTS

1 These were the divisions of the descendants of Aaron. The sons of Aaron were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. 2 But Nadab and Abihu died before their father did, and they had no sons; so Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests.
3 With the help of Eleazar's descendant Zadok and Ithamar's descendant Ahimelech, David divided them according to the offices of their service. 4 Since more leaders were found among Eleazar's descendants than those of Ithamar, they were divided accordingly. There were sixteen heads of families from the descendants of Eleazar and eight from the descendants of Ithamar.
5 Thus they were divided by lot, for there were officers of the sanctuary and officers of God among both Eleazar's and Ithamar's descendants.
6 The scribe, Shemaiah son of Nethanel, a Levite, recorded their names in the presence of the king and of the officers: Zadok the priest, Ahimelech son of Abiathar, and the heads of families of the priests and the Levites—one family being taken from Eleazar, and then one from Ithamar.
7 The first lot fell to Jehoiarib,
the second to Jedaiah,
8 the third to Harim,
the fourth to Seorim,
9 the fifth to Malchijah,
the sixth to Mijamin,
10 the seventh to Hakkoz,
the eighth to Abijah,

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

11 the ninth to Jeshua,
the tenth to Shecaniah,
12 the eleventh to Eliashib,
the twelfth to Jakim,
13 the thirteenth to Huppah,
the fourteenth to Jeshebeab,
14 the fifteenth to Bilgah,
the sixteenth to Immer,
15 the seventeenth to Hezir,
the eighteenth to Happizzez,
16 the nineteenth to Pethahiah,
the twentieth to Jehezkel,
17 the twenty-first to Jachin,
the twenty-second to Gamul,
18 the twenty-third to Delaiah,
and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.

19 This was their appointed order for service when they entered the house of Yahweh, according to the regulations prescribed for them by their forefather Aaron, as Yahweh, the God of Israel, had commanded him.

THE REST OF THE LEVITES

20 Now these were the rest of the descendants of Levi:

From the sons of Amram: Shubael;
from the sons of Shubael: Jehdeiah.
21 As for Rehabiah, from his sons: The first was Isshiah.
22 From the Izharites: Shelomoth;
from the sons of Shelomoth: Jahath.
23 From the sons of Hebron: Jeriah was the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth.
24 From the sons of Uzziel: Micah;
from the sons of Micah: Shamir.
25 The brother of Micah: Isshiah;
from the sons of Isshiah: Zechariah.
26 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi.
The son of Jaaziah: Beno.
27 The descendants of Merari from Jaaziah: Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri.
28 From Mahli: Eleazar, who had no sons.
29 From Kish: Jerahmeel the son of Kish.
30 And the sons of Mushi: Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth.

These were the sons of the Levites, according to their families. 31 As their brothers the descendants of Aaron did, they also cast lots in the presence of King David and of Zadok, Ahimelech, and the heads of the families of the priests and Levites—the family heads and their younger brothers alike.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

David sets apart the families of Asaph, Heman and Jeduthun to prophesy with lyres, harps and cymbals. There are 288 trained singers in 24 groups, young and old, teacher and student, all chosen by lot.

TWENTY-FOUR DIVISIONS OF MUSICIANS

1 Additionally, David and the commanders of the army set apart some of the sons of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun to prophesy with the accompaniment of lyres, harps, and cymbals. The following is the list of the men who performed this service:

2 From the sons of Asaph: Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Asarelah. These sons of Asaph were under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the direction of the king.
3 From the sons of Jeduthun: Gedaliah, Zeri, Jeshaiah, Shimei, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah—six in all—under the direction of their father Jeduthun, who prophesied with the harp, giving thanks and praise to Yahweh.
4 From the sons of Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shebuel, Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti-ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, and Mahazioth. 5 All these sons of Heman the king's seer were given him through the promises of God to exalt him, for God had given Heman fourteen sons and three daughters.

6 All these were under the direction of their fathers for the music of the house of

1CH 24:10 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → LK 1:5 p.1644

1CH 24:10 [NOTE] ABIJAH'S GROUP. Zechariah, the father of John the Baptist, was a priest in this group, Luke 1:5.

1CH 25:1 [NOTE] PROPHESY WITH LYRES. Their music was a way of speaking God's message. Elisha once asked for a musician before he prophesied, 2 Kings 3:15.

Yahweh with cymbals, harps, and lyres,
for the service of the house of God.
Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman were under
the direction of the king. 7 Together with
their relatives, who were all trained and
skillful in the songs of Yahweh, they num-
bered 288. 8 They cast lots for their duties,
young and old alike, teacher as well as
pupil.
9 The first lot, which was for Asaph, fell to
Joseph, his sons, and his brothers—12 in
all;
the second to Gedaliah, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
10 the third to Zaccur, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
11 the fourth to Izri, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
12 the fifth to Nethaniah, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
13 the sixth to Bukkiah, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
14 the seventh to Jesarelah, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
15 the eighth to Jeshaiah, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
16 the ninth to Mattaniah, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
17 the tenth to Shimei, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
18 the eleventh to Azarel, his sons, and his
brothers—12 in all;
19 the twelfth to Hashabiah, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
20 the thirteenth to Shubael, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
21 the fourteenth to Mattithiah, his sons,
and his brothers—12 in all;
22 the fifteenth to Jeremoth, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
23 the sixteenth to Hananiah, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
24 the seventeenth to Joshbekashah, his
sons, and his brothers—12 in all;
25 the eighteenth to Hanani, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
26 the nineteenth to Mallothi, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
27 the twentieth to Eliathah, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
28 the twenty-first to Hothir, his sons, and
his brothers—12 in all;
29 the twenty-second to Giddalti, his sons,
and his brothers—12 in all;
30 the twenty-third to Mahazioth, his sons,
and his brothers—12 in all;
31 and the twenty-fourth to Romamti-ezer,
his sons, and his brothers—12 in all.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

The gatekeepers get their posts, east, north, south and west, by lot. Obed edom's family is big and strong. Other Levites watch over the treasuries, including the plunder David's army dedicated to God. Others serve as officials and judges.

THE DIVISIONS OF THE GATEKEEPERS

1 These were the divisions of the gate-
keepers:
From the Korahites: Meshelemiah son of
Kore, one of the sons of Asaph.
2 Meshelemiah had sons: Zechariah the
firstborn, Jediael the second, Zeba-
diah the third, Jathniel the fourth, 3
Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth,
and Eliehoenai the seventh.
4 And Obed-edom also had sons: Shema-
iah the firstborn, Jehozabad the sec-
ond, Joah the third, Sachar the fourth,
Nethanel the fifth, 5 Ammiel the sixth,
Issachar the seventh, and Peullethai
the eighth. For God had blessed Obed-
edom.
6 Also to his son Shemaiah were born sons
who ruled over their families because
they were strong, capable men. 7
Shemaiah's sons were Othni, Rephael,
Obed, and Elzabad; his brothers were
Elihu and Semachiah, also capable
men. 8 All these were descendants of
Obed-edom; they and their sons and
brothers were capable men with
strength to do the work—62 in all from
Obed-edom.
9 Meshelemiah also had sons and brothers
who were capable men—18 in all.
10 Hosah the Merarite also had sons:
Shimri the first (although he was not
the firstborn, his father had appointed

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

him as the first), 11 Hilkiah the second, Tebaliah the third, and Zechariah the fourth. The sons and brothers of Hosah numbered 13 in all.

12 These divisions of the gatekeepers, through their chief men, had duties for ministering in the house of Yahweh, just as their relatives did. 13 They cast lots for each gate, according to their families, young and old alike.

14 The lot for the East Gate fell to Shelemiah.

Then lots were cast for his son Zechariah, a wise counselor, and the lot for the North Gate fell to him.

15 The lot for the South Gate fell to Obed-edom, and the lot for the storehouses to his sons.

16 The lots for the West Gate and the Shallecheth Gate on the ascending highway fell to Shuppim and Hosah.

There were guards stationed at every watch. 17 Each day there were six Levites on the east, four on the north, four on the south, and two pairs at the storehouse. 18 As for the court on the west, there were four at the highway and two at the court.

19 These were the divisions of the gatekeepers who were descendants of Korah and Merari.

THE TREASURERS, OFFICERS, AND JUDGES

20 Now their fellow Levites were in charge of the treasuries of the house of God and the treasuries of the dedicated things. 21 From the descendants of Ladan, who were Gershonites through Ladan and heads of the families of Ladan the Gershonite, were Jehieli, 22 the sons of Jehieli, Zetham, and his brother Joel. They were in charge of the treasuries of the house of Yahweh.

23 From the Amramites, the Izharites, the Hebronites, and the Uzzielites:

24 Shebuel, a descendant of Gershom son of Moses, was the officer in charge of the treasuries. 25 His relatives through Eliezer included Rehabiah his son, Jeshaiah his son, Joram his son, Zichri his son, and Shelomith his son. 26 This Shelomith and his brothers were in charge of all the treasuries for the things dedicated by King David, by the heads of families who were the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, and by the army commanders. 27 They had dedicated some of the plunder from their battles to the repair of the house of Yahweh. 28 Everything that had been dedicated by Samuel the seer, Saul son of Kish, Abner son of Ner, and Joab son of Zeruiah, along with everything else that was dedicated, was under the care of Shelomith and his brothers.

29 From the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons had the outside duties as officers and judges over Israel.

30 From the Hebronites, Hashabiah and his relatives, 1,700 capable men, had charge of the affairs of Israel west of the Jordan for all the work of Yahweh and for the service of the king. 31 As for the Hebronites, Jerijah was the chief of the Hebronites, according to the genealogies of his ancestors. In the fortieth year of David's reign the records were searched, and strong, capable men were found among the Hebronites at Jazer in Gilead. 32 Among Jerijah's relatives there were 2,700 capable men who were heads of families. King David appointed them over the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh for every matter pertaining to God and for the affairs of the king.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

The army is split into twelve divisions of 24,000 men, one for each month. Each tribe has a leader. David's officials run the treasuries, farms, vineyards, olive groves, herds and camels. Joab started a census but never finished it, because God's anger came.

TWELVE CAPTAINS FOR TWELVE MONTHS

1 This is the list of the Israelites—the heads of families, the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, and their officers who served the king in every matter concerning the divisions on rotating mili-

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

tary duty each month throughout the year. There were 24,000 men in each division:

2 Jashobeam son of Zabdiel was in charge of the first division, which was assigned the first month. There were 24,000 men in his division. 3 He was a descendant of Perez and chief of all the army commanders for the first month.

4 Dodai the Ahohite was in charge of the division for the second month, and Mikloth was the leader. There were 24,000 men in his division.

5 The third army commander, as chief for the third month, was Benaiah son of Jehoiada the priest. There were 24,000 men in his division. 6 This Benaiah was mighty among the Thirty and was over the Thirty, and his son Ammizabad was in charge of his division.

7 The fourth, for the fourth month, was Joab's brother Asahel, and his son Zebadiah was commander after him. There were 24,000 men in his division.

8 The fifth, for the fifth month, was the commander Shamhuth the Izrahite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

9 The sixth, for the sixth month, was Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

10 The seventh, for the seventh month, was Helez the Pelonite, an Ephraimite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

11 The eighth, for the eighth month, was Sibbecai the Hushathite, a Zerahite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

12 The ninth, for the ninth month, was Abiezer the Anathothite, a Benjamite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

13 The tenth, for the tenth month, was Maharai the Netophathite, a Zerahite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

14 The eleventh, for the eleventh month, was Benaiah the Pirathonite, an Ephraimite. There were 24,000 men in his division.

15 The twelfth, for the twelfth month, was Heldai the Netophathite, from the family of Othniel. There were 24,000 men in his division.

THE LEADERS OF THE TWELVE TRIBES

16 These officers were in charge of the tribes of Israel:

Over the Reubenites was Eliezer son of Zichri;
over the Simeonites was Shephatiah son of Maacah;
17 over Levi was Hashabiah son of Kemuel;
over Aaron was Zadok;
18 over Judah was Elihu, one of David's brothers;
over Issachar was Omri son of Michael;
19 over Zebulun was Ishmaiah son of Obadiah;
over Naphtali was Jerimoth son of Azriel;
20 over the Ephraimites was Hoshea son of Azaziah;
over one of the half-tribes of Manasseh was Joel son of Pedaiah;
21 over the half-tribe of Manasseh in Gilead was Iddo son of Zechariah;
over Benjamin was Jaasiel son of Abner;
22 and over Dan was Azarel son of Jeroham.

These were the leaders of the tribes of Israel.

23 David did not count the men aged twenty or under, because Yahweh had said that He would make Israel as numerous as the stars of the sky. 24 Joab son of Zeruiah began to count the men but did not finish. For because of this census wrath came upon Israel, and the number was not entered in the Book of the Chronicles of King David.

DAVID'S VARIOUS OVERSEERS

25 Azmaveth son of Adiel was in charge of the royal storehouses.

Jonathan son of Uzziah was in charge of the storehouses in the country, in the cities, in the villages, and in the fortresses.

26 Ezri son of Chelub was in charge of the workers in the fields who tilled the soil.

27 Shimei the Ramathite was in charge of the vineyards.

■ **1CH 27:24 [NOTE]** THE CENSUS. This is the census of chapter 21. Joab never finished it, 21:6.

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Zabdi the Shiphmite was in charge of the produce of the vineyards for the wine vats.
28 Baal-hanan the Gederite was in charge of the olive and sycamore trees in the foothills.
Joash was in charge of the stores of olive oil.
29 Shitrai the Sharonite was in charge of the herds grazing in Sharon.
Shaphat son of Adlai was in charge of the herds in the valleys.
30 Obil the Ishmaelite was in charge of the camels.
Jehdeiah the Meronothite was in charge of the donkeys.
31 Jaziz the Hagrite was in charge of the flocks.
All these officials were in charge of King David's property.

THE COUNSELORS

32 David's uncle Jonathan was a counselor; he was a man of insight and a scribe.
Jehiel son of Hachmoni attended to the sons of the king.
33 Ahithophel was the king's counselor.
Hushai the Archite was the king's friend.
34 Ahithophel was succeeded by Jehoiada son of Benaiah, then by Abiathar.
Joab was the commander of the king's army.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

David calls all Israel's leaders together. God chose Solomon to build the temple, he says. Then he hands Solomon the plans for the temple, written down as God's hand was on him, and says, Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid.

DAVID COMMISSIONS SOLOMON

1 Now David summoned all the leaders of Israel to Jerusalem: the leaders of the tribes, the leaders of the divisions in the king's service, the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, and the officials in charge of all the property and cattle of the king and his sons, along with the court officials and mighty men—every mighty man of valor.

2 Then King David rose to his feet and said, "Listen to me, my brothers and my people. It was in my heart to build a house as a resting place for the ark of the covenant of Yahweh and as a footstool for our God. I had made preparations to build it, 3 but God said to me, 'You are not to build a house for My Name, because you are a man of war who has shed blood.'

4 Yet Yahweh, the God of Israel, chose me out of all my father's house to be king over Israel forever. For He chose Judah as leader, and from the house of Judah He chose my father's household, and from my father's sons He was pleased to make me king over all Israel. 5 And of all my sons—for Yahweh has given me many sons—He has chosen Solomon my son to sit on the throne of the kingdom of Yahweh over Israel. 6 And He said to me, 'Solomon your son is the one who will build My house and My courts, for I have chosen him as My son, and I will be his Father. 7 I will establish his kingdom forever, if he resolutely carries out My commandments and ordinances, as is being done this day.'

8 So now in the sight of all Israel, the assembly of Yahweh, and in the hearing of our God, keep and seek out all the commandments of Yahweh your God, so that you may possess this good land and leave it as an inheritance to your descendants forever. 9 As for you, Solomon my son, know the God of your father and serve Him with a whole heart and with a willing mind, for Yahweh searches every heart and understands the intent of every thought. If you seek Him, He will be found by you; but if you forsake Him, He will reject you forever. 10 Consider now that Yahweh has chosen you to build a house for the sanctuary. Be strong and do it."

THE PLANS FOR THE TEMPLE

11 Then David gave his son Solomon the plans for the portico of the temple, its buildings, storehouses, upper rooms, in-

1CH 28:2 [HEART] David wanted with all his heart to build God's house, but God gave the job to his son.
1CH 28:9 [HEART] David tells Solomon God searches every heart and knows every plan and thought.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ner rooms, and the room for the mercy seat. 12 The plans contained everything David had in mind for the courts of the house of Yahweh, for all the surrounding rooms, for the treasuries of the house of God and of the dedicated things, 13 for the divisions of the priests and Levites, for all the work of service in the house of Yahweh, and for all the articles of service in the house of Yahweh:

14 the weight of all the gold articles for every kind of service;
the weight of all the silver articles for every kind of service;
15 the weight of the gold lampstands and their lamps, including the weight of each lampstand and its lamps;
the weight of each silver lampstand and its lamps, according to the use of each lampstand;
16 the weight of gold for each table of showbread, and of silver for the silver tables;
17 the weight of the pure gold for the forks, sprinkling bowls, and pitchers;
the weight of each gold dish;
the weight of each silver bowl;
18 the weight of the refined gold for the altar of incense;
and the plans for the chariot of the gold cherubim that spread their wings and overshadowed the ark of the covenant of Yahweh.

19 "All this," said David, "all the details of this plan, Yahweh has made clear to me in writing by His hand upon me."

20 David also said to Solomon his son, "Be strong and courageous, and do it. Do not be afraid or discouraged, for Yahweh God, my God, is with you. He will neither fail you nor forsake you before all the work for the service of the house of Yahweh is finished. 21 The divisions of the priests and Levites are ready for all the service of the house of God, and every willing man of every skill will be at your disposal for the work. The officials and all the people are fully at your command."

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

David gives his own gold and silver for the temple, and the leaders give gladly too. David prays one of the great prayers of the Bible: Everything comes from You. The next day Solomon is made king a second time. David dies old and full of days, after reigning 40 years.

OFFERINGS FOR THE TEMPLE

1 Then King David said to the whole assembly, "My son Solomon, the one whom God has chosen, is young and inexperienced. The task is great because this palace is not for man, but for Yahweh God. 2 Now with all my ability I have made provision for the house of my God—gold for the gold articles, silver for the silver, bronze for the bronze, iron for the iron, and wood for the wood, as well as onyx for the settings, turquoise, stones of various colors, all kinds of precious stones, and slabs of marble—all in abundance.

3 Moreover, because of my delight in the house of my God, I now give for it my personal treasures of gold and silver, over and above all that I have provided for this holy temple: 4 100 tons of gold (the gold of Ophir) and 250 tons of refined silver, to overlay the walls of the buildings, 5 for the gold work and the silver work, and for all the work to be done by the craftsmen. Now who is willing to consecrate himself to Yahweh today?"

6 Then the leaders of the families, the officers of the tribes of Israel, the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, and the officials in charge of the king's work gave willingly. 7 Toward the service of God's house they gave 185 tons of gold and 10,000 gold coins, 375 tons of silver, 675 tons of bronze, and 4,000 tons of iron. 8 Whoever had precious stones gave them to the treasury of the house of Yah-

■ **1CH 28:19 [NOTE]** THE PLANS. David says Yahweh's hand was on him as he wrote the plans for the temple. Moses also got the plans for the tabernacle from God, Exodus 25:9.

■ **1CH 29:4 [NOTE]** ALL THAT GOLD. See the Big Question pages All That Gold and Silver, p.706.

■ **1CH 29:7 [NOTE]** GOLD COINS. The Hebrew names a Persian gold coin first made about 515 BC, long after David. The writer used a coin his readers knew. See the Big Question pages Who Wrote Chronicles?, p.670

THE HEART NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

weh, under the care of Jehiel the Gershonite. 9 And the people rejoiced at the willing response of their leaders, for they had given to Yahweh freely and with a whole heart. And King David also rejoiced greatly.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ALL THAT GOLD AND SILVER

The Numbers

1 CHRONICLES 22:14 · 29:2 TO 9 · 1 KINGS 10:14 · 2 CHRONICLES 9:13

WHAT DAVID GATHERED

22:14 says 3,775 tons of gold and 37,750 tons of silver, plus bronze and iron too great to weigh. In the Hebrew, the numbers are 100,000 and 1,000,000 of a weight called a kikkar, about 75 pounds.

WHAT DAVID GAVE HIMSELF

29:4 says David gave 100 tons of gold and 250 tons of silver from his own treasure.

WHAT THE LEADERS GAVE

29:7 says 185 tons of gold and 10,000 gold coins, 375 tons of silver, 675 tons of bronze and 4,000 tons of iron.

HOW BIG IS THAT?

Solomon's gold income in a whole year was about 25 tons, 1 Kings 10:14. The gold in 22:14 is about what the whole world mines in a year today.

WHERE IT CAME FROM

David took gold shields, bronze and plunder from the nations he defeated and dedicated them to God, 18:7 to 11.

WHAT IT WAS FOR

Gold covered the inside of the temple and the cherubim, 2 Chronicles 3:4 to 10. Bronze made the two great pillars, the huge washing basin and the altar, 2 Chronicles 3:15 to 17, 4:1 to 2 and 1 Chronicles 18:8.

THE QUESTION

Could David really have gathered that much?

Every View

1 CHRONICLES 18:7 TO 11 · 29:14 · 2 CORINTHIANS 9:7

VIEW 1: COPYING SLIPS

Some think the large numbers grew as copies were made. Old Hebrew numbers were easy to misread, and other numbers in Chronicles differ from Samuel.

VIEW 2: ROYAL TALK

Many scholars note that kings in the ancient world bragged with huge numbers in their records. They think the writer used the same big language to say David gave a staggering amount.

VIEW 3: IT HAPPENED

Others take the numbers as they stand. David plundered rich kingdoms for years, and ancient sources speak of huge treasures, like the gold Alexander the Great later took from Persia.

VIEW 4: A SMALLER WEIGHT

A few suggest the weight unit was smaller than we think, which would shrink the totals. Others answer that there is no clear proof.

THE POINT OF THE STORY

David prayed, Everything comes from You, and we have given You only what comes from Your hand, 29:14. The people gave freely and with a whole heart, 29:9.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

David gave generously and gladly to God's house, and God loves a cheerful giver, 2 Corinthians 9:7.

DAVID'S PRAYER OF BLESSING

10 Then David blessed Yahweh in the sight of all the assembly and said:

"May You be blessed, O Yahweh, God of our father Israel, from everlasting to everlasting.

11 Yours, O Yahweh, is the greatness and the power and the glory and the splendor and the majesty, for everything in heaven and on earth belongs to You.

Yours, O Yahweh, is the kingdom, and You are exalted as head over all. 12 Both riches and honor come from You, and You are

1CH 29:9 [HEART] The people rejoiced because they gave to Yahweh with a whole heart.

1CH 29:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → MT 6:13 p.1558

1CH 29:11 [NOTABLE] Many think the ending of the Lord's Prayer in many later copies of Matthew 6:13, Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory, comes from David's prayer here.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

the ruler over all. In Your hands are power and might to exalt and give strength to all.

13 Now therefore, our God, we give You thanks, and we praise Your glorious name.
14 But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to give as generously as this? For everything comes from You, and from Your own hand we have given to You. 15 For we are foreigners and strangers in Your presence, as were all our forefathers. Our days on earth are like a shadow, without hope.

16 O Yahweh our God, from Your hand comes all this abundance that we have provided to build You a house for Your holy Name, and all of it belongs to You. 17 I know, my God, that You test the heart and delight in uprightness. All these things I have given willingly and with an upright heart, and now I have seen Your people who are present here giving joyfully and willingly to You.

18 O Yahweh, God of our fathers Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, keep this desire forever in the intentions of the hearts of Your people, and direct their hearts toward You. 19 And give my son Solomon a whole heart to keep and carry out all Your commandments, decrees, and statutes, and to build Your palace for which I have made provision."

20 Then David said to the whole assembly, "Bless Yahweh your God."

So the whole assembly blessed Yahweh, the God of their fathers. They bowed down and paid homage to Yahweh and to the king.

SOLOMON ANOINTED KING // 1 KINGS 1:32–40

21 The next day they offered sacrifices and presented burnt offerings to Yahweh: a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs, along with their drink offerings, and other sacrifices in abundance for all Israel. 22 That day they ate and drank with great joy in the presence of Yahweh.

Then, for a second time, they designated David's son Solomon as king, anointing him before Yahweh as ruler, and Zadok as the priest.

23 So Solomon sat on the throne of Yahweh as king in place of his father David. He prospered, and all Israel obeyed him.
24 All the officials and mighty men, as well as all of King David's sons, pledged their allegiance to King Solomon.

25 Yahweh highly exalted Solomon in the sight of all Israel and bestowed on him royal majesty such as had not been bestowed on any king in Israel before him.

DAVID'S REIGN AND DEATH // 1 KINGS 2:10–12

26 David son of Jesse was king over all Israel. 27 The length of David's reign over Israel was forty years—seven years in Hebron and thirty-three years in Jerusalem.
28 He died at a ripe old age, full of years, riches, and honor, and his son Solomon reigned in his place.

29 Now the acts of King David, from first to last, are indeed written in the Chronicles of Samuel the Seer, the Chronicles of Nathan the Prophet, and the Chronicles of Gad the Seer, 30 together with all the details of his reign, his might, and the circumstances that came upon him and Israel and all the kingdoms of the lands.

1CH 29:11 [NOTE] YOURS IS THE KINGDOM. Many think the ending of the Lord's Prayer in many later copies of Matthew 6:13 comes from these words.
1CH 29:17 [HEART] God tests the heart and is pleased when people give with honest motives.
1CH 29:18 [HEART] David prayed that God would keep His people's hearts turned to Him and give Solomon a whole heart.

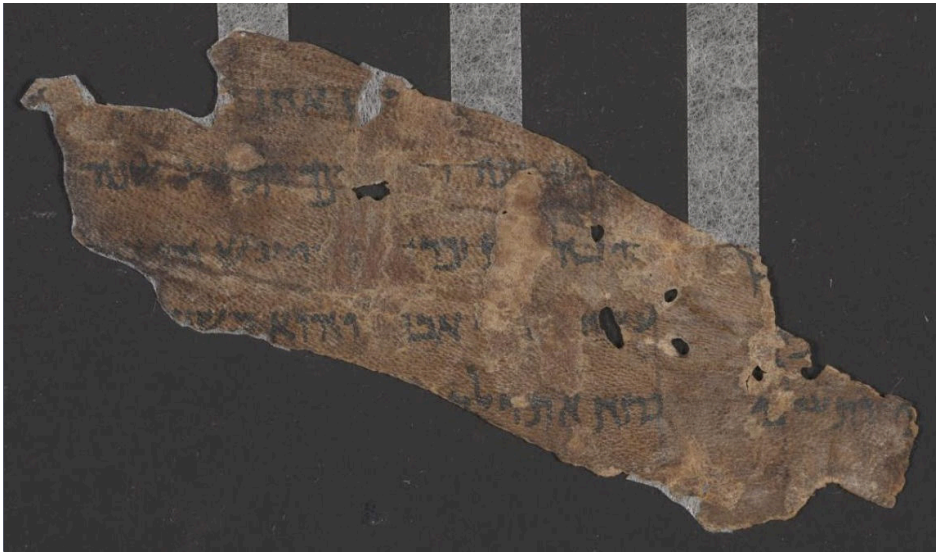
1CH 29:29 [NOTE] THE SOURCES. The writer names the records of Samuel the seer, Nathan the prophet and Gad the seer. 1 and 2 Samuel may be part of them.

BOOK 14 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

2 CHRONICLES

The Director's Cut, Part Two

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Ezra wrote Chronicles, at least its family lists. Many scholars think a priest or Levite in Jerusalem, often called the Chronicler, wrote it after the exile from older records the book names, like the records of Nathan, Ahijah and Iddo, 9:29.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Solomon becoming king, about 970 BC, to the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BC, and then a jump to Cyrus sending the Jews home, 538 BC.
DATE	About 450 BC if Ezra wrote it, as tradition says. Many scholars say about 400 to 250 BC.
WRITTEN TO	The Jews back home after the exile, rebuilding the temple and wondering if God would still answer when they prayed.
KEY VERSE	2 Chronicles 7:14. If My people who are called by My name humble themselves and pray and seek My face and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 2 CHRONICLES, MAYBE
This piece of leather is 4Q118, found in Cave 4 at Qumran and copied about 50 to 25 BC. Its second column has a few words of 2 Chronicles 28:27 to 29:3. Scholars are not sure it is a copy of Chronicles, because its first column matches no known text. It may be another book that used Chronicles. The white strips are modern mounting tissue.

You may hear the scrolls hold every book but Esther. That counts 1 and 2 Chronicles as one book, as the Hebrew Bible does, and this piece is the only one for both. The oldest whole copies are Greek: Codex Vaticanus, 300s AD, and Codex Alexandrinus, 400s AD. The oldest Hebrew copy is the Aleppo Codex, about 930 AD, but its pages for 26:19 to 35:7 were lost in 1947. The oldest complete Hebrew copy is the Leningrad Codex, 1008 AD.

Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

Almost all of it happens in Jerusalem and the towns of Judah, the southern kingdom. The northern kingdom, Israel, only shows up when it fights or makes deals with Judah. Battles happen at Mareshah, the Wilderness of Tekoa and Megiddo.

What Was Going Wrong

CHILD SACRIFICE. King Ahaz burned his sons in the fire in the Valley of Ben hinnom 28:3, and King Manasseh did the same 33:6.
IDOLS IN THE TEMPLE. Ahaz shut the temple doors 28:24. Manasseh set up altars to the stars and a carved idol inside the temple itself 33:4 to 7.
GOOD KINGS WHO FINISHED BADLY. Asa jailed a prophet 16:10, Joash had a prophet stoned 24:21, Amaziah bowed to Edom's gods 25:14, and Uzziah's pride ended in leprosy 26:16 to 21.
THEY MOCKED THE PROPHETS. God kept sending messengers because He had compassion on His people, but they mocked them until there was no remedy 36:15 to 16.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Chronicles is the second half of the director's cut. It starts with Solomon building the temple and God's fire falling on it. Then the kingdom splits, and the book stays with Judah and David's line, king after king. Again and again the pattern is the same: when a king seeks God and humbles himself, God helps him; when he turns away, trouble comes. Even Manasseh, the worst king, is forgiven. In the end the people mock God's prophets, Babylon burns the temple, and the land rests seventy years. But the last words are hope: Cyrus king of Persia tells God's people to go up and build.

2 Chronicles at a Glance

CH 1 to 9	**SOLOMON AND THE TEMPLE** Wisdom, gold, and fire from heaven.
CH 10 to 12	**THE KINGDOM SPLITS** Rehoboam loses ten tribes.
CH 13 to 20	**SEEK HIM AND WIN** Abijah, Asa and Jehoshaphat.
CH 21 to 28	**UP AND DOWN** From Jehoram to Ahaz.
CH 29 to 32	**HEZEKIAH** The temple opened and Assyria beaten.
CH 33 to 35	**MANASSEH TO JOSIAH** The worst king repents, a boy king reforms.
CH 36	**EXILE AND GO UP** Babylon burns it, Cyrus sends them home.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 CHRONICLES 3:1 The temple stood on Mount Moriah, where God provided a ram in Isaac's place, Genesis 22. Many see Jesus, the Lamb of God, John 1:29.

2 CHRONICLES 6:18 Solomon asked, Will God really live on earth with men? John 1:14 answers: the Word became flesh and dwelt among us.

2 CHRONICLES 22:10 TO 12 Athaliah tried to wipe out David's line, but baby Joash was saved, and the line went on to Jesus.

GOD'S NAMES IN 2 CHRONICLES
Yahweh, again and again, Yahweh, the God of Israel, 6:4, Yahweh, the God of our fathers, 20:6, and Yahweh, the God of heaven, 36:23. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in 2 Chronicles

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	3:1
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (14)	6:6, 9:26, 12:8-9, 18:16, 18:33-34, 20:17, 20:22-24 and 11 more
THE HEART (18)	6:30, 7:16, 12:14, 15:12, 15:15, 15:17, 16:9 and 11 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	32:30, 36:22
MIRACLES (4)	5:13-14, 7:1-3, 26:19-21, 32:21
DEMONIC (32)	7:19-22, 11:15, 13:8-9, 14:3-5, 15:8, 15:16, 17:3 and 23 more
NOTABLE (6)	7:14, 15:2, 20:12, 20:15, 20:20, 26:17-18
GOD SPEAKING (46 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (505 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

ONE BOOK, THE LAST WORDS
In the Hebrew Bible, 1 and 2 Chronicles are one book, so this is its second half. It comes last in most printed Hebrew Bibles, so its last words, Cyrus telling God's people to go up, are the last words of the Hebrew Bible. Ezra 1:1 to 3 picks up the same words.

ONLY THREE LIKE DAVID
After Solomon, Judah had 19 kings and one queen. In this book only three kings are said to walk in David's ways: Jehoshaphat, 17:3, Hezekiah, 29:2, and Josiah, 34:2. In Kings the three are Asa, Hezekiah and Josiah.

THE DIRECTOR'S CUT, PART TWO
It skips most of the northern kingdom and Solomon's 700 wives, and adds Manasseh's repentance, Elijah's letter and Hezekiah's great Passover.

How Did It Turn Out?

Babylon burned the temple in 586 BC, and the land rested until seventy years were complete, 36:19 to 21. Then Cyrus said, Go up. The story goes on in Ezra.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon goes to Gibeon and offers a thousand burnt offerings. That night God says, Ask for whatever you want. Solomon asks for wisdom to lead God's people, and God throws in riches and honor too. Soon silver is as common as stones in Jerusalem, and horses are rolling in from Egypt.

SOLOMON'S PRAYER FOR WISDOM // 1 KINGS 3:1–15; PSALM 45:1–17; PSALM 72:1–20

1 Now Solomon son of David established
himself securely over his kingdom, and
Yahweh his God was with him and highly
exalted him.

2 Then Solomon spoke to all Israel, to the
commanders of thousands and of hun-
dreds, to the judges, and to every leader
in all Israel—the heads of the families. 3
And Solomon and the whole assembly
went to the high place at Gibeon because
it was the location of God's Tent of Meet-
ing, which Moses the servant of Yahweh
had made in the wilderness.

4 Now David had brought the ark of God
from Kiriath-jearim to the place he had
prepared for it, because he had pitched a
tent for it in Jerusalem. 5 But the bronze
altar made by Bezalel son of Uri, the son
of Hur, was in Gibeon before the taberna-
cle of Yahweh. So Solomon and the as-
sembly inquired of Him there.

6 Solomon offered sacrifices there before
Yahweh on the bronze altar at the Tent of
Meeting, where he offered a thousand
burnt offerings.

7 That night God appeared to Solomon and
said, "Ask, and I will give it to you!"

8 Solomon replied to God: "You have
shown much loving devotion to my father
David, and You have made me king in his
place. 9 Now, O Yahweh God, let Your
promise to my father David be fulfilled.
For You have made me king over a people
as numerous as the dust of the earth. 10
Now grant me wisdom and knowledge, so
that I may lead this people. For who is
able to govern this great people of
Yours?"

11 God said to Solomon, "Since this was in
your heart instead of requesting riches or
wealth or honor for yourself or death for
your enemies—and since you have not
even requested long life but have asked
for wisdom and knowledge to govern My
people over whom I have made you
king— 12 therefore wisdom and knowledge
have been granted to you. And I will also
give you riches and wealth and honor un-
like anything given to the kings before you
or after you."

13 So Solomon went to Jerusalem from the
high place in Gibeon, from before the Tent
of Meeting, and he reigned over Israel.

SOLOMON'S RICHES // 1 KINGS 10:26–29

14 Solomon accumulated 1,400 chariots
and 12,000 horses, which he stationed in
the chariot cities and also with him in
Jerusalem. 15 The king made silver and
gold as common in Jerusalem as stones,
and cedar as abundant as sycamore in the
foothills.

16 Solomon's horses were imported from
Egypt and Kue; the royal merchants pur-
chased them from Kue. 17 A chariot could
be imported from Egypt for 15 pounds of
silver, and a horse for 3¾ pounds. Like-
wise, they exported them to all the kings
of the Hittites and to the kings of Aram.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon gets ready to build. He sends word to Hiram king of Tyre for cedar logs and a master craftsman. Hiram sends Huram abi, a man who can work gold, bronze, stone, wood and cloth. Solomon puts more than 150,000 foreign workers on the job.

PREPARATIONS FOR THE TEMPLE // 1 KINGS 5:1–6

1 Now Solomon purposed to build a house
for the Name of Yahweh and a royal
palace for himself. 2 So he conscripted
70,000 porters, 80,000 stonecutters in the
mountains, and 3,600 supervisors.

■ **2CH 1:3 [NOTE]** GIBEON. The old tabernacle Moses made in the wilderness still stood at Gibeon, but the ark was in Jerusalem, 1:4.

■ **2CH 2:2 [NOTE]** THE NUMBERS. 1 Kings 5:16 says 3,300 supervisors, and here it is 3,600. Add the chief officers, 550 in 1 Kings 9:23 and 250 in 8:10, and both books

MESSIANIC FOREshadow BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

3 Then Solomon sent word to Hiram king
of Tyre:
"Do for me as you did for my father David
when you sent him cedars to build himself
a house to live in. 4 Behold, I am about to
build a house for the Name of Yahweh my
God to dedicate to Him for burning fra-
grant incense before Him, for displaying
the showbread continuously, and for mak-
ing burnt offerings every morning and
evening as well as on the Sabbaths, New
Moons, and appointed feasts of Yahweh
our God. This is ordained for Israel for-
ever.
5 The house that I am building will be
great, for our God is greater than all
gods. 6 But who is able to build a
house for Him, since the heavens,
even the highest heavens, cannot con-
tain Him? Who then am I, that I should
build a house for Him, except as a
place to burn sacrifices before Him?
7 Send me, therefore, a craftsman skilled
in engraving to work with gold and sil-
ver, with bronze and iron, and with
purple, crimson, and blue yarn. He will
work with my craftsmen in Judah and
Jerusalem, whom my father David pro-
vided.
8 Send me also cedar, cypress, and algum
logs from Lebanon, for I know that
your servants have skill to cut timber
there. And indeed, my servants will
work with yours 9 to prepare for me
timber in abundance, because the
temple I am building will be great and
wonderful. 10 I will pay your servants,
the woodcutters, 120,000 bushels of
ground wheat, 120,000 bushels of bar-
ley, 110,000 gallons of wine, and
110,000 gallons of olive oil."

HIRAM'S REPLY TO SOLOMON // 1 KINGS 5:7–12

11 Then Hiram king of Tyre wrote a letter in
reply to Solomon:
"Because Yahweh loves His people, He
has set you over them as king."
12 And Hiram added:
"Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel,
who made the heavens and the earth! He
has given King David a wise son with in-
sight and understanding, who will build a
temple for Yahweh and a royal palace for
himself.
13 So now I am sending you Huram-abi, a
skillful man endowed with creativity. 14
He is the son of a woman from the
daughters of Dan, and his father is a
man of Tyre. He is skilled in work with
gold and silver, bronze and iron, stone
and wood, purple, blue, and crimson
yarn, and fine linen. He is experienced
in every kind of engraving and can ex-
ecute any design that is given him. He
will work with your craftsmen and with
those of my lord, your father David.
15 Now let my lord send to his servants the
wheat, barley, olive oil, and wine he
promised. 16 We will cut logs from
Lebanon, as many as you need, and
we will float them to you as rafts by
sea down to Joppa. Then you can take
them up to Jerusalem."
17 Solomon numbered all the foreign men
in the land of Israel following the census
his father David had conducted, and there
were found to be 153,600 in all. 18 Solomon
made 70,000 of them porters, 80,000
stonecutters in the mountains, and 3,600
supervisors.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
Building day. Solomon builds the temple on Mount Moriah, on the threshing floor David bought. Gold covers almost everything, the beams, the doors and the walls. Two huge cherubim spread their wings in the Most Holy Place, and two bronze pillars named Jakin and Boaz stand out front.

TEMPLE CONSTRUCTION BEGINS // 1 KINGS 6:1–4

1 Then Solomon began to build the house
of Yahweh in Jerusalem on Mount Moriah,
where Yahweh had appeared to his father
David. This was the place that David had
prepared on the threshing floor of Ornan
the Jebusite. 2 Solomon began construc-

come to 3,850. They just sorted the bosses in different ways.

2CH 3:1 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 7:47 p.1752

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

tion on the second day of the second month in the fourth year of his reign.

3 The foundation that Solomon laid for the house of God was 90 feet long and 30 feet wide, by the old standard of measure. 4 The portico at the front, extending across the width of the temple, was 30 feet long and 30 feet high. He overlaid the inside with pure gold.

THE TEMPLE'S INTERIOR // 1 KINGS 6:14–22

5 He paneled the main room with cypress, which he overlaid with fine gold and decorated with palm trees and chains. 6 He adorned the temple with precious stones for beauty, and its gold was from Parvaim. 7 He overlaid its beams, thresholds, walls, and doors with gold, and he carved cherubim on the walls.

8 Then he made the Most Holy Place; its length corresponded to the width of the temple—30 feet long and 30 feet wide. And he overlaid the inside with 45,000 pounds of fine gold. 9 The weight of the nails was 20 ounces of gold. He also overlaid the upper rooms with gold.

THE CHERUBIM // 1 KINGS 6:23–30

10 In the Most Holy Place he made two cherubim of sculptured work, and he overlaid them with gold. 11 The total wingspan of the cherubim was 30 feet. One wing of the first cherub was 7½ feet long and touched the wall of the temple, and its other wing was 7½ feet long and touched the wing of the other cherub. 12 The wing of the second cherub also measured 7½ feet and touched the wall of the temple, while its other wing measured 7½ feet and touched the wing of the first cherub. 13 So the total wingspan of these cherubim was 30 feet. They stood on their feet, facing the main room.

THE VEIL AND PILLARS // 1 KINGS 7:13–22

14 He made the veil of blue, purple, and crimson yarn and fine linen, with cherubim woven into it.

15 In front of the temple he made two pillars, which together were 52½ feet high, each with a capital on top measuring 7½ feet.

16 He made interwoven chains and put them on top of the pillars. He made a hundred pomegranates and fastened them into the chainwork. 17 Then he set up the pillars in front of the temple, one on the south and one on the north. The pillar on the south he named Jachin, and the pillar on the north he named Boaz.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The furniture. A bronze altar, a giant bronze basin called the Sea standing on twelve bronze oxen, ten smaller basins, ten golden lampstands, ten tables and a hundred gold bowls. Huram finishes the bronze work. There was so much bronze nobody bothered to weigh it.

THE BRONZE ALTAR AND MOLTEN SEA // 1 KINGS 7:23–26

1 He made a bronze altar 30 feet long, 30 feet wide, and 15 feet high.

2 He also made the Sea of cast metal. It was circular in shape, measuring 15 feet from rim to rim, 7½ feet in height, and 45 feet in circumference. 3 Below the rim, figures of oxen encircled it, ten every half yard all the way around the Sea, cast in two rows as a part of the Sea.

4 The Sea stood on twelve oxen, three facing north, three facing west, three facing south, and three facing east. The Sea rested on them, with all their hindquarters toward the center. 5 It was three inches thick, and its rim was fashioned like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom. It could hold 16,500 gallons.

2CH 3:1 [FULFILLS] A ram died in Isaac's place on the mountain where Yahweh would provide ← GEN 22:13-14 · MEDIUM p.77

2CH 3:1 [NOTE] MOUNT MORIAH. The only other Moriah in the Bible is where Abraham went to offer Isaac, Genesis 22:2. Many believe it is the same hill.

2CH 3:3 [FIELD NOTES] See the Solomon's Temple and Ain Dara Field Notes page in 1 Kings, p.552.

2CH 3:4 [TEXT] HOW HIGH? In the Hebrew the porch's height is 120, about 180 feet. Some Greek and Syriac copies say 20, about 30 feet. This Bible follows them, like the NIV and CSB. The KJV and ESV keep 120.

2CH 3:15 [TEXT] HOW TALL? In the Hebrew the number here is 35, about 52½ feet. 1 Kings 7:15 says each pillar was about 27 feet, 18 in the Hebrew. 35 is close to two times 18, so many think this counts both pillars.

2CH 3:17 [NOTE] JAKIN AND BOAZ. Jakin probably means He establishes, and Boaz probably means in Him is strength.

2CH 4:5 [TEXT] THE SEA. 1 Kings 7:26 says it held about 11,000 gallons, 2,000 in the Hebrew, and here the He-

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

THE TEN BASINS, LAMPSTANDS, AND TABLES // 1 KINGS 7:38–39

6 He also made ten basins for washing and placed five on the south side and five on the north. The parts of the burnt offering were rinsed in them, but the priests used the Sea for washing.

7 He made ten gold lampstands according to their specifications and placed them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north.

8 Additionally, he made ten tables and placed them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north. He also made a hundred gold bowls.

THE COURTS

9 He made the courtyard of the priests and the large court with its doors, and he overlaid the doors with bronze.

10 He put the Sea on the south side, at the southeast corner.

COMPLETION OF THE BRONZE WORKS // 1 KINGS 7:40–47

11 Additionally, Huram made the pots, shovels, and sprinkling bowls.

So Huram finished the work that he had undertaken for King Solomon in the house of God:

12 the two pillars;
the two bowl-shaped capitals atop the pillars;
the two sets of network covering both bowls of the capitals atop the pillars;
13 the four hundred pomegranates for the two sets of network (two rows of pomegranates for each network covering both the bowl-shaped capitals atop the pillars);
14 the stands;
the basins on the stands;
15 the Sea;
the twelve oxen underneath the Sea;
16 and the pots, shovels, meat forks, and all the other articles.

All these objects that Huram-abi made for King Solomon for the house of Yahweh were of polished bronze. 17 The king had them cast in clay molds in the plain of the Jordan between Succoth and Zeredah. 18 Solomon made all these articles in such great abundance that the weight of the bronze could not be determined.

COMPLETION OF THE GOLD FURNISHINGS // 1 KINGS 7:48–51

19 Solomon also made all the furnishings for the house of God:

the golden altar;
the tables on which was placed the Bread of the Presence;
20 the lampstands of pure gold and their lamps, to burn in front of the inner sanctuary as prescribed;
21 the flowers, lamps, and tongs of gold—of purest gold;
22 the wick trimmers, sprinkling bowls, ladles, and censers of pure gold;
and the gold doors of the temple: the inner doors to the Most Holy Place as well as the doors of the main hall.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

The ark comes to the temple. The priests carry it into the Most Holy Place under the cherubim's wings. The singers and 120 trumpeters praise God as one voice, He is good, His loving devotion endures forever. Then a cloud fills the house, and the priests cannot even stand to do their jobs.

THE ARK ENTERS THE TEMPLE // 1 KINGS 8:1–11

1 So all the work that Solomon had performed for the house of Yahweh was completed.

Then Solomon brought in the items his father David had dedicated—the silver, the gold, and all the furnishings—and he placed them in the treasuries of the house of God.

2 At that time Solomon assembled in Jerusalem the elders of Israel—all the tribal heads and family leaders of the Israelites—to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from Zion, the City of David. 3 So all the men of Israel came together to the king at the feast in the seventh month.

4 When all the elders of Israel had arrived, the Levites took up the ark, 5 and they

brew number is 3,000. The CSB uses that number here too. Some think the bigger number counts it filled to the brim.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

brought up the ark and the Tent of Meeting with all its sacred furnishings. The Levitical priests carried them up.

6 There, before the ark, King Solomon and the whole congregation of Israel who had assembled with him sacrificed so many sheep and oxen that they could not be counted or numbered.

7 Then the priests brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to its place in the inner sanctuary of the temple, the Most Holy Place, beneath the wings of the cherubim. 8 For the cherubim spread their wings over the place of the ark and overshadowed the ark and its poles.

9 The poles of the ark extended far enough that their ends were visible from in front of the inner sanctuary, but not from outside the Holy Place; and they are there to this day.

10 There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets that Moses had placed in it at Horeb, where Yahweh had made a covenant with the Israelites after they had come out of Egypt.

11 Now all the priests who were present had consecrated themselves regardless of their divisions. And when the priests came out of the Holy Place, 12 all the Levitical singers—Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, and their sons and relatives—stood on the east side of the altar, dressed in fine linen and playing cymbals, harps, and lyres, accompanied by 120 priests sounding trumpets. 13 The trumpeters and singers joined together to praise and thank Yahweh with one voice. They lifted up their voices, accompanied by trumpets, cymbals, and musical instruments, in praise to Yahweh:

"For He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever."

And the temple, the house of Yahweh, was filled with a cloud 14 so that the priests could not stand there to minister because of the cloud. For the glory of Yahweh filled the house of God.

- 2CH 5:13 [MIRACLE] The cloud fills the temple during the praise
- 2CH 5:13 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:8 p.2104

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon blesses the people and kneels on a bronze platform in front of everyone. He prays one of the longest prayers in the Bible. Can heaven even hold You, much less this house? Still, hear us when we pray toward this place, whether we sinned, lost a war, had no rain, or were carried off as captives.

SOLOMON BLESSES YAHWEH // 1 KINGS 8:12–21

1 Then Solomon declared:

"Yahweh has said that He would dwell
in the thick cloud.
2 But I have built You an exalted house,
a place for You to dwell forever."

3 And as the whole assembly of Israel stood there, the king turned around and blessed them all 4 and said:

"Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel, who has fulfilled with His own hand what He spoke with His mouth to my father David, saying, 5 'Since the day I brought My people out of the land of Egypt, I have not chosen a city from any tribe of Israel in which to build a house so that My Name would be there, nor have I chosen anyone to be ruler over My people Israel. 6 But now I have chosen Jerusalem for My Name to be there, and I have chosen David to be over My people Israel.'

7 Now it was in the heart of my father David to build a house for the Name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. 8 But Yahweh said to my father David, 'Since it was in your heart to build a house for My Name, you have done well to have this in your heart. 9 Nevertheless, you are not the one to build it; but your son, your own offspring, will build the house for My Name.'

10 Now Yahweh has fulfilled the word that He spoke. I have succeeded my father David, and I sit on the throne of Israel, as Yahweh promised. I have built the house for the Name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. 11 And there I have placed the ark,

- 2CH 5:14 [NOTE] THE CLOUD. The same thing happened at the tabernacle, Exodus 40:34 to 35. See the Big Question pages The Temple in 1 Kings, p.557.
- 2CH 6:6 [FULFILLS] God would choose one place to put His Name ← DT 12:5 p.301

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

which contains the covenant of Yahweh that He made with the children of Israel."

SOLOMON'S PRAYER OF DEDICATION // 1 KINGS 8:22–53

12 Then Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh in front of the whole assembly of Israel and spread out his hands. 13 Now Solomon had made a bronze platform 7½ feet long, 7½ feet wide, and 4½ feet high and had placed it in the middle of the courtyard. He stood on it, knelt down before the whole assembly of Israel, spread out his hands toward heaven, 14 and said:

"O Yahweh, God of Israel, there is no God like You in heaven or on earth, keeping Your covenant of loving devotion with Your servants who walk before You with all their hearts. 15 You have kept Your promise to Your servant, my father David. What You spoke with Your mouth You have fulfilled with Your hand this day.

16 Therefore now, O Yahweh, God of Israel, keep for Your servant, my father David, what You promised when You said: 'You will never fail to have a man to sit before Me on the throne of Israel, if only your descendants guard their way to walk in My law as you have walked before Me.' 17 And now, O Yahweh, God of Israel, please confirm what You promised to Your servant David.

18 But will God indeed dwell with man upon the earth? The heavens, even the highest heavens, cannot contain You, much less this temple I have built. 19 Yet regard the prayer and plea of Your servant, O Yahweh my God, so that You may hear the cry and the prayer that Your servant is praying before You.

20 May Your eyes be open toward this temple day and night, toward the place where You said You would put Your Name, so that You may hear the prayer that Your servant prays toward this place. 21 Hear the plea of Your servant and of Your people Israel when they pray toward this place. May You hear from heaven, Your dwelling place. May You hear and forgive.

22 When a man sins against his neighbor and is required to take an oath, and he comes to take an oath before Your altar in this temple, 23 then may You hear from heaven and act. May You judge Your servants, condemning the wicked man by bringing down on his own head what he has done, and justifying the righteous man by rewarding him according to his righteousness.

24 When Your people Israel are defeated before an enemy because they have sinned against You, and they return to You and confess Your name, praying and pleading before You in this temple, 25 then may You hear from heaven and forgive the sin of Your people Israel. May You restore them to the land You gave to them and their fathers.

26 When the skies are shut and there is no rain because Your people have sinned against You, and they pray toward this place and confess Your name, and they turn from their sins because You have afflicted them, 27 then may You hear from heaven and forgive the sin of Your servants, Your people Israel, so that You may teach them the good way in which they should walk. May You send rain on the land that You gave Your people as an inheritance.

28 When famine or plague comes upon the land, or blight or mildew or locusts or grasshoppers, or when their enemies besiege them in their cities, whatever plague or sickness may come, 29 then may whatever prayer or plea Your people Israel make—each knowing his own afflictions and spreading out his hands toward this temple— 30 be heard by You from heaven, Your dwelling place. And may You forgive and repay each man according to all his ways, since You know his heart—for You alone know the hearts of men— 31 so that they may fear You and walk in Your ways

2CH 6:18 [NOTE] HEAVEN CANNOT HOLD HIM. Solomon knew heaven itself could not hold God. John 1:14 says the Word became flesh and dwelt among us.

2CH 6:30 [HEART] Solomon prayed: You alone know the hearts of men.

MIRACLES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

all the days they live in the land that You gave to our fathers.

32 And as for the foreigner who is not of Your people Israel but has come from a distant land because of Your great name and Your mighty hand and outstretched arm—when he comes and prays toward this temple, 33 then may You hear from heaven, Your dwelling place, and do according to all for which the foreigner calls to You. Then all the peoples of the earth will know Your name and fear You, as do Your people Israel, and they will know that this house I have built is called by Your Name.

34 When Your people go to war against their enemies, wherever You send them, and when they pray to You in the direction of this city You have chosen and the house I have built for Your Name, 35 then may You hear from heaven their prayer and their plea, and may You uphold their cause.

36 When they sin against You—for there is no one who does not sin—and You become angry with them and deliver them to an enemy who takes them as captives to a land far or near, 37 and when they come to their senses in the land to which they were taken, and they repent and plead with You in the land of their captors, saying, 'We have sinned and done wrong; we have acted wickedly,' 38 and when they return to You with all their heart and soul in the land of the enemies who took them captive, and when they pray in the direction of the land that You gave to their fathers, the city You have chosen, and the house I have built for Your Name, 39 then may You hear from heaven, Your dwelling place, their prayer and pleas, and may You uphold their cause. May You forgive Your people who sinned against You.

40 Now, my God, may Your eyes be open and Your ears attentive to the prayer offered in this place.

41 Now therefore, arise, O Yahweh God,
and enter Your resting place,
You and the ark of Your might.
May Your priests, O Yahweh God, be clothed with salvation,
and may Your godly ones rejoice in goodness.
42 O Yahweh God, do not reject Your anointed one.
Remember Your loving devotion to Your servant David."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Fire falls from heaven and burns up the offerings, and God's glory fills the temple. The people fall on their faces. They hold a feast for two weeks. Then God appears to Solomon at night: If My people humble themselves and pray, I will hear and heal their land. But if you turn away, this temple will become a heap of rubble.

FIRE FROM HEAVEN // PSALM 136:1–26

1 When Solomon had finished praying, fire came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices, and the glory of Yahweh filled the temple. 2 The priests were unable to enter the house of Yahweh, because the glory of Yahweh had filled it.

3 When all the Israelites saw the fire coming down and the glory of Yahweh above the temple, they bowed down on the pavement with their faces to the ground, and they worshiped and gave thanks to Yahweh:

"For He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever."

SACRIFICES OF DEDICATION // 1 KINGS 8:62–66

4 Then the king and all the people offered sacrifices before Yahweh. 5 And King Solomon offered a sacrifice of 22,000 oxen and 120,000 sheep. So the king and all the people dedicated the house of God.

6 The priests stood at their posts, as did the Levites with the musical instruments of Yahweh, which King David had made for giving thanks to Yahweh and with

- **2CH 7:1 [MIRACLE]** Fire from heaven consumes Solomon's offering and glory fills the temple
- **2CH 7:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:8 p.2104
- **2CH 7:1 [NOTE]** FIRE FROM HEAVEN. God answered with fire at the tabernacle, Leviticus 9:24, on David's altar, 1 Chronicles 21:26, and here.

THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

which David had offered praise, saying, "For His loving devotion endures forever." Across from the Levites, the priests sounded trumpets, and all the Israelites were standing.

7 Then Solomon consecrated the middle of the courtyard in front of the house of Yahweh, and there he offered the burnt offerings and the fat of the peace offerings, since the bronze altar he had made could not hold all these offerings.

8 So at that time Solomon and all Israel with him—a very great assembly of people from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of Egypt—kept the feast for seven days. 9 On the eighth day they held a solemn assembly, for the dedication of the altar had lasted seven days, and the feast seven days more.

10 On the twenty-third day of the seventh month, Solomon sent the people away to their homes, joyful and glad of heart for the good things that Yahweh had done for David, for Solomon, and for His people Israel.

YAHWEH'S RESPONSE TO SOLOMON // 1 KINGS 9:1–9

11 When Solomon had finished the house of Yahweh and the royal palace, successfully carrying out all that was in his heart to do for the house of Yahweh and for his own palace, 12 Yahweh appeared to him at night and said to him:

"I have heard your prayer and have chosen this place for Myself as a house of sacrifice. 13 If I close the sky so there is no rain, or if I command the locust to devour the land, or if I send a plague among My people, 14 and if My people who are called by My name humble themselves and pray and seek My face and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land.

15 Now My eyes will be open and My ears attentive to the prayers offered in this place. 16 For I have now chosen and consecrated this temple so that My Name may be there forever. My eyes and My heart will be there for all time.

17 And as for you, if you walk before Me as your father David walked, doing all I have commanded you, and if you keep My statutes and ordinances, 18 then I will establish your royal throne, as I covenanted with your father David when I said, 'You will never fail to have a man to rule over Israel.'

19 But if you turn away and forsake the statutes and commandments I have set before you, and if you go off to serve and worship other gods, 20 then I will uproot Israel from the soil I have given them, and I will banish from My presence this temple I have sanctified for My Name. I will make it an object of scorn and ridicule among all the peoples.

21 And when this temple has become a heap of rubble, all who pass by it will be appalled and say, 'Why has Yahweh done such a thing to this land and to this temple?' 22 And others will answer, 'Because they have forsaken Yahweh, the God of their fathers, who brought them out of the land of Egypt, and have embraced other gods, worshiping and serving them—because of this, He has brought all this disaster upon them.'"

THE BIG QUESTION

IF MY PEOPLE

What God Said

2 CHRONICLES 6:26 TO 31 · 7:11 TO 22

WHEN GOD SAID IT

Solomon prayed that God would hear His people when they prayed toward the temple, 6:26 to 31. Later, after the temple and the palace were done, God appeared to him at night with an answer, 7:11 to 12.

THE SETTING

If I shut the sky so there is no rain, or send locusts, or a plague among My people, 7:13. Then comes the promise.

FOUR STEPS

If My people who are called by My name

2CH 7:14 [NOTABLE] God's answer to Solomon's prayer at the temple. Four steps, humble, pray, seek, turn, and three promises, hear, forgive, heal. See the Big Question pages If My People, p.719.

2CH 7:16 [HEART] God said His eyes and His heart would be at His house for all time.

2CH 7:19 [DEMONIC] God warns Solomon about serving other gods

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

humble themselves, pray, seek My face, and turn from their wicked ways.

THREE PROMISES

Then I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land, 7:14. My eyes will be open and My ears attentive to the prayers in this place, 7:15.

THE WARNING

In the same breath God warned: if you turn away and serve other gods, I will uproot Israel and this temple will become a heap of rubble, 7:19 to 22.

A FAVORITE VERSE

Today 7:14 is one of the most quoted verses in the Old Testament. Many churches pray it over their own nation, especially in America.

THE QUESTION

Who are My people, and what land does God promise to heal?

Every View

1 PETER 2:9 TO 10 · JAMES 4:10 · 1 JOHN 1:9 · JONAH 3:10

VIEW 1: ISRAEL ONLY

Some say the promise was for Israel, God's covenant people, in the land He gave them, with this temple. No other nation is called by His name in the same way.

VIEW 2: GOD'S PEOPLE TODAY

Many say My people now means the church, who are called a holy nation and God's own people, 1 Peter 2:9 to 10. The healing is spiritual renewal among believers, wherever they live.

VIEW 3: ANY NATION

Many others pray it for their own country. They point to Nineveh, a foreign city that humbled itself, and God relented, Jonah 3:10. They believe God still heals lands when His people turn back.

A CAUTION

Some warn against cutting the verse off from 7:13 and 7:19 to 22. The same God who promised healing also warned of judgment.

THE PATTERN IN THIS BOOK

Chronicles shows this promise at work. Rehoboam humbled himself and was spared, 12:7. Manasseh humbled himself and was brought home, 33:12 to 13. Josiah's tender heart was heard, 34:27.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God hears those who humble themselves, pray and turn from sin. Humble yourselves before the Lord, and He will exalt you, James 4:10.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon builds cities, store cities and chariot cities, and puts the leftover Canaanite peoples to work. He moves Pharaoh's daughter out of David's city because the ark had been there. He keeps the feasts and sends ships to Ophir with Hiram's sailors for gold.

SOLOMON'S ADDITIONAL ACHIEVEMENTS // 1 KINGS 9:10–28

1 Now at the end of the twenty years during which Solomon had built the house of
Yahweh and his own palace, 2 Solomon
rebuilt the cities Hiram had given him and
settled Israelites there.

3 Then Solomon went to Hamath-zobah
and captured it. 4 He built Tadmor in the
wilderness, in addition to all the store
cities that he had built in Hamath. 5 He rebuilt Upper and Lower Beth-horon as fortified cities with walls, gates, and bars, 6
as well as Baalath, all the store cities that
belonged to Solomon, and all the cities for
his chariots and horses—whatever he desired to build in Jerusalem, Lebanon, and
throughout the land of his dominion.

7 As for all the people who remained of the
Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and
Jebusites (these people were not Israelites)— 8 their descendants who remained in the land, those whom the Israelites had not destroyed—Solomon conscripted these people to be forced laborers, as they are to this day.

9 But Solomon did not consign any of the
Israelites to slave labor, because they
were his men of war, the leaders of his
captains, and the commanders of his
chariots and cavalry. 10 They were also the
chief officers for King Solomon: 250 supervisors.

■ **2CH 8:6 [FIELD NOTES]** Solomon's builders worked at Hazor, Megiddo and Gezer too, 1 Kings 9:15. See the Solomon's Gates Field Notes page in 1 Kings, p.561.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

11 Solomon brought the daughter of
Pharaoh up from the City of David to the
palace he had built for her. For he said,
"My wife must not live in the house of
David king of Israel, because the places
the ark of Yahweh has entered are holy."
12 At that time Solomon offered burnt of-
ferings to Yahweh on the altar of Yahweh
he had built in front of the portico. 13 He
observed the daily requirement for offer-
ings according to the commandment of
Moses for Sabbaths, New Moons, and the
three annual appointed feasts—the Feast
of Unleavened Bread, the Feast of Weeks,
and the Feast of Tabernacles.
14 In keeping with the ordinances of his fa-
ther David, Solomon appointed the divi-
sions of the priests over their service, and
the Levites for their duties to offer praise
and to minister before the priests accord-
ing to the daily requirement. He also ap-
pointed gatekeepers by their divisions at
each gate, for this had been the command
of David, the man of God. 15 They did not
turn aside from the king's command re-
garding the priests or the Levites in any
matter, including that of the treasuries.
16 Thus all the work of Solomon was car-
ried out, from the day the foundation was
laid for the house of Yahweh until it was
finished. So the house of Yahweh was
completed.
17 Then Solomon went to Ezion-geber and
to Eloth on the coast of Edom. 18 So Hiram
sent him ships captained by his servants,
along with crews of experienced sailors.
They went with Solomon's servants to
Ophir and acquired from there about 17
tons of gold, which they delivered to King
Solomon.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

The queen of Sheba comes to test Solomon with hard questions. He answers every one, and she says she did not believe it until she saw it, and she had not heard the half of it. Gold pours in, the throne is ivory with six steps and twelve lions. Solomon dies after forty years.

THE QUEEN OF SHEBA // 1 KINGS 10:1–13

1 Now when the queen of Sheba heard
about the fame of Solomon, she came to
test him with difficult questions. She ar-
rived in Jerusalem with a very large
caravan—with camels bearing spices,
gold in abundance, and precious stones.
And she came to Solomon and spoke with
him about all that was in her heart. 2 And
Solomon answered all her questions;
nothing was too difficult for him to ex-
plain.
3 When the queen of Sheba saw the wis-
dom of Solomon, the palace he had built,
4 the food at his table, the seating of his
servants, the service and attire of his at-
tendants, the attire of his cupbearers, and
the burnt offerings he presented at the
house of Yahweh, it took her breath away.
5 She said to the king, "The report I heard
in my own country about your words and
wisdom is true. 6 But I did not believe the
reports until I came and saw with my own
eyes. Indeed, not half of the greatness of
your wisdom was told to me. You have far
exceeded the report I heard. 7 How
blessed are your men! How blessed are
these servants of yours who stand contin-
ually before you and hear your wisdom! 8
Blessed be Yahweh your God, who has
delighted in you to set you on His throne
to be king for Yahweh your God. Because
your God loved Israel enough to establish
them forever, He has made you king over
them to carry out justice and righteous-
ness."
9 Then she gave the king 4½ tons of gold,
a great quantity of spices, and precious
stones. There had never been such spices
as those the queen of Sheba gave to King
Solomon.
10 (The servants of Hiram and of Solomon
who brought gold from Ophir also brought
algum wood and precious stones. 11 The
king made the algum wood into steps for
the house of Yahweh and for the king's
palace, and into lyres and harps for the

■ **2CH 9:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this
→ MT 12:42 p.1567

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

singers. Never before had anything like them been seen in the land of Judah.)

12 King Solomon gave the queen of Sheba all she desired—whatever she asked—far more than she had brought the king. Then she left and returned to her own country, along with her servants.

SOLOMON'S WEALTH AND SPLENDOR // 1 KINGS 10:14–29

13 The weight of gold that came to Solomon each year was about 25 tons, 14 not including the revenue from the merchants and traders. And all the Arabian kings and governors of the land also brought gold and silver to Solomon.

15 King Solomon made two hundred large shields of hammered gold; 15 pounds of hammered gold went into each shield. 16 He also made three hundred small shields of hammered gold; 7½ pounds of gold went into each shield. And the king put them in the House of the Forest of Lebanon.

17 Additionally, the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with pure gold. 18 The throne had six steps, and a footstool of gold was attached to it. There were armrests on both sides of the seat, with a lion standing beside each armrest. 19 Twelve lions stood on the six steps, one at either end of each step. Nothing like this had ever been made for any kingdom.

20 All King Solomon's drinking cups were gold, and all the utensils of the House of the Forest of Lebanon were pure gold. There was no silver, because it was accounted as nothing in the days of Solomon. 21 For the king had the ships of Tarshish that went with Hiram's servants, and once every three years the ships of Tarshish would arrive bearing gold, silver, ivory, apes, and peacocks.

22 So King Solomon surpassed all the kings of the earth in riches and wisdom. 23 All the kings of the earth sought an audience with Solomon to hear the wisdom that God had put in his heart. 24 Year after year, each visitor would bring his tribute: articles of silver and gold, clothing, weapons, spices, horses, and mules.

25 Solomon had 4,000 stalls for horses and chariots, and 12,000 horses, which he stationed in the chariot cities and also with him in Jerusalem. 26 He reigned over all the kings from the Euphrates to the land of the Philistines, as far as the border of Egypt. 27 The king made silver as common in Jerusalem as stones, and cedar as abundant as sycamore in the foothills. 28 Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from all the lands.

THE DEATH OF SOLOMON // 1 KINGS 11:41–43

29 As for the rest of the acts of Solomon, from beginning to end, are they not written in the Records of Nathan the Prophet, in the Prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in the Visions of Iddo the Seer concerning Jeroboam son of Nebat? 30 Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel forty years. 31 And Solomon rested with his fathers and was buried in the city of his father David. And his son Rehoboam reigned in his place.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Solomon's son Rehoboam goes to Shechem to be made king. The people ask for a lighter load. The old men say, Be kind. The young men say, Tell them my little finger is thicker than my father's waist. Rehoboam listens to the young men, and ten tribes walk out.

REBELLION AGAINST REHOBOAM // 1 KINGS 12:1–15

1 Then Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel had gone there to make him king. 2 When Jeroboam son of Nebat heard about this, he returned from Egypt, where he had fled from King Solomon. 3 So they sent for Jeroboam, and he and all Israel came to Rehoboam and said, 4 "Your father put a heavy yoke on us. But now you

- **2CH 9:13 [NOTE]** In the Hebrew, the number here is 666, the same as 1 Kings 10:14.
- **2CH 9:26 [FULFILLS]** The land from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates would belong to Abraham's descendants ← GEN 15:18 p.68
- **2CH 9:26 [NOTE]** FROM THE RIVER. See the Big Question pages Solomon's Kingdom in 1 Kings, p.549.
- **2CH 9:29 [NOTE]** THE SOURCES. The writer names the records of Nathan, Ahijah and Iddo. See the Big Question pages Who Wrote Chronicles? in 1 Chronicles, p.670.
- **2CH 9:31 [NOTE]** LEFT OUT. Chronicles does not tell about Solomon's 700 wives or his idols, 1 Kings 11. See Solomon's Wisdom and 700 Wives in 1 Kings, p.564.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

must lighten the burden of your father's service and the heavy yoke he put on us, and we will serve you."

5 Rehoboam answered, "Come back to me in three days." So the people departed.

6 Then King Rehoboam consulted with the elders who had served his father Solomon during his lifetime. "How do you advise me to respond to these people?" he asked.

7 They replied, "If you will be kind to these people and please them by speaking kind words to them, they will be your servants forever."

8 But Rehoboam rejected the advice of the elders; instead, he consulted the young men who had grown up with him and served him. 9 He asked them, "What message do you advise that we send back to these people who have spoken to me, saying, 'Lighten the yoke your father put on us'?"

10 The young men who had grown up with him replied, "This is how you should answer these people who said to you, 'Your father made our yoke heavy, but you must make it lighter.' This is what you should tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist! 11 Whereas my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. Whereas my father scourged you with whips, I will scourge you with scorpions.'"

12 After three days, Jeroboam and all the people returned to Rehoboam, since the king had said, "Come back to me on the third day." 13 And the king answered them harshly. King Rehoboam rejected the advice of the elders 14 and spoke to them as the young men had advised, saying, "Whereas my father made your yoke heavy, I will add to your yoke. Whereas my father scourged you with whips, I will scourge you with scorpions."

15 So the king did not listen to the people, and indeed this turn of events was from God, in order that Yahweh might fulfill the word that He had spoken through Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam son of Nebat.

THE KINGDOM DIVIDED // 1 KINGS 12:16–19

16 When all Israel saw that the king had refused to listen to them, they answered the king:

"What portion do we have in David,
and what inheritance in the son of Jesse?
To your tents, O Israel!
Look now to your own house, O David!"

So all the Israelites went home, 17 but Rehoboam still reigned over the Israelites living in the cities of Judah.

18 Then King Rehoboam sent out Hadoram, who was in charge of the forced labor, but the Israelites stoned him to death. And King Rehoboam mounted his chariot in haste and escaped to Jerusalem. 19 So to this day Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Rehoboam gets ready to fight Israel, but God says, Don't fight your brothers. So he builds fortified cities instead. Priests and Levites from the north, who were kicked out by Jeroboam, move to Judah. Rehoboam ends up with 18 wives, 60 concubines and 88 children.

SHEMAIAH'S PROPHECY // 1 KINGS 12:20–24

1 When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he mobilized the house of Judah and Benjamin—180,000 chosen warriors—to fight against Israel and restore the kingdom to Rehoboam. 2 But the word of Yahweh came to Shemaiah the man of God: 3 "Tell Rehoboam son of Solomon king of Judah and all the Israelites in Judah and Benjamin 4 that this is what Yahweh says: 'You are not to go up and fight against your brothers. Each of you must return home, for this is My doing.'"

So they listened to the words of Yahweh and turned back from going against Jeroboam.

2CH 10:15 [NOTE] THE SPLIT. This turn of events was from God, to fulfill what Ahijah had said, 1 Kings 11:29 to 39. See the Big Question pages Why the Kingdom Split in 1 Kings, p.569.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

REHOBOAM FORTIFIES JUDAH

5 Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem, and he
built up cities for defense in Judah. 6 He
built up Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa, 7 Beth-
zur, Soco, Adullam, 8 Gath, Mareshah,
Ziph, 9 Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah, 10 Zorah,
Aijalon, and Hebron, the fortified cities in
Judah and Benjamin. 11 He strengthened
their fortifications and put officers in
them, with supplies of food, oil, and wine.
12 He also put shields and spears in all the
cities and strengthened them greatly. So
Judah and Benjamin belonged to him.

JEROBOAM FORSAKES THE PRIESTS AND LEVITES

13 Moreover, the priests and Levites from
all their districts throughout Israel stood
with Rehoboam. 14 For the Levites left their
pasturelands and their possessions and
went to Judah and Jerusalem, because
Jeroboam and his sons had rejected them
as priests of Yahweh. 15 And Jeroboam
appointed his own priests for the high
places and for the goat demons and calf
idols he had made.

16 Those from every tribe of Israel who had
set their hearts to seek Yahweh their God
followed the Levites to Jerusalem to sac-
rifice to Yahweh, the God of their fathers.
17 So they strengthened the kingdom of
Judah and supported Rehoboam son of
Solomon for three years, because they
walked for three years in the way of David
and Solomon.

REHOBOAM'S FAMILY

18 And Rehoboam married Mahalath, who
was the daughter of David's son Jerimoth
and of Abihail, the daughter of Jesse's
son Eliab. 19 She bore sons to him: Jeush,
Shemariah, and Zaham.

20 After her, he married Maacah daughter
of Absalom, and she bore to him Abijah,
Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith. 21 Rehoboam
loved Maacah daughter of Absalom more
than all his wives and concubines. In all,
he had eighteen wives and sixty concu-
bines, and he was the father of twenty-
eight sons and sixty daughters.

22 Rehoboam appointed Abijah son of
Maacah as chief prince among his broth-
ers, intending to make him king. 23 Re-
hoboam also acted wisely by dispersing
some of his sons throughout the districts
of Judah and Benjamin, and to all the for-
tified cities. He gave them abundant pro-
visions and sought many wives for them.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Once Rehoboam feels strong, he and Judah drop God's law. Shishak king of Egypt marches in with chariots and an army without number. The prophet Shemaiah says, You left Me, so I left you. They humble themselves, so God holds back, but Shishak still carries off the temple treasures and the gold shields.

SHISHAK RAIDS JERUSALEM // 1 KINGS 14:25–28

1 After Rehoboam had established his sov-
ereignty and royal power, he and all Israel
with him forsook the Law of Yahweh. 2 In
the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign, be-
cause they had been unfaithful to Yah-
weh, Shishak king of Egypt attacked
Jerusalem 3 with 1,200 chariots, 60,000
horsemen, and countless troops who
came with him out of Egypt—Libyans,
Sukkites, and Cushites. 4 He captured the
fortified cities of Judah and came as far
as Jerusalem.

5 Then Shemaiah the prophet came to Re-
hoboam and the leaders of Judah who
had gathered at Jerusalem because of
Shishak, and he said to them, "This is
what Yahweh says: 'You have forsaken
Me; therefore, I have forsaken you into the
hand of Shishak.'"

6 So the leaders of Israel and the king
humbled themselves and said, "Yahweh is
righteous."

7 When Yahweh saw that they had hum-
bled themselves, the word of Yahweh
came to Shemaiah, saying, "They have
humbled themselves; I will not destroy
them, but will soon grant them deliver-

2CH 11:15 [DEMONIC] Jeroboam sets up goat demons and calf idols

2CH 11:15 [FIELD NOTES] Jeroboam's calf shrines were at Dan and Bethel. See The High Place at Dan Field Notes page in 1 Kings, p.570.

2CH 12:2 [FIELD NOTES] Shishak carved his own list of the towns he took on a temple wall in Egypt. See the Shishak at Karnak Field Notes page in 1 Kings, p.576.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ance. My wrath will not be poured out on Jerusalem through Shishak. 8 Nevertheless, they will become his servants, so that they may learn the difference between serving Me and serving the kings of other lands."

9 So King Shishak of Egypt attacked Jerusalem and seized the treasures of the house of Yahweh and of the royal palace. He took everything, including the gold shields that Solomon had made.

10 Then King Rehoboam made bronze shields in their place and committed them to the care of the captains of the guard on duty at the entrance to the royal palace. 11 And whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would go with him, bearing the shields, and later they would return them to the guardroom.

12 Because Rehoboam humbled himself, the anger of Yahweh turned away from him, and He did not destroy him completely. Indeed, conditions were good in Judah.

REHOBOAM'S REIGN AND DEATH // 1 KINGS 14:21–24

13 Thus King Rehoboam established himself in Jerusalem and reigned. He was forty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes of Israel in which to put His Name. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite. 14 And Rehoboam did evil because he did not set his heart to seek Yahweh.

15 Now the acts of Rehoboam, from first to last, are they not written in the records of Shemaiah the Prophet and of Iddo the Seer concerning the genealogies? There was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam throughout their days. 16 And Rehoboam rested with his fathers and was buried in the City of David. And his son Abijah reigned in his place.

- **2CH 12:8 [PROPHECY]** Judah would serve Shishak of Egypt for a time → 2CH 12:9 p.725
- **2CH 12:9 [FULFILLS]** Judah would serve Shishak of Egypt for a time ← 2CH 12:8 p.725
- **2CH 12:14 [HEART]** Rehoboam did evil because he did not set his heart to seek the Lord.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Abijah king of Judah stands on a mountain and preaches a sermon to Jeroboam's army: You have golden calves, we have God. Meanwhile Jeroboam sneaks troops around behind him. Judah is surrounded, they cry out to God, the priests blow the trumpets, and God gives Judah the win.

ABIJAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 1 KINGS 15:1–8

1 In the eighteenth year of Jeroboam's reign, Abijah became king of Judah, 2 and he reigned in Jerusalem three years. His mother's name was Micaiah daughter of Uriel; she was from Gibeah.

And there was war between Abijah and Jeroboam. 3 Abijah went into battle with an army of 400,000 chosen men, while Jeroboam drew up in formation against him with 800,000 chosen and mighty men of valor.

CIVIL WAR AGAINST JEROBOAM

4 Then Abijah stood on Mount Zemaraim in the hill country of Ephraim and said, "Hear me, O Jeroboam and all Israel! 5 Do you not know that Yahweh, the God of Israel, has given the kingship of Israel to David and his descendants forever by a covenant of salt? 6 Yet Jeroboam son of Nebat, a servant of Solomon son of David, rose up and rebelled against his master. 7 Then worthless and wicked men gathered around him to resist Rehoboam son of Solomon when he was young, inexperienced, and unable to resist them.

8 And now you think you can resist the kingdom of Yahweh, which is in the hands of David's descendants. You are indeed a vast army, and you have with you the golden calves that Jeroboam made for you as gods. 9 But did you not drive out the priests of Yahweh, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites? And did you not make priests for yourselves as do the peoples of other lands? Now whoever comes to consecrate himself with a young bull and seven rams can become a priest of things that are not gods.

- **2CH 13:8 [DEMONIC]** Abijah calls out Jeroboam's golden calf gods

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

10 But as for us, Yahweh is our God. We
have not forsaken Him; the priests who
minister to Yahweh are sons of Aaron, and
the Levites attend to their duties. 11 Every
morning and every evening they present
burnt offerings and fragrant incense to
Yahweh. They set out the rows of show-
bread on the ceremonially clean table,
and every evening they light the lamps of
the gold lampstand. We are carrying out
the requirements of Yahweh our God,
while you have forsaken Him.

12 Now behold, God Himself is with us as
our head, and His priests with their trum-
pets sound the battle call against you. O
children of Israel, do not fight against
Yahweh, the God of your fathers, for you
will not succeed."

13 Now Jeroboam had sent troops around
to ambush from the rear, so that while he
was in front of Judah, the ambush was
behind them. 14 When Judah turned and
discovered that the battle was both before
and behind them, they cried out to Yah-
weh. Then the priests blew the trumpets,
15 and the men of Judah raised the battle
cry. And when they raised the cry, God
routed Jeroboam and all Israel before Abi-
jah and Judah.

16 So the Israelites fled before Judah, and
God delivered them into their hands. 17
Then Abijah and his people struck them
with a mighty blow, and 500,000 chosen
men of Israel fell slain. 18 Thus the Is-
raelites were subdued at that time, and
the men of Judah prevailed because they
relied on Yahweh, the God of their fathers.

19 Abijah pursued Jeroboam and captured
some cities from him: Bethel, Jeshanah,
and Ephron, along with their villages.

20 Jeroboam did not again recover his
power during the days of Abijah, and Yah-
weh struck him down and he died.

21 But Abijah grew strong, married fourteen
wives, and became the father of twenty-
two sons and sixteen daughters. 22 Now
the rest of the acts of Abijah, along with
his ways and his words, are written in the
Treatise of the Prophet Iddo.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Asa tears down the foreign altars and Asherah poles and tells Judah to seek God. The land has peace and Asa builds cities. Then Zerah the Cushite comes with a huge army. Asa prays, Help us, for we rely on You, and God strikes the Cushites.

ASA REIGNS IN JUDAH // 1 KINGS 15:9–15

1 Then Abijah rested with his fathers and
was buried in the City of David. And his
son Asa reigned in his place, and in his
days the land was at peace for ten years.

2 And Asa did what was good and right in
the eyes of Yahweh his God. 3 He removed
the foreign altars and high places, shat-
tered the sacred pillars, and chopped
down the Asherah poles. 4 He com-
manded the people of Judah to seek Yah-
weh, the God of their fathers, and to ob-
serve the law and the commandments. 5
He also removed the high places and in-
cense altars from all the cities of Judah,
and under him the kingdom was at peace.

6 Because the land was at peace, Asa built
fortified cities in Judah. In those days no
one made war with him, because Yahweh
had given him rest. 7 So he said to the
people of Judah, "Let us build these cities
and surround them with walls and towers,
with doors and bars. The land is still ours
because we have sought Yahweh our
God. We have sought Him, and He has
given us rest on every side." So they built
and prospered.

8 Asa had an army of 300,000 men from
Judah bearing large shields and spears,
and 280,000 men from Benjamin bearing
small shields and drawing the bow. All
these were mighty men of valor.

9 Then Zerah the Cushite came against
them with an army of 1,000,000 men and
300 chariots, and they advanced as far as
Mareshah. 10 So Asa marched out against

2CH 14:3 [DEMONIC] Asa tears down altars and Asherah poles

2CH 14:9 [NOTE] ZERAH THE CUSHITE. Cush was the land south of Egypt. Some think Zerah was a general sent by Pharaoh Osorkon I, who ruled after Shishak, but no record outside the Bible names him.

THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

him and lined up in battle formation in the Valley of Zephathah near Mareshah.

11 Then Asa cried out to Yahweh his God: "O Yahweh, there is no one besides You to help the powerless against the mighty. Help us, O Yahweh our God, for we rely on You, and in Your name we have come against this multitude. O Yahweh, You are our God. Do not let a mere mortal prevail against You."

12 So Yahweh struck down the Cushites before Asa and Judah, and the Cushites fled. 13 Then Asa and his army pursued them as far as Gerar. The Cushites fell and could not recover, for they were crushed before Yahweh and His army. So the people of Judah carried off a great amount of plunder 14 and attacked all the cities around Gerar, because the terror of Yahweh had fallen upon them. They plundered all the cities, since there was much plunder there. 15 They also attacked the tents of the herdsmen and carried off many sheep and camels. Then they returned to Jerusalem.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

The prophet Azariah meets Asa: If you seek Him, He will be found by you. Asa gets brave, removes the idols, and all Judah makes a covenant to seek God with all their heart. Asa even removes his grandmother as queen mother for making an Asherah idol. The land has rest.

THE PROPHECY OF AZARIAH

1 Now the Spirit of God came upon Azariah son of Oded. 2 So he went out to meet Asa and said to him, "Listen to me, Asa and all Judah and Benjamin. Yahweh is with you when you are with Him. If you seek Him, He will be found by you, but if you forsake Him, He will forsake you. 3 For many years Israel has been without the true God, without a priest to instruct them, and without the law. 4 But in their distress they turned to Yahweh, the God of Israel, and sought Him, and He was found by them. 5 In those days there was no safety for travelers, because the residents of the lands had many conflicts. 6 Nation was crushed by nation, and city by city, for God afflicted them with all kinds of adversity. 7 But as for you, be strong; do not be discouraged, for your work will be rewarded."

ASA'S REFORMS // 1 KINGS 15:9–15

8 When Asa heard these words and the prophecy of Azariah son of Oded the prophet, he took courage and removed the detestable idols from the whole land of Judah and Benjamin and from the cities he had captured in the hill country of Ephraim. He then restored the altar of Yahweh that was in front of the portico of Yahweh's temple. 9 And he assembled all Judah and Benjamin, along with those from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon who had settled among them, for great numbers had come over to him from Israel when they saw that Yahweh his God was with him.

10 So they gathered together in Jerusalem in the third month of the fifteenth year of Asa's reign. 11 At that time they sacrificed to Yahweh seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep from all the plunder they had brought back. 12 Then they entered into a covenant to seek Yahweh, the God of their fathers, with all their heart and soul. 13 And whoever would not seek Yahweh, the God of Israel, would be put to death, whether young or old, man or woman. 14 They took an oath to Yahweh with a loud voice, with shouting, trumpets, and rams' horns. 15 And all Judah rejoiced over the oath, for they had sworn it with all their heart. They had sought Him earnestly, and He was found by them. So Yahweh gave them rest on every side.

16 King Asa also removed his grandmother Maacah from her position as queen mother because she had made a detestable Asherah pole. Asa chopped down the pole, crushed it, and burned it in the

2CH 15:2 [NOTABLE] The prophet Azariah's whole message to King Asa in one line. Asa listened, and Judah had peace.

2CH 15:8 [DEMONIC] Asa removes the detestable idols from the land

2CH 15:12 [HEART] Judah promised to seek Yahweh with all their heart and soul.

2CH 15:15 [HEART] They swore it with all their heart, sought God, and He was found by them.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Kidron Valley. 17 The high places were not removed from Israel, but Asa's heart was fully devoted all his days. 18 And he brought into the house of God the silver and gold and the articles that he and his father had dedicated.

19 And there was no war until the thirty-fifth year of Asa's reign.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Late in his reign Asa pays the king of Aram to attack Israel, instead of trusting God. The seer Hanani says, God's eyes run through the whole earth looking for hearts fully His. Asa throws Hanani in prison. He gets a disease in his feet and seeks only the doctors, not God.

WAR BETWEEN ASA AND BAASHA // 1 KINGS 15:16–22

1 In the thirty-sixth year of Asa's reign, Baasha king of Israel went up against Judah and fortified Ramah to prevent anyone from leaving or entering the territory of Asa king of Judah. 2 So Asa withdrew the silver and gold from the treasuries of the house of Yahweh and the royal palace, and he sent it with this message to Ben-hadad king of Aram, who was ruling in Damascus: 3 "Let there be a treaty between me and you as there was between my father and your father. See, I have sent you silver and gold. Now go and break your treaty with Baasha king of Israel, so that he will withdraw from me."

4 And Ben-hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies against the cities of Israel, conquering Ijon, Dan, Abel-maim, and all the store cities of Naphtali.

5 When Baasha learned of this, he stopped fortifying Ramah and abandoned his work. 6 Then King Asa brought all the men of Judah, and they carried away the stones of Ramah and the timbers Baasha had used for building. And with these materials he built up Geba and Mizpah.

HANANI'S MESSAGE TO ASA

7 At that time Hanani the seer came to King Asa of Judah and told him, "Because you have relied on the king of Aram and not on Yahweh your God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped from your hand. 8 Were not the Cushites and Libyans a vast army with many chariots and horsemen? Yet because you relied on Yahweh, He delivered them into your hand. 9 For the eyes of Yahweh roam to and fro over all the earth, to show Himself strong on behalf of those whose hearts are fully devoted to Him. You have acted foolishly in this matter. From now on, therefore, you will be at war."

10 Asa was angry with the seer and became so enraged over this matter that he put the man in prison. And at the same time Asa oppressed some of the people.

THE DEATH AND BURIAL OF ASA

11 Now the acts of Asa, from beginning to end, are indeed written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. 12 In the thirty-ninth year of his reign, Asa became diseased in his feet, and his disease became increasingly severe. Yet even in his illness he did not seek Yahweh, but only the physicians.

13 So in the forty-first year of his reign, Asa died and rested with his fathers. 14 And he was buried in the tomb that he had cut out for himself in the City of David. They laid him on a bier that was full of spices and various blended perfumes; then they made a great fire in his honor.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Jehoshaphat walks in the early ways of his father David, and his heart delights in God's ways. He sends officials and Levites through the towns with the Book of the Law to teach the people. The nations around are afraid to attack him, and the Philistines and Arabs bring him gifts.

2CH 15:16 [DEMONIC] Asa removes his grandmother for her Asherah pole

2CH 15:17 [HEART] The high places stayed, but Asa's heart was fully devoted to God all his days.

2CH 15:17 [FIELD NOTES] A small temple from the time of the kings was found at Arad in Judah. See The Arad Shrine Field Notes page in 1 Kings, p.577.

2CH 16:9 [HEART] God looks all over the earth for people whose hearts are fully His.

THE HEART DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JEHOSHAPHAT REIGNS IN JUDAH // 1 KINGS 15:23–24

1 Asa's son Jehoshaphat reigned in his
place, and he strengthened himself
against Israel. 2 He stationed troops in
every fortified city of Judah and put gar-
risons in the land of Judah and in the
cities of Ephraim that his father Asa had
captured.

3 Now Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat be-
cause he walked in the earlier ways of his
father David. He did not seek the Baals, 4
but he sought the God of his father and
walked by His commandments rather than
the practices of Israel. 5 So Yahweh estab-
lished the kingdom in his hand, and all Ju-
dah brought him tribute, so that he had an
abundance of riches and honor. 6 And his
heart took delight in the ways of Yahweh;
furthermore, he removed the high places
and Asherah poles from Judah.

7 In the third year of his reign, Je-
hoshaphat sent his officials Ben-hail,
Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Mica-
iah to teach in the cities of Judah, 8 ac-
companied by certain Levites—Shemaiah,
Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemi-
ramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah,
and Tob-adonijah—along with the priests
Elishama and Jehoram. 9 They taught
throughout Judah, taking with them the
Book of the Law of Yahweh. They went
throughout the towns of Judah and taught
the people.

10 And the dread of Yahweh fell upon all
the kingdoms of the lands that sur-
rounded Judah, so that they did not make
war against Jehoshaphat. 11 Some
Philistines also brought gifts and silver as
tribute to Jehoshaphat, and the Arabs
brought him 7,700 rams and 7,700 goats
from their flocks.

12 Jehoshaphat grew stronger and
stronger, and he built fortresses and store
cities in Judah 13 and kept vast supplies in
the cities of Judah. He also had warriors
in Jerusalem who were mighty men of
valor. 14 These are their numbers accord-
ing to the houses of their fathers:

From Judah, the commanders of thou-
sands:

Adnah the commander, and with him
300,000 mighty men of valor;
15 next to him, Jehohanan the comman-
der, and with him 280,000;
16 and next to him, Amasiah son of
Zichri, the volunteer for Yahweh, and
with him 200,000 mighty men of
valor.

17 From Benjamin:

Eliada, a mighty man of valor, and with
him 200,000 armed with bows and
shields;
18 and next to him, Jehozabad, and with
him 180,000 armed for battle.

19 These were the men who served the
king, besides those he stationed in the
fortified cities throughout Judah.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Jehoshaphat makes a marriage alliance with wicked King Ahab and agrees to go to war with him. Four hundred prophets say, Go up and win. Jehoshaphat asks, Is there not still a real prophet? Micaiah sees Israel scattered like sheep. Ahab disguises himself, but a random arrow finds him anyway.

JEHOSHAPHAT ALLIES WITH AHAB // 1 KINGS 22:1–12

1 Now Jehoshaphat had an abundance of
riches and honor, and he allied himself
with Ahab by marriage. 2 And some years
later he went down to visit Ahab in
Samaria, where Ahab sacrificed many
sheep and cattle for him and the people
with him and urged him to march up to
Ramoth-gilead.

3 Ahab king of Israel asked Jehoshaphat
king of Judah, "Will you go with me
against Ramoth-gilead?"

And Jehoshaphat replied, "I am as you
are, and my people are your people; we
will join you in the war."

2CH 17:3 [DEMONIC] Jehoshaphat does not seek the Baals
2CH 17:6 [HEART] Jehoshaphat's heart took delight in Yahweh's ways, so he tore down the idols.
2CH 17:6 [DEMONIC] Jehoshaphat removes high places and Asherah poles

2CH 18:1 [FIELD NOTES] Ahab is named on an Assyrian stone. See The Kurkh Monolith Field Notes page in 1 Kings, p.582.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

4 But Jehoshaphat also said to the king of Israel, "Please inquire first for the word of Yahweh."

5 So the king of Israel assembled the prophets, four hundred men, and asked them, "Should we go to war against Ramoth-gilead, or should we refrain?"

"Go up," they replied, "and God will deliver it into the hand of the king."

6 But Jehoshaphat asked, "Is there not still a prophet of Yahweh here of whom we can inquire?"

7 The king of Israel answered, "There is still one man through whom we can inquire of Yahweh, but I hate him because he never prophesies anything good for me, but only bad. He is Micaiah son of Imlah."

"The king should not say that!" Jehoshaphat replied.

8 So the king of Israel called one of his officials and said, "Bring Micaiah son of Imlah at once."

9 Dressed in royal attire, the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah were sitting on their thrones at the threshing floor by the entrance of the gate of Samaria, with all the prophets prophesying before them.

10 Now Zedekiah son of Chenaanah had made for himself iron horns and declared, "This is what Yahweh says: 'With these you shall gore the Arameans until they are finished off.'"

11 And all the prophets were prophesying the same, saying, "Go up to Ramoth-gilead and triumph, for Yahweh will deliver it into the hand of the king."

MICAIAH PROPHESIES AGAINST AHAB // 1 KINGS 22:13–28

12 Then the messenger who had gone to call Micaiah instructed him, "Behold, with one accord the words of the prophets are favorable to the king. So please let your words be like theirs, and speak favorably."

13 But Micaiah said, "As surely as Yahweh lives, I will speak whatever my God tells me."

14 When Micaiah arrived, the king asked him, "Micaiah, should we go to war against Ramoth-gilead, or should we refrain?"

"Go up and triumph," Micaiah replied, "for they will be delivered into your hand."

15 But the king said to him, "How many times must I make you swear not to tell me anything but the truth in the name of Yahweh?"

16 So Micaiah declared:

"I saw all Israel scattered on the hills
like sheep without a shepherd.
And Yahweh said, 'These people have no master;
let each one return home in peace.'"

17 Then the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you that he never prophesies good for me, but only bad?"

18 Micaiah continued, "Therefore hear the word of Yahweh: I saw Yahweh sitting on His throne, and all the host of heaven standing on His right and on His left.

19 And Yahweh said, 'Who will entice Ahab king of Israel to march up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?'

And one suggested this, and another that.

20 Then a spirit came forward, stood before Yahweh, and said, 'I will entice him.'

'By what means?' asked Yahweh.

21 And he replied, 'I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouths of all his prophets.'

'You will surely entice him and prevail,' said Yahweh. 'Go and do it.'

22 So you see, Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouths of these prophets of yours, and Yahweh has pronounced disaster against you."

23 Then Zedekiah son of Chenaanah went up, struck Micaiah in the face, and demanded, "Which way did the Spirit of

2CH 18:16 [PROPHECY] Micaiah saw Israel scattered like sheep with no shepherd → 2CH 18:33-34 p.731

2CH 18:16 [NOTE] MICAIAH. This chapter is almost the same as 1 Kings 22. God's lines in Micaiah's vision print red. See the Big Question pages The Lying Spirit in 1 Kings, p.593.

2CH 18:20 [DEMONIC] A lying spirit in the mouth of Ahab's prophets

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Yahweh go when He departed from me to speak with you?"

24 Micaiah replied, "You will soon see, on that day when you go and hide in an inner room."

25 And the king of Israel declared, "Take Micaiah and return him to Amon the governor of the city and to Joash the king's son, 26 and tell them that this is what the king says: 'Put this man in prison and feed him only bread and water until I return safely.'"

27 But Micaiah replied, "If you ever return safely, Yahweh has not spoken through me." Then he added, "Take heed, all you people!"

AHAB'S DEFEAT AND DEATH // 1 KINGS 22:29–40

28 So the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah went up to Ramoth-gilead. 29 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself and go into battle, but you wear your royal robes." So the king of Israel disguised himself and went into battle.

30 Now the king of Aram had ordered his chariot commanders, "Do not fight with anyone, small or great, except the king of Israel."

31 When the chariot commanders saw Jehoshaphat, they said, "This is the king of Israel!" So they turned to fight against him, but Jehoshaphat cried out, and Yahweh helped him. God drew them away from him. 32 And when the chariot commanders saw that he was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him.

33 However, a certain man drew his bow without taking special aim, and he struck the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. So the king said to his charioteer, "Turn around and take me out of the battle, for I am badly wounded!"

34 The battle raged throughout that day, and the king of Israel propped himself up in his chariot facing the Arameans until evening. And at sunset he died.

2CH 18:33 [FULFILLS] Micaiah saw Israel scattered like sheep with no shepherd ← 2CH 18:16 p.730

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

The seer Jehu son of Hanani scolds Jehoshaphat: Should you help the wicked and love those who hate God? Jehoshaphat goes back out among the people to turn them to God. He sets up judges in every town and tells them, Judge carefully, for God takes no bribes.

JEHOSHAPHAT REPROVED BY JEHU

1 When Jehoshaphat king of Judah had returned safely to his home in Jerusalem, 2 Jehu son of Hanani the seer went out to confront him and said to King Jehoshaphat, "Should you help the wicked and love those who hate Yahweh? Because of this, the wrath of Yahweh is upon you. 3 However, some good is found in you, for you have removed the Asherah poles from the land and have set your heart on seeking God."

JEHOSHAPHAT'S REFORMS

4 Jehoshaphat lived in Jerusalem, and once again he went out among the people from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim and turned them back to Yahweh, the God of their fathers. 5 He appointed judges in the land, in each of the fortified cities of Judah. 6 Then he said to the judges, "Consider carefully what you do, for you are not judging for man, but for Yahweh, who is with you when you render judgment. 7 And now, may the fear of Yahweh be upon you. Be careful what you do, for with Yahweh our God there is no injustice or partiality or bribery."

8 Moreover, Jehoshaphat appointed in Jerusalem some of the Levites, priests, and heads of the Israelite families to judge on behalf of Yahweh and to settle disputes. And they lived in Jerusalem. 9 He commanded them, saying, "You must serve faithfully and with a whole heart in the fear of Yahweh. 10 For every dispute that comes before you from your brothers who dwell in their cities—whether it regards bloodshed or some other violation of law, commandments, statutes, or

2CH 19:3 [HEART] Jehoshaphat had some good in him because he set his heart to seek God.
2CH 19:3 [DEMONIC] Jehoshaphat praised for removing Asherah poles

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

ordinances—you are to warn them, so that they will not incur guilt before Yahweh and wrath will not come upon you and your brothers. Do this, and you will not incur guilt.

11 Note that Amariah, the chief priest, will be over you in all that pertains to Yahweh, and Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the ruler of the house of Judah, in all that pertains to the king. And the Levites will serve as officers before you. Act resolutely; may Yahweh be with the upright!"

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Three armies come against Judah at once. Jehoshaphat prays, We do not know what to do, but our eyes are on You. God says, The battle is not yours. Judah's army marches out with the choir in front, and God sets ambushes so the enemies wipe each other out. It takes three days to collect the plunder.

WAR AGAINST JEHOSHAPHAT

1 After this, the Moabites and Ammonites, together with some of the Meunites, came to make war against Jehoshaphat. 2 Then some men came and told Jehoshaphat, "A vast army is coming against you from Edom, from beyond the Sea; they are already in Hazazon-tamar" (that is, Engedi).

3 Jehoshaphat was alarmed and set his face to seek Yahweh. And he proclaimed a fast throughout Judah. 4 So the people of Judah gathered to seek Yahweh, and indeed, they came from all the cities of Judah to seek Him.

JEHOSHAPHAT'S PRAYER

5 Then Jehoshaphat stood in the assembly of Judah and Jerusalem in the house of Yahweh in front of the new courtyard 6 and said, "O Yahweh, God of our fathers, are You not the God who is in heaven, and do You not rule over all the kingdoms of the nations? Power and might are in Your hand, and no one can stand against You.

7 *Our God, did You not drive out the inhabitants of this land before Your people Israel and give it forever to the descendants of Abraham Your friend?* 8 They have lived in the land and have built in it a sanctuary for Your Name, saying, 9 'If disaster comes upon us—whether sword or judgment, plague or famine—we will stand before this temple and before You, for Your Name is in this temple. We will cry out to You in our distress, and You will hear us and save us.'

10 And now, here are the men of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, whom You did not let Israel invade when they came out of the land of Egypt. So Israel turned away from them and did not destroy them. 11 See how they are repaying us by coming to drive us out of the possession that You gave us as an inheritance.

12 Our God, will You not judge them? For we are powerless before this vast army that comes against us. We do not know what to do, but our eyes are upon You."

13 Meanwhile all the men of Judah, with their wives and children and little ones, were standing before Yahweh.

THE PROPHECY OF JAHAZIEL

14 Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon Jahaziel son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, a Levite from Asaph's descendants, as he stood in the midst of the assembly. 15 And he said, "Listen, all you people of Judah and Jerusalem! Listen, King Jehoshaphat! This is what Yahweh says: 'Do not be afraid or discouraged because of this vast army, for the battle does not belong to you, but to God. 16 Tomorrow you are to march down against them. You will see them coming up the Ascent of Ziz, and you will find them at the end of the valley facing the Wilderness of Jeruel. 17 You need not fight this battle. Take up your positions, stand firm, and see the salvation of Yahweh on your behalf, O Judah and Jerusalem. Do not be afraid or

- **2CH 20:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 2:23 p.2004
- **2CH 20:12 [NOTABLE]** King Jehoshaphat's prayer when three armies came at once. He admitted he had no plan, and looked to God.
- **2CH 20:15 [NOTABLE]** God's answer through Jahaziel. Judah's army went out singing, and God turned the enemy armies against each other, 20:22 to 23.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

discouraged. Go out and face them tomorrow, for Yahweh is with you.'"

18 Then Jehoshaphat bowed facedown, and all the people of Judah and Jerusalem fell down before Yahweh to worship Him. 19 And the Levites from the Kohathites and Korahites stood up to praise Yahweh, the God of Israel, shouting in a very loud voice.

THE ENEMIES DESTROY THEMSELVES

20 Early in the morning they got up and left for the Wilderness of Tekoa. As they set out, Jehoshaphat stood up and said, "Hear me, O people of Judah and Jerusalem. Believe in Yahweh your God, and you will be upheld; believe in His prophets, and you will succeed."

21 Then Jehoshaphat consulted with the people and appointed those who would sing to Yahweh and praise the splendor of His holiness. As they went out before the army, they were singing:

"Give thanks to Yahweh,
for His loving devotion endures forever."

22 The moment they began their shouts and praises, Yahweh set ambushes against the men of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir who had come against Judah, and they were defeated. 23 The Ammonites and Moabites rose up against the inhabitants of Mount Seir, devoting them to destruction. And when they had finished off the inhabitants of Seir, they helped to destroy one another.

24 When the men of Judah came to a place overlooking the wilderness, they looked for the vast army, but there were only corpses lying on the ground; no one had escaped. 25 Then Jehoshaphat and his people went to carry off the plunder, and they found on the bodies an abundance of goods and valuables—more than they could carry away. They were gathering the plunder for three days because there was so much.

THE JOYFUL RETURN

26 On the fourth day they assembled in the Valley of Beracah, where they blessed Yahweh. Therefore that place is called the Valley of Beracah to this day.

27 Then all the men of Judah and Jerusalem, with Jehoshaphat at their head, returned joyfully to Jerusalem, for Yahweh had made them rejoice over their enemies. 28 So they entered Jerusalem and went into the house of Yahweh with harps, lyres, and trumpets.

29 And the fear of God came upon all the kingdoms of the lands when they heard that Yahweh had fought against the enemies of Israel. 30 Then Jehoshaphat's kingdom was at peace, for his God had given him rest on every side.

SUMMARY OF JEHOSHAPHAT'S REIGN // 1 KINGS 22:41–50

31 So Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah. He was thirty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah daughter of Shilhi.

32 And Jehoshaphat walked in the way of his father Asa and did not turn away from it; he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh.

33 The high places, however, were not removed; the people had not yet set their hearts on the God of their fathers.

34 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, from beginning to end, they are indeed written in the Chronicles of Jehu son of Hanani, which are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel.

JEHOSHAPHAT'S FLEET IS WRECKED

35 Later, Jehoshaphat king of Judah made an alliance with Ahaziah king of Israel, who acted wickedly. 36 They agreed to make ships to go to Tarshish, and these were built in Ezion-geber.

37 Then Eliezer son of Dodavahu of Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat,

2CH 20:17 [PROPHECY] Judah would not need to fight and would see Yahweh save them → 2CH 20:22-24 p.733
2CH 20:20 [NOTABLE] Jehoshaphat's words to his army on the morning of the battle. Isaiah later told King Ahaz the opposite side of the same truth, Isaiah 7:9.
2CH 20:22 [MIRACLE] God sets ambushes as Judah sings and the enemies destroy each other
2CH 20:22 [FULFILLS] Judah would not need to fight and would see Yahweh save them ← 2CH 20:17 p.732

2CH 20:33 [DEMONIC] The high places still stand in Judah

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

saying, "Because you have allied yourself with Ahaziah, Yahweh has destroyed your works."

So the ships were wrecked and were unable to sail to Tarshish.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Jehoram kills all his brothers and walks in the ways of Ahab, whose daughter he married. Edom revolts. A letter arrives from Elijah the prophet saying a terrible bowel disease is coming. It comes. He dies after eight years, to no one's regret.

JEHORAM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 8:16–19

1 And Jehoshaphat rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the City of David. And his son Jehoram reigned in his place.

2 Jehoram's brothers, the sons of Jehoshaphat, were Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah; these were all sons of Jehoshaphat king of Israel. 3 Their father had given them many gifts of silver and gold and precious things, as well as the fortified cities in Judah; but he gave the kingdom to Jehoram because he was the firstborn.

4 When Jehoram had established himself over his father's kingdom, he strengthened himself by putting to the sword all his brothers along with some of the princes of Israel. 5 Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years.

6 And Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, just as the house of Ahab had done. For he married a daughter of Ahab and did evil in the sight of Yahweh. 7 Yet Yahweh was unwilling to destroy the house of David, because of the covenant He had made with David, and since He had promised to maintain a lamp for David and his descendants forever.

EDOM AND LIBNAH REBEL // 2 KINGS 8:20–24

8 In the days of Jehoram, Edom rebelled against the hand of Judah and appointed their own king. 9 So Jehoram crossed into Edom with his officers and all his chariots. When the Edomites surrounded him and his chariot commanders, he rose up and attacked by night.

10 So to this day Edom has been in rebellion against the hand of Judah. Likewise, Libnah rebelled against his hand at the same time, because Jehoram had forsaken Yahweh, the God of his fathers.

11 Jehoram had also built high places on the hills of Judah; he had caused the people of Jerusalem to prostitute themselves and had led Judah astray.

ELIJAH'S LETTER TO JEHORAM

12 Then a letter came to Jehoram from Elijah the prophet, which stated:

"This is what Yahweh, the God of your father David, says:

'You have not walked in the ways of your father Jehoshaphat or of Asa king of Judah, 13 but you have walked in the ways of the kings of Israel and have caused Judah and the people of Jerusalem to prostitute themselves, just as the house of Ahab prostituted itself. You have also killed your brothers, your father's family, who were better than you.

14 So behold, Yahweh is about to strike your people, your sons, your wives, and all your possessions with a serious blow. 15 And day after day you yourself will suffer from a severe illness, a disease of your bowels, until it causes your bowels to come out.'"

JEHORAM'S DISEASE AND DEATH

16 Then Yahweh stirred against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines and Arabs who lived near the Cushites. 17 So they went to war against Judah, invaded it, and carried off all the possessions found in the king's palace, along with his sons and wives; not a son was left to him except Jehoahaz, his youngest.

18 After all this, Yahweh afflicted Jehoram with an incurable disease of the bowels. 19 This continued day after day until two full

- **2CH 21:11 [DEMONIC]** Jehoram leads Judah into idol worship
- **2CH 21:12 [NOTE]** A LETTER FROM ELIJAH. See the Big Question pages Elijah's Letter, p.735.
- **2CH 21:15 [PROPHECY]** Elijah's letter said King Jehoram would die of a bowel disease → 2CH 21:18-19 p.734
- **2CH 21:18 [FULFILLS]** Elijah's letter said King Jehoram would die of a bowel disease ← 2CH 21:15 p.734

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

years had passed. Finally, his intestines came out because of his disease, and he died in severe pain. And his people did not make a fire in his honor as they had done for his fathers.

20 Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years. He died, to no one's regret, and was buried in the City of David, but not in the tombs of the kings.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ELIJAH'S LETTER

The Puzzle

2 CHRONICLES 21:12 TO 15 · 2 KINGS 1:17 · 2 KINGS 2:11 · 3:11

THE LETTER

A letter came to King Jehoram of Judah from Elijah the prophet. You have not walked in the ways of your father Jehoshaphat, it said. You killed your brothers. A great plague will strike your people, and you will get a disease of the bowels, 21:12 to 15.

IT CAME TRUE

God struck him with that disease. Two years later he died in great pain, to no one's regret, 21:18 to 20.

ELIJAH'S ONLY APPEARANCE

This is the only time Elijah shows up in all of Chronicles, and the only writing of his in the Bible.

THE PUZZLE

2 Kings 2 tells how Elijah went up to heaven in a whirlwind. In 2 Kings 3:11, while Jehoshaphat was still king, Elisha is called the one who used to pour water on Elijah's hands, as if Elijah were already gone. So how did Elijah write to Jehoshaphat's son?

THE DATES OVERLAP

Jehoram of Judah began to reign while his father Jehoshaphat was still alive, 2 Kings 8:16, and 2 Kings 1:17 counts years from him. Kings of that time often shared the throne with a son for a few years.

THE QUESTION

Was Elijah still on earth, or did the letter come another way?

Every View

2 KINGS 8:16 · 2 CHRONICLES 21:18 TO 20 · MALACHI 4:5

VIEW 1: ELIJAH WAS STILL ALIVE

Many think Elijah was taken up later than the order of 2 Kings suggests. Kings tells Elisha's call in chapter 2, but stories are not always in time order. Josephus tells of the letter too, even though he had already told of Elijah going away.

VIEW 2: HE WROTE IT AHEAD

Some think Elijah wrote the letter before he was taken up, knowing what Jehoram would do, and left it to be delivered later.

VIEW 3: ANOTHER NAME

A few suggest the name was once Elisha, who was alive then, and a copyist wrote Elijah. Others answer that the copies we have say Elijah.

VIEW 4: FROM HEAVEN

Some old Jewish teachers said Elijah sent it from heaven. Most readers today do not hold this view.

WHAT ABOUT 3:11

Others point out that pour water on the hands means Elisha had been Elijah's servant. It does not have to mean Elijah was gone.

ELIJAH IS COMING

Malachi 4:5 promised that Elijah would come before the day of Yahweh. Jesus said John the Baptist came in that spirit, Matthew 11:14. See Elijah's Whirlwind in 2 Kings, p.603.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God warned Jehoram through His prophet, and the warning came true just as it said.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Ahaziah is king for one year, and his mother Athaliah coaches him in evil. He goes with Joram of Israel to fight Hazael and then visits Joram, who was hurt, right when Jehu is wiping out Ahab's house. Jehu kills him. Athaliah then kills the royal family, but baby Joash is hidden in the temple.

AHAZIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 8:25–29

1 Then the people of Jerusalem made Ahaziah, the youngest son of Jehoram, king in his place, since the raiders who

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

had come into the camp with the Arabs had killed all the older sons. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram became king of Judah. 2 Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem one year. His mother's name was Athaliah, the granddaughter of Omri.

3 Ahaziah also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab, for his mother was his counselor in wickedness. 4 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, as the house of Ahab had done, for to his destruction they were his counselors after the death of his father.

5 Ahaziah also followed their counsel and went with Joram son of Ahab king of Israel to fight against Hazael king of Aram at Ramoth-gilead. But the Arameans wounded Joram. 6 So he returned to Jezreel to recover from the wounds they had inflicted on him at Ramah when he fought against Hazael king of Aram. Then Ahaziah son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to Jezreel to visit Joram son of Ahab, because Joram had been wounded.

7 Ahaziah's downfall came from God when he went to visit Joram. When Ahaziah arrived, he went out with Joram to meet Jehu son of Nimshi, whom Yahweh had anointed to destroy the house of Ahab.

JEHU KILLS THE PRINCES OF JUDAH // 2 KINGS 9:14–29

8 So while Jehu was executing judgment on the house of Ahab, he found the rulers of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's brothers who were serving Ahaziah, and he killed them.

9 Then Jehu looked for Ahaziah, and Jehu's soldiers captured him while he was hiding in Samaria. So Ahaziah was brought to Jehu and put to death. They buried him, for they said, "He is the grandson of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart."

So no one was left from the house of Ahaziah with the strength to rule the kingdom.

ATHALIAH AND JOASH // 2 KINGS 11:1–3

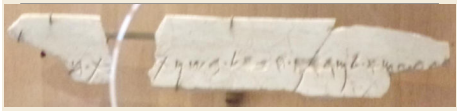
10 When Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, she proceeded to annihilate all the royal heirs of the house of Judah. 11 But Jehoshabeath daughter of King Jehoram took Joash son of Ahaziah and stole him away from among the sons of the king who were being murdered, and she put him and his nurse in a bedroom. Because Jehoshabeath, the daughter of King Jehoram and the wife of Jehoiada the priest, was Ahaziah's sister, she hid Joash from Athaliah so that she could not kill him.

12 And Joash remained hidden with them in the house of God for six years while Athaliah ruled the land.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE KING, MEDIUM FOR THE IVORY

HAZAEL

2 CHRONICLES 22:5 TO 6 · 24:23 TO 24 · 1 KINGS 19:15 · 2 KINGS 8:7 TO 15 · 12:17 TO 18



An ivory strip from Arslan Tash, Syria, with an Aramaic line naming our lord Hazael. Louvre, Paris. Photo Lamashtu2006, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A thin strip of carved ivory, once part of a piece of royal furniture, maybe a bed. It has one line of Aramaic writing that names our lord Hazael.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 800 BC, near the end of Hazael's reign or soon after.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Arslan Tash, ancient Hadatu, in northern Syria, in a French dig in 1928. Many think the Assyrians carried the ivories off from Damascus as loot. It is in the Louvre in Paris.

2CH 22:2 [TEXT] HOW OLD? The Hebrew here says 42. 2 Kings 8:26 and some Greek copies say 22, and this Bible follows them, as most Bibles do. His father died at 40, 21:20.

2CH 22:5 [FIELD NOTES] See the Hazael Field Notes page, p.736. This same war may be the one on the Tel Dan Stele. See the Tel Dan page in 2 Samuel, p.504.

2CH 22:7 [NOTE] JEHU. See Jehu on the Black Obelisk and the Big Question pages Jehu: Hero or Butcher? in 2 Kings, p.617.

2CH 22:10 [NOTE] ONE BABY LEFT. Athaliah tried to wipe out David's royal line. If she had won, God's promise to David would have died with it. One baby, Joash, was hidden, 22:11.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

WHO WAS HAZAEL?
He was a servant of Ben hadad king of Aram. Elisha wept and told him he would be king and would do terrible harm to Israel, 2 Kings 8:7 to 15. The next day Ben hadad was dead, and Hazael took the throne. Here Judah's king Ahaziah and Israel's king Joram fight him at Ramoth gilead, 22:5 to 6.

WHAT ASSYRIA SAID
Shalmaneser III of Assyria fought Hazael in 841 BC. One of his records calls him Hazael, son of a nobody, which means he was not born a prince. That fits the Bible: he grabbed the throne.

MORE FINDS
Two bronze horse pieces found on the Greek islands of Samos and Euboea say they were given to our lord Hazael. Most scholars think Hazael set up the Tel Dan Stele too. See the Tel Dan page in 2 Samuel, p.504.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The ivory does not call him king of Damascus, so a few doubt it is the same man. Shalmaneser's records do, and they name him for sure.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS
Six years later, the priest Jehoiada makes his move. He brings out the boy Joash, puts the crown on him, and the people shout, Long live the king! Athaliah runs in screaming, Treason! She is put to death outside the temple, and the people tear down the temple of Baal.

JOASH ANOINTED KING OF JUDAH // 2 KINGS 11:4–12

1 Then in the seventh year, Jehoiada
strengthened himself and made a
covenant with the commanders of
hundreds—with Azariah son of Jeroham,
Ishmael son of Jehohanan, Azariah son of
Obed, Maaseiah son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat son of Zichri. 2 So they went
throughout Judah and gathered the
Levites from all the cities of Judah and the
heads of the families of Israel. And when
they came to Jerusalem, 3 the whole assembly made a covenant with the king in
the house of God.
"Behold, the king's son!" said Jehoiada.
"He must reign, just as Yahweh promised
concerning the descendants of David. 4
This is what you are to do: A third of you
priests and Levites who come on duty on
the Sabbath shall keep watch at the
doors, 5 a third shall be at the royal palace,
and a third at the Foundation Gate, while
all the others are to be in the courtyards
of the house of Yahweh. 6 No one is to enter the house of Yahweh except the
priests and those Levites who serve; they
may enter because they are consecrated,
but all the people are to obey the requirement of Yahweh. 7 The Levites must surround the king with weapons in hand, and
anyone who enters the temple must be
put to death. You must stay close to the
king wherever he goes."
8 So the Levites and all Judah did everything that Jehoiada the priest had ordered. Each of them took his men—those
coming on duty on the Sabbath and those
going off duty—for Jehoiada the priest
had not released any of the divisions. 9
Then Jehoiada the priest gave to the
commanders of hundreds the spears and
the large and small shields of King David
that were in the house of God. 10 He stationed all the troops, with their weapons in
hand, surrounding the king by the altar
and the temple, from the south side to the
north side of the temple.
11 Then Jehoiada and his sons brought out
the king's son, put the crown on him, presented him with the Testimony, and proclaimed him king. They anointed him and
shouted, "Long live the king!"

THE DEATH OF ATHALIAH // 2 KINGS 11:13–16

12 When Athaliah heard the noise of the
people running and cheering the king, she
went out to them in the house of Yahweh.
13 And she looked and saw the king standing by his pillar at the entrance. The officers and trumpeters were beside the king,
and all the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, while the
singers with musical instruments were
leading the praises.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Then Athaliah tore her clothes and screamed, "Treason, treason!"

14 And Jehoiada the priest sent out the commanders of hundreds in charge of the army, saying, "Bring her out between the ranks, and put to the sword anyone who follows her." For the priest had said, "She must not be put to death in the house of Yahweh."

15 So they seized Athaliah as she reached the entrance of the Horse Gate on the palace grounds, and there they put her to death.

JEHOIADA RESTORES THE WORSHIP OF YAHWEH // 2 KINGS 11:17–21

16 Then Jehoiada made a covenant between himself and the king and the people that they would be Yahweh's people. 17 So all the people went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed the altars and idols to pieces and killed Mattan the priest of Baal in front of the altars.

18 Moreover, Jehoiada put the oversight of the house of Yahweh into the hands of the Levitical priests, whom David had appointed over the house of Yahweh, to offer burnt offerings to Yahweh as written in the Law of Moses, with rejoicing and song, as ordained by David. 19 He stationed gatekeepers at the gates of the house of Yahweh, so that no one who was in any way unclean could enter.

20 And he took with him the commanders of hundreds, the nobles, the rulers of the people, and all the people of the land, and they brought the king down from the house of Yahweh and entered the royal palace through the Upper Gate. They seated King Joash on the royal throne, 21 and all the people of the land rejoiced. And the city was quiet, because Athaliah had been put to the sword.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Joash repairs the temple with a money chest at the gate, and the people give gladly. As long as Jehoiada lives, Joash does right. After Jehoiada dies, Joash turns to idols and has Jehoiada's son Zechariah stoned in the temple court. A small Aramean army beats Judah, and his own servants kill Joash in bed.

JOASH REPAIRS THE TEMPLE // 2 KINGS 12:1–16

1 Joash was seven years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem forty years. His mother's name was Zibiah she was from Beersheba. 2 And Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the days of Jehoiada the priest. 3 Jehoiada took for him two wives, and he had sons and daughters.

4 Some time later, Joash set his heart on repairing the house of Yahweh. 5 So he gathered the priests and Levites and said, "Go out to the cities of Judah and collect the money due annually from all Israel, to repair the house of your God. Do it quickly."

The Levites, however, did not make haste. 6 So the king called Jehoiada the high priest and said, "Why have you not required the Levites to bring from Judah and Jerusalem the tax imposed by Moses the servant of Yahweh and by the assembly of Israel for the Tent of the Testimony?"

7 For the sons of that wicked woman Athaliah had broken into the house of God and had even used the sacred objects of the house of Yahweh for the Baals.

8 At the king's command a chest was made and placed outside, at the gate of the house of Yahweh. 9 And a proclamation was issued in Judah and Jerusalem that they were to bring to Yahweh the tax imposed by Moses the servant of God on Israel in the wilderness. 10 All the officers and all the people rejoiced and brought their contributions, and they dropped them in the chest until it was full.

2CH 23:17 [DEMONIC] The people tear down the temple of Baal

2CH 24:7 [DEMONIC] Athaliah's sons give temple treasures to the Baals

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

11 Whenever the chest was brought by the Levites to the king's overseers and they saw that there was a large amount of money, the royal scribe and the officer of the high priest would come and empty the chest and carry it back to its place. They did this daily and gathered the money in abundance. 12 Then the king and Jehoiada would give the money to those who supervised the labor on the house of Yahweh to hire stonecutters and carpenters to restore the house of Yahweh, as well as workers in iron and bronze to repair the house of Yahweh.

13 So the workmen labored, and in their hands the repair work progressed. They restored the house of God according to its specifications, and they reinforced it. 14 When they were finished, they brought the rest of the money to the king and Jehoiada, and with it were made articles for the house of Yahweh—utensils for the service and for the burnt offerings, dishes, and other objects of gold and silver.

Throughout the days of Jehoiada, burnt offerings were presented regularly in the house of Yahweh.

JEHOIADA'S DEATH AND BURIAL

15 When Jehoiada was old and full of years, he died at the age of 130.

16 And Jehoiada was buried with the kings in the City of David, because he had done what was good in Israel for God and His temple.

THE WICKEDNESS OF JOASH

17 After the death of Jehoiada, however, the officials of Judah came and paid homage to the king, and he listened to them. 18 They abandoned the house of Yahweh, the God of their fathers, and served the Asherah poles and idols. So wrath came upon Judah and Jerusalem for this guilt of theirs. 19 Nevertheless, Yahweh sent prophets to bring the people back to Him and to testify against them, but they would not listen.

20 Then the Spirit of God came upon Zechariah son of Jehoiada the priest, who stood up before the people and said to them, "This is what God says: 'Why do you transgress the commandments of Yahweh so that you cannot prosper? Because you have forsaken Yahweh, He has forsaken you.'"

21 But they conspired against Zechariah, and by order of the king, they stoned him in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh.

22 Thus King Joash failed to remember the kindness that Zechariah's father Jehoiada had extended to him. Instead, Joash killed Jehoiada's son. As he lay dying, Zechariah said, "May Yahweh see this and call you to account."

THE DEATH OF JOASH // 2 KINGS 12:17–21

23 In the spring, the army of Aram went to war against Joash. They entered Judah and Jerusalem and destroyed all the leaders of the people, and they sent all the plunder to their king in Damascus. 24 Although the Aramean army had come with only a few men, Yahweh delivered into their hand a very great army. Because Judah had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their fathers, judgment was executed on Joash.

25 And when the Arameans had withdrawn, they left Joash severely wounded. His own servants conspired against him for shedding the blood of the son of Jehoiada the priest, and they killed him on his bed. So he died and was buried in the City of David, but not in the tombs of the kings. 26 Those who conspired against Joash were Zabad son of Shimeath the Ammonitess and Jehozabad son of Shimrith the Moabitess.

27 The accounts of the sons of Joash and the many pronouncements about him, and

- **2CH 24:18 [DEMONIC]** Judah abandons God's house to serve Asherah poles

- **2CH 24:20 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 23:35 p.1586
- **2CH 24:20 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 11:51 p.1671
- **2CH 24:20 [NOTE]** ZECHARIAH. Jesus spoke of the blood of Zechariah, killed between the altar and the sanctuary, Luke 11:51. Matthew 23:35 calls him the son of Berechiah, the father of the prophet Zechariah, Zechariah 1:1. Some think Jehoiada was his grandfather, some think Jesus meant the prophet, and some think a copyist added the name.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

of the restoration of the house of God, are indeed written in the Treatise of the Book of the Kings. And his son Amaziah reigned in his place.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Amaziah does right, but not wholeheartedly. He hires soldiers from Israel, a man of God says send them home, and he does. He beats Edom, then brings home Edom's gods and bows to them. He picks a fight with Jehoash king of Israel, loses, and the wall of Jerusalem gets knocked down.

AMAZIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 14:1–7

1 Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-nine years. His mother's name was Jehoaddan she was from Jerusalem. 2 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, but not with a whole heart.

3 As soon as the kingdom was firmly in his grasp, Amaziah executed the servants who had murdered his father the king. 4 Yet he did not put their sons to death, but acted according to what is written in the Law, in the Book of Moses, where Yahweh commanded: "Fathers must not be put to death for their children, and children must not be put to death for their fathers; each is to die for his own sin."

AMAZIAH'S VICTORIES

5 Then Amaziah gathered the people of Judah and assigned them according to their families to commanders of thousands and of hundreds. And he numbered those twenty years of age or older throughout Judah and Benjamin and found 300,000 chosen men able to serve in the army, bearing the spear and shield.

6 He also hired 100,000 mighty men of valor from Israel for 7,500 pounds of silver. 7 But a man of God came to him and said, "O king, do not let the army of Israel go with you, for Yahweh is not with Israel—not with any of the Ephraimites. 8 Even if you go and fight bravely in battle, God will overthrow you before the enemy, for God has power to help and power to overthrow."

9 Amaziah asked the man of God, "What should I do about the 7,500 pounds of silver I have given to the troops of Israel?"

And the man of God replied, "Yahweh is able to give you much more than this."

10 So Amaziah dismissed the troops who had come to him from Ephraim and sent them home. And they were furious with Judah and returned home in great anger.

11 Amaziah, however, summoned his strength and led his troops to the Valley of Salt, where he struck down 10,000 men of Seir, 12 and the army of Judah also captured 10,000 men alive. They took them to the top of a cliff and threw them down so that all were dashed to pieces.

13 Meanwhile the troops that Amaziah had dismissed from battle raided the cities of Judah, from Samaria to Beth-horon. They struck down 3,000 people and carried off a great deal of plunder.

AMAZIAH REBUKED FOR IDOLATRY

14 When Amaziah returned from the slaughter of the Edomites, he brought back the gods of the Seirites, set them up as his own gods, bowed before them, and burned sacrifices to them. 15 Therefore the anger of Yahweh burned against Amaziah, and He sent him a prophet, who said, "Why have you sought this people's gods, which could not deliver them from your hand?"

16 While he was still speaking, the king asked, "Have we made you the counselor to the king? Stop! Why be struck down?"

So the prophet stopped, but he said, "I know that God has determined to destroy you, because you have done this and have not heeded my advice."

JEHOASH DEFEATS AMAZIAH // 2 KINGS 14:8–14

17 Then Amaziah king of Judah took counsel and sent word to the king of Israel Je-

2CH 25:2 [HEART] Amaziah did right, but not with a whole heart. Right actions with a wrong heart still fall short.

2CH 25:14 [DEMONIC] Amaziah bows to the gods of the people he beat

2CH 25:16 [PROPHECY] A prophet said God had decided to destroy King Amaziah → 2CH 25:22-23; 2CH 25:27 · MEDIUM p.741

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

hoash son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu. "Come, let us meet face to face," he said.

18 But Jehoash king of Israel replied to Amaziah king of Judah: "A thistle in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son in marriage.' Then a wild beast in Lebanon came along and trampled the thistle. 19 You have said, 'Look, I have defeated Edom,' and your heart has become proud and boastful. Now stay at home. Why should you stir up trouble so that you fall—you and Judah with you?"

20 But Amaziah would not listen, for this had come from God in order to deliver them into the hand of Jehoash, because they had sought the gods of Edom. 21 So Jehoash king of Israel advanced, and he and Amaziah king of Judah faced each other at Beth-shemesh in Judah. 22 And Judah was routed before Israel, and every man fled to his own home.

23 There at Beth-shemesh, Jehoash king of Israel captured Amaziah king of Judah, the son of Joash, the son of Jehoahaz. Then Jehoash brought him to Jerusalem and broke down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate—a section of 600 feet. 24 He took all the gold and silver and all the articles found in the house of God with Obed-edom and in the treasuries of the royal palace, as well as some hostages. Then he returned to Samaria.

THE DEATH OF AMAZIAH // 2 KINGS 14:17–20

25 Amaziah son of Joash king of Judah lived for fifteen years after the death of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz king of Israel. 26 As for the rest of the acts of Amaziah, from beginning to end, are they not written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel?

27 From the time that Amaziah turned from following Yahweh, a conspiracy was formed against him in Jerusalem, and he fled to Lachish. But men were sent after him to Lachish, and they killed him there.

2CH 25:20 **[DEMONIC]** Amaziah falls because he sought the gods of Edom

2CH 25:22 **[FULFILLS]** A prophet said God had decided to destroy King Amaziah ← 2CH 25:16 · MEDIUM p.740

28 They carried him back on horses and buried him with his fathers in the City of Judah.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Uzziah becomes king at sixteen and seeks God while Zechariah teaches him. He beats the Philistines, builds towers and machines, and loves farming. Then his heart grows proud. He walks into the temple to burn incense, which only priests could do. Leprosy breaks out on his forehead, and he lives alone till he dies.

UZZIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 14:21–22; 2 KINGS 15:1–7

1 All the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah. 2 Uzziah was the one who rebuilt Eloth and restored it to Judah after King Amaziah rested with his fathers.

3 Uzziah was sixteen years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem fifty-two years. His mother's name was Jecoliah she was from Jerusalem. 4 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as his father Amaziah had done. 5 He sought God throughout the days of Zechariah, who instructed him in the fear of God. And as long as he sought Yahweh, God gave him success.

6 Uzziah went out to wage war against the Philistines, and he tore down the walls of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod. Then he built cities near Ashdod and among the Philistines. 7 God helped him against the Philistines, against the Arabs living in Gurbaal, and against the Meunites. 8 The Ammonites brought tribute to Uzziah, and his fame spread as far as the border of Egypt, for he had become exceedingly powerful.

9 Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, the Valley Gate, and the angle in the wall, and he fortified them. 10 Since he had much livestock in the foothills and in the plain, he built towers in the desert and dug many cisterns. And since he was a lover of the soil, he had

2CH 25:27 **[FULFILLS]** A prophet said God had decided to destroy King Amaziah ← 2CH 25:16 · MEDIUM p.740

THE HEART MIRACLES NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

farmers and vinedressers in the hill country and in the fertile fields.

11 Uzziah had an army ready for battle that
went out to war by assigned divisions, as
recorded by Jeiel the scribe and Maa-
seiah the officer under the direction of
Hananiah, one of the royal officers. 12 The
total number of family leaders of the
mighty men of valor was 2,600. 13 Under
their authority was an army of 307,500
trained for war, a powerful force to sup-
port the king against his enemies.

14 Uzziah supplied the entire army with
shields, spears, helmets, armor, bows,
and slingstones. 15 And in Jerusalem he
made skillfully designed devices to shoot
arrows and catapult large stones from the
towers and corners. So his fame spread
far and wide, for he was helped tremen-
dously until he became powerful.

16 But when Uzziah became powerful, his
arrogance led to his own destruction. He
was unfaithful to Yahweh his God, for he
entered the temple of Yahweh to burn in-
cense on the altar of incense.

17 Then Azariah the priest, along with
eighty brave priests of Yahweh, went in
after him. 18 They took their stand against
King Uzziah and said, "Uzziah, you have
no right to offer incense to Yahweh. Only
the priests, the descendants of Aaron, are
consecrated to burn incense. Leave the
sanctuary, for you have acted unfaithfully;
you will not receive honor from Yahweh
God."

19 Uzziah, with a censer in his hand to of-
fer incense, was enraged. But while he
raged against the priests in their presence
in the house of Yahweh before the altar of
incense, leprosy broke out on his fore-
head. 20 When Azariah the chief priest and
all the priests turned to him and saw his
leprous forehead, they rushed him out. In-
deed, he himself hurried to get out, be-
cause Yahweh had afflicted him.

21 So King Uzziah was a leper until the day
of his death. He lived in isolation, leprous
and cut off from the house of Yahweh,
while his son Jotham had charge of the
royal palace and governed the people of
the land.

22 As for the rest of the acts of Uzziah,
from beginning to end, they are recorded
by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz. 23 And
Uzziah rested with his fathers and was
buried near them in a field of burial that
belonged to the kings, for the people said,
"He was a leper." And his son Jotham
reigned in his place.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Jotham does right, though the people still act corruptly. He builds the Upper Gate of the temple and towers in the hills, beats the Ammonites, and they pay him tribute three years in a row. He grows strong because he orders his ways before God.

JOTHAM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 15:32–38

1 Jotham was twenty-five years old when
he became king, and he reigned in
Jerusalem sixteen years. His mother's
name was Jerushah daughter of Zadok. 2
And he did what was right in the eyes of
Yahweh, just as his father Uzziah had
done. In addition, he did not enter the
temple of Yahweh. But the people still be-
haved corruptly.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DID GOOD KINGS END BADLY?

Four Kings

2 CHRONICLES 16 · 24:17 TO 25 · 25:14 TO 16 · 26:16 TO 21

ASA

He prayed, Help us, for we rely on You, and God beat a huge army, 14:11 to 12. Years later he paid Aram instead of trusting God, threw the prophet Hanani in prison, and when his feet got sick, he sought only the doctors, 16:1 to 12.

- **2CH 26:16 [HEART]** When Uzziah became strong, his heart grew proud and it ruined him.
- **2CH 26:16 [NOTABLE]** The king who tried to add priestly duties to his royal office — leprosy until his death; the very verse that shows offering incense outside the priesthood brings judgment
- **2CH 26:16 [NOTE]** WHEN HE WAS STRONG. See the Big Question pages Why Did Good Kings End Badly?, p.742
- **2CH 26:19 [MIRACLE]** King Uzziah is struck with leprosy in the temple
- **2CH 26:23 [FIELD NOTES]** A stone plaque for Uzziah's bones was found in Jerusalem. See The Uzziah Plaque Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.628.

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JOASH
He did right all the days of Jehoiada the priest, 24:2. After Jehoiada died, he listened to the officials, served idols, and had Jehoiada's son Zechariah stoned in the temple court, 24:17 to 22.
AMAZIAH
He did right, but not with a whole heart, 25:2. He beat Edom, then brought home Edom's gods and bowed to them, 25:14.
UZZIAH
He sought God in the days of Zechariah, who taught him, and God made him prosper, 26:5. But when he became strong, his heart grew proud. He burned incense in the temple, which only priests could do, and leprosy broke out on his forehead, 26:16 to 21.
EVEN HEZEKIAH
After God healed him, Hezekiah's heart was proud, 32:25, though he humbled himself again, 32:26.
THE QUESTION
Why does Chronicles show so many good kings ending badly?

Every View
2 CHRONICLES 32:25 · 1 CORINTHIANS 10:12 · PROVERBS 16:18

VIEW 1: SUCCESS BRINGS PRIDE
Uzziah fell when he became strong, 26:16. Many see a pattern: kings sought God when they were weak and forgot Him when they were strong. Pride goes before destruction, Proverbs 16:18.
VIEW 2: THEY LOST THEIR MENTOR
Joash did well while Jehoiada lived, and Uzziah while Zechariah taught him. Some think these kings leaned on a godly man more than on God.
VIEW 3: FINISHING MATTERS
Many teachers say Chronicles shows that a good start is not enough. How a king ended mattered as much as how he began.
VIEW 4: THE WRITER'S LESSON
Many scholars point out that Chronicles often shows quick results: faithfulness brings blessing and sin brings trouble in the same king's life. They think the writer wanted the people back from exile to stay faithful.

JEHOSHAPHAT TOO
Even this good king was rebuked for making friends with wicked kings of Israel, 19:2 and 20:35 to 37.
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Anyone can fall, and anyone can turn back. So, if you think you are standing firm, be careful that you do not fall, 1 Corinthians 10:12.

3 Jotham rebuilt the Upper Gate of the
house of Yahweh, and he worked extensively on the wall at the hill of Ophel. 4 He
also built cities in the hill country of Judah
and fortresses and towers in the forests.
5 Jotham waged war against the king of
the Ammonites and defeated them, and
that year they gave him 7,500 pounds of
silver, 60,000 bushels of wheat, and
60,000 bushels of barley. They paid him
the same in the second and third years. 6
So Jotham grew powerful because he ordered his ways before Yahweh his God.
7 As for the rest of the acts of Jotham,
along with all his wars and his ways, they
are indeed written in the Book of the
Kings of Israel and Judah. 8 He was
twenty-five years old when he became
king, and he reigned in Jerusalem sixteen
years. 9 And Jotham rested with his fathers and was buried in the City of David.
And his son Ahaz reigned in his place.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS
Ahaz is a disaster. He makes Baal idols and burns his own sons in the Valley of Ben hinnom. Aram and Israel crush Judah. The prophet Oded tells Israel to send the captives home, and they do, with clothes and donkeys. Ahaz asks Assyria for help and gets trouble instead. He shuts the temple doors.

AHAZ REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 16:1–9

1 Ahaz was twenty years old when he be-
came king, and he reigned in Jerusalem
sixteen years. And unlike David his father,
he did not do what was right in the eyes
of Yahweh. 2 Instead, he walked in the
ways of the kings of Israel and even made
cast images of the Baals.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

3 Moreover, Ahaz burned incense in the
Valley of Ben-hinnom and sacrificed his
sons in the fire, according to the abomina-
tions of the nations that Yahweh had dri-
ven out before the Israelites. 4 And he sac-
rificed and burned incense on the high
places, on the hills, and under every
green tree.

ARAM DEFEATS JUDAH // ISAIAH 1:1–9

5 So Yahweh his God delivered Ahaz into
the hand of the king of Aram, who at-
tacked him and took many captives to
Damascus.

Ahaz was also delivered into the hand of
the king of Israel, who struck him with
great force. 6 For in one day Pekah son of
Remaliah killed 120,000 valiant men in Ju-
dah. This happened because they had
forsaken Yahweh, the God of their fathers.
7 Zichri, a mighty man of Ephraim, killed
Maaseiah the son of the king, Azrikam the
governor of the palace, and Elkanah the
second to the king. 8 Then the Israelites
took 200,000 captives from their
kinsmen—women, sons, and daughters.
They also carried off a great deal of plun-
der and brought it to Samaria.

9 But a prophet of Yahweh named Oded
was there, and he went out to meet the
army that returned to Samaria. "Look," he
said to them, "because of His wrath
against Judah, Yahweh, the God of your
fathers, has delivered them into your
hand. But you have slaughtered them in a
rage that reaches up to heaven. 10 And
now you intend to reduce to slavery the
men and women of Judah and Jerusalem.
But are you not also guilty before Yahweh
your God? 11 Now therefore, listen to me
and return the captives you took from
your kinsmen, for the fierce anger of Yah-
weh is upon you."

12 Then some of the leaders of the
Ephraimites—Azariah son of Jehohanan,
Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah
son of Shallum, and Amasa son of
Hadlai—stood in opposition to those arriv-
ing from the war. 13 "You must not bring
the captives here," they said, "for you are
proposing to bring guilt upon us from
Yahweh and to add to our sins and our
guilt. For our guilt is great, and fierce
anger is upon Israel."

14 So the armed men left the captives and
the plunder before the leaders and all the
assembly. 15 Then the men who were des-
ignated by name arose, took charge of the
captives, and provided from the plunder
clothing for the naked. They clothed them,
gave them sandals and food and drink,
anointed their wounds, and put all the fee-
ble on donkeys. So they brought them to
Jericho, the City of Palms, to their broth-
ers. Then they returned to Samaria.

THE IDOLATRY OF AHAZ // 2 KINGS 16:10–20

16 At that time King Ahaz sent for help from
the king of Assyria. 17 The Edomites had
again come and attacked Judah and car-
ried away captives. 18 The Philistines had
also raided the cities of the foothills and
the Negev of Judah, capturing and occu-
pying Beth-shemesh, Aijalon, and
Gederoth, as well as Soco, Timnah, and
Gimzo with their villages. 19 For Yahweh
humbled Judah because Ahaz king of Is-
rael had thrown off restraint in Judah and
had been most unfaithful to Yahweh.

20 Then Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria
came to Ahaz but afflicted him rather than
strengthening him. 21 Although Ahaz had
taken a portion from the house of Yah-
weh, from the royal palace, and from the
princes and had presented it to the king of
Assyria, it did not help him.

22 In the time of his distress, King Ahaz
became even more unfaithful to Yahweh.
23 He sacrificed to the gods of Damascus,
who had defeated him, and he said, "Be-
cause the gods of the kings of Aram have
helped them, I will sacrifice to them that

2CH 28:2 [DEMONIC] Ahaz makes Baal images and burns his sons

2CH 28:3 [NOTE] CHILD SACRIFICE. God hated it, Deuteronomy 12:31. 2 Kings 16:3 says Ahaz burned his son. See the Seal of Ahaz Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.633.

2CH 28:20 [FULFILLS] God would bring the king of Assyria against Ahaz and Judah ← IS 7:17 p.1070

2CH 28:21 [FIELD NOTES] Tiglath pileser's own record lists Ahaz paying tribute. See the Ahaz Pays Assyria Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.634.

2CH 28:22 [DEMONIC] Ahaz sacrifices to the gods of Damascus

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

they may help me." But these gods were the downfall of Ahaz and of all Israel.

24 Then Ahaz gathered up the articles of the house of God, cut them into pieces, shut the doors of the house of Yahweh, and set up altars of his own on every street corner in Jerusalem. 25 In every city of Judah he built high places to offer incense to other gods, and so he provoked Yahweh, the God of his fathers.

26 As for the rest of the acts of Ahaz and all his ways, from beginning to end, they are indeed written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. 27 And Ahaz rested with his fathers and was buried in the city of Jerusalem, but he was not placed in the tombs of the kings of Israel. And his son Hezekiah reigned in his place.

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah opens the temple doors in his very first month. The Levites clean out the junk and the idols for sixteen days. Then the king brings sin offerings for all Israel, the singers and trumpets start up again, and everyone bows down. It all happened so fast.

HEZEKIAH CLEANSES THE TEMPLE // 2 KINGS 18:1–12

1 Hezekiah was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty-nine years. His mother's name was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah. 2 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as his father David had done.

3 In the first month of the first year of his reign, Hezekiah opened and repaired the doors of the house of Yahweh. 4 Then he brought in the priests and Levites and gathered them in the square on the east side.

5 "Listen to me, O Levites," he said. "Consecrate yourselves now and consecrate the house of Yahweh, the God of your fathers. Remove from the Holy Place every impurity.

6 For our fathers were unfaithful and did evil in the sight of Yahweh our God. They abandoned Him, turned their faces away from the dwelling place of Yahweh, and turned their backs on Him. 7 They also shut the doors of the portico and extinguished the lamps. They did not burn incense or present burnt offerings in the Holy Place of the God of Israel.

8 Therefore, the wrath of Yahweh has fallen upon Judah and Jerusalem, and He has made them an object of terror, horror, and scorn, as you can see with your own eyes. 9 For behold, this is why our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons and daughters and wives are in captivity.

10 Now it is in my heart to make a covenant with Yahweh, the God of Israel, so that His fierce anger will turn away from us. 11 Now, my sons, do not be negligent, for Yahweh has chosen you to stand before Him, to serve Him, to minister before Him, and to burn incense."

12 Then the Levites set to work:

Mahath son of Amasai and Joel son of Azariah from the Kohathites;
Kish son of Abdi and Azariah son of Jehallelel from the Merarites;
Joah son of Zimmah and Eden son of Joah from the Gershonites;
13 Shimri and Jeuel from the Elizaphanites;
Zechariah and Mattaniah from the Asaphites;
14 Jehiel and Shimei from the Hemanites;
and Shemaiah and Uzziel from the Jeduthunites.

15 When they had assembled their brothers and consecrated themselves, they went in to cleanse the house of Yahweh, according to the command of the king by the words of Yahweh.

16 So the priests went inside the house of Yahweh to cleanse it, and they brought out to the courtyard all the unclean things that they found in the temple of Yahweh. Then the Levites took these things and carried them out to the Kidron Valley. 17

■ **2CH 29:1 [FIELD NOTES]** A clay seal of King Hezekiah was found in Jerusalem. See the Hezekiah's Seal Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.642.
■ **2CH 29:2 [NOTE]** LIKE DAVID. Only three kings in this book are said to do right like David: Jehoshaphat, 17:3, Hezekiah, here, and Josiah, 34:2.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

They began the consecration on the first day of the first month, and on the eighth day of the month they reached the portico of Yahweh. For eight more days they consecrated the house of Yahweh itself, finishing on the sixteenth day of the first month.

18 Then they went in to King Hezekiah and reported, "We have cleansed the entire house of Yahweh, the altar of burnt offering with all its utensils, and the table of the showbread with all its utensils. 19 Moreover, we have prepared and consecrated all the articles that King Ahaz in his unfaithfulness cast aside during his reign. They are now in front of the altar of Yahweh."

HEZEKIAH RESTORES TEMPLE WORSHIP

20 Early the next morning King Hezekiah gathered the city officials and went up to the house of Yahweh. 21 They brought seven bulls, seven rams, seven lambs, and seven male goats as a sin offering for the kingdom, for the sanctuary, and for Judah. And the king commanded the priests, the descendants of Aaron, to offer them on the altar of Yahweh.

22 So they slaughtered the bulls, and the priests took the blood and splattered it on the altar. They slaughtered the rams and splattered the blood on the altar. And they slaughtered the lambs and splattered the blood on the altar.

23 Then they brought the goats for the sin offering before the king and the assembly, who laid their hands on them. 24 And the priests slaughtered the goats and put their blood on the altar for a sin offering, to make atonement for all Israel, because the king had ordered the burnt offering and the sin offering for all Israel.

25 Hezekiah stationed the Levites in the house of Yahweh with cymbals, harps, and lyres according to the command of David, of Gad the king's seer, and of Nathan the prophet. For the command had come from Yahweh through His prophets. 26 The Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets.

27 And Hezekiah ordered that the burnt offering be sacrificed on the altar. When the burnt offering began, the song of Yahweh and the trumpets began as well, accompanied by the instruments of David king of Israel. 28 The whole assembly was worshiping, the singers were singing, and the trumpeters were playing. All this continued until the burnt offering was completed.

29 When the offerings were completed, the king and all those present with him bowed down and worshiped. 30 Then King Hezekiah and his officials ordered the Levites to sing praises to Yahweh in the words of David and of Asaph the seer. So they sang praises with gladness and bowed down and worshiped.

31 Then Hezekiah said, "Now that you have consecrated yourselves to Yahweh, come near and bring sacrifices and thank offerings to the house of Yahweh."

So the assembly brought sacrifices and thank offerings, and all whose hearts were willing brought burnt offerings. 32 The number of burnt offerings the assembly brought was seventy bulls, a hundred rams, and two hundred lambs; all these were for a burnt offering to Yahweh. 33 And the consecrated offerings were six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep.

34 However, since there were not enough priests to skin all the burnt offerings, their Levite brothers helped them until the work was finished and until the priests had consecrated themselves. For the Levites had been more diligent in consecrating themselves than the priests had been.

35 Furthermore, the burnt offerings were abundant, along with the fat of the peace offerings and the drink offerings for the burnt offerings. So the service of the house of Yahweh was established. 36 Then Hezekiah and all the people rejoiced at what God had prepared for the people, because everything had been accomplished so quickly.

THE HEART DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah invites all Israel, even the north, to a huge Passover in Jerusalem. Some laugh at the messengers, others come. Many are not ceremonially clean, so Hezekiah prays, May the good Lord pardon everyone who sets his heart to seek God. They party for two weeks, the biggest Passover since Solomon.

HEZEKIAH PROCLAIMS A PASSOVER

1 Then Hezekiah sent word throughout all
Israel and Judah, and he also wrote letters
to Ephraim and Manasseh inviting them to
come to the house of Yahweh in
Jerusalem to keep the Passover of Yah-
weh, the God of Israel. 2 For the king and
his officials and the whole assembly in
Jerusalem had decided to keep the
Passover in the second month, 3 since
they had been unable to keep it at the
regular time, because not enough priests
had consecrated themselves and the peo-
ple had not been gathered in Jerusalem.
4 This plan pleased the king and the whole
assembly. 5 So they established a decree
to circulate a proclamation throughout Is-
rael, from Beersheba to Dan, that the peo-
ple should come to keep the Passover of
Yahweh, the God of Israel, in Jerusalem.
For they had not observed it in great num-
bers as prescribed.
6 At the command of the king, the couriers
went throughout Israel and Judah with let-
ters from the king and his officials, which
read:
"Children of Israel, return to Yahweh, the
God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, so that
He may return to those of you who re-
main, who have escaped the grasp of the
kings of Assyria. 7 Do not be like your fa-
thers and brothers who were unfaithful to
Yahweh, the God of their fathers, so that
He made them an object of horror, as you
can see.
8 Now do not stiffen your necks as your
fathers did. Submit to Yahweh and come
to His sanctuary, which He has conse-
crated forever. Serve Yahweh your God,
so that His fierce anger will turn away
from you. 9 For if you return to Yahweh,
your brothers and sons will receive mercy
in the presence of their captors and will
return to this land. For Yahweh your God
is gracious and merciful; He will not turn
His face away from you if you return to
Him."
10 And the couriers traveled from city to
city through the land of Ephraim and Man-
asseh as far as Zebulun, but the people
scorned and mocked them. 11 Neverthe-
less, some from Asher, Manasseh, and
Zebulun humbled themselves and came to
Jerusalem. 12 Moreover, the power of God
was on the people in Judah to give them
one heart to obey the command of the
king and his officials according to the
word of Yahweh.

HEZEKIAH CELEBRATES THE PASSOVER

13 In the second month, a very great as-
sembly gathered in Jerusalem to cele-
brate the Feast of Unleavened Bread. 14
They proceeded to remove the altars in
Jerusalem and to take away the incense
altars and throw them into the Kidron Val-
ley. 15 And on the fourteenth day of the
second month they slaughtered the
Passover lamb. The priests and Levites
were ashamed, and they consecrated
themselves and brought burnt offerings to
the house of Yahweh.
16 They stood at their prescribed posts,
according to the Law of Moses the man of
God. The priests splattered the blood,
which they received from the hand of the
Levites. 17 Since there were many in the
assembly who had not consecrated them-
selves, the Levites were in charge of
slaughtering the Passover lambs for every
unclean person to consecrate the lambs
to Yahweh.
18 A large number of the people—many
from Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, and
Zebulun—had not purified themselves, yet
they ate the Passover, contrary to what
was written. But Hezekiah interceded for
them, saying, "May Yahweh, who is good,
provide atonement for everyone 19 who

2CH 30:14 [DEMONIC] Idol altars are thrown into the Kidron Valley

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

sets his heart on seeking God—Yahweh, the God of his fathers—even if he is not cleansed according to the purification rules of the sanctuary."

20 And Yahweh heard Hezekiah and healed the people. 21 The Israelites who were present in Jerusalem celebrated the Feast of Unleavened Bread for seven days with great joy, and the Levites and priests praised Yahweh day after day, accompanied by loud instruments of praise to Yahweh. 22 And Hezekiah encouraged all the Levites who performed skillfully before Yahweh. For seven days they ate their assigned portion, sacrificing peace offerings and giving thanks to Yahweh, the God of their fathers.

23 The whole assembly agreed to observe seven more days, so they observed seven days with joy. 24 For Hezekiah king of Judah contributed a thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep for the assembly, and the officials contributed a thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep for the assembly, and a great number of priests consecrated themselves.

25 Then the whole assembly of Judah rejoiced along with the priests and Levites and the whole assembly that had come from Israel, including the foreigners who had come from Israel and those who lived in Judah. 26 So there was great rejoicing in Jerusalem, for nothing like this had happened there since the days of Solomon son of David king of Israel.

27 Then the priests and the Levites stood to bless the people, and God heard their voice, and their prayer came into His holy dwelling place in heaven.

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

The people go home and smash the idols and high places. Hezekiah organizes the priests and Levites, and the people bring their tithes in heaps for four months. There is so much left over that they build storerooms. Hezekiah does God's work with all his heart and prospers.

2CH 30:19 [HEART] Hezekiah prayed for everyone who set his heart on seeking God, even if he was not ceremonially clean.

THE DESTRUCTION OF IDOLS

1 When all this had ended, the Israelites in attendance went out to the cities of Judah and broke up the sacred pillars, chopped down the Asherah poles, and tore down the high places and altars throughout Judah and Benjamin, as well as in Ephraim and Manasseh, until they had utterly destroyed them all. Then all the Israelites returned to their cities, each to his own property.

2 Hezekiah reestablished the divisions of the priests and Levites—each of them according to their duties as priests or Levites—for the burnt offerings and peace offerings, for ministry, for giving thanks, and for singing praises at the gates of Yahweh's dwelling.

CONTRIBUTIONS FOR WORSHIP

3 The king contributed from his own possessions for the regular morning and evening burnt offerings and for the burnt offerings on the Sabbaths, New Moons, and appointed feasts, as written in the Law of Yahweh. 4 Moreover, he commanded the people living in Jerusalem to make a contribution for the priests and Levites so that they could devote themselves to the Law of Yahweh.

5 As soon as the order went out, the Israelites generously provided the firstfruits of the grain, new wine, oil, and honey, and of all the produce of the field, and they brought in an abundance—a tithe of everything. 6 And the Israelites and Judahites who lived in the cities of Judah also brought a tithe of their herds and flocks and a tithe of the holy things consecrated to Yahweh their God, and they laid them in large heaps.

7 In the third month they began building up the heaps, and they finished in the seventh month. 8 When Hezekiah and his officials came and viewed the heaps, they blessed Yahweh and His people Israel.

9 Then Hezekiah questioned the priests and Levites about the heaps, 10 and Azariah, the chief priest of the household

2CH 31:1 [DEMONIC] Israel smashes pillars and Asherah poles

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

of Zadok, answered him, "Since the people began to bring their contributions into the house of Yahweh, we have had enough to eat, and there is plenty left over, because Yahweh has blessed His people; this great abundance is what is left over."

HEZEKIAH ORGANIZES THE PRIESTS

11 Then Hezekiah commanded them to prepare storerooms in the house of Yahweh, and they did so. 12 And they faithfully brought in the contributions, tithes, and dedicated gifts. Conaniah the Levite was the officer in charge of them, and his brother Shimei was second. 13 Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismachiah, Mahath, and Benaiah were overseers under the authority of Conaniah and his brother Shimei, by appointment of King Hezekiah and of Azariah the chief official of the house of God.

14 Kore son of Imnah the Levite, the keeper of the East Gate, was in charge of the freewill offerings given to God, distributing the contributions to Yahweh and the consecrated gifts. 15 Under his authority, Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah faithfully distributed portions to their fellow priests in their cities, according to their divisions, old and young alike.

16 In addition, they distributed portions to the males registered by genealogy who were three years of age or older—to all who would enter the house of Yahweh for their daily duties for service in the responsibilities of their divisions— 17 and to the priests enrolled according to their families in the genealogy, as well as to the Levites twenty years of age or older, according to their responsibilities and divisions. 18 The genealogy included all the little ones, wives, sons, and daughters of the whole assembly. For they had faithfully consecrated themselves as holy.

19 As for the priests, the descendants of Aaron, who lived on the farmlands around each of their cities or in any other city, men were designated by name to distribute a portion to every male among the priests and to every Levite listed by the genealogies.

20 So this is what Hezekiah did throughout Judah. He did what was good and upright and true before Yahweh his God. 21 He acted with all his heart in every work that he began in the service of the house of God, and in the law and the commandments, in order to seek his God. And so he prospered.

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

Sennacherib of Assyria invades. Hezekiah blocks the springs and fixes the wall, and tells the people, With him is only an arm of flesh, with us is Yahweh. Sennacherib's men mock God. Hezekiah and Isaiah pray, an angel wipes out the Assyrian army, and Sennacherib goes home in shame. Then Hezekiah's heart gets proud.

SENNACHERIB INVADES JUDAH // 2 KINGS 18:13–16; PSALM 46:1–11

1 After all these acts of faithfulness, Sennacherib king of Assyria came and invaded Judah. He laid siege to the fortified cities, intending to conquer them for himself.

2 When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come to make war against Jerusalem, 3 he consulted with his leaders and mighty men about stopping up the waters of the springs outside the city, and they helped him carry it out. 4 Many people assembled and stopped up all the springs and the stream that flowed through the land. "Why should the kings of Assyria come and find plenty of water?" they said.

5 Then Hezekiah worked resolutely to rebuild all the broken sections of the wall and to raise up towers on it. He also built an outer wall and reinforced the supporting terraces of the City of David, and he produced an abundance of weapons and shields.

- **2CH 31:21 [HEART]** Hezekiah did God's work with all his heart, and he prospered.
- **2CH 32:1 [FIELD NOTES]** Sennacherib's own account of this war survives. See the Sennacherib's Prism Field Notes page in Isaiah, p.1103.
- **2CH 32:5 [FIELD NOTES]** Part of Hezekiah's wall still stands. See The Broad Wall Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.650.

MIRACLES DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

6 Hezekiah appointed military commanders over the people and gathered the people in the square of the city gate. Then he encouraged them, saying, 7 "Be strong and courageous! Do not be afraid or discouraged before the king of Assyria and the vast army with him, for there is a greater One with us than with him. 8 With him is only the arm of flesh, but with us is Yahweh our God to help us and to fight our battles."

So the people were strengthened by the words of Hezekiah king of Judah.

SENNACHERIB THREATENS JERUSALEM // 2 KINGS 18:17–37; ISAIAH 36:1–22

9 Later, as Sennacherib king of Assyria and all his forces besieged Lachish, he sent his servants to Jerusalem with a message for King Hezekiah of Judah and all the people of Judah who were in Jerusalem: 10 "This is what Sennacherib king of Assyria says: What is the basis of your confidence, that you remain in Jerusalem under siege? 11 Is not Hezekiah misleading you to give you over to death by famine and thirst when he says, 'Yahweh our God will deliver us from the hand of the king of Assyria?' 12 Did not Hezekiah himself remove His high places and His altars and say to Judah and Jerusalem, 'You must worship before one altar, and on it you shall burn sacrifices'?

13 Do you not know what I and my fathers have done to all the peoples of the lands? Have the gods of these nations ever been able to deliver their land from my hand? 14 Who among all the gods of these nations that my fathers devoted to destruction has been able to deliver his people from my hand? How then can your God deliver you from my hand?

15 So now, do not let Hezekiah deceive you, and do not let him mislead you like this. Do not believe him, for no god of any nation or kingdom has been able to deliver his people from my hand or from the hand of my fathers. How much less will your God deliver you from my hand!"

16 And the servants of Sennacherib spoke further against Yahweh God and against His servant Hezekiah. 17 He also wrote letters mocking Yahweh, the God of Israel, and saying against Him: "Just as the gods of the nations did not deliver their people from my hand, so the God of Hezekiah will not deliver His people from my hand."

18 Then the Assyrians called out loudly in Hebrew to the people of Jerusalem who were on the wall, to frighten and terrify them in order to capture the city. 19 They spoke against the God of Jerusalem as they had spoken against the gods of the peoples of the earth—the work of human hands.

JERUSALEM DELIVERED FROM THE ASSYRIANS // 2 KINGS 19:35–37; ISAIAH 37:36–38

20 In response, King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz cried out to heaven in prayer, 21 and Yahweh sent an angel who annihilated every mighty man of valor and every leader and commander in the camp of the king of Assyria. So he withdrew to his own land in disgrace. And when he entered the temple of his god, some of his own sons struck him down with the sword.

22 So Yahweh saved Hezekiah and the people of Jerusalem from the hands of King Sennacherib of Assyria and all others, and He gave them rest on every side. 23 Many brought offerings to Jerusalem for Yahweh and valuable gifts for Hezekiah king of Judah, and from then on he was exalted in the eyes of all nations.

HEZEKIAH'S ILLNESS AND RECOVERY // 2 KINGS 20:1–11; ISAIAH 38:1–8

24 In those days Hezekiah became mortally ill. So he prayed to Yahweh, who spoke to him and gave him a sign. 25 But because his heart was proud, Hezekiah

2CH 32:9 [FIELD NOTES] Sennacherib had the siege of Lachish carved on his palace walls. See The Lachish Reliefs Field Notes page in Micah, p.1433, and The Lachish Siege Ramp Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.645.

2CH 32:13 [DEMONIC] Assyria boasts that no nation's gods could save them

2CH 32:17 [DEMONIC] Sennacherib writes letters mocking God like an idol

2CH 32:19 [DEMONIC] Assyria calls God a work of human hands

2CH 32:21 [MIRACLE] The angel of Yahweh wipes out the Assyrian army

2CH 32:21 [NOTE] THE ANGEL. See the Big Question pages The 185,000 Assyrians, p.647 and The Death of Sennacherib Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.647.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

did not repay the favor shown to him. Therefore wrath came upon him and upon Judah and Jerusalem.

26 Then Hezekiah humbled the pride of his heart—he and the people of Jerusalem—so that the wrath of Yahweh did not come upon them during the days of Hezekiah.

27 Hezekiah had very great riches and honor, and he made treasuries for his silver, gold, precious stones, spices, shields, and all kinds of valuable articles. 28 He also made storehouses for the harvest of grain and new wine and oil, stalls for all kinds of livestock, and pens for the flocks. 29 He made cities for himself, and he acquired herds of sheep and cattle in abundance, for God gave him very great wealth.

30 It was Hezekiah who blocked the upper outlet of the Spring of Gihon and channeled it down to the west side of the City of David. And Hezekiah prospered in all that he did. 31 And so when ambassadors of the rulers of Babylon were sent to him to inquire about the wonder that had happened in the land, God left him alone to test him, that He might know all that was in Hezekiah's heart.

HEZEKIAH'S DEATH

32 As for the rest of the acts of Hezekiah and his deeds of loving devotion, they are indeed written in the vision of the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. 33 And Hezekiah rested with his fathers and was buried in the upper tombs of David's descendants. All Judah and the people of Jerusalem paid him honor at his death. And his son Manasseh reigned in his place.

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

Manasseh undoes everything his father did, idols in the temple, sorcery, and sons burned in the fire. The Assyrians take him to Babylon with a hook in his nose. There he humbles himself and prays, and God brings him home. He throws out the idols. His son Amon goes back to the old ways and is killed by his servants.

MANASSEH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 21:1–9

1 Manasseh was twelve years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem fifty-five years. 2 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh by following the abominations of the nations that Yahweh had driven out before the Israelites. 3 For he rebuilt the high places that his father Hezekiah had torn down, and he raised up altars for the Baals and made Asherah poles. And he worshiped and served all the host of heaven.

4 Manasseh also built altars in the house of Yahweh, of which Yahweh had said, "My Name will remain in Jerusalem forever." 5 In both courtyards of the house of Yahweh, he built altars to all the host of heaven. 6 He sacrificed his sons in the fire in the Valley of Ben-hinnom. He practiced sorcery, divination, and witchcraft, and consulted mediums and spiritists. He did great evil in the sight of Yahweh, provoking Him to anger.

7 Manasseh even took the carved image he had made and set it up in the house of God, of which God had said to David and his son Solomon, "In this temple and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will establish My Name forever. 8 I will never again cause the feet of the Israelites to leave the land that I assigned to your fathers, if only they are careful to do all that I have com-

■ **2CH 32:24 [NOTE]** THE SIGN. The shadow went back ten steps, 2 Kings 20:9 to 11. See the Big Question pages Hezekiah's Sundial in 2 Kings, p.649.
■ **2CH 32:26 [HEART]** Hezekiah humbled the pride of his heart, so judgment was delayed.
■ **2CH 32:30 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** An underground water tunnel and a Hebrew inscription about its digging, about 701 BC
■ **2CH 32:30 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Siloam Tunnel Inscription Field Notes page in Isaiah, p.1087.
■ **2CH 32:31 [HEART]** God left Hezekiah alone to test him and know everything in his heart.

■ **2CH 33:1 [NOTE]** MANASSEH. See the Big Question pages Manasseh in 2 Kings, p.651, for his evil and why Judah still fell.
■ **2CH 33:2 [DEMONIC]** Manasseh builds Baal altars inside God's temple
■ **2CH 33:6 [DEMONIC]** Manasseh practiced sorcery and consulted mediums
■ **2CH 33:6 [NOTE]** CHILD SACRIFICE. Manasseh burned his sons in the same valley as his grandfather Ahaz, 28:3. Later its name, Gehinnom, became a word for hell.
■ **2CH 33:7 [DEMONIC]** Manasseh sets a carved idol in God's house

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

manded them through Moses—all the laws, statutes, and judgments."

9 So Manasseh led the people of Judah and Jerusalem astray, so that they did greater evil than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the Israelites.

MANASSEH'S REPENTANCE AND RESTORATION // 2 KINGS 21:10–18

10 And Yahweh spoke to Manasseh and his people, but they did not listen. 11 So Yahweh brought against them the military commanders of the king of Assyria, who captured Manasseh, put a hook in his nose, bound him with bronze shackles, and took him to Babylon. 12 And in his distress, Manasseh sought the favor of Yahweh his God and earnestly humbled himself before the God of his fathers. 13 And when he prayed to Him, Yahweh received his plea and heard his petition. So He brought him back to Jerusalem and to his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that Yahweh is God.

14 After this, Manasseh rebuilt the outer wall of the City of David from west of Gihon in the valley to the entrance of the Fish Gate, and he brought it around the hill of Ophel and heightened it considerably. He also stationed military commanders in all the fortified cities of Judah.

15 He removed the foreign gods and the idol from the house of Yahweh, along with all the altars he had built on the temple mount and in Jerusalem, and he dumped them outside the city. 16 Then he restored the altar of Yahweh and sacrificed peace offerings and thank offerings on it, and he told Judah to serve Yahweh, the God of Israel. 17 Nevertheless, the people still sacrificed at the high places, but only to Yahweh their God.

18 As for the rest of the acts of Manasseh, along with his prayer to his God and the words of the seers who spoke to him in the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel, they are indeed written in the Chronicles of the Kings of Israel. 19 His prayer and how God received his plea, as well as all his sin and unfaithfulness, and the sites where he built high places and set up Asherah poles and idols before he humbled himself, they are indeed written in the Records of the Seers. 20 And Manasseh rested with his fathers and was buried at his palace. And his son Amon reigned in his place.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

MANASSEH'S REPENTANCE

What Happened

2 CHRONICLES 33:10 TO 20 · 2 KINGS 21:1 TO 18

THE WORST KING

Manasseh rebuilt the high places, put idols and altars to the stars in the temple, burned his sons in the fire and practiced sorcery, 33:2 to 6. He led Judah to do more evil than the nations God had destroyed, 33:9.

GOD SPOKE, NO ONE LISTENED

God spoke to Manasseh and his people, but they paid no attention, 33:10.

A HOOK IN HIS NOSE

So God brought the Assyrian army. They captured Manasseh, put a hook in his nose, bound him with bronze chains and took him to Babylon, 33:11.

HE PRAYED

In his distress he begged God for mercy and humbled himself greatly. God heard him and brought him back to Jerusalem. Then Manasseh knew that Yahweh is God, 33:12 to 13.

A CHANGED LIFE

He built a wall, threw the foreign gods and the idol out of the temple, rebuilt God's altar, and told Judah to serve Yahweh, 33:14 to 16.

WHY IT MATTERED THEN

The first readers had also been carried off to Babylon for their sins. Manasseh's story showed them that God brings home those who humble themselves.

THE QUESTION

Was it real, and why does only Chronicles tell it?

2CH 33:11 [NOTE] TO BABYLON. Assyrian records name Manasseh. See the Manasseh in Assyria's Records Field Notes page in 2 Kings, p.651, and the Big Question pages Manasseh's Repentance, p.752.

2CH 33:15 [DEMONIC] Manasseh throws the idols out of the temple

2CH 33:19 [DEMONIC] The record of Manasseh's idols and his repentance

DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View
2 CHRONICLES 33:15 TO 17 · 33:22 TO 23 · LUKE 15:20 · 1 TIMOTHY 1:15

VIEW 1: IT HAPPENED
Many say yes. Assyrian records name Manasseh as a king who served Assyria, and Esarhaddon ruled Babylon too, so a trip there in chains fits the time. See Manasseh in Assyria's Records in 2 Kings, p.651.

VIEW 2: A LESSON STORY
Some critical scholars think the writer told it to explain why the worst king reigned 55 years, the longest of any king of Judah. Others answer that the writer names his sources, the Records of the Seers, 33:19.

WHY KINGS LEAVES IT OUT
Kings tells the damage Manasseh did to the nation. Chronicles tells what happened in his own heart. See the Big Question pages Manasseh in 2 Kings, p.651.

THE PRAYER OF MANASSEH
33:18 says his prayer was written down. A short prayer in his name is in some old Bibles, among the books between the Testaments. Eastern Orthodox Christians read it as Scripture. Jews, Catholics and Protestants do not.

NOT EVERYTHING CHANGED
The people still sacrificed at the high places, 33:17, and his son Amon went back to all the idols, 33:22 to 23.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
No one is too far gone for God. Paul called himself the worst of sinners, saved by Christ, 1 Timothy 1:15, and the father ran to meet his lost son, Luke 15:20.

AMON REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 21:19–26

21 Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem two years. 22 And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh, as his father Manasseh had done.

Amon served and sacrificed to all the idols that his father Manasseh had made, 23 but he did not humble himself before Yahweh as his father Manasseh had done; instead, Amon increased his guilt.

24 Then the servants of Amon conspired against him and killed him in his palace. 25 But the people of the land killed all those who had conspired against King Amon, and they made his son Josiah king in his place.

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS
Josiah becomes king at eight and starts seeking God at sixteen. He crushes the idols and repairs the temple. Hilkiah the priest finds the Book of the Law. When it is read, Josiah tears his clothes. The prophetess Huldah says judgment is coming, but not in his day, because his heart was tender.

JOSIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 22:1–2

1 Josiah was eight years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem thirty-one years. 2 And he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh and walked in the ways of his father David he did not turn aside to the right or to the left.

JOSIAH DESTROYS IDOLATRY // 1 KINGS 13:1–10; 2 KINGS 23:4–20

3 In the eighth year of his reign, while he was still young, Josiah began to seek the God of his father David, and in the twelfth year he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem of the high places, the Asherah poles, the carved idols, and the cast images. 4 Then in his presence the altars of the Baals were torn down, and he cut to pieces the incense altars that were above them. He shattered the Asherah poles, the carved idols, and the cast images, crushed them to dust, and scattered them over the graves of those who had sacrificed to them. 5 Then he burned the bones of the priests on their altars. So he cleansed Judah and Jerusalem.

6 Josiah did the same in the cities of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, as far as Naphtali, and in the ruins around them. 7 He tore down the altars and Asherah poles, crushed the idols to powder, and cut to pieces all the incense altars

2CH 33:22 [DEMONIC] Amon worships all the idols his father made

2CH 34:3 [DEMONIC] Josiah crushes the idols to dust

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

throughout the land of Israel. Then he returned to Jerusalem.

JOSIAH REPAIRS THE TEMPLE // 2 KINGS 22:3–7

8 Now in the eighteenth year of his reign,
in order to cleanse the land and the temple, Josiah sent Shaphan son of Azaliah,
Maaseiah the governor of the city, and
Joah son of Joahaz, the recorder, to repair the house of Yahweh his God.
9 So they went to Hilkiah the high priest
and gave him the money that had been
brought into the house of God, which the
Levites who guarded the doors had collected from the people of Manasseh and
Ephraim, from all the remnant of Israel,
from all Judah and Benjamin, and from the
people of Jerusalem. 10 They put it into the
hands of those supervising the work in
the house of Yahweh, who in turn gave it
to the workmen restoring and repairing
the house of Yahweh. 11 They also gave
money to the carpenters and builders to
buy dressed stone, as well as timbers for
couplings and beams for the buildings
that the kings of Judah had allowed to deteriorate.
12 And the men did the work faithfully. The
Levites overseeing them were Jahath and
Obadiah, descendants of Merari, and
Zechariah and Meshullam, descendants
of Kohath. Other Levites, all skilled with
musical instruments, 13 were over the laborers and supervised all who did the
work, task by task. Some of the Levites
were secretaries, officers, and gatekeepers.

HILKIAH FINDS THE BOOK OF THE LAW // 2 KINGS 22:8–13

14 While they were bringing out the money
that had been taken into the house of
Yahweh, Hilkiah the priest found the Book
of the Law of Yahweh given by Moses. 15
And Hilkiah said to Shaphan the scribe, "I
have found the Book of the Law in the
house of Yahweh!" And he gave it to
Shaphan.
16 Then Shaphan brought the book to the
king and reported, "Your servants are doing all that has been placed in their hands.
17 They have paid out the money that was
found in the house of Yahweh and have
put it into the hands of the supervisors
and workers."
18 Moreover, Shaphan the scribe told the
king, "Hilkiah the priest has given me a
book." And Shaphan read it in the presence of the king.
19 When the king heard the words of the
Law, he tore his clothes 20 and commanded Hilkiah, Ahikam son of Shaphan,
Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan the scribe,
and Asaiah the servant of the king: 21 "Go
and inquire of Yahweh for me and for
those remaining in Israel and Judah concerning the words in the book that has
been found. For great is the wrath of Yahweh that has been poured out on us because our fathers have not kept the word
of Yahweh by doing all that is written in
this book."

HULDAH'S PROPHECY // 2 KINGS 22:14–20

22 So Hilkiah and those the king had designated went and spoke to Huldah the
prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of
Tokhath, the son of Hasrah, the keeper of
the wardrobe. She lived in Jerusalem, in
the Second District.
23 And Huldah said to them, "This is what
Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Tell the
man who sent you 24 that this is what Yahweh says: I am about to bring calamity on
this place and on its people, according to
all the curses written in the book that has
been read in the presence of the king of
Judah, 25 because they have forsaken Me
and burned incense to other gods, that
they might provoke Me to anger with all
the works of their hands. My wrath will be
poured out upon this place and will not be
quenched.'
26 But as for the king of Judah, who sent
you to inquire of Yahweh, tell him that this
is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says:

2CH 34:14 [NOTE] THE BOOK OF THE LAW. See the Big Question pages Josiah and the Book of the Law in 2 Kings, p.654.

2CH 34:24 [PROPHECY] Huldah said disaster would come on Jerusalem → 2CH 36:19 p.759

2CH 34:25 [DEMONIC] God's wrath comes for burning incense to other gods

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

'As for the words that you heard, 27 because your heart was tender and you humbled yourself before God when you heard His words against this place and against its people, and because you have humbled yourself before Me and have torn your clothes and wept before Me, I have heard you,' declares Yahweh.

28 'Now I will indeed gather you to your fathers, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see all the calamity that I will bring on this place and on its people.'"

So they brought her answer back to the king.

JOSIAH RENEWS THE COVENANT // 2 KINGS 23:1–3

29 Then the king summoned all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. 30 And he went up to the house of Yahweh with all the people of Judah and Jerusalem, as well as the priests and the Levites—all the people great and small—and in their hearing he read all the words of the Book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of Yahweh.

31 So the king stood by the pillar and made a covenant before Yahweh to follow Yahweh and to keep His commandments, decrees, and statutes with all his heart and all his soul, and to carry out the words of the covenant that were written in this book.

32 Then he had everyone in Jerusalem and Benjamin take a stand in agreement to it. So all the people of Jerusalem carried out the covenant of God, the God of their fathers.

33 And Josiah removed all the abominations from all the lands belonging to the Israelites, and he required everyone in Israel to serve Yahweh their God. Throughout his reign they did not turn aside from following Yahweh, the God of their fathers.

- **2CH 34:27 [HEART]** Josiah's heart was tender and he humbled himself, so God heard him.
- **2CH 34:28 [PROPHECY]** Josiah would die before the disaster came → 2CH 35:24; 2CH 36:19 p.756
- **2CH 34:31 [HEART]** Josiah promised to keep God's commands with all his heart and soul.

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

Josiah throws a Passover like none since Samuel. Then Pharaoh Neco marches by on his way to Carchemish and says, Stay out of this, God is with me. Josiah disguises himself and fights him anyway at Megiddo. Archers hit him, and he dies. Jeremiah writes laments for him.

JOSIAH RESTORES THE PASSOVER // 2 KINGS 23:21–27

1 Then Josiah kept the Passover to Yahweh in Jerusalem, and the Passover lamb was slaughtered on the fourteenth day of the first month. 2 He appointed the priests to their duties and encouraged them in the service of the house of Yahweh.

3 To the Levites who taught all Israel and were holy to Yahweh, Josiah said: "Put the holy ark in the temple built by Solomon son of David king of Israel. It is not to be carried around on your shoulders. Now serve Yahweh your God and His people Israel. 4 Prepare yourselves by families in your divisions, according to the instructions written by David king of Israel and Solomon his son.

5 Moreover, stand in the Holy Place by the divisions of the families of your kinsmen the lay people, and by the divisions of the families of the Levites. 6 Slaughter the Passover lambs, consecrate yourselves, and make preparations for your fellow countrymen to carry out the word of Yahweh given by Moses."

7 From his own flocks and herds Josiah contributed 30,000 lambs and goats plus 3,000 bulls for the Passover offerings for all the people who were present.

8 His officials also contributed willingly to the people and priests and Levites. Hilkiah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the chief officials of the house of God, gave the priests 2,600 Passover offerings and 300 bulls. 9 Additionally, Conaniah and his brothers Shemaiah and Nethanel, as well as Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, officers of the Levites, contributed to the Levites 5,000 Passover offerings and 500 bulls.

- **2CH 34:33 [DEMONIC]** Josiah removes all the abominations from Israel

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

10 So the service was prepared; the priests
stood in their places and the Levites in
their divisions according to the king's
command. 11 And they slaughtered the
Passover lambs, while the priests splat-
tered the blood handed to them and the
Levites skinned the animals. 12 They set
aside the burnt offerings to be given to
the divisions of the families of the people
to offer to Yahweh, as it is written in the
Book of Moses. And they did the same
with the bulls.

13 They roasted the Passover animals on
the fire according to the regulation, and
they boiled the other holy offerings in
pots, kettles, and bowls and quickly
brought them to all the people. 14 After-
ward, they made preparations for them-
selves and for the priests, since the
priests, the descendants of Aaron, were
offering up burnt offerings and fat until
nightfall. So the Levites made prepara-
tions for themselves and for the priests,
the descendants of Aaron.

15 The singers, the descendants of Asaph,
were at their stations according to the
command of David, Asaph, Heman, and
Jeduthun the king's seer. And the gate-
keepers at each gate did not need to
leave their posts, because their fellow
Levites made preparations for them.

16 So on that day the entire service of Yah-
weh was carried out for celebrating the
Passover and offering burnt offerings on
the altar of Yahweh, according to the
command of King Josiah. 17 The Israelites
who were present also observed the
Passover at that time, as well as the Feast
of Unleavened Bread for seven days. 18 No
such Passover had been observed in Is-
rael since the days of Samuel the prophet.
None of the kings of Israel ever observed
a Passover like the one that Josiah ob-
served with the priests, the Levites, all Ju-
dah, the Israelites who were present, and
the people of Jerusalem. 19 In the eigh-
teenth year of Josiah's reign, this
Passover was observed.

THE DEATH OF JOSIAH // 2 KINGS 23:28–30

20 After all this, when Josiah had set the
temple in order, Neco king of Egypt
marched up to fight at Carchemish by the
Euphrates, and Josiah went out to con-
front him. 21 But Neco sent messengers to
him, saying, "What is the issue between
you and me, O king of Judah? I have not
come against you today, but I am fighting
another dynasty, and God has told me to
hurry. So stop opposing God, who is with
me, or He will destroy you!"

22 Josiah, however, did not turn away from
him; instead, in order to engage him in
battle, he disguised himself. He did not
listen to Neco's words from the mouth of
God, but went to fight him on the Plain of
Megiddo. 23 There the archers shot King
Josiah, who said to his servants, "Take
me away, for I am badly wounded!"

24 So his servants took him out of his char-
iot, put him in his second chariot, and
brought him to Jerusalem, where he died.
And Josiah was buried in the tomb of his
fathers, and all Judah and Jerusalem
mourned for him.

LAMENTS OVER JOSIAH

25 Then Jeremiah lamented over Josiah,
and to this day all the male and female
singers recite laments over Josiah. They
established them as a statute for Israel,
and indeed they are written in the Book of
Laments.

26 As for the rest of the acts of Josiah and
his deeds of loving devotion according to
what is written in the Law of Yahweh— 27
his acts from beginning to end—they are
indeed written in the Book of the Kings of
Israel and Judah.

- **2CH 35:20 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Pharaoh Neco Field Notes page, p.757.
- **2CH 35:21 [NOTE]** NECO'S CLAIM. Neco says God sent him, and 35:22 says his words came from the mouth of God. He does not quote God's own words, so they stay black. See the Big Question pages Did God Speak Through Neco?, p.757
- **2CH 35:24 [FULFILLS]** Josiah would die before the disaster came ← 2CH 34:28 p.755

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PHARAOH NECO

2 CHRONICLES 35:20 TO 24 · 36:3 TO 4 · 2 KINGS 23:29 TO 35 · JEREMIAH 46:2



King Necho II, right, faces the goddess Hathor, left. His name is in the oval on the right. Walters Art Museum, Baltimore. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A carved stone block from an Egyptian temple. It shows King Necho II, called Neco in this Bible, in front of the cow goddess Hathor. His royal name is carved in an oval called a cartouche.

HOW OLD IT IS

From his reign, about 610 to 595 BC. Neco killed Josiah in 609 BC.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Walters Art Museum in Baltimore, Maryland.

WHAT OTHER RECORDS SAY

The Greek writer Herodotus says Necos began a canal from the Nile to the Red Sea and beat the Syrians at Magdolus. Many think Magdolus is Megiddo. A Babylonian record says a big Egyptian army marched in 609 BC to help Assyria at Harran, and Babylon beat Egypt at Carchemish in 605 BC. Jeremiah 46:2 names Pharaoh Neco at Carchemish.

MEGIDDO

Josiah died at Megiddo, a city on a hill that guards the main pass through the mountains. Armies marched past it for thousands of years. Revelation 16:16 names Armageddon, which most think means the mountain of Megiddo.

WHAT NECO DID NEXT

Three months later Neco took Josiah's son Jehoahaz to Egypt, made Jehoiakim king and charged Judah 7,500 pounds of silver and 75 pounds of gold, 36:3 to 4.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No Egyptian or Babylonian record names Josiah or tells of the battle. They show that Neco and his march north in 609 BC were real.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DID GOD SPEAK THROUGH NECO?

What Happened

2 CHRONICLES 35:20 TO 25 · 2 KINGS 23:29 TO 30 · 2 CHRONICLES 18:29

THE MARCH

Pharaoh Neco marched north to fight at Carchemish by the Euphrates, and Josiah went out to stop him, 35:20. 2 Kings 23:29 says Neco was going to help the king of Assyria.

THE WARNING

Neco sent messengers: I have not come against you today. God has told me to hurry. Stop opposing God, who is with me, or He will destroy you, 35:21.

FROM THE MOUTH OF GOD

Josiah did not turn back. He disguised himself and fought at Megiddo. The writer says Josiah did not listen to Neco's words from the mouth of God, 35:22.

THE END

Archers shot Josiah. He was carried to Jerusalem and died, and Jeremiah wrote laments for him, 35:23 to 25.

LIKE AHAB

Ahab also disguised himself for battle and died from an arrow, 18:29 to 34. Many think the writer wanted readers to notice.

WHO WAS NECO HELPING?

Babylon had just beaten Assyria's capital. Neco was rushing north to help what was left of Assyria. Many think Josiah wanted Assyria to fall, because Assyria had wiped out the northern kingdom.

THE QUESTION

How could God speak through a pagan king, and why did a good king like Josiah not listen?

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View

ISAIAH 45:1 · JEREMIAH 25:9 · GENESIS 20:3 · NUMBERS 22:28

VIEW 1: YES, GOD USED NECO

The writer says the words were from the mouth of God. God spoke to pagans before, like Abimelech in a dream, Genesis 20:3, and even through a donkey, Numbers 22:28. He called Cyrus His anointed, Isaiah 45:1.

VIEW 2: GOD'S PLAN, NOT GOD'S WORDS

Some say Neco only claimed God was with him, as many kings did. The writer means that God's plan really was behind Neco's march, so Josiah was fighting against it.

VIEW 3: JOSIAH SHOULD HAVE ASKED

Josiah had asked Huldah what God said before, 34:21. Many think he should have asked a prophet again before going to war.

ANOTHER OLD VERSION

1 Esdras, a Greek retelling found in some old Bibles, says Josiah did not listen to the words of the prophet Jeremiah from the mouth of the Lord.

WHY THE WORDS ARE BLACK

Neco does not quote God's own words, and this Bible prints only God's own quoted words in red. See the note on 35:21.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Josiah's death was a tragedy, and Judah mourned him for years, 35:25. Even good people need to keep asking what God is saying.

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

Egypt and Babylon push the last four kings around, and three of them do evil. God keeps sending prophets, and the people keep mocking them. Babylon burns the temple and breaks down the walls, and the land rests for seventy years. Then Cyrus king of Persia says, Whoever belongs to His people, go up!

JEHOAHAZ SUCCEEDS JOSIAH // 2 KINGS 23:31–35

1 Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah and made him king in Jerusalem in place of his father.

2 Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem three months. 3 And the king of Egypt dethroned him in Jerusalem and imposed on Judah a levy of 7,500 pounds of silver and 75 pounds of gold.

4 Then Neco king of Egypt made Eliakim brother of Jehoahaz king over Judah and Jerusalem, and he changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. But Neco took Eliakim's brother Jehoahaz and carried him off to Egypt.

JEHOIAKIM REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 23:36–37

5 Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years. And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh his God.

6 Then Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against Jehoiakim and bound him with bronze shackles to take him to Babylon. 7 Nebuchadnezzar also took to Babylon some of the articles from the house of Yahweh, and he put them in his temple in Babylon.

8 As for the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, the abominations he committed, and all that was found against him, they are indeed written in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah. And his son Jehoiachin reigned in his place.

JEHOIACHIN REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 24:6–9

9 Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem three months and ten days. And he did evil in the sight of Yahweh.

10 In the spring, King Nebuchadnezzar summoned Jehoiachin and brought him to Babylon, along with the articles of value from the house of Yahweh. And he made Jehoiachin's relative Zedekiah king over Judah and Jerusalem.

ZEDEKIAH REIGNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 24:18–20; JEREMIAH 52:1–3

11 Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years. 12 And he did evil

- **2CH 36:9 [TEXT]** HOW OLD? The Hebrew here says 8. 2 Kings 24:8 and some Greek copies say 18, and this Bible follows them, as most Bibles do.
- **2CH 36:10 [FIELD NOTES]** A Babylonian record tells of this very attack, 597 BC, and clay tablets list food for King Jehoiachin in Babylon. See The Babylonian Chronicle and The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets in 2 Kings, p.659.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · THE HEART · ARCHAEOLOGY · DEMONIC

in the sight of Yahweh his God and did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet, who spoke for Yahweh.

13 He also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God. But Zedekiah stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against turning to Yahweh, the God of Israel. 14 Furthermore, all the leaders of the priests and the people multiplied their unfaithful deeds, following all the abominations of the nations, and they defiled the house of Yahweh, which He had consecrated in Jerusalem.

THE FALL OF JERUSALEM // 2 KINGS 25:1–7

15 Again and again Yahweh, the God of their fathers, sent word to His people through His messengers because He had compassion on them and on His dwelling place. 16 But they mocked the messengers of God, despising His words and scoffing at His prophets, until the wrath of Yahweh against His people was stirred up beyond remedy.

17 So He brought up against them the king of the Chaldeans, who put their young men to the sword in the sanctuary, sparing neither young men nor young women, neither elderly nor infirm. God gave them all into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, 18 who carried off everything to Babylon—all the articles of the house of God, both large and small, and the treasures of the house of Yahweh and of the king and his officials. 19 Then the Chaldeans set fire to the house of God and broke down the wall of Jerusalem. They burned down all the palaces and destroyed every article of value.

20 Those who escaped the sword were carried by Nebuchadnezzar into exile in Babylon, and they became servants to him and his sons until the kingdom of Persia came to power.

21 So the land enjoyed its Sabbath rest all the days of the desolation, until seventy years were completed, in fulfillment of the word of Yahweh spoken through Jeremiah.

THE PROCLAMATION OF CYRUS // EZRA 1:1–4; ISAIAH 45:1–25

22 In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, to fulfill the word of Yahweh spoken through Jeremiah, Yahweh stirred the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia to send a proclamation throughout his kingdom and to put it in writing as follows:

23 "This is what Cyrus king of Persia says:

'Yahweh, the God of heaven, who has given me all the kingdoms of the earth, has appointed me to build a house for Him at Jerusalem in Judah.

Whoever among you belongs to His people, may Yahweh his God be with him, and may he go up.'"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SEVENTY YEARS OF REST

What the Book Says

2 CHRONICLES 36:20 TO 21 · LEVITICUS 25:4 · 26:34 TO 35 · JEREMIAH 25:11 TO 12 · 29:10

THE VERSE

The land enjoyed its Sabbath rest all the days of the desolation, until seventy years were completed, in fulfillment of the word of Yahweh through Jeremiah, 36:21.

A REST FOR THE LAND

God told Israel to let the fields rest every seventh year, Leviticus 25:4. He warned that if they did not, He would send them away so the land could enjoy its Sabbaths, Leviticus 26:34 to 35.

JEREMIAH'S SEVENTY

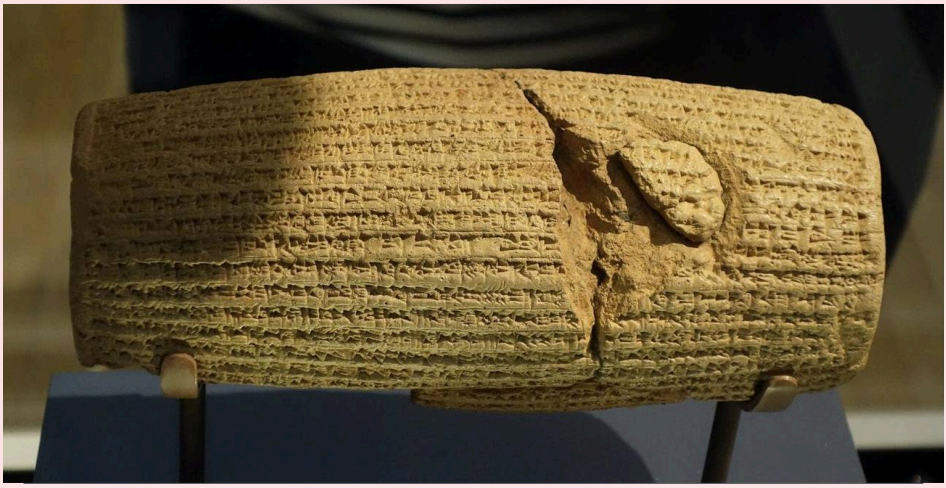
Jeremiah said the nations would serve the king of Babylon seventy years, Jeremiah 25:11 to 12, and that God would

- **2CH 36:13 [HEART]** Zedekiah stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against the Lord.
- **2CH 36:14 [DEMONIC]** Priests defile the temple with the nations' abominations
- **2CH 36:19 [FULFILLS]** Israel's cities and sanctuaries would be laid waste if they disobeyed and 3 more ← LEV 26:31-32; 2CH 34:24; 2CH 34:28; AMOS 2:5 p.217
- **2CH 36:20 [FULFILLS]** Judah would serve Babylon 70 years; then Babylon would be punished ← JER 25:11-12 p.1182
- **2CH 36:21 [FULFILLS]** The land would rest and enjoy its Sabbaths while Israel was in exile ← LEV 26:34-35 p.217
- **2CH 36:21 [NOTE]** SEVENTY YEARS. See the Big Question pages Seventy Years of Rest, p.759.
- **2CH 36:22 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Cyrus the Great of Persia is named on the Cyrus Cylinder and in the Nabonidus Chronicle → FIELD NOTES p.760
- **2CH 36:23 [NOTE]** THE LAST WORDS. Cyrus says God appointed him. That is his own decree, so it stays black. God had named Cyrus long before, Isaiah 44:28. These words end most printed Hebrew Bibles, and Ezra 1:1 to 3 picks them up. See Why End With Cyrus?

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIND, DEBATED FOR THE DATE OF ISAIAH 40 TO 66

THE CYRUS CYLINDER

2 CHRONICLES 36:22 TO 23 · EZRA 1:1 TO 4 · ISAIAH 44:28 · 45:1



The Cyrus Cylinder. British Museum, London.

WHAT IT IS

A clay cylinder about nine inches long, covered with Babylonian writing. Cyrus the Great of Persia had it made after he took Babylon. He says he let the peoples Babylon had captured go back to their homelands and rebuild their temples.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 539 BC, right after Cyrus captured Babylon. The date comes from the events it describes, so it is firm.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Hormuzd Rassam, an archaeologist working for the British Museum, found it in 1879 in the ruins of Babylon, in modern Iraq. It is in the British Museum in London.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Cyrus sent some captured peoples and their gods home and helped rebuild their temples. That fits what 36:22 to 23 and Ezra 1:1 to 4 say he did for the Jews. A Babylonian record called the Nabonidus Chronicle also tells how Cyrus took Babylon in 539 BC.

NAMED AHEAD OF TIME

Isaiah 44:28 and 45:1 call Cyrus by name. If Isaiah wrote this around 700 BC, God named Cyrus about 100 years before he was born, and more than 150 years before he sent the Jews home. Josephus says Cyrus read these verses and was moved to send the Jews home. Many scholars think Isaiah 40 to 66 was written later, in Cyrus's own time.

CYRUS AND HIS GOD

On the cylinder Cyrus says Marduk, the god of Babylon, chose him, because Nabonidus, the last king, had neglected Marduk's worship. In Ezra 1:2 he gives the credit to Yahweh. Many think he spoke to each people about its own god. The Bible says it was Yahweh who stirred his spirit, 36:22.

A PIECE AT YALE

In 1970 a scholar named Paul Richard Berger noticed a missing piece of the cylinder at Yale University in America. It fits the broken lines and fills in part of the text.

COPIES TOO

In 2010 the British Museum found two pieces of a clay tablet with the same words, so copies of the message were made, and probably sent around the empire.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The cylinder never names the Jews or Jerusalem. It confirms Cyrus's policy, not his exact order about the temple.

bring His people home when seventy years were complete, 29:10.

THE QUESTION

When did the seventy years start and end?

Every View

DANIEL 9:2 · ZECHARIAH 1:12 · 7:5 · EZRA 1:1 · 6:15

VIEW 1: 605 TO ABOUT 536 BC

Babylon took the first captives, Daniel among them, in 605 BC. The first Jews went home about 538 to 536 BC. That is about seventy years.

VIEW 2: 586 TO 516 BC

The temple was burned in 586 BC and the new one was finished in 516 BC, Ezra 6:15. That is seventy years. Zechariah speaks of seventy years of God's anger near the end of this time, Zechariah 1:12 and 7:5.

VIEW 3: BABYLON'S SEVENTY YEARS

Some say Jeremiah 25 counts Babylon's rule over the nations, from about 609 to 539 BC, when Cyrus took Babylon.

VIEW 4: A ROUND NUMBER

Others think seventy means a full lifetime, Psalm 90:10. Most of the people who were carried off would not live to come back.

THE MISSED SABBATHS

Some count back 490 years, one rest year in every seven, and get seventy missed Sabbath years. Others say the verse ties the exile to the law without doing math.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God kept His word both ways. The exile came as He warned, and it had an end date, just as He promised.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHY END WITH CYRUS?

The Last Words

2 CHRONICLES 36:22 TO 23 · EZRA 1:1 TO 3 · LUKE 11:51

THE LAST VERSE

Cyrus tells everyone who belongs to God's people that they may go up and build His house, 36:23.

ONE WORD IN HEBREW

The last words, may he go up, are one word in Hebrew, veyaal. It is the word for going up to Jerusalem and to God's house.

THE LAST BOOK

In most printed Hebrew Bibles, Chronicles is the last book, as in the Talmud's list. So the Hebrew Bible ends with an invitation to go up and build.

EZRA PICKS IT UP

Ezra 1:1 to 3 repeats these words and keeps going, telling how the people went home.

JESUS AND THE ORDER

Jesus spoke of the blood of Abel to the blood of Zechariah, Luke 11:51. Many think He meant from the first book to the last, Genesis to Chronicles, 24:21.

FIRST AND LAST

The Hebrew Bible begins with God creating the heavens and the earth, Genesis 1:1, and ends with God's people told to go up and build His house.

THE QUESTION

Why would the Hebrew Bible end with people told to go up, before the trip even starts?

Every View

MALACHI 4:5 TO 6 · LUKE 24:44 · HEBREWS 11:13 TO 16

VIEW 1: AN ENDING OF HOPE

The book could have ended with a burned temple. Instead it ends with the door open. Many say the writer wanted his readers to see that God was not finished with them.

VIEW 2: A BRIDGE

Some think the last verses were added to lead into Ezra. Others think Chronicles was put last on purpose, as a summary of the whole story from Adam.

VIEW 3: STILL WAITING

Some point out that the people went home, but no son of David sat on the throne. The ending leaves the promise to David open, waiting for the Messiah.

TWO ENDINGS

Most Christian Bibles end the Old Testament with Malachi instead: Elijah is coming, Malachi 4:5 to 6. Both endings look ahead.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The Hebrew Bible ends looking forward, with God's people invited home and something still to come.

BOOK 15 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

EZRA

Back From Babylon

AUTHOR	The book does not name its author. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says Ezra wrote it. Ezra tells part of the story himself, I and me, 7:27 to 9:15. Many scholars think the same writer who gave us Chronicles, or a later editor, put Ezra's own memoir together with older records and letters.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Cyrus sending the Jews home, 538 BC, to the temple finished, 515 BC, and then Ezra's trip in 458 BC. Chapter 4 also jumps ahead to about 450 BC.
DATE	About 440 to 400 BC, soon after Ezra's time. Some scholars say later.
WRITTEN TO	The Jews back in Judah, a small group under Persian rule, wondering if God was still with them.
KEY VERSE	Ezra 7:10. For Ezra had set his heart to study the Law of Yahweh, to practice it, and to teach its statutes and ordinances in Israel.



THE OLDEST COPY OF EZRA
These three small pieces of leather are 4Q117, called 4QEzra, found in Cave 4 at Qumran and copied about 50 to 25 BC. They hold parts of Ezra 4:2 to 6, 4:9 to 11 and 5:17 to 6:5. The biggest piece, in the middle, is in Aramaic. The white strips are modern mounting tissue. It is the only Dead Sea Scroll of Ezra.

You may hear the scrolls hold every book but Esther. That counts Ezra and Nehemiah as one book, as the Hebrew Bible does. No piece of Nehemiah from Qumran has been confirmed. The oldest whole copies are Greek, like Codex Vaticanus, 300s AD. The Aleppo Codex, about 930 AD, lost its pages for Ezra in 1947, so the oldest complete Hebrew copy is the Leningrad Codex, 1008 AD.

Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

It starts in Babylon, under the Persian empire, and moves to Jerusalem and the towns of Judah. Letters fly back and forth to the Persian kings, and a lost scroll turns up at Ecbatana in Media. Ezra's group camps by the Ahava Canal before the long walk home.

What Was Going Wrong

ENEMIES. The people of the land tried to scare the builders, hired advisers against them and wrote letters to the king 4:4 to 6.
THE WORK STOPPED. A king's order stopped the building, and the house of God sat unfinished for years 4:24.
MIXING WITH OTHER GODS. Many men, even priests and leaders, married women from nations whose worship God had forbidden 9:1 to 2.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Ezra picks up right where 2 Chronicles ended. Cyrus king of Persia tells God's people to go home and rebuild, and about 50,000 do. They build the altar and lay the foundation, but enemies fight them and the work stops for years. Then two prophets stir them up, King Darius backs them, and the temple is finished. Many years later Ezra the scribe comes home with a second group and a love for God's law. He finds the people mixing with nations that worship other gods, and he leads them to turn back. Two trips home, one temple, and one big shake up.

Ezra at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**GO UP** Cyrus sends the exiles home.
CH 3	**THE ALTAR AND THE FOUNDATION** Shouts and tears.
CH 4	**ENEMIES** Letters to the king, and the work stops.
CH 5 to 6	**THE TEMPLE FINISHED** Darius finds Cyrus's order.
CH 7 to 8	**EZRA COMES HOME** A scribe with a king's letter.
CH 9 to 10	**THE FOREIGN WIVES** Ezra's prayer and a hard choice.

Where Jesus Shows Up

EZRA 3:2 Zerubbabel, who led the rebuilding, was a grandson of King Jehoiachin. He is in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:12 to 13 and Luke 3:27. God kept David's line alive through the exile.

EZRA 6:15 This is the second temple. Herod later made it bigger, and Jesus taught in it. Haggai 2:9 promised its glory would be greater than the first.

EZRA 9:6 Ezra had done nothing wrong, but he prayed our sins, not their sins, and stood with his people before God. Christians see a picture of Jesus, who carried His people's sins.

GOD'S NAMES IN EZRA
Yahweh, the God of Israel, 1:3, the God of heaven, 1:2 and 7:12, the name Persian kings

used, and the God of Jerusalem, 7:19. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Ezra

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (10)	1:4-5, 1:7-11, 2:1, 2:64-65, 6:14-15, 9:8
THE HEART (3)	6:22, 7:10, 7:27
ARCHAEOLOGY (6)	1:1-3, 4:5-7, 4:10, 5:3
NOTABLE (4)	3:11-13, 8:21-23, 9:6, 9:9
GOD SPEAKING (2 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (12 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

PART OF IT IS IN ARAMAIC
Ezra 4:8 to 6:18 and 7:12 to 26 are written in Aramaic, not Hebrew. That was the language of the Persian empire's letters, and later the everyday language Jesus spoke.

ONE BOOK WITH NEHEMIAH
The Hebrew Bible counted Ezra and Nehemiah as one book. Christians split them early on, and Hebrew Bibles were printed as two books from the 1500s.

REAL KINGS
Cyrus, Darius, Xerxes and Artaxerxes are all named on their own monuments, and even the governor Tattenai shows up on a clay tablet. See the Field Notes pages, p.773.

How Did It Turn Out?

The temple was finished in 515 BC, and Ezra brought God's law back to the center of the people's life. About 13 years later Nehemiah came to rebuild Jerusalem's walls. The story goes on in Nehemiah.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Cyrus king of Persia makes an announcement: Any of God's people who want to go home to Jerusalem and rebuild His house, go. The neighbors chip in silver, gold and animals. Cyrus even hands back the temple's gold and silver dishes and bowls that Nebuchadnezzar stole, 5,400 in all, and Sheshbazzar carries them home.

THE PROCLAMATION OF CYRUS // 2 CHRONICLES 36:22–23; ISAIAH 45:1–25

1 In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia,
to fulfill the word of Yahweh spoken
through Jeremiah, Yahweh stirred the
spirit of Cyrus king of Persia to send a
proclamation throughout his kingdom and
to put it in writing as follows:

2 "This is what Cyrus king of Persia says:

'Yahweh, the God of heaven, who has
given me all the kingdoms of the earth,
has appointed me to build a house for Him
at Jerusalem in Judah.

3 Whoever among you belongs to His peo-
ple, may his God be with him, and may he
go to Jerusalem in Judah and build the
house of Yahweh, the God of Israel; He is
the God who is in Jerusalem. 4 And let
every survivor, wherever he lives, be as-
sisted by the men of that region with sil-
ver, gold, goods, and livestock, along with
a freewill offering for the house of God in
Jerusalem.'"

5 So the family heads of Judah and Ben-
jamin, along with the priests and
Levites—everyone whose spirit God had
stirred—prepared to go up and rebuild the
house of Yahweh in Jerusalem.

6 And all their neighbors supported them
with articles of silver and gold, with goods
and livestock, and with valuables, in addi-
tion to all their freewill offerings.

CYRUS RESTORES THE HOLY VESSELS

7 King Cyrus also brought out the articles
belonging to the house of Yahweh that
Nebuchadnezzar had carried away from
Jerusalem and placed in the temple of his
gods. 8 Cyrus king of Persia had them
brought out by the hand of Mithredath the
treasurer, who counted them out to
Sheshbazzar the prince of Judah. 9 This
was the inventory:

30 gold dishes,
1,000 silver dishes,
29 silver utensils,
10 30 gold bowls,
410 matching silver bowls,
and 1,000 other articles.

11 In all, there were 5,400 gold and silver
articles. Sheshbazzar brought all these
along when the exiles went up from Baby-
lon to Jerusalem.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The guest list. Family by family and town by town, 42,360 people come home, plus servants, singers, horses, mules, camels and a lot of donkeys. A few priests cannot find their family records, so they have to wait. The families give gold and silver for the rebuild.

THE LIST OF RETURNING EXILES // NEHEMIAH 7:4–69

1 Now these are the people of the province
who came up from the captivity of the ex-
iles carried away to Babylon by Neb-
uchadnezzar its king. They returned to
Jerusalem and Judah, each to his own
town, 2 accompanied by Zerubbabel,

- **EZR 1:1 [FULFILLS]** Even in exile God would not reject Israel but remember His covenant and 9 more ← LEV 26:44-45; DT 30:1-5; IS 41:25; IS 44:28; IS 46:11; JER 16:14-15; JER 25:11-12; JER 29:10; LAM 4:22; MIC 4:10 p.217
- **EZR 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Records Cyrus's policy of returning exiled peoples and rebuilding temples
- **EZR 1:1 [NOTE]** THE SAME WORDS. 1:1 to 3 repeats the last words of 2 Chronicles, 36:22 to 23, so the story picks up right where Chronicles ended. Jeremiah had said the exile would last seventy years, Jeremiah 25:11 to 12 and 29:10. See the Big Question pages Why End With Cyrus? and Seventy Years of Rest in 2 Chronicles, p.759.
- **EZR 1:1 [FIELD NOTES]** Cyrus's own clay cylinder says he sent captured peoples home. See The Cyrus Cylinder Field Notes page in 2 Chronicles, p.760.
- **EZR 1:2 [NOTE]** CYRUS'S DECREE. Cyrus says Yahweh gave him the kingdoms of the earth. That is the king's own decree, not God's words, so it stays black, like 2 Chronicles 36:23. Isaiah had named Cyrus long before, Isaiah 44:28 and 45:1.
- **EZR 1:3 [FORESHADOW]** Cyrus let the Jews go home to rebuild, a pattern of return after exile → Many Christians see this in the Jewish return to the land in 1948; others read it differently. · MEDIUM
- **EZR 1:3 [FULFILLS]** God's people would go out from Babylon ← IS 48:20 p.1122
- **EZR 1:7 [FULFILLS]** The temple articles would be carried to Babylon and later brought back ← JER 27:21-22 p.1186
- **EZR 1:8 [NOTE]** SHESHBAZZAR. The prince of Judah who carried the temple bowls home. See the Big Question pages Sheshbazzar and Zerubbabel, p.777.

Jeshua, Nehemiah, Seraiah, Reelaiah,
Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai, Rehum,
and Baanah.

This is the count of the men of Israel:

3 the descendants of Parosh, 2,172;
4 the descendants of Shephatiah, 372;
5 the descendants of Arah, 775;
6 the descendants of Pahath-moab
(through the line of Jeshua and Joab),
2,812;
7 the descendants of Elam, 1,254;
8 the descendants of Zattu, 945;
9 the descendants of Zaccai, 760;
10 the descendants of Bani, 642;
11 the descendants of Bebai, 623;
12 the descendants of Azgad, 1,222;
13 the descendants of Adonikam, 666;
14 the descendants of Bigvai, 2,056;
15 the descendants of Adin, 454;
16 the descendants of Ater (through
Hezekiah), 98;
17 the descendants of Bezai, 323;
18 the descendants of Jorah, 112;
19 the descendants of Hashum, 223;
20 the descendants of Gibbar, 95;
21 the men of Bethlehem, 123;
22 the men of Netophah, 56;
23 the men of Anathoth, 128;
24 the descendants of Azmaveth, 42;
25 the men of Kiriath-jearim, Chephirah,
and Beeroth, 743;
26 the men of Ramah and Geba, 621;
27 the men of Michmash, 122;
28 the men of Bethel and Ai, 223;
29 the descendants of Nebo, 52;
30 the descendants of Magbish, 156;
31 the descendants of the other Elam,
1,254;
32 the descendants of Harim, 320;
33 the men of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, 725;
34 the men of Jericho, 345;
35 and the descendants of Senaah, 3,630.

36 The priests:

The descendants of Jedaiah (through the
house of Jeshua), 973;
37 the descendants of Immer, 1,052;
38 the descendants of Pashhur, 1,247;
39 and the descendants of Harim, 1,017.

40 The Levites:

the descendants of Jeshua and Kadmiel
(through the line of Hodaviah), 74.

41 The singers:

the descendants of Asaph, 128.

42 The gatekeepers:

the descendants of Shallum,
the descendants of Ater,
the descendants of Talmon,
the descendants of Akkub,
the descendants of Hatita,
and the descendants of Shobai,
139 in all.

43 The temple servants:

the descendants of Ziha,
the descendants of Hasupha,
the descendants of Tabbaoth,
44 the descendants of Keros,
the descendants of Siaha,
the descendants of Padon,
45 the descendants of Lebanah,
the descendants of Hagabah,
the descendants of Akkub,
46 the descendants of Hagab,
the descendants of Shalmai,
the descendants of Hanan,
47 the descendants of Giddel,
the descendants of Gahar,
the descendants of Reaiah,
48 the descendants of Rezin,
the descendants of Nekoda,
the descendants of Gazzam,
49 the descendants of Uzza,
the descendants of Paseah,
the descendants of Besai,
50 the descendants of Asnah,
the descendants of Meunim,
the descendants of Nephusim,
51 the descendants of Bakbuk,
the descendants of Hakupha,
the descendants of Harhur,
52 the descendants of Bazluth,
the descendants of Mehida,
the descendants of Harsha,

EZR 2:1 [FULFILLS] God's people would go out from Babylon ← IS 48:20 p.1122
EZR 2:1 [FULFILLS] A new exodus from the land of the north would outshine the exodus from Egypt ← JER 16:14-15 · MEDIUM p.1171
EZR 2:2 [NOTE] NOT THOSE TWO. Most think this Nehemiah and this Mordecai are not the famous men of the books of Nehemiah and Esther. Those men lived many years later.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

53 the descendants of Barkos,
the descendants of Sisera,
the descendants of Temah,
54 the descendants of Neziah,
and the descendants of Hatipha.

55 The descendants of the servants of Solomon:

the descendants of Sotai,
the descendants of Hassophereth,
the descendants of Peruda,
56 the descendants of Jaala,
the descendants of Darkon,
the descendants of Giddel,
57 the descendants of Shephatiah,
the descendants of Hattil,
the descendants of Pochereth-hazzebaim,
and the descendants of Ami.
58 The temple servants and descendants of the servants of Solomon numbered 392 in all.

59 The following came up from Tel-melah, Tel-harsha, Cherub, Addan, and Immer, but they could not prove that their families were descended from Israel:

60 the descendants of Delaiah,
the descendants of Tobiah,
and the descendants of Nekoda,
652 in all.

61 And from among the priests: the descendants of Hobaiah,
the descendants of Hakkoz,
and the descendants of Barzillai (who had married a daughter of Barzillai the Gileadite and was called by their name).

62 These men searched for their family records, but they could not find them and so were excluded from the priesthood as unclean. 63 The governor ordered them not to eat the most holy things until there was a priest to consult the Urim and Thummim.

64 The whole assembly numbered 42,360, 65 in addition to their 7,337 menservants and maidservants, as well as their 200 male and female singers. 66 They had 736 horses, 245 mules, 67 435 camels, and 6,720 donkeys.

OFFERINGS BY THE EXILES // EXODUS 38:21–31; NEHEMIAH 7:70–73

68 When they arrived at the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem, some of the heads of the families gave freewill offerings to rebuild the house of God on its original site. 69 According to their ability, they gave to the treasury for this work 61,000 gold coins, 6,250 pounds of silver, and 100 priestly garments.

70 So the priests, the Levites, the singers, the gatekeepers, and the temple servants, along with some of the people, settled in their own towns; and the rest of the Israelites settled in their towns.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE COINS

PERSIAN GOLD COINS

EZRA 2:69 · 8:27 · NEHEMIAH 7:70 TO 72 · 1 CHRONICLES 29:7



A Persian gold coin showing the king with a bow and a spear, 500 to 400 BC. It is about half an inch across. Erlangen University, Germany. Photo ArchaiOptix, CC BY SA 4.0.

EZR 2:63 [NOTE] THE URIM AND THUMMIM. The priest used them to ask God yes or no questions, Exodus 28:30. The men without records had to wait for a priest who could ask God.

EZR 2:64 [FULFILLS] Only a remnant of Israel would return ← IS 10:21-22 p.1074

EZR 2:64 [NOTE] THE TOTAL. The family counts in this chapter add up to 29,818, but the total is 42,360. Nehemiah 7:66 has the same total. Many think the total also counts women, or people whose families are not listed.

EZR 2:69 [FIELD NOTES] See the Persian Gold Coins Field Notes page, p.768.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

WHAT IT IS
A small, thick gold coin made by the kings of Persia. On one side a king, down on one knee as if running, holds a bow and a spear. The back has only a rough punch mark. The Greeks called the coins archers, and many think they named them after King Darius.

HOW OLD IT IS
This one was made between 500 and 400 BC. Coins like it were first made under Darius I, about 515 BC, and were used until Alexander the Great beat Persia in 330 BC.

HOW MUCH GOLD
Each coin weighs a little less than a third of an ounce. The 61,000 gold coins in 2:69 would be more than 1,000 pounds of gold.

A WORD FROM A LATER TIME
When the first group came home in 538 BC, these coins may not have been made yet. Many think the writer counted the gift in the coins of his own day, the way we might say an old gift was worth so many dollars. 1 Chronicles 29:7 does the same with David's gift.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
This coin is in the collection of the University of Erlangen in Germany. Many others are in museums around the world.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
This coin was not part of the gift in Ezra. It shows the kind of gold coin Persia made and the writer's readers knew.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
First thing back, they build the altar, even though they are scared of the locals. The next spring they lay the temple's foundation. The young people shout for joy. The old people who remember Solomon's temple cry out loud. It is so noisy nobody can tell which is which.

SACRIFICES RESTORED

1 By the seventh month, the Israelites had
settled in their towns, and the people as-
sembled as one man in Jerusalem.
2 Then Jeshua son of Jozadak and his fel-
low priests, along with Zerubbabel son of
Shealtiel and his associates, began to
build the altar of the God of Israel to sacri-
fice burnt offerings on it, as it is written in
the Law of Moses the man of God. 3 They
set up the altar on its foundation and sac-
rificed burnt offerings on it to
Yahweh—both the morning and evening
burnt offerings—even though they feared
the people of the land.
4 They also celebrated the Feast of Taber-
nacles in accordance with what is written,
and they offered burnt offerings daily
based on the number prescribed for each
day.
5 After that, they presented the regular
burnt offerings and those for New Moons
and for all the appointed sacred feasts of
Yahweh, as well as all the freewill offer-
ings brought to Yahweh.
6 On the first day of the seventh month,
the Israelites began to offer burnt offer-
ings to Yahweh, although the foundation
of the temple of Yahweh had not been
laid. 7 They gave money to the masons
and carpenters, and food and drink and
oil to the people of Sidon and Tyre to
bring cedar logs from Lebanon to Joppa
by sea, as authorized by Cyrus king of
Persia.

TEMPLE RESTORATION BEGINS

8 In the second month of the second year
after they had arrived at the house of God
in Jerusalem, Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel,
Jeshua son of Jozadak, and the rest of
their associates including the priests, the
Levites, and all who had returned to
Jerusalem from the captivity, began the
work. They appointed Levites twenty
years of age or older to supervise the
construction of the house of Yahweh. 9 So
Jeshua and his sons and brothers, Kad-
miel and his sons (descendants of Yehu-
dah), and the sons of Henadad and their
sons and brothers—all Levites—joined to-
gether to supervise those working on the
house of God.

■ **EZR 3:2 [NOTE]** ZERUBBABEL. He was a grandson of King Jehoiachin, 1 Chronicles 3:17 to 19, so David's royal line was still alive. He is in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:12 to 13 and Luke 3:27, so his name is underlined.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

10 When the builders had laid the foundation of the temple of Yahweh, the priests in their apparel with trumpets, and the Levites (the sons of Asaph) with cymbals, took their positions to praise Yahweh, as David king of Israel had prescribed. 11 And they sang responsively with praise and thanksgiving to Yahweh:

"For He is good;
for His loving devotion to Israel endures forever."

Then all the people gave a great shout of praise to Yahweh, because the foundation of the house of Yahweh had been laid.

12 But many of the older priests, Levites, and family heads who had seen the first temple wept loudly when they saw the foundation of this temple. Still, many others shouted joyfully. 13 The people could not distinguish the shouts of joy from the sound of weeping, because the people were making so much noise. And the sound was heard from afar.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DID THE OLD MEN WEEP?

The Scene

EZRA 3:10 TO 13 · HAGGAI 2:1 TO 9

THE SCENE

The builders laid the foundation of the new temple. The priests blew trumpets, the Levites played cymbals, and everyone sang, He is good; His loving devotion endures forever, 3:10 to 11.

TWO SOUNDS

The people gave a great shout of joy. But many of the older priests, Levites and family heads wept out loud. The noise was so mixed that no one could tell the shouting from the crying, 3:12 to 13.

WHO WAS OLD ENOUGH?

Solomon's temple burned in 586 BC, and this foundation was laid about 536 BC. So anyone who remembered the first temple was now at least in his sixties.

WHAT THEY REMEMBERED

Solomon's temple was covered with gold and filled with treasures, 1 Kings 6. The new one had no king, little money, and enemies all around.

WHAT HAGGAI SAID

About 16 years later the prophet Haggai asked, Who is left among you who saw this house in its former glory? How does it look to you now? Does it not seem like nothing to you? Haggai 2:3.

THE QUESTION

Why did the old men weep while the young men shouted?

Every View

HAGGAI 2:3 · 2:9 · ZECHARIAH 4:10 · JOHN 2:19 TO 21

VIEW 1: IT WAS SO SMALL

Most say they wept because the new temple looked poor next to Solomon's. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says five things were missing from the second temple, among them the ark and the glory cloud.

VIEW 2: TEARS OF JOY

Some think the old men wept for joy. They never thought they would see a temple again. The two sounds mixed because both were full hearts.

VIEW 3: TEARS OF SORROW FOR SIN

Others think the old men remembered why the first temple burned. Their own generation's sin had brought the exile, 2 Chronicles 36:14 to 16.

THE PROMISE

God answered through Haggai: The glory of this latter house will be greater than the former, Haggai 2:9. Zechariah said, Who has despised the day of small things? Zechariah 4:10.

HOW IT CAME TRUE

Christians believe the promise came true when Jesus walked and taught in this same temple, later made bigger by Herod, John 2:19 to 21. Many Jewish teachers point to Herod's grand rebuild, or to a temple still to come.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Joy and grief can be in the same room. God was with them even when it looked small.

EZR 3:11 [NOTABLE] The young people shouted for joy and the old people cried, and it was so loud nobody could tell which was which. See the Big Question pages Why Did the Old Men Weep?, p.770

EZR 3:12 [NOTE] WHY THEY WEPT. See the Big Question pages Why Did the Old Men Weep?, p.770

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The neighbors say, Let us help. Zerubbabel says, No thanks. So they spend the next years trying to stop the work, hiring advisers and writing letters to the king. Years later one letter works, and King Artaxerxes stops the building of the city. Back at the start, the temple work had sat still until Darius was king.

ADVERSARIES HINDER THE WORK

1 When the enemies of Judah and Benjamin heard that the exiles were building a temple for Yahweh, the God of Israel, 2 they approached Zerubbabel and the heads of the families, saying, "Let us build with you because, like you, we seek your God and have been sacrificing to Him since the time of King Esar-haddon of Assyria, who brought us here."

3 But Zerubbabel, Jeshua, and the other heads of the families of Israel replied, "You have no part with us in building a house for our God, since we alone must build it for Yahweh, the God of Israel, as Cyrus king of Persia has commanded us."

4 Then the people of the land set out to discourage the people of Judah and make them afraid to build. 5 They hired counselors against them to frustrate their plans throughout the reign of Cyrus king of Persia and down to the reign of Darius king of Persia.

OPPOSITION UNDER XERXES AND ARTAXERXES

6 At the beginning of the reign of Xerxes, an accusation was lodged against the people of Judah and Jerusalem.

7 And in the days of Artaxerxes king of Persia, Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of his associates wrote a letter to Artaxerxes. It was written in Aramaic and then translated.

8 Rehum the commander and Shimshai the scribe wrote the letter against Jerusalem to King Artaxerxes as follows:

9 From Rehum the commander, Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of their associates—the judges and officials over Tripolis, Persia, Erech and Babylon, the Elamites of Susa, 10 and the rest of the peoples whom the great and honorable Ashurbanipal deported and settled in the cities of Samaria and elsewhere west of the Euphrates.

11 (This is the text of the letter they sent to him.)

To King Artaxerxes,

From your servants, the men west of the Euphrates:

12 Let it be known to the king that the Jews who came from you to us have returned to Jerusalem and are rebuilding that rebellious and wicked city. They are restoring its walls and repairing its foundations.

13 Let it now be known to the king that if that city is rebuilt and its walls are restored, they will not pay tribute, duty, or toll, and the royal treasury will suffer.

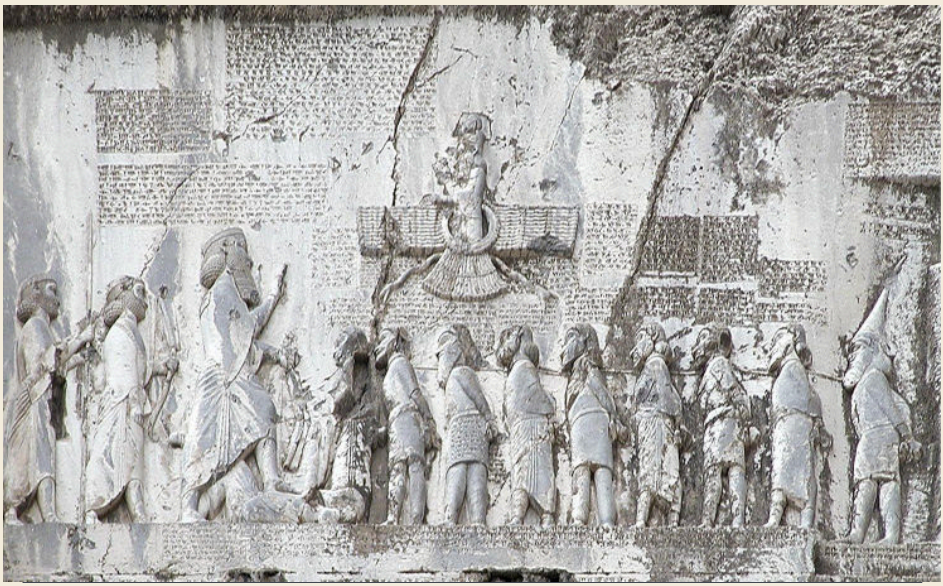
14 Now because we are in the service of the palace and it is not fitting for us to allow the king to be dishonored, we have sent to inform the king 15 that a search should be made of the record books of your fathers. In these books you will discover and verify that the city is a rebellious city, harmful to kings and provinces, inciting sedition from ancient times. That is why this city was destroyed.

- **EZR 4:2 [NOTE]** ESAR HADDON. The king of Assyria who moved these people into the land, about 150 years earlier. 2 Kings 17:24 to 41 tells how an earlier group of newcomers worshiped Yahweh and their own gods too.
- **EZR 4:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Darius the Great of Persia is named on his Behistun Inscription and on thousands of Persepolis tablets, see the Behistun Field Notes page, p.772 → FIELD NOTES p.772
- **EZR 4:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Xerxes of Persia, called Ahasuerus in Hebrew, is named in his own inscriptions at Persepolis and Van, see the Xerxes Field Notes page, p.773 → FIELD NOTES p.773
- **EZR 4:6 [NOTE]** XERXES. The Hebrew says Ahasuerus, the same king as in the book of Esther. Chapter 4 jumps ahead in time here. See the Big Question pages Why Does Chapter 4 Jump?, p.774
- **EZR 4:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Artaxerxes I of Persia is named in his own inscriptions and in dated Elephantine papyri, see the Artaxerxes Field Notes page, p.774 → FIELD NOTES p.774
- **EZR 4:8 [NOTE]** ARAMAIC. From here to 6:18 the book is written in Aramaic, not Hebrew. Aramaic was the language the Persian empire used for its letters, and 4:7 says the letter was written in Aramaic. Jesus spoke Aramaic too.
- **EZR 4:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Ashurbanipal of Assyria is named on his own prisms, tablets and palace reliefs from Nineveh
- **EZR 4:10 [NOTE]** ASHURBANIPAL. The Aramaic says Osnappar. Most scholars think it is Ashurbanipal, the last great king of Assyria, who ruled after Esar haddon.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

BEHISTUN

EZRA 4:5 · 4:24 · 5:5 TO 6:15 · HAGGAI 1:1 · ZECHARIAH 1:1



King Darius, left, steps on a rebel, with nine more rebels tied together in front of him. The writing around them tells his story in three languages. Behistun, Iran. Photo Hara1603, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A giant carving cut into a cliff on Mount Behistun in western Iran, high above the road. It shows King Darius and the rebels he beat. The writing tells how he became king, in three languages: Old Persian, Elamite and Babylonian.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 520 BC, in the first years of Darius's reign. That is the same time Haggai and Zechariah were preaching and the temple work started again.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It never moved. Henry Rawlinson, a British officer, climbed the cliff on ropes and ladders and copied it between 1835 and 1847. It is still there today.

THE KEY TO CUNEIFORM

Like the Rosetta Stone did for Egypt, Behistun helped scholars learn to read Babylonian wedge writing. That opened up thousands of Assyrian and Babylonian records that name Bible kings.

DARIUS IN EZRA

The work stopped until his second year, 4:24. Tattenai wrote to him, he searched the archives and found Cyrus's order, and he paid for the rest of the temple from his taxes, 6:1 to 12. It was finished in his sixth year, 6:15.

HIS WAY WITH REBELS

On this rock Darius says he impaled rebel leaders. His decree in 6:11 warns of the same thing for anyone who changed it.

AN ARAMAIC COPY

A copy of the same story in Aramaic, the language of Ezra 4:8 to 6:18, was found on papyrus at Elephantine, an island in the Nile where Jews served in a Persian fort. Darius sent his story across the empire, just as Persian kings sent letters in Ezra.

OUT OF REACH

The carving is high up the cliff, and many think the path up to it was cut away when it was finished, so no one could climb up and spoil it.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Behistun never mentions the Jews or the temple. It shows that Darius, his reign and his ways were real, just as Ezra describes.

16 We advise the king that if this city is rebuilt and its walls are restored, you will have no dominion west of the Euphrates.

THE DECREE OF ARTAXERXES

17 Then the king sent this reply:

To Rehum the commander, Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of your associates living in Samaria and elsewhere in the region west of the Euphrates:

Greetings.

18 The letter you sent us has been translated and read in my presence. 19 I issued a decree, and a search was conducted. It was discovered that this city has revolted against kings from ancient times, engaging in rebellion and sedition. 20 And mighty kings have ruled over Jerusalem and exercised authority over the whole region west of the Euphrates; and tribute, duty, and toll were paid to them.

21 Now, therefore, issue an order for these men to stop, so that this city will not be rebuilt until I so order. 22 See that you do not neglect this matter. Why allow this threat to increase and the royal interests to suffer?

23 When the text of the letter from King Artaxerxes was read to Rehum, Shimshai the scribe, and their associates, they went immediately to the Jews in Jerusalem and forcibly stopped them.

24 Thus the construction of the house of God in Jerusalem ceased, and it remained at a standstill until the second year of the reign of Darius king of Persia.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

XERXES

EZRA 4:6 · ESTHER 1:1 TO 2 · DANIEL 11:2



Xerxes's inscription on the cliff at Van, Turkey, in Old Persian, Elamite and Babylonian. Photo Björn Christian Tørrissen, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A large inscription carved into the rock of the castle hill at Van, in eastern Turkey, in three languages. In it Xerxes says his father Darius had a smooth place cut in the rock but left it empty, so Xerxes had his own words written there.

HOW OLD IT IS

From the reign of Xerxes, 486 to 465 BC.

WHERE IT IS

Still on the cliff at Van. Xerxes's name is also carved on the Gate of All Nations at Persepolis and on stone jars carried as far as the coast of Turkey.

ONE KING, THREE NAMES

In Old Persian he was Xshayarsha. The Greeks wrote Xerxes, and the Hebrew wrote Ahasuerus, the name in the KJV. Most scholars agree they are the same king.

WHO WAS XERXES?

The son of Darius. He invaded Greece in 480 BC and lost at sea at Salamis. The Greek writer Herodotus tells all about him.

IN EZRA

Just one verse, 4:6. At the start of his reign the enemies sent him an accusation against Judah. The book of Esther is all about him and his queen.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No Persian record mentions the accusation in 4:6. It shows that Xerxes, son of

Darius, ruled where and when Ezra puts him.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE KING, DEBATED FOR EZRA 7

ARTAXERXES

EZRA 4:7 TO 23 · 7:1 TO 26 · NEHEMIAH 2:1 TO 8



A silver bowl with one line of Old Persian around its rim naming Artaxerxes, son of Xerxes, son of Darius. National Museum of Asian Art, Washington. Photo Daderot, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

A silver drinking bowl. The line around its rim says it was made in the house of Artaxerxes the great king, son of Xerxes the king, son of Darius the king. Those are the same three kings as Ezra 4:5 to 7: grandson, son and grandfather.

HOW OLD IT IS

From the reign of Artaxerxes I, 465 to 424 BC.

WHERE IT IS

In the National Museum of Asian Art in Washington, DC. Where it was found is not known for sure. A few bowls like it are known.

WHO WAS HE?

The son of Xerxes. He ruled 41 years. The Greeks called him Longhand, and Plutarch says his right hand was longer than his left.

IN EZRA AND NEHEMIAH

Enemies wrote him a letter, and he stopped work on the walls, 4:7 to 23. Ezra came home with his letter in his seventh year, 7:7. Nehemiah was his cupbearer in his twentieth year, Nehemiah 2:1.

MORE FINDS

Letters on papyrus from a Jewish colony at Elephantine in Egypt are dated by his years. One later letter, from 407 BC, names Johanan the high priest and the sons of Sanballat.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The bowl does not mention the Jews. There were at least three kings named Artaxerxes, and scholars debate which one sent Ezra. See Why Does Chapter 4 Jump?

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DOES CHAPTER 4 JUMP?

The Puzzle

EZRA 4:1 TO 24 · 6:14 · 7:1

THE PUZZLE

Chapter 4 is about enemies, but it jumps around in time. Then 4:24 goes back to where it started. Here are the kings in order.

CYRUS

4:1 to 5. The enemies try to scare the builders from about 536 BC on, all through Cyrus's reign.

DARIUS

4:5 names Darius, who began to rule in 522 BC. The temple work starts again in his second year, 520 BC, 4:24.

XERXES

4:6. At the start of his reign, 486 BC, the enemies write an accusation.

ARTAXERXES

4:7 to 23. In his reign, after 465 BC, they write a letter about the WALLS of the city, not the temple. The king orders the work stopped.

BACK TO DARIUS

4:24 says the house of God stood still until Darius's second year. That jumps back about 70 years, to the time of 4:5.

THE LANGUAGE

The letter in 4:8 starts the first part of Ezra written in Aramaic. It goes on to 6:18.

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View
EZRA 7:7 TO 8 · NEHEMIAH 2:1 · 8:9 · 12:26

VIEW 1: GROUPED BY TOPIC
Most scholars, and most Bible teachers, say the writer gathered all the opposition into one chapter, like a file folder, to show the enemies kept fighting God's people for nearly 90 years. Then 4:24 picks the main story back up.

VIEW 2: OTHER NAMES
Some older writers kept it in order by saying the kings in 4:6 to 23 are other names for the kings between Cyrus and Darius. Josephus, about 93 AD, calls the king of 4:7 Cambyses. Few hold this today.

WHICH ARTAXERXES SENT EZRA?
Ezra came in the seventh year of Artaxerxes, 7:7. Most say Artaxerxes I, so Ezra came in 458 BC, before Nehemiah in 445 BC. Some say Artaxerxes II, so Ezra came in 398 BC, after Nehemiah. Nehemiah 8:9 and 12:26 put Ezra and Nehemiah in Jerusalem together, which fits the first view.

WHY TELL IT THIS WAY?
The first readers lived after all these kings. Seeing the whole fight in one place told them their own troubles were not new, and that God had carried His people through every one.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Opposition kept coming, but God's work got done. The temple was finished in 515 BC, and the walls later under Nehemiah.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS
The prophets Haggai and Zechariah fire everyone up, and the building starts again. The governor Tattenai shows up and asks, Who said you could do this? The elders tell him the whole story, and he writes to King Darius to check.

TEMPLE REBUILDING RESUMES // HAGGAI 1:1–11

1 Later, the prophets Haggai and Zechariah
son of Iddo prophesied to the Jews in Judah and Jerusalem in the name of the
God of Israel, who was over them. 2 Then
Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and Jeshua
son of Jozadak rose up and began to rebuild the house of God in Jerusalem. And
the prophets of God were with them,
helping them.

3 At that time Tattenai the governor of the
region west of the Euphrates, Shethar-
bozenai, and their associates went to the
Jews and asked, "Who authorized you to
rebuild this temple and restore this structure?"

4 They also asked, "What are the names of
the men who are constructing this building?"

5 But the eye of their God was on the elders of the Jews, so that they were not
stopped until a report was sent to Darius
and written instructions about this matter
were returned.

TATTENAI'S LETTER TO DARIUS

6 This is the text of the letter that Tattenai
the governor of the region west of the Euphrates, Shethar-bozenai, and their associates, the officials in the region, sent to
King Darius. 7 The report they sent him
read as follows:

To King Darius:

All peace.

8 Let it be known to the king that we went
into the province of Judah, to the house
of the great God. The people are rebuilding it with large stones and placing timbers in the walls. This work is being carried out diligently and is prospering in
their hands.

9 So we questioned the elders and asked,
"Who authorized you to rebuild this temple and restore this structure?"

10 We also asked for their names, so that
we could write down the names of their
leaders for your information.

11 And this is the answer they returned:

"We are servants of the God of heaven
and earth, and we are rebuilding the temple that was built many years ago, which
a great king of Israel built and completed.
12 But since our fathers angered the God

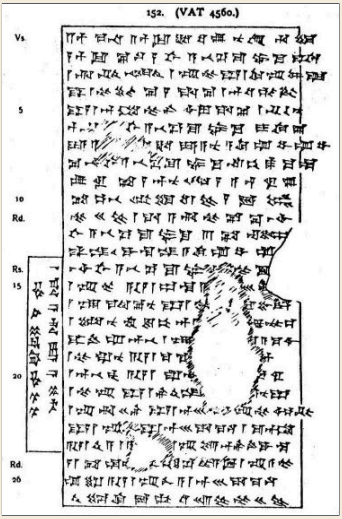
EZR 5:1 [NOTE] HAGGAI AND ZECHARIAH. Their own books are in the Bible. Haggai 1:1 and Zechariah 1:1 are dated to the second year of Darius, 520 BC. This verse only says they prophesied, so nothing here prints red.

EZR 5:3 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A Babylonian tablet from 502 BC names Tattenai, governor of Across the River, see the Tattenai Field Notes page, p.776 FIELD NOTES p.776

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

TATTENAI

EZRA 5:3 TO 6:13



A drawing of the tablet's writing, made by Arthur Ungnad from the tablet itself and printed in 1907. The tablet is in Berlin. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A small clay tablet in Babylonian. It is an IOU, a note about money owed. One of the witnesses is called a servant of Tattannu, governor of Across the River. Across the River was the Persian name for the land west of the Euphrates, the same words used in 5:3.

HOW OLD IT IS

It is dated to the twentieth year of Darius, which is June 5, 502 BC. That is about 18 years after Tattenai questioned the builders in Jerusalem.

WHERE IT IS

In the Near East Museum in Berlin. Arthur Ungnad drew its writing in 1907, and the scholar A. T. Olmstead connected it to Ezra in 1944. No free photo of the tablet itself could be found, so the page shows Ungnad's drawing.

WHO WAS TATTENAI?

Not a king, but a Persian governor over a huge region that included Judah. He did not try to stop the work. He asked questions, wrote to the king and waited, 5:5. When Darius answered, he obeyed diligently, 6:13.

of heaven, He delivered them into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the Chaldean who destroyed this temple and carried away the people to Babylon.

13 In the first year of his reign, however, Cyrus king of Babylon issued a decree to rebuild this house of God. 14 He also removed from the temple of Babylon the gold and silver articles belonging to the house of God, which Nebuchadnezzar had taken and carried there from the temple in Jerusalem. King Cyrus gave these articles to a man named Sheshbazzar, whom he appointed governor 15 and instructed, 'Take these articles, put them in the temple in Jerusalem, and let the house of God be rebuilt on its original site.'

16 So this Sheshbazzar came and laid the foundation of the house of God in Jerusalem, and from that time until now it has been under construction, but it has not yet been completed."

17 Now, therefore, if it pleases the king, let a search be made of the royal archives in Babylon to see if King Cyrus did indeed issue a decree to rebuild the house of God in Jerusalem. Then let the king send us his decision in this matter.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Darius has the archives searched, and Cyrus's old order turns up in a scroll at Ecbatana. Darius writes back: Leave them alone, and pay them from my taxes. The temple is finished in his sixth year. They dedicate it with joy and keep the Passover.

THE DECREE OF DARIUS

1 Thus King Darius ordered a search of the archives stored in the treasury of Babylon. 2 And a scroll was found in the fortress of Ecbatana, in the province of Media, with the following written on it:

Memorandum:

EZR 5:14 [NOTE] GOVERNOR. The elders say Cyrus made Sheshbazzar governor. See the Big Question pages Sheshbazzar and Zerubbabel, p.777.

EZR 6:2 [NOTE] ECBATANA. A Persian capital in the mountains of Media, today Hamadan in Iran. The kings spent the hot summers there, so it makes sense that a copy of Cyrus's order was kept there and not in Babylon.

3 In the first year of King Cyrus, he issued
a decree concerning the house of God in
Jerusalem:
Let the house be rebuilt as a place for of-
fering sacrifices, and let its foundations
be firmly laid. It is to be ninety feet high
and ninety feet wide, 4 with three layers of
cut stones and one of timbers. The costs
are to be paid from the royal treasury.
5 Furthermore, the gold and silver articles
of the house of God, which Nebuchad-
nezzar took from the temple in Jerusalem
and carried to Babylon, must also be re-
turned to the temple in Jerusalem and de-
posited in the house of God.
6 Therefore Darius decreed:
To Tattenai governor of the region west of
the Euphrates, Shethar-bozenai, and your
associates and officials in the region:
You must stay away from that place! 7
Leave this work on the house of God
alone. Let the governor and elders of the
Jews rebuild this house of God on its
original site.
8 I hereby decree what you must do for
these elders of the Jews who are rebuild-
ing this house of God:
The cost is to be paid in full to these men
from the royal treasury out of the taxes of
the provinces west of the Euphrates, so
that the work will not be hindered. 9 What-
ever is needed—young bulls, rams, and
lambs for burnt offerings to the God of
heaven, as well as wheat, salt, wine, and
oil, as requested by the priests in
Jerusalem—must be given to them daily
without fail. 10 Then they will be able to of-
fer sacrifices of a sweet aroma to the God
of heaven and to pray for the lives of the
king and his sons.

■ **EZR 6:3 [TEXT]** HOW BIG? In the Aramaic the numbers are 60 and 60, about 90 feet. Solomon's temple was about 45 feet high, 30 in the Hebrew, 1 Kings 6:2. Many think these numbers were the most the king would pay for, not the real size.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SHESHBAZZAR AND ZERUBBABEL

Two Leaders

EZRA 1:8 TO 11 · 2:2 · 3:8 TO 10 · 5:14 TO 16

SHESHBAZZAR

He is called the prince of Judah, 1:8. Cyrus gave him the temple bowls and made him governor, 5:14. The elders say he laid the foundation of the house of God, 5:16.

ZERUBBABEL

He leads the list of the people who came home, 2:2. He and Jeshua build the altar and lay the foundation, 3:2 and 3:8 to 10. Haggai 1:1 calls him governor of Judah.

THE PUZZLE

Both men lead, both are governors, and both lay the foundation. Sheshbazzar disappears after chapter 1, except for the elders' letter in chapter 5.

TWO BABYLONIAN NAMES

Both names are Babylonian. Zerubbabel probably means seed of Babylon. Jews in exile often had a second name, like Daniel, who was called Belteshazzar.

1 ESDRAS

An old Greek book called 1 Esdras retells 2 Chronicles 35 to Ezra 10 and part of Nehemiah 8. It names both men and adds a story of Zerubbabel winning a contest at the Persian court. It is in Greek Bibles but not in the Hebrew or most Protestant Bibles.

Every View

1 CHRONICLES 3:17 TO 19 · HAGGAI 1:1 · 2:23 · MATTHEW 1:12

VIEW 1: ONE MAN, TWO NAMES

Some say Sheshbazzar was Zerubbabel's Babylonian name. Both lead the return and lay the foundation, so they could be the same man.

VIEW 2: TWO MEN

Most scholars today say they were two men. Sheshbazzar led the first group in 538 BC as Cyrus's official. Zerubbabel came then or soon after and led the real building. The elders named Sheshbazzar in 5:16 because he was the one Cyrus had appointed. Some think Sheshbazzar is Shenazzar, a son of King Jehoiachin

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART

and Zerubbabel's uncle, 1 Chronicles 3:18.

WHOSE SON?

Ezra, Haggai, Matthew and Luke call Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel. 1 Chronicles 3:19 calls him the son of Pedaiah, Shealtiel's brother. Some think Shealtiel died without a son, so his brother's son counted as his, Deuteronomy 25:5 to 6. Others think Shealtiel raised him.

THE SIGNET RING

God had said King Jehoiachin, called Coniah, would be pulled off like a signet ring, Jeremiah 22:24. Through Haggai God told Zerubbabel, I will make you like My signet ring, Haggai 2:23. The royal line was back on God's hand, and it led to Jesus, Matthew 1:12.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God used both names to get His people home and His house rebuilt.

11 I also decree that if any man interferes with this directive, a beam is to be torn from his house and raised up, and he is to be impaled on it. And his own house shall be made a pile of rubble for this offense. 12 May God, who has caused His Name to dwell there, overthrow any king or people who lifts a hand to alter this decree or to destroy this house of God in Jerusalem.

I, Darius, have issued the decree. Let it be carried out with diligence.

THE TEMPLE COMPLETED

13 In response, Tattenai the governor of the region west of the Euphrates, Shetharbozenai, and their associates diligently carried out what King Darius had decreed. 14 So the Jewish elders built and prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah son of Iddo.

They finished building according to the command of the God of Israel and the decrees of Cyrus, Darius, and Artaxerxes, kings of Persia. 15 And this temple was completed on the third day of the month of Adar, in the sixth year of the reign of King Darius.

DEDICATION OF THE TEMPLE

16 Then the people of Israel—the priests, the Levites, and the rest of the exiles—celebrated the dedication of the house of God with joy.

17 For the dedication of the house of God they offered a hundred bulls, two hundred rams, four hundred lambs, and a sin offering for all Israel of twelve male goats, one for each tribe of Israel.

18 They also appointed the priests by their divisions and the Levites by their groups to the service of God in Jerusalem, according to what is written in the Book of Moses.

THE RETURNED EXILES KEEP THE PASSOVER

19 On the fourteenth day of the first month, the exiles kept the Passover. 20 All the priests and Levites had purified themselves and were ceremonially clean.

And the Levites slaughtered the Passover lamb for all the exiles, for their priestly brothers, and for themselves. 21 The Israelites who had returned from exile ate it, together with all who had separated themselves from the uncleanness of the peoples of the land to seek Yahweh, the God of Israel.

22 For seven days they kept the Feast of Unleavened Bread with joy, because Yahweh had made them joyful and turned the heart of the king of Assyria toward them to strengthen their hands in the work on the house of the God of Israel.

- **EZR 6:11 [NOTE]** IMPALED. Darius meant it. On the Behistun cliff he says he impaled rebel leaders. See the Behistun Field Notes page, p.772.
- **EZR 6:14 [FULFILLS]** My house shall be built in Jerusalem; My cities shall again spread through prosperity ← ZECH 1:16-17 p.1490
- **EZR 6:14 [FULFILLS]** Zerubbabel laid the temple foundation and his hands would also finish it ← ZECH 4:9 p.1492
- **EZR 6:14 [NOTE]** ARTAXERXES TOO. Artaxerxes ruled after the temple was done, but he gave gifts for it later, 7:15 to 24, so his name is listed with the kings who helped.
- **EZR 6:15 [NOTE]** FINISHED. The month of Adar in Darius's sixth year was early 515 BC. The first temple burned in 586 BC, so the house of God lay in ruins about seventy years.
- **EZR 6:22 [HEART]** Yahweh made them joyful and turned the king's heart toward them, so he helped with God's house.
- **EZR 6:22 [NOTE]** KING OF ASSYRIA. This is Darius of Persia. He ruled the old land of Assyria, so the writer gives him the old title.

THE HEART

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Many years later, Ezra the priest and scribe shows up. He had set his heart to study God's law, live it and teach it. King Artaxerxes gives him a letter, money and power to teach the law. Ezra blesses God, who put it in the king's heart.

EZRA ARRIVES IN JERUSALEM

1 Many years later, during the reign of Artaxerxes king of Persia, Ezra son of Seraiah, the son of Azariah, the son of Hilkiah,
2 the son of Shallum, the son of Zadok, the son of Ahitub, 3 the son of Amariah, the son of Azariah, the son of Meraioth, 4 the son of Zerahiah, the son of Uzzi, the son of Bukki, 5 the son of Abishua, the son of Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the chief priest— 6 this Ezra came up from Babylon. He was a scribe skilled in the Law of Moses, which Yahweh, the God of Israel, had given.

The king had granted Ezra all his requests, for the hand of Yahweh his God was upon him. 7 So in the seventh year of King Artaxerxes, he went up to Jerusalem with some of the Israelites, including priests, Levites, singers, gatekeepers, and temple servants.

8 Ezra arrived in Jerusalem in the fifth month of the seventh year of the king. 9 He had begun the journey from Babylon on the first day of the first month, and he arrived in Jerusalem on the first day of the fifth month, for the gracious hand of his God was upon him. 10 For Ezra had set his heart to study the Law of Yahweh, to practice it, and to teach its statutes and ordinances in Israel.

ARTAXERXES' LETTER FOR EZRA

11 This is the text of the letter King Artaxerxes had given to Ezra the priest and scribe, an expert in the commandments and statutes of Yahweh to Israel:

12 Artaxerxes, king of kings.

To Ezra the priest, the scribe of the Law of the God of heaven:

Greetings.

13 I hereby decree that any volunteers among the Israelites in my kingdom, including the priests and Levites, may go up with you to Jerusalem. 14 You are sent by the king and his seven counselors to evaluate Judah and Jerusalem according to the Law of your God, which is in your hand.

15 Moreover, you are to take with you the silver and gold that the king and his counselors have freely offered to the God of Israel, whose dwelling is in Jerusalem, 16 together with all the silver and gold you may find in all the province of Babylon, as well as the freewill offerings of the people and priests to the house of their God in Jerusalem. 17 With this money, therefore, you are to buy as many bulls, rams, and lambs as needed, together with their grain offerings and drink offerings, and offer them on the altar at the house of your God in Jerusalem. 18 You and your brothers may do whatever seems best with the rest of the silver and gold, according to the will of your God.

19 You must deliver to the God of Jerusalem all the articles given to you for the service of the house of your God. 20 And if anything else is needed for the house of your God that you may have occasion to supply, you may pay for it from the royal treasury.

21 I, King Artaxerxes, decree to all the treasurers west of the Euphrates: Whatever Ezra the priest, the scribe of the Law of the God of heaven, may require of you, it must be provided promptly, 22 up to 7,500 pounds of silver, 600 bushels of wheat, 550 gallons of wine, 550 gallons of olive oil, and salt without limit. 23 Whatever is commanded by the God of heaven must be done diligently for His house. For why should wrath fall on the realm of the king

EZR 7:1 [NOTE] MANY YEARS LATER. About 57 years pass between 6:22 and 7:1. The story of Esther happens in this gap. Which Artaxerxes sent Ezra? See the Big Question pages Why Does Chapter 4 Jump?, p.774

EZR 7:6 [NOTE] A SCRIBE. Not just a man who copied things. Ezra was an expert who studied and taught God's law. Jewish tradition remembers him as a second Moses.

EZR 7:10 [HEART] Ezra set his heart to study God's law, to do it, and to teach it. Know it, live it, share it.

EZR 7:12 [NOTE] ARAMAIC AGAIN. The king's letter, 7:12 to 26, is in Aramaic. King of kings was the Persian king's title. Revelation 19:16 gives it to Jesus.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and his sons? 24 And be advised that you have no authority to impose tribute, duty, or toll on any of the priests, Levites, singers, doorkeepers, temple servants, or other servants of this house of God.

25 And you, Ezra, according to the wisdom of your God, which you possess, are to appoint magistrates and judges to judge all the people west of the Euphrates—all who know the laws of your God. And you are to teach these laws to anyone who does not know them. 26 If anyone does not keep the law of your God and the law of the king, let a strict judgment be executed against him, whether death, banishment, confiscation of property, or imprisonment.

EZRA BLESSES GOD

27 Blessed be Yahweh, the God of our fathers, who has put into the heart of the king to so honor the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem, 28 and who has shown me favor before the king, his counselors, and all his powerful officials.

And because the hand of Yahweh my God was upon me, I took courage and gathered the leaders of Israel to return with me.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Ezra gathers a second group to go home and finds no Levites, so he sends for some. He is too embarrassed to ask the king for soldiers, so they fast and pray instead. They carry tons of silver and gold all the way to Jerusalem, and not one coin goes missing.

THE EXILES WHO RETURNED WITH EZRA

1 These are the family heads and genealogical records of those who returned with me from Babylon during the reign of King Artaxerxes:

2 from the descendants of Phinehas, Gershom;
from the descendants of Ithamar, Daniel;
from the descendants of David, Hattush 3 of the descendants of Shecaniah;
from the descendants of Parosh, Zechariah, and with him were registered 150 men;
4 from the descendants of Pahath-Moab, Eliehoenai son of Zerahiah, and with him 200 men;
5 from the descendants of Zattu, Shecaniah son of Jahaziel, and with him 300 men;
6 from the descendants of Adin, Ebed son of Jonathan, and with him 50 men;
7 from the descendants of Elam, Jeshaiah son of Athaliah, and with him 70 men;
8 from the descendants of Shephatiah, Zebadiah son of Michael, and with him 80 men;
9 from the descendants of Joab, Obadiah son of Jehiel, and with him 218 men;
10 from the descendants of Bani, Shelomith son of Josiphiah, and with him 160 men;
11 from the descendants of Bebai, Zechariah son of Bebai, and with him 28 men;
12 from the descendants of Azgad, Johanan son of Hakkatan, and with him 110 men;
13 from the later descendants of Adonikam, these were their names: Eliphelet, Jeiel, and Shemaiah, and with them 60 men;
14 and from the descendants of Bigvai, both Uthai and Zaccur, and with them 70 men.

EZRA SENDS FOR THE LEVITES

15 Now I assembled these exiles at the canal that flows to Ahava, and we camped there three days. And when I searched among the people and priests, I found no Levites there.

16 Then I summoned the leaders: Eliezer, Ariel, Shemaiah, Elnathan, Jarib, Elnathan, Nathan, Zechariah, and Meshullam, as well as the teachers Joiarib and Elnathan.
17 And I sent them to Iddo, the leader at Casiphia, with a message for him and his kinsmen, the temple servants at Casiphia,

EZR 7:27 [HEART] Ezra praised God, who put it into the king's heart to honor His house.
EZR 7:27 [NOTE] BACK TO HEBREW. From here to 9:15 Ezra tells the story himself, I and me.

EZR 8:15 [NOTE] NO LEVITES. Levites served at the temple. Few of them wanted to leave Babylon, even in the first trip home, 2:40.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

that they should bring to us ministers for the house of our God.

18 And since the gracious hand of our God was upon us, they brought us Sherebiah—a man of insight from the descendants of Mahli son of Levi, the son of Israel—along with his sons and brothers, 18 men; 19 also Hashabiah, together with Jeshaiah, from the descendants of Merari, and his brothers and their sons, 20 men. 20 They also brought 220 of the temple servants, all designated by name. David and the officials had appointed them to assist the Levites.

FASTING FOR PROTECTION

21 And there by the Ahava Canal I proclaimed a fast, so that we might humble ourselves before our God and ask Him for a safe journey for us and our children, with all our possessions. 22 For I was ashamed to ask the king for an escort of soldiers and horsemen to protect us from our enemies on the road, since we had told him, "The hand of our God is gracious to all who seek Him, but His great anger is against all who forsake Him."

23 So we fasted and petitioned our God about this, and He granted our request.

PRIESTS TO GUARD THE OFFERINGS

24 Then I set apart twelve of the leading priests, together with Sherebiah, Hashabiah, and ten of their brothers, 25 and I weighed out to them the contribution of silver and gold and the articles that the king, his counselors, his leaders, and all the Israelites there had offered for the house of our God.

26 I weighed out into their hands 24 tons of silver, silver articles weighing 7,500 pounds, 7,500 pounds of gold, 27 20 gold bowls valued at 1,000 gold coins, and two articles of fine polished bronze, as precious as gold.

28 Then I told them, "You are holy to Yahweh, and these articles are holy. The silver and gold are a freewill offering to Yahweh, the God of your fathers. 29 Guard them carefully until you weigh them out in the chambers of the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem before the leading priests, Levites, and heads of the Israelite families."

30 So the priests and Levites took charge of the silver and gold and sacred articles that had been weighed out to be taken to the house of our God in Jerusalem.

31 On the twelfth day of the first month we set out from the Ahava Canal to go to Jerusalem, and the hand of our God was upon us to protect us from the hands of the enemies and bandits along the way.

ARRIVAL IN JERUSALEM

32 So we arrived at Jerusalem and rested there for three days.

33 On the fourth day, in the house of our God, we weighed out the silver and gold and sacred articles into the hand of Meremoth son of Uriah, the priest. Eleazar son of Phinehas was with him, along with the Levites Jozabad son of Jeshua and Noadiah son of Binnui. 34 Everything was verified by number and weight, and the total weight was recorded at that time.

35 Then the exiles who had returned from captivity sacrificed burnt offerings to the God of Israel: 12 bulls for all Israel, 96 rams, 77 lambs, and a sin offering of 12 male goats. All this was a burnt offering to Yahweh.

36 They also delivered the king's edicts to the royal satraps and governors of the region west of the Euphrates, who proceeded to assist the people and the house of God.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

The leaders tell Ezra that many men, even priests, have married women from the nations who worship other gods. Ezra tears his clothes, pulls out his hair and sits stunned until evening. Then he falls on his knees and prays a long prayer of shame for his people.

EZR 8:21 [NOTABLE] Ezra had told the king his God protects His people, so asking for soldiers would look like he did not believe it. He fasted and prayed instead, and they made it with all that gold.

EZR 8:26 [NOTE] THAT MUCH GOLD. In the Hebrew the numbers are 650, 100 and 100. That is about 24 tons of silver, almost four tons more in silver things, and almost four tons of gold. Some think the numbers grew as the book was copied. Others say the king and his officials were very rich.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

INTERMARRIAGE WITH NEIGHBORING PEOPLES // NEHEMIAH 13:23–31

1 After these things had been accomplished, the leaders approached me and said, "The people of Israel, including the priests and Levites, have not kept themselves separate from the surrounding peoples whose abominations are like those of the Canaanites, Hittites, Perizzites, Jebusites, Ammonites, Moabites, Egyptians, and Amorites. 2 Indeed, the Israelites have taken some of their daughters as wives for themselves and their sons, so that the holy seed has been mixed with the people of the land. And the leaders and officials have taken the lead in this unfaithfulness!"

3 When I heard this report, I tore my tunic and cloak, pulled out some hair from my head and beard, and sat down in horror.

4 Then everyone who trembled at the words of the God of Israel gathered around me because of the unfaithfulness of the exiles, while I sat there in horror until the evening offering.

EZRA'S PRAYER OF CONFESSION

5 At the evening offering, I got up from my humiliation with my tunic and cloak torn, and I fell on my knees, spread out my hands to Yahweh my God, 6 and said:

"O my God, I am ashamed and embarrassed to lift up my face to You, my God, because our iniquities are higher than our heads, and our guilt has reached the heavens. 7 From the days of our fathers to this day, our guilt has been great. Because of our iniquities, we and our kings and priests have been delivered into the hands of the kings of the earth and subjected to the sword and to captivity, to pillage and humiliation, as we are this day.

8 But now, for a brief moment, grace has come from Yahweh our God to preserve for us a remnant and to give us a stake in His holy place. Even in our bondage, our God has given us new life and light to our eyes. 9 Though we are slaves, our God has not forsaken us in our bondage, but He has extended to us grace in the sight of the kings of Persia, giving us new life to rebuild the house of our God and repair its ruins, and giving us a wall of protection in Judah and Jerusalem.

10 And now, our God, what can we say after this? For we have forsaken the commandments 11 that You gave through Your servants the prophets, saying: 'The land that you are entering to possess is a land polluted by the impurity of its peoples and the abominations with which they have filled it from end to end. 12 Now, therefore, do not give your daughters in marriage to their sons or take their daughters for your sons. Never seek their peace or prosperity, so that you may be strong and may eat the good things of the land, leaving it as an inheritance to your sons forever.'

13 After all that has come upon us because of our evil deeds and our great guilt (though You, our God, have punished us less than our iniquities deserve and have given us such a remnant as this), 14 shall we again break Your commandments and intermarry with the peoples who commit these abominations? Would You not become so angry with us as to wipe us out, leaving no remnant or survivor?

15 O Yahweh, God of Israel, You are righteous! For we remain this day as a remnant. Here we are before You in our guilt, though because of it no one can stand before You."

- **EZR 9:1 [NOTE]** THE LIST. It echoes Deuteronomy 7:1 to 3 and 23:3 to 7. The problem was their abominations, the worship of other gods, not the color of anyone's skin.
- **EZR 9:2 [NOTE]** THE FOREIGN WIVES. See the Big Question pages The Foreign Wives, p.785.
- **EZR 9:6 [NOTABLE]** Ezra prays we, not they. He had done nothing wrong, but he stood with his people and owned their sin as his own.
- **EZR 9:8 [NOTABLE]** Even as slaves of Persia, God gave them a little light and a little new life. Small grace is still grace.
- **EZR 9:8 [FULFILLS]** A holy remnant would remain like a stump ← IS 6:13 · MEDIUM p.1069
- **EZR 9:11 [NOTE]** QUOTING THE LAW. Ezra quotes the commands God gave, a blend of Leviticus 18:24 to 30, Deuteronomy 7:1 to 3 and 23:6, so God's words print red.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

A crowd gathers, weeping. Shecaniah says, There is still hope. Let us make a covenant to send the foreign wives away. They all meet in the pouring rain, set up a team to look at each case, and the book ends with a list of the men who had married foreign women.

SHECANIAH'S ENCOURAGEMENT

1 While Ezra prayed and made this confession, weeping and falling facedown before the house of God, a very large assembly of Israelites—men, women, and children—gathered around him, and the people wept bitterly as well.

2 Then Shecaniah son of Jehiel, an Elamite, said to Ezra: "We have been unfaithful to our God by marrying foreign women from the people of the land, yet in spite of this, there is hope for Israel. 3 So now let us make a covenant before our God to send away all the foreign wives and their children, according to the counsel of my lord and of those who tremble at the command of our God. Let it be done according to the Law. 4 Get up, for this matter is your responsibility, and we will support you. Be strong and take action!"

5 So Ezra got up and made the leading priests, Levites, and all Israel take an oath to do what had been said. And they took the oath.

THE PEOPLE'S CONFESSION OF SIN

6 Then Ezra withdrew from before the house of God and walked to the chamber of Jehohanan son of Eliashib. And while he stayed there, he ate no food and drank no water, because he was mourning over the unfaithfulness of the exiles.

7 And a proclamation was issued throughout Judah and Jerusalem that all the exiles should gather at Jerusalem. 8 Whoever failed to appear within three days would forfeit all his property, according to the counsel of the leaders and elders, and would himself be expelled from the assembly of the exiles.

9 So within the three days, all the men of Judah and Benjamin assembled in Jerusalem, and on the twentieth day of the ninth month, all the people sat in the square at the house of God, trembling regarding this matter and because of the heavy rain.

10 Then Ezra the priest stood up and said to them, "You have been unfaithful by marrying foreign women, adding to the guilt of Israel. 11 Now, therefore, make a confession to Yahweh, the God of your fathers, and do His will. Separate yourselves from the people of the land and from your foreign wives."

12 And the whole assembly responded in a loud voice: "Truly we must do as you say! 13 But there are many people here, and it is the rainy season. We are not able to stay out in the open. Nor is this the work of one or two days, for we have transgressed greatly in this matter. 14 Let our leaders represent the whole assembly. Then let everyone in our towns who has married a foreign woman come at an appointed time, together with the elders and judges of each town, until the fierce anger of our God in this matter is turned away from us."

15 (Only Jonathan son of Asahel and Jahzeiah son of Tikvah, supported by Meshullam and Shabbethai the Levite, opposed this plan.)

16 So the exiles did as proposed. Ezra the priest selected men who were family heads, each of them identified by name, to represent their families. On the first day of the tenth month they launched the investigation, 17 and by the first day of the first month they had dealt with all the men who had married foreign women.

THOSE GUILTY OF INTERMARRIAGE

18 Among the descendants of the priests who had married foreign women were found these descendants of Jeshua son of Jozadak and his brothers:

Maaseiah, Eliezer, Jarib, and Gedaliah. 19 They pledged to send their wives away, and for their guilt they presented a ram from the flock as a guilt offering.

■ **EZR 10:15 [NOTE]** FOUR SAID NO. Only four men opposed the plan. The book does not say why.

20 From the descendants of Immer:
Hanani and Zebadiah.
21 From the descendants of Harim:
Maaseiah, Elijah, Shemaiah, Jehiel, and Uzziah.
22 From the descendants of Pashhur:
Elioenai, Maaseiah, Ishmael, Nethanel, Jozabad, and Elasah.
23 Among the Levites:
Jozabad, Shimei, Kelaiah (that is, Kelita), Pethahiah, Judah, and Eliezer.
24 From the singers:
Eliashib.
From the gatekeepers:
Shallum, Telem, and Uri.
25 And among the other Israelites, from the descendants of Parosh:
Ramiah, Izziah, Malchijah, Mijamin, Eleazar, Malchijah, and Benaiah.
26 From the descendants of Elam:
Mattaniah, Zechariah, Jehiel, Abdi, Jeremoth, and Elijah.
27 From the descendants of Zattu:
Elioenai, Eliashib, Mattaniah, Jeremoth, Zabad, and Aziza.
28 From the descendants of Bebai:
Jehohanan, Hananiah, Zabbai, and Athlai.
29 From the descendants of Bani:
Meshullam, Malluch, Adaiah, Jashub, Sheal, and Jeremoth.
30 From the descendants of Pahath-moab:
Adna, Chelal, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattaniah, Bezalel, Binnui, and Manasseh.
31 From the descendants of Harim:
Eliezer, Isshijah, Malchijah, Shemaiah, Shimeon, 32 Benjamin, Malluch, and Shemariah.
33 From the descendants of Hashum:
Mattenai, Mattattah, Zabad, Eliphelet, Jeremai, Manasseh, and Shimei.
34 From the descendants of Bani:
Maadai, Amram, Uel, 35 Benaiah, Bedeiah, Cheluhi, 36 Vaniah, Meremoth, Eliashib, 37 Mattaniah, Mattenai, and Jaasu.
38 From the descendants of Binnui:
Shimei, 39 Shelemiah, Nathan, Adaiah, 40 Machnadebai, Shashai, Sharai, 41 Azarel, Shelemiah, Shemariah, 42 Shallum, Amariah, and Joseph.
43 And from the descendants of Nebo:
Jeiel, Mattithiah, Zabad, Zebina, Jaddai, Joel, and Benaiah.
44 All these men had married foreign women, and some of them had children by these wives.

EZR 10:44 [TEXT] A HARD VERSE. The Hebrew of the end of this verse is hard to read. The old Greek book 1 Esdras, 9:36, says they sent them away with their children.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE FOREIGN WIVES

What Happened

EZRA 9:1 TO 10:44 · DEUTERONOMY 7:1 TO 4 · NEHEMIAH 13:23 TO 27

WHAT HAPPENED

The leaders told Ezra that many men, even priests and Levites, had married women from the nations around them, and the leaders had led the way, 9:1 to 2. Ezra tore his clothes and prayed. The people agreed to send away the foreign wives and their children, 10:3. A team looked at each case for three months, and the book ends with a list of about 110 men.

WHY IT MATTERED

God's law said do not marry the nations of the land, because they will turn your sons away from Me to serve other gods, Deuteronomy 7:3 to 4. That is exactly what happened to Solomon, 1 Kings 11:1 to 8. Nehemiah 13:26 points back to him.

NOT ABOUT RACE

The problem was false gods, not skin or blood. Rahab the Canaanite and Ruth the Moabite married into Israel and are in Jesus' family line, because they joined Israel's God. Your God will be my God, Ruth 1:16.

A HARD ENDING

10:44 says some of them had children by these wives. The Hebrew of that verse is hard to read, and the book does not tell us what happened to the women and children next.

Every View

MALACHI 2:11 TO 16 · RUTH 1:16 · 1 CORINTHIANS 7:12 TO 14 · 7:39 · 2 CORINTHIANS 6:14

VIEW 1: RIGHT AND NEEDED

The traditional view says Ezra did what the law required. The small group back home was about to lose its faith, as Israel had before the exile. Keeping God's people faithful kept the line that led to Jesus. Nehemiah 13 shows the danger was real.

VIEW 2: RIGHT, BUT PAINFUL

Many say it was right for that moment but heartbreaking. The book itself does not cheer. It shows weeping, fasting and rain, and it does not hide the children.

VIEW 3: TOO FAR

Some scholars think the reform went too far. They point to Ruth and Jonah, books that welcome outsiders, and to the four men who opposed it, 10:15. Some note that the word here for send away is not the usual word for divorce.

WHAT ABOUT MALACHI?

Malachi, from about the same time, says God hates divorce, Malachi 2:16. Most read him as scolding men who left their Jewish wives to marry women who served other gods, 2:11, the same problem Ezra faced.

WHAT ABOUT CHRISTIANS?

Paul says do not be yoked with unbelievers, 2 Corinthians 6:14, and a widow may marry only in the Lord, 1 Corinthians 7:39. But if you are already married to one who wants to stay, do not leave, 1 Corinthians 7:12 to 14.

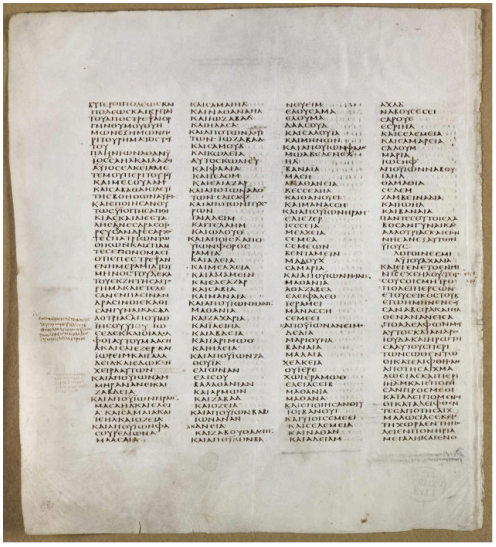
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God wants hearts that are fully His. Anyone of any nation who turns to Him is welcome.

NEHEMIAH

We're Gonna Build a Wall and the Persians Are Gonna Pay For That Wall!

AUTHOR	Nehemiah tells much of the story himself, I and me, 1:1 to 7:5 and parts of chapters 12 and 13. The Talmud says Ezra wrote his book, which then counted Ezra and Nehemiah as one, and that Nehemiah finished the book of Chronicles. Many scholars think the same editor who put Ezra together joined Nehemiah's own memoir to older lists.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Nehemiah's prayer in 446 BC and his trip to Jerusalem in 445 BC to his second visit, after 433 BC.
DATE	About 430 to 400 BC. Some scholars say later, because 12:22 lists high priests down to Jaddua.
WRITTEN TO	The Jews back in Judah, a small group under Persian rule with broken walls and loud enemies.
KEY VERSE	Nehemiah 6:16. When all our enemies heard about this, all the surrounding nations were afraid and disheartened, for they realized that this task had been accomplished by our God.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF NEHEMIAH
A page of Codex Sinaiticus, copied in Greek about 330 to 360 AD and now in Leipzig, Germany. Greek Bibles count Ezra and Nehemiah as one book, 2 Esdras, so the page ends Ezra's list of names, Ezra 10, and then starts Nehemiah in the last column: The words of Nehemiah son of Hacaliah, 1:1 to 3.

You may hear the Dead Sea Scrolls hold every book but Esther. That counts Ezra and Nehemiah as one book, as the Hebrew Bible does. No piece of Nehemiah from Qumran has been confirmed; two small pieces sold after 2000 have no known find spot, and experts think they are likely fakes. The oldest complete Hebrew copy is the Leningrad Codex, 1008 AD.

Photo Leipzig University Library, codexsinaiticus.org.

Historical Setting

It starts in Susa, a Persian royal city in what is now Iran, where Nehemiah serves the king his wine. Then it moves to Jerusalem, a small city in ruins, with enemies on every side: Sanballat in Samaria to the north, Tobiah in Ammon to the east, Geshem in Arabia to the south and the people of Ashdod to the west.

What Was Going Wrong

BROKEN WALLS. Jerusalem's walls were torn down and its gates burned, so the people were in great trouble and disgrace 1:3.
ENEMIES. Sanballat, Tobiah and Geshem mocked, threatened, lied and hired a false prophet to stop the work 4:1 to 8, 6:1 to 14.
THE RICH ROBBING THE POOR. Rich Jews charged their poor brothers interest and took their fields and their children 5:1 to 5.
SLIPPING BACK. While Nehemiah was away, the people let Tobiah live in the temple, stopped paying the Levites, sold on the Sabbath and married women who served other gods 13:4 to 27.

The Idiot Proof Summary

About 13 years after Ezra came home, by most counts, Nehemiah, the Persian king's cupbearer, hears that Jerusalem's walls are still rubble. He weeps, prays and asks the king to send him. The king says yes and even pays for the lumber, 2:8. Nehemiah gets every family to rebuild a piece of the wall, with a tool in one hand and a weapon close by. Enemies mock, plot and lie, but the wall is finished in 52 days. Then Ezra reads God's law to the people, they weep, celebrate and sign a promise to obey. When Nehemiah comes back years later, they have slipped, and he cleans house. Pray first, then build, and keep watch.

Nehemiah at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**THE PRAYER AND THE PLAN** Bad news, tears and a yes from the king.
CH 3	**WHO BUILT WHAT** Every family takes a piece of the wall.
CH 4 to 6	**ENEMIES INSIDE AND OUT** Swords, debts and tricks; done in 52 days.
CH 7	**THE LIST** The families who came home.
CH 8 to 10	**THE LAW AND THE PROMISE** Ezra reads, the people weep, then sign.
CH 11 to 12	**MOVING IN AND THE PARTY** Two choirs on the wall.
CH 13	**THE CLEANUP** Nehemiah's second visit.

Where Jesus Shows Up

NEHEMIAH 2:1 TO 8 The king's order to rebuild Jerusalem is where many start counting Daniel's seventy weeks to the Messiah, Daniel 9:25. See the Big Question Seventy Weeks and 445 BC.

NEHEMIAH 8:8 The Levites read God's law and explained it so the people understood. After He rose, Jesus explained what all the Scriptures said about Himself, Luke 24:27.

NEHEMIAH 13:8 Nehemiah threw Tobiah's things out of the temple storeroom. Jesus drove the sellers out of the temple courts and said, Stop turning My Father's house into a marketplace, John 2:16.

GOD'S NAMES IN NEHEMIAH
The God of heaven, 1:4 and 2:4, Yahweh, the great and awesome God, 1:5, and the Lord, great and awesome, 4:14 and 1:11. See Why We Say Yahweh in the Old Testament Introduction.

What to Watch for in Nehemiah

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (2)	1:8-9
THE HEART (3)	2:12, 7:5, 9:8
ARCHAEOLOGY (5)	2:10, 2:19, 3:1, 3:8, 12:22
DEMONIC (1)	9:18
NOTABLE (5)	1:4, 2:4, 4:14, 6:3, 8:10
GOD SPEAKING (2 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (10 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

52 DAYS
The whole wall went up in 52 days, 6:15. Even the enemies admitted God did it, 6:16.

ONE BOOK WITH EZRA
The Hebrew Bible counted Ezra and Nehemiah as one book. Greek Bibles call it 2 Esdras. Hebrew Bibles were printed as two books from the 1500s.

REAL PEOPLE
Sanballat's sons and Johanan the high priest are named in a letter from 407 BC, and Geshem's son is named on a silver bowl. See the Field Notes pages, p.793.

How Did It Turn Out?

The walls stood, Jerusalem filled up again and the people promised to keep God's law, even if they kept slipping. Nehemiah's story is the last history in the Old Testament. The prophet Malachi preached about the same time, and then about 400 years passed before Jesus.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Nehemiah has a great job in the Persian palace. Then his brother brings bad news: Jerusalem's walls are rubble and the people are a joke. Nehemiah sits down and cries for days. Then he prays a big prayer, owns his people's sin, and asks God for favor with the king.

NEHEMIAH'S PRAYER // DEUTERONOMY 30:1–10

1 These are the words of Nehemiah son of Hacaliah:

In the month of Chislev, in the twentieth year, while I was in the citadel of Susa, 2 Hanani, one of my brothers, arrived with men from Judah. So I questioned them about the remnant of the Jews who had survived the exile, and also about Jerusalem.

3 And they told me, "The remnant who survived the exile are there in the province, in great trouble and disgrace. The wall of Jerusalem is broken down, and its gates have been burned with fire."

4 When I heard these words, I sat down and wept. I mourned for days, fasting and praying before the God of heaven.

5 Then I said:

"O Yahweh, God of heaven, the great and awesome God who keeps His covenant of loving devotion with those who love Him and keep His commandments, 6 let Your eyes be open and Your ears attentive to hear the prayer that I, Your servant, now pray before You day and night for Your servants, the Israelites.

I confess the sins that we Israelites have committed against You. Both I and my father's house have sinned. 7 We have behaved corruptly against You and have not kept the commandments, statutes, and ordinances that You gave Your servant Moses.

8 Remember, I pray, the word that You commanded Your servant Moses when You said, 'If you are unfaithful, I will scatter you among the nations, 9 but if you return to Me and keep and practice My commandments, then even if your exiles have been banished to the farthest horizon, I will gather them from there and bring them to the place I have chosen as a dwelling for My Name.'

10 They are Your servants and Your people. You redeemed them by Your great power and mighty hand. 11 O Lord, may Your ear be attentive to my prayer and to the prayers of Your servants who delight to revere Your name. Give Your servant success this day, I pray, and grant him mercy in the sight of this man."

(At that time I was the cupbearer to the king.)

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The king notices Nehemiah's sad face and asks what is wrong. Nehemiah shoots up a quick prayer and asks to go rebuild. The king says yes and even pays for the lumber. Nehemiah rides around the broken walls at night, then tells the leaders, Let us build. The neighbors laugh.

NEHEMIAH SENT TO JERUSALEM

1 Now in the month of Nisan, in the twentieth year of King Artaxerxes, when wine was set before him, I took the wine and gave it to the king. I had never been sad in his presence, 2 so the king said to me, "Why is your face sad, though you are not ill? This could only be sadness of the heart."

- **NEH 1:1 [NOTE]** NEHEMIAH. His name means Yahweh comforts. The month of Chislev in the twentieth year of King Artaxerxes was about December 446 BC. Susa was a Persian royal city in what is now Iran.
- **NEH 1:2 [NOTE]** HANANI. Nehemiah's brother. Later Nehemiah put him in charge of Jerusalem, 7:2.
- **NEH 1:4 [NOTABLE]** Bad news from home broke his heart. Before he made a plan, he cried, fasted and prayed for days.
- **NEH 1:8 [FULFILLS]** Even in exile God would not reject Israel but remember His covenant ← LEV 26:44-45 p.217
- **NEH 1:8 [FULFILLS]** Yahweh will gather you again from all the nations where He has scattered you; if any are driven to the farthest parts under heaven, He will bring you back ← DT 30:1-5 · MEDIUM p.323
- **NEH 1:8 [NOTE]** QUOTING MOSES. Nehemiah quotes what God told Moses, a blend of Leviticus 26:33 and Deuteronomy 30:1 to 4, so God's words print red. Nehemiah's own prayer stays black.
- **NEH 1:11 [NOTE]** CUPBEARER. He served the king's wine and may have tasted it first to check for poison. It was a trusted job, close to the king every day.
- **NEH 2:1 [NOTE]** THE TWENTIETH YEAR. The month of Nisan in Artaxerxes' twentieth year was spring 445 BC. Many count Daniel's seventy weeks from this order. See the Big Question Seventy Weeks and 445 BC.
- **NEH 2:1 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Artaxerxes Field Notes page in Ezra, p.774.

NOTABLE

I was overwhelmed with fear 3 and replied to the king, "May the king live forever! Why should I not be sad when the city where my fathers are buried lies in ruins, and its gates have been destroyed by fire?"

4 "What is your request?" replied the king. So I prayed to the God of heaven 5 and answered the king, "If it pleases the king, and if your servant has found favor in your sight, I ask that you send me to Judah, to the city where my fathers are buried, so that I may rebuild it."

6 Then the king, with the queen seated beside him, asked me, "How long will your journey take, and when will you return?" So it pleased the king to send me, and I set a time.

7 I also said to him, "If it pleases the king, may letters be given to me for the governors west of the Euphrates, so that they will grant me safe passage until I reach Judah. 8 And may I have a letter to Asaph, keeper of the king's forest, so that he will give me timber to make beams for the gates of the citadel to the temple, for the city wall, and for the house I will occupy."

And because the gracious hand of my God was upon me, the king granted my requests.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SEVENTY WEEKS AND 445 BC

The Count

NEHEMIAH 2:1 TO 8 · DANIEL 9:24 TO 27

THE PROPHECY

The angel Gabriel told Daniel that seventy weeks, seventy sevens, were set for Jerusalem. From the word to restore and rebuild Jerusalem until an Anointed One, a ruler, would be seven weeks and sixty two weeks. After that the Anointed One would be cut off, Daniel 9:24 to 26.

WEEKS OF YEARS

Most read each week as seven years. Sixty nine weeks is 483 years.

WHICH WORD?

Four orders could be the start: Cyrus sends the Jews home, 538 BC, Ezra 1. Darius backs the temple, 520 BC, Ezra 6. Artaxerxes sends Ezra, 458 or 457 BC, Ezra 7. Artaxerxes sends Nehemiah to rebuild the city and its walls, 445 or 444 BC, Nehemiah 2.

WHY NEHEMIAH 2?

Those who start here say it is the only order about rebuilding the city itself, not just the temple. Others point to Isaiah 44:28, where God says Cyrus will order Jerusalem rebuilt. Nehemiah's order came in the month of Nisan, the spring of 445 BC.

Every View

LUKE 3:1 · 3:23 · 19:41 TO 44 · MATTHEW 24:15

VIEW 1: 457 BC TO JESUS' BAPTISM

Many Protestant teachers start with Ezra's order, 457 BC. 483 years later is about AD 27, when Jesus was baptized and began to preach, Luke 3:1 and 3:23. They see Jesus cut off three and a half years later, in the middle of the last week.

VIEW 2: 445 BC TO PALM SUNDAY

Sir Robert Anderson, in 1881, started with Nehemiah 2 and counted years of 360 days, the length used in Revelation 11 and 12. He landed on the week Jesus rode into Jerusalem. Harold Hoehner later counted from 444 BC to AD 33. Many who hold this view say the last week is still to come.

VIEW 3: THE TIME OF THE MACCABEES

Many scholars start with Jeremiah's word or Cyrus and do not take the numbers as exact. They see the Anointed One cut off as Onias, a high priest killed in 171 BC, and the end in the days of Antiochus, 167 to 164 BC.

VIEW 4: JEWISH READINGS

Many Jewish teachers count from the first temple's fall to the second temple's fall in AD 70. They do not see Jesus in it.

JESUS AND THE TIMING

On Palm Sunday Jesus wept over Jerusalem because it did not know the

NEH 2:4 [NOTABLE] The king asked a question, and Nehemiah shot up a prayer before he answered. You can pray in the middle of a conversation.

NEH 2:8 [NOTE] THE PERSIANS PAID. The king's forest gave the beams for the gates, the wall and Nehemiah's house. That is what this book's subtitle is about. The people still did the work themselves.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY

time of its visitation, Luke 19:41 to 44. He also quoted Daniel about the abomination that causes desolation, Matthew 24:15.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Daniel tied God's timetable to a word to rebuild Jerusalem. The sides differ on which word, and on how to count the years.

9 Then I went to the governors west of the
Euphrates and gave them the king's letters. The king had also sent army officers
and cavalry with me.

10 But when Sanballat the Horonite and Tobiah the Ammonite official heard about
this, they were deeply disturbed that
someone had come to seek the well-being of the Israelites.

NEHEMIAH INSPECTS THE WALLS

11 After I had arrived in Jerusalem and had
been there three days, 12 I set out at night
with a few men. I did not tell anyone what
my God had laid on my heart to do for
Jerusalem. The only animal with me was
the one on which I was riding.

13 So I went out at night through the Valley
Gate toward the Well of the Serpent and
the Dung Gate, and I inspected the walls
of Jerusalem that had been broken down
and the gates that had been destroyed by
fire.

14 Then I went on to the Fountain Gate and
the King's Pool, but there was no room for
the animal under me to get through; 15 so I
went up the valley by night and inspected
the wall. Then I headed back and reentered through the Valley Gate.

16 The officials did not know where I had
gone or what I was doing, for I had not yet
told the Jews or priests or nobles or officials or any other workers. 17 Then I said to
them, "You see the trouble we are in.
Jerusalem lies in ruins, and its gates have
been burned down. Come, let us rebuild
the wall of Jerusalem, so that we will no
longer be a disgrace."

18 I also told them about the gracious hand
of my God upon me, and what the king
had said to me.

"Let us start rebuilding," they replied, and
they set their hands to this good work.

19 But when Sanballat the Horonite, Tobiah
the Ammonite official, and Geshem the
Arab heard about this, they mocked us
and ridiculed us, saying, "What is this you
are doing? Are you rebelling against the
king?"

20 So I answered them and said, "The God
of heaven is the One who will grant us
success. We, His servants, will start rebuilding, but you have no portion, right, or
claim in Jerusalem."

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The work list. Family by family and gate by gate, everyone grabs a section of the wall. Priests, goldsmiths, perfume makers, rulers and even one man's daughters pitch in. A few nobles will not get their hands dirty.

THE BUILDERS OF THE WALLS

1 At the Sheep Gate, Eliashib the high
priest and his fellow priests began rebuilding. They dedicated it and installed
its doors. After building as far as the
Tower of the Hundred and the Tower of
Hananel, they dedicated the wall. 2 The
men of Jericho built next to Eliashib, and
Zaccur son of Imri built next to them.

3 The Fish Gate was rebuilt by the sons of
Hassenaah. They laid its beams and installed its doors, bolts, and bars. 4 Next to

- **NEH 2:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Elephantine Papyri → FIELD NOTES p.793
- **NEH 2:10 [NOTE]** SANBALLAT AND TOBIAH. Sanballat was governor of Samaria. Tobiah was an official from Ammon, east of the Jordan. See Who Were the Samaritans? in 2 Kings, p.639.
- **NEH 2:12 [HEART]** Nehemiah told no one what his God had put in his heart to do for Jerusalem.
- **NEH 2:13 [NOTE]** THE NIGHT RIDE. Nehemiah rode out the Valley Gate on the west side and around the south end of the city. In places there was so much rubble his animal could not get through, 2:14.
- **NEH 2:19 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A silver bowl from Tell el Maskhuta in Egypt names Qaynu son of Geshem, king of Qedar, see The Geshem Bowl Field Notes page, p.795 FIELD NOTES p.795
- **NEH 3:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Eilat Mazar dug a tower and wall in the City of David that she dated to Nehemiah's day, see the Nehemiah's Wall? Field Notes page, p.797 FIELD NOTES p.797
- **NEH 3:1 [NOTE]** THE SHEEP GATE. The tour of the wall starts at the north side, near the temple, and goes around the city counterclockwise, west first. Jesus healed a man at a pool near the Sheep Gate, John 5:2. See The Pool of Bethesda Field Notes page in John, p.1706.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE ELEPHANTINE PAPYRI

NEHEMIAH 2:10 · 2:19 · 4:1 TO 2 · 12:22 · 13:28



The front of the letter to Bagohi, governor of Judah, written in Aramaic in 407 BC. Johanan and the sons of Sanballat are named on the back of the papyrus. Printed by Eduard Sachau in 1907. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

Letters and contracts written in Aramaic on papyrus by a colony of Jewish soldiers and their families. They lived on Elephantine, an island in the Nile in southern Egypt, and guarded the border for the king of Persia. The page shows their most famous letter.

HOW OLD IT IS

The letter is dated to year 17 of King Darius, late in 407 BC. That is Darius II. Most think he is the Darius the Persian named in 12:22. It was written about 38 years after Nehemiah came to Jerusalem.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

German diggers found it on Elephantine in 1907, and Eduard Sachau printed it the same year. It is in a museum in Berlin.

WHAT THE LETTER SAYS

Egyptian priests had torn down the Jews' temple to Yahu, their name for Yahweh, in 410 BC. The Jewish leader Jedaniah and the priests begged Bagohi, the Persian governor of Judah, to let them rebuild it.

SANBALLAT'S SONS

The letter says they also wrote to Delaiah and Shelemiah, the sons of Sanballat, governor of Samaria. That is Nehemiah's enemy, 2:10. By 407 BC his sons were doing his work, which fits an old man who had been in power in 445 BC.

JOHANAN THE HIGH PRIEST

They had written earlier to Johanan the high priest in Jerusalem and his fellow priests, and got no answer. Johanan is in the list of high priests in 12:22, right after Joiada son of Eliashib. Most think he was Eliashib's grandson; 12:23 calls him his son, meaning descendant.

THE ANSWER

A short note records the reply from Bagohi and Delaiah: rebuild the house of the altar and offer grain offerings and incense there. Animal sacrifices are not mentioned. Some think Jerusalem's priests wanted those kept for the temple in Jerusalem. Others think it kept peace with the Egyptian priests of Khnum, a ram god.

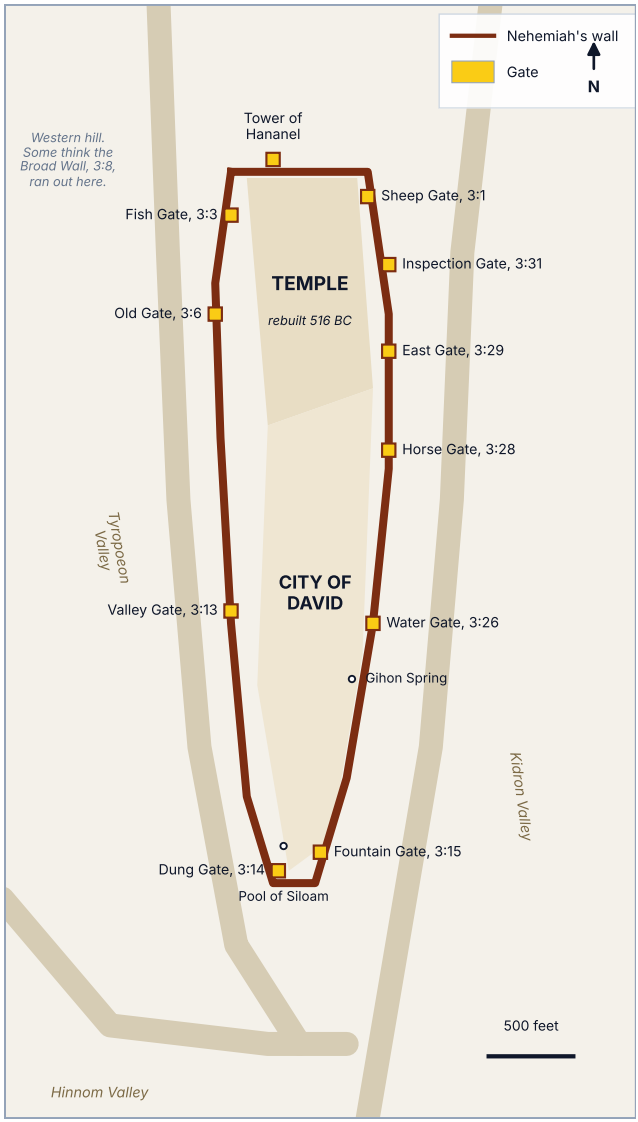
WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The letters never name Nehemiah. They show that Sanballat of Samaria and Johanan the high priest were real men, in the right places, at the right time.

MAP · NEHEMIAH 3

Jerusalem's Walls Rebuilt

Every family took a section, and the wall was done in 52 days



WHY THE WALLS MATTERED A city without walls was open to any enemy and was a shame to its people, Nehemiah 1:3 and 2:17.

A SWORD AND A TROWEL Enemies threatened to attack, so half the men stood guard while the others built, each with a weapon at hand, Nehemiah 4:16 to 18.

ALL HANDS Priests, goldsmiths, perfume makers, rulers and even daughters all worked. Many fixed the part near their own home, Nehemiah 3.

52 DAYS The wall was finished on the 25th of Elul, in 52 days, and even the enemies knew God had done it, Nehemiah 6:15 to 16.

This is a simple plan, not to exact scale. Most scholars think the wall circled only the City of David and the temple hill. Gate locations are approximate.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE BOWL · MOST LINK IT TO NEHEMIAH'S GESHEM

THE GESHEM BOWL

NEHEMIAH 2:19 · 6:1 TO 2 · 6:6 · ISAIAH 21:16 TO 17



A silver bowl from Tell el Maskhuta, Egypt, about 410 BC. The line of Aramaic on the rim names Qaynu son of Geshem, king of Qedar. Brooklyn Museum, Charles Edwin Wilbour Fund, 54.50.34. Brooklyn Museum photograph.

WHAT IT IS

A shallow silver bowl about six inches across. A line of Aramaic scratched on its rim says: what Qaynu son of Geshem, king of Qedar, brought to Han Ilat. Han Ilat was an Arab goddess. The bowl spells the name the same way as Geshem in 2:19. In 6:6 the Hebrew spells it a little longer, Gashmu.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 410 BC, about 35 years after Nehemiah came to Jerusalem. If Qaynu was king then, his father Geshem ruled a little earlier, in Nehemiah's day.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

At Tell el Maskhuta in the east of the Nile Delta, in Egypt, with other silver bowls, coins and jewelry from a shrine. The Brooklyn Museum in New York bought it in 1954, and Isaac Rabinowitz printed its writing in 1956.

WHO WAS QEDAR?

A strong Arab kingdom in the desert east and south of Judah. The Bible names Kedar many times, Isaiah 21:16 and Jeremiah 49:28. In Persian times the kings of Qedar ran the trade routes from Arabia to Gaza and Egypt.

GESHEM THE ARAB

The Bible just calls him Geshem the Arab, 2:19. The bowl shows his family were kings. He joined Sanballat and Tobiah to mock the builders, and he backed the lie that Nehemiah wanted to be king, 6:6.

WHY AN ARAB KING CARED

Many think a strong Jerusalem worried him because it sat near his trade roads. A walled city with its own governor could change who controlled the money.

ANOTHER GESHEM

Writing on a rock at Dedan, in what is now Saudi Arabia, is dated in the days of Gashm son of Shahr. Many scholars think he is the same man, which would make him a king over a large part of Arabia.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The bowl names the son, not Geshem himself, and it does not mention Nehemiah. It shows that a king named Geshem ruled the Arabs near Judah at the time the Bible says.

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

them, Meremoth son of Uriah, the son of Hakkoz, made repairs. Next to him, Meshullam son of Berechiah, the son of Meshezabel, made repairs; and next to him, Zadok son of Baana made repairs as well. 5 Next to him, the Tekoites made repairs, but their nobles did not put their shoulders to the work under their supervisors.

6 The Jeshanah Gate was repaired by Joiada son of Paseah and Meshullam son of Besodeiah. They laid its beams and installed its doors, bolts, and bars. 7 Next to them, repairs were made by Melatiah the Gibeonite, Jadon the Meronothite, and the men of Gibeon and Mizpah, who were under the authority of the governor of the region west of the Euphrates. 8 Next to them, Uzziel son of Harhaiah, one of the goldsmiths, made repairs. And next to him, Hananiah, one of the perfumers, made repairs. They fortified Jerusalem as far as the Broad Wall.

9 Next to them, Rephaiah son of Hur, ruler of a half-district of Jerusalem, made repairs; 10 next to him, Jedaiah son of Harumaph made repairs across from his house; and next to him, Hattush son of Hashabneiah made repairs. 11 Malchijah son of Harim and Hasshub son of Pahath-moab repaired another section, as well as the Tower of the Ovens. 12 And next to them, Shallum son of Hallohesh, ruler of the other half-district of Jerusalem, made repairs, with the help of his daughters.

13 The Valley Gate was repaired by Hanun and the residents of Zanoah. They rebuilt it, installed its doors, bolts, and bars, and repaired five hundred yards of the wall as far as the Dung Gate.

14 The Dung Gate was repaired by Malchijah son of Rechab, ruler of the district of Beth-haccherem. He rebuilt it and installed its doors, bolts, and bars.

15 The Fountain Gate was repaired by Shallun son of Col-hozeh, ruler of the district of Mizpah. He rebuilt it, roofed it, and installed its doors, bolts, and bars. He also repaired the wall of the Pool of Shelah near the king's garden, as far as the stairs that descend from the City of David.

16 Beyond him, Nehemiah son of Azbuk, ruler of a half-district of Beth-zur, made repairs up to a point opposite the tombs of David, as far as the artificial pool and the House of the Mighty.

17 Next to him, the Levites made repairs under Rehum son of Bani, and next to him, Hashabiah, ruler of a half-district of Keilah, made repairs for his district. 18 Next to him, their countrymen made repairs under Binnui son of Henadad, ruler of the other half-district of Keilah. 19 And next to him, Ezer son of Jeshua, ruler of Mizpah, repaired another section opposite the ascent to the armory, near the angle in the wall.

20 Next to him, Baruch son of Zabbai diligently repaired another section, from the angle to the doorway of the house of Eliashib the high priest. 21 Next to him, Meremoth son of Uriah, the son of Hakkoz, repaired another section, from the doorway of the house of Eliashib to the end of the house. 22 And next to him, the priests from the surrounding area made repairs.

23 Beyond them, Benjamin and Hasshub made repairs in front of their house, and next to them, Azariah son of Maaseiah, the son of Ananiah, made repairs beside his house. 24 After him, Binnui son of Henadad repaired another section, from the house of Azariah to the angle and the corner, 25 and Palal son of Uzai made repairs opposite the angle and the tower that juts out from the upper palace of the king near the courtyard of the guard. Next to him, Pedaiah son of Parosh 26 and the temple servants living on the hill of Ophel made repairs opposite the Water Gate toward the east and the tower that juts out. 27 And next to them, the Tekoites repaired

NEH 3:8 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The Broad Wall
NEH 3:8 [FIELD NOTES] See The Broad Wall Field Notes page in Isaiah, p.1086.

NEH 3:15 [NOTE] THE POOL OF SHELAH. Most think this is the Pool of Siloam, fed by Hezekiah's tunnel. See The Siloam Tunnel Inscription in Isaiah and The Pool of Siloam in John, p.1715. The City of David is the oldest part of Jerusalem; see The City of David in 2 Samuel, p.498.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: DEBATED · THE DATE OF THE TOWER

NEHEMIAH'S WALL?

NEHEMIAH 2:13 TO 15 · 3:1 TO 32 · 4:2 · 6:15 · 7:4



The Stepped Stone Structure in the City of David, with the square tower at its top that Eilat Mazar linked to Nehemiah. The rails and buildings are modern. Photo Ian Scott, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A big square tower and a wall at the top of the Stepped Stone Structure, on the east edge of the City of David, the oldest part of Jerusalem. In 2007 the archaeologist Eilat Mazar said the tower and wall were built by Nehemiah.

HOW OLD IT IS

Debated. Mazar dated pottery under the tower to the 400s BC, so she said it was built in Nehemiah's day or soon after. Israel Finkelstein and others say the finds point to the 100s BC, when the Hasmonean kings rebuilt Jerusalem's walls.

WHO DUG THERE

Kathleen Kenyon dug here in the 1960s. She dated this tower to the 100s BC, but she thought a wall she found on the top of the slope was Nehemiah's. Mazar dug again from 2005.

A SMALL CITY

Most scholars think Jerusalem in Nehemiah's day was small, mostly on the ridge of the City of David. That helps explain how a wall could go up in 52 days, 6:15, and why the city felt empty, 7:4.

OLD STONES

The builders did not start from nothing. Burned stones lay in heaps of rubble, 4:2, and in many places they repaired the old wall, 3:8. Some think they built a new line along the top of the hill instead of the old one down the slope.

THE NIGHT RIDE

Nehemiah rode out the Valley Gate, past the Dung Gate and the Fountain Gate, and up the valley, 2:13 to 15. Most put those gates on the west and south sides of the City of David.

JUDAH IN PERSIAN TIMES

Small clay jar handles stamped Yehud, the Aramaic name for Judah under Persian rule, have been found in Jerusalem. They show there was a small province with its own officials, just like the Bible says.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No writing names Nehemiah, and no one knows for sure if this tower is his. The Bible's wall was real either way; the question is only which stones are left.

NOTABLE

another section, from a point opposite the great tower that juts out to the wall of Ophel.

28 Above the Horse Gate, each of the priests made repairs in front of his own house. 29 Next to them, Zadok son of Immer made repairs opposite his house, and next to him, Shemaiah son of Shecaniah, the guard of the East Gate, made repairs.

30 Next to him, Hananiah son of Shelemiah, as well as Hanun the sixth son of Zalaph, repaired another section. Next to them, Meshullam son of Berechiah made repairs opposite his own quarters. 31 Next to him, Malchijah, one of the goldsmiths, made repairs as far as the house of the temple servants and the merchants, opposite the Inspection Gate, and as far as the upper room above the corner. 32 And between the upper room above the corner and the Sheep Gate, the goldsmiths and merchants made repairs.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The enemies mock, then plot an attack. Nehemiah prays and posts guards. Half the men build while half hold spears, and the builders work with a sword strapped on. A trumpet man stays close, and Nehemiah and his men do not even change clothes at night.

THE WORK RIDICULED

1 Now when Sanballat heard that we were rebuilding the wall, he was furious and filled with indignation. He ridiculed the Jews 2 before his associates and the army of Samaria, saying, "What are these feeble Jews doing? Can they restore the wall by themselves? Will they offer sacrifices? Will they complete it in a day? Can they bring these burnt stones back to life from the mounds of rubble?"

3 Then Tobiah the Ammonite, who was beside him, said, "If even a fox were to climb up on what they are building, it would break down their wall of stones!"

4 Hear us, O God, for we are despised. Turn their scorn back upon their own heads, and let them be taken as plunder to a land of captivity. 5 Do not cover up their iniquity or let their sin be blotted out from Your sight, for they have provoked the builders.

6 So we rebuilt the wall until all of it was joined together up to half its height, for the people had a mind to work.

7 When Sanballat and Tobiah, together with the Arabs, Ammonites, and Ashdodites, heard that the repair to the walls of Jerusalem was progressing and that the gaps were being closed, they were furious, 8 and all of them conspired to come and fight against Jerusalem and create a hindrance.

DISCOURAGEMENT OVERCOME

9 So we prayed to our God and posted a guard against them day and night.

10 Meanwhile, the people of Judah said:

"The strength of the laborer fails,
and there is so much rubble
that we will never be able
to rebuild the wall."

11 And our enemies said, "Before they know or see a thing, we will come into their midst, kill them, and put an end to the work."

12 At that time the Jews who lived nearby came and told us ten times over, "Wherever you turn, they will attack us."

13 So I stationed men behind the lowest sections of the wall, at the vulnerable areas. I stationed them by families with their swords, spears, and bows.

14 After I had made an inspection, I stood up and said to the nobles, the officials, and the rest of the people, "Do not be afraid of them. Remember the Lord, who is great and awesome, and fight for your brothers, your sons and your daughters, your wives and your homes."

15 When our enemies heard that we were aware of their scheme and that God had frustrated it, each of us returned to his own work on the wall. 16 And from that day on, half of my servants did the work while

NEH 4:2 [NOTE] HEAPS OF RUBBLE. The old stones were still lying there, burned. Using them again helped the wall go up fast.

NEH 4:14 [NOTABLE] When fear hits, remember how big God is, then fight for the people you love.

the other half held spears, shields, bows, and armor.

The officers stationed themselves behind all the people of Judah 17 who were rebuilding the wall. The laborers who carried materials worked with one hand and held a weapon with the other. 18 And each of the builders worked with his sword strapped at his side. But the trumpeter stayed beside me.

19 Then I said to the nobles, the officials, and the rest of the people: "The work is great and extensive, and we are spread out far from one another along the wall. 20 Wherever you hear the sound of the horn, rally to us there. Our God will fight for us!"

21 So we continued the work, while half of the men held spears from the break of dawn until the stars came out. 22 At that time I also said to the people, "Let every man and his servant spend the night inside Jerusalem, so that they can stand guard by night and work by day."

23 So neither I nor my brothers nor my servants nor the guards with me changed out of our clothes; each carried his weapon, even to go for water.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Trouble from inside. Rich Jews are charging their poor brothers interest and taking their fields and even their kids. Nehemiah gets angry, calls a big meeting and makes them give it all back. As governor he refuses his own food allowance for twelve years.

NEHEMIAH DEFENDS THE OPPRESSED

1 About that time there was a great outcry from the people and their wives against their fellow Jews.

2 Some were saying, "We and our sons and daughters are numerous. We must get grain in order to eat and stay alive."

3 Others were saying, "We are mortgaging our fields, our vineyards, and our homes to get grain during the famine."

4 Still others were saying, "We have borrowed money to pay the king's tax on our fields and vineyards. 5 We and our children are just like our countrymen and their children, yet we are subjecting our sons and daughters to slavery. Some of our daughters are already enslaved, but we are powerless to redeem them because our fields and vineyards belong to others."

6 When I heard their outcry and these complaints, I became extremely angry, 7 and after serious thought I rebuked the nobles and officials, saying, "You are exacting usury from your own brothers!"

So I called a large assembly against them 8 and said, "We have done our best to buy back our Jewish brothers who were sold to foreigners, but now you are selling your own brothers, that they may be sold back to us!"

But they remained silent, for they could find nothing to say.

9 So I continued, "What you are doing is not right. Shouldn't you walk in the fear of our God to avoid the reproach of our foreign enemies? 10 I, as well as my brothers and my servants, have been lending the people money and grain. Please, let us stop this usury. 11 Please restore to them immediately their fields, vineyards, olive groves, and houses, along with the percentage of the money, grain, new wine, and oil that you have been assessing them."

12 "We will restore it," they replied, "and will require nothing more from them. We will do as you say."

So I summoned the priests and required of the nobles and officials an oath that they would do what they had promised. 13 I also shook out the folds of my robe and said, "May God likewise shake out of his house and possessions every man who does not keep this promise. May such a man be shaken out and have nothing!"

The whole assembly said, "Amen," and they praised Yahweh. And the people did as they had promised.

NEH 5:1 [NOTE] DEBT SLAVERY. See the Big Question Debt Slavery.

NEH 5:11 [NOTE] THE PERCENTAGE. The Hebrew says the hundredth. Many think it means one percent a month, twelve percent a year, charged to poor brothers.

THE BIG QUESTION

DEBT SLAVERY

The Problem

NEHEMIAH 5:1 TO 19 · EXODUS 22:25 · LEVITICUS 25:35 TO 43

THE CRY

There was a famine. Some families mortgaged their fields to buy grain. Others borrowed money to pay the king's tax. Some had already sold their daughters as servants to pay their debts, 5:1 to 5.

WHO WAS DOING IT

Not the enemies. The nobles and officials of Judah were charging their own brothers interest, 5:7.

WHAT THE LAW SAID

Do not charge interest to a poor brother, Exodus 22:25. A brother who falls on hard times is not to be worked as a slave, Leviticus 25:35 to 43. Every seventh year, cancel the debts, Deuteronomy 15:1 to 2.

NEHEMIAH GOT ANGRY

He was very angry, but he thought it over first, 5:6 to 7. Then he called a big meeting and said it in front of everyone.

The Fix

DEUTERONOMY 15:1 TO 11 · PROVERBS 22:7 · LUKE 6:35

THE FIX

Give back their fields, vineyards, olive groves and houses today, and the interest too, 5:11. The leaders said, We will. Nehemiah made them swear before the priests, 5:12.

HE LED BY EXAMPLE

For twelve years as governor he did not take the governor's food allowance. He fed 150 Jews and officials at his own table and paid for it himself, 5:14 to 18. He and his men had been lending money and grain too, and he said, Let us stop this, 5:10.

WHAT ABOUT INTEREST TODAY?

For centuries the church forbade charging interest. Today most Christians think fair interest on a business loan is fine, but taking advantage of someone in trouble is not.

FOR TODAY

The borrower is slave to the lender, Proverbs 22:7. Jesus said, Lend, expecting nothing in return, Luke 6:35. Do not get rich off someone else's hard times, and help a brother get free.

NEHEMIAH'S GENEROSITY

14 Furthermore, from the day King Artaxerxes appointed me to be their governor
in the land of Judah, from his twentieth
year until his thirty-second year (twelve
years total), neither I nor my brothers ate
the food allotted to the governor.
15 The governors before me had heavily
burdened the people, taking from them
bread and wine plus a pound of silver.
Their servants also oppressed the people.
But I did not do this, because of my fear
of God. 16 Instead, I devoted myself to the
construction of the wall, and all my servants were gathered there for the work;
we did not acquire any land.
17 There were 150 Jews and officials at my
table, besides the guests from the surrounding nations. 18 Each day one ox, six
choice sheep, and some fowl were prepared for me, and once every ten days an
abundance of all kinds of wine was provided. But I did not demand the food allotted to the governor, because the burden
on the people was so heavy.
19 Remember me favorably, O my God, for
all that I have done for this people.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

The enemies try tricks. Four invitations to a meeting, a fake letter and a hired prophet who tells Nehemiah to hide in the temple. Nehemiah says, I am doing a great work and cannot come down. The wall is finished in 52 days.

SANBALLAT'S CONSPIRACY

1 When Sanballat, Tobiah, Geshem the
Arab, and the rest of our enemies heard
that I had rebuilt the wall and not a gap
was left—though to that time I had not yet
installed the doors in the gates— 2 Sanballat and Geshem sent me this message:
"Come, let us meet together in one of the
villages on the plain of Ono."
But they were planning to harm me.

NEH 5:14 [NOTE] TWELVE YEARS. From 445 to 433 BC.

NOTABLE

3 So I sent messengers to them, saying, "I
am doing a great work and cannot come
down. Why should the work stop while I
leave it to go down to you?"

4 Four times they sent me the same message, and each time I gave the same reply.

5 The fifth time, Sanballat sent me this same message by his young servant, who had in his hand an unsealed letter 6 that read:

"It is reported among the nations—and Geshem agrees—that you and the Jews are plotting to revolt, and this is why you are building the wall. According to these reports, you are to become their king, 7 and you have even appointed prophets in Jerusalem to proclaim on your behalf: 'There is a king in Judah.' Soon these rumors will reach the ears of the king. So come, let us confer together."

8 Then I sent him this reply: "There is nothing to these rumors you are spreading; you are inventing them in your own mind."

9 For they were all trying to frighten us, saying, "Their hands will be weakened in the work, and it will never be finished."

But now, my God, strengthen my hands.

10 Later, I went to the house of Shemaiah son of Delaiah, the son of Mehetabel, who was confined to his house. He said:

"Let us meet at the house of God
inside the temple.
Let us shut the temple doors
because they are coming to kill you—
by night they are coming to kill you!"

11 But I replied, "Should a man like me run away? Should one like me go into the temple to save his own life? I will not go!"

12 I realized that God had not sent him, but that he had uttered this prophecy against me because Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him. 13 He had been hired to intimidate me so that I would sin by doing as he suggested, so they could give me a bad name in order to discredit me.

14 O my God, remember Tobiah and Sanballat for what they have done, and also Noadiah the prophetess and the other prophets who tried to intimidate me.

COMPLETION OF THE WALL

15 So the wall was completed in fifty-two days, on the twenty-fifth of Elul. 16 When all our enemies heard about this, all the surrounding nations were afraid and disheartened, for they realized that this task had been accomplished by our God.

17 Also in those days, the nobles of Judah sent many letters to Tobiah, and Tobiah's letters kept coming to them. 18 For many in Judah were bound by oath to him, since he was a son-in-law of Shecaniah son of Arah, and his son Jehohanan had married the daughter of Meshullam son of Berechiah.

19 Moreover, these nobles kept reporting to me Tobiah's good deeds, and they relayed my words to him. And Tobiah sent letters to intimidate me.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Nehemiah puts guards on the gates. The city is big but almost empty, so he finds the old list of the families who came home first, and the chapter repeats it. The families give gold coins, silver and priests' robes.

SECURING THE CITY

1 When the wall had been rebuilt and I had set the doors in place, the gatekeepers, singers, and Levites were appointed.

2 Then I put my brother Hanani in charge of Jerusalem, along with Hananiah the commander of the fortress, because he was a faithful man who feared God more than most. 3 And I told them, "Do not open the gates of Jerusalem until the sun is hot. While the guards are on duty, keep the doors shut and securely fastened. And

NEH 6:3 [NOTABLE] His enemies kept inviting him to a meeting to hurt him. He said no four times. Not every meeting deserves your time.

NEH 6:10 [NOTE] A TRAP. Only priests could go inside the temple building, Numbers 18:7. If Nehemiah hid there, he would sin and lose the people's trust, 6:13.

NEH 6:15 [NOTE] 52 DAYS. The 25th of Elul was about early October 445 BC. The writer Josephus, about 93 AD, says it took two years and four months, but the Bible says 52 days.

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

appoint the residents of Jerusalem as guards, some at their posts and some at their own homes."

THE LIST OF RETURNING EXILES // EZRA 2:1–67

4 Now the city was large and spacious, but there were few people in it, and the houses had not yet been rebuilt. 5 Then my God put it into my heart to assemble the nobles, the officials, and the people to be enrolled by genealogy. I found the genealogical register of those who had first returned, and I found the following written in it:

6 These are the people of the province who came up from the captivity of the exiles carried away to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar its king. They returned to Jerusalem and Judah, each to his own town, 7 accompanied by Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, and Baanah.

This is the count of the men of Israel:

8 the descendants of Parosh, 2,172;
9 the descendants of Shephatiah, 372;
10 the descendants of Arah, 652;
11 the descendants of Pahath-moab (through the line of Jeshua and Joab), 2,818;
12 the descendants of Elam, 1,254;
13 the descendants of Zattu, 845;
14 the descendants of Zaccai, 760;
15 the descendants of Binnui, 648;
16 the descendants of Bebai, 628;
17 the descendants of Azgad, 2,322;
18 the descendants of Adonikam, 667;
19 the descendants of Bigvai, 2,067;
20 the descendants of Adin, 655;
21 the descendants of Ater (through Hezekiah), 98;
22 the descendants of Hashum, 328;
23 the descendants of Bezai, 324;
24 the descendants of Hariph, 112;
25 the descendants of Gibeon, 95;
26 the men of Bethlehem and Netophah, 188;
27 the men of Anathoth, 128;
28 the men of Beth-azmaveth, 42;
29 the men of Kiriath-jearim, Chephirah, and Beeroth, 743;
30 the men of Ramah and Geba, 621;
31 the men of Michmash, 122;
32 the men of Bethel and Ai, 123;
33 the men of the other Nebo, 52;
34 the descendants of the other Elam, 1,254;
35 the descendants of Harim, 320;
36 the men of Jericho, 345;
37 the men of Lod, Hadid, and Ono, 721;
38 and the descendants of Senaah, 3,930.

39 The priests:
the descendants of Jedaiah (through the house of Jeshua), 973;
40 the descendants of Immer, 1,052;
41 the descendants of Pashhur, 1,247;
42 and the descendants of Harim, 1,017.

43 The Levites:
the descendants of Jeshua (through Kadmiel, through the line of Hodevah), 74.

44 The singers:
the descendants of Asaph, 148.

45 The gatekeepers:
the descendants of Shallum,
the descendants of Ater,
the descendants of Talmon,
the descendants of Akkub,
the descendants of Hatita,
and the descendants of Shobai,
138 in all.

46 The temple servants:
the descendants of Ziha,
the descendants of Hasupha,
the descendants of Tabbaoth,
47 the descendants of Keros,
the descendants of Sia,
the descendants of Padon,
48 the descendants of Lebanah,
the descendants of Hagabah,
the descendants of Shalmai,
49 the descendants of Hanan,
the descendants of Giddel,
the descendants of Gahar,
50 the descendants of Reaiah,

NEH 7:4 [NOTE] A BIG, EMPTY CITY. The walls were up, but few people lived inside. Chapter 11 fixes that.
NEH 7:5 [HEART] God put it into Nehemiah's heart to gather the people and count the families.
NEH 7:6 [NOTE] THE SAME LIST. 7:6 to 73 repeats the list of Ezra 2, with small differences in names and numbers. Both totals are 42,360. See the 2:64 note in Ezra, p.768.

the descendants of Rezin,
the descendants of Nekoda,
51 the descendants of Gazzam,
the descendants of Uzza,
the descendants of Paseah,
52 the descendants of Besai,
the descendants of Meunim,
the descendants of Nephushesim,
53 the descendants of Bakbuk,
the descendants of Hakupha,
the descendants of Harhur,
54 the descendants of Bazlith,
the descendants of Mehida,
the descendants of Harsha,
55 the descendants of Barkos,
the descendants of Sisera,
the descendants of Temah,
56 the descendants of Neziah,
and the descendants of Hatipha.

57 The descendants of the servants of Solomon:

the descendants of Sotai,
the descendants of Sophereth,
the descendants of Perida,
58 the descendants of Jaala,
the descendants of Darkon,
the descendants of Giddel,
59 the descendants of Shephatiah,
the descendants of Hattil,
the descendants of Pochereth-hazzebaim,
and the descendants of Amon.

60 The temple servants and descendants of the servants of Solomon numbered 392 in all.

61 The following came up from Tel-melah, Tel-harsha, Cherub, Addon, and Immer, but they could not prove that their families were descended from Israel:
62 the descendants of Delaiah,
the descendants of Tobiah,
and the descendants of Nekoda,
642 in all.

63 And from among the priests: the descendants of Hobaiah,
the descendants of Hakkoz,
and the descendants of Barzillai (who had married a daughter of Barzillai the Gileadite and was called by their name).

64 These men searched for their family records, but they could not find them and so were excluded from the priesthood as unclean. 65 The governor ordered them not to eat the most holy things until there was a priest to consult the Urim and Thummim.

66 The whole assembly numbered 42,360,
67 in addition to their 7,337 menservants and maidservants, as well as their 245 male and female singers. 68 They had 736 horses, 245 mules, 69 435 camels, and 6,720 donkeys.

OFFERINGS BY THE EXILES // EXODUS 38:21–31; EZRA 2:68–70

70 Some of the heads of the families contributed to the project. The governor gave to the treasury 1,000 gold coins, 50 bowls, and 530 priestly garments. 71 And some of the heads of the families gave to the treasury for the project 20,000 gold coins and 2,750 pounds of silver. 72 The rest of the people gave a total of 20,000 gold coins, 2,500 pounds of silver, and 67 priestly garments.

73 So the priests, Levites, gatekeepers, singers, and temple servants, along with some of the people and the rest of the Israelites, settled in their own towns. And by the seventh month the Israelites had settled in their towns.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Everyone gathers by the Water Gate, and Ezra reads God's law from morning till noon while the Levites explain it. The people cry. Nehemiah says, Stop crying and throw a party, the joy of Yahweh is your strength. They camp out in booths for a week.

EZRA READS THE LAW // DEUTERONOMY 31:9–13

1 At that time all the people gathered together in the square before the Water Gate, and they asked Ezra the scribe to bring out the Book of the Law of Moses, which Yahweh had commanded for Israel.

- **NEH 7:70 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Persian Gold Coins Field Notes page in Ezra, p.768.
- **NEH 8:1 [NOTE]** EZRA IS BACK. Most date Ezra's coming to 458 BC, 13 years before Nehemiah, Ezra 7. Here the two men work together, 8:9. See the Big Question Ezra Reads the Law.

NOTABLE

2 On the first day of the seventh month,
Ezra the priest brought the Law before the
assembly of men and women and all who
could listen and understand. 3 So Ezra
read it aloud from daybreak until noon as
he faced the square before the Water
Gate, in front of the men and women and
those who could understand.

And all the people listened attentively to
the Book of the Law.

4 Ezra the scribe stood on a high wooden
platform built for this occasion. At his right
side stood Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah,
Uriah, Hilkiah, and Maaseiah, and at his
left were Pedaiah, Mishael, Malchijah,
Hashum, Hash-baddanah, Zechariah, and
Meshullam.

5 Ezra opened the book in full view of all
the people, since he was standing above
them all, and as he opened it, all the peo-
ple stood up. 6 Then Ezra blessed Yahweh,
the great God, and with their hands up-
lifted, all the people said, "Amen, Amen!"
Then they bowed down and worshiped
Yahweh with their faces to the ground.

7 The Levites—Jeshua, Bani, Sherebiah,
Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maa-
seiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan,
and Pelaiah—instructed the people in the
Law as they stood in their places. 8 So
they read from the Book of the Law of
God, explaining it and giving insight, so
that the people could understand what
was being read.

9 Nehemiah the governor, Ezra the priest
and scribe, and the Levites who were in-
structing the people said to all of them,
"This day is holy to Yahweh your God. Do
not mourn or weep."

For all the people were weeping as they
heard the words of the Law.

10 Then Nehemiah told them, "Go and eat
what is rich, drink what is sweet, and send
out portions to those who have nothing
prepared, since today is holy to our Lord.
Do not grieve, for the joy of Yahweh is
your strength."

NEH 8:10 [NOTABLE] The people cried when they heard God's law. Nehemiah told them to throw a party and share it, because God's joy is what makes you strong.

11 And the Levites calmed all the people,
saying, "Be still, since today is holy. Do
not grieve."

12 Then all the people began to eat and
drink, to send out portions, and to rejoice
greatly, because they understood the
words that had been made known to
them.

THE BIG QUESTION

EZRA READS THE LAW

The Scene

NEHEMIAH 8:1 TO 18 · DEUTERONOMY 31:10 TO 13

THE SCENE

On the first day of the seventh month, in the fall of 445 BC, everyone gathered in the square by the Water Gate. Men, women and children old enough to understand stood from morning till noon while Ezra read, 8:1 to 3.

A WOODEN PLATFORM

Ezra stood on a high wooden stage with thirteen men beside him. When he opened the book, everyone stood up, 8:4 to 5. Many churches and synagogues still stand for the reading of Scripture.

THEY GAVE THE SENSE

The Levites read clearly and explained it so the people understood, 8:8. Jewish tradition in the Talmud says this means they also put it into Aramaic, the everyday language many spoke after Babylon.

WHY THEY WEPT

They heard God's law and saw how far they had fallen. Nehemiah, Ezra and the Levites said, Do not weep. Nehemiah added, Do not grieve, for the joy of Yahweh is your strength, 8:9 to 10.

What It Means

LUKE 4:16 TO 21 · LUKE 24:27 · 2 TIMOTHY 4:2

THE FEAST OF BOOTHS

The next day they read about the feast where Israel lives in shelters for a week, Leviticus 23:39 to 43. Everyone built booths of branches on their roofs and in the squares, 8:14 to 17.

WHAT BOOK?

The Book of the Law of Moses, read every day of the feast, 8:18. Moses had said to read the law to everyone at this feast every seventh year, Deuteronomy

31:10 to 13. Most think it was the five books of Moses, or a large part of them.

THE FIRST SERMON?

Read the text, then explain it. Many see here the start of the way synagogues and churches teach. Jesus did the same in Nazareth, reading Isaiah and then explaining it, Luke 4:16 to 21.

FOR TODAY

God's word is meant to be understood, not just heard. Read it, ask what it means, and let it lead to joy, not only tears.

THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES // LEVITICUS 23:33–44; ZECHARIAH 14:16–21

13 On the second day of the month, the heads of all the families, along with the priests and Levites, gathered around Ezra the scribe to study the words of the Law. 14 And they found written in the Law, which Yahweh had commanded through Moses, that the Israelites were to dwell in booths during the feast of the seventh month, 15 and that they should proclaim this message and spread it throughout their towns and in Jerusalem, saying, "Go out to the hill country and bring back branches of olive, wild olive, myrtle, palm, and other leafy trees, to make booths, as it is written."

16 And the people went out, brought back branches, and made booths on their own rooftops, in their courtyards, in the courts of the house of God, and in the squares by the Water Gate and by the Gate of Ephraim. 17 The whole assembly that had returned from exile made booths and lived in them. From the days of Joshua son of Nun until that day, the Israelites had not celebrated like this. And there was great rejoicing.

18 Day after day, from the first day to the last, Ezra read from the Book of the Law of God. The Israelites kept the feast for seven days, and on the eighth day they held an assembly, according to the ordinance.

■ **NEH 8:17 [NOTE]** NOT SINCE JOSHUA. Israel had kept the Feast of Booths before, 2 Chronicles 8:13 and Ezra 3:4. Many think the point is that it had never been kept like this, by everyone, with such joy.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

A day of fasting and confession. The Levites pray the whole story of Israel, from creation to the exile: God was faithful every time, and the people were not. They end by saying, We are slaves in our own land.

THE PEOPLE CONFESS THEIR SINS

1 On the twenty-fourth day of the same month, the Israelites gathered together, fasting and wearing sackcloth, with dust on their heads. 2 Those of Israelite descent separated themselves from all the foreigners, and they stood and confessed their sins and the iniquities of their fathers.

3 While they stood in their places, they read from the Book of the Law of Yahweh their God for a quarter of the day, and they spent another quarter of the day in confession and worship of Yahweh their God.

4 And the Levites—Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Chenani—stood on the raised platform and cried out in a loud voice to Yahweh their God. 5 Then the Levites—Jeshua, Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabneiah, Sherebiah, Hodiah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah—said, "Stand up and bless Yahweh your God from everlasting to everlasting:

Blessed be Your glorious name,
and may it be exalted
above all blessing and praise.
6 You alone are Yahweh.
You created the heavens,
the highest heavens with all their host,
the earth and all that is on it,
the seas and all that is in them.
You give life to all things,
and the host of heaven worships You.

7 You are Yahweh,
the God who chose Abram,
who brought him out of Ur of the
Chaldeans
and gave him the name Abraham.

■ **NEH 9:1 [NOTE]** THE PRAYER. 9:5 to 37 is one of the longest prayers in the Bible. It tells Israel's story from creation to the exile. It reports what God said and did, but quotes no words of God, so it stays black.

THE HEART DEMONIC

8 You found his heart faithful before You,
and made a covenant with him
to give the land of the Canaanites and Hittites,
of the Amorites and Perizzites,
of the Jebusites and Girgashites—
to give it to his descendants.
You have kept Your promise,
because You are righteous.

9 You saw the affliction of our fathers in Egypt;
You heard their cry at the Red Sea.
10 You performed signs and wonders against Pharaoh,
all his officials, and all the people of his land,
for You knew they had acted with arrogance
against our fathers.
You made a name for Yourself
that endures to this day.
11 You divided the sea before them,
and they crossed through it on dry ground.
You hurled their pursuers into the depths
like a stone into raging waters.

12 You led them with a pillar of cloud by day
and a pillar of fire by night,
to light for them the way
in which they should travel.
13 You came down on Mount Sinai
and spoke with them from heaven.
You gave them just ordinances, true laws,
and good statutes and commandments.
14 You revealed to them Your holy Sabbath
and gave them commandments and statutes and laws
through Your servant Moses.
15 In their hunger You gave them bread from heaven;
in their thirst You brought them water from the rock.
You told them to go in and possess the land
that You had sworn to give them.

16 But they and our fathers became arrogant and stiff-necked
and did not obey Your commandments.
17 They refused to listen and failed to remember
the wonders You performed among them.
They stiffened their necks and appointed a leader
to return them to their bondage in Egypt.
But You are a forgiving God,
gracious and compassionate,
slow to anger and rich in loving devotion,
and You did not forsake them.

18 Even when they cast for themselves
an image of a calf and said,
'This is your God who brought you up out of Egypt,'
and when they committed terrible blasphemies,
19 You in Your great compassion
did not forsake them in the wilderness.
By day the pillar of cloud never turned away
from guiding them on their path;
and by the night the pillar of fire
illuminated the way they should go.
20 You gave Your good Spirit to instruct them.
You did not withhold Your manna from their mouths,
and You gave them water for their thirst.
21 For forty years You sustained them in the wilderness,
so that they lacked nothing.
Their clothes did not wear out
and their feet did not swell.

22 You gave them kingdoms and peoples
and allotted to them every corner of the land.
So they took the land of Sihon king of Heshbon
and of Og king of Bashan.
23 You multiplied their descendants
like the stars of heaven
and brought them to the land

NEH 9:7 [FIELD NOTES] See the Ur of the Chaldeans Field Notes page in Genesis, p.65.

NEH 9:8 [HEART] God found Abraham's heart faithful and made a covenant with him.

NEH 9:18 [DEMONIC] Israel casts a golden calf and calls it God

You had told their fathers to enter and
possess.
24 So their descendants went in and pos-
sessed the land;
You subdued before them the Canaan-
ites dwelling in the land.
You delivered into their hands the kings
and peoples of the land,
to do with them as they wished.
25 They captured fortified cities and fertile
land
and took houses full of all goods,
wells already dug,
vineyards, olive groves, and fruit trees in
abundance.
So they ate and were filled;
they grew fat and delighted in Your
great goodness.
26 But they were disobedient and rebelled
against You;
they flung Your law behind their backs.
They killed Your prophets,
who had admonished them to return to
You.
They committed terrible blasphemies.
27 So You delivered them into the hands
of enemies who oppressed them,
and in their time of distress they cried
out to You.
From heaven You heard them,
and in Your great compassion You gave
them deliverers
who saved them from the hands of their
enemies.
28 But as soon as they had rest,
they again did evil in Your sight.
So You abandoned them to the hands of
their enemies,
who had dominion over them.
When they cried out to You again,
You heard from heaven,
and You delivered them many times
in Your compassion.
29 You admonished them to turn back to
Your law,
but they were arrogant and disobeyed
Your commandments.
They sinned against Your ordinances,
by which a man will live if he practices
them.
They turned a stubborn shoulder;
they stiffened their necks and would not
obey.
30 You were patient with them for many
years,
and Your Spirit admonished them
through Your prophets.
Yet they would not listen,
so You gave them into the hands of the
neighboring peoples.
31 But in Your great compassion,
You did not put an end to them;
nor did You forsake them,
for You are a gracious and compassion-
ate God.
32 So now, our God, the great and mighty
and awesome God
who keeps His gracious covenant,
do not view lightly all the hardship
that has come upon us,
and upon our kings and leaders,
our priests and prophets,
our ancestors and all Your people,
from the days of the kings of Assyria
until today.
33 You are just in all that has befallen us,
because You have acted faithfully,
while we have acted wickedly.
34 Our kings and leaders and priests and
fathers
did not obey Your law
or listen to Your commandments
and warnings that You gave them.
35 For even while they were in their king-
dom,
with the abundant goodness
that You had given them,
and in the spacious and fertile land
that You had set before them,
they would not serve You
or turn from their wicked ways.
36 So here we are today as slaves
in the land You gave our fathers to enjoy
its fruit and goodness—
here we are as slaves!
37 Its abundant harvest goes to the kings
You have set over us because of our
sins.
And they rule over our bodies and our
livestock as they please.

We are in great distress.

38 In view of all this, we make a binding
agreement, putting it in writing and seal-
ing it with the names of our leaders,
Levites, and priests."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

They sign a promise in writing. No marrying people who serve other gods, no shopping on the Sabbath, debts canceled every seventh year, and gifts to keep God's house running. We will not neglect the house of our God.

SIGNERS OF THE COVENANT

1 Now these were the ones who sealed the
document:

Nehemiah the governor, son of Hacaliah,
and also Zedekiah,
2 Seraiah, Azariah, Jeremiah,
3 Pashhur, Amariah, Malchijah,
4 Hattush, Shebaniah, Malluch,
5 Harim, Meremoth, Obadiah,
6 Daniel, Ginnethon, Baruch,
7 Meshullam, Abijah, Mijamin,
8 Maaziah, Bilgai, and Shemaiah.
These were the priests.

9 The Levites:

Jeshua son of Azaniah,
Binnui of the sons of Henadad, Kadmiel,
10 and their associates: Shebaniah, Hodiah,
Kelita, Pelaiah, Hanan,
11 Mica, Rehob, Hashabiah,
12 Zaccur, Sherebiah, Shebaniah,
13 Hodiah, Bani, and Beninu.

14 And the leaders of the people:

Parosh, Pahath-moab, Elam, Zattu, Bani,
15 Bunni, Azgad, Bebai,
16 Adonijah, Bigvai, Adin,
17 Ater, Hezekiah, Azzur,
18 Hodiah, Hashum, Bezai,
19 Hariph, Anathoth, Nebai,
20 Magpiash, Meshullam, Hezir,
21 Meshezabel, Zadok, Jaddua,
22 Pelatiah, Hanan, Anaiah,
23 Hoshea, Hananiah, Hasshub,
24 Hallohesh, Pilha, Shobek,
25 Rehum, Hashabnah, Maaseiah,
26 Ahijah, Hanan, Anan,
27 Malluch, Harim, and Baanah.

THE VOWS OF THE COVENANT

28 "The rest of the people—the priests,
Levites, gatekeepers, singers, temple ser-
vants, and all who had separated them-
selves from the people of the land to obey
the Law of God—along with their wives
and all their sons and daughters who are
able to understand, 29 hereby join with
their noble brothers and commit them-
selves with a sworn oath to follow the Law
of God given through His servant Moses
and to obey carefully all the command-
ments, ordinances, and statutes of Yah-
weh our Lord.

30 We will not give our daughters in mar-
riage to the people of the land, and we will
not take their daughters for our sons.

31 When the people of the land bring mer-
chandise or any kind of grain to sell on the
Sabbath day, we will not buy from them
on a Sabbath or holy day. Every seventh
year we will let the fields lie fallow and will
cancel every debt.

32 We also place ourselves under the
obligation to contribute an eighth of an
ounce of silver yearly for the service of
the house of our God: 33 for the show-
bread, for the regular grain offerings and
burnt offerings, for the Sabbath offerings,
for the New Moons and appointed feasts,
for the holy offerings, for the sin offerings
to make atonement for Israel, and for all
the duties of the house of our God.

34 We have cast lots among the priests,
Levites, and people for the donation of
wood by our families at the appointed
times each year. They are to bring it to the
house of our God to burn on the altar of
Yahweh our God, as it is written in the
Law.

35 We will also bring the firstfruits of our
land and of every fruit tree to the house of
Yahweh year by year. 36 And we will bring
the firstborn of our sons and our live-
stock, as it is written in the Law, and will

NEH 10:1 [NOTE] SIGNED AND SEALED. The leaders put their seals on a written promise, 9:38. Nehemiah signs first.

NEH 10:34 [NOTE] THE WOOD OFFERING. The altar fire must never go out, Leviticus 6:13. Families took turns bringing the wood.

bring the firstborn of our herds and flocks to the house of our God, to the priests who minister in the house of our God.

37 Moreover, we will bring to the priests at the storerooms of the house of our God the firstfruits of our dough, of our grain offerings, of the fruit of all our trees, and of our new wine and oil. A tenth of our produce belongs to the Levites, so that they shall receive tithes in all the towns where we labor. 38 A priest of Aaron's line is to accompany the Levites when they collect the tenth, and the Levites are to bring a tenth of these tithes to the storerooms of the treasury in the house of our God. 39 For the Israelites and the Levites are to bring the contributions of grain, new wine, and oil to the storerooms where the articles of the sanctuary are kept and where the ministering priests, the gatekeepers, and the singers stay.

Thus we will not neglect the house of our God."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Jerusalem needs people, so they cast lots, and one family in ten moves into the city. The chapter lists who lived in Jerusalem and who lived in the towns around it.

JERUSALEM'S NEW SETTLERS

1 Now the leaders of the people settled in Jerusalem, and the rest of the people cast lots to bring one out of ten to live in the holy city of Jerusalem, while the remaining nine were to dwell in their own towns. 2 And the people blessed all the men who volunteered to live in Jerusalem.

3 These are the heads of the provinces who settled in Jerusalem. (In the villages of Judah, however, each lived on his own property in their towns—the Israelites, priests, Levites, temple servants, and descendants of Solomon's servants— 4 while some of the descendants of Judah and Benjamin settled in Jerusalem.)

From the descendants of Judah:

Athaiah son of Uzziah, the son of Zechariah, the son of Amariah, the son of Shephatiah, the son of Mahalalel, a descendant of Perez; 5 and Maaseiah son of Baruch, the son of Col-hozeh, the son of Hazaiah, the son of Adaiah, the son of Joiarib, the son of Zechariah, a descendant of Shelah. 6 The descendants of Perez who settled in Jerusalem totaled 468 men of valor.

7 From the descendants of Benjamin:

Sallu son of Meshullam, the son of Joed, the son of Pedaiah, the son of Kolaiah, the son of Maaseiah, the son of Ithiel, the son of Jeshaiah; 8 and his followers Gabbai and Sallai—928 men. 9 Joel son of Zichri was the officer over them, and Judah son of Hassenuah was over the Second District of the city.

10 From the priests:

Jedaiah son of Joiarib; Jachin; 11 Seraiah son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the chief official of the house of God; 12 and their associates who did the work at the temple—822 men;

Adaiah son of Jeroham, the son of Pelaliah, the son of Amzi, the son of Zechariah, the son of Pashhur, the son of Malchijah; 13 and his associates, the leaders of families—242 men;

Amashai son of Azarel, the son of Ahzai, the son of Meshillemoth, the son of Immer; 14 and his associates—128 mighty men of valor. Zabdiel son of Haggedolim was their overseer.

15 From the Levites:

Shemaiah son of Hasshub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Bunni; 16 Shabbethai and Jozabad, two leaders of the Levites, who supervised the work outside the house of God; 17 Mattaniah son of Mica, the son of Zabdi, the son of Asaph, who led in thanksgiving and prayer; Bakbukiah, second among his associates; and Abda son of Shammua, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun. 18 The Levites in the holy city totaled 284.

19 And the gatekeepers:

NEH 11:1 [NOTE] ONE IN TEN. They cast lots, and one family in ten moved into Jerusalem. The people blessed those who volunteered, 11:2.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Akkub, Talmon, and their associates, who kept watch at the gates—172 men.

RESIDENTS OUTSIDE JERUSALEM

20 The rest of the Israelites, with the priests and Levites, were in all the villages of Judah, each on his own inheritance. 21 The temple servants lived on the hill of Ophel, with Ziha and Gishpa over them.

22 Now the overseer of the Levites in Jerusalem was Uzzi son of Bani, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Mica. He was one of Asaph's descendants, who were the singers in charge of the service of the house of God. 23 For there was a command from the king concerning the singers, an ordinance regulating their daily activities. 24 Pethahiah son of Meshezabel, a descendant of Zerah son of Judah, was the king's agent in every matter concerning the people.

25 As for the villages with their fields, some of the people of Judah lived in Kiriath-arba, Dibon, Jekabzeel, and their villages; 26 in Jeshua, Moladah, and Beth-pelet; 27 in Hazar-shual; in Beersheba and its villages; 28 in Ziklag; in Meconah and its villages; 29 in En-rimmon, Zorah, Jarmuth, 30 Zanoah, Adullam, and their villages; in Lachish and its fields; and in Azekah and its villages. So they settled from Beersheba all the way to the Valley of Hinnom.

31 The descendants of Benjamin from Geba lived in Michmash, Aija, and Bethel with its villages; 32 in Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah, 33 Hazor, Ramah, Gittaim, 34 Hadid, Zeboim, Neballat, 35 Lod, and Ono; and in the Valley of the Craftsmen.

36 And some divisions of the Levites of Judah settled in Benjamin.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Lists of priests and Levites, and then a giant party. Two huge choirs march on top of the wall in opposite directions and meet at the temple. The noise of the celebration is heard far away.

THE PRIESTS AND LEVITES WHO RETURNED

1 Now these are the priests and Levites who went up with Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and with Jeshua:

Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra,
2 Amariah, Malluch, Hattush,
3 Shecaniah, Rehum, Meremoth,
4 Iddo, Ginnethon, Abijah,
5 Mijamin, Maadiah, Bilgah,
6 Shemaiah, Joiarib, Jedaiah,
7 Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, and Jedaiah.

These were the leaders of the priests and their associates in the days of Jeshua.

8 The Levites were Jeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah, and Mattaniah, who, with his associates, led the songs of thanksgiving. 9 Bakbukiah and Unni, their associates, stood across from them in the services.

10 Jeshua was the father of Joiakim,
Joiakim was the father of Eliashib,
Eliashib was the father of Joiada,
11 Joiada was the father of Jonathan,
and Jonathan was the father of Jaddua.

12 In the days of Joiakim, these were the heads of the priestly families:

of the family of Seraiah, Meraiah;
of Jeremiah, Hananiah;
13 of Ezra, Meshullam;
of Amariah, Jehohanan;
14 of Malluchi, Jonathan;
of Shebaniah, Joseph;
15 of Harim, Adna;
of Meraioth, Helkai;
16 of Iddo, Zechariah;
of Ginnethon, Meshullam;
17 of Abijah, Zichri;
of Miniamin and of Moadiah, Piltai;
18 of Bilgah, Shammua;
of Shemaiah, Jonathan;
19 of Joiarib, Mattenai;
of Jedaiah, Uzzi;
20 of Sallai, Kallai;
of Amok, Eber;
21 of Hilkiah, Hashabiah;
and of Jedaiah, Nethanel.

NEH 12:1 [NOTE] ZERUBBABEL. The leader of the first return, about 90 years earlier. He is in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:12 to 13, so his name is underlined.

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

22 In the days of Eliashib, Joiada, Johanan,
and Jaddua, during the reign of Darius the
Persian, the heads of the families of the
Levites and priests were recorded.
23 As for the descendants of Levi, the fam-
ily heads up to the days of Johanan son
of Eliashib were recorded in the Book of
the Chronicles. 24 The leaders of the
Levites were Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and
Jeshua son of Kadmiel, along with their
associates, who stood across from them
to give praise and thanksgiving as one
section alternated with the other, as pre-
scribed by David the man of God.
25 Mattaniah, Bakbukiah, Obadiah,
Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub were
gatekeepers who guarded the storerooms
at the gates. 26 They served in the days of
Joiakim son of Jeshua, the son of
Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the
governor and Ezra the priest and scribe.

THE DEDICATION OF THE WALL

27 At the dedication of the wall of
Jerusalem, the Levites were sought out
from all their homes and brought to
Jerusalem to celebrate the joyous dedica-
tion with thanksgiving and singing, ac-
companied by cymbals, harps, and lyres.
28 The singers were also assembled from
the region around Jerusalem, from the vil-
lages of the Netophathites, 29 from Beth-
gilgal, and from the fields of Geba and
Azmaveth, for they had built villages for
themselves around Jerusalem. 30 After the
priests and Levites had purified them-
selves, they purified the people, the
gates, and the wall.
31 Then I brought the leaders of Judah up
on the wall, and I appointed two great
thanksgiving choirs. One was to proceed
along the top of the wall to the right, to-
ward the Dung Gate. 32 Hoshaiah and half
the leaders of Judah followed, 33 along
with Azariah, Ezra, Meshullam, 34 Judah,
Benjamin, Shemaiah, Jeremiah, 35 and
some of the priests with trumpets, and
also Zechariah son of Jonathan, the son
of Shemaiah, the son of Mattaniah, the
son of Micaiah, the son of Zaccur, the son
of Asaph, 36 and his associates—Shema-
iah, Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel,
Judah, and Hanani—with the musical in-
struments prescribed by David the man of
God. Ezra the scribe led the procession.
37 At the Fountain Gate they went directly
up the steps of the City of David on the
ascent to the wall and passed above the
house of David to the Water Gate on the
east.
38 The second thanksgiving choir pro-
ceeded to the left, and I followed it with
half the people along the top of the wall,
past the Tower of the Ovens to the Broad
Wall, 39 over the Gate of Ephraim, the Je-
shanah Gate, the Fish Gate, the Tower of
Hananel, and the Tower of the Hundred,
as far as the Sheep Gate. And they
stopped at the Gate of the Guard.
40 The two thanksgiving choirs then stood
in the house of God, as did I, along with
the half of the officials accompanying me,
41 as well as the priests with their
trumpets—Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin,
Micaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, and
Hananiah— 42 and also Maaseiah, Shema-
iah, Eleazar, Uzzi, Jehohanan, Malchijah,
Elam, and Ezer. Then the choirs sang out
under the direction of Jezrahiah.
43 On that day they offered great sacri-
fices, rejoicing because God had given
them great joy. The women and children
also rejoiced, so that the joy of Jerusalem
was heard from afar.

PROVISIONS FOR TEMPLE WORSHIP

44 And on that same day men were ap-
pointed over the rooms that housed the
supplies, contributions, firstfruits, and
tithes. The portions specified by the Law
for the priests and Levites were gathered

NEH 12:22 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Elephantine Papyri
NEH 12:22 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Darius II of Persia is named in his own records, and Elephantine papyri are dated by his years, see The Elephantine Papyri Field Notes page, p.793
NEH 12:22 [NOTE] DARIUS THE PERSIAN. Most think this is Darius II, 423 to 404 BC. A letter from 407 BC names Johanan as high priest. See The Elephantine Papyri Field Notes page, p.793. Josephus says Jaddua was high priest when Alexander the Great came, 332 BC, so some think this is Darius III.

NEH 12:31 [NOTE] TWO CHOIRS. One choir marched to the right and one to the left, on top of the wall, and they met at the temple.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

into these storerooms from the fields of the villages, because Judah rejoiced over the priests and Levites who were serving.

45 They performed the service of their God and the service of purification, along with the singers and gatekeepers, as David and his son Solomon had prescribed. 46 For long ago, in the days of David and Asaph, there were directors for the singers and for the songs of praise and thanksgiving to God.

47 So in the days of Zerubbabel and Nehemiah, all Israel contributed the daily portions for the singers and gatekeepers. They also set aside daily portions for the Levites, and the Levites set aside daily portions for the descendants of Aaron.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Nehemiah goes back to the king for a while. When he returns, it is a mess. Tobiah lives in a temple storeroom, the Levites are not paid, people sell on the Sabbath, and men have married women who serve other gods. Nehemiah throws out Tobiah's furniture, locks the gates and even pulls out some hair. Remember me, O my God.

FOREIGNERS EXCLUDED

1 At that time the Book of Moses was read aloud in the hearing of the people, and in it they found the passage stating that no Ammonite or Moabite should ever enter the assembly of God, 2 because they had not met the Israelites with food and water, but had hired Balaam to call down a curse against them (although our God had turned the curse into a blessing).

3 As soon as the people heard this law, they excluded from Israel all of foreign descent.

THE TEMPLE CLEANSED

4 Now before this, Eliashib the priest, a relative of Tobiah, had been put in charge of the storerooms of the house of our God 5 and had prepared for Tobiah a large room where they had previously stored the grain offerings, the frankincense, the temple articles, and the tithes of grain, new wine, and oil prescribed for the Levites, singers, and gatekeepers, along with the contributions for the priests.

6 While all this was happening, I was not in Jerusalem, because I had returned to Artaxerxes king of Babylon in the thirty-second year of his reign. Some time later I obtained leave from the king 7 to return to Jerusalem. Then I discovered the evil that Eliashib had done on behalf of Tobiah by providing him a room in the courts of the house of God.

8 And I was greatly displeased and threw all of Tobiah's household goods out of the room. 9 Then I ordered that the rooms be purified, and I had the articles of the house of God restored to them, along with the grain offerings and frankincense.

TITHES RESTORED // LEVITICUS 27:30–34; DEUTERONOMY 14:22–29; DEUTERONOMY 26:1–15

10 I also learned that because the portions for the Levites had not been given to them, all the Levites and singers responsible for performing the service had gone back to their own fields. 11 So I rebuked the officials and asked, "Why has the house of God been neglected?"

Then I gathered the Levites and singers together and stationed them at their posts, 12 and all Judah brought a tenth of the grain, new wine, and oil into the storerooms. 13 I appointed as treasurers over the storerooms Shelemiah the priest, Zadok the scribe, and Pedaiah of the Levites, with Hanan son of Zaccur, the son of Mattaniah, to assist them, because they were considered trustworthy. They were responsible for distributing the supplies to their fellow Levites.

14 Remember me for this, O my God, and do not blot out my deeds of loving devotion for the house of my God and for its services.

NEH 13:1 [NOTE] THE LAW READ. Deuteronomy 23:3 to 6. The verse reports what the book says but does not quote God, so it stays black. Ruth was a Moabite who joined Israel's God; see A Moabite in Jesus' Family? in Ruth, p.423.

NEH 13:2 [NOTE] BALAAM. See Balaam in Numbers, p.260.

NEH 13:6 [NOTE] BACK TO THE KING. The 32nd year of Artaxerxes was 433 BC. How long Nehemiah was gone is not said.

THE SABBATH RESTORED // JEREMIAH 17:19–27

15 In those days I saw people in Judah
treading winepresses on the Sabbath and
bringing in grain and loading it on don-
keys, along with wine, grapes, and figs.
All kinds of goods were being brought into
Jerusalem on the Sabbath day. So I
warned them against selling food on that
day. 16 Additionally, men of Tyre who lived
there were importing fish and all kinds of
merchandise and selling them on the Sab-
bath to the people of Judah in Jerusalem.
17 Then I rebuked the nobles of Judah and
asked, "What is this evil you are
doing—profaning the Sabbath day? 18 Did
not your forefathers do the same things,
so that our God brought all this disaster
on us and on this city? And now you are
rekindling His wrath against Israel by pro-
faning the Sabbath!"
19 When the evening shadows began to fall
on the gates of Jerusalem, just before the
Sabbath, I ordered that the gates be shut
and not opened until after the Sabbath. I
posted some of my servants at the gates
so that no load could enter on the Sab-
bath day.
20 Once or twice, the merchants and those
who sell all kinds of goods camped out-
side Jerusalem, 21 but I warned them,
"Why are you camping in front of the
wall? If you do it again, I will lay hands on
you." From that time on, they did not re-
turn on the Sabbath. 22 Then I instructed
the Levites to purify themselves and
guard the gates in order to keep the Sab-
bath day holy.

Remember me for this as well, O my God,
and show me mercy according to Your
abundant loving devotion.

INTERMARRIAGE FORBIDDEN // EZRA 9:1–4

23 In those days I also saw Jews who had
married women from Ashdod, Ammon,
and Moab. 24 Half of their children spoke
the language of Ashdod or of the other
peoples, but could not speak the lan-
guage of Judah. 25 I rebuked them and
called down curses on them. I beat some
of these men and pulled out their hair.

Then I made them take an oath before
God and said, "You must not give your
daughters in marriage to their sons or
take their daughters as wives for your
sons or for yourselves! 26 Did not King
Solomon of Israel sin in matters like this?
There was not a king like him among
many nations, and he was loved by his
God, who made him king over all
Israel—yet foreign women drew him into
sin. 27 Must we now hear that you too are
doing all this terrible evil and acting un-
faithfully against our God by marrying for-
eign women?"

28 Even one of the sons of Jehoiada son of
Eliashib the high priest had become a
son-in-law to Sanballat the Horonite.
Therefore I drove him away from me.
29 Remember them, O my God, because
they have defiled the priesthood and the
covenant of the priesthood and of the
Levites.
30 Thus I purified the priests and Levites
from everything foreign, and I assigned
specific duties to each of the priests and
Levites. 31 I also arranged for contributions
of wood at the appointed times, and for
the firstfruits.

Remember me, O my God, with favor.

■ **NEH 13:23 [NOTE]** THE FOREIGN WIVES AGAIN. Ezra faced the same problem almost 30 years earlier. See The Foreign Wives in Ezra, p.785, and the Big Question Why Pull Out Their Hair?

■ **NEH 13:26 [NOTE]** SOLOMON. See Solomon's Wisdom and 700 Wives in 1 Kings, p.564.

■ **NEH 13:28 [NOTE]** SANBALLAT'S SON IN LAW. Josephus tells of a priest named Manasseh who married Sanballat's daughter and became priest of the Samaritan temple on Mount Gerizim. He puts it about 100 years later. Some think he mixed up two stories. Others think there was a later Sanballat, since old papyri name more than one.

■ **NEH 13:31 [NOTE]** REMEMBER ME. Nehemiah ends his book the way he prayed all through it, 5:19, 13:14 and 13:22.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY PULL OUT THEIR HAIR?

What Happened

NEHEMIAH 13:23 TO 27 · EZRA 9:3 · DEUTERONOMY 25:1 TO 3

WHAT HAPPENED

Men of Judah had married women from Ashdod, Ammon and Moab, and half their children could not even speak the language of Judah, 13:23 to 24. Nehemiah says, I rebuked them, cursed them, beat some of them and pulled out their hair, 13:25.

A PUBLIC SHAME

Shaving or pulling out a man's beard shamed him in front of everyone, 2 Samuel 10:4 to 5 and Isaiah 50:6.

EZRA DID IT TOO, KIND OF

Almost 30 years earlier Ezra pulled out his OWN hair when he heard the same news, Ezra 9:3. Nehemiah pulled out theirs.

THE POINT

Then he made them swear not to do it again, and he reminded them of Solomon, whom foreign wives led to other gods, 13:25 to 27.

Every View

EZRA 7:26 · GALATIANS 6:1 · 2 TIMOTHY 2:24 TO 25

VIEW 1: A GOVERNOR DOING HIS JOB

Nehemiah was the king's governor and judge. The law allowed a judge to have a guilty man beaten, Deuteronomy 25:1 to 3, and the Persian king had given Ezra power to punish people who broke God's law, Ezra 7:26. He was saving a tiny people from losing its faith.

VIEW 2: RIGHT CAUSE, TOO FAR

Others say he was right about the danger but too rough. Ezra wept and prayed; Nehemiah hit. The Bible reports what he did without always saying it was right.

VIEW 3: AN HONEST DIARY

Many love this book because Nehemiah does not clean himself up. He tells it as it happened, temper and all, and asks God to remember him, 13:31.

WHAT ABOUT CHRISTIANS?

Nobody gets beaten in church. Paul says to restore someone gently, Galatians 6:1, and to correct with kindness, 2 Timothy 2:24 to 25. See also The Foreign Wives in Ezra, p.785.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

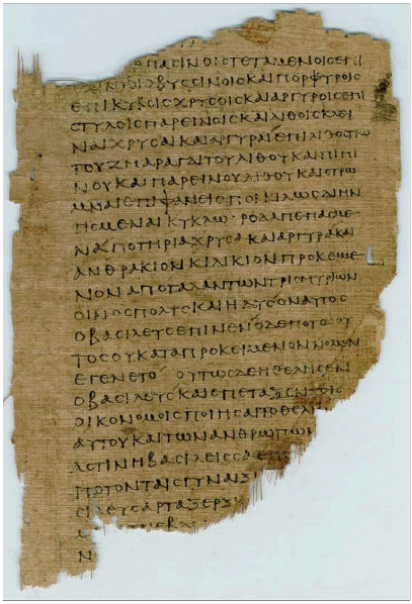
Nehemiah cared about God's people more than about being liked.

BOOK 17 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · HISTORY

ESTHER

For Such a Time as This

AUTHOR	Not named. The Talmud says the Men of the Great Assembly, Jewish leaders after the exile, wrote it down. Some think Mordecai wrote part of it, since he recorded these events, 9:20.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	From Xerxes' party in his third year, about 483 BC, to the first Purim in his twelfth year, about 473 BC.
DATE	Many think it was written not long after the events, in the 400s BC. Others think it was written in the 300s BC or later.
WRITTEN TO	Jews scattered all over the Persian empire, far from Jerusalem.
KEY VERSE	Esther 4:14. And who knows if perhaps you have come to the kingdom for such a time as this?



THE OLDEST COPY OF ESTHER
A page of Papyrus 967, copied in Greek about 200 AD or a little later and now in Cologne, Germany. It holds Esther 1:6 to 10: you can read the gold and silver couches of the king's party, and near the bottom the Greek calls the king Artaxerxes.

Esther is the only book of the Hebrew Bible missing from the Dead Sea Scrolls. The oldest copies are in Greek: this papyrus, then Codex Vaticanus and Codex Sinaiticus from the 300s AD. The Aleppo Codex, a Hebrew Bible from about 930 AD, lost its Esther pages in the 1900s, so the oldest complete Hebrew copy is the Leningrad Codex, 1008 AD. Photo University of Cologne, Papyrus Collection.

Historical Setting

The citadel of Susa, a royal city of the Persian kings in what is now Iran. It happens between Ezra 6 and Ezra 7: the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, but most Jews never went home. They lived all over an empire of 127 provinces, from India to Cush.

What Was Going Wrong

A KING RULED BY MOODS. Xerxes threw out his queen while drunk, 1:10 to 22, and signed away a whole people without asking who they were, 3:10 to 11.
HATE WITH A PLAN. Haman wanted every Jew dead, young and old, women and children, on one day, 3:6 and 3:13.
HIDING. Esther kept her people secret, 2:10. Being a Jew could cost your life.

The Idiot Proof Summary

A Persian king throws out his queen and holds a beauty search. A Jewish orphan named Esther becomes queen, while her cousin Mordecai quietly saves the king's life. Then the king's top man, Haman, gets angry that Mordecai will not bow and plots to wipe out every Jew in the empire. Esther risks her life to go to the king uninvited. A sleepless night, a forgotten good deed and two dinners turn everything around: Haman is hanged on his own gallows, the Jews are allowed to fight back, and their worst day becomes the holiday of Purim. God is never named, but nothing in this story is an accident.

Esther at a Glance

CH 1	**THE QUEEN WHO SAID NO** Vashti is out.
CH 2	**A NEW QUEEN** An orphan wins the crown.
CH 3	**HAMAN'S PLOT** One man's pride, one day of death.
CH 4	**SUCH A TIME AS THIS** If I perish, I perish.
CH 5 to 7	**TWO DINNERS AND A TWIST** A sleepless king; Haman hangs.
CH 8 to 9:19	**THE TABLES TURN** The Jews fight back and win.
CH 9:20 to 10	**PURIM** A party every year.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ESTHER 4:16 Esther risked her life to stand between her people and death. Jesus did more: He gave His life for us while we were still sinners, Romans 5:8.

ESTHER 4:11 AND 5:2 No one could come to the Persian king without being called. Because of Jesus, we can come boldly to God's throne of grace, Hebrews 4:16.

ESTHER 7:10 Haman's plan to kill turned back on him. At the cross, the enemy's worst plan became his own defeat, Colossians 2:15.

GOD'S NAMES IN ESTHER
None. The Hebrew book of Esther never names God, not even once. The Greek Esther

adds prayers that name Him more than 50 times. See the Big Questions Where Is God in Esther? and The Greek Esther.

What to Watch for in Esther

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	6:13, 7:10
THE HEART (2)	5:9, 6:6
ARCHAEOLOGY (4)	1:2, 2:5, 3:7, 3:13
NOTABLE (3)	4:14, 4:16, 6:1
GOD SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

NO RED LETTERS
The Hebrew book of Esther never names God, and no one quotes Him, so there are no red letters in this book. Yet His hand is everywhere. See Where Is God in Esther?

NOT IN THE DEAD SEA SCROLLS
Esther is the only book of the Hebrew Bible with no copy among the Dead Sea Scrolls.

STILL CELEBRATED
Jews still keep Purim every year, 9:26 to 28, about 2,500 years later.

How Did It Turn Out?

The Jews lived, Haman's family fell, and Mordecai became second to the king. Purim became a yearly party. About 15 years later, in 458 BC, Ezra led another group home to Jerusalem, Ezra 7.

MAP · ESTHER 1 · EZRA 1 TO 8

The Persian Empire

From India to Cush, the biggest empire the world had seen



127 PROVINCES King Ahasuerus, called Xerxes in Greek, ruled 127 provinces from India to Cush, Esther 1:1. Cush is the land south of Egypt.

GOING HOME Cyrus let the Jews go home in 538 BC, Ezra 1:1 to 4. Ezra led another group about 458 BC, Ezra 7 to 8, and Nehemiah came in 445 BC.

SUSA Esther lived in the palace at Susa, Esther 2:8. Archaeologists have dug up the palace of Darius and Xerxes there.

ONE LAW FOR ALL Royal letters went out by fast horses to every province in its own language, Esther 8:9 to 10. Persia ran the best road system of its day.

The empire shown is about 480 BC, under Xerxes. Borders are approximate.

ARCHAEOLOGY

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

King Xerxes throws a party that lasts six months, then a seven day one with free drinks. On day seven he is drunk and orders Queen Vashti to come and show off her beauty. She says no. His advisers panic that every wife in the empire will copy her, so Vashti is out.

XERXES' ROYAL FEAST

1 This is what happened in the days of
Xerxes, who reigned over 127 provinces
from India to Cush. 2 In those days King
Xerxes sat on his royal throne in the
citadel of Susa.

3 In the third year of his reign, Xerxes held
a feast for all his officials and servants.
The military leaders of Persia and Media
were there, along with the nobles and
princes of the provinces. 4 And for a full
180 days he displayed the glorious riches
of his kingdom and the magnificent splen-
dor of his greatness.

5 At the end of this time, in the garden
court of the royal palace, the king held a
seven-day feast for all the people in the
citadel of Susa, from the least to the
greatest. 6 Hangings of white and blue
linen were fastened with cords of fine
white and purple material to silver rings
on the marble pillars. Gold and silver
couches were arranged on a mosaic
pavement of porphyry, marble, mother-
of-pearl, and other costly stones.

7 Beverages were served in an array of
goblets of gold, each with a different de-
sign, and the royal wine flowed freely, ac-
cording to the king's bounty. 8 By order of
the king, no limit was placed on the drink-
ing, and every official of his household
was to serve each man whatever he de-
sired.

■ **EST 1:1 [NOTE]** XERXES. The Hebrew calls him Aha-suerus. He ruled Persia from 486 to 465 BC. His empire reached from India, what is now Pakistan, to Cush, what is now Sudan.
■ **EST 1:1 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Xerxes Field Notes page in Ezra, p.773.
■ **EST 1:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The palace of Darius and Xerxes at Susa was dug up by French teams, with its glazed brick archers now in the Louvre, see The Palace at Susa Field Notes page, p.821→ FIELD NOTES p.821
■ **EST 1:3 [NOTE]** THE THIRD YEAR. About 483 BC. Some think this long feast was also a war council, because Xerxes was getting ready to invade Greece.

QUEEN VASHTI'S REFUSAL

9 Queen Vashti also gave a banquet for the
women in the royal palace of King Xerxes.

10 On the seventh day, when the king's
heart was merry with wine, he ordered the
seven eunuchs who served him—Mehu-
man, Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, Abagtha,
Zethar, and Carkas— 11 to bring Queen
Vashti before him, wearing her royal
crown, to display her beauty to the people
and officials. For she was beautiful to be-
hold.

12 Queen Vashti, however, refused to come
at the king's command brought by his eu-
nuchs. And the king became furious, and
his anger burned within him.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

IS ESTHER HISTORY?

What Fits and What Puzzles

ESTHER 1:1 TO 3 · 2:16 · 2:23 · 10:2

WHAT FITS

Xerxes was real, and his palace at Susa was real. The book knows Persian words, Persian customs, the royal post and the king's record of men who helped him, which Herodotus also mentions. Its dates fit Xerxes' reign, with a four year gap while he was at war with Greece.

A NAME ON A TABLET

A clay tablet names Marduka, an official in Persian times, and some link him to Mordecai. See the Field Notes page Mordecai on a Tablet?, p.824

THE PUZZLES

Herodotus names Xerxes' queen Amestris, not Vashti or Esther. He also says Persian kings married only from seven noble families. No Persian record mentions Haman or a law that could never be undone. No record outside the Bible tells of the fighting in chapter 9.

MORDECAI'S AGE

2:6 can sound like Mordecai himself went into exile in 597 BC, which would make him over 100. Many read it as being about his great grandfather.

■ **EST 1:10 [NOTE]** MERRY WITH WINE. The Greek writer Herodotus says Persians talked over big decisions while drunk, then checked them again the next day sober.
■ **EST 1:12 [NOTE]** WHY VASHTI SAID NO. The book does not say. Many think she would not be shown off in front of a room of drunk men.

Every View
ESTHER 9:20 TO 32 · 2 MACCABEES 15:36

VIEW 1: TRUE HISTORY
Jews and Christians through the centuries, and the writer Josephus about 93 AD, read it as history. Many scholars today agree. They say Herodotus did not know everything, Persian kings had many wives, and some think Vashti is Amestris under another name, though that is hard to prove.

VIEW 2: TRUE, TOLD WITH STYLE
Others think the main events really happened, but the story is told with a storyteller's flair, like the big numbers and the perfectly timed twists.

VIEW 3: A STORY BEHIND A HOLIDAY
Many scholars think it is a historical novel, written to explain why Jews keep Purim, set in a real time and place.

PURIM IS OLD
Whatever the view, Purim was kept long ago. 2 Maccabees 15:36, written about 100 BC, calls Purim Mordecai's Day.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Most agree the writer knew a lot about the Persian court, and the book has given hope to Jews facing hate for more than 2,000 years.

QUEEN VASHTI DEPOSED

13 Then the king consulted the wise men
who knew the times, for it was customary
for him to confer with the experts in law
and justice. 14 His closest advisors were
Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish,
Meres, Marsena, and Memucan, the
seven princes of Persia and Media who
had personal access to the king and
ranked highest in the kingdom.
15 "According to law," he asked, "what
should be done with Queen Vashti, since
she refused to obey the command of King
Xerxes delivered by the eunuchs?"
16 And in the presence of the king and his
princes, Memucan replied, "Queen Vashti
has wronged not only the king, but all the
princes and the peoples in all the
provinces of King Xerxes. 17 For the con-
duct of the queen will become known to
all women, causing them to despise their
husbands and say, 'King Xerxes ordered
Queen Vashti to be brought before him,
but she did not come.'
18 This very day the noble women of Per-
sia and Media who have heard about the
queen's conduct will say the same thing to
all the king's officials, resulting in much
contempt and wrath.
19 So if it pleases the king, let him issue a
royal decree, and let it be recorded in the
laws of Persia and Media so that it cannot
be repealed, that Vashti shall never again
enter the presence of King Xerxes, and
that her royal position shall be given to a
woman better than she. 20 The edict the
king issues will be heard throughout his
vast kingdom—and so all women, from
the least to the greatest, will honor their
husbands."
21 The king and his princes were pleased
with this counsel; so the king did as
Memucan advised. 22 He sent letters to all
the provinces of the kingdom, to each
province in its own script and to each
people in their own language, proclaiming
that every man should be master of his
own household.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
The king holds a royal beauty search. A Jewish orphan named Esther, raised by her cousin Mordecai, is taken to the palace. She keeps her family secret, wins everyone over and becomes queen. Mordecai overhears two guards plotting to kill the king and saves his life. It gets written down and forgotten.

SEEKING VASHTI'S SUCCESSOR

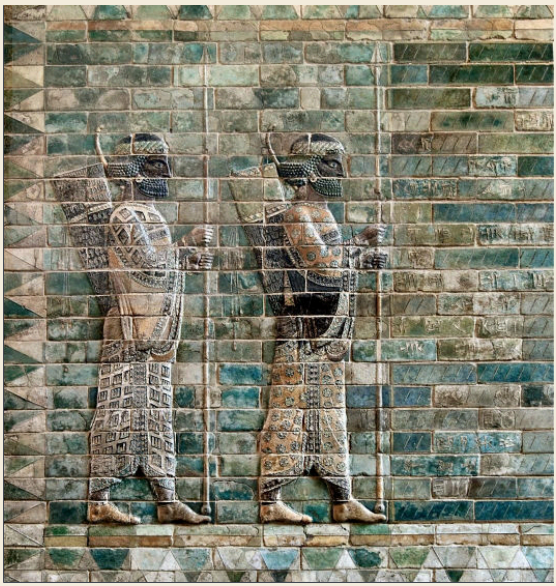
1 Some time later, when the anger of King
Xerxes had subsided, he remembered
Vashti and what she had done, and what
had been decreed against her.
2 Then the king's attendants proposed,
"Let a search be made for beautiful young
virgins for the king, 3 and let the king ap-
point commissioners in each province of
his kingdom to assemble all the beautiful
young women into the harem at the
citadel of Susa. Let them be placed under

EST 1:19 [NOTE] CANNOT BE REPEALED. A law of the Persians and Medes could not be undone, Daniel 6:8. That becomes the big problem in chapter 8.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE PALACE AT SUSA

ESTHER 1:2 · 1:5 TO 6 · 2:3 · 4:11 · 5:1 · NEHEMIAH 1:1 · DANIEL 8:2



Two archers of the king's guard in glazed brick, from the palace of Darius at Susa, about 510 BC. Louvre Museum, Paris. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of the royal city of Susa, in southwest Iran. Darius the Great built a huge palace on its high mound, and his son Xerxes, the king in Esther, lived there. The Bible calls it the citadel of Susa, 1:2.

HOW OLD IT IS

Susa is one of the oldest cities in the world, lived in for thousands of years. Darius built his palace there soon after he became king in 522 BC. The brick archers are from about 510 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

William Loftus first dug there in 1851. Marcel and Jane Dieulafoy, a French husband and wife, dug in the 1880s and shipped the glazed brick archers to the Louvre in Paris. French teams kept digging until 1979.

THE ARCHERS

Life size soldiers in colored glazed brick march along the walls, each with a spear, a bow and a quiver. Many think they show the king's own guard.

BUILT BY THE WHOLE EMPIRE

Darius had a list carved in stone of what built his palace: cedar from Lebanon, gold from Sardis and Bactria, silver and ebony from Egypt, ivory from Cush and India, and workers from many nations.

THE GREAT HALL

The king's audience hall had 36 stone columns about 65 feet tall. A later king wrote that it burned in the days of Artaxerxes I and that he rebuilt it. At the site, mostly the column bases are left.

THE KING'S FEAST

Esther 1:6 tells of couches of gold and silver. Herodotus says that when the Greeks won in 479 BC, they found couches of gold and silver in the tent of his general Mardonius, filled with things Xerxes had left him.

WHERE THE STORY HAPPENED

The book knows the place: the king's gate, the inner court, the garden and the women's houses, 2:3, 2:14, 2:19, 5:1 and 7:7. Nehemiah served in the same palace, Nehemiah 1:1, and Daniel saw himself at Susa in a vision, Daniel 8:2.

SUSA TODAY

It is the town of Shush, Iran. Since 2015 it is a World Heritage Site.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The palace is real, and so is Xerxes. No find at Susa names Esther or Mordecai.

ARCHAEOLOGY

the care of Hegai, the king's eunuch in charge of the women, and let them be given beauty treatments. 4 Then let the young woman who pleases the king become queen in place of Vashti."

This suggestion pleased the king, and he acted accordingly.

ESTHER FINDS FAVOR

5 Now there was at the citadel of Susa a Jewish man from the tribe of Benjamin named Mordecai son of Jair, the son of Shimei, the son of Kish. 6 He had been carried into exile from Jerusalem by Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon among those taken captive with Jeconiah king of Judah.

7 And Mordecai had brought up Hadassah (that is, Esther), the daughter of his uncle, because she did not have a father or mother. The young woman was lovely in form and appearance, and when her father and mother had died, Mordecai had taken her as his own daughter.

8 When the king's command and edict had been proclaimed, many young women gathered at the citadel of Susa under the care of Hegai. Esther was also taken to the palace and placed under the care of Hegai, the custodian of the women. 9 And the young woman pleased him and obtained his favor, so he quickly provided her with beauty treatments and the special diet. He assigned to her seven select maidservants from the palace and transferred her with them to the best place in the harem.

10 Esther did not reveal her people or her lineage, because Mordecai had instructed her not to do so. 11 And every day Mordecai would walk back and forth in front of the court of the harem to learn about Esther's welfare and what was happening to her.

12 In the twelve months before her turn to go to King Xerxes, the harem regulation required each young woman to receive beauty treatments with oil of myrrh for six months, and then with perfumes and cosmetics for another six months. 13 When the young woman would go to the king, she was given whatever she requested to take with her from the harem to the king's palace. 14 She would go there in the evening, and in the morning she would return to a second harem under the care of Shaashgaz, the king's eunuch in charge of the concubines. She would not return to the king unless he delighted in her and summoned her by name.

15 Now Esther was the daughter of Abihail, the uncle from whom Mordecai had adopted her as his own daughter. And when it was her turn to go to the king, she did not ask for anything except what Hegai, the king's trusted official in charge of the harem, had advised. And Esther found favor in the eyes of everyone who saw her.

16 She was taken to King Xerxes in the royal palace in the tenth month, the month of Tebeth, in the seventh year of his reign.

ESTHER BECOMES QUEEN

17 And the king loved Esther more than all the other women, and she found grace and favor in his sight more than all of the other virgins. So he placed the royal crown upon her head and made her queen in place of Vashti.

18 Then the king held a great banquet, Esther's banquet, for all his officials and servants. He proclaimed a tax holiday in the provinces and gave gifts worthy of the king's bounty.

EST 2:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A clay tablet names Marduka, an official in the days of Darius or Xerxes, see the Mordecai on a Tablet? Field Notes page, p.824 FIELD NOTES p.824

EST 2:5 [NOTE] MORDECAI. His name comes from Marduk, the chief god of Babylon. Jews in exile often had a local name. He was from Benjamin, the tribe of King Saul, whose father was also named Kish.

EST 2:6 [NOTE] CARRIED INTO EXILE. This was 597 BC, with King Jeconiah, 2 Kings 24:12 to 15. If it means Mordecai himself, he would be over 100 here, so many read it as his great grandfather Kish. See The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets in 2 Kings, p.662.

EST 2:7 [NOTE] HADASSAH AND ESTHER. Hadassah means myrtle, a sweet smelling bush. Esther may come from the Persian word for star.

EST 2:8 [NOTE] TAKEN. The word means she was taken. A young woman likely had no choice when the king's men came.

EST 2:16 [NOTE] THE SEVENTH YEAR. The month of Tebeth was about January 478 BC, four years after Vashti fell. In between, Xerxes invaded Greece and lost a great sea battle at Salamis in 480 BC.

ARCHAEOLOGY

19 When the virgins were assembled a second time, Mordecai was sitting at the king's gate. 20 Esther still had not revealed her lineage or her people, just as Mordecai had instructed. She obeyed Mordecai's command, as she had done under his care.

MORDECAI UNCOVERS A CONSPIRACY

21 In those days, while Mordecai was sitting at the king's gate, Bigthan and Teresh, two of the king's eunuchs who guarded the entrance, grew angry and conspired to assassinate King Xerxes.

22 When Mordecai learned of the plot, he reported it to Queen Esther, and she informed the king on Mordecai's behalf.

23 After the report had been investigated and verified, both officials were hanged on the gallows. And all this was recorded in the Book of the Chronicles in the presence of the king.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The king promotes Haman to the top job, and everyone must bow to him. Mordecai will not. Haman is so angry that he plots to kill every Jew in the empire. He casts lots to pick the day, offers the king a mountain of silver, and the order goes out. Then he and the king sit down for a drink.

HAMAN'S PLOT AGAINST THE JEWS

1 After these events, King Xerxes honored Haman son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, elevating him to a position above all the princes who were with him. 2 All the royal servants at the king's gate bowed down and paid homage to Haman, because the king had commanded that this be done for him. But Mordecai would not bow down or pay homage.

3 Then the royal servants at the king's gate asked Mordecai, "Why do you disobey the command of the king?"

4 Day after day they warned him, but he would not comply. So they reported it to Haman to see whether Mordecai's behavior would be tolerated, since he had told them he was a Jew.

5 When Haman saw that Mordecai would not bow down or pay him homage, he was filled with rage. 6 And when he learned the identity of Mordecai's people, he scorned the notion of laying hands on Mordecai alone. Instead, he sought to destroy all of Mordecai's people, the Jews, throughout the kingdom of Xerxes.

7 In the twelfth year of King Xerxes, in the first month, the month of Nisan, the Pur (that is, the lot) was cast before Haman to determine a day and month. And the lot fell on the twelfth month, the month of Adar.

8 Then Haman informed King Xerxes, "There is a certain people scattered and dispersed among the peoples of every province of your kingdom. Their laws are different from everyone else's, and they do not obey the king's laws. So it is not in the king's best interest to tolerate them. 9 If it pleases the king, let a decree be issued to destroy them, and I will deposit 375 tons of silver into the royal treasury to pay those who carry it out."

10 So the king removed the signet ring from his finger and gave it to Haman son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, the enemy of the Jews. 11 "Keep your money," said the king to Haman. "These people are given to you to do with them as you please."

■ **EST 2:23 [NOTE]** WRITTEN DOWN. Herodotus says Persian kings had the names of men who helped them written down as the king's benefactors. This record comes back in 6:1.

■ **EST 3:1 [NOTE]** HAMAN THE AGAGITE. Agag was the king of Amalek whom King Saul spared, 1 Samuel 15. Mordecai was from Benjamin, Saul's tribe, and had a forefather named Kish, the same name as Saul's father. Many see an old feud here. See The Amalekites in 1 Samuel, p.458.

■ **EST 3:2 [NOTE]** WHY WOULD HE NOT BOW? The book does not say. Jews bowed to kings, 2 Samuel 14:4, so many think it was because Haman was an Amalekite. In the Greek Esther, Mordecai prays that he would not bow to anyone but God, Addition C, Esther 13:12 to 14 in some Bibles.

■ **EST 3:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** An Assyrian clay cube from 833 BC calls itself a puru, a lot, the same word as Haman's Pur, see The Pur Field Notes box, p.825 FIELD NOTES p.825

■ **EST 3:7 [NOTE]** THE PUR. Haman cast lots to pick the day, and the lot fell almost a year away, on the month of Adar. That gave time for the rescue. The lot is cast into the lap, but its every decision is from Yahweh, Proverbs 16:33.

■ **EST 3:9 [NOTE]** 375 TONS OF SILVER. A huge fortune. In the Hebrew, the number here is 10,000. Many think Haman planned to pay it from the Jews' stolen goods, 3:13.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: DEBATED · IS THIS MORDECAI?

MORDECAI ON A TABLET?

ESTHER 2:5 · 2:19 · 2:21 · 3:2 · 10:3



Clay tablets from the royal records of Persepolis, in a study box at the Oriental Institute, Chicago. The Marduka tablet itself is not shown. Photo Pfa16, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small clay tablet written in Babylonian. It lists payments of silver and goods to Persian officials. One of them is Marduka, a scribe or accountant who worked for Ushtannu, the Persian governor over Babylon and the lands west of the Euphrates.

HOW OLD IT IS

The tablet has no date. Arthur Ungnad, who first studied it, put it late in the reign of Darius I or early in the reign of Xerxes, the king in Esther. Others point out that Ushtannu is known as governor about 521 to 516 BC, which would be earlier.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It was in the collection of Lord Amherst in England by 1904, and later went to a museum in Berlin. Where it was dug up is not known. Ungnad wrote about it in 1940 and 1941.

WHY PEOPLE GOT EXCITED

Ungnad said this Marduka made a trip to Susa, and he thought he could be Esther's cousin. It would be the first time Mordecai's name showed up outside the Bible.

THE OTHER SIDE

The scholar David Clines checked the tablet's words. It does say some silver came from Susa, but he says nothing shows Marduka ever went there. Marduka worked for the governor near Babylon, not at the palace in Susa. Marduka was a common name, from the god Marduk, so it could be a different man.

MORE MARDUKAS

Clay tablets from Persepolis, the Persian capital, name an official called Marduka about 30 times. They may be up to four different men, working for the king in the days of Darius and Xerxes. The photo shows tablets from that same archive.

AT THE KING'S GATE

In Esther, Mordecai sat at the king's gate, 2:19 and 2:21. Many think that means he was a royal official, the very kind of man these tablets name.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No tablet says Marduka was a Jew or that he raised a queen. It shows that men named Marduka really served the Persian kings, at the right time and in the right kind of job.

ARCHAEOLOGY

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE PUR

ESTHER 3:7 · 9:24 · 9:26 · PROVERBS 16:33



Four sides of the clay cube of Iahali, from Assur, about 833 BC. Each side is about an inch across. Yale Babylonian Collection, YBC 7058. Photo Yale Peabody Museum, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

A small clay cube with writing on four of its sides. In it, the cube calls itself a puru, an old word for a lot used in Assyria and Babylon. That is the same word as the Pur in Esther 3:7.

HOW OLD IT IS

It belonged to Iahali, the top official of the Assyrian king Shalmaneser III. His name was given to the year 833 BC, more than 350 years before Haman.

WHAT IT SAYS

It asks the gods Assur and Adad to let his lot fall, so that his year will be a good one and the harvest of Assyria will grow.

HOW IT WAS USED

Each year the Assyrians picked a top official to give his name to the year. Some scholars think this cube was shaken out of a jar one at a time, not rolled like a die.

PURIM

Esther explains the strange word for Hebrew readers: Pur, that is, the lot, 3:7. The holiday Purim is named after it, 9:26.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This cube is much older than Esther and has nothing to do with Haman. It shows that pur really meant a lot in the lands where Esther lived.

12 On the thirteenth day of the first month,
the royal scribes were summoned and the
order was written exactly as Haman com-
manded the royal satraps, the governors
of each province, and the officials of each
people, in the script of each province and
the language of every people. It was writ-
ten in the name of King Xerxes and sealed
with the royal signet ring.

13 And the letters were sent by couriers to
each of the royal provinces with the order
to destroy, kill, and annihilate all the
Jews—young and old, women and
children—and to plunder their posses-
sions on a single day, the thirteenth day of
Adar, the twelfth month.

14 A copy of the text of the edict was to be
issued in every province and published to
all the people, so that they would be ready
on that day. 15 The couriers left, spurred
on by the king's command, and the edict
was issued in the citadel of Susa. Then
the king and Haman sat down to drink, but
the city of Susa was in confusion.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The Jews mourn in sackcloth. Mordecai asks Esther to beg the king for help, but anyone who walks in uninvited can be put to death. Mordecai says, Who knows if you have come to the kingdom for such a time as this? Esther says, Fast for me three days. If I perish, I perish.

MORDECAI APPEALS TO ESTHER

1 When Mordecai learned of all that had
happened, he tore his clothes, put on
sackcloth and ashes, and went out into

EST 3:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Herodotus and clay tablets from Persepolis describe the Persian royal post riders, see The King's Couriers Field Notes box, p.826 FIELD NOTES p.826

EST 3:13 [NOTE] THE ORDER. Kill every Jew, young and old, on one day, the 13th of Adar, about March 473 BC.

the middle of the city, wailing loudly and bitterly. 2 But he went only as far as the king's gate, because the law prohibited anyone wearing sackcloth from entering that gate.

3 In every province to which the king's command and edict came, there was great mourning among the Jews. They fasted, wept, and lamented, and many lay in sackcloth and ashes.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE KING'S COURIERS

ESTHER 3:13 TO 15 · 8:10 · 8:14



A clay tablet in Elamite from Persepolis, Persepolis Museum, Iran. Thousands like it record food given to workers and travelers. Photo Pentocelo, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

Persia had a royal post. Riders on fast horses carried the king's letters from station to station across the empire, just like the couriers in Esther 3:13 and 8:10.

HOW OLD IT IS

The Greek writers Herodotus, about 430 BC, and Xenophon describe it. Xenophon says Cyrus the Great set it up.

WHAT HERODOTUS SAYS

Men and horses waited a day's ride apart. Each rider handed the message to the next, like runners passing a torch, and nothing stopped them, not snow, rain, heat or the dark of night. His words are carved on a post office in New York City.

THE ROYAL ROAD

Herodotus counts 111 stations on the road from Sardis in what is now Turkey to Susa, about 90 days on foot. The riders were much faster.

TRAVEL TABLETS

Thousands of clay tablets from Persepolis, from about 509 to 493 BC, list food handed out to messengers and other travelers at stations along the roads.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No record mentions the letters of Haman or Mordecai. It shows that the king's post worked much like Esther describes it.

4 When Esther's maidens and eunuchs came and told her about Mordecai, the queen was overcome with distress. She sent clothes for Mordecai to wear instead of his sackcloth, but he would not accept them.

5 Then Esther summoned Hathach, one of the king's eunuchs appointed to her, and she dispatched him to Mordecai to learn what was troubling him and why. 6 So Hathach went out to Mordecai in the city square in front of the king's gate, 7 and Mordecai told him all that had happened to him, including the exact amount of money that Haman had promised to pay into the royal treasury in order to destroy the Jews.

8 Mordecai also gave Hathach a copy of the written decree issued in Susa for the destruction of the Jews, to show and explain to Esther, urging her to approach the king, implore his favor, and plead before him for her people.

9 So Hathach went back and relayed Mordecai's response to Esther.

10 Then Esther spoke to Hathach and instructed him to tell Mordecai, 11 "All the royal officials and the people of the king's provinces know that one law applies to every man or woman who approaches the king in the inner court without being summoned—that he be put to death. Only if the king extends the gold scepter may that person live. But I have not been summoned to appear before the king for the past thirty days."

EST 4:1 [NOTE] SACKCLOTH AND ASHES. Rough clothes made of goat hair, with ashes on the head. People wore them to show deep grief.

EST 4:11 [NOTE] UNINVITED. Persian kings were guarded closely. Herodotus says only the king's seven top nobles could walk in without sending word first, and

NOTABLE

12 When Esther's words were relayed to
Mordecai, 13 he sent back to her this reply:
"Do not imagine that because you are in
the king's palace you alone will escape
the fate of all the Jews. 14 For if you remain
silent at this time, relief and deliverance
for the Jews will arise from another place,
but you and your father's house will per-
ish. And who knows if perhaps you have
come to the kingdom for such a time as
this?"

15 Then Esther sent this reply to Mordecai:
16 "Go and assemble all the Jews who can
be found in Susa, and fast for me. Do not
eat or drink for three days, night or day,
and I and my maidens will fast as you do.
After that, I will go to the king, even
though it is against the law. And if I perish,
I perish!"

17 So Mordecai went and did all that Esther
had instructed him.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHERE IS GOD IN ESTHER?

Never Named

ESTHER 4:14 TO 16 · 6:1 · PROVERBS 16:33

NEVER NAMED

The Hebrew book of Esther never says God, Lord or Yahweh. It does not mention prayer, the temple or the law of Moses. Along with Song of Songs, it is one of the only books of the Bible that does not clearly name God.

BUT LOOK WHAT HAPPENS

An orphan becomes queen. Mordecai happens to overhear a plot. The lot falls almost a year away. The king cannot sleep, and they read him the one page about Mordecai. Haman walks in at that very moment. That is a lot of coincidences.

FROM ANOTHER PLACE

Mordecai says help will come from another place if Esther stays silent, 4:14. Many think that is a quiet way of saying God.

FASTING

Esther asks all the Jews in Susa to fast for three days, 4:16. In the Bible, fasting goes with crying out to God.

Hidden, Not Gone

GENESIS 50:20 · ROMANS 8:28 · ISAIAH 45:15

WHY HIDE HIS NAME?

Many think the writer wanted readers to see God working behind the scenes, through normal life. Others think it was written for life in a foreign land, or for a party holiday where God's name might be treated lightly.

A HIDDEN NAME?

Old Jewish writers noticed that in four verses the first or last letters of four words in a row spell the name Yahweh in Hebrew, 1:20, 5:4, 5:13 and 7:7. Some Hebrew copies mark those letters. It is a tradition, not proof.

THE GREEK VERSION

The Greek version adds prayers of Mordecai and Esther that name God many times. See the last Big Question in this book.

YOU MEANT IT FOR EVIL

Joseph said, You meant evil against me, but God meant it for good, Genesis 50:20. Esther is the same kind of story.

FOR TODAY

You may not see God's name on your bad week, but He is still at work. We know that God works all things together for the good of those who love Him, Romans 8:28.

even they could not if the king was with a woman. Everyone else had to send a message.

- **EST 4:14 [NOTABLE]** Where you are right now may be exactly where God wants you, for a reason you cannot see yet.
- **EST 4:14 [NOTE]** FROM ANOTHER PLACE. Many read this as a quiet hint of God, who is never named in this book. See the Big Question Where Is God in Esther?
- **EST 4:16 [NOTABLE]** Esther fasted first, then did the right thing even though it could cost her life.
- **EST 4:16 [NOTE]** FAST FOR ME. In the Bible, fasting nearly always goes with prayer, even though prayer is not mentioned here.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Esther walks in, and the king holds out his gold scepter. She invites the king and Haman to dinner, then to a second dinner. Haman goes home bragging, but seeing Mordecai still ruins his day. His wife says, Build a gallows 75 feet high and hang him.

ESTHER APPROACHES THE KING

1 On the third day, Esther put on her royal robes and stood in the inner court of the palace across from the king's quarters.

THE HEART NOTABLE

The king was sitting on his royal throne in the royal courtroom, facing the entrance.

2 As soon as the king saw Queen Esther standing in the court, she found favor in his sight. The king extended the gold scepter in his hand toward Esther, and she approached and touched the tip of the scepter.

3 "What is it, Queen Esther?" the king inquired. "What is your request? Even up to half the kingdom, it will be given to you."

4 "If it pleases the king," Esther replied, "may the king and Haman come today to the banquet I have prepared for the king."

5 "Hurry," commanded the king, "and bring Haman, so we can do as Esther has requested."

So the king and Haman went to the banquet that Esther had prepared. 6 And as they drank their wine, the king said to Esther, "What is your petition? It will be given to you. What is your request? Even up to half the kingdom, it will be fulfilled."

7 Esther replied, "This is my petition and my request: 8 If I have found favor in the sight of the king, and if it pleases the king to grant my petition and fulfill my request, may the king and Haman come tomorrow to the banquet I will prepare for them. Then I will answer the king's question."

HAMAN'S PLOT AGAINST MORDECAI

9 That day Haman went out full of joy and glad of heart. At the king's gate, however, he saw Mordecai, who did not rise or tremble in fear at his presence. And Haman was filled with rage toward Mordecai.

10 Nevertheless, Haman restrained himself and went home. And calling for his friends and his wife Zeresh, 11 Haman recounted to them his glorious wealth, his many sons, and all the ways the king had honored and promoted him over the other officials and servants.

12 "What is more," Haman added, "Queen Esther invited no one but me to join the king at the banquet she prepared, and I am invited back tomorrow along with the king. 13 Yet none of this satisfies me as long as I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the king's gate."

14 His wife Zeresh and all his friends told him, "Have them build a gallows 75 feet high, and ask the king in the morning to have Mordecai hanged on it. Then go to the banquet with the king and enjoy yourself."

The advice pleased Haman, and he had the gallows constructed.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

The king cannot sleep, so he has the royal records read to him and finds that Mordecai was never thanked. Just then Haman walks in. The king asks him how to honor a man, and Haman, sure it is him, plans a parade. Then he has to lead Mordecai through the streets himself.

MORDECAI IS HONORED

1 That night sleep escaped the king; so he ordered the Book of Records, the Chronicles, to be brought in and read to him. 2 And there it was found recorded that Mordecai had exposed Bigthana and Teresh, two of the eunuchs who guarded the king's entrance, when they had conspired to assassinate King Xerxes.

3 The king inquired, "What honor or dignity has been bestowed on Mordecai for this act?"

"Nothing has been done for him," replied the king's attendants.

4 "Who is in the court?" the king asked.

Now Haman had just entered the outer court of the palace to ask the king to hang Mordecai on the gallows he had prepared for him. 5 So the king's attendants an-

EST 5:2 [NOTE] THE GOLD SCEPTER. A royal staff. If the king held it out, the visitor could live, 4:11.

EST 5:9 [HEART] Haman went out glad of heart, then one man who would not bow filled him with rage. A proud heart is never satisfied, 5:13.

EST 5:14 [NOTE] THE GALLOWS. The Hebrew says a tree or a wooden pole. Persians often put their enemies to death on tall stakes, so it may have been a pole. 75 feet is about seven stories, so the whole city would see it.

EST 6:1 [NOTABLE] One sleepless night turned the whole story around. God can use the smallest things.

EST 6:1 [NOTE] THE SLEEPLESS NIGHT. The whole story turns here. Of all the pages in the royal records, the one about Mordecai is read that night.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART

swered him, "Haman is there, standing in the court."

"Bring him in," ordered the king.

6 Haman entered, and the king asked him, "What should be done for the man whom the king is delighted to honor?"

Now Haman thought in his heart, "Whom would the king be delighted to honor more than me?"

7 And Haman told the king, "For the man whom the king is delighted to honor, 8 have them bring a royal robe that the king himself has worn and a horse on which the king himself has ridden—one with a royal crest placed on its head. 9 Let the robe and the horse be entrusted to one of the king's most noble princes. Let them array the man the king wants to honor and parade him on the horse through the city square, proclaiming before him, 'This is what is done for the man whom the king is delighted to honor!'"

10 "Hurry," said the king to Haman, "and do just as you proposed. Take the robe and the horse to Mordecai the Jew, who is sitting at the king's gate. Do not neglect anything that you have suggested."

11 So Haman took the robe and the horse, arrayed Mordecai, and paraded him through the city square, crying out before him, "This is what is done for the man whom the king is delighted to honor!"

12 Then Mordecai returned to the king's gate. But Haman rushed home, with his head covered in grief.

13 Haman told his wife Zeresh and all his friends everything that had happened. His advisers and his wife Zeresh said to him, "Since Mordecai, before whom your downfall has begun, is Jewish, you will not prevail against him—for surely you will fall before him."

14 While they were still speaking with Haman, the king's eunuchs arrived and rushed him to the banquet that Esther had prepared.

- **EST 6:6 [HEART]** Haman thought in his heart that the king could only mean him. Pride goes before destruction, Proverbs 16:18.
- **EST 6:13 [PROPHECY]** Haman's wife and friends said he would surely fall before Mordecai → EST 7:10 · MEDIUM p.830

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

At the second dinner Esther tells the king that someone plans to kill her and her people. Who? This wicked Haman! The king storms out, Haman begs at the queen's couch, and the king comes back at the worst moment. Haman is hanged on the gallows he built for Mordecai.

ESTHER PLEADS FOR HER PEOPLE

1 So the king and Haman went to dine with Esther the queen, 2 and as they drank their wine on that second day, the king asked once more, "Queen Esther, what is your petition? It will be given to you. What is your request? Even up to half the kingdom, it will be fulfilled."

3 Queen Esther replied, "If I have found favor in your sight, O king, and if it pleases the king, grant me my life as my petition, and the lives of my people as my request. 4 For my people and I have been sold out to destruction, death, and annihilation. If we had merely been sold as menservants and maidservants, I would have remained silent, because no such distress would justify burdening the king."

5 Then King Xerxes spoke up and asked Queen Esther, "Who is this, and where is the one who would devise such a scheme?"

6 Esther replied, "The adversary and enemy is this wicked man—Haman!"

And Haman stood in terror before the king and queen.

THE HANGING OF HAMAN

7 In his fury, the king arose from drinking his wine and went to the palace garden, while Haman stayed behind to beg Queen Esther for his life, for he realized that the king was planning a terrible fate for him.

8 Just as the king returned from the palace garden to the banquet hall, Haman was falling on the couch where Esther was reclining. The king exclaimed, "Would he actually assault the queen while I am in the palace?"

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

As soon as the words had left the king's mouth, they covered Haman's face.

9 Then Harbonah, one of the eunuchs attending the king, said: "There is a gallows 75 feet high at Haman's house. He had it built for Mordecai, who gave the report that saved the king."

"Hang him on it!" declared the king.

10 So they hanged Haman on the gallows he had prepared for Mordecai. Then the fury of the king subsided.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Mordecai gets Haman's job and the king's ring. Esther begs the king to stop the order, but a Persian law cannot be undone. So a new law goes out on fast horses: the Jews may fight back on that day. Mourning turns to joy.

ESTHER APPEALS FOR THE JEWS

1 That same day King Xerxes awarded Queen Esther the estate of Haman, the enemy of the Jews. And Mordecai entered the king's presence because Esther had revealed his relation to her. 2 The king removed the signet ring he had recovered from Haman and presented it to Mordecai. And Esther appointed Mordecai over the estate of Haman.

3 And once again, Esther addressed the king. She fell at his feet weeping and begged him to revoke the evil scheme of Haman the Agagite, which he had devised against the Jews.

4 The king extended the gold scepter toward Esther, and she arose and stood before the king.

5 "If it pleases the king," she said, "and if I have found favor in his sight, and the matter seems proper to the king, and I am pleasing in his sight, may an order be written to revoke the letters that the scheming Haman son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, wrote to destroy the Jews in all the king's provinces. 6 For how could I bear to see the disaster that would befall my people? How could I bear to see the destruction of my kindred?"

THE DECREE OF XERXES

7 So King Xerxes said to Esther the Queen and Mordecai the Jew, "Behold, I have given Haman's estate to Esther, and he was hanged on the gallows because he attacked the Jews. 8 Now you may write in the king's name as you please regarding the Jews, and seal it with the royal signet ring. For a decree that is written in the name of the king and sealed with the royal signet ring cannot be revoked."

9 At once the royal scribes were summoned, and on the twenty-third day of the third month (the month of Sivan), they recorded all of Mordecai's orders to the Jews and to the satraps, governors, and princes of the 127 provinces from India to Cush—writing to each province in its own script, to every people in their own language, and to the Jews in their own script and language.

10 Mordecai wrote in the name of King Xerxes and sealed it with the royal signet ring. He sent the documents by mounted couriers riding on swift horses bred from the royal mares.

11 By these letters the king permitted the Jews in each and every city the right to assemble and defend themselves, to destroy, kill, and annihilate all the forces of any people or province hostile to them, including women and children, and to plunder their possessions. 12 The single day appointed throughout all the provinces of King Xerxes was the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, the month of Adar.

13 A copy of the text of the edict was to be issued in every province and published to

- **EST 7:8 [NOTE]** THE COUCH. Persians lay on couches to eat. They covered Haman's face. Many think that meant he was condemned.
- **EST 7:10 [NOTABLE]** The trap Haman built for someone else caught him instead. Whoever digs a pit will fall into it, Proverbs 26:27.
- **EST 7:10 [FULFILLS]** Haman's wife and friends said he would surely fall before Mordecai ← EST 6:13 · MEDIUM p.829
- **EST 7:10 [NOTE]** HIS OWN GALLOWS. Whoever digs a pit will fall into it, Proverbs 26:27.
- **EST 8:8 [NOTE]** CANNOT BE REVOKED. The first law still stood, so a second law had to let the Jews defend themselves.
- **EST 8:9 [NOTE]** SIVAN. About June 474 BC, about two months after Haman's order. That left about nine months to get ready.
- **EST 8:10 [FIELD NOTES]** See The King's Couriers Field Notes box at 3:13, p.826.

all the people, so that the Jews would be ready on that day to avenge themselves on their enemies. 14 The couriers rode out in haste on their royal horses, pressed on by the command of the king. And the edict was also issued in the citadel of Susa.

15 Mordecai went out from the presence of the king in royal garments of blue and white, with a large gold crown and a purple robe of fine linen. And the city of Susa shouted and rejoiced.

16 For the Jews it was a time of light and gladness, of joy and honor. 17 In every province and every city, wherever the king's edict and decree reached, there was joy and gladness among the Jews, with feasting and celebrating. And many of the people of the land themselves became Jews, because the fear of the Jews had fallen upon them.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

On the 13th of Adar the Jews defend themselves and win, and they take no plunder. Then they rest and party. Mordecai and Esther write letters to make it a yearly holiday called Purim, after the pur, the lot Haman cast.

THE JEWS DESTROY THEIR ENEMIES

1 On the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, the month of Adar, the king's command and edict were to be executed. On this day the enemies of the Jews had hoped to overpower them, but their plan was overturned and the Jews overpowered those who hated them. 2 In each of the provinces of King Xerxes, the Jews assembled in their cities to attack those who sought to harm them. No man could withstand them, because the fear of them had fallen upon all peoples.

3 And all the officials of the provinces, the satraps, the governors, and the king's administrators helped the Jews, because the fear of Mordecai had fallen upon them. 4 For Mordecai exercised great power in the palace, and his fame spread throughout the provinces as he became more and more powerful.

5 The Jews put all their enemies to the sword, killing and destroying them, and they did as they pleased to those who hated them. 6 In the citadel of Susa, the Jews killed and destroyed five hundred men, 7 including Parshandatha, Dalphon, Aspatha, 8 Poratha, Adalia, Aridatha, 9 Parmashta, Arisai, Aridai, and Vaizatha. 10 They killed these ten sons of Haman son of Hammedatha, the enemy of the Jews, but they did not lay a hand on the plunder.

HAMAN'S SONS HANGED

11 On that day the number of those killed in the citadel of Susa was reported to the king, 12 who said to Queen Esther, "In the citadel of Susa the Jews have killed and destroyed five hundred men, including Haman's ten sons. What have they done in the rest of the royal provinces? Now what is your petition? It will be given to you. And what further do you request? It will be fulfilled."

13 Esther replied, "If it pleases the king, may the Jews in Susa also have tomorrow to carry out today's edict, and may the bodies of Haman's ten sons be hanged on the gallows."

14 So the king commanded that this be done. An edict was issued in Susa, and they hanged the ten sons of Haman. 15 On the fourteenth day of the month of Adar, the Jews in Susa came together again and put to death three hundred men there, but they did not lay a hand on the plunder.

16 The rest of the Jews in the royal provinces also assembled to defend themselves and rid themselves of their enemies. They killed 75,000 who hated them, but they did not lay a hand on the plunder. 17 This was done on the thirteenth day of the month of Adar, and on the four-

- **EST 8:17 [NOTE]** BECAME JEWS. Many people of the land joined the Jews, or said they did, because they were afraid.
- **EST 9:1 [NOTE]** OVERTURNED. The day planned for the Jews' death became the day of their rescue. See the Big Question The Jews Fight Back.
- **EST 9:10 [NOTE]** NO PLUNDER. The king's order let them take plunder, 8:11, but three times the book says they did not, 9:10, 15 and 16. King Saul had kept the plunder from Amalek, 1 Samuel 15:9.
- **EST 9:16 [NOTE]** 75,000. The Greek Esther says 15,000.

teenth day they rested, making it a day of feasting and joy.

THE FEAST OF PURIM INSTITUTED

18 The Jews in Susa, however, had assembled on the thirteenth and the fourteenth days of the month. So they rested on the fifteenth day, making it a day of feasting and joy. 19 This is why the rural Jews, who live in the villages, observe the fourteenth day of the month of Adar as a day of joy and feasting. It is a holiday for sending gifts to one another.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE JEWS FIGHT BACK

What Happened

ESTHER 8:11 TO 13 · 9:1 TO 16 · 1 SAMUEL 15:1 TO 9

THE FIRST LAW STILL STOOD

Haman's law said anyone could attack the Jews and take their things on the 13th of Adar. A Persian law could not be undone, so the king made a second law: on that day the Jews could band together and defend themselves, 8:11.

WHAT HAPPENED

The Jews struck those who hated them. In Susa they killed 500 men and Haman's ten sons, and 300 more the next day. In the provinces they killed 75,000, 9:6 to 16. The Greek Esther says 15,000.

NO PLUNDER

The law let them take plunder, but three times the book says they did not, 9:10, 15 and 16. Many see a point: King Saul had kept the plunder of Amalek, 1 Samuel 15:9, and Haman was an Agagite.

WHO WAS KILLED?

The book says they killed those who hated them and wanted to harm them, 9:2 and 9:5.

Every View

ROMANS 12:19 · ROMANS 13:4 · MATTHEW 5:44

VIEW 1: SELF DEFENSE

Many say this was not revenge but defense. Their enemies still had a legal right to attack, so the Jews fought those who came against them. The officials even helped the Jews, 9:3.

VIEW 2: IT WENT TOO FAR

Others are troubled by Esther asking for a second day in Susa, 9:13, and by the high numbers. The Bible reports what happened without always saying it was right. Martin Luther once said he wished Esther and 2 Maccabees did not exist at all. He felt they were too Jewish and had too much that was pagan.

VIEW 3: STORY NUMBERS

Some think the numbers are rounded or made bigger in the telling, like the Greek and Hebrew numbers that do not match.

WHAT ABOUT CHRISTIANS?

Jesus said love your enemies, Matthew 5:44, and Paul said do not take revenge, Romans 12:19. Paul also said rulers carry the sword to stop evil, Romans 13:4.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

In the story, a whole people was saved from being wiped out, and they did not get rich from it.

20 Mordecai recorded these events and sent letters to all the Jews in all the provinces of King Xerxes, both near and far, 21 to establish among them an annual celebration on the fourteenth and fifteenth days of the month of Adar 22 as the days on which the Jews gained rest from their enemies and the month in which their sorrow turned to joy and their mourning into a holiday. He wrote that these were to be days of feasting and joy, of sending gifts to one another and to the poor.

23 So the Jews agreed to continue the custom they had started, as Mordecai had written to them. 24 For Haman son of Hammedatha, the Agagite, the enemy of all the Jews, had plotted against the Jews to destroy them and had cast the Pur (that is, the lot) to crush and destroy them. 25 But when it came before the king, he commanded by letter that the wicked scheme which Haman had devised against the Jews should come back upon his own head, and that he and his sons should be hanged on the gallows.

26 Therefore these days are called Purim, from the word Pur.

Because of all the instructions in this letter, and because of all they had seen and experienced, 27 the Jews bound themselves to establish the custom that they and their descendants and all who join them should not fail to celebrate these two days at the appointed time each and every year, according to their regulation. 28 These days should be remembered and celebrated by every generation, family, province, and city, so that these days of Purim should not fail to be observed among the Jews, nor should the memory of them fade from their descendants.

29 So Queen Esther daughter of Abihail, along with Mordecai the Jew, wrote with full authority to confirm this second letter concerning Purim. 30 And Mordecai sent letters with words of peace and truth to all the Jews in the 127 provinces of the kingdom of Xerxes, 31 in order to confirm these days of Purim at their appointed time, just as Mordecai the Jew and Queen Esther had established them and had committed themselves and their descendants to the times of fasting and lamentation.

32 So Esther's decree confirmed these regulations about Purim, which were written into the record.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

A short ending. Mordecai is second only to the king, and he works for the good of his people and speaks peace to them all.

TRIBUTE TO XERXES AND MORDECAI

1 Now King Xerxes imposed tribute throughout the land, even to its farthest shores.

2 And all of Mordecai's powerful and magnificent accomplishments, together with the full account of the greatness to which the king had raised him, are they not written in the Book of the Chronicles of the Kings of Media and Persia? 3 For Mordecai the Jew was second only to King Xerxes, preeminent among the Jews and highly favored by his many kinsmen, seeking the good of his people and speaking peace to all his countrymen.

■ **EST 9:26 [NOTE]** PURIM. The name means lots, from pur. Jews still keep it every year in February or March. They read the whole scroll of Esther, make noise every time Haman's name is read, send gifts of food and give to the poor. 2 Maccabees 15:36 calls it Mordecai's Day, one of the oldest mentions outside Esther.

■ **EST 9:31 [NOTE]** FASTING. Jews still keep the Fast of Esther usually on the 13th of Adar, the day before Purim.

■ **EST 10:2 [NOTE]** THE CHRONICLES OF MEDIA AND PERSIA. No copy of this record has ever been found.

■ **EST 10:3 [NOTE]** SECOND TO THE KING. Like Joseph in Egypt, Genesis 41:40, and Daniel in Babylon, Daniel 2:48, a Jew far from home ends up next to the throne.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE GREEK ESTHER

Six Added Passages

ESTHER 1:1 · 3:13 · 4:17 · 5:1 · 8:12 · 10:3

WHAT IT IS

The old Greek translation of Esther is longer than the Hebrew. It adds six passages, 107 verses, called Additions A to F.

WHAT THEY ADD

A: Mordecai's dream and the plot against the king, before chapter 1. B: Haman's royal letter, after 3:13. C: the prayers of Mordecai and Esther, after 4:17. D: Esther goes to the king and faints, in chapter 5. E: the king's second letter, after 8:12. F: the dream explained, at the end.

GOD IS NAMED

The Greek names God more than 50 times, and Esther and Mordecai pray long prayers. It also calls the king Artaxerxes.

WHEN

A note at the end says Lysimachus of Jerusalem translated it and that it came to Egypt in the fourth year of a King Ptolemy and Cleopatra, about 114, 78 or 48 BC.

Every View

CATHOLIC BIBLES ESTHER 10:4 TO 16:24

VIEW 1: SCRIPTURE

Catholic and Orthodox Christians count the added passages as Scripture. The Council of Trent said so in 1546. Jerome moved them to the end of Esther, so some Catholic Bibles print them as 10:4 to 16:24. Newer ones put them back in place.

VIEW 2: NOT SCRIPTURE

Jews and Protestants follow the Hebrew text, which does not have them. They see them as later additions, not part of the original Hebrew book.

DOUBTS ABOUT ESTHER ITSELF

Some early Christians left Esther off their list, like Melito of Sardis about 170 AD. Athanasius in 367 AD called it good to read but not in the list. The Talmud records a debate about it too. The New Testament never quotes Esther.

WHY THIS BIBLE PRINTS THE HEBREW

This Bible follows the Hebrew text, like most Bibles. The added passages are cited, not printed.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

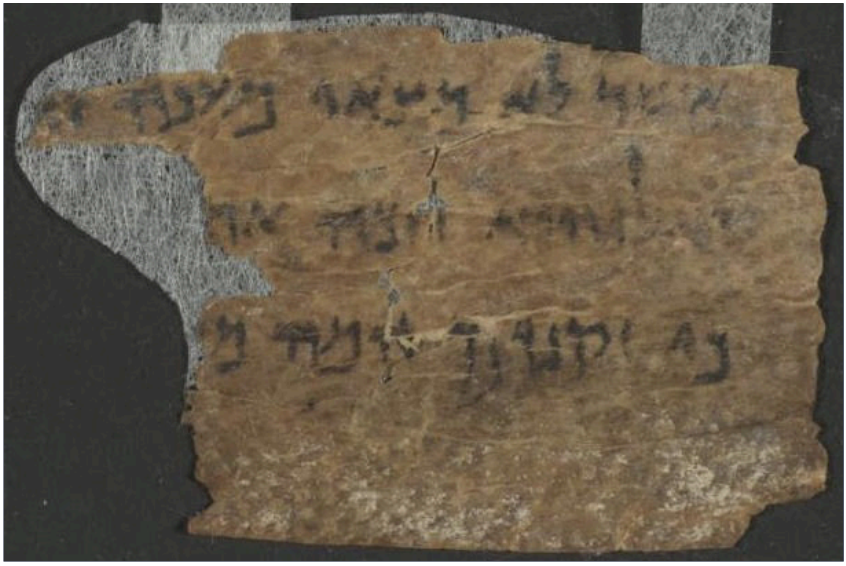
Most agree the Hebrew book came first, and the Greek additions were written later. Both tell the same rescue.

BOOK 18 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · POETRY AND WISDOM

JOB

When Bad Things Happen to Good People

AUTHOR	Not named. The Talmud says Moses wrote it. Others think Job, Elihu, Solomon or a later wise man wrote it down.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	Many believe around the time of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, before Moses. See When Did Job Live?
DATE	Not known. Traditional views say the days of Moses or Solomon. Many scholars today say 600 to 400 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Anyone who has ever asked God, Why?
KEY VERSE	Job 19:25. I know that my Redeemer lives, and in the end He will stand upon the earth.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF JOB
A piece of 4QJob a, a Dead Sea Scroll from Qumran Cave 4, copied in Hebrew about 100 BC. You can read Job 32:3 to 4: Elihu is angry with the three friends because they had found no answer.

The Dead Sea Scrolls hold four Hebrew copies of Job and two copies in Aramaic. One of them, 4QpaleoJob c, is written in the old Hebrew letters and may be the oldest of all, from about 225 to 150 BC. At Qumran, the only Bible books copied in those old letters are the five books of Moses and Job. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

The land of Uz, outside Israel, in the days of tents, camels and herds. Job is a rich and godly man who most likely was not an Israelite. The story opens in heaven, where God and the satan talk about Job. The book never says that Job found out about it.

What Was Going Wrong

A GOOD MAN IN PAIN. Job lost his wealth, his ten children and his health, and he did nothing to deserve it, 1:8 and 2:3.
BAD ANSWERS. His friends said he must have sinned, because God always punishes sin. God said they were wrong, 42:7.
A SILENT HEAVEN. Job cried out to God chapter after chapter and heard nothing, until God spoke from the whirlwind, 38:1.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Job is the richest and most godly man in the East. In heaven the satan says Job only serves God because God pays him well, so God lets him test Job. In one day Job loses his animals, his servants and all ten children, and then his health. He does not curse God. Three friends come to comfort him, but after seven quiet days they take turns telling him he must have sinned. Job says he did not, and he begs God for a hearing. Finally God speaks out of a whirlwind. He never tells Job why. He shows Job the wonders of creation, and Job bows in awe. God says the friends were wrong, Job prays for them, and God gives Job twice as much as before.

Job at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**THE TEST** The satan's challenge; Job loses everything.
CH 3	**JOB'S LAMENT** I wish I had never been born.
CH 4 to 27	**THREE ROUNDS** The friends say, You sinned; Job says, I did not.
CH 28	**WHERE IS WISDOM?** Only God knows the way.
CH 29 to 31	**JOB'S LAST WORD** Then and now; his oath.
CH 32 to 37	**ELIHU** The angry young man.
CH 38 to 42:6	**THE WHIRLWIND** God speaks; Job bows.
CH 42:7 to 17	**THE ENDING** The friends rebuked; Job restored.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JOB 9:33 Job wanted someone to stand between him and God. Jesus is the one Mediator between God and men, 1 Timothy 2:5.

JOB 19:25 Job knew his Redeemer lives. Jesus is the Redeemer who lives forever and will stand on the earth, Acts 1:11.

JOB 1:8 AND 42:7 Job was a righteous man who suffered and then prayed for the friends who hurt him. Jesus, the only truly innocent One, suffered and prayed, Father, forgive them, Luke 23:34.

GOD'S NAMES IN JOB
Yahweh in the story at the start and end. In the poems, mostly El and Eloah, God, and Shaddai, the Almighty, 31 times, the name God used with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, Exodus 6:3.

What to Watch for in Job

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (4)	9:32-33, 16:10, 19:23-27, 33:23-24
THE HEART (5)	1:5, 11:13, 22:22, 27:6, 31:7
ARCHAEOLOGY (4)	1:1, 4:7, 41:1, 42:6
MIRACLES (1)	38:1
DEMONIC (3)	1:6-12, 2:1-7, 31:26-28
NOTABLE (7)	1:21, 2:10, 13:15, 23:10, 38:4, 42:5, 42:10
GOD SPEAKING (131 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

OLDER THAN IT LOOKS
Job sits after Esther, but many believe Job lived around the time of Abraham, before Moses. He even offered his own sacrifices, 1:5.

THE HARDEST HEBREW
Job has more rare words than any other book of the Bible. Martin Luther said that on Job, he and his helpers sometimes got three lines done in four days.

THE PATIENCE OF JOB
James 5:11 praises the endurance of Job. He did not suffer quietly, but he never let go of God.

How Did It Turn Out?

God gave Job twice as many animals as before, seven sons and three beautiful daughters, and 140 more years. He saw four generations of his family.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Job is rich, good and famous, the greatest man in the East. In heaven, the satan says Job only loves God because God pays him well. God lets him test Job. In one awful day, raiders and fire take Job's animals, and a wind kills all ten of his kids. Job falls down and worships.

JOB'S CHARACTER AND WEALTH // JAMES 5:7–12

1 There was a man in the land of Uz whose name was Job. And this man was blameless and upright, fearing God and shunning evil. 2 He had seven sons and three daughters, 3 and he owned 7,000 sheep, 3,000 camels, 500 yoke of oxen, 500 female donkeys, and a very large number of servants. Job was the greatest man of all the people of the East.

4 Job's sons would take turns holding feasts in their homes, and they would invite their three sisters to eat and drink with them.

5 And when the days of feasting were over, Job would send for his children to purify them, rising early in the morning to offer burnt offerings for all of them. For Job thought, "Perhaps my children have sinned and cursed God in their hearts." This was Job's regular practice.

SATAN'S FIRST ATTACK

6 One day the sons of God came to present themselves before Yahweh, and Satan also came with them.

7 "Where have you come from?" said Yahweh to Satan.

"From roaming through the earth," he replied, "and walking back and forth in it."

8 Then Yahweh said to Satan, "Have you considered My servant Job? For there is no one on earth like him, a man who is blameless and upright, who fears God and shuns evil."

9 Satan answered Yahweh, "Does Job fear God for nothing? 10 Have You not placed a hedge on every side around him and his household and all that he owns? You have blessed the work of his hands, and his possessions have increased in the land. 11 But stretch out Your hand and strike all that he has, and he will surely curse You to Your face."

12 "Very well," said Yahweh to Satan. "Everything he has is in your hands, but you must not lay a hand on the man himself."

Then Satan went out from the presence of Yahweh.

JOB LOSES HIS CHILDREN AND POSSESSIONS

13 One day, while Job's sons and daughters were eating and drinking wine in their oldest brother's house, 14 a messenger came and reported to Job: "While the oxen were plowing and the donkeys were grazing nearby, 15 the Sabeans swooped down and took them away. They put the servants to the sword, and I alone have escaped to tell you!"

16 While he was still speaking, another messenger came and reported: "The fire of God fell from heaven. It burned and consumed the sheep and the servants, and I alone have escaped to tell you!"

JOB 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A Babylonian poem, Ludlul bel nemeqi, tells of a righteous man who suffered and was healed, see The Babylonian Job Field Notes page, p.842 FIELD NOTES p.842

JOB 1:1 [NOTE] THE LAND OF UZ. Nobody knows exactly where it was. Lamentations 4:21 ties Uz to Edom, south and east of the Dead Sea. An old tradition puts it in the Hauran, east of the Sea of Galilee. Either way, most readers think Job was not an Israelite.

JOB 1:1 [NOTE] BLAMELESS. Not sinless. It means a man of whole hearted integrity. God Himself says it in 1:8.

JOB 1:3 [NOTE] RICH IN ANIMALS. In the days of the patriarchs, wealth was counted in flocks, herds and servants, like Abraham in Genesis 13:2 and 24:35.

JOB 1:5 [HEART] Job offered sacrifices in case his children had cursed God in their hearts. He cared about what was inside, not only what people did.

JOB 1:5 [NOTE] JOB THE PRIEST. Job offered burnt offerings for his family himself, like Noah, Abraham and Jacob did. After the law of Moses, Israel's offerings went through the priests. Many see this as a clue that Job lived before Moses. See the Big Question When Did Job Live?

JOB 1:6 [DEMONIC] Satan comes before Yahweh and accuses Job

JOB 1:6 [NOTE] THE HEAVENLY COURT. The sons of God are angels, the Greek Old Testament says. They come to report to God like officials before a king. See What Was the Angels' Sin? in Jude, p.2069.

JOB 1:6 [NOTE] SATAN. The Hebrew says the satan, which means the accuser. See the Big Question Who Is the Satan in Job?

JOB 1:9 [NOTE] FOR NOTHING? This is the real question of the book. Does anyone love God just for who He is, or only for what He gives?

JOB 1:12 [NOTE] ON A LEASH. The satan can go only as far as God allows. See Who Caused the Census? in 2 Samuel, p.535.

JOB 1:15 [NOTE] SABEANS AND CHALDEANS. Raiders from Arabia in the south and from Mesopotamia in the east, 1:17.

NOTABLE

17 While he was still speaking, another messenger came and reported: "The Chaldeans formed three bands, raided the camels, and took them away. They put the servants to the sword, and I alone have escaped to tell you!"

18 While he was still speaking, another messenger came and reported: "Your sons and daughters were eating and drinking wine in their oldest brother's house, 19 when suddenly a mighty wind swept in from the desert and struck the four corners of the house. It collapsed on the young people and they are dead, and I alone have escaped to tell you!"

20 Then Job stood up, tore his robe, and shaved his head. He fell to the ground and worshiped, 21 saying:

"Naked I came from my mother's womb,
and naked I will return.
Yahweh gave, and Yahweh has taken
away.
Blessed be the name of Yahweh."

22 In all this, Job did not sin or charge God with wrongdoing.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN DID JOB LIVE?

Older Than Moses?

JOB 1:3 · 1:5 · 42:11 · 42:16 · GENESIS 8:20 · NUMBERS 18:7

WHERE IT SITS

Job comes after Esther, in the middle of the Bible. That is because the books of poetry and wisdom are grouped together, not because of when Job lived.

THE SACRIFICES

Job offered burnt offerings for his children himself, 1:5, as the head of his family. Before Moses, fathers did this: Noah, Genesis 8:20, Abraham, Genesis 22:13, and Jacob, Genesis 46:1. After the law of Moses, Israel's offerings had to go through the priests, the sons of Aaron from the tribe of Levi, Leviticus 1:5 to 9. Anyone else who came near was to be put to death, Numbers 18:7. So many say Job must have lived before Moses.

MORE CLUES

Job lived 140 more years, 42:16, like Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. His wealth was counted in animals. The rare word for a piece of silver in 42:11 shows up only in Jacob's story, Genesis 33:19. God is called Shaddai, the Almighty, 31 times, the name the fathers knew Him by, Exodus 6:3. The book never mentions the law of Moses, the exodus, the tabernacle or Israel.

NAMES FROM GENESIS

Uz is a name in Genesis 22:21 and 36:28. Eliphaz the Temanite carries the name of Esau's son Eliphaz, whose son was Teman, Genesis 36:10 to 11.

OLD TRADITIONS

The Talmud says Moses wrote Job, Bava Batra 14b. The Greek Old Testament adds an ending that says Job was Jobab, a king of Edom, Genesis 36:33, five generations after Abraham.

Every View

EXODUS 18:12 · NUMBERS 23:1 TO 2 · EZEKIEL 14:14 · JAMES 5:11

VIEW 1: THE DAYS OF THE PATRIARCHS

Many Jews and Christians through the centuries, and many Bible teachers today, believe Job lived around the time of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, before Moses. The clues on the first page point that way.

THE OTHER SIDE OF THE SACRIFICE CLUE

Most think Job was not an Israelite. He lived in Uz, so the law given to Israel was not given to him. Outsiders still made offerings after Moses: Jethro, the priest of Midian, Exodus 18:12, and Balaam, Numbers 23:1 to 2. So the sacrifices fit the days of the patriarchs, but by themselves they do not prove it.

VIEW 2: AN OLD STORY WRITTEN DOWN LATER

Many think Job lived long ago, but the book was written down later, maybe by Moses, or in the days of Solomon, when Israel wrote down much of its wisdom.

VIEW 3: A LATE BOOK

Many scholars today think it was written between about 600 and 400 BC, judging

JOB 1:16 [NOTE] FIRE FROM HEAVEN. Most likely lightning. The servant calls it God's fire because he thinks God did it.

JOB 1:20 [NOTE] TORE HIS ROBE AND SHAVED HIS HEAD. Signs of deep grief in the ancient world.

JOB 1:21 [NOTABLE] On the worst day of his life, Job worshiped. You can praise God even before you understand.

DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

by its language and ideas. Some think it is a great poem built around an old story. One rabbi in the Talmud even said Job was a parable, Bava Batra 15a.

A REAL MAN

Ezekiel 14:14 names Job with Noah and Daniel, and James 5:11 points to his endurance. Most Christians read that to mean Job was a real man.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The book never names a king or a date, and the story is set outside Israel in a world of tents, camels and herds.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Round two. The satan says, Touch his body and he will curse You. God allows it but says, Spare his life. Job gets sores from head to toe and sits in the ashes scraping them. His wife says, Curse God and die. He says no. Three friends come, cry, and sit with him seven days without a word. Best thing they do all book.

JOB LOSES HIS HEALTH

1 On another day the sons of God came to present themselves before Yahweh, and Satan also came with them to present himself before Him.

2 "Where have you come from?" said Yahweh to Satan.

"From roaming through the earth," he replied, "and walking back and forth in it."

3 Then Yahweh said to Satan, "Have you considered My servant Job? For there is no one on earth like him, a man who is blameless and upright, who fears God and shuns evil. He still retains his integrity, even though you incited Me against him to ruin him without cause."

4 "Skin for skin!" Satan replied. "A man will give up all he owns in exchange for his life. 5 But stretch out Your hand and strike his flesh and bones, and he will surely curse You to Your face."

6 "Very well," said Yahweh to Satan. "He is in your hands, but you must spare his life."

7 So Satan went out from the presence of Yahweh and infected Job with terrible boils from the soles of his feet to the crown of his head. 8 And Job took a piece of broken pottery to scrape himself as he sat among the ashes.

9 Then Job's wife said to him, "Do you still retain your integrity? Curse God and die!"

10 "You speak as a foolish woman speaks," he told her. "Should we accept from God only good and not adversity?"

In all this, Job did not sin in what he said.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS THE SATAN IN JOB?

The Accuser

JOB 1:6 TO 12 · 2:1 TO 7 · NUMBERS 22:22 · ZECHARIAH 3:1 TO 2

THE WORD

In Job 1 and 2 the Hebrew says ha satan, the satan. Satan means accuser or adversary, and the word the makes it sound like a title, the Accuser.

THE SAME WORD ELSEWHERE

The angel of Yahweh stood in Balaam's road as a satan, an adversary, Numbers 22:22. In Zechariah 3:1 to 2, the satan stands to accuse the high priest in heaven, and God rebukes him. In 1 Chronicles 21:1, the word has no the in front of it, so most read Satan there as a name.

ON A LEASH

The satan can only do what God allows, 1:12 and 2:6. God sets the limits each time.

THEN HE IS GONE

After chapter 2, the satan is never mentioned again. The book never says that Job found out about him.

JOB 2:1 [DEMONIC] Satan strikes Job with painful sores

JOB 2:8 [NOTE] THE ASH HEAP. Many think it was the town dump outside the gate, where trash was burned and outcasts sat.

JOB 2:9 [NOTE] JOB'S WIFE. She lost all ten children too. Many are hard on her, but she was grieving. The Greek Old Testament gives her a longer speech about her own pain.

JOB 2:10 [NOTABLE] Faith that only works on good days is not much faith. Job trusted God in both.

Every View
REVELATION 12:9 TO 10 · 1 CHRONICLES 21:1 · LUKE 22:31

VIEW 1: THE DEVIL HIMSELF
Most Christians through history say this is the devil. The Greek Old Testament translates it the devil in Job 1:6, and Revelation 12:10 calls the devil the accuser of our brothers, who accuses them day and night before God. Jesus said Satan asked to sift Peter like wheat, Luke 22:31, much like Job.

VIEW 2: A PROSECUTOR IN HEAVEN
Many scholars today, and many Jewish readers, think the satan here is an angel whose job is to accuse, like a prosecutor in God's court, not yet the devil of the New Testament. They say the Bible shows more about Satan little by little.

A JEWISH SAYING
The Talmud says Satan, the evil urge and the angel of death are one and the same, Bava Batra 16a.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
He accused Job of loving God only for what he got. He was wrong: Job did not curse God, 1:22 and 2:10.

JOB'S THREE FRIENDS

11 Now when Job's three friends—Eliphaz
the Temanite, Bildad the Shuhite, and
Zophar the Naamathite—heard about all
this adversity that had come upon him,
each of them came from his home, and
they met together to go and sympathize
with Job and comfort him.
12 When they lifted up their eyes from afar,
they could barely recognize Job. They
began to weep aloud, and each man tore
his robe and threw dust in the air over his
head. 13 Then they sat on the ground with
him for seven days and seven nights, but
no one spoke a word to him because they
saw how intense his suffering was.

■ **JOB 2:11 [NOTE]** ELIPHAZ THE TEMANITE. Teman was a town and clan of Edom, named for a grandson of Esau whose father was also named Eliphaz, Genesis 36:10 to 11.
■ **JOB 2:13 [NOTE]** SEVEN DAYS OF SILENCE. Jews still sit shiva, seven days of mourning. The friends did best when they said nothing.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
Job finally speaks, and he wishes he had never been born. Why didn't I die at birth? Why give light to someone in misery? No cursing God, but a whole lot of honest pain.

JOB LAMENTS HIS BIRTH

1 After this, Job opened his mouth and
cursed the day of his birth. 2 And this is
what he said:

3 "May the day of my birth perish,
and the night it was said,
'A boy is conceived.'
4 If only that day had turned to darkness!
May God above disregard it;
may no light shine upon it.
5 May darkness and gloom reclaim it,
and a cloud settle over it;
may the blackness of the day overwhelm it.
6 If only darkness had taken that night
away!
May it not appear among the days of the
year;
may it never be entered in any of the
months.
7 Behold, may that night be barren;
may no joyful voice come into it.
8 May it be cursed by those who curse the
day—
those prepared to rouse Leviathan.
9 May its morning stars grow dark;
may it wait in vain for daylight;
may it not see the breaking of dawn.
10 For that night did not shut the doors of
the womb
to hide the sorrow from my eyes.

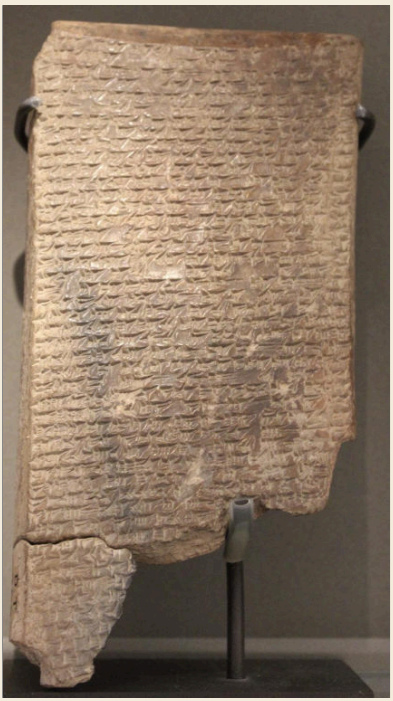
11 Why did I not perish at birth;
why did I not die as I came from the
womb?
12 Why were there knees to receive me,
and breasts that I should be nursed?
13 For now I would be lying down in peace;
I would be asleep and at rest
14 with kings and counselors of the earth,

■ **JOB 3:8 [NOTE]** LEVIATHAN. A sea monster. Job calls on people who curse days to curse his birthday. God brings Leviathan back in chapter 41. See the Field Notes page Lotan in the Ugarit Tablets, p.877.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE BABYLONIAN JOB

JOB 1:1 · 3:1 TO 3 · 19:13 TO 19 · 42:10



A tablet of Ludlul from the library of King Ashurbanipal at Nineveh, 600s BC, pieces K 2518 and DT 358. British Museum, on loan to the Louvre. Photo Zunkir, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A long Babylonian poem called Ludlul bel nemeqi, which means I Will Praise the Lord of Wisdom. Scholars nickname it the Poem of the Righteous Sufferer, or the Babylonian Job.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was likely written about 1300 to 1200 BC, in the days of the Kassite kings of Babylon. The copies we have are later, many from the 600s BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

British diggers found clay tablets of it at Nineveh, in the library of the Assyrian king Ashurbanipal, in the 1850s and 1870s. More copies came from Assur, Babylon, Sippar and other cities. Today we know it was five tablets long, about 600 lines.

THE STORY

A high official named Shubshi meshre Shakkan tells what happened to him. The king turned against him, his friends and family pulled away, and his enemies cheered. Then he got so sick he could not eat or stand. Priests and fortune tellers could not help him.

LINES THAT SOUND LIKE JOB

He wonders whether what seems good to people might be wrong to a god, and who can learn the plans of the gods in heaven. Like Job, he cannot figure out why it happened.

HOW IT ENDS

In dreams, messengers come from the god Marduk. Marduk heals him, and the man goes to Marduk's temple to give thanks.

HOW IT IS DIFFERENT

There is no debate with friends and no scene in heaven. Healing comes through dreams and magic priests, and the god never speaks to him from a storm. Some scholars think the man finally admits he did something wrong, which Job never does.

DID JOB COPY IT?

Most scholars say no. Both show that people in the ancient world asked the same hard question: Why do good people suffer?

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not show where the book of Job came from. It shows that people asked Job's question long ago, and outside Israel too.

ARCHAEOLOGY

who built for themselves cities now in ruins,
15 or with princes who had gold,
who filled their houses with silver.
16 Or why was I not hidden like a stillborn child,
like an infant who never sees daylight?
17 There the wicked cease from raging,
and there the weary find rest.
18 The captives enjoy their ease;
they do not hear the voice of the oppressor.
19 Both small and great are there,
and the slave is freed from his master.

20 Why is light given to the miserable,
and life to the bitter of soul,
21 who long for death that does not come,
and search for it like hidden treasure,
22 who rejoice and greatly exult
when they reach the grave?
23 Why is life given to a man whose way is hidden,
whom God has hedged in?
24 I sigh when food is put before me,
and my groans pour out like water.
25 For the thing I feared has overtaken me,
and what I dreaded has befallen me.
26 I am not at ease or quiet;
I have no rest, for trouble has come."

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Eliphaz goes first, gently at first. Think about it, Job: when do innocent people ever get wiped out? You reap what you sow. He even had a spooky night vision to back it up.

ELIPHAZ: THE INNOCENT PROSPER

1 Then Eliphaz the Temanite replied:

2 "If one ventures a word with you, will you be wearied?
Yet who can keep from speaking?
3 Surely you have instructed many,
and have strengthened their feeble hands.
4 Your words have steadied those who stumbled;
you have braced the knees that were buckling.
5 But now trouble has come upon you, and you are weary.
It strikes you, and you are dismayed.
6 Is your reverence not your confidence,
and the uprightness of your ways your hope?

7 Consider now, I plead:
Who, being innocent, has ever perished?
Or where have the upright been destroyed?
8 As I have observed, those who plow iniquity
and those who sow trouble reap the same.
9 By the breath of God they perish,
and by the blast of His anger they are consumed.
10 The lion may roar, and the fierce lion may growl,
yet the teeth of the young lions are broken.
11 The old lion perishes for lack of prey,
and the cubs of the lioness are scattered.

12 Now a word came to me secretly;
my ears caught a whisper of it.
13 In disquieting visions in the night,
when deep sleep falls on men,
14 fear and trembling came over me
and made all my bones shudder.
15 Then a spirit glided past my face,
and the hair on my body bristled.
16 It stood still,
but I could not discern its appearance;
a form loomed before my eyes,
and I heard a whispering voice:

17 'Can a mortal be more righteous than God,
or a man more pure than his Maker?
18 If God puts no trust in His servants,
and He charges His angels with error,

JOB 4:1 [NOTE] THREE ROUNDS. Chapters 4 to 27 are three rounds of speeches. Each friend talks, and Job answers each one. In round three, Bildad's speech is short and Zophar does not speak at all.

JOB 4:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY] A Babylonian poem where a sufferer and his friend take turns talking, like Job and his friends, see The Babylonian Theodicy Field Notes page, p.845 FIELD NOTES p.845

JOB 4:12 [NOTE] A SPIRIT IN THE NIGHT. Eliphaz says a spirit gave him this message. God later says the friends did not speak rightly about Him, 42:7, so this is Eliphaz's claim, not God's word.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

19 how much more those who dwell in houses of clay,
whose foundations are in the dust,
who can be crushed like a moth!
20 They are smashed to pieces from dawn to dusk;
unnoticed, they perish forever.
21 Are not their tent cords pulled up,
so that they die without wisdom?'

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Eliphaz keeps going. If I were you, I would take my case to God. Blessed is the man God corrects, so do not hate the lesson. Repent, and life will be great again. It sounds nice, but it is aimed at the wrong man.

ELIPHAZ CONTINUES: GOD BLESSES THOSE WHO SEEK HIM

1 "Call out if you please, but who will answer?
To which of the holy ones will you turn?
2 For resentment kills a fool,
and envy slays the simple.
3 I have seen a fool taking root,
but suddenly his house was cursed.
4 His sons are far from safety,
crushed in court without a defender.
5 The hungry consume his harvest,
taking it even from the thorns,
and the thirsty pant after his wealth.
6 For distress does not spring from the dust,
and trouble does not sprout from the ground.
7 Yet man is born to trouble
as surely as sparks fly upward.

8 However, if I were you, I would appeal to God
and lay my cause before Him—
9 the One who does great and unsearchable things,
wonders without number.
10 He gives rain to the earth
and sends water upon the fields.
11 He sets the lowly on high,
so that mourners are lifted to safety.
12 He thwarts the schemes of the crafty,
so that their hands find no success.
13 *He catches the wise in their craftiness,*
and sweeps away the plans of the cunning.
14 They encounter darkness by day
and grope at noon as in the night.
15 He saves the needy from the sword in their mouth
and from the clutches of the powerful.
16 So the poor have hope,
and injustice shuts its mouth.

17 Blessed indeed is the man whom God corrects;
so do not despise the discipline of the Almighty.
18 For He wounds, but He also binds;
He strikes, but His hands also heal.
19 He will rescue you from six calamities;
no harm will touch you in seven.
20 In famine He will redeem you from death,
and in battle from the stroke of the sword.
21 You will be hidden from the scourge of the tongue,
and will not fear havoc when it comes.
22 You will laugh at destruction and famine,
and need not fear the beasts of the earth.
23 For you will have a covenant with the stones of the field,
and the wild animals will be at peace with you.
24 You will know that your tent is secure,
and find nothing amiss when inspecting your home.
25 You will know that your offspring will be many,
your descendants like the grass of the earth.
26 You will come to the grave in full vigor,
like a sheaf of grain gathered in season.

27 Indeed, we have investigated, and it is true!
So hear it and know for yourself."

- **JOB 5:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 3:19 p.1826
- **JOB 5:13 [NOTE]** PAUL QUOTES IT. He catches the wise in their craftiness, 1 Corinthians 3:19. This is the only line from Job's friends quoted in the New Testament. The words are true; the friends just used them on the wrong man.
- **JOB 5:17 [NOTE]** TRUE, BUT AIMED WRONG. Proverbs 3:11 and Hebrews 12:5 say the same thing. Eliphaz says many true things; his mistake is thinking they explain Job.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE BABYLONIAN THEODICY

JOB 4:7 TO 8 · 8:3 TO 6 · 21:7 TO 13



Clay tablets from the library of King Ashurbanipal at Nineveh, British Museum, London. Copies of the Babylonian Theodicy come from this library; the Theodicy tablet itself is not shown. Photo Gary Todd, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

A Babylonian poem in which a suffering man and his friend take turns talking, just like Job and his friends. It has 27 stanzas, with 11 lines in each one. Theodicy means defending God's justice.

HOW OLD IT IS

Many date it to about 1000 BC. The oldest copies we have come from the library of King Ashurbanipal at Nineveh, in the 600s BC.

A HIDDEN NAME

Each stanza starts every line with the same sign. Read the first signs from top to bottom, and they spell a message: I, Saggil kinam ubbib, the priest who says healing prayers, am a worshiper of the god and the king. That is likely the writer's name.

WHAT THE FRIEND SAYS

The gods are fair, so wait and keep praying. People who honor the gods get blessed. Sound familiar? Eliphaz says the same, 4:7 to 8.

WHAT THE SUFFERER SAYS

The wicked get rich, and the poor who pray get nothing. I have been faithful, and look at me. Job says the same thing, 21:7 to 13.

HOW IT ENDS

The friend finally admits the gods made people with lying tongues, so the poor get blamed and the rich get praised. The sufferer asks for pity and prays that the gods will help him. No god answers.

LIKE JOB, AND NOT

Both have a hurting man, a friend who defends heaven, and no easy answer. But in Job, God Himself shows up and speaks, says the friends were wrong, and restores Job.

THE PHOTO

No free photo of a Theodicy tablet could be found. The photo shows tablets from the same royal library where copies of it were kept.

STUDIED IN SCHOOL

Babylonian scribes kept copying it for hundreds of years. A later clay tablet explains its hard words, line by line, like a study guide.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No one thinks Job copied it. It shows that arguing with friends about suffering was an old way to write wisdom.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Job says his pain is heavier than all the sand in the sea. His friends are like a creek that dries up in summer, right when you need a drink. Just show me what I did wrong!

JOB REPLIES: MY COMPLAINT IS JUST

1 Then Job replied:

2 "If only my grief could be weighed
and placed with my calamity on the scales.
3 For then it would outweigh the sand of the seas—
no wonder my words have been rash.
4 For the arrows of the Almighty have pierced me;
my spirit drinks in their poison;
the terrors of God are arrayed against me.
5 Does a wild donkey bray over fresh grass,
or an ox low over its fodder?
6 Is tasteless food eaten without salt,
or is there flavor in the white of an egg?
7 My soul refuses to touch them;
they are loathsome food to me.

8 If only my request were granted
and God would fulfill my hope:
9 that God would be willing to crush me,
to unleash His hand and cut me off!
10 It still brings me comfort,
and joy through unrelenting pain,
that I have not denied
the words of the Holy One.

11 What strength do I have, that I should still hope?
What is my future, that I should be patient?
12 Is my strength like that of stone,
or my flesh made of bronze?
13 Is there any help within me
now that success is driven from me?

14 A despairing man should have the kindness of his friend,
even if he forsakes the fear of the Almighty.
15 But my brothers are as faithless as wadis,
as seasonal streams that overflow,
16 darkened because of the ice
and the inflow of melting snow,
17 but ceasing in the dry season
and vanishing from their channels in the heat.

18 Caravans turn aside from their routes;
they go into the wasteland and perish.
19 The caravans of Tema look for water;
the travelers of Sheba hope to find it.
20 They are confounded because they had hoped;
their arrival brings disappointment.
21 For now you are of no help;
you see terror, and you are afraid.
22 Have I ever said, 'Give me something;
offer me a bribe from your wealth;
23 deliver me from the hand of the enemy;
redeem me from the grasp of the ruthless'?

24 Teach me, and I will be silent.
Help me understand how I have erred.
25 How painful are honest words!
But what does your argument prove?
26 Do you intend to correct my words,
and treat as wind my cry of despair?
27 You would even cast lots for an orphan
and barter away your friend.

28 But now, please look at me.
Would I lie to your face?
29 Reconsider; do not be unjust.
Reconsider, for my righteousness is at stake.
30 Is there iniquity on my tongue?
Can my mouth not discern malice?

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Job talks to God now. Life is hard labor and my nights are long. What is man that You make so much of him? Can You at least look away long enough for me to swallow my spit?

JOB CONTINUES: LIFE SEEMS FUTILE

1 "Is not man consigned to labor on earth?
Are not his days like those of a hired hand?
2 Like a slave he longs for shade;
like a hireling he waits for his wages.
3 So I am allotted months of futility,

and nights of misery are appointed to me.
4 When I lie down I think:
'When will I get up?'
But the night drags on,
and I toss and turn until dawn.
5 My flesh is clothed with worms
and encrusted with dirt;
my skin is cracked and festering.
6 My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle;
they come to an end without hope.

7 Remember that my life is but a breath.
My eyes will never again see happiness.
8 The eye that beholds me will no longer see me.
You will look for me, but I will be no more.
9 As a cloud vanishes and is gone,
so he who goes down to Sheol does not come back up.
10 He never returns to his house;
his place remembers him no more.

11 Therefore I will not restrain my mouth;
I will speak in the anguish of my spirit;
I will complain in the bitterness of my soul.
12 Am I the sea, or the monster of the deep,
that You must keep me under guard?
13 When I think my bed will comfort me
and my couch will ease my complaint,
14 then You frighten me with dreams
and terrify me with visions,
15 so that I would prefer strangling and death
over my life in this body.
16 I loathe my life! I would not live forever.
Leave me alone, for my days are but a breath.

17 What is man that You should exalt him,
that You should set Your heart upon him,
18 that You attend to him every morning,
and test him every moment?
19 Will You never look away from me,
or leave me alone to swallow my spittle?
20 If I have sinned, what have I done to You,
O watcher of mankind?
Why have You made me Your target,
so that I am a burden to You?
21 Why do You not pardon my transgression
and take away my iniquity?
For soon I will lie down in the dust;
You will seek me, but I will be no more."

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS
Bildad jumps in. Does God twist justice? Your kids must have sinned, and they got what they had coming. Ouch. Ask the old timers: plants without water die, and so do people who forget God.

BILDAD: JOB SHOULD REPENT

1 Then Bildad the Shuhite replied:

2 "How long will you go on saying such things?
The words of your mouth are a blustering wind.
3 Does God pervert justice?
Does the Almighty pervert what is right?
4 When your children sinned against Him,
He gave them over to their rebellion.
5 But if you would earnestly seek God
and ask the Almighty for mercy,
6 if you are pure and upright,
even now He will rouse Himself on your behalf
and restore your righteous estate.
7 Though your beginnings were modest,
your latter days will flourish.

8 Please inquire of past generations
and consider the discoveries of their fathers.
9 For we were born yesterday and know nothing;
our days on earth are but a shadow.
10 Will they not teach you and tell you,
and speak from their understanding?
11 Does papyrus grow where there is no marsh?
Do reeds flourish without water?
12 While the shoots are still uncut,
they dry up more quickly than grass.

JOB 7:17 [NOTE] WHAT IS MAN? Psalm 8:4 asks this in wonder. Job turns it around: why does God keep watching me?

13 Such is the destiny of all who forget God;
so the hope of the godless will perish.
14 His confidence is fragile;
his security is in a spider's web.
15 He leans on his web, but it gives way;
he holds fast, but it does not endure.
16 He is a well-watered plant in the sunshine,
spreading its shoots over the garden.
17 His roots wrap around the rock heap;
he looks for a home among the stones.
18 If he is uprooted from his place,
it will disown him, saying, 'I never saw you.'
19 Surely this is the joy of his way;
yet others will spring from the dust.
20 Behold, God does not reject the blameless,
nor will He strengthen the hand of evildoers.
21 He will yet fill your mouth with laughter,
and your lips with a shout of joy.
22 Your enemies will be clothed in shame,
and the tent of the wicked will be no more."

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Job agrees God is just, but how can anyone win a case against Him? He moves mountains and made the stars. If only there were someone to stand between us, a go between who could lay his hand on us both.

JOB: HOW CAN I CONTEND WITH GOD?

1 Then Job answered:

2 "Yes, I know that it is so,
but how can a mortal be righteous before God?
3 If one wished to contend with God,
he could not answer Him one time out of a thousand.
4 God is wise in heart and mighty in strength.
Who has resisted Him and prospered?
5 He moves mountains without their knowledge
and overturns them in His anger.
6 He shakes the earth from its place,
so that its foundations tremble.
7 He commands the sun not to shine;
He seals off the stars.
8 He alone stretches out the heavens
and treads on the waves of the sea.
9 He is the Maker of the Bear and Orion,
of the Pleiades and the constellations of the south.
10 He does great things beyond searching out,
and wonders without number.
11 Were He to pass by me, I would not see Him;
were He to move, I would not recognize Him.
12 If He takes away, who can stop Him?
Who dares to ask Him, 'What are You doing?'
13 God does not restrain His anger;
the helpers of Rahab cower beneath Him.
14 How then can I answer Him
or choose my arguments against Him?
15 For even if I were right, I could not answer.
I could only beg my Judge for mercy.
16 If I summoned Him and He answered me,
I do not believe He would listen to my voice.
17 For He would crush me with a tempest
and multiply my wounds without cause.
18 He does not let me catch my breath,
but overwhelms me with bitterness.
19 If it is a matter of strength,
He is indeed mighty!
If it is a matter of justice,
who can summon Him?
20 Even if I were righteous, my mouth would condemn me;
if I were blameless, it would declare me guilty.
21 Though I am blameless, I have no concern for myself;
I despise my own life.
22 It is all the same, and so I say,
'He destroys both the blameless and the wicked.'
23 When the scourge brings sudden death,

JOB 9:9 [NOTE] THE STARS. The Bear, Orion and the Pleiades are star groups people still know. The Hebrew names are old, so translations differ.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

He mocks the despair of the innocent.
24 The earth is given into the hand of the wicked;
He blindfolds its judges.
If it is not He, then who is it?
25 My days are swifter than a runner;
they flee without seeing good.
26 They sweep by like boats of papyrus,
like an eagle swooping down on its prey.
27 If I were to say, 'I will forget my complaint
and change my expression and smile,'
28 I would still dread all my sufferings;
I know that You will not acquit me.
29 Since I am already found guilty,
why should I labor in vain?
30 If I should wash myself with snow
and cleanse my hands with lye,
31 then You would plunge me into the pit,
and even my own clothes would despise me.
32 For He is not a man like me, that I can answer Him,
that we can take each other to court.
33 Nor is there a mediator between us,
to lay his hand upon us both.
34 Let Him remove His rod from me,
so that His terror will no longer frighten me.
35 Then I would speak without fear of Him.
But as it is, I am on my own.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Job tells God how he feels. You made me like clay and knit me together. So why are You hunting me like a lion? Just give me a little peace before I go to the land of darkness.

JOB'S PLEA TO GOD

1 "I loathe my own life;
I will express my complaint
and speak in the bitterness of my soul.
2 I will say to God:
Do not condemn me!
Let me know why You prosecute me.
3 Does it please You to oppress me,
to reject the work of Your hands
and favor the schemes of the wicked?
4 Do You have eyes of flesh?
Do You see as man sees?
5 Are Your days like those of a mortal,
or Your years like those of a man,
6 that You should seek my iniquity
and search out my sin—
7 though You know that I am not guilty,
and there is no deliverance from Your hand?
8 Your hands shaped me and altogether formed me.
Would You now turn and destroy me?
9 Please remember that You molded me like clay.
Would You now return me to dust?
10 Did You not pour me out like milk,
and curdle me like cheese?
11 You clothed me with skin and flesh,
and knit me together with bones and sinews.
12 You have granted me life and loving devotion,
and Your care has preserved my spirit.
13 Yet You concealed these things in Your heart,
and I know that this was in Your mind:
14 If I sinned, You would take note,
and would not acquit me of my iniquity.
15 If I am guilty, woe to me!
And even if I am righteous, I cannot lift my head.
I am full of shame
and aware of my affliction.
16 Should I hold my head high,
You would hunt me like a lion,
and again display Your power against me.
17 You produce new witnesses against me
and multiply Your anger toward me.
Hardships assault me
in wave after wave.
18 Why then did You bring me from the womb?
Oh, that I had died, and no eye had seen me!
19 If only I had never come to be,

JOB 9:32 [FORESHADOW] Job's longing for a Mediator fulfilled in Christ → 1Ti 2:5 · MEDIUM p.1935

JOB 9:33 [NOTE] SOMEONE BETWEEN US. Job longs for a go between who could stand between God and man. There is one Mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, 1 Timothy 2:5.

THE HEART

but had been carried from the womb to the grave.
20 Are my days not few?
Withdraw from me, that I may have a little comfort,
21 before I go—never to return—
to a land of darkness and gloom,
22 to a land of utter darkness,
of deep shadow and disorder,
where even the light is like darkness."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS
Zophar is the blunt one. You talk too much, Job. God is giving you less than you deserve. Get your heart right, put away your sin, and your troubles will be like water under the bridge.

ZOPHAR REBUKES JOB

1 Then Zophar the Naamathite replied:

2 "Should this stream of words go unanswered
and such a speaker be vindicated?
3 Should your babbling put others to silence?
Will you scoff without rebuke?
4 You have said, 'My doctrine is sound,
and I am pure in Your sight.'
5 But if only God would speak
and open His lips against you,
6 and disclose to you the secrets of wisdom,
for true wisdom has two sides.
Know then that God exacts from you
less than your iniquity deserves.

7 Can you fathom the deep things of God
or discover the limits of the Almighty?
8 They are higher than the heavens—what can you do?
They are deeper than Sheol—what can you know?
9 Their measure is longer than the earth
and wider than the sea.

10 If He comes along to imprison you,
or convenes a court, who can stop Him?
11 Surely He knows the deceit of men.
If He sees iniquity, does He not take note?
12 But a witless man can no more become wise
than the colt of a wild donkey can be born a man!

13 As for you, if you direct your heart
and lift up your hands to Him,
14 if you put away the iniquity in your hand,
and allow no injustice to dwell in your tents,
15 then indeed you will lift up your face without blemish;
you will stand firm and unafraid.
16 For you will forget your misery,
recalling it only as waters gone by.
17 Your life will be brighter than noonday;
its darkness will be like the morning.
18 You will be secure, because there is hope,
and you will look around and lie down in safety.

19 You will lie down without fear,
and many will court your favor.
20 But the eyes of the wicked will fail,
and escape will elude them;
they will hope for their last breath."

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS
Job snaps back. No doubt you are the people, and wisdom will die with you! I know what you know. The tents of robbers are at peace. Ask the animals: God is in charge of everything.

JOB PRESENTS HIS CASE

1 Then Job answered:

2 "Truly then you are the people
with whom wisdom itself will die!
3 But I also have a mind;
I am not inferior to you.
Who does not know such things as these?

4 I am a laughingstock to my friends,
though I called on God, and He answered.
The righteous and upright man is a laughingstock.
5 The one at ease scorns misfortune
as the fate of those whose feet are slipping.

JOB 11:13 [HEART] Zophar said, Direct your heart to God and lift up your hands to Him. Prayer starts with the heart.

NOTABLE

6 The tents of robbers are safe,
and those who provoke God are secure—
those who carry their god in their hands.

7 But ask the animals, and they will instruct you;
ask the birds of the air, and they will tell you.
8 Or speak to the earth, and it will teach you;
let the fish of the sea inform you.
9 Which of all these does not know
that the hand of Yahweh has done this?
10 The life of every living thing is in His hand,
as well as the breath of all mankind.
11 Does not the ear test words
as the tongue tastes its food?
12 Wisdom is found with the elderly,
and understanding comes with long life.

13 Wisdom and strength belong to God;
counsel and understanding are His.
14 What He tears down cannot be rebuilt;
the man He imprisons cannot be released.
15 If He holds back the waters, they dry up,
and if He releases them, they overwhelm the land.
16 True wisdom and power belong to Him.
The deceived and the deceiver are His.
17 He leads counselors away barefoot
and makes fools of judges.
18 He loosens the bonds placed by kings
and fastens a belt around their waists.
19 He leads priests away barefoot
and overthrows the established.
20 He deprives the trusted of speech
and takes away the discernment of elders.
21 He pours out contempt on nobles
and disarms the mighty.
22 He reveals the deep things of darkness
and brings deep shadows into light.
23 He makes nations great and destroys them;
He enlarges nations, then disperses them.
24 He deprives the earth's leaders of reason
and makes them wander in a trackless wasteland.
25 They grope in the darkness without light;
He makes them stagger like drunkards.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Job says, You are worthless doctors, all of you. If only you would shut up, that would be wisdom. I want to argue my case with God Himself. Though He slay me, I will hope in Him.

JOB PREPARES HIS CASE

1 "Indeed, my eyes have seen all this;
my ears have heard and understood.
2 What you know, I also know;
I am not inferior to you.
3 Yet I desire to speak to the Almighty
and argue my case before God.
4 You, however, smear with lies;
you are all worthless physicians.
5 If only you would remain silent;
for that would be your wisdom!

6 Hear now my argument,
and listen to the plea of my lips.
7 Will you speak wickedly on God's behalf
or speak deceitfully for Him?
8 Would you show Him partiality
or argue in His defense?
9 Would it be well when He examined you?
Could you deceive Him as you would deceive a man?
10 Surely He would rebuke you
if you secretly showed partiality.
11 Would His majesty not terrify you?
Would the dread of Him not fall upon you?
12 Your maxims are proverbs of ashes;
your defenses are defenses of clay.

13 Be silent, and I will speak.
Then let come to me what may.
14 Why do I put myself at risk
and take my life in my own hands?
15 Though He slay me, I will hope in Him.
I will still defend my ways to His face.

JOB 13:15 [NOTABLE] Job did not understand God, but he still hoped in Him. Honest questions and real faith can live together.

JOB 13:15 [NOTE] THOUGH HE SLAY ME. The written Hebrew says, I have no hope. But the Jewish scribes

16 Moreover, this will be my salvation,
for no godless man can appear before Him.
17 Listen carefully to my words;
let my declaration ring in your ears.
18 See now, I have prepared my case;
I know that I will be vindicated.
19 Can anyone indict me?
If so, I will be silent and die.

20 Only grant these two things to me,
so that I need not hide from You:
21 Withdraw Your hand from me,
and do not let Your terror frighten me.
22 Then call me, and I will answer,
or let me speak, and You can reply.
23 How many are my iniquities and sins?
Reveal to me my transgression and sin.
24 Why do You hide Your face
and consider me as Your enemy?
25 Would You frighten a windblown leaf?
Would You chase after dry chaff?
26 For You record bitter accusations against me
and bequeath to me the iniquities of my youth.
27 You put my feet in the stocks
and stand watch over all my paths;
You set a limit
for the soles of my feet.

28 So man wastes away like something rotten,
like a moth-eaten garment.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

A sad poem about how short life is. A tree that is cut down can sprout again, but a man dies and is gone. If a man dies, will he live again? Job longs for God to call him back.

JOB LAMENTS THE FINALITY OF DEATH

1 "Man, who is born of woman,
is short of days and full of trouble.
2 Like a flower, he comes forth, then withers away;
like a fleeting shadow, he does not endure.
3 Do You open Your eyes to one like this?
Will You bring him into judgment before You?
4 Who can bring out clean from unclean?
No one!
5 Since his days are determined
and the number of his months is with You,
and since You have set limits
that he cannot exceed,
6 look away from him and let him rest,
so he can enjoy his day as a hired hand.

7 For there is hope for a tree:
If it is cut down, it will sprout again,
and its tender shoots will not fail.
8 If its roots grow old in the ground
and its stump dies in the soil,
9 at the scent of water it will bud
and put forth twigs like a sapling.
10 But a man dies and is laid low;
he breathes his last, and where is he?
11 As water disappears from the sea
and a river becomes parched and dry,
12 so a man lies down
and does not rise.
Until the heavens are no more,
he will not be awakened or roused from sleep.

13 If only You would hide me in Sheol
and conceal me until Your anger has passed!
If only You would appoint a time for me
and then remember me!
14 When a man dies, will he live again?
All the days of my hard service I will wait,
until my renewal comes.
15 You will call, and I will answer;
You will desire the work of Your hands.
16 For then You would count my steps,
but would not keep track of my sin.
17 My transgression would be sealed in a bag,
and You would cover over my iniquity.

18 But as a mountain erodes and crumbles
and a rock is dislodged from its place,
19 as water wears away the stones
and torrents wash away the soil,

wrote a note to read it aloud as, I will hope in Him. Most Bibles follow that note, like the KJV.

■ **JOB 13:16 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → PHIL 1:19 p.1894

■ **JOB 14:14 [NOTE]** WILL HE LIVE AGAIN? Job asks it here. In 19:25 to 27 he answers with hope.

so You destroy a man's hope.
20 You forever overpower him, and he passes on;
You change his countenance and send him away.
21 If his sons receive honor, he does not know it;
if they are brought low, he is unaware.
22 He feels only the pain of his own body and mourns only for himself."

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Eliphaz round two, less gentle. You are wrecking the fear of God, Job. Were you born before the hills? The wicked man lives in fear all his days. In other words, Job, look in the mirror.

ELIPHAZ: JOB DOES NOT FEAR GOD

1 Then Eliphaz the Temanite replied:

2 "Does a wise man answer with empty counsel
or fill his belly with the hot east wind?
3 Should he argue with useless words
or speeches that serve no purpose?
4 But you even undermine the fear of God
and hinder meditation before Him.
5 For your iniquity instructs your mouth,
and you choose the language of the crafty.
6 Your own mouth, not mine, condemns you;
your own lips testify against you.

7 Were you the first man ever born?
Were you brought forth before the hills?
8 Do you listen in on the council of God
or limit wisdom to yourself?
9 What do you know that we do not?
What do you understand that is not clear to us?
10 Both the gray-haired and the aged are on our side—
men much older than your father.
11 Are the consolations of God not enough for you,
even words spoken gently to you?
12 Why has your heart carried you away,
and why do your eyes flash,
13 so that you turn your spirit against God
and pour such words from your mouth?

14 What is man, that he should be pure,
or one born of woman, that he should be righteous?
15 If God puts no trust in His holy ones,
if even the heavens are not pure in His eyes,
16 how much less man, who is vile and corrupt,
who drinks injustice like water?
17 Listen to me and I will inform you.
I will describe what I have seen,
18 what was declared by wise men
and was not concealed from their fathers,
19 to whom alone the land was given
when no foreigner passed among them.

20 A wicked man writhes in pain all his days;
only a few years are reserved for the ruthless.
21 Sounds of terror fill his ears;
in his prosperity the destroyer attacks him.
22 He despairs of his return from darkness;
he is marked for the sword.
23 He wanders about as food for vultures;
he knows the day of darkness is at hand.
24 Distress and anguish terrify him,
overwhelming him like a king poised to attack.
25 For he has stretched out his hand against God
and has vaunted himself against the Almighty,
26 rushing headlong at Him
with a thick, studded shield.

27 Though his face is covered with fat
and his waistline bulges with flesh,
28 he will dwell in ruined cities,
in abandoned houses destined to become rubble.
29 He will no longer be rich; his wealth will not endure.
His possessions will not overspread the land.
30 He will not escape from the darkness;
the flame will wither his shoots,
and the breath of God's mouth
will carry him away.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

31 Let him not deceive himself with trust in emptiness,
for emptiness will be his reward.
32 It will be paid in full before his time,
and his branch will not flourish.
33 He will be like a vine stripped of its unripe grapes,
like an olive tree that sheds its blossoms.
34 For the company of the godless will be barren,
and fire will consume the tents of bribery.
35 They conceive trouble and give birth to evil;
their womb is pregnant with deceit."

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Job says, Miserable comforters are you all! I could talk like you if you were in my shoes. Even now, my witness is in heaven, and the One who speaks for me is on high.

JOB DECRIES HIS COMFORTERS

1 Then Job answered:

2 "I have heard many things like these;
miserable comforters are you all.
3 Is there no end to your long-winded speeches?
What provokes you to continue testifying?
4 I could also speak like you
if you were in my place;
I could heap up words against you
and shake my head at you.
5 But I would encourage you with my mouth,
and the consolation of my lips would bring relief.

6 Even if I speak, my pain is not relieved,
and if I hold back, how will it go away?
7 Surely He has now exhausted me;
You have devastated all my family.
8 You have bound me, and it has become a witness;
my frailty rises up and testifies against me.
9 His anger has torn me and opposed me;
He gnashes His teeth at me.
My adversary pierces me with His eyes.
10 They open their mouths against me
and strike my cheeks with contempt;
they join together against me.
11 God has delivered me to unjust men;
He has thrown me to the clutches of the wicked.
12 I was at ease, but He shattered me;
He seized me by the neck and crushed me.
He has set me up as His target;
13 His archers surround me.
He pierces my kidneys without mercy
and spills my gall on the ground.
14 He breaks me with wound upon wound;
He rushes me like a mighty warrior.

15 I have sewn sackcloth over my skin;
I have buried my horn in the dust.
16 My face is red with weeping,
and deep shadows ring my eyes;
17 yet my hands are free of violence
and my prayer is pure.

18 O earth, do not cover my blood;
may my cry for help never be laid to rest.
19 Even now my witness is in heaven,
and my advocate is on high.
20 My friends are my scoffers
as my eyes pour out tears to God.
21 Oh, that a man might plead with God
as he pleads with his neighbor!
22 For when only a few years are past
I will go the way of no return.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Job is worn out. My spirit is broken, my days are done, and the grave is waiting. People spit in my face. Where then is my hope?

JOB PREPARES FOR DEATH

1 "My spirit is broken; my days are extinguished;
the grave awaits me.
2 Surely mockers surround me,

JOB 16:10 [FORESHADOW] The suffering righteous man is struck on the cheek by a crowd → MT 26:67; MK 14:65 · MEDIUM p.1596

JOB 16:10 [NOTE] STRUCK ON THE CHEEK. They struck Jesus too, Matthew 26:67.

JOB 16:19 [NOTE] MY WITNESS IS IN HEAVEN. Job believes someone in heaven will speak up for him.

and my eyes must gaze at their rebellion.

3 Give me, I pray, the pledge You demand.
Who else will be my guarantor?
4 You have closed their minds to understanding;
therefore You will not exalt them.
5 If a man denounces his friends for a price,
the eyes of his children will fail.

6 He has made me a byword among the people,
a man in whose face they spit.
7 My eyes have grown dim with grief,
and my whole body is but a shadow.
8 The upright are appalled at this,
and the innocent are stirred against the godless.
9 Yet a righteous one holds to his way,
and the one with clean hands grows stronger.
10 But come back and try again, all of you.
For I will not find a wise man among you.

11 My days have passed; my plans are broken off—
even the desires of my heart.
12 They have turned night into day,
making light seem near in the face of darkness.
13 If I look for Sheol as my home,
if I spread out my bed in darkness,
14 and say to corruption, 'You are my father,'
and to the worm, 'My mother,' or 'My sister,'
15 where then is my hope?
Who can see any hope for me?
16 Will it go down to the gates of Sheol?
Will we go down together into the dust?"

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Bildad round two. The wicked man's light goes out, traps grab his heel, and nobody even remembers his name. He does not say Job's name, but everyone knows who he means.

BILDAD: GOD PUNISHES THE WICKED

1 Then Bildad the Shuhite replied:

2 "How long until you end these speeches?
Show some sense, and then we can talk.
3 Why are we regarded as cattle,
as stupid in your sight?
4 You who tear yourself in anger—
should the earth be forsaken on your account,
or the rocks be moved from their place?

5 Indeed, the lamp of the wicked is extinguished;
the flame of his fire does not glow.
6 The light in his tent grows dark,
and the lamp beside him goes out.
7 His vigorous stride is shortened,
and his own schemes trip him up.
8 For his own feet lead him into a net,
and he wanders into its mesh.
9 A trap seizes his heel;
a snare grips him.
10 A noose is hidden in the ground,
and a trap lies in his path.
11 Terrors frighten him on every side
and harass his every step.
12 His strength is depleted,
and calamity is ready at his side.
13 It devours patches of his skin;
the firstborn of death devours his limbs.

14 He is torn from the shelter of his tent
and is marched off to the king of terrors.
15 Fire resides in his tent;
burning sulfur rains down on his dwelling.
16 The roots beneath him dry up,
and the branches above him wither away.
17 The memory of him perishes from the earth,
and he has no name in the land.
18 He is driven from light into darkness
and is chased from the inhabited world.
19 He has no offspring or posterity among his people,
no survivor where he once lived.

20 Those in the west are appalled at his fate,
while those in the east tremble in horror.
21 Surely such is the dwelling of the wicked

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

and the place of one who does not
know God."

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Job's lowest point and highest hope. Family, friends and even his servants have turned away. My breath is strange to my wife. Have pity on me, my friends! Then he shouts it: I know that my Redeemer lives, and in my flesh I will see God.

JOB: MY REDEEMER LIVES

1 Then Job answered:

2 "How long will you torment me
and crush me with your words?
3 Ten times now you have reproached me;
you shamelessly mistreat me.
4 Even if I have truly gone astray,
my error concerns me alone.
5 If indeed you would exalt yourselves
above me
and use my disgrace against me,
6 then understand that it is God who has
wronged me
and drawn His net around me.

7 Though I cry out, 'Violence!' I get no response;
though I call for help, there is no justice.
8 He has blocked my way so I cannot
pass;
He has veiled my paths with darkness.
9 He has stripped me of my honor
and removed the crown from my head.
10 He tears me down on every side until I
am gone;
He uproots my hope like a tree.
11 His anger burns against me,
and He counts me among His enemies.
12 His troops advance together;
they construct a ramp against me
and encamp around my tent.

13 He has removed my brothers from me;
my acquaintances have abandoned me.
14 My kinsmen have failed me,
and my friends have forgotten me.
15 My guests and maidservants count me
as a stranger;
I am a foreigner in their sight.
16 I call for my servant, but he does not answer,
though I implore him with my own
mouth.
17 My breath is repulsive to my wife,
and I am loathsome to my own family.
18 Even little boys scorn me;
when I appear, they deride me.
19 All my best friends despise me,
and those I love have turned against me.
20 My skin and flesh cling to my bones;
I have escaped by the skin of my teeth.

21 Have pity on me, my friends, have pity,
for the hand of God has struck me.
22 Why do you persecute me as God does?
Will you never get enough of my flesh?

23 I wish that my words were recorded
and inscribed in a book,
24 by an iron stylus on lead,
or chiseled in stone forever.
25 But I know that my Redeemer lives,
and in the end He will stand upon the
earth.
26 Even after my skin has been destroyed,
yet in my flesh I will see God.
27 I will see Him for myself;
my eyes will behold Him, and not as a
stranger.
How my heart yearns within me!

28 If you say, 'Let us persecute him,
since the root of the matter lies with
him,'
29 then you should fear the sword yourselves,
because wrath brings punishment by
the sword,
so that you may know there is a judgment."

JOB 19:23 [FORESHADOW] Job's confession that his Redeemer lives and will rise → JN 5:24-29 · MEDIUM p.1707

JOB 19:25 [NOTE] REDEEMER. The Hebrew word go'el means a family member who buys you back or stands up for you. See The Kinsman Redeemer in Ruth, p.428, and the Big Question I Know That My Redeemer Lives.

THE BIG QUESTION

I KNOW THAT MY REDEEMER LIVES

Job's Great Hope

JOB 19:23 TO 27 · 14:14 · 9:33 · 16:19

THE WORDS

I know that my Redeemer lives, and in the end He will stand upon the earth. Even after my skin has been destroyed, yet in my flesh I will see God, 19:25 to 26.

REDEEMER

The Hebrew word go'el means a close relative who buys back what was lost, or stands up for you in court. Boaz was Ruth's go'el. God calls Himself Israel's Redeemer, Isaiah 41:14.

WRITE IT IN ROCK

Right before this, Job wishes his words were carved in stone forever, 19:23 to 24. They have been read for thousands of years.

AN ANSWER TO HIS QUESTION

In 14:14 Job asked, If a man dies, will he live again? Here he answers with hope.

IN MUSIC

Handel's Messiah begins its third part with I know that my Redeemer liveth.

What Did Job Mean?

1 CORINTHIANS 15:20 · JOHN 11:25 · 1 CLEMENT 26

VIEW 1: GOD, AND A BODY RAISED FROM THE DEAD

Most Christians read this as hope in God, and in Jesus, and in the resurrection. Clement of Rome, about 96 AD, quoted Job as saying God will raise up this flesh of mine, 1 Clement 26. The Greek Old Testament says God will raise up my skin, and the Latin says I will rise again from the earth on the last day.

VIEW 2: GOD WILL STAND UP FOR ME IN THIS LIFE

The Hebrew of 19:26 is very hard. It can mean in my flesh or without my flesh. Some think Job hoped God would prove him right before he died, and in 42:5 he did see God.

VIEW 3: A WITNESS IN HEAVEN

Some think Job meant a helper in heaven who would argue his case before God, like the go between of 9:33 and the witness of 16:19.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

At the lowest point of his life, with his family and friends gone, Job believed someone would stand up for him in the end, and that he would see God.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Zophar round two. The wicked are happy for a moment, but they puke up their riches, and God makes them pay. He seems personally offended.

ZOPHAR: DESTRUCTION AWAITS THE WICKED

1 Then Zophar the Naamathite replied:

2 "So my anxious thoughts compel me to answer,
because of the turmoil within me.
3 I have heard a rebuke that insults me,
and my understanding prompts a reply.

4 Do you not know that from antiquity,
since man was placed on the earth,
5 the triumph of the wicked has been brief
and the joy of the godless momentary?
6 Though his arrogance reaches the heavens,
and his head touches the clouds,
7 he will perish forever, like his own dung;
those who had seen him will ask,
'Where is he?'
8 He will fly away like a dream, never to be found;
he will be chased away like a vision in the night.
9 The eye that saw him will see him no more,
and his place will no longer behold him.
10 His sons will seek the favor of the poor,
for his own hands must return his wealth.
11 The youthful vigor that fills his bones
will lie down with him in the dust.

12 Though evil is sweet in his mouth
and he conceals it under his tongue,
13 though he cannot bear to let it go
and keeps it in his mouth,
14 yet in his stomach his food sours
into the venom of cobras within him.
15 He swallows wealth but vomits it out;
God will force it from his stomach.

16 He will suck the poison of cobras;
the fangs of a viper will kill him.
17 He will not enjoy the streams,
the rivers flowing with honey and cream.
18 He must return the fruit of his labor without consuming it;
he cannot enjoy the profits of his trading.
19 For he has oppressed and forsaken the poor;
he has seized houses he did not build.
20 Because his appetite is never satisfied,
he cannot escape with his treasure.
21 Nothing is left for him to consume;
thus his prosperity will not endure.
22 In the midst of his plenty, he will be distressed;
the full force of misery will come upon him.
23 When he has filled his stomach,
God will vent His fury upon him,
raining it down on him as he eats.
24 Though he flees from an iron weapon,
a bronze-tipped arrow will pierce him.
25 It is drawn out of his back,
the gleaming point from his liver.
Terrors come over him.
26 Total darkness is reserved for his treasures.
A fire unfanned will consume him
and devour what is left in his tent.
27 The heavens will expose his iniquity,
and the earth will rise up against him.
28 The possessions of his house will be removed,
flowing away on the day of God's wrath.
29 This is the wicked man's portion from God,
the inheritance God has appointed him."

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Job says, Look around. The wicked grow old and rich, their kids dance, and they die in peace. Your neat answers do not fit the real world. Your comfort is all lies.

JOB: GOD WILL PUNISH THE WICKED

1 Then Job answered:
2 "Listen carefully to my words;
let this be your consolation to me.
3 Bear with me while I speak;
then, after I have spoken, you may go on mocking.
4 Is my complaint against a man?
Then why should I not be impatient?
5 Look at me and be appalled;
put your hand over your mouth.
6 When I remember, terror takes hold,
and my body trembles in horror.
7 Why do the wicked live on,
growing old and increasing in power?
8 Their descendants are established around them,
and their offspring before their eyes.
9 Their homes are safe from fear;
no rod of punishment from God is upon them.
10 Their bulls breed without fail;
their cows bear calves and do not miscarry.
11 They send forth their little ones like a flock;
their children skip about,
12 singing to the tambourine and lyre
and making merry at the sound of the flute.
13 They spend their days in prosperity
and go down to Sheol in peace.
14 Yet they say to God: 'Leave us alone!
For we have no desire to know Your ways.
15 Who is the Almighty, that we should serve Him,
and what would we gain if we pray to Him?'
16 Still, their prosperity is not in their own hands,
so I stay far from the counsel of the wicked.
17 How often is the lamp of the wicked put out?
Does disaster come upon them?
Does God, in His anger, apportion destruction?
18 Are they like straw before the wind,
like chaff swept away by a storm?

JOB 21:7 [NOTE] WHY DO THE WICKED PROSPER? The same question as Psalm 73 and Jeremiah 12:1.

19 It is said that God lays up one's punishment for his children.
Let God repay the man himself, so he will know it.
20 Let his eyes see his own destruction;
let him drink for himself the wrath of the Almighty.
21 For what does he care about his household after him,
when the number of his months has run out?

22 Can anyone teach knowledge to God,
since He judges those on high?
23 One man dies full of vigor,
completely secure and at ease.
24 His body is well nourished,
and his bones are rich with marrow.
25 Yet another man dies in the bitterness of his soul,
having never tasted prosperity.
26 But together they lie down in the dust,
and worms cover them both.

27 Behold, I know your thoughts full well,
the schemes by which you would wrong me.
28 For you say, 'Where now is the nobleman's house,
and where are the tents in which the wicked dwell?'
29 Have you never asked those who travel the roads?
Do you not accept their reports?
30 Indeed, the evil man is spared from the day of calamity,
delivered from the day of wrath.
31 Who denounces his behavior to his face?
Who repays him for what he has done?
32 He is carried to the grave,
and watch is kept over his tomb.
33 The clods of the valley are sweet to him;
everyone follows behind him,
and those before him are without number.

34 So how can you comfort me with empty words?
For your answers remain full of falsehood."

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Eliphaz round three, and he makes up crimes. You must have stripped the poor and sent widows away empty! Make peace with God, and gold will be like dust.

ELIPHAZ: CAN A MAN BE OF USE TO GOD?

1 Then Eliphaz the Temanite replied:

2 "Can a man be of use to God?
Can even a wise man benefit Him?
3 Does it delight the Almighty that you are righteous?
Does He profit if your ways are blameless?

4 Is it for your reverence that He rebukes you
and enters into judgment against you?
5 Is not your wickedness great?
Are not your iniquities endless?
6 For you needlessly demanded security from your brothers
and deprived the naked of their clothing.
7 You gave no water to the weary
and withheld food from the famished,
8 while the land belonged to a mighty man,
and a man of honor lived on it.
9 You sent widows away empty-handed,
and the strength of the fatherless was crushed.
10 Therefore snares surround you,
and sudden peril terrifies you;
11 it is so dark you cannot see,
and a flood of water covers you.

12 Is not God as high as the heavens?
Look at the highest stars, how lofty they are!
13 Yet you say: 'What does God know?
Does He judge through thick darkness?
14 Thick clouds veil Him so He does not see us
as He traverses the vault of heaven.'

15 Will you stay on the ancient path
that wicked men have trod?
16 They were snatched away before their time,

JOB 22:6 [NOTE] MADE UP CRIMES. Eliphaz has no proof. He thinks Job must have done these things, because he is suffering.

THE HEART NOTABLE

and their foundations were swept away
by a flood.
17 They said to God, 'Depart from us.
What can the Almighty do to us?'
18 But it was He who filled their houses
with good things;
so I stay far from the counsel of the
wicked.
19 The righteous see it and are glad;
the innocent mock them:
20 'Surely our foes are destroyed,
and fire has consumed their excess.'

21 Reconcile now and be at peace with
Him;
thereby good will come to you.
22 Receive instruction from His mouth,
and lay up His words in your heart.
23 If you return to the Almighty, you will be
restored.
If you remove injustice from your tents
24 and consign your gold to the dust
and the gold of Ophir to the stones of
the ravines,
25 then the Almighty will be your gold
and the finest silver for you.
26 Surely then you will delight in the
Almighty
and lift up your face to God.
27 You will pray to Him, and He will hear
you,
and you will fulfill your vows.
28 Your decisions will be carried out,
and light will shine on your ways.
29 When men are brought low and you say,
'Lift them up!'
then He will save the lowly.
30 He will deliver even one who is not in-
nocent,
rescuing him through the cleanness of
your hands."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Job wants to find God and lay out his case, but he cannot find Him anywhere. Still, He knows the way I take; when He has tested me, I will come out as gold.

JOB LONGS FOR GOD

1 Then Job answered:

2 "Even today my complaint is bitter.
His hand is heavy despite my groaning.
3 If only I knew where to find Him,
so that I could go to His seat.
4 I would plead my case before Him
and fill my mouth with arguments.
5 I would learn how He would answer,
and consider what He would say.
6 Would He contend with me in His great
power?
No, He would certainly take note of me.
7 Then an upright man could reason with
Him,
and I would be delivered forever from
my Judge.

8 If I go east, He is not there,
and if I go west, I cannot find Him.
9 When He is at work in the north, I cannot
behold Him;
when He turns to the south, I cannot see
Him.
10 Yet He knows the way I have taken;
when He has tested me, I will come
forth as gold.
11 My feet have followed in His tracks;
I have kept His way without turning
aside.
12 I have not departed from the command
of His lips;
I have treasured the words of His mouth
more than my daily bread.

13 But He is unchangeable, and who can
oppose Him?
He does what He desires.
14 For He carries out His decree against
me,
and He has many such plans.
15 Therefore I am terrified in His presence;
when I consider this, I fear Him.
16 God has made my heart faint;
the Almighty has terrified me.
17 Yet I am not silenced by the darkness,
by the thick darkness that covers my
face.

JOB 22:22 [HEART] Receive instruction from God's mouth and lay up His words in your heart.

JOB 23:10 [NOTABLE] Fire does not destroy gold; it makes it pure. God knows your road even when you cannot see Him.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Job asks why God does not set court dates. The poor get crushed, murderers sneak around in the dark, and God seems silent. Yet in the end the wicked are cut down like heads of grain.

JOB: JUDGMENT FOR THE WICKED

1 "Why does the Almighty not reserve
times for judgment?
Why may those who know Him never
see His days?
2 Men move boundary stones;
they pasture stolen flocks.
3 They drive away the donkey of the fa-
therless
and take the widow's ox in pledge.
4 They push the needy off the road
and force all the poor of the land into
hiding.
5 Indeed, like wild donkeys in the desert,
the poor go to work foraging for food;
the wasteland is food for their children.
6 They gather fodder in the fields
and glean the vineyards of the wicked.
7 Without clothing, they spend the night
naked;
they have no covering against the cold.
8 Drenched by mountain rains,
they huddle against the rocks for want
of shelter.
9 The fatherless infant is snatched from
the breast;
the nursing child of the poor is seized
for a debt.
10 Without clothing, they wander about
naked.
They carry the sheaves, but still go hun-
gry.
11 They crush olives within their walls;
they tread the winepresses, but go
thirsty.
12 From the city, men groan,
and the souls of the wounded cry out,
yet God charges no one with wrongdo-
ing.
13 Then there are those who rebel against
the light,
not knowing its ways or staying on its
paths.
14 When daylight is gone, the murderer
rises
to kill the poor and needy;
in the night he is like a thief.
15 The eye of the adulterer watches for
twilight.
Thinking, 'No eye will see me,' he cov-
ers his face.
16 In the dark they dig through houses;
by day they shut themselves in,
never to experience the light.
17 For to them, deep darkness is their
morning;
surely they are friends with the terrors
of darkness!
18 They are but foam on the surface of the
water;
their portion of the land is cursed,
so that no one turns toward their vine-
yards.
19 As drought and heat consume the melt-
ing snow,
so Sheol steals those who have sinned.
20 The womb forgets them;
the worm feeds on them;
they are remembered no more.
So injustice is broken like a tree.
21 They prey on the barren and childless,
and show no kindness to the widow.
22 Yet by His power, God drags away the
mighty;
though rising up, they have no assur-
ance of life.
23 He gives them a sense of security,
but His eyes are on their ways.
24 They are exalted for a moment,
then they are gone;
they are brought low and gathered up like
all others;
they are cut off like heads of grain.
25 If this is not so, then who can prove me
a liar
and reduce my words to nothing?"

THE HEART

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Bildad's last speech is six verses. How can a man be right before God? Even the moon is not bright in His eyes, much less a human, who is a maggot. Thanks, Bildad.

BILDAD: MAN CANNOT BE RIGHTEOUS

1 Then Bildad the Shuhite replied:

2 "Dominion and awe belong to God;
He establishes harmony in the heights of heaven.
3 Can His troops be numbered?
On whom does His light not rise?
4 How then can a man be just before God?
How can one born of woman be pure?
5 If even the moon does not shine,
and the stars are not pure in His sight,
6 how much less man, who is but a maggot,
and the son of man, who is but a worm!"

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Job mocks Bildad's help, then praises God's power. He hangs the earth on nothing. And these are only the edges of His ways. Who can understand the thunder of His power?

JOB: WHO CAN UNDERSTAND GOD'S MAJESTY?

1 Then Job answered:

2 "How you have helped the powerless
and saved the arm that is feeble!
3 How you have counseled the unwise
and provided fully sound insight!
4 To whom have you uttered these words?
And whose spirit spoke through you?

5 The dead tremble—
those beneath the waters and those who dwell in them.
6 Sheol is naked before God,
and Abaddon has no covering.
7 He stretches out the north over empty space;
He hangs the earth upon nothing.
8 He wraps up the waters in His clouds,
yet the clouds do not burst under their own weight.
9 He covers the face of the full moon,
spreading over it His cloud.
10 He has inscribed a horizon on the face of the waters
at the boundary between light and darkness.
11 The foundations of heaven quake,
astounded at His rebuke.
12 By His power He stirred the sea;
by His understanding He shattered Rahab.
13 By His breath the skies were cleared;
His hand pierced the fleeing serpent.
14 Indeed, these are but the fringes of His ways;
how faint is the whisper we hear of Him!
Who then can understand
the thunder of His power?"

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Job will not lie and say he did wrong. As long as I have breath, I will hold on to my innocence. Then he describes what happens to the wicked.

JOB AFFIRMS HIS INTEGRITY

1 Job continued his discourse:

2 "As surely as God lives, who has deprived me of justice—
the Almighty, who has embittered my soul—
3 as long as my breath is still within me
and the breath of God remains in my nostrils,
4 my lips will not speak wickedness,
and my tongue will not utter deceit.
5 I will never say that you are right;
I will maintain my integrity until I die.
6 I will cling to my righteousness and never let go.
As long as I live, my heart will not reproach me.

THE WICKED MAN'S PORTION

7 May my enemy be like the wicked
and my opponent like the unjust.

JOB 25:6 [NOTE] A MAGGOT. Bildad's last word on mankind. Psalm 22:6 uses the same picture, I am a worm and not a man.

JOB 26:7 [NOTE] ON NOTHING. He hangs the earth on nothing. Many ancient people pictured the earth on pillars or on the back of an animal.

JOB 27:6 [HEART] Job said his heart would not reproach him as long as he lived. He knew his heart was right with God.

8 For what is the hope of the godless when
he is cut off,
when God takes away his life?
9 Will God hear his cry
when distress comes upon him?
10 Will he delight in the Almighty?
Will he call upon God at all times?
11 I will instruct you in the power of God.
I will not conceal the ways of the
Almighty.
12 Surely all of you have seen it for your-
selves.
Why then do you keep up this empty
talk?

13 This is the wicked man's portion from
God—
the heritage the ruthless receive from
the Almighty.
14 Though his sons are many, they are
destined for the sword;
and his offspring will never have enough
food.
15 His survivors will be buried by the
plague,
and their widows will not weep for them.
16 Though he heaps up silver like dust
and piles up a wardrobe like clay,
17 what he lays up, the righteous will wear,
and his silver will be divided by the in-
nocent.
18 The house he built is like a moth's co-
coon,
like a hut set up by a watchman.
19 He lies down wealthy, but will do so no
more;
when he opens his eyes, all is gone.
20 Terrors overtake him like a flood;
a tempest sweeps him away in the
night.
21 The east wind carries him away, and he
is gone;
it sweeps him out of his place.
22 It hurls itself against him without mercy
as he flees headlong from its power.
23 It claps its hands at him
and hisses him out of his place.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

A poem about wisdom. People dig deep mines for silver and gold, but where can wisdom be found? It cannot be bought. God alone knows the way to it. The fear of the Lord, that is wisdom.

WHERE CAN WISDOM BE FOUND?

1 "Surely there is a mine for silver
and a place where gold is refined.
2 Iron is taken from the earth,
and copper is smelted from ore.
3 Man puts an end to the darkness;
he probes the farthest recesses
for ore in deepest darkness.
4 Far from human habitation he cuts a
shaft
in places forgotten by the foot of man.
Far from men he dangles and sways.
5 Food may come from the earth,
but from below it is transformed as by
fire.
6 Its rocks are the source of sapphires,
containing flecks of gold.
7 No bird of prey knows that path;
no falcon's eye has seen it.
8 Proud beasts have never trodden it;
no lion has ever prowled over it.
9 The miner strikes the flint;
he overturns mountains at their base.
10 He hews out channels in the rocks,
and his eyes spot every treasure.
11 He stops up the sources of the streams
to bring what is hidden to light.

12 But where can wisdom be found,
and where does understanding dwell?
13 No man can know its value,
nor is it found in the land of the living.
14 The ocean depths say, 'It is not in me,'
while the sea declares, 'It is not with
me.'
15 It cannot be bought with gold,
nor can its price be weighed out in sil-
ver.
16 It cannot be valued in the gold of Ophir,
in precious onyx or sapphire.
17 Neither gold nor crystal can compare to
it,
nor jewels of fine gold be exchanged for
it.

18 Coral and quartz are unworthy of mention;
the price of wisdom is beyond rubies.
19 Topaz from Cush cannot compare to it,
nor can it be valued in pure gold.

20 From where, then, does wisdom come,
and where does understanding dwell?
21 It is hidden from the eyes of every living thing
and concealed from the birds of the air.
22 Abaddon and Death say,
'We have heard a rumor about it.'
23 But God understands its way,
and He knows its place.
24 For He looks to the ends of the earth
and sees everything under the heavens.
25 When God fixed the weight of the wind
and measured out the waters,
26 when He set a limit for the rain
and a path for the thunderbolt,
27 then He looked at wisdom and appraised it;
He established it and searched it out.
28 And He said to man, 'Behold,
the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom,
and to turn away from evil is understanding.'"

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

Job remembers the good old days, when God was his friend, his kids were around him, and people stood up when he walked by. He helped the poor, the widow and the orphan.

JOB'S FORMER BLESSINGS

1 And Job continued his discourse:

2 "How I long for the months gone by,
for the days when God watched over me,
3 when His lamp shone above my head,
and by His light I walked through the darkness,
4 when I was in my prime,
when the friendship of God rested on my tent,
5 when the Almighty was still with me
and my children were around me,
6 when my steps were bathed in cream
and the rock poured out for me streams of oil!

7 When I went out to the city gate
and took my seat in the public square,
8 the young men saw me and withdrew,
and the old men rose to their feet.
9 The princes refrained from speaking
and covered their mouths with their hands.
10 The voices of the nobles were hushed,
and their tongues stuck to the roofs of their mouths.
11 For those who heard me called me blessed,
and those who saw me commended me,
12 because I rescued the poor who cried out
and the fatherless who had no helper.
13 The dying man blessed me,
and I made the widow's heart sing for joy.
14 I put on righteousness, and it clothed me;
justice was my robe and my turban.
15 I served as eyes to the blind
and as feet to the lame.
16 I was a father to the needy,
and I took up the case of the stranger.
17 I shattered the fangs of the unjust
and snatched the prey from his teeth.

18 So I thought: 'I will die in my nest
and multiply my days as the sand.
19 My roots will spread out to the waters,
and the dew will rest nightly on my branches.
20 My glory is ever new within me,
and my bow is renewed in my hand.'

21 Men listened to me with expectation,
waiting silently for my counsel.
22 After my words, they spoke no more;
my speech settled on them like dew.
23 They waited for me as for rain
and drank in my words like spring showers.
24 If I smiled at them, they did not believe it;
the light of my countenance was precious.

JOB 28:28 [NOTE] FEAR AND WISDOM. Proverbs 1:7 and 9:10 say it too. It means deep respect and awe for God that shapes how you live.

25 I chose their course and presided as
chief.
So I dwelt as a king among his troops,
as a comforter of the mourners.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

But now young men mock him, men whose fathers he would not have trusted with his sheep dogs. His skin turns black and peels. I cry out to You, God, and You do not answer.

JOB'S HONOR TURNED TO CONTEMPT

1 "But now they mock me,
men younger than I am,
whose fathers I would have refused
to put with my sheep dogs.
2 What use to me was the strength of their
hands,
since their vigor had left them?
3 Gaunt from poverty and hunger,
they gnawed the dry land,
and the desolate wasteland by night.
4 They plucked mallow among the shrubs,
and the roots of the broom tree were
their food.
5 They were banished from among men,
shouted at like thieves,
6 so that they lived on the slopes of the
wadis,
among the rocks and in holes in the
ground.
7 They cried out among the shrubs
and huddled beneath the nettles.
8 A senseless and nameless brood,
they were driven off the land.

9 And now they mock me in song;
I have become a byword among them.
10 They abhor me and keep far from me;
they do not hesitate to spit in my face.
11 Because God has unstrung my bow and
afflicted me,
they have cast off restraint in my pres-
ence.
12 The rabble arises at my right;
they lay snares for my feet
and build siege ramps against me.
13 They tear up my path;
they profit from my destruction,
with no one to restrain them.
14 They advance as through a wide
breach;
through the ruins they keep rolling in.

JOB'S PROSPERITY BECOMES CALAMITY

15 Terrors are turned loose against me;
they drive away my dignity as by the
wind,
and my prosperity has passed like a
cloud.
16 And now my soul is poured out within
me;
days of affliction grip me.
17 Night pierces my bones,
and my gnawing pains never rest.
18 With great force He grasps my garment;
He seizes me by the collar of my tunic.
19 He throws me into the mud,
and I have become like dust and ashes.

20 I cry out to You for help, but You do not
answer;
when I stand up, You merely look at me.
21 You have ruthlessly turned on me;
You oppose me with Your strong hand.
22 You snatch me up into the wind
and drive me before it;
You toss me about in the storm.
23 Yes, I know that You will bring me down
to death,
to the place appointed for all the living.

24 Yet no one stretches out his hand
against a ruined man
when he cries for help in his distress.
25 Have I not wept for those in trouble?
Has my soul not grieved for the needy?
26 But when I hoped for good, evil came;
when I looked for light, darkness fell.
27 I am churning within and cannot rest;
days of affliction confront me.
28 I go about blackened, but not by the
sun.
I stand up in the assembly and cry for
help.
29 I have become a brother of jackals,
a companion of ostriches.
30 My skin grows black and peels,
and my bones burn with fever.
31 My harp is tuned to mourning
and my flute to the sound of weeping.

THE HEART DEMONIC

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

Job's final oath. He made a covenant with his eyes not to look at a young woman with lust. He did not cheat, did not ignore the poor and did not trust in gold. If I did, let me be cursed. Then he signs it. The words of Job are ended.

JOB'S FINAL APPEAL

1 "I have made a covenant with my eyes.
How then could I gaze with desire at a virgin?
2 For what is the allotment of God from above,
or the heritage from the Almighty on high?
3 Does not disaster come to the unjust
and calamity to the workers of iniquity?
4 Does He not see my ways
and count my every step?

5 If I have walked in falsehood
or my foot has rushed to deceit,
6 let God weigh me with honest scales,
that He may know my integrity.
7 If my steps have turned from the path,
if my heart has followed my eyes,
or if impurity has stuck to my hands,
8 then may another eat what I have sown,
and may my crops be uprooted.

9 If my heart has been enticed by my neighbor's wife,
or I have lurked at his door,
10 then may my own wife grind grain for another,
and may other men sleep with her.
11 For that would be a heinous crime,
an iniquity to be judged.
12 For it is a fire that burns down to Abaddon;
it would root out my entire harvest.

13 If I have rejected the cause of my manservant or maidservant
when they made a complaint against me,
14 what will I do when God rises to judge?
How will I answer when called to account?
15 Did not He who made me in the womb also make them?
Did not the same One form us in the womb?

16 If I have denied the desires of the poor
or allowed the widow's eyes to fail,
17 if I have eaten my morsel alone,
not sharing it with the fatherless—
18 though from my youth I reared him as would a father,
and from my mother's womb I guided the widow—
19 if I have seen one perish for lack of clothing,
or a needy man without a cloak,
20 if his heart has not blessed me
for warming him with the fleece of my sheep,
21 if I have lifted up my hand against the fatherless
because I saw that I had support in the gate,
22 then may my arm fall from my shoulder
and be torn from its socket.
23 For calamity from God terrifies me,
and His splendor I cannot overpower.

24 If I have put my trust in gold
or called pure gold my security,
25 if I have rejoiced in my great wealth
because my hand had gained so much,
26 if I have beheld the sun in its radiance
or the moon moving in splendor,
27 so that my heart was secretly enticed
and my hand threw a kiss from my mouth,
28 this would also be an iniquity to be judged,
for I would have denied God on high.

29 If I have rejoiced in my enemy's ruin,
or exulted when evil befell him—
30 I have not allowed my mouth to sin
by asking for his life with a curse—
31 if the men of my house have not said,
'Who is there who has not had his fill?'—
32 but no stranger had to lodge on the street,

JOB 31:1 [NOTE] A COVENANT WITH MY EYES. Long before Jesus said looking with lust is adultery of the heart, Matthew 5:28, Job made a promise about his eyes.

JOB 31:7 [HEART] Job asked to be judged if his heart had followed his eyes. What you keep looking at, your heart starts to want.

JOB 31:26 [DEMONIC] Job refuses to worship the sun and moon

for my door has been open to the traveler—
33 if I have covered my transgressions like Adam
by hiding my guilt in my heart,
34 because I greatly feared the crowds
and the contempt of the clans terrified me,
so that I kept silent
and would not go outside—
35 (Oh, that I had one to hear me!
Here is my signature.
Let the Almighty answer me;
let my accuser compose an indictment.
36 Surely I would carry it on my shoulder
and wear it like a crown.
37 I would give account of all my steps;
I would approach Him like a prince.)—
38 if my land cries out against me
and its furrows weep together,
39 if I have devoured its produce without payment
or broken the spirit of its tenants,
40 then let briers grow instead of wheat
and stinkweed instead of barley."

Thus conclude the words of Job.

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

A young man named Elihu has been waiting his turn, and he is angry at everyone. I am young, so I kept quiet, but I am about to burst like new wineskins.

ELIHU REBUKES JOB'S FRIENDS

1 So these three men stopped answering Job, because he was righteous in his own eyes.

2 This kindled the anger of Elihu son of Barachel the Buzite, of the family of Ram. He burned with anger against Job for justifying himself rather than God, 3 and he burned with anger against Job's three friends because they had failed to refute Job, and yet had condemned him.

4 Now Elihu had waited to speak to Job because the others were older than he. 5 But when he saw that the three men had no further reply, his anger was kindled. 6 So Elihu son of Barachel the Buzite declared:

"I am young in years,
while you are old;
that is why I was timid and afraid
to tell you what I know.
7 I thought that age should speak,
and many years should teach wisdom.
8 But there is a spirit in a man,
the breath of the Almighty,
that gives him understanding.
9 It is not only the old who are wise,
or the elderly who understand justice.
10 Therefore I say, 'Listen to me;
I too will declare what I know.'

11 Indeed, I waited while you spoke;
I listened to your reasoning;
as you searched for words,
12 I paid you full attention.
But no one proved Job wrong;
not one of you rebutted his arguments.
13 So do not claim, 'We have found wisdom;
let God, not man, refute him.'
14 But Job has not directed his words against me,
and I will not answer him with your arguments.

15 Job's friends are dismayed, with no more to say;
words have escaped them.
16 Must I wait, now that they are silent,
now that they stand and no longer reply?
17 I too will answer;
yes, I will declare what I know.
18 For I am full of words,
and my spirit within me compels me.
19 Behold, my belly is like unvented wine;
it is about to burst like a new wineskin.
20 I must speak and find relief;
I must open my lips and respond.
21 I will be partial to no one,
nor will I flatter any man.
22 For I do not know how to flatter,

■ **JOB 31:40 [NOTE]** THE WORDS OF JOB ARE ENDED. Job has said his piece. He speaks again only to answer God, 40:3 to 5 and 42:1 to 6.
■ **JOB 32:2 [NOTE]** ELIHU. His name means He is my God. He is angry at Job for justifying himself, and at the friends for condemning Job without an answer. God never answers him, for good or bad.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

or my Maker would remove me in an instant.

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

Elihu speaks to Job. God does speak, in dreams and in pain, to turn a man back from the pit. If there is an angel, a mediator, he says, Spare him, I have found a ransom.

ELIHU REBUKES JOB

1 "But now, O Job, hear my speech,
and listen to all my words.
2 Behold, I will open my mouth;
my address is on the tip of my tongue.
3 My words are from an upright heart,
and my lips speak sincerely what I know.
4 The Spirit of God has made me,
and the breath of the Almighty gives me life.
5 Refute me if you can;
prepare your case and confront me.
6 I am just like you before God;
I was also formed from clay.
7 Surely no fear of me should terrify you;
nor will my hand be heavy upon you.

8 Surely you have spoken in my hearing,
and I have heard these very words:
9 'I am pure, without transgression;
I am clean, with no iniquity in me.
10 Yet God finds occasions against me;
He counts me as His enemy.
11 He puts my feet in the stocks;
He watches over all my paths.'

12 Behold, you are not right in this matter.
I will answer you, for God is greater than man.
13 Why do you complain to Him
that He answers nothing a man asks?
14 For God speaks in one way and in another,
yet no one notices.
15 In a dream,
in a vision in the night,
when deep sleep falls upon men
as they slumber on their beds,
16 He opens their ears
and terrifies them with warnings
17 to turn a man from wrongdoing
and keep him from pride,
18 to preserve his soul from the Pit
and his life from perishing by the sword.

19 A man is also chastened on his bed
with pain and constant distress in his bones,
20 so that he detests his bread,
and his soul loathes his favorite food.
21 His flesh wastes away from sight,
and his hidden bones protrude.
22 He draws near to the Pit,
and his life to the messengers of death.

23 Yet if there is a messenger on his side,
one mediator in a thousand,
to tell a man what is right for him,
24 to be gracious to him and say,
'Spare him from going down to the Pit;
I have found his ransom,'
25 then his flesh is refreshed like a child's;
he returns to the days of his youth.
26 He prays to God and finds favor;
he sees God's face and shouts for joy,
and God restores His righteousness
to that man.
27 Then he sings before men
with these words:
'I have sinned and perverted what was right;
yet I did not get what I deserved.
28 He redeemed my soul from going down to the Pit,
and I will live to see the light.'

29 Behold, all these things God does to a man,
two or even three times,
30 to bring back his soul from the Pit,
that he may be enlightened with the light of life.
31 Pay attention, Job, and listen to me;
be silent, and I will speak.
32 But if you have something to say, answer me;
speak up, for I would like to vindicate you.
33 But if not, then listen to me;

JOB 33:23 [FORESHADOW] A mediator says spare him from the pit, I have found a ransom → 1TI 2:5-6; MK 10:45 · MEDIUM p.1935

JOB 33:23 [NOTE] A MEDIATOR AND A RANSOM. Many see a picture of Jesus here, who gave His life as a ransom for many, Mark 10:45.

be quiet, and I will teach you wisdom."

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

Elihu says, Far be it from God to do wrong! He repays everyone for what they do. Job talks without knowledge. Elihu has a lot of opinions.

ELIHU CONFIRMS GOD'S JUSTICE

1 Then Elihu continued:

2 "Hear my words, O wise men;
give ear to me, O men of learning.
3 For the ear tests words
as the mouth tastes food.
4 Let us choose for ourselves what is right;
let us learn together what is good.
5 For Job has declared, 'I am righteous,
yet God has deprived me of justice.
6 Would I lie about my case?
My wound is incurable,
though I am without transgression.'
7 What man is like Job,
who drinks up derision like water?
8 He keeps company with evildoers
and walks with wicked men.
9 For he has said, 'It profits a man nothing
that he should delight in God.'

10 Therefore listen to me,
O men of understanding.
Far be it from God to do wrong,
and from the Almighty to act unjustly.
11 For according to a man's deeds He repays him;
according to a man's ways He brings consequences.
12 Indeed, it is true that God does not act wickedly,
and the Almighty does not pervert justice.
13 Who gave Him charge over the earth?
Who appointed Him over the whole world?
14 If He were to set His heart to it
and withdraw His Spirit and breath,
15 all flesh would perish together
and mankind would return to the dust.

16 If you have understanding, hear this;
listen to my words.
17 Could one who hates justice govern?
Will you condemn the just and mighty One,
18 who says to kings, 'You are worthless!'
and to nobles, 'You are wicked,'
19 who is not partial to princes
and does not favor rich over poor?
For they are all the work of His hands.
20 They die in an instant,
in the middle of the night.
The people convulse and pass away;
the mighty are removed without human hand.

21 For His eyes are on the ways of a man,
and He sees his every step.
22 There is no darkness or deep shadow
where the workers of iniquity can hide.
23 For God need not examine a man further
or have him approach for judgment.
24 He shatters the mighty without inquiry
and sets up others in their place.
25 Therefore, He recognizes their deeds;
He overthrows them in the night and they are crushed.
26 He strikes them for their wickedness
in full view,
27 because they turned aside from Him
and had no regard for any of His ways.
28 They caused the cry of the poor to come before Him,
and He heard the outcry of the afflicted.
29 But when He remains silent, who can condemn Him?
When He hides His face, who can see Him?
Yet He watches over both man and nation,
30 that godless men should not rule
or lay snares for the people.

31 Suppose someone says to God,
'I have endured my punishment; I will offend no more.
32 Teach me what I cannot see;
if I have done wrong, I will not do it again.'
33 Should God repay you on your own terms
when you have disavowed Him?
You must choose, not I;
so tell me what you know.
34 Men of understanding will declare to me,

and the wise men who hear me will say:
35 'Job speaks without knowledge;
his words lack insight.'
36 If only Job were tried to the utmost
for answering like a wicked man.
37 For he adds rebellion to his sin;
he claps his hands among us
and multiplies his words against God."

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

Elihu asks, What good does it do God if you are righteous? People cry out in pain, but they do not ask, Where is God my Maker, who gives songs in the night?

ELIHU RECALLS GOD'S JUSTICE

1 And Elihu went on to say:

2 "Do you think this is just?
You say, 'I am more righteous than God.'
3 For you ask, 'What does it profit me,
and what benefit do I gain apart from sin?'
4 I will reply to you
and to your friends as well.
5 Look to the heavens and see;
gaze at the clouds high above you.
6 If you sin, what do you accomplish against Him?
If you multiply your transgressions, what do you do to Him?
7 If you are righteous, what do you give Him,
or what does He receive from your hand?
8 Your wickedness affects only a man like yourself,
and your righteousness only a son of man.

9 Men cry out under great oppression;
they plead for relief from the arm of the mighty.
10 But no one asks, 'Where is God my Maker,
who gives us songs in the night,
11 who teaches us more than the beasts of the earth
and makes us wiser than the birds of the air?'
12 There they cry out, but He does not answer,
because of the pride of evil men.
13 Surely God does not listen to empty pleas,
and the Almighty does not take note of it.
14 How much less, then, when you say that you do not see Him,
that your case is before Him and you must wait for Him,
15 and further, that in His anger He has not punished
or taken much notice of folly!
16 So Job opens his mouth in vain
and multiplies words without knowledge."

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

Elihu says God uses suffering to open people's ears. Then he starts describing God's greatness in the rain and the clouds, like a storm is coming.

ELIHU DESCRIBES GOD'S POWER

1 And Elihu continued:

2 "Bear with me a little longer, and I will show you
that there is more to be said on God's behalf.
3 I get my knowledge from afar,
and I will ascribe justice to my Maker.
4 For truly my words are free of falsehood;
one perfect in knowledge is with you.

5 Indeed, God is mighty, but He despises no one;
He is mighty in strength of understanding.
6 He does not keep the wicked alive,
but He grants justice to the afflicted.
7 He does not take His eyes off the righteous,
but He enthrones them with kings
and exalts them forever.

8 And if men are bound with chains,
caught in cords of affliction,
9 then He tells them their deeds
and how arrogantly they have transgressed.
10 He opens their ears to correction

and commands that they turn from iniquity.
11 If they obey and serve Him,
then they end their days in prosperity
and their years in happiness.
12 But if they do not obey,
then they perish by the sword
and die without knowledge.

13 The godless in heart harbor resentment;
even when He binds them, they do not cry for help.
14 They die in their youth,
among the male shrine prostitutes.
15 God rescues the afflicted by their affliction
and opens their ears in oppression.

16 Indeed, He drew you from the jaws of distress
to a spacious and broad place,
to a table full of richness.
17 But now you are laden with the judgment due the wicked;
judgment and justice have seized you.
18 Be careful that no one lures you with riches;
do not let a large bribe lead you astray.
19 Can your wealth or all your mighty effort
keep you from distress?
20 Do not long for the night,
when people vanish from their homes.
21 Be careful not to turn to iniquity,
for this you have preferred to affliction.

22 Behold, God is exalted in His power.
Who is a teacher like Him?
23 Who has appointed His way for Him,
or told Him, 'You have done wrong'?
24 Remember to magnify His work,
which men have praised in song.
25 All mankind has seen it;
men behold it from afar.
26 Indeed, God is great—beyond our knowledge;
the number of His years is unsearchable.
27 For He draws up drops of water
which distill the rain from the mist,
28 which the clouds pour out
and shower abundantly on mankind.
29 Furthermore, who can understand how the clouds spread out,
how the thunder roars from His pavilion?
30 See how He scatters His lightning around Him
and covers the depths of the sea.
31 For by these He judges the nations
and provides food in abundance.
32 He fills His hands with lightning
and commands it to strike its mark.
33 The thunder declares His presence;
even the cattle regard the rising storm.

37

CHAPTER 37 IN 30 SECONDS

The storm gets closer. God thunders with His majestic voice and sends snow and lightning. Out of the north comes golden splendor; God comes in awesome majesty.

ELIHU PROCLAIMS GOD'S MAJESTY

1 "At this my heart also pounds
and leaps from its place.
2 Listen closely to the thunder of His voice
and the rumbling that comes from His mouth.
3 He unleashes His lightning beneath the whole sky
and sends it to the ends of the earth.
4 Then there comes a roaring sound;
He thunders with His majestic voice.
He does not restrain the lightning
when His voice resounds.
5 God thunders wondrously with His voice;
He does great things we cannot comprehend.
6 For He says to the snow, 'Fall on the earth,'
and to the gentle rain, 'Pour out a mighty downpour.'
7 He seals up the hand of every man,
so that all men may know His work.
8 The wild animals enter their lairs;
they settle down in their dens.
9 The tempest comes from its chamber,
and the cold from the driving north winds.
10 By the breath of God the ice is formed
and the watery expanses are frozen.
11 He loads the clouds with moisture;
He scatters His lightning through them.
12 They swirl about,

MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

whirling at His direction,
accomplishing all that He commands
over the face of all the earth.
13 Whether for punishment or for His land,
He accomplishes this in His loving devotion.
14 Listen to this, O Job;
stand still and consider the wonders of God.
15 Do you know how God dispatches the clouds
or makes the lightning flash?
16 Do you understand how the clouds float,
those wonders of Him who is perfect in knowledge?
17 You whose clothes get hot
when the land lies hushed under the south wind,
18 can you, like Him, spread out the skies,
as strong as a mirror of bronze?
19 Teach us what we should say to Him;
we cannot draw up our case because of our darkness.
20 Should He be told that I want to speak?
Would a man ask to be swallowed up?
21 Now no one can gaze at the sun
when it is bright in the skies
after the wind has swept them clean.
22 Out of the north He comes in golden splendor;
awesome majesty surrounds Him.
23 The Almighty is beyond our reach;
He is exalted in power!
In His justice and great righteousness
He does not oppress.
24 Therefore, men fear Him,
for He is not partial to the wise in heart."

38

CHAPTER 38 IN 30 SECONDS

Then God answers Job out of the whirlwind. Brace yourself like a man! Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth? Do you send the lightning? Do you feed the lions? God gives Job a tour of creation.

YAHWEH CHALLENGES JOB

1 Then Yahweh answered Job out of the whirlwind and said:

2 "Who is this who obscures My counsel
by words without knowledge?
3 Now brace yourself like a man;
I will question you, and you shall inform Me.
4 Where were you when I laid the foundations of the earth?
Tell Me, if you have understanding.
5 Who fixed its measurements? Surely you know!
Or who stretched a measuring line across it?
6 On what were its foundations set,
or who laid its cornerstone,
7 while the morning stars sang together
and all the sons of God shouted for joy?
8 Who enclosed the sea behind doors
when it burst forth from the womb,
9 when I made the clouds its garment
and thick darkness its blanket,
10 when I fixed its boundaries
and set in place its bars and doors,
11 and I declared: 'You may come this far, but no farther;
here your proud waves must stop'?
12 In your days, have you commanded the morning
or assigned the dawn its place,
13 that it might spread to the ends of the earth
and shake the wicked out of it?
14 The earth takes shape like clay under a seal;
its hills stand out like the folds of a garment.
15 Light is withheld from the wicked,
and their upraised arm is broken.

JOB 37:22 [NOTE] OUT OF THE NORTH. Elihu describes a storm rolling in. In the next chapter, God speaks to Job out of the whirlwind, 38:1.

JOB 38:1 [MIRACLE] Yahweh answers Job out of the whirlwind

JOB 38:1 [NOTE] OUT OF THE WHIRLWIND. God never tells Job why he suffered. He shows up instead. Job gets God, not answers.

JOB 38:4 [NOTABLE] God answers Job's questions with bigger questions. The God who made everything can be trusted with what we do not understand.

JOB 38:4 [NOTE] WHERE WERE YOU? God asks Job more than 70 questions in chapters 38 to 41. None of them is about Job's sin.

JOB 38:7 [NOTE] THE MORNING STARS. Angels sang when God made the world. The sons of God here are the angels of 1:6.

GOD SPEAKING

16 Have you journeyed to the vents of the sea
or walked in the trenches of the deep?
17 Have the gates of death been revealed to you?
Have you seen the gates of the shadow of death?
18 Have you surveyed the extent of the earth?
Tell Me, if you know all this.

19 Where is the way to the home of light?
Do you know where darkness resides,
20 so you can lead it back to its border?
Do you know the paths to its home?
21 Surely you know, for you were already born!
And the number of your days is great!

22 Have you entered the storehouses of snow
or observed the storehouses of hail,
23 which I hold in reserve for times of trouble,
for the day of war and battle?
24 In which direction is the lightning dispersed,
or the east wind scattered over the earth?

25 Who cuts a channel for the flood
or clears a path for the thunderbolt,
26 to bring rain on a barren land,
on a desert where no man lives,
27 to satisfy the parched wasteland
and make it sprout with tender grass?
28 Does the rain have a father?
Who has begotten the drops of dew?
29 From whose womb does the ice emerge?
Who gives birth to the frost from heaven,
30 when the waters become hard as stone
and the surface of the deep is frozen?

31 Can you bind the chains of the Pleiades
or loosen the belt of Orion?
32 Can you bring forth the constellations in their seasons
or lead out the Bear and her cubs?
33 Do you know the laws of the heavens?
Can you set their dominion over the earth?
34 Can you command the clouds
so that a flood of water covers you?
35 Can you send the lightning bolts on their way?
Do they report to you, 'Here we are'?

36 Who has put wisdom in the heart
or given understanding to the mind?
37 Who has the wisdom to count the clouds?
Or who can tilt the water jars of the heavens
38 when the dust hardens into a mass
and the clods of earth stick together?

39 Can you hunt the prey for a lioness
or satisfy the hunger of young lions
40 when they crouch in their dens
and lie in wait in the thicket?
41 Who provides food for the raven
when its young cry out to God
as they wander about for lack of food?

■ **JOB 38:31 [NOTE]** THE PLEIADES AND ORION. Star groups. The Pleiades is a cluster of stars, and Orion has three stars in a row called his belt.

39

CHAPTER 39 IN 30 SECONDS

The tour keeps going: mountain goats giving birth, the wild donkey, the wild ox, the silly ostrich, the war horse that laughs at fear, and the hawk. Did you make any of these, Job?

YAHWEH SPEAKS OF HIS CREATION

1 "Do you know when mountain goats give birth?
Have you watched the doe bear her fawn?
2 Can you count the months they are pregnant?
Do you know the time they give birth?
3 They crouch down and bring forth their young;
they deliver their newborn.
4 Their young ones thrive and grow up in the open field;
they leave and do not return.

5 Who set the wild donkey free?
Who released the swift donkey from the harness?
6 I made the wilderness his home
and the salt flats his dwelling.
7 He scorns the tumult of the city

GOD SPEAKING

and never hears the shouts of a driver.
8 He roams the mountains for pasture,
searching for any green thing.

9 Will the wild ox consent to serve you?
Will he stay by your manger at night?
10 Can you hold him to the furrow with a harness?
Will he plow the valleys behind you?
11 Can you rely on his great strength?
Will you leave your hard work to him?
12 Can you trust him to bring in your grain
and gather it to your threshing floor?

13 The wings of the ostrich flap joyfully,
but cannot match the pinions and feathers of the stork.
14 For she leaves her eggs on the ground
and lets them warm in the sand.
15 She forgets that a foot may crush them,
or a wild animal may trample them.
16 She treats her young harshly, as if not her own,
with no concern that her labor was in vain.
17 For God has deprived her of wisdom;
He has not endowed her with understanding.
18 Yet when she proudly spreads her wings,
she laughs at the horse and its rider.

19 Do you give strength to the horse
or adorn his neck with a mane?
20 Do you make him leap like a locust,
striking terror with his proud snorting?
21 He paws in the valley and rejoices in his strength;
he charges into battle.
22 He laughs at fear, frightened of nothing;
he does not turn back from the sword.
23 A quiver rattles at his side,
along with a flashing spear and lance.
24 Trembling with excitement, he devours the distance;
he cannot stand still when the ram's horn sounds.
25 At the blast of the horn, he snorts with fervor.
He catches the scent of battle from afar,
the shouts of captains and the cry of war.

26 Does the hawk take flight by your understanding
and spread his wings toward the south?
27 Does the eagle soar at your command
and make his nest on high?
28 He dwells on a cliff and lodges there;
his stronghold is on a rocky crag.
29 From there he spies out food;
his eyes see it from afar.
30 His young ones feast on blood;
and where the slain are, there he is."

40

CHAPTER 40 IN 30 SECONDS

God asks, Will the faultfinder argue with the Almighty? Job says, I am small; I will put my hand over my mouth. Then God shows him Behemoth, the giant beast with a tail like a cedar.

JOB HUMBLES HIMSELF BEFORE YAHWEH

1 And Yahweh said to Job:

2 "Will the faultfinder contend with the Almighty?
Let him who argues with God give an answer."

3 Then Job answered Yahweh:

4 "Behold, I am insignificant. How can I reply to You?
I place my hand over my mouth.
5 I have spoken once, but I have no answer—
twice, but I have nothing to add."

YAHWEH CHALLENGES JOB AGAIN

6 Then Yahweh answered Job out of the whirlwind and said:

7 "Now brace yourself like a man;
I will question you, and you shall inform Me.

8 Would you really annul My justice?
Would you condemn Me to justify yourself?
9 Do you have an arm like God's?
Can you thunder with a voice like His?
10 Then adorn yourself with majesty and splendor,

JOB 39:13 [NOTE] THE OSTRICH. God has a sense of humor. She lays her eggs on the ground and runs faster than a horse, but God did not give her much sense, 39:17.

JOB 40:4 [NOTE] HAND OVER MY MOUTH. Job wanted a day in court. Now that God is here, he has nothing to say.

GOD SPEAKING

and clothe yourself with honor and
glory.
11 Unleash the fury of your wrath;
look on every proud man and bring him
low.
12 Look on every proud man and humble
him;
trample the wicked where they stand.
13 Bury them together in the dust;
imprison them in the grave.
14 Then I will confess to you
that your own right hand can save you.

15 Look at Behemoth, which I made along
with you.
He feeds on grass like an ox.
16 See the strength of his loins
and the power in the muscles of his
belly.
17 His tail sways like a cedar;
the sinews of his thighs are tightly knit.
18 His bones are tubes of bronze;
his limbs are rods of iron.
19 He is the foremost of God's works;
only his Maker can draw the sword
against him.
20 The hills yield him their produce,
while all the beasts of the field play
nearby.
21 He lies under the lotus plants,
hidden among the reeds of the marsh.
22 The lotus plants conceal him in their
shade;
the willows of the brook surround him.
23 Though the river rages, Behemoth is un-
afraid;
he remains secure, though the Jordan
surges to his mouth.
24 Can anyone capture him as he looks on,
or pierce his nose with a snare?

JOB 40:15 [NOTE] BEHEMOTH. The Hebrew word means beasts, a way of saying the beast of all beasts. See the Big Question Behemoth and Leviathan.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

BEHEMOTH AND LEVIATHAN

Two Monsters

JOB 40:15 TO 24 · 41:1 TO 34 · 3:8

BEHEMOTH

Its name means beasts, a way of saying the greatest beast. It eats grass like an ox, has a tail like a cedar and bones like bronze, and lies in the reeds and the marsh. A raging river does not scare it, 40:15 to 24.

LEVIATHAN

No hook can catch it and no spear can pierce its scales. Smoke comes out of its nose and flames from its mouth, 41:19 to 21. It is also named in 3:8, Psalm 74:14, Psalm 104:26 and Isaiah 27:1.

WHY GOD BRINGS THEM UP

If no man dares to wake Leviathan, who can stand against the God who made him? 41:10. God made Behemoth too, just as He made Job, 40:15.

Every View

PSALM 74:14 · PSALM 104:26 · ISAIAH 27:1 · GENESIS 1:21

VIEW 1: DINOSAURS

Many Bible believing Christians today, like Answers in Genesis, think Behemoth was a big plant eating dinosaur, because a tail like a cedar sounds like a giant tail, not a hippo's little one. Some think Leviathan was a huge sea reptile, and that people and dinosaurs once lived at the same time.

VIEW 2: ANIMALS WE KNOW

Many scholars today say Behemoth is the hippopotamus, which lives in the reeds, and Leviathan is the crocodile, with its armored scales. This view became popular through the scholar Samuel Bochart in 1663. Older readers guessed an elephant, and some, like Thomas Aquinas, said Leviathan was a whale.

VIEW 3: POETRY, LARGER THAN LIFE

Some think these are real creatures painted in poetry, bigger than life, or the monsters of old stories. Leviathan's name is in tablets from Ugarit, where it is a seven headed sea serpent. God shows

ARCHAEOLOGY *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

He rules even the scariest thing people could imagine.

VIEW 4: A PICTURE OF THE DEVIL

Many early Christian writers saw Leviathan as a picture of Satan, the coiling serpent God will one day punish, Isaiah 27:1.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God made them, and He alone controls them. Everything under heaven is His, 41:11.

41

CHAPTER 41 IN 30 SECONDS

Then Leviathan, the monster no one can tame. Can you catch him with a fishhook? Smoke pours from his nose and fire from his mouth. Everything under heaven belongs to Me.

YAHWEH'S POWER SHOWN IN LEVIATHAN

1 "Can you pull in Leviathan with a hook
or tie down his tongue with a rope?
2 Can you put a cord through his nose
or pierce his jaw with a hook?
3 Will he beg you for mercy
or speak to you softly?
4 Will he make a covenant with you
to take him as a slave for life?
5 Can you pet him like a bird
or put him on a leash for your maidens?
6 Will traders barter for him
or divide him among the merchants?
7 Can you fill his hide with harpoons
or his head with fishing spears?
8 If you lay a hand on him,
you will remember the battle and never
repeat it!

9 Surely hope of overcoming him is false.
Is not the sight of him overwhelming?
10 No one is so fierce as to rouse
Leviathan.
Then who is able to stand against Me?
11 *Who has given to Me that I should repay
him?*
Everything under heaven is Mine.

12 I cannot keep silent about his limbs,
his power and graceful form.
13 Who can strip off his outer coat?
Who can approach him with a bridle?
14 Who can open his jaws,
ringed by his fearsome teeth?
15 His rows of scales are his pride,
tightly sealed together.
16 One scale is so near to another
that no air can pass between them.
17 They are joined to one another;
they clasp and cannot be separated.

18 His snorting flashes with light,
and his eyes are like the rays of dawn.
19 Firebrands stream from his mouth;
fiery sparks shoot forth!
20 Smoke billows from his nostrils
as from a boiling pot over burning
reeds.
21 His breath sets coals ablaze,
and flames pour from his mouth.
22 Strength resides in his neck,
and dismay leaps before him.
23 The folds of his flesh are tightly joined;
they are firm and immovable.
24 His chest is as hard as a rock,
as hard as a lower millstone!

25 When Leviathan rises up, the mighty are
terrified;
they withdraw before his thrashing.
26 The sword that reaches him has no effect,
nor does the spear or dart or arrow.
27 He regards iron as straw
and bronze as rotten wood.
28 No arrow can make him flee;
slingstones become like chaff to him.
29 A club is regarded as straw,
and he laughs at the sound of the lance.
30 His undersides are jagged potsherds,
spreading out the mud like a threshing
sledge.
31 He makes the depths seethe like a cauldron;
he makes the sea like a jar of ointment.
32 He leaves a glistening wake behind him;

JOB 41:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Clay tablets from Ugarit name Litan, the twisting serpent with seven heads, the same name as Leviathan, see the Lotan in the Ugarit Tablets Field Notes page, p.877 → FIELD NOTES p.877

JOB 41:1 [NOTE] LEVIATHAN. See the Big Question Behemoth and Leviathan and the Field Notes page Lotan in the Ugarit Tablets, p.875.

JOB 41:11 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:34-35 p.1814

JOB 41:11 [NOTE] PAUL QUOTES IT. Who has first given to God, that God should repay him? Romans 11:35.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

LOTAN IN THE UGARIT TABLETS

JOB 3:8 · 41:1 · PSALM 74:13 TO 14 · PSALM 104:26 · ISAIAH 27:1



Two pieces of the clay tablet from Ugarit that tells of the death of Baal and names Litan, about 1300 to 1200 BC. Louvre Museum, Paris, AO 16641 and AO 16642. Photo Rama, CC BY SA 2.0 FR.

WHAT IT IS

A clay tablet from Ugarit, an old city on the coast of Syria. It holds part of the Baal myth, a long story poem about the Canaanite storm god Baal. It names a sea monster called Litan, also spelled Lotan. Most scholars think that is the same name as Leviathan.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was written in the 1300s or 1200s BC by a scribe named Ilimilku. Ugarit was destroyed about 1185 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

A French team led by Claude Schaeffer dug at Ras Shamra, the ruins of Ugarit, starting in 1929. This tablet was found in 1930, in the house of the high priest. It is in the Louvre in Paris.

WHAT IT SAYS

Death, the god Mot, says to Baal: When you struck Litan, the fleeing serpent, and finished off the twisting serpent, the mighty one with seven heads. Another tablet has the goddess Anat brag that she crushed the twisting serpent with seven heads.

THE SAME WORDS

Isaiah 27:1 says God will punish Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan the coiling serpent. In Hebrew and in the language of Ugarit, those words are almost the same. Psalm 74:14 says God crushed the heads of Leviathan.

A COUSIN OF HEBREW

Ugarit wrote with a 30 letter alphabet pressed into clay with wedges. Its language is a close cousin of Hebrew, so it helps scholars read hard Hebrew words, especially in Job and the Psalms.

WHAT IT MEANS FOR JOB

To the people of Canaan, Litan was a monster only a god could fight. In Job 41, God talks about Leviathan like a creature He made and can play with, 41:5. The Bible takes the scariest name people knew and puts it under God's feet.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not tell us what animal Job 41 describes. People still disagree; see the Big Question Behemoth and Leviathan. It shows the name Leviathan was known long before Isaiah.

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

one would think the deep had white hair!
33 Nothing on earth is his equal—
a creature devoid of fear!
34 He looks down on all the haughty;
he is king over all the proud."

42

CHAPTER 42 IN 30 SECONDS

Job says, I had heard of You, but now my eyes have seen You. God tells the friends they were wrong and Job was right, and Job prays for them. God gives Job twice as much as before, ten more kids, and 140 more years.

JOB SUBMITS HIMSELF TO YAHWEH

1 Then Job replied to Yahweh:

2 "I know that You can do all things
and that no plan of Yours can be thwarted.
3 You asked, 'Who is this
who conceals My counsel without knowledge?'
Surely I spoke of things I did not understand,
things too wonderful for me to know.
4 You said, 'Listen now, and I will speak.
I will question you, and you shall inform Me.'
5 My ears had heard of You,
but now my eyes have seen You.
6 Therefore I despise myself,
and I repent in dust and ashes."

YAHWEH REBUKES JOB'S FRIENDS

7 After Yahweh had spoken these words to Job, He said to Eliphaz the Temanite, "My wrath is kindled against you and your two friends. For you have not spoken about Me accurately, as My servant Job has. 8 So now, take seven bulls and seven rams, go to My servant Job, and sacrifice a burnt offering for yourselves. Then My servant Job will pray for you, for I will accept his prayer and not deal with you according to your folly. For you have not spoken accurately about Me, as My servant Job has."

9 So Eliphaz the Temanite, Bildad the Shuhite, and Zophar the Naamathite went and did as Yahweh had told them; and Yahweh accepted Job's prayer.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DO GOOD PEOPLE SUFFER?

Every Answer in the Book

JOB 1:9 · 4:7 TO 8 · 33:14 TO 30 · 38:1 TO 4 · 42:5 · 42:7

THE FRIENDS
You reap what you sow, 4:7 to 8. If you suffer, you must have sinned. God said they were wrong, 42:7.

ELIHU
God uses pain to warn people and to teach them, 33:14 to 30 and 36:15.

THE TEST
The satan asked, Does Job fear God for nothing? 1:9. Job's suffering showed that he loved God even when it cost him everything.

GOD'S ANSWER
God never told Job why. He showed Job His wisdom and power in creation. Job said, I had heard of You, but now my eyes have seen You, 42:5.

Every View

JOHN 9:1 TO 3 · JAMES 1:2 TO 4 · EPHESIANS 6:12 · JAMES 5:11 · ISAIAH 53:3

VIEW 1: SIN BRINGS PAIN
Sometimes it does. You reap what you sow, Galatians 6:7. But Job shows it is not always true. Jesus said a man was born blind not because of his sin or his parents' sin, John 9:1 to 3.

VIEW 2: A TEST THAT MAKES US STRONG
Many say God allows suffering to grow faith, like gold in a fire, Job 23:10, James 1:2 to 4 and 1 Peter 1:6 to 7.

VIEW 3: A WAR WE CANNOT SEE
Job 1 and 2 show a contest in heaven

JOB 42:5 [NOTABLE] Job got something better than answers: he met God. Knowing about God is not the same as knowing Him.

JOB 42:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Aramaic Job from Qumran Cave 11, copied in Jesus' day, reads this verse differently, see The Job Targum Scroll Field Notes page, p.880 FIELD NOTES p.880

JOB 42:6 [NOTE] I REPENT. Job does not confess a hidden sin. He takes back his words spoken without knowledge, 42:3. The Hebrew can also mean I am comforted. The Job Targum from Qumran reads it another way; see its Field Notes page, p.880.

JOB 42:7 [NOTE] MY SERVANT JOB. God says Job spoke rightly and the friends did not. Job's honest cries were closer to the truth than their neat answers.

JOB 42:8 [NOTE] JOB PRAYS FOR THEM. The men who hurt him need his prayers, and God restores Job after he prays for his friends, 42:10.

NOTABLE

that Job never saw. Our struggle is not against flesh and blood, Ephesians 6:12.

VIEW 4: A MYSTERY WE TRUST GOD WITH

Many say we will not always know why. God's ways are higher than ours, Isaiah 55:9, and He asks us to trust Him anyway.

JESUS SUFFERED TOO

The most innocent Man who ever lived suffered most of all, Isaiah 53:3. God did not stay far from our pain; He came into it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The friends did best when they sat with Job for seven days and said nothing, 2:13. James 5:11 calls Job's endurance a blessing, and says the Lord is full of compassion and mercy.

YAHWEH BLESSES JOB

10 After Job had prayed for his friends, Yahweh restored his prosperity and doubled his former possessions. 11 All his brothers and sisters and prior acquaintances came and dined with him in his house. They consoled him and comforted him over all the adversity that Yahweh had brought upon him. And each one gave him a piece of silver and a gold ring.

12 So Yahweh blessed Job's latter days more than his first. He owned 14,000 sheep, 6,000 camels, 1,000 yoke of oxen, and 1,000 female donkeys. 13 And he also had seven sons and three daughters. 14 He named his first daughter Jemimah, his second Keziah, and his third Keren-happuch. 15 No women as beautiful as Job's daughters could be found in all the land, and their father granted them an inheritance among their brothers.

16 After this, Job lived 140 years and saw his children and their children to the fourth generation. 17 And so Job died, old and full of years.

JOB 42:10 [NOTABLE] Job prayed for the men who had hurt him. Forgiveness opened the door to his healing.

JOB 42:10 [NOTE] DOUBLE. His animals are exactly double, 42:12 and 1:3. He gets ten children again, the same number. Many say that is double too, because the first ten were not lost forever.

JOB 42:11 [NOTE] A PIECE OF SILVER. The Hebrew word, qesitah, is rare. It shows up only here and when Jacob bought land, Genesis 33:19 and Joshua 24:32. Nobody knows its value today. Many see it as one more clue that Job lived in the days of the patriarchs.

JOB 42:14 [NOTE] HIS DAUGHTERS. Jemimah means dove, Keziah is a sweet spice, and Keren happuch means a little box of eye makeup. They got an inheritance with their brothers, 42:15, which was rare.

JOB 42:16 [NOTE] 140 MORE YEARS. Long lives like Abraham, 175, Isaac, 180, and Jacob, 147. The Greek Old Testament says he lived 240 years in all.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE JOB TARGUM SCROLL

JOB 17:14 TO 42:11 · 38:7 · 42:6 · ACTS 5:34 · ACTS 22:3



Top: the longest piece of the Job Targum, 11Q10, from Qumran Cave 11. Below: three smaller pieces. Photos Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT IT IS

A Dead Sea Scroll that holds the book of Job in Aramaic, the language many Jews spoke in Jesus' day. A translation like this is called a targum. Its number is 11Q10.

HOW OLD IT IS

The scroll was copied in the first half of the first century AD, in the lifetime of Jesus. Many scholars think the translation itself was made earlier, maybe 200 to 100 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Bedouin found it in 1956 in Cave 11 at Qumran, the last cave to give up scrolls. Dutch scholars led by J. van der Ploeg and A. S. van der Woude published it in 1971.

WHAT IS LEFT

The scroll was once very long. About 15 percent survives, in pieces from Job 17 to the end of the book. The biggest piece holds Job 37:10 to 42:11, including much of God's speech from the whirlwind.

A BURIED BOOK

The Talmud tells a story about Gamaliel the Elder, the teacher of Paul, Acts 22:3. While builders worked on the Temple Mount, someone brought him a translation of Job, and he told the builder to bury it under a row of bricks, Shabbat 115a. It is a striking match, though no one can prove it was a copy like this one.

DID JOB REPENT?

In Hebrew, Job 42:6 says I repent in dust and ashes. The targum says something like, So I am poured out and dissolved, and I will become dust and ashes.

SMOOTHING HARD WORDS

The translator softened some hard lines. In 38:7, where the morning stars sing, the targum makes them shine and has the angels shout for joy.

A SECOND TARGUM

Cave 4 at Qumran held another Aramaic Job, 4Q157, with bits of Job 3 to 5. Later rabbis made their own Aramaic translations of Job, but they are much younger than these two.

WHERE IT IS NOW

The pieces are kept by the Israel Antiquities Authority in Jerusalem, which has photographed the pieces with special cameras.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

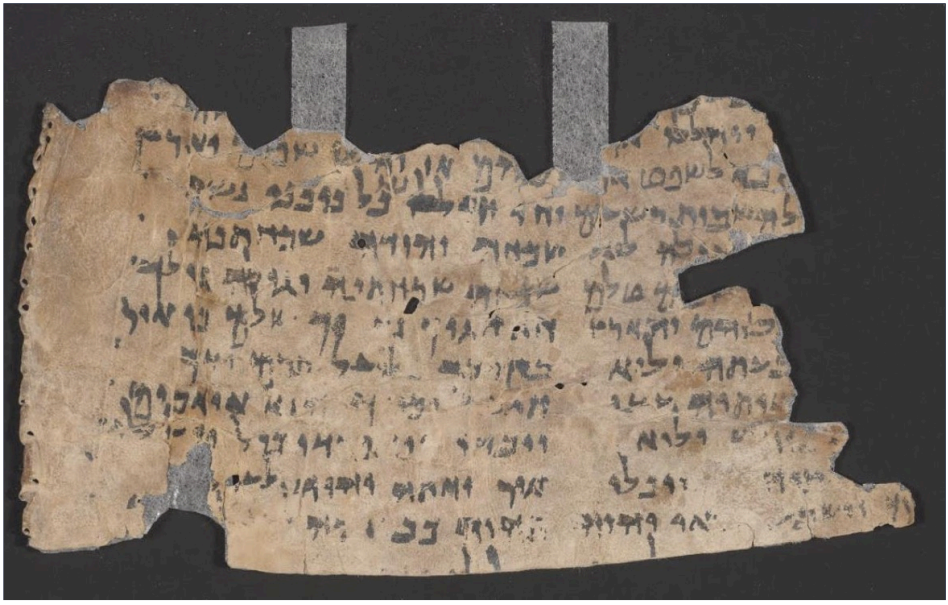
It is a translation, so it does not show us a different Hebrew Job. It shows that Jews in Jesus' day were reading and explaining Job in their own language.

BOOK 19 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · POETRY AND WISDOM

PSALMS

The Bible's Greatest Hits

AUTHOR	Many writers. David is named in 73 titles. Asaph has 12, the sons of Korah 11, Solomon 2, and Moses, Heman and Ethan 1 each. About 50 psalms name no writer.
DATE	Written over about 1,000 years, from Moses, about 1400 BC, to after the return from Babylon, about 500 BC. Put together in five books after the exile.
WRITTEN TO	God. These are songs and prayers, sung by God's people in the temple, at home and on the road.
KEY VERSE	Psalm 150:6. Let everything that has breath praise Yahweh! Hallelujah!



THE OLDEST COPIES OF PSALMS
A piece of 4QPs f, a Psalms scroll from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 50 BC. Its pieces hold parts of Psalms 22, 107 and 109, and three songs that are not in the Bible. God's name, YHWH, shows up again and again.

Psalms is the book found most often among the Dead Sea Scrolls, about 40 copies. The oldest, 4QPs a, was copied about 150 BC. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Israel's songbook. Some psalms come from David's days on the run from Saul, some from the temple choirs, and some from the exiles crying by the rivers of Babylon. The Hebrew

name is Tehillim, praises. Our word psalm comes from the Greek for a song played on strings.

What Was Going Wrong

ENEMIES ALL AROUND. David was hunted by Saul and chased out by his own son Absalom, Psalms 3, 57 and 59.
SIN ON THE INSIDE. David's adultery and murder, Psalm 51. Again and again Israel forgot God, Psalms 78 and 106.
CHILD SACRIFICE. Israel sacrificed their sons and daughters to demons and poured out innocent blood to the idols of Canaan, 106:37 to 38.
A CITY IN RUINS. Babylon burned the temple and took the people away, Psalms 74, 79 and 137.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Psalms is 150 songs and prayers, plus Psalm 151 at the end. They cover every feeling there is: joy, fear, anger, guilt, grief and thanks. People cry out, How long, Lord? and then decide to trust Him anyway. They confess sin, remember what God did in the past, and look ahead to a King from David's line who will rule the nations. The book moves from crying to praise, and it ends with Hallelujah.

Psalms at a Glance

PS 1 to 41	**BOOK I** Mostly David. Ends with Amen and Amen, 41:13.
PS 42 to 72	**BOOK II** Korah's sons and David. The prayers of David are ended, 72:20.
PS 73 to 89	**BOOK III** Asaph and Korah. Hard questions; the promise to David.
PS 90 to 106	**BOOK IV** Moses' prayer. Yahweh reigns!
PS 107 to 150	**BOOK V** Thanks, Songs of Ascents, and Hallelujah.
PS 151	**OUTSIDE THE NUMBER** David and Goliath, from the Greek, in brackets.

Where Jesus Shows Up

PSALM 2:7 AND 110:1 God calls the King My Son and seats Him at His right hand. The New Testament applies both to Jesus again and again, Acts 13:33, Hebrews 1:5 and 1:13.

PSALM 22:1 My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? Jesus prayed it from the cross, Matthew 27:46.

PSALM 16:10 You will not let Your Holy One see decay. Peter preached it about the resurrection, Acts 2:27 to 31.

PSALM 118:22 The stone the builders rejected has become the cornerstone, Matthew 21:42.

GOD'S NAMES IN PSALMS
Yahweh about 700 times, and God, Elohim. In Psalms 42 to 83, God is used far more often than Yahweh. Yah, the short form, is in Hallelujah, Praise Yah. Also the Most High, the Almighty, my Rock, my Shepherd.

What to Watch for in Psalms

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (83)	2:1-3, 2:6-8, 2:12, 8:2, 8:4-6, 16:8-11, 18:2-3 and 46 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (12)	17:15, 21:1, 21:3-5, 23:1, 72:1, 72:16, 91:11-12 and 3 more
END TIMES PROPHECIES (11)	2:9, 9:7-10, 22:27-28, 45:17, 68:31, 72:8, 86:9 and 4 more
THE HEART (26)	7:9, 9:1, 14:1, 15:2, 19:14, 24:4, 34:18 and 18 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (4)	20:1, 33:2, 104:24, 145:13
MIRACLES (2)	34:7, 103:20-21
DEMONIC (13)	16:4, 31:6, 44:20, 78:58, 81:9, 96:5, 106:19-20 and 4 more
NOTABLE (16)	1:1, 23:4, 27:1, 30:5, 34:8, 46:1, 55:22 and 9 more
GOD SPEAKING (133 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (94 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

FIVE BOOKS LIKE MOSES
An old Jewish teaching says: Moses gave Israel five books of the law, and David gave Israel five books of Psalms.

THE NEW TESTAMENT'S FAVORITE
Psalms is quoted in the New Testament more than almost any other Old Testament book. Jesus quoted it on the cross.

LUTHER'S LITTLE BIBLE
Martin Luther called Psalms a little Bible, because it holds the whole Bible in a short form. He wrote A Mighty Fortress from Psalm 46.

LONGEST AND SHORTEST
Psalm 119 is the longest chapter in the Bible, 176 verses. Psalm 117 is the shortest, 2 verses.

PSALM 151
The oldest complete Greek Bibles have one more psalm after 150. It is printed at the end in [brackets].

How Does It End?

With a party. The last five psalms all begin and end with Hallelujah, and Psalm 150 calls every instrument and everything that breathes to praise Yahweh.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE | GOD SPEAKING

BOOK I PSALMS 1 TO 41

1

PSALM 1 IN 30 SECONDS
Two roads. Love God's word and you are a tree by the water. Ignore it and you are chaff in the wind.

THE TWO PATHS // MATTHEW 5:3–12; LUKE 6:20–23

1 Blessed is the man
who does not walk in the counsel of the wicked,
or set foot on the path of sinners,
or sit in the seat of mockers.
2 But his delight is in the Law of Yahweh,
and on His law he meditates day and night.
3 He is like a tree planted by streams of water,
yielding its fruit in season,
whose leaf does not wither,
and who prospers in all he does.

4 Not so the wicked!
For they are like chaff driven off by the wind.
5 Therefore the wicked will not stand in the judgment,
nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.

6 For Yahweh guards the path of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish.

2

PSALM 2 IN 30 SECONDS
The nations plot against God and His King. God laughs. He crowns His Son on Zion. Smart move: kiss the Son.

THE TRIUMPHANT MESSIAH // ACTS 4:23–31

1 *Why do the nations rage*
and the peoples plot in vain?
2 *The kings of the earth take their stand*
and the rulers gather together,
against Yahweh
and against His Anointed One:
3 "Let us break Their chains
and cast away Their cords."

4 The One enthroned in heaven laughs;
the Lord taunts them.
5 Then He rebukes them in His anger,
and terrifies them in His fury:
6 "I have installed My King on Zion,
upon My holy mountain."

7 *I will proclaim the decree*
spoken to Me by Yahweh:
"You are My Son;
today I have become Your Father.
8 Ask Me, and I will make the nations Your inheritance,
the ends of the earth Your possession.
9 *You will break them with an iron scepter;*
You will shatter them like pottery."

- **PS 1:1 [NOTABLE]** The whole book opens with a choice. Who you walk with, stand with and sit with shapes who you become.
- **PS 1:1 [NOTE]** BLESSED means truly happy, the kind of happy God gives. The book of Psalms opens with it, and Jesus opened His Sermon on the Mount the same way, Matthew 5:3.
- **PS 1:1 [NOTE]** WALK, STAND, SIT. Watch the slide: first you walk by, then you stop and stand, then you sit down and stay.
- **PS 1:2 [NOTE]** MEDITATES. The Hebrew word means to mutter or murmur, like reading out loud under your breath, over and over.

- **PS 2:1 [PROPHECY]** The hostility of kings and rulers against the Messiah foreordained → ACTS 4:25-28 p.1747
- **PS 2:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 4:25-26 p.1747
- **PS 2:1 [NOTE]** THE FIRST PRAYER MEETING IN ACTS. When Peter and John were threatened, the church quoted these verses about Herod and Pilate, Acts 4:25 to 28.
- **PS 2:2 [PROPHECY]** He would be the Anointed One → JN 1:41; ACTS 2:36 p.1700
- **PS 2:6 [PROPHECY]** He would bear the title of King → MT 2:2 p.1551
- **PS 2:7 [PROPHECY]** Declared to be the Beloved Son of God → MT 3:17; ROM 1:4; HEB 1:5; HEB 5:5; 2PE 1:17 p.1554
- **PS 2:7 [PROPHECY]** The crucifixion and resurrection foreshadowed → ACTS 13:29-33 p.1764
- **PS 2:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 3:17 p.1554
- **PS 2:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 17:5 p.1575
- **PS 2:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 1:11 p.1608
- **PS 2:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 9:7 p.1624
- **PS 2:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:22 p.1653
- **PS 2:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:33 p.1764
- **PS 2:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:5a p.1978
- **PS 2:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 5:5 p.1982
- **PS 2:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2PE 1:17 p.2029
- **PS 2:7 [MESSIAH SPEAKING]** Red letters here mean the King, the Anointed One of 2:2, is speaking, and then God's own decree. Acts 13:33 and Hebrews 1:5 apply it to Jesus. Many Jewish readers see a king of David's line being crowned.
- **PS 2:7 [NOTE]** TODAY I HAVE BECOME YOUR FATHER. Kings in the ancient world were often called a god's son on their crowning day. Paul said God fulfilled this when He raised Jesus from the dead, Acts 13:33.
- **PS 2:8 [PROPHECY]** He would rule the nations with a rod of iron → STILL TO COME
- **PS 2:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → REV 2:27 p.2085

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

10 Therefore be wise, O kings;
be admonished, O judges of the earth.
11 Serve Yahweh with fear,
and rejoice with trembling.
12 Kiss the Son, lest He be angry
and you perish in your rebellion,
when His wrath ignites in an instant.

Blessed are all who take refuge in Him.

3

PSALM 3 IN 30 SECONDS
David is running from his own son Absalom. Enemies everywhere, but he still sleeps like a baby. God has his back.

DELIVER ME, O YAHWEH! // 2 SAMUEL 15:13–29
A Psalm of David, when he fled from his son Absalom.

1 O Yahweh, how my foes have increased!
How many rise up against me!
2 Many say of me,
"God will not deliver him."
Selah

3 But You, O Yahweh, are a shield around me,
my glory, and the One who lifts my head.
4 To Yahweh I cry aloud,
and He answers me from His holy mountain.
Selah

5 I lie down and sleep;
I wake again, for Yahweh sustains me.
6 I will not fear the myriads
set against me on every side.

7 Arise, O Yahweh!
Save me, O my God!
Strike all my enemies on the jaw;
break the teeth of the wicked.

8 Salvation belongs to Yahweh;
may Your blessing be on Your people.
Selah

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE THE PSALMS?

Seven Names and Many Unnamed

PSALM 3:1 · 72:20 · 90:1 · 2 SAMUEL 23:1

THE NAMES IN THE TITLES
David 73 psalms. Asaph 12, the sons of Korah 11, Solomon 2, Moses 1, Heman 1, Ethan 1. About 50 have no name.

DAVID THE SINGER
David played the lyre for Saul, 1 Samuel 16:23, and is called the sweet psalmist of Israel, 2 Samuel 23:1. He set up the temple singers, 1 Chronicles 25.

OF DAVID
The Hebrew word le can mean by David, for David, or about David. Most read it as by David.

STORIES IN THE TITLES
Thirteen titles tie the psalm to a scene in David's life, like Psalm 3, when he fled from Absalom, and Psalm 51, after Bathsheba.

Are the Titles Original?

MARK 12:36 · ACTS 2:25 · ACTS 4:25 · HEBREWS 4:7

VIEW 1: THE TITLES ARE TRUE
Jews and Christians have long trusted the titles. Jesus said David himself, speaking by the Holy Spirit, wrote Psalm 110, Mark 12:36. Peter says David wrote Psalm 16, Acts 2:25. The titles are in the Hebrew text and in the Dead Sea Scrolls.

VIEW 2: OLD BUT ADDED
Many scholars think the titles were added later by editors, maybe as a library label, and may not always name the writer.

VIEW 3: LATE PSALMS
Many critical scholars date many psalms after the exile, judging by their language. Some say a psalm of David could mean a psalm in David's style.

THE GREEK ADDS MORE
The Greek Old Testament gives David more titles than the Hebrew, and the New Testament names David for Psalm 2, Acts 4:25, and Psalm 95, Hebrews 4:7, which have no title in Hebrew.

- **PS 2:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 12:5 p.2098
- **PS 2:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 19:15 p.2110
- **PS 2:12 [PROPHECY]** Eternal life through faith in Him → JN 20:31 p.1735
- **PS 2:12 [TEXT]** KISS THE SON. The word for son here is bar, the Aramaic word, not the usual Hebrew ben. Because of that, some translate do homage in purity or kiss his feet. Many Bibles, like this one, say Kiss the Son.
- **PS 3:1 [NOTE]** THE TITLES. Most psalms start with a short title, like this one. In Hebrew Bibles the title is counted as verse 1, so verse numbers in a Hebrew Bible are often one ahead. See Who Wrote the Psalms?
- **PS 3:1 [NOTE]** ABSALOM. David's son led a revolt and drove his father out of Jerusalem, 2 Samuel 15 to 18.
- **PS 3:2 [NOTE]** SELAH. Nobody knows for sure what it means. See the Big Question What Does Selah Mean?

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Psalms was written by many people over hundreds of years, and David stands at the center of it.

4

PSALM 4 IN 30 SECONDS
An evening prayer. Others want more stuff; David has joy and lies down in peace.

ANSWER ME WHEN I CALL!
For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments. A Psalm of David.

1 Answer me when I call,
O God of my righteousness!
You have relieved my distress;
show me grace and hear my prayer.

2 How long, O men, will my honor be maligned?
How long will you love vanity and seek after lies?
Selah

3 Know that Yahweh has set apart the godly for Himself;
Yahweh hears when I call to Him.

4 *Be angry, yet do not sin;*
on your bed, search your heart and be still.
Selah

5 Offer the sacrifices of the righteous and trust in Yahweh.

6 Many ask, "Who can show us the good?"
Shine the light of Your face upon us, O Yahweh.
7 You have filled my heart with more joy than when grain and new wine abound.
8 I will lie down and sleep in peace,
for You alone, O Yahweh, make me dwell in safety.

5

PSALM 5 IN 30 SECONDS
A morning prayer. David lays out his case and waits for God like a kid waiting for the mail.

GIVE EAR TO MY WORDS
For the choirmaster, to be accompanied by flutes. A Psalm of David.

1 Give ear to my words, O Yahweh;
consider my groaning.
2 Attend to the sound of my cry,
my King and my God,
for to You I pray.

3 In the morning, O Yahweh, You hear my voice;
at daybreak I lay my plea before You and wait in expectation.

4 For You are not a God who delights in wickedness;
no evil can dwell with You.
5 The boastful cannot stand in Your presence;
You hate all workers of iniquity.
6 You destroy those who tell lies;
Yahweh abhors the man of bloodshed and deceit.

7 But I will enter Your house
by the abundance of Your loving devotion;
in reverence I will bow down
toward Your holy temple.

8 Lead me, O Yahweh, in Your righteousness
because of my enemies;
make straight Your way before me.
9 *For not a word they speak can be trusted;*
destruction lies within them.
Their throats are open graves;
their tongues practice deceit.

10 Declare them guilty, O God;
let them fall by their own devices.
Drive them out for their many transgressions,
for they have rebelled against You.

11 But let all who take refuge in You rejoice;
let them ever shout for joy.
May You shelter them,
that those who love Your name may rejoice in You.
12 For surely You, O Yahweh, bless the righteous;

PS 4:1 [NOTE] FOR THE CHOIRMASTER. Fifty five psalms have this note. It may mean these songs belonged to the temple music leader's collection.
PS 4:4 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → EPH 4:26 p.1887

PS 5:9 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:13a p.1803

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

You surround them with the shield of
Your favor.

6

PSALM 6 IN 30 SECONDS
David is sick and crying so hard his bed floats. Then he knows God heard him.

DO NOT REBUKE ME IN YOUR ANGER // PSALM 38:1–22

For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments, according to Sheminith. A Psalm of David.

1 O Yahweh, do not rebuke me in Your
anger
or discipline me in Your wrath.
2 Be merciful to me, O Yahweh, for I am
frail;
heal me, O Yahweh, for my bones are in
agony.
3 My soul is deeply distressed.
How long, O Yahweh, how long?

4 Turn, O Yahweh, and deliver my soul;
save me because of Your loving devo-
tion.
5 For there is no mention of You in death;
who can praise You from Sheol?

6 I am weary from groaning;
all night I flood my bed with weeping
and drench my couch with tears.
7 My eyes fail from grief;
they grow dim because of all my foes.

8 Depart from me, all you workers of iniq-
uity,
for Yahweh has heard my weeping.
9 Yahweh has heard my cry for mercy;
Yahweh accepts my prayer.
10 All my enemies will be ashamed and dis-
mayed;
they will turn back in sudden disgrace.

7

PSALM 7 IN 30 SECONDS
Someone named Cush is lying about David. Judge me, God. Liars fall into their own pits.

I TAKE REFUGE IN YOU

A Shiggaion of David, which he sang to Yahweh concerning the words of Cush, a Benjamite.

1 O Yahweh my God, I take refuge in You;
save me and deliver me from all my pur-
suers,
2 or they will shred my soul like a lion
and tear me to pieces with no one to
rescue me.

3 O Yahweh my God, if I have done this,
if injustice is on my hands,
4 if I have rewarded my ally with evil,
if I have plundered my foe without
cause,
5 then may my enemy pursue me and
overtake me;
may he trample me to the ground
and leave my honor in the dust.
Selah

6 Arise, O Yahweh, in Your anger;
rise up against the fury of my enemies.
Awake, my God, and ordain judgment.
7 Let the assembled peoples gather
around You;
take Your seat over them on high.
8 Yahweh judges the peoples;
vindicate me, O Yahweh,
according to my righteousness and in-
tegrity.
9 Put an end to the evil of the wicked,
but establish the righteous,
O righteous God who searches hearts
and minds.

10 My shield is with God,
who saves the upright in heart.
11 God is a righteous judge
and a God who feels indignation each
day.
12 If one does not repent,
God will sharpen His sword;
He has bent and strung His bow.
13 He has prepared His deadly weapons;
He ordains His arrows with fire.

14 Behold, the wicked man travails with
evil;

■ **PS 6:1 [NOTE]** SHEMINITH may mean on the eighth, maybe an eight string instrument or a low octave. Many musical words in the titles are now a mystery.
■ **PS 6:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 7:23 p.1560
■ **PS 6:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 13:27 p.1674

■ **PS 7:1 [NOTE]** SHIGGAION. Maybe a wild, emotional song. The word shows up only here and in Habakkuk 3:1.
■ **PS 7:9 [HEART]** The righteous God tests hearts and minds.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | THE HEART | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

he conceives trouble and births falsehood.
15 He has dug a hole and hollowed it out;
he has fallen into a pit of his own making.
16 His trouble recoils on himself,
and his violence falls on his own head.
17 I will thank Yahweh for His righteousness
and sing praise to the name of Yahweh Most High.

8

PSALM 8 IN 30 SECONDS
Look at the stars. Who are we that God even notices us? Yet He crowned us with glory.

HOW MAJESTIC IS YOUR NAME!
For the choirmaster. According to Gittith. A Psalm of David.

1 O Yahweh, our Lord,
how majestic is Your name in all the earth!

You have set Your glory
above the heavens.
2 *From the mouths of children and infants*
You have ordained praise
on account of Your adversaries,
to silence the enemy and avenger.

3 When I behold Your heavens,
the work of Your fingers,
the moon and the stars,
which You have set in place—

4 *what is man that You are mindful of him,*
or the son of man that You care for him?
5 *You made him a little lower than the angels;*
You crowned him with glory and honor.
6 *You made him ruler of the works of Your hands;*
You have placed everything under his feet:
7 all sheep and oxen,
and even the beasts of the field,
8 the birds of the air and the fish of the sea,
all that swim the paths of the seas.

9 O Yahweh, our Lord,
how majestic is Your name in all the earth!

- **PS 8:2 [PROPHECY]** From the mouths of infants He would perfect His praise → MT 21:16 p.1582
- **PS 8:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 21:16 p.1582
- **PS 8:2 [NOTE]** OUT OF THE MOUTHS OF BABES. Jesus quoted this when children shouted Hosanna in the temple and the leaders got angry, Matthew 21:16.
- **PS 8:4 [PROPHECY]** The son of man God cares for → HEB 2:6-9 p.1979
- **PS 8:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 2:6-8 p.1979
- **PS 8:5 [PROPHECY]** His humiliation followed by exaltation → HEB 2:6-9 p.1979
- **PS 8:5 [TEXT]** ANGELS. The Hebrew word is elohim, which usually means God. The Greek Old Testament says angels, and Hebrews 2:7 quotes it that way about Jesus. Some Bibles say a little lower than God.

9

PSALM 9 IN 30 SECONDS
Thanks for beating the bad guys. God never forgets the poor.

I WILL GIVE THANKS TO YAHWEH
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "The Death of the Son." A Psalm of David.

1 I will give thanks to Yahweh with all my heart;
I will recount all Your wonders.
2 I will be glad and rejoice in You;
I will sing praise to Your name, O Most High.

3 When my enemies retreat,
they stumble and perish before You.
4 For You have upheld my just cause;
You sit on Your throne judging righteously.
5 You have rebuked the nations;
You have destroyed the wicked;
You have erased their name forever and ever.
6 The enemy has come to eternal ruin,
and You have uprooted their cities;
the very memory of them has vanished.

7 But Yahweh abides forever;
He has established His throne for judgment.
8 He judges the world with justice;
He governs the people with equity.

- **PS 8:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 15:25-27 p.1842
- **PS 8:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 1:22 p.1879
- **PS 9:1 [HEART]** I will give thanks to the Lord with all my heart.
- **PS 9:1 [NOTE]** AN A TO Z. Psalms 9 and 10 together start most verses or pairs of verses with the next letter of the Hebrew alphabet, but some letters are missing. The Greek Old Testament counts 9 and 10 as one psalm, so its psalm numbers are usually one behind.
- **PS 9:7 [PROPHECY]** He would judge the world in righteousness → STILL TO COME

END TIMES PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

9 Yahweh is a refuge for the oppressed,
a stronghold in times of trouble.
10 Those who know Your name trust in You,
for You, O Yahweh, have not forsaken those who seek You.

11 Sing praises to Yahweh, who dwells in Zion;
proclaim His deeds among the nations.
12 For the Avenger of bloodshed remembers;
He does not ignore the cry of the afflicted.

13 Be merciful to me, O Yahweh;
see how my enemies afflict me!
Lift me up from the gates of death,
14 that I may declare all Your praises—
that within the gates of Daughter Zion
I may rejoice in Your salvation.

15 The nations have fallen into a pit of their making;
their feet are caught in the net they have hidden.
16 Yahweh is known by the justice He brings;
the wicked are ensnared by the work of their hands.

Higgaion Selah

17 The wicked will return to Sheol—
all the nations who forget God.
18 For the needy will not always be forgotten;
nor the hope of the oppressed forever dashed.

19 Rise up, O Yahweh, do not let man prevail;
let the nations be judged in Your presence.
20 Lay terror upon them, O Yahweh;
let the nations know they are but men.

Selah

10

PSALM 10 IN 30 SECONDS
Why does God seem far away while the wicked get away with it? He sees, and He will act.

THE PERILS OF THE PILGRIM

1 Why, O Yahweh, do You stand far off?
Why do You hide in times of trouble?
2 In pride the wicked pursue the needy;
let them be caught in the schemes they devise.

3 For the wicked man boasts in the cravings of his heart;
he blesses the greedy and reviles Yahweh.
4 In his pride the wicked man does not seek Him;
in all his schemes there is no God.
5 He is secure in his ways at all times;
Your lofty judgments are far from him;
he sneers at all his foes.
6 He says to himself, "I will not be moved;
from age to age I am free of distress."

7 *His mouth is full of cursing, deceit, and violence;*
trouble and malice are under his tongue.
8 He lies in wait near the villages;
in ambush he slays the innocent;
his eyes watch in stealth for the helpless.
9 He lies in wait like a lion in a thicket;
he lurks to seize the oppressed;
he catches the lowly in his net.
10 They are crushed and beaten down;
the helpless fall prey to his strength.
11 He says to himself, "God has forgotten;
He hides His face and never sees."

12 Arise, O Yahweh! Lift up Your hand, O God!
Do not forget the helpless.
13 Why has the wicked man renounced God?
He says to himself, "You will never call me to account."
14 But You have regarded trouble and grief;
You see to repay it by Your hand.
The victim entrusts himself to You;
You are the helper of the fatherless.
15 Break the arm of the wicked and evildoer;
call him to account for his wickedness until none is left to be found.

16 Yahweh is King forever and ever;
the nations perish from His land.

PS 10:7 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:14 p.1803

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

17 You have heard, O Yahweh, the desire of the humble;
You will strengthen their hearts.
You will incline Your ear,
18 to vindicate the fatherless and oppressed,
that the men of the earth
may strike terror no more.

11

PSALM 11 IN 30 SECONDS
Friends say, Run for the hills! David says, I trust Yahweh. He is still on His throne.

IN YAHWEH I TAKE REFUGE // HABAKKUK 1:12–17
For the choirmaster. Of David.

1 In Yahweh I take refuge.
How then can you say to me:

"Flee like a bird to your mountain!
2 For behold, the wicked bend their bows.
They set their arrow on the string
to shoot from the shadows at the upright in heart.
3 If the foundations are destroyed,
what can the righteous do?"

4 Yahweh is in His holy temple;
Yahweh is on His heavenly throne.
His eyes are watching closely;
they examine the sons of men.
5 Yahweh tests the righteous and the wicked;
His soul hates the lover of violence.
6 On the wicked He will rain down fiery coals and sulfur;
a scorching wind will be their portion.

7 For Yahweh is righteous; He loves justice.
The upright will see His face.

12

PSALM 12 IN 30 SECONDS
Everybody lies and flatters. God's words are pure like silver refined seven times.

THE GODLY ARE NO MORE
For the choirmaster. According to Sheminith. A Psalm of David.

1 Help, O Yahweh, for the godly are no more;
the faithful have vanished from among men.
2 They lie to one another;
they speak with flattering lips and a double heart.
3 May Yahweh cut off all flattering lips
and every boastful tongue.
4 They say, "With our tongues we will prevail.
We own our lips—who can be our master?"

5 "For the cause of the oppressed
and for the groaning of the needy,
I will now arise," says Yahweh.
"I will bring safety to him who yearns."

6 The words of Yahweh are flawless,
like silver refined in a furnace,
like gold purified sevenfold.
7 You, O Yahweh, will keep us;
You will forever guard us from this generation.
8 The wicked wander freely,
and vileness is exalted among men.

13

PSALM 13 IN 30 SECONDS
How long, God? Four times in two verses. Then David decides to trust anyway.

HOW LONG, O YAHWEH?
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 How long, O Yahweh?
Will You forget me forever?
How long will You hide Your face from me?
2 How long must I wrestle in my soul,
with sorrow in my heart each day?
How long will my enemy dominate me?

3 Consider me and respond, O Yahweh my God.
Give light to my eyes, lest I sleep in death,
4 lest my enemy say, "I have overcome him,"
and my foes rejoice when I fall.

5 But I have trusted in Your loving devotion;
my heart will rejoice in Your salvation.
6 I will sing to Yahweh,

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

for He has been good to me.

14

PSALM 14 IN 30 SECONDS
Only a fool says in his heart there is no God. Nobody is good, not even one.

THE FOOL SAYS THERE IS NO GOD // PSALM 53:1–6; ISAIAH 59:1–17; ROMANS 3:9–20
For the choirmaster. Of David.

1 *The fool says in his heart,*
"There is no God."
They are corrupt; their acts are vile.
There is no one who does good.

2 *Yahweh looks down from heaven*
upon the sons of men
to see if any understand,
if any seek God.
3 *All have turned away,*
they have together become corrupt;
there is no one who does good,
not even one.

4 Will the workers of iniquity never learn?
They devour my people like bread;
they refuse to call upon Yahweh.
5 There they are, overwhelmed with dread,
for God is in the company of the righteous.
6 You sinners frustrate the plans of the oppressed,
yet Yahweh is their shelter.
7 Oh, that the salvation of Israel would come from Zion!
When Yahweh restores His captive people,
let Jacob rejoice, let Israel be glad!

15

PSALM 15 IN 30 SECONDS
Who may live with God? The person who is honest, keeps promises and does not take bribes.

WHO MAY DWELL ON YOUR HOLY MOUNTAIN?
A Psalm of David.

1 O Yahweh, who may abide in Your tent?
Who may dwell on Your holy mountain?
2 He who walks with integrity
and practices righteousness,
who speaks the truth from his heart,
3 who has no slander on his tongue,
who does no harm to his neighbor,
who casts no scorn on his friend,
4 who despises the vile
but honors those who fear Yahweh,
who does not revise a costly oath,
5 who lends his money without interest
and refuses a bribe against the innocent.
He who does these things
will never be shaken.

16

PSALM 16 IN 30 SECONDS
You are my Lord and my best thing. The grave will not hold Your Holy One. Peter preached this on Pentecost.

THE PRESENCE OF YAHWEH // ACTS 2:14–36
A Miktam of David.

1 Preserve me, O God,
for in You I take refuge.
2 I said to Yahweh, "You are my Lord;
apart from You I have no good thing."
3 As for the saints in the land,
they are the excellence
in whom all my delight resides.
4 Sorrows will multiply
to those who chase other gods.
I will not pour out their libations of blood,
or speak their names with my lips.
5 Yahweh is my chosen portion and my cup;
You have made my lot secure.
6 The lines of my boundary have fallen in pleasant places;
surely my inheritance is delightful.
7 I will bless Yahweh who counsels me;
even at night my conscience instructs me.

- **PS 14:1 [HEART]** The fool says in his heart, There is no God. Unbelief starts in the heart before it reaches the mouth.
- **PS 14:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:10-12 p.1802
- **PS 14:1 [NOTE]** THE FOOL. In the Bible a fool is not someone with a low IQ. It is someone who lives as if God does not matter. Paul quotes 14:1 to 3 in Romans 3:10 to 12: no one is righteous, not even one.

- **PS 15:2 [HEART]** The one who may dwell with God speaks truth from his heart.
- **PS 16:4 [DEMONIC]** Sorrows multiply for those who chase other gods

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

8 I have set Yahweh always before me.
Because He is at my right hand, I will not be shaken.
9 Therefore my heart is glad and my tongue rejoices;
my body also will dwell securely.
10 For You will not abandon my soul to Sheol,
nor will You let Your Holy One see decay.
11 You have made known to me the path of life;
You will fill me with joy in Your presence,
with eternal pleasures at Your right hand.

17

PSALM 17 IN 30 SECONDS
Keep me as the apple of Your eye. Hide me in the shadow of Your wings.

HEAR MY RIGHTEOUS PLEA

A prayer of David.

1 Hear, O Yahweh, my righteous plea;
listen to my cry.
Give ear to my prayer—
it comes from lips free of deceit.
2 May my vindication come from Your presence;
may Your eyes see what is right.

3 You have tried my heart;
You have visited me in the night.
You have tested me and found no evil;
I have resolved not to sin with my mouth.
4 As for the deeds of men—
by the word of Your lips
I have avoided the ways of the violent.
5 My steps have held to Your paths;
my feet have not slipped.

6 I call on You, O God,
for You will answer me.
Incline Your ear to me;
hear my words.
7 Show the wonders of Your loving devotion,
You who save by Your right hand
those who seek refuge from their foes.
8 Keep me as the apple of Your eye;
hide me in the shadow of Your wings
9 from the wicked who assail me,
from my mortal enemies who surround me.

10 They have closed their callous hearts;
their mouths speak with arrogance.
11 They have tracked us down, and now surround us;
their eyes are set to cast us to the ground,
12 like a lion greedy for prey,
like a young lion lurking in ambush.

13 Arise, O Yahweh, confront them!
Bring them to their knees;
deliver me from the wicked by Your sword,
14 from such men, O Yahweh, by Your hand—
from men of the world
whose portion is in this life.
May You fill the bellies of Your treasured ones and satisfy their sons,
so they leave their abundance to their children.

15 As for me, I will behold Your face in righteousness;
when I awake, I will be satisfied in Your presence.

18

PSALM 18 IN 30 SECONDS
David's victory song, also in 2 Samuel 22.

YAHWEH IS MY ROCK // 2 SAMUEL 22:1–51

For the choirmaster. Of David the servant of Yahweh, who sang this song to Yahweh on the day Yahweh had delivered him from the hand of all his enemies and from the hand of Saul. He said:

1 I love You, O Yahweh, my strength.

- **PS 16:8 [PROPHECY]** The Holy One sets Yahweh always before Him and will not be shaken → ACTS 2:25 p.1743
- **PS 16:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 2:25-28 p.1743
- **PS 16:8 [MESSIAH SPEAKING]** Red letters here mean the Messiah is speaking. Peter said David was a prophet who saw ahead and spoke about the resurrection of Christ, Acts 2:25 to 31, and Paul said the same, Acts 13:35. Many Jewish readers hear David speaking about himself.
- **PS 16:9 [PROPHECY]** He would rise from the dead → JN 20:9 p.1733
- **PS 16:10 [PROPHECY]** His body would not see corruption (decay) in the tomb → ACTS 2:31; 13:35 p.1743
- **PS 16:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:35 p.1765
- **PS 16:10 [NOTE]** SHEOL is the place of the dead. David died and was buried, Peter said, and his tomb is still here, but Jesus' body did not rot, Acts 2:29 to 31.
- **PS 17:15 [FORESHADOW]** The resurrection foreshadowed in David's hope of awakening → LK 24:6 · MEDIUM p.1692
- **PS 18:1 [NOTE]** THE SAME SONG TWICE. This psalm is almost word for word 2 Samuel 22, p.530.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

2 Yahweh is my rock, my fortress, and my deliverer.
My God is my rock, in whom I take refuge,
my shield, and the horn of my salvation, my stronghold.
3 I will call upon Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised;
so shall I be saved from my enemies.

4 The cords of death encompassed me;
the torrents of chaos overwhelmed me.
5 The cords of Sheol entangled me;
the snares of death confronted me.
6 In my distress I called upon Yahweh;
I cried to my God for help.
From His temple He heard my voice,
and my cry for His help reached His ears.

7 Then the earth shook and quaked,
and the foundations of the mountains trembled;
they were shaken because He burned with anger.
8 Smoke rose from His nostrils,
and consuming fire came from His mouth;
glowing coals blazed forth.
9 He parted the heavens and came down
with dark clouds beneath His feet.
10 He mounted a cherub and flew;
He soared on the wings of the wind.
11 He made darkness His hiding place,
and storm clouds a canopy around Him.
12 From the brightness of His presence
His clouds advanced—
hailstones and coals of fire.

13 Yahweh thundered from heaven;
the voice of the Most High resounded—
hailstones and coals of fire.
14 He shot His arrows and scattered the foes;
He hurled lightning and routed them.
15 The channels of the sea appeared,
and the foundations of the world were exposed,
at Your rebuke, O Yahweh,
at the blast of the breath of Your nostrils.

16 He reached down from on high and took hold of me;
He drew me out of deep waters.
17 He rescued me from my powerful enemy,
from foes too mighty for me.
18 They confronted me in my day of calamity,
but Yahweh was my support.
19 He brought me out into the open;
He rescued me because He delighted in me.

20 Yahweh has rewarded me according to my righteousness;
He has repaid me according to the cleanness of my hands.
21 For I have kept the ways of Yahweh
and have not wickedly departed from my God.
22 For all His ordinances are before me;
I have not disregarded His statutes.
23 And I have been blameless before Him
and kept myself from iniquity.
24 So Yahweh has repaid me according to my righteousness,
according to the cleanness of my hands in His sight.

25 To the faithful You show Yourself faithful,
to the blameless You show Yourself blameless;
26 to the pure You show Yourself pure,
but to the crooked You show Yourself shrewd.
27 For You save an afflicted people,
but You humble those with haughty eyes.

28 For You, O Yahweh, light my lamp;
my God lights up my darkness.
29 For in You I can charge an army,
and with my God I can scale a wall.
30 As for God, His way is perfect;
the word of Yahweh is flawless.
He is a shield to all who take refuge in Him.

31 For who is God besides Yahweh?
And who is the Rock except our God?

PS 18:2 [PROPHECY] A horn of salvation raised up for His people → LK 1:69-71 · MEDIUM p.1647

PS 18:2 [NOTE] ROCK. David uses the word rock for God again and again. He spent years hiding in rocky hills from Saul, and the rocks kept him alive.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

32 It is God who arms me with strength
and makes my way clear.
33 He makes my feet like those of a deer
and stations me upon the heights.
34 He trains my hands for battle;
my arms can bend a bow of bronze.

35 You have given me Your shield of salvation;
Your right hand upholds me,
and Your gentleness exalts me.
36 You broaden the path beneath me
so that my ankles do not give way.
37 I pursued my enemies and overtook them;
I did not turn back until they were consumed.
38 I crushed them so they could not rise;
they have fallen under my feet.

39 You have armed me with strength for battle;
You have subdued my foes beneath me.
40 You have made my enemies retreat before me;
I destroyed those who hated me.
41 They cried for help, but there was no one to save them—
to Yahweh, but He did not answer.
42 I ground them as dust in the face of the wind;
I trampled them like mud in the streets.

43 You have delivered me from the strife of the people;
You have made me the head of nations;
a people I had not known shall serve me.
44 When they hear me, they obey me;
foreigners cower before me.
45 Foreigners lose heart
and come trembling from their strongholds.

46 Yahweh lives, and blessed be my Rock!
And may the God of my salvation be exalted—
47 the God who avenges me
and subdues nations beneath me,
48 who delivers me from my enemies.
You exalt me above my foes;
You rescue me from violent men.

49 *Therefore I will praise You, O Yahweh,*
among the nations;
I will sing praises to Your name.

50 Great salvation He brings to His king.
He shows loving devotion to His anointed,
to David and his descendants forever.

19

PSALM 19 IN 30 SECONDS
The skies preach about God without a word. His law is sweeter than honey.

THE HEAVENS DECLARE THE GLORY OF GOD
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 The heavens declare the glory of God;
the skies proclaim the work of His hands.
2 Day after day they pour forth speech;
night after night they reveal knowledge.
3 Without speech or language,
without a sound to be heard,
4 *their voice has gone out into all the earth,*
their words to the ends of the world.

In the heavens He has pitched
a tent for the sun.
5 Like a bridegroom emerging from his chamber,
like a champion rejoicing to run his course,
6 it rises at one end of the heavens
and runs its circuit to the other;
nothing is deprived of its warmth.

7 The Law of Yahweh is perfect,
reviving the soul;
the testimony of Yahweh is trustworthy,
making wise the simple.
8 The precepts of Yahweh are right,
bringing joy to the heart;
the commandments of Yahweh are radiant,
giving light to the eyes.

- **PS 18:49 [PROPHECY]** The king would praise God among the nations → ROM 15:9 p.1817
- **PS 18:49 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:9 p.1817
- **PS 18:50 [PROPHECY]** 'He gives great deliverance to His king' → Matt 1:1 p.1550
- **PS 19:1 [NOTE]** TWO BOOKS. Verses 1 to 6 are God's book of nature; verses 7 to 11 are God's book, the Law. Both tell you about Him. Paul quotes 19:4 in Romans 10:18.
- **PS 19:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:18 p.1813

THE HEART · ARCHAEOLOGY · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

9 The fear of Yahweh is pure,
enduring forever;
the judgments of Yahweh are true,
being altogether righteous.
10 They are more precious than gold,
than much pure gold;
they are sweeter than honey,
than honey from the comb.
11 By them indeed Your servant is warned;
in keeping them is great reward.

12 Who can discern his own errors?
Cleanse me from my hidden faults.
13 Keep Your servant also from willful sins;
may they not rule over me.
Then I will be blameless
and cleansed of great transgression.
14 May the words of my mouth
and the meditation of my heart
be pleasing in Your sight,
O Yahweh, my Rock and my Redeemer.

20

PSALM 20 IN 30 SECONDS

A prayer for the king before battle. Some trust in chariots, but we trust in Yahweh.

THE DAY OF TROUBLE

For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 May Yahweh answer you in the day of trouble;
may the name of the God of Jacob protect you.
2 May He send you help from the sanctuary
and sustain you from Zion.
3 May He remember all your gifts
and look favorably on your burnt offerings.

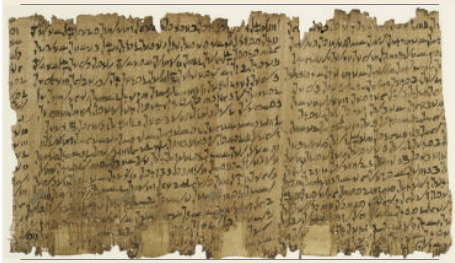
Selah

4 May He give you the desires of your heart
and make all your plans succeed.
5 May we shout for joy at your victory
and raise a banner in the name of our God.
May Yahweh grant all your petitions.
6 Now I know that Yahweh saves His anointed;
He answers him from His holy heaven
with the saving power of His right hand.
7 Some trust in chariots and others in horses,
but we trust in the name of Yahweh our God.
8 They collapse and fall,
but we rise up and stand firm.
9 O Yahweh, save the king.
Answer us on the day we call.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PAPYRUS AMHERST 63

PSALM 20:1 TO 5



A piece of Papyrus Amherst 63, Aramaic written in Egyptian Demotic letters, about 300 BC. The Morgan Library and Museum, New York. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A long papyrus scroll, about 12 feet, from Egypt. It is written in Aramaic, but with Egyptian letters, the Demotic script. It holds prayers, hymns and stories of an Aramaic speaking group living in Egypt.

HOW OLD IT IS

Copied about 300 BC. The prayers in it may be older.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Bought in Egypt in the 1800s, likely from Thebes. In 1944 a scholar saw that it was Aramaic in Egyptian letters, but it was not fully read until the 1980s.

WHAT IT SAYS

One prayer sounds a lot like Psalm 20:1 to 5: May the Lord answer us in our troubles; may He send help from His sanctuary and grant every wish of our

PS 19:14 [HEART] Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart please You.

PS 19:14 [NOTE] MOUTH AND HEART. Many pastors pray this verse before they preach.

PS 20:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Aramaic prayer written in Egyptian letters, 300s BC, sounds a lot like Psalm 20:1 to 5, see the Papyrus Amherst 63 Field Notes box, p.895 FIELD NOTES p.895

PS 20:1 [NOTE] PAPYRUS AMHERST 63. An Egyptian papyrus has a prayer in Aramaic that sounds a lot like verses 1 to 5. See the Field Notes box after this psalm, p.895.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

heart. But it prays to the god Horus and names other gods too. One scholar reads Yaho, an old form of Yahweh, where others read Horus.

WHO BORROWED?

Scholars disagree. Some think both come from an older prayer. Others think a version of Psalm 20 was borrowed and changed by people who worshiped other gods.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not show that Psalm 20 is pagan. It shows that a prayer like Psalm 20 was known outside Israel long ago.

21

PSALM 21 IN 30 SECONDS

The king won. Thank God. He gave the king what his heart wanted.

AFTER THE BATTLE // PROVERBS 21:1–31

For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 O Yahweh, the king rejoices in Your strength.
How greatly he exults in Your salvation!
2 You have granted his heart's desire
and have not withheld the request of his lips.

Selah

3 For You welcomed him with rich blessings;
You placed on his head a crown of pure gold.
4 He asked You for life, and You granted it—
length of days, forever and ever.
5 Great is his glory in Your salvation;
You bestow on him splendor and majesty.
6 For You grant him blessings forever;
You cheer him with joy in Your presence.
7 For the king trusts in Yahweh;
through the loving devotion of the Most High,
he will not be shaken.
8 Your hand will apprehend all Your enemies;
Your right hand will seize those who hate You.
9 You will place them in a fiery furnace
at the time of Your appearing.
In His wrath Yahweh will engulf them,
and the fire will consume them.
10 You will wipe their descendants from the earth,
and their offspring from the sons of men.
11 Though they intend You harm,
the schemes they devise will not prevail.
12 For You will put them to flight
when Your bow is trained upon them.
13 Be exalted, O Yahweh, in Your strength;
we will sing and praise Your power.

- **PS 21:1 [FORESHADOW]** 'The king shall rejoice in Your strength, O Yahweh' → PHIL 2:9 · MEDIUM p.1896
- **PS 21:3 [FORESHADOW]** Crown of pure gold set on His head → REV 19:12 · MEDIUM p.2110
- **PS 21:4 [FORESHADOW]** 'Length of days forever and ever' → HEB 7:16 · MEDIUM p.1986
- **PS 21:5 [FORESHADOW]** 'Honor and majesty You have laid upon Him' → JN 17:5 · MEDIUM p.1728

22

PSALM 22 IN 30 SECONDS

My God, my God, why have You forsaken me? Jesus prayed this from the cross. It ends in victory.

THE PSALM OF THE CROSS // MATTHEW 27:32–56; MARK 15:21–41; LUK 23:26–43; JOHN 19:16–30

For the choirmaster. To the tune of "The Doe of the Dawn." A Psalm of David.

1 *My God, my God,*
why have You forsaken me?
Why are You so far from saving me,
so far from my words of groaning?
2 I cry out by day, O my God,
but You do not answer,
and by night,
but I have no rest.
3 Yet You are holy,
enthroned on the praises of Israel.

- **PS 22:1 [PROPHECY]** 'My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?' spoken from the cross → MT 27:46; MK 15:34 p.1598
- **PS 22:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 27:46 p.1598
- **PS 22:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 15:34 p.1636
- **PS 22:1 [MESSIAH SPEAKING]** Red letters here mean the Messiah is speaking. Jesus cried out the first line from the cross, Matthew 27:46 and Mark 15:34, and Hebrews 2:12 puts 22:22 in His mouth. Many Jewish readers hear David or suffering Israel. See Psalm 22 and the Cross.
- **PS 22:1 [NOTE]** THE DOE OF THE DAWN was probably the name of a tune, like a hymn tune in a church hymnal.
- **PS 22:2 [PROPHECY]** He would cry out day and night with no answer → MT 27:45 · MEDIUM p.1598

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

4 In You our fathers trusted;
they trusted and You delivered them.
5 They cried out to You and were set free;
they trusted in You and were not disappointed.

6 But I am a worm and not a man,
scorned by men and despised by the people.
7 All who see me mock me;
they sneer and shake their heads:
8 "He trusts in Yahweh,
let Yahweh deliver him;
let Yahweh rescue him,
since He delights in him."

9 Yet You brought me forth from the womb;
You made me secure at my mother's breast.
10 From birth I was cast upon You;
from my mother's womb You have been my God.
11 Be not far from me,
for trouble is near
and there is no one to help.

12 Many bulls surround me;
strong bulls of Bashan encircle me.
13 They open their jaws against me
like lions that roar and maul.
14 I am poured out like water,
and all my bones are disjointed.
My heart is like wax;
it melts away within me.
15 My strength is dried up like a potsherd,
and my tongue sticks to the roof of my mouth.
You lay me in the dust of death.

16 For dogs surround me;
a band of evil men encircles me;
they have pierced my hands and feet.
17 I can count all my bones;
they stare and gloat over me.
18 *They divide my garments among them*
and cast lots for my clothing.

19 But You, O Yahweh, be not far off;
O my Strength, come quickly to help me.
20 Deliver my soul from the sword,
my precious life from the power of wild dogs.
21 Save me from the mouth of the lion;
at the horns of the wild oxen You have answered me!

22 *I will proclaim Your name to my brothers;*
I will praise You in the assembly.
23 You who fear Yahweh, praise Him!
All descendants of Jacob, honor Him!
All offspring of Israel, revere Him!
24 For He has not despised or detested
the torment of the afflicted.
He has not hidden His face from him,
but has attended to his cry for help.

- **PS 22:6 [PROPHECY]** He would be scorned by men and despised by the people → MT 27:39-44; LK 23:35 · MEDIUM p.1598
- **PS 22:7 [PROPHECY]** Mockers shoot out the lip and shake the head at Him → MT 27:39-44 p.1598
- **PS 22:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 27:39 p.1598
- **PS 22:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 15:29 p.1636
- **PS 22:7 [NOTE]** SHAKE THEIR HEADS. People passing the cross did exactly this, Matthew 27:39.
- **PS 22:8 [PROPHECY]** 'He trusted in God → MT 27:43 p.1598
- **PS 22:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 27:43 p.1598
- **PS 22:8 [NOTE]** THE MOCKERS' WORDS stay black. The chief priests said almost the same thing at the cross, Matthew 27:43.
- **PS 22:9 [PROPHECY]** Cared for from birth → LK 2:7 · MEDIUM p.1647
- **PS 22:12 [PROPHECY]** His enemies surround Him seeking His death → JN 19:6 p.1731
- **PS 22:14 [PROPHECY]** His strength poured out like water and His bones out of joint → MK 15:37; JN 19:34 · MEDIUM p.1636
- **PS 22:14 [PROPHECY]** He suffered agony at Calvary → MK 15:34-37 p.1636
- **PS 22:15 [PROPHECY]** He thirsted on the cross → JN 19:28 p.1732
- **PS 22:16 [PROPHECY]** They pierced His hands and feet → JN 20:25-27 p.1735
- **PS 22:16 [TEXT]** PIERCED. Most Hebrew copies read like a lion, ka'ari: like a lion, my hands and feet. The Greek Old Testament reads they dug or pierced, and a Dead Sea Scroll from Nahal Hever, 5/6HevPs, seems to read a verb, ka'aru. Many Bibles say pierced.
- **PS 22:16 [NOTE]** DOGS. In Jesus' day, Jews sometimes called Gentiles dogs, Matthew 15:26. Roman soldiers, who were Gentiles, nailed Jesus to the cross. He showed His hands and feet afterward, Luke 24:39 and John 20:25.
- **PS 22:17 [PROPHECY]** Stripped and stared at by His persecutors → LK 23:34-35 p.1690
- **PS 22:18 [PROPHECY]** His garments divided, lots cast for His clothing → JN 19:23-24 p.1732
- **PS 22:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 27:35 p.1598
- **PS 22:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 15:24 p.1636
- **PS 22:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 23:34 p.1690
- **PS 22:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 19:24 p.1732
- **PS 22:18 [NOTE]** CASTING LOTS. John says the soldiers did this so the Scripture would be fulfilled, John 19:23 to 24.
- **PS 22:20 [PROPHECY]** He cried for rescue from the sword and the wild dogs → HEB 5:7 · MEDIUM p.1982
- **PS 22:22 [PROPHECY]** His resurrection declared to His brethren → HEB 2:12; JN 20:17 p.1979
- **PS 22:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 2:12 p.1979

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · END TIMES PROPHECIES · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

25 My praise for You resounds in the great assembly;
I will fulfill my vows before those who fear You.
26 The poor will eat and be satisfied;
those who seek Yahweh will praise Him.
May your hearts live forever!

27 All the ends of the earth
will remember and turn to Yahweh.
All the families of the nations
will bow down before Him.
28 For dominion belongs to Yahweh
and He rules over the nations.
29 All the rich of the earth will feast and worship;
all who go down to the dust will kneel before Him—
even those unable to preserve their lives.
30 Posterity will serve Him;
they will declare the Lord to a new generation.
31 They will come and proclaim His righteousness
to a people yet unborn—
all that He has done.

THE BIG QUESTION

PSALM 22 AND THE CROSS

A Psalm Written Ahead

PSALM 22 · MATTHEW 27:35 TO 46 · JOHN 19:23 TO 37 · HEBREWS 2:12

THE CRY

Jesus prayed the first line on the cross in Aramaic, Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani? Mark 15:34. Many believe Jewish listeners would have recalled the whole psalm from its first line.

FROM PAIN TO PRAISE

Verses 1 to 21 are a cry of a man dying. Verses 22 to 31 turn to praise and to the nations coming to God. The cross was not the end.

BEFORE CRUCIFIXION

David wrote about 1000 BC. The Persians and later the Romans made crucifixion common, many centuries later.

WHAT JESUS SAID

Everything written about Me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled, Luke 24:44.

Line by Line

ISAIAH 53 · LUKE 24:44

22:1
Forsaken. Matthew 27:46.

22:7 TO 8
Mocked, shaking heads, Let God rescue him. Matthew 27:39 to 43.

22:14 TO 15
Bones out of joint, heart like wax, thirsty. John 19:28.

22:16
Hands and feet pierced; see the TEXT note on 22:16. John 20:25.

22:17
They stare at me; I can count all my bones. Luke 23:35.

22:18
Dividing his clothes and casting lots. John 19:23 to 24.

22:22
I will proclaim Your name to my brothers. Hebrews 2:12 says Jesus says this.

VIEW 1: PROPHECY

Christians read it as a prophecy of the Messiah's suffering. David, a prophet, Acts 2:30, wrote more than he knew.

VIEW 2: DAVID'S OWN PAIN

Many Jewish readers hear David, or suffering Israel. Many Christians say both: David's real pain became a pattern that Jesus filled full.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The Gospel writers saw Psalm 22 all over the crucifixion, and Jesus Himself chose its words.

- **PS 22:24 [PROPHECY]** God heard the cry of the afflicted one and did not hide His face → HEB 5:7 · MEDIUM p.1982
- **PS 22:27 [PROPHECY]** He would govern the nations → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **PS 22:31 [PROPHECY]** His declaration: 'It is finished' → JN 19:30; HEB 10:12, 14, 18 · MEDIUM p.1732
- **PS 22:31 [NOTE]** HE HAS DONE IT. Some hear an echo in Jesus' last words, It is finished, John 19:30. The psalm that starts with forsaken ends with a victory told to people not yet born.

23

PSALM 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Yahweh is my Shepherd. Green grass, still water, a dark valley and a full cup. The most loved psalm.

YAHWEH IS MY SHEPHERD // EZEKIEL 34:11–24; JOHN 10:1–21

A Psalm of David.

1 Yahweh is my shepherd;

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

I shall not want.
2 He makes me lie down in green pastures;
He leads me beside quiet waters.
3 He restores my soul;
He guides me in the paths of righteousness
for the sake of His name.
4 Even though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death,
I will fear no evil,
for You are with me;
Your rod and Your staff, they comfort me.
5 You prepare a table before me
in the presence of my enemies.
You anoint my head with oil;
my cup overflows.
6 Surely goodness and mercy will follow me
all the days of my life,
and I will dwell in the house of Yahweh
forever.

24

PSALM 24 IN 30 SECONDS
The earth is Yahweh's. Open the gates! The King of Glory is coming in.

THE EARTH IS YAHWEH'S
A Psalm of David.

1 *The earth is Yahweh's, and the fullness thereof,*
the world and all who dwell therein.
2 For He has founded it upon the seas
and established it upon the waters.
3 Who may ascend the hill of Yahweh?
Who may stand in His holy place?
4 He who has clean hands and a pure heart,
who does not lift up his soul to an idol
or swear deceitfully.
5 He will receive blessing from Yahweh
and vindication from the God of his salvation.
6 Such is the generation of those who seek Him,
who seek Your face, O God of Jacob.
Selah
7 Lift up your heads, O gates!
Be lifted up, O ancient doors,
that the King of Glory may enter!
8 Who is this King of Glory?
Yahweh strong and mighty,
Yahweh mighty in battle.
9 Lift up your heads, O gates!
Be lifted up, O ancient doors,
that the King of Glory may enter!
10 Who is He, this King of Glory?
Yahweh of Hosts—
He is the King of Glory.
Selah

25

PSALM 25 IN 30 SECONDS
An A to Z prayer. Show me Your ways, forgive my sins, and guard me.

TO YOU I LIFT UP MY SOUL
Of David.

1 To You, O Yahweh, I lift up my soul;
2 in You, my God, I trust.
Do not let me be put to shame;
do not let my enemies exult over me.
3 Surely none who wait for You will be put to shame;
but those who engage in treachery without cause will be disgraced.
4 Show me Your ways, O Yahweh;
teach me Your paths.
5 Guide me in Your truth and teach me,
for You are the God of my salvation;
all day long I wait for You.
6 Remember, O Yahweh, Your compassion and loving devotion,
for they are from age to age.

PS 23:1 [FORESHADOW] The Good Shepherd who lays down His life → JN 10:11; 1PE 2:25 p.1717
PS 23:1 [NOTE] SHEPHERD. David was a shepherd before he was a king, 1 Samuel 16:11. Jesus said, I am the good shepherd, John 10:11.
PS 23:4 [NOTABLE] God does not promise there will be no valley. He promises to walk through it with you.
PS 23:4 [NOTE] ROD AND STAFF. A shepherd's rod was a club to fight off wild animals; the staff was a long stick to guide the sheep.
PS 23:5 [NOTE] ANOINT MY HEAD WITH OIL. A good host poured oil on an honored guest's head. Here God is the host, and the enemies have to watch.
PS 24:1 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 10:26 p.1834
PS 24:1 [NOTE] THE EARTH IS YAHWEH'S. Paul quotes this to say Christians can eat food from the market, 1 Corinthians 10:26.
PS 24:4 [HEART] Only those with clean hands and a pure heart may stand in God's holy place.
PS 24:4 [DEMONIC] Clean hands do not lift up the soul to an idol
PS 25:1 [NOTE] AN A TO Z. Each verse starts with the next Hebrew letter, a little off in a few places. It made the psalm easy to remember.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

7 Remember not the sins of my youth,
nor my rebellious acts;
remember me according to Your loving devotion,
because of Your goodness, O Yahweh.

8 Good and upright is Yahweh;
therefore He shows sinners the way.
9 He guides the humble in what is right
and teaches them His way.
10 All Yahweh's ways are loving and faithful
to those who keep His covenant and His decrees.
11 For the sake of Your name, O Yahweh,
forgive my iniquity, for it is great.

12 Who is the man who fears Yahweh?
He will instruct him in the path chosen for him.
13 His soul will dwell in prosperity,
and his descendants will inherit the land.
14 Yahweh confides in those who fear Him,
and reveals His covenant to them.
15 My eyes are always on Yahweh,
for He will free my feet from the mesh.

16 Turn to me and be gracious,
for I am lonely and afflicted.
17 The troubles of my heart increase;
free me from my distress.
18 Consider my affliction and trouble,
and take away all my sins.
19 Consider my enemies, for they are many,
and they hate me with vicious hatred.

20 Guard my soul and deliver me;
let me not be put to shame,
for I take refuge in You.
21 May integrity and uprightness preserve me,
because I wait for You.

22 Redeem Israel, O God,
from all its distress.

26

PSALM 26 IN 30 SECONDS
David asks God to check his life. I have not hung out with liars.

VINDICATE ME, O YAHWEH
Of David.

1 Vindicate me, O Yahweh!

For I have walked with integrity;
I have trusted in Yahweh without wavering.
2 Test me, O Yahweh, and try me;
examine my heart and mind.
3 For Your loving devotion is before my eyes,
and I have walked in Your truth.

4 I do not sit with deceitful men,
nor keep company with hypocrites.
5 I hate the mob of evildoers,
and refuse to sit with the wicked.
6 I wash my hands in innocence
that I may go about Your altar, O Yahweh,
7 to raise my voice in thanksgiving
and declare all Your wonderful works.

8 O Yahweh, I love the house where You dwell,
the place where Your glory resides.
9 Do not take my soul away with sinners,
or my life with men of bloodshed,
10 in whose hands are wicked schemes,
whose right hands are full of bribes.

11 But I will walk with integrity;
redeem me and be merciful to me.
12 My feet stand on level ground;
in the congregations I will bless Yahweh.

27

PSALM 27 IN 30 SECONDS
Yahweh is my light. Whom shall I fear? One thing I ask: to live in His house.

YAHWEH IS MY SALVATION
Of David.

1 Yahweh is my light and my salvation—
whom shall I fear?
Yahweh is the stronghold of my life—
whom shall I dread?
2 When the wicked came upon me to devour my flesh,
my enemies and foes stumbled and fell.
3 Though an army encamps around me,
my heart will not fear;
though a war breaks out against me,
I will keep my trust.

PS 27:1 **[NOTABLE]** Fear shrinks when you remember how big God is.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

4 One thing I have asked of Yahweh;
this is what I desire:
to dwell in the house of Yahweh
all the days of my life,
to gaze on the beauty of Yahweh
and seek Him in His temple.
5 For in the day of trouble
He will hide me in His shelter;
He will conceal me under the cover of His tent;
He will set me high upon a rock.
6 Then my head will be held high
above my enemies around me.
At His tabernacle I will offer sacrifices with shouts of joy;
I will sing and make music to Yahweh.

7 Hear, O Yahweh, my voice when I call;
be merciful and answer me.
8 My heart said, "Seek His face."
Your face, O Yahweh, I will seek.
9 Hide not Your face from me,
nor turn away Your servant in anger.
You have been my helper;
do not leave me or forsake me,
O God of my salvation.

10 Though my father and mother forsake me,
Yahweh will receive me.
11 Teach me Your way, O Yahweh,
and lead me on a level path,
because of my oppressors.
12 Do not hand me over to the will of my foes,
for false witnesses rise up against me,
breathing out violence.

13 Still I am certain to see
the goodness of Yahweh
in the land of the living.
14 Wait patiently for Yahweh;
be strong and courageous.

Wait patiently for Yahweh!

28

PSALM 28 IN 30 SECONDS
Hear me, God, or I am done for. Then: He heard me! My heart jumps for joy.

YAHWEH IS MY STRENGTH
Of David.

1 To You, O Yahweh, I call;
be not deaf to me, O my Rock.
For if You remain silent,
I will be like those descending to the Pit.
2 Hear my cry for mercy
when I call to You for help,
when I lift up my hands
toward Your holy sanctuary.

3 Do not drag me away with the wicked,
and with the workers of iniquity,
who speak peace to their neighbors
while malice is in their hearts.
4 Repay them according to their deeds
and for their works of evil.
Repay them for what their hands have done;
bring back on them what they deserve.
5 Since they show no regard for the works of Yahweh
or what His hands have done,
He will tear them down
and never rebuild them.

6 Blessed be Yahweh,
for He has heard my cry for mercy.
7 Yahweh is my strength and my shield;
my heart trusts in Him, and I am helped.
Therefore my heart rejoices,
and I give thanks to Him with my song.

8 Yahweh is the strength of His people,
a stronghold of salvation for His anointed.
9 Save Your people and bless Your inheritance;
shepherd them and carry them forever.

29

PSALM 29 IN 30 SECONDS
God's voice in a thunderstorm breaks cedars and shakes the desert. Then He gives peace.

ASCRIBE GLORY TO YAHWEH
A Psalm of David.

1 Ascribe to Yahweh, O heavenly beings,
ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength.
2 Ascribe to Yahweh the glory due His name;
worship Yahweh in the splendor of His holiness.

PS 29:1 [NOTE] SEVEN THUNDERS. The voice of Yahweh shows up seven times in this psalm, like seven claps of thunder. Many think it answers the Canaanite storm god Baal: the real Lord of the storm is Yahweh.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

3 The voice of Yahweh is over the waters;
the God of glory thunders;
Yahweh is heard over many waters.
4 The voice of Yahweh is powerful;
the voice of Yahweh is majestic.
5 The voice of Yahweh breaks the cedars;
Yahweh shatters the cedars of Lebanon.
6 He makes Lebanon skip like a calf,
and Sirion like a young wild ox.

7 The voice of Yahweh
strikes with flames of fire.
8 The voice of Yahweh shakes the wilderness;
Yahweh shakes the Wilderness of Kadesh.
9 The voice of Yahweh twists the oaks
and strips the forests bare.
And in His temple all cry, "Glory!"

10 Yahweh sits enthroned over the flood;
Yahweh is enthroned as King forever.
11 Yahweh gives His people strength;
Yahweh blesses His people with peace.

30

PSALM 30 IN 30 SECONDS
You turned my crying into dancing. Weeping may stay the night, but joy comes in the morning.

YOU TURNED MY MOURNING INTO DANCING
A Psalm. A song for the dedication of the temple. Of David.

1 I will exalt You, O Yahweh,
for You have lifted me up
and have not allowed my foes
to rejoice over me.
2 O Yahweh my God, I cried to You for help,
and You healed me.
3 O Yahweh, You pulled me up from Sheol;
You spared me from descending into the Pit.

4 Sing to Yahweh, O you His saints,
and praise His holy name.
5 For His anger is fleeting,
but His favor lasts a lifetime.
Weeping may stay the night,
but joy comes in the morning.

6 In prosperity I said,
"I will never be shaken."
7 O Yahweh, You favored me;
You made my mountain stand strong.

When You hid Your face,
I was dismayed.
8 To You, O Yahweh, I called,
and I begged my Lord for mercy:
9 "What gain is there in my bloodshed,
in my descent to the Pit?
Will the dust praise You?
Will it proclaim Your faithfulness?
10 Hear me, O Yahweh, and have mercy;
O Yahweh, be my helper."

11 You turned my mourning into dancing;
You peeled off my sackcloth and clothed me with joy,
12 that my heart may sing Your praises and not be silent.
O Yahweh my God, I will give thanks forever.

31

PSALM 31 IN 30 SECONDS
Into Your hands I commit my spirit. Jesus used these words on the cross.

INTO YOUR HANDS I COMMIT MY SPIRIT // LUKE 23:44–49
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 In You, O Yahweh, I have taken refuge;
let me never be put to shame;
save me by Your righteousness.
2 Incline Your ear to me;
come quickly to my rescue.
Be my rock of refuge,
the stronghold of my deliverance.

3 For You are my rock and my fortress;
lead me and guide me for the sake of Your name.
4 You free me from the net laid out for me,
for You are my refuge.
5 *Into Your hands I commit my spirit;*
You have redeemed me, O Yahweh, God of truth.

- **PS 30:3 [PROPHECY]** Resurrection from the grave foreshadowed → ACTS 2:32 · MEDIUM p.1743
- **PS 30:5 [NOTABLE]** Hard nights do not last forever. Hang on until morning.
- **PS 31:5 [PROPHECY]** 'Into Your hands I commit My spirit' → LK 23:46 p.1690
- **PS 31:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 23:46 p.1690
- **PS 31:5 [NOTE]** JESUS' LAST WORDS. Into Your hands I commit My spirit, Luke 23:46. Jesus borrowed David's prayer, so here it stays black. In Luke it is red.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

6 I hate those who cling to worthless idols,
but in Yahweh I trust.
7 I will be glad and rejoice in Your loving devotion,
for You have seen my affliction;
You have known the anguish of my soul.
8 You have not delivered me to the enemy;
You have set my feet in the open.

9 Be merciful to me, O Yahweh,
for I am in distress;
my eyes fail from sorrow,
my soul and body as well.
10 For my life is consumed with grief
and my years with groaning;
my iniquity has drained my strength,
and my bones are wasting away.
11 Among all my enemies I am a disgrace,
and among my neighbors even more.
I am dreaded by my friends—
they flee when they see me on the street.
12 I am forgotten like a dead man, out of mind.
I am like a broken vessel.
13 For I hear the slander of many;
there is terror on every side.
They conspire against me
and plot to take my life.

14 But I trust in You, O Yahweh;
I say, "You are my God."
15 My times are in Your hands;
deliver me from my enemies
and from those who pursue me.
16 Make Your face shine on Your servant;
save me by Your loving devotion.

17 O Yahweh, let me not be ashamed,
for I have called on You.
Let the wicked be put to shame;
let them lie silent in Sheol.
18 May lying lips be silenced—
lips that speak with arrogance against the righteous,
full of pride and contempt.

19 How great is Your goodness
which You have laid up for those who fear You,
which You have bestowed before the sons of men
on those who take refuge in You!
20 You hide them in the secret place of Your presence
from the schemes of men.
You conceal them in Your shelter
from accusing tongues.

21 Blessed be Yahweh,
for He has shown me His loving devotion
in a city under siege.
22 In my alarm I said,
"I am cut off from Your sight!"
But You heard my plea for mercy
when I called to You for help.

23 Love Yahweh, all His saints.
Yahweh preserves the faithful,
but fully repays the arrogant.
24 Be strong and courageous,
all you who hope in Yahweh.

32

PSALM 32 IN 30 SECONDS
Hiding sin made David sick. Confessing it made him free. Happy is the forgiven man.

THE JOY OF FORGIVENESS // ROMANS 4:1–12

Of David. A Maskil.

1 *Blessed is he whose transgressions are forgiven,*
whose sins are covered.
2 *Blessed is the man*
whose iniquity Yahweh does not count against him,
in whose spirit there is no deceit.

3 When I kept silent, my bones became brittle
from my groaning all day long.
4 For day and night
Your hand was heavy upon me;
my strength was drained
as in the summer heat.

Selah

PS 31:6 [DEMONIC] David hates clinging to worthless idols
PS 31:11 [PROPHECY] His acquaintances fled from Him at His arrest → MK 14:50 p.1634
PS 31:13 [PROPHECY] They took counsel together to put Him to death → MT 27:1; JN 11:53 p.1597

PS 32:1 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 4:7-8 p.1803
PS 32:1 [NOTE] MASKIL. Maybe a teaching song or a skillful song. Thirteen psalm titles use the word. Paul quotes 32:1 to 2 in Romans 4:7 to 8.

ARCHAEOLOGY

5 Then I acknowledged my sin to You
and did not hide my iniquity.
I said, "I will confess my transgressions to
Yahweh,"
and You forgave the guilt of my sin.
Selah
6 Therefore let all the godly pray to You
while You may be found.
Surely when great waters rise,
they will not come near.
7 You are my hiding place.
You protect me from trouble;
You surround me with songs of deliver-
ance.
Selah
8 I will instruct you and teach you the way
you should go;
I will give you counsel and watch over
you.
9 Do not be like the horse or mule,
which have no understanding;
they must be controlled with bit and bridle
to make them come to you.
10 Many are the sorrows of the wicked,
but loving devotion surrounds him who
trusts in Yahweh.
11 Be glad in Yahweh and rejoice, O right-
eous ones;
shout for joy, all you upright in heart.

33

PSALM 33 IN 30 SECONDS
Sing a new song. God spoke and the world was made. Horses cannot save you.

PRAISE TO THE CREATOR // PSALM 148:1–14

1 Rejoice in Yahweh, O righteous ones;
it is fitting for the upright to praise Him.
2 Praise Yahweh with the harp;
make music to Him with ten strings.
3 Sing to Him a new song;
play skillfully with a shout of joy.
4 For the word of Yahweh is upright,
and all His work is trustworthy.
5 Yahweh loves righteousness and justice;
the earth is full of His loving devotion.
6 By the word of Yahweh the heavens
were made,
and all the stars by the breath of His
mouth.
7 He piles up the waters of the sea;
He puts the depths into storehouses.
8 Let all the earth fear Yahweh;
let all the people of the world revere
Him.
9 For He spoke, and it came to be;
He commanded, and it stood firm.
10 Yahweh frustrates the plans of the na-
tions;
He thwarts the devices of the peoples.
11 The counsel of Yahweh stands forever,
the purposes of His heart to all genera-
tions.
12 Blessed is the nation whose God is Yah-
weh,
the people He has chosen as His inheri-
tance!
13 Yahweh looks down from heaven;
He sees all the sons of men.
14 From His dwelling place He gazes
on all who inhabit the earth.
15 He shapes the hearts of each;
He considers all their works.
16 No king is saved by his vast army;
no warrior is delivered by his great
strength.
17 A horse is a vain hope for salvation;
even its great strength cannot save.
18 Surely the eyes of Yahweh are on those
who fear Him,
on those whose hope is in His loving
devotion
19 to deliver them from death
and keep them alive in famine.
20 Our soul waits for Yahweh;
He is our help and our shield.
21 For our hearts rejoice in Him,
since we trust in His holy name.
22 May Your loving devotion rest on us, O
Yahweh,
as we put our hope in You.

PS 33:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Lyres about 2500 BC from the royal graves at Ur show the kind of instrument David played, see the Harps and Lyres Field Notes box, p.905 FIELD NOTES p.905

PS 33:2 [NOTE] TEN STRINGS. The lyre and harp were the guitars of David's day. See the Field Notes box Harps and Lyres after this psalm, p.905.

MIRACLES NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

HARPS AND LYRES

PSALM 33:2 TO 3 · 150:3 TO 5 · 137:2 · 1 SAMUEL 16:23



The Queen's Lyre from the Royal Cemetery at Ur, about 2500 BC. The gold bull's head and the shell and stone inlay are ancient; the horns, wood and strings are modern. British Museum. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

One of the oldest stringed instruments ever found, a lyre from a royal grave at Ur in Iraq. Its sound box ends in a bull's head covered in gold.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 2500 BC, older than Abraham, who came from Ur of the Chaldeans, Genesis 11:31.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Leonard Woolley dug it up in the Royal Cemetery of Ur in the 1920s. The wood had rotted away, so museum workers rebuilt the frame around the ancient pieces.

THE KINNOR

David's instrument, the kinnor, was a lyre, a small frame with strings, played while walking or sitting. Psalm 33:2 and 150:3 name it. The exiles hung theirs on the trees in Babylon, 137:2.

THE BAND IN PSALM 150

The ram's horn shofar, the harp and lyre, the drum or tambourine, strings, the flute, and two kinds of cymbals. Bronze cymbals have been found in digs in Israel.

SEE ALSO

Temple Music in 1 Chronicles, p.689, shows Assyrian lyre players, and The Beni Hasan Tomb Painting in Genesis, p.110, shows a man from Canaan carrying a lyre.

34

PSALM 34 IN 30 SECONDS

David acted crazy to escape a king. Taste and see that Yahweh is good. An A to Z psalm.

TASTE AND SEE THAT YAHWEH IS GOOD // 1 SAMUEL 21:8–15

Of David, when he pretended to be insane before Abimelech, so that the king drove him away.

1 I will bless Yahweh at all times;
His praise will always be on my lips.
2 My soul boasts in Yahweh;
let the oppressed hear and rejoice.
3 Magnify Yahweh with me;
let us exalt His name together.

4 I sought Yahweh, and He answered me;
He delivered me from all my fears.
5 Those who look to Him are radiant with joy;
their faces shall never be ashamed.
6 This poor man called out, and Yahweh heard him;
He saved him from all his troubles.
7 The angel of Yahweh encamps around those who fear Him,
and he delivers them.

8 Taste and see that Yahweh is good;
blessed is the man who takes refuge in Him!
9 Fear Yahweh, you His saints,
for those who fear Him lack nothing.
10 Young lions go lacking and hungry,

■ **PS 34:1 [TEXT]** ABIMELECH. 1 Samuel 21:10 to 15 names the king of Gath Achish. Many think Abimelech was a royal title for Philistine kings, like Pharaoh in Egypt, Genesis 20:2 and 26:1.

■ **PS 34:7 [MIRACLE]** The angel of Yahweh encamps around those who fear Him
■ **PS 34:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:3 p.2013
■ **PS 34:8 [NOTABLE]** Faith is not only something you think about. Try God for yourself.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

but those who seek Yahweh lack no good thing.
11 Come, children, listen to me;
I will teach you the fear of Yahweh.
12 *Who is the man who delights in life,*
who desires to see good days?
13 *Keep your tongue from evil*
and your lips from deceitful speech.
14 *Turn away from evil and do good;*
seek peace and pursue it.
15 *The eyes of Yahweh are on the righteous,*
and His ears are inclined to their cry.
16 *But the face of Yahweh is against those who do evil,*
to wipe out all memory of them from the earth.
17 The righteous cry out, and Yahweh hears;
He delivers them from all their troubles.
18 Yahweh is near to the brokenhearted;
He saves the contrite in spirit.
19 Many are the afflictions of the righteous,
but Yahweh delivers him from them all.
20 *He protects all his bones;*
not one of them will be broken.
21 Evil will slay the wicked,
and the haters of the righteous will be condemned.
22 Yahweh redeems His servants,
and none who take refuge in Him will be condemned.

35

PSALM 35 IN 30 SECONDS
Fight for me, God. People I prayed for are now paying me back with evil.

CONTEND WITH MY OPPONENTS, O YAHWEH
Of David.

1 Contend with my opponents, O Yahweh;
fight against those who fight against me.
2 Take up Your shield and buckler;
arise and come to my aid.
3 Draw the spear and javelin against my pursuers;
say to my soul: "I am your salvation."
4 May those who seek my life
be disgraced and put to shame;
may those who plan to harm me
be driven back and confounded.
5 May they be like chaff in the wind,
as the angel of Yahweh drives them away.
6 May their path be dark and slick,
as the angel of Yahweh pursues.
7 For without cause they laid their net for me;
without reason they dug a pit for my soul.
8 May ruin befall them by surprise;
may the net they hid ensnare them;
may they fall into the hazard they created.
9 Then my soul will rejoice in Yahweh
and exult in His salvation.
10 All my bones will exclaim,
"Who is like You, O Yahweh,
who delivers the afflicted from the aggressor,
the poor and needy from the robber?"
11 Hostile witnesses come forward;
they make charges I know nothing about.
12 They repay me evil for good,
to the bereavement of my soul.
13 Yet when they were ill,
I put on sackcloth;
I humbled myself with fasting,
but my prayers returned unanswered.
14 I paced about
as for my friend or brother;
I was bowed down with grief,
like one mourning for his mother.
15 But when I stumbled, they assembled in glee;
they gathered together against me.
Assailants I did not know
slandered me without ceasing.
16 Like godless jesters at a feast,

- **PS 34:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 3:10-12 p.2016
- **PS 34:18 [HEART]** The Lord is near the brokenhearted.
- **PS 34:20 [PROPHECY]** Not a bone of His body would be broken → JN 19:31-36 p.1732
- **PS 34:20 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 19:36 p.1733
- **PS 34:20 [NOTE]** NOT ONE BROKEN. John saw this when the soldiers did not break Jesus' legs, John 19:36.
- **PS 35:3 [NOTE]** STAYS BLACK. David asks God to say this to him, but it is David's prayer, not words God is quoted as saying.
- **PS 35:11 [PROPHECY]** False witnesses rose up against Him → MT 26:59 p.1596

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

they gnashed their teeth at me.
17 How long, O Lord, will You look on?
Rescue my soul from their ravages,
my precious life from these lions.
18 Then I will give You thanks in the great assembly;
I will praise You among many people.
19 *Let not my enemies gloat over me without cause,*
nor those who hate me without reason wink in malice.
20 For they do not speak peace,
but they devise deceitful schemes
against those who live quietly in the land.
21 They gape at me and say,
"Aha, aha! Our eyes have seen!"
22 O Yahweh, You have seen it; be not silent.
O Lord, be not far from me.
23 Awake and rise to my defense,
to my cause, my God and my Lord!
24 Vindicate me by Your righteousness, O Yahweh my God,
and do not let them gloat over me.
25 Let them not say in their hearts,
"Aha, just what we wanted!"
Let them not say,
"We have swallowed him up!"
26 May those who gloat in my distress
be ashamed and confounded;
may those who exalt themselves over me
be clothed in shame and reproach.
27 May those who favor my vindication
shout for joy and gladness;
may they always say, "Exalted be Yahweh
who delights in His servant's well-being."
28 Then my tongue will proclaim Your righteousness
and Your praises all day long.

36

PSALM 36 IN 30 SECONDS

Sin whispers to the wicked. God's love reaches to the skies. In Your light we see light.

THE TRANSGRESSION OF THE WICKED

For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David, the servant of Yahweh.

1 *An oracle is in my heart*
regarding the transgression of the wicked man:
There is no fear of God
before his eyes.
2 For his eyes are too full of conceit
to detect or hate his own sin.
3 The words of his mouth are wicked and deceitful;
he has ceased to be wise and well-doing.
4 Even on his bed he plots wickedness;
he sets himself on a path that is not good;
he fails to reject evil.
5 Your loving devotion, O Yahweh, reaches to the heavens,
Your faithfulness to the clouds.
6 Your righteousness is like the highest mountains;
Your judgments are like the deepest sea.
O Yahweh, You preserve man and beast.
7 How precious is Your loving devotion, O God,
that the children of men take refuge in the shadow of Your wings!
8 They feast on the abundance of Your house,
and You give them drink from Your river of delights.
9 For with You is the fountain of life;
in Your light we see light.
10 Extend Your loving devotion to those who know You,
and Your righteousness to the upright in heart.
11 Let not the foot of the proud come against me,
nor the hand of the wicked drive me away.
12 There the evildoers lie fallen,
thrown down and unable to rise.

PS 35:19 [PROPHECY] He was hated without a cause → JN 15:25 p.1726
PS 35:19 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → JN 15:25 p.1726

PS 36:1 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:18 p.1803

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

37

PSALM 37 IN 30 SECONDS
Do not fret about evil people. Delight in Yahweh, wait for Him, and the meek will inherit the earth.

DELIGHT YOURSELF IN YAHWEH // 1 KINGS 2:1–9

Of David.

1 Do not fret over those who do evil;
do not envy those who do wrong.
2 For they wither quickly like grass
and wilt like tender plants.

3 Trust in Yahweh and do good;
dwell in the land and cultivate faithfulness.
4 Delight yourself in Yahweh,
and He will give you the desires of your heart.

5 Commit your way to Yahweh;
trust in Him, and He will do it.
6 He will bring forth your righteousness like the dawn,
your justice like the noonday sun.

7 Be still before Yahweh
and wait patiently for Him;
do not fret when men prosper in their ways,
when they carry out wicked schemes.

8 Refrain from anger and abandon wrath;
do not fret—it can only bring harm.
9 For the evildoers will be cut off,
but those who hope in Yahweh will inherit the land.

10 Yet a little while, and the wicked will be no more;
though you look for them, they will not be found.
11 But the meek will inherit the land
and delight in abundant prosperity.

12 The wicked scheme against the righteous
and gnash their teeth at them,
13 but the Lord laughs,
seeing that their day is coming.

14 The wicked have drawn the sword
and bent the bow
to bring down the poor and needy,
to slay those whose ways are upright.
15 But their swords will pierce their own hearts,
and their bows will be broken.

16 Better is the little of the righteous
than the abundance of many who are wicked.
17 For the arms of the wicked will be broken,
but Yahweh upholds the righteous.

18 Yahweh knows the days of the blameless,
and their inheritance will last forever.
19 In the time of evil they will not be ashamed,
and in the days of famine they will be satisfied.

20 But the wicked and enemies of Yahweh will perish like the glory of the fields.
They will vanish;
like smoke they will fade away.

21 The wicked borrow and do not repay,
but the righteous are gracious and giving.
22 Surely those He blesses will inherit the land,
but the cursed will be destroyed.

23 The steps of a man are ordered by Yahweh
who takes delight in his journey.
24 Though he falls, he will not be overwhelmed,
for Yahweh is holding his hand.

25 I once was young and now am old,
yet never have I seen the righteous abandoned
or their children begging for bread.
26 They are ever generous and quick to lend,
and their children are a blessing.

27 Turn away from evil and do good,
so that you will abide forever.
28 For Yahweh loves justice
and will not forsake His saints.
They are preserved forever,

PS 37:4 [HEART] Delight in the Lord and He will give you the desires of your heart.
PS 37:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → MT 5:5 p.1556
PS 37:11 [NOTE] THE MEEK. Jesus said, Blessed are the meek, for they will inherit the earth, Matthew 5:5.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

but the offspring of the wicked will be cut off.
29 The righteous will inherit the land
and dwell in it forever.

30 The mouth of the righteous man utters wisdom,
and his tongue speaks justice.
31 The law of his God is in his heart;
his steps do not falter.

32 Though the wicked lie in wait for the righteous,
and seek to slay them,
33 Yahweh will not leave them in their power
or let them be condemned under judgment.

34 Wait for Yahweh and keep His way,
and He will raise you up to inherit the land.
When the wicked are cut off,
you will see it.

35 I have seen a wicked, ruthless man
flourishing like a well-rooted native tree,
36 yet he passed away and was no more;
though I searched, he could not be found.

37 Consider the blameless and observe the upright,
for posterity awaits the man of peace.
38 But the transgressors will all be destroyed;
the future of the wicked will be cut off.

39 The salvation of the righteous is from Yahweh;
He is their stronghold in time of trouble.
40 Yahweh helps and delivers them;
He rescues and saves them from the wicked,
because they take refuge in Him.

38

PSALM 38 IN 30 SECONDS

David is sick because of his sin, and his friends keep their distance. Hurry and help me, Lord.

DO NOT REBUKE ME IN YOUR ANGER // PSALM 6:1–10

A Psalm of David, for remembrance.

1 O Yahweh, do not rebuke me in Your anger
or discipline me in Your wrath.
2 For Your arrows have pierced me deeply,
and Your hand has pressed down on me.

3 There is no soundness in my body
because of Your anger;
there is no rest in my bones
because of my sin.
4 For my iniquities have overwhelmed me;
they are a burden too heavy to bear.
5 My wounds are foul and festering
because of my sinful folly.
6 I am bent and brought low;
all day long I go about mourning.
7 For my loins are full of burning pain,
and no soundness remains in my body.
8 I am numb and badly crushed;
I groan in anguish of heart.

9 O Lord, my every desire is before You;
my groaning is not hidden from You.
10 My heart pounds, my strength fails,
and even the light of my eyes has faded.
11 My beloved and friends shun my disease,
and my kinsmen stand at a distance.
12 Those who seek my life lay snares;
those who wish me harm speak destruction,
plotting deceit all day long.

13 But like a deaf man, I do not hear;
and like a mute man, I do not open my mouth.
14 I am like a man who cannot hear,
whose mouth offers no reply.
15 I wait for You, O Yahweh;
You will answer, O Lord my God.
16 For I said, "Let them not gloat over me—
those who taunt me when my foot slips."

17 For I am ready to fall,
and my pain is ever with me.
18 Yes, I confess my iniquity;
I am troubled by my sin.
19 Many are my enemies without cause,

PS 38:11 [PROPHECY] His friends stood at a distance during His suffering → LK 23:49 · MEDIUM p.1690
PS 38:12 [PROPHECY] He remained silent before His accusers → MT 27:12-14 p.1597

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and many hate me without reason.
20 Those who repay my good with evil
attack me for pursuing the good.

21 Do not forsake me, O Yahweh;
be not far from me, O my God.
22 Come quickly to help me,
O Lord my Savior.

39

PSALM 39 IN 30 SECONDS
Life is short, a breath. David tries to keep quiet, but it bursts out of him.

I WILL WATCH MY WAYS
For the choirmaster. For Jeduthun. A Psalm of David.

1 I said, "I will watch my ways
so that I will not sin with my tongue;
I will guard my mouth with a muzzle
as long as the wicked are present."
2 I was speechless and still;
I remained silent, even from speaking good,
and my sorrow was stirred.
3 My heart grew hot within me;
as I mused, the fire burned.

Then I spoke with my tongue:

4 "Show me, O Yahweh, my end
and the measure of my days.
Let me know how fleeting my life is.
5 You, indeed, have made my days as short as the width of a hand,
and my lifetime as nothing before You.
Truly each man at his best
exists as but a breath.

Selah

6 Surely every man goes about like a phantom;
surely he bustles in vain;
he heaps up riches
not knowing who will haul them away.

7 And now, O Lord, for what do I wait?
My hope is in You.
8 Deliver me from all my transgressions;
do not make me the reproach of fools.
9 I have become mute;
I do not open my mouth
because of what You have done.
10 Remove Your scourge from me;
I am perishing by the force of Your hand.
11 You discipline and correct a man for his iniquity,
consuming like a moth what he holds dear;
surely each man is but a vapor.

Selah

12 Hear my prayer, O Yahweh,
and give ear to my cry for help;
do not be deaf to my weeping.
For I am a foreigner dwelling with You,
a stranger like all my fathers.
13 Turn Your gaze away from me,
that I may again be cheered
before I depart and am no more."

40

PSALM 40 IN 30 SECONDS
I waited for Yahweh. He pulled me out of the mud and put a new song in my mouth.

I WAITED PATIENTLY FOR YAHWEH // PSALM 70:1–5; HEBREWS 10:1–18
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 I waited patiently for Yahweh;
He inclined to me and heard my cry.
2 He lifted me up from the pit of despair,
out of the miry clay;
He set my feet upon a rock,
and made my footsteps firm.
3 He put a new song in my mouth,
a hymn of praise to our God.
Many will see and fear
and put their trust in Yahweh.

4 Blessed is the man
who has made Yahweh his trust,
who has not turned to the proud,
nor to those who lapse into falsehood.
5 Many, O Yahweh my God,
are the wonders You have done,
and the plans You have for us—
none can compare to You—
if I proclaim and declare them,
they are more than I can count.

6 *Sacrifice and offering You did not desire,*
but my ears You have opened.
Burnt offerings and sin offerings

PS 39:5 [NOTE] THE WIDTH OF A HAND. In Hebrew it is a picture word for something only a few inches long. Life is short.

MESSIANIC PROPECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

You did not require.
7 *Then I said, "Here I am, I have come—*
it is written about me in the scroll:
8 *I delight to do Your will, O my God;*
Your law is within my heart."

9 I proclaim righteousness in the great assembly;
behold, I do not seal my lips,
as You, O Yahweh, do know.
10 I have not covered up Your righteousness in my heart;
I have declared Your faithfulness and salvation;
I have not concealed Your loving devotion and faithfulness
from the great assembly.
11 O Yahweh, do not withhold Your mercy from me;
Your loving devotion and faithfulness will always guard me.
12 For evils without number surround me;
my sins have overtaken me, so that I cannot see.
They are more than the hairs of my head,
and my heart has failed within me.
13 Be pleased, O Yahweh, to deliver me;
hurry, O Yahweh, to help me.

14 May those who seek my life
be ashamed and confounded;
may those who wish me harm
be repelled and humiliated.
15 May those who say to me, "Aha, aha!"
be appalled at their own shame.
16 May all who seek You
rejoice and be glad in You;
may those who love Your salvation
always say, "Yahweh be magnified!"

17 But I am poor and needy;
may the Lord think of me.
You are my helper and deliverer;
O my God, do not delay.

- **PS 40:6 [PROPHECY]** His delight was to do the Father's will → JN 4:34; HEB 10:5-10; MK 14:36 p.1704
- **PS 40:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 10:5-7 p.1990
- **PS 40:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 10:8-9 p.1991
- **PS 40:6 [MESSIAH SPEAKING]** Red letters here mean the Messiah is speaking. Hebrews 10:5 to 7 says that when Christ came into the world, He said these words. Many Jewish readers hear David speaking about himself.
- **PS 40:6 [TEXT]** A BODY. The Hebrew says my ears You have opened, or dug. The Greek Old Testament says a body You prepared for me, and Hebrews 10:5 quotes the Greek.
- **PS 40:9 [PROPHECY]** He would preach righteousness publicly in Israel → MT 4:17 · MEDIUM p.1555

41

PSALM 41 IN 30 SECONDS
Blessed is the one who cares for the poor. Even my close friend turned on me. Book One ends: Amen and Amen.

VICTORY OVER BETRAYAL // JOHN 13:18–30
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 Blessed is the one who cares for the poor;
Yahweh will deliver him in the day of trouble.
2 Yahweh will protect and preserve him;
He will bless him in the land
and refuse to give him over
to the will of his foes.
3 Yahweh will sustain him on his bed of illness
and restore him from his bed of sickness.

4 I said, "O Yahweh, be gracious to me;
heal me, for I have sinned against You."
5 My enemies say with malice:
"When will he die and be forgotten?"
6 My visitor speaks falsehood;
he gathers slander in his heart;
he goes out and spreads it abroad.
7 All who hate me whisper against me;
they imagine the worst for me:
8 "A vile disease has been poured into him;
he will never get up from where he lies!"
9 *Even my close friend whom I trusted,*
the one who shared my bread,
has lifted up his heel against me.

10 But You, O Yahweh, be gracious to me and raise me up,
that I may repay them.
11 By this I know that You delight in me,
for my enemy does not triumph over me.
12 In my integrity You uphold me
and set me in Your presence forever.

- **PS 41:9 [PROPHECY]** Betrayed by a close friend who shared His table → JN 13:18; MK 14:43-45 p.1723
- **PS 41:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 13:18 p.1723
- **PS 41:9 [NOTE]** MY CLOSE FRIEND. Jesus quoted this about Judas, John 13:18. He left out the words whom I trusted.

13 Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel,
from everlasting to everlasting.

Amen and Amen.

BOOK II PSALMS 42 TO 72

42

PSALM 42 IN 30 SECONDS
As a deer thirsts for water, my soul thirsts for God. Why so downcast, my soul? Hope in God.

AS THE DEER PANTS FOR THE WATER

For the choirmaster. A Maskil of the sons of Korah.

1 As the deer pants for streams of water,
so my soul longs after You, O God.
2 My soul thirsts for God, the living God.
When shall I come and appear in God's presence?
3 My tears have been my food
both day and night,
while men ask me all day long,
"Where is your God?"
4 These things come to mind as I pour out my soul:
how I walked with the multitude,
leading the festive procession to the house of God
with shouts of joy and praise.

5 Why are you downcast, O my soul?
Why the unease within me?
Put your hope in God, for I will yet praise Him
for the salvation of His presence.

6 O my God, my soul despairs within me.
Therefore I remember You
from the land of Jordan and the peaks of Hermon—
even from Mount Mizar.
7 Deep calls to deep
in the roar of Your waterfalls;
all Your breakers and waves
have rolled over me.

8 Yahweh decrees His loving devotion by day,
and at night His song is with me
as a prayer to the God of my life.

9 I say to God my Rock,
"Why have You forgotten me?
Why must I walk in sorrow
because of the enemy's oppression?"
10 Like the crushing of my bones,
my enemies taunt me,
while they say to me all day long,
"Where is your God?"

11 Why are you downcast, O my soul?
Why the unease within me?
Put your hope in God, for I will yet praise Him,
my Savior and my God.

43

PSALM 43 IN 30 SECONDS
Part two of the same song. Send Your light and truth to lead me home.

SEND OUT YOUR LIGHT

1 Vindicate me, O God, and plead my case
against an ungodly nation;
deliver me from deceitful and unjust men.
2 For You are the God of my refuge.
Why have You rejected me?
Why must I walk in sorrow
because of the enemy's oppression?

3 Send out Your light and Your truth;
let them lead me.
Let them bring me to Your holy mountain
and to the place where You dwell.
4 Then I will go to the altar of God,
to God, my greatest joy.
I will praise You with the harp,
O God, my God.

5 Why are you downcast, O my soul?
Why the unease within me?
Put your hope in God, for I will yet praise Him,
my Savior and my God.

- **PS 41:13 [NOTE]** AMEN AND AMEN. Each of the five books of Psalms ends with a blessing like this: 41:13, 72:19, 89:52, 106:48, and all of Psalm 150.
- **PS 42:1 [NOTE]** THE SONS OF KORAH. Korah rebelled against Moses and the earth swallowed him, but his sons did not die, Numbers 16:32 and 26:11. Their family became temple singers. Eleven psalms carry their name.
- **PS 42:1 [NOTE]** ONE SONG. Psalms 42 and 43 share the same chorus, Why are you downcast, O my soul? Many think they were one psalm.
- **PS 42:7 [NOTE]** DEEP CALLS TO DEEP. The psalmist was near the Jordan and Mount Hermon, 42:6, where waterfalls roar.

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

44

PSALM 44 IN 30 SECONDS
We heard what God did for our fathers. So why are we losing? Wake up, Lord!

REDEEM US, O GOD // ROMANS 8:35–39
For the choirmaster. A Maskil of the sons of Korah.

1 We have heard with our ears, O God;
our fathers have told us
the work You did in their days,
in the days of old.
2 With Your hand You drove out the nations
and planted our fathers there;
You crushed the peoples
and cast them out.
3 For it was not by their sword that they took the land;
their arm did not bring them victory.
It was by Your right hand,
Your arm, and the light of Your face,
because You favored them.

4 You are my King, O God,
who ordains victories for Jacob.
5 Through You we repel our foes;
through Your name we trample our enemies.
6 For I do not trust in my bow,
nor does my sword save me.
7 For You save us from our enemies;
You put those who hate us to shame.
8 In God we have boasted all day long,
and Your name we will praise forever.
Selah

9 But You have rejected and humbled us;
You no longer go forth with our armies.
10 You have made us retreat from the foe,
and those who hate us have plundered us.
11 You have given us up as sheep to be devoured;
You have scattered us among the nations.
12 You sell Your people for nothing;
no profit do You gain from their sale.

13 You have made us a reproach to our neighbors,
a mockery and derision to those around us.
14 You have made us a byword among the nations,
a laughingstock among the peoples.
15 All day long my disgrace is before me,
and shame has covered my face,
16 at the voice of the scorner and reviler,
because of the enemy, bent on revenge.

17 All this has come upon us,
though we have not forgotten You
or betrayed Your covenant.
18 Our hearts have not turned back;
our steps have not strayed from Your path.
19 But You have crushed us in the lair of jackals;
You have covered us with deepest darkness.

20 If we had forgotten the name of our God
or spread out our hands to a foreign god,
21 would not God have discovered,
since He knows the secrets of the heart?
22 *Yet for Your sake we face death all day long;*
we are considered as sheep to be slaughtered.

23 Wake up, O Lord! Why are You sleeping?
Arise! Do not reject us forever.
24 Why do You hide Your face
and forget our affliction and oppression?
25 For our soul has sunk to the dust;
our bodies cling to the earth.
26 Rise up; be our help!
Redeem us on account of Your loving devotion.

45

PSALM 45 IN 30 SECONDS
A royal wedding song. Your throne, O God, lasts forever. Hebrews applies it to Jesus.

- **PS 44:20 [DEMONIC]** God would know if we spread our hands to a foreign god
- **PS 44:21 [HEART]** God knows the secrets of the heart. Nothing is hidden from Him.
- **PS 44:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 8:36 p.1808
- **PS 44:22 [NOTE]** SHEEP TO BE SLAUGHTERED. Paul quotes this in Romans 8:36, right before nothing can separate us from the love of God.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · END TIMES PROPHECIES · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE

MY HEART IS STIRRED BY A NOBLE THEME // 1 KINGS 3:1–15; 2 CHRONICLES 1:1–13; PSALM 72:1–20

For the choirmaster. To the tune of "The Lilies." A Maskil of the sons of Korah. A love song.

1 My heart is stirred by a noble theme
as I recite my verses to the king;
my tongue is the pen of a skillful writer.
2 You are the most handsome of men;
grace has anointed your lips;
therefore God has blessed you forever.
3 Strap your sword at your side, O mighty warrior;
appear in your majesty and splendor.
4 In your splendor ride forth in victory
on behalf of truth and humility and justice;
may your right hand show your awesome deeds.
5 Your arrows pierce the hearts of the king's foes;
the nations fall beneath your feet.

6 *Your throne, O God, endures forever and ever,*
and justice is the scepter of Your kingdom.
7 *You have loved righteousness*
and hated wickedness;
therefore God, your God, has anointed you
above your companions with the oil of joy.

8 All your garments are fragrant
with myrrh and aloes and cassia;
from palaces of ivory the harps make you glad.
9 The daughters of kings are among your honored women;
the queen stands at your right hand,
adorned with the gold of Ophir.

10 Listen, O daughter! Consider and incline your ear:
Forget your people and your father's house,
11 and the king will desire your beauty;
bow to him, for he is your lord.
12 The Daughter of Tyre will come with a gift;
men of wealth will seek your favor.

13 All glorious is the princess in her chamber;
her gown is embroidered with gold.
14 In colorful garments she is led to the king;
her virgin companions are brought before you.
15 They are led in with joy and gladness;
they enter the palace of the king.

16 Your sons will succeed your fathers;
you will make them princes throughout the land.
17 I will commemorate your name through all generations;
therefore the nations will praise you forever and ever.

- **PS 45:2 [PROPHECY]** Words of grace would flow from His lips → JN 1:17; LK 4:22 · MEDIUM p.1698
- **PS 45:6 [PROPHECY]** He would bear the divine title → HEB 1:8 p.1978
- **PS 45:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:8-9 p.1978
- **PS 45:6 [NOTE]** YOUR THRONE LASTS FOREVER. The king is called God. Hebrews 1:8 says the Father says this to the Son.
- **PS 45:7 [PROPHECY]** Anointed with the Holy Spirit beyond measure → MT 3:16; HEB 1:9 p.1554
- **PS 45:7 [PROPHECY]** Called the Christ (the Anointed One) → LK 2:11 p.1648

46

PSALM 46 IN 30 SECONDS
God is our refuge. Even if the mountains fall into the sea, be still and know that I am God.

GOD IS OUR REFUGE AND STRENGTH // 2 KINGS 18:13–16; 2 CHRONICLES 32:1–8

For the choirmaster. Of the sons of Korah. According to Alamoth. A song.

1 God is our refuge and strength,
an ever-present help in times of trouble.
2 Therefore we will not fear,
though the earth is transformed
and the mountains are toppled
into the depths of the seas,
3 though their waters roar and foam
and the mountains quake in the surge.
Selah
4 There is a river whose streams delight the city of God,
the holy place where the Most High dwells.
5 God is within her; she will not be moved.

- **PS 45:17 [PROPHECY]** His name remembered forever → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **PS 46:1 [NOTABLE]** When everything shakes, God is the safe place to run.
- **PS 46:1 [NOTE]** A MIGHTY FORTRESS. Martin Luther wrote his most famous hymn, A Mighty Fortress Is Our God, from this psalm, about 1529.
- **PS 46:1 [NOTE]** ALAMOTH may mean young women, maybe for high voices like a soprano part.

GOD SPEAKING

God will help her when morning dawns.
6 Nations rage, kingdoms crumble;
the earth melts when He lifts His voice.
7 Yahweh of Hosts is with us;
the God of Jacob is our fortress.
Selah

8 Come, see the works of Yahweh,
who brings devastation upon the earth.
9 He makes wars to cease throughout the earth;
He breaks the bow and shatters the spear;
He burns the shields in the fire.

10 "Be still and know that I am God;
I will be exalted among the nations,
I will be exalted over the earth."

11 Yahweh of Hosts is with us;
the God of Jacob is our fortress.
Selah

THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT DOES SELAH MEAN?

71 Times and Still a Mystery

PSALM 3:2 · 46:3 · 46:7 · 46:11 · HABAKKUK 3:3

WHERE IT IS
Selah shows up 71 times in 39 psalms, and 3 more times in the prayer of Habakkuk 3. Psalm 46 has it three times.

STILL SAID TODAY
Jewish worshipers still say it out loud when these psalms are prayed, like in the daily prayer called Ashrei, but no one knows what it means. Many think it began as a note for the singers or players.

NOT PART OF THE SENTENCE
It usually comes at the end of a thought, sometimes in the middle of a psalm, sometimes at the end.

IN THIS BIBLE
Selah is printed in small italics at the right, so you can see it without tripping over it.

■ **PS 46:10 [NOTE]** BE STILL. The Hebrew means let go, stop fighting. God says it to the warring nations, and to us.

The Best Guesses

PSALM 9:16 · 1 CHRONICLES 16:4 TO 6

GUESS 1: PAUSE
Many say it means stop and think about what you just heard, like a rest in music. This is the most popular guess today.

GUESS 2: LIFT UP
The Hebrew root salal means to lift up. Maybe the singers raised their voices, or the instruments played louder.

GUESS 3: AN INTERLUDE
The Greek Old Testament translates it diapsalma, which many think means an instrumental break between parts of the song.

GUESS 4: FOREVER
Old Jewish translations, like the Aramaic and Aquila's Greek, took it to mean always or forever.

HIGGAION
In 9:16 it is paired with Higgaion, maybe a soft musical sound or a time to think.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
It is a music or worship note, not a word of the prayer itself. Pausing to think about God is never a bad idea.

47

PSALM 47 IN 30 SECONDS
Clap your hands, all you peoples! God is King over all the earth.

CLAP YOUR HANDS, ALL YOU PEOPLES
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of the sons of Korah.

1 Clap your hands, all you peoples;
shout unto God with a voice of triumph.
2 How awesome is Yahweh Most High,
the great King over all the earth!
3 He subdues nations beneath us,
and peoples under our feet.
4 He chooses our inheritance for us,
the pride of Jacob, whom He loves.
Selah

5 God has ascended amid shouts of joy,
Yahweh with the sound of the horn.
6 Sing praises to God, sing praises;
sing praises to our King, sing praises!
7 For God is King of all the earth;
sing to Him a psalm of praise.

8 God reigns over the nations;

God is seated on His holy throne.
9 The nobles of the nations have assembled
as the people of the God of Abraham;
for the shields of the earth belong to God;
He is highly exalted.

48

PSALM 48 IN 30 SECONDS
A tour of Jerusalem. Count her towers. This God is our God forever.

BROKEN BONDAGE
A song. A Psalm of the sons of Korah.

1 Great is Yahweh,
and greatly to be praised
in the city of our God,
His holy mountain.
2 Beautiful in loftiness,
the joy of all the earth,
like the peaks of Zaphon is Mount Zion,
the city of the great King.
3 God is in her citadels;
He has shown Himself to be a fortress.

4 For behold, the kings assembled;
they all advanced together.
5 They saw and were astounded;
they fled in terror.
6 Trembling seized them there,
anguish like a woman in labor.
7 With a wind from the east
You wrecked the ships of Tarshish.

8 As we have heard, so we have seen
in the city of Yahweh of Hosts,
in the city of our God:
God will establish her forever.
Selah

9 Within Your temple, O God,
we contemplate Your loving devotion.
10 Your name, O God, like Your praise,
reaches to the ends of the earth;
Your right hand is full of righteousness.
11 Mount Zion is glad,
the daughters of Judah rejoice,
on account of Your judgments.

12 March around Zion, encircle her,
count her towers,
13 consider her ramparts, tour her citadels,
that you may tell the next generation.
14 For this God is our God forever and ever;
He will be our guide even till death.

PS 48:2 [NOTE] THE NORTH. Zaphon was the mountain of the gods in Canaanite stories. The psalm says Zion is the real mountain of the great King.

49

PSALM 49 IN 30 SECONDS
You cannot take money with you. Rich or poor, everyone dies. Only God can buy a soul back.

THE EVANESCENCE OF WEALTH // ECCLESIASTES 5:8–20
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of the sons of Korah.

1 Hear this, all you peoples;
listen, all inhabitants of the world,
2 both low and high,
rich and poor alike.
3 My mouth will impart wisdom,
and the meditation of my heart will bring understanding.
4 I will incline my ear to a proverb;
I will express my riddle with the harp:

5 Why should I fear in times of trouble,
when wicked usurpers surround me?
6 They trust in their wealth
and boast in their great riches.
7 No man can possibly redeem his brother
or pay his ransom to God.
8 For the redemption of his soul is costly,
and never can payment suffice,
9 that he should live on forever
and not see decay.

10 For it is clear that wise men die,
and the foolish and the senseless both perish
and leave their wealth to others.
11 Their graves are their eternal homes—
their dwellings for endless generations—
even though their lands were their namesakes.
12 But a man, despite his wealth, cannot endure;
he is like the beasts that perish.

13 This is the fate of the foolish
and their followers who endorse their sayings.
Selah
14 Like sheep they are destined for Sheol.

GOD SPEAKING

Death will be their shepherd.
The upright will rule them in the morning,
and their form will decay in Sheol,
far from their lofty abode.
15 But God will redeem my life from Sheol,
for He will surely take me to Himself.
Selah
16 Do not be afraid when a man grows rich,
when the splendor of his house increases.
17 For when he dies, he will carry nothing away;
his abundance will not follow him down.
18 Though in his lifetime he blesses his soul—
and men praise you when you prosper—
19 he will join the generation of his fathers,
who will never see the light of day.
20 A man who has riches without understanding
is like the beasts that perish.

50

PSALM 50 IN 30 SECONDS

God takes the stand as Judge. I own the cattle on a thousand hills. I want thanks, not just bulls.

THE MIGHTY ONE CALLS

A Psalm of Asaph.

1 The Mighty One, God Yahweh,
speaks and summons the earth
from where the sun rises to where it sets.
2 From Zion, perfect in beauty,
God shines forth.
3 Our God approaches and will not be silent!
Consuming fire precedes Him,
and a tempest rages around Him.
4 He summons the heavens above,
and the earth, that He may judge His people:
5 "Gather to Me My saints,
who made a covenant with Me by sacrifice."
6 And the heavens proclaim His righteousness,
for God Himself is Judge.
Selah
7 "Hear, O My people, and I will speak,
O Israel, and I testify against you:
I am God, your God.
8 I do not rebuke you for your sacrifices,
and your burnt offerings are ever before Me.
9 I have no need for a bull from your stall
or goats from your pens,
10 for every beast of the forest is Mine—
the cattle on a thousand hills.
11 I know every bird in the mountains,
and the creatures of the field are Mine.
12 If I were hungry, I would not tell you,
for the world is Mine, and the fullness thereof.
13 Do I eat the flesh of bulls,
or drink the blood of goats?
14 Sacrifice a thank offering to God,
and fulfill your vows to the Most High.
15 Call upon Me in the day of trouble;
I will deliver you, and you will honor Me."
16 To the wicked, however, God says,
"What right have you to recite My statutes
and to bear My covenant on your lips?
17 For you hate My instruction
and cast My words behind you.
18 When you see a thief, you befriend him,
and throw in your lot with adulterers.
19 You unleash your mouth for evil
and harness your tongue to deceit.
20 You sit and malign your brother;
you slander your own mother's son.
21 You have done these things, and I kept silent;
you thought I was just like you.
But now I rebuke you
and accuse you to your face.
22 Now consider this, you who forget God,
lest I tear you to pieces,
with no one to rescue you:
23 He who sacrifices a thank offering honors Me,
and to him who rightly orders his way,
I will show the salvation of God."

PS 50:1 [NOTE] ASAPH. David's music leader, 1 Chronicles 16:5. Twelve psalms carry his name: 50 and 73 to 83.

PS 50:10 [NOTE] THE CATTLE ON A THOUSAND HILLS. God does not need our sacrifices. He wants thanks and a changed life, 50:14 and 50:23.

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

51

PSALM 51 IN 30 SECONDS
David's prayer after Bathsheba. Have mercy on me. Create in me a clean heart, O God.

CREATE IN ME A CLEAN HEART, O GOD // 2 SAMUEL 12:1–12

For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David. When Nathan the prophet came to him after his adultery with Bathsheba.

1 Have mercy on me, O God,
according to Your loving devotion;
according to Your great compassion,
blot out my transgressions.
2 Wash me clean of my iniquity
and cleanse me from my sin.
3 For I know my transgressions,
and my sin is always before me.
4 *Against You, You only, have I sinned*
and done what is evil in Your sight,
so that You may be proved right when You speak
and blameless when You judge.
5 Surely I was brought forth in iniquity;
I was sinful when my mother conceived me.
6 Surely You desire truth in the inmost being;
You teach me wisdom in the inmost place.
7 Purify me with hyssop, and I will be clean;
wash me, and I will be whiter than snow.
8 Let me hear joy and gladness;
let the bones You have crushed rejoice.
9 Hide Your face from my sins
and blot out all my iniquities.
10 Create in me a clean heart, O God,
and renew a right spirit within me.
11 Cast me not away from Your presence;
take not Your Holy Spirit from me.
12 Restore to me the joy of Your salvation,
and sustain me with a willing spirit.
13 Then I will teach transgressors Your ways,
and sinners will return to You.
14 Deliver me from bloodguilt, O God,
the God of my salvation,
and my tongue will sing of Your righteousness.
15 O Lord, open my lips,
and my mouth will declare Your praise.
16 For You do not delight in sacrifice, or I would bring it;
You take no pleasure in burnt offerings.
17 The sacrifices of God are a broken spirit;
a broken and a contrite heart,
O God, You will not despise.
18 In Your good pleasure, cause Zion to prosper;
build up the walls of Jerusalem.
19 Then You will delight in righteous sacrifices,
in whole burnt offerings;
then bulls will be offered on Your altar.

52

PSALM 52 IN 30 SECONDS
Doeg the snitch is like a tree pulled up by the roots. David is like an olive tree in God's house.

WHY DO YOU BOAST OF EVIL? // 1 SAMUEL 22:6–23

For the choirmaster. A Maskil of David. After Doeg the Edomite went to Saul and told him, "David has gone to the house of Ahimelech."

1 Why do you boast of evil, O mighty man?
The loving devotion of God endures all day long.
2 Your tongue devises destruction
like a sharpened razor,
O worker of deceit.
3 You love evil more than good,
falsehood more than speaking truth.
Selah
4 You love every word that devours,
O deceitful tongue.
5 Surely God will bring you down to everlasting ruin;

- **PS 51:1 [NOTE]** DAVID AND BATHSHEBA. Read 2 Samuel 11 and 12 first. This is what David prayed after Nathan said, You are the man.
- **PS 51:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:4 p.1802
- **PS 51:5 [NOTE]** SINFUL FROM BIRTH. Many Christians see here the teaching of original sin: we are born with a bent toward sin. Others read it as poetry for how deep David's sin went.
- **PS 51:10 [HEART]** Create in me a clean heart, O God.
- **PS 51:11 [NOTE]** DO NOT TAKE YOUR HOLY SPIRIT. David had seen God's Spirit leave Saul, 1 Samuel 16:14.
- **PS 51:17 [HEART]** God wants a broken and contrite heart more than sacrifices.
- **PS 52:1 [NOTE]** DOEG. He told Saul that the priests helped David, then killed 85 priests, 1 Samuel 22:9 to 19.

He will snatch you up and tear you away
from your tent;
He will uproot you from the land of the
living.

Selah

6 The righteous will see and fear;
they will mock the evildoer, saying,
7 "Look at the man
who did not make God his refuge,
but trusted in the abundance of his wealth
and strengthened himself by destruction."

8 But I am like an olive tree
flourishing in the house of God;
I trust in the loving devotion of God
forever and ever.
9 I will praise You forever,
because You have done it.
I will wait on Your name—
for it is good—
in the presence of Your saints.

53

PSALM 53 IN 30 SECONDS
Almost the same as Psalm 14. The fool says there is no God. Psalm 14 says Yahweh; this one says God.

THE FOOL SAYS THERE IS NO GOD // PSALM 14:1–7; ISAIAH 59:1–17; ROMANS 3:9–20
For the choirmaster. According to Mahalath. A Maskil of David.

1 *The fool says in his heart,*
"There is no God."

They are corrupt; their ways are vile.
There is no one who does good.

2 *God looks down from heaven*
upon the sons of men
to see if any understand,
if any seek God.
3 *All have turned away,*
they have together become corrupt;
there is no one who does good,
not even one.

4 Will the workers of iniquity never learn?
They devour my people like bread;
they refuse to call upon God.
5 There they are, overwhelmed with dread,
where there was nothing to fear.
For God has scattered the bones
of those who besieged you.
You put them to shame,
for God has despised them.

6 Oh, that the salvation of Israel would
come from Zion!
When God restores His captive people,
let Jacob rejoice, let Israel be glad!

- **PS 53:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:10-12 p.1802
- **PS 53:1 [NOTE]** PSALM 14 AGAIN. Almost the same words, but Psalm 14 uses Yahweh and this one uses God. In Psalms 42 to 83, God is used far more than Yahweh. Many call this part of the book the Elohim psalms.

54

PSALM 54 IN 30 SECONDS
The Ziphites ratted David out to Saul. God is my helper.

SAVE ME BY YOUR NAME // 1 SAMUEL 23:7–29
For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments. A Maskil of David. When the Ziphites went to Saul and said, "Is David not hiding among us?"

1 Save me, O God, by Your name,
and vindicate me by Your might!
2 Hear my prayer, O God;
listen to the words of my mouth.
3 For strangers rise up against me,
and ruthless men seek my life—
men with no regard for God.

Selah

4 Surely God is my helper;
the Lord is the sustainer of my soul.
5 He will reward my enemies with evil.
In Your faithfulness, destroy them.
6 Freely I will sacrifice to You;
I will praise Your name, O Yahweh, for it
is good.
7 For He has delivered me from every trouble,
and my eyes have looked in triumph on
my foes.

55

PSALM 55 IN 30 SECONDS
My close friend betrayed me. Oh, that I had wings like a dove! Cast your burden on Yahweh.

CAST YOUR BURDEN UPON YAHWEH // 2 SAMUEL 17:15–29
For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments. A Maskil of David.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1 Listen to my prayer, O God,
and do not ignore my plea.
2 Attend to me and answer me.
I am restless in my complaint,
and distraught 3 at the voice of the enemy,
at the pressure of the wicked.
For they bring down disaster upon me
and resent me in their anger.

4 My heart pounds within me,
and the terrors of death assail me.
5 Fear and trembling grip me,
and horror has overwhelmed me.
6 I said, "Oh, that I had wings like a dove!
I would fly away and find rest.
7 How far away I would flee!
In the wilderness I would remain.
Selah
8 I would hurry to my shelter,
far from this raging tempest."

9 O Lord, confuse and confound their speech,
for I see violence and strife in the city.
10 Day and night they encircle the walls,
while malice and trouble lie within.
11 Destruction is within;
oppression and deceit never leave the streets.

12 For it is not an enemy who insults me;
that I could endure.
It is not a foe who rises against me;
from him I could hide.
13 But it is you, a man like myself,
my companion and close friend.
14 We shared sweet fellowship together;
we walked with the crowd into the house of God.

15 Let death seize them by surprise;
let them go down to Sheol alive,
for evil is with them in their homes.
16 But I call to God,
and Yahweh saves me.
17 Morning, noon, and night, I cry out in distress,
and He hears my voice.
18 He redeems my soul in peace
from the battle waged against me,
even though many oppose me.
19 God will hear and humiliate them—
the One enthroned for the ages—
Selah
because they do not change
and they have no fear of God.

20 My companion attacks his friends;
he violates his covenant.
21 His speech is smooth as butter,
but war is in his heart.
His words are softer than oil,
yet they are swords unsheathed.

22 Cast your burden upon Yahweh
and He will sustain you;
He will never let the righteous be shaken.
23 But You, O God, will bring them down
to the Pit of destruction;
men of bloodshed and deceit
will not live out half their days.

But I will trust in You.

56

PSALM 56 IN 30 SECONDS
Caught by the Philistines in Gath. When I am afraid, I trust in You. God keeps my tears in a bottle.

BE MERCIFUL TO ME, O GOD // 1 SAMUEL 21:8–15
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "A Dove on Distant Oaks." A Miktam of David, when the Philistines seized him in Gath.

1 Be merciful to me, O God,
for men are hounding me;
all day they press their attack.
2 My enemies pursue me all day long,
for many proudly assail me.

3 When I am afraid,
I put my trust in You.
4 In God, whose word I praise—
in God I trust.
I will not be afraid.
What can man do to me?

- **PS 55:12 [PROPHECY]** Betrayed by a familiar friend, not an enemy → JN 13:18 p.1723
- **PS 55:15 [PROPHECY]** The unrepentant death of the betrayer → MT 27:3-5; ACTS 1:16-19 · MEDIUM p.1597
- **PS 55:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 5:7 p.2021
- **PS 55:22 [NOTABLE]** You were not made to carry everything alone. Hand it to God.
- **PS 55:22 [NOTE]** CAST YOUR BURDEN. Peter says the same thing, Cast all your anxiety on Him, because He cares for you, 1 Peter 5:7.
- **PS 56:1 [NOTE]** MIKTAM. Six psalms are called a Miktam, 16 and 56 to 60. Some think it means a golden poem, others a poem carved like an inscription. No one is sure.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

5 All day long they twist my words;
all their thoughts are on my demise.
6 They conspire, they lurk,
they watch my steps
while they wait to take my life.
7 In spite of such sin, will they escape?
In Your anger, O God, cast down the nations.

8 You have taken account of my wanderings.
Put my tears in Your bottle—
are they not in Your book?
9 Then my enemies will retreat
on the day I cry for help.
By this I will know that God is on my side.

10 In God, whose word I praise,
in Yahweh, whose word I praise,
11 in God I trust; I will not be afraid.
What can man do to me?

12 Your vows are upon me, O God;
I will render thank offerings to You.
13 For You have delivered my soul from death,
and my feet from stumbling,
that I may walk before God
in the light of life.

57

PSALM 57 IN 30 SECONDS
Hiding from Saul in a cave. My heart is steady. I will wake up the dawn with music.

IN YOU MY SOUL TAKES REFUGE // 1 SAMUEL 22:1–5; PSALM 108:1–13; PSALM 142:1–7
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "Do Not Destroy." A Miktam of David, when he fled from Saul into the cave.

1 Have mercy on me, O God, have mercy,
for in You my soul takes refuge.
In the shadow of Your wings I will take shelter
until the danger has passed.
2 I cry out to God Most High,
to God who fulfills His purpose for me.
3 He reaches down from heaven and saves me;
He rebukes those who trample me.
Selah
God sends forth
His loving devotion and His truth.
4 My soul is among the lions;
I lie down with ravenous beasts—
with men whose teeth are spears and arrows,
whose tongues are sharp swords.

5 Be exalted, O God, above the heavens;
may Your glory cover all the earth.

6 They spread a net for my feet;
my soul was despondent.
They dug a pit before me,
but they themselves have fallen into it!
Selah

7 My heart is steadfast, O God, my heart is steadfast.
I will sing and make music.
8 Awake, my glory!
Awake, O harp and lyre!
I will awaken the dawn.

9 I will praise You, O Lord, among the nations;
I will sing Your praises among the peoples.
10 For Your loving devotion reaches to the heavens,
and Your faithfulness to the clouds.
11 Be exalted, O God, above the heavens;
may Your glory cover all the earth.

58

PSALM 58 IN 30 SECONDS
Crooked judges get a scorching review. God will judge the judges.

GOD JUDGES THE EARTH
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "Do Not Destroy." A Miktam of David.

1 Do you indeed speak justly, O rulers?
Do you judge uprightly, O sons of men?
2 No, in your hearts you devise injustice;
with your hands you mete out violence on the earth.

3 The wicked are estranged from the womb;
the liars go astray from birth.
4 Their venom is like the venom of a snake,

PS 57:1 [NOTE] THE CAVE. David hid from Saul in caves at Adullam and En Gedi, 1 Samuel 22:1 and 24:3.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

like a cobra that shuts its ears,
5 refusing to hear the tune of the charmer
who skillfully weaves his spell.

6 O God, shatter their teeth in their mouths;
O Yahweh, tear out the fangs of the lions.
7 May they vanish
like water that runs off;
when they draw the bow,
may their arrows be blunted.
8 Like a slug that dissolves in its slime,
like a woman's stillborn child,
may they never see the sun.

9 Before your pots can feel the burning thorns—
whether green or dry—
He will sweep them away.
10 The righteous will rejoice
when they see they are avenged;
they will wash their feet
in the blood of the wicked.
11 Then men will say,
"There is surely a reward for the righteous!
There is surely a God who judges the earth!"

59

PSALM 59 IN 30 SECONDS
Saul's men are watching David's house. They prowl like dogs at night. God is my fortress.

DELIVER ME FROM MY ENEMIES // 1 SAMUEL 19:1–24

For the choirmaster. To the tune of "Do Not Destroy." A Miktam of David, when Saul sent men to watch David's house in order to kill him.

1 Deliver me from my enemies, O my God;
protect me from those who rise against me.
2 Deliver me from workers of iniquity,
and save me from men of bloodshed.
3 See how they lie in wait for me.
Fierce men conspire against me
for no transgression or sin of my own, O Yahweh.
4 For no fault of my own,
they move swiftly to attack me.
Arise to help me, and take notice.
5 O Yahweh God of Hosts, the God of Israel,
rouse Yourself to punish all the nations;
show no mercy to the wicked traitors.
Selah
6 They return in the evening, snarling like dogs
and prowling around the city.
7 See what they spew from their mouths—
sharp words from their lips:
"For who can hear us?"
8 But You, O Yahweh, laugh at them;
You scoff at all the nations.

9 I will keep watch for You, O my strength,
because You, O God, are my fortress.
10 My God of loving devotion will come to meet me;
God will let me stare down my foes.

11 Do not kill them,
or my people will forget.
Scatter them by Your power,
and bring them down,
O Lord, our shield.
12 By the sins of their mouths
and the words of their lips,
let them be trapped in their pride,
in the curses and lies they utter.
13 Consume them in wrath;
consume them till they are no more,
so it may be known to the ends of the earth
that God rules over Jacob.
Selah
14 They return in the evening,
snarling like dogs
and prowling around the city.
15 They scavenge for food,
and growl if they are not satisfied.

16 But I will sing of Your strength
and proclaim Your loving devotion in the morning.
For You are my fortress,
my refuge in times of trouble.
17 To You, O my strength, I sing praises,
for You, O God, are my fortress,
my God of loving devotion.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

60

PSALM 60 IN 30 SECONDS
A war defeat. Then God speaks: Moab is My washbasin. With God we will win.

VICTORY WITH GOD // 2 SAMUEL 8:1–14; 1 CHRONICLES 18:1–13; PSALM 108:1–13
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "The Lily of the Covenant." A Miktam of David for instruction. When he fought Aram-naharaim and Aram-zobah, and Joab returned and struck down 12,000 Edomites in the Valley of Salt.

1 You have rejected us, O God;
You have broken us;
You have been angry;
restore us!
2 You have shaken the land
and torn it open.
Heal its fractures,
for it is quaking.
3 You have shown Your people hardship;
we are staggered from the wine You made us drink.
4 You have raised a banner for those who fear You,
that they may flee the bow.
Selah
5 Respond and save us with Your right hand,
that Your beloved may be delivered.
6 God has spoken from His sanctuary:
"I will triumph!
I will parcel out Shechem
and apportion the Valley of Succoth.
7 Gilead is Mine, and Manasseh is Mine;
Ephraim is My helmet, Judah is My scepter.
8 Moab is My washbasin;
upon Edom I toss My sandal;
over Philistia I shout in triumph."
9 Who will bring me to the fortified city?
Who will lead me to Edom?
10 Have You not rejected us, O God?
Will You no longer march out, O God, with our armies?
11 Give us aid against the enemy,
for the help of man is worthless.
12 With God we will perform with valor,
and He will trample our enemies.

PS 60:1 [NOTE] THE VALLEY OF SALT. 2 Samuel 8:13 and 1 Chronicles 18:12 tell this war. The numbers are told differently there; see Samuel and Chronicles in 2 Samuel, p.532.

61

PSALM 61 IN 30 SECONDS
From the ends of the earth I call. Lead me to the rock that is higher than I.

YOU HAVE HEARD MY VOWS
For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments. Of David.

1 Hear my cry, O God;
attend to my prayer.
2 From the ends of the earth I call out to You
whenever my heart is faint.
Lead me to the rock
that is higher than I.
3 For You have been my refuge,
a tower of strength against the enemy.
4 Let me dwell in Your tent forever
and take refuge in the shelter of Your wings.
Selah
5 For You have heard my vows, O God;
You have given me the inheritance
reserved for those who fear Your name.
6 Increase the days of the king's life;
may his years span many generations.
7 May he sit enthroned in God's presence forever;
appoint Your loving devotion
and Your faithfulness to guard him.
8 Then I will ever sing praise to Your name
and fulfill my vows day by day.

62

PSALM 62 IN 30 SECONDS
My soul waits in silence for God alone. Do not trust in riches.

WAITING ON GOD
For the choirmaster. According to Jeduthun. A Psalm of David.

1 In God alone my soul finds rest;
my salvation comes from Him.
2 He alone is my rock and my salvation.
He is my fortress;
I will never be shaken.

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

3 How long will you threaten a man?
Will all of you throw him down
like a leaning wall
or a tottering fence?
4 They fully intend to cast him down from his lofty perch;
they delight in lies;
with their mouths they bless,
but inwardly they curse.

Selah

5 Rest in God alone, O my soul,
for my hope comes from Him.
6 He alone is my rock and my salvation;
He is my fortress; I will not be shaken.
7 My salvation and my honor rest on God, my strong rock;
my refuge is in God.
8 Trust in Him at all times, O people;
pour out your hearts before Him.
God is our refuge.

Selah

9 Lowborn men are but a vapor;
the exalted are but a lie.
Weighed on the scale, they go up;
together they are but a vapor.
10 Place no trust in extortion
or false hope in stolen goods.
If your riches increase,
do not set your heart upon them.

11 God has spoken once;
I have heard this twice:
that power belongs to God,
12 *and loving devotion to You, O Lord.*
For You will repay each man
according to his deeds.

63

PSALM 63 IN 30 SECONDS
In the desert of Judah: my soul thirsts for You. Your love is better than life.

THIRSTING FOR GOD // 2 SAMUEL 15:30–37
A Psalm of David, when he was in the Wilderness of Judah.

1 O God, You are my God.
Earnestly I seek You;
my soul thirsts for You.
My body yearns for You
in a dry and weary land without water.

2 So I have seen You in the sanctuary
and beheld Your power and glory.
3 Because Your loving devotion is better than life,
my lips will glorify You.
4 So I will bless You as long as I live;
in Your name I will lift my hands.

5 My soul is satisfied as with the richest of foods;
with joyful lips my mouth will praise You.
6 When I remember You on my bed,
I think of You through the watches of the night.
7 For You are my help;
I will sing for joy in the shadow of Your wings.
8 My soul clings to You;
Your right hand upholds me.

9 But those who seek my life to destroy it
will go into the depths of the earth.
10 They will fall to the power of the sword;
they will become a portion for foxes.
11 But the king will rejoice in God;
all who swear by Him will exult,
for the mouths of liars will be shut.

64

PSALM 64 IN 30 SECONDS
Enemies sharpen their tongues like swords. God shoots back.

THE HURTFUL TONGUE // JAMES 3:1–12
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 Hear, O God, my voice of complaint;
preserve my life from dread of the enemy.
2 Hide me from the scheming of the wicked,
from the mob of workers of iniquity,
3 who sharpen their tongues like swords
and aim their bitter words like arrows,
4 ambushing the innocent in seclusion,
shooting suddenly, without fear.

5 They hold fast to their evil purpose;

PS 62:8 [HEART] Trust Him at all times. Pour out your hearts before Him.
PS 62:10 [HEART] If riches increase, do not set your heart on them.
PS 62:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 2:6 p.1801

PS 63:1 [NOTE] THE WILDERNESS OF JUDAH. The dry hills between Jerusalem and the Dead Sea. David hid there from Saul and later from Absalom.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

they speak of hiding their snares.
"Who will see them?" they say.
6 They devise injustice and say,
"We have perfected a secret plan."
For the inner man and the heart are mysterious.
7 But God will shoot them with arrows;
suddenly they will be wounded.
8 They will be made to stumble,
their own tongues turned against them.
All who see will shake their heads.
9 Then all mankind will fear
and proclaim the work of God;
so they will ponder what He has done.
10 Let the righteous rejoice in Yahweh
and take refuge in Him;
let all the upright in heart exult.

65

PSALM 65 IN 30 SECONDS
God waters the earth. The hills wear joy and the meadows are dressed in flocks.

PRAISE AWAITS GOD IN ZION
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David. A song.

1 Praise awaits You, O God, in Zion;
to You our vows will be fulfilled.
2 O You who listen to prayer,
all people will come to You.
3 When iniquities prevail against me,
You atone for our transgressions.
4 Blessed is the one You choose
and bring near to dwell in Your courts!
We are filled with the goodness of Your house,
the holiness of Your temple.
5 With awesome deeds of righteousness You answer us,
O God of our salvation,
the hope of all the ends of the earth
and of the farthest seas.
6 You formed the mountains by Your power,
having girded Yourself with might.
7 You stilled the roaring of the seas,
the pounding of their waves,
and the tumult of the nations.
8 Those who live far away fear Your wonders;
You make the dawn and sunset shout for joy.
9 You attend to the earth and water it;
with abundance You enrich it.
The streams of God are full of water,
for You prepare our grain
by providing for the earth.
10 You soak its furrows and level its ridges;
You soften it with showers and bless its growth.
11 You crown the year with Your bounty,
and Your paths overflow with plenty.
12 The pastures of the wilderness overflow;
the hills are robed with joy.
13 The pastures are clothed with flocks,
and the valleys are decked with grain.
They shout in triumph;
indeed, they sing.

66

PSALM 66 IN 30 SECONDS
Come and see what God has done! He turned the sea into dry land.

MAKE A JOYFUL NOISE // PSALM 100:1–5
For the choirmaster. A song. A Psalm.

1 Make a joyful noise to God,
all the earth!
2 Sing the glory of His name;
make His praise glorious.
3 Say to God, "How awesome are Your deeds!
So great is Your power
that Your enemies cower before You.
4 All the earth bows down to You;
they sing praise to You;
they sing praise to Your name."
Selah
5 Come and see the works of God;
how awesome are His deeds toward mankind.
6 He turned the sea into dry land;
they passed through the waters on foot;
there we rejoiced in Him.
7 He rules forever by His power;
His eyes watch the nations.
Do not let the rebellious exalt themselves.
Selah

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

8 Bless our God, O peoples;
let the sound of His praise be heard.
9 He preserves our lives
and keeps our feet from slipping.

10 For You, O God, have tested us;
You have refined us like silver.
11 You led us into the net;
You laid burdens on our backs.
12 You let men ride over our heads;
we went through fire and water,
but You brought us into abundance.

13 I will enter Your house with burnt offerings;
I will fulfill my vows to You—
14 the vows that my lips promised
and my mouth spoke in my distress.
15 I will offer You fatlings as burnt offerings,
with the fragrant smoke of rams;
I will offer bulls and goats.

Selah

16 Come and listen, all you who fear God,
and I will declare what He has done for me.
17 I cried out to Him with my mouth
and praised Him with my tongue.
18 If I had cherished iniquity in my heart,
the Lord would not have listened.
19 But God has surely heard;
He has attended to the sound of my prayer.

20 Blessed be God, who has not rejected my prayer
or withheld from me His loving devotion!

67

PSALM 67 IN 30 SECONDS
May God bless us so that all nations will know Him. It echoes the priestly blessing.

MAY GOD CAUSE HIS FACE TO SHINE UPON US
For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments. A Psalm. A song.

1 May God be gracious to us and bless us,
and cause His face to shine upon us,

Selah

2 that Your ways may be known on earth,
Your salvation among all nations.

3 Let the peoples praise You, O God;
let all the peoples praise You.
4 Let the nations be glad and sing for joy,
for You judge the peoples justly
and lead the nations of the earth.

Selah

5 Let the peoples praise You, O God;
let all the peoples praise You.

6 The earth has yielded its harvest;
God, our God, blesses us.
7 God blesses us,
that all the ends of the earth shall fear Him.

68

PSALM 68 IN 30 SECONDS
God marches out and His enemies scatter. He is a father to the fatherless.

GOD'S ENEMIES ARE SCATTERED
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David. A song.

1 God arises. His enemies are scattered,
and those who hate Him flee His presence.
2 As smoke is blown away,
You will drive them out;
as wax melts before the fire,
the wicked will perish in the presence of God.
3 But the righteous will be glad
and rejoice before God;
they will celebrate with joy.

4 Sing to God!
Sing praises to His name.
Exalt Him who rides on the clouds—
His name is Yahweh—
and rejoice before Him.
5 A father of the fatherless
and a defender of widows
is God in His holy habitation.
6 God settles the lonely in families;
He leads the prisoners out to prosperity,
but the rebellious dwell in a sun-scorched land.

7 O God, when You went out before Your people,

PS 66:18 [HEART] If I cherish sin in my heart, the Lord will not listen.
PS 67:1 [NOTE] THE PRIESTLY BLESSING. This echoes Numbers 6:24 to 26. The oldest Bible words ever found are that blessing on two tiny silver scrolls. See The Ketef Hinnom Silver Scrolls in Numbers, p.234.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

when You marched through the wasteland,

Selah

8 the earth shook and the heavens poured down rain
before God, the One on Sinai,
before God, the God of Israel.
9 You sent abundant rain, O God;
You refreshed Your weary inheritance.
10 Your flock settled therein;
O God, from Your bounty You provided for the poor.

11 The Lord gives the command;
a great company of women proclaim it:
12 "Kings and their armies flee in haste;
she who waits at home divides the plunder.
13 Though you lie down among the sheepfolds,
the wings of the dove are covered with silver,
and her feathers with shimmering gold."
14 When the Almighty scattered the kings in the land,
it was like the snow falling on Zalmon.

15 A mountain of God is Mount Bashan;
a mountain of many peaks is Mount Bashan.
16 Why do you gaze in envy, O mountains of many peaks?
This is the mountain God chose for His dwelling,
where Yahweh will surely dwell forever.

17 The chariots of God are tens of thousands—
thousands of thousands are they;
the Lord is in His sanctuary
as He was at Sinai.
18 *You have ascended on high;*
You have led captives away.
You have received gifts from men,
even from the rebellious,
that Yahweh God may dwell there.
19 Blessed be the Lord,
who daily bears our burden,
the God of our salvation.

Selah

20 Our God is a God of deliverance;
the Lord Yahweh is our rescuer from death.
21 Surely God will crush the heads of His enemies,
the hairy crowns of those who persist in guilty ways.
22 The Lord said, "I will retrieve them from Bashan,
I will bring them up from the depths of the sea,
23 that your foot may be dipped
in the blood of your foes—
the tongues of your dogs in the same."

24 They have seen Your procession, O God—
the march of my God and King into the sanctuary.
25 The singers lead the way,
the musicians follow after,
among the maidens playing tambourines.
26 Bless God in the great congregation;
bless Yahweh from the fountain of Israel.
27 There is Benjamin, the youngest, ruling them,
the princes of Judah in their company,
the princes of Zebulun and of Naphtali.

28 Summon Your power, O God;
show Your strength, O God,
which You have exerted on our behalf.
29 Because of Your temple at Jerusalem
kings will bring You gifts.
30 Rebuke the beast in the reeds,
the herd of bulls among the calves of the nations,
until it submits, bringing bars of silver.
Scatter the nations who delight in war.
31 Envoys will arrive from Egypt;
Cush will stretch out her hands to God.

32 Sing to God, O kingdoms of the earth;
sing praises to the Lord—

Selah

PS 68:18 [PROPHECY] He would ascend on high and give gifts to men → EPH 4:8-10 p.1885
PS 68:18 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → EPH 4:8 p.1885
PS 68:18 [TEXT] RECEIVED GIFTS. The Hebrew says You received gifts from men. Paul says He gave gifts to men, Ephesians 4:8, like an old Aramaic translation. Christ won, then shared the spoils.

PS 68:31 [PROPHECY] Princes of Egypt bringing gifts to King Messiah → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

33 to Him who rides upon the highest heavens of old;
behold, His mighty voice resounds.
34 Ascribe the power to God,
whose majesty is over Israel,
whose strength is in the skies.
35 O God, You are awesome in Your sanctuary;
the God of Israel Himself
gives strength and power to His people.

Blessed be God!

69

PSALM 69 IN 30 SECONDS
I am sinking in deep mud. They gave me vinegar for my thirst. The New Testament quotes it often.

THE WATERS ARE UP TO MY NECK
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "Lilies." Of David.

1 Save me, O God,
for the waters are up to my neck.
2 I have sunk into the miry depths,
where there is no footing;
I have drifted into deep waters,
where the flood engulfs me.
3 I am weary from my crying;
my throat is parched.
My eyes fail,
looking for my God.
4 *Those who hate me without cause*
outnumber the hairs of my head;
many are those who would destroy me—
my enemies for no reason.
Though I did not steal,
I must repay.
5 You know my folly, O God,
and my guilt is not hidden from You.
6 May those who hope in You not be ashamed through me,
O Lord Yahweh of Hosts;
may those who seek You not be dishonored through me,
O God of Israel.
7 For I have endured scorn for Your sake,
and shame has covered my face.
8 I have become a stranger to my brothers
and a foreigner to my mother's sons,
9 *because zeal for Your house has consumed me,*
and the insults of those who insult You have fallen on me.
10 I wept and fasted,
but it brought me reproach.
11 I made sackcloth my clothing,
and I was sport to them.
12 Those who sit at the gate mock me,
and I am the song of drunkards.
13 But my prayer to You, O Yahweh,
is for a time of favor.
In Your abundant loving devotion, O God,
answer me with Your sure salvation.
14 Rescue me from the mire
and do not let me sink;
deliver me from my foes
and out of the deep waters.
15 Do not let the floods engulf me
or the depths swallow me up;
let not the Pit close its mouth over me.
16 Answer me, O Yahweh,
for Your loving devotion is good;
turn to me in keeping with Your great compassion.
17 Hide not Your face from Your servant,
for I am in distress.
Answer me quickly!
18 Draw near to my soul and redeem me;
ransom me because of my foes.
19 You know my reproach, my shame and disgrace.
All my adversaries are before You.
20 Insults have broken my heart,
and I am in despair.
I looked for sympathy, but there was none,
for comforters, but I found no one.
21 They poisoned my food with gall

- **PS 69:4 [PROPHECY]** Hated without cause → JN 15:25 p.1726
- **PS 69:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 15:25 p.1726
- **PS 69:8 [PROPHECY]** A stranger to His own brethren → JN 1:11; 7:5 p.1698
- **PS 69:9 [PROPHECY]** Zealous for His Father's house → JN 2:17; ROM 15:3 p.1701
- **PS 69:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 2:17 p.1701
- **PS 69:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:3 p.1817
- **PS 69:9 [NOTE]** ZEAL FOR YOUR HOUSE. When Jesus cleared the temple, His disciples remembered this verse, John 2:17. Paul says the second half was true of Christ, Romans 15:3. It stays black because David is the one praying here.
- **PS 69:20 [PROPHECY]** Heartbroken, He looked for comforters but found none → MT 26:38; MK 14:37-41 p.1594

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and gave me vinegar to quench my thirst.

22 *May their table become a snare;*
may it be a retribution and a trap.
23 *May their eyes be darkened so they cannot see,*
and their backs be bent forever.
24 Pour out Your wrath upon them,
and let Your burning anger overtake them.
25 *May their place be deserted;*
let there be no one to dwell in their tents.
26 For they persecute the one You struck
and recount the pain of those You wounded.
27 Add iniquity to their iniquity;
let them not share in Your righteousness.
28 May they be blotted out of the Book of Life
and not listed with the righteous.

29 But I am in pain and distress;
let Your salvation protect me, O God.
30 I will praise God's name in song
and exalt Him with thanksgiving.
31 And this will please Yahweh more than an ox,
more than a bull with horns and hooves.
32 The humble will see and rejoice.
You who seek God, let your hearts be revived!
33 For Yahweh listens to the needy
and does not despise His captive people.

34 Let heaven and earth praise Him,
the seas and everything that moves in them.
35 For God will save Zion
and rebuild the cities of Judah,
that they may dwell there and possess it.
36 The descendants of His servants will inherit it,
and those who love His name will settle in it.

- **PS 69:21 [PROPHECY]** Given vinegar to drink in His thirst → MT 27:34; MT 27:48; JN 19:28-30 p.1598
- **PS 69:21 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 27:34 p.1598
- **PS 69:21 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 27:48 p.1598
- **PS 69:21 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 15:36 p.1636
- **PS 69:21 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 23:36 p.1690
- **PS 69:21 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JN 19:28-29 p.1732
- **PS 69:21 [NOTE]** VINEGAR. At the cross Jesus was offered sour wine, Matthew 27:34 and 27:48.
- **PS 69:22 [PROPHECY]** Those who reject Him would be blinded and trapped → ROM 11:9-10 p.1813
- **PS 69:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:9-10 p.1813
- **PS 69:25 [PROPHECY]** The betrayer's place would be left empty → ACTS 1:20 p.1740
- **PS 69:25 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 1:20 p.1740

70

PSALM 70 IN 30 SECONDS
Hurry, God, help me! A short emergency prayer, almost the same as the end of Psalm 40.

HURRY, O YAHWEH, TO HELP ME! // PSALM 40:1–17; PSALM 141:1–10

For the choirmaster. Of David. To bring remembrance.

1 Make haste, O God, to deliver me!
Hurry, O Yahweh, to help me!

2 May those who seek my life
be ashamed and confounded;
may those who wish me harm
be repelled and humiliated.
3 May those who say, "Aha, aha!"
retreat because of their shame.

4 May all who seek You
rejoice and be glad in You;
may those who love Your salvation always say,
"Let God be magnified!"
5 But I am poor and needy;
hurry to me, O God.
You are my help and my deliverer;
O Yahweh, do not delay.

71

PSALM 71 IN 30 SECONDS
An old man's prayer. You have been my hope since I was young. Do not leave me now that I am gray.

BE MY ROCK OF REFUGE

1 In You, O Yahweh, I have taken refuge;
let me never be put to shame.
2 In Your justice, rescue and deliver me;
incline Your ear and save me.
3 Be my rock of refuge,

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

where I can always go.
Give the command to save me,
for You are my rock and my fortress.
4 Deliver me, O my God, from the hand of the wicked,
from the grasp of the unjust and ruthless.
5 For You are my hope, O Lord Yahweh,
my confidence from my youth.
6 I have leaned on You since birth;
You pulled me from my mother's womb.
My praise is always for You.
7 I have become a portent to many,
but You are my strong refuge.
8 My mouth is filled with Your praise
and with Your splendor all day long.
9 Do not discard me in my old age;
do not forsake me when my strength fails.
10 For my enemies speak against me,
and those who lie in wait for my life conspire,
11 saying, "God has forsaken him;
pursue him and seize him,
for there is no one to rescue him."
12 Be not far from me, O God.
Hurry, O my God, to help me.
13 May the accusers of my soul
be ashamed and consumed;
may those who seek my harm
be covered with scorn and disgrace.
14 But I will always hope
and will praise You more and more.
15 My mouth will declare Your righteousness
and Your salvation all day long,
though I cannot know their full measure.
16 I will come in the strength of the Lord Yahweh;
I will proclaim Your righteousness—Yours alone.
17 O God, You have taught me from my youth,
and to this day I proclaim Your marvelous deeds.
18 Even when I am old and gray,
do not forsake me, O God,
until I proclaim Your power to the next generation,
Your might to all who are to come.
19 Your righteousness reaches to the heavens, O God,
You who have done great things.
Who, O God, is like You?
20 Though You have shown me many troubles and misfortunes,
You will revive me once again.
Even from the depths of the earth
You will bring me back up.
21 You will increase my honor
and comfort me once again.
22 So I will praise You with the harp
for Your faithfulness, O my God;
I will sing praise to You with the lyre,
O Holy One of Israel.
23 When I sing praise to You
my lips will shout for joy,
along with my soul,
which You have redeemed.
24 My tongue will indeed proclaim
Your righteousness all day long,
for those who seek my harm
are disgraced and confounded.

72

PSALM 72 IN 30 SECONDS
A prayer for the king: may he rule from sea to sea. Book Two ends: the prayers of David are ended.

ENDOW THE KING WITH YOUR JUSTICE // 1 KINGS 3:1–15; 2 CHRONICLES 1:1–13; PSALM 45:1–17

Of Solomon.

1 Endow the king with Your justice, O God,
and the son of the king with Your righteousness.
2 May he judge Your people with righteousness
and Your afflicted with justice.
3 May the mountains bring peace to the people,
and the hills bring righteousness.
4 May he vindicate the afflicted among the people;
may he save the children of the needy
and crush the oppressor.

PS 72:1 [FORESHADOW] 'Give the king Your judgments, O God' → JN 5:22 · MEDIUM p.1707
PS 72:1 [NOTE] OF SOLOMON. This is one of two psalms with Solomon's name, with 127. Many think David prayed it for his son, 72:20.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW END TIMES PROPHECIES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

5 May they fear him as long as the sun
shines,
as long as the moon remains,
through all generations.
6 May he be like rain that falls on freshly
cut grass,
like spring showers that water the earth.
7 May the righteous flourish in his days
and prosperity abound
until the moon is no more.

8 May he rule from sea to sea,
and from the Euphrates to the ends of
the earth.
9 May the nomads bow before him,
and his enemies lick the dust.
10 May the kings of Tarshish and distant
shores bring tribute;
may the kings of Sheba and Seba offer
gifts.
11 May all kings bow down to him
and all nations serve him.

12 For he will deliver the needy who cry out
and the afflicted who have no helper.
13 He will take pity on the poor and needy
and save the lives of the oppressed.
14 He will redeem them from oppression
and violence,
for their blood is precious in his sight.

15 Long may he live!
May gold from Sheba be given him.
May people ever pray for him;
may they bless him all day long.
16 May there be an abundance of grain in
the land;
may it sway atop the hills.
May its fruit trees flourish like the forests
of Lebanon,
the people of its cities like the grass of
the field.
17 May his name endure forever;
may his name continue as long as the
sun shines.
In him may all nations be blessed;
may they call him blessed.

18 Blessed be Yahweh God, the God of Is-
rael,
who alone does marvelous deeds.
19 And blessed be His glorious name for-
ever;
may all the earth be filled with His glory.

Amen and amen. 20 Thus conclude the
prayers of David son of Jesse.

BOOK III PSALMS 73 TO 89

73

PSALM 73 IN 30 SECONDS
Asaph almost gave up because the wicked had it easy. Then he went into God's house and saw their end.

SURELY GOD IS GOOD TO ISRAEL
A Psalm of Asaph.

1 Surely God is good to Israel,
to those who are pure in heart.
2 But as for me, my feet had almost stum-
bled;
my steps had nearly slipped.
3 For I envied the arrogant
when I saw the prosperity of the
wicked.

4 They have no struggle in their death;
their bodies are well-fed.
5 They are free of the burdens others
carry;
they are not afflicted like other men.
6 Therefore pride is their necklace;
a garment of violence covers them.
7 From their prosperity proceeds iniquity;
the imaginations of their hearts run wild.
8 They mock and speak with malice;
with arrogance they threaten oppres-
sion.
9 They set their mouths against the heav-
ens,
and their tongues strut across the earth.

10 So their people return to this place
and drink up waters in abundance.

PS 72:8 [PROPHECY] The King would rule from sea to sea and to the ends of the earth → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
PS 72:10 [PROPHECY] Great kings (Magi) would visit Him → MT 2:1-11 p.1551
PS 72:16 [FORESHADOW] The grain of wheat falling into the ground (His death and harvest) → JN 12:24-25 · MEDIUM p.1721
PS 72:17 [PROPHECY] All nations would be blessed in Him and call Him blessed → GAL 3:8 p.1868
PS 72:20 [NOTE] THE PRAYERS OF DAVID ARE ENDED. This ends Book Two. Some psalms of David still come later, so this line likely closed an older collection.
PS 73:1 [NOTE] ASAPH'S PROBLEM. Why do the wicked have it so easy? The turning point comes in 73:17, when he goes into God's sanctuary.

THE HEART

11 The wicked say, "How can God know?
Does the Most High have knowledge?"
12 Behold, these are the wicked—
always carefree as they increase their wealth.

13 Surely in vain I have kept my heart pure;
in innocence I have washed my hands.
14 For I am afflicted all day long
and punished every morning.
15 If I had said, "I will speak this way,"
then I would have betrayed Your children.
16 When I tried to understand all this,
it was troublesome in my sight
17 until I entered God's sanctuary;
then I discerned their end.

18 Surely You set them on slick ground;
You cast them down into ruin.
19 How suddenly they are laid waste,
completely swept away by terrors!
20 Like one waking from a dream,
so You, O Lord, awaken and despise their form.

21 When my heart was grieved
and I was pierced within,
22 I was senseless and ignorant;
I was a brute beast before You.

23 Yet I am always with You;
You hold my right hand.
24 You guide me with Your counsel,
and later receive me in glory.
25 Whom have I in heaven but You?
And on earth I desire no one besides You.
26 My flesh and my heart may fail,
but God is the strength of my heart
and my portion forever.

27 Those far from You will surely perish;
You destroy all who are unfaithful to You.
28 But as for me, it is good to draw near to God.
I have made the Lord Yahweh my refuge,
that I may proclaim all Your works.

PS 73:26 [HEART] My flesh and heart may fail, but God is the strength of my heart.

74

PSALM 74 IN 30 SECONDS
The enemy burned the temple. Remember us, God. You crushed Leviathan; You can handle this.

WHY HAVE YOU REJECTED US FOREVER? // PSALM 79:1–13; JEREMIAH 52:1–11
A Maskil of Asaph.

1 Why have You rejected us forever, O God?
Why does Your anger smolder
against the sheep of Your pasture?
2 Remember Your congregation,
which You purchased long ago
and redeemed as the tribe of Your inheritance—
Mount Zion, where You dwell.
3 Turn Your steps to the everlasting ruins,
to everything in the sanctuary the enemy has destroyed.

4 Your foes have roared within Your meeting place;
they have unfurled their banners as signs,
5 like men wielding axes in a thicket of trees
6 and smashing all the carvings with hatchets and picks.
7 They have burned Your sanctuary to the ground;
they have defiled the dwelling place of Your Name.

8 They said in their hearts,
"We will crush them completely."
They burned down every place
where God met us in the land.
9 There are no signs for us to see.
There is no longer any prophet.
And none of us knows how long this will last.
10 How long, O God, will the enemy taunt You?
Will the foe revile Your name forever?
11 Why do You withdraw Your strong right hand?
Stretch it out to destroy them!

12 Yet God is my King from ancient times,
working salvation on the earth.
13 You divided the sea by Your strength;

GOD SPEAKING

You smashed the heads of the dragons
of the sea;
14 You crushed the heads of Leviathan;
You fed him to the creatures of the
desert.
15 You broke open the fountain and the
flood;
You dried up the ever-flowing rivers.
16 The day is Yours, and also the night;
You established the moon and the sun.
17 You set all the boundaries of the earth;
You made the summer and winter.

18 Remember how the enemy has mocked
You, O Yahweh,
how a foolish people has spurned Your
name.
19 Do not deliver the soul of Your dove to
beasts;
do not forget the lives of Your afflicted
forever.
20 Consider Your covenant,
for haunts of violence fill the dark
places of the land.
21 Do not let the oppressed retreat in
shame;
may the poor and needy praise Your
name.

22 Rise up, O God; defend Your cause!
Remember how the fool mocks You all
day long.
23 Do not disregard the clamor of Your ad-
versaries,
the uproar of Your enemies that as-
cends continually.

75

PSALM 75 IN 30 SECONDS
God says, I choose the time to judge. He lifts up one and brings down another.

GOD'S RIGHTEOUS JUDGMENT // ROMANS 2:1–16
For the choirmaster: To the tune of "Do Not Destroy." A Psalm of Asaph. A song.

1 We give thanks to You, O God;
we give thanks, for Your Name is near.
The people declare Your wondrous
works.

2 "When I choose a time,
I will judge fairly.
3 When the earth and all its dwellers
quake,
it is I who bear up its pillars.

Selah

4 I say to the proud, 'Do not boast,'
and to the wicked, 'Do not lift up your
horn.
5 Do not lift up your horn against heaven
or speak with an outstretched neck.'"

6 For exaltation comes neither from east
nor west,
nor out of the desert,
7 but it is God who judges;
He brings down one and exalts another.
8 For a cup is in the hand of Yahweh,
full of foaming wine mixed with spices.
He pours from His cup,
and all the wicked of the earth
drink it down to the dregs.

9 But I will proclaim Him forever;
I will sing praise to the God of Jacob.

10 "All the horns of the wicked I will cut off,
but the horns of the righteous will be
exalted."

76

PSALM 76 IN 30 SECONDS
God broke the arrows and shields. Even the angry rage of man will bring Him praise.

GOD'S NAME IS GREAT IN ISRAEL
For the choirmaster. With stringed instruments. A Psalm of Asaph. A song.

1 God is known in Judah;
His name is great in Israel.
2 His tent is in Salem,
His dwelling place in Zion.
3 There He shattered the flaming arrows,
the shield and sword and weapons of
war.

Selah

4 You are resplendent with light,
more majestic than mountains filled with
game.
5 The valiant lie plundered; they sleep their
last sleep.
No men of might could lift a hand.
6 At Your rebuke, O God of Jacob,

PS 74:14 [NOTE] LEVIATHAN. God crushed the heads of the sea monster. The name was known in Canaan long before. See Lotan in the Ugarit Tablets in Job, p.877.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

both horse and rider lie stunned.

7 You alone are to be feared.
When You are angry, who can stand before You?
8 From heaven You pronounced judgment,
and the earth feared and was still
9 when God rose up to judge,
to save all the lowly of the earth.

Selah

10 Even the wrath of man shall praise You;
with the survivors of wrath You will clothe Yourself.

11 Make and fulfill your vows to Yahweh your God;
let all the neighboring lands bring tribute to Him who is to be feared.
12 He breaks the spirits of princes;
He is feared by the kings of the earth.

77

PSALM 77 IN 30 SECONDS
I cried out at night and could not sleep. Then I remembered how God led His people through the sea.

IN THE DAY OF TROUBLE I SOUGHT THE LORD
For the choirmaster. According to Jeduthun. A Psalm of Asaph.

1 I cried out to God;
I cried aloud to God to hear me.
2 In the day of trouble I sought the Lord;
through the night my outstretched hands did not grow weary;
my soul refused to be comforted.
3 I remembered You, O God, and I groaned;
I mused and my spirit grew faint.

Selah

4 You have kept my eyes from closing;
I am too troubled to speak.
5 I considered the days of old,
the years long in the past.
6 At night I remembered my song;
in my heart I mused, and my spirit pondered:

7 "Will the Lord spurn us forever
and never show His favor again?
8 Is His loving devotion gone forever?
Has His promise failed for all time?
9 Has God forgotten to be gracious?
Has His anger shut off His compassion?"

Selah

10 So I said, "I am grieved
that the right hand of the Most High has changed."

11 I will remember the works of Yahweh;
yes, I will remember Your wonders of old.
12 I will reflect on all You have done
and ponder Your mighty deeds.
13 Your way, O God, is holy.
What god is so great as our God?
14 You are the God who works wonders;
You display Your strength among the peoples.
15 With power You redeemed Your people,
the sons of Jacob and Joseph.

Selah

16 The waters saw You, O God;
the waters saw You and swirled;
even the depths were shaken.
17 The clouds poured down water;
the skies resounded with thunder;
Your arrows flashed back and forth.
18 Your thunder resounded in the whirlwind;
the lightning lit up the world;
the earth trembled and quaked.

19 Your path led through the sea,
Your way through the mighty waters,
but Your footprints were not to be found.
20 You led Your people like a flock
by the hand of Moses and Aaron.

78

PSALM 78 IN 30 SECONDS
A long history lesson so the kids will not repeat their fathers' mistakes. Then God chose David.

I WILL OPEN MY MOUTH IN PARABLES // MATTHEW 13:34–35
A Maskil of Asaph.

1 Give ear, O my people, to my instruction;
listen to the words of my mouth.

2 *I will open my mouth in parables;*

PS 78:1 [PROPHECY] He would teach in parables → MT 13:34-35 p.1569

MESSIANIC PROPECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

I will utter things hidden from the beginning,
3 that we have heard and known
and our fathers have relayed to us.
4 We will not hide them from their children
but will declare to the next generation
the praises of Yahweh and His might
and the wonders He has performed.

5 For He established a testimony in Jacob
and appointed a law in Israel,
which He commanded our fathers
to teach to their children,
6 that the coming generation would know them—
even children yet to be born—
to arise and tell their own children
7 that they should put their confidence in God,
not forgetting His works,
but keeping His commandments.
8 Then they will not be like their fathers,
a stubborn and rebellious generation,
whose heart was not loyal,
whose spirit was not faithful to God.

9 The archers of Ephraim
turned back on the day of battle.
10 They failed to keep God's covenant
and refused to live by His law.
11 They forgot what He had done,
the wonders He had shown them.
12 He worked wonders before their fathers
in the land of Egypt, in the region of Zoan.
13 He split the sea and brought them through;
He set the waters upright like a wall.
14 He led them with a cloud by day
and with a light of fire all night.
15 He split the rocks in the wilderness
and gave them drink as abundant as the seas.
16 He brought streams from the stone
and made water flow down like rivers.

17 But they continued to sin against Him,
rebelling in the desert against the Most High.
18 They tested God in their heart
by demanding the food they craved.
19 They spoke against God, saying,
"Can God really prepare a table in the wilderness?
20 When He struck the rock, water gushed out
and torrents raged.
But can He also give bread
or supply His people with meat?"

21 Therefore Yahweh heard
and was filled with wrath;
so a fire was kindled against Jacob,
and His anger flared against Israel,
22 because they did not believe God
or rely on His salvation.

23 Yet He commanded the clouds above
and opened the doors of the heavens.
24 *He rained down manna for them to eat;*
He gave them grain from heaven.
25 Man ate the bread of angels;
He sent them food in abundance.
26 He stirred the east wind from the heavens
and drove the south wind by His might.
27 He rained meat on them like dust,
and winged birds like the sand of the sea.
28 He felled them in the midst of their camp,
all around their dwellings.
29 So they ate and were well filled,
for He gave them what they craved.

30 Yet before they had filled their desire,
with the food still in their mouths,
31 God's anger flared against them,
and He put to death their strongest
and subdued the young men of Israel.

32 In spite of all this, they kept on sinning;
despite His wonderful works, they did not believe.
33 So He ended their days in futility,
and their years in sudden terror.

- **PS 78:2 [PROPHECY]** He would speak the wisdom of God with authority → MT 7:29 · MEDIUM p.1560
- **PS 78:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 13:35 p.1569
- **PS 78:2 [NOTE]** PARABLES. Matthew says Jesus spoke in parables to fulfill this verse, Matthew 13:35.
- **PS 78:18 [HEART]** Israel tested God in their heart by demanding the food they craved.
- **PS 78:18 [NOTE]** IN THEIR HEART. The Hebrew says they tested God in their heart. The problem started inside.
- **PS 78:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 6:31 p.1709

THE HEART DEMONIC

34 When He slew them, they would seek Him;
they repented and searched for God.
35 And they remembered that God was their Rock,
that God Most High was their Redeemer.
36 But they deceived Him with their mouths,
and lied to Him with their tongues.
37 Their hearts were disloyal to Him,
and they were unfaithful to His covenant.
38 And yet He was compassionate;
He forgave their iniquity and did not destroy them.
He often restrained His anger
and did not unleash His full wrath.
39 He remembered that they were but flesh,
a passing breeze that does not return.
40 How often they disobeyed Him in the wilderness
and grieved Him in the desert!
41 Again and again they tested God
and provoked the Holy One of Israel.
42 They did not remember His power—
the day He redeemed them from the adversary,
43 when He performed His signs in Egypt
and His wonders in the fields of Zoan.
44 He turned their rivers to blood,
and from their streams they could not drink.
45 He sent swarms of flies that devoured them,
and frogs that devastated them.
46 He gave their crops to the grasshopper,
the fruit of their labor to the locust.
47 He killed their vines with hailstones
and their sycamore-figs with sleet.
48 He abandoned their cattle to the hail
and their livestock to bolts of lightning.
49 He unleashed His fury against them,
wrath, indignation, and calamity—
a band of destroying angels.
50 He cleared a path for His anger;
He did not spare them from death
but delivered their lives to the plague.
51 He struck all the firstborn of Egypt,
the virility in the tents of Ham.
52 He led out His people like sheep
and guided them like a flock in the wilderness.
53 He led them safely, so they did not fear,
but the sea engulfed their enemies.
54 He brought them to His holy land,
to the mountain His right hand had acquired.
55 He drove out nations before them
and apportioned their inheritance;
He settled the tribes of Israel in their tents.
56 But they tested and disobeyed God Most High,
for they did not keep His decrees.
57 They turned back and were faithless like their fathers,
twisted like a faulty bow.
58 They enraged Him with their high places
and provoked His jealousy with their idols.
59 On hearing it, God was furious
and rejected Israel completely.
60 He abandoned the tabernacle of Shiloh,
the tent He had pitched among men.
61 He delivered His strength to captivity,
and His splendor to the hand of the adversary.
62 He surrendered His people to the sword
because He was enraged by His heritage.
63 Fire consumed His young men,
and their maidens were left without wedding songs.
64 His priests fell by the sword,
but their widows could not lament.
65 Then the Lord awoke as from sleep,
like a mighty warrior overcome by wine.
66 He beat back His foes;
He put them to everlasting shame.
67 He rejected the tent of Joseph
and refused the tribe of Ephraim.
68 But He chose the tribe of Judah,
Mount Zion, which He loved.
69 He built His sanctuary like the heights,

PS 78:37 [HEART] Their heart was not loyal to God even when their mouths said the right things.

PS 78:58 [DEMONIC] Israel provokes God with high places and idols

THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

like the earth He has established forever.

70 He chose David His servant
and took him from the sheepfolds;
71 from tending the ewes He brought him
to be shepherd of His people Jacob,
of Israel His inheritance.
72 So David shepherded them with integrity of heart
and guided them with skillful hands.

79

PSALM 79 IN 30 SECONDS
Jerusalem is in ruins. Help us for Your name's sake.

A PRAYER FOR DELIVERANCE // PSALM 74:1–23; JEREMIAH 52:1–11
A Psalm of Asaph.

1 The nations, O God, have invaded Your inheritance;
they have defiled Your holy temple
and reduced Jerusalem to rubble.
2 They have given the corpses of Your servants
as food to the birds of the air,
the flesh of Your saints to the beasts of the earth.
3 They have poured out their blood like water
all around Jerusalem,
and there is no one to bury the dead.
4 We have become a reproach to our neighbors,
a scorn and derision to those around us.

5 How long, O Yahweh?
Will You be angry forever?
Will Your jealousy burn like fire?
6 Pour out Your wrath on the nations
that do not acknowledge You,
on the kingdoms
that refuse to call on Your name,
7 for they have devoured Jacob
and devastated his homeland.

8 Do not hold past sins against us;
let Your compassion come quickly,
for we are brought low.
9 Help us, O God of our salvation,
for the glory of Your name;
deliver us and atone for our sins,
for the sake of Your name.
10 Why should the nations ask,
"Where is their God?"
Before our eyes, make known among the nations
Your vengeance for the bloodshed of Your servants.

11 May the groans of the captives reach You;
by the strength of Your arm preserve those condemned to death.
12 Pay back into the laps of our neighbors
sevenfold the reproach they hurled at You, O Lord.
13 Then we Your people, the sheep of Your pasture,
will thank You forever;
from generation to generation
we will declare Your praise.

80

PSALM 80 IN 30 SECONDS
Israel is God's vine, now chewed up by wild boars. Restore us, God; make Your face shine.

HEAR US, O SHEPHERD OF ISRAEL
For the choirmaster. To the tune of "The Lilies of the Covenant." A Psalm of Asaph.

1 Hear us, O Shepherd of Israel,
who leads Joseph like a flock;
You who sit enthroned between the cherubim,
shine forth 2 before Ephraim, Benjamin, and Manasseh.
Rally Your mighty power
and come to save us.
3 Restore us, O God,
and cause Your face to shine upon us,
that we may be saved.

4 O Yahweh God of Hosts,
how long will Your anger smolder
against the prayers of Your people?
5 You fed them with the bread of tears
and made them drink the full measure of their tears.

PS 78:70 [NOTE] FROM THE SHEEP PENS. God took David from the sheep to shepherd His people. Psalm 151 tells the same story in David's voice.
PS 78:72 [HEART] David shepherded Israel with a heart of integrity.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

6 You make us contend with our neighbors;
our enemies mock us.
7 Restore us, O God of Hosts,
and cause Your face to shine upon us,
that we may be saved.

8 You uprooted a vine from Egypt;
You drove out the nations and transplanted it.
9 You cleared the ground for it,
and it took root and filled the land.
10 The mountains were covered by its shade,
and the mighty cedars with its branches.
11 It sent out its branches to the Sea,
and its shoots toward the River.

12 Why have You broken down its walls,
so that all who pass by pick its fruit?
13 The boar from the forest ravages it,
and the creatures of the field feed upon it.
14 Return, O God of Hosts, we pray!
Look down from heaven and see!
Attend to this vine—
15 the root Your right hand has planted,
the son You have raised up for Yourself.

16 Your vine has been cut down and burned;
they perish at the rebuke of Your countenance.
17 Let Your hand be upon the man at Your right hand,
on the son of man You have raised up for Yourself.
18 Then we will not turn away from You;
revive us, and we will call on Your name.
19 Restore us, O Yahweh God of Hosts;
cause Your face to shine upon us,
that we may be saved.

81

PSALM 81 IN 30 SECONDS
A festival song. God says, Open your mouth wide and I will fill it. If only you would listen.

SING FOR JOY TO GOD OUR STRENGTH
For the choirmaster. According to Gittith. Of Asaph.

1 Sing for joy to God our strength;
make a joyful noise to the God of Jacob.
2 Lift up a song, strike the tambourine,
play the sweet-sounding harp and lyre.
3 Sound the ram's horn at the New Moon,
and at the full moon on the day of our Feast.
4 For this is a statute for Israel,
an ordinance of the God of Jacob.
5 He ordained it as a testimony for Joseph
when he went out over the land of Egypt,
where I heard an unfamiliar language:

6 "I relieved his shoulder of the burden;
his hands were freed from the basket.
7 You called out in distress, and I rescued you;
I answered you from the cloud of thunder;
I tested you at the waters of Meribah.
Selah
8 Hear, O My people, and I will warn you:
O Israel, if only you would listen to Me!
9 There must be no strange god among you,
nor shall you bow to a foreign god.
10 I am Yahweh your God,
who brought you up out of Egypt.
Open wide your mouth,
and I will fill it.

11 But My people would not listen to Me,
and Israel would not obey Me.
12 So I gave them up to their stubborn hearts
to follow their own devices.
13 If only My people would listen to Me,
if Israel would follow My ways,
14 how soon I would subdue their enemies
and turn My hand against their foes!
15 Those who hate Yahweh would feign obedience,
and their doom would last forever.
16 But I would feed you the finest wheat;
with honey from the rock I would satisfy you."

PS 80:17 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man at God's right hand → MK 14:61-62 · MEDIUM p.1634

PS 81:9 [DEMONIC] There must be no strange god among you

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

82

PSALM 82 IN 30 SECONDS

God judges the judges in the divine council. You are gods, but you will die like men. Jesus quoted it.

GOD PRESIDES IN THE DIVINE ASSEMBLY

A Psalm of Asaph.

1 God presides in the divine assembly;
He renders judgment among the gods:
2 "How long will you judge unjustly
and show partiality to the wicked?
Selah
3 Defend the cause of the weak and fatherless;
uphold the rights of the afflicted and oppressed.
4 Rescue the weak and needy;
save them from the hand of the wicked.
5 They do not know or understand;
they wander in the darkness;
all the foundations of the earth are shaken.
6 *I have said, 'You are gods;*
you are all sons of the Most High.'
7 But like mortals you will die,
and like rulers you will fall."
8 Arise, O God, judge the earth,
for all the nations are Your inheritance.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

YE ARE GODS

Psalm 82 and John 10:34

PSALM 82 · JOHN 10:31 TO 36 · EXODUS 21:6 · DEUTERONOMY 32:8

THE SCENE

God stands up in the divine assembly and judges among the gods, 82:1. He scolds them for unfair judging, 82:2 to 4, says You are gods, 82:6, and then, But you will die like mortals, 82:7.

WHERE JESUS USED IT

When the crowd picked up stones because He said, I and the Father are one, Jesus answered: Is it not written in your Law, I have said you are gods? If He called them gods to whom the word of God came, why do you accuse Me for saying, I am the Son of God? John 10:34 to 36.

YE ARE GODS

That is the King James wording people know. This Bible says You are gods.

Who Are the Gods?

JOB 1:6 · DANIEL 10:13 · EPHESIANS 6:12

VIEW 1: HUMAN JUDGES

Many say the gods are Israel's judges and rulers, called elohim because they judged in God's place, like Exodus 21:6 and 22:8 to 9 in some translations. Jesus' point: if even human judges were called gods, why is it wrong for Me to say I am God's Son?

VIEW 2: SPIRIT BEINGS

Many scholars today, and some early Jewish readers, say the gods are spiritual beings, the sons of God, Job 1:6, put over the nations, Deuteronomy 32:8, who ruled them badly. God sentences them to die like men.

VIEW 3: ISRAEL AT SINAI

Some old rabbis said it meant Israel when they received the law at Sinai, and they lost that glory with the golden calf.

NOT LITTLE GODS

Some modern teachers use John 10:34 to say Christians are little gods. Most Christians say Jesus did not teach that. In the psalm the gods are judged and will die.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

There is one true God, Deuteronomy 6:4, and He judges every judge and every power, 82:8.

- **PS 82:1 [NOTE]** THE DIVINE ASSEMBLY. God stands up in a council of gods, elohim. Who are they? Human judges or spiritual beings? See the Big Question Ye Are Gods.
- **PS 82:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 10:34 p.1717
- **PS 82:6 [NOTE]** YOU ARE GODS. Jesus quoted this when He was accused of claiming to be God, John 10:34 to 36.

83

PSALM 83 IN 30 SECONDS

A whole list of nations ganging up on Israel. Make them like tumbleweeds.

O GOD, BE NOT SILENT

A song. A Psalm of Asaph.

1 O God, be not silent; be not speechless;
be not still, O God.
2 See how Your enemies rage,

how Your foes have reared their heads.
3 With cunning they scheme against Your people
and conspire against those You cherish,
4 saying, "Come, let us erase them as a nation;
may the name of Israel be remembered no more."

5 For with one mind they plot together;
they form an alliance against You—
6 the tents of Edom and the Ishmaelites,
of Moab and the Hagrites,
7 of Gebal, Ammon, and Amalek,
of Philistia with the people of Tyre.
8 Even Assyria has joined them,
lending strength to the sons of Lot.
Selah

9 Do to them as You did to Midian,
as to Sisera and Jabin at the River Kishon,
10 who perished at Endor
and became like dung on the ground.
11 Make their nobles like Oreb and Zeeb,
and all their princes like Zebah and Zalmunna,
12 who said, "Let us possess for ourselves the pastures of God."

13 Make them like tumbleweed, O my God,
like chaff before the wind.
14 As fire consumes a forest,
as a flame sets the mountains ablaze,
15 so pursue them with Your tempest,
and terrify them with Your storm.
16 Cover their faces with shame,
that they may seek Your name, O Yahweh.

17 May they be ever ashamed and terrified;
may they perish in disgrace.
18 May they know that You alone,
whose name is Yahweh,
are Most High over all the earth.

84

PSALM 84 IN 30 SECONDS
How lovely is Your house! One day there beats a thousand somewhere else.

BETTER IS ONE DAY IN YOUR COURTS // JOHN 1:14–18
For the choirmaster. According to Gittith. A Psalm of the sons of Korah.

1 How lovely is Your dwelling place,
O Yahweh of Hosts!
2 My soul longs, even faints,
for the courts of Yahweh;
my heart and my flesh cry out
for the living God.

3 Even the sparrow has found a home,
and the swallow a nest for herself,
where she places her young near Your altars,
O Yahweh of Hosts, my King and my God.
4 How blessed are those who dwell in Your house!
They are ever praising You.
Selah

5 Blessed are those whose strength is in You,
whose hearts are set on pilgrimage.
6 As they pass through the Valley of Baca,
they make it a place of springs;
even the autumn rain covers it with pools.
7 They go from strength to strength,
until each appears before God in Zion.

8 O Yahweh God of Hosts, hear my prayer;
give ear, O God of Jacob.
Selah

9 Take notice of our shield, O God,
and look with favor on the face of Your anointed.
10 For better is one day in Your courts
than a thousand elsewhere.
I would rather be a doorkeeper in the house of my God
than dwell in the tents of the wicked.
11 For Yahweh God is a sun and a shield;
Yahweh gives grace and glory;
He withholds no good thing
from those who walk with integrity.

12 O Yahweh of Hosts,
how blessed is the man who trusts in You!

PS 83:6 [NOTE] THE LIST. Edom, Ishmaelites, Moab, Hagrites, Gebal, Ammon, Amalek, Philistia, Tyre and Assyria. Israel was surrounded.

PS 84:6 [NOTE] THE VALLEY OF BACA. Maybe a valley of weeping, or of balsam trees. Pilgrims going up to Jerusalem passed through dry places on the way.

END TIMES PROPHECIES THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

85

PSALM 85 IN 30 SECONDS
Revive us again. Love and truth meet; righteousness and peace kiss.

YOU SHOWED FAVOR TO YOUR LAND
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of the sons of Korah.

1 You showed favor to Your land, O Yahweh;
You restored Jacob from captivity.
2 You forgave the iniquity of Your people;
You covered all their sin.
Selah
3 You withheld all Your fury;
You turned from Your burning anger.

4 Restore us, O God of our salvation,
and put away Your displeasure toward us.
5 Will You be angry with us forever?
Will You draw out Your anger to all generations?
6 Will You not revive us again,
that Your people may rejoice in You?
7 Show us Your loving devotion, O Yahweh,
and grant us Your salvation.

8 I will listen to what God Yahweh will say;
for He will surely speak peace to His people and His saints;
He will not let them return to folly.
9 Surely His salvation is near to those who fear Him,
that His glory may dwell in our land.

10 Loving devotion and faithfulness have joined together;
righteousness and peace have kissed.
11 Faithfulness sprouts from the earth,
and righteousness looks down from heaven.
12 Yahweh will indeed provide what is good,
and our land will yield its increase.
13 Righteousness will go before Him
to prepare the way for His steps.

86

PSALM 86 IN 30 SECONDS
Teach me Your way. Give me an undivided heart.

TRIED BUT TRUSTING
A prayer of David.

1 Incline Your ear, O Yahweh, and answer me,
for I am poor and needy.
2 Preserve my soul, for I am godly.
You are my God; save Your servant who trusts in You.
3 Be merciful to me, O Lord,
for I call to You all day long.
4 Bring joy to Your servant,
for to You, O Lord, I lift up my soul.

5 For You, O Lord, are kind and forgiving,
rich in loving devotion to all who call on You.
6 Hear my prayer, O Yahweh,
and attend to my plea for mercy.
7 In the day of my distress I call on You,
because You answer me.

8 O Lord, there is none like You among the gods,
nor any works like Yours.
9 All the nations You have made
will come and bow before You, O Lord,
and they will glorify Your name.
10 For You are great and perform wonders;
You alone are God.

11 Teach me Your way, O Yahweh,
that I may walk in Your truth.
Give me an undivided heart,
that I may fear Your name.
12 I will praise You, O Lord my God, with all my heart;
I will glorify Your name forever.
13 For great is Your loving devotion to me;
You have delivered me from the depths of Sheol.

14 The arrogant rise against me, O God;
a band of ruthless men seeks my life;
they have no regard for You.

PS 86:9 [PROPHECY] All nations would come and worship the Lord → STILL TO COME
PS 86:9 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:3-4 p.2104
PS 86:11 [HEART] Give me an undivided heart to fear Your name.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

15 But You, O Lord, are a compassionate
and gracious God,
slow to anger, abounding in loving devotion and faithfulness.
16 Turn to me and have mercy;
grant Your strength to Your servant;
save the son of Your maidservant.
17 Show me a sign of Your goodness,
that my enemies may see and be ashamed;
for You, O Yahweh, have helped me and comforted me.

87

PSALM 87 IN 30 SECONDS

God's city Zion will count people from every nation as born there.

YAHWEH LOVES THE GATES OF ZION

A Psalm of the sons of Korah. A song.

1 He has founded His city
on the holy mountains.
2 Yahweh loves the gates of Zion
more than all the dwellings of Jacob.
3 Glorious things are ascribed to you,
O city of God.

Selah

4 "I will mention Rahab and Babylon
among those who know Me—
along with Philistia, Tyre, and Cush—
when I say, 'This one was born in Zion.'"

5 And it will be said of Zion:
"This one and that one were born in her,
and the Most High Himself will establish her."
6 Yahweh will record in the register of the peoples:
"This one was born in Zion."

Selah

7 Singers and pipers will proclaim,
"All my springs of joy are in You."

88

PSALM 88 IN 30 SECONDS

The darkest psalm. It ends in darkness. Even then, the man is still praying.

I CRY OUT BEFORE YOU

A song. A Psalm of the sons of Korah. For the choirmaster. According to Mahalath Leannoth. A Maskil of Heman the Ezrahite.

1 O Yahweh, the God of my salvation,
day and night I cry out before You.
2 May my prayer come before You;
incline Your ear to my cry.
3 For my soul is full of troubles,
and my life draws near to Sheol.
4 I am counted among those descending to the Pit.
I am like a man without strength.
5 I am forsaken among the dead,
like the slain who lie in the grave,
whom You remember no more,
who are cut off from Your care.
6 You have laid me in the lowest Pit,
in the darkest of the depths.
7 Your wrath weighs heavily upon me;
all Your waves have submerged me.

Selah

8 You have removed my friends from me;
You have made me repulsive to them;
I am confined and cannot escape.
9 My eyes grow dim with grief.
I call to You daily, O Yahweh;
I spread out my hands to You.
10 Do You work wonders for the dead?
Do departed spirits rise up to praise You?

Selah

11 Can Your loving devotion be proclaimed in the grave,
Your faithfulness in Abaddon?
12 Will Your wonders be known in the darkness,
or Your righteousness in the land of oblivion?
13 But to You, O Yahweh, I cry for help;
in the morning my prayer comes before You.
14 Why, O Yahweh, do You reject me?
Why do You hide Your face from me?

PS 87:4 [NOTE] RAHAB here is a poetic name for Egypt, not Rahab of Jericho. It means pride or storm, and it is also a sea monster's name, Isaiah 51:9.

PS 88:1 [NOTE] HEMAN THE EZRAHITE. A wise man named Heman is in 1 Kings 4:31, and Heman the singer in 1 Chronicles 6:33. They may be the same man.

PS 88:1 [NOTE] MAHALATH LEANNOTH. Maybe a sad tune, about sickness or affliction. No one knows.

PS 88:8 [PROPHECY] They stood at a distance and watched Him die → LK 23:49 · MEDIUM p.1690

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

15 From my youth I was afflicted and near death.
I have borne Your terrors; I am in despair.
16 Your wrath has swept over me;
Your terrors have destroyed me.
17 All day long they engulf me like water;
they enclose me on every side.
18 You have removed my beloved and my friend;
darkness is my closest companion.

89

PSALM 89 IN 30 SECONDS
God's promise to David will last forever. So why does it look broken? Book Three ends.

I WILL SING OF HIS LOVE FOREVER
A Maskil of Ethan the Ezrahite.

1 I will sing of the loving devotion of Yahweh forever;
with my mouth I will proclaim Your faithfulness to all generations.
2 For I have said, "Loving devotion is built up forever;
in the heavens You establish Your faithfulness."

3 You said, "I have made a covenant with My chosen one,
I have sworn to David My servant:
4 'I will establish your offspring forever
and build up your throne for all generations.'"

Selah

5 The heavens praise Your wonders, O Yahweh—
Your faithfulness as well—
in the assembly of the holy ones.
6 For who in the skies can compare with Yahweh?
Who among the heavenly beings is like Yahweh?
7 In the council of the holy ones, God is greatly feared,
and awesome above all who surround Him.
8 O Yahweh God of Hosts, who is like You?
O mighty Yahweh, Your faithfulness surrounds You.
9 You rule the raging sea;
when its waves mount up, You still them.
10 You crushed Rahab like a carcass;
You scattered Your enemies with Your mighty arm.
11 The heavens are Yours, and also the earth.
The earth and its fullness You founded.
12 North and south You created;
Tabor and Hermon shout for joy at Your name.
13 Mighty is Your arm; strong is Your hand.
Your right hand is exalted.
14 Righteousness and justice are the foundation of Your throne;
loving devotion and faithfulness go before You.
15 Blessed are those who know the joyful sound,
who walk, O Yahweh, in the light of Your presence.
16 They rejoice in Your name all day long,
and in Your righteousness they exult.
17 For You are the glory of their strength,
and by Your favor our horn is exalted.
18 Surely our shield belongs to Yahweh,
and our king to the Holy One of Israel.

19 You once spoke in a vision;
to Your godly ones You said,
"I have bestowed help on a warrior;
I have exalted one chosen from the people.
20 *I have found My servant David*
with My sacred oil I have anointed him.
21 My hand will sustain him;
surely My arm will strengthen him.
22 No enemy will exact tribute;
no wicked man will oppress him.
23 I will crush his foes before him

■ **PS 88:18 [NOTE]** NO HAPPY ENDING. Many call this the only psalm that ends in darkness. It is in the Bible too. God can handle your honest prayers.
■ **PS 89:1 [NOTE]** ETHAN THE EZRAHITE. A wise man named Ethan is in 1 Kings 4:31; he may be the same as Ethan the singer, 1 Chronicles 15:19. This psalm is built on God's promise to David, 2 Samuel 7. See God's Promise to David in 2 Samuel, p.505.
■ **PS 89:3 [PROPHECY]** God swore to David that his offspring would sit on his throne forever → ACTS 2:30; LK 1:32-33 p.1743

■ **PS 89:20 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:22 p.1764

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and strike down those who hate him.
24 My faithfulness and loving devotion will be with him,
and through My name his horn will be exalted.
25 I will set his hand over the sea,
and his right hand upon the rivers.
26 He will call to Me, 'You are my Father,
my God, the Rock of my salvation.'
27 I will indeed appoint him as My firstborn,
the highest of the kings of the earth.
28 I will forever preserve My loving devotion for him,
and My covenant with him will stand fast.
29 I will establish his line forever,
his throne as long as the heavens endure.
30 If his sons forsake My law
and do not walk in My judgments,
31 if they violate My statutes
and fail to keep My commandments,
32 I will attend to their transgression with the rod,
and to their iniquity with stripes.
33 But I will not withdraw My loving devotion from him,
nor ever betray My faithfulness.
34 I will not violate My covenant
or alter the utterance of My lips.
35 Once and for all I have sworn by My holiness—
I will not lie to David—
36 his offspring shall endure forever,
and his throne before Me like the sun,
37 like the moon, established forever,
a faithful witness in the sky."

Selah

38 Now, however, You have spurned and rejected him;
You are enraged by Your anointed one.
39 You have renounced the covenant with Your servant
and sullied his crown in the dust.
40 You have broken down all his walls;
You have reduced his strongholds to rubble.
41 All who pass by plunder him;
he has become a reproach to his neighbors.
42 You have exalted the right hand of his foes;
You have made all his enemies rejoice.
43 You have bent the edge of his sword
and have not sustained him in battle.
44 You have ended his splendor
and cast his throne to the ground.
45 You have cut short the days of his youth;
You have covered him with shame.

Selah

46 How long, O Yahweh?
Will You hide Yourself forever?
Will Your wrath keep burning like fire?
47 Remember the briefness of my lifespan!
For what futility You have created all men!
48 What man can live and never see death?
Can he deliver his soul from the power of Sheol?

Selah

49 Where, O Lord, is Your loving devotion of old,
which You faithfully swore to David?
50 Remember, O Lord, the reproach of Your servants,
which I bear in my heart from so many people—
51 how Your enemies have taunted, O Yahweh,
and have mocked every step of Your anointed one!
52 Blessed be Yahweh forever!

Amen and amen.

- **PS 89:26 [PROPHECY]** The chosen King would call God my Father → HEB 1:5; JN 20:17 · MEDIUM p.1978
- **PS 89:27 [PROPHECY]** He would be the Firstborn → COL 1:15; 1:18; REV 1:5 · MEDIUM p.1904
- **PS 89:35 [PROPHECY]** David's Seed, throne, and kingdom endure forever → STILL TO COME

BOOK IV PSALMS 90 TO 106

90

PSALM 90 IN 30 SECONDS
Moses' prayer. A thousand years are like a day to God. Teach us to number our days.

FROM EVERLASTING TO EVERLASTING
A prayer of Moses the man of God.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

1 Lord, You have been our dwelling place
through all generations.
2 Before the mountains were born
or You brought forth the earth and the world,
from everlasting to everlasting
You are God.

3 You return man to dust,
saying, "Return, O sons of mortals."
4 For in Your sight a thousand years
are but a day that passes,
or a watch of the night.
5 You sweep them away in their sleep;
they are like the new grass of the morning—
6 in the morning it springs up new,
but by evening it fades and withers.

7 For we are consumed by Your anger
and terrified by Your wrath.
8 You have set our iniquities before You,
our secret sins in the light of Your presence.
9 For all our days decline in Your fury;
we finish our years with a sigh.
10 The length of our days is seventy years—
or eighty if we are strong—
yet their pride is but labor and sorrow,
for they quickly pass, and we fly away.

11 Who knows the power of Your anger?
Your wrath matches the fear You are due.
12 So teach us to number our days,
that we may present a heart of wisdom.

13 Return, O Yahweh! How long will it be?
Have compassion on Your servants.
14 Satisfy us in the morning with Your loving devotion,
that we may sing for joy and be glad all our days.
15 Make us glad for as many days as You have afflicted us,
for as many years as we have seen evil.

16 May Your work be shown to Your servants,
and Your splendor to their children.
17 May the favor of the Lord our God rest upon us;
establish for us the work of our hands—
yes, establish the work of our hands!

- **PS 90:1 [NOTE]** MOSES. The only psalm with his name. If Moses wrote it, it is the oldest psalm, from about 1400 BC.
- **PS 90:1 [NOTE]** BOOK FOUR starts with Moses. Many see the whole book of Psalms as five books, like the five books of Moses.
- **PS 90:4 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:8 p.2034
- **PS 90:4 [NOTE]** A THOUSAND YEARS. Peter uses this when people asked why Jesus has not come back yet, 2 Peter 3:8.
- **PS 90:10 [NOTE]** SEVENTY YEARS, OR EIGHTY. Moses lived to 120, Deuteronomy 34:7, but most people did not.
- **PS 90:12 [NOTABLE]** Life is short. Remembering that helps you spend it on what matters.

91

PSALM 91 IN 30 SECONDS

He who dwells in the shelter of the Most High.
Even the devil quoted this one.

YOU ARE MY REFUGE AND MY FORTRESS

1 He who dwells in the shelter of the Most High
will abide in the shadow of the Almighty.
2 I will say to Yahweh, "You are my refuge and my fortress,
my God, in whom I trust."

3 Surely He will deliver you
from the snare of the fowler,
and from the deadly plague.
4 He will cover you with His feathers;
under His wings you will find refuge;
His faithfulness is a shield and rampart.
5 You will not fear the terror of the night,
nor the arrow that flies by day,
6 nor the pestilence that stalks in the darkness,
nor the calamity that destroys at noon.
7 Though a thousand may fall at your side,
and ten thousand at your right hand,
no harm will come near you.
8 You will only see it with your eyes
and witness the punishment of the wicked.

9 Because you have made Yahweh your dwelling—
my refuge, the Most High—
10 no evil will befall you,
no plague will approach your tent.
11 *For He will command His angels concerning you*
to guard you in all your ways.
12 *They will lift you up in their hands,*

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

so that you will not strike your foot against
a stone.
13 You will tread on the lion and cobra;
you will trample the young lion and serpent.
14 "Because he loves Me, I will deliver him;
because he knows My name, I will protect him.
15 When he calls out to Me,
I will answer him;
I will be with him in trouble.
I will deliver him and honor him.
16 With long life I will satisfy him
and show him My salvation."

92

PSALM 92 IN 30 SECONDS
A song for the Sabbath. The righteous flourish like palm trees, still bearing fruit when old.

HOW GREAT ARE YOUR WORKS!
A Psalm. A song for the Sabbath day.

1 It is good to praise Yahweh,
and to sing praises to Your name, O Most High,
2 to proclaim Your loving devotion in the morning
and Your faithfulness at night
3 with the ten-stringed harp
and the melody of the lyre.
4 For You, O Yahweh, have made me glad by Your deeds;
I sing for joy at the works of Your hands.
5 How great are Your works, O Yahweh,
how deep are Your thoughts!
6 A senseless man does not know,
and a fool does not understand,
7 that though the wicked sprout like grass,
and all evildoers flourish,
they will be forever destroyed.
8 But You, O Yahweh, are exalted forever!
9 For surely Your enemies, O Yahweh,
surely Your enemies will perish;
all evildoers will be scattered.
10 But You have exalted my horn like that of a wild ox;
with fine oil I have been anointed.
11 My eyes see the downfall of my enemies;
my ears hear the wailing of my wicked foes.
12 The righteous will flourish like a palm tree,
and grow like a cedar in Lebanon.
13 Planted in the house of Yahweh,
they will flourish in the courts of our God.
14 In old age they will still bear fruit;
healthy and green they will remain,
15 to proclaim, "Yahweh is upright; He is my Rock,
and in Him there is no unrighteousness."

- **PS 91:11 [FORESHADOW]** God's angels guard the one who trusts Him; Satan misused this verse against Jesus → LK 4:10-11 · MEDIUM p.1654
- **PS 91:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 4:6 p.1555
- **PS 91:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 4:10-11 p.1654
- **PS 91:11 [NOTE]** THE DEVIL QUOTED THIS. Satan used 91:11 to 12 to tempt Jesus to jump off the temple. Jesus answered with Scripture too, Matthew 4:6 to 7.
- **PS 91:14 [NOTE]** THE PROMISE. In the last three verses, God Himself speaks.

93

PSALM 93 IN 30 SECONDS
Yahweh reigns! The floods roar, but He is mightier than the sea.

YAHWEH REIGNS! // PSALM 99:1–9

1 Yahweh reigns! He is robed in majesty;
Yahweh has clothed and armed Himself with strength.
The world indeed is firmly established;
it cannot be moved.
2 Your throne was established long ago;
You are from all eternity.
3 The floodwaters have risen, O Yahweh;
the rivers have raised their voice;
the seas lift up their pounding waves.
4 Above the roar of many waters—
the mighty breakers of the sea—
Yahweh on high is majestic.
5 Your testimonies are fully confirmed;
holiness adorns Your house, O Yahweh,
for all the days to come.

94

PSALM 94 IN 30 SECONDS
God of vengeance, rise up! When my foot slipped, Your love held me up.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

YAHWEH WILL NOT FORGET HIS PEOPLE

1 O Yahweh, God of vengeance,
O God of vengeance, shine forth.
2 Rise up, O Judge of the earth;
render a reward to the proud.
3 How long will the wicked, O Yahweh,
how long will the wicked exult?

4 They pour out arrogant words;
all workers of iniquity boast.
5 They crush Your people, O Yahweh;
they oppress Your heritage.
6 They kill the widow and the foreigner;
they murder the fatherless.
7 They say, "Yahweh does not see;
the God of Jacob pays no heed."

8 Take notice, O senseless among the people!
O fools, when will you be wise?
9 He who affixed the ear, can He not hear?
He who formed the eye, can He not see?
10 He who admonishes the nations, does He not discipline?
He who teaches man, does He lack knowledge?
11 *Yahweh knows the thoughts of man,*
that they are futile.

12 Blessed is the man You discipline, O Yahweh,
and teach from Your law,
13 to grant him relief from days of trouble,
until a pit is dug for the wicked.
14 For Yahweh will not forsake His people;
He will never abandon His heritage.
15 Surely judgment will again be righteous,
and all the upright in heart will follow it.

16 Who will rise up for me against the wicked?
Who will stand for me against the workers of iniquity?
17 Unless Yahweh had been my helper,
I would soon have dwelt in the abode of silence.
18 If I say, "My foot is slipping,"
Your loving devotion, O Yahweh, supports me.
19 When anxiety overwhelms me,
Your consolation delights my soul.

20 Can a corrupt throne be Your ally—
one devising mischief by decree?
21 They band together against the righteous
and condemn the innocent to death.
22 But Yahweh has been my stronghold,
and my God is my rock of refuge.
23 He will bring upon them their own iniquity
and destroy them for their wickedness.
Yahweh our God will destroy them.

95

PSALM 95 IN 30 SECONDS
Come, let us sing! Then a warning from God: do not harden your hearts.

DO NOT HARDEN YOUR HEARTS // HEBREWS 3:7–11

1 Come, let us sing for joy to Yahweh;
let us shout to the Rock of our salvation!
2 Let us enter His presence with thanksgiving;
let us make a joyful noise to Him in song.

3 For Yahweh is a great God,
a great King above all gods.
4 In His hand are the depths of the earth,
and the mountain peaks belong to Him.
5 The sea is His, for He made it,
and His hands formed the dry land.

6 O come, let us worship and bow down;
let us kneel before Yahweh our Maker.
7 *For He is our God,*
and we are the people of His pasture,
the sheep under His care.

Today, if you hear His voice,
8 *do not harden your hearts*
as you did at Meribah,
in the day at Massah in the wilderness,

■ **PS 94:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 3:20 p.1826

■ **PS 95:7 [FORESHADOW]** Today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts → HEB 3:7-8; HEB 4:7 · MEDIUM p.1981
■ **PS 95:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 3:7-11 p.1981
■ **PS 95:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 3:15 p.1981
■ **PS 95:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 4:7 p.1982
■ **PS 95:7 [NOTE]** TODAY. Hebrews 3:7 to 4:7 quotes 95:7 to 11 again and again, and repeats Today, if you hear His voice three times.
■ **PS 95:8 [HEART]** Do not harden your hearts as Israel did in the desert.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

9 *where your fathers tested and tried Me,*
though they had seen My work.
10 *For forty years I was angry with that generation,*
and I said, "They are a people whose hearts go astray,
and they have not known My ways."
11 *So I swore on oath in My anger,*
"They shall never enter My rest."

96

PSALM 96 IN 30 SECONDS
Sing a new song, all the earth. The idols are nothing; Yahweh made the heavens.

SING TO YAHWEH, ALL THE EARTH // 1 CHRONICLES 16:23–36

1 Sing to Yahweh a new song;
sing to Yahweh, all the earth.
2 Sing to Yahweh, bless His name;
proclaim His salvation day after day.
3 Declare His glory among the nations,
His wonders among all peoples.

4 For great is Yahweh, and greatly to be praised;
He is to be feared above all gods.
5 For all the gods of the nations are idols,
but it is Yahweh who made the heavens.
6 Splendor and majesty are before Him;
strength and beauty fill His sanctuary.

7 Ascribe to Yahweh, O families of the nations,
ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength.
8 Ascribe to Yahweh the glory due His name;
bring an offering and enter His courts.
9 Worship Yahweh in the splendor of His holiness;
tremble before Him, all the earth.

10 Declare among the nations: "Yahweh reigns!"
The world is firmly established; it cannot be moved;
He will judge the peoples with equity.
11 Let the heavens be glad
and the earth rejoice;
let the sea resound,
and all that fills it.
12 Let the fields exult,
and all that is in them.
Then all the trees of the forest
will sing for joy 13 before Yahweh,
for He is coming—
He is coming to judge the earth.
He will judge the world in righteousness
and the peoples in His faithfulness.

97

PSALM 97 IN 30 SECONDS
Yahweh reigns! Clouds and darkness around Him. Idol worshipers are embarrassed.

LET THE EARTH REJOICE

1 Yahweh reigns, let the earth rejoice;
let the distant shores be glad.

2 Clouds and darkness surround Him;
righteousness and justice are His throne's foundation.
3 Fire goes before Him
and consumes His foes on every side.
4 His lightning illuminates the world;
the earth sees and trembles.
5 The mountains melt like wax
at the presence of Yahweh,
before the Lord of all the earth.
6 The heavens proclaim His righteousness;
all the peoples see His glory.

7 *All worshipers of images are put to shame—*
those who boast in idols.
Worship Him, all you gods!
8 Zion hears and rejoices,
and the towns of Judah exult
because of Your judgments, O Yahweh.
9 For You, O Yahweh, are Most High over all the earth;

- **PS 95:8 [NOTE]** MERIBAH AND MASSAH. The places in the desert where Israel complained and tested God, Exodus 17:7.
- **PS 95:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 4:3 p.1981
- **PS 95:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 4:5 p.1982
- **PS 96:5 [DEMONIC]** The gods of the nations are idols
- **PS 96:10 [TEXT]** FROM THE TREE. Justin Martyr, about 150 AD, quoted this verse as The Lord reigns from the tree, and said the Jews had cut out those words. No Hebrew copy has it, and the main Greek copies do not either. A few later Greek and Latin copies and an old Coptic version do. The Latin hymn Vexilla Regis sings it.
- **PS 96:13 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh is coming to judge the world in righteousness → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **PS 97:7 [PROPHECY]** All the heavenly powers are told to worship Him → HEB 1:6 · MEDIUM p.1978
- **PS 97:7 [DEMONIC]** Idol worshipers are put to shame
- **PS 97:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:6 p.1978

You are exalted far above all gods.

10 Hate evil, O you who love Yahweh!
He preserves the souls of His saints;
He delivers them from the hand of the wicked.
11 Light shines on the righteous,
gladness on the upright in heart.
12 Rejoice in Yahweh, you righteous ones,
and praise His holy name.

98

PSALM 98 IN 30 SECONDS
Sing a new song! Let the rivers clap their hands and the mountains sing together.

SING TO YAHWEH A NEW SONG // PSALM 149:1–9; ISAIAH 42:10–17
A Psalm.

1 Sing to Yahweh a new song,
for He has done wonders;
His right hand and holy arm
have gained Him the victory.
2 Yahweh has proclaimed His salvation
and revealed His righteousness to the nations.
3 He has remembered His love and faithfulness
to the house of Israel;
all the ends of the earth
have seen the salvation of our God.

4 Make a joyful noise to Yahweh, all the earth;
break forth—let your cry ring out, and sing praises!
5 Sing praises to Yahweh with the lyre,
in melodious song with the harp.
6 With trumpets and the blast of the ram's horn
shout for joy before Yahweh, the King.

7 Let the sea resound, and all that fills it,
the world, and all who dwell in it.
8 Let the rivers clap their hands,
let the mountains sing together for joy
9 before Yahweh,
for He comes to judge the earth.
He will judge the world with righteousness
and the peoples with equity.

99

PSALM 99 IN 30 SECONDS
Holy, holy, holy. Moses, Aaron and Samuel called on Him and He answered.

YAHWEH REIGNS! // PSALM 93:1–5

1 Yahweh reigns;
let the nations tremble!
He is enthroned above the cherubim;
let the earth quake!
2 Great is Yahweh in Zion;
He is exalted above all the peoples.
3 Let them praise Your great and awesome name—
He is holy!

4 The mighty King loves justice.
You have established equity;
You have exercised justice
and righteousness in Jacob.
5 Exalt Yahweh our God,
and worship at His footstool;
He is holy!

6 Moses and Aaron were among His priests;
Samuel was among those who called on His name.
They called to Yahweh and He answered.
7 He spoke to them from the pillar of cloud;
they kept His decrees and the statutes He gave them.
8 O Yahweh our God, You answered them.
You were a forgiving God to them,
yet an avenger of their misdeeds.

9 Exalt Yahweh our God
and worship at His holy mountain,
for Yahweh our God is holy.

100

PSALM 100 IN 30 SECONDS
Make a joyful noise! Enter His gates with thanksgiving. Short and loud.

MAKE A JOYFUL NOISE // PSALM 66:1–20
A Psalm of thanksgiving.

1 Make a joyful noise to Yahweh,
all the earth.

2 Serve Yahweh with gladness;

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

come into His presence with joyful songs.
3 Know that Yahweh is God.
It is He who made us, and we are His;
we are His people, and the sheep of His pasture.
4 Enter His gates with thanksgiving
and His courts with praise;
give thanks to Him and bless His name.
5 For Yahweh is good,
and His loving devotion endures forever;
His faithfulness continues to all generations.

101

PSALM 101 IN 30 SECONDS
The king's promise: no crooked people in my house.

I WILL SET NO WORTHLESS THING BEFORE MY EYES
A Psalm of David.
1 I will sing of Your loving devotion and justice;
to You, O Yahweh, I will sing praises.
2 I will ponder the way that is blameless—
when will You come to me?
I will walk in my house
with integrity of heart.
3 I will set no worthless thing
before my eyes.
I hate the work of those who fall away;
it shall not cling to me.
4 A perverse heart shall depart from me;
I will know nothing of evil.
5 Whoever slanders his neighbor in secret,
I will put to silence;
the one with haughty eyes and a proud heart,
I will not endure.
6 My eyes favor the faithful of the land,
that they may dwell with me;
he who walks in the way of integrity
shall minister to me.
7 No one who practices deceit
shall dwell in my house;
no one who tells lies
shall stand in my presence.
8 Every morning I will remove all the wicked of the land,
that I may cut off every evildoer from the city of Yahweh.

102

PSALM 102 IN 30 SECONDS
A prayer of someone worn out. My days fade like grass, but You remain forever.

THE PRAYER OF THE AFFLICTED
A prayer of one who is afflicted, when he grows faint and pours out his lament before Yahweh.
1 Hear my prayer, O Yahweh;
let my cry for help come before You.
2 Do not hide Your face from me
in my day of distress.
Incline Your ear to me;
answer me quickly when I call.
3 For my days vanish like smoke,
and my bones burn like glowing embers.
4 My heart is afflicted, and withered like grass;
I even forget to eat my bread.
5 Through my loud groaning
my skin hangs on my bones.
6 I am like a desert owl,
like an owl among the ruins.
7 I lie awake;
I am like a lone bird on a housetop.
8 All day long my enemies taunt me;
they ridicule me and curse me.
9 For I have eaten ashes like bread
and mixed my drink with tears
10 because of Your indignation and wrath,
for You have picked me up and cast me aside.
11 My days are like lengthening shadows,
and I wither away like grass.
12 But You, O Yahweh, sit enthroned forever;
Your renown endures to all generations.
13 You will rise up and have compassion on Zion,
for it is time to show her favor—
the appointed time has come.
14 For Your servants delight in her stones

PS 100:1 [NOTE] A PSALM FOR THANKSGIVING. It may have been sung while bringing a thank offering to the temple.

PS 102:1 [PROPHECY] The Messiah's cry of suffering and loneliness → MT 26:38; HEB 5:7 · MEDIUM p.1594

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and take pity on her dust.

15 So the nations will fear the name of Yahweh,
and all the kings of the earth will fear Your glory.
16 For Yahweh will rebuild Zion;
He has appeared in His glory.
17 He will turn toward the prayer of the destitute;
He will not despise their prayer.

18 Let this be written for the generation to come,
so that a people not yet created may praise Yahweh.
19 For He looked down from the heights of His sanctuary;
Yahweh gazed out from heaven to earth
20 to hear a prisoner's groaning,
to release those condemned to death,
21 that they may proclaim the name of Yahweh in Zion
and praise Him in Jerusalem,
22 when peoples and kingdoms assemble to serve Yahweh.

23 He has broken my strength on the way;
He has cut short my days.
24 I say: "O my God, do not take me in the midst of my days!
Your years go on through all generations.
25 *In the beginning You laid the foundations of the earth,*
and the heavens are the work of Your hands.
26 *They will perish, but You remain;*
they will all wear out like a garment.
Like clothing You will change them,
and they will be passed on.
27 *But You remain the same,*
and Your years will never end.
28 The children of Your servants will dwell securely,
and their descendants will be established before You."

PS 102:16 **[PROPHECY]** 'When Yahweh shall build up Zion, He shall appear in His glory' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
PS 102:25 **[PROPHECY]** Messiah identified as the preexistent Son and Creator → HEB 1:10-12 p.1978
PS 102:25 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:10-12 p.1978
PS 102:25 **[NOTE]** YOU REMAIN. Hebrews 1:10 to 12 says God says this to the Son.

103

PSALM 103 IN 30 SECONDS
Bless Yahweh, O my soul! He removed our sins as far as the east is from the west.

BLESS YAHWEH, O MY SOUL
Of David.

1 Bless Yahweh, O my soul;
all that is within me, bless His holy name.
2 Bless Yahweh, O my soul,
and do not forget all His kind deeds—
3 He who forgives all your iniquities
and heals all your diseases,
4 who redeems your life from the Pit
and crowns you with loving devotion and compassion,
5 who satisfies you with good things,
so that your youth is renewed like the eagle's.

6 Yahweh executes righteousness
and justice for all the oppressed.
7 He made known His ways to Moses,
His deeds to the people of Israel.
8 Yahweh is compassionate and gracious,
slow to anger, abounding in loving devotion.
9 He will not always accuse us,
nor harbor His anger forever.
10 He has not dealt with us according to our sins
or repaid us according to our iniquities.

11 For as high as the heavens are above the earth,
so great is His loving devotion for those who fear Him.
12 As far as the east is from the west,
so far has He removed our transgressions from us.
13 As a father has compassion on his children,
so Yahweh has compassion on those who fear Him.
14 For He knows our frame;
He is mindful that we are dust.

15 As for man, his days are like grass—

PS 103:8 **[ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:11 p.2007
PS 103:12 **[NOTABLE]** East and west never meet. When God forgives, He does not keep bringing it up.

MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

he blooms like a flower of the field;
16 when the wind passes over, it vanishes,
and its place remembers it no more.
17 But from everlasting to everlasting
the loving devotion of Yahweh
extends to those who fear Him,
and His righteousness to their children's children—
18 to those who keep His covenant
and remember to obey His precepts.
19 Yahweh has established His throne in heaven,
and His kingdom rules over all.

20 Bless Yahweh, all His angels mighty in strength
who carry out His word,
who hearken to the voice of His command.
21 Bless Yahweh, all His hosts,
you servants who do His will.
22 Bless Yahweh, all His works
in all places of His dominion.

Bless Yahweh, O my soul!

104

PSALM 104 IN 30 SECONDS
A nature show in a song: clouds as His chariot, lions at night, ships and Leviathan at sea.

HOW MANY ARE YOUR WORKS, O YAHWEH!

1 Bless Yahweh, O my soul!

O Yahweh my God, You are very great;
You are clothed with splendor and majesty.
2 He wraps Himself in light as with a garment;
He stretches out the heavens like a tent,
3 laying the beams of His chambers
in the waters above,
making the clouds His chariot,
walking on the wings of the wind.
4 *He makes the winds His messengers,*
flames of fire His servants.

5 He set the earth on its foundations,
never to be moved.
6 You covered it with the deep like a garment;
the waters stood above the mountains.
7 At Your rebuke the waters fled;
at the sound of Your thunder they hurried away—
8 the mountains rose and the valleys sank
to the place You assigned for them—
9 You set a boundary they cannot cross,
that they may never again cover the earth.

10 He sends forth springs in the valleys;
they flow between the mountains.
11 They give drink to every beast of the field;
the wild donkeys quench their thirst.
12 The birds of the air nest beside the springs;
they sing among the branches.
13 He waters the mountains from His chambers;
the earth is satisfied by the fruit of His works.

14 He makes the grass grow for the livestock
and provides crops for man to cultivate,
bringing forth food from the earth:
15 wine that gladdens the heart of man,
oil that makes his face to shine,
and bread that sustains his heart.
16 The trees of Yahweh have their fill,
the cedars of Lebanon that He planted,
17 where the birds build their nests;
the stork makes her home in the cypresses.
18 The high mountains are for the wild goats,
the cliffs a refuge for the rock badgers.

19 He made the moon to mark the seasons;
the sun knows when to set.
20 You bring darkness, and it becomes night,
when all the beasts of the forest prowl.
21 The young lions roar for their prey
and seek their food from God.
22 The sun rises, and they withdraw;
they lie down in their dens.
23 Man goes forth to his work

PS 103:20 [MIRACLE] Bless Yahweh, you mighty angels who do His word
PS 104:1 [NOTE] THE HYMN TO THE ATEN. An Egyptian hymn from Akhenaten's day has lines that sound a lot like this psalm. See the Field Notes page after this psalm, p.954.
PS 104:4 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:7 p.1978
PS 104:4 [NOTE] WINDS AND FLAMES. Hebrews 1:7 quotes this from the Greek: He makes His angels winds.

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

and to his labor until evening.

24 How many are Your works, O Yahweh!
In wisdom You have made them all;
the earth is full of Your creatures.
25 Here is the sea, vast and wide,
teeming with creatures beyond number,
living things both great and small.
26 There the ships pass,
and Leviathan, which You formed to
frolic there.

27 All creatures look to You
to give them their food in due season.
28 When You give it to them,
they gather it up;
when You open Your hand,
they are satisfied with good things.
29 When You hide Your face,
they are terrified;
when You take away their breath,
they die and return to dust.
30 When You send Your Spirit,
they are created,
and You renew
the face of the earth.

31 May the glory of Yahweh endure forever;
may Yahweh rejoice in His works.
32 He looks on the earth,
and it trembles;
He touches the mountains,
and they smolder.
33 I will sing to Yahweh all my life;
I will sing praise to my God while I have my being.
34 May my meditation be pleasing to Him,
for I rejoice in Yahweh.
35 May sinners vanish from the earth
and the wicked be no more.

Bless Yahweh, O my soul.

Hallelujah!

105

PSALM 105 IN 30 SECONDS
Remember what God did: Abraham, Joseph, the plagues, the exodus. Also in 1 Chronicles 16.

TELL OF HIS WONDERS // 1 CHRONICLES 16:7–22

1 Give thanks to Yahweh, call upon His name;
make known His deeds among the nations.
2 Sing to Him, sing praises to Him;
tell of all His wonders.
3 Glory in His holy name;
let the hearts of those who seek Yahweh rejoice.
4 Seek out Yahweh and His strength;
seek His face always.
5 Remember the wonders He has done,
His marvels, and the judgments He has pronounced,
6 O offspring of His servant Abraham,
O sons of Jacob, His chosen ones.

7 He is Yahweh our God;
His judgments carry throughout the earth.
8 He remembers His covenant forever,
the word He ordained for a thousand generations—
9 the covenant He made with Abraham,
and the oath He swore to Isaac.
10 He confirmed it to Jacob as a decree,
to Israel as an everlasting covenant:
11 "I will give you the land of Canaan
as the portion of your inheritance."

12 When they were few in number,
few indeed, and strangers in the land,
13 they wandered from nation to nation,
from one kingdom to another.
14 He let no man oppress them;
He rebuked kings on their behalf:
15 "Do not touch My anointed ones!
Do no harm to My prophets!"

16 He called down famine on the land

PS 104:24 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Egyptian hymn to the sun disk from Akhenaten's day, about 1340 BC, has lines like Psalm 104, see The Hymn to the Aten Field Notes page, p.954 FIELD NOTES p.954

PS 104:26 [NOTE] LEVIATHAN again, this time playing in the sea like a pet. See Lotan in the Ugarit Tablets in Job, p.877.

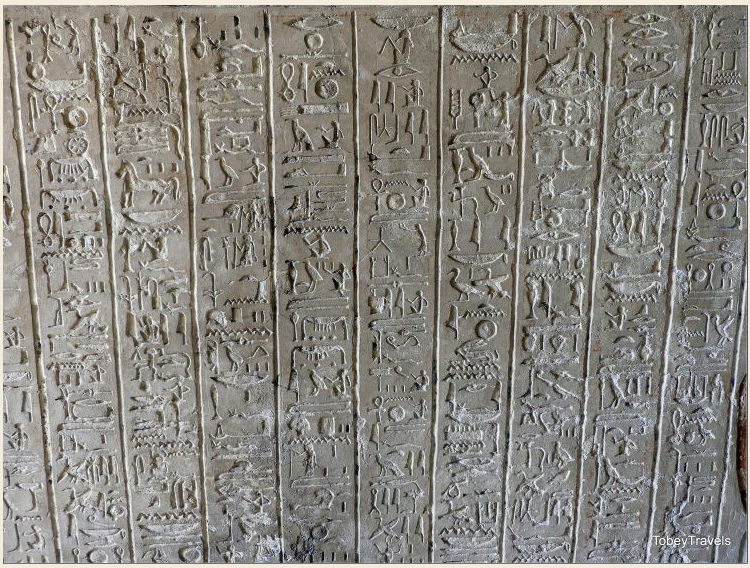
PS 105:1 [NOTE] ALSO IN 1 CHRONICLES 16. The first part of this psalm, 105:1 to 15, was sung when David brought the ark to Jerusalem, 1 Chronicles 16:8 to 22. Psalm 96 and parts of 106 are there too.

PS 105:15 [NOTE] MY ANOINTED ONES. Here it means Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, whom God protected from kings like Pharaoh and Abimelech, Genesis 12:17 and 20:3.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE HYMN TO THE ATEN

PSALM 104:20 TO 30



The Great Hymn to the Aten carved in the tomb of Ay at Amarna, Egypt, about 1340 BC. Photo Tobeytravels, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

An Egyptian hymn to the Aten, the sun disk, carved on the wall of a tomb. It praises the sun as the maker and keeper of all life.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1340 BC, in the days of Pharaoh Akhenaten. Many think Akhenaten wrote it himself.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the tomb of Ay at Amarna, Akhenaten's new capital city. Ay later became pharaoh. Explorers copied it in the 1880s, and Norman de Garis Davies published it in 1908.

AKHENATEN'S ONE GOD

Akhenaten turned Egypt to worship one god, the Aten, and shut down the old gods. After he died, Egypt went back to the old gods and tried to erase his name.

LINES THAT SOUND LIKE PSALM 104

When you set, the land is in darkness; every lion comes out of its den, Psalm 104:20 to 21. Ships sail up and down, and the fish leap, 104:25 to 26. How many are your deeds! 104:24. You give them their food; when you hide, they are troubled, 104:27 to 29.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

In the hymn, the sun is god. In Psalm 104, the sun is a thing God made, and it knows when to set, 104:19. The psalm praises the Maker, not the lamp.

DID THE PSALM BORROW?

Many scholars think the ideas traveled from Egypt to Canaan over the centuries. Others say both simply describe the same world. No one knows of a direct link, and the two are about 300 years or more apart.

ONE WALL

The long hymn is known only from this one tomb wall. Shorter hymns to the Aten are carved in other tombs at Amarna.

MOSES AND AKHENATEN?

In 1939 Sigmund Freud guessed that Moses learned about one God from Akhenaten. Most scholars reject the idea. The God of the Bible is not the sun; He made it.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not make Psalm 104 Egyptian. It shows that the psalm answered the world around it: the sun everyone worshiped is only a creature.

and cut off all their supplies of food.
17 He sent a man before them—
Joseph, sold as a slave.
18 They bruised his feet with shackles
and placed his neck in irons,
19 until his prediction came true
and the word of Yahweh proved him right.
20 The king sent and released him;
the ruler of peoples set him free.
21 He made him master of his household,
ruler over all his substance,
22 to instruct his princes as he pleased
and teach his elders wisdom.

23 Then Israel entered Egypt;
Jacob dwelt in the land of Ham.
24 And Yahweh made His people very fruitful,
more numerous than their foes,
25 whose hearts He turned to hate His people,
to conspire against His servants.
26 He sent Moses His servant,
and Aaron, whom He had chosen.
27 They performed His miraculous signs among them,
and wonders in the land of Ham.
28 He sent darkness, and it became dark—
yet they defied His words.

29 He turned their waters to blood
and caused their fish to die.
30 Their land teemed with frogs,
even in their royal chambers.
31 He spoke, and insects swarmed—
gnats throughout their country.
32 He gave them hail for rain,
with lightning throughout their land.
33 He struck their vines and fig trees
and shattered the trees of their country.
34 He spoke, and the locusts came—
young locusts without number.
35 They devoured every plant in their land
and consumed the produce of their soil.
36 Then He struck all the firstborn in their land,
the firstfruits of all their vigor.

37 He brought Israel out with silver and gold,
and none among His tribes stumbled.
38 Egypt was glad when they departed,
for the dread of Israel had fallen on them.
39 He spread a cloud as a covering
and a fire to light up the night.
40 They asked, and He brought quail
and satisfied them with the bread of heaven.
41 He opened a rock, and water gushed out;
it flowed like a river in the desert.
42 For He remembered His holy promise
to Abraham His servant.
43 He brought forth His people with rejoicing,
His chosen with shouts of joy.
44 He gave them the lands of the nations,
that they might inherit the fruit of others' labor,
45 that they might keep His statutes
and obey His laws.

Hallelujah!

106

PSALM 106 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel's history of messing up, even child sacrifice. God saved them again and again. Book Four ends.

GIVE THANKS TO YAHWEH, FOR HE IS GOOD

1 Hallelujah!

Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever.
2 Who can describe the mighty acts of Yahweh
or fully proclaim His praise?
3 Blessed are those who uphold justice,
who practice righteousness at all times.

4 Remember me, O Yahweh, in Your favor to Your people;
visit me with Your salvation,
5 that I may see the prosperity of Your chosen ones,
and rejoice in the gladness of Your nation,
and give glory with Your inheritance.

6 We have sinned like our fathers;
we have done wrong and acted wickedly.

DEMONIC

7 Our fathers in Egypt did not grasp Your
wonders
or remember Your abundant kindness;
but they rebelled by the sea,
there at the Red Sea.
8 Yet He saved them for the sake of His
name,
to make His power known.
9 He rebuked the Red Sea, and it dried up;
He led them through the depths as
through a desert.
10 He saved them from the hand that hated
them;
He redeemed them from the hand of the
enemy.
11 The waters covered their foes;
not one of them remained.
12 Then they believed His promises
and sang His praise.

13 Yet they soon forgot His works
and failed to wait for His counsel.
14 They craved intensely in the wilderness
and tested God in the desert.
15 So He granted their request,
but sent a wasting disease upon them.

16 In the camp they envied Moses,
as well as Aaron, the holy one of Yah-
weh.
17 The earth opened up and swallowed
Dathan;
it covered the assembly of Abiram.
18 Then fire blazed through their company;
flames consumed the wicked.

19 At Horeb they made a calf
and worshiped a molten image.
20 They exchanged their Glory
for the image of a grass-eating ox.
21 They forgot God their Savior,
who did great things in Egypt,
22 wondrous works in the land of Ham,
and awesome deeds by the Red Sea.
23 So He said He would destroy them—
had not Moses His chosen one
stood before Him in the breach
to divert His wrath from destroying
them.

24 They despised the pleasant land;
they did not believe His promise.

PS 106:19 [DEMONIC] Israel worships a golden calf at Horeb

25 They grumbled in their tents
and did not listen to the voice of Yah-
weh.
26 So He raised His hand and swore
to cast them down in the wilderness,
27 to disperse their offspring among the
nations
and scatter them throughout the lands.

28 They yoked themselves to Baal of Peor
and ate sacrifices offered to lifeless
gods.
29 So they provoked Yahweh to anger with
their deeds,
and a plague broke out among them.
30 But Phinehas stood and intervened,
and the plague was restrained.
31 It was credited to him as righteousness
for endless generations to come.

32 At the waters of Meribah they angered
Yahweh,
and trouble came to Moses because of
them.
33 For they rebelled against His Spirit,
and Moses spoke rashly with his lips.

34 They did not destroy the peoples
as Yahweh had commanded them,
35 but they mingled with the nations
and adopted their customs.
36 They worshiped their idols,
which became a snare to them.
37 They sacrificed their sons
and their daughters to demons.
38 They shed innocent blood—
the blood of their sons and daughters,
whom they sacrificed to the idols of
Canaan,
and the land was polluted with blood.
39 They defiled themselves by their actions
and prostituted themselves by their
deeds.

PS 106:28 [DEMONIC] Israel joins Baal of Peor and eats offerings to the dead
PS 106:28 [NOTE] BAAL OF PEOR. Numbers 25. Eating sacrifices offered to the dead may mean feasts for dead ancestors or for lifeless idols.
PS 106:36 [DEMONIC] Their idols became a snare to them
PS 106:37 [DEMONIC] They sacrificed their sons and daughters to demons
PS 106:37 [NOTE] CHILD SACRIFICE. God hated it, Deuteronomy 12:31. Here the psalm says the idols were demons. Paul says the same about idol sacrifices, 1 Corinthians 10:20.
PS 106:38 [DEMONIC] Children sacrificed to the idols of Canaan

40 So the anger of Yahweh burned against
His people,
and He abhorred His own inheritance.
41 He delivered them into the hand of the
nations,
and those who hated them ruled over
them.
42 Their enemies oppressed them
and subdued them under their hand.
43 Many times He rescued them,
but they were bent on rebellion
and sank down in their iniquity.
44 Nevertheless He heard their cry;
He took note of their distress.
45 And He remembered His covenant with
them,
and relented by the abundance of His
loving devotion.
46 He made them objects of compassion
to all who held them captive.
47 Save us, O Yahweh our God,
and gather us from the nations,
that we may give thanks to Your holy
name,
that we may glory in Your praise.
48 Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel,
from everlasting to everlasting.

Let all the people say, "Amen!"

Hallelujah!

BOOK V PSALMS 107 TO 150

107

PSALM 107 IN 30 SECONDS

Let the redeemed of Yahweh say so! Four rescues: lost, prisoners, sick, and sailors in a storm.

THANKSGIVING FOR DELIVERANCE // MATTHEW 8:23–27; MARK 4:35–41; LUKE 8:22–25

1 Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever.
2 Let the redeemed of Yahweh say so,
whom He has redeemed from the hand
of the enemy
3 and gathered from the lands,
from east and west, from north and
south.
4 Some wandered in desert wastelands,
finding no path to a city in which to
dwell.
5 They were hungry and thirsty;
their soul fainted within them.
6 Then they cried out to Yahweh in their
trouble,
and He delivered them from their distress.
7 He led them on a straight path
to reach a city where they could live.
8 Let them give thanks to Yahweh for His
loving devotion
and His wonders to the sons of men.
9 For He satisfies the thirsty
and fills the hungry with good things.
10 Some sat in darkness and in the shadow
of death,
prisoners in affliction and chains,
11 because they rebelled against the words
of God
and despised the counsel of the Most
High.
12 He humbled their hearts with hard labor;
they stumbled, and there was no one to
help.
13 Then they cried out to Yahweh in their
trouble,
and He saved them from their distress.
14 He brought them out of darkness and
the shadow of death
and broke away their chains.
15 Let them give thanks to Yahweh for His
loving devotion
and His wonders to the sons of men.
16 For He has broken down the gates of
bronze
and cut through the bars of iron.
17 Fools, in their rebellious ways,
and through their iniquities, suffered affliction.
18 They loathed all food
and drew near to the gates of death.
19 Then they cried out to Yahweh in their
trouble,
and He saved them from their distress.
20 He sent forth His word and healed them;
He rescued them from the Pit.
21 Let them give thanks to Yahweh for His
loving devotion

PS 107:1 [NOTE] BOOK FIVE begins. The book of Psalms ends with more and more praise.

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and His wonders to the sons of men.
22 Let them offer sacrifices of thanksgiving
and declare His works with rejoicing.

23 Others went out to sea in ships,
conducting trade on the mighty waters.
24 They saw the works of Yahweh,
and His wonders in the deep.
25 For He spoke and raised a tempest
that lifted the waves of the sea.
26 They mounted up to the heavens, then
sunk to the depths;
their courage melted in their anguish.
27 They reeled and staggered like drunkards,
and all their skill was useless.

28 Then they cried out to Yahweh in their
trouble,
and He brought them out of their distress.
29 He calmed the storm to a whisper,
and the waves of the sea were hushed.
30 They rejoiced in the silence,
and He guided them to the harbor they
desired.
31 Let them give thanks to Yahweh for His
loving devotion
and His wonders to the sons of men.
32 Let them exalt Him in the assembly of
the people
and praise Him in the council of the elders.

33 He turns rivers into deserts,
springs of water into thirsty ground,
34 and fruitful land into fields of salt,
because of the wickedness of its
dwellers.
35 He turns a desert into pools of water
and a dry land into flowing springs.
36 He causes the hungry to settle there,
that they may establish a city in which
to dwell.
37 They sow fields and plant vineyards
that yield a fruitful harvest.
38 He blesses them, and they multiply
greatly;
He does not let their herds diminish.

39 When they are decreased and humbled
by oppression, evil, and sorrow,
40 He pours out contempt on the nobles
and makes them wander in a trackless
wasteland.
41 But He lifts the needy from affliction
and increases their families like flocks.
42 The upright see and rejoice,
and all iniquity shuts its mouth.

43 Let him who is wise pay heed to these
things
and consider the loving devotion of
Yahweh.

108

PSALM 108 IN 30 SECONDS
Two old songs glued together: 57 and 60. My heart is steady, God.

ISRAEL'S KINGDOM BLESSING // PSALM 57:1–11; PSALM 60:1–12

A song. A Psalm of David.

1 My heart is steadfast, O God;
I will sing and make music with all my
being.
2 Awake, O harp and lyre!
I will awaken the dawn.
3 I will praise You, O Yahweh, among the
nations;
I will sing Your praises among the peoples.
4 For Your loving devotion extends beyond
the heavens,
and Your faithfulness reaches to the
clouds.
5 Be exalted, O God, above the heavens;
may Your glory cover all the earth.
6 Respond and save us with Your right
hand,
that Your beloved may be delivered.

7 God has spoken from His sanctuary:
"I will triumph!
I will parcel out Shechem
and apportion the Valley of Succoth.
8 Gilead is Mine, and Manasseh is Mine;
Ephraim is My helmet, Judah is My
scepter.
9 Moab is My washbasin;
upon Edom I toss My sandal;
over Philistia I shout in triumph."

10 Who will bring me to the fortified city?
Who will lead me to Edom?
11 Have You not rejected us, O God?

MESSIANIC PROPECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Will You no longer march out, O God,
with our armies?
12 Give us aid against the enemy,
for the help of man is worthless.
13 With God we will perform with valor,
and He will trample our enemies.

109

PSALM 109 IN 30 SECONDS
David asks God to punish his false accusers, hard. Acts quotes it about Judas.

THE SONG OF THE SLANDERED
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 O God of my praise,
be not silent.
2 For wicked and deceitful mouths open
against me;
they speak against me with lying
tongues.
3 They surround me with hateful words
and attack me without cause.
4 In return for my love they accuse me,
but I am a man of prayer.
5 They repay me evil for good,
and hatred for my love.

6 Set over him a wicked man;
let an accuser stand at his right hand.
7 When he is tried, let him be found guilty,
and may his prayer be regarded as sin.
8 *May his days be few;*
may another take his position.
9 May his children be fatherless
and his wife a widow.
10 May his children wander as beggars,
seeking sustenance far from their ruined homes.
11 May the creditor seize all he owns,
and strangers plunder the fruits of his labor.
12 May there be no one to extend kindness
to him,
and no one to favor his fatherless children.
13 May his descendants be cut off;
may their name be blotted out from the next generation.
14 May the iniquity of his fathers be remembered before Yahweh,
and the sin of his mother never be blotted out.
15 May their sins always remain before Yahweh,
that He may cut off their memory from the earth.

16 For he never thought to show kindness,
but pursued the poor and needy and brokenhearted,
even to their death.
17 The cursing that he loved,
may it fall on him;
the blessing in which he refused to delight,
may it be far from him.
18 The cursing that he wore like a coat,
may it soak into his body like water,
and into his bones like oil.
19 May it be like a robe wrapped about him,
like a belt tied forever around him.
20 May this be Yahweh's reward to my accusers,
to those who speak evil against me.

21 But You, O Yahweh, the Lord,
deal kindly with me for the sake of Your name;
deliver me by the goodness of Your loving devotion.
22 For I am poor and needy;
my heart is wounded within me.
23 I am fading away like a lengthening shadow;
I am shaken off like a locust.
24 My knees are weak from fasting,
and my body grows lean and gaunt.
25 I am an object of scorn to my accusers;
when they see me, they shake their heads.

26 Help me, O Yahweh my God;
save me according to Your loving devotion.

- **PS 109:4 [PROPHECY]** He was accused in return for His love, yet He prayed → LK 23:34 · MEDIUM p.1690
- **PS 109:6 [NOTE]** THE CURSING PSALMS. Is David asking for revenge, or quoting what his enemies said about him? See the Big Question The Cursing Psalms.
- **PS 109:8 [PROPHECY]** Another would take the betrayer's position → ACTS 1:20; ACTS 1:26 p.1740
- **PS 109:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 1:20 p.1740
- **PS 109:8 [NOTE]** ANOTHER TAKE HIS OFFICE. Peter quoted this when the disciples chose a man to replace Judas, Acts 1:20.

- **PS 109:25 [PROPHECY]** He would be ridiculed and mocked → MT 27:39 · MEDIUM p.1598

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

27 Let them know that this is Your hand,
that You, O Yahweh, have done it.
28 Though they curse, You will bless.
When they rise up, they will be put to shame,
but Your servant will rejoice.
29 May my accusers be clothed with disgrace;
may they wear their shame like a robe.
30 With my mouth I will thank Yahweh profusely;
I will praise Him in the presence of many.
31 For He stands at the right hand of the needy one,
to save him from the condemners of his soul.

110

PSALM 110 IN 30 SECONDS
Yahweh said to my Lord, Sit at My right hand. A priest forever like Melchizedek. Verse 1 is the Old Testament verse the New Testament quotes or points to most.

GOD'S FAITHFUL MESSIAH // GENESIS 14:17–24; HEBREWS 5:1–10

A Psalm of David.

1 *Yahweh said to my Lord:*
"Sit at My right hand
until I make Your enemies
a footstool for Your feet."

- **PS 110:1 [PROPHECY]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool → MT 22:43-45; ACTS 2:34-35; HEB 1:3; HEB 1:13; HEB 8:1; HEB 10:12-13; HEB 12:2; 1PE 3:22 p.1584
- **PS 110:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 22:44 p.1584
- **PS 110:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 26:64 p.1596
- **PS 110:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:36 p.1630
- **PS 110:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 14:62 p.1634
- **PS 110:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 20:42-43 p.1684
- **PS 110:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 22:69 p.1689
- **PS 110:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 2:34-35 p.1743
- **PS 110:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 15:25-27 p.1842
- **PS 110:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 1:20 p.1879
- **PS 110:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → COL 3:1 p.1907
- **PS 110:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 1:13 p.1978
- **PS 110:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 10:12-13 p.1991
- **PS 110:1 [NOTE]** SIT AT MY RIGHT HAND. Yahweh speaks to David's Lord. Jesus asked the Pharisees how the Messiah could be David's son if David calls Him Lord, Matthew 22:41 to 45. It is the Old Testament verse the New Testament quotes or points to most often.

2 Yahweh extends Your mighty scepter
from Zion:
"Rule in the midst of Your enemies."
3 Your people shall be willing
on Your day of battle.
Arrayed in holy splendor, from the womb of the dawn,
to You belongs the dew of Your youth.

4 *Yahweh has sworn*
and will not change His mind:
"You are a priest forever
in the order of Melchizedek."

5 The Lord is at Your right hand;
He will crush kings in the day of His wrath.
6 He will judge the nations, heaping up the dead;
He will crush the leaders far and wide.
7 He will drink from the brook by the road;
therefore He will lift up His head.

111

PSALM 111 IN 30 SECONDS
Great are the works of Yahweh. An A to Z praise. The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of wisdom.

MAJESTIC IS HIS WORK

1 Hallelujah!

I will give thanks to Yahweh with all my heart
in the council of the upright and in the assembly.

2 Great are the works of Yahweh;

- **PS 110:2 [PROPHECY]** 'The rod of Your strength out of Zion' → Rev 2:27; 12:5 p.2085
- **PS 110:4 [PROPHECY]** A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek → HEB 5:6; HEB 5:10; HEB 6:20; HEB 7:17; HEB 7:21 p.1982
- **PS 110:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 5:6 p.1982
- **PS 110:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 7:17 p.1986
- **PS 110:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 7:21 p.1986
- **PS 110:4 [NOTE]** MELCHIZEDEK. The priest king of Salem who blessed Abraham, Genesis 14:18 to 20. Hebrews 5 to 7 builds its case for Jesus as High Priest on this verse. A Dead Sea Scroll about him is shown in Hebrews: see The Melchizedek Scroll, p.1985.
- **PS 110:5 [PROPHECY]** The Lord at God's right hand would crush kings and judge the nations → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **PS 110:7 [PROPHECY]** 'He shall drink of the brook by the way; therefore He shall lift up His head' → JN 19:30; Phil 2:8-9 · MEDIUM p.1732

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

they are pondered by all who delight in them.
3 Splendid and majestic is His work;
His righteousness endures forever.
4 He has caused His wonders to be remembered;
Yahweh is gracious and compassionate.
5 He provides food for those who fear Him;
He remembers His covenant forever.
6 He has shown His people the power of His works
by giving them the inheritance of the nations.
7 The works of His hands are truth and justice;
all His precepts are trustworthy.
8 They are upheld forever and ever,
enacted in truth and uprightness.
9 He has sent redemption to His people;
He has ordained His covenant forever;
holy and awesome is His name.
10 The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of wisdom;
all who follow His precepts gain rich understanding.

His praise endures forever!

112

PSALM 112 IN 30 SECONDS
Blessed is the man who fears Yahweh. Another A to Z. He is not afraid of bad news.

THE BLESSED FEAR OF YAHWEH // PSALM 128:1–6

1 Hallelujah!

Blessed is the man who fears Yahweh,
who greatly delights in His commandments.
2 His descendants will be mighty in the land;
the generation of the upright will be blessed.
3 Wealth and riches are in his house,
and his righteousness endures forever.
4 Light dawns in the darkness for the upright—
for the gracious, compassionate, and righteous.
5 It is well with the man who is generous and lends freely,
whose affairs are guided by justice.
6 Surely he will never be shaken;
the righteous man will be remembered forever.
7 He does not fear bad news;
his heart is steadfast, trusting in Yahweh.
8 His heart is assured; he does not fear,
until he looks in triumph on his foes.
9 *He has scattered abroad his gifts to the poor;*
his righteousness endures forever;
his horn will be lifted high in honor.
10 The wicked man will see and be grieved;
he will gnash his teeth and waste away;
the desires of the wicked will perish.

113

PSALM 113 IN 30 SECONDS
God sits high but stoops low. He lifts the poor from the trash heap.

YAHWEH EXALTS THE HUMBLE // 1 SAMUEL 1:1–8

1 Hallelujah!

Give praise, O servants of Yahweh;
praise the name of Yahweh.
2 Blessed be the name of Yahweh
both now and forevermore.
3 From where the sun rises to where it sets,
the name of Yahweh is praised.
4 Yahweh is exalted over all the nations,
His glory above the heavens.
5 Who is like Yahweh our God,
the One enthroned on high?
6 He humbles Himself to behold
the heavens and the earth.
7 He raises the poor from the dust
and lifts the needy from the dump
8 to seat them with nobles,
with the princes of His people.
9 He settles the barren woman in her home
as a joyful mother to her children.

Hallelujah!

■ **PS 112:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 9:9 p.1856
■ **PS 113:1 [NOTE]** THE HALLEL. Psalms 113 to 118 are sung at Passover. The hymn Jesus and His disciples sang after the Last Supper was likely from these psalms, Matthew 26:30.

DEMONIC

114

PSALM 114 IN 30 SECONDS
When Israel left Egypt, the sea ran and the mountains skipped like rams.

A PSALM OF EXODUS

1 When Israel departed from Egypt,
the house of Jacob from a people of
foreign tongue,
2 Judah became God's sanctuary,
Israel His dominion.

3 The sea observed and fled;
the Jordan turned back;
4 the mountains skipped like rams,
the hills like lambs.
5 Why was it, O sea, that you fled,
O Jordan, that you turned back,
6 O mountains, that you skipped like rams,
O hills, like lambs?

7 Tremble, O earth, at the presence of the
Lord,
at the presence of the God of Jacob,
8 who turned the rock into a pool,
the flint into a fountain of water!

115

PSALM 115 IN 30 SECONDS
Not to us, but to Your name be the glory. Idols have mouths but cannot talk.

TO YOUR NAME BE THE GLORY // PSALM 135:1–21

1 Not to us, O Yahweh, not to us,
but to Your name be the glory,
because of Your loving devotion,
because of Your faithfulness.

2 Why should the nations say,
"Where is their God?"

3 Our God is in heaven;
He does as He pleases.

4 Their idols are silver and gold,
made by the hands of men.
5 They have mouths, but cannot speak;
they have eyes, but cannot see;
6 they have ears, but cannot hear;
they have noses, but cannot smell;
7 they have hands, but cannot feel;
they have feet, but cannot walk;
they cannot even clear their throats.
8 Those who make them become like
them,
as do all who trust in them.

9 O Israel, trust in Yahweh!
He is their help and shield.
10 O house of Aaron, trust in Yahweh!
He is their help and shield.
11 You who fear Yahweh, trust in Yahweh!
He is their help and shield.
12 Yahweh is mindful of us;
He will bless us.
He will bless the house of Israel;
He will bless the house of Aaron;
13 He will bless those who fear Yahweh—
small and great alike.

14 May Yahweh give you increase,
both you and your children.
15 May you be blessed by Yahweh,
the Maker of heaven and earth.

16 The highest heavens belong to Yahweh,
but the earth He has given to mankind.
17 It is not the dead who praise Yahweh,
nor any who descend into silence.
18 But it is we who will bless Yahweh,
both now and forevermore.

Hallelujah!

116

PSALM 116 IN 30 SECONDS
I love Yahweh because He heard me. Precious in His sight is the death of His saints.

YAHWEH HAS HEARD MY VOICE

1 I love Yahweh, for He has heard my
voice—
my appeal for mercy.
2 Because He has inclined His ear to me,
I will call on Him as long as I live.

3 The ropes of death entangled me;
the anguish of Sheol overcame me;
I was confronted by trouble and sorrow.
4 Then I called on the name of Yahweh:
"O Yahweh, deliver my soul!"

5 Yahweh is gracious and righteous;
our God is full of compassion.
6 Yahweh preserves the simplehearted;

PS 115:4 [DEMONIC] Idols have mouths but cannot speak
PS 115:4 [NOTE] IDOLS. They have mouths but cannot speak. Those who make them will be like them, 115:8. You become like what you worship.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

I was helpless, and He saved me.
7 Return to your rest, O my soul,
for Yahweh has been good to you.
8 For You have delivered my soul from death,
my eyes from tears, my feet from stumbling.
9 I will walk before Yahweh
in the land of the living.
10 *I believed, therefore I said,*
"I am greatly afflicted."
11 In my alarm I said,
"All men are liars!"
12 How can I repay Yahweh
for all His goodness to me?
13 I will lift the cup of salvation
and call on the name of Yahweh.
14 I will fulfill my vows to Yahweh
in the presence of all His people.
15 Precious in the sight of Yahweh
is the death of His saints.
16 Truly, O Yahweh, I am Your servant;
I am Your servant, the son of Your maidservant;
You have broken my bonds.
17 I will offer to You a sacrifice of thanksgiving
and call on the name of Yahweh.
18 I will fulfill my vows to Yahweh
in the presence of all His people,
19 in the courts of Yahweh's house,
in your midst, O Jerusalem.

Hallelujah!

117

PSALM 117 IN 30 SECONDS
The shortest chapter in the Bible: two verses. Praise Him, all nations.

EXTOL HIM, ALL YOU PEOPLES

1 *Praise Yahweh, all you nations!*
Extol Him, all you peoples!
2 For great is His loving devotion toward us,
and the faithfulness of Yahweh endures forever.

Hallelujah!

118

PSALM 118 IN 30 SECONDS
His love endures forever. The stone the builders rejected became the cornerstone. This is the day.

YAHWEH IS ON MY SIDE

1 Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever.
2 Let Israel say,
"His loving devotion endures forever."
3 Let the house of Aaron say,
"His loving devotion endures forever."
4 Let those who fear Yahweh say,
"His loving devotion endures forever."
5 In my distress I called to Yahweh,
and He answered and set me free.
6 *Yahweh is on my side; I will not be afraid.*
What can man do to me?
7 Yahweh is on my side; He is my helper.
Therefore I will look in triumph on those who hate me.
8 It is better to take refuge in Yahweh
than to trust in man.
9 It is better to take refuge in Yahweh
than to trust in princes.
10 All the nations surrounded me,
but in the name of Yahweh I cut them off.
11 They surrounded me on every side,
but in the name of Yahweh I cut them off.
12 They swarmed around me like bees,
but they were extinguished like burning thorns;
in the name of Yahweh I cut them off.
13 I was pushed so hard I was falling,
but Yahweh helped me.
14 Yahweh is my strength and my song,
and He has become my salvation.
15 Shouts of joy and salvation resound in the tents of the righteous:

- **PS 116:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 4:13 p.1851
- **PS 116:13 [FORESHADOW]** I will lift up the cup of salvation → MT 26:27-28 · MEDIUM p.1592
- **PS 116:15 [NOTE]** PRECIOUS. The death of God's people is not cheap to Him. He notices and He cares.
- **PS 117:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:11 p.1817
- **PS 117:1 [NOTE]** THE SHORTEST CHAPTER in the Bible. Paul quotes it to show God always planned to save the nations, Romans 15:11.
- **PS 118:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 13:6 p.1995

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

"The right hand of Yahweh performs
with valor!
16 The right hand of Yahweh is exalted!
The right hand of Yahweh performs with
valor!"
17 I will not die, but I will live
and proclaim what Yahweh has done.
18 Yahweh disciplined me severely,
but He has not given me over to death.
19 Open to me the gates of righteousness,
that I may enter and give thanks to Yah-
weh.
20 This is the gate of Yahweh;
the righteous shall enter through it.
21 I will give You thanks, for You have an-
swered me,
and You have become my salvation.
22 *The stone the builders rejected*
has become the cornerstone.
23 *This is from Yahweh,*
and it is marvelous in our eyes.
24 This is the day that Yahweh has made;
we will rejoice and be glad in it.
25 *O Yahweh, save us, we pray.*
We beseech You, O Yahweh, cause us to pros-
per!
26 *Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yah-*
weh.
From the house of Yahweh we bless you.
27 Yahweh is God;
He has made His light to shine upon us.
Bind the festal sacrifice with cords
to the horns of the altar.
28 You are my God, and I will give You
thanks.
You are my God, and I will exalt You.
29 Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good;
His loving devotion endures forever.

- **PS 118:17 [PROPHECY]** His resurrection assured → LK 24:5-7; 1CO 15:20 p.1692
- **PS 118:22 [PROPHECY]** The rejected stone becomes the chief cornerstone → MT 21:42-43; 1PE 2:4; 1PE 2:7 p.1583
- **PS 118:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 21:42 p.1583
- **PS 118:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 12:10-11 p.1629
- **PS 118:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 20:17 p.1683
- **PS 118:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 4:11 p.1747
- **PS 118:22 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:7 p.2013
- **PS 118:22 [NOTE]** THE CORNERSTONE. Jesus applied it to Himself, Matthew 21:42, and so did Peter, Acts 4:11 and 1 Peter 2:7.
- **PS 118:24 [NOTABLE]** Every day is a gift from God. Choose joy in it.
- **PS 118:25 [PROPHECY]** The crowd would cry save us, which is Hosanna → MT 21:9; JN 12:13 p.1580
- **PS 118:25 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 21:9 p.1580
- **PS 118:25 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 11:9-10 p.1628
- **PS 118:25 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 12:13 p.1721
- **PS 118:26 [PROPHECY]** The Blessed One presented to Israel → MT 21:9 p.1580
- **PS 118:26 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 23:39 p.1586
- **PS 118:26 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 13:35 p.1674

119

PSALM 119 IN 30 SECONDS
The longest chapter in the Bible: 176 verses, an A to Z on God's word. Your word is a lamp to my feet.

YOUR WORD IS A LAMP TO MY FEET

א ALEPH

1 Blessed are those whose way is blame-
less,
who walk in the Law of Yahweh.
2 Blessed are those who keep His testi-
monies
and seek Him with all their heart.
3 They do no iniquity;
they walk in His ways.
4 You have ordained Your precepts,
that we should keep them diligently.
5 Oh, that my ways were committed
to keeping Your statutes!
6 Then I would not be ashamed
when I consider all Your command-
ments.
7 I will praise You with an upright heart
when I learn Your righteous judgments.
8 I will keep Your statutes;
do not utterly forsake me.

ב BETH

9 How can a young man keep his way
pure?
By guarding it according to Your word.
10 With all my heart I have sought You;

- **PS 118:26 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 19:38 p.1682
- **PS 118:26 [NOTE]** HOSANNA. Save us now, 118:25. The crowds shouted these lines when Jesus rode into Jerusalem, Matthew 21:9.
- **PS 119:1 [NOTE]** THE LONGEST CHAPTER in the Bible. It has 22 parts, one for each letter of the Hebrew alphabet. All 8 verses in each part start with that letter. Almost every verse names God's word: law, testimonies, precepts, statutes, commands, judgments, word or promise.
- **PS 119:2 [HEART]** Blessed are those who seek Him with all their heart.

THE HEART

do not let me stray from Your commandments.
11 I have hidden Your word in my heart
that I might not sin against You.
12 Blessed are You, O Yahweh;
teach me Your statutes.
13 With my lips I proclaim
all the judgments of Your mouth.
14 I rejoice in the way of Your testimonies
as much as in all riches.
15 I will meditate on Your precepts
and regard Your ways.
16 I will delight in Your statutes;
I will not forget Your word.

ג GIMEL

17 Deal bountifully with Your servant,
that I may live and keep Your word.
18 Open my eyes that I may see
wondrous things from Your law.
19 I am a stranger on the earth;
do not hide Your commandments from me.
20 My soul is consumed with longing
for Your judgments at all times.
21 You rebuke the arrogant—
the cursed who stray from Your commandments.
22 Remove my scorn and contempt,
for I have kept Your testimonies.
23 Though rulers sit and slander me,
Your servant meditates on Your statutes.
24 Your testimonies are indeed my delight;
they are my counselors.

ד DALETH

25 My soul cleaves to the dust;
revive me according to Your word.
26 I recounted my ways, and You answered me;
teach me Your statutes.
27 Make clear to me the way of Your precepts;
then I will meditate on Your wonders.
28 My soul melts with sorrow;
strengthen me according to Your word.
29 Remove me from the path of deceit
and graciously grant me Your law.
30 I have chosen the way of truth;
I have set Your ordinances before me.
31 I cling to Your testimonies, O Yahweh;
let me not be put to shame.
32 I run in the path of Your commandments,
for You will enlarge my heart.

ה HE

33 Teach me, O Yahweh, the way of Your statutes,
and I will keep them to the end.
34 Give me understanding that I may obey Your law,
and follow it with all my heart.
35 Direct me in the path of Your commandments,
for there I find delight.
36 Turn my heart to Your testimonies
and not to covetous gain.
37 Turn my eyes away from worthless things;
revive me with Your word.
38 Establish Your word to Your servant,
to produce reverence for You.
39 Turn away the disgrace I dread,
for Your judgments are good.
40 How I long for Your precepts!
Revive me in Your righteousness.

ו WAW

41 May Your loving devotion come to me, O Yahweh,
Your salvation, according to Your promise.
42 Then I can answer him who taunts,
for I trust in Your word.
43 Never take Your word of truth from my mouth,
for I hope in Your judgments.
44 I will always obey Your law,
forever and ever.
45 And I will walk in freedom,
for I have sought Your precepts.
46 I will speak of Your testimonies before kings,
and I will not be ashamed.
47 I delight in Your commandments
because I love them.

PS 119:10 [HEART] I seek You with all my heart.
PS 119:11 [HEART] I have hidden Your word in my heart so I might not sin against You.

PS 119:34 [HEART] Give me understanding so I can keep Your law with all my heart.

48 I lift up my hands to Your command-
ments, which I love,
and I meditate on Your statutes.

ז ZAYIN

49 Remember Your word to Your servant,
upon which You have given me hope.
50 This is my comfort in affliction,
that Your promise has given me life.
51 The arrogant utterly deride me,
but I do not turn from Your law.
52 I remember Your judgments of old, O
Yahweh,
and in them I find comfort.
53 Rage has taken hold of me
because of the wicked who reject Your
law.
54 Your statutes are songs to me
in the house of my pilgrimage.
55 In the night, O Yahweh, I remember Your
name,
that I may keep Your law.
56 This is my practice,
for I obey Your precepts.

ח HETH

57 Yahweh is my portion;
I have promised to keep Your words.
58 I have sought Your face with all my
heart;
be gracious to me according to Your
promise.
59 I considered my ways
and turned my steps to Your testi-
monies.
60 I hurried without hesitating
to keep Your commandments.
61 Though the ropes of the wicked bind
me,
I do not forget Your law.
62 At midnight I rise to give You thanks
for Your righteous judgments.
63 I am a friend to all who fear You,
and to those who keep Your precepts.
64 The earth is filled with Your loving devo-
tion, O Yahweh;
teach me Your statutes.

ט TETH

65 You are good to Your servant, O Yah-
weh,
according to Your word.
66 Teach me good judgment and knowl-
edge,
for I believe in Your commandments.
67 Before I was afflicted, I went astray;
but now I keep Your word.
68 You are good, and You do what is good;
teach me Your statutes.
69 Though the arrogant have smeared me
with lies,
I keep Your precepts with all my heart.
70 Their hearts are callous and insensitive,
but I delight in Your law.
71 It was good for me to be afflicted,
that I might learn Your statutes.
72 The law from Your mouth is more pre-
cious to me
than thousands of pieces of gold and
silver.

י YODH

73 Your hands have made me and fash-
ioned me;
give me understanding to learn Your
commandments.
74 May those who fear You see me and re-
joice,
for I have hoped in Your word.
75 I know, O Yahweh, that Your judgments
are righteous,
and that in faithfulness You have af-
flicted me.
76 May Your loving devotion comfort me, I
pray,
according to Your promise to Your ser-
vant.
77 May Your compassion come to me, that
I may live,
for Your law is my delight.
78 May the arrogant be put to shame for
subverting me with a lie;
I will meditate on Your precepts.
79 May those who fear You turn to me,
those who know Your testimonies.
80 May my heart be blameless in Your
statutes,
that I may not be put to shame.

כ KAPH

81 My soul faints for Your salvation;
I wait for Your word.
82 My eyes fail, looking for Your promise;
I ask, "When will You comfort me?"

NOTABLE

83 Though I am like a wineskin dried up by smoke,
I do not forget Your statutes.
84 How many days must Your servant wait?
When will You execute judgment on my persecutors?
85 The arrogant have dug pits for me
in violation of Your law.
86 All Your commandments are faithful;
I am persecuted without cause—help me!
87 They almost wiped me from the earth,
but I have not forsaken Your precepts.
88 Revive me according to Your loving devotion,
that I may obey the testimony of Your mouth.

ל LAMEDH

89 Your word, O Yahweh, is everlasting;
it is firmly fixed in the heavens.
90 Your faithfulness continues through all generations;
You established the earth, and it endures.
91 Your ordinances stand to this day,
for all things are servants to You.
92 If Your law had not been my delight,
then I would have perished in my affliction.
93 I will never forget Your precepts,
for by them You have revived me.
94 I am Yours; save me,
for I have sought Your precepts.
95 The wicked wait to destroy me,
but I will ponder Your testimonies.
96 I have seen a limit to all perfection,
but Your commandment is without limit.

מ MEM

97 Oh, how I love Your law!
All day long it is my meditation.
98 Your commandments make me wiser than my enemies,
for they are always with me.
99 I have more insight than all my teachers,
for Your testimonies are my meditation.
100 I discern more than the elders,
for I obey Your precepts.
101 I have kept my feet from every evil path,
that I may keep Your word.
102 I have not departed from Your ordinances,
for You Yourself have taught me.
103 How sweet are Your words to my taste—
sweeter than honey in my mouth!
104 I gain understanding from Your precepts;
therefore I hate every false way.

נ NUN

105 Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light to my path.
106 I have sworn and confirmed
that I will keep Your righteous judgments.
107 I am severely afflicted, O Yahweh;
revive me through Your word.
108 Accept the freewill offerings of my mouth, O Yahweh,
and teach me Your judgments.
109 I constantly take my life in my hands,
yet I do not forget Your law.
110 The wicked have set a snare for me,
but I have not strayed from Your precepts.
111 Your testimonies are my heritage forever,
for they are the joy of my heart.
112 I have inclined my heart to perform Your statutes,
even to the very end.

ס SAMEKH

113 The double-minded I despise,
but Your law I love.
114 You are my hiding place and my shield;
I put my hope in Your word.
115 Depart from me, you evildoers,
that I may obey the commandments of my God.
116 Sustain me as You promised, that I may live;
let me not be ashamed of my hope.
117 Uphold me, and I will be saved,
that I may always regard Your statutes.
118 You reject all who stray from Your statutes,

PS 119:105 [NOTABLE] God's word may not show you the whole road, but it shows you the next step.
PS 119:105 [NOTE] A LAMP TO MY FEET. An oil lamp did not light up the whole road, just the next step.

for their deceitfulness is in vain.
119 All the wicked on earth You discard like dross;
therefore I love Your testimonies.
120 My flesh trembles in awe of You;
I stand in fear of Your judgments.

ע AYIN

121 I have done what is just and right;
do not leave me to my oppressors.
122 Ensure Your servant's well-being;
do not let the arrogant oppress me.
123 My eyes fail, looking for Your salvation,
and for Your righteous promise.
124 Deal with Your servant according to Your loving devotion,
and teach me Your statutes.
125 I am Your servant; give me understanding,
that I may know Your testimonies.
126 It is time for Yahweh to act,
for they have broken Your law.
127 Therefore I love Your commandments more than gold,
even the purest gold.
128 Therefore I admire all Your precepts
and hate every false way.

פ PE

129 Wonderful are Your testimonies;
therefore I obey them.
130 The unfolding of Your words gives light;
it informs the simple.
131 I open my mouth and pant,
longing for Your commandments.
132 Turn to me and show me mercy,
as You do to those who love Your name.
133 Order my steps in Your word;
let no sin rule over me.
134 Redeem me from the oppression of man,
that I may keep Your precepts.
135 Make Your face shine upon Your servant,
and teach me Your statutes.
136 My eyes shed streams of tears
because Your law is not obeyed.

צ TZADE

137 Righteous are You, O Yahweh,
and upright are Your judgments.
138 The testimonies You have laid down are righteous
and altogether faithful.
139 My zeal has consumed me
because my foes forget Your words.
140 Your promise is completely pure;
therefore Your servant loves it.
141 I am lowly and despised,
but I do not forget Your precepts.
142 Your righteousness is everlasting
and Your law is true.
143 Trouble and distress have found me,
but Your commandments are my delight.
144 Your testimonies are righteous forever.
Give me understanding, that I may live.

ק KOPH

145 I call with all my heart; answer me, O Yahweh!
I will obey Your statutes.
146 I call to You; save me,
that I may keep Your testimonies.
147 I rise before dawn and cry for help;
in Your word I have put my hope.
148 My eyes anticipate the watches of night,
that I may meditate on Your word.
149 Hear my voice, O Yahweh, according to Your loving devotion;
give me life according to Your justice.
150 Those who follow after wickedness draw near;
they are far from Your law.
151 You are near, O Yahweh,
and all Your commandments are true.
152 Long ago I learned from Your testimonies
that You have established them forever.

ר RESH

153 Look upon my affliction and rescue me,
for I have not forgotten Your law.
154 Defend my cause and redeem me;
revive me according to Your word.
155 Salvation is far from the wicked
because they do not seek Your statutes.
156 Great are Your mercies, O Yahweh;
revive me according to Your ordinances.
157 Though my persecutors and foes are many,
I have not turned from Your testimonies.

NOTABLE

158 I look on the faithless with loathing
because they do not keep Your word.
159 Consider how I love Your precepts, O Yahweh;
give me life according to Your loving devotion.
160 The entirety of Your word is truth,
and all Your righteous judgments endure forever.

ש SIN

161 Rulers persecute me without cause,
but my heart fears only Your word.
162 I rejoice in Your promise
like one who finds great spoil.
163 I hate and abhor falsehood,
but Your law I love.
164 Seven times a day I praise You
for Your righteous judgments.
165 Abundant peace belongs to those who love Your law;
nothing can make them stumble.
166 I wait for Your salvation, O Yahweh,
and I carry out Your commandments.
167 I obey Your testimonies
and love them greatly.
168 I obey Your precepts and Your testimonies,
for all my ways are before You.

ת TAW

169 May my cry come before You, O Yahweh;
give me understanding according to Your word.
170 May my plea come before You;
rescue me according to Your promise.
171 My lips pour forth praise,
for You teach me Your statutes.
172 My tongue sings of Your word,
for all Your commandments are righteous.
173 May Your hand be ready to help me,
for I have chosen Your precepts.
174 I long for Your salvation, O Yahweh,
and Your law is my delight.
175 Let me live to praise You;
may Your judgments sustain me.
176 I have strayed like a lost sheep;
seek Your servant, for I have not forgotten Your commandments.

120

PSALM 120 IN 30 SECONDS
The first of 15 Songs of Ascents. Too long I have lived among people who hate peace.

IN MY DISTRESS I CRIED TO YAHWEH
A song of ascents.

1 In my distress I cried to Yahweh,
and He answered me.
2 Deliver my soul, O Yahweh,
from lying lips and a deceitful tongue.

3 What will He do to you,
and what will be added to you,
O deceitful tongue?
4 Sharp arrows will come from the warrior,
with burning coals of the broom tree!

5 Woe to me that I dwell in Meshech,
that I live among the tents of Kedar!
6 Too long have I dwelt
among those who hate peace.
7 I am in favor of peace;
but when I speak, they want war.

121

PSALM 121 IN 30 SECONDS
I lift my eyes to the hills. My help comes from Yahweh, who never naps.

I LIFT UP MY EYES TO THE HILLS
A song of ascents.

1 I lift up my eyes to the hills.
From where does my help come?
2 My help comes from Yahweh,
the Maker of heaven and earth.

3 He will not allow your foot to slip;
your Protector will not slumber.
4 Behold, the Protector of Israel
will neither slumber nor sleep.

5 Yahweh is your keeper;
Yahweh is the shade on your right hand.
6 The sun will not strike you by day,
nor the moon by night.

PS 120:1 [NOTE] SONGS OF ASCENTS. Psalms 120 to 134. Many think pilgrims sang them going up to Jerusalem for the feasts. Jerusalem sits high in the hills, so you always go up.
PS 121:1 [NOTABLE] Look past the mountains to the One who made them.
PS 121:4 [NOTE] NEVER SLEEPS. The prophet Elijah mocked Baal: maybe he is asleep, 1 Kings 18:27. Israel's Keeper never sleeps.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

7 Yahweh will guard you from all evil;
He will preserve your soul.
8 Yahweh will watch over your coming and going,
both now and forevermore.

122

PSALM 122 IN 30 SECONDS
Let us go to the house of Yahweh! Pray for the peace of Jerusalem.

PRAY FOR THE PEACE OF JERUSALEM
A song of ascents. Of David.

1 I was glad when they said to me,
"Let us go to the house of Yahweh."
2 Our feet are standing in your gates,
O Jerusalem.

3 Jerusalem is built up
as a city united together,
4 where the tribes go up,
the tribes of Yahweh,
as a testimony for Israel,
to give thanks to the name of Yahweh.
5 For there the thrones of judgment stand,
the thrones of the house of David.

6 Pray for the peace of Jerusalem:
"May those who love you prosper.
7 May there be peace within your walls,
and prosperity inside your fortresses."
8 For the sake of my brothers and friends,
I will say, "Peace be within you."
9 For the sake of the house of Yahweh our God,
I will seek your prosperity.

123

PSALM 123 IN 30 SECONDS
Our eyes look to God like a servant watches his master's hand.

I LIFT UP MY EYES TO YOU
A song of ascents.

1 I lift up my eyes to You,
the One enthroned in heaven.
2 As the eyes of servants
look to the hand of their master,
as the eyes of a maidservant
look to the hand of her mistress,
so our eyes are on Yahweh our God
until He shows us mercy.

3 Have mercy on us, O Yahweh, have mercy,
for we have endured much contempt.
4 We have endured much scorn from the arrogant,
much contempt from the proud.

124

PSALM 124 IN 30 SECONDS
If Yahweh had not been on our side, we would have been swallowed alive. The snare broke!

OUR HELP IS IN THE NAME OF YAHWEH
A song of ascents. Of David.

1 If Yahweh had not been on our side—
let Israel now declare—
2 if Yahweh had not been on our side
when men attacked us,
3 when their anger flared against us,
then they would have swallowed us alive,
4 then the floods would have engulfed us,
then the torrent would have overwhelmed us,
5 then the raging waters
would have swept us away.

6 Blessed be Yahweh,
who has not given us as prey to their teeth.
7 We have escaped like a bird from the snare of the fowler;
the net is torn, and we have slipped away.
8 Our help is in the name of Yahweh,
the Maker of heaven and earth.

125

PSALM 125 IN 30 SECONDS
Those who trust in Yahweh are like Mount Zion. They cannot be shaken.

YAHWEH SURROUNDS HIS PEOPLE
A song of ascents.

1 Those who trust in Yahweh are like Mount Zion.
It cannot be moved; it abides forever.
2 As the mountains surround Jerusalem,
so Yahweh surrounds His people,

PS 122:6 [NOTE] THE PEACE OF JERUSALEM. The name Jerusalem sounds like the Hebrew word for peace, shalom.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

both now and forevermore.

3 For the scepter of the wicked will not
rest
upon the land allotted to the righteous,
so that the righteous will not put forth
their hands to injustice.

4 Do good, O Yahweh, to those who are
good,
and to the upright in heart.
5 But those who turn to crooked ways
Yahweh will banish with the evildoers.

Peace be upon Israel.

126

PSALM 126 IN 30 SECONDS
When God brought us home, we were like dreamers. Those who sow in tears reap with joy.

ZION'S CAPTIVES RESTORED
A song of ascents.

1 When Yahweh restored the captives of
Zion,
we were like dreamers.
2 Then our mouths were filled with laugh-
ter,
our tongues with shouts of joy.
Then it was said among the nations,
"Yahweh has done great things for
them."
3 Yahweh has done great things for us;
we are filled with joy.

4 Restore our captives, O Yahweh,
like streams in the Negev.
5 Those who sow in tears
will reap with shouts of joy.
6 He who goes out weeping,
bearing a trail of seed,
will surely return with shouts of joy,
carrying sheaves of grain.

127

PSALM 127 IN 30 SECONDS
Unless Yahweh builds the house, the builders work for nothing. Kids are a gift.

CHILDREN ARE A HERITAGE FROM YAHWEH
A song of ascents. Of Solomon.

1 Unless Yahweh builds the house,
its builders labor in vain;
unless Yahweh protects the city,
its watchmen stand guard in vain.
2 In vain you rise early
and stay up late,
toiling for bread to eat—
for He gives sleep to His beloved.

3 Children are indeed a heritage from Yah-
weh,
and the fruit of the womb is His reward.
4 Like arrows in the hand of a warrior,
so are children born in one's youth.
5 Blessed is the man
whose quiver is full of them.
He will not be put to shame
when he confronts the enemies at the
gate.

128

PSALM 128 IN 30 SECONDS
Blessed is the man who fears Yahweh. Your wife like a vine, your kids like olive shoots.

THE BLESSED FEAR OF YAHWEH // PSALM 112:1–10
A song of ascents.

1 Blessed are all who fear Yahweh,
who walk in His ways!
2 For when you eat the fruit of your labor,
blessings and prosperity will be yours.
3 Your wife will be like a fruitful vine
flourishing within your house,
your sons like olive shoots
sitting around your table.
4 In this way indeed shall blessing come
to the man who fears Yahweh.

5 May Yahweh bless you from Zion,
that you may see the prosperity of
Jerusalem
all the days of your life,
6 that you may see
your children's children.

Peace be upon Israel!

■ **PS 127:1 [NOTE]** OF SOLOMON. Solomon built the temple, God's house. Unless Yahweh builds the house, the work is for nothing.
■ **PS 127:2 [NOTE]** HE GIVES SLEEP. Solomon was also called Jedidiah, beloved of Yahweh, 2 Samuel 12:25. Here God gives sleep to His beloved.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

129

PSALM 129 IN 30 SECONDS
They plowed my back with long furrows, but they did not win.

THE CORDS OF THE WICKED

A song of ascents.

1 Many a time they have persecuted me
from my youth—
let Israel now declare—
2 many a time they have persecuted me
from my youth,
but they have not prevailed against me.
3 The plowmen plowed over my back;
they made their furrows long.
4 Yahweh is righteous;
He has cut me from the cords of the
wicked.

5 May all who hate Zion
be turned back in shame.
6 May they be like grass on the rooftops,
which withers before it can grow,
7 unable to fill the hands of the reaper,
or the arms of the binder of sheaves.
8 May none who pass by say to them,
"The blessing of Yahweh be on you;
we bless you in the name of Yahweh."

130

PSALM 130 IN 30 SECONDS
Out of the depths I cry to You. If You kept a record of sins, who could stand?

OUT OF THE DEPTHS

A song of ascents.

1 Out of the depths
I cry to You, O Yahweh!
2 O Lord, hear my voice;
let Your ears be attentive to my plea for
mercy.

3 If You, O Yahweh, kept track of iniquities,
then who, O Lord, could stand?
4 But with You there is forgiveness,
so that You may be feared.

5 I wait for Yahweh; my soul does wait,
and in His word I put my hope.
6 My soul waits for the Lord
more than watchmen wait for the
morning—
more than watchmen wait for the morn-
ing.

7 O Israel, put your hope in Yahweh,
for with Yahweh is loving devotion,
and with Him is redemption in abun-
dance.
8 And He will redeem Israel
from all iniquity.

131

PSALM 131 IN 30 SECONDS
My heart is not proud. I am calm like a weaned child with his mother.

I HAVE STILLED MY SOUL

A song of ascents. Of David.

1 My heart is not proud, O Yahweh,
my eyes are not haughty.
I do not aspire to great things
or matters too lofty for me.
2 Surely I have stilled and quieted my soul;
like a weaned child with his mother,
like a weaned child is my soul within me.

3 O Israel, put your hope in Yahweh,
both now and forevermore.

132

PSALM 132 IN 30 SECONDS
David swore to find a home for the ark. God swore a bigger promise back to David.

YAHWEH HAS CHOSEN ZION

A song of ascents.

1 O Yahweh, remember on behalf of David
all the hardships he endured,
2 how he swore an oath to Yahweh,
and vowed to the Mighty One of Jacob:
3 "I will not enter my house
or get into my bed,
4 I will not give sleep to my eyes
or slumber to my eyelids,
5 until I find a place for Yahweh,
a dwelling for the Mighty One of Jacob."

PS 129:3 [FORESHADOW] He would be scourged (plowers plowed upon His back) → MT 27:26 · MEDIUM p.1598
PS 130:1 [NOTE] LUTHER'S PSALM. Martin Luther wrote the hymn Out of the Depths I Cry to You from this psalm, 1523. He called 32, 51, 130 and 143 Pauline psalms because they teach forgiveness by grace.

PS 130:8 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → TIT 2:14 p.1962
PS 131:1 [HEART] My heart is not proud, Lord.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

6 We heard that the ark was in Ephrathah;
we found it in the fields of Jaar.
7 Let us go to His dwelling place;
let us worship at His footstool.
8 Arise, O Yahweh, to Your resting place,
You and the ark of Your strength.
9 May Your priests be clothed with right-
eousness,
and Your saints shout for joy.
10 For the sake of Your servant David,
do not reject Your anointed one.

11 *Yahweh swore an oath to Davia,*
a promise He will not revoke:
"One of your descendants
I will place on your throne.
12 If your sons keep My covenant
and the testimony I will teach them,
then their sons will also sit on your throne
forever and ever."

13 For Yahweh has chosen Zion;
He has desired it for His home:
14 "This is My resting place forever and
ever;
here I will dwell, for I have desired this
home.
15 I will bless her with abundant provisions;
I will satisfy her poor with bread.
16 I will clothe her priests with salvation,
and her saints will sing out in joy.
17 There I will make a horn grow for David
I have prepared a lamp for My anointed
one.
18 I will clothe his enemies with shame,
but the crown upon him will gleam."

133

PSALM 133 IN 30 SECONDS
How good when brothers live in unity. It is like oil running down Aaron's beard.

HOW PLEASANT TO LIVE IN HARMONY! // 1 CORINTHIANS 1:10–17; EPHESIANS 4:1–16

A song of ascents. Of David.

1 Behold, how good and pleasant it is
when brothers live together in harmony!
2 It is like fine oil on the head,
running down on the beard,
running down Aaron's beard
over the collar of his robes.
3 It is like the dew of Hermon
falling on the mountains of Zion.
For there Yahweh has bestowed the
blessing
of life forevermore.

134

PSALM 134 IN 30 SECONDS
The last Song of Ascents. Bless Yahweh, night shift in the temple!

BLESS YAHWEH, ALL YOU SERVANTS

A song of ascents.

1 Come, bless Yahweh,
all you servants of Yahweh
who serve by night
in the house of Yahweh!
2 Lift up your hands to the sanctuary
and bless Yahweh!

3 May Yahweh, the Maker of heaven and
earth,
bless you from Zion.

135

PSALM 135 IN 30 SECONDS
Praise Yahweh, who chose Jacob. Idols are silver and gold, and people who make them become like them.

GIVE PRAISE, O SERVANTS OF YAHWEH // PSALM 115:1–18

1 Hallelujah!

Praise the name of Yahweh.
Give praise, O servants of Yahweh,
2 who stand in the house of Yahweh,
in the courts of the house of our God.
3 Hallelujah, for Yahweh is good;
sing praises to His name, for it is lovely.
4 For Yahweh has chosen Jacob as His
own,
Israel as His treasured possession.

- **PS 132:11 [PROPHECY]** The Seed of David → LK 1:32; ACTS 2:30 p.1645
- **PS 132:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 2:30 p.1743
- **PS 132:11 [NOTE]** AN OATH TO DAVID. Peter said David knew God had sworn to seat one of his descendants on his throne, and he saw ahead to the Christ, Acts 2:30.
- **PS 132:17 [PROPHECY]** God would make a horn of salvation grow for David → LK 1:69 · MEDIUM p.1647
- **PS 133:2 [NOTABLE]** The beauty of unity compared to the abundant anointing on Aaron; picture of the Spirit's blessing flowing from the head to the whole body
- **PS 133:2 [NOTE]** AARON'S BEARD. When Aaron was made high priest, the holy oil was poured on his head, Exodus 29:7. Unity is like that: it flows down and covers everyone.

DEMONIC

5 For I know that Yahweh is great;
our Lord is above all gods.
6 Yahweh does all that pleases Him
in the heavens and on the earth,
in the seas and in all their depths.
7 He causes the clouds to rise
from the ends of the earth.
He generates the lightning with the rain
and brings forth the wind from His
storehouses.

8 He struck down the firstborn of Egypt,
of both man and beast.
9 He sent signs and wonders into your
midst, O Egypt,
against Pharaoh and all his servants.
10 He struck down many nations
and slaughtered mighty kings:
11 Sihon king of the Amorites,
Og king of Bashan,
and all the kings of Canaan.
12 He gave their land as an inheritance,
as a heritage to His people Israel.

13 Your name, O Yahweh, endures forever,
Your renown, O Yahweh, through all
generations.
14 For Yahweh will vindicate His people
and will have compassion on His ser-
vants.

15 The idols of the nations are silver and
gold,
made by the hands of men.
16 They have mouths, but cannot speak;
they have eyes, but cannot see;
17 they have ears, but cannot hear;
nor is there breath in their mouths.
18 Those who make them become like
them,
as do all who trust in them.

19 O house of Israel, bless Yahweh;
O house of Aaron, bless Yahweh;
20 O house of Levi, bless Yahweh;
you who fear Yahweh, bless Yahweh!
21 Blessed be Yahweh from Zion—
He who dwells in Jerusalem.

Hallelujah!

PS 135:15 [DEMONIC] The idols of the nations are only silver and gold

136

PSALM 136 IN 30 SECONDS
His love endures forever, 26 times in a row. You will know it by heart.

HIS LOVING DEVOTION ENDURES FOREVER // 2 CHRONICLES 7:1–3

1 Give thanks to Yahweh, for He is good.
His loving devotion endures forever.
2 Give thanks to the God of gods.
His loving devotion endures forever.
3 Give thanks to the Lord of lords.
His loving devotion endures forever.
4 He alone does great wonders.
His loving devotion endures forever.
5 By His insight He made the heavens.
His loving devotion endures forever.
6 He spread out the earth upon the waters.
His loving devotion endures forever.
7 He made the great lights—
His loving devotion endures forever.
8 the sun to rule the day,
His loving devotion endures forever.
9 the moon and stars to govern the night.
His loving devotion endures forever.
10 He struck down the firstborn of Egypt
His loving devotion endures forever.
11 and brought Israel out from among them
His loving devotion endures forever.
12 with a mighty hand and an outstretched
arm.
His loving devotion endures forever.
13 He divided the Red Sea in two
His loving devotion endures forever.
14 and led Israel through the midst,
His loving devotion endures forever.
15 but swept Pharaoh and his army into the
Red Sea.
His loving devotion endures forever.
16 He led His people through the wilder-
ness.
His loving devotion endures forever.
17 He struck down great kings
His loving devotion endures forever.
18 and slaughtered mighty kings—
His loving devotion endures forever.
19 Sihon king of the Amorites
His loving devotion endures forever.
20 and Og king of Bashan—

PS 136:1 [NOTE] THE GREAT HALLEL. Every verse ends with His loving devotion endures forever. Jewish worship calls this psalm the Great Hallel.

His loving devotion endures forever.
21 and He gave their land as an inheritance,
His loving devotion endures forever.
22 a heritage to His servant Israel.
His loving devotion endures forever.
23 He remembered us in our low estate
His loving devotion endures forever.
24 and freed us from our enemies.
His loving devotion endures forever.
25 He gives food to every creature.
His loving devotion endures forever.
26 Give thanks to the God of heaven!
His loving devotion endures forever.

137

PSALM 137 IN 30 SECONDS
By the rivers of Babylon we sat and wept. How can we sing in a foreign land? It ends in rage.

BY THE RIVERS OF BABYLON // EZEKIEL 1:1–3

1 By the rivers of Babylon we sat and wept
when we remembered Zion.
2 There on the willows
we hung our harps,
3 for there our captors requested a song;
our tormentors demanded songs of joy:

"Sing us a song of Zion."

4 How can we sing a song of Yahweh
in a foreign land?
5 If I forget you, O Jerusalem,
may my right hand cease to function.
6 May my tongue cling to the roof of my mouth
if I do not remember you,
if I do not exalt Jerusalem
as my greatest joy!

7 Remember, O Yahweh,
the sons of Edom on the day Jerusalem fell:
"Destroy it," they said,
"tear it down to its foundations!"

8 O Daughter of Babylon,
doomed to destruction,
blessed is he who repays you
as you have done to us.
9 Blessed is he who seizes your infants
and dashes them against the rocks.

PS 137:1 [NOTE] THE RIVERS OF BABYLON. The exiles sat by the canals of Babylon after 586 BC. The clay records of food for King Jehoiachin, a captive there, have been found. See The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets in 2 Kings, p.662.

PS 137:7 [NOTE] EDOM cheered when Jerusalem fell, Obadiah 1:10 to 14.

PS 137:9 [NOTE] THE HARDEST VERSE. A cry of pain from people whose own babies were killed. Many believe God does not ask us to pray this. See the Big Question The Cursing Psalms right after this psalm.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE CURSING PSALMS

How Can This Be in the Bible?

PSALM 137:9 · 69:22 TO 28 · 109:6 TO 20 · 58:6 TO 10

WHAT THEY ARE
A few psalms ask God to punish enemies, hard. Scholars call them imprecatory psalms. The best known are 35, 58, 69, 109 and 137.

THE HARDEST LINE
Blessed is he who seizes your infants and dashes them against the rocks, 137:9. It is the cry of exiles whose own babies were killed when Babylon took Jerusalem, 2 Kings 25 and Lamentations 2:20 to 21.

THE NEW TESTAMENT QUOTES THEM
Peter quoted 69:25 and 109:8 about Judas, Acts 1:20. Paul quoted 69:22 to 23, Romans 11:9 to 10.

JESUS SAID
Love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, Matthew 5:44.

Every View

MATTHEW 5:44 · ROMANS 12:19 · REVELATION 6:10

VIEW 1: GIVE IT TO GOD
Many say these prayers hand anger to God instead of taking revenge. Vengeance is Mine, says the Lord, Romans 12:19. David spared Saul twice.

VIEW 2: CALLS FOR JUSTICE
Many say they are prayers for God's justice against evil, the same cry as the martyrs in heaven, How long until You avenge our blood? Revelation 6:10.

VIEW 3: QUOTING THE ENEMY
Some read 109:6 to 19 as David quoting what his enemies said about him, since the Hebrew switches from they to he.

VIEW 4: HONEST, NOT A MODEL
Many say the Bible records these feelings honestly, but does not tell us to pray them. The full answer came with Jesus, who prayed for those killing Him, Luke 23:34.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

VIEW 5: ABOUT THE KINGDOMS
Some note that 137:8 to 9 echoes Isaiah 13:16, God's judgment on Babylon itself, which fell to Persia in 539 BC.
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
God takes evil and suffering seriously, and it is right to bring even our rage to Him instead of acting on it.

138

PSALM 138 IN 30 SECONDS
I will praise You with all my heart. Though Yahweh is high, He sees the lowly.

A THANKFUL HEART
Of David.

1 I give You thanks with all my heart;
before the gods I sing Your praises.
2 I bow down toward Your holy temple
and give thanks to Your name
for Your loving devotion and Your faithfulness;
You have exalted Your name
and Your word above all else.
3 On the day I called, You answered me;
You emboldened me and strengthened my soul.

4 All the kings of the earth will give You thanks, O Yahweh,
when they hear the words of Your mouth.
5 They will sing of the ways of Yahweh,
for the glory of Yahweh is great.
6 Though Yahweh is on high,
He attends to the lowly;
but the proud He knows from afar.

7 If I walk in the midst of trouble,
You preserve me from the anger of my foes;
You extend Your hand,
and Your right hand saves me.
8 Yahweh will fulfill
His purpose for me.

O Yahweh, Your loving devotion endures forever—
do not abandon the works of Your hands.

139

PSALM 139 IN 30 SECONDS
You know me inside out. I cannot hide from You. I am fearfully and wonderfully made.

YOU HAVE SEARCHED ME AND KNOWN ME
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 O Yahweh, You have searched me
and known me.
2 You know when I sit and when I rise;
You understand my thoughts from afar.
3 You search out my path and my lying down;
You are aware of all my ways.
4 Even before a word is on my tongue,
You know all about it, O Yahweh.
5 You hem me in behind and before;
You have laid Your hand upon me.
6 Such knowledge is too wonderful for me,
too lofty for me to attain.

7 Where can I go to escape Your Spirit?
Where can I flee from Your presence?
8 If I ascend to the heavens, You are there;
if I make my bed in Sheol, You are there.
9 If I rise on the wings of the dawn,
if I settle by the farthest sea,
10 even there Your hand will guide me;
Your right hand will hold me fast.
11 If I say, "Surely the darkness will hide me,
and the light become night around me"—
12 even the darkness is not dark to You,
but the night shines like the day,
for darkness is as light to You.

13 For You formed my inmost being;
You knit me together in my mother's womb.
14 I praise You,
for I am fearfully and wonderfully made.
Marvelous are Your works,
and I know this very well.
15 My frame was not hidden from You
when I was made in secret,
when I was woven together
in the depths of the earth.

■ **PS 139:13 [NOTE]** KNIT TOGETHER IN THE WOMB. God was at work in you before you were born. Many Christians point here to show that unborn life matters to God.
PS 139:14 [NOTABLE] God made you on purpose. Your worth comes from your Maker.

THE HEART · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

16 Your eyes saw my unformed body;
all my days were written in Your book
and ordained for me
before one of them came to be.

17 How precious to me are Your thoughts,
O God,
how vast is their sum!
18 If I were to count them,
they would outnumber the grains of
sand;
and when I awake,
I am still with You.

19 O God, that You would slay the wicked—
away from me, you bloodthirsty men—
20 who speak of You deceitfully;
Your enemies take Your name in vain.
21 Do I not hate those who hate You, O
Yahweh,
and detest those who rise against You?
22 I hate them with perfect hatred;
I count them as my enemies.

23 Search me, O God, and know my heart;
test me and know my concerns.
24 See if there is any offensive way in me;
lead me in the way everlasting.

140

PSALM 140 IN 30 SECONDS
Rescue me from violent men with snake tongues.

RESCUE ME FROM EVIL MEN
For the choirmaster. A Psalm of David.

1 Rescue me, O Yahweh, from evil men.
Protect me from men of violence,
2 who devise evil in their hearts
and stir up war all day long.
3 *They sharpen their tongues like snakes;*
the venom of vipers is on their lips.
Selah

4 Guard me, O Yahweh,
from the hands of the wicked.
Keep me safe from men of violence
who scheme to make me stumble.
5 The proud hide a snare for me;
the cords of their net are spread along
the path,
and lures are set out for me.
Selah

6 I say to Yahweh, "You are my God."
Hear, O Yahweh, my cry for help.
7 O Yahweh the Lord, the strength of my
salvation,
You shield my head in the day of battle.
8 Grant not, O Yahweh, the desires of the
wicked;
do not promote their evil plans,
lest they be exalted.
Selah

9 May the heads of those who surround
me
be covered in the trouble their lips have
caused.
10 May burning coals fall on them;
may they be thrown into the fire,
into the miry pits, never to rise again.
11 May no slanderer be established in the
land;
may calamity hunt down the man of vio-
lence.

12 I know that Yahweh upholds justice for
the poor
and defends the cause of the needy.
13 Surely the righteous will praise Your
name;
the upright will dwell in Your presence.

141

PSALM 141 IN 30 SECONDS
Let my prayer rise like incense. Guard my mouth.

COME QUICKLY TO ME // PSALM 70:1–5
A Psalm of David.

1 I call upon You, O Yahweh; come quickly
to me.
Hear my voice when I call to You.
2 May my prayer be set before You like in-
cense;
my uplifted hands, like the evening of-
fering.

3 Set a guard, O Yahweh, over my mouth;
keep watch at the door of my lips.
4 Do not let my heart be drawn to any evil
thing

PS 139:23 [HEART] David asks God to search his heart and show him what is really there.
PS 140:3 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:13b p.1803
PS 141:2 [NOTABLE] David explicitly connects prayer with the rising smoke of incense — the biblical basis for incense-as-prayer symbolism
PS 141:2 [NOTE] INCENSE. Revelation 5:8 says the bowls of incense in heaven are the prayers of the saints.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

or take part in works of wickedness
with men who do iniquity;
let me not feast on their delicacies.

5 Let the righteous man strike me;
let his rebuke be an act of loving devotion.
It is oil for my head; let me not refuse it.
For my prayer is ever against the deeds of the wicked.
6 When their rulers are thrown down from the cliffs,
the people will listen to my words,
for they are pleasant.
7 As when one plows and breaks up the soil,
so our bones have been scattered at the mouth of Sheol.

8 But my eyes are fixed on You,
O Yahweh the Lord.
In You I seek refuge;
do not leave my soul defenseless.
9 Keep me from the snares they have laid for me,
and from the lures of evildoers.
10 Let the wicked fall into their own nets,
while I pass by in safety.

142

PSALM 142 IN 30 SECONDS
From the cave: no one cares about me. You are my refuge.

I LIFT MY VOICE TO YAHWEH // 1 SAMUEL 22:1–5; PSALM 57:1–11
A Maskil of David, when he was in the cave. A prayer.

1 I cry aloud to Yahweh;
I lift my voice to Yahweh for mercy.
2 I pour out my complaint before Him;
I reveal my trouble to Him.

3 Although my spirit grows faint within me,
You know my way.
Along the path I travel
they have hidden a snare for me.
4 Look to my right and see;
no one attends to me.
There is no refuge for me;
no one cares for my soul.

5 I cry to You, O Yahweh: "You are my refuge,
my portion in the land of the living."

6 Listen to my cry,
for I am brought quite low.
Rescue me from my pursuers,
for they are too strong for me.
7 Free my soul from prison,
that I may praise Your name.
The righteous will gather around me
because of Your goodness to me.

143

PSALM 143 IN 30 SECONDS
Do not judge me, because no one is righteous before You. Teach me to do Your will.

I STRETCH OUT MY HANDS TO YOU
A Psalm of David.

1 O Yahweh, hear my prayer.
In Your faithfulness, give ear to my plea;
in Your righteousness, answer me.
2 Do not bring Your servant into judgment,
for no one alive is righteous before You.

3 For the enemy has pursued my soul,
crushing my life to the ground,
making me dwell in darkness
like those long since dead.
4 My spirit grows faint within me;
my heart is dismayed inside me.

5 I remember the days of old;
I meditate on all Your works;
I consider the work of Your hands.
6 I stretch out my hands to You;
my soul thirsts for You like a parched land.

Selah

7 Answer me quickly, O Yahweh;
my spirit fails.
Do not hide Your face from me,
or I will be like those who descend to the Pit.
8 Let me hear Your loving devotion in the morning,
for I have put my trust in You.
Teach me the way I should walk,
for to You I lift up my soul.

- **PS 143:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → ROM 3:20 p.1803
- **PS 143:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → GAL 2:16 p.1868

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

9 Deliver me from my enemies, O Yahweh;
I flee to You for refuge.
10 Teach me to do Your will,
for You are my God.
May Your good Spirit lead me
on level ground.

11 For the sake of Your name, O Yahweh,
revive me.
In Your righteousness,
bring my soul out of trouble.
12 And in Your loving devotion,
cut off my enemies.
Destroy all who afflict me,
for I am Your servant.

144

PSALM 144 IN 30 SECONDS
God trains my hands for war. What is man? A breath. Blessed are the people whose God is Yahweh.

BLESSED BE YAHWEH, MY ROCK
Of David.

1 Blessed be Yahweh, my Rock,
who trains my hands for war,
my fingers for battle.
2 He is my steadfast love and my fortress,
my stronghold and my deliverer.
He is my shield, in whom I take refuge,
who subdues peoples under me.

3 O Yahweh, what is man, that You regard him,
the son of man that You think of him?
4 Man is like a breath;
his days are like a passing shadow.

5 Part Your heavens, O Yahweh, and come down;
touch the mountains, that they may smoke.
6 Flash forth Your lightning and scatter them;
shoot Your arrows and rout them.
7 Reach down from on high;
set me free and rescue me
from the deep waters,
from the grasp of foreigners,
8 whose mouths speak falsehood,
whose right hands are deceitful.

9 I will sing to You a new song, O God;
on a harp of ten strings I will make music to You—
10 to Him who gives victory to kings,
who frees His servant David from the deadly sword.
11 Set me free and rescue me
from the grasp of foreigners,
whose mouths speak falsehood,
whose right hands are deceitful.

12 Then our sons will be like plants
nurtured in their youth,
our daughters like corner pillars
carved to adorn a palace.
13 Our storehouses will be full,
supplying all manner of produce;
our flocks will bring forth thousands,
tens of thousands in our fields.
14 Our oxen will bear great loads.
There will be no breach in the walls,
no going into captivity,
and no cry of lament in our streets.

15 Blessed are the people of whom this is so;
blessed are the people whose God is Yahweh.

145

PSALM 145 IN 30 SECONDS
An A to Z of praise: great is Yahweh. Every generation tells the next.

I WILL EXALT YOU, MY GOD AND KING
A Psalm of praise. Of David.

1 I will exalt You, my God and King;
I will bless Your name forever and ever.
2 Every day I will bless You,
and I will praise Your name forever and ever.

3 Great is Yahweh and greatly to be praised;
His greatness is unsearchable.
4 One generation will commend Your works to the next,
and will proclaim Your mighty acts—
5 the glorious splendor of Your majesty.
And I will meditate on Your wondrous works.

PS 145:1 [NOTE] AN A TO Z. Each verse starts with the next Hebrew letter, but in most Hebrew copies the N line is missing. See the TEXT note on 145:13.

ARCHAEOLOGY

6 They will proclaim the power of Your
awesome deeds,
and I will declare Your greatness.
7 They will extol the fame of Your abun-
dant goodness
and sing joyfully of Your righteousness.

8 Yahweh is gracious and compassionate,
slow to anger and abounding in loving
devotion.
9 Yahweh is good to all;
His compassion rests on all He has
made.
10 All You have made will give You thanks,
O Yahweh,
and Your saints will bless You.
11 They will tell of the glory of Your king-
dom
and speak of Your might,
12 to make known to men Your mighty acts
and the glorious splendor of Your king-
dom.
13 Your kingdom is an everlasting kingdom,
and Your dominion endures through all
generations.
Yahweh is faithful in all His words and
kind in all His actions.

14 Yahweh upholds all who fall
and lifts up all who are bowed down.
15 The eyes of all look to You,
and You give them their food in season.
16 You open Your hand
and satisfy the desire of every living
thing.

17 Yahweh is righteous in all His ways
and kind in all His deeds.
18 Yahweh is near to all who call on Him,
to all who call out to Him in truth.
19 He fulfills the desires of those who fear
Him;
He hears their cry and saves them.
20 Yahweh preserves all who love Him,
but all the wicked He will destroy.

21 My mouth will declare the praise of Yah-
weh;
let every creature bless His holy name
forever and ever.

146

PSALM 146 IN 30 SECONDS
Do not trust in princes. Yahweh sets prisoners free and opens blind eyes.

PRAISE YAHWEH, O MY SOUL

1 Hallelujah!

Praise Yahweh, O my soul.

2 I will praise Yahweh all my life;
I will sing praises to my God while I have
my being.

3 Put not your trust in princes,
in mortal man, who cannot save.
4 When his spirit departs, he returns to the
ground;
on that very day his plans perish.

5 Blessed is he whose help is the God of
Jacob,
whose hope is in Yahweh his God,
6 the Maker of heaven and earth,
the sea, and everything in them.
He remains faithful forever.
7 He executes justice for the oppressed
and gives food to the hungry.
Yahweh sets the prisoners free,
8 Yahweh opens the eyes of the blind,
Yahweh lifts those who are weighed
down,
Yahweh loves the righteous.
9 Yahweh protects foreigners;
He sustains the fatherless and the
widow,
but the ways of the wicked He frus-
trates.

10 Yahweh reigns forever,
your God, O Zion, for all generations.

Hallelujah!

PS 145:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The Great Psalms Scroll from Qumran Cave 11 has the missing N line of Psalm 145 and Psalm 151, see The Great Psalms Scroll Field Notes page, p.983 → FIELD NOTES p.981

PS 145:13 [TEXT] THE MISSING LINE. Yahweh is faithful in all His words and kind in all His actions. Most Hebrew copies leave this line out, but it is in the Great Psalms Scroll from Qumran, 11QPs a, and in the Greek Old Testament. It fills the missing N, nun, line of the A to Z.

PS 146:1 [NOTE] HALLELUJAH. Psalms 146 to 150 all start and end with it. It means Praise Yah, a short form of Yahweh.

PS 146:6 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 4:24 p.1747

PS 146:6 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → ACTS 14:15 p.1766

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE GREAT PSALMS SCROLL

PSALM 145:13 · 151 · 2 SAMUEL 23:1 TO 7



Columns of the Great Psalms Scroll, 11QPs a, from Qumran Cave 11. Photo Israel Antiquities Authority, 1993.

WHAT IT IS

The largest Psalms scroll ever found, called 11QPs a or 11Q5. It holds parts of 41 psalms from the last third of the book, plus songs that are not in the Hebrew Bible.

HOW OLD IT IS

Copied about 30 to 50 AD, in the days of Jesus and the apostles.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Bedouin found Cave 11 at Qumran in 1956. The scroll was unrolled in 1961 and published by James Sanders in 1965. It is about 14 feet long.

A DIFFERENT ORDER

The psalms are not in the order of our Bibles. Psalm 145 even has a chorus after every verse: Blessed be Yahweh, and blessed be His name forever and ever.

THE MISSING LINE

Psalm 145 is an A to Z, but the Hebrew copies we use skip the N line. This scroll has it: Yahweh is faithful in all His words, 145:13. Many Bibles today put it back, and this one does too.

PSALM 151

Near the end of the scroll is Psalm 151 in Hebrew, longer than the Greek and in two parts. It names Samuel as the prophet who came to anoint David.

DAVID'S COMPOSITIONS

A prose note in the scroll says David wrote 3,600 psalms and 450 songs, 4,050 in all, through the spirit of prophecy.

GOD'S NAME

The scribe wrote the rest in square Hebrew letters but wrote YHWH in the old Hebrew letters, out of respect for the name.

DAVID'S LAST WORDS

Among the psalms the scroll also has the last verse of David's last words, 2 Samuel 23:7.

SONGS NOT IN OUR BIBLE

A Plea for Deliverance, a song to Zion, a Hymn to the Creator, Psalms 154 and 155, which old Syriac Bibles also have, and the wisdom poem at the end of Sirach, Sirach 51.

A SONG FOR EVERY DAY

The note on David's songs counts 364 songs for the daily offering, one for each day of a 364 day year, the calendar the Qumran group followed, plus 52 for the Sabbaths and 30 for new moons and feast days.

THE BOTTOM IS GONE

The lower edge of the scroll rotted away, so the last lines of most columns are missing. The top part survived well.

ONE MORE PIECE

A separate piece of the same scroll, called fragment E, turned up later and was published by Yigael Yadin in 1966.

WHY IT MATTERS

The psalms Jesus sang read almost word for word like the ones in your Bible. Some Jews also sang a few extra songs with them.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Scholars still debate whether it was a Bible scroll or a worship songbook. Either way, its psalms match ours very closely.

147

PSALM 147 IN 30 SECONDS
He heals the brokenhearted and counts the stars by name.

IT IS GOOD TO SING PRAISES

1 Hallelujah!

How good it is to sing praises to our God,
how pleasant and lovely to praise Him!

2 Yahweh builds up Jerusalem;
He gathers the exiles of Israel.
3 He heals the brokenhearted
and binds up their wounds.
4 He determines the number of the stars;
He calls them each by name.
5 Great is our Lord, and mighty in power;
His understanding has no limit.
6 Yahweh sustains the humble,
but casts the wicked to the ground.

7 Sing to Yahweh with thanksgiving;
make music on the harp to our God,
8 who covers the sky with clouds,
who prepares rain for the earth,
who makes grass to grow on the hills.
9 He provides food for the animals,
and for the young ravens when they call.

10 He does not delight in the strength of the horse;
He takes no pleasure in the legs of a man.
11 Yahweh is pleased with those who fear Him,
who hope in His loving devotion.

12 Exalt Yahweh, O Jerusalem;
praise your God, O Zion!
13 For He strengthens the bars of your gates
and blesses the children within you.
14 He makes peace at your borders;
He fills you with the finest wheat.

15 He sends forth His command to the earth;
His word runs swiftly.
16 He spreads the snow like wool;
He scatters the frost like ashes;
17 He casts forth His hail like pebbles.
Who can withstand His icy blast?

18 He sends forth His word and melts them;
He unleashes His winds, and the waters flow.

19 He declares His word to Jacob,
His statutes and judgments to Israel.
20 He has done this for no other nation;
they do not know His judgments.

Hallelujah!

148

PSALM 148 IN 30 SECONDS
Everything praise Him: angels, sun, moon, sea monsters, snow, kings and kids.

PRAISE YAHWEH FROM THE HEAVENS // PSALM 33:1–22

1 Hallelujah!

Praise Yahweh from the heavens;
praise Him in the highest places.
2 Praise Him, all His angels;
praise Him, all His heavenly hosts.
3 Praise Him, O sun and moon;
praise Him, all you shining stars.
4 Praise Him, O highest heavens,
and you waters above the skies.
5 Let them praise the name of Yahweh,
for He gave the command and they were created.
6 He established them forever and ever;
He issued a decree that will never pass away.

7 Praise Yahweh from the earth,
all great sea creatures and ocean depths,
8 lightning and hail, snow and clouds,
powerful wind fulfilling His word,
9 mountains and all hills,
fruit trees and all cedars,
10 wild animals and all cattle,
crawling creatures and flying birds,
11 kings of the earth and all peoples,
princes and all rulers of the earth,
12 young men and maidens,
old and young together.

13 Let them praise the name of Yahweh,
for His name alone is exalted;

■ **PS 148:7 [NOTE]** SEA MONSTERS. Even the great creatures of the deep are told to praise Him.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

His splendor is above the earth and the heavens.
14 He has raised up a horn for His people,
the praise of all His saints,
of Israel, a people near to Him.

Hallelujah!

149

PSALM 149 IN 30 SECONDS
Sing a new song. A sword in their hands and praise in their mouths.

SING TO YAHWEH A NEW SONG // PSALM 98:1–9; ISAIAH 42:10–17

1 Hallelujah!

Sing to Yahweh a new song—
His praise in the assembly of the godly.
2 Let Israel rejoice in their Maker;
let the children of Zion rejoice in their King.
3 Let them praise His name with dancing,
and make music to Him with tambourine and harp.
4 For Yahweh takes pleasure in His people;
He adorns the afflicted with salvation.
5 Let the saints exult in glory;
let them shout for joy upon their beds.

6 May the high praises of God be in their mouths,
and a double-edged sword in their hands,
7 to inflict vengeance on the nations
and punishment on the peoples,
8 to bind their kings with chains
and their nobles with shackles of iron,
9 to execute the judgment written against them.
This honor is for all His saints.

Hallelujah!

150

PSALM 150 IN 30 SECONDS
The grand finale. Praise Him with trumpet, harp, drums and loud cymbals. Let everything that has breath praise Yahweh!

LET EVERYTHING THAT HAS BREATH PRAISE YAHWEH

1 Hallelujah!

Praise God in His sanctuary.
Praise Him in His mighty heavens.
2 Praise Him for His mighty acts;
praise Him for His excellent greatness.

3 Praise Him with the sound of the horn;
praise Him with the harp and lyre.
4 Praise Him with tambourine and dancing;
praise Him with strings and flute.
5 Praise Him with clashing cymbals;
praise Him with resounding cymbals.

6 Let everything that has breath praise Yahweh!

Hallelujah!

151

PSALM 151 IN 30 SECONDS
Outside the number, from the Greek. David remembers: the youngest son, the shepherd, the anointing and Goliath.

THE SHEPHERD BOY ANOINTED // 1 SAMUEL 16:1–13; 17:32–51

[This psalm is David's own, though it is outside the number. When he fought Goliath one on one.

1 I was small among my brothers,
and the youngest in my father's house;
I tended my father's sheep.
2 My hands made an instrument;
my fingers tuned a lyre.
3 And who will tell my Lord?
The Lord Himself; He Himself hears.
4 He sent His messenger
and took me from my father's sheep,
and anointed me with His anointing oil.

- **PS 150:3 [NOTE]** THE INSTRUMENTS. Trumpet, or ram's horn, harp, lyre, drum, strings, flute and cymbals. See the Field Notes box Harps and Lyres after Psalm 33, p.905.
- **PS 150:6 [NOTABLE]** If you are breathing, you have a reason to praise Him.
- **PS 150:6 [NOTE]** THE END. One hundred fifty psalms of tears and joy end with one word: Hallelujah. Then comes Psalm 151, outside the number.
- **PS 151:1 [TEXT]** PSALM 151 IS IN BRACKETS. It is in the Greek Old Testament and the Dead Sea Scrolls, but not in the Hebrew Bible, which ends at 150. Its own title says it is outside the number. Eastern Orthodox and Oriental Orthodox churches read it as Scripture; Jews, Catholics and Protestants do not. The Hebrew version in the Great Psalms Scroll, 11QPs a, is longer and in two parts, called 151A and 151B, and it names Samuel as the prophet who anointed David. Tradition says David wrote it, and both versions say so. Most scholars think someone wrote it later in David's voice. It retells 1 Samuel 16 and 17. This translation is The Owner's Manual's own, from the Greek. See the Big Question Psalm 151.
- **PS 151:4 [TEXT]** HIS MESSENGER. The Greek word is angelos, which means messenger or angel. 1 Samuel 16 says God sent the prophet Samuel, and the Hebrew version in the scroll names Samuel.

5 My brothers were handsome and tall,
but the Lord was not pleased with them.
6 I went out to meet the Philistine,
and he cursed me by his idols.
7 But I drew his own sword and cut off his head,
and I took away the disgrace from the sons of Israel.]

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

PSALM 151

Outside the Number

PSALM 151 · 1 SAMUEL 16 TO 17 · 11QPS A

WHERE IT IS

In the oldest complete Greek Bibles, Sinaiticus, Vaticanus and Alexandrinus, right after Psalm 150. Its title says it is David's own, though it is outside the number.

THE HEBREW VERSION

A longer Hebrew form is near the end of the Great Psalms Scroll, 11QPs a, from Qumran Cave 11, copied about 30 to 50 AD. It has two parts, called 151A and 151B. 151A names Samuel, says David made music to God, and that the mountains and hills do not speak for Him, but the trees and the flock loved David's songs. 151B starts the Goliath story but breaks off.

NOT IN THE HEBREW BIBLE

The Hebrew Bible, the Aleppo and Leningrad codices, ends at Psalm 150.

PROPHECY?

None. At most, many see a picture: the overlooked shepherd boy whom God anointed king, like the Son of David whom men rejected.

Every View

CODEX SINAITICUS · CODEX VATICANUS · CODEX ALEXANDRINUS

WHO COUNTS IT AS SCRIPTURE

The Eastern Orthodox churches and the Oriental Orthodox churches, like the Coptic, Ethiopian, Armenian and Syriac, read it as part of the Bible. Jews, Catholics and Protestants do not. Old Syriac Bibles also kept four more extra psalms.

WHO WROTE IT? THE TRADITIONAL VIEW

Tradition says David wrote it, and both the Greek and Hebrew versions say so.

THE SCHOLARS' VIEW

Most scholars think someone wrote it later in David's voice, looking back on 1 Samuel 16 and 17.

WHY IT IS IN BRACKETS HERE

The brackets mean it is not part of the Hebrew Psalms. They do not mean it is missing from the oldest copies: the oldest Greek Bibles have it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

It is old, it is short, and it tells the Bible's own story: God sees the heart, not the height, 1 Samuel 16:7.

- **PS 151:4 [NOTE]** THE OVERLOOKED SHEPHERD BOY. God passed over the tall older brothers and anointed the youngest, 1 Samuel 16:7. Many Christians see a picture here of the Son of David, chosen by God though men overlooked Him.
- **PS 151:6 [NOTE]** CURSED ME BY HIS IDOLS. The Philistine cursed David by his gods, 1 Samuel 17:43. The Greek calls him the foreigner, allophylos, its usual word for a Philistine.
- **PS 151:7 [NOTE]** HIS OWN SWORD. David killed Goliath and cut off his head with the giant's own sword, 1 Samuel 17:51.

BOOK 20 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · POETRY AND WISDOM

PROVERBS

How Not to Be a Fool

AUTHOR	Mostly King Solomon, 1:1, 10:1 and 25:1. Also the wise, 22:17 and 24:23, a man named Agur, 30:1, and King Lemuel's mother, 31:1.
DATE	Solomon ruled about 970 to 930 BC. King Hezekiah's men copied more of his sayings about 700 BC, 25:1. The book was put together after that.
WRITTEN TO	A son. The father says my son again and again. Really it is for anyone who wants to grow up wise.
KEY VERSE	Proverbs 1:7. The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of knowledge, but fools despise wisdom and discipline.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF PROVERBS
Pieces of two Proverbs scrolls from Qumran Cave 4, laid on one museum plate. The big dark piece at the top is 4QProv a, with words from Proverbs 1 and 2. The other pieces are 4QProv b, with parts of Proverbs 13 to 15 and a few words from chapter 7. Both were copied in the first century BC or the first century AD.

Only these two copies of Proverbs, and a tiny third piece from Cave 6 with words from Proverbs 11, were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

The royal court of Jerusalem, where kings trained young men to lead. Proverbs is not a story. It is a book of short sayings about everyday life: money, work, friends, words, sex, food, drinking and how to treat your parents. It teaches you to live in God's world His way.

What It Warns Against

THE FOOL. The man who will not listen, 1:7 and 12:15. Proverbs has several Hebrew words for fool, from the clueless to the mocker.
THE LAZY MAN. He sleeps, makes excuses and ends up poor, 6:9 to 11 and 26:13 to 16.
THE ADULTERESS. Her words are smooth, but her house is the road to the grave, chapters 5 and 7.
A LOOSE TONGUE. Gossip, lying and quick anger, 18:8, 12:22 and 29:22.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Proverbs is a father teaching his son how to live. Chapters 1 to 9 are long talks: get wisdom, stay away from crooks, and run from the adulteress. Wisdom calls out like a woman in the street, and Folly calls too. Then come hundreds of short sayings, mostly from Solomon, about work, money, words, friends, anger and family. The book ends with King Lemuel's mother and a poem about a wife of noble character.

Proverbs at a Glance

CH 1 to 9	**A FATHER'S TALKS** Get wisdom; Lady Wisdom and the adulteress.
CH 10 to 22:16	**SOLOMON'S SAYINGS** 375 one liners.
CH 22:17 to 24	**SAYINGS OF THE WISE** Thirty sayings, and a few more.
CH 25 to 29	**HEZEKIAH'S COPY** More of Solomon's sayings.
CH 30	**AGUR** Who made the world? Things in threes and fours.
CH 31	**LEMUEL'S MOTHER** Advice for a king; the noble wife, A to Z.

Where Jesus Shows Up

PROVERBS 8:22 TO 31 Wisdom was with God before the world began. John 1:1 to 3 and Colossians 1:15 to 17 say the same about the Son, and Paul calls Christ the wisdom of God, 1 Corinthians 1:24.

PROVERBS 30:4 What is the name of His Son? Jesus said He came down from heaven, John 3:13.

PROVERBS 25:6 TO 7 Do not take the best seat, wait to be told, Come up here. Jesus told the same story at a dinner, Luke 14:8 to 11.

1 KINGS 4:31 Solomon was the wisest man of his day. Jesus said, Something greater than Solomon is here, Matthew 12:42.

GOD'S NAMES IN PROVERBS
Yahweh 87 times in the Hebrew. God, Elohim, only five times, and Eloah once, 30:5. Agur calls Him the Holy One, 30:3, as 9:10 does.

What to Watch for in Proverbs

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	8:23, 30:4
THE HEART (25)	3:1, 3:3, 3:5, 4:23, 7:3, 12:25, 13:12 and 18 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	22:17
DEMONIC (1)	26:2
NOTABLE (11)	3:6, 9:10, 15:1, 16:3, 16:18, 17:17, 18:10 and 4 more
GOD SPEAKING (10 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (4 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

SOLOMON'S NUMBER
10:1 to 22:16 has exactly 375 verses, and the Hebrew letters in Solomon's name add up to 375.

A TO Z
The last poem, 31:10 to 31, is an acrostic: each verse starts with the next letter of the Hebrew alphabet.

THE GREEK IS DIFFERENT
The Greek Old Testament puts chapters 24 to 31 in a different order and adds lines, like the busy bee after the ant in 6:8.

ANSWER HIM, DON'T ANSWER HIM
26:4 and 26:5 say opposite things, side by side, on purpose. Wisdom knows which one fits the moment.

How Does It End?

With a woman. The book opens with Lady Wisdom calling in the streets and closes with a real wise woman at home, strong, busy and kind, who fears Yahweh, 31:30.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Dad sits his son down for the talk. Start here: the fear of Yahweh is the beginning of knowledge. If the gang says, Come with us, we will get rich quick, say no. Then Lady Wisdom shouts in the street, and the people who ignore her end up eating the fruit of their own choices.

THE BEGINNING OF KNOWLEDGE // PROVERBS 9:1–12

1 These are the proverbs of Solomon son
of David,
king of Israel,
2 for gaining wisdom and discipline,
for comprehending words of insight,
3 and for receiving instruction in wise living
and in righteousness, justice, and equity.
4 To impart prudence to the simple
and knowledge and discretion to the young,
5 let the wise listen and gain instruction,
and the discerning acquire wise counsel
6 by understanding the proverbs and parables,
the sayings and riddles of the wise.

7 The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of knowledge,
but fools despise wisdom and discipline.

THE ENTICEMENT OF SIN

8 Listen, my son, to your father's instruction,
and do not forsake the teaching of your mother.
9 For they are a garland of grace on your head
and a pendant around your neck.

10 My son, if sinners entice you,
do not yield to them.
11 If they say, "Come along, let us lie in wait for blood,
let us ambush the innocent without cause,
12 let us swallow them alive like Sheol,
and whole like those descending into the Pit.
13 We will find all manner of precious goods;
we will fill our houses with plunder.
14 Throw in your lot with us;
let us all share one purse"—
15 my son, do not walk the road with them
or set foot upon their path.
16 For their feet run to evil,
and they are swift to shed blood.
17 How futile it is to spread the net
where any bird can see it!
18 But they lie in wait for their own blood;
they ambush their own lives.
19 Such is the fate of all who are greedy,
whose unjust gain takes the lives of its possessors.

WISDOM CALLS ALOUD

20 Wisdom calls out in the street,
she lifts her voice in the square;
21 in the main concourse she cries aloud,
at the city gates she makes her speech:

22 "How long, O simple ones, will you love your simple ways?
How long will scoffers delight in their scorn
and fools hate knowledge?
23 If you had repented at my rebuke,
then surely I would have poured out my spirit on you;
I would have made my words known to you.
24 Because you refused my call,
and no one took my outstretched hand,
25 because you neglected all my counsel,
and wanted none of my correction,
26 in turn I will mock your calamity;

PROV 1:1 [NOTE] SOLOMON. David's son, the third king of Israel, about 970 to 930 BC. God gave him wisdom when he asked for it, and he spoke 3,000 proverbs and wrote 1,005 songs, 1 Kings 3:9 to 12 and 4:32. Only some of them are here.

PROV 1:1 [NOTE] WHAT IS A PROVERB? The Hebrew word mashal means a saying that compares one thing to another. Most proverbs are short, two lines that rhyme in thought instead of sound.

PROV 1:7 [NOTE] THE KEY VERSE. The fear of Yahweh is not being scared of God. It is the respect that takes Him seriously. 9:10 says it again, near the end of the father's talks.

PROV 1:8 [NOTE] MY SON. The father calls him my son over and over in chapters 1 to 7. Mom teaches too, 1:8 and 6:20, and so does the king's mother in chapter 31.

PROV 1:20 [NOTE] LADY WISDOM. Proverbs paints wisdom as a woman calling in the street. She is not a goddess. Many see her as a picture of God's wisdom, and many Christians hear Christ in her words, 8:22 to 31. Her rival is the adulteress, and later Folly, 9:13. Her words are black here; only 8:22 to 31 is red.

THE HEART

I will sneer when terror strikes you,
27 when your dread comes like a storm,
and your destruction like a whirlwind,
when distress and anguish overwhelm you.
28 Then they will call on me, but I will not answer;
they will earnestly seek me, but will not find me.
29 For they hated knowledge
and chose not to fear Yahweh.
30 They accepted none of my counsel;
they despised all my reproof.
31 So they will eat the fruit of their own way,
and be filled with their own devices.
32 For the waywardness of the simple will slay them,
and the complacency of fools will destroy them.
33 But whoever listens to me will dwell in safety,
secure from the fear of evil."

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Dig for wisdom like it is buried treasure. If you do, God will give it to you, and it will keep you away from crooked men and from the smooth talking woman who forgot her promises.

THE BENEFITS OF WISDOM

1 My son, if you accept my words
and hide my commandments within you,
2 if you incline your ear to wisdom
and direct your heart to understanding,
3 if you truly call out to insight
and lift your voice to understanding,
4 if you seek it like silver
and search it out like hidden treasure,
5 then you will discern the fear of Yahweh
and discover the knowledge of God.
6 For Yahweh gives wisdom;
from His mouth come knowledge and understanding.
7 He stores up sound wisdom for the upright;
He is a shield to those who walk with integrity,
8 to guard the paths of justice
and protect the way of His saints.
9 Then you will discern righteousness
and justice and equity—every good path.
10 For wisdom will enter your heart,
and knowledge will delight your soul.
11 Discretion will watch over you,
and understanding will guard you,
12 to deliver you from the way of evil,
from the man who speaks perversity,
13 from those who leave the straight paths
to walk in the ways of darkness,
14 from those who enjoy doing evil
and rejoice in the twistedness of evil,
15 whose paths are crooked
and whose ways are devious.
16 It will rescue you from the forbidden woman,
from the stranger with seductive words
17 who abandons the partner of her youth
and forgets the covenant of her God.
18 For her house sinks down to death,
and her tracks to the departed spirits.
19 None who go to her return
or negotiate the paths of life.
20 So you will follow in the ways of the good,
and keep to the paths of the righteous.
21 For the upright will inhabit the land,
and the blameless will remain in it;
22 but the wicked will be cut off from the land,
and the unfaithful will be uprooted.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Trust Yahweh with all your heart and stop trying to figure everything out yourself. Honor Him with your money, take His correction like a son, and do not tell your neighbor, Come back tomorrow, if you can help him today.

TRUST IN YAHWEH WITH ALL YOUR HEART

1 My son, do not forget my teaching,
but let your heart keep my commandments;

PROV 2:16 [NOTE] THE ADULTERESS. Literally the strange woman and the foreign woman: a woman outside your marriage. The father warns about her in chapters 2, 5, 6 and 7.

PROV 3:1 [HEART] Do not forget my teaching. Let your heart keep my commands.

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

2 for they will add length to your days,
years and peace to your life.
3 Never let loving devotion or faithfulness
leave you;
bind them around your neck,
write them on the tablet of your heart.
4 *Then you will find favor and high regard*
in the sight of God and man.

5 Trust in Yahweh with all your heart,
and lean not on your own understanding;
6 in all your ways acknowledge Him,
and He will make your paths straight.
7 Be not wise in your own eyes;
fear Yahweh and turn away from evil.
8 This will bring healing to your body
and refreshment to your bones.

9 Honor Yahweh with your wealth
and with the firstfruits of all your crops;
10 then your barns will be filled with plenty,
and your vats will overflow with new wine.

11 *My son, do not reject the discipline of Yahweh,*
and do not loathe His rebuke;
12 *for Yahweh disciplines the one He loves,*
as does a father the son in whom he delights.

THE BLESSINGS OF WISDOM

13 Blessed is the man who finds wisdom,
the man who acquires understanding,
14 for she is more profitable than silver,
and her gain is better than fine gold.
15 She is more precious than rubies;
nothing you desire compares with her.
16 Long life is in her right hand;
in her left hand are riches and honor.
17 All her ways are pleasant,
and all her paths are peaceful.
18 She is a tree of life to those who embrace her,
and those who lay hold of her are blessed.

19 Yahweh founded the earth by wisdom
and established the heavens by understanding.
20 By His knowledge the watery depths were broken open,
and the clouds dripped with dew.

21 My son, do not lose sight of this:
Preserve sound judgment and discernment.
22 They will be life to your soul
and adornment to your neck.
23 Then you will go on your way in safety,
and your foot will not stumble.
24 When you lie down, you will not be afraid;
when you rest, your sleep will be sweet.
25 Do not fear sudden danger
or the ruin that overtakes the wicked,
26 for Yahweh will be your confidence
and will keep your foot from the snare.

27 Do not withhold good from the deserving
when it is within your power to act.
28 Do not tell your neighbor,
"Come back tomorrow and I will provide"—
when you already have the means.
29 Do not devise evil against your neighbor,
for he trustfully dwells beside you.
30 Do not accuse a man without cause,
when he has done you no harm.

31 Do not envy a violent man
or choose any of his ways;
32 for Yahweh detests the perverse,
but He is a friend to the upright.
33 The curse of Yahweh is on the house of the wicked,
but He blesses the home of the righteous.
34 *He mocks the mockers,*
but gives grace to the humble.
35 The wise will inherit honor,
but fools are held up to shame.

- **PROV 3:3 [HEART]** Write loyalty and faithfulness on the tablet of your heart.
- **PROV 3:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 8:21 p.1855
- **PROV 3:5 [HEART]** Trust in the Lord with all your heart and do not lean on your own understanding.
- **PROV 3:5 [NOTE]** ALL YOUR HEART. In Hebrew thinking the heart is where you think, decide and want, not only where you feel. Trusting with all your heart means with your whole self.
- **PROV 3:6 [NOTABLE]** Bring God into every part of life, not only Sunday, and He will lead the way.
- **PROV 3:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:5-6 p.1994
- **PROV 3:34 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 4:6 p.2006
- **PROV 3:34 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 5:5 p.2021

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Grandpa taught Dad, and Dad is teaching you: get wisdom, whatever it costs. Stay off the road the wicked walk. Guard your heart, because everything you do flows out of it.

A FATHER'S INSTRUCTION

1 Listen, my sons, to a father's instruction;
pay attention and gain understanding.
2 For I give you sound teaching;
do not abandon my directive.
3 When I was a son to my father,
tender and the only child of my mother,
4 he taught me and said,
"Let your heart lay hold of my words;
keep my commands and you will live.
5 Get wisdom, get understanding;
do not forget my words or turn from them.
6 Do not forsake wisdom, and she will preserve you;
love her, and she will guard you.
7 Wisdom is supreme; so acquire wisdom.
And whatever you may acquire, gain understanding.
8 Prize her, and she will exalt you;
if you embrace her, she will honor you.
9 She will set a garland of grace on your head;
she will present you with a crown of beauty."

10 Listen, my son, and receive my words,
and the years of your life will be many.
11 I will guide you in the way of wisdom;
I will lead you on straight paths.
12 When you walk, your steps will not be impeded;
when you run, you will not stumble.
13 Hold on to instruction; do not let go.
Guard it, for it is your life.
14 Do not set foot on the path of the wicked
or walk in the way of evildoers.
15 Avoid it; do not travel on it.
Turn from it and pass on by.
16 For they cannot sleep
unless they do evil;
they are deprived of slumber
until they make someone fall.
17 For they eat the bread of wickedness
and drink the wine of violence.
18 The path of the righteous is like the first gleam of dawn,
shining brighter and brighter until midday.
19 But the way of the wicked is like the darkest gloom;
they do not know what makes them stumble.

20 My son, pay attention to my words;
incline your ear to my sayings.
21 Do not lose sight of them;
keep them within your heart.
22 For they are life to those who find them,
and health to the whole body.
23 Guard your heart with all diligence,
for from it flow springs of life.
24 Put away deception from your mouth;
keep your lips from perverse speech.
25 Let your eyes look forward;
fix your gaze straight ahead.
26 *Make a level path for your feet,*
and all your ways will be sure.
27 Do not swerve to the right or to the left;
turn your feet away from evil.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Her lips drip honey, but she ends up bitter as poison. Stay away from her door. Drink water from your own well: enjoy the wife of your youth.

AVOIDING IMMORALITY // LEVITICUS 20:10–21; 1 CORINTHIANS 5:1–8

1 My son, pay attention to my wisdom;
incline your ear to my insight,
2 that you may maintain discretion
and your lips may preserve knowledge.
3 Though the lips of the forbidden woman drip honey
and her speech is smoother than oil,
4 in the end she is bitter as wormwood,
sharp as a double-edged sword.
5 Her feet go down to death;
her steps lead straight to Sheol.

PROV 4:23 [HEART] Guard your heart above all else, because everything in your life flows from it.
PROV 4:23 [NOTE] THE SPRING. The heart is pictured as a spring that waters the whole land. Jesus said the same thing: out of the heart come evil thoughts, Matthew 15:19.
PROV 4:26 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:12-13 p.1994

6 She does not consider the path of life;
she does not know that her ways are unstable.

7 So now, my sons, listen to me,
and do not turn aside from the words of my mouth.
8 Keep your path far from her;
do not go near the door of her house,
9 lest you concede your vigor to others,
and your years to one who is cruel;
10 lest strangers feast on your wealth,
and your labors enrich the house of a foreigner.
11 At the end of your life you will groan
when your flesh and your body are spent,
12 and you will say, "How I hated discipline,
and my heart despised reproof!
13 I did not listen to the voice of my teachers
or incline my ear to my mentors.
14 I am on the brink of utter ruin
in the midst of the whole assembly."

15 Drink water from your own cistern,
and running water from your own well.
16 Why should your springs flow in the streets,
your streams of water in the public squares?
17 Let them be yours alone,
never to be shared with strangers.
18 May your fountain be blessed,
and may you rejoice in the wife of your youth:
19 A loving doe, a graceful fawn—
may her breasts satisfy you always;
may you be captivated by her love forever.
20 Why be captivated, my son, by an adulteress,
or embrace the bosom of a stranger?
21 For a man's ways are before the eyes of Yahweh,
and Yahweh examines all his paths.
22 The iniquities of a wicked man entrap him;
the cords of his sin entangle him.
23 He dies for lack of discipline,
led astray by his own great folly.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not cosign a loan for a stranger. Lazy? Go watch the ant. Here are seven things Yahweh hates. And again: adultery is like carrying fire in your lap and hoping your shirt does not burn.

WARNINGS AGAINST FOOLISHNESS

1 My son, if you have put up security for your neighbor,
if you have struck hands in pledge with a stranger,
2 if you have been trapped by the words of your lips,
ensnared by the words of your mouth,
3 then do this, my son, to free yourself,
for you have fallen into your neighbor's hands:
Go, humble yourself,
and press your plea with your neighbor.
4 Allow no sleep to your eyes
or slumber to your eyelids.
5 Free yourself, like a gazelle from the hand of the hunter,
like a bird from the snare of the fowler.

6 Walk in the manner of the ant, O slacker;
observe its ways and become wise.
7 Without a commander,
without an overseer or ruler,
8 it prepares its provisions in summer;
it gathers its food at harvest.
9 How long will you lie there, O slacker?
When will you get up from your sleep?
10 A little sleep, a little slumber,
a little folding of the hands to rest,
11 and poverty will come upon you like a robber,
and need like a bandit.

12 A worthless person, a wicked man,
walks with a perverse mouth,
13 winking his eyes, speaking with his feet,
and pointing with his fingers.
14 With deceit in his heart he devises evil;
he continually sows discord.
15 Therefore calamity will come upon him suddenly;

PROV 6:6 [NOTE] THE ANT. The Greek Old Testament adds three lines after 6:8 that tell the lazy man to go to the bee too. They are not in the Hebrew.

THE HEART

in an instant he will be shattered beyond
recovery.

16 There are six things that Yahweh hates,
seven that are detestable to Him:
17 haughty eyes,
a lying tongue,
hands that shed innocent blood,
18 a heart that devises wicked schemes,
feet that run swiftly to evil,
19 a false witness who gives false testi-
mony,
and one who stirs up discord among
brothers.

WARNINGS AGAINST ADULTERY

20 My son, keep your father's command-
ment,
and do not forsake your mother's teach-
ing.
21 Bind them always upon your heart;
tie them around your neck.
22 When you walk, they will guide you;
when you lie down, they will watch over
you;
when you awake, they will speak to you.
23 For this commandment is a lamp, this
teaching is a light,
and the reproofs of discipline are the
way to life,
24 to keep you from the evil woman,
from the smooth tongue of the adulter-
ess.

25 Do not lust in your heart for her beauty
or let her captivate you with her eyes.
26 For the levy of the prostitute is poverty,
and the adulteress preys upon your very
life.
27 Can a man embrace fire
and his clothes not be burned?
28 Can a man walk on hot coals
without scorching his feet?
29 So is he who sleeps with another man's
wife;
no one who touches her will go unpun-
ished.

30 Men do not despise the thief
if he steals to satisfy his hunger.

31 Yet if caught, he must pay sevenfold;
he must give up all the wealth of his
house.
32 He who commits adultery lacks judg-
ment;
whoever does so destroys himself.
33 Wounds and dishonor will befall him,
and his reproach will never be wiped
away.
34 For jealousy enrages a husband,
and he will show no mercy in the day of
vengeance.
35 He will not be appeased by any ransom,
or persuaded by lavish gifts.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Dad watches out the window as a clueless young man walks right to her house at night. She has the bed ready and her husband is away. He follows her like an ox going to the butcher. Do not be that guy.

WARNINGS ABOUT THE ADULTERESS

1 My son, keep my words
and treasure my commandments within
you.
2 Keep my commandments and live;
guard my teachings as the apple of your
eye.
3 Tie them to your fingers;
write them on the tablet of your heart.
4 Say to wisdom, "You are my sister,"
and call understanding your kinsman,
5 that they may keep you from the adulter-
ess,
from the stranger with seductive words.

6 For at the window of my house
I looked through the lattice.
7 I saw among the simple,
I noticed among the youths,
a young man lacking judgment,
8 crossing the street near her corner,
strolling down the road to her house,
9 at twilight, as the day was fading
into the dark of the night.

PROV 6:16 [NOTE] SIX THINGS, NO, SEVEN. A Hebrew way of counting that builds up to the last one. The seventh, stirring up trouble among brothers, is the punch line. Chapter 30 does the same with three, no, four.

PROV 6:32 [NOTE] LACKS JUDGMENT. The Hebrew says lacks heart. Proverbs uses this saying about ten times for a person with no sense, 7:7, 9:4, 10:13 and more. Heart here means the mind that should be making good choices.

PROV 7:3 [HEART] Write God's commands on the tablet of your heart.

10 Then a woman came out to meet him,
with the attire of a harlot and cunning of heart.
11 She is loud and defiant;
her feet do not remain at home.
12 Now in the street, now in the squares,
she lurks at every corner.
13 She seizes him and kisses him;
she brazenly says to him:

14 "I have made my peace offerings;
today I have paid my vows.
15 So I came out to meet you;
I sought you, and I have found you.
16 I have decked my bed with coverings,
with colored linen from Egypt.
17 I have perfumed my bed with myrrh,
with aloes, and with cinnamon.
18 Come, let us take our fill of love till morning.
Let us delight in loving caresses!
19 For my husband is not at home;
he has gone on a long journey.
20 He took with him a bag of money
and will not return till the moon is full."

21 With her great persuasion she entices him;
with her flattering lips she lures him.
22 He follows her on impulse,
like an ox going to the slaughter,
like a deer bounding into a trap,
23 until an arrow pierces his liver,
like a bird darting into a snare—
not knowing it will cost him his life.

24 Now, my sons, listen to me,
and attend to the words of my mouth.
25 Do not let your heart turn aside to her ways;
do not stray into her paths.
26 For she has brought many down to death;
her slain are many in number.
27 Her house is the road to Sheol,
descending to the chambers of death.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Lady Wisdom stands at the crossroads and calls to everyone. She is better than gold. She was there before the mountains, at God's side when He made the world. Whoever finds her finds life.

THE EXCELLENCE OF WISDOM

1 Does not wisdom call out,
and understanding raise her voice?
2 On the heights overlooking the road,
at the crossroads she takes her stand.
3 Beside the gates to the city,
at the entrances she cries out:

4 "To you, O men, I call out,
and my cry is to the sons of men.
5 O simple ones, learn to be shrewd;
O fools, gain understanding.
6 Listen, for I speak of noble things,
and the opening of my lips will reveal right.

7 For my mouth will speak the truth,
and wickedness is detestable to my lips.
8 All the words of my mouth are righteous;
none are crooked or perverse.
9 They are all plain to the discerning,
and upright to those who find knowledge.
10 Receive my instruction instead of silver,
and knowledge rather than pure gold.
11 For wisdom is more precious than rubies,
and nothing you desire compares with her.

12 I, wisdom, dwell together with prudence,
and I find knowledge and discretion.
13 To fear Yahweh is to hate evil;
I hate arrogant pride, evil conduct, and perverse speech.
14 Counsel and sound judgment are mine;
I have insight and strength.
15 By me kings reign,
and rulers enact just laws;
16 By me princes rule,
and all nobles who govern justly.

17 I love those who love me,

PROV 8:1 [NOTE] WISDOM SPEAKS. In chapter 8 Wisdom tells her own story. Black letters here; red starts at 8:22, where she speaks of being with God before the world was made.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW GOD SPEAKING

and those who seek me early shall find me.
18 With me are riches and honor,
enduring wealth and righteousness.
19 My fruit is better than gold, pure gold,
and my harvest surpasses choice silver.
20 I walk in the way of righteousness,
along the paths of justice,
21 bestowing wealth on those who love me
and making their treasuries full.

22 Yahweh possessed me at the beginning of His way,
before His works of old.
23 From everlasting I was established,
from the beginning, before the earth began.
24 When there were no watery depths, I was brought forth,
when no springs were overflowing with water.
25 Before the mountains were settled,
before the hills, I was brought forth,
26 before He made the land or fields,
or any of the dust of the earth.

27 I was there when He established the heavens,
when He inscribed a circle on the face of the deep,
28 when He established the clouds above,
when the fountains of the deep gushed forth,
29 when He set a boundary for the sea,
so that the waters would not surpass His command,
when He marked out the foundations of the earth.

30 Then I was a skilled craftsman at His side,
and His delight day by day,
rejoicing always in His presence.
31 I was rejoicing in His whole world,
delighting together in the sons of men.

32 Now therefore, my sons, listen to me,
for blessed are those who keep my ways.
33 Listen to instruction and be wise;
do not ignore it.
34 Blessed is the man who listens to me,
watching daily at my doors,
waiting at the posts of my doorway.
35 For whoever finds me finds life
and obtains the favor of Yahweh.
36 But he who fails to find me harms himself;
all who hate me love death."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

LADY WISDOM AND JESUS

Who Is Speaking in Proverbs 8?

PROVERBS 8:22 TO 31 · 3:19 · 1:20 TO 33

THE WORDS

Wisdom says she was there before the mountains, before the earth, beside God when He set the sky in place, rejoicing in His world, 8:22 to 31.

SOUNDS LIKE JESUS

In the beginning was the Word, and through Him all things were made, John 1:1 to 3. He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together, Colossians 1:17. Christ is the wisdom of God, 1 Corinthians 1:24.

SHE IS A SHE

In Hebrew the word wisdom is feminine, so wisdom is pictured as a woman. That does not make Jesus a woman; it is how the language works.

WHY THIS BIBLE PRINTS IT RED

These lines are red because so many Christians through the ages have heard Christ in them. No New Testament verse quotes these words as His, so the other views below matter.

PROV 8:22 [MESSIAH SPEAKING] Red letters here mean Wisdom is read as Christ speaking, the Son who was with the Father before creation, John 1:1 to 3 and Colossians 1:15 to 17. Many church fathers read it that way, like Justin Martyr. No New Testament verse quotes these lines as His words. Many Jewish readers and many scholars see wisdom pictured as a person, and later Jewish writers linked her to God's law, Sirach 24. See the Big Question Lady Wisdom and Jesus.

PROV 8:22 [TEXT] POSSESSED. The Hebrew word qanah usually means got or owned, as it does everywhere else in Proverbs: Get wisdom, 4:5. So this Bible says possessed me, like the KJV. Some Bibles say created me, like the Greek Old Testament, and in the 300s Arius used that line to say Christ was created. Others say brought me forth, to match the birth words in 8:24 to 25. See Lady Wisdom and Jesus.

PROV 8:23 [FORESHADOW] Foreordained from everlasting → JN 1:1-3; COL 1:15-17 · MEDIUM p.1698

PROV 8:30 [NOTE] SKILLED CRAFTSMAN. The Hebrew word amon is rare. It can mean master worker, as here, or little child, playing at His side. Both fit the rejoicing that follows.

NOTABLE

Every View

JOHN 1:1 TO 3 · COLOSSIANS 1:15 TO 17 · 1 CORINTHIANS 1:24 · HEBREWS 1:3

VIEW 1: CHRIST SPEAKING

Many early Christian writers, like Justin Martyr, Tertullian and Origen, read Wisdom here as the Son of God before He came to earth. Irenaeus read Wisdom as the Holy Spirit instead. Many Christians today agree: Proverbs 8 is a preview of John 1.

THE FIGHT WITH ARIUS

In the 300s a priest named Arius used 8:22 in Greek, The Lord created me, to teach that the Son was made, so there was a time when He was not. Athanasius answered that the verse, if it is about Christ, speaks of Him becoming a man, or of His work, not of His beginning. The Nicene Creed of 325 says the Son is begotten, not made.

VIEW 2: A PICTURE, NOT A PERSON

Many scholars say wisdom here is one of God's qualities painted as a person, like a poem. Later the New Testament writers used this wisdom language to describe Jesus, because He is what wisdom always pointed to.

VIEW 3: GOD'S LAW

Many Jewish readers link Wisdom to the Torah, God's teaching. Sirach 24 says it outright, and an old rabbi taught that God looked into the Torah when He made the world.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God made the world with wisdom, 3:19, and wisdom is the way to life, 8:35. Many Christians believe that wisdom has a name: Jesus.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Two women throw two parties. Wisdom says, Come eat my bread. Folly says, Stolen water is sweet. Her guests are in the grave. Pick your party carefully.

THE WAY OF WISDOM // PROVERBS 1:1–7

1 Wisdom has built her house;
she has carved out her seven pillars.
2 She has prepared her meat and mixed her wine;
she has also set her table.
3 She has sent out her maidservants;
she calls out from the heights of the city.
4 "Whoever is simple, let him turn in here!"
she says to him who lacks judgment.
5 "Come, eat my bread
and drink the wine I have mixed.
6 Leave your folly behind, and you will live;
walk in the way of understanding."

7 He who corrects a mocker brings shame on himself;
he who rebukes a wicked man taints himself.
8 Do not rebuke a mocker, or he will hate you;
rebuke a wise man, and he will love you.
9 Instruct a wise man, and he will be wiser still;
teach a righteous man, and he will increase his learning.

10 The fear of Yahweh is the beginning of wisdom,
and knowledge of the Holy One is understanding.
11 For through wisdom your days will be multiplied,
and years will be added to your life.
12 If you are wise, you are wise to your own advantage;
but if you scoff, you alone will bear the consequences.

THE WAY OF FOLLY

13 The woman named Folly is loud;
she is naive and knows nothing.
14 She sits at the door of her house,
on a seat in the heights of the city,
15 calling out to those who pass by,
who make their paths straight.
16 "Whoever is simple, let him turn in here!"
she says to him who lacks judgment.
17 "Stolen water is sweet,
and bread eaten in secret is tasty!"
18 But they do not know that the dead are there,

PROV 9:1 [NOTE] SEVEN PILLARS. Wisdom's house is big and finished. Seven is the number for complete in the Bible. Some old readers saw the church here.

PROV 9:10 [NOTABLE] Real wisdom starts with taking God seriously.

that her guests are in the depths of
Sheol.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Now the one liners begin, 375 of Solomon's sayings. A wise son makes Dad happy. Lazy hands make you poor. Love covers over all wrongs. The more you talk, the more you sin, so maybe stop.

SOLOMON'S PROVERBS: THE WISE SON

1 The proverbs of Solomon:

A wise son brings joy to his father,
but a foolish son grief to his mother.

2 Ill-gotten treasures profit nothing,
but righteousness brings deliverance
from death.

3 Yahweh does not let the righteous go
hungry,
but He denies the craving of the wicked.

4 Idle hands make one poor,
but diligent hands bring wealth.

5 He who gathers in summer is a wise son,
but he who sleeps during harvest is a
disgraceful son.

6 Blessings are on the head of the right-
eous,
but the mouth of the wicked conceals
violence.

7 The memory of the righteous is a bless-
ing,
but the name of the wicked will rot.

8 A wise heart will receive command-
ments,
but foolish lips will come to ruin.

9 He who walks in integrity walks securely,
but he who perverts his ways will be
found out.

10 He who winks the eye causes grief,
and foolish lips will come to ruin.

11 The mouth of the righteous is a fountain
of life,
but the mouth of the wicked conceals
violence.

12 *Hatred stirs up dissension,*
but love covers all transgressions.

13 Wisdom is found on the lips of the dis-
cerning,
but a rod is for the back of him who
lacks judgment.

14 The wise store up knowledge,
but the mouth of the fool invites de-
struction.

15 The wealth of the rich man is his forti-
fied city,
but poverty is the ruin of the poor.

16 The labor of the righteous leads to life,
but the gain of the wicked brings pun-
ishment.

17 Whoever heeds instruction is on the
path to life,
but he who ignores reproof goes astray.

18 The one who conceals hatred has lying
lips,
and whoever spreads slander is a fool.

19 When words are many, sin is unavoid-
able,
but he who restrains his lips is wise.

20 The tongue of the righteous is choice
silver,
but the heart of the wicked has little
worth.

21 The lips of the righteous feed many,
but fools die for lack of judgment.

22 The blessing of Yahweh enriches,
and He adds no sorrow to it.

23 The fool delights in shameful conduct,
but a man of understanding has wis-
dom.

24 What the wicked man dreads will over-
take him,
but the desire of the righteous will be
granted.

25 When the whirlwind passes, the wicked
are no more,
but the righteous are secure forever.

■ **PROV 10:1 [NOTE]** 375 SAYINGS. 10:1 to 22:16 has exactly 375 verses. In Hebrew, letters are also numbers, and the letters of Solomon's name, Shelomoh, add up to 375. Many think that is on purpose.

■ **PROV 10:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:20 p.2008
■ **PROV 10:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 4:8 p.2018
■ **PROV 10:12 [NOTE]** QUOTED BY PETER. Love covers a multitude of sins, 1 Peter 4:8. James 5:20 points to it too.

26 Like vinegar to the teeth and smoke to the eyes,
so is the slacker to those who send him.

27 The fear of Yahweh prolongs life,
but the years of the wicked will be cut short.

28 The hope of the righteous is joy,
but the expectations of the wicked will perish.

29 The way of Yahweh is a refuge to the upright,
but destruction awaits those who do evil.

30 The righteous will never be shaken,
but the wicked will not inhabit the land.

31 The mouth of the righteous brings forth wisdom,
but a perverse tongue will be cut out.

32 The lips of the righteous know what is fitting,
but the mouth of the wicked is perverse.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS
Yahweh hates rigged scales. Pride comes, then shame. A pretty woman with no sense is like a gold ring in a pig's snout. The generous get richer, and the stingy get poorer. Go figure.

DISHONEST SCALES // DEUTERONOMY 25:13–16; EZEKIEL 45:10–12

1 Dishonest scales are an abomination to Yahweh,
but an accurate weight is His delight.

2 When pride comes, disgrace follows,
but with humility comes wisdom.

3 The integrity of the upright guides them,
but the perversity of the faithless destroys them.

4 Riches are worthless in the day of wrath,
but righteousness brings deliverance from death.

5 The righteousness of the blameless directs their path,
but the wicked fall by their own wickedness.

6 The righteousness of the upright delivers them,
but the faithless are trapped by their own desires.

7 When the wicked man dies, his hope perishes,
and the hope of his strength vanishes.

8 The righteous man is delivered from trouble;
in his place the wicked man goes in.

9 With his mouth the ungodly man destroys his neighbor,
but through knowledge the righteous are rescued.

10 When the righteous thrive, the city rejoices,
and when the wicked perish, there are shouts of joy.

11 By the blessing of the upright a city is built up,
but by the mouth of the wicked it is torn down.

12 Whoever shows contempt for his neighbor lacks judgment,
but a man of understanding remains silent.

13 A gossip reveals a secret,
but a trustworthy person keeps a confidence.

14 For lack of guidance, a nation falls,
but with many counselors comes deliverance.

15 He who puts up security for a stranger will surely suffer,
but the one who hates indebtedness is secure.

16 A gracious woman attains honor,
but ruthless men gain only wealth.

17 A kind man benefits himself,
but a cruel man brings trouble on himself.

18 The wicked man earns an empty wage,
but he who sows righteousness reaps a true reward.

PROV 11:1 [NOTE] THE SCALES. Before coins, people paid in silver weighed on a balance against stones from a bag. A cheater kept two sets: a heavy stone for buying and a light one for selling. 16:11, 20:10 and 20:23 say the same. See the pim weight in 1 Samuel, p.454.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

19 Genuine righteousness leads to life,
but the pursuit of evil brings death.

20 The perverse in heart are an abomination to Yahweh,
but the blameless in their walk are His delight.

21 Be assured that the wicked will not go unpunished,
but the offspring of the righteous will escape.

22 Like a gold ring in a pig's snout
is a beautiful woman who lacks discretion.

23 The desire of the righteous leads only to good,
but the hope of the wicked brings wrath.

24 One gives freely, yet gains even more;
another withholds what is right, only to become poor.

25 A generous soul will prosper,
and he who refreshes others will himself be refreshed.

26 The people will curse the hoarder of grain,
but blessing will crown the one who sells it.

27 He who searches out good finds favor,
but evil will come to him who seeks it.

28 He who trusts in his riches will fall,
but the righteous will thrive like foliage.

29 He who brings trouble on his house will inherit the wind,
and the fool will be servant to the wise of heart.

30 The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life,
and he who wins souls is wise.

31 *If the righteous receive their due on earth,*
how much more the ungodly and the sinner!

PROV 11:31 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 4:18 p.2019

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Whoever loves correction loves knowledge, and whoever hates it is stupid. That is the actual word. A good wife is her husband's crown. Careless words stab like a sword, but wise words heal.

LOVING DISCIPLINE AND KNOWLEDGE

1 Whoever loves discipline loves knowledge,
but he who hates correction is stupid.

2 The good man obtains favor from Yahweh,
but Yahweh condemns a man who devises evil.

3 A man cannot be established through wickedness,
but the righteous cannot be uprooted.

4 A wife of noble character is her husband's crown,
but she who causes shame is like decay in his bones.

5 The plans of the righteous are just,
but the counsel of the wicked leads to deceit.

6 The words of the wicked lie in wait for blood,
but the speech of the upright rescues them.

7 The wicked are overthrown and perish,
but the house of the righteous will stand.

8 A man is praised according to his wisdom,
but a twisted mind is despised.

9 Better to be lightly esteemed yet have a servant,
than to be self-important but lack food.

10 A righteous man regards the life of his animal,
but the tender mercies of the wicked are only cruelty.

11 The one who works his land will have plenty of food,
but whoever chases fantasies lacks judgment.

THE HEART

12 The wicked desire the plunder of evil men,
but the root of the righteous flourishes.

13 An evil man is trapped by his rebellious speech,
but a righteous man escapes from trouble.

14 By fruitful speech a man is filled with good things,
and the work of his hands returns to him.

15 The way of a fool is right in his own eyes,
but a wise man listens to counsel.

16 A fool's anger is known at once,
but a prudent man overlooks an insult.

17 He who speaks the truth declares what is right,
but a false witness speaks deceit.

18 Speaking rashly is like a piercing sword,
but the tongue of the wise brings healing.

19 Truthful lips endure forever,
but a lying tongue lasts only a moment.

20 Deceit is in the hearts of those who devise evil,
but the counselors of peace have joy.

21 No harm befalls the righteous,
but the wicked are filled with trouble.

22 Lying lips are detestable to Yahweh,
but those who deal faithfully are His delight.

23 A shrewd man keeps his knowledge to himself,
but a foolish heart proclaims its folly.

24 The hand of the diligent will rule,
but laziness ends in forced labor.

25 Anxiety weighs down the heart of a man,
but a good word cheers it up.

26 A righteous man is cautious in friendship,
but the ways of the wicked lead them astray.

27 A lazy man does not roast his game,
but a diligent man prizes his possession.

28 There is life in the path of righteousness,
but another path leads to death.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Hope put off makes the heart sick. Walk with the wise and you will become wise; hang out with fools and you will get hurt. Whoever spares the rod hates his son.

A FATHER'S DISCIPLINE

1 A wise son heeds his father's discipline,
but a mocker does not listen to rebuke.

2 From the fruit of his lips a man enjoys good things,
but the desire of the faithless is violence.

3 He who guards his mouth protects his life,
but the one who opens his lips invites his own ruin.

4 The slacker craves yet has nothing,
but the soul of the diligent is fully satisfied.

5 The righteous hate falsehood,
but the wicked bring shame and disgrace.

6 Righteousness guards the man of integrity,
but wickedness undermines the sinner.

7 One pretends to be rich, but has nothing;
another pretends to be poor, yet has great wealth.

8 Riches may ransom a man's life,
but a poor man hears no threat.

9 The light of the righteous shines brightly,
but the lamp of the wicked is extinguished.

10 Arrogance leads only to strife,
but wisdom is with the well-advised.

11 Dishonest wealth will dwindle,
but what is earned through hard work will be multiplied.

12 Hope deferred makes the heart sick,

PROV 12:25 [HEART] Anxiety weighs down the heart, but a kind word cheers it up.

THE HEART

but desire fulfilled is a tree of life.

13 He who despises instruction will pay the penalty,
but the one who respects a command will be rewarded.

14 The teaching of the wise is a fountain of life,
turning one from the snares of death.

15 Good understanding wins favor,
but the way of the faithless is difficult.

16 Every prudent man acts with knowledge,
but a fool displays his folly.

17 A wicked messenger falls into trouble,
but a faithful envoy brings healing.

18 Poverty and shame come to him who ignores discipline,
but whoever heeds correction is honored.

19 Desire fulfilled is sweet to the soul,
but turning from evil is detestable to fools.

20 He who walks with the wise will become wise,
but the companion of fools will be destroyed.

21 Disaster pursues sinners,
but prosperity is the reward of the righteous.

22 A good man leaves an inheritance to his children's children,
but the sinner's wealth is passed to the righteous.

23 Abundant food is in the fallow ground of the poor,
but without justice it is swept away.

24 He who spares the rod hates his son,
but he who loves him disciplines him diligently.

25 A righteous man eats to his heart's content,
but the stomach of the wicked is empty.

PROV 13:12 [HEART] Hope put off makes the heart sick.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

There is a way that seems right to a man, but it ends in death. Even in laughter the heart can ache. A heart at peace gives life to the body, but envy rots the bones.

THE WISE WOMAN

1 Every wise woman builds her house,
but a foolish one tears it down with her own hands.

2 He who walks in uprightness fears Yahweh,
but the one who is devious in his ways despises Him.

3 The proud speech of a fool brings a rod to his back,
but the lips of the wise protect them.

4 Where there are no oxen, the manger is empty,
but an abundant harvest comes through the strength of the ox.

5 An honest witness does not deceive,
but a dishonest witness pours forth lies.

6 A mocker seeks wisdom and finds none,
but knowledge comes easily to the discerning.

7 Stay away from a foolish man;
you will gain no knowledge from his speech.

8 The wisdom of the prudent is to discern his way,
but the folly of fools deceives them.

9 Fools mock the making of amends,
but goodwill is found among the upright.

10 The heart knows its own bitterness,
and no stranger shares in its joy.

11 The house of the wicked will be destroyed,
but the tent of the upright will flourish.

12 There is a way that seems right to a man,
but its end is the way of death.

13 Even in laughter the heart may ache,

PROV 14:12 [NOTE] SAID TWICE. 16:25 repeats this verse word for word. A few sayings show up twice in Proverbs, like 21:9 and 25:24.

THE HEART NOTABLE

and joy may end in sorrow.

14 The backslider in heart receives the fill
of his own ways,
but a good man is rewarded for his
ways.

15 The simple man believes every word,
but the prudent man watches his steps.

16 A wise man fears and turns from evil,
but a fool is careless and reckless.

17 A quick-tempered man acts foolishly,
and a devious man is hated.

18 The simple inherit folly,
but the prudent are crowned with
knowledge.

19 The evil bow before the good,
and the wicked at the gates of the right-
eous.

20 The poor man is hated even by his
neighbor,
but many are those who love the rich.

21 He who despises his neighbor sins,
but blessed is he who shows kindness
to the poor.

22 Do not those who contrive evil go
astray?
But those who plan goodness find lov-
ing devotion and faithfulness.

23 There is profit in all labor,
but mere talk leads only to poverty.

24 The crown of the wise is their wealth,
but the effort of fools is folly.

25 A truthful witness saves lives,
but one who utters lies is deceitful.

26 He who fears Yahweh is secure in confi-
dence,
and his children shall have a place of
refuge.

27 The fear of Yahweh is a fountain of life,
turning a man from the snares of death.

28 A large population is a king's splendor,
but a lack of subjects is a prince's ruin.

29 A patient man has great understanding,
but a quick-tempered man promotes
folly.

30 A tranquil heart is life to the body,
but envy rots the bones.

31 Whoever oppresses the poor taunts
their Maker,
but whoever is kind to the needy honors
Him.

32 The wicked man is thrown down by his
own sin,
but the righteous man has a refuge even
in death.

33 Wisdom rests in the heart of the dis-
cerning;
even among fools she is known.

34 Righteousness exalts a nation,
but sin is a disgrace to any people.

35 A king delights in a wise servant,
but his anger falls on the shameful.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

A gentle answer turns away anger. A bowl of veg-gies with love beats a steak dinner with hate. Plans fail without good advice, so ask around.

A GENTLE ANSWER TURNS AWAY WRATH

1 A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger.

2 The tongue of the wise commends
knowledge,
but the mouth of the fool spouts folly.

3 The eyes of Yahweh are in every place,
observing the evil and the good.

4 A soothing tongue is a tree of life,
but a perverse tongue crushes the
spirit.

5 A fool rejects his father's discipline,
but whoever heeds correction is pru-
dent.

6 The house of the righteous has great
treasure,
but the income of the wicked is trouble.

7 The lips of the wise spread knowledge,
but not so the hearts of fools.

8 The sacrifice of the wicked is detestable
to Yahweh,

PROV 14:30 [HEART] A heart at peace gives life to the body.
PROV 15:1 [NOTABLE] How you say it can stop a fight or start one.

THE HEART

but the prayer of the upright is His delight.

9 Yahweh detests the way of the wicked,
but He loves those who pursue righteousness.

10 Discipline is harsh for him who leaves the path;
he who hates correction will die.

11 Sheol and Abaddon lie open before Yahweh—
how much more the hearts of men!

12 A mocker does not love to be reproved,
nor will he consult the wise.

13 A joyful heart makes a cheerful countenance,
but sorrow of the heart crushes the spirit.

14 A discerning heart seeks knowledge,
but the mouth of a fool feeds on folly.

15 All the days of the oppressed are bad,
but a cheerful heart has a continual feast.

16 Better a little with the fear of Yahweh
than great treasure with turmoil.

17 Better a dish of vegetables where there is love
than a fattened ox with hatred.

18 A hot-tempered man stirs up strife,
but he who is slow to anger calms dispute.

19 The way of the slacker is like a hedge of thorns,
but the path of the upright is a highway.

20 A wise son brings joy to his father,
but a foolish man despises his mother.

21 Folly is joy to one who lacks judgment,
but a man of understanding walks a straight path.

22 Plans fail for lack of counsel,
but with many advisers they succeed.

23 A man takes joy in a fitting reply—
and how good is a timely word!

24 The path of life leads upward for the wise,
that he may avoid going down to Sheol.

25 Yahweh tears down the house of the proud,
but He protects the boundaries of the widow.

26 Yahweh detests the thoughts of the wicked,
but the words of the pure are pleasant to Him.

27 He who is greedy for unjust gain brings trouble on his household,
but he who hates bribes will live.

28 The heart of the righteous ponders how to answer,
but the mouth of the wicked blurts out evil.

29 Yahweh is far from the wicked,
but He hears the prayer of the righteous.

30 The light of the eyes cheers the heart,
and good news nourishes the bones.

31 He who listens to life-giving reproof
will dwell among the wise.

32 He who ignores discipline despises himself,
but whoever heeds correction gains understanding.

33 The fear of Yahweh is the instruction of wisdom,
and humility comes before honor.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

You make the plans, Yahweh directs the steps. Pride goes before destruction. Commit your work to Yahweh. Even when you roll the dice, He decides how they land.

THE REPLY OF THE TONGUE IS FROM YAHWEH

1 The plans of the heart belong to man,
but the reply of the tongue is from Yahweh.

2 All a man's ways are pure in his own eyes,

PROV 15:11 [HEART] If God can see into the grave, He can surely see into a human heart.
PROV 15:13 [HEART] A glad heart makes a cheerful face.

PROV 16:1 [HEART] People make plans in their heart, but the answer comes from the Lord.

THE HEART NOTABLE

but his motives are weighed out by Yahweh.

3 Commit your works to Yahweh
and your plans will be achieved.

4 Yahweh has made everything for His purpose—
even the wicked for the day of disaster.

5 Everyone who is proud in heart is detestable to Yahweh;
be assured that he will not go unpunished.

6 By loving devotion and faithfulness iniquity is atoned for,
and by the fear of Yahweh one turns aside from evil.

7 When a man's ways please Yahweh,
He makes even the man's enemies live at peace with him.

8 Better a little with righteousness
than great gain with injustice.

9 A man's heart plans his course,
but Yahweh determines his steps.

10 A divine verdict is on the lips of a king;
his mouth must not betray justice.

11 Honest scales and balances are from Yahweh;
all the weights in the bag are His concern.

12 Wicked behavior is detestable for kings,
for a throne is established through righteousness.

13 Righteous lips are a king's delight,
and he who speaks honestly is beloved.

14 The wrath of a king is a messenger of death,
but a wise man will pacify it.

15 When a king's face brightens, there is life;
his favor is like a rain cloud in spring.

16 How much better to acquire wisdom than gold!
To gain understanding is more desirable than silver.

17 The highway of the upright leads away from evil;
he who guards his way protects his life.

18 Pride goes before destruction,
and a haughty spirit before a fall.

19 It is better to be lowly in spirit among the humble
than to divide the spoil with the proud.

20 Whoever heeds instruction will find success,
and blessed is he who trusts in Yahweh.

21 The wise in heart are called discerning,
and pleasant speech promotes instruction.

22 Understanding is a fountain of life to its possessor,
but the discipline of fools is folly.

23 The heart of the wise man instructs his mouth
and adds persuasiveness to his lips.

24 Pleasant words are a honeycomb,
sweet to the soul and healing to the bones.

25 There is a way that seems right to a man,
but its end is the way of death.

26 A worker's appetite works for him
because his hunger drives him onward.

27 A worthless man digs up evil,
and his speech is like a scorching fire.

28 A perverse man spreads dissension,
and a gossip divides close friends.

29 A violent man entices his neighbor
and leads him down a path that is not good.

30 He who winks his eye devises perversity;
he who purses his lips is bent on evil.

31 Gray hair is a crown of glory;
it is attained along the path of righteousness.

PROV 16:3 [NOTABLE] Hand your plans to God first, and let Him shape them.
PROV 16:5 [HEART] Everyone proud in heart is detestable to the Lord.
PROV 16:9 [HEART] A man plans his way in his heart, but the Lord directs his steps.

PROV 16:18 [NOTABLE] Pride is the step right before the crash.

THE HEART NOTABLE

32 He who is slow to anger is better than a warrior,
and he who controls his temper is greater than one who captures a city.

33 The lot is cast into the lap,
but its every decision is from Yahweh.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

A dry crust in peace beats a feast with fighting. A friend loves at all times. A joyful heart is good medicine. Even a fool looks wise if he keeps his mouth shut.

BETTER A DRY MORSEL IN QUIETNESS

1 Better a dry morsel in quietness
than a house full of feasting with strife.

2 A wise servant will rule over a disgraceful son
and share his inheritance as one of the brothers.

3 A crucible for silver and a furnace for gold,
but Yahweh is the tester of hearts.

4 A wicked man listens to evil lips;
a liar gives ear to a destructive tongue.

5 He who mocks the poor insults their Maker;
whoever gloats over calamity will not go unpunished.

6 Grandchildren are the crown of the aged,
and the glory of a son is his father.

7 Eloquent words are unfit for a fool;
how much worse are lying lips to a ruler!

8 A bribe is a charm to its giver;
wherever he turns, he succeeds.

9 Whoever conceals an offense promotes love,
but he who brings it up separates friends.

10 A rebuke cuts into a man of discernment
deeper than a hundred lashes cut into a fool.

11 An evil man seeks only rebellion;
a cruel messenger will be sent against him.

12 It is better to meet a bear robbed of her cubs
than a fool in his folly.

13 If anyone returns evil for good,
evil will never leave his house.

14 To start a quarrel is to release a flood;
so abandon the dispute before it breaks out.

15 Acquitting the guilty and condemning the righteous—
both are detestable to Yahweh.

16 Why should the fool have money in his hand
with no intention of buying wisdom?

17 A friend loves at all times,
and a brother is born for adversity.

18 A man lacking judgment strikes hands in pledge
and puts up security for his neighbor.

19 He who loves transgression loves strife;
he who builds his gate high invites destruction.

20 The one with a perverse heart finds no good,
and he whose tongue is deceitful falls into trouble.

21 A man fathers a fool to his own grief;
the father of a fool has no joy.

22 A joyful heart is good medicine,
but a broken spirit dries up the bones.

23 A wicked man takes a covert bribe
to subvert the course of justice.

24 Wisdom is the focus of the discerning,
but the eyes of a fool wander to the ends of the earth.

25 A foolish son brings grief to his father
and bitterness to her who bore him.

26 It is surely not good to punish the innocent
or to flog a noble for his honesty.

PROV 16:33 [NOTE] CASTING LOTS. Like rolling dice or drawing straws. Israel used lots to make decisions, and the apostles did too, Acts 1:26. The point: there is no such thing as luck with God.

PROV 17:3 [HEART] Fire tests gold and silver. God tests the heart.

PROV 17:17 [NOTABLE] Real friends show up when life is hard.

PROV 17:22 [HEART] A joyful heart is good medicine.

THE HEART NOTABLE

27 A man of knowledge restrains his
words,
and a man of understanding maintains a
calm spirit.

28 Even a fool is considered wise if he
keeps silent,
and discerning when he holds his
tongue.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

The name of Yahweh is a strong tower. Death and life are in the power of the tongue. He who finds a wife finds a good thing. And there is a friend who sticks closer than a brother.

THE SELFISHNESS OF THE UNFRIENDLY

1 He who isolates himself pursues selfish
desires;
he rebels against all sound judgment.

2 A fool does not delight in understanding,
but only in airing his opinions.

3 With a wicked man comes contempt as
well,
and shame is accompanied by disgrace.

4 The words of a man's mouth are deep
waters;
the fountain of wisdom is a bubbling
brook.

5 Showing partiality to the wicked is not
good,
nor is depriving the innocent of justice.

6 A fool's lips bring him strife,
and his mouth invites a beating.

7 A fool's mouth is his ruin,
and his lips are a snare to his soul.

8 The words of a gossip are like choice
morsels
that go down into the inmost being.

9 Whoever is slothful in his work
is brother to him who destroys.

10 The name of Yahweh is a strong tower;
the righteous run to it and are safe.

11 A rich man's wealth is his fortified city;
it is like a high wall in his imagination.

12 Before his downfall a man's heart is
proud,
but humility comes before honor.

13 He who answers a matter before he
hears it—
this is folly and disgrace to him.

14 The spirit of a man can endure his sick-
ness,
but who can survive a broken spirit?

15 The heart of the discerning acquires
knowledge,
and the ear of the wise seeks it out.

16 A man's gift opens doors for him,
and brings him before great men.

17 The first to state his case seems right
until another comes and cross-exam-
ines him.

18 Casting the lot ends quarrels
and separates strong opponents.

19 An offended brother is harder to win
than a fortified city,
and disputes are like the bars of a cas-
tle.

20 From the fruit of his mouth a man's belly
is filled;
with the harvest from his lips he is satis-
fied.

21 Life and death are in the power of the
tongue,
and those who love it will eat its fruit.

22 He who finds a wife finds a good thing
and obtains favor from Yahweh.

23 The poor man pleads for mercy,
but the rich man answers harshly.

24 A man of many companions may come
to ruin,
but there is a friend who stays closer
than a brother.

PROV 18:10 [NOTABLE] When trouble comes, run to God first.

PROV 18:12 [HEART] Before destruction the heart is proud, but humility comes before honor.

PROV 18:21 [NOTABLE] Your words can build people up or tear them down. Choose them well.

PROV 18:22 [NOTE] A GOOD THING. The Greek Old Testament adds a line here about sending away a good wife. It is not in the Hebrew.

THE HEART

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Better poor and honest than rich and crooked. A man's foolishness ruins his life, and then he is mad at Yahweh. A nagging wife is like a dripping faucet. Many plans are in your heart, but God's plan wins.

THE MAN OF INTEGRITY

1 Better a poor man who walks with integrity
than a fool whose lips are perverse.

2 Even zeal is no good without knowledge,
and he who hurries his footsteps misses the mark.

3 A man's own folly subverts his way,
yet his heart rages against Yahweh.

4 Wealth attracts many friends,
but a poor man is deserted by his friend.

5 A false witness will not go unpunished,
and one who utters lies will not escape.

6 Many seek the favor of the prince,
and everyone is a friend of the gift giver.

7 All the brothers of a poor man hate him—
how much more do his friends avoid him!
He may pursue them with pleading,
but they are nowhere to be found.

8 He who acquires wisdom loves himself;
one who safeguards understanding will find success.

9 A false witness will not go unpunished,
and one who pours out lies will perish.

10 Luxury is unseemly for a fool—
how much worse for a slave to rule over princes!

11 A man's insight gives him patience,
and his virtue is to overlook an offense.

12 A king's rage is like the roar of a lion,
but his favor is like dew on the grass.

13 A foolish son is his father's ruin,
and a quarrelsome wife is like a constant dripping.

14 Houses and wealth are inherited from fathers,
but a prudent wife is from Yahweh.

15 Laziness brings on deep sleep,
and an idle soul will suffer hunger.

16 He who keeps a commandment preserves his soul,
but he who is careless in his ways will die.

17 Kindness to the poor is a loan to Yahweh,
and He will repay the lender.

18 Discipline your son, for in that there is hope;
do not be party to his death.

19 A man of great anger must pay the penalty;
if you rescue him, you will have to do so again.

20 Listen to counsel and accept discipline,
that you may be wise the rest of your days.

21 Many plans are in a man's heart,
but the purpose of Yahweh will prevail.

22 The desire of a man is loving devotion;
better to be poor than a liar.

23 The fear of Yahweh leads to life,
that one may rest content, without visitation from harm.

24 The slacker buries his hand in the dish;
he will not even bring it back to his mouth.

25 Strike a mocker, and the simple will beware;
rebuke the discerning man, and he will gain knowledge.

26 He who assaults his father or evicts his mother
is a son who brings shame and disgrace.

27 If you cease to hear instruction, my son,
you will stray from the words of knowledge.

28 A corrupt witness mocks justice,
and a wicked mouth swallows iniquity.

29 Judgments are prepared for mockers,
and beatings for the backs of fools.

PROV 19:21 [HEART] There are many plans in a man's heart, but the Lord's purpose will stand.

THE HEART

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Wine is a mocker and beer is a brawler. The lazy man does not plow in the fall, then wonders why there is no harvest. Rigged weights make God sick. Do not say, I will get even.

WINE IS A MOCKER

1 Wine is a mocker, strong drink is a brawler,
and whoever is led astray by them is not wise.

2 The terror of a king is like the roar of a lion;
whoever provokes him forfeits his own life.

3 It is honorable for a man to resolve a dispute,
but any fool will quarrel.

4 The slacker does not plow in season;
at harvest time he looks, but nothing is there.

5 The intentions of a man's heart are deep waters,
but a man of understanding draws them out.

6 Many a man proclaims his loving devotion,
but who can find a trustworthy man?

7 The righteous man walks with integrity;
blessed are his children after him.

8 A king who sits on a throne to judge
sifts out all evil with his eyes.

9 Who can say, "I have kept my heart pure;
I am cleansed from my sin"?

10 Differing weights and unequal measures—
both are detestable to Yahweh.

11 Even a young man is known by his actions—
whether his conduct is pure and upright.

12 Ears that hear and eyes that see—
Yahweh has made them both.

13 Do not love sleep, or you will grow poor;
open your eyes, and you will have plenty of food.

14 "Worthless, worthless!" says the buyer,
but on the way out, he gloats.

15 There is an abundance of gold and rubies,
but lips of knowledge are a rare treasure.

16 Take the garment of the one who posts security for a stranger;
get collateral if it is for a foreigner.

17 Food gained by fraud is sweet to a man,
but later his mouth is full of gravel.

18 Set plans by consultation,
and wage war under sound guidance.

19 He who reveals secrets is a constant gossip;
avoid the one who babbles with his lips.

20 Whoever curses his father or mother,
his lamp will be extinguished in deepest darkness.

21 An inheritance gained quickly
will not be blessed in the end.

22 Do not say, "I will avenge this evil!"
Wait on Yahweh, and He will save you.

23 Unequal weights are detestable to Yahweh,
and dishonest scales are no good.

24 A man's steps are from Yahweh,
so how can anyone understand his own way?

25 It is a trap for a man to dedicate something rashly,
only later to reconsider his vows.

26 A wise king separates out the wicked
and drives the threshing wheel over them.

27 The spirit of a man is the lamp of Yahweh,
searching out his inmost being.

28 Loving devotion and faithfulness preserve a king;
by these he maintains his throne.

PROV 20:1 [NOTE] WINE. Proverbs does not ban wine, 3:10 and 9:5, but it warns again and again about drunkenness, 23:29 to 35.

PROV 20:5 [HEART] The purposes of a heart are like deep water. A wise person draws them out.

THE HEART

29 The glory of young men is their
strength,
and gray hair is the splendor of the old.

30 Lashes and wounds scour evil,
and beatings cleanse the inmost parts.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

The king's heart is like a stream in Yahweh's hand. Doing right matters more to God than sacrifice. Better to live in the corner of the roof than share a house with a quarrelsome wife.

THE KING'S HEART // PSALM 21:1–13

1 The king's heart is a waterway in the
hand of Yahweh;
He directs it where He pleases.

2 All a man's ways seem right to him,
but Yahweh weighs the heart.

3 To do righteousness and justice
is more desirable to Yahweh than sacrifice.

4 Haughty eyes and a proud heart—
the guides of the wicked—are sin.

5 The plans of the diligent bring plenty,
as surely as haste leads to poverty.

6 Making a fortune by a lying tongue
is a vanishing mist, a deadly pursuit.

7 The violence of the wicked will sweep
them away
because they refuse to do what is just.

8 The way of a guilty man is crooked,
but the conduct of the innocent is upright.

9 Better to live on a corner of the roof
than to share a house with a quarrelsome wife.

10 The soul of the wicked man craves evil;
his neighbor finds no favor in his eyes.

11 When a mocker is punished, the simple
gain wisdom;
and when a wise man is instructed, he
acquires knowledge.

12 The Righteous One considers the house
of the wicked
and brings the wicked to ruin.

13 Whoever shuts his ears to the cry of the
poor,
he too shall cry out and receive no answer.

14 A gift in secret soothes anger,
and a covert bribe pacifies great wrath.

15 Justice executed is a joy to the righteous,
but a terror to the workers of iniquity.

16 The man who strays from the path of
understanding
will rest in the assembly of the dead.

17 He who loves pleasure will become
poor;
the one who loves wine and oil will
never be rich.

18 The wicked become a ransom for the
righteous,
and the faithless for the upright.

19 Better to live in the desert
than with a contentious and ill-tempered
wife.

20 Precious treasures and oil are in the
dwelling of the wise,
but a foolish man consumes them.

21 He who pursues righteousness and loving devotion
finds life, righteousness, and honor.

22 A wise man scales the city of the mighty
and pulls down the stronghold in which
they trust.

23 He who guards his mouth and tongue
keeps his soul from distress.

24 Mocker is the name of the proud and arrogant man—
of him who acts with excessive pride.

25 The craving of the slacker kills him
because his hands refuse to work.
26 All day long he covets more,
but the righteous give without restraint.

27 The sacrifice of the wicked is
detestable—
how much more so when brought with ill
intent!

28 A lying witness will perish,

PROV 21:2 [HEART] We all think we are right. God weighs the heart.

NOTABLE

but the man who listens to truth will
speak forever.

29 A wicked man hardens his face,
but the upright man makes his way sure.

30 There is no wisdom, no understanding,
no counsel
that can prevail against Yahweh.

31 A horse is prepared for the day of battle,
but victory is of Yahweh.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

A good name beats great riches. Train up a child in the way he should go. The borrower is a slave to the lender. Then a new section starts: thirty sayings of the wise.

A GOOD NAME

1 A good name is more desirable than
great riches;
favor is better than silver and gold.

2 The rich and the poor have this in common:
Yahweh is Maker of them all.

3 The prudent see danger and take cover,
but the simple keep going and suffer the
consequences.

4 The rewards of humility and the fear of
Yahweh
are wealth and honor and life.

5 Thorns and snares lie on the path of the
perverse;
he who guards his soul stays far from
them.

6 Train up a child in the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not depart
from it.

7 The rich rule over the poor,
and the borrower is slave to the lender.

8 He who sows injustice will reap disaster,
and the rod of his fury will be destroyed.

9 A generous man will be blessed,
for he shares his bread with the poor.

PROV 22:6 [NOTABLE] What you teach kids early shapes their whole life. See Are Proverbs Promises?

PROV 22:6 [NOTE] TRAIN UP. The Hebrew can also mean dedicate. In the way he should go may mean the right way, or the way that fits who the child is. See the Big Question Are Proverbs Promises?

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ARE PROVERBS PROMISES?

Train Up a Child

PROVERBS 22:6 · 10:4 · 10:27 · 3:9 TO 10 · 26:4 TO 5

THE VERSE

Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it, 22:6. Many godly parents have kids who walked away from God. Did God break a promise?

HOW PROVERBS WORKS

A proverb is a short saying about how life usually goes. Lazy hands make you poor, 10:4. The fear of Yahweh adds years to life, 10:27. Both are true as a rule, but some hard workers are poor and some godly people die young.

THE BOOK ITSELF SHOWS IT

26:4 says do not answer a fool, and 26:5 says do. They cannot both be promises for every case. They are wisdom for different moments.

Every View

ECCLESIASTES 9:11 · JOB 42:7 · EZEKIEL 18:20 · 2 TIMOTHY 3:16

VIEW 1: A GENERAL RULE

Most Bible teachers say proverbs are true in general, not guarantees. Good training usually lasts a lifetime, but every child still makes his own choices, Ezekiel 18:20. Job's friends got in trouble for turning a rule into a promise, Job 42:7.

VIEW 2: A PROMISE WITH A CATCH

Some read 22:6 as a real promise from God that may be kept late in life. When he is old he will come back, even after years away. Many parents hold on to it in prayer.

VIEW 3: HIS OWN WAY

Some say the Hebrew means train him in his own way. Shape the training to the child, or else, as a warning: let a kid have his own way and he will never change.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Every word of God is true, 30:5, and Proverbs is good for teaching, 2 Timothy 3:16. Training a child matters, and parents can pray and trust God with what they cannot control.

ARCHAEOLOGY

10 Drive out the mocker, and conflict will depart;
even quarreling and insults will cease.
11 He who loves a pure heart and gracious lips
will have the king for a friend.
12 Yahweh's eyes keep watch over knowledge,
but He frustrates the words of the faithless.
13 The slacker says, "There is a lion outside!
I will be slain in the streets!"
14 The mouth of an adulteress is a deep pit;
he who is under the wrath of Yahweh will fall into it.
15 Foolishness is bound up in the heart of a child,
but the rod of discipline drives it far from him.
16 Oppressing the poor to enrich oneself or giving gifts to the rich
will surely lead to poverty.

THIRTY SAYINGS OF THE WISE

SAYING 1

17 Incline your ear and hear the words of the wise—
apply your mind to my knowledge—
18 for it is pleasing when you keep them within you
and they are constantly on your lips.
19 So that your trust may be in Yahweh,
I instruct you today—yes, you.
20 Have I not written for you thirty sayings
about counsel and knowledge,
21 to show you true and reliable words,
that you may soundly answer those who sent you?

SAYING 2

22 Do not rob a poor man because he is poor,
and do not crush the afflicted at the gate,
23 for Yahweh will take up their case
and will plunder those who rob them.

SAYING 3

24 Do not make friends with an angry man,
and do not associate with a hot-tempered man,
25 or you may learn his ways
and entangle yourself in a snare.

SAYING 4

26 Do not be one who gives pledges,
who puts up security for debts.
27 If you have nothing with which to pay,
why should your bed be taken from under you?

SAYING 5

28 Do not move an ancient boundary stone
which your fathers have placed.

SAYING 6

29 Do you see a man skilled in his work?
He will be stationed in the presence of kings;
he will not stand before obscure men.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

At a fancy dinner with the boss, put a knife to your throat if you are a big eater. Riches sprout wings and fly away. Do not stare at the wine when it sparkles; it bites like a snake.

TRUE RICHES // 1 TIMOTHY 6:17–19; JAMES 5:1–6

SAYING 7

1 When you sit down to dine with a ruler,
consider carefully what is set before you,
2 and put a knife to your throat
if you possess a great appetite.
3 Do not crave his delicacies,
for that food is deceptive.

PROV 22:17 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Egyptian book of wisdom in thirty chapters, about 1300 to 1100 BC, has many lines like Proverbs 22:17 to 24:22, see The Instruction of Amenemope Field Notes page, p.1015 FIELD NOTES p.1015

PROV 22:17 [NOTE] THE WORDS OF THE WISE. A new part of the book begins here and runs to 24:22. It sounds a lot like an Egyptian book of wisdom.

PROV 22:20 [TEXT] THIRTY SAYINGS. The Hebrew is hard to read here. The letters as written can mean before now. The Jewish reading tradition says excellent things, like the KJV, and the Greek says three times. Many Bibles today read thirty, because this part can be counted as thirty sayings, and an Egyptian book of wisdom has thirty chapters. See The Instruction of Amenemope.

PROV 22:28 [NOTE] BOUNDARY STONES. Stones marked the edge of a family's land. Moving one at night was stealing land, Deuteronomy 19:14. 23:10 says it again.

THE HEART

SAYING 8

4 Do not wear yourself out to get rich;
be wise enough to restrain yourself.
5 When you glance at wealth, it disappears,
for it makes wings for itself
and flies like an eagle to the sky.

SAYING 9

6 Do not eat the bread of a stingy man,
and do not crave his delicacies;
7 for as he thinks within himself,
so is he.
"Eat and drink," he says to you,
but his heart is not with you.
8 You will vomit up what little you have eaten
and waste your pleasant words.

SAYING 10

9 Do not speak to a fool,
for he will despise the wisdom of your words.

SAYING 11

10 Do not move an ancient boundary stone
or encroach on the fields of the fatherless,
11 for their Redeemer is strong;
He will take up their case against you.

SAYING 12

12 Apply your heart to instruction
and your ears to words of knowledge.

SAYING 13

13 Do not withhold discipline from a child;
although you strike him with a rod, he will not die.
14 Strike him with a rod,
and you will deliver his soul from Sheol.

SAYING 14

15 My son, if your heart is wise,
my own heart will indeed rejoice.
16 My inmost being will rejoice
when your lips speak what is right.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SPARE THE ROD?

What Proverbs Says

PROVERBS 13:24 · 22:15 · 23:13 TO 14 · 29:15 · 3:11 TO 12

THE VERSES

He who spares the rod hates his son, 13:24. Strike him with a rod and you will save his soul from the grave, 23:13 to 14. The rod and correction give wisdom, 29:15. The saying Spare the rod and spoil the child is not in the Bible. It was made famous by an English poem, Hudibras, printed in 1663 and 1664.

WHAT THE ROD WAS

A shepherd's stick or a teacher's switch. In Bible times a father, or a teacher, used it to correct a child, and also used it on grown fools, 10:13 and 26:3.

THE HEART OF IT

Proverbs says discipline is love: Yahweh disciplines the one He loves, like a father, 3:11 to 12. A parent who never corrects is not being kind.

Every View

HEBREWS 12:5 TO 11 · EPHESIANS 6:4 · COLOSSIANS 3:21

VIEW 1: SPANKING IS BIBLICAL

Many Christians say these verses teach that careful, loving spanking of young children is good, never in anger and never to harm. They point to 22:15 and say God's word does not change.

VIEW 2: THE ROD MEANS DISCIPLINE

Many other Christians say the rod is a picture of correction in general. In their day it meant a stick; today it means firm rules, consequences and teaching. They point out that Proverbs also uses the rod on adults.

VIEW 3: TIMES HAVE CHANGED

Some say the Bible gives the goal, a child who learns wisdom, while the method fit an ancient world. They point to the New Testament: Fathers, do not provoke your children, Ephesians 6:4 and Colossians 3:21.

WHAT THE LAW SAYS TODAY

Laws on spanking differ from place to place. Hitting that leaves injuries is

PROV 23:7 [HEART] A stingy man says eat and drink, but his heart is not with you. Words and heart can say two different things.

PROV 23:7 [TEXT] AS HE THINKS. This line follows the well known KJV, As he thinketh in his heart, so is he. The Hebrew word here is nephesh, soul or throat, not heart, and many Bibles today read it about a stingy host who is counting the cost of every bite. Either way, the next words say it plainly: his heart is not with you.

PROV 23:13 [NOTE] AHIQAR SAID IT TOO. An old Aramaic story has almost the same saying: if you strike a boy with a rod, he will not die. See The Ahiqar Papyrus in 2 Peter, p.2033, and the Big Question Spare the Rod?

abuse in every view, and the Bible never allows a parent to harm a child.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Parents must correct their children, with love and self control, never in rage, 29:22. The goal is a child who learns wisdom, not a child who is afraid.

SAYING 15

17 Do not let your heart envy sinners,
but always continue in the fear of Yahweh.
18 For surely there is a future,
and your hope will not be cut off.

SAYING 16

19 Listen, my son, and be wise,
and guide your heart on the right course.
20 Do not join those who drink too much wine
or gorge themselves on meat.
21 For the drunkard and the glutton will come to poverty,
and drowsiness will clothe them in rags.

SAYING 17

22 Listen to your father who gave you life,
and do not despise your mother when she is old.
23 Invest in truth and never sell it—
in wisdom and instruction and understanding.
24 The father of a righteous man will greatly rejoice,
and he who fathers a wise son will delight in him.
25 May your father and mother be glad,
and may she who gave you birth rejoice!

SAYING 18

26 My son, give me your heart,
and let your eyes delight in my ways.
27 For a prostitute is a deep pit,
and an adulteress is a narrow well.
28 Like a robber she lies in wait
and multiplies the faithless among men.

SAYING 19

29 Who has woe? Who has sorrow?
Who has contentions? Who has complaints?
Who has needless wounds? Who has bloodshot eyes?
30 Those who linger over wine,
who go to taste mixed drinks.
31 Do not gaze at wine while it is red,
when it sparkles in the cup
and goes down smoothly.
32 In the end it bites like a snake
and stings like a viper.
33 Your eyes will see strange things,
and your mind will utter perversities.
34 You will be like one sleeping on the high seas
or lying on the top of a mast:
35 "They struck me, but I feel no pain!
They beat me, but I did not know it!
When can I wake up
to search for another drink?"

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not envy evil people. By wisdom a house is built. If you faint when things get hard, your strength is small. A little sleep, a little slumber, and poverty sneaks up like a robber.

DO NOT ENVY

SAYING 20

1 Do not envy wicked men
or desire their company;
2 for their hearts devise violence,
and their lips declare trouble.

SAYING 21

3 By wisdom a house is built
and by understanding it is established;
4 through knowledge its rooms are filled
with every precious and beautiful treasure.

SAYING 22

5 A wise man is strong,
and a man of knowledge enhances his strength.
6 Only with sound guidance should you wage war,
and victory lies in a multitude of counselors.

SAYING 23

7 Wisdom is too high for a fool;
he does not open his mouth in the meeting place.

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

SAYING 24

8 He who plots evil
will be called a schemer.
9 A foolish scheme is sin,
and a mocker is detestable to men.

SAYING 25

10 If you faint in the day of distress,
how small is your strength!
11 Rescue those being led away to death,
and restrain those stumbling toward the slaughter.
12 *If you say, "Behold, we did not know about this,"*
does not He who weighs hearts consider it?
Does not the One who guards your life know?
Will He not repay a man according to his deeds?

SAYING 26

13 Eat honey, my son, for it is good,
and the honeycomb is sweet to your taste.
14 Know therefore that wisdom is sweet to your soul.
If you find it, there is a future for you,
and your hope will never be cut off.

SAYING 27

15 Do not lie in wait, O wicked man, near the dwelling of the righteous;
do not destroy his resting place.
16 For though a righteous man may fall seven times, he still gets up;
but the wicked stumble in bad times.

SAYING 28

17 Do not gloat when your enemy falls,
and do not let your heart rejoice when he stumbles,
18 or Yahweh will see and disapprove,
and turn His wrath away from him.

SAYING 29

19 Do not fret over evildoers,
and do not be envious of the wicked.
20 For the evil man has no future;
the lamp of the wicked will be extinguished.

SAYING 30

21 My son, fear Yahweh and the king,
and do not associate with the rebellious.
22 For they will bring sudden destruction.
Who knows what ruin they can bring?

FURTHER SAYINGS OF THE WISE

23 These also are sayings of the wise:
To show partiality in judgment
is not good.
24 Whoever tells the guilty, "You are innocent"—
peoples will curse him, and nations will denounce him;
25 but it will go well with those who convict the guilty,
and rich blessing will come upon them.
26 An honest answer given
is like a kiss on the lips.
27 Complete your outdoor work and prepare your field;
after that, you may build your house.
28 Do not testify against your neighbor without cause,
and do not deceive with your lips.
29 Do not say, "I will do to him as he has done to me;
I will repay the man according to his work."
30 I went past the field of a slacker
and by the vineyard of a man lacking judgment.
31 Thorns had grown up everywhere,
thistles had covered the ground,
and the stone wall was broken down.
32 I observed and took it to heart;
I looked and received instruction:
33 A little sleep, a little slumber,
a little folding of the hands to rest,
34 and poverty will come upon you like a robber,
and need like a bandit.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

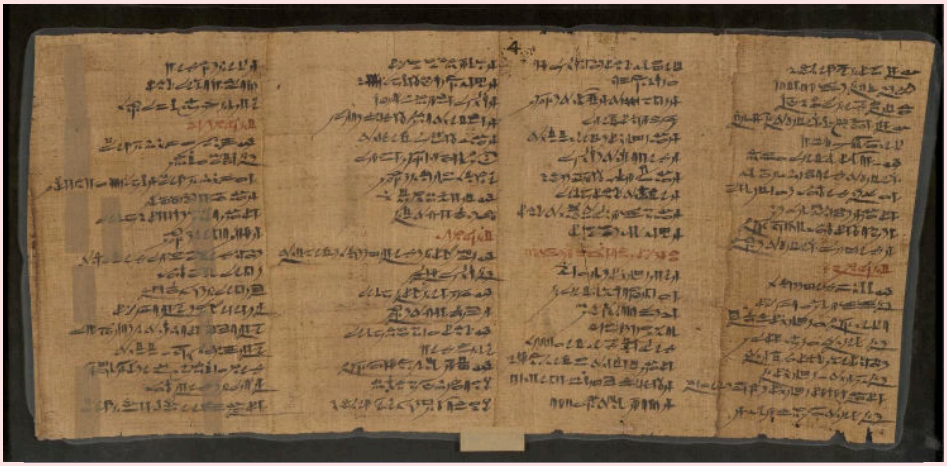
Hezekiah's men copied more of Solomon's sayings. Do not grab the best seat at the party. Good news from far away is like cold water to a thirsty soul. If your enemy is hungry, feed him.

PROV 24:12 [HEART] You cannot say you did not know. The One who weighs the heart knows the truth.
PROV 24:12 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 2:6 p.1801

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE PAPYRUS · DEBATED: WHO BORROWED FROM WHOM

THE INSTRUCTION OF AMENEMOPE

PROVERBS 22:17 TO 24:22



A page of the Instruction of Amenemope on papyrus, from Thebes, Egypt. British Museum, London, EA 10474. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

An Egyptian book of wisdom. A father named Amenemope, son of Kanakht, teaches his son how to live a quiet, honest life. It is split into thirty short chapters.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most scholars think it was written about 1300 to 1100 BC. The British Museum papyrus was copied much later, about 600 to 500 BC. Bits of it are also on writing boards, a piece of pottery and other scraps.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The papyrus came from Thebes in Egypt, and the British Museum bought it through Wallis Budge in 1888. Budge published it in 1922 and 1923. In 1924 the German scholar Adolf Erman showed how much it sounds like Proverbs.

LINES THAT SOUND LIKE PROVERBS

Give your ears, hear the sayings, Amenemope begins; compare 22:17. Do not move the markers on the borders of fields; compare 22:28. Riches make themselves wings like geese and fly to the sky; compare 23:5. Look to these thirty chapters; compare thirty sayings in 22:20.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

Amenemope serves the Egyptian gods. Proverbs puts every saying under Yahweh: I teach you today so that your trust may be in Yahweh, 22:19. Proverbs leaves out the Egyptian gods and adds its own sayings.

WHO BORROWED?

Most scholars think the wise men of Israel knew Amenemope and reworked some of it for God's people. A few have argued the Egyptian book borrowed from a Hebrew source. Others think both used older sayings that everyone knew.

WHY A BIBLE WRITER MIGHT BORROW

Solomon's court traded with Egypt and he married Pharaoh's daughter, 1 Kings 3:1. His wisdom was greater than all the wisdom of Egypt, 1 Kings 4:30. Many Christians say all truth is God's truth, and an inspired writer can take a true saying and set it under the fear of Yahweh.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not show that Proverbs is only Egyptian wisdom. It shows that Proverbs was written in a real world, and that God's people answered the wisdom around them by putting Yahweh at the center.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

MORE PROVERBS OF SOLOMON

1 These are additional proverbs of Solomon, which were copied by the men
of Hezekiah king of Judah:

2 It is the glory of God to conceal a matter
and the glory of kings to search it out.
3 As the heavens are high and the earth is
deep,
so the hearts of kings cannot be
searched.

4 Remove the dross from the silver,
and a vessel for a silversmith will come
forth.
5 Remove the wicked from the king's pres-
ence,
and his throne will be established in
righteousness.

6 Do not exalt yourself in the presence of
the king,
and do not stand in the place of great
men;
7 for it is better to be told, "Come up here!"
than to be demoted in the presence of
the prince.

Even what you have seen with your own
eyes,
8 do not bring hastily to court.
Otherwise, what will you do in the end
when your neighbor puts you to shame?

9 Argue your case with your neighbor
without betraying another's confidence,
10 lest he who hears you bring shame upon
you,
and your infamy never go away.

11 A word fitly spoken
is like apples of gold in settings of silver.
12 Like an earring of gold or an ornament
of fine gold
is a wise man's rebuke to a listening ear.

13 Like the cold of snow in the time of har-
vest
is a trustworthy messenger to those
who send him;
he refreshes the soul of his masters.

14 Like clouds and wind without rain
is the man who boasts of gifts never
given.

15 Through patience a ruler can be per-
suaded,
and a gentle tongue can break a bone.

16 If you find honey, eat just what you
need,
lest you have too much and vomit it up.

17 Seldom set foot in your neighbor's
house,
lest he grow weary and hate you.

18 Like a club or sword or sharp arrow
is a man who bears false witness
against his neighbor.

19 Like a broken tooth or a foot out of joint
is confidence in a faithless man in time
of trouble.

20 Like one who removes a garment on a
cold day
or vinegar poured on a wound
is one who sings songs to a heavy
heart.

21 *If your enemy is hungry, give him food to
eat,*
and if he is thirsty, give him water to drink.
22 *For in so doing, you will heap burning coals
on his head,*
and Yahweh will reward you.

23 As the north wind brings forth rain,
so a backbiting tongue brings angry
looks.

24 Better to live on a corner of the roof
than to share a house with a quarrel-
some wife.

25 Like cold water to a weary soul
is good news from a distant land.

26 Like a muddied spring or a polluted well

- **PROV 25:1 [NOTE]** THE MEN OF HEZEKIAH. King Hezekiah ruled Judah about 715 to 686 BC, more than 200 years after Solomon. His scribes copied these sayings from older collections. A clay seal mark with Hezekiah's name was found in Jerusalem in 2015. See Hezekiah's Seal in 2 Kings, p.642.
- **PROV 25:14 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:12 p.2071
- **PROV 25:21 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 12:20 p.1815
- **PROV 25:21 [NOTE]** QUOTED BY PAUL. Romans 12:20 quotes these lines and adds, Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good. Jesus said, Love your enemies, Matthew 5:44.
- **PROV 25:22 [NOTE]** BURNING COALS. Your kindness makes him feel the heat of shame, and it may turn him around. Some think of an old Egyptian rite where a sorry man carried coals on his head.

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

is a righteous man who gives way to the wicked.

27 It is not good to eat too much honey
or to search out one's own glory.

28 Like a city whose walls are broken down
is a man who does not control his temper.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Fools, lazy people and gossips get roasted. A fool repeats his folly like a dog going back to its vomit. The lazy man says, There is a lion in the street! Sure there is.

SIMILITUDES AND INSTRUCTIONS

1 Like snow in summer and rain at harvest,
honor does not befit a fool.
2 Like a fluttering sparrow or darting swallow,
an undeserved curse does not come to rest.
3 A whip for the horse, a bridle for the donkey,
and a rod for the backs of fools!
4 Do not answer a fool according to his folly,
or you yourself will be like him.
5 Answer a fool according to his folly,
lest he become wise in his own eyes.
6 Like cutting off one's own feet or drinking violence
is the sending of a message by the hand of a fool.
7 Like lame legs hanging limp
is a proverb in the mouth of a fool.
8 Like binding a stone into a sling
is the giving of honor to a fool.
9 Like a thorn that goes into the hand of a drunkard
is a proverb in the mouth of a fool.
10 Like an archer who wounds at random
is he who hires a fool or passerby.
11 *As a dog returns to its vomit,*
so a fool repeats his folly.
12 Do you see a man who is wise in his own eyes?
There is more hope for a fool than for him.
13 The slacker says, "A lion is in the road!
A fierce lion roams the public square!"
14 As a door turns on its hinges,
so the slacker turns on his bed.
15 The slacker buries his hand in the dish;
it wearies him to bring it back to his mouth.
16 The slacker is wiser in his own eyes
than seven men who answer discreetly.
17 Like one who grabs a dog by the ears
is a passerby who meddles in a quarrel not his own.
18 Like a madman shooting firebrands
and deadly arrows,
19 so is the man who deceives his neighbor
and says, "I was only joking!"
20 Without wood, a fire goes out;
without gossip, a conflict ceases.
21 Like charcoal for embers and wood for fire,
so is a quarrelsome man for kindling strife.
22 The words of a gossip are like choice morsels
that go down into the inmost being.
23 Like glaze covering an earthen vessel
are burning lips and a wicked heart.
24 A hateful man disguises himself with his speech,
but he lays up deceit in his heart.
25 When he speaks graciously, do not believe him,
for seven abominations fill his heart.
26 Though his hatred is concealed by deception,
his wickedness will be exposed in the assembly.
27 He who digs a pit will fall into it,

PROV 26:2 [DEMONIC] An undeserved curse does not come to rest

PROV 26:4 [NOTE] ANSWER HIM OR NOT? 26:4 says do not answer a fool, and 26:5 says do. They sit side by side on purpose. Wisdom knows when to argue and when to walk away. Old rabbis even asked if Proverbs should be put away because of these verses. They decided one is about arguing over God's law and the other about everyday things, so both are true.

PROV 26:11 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 2PE 2:22 p.2032

PROV 26:11 [NOTE] QUOTED BY PETER. 2 Peter 2:22 quotes the dog and adds a washed pig from another old saying. See The Ahiqar Papyrus in 2 Peter, p.2033.

PROV 26:23 [HEART] Smooth lips with an evil heart are like cheap glaze on clay.

THE HEART NOTABLE

and he who rolls a stone will have it roll back on him.
28 A lying tongue hates those it crushes,
and a flattering mouth causes ruin.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS
Do not brag about tomorrow. Wounds from a friend can be trusted. As iron sharpens iron, so one man sharpens another. Know the condition of your flocks, because riches do not last forever.

DO NOT BOAST ABOUT TOMORROW // JAMES 4:13–17

1 Do not boast about tomorrow,
for you do not know what a day may bring.
2 Let another praise you, and not your own mouth—
a stranger, and not your own lips.
3 A stone is heavy and sand is a burden,
but aggravation from a fool outweighs them both.
4 Wrath is cruel and anger is like a flood,
but who can withstand jealousy?
5 Better an open rebuke
than love that is concealed.
6 The wounds of a friend are faithful,
but the kisses of an enemy are deceitful.
7 The soul that is full loathes honey,
but to a hungry soul, any bitter thing is sweet.
8 Like a bird that strays from its nest
is a man who wanders from his home.
9 Oil and incense bring joy to the heart,
and the counsel of a friend is sweetness to the soul.
10 Do not forsake your friend or your father's friend,
and do not go to your brother's house
in the day of your calamity;
better a neighbor nearby
than a brother far away.
11 Be wise, my son, and bring joy to my heart,
so that I can answer him who taunts me.
12 The prudent see danger and take cover,
but the simple keep going and pay the penalty.
13 Take the garment of him who posts security for a stranger;
get collateral if it is for a foreigner.
14 If one blesses his neighbor with a loud voice early in the morning,
it will be counted to him as a curse.
15 A constant dripping on a rainy day
and a contentious woman are alike—
16 restraining her is like holding back the wind
or grasping oil with one's right hand.
17 As iron sharpens iron,
so one man sharpens another.
18 Whoever tends a fig tree will eat its fruit,
and he who looks after his master will be honored.
19 As water reflects the face,
so the heart reflects the true man.
20 Sheol and Abaddon are never satisfied;
so the eyes of man are never satisfied.
21 A crucible for silver and a furnace for gold,
but a man is tested by the praise accorded him.
22 Though you grind a fool like grain with mortar and a pestle,
yet his folly will not depart from him.
23 Be sure to know the state of your flocks,
and pay close attention to your herds;
24 for riches are not forever,
nor does a crown endure to every generation.
25 When hay is removed and new growth appears
and the grass from the hills is gathered,
26 the lambs will provide you with clothing,
and the goats with the price of a field.
27 You will have plenty of goats' milk to feed you—
food for your household
and nourishment for your maidservants.

PROV 27:17 [NOTABLE] Good friends make each other better, even when it causes a few sparks.
PROV 27:19 [HEART] Water reflects your face. Your heart reflects who you really are.

THE HEART

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

The wicked run when no one is chasing them, but the righteous are bold as a lion. Whoever hides his sins will not prosper; whoever confesses them finds mercy.

THE BOLDNESS OF THE RIGHTEOUS

1 The wicked flee when no one pursues,
but the righteous are as bold as a lion.

2 A land in rebellion has many rulers,
but a man of understanding and knowledge maintains order.

3 A destitute leader who oppresses the poor
is like a driving rain that leaves no food.

4 Those who forsake the law praise the wicked,
but those who keep the law resist them.

5 Evil men do not understand justice,
but those who seek Yahweh comprehend fully.

6 Better a poor man who walks with integrity
than a rich man whose ways are perverse.

7 A discerning son keeps the law,
but a companion of gluttons disgraces his father.

8 He who increases his wealth by interest and usury
lays it up for one who is kind to the poor.

9 Whoever turns his ear away from hearing the law,
even his prayer is detestable.

10 He who leads the upright along the path of evil will fall into his own pit,
but the blameless will inherit what is good.

11 A rich man is wise in his own eyes,
but a poor man with discernment sees through him.

12 When the righteous triumph, there is great glory,
but when the wicked rise, men hide themselves.

13 He who conceals his sins will not prosper,
but whoever confesses and renounces them will find mercy.

14 Blessed is the man who is always reverent,
but he who hardens his heart falls into trouble.

15 Like a roaring lion or a charging bear
is a wicked ruler over a helpless people.

16 A leader who lacks judgment is also a great oppressor,
but he who hates dishonest profit will prolong his days.

17 A man burdened by bloodguilt will flee into the Pit;
let no one support him.

18 He who walks with integrity will be kept safe,
but whoever is perverse in his ways will suddenly fall.

19 The one who works his land will have plenty of food,
but whoever chases fantasies will have his fill of poverty.

20 A faithful man will abound with blessings,
but one eager to be rich will not go unpunished.

21 To show partiality is not good,
yet a man will do wrong for a piece of bread.

22 A stingy man hastens after wealth
and does not know that poverty awaits him.

23 He who rebukes a man will later find more favor
than one who flatters with his tongue.

24 He who robs his father or mother, saying, "It is not wrong,"
is a companion to the man who destroys.

25 A greedy man stirs up strife,
but he who trusts in Yahweh will prosper.

PROV 28:14 [HEART] Whoever hardens his heart falls into trouble.

THE HEART

26 He who trusts in his own heart is a fool,
but one who walks in wisdom will be safe.

27 Whoever gives to the poor will not be in need,
but he who hides his eyes will receive many curses.

28 When the wicked come to power, people hide themselves;
but when they perish, the righteous flourish.

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

A man who keeps refusing correction will break suddenly. Where there is no vision, the people run wild. The fear of man is a trap, but whoever trusts Yahweh is safe.

THE FLOURISHING OF THE RIGHTEOUS

1 A man who remains stiff-necked after much reproof
will suddenly be shattered beyond recovery.

2 When the righteous flourish, the people rejoice,
but when the wicked rule, the people groan.

3 A man who loves wisdom brings joy to his father,
but a companion of prostitutes squanders his wealth.

4 By justice a king brings stability to the land,
but a man who exacts tribute demolishes it.

5 A man who flatters his neighbor
spreads a net for his feet.

6 An evil man is caught by his own sin,
but a righteous one sings and rejoices.

7 The righteous consider the cause of the poor,
but the wicked have no regard for such concerns.

8 Mockers inflame a city,
but the wise turn away anger.

9 If a wise man goes to court with a fool,
there will be raving and laughing with no resolution.

10 Men of bloodshed hate a blameless man,
but the upright care for his life.

11 A fool vents all his anger,
but a wise man holds it back.

12 If a ruler listens to lies,
all his officials will be wicked.

13 The poor man and the oppressor have this in common:
Yahweh gives light to the eyes of both.

14 A king who judges the poor with fairness—
his throne will be established forever.

15 A rod of correction imparts wisdom,
but a child left to himself disgraces his mother.

16 When the wicked thrive, rebellion increases;
but the righteous will see their downfall.

17 Discipline your son, and he will give you rest;
he will bring delight to your soul.

18 Where there is no vision, the people cast off restraint;
but blessed is he who keeps the Law.

19 A servant cannot be corrected by words alone;
though he understands, he will not respond.

20 Do you see a man who speaks in haste?
There is more hope for a fool than for him.

21 A servant pampered from his youth
will bring grief in the end.

22 An angry man stirs up dissension,
and a hot-tempered man abounds in transgression.

23 A man's pride will bring him low,
but a humble spirit will obtain honor.

24 A partner to a thief hates his own soul;

PROV 28:26 [HEART] He who trusts in his own heart is a fool.

PROV 28:26 [TEXT] HIS OWN HEART. The Hebrew says libbo, his heart, so this Bible says his own heart, like the KJV and NASB. Many Bibles read himself or his own mind.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

he receives the oath but does not testify.

25 The fear of man is a snare,
but whoever trusts in Yahweh is set securely on high.

26 Many seek the ruler's favor,
but a man receives justice from Yahweh.

27 An unjust man is detestable to the righteous,
and one whose way is upright is detestable to the wicked.

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

A man named Agur says, I am the dumbest guy around. Who went up to heaven and came back? What is His Son's name? Then he counts things: three things, no, four, that never get enough, that amaze him, that shake the earth.

THE WORDS OF AGUR

1 These are the words of Agur son of Jakeh—the burden that this man declared to Ithiel:

"I am weary, O God,
and worn out.
2 Surely I am the most ignorant of men,
and I lack the understanding of a man.
3 I have not learned wisdom,
and I have no knowledge of the Holy One.
4 Who has ascended to heaven and come down?
Who has gathered the wind in His hands?
Who has bound up the waters in His cloak?
Who has established all the ends of the earth?
What is His name, and what is the name of His Son—
surely you know!

5 Every word of God is flawless;
He is a shield to those who take refuge in Him.
6 Do not add to His words,
lest He rebuke you and prove you a liar.

7 Two things I ask of You—
do not refuse me before I die:
8 Keep falsehood and deceitful words far from me.
Give me neither poverty nor riches;
feed me with the bread that is my portion.
9 Otherwise, I may have too much
and deny You, saying, 'Who is Yahweh?'
Or I may become poor and steal,
profaning the name of my God.

10 Do not slander a servant to his master,
or he will curse you, and you will bear the guilt.

11 There is a generation of those who curse their fathers
and do not bless their mothers.
12 There is a generation of those who are pure in their own eyes
and yet unwashed of their filth.
13 There is a generation—how haughty are their eyes
and pretentious are their glances—
14 there is a generation whose teeth are swords
and whose jaws are knives,
devouring the oppressed from the earth
and the needy from among men.

15 The leech has two daughters:
Give and Give.
There are three things that are never satisfied, four that never say, 'Enough!':
16 Sheol,
the barren womb,
land never satisfied with water,
and fire that never says, 'Enough!'

17 As for the eye that mocks a father
and scorns obedience to a mother,

PROV 30:1 [NOTE] AGUR. Nothing is known about Agur, Jakeh or Ithiel outside this chapter. The Hebrew of 30:1 is hard; some read Ithiel as I am weary, O God, as this Bible does in the next line. The burden can also be read as of Massa, a tribe in Arabia, Genesis 25:14.

PROV 30:4 [FORESHADOW] Who went up to heaven and came down, and what is the name of His Son → JN 3:13 · MEDIUM p.1702

PROV 30:4 [NOTE] WHAT IS HIS SON'S NAME? Agur asks who made the world, and what is the name of His Son. Jesus said no one has gone up to heaven except the One who came down, the Son of Man, John 3:13. Many Jewish readers think the son is Israel, God's son, Exodus 4:22.

PROV 30:5 [NOTE] EVERY WORD. This line echoes Psalm 18:30, and 30:6 echoes Deuteronomy 4:2: do not add to His words.

PROV 30:15 [NOTE] THREE THINGS, NO, FOUR. Agur counts things that never get enough, that amaze him, that shake the earth, and that are small but wise. Same style as 6:16.

NOTABLE

may the ravens of the valley pluck it out
and young vultures devour it.

18 There are three things too wonderful for
me, four that I cannot understand:
19 the way of an eagle in the sky,
the way of a snake on a rock,
the way of a ship at sea,
and the way of a man with a maiden.

20 This is the way of an adulteress:
She eats and wipes her mouth
and says, 'I have done nothing wrong.'

21 Under three things the earth trembles,
under four it cannot bear up:
22 a servant who becomes king,
a fool who is filled with food,
23 an unloved woman who marries,
and a maidservant who supplants her
mistress.

24 Four things on earth are small, yet they
are exceedingly wise:
25 The ants are creatures of little strength,
yet they store up their food in the sum-
mer;
26 the rock badgers are creatures of little
power, yet they make their homes in
the rocks;
27 the locusts have no king, yet they all ad-
vance in formation;
28 and the lizard can be caught in one's
hands, yet it is found in the palaces of
kings.

29 There are three things that are stately in
their stride, and four that are impressive in
their walk:
30 a lion, mighty among beasts, refusing to
retreat before anything;
31 a strutting rooster;
a he-goat;
and a king with his army around him.

32 If you have foolishly exalted yourself
or if you have plotted evil,
put your hand over your mouth.
33 For as the churning of milk yields butter,
and the twisting of the nose draws
blood,
so the stirring of anger brings forth
strife."

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

King Lemuel's mom says: no wild women, no heavy drinking, and speak up for the poor. Then an A to Z poem about a wife of noble character who laughs at the future.

THE SAYINGS FOR KING LEMUEL

1 These are the words of King Lemuel—the
burden that his mother taught him:

2 What shall I say, O my son?
What, O son of my womb?
What, O son of my vows?
3 Do not spend your strength on women
or your vigor on those who ruin kings.
4 It is not for kings, O Lemuel,
it is not for kings to drink wine,
or for rulers to crave strong drink,
5 lest they drink and forget what is de-
creed,
depriving all the oppressed of justice.

6 Give strong drink to one who is perish-
ing,
and wine to the bitter in soul.
7 Let him drink and forget his poverty,
and remember his misery no more.

8 Open your mouth for those with no
voice,
for the cause of all the dispossessed.
9 Open your mouth, judge righteously,
and defend the cause of the poor and
needy.

THE VIRTUES OF A NOBLE WOMAN

10 A wife of noble character, who can find?
She is far more precious than rubies.

11 The heart of her husband trusts in her,
and he lacks nothing of value.
12 She brings him good and not harm
all the days of her life.
13 She selects wool and flax
and works with eager hands.

■ **PROV 31:1 [NOTE]** KING LEMUEL. No king named Lemuel is known from history. Some old Jewish writers said Lemuel was a pet name for Solomon, and his mother Bathsheba, but that is a guess.
PROV 31:10 [NOTABLE] The whole A to Z poem is a picture of a strong, wise, godly woman. What matters most is that she fears Yahweh, 31:30.
■ **PROV 31:10 [NOTE]** A TO Z. 31:10 to 31 is a poem with 22 verses. Each verse starts with the next letter of the Hebrew alphabet, from aleph to tav. See the Big Question The Proverbs 31 Woman.

NOTABLE

14 She is like the merchant ships,
bringing her food from afar.
15 She rises while it is still night
to provide food for her household
and portions for her maidservants.
16 She appraises a field and buys it;
from her earnings she plants a vineyard.
17 She girds herself with strength
and shows that her arms are strong.
18 She sees that her gain is good,
and her lamp is not extinguished at night.
19 She stretches out her hands to the distaff
and grasps the spindle with her fingers.
20 She opens her arms to the poor
and reaches out her hands to the needy.
21 When it snows, she has no fear for her household,
for they are all clothed in scarlet.
22 She makes coverings for her bed;
her clothing is fine linen and purple.
23 Her husband is known at the city gates,
where he sits among the elders of the land.
24 She makes linen garments and sells them;
she delivers sashes to the merchants.
25 Strength and honor are her clothing,
and she can laugh at the days to come.
26 She opens her mouth with wisdom,
and faithful instruction is on her tongue.
27 She watches over the affairs of her household
and does not eat the bread of idleness.
28 Her children rise up and call her blessed;
her husband praises her as well:
29 "Many daughters have done noble things,
but you surpass them all!"
30 Charm is deceptive and beauty is fleeting,
but a woman who fears Yahweh is to be praised.
31 Give her the fruit of her hands,
and let her works praise her at the gates.

■ **PROV 31:30 [NOTE]** THE LAST WORD. The book that started with the fear of Yahweh, 1:7, ends with a woman who fears Yahweh.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE PROVERBS 31 WOMAN

A Wife of Noble Character

PROVERBS 31:10 TO 31 · 1:20 · 9:1 · 12:4 · 18:22

THE POEM

Twenty two verses, A to Z in Hebrew, about a woman who is worth more than rubies. She gets up early, buys a field, plants a vineyard, runs a business, helps the poor and is not afraid of the future.

STRONG, NOT SWEET

Noble character translates the Hebrew chayil, a word for warriors and mighty men. The poem uses battle words: she gets up early and girds herself with strength, 31:17.

WHO TAUGHT IT

The poem comes right after King Lemuel's mother teaches her son. Many think it is part of her advice: Son, look for a woman like this.

Every View

RUTH 3:11 · 1 PETER 3:3 TO 4 · TITUS 2:3 TO 5

VIEW 1: A REAL KIND OF WOMAN

Many read it as a picture of a godly wife and mother, to admire and to look for. Ruth is called a woman of noble character, Ruth 3:11, and comes next in many Hebrew Bibles.

VIEW 2: LADY WISDOM AT HOME

Many scholars say she is Lady Wisdom from chapters 1 to 9, now living in a home. Wisdom built her house, 9:1, and every wise woman builds her house, 14:1. This woman runs hers well. The poem shows what wisdom looks like in real life, for men and women.

VIEW 3: NOT A CHECKLIST

Many women have felt crushed by her. Many teachers say the poem praises a lifetime of faithfulness, not one perfect day.

A JEWISH CUSTOM

In many Jewish homes, the husband sings this poem, Eshet Chayil, to his wife on Friday night at the Sabbath meal.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Beauty fades, but a woman who fears Yahweh is to be praised, 31:30.

BOOK 21 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · POETRY AND WISDOM

ECCLESIASTES

The King's Midlife Crisis

AUTHOR	The Teacher, in Hebrew Qoheleth, son of David, king in Jerusalem, 1:1. Tradition says King Solomon. Many scholars think a later writer spoke in his voice. See Who Wrote Ecclesiastes?
DATE	If Solomon wrote it, about 950 to 930 BC, late in his life. Many scholars date it about 450 to 250 BC. Either way, it was being copied by about 175 to 150 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Anyone who has ever asked, What is the point? The book talks to my son, 12:12, and the Teacher talks to young people, 11:9.
KEY VERSE	Ecclesiastes 12:13. Fear God and keep His commandments, because this is the whole duty of man.



THE OLDEST COPY OF ECCLESIASTES
4QQoh a, from Qumran Cave 4, one of the older Bible scrolls found there. It was copied about 175 to 150 BC, and it has parts of Ecclesiastes 5, 6 and 7. A second copy, 4QQoh b, has bits of chapter 1. 4QQoh a is in the Jordan Museum in Amman.

An ancient copy this old means the book was already being copied and read about 150 years before Jesus. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

Historical Setting

A king with more money, wisdom and fun than anyone looks back on his life and asks what it was all for. He tries pleasure, work, wisdom, building and money, and finds it all like

smoke. Ecclesiastes is honest about the hard questions: death, unfairness and why good people suffer. In the end it points to God.

What the Teacher Tried

PLEASURE. Laughter, wine, parties and singers, 2:1 to 3 and 2:8. It did not last.
BIG PROJECTS. Houses, vineyards, gardens and pools, 2:4 to 6. Someone else gets them when he dies, 2:18.
MONEY. Silver, gold and herds, 2:7 to 8. Whoever loves money never has enough, 5:10.
WISDOM. He got wiser than anyone, 1:16. The wise man still dies like the fool, 2:16.

The Idiot Proof Summary

The Teacher, a king in Jerusalem, sets out to find what makes life worth living. He tries fun, work, wisdom and wealth, and every road ends with the same word: hevel, smoke or vapor. Death comes to everyone and life is not fair. But again and again he says to enjoy your food, your work and your family as gifts from God. The book ends with the answer: fear God and keep His commandments, because He will judge everything.

Ecclesiastes at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**THE GREAT EXPERIMENT** Smoke, smoke; the king tries everything.
CH 3 to 5	**A TIME FOR EVERYTHING** God's timing, life's unfairness, money.
CH 6 to 8	**WHAT IS GOOD?** Wisdom, its limits, and life not being fair.
CH 9 to 10	**ENJOY THE DAYS YOU HAVE** Death comes to all; live well now.
CH 11 to 12	**REMEMBER YOUR CREATOR** Be generous, enjoy your youth, fear God.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ECCLESIASTES 1:2 All is futile. Paul says creation was made subject to futility, but it will be set free, Romans 8:20 to 21. Jesus came to give life to the full, John 10:10.

ECCLESIASTES 2:24 Eat and drink as a gift from God. Jesus told of a rich fool who said, Eat, drink and be merry, and God said his life would be taken that very night, Luke 12:19 to 20.

ECCLESIASTES 12:11 The words of the wise come from one Shepherd. Jesus said, I am the good Shepherd, John 10:11.

ECCLESIASTES 1:1 The son of David, king in Jerusalem, could not find the answer under the sun. Jesus said, One greater than Solomon is here, Matthew 12:42.

GOD'S NAMES IN ECCLESIASTES
God, Elohim, 40 times. Yahweh never. Once He is called your Creator, 12:1.

What to Watch for in Ecclesiastes

THE HEART (5)	3:11, 7:2-4, 8:11, 9:3, 11:9-10
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	2:24, 9:7
NOTABLE (6)	3:1-8, 4:9-12, 9:10, 11:1, 12:1, 12:13
GOD SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (1 NAMES) Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

38 TIMES
The Hebrew word hevel, breath or vapor, shows up 38 times. It is the same word as the name Abel, the brother whose life was short.

TURN! TURN! TURN!
Pete Seeger turned 3:1 to 8 into a song, and the Byrds took it to number one in 1965. It is one of the few hit songs with words almost all from the Bible.

READ AT A FEAST
Many Jews read Ecclesiastes every year at Sukkot, the Feast of Booths, the happiest feast of the year. Joy and honesty go together.

NO RED LETTERS
God does not speak in Ecclesiastes, so there are no red letters. The book names God 40 times, and never by the name Yahweh.

How Does It End?

With the bottom line. After all the smoke, the Teacher lands on solid ground: fear God and keep His commandments, because God will bring every deed into judgment, 12:13 to 14.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

A king with everything sighs: Smoke, smoke, it is all smoke. The sun comes up, goes down, comes up again. The rivers run to the sea and the sea never fills. There is nothing new under the sun, and getting smarter just gives you a headache.

EVERYTHING IS FUTILE

1 These are the words of the Teacher, the
son of David, king in Jerusalem:

2 "Futility of futilities,"
says the Teacher,
"futility of futilities!
Everything is futile!"

3 What does a man gain from all his labor,
at which he toils under the sun?
4 Generations come and generations go,
but the earth remains forever.
5 The sun rises and the sun sets;
it hurries back to where it rises.
6 The wind blows southward,
then turns northward;
round and round it swirls,
ever returning on its course.
7 All the rivers flow into the sea,
yet the sea is never full;
to the place from which the streams
come,
there again they flow.

8 All things are wearisome,
more than one can describe;
the eye is not satisfied with seeing,
nor the ear content with hearing.
9 What has been will be again,
and what has been done will be done
again;
there is nothing new under the sun.
10 Is there a case where one can say,
"Look, this is new"?
It has already existed
in the ages before us.
11 There is no remembrance
of those who came before,
and those yet to come will not be remembered
by those who follow after.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE ECCLESIASTES?

Solomon or Someone Later?

ECCLESIASTES 1:1 · 1:12 · 1:16 · 2:4 TO 9 · 12:9 TO 10

THE CLUES FOR SOLOMON

The Teacher is the son of David, king in Jerusalem, 1:1. He was wiser than anyone before him, 1:16, and built houses, gardens and pools, with silver, gold, servants and singers, 2:4 to 9. That sounds like Solomon, 1 Kings 3:12 and 4 to 10.

THE CLUES FOR SOMEONE LATER

The book never says Solomon. The Teacher says I was king, 1:12, and all who were over Jerusalem before me, 1:16, though only one king of Israel, David, ruled Jerusalem before Solomon. Many scholars say the Hebrew is like later Hebrew, with Persian words like pardes, park, 2:5, and pitgam, sentence, 8:11. And the book often talks about kings from below, like a subject, 8:2 to 4 and 10:20.

THE LAST WORDS

In 12:9 to 14 someone talks about the Teacher: he taught the people and arranged many proverbs. So at least the ending came from a second voice.

Every View

1 KINGS 3:12 · 4:32 · 11:1 TO 4

VIEW 1: SOLOMON WROTE IT

Jewish tradition and most Christians for many centuries said Solomon wrote it as an old man, looking back on a life that wandered from God, 1 Kings 11:4. Rabbi Jonathan, in an old Jewish writing, said he wrote Song of Songs when young, Proverbs in middle age and Ecclesiastes when old. Some conservative scholars still hold this view.

ECC 1:1 [NOTE] THE TEACHER. The Hebrew name is Qoheleth, one who gathers people together, like a preacher at an assembly. The Greek name Ecclesiastes comes from ekklesia, assembly, the word the New Testament uses for church.

ECC 1:1 [NOTE] SON OF DAVID. The Teacher never says his name. Jewish and Christian tradition says it is Solomon, David's son. See the Big Question Who Wrote Ecclesiastes? and Solomon's Wisdom and 700 Wives in 1 Kings, p.564.

ECC 1:2 [NOTE] FUTILITY. The Hebrew word is hevel, breath or vapor, the same word as the name Abel, Genesis 4:2. It shows up 38 times in this book. The KJV says vanity. See the Big Question Is Life Meaningless?

ECC 1:3 [NOTE] UNDER THE SUN. The Teacher's catchphrase, 29 times. It means life on earth as we see it, looked at from down here.

ECC 1:9 [NOTE] NOTHING NEW. The saying is famous today because of this verse. Inventions change, but people and their problems stay the same.

VIEW 2: SOLOMON'S WORDS, PUT TOGETHER LATER
The Talmud says King Hezekiah and his company wrote down Proverbs, Song of Songs and Ecclesiastes, Bava Batra 15a. Some say the words go back to Solomon, and later scribes gave the book its final form, which would explain the later Hebrew.

VIEW 3: A LATER WRITER IN SOLOMON'S VOICE
Most scholars today think a wise teacher wrote it about 450 to 250 BC and spoke as Solomon, the wisest and richest king, to test whether wisdom and riches can make life full. In his Table Talk, Martin Luther once said Solomon did not write it himself.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The book is Scripture, and its voice is the life of a king who had everything. Its answer is the same either way: fear God and keep His commandments, 12:13.

WITH WISDOM COMES SORROW

12 I, the Teacher, was king over Israel in
Jerusalem. 13 And I set my heart to seek
and explore by wisdom all that is done un-
der heaven. What a miserable task God
has laid upon the sons of men to occupy
them!

14 I have seen all the things that are done
under the sun, and have found them all to
be futile, a pursuit of the wind.

15 What is crooked cannot be straightened,
and what is lacking cannot be counted.

16 I said to myself, "Behold, I have grown
and increased in wisdom beyond all those
before me who were over Jerusalem, and
my mind has observed a wealth of wis-
dom and knowledge."

17 So I set my heart to know wisdom and
madness and folly; I learned that this, too,
is a pursuit of the wind.

18 For with much wisdom comes much
sorrow,
and as knowledge grows, grief in-
creases.

■ **ECC 1:12 [NOTE]** I WAS KING. Some read the past tense as an old king looking back. Others see a hint that someone is speaking in the king's voice. See Who Wrote Ecclesiastes?

■ **ECC 1:13 [TEXT]** SET MY HEART. The Hebrew says libbi, my heart, so this Bible says heart here and in 1:17, 7:25, 8:9 and 8:16, like the KJV I gave my heart. Many Bibles say mind. In Hebrew thinking the heart is where you think and decide, so the meaning is the same.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

IS LIFE MEANINGLESS?

Vapor, Smoke and Breath

ECCLESIASTES 1:2 · 1:14 · 3:11 · 12:8 · 12:13

THE WORD
The key word, hevel, shows up 38 times. It means a breath or a puff of vapor, there and then gone. It is the same word as the name Abel, Genesis 4:2, whose life was short. Man is like a breath, Psalm 144:4.

HOW BIBLES SAY IT
The KJV says vanity, from the Latin vanitas. Many Bibles today say meaningless. This Bible says futile. Some scholars like vapor or smoke best, because the word is a picture: real, but you cannot hold on to it.

UNDER THE SUN
The Teacher looks at life from down here, under the sun, 29 times. From there, everything seems to slip away. But God is in the book from start to finish: He set eternity in our hearts, 3:11, and He will judge, 12:14.

Every View

ROMANS 8:20 TO 21 · JAMES 4:14 · PSALM 144:4 · JOHN 10:10

VIEW 1: EMPTY WITHOUT GOD
Many Christians read it this way: life under the sun, without God, is empty. The book pushes you to look above the sun. Paul says creation was made subject to futility, but it will be set free, Romans 8:20 to 21.

VIEW 2: SHORT, NOT POINTLESS
Many others say hevel means brief and hard to grasp, not worthless. Life is a vapor, James 4:14, so enjoy each day as God's gift instead of trying to control it.

VIEW 3: AN HONEST DOUBTER
Some scholars say the Teacher really did struggle and say dark things, 4:2 to 3, and the voice at the end, 12:9 to 14, frames his words for the reader. The Bible lets a doubter speak honestly.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Nothing under the sun lasts. Money, fun, fame and work cannot fill the heart. Fear

God and keep His commandments, 12:13. Jesus said He came so we can have life to the full, John 10:10.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The king tries every fun button: laughter, wine, mansions, gardens, gold, singers and a huge staff. He gets it all and feels nothing. Then it hits him: he dies like the fool, and some guy he never met gets his stuff.

THE FUTILITY OF PLEASURE

1 I said to myself, "Come now, I will test
you with pleasure; enjoy what is good!"
But it proved to be futile.
2 I said of laughter, "It is folly," and of pleasure, "What does it accomplish?"
3 I sought to cheer my body with wine and
to embrace folly—my mind still guiding
me with wisdom—until I could see what
was worthwhile for men to do under
heaven during the few days of their lives.
4 I expanded my pursuits. I built houses
and planted vineyards for myself. 5 I made
gardens and parks for myself, where I
planted all kinds of fruit trees. 6 I built
reservoirs to water my groves of flourishing trees.
7 I acquired menservants and maidservants, and servants were born in my
house. I also owned more herds and
flocks than anyone in Jerusalem before
me, 8 and I accumulated for myself silver
and gold and the treasure of kings and
provinces. I gathered to myself male and
female singers, and the delights of the
sons of men—many concubines.
9 So I became great and surpassed all in
Jerusalem who had preceded me; and my
wisdom remained with me. 10 Anything my
eyes desired, I did not deny myself. I refused my heart no pleasure. For my heart
took delight in all my work, and this was
the reward for all my labor.
11 Yet when I considered all the works that
my hands had accomplished and what I
had toiled to achieve, I found everything
to be futile, a pursuit of the wind; there
was nothing to be gained under the sun.

THE WISE AND THE FOOLISH

12 Then I turned to consider wisdom and
madness and folly; for what more can the
king's successor do than what has already
been accomplished? 13 And I saw that wisdom exceeds folly, just as light exceeds
darkness:

14 The wise man has eyes in his head,
but the fool walks in darkness.

Yet I also came to realize that one fate
overcomes them both. 15 So I said to myself, "The fate of the fool will also befall
me. What then have I gained by being
wise?"
And I said to myself that this too is futile.
16 For there is no lasting remembrance of
the wise, just as with the fool, seeing that
both will be forgotten in the days to come.
Alas, the wise man will die just like the
fool! 17 So I hated life, because the work
that is done under the sun was grievous
to me. For everything is futile and a pursuit of the wind.

THE FUTILITY OF WORK

18 I hated all for which I had toiled under
the sun, because I must leave it to the
man who comes after me. 19 And who
knows whether that man will be wise or
foolish? Yet he will take over all the labor
at which I have worked skillfully under the
sun. This too is futile.
20 So my heart began to despair over all
the labor that I had done under the sun. 21
When there is a man who has labored with
wisdom, knowledge, and skill, and he
must give his portion to a man who has
not worked for it, this too is futile and a
great evil. 22 For what does a man get for
all the toil and striving with which he
labors under the sun? 23 Indeed, all his
days are filled with grief, and his task is
sorrowful; even at night, his mind does
not rest. This too is futile.

ECC 2:4 [NOTE] THE BUILDER KING. Houses, vineyards, gardens, pools, servants, herds, silver, gold and singers. It sounds like Solomon's life in 1 Kings 4 to 10.

ECC 2:5 [NOTE] PARKS. The Hebrew word pardes comes from Persian and means a walled garden. The same Persian word went into Greek as paradeisos, and that gives us the word paradise.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

24 Nothing is better for a man than to eat
and drink and enjoy his work. I have also
seen that this is from the hand of God. 25
For apart from Him, who can eat and who
can find enjoyment? 26 To the man who is
pleasing in His sight, He gives wisdom
and knowledge and joy, but to the sinner
He assigns the task of gathering and ac-
cumulating that which he will hand over to
one who pleases God. This too is futile
and a pursuit of the wind.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

There is a time for everything, from being born to dying. God made everything beautiful in its time and set eternity in our hearts. People and animals both go to the dust, so enjoy the work God gives you.

TO EVERYTHING THERE IS A SEASON

1 To everything there is a season,
and a time for every purpose under
heaven:
2 a time to be born and a time to die,
a time to plant and a time to uproot,
3 a time to kill and a time to heal,
a time to break down and a time to
build,
4 a time to weep and a time to laugh,
a time to mourn and a time to dance,
5 a time to cast away stones and a time to
gather stones together,
a time to embrace and a time to refrain
from embracing,
6 a time to search and a time to count as
lost,
a time to keep and a time to discard,
7 a time to tear and a time to mend,
a time to be silent and a time to speak,
8 a time to love and a time to hate,
a time for war and a time for peace.

GOD'S WORKS REMAIN FOREVER

9 What does the worker gain from his toil?
10 I have seen the burden that God has laid
upon the sons of men to occupy them. 11
He has made everything beautiful in its
time. He has also set eternity in the hearts
of men, yet they cannot fathom the work
that God has done from beginning to end.
12 I know that there is nothing better for
them than to rejoice and do good while
they live, 13 and also that every man
should eat and drink and find satisfaction
in all his labor—this is the gift of God. 14 I
know that everything God does endures
forever; nothing can be added to it or
taken from it. God does it so that they
should fear Him. 15 What exists has already
been, and what will be has already been,
for God will call to account what has
passed.

FROM DUST TO DUST

16 Furthermore, I saw under the sun that in
the place of judgment there is wicked-
ness, and in the place of righteousness
there is wickedness. 17 I said in my heart,
"God will judge the righteous and the
wicked, since there is a time for every ac-
tivity and every deed."
18 I said to myself, "As for the sons of men,
God tests them so that they may see for
themselves that they are but beasts." 19
For the fates of both men and beasts are
the same: As one dies, so dies the
other—they all have the same breath. Man
has no advantage over the animals, since
everything is futile. 20 All go to one place;
all come from dust, and all return to dust.
21 Who knows if the spirit of man rises up-
ward and the spirit of the animal de-
scends into the earth? 22 I have seen that
there is nothing better for a man than to

ECC 2:24 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Egyptian songs sung by a harper, copied in tombs and on papyrus for centuries, from before 1300 BC, tell the living to enjoy today because no one comes back, see The Harper's Songs Field Notes box, p.1032FIELD NOTES p.1032

ECC 2:24 [NOTE] NOTHING BETTER. The first of about seven times the Teacher says to enjoy your food, drink and work as a gift from God: 2:24, 3:12 to 13, 3:22, 5:18 to 20, 8:15, 9:7 to 9 and 11:9. See the Big Question Eat, Drink and Be Merry?

ECC 3:1 [NOTABLE] Life has seasons. Hard ones do not last forever, and good ones are not wasted.

ECC 3:1 [NOTE] A TIME FOR EVERYTHING. 3:2 to 8 is a poem of 14 pairs of opposites. In 1965 the Byrds turned it into a number one song, Turn! Turn! Turn!, written by Pete Seeger.

ECC 3:11 [HEART] God has set eternity in the hearts of men. People long for more than this life because God made them that way.

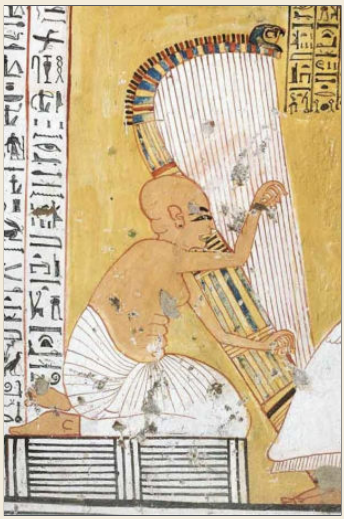
ECC 3:11 [NOTE] ETERNITY IN THEIR HEARTS. God made people with a hunger for forever. Nothing under the sun can fill it. Many hear an echo here of Augustine's prayer: our heart is restless until it rests in You.

ECC 3:19 [NOTE] LIKE THE ANIMALS. From under the sun, people and animals look alike at death: same breath, same dust. 3:21 asks, Who knows? 12:7 says more. See the Big Question What Happens When We Die?

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE HARPER'S SONGS

ECCLESIASTES 2:24 · 3:22 · 9:7 TO 10 · 11:9



A harper sings for the dead man and his wife in the tomb of Inherkhau, Deir el Medina, Thebes, Egypt, about 1150 BC. Public domain.

WHAT THEY ARE

Egyptian songs sung by a harper at a feast, written on tomb walls and on papyrus. Many of them talk about death and tell the living how to live.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

The best known, the song from the tomb of King Intef, is copied in a tomb from about 1340 BC and on a papyrus a little later. The song itself is likely much older. Others are in tombs at Thebes, like this one.

WHAT THEY SAY

In plain words: the bodies of the great are gone, their tombs have fallen, and no one comes back to tell us what it is like. So follow your heart while you live, put on fine clothes and perfume, and make a happy day.

SOUNDS LIKE ECCLESIASTES

Who can bring him to see what will come after him? 3:22. Walk in the ways of your heart, 11:9. Let your garments always be white, 9:8.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

Some harper's songs answer back and say the land of the dead is good. The Teacher does not party to forget death. He enjoys life as a gift from God and remembers that God will judge, 11:9.

enjoy his work, because that is his lot. For who can bring him to see what will come after him?

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT HAPPENS WHEN WE DIE?

What the Teacher Could See

ECCLESIASTES 3:19 TO 21 · 9:5 TO 10 · 12:7

THE VERSES

People and animals have the same breath and go to the same dust, 3:19 to 20. Who knows if the spirit of man goes up? 3:21. The dead know nothing, 9:5. There is no work or wisdom in Sheol, the grave, 9:10. The dust returns to the earth, and the spirit returns to God who gave it, 12:7.

UNDER THE SUN AGAIN

The Teacher is looking from earth. From here, death looks the same for people and animals. The Old Testament says little about what comes next. Daniel 12:2 later speaks of waking up to everlasting life.

Every View

DANIEL 12:2 · 2 TIMOTHY 1:10 · JOHN 11:25 · PHILIPPIANS 1:23

VIEW 1: THE VIEW FROM EARTH

Most Christians say the Teacher describes what we can see: the dead have no part in this world any more, 9:6. Later Scripture shows more. Jesus brought life and immortality to light, 2 Timothy 1:10.

VIEW 2: THE DEAD SLEEP

Some, like Seventh day Adventists and Jehovah's Witnesses, read 9:5 to mean the dead are not aware of anything until the resurrection.

VIEW 3: 12:7 POINTS UP

Many see a hint of more in 12:7: the spirit goes back to God. Paul said he wanted to depart and be with Christ, which is far better, Philippians 1:23.

NOTABLE

SEE ALSO
Every view is laid out in the Big Question What Happens When You Die? in Luke, p.1691.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Death comes to everyone, 9:2. God will judge every deed, 12:14. And Jesus said, I am the resurrection and the life, John 11:25.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS
Tears of the oppressed, workaholics with no one to leave it to, and a lonely man with no friends. Two are better than one, and a cord of three strands is hard to break. Fame does not last either.

THE EVIL OF OPPRESSION

1 Again I looked, and I considered all the
oppression taking place under the sun. I
saw the tears of the oppressed, and they
had no comforter; the power lay in the
hands of their oppressors, and there was
no comforter. 2 So I admired the dead,
who had already died, above the living,
who are still alive. 3 But better than both is
he who has not yet existed, who has not
seen the evil that is done under the sun.

4 I saw that all labor and success spring
from a man's envy of his neighbor. This
too is futile and a pursuit of the wind.

5 The fool folds his hands
and consumes his own flesh.
6 Better one handful with tranquility
than two handfuls with toil and pursuit
of the wind.

7 Again, I saw futility under the sun. 8
There is a man all alone, without even a
son or brother. And though there is no end
to his labor, his eyes are still not content
with his wealth: "For whom do I toil and
bereave my soul of enjoyment?" This too
is futile—a miserable task.

9 Two are better than one, because they
have a good return for their labor. 10 For if
one falls down, his companion can lift him
up; but pity the one who falls without another to help him up! 11 Again, if two lie
down together, they will keep warm; but
how can one keep warm alone? 12 And
though one may be overpowered, two can
resist. Moreover, a cord of three strands is
not quickly broken.

THE FUTILITY OF POWER

13 Better is a poor but wise youth than an
old but foolish king who no longer knows
how to take a warning. 14 For the youth has
come from the prison to the kingship,
though he was born poor in his own kingdom.

15 I saw that all who lived and walked under the sun followed this second one, the
youth who succeeded the king. 16 There is
no limit to all the people who were before
them. Yet the successor will not be celebrated by those who come even later.
This too is futile and a pursuit of the wind.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS
Church tip: listen more, talk less, and pay your vows. Money never satisfies the man who loves it. You came into the world with nothing and you will leave the same way, so enjoy the days God gives you.

APPROACHING GOD WITH FEAR

1 Guard your steps when you go to the
house of God. Draw near to listen rather
than to offer the sacrifice of fools, who do
not know that they do wrong. 2 Do not be
quick to speak, and do not be hasty in
your heart to utter a word before God. For
God is in heaven and you are on earth. So
let your words be few.

3 As a dream comes through many cares,
so the speech of a fool comes with
many words.

4 When you make a vow to God, do not
delay in fulfilling it, because He takes no
pleasure in fools. Fulfill your vow. 5 It is

ECC 4:9 [NOTABLE] You were not made to do life alone. Find people who will pick you up. Many read these verses at weddings.

ECC 4:12 [NOTE] THREE STRANDS. Two friends are good. Many Christians read the third strand as God, and the verse is often read at weddings.

ECC 5:2 [NOTE] LET YOUR WORDS BE FEW. Jesus said the same: do not babble on like the pagans when you pray, Matthew 6:7.

ECC 5:4 [NOTE] PAY YOUR VOWS. A promise to God is serious. Better not to promise than to promise and not pay, 5:5. See Deuteronomy 23:21 to 23.

better not to vow than to make a vow and not fulfill it.

6 Do not let your mouth cause your flesh to sin, and do not tell the messenger that your vow was a mistake. Why should God be angry with your words and destroy the work of your hands? 7 For as many dreams bring futility, so do many words. Therefore, fear God.

THE FUTILITY OF WEALTH // PSALM 49:1–20

8 If you see the oppression of the poor and the denial of justice and righteousness in the province, do not be astonished at the matter; for one official is watched by a superior, and others higher still are over them. 9 The produce of the earth is taken by all; the king himself profits from the fields.

10 He who loves money is never satisfied by money, and he who loves wealth is never satisfied by income. This too is futile. 11 When good things increase, so do those who consume them; what then is the profit to the owner, except to behold them with his eyes?

12 The sleep of the worker is sweet, whether he eats little or much, but the abundance of the rich man permits him no sleep.

13 There is a grievous evil I have seen under the sun: wealth hoarded to the harm of its owner, 14 or wealth lost in a failed venture, so when that man has a son there is nothing to pass on.

15 As a man came from his mother's womb, so he will depart again, naked as he arrived. He takes nothing for his labor to carry in his hands. 16 This too is a grievous affliction: Exactly as a man is born, so he will depart. What does he gain as he toils for the wind? 17 Moreover, all his days he eats in darkness, with much sorrow, sickness, and anger.

18 Here is what I have seen to be good and fitting: to eat and drink, and to find satisfaction in all the labor one does under the sun during the few days of life that God has given him—for this is his lot.

19 Furthermore, God has given riches and wealth to every man, and He has enabled him to enjoy them, to accept his lot, and to rejoice in his labor. This is a gift from God. 20 For a man seldom considers the days of his life, because God keeps him occupied with the joy of his heart.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

A man gets riches, a hundred kids and a long life, but cannot enjoy any of it. A baby born dead is better off, says the Teacher. Ouch. Nobody knows what comes after him.

THE FUTILITY OF LIFE

1 There is another evil I have seen under the sun, and it weighs heavily upon mankind: 2 God gives a man riches, wealth, and honor, so that he lacks nothing his heart desires; but God does not allow him to enjoy them. Instead, a stranger will enjoy them. This is futile and a grievous affliction.

3 A man may father a hundred children and live for many years; yet no matter how long he lives, if he is unsatisfied with his prosperity and does not even receive a proper burial, I say that a stillborn child is better off than he. 4 For a stillborn child enters in futility and departs in darkness, and his name is shrouded in obscurity. 5 The child, though neither seeing the sun nor knowing anything, has more rest than that man, 6 even if he lives a thousand years twice over but fails to enjoy his prosperity. Do not all go to the same place?

7 All a man's labor is for his mouth,
yet his appetite is never satisfied.

8 What advantage, then, has the wise man over the fool? What gain comes to the poor man who knows how to conduct himself before others? 9 Better what the eye can see than the wandering of desire. This too is futile and a pursuit of the wind.

10 Whatever exists was named long ago, and it is known what man is; but he can-

ECC 5:15 [NOTE] NAKED HE CAME. Job said it, Job 1:21, and Paul said it, For we brought nothing into the world, so we cannot carry anything out of it, 1 Timothy 6:7.

THE HEART

not contend with one stronger than he. 11 For the more words, the more futility—and how does that profit anyone? 12 For who knows what is good for a man during the few days in which he passes through his fleeting life like a shadow? Who can tell a man what will come after him under the sun?

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

A funeral teaches you more than a party. Do not ask why the old days were better. Nobody is perfect, not one. The Teacher searched for answers and found that people take a good thing and make it complicated.

THE VALUE OF WISDOM

1 A good name is better than fine perfume,
and one's day of death is better than his day of birth.
2 It is better to enter a house of mourning than a house of feasting,
since death is the end of every man,
and the living should take this to heart.
3 Sorrow is better than laughter,
for a sad countenance is good for the heart.
4 The heart of the wise is in the house of mourning,
but the heart of fools is in the house of pleasure.
5 It is better to heed a wise man's rebuke than to listen to the song of fools.
6 For like the crackling of thorns under the pot,
so is the laughter of the fool. This too is futile.
7 Surely extortion turns a wise man into a fool,
and a bribe corrupts the heart.
8 The end of a matter is better than the beginning,
and a patient spirit is better than a proud one.
9 Do not be quickly provoked in your spirit,
for anger settles in the lap of a fool.
10 Do not say, "Why were the old days better than these?"
For it is unwise of you to ask about this.
11 Wisdom, like an inheritance, is good,
and it benefits those who see the sun.
12 For wisdom, like money, is a shelter,
and the advantage of knowledge
is that wisdom preserves the life of its owner.
13 Consider the work of God:
Who can straighten what He has bent?
14 In the day of prosperity, be joyful,
but in the day of adversity, consider this:
God has made one of these along with the other,
so that a man cannot discover
anything that will come after him.

THE LIMITS OF HUMAN WISDOM

15 In my futile life I have seen both of these:
A righteous man perishing in his righteousness,
and a wicked man living long in his wickedness.
16 Do not be overly righteous, and do not make yourself too wise. Why should you destroy yourself? 17 Do not be excessively wicked, and do not be a fool. Why should you die before your time? 18 It is good to grasp the one and not let the other slip from your hand. For he who fears God will follow both warnings.
19 Wisdom makes the wise man
stronger than ten rulers in a city.
20 Surely there is no righteous man on earth
who does good and never sins.
21 Do not pay attention to every word that is spoken, or you may hear your servant cursing you. 22 For you know in your heart that many times you yourself have cursed others.
23 All this I tested by wisdom, saying, "I resolve to be wise." But it was beyond me.

ECC 7:2 [HEART] The heart of the wise is in the house of mourning. Facing death makes the heart wise.

ECC 7:2 [NOTE] THE HOUSE OF MOURNING. A funeral makes you think about your own life. Moses prayed the same, Teach us to number our days, Psalm 90:12.

ECC 7:20 [NOTE] NO ONE RIGHTEOUS. Paul says the same thing in Romans 3:10 to 12, where he quotes the Psalms. Everyone needs God's mercy.

THE HEART

24 What exists is out of reach and very
deep. Who can fathom it?
25 I directed my heart to understand, to explore, to search out wisdom and explanations, and to understand the stupidity of wickedness and the folly of madness. 26 And I find more bitter than death the woman who is a snare, whose heart is a net, and whose hands are chains. The man who pleases God escapes her, but the sinner is ensnared.
27 "Behold," says the Teacher, "I have discovered this by adding one thing to another to find an explanation. 28 While my soul was still searching but not finding, among a thousand I have found one upright man, but among all these I have not found one such woman. 29 Only this have I found: I have discovered that God made mankind upright, but they have sought out many schemes."

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS
Obey the king and know when to keep quiet. When justice is slow, people get bold about doing wrong. Life is not fair under the sun, so enjoy the meals God gives and leave the rest to Him.

OBEY THE KING

1 Who is like the wise man? Who knows the interpretation of a matter? A man's wisdom brightens his face, and the sternness of his face is changed.
2 Keep the king's command, I say, because of your oath before God. 3 Do not hasten to leave his presence, and do not persist in a bad cause, for he will do whatever he pleases. 4 For the king's word is supreme, and who can say to him, "What are you doing?"
5 Whoever keeps his command will come to no harm, and a wise heart knows the right time and procedure. 6 For there is a right time and procedure to every purpose, though a man's misery weighs heavily upon him. 7 Since no one knows what will happen, who can tell him what is to come?
8 As no man has power over the wind to contain it, so no one has authority over his day of death. As no one can be discharged in wartime, so wickedness will not release those who practice it. 9 All this I have seen, applying my heart to every deed that is done under the sun; there is a time when one man lords it over another to his own detriment.

FEAR GOD // ISAIAH 8:11–15

10 Then too, I saw the burial of the wicked who used to go in and out of the holy place, and they were praised in the city where they had done so. This too is futile.
11 When the sentence for a crime is not speedily executed, the hearts of men become fully set on doing evil.
12 Although a sinner does evil a hundred times and still lives long, yet I also know that it will go well with those who fear God, who are reverent in His presence. 13 Yet because the wicked do not fear God, it will not go well with them, and their days will not lengthen like a shadow.

GOD'S WAYS ARE MYSTERIOUS

14 There is a futility that is done on the earth: There are righteous men who get what the actions of the wicked deserve, and there are wicked men who get what the actions of the righteous deserve. I say that this too is futile.
15 So I commended the enjoyment of life, because there is nothing better for a man under the sun than to eat and drink and be merry. For this joy will accompany him in his labor during the days of his life that God gives him under the sun.
16 When I applied my heart to know wisdom and to observe the task that one performs on the earth—though his eyes do not see sleep in the day or even in the night— 17 I saw every work of God, and

ECC 7:28 [NOTE] ONE IN A THOUSAND. A hard verse. Some read it as the bitter words of a man with 1,000 wives and concubines, 1 Kings 11:3. Others say the point is 7:29: all people, men and women, have gone looking for trouble. The Bible honors many wise women, like the one in Proverbs 31.

ECC 8:11 [HEART] When punishment is slow, the hearts of men become set on doing evil.
ECC 8:11 [NOTE] THE SENTENCE. The Hebrew word pitgam, a ruling or decree, comes from Persian. It is one of the clues scholars use to date the book. See Who Wrote Ecclesiastes?

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY

that a man is unable to comprehend the work that is done under the sun. Despite his efforts to search it out, he cannot find its meaning; even if the wise man claims to know, he is unable to comprehend.

THE BIG QUESTION

EAT, DRINK AND BE MERRY?

Enjoy Life or YOLO?

ECCLESIASTES 2:24 · 3:13 · 5:18 TO 20 · 8:15 · 9:7 TO 9

THE REFRAIN

About seven times the Teacher says to enjoy your food, drink and work: 2:24, 3:12 to 13, 3:22, 5:18 to 20, 8:15, 9:7 to 9 and 11:9. Most times he says it is from the hand of God, or God's gift.

WHERE THE SAYING COMES FROM

Eat, drink and be merry mixes 8:15 with Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die, Isaiah 22:13, which Paul quotes in 1 Corinthians 15:32. Jesus told of a rich fool who said, Eat, drink and be merry, and died that night, Luke 12:19 to 20.

Every View

LUKE 12:19 TO 21 · 1 CORINTHIANS 15:32 · 1 TIMOTHY 6:17

VIEW 1: A GIFT FROM GOD

Many read the refrain as good news: food, work and family are gifts. Enjoying them is a way to thank God, 1 Timothy 6:17.

VIEW 2: MAKE THE BEST OF IT

Some read it as a sad shrug: life is short and unfair, so grab the little joys you can.

NOT YOLO

Either way, it is not You Only Live Once, so do whatever you want. Enjoy your youth, but know that God will judge, 11:9. Remember your Creator, 12:1.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Enjoy the good things God gives, with thanks, and live for Him. The rich fool's mistake was not the party; it was leaving God out, Luke 12:21.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Everyone dies, good and bad. So eat your bread with joy, wear clean clothes, love your wife, and work hard while you can. The race is not always to the fast, and a poor wise man once saved a whole city. Nobody remembered him.

DEATH COMES TO GOOD AND BAD

1 So I took all this to heart and concluded
that the righteous and the wise, as well as
their deeds, are in God's hands. Man does
not know what lies ahead, whether love or
hate.

2 It is the same for all: There is a common
fate for the righteous and the wicked, for
the good and the bad, for the clean and
the unclean, for the one who sacrifices
and the one who does not. As it is for the
good, so it is for the sinner; as it is for the
one who makes a vow, so it is for the one
who refuses to take a vow.

3 This is an evil in everything that is done
under the sun: There is one fate for every-
one. Furthermore, the hearts of men are
full of evil and madness while they are
alive, and afterward they join the dead.

4 There is hope, however, for anyone who
is among the living; for even a live dog is
better than a dead lion. 5 For the living
know that they will die, but the dead know
nothing. They have no further reward, be-
cause the memory of them is forgotten. 6
Their love, their hate, and their envy have
already vanished, and they will never
again have a share in all that is done un-
der the sun.

ENJOY YOUR PORTION IN THIS LIFE

7 Go, eat your bread with joy, and drink
your wine with a cheerful heart, for God
has already approved your works:

8 Let your garments always be white,
and never spare the oil for your head.

ECC 9:3 [HEART] The hearts of men are full of evil and madness while they live.

ECC 9:5 [NOTE] THE DEAD KNOW NOTHING. Under the sun, the dead have no part in this world any more, 9:6. See the Big Question What Happens When We Die?

ECC 9:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Old Babylonian tablet of the Epic of Gilgamesh, about 1800 to 1700 BC, where a tavern keeper tells Gilgamesh to eat, drink, wear clean clothes and love his wife, see the Siduri Field Notes page, p.1038FIELD NOTES p.1038

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · DEBATED: DID THE TEACHER KNOW IT?

SIDURI IN GILGAMESH

ECCLESIASTES 9:7 TO 9



The Sun God Tablet from Sippar, about 860 to 850 BC: the sun god Shamash on his throne. The Siduri tablet is not shown; it is said to come from this same city. British Museum, London. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A clay tablet with part of the Epic of Gilgamesh, the most famous story of ancient Iraq. After his friend Enkidu dies, King Gilgamesh looks for a way to never die. He meets a woman who keeps a tavern by the sea, named Siduri in later copies.

HOW OLD IT IS

Old Babylonian, about 1800 to 1700 BC, centuries before Solomon. It was the first piece of Gilgamesh found that is older than the copies from Assyria.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Bruno Meissner bought it in 1902 for the Berlin Museum, VAT 4105. It is said to come from Sippar, the city of the sun god.

WHAT SHE SAID

Her words, from the 1920 translation of Morris Jastrow and Albert Clay. Gish is Gilgamesh.

Why, O Gish, does thou run about?
The life that thou seekest, thou wilt not find.
When the gods created mankind,
Death they imposed on mankind;
Life they kept in their power.
Thou, O Gish, fill thy belly,
Day and night do thou rejoice,
Daily make a rejoicing!
Day and night a renewal of jollification!
Let thy clothes be clean,
Wash thy head and pour water over thee!
Care for the little one who takes hold of thy hand!
Let the wife rejoice in thy bosom!

SOUNDS LIKE 9:7 TO 9

Eat your bread with joy, let your garments be white, never spare the oil for your head, enjoy life with your wife.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

In Gilgamesh the gods keep life for themselves, so party before you die. The Teacher says enjoy these things because God has approved your works, 9:7, and they are His gift, 2:24. And God will judge, 12:14.

GONE FROM LATER COPIES

The tablets from Nineveh, a thousand years later, drop this speech. There Siduri mostly tells him the way to the boatman.

DID THE TEACHER KNOW IT?

In 1905 a scholar named Hubert Grimme saw the match. Some think the Teacher knew the story. Many say both just say what people everywhere say about a short life.

SEE ALSO

The same epic has a flood story, see Other Flood Stories in Genesis, p.59.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not show the Bible copied a myth. The Teacher asked the oldest question and gave a different answer: enjoy life as God's gift and live for Him.

NOTABLE

9 Enjoy life with your beloved wife all the
days of the fleeting life that God has given
you under the sun—all your fleeting days.
For this is your portion in life and in your
labor under the sun. 10 Whatever you find
to do with your hands, do it with all your
might, for in Sheol, where you are going,
there is no work or planning or knowledge
or wisdom.

11 I saw something else under the sun: The
race is not to the swift, nor the battle to
the strong; neither is the bread to the
wise, nor the wealth to the intelligent, nor
the favor to the skillful. For time and
chance happen to all. 12 For surely no man
knows his time: Like fish caught in a cruel
net or birds trapped in a snare, so men are
ensnared in an evil time that suddenly
falls upon them.

WISDOM IS BETTER THAN STRENGTH

13 I have also seen this wisdom under the
sun, and it was great to me: 14 There was a
small city with few men. A mighty king
came against it, surrounded it, and built
large siege ramps against it.

15 Now a poor wise man was found in the
city, and he saved the city by his wisdom.
Yet no one remembered that poor man. 16
And I said, "Wisdom is better than
strength, but the wisdom of the poor man
is despised, and his words are not
heeded."

17 The calm words of the wise are heeded
over the shouts of a ruler among fools.
18 Wisdom is better than weapons of war,
but one sinner destroys much good.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

A dead fly can ruin a whole bottle of perfume, and a little folly ruins a wise man. Sharpen your axe. Fools talk too much. And watch what you say about the king, because a little bird might tell him.

WISDOM AND FOLLY

1 As dead flies bring a stench to the
perfumer's oil,
so a little folly outweighs wisdom and
honor.
2 A wise man's heart inclines to the right,
but the heart of a fool to the left.
3 Even as the fool walks along the road,
his sense is lacking,
and he shows everyone that he is a fool.
4 If the ruler's temper flares against you,
do not abandon your post,
for calmness lays great offenses to rest.

5 There is an evil I have seen under the
sun—
an error that proceeds from the ruler:
6 Folly is appointed to great heights,
but the rich sit in lowly positions.
7 I have seen slaves on horseback,
while princes go on foot like slaves.

8 He who digs a pit may fall into it,
and he who breaches a wall may be bit-
ten by a snake.
9 The one who quarries stones may be in-
jured by them,
and he who splits logs endangers him-
self.
10 If the axe is dull and the blade unsharp-
ened,
more strength must be exerted,
but skill produces success.
11 If the snake bites before it is charmed,
there is no profit for the charmer.

12 The words of a wise man's mouth are
gracious,
but the lips of a fool consume him.
13 The beginning of his talk is folly,
and the end of his speech is evil mad-
ness.
14 Yet the fool multiplies words.
No one knows what is coming,
and who can tell him what will come af-
ter him?
15 The toil of a fool wearies him,
for he does not know the way to the
city.

ECC 9:10 [NOTABLE] Life is short, so give your best to the work in front of you today.
ECC 9:10 [NOTE] SHEOL. The Hebrew name for the place of the dead, the grave. The Old Testament says little about life after death; the New Testament says much more, 2 Timothy 1:10.
ECC 9:11 [NOTE] TIME AND CHANCE. The fastest runner does not always win. Life is full of surprises no one can plan for.

ECC 10:1 [NOTE] DEAD FLIES. A little bit of foolishness can ruin a good name, the way dead flies make perfume stink.

THE HEART NOTABLE

16 Woe to you, O land whose king is a
youth,
and whose princes feast in the morning.
17 Blessed are you, O land whose king is a
son of nobles,
and whose princes feast at the proper
time—
for strength and not for drunkenness.

18 Through laziness the roof caves in,
and in the hands of the idle, the house
leaks.

19 A feast is prepared for laughter, and
wine makes life merry,
but money is the answer for everything.

20 Do not curse the king even in your
thoughts,
or curse the rich even in your bedroom,
for a bird of the air may carry your words,
and a winged creature may report your
speech.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Cast your bread on the waters and be generous. You cannot control the weather, so plant anyway. Young man, enjoy being young, but remember: God will judge it all.

CAST YOUR BREAD UPON THE WATERS

1 Cast your bread upon the waters,
for after many days you will find it again.
2 Divide your portion among seven, or
even eight,
for you do not know what disaster may
befall the land.

3 If the clouds are full,
they will pour out rain upon the earth;
whether a tree falls to the south or to the
north,
in the place where it falls, there it will lie.
4 He who watches the wind will fail to sow,
and he who observes the clouds will fail
to reap.

5 As you do not know the path of the wind,
or how the bones are formed in a
mother's womb,
so you cannot understand the work of
God,
the Maker of all things.
6 Sow your seed in the morning,
and do not rest your hands in the
evening,
for you do not know which will succeed,
whether this or that, or if both will
equally prosper.

ENJOY YOUR YEARS

7 Light is sweet,
and it pleases the eyes to see the sun.
8 So if a man lives many years,
let him rejoice in them all.
But let him remember the days of dark-
ness,
for they will be many.
Everything to come is futile.

9 Rejoice, O young man, while you are
young,
and let your heart be glad in the days of
your youth.
Walk in the ways of your heart
and in the sight of your eyes,
but know that for all these things
God will bring you to judgment.
10 So banish sorrow from your heart,
and cast off pain from your body,
for youth and vigor are fleeting.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Remember your Creator before old age shows up: shaky hands, missing teeth, weak eyes and hair like almond blossoms. The body goes back to dust and the spirit to God. The bottom line: fear God and keep His commandments.

REMEMBER YOUR CREATOR

1 Remember your Creator in the days of
your youth,
before the days of adversity come
and the years approach of which you will
say,
"I find no pleasure in them,"

ECC 10:20 [NOTE] A LITTLE BIRD. The saying A little bird told me may come from this verse. The point: what you say in private can get out.

ECC 11:1 [NOTABLE] Be generous and take good risks. What you give away has a way of coming back.

ECC 11:1 [NOTE] CAST YOUR BREAD. Some read it as trade, sending grain by ship and getting profit back later. Many read it as giving: be generous, and it will come back to you. 11:2 says spread it out to seven or eight.

ECC 11:9 [HEART] Let your heart be glad while you are young, but know that God will judge. Joy and judgment go together.

NOTABLE

2 before the light of the sun, moon, and
stars is darkened,
and the clouds return after the rain,
3 on the day the keepers of the house
tremble
and the strong men stoop,
when those grinding cease because they
are few
and those watching through windows
see dimly,
4 when the doors to the street are shut
and the sound of the mill fades away,
when one rises at the sound of a bird
and all the daughters of song grow faint,
5 when men fear the heights and dangers
of the road,
when the almond tree blossoms,
the grasshopper loses its spring,
and the caper berry shrivels—
for then man goes to his eternal home
and mourners walk the streets.

6 Remember Him before the silver cord is
snapped
and the golden bowl is crushed,
before the pitcher is shattered at the
spring
and the wheel is broken at the well,
7 before the dust returns to the ground
from which it came
and the spirit returns to God who gave
it.

8 "Futility of futilities," says the Teacher.
"Everything is futile!"

THE WHOLE DUTY OF MAN

9 Not only was the Teacher wise, but he also taught the people knowledge; he pondered, searched out, and arranged many proverbs. 10 The Teacher searched to find delightful sayings and to record accurate words of truth.

11 The words of the wise are like goads, and the anthologies of the masters are like firmly embedded nails driven by a single Shepherd. 12 And by these, my son, be further warned: There is no end to the making of many books, and much study wearies the body.

13 When all has been heard, the conclusion of the matter is this: Fear God and keep His commandments, because this is the whole duty of man. 14 For God will bring every deed into judgment, along with every hidden thing, whether good or evil.

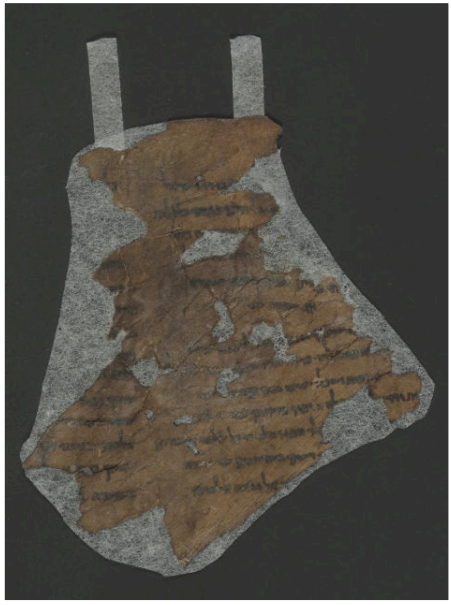
- **ECC 12:1 [NOTABLE]** Do not wait until you are old to get serious about God. Start now.
- **ECC 12:1 [NOTE]** REMEMBER YOUR CREATOR. Remember means more than think about. It means to live for Him, before the hard years come.
- **ECC 12:3 [NOTE]** THE OLD AGE POEM. Many read 12:2 to 7 as a picture of a body growing old. The keepers who tremble are the arms and hands, the grinders are the teeth, the windows are the eyes, the almond blossoms are white hair, and the grasshopper that drags itself along is a stiff walk.
- **ECC 12:6 [NOTE]** THE SILVER CORD. Many picture a gold lamp bowl hanging by a silver cord. When the cord snaps, the bowl falls and breaks. It is a picture of death, when life is cut off.
- **ECC 12:7 [NOTE]** DUST AND SPIRIT. The body goes back to the dust, as God said to Adam, Genesis 3:19. The spirit, the breath of life God gave, Genesis 2:7, goes back to Him.
- **ECC 12:9 [NOTE]** A NEW VOICE. In 12:9 to 14 someone talks about the Teacher instead of as the Teacher. Many think this is the one who put the book together.
- **ECC 12:11 [NOTE]** ONE SHEPHERD. The wise sayings come from one Shepherd. Many Christians think of Jesus, the Good Shepherd, John 10:11.
- **ECC 12:12 [NOTE]** MANY BOOKS. Every student's favorite verse. Books never end, and too much study wears you out.
- **ECC 12:13 [NOTABLE]** After trying everything, the Teacher lands here. This is the bottom line of the whole book.
- **ECC 12:14 [NOTE]** EVERY HIDDEN THING. God will judge it all. Paul says, We must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, 2 Corinthians 5:10.

BOOK 22 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · POETRY AND WISDOM

SONG OF SOLOMON

Yes, This Is in the Bible

AUTHOR	Solomon's Song, 1:1. The Hebrew can mean by, for or about Solomon. Tradition says he wrote it. Many scholars think it was written later. See Who Wrote It?
DATE	If Solomon wrote it, about 970 to 930 BC. Many scholars date it about 500 to 300 BC. Either way, it was being copied by about 30 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Brides and grooms, husbands and wives, and anyone who wants to know what God thinks about love.
KEY VERSE	Song of Solomon 8:6. Set me as a seal over your heart, as a seal upon your arm. For love is as strong as death.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF THE SONG
The biggest piece of 4QCant a, from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 30 BC to AD 30. This scroll has parts of Song of Solomon 3, 4, 6 and 7, and it jumps from 4:7 straight to 6:11. Three more Song scrolls were found near Qumran. See The Song Scrolls from Qumran.

Copies this old show the Song was being copied and read before Jesus was born. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

A bride and her king take turns singing about their love, and a group of friends, the daughters of Jerusalem, joins in. There is no clear story line, just love songs about longing, a

wedding and a love that lasts. God's name is never used, except maybe once, 8:6. It is in the Bible because God made love and marriage, and He calls them good.

What Love Is Up Against

WAITING. Do not stir up love until the time is right, 2:7.
LITTLE FOXES. Small problems that ruin the vineyard, 2:15.
MISSING EACH OTHER. She looks for him and cannot find him, 3:1 and 5:6.
JEALOUSY. Love's jealousy is as fierce as the grave, 8:6.

The Idiot Proof Summary

The Song of Solomon is a collection of love poems between a bride and her groom, pictured as King Solomon. They long for each other, praise each other, get married, lose each other for a night and find each other again. The friends cheer them on, and the bride warns them three times not to rush love. At the end comes the big line: love is as strong as death, and all the water in the world cannot put it out. For 2,000 years Jews and Christians have also read it as a picture of God's love for His people.

Song of Solomon at a Glance

CH 1 to 2 **FIRST LOVE**
Longing, praise, and spring: Arise, my love.

CH 3 **THE SEARCH AND THE PARADE**
A night search, then Solomon's wedding day.

CH 4 to 5 **THE WEDDING SONG**
The locked garden, then a knock at night.

CH 6 to 7 **FOUND AGAIN**
He praises her; she says I am his.

CH 8 **STRONG AS DEATH**
The seal of love that nothing can buy.

Where Jesus Shows Up

SONG OF SOLOMON 5:16 He is altogether lovely. Many Christians sing this about Jesus, the Bridegroom who loves His bride, the church, Ephesians 5:25 to 27.

SONG OF SOLOMON 5:2 Open to me. Jesus said, Behold, I stand at the door and knock, Revelation 3:20.

SONG OF SOLOMON 8:6 Love is as strong as death. Jesus' love was stronger: He laid down His life for His friends and rose again, John 15:13.

SONG OF SOLOMON 2:1 A rose of Sharon, a lily of the valley. In the verse the bride says it, but many hymns use these names for Jesus.

GOD IN THE SONG
God is never named, except maybe once: the very flame of Yahweh, 8:6. Like Esther, the Song is in the Bible without saying His name.

What to Watch for in Song of Solomon

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	5:16
THE HEART (3)	4:9, 5:2, 8:6
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	1:1, 4:10
NOTABLE (9)	2:4, 2:7, 2:10-13, 2:15-16, 3:5-6, 8:4, 8:7

GOD SPEAKING (0 VERSES) Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (7 NAMES) Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE BEST SONG
Song of Songs means the best song, like King of kings. Solomon wrote 1,005 songs, 1 Kings 4:32, and this one is called the best.

HOLY OF HOLIES
Rabbi Akiva said all the Writings are holy, but the Song of Songs is the Holy of Holies, Mishnah Yadayim 3:5.

READ AT PASSOVER
Many Jews read the Song every year at Passover, the spring feast that remembers how God brought Israel out of Egypt.

NO RED LETTERS
God does not speak in the Song, so there are no red letters. His name may show up once, in the flame of Yahweh, 8:6.

How Does It End?

With love still calling. The bride says, Come away, my beloved, 8:14. The love that began with a kiss, 1:2, ends as strong as death, 8:6.

ARCHAEOLOGY BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

A bride sings about her king, who smells better than a perfume shop. She is suntanned from working her brothers' vineyards and a little shy about it. He compares her to a mare among Pharaoh's chariots, which back then was probably a big compliment.

THE BRIDE CONFESSES HER LOVE // EPHESIANS 5:22–33; 1 PETER 3:1–7

1 This is Solomon's Song of Songs.

The Bride

2 Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth!
For your love is more delightful than wine.
3 The fragrance of your perfume is pleasing;
your name is like perfume poured out.
No wonder the maidens adore you.

4 Take me away with you—let us hurry!
May the king bring me to his chambers.

The Friends

We will rejoice and delight in you;
we will praise your love more than wine.

The Bride

It is only right that they adore you.

5 I am dark, yet lovely, O daughters of Jerusalem,
like the tents of Kedar, like the curtains of Solomon.
6 Do not stare because I am dark,
for the sun has gazed upon me.
My mother's sons were angry with me;
they made me a keeper of the vineyards,
but my own vineyard I have neglected.

7 Tell me, O one I love,
where do you pasture your sheep?
Where do you rest them at midday?
Why should I be like a veiled woman
beside the flocks of your companions?

The Friends

8 If you do not know, O fairest of women,
follow the tracks of the flock,
and graze your young goats
near the tents of the shepherds.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE SONG SCROLLS FROM QUMRAN

SONG OF SOLOMON 1:1 TO 7 · 2:9 TO 5:1 · 6:11 TO 7:7



4QCant b, three pieces on Plate 1119, from Qumran Cave 4, about 30 BC to AD 30. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT THEY ARE

Four Dead Sea Scrolls with parts of the Song: 4QCant a, b and c from Cave 4, and 6QCant from Cave 6, in the cliffs near Qumran by the Dead Sea.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

All four were copied in the time of Herod and the decades after, about 30 BC to AD 70. 6QCant, with 1:1 to 7, is from about AD 50.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Both caves were found in 1952. Emanuel Tov published the Cave 4 copies in 2000. 4QCant c is a tiny scrap, about ten letters from 3:7 to 8.

THE SHORT COPIES

4QCant a jumps from 4:7 to 6:11 and leaves out 4:8 to 6:10. 4QCant b leaves out 3:6 to 8 and 4:4 to 7, and it seems to stop at 5:1. Its copyist also made mistakes and used Aramaic spellings.

SONG 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Four Dead Sea Scrolls of the Song, copied about 30 BC to AD 70; two of them are shorter than the book we have, see The Song Scrolls from Qumran Field Notes box, p.1046 FIELD NOTES p.1046

SONG 1:1 [NOTE] SONG OF SONGS. In Hebrew, saying a word twice means the very best, like Holy of Holies or King of kings. So this is the best song of all. Of Solomon can mean by, for or about him. See the Big Question Who Wrote It?

SONG 1:1 [NOTE] WHO IS TALKING? The small labels like The Bride and The Friends are not in the Hebrew. Many Bibles add them to help you follow who is speaking, mostly from whether the Hebrew word is for a man or a woman.

SONG 1:2 [NOTE] A LOVE POEM. The Song is poetry about a bride and her groom. Like every love song, it talks in pictures: wine, perfume, gardens and fruit. See the Big Question How Should We Read It?

SONG 1:5 [NOTE] DARK, YET LOVELY. She worked outside in the sun, 1:6. Back then, pale skin meant a rich life indoors, so she feels shy. Kedar was a desert tribe that lived in black goat hair tents.

SONG 1:6 [NOTE] MY OWN VINEYARD. She took care of her brothers' vineyards but not her own. Many read her own vineyard as herself, her own looks and life, 8:12.

WHY SHORTER?
Some think the copyists wrote out only the parts they wanted, like a playlist of favorite songs. Others think the Song once went around in shorter forms. Scholars still debate it.

WHAT THEY SHOW
The words that are there are mostly the same as the Hebrew Bible today. The Song was being copied as Scripture before Jesus' time.

The Bridegroom

9 I compare you, my darling,
to a mare among Pharaoh's chariots.
10 Your cheeks are beautiful with ornaments,
your neck with strings of jewels.

The Friends

11 We will make you ornaments of gold,
studded with beads of silver.

The Bride

12 While the king was at his table,
my perfume spread its fragrance.
13 My beloved is to me a sachet of myrrh
resting between my breasts.
14 My beloved is to me a cluster of henna blossoms
in the vineyards of En-gedi.

The Bridegroom

15 How beautiful you are, my darling!
Oh, how very beautiful!
Your eyes are like doves.

The Bride

16 How handsome you are, my beloved!
Oh, how delightful!
The soft grass is our bed.

The Bridegroom

17 The beams of our house are cedars;
our rafters are fragrant firs.

■ **SONG 1:9 [NOTE]** A MARE. Pharaoh's chariots were pulled by stallions. A mare among them would turn every head, so many say this was a big compliment back then.
■ **SONG 1:14 [NOTE]** EN GEDI. An oasis with springs and palm trees by the Dead Sea, where David once hid from Saul, 1 Samuel 24:1.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HOW SHOULD WE READ IT?

A Love Song, a Picture of God, or Both?

SONG OF SOLOMON 1:1 TO 4 · 2:16 · 5:2 · 8:6 TO 7

WHY IT IS A QUESTION
The Song never names God, except maybe once, 8:6. It talks about kisses, perfume, gardens and a bride. So for 2,000 years readers have asked: is it about married love, about God's love for His people, or both?

THE JEWISH READING
Rabbi Akiva called it the Holy of Holies, Mishnah Yadayim 3:5. He also warned people not to sing it like a party song, Tosefta Sanhedrin 12:10. The Targum, an old Aramaic retelling, reads it as the story of God and Israel, from the Exodus all the way to the Messiah.

THE CHURCH READING
Origen wrote ten books on it about AD 240. Bernard of Clairvaux preached 86 sermons on it and only got to chapter 3. For them the groom is Christ and the bride is the church, or each believer's soul. Martin Luther read it another way: Solomon thanking God for a peaceful kingdom.

Every View

EPHESIANS 5:25 TO 32 · HOSEA 2:19 TO 20 · MARK 2:19 · GENESIS 2:24

VIEW 1: CHRIST AND THE CHURCH
The main Christian view for most of church history. Marriage is a picture of Christ and the church, Ephesians 5:32, and Jesus calls Himself the Bridegroom, Mark 2:19. So the Song shows His love for His bride.

VIEW 2: GOD AND ISRAEL
The traditional Jewish view. The prophets call Israel God's bride, Hosea 2:19 to 20 and Isaiah 54:5, so the Song shows God's love for His people.

VIEW 3: A REAL LOVE SONG
Most scholars today, and many pastors, read it first as songs about a real bride and groom. Theodore of Mopsuestia read it this way around AD 400. God put married love in the Bible because He made it and it is good, Genesis 2:24.

NOTABLE

VIEW 4: BOTH
Many say it is a real love song first, and real married love points beyond itself to God's love, the way every marriage should, Ephesians 5:31 to 32.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Love is a gift from God. It is as strong as death, 8:6, and it cannot be bought, 8:7. Whatever else it means, the Song honors faithful love.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
She is a rose of Sharon, he is an apple tree, and love is in the air. Winter is over, the flowers are up, and he calls: Arise, my love, come away. Just watch out for the little foxes.

THE BRIDE'S ADMIRATION

The Bride

1 I am a rose of Sharon,
a lily of the valley.

The Bridegroom

2 Like a lily among the thorns
is my darling among the maidens.

The Bride

3 Like an apple tree among the trees of the forest
is my beloved among the young men.
I delight to sit in his shade,
and his fruit is sweet to my taste.
4 He has brought me to the house of wine,
and his banner over me is love.

5 Sustain me with raisins;
refresh me with apples,
for I am faint with love.

6 His left hand is under my head,
and his right arm embraces me.
7 O daughters of Jerusalem, I adjure you
by the gazelles and does of the field:
Do not arouse or awaken love
until the time is right.

8 Listen! My beloved approaches.
Look! Here he comes,
leaping across the mountains,
bounding over the hills.
9 My beloved is like a gazelle or a young stag.
Look, he stands behind our wall,
gazing through the windows,
peering through the lattice.

10 My beloved calls to me,
"Arise, my darling.
Come away with me, my beautiful one.
11 For now the winter is past;
the rain is over and gone.
12 The flowers have appeared in the countryside;
the season of singing has come,
and the cooing of turtledoves
is heard in our land.
13 The fig tree ripens its figs;
the blossoming vines spread their fragrance.
Arise, come away, my darling;
come away with me, my beautiful one."

The Bridegroom

14 O my dove in the clefts of the rock,
in the crevices of the cliff,
let me see your face,
let me hear your voice;
for your voice is sweet,
and your countenance is lovely.

The Friends

15 Catch for us the foxes—
the little foxes that ruin the vineyards—
for our vineyards are in bloom.

- **SONG 2:1 [NOTE]** ROSE OF SHARON. No one is sure what flower this is; many think a crocus or a narcissus that grows wild on the plain of Sharon. Here the bride says it about herself. Many hymns, like Charles Fry's The Lily of the Valley from 1881, use these names for Jesus.
- **SONG 2:4 [NOTABLE]** Love is the flag he flies over her for everyone to see. Many Christians sing it about God's love, His banner over me is love.
- **SONG 2:4 [NOTE]** HIS BANNER. A banner is a flag flown over an army or a crowd. His love is the flag over her, for everyone to see. Many kids sing His Banner Over Me Is Love in church.
- **SONG 2:5 [NOTE]** FAINT WITH LOVE. Lovesick! She says it again in 5:8. Love songs from ancient Egypt say the same thing, see Egyptian Love Songs.
- **SONG 2:7 [NOTABLE]** Love is powerful, so do not rush it. Wait for the right time and the right person. Said three times: 2:7, 3:5 and 8:4.
- **SONG 2:7 [NOTE]** THE REFRAIN. The bride says it three times, 2:7, 3:5 and 8:4. See the Big Question Do Not Stir Up Love.
- **SONG 2:10 [NOTABLE]** The famous spring song of the Bible. Winter is over and love comes alive, like new life after a hard season.
- **SONG 2:10 [NOTE]** ARISE, MY LOVE. The spring song of the Bible, 2:10 to 13. The rains are over, the flowers are up, figs are ripening and the doves are cooing. Love comes alive like the land in spring.
- **SONG 2:15 [NOTABLE]** Small problems left alone can ruin a big love. Deal with the little things early.
- **SONG 2:15 [NOTE]** LITTLE FOXES. Foxes dug holes in vineyards and ate the grapes. Many read it as a picture of small problems that can ruin a relationship if no one deals with them.

NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

The Bride

16 My beloved is mine and I am his;
he pastures his flock among the lilies.
17 Before the day breaks and shadows flee,
turn, my beloved,
and be like a gazelle
or a young stag on the mountains of
Bether.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

She cannot find him, so she searches the whole city at night and even asks the security guards. Then a royal parade rolls in: King Solomon on his wedding day, crown and all.

THE BRIDE'S DREAM

1 On my bed at night
I sought the one I love;
I sought him,
but did not find him.
2 I will arise now and go about the city,
through the streets and squares.
I will seek the one I love.
So I sought him but did not find him.

3 I encountered the watchmen on their
rounds of the city:
"Have you seen the one I love?"
4 I had just passed them when I found the
one I love.
I held him and would not let go
until I had brought him to my mother's
house,
to the chamber of the one who con-
ceived me.

5 O daughters of Jerusalem, I adjure you
by the gazelles and does of the field:
Do not arouse or awaken love
until the time is right.

THE BIG QUESTION

DO NOT STIR UP LOVE

Wait for It

SONG OF SOLOMON 2:7 · 3:5 · 8:4

THE REFRAIN

Three times the bride tells her friends, Do not arouse or awaken love until the time is right, 2:7, 3:5 and 8:4. Each time it comes right after a moment of closeness, like the chorus of a song.

BY THE GAZELLES

She asks them to promise by the gazelles and does of the field, wild animals that stand for beauty and love all through the Song.

Two Ways to Read It

SONG OF SOLOMON 8:6 TO 7 · PROVERBS 4:23

READING 1: WAIT FOR THE RIGHT TIME

Most read it as advice: love is powerful, so do not force it or rush it. Wait for the right person and the right time, marriage.

READING 2: DO NOT DISTURB

Some read it as: do not wake the lovers until they are ready. Either way, love has its own timing.

WHY IT MATTERS

Love is as strong as death, 8:6. Something that strong is not a toy. Guard your heart, Proverbs 4:23. Waiting protects you and the one you will love.

SOLOMON ARRIVES ON HIS WEDDING DAY

6 Who is this coming up from the wilder-
ness
like a column of smoke,
scented with myrrh and frankincense
from all the spices of the merchant?
7 Behold, it is Solomon's carriage,
escorted by sixty of the mightiest men
of Israel.
8 All are skilled with the sword,
experienced in warfare.
Each has his sword at his side
prepared for the terror of the night.

9 King Solomon has made his carriage

- **SONG 2:16 [NOTABLE]** Love that belongs to each other, all the way. A favorite line for weddings and wedding rings.
- **SONG 2:16 [NOTE]** MINE AND HIS. She says it again in 6:3 and 7:10. Each time she says a little less about herself and a little more about him.
- **SONG 3:1 [NOTE]** A BAD NIGHT. Many think 3:1 to 5 is a dream, or a night of worry when she misses him. 5:2 to 8 is like it.
- **SONG 3:5 [NOTABLE]** The refrain again: wait for the right time. See 2:7.
- **SONG 3:6 [NOTABLE]** A king's perfumes. Many Christians see here a picture of Jesus, the King and Bridegroom, who was given myrrh and frankincense as a baby.
- **SONG 3:7 [NOTE]** THE WEDDING PARADE. Solomon arrives in a royal carriage with sixty of Israel's best soldiers as guards, 3:7 to 11.

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

out of the timber of Lebanon.
10 He has made its posts of silver,
its base of gold, its seat of purple fabric.
Its interior is inlaid with love
by the daughters of Jerusalem.

11 Come out, O daughters of Zion,
and gaze at King Solomon,
wearing the crown with which his mother crowned him
on the day of his wedding—
the day of his heart's rejoicing.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE IT?

By, For or About Solomon?

SONG OF SOLOMON 1:1 · 3:7 TO 11 · 6:4 · 8:11 TO 12

THE TITLE

1:1 says Solomon's Song of Songs. The Hebrew lishlomo can mean by Solomon, for Solomon or about Solomon. The same little word is in many psalm titles, like of David.

THE CLUES FOR SOLOMON

Solomon wrote 1,005 songs, 1 Kings 4:32, and knew all about plants and animals, 4:33. The Song is full of them. It names Solomon seven times, and places all over his kingdom, from Lebanon to En Gedi. Tirzah, 6:4, was a royal city before Samaria was built, so some say the Song is early.

THE CLUES FOR SOMEONE LATER

Many scholars say the Hebrew has later words, like pardes, orchard, from Persian, 4:13, and appiryon, carriage, 3:9, which may come from Greek. In some places Solomon is talked about, not talking, 3:7 to 11 and 8:11 to 12.

Every View

1 KINGS 4:32 TO 33 · 11:3 · PROVERBS 25:1

VIEW 1: SOLOMON WROTE IT

Jewish tradition and most Christians for many centuries. Rabbi Jonathan, in Song of Songs Rabbah, said Solomon wrote the Song when he was young, Proverbs in middle age and Ecclesiastes when he was old.

VIEW 2: PUT TOGETHER LATER

The Talmud says King Hezekiah and his company wrote down the Song, Bava Batra 15a, the way Hezekiah's men copied Proverbs, Proverbs 25:1. Some think the songs go back to Solomon's time and were collected later.

VIEW 3: A LATER POET

Many scholars today date it about 500 to 300 BC: a poet writing about Solomon, the king famous for his riches and his many wives.

A HARD QUESTION

Solomon had 700 wives, 1 Kings 11:3. Some find it odd that he would write the Bible's song of one true love. Some answer that 6:9 calls her his one and only. Others say this is why the Song may be about Solomon, not by him. A few even see a shepherd she loves instead of the king.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The Song was being copied as Scripture before Jesus' time, and Jews and Christians have read it as God's word for 2,000 years.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The groom gives a head to toe compliment speech: teeth like sheep, a neck like a tower. Do not try these lines today. He calls his bride a locked garden, and she invites him in.

SOLOMON ADMIRES HIS BRIDE

The Bridegroom

1 How beautiful you are, my darling—
how very beautiful!
Your eyes are like doves
behind your veil.
Your hair is like a flock of goats
streaming down Mount Gilead.
2 Your teeth are like a flock of newly shorn sheep
coming up from the washing;
each has its twin,
and not one of them is lost.
3 Your lips are like a scarlet ribbon,
and your mouth is lovely.

SONG 3:11 [NOTE] HIS MOTHER CROWNED HIM. A wedding crown, not the crown of the kingdom. Solomon's mother was Bathsheba, 2 Samuel 12:24.

SONG 4:1 [NOTE] A HEAD TO TOE POEM. Old love songs often praise a loved one bit by bit. The pictures are about beauty and color: hair like black goats streaming down a hill, teeth white with none missing, 4:2.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY

Your brow behind your veil
is like a slice of pomegranate.
4 Your neck is like the tower of David,
built with rows of stones;
on it hang a thousand shields,
all of them shields of warriors.
5 Your breasts are like two fawns,
twins of a gazelle grazing among the lilies.

6 Before the day breaks and the shadows flee,
I will make my way
to the mountain of myrrh
and to the hill of frankincense.
7 You are altogether beautiful, my darling;
in you there is no flaw.

8 Come with me from Lebanon, my bride,
come with me from Lebanon!
Descend from the peak of Amana,
from the summits of Senir and Hermon,
from the dens of the lions,
from the mountains of the leopards.
9 You have captured my heart,
my sister, my bride;
you have stolen my heart with one glance of your eyes,
with one jewel of your neck.
10 How delightful is your love,
my sister, my bride!
Your love is much better than wine,
and the fragrance of your perfume than all spices.
11 Your lips, my bride,
drip sweetness like the honeycomb;
honey and milk are under your tongue,
and the fragrance of your garments
is like the aroma of Lebanon.

12 My sister, my bride, you are a garden locked up,
a spring enclosed, a fountain sealed.
13 Your branches are an orchard of pomegranates
with the choicest of fruits, with henna and nard,
14 with nard and saffron, with calamus and cinnamon,
with every kind of frankincense tree,
with myrrh and aloes,
with all the finest spices.
15 You are a garden spring,
a well of fresh water
flowing down from Lebanon.

The Bride

16 Awake, O north wind,
and come, O south wind.
Breathe on my garden
and spread the fragrance of its spices.
Let my beloved come into his garden
and taste its choicest fruits.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

She is half asleep when he knocks, and by the time she opens the door he is gone. She searches again, and tells her friends why he is the most handsome man around.

THE BRIDE AND HER BELOVED

The Bridegroom

1 I have come to my garden, my sister, my bride;
I have gathered my myrrh with my spice.
I have eaten my honeycomb with my honey;
I have drunk my wine with my milk.

The Friends

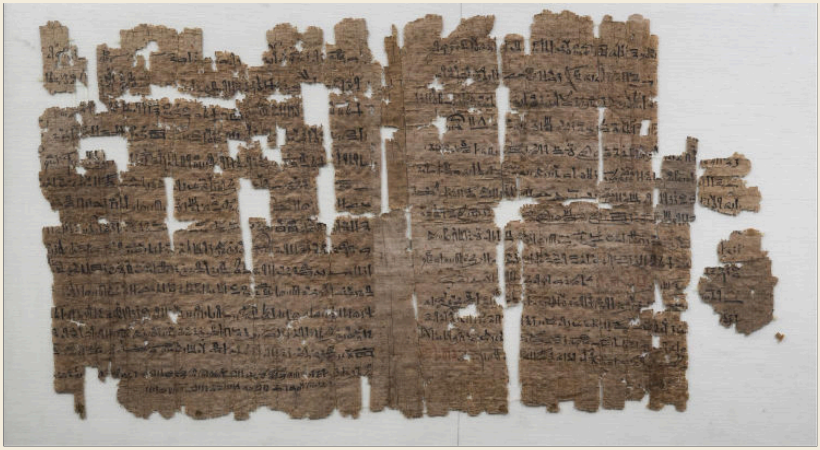
Eat, O friends, and drink;
drink freely, O beloved.

- **SONG 4:4 [NOTE]** THE TOWER OF DAVID. A neck held high with strings of jewels, like a tower hung with soldiers' shields. A thousand shields just means a lot of them.
- **SONG 4:9 [HEART]** You have captured my heart, my sister, my bride. One look and love takes over the heart.
- **SONG 4:9 [NOTE]** MY SISTER, MY BRIDE. Not his real sister. In Egyptian love songs, lovers called each other my sister and my brother. Stolen my heart is one Hebrew word, libbavtini, made from levav, heart.
- **SONG 4:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Love songs on papyrus and pottery from Egypt, about 1300 to 1150 BC, where lovers call each other my sister and my brother, see the Egyptian Love Songs Field Notes page, p.1052 FIELD NOTES p.1052
- **SONG 4:12 [NOTE]** A LOCKED GARDEN. A picture of her purity: she kept herself for her husband. Many read the garden pictures in 4:12 to 5:1 as the joy of the wedding, told gently in poetry.
- **SONG 4:13 [NOTE]** ORCHARD. The Hebrew word pardes comes from Persian, the same word as in Ecclesiastes 2:5, and gives us the word paradise.
- **SONG 5:1 [NOTE]** EAT, O FRIENDS. A voice blesses the new couple, maybe the wedding guests. Some think it is God Himself. Either way, the marriage is good and blessed.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

EGYPTIAN LOVE SONGS

SONG OF SOLOMON 2:5 · 4:9 TO 5:1 · 8:5



Egyptian love songs on papyrus, the Songs of the Orchard, about 1150 BC, probably from Deir el Medina. Museo Egizio, Turin, Cat. 1966. Public domain, CC0.

WHAT THEY ARE

Love songs from ancient Egypt, written on papyrus and on pottery. A young man and a young woman take turns singing about each other, a lot like the bride and groom in the Song.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

Most were written down about 1300 to 1150 BC, a few hundred years before Solomon. Papyrus Chester Beatty I, the best known, is from about 1160 BC.

WHERE THEY ARE

Papyrus Chester Beatty I is in the Chester Beatty Library in Dublin. Papyrus Harris 500 is in the British Museum. The Songs of the Orchard are in Turin, Italy, and songs written on a pottery jar are in Cairo.

HOW THEY WERE FOUND

Many came from Deir el Medina, the village of the workmen who built the royal tombs. The Chester Beatty papyri began as the library of a scribe named Qenherkhepeshef, and his family kept adding to it after he died. It was found in 1928, and Alan Gardiner published the love songs in 1931.

MY SISTER, MY BROTHER

In these songs the lovers call each other my sister and my brother. They were not family; it was a love name. That is why the groom says my sister, my bride, 4:9 and 5:1.

WHAT THEY SAY

In plain words: one song begins, my sister is one of a kind, fairer than all the rest. The lovers praise each other from head to toe, long for each other, meet in gardens, and say love has made them sick, like 2:5 and 5:8.

THE TALKING TREES

In the Turin songs, the trees of an orchard talk about the young lovers who meet in their shade. The Song is full of gardens and fruit trees too, like the apple tree, 2:3 and 8:5.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

The Egyptian songs call on many gods, like Hathor, the goddess of love. The Song of Solomon is part of the Scriptures of the one God who made man and woman and joined them, Genesis 2:24.

SEE ALSO

Papyrus Harris 500 also holds a harper's song, see The Harper's Songs in Ecclesiastes, p.1032.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not show the Song was copied from Egypt. It shows love poems like this were loved in Solomon's world. Solomon even married Pharaoh's daughter, 1 Kings 3:1.

THE HEART

THE BIG QUESTION

IS SEX GOOD?

God's Gift for Marriage

SONG OF SOLOMON 2:7 · 4:12 TO 5:1 · 8:6 TO 7

THE SHORT ANSWER

Yes, in marriage. God made man and woman and called it very good, Genesis 1:27 and 31. A man leaves his father and mother, holds fast to his wife, and they become one flesh, Genesis 2:24. The Song celebrates that love with poetry, not details.

WHY IT IS IN THE BIBLE

Some people think God is embarrassed by love and attraction. The Song shows He is not. He made them, and He put a whole book in the Bible that honors the joy of a husband and wife.

THE GUARDRAILS

The same book says wait: do not stir up love until the time is right, 2:7. The bride is a locked garden, 4:12, kept for her husband. Marriage should be honored by all and the marriage bed kept undefiled, Hebrews 13:4.

What the Bible Says

GENESIS 1:27 TO 31 · 2:24 · PROVERBS 5:18 · 1 CORINTHIANS 7:3 TO 7 · HEBREWS 13:4

IN CHURCH HISTORY

Some early church writers were suspicious of desire and praised staying single above marriage. The Reformers taught that marriage is a good and holy calling. Martin Luther, who had been a monk, married Katharina von Bora in 1525.

THE BIBLE'S VIEW

Rejoice in the wife of your youth, Proverbs 5:18. A husband and wife should not hold back from each other, 1 Corinthians 7:3 to 5. Paul calls marriage a picture of Christ and the church, Ephesians 5:31 to 32.

SINGLE IS GOOD TOO

Jesus never married, and Paul says being single is a gift too, 1 Corinthians 7:7. Your worth does not come from being married.

WHAT ALL CHRISTIANS AGREE ON

Sex is God's idea and a good gift, made for a husband and wife. Faithful love is worth waiting for and worth protecting.

The Bride

2 I sleep, but my heart is awake.
A sound! My beloved is knocking:
"Open to me, my sister, my darling,
my dove, my flawless one.
My head is drenched with dew,
my hair with the dampness of the night."

3 I have taken off my robe—
must I put it back on?
I have washed my feet—
must I soil them again?
4 My beloved put his hand to the latch;
my heart pounded for him.
5 I rose up to open for my beloved.
My hands dripped with myrrh,
my fingers with flowing myrrh
on the handles of the bolt.
6 I opened for my beloved,
but he had turned and gone.
My heart sank at his departure.
I sought him but did not find him.
I called, but he did not answer.

7 I encountered the watchmen on their rounds of the city.
They beat me and bruised me;
they took away my cloak,
those guardians of the walls.
8 O daughters of Jerusalem, I adjure you,
if you find my beloved,
tell him I am sick with love.

The Friends

9 How is your beloved better than others,
O most beautiful among women?
How is your beloved better than another,
that you charge us so?

The Bride

10 My beloved is dazzling and ruddy,
outstanding among ten thousand.
11 His head is purest gold;

SONG 5:2 [HEART] I sleep, but my heart is awake. Love keeps the heart listening for the one it loves.

■ **SONG 5:2 [NOTE]** OPEN TO ME. Many Christians hear Jesus here: Behold, I stand at the door and knock, Revelation 3:20.

■ **SONG 5:4 [TEXT]** MY HEART. The Hebrew says my insides, the deep feelings. The KJV says my bowels were moved for him. The meaning is the same.

■ **SONG 5:6 [TEXT]** MY HEART SANK. The Hebrew says my soul went out, nephesh. The KJV says my soul failed.

■ **SONG 5:7 [NOTE]** THE WATCHMEN. This time the night search goes wrong. Many read 5:2 to 8 as a bad dream, like 3:1 to 5.

■ **SONG 5:10 [NOTE]** TEN THOUSAND. A way to say he stands out from everybody. In 5:10 to 16 she praises him from head to toe, the way he praised her.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

his hair is wavy and black as a raven.
12 His eyes are like doves
beside the streams of water,
bathed in milk
and mounted like jewels.
13 His cheeks are like beds of spice,
towers of perfume.
His lips are like lilies,
dripping with flowing myrrh.
14 His arms are rods of gold
set with beryl.
His body is polished ivory
bedecked with sapphires.
15 His legs are pillars of marble
set on bases of pure gold.
His appearance is like Lebanon,
as majestic as the cedars.
16 His mouth is most sweet;
he is altogether lovely.
This is my beloved, and this is my friend,
O daughters of Jerusalem.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

He has gone down to his garden. He tells her she is as beautiful as a city and as awesome as an army with banners. Sixty queens are no match for her. Come back, O Shulammite!

TOGETHER IN THE GARDEN

The Friends

1 Where has your beloved gone,
O most beautiful among women?
Which way has he turned?
We will seek him with you.

The Bride

2 My beloved has gone down to his garden,
to the beds of spices,
to pasture his flock in the gardens
and to gather lilies.
3 I belong to my beloved and he belongs to me;
he pastures his flock among the lilies.

The Bridegroom

4 You are as beautiful, my darling, as Tirzah,
as lovely as Jerusalem,
as majestic as troops with banners.
5 Turn your eyes away from me,
for they have overcome me.
Your hair is like a flock of goats
streaming down from Gilead.
6 Your teeth are like a flock of sheep
coming up from the washing;
each has its twin,
and not one of them is lost.
7 Your brow behind your veil
is like a slice of pomegranate.

8 There are sixty queens and eighty concubines,
and maidens without number,
9 but my dove, my perfect one, is unique,
the favorite of the mother who bore her.
The maidens see her and call her blessed;
the queens and concubines sing her praises.

The Friends

10 Who is this who shines like the dawn,
as fair as the moon,
as bright as the sun,
as majestic as the stars in procession?

The Bridegroom

11 I went down to the walnut grove
to see the blossoms of the valley,
to see if the vines were budding
or the pomegranates were in bloom.
12 Before I realized it, my desire had set me
among the royal chariots of my people.

The Friends

13 Come back, come back, O Shulammite!
Come back, come back, that we may gaze upon you.

The Bridegroom

Why do you look at the Shulammite,
as on the dance of Mahanaim?

SONG 5:16 [FORESHADOW] The Altogether Lovely One → EPH 5:25-27; 5:32 · MEDIUM p.1888

SONG 6:4 [NOTE] TIRZAH. A beautiful city, later a capital of the northern kingdom before Samaria was built, 1 Kings 14:17 and 16:23. Naming it next to Jerusalem is one clue people use to date the Song. See Who Wrote It?

SONG 6:8 [NOTE] SIXTY QUEENS. Later Solomon had 700 wives and 300 concubines, 1 Kings 11:3. See Solomon's Wisdom and 700 Wives in 1 Kings, p.564. Here the point is that she is the one and only, 6:9.

SONG 6:13 [NOTE] THE SHULAMMITE. The only name she is ever given. It may mean a woman from Shunem, or it may be a woman's form of the name Solomon. In the Hebrew, this verse is 7:1.

NOTABLE

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

More poetry from the groom, from her sandals up to her hair. She answers, I belong to my beloved, and plans a trip to the countryside to check on the vineyards.

ADMIRATION BY THE BRIDEGROOM

1 How beautiful are your sandaled feet,
O daughter of the prince!
The curves of your thighs are like jewels,
the handiwork of a master.
2 Your navel is a rounded goblet;
it never lacks blended wine.
Your waist is a mound of wheat
encircled by the lilies.
3 Your breasts are like two fawns,
twins of a gazelle.
4 Your neck is like a tower
made of ivory;
your eyes are like the pools of Heshbon
by the gate of Bath-rabbim;
your nose is like the tower of Lebanon,
facing toward Damascus.
5 Your head crowns you like Mount
Carmel,
the hair of your head like purple
threads;
the king is captured in your tresses.

6 How fair and pleasant you are,
O love, with your delights!
7 Your stature is like a palm tree;
your breasts are clusters of fruit.
8 I said, "I will climb the palm tree;
I will take hold of its fruit."
May your breasts be like clusters of the
vine,
the fragrance of your breath like apples,
9 and your mouth like the finest wine.

The Bride

May it flow smoothly to my beloved,
gliding gently over lips and teeth.

10 I belong to my beloved,
and his desire is for me.

11 Come, my beloved,
let us go to the countryside;
let us spend the night among the wild-
flowers.

12 Let us go early to the vineyards
to see if the vine has budded,
if the blossom has opened,
if the pomegranates are in bloom—
there I will give you my love.

13 The mandrakes send forth a fragrance,
and at our door is every delicacy,
new as well as old,
that I have treasured up for you, my
beloved.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

She wishes she could show her love in public. Then the big line: love is as strong as death, and no flood can put it out. Her brothers make plans for a little sister, and the song ends with Come away, my beloved.

LONGING FOR HER BELOVED

1 O that you were to me like a brother
who nursed at my mother's breasts!
If I found you outdoors, I would kiss you,
and no one would despise me.
2 I would lead you and bring you
to the house of my mother who taught
me.
I would give you spiced wine to drink,
the nectar of my pomegranates.

3 His left hand is under my head,
and his right arm embraces me.
4 O daughters of Jerusalem, I adjure you:
Do not arouse or awaken love
until the time is right.

The Friends

5 Who is this coming up from the wilder-
ness,
leaning on her beloved?

The Bride

I roused you under the apple tree;
there your mother conceived you;
there she travailed and brought you
forth.

SONG 7:1 [NOTE] MORE PRAISE. Another head to toe poem, this time from her feet up. Many read it as a husband's praise for his wife, using pictures of a land of vineyards, towers and palm trees.

SONG 7:10 [NOTE] HIS DESIRE IS FOR ME. The Hebrew word for desire, teshuqah, is used only two other times, Genesis 3:16 and 4:7. In Genesis 3:16 it comes right after the fall. Here, his desire is for her, and it is a happy thing.

SONG 7:13 [NOTE] MANDRAKES. A plant people believed helped a couple have children, Genesis 30:14 to 16.

SONG 8:4 [NOTABLE] The third and last time the refrain is said. See 2:7.

THE HEART NOTABLE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

6 Set me as a seal over your heart,
as a seal upon your arm.
For love is as strong as death,
its jealousy as unrelenting as Sheol.
Its sparks are fiery flames,
the very flame of Yahweh.
7 Mighty waters cannot quench love;
rivers cannot sweep it away.
If a man were to give all the wealth of his house for love,
his offer would be utterly scorned.

The Friends

8 We have a little sister,
and her breasts are not yet grown.
What shall we do for our sister
on the day she is spoken for?
9 If she is a wall,
we will build a tower of silver upon her.
If she is a door,
we will enclose her with panels of cedar.

The Bride

10 I am a wall,
and my breasts are like towers.
So I have become in his eyes
like one who brings peace.
11 Solomon had a vineyard in Baal-hamon.
He leased it to the tenants.
For its fruit, each was to bring
25 pounds of silver.
12 But my own vineyard is mine to give;
the 25 pounds are for you, O Solomon,
and five pounds are for those who tend its fruit.

The Bridegroom

13 You who dwell in the gardens,
my companions are listening for your voice.
Let me hear it!

The Bride

14 Come away, my beloved,
and be like a gazelle
or a young stag
on the mountains of spices.

SONG 8:6 [HEART] Set me as a seal over your heart. True love belongs to one person and is stamped for keeps.

SONG 8:6 [NOTABLE] The big line of the whole book. True love does not quit and cannot be bought.

SONG 8:6 [TEXT] THE FLAME OF YAHWEH. The Hebrew word shalhevetyah ends in yah, the short form of Yahweh, as in Hallelujah. Like the ESV and ASV, this Bible says the very flame of Yahweh. Many Bibles read yah as a way to say mighty: a mighty flame. If it is God's name, this is the only time it shows up in the Song.

SONG 8:6 [NOTE] A SEAL. A seal was a stone carved with the owner's mark, worn on a cord over the heart or as a ring. It said: this belongs to me.

SONG 8:7 [NOTE] NOT FOR SALE. A man could offer everything he owns and still not buy love. Real love can only be given.

SONG 8:8 [NOTE] THE LITTLE SISTER. Her brothers plan to protect their young sister until she is ready to marry. A wall stands for keeping herself pure. In 8:10 the bride says: I was a wall.

SONG 8:11 [TEXT] 25 POUNDS OF SILVER. In the Hebrew, the numbers are a thousand pieces of silver here and two hundred in 8:12. This Bible gives the weight in pounds.

SONG 8:12 [NOTE] MY OWN VINEYARD. Solomon's huge vineyard at Baal Hamon, a place no one has found, earns him a fortune. Many read the next words as the bride's: her own vineyard, herself, is hers to give, and she gives it to her beloved.

SONG 8:14 [NOTE] COME AWAY. The Song ends with love still calling. Many Christians hear the last prayer of the Bible: Come, Lord Jesus, Revelation 22:20.

BOOK 23 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MAJOR PROPHETS

ISAIAH

Yahweh saves

AUTHOR	Isaiah son of Amoz, a prophet in Jerusalem 1:1. His name means Yahweh saves. Jesus and the apostles quote both halves of the book as Isaiah's words, for example John 12:38 to 41. Many modern scholars think chapters 40 to 66 were added later by his followers, often called Second Isaiah.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	Isaiah preached from about 740 BC, the year King Uzziah died, until after 700 BC, under Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz and Hezekiah. Chapters 40 to 66 look ahead to the exile in Babylon and the trip home, about 586 to 538 BC, and beyond to the end of time.
DATE WRITTEN	Traditionally about 740 to 680 BC. Scholars who hold the Second Isaiah view date most of chapters 40 to 66 to about 540 BC or later.
WRITTEN TO	Judah and Jerusalem first, and through them the whole world.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	About 21 copies of Isaiah were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, more than almost any other book. It was also translated into Greek, in the Septuagint, before Jesus was born.
KEY VERSE	Isaiah 53:5. He was pierced for our transgressions, He was crushed for our iniquities; the punishment that brought us peace was upon Him, and by His stripes we are healed.

Historical Setting

Assyria is the superpower of the day, and it is swallowing up small nations one by one. In 735 BC Israel and Aram try to force King Ahaz of Judah to join them against Assyria, and Ahaz calls Assyria for help instead. In 722 BC Assyria wipes out Samaria and the northern kingdom. In 701 BC King Sennacherib takes every walled town in Judah and surrounds Jerusalem, but God saves the city. Isaiah lives through all of it, preaching in Jerusalem at the same time as Micah. Then he looks further ahead, to Babylon taking Judah into exile and a Persian king named Cyrus sending them home.

What Was Going Wrong

EMPTY RELIGION. They brought sacrifices and kept the holidays, but their hands were full of blood 1:11 to 15. They honored God with their lips while their hearts were far away 29:13.
INJUSTICE. Leaders took bribes, and nobody stood up for orphans and widows 1:23, 10:1 to 2.
DRUNK LEADERS. Priests and prophets reeled from strong drink, even while giving advice 5:11, 28:7 to 8.
TRUSTING EGYPT. Instead of trusting God, Judah paid Egypt for horses and protection 30:1 to 2, 31:1.
PRIDE. Proud men and haughty women strutted around Jerusalem 2:11 to 12, 3:16.
IDOLS AND MEDIUMS. People bowed to things they made with their own hands and asked the dead for advice 2:8, 8:19.
CHILD SACRIFICE. King Ahaz burned his own son as a sacrifice while Isaiah was preaching 2 Kings 16:3, and later King Manasseh did the same 2 Kings 21:6. Isaiah says the people slaughtered their children in the valleys and went to Molech 57:5, 57:9. God says this never even entered His mind Jeremiah 7:31.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Isaiah means Yahweh saves, and that is the whole book in two words. The first half is mostly bad news. Judah is sick from head to toe with sin, and God warns that Assyria and then Babylon will come. But hope keeps breaking through: a child named Immanuel, a King from the family of David, a highway home. The second half opens with Comfort, comfort My people. God promises to bring His people home from exile, and then He shows them His Servant, who takes their sins on Himself. The book ends with new heavens and a new earth.

Isaiah at a Glance

CH 1 to 12 **JUDAH ON TRIAL**
Sin exposed, Isaiah called, and the promised child Immanuel.

CH 13 to 23 **THE NATIONS ON NOTICE**
Burdens against Babylon, Moab, Egypt, Tyre and more.

CH 24 to 27 **THE WHOLE EARTH**
Judgment on the world, then death swallowed up forever.

CH 28 to 35 **WOES AND A HIGHWAY**
Do not trust Egypt. Then the desert blooms.

CH 36 to 39 **HEZEKIAH'S STORY**
Assyria at the gates, 185,000 fall, and fifteen extra years.

CH 40 to 48 **COMFORT MY PEOPLE**
God is greater than idols, and He names Cyrus ahead of time.

CH 49 to 57 **THE SERVANT**
The Servant who suffers for His people, Isaiah 53.

CH 58 to 66 **A NEW CREATION**
True worship, the Anointed One, new heavens and a new earth.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ISAIAH 7:14 The virgin will give birth to a son called Immanuel, God with us. Quoted in Matthew 1:23.

ISAIAH 9:6 TO 7 A child born, a Son given, Mighty God, on David's throne forever. Compare Luke 1:32 to 33.

ISAIAH 40:3 A voice in the wilderness prepares the way. All four Gospels say this was John the Baptist getting ready for Jesus.

ISAIAH 42:1 TO 4 The gentle Servant who will not break a bruised reed. Quoted in Matthew 12:18 to 21.

ISAIAH 53 Pierced for our sins, silent like a lamb, buried with the rich. Philip used it to tell an Ethiopian official about Jesus in Acts 8:32 to 35.

ISAIAH 61:1 TO 2 Jesus read this in His hometown and said, Today this Scripture is fulfilled in your hearing, Luke 4:16 to 21.

GOD'S NAMES IN ISAIAH
Isaiah's favorite name for God is the Holy One of Israel. He also uses Yahweh of Hosts more than 60 times, which means Yahweh who commands the armies of heaven. In chapters 40 to 66 God calls Himself your Redeemer, the family member who pays to buy you back. And in 7:14 and 8:8 the child is called Immanuel, which means God with us.

What to Watch for in Isaiah

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (122)	4:2, 6:1, 6:9-10, 7:14, 8:14, 8:17-18, 9:1-2 and 36 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	22:22, 54:5
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (36)	3:25-26, 5:13, 6:11-13, 7:7-8, 7:16-17, 8:3-4, 8:7-8 and 28 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (13)	13:19-22, 14:22-23, 14:28-32, 16:14, 19:4, 19:19, 20:4 and 6 more
END TIMES PROPHECIES (34)	2:2-4, 4:5-6, 11:4-9, 11:11-12, 13:10, 19:23-25, 24:21-23 and 21 more
THE HEART (2)	44:20, 57:15
ARCHAEOLOGY (7)	1:1, 20:1, 22:10, 22:15-16, 36:2, 40:8, 44:28
MIRACLES (1)	6:2-7
DEMONIC (39)	1:29, 2:6, 2:8-9, 2:18-20, 3:2-3, 8:19-20, 10:10-11 and 32 more
GOD SPEAKING (501 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE FIFTH GOSPEL
Jerome, who translated the Bible into Latin around AD 400, said Isaiah tells the story of Jesus so clearly that he is more an evangelist than a prophet, so people call it the fifth Gospel.

A BIBLE INSIDE THE BIBLE
Isaiah has 66 chapters and the Bible has 66 books. Chapters 1 to 39 are heavy on judgment, like the 39 books of the Old Testament. Chapters 40 to 66 start with a voice in the wilderness and end with new heavens and a new earth, like the 27 books of the New Testament. Chapter numbers came in the 1200s, so it is a fun match, not a prophecy.

QUOTED ALL OVER THE NEW TESTAMENT
The New Testament quotes Isaiah more than any other prophet. Only the Psalms beat him.

A NAKED PROPHET
For three years Isaiah walked around stripped and barefoot as a living warning sign 20:2 to 3. Most scholars think he still wore a loincloth. Still a hard assignment.

KIDS WITH SERMON NAMES
Isaiah's sons were Shear Jashub, a remnant will return, and Maher Shalal Hash Baz, quick to the plunder, swift to the spoil, the longest name in the Bible. Imagine yelling it at dinner.

THE HOLY ONE OF ISRAEL
Isaiah calls God the Holy One of Israel about 25 times, the rest of the Old Testament only about 6. It goes back to the seraphim shouting Holy, holy, holy 6:3, and they are still singing it in Revelation 4:8.

HANDEL'S MESSIAH
Handel's famous Christmas and Easter music, written in 1741, opens with Comfort ye my people from Isaiah 40. Then come For unto us a child is born, 9:6, and He was despised, 53:3.

THE ISAIAH WALL
Across from the United Nations in New York, Isaiah 2:4 is carved into a stone wall, the Isaiah Wall: They shall beat their swords into plowshares. Micah 4:3 has the same promise.

EVERY VALLEY
In his I Have a Dream speech in 1963, Martin Luther King Jr. quoted Isaiah 40:4 to 5: every valley shall be exalted, every hill and mountain made low.

Did Anybody Listen?

Some did. King Ahaz would not even ask God for a sign 7:12. His son Hezekiah tore his clothes and prayed, and Jerusalem was saved from Assyria in one night. But the next king, Manasseh, filled the land with idols. Everything Isaiah warned about came true. Babylon carried Judah away, and then, just as Isaiah said, Cyrus let them go home.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE GREAT ISAIAH SCROLL

ISAIAH 1 TO 66 · ISAIAH 40:8 · LUKE 4:17



The whole Great Isaiah Scroll, laid out in three rows. All 54 columns, Isaiah 1 to 66, copied more than a hundred years before Jesus was born.

WHAT IT IS

One long scroll made of 17 sheets of leather sewn together. It is about 24 feet long and about 10 inches tall, with 54 columns of handwritten Hebrew. It holds every chapter of Isaiah from start to finish. It is the best preserved Bible scroll ever found, and the only book of the Bible found complete among the Dead Sea Scrolls.

HOW OLD IT IS

Experts date it by its handwriting to about 125 BC. Two radiocarbon tests in the 1990s agreed it was made before Jesus was born. Some scholars put it a little earlier or later, between about 150 and 100 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

A Bedouin shepherd found it in Cave 1 at Qumran in 1947, rolled up in a clay jar. The leader of the Syrian Orthodox church in Jerusalem bought it and later took it to America. In 1954 he put an ad in the Wall Street Journal, and Israel quietly bought it with three other scrolls for $250,000.

THE THOUSAND YEAR TEST

Before 1947, the oldest complete Hebrew copies of Isaiah anyone had were the Aleppo Codex, from about AD 930, and the Leningrad Codex, from AD 1008. The Great Isaiah Scroll is about a thousand years older than both. That gave scholars a rare test. If copying by hand had slowly changed the Bible over the centuries, a thousand years would show it.

WHAT THEY FOUND

When scholars laid the scroll next to the later copies, they read almost word for word the same. The one big difference you can see on the page is the vowels. Hebrew was written with consonants only, and readers supplied the vowel sounds from memory, the way you can read txt msgs. The little dots and dashes that mark vowels had not been invented yet. Jewish scribes called the Masoretes added them between about AD 600 and 1000. So the scroll has no vowel marks, but the words underneath match. No story is changed and no prophecy is missing. The famous prophecies about Jesus, like 7:14, 9:6 and chapter 53, are all there and say the same thing.

ONE SCHOLAR'S COUNT

Gleason Archer, a Hebrew scholar, wrote that the scroll matched the standard Hebrew Bible word for word in more than 95 percent of the text. He said the other 5 percent was mostly obvious slips of the pen and differences in spelling. Jesus read from a scroll of Isaiah like this one in Luke 4:17, and after a thousand more years of copying, we are still reading the same words.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

To be fair, scholars count about 2,600 small differences. Most are spelling, like writing color and colour, and slips of the pen. A few are real word changes. One is in Isaiah 53:11, where the scroll says He will see light. The Owner's Manual follows the scroll there, which is why it says He will see the light of life. None of the differences change what Christians believe.

HEAVILY USED
The scroll was not kept on a shelf for show. It has worn spots, stitched tears and patches where ancient readers fixed it, so people read it again and again. Some sheets were even reinforced on the back.

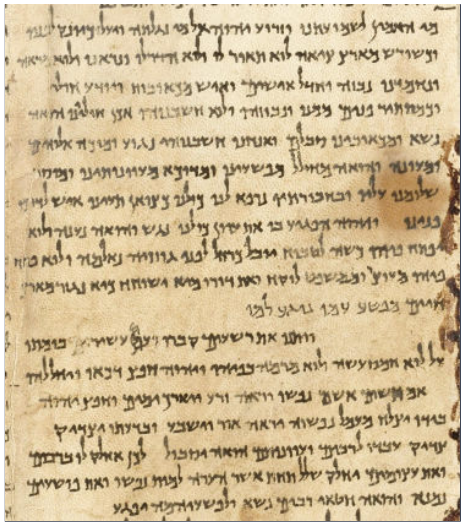
A SECOND ISAIAH SCROLL
The same cave held a second, smaller copy of Isaiah, called 1QIsa b. Only parts of it survive, but its wording is even closer to the Hebrew Bible used today. In all, pieces of about 21 copies of Isaiah were found in the Qumran caves.

ISAIAH 53 BEFORE JESUS
The scroll includes the whole Suffering Servant chapter. It was copied more than a hundred years before the cross, so nobody can say Christians wrote it after the fact.

TWO HALVES
At the bottom of column 27, right after chapter 33, the scribe left about three lines blank. That splits the scroll into two halves of 27 columns each. Some scholars think two scribes shared the work, one for each half. Others think one scribe copied from a master copy that came in two parts.

JESUS READ ISAIAH
In the synagogue at Nazareth, Jesus was handed the scroll of the prophet Isaiah. He read from chapter 61 and said, Today this Scripture is fulfilled in your hearing, Luke 4:17 to 21. The scroll He held would have been a hand copied leather scroll like this one.

FIRST PHOTOS
In February 1948 a young American scholar named John Trever photographed the scroll in Jerusalem, column by column. He compared its handwriting to the Nash Papyrus and guessed it was very old. His photos let scholars around the world study it while the scroll itself was carried out of the country and out of scholars' reach.



Isaiah 53 in the Great Isaiah Scroll, the Servant who was pierced for our transgressions. Photo Ardon Bar Hama, public domain.

FIXING MISTAKES
When a scribe slipped, he did not throw the sheet away. Missing words were written above the line or in the margin, and you can still see the fixes on the leather. Some fixes were added by a later hand, which shows people checked the copy with care.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The Shrine of the Book at the Israel Museum in Jerusalem. The scroll on display is a copy, and the real one rests in a vault to protect it from light. Anyone can read the real scroll up close online at dss.collections.imj.org.il.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
It shows Isaiah was copied with amazing care. It does not settle who wrote the book or when, because the scroll was made long after both the traditional date and the later date scholars suggest.

ARCHAEOLOGY *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God takes His people to court and calls heaven and earth as witnesses. Even an ox knows who feeds it, but Israel does not know God. They keep showing up for church with bloody hands, and God says their worship gives Him a headache. Then comes the offer of a lifetime: Come now, let us reason together. Scarlet sins can be washed white as snow.

JUDAH'S REBELLION // 2 CHRONICLES 28:5–15

1 This is the vision concerning Judah and
Jerusalem that Isaiah son of Amoz saw
during the reigns of Uzziah, Jotham,
Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

2 Listen, O heavens, and give ear, O earth,
for Yahweh has spoken:
"I have raised children and brought them
up,
but they have rebelled against Me.
3 The ox knows its owner,
and the donkey its master's manger,
but Israel does not know;
My people do not understand."

4 Alas, O sinful nation,
a people laden with iniquity,
a brood of evildoers,
children who act corruptly!
They have forsaken Yahweh;
they have despised the Holy One of Israel
and turned their backs on Him.

5 Why do you want more beatings?
Why do you keep rebelling?
Your head has a massive wound,
and your whole heart is afflicted.
6 From the sole of your foot to the top of your head,
there is no soundness—
only wounds and welts and festering sores
neither cleansed nor bandaged nor soothed with oil.

7 Your land is desolate;
your cities are burned with fire.
Foreigners devour your fields before you—
a desolation demolished by strangers.
8 And the Daughter of Zion is abandoned
like a shelter in a vineyard,
like a shack in a cucumber field,
like a city besieged.

9 *Unless Yahweh of Hosts*
had left us a few survivors,
we would have become like Sodom,
we would have resembled Gomorrah.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE ISAIAH BULLA

ISAIAH 1:1 · ISAIAH 37:2 · 2 KINGS 19:2



The clay seal impression with the name Isaiah. Photo Ouria Tadmor. Copyright Eilat Mazar.

WHAT IT IS

A bulla is a small lump of clay pressed with a seal, like a wax seal on a letter. This one is about as big as your fingernail. The top part, mostly broken off, showed a grazing deer, a sign of blessing. Below it are the Hebrew letters for Belonging to Yeshayahu, which is Isaiah. Under the name are the letters n v y.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 700 BC, the time of King Hezekiah. It came from the same layer of dirt as Hezekiah's own seal impression, so the date is fairly firm.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The team of Israeli archaeologist Eilat Mazar dug it up in the Ophel, just south of the Temple Mount in Jerusalem. It lay

IS 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Seal impression that may belong to the prophet Isaiah, found near King Hezekiah's seal in 2018 → FIELD NOTES p.1062

IS 1:9 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:29 p.1812

GOD SPEAKING

about ten feet from King Hezekiah's bulla. It was announced in 2018.

THE DEBATE

The last part of the clay is broken off. If one more letter, an aleph, was there, the letters n v y spell navi, which means prophet. Then it would read Belonging to Isaiah the prophet. Mazar said that is possible, but it could also be a last name, Navi. Other scholars point out that a title would usually come with the word the, and that is missing.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Isaiah was a real name in Jerusalem in the very years the prophet lived, and this man was close enough to the palace to use a seal next to the king's.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

We cannot be sure this is the prophet. Even so, it is a remarkable find right next to the king he advised Isaiah 37:2.

MEANINGLESS OFFERINGS

10 Hear the word of Yahweh,
you rulers of Sodom;
listen to the instruction of our God,
you people of Gomorrah!

11 "What good to Me is your multitude of sacrifices?"
says Yahweh.
"I am full from the burnt offerings of rams
and the fat of well-fed cattle;
I take no delight in the blood of bulls
and lambs and goats.
12 When you come to appear before Me,
who has required this of you—
this trampling of My courts?

13 Bring your worthless offerings no more;
your incense is detestable to Me.
New Moons, Sabbaths, and convocations—
I cannot endure iniquity in a solemn assembly.
14 I hate your New Moons
and your appointed feasts.
They have become a burden to Me;
I am weary of bearing them.

15 When you spread out your hands in prayer,
I will hide My eyes from you;
even though you multiply your prayers,
I will not listen.
Your hands are covered with blood.

16 Wash and cleanse yourselves.
Remove your evil deeds from My sight.
Stop doing evil!
17 Learn to do right;
seek justice and correct the oppressor.
Defend the fatherless
and plead the case of the widow."

18 "Come now, let us reason together,"
says Yahweh.
"Though your sins are like scarlet,
they will be as white as snow;
though they are as red as crimson,
they will become like wool.
19 If you are willing and obedient,
you will eat the best of the land.
20 But if you resist and rebel,
you will be devoured by the sword."
For the mouth of Yahweh has spoken.

THE CORRUPTION OF ZION

21 See how the faithful city has become a harlot!
She once was full of justice;
righteousness resided within her,
but now only murderers!
22 Your silver has become dross;
your fine wine is diluted with water.
23 Your rulers are rebels,
friends of thieves.
They all love bribes
and chasing after rewards.
They do not defend the fatherless,
and the plea of the widow never comes before them.

24 Therefore the Lord Yahweh of Hosts,
the Mighty One of Israel, declares:

"Ah, I will be relieved of My foes
and avenge Myself on My enemies.
25 I will turn My hand against you;
I will thoroughly purge your dross;
I will remove all your impurities.
26 I will restore your judges as at first,
and your counselors as at the beginning.
After that you will be called the City of Righteousness,
the Faithful City."

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC

27 Zion will be redeemed with justice,
her repentant ones with righteousness.
28 But rebels and sinners will together be shattered,
and those who forsake Yahweh will perish.
29 Surely you will be ashamed of the sacred oaks
in which you have delighted;
you will be embarrassed by the gardens
that you have chosen.
30 For you will become like an oak whose leaves are withered,
like a garden without water.
31 The strong man will become tinder
and his work will be a spark;
both will burn together,
with no one to quench the flames.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaiah gets a sneak peek of the last days. The nations stream up to God's mountain to learn His ways, and the army surplus store goes out of business because swords are turned into farm tools. Then he looks back at his own town, full of fortune tellers, money and idols, and tells everyone to go hide in the rocks.

THE MOUNTAIN OF THE HOUSE OF YAHWEH // MICAH 4:1–5

1 This is the message that was revealed to Isaiah son of Amoz concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

2 In the last days the mountain of the house of Yahweh
will be established as the chief of the mountains;
it will be raised above the hills,
and all nations will stream to it.
3 And many peoples will come and say:
"Come, let us go up to the mountain of Yahweh,
to the house of the God of Jacob.
He will teach us His ways
so that we may walk in His paths."
For the law will go forth from Zion,
and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem.
4 Then He will judge between the nations
and arbitrate for many peoples.
They will beat their swords into plowshares
and their spears into pruning hooks.
Nation will no longer take up the sword against nation,
nor train anymore for war.

THE DAY OF RECKONING

5 Come, O house of Jacob,
let us walk in the light of Yahweh.
6 For You have abandoned Your people,
the house of Jacob,
because they are filled
with influences from the east;
they are soothsayers like the Philistines;
they strike hands with the children of foreigners.
7 Their land is full of silver and gold,
with no limit to their treasures;
their land is full of horses,
with no limit to their chariots.
8 Their land is full of idols;
they bow down to the work of their hands,
to what their fingers have made.
9 So mankind is brought low,
and man is humbled—
do not forgive them!
10 Go into the rocks
and hide in the dust
from the terror of Yahweh
and the splendor of His majesty.
11 The proud look of man will be humbled,
and the loftiness of men brought low;
Yahweh alone will be exalted in that day.
12 For the Day of Yahweh of Hosts
will come against all the proud and lofty,
against all that is exalted—
it will be humbled—
13 against all the cedars of Lebanon, lofty and lifted up,

- **IS 1:29 [DEMONIC]** Israel will be ashamed of its sacred oaks and gardens
- **IS 2:2 [PROPHECY]** In the last days all nations would stream to the mountain of Yahweh → STILL TO COME
- **IS 2:3 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh would teach the nations His ways from Zion → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 2:4 [PROPHECY]** He would judge among the nations → STILL TO COME
- **IS 2:6 [DEMONIC]** Israel is full of soothsayers like the Philistines
- **IS 2:8 [DEMONIC]** The land is full of idols they made with their hands

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

against all the oaks of Bashan,
14 against all the tall mountains,
against all the high hills,
15 against every high tower,
against every fortified wall,
16 against every ship of Tarshish,
and against every stately vessel.

17 So the pride of man will be brought low,
and the loftiness of men will be humbled;
Yahweh alone will be exalted in that day,
18 and the idols will vanish completely.
19 Men will flee to caves in the rocks
and holes in the ground,
away from the terror of Yahweh
and from the splendor of His majesty,
when He rises to shake the earth.

20 In that day men will cast away
to the moles and bats
their idols of silver and gold—
the idols they made to worship.
21 They will flee to caverns in the rocks
and crevices in the cliffs,
away from the terror of Yahweh
and from the splendor of His majesty,
when He rises to shake the earth.

22 Put no more trust in man,
who has only the breath in his nostrils.
Of what account is he?

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

God starts pulling out the supports from Jerusalem: soldiers, judges, prophets and food. Things get so bad that a man with a coat gets elected mayor. Then God turns to the rich ladies of Zion, who strut around jingling their ankle bracelets, and reads their whole jewelry box out loud before He takes it away.

JUDGMENT ON JERUSALEM AND JUDAH

1 For behold, the Lord Yahweh of Hosts
is about to remove
from Jerusalem and Judah
both supply and support:
the whole supply of food and water,
2 the mighty man and the warrior,
the judge and the prophet,
the soothsayer and the elder,
3 the commander of fifty and the dignitary,
the counselor, the cunning magician,
and the clever enchanter.

4 "I will make mere lads their leaders,
and children will rule over them."

5 The people will oppress one another,
man against man, neighbor against neighbor;
the young will rise up against the old,
and the base against the honorable.

6 A man will seize his brother
within his father's house:
"You have a cloak—you be our leader!
Take charge of this heap of rubble."

7 On that day he will cry aloud:
"I am not a healer.
I have no food or clothing in my house.
Do not make me leader of the people!"

8 For Jerusalem has stumbled
and Judah has fallen
because they spoke and acted against Yahweh,
defying His glorious presence.
9 The expression on their faces testifies against them,
and like Sodom they flaunt their sin;
they do not conceal it.
Woe to them,
for they have brought disaster upon themselves.

10 Tell the righteous it will be well with them,
for they will enjoy the fruit of their labor.
11 Woe to the wicked; disaster is upon them!
For they will be repaid with what their hands have done.
12 Youths oppress My people,
and women rule over them.
O My people, your guides mislead you;
they turn you from your paths.

13 Yahweh arises to contend;
He stands to judge the people.
14 Yahweh brings this charge
against the elders and leaders of His people:

IS 2:18 [DEMONIC] Men throw their idols to the moles and bats

IS 2:19 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 6:16 p.2092

IS 3:2 [DEMONIC] God removes the soothsayer, magician, and enchanter

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | GOD SPEAKING

"You have devoured the vineyard;
the plunder of the poor is in your houses.
15 Why do you crush My people
and grind the faces of the poor?"
declares the Lord Yahweh of Hosts.

A WARNING TO THE DAUGHTERS OF ZION

16 Yahweh also says:

"Because the daughters of Zion are haughty—
walking with heads held high
and wanton eyes,
prancing and skipping as they go,
jingling the bracelets on their ankles—
17 the Lord will bring sores
on the heads of the daughters of Zion,
and Yahweh will make their foreheads bare."

18 In that day the Lord will take away their finery:
their anklets and headbands and crescents;
19 their pendants, bracelets, and veils;
20 their headdresses, ankle chains, and sashes;
their perfume bottles and charms;
21 their signet rings and nose rings;
22 their festive robes, capes, cloaks, and purses;
23 and their mirrors, linen garments, tiaras, and shawls.

24 Instead of fragrance
there will be a stench;
instead of a belt, a rope;
instead of styled hair, baldness;
instead of fine clothing, sackcloth;
instead of beauty, shame.

25 Your men will fall by the sword,
and your warriors in battle.
26 And the gates of Zion will lament and mourn;
destitute, she will sit on the ground.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Seven women chase one man and offer to pay their own bills, which tells you how many men are left. But then the mood changes. The Branch of Yahweh shows up beautiful and glorious, the survivors are called holy, and God covers Zion with a cloud by day and fire by night, just like the old Exodus days.

A REMNANT IN ZION

1 In that day seven women
will take hold of one man and say,
"We will eat our own bread
and provide our own clothes.
Just let us be called by your name.
Take away our disgrace!"

2 On that day the Branch of Yahweh
will be beautiful and glorious,
and the fruit of the land
will be the pride and glory of Israel's survivors.
3 Whoever remains in Zion
and whoever is left in Jerusalem
will be called holy—
all in Jerusalem who are recorded among the living—
4 when the Lord has washed away
the filth of the daughters of Zion
and cleansed the bloodstains from the heart of Jerusalem
by a spirit of judgment and a spirit of fire.

5 Then Yahweh will create over all of Mount Zion
and over her assemblies
a cloud of smoke by day
and a glowing flame of fire by night.
For over all the glory
there will be a canopy,
6 a shelter to give shade
from the heat by day,
and a refuge and hiding place
from the storm and the rain.

IS 3:25 [PROPHECY] Jerusalem's men would fall by the sword and Zion would sit in ruin → 2KI 25:1-10; LAM 1:1-4 · MEDIUM p.660

IS 4:2 [PROPHECY] 'The Branch of Yahweh shall be beautiful and glorious' → JER 23:5; ZECH 6:12 · MEDIUM p.1179

IS 4:5 [PROPHECY] 'A cloud by day, the shining of fire by night' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaiah sings a love song about a vineyard. The farmer did everything right and still got sour grapes, and the farmer is God and the vineyard is Israel. Then come six woes on house hoarders, party animals and people who call evil good. The chapter ends with a terrifying army whistled in from far away.

THE SONG OF THE VINEYARD // LUKE 13:6–9

1 I will sing for my beloved a song of his
vineyard:

My beloved had a vineyard
on a very fertile hill.
2 He dug it up and cleared the stones
and planted the finest vines.
He built a watchtower in the middle
and dug out a winepress as well.

He waited for the vineyard to yield good
grapes,
but the fruit it produced was sour!

3 "And now, O dwellers of Jerusalem
and men of Judah,
I exhort you to judge
between Me and My vineyard.
4 What more could have been done for My
vineyard
than I have done for it?
Why, when I expected sweet grapes,
did it bring forth sour fruit?

5 Now I will tell you what I am about to do
to My vineyard:

I will take away its hedge,
and it will be consumed;
I will tear down its wall,
and it will be trampled.
6 I will make it a wasteland,
neither pruned nor cultivated,
and thorns and briers will grow up.
I will command the clouds
that rain shall not fall on it."

7 For the vineyard of Yahweh of Hosts
is the house of Israel,
and the men of Judah
are the plant of His delight.
He looked for justice,
but saw bloodshed;
for righteousness,
but heard a cry of distress.

WOES TO THE WICKED

8 Woe to you who add house to house
and join field to field
until no place is left
and you live alone in the land.

9 I heard Yahweh of Hosts declare:

"Surely many houses will become deso-
late,
great mansions left unoccupied.
10 For ten acres of vineyard
will yield but 5½ gallons of wine,
and six bushels of seed
only a little over half a bushel of grain."

11 Woe to those who rise early in the morn-
ing
in pursuit of strong drink,
who linger into the evening,
to be inflamed by wine.
12 At their feasts are the lyre and harp,
tambourines and flutes and wine.
They disregard the actions of Yahweh
and fail to see the work of His hands.

13 Therefore My people will go into exile
for their lack of understanding;
their dignitaries are starving
and their masses are parched with
thirst.
14 Therefore Sheol enlarges its throat
and opens wide its enormous jaws,
and down go Zion's nobles and masses,
her revelers and carousers!

15 So mankind will be brought low, and
each man humbled;
the arrogant will lower their eyes.
16 But Yahweh of Hosts will be exalted by
His justice,
and the holy God will show Himself holy
in righteousness.
17 Lambs will graze as in their own pas-
tures,
and strangers will feed in the ruins of
the wealthy.

■ **IS 5:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 21:33 p.1583
■ **IS 5:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 12:1 p.1629

■ **IS 5:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:4 p.2007
■ **IS 5:13 [PROPHECY]** God's people would go into exile → 2KI 17:6; 2KI 25:11 p.635

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

18 Woe to those who draw iniquity with
cords of deceit
and pull sin along with cart ropes,
19 to those who say, "Let Him hurry and
hasten His work
so that we may see it!
Let the plan of the Holy One of Israel
come
so that we may know it!"

20 Woe to those who call evil good
and good evil,
who turn darkness to light
and light to darkness,
who replace bitter with sweet
and sweet with bitter.

21 Woe to those who are wise in their own
eyes
and clever in their own sight.

22 Woe to those who are heroes in drinking
wine
and champions in mixing strong drink,
23 who acquit the guilty for a bribe
and deprive the innocent of justice.

24 Therefore, as a tongue of fire consumes
the straw,
and as dry grass shrivels in the flame,
so their roots will decay
and their blossoms will blow away like
dust;
for they have rejected the instruction of
Yahweh of Hosts
and despised the word of the Holy One
of Israel.
25 Therefore the anger of Yahweh burns
against His people;
His hand is raised against them to strike
them down.
The mountains quake,
and the corpses lie like refuse in the
streets.

Despite all this, His anger is not turned
away;
His hand is still upraised.

26 He lifts a banner for the distant nations
and whistles for those at the ends of the
earth.
Behold—how speedily and swiftly they
come!
27 None of them grows weary or stumbles;
no one slumbers or sleeps.
No belt is loose
and no sandal strap is broken.
28 Their arrows are sharpened,
and all their bows are strung.
The hooves of their horses are like flint;
their chariot wheels are like a whirlwind.
29 Their roaring is like that of a lion;
they roar like young lions.
They growl and seize their prey;
they carry it away, and no one can res-
cue it.
30 In that day they will roar over it,
like the roaring of the sea.
If one looks over the land,
he will see darkness and distress;
even the light will be obscured by
clouds.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

In the year King Uzziah dies, Isaiah sees the real King on a throne, with six winged seraphim shouting Holy, holy, holy. Isaiah thinks he is done for. An angel touches his lips with a hot coal, and when God asks, Whom shall I send? Isaiah says, Here am I. Send me! Then God tells him almost nobody will listen. Great job offer.

ISAIAH'S COMMISSION // MATTHEW 13:10–17; MARK 4:10–12; ACTS 28:16–31

1 In the year that King Uzziah died, I saw the Lord seated on a throne, high and exalted; and the train of His robe filled the temple. 2 Above Him stood seraphim, each having six wings: With two wings they covered their faces, with two they covered their feet, and with two they were flying. 3 *And they were calling out to one another:*

"Holy, holy, holy is Yahweh of Hosts;
all the earth is full of His glory."

4 At the sound of their voices the doorposts and thresholds shook, and the temple was filled with smoke.

5 Then I said:

- **IS 6:1 [PROPHECY]** Isaiah saw the glory of Christ pre-incarnate → JN 12:40-41 p.1722
- **IS 6:2 [MIRACLE]** Seraphim cry holy, holy, holy and a coal touches Isaiah's lips
- **IS 6:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → REV 4:8 p.2090
- **IS 6:4 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:8 p.2104

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · MIRACLES · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

"Woe is me,
for I am ruined,
because I am a man of unclean lips
dwelling among a people of unclean lips;
for my eyes have seen the King,
Yahweh of Hosts."

6 Then one of the seraphim flew to me,
and in his hand was a glowing coal that he had taken with tongs from the altar. 7 And with it he touched my mouth and said:

"Now that this has touched your lips,
your iniquity is removed
and your sin is atoned for."

8 Then I heard the voice of the Lord saying:

"Whom shall I send?
Who will go for Us?"

And I said:

"Here am I. Send me!"

9 *And He replied:*

"Go and tell this people,
'Be ever hearing, but never understanding;
be ever seeing, but never perceiving.'
10 *Make the hearts of this people calloused;*
deafen their ears and close their eyes.
Otherwise they might see with their eyes,
hear with their ears,
understand with their hearts,
and turn and be healed."

11 Then I asked:

"How long, O Lord?"

And He replied:

"Until the cities lie ruined
and without inhabitant,
until the houses are left unoccupied
and the land is desolate and ravaged,
12 until Yahweh has driven men far away
and the land is utterly forsaken.
13 And though a tenth remains in the land,
it will be burned again.
As the terebinth and oak leave stumps
when felled,
so the holy seed will be a stump in the land."

- **IS 6:9 [PROPHECY]** His parables would fall on deaf ears → MT 13:13-15; ACTS 28:25-27 p.1568
- **IS 6:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 13:14-15 p.1568
- **IS 6:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 4:12 p.1614
- **IS 6:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 8:10 p.1663
- **IS 6:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 28:26-27 p.1796
- **IS 6:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 12:40 p.1722
- **IS 6:11 [PROPHECY]** The land would be emptied and the people sent far away → 2KI 25:11; 2KI 25:21 p.660

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Two kings gang up on King Ahaz, and his heart shakes like a tree in the wind. God sends Isaiah and his son with the word Calm down. God even offers Ahaz any sign he wants, and Ahaz piously refuses. So God picks the sign Himself: the virgin will give birth to a son, and His name will be Immanuel, God with us.

A MESSAGE TO AHAZ

1 Now in the days that Ahaz son of Jotham, the son of Uzziah, was king of Judah, Rezin king of Aram marched up to wage war against Jerusalem. He was accompanied by Pekah son of Remaliah the king of Israel, but he could not overpower the city.

2 When it was reported to the house of David that Aram was in league with Ephraim, the hearts of Ahaz and his people trembled like trees in the forest shaken by the wind.

3 Then Yahweh said to Isaiah, "Go out with your son Shear-jashub to meet Ahaz at the end of the aqueduct that feeds the upper pool, on the road to the Launderer's Field, 4 and say to him: Calm down and be quiet. Do not be afraid or disheartened over these two smoldering stubs of firewood—over the fierce anger of Rezin and Aram and of the son of Remaliah. 5 For Aram, along with Ephraim and the son of Remaliah, has plotted your ruin, saying: 6 'Let us invade Judah, terrorize it, and divide it among ourselves. Then we can install the son of Tabeal over it as king.' 7 But this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'It will not arise;
it will not happen.
8 For the head of Aram is Damascus,

- **IS 6:13 [PROPHECY]** A holy remnant would remain like a stump → EZR 9:8; ROM 11:5 · MEDIUM p.782
- **IS 7:7 [PROPHECY]** The plot of Aram and Israel would fail and Ephraim would be shattered within 65 years → 2KI 17:5-6; 2KI 17:24 p.635

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and the head of Damascus is Rezin.
Within sixty-five years
Ephraim will be shattered as a people.
9 The head of Ephraim is Samaria,
and the head of Samaria is the son of
Remaliah.
If you do not stand firm in your faith,
then you will not stand at all.'"

THE SIGN OF IMMANUEL // MATTHEW 1:18–25

10 Again Yahweh spoke to Ahaz, saying, 11 "Ask for a sign from Yahweh your God, whether from the depths of Sheol or the heights of heaven."

12 But Ahaz replied, "I will not ask; I will not test Yahweh."

13 Then Isaiah said, "Hear now, O house of David! Is it not enough to try the patience of men? Will you try the patience of my God as well? 14 *Therefore the Lord Himself will give you a sign: Behold, the virgin will be with child and give birth to a son, and will call Him Immanuel.* 15 By the time He knows enough to reject evil and choose good, He will be eating curds and honey. 16 For before the boy knows enough to reject evil and choose good, the land of the two kings you dread will be laid waste.

JUDGMENT TO COME // MICAH 1:1–7

17 Yahweh will bring on you and on your people and on the house of your father a time unlike any since the day Ephraim separated from Judah—He will bring the king of Assyria."

18 On that day Yahweh will whistle to the flies at the farthest streams of the Nile and to the bees in the land of Assyria.
19 And they will all come and settle
in the steep ravines and clefts of the
rocks,
in all the thornbushes and watering
holes.

20 On that day the Lord will use a razor hired from beyond the Euphrates—the king of Assyria—to shave your head and the hair of your legs, and to remove your beard as well. 21 On that day a man will raise a young cow and two sheep, 22 and from the abundance of milk they give, he will eat curds; for all who remain in the land will eat curds and honey.

23 And on that day, in every place that had a thousand vines worth 25 pounds of silver, only briers and thorns will be found.
24 Men will go there with bow and arrow, for the land will be covered with briers and thorns. 25 For fear of the briers and thorns, you will no longer traverse the hills once tilled by the hoe; they will become places for oxen to graze and sheep to trample.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaiah has a son and God picks the name: Maher Shalal Hash Baz, the longest name in the Bible. Before the baby can say Mama, Assyria will strip Damascus and Samaria. The flood will reach up to Judah's neck. Isaiah is told not to fear what everyone else fears, and to stay away from mediums who whisper with the dead.

ASSYRIAN INVASION PROPHESIED

1 Then Yahweh said to me, "Take a large scroll and write on it with an ordinary stylus: Maher-shalal-hash-baz. 2 And I will appoint for Myself trustworthy witnesses—Uriah the priest and Zechariah son of Jeberekiah."

3 And I had relations with the prophetess, and she conceived and gave birth to a son. Yahweh said to me, "Name him Maher-shalal-hash-baz. 4 For before the boy knows how to cry 'Father' or 'Mother,' the wealth of Damascus and the plunder of

- **IS 7:14 [PROPHECY]** He would be born of a virgin → LK 1:35 p.1645
- **IS 7:14 [PROPHECY]** He would be Immanuel → MT 1:18-23; 1TI 3:16 p.1550
- **IS 7:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 1:23 p.1551
- **IS 7:14 [ALMAH]** The Hebrew word here is almah. About 250 BC, long before Jesus, Jewish scholars translating Isaiah into Greek wrote parthenos, which means virgin, and Matthew 1:23 quotes it that way. Almah shows up seven times in the Old Testament and is never clearly used for a married woman. Rebekah is called an almah in Genesis 24:43 before her wedding. The other side: many scholars say almah simply means young woman, and some Bibles like the RSV print that.
- **IS 7:16 [PROPHECY]** Before a particular child knew good from evil, both Syria and Israel would be devastated → 2KI 16:9; 2KI 17:6 p.634
- **IS 7:17 [PROPHECY]** God would bring the king of Assyria against Ahaz and Judah → 2CH 28:20; 2KI 18:13 p.744
- **IS 8:3 [PROPHECY]** Before the boy Maher shalal hash baz could say Father or Mother, Damascus's and Samaria's wealth would be carried off by Assyria → 2KI 15:29; 2KI 16:9 p.631

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

Samaria will be carried off by the king of
Assyria."

5 And Yahweh spoke to me further:

6 "Because this people has rejected
the gently flowing waters of Shiloah
and rejoiced in Rezin
and the son of Remaliah,
7 the Lord will surely bring against them
the mighty floodwaters of the
Euphrates—
the king of Assyria and all his pomp.

It will overflow its channels
and overrun its banks.
8 It will pour into Judah,
swirling and sweeping over it,
reaching up to the neck;
its spreading streams will cover
your entire land, O Immanuel!

9 Huddle together, O peoples, and be
shattered;
pay attention, all you distant lands;
prepare for battle, and be shattered;
prepare for battle, and be shattered!
10 Devise a plan, but it will be thwarted;
state a proposal, but it will not happen.
For God is with us."

A CALL TO FEAR GOD // ECCLESIASTES 8:10–13

11 For this is what Yahweh has spoken to
me with a strong hand, instructing me not
to walk in the way of this people:

12 *"Do not call conspiracy*
everything these people regard as conspiracy.
Do not fear what they fear;
do not live in dread.
13 *Yahweh of Hosts is the One*
you shall regard as holy.
Only He should be feared;
only He should be dreaded.
14 *And He will be a sanctuary—*
but to both houses of Israel
a stone of stumbling and a rock of offense,
to the dwellers of Jerusalem
a trap and a snare.

15 Many will stumble over these;
they will fall and be broken;
they will be ensnared and captured."

16 Bind up the testimony
and seal the law among my disciples.
17 *I will wait for Yahweh,*
who is hiding His face from the house of Jacob.
I will put my trust in Him.
18 *Here am I, and the children Yahweh has*
given me as signs and symbols in Israel from
Yahweh of Hosts, who dwells on Mount Zion.

DARKNESS AND LIGHT

19 When men tell you to consult mediums
and spiritists who whisper and mutter,
shouldn't a people consult their God in-
stead? Why consult the dead on behalf of
the living? 20 To the law and to the testi-
mony! If they do not speak according to
this word, they have no light of dawn.

21 They will roam the land, dejected and
hungry. When they are famished, they will
become enraged; and looking upward,
they will curse their king and their God. 22
Then they will look to the earth and see
only distress and darkness and the gloom
of anguish. And they will be driven into ut-
ter darkness.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Darkness gives way to a great light in Galilee, and a child is born who is called Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God, Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace. His kingdom never stops growing. Then the chapter turns back to Israel, which keeps getting hit and keeps not turning around, with the same chorus four times: His hand is still upraised.

UNTO US A CHILD IS BORN // MATTHEW 4:12–17; MARK 1:14–15; LUKE 4:14–15

1 *Nevertheless, there will be no more gloom for*
those in distress. In the past He humbled the
land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, but

- **IS 8:7 [PROPHECY]** Assyria would flood into Judah up to the neck but not drown it → 2KI 18:13; 2KI 19:35-36 p.641
- **IS 8:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 3:14 p.2016
- **IS 8:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 3:15 p.2016
- **IS 8:14 [PROPHECY]** A stone of stumbling and rock of offense → 1PE 2:8 p.2013
- **IS 8:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:33 p.1812
- **IS 8:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:8 p.2013
- **IS 8:17 [PROPHECY]** The Messiah would trust God and stand with the children God gave Him → HEB 2:13 · MEDIUM p.1979
- **IS 8:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 2:13 p.1979
- **IS 8:19 [DEMONIC]** Should not a people seek their God? Should they consult the dead for the living?

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

in the future He will honor the Way of the Sea,
beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations:

2 *The people walking in darkness*
have seen a great light;
on those living in the land of the shadow of
death,
a light has dawned.
3 You have enlarged the nation
and increased its joy.
The people rejoice before You
as they rejoice at harvest time,
as men rejoice in dividing the plunder.

4 For as in the day of Midian
You have shattered the yoke of their
burden,
the bar across their shoulders,
and the rod of their oppressor.
5 For every trampling boot of battle
and every garment rolled in blood
will be burned as fuel for the fire.

6 For unto us a child is born,
unto us a son is given,
and the government will be upon His
shoulders.
And He will be called
Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God,
Everlasting Father, Prince of Peace.
7 Of the increase of His government and
peace
there will be no end.
He will reign on the throne of David
and over his kingdom,
to establish and sustain it
with justice and righteousness
from that time and forevermore.

The zeal of Yahweh of Hosts will accom-
plish this.

- **IS 9:1 [PROPHECY]** His ministry would begin in Galilee → MT 4:12-17 p.1555
- **IS 9:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 4:15-16 p.1555
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** A child would be born → LK 1:31 p.1645
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** A Son would be given → LK 1:32; JN 1:14; 1TI 3:16 p.1645
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** Called Wonderful (Peleh) → LK 4:22 · MEDIUM p.1655
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** Called Counselor (Yaatz) → MT 13:54 · MEDIUM p.1570
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** Called Mighty God (El Gibor) → 1CO 1:24; TIT 2:13 p.1824
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** Called Everlasting Father (Avi Adth) → JN 8:58; 10:30 p.1714
- **IS 9:6 [PROPHECY]** Called Prince of Peace (Sar Shalom) → JN 16:33 p.1727
- **IS 9:7 [PROPHECY]** His kingdom and peace would have no end → LK 1:32-33 p.1645

JUDGMENT AGAINST ISRAEL'S PRIDE

8 The Lord has sent a message against Ja-
cob,
and it has fallen upon Israel.
9 All the people will know it—
Ephraim and the dwellers of Samaria.
With pride and arrogance of heart
they will say:
10 "The bricks have fallen,
but we will rebuild with finished stone;
the sycamores have been felled,
but we will replace them with cedars."

11 Yahweh has raised up the foes of Rezin
against him
and joined his enemies together.
12 Aram from the east and Philistia from
the west
have devoured Israel with open mouths.

Despite all this, His anger is not turned
away;
His hand is still upraised.

JUDGMENT AGAINST ISRAEL'S HYPOCRISY

13 But the people did not return to Him who
struck them;
they did not seek Yahweh of Hosts.
14 So Yahweh will cut off Israel's head and
tail,
both palm branch and reed in a single
day.
15 The head is the elder and honorable
man,
and the tail is the prophet who teaches
lies.
16 For those who guide this people mislead
them,
and those they mislead are swallowed
up.

17 Therefore the Lord takes no pleasure in
their young men;
He has no compassion on their father-
less and widows.
For every one of them is godless and
wicked,
and every mouth speaks folly.

Despite all this, His anger is not turned
away;
His hand is still upraised.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

JUDGMENT AGAINST ISRAEL'S UNREPENTANCE

18 For wickedness burns like a fire
that consumes the thorns and briers
and kindles the forest thickets,
which roll upward in billows of smoke.
19 By the wrath of Yahweh of Hosts
the land is scorched,
and the people are fuel for the fire.
No man even spares his brother.

20 They carve out what is on the right,
but they are still hungry;
they eat what is on the left,
but they are still not satisfied.
Each one devours the flesh of his own offspring.
21 Manasseh devours Ephraim,
and Ephraim Manasseh;
together they turn against Judah.

Despite all this, His anger is not turned away;
His hand is still upraised.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Woe to judges who rob widows. Then God calls Assyria His rod, a tool in His hand, but Assyria thinks it did everything by itself. That is like an axe bragging it chopped the tree. God promises to cut Assyria down like a forest. A remnant of Israel will come back to the Mighty God.

WOE TO TYRANTS

1 Woe to those who enact unjust statutes
and issue oppressive decrees,
2 to deprive the poor of fair treatment
and withhold justice from the oppressed of My people,
to make widows their prey
and orphans their plunder.

3 What will you do on the day of reckoning
when devastation comes from afar?
To whom will you flee for help?
Where will you leave your wealth?
4 Nothing will remain but to crouch among the captives
or fall among the slain.

Despite all this, His anger is not turned away;
His hand is still upraised.

JUDGMENT ON ASSYRIA

5 Woe to Assyria, the rod of My anger;
the staff in their hands is My wrath.
6 I will send him against a godless nation;
I will dispatch him against a people destined for My rage,
to take spoils and seize plunder,
and to trample them down like clay in the streets.

7 But this is not his intention;
this is not his plan.
For it is in his heart to destroy
and cut off many nations.
8 "Are not all my commanders kings?" he says.
9 "Is not Calno like Carchemish?
Is not Hamath like Arpad?
Is not Samaria like Damascus?
10 As my hand seized the idolatrous kingdoms
whose images surpassed those of Jerusalem and Samaria,
11 and as I have done to Samaria and its idols,
will I not also do to Jerusalem and her idols?"

12 So when the Lord has completed all His work against Mount Zion and Jerusalem, He will say, "I will punish the king of Assyria for the fruit of his arrogant heart and the proud look in his eyes. 13 For he says:

'By the strength of my hand I have done this,
and by my wisdom, for I am clever.
I have removed the boundaries of nations
and plundered their treasures;
like a mighty one I subdued their rulers.
14 My hand reached as into a nest
to seize the wealth of the nations.
Like one gathering abandoned eggs,
I gathered all the earth.
No wing fluttered,
no beak opened or chirped.'"

IS 10:3 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:12 p.2013

IS 10:10 [DEMONIC] Assyria boasts of beating kingdoms full of idols

IS 10:12 [PROPHECY] After using Assyria against Zion, God would punish the proud king of Assyria → IS 37:36-38; 2KI 19:35-37 p.1107

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

15 Does an axe raise itself above the one
who swings it?
Does a saw boast over him who saws
with it?
It would be like a rod waving the one who
lifts it,
or a staff lifting him who is not wood!

16 Therefore the Lord Yahweh of Hosts will
send a wasting disease
among Assyria's stout warriors,
and under his pomp will be kindled
a fire like a burning flame.
17 And the Light of Israel will become a
fire,
and its Holy One a flame.
In a single day it will burn and devour
Assyria's thorns and thistles.
18 The splendor of its forests and orchards,
both soul and body,
it will completely destroy,
as a sickness consumes a man.
19 The remaining trees of its forests will be
so few
that a child could count them.

A REMNANT SHALL RETURN

20 On that day the remnant of Israel
and the survivors of the house of Jacob
will no longer depend
on him who struck them,
but they will truly rely on Yahweh,
the Holy One of Israel.

21 A remnant will return—a remnant of
Jacob—
to the Mighty God.
22 *Though your people, O Israel, be like the*
sand of the sea,
only a remnant will return.
Destruction has been decreed,
overflowing with righteousness.
23 *For the Lord Yahweh of Hosts will carry out*
the destruction decreed upon the whole land.

24 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
of Hosts says:

"O My people who dwell in Zion,
do not fear Assyria,
who strikes you with a rod
and lifts his staff against you
as the Egyptians did.
25 For in just a little while
My fury against you will subside,
and My anger will turn to their destruc-
tion."

26 And Yahweh of Hosts will brandish a
whip against them,
as when He struck Midian at the rock of
Oreb.
He will raise His staff over the sea,
as He did in Egypt.
27 On that day the burden will be lifted
from your shoulders,
and the yoke from your neck.
The yoke will be broken
because your neck will be too large.

28 Assyria has entered Aiath
and passed through Migron,
storing their supplies at Michmash.
29 They have crossed at the ford:
"We will spend the night at Geba."
Ramah trembles;
Gibeah of Saul flees.
30 Cry aloud, O Daughter of Gallim!
Listen, O Laishah!
O wretched Anathoth!
31 Madmenah flees;
the people of Gebim take refuge.
32 Yet today they will halt at Nob,
shaking a fist at the mount of Daughter
Zion,
at the hill of Jerusalem.

33 Behold, the Lord Yahweh of Hosts
will lop off the branches with terrifying
power.
The tall trees will be cut down,
the lofty ones will be felled.
34 He will clear the forest thickets with an
axe,
and Lebanon will fall before the Mighty
One.

IS 10:21 [PROPHECY] Only a remnant of Israel would return → EZR 2:64-65; ROM 9:27-28 p.768
IS 10:22 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:27-28 p.1812

IS 10:27 [PROPHECY] The Assyrian yoke would be broken off Judah's neck → 2KI 19:35-36 · MEDIUM p.646

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

A shoot grows from the stump of Jesse, David's father, and the Spirit of Yahweh rests on Him. He judges the poor fairly and does not judge by looks. Then wolves room with lambs, lions eat straw and a toddler plays by a snake hole. God reaches out a second time to gather His scattered people from the four corners of the earth.

THE ROOT OF JESSE

1 Then a shoot will spring up from the
stump of Jesse,
and a Branch from his roots will bear
fruit.
2 The Spirit of Yahweh will rest on Him—
the Spirit of wisdom and understanding,
the Spirit of counsel and strength,
the Spirit of knowledge and fear of Yah-
weh.
3 And He will delight in the fear of Yahweh.
He will not judge by what His eyes see,
and He will not decide by what His ears
hear,
4 but with righteousness He will judge the
poor,
and with equity He will decide for the
lowly of the earth.
He will strike the earth with the rod of His
mouth
and slay the wicked with the breath of
His lips.
5 Righteousness will be the belt around His
hips,
and faithfulness the sash around His
waist.
6 The wolf will live with the lamb,
and the leopard will lie down with the
goat;
the calf and young lion and fatling will be
together,
and a little child will lead them.
7 The cow will graze with the bear,
their young will lie down together,
and the lion will eat straw like the ox.
8 The infant will play by the cobra's den,
and the toddler will reach into the
viper's nest.
9 They will neither harm nor destroy
on all My holy mountain,
for the earth will be full of the knowledge
of Yahweh
as the sea is full of water.
10 *On that day the Root of Jesse will stand as a banner for the peoples. The nations will seek Him, and His place of rest will be glorious.* 11
On that day the Lord will extend His hand
a second time to recover the remnant of
His people from Assyria, from Egypt, from
Pathros, from Cush, from Elam, from Shi-
nar, from Hamath, and from the islands of
the sea.
12 He will raise a banner for the nations
and gather the exiles of Israel;
He will collect the scattered of Judah
from the four corners of the earth.
13 Then the jealousy of Ephraim will de-
part,
and the adversaries of Judah will be cut
off.
Ephraim will no longer envy Judah,
nor will Judah harass Ephraim.
14 They will swoop down on the slopes of
the Philistines to the west;
together they will plunder the sons of
the east.

- **IS 11:1 [PROPHECY]** Called a Nazarene → MT 2:23 · MEDIUM p.1552
- **IS 11:1 [PROPHECY]** A rod from the stem of Jesse → LK 3:23-32 p.1653
- **IS 11:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 2:23 p.1552
- **IS 11:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 5:5 p.2091
- **IS 11:2 [PROPHECY]** Anointed by the Spirit → MT 3:16-17; ACTS 10:38 p.1554
- **IS 11:2 [PROPHECY]** His character marked by wisdom and knowledge → COL 2:3 p.1906
- **IS 11:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 4:14 p.2019
- **IS 11:3 [PROPHECY]** He would know men's thoughts → LK 6:8; JN 2:25 p.1659
- **IS 11:4 [PROPHECY]** Judge in righteousness → STILL TO COME
- **IS 11:4 [PROPHECY]** Judges with the sword of His mouth → STILL TO COME
- **IS 11:4 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2TH 2:8 p.1927
- **IS 11:4 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 19:15 p.2110
- **IS 11:5 [PROPHECY]** His character: righteous and faithful → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 11:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 6:14 p.1889
- **IS 11:6 [PROPHECY]** 'The wolf shall dwell with the lamb' → STILL TO COME
- **IS 11:10 [PROPHECY]** The Gentiles would seek Him → JN 12:18-21 p.1721
- **IS 11:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:12 p.1817
- **IS 11:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 5:5 p.2091
- **IS 11:11 [PROPHECY]** God would gather Israel a second time from the four corners of the earth → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

They will lay their hands on Edom and
Moab,
and the Ammonites will be subject to
them.
15 Yahweh will devote to destruction
the gulf of the Sea of Egypt;
with a scorching wind He will sweep His
hand
over the Euphrates.
He will split it into seven streams
for men to cross with dry sandals.
16 There will be a highway for the remnant
of His people
who remain from Assyria,
as there was for Israel
when they came up from the land of
Egypt.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

A short song for the day of rescue. God was angry, but His anger turned away and He comforted His people. Isaiah says you will draw water with joy from the wells of salvation. The Hebrew word for salvation here sounds like the name Yeshua, which is the name of Jesus.

JOYFUL THANKSGIVING

1 In that day you will say:

"O Yahweh, I will praise You.
Although You were angry with me,
Your anger has turned away,
and You have comforted me.
2 Surely God is my salvation;
I will trust and not be afraid.
For Yahweh Yahweh is my strength and
my song,
and He also has become my salvation."

3 With joy you will draw water from the
springs of salvation, 4 and on that day you
will say:

"Give praise to Yahweh;
proclaim His name!
Make His works known among the peo-
ples;
declare that His name is exalted.
5 Sing to Yahweh, for He has done glorious
things.
Let this be known in all the earth.
6 Cry out and sing, O citizen of Zion,
for great among you is the Holy One of
Israel."

IS 12:2 [PROPHECY] Called Yeshua → MT 1:21 · MEDIUM p.1550

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

The first of the burdens, and it is against Babylon, which was not even the top superpower yet. God musters an army, the Medes, and the Day of Yahweh comes with dark stars and shaking skies. Babylon, the jewel of kingdoms, ends up a ghost town for jackals and owls. Today it is mostly ruins in the Iraqi desert.

THE BURDEN AGAINST BABYLON

1 This is the burden against Babylon that
Isaiah son of Amoz received:

2 Raise a banner on a barren hilltop;
call aloud to them.
Wave your hand,
that they may enter the gates of the no-
bles.
3 I have commanded My sanctified ones;
I have even summoned My warriors
to execute My wrath
and exult in My triumph.
4 Listen, a tumult on the mountains,
like that of a great multitude!
Listen, an uproar among the kingdoms,
like nations gathered together!
Yahweh of Hosts is mobilizing
an army for war.
5 They are coming from faraway lands,
from the ends of the heavens—
Yahweh and the weapons of His wrath—
to destroy the whole country.

6 Wail, for the Day of Yahweh is near;
it will come as destruction from the
Almighty.
7 Therefore all hands will fall limp,
and every man's heart will melt.
8 Terror, pain, and anguish will seize them;
they will writhe like a woman in labor.
They will look at one another,
their faces flushed with fear.

9 Behold, the Day of Yahweh is coming—
cruel, with fury and burning anger—
to make the earth a desolation
and to destroy the sinners within it.
10 For the stars of heaven and their con-
stellations

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

will not give their light.
The rising sun will be darkened,
and the moon will not give its light.
11 I will punish the world for its evil
and the wicked for their iniquity.
I will end the haughtiness of the arrogant
and lay low the pride of the ruthless.
12 I will make man scarcer than pure gold,
and mankind rarer than the gold of
Ophir.
13 Therefore I will make the heavens trem-
ble,
and the earth will be shaken from its
place
at the wrath of Yahweh of Hosts
on the day of His burning anger.
14 Like a hunted gazelle,
like a sheep without a shepherd,
each will return to his own people,
each will flee to his native land.
15 Whoever is caught will be stabbed,
and whoever is captured will die by the
sword.
16 Their infants will be dashed to pieces
before their eyes,
their houses will be looted,
and their wives will be ravished.
17 Behold, I will stir up against them the
Medes,
who have no regard for silver
and no desire for gold.
18 Their bows will dash young men to
pieces;
they will have no mercy on the fruit of
the womb;
they will not look with pity on the chil-
dren.
19 And Babylon, the jewel of the kingdoms,
the glory of the pride of the Chaldeans,
will be overthrown by God
like Sodom and Gomorrah.
20 She will never be inhabited
or settled from generation to generation;
no nomad will pitch his tent there,
no shepherd will rest his flock there.
21 But desert creatures will lie down there,
and howling creatures will fill her
houses.
Ostriches will dwell there,
and wild goats will leap about.
22 Hyenas will howl in her fortresses
and jackals in her luxurious palaces.
Babylon's time is at hand,
and her days will not be prolonged.

- **IS 13:10 [PROPHECY]** Sun, moon, and stars would go dark in the day of Yahweh → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 13:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:29 p.1587
- **IS 13:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 13:24-25 p.1631
- **IS 13:17 [PROPHECY]** God would stir up the Medes against Babylon → DAN 5:30-31 p.1338
- **IS 13:19 [PROPHECY]** Babylon would be overthrown like Sodom and never lived in again → HISTORY: Babylon slowly emptied after the Greeks built a new capital nearby about 300 BC. By about AD 20 it was called a great desert. Recorded by Strabo, Geography 16.1.5. · MEDIUM

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel gets to sing a taunt song over the fallen king of Babylon. The dead in Sheol sit up and say, You too? Then the famous line: How you have fallen from heaven, O day star, son of the dawn. The KJV says Lucifer, and many see Satan's fall behind it. God also swears He will break Assyria and warns Philistia not to party yet.

RESTORATION FOR ISRAEL

1 For Yahweh will have compassion on Jacob; once again He will choose Israel and settle them in their own land. The foreigner will join them and unite with the house of Jacob. 2 The nations will escort Israel and bring it to its homeland.

Then the house of Israel will possess the nations as menservants and maidservants in Yahweh's land. They will make captives of their captors and rule over their oppressors.

THE FALL OF THE KING OF BABYLON

3 On the day that Yahweh gives you rest from your pain and torment, and from the hard labor into which you were forced, 4 you will sing this song of contempt against the king of Babylon:

How the oppressor has ceased,
and how his fury has ended!
5 Yahweh has broken the staff of the
wicked,
the scepter of the rulers.
6 It struck the peoples in anger
with unceasing blows;
it subdued the nations in rage
with relentless persecution.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

7 All the earth is at peace and at rest;
they break out in song.
8 Even the cypresses and cedars of
Lebanon
exult over you:
"Since you have been laid low,
no woodcutter comes against us."

9 Sheol beneath is eager
to meet you upon your arrival.
It stirs the spirits of the dead to greet
you—
all the rulers of the earth.
It makes all the kings of the nations
rise from their thrones.
10 They will all respond to you, saying,
"You too have become weak, as we are;
you have become like us!"
11 Your pomp has been brought down to
Sheol,
along with the music of your harps.
Maggots are your bed
and worms your blanket.

12 How you have fallen from heaven,
O day star, son of the dawn!
You have been cut down to the ground,
O destroyer of nations.
13 You said in your heart:
"I will ascend to the heavens;
I will raise my throne
above the stars of God.
I will sit on the mount of assembly,
in the far reaches of the north.
14 I will ascend above the tops of the
clouds;
I will make myself like the Most High."

15 But you will be brought down to Sheol,
to the lowest depths of the Pit.
16 Those who see you will stare;
they will ponder your fate:
"Is this the man who shook the earth
and made the kingdoms tremble,
17 who turned the world into a desert
and destroyed its cities,
who refused to let the captives
return to their homes?"

18 All the kings of the nations lie in state,
each in his own tomb.
19 But you are cast out of your grave like a
rejected branch,
covered by those slain with the sword,
and dumped into a rocky pit
like a carcass trampled underfoot.
20 You will not join them in burial,
since you have destroyed your land
and slaughtered your own people.
The offspring of the wicked
will never again be mentioned.

21 Prepare a place to slaughter his sons
for the iniquities of their forefathers.
They will never rise up to possess a land
or cover the earth with their cities.
22 "I will rise up against them,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
"I will cut off from Babylon
her name and her remnant,
her offspring and her posterity,"
declares Yahweh.
23 "I will make her a place
for owls and for swamplands;
I will sweep her away
with the broom of destruction,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts.

GOD'S PURPOSE AGAINST ASSYRIA

24 Yahweh of Hosts has sworn:

"Surely, as I have planned, so will it be;
as I have purposed, so will it stand.
25 I will break Assyria in My land;
I will trample him on My mountain.
His yoke will be taken off My people,
and his burden removed from their
shoulders."

26 This is the plan devised for the whole
earth,
and this is the hand stretched out over
all the nations.
27 Yahweh of Hosts has purposed,
and who can thwart Him?
His hand is outstretched,

IS 14:12 [PROPHECY] How you are fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning → DAN 5:30 · MEDIUM p.1338
IS 14:13 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → MT 11:23 p.1566

IS 14:22 [PROPHECY] I will cut off from Babylon the name and remnant; I will make it a possession for the porcupine → HISTORY: Babylon was left almost empty after the Greeks moved its people to the new city of Seleucia about 300 BC. By about AD 20 it was a great desert. Recorded by Strabo, Geography 16.1.5. · MEDIUM
IS 14:24 [PROPHECY] The Assyrian shall be broken in My land; upon My mountains I will tread him underfoot → Fulfilled in Sennacherib's army destroyed outside Jerusalem in 701 BC (2KI 19:35) p.646

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

so who can turn it back?

PHILISTIA WILL BE DESTROYED

28 In the year that King Ahaz died, this burden was received:

29 Do not rejoice, all you Philistines,
that the rod that struck you is broken.
For a viper will spring from the root of the snake,
and a flying serpent from its egg.
30 Then the firstborn of the poor will find pasture,
and the needy will lie down in safety,
but I will kill your root by famine,
and your remnant will be slain.

31 Wail, O gate! Cry out, O city!
Melt away, all you Philistines!
For a cloud of smoke comes from the north,
and there are no stragglers in its ranks.
32 What answer will be given
to the envoys of that nation?
"Yahweh has founded Zion,
where His afflicted people will find refuge."

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

A sad song about Moab, Israel's neighbor across the Dead Sea. Towns fall in a single night, everyone shaves their heads, and wailing echoes from town to town. Surprisingly, Isaiah says his own heart cries out for Moab. Even when judgment is deserved, God's people are not supposed to cheer.

THE BURDEN AGAINST MOAB // JEREMIAH 48:1–47

1 This is the burden against Moab:

Ar in Moab is ruined,
destroyed in a night!
Kir in Moab is devastated,
destroyed in a night!
2 Dibon goes up to its temple
to weep at its high places.
Moab wails over Nebo,
as well as over Medeba.

Every head is shaved,
every beard is cut off.
3 In its streets they wear sackcloth;
on the rooftops and in the public squares
they all wail, falling down weeping.
4 Heshbon and Elealeh cry out;
their voices are heard as far as Jahaz.
Therefore the soldiers of Moab cry out;
their souls tremble within.

5 My heart cries out over Moab;
her fugitives flee as far as Zoar,
as far as Eglath-shelishiyah.
With weeping they ascend the slope of Luhith;
they lament their destruction on the road to Horonaim.
6 The waters of Nimrim are dried up,
and the grass is withered;
the vegetation is gone,
and the greenery is no more.
7 So they carry their wealth and belongings
over the Brook of the Willows.

8 For their outcry echoes to the border of Moab.
Their wailing reaches Eglaim;
it is heard in Beer-elim.
9 The waters of Dimon are full of blood,
but I will bring more upon Dimon—
a lion upon the fugitives of Moab
and upon the remnant of the land.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Moab's refugees ask Judah for shelter, and Isaiah points to a throne of loving devotion in the tent of David. But Moab's pride gets in the way. The famous Moabite vineyards are trampled and the grape stomping parties stop. Then a deadline: within three years Moab's glory will shrink.

MOAB'S DESTRUCTION // ZEPHANIAH 2:8–11

1 Send the tribute lambs
to the ruler of the land,
from Sela in the desert
to the mount of Daughter Zion.
2 Like fluttering birds
pushed out of the nest,
so are the daughters of Moab
at the fords of the Arnon:

IS 14:28 [PROPHECY] Burden against Philistia → HISTORY: Assyrian kings beat the Philistine cities of Gaza, Ashdod, Ashkelon and Ekron between 720 and 701 BC. Recorded in the royal records of Sargon II and Sennacherib. · MEDIUM

IS 15:2 [DEMONIC] Moab goes up to weep at its high places

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | DEMONIC | GOD SPEAKING

3 "Give us counsel;
render a decision.
Shelter us at noonday
with shade as dark as night.
Hide the refugees;
do not betray the one who flees.
4 Let my fugitives stay with you;
be a refuge for Moab from the destroyer."

When the oppressor has gone, destruction has ceased,
and the oppressors have vanished from the land,
5 in loving devotion a throne will be established
in the tent of David.
A judge seeking justice and hastening righteousness
will sit on it in faithfulness.

6 We have heard of Moab's pomposity,
his exceeding pride and conceit,
his overflowing arrogance.
But his boasting is empty.
7 Therefore let Moab wail;
let them wail together for Moab.
Moan for the raisin cakes of Kir-hareseth,
you who are utterly stricken.
8 For the fields of Heshbon have withered,
along with the grapevines of Sibmah.
The rulers of the nations
have trampled its choicest vines,
which had reached as far as Jazer
and spread toward the desert.
Their shoots had spread out
and passed over the sea.

9 So I weep with Jazer
for the vines of Sibmah;
I drench Heshbon and Elealeh
with my tears.
Triumphant shouts have fallen silent
over your summer fruit and your harvest.
10 Joy and gladness are removed from the orchard;
no one sings or shouts in the vineyards.
No one tramples the grapes in the winepresses;
I have put an end to the cheering.

11 Therefore my heart laments for Moab
like a harp,
my inmost being for Kir-heres.
12 When Moab appears on the high place,
when he wearies himself
and enters his sanctuary to pray,
it will do him no good.

13 This is the message that Yahweh spoke earlier concerning Moab. 14 And now Yahweh says, "In three years, as a hired worker counts the years, Moab's splendor will become an object of contempt, with all her many people. And those who are left will be few and feeble."

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Damascus, one of the oldest cities on earth, becomes a heap of ruins in this oracle, and Israel's glory fades with it. A few olives are left at the top of the tree. Then the nations roar like the ocean, God rebukes them, and they are gone before morning.

THE BURDEN AGAINST DAMASCUS // JEREMIAH 49:23–27

1 This is the burden against Damascus:

"Behold, Damascus is no longer a city;
it has become a heap of ruins.
2 The cities of Aroer are forsaken;
they will be left to the flocks,
which will lie down with no one to fear.
3 The fortress will disappear from Ephraim,
and the sovereignty from Damascus.
The remnant of Aram will be
like the splendor of the Israelites,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
4 "In that day the splendor of Jacob will fade,
and the fat of his body will waste away,
5 as the reaper gathers the standing grain
and harvests the ears with his arm,
as one gleans heads of grain
in the Valley of Rephaim.

IS 16:5 [PROPHECY] 'A throne in mercy established in the tent of David' → LK 1:32-33 p.1645

IS 16:12 [DEMONIC] Moab prays at its shrine but it does no good

IS 16:14 [PROPHECY] Within three years Moab's glory would be brought low → HISTORY: Assyria made Moab a servant land that paid tribute. Moab bowed to Sargon II about 711 BC and to Sennacherib in 701 BC. Recorded in Assyrian royal records. · MEDIUM

IS 17:1 [PROPHECY] Behold, Damascus shall be a ruinous heap; the fortress shall cease from Ephraim → 2KI 16:9; 2KI 17:6 p.634

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

6 Yet gleanings will remain,
like an olive tree that has been beaten—
two or three berries atop the tree,
four or five on its fruitful branches,"
declares Yahweh, the God of Israel.
7 In that day men will look to their Maker
and turn their eyes to the Holy One of Israel.
8 They will not look to the altars
they have fashioned with their hands
or to the Asherahs and incense altars
they have made with their fingers.
9 In that day their strong cities
will be like forsaken thickets and summits,
abandoned to the Israelites
and to utter desolation.
10 For you have forgotten the God of your salvation
and failed to remember the Rock of your refuge.
Therefore, though you cultivate delightful plots
and set out cuttings from exotic vines—
11 though on the day you plant
you make them grow,
and on that morning
you help your seed sprout—
yet the harvest will vanish
on the day of disease and incurable pain.
12 Alas, the tumult of many peoples;
they rage like the roaring seas and clamoring nations;
they rumble like the crashing of mighty waters.
13 The nations rage like the rush of many waters.
He rebukes them, and they flee far away,
driven before the wind like chaff on the hills,
like tumbleweeds before a gale.
14 In the evening, there is sudden terror!
Before morning, they are no more!
This is the portion of those who loot us
and the lot of those who plunder us.

IS 17:8 [DEMONIC] People will stop looking to their Asherah poles
IS 17:13 [PROPHECY] The raging nations that plunder Judah would be gone before morning → IS 37:36; 2KI 19:35 · MEDIUM p.1107

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaiah talks to Cush, the land of tall, smooth skinned people who send papyrus boats up the Nile. God says He will quietly watch from His home like shimmering heat. In the end, the far-away nation brings gifts to Yahweh on Mount Zion. Many see a hint of this in Acts 8, when an official from Ethiopia goes to Jerusalem to worship.

A MESSAGE TO CUSH

1 Woe to the land of whirring wings,
along the rivers of Cush,
2 which sends couriers by sea,
in papyrus vessels on the waters.
Go, swift messengers,
to a people tall and smooth-skinned,
to a people widely feared,
to a powerful nation of strange speech,
whose land is divided by rivers.
3 All you people of the world
and dwellers of the earth,
when a banner is raised on the mountains,
you will see it;
when a ram's horn sounds,
you will hear it.
4 For this is what Yahweh has told me:
"I will quietly look on from My dwelling place,
like shimmering heat in the sunshine,
like a cloud of dew in the heat of harvest."
5 For before the harvest, when the blossom is gone
and the flower becomes a ripening grape,
He will cut off the shoots with a pruning knife
and remove and discard the branches.
6 They will all be left to the mountain birds of prey,
and to the beasts of the land.
The birds will feed on them in summer,
and all the wild animals in winter.
7 At that time gifts will be brought to Yahweh of Hosts—
from a people tall and smooth-skinned,

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

from a people widely feared,
from a powerful nation of strange speech,
whose land is divided by rivers—
to Mount Zion, the place of the Name of Yahweh of Hosts.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

God rides a fast cloud into Egypt, and their idols shake. The Nile dries up, the fishermen mope, and Pharaoh's wise men give dumb advice. Then a big surprise: an altar to Yahweh in Egypt, and a highway from Egypt to Assyria, with old enemies worshiping God together alongside Israel. God calls Egypt My people.

THE BURDEN AGAINST EGYPT

1 This is the burden against Egypt:

Behold, Yahweh rides on a swift cloud;
He is coming to Egypt.
The idols of Egypt will tremble before Him,
and the hearts of the Egyptians will melt within them.

2 "So I will incite Egyptian against Egyptian;
brother will fight against brother, neighbor against neighbor,
city against city, and kingdom against kingdom.
3 Then the spirit of the Egyptians will be emptied out from among them,
and I will frustrate their plans,
so that they will resort to idols and spirits of the dead,
to mediums and spiritists.
4 I will deliver the Egyptians into the hands of a harsh master,
and a fierce king will rule over them,"
declares the Lord Yahweh of Hosts.
5 The waters of the Nile will dry up,
and the riverbed will be parched and empty.
6 The canals will stink;
the streams of Egypt will trickle and dry up;
the reeds and rushes will wither.
7 The bulrushes by the Nile,
by the mouth of the river,
and all the fields sown along the Nile,
will wither, blow away, and be no more.

8 Then the fishermen will mourn,
all who cast a hook into the Nile will lament,
and those who spread nets on the waters will pine away.
9 The workers in flax will be dismayed,
and the weavers of fine linen will turn pale.
10 The workers in cloth will be dejected,
and all the hired workers will be sick at heart.

11 The princes of Zoan are mere fools;
Pharaoh's wise counselors give senseless advice.
How can you say to Pharaoh,
"I am one of the wise,
a son of eastern kings"?
12 Where are your wise men now?
Let them tell you and reveal
what Yahweh of Hosts has planned against Egypt.

13 The princes of Zoan have become fools;
the princes of Memphis are deceived.
The cornerstones of her tribes
have led Egypt astray.
14 Yahweh has poured into her
a spirit of confusion.
Egypt has been led astray in all she does,
as a drunkard staggers through his own vomit.
15 There is nothing Egypt can do—
head or tail, palm or reed.

A BLESSING UPON THE EARTH

16 In that day the Egyptians will be like women. They will tremble with fear beneath the uplifted hand of Yahweh of Hosts, when He brandishes it against them. 17 The land of Judah will bring terror to Egypt; whenever Judah is mentioned, Egypt will tremble over what Yahweh of Hosts has planned against it.

IS 18:7 [PROPHECY] Cush would bring gifts to Yahweh on Mount Zion → ACTS 8:27 · MEDIUM p.1754
IS 19:1 [DEMONIC] The idols of Egypt tremble before God
IS 19:3 [DEMONIC] Egypt turns to idols, the dead, and mediums
IS 19:4 [PROPHECY] A harsh master and fierce king would rule Egypt → HISTORY: The Assyrian king Esarhaddon conquered Egypt and took its capital Memphis in 671 BC. Shown on his stone monument found at Zincirli in Turkey. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING

18 In that day five cities in the land of Egypt
will speak the language of Canaan and
swear allegiance to Yahweh of Hosts. One
of them will be called the City of the Sun.
19 In that day there will be an altar to Yah-
weh in the center of the land of Egypt,
and a pillar to Yahweh near her border. 20
It will be a sign and a witness to Yahweh
of Hosts in the land of Egypt. When they
cry out to Yahweh because of their op-
pressors, He will send them a savior and
defender to rescue them. 21 Yahweh will
make Himself known to Egypt, and on that
day Egypt will acknowledge Yahweh.
They will worship with sacrifices and of-
ferings; they will make vows to Yahweh
and fulfill them.
22 And Yahweh will strike Egypt with a
plague; He will strike them but heal them.
They will turn to Yahweh, and He will hear
their prayers and heal them.
23 In that day there will be a highway from
Egypt to Assyria. The Assyrians will go to
Egypt, and the Egyptians to Assyria. The
Egyptians and Assyrians will worship to-
gether.
24 In that day Israel will join a three-party
alliance with Egypt and Assyria—a bless-
ing upon the earth. 25 Yahweh of Hosts will
bless them, saying, "Blessed be Egypt My
people, Assyria My handiwork, and Israel
My inheritance."

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Isaiah to take off his sackcloth and sandals and walk around stripped for three years as a living billboard. The message: Egypt and Cush, the allies Judah is trusting, will be led away by Assyria the same way. Do not put your hope in Egypt. Isaiah earned his paycheck that year.

A SIGN AGAINST EGYPT AND CUSH

1 Before the year that the chief comman-
der, sent by Sargon king of Assyria, came
to Ashdod and attacked and captured it, 2
Yahweh had already spoken through Isa-
iah son of Amoz, saying, "Go, remove the
sackcloth from your waist and the sandals
from your feet."
And Isaiah did so, walking around naked
and barefoot.
3 Then Yahweh said, "Just as My servant
Isaiah has gone naked and barefoot for
three years as a sign and omen against
Egypt and Cush, 4 so the king of Assyria
will lead away the captives of Egypt and
the exiles of Cush, young and old alike,
naked and barefoot, with bared
buttocks—to Egypt's shame.
5 Those who made Cush their hope and
Egypt their boast will be dismayed and
ashamed. 6 And on that day the dwellers
of this coastland will say, 'See what has
happened to our source of hope, those to
whom we fled for help and deliverance
from the king of Assyria! How then can
we escape?'"

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaiah sees a vision so bad it gives him stomach pains. A lookout on a tower watches riders come and then shouts, Fallen, fallen is Babylon! Short notes follow for Edom, where a watchman says, Morning is coming, but also the night, and for Arabia, where the glory of Kedar ends within a year.

BABYLON IS FALLEN // REVELATION 18:1–8

1 This is the burden against the Desert by
the Sea:
Like whirlwinds sweeping through the
Negev,
an invader comes from the desert,
from a land of terror.
2 A dire vision is declared to me:
"The traitor still betrays,
and the destroyer still destroys.
Go up, O Elam! Lay siege, O Media!

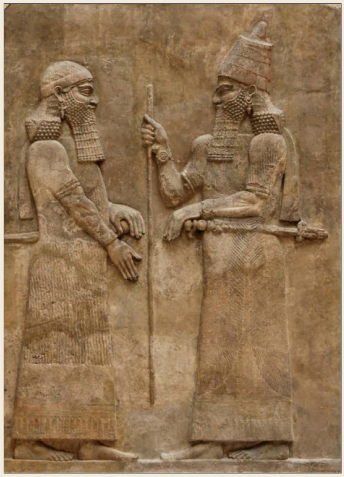
- **IS 19:19 [PROPHECY]** An altar to Yahweh would stand in the middle of Egypt → HISTORY: The Jewish priest Onias built a temple to Yahweh at Leontopolis in Egypt about 160 BC, pointing to this verse. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 13.3.1. · MEDIUM
- **IS 19:23 [PROPHECY]** Egypt, Assyria, and Israel would worship Yahweh together as one blessed people → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 20:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Sargon II annals and the Ashdod stele → FIELD NOTES p.1084
- **IS 20:4 [PROPHECY]** Sargon (king of Assyria) would lead Egyptians and Ethiopians naked into captivity → HISTORY: Sargon II's army took Ashdod in 711 BC. Later Assyrian kings took Egyptian and Cushite captives when they conquered Egypt in 671 and 663 BC. Recorded in Assyrian royal records. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

SARGON II, THE FORGOTTEN KING

ISAIAH 20:1 · 2 KINGS 17:6



Sargon II, right, in the tall crown, talking with an official. From his palace walls at Khorsabad. Louvre Museum, Paris.

WHAT IT IS

The palace and written records of Sargon II, king of Assyria. His annals say he captured the Philistine city of Ashdod, threw out its king and set up his own man. Isaiah 20:1 says Sargon's chief commander took Ashdod.

HOW OLD IT IS

Sargon ruled from 722 to 705 BC. He captured Ashdod about 711 BC. His records were written during his reign, so the date is firm.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

For centuries Isaiah 20:1 was the only clear mention of Sargon anywhere, and some scholars doubted he was real. Then in 1843 the French consul Paul Emile Botta dug up his huge palace at Khorsabad, in modern Iraq, covered in carvings and writing. In 1963 pieces of a Sargon victory stone were found at Ashdod itself.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Many palace carvings are in the Louvre Museum in Paris. The Ashdod pieces are in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Sargon was real, he was king of Assyria, and he took Ashdod, just as Isaiah said. The Bible remembered him when the rest of history forgot.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

His records do not mention Isaiah walking around barefoot. They confirm the war, not the sermon.

I will put an end to all her groaning."

3 Therefore my body is filled with anguish.
Pain grips me, like the pains of a woman in labor.
I am bewildered to hear,
I am dismayed to see.
4 My heart falters;
fear makes me tremble.
The twilight I desired
has turned to horror.
5 They prepare a table, they lay out a carpet,
they eat, they drink!

Rise up, O princes, oil the shields!
6 For this is what the Lord says to me:

"Go, post a lookout
and have him report what he sees.
7 When he sees chariots with teams of horsemen,
riders on donkeys, riders on camels,
he must be alert, fully alert."

8 Then the lookout shouted:

"Day after day, my lord,
I stand on the watchtower;
night after night
I stay at my post.
9 Look, here come the riders,
horsemen in pairs."

And one answered, saying:

"Fallen, fallen is Babylon!
All the images of her gods
lie shattered on the ground!"

IS 21:9 [PROPHECY] Babylon is fallen → DAN 5:30-31 p.1338
IS 21:9 [DEMONIC] Babylon falls and her idols lie shattered

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

10 O my people, crushed on the threshing
floor,
I tell you what I have heard
from Yahweh of Hosts,
the God of Israel.

THE BURDEN AGAINST EDOM // ISAIAH 34:5–17

11 This is the burden against Dumah:

One calls to me from Seir,
"Watchman, what is left of the night?
Watchman, what is left of the night?"

12 The watchman replies,
"Morning has come, but also the night.
If you would inquire, then inquire.
Come back yet again."

THE BURDEN AGAINST ARABIA

13 This is the burden against Arabia:

In the thickets of Arabia you must lodge,
O caravans of Dedanites.
14 Bring water for the thirsty,
O dwellers of Tema;
meet the refugees with food.
15 For they flee from the sword—
the sword that is drawn—
from the bow that is bent,
and from the stress of battle.

16 For this is what the Lord says to me:
"Within one year, as a hired worker would
count it, all the glory of Kedar will be
gone. 17 The remaining archers, the war-
riors of Kedar, will be few."

For Yahweh, the God of Israel, has spo-
ken.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Jerusalem throws a rooftop party while the enemy is at the gate. They count houses to tear down for the wall and dig water tunnels, but never look to God, who planned it all. Their motto: Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die. Then God fires Shebna, a palace official busy carving himself a fancy tomb, and gives the key of David to Eliakim.

THE VALLEY OF VISION

1 This is the burden against the Valley of
Vision:

What ails you now,
that you have all gone up to the
rooftops,
2 O city of commotion,
O town of revelry?

Your slain did not die by the sword,
nor were they killed in battle.
3 All your rulers have fled together,
captured without a bow.
All your fugitives were captured together,
having fled to a distant place.
4 Therefore I said,
"Turn away from me, let me weep bit-
terly!
Do not try to console me
over the destruction of the daughter of
my people."

5 For the Lord Yahweh of Hosts has set a
day
of tumult and trampling and confusion in
the Valley of Vision—
of breaking down the walls
and crying to the mountains.
6 Elam takes up a quiver, with chariots and
horsemen,
and Kir uncovers the shield.
7 Your choicest valleys are full of chariots,
and horsemen are posted at the gates.
8 He has uncovered
the defenses of Judah.

On that day you looked to the weapons in
the House of the Forest. 9 You saw that
there were many breaches in the walls of
the City of David. You collected water
from the lower pool. 10 You counted the

- **IS 21:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 14:8 p.2103
- **IS 21:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 18:2 p.2107
- **IS 21:11 [PROPHECY]** Burden against Dumah (Edom) → HISTORY: The Babylonian king Nabonidus marched into Edom and Arabia about 553 BC. Found in the Nabonidus Chronicle and on his rock carving at Sela in Jordan. · MEDIUM
- **IS 21:16 [PROPHECY]** Within one year the glory of Kedar would end → HISTORY: The Assyrian king Sennacherib attacked the Arab tribe of Kedar about 690 BC and carried off their gods. Ashurbanipal crushed them about 645 BC. Recorded in Assyrian royal records. · MEDIUM

- **IS 22:5 [PROPHECY]** A day of trampling and broken walls would come on Jerusalem → 2KI 25:4-10 · MEDIUM p.660

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

houses of Jerusalem and tore them down to strengthen the wall. 11 You built a reservoir between the walls for the waters of the ancient pool, but you did not look to the One who made it, or consider Him who planned it long ago.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE BROAD WALL

ISAIAH 22:9 TO 10 · NEHEMIAH 3:8 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:5



The Broad Wall in the Jewish Quarter of Jerusalem, with modern homes built around it. Photo by Ian Scott, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A massive city wall of stone, about 23 feet thick. A long stretch of it is still standing in the Old City of Jerusalem.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 701 BC, built in the time of King Hezekiah to get ready for the Assyrian attack. Archaeologists date it by the pottery found with it, and most agree on Hezekiah's time.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The Israeli archaeologist Nahman Avigad found it in 1970 while digging in the Jewish Quarter after the 1967 war.

WHAT WAS UNDER IT

The wall runs right over the floors of older houses. The builders tore down homes that were in the way and used the stones. Isaiah 22:10 says, You counted the houses of Jerusalem and tore them down to strengthen the wall. The dirt matches the verse.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Still in place in the Jewish Quarter of the Old City, open to visitors, a few feet below the modern street.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Jerusalem really did build a huge new wall in Hezekiah's day, and really did knock down houses to do it. Nehemiah 3:8 also mentions a Broad Wall, which is probably the same one.

THE POINT ISAIAH MADE

Isaiah was not against walls. His complaint was that they worked hard on the wall and the water but never looked to the God who made it all 22:11.

12 On that day the Lord Yahweh of Hosts
called for weeping and wailing,
for shaven heads
and the wearing of sackcloth.
13 *But look, there is joy and gladness,*
butchering of cattle and slaughtering of sheep,
eating of meat and drinking of wine:
"Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die!"
14 Yahweh of Hosts has revealed in my hearing:
"Until your dying day,
this sin of yours will never be atoned for,"
says the Lord Yahweh of Hosts.

A MESSAGE FOR SHEBNA

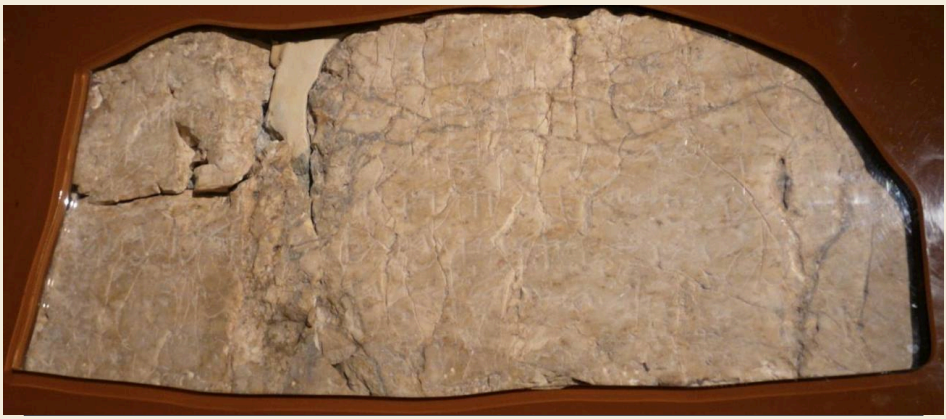
15 This is what the Lord Yahweh of Hosts says: "Go, say to Shebna, the steward in charge of the palace: 16 What are you doing here, and who authorized you to carve out a tomb for yourself here—to chisel your tomb in the height and cut your resting place in the rock?
17 Look, O mighty man! Yahweh is about to shake you violently. He will take hold of you, 18 roll you into a ball, and sling you into a wide land. There you will die, and there your glorious chariots will remain—a disgrace to the house of your master. 19 I will remove you from office, and you will be ousted from your position.

- **IS 22:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Broad Wall → FIELD NOTES p.1086
- **IS 22:11 [FIELD NOTES]** Hezekiah's tunnel still carries water today. See the Siloam Tunnel Inscription Field Notes page, p.1087.
- **IS 22:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 15:32 p.1843
- **IS 22:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Tomb inscription of the royal steward → FIELD NOTES p.1088

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE SILOAM TUNNEL INSCRIPTION

ISAIAH 22:11 · 2 KINGS 20:20 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:30



The Siloam Inscription, cut from the wall of Hezekiah's tunnel. Istanbul Archaeology Museums.

WHAT IT IS

Six lines of old Hebrew carved into the rock wall of a tunnel under Jerusalem. The tunnel is about 1,750 feet long and still carries water from the Gihon Spring to the Pool of Siloam. The words tell the moment two teams of diggers, coming from opposite ends, heard each other's voices and broke through. Then the water flowed.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 700 BC. The shape of the letters fits Hezekiah's time. A few scholars once argued for a much later date, but a 2003 radiocarbon study of plant bits in the tunnel plaster pointed to about 700 BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In 1880 a boy wading in the tunnel noticed letters on the wall. In 1890 thieves cut it out of the rock and broke it. The pieces were taken to Istanbul, because the Ottoman Turks ruled Jerusalem then.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Istanbul Archaeology Museums in Turkey. The tunnel itself is in the City of David in Jerusalem, and you can walk through it in water up to your knees.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

2 Kings 20:20 says Hezekiah made the tunnel that brought water into the city, and 2 Chronicles 32:30 says he channeled the Gihon spring down to the west side of the City of David. The tunnel does exactly that. Isaiah 22:11 talks about the same water work.

WHAT IT SAYS

The diggers swung their picks toward each other. When only a short way was left, each team heard the other calling through a crack in the rock. Then they cut through, pick against pick, and the water flowed from the spring to the pool. The inscription says the rock over their heads was about 150 feet thick.

A WINDING PATH

The tunnel does not run straight. It snakes back and forth in an S shape, so it is much longer than a straight line from the spring to the pool. Experts still argue whether the diggers followed a crack in the rock or simply made wrong turns.

IN THE BIBLE TOO

Hezekiah stopped up the springs outside the city so the Assyrian army would find no water, 2 Chronicles 32:3 to 4. 2 Chronicles 32:30 says he brought the water down to the west side of the City of David, so the city had water during the siege.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The inscription never names Hezekiah. The link comes from the date, the place and the Bible's description, which all fit together.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · GOD SPEAKING

20 On that day I will summon My servant,
Eliakim son of Hilkiah. 21 I will clothe him
with your robe and tie your sash around
him. I will put your authority in his hand,
and he will be a father to the dwellers of
Jerusalem and to the house of Judah. 22 I
will place on his shoulder the key to the
house of David. What he opens no one
can shut, and what he shuts no one can
open. 23 I will drive him like a peg into a
firm place, and he will be a throne of glory
for the house of his father.
24 So they will hang on him all the glory of
his father's house: the descendants and
the offshoots—all the lesser vessels, from
bowls to every kind of jar.
25 In that day, declares Yahweh of Hosts,
the peg driven into a firm place will give
way; it will be sheared off and fall, and the
load upon it will be cut down."
Indeed, Yahweh has spoken.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE ROYAL STEWARD'S TOMB

ISAIAH 22:15 TO 19 · ISAIAH 36:3



The doorway inscription from the royal steward's tomb in Silwan, with the letters filled in white. British Museum, London. Photo by Mustafaa, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS
A stone panel carved over the door of a tomb cut into the rock in Silwan, the village across the valley from the City of David. It says the tomb belongs to a man who was over the house, the title of the king's palace manager.

HOW OLD IT IS
About 700 BC, judged by the shape of the Hebrew letters.

WHAT IT SAYS
This is the tomb of somebody yahu, who is over the house. There is no silver and no gold here, only his bones and the bones of his slave wife with him. Cursed be the man who opens this.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
The French scholar Charles Clermont Ganneau found it in 1870 and had it cut out and shipped to London. Nobody could read the old letters well until Nahman Avigad worked them out in 1953.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The British Museum in London.

WHY SOME SAY IT IS SHEBNA
Isaiah 22:15 to 16 scolds Shebna, who is over the house, for carving himself a fancy tomb in the rock. Many scholars think Shebna is a short form of Shebanyahu, which would end in yahu just like this broken name.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The first part of the name is broken off, so we cannot be sure it was Shebna. It is a likely match, not a certain one.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS
Tyre was the Wall Street of the ancient world, with ships and money everywhere. Isaiah tells the ships of Tarshish to wail, because their home port is gone. Tyre will be forgotten for seventy years and then go back to selling herself to the world, until finally even her profits are set apart for Yahweh.

THE BURDEN AGAINST TYRE // EZEKIEL 26:1–21

1 This is the burden against Tyre:

Wail, O ships of Tarshish,
for Tyre is laid waste,
without house or harbor.
Word has reached them
from the land of Cyprus.
2 Be silent, O dwellers of the coastland,
you merchants of Sidon,
whose traders have crossed the sea.
3 On the great waters
came the grain of Shihor;
the harvest of the Nile was the revenue of
Tyre;
she was the merchant of the nations.

IS 22:19 [PROPHECY] Shebna would lose his office and Eliakim would take it → IS 36:3; 2KI 18:18 p.1104
IS 22:22 [FORESHADOW] Given all authority → REV 3:7 p.2088
IS 22:22 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 3:7 p.2088

IS 23:1 [PROPHECY] Tyre would be laid waste → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar besieged Tyre for 13 years, about 586 to 573 BC. Alexander the Great took Tyre in 332 BC. Recorded by Josephus, Against Apion 1.21, and Arrian, Anabasis 2.24.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

4 Be ashamed, O Sidon, the stronghold of the sea,
for the sea has spoken:
"I have not been in labor
or given birth.
I have not raised young men
or brought up young women."
5 When the report reaches Egypt,
they will writhe in agony over the news of Tyre.

6 Cross over to Tarshish;
wail, O inhabitants of the coastland!
7 Is this your jubilant city,
whose origin is from antiquity,
whose feet have taken her
to settle far away?
8 Who planned this against Tyre,
the bestower of crowns,
whose traders are princes,
whose merchants are renowned on the earth?
9 Yahweh of Hosts planned it,
to defile all its glorious beauty,
to disgrace all the renowned of the earth.

10 Cultivate your land like the Nile, O Daughter of Tarshish;
there is no longer a harbor.
11 Yahweh has stretched out His hand over the sea;
He has made kingdoms tremble.
He has given a command
that the strongholds of Canaan be destroyed.
12 He said, "You shall rejoice no more,
O oppressed Virgin Daughter of Sidon.
Get up and cross over to Cyprus—
even there you will find no rest."

13 Look at the land of the Chaldeans—
a people now of no account.
The Assyrians destined it for the desert creatures;
they set up their siege towers and stripped its palaces.
They brought it to ruin.

14 Wail, O ships of Tarshish,
for your harbor has been destroyed!

15 At that time Tyre will be forgotten for seventy years—the span of a king's life.
But at the end of seventy years, it will happen to Tyre as in the song of the harlot:

16 "Take up your harp,
stroll through the city,
O forgotten harlot.
Make sweet melody,
sing many a song,
so you will be remembered."

17 And at the end of seventy years, Yahweh will restore Tyre. Then she will return to hire as a prostitute and sell herself to all the kingdoms on the face of the earth. 18 Yet her profits and wages will be set apart to Yahweh; they will not be stored or saved, for her profit will go to those who live before Yahweh, for abundant food and fine clothing.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Isaiah zooms out from single nations to the whole earth, and it is not pretty. The earth is broken, split open and staggering like a drunk. Priests and people, buyers and sellers all go down together. But at the edge of the world someone is singing, Glory to the Righteous One, and the chapter ends with Yahweh reigning on Mount Zion.

GOD'S JUDGMENT ON THE EARTH

1 Behold, Yahweh lays waste the earth and leaves it in ruins.
He will twist its surface
and scatter its inhabitants—
2 people and priest alike, servant and master,
maid and mistress, buyer and seller,
lender and borrower, creditor and debtor.
3 The earth will be utterly laid waste
and thoroughly plundered.
For Yahweh has spoken this word.
4 The earth mourns and withers;
the world languishes and fades;
the exalted of the earth waste away.
5 The earth is defiled by its people;
they have transgressed the laws;
they have overstepped the decrees
and broken the everlasting covenant.

IS 23:15 [PROPHECY] Tyre will be forgotten seventy years; after that she will return to her hire → ACTS 21:3-4 · MEDIUM p.1783

END TIMES PROPHECIES

6 Therefore a curse has consumed the earth,
and its inhabitants must bear the guilt;
the earth's dwellers have been burned,
and only a few survive.

7 The new wine dries up, the vine withers.
All the merrymakers now groan.
8 The joyful tambourines have ceased;
the noise of revelers has stopped;
the joyful harp is silent.
9 They no longer sing and drink wine;
strong drink is bitter to those who consume it.

10 The city of chaos is shattered;
every house is closed to entry.
11 In the streets they cry out for wine.
All joy turns to gloom;
rejoicing is exiled from the land.
12 The city is left in ruins;
its gate is reduced to rubble.
13 So will it be on the earth
and among the nations,
like a harvested olive tree,
like a gleaning after a grape harvest.

14 They raise their voices, they shout for joy;
from the west they proclaim the majesty of Yahweh.
15 Therefore glorify Yahweh in the east.
Extol the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel
in the islands of the sea.
16 From the ends of the earth we hear singing:
"Glory to the Righteous One."

But I said, "I am wasting away! I am wasting away!
Woe is me."
The treacherous betray;
the treacherous deal in treachery.
17 Terror and pit and snare await you,
O dweller of the earth.
18 Whoever flees the sound of panic
will fall into the pit,
and whoever climbs from the pit
will be caught in the snare.

For the windows of heaven are open,
and the foundations of the earth are shaken.
19 The earth is utterly broken apart,
the earth is split open,
the earth is shaken violently.
20 The earth staggers like a drunkard
and sways like a shack.
Earth's rebellion weighs it down,
and it falls, never to rise again.

21 In that day Yahweh will punish
the host of heaven above
and the kings of the earth below.
22 They will be gathered together
like prisoners in a pit.
They will be confined to a dungeon
and punished after many days.
23 The moon will be confounded
and the sun will be ashamed;
for Yahweh of Hosts will reign
on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem,
and before His elders with great glory.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS
A praise song, then the best dinner invitation ever. On His mountain God throws a feast for all peoples, with the finest wine and the best meat. Then He swallows up death forever and wipes away the tears from every face. Paul quotes this in 1 Corinthians 15:54. Moab, meanwhile, gets stomped into the mud.

PRAISE TO THE VICTORIOUS GOD // JEREMIAH 51:15–19

1 O Yahweh, You are my God!

I will exalt You;
I will praise Your name.
For You have worked wonders—
plans formed long ago—
in perfect faithfulness.
2 Indeed, You have made the city a heap of rubble,
the fortified town a ruin.
The fortress of strangers is a city no more;
it will never be rebuilt.
3 Therefore, a strong people will honor You.
The cities of ruthless nations will revere You.

- **IS 24:21 [PROPHECY]** The powers in heaven and the kings of the earth would be locked in a pit and punished after many days → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 24:23 [PROPHECY]** 'Yahweh of hosts will reign on Mount Zion' → STILL TO COME

END TIMES PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

4 For You have been a refuge for the poor,
a stronghold for the needy in distress,
a refuge from the storm,
a shade from the heat.
For the breath of the ruthless
is like rain against a wall,
5 like heat in a dry land.
You subdue the uproar of foreigners.
As the shade of a cloud cools the heat,
so the song of the ruthless is silenced.

6 On this mountain Yahweh of Hosts
will prepare a lavish banquet for all the peoples,
a feast of aged wine, of choice meat,
of finely aged wine.
7 On this mountain He will swallow up
the shroud that enfolds all peoples,
the sheet that covers all nations;
8 *He will swallow up death forever.*
The Lord Yahweh will wipe away the tears from every face
and remove the disgrace of His people
from the whole earth.
For Yahweh has spoken.
9 And in that day it will be said, "Surely this is our God;
we have waited for Him, and He has saved us.
This is Yahweh for whom we have waited.
Let us rejoice and be glad in His salvation."

10 For the hand of Yahweh
will rest on this mountain.
But Moab will be trampled in his place
as straw is trodden into the dung pile.
11 He will spread out his hands within it,
as a swimmer spreads his arms to swim.
His pride will be brought low,
despite the skill of his hands.
12 The high-walled fortress will be brought down,
cast to the ground, into the dust.

- **IS 25:6 [PROPHECY]** God would prepare a great feast for all peoples on His mountain → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 25:8 [PROPHECY]** Death swallowed up in victory → STILL TO COME
- **IS 25:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 15:54-55 p.1843
- **IS 25:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 7:16-17 p.2093
- **IS 25:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:4 p.2113

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

A song for the strong city. You will keep in perfect peace the one whose mind stays on You. The people admit that all their efforts gave birth to nothing but wind. Then one of the clearest resurrection promises in the Old Testament: Your dead will live, their bodies will rise. Awake and sing, you who dwell in the dust!

A SONG OF SALVATION

1 In that day this song will be sung in the land of Judah:

We have a strong city;
salvation is established as its walls and ramparts.
2 Open the gates so a righteous nation may enter—
one that remains faithful.
3 You will keep in perfect peace the steadfast of mind,
because he trusts in You.
4 Trust in Yahweh forever,
because Yahweh Yahweh is the Rock eternal.
5 For He has humbled those who dwell on high;
He lays the lofty city low.
He brings it down to the ground;
He casts it into the dust.
6 Feet trample it down—
the feet of the oppressed,
the steps of the poor.

7 The path of the righteous is level;
You clear a straight path for the upright.
8 Yes, we wait for You, O Yahweh;
we walk in the path of Your judgments.
Your name and renown
are the desire of our souls.
9 My soul longs for You in the night;
indeed, my spirit seeks You at dawn.
For when Your judgments come upon the earth,
the people of the world learn righteousness.
10 Though grace is shown to the wicked man,
he does not learn righteousness.
In the land of righteousness he acts unjustly

END TIMES PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

and fails to see the majesty of Yahweh.

11 O Yahweh, Your hand is upraised,
but they do not see it.
They will see Your zeal for Your people
and be put to shame.
The fire set for Your enemies
will consume them!
12 O Yahweh, You will establish peace for us.
For all that we have accomplished,
You have done for us.
13 O Yahweh our God, other lords besides You have ruled over us,
but Your name alone do we confess.

14 The dead will not live;
the departed spirits will not rise.
Therefore You have punished and destroyed them;
You have wiped out all memory of them.
15 You have enlarged the nation, O Yahweh;
You have enlarged the nation.
You have gained glory for Yourself;
You have extended all the borders of the land.

16 O Yahweh, they sought You in their distress;
when You disciplined them, they poured out a quiet prayer.
17 As a woman with child about to give birth
writhes and cries out in pain,
so were we in Your presence, O Yahweh.
18 We were with child; we writhed in pain;
but we gave birth to wind.
We have given no salvation to the earth,
nor brought any life into the world.

19 Your dead will live; their bodies will rise.
Awake and sing, you who dwell in the dust!
For your dew is like the dew of the morning,
and the earth will bring forth her dead.

20 *Go, my people, enter your rooms*
and shut your doors behind you.
Hide yourselves a little while
until the wrath has passed.
21 For behold, Yahweh is coming out of His dwelling
to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity.
The earth will reveal her bloodshed
and will no longer conceal her slain.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS
God takes His sword to Leviathan, the twisting sea dragon. Then He sings a new vineyard song, and this time He is not mad at the vineyard at all. He guards it day and night. Jacob takes root and fills the world with fruit. A great trumpet sounds, and the lost and scattered come home to worship in Jerusalem.

YAHWEH'S VINEYARD // JOHN 15:1–8

1 In that day Yahweh will take His sharp, great, and mighty sword, and bring judgment on Leviathan the fleeing serpent—Leviathan the coiling serpent—and He will slay the dragon of the sea. 2 In that day:

"Sing about a fruitful vineyard.
3 I, Yahweh, am its keeper;
I water it continually.
I guard it night and day
so no one can disturb it;
4 I am not angry.
If only thorns and briers confronted Me,
I would march and trample them,
I would burn them to the ground.
5 Or let them lay claim to My protection;
let them make peace with Me—
yes, let them make peace with Me."

6 In the days to come, Jacob will take root.
Israel will bud and blossom
and fill the whole world with fruit.

7 Has Yahweh struck Israel as He struck her oppressors?
Was she killed like those who slayed her?
8 By warfare and exile You contended with her

■ **IS 26:11 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 10:27 p.1991
■ **IS 26:19 [PROPHECY]** The dead would rise and live → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

■ **IS 26:20 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 10:37-38 p.1992
■ **IS 27:1 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh would slay Leviathan the serpent, the dragon of the sea → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

and removed her with a fierce wind,
as on the day the east wind blows.
9 *Therefore Jacob's guilt will be atoned for,*
and the full fruit of the removal of his sin
will be this:
When he makes all the altar stones
like crushed bits of chalk,
no Asherah poles or incense altars
will remain standing.
10 For the fortified city lies deserted—
a homestead abandoned, a wilderness forsaken.
There the calves graze, and there they lie down;
they strip its branches bare.
11 When its limbs are dry,
they are broken off.
Women come and use them for kindling;
for this is a people without understanding.
Therefore their Maker has no compassion on them,
and their Creator shows them no favor.
12 In that day Yahweh will thresh from the flowing Euphrates to the Wadi of Egypt, and you, O Israelites, will be gathered one by one. 13 And in that day a great ram's horn will sound, and those who were perishing in Assyria will come forth with those who were exiles in Egypt. And they will worship Yahweh on the holy mountain in Jerusalem.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

Ephraim's leaders are so drunk their tables are covered in vomit, and they mock Isaiah like he is teaching kindergarten: line on line, a little here, a little there. So God will teach them through foreign invaders. Jerusalem's leaders brag about their deal with death, and God lays a tested cornerstone in Zion instead. Whoever believes will not panic.

THE CAPTIVITY OF EPHRAIM

1 Woe to the majestic crown of Ephraim's drunkards,
to the fading flower of his glorious splendor,
set on the summit above the fertile valley,
the pride of those overcome by wine.
2 Behold, the Lord has one
who is strong and mighty.
Like a hailstorm or destructive tempest,
like a driving rain or flooding downpour,
he will smash that crown to the ground.
3 The majestic crown of Ephraim's drunkards
will be trampled underfoot.
4 The fading flower of his beautiful splendor,
set on the summit above the fertile valley,
will be like a ripe fig before the summer harvest:
Whoever sees it will take it in his hand and swallow it.

5 On that day Yahweh of Hosts will be a crown of glory,
a diadem of splendor to the remnant of His people,
6 a spirit of justice to him who sits in judgment,
and a strength to those who repel the onslaught at the gate.

7 These also stagger from wine
and stumble from strong drink:
Priests and prophets reel from strong drink
and are befuddled by wine.
They stumble because of strong drink,
muddled in their visions and stumbling in their judgments.
8 For all their tables are covered with vomit;
there is not a place without filth.

9 Whom is He trying to teach?
To whom is He explaining His message?
To infants just weaned from milk?
To babies removed from the breast?
10 For they hear:
"Order on order, order on order,
line on line, line on line;
a little here, a little there."

IS 27:9 [DEMONIC] Altars crushed like chalk and no Asherah poles left
IS 27:9 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:26-27 p.1814
IS 27:13 [PROPHECY] 'The great trumpet shall be blown' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

IS 28:5 [PROPHECY] In that day Yahweh would be a crown of glory to His remnant → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

11 *Indeed, with mocking lips and foreign*
tongues,
He will speak to this people 12 *to whom He*
has said:
"This is the place of rest, let the weary rest;
this is the place of repose."
But they would not listen.

13 Then the word of Yahweh to them will
become:
"Order on order, order on order,
line on line, line on line;
a little here, a little there,"
so that they will go stumbling backward
and will be injured, ensnared, and cap-
tured.

A CORNERSTONE IN ZION // 1 CORINTHIANS 3:10–15; EPHESIANS 2:19–22; 1 PETER 2:1–8

14 Therefore hear the word of Yahweh, O
scoffers
who rule this people in Jerusalem.
15 For you said, "We have made a covenant
with death;
we have fashioned an agreement with
Sheol.
When the overwhelming scourge passes
through
it will not touch us,
because we have made lies our refuge
and falsehood our hiding place."

16 *So this is what the Lord Yahweh says:*

"See, I lay a stone in Zion,
a tested stone,
a precious cornerstone, a sure foundation;
the one who believes will never be shaken.
17 I will make justice the measuring line
and righteousness the level.
Hail will sweep away your refuge of lies,
and water will flood your hiding place.
18 Your covenant with death will be dis-
solved,
and your agreement with Sheol will not
stand.
When the overwhelming scourge passes
through,
you will be trampled by it.
19 As often as it passes through,
it will carry you away;
it will sweep through morning after morn-
ing,
by day and by night."

The understanding of this message
will bring sheer terror.
20 Indeed, the bed is too short to stretch
out on,
and the blanket too small to wrap
around you.
21 For Yahweh will rise up as at Mount Per-
azim.
He will rouse Himself as in the Valley of
Gibeon,
to do His work, His strange work,
and to perform His task, His disturbing
task.

22 So now, do not mock,
or your shackles will become heavier.
Indeed, I have heard from the Lord Yah-
weh of Hosts
a decree of destruction against the
whole land.

LISTEN AND HEAR

23 Listen and hear my voice.
Pay attention and hear what I say.
24 Does the plowman plow for planting
every day?
Does he continuously loosen and har-
row the soil?
25 When he has leveled its surface,
does he not sow caraway and scatter
cumin?
He plants wheat in rows and barley in
plots,
and rye within its border.

26 For his God instructs
and teaches him properly.
27 Surely caraway is not threshed with a
sledge,
and the wheel of a cart is not rolled over
the cumin.
But caraway is beaten out with a stick,

IS 28:11 [PROPHECY] God would speak to His people through foreign tongues → 1CO 14:21-22 · MEDIUM p.1841
IS 28:11 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 14:21 p.1841
IS 28:16 [PROPHECY] The precious cornerstone of the Messianic kingdom → ACTS 4:11-12; 1PE 2:6 p.1747
IS 28:16 [PROPHECY] The sure foundation → 1CO 3:11; MT 16:18 p.1826
IS 28:16 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:33 p.1812
IS 28:16 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:11 p.1812
IS 28:16 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:6 p.2013

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

and cumin with a rod.
28 Grain for bread must be ground,
but it is not endlessly threshed.
Though the wheels of the cart roll over it,
the horses do not crush it.
29 This also comes from Yahweh of Hosts,
who is wonderful in counsel
and excellent in wisdom.

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

Ariel, a nickname for Jerusalem, gets surrounded, and then its enemies vanish like a dream. The people go through the motions: they honor God with their lips, but their hearts are far away. Jesus quotes this to the religious leaders in Mark 7. Still, a day is coming when the deaf hear and the blind see.

WOE TO DAVID'S CITY // LUKE 19:41–44

1 Woe to you, O Ariel,
the city of Ariel where David camped!
Year upon year
let your festivals recur.
2 And I will constrain Ariel,
and there will be mourning and lamentation;
she will be like an altar hearth before Me.
3 I will camp in a circle around you;
I will besiege you with towers
and set up siege works against you.
4 You will be brought low,
you will speak from the ground,
and out of the dust
your words will be muffled.
Your voice will be like a spirit from the ground;
your speech will whisper out of the dust.

5 But your many foes will be like fine dust,
the multitude of the ruthless like blowing chaff.
Then suddenly, in an instant,
6 you will be visited by Yahweh of Hosts
with thunder and earthquake and loud noise,
with windstorm and tempest and consuming flame of fire.
7 All the many nations
going out to battle against Ariel—
even all who war against her,
laying siege and attacking her—
will be like a dream,
like a vision in the night,
8 as when a hungry man dreams he is eating,
then awakens still hungry;
as when a thirsty man dreams he is drinking,
then awakens faint and parched.
So will it be for all the many nations
who go to battle against Mount Zion.

9 Stop and be astonished;
blind yourselves and be sightless;
be drunk, but not with wine;
stagger, but not from strong drink.
10 *For Yahweh has poured out on you*
a spirit of deep sleep.
He has shut your eyes, O prophets;
He has covered your heads, O seers.

11 And the entire vision will be to you like the words sealed in a scroll. If it is handed to someone to read, he will say, "I cannot, because it is sealed." 12 Or if the scroll is handed to one unable to read, he will say, "I cannot read."

13 *Therefore the Lord said:*

"These people draw near to Me with their mouths
and honor Me with their lips,
but their hearts are far from Me.
Their worship of Me is but rules taught by men.
14 *Therefore I will again confound these people with wonder upon wonder.*
The wisdom of the wise will vanish,
and the intelligence of the intelligent will be hidden."

15 Woe to those who dig deep
to hide their plans from Yahweh.
In darkness they do their works and say,

- **IS 29:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:8 p.1813
- **IS 29:13 [PROPHECY]** He would expose hypocritical obedience to God's Word → MT 15:7-9 p.1572
- **IS 29:13 [HEART]** These people honor Me with their lips, but their hearts are far from Me.
- **IS 29:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 15:8-9 p.1572
- **IS 29:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 7:6-7 p.1621
- **IS 29:14 [PROPHECY]** The wisdom of the wise would be confounded → 1CO 1:18-25 · MEDIUM p.1824
- **IS 29:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 1:19 p.1824

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

"Who sees us, and who will know?"
16 *You have turned things upside down,*
as if the potter were regarded as clay.
Shall what is formed say to him who formed it,
"He did not make me"?
Can the pottery say of the potter,
"He has no understanding"?

SANCTIFICATION FOR THE GODLY

17 In a very short time,
will not Lebanon become an orchard,
and the orchard seem like a forest?
18 On that day the deaf will hear the words of the scroll,
and out of the deep darkness the eyes of the blind will see.
19 The humble will increase their joy in Yahweh,
and the poor among men will rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

20 For the ruthless will vanish,
the mockers will disappear,
and all who look for evil
will be cut down—
21 those who indict a man with a word,
who ensnare the mediator at the gate,
and who with false charges
deprive the innocent of justice.

22 Therefore Yahweh who redeemed Abraham says of the house of Jacob:

"No longer will Jacob be ashamed
and no more will his face grow pale.
23 For when he sees his children around him,
the work of My hands,
they will honor My name,
they will sanctify the Holy One of Jacob,
and they will stand in awe
of the God of Israel.
24 Then the wayward in spirit will come to understanding,
and those who grumble will accept instruction."

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

Judah sends donkeys loaded with treasure down to Egypt to buy protection. God nicknames Egypt Rahab Who Sits Still, like a couch potato. The people tell the prophets, Stop preaching the truth. Yet God waits to be gracious. You will hear a voice behind you saying, This is the way, walk in it.

THE WORTHLESS TREATY WITH EGYPT

1 "Woe to the rebellious children,"
declares Yahweh,
"to those who carry out a plan that is not Mine,
who form an alliance, but against My will,
heaping up sin upon sin.
2 They set out to go down to Egypt
without asking My advice,
to seek shelter under Pharaoh's protection
and take refuge in Egypt's shade.
3 But Pharaoh's protection will become your shame,
and the refuge of Egypt's shade your disgrace.
4 For though their princes are at Zoan
and their envoys have arrived in Hanes,
5 everyone will be put to shame
because of a people useless to them.
They bring neither help nor benefit,
but only shame and disgrace."

6 This is the burden against the beasts of the Negev:

Through a land of hardship and distress,
of lioness and lion,
of viper and flying serpent,
they carry their wealth on the backs of donkeys
and their treasures on the humps of camels,
to a people of no profit to them.
7 Egypt's help is futile and empty;
therefore I have called her
Rahab Who Sits Still.

8 Go now, write it on a tablet in their presence
and inscribe it on a scroll;
it will be for the days to come,
a witness forever and ever.

IS 29:16 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:20 p.1811
IS 29:18 [PROPHECY] The deaf would hear and the blind would see → MT 11:5; MK 7:37 · MEDIUM p.1565

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

9 These are rebellious people, deceitful
children,
children unwilling to obey Yahweh's instruction.
10 They say to the seers,
"Stop seeing visions!"
and to the prophets,
"Do not prophesy to us the truth!
Speak to us pleasant words;
prophesy illusions.
11 Get out of the way; turn off the road.
Rid us of the Holy One of Israel!"

12 Therefore this is what the Holy One of Israel says:

"Because you have rejected this message,
trusting in oppression and relying on deceit,
13 this iniquity of yours is like a breach
about to fail,
a bulge in a high wall,
whose collapse will come suddenly—
in an instant!
14 It will break in pieces like a potter's jar,
shattered so that no fragment can be found.
Not a shard will be found in the dust
large enough to scoop the coals from a hearth
or to skim the water from a cistern."

15 For the Lord Yahweh, the Holy One of Israel, has said:

"By repentance and rest
you would be saved;
your strength would lie in quiet confidence—
but you were not willing."

16 "No," you say, "we will flee on horses."
Therefore you will flee!
"We will ride swift horses,"
but your pursuers will be faster.
17 A thousand will flee at the threat of one;
at the threat of five you will all flee,
until you are left alone like a pole on a mountaintop,
like a banner on a hill.

GOD WILL BE GRACIOUS

18 Therefore Yahweh longs to be gracious to you;
therefore He rises to show you compassion,
for Yahweh is a just God.
Blessed are all who wait for Him.

19 O people in Zion who dwell in Jerusalem, you will weep no more. He will surely be gracious when you cry for help; when He hears, He will answer you. 20 The Lord will give you the bread of adversity and the water of affliction, but your Teacher will no longer hide Himself—with your own eyes you will see Him.

21 And whether you turn to the right or to the left, your ears will hear this command behind you: "This is the way. Walk in it." 22 So you will desecrate your silver-plated idols and your gold-plated images. You will throw them away like menstrual cloths, saying to them, "Be gone!"

23 Then He will send rain for the seed that you have sown in the ground, and the food that comes from your land will be rich and plentiful. On that day your cattle will graze in open pastures. 24 The oxen and donkeys that work the ground will eat salted fodder, winnowed with shovel and pitchfork.

25 And from every high mountain and every raised hill, streams of water will flow in the day of great slaughter, when the towers fall. 26 The light of the moon will be as bright as the sun, and the light of the sun will be seven times brighter—like the light of seven days—on the day that Yahweh binds up the brokenness of His people and heals the wounds He has inflicted.

27 Behold, the Name of Yahweh comes from afar,
with burning anger and dense smoke.
His lips are full of fury,
and His tongue is like a consuming fire.
28 His breath is like a rushing torrent
that rises to the neck.
He comes to sift the nations in a sieve of destruction;

IS 30:22 [DEMONIC] You will throw away your gold plated idols

IS 30:26 [PROPHECY] 'The light of the moon as the light of the sun' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

He bridles the jaws of the peoples to
lead them astray.

29 You will sing
as on the night of a holy festival,
and your heart will rejoice
like one who walks to the music of a
flute,
going up to the mountain of Yahweh,
to the Rock of Israel.
30 And Yahweh will cause His majestic
voice to be heard
and His mighty arm to be revealed,
striking in angry wrath with a flame of
consuming fire,
and with cloudburst, storm, and hail-
stones.
31 For Assyria will be shattered at the voice
of Yahweh;
He will strike them with His scepter.
32 And with every stroke of the rod of pun-
ishment
that Yahweh brings down on them,
the tambourines and lyres will sound
as He battles with weapons brandished.
33 For Topheth has long been prepared;
it has been made ready for the king.
Its funeral pyre is deep and wide,
with plenty of fire and wood.
The breath of Yahweh, like a torrent of
burning sulfur,
sets it ablaze.

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

Woe to those who trust horses and chariots instead of the Holy One. The Egyptians are only men, and their horses are flesh. God will protect Jerusalem like a lion over its prey and like birds hovering over their nest. Assyria will fall, but not by any human sword.

WOE TO THOSE WHO RELY ON EGYPT

1 Woe to those who go down to Egypt for
help,
who rely on horses,
who trust in their abundance of chariots
and in their multitude of horsemen.
They do not look to the Holy One of Israel;
they do not seek Yahweh.
2 Yet He too is wise and brings disaster;
He does not call back His words.
He will rise up against the house of the
wicked
and against the allies of evildoers.
3 But the Egyptians are men, not God;
their horses are flesh, not spirit.
When Yahweh stretches out His hand,
the helper will stumble,
and the one he helps will fall;
both will perish together.

4 For this is what Yahweh has said to me:

"Like a lion roaring
or a young lion over its prey—
and though a band of shepherds is called
out against it,
it is not terrified by their shouting
or subdued by their clamor—
so Yahweh of Hosts will come down
to do battle on Mount Zion and its
heights.
5 Like birds hovering overhead,
so Yahweh of Hosts will protect
Jerusalem.
He will shield it and deliver it;
He will pass over it and preserve it."

6 Return to the One against whom you
have so blatantly rebelled, O children of
Israel. 7 For on that day, every one of you
will reject the idols of silver and gold that
your own hands have sinfully made.

8 "Then Assyria will fall,
but not by the sword of man;
a sword will devour them,
but not one made by mortals.
They will flee before the sword,
and their young men will be put to
forced labor.
9 Their rock will pass away for fear,
and their princes will panic at the sight
of the battle standard,"
declares Yahweh, whose fire is in Zion,
whose furnace is in Jerusalem.

IS 31:7 [DEMONIC] Everyone will reject their idols of silver and gold

IS 31:8 [PROPHECY] Assyria would fall, but not by the sword of man → IS 37:36; 2KI 19:35 p.1107

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

A King will reign in righteousness, and leaders will be like shade in a desert. Fools will finally stop being called noble. Then Isaiah scolds the comfortable women of Jerusalem: in a little more than a year the harvest will fail. It stays bad until the Spirit is poured out from on high, and then the desert turns into an orchard.

A RIGHTEOUS KING

1 Behold, a king will reign in righteousness,
and princes will rule with justice.
2 Each will be like a shelter from the wind,
a refuge from the storm,
like streams of water in a dry land,
like the shadow of a great rock in an arid land.
3 Then the eyes of those who see will no longer be closed,
and the ears of those who hear will listen.
4 The mind of the rash will know and understand,
and the stammering tongue will speak clearly and fluently.

5 No longer will a fool be called noble,
nor a scoundrel be respected.
6 For a fool speaks foolishness;
his mind plots iniquity.
He practices ungodliness
and speaks falsely about Yahweh;
he leaves the hungry empty
and deprives the thirsty of drink.
7 The weapons of the scoundrel are destructive;
he hatches plots to destroy the poor with lies,
even when the plea of the needy is just.
8 But a noble man makes honorable plans;
he stands up for worthy causes.

THE WOMEN OF JERUSALEM

9 Stand up, you complacent women;
listen to me.
Give ear to my word,
you overconfident daughters.
10 In a little more than a year you will tremble,
O secure ones.
For the grape harvest will fail
and the fruit harvest will not arrive.
11 Shudder, you ladies of leisure;
tremble, you daughters of complacency.
Strip yourselves bare
and put sackcloth around your waists.
12 Beat your breasts for the pleasant fields,
for the fruitful vines,
13 and for the land of my people,
overgrown with thorns and briers—
even for every house of merriment
in this city of revelry.
14 For the palace will be forsaken,
the busy city abandoned.
The hill and the watchtower will become caves forever—
the delight of wild donkeys
and a pasture for flocks—
15 until the Spirit is poured out
upon us from on high.
Then the desert will be an orchard,
and the orchard will seem like a forest.
16 Then justice will inhabit the wilderness,
and righteousness will dwell in the fertile field.
17 The work of righteousness will be peace;
the service of righteousness will be quiet confidence forever.
18 Then my people will dwell in a peaceful place,
in safe and secure places of rest.
19 But hail will level the forest,
and the city will sink to the depths.
20 Blessed are those who sow beside abundant waters,
who let the ox and donkey range freely.

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

The destroyer gets destroyed. The sinners in Zion panic: Who can live with a consuming fire? The answer is the person who walks right and refuses bribes. Your eyes will see the King in His beauty. Yahweh is our Judge, our Lawgiver and our King, and in that city nobody will say, I am sick.

IS 32:1 [PROPHECY] A king would reign in righteousness → HEB 1:8-9; REV 19:11 · MEDIUM p.1978
IS 32:2 [PROPHECY] A man who would be a hiding place from the storm → MT 23:37 · MEDIUM p.1586

GOD SPEAKING

YAHWEH IS EXALTED

1 Woe to you, O destroyer never destroyed,
O traitor never betrayed!
When you have finished destroying,
you will be destroyed.
When you have finished betraying,
you will be betrayed.

2 O Yahweh, be gracious to us!
We wait for You.
Be our strength every morning
and our salvation in time of trouble.
3 The peoples flee the thunder of Your voice;
the nations scatter when You rise.
4 Your spoil, O nations, is gathered as by locusts;
like a swarm of locusts men sweep over it.

5 Yahweh is exalted, for He dwells on high;
He has filled Zion with justice and righteousness.
6 He will be the sure foundation for your times,
a storehouse of salvation, wisdom, and knowledge.
The fear of Yahweh is Zion's treasure.

7 Behold, their valiant ones cry aloud in the streets;
the envoys of peace weep bitterly.
8 The highways are deserted;
travel has ceased.
The treaty has been broken,
the witnesses are despised,
and human life is disregarded.
9 The land mourns and languishes;
Lebanon is ashamed and decayed.
Sharon is like a desert;
Bashan and Carmel shake off their leaves.

10 "Now I will arise," says Yahweh.
"Now I will lift Myself up. Now I will be exalted.
11 You conceive chaff; you give birth to stubble.
Your breath is a fire that will consume you.
12 The peoples will be burned to ashes,
like thorns cut down and set ablaze.
13 You who are far off, hear what I have done;
you who are near, acknowledge My might."

14 The sinners in Zion are afraid;
trembling grips the ungodly:
"Who of us can dwell with a consuming fire?
Who of us can dwell with everlasting flames?"
15 He who walks righteously
and speaks with sincerity,
who refuses gain from extortion,
whose hand never takes a bribe,
who stops his ears against murderous plots
and shuts his eyes tightly against evil—
16 he will dwell on the heights;
the mountain fortress will be his refuge;
his food will be provided
and his water assured.

17 Your eyes will see the King in His beauty
and behold a land that stretches afar.
18 Your mind will ponder the former terror:
"Where is he who tallies? Where is he who weighs?
Where is he who counts the towers?"
19 You will no longer see the insolent,
a people whose speech is unintelligible,
who stammer in a language you cannot understand.

20 Look upon Zion,
the city of our appointed feasts.
Your eyes will see Jerusalem,
a peaceful pasture, a tent that does not wander;
its tent pegs will not be pulled up,
nor will any of its cords be broken.
21 But there the Majestic One, our Yahweh,
will be for us a place of rivers and wide canals,
where no galley with oars will row,
and no majestic vessel will pass.

22 For Yahweh is our Judge,
Yahweh is our lawgiver,
Yahweh is our King.
It is He who will save us.

■ **IS 33:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 4:12 p.2006

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | END TIMES PROPHECIES | GOD SPEAKING

23 Your ropes are slack;
they cannot secure the mast or spread the sail.
Then an abundance of spoils will be divided,
and even the lame will carry off plunder.
24 And no resident of Zion will say, "I am sick."
The people who dwell there
will be forgiven of iniquity.

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

A heavy chapter. God's anger falls on all the nations, the sky rolls up like a scroll, and the stars fall like leaves. Edom becomes a land of burning tar, owned by owls and jackals. Then Isaiah says, Search the scroll of Yahweh and see for yourself that not one of these details will go missing.

JUDGMENT ON THE NATIONS

1 Come near, O nations, to listen;
pay attention, O peoples.
Let the earth hear, and all that fills it,
the world and all that springs from it.
2 Yahweh is angry with all the nations
and furious with all their armies.
He will devote them to destruction;
He will give them over to slaughter.
3 Their slain will be left unburied,
and the stench of their corpses will rise;
the mountains will flow with their blood.
4 All the stars of heaven will be dissolved.
The skies will be rolled up like a scroll,
and all their stars will fall
like withered leaves from the vine,
like foliage from the fig tree.

JUDGMENT ON EDOM // ISAIAH 21:11–12

5 When My sword has drunk its fill in the heavens,
then it will come down upon Edom,
upon the people I have devoted to destruction.
6 The sword of Yahweh is bathed in blood.
It drips with fat—
with the blood of lambs and goats,
with the fat of the kidneys of rams.
For Yahweh has a sacrifice in Bozrah,
a great slaughter in the land of Edom.
7 And the wild oxen will fall with them,
the young bulls with the strong ones.
Their land will be drenched with blood,
and their soil will be soaked with fat.

8 For Yahweh has a day of vengeance,
a year of recompense for the cause of Zion.
9 Edom's streams will be turned to tar,
and her soil to sulfur;
her land will become a blazing pitch.
10 It will not be quenched—day or night.
Its smoke will ascend forever.
From generation to generation it will lie desolate;
no one will ever again pass through it.
11 The desert owl and screech owl will possess it,
and the great owl and raven will dwell in it.

Yahweh will stretch out over Edom
a measuring line of chaos
and a plumb line of destruction.
12 No nobles will be left to proclaim a king,
and all her princes will come to nothing.
13 Her towers will be overgrown with thorns,
her fortresses with thistles and briers.
She will become a haunt for jackals,
an abode for ostriches.
14 The desert creatures will meet with hyenas,
and one wild goat will call to another.
There the night creature will settle
and find her place of repose.
15 There the owl will make her nest;
she will lay and hatch her eggs
and gather her brood under her shadow.
Even there the birds of prey will gather,
each with its mate.
16 Search and read the scroll of Yahweh:

Not one of these will go missing,

IS 34:4 [PROPHECY] The sky would roll up like a scroll and the stars would fall → STILL TO COME
IS 34:4 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:29 p.1587
IS 34:4 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → MK 13:24-25 p.1631
IS 34:4 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:12 p.2034
IS 34:4 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 6:14 p.2092

IS 34:10 [PROPHECY] Edom would lie desolate from generation to generation → HISTORY: Babylon's king Nabonidus struck Edom about 553 BC. About 125 BC the Jewish ruler John Hyrcanus conquered the Edomites and made them part of Judea. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 13.9.1.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | ARCHAEOLOGY
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

not one will lack her mate,
because He has ordered it by His mouth,
and He will gather them by His Spirit.
17 He has allotted their portion;
His hand has distributed it by measure.
They will possess it forever;
they will dwell in it from generation to generation.

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS
The desert bursts into bloom like a rose. Isaiah tells everybody to strengthen weak knees, because God is coming to save. Then the blind see, the deaf hear, the lame leap like deer and the mute shout for joy. Jesus pointed to this list when John the Baptist asked if He was the One.

THE GLORY OF ZION

1 The wilderness and the dry land will be glad;
the desert will rejoice and blossom like a rose.
2 It will bloom profusely
and rejoice with joy and singing.
The glory of Lebanon will be given to it,
the splendor of Carmel and Sharon.
They will see the glory of Yahweh,
the splendor of our God.

3 *Strengthen the limp hands*
and steady the feeble knees!
4 Say to those with anxious hearts:
"Be strong, do not fear!
Behold, your God will come with vengeance.
With divine retribution He will come to save you."

5 Then the eyes of the blind will be opened
and the ears of the deaf unstopped.
6 Then the lame will leap like a deer
and the mute tongue will shout for joy.
For waters will gush forth in the wilderness,
and streams in the desert.
7 The parched ground will become a pool,
the thirsty land springs of water.
In the haunt where jackals once lay,
there will be grass and reeds and papyrus.

8 And there will be a highway
called the Way of Holiness.
The unclean will not travel it—
only those who walk in the Way—
and fools will not stray onto it.
9 No lion will be there,
and no vicious beast will go up on it.
Such will not be found there,
but the redeemed will walk upon it.
10 So the redeemed of Yahweh will return
and enter Zion with singing,
crowned with everlasting joy.
Gladness and joy will overtake them,
and sorrow and sighing will flee.

- **IS 35:1 [PROPHECY]** 'The wilderness shall blossom as the rose' → STILL TO COME
- **IS 35:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:12-13 p.1994
- **IS 35:4 [PROPHECY]** He would come and save His people → MT 1:21 p.1550
- **IS 35:5 [PROPHECY]** A ministry of miracles → MT 11:2-6 p.1565
- **IS 35:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 11:5 p.1565
- **IS 35:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 7:22 p.1661

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS
History time. In 701 BC Sennacherib of Assyria has taken every walled town in Judah, and his field commander, the Rabshakeh, shows up outside Jerusalem. He trash talks Hezekiah in Hebrew so the whole wall can hear, mocks Egypt as a broken reed and says no god has ever stopped Assyria. The people stay silent, because the king told them to.

SENNACHERIB THREATENS JERUSALEM // 2 KINGS 18:13–37; 2 CHRONICLES 32:1–8

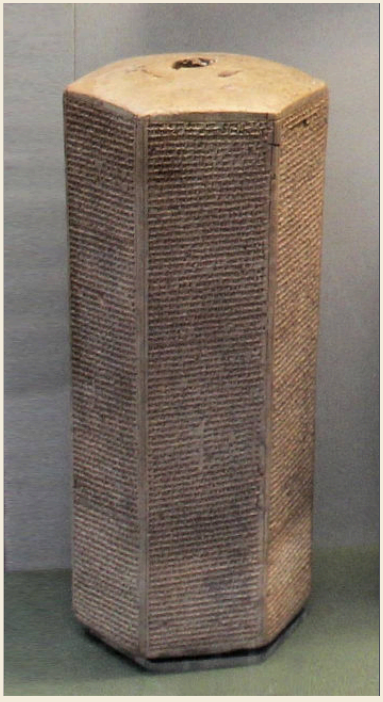
1 In the fourteenth year of Hezekiah's reign, Sennacherib king of Assyria attacked and captured all the fortified cities of Judah. 2 And the king of Assyria sent the Rabshakeh, with a great army, from Lachish to King Hezekiah at Jerusalem. And he stopped by the aqueduct of the upper pool, on the road to the Launderer's Field.

- **IS 35:10 [PROPHECY]** 'The ransomed of Yahweh shall return with everlasting joy' → STILL TO COME
- **IS 35:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:4 p.2113
- **IS 36:1 [FULFILLS]** Samaria's wound would reach Judah and come to the gate of Jerusalem ← MIC 1:9 · MEDIUM p.1432
- **IS 36:1 [FIELD NOTES]** Sennacherib's own record of this war survives. See the Sennacherib's Prism Field Notes page, p.1103.
- **IS 36:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Lachish Reliefs of Sennacherib
- **IS 36:2 [FIELD NOTES]** Sennacherib's own palace walls show his attack on Lachish. See The Lachish Reliefs Field Notes page in Micah, p.1433.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

SENNACHERIB'S PRISM

ISAIAH 36:1 · ISAIAH 37:36 TO 37 · 2 KINGS 18:13 TO 16



The Taylor Prism, Sennacherib's own record of his war on Judah. British Museum, London.

WHAT IT IS

A six sided clay prism about 15 inches tall, covered with tiny Assyrian writing. It is King Sennacherib's own record of his wars, including his attack on Judah in 701 BC.

HOW OLD IT IS

The Taylor Prism was made about 691 BC, ten years after the attack. Other copies of the same account were made even closer to the war.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

A British officer named Colonel Robert Taylor got it at Nineveh, in modern Iraq, in 1830. Two more copies exist, one in Chicago and one in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT SAYS

Sennacherib brags that he took 46 walled cities of Judah and carried off 200,150 people. Then he says he shut Hezekiah up in Jerusalem like a bird in a cage. Hezekiah sent him about a ton of gold, the same amount 2 Kings 18:14 gives.

THE PART HE LEFT OUT

He never says he took Jerusalem. For a king who bragged about everything, that silence is loud. Isaiah 37:36 tells why: the angel of Yahweh struck down his army, and he went home to Nineveh.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Taylor Prism is in the British Museum in London. The other copies are at the Oriental Institute in Chicago and the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

HEZEKIAH'S GIFTS

The prism lists what Hezekiah sent to Nineveh: gold, silver, precious stones, beds and chairs set with ivory, and even his own daughters and palace women. 2 Kings 18:15 to 16 says Hezekiah stripped the gold from the temple doors to pay.

HOW HE DIED

Isaiah 37:38 says two of his sons killed him while he worshiped in the temple of his god Nisroch. A Babylonian record also says his son killed him, in 681 BC, twenty years after he left Judah.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Assyrian kings never wrote down their defeats, so the prism does not mention the 185,000. It confirms the siege and that Jerusalem did not fall.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

3 Then Eliakim son of Hilkiah the palace
administrator, Shebna the scribe, and
Joah son of Asaph the recorder, went out
to him.

4 The Rabshakeh said to them, "Tell
Hezekiah that this is what the great king,
the king of Assyria, says: What is the ba-
sis of this confidence of yours? 5 You
claim to have a strategy and strength for
war, but these are empty words. In whom
are you now trusting, that you have re-
belled against me?

6 Look now, you are trusting in Egypt, that
splintered reed of a staff that will pierce
the hand of anyone who leans on it. Such
is Pharaoh king of Egypt to all who trust in
him. 7 But if you say to me, 'We trust in
Yahweh our God,' is He not the One
whose high places and altars Hezekiah
has removed, saying to Judah and
Jerusalem, 'You must worship before this
altar'?

8 Now, therefore, make a bargain with my
master, the king of Assyria. I will give you
two thousand horses—if you can put rid-
ers on them! 9 For how can you repel a
single officer among the least of my
master's servants when you depend on
Egypt for chariots and horsemen? 10 So
now, was it apart from Yahweh that I have
come up against this land to destroy it?
Yahweh Himself said to me, 'Go up
against this land and destroy it.'"

11 Then Eliakim, Shebna, and Joah said to
the Rabshakeh, "Please speak to your
servants in Aramaic, since we understand
it. Do not speak to us in Hebrew in the
hearing of the people on the wall."

12 But the Rabshakeh replied, "Has my
master sent me to speak these words only
to you and your master, and not to the
men sitting on the wall, who are destined
with you to eat their own dung and drink
their own urine?"

13 Then the Rabshakeh stood and called
out loudly in Hebrew: "Hear the words of
the great king, the king of Assyria! 14 This
is what the king says: Do not let Hezekiah
deceive you, for he cannot deliver you. 15
Do not let Hezekiah persuade you to trust
in Yahweh when he says, 'Yahweh will
surely deliver us; this city will not be given
into the hand of the king of Assyria.'

16 Do not listen to Hezekiah, for this is what
the king of Assyria says: Make peace with
me and come out to me. Then every one
of you will eat from his own vine and his
own fig tree, and drink water from his own
cistern, 17 until I come and take you away
to a land like your own—a land of grain
and new wine, a land of bread and vine-
yards.

18 Do not let Hezekiah mislead you when
he says, 'Yahweh will deliver us.' Has the
god of any nation ever delivered his land
from the hand of the king of Assyria? 19
Where are the gods of Hamath and
Arpad? Where are the gods of Sephar-
vaim? Have they delivered Samaria from
my hand? 20 Who among all the gods of
these lands has delivered his land from
my hand? How then can Yahweh deliver
Jerusalem from my hand?"

21 But the people remained silent and did
not answer a word, for Hezekiah had
commanded, "Do not answer him."

22 Then Hilkiah's son Eliakim the palace
administrator, Shebna the scribe, and
Asaph's son Joah the recorder came to
Hezekiah with their clothes torn, and they
relayed to him the words of the Rab-
shakeh.

37

CHAPTER 37 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah tears his clothes, goes to the temple and spreads Sennacherib's threatening letter out before God. Isaiah sends back God's answer: Sennacherib will go home the way he came. That night the angel of Yahweh strikes 185,000 Assyrians. Sennacherib goes home, and years later his own sons kill him while he is praying to his god.

ISAIAH'S MESSAGE OF DELIVERANCE // 2 KINGS 19:1–7

1 On hearing this report, King Hezekiah
tore his clothes, put on sackcloth, and en-
tered the house of Yahweh. 2 And he sent

IS 36:3 [FULFILLS] Shebna would lose his office and Eliakim would take it ← IS 22:19-20 p.1086

IS 36:18 [DEMONIC] Assyria mocks God by naming the gods it defeated

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Eliakim the palace administrator, Shebna the scribe, and the leading priests, all wearing sackcloth, to the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz 3 to tell him, "This is what Hezekiah says: Today is a day of distress, rebuke, and disgrace; for children have come to the point of birth, but there is no strength to deliver them. 4 Perhaps Yahweh your God will hear the words of the Rabshakeh, whom his master the king of Assyria has sent to defy the living God, and He will rebuke him for the words that Yahweh your God has heard. Therefore lift up a prayer for the remnant that still survives."

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

KING HEZEKIAH'S SEAL

ISAIAH 37:1 · ISAIAH 38:1 · 2 KINGS 18:1



The clay seal impression of King Hezekiah, with the winged sun in the middle. Photo Ouria Tadmor. Copyright Eilat Mazar.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny lump of clay, about half an inch across, stamped with the king's own seal. It reads, Belonging to Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah. In the middle is a sun with two wings, a royal symbol of protection, with an ankh on each side, the Egyptian sign for life.

HOW OLD IT IS

From the reign of Hezekiah, about 727 to 698 BC. The name of the king dates it.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Eilat Mazar's team found it in 2009 in an old garbage dump in the Ophel, just south of the Temple Mount, by sifting the dirt through water. It was announced in 2015. It was the first seal impression of a king of Israel or Judah ever found in a scientific dig.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

It is kept in Jerusalem and has been shown at the Israel Museum and in museum exhibits in the United States.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Hezekiah, son of Ahaz, really was king of Judah, exactly as Isaiah 1:1 and 2 Kings 18:1 say. Papers he sealed passed through this very spot.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not tell the stories of his prayer, his sickness or his fifteen extra years. It confirms the man and his title.

5 So the servants of King Hezekiah went to Isaiah, 6 who replied, "Tell your master that this is what Yahweh says: 'Do not be afraid of the words you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed Me. 7 Behold, I will put a spirit in him so that he will hear a rumor and return to his own land, where I will cause him to fall by the sword.'"

SENNACHERIB'S BLASPHEMOUS LETTER // 2 KINGS 19:8–13

8 When the Rabshakeh heard that the king of Assyria had left Lachish, he withdrew and found the king fighting against Libnah.

9 Now Sennacherib had been warned about Tirhakah king of Cush: "He has set out to fight against you."

On hearing this, Sennacherib sent messengers to Hezekiah, saying, 10 "Give this message to Hezekiah king of Judah:

'Do not let your God, in whom you trust, deceive you by saying that Jerusalem will not be delivered into the hand of the king of Assyria. 11 Surely you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all the

IS 37:1 [FIELD NOTES] A clay seal impression of King Hezekiah was found in Jerusalem. See the Field Notes page, p.1105.

IS 37:7 [PROPHECY] Sennacherib would hear a rumor, go home, and fall by the sword in his own land → IS 37:37-38; 2KI 19:37 p.1107

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

other countries, devoting them to destruction. Will you then be spared? 12 Did the gods of the nations destroyed by my fathers rescue those nations—the gods of Gozan, Haran, and Rezeph, and of the people of Eden in Telassar? 13 Where are the kings of Hamath, Arpad, Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah?'"

HEZEKIAH'S PRAYER // 2 KINGS 19:14–19

14 So Hezekiah received the letter from the messengers, read it, and went up to the house of Yahweh and spread it out before Yahweh. 15 And Hezekiah prayed to Yahweh:

16 "O Yahweh of Hosts, God of Israel, enthroned above the cherubim, You alone are God over all the kingdoms of the earth. You made the heavens and the earth. 17 Incline Your ear, O Yahweh, and hear; open Your eyes, O Yahweh, and see. Listen to all the words that Sennacherib has sent to defy the living God.
18 Truly, O Yahweh, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all these countries and their lands. 19 They have cast their gods into the fire and destroyed them, for they were not gods, but only wood and stone—the work of human hands.
20 And now, O Yahweh our God, save us from his hand, so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that You alone, O Yahweh, are God."

SENNACHERIB'S FALL PROPHESIED // 2 KINGS 19:20–34

21 Then Isaiah son of Amoz sent a message to Hezekiah: "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: Because you have prayed to Me concerning Sennacherib king of Assyria, 22 this is the word that Yahweh has spoken against him:

'The Virgin Daughter of Zion
despises you and mocks you;
the Daughter of Jerusalem
shakes her head behind you.
23 Whom have you taunted and blasphemed?
Against whom have you raised your voice
and lifted your eyes in pride?
Against the Holy One of Israel!

24 Through your servants you have taunted the Lord,
and you have said:
"With my many chariots
I have ascended
to the heights of the mountains,
to the remote peaks of Lebanon.
I have cut down its tallest cedars,
the finest of its cypresses.
I have reached its farthest heights,
the densest of its forests.
25 I have dug wells
and drunk foreign waters.
With the soles of my feet
I have dried up all the streams of Egypt."

26 Have you not heard?
Long ago I ordained it;
in days of old I planned it.
Now I have brought it to pass,
that you should crush fortified cities
into piles of rubble.
27 Therefore their inhabitants, devoid of power,
are dismayed and ashamed.
They are like plants in the field,
tender green shoots,
grass on the rooftops,
scorched before it is grown.

28 But I know your sitting down,
your going out and coming in,
and your raging against Me.
29 Because your rage and arrogance against Me
have reached My ears,
I will put My hook in your nose
and My bit in your mouth;
I will send you back
the way you came.'

30 And this will be a sign to you, O Hezekiah:

This year you will eat
what grows on its own,
and in the second year

IS 37:12 [DEMONIC] Sennacherib asks if any nation's gods saved them
IS 37:19 [DEMONIC] Hezekiah says the nations' gods were wood and stone
IS 37:29 [PROPHECY] God would send Sennacherib back the way he came → IS 37:37; 2KI 19:36 p.1107

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

what springs from the same.
But in the third year you will sow and reap;
you will plant vineyards and eat their fruit.
31 And the surviving remnant of the house of Judah
will again take root below
and bear fruit above.
32 For a remnant will go forth from Jerusalem,
and survivors from Mount Zion.
The zeal of Yahweh of Hosts
will accomplish this.
33 So this is what Yahweh says about the king of Assyria:

'He will not enter this city
or shoot an arrow into it.
He will not come before it with a shield
or build up a siege ramp against it.
34 He will go back the way he came,
and he will not enter this city,'
declares Yahweh.
35 'I will defend this city
and save it
for My own sake
and for the sake of My servant David.'"

JERUSALEM DELIVERED FROM THE ASSYRIANS // 2 KINGS 19:35–37; 2 CHRONICLES 32:20–23

36 Then the angel of Yahweh went out and struck down 185,000 men in the camp of the Assyrians. When the people got up the next morning, there were all the dead bodies!

37 So Sennacherib king of Assyria broke camp and withdrew. He returned to Nineveh and stayed there. 38 One day, while he was worshiping in the temple of his god Nisroch, his sons Adrammelech and Sharezer put him to the sword and escaped to the land of Ararat. And his son Esar-haddon reigned in his place.

- **IS 37:36 [FULFILLS]** After using Assyria against Zion, God would punish the proud king of Assyria and 2 more ← IS 10:12; IS 17:13-14; IS 31:8 p.1073
- **IS 37:36 [MIRACLE]** The angel of Yahweh strikes 185,000 Assyrians
- **IS 37:37 [FULFILLS]** Sennacherib would hear a rumor, go home, and fall by the sword in his own land ← IS 37:7 p.1105
- **IS 37:37 [FULFILLS]** God would send Sennacherib back the way he came ← IS 37:29 p.1106
- **IS 37:38 [DEMONIC]** Sennacherib is killed while worshiping his god Nisroch
- **IS 37:38 [FULFILLS]** Sennacherib would hear a rumor, go home, and die by the sword in his own land ← 2KI 19:7 p.644

38

CHAPTER 38 IN 30 SECONDS

Hezekiah gets sick and Isaiah tells him to get his house in order. Hezekiah turns to the wall, prays and cries. God adds fifteen years to his life and makes the shadow on the stairway go backward ten steps to prove it. Hezekiah writes a poem about it, and the doctor's orders are a fig poultice.

HEZEKIAH'S ILLNESS AND RECOVERY // 2 KINGS 20:1–11; 2 CHRONICLES 32:24–31

1 In those days Hezekiah became mortally ill. The prophet Isaiah son of Amoz came to him and said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'Put your house in order, for you are about to die; you will not recover.'"

2 Then Hezekiah turned his face to the wall and prayed to Yahweh, 3 saying, "Please, O Yahweh, remember how I have walked before You faithfully and with wholehearted devotion; I have done what is good in Your sight." And Hezekiah wept bitterly.

4 And the word of Yahweh came to Isaiah, saying, 5 "Go and tell Hezekiah that this is what Yahweh, the God of your father David, says: 'I have heard your prayer; I have seen your tears. Behold, I will add fifteen years to your life. 6 And I will deliver you and this city from the hand of the king of Assyria. I will defend this city. 7 This will be a sign to you from Yahweh that He will do what He has promised: 8 I will make the sun's shadow that falls on the stairway of Ahaz go back ten steps.'"

So the sunlight went back the ten steps it had descended.

HEZEKIAH'S SONG OF THANKSGIVING

9 This is a writing by Hezekiah king of Judah after his illness and recovery:

10 I said, "In the prime of my life
I must go through the gates of Sheol
and be deprived of the remainder of my years."
11 I said, "I will never again see Yahweh,
even Yahweh, in the land of the living;
I will no longer look on mankind

- **IS 38:5 [PROPHECY]** Hezekiah's life extended 15 years; sundial sign confirmed → IS 38:8; 2KI 20:11; 2KI 18:2 p.1107
- **IS 38:8 [FULFILLS]** Hezekiah's life extended 15 years; sundial sign confirmed ← IS 38:5-8 p.1107

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

with those who dwell in this world.
12 My dwelling has been picked up and removed from me
like a shepherd's tent.
I have rolled up my life like a weaver;
He cuts me off from the loom;
from day until night You make an end of me.
13 I composed myself until the morning.
Like a lion He breaks all my bones;
from day until night You make an end of me.
14 I chirp like a swallow or crane;
I moan like a dove.
My eyes grow weak as I look upward.
O Lord, I am oppressed; be my security."

15 What can I say?
He has spoken to me, and He Himself has done this.
I will walk slowly all my years
because of the anguish of my soul.
16 O Lord, by such things men live,
and in all of them my spirit finds life.
You have restored me to health
and have let me live.
17 Surely for my own welfare
I had such great anguish;
but Your love has delivered me from the pit of oblivion,
for You have cast all my sins behind Your back.
18 For Sheol cannot thank You;
Death cannot praise You.
Those who descend to the Pit
cannot hope for Your faithfulness.
19 The living, only the living, can thank You,
as I do today;
fathers will tell their children
about Your faithfulness.
20 Yahweh will save me;
we will play songs on stringed instruments
all the days of our lives
in the house of Yahweh.

21 Now Isaiah had said, "Prepare a lump of pressed figs and apply it to the boil, and he will recover."

22 And Hezekiah had asked, "What will be the sign that I will go up to the house of Yahweh?"

39

CHAPTER 39 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon sends get well gifts, and Hezekiah gives the visitors the full tour of his treasure house and armory. Bad idea. Isaiah says it will all be carried off to Babylon one day, along with some of his descendants. Hezekiah's reply is basically, Well, at least it will be peaceful while I am alive.

HEZEKIAH SHOWS HIS TREASURES // 2 KINGS 20:12–19

1 At that time Merodach-baladan son of Baladan king of Babylon sent letters and a gift to Hezekiah, for he had heard about Hezekiah's illness and recovery. 2 And Hezekiah welcomed the envoys gladly and showed them what was in his treasure house—the silver, the gold, the spices, and the precious oil, as well as his entire armory—all that was found in his storehouses. There was nothing in his palace or in all his dominion that Hezekiah did not show them.

3 Then the prophet Isaiah went to King Hezekiah and asked, "Where did those men come from, and what did they say to you?"

"They came to me from a distant land," Hezekiah replied, "from Babylon."

4 "What have they seen in your palace?" Isaiah asked.

"They have seen everything in my palace," answered Hezekiah. "There is nothing among my treasures that I did not show them."

5 Then Isaiah said to Hezekiah, "Hear the word of Yahweh of Hosts: 6 The time will surely come when everything in your palace and all that your fathers have stored up until this day will be carried off to Babylon. Nothing will be left, says Yahweh. 7 And some of your descendants, your own flesh and blood, will be taken away to be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon."

8 But Hezekiah said to Isaiah, "The word of Yahweh that you have spoken is good."

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | ARCHAEOLOGY | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

For he thought, "At least there will be
peace and security in my lifetime."

40

CHAPTER 40 IN 30 SECONDS

The tone changes completely. Comfort, comfort My people. A voice cries in the wilderness to make a road for God, and the Gospels say that voice was John the Baptist. People fade like grass, but God's word stands forever. The God who counts the stars by name never gets tired, and those who wait on Him will mount up with wings like eagles.

PREPARE THE WAY FOR YAHWEH // MATTHEW 3:1–12; MARK 1:1–8; LUKE 3:1–20; JOHN 1:19–28

1 "Comfort, comfort My people,"
says your God.
2 "Speak tenderly to Jerusalem,
and proclaim to her
that her forced labor has been completed;
her iniquity has been pardoned.
For she has received from the hand of
Yahweh
double for all her sins."

3 *A voice of one calling:*

"Prepare the way for Yahweh in the wilderness;
make a straight highway for our God in the
desert.
4 *Every valley shall be lifted up,*
and every mountain and hill made low;
the uneven ground will become smooth,
and the rugged land a plain.
5 *And the glory of Yahweh will be revealed,*
and all humanity together will see it."
For the mouth of Yahweh has spoken.

THE ENDURING WORD // 1 PETER 1:22–25

6 *A voice says, "Cry out!"*
And I asked, "What should I cry out?"
"All flesh is like grass,
and all its glory like the flowers of the field.
7 *The grass withers and the flowers fall*
when the breath of Yahweh blows on them;
indeed, the people are grass.
8 *The grass withers and the flowers fall,*
but the word of our God stands forever."

HERE IS YOUR GOD! // ROMANS 11:33–36

9 Go up on a high mountain,
O Zion, herald of good news.
Raise your voice loudly,
O Jerusalem, herald of good news.
Lift it up,
do not be afraid!
Say to the cities of Judah,
"Here is your God!"
10 Behold, the Lord Yahweh comes with
might,
and His arm establishes His rule.
His reward is with Him,
and His recompense accompanies Him.
11 He tends His flock like a shepherd;
He gathers the lambs in His arms
and carries them close to His heart.
He gently leads the nursing ewes.

12 Who has measured the waters in the
hollow of his hand,
or marked off the heavens with the span
of his hand?
Who has held the dust of the earth in a
basket,
or weighed the mountains on a scale
and the hills with a balance?
13 *Who has directed the Spirit of Yahweh,*
or informed Him as His counselor?
14 Whom did He consult to enlighten Him,
and who taught Him the paths of justice?
Who imparted knowledge to Him

- **IS 40:1 [PROPHECY]** 'Comfort, comfort My people' → LK 2:25 · MEDIUM p.1650
- **IS 40:1 [NOTE]** A NEW SECTION. Who wrote chapters 40 to 66? See One Isaiah or Three?
- **IS 40:3 [PROPHECY]** His coming preceded by a forerunner (John the Baptist) → MT 3:3; LK 3:4-6; JN 1:23 p.1554
- **IS 40:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 3:3 p.1554
- **IS 40:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 1:2-3 p.1608
- **IS 40:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 3:4-6 p.1651
- **IS 40:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 1:23 p.1699
- **IS 40:5 [PROPHECY]** 'The glory of Yahweh shall be revealed' → LK 3:6; JN 1:14 p.1653
- **IS 40:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 1:10-11 p.2000
- **IS 40:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 1:24-25 p.2013
- **IS 40:8 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Hebrew Bible scrolls from about 250 BC to AD 70 show the text was copied faithfully for over 1,000 years
- **IS 40:8 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Great Isaiah Scroll Field Notes at the front of Isaiah.
- **IS 40:9 [PROPHECY]** Announced as 'Behold your God!' → MT 1:23; JN 1:14 · MEDIUM p.1551
- **IS 40:10 [PROPHECY]** He would come bringing reward → STILL TO COME
- **IS 40:11 [PROPHECY]** A compassionate Shepherd who gives life → JN 10:10-18 p.1716
- **IS 40:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:34-35 p.1814
- **IS 40:13 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 2:16 p.1825

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and showed Him the way of understanding?

15 Surely the nations are like a drop in a bucket;
they are considered a speck of dust on the scales;
He lifts up the islands like fine dust.
16 Lebanon is not sufficient for fuel,
nor its animals enough for a burnt offering.
17 All the nations are as nothing before Him;
He regards them as nothingness and emptiness.

18 To whom will you liken God?
To what image will you compare Him?
19 To an idol that a craftsman casts
and a metalworker overlays with gold
and fits with silver chains?
20 One lacking such an offering
chooses wood that will not rot.
He seeks a skilled craftsman
to set up an idol that will not topple.

21 Do you not know?
Have you not heard?
Has it not been declared to you from the beginning?
Have you not understood since the foundation of the earth?
22 He sits enthroned above the circle of the earth;
its dwellers are like grasshoppers.
He stretches out the heavens like a curtain,
and spreads them out like a tent to dwell in.
23 He brings the princes to nothing
and makes the rulers of the earth meaningless.
24 No sooner are they planted, no sooner are they sown,
no sooner have their stems taken root in the ground,
than He blows on them and they wither,
and a whirlwind sweeps them away like stubble.

25 "To whom will you liken Me,
or who is My equal?" asks the Holy One.

IS 40:18 [DEMONIC] A craftsman builds an idol that will not topple

26 Lift up your eyes on high:
Who created all these?
He leads forth the starry host by number;
He calls each one by name.
Because of His great power and mighty strength,
not one of them is missing.

27 Why do you say, O Jacob,
and why do you assert, O Israel,
"My way is hidden from Yahweh,
and my claim is ignored by my God"?
28 Do you not know?
Have you not heard?
Yahweh is the everlasting God,
the Creator of the ends of the earth.
He will not grow tired or weary;
His understanding is beyond searching out.
29 He gives power to the faint
and increases the strength of the weak.
30 Even youths grow tired and weary,
and young men stumble and fall.
31 But those who wait upon Yahweh will renew their strength;
they will mount up with wings like eagles;
they will run and not grow weary,
they will walk and not faint.

41

CHAPTER 41 IN 30 SECONDS

God holds court with the nations and the islands. He has stirred up a conqueror from the east. Meanwhile the idol makers cheer each other on and nail their gods down so they do not tip over. To Israel, God says, Do not fear, for I am with you, and calls the little worm Jacob His friend's family.

GOD'S HELP TO ISRAEL

1 "Be silent before Me, O islands,
and let the peoples renew their strength.
Let them come forward and testify;
let us together draw near for judgment.
2 Who has aroused one from the east
and called him to his feet in righteousness?
He hands nations over to him
and subdues kings before him.
He turns them to dust with his sword,
to windblown chaff with his bow.
3 He pursues them, going on safely,

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

hardly touching the path with his feet.
4 Who has performed this and carried it
out,
calling forth the generations from the
beginning?
I, Yahweh—the first and the last—
I am He."

5 The islands see and fear;
the ends of the earth tremble.
They approach and come forward.
6 Each one helps the other
and says to his brother, "Be strong!"
7 The craftsman encourages the gold-
smith,
and he who wields the hammer
cheers him who strikes the anvil,
saying of the welding, "It is good."
He nails it down so it will not be toppled.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ONE ISAIAH OR THREE?

Who Wrote Chapters 40 to 66?

ISAIAH 1:1 · 40:1 · 44:28 TO 45:1 · 46:9 TO 10 · JOHN 12:38 TO 41

WHY IT COMES UP HERE

Chapter 39 ends with Isaiah warning King Hezekiah that Babylon will carry off his treasures, about 700 BC. Chapter 40 opens with Comfort, comfort My people, spoken to Jews who are already in exile in Babylon, about 150 years later. Many readers feel the ground shift right here.

FOR MORE THAN ONE AUTHOR

Chapters 40 to 66 never mention Isaiah by name. They speak as if Jerusalem is already in ruins, 44:26 and 64:10 to 11, and they name Cyrus of Persia, 44:28 and 45:1, who freed the Jews in 539 BC. The style and many words change. Prophets usually spoke to people of their own time.

THE HISTORY OF THE IDEA

About AD 1150 the Jewish scholar Abraham ibn Ezra hinted that chapters 40 and on were about the time of the exile. In 1775 the German scholar Johann Christoph Döderlein argued for a second author, and in 1892 Bernhard Duhm split off chapters 56 to 66 as a third, so First, Second and Third Isaiah. Most university scholars hold some form of this today.

CYRUS BY NAME

For many, the real issue is Cyrus. If Isaiah wrote around 700 BC, God named a king about 150 years before he ruled. Skeptics say that cannot happen, so the chapters must be later. Believers answer that this is exactly God's point: I declare the end from the beginning, 46:9 to 10, and 41:21 to 23 dares idols to do the same. See The Cyrus Cylinder Field Notes page, p.760.

The Case for One Isaiah

ISAIAH 1:4 · 40:25 · SIRACH 48:22 TO 25 · JOHN 12:38 TO 41 · LUKE 4:17

THE NEW TESTAMENT

John quotes Isaiah 53:1 and then 6:10, from both halves, and says Isaiah said these things because he saw His glory, John 12:38 to 41. Paul quotes 53:1 and 65:1 as Isaiah's words, Romans 10:16 to 20. Jesus was handed the scroll of the prophet Isaiah and read from chapter 61, Luke 4:17.

OLDER JEWISH WITNESSES

About 180 BC, Ben Sira says Isaiah saw the last things and comforted the mourners in Zion, Sirach 48:24, using the words of chapters 40 and 61. Josephus says Cyrus himself read Isaiah's prophecy about him (Antiquities 11.1.2).

THE SCROLL

The Great Isaiah Scroll from Qumran, about 125 BC, has all 66 chapters as one book. Its one big gap comes after chapter 33, not after chapter 39. See The Great Isaiah Scroll at the front of Isaiah.

THE SAME FINGERPRINT

The name the Holy One of Israel appears about 25 times in Isaiah, in both halves, and only about six times in the rest of the Old Testament.

A MIDDLE VIEW

Isaiah had disciples, 8:16. Some believers think they gathered, arranged and carried on his words, and the book still bears his name, the way a school carries its founder's teaching.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The whole book was Scripture to Jesus and the apostles. Chapter 53, the suffer-

IS 41:6 [DEMONIC] Idol makers cheer each other on at the anvil

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

ing servant, was read as pointing to Jesus from the start, Acts 8:32 to 35, and the scroll found at Qumran proves it was written down long before He was born.

8 *"But you, O Israel, My servant,*
Jacob, whom I have chosen,
descendant of Abraham My friend—
9 I brought you from the ends of the earth
and called you from its farthest corners.
I said, 'You are My servant.'
I have chosen and not rejected you.
10 Do not fear, for I am with you;
do not be afraid, for I am your God.
I will strengthen you; I will surely help you;
I will uphold you with My righteous right hand.

11 Behold, all who rage against you
will be ashamed and disgraced;
those who contend with you
will be reduced to nothing and will perish.
12 You will seek them but will not find them.
Those who wage war against you will come to nothing.
13 For I am Yahweh your God,
who takes hold of your right hand
and tells you: Do not fear,
I will help you.
14 Do not fear, O Jacob, you worm,
O few men of Israel.
I will help you," declares Yahweh.
"Your Redeemer is the Holy One of Israel.
15 Behold, I will make you into a threshing sledge,
new and sharp, with many teeth.
You will thresh the mountains and crush them,
and reduce the hills to chaff.
16 You will winnow them, and a wind will carry them away;
a gale will scatter them.
But you will rejoice in Yahweh;
you will glory in the Holy One of Israel.

17 The poor and needy seek water, but there is none;
their tongues are parched with thirst.
I, Yahweh, will answer them;
I, the God of Israel, will not forsake them.
18 I will open rivers on the barren heights,
and fountains in the middle of the valleys.
I will turn the desert into a pool of water,
and the dry land into flowing springs.
19 I will plant cedars in the wilderness,
acacias, myrtles, and olive trees.
I will set cypresses in the desert,
elms and boxwood together,
20 so that all may see and know,
may consider and understand,
that the hand of Yahweh has done this
and the Holy One of Israel has created it."

MEANINGLESS IDOLS

21 "Present your case," says Yahweh.
"Submit your arguments," says the King of Jacob.
22 "Let them come and tell us what will happen.
Tell the former things,
so that we may reflect on them and know the outcome.
Or announce to us what is coming.
23 Tell us the things that are to come,
so that we may know that you are gods.
Yes, do something good or evil,
that we may look on together in dismay.
24 Behold, you are nothing
and your work is of no value.
Anyone who chooses you is detestable.

25 I have raised up one from the north, and he has come—
one from the east who calls on My name.
He will march over rulers as if they were mortar,
like a potter who treads the clay.
26 Who has declared this from the beginning,
so that we may know,
and from times past,
so that we may say: 'He was right'?

IS 41:8 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → JAS 2:23 p.2004

IS 41:21 [DEMONIC] God dares the idols to tell the future
IS 41:25 [PROPHECY] God would raise up a conqueror from the north and the east → EZR 1:1-2; DAN 5:30-31 · MEDIUM p.766

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

No one announced it, no one foretold it,
no one heard your words.
27 I was the first to tell Zion:
'Look, here they are!'
And I gave to Jerusalem
a herald of good news.
28 When I look, there is no one;
there is no counselor among them;
when I ask them,
they have nothing to say.
29 See, they are all a delusion;
their works amount to nothing;
their images are as empty as the wind.

42

CHAPTER 42 IN 30 SECONDS

Here is My Servant, gentle enough not to break a bruised reed, strong enough to bring justice to the nations. Matthew 12 says this is Jesus. He will be a light for the nations and open blind eyes. Then everyone is told to sing a new song, while God admits His own servant Israel is the blind one.

HERE IS MY SERVANT // MATTHEW 12:15–21

1 *"Here is My Servant, whom I uphold,*
My Chosen One, in whom My soul delights.
I will put My Spirit on Him,
and He will bring justice to the nations.
2 *He will not cry out or raise His voice,*
nor make His voice heard in the streets.
3 *A bruised reed He will not break*
and a smoldering wick He will not extinguish;
He will faithfully bring forth justice.
4 *He will not grow weak or discouraged*
before He has established justice on the earth.
In His law the islands will put their hope."

5 This is what God Yahweh says—
He who created the heavens
and stretched them out,
who spread out the earth and its offspring,
who gives breath to the people on it
and life to those who walk in it:

6 "I, Yahweh, have called you
for a righteous purpose,
and I will take hold of your hand.
I will keep you and appoint you
to be a covenant for the people
and a light to the nations,
7 to open the eyes of the blind,
to bring prisoners out of the dungeon
and those sitting in darkness
out from the prison house.

8 I am Yahweh;
that is My name!
I will not yield My glory to another
or My praise to idols.
9 Behold, the former things have happened,
and now I declare new things.
Before they spring forth
I proclaim them to you."

A NEW SONG OF PRAISE // PSALM 98:1–9; PSALM 149:1–9

10 Sing to Yahweh a new song—
His praise from the ends of the earth—
you who go down to the sea, and all that is in it,
you islands, and all who dwell in them.
11 Let the desert and its cities raise their voices;
let the villages of Kedar cry aloud.
Let the people of Sela sing for joy;
let them cry out from the mountaintops.
12 Let them give glory to Yahweh
and declare His praise in the islands.
13 Yahweh goes forth like a mighty one;
He stirs up His zeal like a warrior.
He shouts; yes, He roars
in triumph over His enemies:

14 "I have kept silent from ages past;
I have remained quiet and restrained.
But now I will groan like a woman in labor;

- **IS 41:28 [DEMONIC]** Their images are as empty as the wind
- **IS 42:1 [PROPHECY]** The Servant → MT 12:18-21 p.1566
- **IS 42:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 3:17 p.1554
- **IS 42:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 12:18-21 p.1566
- **IS 42:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 17:5 p.1575
- **IS 42:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 1:11 p.1608
- **IS 42:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 3:22 p.1653
- **IS 42:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2PE 1:17 p.2029
- **IS 42:2 [PROPHECY]** Meek and lowly in heart → MT 11:28-30 p.1566
- **IS 42:4 [PROPHECY]** The nations would wait on His teachings → JN 12:20-26 · MEDIUM p.1721
- **IS 42:6 [PROPHECY]** The Light (salvation) of the Gentiles → LK 2:32 p.1650
- **IS 42:7 [PROPHECY]** He would open blind eyes → JN 9:25-38 p.1716
- **IS 42:8 [DEMONIC]** God will not give His praise to idols

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

I will at once gasp and pant.
15 I will lay waste the mountains and hills
and dry up all their vegetation.
I will turn the rivers into dry land
and drain the marshes.
16 I will lead the blind by a way they did not know;
I will guide them on unfamiliar paths.
I will turn darkness into light before them
and rough places into level ground.
These things I will do for them,
and I will not forsake them.
17 But those who trust in idols
and say to molten images, 'You are our gods!'
will be turned back in utter shame.

ISRAEL IS DEAF AND BLIND

18 Listen, you deaf ones;
look, you blind ones, that you may see!
19 Who is blind but My servant,
or deaf like the messenger I am sending?
Who is blind like My covenant partner,
or blind like the servant of Yahweh?
20 Though seeing many things, you do not keep watch.
Though your ears are open, you do not hear."

21 Yahweh was pleased, for the sake of His righteousness,
to magnify His law and make it glorious.
22 But this is a people plundered and looted,
all trapped in caves or imprisoned in dungeons.
They have become plunder with no one to rescue them,
and loot with no one to say, "Send them back!"
23 Who among you will pay attention to this?
Who will listen and obey hereafter?
24 Who gave Jacob up for spoil,
and Israel to the plunderers?
Was it not Yahweh,
against whom we have sinned?
They were unwilling to walk in His ways,
and they would not obey His law.
25 So He poured out on them His furious anger
and the fierceness of battle.
It enveloped them in flames,
but they did not understand;
it consumed them,
but they did not take it to heart.

IS 42:17 **[DEMONIC]** Those who trust in idols are turned back in shame
IS 42:21 **[PROPHECY]** Yahweh would magnify His law and make it glorious → MT 5:17 · MEDIUM p.1556

43

CHAPTER 43 IN 30 SECONDS

One of the most comforting chapters in the Bible. When you pass through the waters, I will be with you. You are precious in My sight. God says there is no other Savior, and He is about to do something new, a road in the wilderness. And He blots out sins for His own sake and remembers them no more.

ISRAEL'S ONLY SAVIOR

1 But now, this is what Yahweh says—
He who created you, O Jacob,
and He who formed you, O Israel:

"Do not fear, for I have redeemed you;
I have called you by your name; you are Mine!
2 When you pass through the waters,
I will be with you;
and when you go through the rivers,
they will not overwhelm you.
When you walk through the fire,
you will not be scorched;
the flames will not set you ablaze.

3 For I am Yahweh your God,
the Holy One of Israel, your Savior;
I give Egypt for your ransom,
Cush and Seba in your place.
4 Because you are precious and honored in My sight,
and because I love you,
I will give men in exchange for you
and nations in place of your life.

5 Do not be afraid, for I am with you;
I will bring your offspring from the east
and gather you from the west.
6 *I will say to the north, 'Give them up!'*
and to the south, 'Do not hold them back!'
Bring My sons from afar,
and My daughters from the ends of the earth—

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

7 everyone called by My name and created
for My glory,
whom I have indeed formed and made."

8 Bring out a people who have eyes but
are blind,
and who have ears but are deaf.
9 All the nations gather together
and the peoples assemble.
Who among them can declare this,
and proclaim to us the former things?
Let them present their witnesses to vindicate them,
so that others may hear and say, "It is
true."

10 "You are My witnesses," declares Yahweh,
"and My servant whom I have chosen,
so that you may consider and believe Me
and understand that I am He.
Before Me no god was formed,
and after Me none will come.
11 I, yes I, am Yahweh,
and there is no Savior but Me.
12 I alone decreed and saved and
proclaimed—
I, and not some foreign god among you.
So you are My witnesses," declares Yahweh,
"that I am God.
13 Even from eternity I am He,
and none can deliver out of My hand.
When I act, who can reverse it?"

A WAY IN THE WILDERNESS

14 Thus says Yahweh your Redeemer,
the Holy One of Israel:

"For your sake, I will send to Babylon
and bring them all as fugitives,
even the Chaldeans,
in the ships in which they rejoice.
15 I am Yahweh, your Holy One,
the Creator of Israel, and your King."

16 Thus says Yahweh, who makes a way in
the sea
and a path through the surging waters,
17 who brings out the chariots and horses,
the armies and warriors together,
to lie down, never to rise again;
to be extinguished, snuffed out like a
wick:

18 "Do not call to mind the former things;
pay no attention to the things of old.
19 Behold, I am about to do something
new;
even now it is coming. Do you not see
it?
Indeed, I will make a way in the wilderness
and streams in the desert.
20 The beasts of the field will honor Me,
the jackals and the ostriches,
because I provide water in the wilderness
and rivers in the desert,
to give drink to My chosen people.

21 The people I formed for Myself
will declare My praise.

ISRAEL'S UNFAITHFULNESS // JUDGES 2:10–15; JEREMIAH 2:23–37

22 But you have not called on Me, O Jacob,
because you have grown weary of Me,
O Israel.
23 You have not brought Me sheep for
burnt offerings,
nor honored Me with your sacrifices.
I have not burdened you with offerings,
nor wearied you with frankincense.
24 You have not bought Me kaneh with
your silver,
nor satisfied Me with the fat of your
sacrifices.
But you have burdened Me with your sins;
you have wearied Me with your iniquities.

25 I, yes I, am He
who blots out your transgressions for
My own sake
and remembers your sins no more.
26 Remind Me, let us argue the matter together.
State your case, so that you may be vindicated.
27 Your first father sinned,

■ **IS 43:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 6:18 p.1854
■ **IS 43:14 [PROPHECY]** For Israel's sake God would send an army against Babylon → DAN 5:30-31 p.1338

■ **IS 43:20 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:9 p.2013
■ **IS 43:24 [TEXT]** Many Bibles say sweet cane here. The Hebrew is kaneh, cane. In Exodus 30:23 the anointing oil uses kaneh bosem, fragrant cane, so this may be the same plant. See the note on Exodus 30:23.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and your spokesmen rebelled against
Me.
28 So I will disgrace the princes of your
sanctuary,
and I will devote Jacob to destruction
and Israel to reproach."

44

CHAPTER 44 IN 30 SECONDS

God pours out His Spirit like water on thirsty ground. Then the funniest roast in the Bible: a man cuts down a tree, cooks dinner on half of it, warms his hands, and then bows down to the other half and says, Save me, you are my god. The chapter ends by naming Cyrus, the king who would rebuild Jerusalem.

YAHWEH HAS CHOSEN ISRAEL

1 But now listen, O Jacob My servant,
Israel, whom I have chosen.
2 This is the word of Yahweh, your Maker,
who formed you from the womb and
who will help you:
"Do not be afraid, O Jacob My servant,
Jeshurun, whom I have chosen.
3 For I will pour water on the thirsty land,
and currents on the dry ground.
I will pour out My Spirit on your descen-
dants,
and My blessing on your offspring.
4 They will sprout among the grass
like willows by flowing streams.
5 One will say, 'I belong to Yahweh,'
another will call himself by the name of
Jacob,
and still another will write on his hand,
'Yahweh's,'
and will take the name of Israel."

6 Thus says Yahweh,
the King and Redeemer of Israel, Yah-
weh of Hosts:

"I am the first and I am the last,
and there is no God but Me.
7 Who then is like Me?
Let him say so!
Let him declare his case before Me,
since I established an ancient people.
Let him foretell the things to come,
and what is to take place.
8 Do not tremble or fear.
Have I not told you and declared it long
ago?
You are My witnesses!
Is there any God but Me?
There is no other Rock;
I know not one."

9 All makers of idols are nothing,
and the things they treasure are worth-
less.
Their witnesses fail to see or compre-
hend,
so they are put to shame.
10 Who fashions a god or casts an idol
which profits him nothing?
11 Behold, all his companions will be put to
shame,
for the craftsmen themselves are only
human.
Let them all assemble and take their
stand;
they will all be brought to terror and
shame.

12 The blacksmith takes a tool
and labors over the coals;
he fashions an idol with hammers
and forges it with his strong arms.
Yet he grows hungry and loses his
strength;
he fails to drink water and grows faint.
13 The woodworker extends a measuring
line;
he marks it out with a stylus;
he shapes it with chisels
and outlines it with a compass.
He fashions it in the likeness of man,
like man in all his glory,
that it may dwell in a shrine.
14 He cuts down cedars
or retrieves a cypress or oak.
He lets it grow strong among the trees of
the forest.
He plants a laurel, and the rain makes it
grow.
15 It serves as fuel for man.
He takes some of it to warm himself,

IS 44:3 [PROPHECY] He would send the Spirit of God → JN 16:7-13 p.1727
IS 44:6 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:17 p.2082
IS 44:6 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:13 p.2115

IS 44:9 [DEMONIC] The idol maker bows to a block of wood

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and he kindles a fire
and bakes his bread.
He also fashions it into a god and worships it;
he makes an idol and bows down to it.
16 He burns half of it in the fire,
and he roasts meat on that half.
He eats the roast and is satisfied.
Indeed, he warms himself and says,
"Ah! I am warm; I see the fire."
17 From the rest he makes a god, his graven image.
He bows down to it and worships;
he prays to it and says,
"Save me, for you are my god."

18 They do not comprehend or discern,
for He has shut their eyes so they cannot see
and closed their minds so they cannot understand.
19 And no one considers in his heart,
no one has the knowledge or insight to say,
"I burned half of it in the fire,
and I baked bread on its coals;
I roasted meat and I ate.
Shall I make something detestable with the rest of it?
Shall I bow down to a block of wood?"
20 He feeds on ashes.
His deluded heart has led him astray,
and he cannot deliver himself or say,
"Is not this thing in my right hand a lie?"

JERUSALEM TO BE RESTORED

21 Remember these things, O Jacob,
for you are My servant, O Israel.
I have made you, and you are My servant;
O Israel, I will never forget you.
22 I have blotted out your transgressions like a cloud,
and your sins like a mist.
Return to Me, for I have redeemed you.
23 Sing for joy, O heavens, for Yahweh has done this;
shout aloud, O depths of the earth.
Break forth in song, O mountains,
you forests and all your trees.
For Yahweh has redeemed Jacob,
and revealed His glory in Israel.

24 Thus says Yahweh,
your Redeemer who formed you from the womb:

"I am Yahweh,
who has made all things,
who alone stretched out the heavens,
who by Myself spread out the earth,
25 who foils the signs of false prophets
and makes fools of diviners,
who confounds the wise
and turns their knowledge into nonsense,
26 who confirms the message of His servant
and fulfills the counsel of His messengers,
who says of Jerusalem,
'She will be inhabited,'
and of the cities of Judah,
'They will be rebuilt, and I will restore their ruins,'
27 who says to the depths of the sea,
'Be dry, and I will dry up your currents,'
28 who says of Cyrus,
'My shepherd will fulfill all that I desire,'
who says of Jerusalem,
'She will be rebuilt,'
and of the temple,
'Let its foundation be laid.'"

45

CHAPTER 45 IN 30 SECONDS

God calls Cyrus His anointed and promises to bust open bronze gates for him, so he will know who really did it. I am Yahweh, and there is no other. Can the clay talk back to the potter? Then the invitation to the whole world: Turn to Me and be saved, every knee will bow. Paul quotes this about Jesus.

GOD CALLS CYRUS // 2 CHRONICLES 36:22–23; EZRA 1:1–4

1 This is what Yahweh says to Cyrus His anointed,

IS 44:20 [HEART] A deceived heart leads the idol maker astray.

IS 44:25 [DEMONIC] God makes fools of the diviners
IS 44:28 [PROPHECY] Cyrus named ahead of time as the one who would rebuild Jerusalem and the temple → EZR 1:1-4 p.766
IS 44:28 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Records Cyrus's policy of returning exiled peoples and rebuilding temples
IS 44:28 [FIELD NOTES] Cyrus's own clay cylinder survives. See The Cyrus Cylinder Field Notes page in 2 Chronicles, p.760, where Cyrus is first named.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

whose right hand I have grasped
to subdue nations before him,
to disarm kings,
to open the doors before him,
so that the gates will not be shut:

2 "I will go before you
and level the mountains;
I will break down the gates of bronze
and cut through the bars of iron.
3 I will give you the treasures of darkness
and the riches hidden in secret places,
so that you may know that I am Yahweh,
the God of Israel, who calls you by name.
4 For the sake of Jacob My servant
and Israel My chosen one,
I call you by name;
I have given you a title of honor,
though you have not known Me.
5 I am Yahweh, and there is no other;
there is no God but Me.
I will equip you for battle,
though you have not known Me,
6 so that all may know,
from where the sun rises to where it sets,
that there is none but Me;
I am Yahweh, and there is no other.
7 I form the light and create the darkness;
I bring prosperity and create calamity.
I, Yahweh, do all these things.

8 Drip down, O heavens, from above,
and let the skies pour down righteousness.
Let the earth open up that salvation may sprout
and righteousness spring up with it;
I, Yahweh, have created it.

9 *Woe to him who quarrels with his Maker—*
one clay pot among many.
Does the clay ask the potter,
'What are you making?'
Does your work say,
'He has no hands'?

10 Woe to him who says to his father,
'What have you begotten?'
or to his mother,
'What have you brought forth?'"

11 Thus says Yahweh,
the Holy One of Israel, and its Maker:

"Concerning things to come, do you question Me about My sons,
or instruct Me in the work of My hands?
12 It is I who made the earth
and created man upon it.
It was My hands that stretched out the heavens,
and I ordained all their host.
13 I will raise up Cyrus in righteousness,
and I will make all his ways straight.
He will rebuild My city
and set My exiles free,
but not for payment or reward,
says Yahweh of Hosts."

14 This is what Yahweh says:

"The products of Egypt and the merchandise of Cush,
along with the Sabeans, men of stature,
will come over to you
and will be yours;
they will trudge behind you;
they will come over in chains and bow down to you.
They will confess to you:
'God is indeed with you, and there is no other;
there is no other God.'"

15 Truly You are a God who hides Himself,
O God of Israel, the Savior.
16 They will all be put to shame and humiliated;
the makers of idols will depart together in disgrace.
17 But Israel will be saved by Yahweh
with an everlasting salvation;
you will not be put to shame or humiliated,
to ages everlasting.

18 For thus says Yahweh,
who created the heavens—He is God;
He formed the earth and fashioned it;

IS 45:1 [PROPHECY] Cyrus's right hand held to subdue nations, opening 'two-leaved gates' before him → HISTORY: Cyrus the Persian took Babylon without a battle in 539 BC. Found on the Cyrus Cylinder and recorded by Herodotus, Histories 1.191.

IS 45:9 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:20 p.1811

IS 45:14 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 1CO 14:25 p.1841

IS 45:16 [DEMONIC] Idol makers leave together in disgrace

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

He established it;
He did not create it to be empty,
but formed it to be inhabited:

"I am Yahweh,
and there is no other.
19 I have not spoken in secret,
from a place in a land of darkness.
I did not say to the descendants of Jacob,
'Seek Me in a wasteland.'
I, Yahweh, speak the truth;
I say what is right.

20 Come, gather together, and draw near,
you fugitives from the nations.
Ignorant are those who carry idols of wood
and pray to a god that cannot save.
21 Speak up and present your case—
yes, let them take counsel together.
Who foretold this long ago?
Who announced it from ancient times?
Was it not I, Yahweh?
There is no other God but Me,
a righteous God and Savior;
there is none but Me.

22 Turn to Me and be saved,
all the ends of the earth;
for I am God,
and there is no other.
23 *By Myself I have sworn;*
truth has gone out from My mouth,
a word that will not be revoked:
Every knee will bow before Me,
every tongue will swear allegiance.
24 Surely they will say of Me,
'In Yahweh alone are righteousness and strength.'"

All who rage against Him
will come to Him and be put to shame.
25 In Yahweh all descendants of Israel
will be justified and will exult.

- **IS 45:20 [DEMONIC]** People carry wooden idols that cannot save
- **IS 45:22 [PROPHECY]** 'Look to Me and be saved, all ends of the earth' → ACTS 4:12 p.1747
- **IS 45:23 [PROPHECY]** Every knee would bow and every tongue confess → STILL TO COME
- **IS 45:23 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 14:11 p.1816
- **IS 45:23 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → PHIL 2:10-11 p.1896

46

CHAPTER 46 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon's gods Bel and Nebo have to be carried out on donkeys, and the poor animals are worn out. Your idols need to be carried. God says, I have carried you since you were born, and I will carry you when your hair turns gray. He tells the end from the beginning.

BABYLON'S IDOLS

1 Bel crouches; Nebo cowers.
Their idols weigh down beasts and cattle.
The images you carry are burdensome,
a load to the weary animal.
2 The gods cower; they crouch together,
unable to relieve the burden;
but they themselves go into captivity.

3 "Listen to Me, O house of Jacob,
all the remnant of the house of Israel,
who have been sustained from the womb,
carried along since birth.
4 Even to your old age, I will be the same,
and I will bear you up when you turn gray.
I have made you, and I will carry you;
I will sustain you and deliver you.

5 To whom will you liken Me or count Me equal?
To whom will you compare Me, that we should be alike?
6 They pour out their bags of gold
and weigh out silver on scales;
they hire a goldsmith to fashion it into a god,
so they can bow down and worship.
7 They lift it to their shoulder
and carry it along;
they set it in its place, and there it stands,
not budging from that spot.
They cry out to it, but it does not answer;
it saves no one from his troubles.

8 Remember this and be brave;
take it to heart, you transgressors!
9 Remember what happened long ago,
for I am God, and there is none like Me.
I am God, and there is none like Me.
10 I declare the end from the beginning,

- **IS 46:1 [DEMONIC]** Bel and Nebo must be carried by tired animals

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and from ancient times what is still to
come.
I say, 'My purpose will stand,
and all My good pleasure I will accom-
plish.'
11 I summon a bird of prey from the east,
a man for My purpose from a far-off
land.
Truly I have spoken,
and truly I will bring it to pass.
I have planned it,
and I will surely do it.

12 Listen to Me, you stubborn people,
far removed from righteousness:
13 I am bringing My righteousness near;
it is not far away, and My salvation will
not be delayed.
I will grant salvation to Zion
and adorn Israel with My splendor.

47

CHAPTER 47 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon is told to get off her throne and sit in the dust, a queen demoted to grinding flour. She thought she would be queen forever and said, I am, and there is no one besides me, which is God's line, not hers. Her astrologers and spells cannot save her. It happens in a single day.

THE HUMILIATION OF BABYLON

1 "Go down and sit in the dust,
O Virgin Daughter of Babylon.
Sit on the ground without a throne,
O Daughter of the Chaldeans!
For you will no longer be called
tender or delicate.
2 Take millstones and grind flour;
remove your veil;
strip off your skirt, bare your thigh,
and wade through the streams.
3 Your nakedness will be uncovered
and your shame will be exposed.
I will take vengeance;
I will spare no one."

4 Our Redeemer—Yahweh of Hosts is His
name—
is the Holy One of Israel.

5 "Sit in silence and go into darkness,
O Daughter of the Chaldeans.
For you will no longer be called
the queen of kingdoms.
6 I was angry with My people;
I profaned My heritage,
and I placed them under your control.
You showed them no mercy;
even on the elderly you laid a most
heavy yoke.
7 You said, 'I will be queen forever.'
You did not take these things to heart
or consider their outcome.

8 So now hear this,
O lover of luxury who sits securely,
who says to herself,
'I am, and there is none besides me.
I will never be a widow
or know the loss of children.'
9 These two things will overtake you in a
moment,
in a single day:
loss of children, and widowhood.
They will come upon you in full mea-
sure,
in spite of your many sorceries
and the potency of your spells.
10 You were secure in your wickedness;
you said, 'No one sees me.'
Your wisdom and knowledge led you
astray;
you told yourself, 'I am, and there is
none besides me.'
11 But disaster will come upon you;
you will not know how to charm it away.
A calamity will befall you
that you will be unable to ward off.
Devastation will happen to you
suddenly and unexpectedly.

12 So take your stand with your spells
and with your many sorceries,
with which you have wearied yourself
from your youth.
Perhaps you will succeed;
perhaps you will inspire terror!
13 You are wearied by your many coun-
selors;
let them come forward now and save
you—

IS 46:11 [PROPHECY] God would call a bird of prey from the east to carry out His plan → EZR 1:1-2 · MEDIUM p.766

IS 47:9 [PROPHECY] Babylon's loss would come suddenly, in a single day → DAN 5:30-31 p.1338

IS 47:9 [DEMONIC] Babylon's spells and astrologers cannot save her

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

your astrologers who observe the stars,
who monthly predict your fate.
14 Surely they are like stubble;
the fire will burn them up.
They cannot deliver themselves
from the power of the flame.
There will be no coals to warm them
or fire to sit beside.
15 This is what they are to you—
those with whom you have labored and traded from youth—
each one strays in his own direction;
not one of them can save you.

48

CHAPTER 48 IN 30 SECONDS

God reminds stubborn Israel that He told them things before they happened, so they could not give credit to an idol. Their neck is iron and their forehead is bronze. He refined them in the furnace of affliction. If only they had listened, their peace would have been like a river. The final word: Leave Babylon!

ISRAEL'S STUBBORNNESS

1 "Listen to this, O house of Jacob,
you who are called by the name of Israel,
who have descended from the line of Judah,
who swear by the name of Yahweh,
who invoke the God of Israel—
but not in truth or righteousness—
2 who indeed call yourselves after the holy city
and lean on the God of Israel;
Yahweh of Hosts is His name.

3 I foretold the former things long ago;
they came out of My mouth and I proclaimed them.
Suddenly I acted, and they came to pass.
4 For I knew that you are stubborn;
your neck is iron and your forehead is bronze.
5 Therefore I declared it to you long ago;
I announced it before it came to pass,
so that you could not claim, 'My idol has done this;
my carved image and molten god has ordained it.'
6 You have heard these things; look at them all.
Will you not acknowledge them?

From now on I will tell you of new things,
hidden things unknown to you.
7 They are created now, and not long ago;
you have not heard of them before today.
So you cannot claim,
'I already knew them!'
8 You have never heard; you have never understood;
for a long time your ears have not been open.
For I knew how deceitful you are;
you have been called a rebel from birth.

9 For the sake of My name I will delay My wrath;
for the sake of My praise I will restrain it,
so that you will not be cut off.
10 See, I have refined you, but not as silver;
I have tested you in the furnace of affliction.
11 For My own sake, My very own sake, I will act;
for how can I let Myself be defamed?
I will not yield My glory to another.

DELIVERANCE PROMISED TO ISRAEL

12 Listen to Me, O Jacob,
and Israel, whom I have called:
I am He; I am the first,
and I am the last.
13 Surely My own hand founded the earth,
and My right hand spread out the heavens;
when I summon them,
they stand up together.
14 Come together, all of you, and listen:
Which of the idols has foretold these things?
Yahweh's chosen ally will carry out His desire against Babylon,
and His arm will be against the Chaldeans.

- **IS 48:5 [DEMONIC]** God told the future so no one could thank an idol
- **IS 48:12 [PROPHECY]** The First and the Last → REV 1:17; REV 22:13 · MEDIUM p.2082
- **IS 48:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:17 p.2082
- **IS 48:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:13 p.2115

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

15 I, even I, have spoken;
yes, I have called him.
I have brought him,
and he will succeed in his mission.

16 Come near to Me and listen to this:

From the beginning I have not spoken in secret;
from the time it happened, I was there."

And now the Lord Yahweh has sent me,
accompanied by His Spirit.

17 Thus says Yahweh your Redeemer,
the Holy One of Israel:

"I am Yahweh your God,
who teaches you for your benefit,
who directs you in the way you should go.
18 If only you had paid attention to My commandments,
your peace would have been like a river,
and your righteousness like waves of the sea.
19 Your descendants would have been as countless as the sand,
and your offspring as numerous as its grains;
their name would never be cut off
or eliminated from My presence."

20 Leave Babylon!
Flee from the Chaldeans!
Declare it with a shout of joy,
proclaim it,
let it go out to the ends of the earth, saying,
"Yahweh has redeemed His servant Jacob!"
21 They did not thirst when He led them through the deserts;
He made water flow for them from the rock;
He split the rock, and water gushed out.

22 "There is no peace," says Yahweh,
"for the wicked."

- IS 48:14 [DEMONIC] Which of the idols foretold these things
- IS 48:16 [PROPHECY] He came as a divinely sent Teacher → JN 3:2 · MEDIUM p.1701
- IS 48:20 [PROPHECY] God's people would go out from Babylon → EZR 1:3-5; EZR 2:1 p.766

49

CHAPTER 49 IN 30 SECONDS

The Servant speaks: God called Me before I was born and made My mouth a sharp sword. It is too small a job just to restore Israel, so God makes Him a light for the nations. Zion feels forgotten, but God says a mother might forget her nursing baby, yet I will not forget you. I have written you on the palms of My hands.

THE SERVANT AND LIGHT TO THE GENTILES //
ACTS 13:42–52

1 Listen to Me, O islands;
pay attention, O distant peoples:
Yahweh called Me from the womb;
from the body of My mother He named Me.
2 He made My mouth like a sharp sword;
He hid Me in the shadow of His hand.
He made Me like a polished arrow;
He hid Me in His quiver.
3 He said to Me, "You are My Servant, Israel,
in whom I will display My glory."

4 But I said, "I have labored in vain,
I have spent My strength in futility and vanity;
yet My vindication is with Yahweh,
and My reward is with My God."

5 And now says Yahweh,
who formed Me from the womb to be His Servant,
to bring Jacob back to Him,
that Israel might be gathered to Him—
for I am honored in the sight of Yahweh,
and My God is My strength—
6 *He says: "It is not enough for You to be My Servant,*
to raise up the tribes of Jacob,
and to restore the protected ones of Israel.
I will also make You a light for the nations,
to bring My salvation to the ends of the earth."

- IS 49:1 [PROPHECY] Called from the womb → MT 1:18 p.1550
- IS 49:1 [MESSIAH SPEAKING] Red letters here mean the Servant is talking. Christians read the Servant as the Messiah, Jesus. Simeon echoed 49:6 when he held baby Jesus, Luke 2:32.
- IS 49:2 [PROPHECY] The Servant's mouth would be like a sharp sword → REV 1:16; REV 19:15 · MEDIUM p.2080
- IS 49:5 [PROPHECY] A Servant formed from the womb → LK 1:31; PHIL 2:7 p.1645
- IS 49:6 [PROPHECY] He is Salvation for Israel → LK 2:29-32 p.1650

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

7 Thus says Yahweh,
the Redeemer and Holy One of Israel,
to Him who was despised and abhorred
by the nation,
to the Servant of rulers:
"Kings will see You and rise,
and princes will bow down,
because of Yahweh, who is faithful,
the Holy One of Israel, who has chosen
You."

8 *This is what Yahweh says:*
"In the time of favor I will answer You,
and in the day of salvation I will help You;
I will keep You and appoint You
to be a covenant for the people,
to restore the land,
to apportion its desolate inheritances,
9 to say to the prisoners, 'Come out,'
and to those in darkness, 'Show yourselves.'
They will feed along the pathways,
and find pasture on every barren hill.
10 They will not hunger or thirst,
nor will scorching heat or sun beat
down on them.
For He who has compassion on them will
guide them
and lead them beside springs of water.
11 I will turn all My mountains into roads,
and My highways will be raised up.
12 Behold, they will come from far away,
from the north and from the west,
and from the land of Aswan."

13 Shout for joy, O heavens; rejoice, O
earth;
break forth in song, O mountains!
For Yahweh has comforted His people,
and He will have compassion on His afflicted ones.

14 But Zion said, "Yahweh has forsaken
me;
the Lord has forgotten me!"

15 "Can a woman forget her nursing child,
or lack compassion for the son of her
womb?
Even if she could forget,
I will not forget you!
16 Behold, I have inscribed you on the
palms of My hands;
your walls are ever before Me.
17 Your builders hasten back;
your destroyers and wreckers depart
from you.
18 *Lift up your eyes and look around.*
They all gather together; they come to you.
As surely as I live," declares Yahweh,
"you will wear them all as jewelry
and put them on like a bride.
19 For your ruined and desolate places
and your ravaged land
will now indeed be too small for your people,
and those who devoured you will be far
away.
20 Yet the children of your bereavement
will say in your hearing,
'This place is too small for us;
make room for us to live here.'

21 Then you will say in your heart,
'Who has begotten these for me?
I was bereaved and barren;
I was exiled and rejected.
So who has reared them?
Look, I was left all alone,
so where did they come from?'"

22 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:
"Behold, I will lift up My hand to the nations,
and raise My banner to the peoples.
They will bring your sons in their arms
and carry your daughters on their
shoulders.
23 Kings will be your foster fathers,
and their queens your nursing mothers.

- **IS 49:6 [PROPHECY]** He is the Light of the Gentiles → JN 8:12; ACTS 13:47 p.1712
- **IS 49:6 [PROPHECY]** He is Salvation to the ends of the earth → ACTS 15:7-18; TIT 2:11 p.1767
- **IS 49:6 [PROPHECY]** He would restore Israel → ACTS 3:19-21; 15:16-17 · MEDIUM p.1746
- **IS 49:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:47 p.1765
- **IS 49:7 [PROPHECY]** Despised by the nation of Israel → JN 1:11; 8:48-49; 19:14-15 p.1698
- **IS 49:8 [PROPHECY]** God would help His Servant in the day of salvation → 2CO 6:2 · MEDIUM p.1853
- **IS 49:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 6:2 p.1853
- **IS 49:9 [PROPHECY]** 'Saying to the prisoners, Go forth' → LK 4:18 · MEDIUM p.1654
- **IS 49:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 7:16-17 p.2093
- **IS 49:18 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 14:11 p.1816

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

They will bow to you facedown
and lick the dust at your feet.
Then you will know that I am Yahweh;
those who hope in Me will never be put to shame."

24 Can the plunder be snatched from the mighty,
or the captives of a tyrant be delivered?
25 Indeed, this is what Yahweh says:

"Even the captives of the mighty will be taken away,
and the plunder of the tyrant will be retrieved;
I will contend with those who contend with you,
and I will save your children.
26 I will make your oppressors eat their own flesh;
they will be drunk on their own blood, as with wine.
Then all mankind will know that I, Yahweh,
am your Savior and your Redeemer,
the Mighty One of Jacob."

50

CHAPTER 50 IN 30 SECONDS

God asks where the divorce papers are, because He never sent His people away for good. Then the Servant speaks again, and this time it hurts to read: I offered My back to those who beat Me and My cheeks to those who pulled out My beard. He sets His face like flint, because God will help Him.

ISRAEL'S SIN

1 This is what Yahweh says:

"Where is your mother's certificate of divorce
with which I sent her away?
Or to which of My creditors
did I sell you?
Look, you were sold for your iniquities,
and for your transgressions your mother was sent away.
2 Why was no one there when I arrived?
Why did no one answer when I called?
Is My hand too short to redeem you?
Or do I lack the strength to deliver you?
Behold, My rebuke dries up the sea;
I turn the rivers into a desert;
the fish rot for lack of water
and die of thirst.
3 I clothe the heavens in black
and make sackcloth their covering."

THE SERVANT'S OBEDIENCE // MATTHEW 27:27–31; MARK 15:16–20; LUKE 22:63–65; JOHN 19:1–15

4 The Lord Yahweh has given Me
the tongue of discipleship,
to sustain the weary with a word.
He awakens Me morning by morning;
He awakens My ear to listen as a disciple.
5 The Lord Yahweh has opened My ears,
and I have not been rebellious,
nor have I turned back.
6 I offered My back to those who struck Me,
and My cheeks to those who tore out My beard.
I did not hide My face from scorn and spittle.
7 Because the Lord Yahweh helps Me,
I have not been disgraced;
therefore I have set My face like flint,
and I know that I will not be put to shame.
8 The One who vindicates Me is near.
Who will dare to contend with Me?
Let us confront each other!
Who has a case against Me?
Let him approach Me!
9 Surely the Lord Yahweh helps Me.
Who is there to condemn Me?
See, they will all wear out like a garment;
the moths will devour them.

10 Who among you fears Yahweh
and obeys the voice of His Servant?
Who among you walks in darkness
and has no light?
Let him trust in the name of Yahweh;
let him lean on his God.

- **IS 49:23 [PROPHECY]** 'Kings shall be your foster fathers' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 50:3 [PROPHECY]** Heaven darkened at His humiliation → LK 23:44-45 · MEDIUM p.1690
- **IS 50:4 [PROPHECY]** A learned counselor for the weary → MT 7:29; 11:28-29 · MEDIUM p.1560
- **IS 50:4 [MESSIAH SPEAKING]** The Servant speaks again. Compare 50:6 with Matthew 26:67 and 27:26.
- **IS 50:5 [PROPHECY]** The Servant willingly bound to obedience → MT 26:39 p.1594
- **IS 50:6 [PROPHECY]** 'I gave My back to those who struck Me' → MT 27:26 p.1598
- **IS 50:6 [PROPHECY]** He was struck on the cheeks → MT 26:67 p.1596
- **IS 50:6 [PROPHECY]** He was spat upon → MT 27:30 p.1598
- **IS 50:7 [PROPHECY]** The Servant would set His face like flint → LK 9:51 · MEDIUM p.1667

GOD SPEAKING

11 Behold, all you who kindle a fire,
who array yourselves with firebrands,
walk in the light of your fire
and of the firebrands you have lit!
This is what you will receive from My hand:
You will lie down in a place of torment.

51

CHAPTER 51 IN 30 SECONDS

Look to the rock you were cut from, Abraham and Sarah. God will turn the desert into Eden. The heavens will wear out like old clothes, but His salvation lasts forever. Then a wake up call: Awake, awake! Jerusalem has drunk the cup of God's anger, and now God takes the cup away and hands it to her tormentors.

SALVATION FOR ZION

1 "Listen to Me, you who pursue righteousness,
you who seek Yahweh:
Look to the rock from which you were cut,
and to the quarry from which you were hewn.
2 Look to Abraham your father,
and to Sarah who gave you birth.
When I called him, he was but one;
then I blessed him and multiplied him.
3 For Yahweh will comfort Zion
and will look with compassion on all her ruins;
He will make her wilderness like Eden
and her desert like the garden of Yahweh.
Joy and gladness will be found in her,
thanksgiving and melodious song.

4 Pay attention to Me, My people,
and listen to Me, My nation;
for a law will go out from Me,
and My justice will become a light to the nations;
I will bring it about quickly.

5 My righteousness draws near,
My salvation is on the way,
and My arms will bring justice to the nations.
The islands will look for Me
and wait in hope for My arm.
6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens,
and look at the earth below;
for the heavens will vanish like smoke,
the earth will wear out like a garment,
and its people will die like gnats.
But My salvation will last forever,
and My righteousness will never fail.

7 Listen to Me, you who know what is right,
you people with My law in your hearts:
Do not fear the scorn of men;
do not be broken by their insults.
8 For the moth will devour them like a garment,
and the worm will eat them like wool.
But My righteousness will last forever,
My salvation through all generations."

9 Awake, awake,
put on strength, O arm of Yahweh.
Wake up as in days past,
as in generations of old.
Was it not You who cut Rahab to pieces,
who pierced through the dragon?
10 Was it not You who dried up the sea,
the waters of the great deep,
who made a road in the depths of the sea
for the redeemed to cross over?
11 So the redeemed of Yahweh will return
and enter Zion with singing,
crowned with everlasting joy.
Gladness and joy will overtake them,
and sorrow and sighing will flee.

12 "I, even I, am He who comforts you.
Why should you be afraid of mortal man,
of a son of man who withers like grass?
13 But you have forgotten Yahweh, your Maker,
who stretched out the heavens
and laid the foundations of the earth.
You live in terror all day long
because of the fury of the oppressor
who is bent on destruction.
But where is the fury of the oppressor?
14 The captive will soon be freed;
he will not die in the dungeon,
and his bread will not be lacking.
15 For I am Yahweh your God
who stirs up the sea so that its waves roar—
Yahweh of Hosts is His name.
16 I have put My words in your mouth,

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

and covered you with the shadow of My hand,
to establish the heavens, to found the earth,
and to say to Zion, 'You are My people.'"

GOD'S FURY REMOVED

17 Awake, awake!
Rise up, O Jerusalem,
you who have drunk from the hand of Yahweh
the cup of His fury;
you who have drained the goblet to the dregs—
the cup that makes men stagger.
18 Among all the sons she bore,
there is no one to guide her;
among all the sons she brought up,
there is no one to take her hand.
19 These pairs have befallen you:
devastation and destruction,
famine and sword.
Who will grieve for you?
Who can comfort you?
20 Your sons have fainted;
they lie at the head of every street,
like an antelope in a net.
They are full of the wrath of Yahweh,
the rebuke of your God.

21 Therefore now hear this, you afflicted one,
drunken, but not with wine.
22 Thus says your Lord, Yahweh,
even your God, who defends His people:

"See, I have removed from your hand
the cup of staggering.
From that goblet, the cup of My fury,
you will never drink again.
23 I will place it in the hands of your tormentors,
who told you: 'Lie down, so we can walk over you,'
so that you made your back like the ground,
like a street to be traversed."

52

CHAPTER 52 IN 30 SECONDS

Wake up, Zion, and put on your best clothes. How beautiful on the mountains are the feet of those who bring good news. Then a quiet turn: My Servant will be lifted up, but first He will be so beaten that people are shocked at how He looks. Kings will shut their mouths at what they see.

DELIVERANCE FOR JERUSALEM

1 Awake, awake,
clothe yourself with strength, O Zion!
Put on your garments of splendor,
O Jerusalem, holy city!
For the uncircumcised and unclean
will no longer enter you.
2 Shake off your dust!
Rise up and sit on your throne, O Jerusalem.
Remove the chains from your neck,
O captive Daughter of Zion.

3 For this is what Yahweh says:

"You were sold for nothing,
and without money you will be redeemed."

4 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

"At first My people went down to Egypt to live,
then Assyria oppressed them without cause.
5 *And now what have I here?*
declares Yahweh.
For My people have been taken without cause;
those who rule them taunt,
declares Yahweh,
and My name is blasphemed continually
all day long.
6 Therefore My people will know My name;
therefore they will know on that day
that I am He who speaks.
Here I am!"

7 *How beautiful on the mountains*
are the feet of those who bring good news,
who proclaim peace, who bring good tidings,
who proclaim salvation,
who say to Zion, "Your God reigns!"

- **IS 52:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 2:24 p.1802
- **IS 52:7 [PROPHECY]** He would publish good tidings → ROM 10:15 · MEDIUM p.1812
- **IS 52:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:15 p.1812

MESSIANIC PROPECHIES END TIMES PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

8 Listen! Your watchmen lift up their
voices,
together they shout for joy.
For every eye will see
when Yahweh returns to Zion.
9 Break forth in joy, sing together,
O ruins of Jerusalem,
for Yahweh has comforted His people;
He has redeemed Jerusalem.
10 Yahweh has bared His holy arm
in the sight of all the nations;
all the ends of the earth will see
the salvation of our God.

11 *Depart, depart, go out from there!*
Touch no unclean thing;
come out from it, purify yourselves,
you who carry the vessels of Yahweh.
12 For you will not leave in a hurry
nor flee in haste,
for Yahweh goes before you,
and the God of Israel is your rear guard.

THE SERVANT EXALTED // PHILIPPIANS 2:5–11

13 Behold, My Servant will prosper;
He will be raised and lifted up and highly
exalted.
14 Just as many were appalled at Him—
His appearance was disfigured beyond
that of any man,
and His form was marred beyond hu-
man likeness—
15 *so He will sprinkle many nations.*
Kings will shut their mouths because of
Him.
For they will see what they have not been told,
and they will understand what they have
not heard.

53

CHAPTER 53 IN 30 SECONDS

The chapter that Christians call the Gospel in the Old Testament. The Servant is despised and rejected, a man of sorrows. He was pierced for our sins and crushed for our wrongs, and by His wounds we are healed. Silent like a lamb, buried with the rich, and yet He sees His offspring and lives on. A copy of this chapter was found in a scroll made about a century before Jesus.

THE SUFFERING SERVANT // ACTS 8:26–40; 1 PETER 2:21–25

1 *Who has believed our message?*
And to whom has the arm of Yahweh been
revealed?
2 He grew up before Him like a tender
shoot,
and like a root out of dry ground.
He had no stately form or majesty to at-
tract us,
no beauty that we should desire Him.
3 He was despised and rejected by men,
a man of sorrows, acquainted with grief.
Like one from whom men hide their faces,
He was despised, and we esteemed
Him not.

4 *Surely He took up our infirmities*
and carried our sorrows;
yet we considered Him stricken,
struck down by God, and afflicted.
5 *But He was pierced for our transgressions,*
He was crushed for our iniquities;
the punishment that brought us peace was
upon Him,
and by His stripes we are healed.

- **IS 52:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 6:15 p.1889
- **IS 52:8 [PROPHECY]** 'They shall see eye to eye when Yahweh brings back Zion' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 52:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 6:17 p.1854
- **IS 52:11 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 18:4 p.2107
- **IS 52:13 [PROPHECY]** The Servant exalted after suffering → ACTS 1:8-11; EPH 1:20-22; PHIL 2:8-9 p.1740
- **IS 52:14 [PROPHECY]** The Servant shockingly disfigured by abuse → LK 18:31-34; MT 26:67-68 p.1681
- **IS 52:15 [PROPHECY]** Nations startled by the message of the Servant → ROM 15:21 · MEDIUM p.1817
- **IS 52:15 [PROPHECY]** His sprinkled blood would cleanse the nations → HEB 9:13-14; REV 1:5 p.1989
- **IS 52:15 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 15:21 p.1817
- **IS 53:1 [PROPHECY]** His own people would not believe Him → JN 12:37-38 p.1722
- **IS 53:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 12:38 p.1722
- **IS 53:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:16 p.1813
- **IS 53:2 [PROPHECY]** Ordinary in physical appearance → PHIL 2:7 p.1896
- **IS 53:3 [PROPHECY]** Despised by men → LK 4:28-29 p.1655
- **IS 53:3 [PROPHECY]** Rejected by men → MT 27:21-23 p.1597
- **IS 53:3 [PROPHECY]** A man of sorrows acquainted with grief → MT 26:37-38; LK 19:41; HEB 4:15; MK 14:33-34 p.1594
- **IS 53:3 [PROPHECY]** Men hid their faces from Him → MK 14:50-52 p.1634
- **IS 53:4 [PROPHECY]** He bore our infirmities → MT 8:16-17 p.1561
- **IS 53:4 [PROPHECY]** Thought to be smitten and cursed by God → MT 26:66; 27:41-43 p.1596
- **IS 53:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 8:17 p.1561
- **IS 53:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:24 p.2014

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

6 *We all like sheep have gone astray,*
each one has turned to his own way;
and Yahweh has laid upon Him
the iniquity of us all.

7 *He was oppressed and afflicted,*
yet He did not open His mouth.
He was led like a lamb to the slaughter,
and as a sheep before her shearers is silent,
so He did not open His mouth.
8 *By oppression and judgment He was taken away,*
and who can recount His descendants?
For He was cut off from the land of the living;
He was stricken for the transgression of My people.

A GRAVE ASSIGNED // MATTHEW 27:57–61; MARK 15:42–47; LUKE 23:50–56; JOHN 19:38–42

9 *He was assigned a grave with the wicked,*
and with a rich man in His death,
although He had done no violence,
nor was any deceit in His mouth.

10 Yet it was Yahweh's will to crush Him
and to cause Him to suffer;
and when His soul is made a guilt offering,
He will see His offspring, He will prolong
His days,
and the good pleasure of Yahweh will
prosper in His hand.
11 After the anguish of His soul,
He will see the light of life and be satisfied.
By His knowledge My righteous Servant
will justify many,
and He will bear their iniquities.
12 *Therefore I will allot Him a portion with the great,*
and He will divide the spoils with the strong,
because He has poured out His life unto death,
and He was numbered with the transgressors.
Yet He bore the sin of many
and made intercession for the transgressors.

54

CHAPTER 54 IN 30 SECONDS

Sing, barren woman, because your kids are about to outnumber everyone. Make your tent bigger. God says He left for a brief moment, but He comes back with everlasting love. He promised Noah no more flood, and He promises His people no more anger. No weapon formed against you will prosper.

FUTURE BLESSINGS FOR ZION

1 *"Shout for joy, O barren woman,*
who bears no children;
break forth in song and cry aloud,
you who have never travailed;

- **IS 53:5 [PROPHECY]** Wounded for our transgressions → 2CO 5:21; HEB 2:9 p.1853
- **IS 53:5 [PROPHECY]** His sacrifice brings peace between man and God → COL 1:20 p.1904
- **IS 53:5 [PROPHECY]** By His stripes we are healed from sin → 1PE 2:24 p.2014
- **IS 53:6 [PROPHECY]** The Lord laid on Him the iniquity of us all → 1JN 2:2; 4:10 p.2041
- **IS 53:6 [PROPHECY]** God's will that He bear sin for all mankind → GAL 1:4 p.1866
- **IS 53:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:25 p.2014
- **IS 53:6 [FULFILLS]** The scapegoat carried the people's sins away into the wilderness ← LEV 16:21-22 · MEDIUM p.199
- **IS 53:7 [PROPHECY]** Oppressed and afflicted → MT 27:27-31 p.1598
- **IS 53:7 [PROPHECY]** Silent before His accusers → MT 27:12-14; 1PE 2:23 p.1597
- **IS 53:7 [PROPHECY]** Led as a lamb to the slaughter → JN 1:29; ACTS 8:32-35; 1PE 1:19; REV 5:6; 5:9 p.1699
- **IS 53:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 8:32-33 p.1754
- **IS 53:8 [PROPHECY]** Confined and persecuted by judgment → MT 26:47-27:31 p.1594
- **IS 53:8 [PROPHECY]** He would be judged → JN 18:13-22 p.1729
- **IS 53:8 [PROPHECY]** Cut off from the land of the living → MT 27:35 p.1598
- **IS 53:8 [PROPHECY]** Stricken for the transgression of the people → 1JN 2:2 p.2041
- **IS 53:9 [PROPHECY]** Buried in a rich man's grave → MT 27:57 p.1601
- **IS 53:9 [PROPHECY]** Innocent and had done no violence → LK 23:41; JN 18:38 p.1690
- **IS 53:9 [PROPHECY]** No deceit in His mouth → 1PE 2:22 p.2014
- **IS 53:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:22 p.2014
- **IS 53:10 [PROPHECY]** It pleased the Father to crush Him → JN 18:11 p.1729
- **IS 53:10 [PROPHECY]** An offering for sin → MT 20:28; GAL 3:13 p.1580
- **IS 53:10 [PROPHECY]** He would prolong His days → ROM 6:9 p.1805
- **IS 53:10 [PROPHECY]** The pleasure of the Lord would prosper in His hand → JN 17:1-5 p.1728
- **IS 53:11 [PROPHECY]** God fully satisfied with His suffering → JN 12:27 p.1722
- **IS 53:11 [PROPHECY]** God's righteous Servant would justify many → ROM 5:8-9, 18-19; 1PE 3:18 p.1804
- **IS 53:11 [PROPHECY]** He would bear the iniquities of many → HEB 9:28 p.1990
- **IS 53:11 [GOD SPEAKING]** God speaks again here, calling Him My righteous Servant. Verses 1 to 10 are the people telling what they saw, so they are not red.
- **IS 53:12 [PROPHECY]** Exalted by God because of His sacrifice → MT 28:18 p.1602
- **IS 53:12 [PROPHECY]** He poured out His soul unto death → LK 23:46 p.1690
- **IS 53:12 [PROPHECY]** Numbered with the transgressors (crucified between criminals) → MK 15:27-28 p.1636
- **IS 53:12 [PROPHECY]** Bore the sin of many → 1PE 2:24 p.2014
- **IS 53:12 [PROPHECY]** He would intercede for the transgressors → LK 23:34; ROM 8:34 p.1690
- **IS 53:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 22:37 p.1687
- **IS 53:12 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 9:28 p.1990
- **IS 53:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1PE 2:24 p.2014

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · END TIMES PROPHECIES
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW · GOD SPEAKING

because more are the children of the desolate
woman
than of her who has a husband,"
says Yahweh.
2 "Enlarge the site of your tent,
stretch out the curtains of your dwellings,
do not hold back.
Lengthen your ropes
and drive your stakes in deep.
3 For you will spread out to the right and left;
your descendants will dispossess the nations
and inhabit the desolate cities.

4 Do not be afraid, for you will not be put to shame;
do not be intimidated, for you will not be humiliated.
For you will forget the shame of your youth
and will remember no more the reproach of your widowhood.
5 For your husband is your Maker—
Yahweh of Hosts is His name—
the Holy One of Israel is your Redeemer;
He is called the God of all the earth.
6 For Yahweh has called you back,
like a wife deserted and wounded in spirit,
like the rejected wife of one's youth,"
says your God.

7 "For a brief moment I forsook you,
but with great compassion I will bring you back.
8 In a surge of anger
I hid My face from you for a moment,
but with everlasting kindness I will have compassion on you,"
says Yahweh your Redeemer.

9 "For to Me this is like the days of Noah,
when I swore that the waters of Noah
would never again cover the earth.
So I have sworn that I will not be angry with you
or rebuke you.
10 Though the mountains may be removed
and the hills may be shaken,
My loving devotion will not depart from you,
and My covenant of peace will not be broken,"
says Yahweh, who has compassion on you.

11 "O afflicted city, lashed by storms, without solace,
surely I will set your stones in antimony
and lay your foundations with sapphires.
12 I will make your pinnacles of rubies,
your gates of sparkling jewels,
and all your walls of precious stones.
13 *Then all your sons will be taught by Yahweh,*
and great will be their prosperity.
14 In righteousness you will be established,
far from oppression,
for you will have no fear.
Terror will be far removed,
for it will not come near you.

15 If anyone attacks you, it is not from Me;
whoever assails you will fall before you.
16 Behold, I have created the craftsman
who fans the coals into flame
and forges a weapon fit for its task;
and I have created the destroyer
to wreak havoc.
17 No weapon formed against you shall prosper,
and you will refute every tongue that accuses you.
This is the heritage of the servants of Yahweh,
and their vindication is from Me,"
declares Yahweh.

IS 54:1 [PROPHECY] The barren woman would have more children than the married one → GAL 4:26-27 · MEDIUM p.1872
IS 54:1 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 4:27 p.1872
IS 54:5 [FORESHADOW] 'Your Maker is your husband' → EPH 5:25-27; 5:32 · MEDIUM p.1888
IS 54:11 [PROPHECY] 'O afflicted one, tossed with tempest' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
IS 54:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:18-21 p.2114
IS 54:13 [PROPHECY] 'All your children shall be taught by Yahweh' → JN 6:45 p.1709
IS 54:13 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → JN 6:45 p.1709

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

55

CHAPTER 55 IN 30 SECONDS

The greatest free sale ever: Come, buy wine and milk without money. Why spend money on what does not satisfy? Seek God while He may be found. His thoughts are higher than our thoughts, and His word never comes back empty, like rain that always makes something grow. The trees clap their hands.

INVITATION TO THE NEEDY

1 "Come, all you who are thirsty,
come to the waters;
and you without money,
come, buy, and eat!
Come, buy wine and milk
without money and without cost!
2 Why spend money on that which is not bread,
and your labor on that which does not satisfy?
Listen carefully to Me, and eat what is good,
and your soul will delight in the richest of foods.

3 *Incline your ear and come to Me;*
listen, so that your soul may live.
I will make with you an everlasting covenant—
My loving devotion promised to David.
4 Behold, I have made him a witness to the nations,
a leader and commander of the peoples.
5 Surely you will summon a nation you do not know,
and nations who do not know you will run to you.
For Yahweh your God, the Holy One of Israel,
has bestowed glory on you."

6 Seek Yahweh while He may be found;
call on Him while He is near.
7 Let the wicked man forsake his way
and the unrighteous man his thoughts;
let him return to Yahweh,
that He may have compassion,
and to our God,
for He will freely pardon.

8 "For My thoughts are not your thoughts,
neither are your ways My ways,"
declares Yahweh.
9 "For as the heavens are higher than the earth,
so My ways are higher than your ways
and My thoughts than your thoughts.
10 For just as rain and snow fall from heaven
and do not return without watering the earth,
making it bud and sprout,
and providing seed to sow and food to eat,
11 so My word that proceeds from My mouth
will not return to Me empty,
but it will accomplish what I please,
and it will prosper where I send it.

12 You will indeed go out with joy
and be led forth in peace;
the mountains and hills will burst into song before you,
and all the trees of the field will clap their hands.
13 Instead of the thornbush, the cypress will grow,
and instead of the brier, the myrtle will spring up;
this will make a name for Yahweh,
an everlasting sign, never to be destroyed."

- **IS 55:3 [PROPHECY]** Raised from the dead by God → ACTS 13:34 p.1765
- **IS 55:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:34 p.1765
- **IS 55:4 [PROPHECY]** A witness to the people → JN 18:37 · MEDIUM p.1730
- **IS 55:4 [PROPHECY]** A leader and commander of the peoples → HEB 2:10 · MEDIUM p.1979
- **IS 55:5 [PROPHECY]** God would glorify Him → ACTS 3:13 · MEDIUM p.1746

56

CHAPTER 56 IN 30 SECONDS

Good news for outsiders. Foreigners and eunuchs, who were kept at a distance, get a name better than sons and daughters, and God's house will be a house of prayer for all nations. Jesus quotes that line while flipping tables in the temple. Meanwhile Israel's watchmen are lazy dogs that cannot bark.

SALVATION FOR FOREIGNERS

1 This is what Yahweh says:

"Maintain justice and do what is right,
for My salvation is coming soon,

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

and My righteousness will be revealed.
2 Blessed is the man who does this,
and the son of man who holds it fast,
who keeps the Sabbath without profaning it
and keeps his hand from doing any evil."

3 Let no foreigner who has joined himself to Yahweh say,
"Yahweh will utterly exclude me from His people."
And let the eunuch not say,
"I am but a dry tree."

4 For this is what Yahweh says:

"To the eunuchs who keep My Sabbaths,
who choose what pleases Me
and hold fast to My covenant—
5 I will give them, in My house and within My walls,
a memorial and a name
better than that of sons and daughters.
I will give them an everlasting name
that will not be cut off.

6 And the foreigners who join themselves to Yahweh
to minister to Him,
to love the name of Yahweh,
and to be His servants—
all who keep the Sabbath without profaning it
and who hold fast to My covenant—
7 *I will bring them to My holy mountain*
and make them joyful in My house of prayer.
Their burnt offerings and sacrifices
will be accepted on My altar.
for My house will be called a house of prayer
for all the nations."

8 Thus declares the Lord Yahweh,
who gathers the dispersed of Israel:

"I will gather to them still others
besides those already gathered."

ISRAEL'S SINFUL LEADERS

9 Come, all you beasts of the field;
eat greedily, all you beasts of the forest.
10 Israel's watchmen are blind,
they are all oblivious;
they are all mute dogs,
they cannot bark;
they are dreamers lying around,
loving to slumber.
11 Like ravenous dogs,
they are never satisfied.
They are shepherds with no discernment;
they all turn to their own way,
each one seeking his own gain:
12 "Come, let me get the wine,
let us imbibe the strong drink,
and tomorrow will be like today,
only far better!"

57

CHAPTER 57 IN 30 SECONDS

The good die and nobody notices. Idol worshipers make beds on the hills and sacrifice their children, and God calls them out. But the High and Holy One who lives forever also lives with the crushed and humble, to revive the heart of the contrite. Peace to the far and the near. But no peace for the wicked.

THE BLESSED DEATH OF THE RIGHTEOUS

1 The righteous perish,
and no one takes it to heart;
devout men are taken away,
while no one considers
that the righteous are taken away
from the presence of evil.

2 Those who walk uprightly enter into peace;
they find rest, lying down in death.

GOD CONDEMNS IDOLATRY

3 "But come here, you sons of a sorceress,
you offspring of adulterers and prostitutes!
4 Whom are you mocking?
At whom do you sneer and stick out your tongue?
Are you not children of transgression,
offspring of deceit,
5 who burn with lust among the oaks,
under every luxuriant tree,
who slaughter your children in the valleys,

- **IS 56:7 [PROPHECY]** 'My house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples' → MK 11:17 p.1628
- **IS 56:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 21:13 p.1582
- **IS 56:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 11:17 p.1628
- **IS 56:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 19:46 p.1683

- **IS 57:3 [DEMONIC]** Children slaughtered in the valleys and gifts to Molech

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

under the clefts of the rocks?
6 Your portion is among the smooth stones
of the valley;
indeed, they are your lot.
Even to them you have poured out a drink
offering
and offered a grain offering.
Should I relent because of these?
7 On a high and lofty hill you have made
your bed,
and there you went up to offer sacri-
fices.
8 Behind the door and doorpost
you have set up your memorial.
Forsaking Me, you uncovered your bed;
you climbed up and opened it wide.
And you have made a pact with those
whose bed you have loved;
you have gazed upon their nakedness.
9 You went to Molech with oil
and multiplied your perfumes.
You have sent your envoys a great dis-
tance;
you have descended even to Sheol it-
self.
10 You are wearied by your many journeys,
but you did not say, "There is no hope!"
You found renewal of your strength;
therefore you did not grow weak.
11 Whom have you dreaded and feared,
so that you lied and failed
to remember Me or take this to heart?
Is it not because I have long been silent
that you do not fear Me?
12 I will expose your righteousness and
your works,
and they will not profit you.
13 When you cry out,
let your companies of idols deliver you!
Yet the wind will carry off all of them,
a breath will take them away.
But he who seeks refuge in Me will inherit
the land
and possess My holy mountain."

HEALING FOR THE REPENTANT

14 And it will be said,

"Build it up, build it up, prepare the way,
take every obstacle out of the way of
My people."

15 For thus says the One who is high and
lifted up,
who inhabits eternity, whose name is
Holy:

"I dwell in a high and holy place,
and with the oppressed and humble in
spirit,
to restore the spirit of the lowly
and revive the heart of the contrite.
16 For I will not accuse you forever,
nor will I always be angry;
for then the spirit of man would grow
weak before Me—
the breath of life I have made.
17 I was enraged by his sinful greed,
so I struck him and hid My face in
anger;
yet he kept turning back
to the desires of his heart.
18 I have seen his ways,
but I will heal him;
I will guide him and restore comfort
to him and his mourners,
19 bringing praise to their lips.
Peace, peace to those far and near," says
Yahweh,
"and I will heal them."
20 But the wicked are like the storm-tossed
sea,
for it cannot be still,
and its waves churn up mire and muck.
21 "There is no peace," says my God,
"for the wicked."

IS 57:13 [DEMONIC] Let your collection of idols save you

IS 57:15 [HEART] God lives with the humble and revives the heart of the contrite.
IS 57:19 [PROPHECY] 'Peace to him that is far off and to him that is near' → EPH 2:17 p.1880
IS 57:19 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → EPH 2:17 p.1880
IS 57:20 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:13 p.2071

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW GOD SPEAKING

58

CHAPTER 58 IN 30 SECONDS

The people fast and ask why God is not impressed. Answer: you fast while you fight and cheat your workers. The fast God wants is breaking chains, feeding the hungry and bringing the homeless into your house. Do that, and your light breaks out like the dawn. Also, enjoy the Sabbath; God calls it a delight.

TRUE FASTS AND SABBATHS

1 "Cry aloud, do not hold back!
Raise your voice like a ram's horn.
Declare to My people their transgression
and to the house of Jacob their sins.
2 For day after day they seek Me
and delight to know My ways,
like a nation that does what is right
and does not forsake the justice of their God.
They ask Me for righteous judgments;
they delight in the nearness of God."

3 "Why have we fasted,
and You have not seen?
Why have we humbled ourselves,
and You have not noticed?"

"Behold, on the day of your fast, you do as you please,
and you oppress all your workers.
4 You fast with contention and strife
to strike viciously with your fist.
You cannot fast as you do today
and have your voice be heard on high.

5 Is this the fast I have chosen:
a day for a man to deny himself,
to bow his head like a reed,
and to spread out sackcloth and ashes?
Will you call this a fast
and a day acceptable to Yahweh?

6 *Isn't this the fast that I have chosen:*
to break the chains of wickedness,
to untie the cords of the yoke,
to set the oppressed free
and tear off every yoke?
7 Isn't it to share your bread with the hungry,
to bring the poor and homeless into your home,
to clothe the naked when you see him,
and not to turn away
from your own flesh and blood?

8 Then your light will break forth like the dawn,
and your healing will come quickly.
Your righteousness will go before you,
and the glory of Yahweh will be your rear guard.
9 Then you will call, and Yahweh will answer;
you will cry out, and He will say, 'Here I am.'
If you remove the yoke from your midst,
the pointing of the finger and malicious talk,
10 and if you give yourself to the hungry
and satisfy the afflicted soul,
then your light will go forth in the darkness,
and your night will be like noonday.
11 Yahweh will always guide you;
He will satisfy you in a sun-scorched land
and strengthen your frame.
You will be like a well-watered garden,
like a spring whose waters never fail.
12 Your people will rebuild the ancient ruins;
you will restore the age-old foundations;
you will be called Repairer of the Breach,
Restorer of the Streets of Dwelling.

13 If you turn your foot from breaking the Sabbath,
from doing as you please on My holy day,
if you call the Sabbath a delight,
and Yahweh's holy day honorable,
if you honor it by not going your own way
or seeking your own pleasure or speaking idle words,
14 then you will delight yourself in Yahweh,
and I will make you ride on the heights of the land
and feed you with the heritage of your father Jacob."
For the mouth of Yahweh has spoken.

IS 58:6 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → LK 4:18-19 p.1654

IS 58:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → JN 7:38 p.1711

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

59

CHAPTER 59 IN 30 SECONDS

God's arm is not too short and His ear is not clogged. Their sins built a wall. They weave spider webs and hatch snake eggs. The people finally confess, We are groping like the blind. God sees there is no one to step in, so He puts on righteousness like armor and comes Himself as the Redeemer.

SIN SEPARATES US FROM GOD // PSALM 14:1–7; PSALM 53:1–6; ROMANS 3:9–20

1 Surely the arm of Yahweh is not too short
to save,
nor His ear too dull to hear.
2 But your iniquities have built barriers
between you and your God,
and your sins have hidden His face from
you,
so that He does not hear.
3 For your hands are stained with blood,
and your fingers with iniquity;
your lips have spoken lies,
and your tongue mutters injustice.

4 No one calls for justice;
no one pleads his case honestly.
They rely on empty pleas; they tell lies;
they conceive mischief and give birth to
iniquity.
5 They hatch the eggs of vipers
and weave a spider's web.
Whoever eats their eggs will die;
crack one open, and a viper is hatched.
6 Their cobwebs cannot be made into
clothing,
and they cannot cover themselves with
their works.
Their deeds are sinful deeds,
and acts of violence are in their hands.

7 *Their feet run to evil;*
they are swift to shed innocent blood.
Their thoughts are sinful thoughts;
ruin and destruction lie in their wake.
8 *The way of peace they have not known,*
and there is no justice in their tracks.
They have turned them into crooked paths;
no one who treads on them will know peace.

9 Therefore justice is far from us,
and righteousness does not reach us.
We hope for light, but there is darkness;
for brightness, but we walk in gloom.
10 Like the blind, we feel our way along the
wall,
groping like those without eyes.
We stumble at midday as in the twilight;
among the vigorous we are like the
dead.
11 We all growl like bears
and moan like doves.
We hope for justice, but find none,
for salvation, but it is far from us.

12 For our transgressions are multiplied be-
fore You,
and our sins testify against us.
Our transgressions are indeed with us,
and we know our iniquities:
13 rebelling and denying Yahweh,
turning away from our God,
speaking oppression and revolt,
conceiving and uttering lies from the
heart.
14 So justice is turned away,
and righteousness stands at a distance.
For truth has stumbled in the public
square,
and honesty cannot enter.
15 Truth is missing,
and whoever turns from evil becomes
prey.

Yahweh looked and was displeased
that there was no justice.
16 He saw that there was no man;
He was amazed that there was no one
to intercede.
So His own arm brought salvation,
and His own righteousness sustained
Him.
17 He put on righteousness like a breast-
plate,
and the helmet of salvation on His head;
He put on garments of vengeance
and wrapped Himself in a cloak of zeal.

■ **IS 59:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 3:15-17 p.1803

■ **IS 59:16 [PROPHECY]** Intercessor between man and God → MT 10:32 · MEDIUM p.1564
■ **IS 59:16 [PROPHECY]** He would come to provide salvation → JN 6:40 p.1709
■ **IS 59:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 6:14 p.1889
■ **IS 59:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 6:17 p.1889
■ **IS 59:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1TH 5:8 p.1921

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

THE COVENANT OF THE REDEEMER

18 So He will repay according to their
deeds:
fury to His enemies,
retribution to His foes,
and recompense to the islands.
19 So shall they fear the name of Yahweh
where the sun sets,
and His glory where it rises.
For He will come like a raging flood,
driven by the breath of Yahweh.

20 *"The Redeemer will come to Zion,*
to those in Jacob who turn from transgression,"
declares Yahweh.

21 *"As for Me, this is My covenant with them,"* says Yahweh. *"My Spirit will not depart from you, and My words that I have put in your mouth will not depart from your mouth or from the mouths of your children and grandchildren, from now on and forevermore,"* says Yahweh.

60

CHAPTER 60 IN 30 SECONDS

Arise, shine, for your light has come. The whole world is dark, but God's glory rises on Zion and nations come to its light. Camels arrive carrying gold and frankincense, which sounds a lot like the wise men. The gates never close, the sun is not needed, and Yahweh is the everlasting light.

FUTURE GLORY FOR ZION

1 Arise, shine, for your light has come,
and the glory of Yahweh rises upon you.
2 For behold, darkness covers the earth,
and thick darkness is over the peoples;
but Yahweh will rise upon you,
and His glory will appear over you.
3 Nations will come to your light,
and kings to the brightness of your
dawn.

4 Lift up your eyes and look around:
They all gather and come to you;
your sons will come from afar,
and your daughters will be carried on
the arm.
5 Then you will look and be radiant,
and your heart will tremble and swell
with joy,
because the riches of the sea will be
brought to you,
and the wealth of the nations will come
to you.
6 Caravans of camels will cover your land,
young camels of Midian and Ephah,
and all from Sheba will come,
bearing gold and frankincense
and proclaiming the praises of Yahweh.
7 All the flocks of Kedar will be gathered to
you;
the rams of Nebaioth will serve you
and go up on My altar with acceptance;
I will adorn My glorious house.

8 Who are these who fly like clouds,
like doves to their shelters?
9 Surely the islands will wait for Me,
with the ships of Tarshish in the lead,
to bring your children from afar,
with their silver and gold,
to the honor of Yahweh your God,
the Holy One of Israel,
for He has glorified you.

10 Foreigners will rebuild your walls,
and their kings will serve you.
Although I struck you in anger,
yet in favor I will show you mercy.
11 Your gates will always stand open;
they will never be shut, day or night,
so that the wealth of the nations may be
brought into you,
with their kings being led in procession.
12 For the nation or kingdom that will not
serve you will perish;
it will be utterly destroyed.

13 The glory of Lebanon will come to you—
its cypress, elm, and boxwood
together—

- **IS 59:19 [PROPHECY]** From west to east the nations would fear the name of Yahweh → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **IS 59:20 [PROPHECY]** He would come to Zion as Redeemer → LK 2:38; ROM 11:26-27 p.1651
- **IS 59:20 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 11:26-27 p.1814
- **IS 60:1 [PROPHECY]** He would bring light to the Gentiles → ACTS 26:23 p.1792
- **IS 60:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → EPH 5:14 p.1888
- **IS 60:6 [PROPHECY]** Nations would come bearing gold and frankincense → MT 2:11 · MEDIUM p.1551
- **IS 60:6 [NOTABLE]** Old Testament prophecy that nations would bring gold and frankincense to worship — fulfilled at Christ's nativity by the Magi
- **IS 60:11 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:25 p.2114

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

to adorn the place of My sanctuary,
and I will glorify the place of My feet.
14 The sons of your oppressors
will come and bow down to you;
all who reviled you
will fall facedown at your feet
and call you the City of Yahweh,
Zion of the Holy One of Israel.

15 Whereas you have been forsaken and despised,
with no one passing through,
I will make you an everlasting pride,
a joy from age to age.
16 You will drink the milk of nations
and nurse at the breasts of royalty;
you will know that I, Yahweh, am your Savior
and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

17 Instead of bronze I will bring you gold;
I will bring silver in place of iron,
bronze instead of wood,
and iron instead of stones.
I will appoint peace as your governor
and righteousness as your ruler.
18 No longer will violence be heard in your land,
nor ruin or destruction within your borders.
But you will name your walls Salvation
and your gates Praise.

19 No longer will the sun be your light by day,
nor the brightness of the moon shine on your night;
for Yahweh will be your everlasting light,
and your God will be your splendor.
20 Your sun will no longer set,
and your moon will not wane;
for Yahweh will be your everlasting light,
and the days of your sorrow will cease.

21 Then all your people will be righteous;
they will possess the land forever;
they are the branch of My planting,
the work of My hands,
so that I may be glorified.

- **IS 60:19 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh Himself would be the everlasting light of His people → STILL TO COME
- **IS 60:19 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:23 p.2114

22 The least of you will become a thousand,
and the smallest a mighty nation.
I am Yahweh;
in its time I will accomplish it quickly.

61

CHAPTER 61 IN 30 SECONDS

The Spirit of the Lord is on Me to bring good news to the poor, bind up the broken hearted and free the captives. Jesus read this out loud in His hometown and then said, Today this is fulfilled, and stopped right before the day of vengeance. Ashes become a crown, and mourning becomes the oil of joy.

THE YEAR OF YAHWEH'S FAVOR // LUKE 4:16–30

1 *The Spirit of the Lord Yahweh is on Me,*
because Yahweh has anointed Me
to preach good news to the poor.
He has sent Me to bind up the brokenhearted,
to proclaim liberty to the captives
and freedom to the prisoners,
2 *to proclaim the year of Yahweh's favor*
and the day of our God's vengeance,
to comfort all who mourn,
3 to console the mourners in Zion—
to give them a crown of beauty for ashes,
the oil of joy for mourning,
and a garment of praise for a spirit of despair.
So they will be called oaks of righteousness,
the planting of Yahweh, that He may be glorified.

4 They will rebuild the ancient ruins;
they will restore the places long devastated;

- **IS 61:1 [PROPHECY]** The Spirit of the Lord upon Him → MT 3:16-17 p.1554
- **IS 61:1 [PROPHECY]** He would preach the good news (Gospel) → LK 4:16-21 p.1654
- **IS 61:1 [PROPHECY]** Provide freedom from the bondage of sin → JN 8:31-36 p.1713
- **IS 61:1 [PROPHECY]** He would proclaim a period of grace (the acceptable year) → LK 4:18-21 p.1654
- **IS 61:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 11:5 p.1565
- **IS 61:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 4:18-19 p.1654
- **IS 61:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 7:22 p.1661
- **IS 61:1 [MESSIAH SPEAKING]** Jesus read these words in the synagogue at Nazareth and said, Today this Scripture is fulfilled in your hearing, Luke 4:16 to 21. He stopped before the day of vengeance in 61:2.
- **IS 61:2 [PROPHECY]** The Messiah would proclaim the day of God's vengeance → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

GOD SPEAKING

they will renew the ruined cities,
the desolations of many generations.
5 Strangers will stand and feed your flocks,
and foreigners will be your plowmen and vinedressers.
6 But you will be called the priests of Yahweh;
they will speak of you as ministers of our God;
you will feed on the wealth of nations,
and you will boast in their riches.
7 Instead of shame, My people will have a double portion,
and instead of humiliation, they will rejoice in their share;
and so they will inherit a double portion in their land,
and everlasting joy will be theirs.

8 For I, Yahweh, love justice;
I hate robbery and iniquity;
in My faithfulness I will give them their recompense
and make an everlasting covenant with them.
9 Their descendants will be known among the nations,
and their offspring among the peoples.
All who see them will acknowledge
that they are a people Yahweh has blessed.

10 I will rejoice greatly in Yahweh,
my soul will exult in my God;
for He has clothed me with garments of salvation
and wrapped me in a robe of righteousness,
as a bridegroom wears a priestly headdress,
as a bride adorns herself with her jewels.
11 For as the earth brings forth its growth,
and as a garden enables seed to spring up,
so the Lord Yahweh will cause righteousness and praise
to spring up before all the nations.

62

CHAPTER 62 IN 30 SECONDS

God will not rest until Jerusalem shines. She will not be called Forsaken anymore but Hephzibah, My delight is in her, and her land Beulah, married. Watchmen on the walls are told to keep reminding God, and not to give Him any rest. Then a shout to the whole earth: Your Savior is coming!

ZION'S SALVATION AND NEW NAME

1 For Zion's sake I will not keep silent,
and for Jerusalem's sake I will not keep still,
until her righteousness shines like a bright light,
her salvation like a blazing torch.
2 Nations will see your righteousness,
and all kings your glory.
You will be called by a new name
that the mouth of Yahweh will bestow.
3 You will be a crown of glory in the hand of Yahweh,
a royal diadem in the palm of your God.
4 No longer will you be called Forsaken,
nor your land named Desolate;
but you will be called Hephzibah,
and your land Beulah;
for Yahweh will take delight in you,
and your land will be His bride.
5 For as a young man marries a young woman,
so your sons will marry you;
and as a bridegroom rejoices over his bride,
so your God will rejoice over you.

6 On your walls, O Jerusalem, I have posted watchmen;
they will never be silent day or night.
You who call on Yahweh
shall take no rest for yourselves,
7 nor give Him any rest
until He establishes Jerusalem
and makes her the praise of the earth.

8 Yahweh has sworn by His right hand
and by His mighty arm:
"Never again will I give your grain
to your enemies for food,
nor will foreigners drink the new wine
for which you have toiled.
9 For those who harvest grain

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · END TIMES PROPHECIES · GOD SPEAKING

will eat it and praise Yahweh,
and those who gather grapes
will drink the wine in My holy courts."

10 Go out, go out through the gates;
prepare the way for the people!
Build it up, build up the highway;
clear away the stones;
raise a banner for the nations!

11 Behold, Yahweh has proclaimed
to the ends of the earth,
"Say to Daughter Zion:
See, your Savior comes!
Look, His reward is with Him,
and His recompense goes before Him."

12 And they will be called the Holy People,
the Redeemed of Yahweh;
and you will be called Sought Out,
A City Not Forsaken.

63

CHAPTER 63 IN 30 SECONDS

Someone marches in from Edom with red stained clothes. Why? Because He has trodden the wine-press of judgment alone. Revelation 19 picks up this picture. Then Isaiah remembers the old days when God carried His people, and he prays, You are our Father. Abraham may not know us, but You do.

GOD'S VENGEANCE ON THE NATIONS

1 Who is this coming from Edom,
from Bozrah with crimson-stained garments?
Who is this robed in splendor,
marching in the greatness of His strength?

"It is I, proclaiming vindication,
mighty to save."

2 Why are Your clothes red,
and Your garments like one who treads the winepress?

3 "I have trodden the winepress alone,
and no one from the nations was with Me.
I trampled them in My anger
and trod them down in My fury;
their blood spattered My garments,
and all My clothes were stained.

4 For the day of vengeance was in My heart,
and the year of My redemption had come.
5 I looked, but there was no one to help;
I was appalled that no one assisted.
So My arm brought Me salvation,
and My own wrath upheld Me.
6 I trampled the nations in My anger;
in My wrath I made them drunk
and poured out their blood on the ground."

GOD'S MERCIES RECALLED

7 I will make known Yahweh's loving devotion
and His praiseworthy acts,
because of all that Yahweh has done for us—
the many good things for the house of Israel
according to His great compassion and loving devotion.

8 For He said, "They are surely My people,
sons who will not be disloyal."
So He became their Savior.
9 In all their distress, He too was afflicted,
and the Angel of His Presence saved them.
In His love and compassion He redeemed them;
He lifted them up and carried them
all the days of old.

10 But they rebelled
and grieved His Holy Spirit.
So He turned and became their enemy,
and He Himself fought against them.

11 Then His people remembered the days of old,
the days of Moses.
Where is He who brought them through the sea
with the shepherds of His flock?
Where is the One who set
His Holy Spirit among them,

IS 62:11 [PROPHECY] Say to Daughter Zion, your Savior comes → MT 21:4-5 · MEDIUM p.1580

IS 63:3 [PROPHECY] Yahweh would tread the winepress of His wrath alone with stained garments → STILL TO COME

IS 63:3 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 14:19-20 p.2104

IS 63:3 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 19:15 p.2110

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

12 who sent His glorious arm
to lead them by the right hand of Moses,
who divided the waters before them
to gain for Himself everlasting renown,
13 who led them through the depths
like a horse in the wilderness,
so that they did not stumble?
14 Like cattle going down to the valley,
the Spirit of Yahweh gave them rest.
You led Your people this way
to make for Yourself a glorious name.

A PRAYER FOR MERCY // JEREMIAH 14:19–22

15 Look down from heaven and see,
from Your holy and glorious habitation.
Where are Your zeal and might?
Your yearning and compassion for me are restrained.
16 Yet You are our Father,
though Abraham does not know us
and Israel does not acknowledge us.
You, O Yahweh, are our Father;
our Redeemer from Everlasting is Your name.

17 Why, O Yahweh, do You make us stray from Your ways
and harden our hearts from fearing You?
Return, for the sake of Your servants,
the tribes of Your heritage.
18 For a short while Your people possessed Your holy place,
but our enemies have trampled Your sanctuary.
19 We have become like those You never ruled,
like those not called by Your name.

64

CHAPTER 64 IN 30 SECONDS

Oh that You would tear open the heavens and come down! The prophet admits that even our best deeds are like filthy rags. But then he says it plainly: You are the potter, we are the clay. Please do not stay angry forever, because the temple is burned and Jerusalem is a wasteland.

A PRAYER FOR GOD'S POWER

1 If only You would rend the heavens and come down,
so that mountains would quake at Your presence,
2 as fire kindles the brushwood
and causes the water to boil,
to make Your name known to Your enemies,
so that the nations will tremble at Your presence!

3 When You did awesome works that we did not expect,
You came down, and the mountains trembled at Your presence.
4 *From ancient times no one has heard,*
no ear has perceived,
no eye has seen any God besides You,
who acts on behalf of those who wait for Him.

5 You welcome those who gladly do right,
who remember Your ways.
Surely You were angry, for we sinned.
How can we be saved if we remain in our sins?
6 Each of us has become like something unclean,
and all our righteous acts are like filthy rags;
we all wither like a leaf,
and our iniquities carry us away like the wind.
7 No one calls on Your name
or strives to take hold of You.
For You have hidden Your face from us
and delivered us into the hand of our iniquity.

8 But now, O Yahweh, You are our Father;
we are the clay, and You are the potter;
we are all the work of Your hand.
9 Do not be angry, O Yahweh, beyond measure;
do not remember our iniquity forever.
Oh, look upon us, we pray;
we are all Your people!
10 Your holy cities have become a wilderness.
Zion has become a wasteland and Jerusalem a desolation.
11 Our holy and beautiful temple,
where our fathers praised You,
has been burned with fire,
and all that was dear to us lies in ruins.
12 After all this, O Yahweh,

■ **IS 64:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 2:9 p.1825

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

will You restrain Yourself?
Will You keep silent
and afflict us beyond measure?

65

CHAPTER 65 IN 30 SECONDS

God says He was found by people who were not even looking for Him, while His own people kept eating pork and burning incense to other gods. Then He announces new heavens and a new earth, where a hundred year old is considered young, nobody builds a house for someone else to live in, and the wolf and the lamb eat together.

JUDGMENTS AND PROMISES // ROMANS 10:1–21

1 *"I revealed Myself to those who did not ask*
for Me;
I was found by those who did not seek Me.
To a nation that did not call My name,
I said, 'Here I am! Here I am!'
2 *All day long I have held out My hands*
to an obstinate people
who walk in the wrong path,
who follow their own imaginations,
3 to a people who continually provoke Me
to My face,
sacrificing in the gardens
and burning incense on altars of brick,
4 sitting among the graves,
spending nights in secret places,
eating the meat of pigs
and polluted broth from their bowls.
5 They say, 'Keep to yourself;
do not come near me, for I am holier
than you!'
Such people are smoke in My nostrils,
a fire that burns all day long.
6 Behold, it is written before Me:
I will not keep silent, but I will repay;
I will pay it back into their laps,
7 both for your iniquities
and for those of your fathers,"
says Yahweh.
"Because they burned incense on the
mountains
and scorned Me on the hills,
I will measure into their laps
full payment for their former deeds."

8 This is what Yahweh says:

"As the new wine is found in a cluster of
grapes,
and men say, 'Do not destroy it, for it
contains a blessing,'
so I will act on behalf of My servants;
I will not destroy them all.
9 And I will bring forth descendants from
Jacob,
and heirs from Judah;
My elect will possess My mountains,
and My servants will dwell there.
10 Sharon will become a pasture for flocks,
and the Valley of Achor a resting place
for herds,
for My people who seek Me.

11 But you who forsake Yahweh,
who forget My holy mountain,
who set a table for Fortune
and fill bowls of mixed wine for Destiny,
12 I will destine you for the sword,
and you will all kneel down to be
slaughtered,
because I called and you did not answer,
I spoke and you did not listen;
you did evil in My sight
and chose that in which I did not de-
light."

13 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

"My servants will eat,
but you will go hungry;
My servants will drink,
but you will go thirsty;
My servants will rejoice,
but you will be put to shame.
14 My servants will shout for joy with a
glad heart,
but you will cry out with a heavy heart
and wail with a broken spirit.

15 You will leave behind your name
as a curse for My chosen ones,
and the Lord Yahweh will slay you;
but to His servants He will give another
name.

IS 65:1 [PROPHECY] God would be found by people who did not seek Him while Israel stayed stubborn → ROM 10:20-21; ACTS 13:46-48 p.1813
IS 65:1 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:20-21 p.1813
IS 65:3 [DEMONIC] People sacrifice in gardens and sit among graves
IS 65:7 [DEMONIC] They burned incense on the mountains to other gods
IS 65:11 [DEMONIC] They set a table for the gods Fortune and Destiny

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

16 Whoever invokes a blessing in the land
will do so by the God of truth,
and whoever takes an oath in the land
will swear by the God of truth.
For the former troubles will be forgotten
and hidden from My sight.

A NEW HEAVEN AND A NEW EARTH // REVELATION 21:1–8

17 *For behold, I will create*
new heavens and a new earth.
The former things will not be remembered,
nor will they come to mind.
18 But be glad and rejoice forever
in what I create;
for I will create Jerusalem to be a joy
and its people to be a delight.
19 I will rejoice in Jerusalem
and take delight in My people.
The sounds of weeping and crying
will no longer be heard in her.

20 No longer will a nursing infant live but a few days,
or an old man fail to live out his years.
For the youth will die at a hundred years,
and he who fails to reach a hundred
will be considered accursed.
21 They will build houses and dwell in them;
they will plant vineyards and eat their fruit.

22 No longer will they build houses for others to inhabit,
nor plant for others to eat.
For as is the lifetime of a tree,
so will be the days of My people,
and My chosen ones will fully enjoy
the work of their hands.

23 They will not labor in vain
or bear children doomed to disaster;
for they will be a people blessed by Yahweh—
they and their descendants with them.
24 Even before they call, I will answer,
and while they are still speaking, I will hear.

25 The wolf and the lamb will feed together,
and the lion will eat straw like the ox,
but the food of the serpent will be dust.
They will neither harm nor destroy
on all My holy mountain,"
says Yahweh.

66

CHAPTER 66 IN 30 SECONDS

Heaven is God's throne and earth His footstool, so nobody can build Him a house. He looks to the humble who tremble at His word. Can a nation be born in a day? Zion gives birth before labor even starts. All nations come to see His glory. The book ends with new heavens, a new earth, and a hard warning for the rebels.

HEAVEN IS MY THRONE

1 *This is what Yahweh says:*

"Heaven is My throne,
and earth is My footstool.
What kind of house will you build for Me?
Or where will My place of repose be?
2 *Has not My hand made all these things?*
And so they came into being,"
declares Yahweh.
"This is the one I will esteem:
he who is humble and contrite in spirit,
who trembles at My word.

3 Whoever slaughters an ox is like one who slays a man;
whoever sacrifices a lamb is like one who breaks a dog's neck;
whoever presents a grain offering is like one who offers pig's blood;
whoever offers frankincense is like one who blesses an idol.
Indeed, they have chosen their own ways
and delighted in their abominations.
4 So I will choose their punishment
and I will bring terror upon them,
because I called and no one answered,
I spoke and no one listened.
But they did evil in My sight

- **IS 65:17 [PROPHECY]** God would create new heavens and a new earth → STILL TO COME
- **IS 65:17 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 2:9 p.1825
- **IS 65:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:13 p.2034
- **IS 65:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:1 p.2113
- **IS 66:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:49-50 p.1752
- **IS 66:3 [DEMONIC]** Burning incense is like blessing an idol

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

and chose that in which I did not delight."

5 You who tremble at His word,
hear the word of Yahweh:

"Your brothers who hate you
and exclude you because of My name
have said, 'Let Yahweh be glorified
that we may see your joy!'
But they will be put to shame."

6 Hear the uproar from the city;
listen to the voice from the temple!
It is the voice of Yahweh,
repaying His enemies what they deserve!

REJOICE WITH JERUSALEM

7 "Before she was in labor, she gave birth;
before she was in pain, she delivered a boy.
8 Who has heard of such as this?
Who has seen such things?
Can a country be born in a day
or a nation be delivered in an instant?
Yet as soon as Zion was in labor,
she gave birth to her children.
9 Shall I bring a baby to the point of birth
and not deliver it?"
says Yahweh.
"Or will I who deliver close the womb?"
says your God.

10 Be glad for Jerusalem and rejoice over her,
all who love her.
Rejoice greatly with her,
all who mourn over her,
11 so that you may nurse and be satisfied
at her comforting breasts;
you may drink deeply and delight yourselves
in her glorious abundance.

12 For this is what Yahweh says:

"I will extend peace to her like a river,
and the wealth of nations like a flowing stream;
you will nurse and be carried on her arm,
and bounced upon her knees.
13 As a mother comforts her son,
so will I comfort you,
and you will be consoled over Jerusalem."

14 When you see, you will rejoice,
and you will flourish like grass;
then the hand of Yahweh will be revealed to His servants,
but His wrath will be shown to His enemies.

FINAL JUDGMENTS AGAINST THE WICKED

15 For behold, Yahweh will come with fire—
His chariots are like a whirlwind—
to execute His anger with fury
and His rebuke with flames of fire.
16 For by fire and by His sword,
Yahweh will execute judgment on all flesh,
and many will be slain by Yahweh.
17 "Those who consecrate and purify themselves to enter the groves—to follow one in the center of those who eat the flesh of swine and vermin and rats—will perish together," declares Yahweh.
18 "And I, knowing their deeds and thoughts, am coming to gather all nations and tongues, and they will come and see My glory.
19 I will establish a sign among them, and I will send survivors from among them to the nations—to Tarshish, Put, and the archers of Lud; to Tubal, Javan, and the islands far away who have not heard of My fame or seen My glory.
So they will proclaim My glory among the nations. 20 And they will bring all your brothers from all the nations as a gift to Yahweh on horses and chariots and wagons, on mules and camels, to My holy mountain Jerusalem," says Yahweh, "just as the Israelites bring an offering in a clean vessel to the house of Yahweh."
21 "And I will select some of them as priests and Levites," says Yahweh.
22 "For just as the new heavens and the new earth,

IS 66:8 [PROPHECY] Shall a nation be born in a day? → HISTORY: The modern State of Israel declared itself a nation in one day, May 14, 1948. Found in Israel's Declaration of Independence. Many Christians see this verse here, while others see Zion's return from exile. · MEDIUM

IS 66:15 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2TH 1:8 p.1926

IS 66:17 [DEMONIC] People who purify themselves for pagan groves will perish

END TIMES PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

which I will make, will endure before
Me,"
declares Yahweh,
"so your descendants and your name
will endure.
23 From one New Moon to another
and from one Sabbath to another,
all mankind will come to worship before
Me,"
says Yahweh.
24 *"As they go forth, they will see the corpses*
of the men who have rebelled against Me;
for their worm will never die,
their fire will never be quenched,
and they will be a horror
to all mankind."

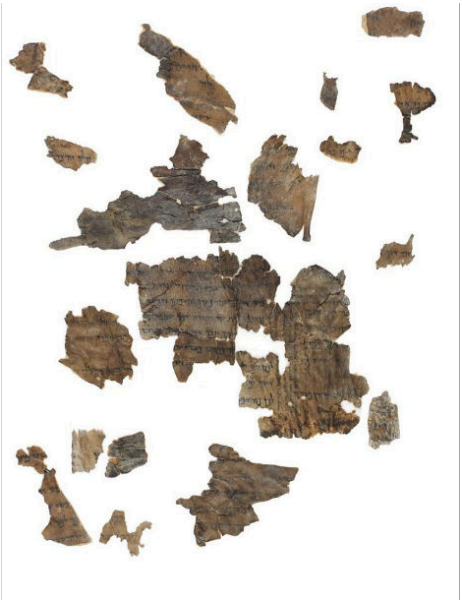
- **IS 66:22 [PROPHECY]** The new heavens and new earth would endure forever → STILL TO COME
- **IS 66:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:13 p.2034
- **IS 66:22 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:1 p.2113
- **IS 66:24 [PROPHECY]** The rebels would face a worm that never dies and a fire never quenched → STILL TO COME
- **IS 66:24 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 9:48 p.1625

BOOK 24 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MAJOR PROPHETS

JEREMIAH

The Weeping Prophet

AUTHOR	Jeremiah son of Hilkiah, a priest from Anathoth, 1:1. His helper Baruch wrote down his words, 36:4.
DATE	Jeremiah preached about 627 to 580 BC, from King Josiah's thirteenth year, 1:2, until after Jerusalem fell in 586 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Judah in its last forty years, and the exiles taken to Babylon, 29:1.
KEY VERSE	Jeremiah 31:33. I will put My law in their minds and inscribe it on their hearts. And I will be their God, and they will be My people.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF JEREMIAH
Pieces of 4QJer a, from Qumran Cave 4, on one museum plate. It was copied about 200 BC, which makes it one of the oldest Bible scrolls ever found. Five Jeremiah scrolls came from Cave 4 and one from Cave 2. Two of them, 4QJer b and d, follow the shorter Greek version of the book. See Why Is the Greek Jeremiah Shorter?

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Judah's last kings are on the throne: Josiah, then his sons and grandson. Assyria is falling, and Babylon is rising fast. For forty years Jeremiah warns that Babylon is coming, and almost nobody listens. He is beaten, jailed and thrown into a muddy pit. In 586 BC Jerusalem burns, just as he said, and he is dragged off to Egypt.

What Was Going Wrong

IDOLS. Baal on the rooftops, 32:29, and cakes for the Queen of Heaven, 7:18 and 44:17.
CHILD SACRIFICE. Children burned at Topheth in the valley of Ben Hinnom. God says it never even entered His heart, 7:31, 19:5 and 32:35.
FALSE PROPHETS. Peace, peace, when there is no peace, 6:14. Hananiah, 28:1 to 17.
A LUCKY CHARM TEMPLE. They thought the temple would save them however they lived, 7:4.
BROKEN PROMISES. They freed their slaves, then took them back, 34:8 to 11.

The Idiot Proof Summary

God calls Jeremiah as a young man to warn Judah: turn from your idols, or Babylon will destroy Jerusalem. For forty years he preaches, weeps, acts out object lessons and gets arrested, while kings and prophets tell the people everything is fine. In the middle of the darkness God promises a new covenant, a new heart and a righteous Branch from David. Then it all happens just as Jeremiah said. Jerusalem burns in 586 BC, the people go to Babylon for seventy years, and the book ends with a small light: the king of Judah set free from prison.

Jeremiah at a Glance

CH 1	**THE CALL** Before you were born I set you apart.
CH 2 to 25	**WARNINGS TO JUDAH** Return to Me, or Babylon will come.
CH 26 to 45	**JEREMIAH'S LIFE** Plots, prison, the new covenant, the fall.
CH 46 to 51	**THE NATIONS** Egypt to Babylon, every nation answers to God.
CH 52	**JERUSALEM FALLS** The temple burns; Jehoiachin is set free.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JEREMIAH 31:31 The new covenant. At the Last Supper Jesus said, This cup is the new covenant in My blood, Luke 22:20. Hebrews 8 quotes Jeremiah's whole promise.

JEREMIAH 23:5 The righteous Branch of David, Yahweh Our Righteousness. Jesus became our righteousness, 1 Corinthians 1:30.

JEREMIAH 7:11 A den of robbers. Jesus quoted it when He cleared the temple, Matthew 21:13.

JEREMIAH 31:15 Rachel weeping for her children. Matthew 2:18 quotes it about the babies of Bethlehem.

GOD'S NAMES IN JEREMIAH
Yahweh more than 700 times, and Yahweh of Hosts more than 70. The Branch is called Yahweh Our Righteousness, 23:6. Later Jerusalem is given the same name, 33:16.

What to Watch for in Jeremiah

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (8)	23:5-6, 30:9, 31:15, 31:22, 31:31-34, 33:14-15
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (28)	1:15, 7:14, 13:9-10, 16:14-15, 19:10-11, 20:4-6, 21:7 and 19 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (19)	22:18-19, 22:30, 30:7-8, 30:10-11, 43:10-11, 46:6, 46:13 and 13 more
THE HEART (10)	3:15, 4:4, 11:20, 12:3, 17:9-10, 20:12, 24:7 and 2 more

ARCHAEOLOGY (8)	34:7, 36:4, 36:10, 38:1, 39:3, 40:14, 44:30 and 1 more
DEMONIC (60)	1:16, 2:5, 2:8, 2:11, 2:20, 2:23-28, 3:6-10 and 52 more
NOTABLE (8)	1:5, 6:16, 9:23-24, 17:7-8, 18:1-6, 29:11-12, 31:3 and 1 more
GOD SPEAKING (877 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (69 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE LONGEST BOOK
Counting the Hebrew words, Jeremiah is the longest book in the Bible, a little longer than Genesis and Psalms.

THE BURNED SCROLL
King Jehoiakim cut Jeremiah's scroll into pieces and burned it. Jeremiah dictated it again, with more, 36:32.

THEY THOUGHT JESUS WAS JEREMIAH
Some people said Jesus was Jeremiah come back, Matthew 16:14.

NO WIFE
God told Jeremiah not to marry, 16:2, the only person in the Old Testament told that.

How Does It End?

Jerusalem falls in 586 BC and the temple burns, 52:12 to 13. The last scene is a small light: in the 37th year of his exile, King Jehoiachin is set free and eats at the king of Babylon's table, 52:31 to 34. David's line is still alive.

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells a young priest's son, Before you were born I chose you. Jeremiah says, I am too young. God touches his mouth and gives him two pictures: an almond branch and a boiling pot tipping from the north. Trouble is coming, and Jeremiah has to say so.

THE CALL OF JEREMIAH

1 These are the words of Jeremiah son of Hilkiah, one of the priests in Anathoth in the territory of Benjamin.

2 The word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah in the thirteenth year of the reign of Josiah son of Amon king of Judah, 3 and through the days of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah, until the fifth month of the eleventh year of Zedekiah son of Josiah king of Judah, when the people of Jerusalem went into exile.

4 The word of Yahweh came to me, saying:

5 "Before I formed you in the womb I knew you,
and before you were born I set you apart
and appointed you as a prophet to the nations."

6 "Ah, Lord Yahweh," I said, "I surely do not know how to speak, for I am only a child!"

7 But Yahweh told me:

"Do not say,
'I am only a child.'
For to everyone I send you,
you must go,
and all that I command you,
you must speak.
8 Do not be afraid of them,
for I am with you to deliver you,"
declares Yahweh.

9 Then Yahweh reached out His hand, touched my mouth, and said to me:

"Behold, I have put My words
in your mouth.
10 See, I have appointed you today
over nations and kingdoms
to uproot and tear down,
to destroy and overthrow,
to build and plant."

- **JER 1:1 [NOTE]** JEREMIAH. His name means Yahweh lifts up or Yahweh throws down. He was a priest's son from Anathoth, a village about three miles north of Jerusalem.
- **JER 1:1 [NOTE]** A DIFFERENT ORDER. The Greek Old Testament has a shorter Jeremiah, in a different order. See the Big Question Why Is the Greek Jeremiah Shorter?
- **JER 1:5 [NOTABLE]** God knew you before you were born and made you for a purpose.
- **JER 1:5 [NOTE]** BEFORE I FORMED YOU. God knew Jeremiah and set him apart before he was born. Paul says the same about himself, Galatians 1:15. Many Christians read this verse as a sign that God values life in the womb.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY IS THE GREEK JEREMIAH SHORTER?

Two Editions of One Book

JEREMIAH 1:1 · 36:32 · 25:13 · 46 TO 51

THE PUZZLE

The Septuagint, the Greek Old Testament made about 200 BC, has a Jeremiah about one eighth shorter than the Hebrew. It also puts the messages to the nations, chapters 46 to 51, in the middle, right after 25:13, and in a different order.

THE SCROLLS

Among the Dead Sea Scrolls, 4QJer a and c follow the longer Hebrew text. 4QJer b and d follow the shorter text like the Greek. So both forms were being copied in Hebrew at the same time.

A CLUE IN THE BOOK

Jeremiah wrote his words more than once. After the king burned the first scroll, Jeremiah dictated it again, and many similar words were added, 36:32.

Every View

4QJER B · 4QJER D · THE SEPTUAGINT

VIEW 1: TWO EDITIONS

Many scholars think Jeremiah's words came out in two editions: a shorter one first, which the Greek follows, and a longer one later, which became the Hebrew Bible. Many conservative scholars hold that both go back to Jeremiah and Baruch.

VIEW 2: THE GREEK TRANSLATOR SHORTENED IT

Others say the translator left out repeated lines and titles. Much of what is missing in the Greek is repeats, like 33:14 to 26 and many uses of declares Yahweh.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

VIEW 3: THE HEBREW GREW
Others say later scribes added to the shorter form, filling in names and titles.
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
No major teaching is missing in either form. This Bible follows the longer Hebrew text, like nearly all English Bibles.

11 And the word of Yahweh came to me, asking, "Jeremiah, what do you see?"

"I see a branch of an almond tree," I replied.

12 "You have observed correctly," said Yahweh, "for I am watching over My word to accomplish it."

13 Again the word of Yahweh came to me, asking, "What do you see?"

"I see a boiling pot," I replied, "and it is tilting toward us from the north."

14 Then Yahweh said to me, "Disaster from the north will be poured out on all who live in the land. 15 For I am about to summon all the clans and kingdoms of the north," declares Yahweh.

"Their kings will come and set up their thrones
at the entrance of the gates of Jerusalem.
They will attack all her surrounding walls
and all the other cities of Judah.
16 I will pronounce My judgments against them
for all their wickedness,
because they have forsaken Me,
and they have burned incense to other gods
and worshiped the works of their own hands.

17 Get yourself ready. Stand up and tell them everything that I command you. Do not be intimidated by them, or I will terrify you before them. 18 Now behold, this day I have made you like a fortified city, an iron pillar, and bronze walls against the whole land—against the kings of Judah, its officials, its priests, and the people of the land. 19 They will fight against you but will never overcome you, since I am with you to deliver you," declares Yahweh.

JER 1:11 [NOTE] A WORD PLAY. Almond is shaqed, and watching is shoqed. The almond is the first tree to wake up in spring, and God is wide awake over His word.
JER 1:15 [PROPHECY] Kings from the north would set their thrones at the gates of Jerusalem → JER 39:3 p.1205
JER 1:16 [DEMONIC] They burned incense to other gods and worshiped their own work

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
God sounds like a hurt husband. Israel loved Him once, then traded the spring of living water for leaky homemade tanks. They run after other gods like a runaway camel and still say, I have done nothing wrong.

ISRAEL HAS FORSAKEN GOD

1 Now the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Go and proclaim in the hearing of Jerusalem that this is what Yahweh says:

'I remember the devotion of your youth,
your love as a bride,
how you followed Me in the wilderness,
in a land not sown.
3 Israel was holy to Yahweh,
the firstfruits of His harvest.
All who devoured her
were found guilty;
disaster came upon them,'"
declares Yahweh.

4 Hear the word of Yahweh, O house of Jacob, and all you families of the house of Israel. 5 This is what Yahweh says:

"What fault did your fathers find in Me
that they strayed so far from Me?
They followed worthless idols,
and became worthless themselves.
6 They did not ask, 'Where is Yahweh
who brought us up from the land of Egypt,
who led us through the wilderness,
through a land of deserts and pits,
a land of drought and darkness,
a land where no one travels and no one lives?'

7 I brought you into a fertile land
to eat its fruit and bounty,
but you came and defiled My land
and made My inheritance detestable.
8 The priests did not ask,
'Where is Yahweh?'

JER 2:5 [DEMONIC] They followed worthless idols and became worthless

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

The experts in the law no longer knew
Me,
and the leaders rebelled against Me.
The prophets prophesied by Baal
and followed useless idols.

9 Therefore, I will contend with you again,
declares Yahweh,
and I will bring a case
against your children's children.
10 Cross over to the coasts of Cyprus
and take a look;
send to Kedar and consider carefully;
see if there has ever been anything like
this:
11 Has a nation ever changed its gods?
(Yet they are not gods at all.)
But My people have exchanged their
Glory
for useless idols.
12 Be stunned by this, O heavens;
be shocked and utterly appalled,"
declares Yahweh.
13 "For My people have committed two
evils:

They have forsaken Me,
the fountain of living water,
and they have dug their own cisterns—
broken cisterns that cannot hold water.

THE CONSEQUENCE OF ISRAEL'S SIN

14 Is Israel a slave?
Was he born into slavery?
Why then has he become prey?
15 The young lions have roared at him;
they have sounded their voices.
They have laid waste his land;
his cities lie in ruins, without inhabitant.
16 The men of Memphis and Tahpanhes
have shaved the crown of your head.
17 Have you not brought this on yourself
by forsaking Yahweh your God
when He led you in the way?

18 Now what will you gain on your way to
Egypt
to drink the waters of the Nile?
What will you gain on your way to Assyria
to drink the waters of the Euphrates?
19 Your own evil will discipline you;
your own apostasies will reprimand you.
Consider and realize
how evil and bitter it is
for you to forsake Yahweh your God
and to have no fear of Me,"
declares the Lord Yahweh of Hosts.
20 "For long ago you broke your yoke
and tore off your chains,
saying, 'I will not serve!'
Indeed, on every high hill
and under every green tree
you lay down as a prostitute.
21 I had planted you like a choice vine
from the very best seed.
How could you turn yourself before Me
into a rotten, wild vine?
22 Although you wash with lye
and use an abundance of soap,
the stain of your guilt
is still before Me,"
declares the Lord Yahweh.

ISRAEL'S UNFAITHFULNESS // JUDGES 2:10–15; ISAIAH 43:22–28

23 "How can you say, 'I am not defiled;
I have not run after the Baals'?
Look at your behavior in the valley;
acknowledge what you have done.
You are a swift young she-camel
galloping here and there,
24 a wild donkey at home in the wilder-
ness,
sniffing the wind in the heat of her de-
sire.
Who can restrain her passion?
All who seek her need not weary them-
selves;
in mating season they will find her.
25 You should have kept your feet from go-
ing bare
and your throat from being thirsty.
But you said, 'It is hopeless!
For I love foreign gods,
and I must go after them.'

26 As the thief is ashamed when he is
caught,

JER 2:8 [DEMONIC] The prophets prophesied by Baal
JER 2:11 [DEMONIC] My people traded their Glory for useless idols
JER 2:13 [NOTE] TWO EVILS. They left the spring of living water and dug cisterns, rock tanks for rain, that crack and leak. Jesus offered living water, John 4:10.

JER 2:20 [DEMONIC] Israel worships on every high hill and under every tree
JER 2:23 [DEMONIC] Israel says I love foreign gods and must chase them

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

so the house of Israel is disgraced.
They, their kings, their officials,
their priests, and their prophets
27 say to a tree, 'You are my father,'
and to a stone, 'You gave me birth.'
They have turned their backs to Me
and not their faces.
Yet in the time of trouble, they say,
'Rise up and save us!'
28 But where are the gods you made for
yourselves?
Let them rise up in your time of trouble
and save you if they can;
for your gods are as numerous
as your cities, O Judah.

29 Why do you bring a case against Me?
You have all rebelled against Me,"
declares Yahweh.
30 "I have struck your sons in vain;
they accepted no discipline.
Your own sword has devoured your
prophets
like a voracious lion."

31 You people of this generation, consider
the word of Yahweh:

"Have I been a wilderness to Israel
or a land of dense darkness?
Why do My people say,
'We are free to roam;
we will come to You no more'?
32 Does a maiden forget her jewelry
or a bride her wedding sash?
Yet My people have forgotten Me
for days without number.

33 How skillfully you pursue love!
Even the most immoral of women
could learn from your ways.
34 Moreover, your skirts are stained
with the blood of the innocent poor,
though you did not find them breaking
in.

But in spite of all these things
35 you say, 'I am innocent.
Surely His anger will turn from me.'
Behold, I will judge you,
because you say, 'I have not sinned.'

36 How impulsive you are,
constantly changing your ways!
You will be disappointed by Egypt
just as you were by Assyria.
37 Moreover, you will leave that place
with your hands on your head,
for Yahweh has rejected those you trust;
you will not prosper by their help."

JER 2:26 [DEMONIC] They call a tree father and a stone mother

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Judah watched Israel cheat on God and get sent away, then did the same thing. Still God keeps calling, Return, faithless children. He promises shepherds after His own heart and a day when nobody will miss the ark.

THE WAGES OF THE HARLOT

1 "If a man divorces his wife
and she leaves him to marry another,
can he ever return to her?
Would not such a land be completely
defiled?
But you have played the harlot with many
lovers—
and you would return to Me?"
declares Yahweh.
2 "Lift up your eyes to the barren heights
and see.
Is there any place where you have not
been violated?
You sat beside the highways waiting for
your lovers,
like a nomad in the desert.
You have defiled the land
with your prostitution and wickedness.
3 Therefore the showers have been with-
held,
and no spring rains have fallen.
Yet you have the brazen look of a prosti-
tute;
you refuse to be ashamed.

4 Have you not just called to Me,
'My Father, You are my friend from
youth.
5 Will He be angry forever?
Will He be indignant to the end?'
This you have spoken,
but you keep doing all the evil you can."

JUDAH FOLLOWS ISRAEL'S EXAMPLE

6 Now in the days of King Josiah, Yahweh
said to me, "Have you seen what faithless

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Israel has done? She has gone up on every high hill and under every green tree to prostitute herself there. 7 I thought that after she had done all these things, she would return to Me. But she did not return, and her unfaithful sister Judah saw it.

8 She saw that because faithless Israel had committed adultery, I gave her a certificate of divorce and sent her away. Yet that unfaithful sister Judah had no fear and prostituted herself as well. 9 Indifferent to her own infidelity, Israel had defiled the land and committed adultery with stones and trees. 10 Yet in spite of all this, her unfaithful sister Judah did not return to Me with all her heart, but only in pretense," declares Yahweh.

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // HOSEA 14:1–3; ZECHARIAH 1:1–6

11 And Yahweh said to me, "Faithless Israel has shown herself more righteous than unfaithful Judah. 12 Go, proclaim this message toward the north:

'Return, O faithless Israel,' declares Yahweh.
'I will no longer look on you with anger,
for I am merciful,' declares Yahweh.
'I will not be angry forever.
13 Only acknowledge your guilt,
that you have rebelled against Yahweh your God.
You have scattered your favors to foreign gods
under every green tree
and have not obeyed My voice,'"
declares Yahweh.

14 "Return, O faithless children," declares Yahweh, "for I am your master, and I will take you—one from a city and two from a family—and bring you to Zion. 15 Then I will give you shepherds after My own heart, who will feed you with knowledge and understanding."

16 "In those days, when you multiply and increase in the land," declares Yahweh, "they will no longer discuss the ark of the covenant of Yahweh. It will never come to mind, and no one will remember it or miss it, nor will another one be made.

17 At that time they will call Jerusalem The Throne of Yahweh, and all the nations will be gathered in Jerusalem to honor the name of Yahweh. They will no longer follow the stubbornness of their evil hearts.
18 In those days the house of Judah will walk with the house of Israel, and they will come together from the land of the north to the land that I gave to your fathers as an inheritance.

19 Then I said, 'How I long to make you My sons
and give you a desirable land,
the most beautiful inheritance of all the nations!'
I thought you would call Me 'Father'
and never turn away from following Me.
20 But as a woman may betray her husband,
so you have betrayed Me, O house of Israel,"
declares Yahweh.
21 A voice is heard on the barren heights,
the children of Israel weeping and begging for mercy,
because they have perverted their ways
and forgotten Yahweh their God.

22 "Return, O faithless children,
and I will heal your faithlessness."

"Here we are. We come to You,
for You are Yahweh our God.
23 Surely deception comes from the hills,
and commotion from the mountains.
Surely the salvation of Israel
is in Yahweh our God.
24 From our youth, that shameful god
has consumed what our fathers have worked for—
their flocks and herds,
their sons and daughters.
25 Let us lie down in our shame;
let our disgrace cover us.

JER 3:6 [DEMONIC] Israel commits adultery with stones and trees
JER 3:13 [DEMONIC] Israel scattered favors to foreign gods under every tree
JER 3:15 [HEART] God promises leaders who love what He loves and feed His people with knowledge.
JER 3:15 [NOTE] AFTER MY OWN HEART. The same words God used for David, 1 Samuel 13:14.
JER 3:23 [DEMONIC] The shameful god ate up their flocks and children

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

We have sinned against Yahweh our God,
both we and our fathers;
from our youth even to this day
we have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh our God."

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Break up your hard ground and circumcise your hearts. A lion is coming from the north. Jeremiah's heart pounds, and he sees the earth go back to formless and empty, like before creation. Even Jerusalem's makeup will not save her.

A PLEA TO RETURN

1 "If you will return, O Israel,
return to Me," declares Yahweh.
"If you will remove your detestable idols
from My sight
and no longer waver,
2 and if you can swear, 'As surely as Yahweh lives,'
in truth, in justice, and in righteousness,
then the nations will be blessed by Him,
and in Him they will glory."

3 For this is what Yahweh says to the men
of Judah and Jerusalem:

"Break up your unplowed ground,
and do not sow among the thorns.
4 Circumcise yourselves to Yahweh,
and remove the foreskins of your
hearts,
O men of Judah and people of
Jerusalem.
Otherwise, My wrath will break out like
fire
and burn with no one to extinguish it,
because of your evil deeds."

DISASTER FROM THE NORTH

5 Announce in Judah, proclaim in
Jerusalem, and say:

"Blow the ram's horn throughout the land.
Cry aloud and say,
'Assemble yourselves
and let us flee to the fortified cities.'
6 Raise a signal flag toward Zion.
Seek refuge! Do not delay!
For I am bringing disaster from the north,
and terrible destruction.
7 A lion has gone up from his thicket,
and a destroyer of nations has set out.
He has left his lair
to lay waste your land.
Your cities will be reduced to ruins
and lie uninhabited.
8 So put on sackcloth,
mourn and wail,
for the fierce anger of Yahweh
has not turned away from us."

9 "In that day," declares Yahweh,
"the king and officials will lose their
courage.
The priests will tremble in fear,
and the prophets will be astounded."

10 Then I said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh, how completely You have deceived this people and Jerusalem by saying, 'You will have peace,' while a sword is at our throats."

11 At that time it will be said to this people and to Jerusalem, "A searing wind from the barren heights in the desert blows toward the daughter of My people, but not to winnow or to sift; 12 a wind too strong for that comes from Me. Now I also pronounce judgments against them."

13 Behold, he advances like the clouds,
his chariots like the whirlwind.
His horses are swifter than eagles.
Woe to us, for we are ruined!
14 Wash the evil from your heart, O
Jerusalem,
so that you may be saved.
How long will you harbor
wicked thoughts within you?
15 For a voice resounds from Dan,
proclaiming disaster from the hills of
Ephraim.
16 Warn the nations now!
Proclaim to Jerusalem:
"A besieging army comes from a distant
land;
they raise their voices against the cities
of Judah.

JER 4:1 [DEMONIC] Remove your detestable idols from My sight

JER 4:4 [HEART] Cut away what is hard and dead inside. God wants a changed heart, not just a mark on the body.

JER 4:4 [NOTE] CIRCUMCISE YOUR HEARTS. Cut away what is hard and dead inside. Moses said it first, Deuteronomy 10:16, and Paul says it again, Romans 2:29.

GOD SPEAKING

17 They surround her like men guarding a
field,
because she has rebelled against Me,"
declares Yahweh.
18 "Your ways and deeds
have brought this upon you.
This is your punishment; how bitter it is,
because it pierces to the heart!"

LAMENTATION FOR JUDAH

19 My anguish, my anguish! I writhe in pain!
Oh, the pain in my chest!
My heart pounds within me;
I cannot be silent.
For I have heard the sound of the horn,
the alarm of battle.
20 Disaster after disaster is proclaimed,
for the whole land is laid waste.
My tents are destroyed in an instant,
my curtains in a moment.
21 How long must I see the signal flag
and hear the sound of the horn?

22 "For My people are fools;
they have not known Me.
They are foolish children,
without understanding.
They are skilled in doing evil,
but they know not how to do good."

23 I looked at the earth,
and it was formless and void;
I looked to the heavens,
and they had no light.
24 I looked at the mountains,
and behold, they were quaking;
all the hills were swaying.
25 I looked, and no man was left;
all the birds of the air had fled.
26 I looked, and the fruitful land was a
desert.
All its cities were torn down
before Yahweh,
before His fierce anger.

27 For this is what Yahweh says:

"The whole land will be desolate,
but I will not finish its destruction.
28 Therefore the earth will mourn
and the heavens above will grow dark.
I have spoken, I have planned,
and I will not relent or turn back."

29 Every city flees
at the sound of the horseman and
archer.
They enter the thickets
and climb among the rocks.
Every city is abandoned;
no inhabitant is left.

30 And you, O devastated one, what will
you do,
though you dress yourself in scarlet,
though you adorn yourself with gold jew-
elry,
though you enlarge your eyes with
paint?
You adorn yourself in vain; your lovers
despise you;
they want to take your life.
31 For I hear a cry like a woman in labor,
a cry of anguish like one bearing her
first child—
the cry of the Daughter of Zion gasping
for breath,
stretching out her hands to say,
"Woe is me,
for my soul faints before the murder-
ers!"

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Search the streets of Jerusalem for one honest person, and God will pardon the city. Nobody passes the test. Prophets lie, priests rule by their own power, and my people love it that way.

NO ONE IS JUST

1 "Go up and down the streets of
Jerusalem.
Look now and take note; search her
squares.
If you can find a single person,
anyone who acts justly,
anyone who seeks the truth,
then I will forgive the city.
2 Although they say, 'As surely as Yahweh
lives,'
they are swearing falsely."

3 O Yahweh, do not Your eyes look for
truth?
You struck them, but they felt no pain.

JER 4:23 [NOTE] FORMLESS AND VOID. The same Hebrew words as Genesis 1:2, tohu and bohu. Judgment looks like creation running backward.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

You finished them off,
but they refused to accept discipline.
They have made their faces harder than stone
and refused to repent.

4 Then I said, "They are only the poor;
they have played the fool,
for they do not know the way of Yahweh,
the justice of their God.
5 I will go to the powerful
and speak to them.
Surely they know the way of Yahweh,
the justice of their God."

But they too, with one accord, had broken the yoke
and torn off the chains.
6 Therefore a lion from the forest will strike them down,
a wolf from the desert will ravage them.
A leopard will lie in wait near their cities,
and everyone who ventures out will be torn to pieces.
For their rebellious acts are many,
and their unfaithful deeds are numerous.

7 "Why should I forgive you?
Your children have forsaken Me
and sworn by gods that are not gods.
I satisfied their needs, yet they committed adultery
and assembled at the houses of prostitutes.
8 They are well-fed, lusty stallions,
each neighing after his neighbor's wife.
9 Should I not punish them for these things?"
declares Yahweh.
"Should I not avenge Myself
on such a nation as this?
10 Go up through her vineyards and ravage them,
but do not finish them off.
Strip off her branches,
for they do not belong to Yahweh.
11 For the house of Israel and the house of Judah
have been utterly unfaithful to Me,"
declares Yahweh.

12 They have lied about Yahweh and said:

"He will not do anything; harm will not come to us;
we will not see sword or famine.
13 The prophets are but wind,
for the word is not in them.
So let their own predictions befall them."

JUDGMENT PROCLAIMED

14 Therefore this is what Yahweh God of Hosts says:

"Because you have spoken this word,
I will make My words a fire in your mouth
and this people the wood it consumes.
15 Behold, I am bringing a distant nation against you,
O house of Israel," declares Yahweh.
"It is an established nation,
an ancient nation,
a nation whose language you do not know
and whose speech you do not understand.
16 Their quivers are like open graves;
they are all mighty men.
17 They will devour your harvest and food;
they will consume your sons and daughters;
they will eat up your flocks and herds;
they will feed on your vines and fig trees.
With the sword they will destroy
the fortified cities in which you trust."

18 "Yet even in those days," declares Yahweh, "I will not make a full end of you. 19 And when the people ask, 'For what offense has Yahweh our God done all these things to us?' You are to tell them, 'Just as you have forsaken Me and served foreign gods in your land, so will you serve foreigners in a land that is not your own.'"

20 Declare this in the house of Jacob and proclaim it in Judah:

21 "Hear this,
O foolish and senseless people,
who have eyes but do not see,
who have ears but do not hear.

JER 5:7 [DEMONIC] Your children swore by gods that are not gods

JER 5:19 [DEMONIC] You served foreign gods so you will serve foreigners

JER 5:21 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → MK 8:18 p.1622

GOD SPEAKING

22 Do you not fear Me?"
declares Yahweh.
"Do you not tremble before Me,
the One who set the sand as the boundary for the sea,
an enduring barrier it cannot cross?
The waves surge, but they cannot prevail.
They roar but cannot cross it.

23 But these people have stubborn and rebellious hearts.
They have turned aside and gone away.
24 They have not said in their hearts,
'Let us fear Yahweh our God,
who gives the rains, both autumn and spring, in season,
who keeps for us the appointed weeks of harvest.'

25 Your iniquities have diverted these from you;
your sins have deprived you of My bounty.
26 For among My people are wicked men;
they watch like fowlers lying in wait;
they set a trap to catch men.
27 Like cages full of birds,
so their houses are full of deceit.
Therefore they have become powerful and rich.

28 They have grown fat and sleek,
and have excelled in the deeds of the wicked.
They have not taken up the cause of the fatherless,
that they might prosper;
nor have they defended
the rights of the needy.
29 Should I not punish them for these things?"
declares Yahweh.
"Should I not avenge Myself
on such a nation as this?

30 A horrible and shocking thing
has happened in the land.
31 The prophets prophesy falsely,
and the priests rule by their own authority.
My people love it so,
but what will you do in the end?

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon's army is coming, and Jerusalem's leaders keep saying peace, peace, when there is no peace. God says, Stand at the crossroads and ask for the old paths. The people say, We will not walk in it.

JERUSALEM'S FINAL WARNING

1 "Run for cover, O sons of Benjamin;
flee from Jerusalem!
Sound the ram's horn in Tekoa;
send up a signal over Beth-haccherem,
for disaster looms from the north,
even great destruction.
2 Though she is beautiful and delicate,
I will destroy the Daughter of Zion.
3 Shepherds and their flocks
will come against her;
they will pitch their tents all around her,
each tending his own portion:
4 'Prepare for battle against her;
rise up, let us attack at noon.
Woe to us, for the daylight is fading;
the evening shadows grow long.
5 Rise up, let us attack by night
and destroy her fortresses!'"

6 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Cut down the trees
and raise a siege ramp against Jerusalem.
This city must be punished;
there is nothing but oppression in her midst.
7 As a well gushes its water,
so she pours out her evil.
Violence and destruction resound in her;
sickness and wounds are ever before Me.
8 Be forewarned, O Jerusalem,
or I will turn away from you;
I will make you a desolation,
a land without inhabitant."

9 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Glean the remnant of Israel
as thoroughly as a vine.
Pass your hand once more like a grape gatherer
over the branches."

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

10 To whom can I give this warning?
Who will listen to me?
Look, their ears are closed,
so they cannot hear.
See, the word of Yahweh has become offensive to them;
they find no pleasure in it.
11 But I am full of Yahweh's wrath;
I am tired of holding it back.

"Pour it out on the children in the street,
and on the young men gathered together.
For both husband and wife will be captured,
the old and the very old alike.
12 Their houses will be turned over to others,
their fields and wives as well,
for I will stretch out My hand
against the inhabitants of the land,"
declares Yahweh.
13 "For from the least of them to the greatest,
all are greedy for gain;
from prophet to priest,
all practice deceit.
14 They dress the wound of My people
with very little care,
saying, 'Peace, peace,'
when there is no peace at all.
15 Are they ashamed of the abomination they have committed?
No, they have no shame at all;
they do not even know how to blush.
So they will fall among the fallen;
when I punish them, they will collapse,"
says Yahweh.

16 This is what Yahweh says:

"Stand at the crossroads and look.
Ask for the ancient paths: 'Where is the good way?'
Then walk in it, and you will find rest for your souls.
But they said, 'We will not walk in it!'
17 I appointed watchmen over you and said,
'Listen for the sound of the ram's horn.'
But they answered, 'We will not listen!'
18 Therefore hear, O nations,
and learn, O congregations,
what will happen to them.
19 Hear, O earth! I am bringing disaster on this people,
the fruit of their own schemes,
because they have paid no attention to My word
and have rejected My instruction.
20 What use to Me is frankincense from Sheba
or sweet cane from a distant land?
Your burnt offerings are not acceptable;
your sacrifices do not please Me."

21 Therefore this is what Yahweh says:

"I will lay stumbling blocks before this people;
fathers and sons alike will be staggered;
friends and neighbors will perish."

AN INVASION FROM THE NORTH

22 This is what Yahweh says:

"Behold, an army is coming
from the land of the north;
a great nation is stirred up
from the ends of the earth.
23 They grasp the bow and spear;
they are cruel and merciless.
Their voice roars like the sea,
and they ride upon horses,
lined up like men in formation
against you, O Daughter of Zion."

24 We have heard the report;
our hands hang limp.
Anguish has gripped us,
pain like that of a woman in labor.
25 Do not go out to the fields;
do not walk the road.
For the enemy has a sword;
terror is on every side.
26 O daughter of my people,
dress yourselves in sackcloth and roll in ashes.
Mourn with bitter wailing,
as you would for an only son,
for suddenly the destroyer
will come upon us.

27 "I have appointed you to examine My people like ore,

JER 6:14 [NOTE] PEACE, PEACE. The false prophets put a bandage on a deep wound. Said again in 8:11.
JER 6:16 [NOTABLE] When you do not know which way to go, the old, proven way of God brings rest.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

so you may know and try their ways.
28 All are hardened rebels,
walking around as slanderers.
They are bronze and iron;
all of them are corrupt.
29 The bellows blow fiercely,
blasting away the lead with fire.
The refining proceeds in vain,
for the wicked are not purged.
30 They are called rejected silver,
because Yahweh has rejected them."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah stands at the temple gate and preaches: stop chanting the temple of Yahweh like a lucky charm. Look at Shiloh. Families bake cakes for the Queen of Heaven and burn their children at Topheth.

JEREMIAH'S MESSAGE AT THE TEMPLE GATE

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh, saying, 2 "Stand in the gate of the house of Yahweh and proclaim this message: Hear the word of Yahweh, all you people of Judah who enter through these gates to worship Yahweh. 3 Thus says Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel: Correct your ways and deeds, and I will let you live in this place. 4 Do not trust in deceptive words, saying:

'This is the temple of Yahweh,
the temple of Yahweh,
the temple of Yahweh.'

5 For if you really correct your ways and deeds, if you act justly toward one another, 6 if you no longer oppress the foreigner and the fatherless and the widow, and if you no longer shed innocent blood in this place or follow other gods to your own harm, 7 then I will let you live in this place, in the land that I gave to your fathers forever and ever.

8 But look, you keep trusting in deceptive words to no avail. 9 Will you steal and murder, commit adultery and perjury, burn incense to Baal, and follow other gods that you have not known, 10 and then come and stand before Me in this house, which bears My Name, and say, 'We are delivered, so we can continue with all these abominations'? 11 *Has this house, which bears My Name, become a den of robbers in your sight? Yes, I too have seen it,* declares *Yahweh.*

12 But go now to the place in Shiloh where I first made a dwelling for My Name, and see what I did to it because of the wickedness of My people Israel. 13 And now, because you have done all these things, declares Yahweh, and because I have spoken to you again and again but you would not listen, and I have called to you but you would not answer, 14 therefore what I did to Shiloh I will now do to the house that bears My Name, the house in which you trust, the place that I gave to you and your fathers. 15 And I will cast you out of My presence, just as I have cast out all your brothers, all the descendants of Ephraim.

JUDAH'S IDOLATRY PERSISTS

16 As for you, do not pray for these people, do not offer a plea or petition on their behalf, and do not beg Me, for I will not listen to you. 17 Do you not see what they are doing in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem? 18 The sons gather wood, the fathers light the fire, and the women knead the dough to make cakes for the Queen of Heaven; they pour out drink offerings to other gods to provoke Me to anger. 19 But am I the One they are provoking? declares Yahweh. Is it not themselves they spite, to their own shame?

- **JER 7:4 [NOTE]** THE TEMPLE OF YAHWEH. The people thought the temple made them safe no matter how they lived. Jesus quoted 7:11, a den of robbers, when He cleared the temple, Matthew 21:13.
- **JER 7:6 [DEMONIC]** Stop following other gods to your own harm
- **JER 7:9 [DEMONIC]** They burn incense to Baal then stand in God's house
- **JER 7:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 21:13 p.1582
- **JER 7:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 11:17 p.1628
- **JER 7:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 19:46 p.1683
- **JER 7:12 [NOTE]** SHILOH. Where the tabernacle stood in the days of Eli, 1 Samuel 1:3. It was destroyed, so the place where God's name lives is no guarantee.
- **JER 7:14 [PROPHECY]** God would do to the temple what He did to Shiloh → 2KI 25:9; JER 52:13 p.660
- **JER 7:17 [DEMONIC]** Women bake cakes for the queen of heaven
- **JER 7:18 [NOTE]** THE QUEEN OF HEAVEN. A goddess the families worshiped with cakes and drink offerings. See the Big Question The Queen of Heaven.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

20 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold, My anger and My fury will be poured out on this place, on man and beast, on the trees of the field and the produce of the land, and it will burn and not be extinguished.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE QUEEN OF HEAVEN

Cakes for a Goddess

JEREMIAH 7:16 TO 20 · 44:15 TO 30

WHAT THEY DID

Children gathered wood, fathers lit the fire, and mothers baked cakes for the Queen of Heaven and poured out drink offerings to other gods, 7:18. Years later, in Egypt, the women said they would keep doing it, 44:17 to 19.

CAKES IN HER IMAGE

The women said they made cakes in her image, 44:19. Archaeologists found clay cake molds shaped like a woman, maybe a goddess, at Mari in Syria, from long before Jeremiah's time.

Every View

2 KINGS 23:4 TO 7 · DEUTERONOMY 7:5

VIEW 1: ISHTAR

Many scholars say she was Ishtar, also called Astarte, the star goddess of Babylon and Assyria, known as Queen of Heaven in their own writings.

VIEW 2: ASHERAH

Others say she was Asherah, the goddess whose poles King Josiah tore down, 2 Kings 23:4 to 7. Some think she was a mix of both.

VIEW 3: ANAT OR ANOTHER

A few point to Anat, a goddess worshiped by Jews in Egypt at Elephantine, or to a local queen of heaven with no one name.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Whoever she was, she was not God. Jeremiah says the trouble came because they burned incense to other gods, 44:23.

21 This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Add your burnt offerings to your other sacrifices and eat the meat yourselves! 22 For when I brought your fathers out of the land of Egypt, I did not merely command them about burnt offerings and sacrifices, 23 but this is what I commanded them: Obey Me, and I will be your God, and you will be My people. You must walk in all the ways I have commanded you, so that it may go well with you.

24 Yet they did not listen or incline their ear, but they followed the stubborn inclinations of their own evil hearts. They went backward and not forward. 25 From the day your fathers came out of the land of Egypt until this day, I have sent you all My servants the prophets again and again. 26 Yet they would not listen to Me or incline their ear, but they stiffened their necks and did more evil than their fathers.

27 When you tell them all these things, they will not listen to you. When you call to them, they will not answer. 28 Therefore you must say to them, 'This is the nation that would not listen to the voice of Yahweh their God and would not receive correction. Truth has perished; it has disappeared from their lips. 29 Cut off your hair and throw it away. Raise up a lamentation on the barren heights, for Yahweh has rejected and forsaken the generation of His wrath.'

THE VALLEY OF SLAUGHTER

30 For the people of Judah have done evil in My sight, declares Yahweh. They have set up their abominations in the house that bears My Name, and so have defiled it. 31 They have built the high places of Topheth in the Valley of Ben-hinnom so they could burn their sons and daughters in the fire—something I never commanded, nor did it even enter My heart.

32 So behold, the days are coming, declares Yahweh, when this place will no longer be called Topheth and the Valley of Ben-hinnom, but the Valley of Slaughter. For they will bury the dead in Topheth until there is no more room. 33 The corpses of this people will become food for the

JER 7:30 [DEMONIC] They burn their sons and daughters at Topheth

JER 7:31 [TEXT] MY HEART. The Hebrew says al libbi, on My heart, like the KJV. Many Bibles say My mind. The same Hebrew words are in 19:5 and 32:35.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

birds of the air and the beasts of the
earth, and there will be no one to scare
them away.

34 I will remove from the cities of Judah
and the streets of Jerusalem the sounds
of joy and gladness and the voices of the
bride and bridegroom, for the land will be-
come a wasteland."

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

The bones of kings will be dug up and spread under the stars they worshiped. Even birds know their seasons, but God's people do not. Is there no balm in Gilead? Jeremiah's heart breaks.

JUDAH'S SIN AND PUNISHMENT

1 "At that time," declares Yahweh, "the
bones of the kings of Judah, the bones of
the officials, the bones of the priests, the
bones of the prophets, and the bones of
the people of Jerusalem will be removed
from their graves. 2 They will be exposed
to the sun and moon, and to all the host of
heaven which they have loved, served,
followed, consulted, and worshiped. Their
bones will not be gathered up or buried,
but will become like dung lying on the
ground. 3 And wherever I have banished
them, the remnant of this evil family will
choose death over life," declares Yahweh
of Hosts.

4 So you are to tell them this is what Yah-
weh says:

"Do men fall and not get up again?
Does one turn away and not return?
5 Why then have these people turned
away?
Why does Jerusalem always turn away?
They cling to deceit;
they refuse to return.
6 I have listened and heard;
they do not speak what is right.
No one repents of his wickedness,
asking, 'What have I done?'
Everyone has pursued his own course
like a horse charging into battle.
7 Even the stork in the sky
knows her appointed seasons.
The turtledove, the swift, and the thrush
keep their time of migration,
but My people do not know
the requirements of Yahweh.

8 How can you say, 'We are wise,
and the Law of Yahweh is with us,'
when in fact the lying pen of the scribes
has produced a deception?
9 The wise will be put to shame;
they will be dismayed and trapped.
Since they have rejected the word of Yah-
weh,
what wisdom do they really have?

10 Therefore I will give their wives to other
men
and their fields to new owners.
For from the least of them to the greatest,
all are greedy for gain;
from prophet to priest,
all practice deceit.
11 They dress the wound of the daughter of
My people
with very little care,
saying, 'Peace, peace,'
when there is no peace at all.
12 Are they ashamed of the abomination
they have committed?
No, they have no shame at all;
they do not even know how to blush.
So they will fall among the fallen;
when I punish them, they will collapse,
says Yahweh.

13 I will take away their harvest,
declares Yahweh.
There will be no grapes on the vine,
nor figs on the tree,
and even the leaf will wither.
Whatever I have given them will be lost
to them."

THE PEOPLE RESPOND

14 Why are we just sitting here?
Gather together,
let us flee to the fortified cities and perish
there,
for Yahweh our God has doomed us.
He has given us poisoned water to drink,
because we have sinned against Yah-
weh.
15 We hoped for peace,

JER 8:1 **[DEMONIC]** Bones spread before the sun, moon, and stars they worshiped

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

but no good has come,
for a time of healing,
but there was only terror.

16 The snorting of enemy horses
is heard from Dan.
At the sound of the neighing of mighty steeds,
the whole land quakes.
They come to devour the land and everything in it,
the city and all who dwell in it.

17 "For behold, I will send snakes among you,
vipers that cannot be charmed,
and they will bite you,"
declares Yahweh.

JEREMIAH WEEPS FOR HIS PEOPLE

18 My sorrow is beyond healing;
my heart is faint within me.
19 Listen to the cry of the daughter of my people
from a land far away:

"Is Yahweh no longer in Zion?
Is her King no longer there?"

"Why have they provoked Me to anger
with their carved images,
with their worthless foreign idols?"

20 "The harvest has passed, the summer has ended,
but we have not been saved."

21 For the brokenness of the daughter of my people I am crushed.
I mourn; horror has gripped me.
22 Is there no balm in Gilead?
Is no physician there?
Why then has the health of the daughter of my people
not been restored?

JER 8:19 [DEMONIC] They provoked God with carved images and foreign idols

JER 8:22 [NOTE] BALM IN GILEAD. A healing tree resin from Gilead, east of the Jordan. The spiritual There Is a Balm in Gilead answers Jeremiah's question: yes, there is.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah wishes his head were a fountain of tears. Everybody lies, so do not trust your brother. God says, Do not brag about your brains, muscle or money; brag that you know Me.

A LAMENT OVER ZION

1 Oh, that my head were a spring of water,
and my eyes a fountain of tears!
I would weep day and night
over the slain daughter of my people.
2 If only I had a traveler's lodge in the wilderness,
I would abandon my people and depart from them,
for they are all adulterers,
a crowd of faithless people.

3 "They bend their tongues like bows;
lies prevail over truth in the land.
For they proceed from evil to evil,
and they do not take Me into account,"
declares Yahweh.
4 "Let everyone guard against his neighbor;
do not trust any brother,
for every brother deals craftily,
and every friend spreads slander.
5 Each one betrays his friend;
no one tells the truth.
They have taught their tongues to lie;
they wear themselves out committing iniquity.
6 You dwell in the midst of deception;
in their deceit they refuse to know Me,"
declares Yahweh.

7 Therefore this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Behold, I will refine them and test them,
for what else can I do
because of the daughter of My people?
8 Their tongues are deadly arrows;
they speak deception.
With his mouth a man speaks peace to his neighbor,
but in his heart he sets a trap for him.
9 Should I not punish them for these things?

JER 9:1 [NOTE] THE WEEPING PROPHET. Verses like this, and his laments, gave Jeremiah his nickname.

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

declares Yahweh.
Should I not avenge Myself
on such a nation as this?"

10 I will take up a weeping and wailing for
the mountains,
a dirge over the wilderness pasture,
for they have been scorched so no one
passes through,
and the lowing of cattle is not heard.
Both the birds of the air and the beasts
have fled;
they have gone away.

11 "And I will make Jerusalem a heap of
rubble,
a haunt for jackals;
and I will make the cities of Judah a deso-
lation,
without inhabitant."

12 Who is the man wise enough to under-
stand this? To whom has the mouth of
Yahweh spoken, that he may explain it?
Why is the land destroyed and scorched
like a desert, so no one can pass through
it?

13 And Yahweh answered, "It is because
they have forsaken My law, which I set
before them; they have not walked in it or
obeyed My voice. 14 Instead, they have fol-
lowed the stubbornness of their hearts
and gone after the Baals, as their fathers
taught them."

15 Therefore this is what Yahweh of Hosts,
the God of Israel, says: "Behold, I will feed
this people wormwood and give them poi-
soned water to drink. 16 I will scatter them
among the nations that neither they nor
their fathers have known, and I will send a
sword after them until I have finished
them off."

17 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Take note, and summon the wailing
women;
send for the most skillful among them.
18 Let them come quickly
and take up a lament over us,
that our eyes may overflow with tears,
and our eyelids may gush with water.

19 For the sound of wailing
is heard from Zion:
'How devastated we are!
How great is our shame!
For we have abandoned the land
because our dwellings have been torn
down.'"

20 Now, O women, hear the word of Yah-
weh.
Open your ears to the word of His
mouth.
Teach your daughters to wail,
and one another to lament.
21 For death has climbed in through our
windows;
it has entered our fortresses
to cut off the children from the streets,
the young men from the town squares.

22 Declare that this is what Yahweh says:

"The corpses of men will fall like dung
upon the open field,
like newly cut grain behind the reaper,
with no one to gather it."

23 This is what Yahweh says:

"Let not the wise man boast in his wis-
dom,
nor the strong man in his strength,
nor the wealthy man in his riches.
24 *But let him who boasts boast in this,*
that he understands and knows Me,
that I am Yahweh,
who exercises loving devotion,
justice and righteousness on the earth—
for I delight in these things,"
declares Yahweh.

25 "Behold, the days are coming," declares
Yahweh, "when I will punish all who are
circumcised only in the flesh— 26 Egypt,
Judah, Edom, Ammon, Moab, and all the
inhabitants of the desert who clip the hair
of their temples. For all these nations are
uncircumcised, and the whole house of
Israel is uncircumcised in heart."

JER 9:14 [DEMONIC] They followed their hearts and went after the Baals

JER 9:23 [NOTABLE] Brains, muscle and money are not the point. Knowing God is.
JER 9:24 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 1:31 p.1825
JER 9:24 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 10:17 p.1857
JER 9:24 [NOTE] BOAST IN THIS. Paul quotes it twice: Let him who boasts boast in the Lord, 1 Corinthians 1:31 and 2 Corinthians 10:17.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Idols are scarecrows in a cucumber field: they cannot talk, walk or hurt you. Yahweh is the true God who made the earth. Jeremiah prays, Correct me, but gently, or I will be nothing.

THE SOVEREIGNTY OF GOD

1 Hear the word that Yahweh speaks to
you, O house of Israel. 2 This is what Yah-
weh says:

"Do not learn the ways of the nations
or be terrified by the signs in the heav-
ens,
though the nations themselves are terri-
fied by them.
3 For the customs of the peoples are
worthless;
they cut down a tree from the forest;
it is shaped with a chisel
by the hands of a craftsman.
4 They adorn it with silver and gold
and fasten it with hammer and nails,
so that it will not totter.

5 Like scarecrows in a cucumber patch,
their idols cannot speak.
They must be carried
because they cannot walk.
Do not fear them, for they can do no
harm,
and neither can they do any good."

6 There is none like You, O Yahweh.
You are great, and Your name is mighty
in power.
7 Who would not fear You, O King of na-
tions?
This is Your due.
For among all the wise men of the nations,
and in all their kingdoms,
there is none like You.

8 But they are altogether senseless and
foolish,
instructed by worthless idols made of
wood!

9 Hammered silver is brought from
Tarshish,
and gold from Uphaz—
the work of a craftsman
from the hands of a goldsmith.
Their clothes are blue and purple,
all fashioned by skilled workers.
10 But Yahweh is the true God;
He is the living God and eternal King.
The earth quakes at His wrath,
and the nations cannot endure His in-
dignation.

11 Thus you are to tell them: "These gods,
who have made neither the heavens nor
the earth, will perish from this earth and
from under these heavens."

12 Yahweh made the earth by His power;
He established the world by His wisdom
and stretched out the heavens by His
understanding.
13 When He thunders,
the waters in the heavens roar;
He causes the clouds to rise
from the ends of the earth.
He generates the lightning with the rain
and brings forth the wind from His
storehouses.

14 Every man is senseless and devoid of
knowledge;
every goldsmith is put to shame by his
idols.
For his molten images are a fraud,
and there is no breath in them.
15 They are worthless, a work to be
mocked.
In the time of their punishment they will
perish.

16 The Portion of Jacob is not like these,
for He is the Maker of all things,
and Israel is the tribe of His inheritance—
Yahweh of Hosts is His name.

THE COMING CAPTIVITY OF JUDAH

17 Gather up your belongings from this
land, you who live under siege. 18 For this
is what Yahweh says:

"Behold, at this time I will sling out

JER 10:1 [DEMONIC] Idols are like scarecrows in a cucumber patch

JER 10:5 [NOTE] SCARECROWS. Idols are carved, covered with silver and gold, and nailed down so they do not fall over. They cannot speak or walk.

JER 10:7 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 15:3-4 p.2104

JER 10:11 [NOTE] ARAMAIC. This one verse is in Aramaic, the shared language of Babylon's empire, as if it were a message for the nations to read in their own language.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

the inhabitants of the land
and bring distress upon them
so that they may be captured."

19 Woe to me because of my brokenness;
my wound is grievous!
But I said, "This is truly my sickness,
and I must bear it."
20 My tent is destroyed,
and all its ropes are snapped.
My sons have departed from me
and are no more.
I have no one left to pitch my tent
or set up my curtains.

21 For the shepherds have become senseless;
they do not seek Yahweh.
Therefore they have not prospered,
and all their flock is scattered.
22 Listen! The sound of a report is coming—
a great commotion from the land to the north.
It will make the cities of Judah a desolation,
a haunt for jackals.

23 I know, O Yahweh, that a man's way is not his own;
no one who walks directs his own steps.
24 Correct me, O Yahweh,
but only with justice—
not in Your anger,
or You will bring me to nothing.

25 Pour out Your wrath on the nations
that do not acknowledge You,
and on the families
that do not call on Your name.
For they have devoured Jacob;
they have consumed him and finished him off;
they have devastated his homeland.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

The people broke God's covenant, so their prayers will bounce. Then Jeremiah finds out his own hometown is plotting to kill him. He was like a lamb led to the slaughter and did not even know it.

THE BROKEN COVENANT

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh: 2 "Listen to the words of this covenant and tell them to the men of Judah and the residents of Jerusalem. 3 You must tell them that this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: Cursed is the man who does not obey the words of this covenant, 4 which I commanded your forefathers when I brought them out of the land of Egypt, out of the iron furnace, saying, 'Obey Me, and do everything I command you, and you will be My people, and I will be your God.' 5 This was in order to establish the oath I swore to your forefathers, to give them a land flowing with milk and honey, as it is to this day."

"Amen, Yahweh," I answered.

6 Then Yahweh said to me, "Proclaim all these words in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem, saying: Hear the words of this covenant and carry them out. 7 For from the time I brought your fathers out of the land of Egypt until today, I strongly warned them again and again, saying, 'Obey My voice.' 8 Yet they would not obey or incline their ears, but each one followed the stubbornness of his evil heart. So I brought on them all the curses of this covenant I had commanded them to follow but they did not keep."

9 And Yahweh told me, "There is a conspiracy among the men of Judah and the residents of Jerusalem. 10 They have returned to the sins of their forefathers who refused to obey My words. They have followed other gods to serve them. The house of Israel and the house of Judah have broken the covenant I made with their fathers.

11 Therefore this is what Yahweh says: 'I am about to bring upon them a disaster that they cannot escape. They will cry out to Me, but I will not listen to them. 12 Then the cities of Judah and the residents of Jerusalem will go and cry out to the gods to which they have been burning incense, but these gods certainly will not save them in their time of disaster. 13 Your gods

JER 11:10 [DEMONIC] Judah has as many gods as cities

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

are indeed as numerous as your cities, O Judah; the altars of shame you have set up—the altars to burn incense to Baal—are as many as the streets of Jerusalem.'

14 As for you, do not pray for these people. Do not raise up a cry or a prayer on their behalf, for I will not be listening when they call out to Me in their time of disaster.

15 What right has My beloved in My house,
having carried out so many evil schemes?
Can consecrated meat avert your doom?
When you are wicked,
then you rejoice.
16 Yahweh once called you a flourishing olive tree,
beautiful with well-formed fruit.
But with a mighty roar He will set it on fire,
and its branches will be consumed.

17 Yahweh of Hosts, who planted you, has decreed disaster against you on account of the evil that the house of Israel and the house of Judah have brought upon themselves, provoking Me to anger by burning incense to Baal."

A PLOT AGAINST JEREMIAH // JEREMIAH 18:18–23

18 And Yahweh informed me, so I knew.
Then You showed me their deeds.
19 For I was like a gentle lamb led to slaughter;
I did not know that they had plotted against me:
"Let us destroy the tree with its fruit;
let us cut him off from the land of the living,
that his name may be remembered no more."

20 O Yahweh of Hosts, who judges righteously,
who examines the heart and mind,
let me see Your vengeance upon them,
for to You I have committed my cause.

21 Therefore this is what Yahweh says concerning the people of Anathoth who are seeking your life and saying, "You must not prophesy in the name of Yahweh, or you will die by our hand." 22 So this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "I will punish them. Their young men will die by the sword, their sons and daughters by famine. 23 There will be no remnant, for I will bring disaster on the people of Anathoth in the year of their punishment."

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah asks God the big one: Why do the wicked get rich? God answers, If you are tired racing people, how will you race horses? Then God promises to pull up Judah's bad neighbors and someday plant them again.

THE PROSPERITY OF THE WICKED

1 Righteous are You, O Yahweh,
when I plead before You.
Yet about Your judgments
I wish to contend with You:

Why does the way of the wicked prosper?
Why do all the faithless live at ease?
2 You planted them, and they have taken root.
They have grown and produced fruit.
You are ever on their lips,
but far from their hearts.
3 But You know me, O Yahweh;
You see me and test my heart toward You.
Drag away the wicked like sheep to the slaughter
and set them apart for the day of carnage.
4 How long will the land mourn
and the grass of every field be withered?
Because of the evil of its residents,
the animals and birds have been swept away,
for the people have said,
"He cannot see what our end will be."

JER 11:17 [DEMONIC] Disaster decreed for burning incense to Baal

JER 11:19 [NOTE] A GENTLE LAMB. The men of his own town plotted to kill him. Isaiah 53:7 uses the same picture for the Servant.

JER 11:20 [HEART] God judges fairly because He tests the heart and mind.

JER 12:1 [NOTE] WHY DO THE WICKED PROSPER? Jeremiah takes his complaint straight to God. See the Big Question Can You Argue With God?

JER 12:3 [HEART] Jeremiah says God has seen him and tested his heart.

GOD SPEAKING

GOD'S ANSWER TO JEREMIAH

5 "If you have raced with men on foot
and they have worn you out,
how can you compete with horses?
If you stumble in a peaceful land,
how will you do in the thickets of the
Jordan?
6 Even your brothers—
your own father's household—
even they have betrayed you;
even they have cried aloud against you.
Do not trust them,
though they speak well of you.

THE BIG QUESTION

CAN YOU ARGUE WITH GOD?

Jeremiah's Complaints

JEREMIAH 12:1 TO 4 · 15:10 TO 18 · 20:7 TO 18

HIS COMPLAINTS

Jeremiah tells God exactly how he feels: Why do the wicked prosper? 12:1. You have become like a mirage to me, 15:18. You deceived me, 20:7. Cursed be the day I was born, 20:14.

GOD'S ANSWERS

God does not strike him down. He answers with a challenge, If you have raced with men on foot and they have worn you out, how can you compete with horses? 12:5, and a promise, If you return, I will restore you, 15:19.

What His Prayers Teach

PSALM 13 · HABAKKUK 1:2 · JOB 13:3 · MATTHEW 27:46

THE BIBLE IS FULL OF IT

Job, the psalms of lament like Psalm 13, and Habakkuk 1:2 all bring honest questions to God. Jesus prayed Psalm 22 on the cross: My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? Matthew 27:46.

TALKING TO GOD, NOT ABOUT HIM

Jeremiah brought his complaint to God, not away from Him. Even in 20:7 to 13 he ends with Sing to Yahweh, before he sinks again in 20:14.

WHERE IT TURNS

God corrected Jeremiah too: speak words that are noble instead of worthless, 15:19. Honest prayer is not the same as accusing God of wrong.

THE LESSON

You can tell God how you really feel.
Keep talking to Him, keep listening, and keep doing what He called you to do.

7 I have forsaken My house;
I have abandoned My inheritance.
I have given the beloved of My soul
into the hands of her enemies.
8 My inheritance has become to Me
like a lion in the forest.
She has roared against Me;
therefore I hate her.
9 Is not My inheritance to Me
like a speckled bird of prey
with other birds of prey circling against
her?
Go, gather all the beasts of the field;
bring them to devour her.
10 Many shepherds have destroyed My
vineyard;
they have trampled My plot of ground.
They have turned My pleasant field
into a desolate wasteland.
11 They have made it a desolation;
desolate before Me, it mourns.
All the land is laid waste,
but no man takes it to heart.
12 Over all the barren heights in the wilderness
the destroyers have come,
for the sword of Yahweh devours
from one end of the earth to the other.
No flesh has peace.
13 They have sown wheat but harvested
thorns.
They have exhausted themselves to no
avail.
Bear the shame of your harvest
because of the fierce anger of Yahweh."

A MESSAGE FOR ISRAEL'S NEIGHBORS // AMOS 1:1–15

14 This is what Yahweh says: "As for all My evil neighbors who attack the inheritance that I bequeathed to My people Israel, I am about to uproot them from their land, and I will uproot the house of Judah from among them. 15 But after I have uprooted them, I will once again have compassion on them and return each one to his inheritance and to his land.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

16 And if they will diligently learn the ways
of My people and swear by My name,
saying, 'As surely as Yahweh lives'—just
as they once taught My people to swear
by Baal—then they will be established
among My people. 17 But if they will not
obey, then I will uproot that nation; I will
uproot it and destroy it, declares Yahweh."

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

God has Jeremiah hide his linen undergarment in the rocks by a river. Many days later it is rotten and useless, and that is Judah's pride. Can a leopard change its spots? Neither can people used to doing evil.

THE LINEN LOINCLOTH

1 This is what Yahweh said to me: "Go and
buy yourself a linen loincloth and put it
around your waist, but do not let it touch
water."

2 So I bought a loincloth in accordance
with the word of Yahweh, and I put it
around my waist.

3 Then the word of Yahweh came to me a
second time: 4 "Take the loincloth that you
bought and are wearing, and go at once
to Perath and hide it there in a crevice of
the rocks."

5 So I went and hid it at Perath, as Yahweh
had commanded me.

6 Many days later Yahweh said to me,
"Arise, go to Perath, and get the loincloth
that I commanded you to hide there." 7 So I
went to Perath and dug up the loincloth,
and I took it from the place where I had
hidden it. But now it was ruined—of no
use at all.

8 Then the word of Yahweh came to me: 9
"This is what Yahweh says: In the same
way I will ruin the pride of Judah and the
great pride of Jerusalem. 10 These evil
people, who refuse to listen to My words,
who follow the stubbornness of their own
hearts, and who go after other gods to
serve and worship them, they will be like
this loincloth—of no use at all.

11 For just as a loincloth clings to a man's
waist, so I have made the whole house of
Israel and the whole house of Judah cling
to Me, declares Yahweh, so that they
might be My people for My renown and
praise and glory. But they did not listen.

THE WINESKINS

12 Therefore you are to tell them that this is
what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says:
'Every wineskin shall be filled with wine.'
And when they reply, 'Don't we surely
know that every wineskin should be filled
with wine?' 13 then you are to tell them that
this is what Yahweh says: 'I am going to
fill with drunkenness all who live in this
land—the kings who sit on David's throne,
the priests, the prophets, and all the peo-
ple of Jerusalem. 14 I will smash them
against one another, fathers and sons
alike, declares Yahweh. I will allow no
mercy or pity or compassion to keep Me
from destroying them.'"

CAPTIVITY THREATENED

15 Listen and give heed. Do not be arro-
gant,
for Yahweh has spoken.
16 Give glory to Yahweh your God
before He brings darkness,
before your feet stumble
on the dusky mountains.
You wait for light,
but He turns it into deep gloom and
thick darkness.
17 But if you do not listen,
I will weep in secret because of your
pride.
My eyes will overflow with tears,
because Yahweh's flock has been taken
captive.

18 Say to the king
and to the queen mother:
"Take a lowly seat,
for your glorious crowns have fallen
from your heads."

JER 12:16 [DEMONIC] Nations once taught God's people to swear by Baal

JER 13:1 [NOTE] A LINEN LOINCLOTH. An undergarment worn close to the body. God wanted His people to cling to Him that closely, 13:11.

JER 13:9 [PROPHECY] God would ruin Judah's pride like a rotted linen belt → 2KI 25:9-11 p.660

JER 13:10 [DEMONIC] Those who follow other gods are like a ruined belt

JER 13:18 [NOTE] SAY TO THE KING. The Hebrew has no quotation marks. The command Say is spoken to one man, Jeremiah, the way God speaks to him all through

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

19 The cities of the Negev have been shut
tight,
and no one can open them.
All Judah has been carried into exile,
wholly taken captive.
20 Lift up your eyes and see
those coming from the north.
Where is the flock entrusted to you,
the sheep that were your pride?

21 What will you say when He sets over
you
close allies whom you yourself trained?
Will not pangs of anguish grip you,
as they do a woman in labor?
22 And if you ask yourself,
"Why has this happened to me?"
It is because of the magnitude of your in-
iquity
that your skirts have been stripped off
and your body has been exposed.
23 Can the Ethiopian change his skin,
or the leopard his spots?
Neither are you able to do good—
you who are accustomed to doing evil.

24 "I will scatter you like chaff
driven by the desert wind.
25 This is your lot,
the portion I have measured to you,"
declares Yahweh,
"because you have forgotten Me
and trusted in falsehood.
26 So I will pull your skirts up over your
face,
that your shame may be seen.
27 Your adulteries and lustful neighings,
your shameless prostitution
on the hills and in the fields—
I have seen your detestable acts.
Woe to you, O Jerusalem!
How long will you remain unclean?"

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

A drought dries everything up, and the people pray. God says, Do not pray for them. False prophets say no sword and no famine. God says those prophets will die by sword and famine.

DROUGHT, FAMINE, SWORD, AND PLAGUE

1 This is the word of Yahweh that came to
Jeremiah concerning the drought:

2 "Judah mourns
and her gates languish.
Her people wail for the land,
and a cry goes up from Jerusalem.
3 The nobles send their servants for water;
they go to the cisterns, but find no wa-
ter;
their jars return empty.
They are ashamed and humiliated;
they cover their heads.
4 The ground is cracked
because no rain has fallen on the land.
The farmers are ashamed;
they cover their heads.
5 Even the doe in the field deserts her
newborn fawn
because there is no grass.
6 Wild donkeys stand on barren heights;
they pant for air like jackals;
their eyes fail for lack of pasture."

7 Although our iniquities testify against us,
O Yahweh,
act for the sake of Your name.
Indeed, our rebellions are many;
we have sinned against You.
8 O Hope of Israel,
its Savior in times of distress,
why are You like a stranger in the land,
like a traveler who stays but a night?
9 Why are You like a man taken by sur-
prise,
like a warrior powerless to save?
Yet You are among us, O Yahweh,
and we are called by Your name.

Do not forsake us!

10 This is what Yahweh says about this
people:

"Truly they love to wander;
they have not restrained their feet.

the book, so the whole verse prints red. The queen mother was probably Nehushta, Jehoiachin's mother, 2 Kings 24:8.

JER 13:23 [NOTE] A LEOPARD'S SPOTS. The saying comes from this verse. People cannot change their own hearts; God has to do it, 24:7 and 31:33.

JER 13:27 [DEMONIC] God sees your idol prostitution on the hills

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

So Yahweh does not accept them;
He will now remember their iniquity
and punish them for their sins."

11 Then Yahweh said to me, "Do not pray
for the well-being of this people. 12 Al-
though they may fast, I will not listen to
their cry; although they may offer burnt
offerings and grain offerings, I will not ac-
cept them. Instead, I will finish them off by
sword and famine and plague."

13 "Ah, Lord Yahweh!" I replied, "Look, the
prophets are telling them, 'You will not see
the sword or suffer famine, but I will give
you lasting peace in this place.'"

14 "The prophets are prophesying lies in
My name," replied Yahweh. "I did not send
them or appoint them or speak to them.
They are prophesying to you a false vi-
sion, a worthless divination, the futility
and delusion of their own minds.

15 Therefore this is what Yahweh says
about the prophets who prophesy in My
name: I did not send them, yet they say,
'No sword or famine will touch this land.'
By sword and famine these very prophets
will meet their end! 16 And the people to
whom they prophesy will be thrown into
the streets of Jerusalem because of
famine and sword. There will be no one to
bury them or their wives, their sons or
their daughters. I will pour out their own
evil upon them.

17 You are to speak this word to them:

'My eyes overflow with tears;
day and night they do not cease,
for the virgin daughter of my people
has been shattered by a crushing blow,
a severely grievous wound.
18 If I go out to the country,
I see those slain by the sword;
if I enter the city,
I see those ravaged by famine!
For both prophet and priest
travel to a land they do not know.'"

A PRAYER FOR MERCY // ISAIAH 63:15–19

19 Have You rejected Judah completely?
Do You despise Zion?
Why have You stricken us
so that we are beyond healing?
We hoped for peace,
but no good has come,
and for the time of healing,
but there was only terror.
20 We acknowledge our wickedness, O
Yahweh,
the guilt of our fathers;
indeed, we have sinned against You.

21 For the sake of Your name do not de-
spise us;
do not disgrace Your glorious throne.
Remember Your covenant with us;
do not break it.
22 Can the worthless idols of the nations
bring rain?
Do the skies alone send showers?
Is this not by You, O Yahweh our God?
So we put our hope in You,
for You have done all these things.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Even Moses and Samuel could not talk God out of this one. Jeremiah wishes he was never born. God says, If you return, I will restore you, and I will make you a bronze wall.

JUDGMENT TO CONTINUE

1 Then Yahweh said to me: "Even if Moses
and Samuel should stand before Me, My
heart would not go out to this people.
Send them from My presence, and let
them go! 2 If they ask you, 'Where shall we
go?' you are to tell them that this is what
Yahweh says:

'Those destined for death, to death;
those destined for the sword, to the
sword;
those destined for famine, to famine;
and those destined for captivity, to cap-
tivity.'

3 I will appoint over them four kinds of de-
stroyers, declares Yahweh: the sword to
kill, the dogs to drag away, and the birds
of the air and beasts of the earth to de-
vour and destroy. 4 I will make them a hor-
ror to all the kingdoms of the earth be-

JER 14:14 [DEMONIC] False prophets speak worthless divination

JER 14:22 [DEMONIC] Can the idols of the nations bring rain

GOD SPEAKING

cause of what Manasseh son of Hezekiah
king of Judah did in Jerusalem.

5 Who will have pity on you, O Jerusalem?
Who will mourn for you?
Who will turn aside
to ask about your welfare?
6 You have forsaken Me, declares Yahweh.
You have turned your back.
So I will stretch out My hand against you
and I will destroy you;
I am weary of showing compassion.

7 I will scatter them with a winnowing fork
at the gates of the land.
I will bereave and destroy My people
who have not turned from their ways.
8 I will make their widows more numerous
than the sand of the sea.
I will bring a destroyer at noon
against the mothers of young men.
I will suddenly bring upon them
anguish and dismay.

9 The mother of seven will grow faint;
she will breathe her last breath.
Her sun will set while it is still day;
she will be disgraced and humiliated.
And the rest I will put to the sword
in the presence of their enemies,"
declares Yahweh.

JEREMIAH'S WOE

10 Woe to me, my mother,
that you have borne me,
a man of strife and conflict
in all the land.
I have neither lent nor borrowed,
yet everyone curses me.

11 Yahweh said:

"Surely I will deliver you for a good purpose;
surely I will intercede with your enemy
in your time of trouble,
in your time of distress.
12 Can anyone smash iron—
iron from the north—or bronze?
13 Your wealth and your treasures
I will give up as plunder,
without charge for all your sins
within all your borders.
14 Then I will enslave you to your enemies
in a land you do not know,
for My anger will kindle a fire
that will burn against you."

15 You understand, O Yahweh;
remember me and attend to me.
Avenge me against my persecutors.
In Your patience, do not take me away.
Know that I endure reproach for Your honor.
16 Your words were found, and I ate them.
Your words became my joy
and my heart's delight.
For I bear Your name,
O Yahweh God of Hosts.
17 I never sat with the band of revelers,
nor did I celebrate with them.
Because Your hand was on me, I sat alone,
for You have filled me with indignation.
18 Why is my pain unending,
and my wound incurable,
refusing to be healed?
You have indeed become like a mirage to me—
water that is not there.

YAHWEH'S PROMISE

19 Therefore this is what Yahweh says:

"If you return, I will restore you;
you will stand in My presence.
And if you speak words that are noble instead of worthless,
you will be My spokesman.
It is they who must turn to you,
but you must not turn to them.
20 Then I will make you a wall to this people,
a fortified wall of bronze;
they will fight against you
but will not overcome you,
for I am with you to save and deliver you,
declares Yahweh.
21 I will deliver you from the hand of the wicked
and redeem you from the grasp of the ruthless."

JER 15:16 [NOTE] I ATE THEM. When God's words came, Jeremiah took them in like food and they became his joy. Ezekiel and John were told to eat a scroll, Ezekiel 3:1 and Revelation 10:9.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

No wife, no kids, no funerals and no parties for Jeremiah: his whole life is a warning sign. But a day is coming when people will talk about a new exodus, bigger than the one from Egypt.

DISASTER PREDICTED

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "You must not marry or have
sons or daughters in this place."

3 For this is what Yahweh says concerning
the sons and daughters born in this place,
and the mothers who bore them, and the
fathers who fathered them in this land: 4
"They will die from deadly diseases. They
will not be mourned or buried, but will lie
like dung on the ground. They will be fin-
ished off by sword and famine, and their
corpses will become food for the birds of
the air and beasts of the earth."

5 Indeed, this is what Yahweh says: "Do
not enter a house where there is a funeral
meal. Do not go to mourn or show sympa-
thy, for I have removed from this people
My peace, My loving devotion, and My
compassion," declares Yahweh.

6 "Both great and small will die in this land.
They will not be buried or mourned, nor
will anyone cut himself or shave his head
for them. 7 No food will be offered to com-
fort those who mourn the dead; not even
a cup of consolation will be given for the
loss of a father or mother.

8 You must not enter a house where there
is feasting and sit down with them to eat
and drink. 9 For this is what Yahweh of
Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am going
to remove from this place, before your
very eyes and in your days, the sounds of
joy and gladness, the voices of the bride
and bridegroom.

10 When you tell these people all these
things, they will ask you, 'Why has Yah-
weh pronounced all this great disaster
against us? What is our iniquity? What is
the sin that we have committed against
Yahweh our God?'

11 Then you are to answer them: 'It is be-
cause your fathers have forsaken Me, de-
clares Yahweh, and followed other gods,
and served and worshiped them. They
abandoned Me and did not keep My in-
struction. 12 And you have done more evil
than your fathers. See how each of you
follows the stubbornness of his evil heart
instead of obeying Me. 13 So I will cast you
out of this land into a land that neither you
nor your fathers have known. There you
will serve other gods day and night, for I
will show you no favor.'

GOD WILL RESTORE ISRAEL

14 Yet behold, the days are coming, de-
clares Yahweh, when they will no longer
say, 'As surely as Yahweh lives, who
brought the Israelites up out of the land of
Egypt.' 15 Instead they will say, 'As surely
as Yahweh lives, who brought the Is-
raelites up out of the land of the north and
all the other lands to which He had ban-
ished them.' For I will return them to their
land that I gave to their forefathers.

16 But for now I will send for many fisher-
men, declares Yahweh, and they will
catch them. After that I will send for many
hunters, and they will hunt them down on
every mountain and hill, even from the
clefts of the rocks.

17 For My eyes are on all their ways. They
are not hidden from My face, and their
guilt is not concealed from My eyes. 18
And I will first repay them double their in-
iquity and their sin, because they have
defiled My land with the carcasses of
their detestable idols, and they have filled
My inheritance with their abominations."

19 O Yahweh, my strength and my fortress,
my refuge in the day of distress,
the nations will come to You

JER 16:2 [NOTE] DO NOT MARRY. The only person in the Old Testament God told not to marry. His single life was a warning that families were about to be torn apart, 16:3 to 4.

JER 16:11 [DEMONIC] Your fathers left Me and followed other gods
JER 16:13 [DEMONIC] In exile you will serve other gods day and night
JER 16:14 [PROPHECY] A new exodus from the land of the north would outshine the exodus from Egypt → EZR 1:1-3; EZR 2:1 · MEDIUM p.766
JER 16:18 [DEMONIC] Can man make gods for himself

THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

from the ends of the earth, and they will say,
"Our fathers inherited nothing but lies,
worthless idols of no benefit at all.
20 Can man make gods for himself?
Such are not gods!"
21 "Therefore behold, I will inform them,
and this time I will make them know
My power and My might;
then they will know
that My name is Yahweh.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Judah's sin is engraved on their hearts with an iron pen. Cursed is the man who trusts in man; blessed is the one who trusts in Yahweh, like a tree by the water. The heart is deceitful above all things.

THE SIN AND PUNISHMENT OF JUDAH

1 "The sin of Judah is written with an iron stylus,
engraved with a diamond point
on the tablets of their hearts
and on the horns of their altars.
2 Even their children remember their altars and Asherah poles
by the green trees and on the high hills.
3 O My mountain in the countryside,
I will give over your wealth
and all your treasures as plunder,
because of the sin of your high places,
within all your borders.
4 And you yourself will relinquish
the inheritance that I gave you.
I will enslave you to your enemies
in a land that you do not know,
for you have kindled My anger;
it will burn forever."
5 This is what Yahweh says:
"Cursed is the man who trusts in mankind,
who makes mere flesh his strength
and turns his heart from Yahweh.
6 He will be like a shrub in the desert;
he will not see when prosperity comes.
He will dwell in the parched places of the desert,
in a salt land where no one lives.

JER 17:1 [DEMONIC] Even the children remember the Asherah poles

7 But blessed is the man who trusts in Yahweh,
whose confidence is in Him.
8 He is like a tree planted by the waters
that sends out its roots toward the stream.
It does not fear when the heat comes,
and its leaves are always green.
It does not worry in a year of drought,
nor does it cease to produce fruit.
9 The heart is deceitful above all things
and beyond cure.
Who can understand it?
10 I, Yahweh, search the heart;
I examine the mind
to reward a man according to his way,
by what his deeds deserve.
11 Like a partridge hatching eggs it did not lay
is the man who makes a fortune unjustly.
In the middle of his days his riches will desert him,
and in the end he will be the fool."

JEREMIAH'S PRAYER FOR DELIVERANCE

12 A glorious throne, exalted from the beginning,
is the place of our sanctuary.
13 O Yahweh, the hope of Israel,
all who abandon You will be put to shame.
All who turn away will be written in the dust,
for they have abandoned Yahweh,
the fountain of living water.
14 Heal me, O Yahweh, and I will be healed;
save me, and I will be saved,
for You are my praise.
15 Behold, they keep saying to me,
"Where is the word of Yahweh?
Let it come now!"

JER 17:7 [NOTABLE] Trusting God keeps you green and growing even in a drought.
JER 17:9 [HEART] The heart is deceitful above all things. Who can understand it?
JER 17:9 [NOTE] DECEITFUL HEART. The heart is more twisted than anything and sick beyond cure. Only God can search it, 17:10, and only God can give a new one, 24:7.
JER 17:10 [HEART] God searches the heart and repays people by what they did.
JER 17:10 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 2:23 p.2085

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

16 But I have not run away from being Your
shepherd;
I have not desired the day of despair.
You know that the utterance of my lips
was spoken in Your presence.

17 Do not become a terror to me;
You are my refuge in the day of disaster.
18 Let my persecutors be put to shame,
but do not let me be put to shame.
Let them be terrified,
but do not let me be terrified.
Bring upon them the day of disaster
and shatter them with double destruc-
tion.

RESTORING THE SABBATH // NEHEMIAH 13:15–22

19 This is what Yahweh said to me: "Go and stand at the gate of the people, through which the kings of Judah go in and out; and stand at all the other gates of Jerusalem.

20 Say to them, 'Hear the word of Yahweh, O kings of Judah, all people of Judah and Jerusalem who enter through these gates.
21 This is what Yahweh says: Take heed for yourselves; do not carry a load or bring it through the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day. 22 You must not carry a load out of your houses or do any work on the Sabbath day, but you must keep the Sabbath day holy, just as I commanded your forefathers. 23 Yet they would not listen or incline their ear, but they stiffened their necks and would not listen or receive My discipline.

24 If, however, you listen carefully to Me, says Yahweh, and bring no load through the gates of this city on the Sabbath day, and keep the Sabbath day holy, and do no work on it, 25 then kings and princes will enter through the gates of this city. They will sit on the throne of David, riding in chariots and on horses with their officials, along with the men of Judah and the residents of Jerusalem, and this city will be inhabited forever. 26 And people will come from the cities of Judah and the places around Jerusalem, from the land of Benjamin, and from the foothills, the hill country, and the Negev, bringing burnt offerings and sacrifices, grain offerings and frankincense, and thank offerings to the house of Yahweh.

27 But if you do not listen to Me to keep the Sabbath day holy by not carrying a load while entering the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day, then I will kindle an unquenchable fire in its gates to consume the citadels of Jerusalem.'"

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

At the potter's house, a pot gets ruined, and the potter reshapes it. God says, Like clay in the potter's hand, so are you in Mine. The people respond by plotting against Jeremiah.

THE POTTER AND THE CLAY

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh: 2 "Go down at once to the potter's house, and there I will give you My message."

3 So I went down to the potter's house and saw him working at the wheel. 4 But the vessel that he was shaping from the clay became flawed in his hand; so he formed it into another vessel, as it seemed best for him to do.

5 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 6 "O house of Israel, declares Yahweh, can I not treat you as this potter treats his clay? Just like clay in the potter's hand, so are you in My hand, O house of Israel.

7 At any time I might announce that a nation or kingdom will be uprooted, torn down, and destroyed. 8 But if that nation I warned turns from its evil, then I will relent of the disaster I had planned to bring.

9 And if at another time I announce that I will build up and establish a nation or kingdom, 10 and if it does evil in My sight and does not listen to My voice, then I will relent of the good I had intended for it.

11 Now therefore, tell the men of Judah and the residents of Jerusalem that this is what Yahweh says: 'Behold, I am planning a disaster for you and devising a plan

JER 18:1 [NOTABLE] God can take a ruined life and reshape it into something new.
JER 18:6 [NOTE] THE POTTER AND THE CLAY. Isaiah used the same picture, Isaiah 64:8, and Paul too, Romans 9:21. See the Big Question Does God Change His Mind?

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

against you. Turn now, each of you, from your evil ways, and correct your ways and deeds.'

12 But they will reply, 'It is hopeless. We will follow our own plans, and each of us will act according to the stubbornness of his evil heart.'"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DOES GOD CHANGE HIS MIND?

If a Nation Turns

JEREMIAH 18:7 TO 10 · 26:3 · 26:19

THE VERSES

If a nation I warned turns from its evil, I will relent of the disaster I had planned, 18:8. If a nation I planned to build does evil, I will relent of the good, 18:10. God told Jeremiah, Perhaps they will listen, and I will relent, 26:3.

THE OTHER VERSES

God is not a man, that He should lie, or a son of man, that He should change His mind, Numbers 23:19. I, Yahweh, do not change, Malachi 3:6.

Every View

NUMBERS 23:19 · MALACHI 3:6 · JONAH 3:10 · JAMES 1:17

VIEW 1: HE CHANGES HOW HE DEALS, NOT WHO HE IS

The most common view: God's character never changes. He always punishes evil and forgives those who turn. When people change, His response changes, just as He said it would, 18:7 to 10. Nineveh is the example, Jonah 3:10.

VIEW 2: A WAY OF SPEAKING

Some say relent is God describing Himself in human terms so we can understand, the way the Bible speaks of His arm or His eyes.

VIEW 3: REAL RESPONSE

Others, sometimes called open theists, say God truly responds to choices that are not yet settled. Most churches do not hold this view. They point to Isaiah 46:10, where God declares the end from the beginning.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God's warnings are invitations. If you turn to Him, He is ready to show mercy.

13 Therefore this is what Yahweh says:

"Inquire among the nations:
Who has ever heard things like these?
Virgin Israel has done a most terrible thing.
14 Does the snow of Lebanon
ever leave its rocky slopes?
Or do its cool waters flowing from a distance
ever run dry?
15 Yet My people have forgotten Me.
They burn incense to worthless idols
that make them stumble in their ways,
leaving the ancient roads
to walk on rutted bypaths
instead of on the highway.
16 They have made their land a desolation,
a perpetual object of scorn;
all who pass by will be appalled
and shake their heads.
17 I will scatter them before the enemy
like the east wind.
I will show them My back and not My face
in the day of their calamity."

ANOTHER PLOT AGAINST JEREMIAH // JEREMIAH 11:18–23

18 Then some said, "Come, let us make plans against Jeremiah, for the law will never be lost to the priest, nor counsel to the wise, nor an oracle to the prophet. Come, let us denounce him and pay no heed to any of his words."

19 Attend to me, O Yahweh.
Hear what my accusers are saying!
20 Should good be repaid with evil?
Yet they have dug a pit for me.
Remember how I stood before You
to speak good on their behalf,
to turn Your wrath from them.

21 Therefore, hand their children over to famine;
pour out the power of the sword upon them.
Let their wives become childless and widowed;
let their husbands be slain by disease,
their young men struck down by the sword in battle.

JER 18:15 [DEMONIC] My people burn incense to worthless idols

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

22 Let a cry be heard from their houses
when You suddenly bring raiders
against them,
for they have dug a pit to capture me
and have hidden snares for my feet.

23 But You, O Yahweh, know all their
deadly plots against me.
Do not wipe out their guilt
or blot out their sin from Your sight.
Let them be overthrown before You;
deal with them in the time of Your anger.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah buys a clay jar, walks the elders to the valley of Ben Hinnom, preaches against child sacrifice, and smashes the jar. So will God smash this city.

THE BROKEN JAR

1 This is what Yahweh says: "Go and buy a clay jar from a potter. Take some of the elders of the people and leaders of the priests, 2 and go out to the Valley of Ben-hinnom near the entrance of the Potsherd Gate.

Proclaim there the words I speak to you, 3 saying, 'Hear the word of Yahweh, O kings of Judah and residents of Jerusalem. This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am going to bring such disaster on this place that the ears of all who hear of it will ring, 4 because they have abandoned Me and made this a foreign place. They have burned incense in this place to other gods that neither they nor their fathers nor the kings of Judah have ever known. They have filled this place with the blood of the innocent. 5 They have built high places to Baal on which to burn their children in the fire as offerings to Baal—something I never commanded or mentioned, nor did it even enter My heart.

6 So behold, the days are coming, declares Yahweh, when this place will no longer be called Topheth or the Valley of Ben-hinnom, but the Valley of Slaughter. 7 And in this place I will ruin the plans of Judah and Jerusalem. I will make them fall by the sword before their enemies, by the hands of those who seek their lives, and I will give their carcasses as food to the birds of the air and the beasts of the earth.

8 I will make this city a desolation and an object of scorn. All who pass by will be appalled and will scoff at all her wounds. 9 I will make them eat the flesh of their sons and daughters, and they will eat one another's flesh in the siege and distress inflicted on them by their enemies who seek their lives.'

10 Then you are to shatter the jar in the presence of the men who accompany you, 11 and you are to proclaim to them that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: I will shatter this nation and this city, like one shatters a potter's jar that can never again be repaired. They will bury the dead in Topheth until there is no more room to bury them.

12 This is what I will do to this place and to its residents, declares Yahweh. I will make this city like Topheth. 13 The houses of Jerusalem and the houses of the kings of Judah will be defiled like that place, Topheth—all the houses on whose rooftops they burned incense to all the host of heaven and poured out drink offerings to other gods."

14 Then Jeremiah returned from Topheth, where Yahweh had sent him to prophesy, and he stood in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh and proclaimed to all the people, 15 "This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'Behold, I am about to bring on this city and on all the villages around it every disaster I have pronounced against them, because they have stiffened their necks so as not to heed My words.'"

JER 19:2 [NOTE] THE VALLEY OF BEN HINNOM. A valley on the south and west sides of Jerusalem where children were burned at Topheth. Its Hebrew name, Ge Hinnom, became Gehenna, the word Jesus used for hell, Matthew 10:28.

JER 19:4 [DEMONIC] They burn their children as offerings to Baal

JER 19:10 [PROPHECY] God would shatter Jerusalem like a clay jar that cannot be repaired → 2KI 25:9-10; JER 52:13-14 p.660

JER 19:13 [DEMONIC] Rooftop incense to the host of heaven

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

The priest Pashhur beats Jeremiah and puts him in the stocks overnight. Jeremiah renames him Terror on Every Side. Then Jeremiah complains that God's word is a fire in his bones and he cannot keep quiet.

PASHHUR PERSECUTES JEREMIAH

1 When Pashhur the priest, the son of Immer and the chief official in the house of
Yahweh, heard Jeremiah prophesying
these things, 2 he had Jeremiah the
prophet beaten and put in the stocks at
the Upper Gate of Benjamin, which was
by the house of Yahweh.

3 The next day, when Pashhur released
Jeremiah from the stocks, Jeremiah said
to him, "Yahweh does not call you Pashhur, but Magor-missabib. 4 For this is what
Yahweh says: 'I will make you a terror to
yourself and to all your friends. They will
fall by the sword of their enemies before
your very eyes. And I will hand Judah over
to the king of Babylon, and he will carry
them away to Babylon and put them to the
sword. 5 I will give away all the wealth of
this city—all its products and valuables,
and all the treasures of the kings of
Judah—to their enemies. They will plunder them, seize them, and carry them off
to Babylon. 6 And you, Pashhur, and all
who live in your house, will go into captivity. You will go to Babylon, and there you
will die and be buried—you and all your
friends to whom you have prophesied
these lies.'"

JEREMIAH'S COMPLAINT

7 You have deceived me, O Yahweh, and I
was deceived.
You have overcome me and prevailed.
I am a laughingstock all day long;
everyone mocks me.
8 For whenever I speak, I cry out;
I proclaim violence and destruction.
For the word of Yahweh has become to
me
a reproach and derision all day long.

JER 20:4 [PROPHECY] Pashhur the priest and all his household would go into Babylonian captivity and die there → 2KI 24:14-16; 2KI 25:11 · MEDIUM p.658

9 If I say, "I will not mention Him
or speak any more in His name,"
His message becomes a fire burning in
my heart,
shut up in my bones,
and I become weary of holding it in,
and I cannot prevail.
10 For I have heard the whispering of
many:
"Terror is on every side!
Report him; let us report him!"
All my trusted friends
watch for my fall:
"Perhaps he will be deceived
so that we may prevail against him
and take our vengeance upon him."

11 But Yahweh is with me like a fearsome
warrior.
Therefore, my persecutors will stumble
and will not prevail.
Since they have not succeeded, they will
be utterly put to shame,
with an everlasting disgrace that will
never be forgotten.
12 O Yahweh of Hosts, who examines the
righteous,
who sees the heart and mind,
let me see Your vengeance upon them,
for to You I have committed my cause.

13 Sing to Yahweh!
Praise Yahweh!
For He rescues the life of the needy
from the hands of evildoers.

14 Cursed be the day I was born!
May the day my mother bore me never
be blessed.
15 Cursed be the man who brought my father the news,
saying, "A son is born to you,"
bringing him great joy.
16 May that man be like the cities
that Yahweh overthrew without compassion.
May he hear an outcry in the morning
and a battle cry at noon,
17 because he did not kill me in the womb

JER 20:9 [NOTE] A FIRE IN MY BONES. Jeremiah tried to quit preaching and could not. God's word burned inside him.

JER 20:12 [HEART] God sees the heart and mind of both the righteous and the wicked.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

so that my mother might have been my
grave,
and her womb forever enlarged.
18 Why did I come out of the womb
to see only trouble and sorrow,
and to end my days in shame?

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

King Zedekiah asks, Will God do a miracle like the old days? Answer: No. God Himself will fight against the city. Here are two roads: the way of life and the way of death.

JERUSALEM WILL FALL TO BABYLON

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh when King Zedekiah sent to him Pashhur son of Malchijah and the priest Zephaniah son of Maaseiah. They said, 2 "Please inquire of Yahweh on our behalf, since Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon is waging war against us. Perhaps Yahweh will perform for us something like all His past wonders, so that Nebuchadnezzar will withdraw from us."

3 But Jeremiah answered, "You are to tell Zedekiah that 4 this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'I will turn against you the weapons of war in your hands, with which you are fighting the king of Babylon and the Chaldeans who besiege you outside the wall, and I will assemble their forces in the center of this city. 5 And I Myself will fight against you with an outstretched hand and a mighty arm, with anger, fury, and great wrath. 6 I will strike down the residents of this city, both man and beast. They will die in a terrible plague.'

7 'After that,' declares Yahweh, 'I will hand over Zedekiah king of Judah, his officers, and the people in this city who survive the plague and sword and famine, to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and to their enemies who seek their lives. He will put them to the sword; he will not spare them or show pity or compassion.'

JER 21:7 **[PROPHECY]** Zedekiah and the survivors would be handed over to Nebuchadnezzar → JER 39:5-7; 2KI 25:6-7 p.1205

8 Furthermore, you are to tell this people that this is what Yahweh says: 'Behold, I set before you the way of life and the way of death. 9 Whoever stays in this city will die by sword and famine and plague, but whoever goes out and surrenders to the Chaldeans who besiege you will live; he will retain his life like a spoil of war. 10 For I have set My face against this city to bring disaster and not good, declares Yahweh. It will be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon, who will destroy it with fire.'

A MESSAGE TO THE HOUSE OF DAVID

11 Moreover, tell the house of the king of Judah to hear the word of Yahweh. 12 O house of David, this is what Yahweh says:

'Administer justice every morning,
and rescue the victim of robbery
from the hand of his oppressor,
or My wrath will go forth like fire
and burn with no one to extinguish it
because of their evil deeds.

13 Behold, I am against you who dwell
above the valley,
atop the rocky plateau—
declares Yahweh—
you who say, "Who can come against us?
Who can enter our dwellings?"
14 I will punish you as your deeds deserve,
declares Yahweh.
I will kindle a fire in your forest
that will consume everything around
you.'"

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Messages to the last kings. Shallum will never come home. Jehoiakim builds a palace with unpaid workers and will get the burial of a donkey. Coniah is written down as childless.

A WARNING TO JUDAH'S KINGS

1 This is what Yahweh says: "Go down to the palace of the king of Judah and proclaim this message there, 2 saying, 'Hear the word of Yahweh, O king of Judah, who sits on the throne of David—you and your officials and your people who enter these gates. 3 This is what Yahweh says:

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Administer justice and righteousness.
Rescue the victim of robbery from the
hand of his oppressor. Do no wrong or vi-
olence to the foreigner, the fatherless, or
the widow. Do not shed innocent blood in
this place.
4 For if you will indeed carry out these
commands, then kings who sit on David's
throne will enter through the gates of this
palace riding on chariots and
horses—they and their officials and their
people. 5 But if you do not obey these
words, then I swear by Myself, declares
Yahweh, that this house will become a pile
of rubble.'"

A WARNING ABOUT THE PALACE

6 For this is what Yahweh says concerning
the house of the king of Judah:

"You are like Gilead to Me,
like the summit of Lebanon;
but I will surely turn you into a desert,
like cities that are uninhabited.
7 I will appoint destroyers against you,
each man with his weapons,
and they will cut down the choicest of
your cedars
and throw them into the fire.
8 And many nations will pass by this city
and ask one another, 'Why has Yahweh
done such a thing to this great city?'
9 Then people will reply, 'Because they
have forsaken the covenant of Yahweh
their God and have worshiped and served
other gods.'"

A WARNING ABOUT SHALLUM

10 Do not weep for him who is dead;
do not mourn his loss.
Weep bitterly for him who is exiled,
for he will never return
to see his native land.
11 For this is what Yahweh says concerning
Shallum son of Josiah, king of Judah, who
succeeded his father Josiah but has gone
forth from this place: "He will never re-
turn, 12 but he will die in the place to which
he was exiled; he will never see this land
again."

A WARNING ABOUT JEHOIAKIM

13 "Woe to him who builds his palace by
unrighteousness,
and his upper rooms without justice,
who makes his countrymen serve without
pay,
and fails to pay their wages,
14 who says, 'I will build myself a great
palace,
with spacious upper rooms.'
So he cuts windows in it,
panels it with cedar,
and paints it with vermilion.
15 Does it make you a king to excel in
cedar?
Did not your father have food and drink?
He administered justice and righteous-
ness,
and so it went well with him.
16 He took up the cause of the poor and
needy,
and so it went well with him.
Is this not what it means to know Me?"
declares Yahweh.
17 "But your eyes and heart are set on
nothing
except your own dishonest gain,
on shedding innocent blood,
on practicing extortion and oppression."
18 Therefore this is what Yahweh says con-
cerning Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of
Judah:

"They will not mourn for him:
'Alas, my brother! Alas, my sister!'
They will not mourn for him:
'Alas, my master! Alas, his splendor!'
19 He will be buried like a donkey,
dragged away and thrown outside the
gates of Jerusalem.
20 Go up to Lebanon and cry out;
raise your voice in Bashan;
cry out from Abarim,
for all your lovers have been crushed.

JER 22:9 [DEMONIC] Jerusalem fell because they served other gods

JER 22:11 [PROPHECY] Shallum, also called Jehoahaz, would die in exile and never see Judah again → 2KI 23:34 p.657

JER 22:18 [PROPHECY] Jehoiakim would be buried with the burial of a donkey → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar killed King Jehoiakim and had his body thrown outside the walls of Jerusalem without burial, about 598 BC. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.6.3. · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

21 I warned you when you were secure.
You said, 'I will not listen.'
This has been your way from youth,
that you have not obeyed My voice.
22 The wind will drive away all your shepherds,
and your lovers will go into captivity.
Then you will be ashamed and humiliated
because of all your wickedness.
23 O inhabitant of Lebanon,
nestled in the cedars,
how you will groan when pangs of anguish come upon you,
agony like a woman in labor."

A WARNING TO CONIAH

24 "As surely as I live," declares Yahweh, "even if you, Coniah son of Jehoiakim king of Judah, were a signet ring on My right hand, I would pull you off. 25 In fact, I will hand you over to those you dread, who want to take your life—to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and to the Chaldeans. 26 I will hurl you and the mother who gave you birth into another land, where neither of you were born—and there you both will die. 27 You will never return to the land for which you long."

28 Is this man Coniah a despised and shattered pot,
a jar that no one wants?
Why are he and his descendants hurled out
and cast into a land they do not know?
29 O land, land, land,
hear the word of Yahweh!

30 This is what Yahweh says:

"Enroll this man as childless,
a man who will not prosper in his lifetime.
None of his descendants will prosper
to sit on the throne of David
or to rule again in Judah."

- JER 22:24 [PROPHECY] Coniah and his mother would be hurled into a foreign land and die there → 2KI 24:15; JER 52:31-34 p.658
- JER 22:30 [PROPHECY] Coniah (Jehoiachin) → HISTORY: King Jehoiachin was taken to Babylon in 597 BC, and none of his descendants ever ruled as king in Jerusalem. Babylonian ration tablets found in Babylon name him and his sons as captives.
- JER 22:30 [NOTE] CHILDLESS. Not that Coniah had no children; he had seven sons, 1 Chronicles 3:17 to 18.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Woe to the shepherds who scatter the sheep. God will raise up a righteous Branch for David, Yahweh Our Righteousness. And woe to the prophets who make up dreams. Is not My word like fire?

DAVID'S RIGHTEOUS BRANCH

1 "Woe to the shepherds who destroy and scatter the sheep of My pasture!" declares Yahweh.
2 Therefore this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says about the shepherds who tend My people: "You have scattered My flock and driven them away, and have not attended to them. Behold, I will attend to you for the evil of your deeds, declares Yahweh.
3 Then I Myself will gather the remnant of My flock from all the lands to which I have banished them, and I will return them to their pasture, where they will be fruitful and multiply. 4 I will raise up shepherds over them who will tend them, and they will no longer be afraid or dismayed, nor will any go missing, declares Yahweh.

5 Behold, the days are coming,
declares Yahweh,
when I will raise up for David
a righteous Branch,
and He will reign wisely as King
and will administer justice and righteousness in the land.
6 In His days Judah will be saved,
and Israel will dwell securely.
And this is His name by which He will be called:
Yahweh Our Righteousness.

None of them would sit on David's throne. Matthew traces Jesus' legal line through Jeconiah to Joseph, Matthew 1:11 to 12. Many Christians say Jesus is David's Son by blood through Mary, from David's son Nathan, Luke 3:31, so the curse is kept and the promise too. Others answer it in other ways, like God lifting the curse in Haggai 2:23.

- JER 23:5 [PROPHECY] A Branch of David's line → LK 3:23-31 p.1653
- JER 23:5 [PROPHECY] His name would be Yahweh Our Righteousness → 1CO 1:30; 2CO 5:21 p.1825
- JER 23:5 [FULFILLS] 'The Branch of Yahweh shall be beautiful and glorious' ← IS 4:2 · MEDIUM p.1066
- JER 23:5 [NOTE] THE BRANCH. A new shoot from the stump of David's family. His name is Yahweh Our Righteousness, 23:6. Christians see Jesus, who became our righteousness, 1 Corinthians 1:30.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

7 So behold, the days are coming, declares
Yahweh, when they will no longer say, 'As
surely as Yahweh lives, who brought the
Israelites up out of the land of Egypt.' 8 In-
stead they will say, 'As surely as Yahweh
lives, who brought and led the descen-
dants of the house of Israel up out of the
land of the north and all the other lands to
which He had banished them.' Then they
will dwell once more in their own land."

LYING PROPHETS

9 As for the prophets:

My heart is broken within me,
and all my bones tremble.
I have become like a drunkard,
like a man overcome by wine,
because of Yahweh,
because of His holy words.
10 For the land is full of adulterers—
because of the curse, the land mourns
and the pastures of the wilderness have
dried up—
their course is evil
and their power is misused.

11 "For both prophet and priest are un-
godly;
even in My house I have found their
wickedness,"
declares Yahweh.
12 "Therefore their path will become slick;
they will be driven away into the dark-
ness and fall into it.
For I will bring disaster upon them
in the year of their punishment,"
declares Yahweh.
13 "Among the prophets of Samaria
I saw an offensive thing:
They prophesied by Baal
and led My people Israel astray.
14 And among the prophets of Jerusalem
I have seen a horrible thing:
They commit adultery
and walk in lies.
They strengthen the hands of evildoers,
so that no one turns his back on
wickedness.
They are all like Sodom to Me;
the people of Jerusalem are like Gomor-
rah."
15 Therefore this is what Yahweh of Hosts
says concerning the prophets:

"I will feed them wormwood
and give them poisoned water to drink,
for from the prophets of Jerusalem
ungodliness has spread throughout the
land."
16 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Do not listen to the words of the prophets
who prophesy to you.
They are filling you with false hopes.
They speak visions from their own minds,
not from the mouth of Yahweh.
17 They keep saying to those who despise
Me,
'Yahweh says that you will have peace,'
and to everyone who walks in the stub-
bornness of his own heart,
'No harm will come to you.'

18 But which of them has stood in the
council of Yahweh
to see and hear His word?
Who has given heed to His word
and obeyed it?
19 Behold, the storm of Yahweh
has gone out with fury,
a whirlwind swirling down
upon the heads of the wicked.
20 The anger of Yahweh will not turn back
until He has fully accomplished the pur-
poses of His heart.
In the days to come
you will understand this clearly.

21 I did not send these prophets,
yet they have run with their message;
I did not speak to them,
yet they have prophesied.
22 But if they had stood in My council,
they would have proclaimed My words
to My people
and turned them back
from their evil ways and deeds."

23 "Am I only a God nearby," declares Yah-
weh, "and not a God far away?"

24 "Can a man hide in secret places where
I cannot see him?" declares Yahweh.

JER 23:13 [DEMONIC] Samaria's prophets prophesied by Baal

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

"Do I not fill the heavens and the earth?" declares Yahweh.

25 "I have heard the sayings of the prophets who prophesy lies in My name: 'I had a dream! I had a dream!' 26 How long will this continue in the hearts of these prophets who prophesy falsehood, these prophets of the delusion of their own minds? 27 They suppose the dreams that they tell one another will make My people forget My name, just as their fathers forgot My name through the worship of Baal.

28 Let the prophet who has a dream retell it, but let him who has My word speak it truthfully. For what is straw compared to grain?" declares Yahweh. 29 "Is not My word like fire," declares Yahweh, "and like a hammer that smashes a rock?"

30 "Therefore behold," declares Yahweh, "I am against the prophets who steal from one another words they attribute to Me."

31 "Yes," declares Yahweh, "I am against the prophets who wag their own tongues and proclaim, 'Yahweh declares it.'"

32 "Indeed," declares Yahweh, "I am against those who prophesy false dreams and retell them to lead My people astray with their reckless lies. It was not I who sent them or commanded them, and they are of no benefit at all to these people," declares Yahweh.

FALSE PROPHECIES

33 "Now when this people or a prophet or priest asks you, 'What is the burden of Yahweh?' you are to say to them, 'What burden? I will forsake you, declares Yahweh.'

34 As for the prophet or priest or anyone who claims, 'This is the burden of Yahweh,' I will punish that man and his household.

35 This is what each man is to say to his friend and to his brother: 'What has Yahweh answered?' or 'What has Yahweh spoken?' 36 But refer no more to the burden of Yahweh, for each man's word becomes the burden, so that you pervert the words of the living God, Yahweh of Hosts, our God.

37 Thus you are to say to the prophet: 'What has Yahweh answered you?' and 'What has Yahweh spoken?'

38 But if you claim, 'This is the burden of Yahweh,' then this is what Yahweh says: Because you have said, 'This is the burden of Yahweh,' and I specifically told you not to make this claim, 39 therefore I will surely forget you and will cast you out of My presence, both you and the city that I gave to you and your fathers. 40 And I will bring upon you everlasting shame and perpetual humiliation that will never be forgotten."

JER 23:27 [DEMONIC] Their fathers forgot God's name through Baal

JER 23:29 [NOTE] LIKE A HAMMER. Real prophecy breaks hard hearts like a hammer breaks rock. The false prophets' dreams were just straw, 23:28.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

Two baskets of figs: one very good, one so bad nobody can eat them. The good figs are the exiles in Babylon; God will give them a heart to know Him. The bad figs are Zedekiah and his crew.

THE GOOD AND BAD FIGS

1 After Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had carried away Jeconiah son of Jehoiakim king of Judah, as well as the officials of Judah and the craftsmen and metalsmiths from Jerusalem, and had brought them to Babylon, Yahweh showed me two baskets of figs placed in front of the temple of Yahweh. 2 One basket had very good figs, like those that ripen early, but the other basket contained very poor figs, so bad they could not be eaten.

3 "Jeremiah," Yahweh asked, "what do you see?"

"Figs!" I replied. "The good figs are very good, but the bad figs are very bad, so bad they cannot be eaten."

4 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 5 "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Like these good figs, so I regard as good the exiles from Judah, whom I have sent away from this place to the land of the Chaldeans. 6 I will keep My eyes on them for good and will return them to this land. I will build them up and

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

not tear them down; I will plant them and not uproot them. 7 I will give them a heart to know Me, that I am Yahweh. They will be My people, and I will be their God, for they will return to Me with all their heart.

8 But like the bad figs, so bad they cannot be eaten,' says Yahweh, 'so will I deal with Zedekiah king of Judah, his officials, and the remnant of Jerusalem—those remaining in this land and those living in the land of Egypt. 9 I will make them a horror and an offense to all the kingdoms of the earth, a disgrace and an object of scorn, ridicule, and cursing wherever I have banished them. 10 And I will send against them sword and famine and plague, until they have perished from the land that I gave to them and their fathers.'"

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Twenty three years of preaching and nobody listened. Now Babylon will rule for seventy years. Then everybody, from Egypt to the kings of the north, drinks from the cup of God's wrath.

SEVENTY YEARS OF CAPTIVITY

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the people of Judah in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah, which was the first year of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. 2 So the prophet Jeremiah spoke to all the people of Judah and all the residents of Jerusalem as follows:

3 "From the thirteenth year of Josiah son of Amon king of Judah until this very day—twenty-three years—the word of Yahweh has come to me, and I have spoken to you again and again, but you have not listened. 4 And Yahweh has sent all His servants the prophets to you again and again, but you have not listened or inclined your ear to hear.

5 The prophets told you, 'Turn now, each of you, from your evil ways and deeds, and you can dwell in the land that Yahweh has given to you and your fathers forever and ever. 6 Do not follow other gods to serve and worship them, and do not provoke Me to anger with the works of your hands. Then I will do you no harm.'

7 'But to your own harm, you have not listened to Me,' declares Yahweh, 'so you have provoked Me to anger with the works of your hands.'

8 Therefore this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'Because you have not obeyed My words, 9 behold, I will summon all the families of the north, declares Yahweh, and I will send for My servant Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, whom I will bring against this land, against its residents, and against all the surrounding nations. So I will devote them to destruction and make them an object of horror and contempt, an everlasting desolation.

10 Moreover, I will banish from them the sounds of joy and gladness, the voices of the bride and bridegroom, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the lamp. 11 And this whole land will become a desolate wasteland, and these nations will serve the king of Babylon for seventy years.

12 But when seventy years are complete, I will punish the king of Babylon and that nation, the land of the Chaldeans, for their guilt, declares Yahweh, and I will make it an everlasting desolation.

13 I will bring upon that land all the words I have pronounced against it, all that is written in this book, which Jeremiah has prophesied against all the nations. 14 For many nations and great kings will enslave them, and I will repay them according to their deeds and according to the work of their hands.'"

- **JER 24:7 [HEART]** God gives what people cannot make on their own: a heart that knows Him.
- **JER 24:7 [NOTE]** A HEART TO KNOW ME. God promises to give what they could never make on their own: a new heart.
- **JER 25:6 [DEMONIC]** Do not follow other gods to serve them
- **JER 25:11 [PROPHECY]** Judah would serve Babylon 70 years; then Babylon would be punished → 2CH 36:20-23; EZR 1:1; DAN 9:2 p.759
- **JER 25:11 [NOTE]** SEVENTY YEARS. Daniel read this verse in Babylon and began to pray, Daniel 9:2. See the Big Question The Seventy Years.

GOD SPEAKING

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SEVENTY YEARS

Which Seventy?

JEREMIAH 25:11 TO 12 · 29:10

THE PROMISE

These nations will serve the king of Babylon seventy years, 25:11. When seventy years are complete for Babylon, I will bring you back, 29:10. Daniel read it and prayed, Daniel 9:2, and Ezra says Cyrus fulfilled it, Ezra 1:1.

THE DATES

Babylon took its first captives from Jerusalem in 605 BC. Babylon fell to Cyrus in 539 BC, and the first Jews went home about 538 BC. The temple burned in 586 BC and was rebuilt in 516 BC.

Every View

DANIEL 9:2 · 2 CHRONICLES 36:21 · ZECHARIAH 1:12 · EZRA 1:1

VIEW 1: 605 TO ABOUT 537 BC

From the first captives to the return under Cyrus, close to seventy years.

VIEW 2: 609 TO 539 BC

Seventy years of Babylon's rule over the nations, from the fall of Assyria's last king to Babylon's fall to Cyrus. 29:10 says seventy years for Babylon.

VIEW 3: 586 TO 516 BC

From the temple burning to the new temple, almost exactly seventy years. Zechariah 1:12 seems to count this way.

VIEW 4: A ROUND NUMBER

Some say seventy is a full lifetime, Psalm 90:10, a way to say no one taken will live to come back. 2 Chronicles 36:21 ties it to the land's missed Sabbath rests.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God kept His word: Babylon fell, and His people came home.

THE CUP OF GOD'S WRATH

15 This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel,
said to me: "Take from My hand this cup
of the wine of wrath, and make all the na-
tions to whom I send you drink from it. 16
And they will drink and stagger and go out
of their minds, because of the sword that I
will send among them."
17 So I took the cup from Yahweh's hand
and made all the nations drink from it,
each one to whom Yahweh had sent me,
18 to make them a ruin, an object of horror
and contempt and cursing, as they are to
this day—Jerusalem and the cities of Ju-
dah, its kings and officials; 19 Pharaoh king
of Egypt, his officials, his leaders, and all
his people; 20 all the mixed tribes; all the
kings of Uz; all the kings of the Philistines:
Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron, and the remnant
of Ashdod; 21 Edom, Moab, and the Am-
monites; 22 all the kings of Tyre and Sidon;
the kings of the coastlands across the
sea; 23 Dedan, Tema, Buz, and all who cut
the corners of their hair; 24 all the kings of
Arabia, and all the kings of the mixed
tribes who dwell in the desert; 25 all the
kings of Zimri, Elam, and Media; 26 all the
kings of the north, both near and far, one
after another—all the kingdoms on the
face of the earth. And after all of them,
the king of Sheshach will drink it too.
27 "Then you are to tell them that this is
what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel,
says: 'Drink, get drunk, and vomit. Fall
down and never get up again, because of
the sword I will send among you.'
28 If they refuse to take the cup from your
hand and drink it, you are to tell them that
this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'You
most certainly must drink it! 29 For behold,
I am beginning to bring disaster on the
city that bears My Name, so how could
you possibly go unpunished? You will not
go unpunished, for I am calling down a
sword upon all the inhabitants of the
earth, declares Yahweh of Hosts.'
30 So you are to prophesy all these words
against them and say to them:

'Yahweh will roar from on high;
He will raise His voice from His holy
habitation.
He will roar loudly over His pasture;
like those who tread the grapes,
He will call out with a shout
against all the inhabitants of the earth.
31 The tumult will resound to the ends of
the earth

GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

because Yahweh brings a charge
against the nations.
He brings judgment on all mankind
and puts the wicked to the sword,'"
declares Yahweh.

32 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Behold! Disaster is spreading
from nation to nation;
a mighty storm is rising
from the ends of the earth."

33 Those slain by Yahweh on that day will be spread from one end of the earth to the other. They will not be mourned, gathered, or buried. They will be like dung lying on the ground.

THE CRY OF THE SHEPHERDS

34 Wail, you shepherds, and cry out;
roll in the dust, you leaders of the flock.
For the days of your slaughter have come;
you will fall and be shattered like fine pottery.
35 Flight will evade the shepherds,
and escape will elude the leaders of the flock.
36 Hear the cry of the shepherds,
the wailing of the leaders of the flock,
for Yahweh is destroying their pasture.
37 The peaceful meadows have been silenced
because of Yahweh's burning anger.
38 He has left His den like a lion,
for their land has been made a desolation
by the sword of the oppressor,
and because of the fierce anger of Yahweh.

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah preaches at the temple and almost gets killed for it. Some elders remember Micah said the same thing a hundred years before. Another prophet, Uriah, was not so lucky.

A WARNING TO THE CITIES OF JUDAH

1 At the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah, this word came from Yahweh: 2 "This is what Yahweh says: Stand in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh and speak all the words I have commanded you to speak to all the cities of Judah who come to worship there. Do not omit a word. 3 Perhaps they will listen and turn—each from his evil way of life—so that I may relent of the disaster I am planning to bring upon them because of the evil of their deeds.

4 And you are to tell them that this is what Yahweh says: 'If you do not listen to Me and walk in My law, which I have set before you, 5 and if you do not listen to the words of My servants the prophets, whom I have sent you again and again even though you did not listen, 6 then I will make this house like Shiloh, and I will make this city an object of cursing among all the nations of the earth.'"

JEREMIAH THREATENED WITH DEATH

7 Now the priests and prophets and all the people heard Jeremiah speaking these words in the house of Yahweh, 8 and as soon as he had finished telling all the people everything Yahweh had commanded him to say, the priests and prophets and all the people seized him, shouting, "You must surely die! 9 How dare you prophesy in the name of Yahweh that this house will become like Shiloh and this city will be desolate and deserted!"

And all the people assembled against Jeremiah in the house of Yahweh.

10 When the officials of Judah heard these things, they went up from the king's palace to the house of Yahweh and sat there at the entrance of the New Gate.

11 Then the priests and prophets said to the officials and all the people, "This man is worthy of death, for he has prophesied against this city, as you have heard with your own ears!"

12 But Jeremiah said to all the officials and all the people, "Yahweh sent me to prophesy against this house and against this city all the words that you have heard. 13 So now, correct your ways and deeds, and obey the voice of Yahweh your God, so that He might relent of the disaster He has pronounced against you. 14 As for me, here I am in your hands; do to me what

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

you think is good and right. 15 But know for certain that if you put me to death, you will bring innocent blood upon yourselves, upon this city, and upon its residents; for truly Yahweh has sent me to speak all these words in your hearing."

JEREMIAH SPARED FROM DEATH

16 Then the officials and all the people told the priests and prophets, "This man is not worthy of death, for he has spoken to us in the name of Yahweh our God!"

17 Some of the elders of the land stood up and said to the whole assembly of the people, 18 "Micah the Moreshite prophesied in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah and told all the people of Judah that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

'Zion will be plowed like a field,
Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble,
and the temple mount a wooded ridge.'

19 Did Hezekiah king of Judah or anyone else in Judah put him to death? Did Hezekiah not fear Yahweh and seek His favor, and did not Yahweh relent of the disaster He had pronounced against them? But we are about to bring great harm on ourselves!"

THE PROPHET URIAH

20 Now there was another man prophesying in the name of Yahweh, Uriah son of Shemaiah from Kiriath-jearim. He prophesied against this city and against this land the same things that Jeremiah did. 21 King Jehoiakim and all his mighty men and officials heard his words, and the king sought to put him to death. But when Uriah found out about it, he fled in fear and went to Egypt.

22 Then King Jehoiakim sent men to Egypt: Elnathan son of Achbor along with some other men. 23 They brought Uriah out of Egypt and took him to King Jehoiakim, who had him put to the sword and his body thrown into the burial place of the common people.

24 Nevertheless, Ahikam son of Shaphan supported Jeremiah, so he was not handed over to the people to be put to death.

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah walks around wearing an ox yoke. The message: bow to Babylon and live. The prophets who say the temple treasures are coming back soon are lying.

THE YOKE OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR

1 At the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah son of Josiah king of Judah, this word came to Jeremiah from Yahweh. 2 This is what Yahweh said to me:

"Make for yourself a yoke out of leather straps and put it on your neck. 3 Send word to the kings of Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre, and Sidon through the envoys who have come to Jerusalem to Zedekiah king of Judah. 4 Give them a message from Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, to relay to their masters:

5 By My great power and outstretched arm, I made the earth and the men and beasts on the face of it, and I give it to whom I please. 6 So now I have placed all these lands under the authority of My servant Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. I have even made the beasts of the field subject to him. 7 All nations will serve him and his son and grandson, until the time of his own land comes; then many nations and great kings will enslave him.

8 As for the nation or kingdom that does not serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and does not place its neck under his yoke, I will punish that nation by sword and famine and plague, declares Yahweh, until I have destroyed it by his hand.

9 But as for you, do not listen to your prophets, your diviners, your interpreters of dreams, your mediums, or your sorcerers who declare, 'You will not serve the

JER 26:18 [FULFILLS] Zion would be plowed like a field; Jerusalem become a heap of ruins ← MIC 3:12 p.1435

JER 26:18 [NOTE] MICAH. The elders quote Micah 3:12 word for word, about a hundred years after Micah said it. It is one of the few times one prophet is quoted by name in another book.

JER 27:6 [PROPHECY] Nations would serve Nebuchadnezzar, his son, and his grandson until his own land's time came → JER 52:31; DAN 5:30 · MEDIUM p.1228

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

king of Babylon.' 10 For they prophesy to you a lie that will serve to remove you from your land; I will banish you and you will perish. 11 But the nation that will put its neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon and serve him, I will leave in its own land, to cultivate it and reside in it, declares Yahweh."

12 And to Zedekiah king of Judah I spoke the same message: "Put your necks under the yoke of the king of Babylon; serve him and his people, and live! 13 Why should you and your people die by sword and famine and plague, as Yahweh has decreed against any nation that does not serve the king of Babylon?

14 Do not listen to the words of the prophets who say, 'You must not serve the king of Babylon,' for they are prophesying to you a lie. 15 For I have not sent them, declares Yahweh, and yet they are prophesying falsely in My name; therefore I will banish you, and you will perish—you and the prophets who prophesy to you."

16 Then I said to the priests and to all this people, "This is what Yahweh says: Do not listen to the words of your prophets who prophesy to you, saying, 'Look, very soon now the articles from the house of Yahweh will be brought back from Babylon.' They are prophesying to you a lie. 17 Do not listen to them. Serve the king of Babylon and live! Why should this city become a ruin?

18 If they are indeed prophets and the word of Yahweh is with them, let them now plead with Yahweh of Hosts that the articles remaining in the house of Yahweh, in the palace of the king of Judah, and in Jerusalem, not be taken to Babylon.

19 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts says about the pillars, the sea, the bases, and the rest of the articles that remain in this city, 20 which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon did not take when he carried Jeconiah son of Jehoiakim king of Judah into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon, along with all the nobles of Judah and Jerusalem. 21 Yes, this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says about the articles that remain in the house of Yahweh, in the palace of the king of Judah, and in Jerusalem: 22 'They will be carried to Babylon and will remain there until the day I attend to them again,' declares Yahweh. 'Then I will bring them back and restore them to this place.'"

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

The prophet Hananiah breaks Jeremiah's wooden yoke and says Babylon is finished in two years. God says, Now it is an iron yoke. Hananiah dies within the year.

HANANIAH'S FALSE PROPHECY

1 In the fifth month of that same year, the fourth year, near the beginning of the reign of King Zedekiah of Judah, the prophet Hananiah son of Azzur, who was from Gibeon, said to me in the house of Yahweh in the presence of the priests and all the people: 2 "This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'I have broken the yoke of the king of Babylon. 3 Within two years I will restore to this place all the articles of the house of Yahweh that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon removed from here and carried to Babylon. 4 And I will restore to this place Jeconiah son of Jehoiakim king of Judah, along with all the exiles from Judah who went to Babylon,' declares Yahweh, 'for I will break the yoke of the king of Babylon.'"

5 Then the prophet Jeremiah replied to the prophet Hananiah in the presence of the priests and all the people who were standing in the house of Yahweh. 6 "Amen!" Jeremiah said. "May Yahweh do so! May Yahweh fulfill the words you have prophesied, and may He restore the articles of His house and all the exiles back to this place from Babylon.

7 Nevertheless, listen now to this message I am speaking in your hearing and in the

JER 27:9 [DEMONIC] Do not listen to diviners, mediums, or sorcerers

JER 27:21 [PROPHECY] The temple articles would be carried to Babylon and later brought back → 2KI 25:13-15; EZR 1:7-11 p.660

JER 28:1 [NOTE] HANANIAH. A prophet who spoke in Yahweh's name but was not sent. His words stay black, like every false prophet in this Bible.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

hearing of all the people. 8 The prophets of old who preceded you and me prophesied war, disaster, and plague against many lands and great kingdoms. 9 As for the prophet who prophesies peace, only if the word of the prophet comes true will the prophet be recognized as one Yahweh has truly sent."

10 Then the prophet Hananiah took the yoke off the neck of Jeremiah the prophet and broke it. 11 And in the presence of all the people Hananiah proclaimed, "This is what Yahweh says: 'In this way, within two years I will break the yoke of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon off the neck of all the nations.'"

At this, Jeremiah the prophet went on his way. 12 But shortly after Hananiah the prophet had broken the yoke off his neck, the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 13 "Go and tell Hananiah that this is what Yahweh says: 'You have broken a yoke of wood, but in its place you have fashioned a yoke of iron.'

14 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'I have put a yoke of iron on the neck of all these nations to make them serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and they will serve him. I have even given him control of the beasts of the field.'"

15 Then the prophet Jeremiah said to the prophet Hananiah, "Listen, Hananiah! Yahweh did not send you, but you have persuaded this people to trust in a lie. 16 Therefore this is what Yahweh says: 'I am about to remove you from the face of the earth. You will die this year because you have preached rebellion against Yahweh.'"

17 And in the seventh month of that very year, the prophet Hananiah died.

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah writes to the exiles: build houses, plant gardens, get married, and pray for Babylon. Seventy years, then I will bring you home. I know the plans I have for you.

JEREMIAH'S LETTER TO THE EXILES

1 This is the text of the letter that Jeremiah the prophet sent from Jerusalem to the surviving elders among the exiles and to the priests, the prophets, and all the others Nebuchadnezzar had carried into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon. 2 (This was after King Jeconiah, the queen mother, the court officials, the officials of Judah and Jerusalem, the craftsmen, and the metalsmiths had been exiled from Jerusalem.) 3 The letter was entrusted to Elasah son of Shaphan and Gemariah son of Hilkiah, whom Zedekiah king of Judah sent to King Nebuchadnezzar in Babylon. It stated:

4 This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says to all the exiles who were carried away from Jerusalem to Babylon: 5 "Build houses and settle down. Plant gardens and eat their produce. 6 Take wives and have sons and daughters. Take wives for your sons and give your daughters in marriage, so that they too may have sons and daughters. Multiply there; do not decrease. 7 Seek the prosperity of the city to which I have sent you as exiles. Pray to Yahweh on its behalf, for if it prospers, you too will prosper."

8 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: "Do not be deceived by the prophets and diviners among you, and do not listen to the dreams you elicit from them. 9 For they are falsely prophesying to you in My name; I have not sent them, declares Yahweh."

10 For this is what Yahweh says: "When Babylon's seventy years are complete, I will attend to you and confirm My promise

JER 28:15 [PROPHECY] Jeremiah told false prophet Hananiah he would die that year → JER 28:17 p.1187
JER 28:17 [FULFILLS] Jeremiah told false prophet Hananiah he would die that year ← JER 28:15-17 p.1187

JER 29:7 [NOTE] SEEK THE PEACE OF THE CITY. God told the exiles to pray for Babylon, the city that took them captive.
JER 29:8 [DEMONIC] Do not be fooled by prophets and diviners

THE HEART NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

to restore you to this place. 11 For I know the plans I have for you, declares Yahweh, plans to prosper you and not to harm you, to give you a future and a hope. 12 Then you will call upon Me and come and pray to Me, and I will listen to you. 13 You will seek Me and find Me when you search for Me with all your heart. 14 I will be found by you, declares Yahweh, and I will restore you from captivity and gather you from all the nations and places to which I have banished you, declares Yahweh. I will restore you to the place from which I sent you into exile."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

IS JEREMIAH 29:11 FOR ME?

Read the Whole Letter

JEREMIAH 29:4 TO 14

THE LETTER

Jeremiah wrote to the exiles in Babylon, 29:1. Build houses, settle down, pray for the city, 29:5 to 7. Do not listen to prophets who say you will be home soon, 29:8 to 9. After seventy years I will bring you back, 29:10. Then comes the famous verse.

WHO IT WAS TO

The you in 29:11 is plural, the whole people of Judah in exile. Most of the adults who first read it would die in Babylon before the seventy years were up.

Every View

ROMANS 8:28 · ROMANS 15:4 · 2 CORINTHIANS 1:20

VIEW 1: A PROMISE FOR ALL GOD'S PEOPLE

Many Christians say God's heart in this verse is the same for His children today. All God's promises are Yes in Christ, 2 Corinthians 1:20, and God works all things for good for those who love Him, Romans 8:28.

VIEW 2: A PROMISE TO THEM, A LESSON FOR US

Others say it was a promise to Israel about coming home, not a promise that our plans will work out. What carries over is God's character: He is faithful, and His plans are good even in a hard season. These things were written for our instruction, Romans 15:4.

THE FINE PRINT

Prosper is shalom, peace and wholeness, not money. And the good future came after seventy years in exile, not instead of it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God has good plans for His people, and He keeps His word, even when the wait is long. Seek Him with all your heart, 29:13.

15 Because you may say, "Yahweh has raised up for us prophets in Babylon," 16 this is what Yahweh says about the king who sits on David's throne and all the people who remain in this city, your brothers who did not go with you into exile— 17 this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"I will send against them sword and famine and plague, and I will make them like rotten figs, so bad they cannot be eaten. 18 I will pursue them with sword and famine and plague. I will make them a horror to all the kingdoms of the earth—a curse, a desolation, and an object of scorn and reproach among all the nations to which I banish them. 19 I will do this because they have not listened to My words, declares Yahweh, which I sent to them again and again through My servants the prophets. And neither have you exiles listened, declares Yahweh."

20 So hear the word of Yahweh, all you exiles I have sent away from Jerusalem to Babylon. 21 This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says about Ahab son of Kolaiah and Zedekiah son of Maaseiah, who are prophesying to you lies in My name: "I will deliver them to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and he will kill them before your very eyes. 22 Because of them, all the exiles of Judah who are in Babylon will use this curse: 'May Yahweh make you like Zedekiah and Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in the fire!' 23

- **JER 29:10 [PROPHECY]** After 70 years, God would visit them and bring them back to this place → EZR 1:1-4 p.766
- **JER 29:11 [NOTABLE]** Written to exiles facing seventy years in Babylon. God's plans are good even in a long, hard season. Read it with 29:10.
- **JER 29:11 [NOTE]** PLANS TO PROSPER YOU. Written to the exiles in Babylon, 29:4, and it came after seventy years, 29:10. See the Big Question Is Jeremiah 29:11 for Me?
- **JER 29:13 [HEART]** You will find Me when you search for Me with all your heart.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

For they have committed an outrage in Israel by committing adultery with the wives of their neighbors and speaking lies in My name, which I did not command them to do. I am He who knows, and I am a witness, declares Yahweh."

THE MESSAGE TO SHEMAIAH

24 You are to tell Shemaiah the Nehelamite that 25 this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: "In your own name you have sent out letters to all the people of Jerusalem, to the priest Zephaniah son of Maaseiah, and to all the priests. You said to Zephaniah:

26 'Yahweh has appointed you priest in place of Jehoiada, to be the chief officer in the house of Yahweh, responsible for any madman who acts like a prophet—you must put him in stocks and neck irons. 27 So now, why have you not rebuked Jeremiah of Anathoth, who poses as a prophet among you? 28 For he has sent to us in Babylon, claiming: Since the exile will be lengthy, build houses and settle down; plant gardens and eat their produce.'"

29 (Zephaniah the priest, however, had read this letter to Jeremiah the prophet.)

30 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 31 "Send a message telling all the exiles what Yahweh says concerning Shemaiah the Nehelamite. Because Shemaiah has prophesied to you—though I did not send him—and has made you trust in a lie, 32 this is what Yahweh says: 'I will surely punish Shemaiah the Nehelamite and his descendants. He will have no one left among this people, nor will he see the good that I will bring to My people, declares Yahweh, for he has preached rebellion against Yahweh.'"

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Jeremiah to write it all down: a time of trouble for Jacob, but he will be saved. The wound looked incurable, but God says, I will restore your health and heal your wounds.

THE RESTORATION OF ISRAEL AND JUDAH // EZEKIEL 28:25–26

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh: 2 "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 'Write in a book all the words that I have spoken to you. 3 For behold, the days are coming, declares Yahweh, when I will restore from captivity My people Israel and Judah, declares Yahweh. I will restore them to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they will possess it.'"

4 These are the words that Yahweh spoke concerning Israel and Judah. 5 Yes, this is what Yahweh says:

"A cry of panic is heard—
a cry of terror, not of peace.
6 Ask now, and see:
Can a male give birth?
Why then do I see every man
with his hands on his stomach like a woman in labor
and every face turned pale?
7 How awful that day will be!
None will be like it!
It is the time of Jacob's distress,
but he will be saved out of it.

8 On that day,
declares Yahweh of Hosts,
I will break the yoke off their necks
and tear off their bonds,
and no longer will strangers enslave them.
9 Instead, they will serve Yahweh their God
and David their king,
whom I will raise up for them.

10 As for you, O Jacob My servant, do not be afraid,
declares Yahweh,
and do not be dismayed,
O Israel.
For I will surely save you out of a distant place,

JER 30:7 [PROPHECY] The time of Jacob's distress, yet he will be saved out of it; God will not make a full end of him → HISTORY: About six million Jews were murdered in the Holocaust, 1939 to 1945, yet the Jewish people survived and founded Israel in 1948. Many Christians see this verse here, while others read it differently. · MEDIUM

JER 30:9 [PROPHECY] Israel would serve David their king whom God would raise up → LK 1:32-33; ACTS 13:22-23 p.1645

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

your descendants from the land of their captivity!
Jacob will return to quiet and ease,
with no one to make him afraid.
11 For I am with you to save you,
declares Yahweh.
Though I will completely destroy all the nations to which I have scattered you,
I will not completely destroy you.
Yet I will discipline you justly,
and will by no means leave you unpunished."

12 For this is what Yahweh says:

"Your injury is incurable;
your wound is grievous.
13 There is no one to plead your cause,
no remedy for your sores,
no recovery for you.
14 All your lovers have forgotten you;
they no longer seek you,
for I have struck you as an enemy would,
with the discipline of someone cruel,
because of your great iniquity
and your numerous sins.

15 Why do you cry out over your wound?
Your pain has no cure!
Because of your great iniquity
and your numerous sins
I have done these things to you.

16 Nevertheless, all who devour you will be devoured,
and all your adversaries—every one of them—
will go off into exile.
Those who plundered you will be plundered,
and all who raided you will be raided.
17 But I will restore your health and heal your wounds,
declares Yahweh,
because they call you an outcast,
Zion, for whom no one cares."

18 This is what Yahweh says:

"I will restore the fortunes of Jacob's tents
and have compassion on his dwellings.
And the city will be rebuilt on her own ruins,
and the palace will stand in its rightful place.
19 Thanksgiving will proceed from them,
a sound of celebration.
I will multiply them, and they will not be decreased;
I will honor them, and they will not be belittled.
20 Their children will be as in days of old,
and their congregation will be established before Me;
and I will punish all their oppressors.
21 Their leader will be one of their own,
and their ruler will arise from their midst.
And I will bring him near, and he will approach Me,
for who would dare on his own to approach Me?"
declares Yahweh.
22 "And you will be My people,
and I will be your God."

23 Behold, the storm of Yahweh
has gone out with fury,
a whirlwind swirling down
upon the heads of the wicked.
24 The fierce anger of Yahweh will not turn back
until He has fully accomplished the purposes of His heart.
In the days to come
you will understand this.

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

I have loved you with an everlasting love. Rachel weeps for her children, but they will come home. Then the big one: a new covenant, with God's law written on hearts.

MOURNING TURNED TO JOY // MATTHEW 2:16–18

1 "At that time," declares Yahweh, "I will be the God of all the families of Israel, and they will be My people."

2 This is what Yahweh says:

"The people who survived the sword
found favor in the wilderness
when Israel went to find rest."

3 Yahweh appeared to us in the past, saying:

"I have loved you with an everlasting love;
therefore I have drawn you with loving devotion.

MESSIANIC PROPECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

4 Again I will build you, and you will be rebuilt,
O Virgin Israel.
Again you will take up your tambourines
and go out in joyful dancing.
5 Again you will plant vineyards on the hills of Samaria;
the farmers will plant and enjoy the fruit.
6 For there will be a day when watchmen will call out
on the hills of Ephraim,
'Arise, let us go up to Zion,
to Yahweh our God!'"

7 For this is what Yahweh says:

"Sing with joy for Jacob;
shout for the foremost of the nations!
Make your praises heard, and say,
'O Yahweh, save Your people,
the remnant of Israel!'

8 Behold, I will bring them from the land of the north
and gather them from the farthest parts of the earth,
including the blind and the lame,
expectant mothers and women in labor.
They will return as a great assembly!

9 They will come with weeping,
and by their supplication I will lead them;
I will make them walk beside streams of waters,
on a level path where they will not stumble.
For I am Israel's Father,
and Ephraim is My firstborn."

10 Hear, O nations, the word of Yahweh,
and proclaim it in distant coastlands:

"The One who scattered Israel will gather them and keep them
as a shepherd keeps his flock.
11 For Yahweh has ransomed Jacob
and redeemed him from the hand that had overpowered him.
12 They will come and shout for joy on the heights of Zion;
they will be radiant over the bounty of Yahweh—
the grain, new wine, and oil,
and the young of the flocks and herds.
Their life will be like a well-watered garden,
and never again will they languish.

13 Then the maidens will rejoice with dancing,
young men and old as well.
I will turn their mourning into joy,
and give them comfort and joy for their sorrow.
14 I will fill the souls of the priests abundantly,
and will fill My people with My goodness,"
declares Yahweh.

15 *This is what Yahweh says:*

"A voice is heard in Ramah,
mourning and great weeping,
Rachel weeping for her children
and refusing to be comforted,
because they are no more."

16 This is what Yahweh says:

"Keep your voice from weeping
and your eyes from tears,
for the reward for your work will come,
declares Yahweh.
Then your children will return
from the land of the enemy.
17 So there is hope for your future,
declares Yahweh,
and your children will return
to their own land.

18 I have surely heard Ephraim's moaning:

'You disciplined me severely,
like an untrained calf.
Restore me, that I may return,
for You are Yahweh my God.
19 After I returned, I repented;
and after I was instructed, I struck my thigh in grief.

JER 31:3 [NOTABLE] God's love does not run out, even after His people ran away.
JER 31:3 [NOTE] EVERLASTING LOVE. The Hebrew word behind loving devotion is chesed, God's loyal love that keeps its promises.

JER 31:15 [PROPHECY] Rachel weeping in Ramah for her children who are no more → MT 2:16-18 p.1552
JER 31:15 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → MT 2:18 p.1552
JER 31:15 [NOTE] RAMAH. Rachel, mother of Joseph and Benjamin, weeps for her children taken away. Matthew 2:18 quotes this verse about Herod's killing of the babies in Bethlehem.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

I was ashamed and humiliated
because I bore the disgrace of my
youth.'

20 Is not Ephraim a precious son to Me,
a delightful child?
Though I often speak against him,
I still remember him.
Therefore My heart yearns for him;
I have great compassion for him,"
declares Yahweh.
21 "Set up the road markers,
put up the signposts.
Keep the highway in mind,
the road you have traveled.
Return, O Virgin Israel,
return to these cities of yours.
22 How long will you wander,
O faithless daughter?
For Yahweh has created a new thing in the
land—
a woman will shelter a man."

23 This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: "When I restore them from captivity, they will once again speak this word in the land of Judah and in its cities: 'May Yahweh bless you, O righteous dwelling place, O holy mountain.' 24 And Judah and all its cities will dwell together in the land, the farmers and those who move with the flocks, 25 for I will refresh the weary soul and replenish all who are weak."

THE NEW COVENANT // HEBREWS 8:6–13

26 At this I awoke and looked around. My sleep had been most pleasant to me.

27 "The days are coming," declares Yahweh, "when I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of man and of beast. 28 Just as I watched over them to uproot and tear down, to demolish, destroy, and bring disaster, so I will watch over them to build and to plant," declares Yahweh.

29 "In those days, it will no longer be said:

'The fathers have eaten sour grapes,
and the teeth of the children are set on
edge.'

30 Instead, each will die for his own iniquity. If anyone eats the sour grapes, his own teeth will be set on edge.

31 *Behold, the days are coming, declares Yahweh,*
when I will make a new covenant
with the house of Israel
and with the house of Judah.
32 *It will not be like the covenant*
I made with their fathers
when I took them by the hand
to lead them out of the land of Egypt—
a covenant they broke,
though I was a husband to them,"
declares Yahweh.
33 *"But this is the covenant I will make with*
the house of Israel
after those days, declares Yahweh.
I will put My law in their minds
and inscribe it on their hearts.
And I will be their God,
and they will be My people.
34 *No longer will each man teach his neighbor*
or his brother,
saying, 'Know Yahweh,'
because they will all know Me,
from the least of them to the greatest, declares Yahweh.
For I will forgive their iniquities
and will remember their sins no more."

THE BIG QUESTION

THE NEW COVENANT

What Is New?

JEREMIAH 31:31 TO 34 · 32:40

THE PROMISE

God will make a new covenant with Israel and Judah, not like the one at Sinai that they broke. His law will be written on their hearts, everyone will know Him, and He will remember their sins no more, 31:31 to 34.

- **JER 31:22 [PROPHECY]** Born of a virgin (a woman compassing a man) → MT 1:18-20 · MEDIUM p.1550
- **JER 31:29 [DEMONIC]** No more shall they say 'fathers ate sour grapes' — every one for his own iniquity
- **JER 31:31 [PROPHECY]** God would make a new covenant, write His law on hearts, and remember sins no more → LK 22:20; HEB 8:8-12; HEB 9:15; HEB 10:16-17; HEB 12:24 p.1687
- **JER 31:31 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 8:8-12 p.1987
- **JER 31:31 [NOTE]** THE NEW COVENANT. The longest Old Testament passage quoted in the New Testament, Hebrews 8:8 to 12. See the Big Question The New Covenant.
- **JER 31:33 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 10:16-17 p.1991

GOD SPEAKING

WHAT IS NEW
The old covenant was written on stone, and the people could not keep it. The new one changes the heart from the inside, and it is built on forgiveness.

Who It Is For
LUKE 22:20 · HEBREWS 8:6 TO 13 · 10:16 TO 17 · 2 CORINTHIANS 3:6

JESUS AND THE CUP
At the Last Supper Jesus said, This cup is the new covenant in My blood, Luke 22:20. Hebrews quotes Jeremiah's whole promise and says Jesus is the One who brought it, Hebrews 8:6 to 13.

WHO IT IS FOR
Jeremiah says the house of Israel and the house of Judah. Most Christians say it now includes everyone who trusts in Jesus, Jew and Gentile, Ephesians 2:12 to 13. Many dispensationalists add that it will still be fulfilled for the nation of Israel in the future, Romans 11:26 to 27.

WHAT ALL CHRISTIANS AGREE ON
Through Jesus, God forgives sin completely and gives a new heart. This is why the second half of the Christian Bible is called the New Testament, which means new covenant.

35 Thus says Yahweh, who gives the sun
for light by day, who sets in order the
moon and stars for light by night, who
stirs up the sea so that its waves
roar—Yahweh of Hosts is His name:

36 "Only if this fixed order departed from
My presence,
declares Yahweh,
would Israel's descendants ever cease
to be a nation before Me."

37 This is what Yahweh says:

"Only if the heavens above could be measured
and the foundations of the earth below searched out
would I reject all of Israel's descendants
because of all they have done,"
declares Yahweh.

38 "The days are coming," declares Yahweh, "when this city will be rebuilt for Me, from the tower of Hananel to the Corner Gate. 39 The measuring line will once again stretch out straight to the hill of Gareb and then turn toward Goah. 40 The whole valley of the dead bodies and ashes, and all the fields as far as the Kidron Valley, to the corner of the Horse Gate to the east, will be holy to Yahweh. It will never again be uprooted or demolished."

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS
With Babylon at the gates, God tells Jeremiah to buy a field. Real estate during a siege! The deed goes in a clay jar, because houses and fields will be bought again. Nothing is too hard for God.

JEREMIAH BUYS HANAMEL'S FIELD

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh in the tenth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, which was the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar. 2 At that time the army of the king of Babylon was besieging Jerusalem, and Jeremiah the prophet was imprisoned in the courtyard of the guard, which was in the palace of the king of Judah.

3 For Zedekiah king of Judah had imprisoned him, saying: "Why are you prophesying like this? You claim that Yahweh says, 'Behold, I am about to deliver this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will capture it. 4 Zedekiah king of Judah will not escape from the hands of the Chaldeans, but he will surely be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon, and will speak with him face to face and see him eye to eye. 5 He will take Zedekiah to Babylon, where he will stay until I attend to him, declares Yahweh. If you fight against the Chaldeans, you will not succeed.'"

6 Jeremiah replied, "The word of Yahweh came to me, saying: 7 Behold! Hanamel, the son of your uncle Shallum, is coming to you to say, 'Buy for yourself my field in Anathoth, for you have the right of redemption to buy it.' 8 Then, as Yahweh had said, my cousin Hanamel came to me in

■ **JER 32:7 [NOTE]** THE RIGHT TO REDEEM. When land was sold, the nearest relative had the right to buy it so it stayed in the family, Leviticus 25:25. Ruth's Boaz did the same, Ruth 4.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

the courtyard of the guard and urged me, 'Please buy my field in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin, for you own the right of inheritance and redemption. Buy it for yourself.'"

Then I knew that this was the word of Yahweh.

9 So I bought the field in Anathoth from my cousin Hanamel, and I weighed out seven ounces of silver. 10 I signed and sealed the deed, called in witnesses, and weighed out the silver on the scales. 11 Then I took the deed of purchase—the sealed copy with its terms and conditions, as well as the open copy— 12 and I gave this deed to Baruch son of Neriah, the son of Mahseiah, in the sight of my cousin Hanamel and the witnesses who were signing the purchase agreement and all the Jews sitting in the courtyard of the guard.

13 In their sight I instructed Baruch, 14 "This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Take these deeds—both the sealed copy and the open copy of the deed of purchase—and put them in a clay jar to preserve them for a long time. 15 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Houses, fields, and vineyards will again be bought in this land."

JEREMIAH PRAYS FOR UNDERSTANDING

16 After I had given the deed of purchase to Baruch son of Neriah, I prayed to Yahweh: 17 "Oh, Lord Yahweh! You have made the heavens and the earth by Your great power and outstretched arm. Nothing is too difficult for You!

18 You show loving devotion to thousands but lay the iniquity of the fathers into the laps of their children after them, O great and mighty God whose name is Yahweh of Hosts, 19 the One great in counsel and mighty in deed, whose eyes are on all the ways of the sons of men, to reward each one according to his ways and according to the fruit of his deeds.

20 You performed signs and wonders in the land of Egypt, and You do so to this very day, both in Israel and among all mankind. And You have made a name for Yourself, as is the case to this day.

21 You brought Your people Israel out of the land of Egypt with signs and wonders, with a strong hand and an outstretched arm, and with great terror. 22 You gave them this land that You had sworn to give their fathers, a land flowing with milk and honey.

23 They came in and possessed it, but they did not obey Your voice or walk in Your law. They failed to perform all that You commanded them to do, and so You have brought upon them all this disaster. 24 See how the siege ramps are mounted against the city to capture it. And by sword and famine and plague, the city has been given into the hands of the Chaldeans who are fighting against it. What You have spoken has happened, as You now see!

25 Yet You, O Lord Yahweh, have said to me, 'Buy for yourself the field with silver and call in witnesses, even though the city has been delivered into the hands of the Chaldeans!'"

YAHWEH ANSWERS JEREMIAH

26 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 27 "Behold, I am Yahweh, the God of all flesh. Is anything too difficult for Me?

28 Therefore this is what Yahweh says: Behold, I am about to deliver this city into the hands of the Chaldeans and of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, who will capture it. 29 And the Chaldeans who are fighting against this city will come in, set it on fire, and burn it, along with the houses of those who provoked Me to anger by burning incense to Baal on their rooftops and by pouring out drink offerings to other gods.

30 For the children of Israel and of Judah have done nothing but evil in My sight from their youth; indeed, they have done nothing but provoke Me to anger by the work of their hands, declares Yahweh.

31 For this city has aroused My wrath and fury from the day it was built until now.

JER 32:14 [NOTE] A CLAY JAR. Documents were sealed in jars to last. Centuries later, some Dead Sea Scrolls were also found stored in clay jars.

JER 32:29 [DEMONIC] Houses burned where they offered incense to Baal

THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

Therefore I will remove it from My presence 32 because of all the evil the children of Israel and of Judah have done to provoke Me to anger—they, their kings, their officials, their priests and prophets, the men of Judah, and the residents of Jerusalem. 33 They have turned their backs to Me and not their faces. Though I taught them again and again, they would not listen or respond to discipline.

34 They have placed their abominations in the house that bears My Name, and so have defiled it. 35 They have built the high places of Baal in the Valley of Ben-hinnom to make their sons and daughters pass through the fire to Molech—something I never commanded them, nor had it ever entered My heart, that they should commit such an abomination and cause Judah to sin.

A PROMISE OF RESTORATION // EZEKIEL 11:13–21

36 Now therefore, about this city of which you say, 'It will be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon by sword and famine and plague,' this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: 37 I will surely gather My people from all the lands to which I have banished them in My furious anger and great wrath, and I will return them to this place and make them dwell in safety. 38 They will be My people, and I will be their God. 39 I will give them one heart and one way, so that they will always fear Me for their own good and for the good of their children after them.

40 I will make an everlasting covenant with them: I will never turn away from doing good to them, and I will put My fear in their hearts, so that they will never turn away from Me. 41 Yes, I will rejoice in doing them good, and I will faithfully plant them in this land with all My heart and with all My soul.

42 For this is what Yahweh says: Just as I have brought all this great disaster on this people, so I will bring on them all the good I have promised them. 43 And fields will be bought in this land about which you are saying, 'It is a desolation, without man or beast; it has been delivered into the hands of the Chaldeans.' 44 Fields will be purchased with silver, and deeds will be signed, sealed, and witnessed in the land of Benjamin, in the areas surrounding Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah—the cities of the hill country, the foothills, and the Negev—because I will restore them from captivity, declares Yahweh."

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

Call to Me and I will answer you. God promises health, peace and a righteous Branch from David, and Jerusalem will be called Yahweh Our Righteousness. His covenant is as sure as day and night.

THE EXCELLENCE OF THE RESTORED NATION

1 While Jeremiah was still confined in the courtyard of the guard, the word of Yahweh came to him a second time: 2 "Thus says Yahweh who made the earth, Yahweh who formed it and established it, Yahweh is His name: 3 Call to Me, and I will answer and show you great and unsearchable things you do not know.

4 For this is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says about the houses of this city and the palaces of the kings of Judah that have been torn down for defense against the siege ramps and the sword: 5 The Chaldeans are coming to fight and to fill those places with the corpses of the men I will strike down in My anger and in My wrath. I have hidden My face from this city because of all its wickedness.

6 Nevertheless, I will bring to it health and healing, and I will heal its people and reveal to them the abundance of peace and truth. 7 I will restore Judah and Israel from captivity and will rebuild them as in former times. 8 And I will cleanse them from all the iniquity they have committed against

JER 32:34 [DEMONIC] Children passed through the fire to Molech
JER 32:39 [HEART] God will give His people one heart and one way, so they will always fear Him.
JER 32:39 [NOTE] ONE HEART. God will give His people one heart and one way, and put the fear of Him in their hearts, 32:40.

JER 33:3 [NOTABLE] God invites you to ask, and He answers. Spoken while Jeremiah was locked up.
JER 33:3 [NOTE] CALL TO ME. Spoken while Jeremiah was locked up in the guard courtyard, 33:1.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Me, and will forgive all their sins of rebellion against Me.

9 So this city will bring Me renown, joy, praise, and glory before all the nations of the earth, who will hear of all the good I do for it. They will tremble in awe because of all the goodness and prosperity that I will provide for it.

10 This is what Yahweh says: In this place you say is a wasteland without man or beast, in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem that are deserted—inhabited by neither man nor beast—there will be heard again 11 the sounds of joy and gladness, the voices of the bride and bridegroom, and the voices of those bringing thank offerings into the house of Yahweh, saying:

'Give thanks to Yahweh of Hosts,
for Yahweh is good;
His loving devotion endures forever.'

For I will restore the land from captivity as in former times, says Yahweh.

12 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: In this desolate place, without man or beast, and in all its cities, there will once more be pastures for shepherds to rest their flocks. 13 In the cities of the hill country, the foothills, and the Negev, in the land of Benjamin and the cities surrounding Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, the flocks will again pass under the hands of the one who counts them, says Yahweh.

THE COVENANT WITH DAVID

14 Behold, the days are coming,
declares Yahweh,
when I will fulfill the gracious promise
that I have spoken
to the house of Israel
and the house of Judah.
15 In those days and at that time
I will cause to sprout for David a righteous Branch,
and He will administer justice
and righteousness in the land.
16 In those days Judah will be saved,
and Jerusalem will dwell securely,
and this is the name by which it will be called:
Yahweh Our Righteousness.

17 For this is what Yahweh says: David will never lack a man to sit on the throne of the house of Israel, 18 nor will the priests who are Levites ever fail to have a man before Me to offer burnt offerings, to burn grain offerings, and to present sacrifices."

19 And the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 20 "This is what Yahweh says: If you can break My covenant with the day and My covenant with the night, so that day and night cease to occupy their appointed time, 21 then My covenant may also be broken with David My servant and with My ministers the Levites who are priests, so that David will not have a son to reign on his throne. 22 As the hosts of heaven cannot be counted and as the sand on the seashore cannot be measured, so too will I multiply the descendants of My servant David and the Levites who minister before Me."

23 Moreover, the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 24 "Have you not noticed what these people are saying: 'Yahweh has rejected the two families He had chosen'? So they despise My people and no longer regard them as a nation. 25 This is what Yahweh says: If I have not established My covenant with the day and the night and the fixed order of heaven and earth, 26 then I would also reject the descendants of Jacob and of My servant David, so as not to take from his descendants rulers over the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. For I will restore them from captivity and will have compassion on them."

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

Zedekiah and the people free their slaves during the siege, then take them back when the danger seems to pass. God says, Fine, I am setting you free too: free to fall by sword, plague and famine.

A PROPHECY AGAINST ZEDEKIAH

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh when Nebuchadnezzar king

JER 33:14 [PROPHECY] A righteous Branch from David's line → LK 3:23-31 p.1653

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

of Babylon, all his army, all the earthly kingdoms under his control, and all the other nations were fighting against Jerusalem and all its surrounding cities. 2 Yahweh, the God of Israel, told Jeremiah to go and speak to Zedekiah king of Judah and tell him that this is what Yahweh says: "Behold, I am about to deliver this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will burn it down. 3 And you yourself will not escape his grasp, but will surely be captured and delivered into his hand. You will see the king of Babylon eye to eye and speak with him face to face; and you will go to Babylon.

4 Yet hear the word of Yahweh, O Zedekiah king of Judah. This is what Yahweh says concerning you: You will not die by the sword; 5 you will die in peace. As spices were burned for your fathers, the former kings who preceded you, so people will burn spices for you and lament, 'Alas, O master!' For I Myself have spoken this word, declares Yahweh."

6 In Jerusalem, then, Jeremiah the prophet relayed all these words to Zedekiah king of Judah 7 as the army of the king of Babylon was fighting against Jerusalem and the remaining cities of Judah—against Lachish and Azekah. For these were the only fortified cities remaining in Judah.

FREEDOM FOR HEBREW SLAVES

8 After King Zedekiah had made a covenant with all the people in Jerusalem to proclaim liberty, the word came to Jeremiah from Yahweh 9 that each man should free his Hebrew slaves, both male and female, and no one should hold his fellow Jew in bondage. 10 So all the officials and all the people who entered into this covenant agreed that they would free their menservants and maidservants and no longer hold them in bondage. They obeyed and released them, 11 but later they changed their minds and took back the menservants and maidservants they had freed, and they forced them to become slaves again.

12 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah from Yahweh, saying, 13 "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: I made a covenant with your forefathers when I brought them out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery, saying: 14 Every seventh year, each of you must free his Hebrew brother who has sold himself to you. He may serve you six years, but then you must let him go free. But your fathers did not listen or incline their ear.

15 Recently you repented and did what pleased Me; each of you proclaimed freedom for his neighbor. You made a covenant before Me in the house that bears My Name. 16 But now you have changed your minds and profaned My name. Each of you has taken back the menservants and maidservants whom you had set at liberty to go wherever they wanted, and you have again forced them to be your slaves.

17 Therefore this is what Yahweh says: You have not obeyed Me; you have not proclaimed freedom, each man for his brother and for his neighbor. So now I proclaim freedom for you, declares Yahweh— freedom to fall by sword, by plague, and by famine! I will make you a horror to all the kingdoms of the earth.

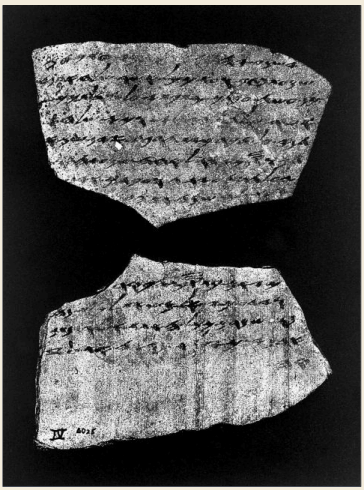
18 And those who have transgressed My covenant and have not fulfilled the terms of the covenant they made before Me, I will treat like the calf they cut in two in order to pass between its pieces. 19 The officials of Judah and Jerusalem, the court officials, the priests, and all the people of the land who passed between the pieces of the calf, 20 I will deliver into the hands of their enemies who seek their lives. Their corpses will become food for the birds of the air and the beasts of the earth. 21 And I will deliver Zedekiah king of Judah and

- **JER 34:3 [PROPHECY]** Zedekiah would see the king of Babylon eye to eye and go to Babylon → JER 39:5-7; JER 52:9-11 p.1205
- **JER 34:4 [PROPHECY]** Zedekiah would not die by sword but in peace; would be buried with honors of his fathers → JER 52:11 · MEDIUM p.1227
- **JER 34:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Lachish Letters → FIELD NOTES p.1198
- **JER 34:7 [NOTE]** LACHISH AND AZEKAH. The last two fortified cities left. A letter found at Lachish says its writer could no longer see Azekah. See The Lachish Letters.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE LACHISH LETTERS

JEREMIAH 34:7 · 26:20 TO 23 · 37:5



Lachish Letter 4, front and back, ink on a piece of broken pottery. Wellcome Collection, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT THEY ARE

Letters written in ink on pieces of broken pottery, called ostraca. Most are notes from an officer named Hoshayahu at an outpost to his commander Yaush at Lachish, written in old Hebrew letters.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

About 588 to 586 BC, the last months before Babylon took Judah. They lay in the burned layer of the city gate.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

James Starkey's team found them in 1935 and 1938 at Tel Lachish, in a guard room by the city gate. There are about 21 of them, and many are hard to read. Harry Torczyner published them in 1938. Most are in the British Museum; some are in the Israel Museum.

THE SIGNALS OF AZEKAH

Letter 4 ends: we are watching for the signals of Lachish, by all the signs my lord gives, because we cannot see Azekah. Jeremiah 34:7 says Lachish and Azekah were the last strong cities left. Many think Azekah had already fallen.

A GENERAL GOES TO EGYPT

Letter 3 says the army commander Konyahu son of Elnatan went down to Egypt. Judah was hoping Egypt would help, Jeremiah 37:5 to 7. Jeremiah 26:22 names an Elnatan who went to Egypt for the king.

THE PROPHET

Letter 3 also mentions a letter from the prophet with a warning. Some early scholars thought the prophet was Jeremiah or Uriah, 26:20. Most now say his name is not given, so no one knows.

WEAKENING THE HANDS

Letter 6 complains that some officials' words weaken the hands of the people. The officials said the same about Jeremiah; in the Hebrew, 38:4 uses the same words, weakening the hands.

GOD'S NAME

The letters greet in Yahweh's name: May Yahweh let my lord hear good news. They show God's name was used every day in Judah.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The letters do not name Jeremiah. They show the last days of Judah just as his book describes them, from the other side of the wall.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

his officials into the hands of their enemies who seek their lives, to the army of the king of Babylon that had withdrawn from you.

22 Behold, I am going to give the command, declares Yahweh, and I will bring them back to this city. They will fight against it, capture it, and burn it down. And I will make the cities of Judah a desolation, without inhabitant."

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah offers the Rechabite family wine. They say no; their ancestor told them not to, and they still obey. If they can keep a man's rule, why can't Judah keep God's?

THE OBEDIENCE OF THE RECHABITES

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh in the days of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah: 2 "Go to the house of the Rechabites, speak to them, and bring them to one of the chambers of the house of Yahweh to offer them a drink of wine."

3 So I took Jaazaniah son of Jeremiah, the son of Habazziniah, and his brothers and all his sons—the entire house of the Rechabites— 4 and I brought them into the house of Yahweh, to a chamber occupied by the sons of Hanan son of Igdaliah, a man of God. This room was near the chamber of the officials, which was above the chamber of Maaseiah son of Shallum the doorkeeper.

5 Then I set pitchers full of wine and some cups before the men of the house of the Rechabites, and I said to them, "Drink some wine."

6 "We do not drink wine," they replied, "for our forefather Jonadab son of Rechab commanded us, 'Neither you nor your descendants are ever to drink wine. 7 Nor are you ever to build a house or sow seed or plant a vineyard. Those things are not for you. Instead, you must live in tents all your lives, so that you may live a long time in the land where you wander.'

8 And we have obeyed the voice of our forefather Jonadab son of Rechab in all he commanded us. So we have not drunk wine all our lives—neither we nor our wives nor our sons and daughters. 9 Nor have we built houses in which to live, and we have not owned any vineyards or fields or crops. 10 But we have lived in tents and have obeyed and done exactly as our forefather Jonadab commanded us.

11 So when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon marched into the land, we said: 'Come, let us go into Jerusalem to escape the armies of the Chaldeans and the Arameans.' So we have remained in Jerusalem."

JUDAH REBUKED

12 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 13 "This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Go and tell the men of Judah and the residents of Jerusalem: 'Will you not accept discipline and obey My words?' declares Yahweh.

14 The words of Jonadab son of Rechab have been carried out. He commanded his sons not to drink wine, and they have not drunk it to this very day because they have obeyed the command of their forefather. But I have spoken to you again and again, and you have not obeyed Me!

15 Again and again I have sent you all My servants the prophets, proclaiming: 'Turn now, each of you, from your wicked ways, and correct your actions. Do not go after other gods to serve them. Live in the land that I have given to you and your fathers.' But you have not inclined your ear or listened to Me. 16 Yes, the sons of Jonadab son of Rechab carried out the command their forefather gave them, but these people have not listened to Me.

17 Therefore this is what Yahweh God of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'Behold, I will bring to Judah and to all the residents of Jerusalem all the disaster I have pro-

JER 35:6 [NOTE] THE RECHABITES. A family that lived in tents and drank no wine for about 250 years, because their ancestor Jonadab told them so, 2 Kings 10:15.

JER 35:15 [DEMONIC] Do not go after other gods to serve them

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

nounced against them, because I have spoken to them but they have not obeyed, and I have called to them but they have not answered.'"

18 Then Jeremiah said to the house of the Rechabites: "This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'Because you have obeyed the command of your forefather Jonadab and have kept all his commandments and have done all that he charged you to do, 19 this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Jonadab son of Rechab will never fail to have a man to stand before Me.'"

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

Baruch writes Jeremiah's words on a scroll. King Jehoiakim cuts it up column by column and burns it in his fire pot. So Jeremiah dictates it all again, plus more.

JEREMIAH'S SCROLL READ IN THE TEMPLE

1 In the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah, this word came to Jeremiah from Yahweh: 2 "Take a scroll and write on it all the words I have spoken to you concerning Israel, Judah, and all the nations, from the day I first spoke to you during the reign of Josiah until today. 3 Perhaps when the people of Judah hear about all the calamity I plan to bring upon them, each of them will turn from his wicked way. Then I will forgive their iniquity and their sin."

4 So Jeremiah called Baruch son of Neriah, and at the dictation of Jeremiah, Baruch wrote on a scroll all the words that Yahweh had spoken to Jeremiah.

5 Then Jeremiah commanded Baruch, "I am restricted; I cannot enter the house of Yahweh; 6 so you are to go to the house of Yahweh on a day of fasting, and in the hearing of the people you are to read the words of Yahweh from the scroll you have written at my dictation. Read them in the hearing of all the people of Judah who are coming from their cities.

JER 36:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Bulla of Berekhyahu son of Neriyahu the scribe, Baruch's name and title, see the Baruch's Seal Field Notes box, p.1200 FIELD NOTES p.1200

7 Perhaps they will bring their petition before Yahweh, and each one will turn from his wicked way; for great are the anger and fury that Yahweh has pronounced against this people."

8 So Baruch son of Neriah did everything that Jeremiah the prophet had commanded him. In the house of Yahweh he read the words of Yahweh from the scroll.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM · DEBATED: REAL OR FAKE?

BARUCH'S SEAL

JEREMIAH 36:4 · 36:32 · 45:1

WHAT IT IS

A bulla, a clay seal mark, that reads, Belonging to Berekhyahu son of Neriyahu the scribe. Baruch is the short form of Berekhyahu, and Neriah of Neriyahu. Jeremiah 36:32 calls Baruch son of Neriah a scribe.

WHERE IT CAME FROM

It was not found in a dig. It showed up on the antiquities market in the 1970s, said to come from a hoard of about 250 bullae. Nahman Avigad published it in 1978, and it is now in the Israel Museum. A second one, with a fingerprint, came out in 1996 and belonged to a private collector, Shlomo Moussaieff.

FOR REAL

Many experts thought both were genuine, because they match the bullae from real digs in letter shapes and clay.

FOR FAKE

In 2014 Yuval Goren of Tel Aviv University and Eran Arie, a curator at the Israel Museum, studied the first bulla and said it is likely a modern fake. They doubted the second one too. Objects bought from dealers can be forged, and these are worth a lot of money.

SEE ALSO

The seal of Gemariah son of Shaphan, 36:10, was found in a real dig. See The Seal of Azariah in 1 Chronicles, p.675.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The Bible shows Baruch as a real scribe: he wrote Jeremiah's words twice, 36:4 and 36:32. The seal itself is still debated.

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

9 Now in the ninth month of the fifth year
of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah,
a fast before Yahweh was proclaimed to
all the people of Jerusalem and all who
had come there from the cities of Judah.
10 From the chamber of Gemariah son of
Shaphan the scribe, which was in the up-
per courtyard at the opening of the New
Gate of the house of Yahweh, Baruch read
from the scroll the words of Jeremiah in
the hearing of all the people.

JEREMIAH'S SCROLL READ IN THE PALACE

11 When Micaiah son of Gemariah, the son
of Shaphan, heard all the words of Yah-
weh from the scroll, 12 he went down to
the scribe's chamber in the king's palace,
where all the officials were sitting: El-
ishama the scribe, Delaiah son of Shema-
iah, Elnathan son of Achbor, Gemariah
son of Shaphan, Zedekiah son of Hana-
niah, and all the other officials. 13 And Mi-
caiah reported to them all the words he
had heard Baruch read from the scroll in
the hearing of the people.

14 Then all the officials sent word to
Baruch through Jehudi son of Nethaniah,
the son of Shelemiah, the son of Cushi,
saying, "Bring the scroll that you read in
the hearing of the people, and come
here."

So Baruch son of Neriah took the scroll
and went to them.

15 "Please sit down," they said, "and read it
in our hearing."

So Baruch read it in their hearing.

16 When they had heard all these words,
they turned to one another in fear and
said to Baruch, "Surely we must report all
these words to the king."

17 "Tell us now," they asked Baruch, "how
did you write all these words? Was it at
Jeremiah's dictation?"

18 "It was at his dictation," Baruch replied.
"He recited all these words to me and I
wrote them in ink on the scroll."

19 Then the officials said to Baruch, "You
and Jeremiah must hide yourselves and
tell no one where you are."

JEHOIAKIM BURNS THE SCROLL

20 So the officials went to the king in the
courtyard. And having stored the scroll in
the chamber of Elishama the scribe, they
reported everything to the king.

21 Then the king sent Jehudi to get the
scroll, and he took it from the chamber of
Elishama the scribe. And Jehudi read it in
the hearing of the king and all the officials
who were standing beside him.

22 Since it was the ninth month, the king
was sitting in his winter quarters with a
fire burning before him. 23 And as soon as
Jehudi had read three or four columns,
Jehoiakim would cut them off with a
scribe's knife and throw them into the fire-
pot, until the entire scroll had been con-
sumed by the fire.

24 Yet in hearing all these words, the king
and his servants did not become fright-
ened or tear their garments. 25 Even
though Elnathan, Delaiah, and Gemariah
urged the king not to burn the scroll, he
would not listen to them. 26 Instead, the
king commanded Jerahmeel, a son of the
king, as well as Seraiah son of Azriel and
Shelemiah son of Abdeel, to seize Baruch
the scribe and Jeremiah the prophet. But
Yahweh had hidden them.

JEREMIAH REWRITES THE SCROLL

27 After the king had burned the scroll
containing the words that Baruch had
written at Jeremiah's dictation, the word
of Yahweh came to Jeremiah: 28 "Take an-
other scroll and rewrite on it the very
words that were on the original scroll,
which Jehoiakim king of Judah has
burned.

29 You are to proclaim concerning Je-
hoiakim king of Judah that this is what
Yahweh says: You have burned the scroll
and said, 'Why have you written on it that
the king of Babylon would surely come

JER 36:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Bulla of Gemariah son of Shaphan

JER 36:10 [NOTE] GEMARIAH SON OF SHAPHAN. A clay seal mark with this name was found in the City of David. See The Seal of Azariah in 1 Chronicles, p.675.

JER 36:23 [NOTE] CUT AND BURNED. A scroll was a long roll with columns of writing. The king cut off three or four columns at a time and threw them in the fire. God's word did not burn out: Jeremiah dictated it again, 36:32.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

and destroy this land and deprive it of man and beast?'

30 Therefore this is what Yahweh says about Jehoiakim king of Judah: He will have no one to sit on David's throne, and his body will be thrown out and exposed to heat by day and frost by night. 31 I will punish him and his descendants and servants for their iniquity. I will bring on them, on the residents of Jerusalem, and on the men of Judah, all the calamity about which I warned them but they did not listen."

32 Then Jeremiah took another scroll and gave it to the scribe Baruch son of Neriah, and at Jeremiah's dictation he wrote on it all the words of the scroll that Jehoiakim king of Judah had burned in the fire. And many similar words were added to them.

37

CHAPTER 37 IN 30 SECONDS

Jeremiah tries to visit his hometown and gets arrested as a deserter. King Zedekiah sneaks him in and asks, Any word from Yahweh? Jeremiah says, Yes. You will be handed over to Babylon.

JEREMIAH WARNS ZEDEKIAH

1 Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon made Zedekiah son of Josiah the king of Judah, and he reigned in place of Coniah son of Jehoiakim. 2 But he and his officers and the people of the land refused to obey the words that Yahweh had spoken through Jeremiah the prophet.

3 Yet King Zedekiah sent Jehucal son of Shelemiah and Zephaniah the priest, the son of Maaseiah, to Jeremiah the prophet with the message, "Please pray to Yahweh our God for us!"

4 Now Jeremiah was free to come and go among the people, for they had not yet put him in prison. 5 Pharaoh's army had left Egypt, and when the Chaldeans who were besieging Jerusalem heard the report, they withdrew from Jerusalem.

6 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah the prophet: 7 "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says that you are to tell the king of Judah, who sent you to Me: Behold, Pharaoh's army, which has marched out to help you, will go back to its own land of Egypt. 8 Then the Chaldeans will return and fight against this city. They will capture it and burn it down.

9 This is what Yahweh says: Do not deceive yourselves by saying, 'The Chaldeans will go away for good,' for they will not! 10 Indeed, if you were to strike down the entire army of the Chaldeans that is fighting against you, and only wounded men remained in their tents, they would still get up and burn this city down."

JEREMIAH IMPRISONED

11 When the Chaldean army withdrew from Jerusalem for fear of Pharaoh's army, 12 Jeremiah started to leave Jerusalem to go to the land of Benjamin to claim his portion there among the people. 13 But when he reached the Gate of Benjamin, the captain of the guard, whose name was Irijah son of Shelemiah, the son of Hananiah, seized him and said, "You are deserting to the Chaldeans!"

14 "That is a lie," Jeremiah replied. "I am not deserting to the Chaldeans!"

But Irijah would not listen to him; instead, he arrested Jeremiah and took him to the officials.

15 The officials were angry with Jeremiah, and they beat him and placed him in jail in the house of Jonathan the scribe, for it had been made into a prison.

16 So Jeremiah went into a cell in the dungeon and remained there a long time.

17 Later, King Zedekiah sent for Jeremiah and received him in his palace, where he asked him privately, "Is there a word from Yahweh?"

JER 37:5 [FULFILLS] Pharaoh's army would go home and the Chaldeans would return and burn Jerusalem ← JER 37:7-8 p.1202

JER 37:5 [FULFILLS] Pharaoh's arm was broken and would be broken again so he could not help ← EZK 30:21-22 p.1292

JER 37:7 [PROPHECY] Pharaoh's army would go home and the Chaldeans would return and burn Jerusalem → JER 37:5; JER 39:8; 2KI 25:9 p.1202

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

"There is," Jeremiah replied. "You will be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon."

18 Then Jeremiah asked King Zedekiah, "How have I sinned against you or your servants or these people, that you have put me in prison? 19 Where are your prophets who prophesied to you, claiming, 'The king of Babylon will not come against you or this land'? 20 But now please listen, O my lord the king. May my petition come before you. Do not send me back to the house of Jonathan the scribe, or I will die there."

21 So King Zedekiah gave orders for Jeremiah to be placed in the courtyard of the guard and given a loaf of bread daily from the street of the bakers, until all the bread in the city was gone. So Jeremiah remained in the courtyard of the guard.

38

CHAPTER 38 IN 30 SECONDS

The officials drop Jeremiah into a muddy cistern to die. An African palace official, Ebed melech, pulls him out with ropes and old rags. Zedekiah asks for advice again and still will not take it.

JEREMIAH CAST INTO THE CISTERN

1 Now Shephatiah son of Mattan, Gedaliah son of Pashhur, Jucal son of Shelemiah, and Pashhur son of Malchijah heard that Jeremiah had been telling all the people: 2 "This is what Yahweh says: Whoever stays in this city will die by sword and famine and plague, but whoever surrenders to the Chaldeans will live; he will retain his life like a spoil of war, and he will live. 3 This is what Yahweh says: This city will surely be delivered into the hands of the army of the king of Babylon, and he will capture it."

4 Then the officials said to the king, "This man ought to die, for he is discouraging the warriors who remain in this city, as well as all the people, by speaking such words to them; this man is not seeking the well-being of these people, but their ruin."

5 "Here he is," replied King Zedekiah. "He is in your hands, since the king can do nothing to stop you."

6 So they took Jeremiah and dropped him into the cistern of Malchiah, the king's son, which was in the courtyard of the guard. They lowered Jeremiah with ropes into the cistern, which had no water but only mud, and Jeremiah sank down into the mud. 7 Now Ebed-melech the Cushite, a court official in the royal palace, heard that Jeremiah had been put into the cistern. While the king was sitting at the Gate of Benjamin, 8 Ebed-melech went out from the king's palace and said to the king, 9 "My lord the king, these men have acted wickedly in all that they have done to Jeremiah the prophet. They have dropped him into the cistern, where he will starve to death, for there is no more bread in the city."

10 So the king commanded Ebed-melech the Cushite, "Take thirty men from here with you and pull Jeremiah the prophet out of the cistern before he dies."

11 Then Ebed-melech took the men with him and went to the king's palace, to a place below the storehouse. From there he took old rags and worn-out clothes and lowered them with ropes to Jeremiah in the cistern.

12 Ebed-melech the Cushite cried out to Jeremiah, "Put these worn-out rags and clothes under your arms to pad the ropes." Jeremiah did so, 13 and they pulled him up with the ropes and lifted him out of the cistern. And Jeremiah remained in the courtyard of the guard.

14 Then King Zedekiah sent for Jeremiah the prophet and received him at the third entrance to the house of Yahweh. "I am going to ask you something," said the king

JER 37:17 [NOTE] IS THERE A WORD? The king asked in secret, and Jeremiah gave him God's answer straight. His answer prints red.

JER 38:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Bullae of Jucal son of Shelemiah and Gedaliah son of Pashhur → FIELD NOTES p.1204

JER 38:6 [NOTE] THE CISTERN. A deep rock tank for rainwater. This one had no water, only mud.

JER 38:7 [NOTE] EBED MELECH. His name means servant of the king. A Cushite, from the upper Nile, he risked his life to save Jeremiah, and God promised to save his, 39:16 to 18.

GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE SEALS OF JEHUCAL AND GEDALIAH

JEREMIAH 37:3 · 38:1 TO 6



The Large Stone Structure in the City of David, Jerusalem, near where both seals were found. The seals are not shown. The beams and wires are modern. Photo Rhododendrites, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT THEY ARE

Two bullae, small lumps of clay stamped with a seal to close a document. One reads, Belonging to Yehukal son of Shelemyahu son of Shovi. The other reads, Belonging to Gedalyahu son of Pashhur.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

About 600 BC, the last years of Judah before Babylon burned Jerusalem.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Eilat Mazar's team found them in the City of David, the Jehucal seal in 2005 and the Gedaliah seal in 2008, only a few yards apart.

THE MATCH

Jeremiah 38:1 names Gedaliah son of Pashhur and Jucal son of Shelemiah together, as officials who wanted Jeremiah dead. Jucal is also called Jehucal, 37:3. Both names and both fathers' names match.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

These names were not rare. Most scholars accept the match, but it is likely, not certain.

to Jeremiah. "Do not hide anything from me."

15 "If I tell you," Jeremiah replied, "you will surely put me to death. And even if I give you advice, you will not listen to me."

16 But King Zedekiah swore secretly to Jeremiah, "As surely as Yahweh lives, who has given us this life, I will not kill you, nor will I deliver you into the hands of these men who are seeking your life."

17 Then Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, "This is what Yahweh God of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'If you indeed surrender to the officers of the king of Babylon, then you will live, this city will not be burned down, and you and your household will survive. 18 But if you do not surrender to the officers of the king of Babylon, then this city will be delivered into the hands of the Chaldeans. They will burn it down, and you yourself will not escape their grasp.'"

19 But King Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, "I am afraid of the Jews who have deserted to the Chaldeans, for the Chaldeans may deliver me into their hands to abuse me."

20 "They will not hand you over," Jeremiah replied. "Obey the voice of Yahweh in what I am telling you, that it may go well with you and you may live. 21 But if you refuse to surrender, this is the word that Yahweh has shown me: 22 All the women

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY

who remain in the palace of the king of Judah will be brought out to the officials of the king of Babylon, and those women will say:

'They misled you and overcame you—
those trusted friends of yours.
Your feet sank into the mire,
and they deserted you.'

23 All your wives and children will be brought out to the Chaldeans. And you yourself will not escape their grasp, for you will be seized by the king of Babylon, and this city will be burned down."

24 Then Zedekiah warned Jeremiah, "Do not let anyone know about this conversation, or you will die. 25 If the officials hear that I have spoken with you, and they come and demand of you, 'Tell us what you said to the king and what he said to you; do not hide it from us, or we will kill you,' 26 then tell them, 'I was presenting to the king my petition that he not return me to the house of Jonathan to die there.'"

27 When all the officials came to Jeremiah and questioned him, he relayed to them the exact words the king had commanded him to say. So they said no more to him, for no one had overheard the conversation. 28 And Jeremiah remained in the courtyard of the guard until the day Jerusalem was captured.

39

CHAPTER 39 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon breaks through the wall. Zedekiah runs, gets caught, watches his sons killed, and is blinded. The city burns. Jeremiah is freed, and Ebed melech is promised his life.

THE FALL OF JERUSALEM // 2 KINGS 25:1–12; 2 CHRONICLES 36:15–21

1 In the ninth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon marched against Jerusalem with his entire army and laid siege to the city. 2 And on the ninth day of the fourth month of Zedekiah's eleventh year, the city was breached.

3 Then all the officials of the king of Babylon entered and sat in the Middle Gate: Nergal-sharezer of Samgar, Nebo-sarsekim the Rabsaris, Nergal-sharezer the Rabmag, and all the rest of the officials of the king of Babylon.

4 When Zedekiah king of Judah and all the soldiers saw them, they fled. They left the city at night by way of the king's garden, through the gate between the two walls, and they went out along the route to the Arabah. 5 But the army of the Chaldeans pursued them and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho. They seized him and brought him up to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon at Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he pronounced judgment on him.

6 There at Riblah the king of Babylon slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and he also killed all the nobles of Judah. 7 Then he put out Zedekiah's eyes and bound him with bronze chains to take him to Babylon.

8 The Chaldeans set fire to the palace of the king and to the houses of the people, and they broke down the walls of Jerusalem.

9 Then Nebuzaradan captain of the guard carried away to Babylon the remnant of the people who had remained in the city, along with the deserters who had defected to him. 10 But Nebuzaradan left behind in the land of Judah some of the poor people who had no property, and at that time he gave them vineyards and fields.

- **JER 39:3 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Nebo Sarsekim Tablet, a Babylonian receipt of 595 BC naming Nebuchadnezzar's chief officer, see the Field Notes page, p.1206 ↔ FIELD NOTES p.1206
- **JER 39:3 [FULFILLS]** Kings from the north would set their thrones at the gates of Jerusalem ← JER 1:15 p.1149
- **JER 39:3 [NOTE]** NEBO SARSEKIM. A clay tablet in the British Museum names a chief officer of Nebuchadnezzar with the same name and title. See The Nebo Sarsekim Tablet.
- **JER 39:4 [FULFILLS]** The prince would leave at dusk through a hole in the wall with his face covered ← EZK 12:12 p.1263
- **JER 39:5 [FULFILLS]** Zedekiah and the survivors would be handed over to Nebuchadnezzar ← JER 21:7 p.1177
- **JER 39:5 [FULFILLS]** Zedekiah would see the king of Babylon eye to eye and go to Babylon ← JER 34:3 p.1197
- **JER 39:8 [FULFILLS]** Pharaoh's army would go home and the Chaldeans would return and burn Jerusalem ← JER 37:7-8 p.1202

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE NEBO SARSEKIM TABLET

JEREMIAH 39:3 · 39:13



The Nebo Sarsekim Tablet, BM 114789, a clay receipt about two inches wide. British Museum, London. Photo Zunkir, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small clay tablet in cuneiform, a temple receipt. It says Nabu sharrussu ukin, the chief officer of Nebuchadnezzar, sent more than 1½ pounds of gold to the temple Esagila in Babylon.

HOW OLD IT IS

Dated to the tenth year of Nebuchadnezzar, 595 BC, eight years before Babylon took Jerusalem.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It came from the area of Sippar in Iraq and reached the British Museum in 1920. It sat in storage until 2007, when the scholar Michael Jursa read it and saw the name.

THE NAME

Jeremiah 39:3 names Nebo sarsekim the Rabsaris among the officials who sat in Jerusalem's Middle Gate. Nabu sharrussu ukin is how his name was written in Babylon. Rabsaris is the Hebrew form of his title, rab sha reshi, chief officer.

WHY IT MATTERS

A rare match between a minor name in the Bible and a record from Babylon: same name, same title, same king, within a few years. Irving Finkel of the British Museum called it a world class find.

THE MIDDLE GATE

After the wall was broken in July 586 BC, the officials sat in the Middle Gate, 39:2 to 3. Sitting in the city gate meant they now ruled the city. Jeremiah was still a prisoner in the guard courtyard nearby, 39:14.

THE OTHER OFFICIALS

Nergal sharezer in the same verse is likely Nergal sharra usur, who became king of Babylon in 560 BC, the Neriglissar of the Greek writers.

THE HONEST SIDE

A few scholars say the tablet may name a different man with the same name and title, and the Hebrew of 39:3 can be split in different ways. Most think it is the same man.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not mention Jerusalem or Jeremiah. It shows the officer was real, and in the right job, in the right years.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

JEREMIAH DELIVERED

11 Now Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had given orders about Jeremiah through Nebuzaradan captain of the guard, saying, 12 "Take him, look after him, and do not let any harm come to him; do for him whatever he says."

13 So Nebuzaradan captain of the guard, Nebushazban the Rabsaris, Nergal-sharezer the Rabmag, and all the captains of the king of Babylon 14 had Jeremiah brought from the courtyard of the guard, and they turned him over to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, to take him home. So Jeremiah remained among his own people.

15 And while Jeremiah had been confined in the courtyard of the guard, the word of Yahweh had come to him: 16 "Go and tell Ebed-melech the Cushite that this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'I am about to fulfill My words against this city for harm and not for good, and on that day they will be fulfilled before your eyes. 17 But I will deliver you on that day, declares Yahweh, and you will not be delivered into the hands of the men whom you fear. 18 For I will surely rescue you so that you do not fall by the sword. Because you have trusted in Me, you will escape with your life like a spoil of war, declares Yahweh.'"

40

CHAPTER 40 IN 30 SECONDS

The Babylonian commander frees Jeremiah, and he stays with Gedaliah, the new governor. Gedaliah is warned about a murder plot and says, Nah, that is not true.

JEREMIAH REMAINS IN JUDAH

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah from Yahweh after Nebuzaradan captain of the guard had released him at Ramah, having found him bound in chains among all the captives of Jerusalem and Judah who were being exiled to Babylon.

- **JER 39:15 [PROPHECY]** Ebed-melech the Ethiopian would be spared because of his trust in God during Jerusalem's fall → JER 39:15-18 · MEDIUM p.1207
- **JER 39:15 [FULFILLS]** Ebed-melech the Ethiopian would be spared because of his trust in God during Jerusalem's fall ← JER 39:15-18 · MEDIUM p.1207

2 The captain of the guard found Jeremiah and said to him, "Yahweh your God decreed this disaster on this place, 3 and now Yahweh has fulfilled it; He has done just as He said. Because you people have sinned against Yahweh and have not obeyed His voice, this thing has happened to you. 4 But now, behold, I am freeing you today from the chains that were on your wrists. If it pleases you to come with me to Babylon, then come, and I will take care of you. But if it seems wrong to you to come with me to Babylon, go no farther. Look, the whole land is before you. Wherever it seems good and right to you, go there."

5 But before Jeremiah turned to go, Nebuzaradan added, "Return to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, whom the king of Babylon has appointed over the cities of Judah, and stay with him among the people, or go anywhere else that seems right." Then the captain of the guard gave him a ration and a gift and released him.

6 So Jeremiah went to Gedaliah son of Ahikam at Mizpah and stayed with him among the people who were left in the land.

GEDALIAH GOVERNS IN JUDAH // 2 KINGS 25:22–24

7 When all the commanders and men of the armies in the field heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam over the land and that he had put him in charge of the men, women, and children who were the poorest of the land and had not been exiled to Babylon, 8 they came to Gedaliah at Mizpah—Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan and Jonathan the sons of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth, the sons of Ephai the Netophathite, and Jezaniah son of the Maacathite—they and their men.

9 Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, swore an oath to them and their men, assuring them, "Do not be afraid to serve the Chaldeans. Live in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will go well with you. 10 As for me, I will stay in

ARCHAEOLOGY

Mizpah to represent you before the Chaldeans who come to us. As for you, gather wine grapes, summer fruit, and oil, place them in your storage jars, and live in the cities you have taken."

11 When all the Jews in Moab, Ammon, Edom, and all the other lands heard that the king of Babylon had left a remnant in Judah and had appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, over them, 12 they all returned from all the places to which they had been banished and came to the land of Judah, to Gedaliah at Mizpah. And they gathered an abundance of wine grapes and summer fruit.

THE PLOT AGAINST GEDALIAH

13 Meanwhile, Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the armies in the field came to Gedaliah at Mizpah 14 and said to him, "Are you aware that Baalis king of the Ammonites has sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to take your life?"

But Gedaliah son of Ahikam did not believe them.

15 Then Johanan son of Kareah spoke privately to Gedaliah at Mizpah. "Let me go and kill Ishmael son of Nethaniah," he said. "No one will know it. Why should he take your life and scatter all the people of Judah who have gathered to you, so that the remnant of Judah would perish?"

16 But Gedaliah son of Ahikam said to Johanan son of Kareah, "Do not do such a thing! What you are saying about Ishmael is a lie."

41

CHAPTER 41 IN 30 SECONDS

It was true. Ishmael kills Gedaliah and a group of pilgrims and throws them in a cistern. Johanan chases him off, and everyone gets ready to run to Egypt.

THE MURDER OF GEDALIAH // 2 KINGS 25:25–26

1 In the seventh month, Ishmael son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, who was a member of the royal family and one of the king's chief officers, came with ten men to Gedaliah son of Ahikam at Mizpah, and they ate a meal together there. 2 Then Ishmael son of Nethaniah and the ten men who were with him got up and struck down Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, with the sword, killing the one whom the king of Babylon had appointed to govern the land. 3 Ishmael also killed all the Jews who were with Gedaliah at Mizpah, as well as the Chaldean soldiers who were there.

4 On the second day after the murder of Gedaliah, when no one yet knew about it, 5 eighty men who had shaved off their beards, torn their garments, and cut themselves came from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria, carrying grain offerings and frankincense for the house of Yahweh. 6 And Ishmael son of Nethaniah went out from Mizpah to meet them, weeping as he went.

When Ishmael encountered the men, he said, "Come to Gedaliah son of Ahikam." 7 And when they came into the city, Ishmael son of Nethaniah and the men with him slaughtered them and threw them into a cistern.

8 But ten of the men among them said to Ishmael, "Do not kill us, for we have hidden treasure in the field—wheat, barley, oil, and honey!" So he refrained from killing them with the others.

9 Now the cistern into which Ishmael had thrown all the bodies of the men he had struck down along with Gedaliah was a large one that King Asa had made for fear of Baasha king of Israel. Ishmael son of Nethaniah filled it with the slain.

10 Then Ishmael took captive all the remnant of the people of Mizpah—the daughters of the king along with all the others who remained in Mizpah—over whom Nebuzaradan captain of the guard had appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam. Ishmael son of Nethaniah took them captive

JER 40:14 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Baalis king of the Ammonites: a seal impression from Tell el Umeiri in Jordan names a servant of Baalyasha, likely the same king

JER 40:14 [NOTE] BAALIS. A seal impression found at Tell el Umeiri in Jordan reads Milkomor, servant of Baalyasha. Many think Baalyasha is Baalis, king of the Ammonites. Likely, not certain.

GOD SPEAKING

and set off to cross over to the Ammonites.

JOHANAN RESCUES THE CAPTIVES

11 When Johanan son of Kareah and all the
commanders of the armies with him heard
of all the crimes that Ishmael son of
Nethaniah had committed, 12 they took all
their men and went to fight Ishmael son of
Nethaniah. And they found him near the
great pool in Gibeon.

13 When all the people with Ishmael saw
Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the army with him, they rejoiced, 14 and all the people whom Ishmael
had taken captive at Mizpah turned and
went over to Johanan son of Kareah. 15 But
Ishmael son of Nethaniah and eight of his
men escaped from Johanan and went to
the Ammonites.

16 Then Johanan son of Kareah and all the
commanders of the armies with him took
the whole remnant of the people from
Mizpah whom he had recovered from Ishmael son of Nethaniah after Ishmael had
killed Gedaliah son of Ahikam: the soldiers, women, children, and court officials
he had brought back from Gibeon. 17 And
they went and stayed in Geruth Chimham,
near Bethlehem, in order to proceed into
Egypt 18 to escape the Chaldeans. For they
were afraid of the Chaldeans because
Ishmael son of Nethaniah had struck
down Gedaliah son of Ahikam, whom the
king of Babylon had appointed over the
land.

42

CHAPTER 42 IN 30 SECONDS

The survivors ask Jeremiah to pray and promise to obey whatever God says. Ten days later God says, Stay here and I will build you up. Do not go to Egypt.

A WARNING AGAINST GOING TO EGYPT

1 Then all the commanders of the forces,
along with Johanan son of Kareah, Jezaniah son of Hoshaiah, and all the people
from the least to the greatest, approached
2 Jeremiah the prophet and said, "May our
petition come before you; pray to Yahweh
your God on behalf of this entire remnant.
For few of us remain of the many, as you
can see with your own eyes. 3 Pray that
Yahweh your God will tell us the way we
should walk and the thing we should do."

4 "I have heard you," replied Jeremiah the
prophet. "I will surely pray to Yahweh your
God as you request, and I will tell you
everything that Yahweh answers. I will not
withhold a word from you."

5 Then they said to Jeremiah, "May Yahweh be a true and faithful witness against
us if we do not act upon every word that
Yahweh your God sends you to tell us. 6
Whether it is pleasant or unpleasant, we
will obey the voice of Yahweh our God to
whom we are sending you, so that it may
go well with us when we obey the voice of
Yahweh our God!"

7 After ten days the word of Yahweh came
to Jeremiah, 8 and he summoned Johanan
son of Kareah, all the commanders of the
forces who were with him, and all the
people from the least to the greatest.

9 Jeremiah told them, "Thus says Yahweh,
the God of Israel, to whom you sent me to
present your petition: 10 'If you will indeed
stay in this land, then I will build you up
and not tear you down; I will plant you and
not uproot you, for I will relent of the disaster I have brought upon you.

11 Do not be afraid of the king of Babylon,
whom you now fear; do not be afraid of
him, declares Yahweh, for I am with you to
save you and deliver you from him. 12 And I
will show you compassion, and he will
have compassion on you and restore you
to your own land.'

13 But if you say, 'We will not stay in this
land,' and you thus disobey the voice of
Yahweh your God, 14 and if you say, 'No,
but we will go to the land of Egypt and live
there, where we will not see war or hear
the sound of the ram's horn or hunger for
bread,' 15 then hear the word of Yahweh, O
remnant of Judah! This is what Yahweh of
Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'If you are
determined to go to Egypt and reside
there, 16 then the sword you fear will overtake you there, and the famine you dread

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

will follow on your heels into Egypt, and you will die there. 17 So all who resolve to go to Egypt to reside there will die by sword and famine and plague. Not one of them will survive or escape the disaster I will bring upon them.'

18 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'Just as My anger and wrath were poured out on the residents of Jerusalem, so will My wrath be poured out on you if you go to Egypt. You will become an object of cursing and horror, of vilification and disgrace, and you will never see this place again.'

19 Yahweh has told you, O remnant of Judah, 'Do not go to Egypt.' Know for sure that I have warned you today! 20 For you have deceived yourselves by sending me to Yahweh your God, saying, 'Pray to Yahweh our God on our behalf, and as for all that Yahweh our God says, tell it to us and we will do it.'

21 For I have told you today, but you have not obeyed the voice of Yahweh your God in all He has sent me to tell you. 22 Now therefore, know for sure that by sword and famine and plague you will die in the place where you desire to go to reside."

43

CHAPTER 43 IN 30 SECONDS

They call Jeremiah a liar and go to Egypt anyway, dragging him and Baruch along. In Egypt, Jeremiah buries stones by Pharaoh's palace: Nebuchadnezzar will set his throne right here.

JEREMIAH TAKEN TO EGYPT

1 When Jeremiah had finished telling all the people all the words of Yahweh their God—everything that Yahweh had sent him to say— 2 Azariah son of Hoshaiah, Johanan son of Kareah, and all the arrogant men said to Jeremiah, "You are lying! Yahweh our God has not sent you to say, 'You must not go to Egypt to reside there.' 3 Rather, Baruch son of Neriah is inciting you against us to deliver us into the hands of the Chaldeans, so that they may put us to death or exile us to Babylon!"

4 So Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces disobeyed the command of Yahweh to stay in the land of Judah. 5 Instead, Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces took the whole remnant of Judah, those who had returned to the land of Judah from all the nations to which they had been scattered, 6 the men, the women, the children, the king's daughters, and everyone whom Nebuzaradan captain of the guard had allowed to remain with Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, as well as Jeremiah the prophet and Baruch son of Neriah.

7 So they entered the land of Egypt because they did not obey the voice of Yahweh, and they went as far as Tahpanhes.

8 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jeremiah at Tahpanhes: 9 "In the sight of the Jews, pick up some large stones and bury them in the clay of the brick pavement at the entrance to Pharaoh's palace at Tahpanhes.

10 Then tell them that this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: 'I will send for My servant Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and I will set his throne over these stones that I have embedded, and he will spread his royal pavilion over them. 11 He will come and strike down the land of Egypt, bringing death to those destined for death, captivity to those destined for captivity, and the sword to those destined for the sword.

12 I will kindle a fire in the temples of the gods of Egypt, and Nebuchadnezzar will burn those temples and take their gods as captives. So he will wrap himself with the land of Egypt as a shepherd wraps himself in his garment, and he will depart from there unscathed. 13 He will demolish the sacred pillars of the temple of the sun

- **JER 43:6 [FULFILLS]** Baruch's life would be spared wherever he went ← JER 45:5 · MEDIUM p.1213
- **JER 43:9 [NOTE]** TAHPANHES. An Egyptian border fort on the eastern edge of the Nile delta, called Daphnae by the Greeks.
- **JER 43:10 [PROPHECY]** Nebuchadnezzar would set his throne in Egypt and strike the land → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar marched on Egypt in 568 BC. Found on a Babylonian tablet and recorded by Josephus. · MEDIUM
- **JER 43:12 [DEMONIC]** Babylon will burn the temples of Egypt's gods

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

in the land of Egypt, and he will burn down the temples of the gods of Egypt.'"

44

CHAPTER 44 IN 30 SECONDS

In Egypt the people go back to burning incense to the Queen of Heaven. The women say life was better when they did. God says, Then watch what happens.

JUDGMENT ON THE JEWS IN EGYPT

1 This is the word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the Jews living in the land of Egypt—in Migdol, Tahpanhes, and Memphis—and in the land of Pathros: 2 "This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: You have seen all the disaster that I brought against Jerusalem and all the cities of Judah; and behold, they lie today in ruins and desolation 3 because of the evil they have done.

They provoked Me to anger by continuing to burn incense and to serve other gods that neither they nor you nor your fathers ever knew. 4 Yet I sent you all My servants the prophets again and again, saying: 'Do not do this detestable thing that I hate.'

5 But they did not listen or incline their ears; they did not turn from their wickedness or stop burning incense to other gods. 6 Therefore My wrath and anger poured out and burned in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem, so that they have become the desolate ruin they are today.

7 So now, this is what Yahweh God of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Why are you doing such great harm to yourselves by cutting off from Judah man and woman, child and infant, leaving yourselves without a remnant? 8 Why are you provoking Me to anger by the work of your hands by burning incense to other gods in the land of Egypt, where you have gone to reside?

As a result, you will be cut off and will become an object of cursing and reproach among all the nations of the earth. 9 Have you forgotten the wickedness of your fathers and of the kings of Judah and their wives, as well as the wickedness that you and your wives committed in the land of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem? 10 To this day they have not humbled themselves or shown reverence, nor have they followed My instruction or the statutes that I set before you and your fathers.

11 Therefore this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I will set My face to bring disaster and to cut off all Judah. 12 And I will take away the remnant of Judah who have resolved to go to the land of Egypt to reside there; they will meet their end. They will all fall by the sword or be consumed by famine. From the least to the greatest, they will die by sword or famine; and they will become an object of cursing and horror, of vilification and reproach.

13 I will punish those who live in the land of Egypt, just as I punished Jerusalem, by sword and famine and plague, 14 so that none of the remnant of Judah who have gone to reside in Egypt will escape or survive to return to the land of Judah, where they long to return and live; for none will return except a few fugitives."

THE STUBBORNNESS OF THE PEOPLE

15 Then all the men who knew that their wives were burning incense to other gods, and all the women standing by—a great assembly—along with all the people living in the land of Egypt and in Pathros, said to Jeremiah, 16 "As for the word you have spoken to us in the name of Yahweh, we will not listen to you! 17 Instead, we will do everything we vowed to do: We will burn incense to the Queen of Heaven and offer drink offerings to her, just as we, our fathers, our kings, and our officials did in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem.

At that time we had plenty of food and good things, and we saw no disaster. 18

JER 44:3 [DEMONIC] They kept burning incense to other gods

JER 44:8 [DEMONIC] Why burn incense to other gods in Egypt

JER 44:15 [DEMONIC] The people vow to keep serving the queen of heaven

JER 44:17 [NOTE] THE WOMEN'S ARGUMENT. They said life was better back when they worshiped the Queen of Heaven. Jeremiah says the trouble came because they did, 44:23.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

But from the time we stopped burning incense to the Queen of Heaven and pouring out drink offerings to her, we have lacked everything and have been perishing by sword and famine."

19 "Moreover," said the women, "when we burned incense to the Queen of Heaven and poured out drink offerings to her, was it without our husbands' knowledge that we made sacrificial cakes in her image and poured out drink offerings to her?"

CALAMITY FOR THE JEWS

20 Then Jeremiah said to all the people, both men and women, who were answering him, 21 "As for the incense you burned in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem—you, your fathers, your kings, your officials, and the people of the land—did Yahweh not remember and bring this to mind? 22 So Yahweh could no longer endure the evil deeds and detestable acts you committed, and your land became a desolation, a horror, and an object of cursing, without inhabitant, as it is this day. 23 Because you burned incense and sinned against Yahweh and did not obey the voice of Yahweh or walk in His instruction, His statutes, and His testimonies, this disaster has befallen you, as you see today."

24 Then Jeremiah said to all the people, including all the women, "Hear the word of Yahweh, all those of Judah who are in the land of Egypt. 25 This is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: As for you and your wives, you have spoken with your mouths and fulfilled with your hands your words: 'We will surely perform our vows that we have made to burn incense to the Queen of Heaven and to pour out drink offerings to her.' Go ahead, then, do what you have promised! Keep your vows!

26 Nevertheless, hear the word of Yahweh, all you people of Judah living in Egypt: Behold, I have sworn by My great name, says Yahweh, that never again will any man of Judah living in the land of Egypt invoke My name or say, 'As surely as the Lord Yahweh lives.'

27 I am watching over them for harm and not for good, and every man of Judah who is in the land of Egypt will meet his end by sword or famine, until they are finished off.

28 Those who escape the sword will return from Egypt to Judah, few in number, and the whole remnant of Judah who went to dwell in the land of Egypt will know whose word will stand, Mine or theirs!

29 This will be a sign to you that I will punish you in this place, declares Yahweh, so that you may know that My threats of harm against you will surely stand. 30 This is what Yahweh says: Behold, I will deliver Pharaoh Hophra king of Egypt into the hands of his enemies who seek his life, just as I delivered Zedekiah king of Judah into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the enemy who was seeking his life."

45

CHAPTER 45 IN 30 SECONDS

A short note to Baruch, who is tired and sad. God says, Are you looking for great things for yourself? Do not. I will give you your life wherever you go.

JEREMIAH'S MESSAGE TO BARUCH

1 This is the word that Jeremiah the prophet spoke to Baruch son of Neriah when he wrote these words on a scroll at the dictation of Jeremiah in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah:

2 "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says to you, Baruch: 3 You have said, 'Woe is me because Yahweh has added sorrow to my pain! I am worn out with groaning and have found no rest.'"

- **JER 44:30 [PROPHECY]** Pharaoh Hophra would be handed over to enemies who sought his life → HISTORY: Pharaoh Hophra lost his throne to Amasis about 570 BC and was later killed. Recorded by Herodotus.
- **JER 44:30 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Pharaoh Hophra, called Apries by the Greeks, king of Egypt about 589 to 570 BC, see the Pharaoh Hophra Field Notes box, p.1218 FIELD NOTES p.1213
- **JER 44:30 [FULFILLS]** Pharaoh's arm was broken and would be broken again so he could not help ← EZK 30:21-22 p.1292
- **JER 44:30 [NOTE]** PHARAOH HOPHRA. Called Apries by the Greeks. He was overthrown by his own general and killed. See Pharaoh Hophra.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PHARAOH HOPHRA

JEREMIAH 37:5 TO 7 · 44:30 · EZEKIEL 29:2 TO 3



A bronze sphinx with the face of Pharaoh Apries, called Hophra in the Bible. Musée du Louvre, Paris. Photo Mbzt, CC BY 4.0.

WHO HE WAS

Wahibre, king of Egypt about 589 to 570 BC. The Greeks called him Apries; the Bible calls him Hophra. He is the last pharaoh named in the Bible.

IN THE BIBLE

His army marched out while Babylon besieged Jerusalem, and the Babylonians pulled back for a while, 37:5. Jeremiah said Egypt would go home and Babylon would return, 37:7. It did.

WHAT HAPPENED TO HIM

The Greek writer Herodotus says his army rebelled and made his general Amasis king. Apries fought him, lost, and was killed by the Egyptian people a few years after 570 BC, Histories 2.161 to 169. Jeremiah 44:30 said he would be handed over to his enemies who sought his life.

WHAT IS LEFT

Statues, sphinxes, and ruins of his palace at Memphis carry his name.

4 Thus Jeremiah was to say to Baruch:
"This is what Yahweh says: Throughout
the land I will demolish what I have built
and uproot what I have planted. 5 But as
for you, do you seek great things for your-
self? Stop seeking! For I will bring disaster
on every living creature, declares Yahweh,
but wherever you go, I will grant your life
as a spoil of war."

JER 45:5 [PROPHECY] Baruch's life would be spared wherever he went → JER 43:6 · MEDIUM p.1210

JER 45:5 [NOTE] GREAT THINGS FOR YOURSELF. Baruch came from an important family; his brother Seraiah was a royal officer, 51:59. God told him to let go of big dreams for himself.

46

CHAPTER 46 IN 30 SECONDS

The nations start here. Egypt marches to Carchemish and loses to Babylon. Egypt is a pretty heifer, but a horsefly from the north is coming.

JUDGMENT ON EGYPT

1 This is the word of Yahweh about the
nations—the word that came to Jeremiah
the prophet 2 concerning Egypt and the
army of Pharaoh Neco king of Egypt,
which was defeated at Carchemish on the
Euphrates River by Nebuchadnezzar king
of Babylon in the fourth year of Jehoiakim
the son of Josiah king of Judah:

JER 46:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Babylonian Chronicle of the Battle of Carchemish

JER 46:2 [NOTE] CARCHEMISH. See The Babylonian Chronicle in 2 Kings, p.659.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

3 "Deploy your shields, small and large;
advance for battle!
4 Harness the horses; mount the steeds;
take your positions with helmets on!
Polish your spears;
put on armor!
5 Why am I seeing this?
They are terrified,
they are retreating;
their warriors are defeated,
they flee in haste without looking back;
terror is on every side!"
declares Yahweh.
6 "The swift cannot flee,
and the warrior cannot escape!
In the north by the River Euphrates
they stumble and fall.
7 Who is this, rising like the Nile,
like rivers whose waters churn?
8 Egypt rises like the Nile,
and its waters churn like rivers,
boasting, 'I will rise and cover the earth;
I will destroy the cities and their people.'
9 Advance, O horses! Race furiously, O chariots!
Let the warriors come forth—
Cush and Put carrying their shields,
men of Lydia drawing the bow.
10 For that day belongs to the Lord Yahweh of Hosts,
a day of vengeance against His foes.
The sword will devour until it is satisfied,
until it is quenched with their blood.
For the Lord Yahweh of Hosts will hold a sacrifice
in the land of the north by the River Euphrates.
11 Go up to Gilead for balm,
O Virgin Daughter of Egypt!
In vain you try many remedies,
but for you there is no healing.
12 The nations have heard of your shame,
and your outcry fills the earth,
because warrior stumbles over warrior
and both of them have fallen together."

JER 46:6 [PROPHECY] Egypt's warriors would stumble and fall in the north by the Euphrates → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar crushed Pharaoh Neco's army at Carchemish by the Euphrates in 605 BC. Found in the Babylonian Chronicle.

13 This is the word that Yahweh spoke to Jeremiah the prophet about the coming of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon to strike the land of Egypt:

14 "Announce it in Egypt, and proclaim it in Migdol;
proclaim it in Memphis and Tahpanhes:
'Take your positions and prepare yourself,
for the sword devours those around you.'
15 Why have your warriors been laid low?
They cannot stand, for Yahweh has thrust them down.
16 They continue to stumble;
indeed, they have fallen over one another.
They say, 'Get up! Let us return to our people
and to the land of our birth,
away from the sword of the oppressor.'
17 There they will cry out:
'Pharaoh king of Egypt was all noise;
he has let the appointed time pass him by.'
18 As surely as I live, declares the King,
whose name is Yahweh of Hosts,
there will come one who is like Tabor among the mountains
and like Carmel by the sea.
19 Pack your bags for exile,
O daughter dwelling in Egypt!
For Memphis will be laid waste,
destroyed and uninhabited.
20 Egypt is a beautiful heifer,
but a gadfly from the north is coming against her.
21 Even the mercenaries among her
are like fattened calves.
They too will turn back;
together they will flee, they will not stand their ground,
for the day of calamity is coming upon them—
the time of their punishment.
22 Egypt will hiss like a fleeing serpent,
for the enemy will advance in force;

JER 46:13 [PROPHECY] Nebuchadnezzar would come and strike the land of Egypt → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar marched against Egypt in 568 BC. Found on a Babylonian tablet and recorded by Josephus. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

with axes they will come against her
like woodsmen cutting down trees.
23 They will chop down her forest, declares Yahweh,
dense though it may be,
for they are more numerous than locusts;
they cannot be counted.
24 The Daughter of Egypt will be put to shame;
she will be delivered into the hands of the people of the north."

25 Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: "Behold, I am about to punish Amon god of Thebes, along with Pharaoh, Egypt with her gods and kings, and those who trust in Pharaoh. 26 I will deliver them into the hands of those who seek their lives—of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and his officers. But after this, Egypt will be inhabited as in days of old, declares Yahweh.

27 But you, O Jacob My servant, do not be afraid,
and do not be dismayed, O Israel.
For I will surely save you out of a distant place,
your descendants from the land of their captivity!
Jacob will return to quiet and ease,
with no one to make him afraid.
28 And you, My servant Jacob, do not be afraid,
declares Yahweh, for I am with you.
Though I will completely destroy all the nations to which I have banished you,
I will not completely destroy you.
Yet I will discipline you justly,
and will by no means leave you unpunished."

47

CHAPTER 47 IN 30 SECONDS
The Philistines' turn: waters rise from the north. Gaza and Ashkelon go quiet. O sword of Yahweh, how long until you rest?

JUDGMENT ON THE PHILISTINES // ZEPHANIAH 2:4–7

1 This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah the prophet about the Philistines before Pharaoh struck down Gaza. 2 This is what Yahweh says:

"See how the waters are rising from the north
and becoming an overflowing torrent.
They will overflow the land and its fullness,
the cities and their inhabitants.
The people will cry out,
and all who dwell in the land will wail
3 at the sound of the galloping hooves of stallions,
the rumbling of chariots,
and the clatter of their wheels.
The fathers will not turn back for their sons;
their hands will hang limp.

4 For the day has come
to destroy all the Philistines,
to cut off from Tyre and Sidon
every remaining ally.
Indeed, Yahweh is about to destroy the Philistines,
the remnant from the coasts of Caphtor.
5 The people of Gaza will shave their heads in mourning;
Ashkelon will be silenced.
O remnant of their valley,
how long will you gash yourself?

6 'Alas, O sword of Yahweh,
how long until you rest?
Return to your sheath;
cease and be still!'

7 How can it rest
when Yahweh has commanded it?
He has appointed it against Ashkelon
and the shore of its coastland."

JER 46:25 [DEMONIC] God will punish Amon the god of Thebes

JER 47:5 [PROPHECY] Gaza would shave its head in mourning and Ashkelon would be silenced → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar took Ashkelon and left it in ruins, 604 BC. Found in the Babylonian Chronicle and the burn layer at Ashkelon.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

48

CHAPTER 48 IN 30 SECONDS

Moab, proud and lazy like wine left on its dregs, finally gets shaken. Its god Chemosh will be put to shame. But in the latter days God will restore Moab's fortunes.

JUDGMENT ON MOAB // ISAIAH 15:1–9

1 Concerning Moab, this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says:

"Woe to Nebo,
for it will be devastated.
Kiriathaim will be captured and disgraced;
the fortress will be shattered and dismantled.
2 There is no longer praise for Moab;
in Heshbon they devise evil against her:
'Come, let us cut her off from nationhood.'

You too, O people of Madmen, will be silenced;
the sword will pursue you.
3 A voice cries out from Horonaim:
'Devastation and great destruction!'
4 Moab will be shattered;
her little ones will cry out.

5 For on the ascent to Luhith
they weep bitterly as they go,
and on the descent to Horonaim
cries of distress resound
over the destruction:
6 'Flee! Run for your lives!
Become like a juniper in the desert.'

7 Because you trust in your works and treasures,
you too will be captured,
and Chemosh will go into exile
with his priests and officials.
8 The destroyer will move against every city,
and not one town will escape.
The valley will also be ruined,
and the high plain will be destroyed,
as Yahweh has said.

9 Put salt on Moab,
for she will be laid waste;
her cities will become desolate,
with no one to dwell in them.
10 Cursed is the one who is remiss
in doing the work of Yahweh,
and cursed is he who withholds
his sword from bloodshed.

11 Moab has been at ease from youth,
settled like wine on its dregs;
he has not been poured from vessel to vessel
or gone into exile.
So his flavor has remained the same,
and his aroma is unchanged.
12 Therefore behold, the days are coming,
declares Yahweh,
when I will send to him wanderers,
who will pour him out.
They will empty his vessels
and shatter his jars.
13 Then Moab will be ashamed of Chemosh,
just as the house of Israel was ashamed
when they trusted in Bethel.

14 How can you say, 'We are warriors,
mighty men ready for battle'?
15 Moab has been destroyed
and its towns have been invaded;
the best of its young men
have gone down in the slaughter,
declares the King,
whose name is Yahweh of Hosts.
16 Moab's calamity is at hand,
and his affliction is rushing swiftly.
17 Mourn for him, all you who surround him,
everyone who knows his name;
tell how the mighty scepter is shattered—
the glorious staff!

18 Come down from your glory; sit on parched ground,
O daughter dwelling in Dibon,
for the destroyer of Moab has come against you;
he has destroyed your fortresses.
19 Stand by the road and watch,
O dweller of Aroer!
Ask the man fleeing or the woman escaping,

JER 48:7 [DEMONIC] Chemosh will go into exile with his priests

JER 48:7 [NOTE] CHEMOSH. The god of Moab. King Mesha of Moab names him on the Mesha Stele.

JER 48:13 [DEMONIC] Moab will be ashamed of Chemosh

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

'What has happened?'
20 Moab is put to shame, for it has been
shattered.
Wail and cry out!
Declare by the Arnon
that Moab is destroyed.
21 Judgment has come upon the high
plain—
upon Holon, Jahzah, and Mephaath,
22 upon Dibon, Nebo, and Beth-diblathaim,
23 upon Kiriathaim, Beth-gamul, and
Beth-meon,
24 upon Kerioth, Bozrah, and all the towns
of Moab,
those far and near.
25 The horn of Moab has been cut off,
and his arm is broken,"
declares Yahweh.
26 "Make him drunk,
because he has magnified himself
against Yahweh;
so Moab will wallow in his own vomit,
and he will also become a laughing-
stock.
27 Was not Israel your object of ridicule?
Was he ever found among thieves?
For whenever you speak of him
you shake your head.
28 Abandon the towns and settle among
the rocks,
O dwellers of Moab!
Be like a dove
that nests at the mouth of a cave.
29 We have heard of Moab's pomposity,
his exceeding pride and conceit,
his proud arrogance and haughtiness of
heart.
30 I know his insolence,"
declares Yahweh,
"but it is futile.
His boasting is as empty as his deeds.
31 Therefore I will wail for Moab;
I will cry out for all of Moab;
I will moan for the men of Kir-heres.
32 I will weep for you, O vine of Sibmah,
more than I weep for Jazer.
Your tendrils have extended to the sea;
they reach even to Jazer.
The destroyer has descended
on your summer fruit and grape harvest.
33 Joy and gladness are removed from the
orchard
and from the fields of Moab.
I have stopped the flow of wine from the
presses;
no one treads them with shouts of joy;
their shouts are not for joy.
34 There is a cry from Heshbon to Elealeh;
they raise their voices to Jahaz,
from Zoar to Horonaim and Eglath-shel-
ishiyah;
for even the waters of Nimrim have
dried up.
35 In Moab, declares Yahweh,
I will bring an end
to those who make offerings on the high
places
and burn incense to their gods.
36 Therefore My heart laments like a flute
for Moab;
it laments like a flute for the men of Kir-
heres,
because the wealth they acquired has
perished.
37 For every head is shaved
and every beard is clipped;
on every hand is a gash,
and around every waist is sackcloth.
38 On all the rooftops of Moab
and in the public squares,
everyone is mourning;
for I have shattered Moab like an un-
wanted jar,"
declares Yahweh.
39 "How shattered it is! How they wail!
How Moab has turned his back in
shame!
Moab has become an object of ridicule
and horror
to all those around him."
40 For this is what Yahweh says:

"Behold, an eagle swoops down
and spreads his wings against Moab.
41 Kirioth has been taken,
and the strongholds seized.
In that day the heart of Moab's warriors

JER 48:35 [DEMONIC] God ends offerings on Moab's high places

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

will be like the heart of a woman in labor.
42 Moab will be destroyed as a nation
because he vaunted himself against Yahweh.
43 Terror and pit and snare await you, O dweller of Moab,"
declares Yahweh.
44 "Whoever flees the panic
will fall into the pit,
and whoever climbs from the pit
will be caught in the snare.
For I will bring upon Moab
the year of their punishment,"
declares Yahweh.
45 "Those who flee will stand helpless in Heshbon's shadow,
because fire has gone forth from Heshbon
and a flame from within Sihon.
It devours the foreheads of Moab
and the skulls of the sons of tumult.
46 Woe to you, O Moab!
The people of Chemosh have perished;
for your sons have been taken into exile
and your daughters have gone into captivity.
47 Yet in the latter days I will restore Moab from captivity,"
declares Yahweh.

Here ends the judgment on Moab.

49

CHAPTER 49 IN 30 SECONDS

Ammon, Edom, Damascus, Kedar, Hazor and Elam each get a message. Edom will be like Sodom. Elam's bow will break, but God will restore Elam too.

JUDGMENT ON THE AMMONITES

1 Concerning the Ammonites, this is what Yahweh says:

"Has Israel no sons?
Is he without heir?
Why then has Milcom taken possession of Gad?
Why have his people settled in their cities?
2 Therefore, behold, the days are coming,
declares Yahweh,
when I will sound the battle cry
against Rabbah of the Ammonites.
It will become a heap of ruins,
and its villages will be burned.
Then Israel will drive out their dispossessors,
says Yahweh.
3 Wail, O Heshbon, for Ai has been destroyed;
cry out, O daughters of Rabbah!
Put on sackcloth and mourn;
run back and forth within your walls,
for Milcom will go into exile
together with his priests and officials.
4 Why do you boast of your valleys—
your valleys so fruitful,
O faithless daughter?
You trust in your riches and say,
'Who can come against me?'
5 Behold, I am about to bring terror upon you,
declares the Lord Yahweh of Hosts,
from all those around you.
You will each be driven headlong,
with no one to regather the fugitives.
6 Yet afterward I will restore the Ammonites from captivity,"
declares Yahweh.

JUDGMENT ON EDOM // OBADIAH 1:1–14

7 Concerning Edom, this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Is there no longer wisdom in Teman?
Has counsel perished from the prudent?
Has their wisdom decayed?
8 Turn and run!
Lie low, O dwellers of Dedan,
for I will bring disaster on Esau
at the time I punish him.
9 If grape gatherers came to you,

JER 48:42 [PROPHECY] Moab would be destroyed as a nation → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar made war on Moab and Ammon in 582 BC, and Moab soon vanished as a nation. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7. · MEDIUM

JER 48:46 [DEMONIC] The people of Chemosh have perished

JER 49:1 [DEMONIC] Milcom has taken over the land of Gad

JER 49:2 [PROPHECY] Rabbah of the Ammonites would become a heap of ruins → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar made war on Ammon in 582 BC, and the Ammonite kingdom came to an end. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7. · MEDIUM

JER 49:3 [DEMONIC] Milcom will go into exile with his priests

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

would they not leave some gleanings?
Were thieves to come in the night,
would they not steal only what they wanted?
10 But I will strip Esau bare;
I will uncover his hiding places,
and he will be unable to conceal himself.
His descendants will be destroyed
along with his relatives and neighbors,
and he will be no more.

11 Abandon your orphans; I will preserve their lives.
Let your widows trust in Me."

12 For this is what Yahweh says: "If those who do not deserve to drink the cup must drink it, can you possibly remain unpunished? You will not go unpunished, for you must drink it too. 13 For by Myself I have sworn, declares Yahweh, that Bozrah will become a desolation, a disgrace, a ruin, and a curse, and all her cities will be in ruins forever."

14 I have heard a message from Yahweh;
an envoy has been sent to the nations:
"Assemble yourselves to march against her!
Rise up for battle!"

15 "For behold, I will make you small among nations,
despised among men.
16 The terror you cause
and the pride of your heart
have deceived you,
O dwellers in the clefts of the rocks,
O occupiers of the mountain summit.
Though you elevate your nest like the eagle,
even from there I will bring you down,"
declares Yahweh.

17 "Edom will become an object of horror.
All who pass by will be appalled
and will scoff at all her wounds.
18 As Sodom and Gomorrah were overthrown
along with their neighbors,"
says Yahweh,
"no one will dwell there;
no man will abide there.
19 Behold, one will come up like a lion
from the thickets of the Jordan to the watered pasture.
For in an instant I will chase Edom from her land.
Who is the chosen one I will appoint for this?
For who is like Me, and who can challenge Me?
What shepherd can stand against Me?"

20 Therefore hear the plans
that Yahweh has drawn up against Edom
and the strategies He has devised
against the people of Teman:
Surely the little ones of the flock will be dragged away;
certainly their pasture will be made desolate because of them.
21 At the sound of their fall the earth will quake;
their cry will resound to the Red Sea.
22 Look! An eagle will soar and swoop down,
spreading its wings over Bozrah.
In that day the hearts of Edom's mighty men
will be like the heart of a woman in labor.

JUDGMENT ON DAMASCUS // ISAIAH 17:1–14

23 Concerning Damascus:

"Hamath and Arpad are put to shame,
for they have heard a bad report;
they are agitated like the sea;
their anxiety cannot be calmed.
24 Damascus has become feeble;
she has turned to flee.
Panic has gripped her;
anguish and pain have seized her
like a woman in labor.

25 How is the city of praise not forsaken,
the town that brings Me joy?
26 For her young men will fall in the streets,
and all her warriors will be silenced in that day,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
27 "I will set fire to the walls of Damascus;

JER 49:17 [PROPHECY] Edom would be overthrown like Sodom and no one would live there → HISTORY: Nabonidus of Babylon struck Edom about 553 BC, and by 312 BC Arab Nabataeans held its land. Recorded by Diodorus 19.94.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

it will consume the fortresses of Ben-hadad."

JUDGMENT ON KEDAR AND HAZOR

28 Concerning Kedar and the kingdoms of Hazor, which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon defeated, this is what Yahweh says:

"Rise up, advance against Kedar,
and destroy the people of the east!
29 They will take their tents and flocks,
their tent curtains and all their goods.
They will take their camels for themselves.
They will shout to them: 'Terror is on every side!'

30 Run! Escape quickly!
Lie low, O residents of Hazor,"
declares Yahweh,
"for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon
has drawn up a plan against you;
he has devised a strategy against you.

31 Rise up, advance against a nation at ease,
one that dwells securely,"
declares Yahweh.
"They have no gates or bars;
they live alone.

32 Their camels will become plunder,
and their large herds will be spoil.
I will scatter to the wind in every direction
those who shave their temples;
I will bring calamity on them
from all sides,"
declares Yahweh.
33 "Hazor will become a haunt for jackals,
a desolation forever.
No one will dwell there;
no man will abide there."

JUDGMENT ON ELAM

34 This is the word of Yahweh that came to Jeremiah the prophet concerning Elam at the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah. 35 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Behold, I will shatter Elam's bow,
the mainstay of their might.
36 I will bring the four winds against Elam
from the four corners of the heavens,
and I will scatter them
to all these winds.
There will not be a nation
to which Elam's exiles will not go.
37 So I will shatter Elam before their foes,
before those who seek their lives.
I will bring disaster upon them,
even My fierce anger,"
declares Yahweh.
"I will send out the sword after them
until I finish them off.
38 I will set My throne in Elam,
and destroy its king and officials,"
declares Yahweh.
39 "Yet in the last days,
I will restore Elam from captivity,"
declares Yahweh.

50

CHAPTER 50 IN 30 SECONDS

Now Babylon itself. The hammer of the whole earth will be shattered. Israel's sheep were scattered, but the Redeemer is strong, Yahweh of Hosts is His name.

A PROPHECY AGAINST BABYLON

1 This is the word that Yahweh spoke through Jeremiah the prophet concerning Babylon and the land of the Chaldeans:

2 "Announce and declare to the nations;
lift up a banner and proclaim it;
hold nothing back when you say,
'Babylon is captured;
Bel is put to shame;
Marduk is shattered,
her images are disgraced,
her idols are broken in pieces.'

- **JER 49:27 [PROPHECY]** God would set fire to the walls of Damascus → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon took control of all of Syria, the land around Damascus, in 605 to 604 BC. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle. · MEDIUM
- **JER 49:30 [PROPHECY]** Nebuchadnezzar had drawn up a plan against Hazor and Kedar → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar sent his army into the desert and raided the Arab tribes, 599 to 598 BC. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle.
- **JER 49:35 [PROPHECY]** God would shatter Elam's bow, the source of its strength → HISTORY: Babylon marched on Elam in 596 BC, and later Persia took it over. Found in the Babylonian Chronicle and Behistun Inscription. · MEDIUM
- **JER 49:39 [PROPHECY]** In the last days God would restore Elam → ACTS 2:9 · MEDIUM p.1741
- **JER 50:2 [DEMONIC]** Bel is put to shame and Marduk is shattered
- **JER 50:2 [NOTE]** MARDUK. Merodach in the Hebrew, and also called Bel, lord. The chief god of Babylon.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

3 For a nation from the north will come
against her;
it will make her land a desolation.
No one will live in it;
both man and beast will flee."

HOPE FOR ISRAEL AND JUDAH

4 "In those days and at that time,
declares Yahweh,
the children of Israel and the children of
Judah
will come together, weeping as they
come,
and will seek Yahweh their God.
5 They will ask the way to Zion
and turn their faces toward it.
They will come and join themselves to
Yahweh
in an everlasting covenant
that will never be forgotten.

6 My people are lost sheep;
their shepherds have led them astray,
causing them to roam the mountains.
They have wandered from mountain to
hill;
they have forgotten their resting place.
7 All who found them devoured them,
and their enemies said,
'We are not guilty,
for they have sinned against Yahweh,
their true pasture,
Yahweh, the hope of their fathers.'

8 Flee from the midst of Babylon;
depart from the land of the Chaldeans;
be like the he-goats that lead the flock.
9 For behold, I stir up and bring against
Babylon
an assembly of great nations from the
land of the north.
They will line up against her;
from the north she will be captured.
Their arrows will be like skilled warriors
who do not return empty-handed.
10 Chaldea will be plundered;
all who plunder her will have their fill,"
declares Yahweh.

JER 50:9 [PROPHECY] An alliance of great nations from the north would capture Babylon → HISTORY: Cyrus, with Persians and Medes from the north, took Babylon in 539 BC. Found in the Nabonidus Chronicle and Cyrus Cylinder.

BABYLON'S FALL IS CERTAIN

11 "Because you rejoice,
because you sing in triumph—
you who plunder My inheritance—
because you frolic like a heifer treading
grain
and neigh like stallions,
12 your mother will be greatly ashamed;
she who bore you will be disgraced.
Behold, she will be the least of the na-
tions,
a wilderness, a dry land, and a desert.

13 Because of the wrath of Yahweh,
she will not be inhabited;
she will become completely desolate.
All who pass through Babylon will be hor-
rified
and will hiss at all her wounds.

14 Line up in formation around Babylon,
all you who draw the bow!
Shoot at her! Spare no arrows!
For she has sinned against Yahweh.
15 Raise a war cry against her on every
side!
She has thrown up her hands in surren-
der;
her towers have fallen;
her walls are torn down.

Since this is the vengeance of Yahweh,
take out your vengeance upon her;
as she has done,
do the same to her.
16 Cut off the sower from Babylon,
and the one who wields the sickle at
harvest time.
In the face of the oppressor's sword,
each will turn to his own people,
each will flee to his own land.

REDEMPTION FOR GOD'S PEOPLE

17 Israel is a scattered flock,
chased away by lions.
The first to devour him
was the king of Assyria;
the last to crush his bones
was Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon."

18 Therefore this is what Yahweh of Hosts,
the God of Israel, says:

GOD SPEAKING

"I will punish the king of Babylon and his land
as I punished the king of Assyria.
19 I will return Israel to his pasture,
and he will graze on Carmel and Bashan;
his soul will be satisfied
on the hills of Ephraim and Gilead.

20 In those days and at that time,
declares Yahweh,
a search will be made for Israel's guilt,
but there will be none,
and for Judah's sins,
but they will not be found;
for I will forgive
the remnant I preserve.

THE DESTRUCTION OF BABYLON

21 Go up against the land of Merathaim,
and against the residents of Pekod.
Kill them and devote them to destruction.
Do all that I have commanded you,"
declares Yahweh.
22 "The noise of battle is in the land—
the noise of great destruction.
23 How the hammer of the whole earth
lies broken and shattered!
What a horror Babylon has become
among the nations!

24 I laid a snare for you, O Babylon,
and you were caught before you knew it.
You were found and captured
because you challenged Yahweh.
25 Yahweh has opened His armory
and brought out His weapons of wrath,
for this is the work of the Lord Yahweh of Hosts
in the land of the Chaldeans.

26 Come against her
from the farthest border.
Break open her granaries;
pile her up like mounds of grain.
Devote her to destruction;
leave her no survivors.
27 Kill all her young bulls;
let them go down to the slaughter.
Woe to them, for their day has come—
the time of their punishment.

28 Listen to the fugitives and refugees
from the land of Babylon,
declaring in Zion the vengeance of Yahweh our God,
the vengeance for His temple.
29 Summon the archers against Babylon,
all who string the bow.
Encamp all around her;
let no one escape.
Repay her according to her deeds;
do to her as she has done.
For she has defied Yahweh,
the Holy One of Israel.
30 Therefore, her young men will fall in the streets,
and all her warriors will be silenced in that day,"
declares Yahweh.
31 "Behold, I am against you, O arrogant one,"
declares the Lord Yahweh of Hosts,
"for your day has come,
the time when I will punish you.
32 The arrogant one will stumble and fall
with no one to pick him up.
And I will kindle a fire in his cities
to consume all those around him."

33 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"The sons of Israel are oppressed,
and the sons of Judah as well.
All their captors hold them fast,
refusing to release them.
34 Their Redeemer is strong;
Yahweh of Hosts is His name.
He will fervently plead their case
so that He may bring rest to the earth,
but turmoil to those who live in Babylon.

35 A sword is against the Chaldeans,
declares Yahweh,
against those who live in Babylon,
and against her officials and wise men.
36 A sword is against her false prophets,
and they will become fools.
A sword is against her warriors,
and they will be filled with terror.
37 A sword is against her horses and chariots
and against all the foreigners in her midst,
and they will become like women.
A sword is against her treasuries,

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

and they will be plundered.
38 A drought is upon her waters,
and they will be dried up.
For it is a land of graven images,
and the people go mad over idols.

39 So the desert creatures and hyenas will live there
and ostriches will dwell there.
It will never again be inhabited
or lived in from generation to generation.
40 As God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah
along with their neighbors,"
declares Yahweh,
"no one will dwell there;
no man will abide there.

41 Behold, an army is coming from the north;
a great nation and many kings are stirred up
from the ends of the earth.
42 They grasp the bow and spear;
they are cruel and merciless.
Their voice roars like the sea,
and they ride upon horses,
lined up like men in formation
against you, O Daughter of Babylon.
43 The king of Babylon has heard the report,
and his hands hang limp.
Anguish has gripped him,
pain like that of a woman in labor.

44 Behold, one will come up like a lion
from the thickets of the Jordan to the watered pasture.
For in an instant I will chase Babylon from her land.
Who is the chosen one I will appoint for this?
For who is like Me, and who can challenge Me?
What shepherd can stand against Me?"

45 Therefore hear the plans
that Yahweh has drawn up against Babylon
and the strategies He has devised
against the land of the Chaldeans:
Surely the little ones of the flock will be dragged away;
certainly their pasture will be made desolate because of them.
46 At the sound of Babylon's capture the earth will quake;
a cry will be heard among the nations.

JER 50:38 [PROPHECY] A drought would come on Babylon's waters and they would dry up → HISTORY: Cyrus turned the Euphrates River aside so his soldiers could walk into Babylon along the riverbed, 539 BC. Recorded by Herodotus, Histories 1.191. · MEDIUM

JER 50:38 [DEMONIC] Babylon is a land that goes mad over idols

51

CHAPTER 51 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon is a golden cup that made the nations drunk, and it will fall. Jeremiah writes it all on a scroll, has it read in Babylon, tied to a stone and thrown into the Euphrates.

JUDGMENT ON BABYLON

1 This is what Yahweh says:

"Behold, I will stir up against Babylon
and against the people of Leb-kamai
the spirit of a destroyer.
2 I will send strangers to Babylon
to winnow her and empty her land;
for they will come against her from every side
in her day of disaster.

3 Do not let the archer bend his bow
or put on his armor.
Do not spare her young men;
devote all her army to destruction!
4 And they will fall slain in the land of the Chaldeans,
and pierced through in her streets.
5 For Israel and Judah have not been abandoned
by their God, Yahweh of Hosts,
though their land is full of guilt
before the Holy One of Israel."

6 Flee from Babylon! Escape with your lives!
Do not be destroyed in her punishment.
For this is the time of Yahweh's vengeance;
He will pay her what she deserves.
7 Babylon was a gold cup in the hand of Yahweh,
making the whole earth drunk.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

The nations drank her wine;
therefore the nations have gone mad.

8 Suddenly Babylon has fallen and been shattered.
Wail for her; get her balm for her pain;
perhaps she can be healed.

9 "We tried to heal Babylon,
but she could not be healed.
Abandon her!
Let each of us go to his own land,
for her judgment extends to the sky
and reaches to the clouds."

10 "Yahweh has brought forth our vindication;
come, let us tell in Zion
what Yahweh our God has accomplished."

11 Sharpen the arrows!
Fill the quivers!
Yahweh has aroused the spirit
of the kings of the Medes,
because His plan is aimed at Babylon
to destroy her,
for it is the vengeance of Yahweh—
vengeance for His temple.

12 Raise a banner against the walls of Babylon;
post the guard;
station the watchmen;
prepare the ambush.
For Yahweh has both devised and accomplished
what He spoke against the people of Babylon.
13 You who dwell by many waters,
rich in treasures,
your end has come;
the thread of your life is cut.

14 Yahweh of Hosts has sworn by Himself:

"Surely I will fill you up with men as with locusts,
and they will shout in triumph over you."

JER 51:7 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 17:1-2 p.2106

JER 51:11 [PROPHECY] Yahweh has stirred up the spirit of the kings of the Medes; His plan is against Babylon → HISTORY: Cyrus, who ruled both the Persians and the Medes, took Babylon in 539 BC. Recorded in the Nabonidus Chronicle and the Cyrus Cylinder.

JER 51:13 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 17:1-2 p.2106

PRAISE TO THE GOD OF JACOB // ISAIAH 25:1–12

15 Yahweh made the earth by His power;
He established the world by His wisdom
and stretched out the heavens by His understanding.
16 When He thunders,
the waters in the heavens roar;
He causes the clouds to rise
from the ends of the earth.
He generates the lightning with the rain
and brings forth the wind from His storehouses.

17 Every man is senseless and devoid of knowledge;
every goldsmith is put to shame by his idols.
For his molten images are a fraud,
and there is no breath in them.
18 They are worthless, a work to be mocked.
In the time of their punishment they will perish.
19 The Portion of Jacob is not like these,
for He is the Maker of all things,
and of the tribe of His inheritance—
Yahweh of Hosts is His name.

BABYLON'S PUNISHMENT

20 "You are My war club,
My weapon for battle.
With you I shatter nations;
with you I bring kingdoms to ruin.
21 With you I shatter the horse and rider;
with you I shatter the chariot and driver.
22 With you I shatter man and woman;
with you I shatter the old man and the youth;
with you I shatter the young man and the maiden.
23 With you I shatter the shepherd and his flock;
with you I shatter the farmer and his oxen;
with you I shatter the governors and officials.

24 Before your very eyes I will repay
Babylon and all the dwellers of Chaldea
for all the evil they have done in Zion,"
declares Yahweh.

JER 51:17 [DEMONIC] Every goldsmith is put to shame by his idols

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

25 "Behold, I am against you,
O destroying mountain,
you who devastate the whole earth,
declares Yahweh.
I will stretch out My hand against you;
I will roll you over the cliffs
and turn you into a charred mountain.
26 No one shall retrieve from you a cornerstone
or a foundation stone,
because you will become desolate forever,"
declares Yahweh.
27 "Raise a banner in the land!
Blow the ram's horn among the nations!
Prepare the nations against her.
Summon the kingdoms against her—
Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz.
Appoint a captain against her;
bring up horses like swarming locusts.
28 Prepare the nations for battle against her—
the kings of the Medes,
their governors and all their officials,
and all the lands they rule.

29 The earth quakes and writhes
because Yahweh's intentions against Babylon stand:
to make the land of Babylon a desolation,
without inhabitant.
30 The warriors of Babylon have stopped fighting;
they sit in their strongholds.
Their strength is exhausted;
they have become like women.
Babylon's homes have been set ablaze,
the bars of her gates are broken.
31 One courier races to meet another,
and messenger follows messenger,
to announce to the king of Babylon
that his city has been captured from end to end.
32 The fords have been seized,
the marshes set on fire,
and the soldiers are terrified."

33 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts, the God of Israel, says:

"The Daughter of Babylon is like a threshing floor
at the time it is trampled.
In just a little while
her harvest time will come."

34 "Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon has devoured me;
he has crushed me.
He has set me aside like an empty vessel;
he has swallowed me like a monster;
he filled his belly with my delicacies
and vomited me out.
35 May the violence done to me
and to my flesh
be upon Babylon,"
says the dweller of Zion.

"May my blood be on the dwellers of Chaldea,"
says Jerusalem.

36 Therefore this is what Yahweh says:

"Behold, I will plead your case
and take vengeance on your behalf;
I will dry up her sea
and make her springs run dry.
37 Babylon will become a heap of rubble,
a haunt for jackals,
an object of horror and scorn,
without inhabitant.
38 They will roar together like young lions;
they will growl like lion cubs.
39 While they are flushed with heat,
I will serve them a feast,
and I will make them drunk
so that they may revel;
then they will fall asleep forever and never wake up,
declares Yahweh.
40 I will bring them down like lambs to the slaughter,
like rams with male goats.

41 How Sheshach has been captured!

JER 51:30 [PROPHECY] Babylon's warriors would stop fighting and runners would tell the king his city was taken → HISTORY: Babylon fell to Cyrus in 539 BC with almost no fighting. Recorded by Herodotus and the Nabonidus Chronicle. · MEDIUM

JER 51:37 [PROPHECY] Babylon shall become a heap, a dwelling for jackals, an astonishment and a hissing, without an inhabitant → HISTORY: Babylon slowly emptied, and by AD 20 Strabo called it a great desert. Recorded by Strabo 16.1.5. · MEDIUM

JER 51:39 [PROPHECY] Babylon's leaders would be made drunk at a feast and sleep forever → DAN 5:1-4; DAN 5:30 p.1335

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

The praise of all the earth has been seized.
What a horror Babylon has become among the nations!
42 The sea has come up over Babylon;
she is covered in turbulent waves.
43 Her cities have become a desolation,
a dry and arid land,
a land where no one lives,
where no son of man passes through.
44 I will punish Bel in Babylon.
I will make him spew out what he swallowed.
The nations will no longer stream to him;
even the wall of Babylon will fall.

45 Come out of her, My people!
Save your lives, each of you,
from the fierce anger of Yahweh.
46 Do not let your heart grow faint,
and do not be afraid
when the rumor is heard in the land;
for a rumor will come one year—
and then another the next year—
of violence in the land
and of ruler against ruler.

47 Therefore, behold, the days are coming
when I will punish the idols of Babylon.
Her entire land will suffer shame,
and all her slain will lie fallen within her.
48 Then heaven and earth and all that is in them
will shout for joy over Babylon
because the destroyers from the north
will come against her,"
declares Yahweh.
49 "Babylon must fall
on account of the slain of Israel,
just as the slain of all the earth
have fallen because of Babylon.
50 You who have escaped the sword,
depart and do not linger!
Remember Yahweh from far away,
and let Jerusalem come to mind."

51 "We are ashamed because we have heard reproach;
disgrace has covered our faces,
because foreigners have entered
the holy places of Yahweh's house."

52 "Therefore, behold, the days are coming,"
declares Yahweh,
"when I will punish her idols,
and throughout her land the wounded will groan.
53 Even if Babylon ascends to the heavens
and fortifies her lofty stronghold,
the destroyers I send will come against her,"
declares Yahweh.

54 "The sound of a cry
comes from Babylon,
the sound of great destruction
from the land of the Chaldeans!
55 For Yahweh will destroy Babylon;
He will silence her mighty voice.
The waves will roar like great waters;
the tumult of their voices will resound.

56 For a destroyer is coming against her—
against Babylon.
Her warriors will be captured,
and their bows will be broken,
for Yahweh is a God of retribution;
He will repay in full.
57 I will make her princes and wise men drunk,
along with her governors, officials, and warriors.
Then they will fall asleep forever
and not wake up,"
declares the King,
whose name is Yahweh of Hosts.

58 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Babylon's thick walls will be leveled,
and her high gates consumed by fire.
So the labor of the people will be for nothing;
the nations will exhaust themselves to fuel the flames."

JER 51:44 [DEMONIC] God makes Bel spit out what he swallowed
JER 51:45 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 18:4 p.2107
JER 51:47 [DEMONIC] God will punish the idols of Babylon
JER 51:52 [DEMONIC] God will punish her idols and the wounded will groan
JER 51:58 [PROPHECY] Babylon's thick walls would be leveled and her high gates burned → HISTORY: Darius tore down Babylon's walls and gates after a revolt, about 520 BC. Recorded by Herodotus 3.159. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

JEREMIAH'S MESSAGE TO SERAIAH

59 This is the message that Jeremiah the prophet gave to the quartermaster Seraiah son of Neriah, the son of Mahseiah, when he went to Babylon with King Zedekiah of Judah in the fourth year of Zedekiah's reign. 60 Jeremiah had written on a single scroll about all the disaster that would come upon Babylon—all these words that had been written concerning Babylon.

61 And Jeremiah said to Seraiah, "When you get to Babylon, see that you read all these words aloud, 62 and say, 'O Yahweh, You have promised to cut off this place so that no one will remain—neither man nor beast. Indeed, it will be desolate forever.'

63 When you finish reading this scroll, tie a stone to it and cast it into the Euphrates. 64 Then you are to say, 'In the same way Babylon will sink and never rise again, because of the disaster I will bring upon her. And her people will grow weary.'"

Here end the words of Jeremiah.

52

CHAPTER 52 IN 30 SECONDS

The fall of Jerusalem told one more time: the walls broken, the temple burned, the bronze pillars hauled away. But the last scene is a small light: King Jehoiachin, a captive for 37 years, is set free to eat at the king's table.

THE FALL OF JERUSALEM RECOUNTED // PSALM 74:1–23; PSALM 79:1–13; 2 KINGS 24:18–20; 2 CHRONICLES 36:11–14

1 Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years. His mother's name was Hamutal daughter of Jeremiah; she was from Libnah.

2 And Zedekiah did evil in the sight of Yahweh, just as Jehoiakim had done. 3 For because of the anger of Yahweh, all this happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until He finally banished them from His presence.

And Zedekiah also rebelled against the king of Babylon.

4 So in the ninth year of Zedekiah's reign, on the tenth day of the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon marched against Jerusalem with his entire army. They encamped outside the city and built a siege wall all around it. 5 And the city was kept under siege until King Zedekiah's eleventh year.

6 By the ninth day of the fourth month, the famine in the city was so severe that the people of the land had no food. 7 Then the city was breached; and though the Chaldeans had surrounded the city, all the men of war fled the city by night by way of the gate between the two walls near the king's garden.

They headed toward the Arabah, 8 but the army of the Chaldeans pursued the king and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho, and his whole army deserted him.

9 The Chaldeans seized the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he pronounced judgment on Zedekiah.

10 There at Riblah the king of Babylon slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and he also killed all the officials of Judah. 11 Then he put out Zedekiah's eyes, bound him with bronze shackles, and took him to Babylon, where he kept him in custody until his dying day.

THE TEMPLE DESTROYED // 2 KINGS 25:8–17

12 On the tenth day of the fifth month, in the nineteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign over Babylon, Nebuzaradan captain of the guard, a servant of the king of Babylon, entered Jerusalem. 13 He burned down the house of Yahweh, the royal palace, and all the houses of Jerusalem—every significant building. 14 And the whole army of the Chaldeans un-

- **JER 51:59 [NOTE]** SERAIAH. Baruch's brother, the quartermaster who went to Babylon with King Zedekiah about 594 BC.
- **JER 51:63 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 18:21 p.2108
- **JER 52:4 [FULFILLS]** God told Ezekiel in Babylon the exact day the siege of Jerusalem began ← EZK 24:1-2 p.1281
- **JER 52:6 [FULFILLS]** A third would die of plague and famine, a third by sword, a third scattered ← EZK 5:12 p.1255
- **JER 52:9 [FULFILLS]** Zedekiah would see the king of Babylon eye to eye and go to Babylon ← JER 34:3 p.1197
- **JER 52:11 [FULFILLS]** Zedekiah would not die by sword but in peace; would be buried with honors of his fathers and 2 more ← JER 34:4-5; EZK 12:13; EZK 17:16 p.1197

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

der the captain of the guard broke down all the walls around Jerusalem.

15 Then Nebuzaradan captain of the guard carried into exile some of the poorest people and those who remained in the city, along with the deserters who had defected to the king of Babylon and the rest of the craftsmen. 16 But Nebuzaradan captain of the guard left behind some of the poorest of the land to tend the vineyards and fields.

17 Moreover, the Chaldeans broke up the bronze pillars and stands and the bronze Sea in the house of Yahweh, and they carried all the bronze to Babylon. 18 They also took away the pots, shovels, wick trimmers, sprinkling bowls, dishes, and all the articles of bronze used in the temple service. 19 The captain of the guard also took away the basins, censers, sprinkling bowls, pots, lampstands, pans, and drink offering bowls—anything made of pure gold or fine silver.

20 As for the two pillars, the Sea, the twelve bronze bulls under it, and the movable stands that King Solomon had made for the house of Yahweh, the weight of the bronze from all these articles was beyond measure. 21 Each pillar was 27 feet tall and 18 feet around; each was hollow, three inches thick. 22 The bronze capital atop one pillar was 7½ feet high, with a network of bronze pomegranates all around. The second pillar, with its pomegranates, was similar. 23 Each capital had ninety-six pomegranates on the sides, and a total of a hundred pomegranates were above the surrounding network.

CAPTIVES CARRIED TO BABYLON // 2 KINGS 25:18–21

24 The captain of the guard also took away Seraiah the chief priest, Zephaniah the priest of second rank, and the three doorkeepers. 25 Of those still in the city, he took a court official who had been appointed over the men of war, as well as seven trusted royal advisers. He also took the scribe of the captain of the army, who had enlisted the people of the land, and sixty men who were found in the city.

26 Nebuzaradan captain of the guard took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah. 27 There at Riblah in the land of Hamath, the king of Babylon struck them down and put them to death. So Judah was taken into exile, away from its own land.

28 These are the people Nebuchadnezzar carried away:

in the seventh year, 3,023 Jews;
29 in Nebuchadnezzar's eighteenth year,
832 people from Jerusalem;
30 in Nebuchadnezzar's twenty-third year,
Nebuzaradan captain of the guard carried away 745 Jews.

So in all, 4,600 people were taken away.

JEHOIACHIN RELEASED FROM PRISON // 2 KINGS 25:27–30

31 On the twenty-fifth day of the twelfth month of the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the first year of the reign of Evil-merodach king of Babylon, he pardoned Jehoiachin king of Judah and released him from prison. 32 And he spoke kindly to Jehoiachin and set his throne above the thrones of the other kings who were with him in Babylon.

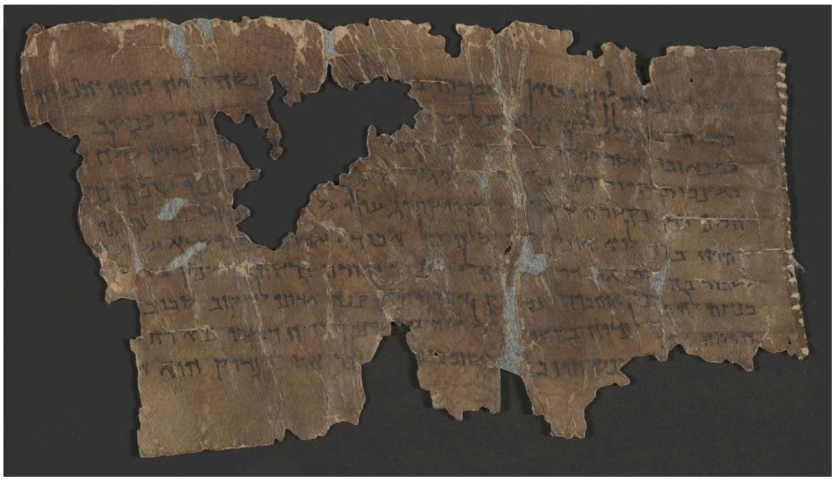
33 So Jehoiachin changed out of his prison clothes, and he dined regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life. 34 And the king of Babylon provided Jehoiachin a daily portion for the rest of his life, until the day of his death.

- **JER 52:13 [FULFILLS]** God would do to the temple what He did to Shiloh ← JER 7:14 p.1158
- **JER 52:13 [FULFILLS]** God would shatter Jerusalem like a clay jar that cannot be repaired ← JER 19:10-11 p.1175
- **JER 52:21 [TEXT]** 27 FEET TALL. In the Hebrew, eighteen and twelve of the old arm length measure. This Bible gives feet. 1 Kings 7:15 has the same pillars.
- **JER 52:31 [FULFILLS]** Coniah and his mother would be hurled into a foreign land and die there ← JER 22:24-26 p.1179
- **JER 52:31 [FULFILLS]** Nations would serve Nebuchadnezzar, his son, and his grandson until his own land's time came ← JER 27:6-7 · MEDIUM p.1185
- **JER 52:31 [NOTE]** JEHOIACHIN SET FREE. Clay tablets from Babylon list oil rations for Jehoiachin, king of Judah, and his five sons. See The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets in 2 Kings, p.662.

LAMENTATIONS

Hope in the Ashes

AUTHOR	The book does not name its writer. Tradition says Jeremiah, the weeping prophet. See Did Jeremiah Write It?
DATE	Soon after Babylon burned Jerusalem in 586 BC, about 586 to 550 BC.
WRITTEN TO	People whose world has fallen apart, and anyone who has lost something they thought could never be lost.
KEY VERSE	Lamentations 3:22 to 23. Because of the loving devotion of Yahweh we are not consumed, for His mercies never fail. They are new every morning; great is Your faithfulness!



THE OLDEST COPIES OF LAMENTATIONS
The biggest piece of 4QLam, from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 30 to 1 BC. It holds Lamentations 1:1 to 18 and a few words of 2:5. Three more Lamentations scrolls were found near Qumran: 3QLam and 5QLam a and b. See The Lamentations Scrolls.

Photo Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Jerusalem has just fallen. After a long siege, the Babylonian army broke through the wall, burned the temple and the houses, and took the people away to Babylon, 2 Kings 25. Lamentations is five poems of grief written in the ashes. Four of them are alphabet poems. They do not explain the pain away. They bring it to God.

What Went Wrong

SIN. Jerusalem has sinned greatly, 1:8. The prophets had warned for years.
FALSE PROPHETS. Their visions were empty and misleading, 2:14.
BAD LEADERS. The sins of her prophets and the guilt of her priests, 4:13.

TRUSTING THE WRONG FRIENDS. Her lovers betrayed her, 1:2 and 1:19; the help they watched for never came, 4:17.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Lamentations is five sad songs about the fall of Jerusalem. In chapter 1 the city cries like a widow. In chapter 2 the poet sees that God Himself let the walls fall because of the people's sin. In chapter 3 one man tells his own pain, and right in the middle of the book he remembers that God's mercies are new every morning. Chapter 4 looks back at the terrible siege. Chapter 5 is a prayer: bring us back to You. It is not the book to read at a birthday party, but it is the book to read when your heart is broken.

Lamentations at a Glance

CH 1	**THE CITY WEEPS** Jerusalem alone like a widow, with no one to comfort her.
CH 2	**THE WALLS FALL** God lets His own city fall; pour out your heart to the Lord.
CH 3	**THE MAN AND THE MORNING** His worst days, then: His mercies are new every morning.
CH 4	**THE GOLD GROWS DIM** The siege, the leaders, and a promise of an end.
CH 5	**A PRAYER** Remember us. Restore us. Renew our days.

Where Jesus Shows Up

LAMENTATIONS 1:12 Is any sorrow like mine? The words are about Jerusalem, but Christians have long heard Jesus on the cross, where people passed by and mocked, Matthew 27:39.

LAMENTATIONS 3:22 TO 23 God's loyal love and new mercies. Jesus came full of grace and truth, John 1:14, and His mercy is new for anyone who comes to Him.

LAMENTATIONS 3:30 Let him offer his cheek to the one who strikes him. Jesus taught it, Matthew 5:39, and when He was struck He did not strike back, Matthew 26:67 and 1 Peter 2:23.

LAMENTATIONS 5:21 Restore us to Yourself. Jesus came to bring people back to God, 2 Corinthians 5:18 to 19.

DAUGHTER OF ZION
A loving name for Jerusalem and its people, used over and over in the book, like calling a city she.

What to Watch for in Lamentations

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	1:12
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (4)	1:1-4, 4:10, 4:21-22
THE HEART (3)	2:19, 3:33, 3:41
ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	2:5, 2:7, 4:11
NOTABLE (2)	3:21-26, 5:19-21
GOD SPEAKING (1 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

ALPHABET POEMS
Chapters 1, 2 and 4 have 22 verses, one for each Hebrew letter. Chapter 3 has 66, three for each letter. Chapter 5 has 22 verses but no letters.

PE BEFORE AYIN
In chapters 2, 3 and 4 the letter Pe comes before Ayin, the other way around from the usual order. In the oldest scroll, 4QLam, chapter 1 does it too. Some very old Hebrew alphabets written on pottery have the same order.

READ EVERY YEAR
Jews read Lamentations every year on Tisha B'Av, the day that remembers the fall of both temples. See Tisha B'Av.

ONE RED LINE
God's own words show up only once, when the poet remembers Him saying Do not be afraid, 3:57.

How Does It End?

With a prayer, not a happy ending. Restore us to Yourself, O Yahweh, 5:21. But the hope is real: about fifty years later Cyrus let the exiles go home, Ezra 1, and the temple was built again.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Jerusalem sits alone like a widow and cries all night. Her friends are gone and nobody comes to the feasts anymore. The hardest part: she knows she brought it on herself.

HOW LONELY LIES THE CITY! // 2 KINGS 24:10–17

א ALEPH

1 How lonely lies the city,
once so full of people!
She who was great among the nations
has become a widow.
The princess of the provinces
has become a slave.

ב BETH

2 She weeps aloud in the night,
with tears upon her cheeks.
Among all her lovers
there is no one to comfort her.
All her friends have betrayed her;
they have become her enemies.

ג GIMEL

3 Judah has gone into exile
under affliction and harsh slavery;
she dwells among the nations
but finds no place to rest.
All her pursuers have overtaken her
in the midst of her distress.

ד DALETH

4 The roads to Zion mourn,
because no one comes to her appointed feasts.
All her gates are deserted;
her priests groan,
her maidens grieve,
and she herself is bitter with anguish.

ה HE

5 Her foes have become her masters;
her enemies are at ease.
For Yahweh has brought her grief
because of her many transgressions.
Her children have gone away
as captives before the enemy.

ו WAW

6 All the splendor has departed
from the Daughter of Zion.
Her princes are like deer
that find no pasture;
they lack the strength to flee
in the face of the hunter.

ז ZAYIN

7 In the days of her affliction and wandering
Jerusalem remembers all the treasures
that were hers in days of old.
When her people fell into enemy hands
she received no help.
Her enemies looked upon her,
laughing at her downfall.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DID JEREMIAH WRITE IT?

The Weeping Prophet and the Weeping Book

LAMENTATIONS 1:1 · 3:1 · 3:53 · 4:20

WHY IT IS A QUESTION

The book never names its writer. In Christian Bibles it comes right after Jeremiah. In the Hebrew Bible it sits with the Writings, as one of the five short scrolls read on special days of the year.

THE OLD TRADITION

The Greek Bible starts the book with a line: Jeremiah sat weeping and sang this lament over Jerusalem. The Talmud says Jeremiah wrote his book, Kings and Lamentations, Bava Batra 15a. 2 Chronicles 35:25 says Jeremiah wrote laments for King Josiah.

THE CLUES FOR JEREMIAH

He saw Jerusalem fall. He wished his eyes were a fountain of tears, Jeremiah

LAM 1:1 [FULFILLS] Jerusalem's men would fall by the sword and Zion would sit in ruin ← IS 3:25-26 · MEDIUM p.1066

LAM 1:1 [NOTE] HOW! The Hebrew name of the book is Eikhah, How!, its first word. It is the cry of someone who cannot believe what happened. 2:1 and 4:1 start the same way.

LAM 1:1 [NOTE] AN ALPHABET POEM. Chapters 1 to 4 are written in the Hebrew alphabet, one letter after another, like an ABC poem. The small letters above the verses show it. Grief from A to Z.

LAM 1:2 [NOTE] NO ONE TO COMFORT HER. These words come five times in chapter 1, 1:2, 9, 16, 17 and 21. Her lovers are the nations Judah trusted instead of God, like Egypt.

LAM 1:3 [NOTE] INTO EXILE. Babylon took the people away in waves, in 605, 597 and 586 BC, Daniel 1 and 2 Kings 24 and 25. The poet writes after the last one, when Jerusalem burned.

LAM 1:5 [NOTE] WHY IT HAPPENED. The book is honest: Yahweh brought this grief because of her many sins. The prophets had warned for years, Jeremiah 25:8 to 11.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

9:1. He was thrown into a pit, Jeremiah 38:6, like the man in 3:53 to 55. Both books talk about false prophets and about eyes flowing with tears, Jeremiah 14:17 and Lamentations 1:16.

Every View

2 CHRONICLES 35:25 · JEREMIAH 9:1 · JEREMIAH 38:6

VIEW 1: JEREMIAH WROTE IT

The view of the Greek Bible, the Talmud, the early church and many readers today. The man of chapter 3 sounds like Jeremiah's own life.

VIEW 2: SOMEONE NEAR JEREMIAH

Some think his helper Baruch or another singer from the same days wrote it. The book of Baruch, 4:5 to 5:9, also mourns Jerusalem as a mother who lost her children.

VIEW 3: MORE THAN ONE POET

Many scholars today think the five poems were written by different people soon after 586 BC. They point to the different styles of each chapter. Some note that 4:17 and 4:20 sound like someone who trusted Egypt and the king, which Jeremiah did not.

THE LAMENTS FOR JOSIAH

2 Chronicles 35:25 says those songs were written in the Laments. Most think that was a different collection, since this book is about the fall of the city, not Josiah's death.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The poems were written by someone who lived through the fall of Jerusalem and grieved it before God. Jews have read them as Scripture for more than 2,000 years, and Christians have read them from the very start.

ח HETH

8 Jerusalem has sinned greatly;
therefore she has become an object of scorn.
All who honored her now despise her,
for they have seen her nakedness;
she herself groans and turns away.

■ **LAM 1:8 [NOTE]** SHAMED. Jerusalem is pictured as a woman disgraced in front of everyone. It is a picture of shame, not a story about one person.

ט TETH

9 Her uncleanness stains her skirts;
she did not consider her end.
Her downfall was astounding;
there was no one to comfort her.
Look, O Yahweh, on my affliction,
for the enemy has triumphed!

י YODH

10 The adversary has seized
all her treasures.
For she has seen the nations
enter her sanctuary—
those You had forbidden
to enter Your assembly.

כ KAPH

11 All her people groan
as they search for bread.
They have traded their treasures for food
to keep themselves alive.
Look, O Yahweh, and consider,
for I have become despised.

ל LAMEDH

12 Is this nothing to you, all you who pass by?
Look around and see!
Is there any sorrow like mine,
which was inflicted on me,
which Yahweh made me suffer
on the day of His fierce anger?

מ MEM

13 He sent fire from on high,
and it overpowered my bones.
He spread a net for my feet
and turned me back.
He made me desolate,
faint all the day long.

נ NUN

14 My transgressions are bound into a yoke,
knit together by His hand;

■ **LAM 1:9 [NOTE]** LOOK, O YAHWEH. From 1:9 on, the city herself breaks in and speaks, like a woman telling God and the world about her pain.

■ **LAM 1:10 [NOTE]** HER SANCTUARY. The temple. The Babylonians walked into the place where only priests could go and carried off its bronze, silver and gold, 2 Kings 25:13 to 17.

LAM 1:12 [FORESHADOW] Is it nothing to you, all you who pass by? Is any sorrow like my sorrow → MT 27:39; MK 15:29 · MEDIUM p.1598

they are draped over my neck,
and the Lord has broken my strength.
He has delivered me into the hands
of those I cannot withstand.

ס SAMEKH

15 The Lord has rejected
all the mighty men in my midst;
He has summoned an army against me
to crush my young warriors.
Like grapes in a winepress,
the Lord has trampled the Virgin Daughter of Judah.

ע AYIN

16 For these things I weep;
my eyes flow with tears.
For there is no one nearby to comfort me,
no one to revive my soul.
My children are destitute
because the enemy has prevailed.

פ PE

17 Zion stretches out her hands,
but there is no one to comfort her.
Yahweh has decreed against Jacob
that his neighbors become his foes.
Jerusalem has become
an unclean thing among them.

צ TZADE

18 Yahweh is righteous,
yet I rebelled against His command.
Listen, all you people;
look upon my suffering.
My young men and maidens
have gone into captivity.

ק KOPH

19 I called out to my lovers,
but they have betrayed me.
My priests and elders
perished in the city
while they searched for food
to keep themselves alive.

ר RESH

20 See, O Yahweh, how distressed I am!
I am churning within;
my heart is pounding within me,
for I have been most rebellious.
Outside, the sword bereaves;
inside, there is death.

ש SIN

21 People have heard my groaning,
but there is no one to comfort me.
All my enemies have heard of my trouble;
they are glad that You have caused it.
May You bring the day You have announced,
so that they may become like me.

ת TAW

22 Let all their wickedness come before You,
and deal with them
as You have dealt with me
because of all my transgressions.
For my groans are many,
and my heart is faint.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
The poet watches the walls come down and cries until his eyes give out. The happy messages of the false prophets turned out to be empty. His advice: pour out your heart to the Lord.

GOD'S ANGER OVER JERUSALEM

א ALEPH

1 How the Lord has covered the Daughter of Zion
with the cloud of His anger!
He has cast the glory of Israel
from heaven to earth.
He has abandoned His footstool
in the day of His anger.

ב BETH

2 Without pity the Lord has swallowed up
all the dwellings of Jacob.
In His wrath He has demolished
the fortified cities of the Daughter of Judah.
He brought to the ground and defiled

LAM 1:15 [NOTE] THE WINEPRESS. Grapes were crushed under bare feet to make wine. It is a picture of judgment, used again in Isaiah 63:3 and Revelation 14:19 to 20.
LAM 1:18 [NOTE] YAHWEH IS RIGHTEOUS. Even in her worst pain, Jerusalem says God did nothing wrong. I rebelled. That honesty is the first step back.
LAM 1:20 [NOTE] MY HEART IS POUNDING. The Hebrew says my heart is turned over inside me. I am churning within means, word for word, my insides are boiling. The insides were the place of the deepest feelings.
LAM 2:1 [NOTE] HIS FOOTSTOOL. The ark of the covenant, or the temple where it stood, 1 Chronicles 28:2 and Psalm 132:7. God let His own house fall.

ARCHAEOLOGY

her kingdom and its princes.

ג GIMEL

3 In fierce anger He has cut off
every horn of Israel
and withdrawn His right hand
at the approach of the enemy.
He has burned in Jacob like a flaming fire
that consumes everything around it.

ד DALETH

4 He has bent His bow like an enemy;
His right hand is positioned.
Like a foe He has killed
all who were pleasing to the eye;
He has poured out His wrath like fire
on the tent of the Daughter of Zion.

ה HE

5 The Lord is like an enemy;
He has swallowed up Israel.
He has swallowed up all her palaces
and destroyed her strongholds.
He has multiplied mourning and lamentation
for the Daughter of Judah.

ו WAW

6 He has laid waste His tabernacle like a garden booth;
He has destroyed His place of meeting.
Yahweh has made Zion forget
her appointed feasts and Sabbaths.
In His fierce anger
He has despised both king and priest.

ז ZAYIN

7 The Lord has rejected His altar;
He has abandoned His sanctuary;
He has delivered the walls of her palaces
into the hand of the enemy.
They have raised a shout in the house of Yahweh
as on the day of an appointed feast.

ח HETH

8 Yahweh determined to destroy
the wall of the Daughter of Zion.
He stretched out a measuring line
and did not withdraw His hand from destroying.
He made the ramparts and walls lament;
together they waste away.

ט TETH

9 Her gates have sunk into the ground;
He has destroyed and shattered their bars.
Her king and her princes are exiled among the nations,
the law is no more,
and even her prophets
find no vision from Yahweh.

י YODH

10 The elders of the Daughter of Zion
sit on the ground in silence.
They have thrown dust on their heads
and put on sackcloth.
The young women of Jerusalem
have bowed their heads to the ground.

כ KAPH

11 My eyes fail from weeping;
I am churning within.
My heart is poured out in grief
over the destruction of the daughter of my people,
because children and infants faint
in the streets of the city.

ל LAMEDH

12 They cry out to their mothers:
"Where is the grain and wine?"
as they faint like the wounded
in the streets of the city,
as their lives fade away
in the arms of their mothers.

מ MEM

13 What can I say for you?
To what can I compare you,

LAM 2:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Four Dead Sea Scrolls of Lamentations, copied about 30 BC to AD 70; 4QLam has 1:1 to 18 and this verse, see The Lamentations Scrolls Field Notes page, p.1237FIELD NOTES p.1237

LAM 2:6 [NOTE] LIKE A GARDEN BOOTH. A little hut of branches in a field. God took His temple down as easily as a farmer takes down a shed.

LAM 2:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Sumerian poems from about 2000 BC that weep over ruined cities like Ur, where the gods leave their own temples, see The Lament for Ur Field Notes box, p.1236FIELD NOTES p.1236

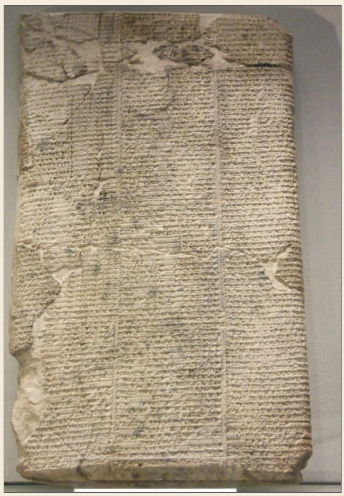
LAM 2:9 [NOTE] NO VISION. With the king gone and the temple burned, even the prophets heard nothing from God. Silence can be the hardest part of grief.

LAM 2:11 [TEXT] MY HEART. The Hebrew word here is kaved, liver. In Hebrew, the liver was a place of deep feeling. The KJV says my liver is poured upon the earth. Most Bibles say heart.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE LAMENT FOR UR

LAMENTATIONS 1:1 · 1:16 · 2:7 · 2:9



A clay tablet with a Sumerian lament over the ruin of Ur, about 1800 BC. Louvre, Paris, AO 6446. Photo Dror Feitelson, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A long Sumerian poem that weeps over the city of Ur, which many link with Abraham's home, Genesis 11:31, after enemies from Elam destroyed it about 2000 BC. It is one of five city laments, with Sumer and Ur, Nippur, Eridu and Uruk.

HOW OLD IT IS

Written soon after Ur fell, about 2000 BC. The clay copies we have were mostly made about 1900 to 1700 BC, more than a thousand years before Lamentations.

WHAT IT SAYS

The goddess Ningal weeps over her city like a mother. The gods leave their temples, the gates are broken, and people lie in the streets. It sounds a lot like Jerusalem weeping in chapter 1.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

In the Sumerian poems the gods' storm is a decree that cannot be explained. Lamentations gives a reason, sin, 1:5 and 1:18, says God is righteous, and holds on to His loyal love, 3:22. The answer is to turn back to Him, 3:40.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Weeping over a fallen city was an old way to grieve. God let His people use the songs of their world to bring their pain to Him.

O Daughter of Jerusalem?
To what can I liken you,
that I may console you,
O Virgin Daughter of Zion?
For your wound is as deep as the sea.
Who can ever heal you?

נ NUN

14 The visions of your prophets
were empty and deceptive;
they did not expose your guilt
to ward off your captivity.
The burdens they envisioned for you
were empty and misleading.

ס SAMEKH

15 All who pass by
clap their hands at you in scorn.
They hiss and shake their heads
at the Daughter of Jerusalem:
"Is this the city that was called
the perfection of beauty,
the joy of all the earth?"

פ PE

16 All your enemies
open their mouths against you.
They hiss and gnash their teeth,
saying, "We have swallowed her up.
This is the day for which we have waited.
We have lived to see it!"

ע AYIN

17 Yahweh has done what He planned;
He has accomplished His decree,
which He ordained in days of old;
He has overthrown you without pity.
He has let the enemy gloat over you
and exalted the horn of your foes.

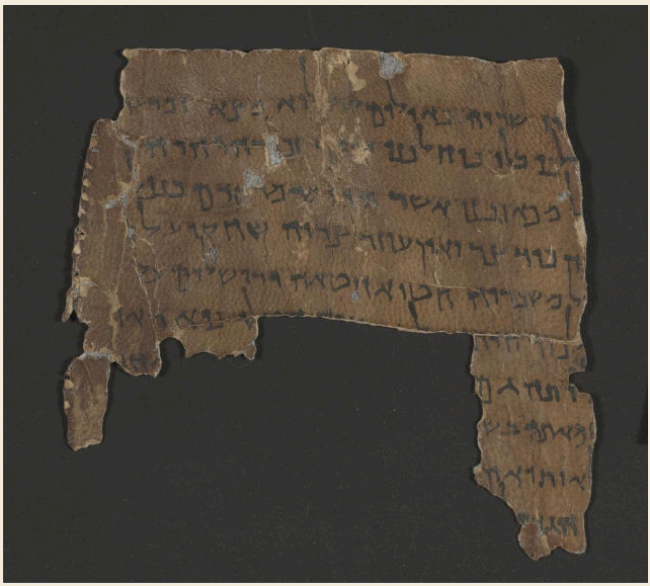
LAM 2:14 [NOTE] EMPTY VISIONS. The false prophets said peace, peace, when there was no peace, Jeremiah 6:14 and 23:16 to 17. They told people what they wanted to hear.

LAM 2:15 [NOTE] SHAKE THEIR HEADS. Passersby mocked the city, the way they later shook their heads at Jesus on the cross, Matthew 27:39.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE LAMENTATIONS SCROLLS

LAMENTATIONS 1:1 TO 18 · 2:5 · 3:53 TO 62 · 4:5 TO 5:17



A second piece of 4QLam, with more of Lamentations 1, copied about 30 to 1 BC. Photo Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT THEY ARE

Four Dead Sea Scrolls with parts of Lamentations: 3QLam from Cave 3, 4QLam from Cave 4, and 5QLam a and b from Cave 5, in caves near Qumran by the Dead Sea.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

4QLam was copied about 30 to 1 BC. The others were copied between about 30 BC and AD 70. That is about 1,000 years older than the oldest complete Hebrew Bible.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

All three caves were found in 1952. The small scrolls from Caves 3 and 5 were published in 1962. Frank Moore Cross published 4QLam in 2000.

WHAT IS IN THEM

4QLam: 1:1 to 18 and a little of 2:5.
3QLam: parts of 1:10 to 12 and 3:53 to 62.
5QLam a: parts of chapters 4 and 5.
5QLam b: a few words of 4:17 to 20.

PE BEFORE AYIN

In 4QLam, the Pe verse of chapter 1 comes before the Ayin verse, 1:17 then 1:16. That is the same order as chapters 2, 3 and 4 in every Hebrew Bible. Some old Hebrew alphabets written on pottery put Pe first too.

YAHWEH, NOT LORD

In a few places 4QLam writes Yahweh where the later Hebrew text has Adonai, Lord. The copyist may have changed it, or the later text may have. Either way, it shows how carefully scholars compare every letter.

SMALL DIFFERENCES

4QLam has spelling differences and a few words that are not the same. At 1:11 the verse does not start with Kaph, so the alphabet slips there. Most of the changes are small.

WHAT THEY SHOW

The poems were copied as Scripture before Jesus' time, and the words are mostly the same as the Hebrew Bible today. Lamentations was being read and grieved over at Qumran more than five hundred years after Jerusalem burned.

THE HEART

צ TZADE

18 The hearts of the people
cry out to the Lord.
O wall of the Daughter of Zion,
let your tears run down like a river
day and night.
Give yourself no relief,
and your eyes no rest.

ק KOPH

19 Arise, cry out in the night
from the first watch of the night.
Pour out your heart like water
in the presence of the Lord.
Lift up your hands to Him
for the lives of your children
who are fainting from hunger
on the corner of every street.

ר RESH

20 Look, O Yahweh, and consider:
Whom have You ever treated like this?
Should women eat their offspring,
the infants they have nurtured?
Should priests and prophets be killed
in the sanctuary of the Lord?

ש SIN

21 Both young and old lie together
in the dust of the streets.
My young men and maidens
have fallen by the sword.
You have slain them in the day of Your anger;
You have slaughtered them without compassion.

ת TAW

22 You summoned my terrors on every side,
as for the day of an appointed feast.
In the day of Yahweh's anger
no one escaped or survived;
my enemy has destroyed
those I nurtured and reared.

LAM 2:19 [HEART] Pour out your heart like water before the Lord. God wants your honest tears, not a brave face.

LAM 2:19 [NOTE] POUR OUT YOUR HEART. Not a brave face. God invites honest tears, prayed out loud, for the children and for the city, Psalm 62:8.

LAM 2:20 [NOTE] THE WORST OF THE SIEGE. The poet asks God to look at how bad the hunger became. Moses had warned that a siege could bring this, Deuteronomy 28:53. The Bible does not hide it, but it tells it with grief, not detail.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHERE WAS GOD?

When Life Falls Apart

LAMENTATIONS 2:17 · 3:1 TO 33 · 5:19 TO 22

THE QUESTION

When terrible things happen, people ask: where was God? Lamentations asks it too, more honestly than almost any book in the Bible. Why have You forgotten us forever? 5:20.

GOD WAS NOT ABSENT

The book says God was there the whole time. He warned for years, and He kept His word, 2:17. The fall of Jerusalem did not happen because He was weak or asleep.

SIN IS REAL

The city admits: I rebelled, 1:18. Some pain comes from our own choices or the choices of people around us, and Lamentations does not hide that.

What Lamentations Teaches

PSALM 13:1 TO 2 · PSALM 62:8 · ROMANS 8:28 · JOHN 11:35

TWO WAYS TO HEAR IT

Readers differ. Some stress that the pain was God's just discipline. Others hear mostly honest protest and mystery. Lamentations itself holds both.

BUT NOT ALL PAIN

The Bible also says not every hurt is a punishment. Job suffered though he was blameless, Job 1:1, and Jesus said the blind man's blindness was not because of sin, John 9:3. So be careful when you look at someone else's pain.

HONEST GRIEF IS FAITH

The poet cries, complains and asks hard questions, and it is all prayer. Pour out your heart like water before the Lord, 2:19. Bringing your pain to God is trusting Him.

HOPE IN THE MIDDLE

Right in the center of the book: His mercies are new every morning, 3:22 to 23. Hope does not come after the grief is over. It comes in the middle of it.

GOD DOES NOT ENJOY IT

He does not afflict from His heart, 3:33.

LAM 2:22 [NOTE] THE DAY OF YAHWEH'S ANGER. Chapter 2 ends with no comfort at all. Lamentations lets grief be grief before it talks about hope.

NOTABLE

Discipline is not the same as cruelty. Jesus Himself wept at a friend's grave, John 11:35.

WHAT TO DO

Tell God the truth, remember His faithfulness, wait for Him quietly, 3:26, and ask Him to bring you back, 5:21.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

One man tells about his worst days, when it felt like God had turned against him. Then, right in the middle of the book, the lights come on: His mercies are new every morning. Great is Your faithfulness!

THE PROPHET'S AFFLICTIONS

א ALEPH

1 I am the man who has seen affliction
under the rod of God's wrath.
2 He has driven me away and made me walk
in darkness instead of light.
3 Indeed, He keeps turning His hand
against me all day long.

ב BETH

4 He has worn away my flesh and skin;
He has shattered my bones.
5 He has besieged me and surrounded me
with bitterness and hardship.
6 He has made me dwell in darkness
like those dead for ages.

ג GIMEL

7 He has walled me in so I cannot escape;
He has weighed me down with chains.
8 Even when I cry out and plead for help,
He shuts out my prayer.
9 He has barred my ways with cut stones;
He has made my paths crooked.

ד DALETH

10 He is a bear lying in wait,
a lion hiding in ambush.
11 He forced me off my path and tore me to pieces;
He left me without help.
12 He bent His bow
and set me as the target for His arrow.

ה HE

13 He pierced my kidneys
with His arrows.
14 I am a laughingstock to all my people;
they mock me in song all day long.
15 He has filled me with bitterness;
He has intoxicated me with wormwood.

ו WAW

16 He has ground my teeth with gravel
and trampled me in the dust.
17 My soul has been deprived of peace;
I have forgotten what prosperity is.
18 So I say, "My strength has perished,
along with my hope from Yahweh."

THE PROPHET'S HOPE

ז ZAYIN

19 Remember my affliction and wandering,
the wormwood and the gall.
20 Surely my soul remembers
and is humbled within me.
21 Yet I bring this back to my heart,
and therefore I have hope:

ח HETH

22 Because of the loving devotion of Yahweh we are not consumed,
for His mercies never fail.
23 They are new every morning;
great is Your faithfulness!
24 "Yahweh is my portion," says my soul,
"therefore I will hope in Him."

ט TETH

25 Yahweh is good to those who wait for Him,
to the soul who seeks Him.

■ **LAM 3:1 [NOTE]** I AM THE MAN. Now one man speaks, like someone who stands for the whole people. Many think it is Jeremiah, who was beaten, jailed and thrown into a pit, Jeremiah 20:2, 37:15 and 38:6. See Did Jeremiah Write It?

■ **LAM 3:15 [NOTE]** WORMWOOD. A very bitter plant. Wormwood and gall, 3:19, mean the bitterest taste of life. At the cross they offered Jesus wine mixed with gall, Matthew 27:34.

LAM 3:21 [NOTABLE] Hope in the middle of the ruins. God's mercy does not run out, and every morning brings a fresh supply. The source of the hymn Great Is Thy Faithfulness.

■ **LAM 3:21 [TEXT]** MY HEART. The Hebrew says I bring this back to my heart. Many Bibles say I call this to mind. The meaning is the same: he chooses what to think about.

■ **LAM 3:22 [NOTE]** THE TURN. Right in the middle of the book, hope shows up. Loving devotion is chesed, God's loyal love. See Great Is Thy Faithfulness.

■ **LAM 3:24 [NOTE]** MY PORTION. The priests got no land; Yahweh was their portion, Numbers 18:20. With everything lost, he still has God.

THE HEART NOTABLE

26 It is good to wait quietly
for the salvation of Yahweh.

THE BIG QUESTION

GREAT IS THY FAITHFULNESS

A Hymn From the Ruins

LAMENTATIONS 3:21 TO 26

THE BRIGHTEST VERSES

In the darkest book of the Bible, the brightest lines sit right in the middle: His mercies never fail. They are new every morning; great is Your faithfulness! 3:22 to 23.

THE WORDS

Loving devotion is chesed, God's loyal love that keeps His promises. Mercies is rachamim, a word close to the Hebrew for a mother's womb, the tender love a mother has for her baby. Faithfulness is emunah, being steady and true.

WE ARE NOT CONSUMED

The Hebrew of 3:22 can be read two ways: we are not consumed, like the KJV, or the loyal love of Yahweh never ends, like many newer Bibles. Both say the same thing: God's love is still here.

The Story of the Song

PSALM 36:5 · PSALM 89:1 · PSALM 30:5 · 2 TIMOTHY 2:13

THE HYMN

Thomas Chisholm wrote the words of Great Is Thy Faithfulness in 1923, and William Runyan wrote the music. Chisholm was a plain man who was often sick and never rich. He said the song came from seeing God's faithfulness day after day, not from one big event.

HOW IT SPREAD

Moody Bible Institute loved the song, and later George Beverly Shea sang it at Billy Graham's meetings around the world. Today it is one of the most loved hymns in churches everywhere.

MORNING BY MORNING

The hymn's line morning by morning new mercies I see comes straight from 3:23. Every new day is a fresh supply, like the manna that came again each morning.

FOR YOU

You do not need a perfect day to sing it. The man who first wrote 3:23 was sitting in the ashes of his city.

27 It is good for a man to bear the yoke
while he is still young.

י YODH

28 Let him sit alone in silence,
for Yahweh has laid it upon him.
29 Let him bury his face in the dust—
perhaps there is still hope.
30 Let him offer his cheek to the one who would strike him;
let him be filled with reproach.

כ KAPH

31 For the Lord will not
cast us off forever.
32 Even if He causes grief, He will show compassion
according to His abundant loving devotion.
33 For He does not afflict from His heart
or grieve the sons of men.

ל LAMEDH

34 To crush underfoot
all the prisoners of the land,
35 to deny a man justice
before the Most High,
36 to subvert a man in his lawsuit—
of these the Lord does not approve.

GOD'S JUSTICE

מ MEM

37 Who has spoken and it came to pass,
unless the Lord has ordained it?
38 Do not both adversity and good
come from the mouth of the Most High?
39 Why should any mortal man complain,

- **LAM 3:26 [NOTE]** WAIT QUIETLY. Hope is not pretending it does not hurt. It is waiting for God to act, even when you cannot see Him yet.
- **LAM 3:30 [NOTE]** OFFER HIS CHEEK. Jesus taught the same, Matthew 5:39, and lived it when He was struck and did not strike back, Matthew 26:67 and 1 Peter 2:23.
- **LAM 3:31 [NOTE]** NOT FOREVER. Hard seasons have an end. God may let grief come, but His compassion is bigger, 3:32.
- **LAM 3:33 [HEART]** God does not hurt people from His heart. Even when He disciplines, it is not what He wants most.
- **LAM 3:33 [TEXT]** FROM HIS HEART. The Hebrew says millibbo, from His heart. The KJV says willingly. God disciplines, but hurting people is not what He wants.
- **LAM 3:38 [NOTE]** ADVERSITY AND GOOD. Nothing happens outside God's rule, Job 2:10 and Isaiah 45:7. That is hard to hear, but it also means no pain is out of His reach.

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

in view of his sins?

נ NUN

40 Let us examine and test our ways,
and turn back to Yahweh.
41 Let us lift up our hearts and hands
to God in heaven:
42 "We have sinned and rebelled;
You have not forgiven."

ס SAMEKH

43 You have covered Yourself in anger and pursued us;
You have killed without pity.
44 You have covered Yourself with a cloud
that no prayer can pass through.
45 You have made us scum and refuse
among the nations.

פ PE

46 All our enemies
open their mouths against us.
47 Panic and pitfall have come upon us—
devastation and destruction.
48 Streams of tears flow from my eyes
over the destruction of the daughter of my people.

ע AYIN

49 My eyes overflow unceasingly,
without relief,
50 until Yahweh
looks down from heaven and sees.
51 My eyes bring grief to my soul
because of all the daughters of my city.

צ TZADE

52 Without cause my enemies
hunted me like a bird.
53 They dropped me alive into a pit
and cast stones upon me.
54 The waters flowed over my head,
and I thought I was going to die.

ק KOPH

55 I called on Your name, O Yahweh,
out of the depths of the Pit.
56 You heard my plea:
"Do not ignore my cry for relief."
57 You drew near when I called on You;
You said, "Do not be afraid."

ר RESH

58 You defend my cause, O Lord;
You redeem my life.
59 You have seen, O Yahweh, the wrong done to me;
vindicate my cause!
60 You have seen all their malice,
all their plots against me.

ש SIN

61 O Yahweh, You have heard their insults,
all their plots against me—
62 the slander and murmuring of my assailants
against me all day long.
63 When they sit and when they rise,
see how they mock me in song.

ת TAW

64 You will pay them back what they deserve, O Yahweh,
according to the work of their hands.
65 Put a veil of anguish over their hearts;
may Your curse be upon them!
66 You will pursue them in anger and exterminate them
from under Your heavens, O Yahweh.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The gold has lost its shine and the city has run out of food. The priests and prophets led everyone the wrong way. Still, the chapter ends with a promise: the punishment will not last forever.

THE DISTRESS OF ZION

א ALEPH

1 How the gold has become tarnished,
the pure gold has become dull!
The gems of the temple lie scattered

■ **LAM 3:40 [NOTE]** TEST OUR WAYS. The way back to God starts with an honest look in the mirror, 2 Corinthians 13:5.
■ **LAM 3:41 [HEART]** Lift up your hearts and your hands to God. Real prayer comes from the inside out.
■ **LAM 3:53 [NOTE]** INTO A PIT. Jeremiah was let down into a muddy cistern, Jeremiah 38:6. Many read this as Jeremiah's own story. Others hear a picture of the whole people sinking.
■ **LAM 3:55 [NOTE]** OUT OF THE DEPTHS. The poet looks back on a time God answered him in the pit, 3:55 to 58, the same God he is praying to now.
■ **LAM 3:57 [NOTE]** DO NOT BE AFRAID. The poet quotes what God said to him, so those words are red. It is one of the most repeated things God says in the Bible, Isaiah 41:10.
■ **LAM 3:64 [NOTE]** PAY THEM BACK. The poet asks God to judge, instead of taking revenge himself, Romans 12:19.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY

on every street corner.

ב BETH

2 How the precious sons of Zion,
once worth their weight in pure gold,
are now esteemed as jars of clay,
the work of a potter's hands!

ג GIMEL

3 Even jackals offer their breasts
to nurse their young,
but the daughter of my people has become cruel,
like an ostrich in the wilderness.

ד DALETH

4 The nursing infant's tongue
clings in thirst to the roof of his mouth.
Little children beg for bread,
but no one gives them any.

ה HE

5 Those who once ate delicacies
are destitute in the streets;
those brought up in crimson
huddle in ash heaps.

ו WAW

6 The punishment of the daughter of my people
is greater than that of Sodom,
which was overthrown in an instant
without a hand turned to help her.

ז ZAYIN

7 Her dignitaries were brighter than snow,
whiter than milk;
their bodies were more ruddy than rubies,
their appearance like sapphires.

ח HETH

8 But now their appearance is blacker than soot;
they are not recognized in the streets.
Their skin has shriveled on their bones;
it has become as dry as a stick.

ט TETH

9 Those slain by the sword are better off
than those who die of hunger,
who waste away, pierced with pain
because the fields lack produce.

י YODH

10 The hands of compassionate women
have cooked their own children,
who became their food
in the destruction of the daughter of my people.

כ KAPH

11 Yahweh has exhausted His wrath;
He has poured out His fierce anger;
He has kindled a fire in Zion,
and it has consumed her foundations.

ל LAMEDH

12 The kings of the earth did not believe,
nor any people of the world,
that an enemy or a foe
could enter the gates of Jerusalem.

מ MEM

13 But this was for the sins of her prophets
and the guilt of her priests,
who shed the blood of the righteous
in her midst.

- **LAM 4:3 [NOTE]** LIKE AN OSTRICH. People thought the ostrich did not care for its eggs, Job 39:14 to 16. In the siege, hunger made people forget even their own children.
- **LAM 4:6 [NOTE]** WORSE THAN SODOM. Sodom fell in a moment, Genesis 19:24 to 25. Jerusalem suffered slowly, through a long siege.
- **LAM 4:10 [FULFILLS]** In siege, people would eat their own children ← LEV 26:29 p.217
- **LAM 4:10 [NOTE]** THE HUNGER OF THE SIEGE. Babylon surrounded the city for about a year and a half, 2 Kings 25:1 to 3, until there was no food at all. Moses had warned of this, Leviticus 26:29. The poet tells it as a broken heart, not as a story to linger on.
- **LAM 4:11 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Burned houses, ash and arrowheads in the City of David from Babylon's attack on Jerusalem, see The Fire of 586 BC Field Notes box, p.1243 → FIELD NOTES p.1243
- **LAM 4:12 [NOTE]** NO ONE BELIEVED IT. Jerusalem had stood for centuries. When Assyria came, God saved the city, 2 Kings 19:35 to 36. People thought it could never fall.
- **LAM 4:13 [NOTE]** THE PROPHETS AND PRIESTS. The leaders who should have warned the people led them wrong instead. Jeremiah said the same, Jeremiah 23:11.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE FIRE OF 586 BC

LAMENTATIONS 2:3 · 4:11 · 2 KINGS 25:8 TO 10 · JEREMIAH 52:13



Area G in the City of David, Jerusalem. The House of Ahiel, burned in 586 BC, is at the bottom with its stone pillars. The steel beams are modern. Photo Deror_avi, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A layer of ash, burned wood and fallen stones on the slope of the City of David, from the day Babylon set Jerusalem on fire, 2 Kings 25:9. He burned every great house, the Bible says.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Yigal Shiloh dug here from 1978 to 1985. On the slope he found houses buried under the ruins: the Burnt Room, the House of Ahiel and the House of the Bullae.

WHAT WAS FOUND

Charred beams, ash, broken jars, and arrowheads of iron and bronze. Some bronze arrowheads are a kind used by armies from the north and east, like Babylon's. In the House of the Bullae lay about fifty clay seals, baked hard by the fire, so they lasted. One names Gemaryahu son of Shaphan, Jeremiah 36:10.

MORE FIRE

Other digs found the same fire layer in other parts of the city, including a big building in the Givati Parking Lot, where scientists studied how the fire started and spread through the building.

SEE ALSO

The Seals of Jehucal and Gedaliah, Jeremiah, p.1204, and The Seal of Azariah, 1 Chronicles, p.675.

נ NUN

14 They wandered blind in the streets,
defiled by this blood,
so that no one dared
to touch their garments.

ס SAMEKH

15 "Go away! Unclean!"
men shouted at them.
"Away, away! Do not touch us!"
So they fled and wandered.
Among the nations it was said,
"They can stay here no longer."

פ PE

16 The presence of Yahweh has scattered them;
He regards them no more.
The priests are shown no honor;
the elders find no favor.

ע AYIN

17 All the while our eyes were failing
as we looked in vain for help.
We watched from our towers
for a nation that could not save us.

צ TZADE

18 They stalked our every step,
so that we could not walk in our streets.
Our end drew near, our time ran out,
for our end had come!

ק KOPH

19 Those who chased us were swifter
than the eagles in the sky;
they pursued us over the mountains
and ambushed us in the wilderness.

ר RESH

20 Yahweh's anointed, the breath of our life,
was captured in their pits.
We had said of him,
"Under his shadow we will live among the nations."

ש SIN

21 So rejoice and be glad, O Daughter of Edom,
you who dwell in the land of Uz.
Yet the cup will pass to you as well;
you will get drunk and expose yourself.

LAM 4:20 [NOTE] YAHWEH'S ANOINTED. King Zedekiah, the last king of Judah. He ran at night and was caught near Jericho, 2 Kings 25:4 to 7. See The Nebo Sarsekim Tablet in Jeremiah, p.1206.

LAM 4:21 [PROPHECY] The cup of judgment would pass to Edom too → MAL 1:3-4 · MEDIUM p.1510

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE

ת TAW

22 O Daughter of Zion, your punishment is
complete;
He will not prolong your exile.
But He will punish your iniquity, O Daughter of Edom;
He will expose your sins.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

A prayer from all the people: Remember us, Lord. Twenty two verses, like the alphabet, but no ABCs this time. It ends with the big ask: bring us back and make our days new again.

A PRAYER FOR RESTORATION

1 Remember, O Yahweh, what has happened to us.
Look and see our disgrace!
2 Our inheritance has been turned over to strangers,
our houses to foreigners.
3 We have become fatherless orphans;
our mothers are widows.
4 We must buy the water we drink;
our wood comes at a price.
5 We are closely pursued;
we are weary and find no rest.

6 We submitted to Egypt and Assyria
to get enough bread.
7 Our fathers sinned and are no more,
but we bear their punishment.
8 Slaves rule over us;
there is no one to deliver us from their hands.
9 We get our bread at the risk of our lives
because of the sword in the wilderness.
10 Our skin is as hot as an oven
with fever from our hunger.

11 Women have been ravished in Zion,
virgins in the cities of Judah.
12 Princes have been hung up by their hands;
elders receive no respect.
13 Young men toil at millstones;
boys stagger under loads of wood.
14 The elders have left the city gate;
the young men have stopped their music.
15 Joy has left our hearts;
our dancing has turned to mourning.
16 The crown has fallen from our head.
Woe to us, for we have sinned!

17 Because of this, our hearts are faint;
because of these, our eyes grow dim—
18 because of Mount Zion, which lies desolate,
patrolled by foxes.

19 You, O Yahweh, reign forever;
Your throne endures from generation to generation.
20 Why have You forgotten us forever?
Why have You forsaken us for so long?
21 Restore us to Yourself, O Yahweh, so we may return;
renew our days as of old,
22 unless You have utterly rejected us
and remain angry with us beyond measure.

THE BIG QUESTION

TISHA B'AV

The Saddest Day of the Year

LAMENTATIONS 1:4 · 5:1 TO 22

WHAT IT IS

Tisha B'Av means the ninth of Av, a month in summer. It is the saddest day of the Jewish year, a fast day that remembers the fall of both temples: Solomon's temple, burned by Babylon in 586 BC, and the second temple, burned by Rome in AD 70.

WHY THE NINTH

2 Kings 25:8 says the seventh day of the month and Jeremiah 52:12 says the tenth. The rabbis taught that the burning began late on the ninth and went into the

LAM 4:22 [PROPHECY] Zion's punishment was complete and her exile would not be prolonged → EZR 1:1-3 · MEDIUM p.766

LAM 5:1 [NOTE] NO ALPHABET. Chapter 5 has 22 verses like the alphabet, but the letters are gone. It is a prayer of the whole people, we and us.

LAM 5:7 [NOTE] OUR FATHERS SINNED. The people felt they were paying for their parents' sins. In 5:16 they also say: we have sinned. Ezekiel 18 talks about this.

LAM 5:11 [NOTE] THE WOMEN OF ZION. War brought cruel harm to the women of the city. The Bible names it so we know God sees it, and does not tell more.

LAM 5:19 [NOTABLE] When everything has fallen, God's throne has not. The way back starts with asking Him to bring us back.

LAM 5:22 [NOTE] THE LAST LINE. The book ends with an open question. When Jews read it in the synagogue, they read 5:21 again after 5:22, so the reading ends with hope: Restore us.

tenth, so the fast is on the ninth, Taanit 29a. The Mishnah lists five sad events on that day, Taanit 4:6.

How Lamentations Is Read

2 KINGS 25:8 · JEREMIAH 52:12 · ZECHARIAH 8:19

HOW IT IS KEPT

People fast, sit on the floor or on low stools, and chant Lamentations to a slow, sad tune. Many also read kinot, later sad poems.

FASTS IN THE BIBLE

God's people fasted in the fifth month, the month of Av, for seventy years, Zechariah 7:3 and 7:5. God promised that fast would one day become a joyful feast, 8:19.

THE LAST VERSE

When the book is read, 5:21 is read again after 5:22, so it ends with Restore us, not with God's anger.

FOR CHRISTIANS

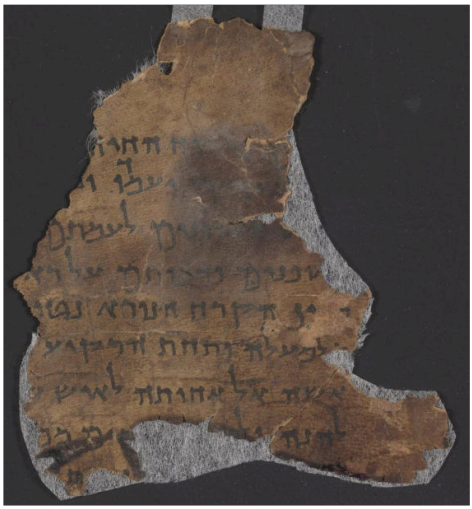
Jesus wept over Jerusalem and warned that the second temple would fall, Luke 19:41 to 44. Some churches read Lamentations in the days before Easter, as they think about His suffering.

BOOK 26 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MAJOR PROPHETS

EZEKIEL

The Prophet Who Acted It Out

AUTHOR	Ezekiel, a priest, the son of Buzi, 1:3. Babylon took him away in 597 BC with King Jehoiachin.
DATE	About 593 to 571 BC. Ezekiel dates his messages to the day, more than a dozen times.
WRITTEN TO	Exiles in Babylon who thought God was stuck in Jerusalem, and people back home who thought Jerusalem could never fall.
KEY VERSE	Ezekiel 36:26. I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will remove your heart of stone and give you a heart of flesh.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF EZEKIEL
A piece of 4QEzek b from Qumran Cave 4, copied between about 30 BC and AD 70. It holds part of Ezekiel 1, where the living creatures stand under a dome that shone like crystal, 1:22. Six Ezekiel scrolls were found in the caves near Qumran and one at Masada. See The Ezekiel Scrolls.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Babylon has already taken Judah's king, Jehoiachin, and thousands of leading people away, 2 Kings 24. Ezekiel, a young priest, lives with the exiles by the Kebar canal in Babylonia. Back home, Zedekiah rules Jerusalem, and false prophets promise the exile will end soon. For about seven years Ezekiel's message is: No, Jerusalem will fall. In 586 BC it does, and his message turns to hope.

What Went Wrong

IDOLS IN THE TEMPLE. Secret idols, women weeping for Tammuz, and men bowing to the sun, all in the temple, 8:5 to 16.
CHILD SACRIFICE. They gave their own children to idols, 16:20 to 21, 20:26, 20:31 and 23:37 to 39. God calls them My children.
FALSE PROPHETS. They said peace when there was no peace, 13:10.
BAD SHEPHERDS. Leaders who fed themselves and not the sheep, 34:2 to 3.
BLAMING THE PARENTS. The fathers have eaten sour grapes, 18:2. God says each person answers for himself.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Ezekiel is the book of the glory of God. It opens with a priest in exile seeing God's throne on wheels in Babylon: God is not stuck in Jerusalem. For years Ezekiel warns that Jerusalem will fall, often by acting out the message, and in a vision he watches God's glory leave the temple because of the idols there. Then the city falls. From then on his message is hope: God will be the Shepherd Himself, give His people a new heart, raise dry bones to life and defeat every enemy. The book ends with the glory coming back to a new temple and a river of life flowing out of it.

Ezekiel at a Glance

CH 1 to 3	**THE CALL** God's throne in Babylon; Ezekiel eats a scroll and becomes a watchman.
CH 4 to 24	**JERUSALEM WILL FALL** Signs acted out, the glory leaves the temple, the siege begins.
CH 25 to 32	**THE NATIONS** Ammon, Moab, Edom, Philistia, Tyre, Sidon and Egypt.
CH 33 to 39	**HOPE** The city falls; a Shepherd, a new heart, dry bones, Gog defeated.
CH 40 to 48	**THE NEW TEMPLE** The glory returns, a river of life, and a city called Yahweh Is There.

Where Jesus Shows Up

EZEKIEL 1:26 A figure like a man on God's throne. Christians see the Son, who became a man, John 1:14, and whom John saw shining like this, Revelation 1:13 to 16.

EZEKIEL 17:22 TO 23 A tender twig from David's tree grows into a great tree where birds nest. Jesus told of a kingdom that grows the same way, Matthew 13:31 to 32.

EZEKIEL 34:11 TO 16, 23 I Myself will search for My sheep. Jesus said, I am the good shepherd, John 10:11, and came to seek and save the lost, Luke 19:10.

EZEKIEL 36:26 TO 27 A new heart and God's Spirit inside. Jesus told Nicodemus you must be born of water and the Spirit, John 3:5.

EZEKIEL 47:1 TO 12 A river of life from the temple. Jesus offered living water, John 7:37 to 39, and Revelation 22:1 to 2 shows the river flowing from His throne.

SON OF MAN
God's name for Ezekiel: a human being standing before God.

CHERUBIM
Mighty heavenly beings who guard God's throne and holiness, Genesis 3:24.

ADONAI YAHWEH
Lord Yahweh, Ezekiel's favorite name for God, more than 200 times. Adonai, Lord, means Master; Yahweh is His personal name.

What to Watch for in Ezekiel

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (8)	17:22-23, 21:26-27, 34:11-16, 34:23-24, 36:25-27, 37:24-25, 37:27
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (12)	4:1-3, 5:12, 12:12-13, 17:16, 21:21-22, 24:1-2, 24:16-18 and 6 more
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	9:4
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (18)	25:4-5, 25:8-11, 25:15-17, 26:3-5, 26:14, 28:7-8, 28:20-24 and 12 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA (1)	25:12-14
END TIMES PROPHECIES (8)	37:22, 38:2, 38:16, 39:17, 43:4-5, 47:1, 47:12 and 1 more
THE HEART (6)	6:9, 11:19, 14:3, 18:31, 33:31-32
ARCHAEOLOGY (4)	3:15, 17:12, 26:12, 37:15
MIRACLES (4)	1:4-10, 1:26-28, 8:1-4, 10:18-19
DEMONIC (47)	5:11, 6:3-7, 6:13, 7:20, 8:5-18, 11:18, 11:21 and 35 more
NOTABLE (4)	22:30, 33:11, 37:1-10, 37:13-14, 47:9
GOD SPEAKING (1013 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (5 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE GLORY LEAVES AND COMES BACK
God's glory leaves the temple step by step in chapters 10 and 11, and comes back the same way in chapter 43.

THEY WILL KNOW
Then you will know that I am Yahweh, or words close to it, comes more than 60 times. God's goal is that people know Him.

SON OF MAN
God calls Ezekiel son of man about 93 times. Jesus used the same title for Himself, from Daniel 7:13.

THE ACTING PROPHET
He lay on his side for months, cooked siege bread, shaved with a sword and dug through a wall, all as live sermons.

How Does It End?

With a city named YAHWEH IS THERE, 48:35. The glory that left in chapter 10 is home for good. The exiles did go home under Cyrus, Ezra 1, but the river and the city point further ahead, to Revelation 21 and 22.

MIRACLES BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Ezekiel is sitting by a canal in Babylon when the sky opens. He sees a storm, four living creatures with four faces each, wheels full of eyes, and above it all a throne. He does the only sensible thing: he falls on his face.

EZEKIEL'S VISION BY THE RIVER KEBAR // PSALM 137:1–9

1 In the thirtieth year, on the fifth day of the fourth month, while I was among the exiles by the River Kebar, the heavens opened and I saw visions of God.

2 On the fifth day of the month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—
3 the word of Yahweh came directly to Ezekiel the priest, the son of Buzi, in the land of the Chaldeans by the River Kebar. And there Yahweh's hand was upon him.

THE FOUR LIVING CREATURES

4 I looked and saw a whirlwind coming from the north, a great cloud with fire flashing back and forth and brilliant light all around it. In the center of the fire was a gleam like amber, 5 and within it was the form of four living creatures.

And this was their appearance: They had a human form, 6 but each had four faces and four wings. 7 Their legs were straight, and the soles of their feet were like the hooves of a calf, gleaming like polished bronze.

8 Under their wings on their four sides they had human hands. All four living creatures had faces and wings, 9 and their wings were touching one another. They did not turn as they moved; each one went straight ahead.

10 The form of their faces was that of a man, and each of the four had the face of a lion on the right side, the face of an ox on the left side, and also the face of an eagle. 11 Such were their faces.

Their wings were spread upward; each had two wings touching the wings of the creature on either side, and two wings covering its body. 12 Each creature went straight ahead. Wherever the spirit would go, they would go, without turning as they moved.

13 In the midst of the living creatures was the appearance of glowing coals of fire, or of torches. Fire moved back and forth between the living creatures; it was bright, and lightning flashed out of it. 14 The creatures were darting back and forth as quickly as flashes of lightning.

THE FOUR WHEELS

15 When I looked at the living creatures, I saw a wheel on the ground beside each creature with its four faces. 16 The workmanship of the wheels looked like the gleam of beryl, and all four had the same likeness. Their workmanship looked like a wheel within a wheel. 17 As they moved, they went in any of the four directions, without pivoting as they moved. 18 Their rims were high and awesome, and all four rims were full of eyes all around. 19 So as the living creatures moved, the wheels moved beside them, and when the creatures rose from the ground, the wheels also rose.

20 Wherever the spirit would go, they would go, and the wheels would rise alongside them, because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. 21 When the creatures moved, the wheels moved; when the creatures stood still, the wheels stood still; and when the creatures rose from the ground, the wheels rose alongside them, because the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels.

- **EZK 1:1 [NOTE]** THE THIRTIETH YEAR. Probably Ezekiel's age. Levites began their work at the tabernacle at thirty, Numbers 4:3. Instead of a temple, he got a canal in Babylon, and God showed up there.
- **EZK 1:2 [NOTE]** KING JEHOIACHIN. Babylon took him away in 597 BC, with Ezekiel and thousands more, 2 Kings 24:12 to 16. Babylonian tablets list his food rations, see The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets, 2 Kings, p.662.
- **EZK 1:3 [NOTE]** THE RIVER KEBAR. A big canal near the city of Nippur in Babylonia. Tablets from Nippur name a canal Kabaru, which may mean the great canal.
- **EZK 1:4 [MIRACLE]** Ezekiel sees a storm and four living creatures
- **EZK 1:5 [NOTE]** LIVING CREATURES. In chapter 10 Ezekiel learns they are cherubim, 10:20. John sees four like them around God's throne, Revelation 4:6 to 8. See The Wheels and the Living Creatures.
- **EZK 1:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 4:7 p.2090
- **EZK 1:16 [NOTE]** WHEELS WITHIN WHEELS. Wheels that roll any way without turning. God's throne is not stuck in Jerusalem; it goes wherever He wants, even to Babylon.

MIRACLES

THE DIVINE GLORY

22 Spread out above the heads of the living creatures was the likeness of an awesome expanse, gleaming like crystal. 23 And under the expanse, their wings stretched out toward one another. Each one also had two wings covering its body.

24 When the creatures moved, I heard the sound of their wings like the roar of many waters, like the voice of the Almighty, like the tumult of an army.

When they stood still, they lowered their wings. 25 And there came a voice from above the expanse over their heads as they stood still with their wings lowered.

26 Above the expanse over their heads was the likeness of a throne with the appearance of sapphire, and on the throne high above was a figure like that of a man. 27 From what seemed to be His waist up, I saw a gleam like amber, with what looked like fire within it all around. And from what seemed to be His waist down, I saw what looked like fire; and brilliant light surrounded Him.

28 The appearance of the brilliant light all around Him was like that of a rainbow in a cloud on a rainy day. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of Yahweh. And when I saw it, I fell facedown and heard a voice speaking.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE WHEELS AND THE LIVING CREATURES

What Did Ezekiel See?

EZEKIEL 1:4 TO 28 · 10:1 TO 22

WHAT HE SAW

A storm cloud full of fire. Four living creatures, each with four faces, a man, a lion, an ox and an eagle, and four wings. Beside each, a wheel within a wheel, rims full of eyes. Above them a shining dome, and above that a throne with a figure like a man, glowing like fire, with a rainbow around Him.

HOW EZEKIEL TELLS IT

He keeps saying like, looked like, the appearance of the likeness. He is describing something words cannot hold. At the end he says what it was: the appearance of the likeness of the glory of Yahweh, 1:28.

THEY WERE CHERUBIM

When he sees them again he says, I knew that they were cherubim, 10:20. Cherubim guarded Eden, Genesis 3:24, and gold cherubim stood over the ark, Exodus 25:18 to 22.

Every View

REVELATION 4:6 TO 8 · ISAIAH 6:2 · EXODUS 25:18 TO 22

VIEW 1: GOD'S THRONE CHARIOT

Most Jewish and Christian readers see a moving throne, a royal chariot for the King of heaven. Jewish tradition calls it the merkavah, the chariot. The point: God is not stuck in Jerusalem. He came to the exiles in Babylon.

VIEW 2: PICTURES

Many read each detail as a picture: four faces for the best of creation, wings and wheels for God's speed and reach, eyes for His knowing everything, 2 Chronicles 16:9.

VIEW 3: THE FOUR GOSPELS

From Irenaeus, about AD 180, many Christians linked the four faces with the four Gospels. Jerome's version became the most common: Matthew the man, Mark the lion, Luke the ox and John the eagle.

MODERN IDEAS

In the 1970s a few books claimed Ezekiel saw a spaceship. Bible scholars of every kind reject it: Ezekiel says it was the glory of Yahweh, 1:28, and he fell on his face to worship.

A WARNING FROM THE RABBIS

The Mishnah says the chariot should not be taught even to one student, unless he is already wise enough to understand it on his own, Hagigah 2:1. They took it very seriously.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Ezekiel saw the glory of God, and it knocked him to the ground. John saw

EZK 1:26 [MIRACLE] A likeness of a man on a throne with a rainbow around Him

EZK 1:28 [NOTE] THE GLORY OF YAHWEH. The key words of the book. The glory leaves the temple in chapters 10 and 11 and comes back in chapter 43.

GOD SPEAKING

something like it, Revelation 4. God is greater than words can tell.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

God calls Ezekiel to speak to a stubborn people. They may listen or they may not, but either way they will know a prophet was among them. Then a hand holds out a scroll with writing on both sides.

EZEKIEL'S CALL

1 "Son of man," He said to me, "stand up
on your feet and I will speak to you." 2 And
as He spoke to me, the Spirit entered me
and set me on my feet, and I heard Him
speaking to me.

3 "Son of man," He said to me, "I am send-
ing you to the Israelites, to a rebellious na-
tion that has rebelled against Me. To this
very day they and their fathers have re-
belled against Me. 4 They are obstinate
and hard-hearted children. I am sending
you to them, and you are to say to them,
'This is what the Lord Yahweh says.'

5 And whether they listen or refuse to
listen—for they are a rebellious
house—they will know that a prophet has
been among them.

6 But you, son of man, do not be afraid of
them or their words. Do not be afraid,
though briers and thorns surround you,
and you dwell among scorpions. Do not
be afraid of their words or dismayed by
their presence, though they are a rebel-
lious house. 7 But speak My words to
them, whether they listen or refuse to lis-
ten, for they are rebellious.

8 And you, son of man, listen to what I tell
you. Do not be rebellious like that rebel-
lious house. Open your mouth and eat
what I give you."

9 Then I looked and saw a hand reaching
out to me, and in it was a scroll, 10 which
He unrolled before me. And written on the
front and back of it were words of lamen-
tation, mourning, and woe.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Ezekiel eats the scroll, and it tastes like honey. God makes him a watchman: warn the people, and you have done your job. Then he is told to stay home and stay quiet until God opens his mouth.

EZEKIEL EATS THE SCROLL // REVELATION 10:1–11

1 "Son of man," He said to me, "eat what
you find here. Eat this scroll, then go and
speak to the house of Israel."

2 So I opened my mouth, and He fed me
the scroll.

3 "Son of man," He said to me, "eat and fill
your stomach with this scroll I am giving
you."

So I ate, and it was as sweet as honey in
my mouth.

4 Then He said to me, "Son of man, go
now to the house of Israel and speak My
words to them. 5 For you are not being
sent to a people of unfamiliar speech or
difficult language, but to the house of
Israel— 6 not to the many peoples of unfa-
miliar speech and difficult language
whose words you cannot understand.
Surely if I had sent you to them, they
would have listened to you.

7 But the house of Israel will be unwilling
to listen to you, since they are unwilling to
listen to Me. For the whole house of Israel
is hard-headed and hard-hearted.

8 Behold, I will make your face as hard as
their faces, and your forehead as hard as
their foreheads. 9 I will make your fore-
head like a diamond, harder than flint. Do
not be afraid of them or dismayed at their
presence, even though they are a rebel-
lious house."

- **EZK 2:1 [NOTE]** SON OF MAN. God calls Ezekiel this about 93 times. It means a human being, a mortal, standing before God's glory. Jesus took the title for Himself, from Daniel 7:13.
- **EZK 2:4 [TEXT]** HARD HEARTED. The Hebrew says strong of heart, chizqei lev. The KJV says stiffhearted. Many Bibles say stubborn.
- **EZK 2:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 10:9-10 p.2096
- **EZK 2:9 [NOTE]** A SCROLL. Written on front and back, full of laments and woe, 2:10. Scrolls were usually written on one side. Compare Revelation 5:1.
- **EZK 3:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 10:9-10 p.2096
- **EZK 3:3 [NOTE]** SWEET AS HONEY. God's word tasted sweet even though the message was hard, Psalm 119:103. John ate a scroll too, sweet in the mouth, Revelation 10:9 to 10.

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

10 "Son of man," He added, "listen carefully to all the words I speak to you, and take them to heart. 11 Go to your people, the exiles; speak to them and tell them, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says,' whether they listen or refuse to listen."

12 Then the Spirit lifted me up, and I heard a great rumbling sound behind me: "Blessed be the glory of Yahweh in His dwelling place!" 13 It was the sound of the wings of the living creatures brushing against one another and the sound of the wheels beside them, a great rumbling sound.

14 So the Spirit lifted me up and took me away, and I went in bitterness and in the anger of my spirit, with the strong hand of Yahweh upon me. 15 I came to the exiles at Tel-abib who dwelt by the River Kebar. And for seven days I sat where they sat and remained there among them, overwhelmed.

A WATCHMAN FOR ISRAEL

16 At the end of seven days the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 17 "Son of man, I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel. Whenever you hear a word from My mouth, give them a warning from Me.

18 If I say to the wicked man, 'You will surely die,' but you do not warn him or speak out to warn him from his wicked way to save his life, that wicked man will die in his iniquity, and I will hold you responsible for his blood. 19 But if you warn a wicked man and he does not turn from his wickedness and his wicked way, he will die in his iniquity, but you will have saved yourself.

20 Now if a righteous man turns from his righteousness and commits iniquity, and I put a stumbling block before him, he will die. If you did not warn him, he will die in his sin, and the righteous acts he did will not be remembered. And I will hold you responsible for his blood. 21 But if you warn the righteous man not to sin, and he does not sin, he will indeed live because he heeded your warning, and you will have saved yourself."

EZK 3:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Tablets from a village of Judean exiles in Babylonia, 572 to 477 BC, see The Al Yahudu Tablets Field Notes box, p.1253 FIELD NOTES p.1253

EZK 3:15 [NOTE] TEL ABIB. Not the modern city, though Tel Aviv took its name from this verse. In Babylonian it may mean mound of the flood, an old ruin hill.

EZK 3:17 [NOTE] A WATCHMAN. A guard on the wall who warns when he sees danger. If people ignore the warning, it is on them. If he stays quiet, it is on him. See 33:1 to 9.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE AL YAHUDU TABLETS

EZEKIEL 1:1 TO 3 · 3:15 · JEREMIAH 29:5 · PSALM 137:1



A clay tablet from the town of Al Yahudu, written in Babylonian cuneiform, on show at the Bible Lands Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Amit Avidan, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT THEY ARE

About 200 clay tablets, mostly everyday records like loans, sales and rent, from villages in Babylonia where exiles from Judah lived. One village was called Al Yahudu, the town of Judah.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

The oldest is dated 572 BC, in Nebuchadnezzar's 33rd year, while Ezekiel was still alive. The newest is from 477 BC, in the days of the Persian king Xerxes.

WHAT THEY SAY

Many people have Hebrew names built on Yahweh, written in Babylonian wedge writing. One family can be followed for four or five generations. They rented land, paid taxes and borrowed money, just as Jeremiah told the exiles to build houses and plant gardens, Jeremiah 29:5.

WHERE THEY CAME FROM

They were not found in a dig. They

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

came through the antiques market, so no one knows exactly where Al Yahudu was, somewhere in the farmland of Babylonia, perhaps near Babylon or Nippur. Laurie Pearce and Cornelia Wunsch published about a hundred of them in 2014.

WHAT THEY SHOW

Ezekiel lived among people like these, by the Kebar canal, 3:15. Far from home, the exiles kept God's name alive in the names of their children.

22 And there the hand of Yahweh was upon me, and He said to me, "Get up, go out to the plain, and there I will speak with you."

23 So I got up and went out to the plain, and behold, the glory of Yahweh was present there, like the glory I had seen by the River Kebar, and I fell facedown.

24 Then the Spirit entered me and set me on my feet. He spoke with me and said, "Go, shut yourself inside your house. 25 And you, son of man, they will tie with ropes, and you will be bound so that you cannot go out among the people. 26 I will make your tongue stick to the roof of your mouth, and you will be silent and unable to rebuke them, though they are a rebellious house.

27 But when I speak with you, I will open your mouth, and you are to tell them, 'This is what the Lord Yahweh says.' Whoever listens, let him listen; and whoever refuses, let him refuse, for they are a rebellious house.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Ezekiel builds a tiny model of Jerusalem under siege, like a kid with toy soldiers, only it is not a game. He lies on his side for months and eats measured bread. God lets him swap the cooking fuel for something less gross.

A SIGN OF JERUSALEM'S SIEGE

1 "Now you, son of man, take a brick, place it before you, and draw on it the city of Jerusalem. 2 Then lay siege against it: Construct a siege wall, build a ramp to it, set up camps against it, and place battering rams around it on all sides. 3 Then take an iron plate and set it up as an iron wall between yourself and the city. Turn your face toward it so that it is under siege, and besiege it. This will be a sign to the house of Israel.

4 Then lie down on your left side and place the iniquity of the house of Israel upon yourself. You are to bear their iniquity for the number of days you lie on your side. 5 For I have assigned to you 390 days, according to the number of years of their iniquity. So you shall bear the iniquity of the house of Israel.

6 When you have completed these days, lie down again, but on your right side, and bear the iniquity of the house of Judah. I have assigned to you 40 days, a day for each year. 7 You must turn your face toward the siege of Jerusalem with your arm bared, and prophesy against it.

8 Now behold, I will tie you up with ropes so you cannot turn from side to side until you have finished the days of your siege.

THE DEFILED BREAD

9 But take wheat, barley, beans, lentils, millet, and spelt; put them in a single container and make them into bread for yourself. This is what you are to eat during the 390 days you lie on your side. 10 You are to weigh out eight ounces of food to eat each day, and you are to eat it at set times.

11 You are also to measure out two thirds of a quart of water to drink, and you are to drink it at set times. 12 And you shall eat the food as you would a barley cake, after you bake it over dried human excrement in the sight of the people."

- **EZK 3:26 [NOTE]** SILENT. Ezekiel would speak only when God gave him a message, until the news came that Jerusalem fell, 24:27 and 33:22.
- **EZK 4:1 [PROPHECY]** Ezekiel acted out the siege of Jerusalem on a clay brick → 2KI 25:1-2 p.660
- **EZK 4:1 [NOTE]** ACTING IT OUT. Ezekiel preached with his body: a model city, lying on his side, a strange haircut, packed bags. People who would not listen might still watch.
- **EZK 4:5 [NOTE]** 390 AND 40 DAYS. A day for each year of sin, for Israel and for Judah. He probably lay down for part of each day, since he also cooks, 4:9 to 12. Scholars count the years in different ways.
- **EZK 4:12 [NOTE]** COOKING FUEL. Dried dung was a normal cooking fuel then. Human waste would have made

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

13 Then Yahweh said, "This is how the Israelites will eat their defiled bread among the nations to which I will banish them."

14 "Ah, Lord Yahweh," I said, "I have never defiled myself. From my youth until now I have not eaten anything found dead or mauled by wild beasts. No unclean meat has ever entered my mouth."

15 "Look," He replied, "I will let you use cow dung instead of human excrement, and you may bake your bread over that."

16 Then He told me, "Son of man, I am going to cut off the supply of food in Jerusalem. They will anxiously eat bread rationed by weight, and in despair they will drink water by measure. 17 So they will lack food and water; they will be appalled at the sight of one another wasting away in their iniquity.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Ezekiel to shave his head and beard with a sword and split the hair into three piles. Each pile shows what will happen to the city. It is a haircut nobody forgets.

THE RAZOR OF JUDGMENT

1 "As for you, son of man, take a sharp sword, use it as a barber's razor, and shave your head and beard. Then take a set of scales and divide the hair. 2 When the days of the siege have ended, you are to burn up a third of the hair inside the city; you are also to take a third and slash it with the sword all around the city; and you are to scatter a third to the wind. For I will unleash a sword behind them.

3 But you are to take a few strands of hair and secure them in the folds of your garment. 4 Again, take a few of these, throw them into the fire, and burn them. From there a fire will spread to the whole house of Israel.

5 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'This is Jerusalem, which I have set in the center of the nations, with countries all around her. 6 But she has rebelled against My ordinances more wickedly than the nations, and against My statutes worse than the countries around her. For her people have rejected My ordinances and have not walked in My statutes.'

7 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'You have been more insubordinate than the nations around you; you have not walked in My statutes or kept My ordinances, nor have you even conformed to the ordinances of the nations around you.'

8 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Behold, I Myself am against you, Jerusalem, and I will execute judgments among you in the sight of the nations. 9 Because of all your abominations, I will do to you what I have never done before and will never do again. 10 As a result, fathers among you will eat their sons, and sons will eat their fathers. I will execute judgments against you and scatter all your remnant to every wind.'

FAMINE, SWORD, AND DISPERSION

11 Therefore as surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, because you have defiled My sanctuary with all your detestable idols and abominations, I Myself will withdraw My favor; I will not look upon you with pity, nor will I spare you.

12 A third of your people will die by plague or be consumed by famine within you, a third will fall by the sword outside your walls, and a third I will scatter to every wind and unleash a sword behind them.

13 And when My anger is spent and I have vented My wrath against them, I will be appeased. And when I have spent My wrath on them, they will know that I, Yahweh, in My zeal have spoken.

---

the food unclean, Deuteronomy 23:12 to 14. Ezekiel, a priest, objected, and God let him use cow dung, 4:15. The point: exiles would eat unclean food among the nations, 4:13.

■ **EZK 5:1 [NOTE]** THE HAIRCUT. Shaving was a sign of shame and mourning. One third burned, one third cut with the sword, one third scattered, 5:2 and 5:12. A few hairs tucked in his robe: a small remnant God would keep.

■ **EZK 5:10 [NOTE]** THE WORST OF THE SIEGE. Moses had warned that a long siege could bring unthinkable hunger, Deuteronomy 28:53. The Bible tells it with grief, not detail.

EZK 5:11 [DEMONIC] God's sanctuary defiled with detestable idols

EZK 5:12 [PROPHECY] A third would die of plague and famine, a third by sword, a third scattered → 2KI 25:3-11; JER 52:6-16 p.660

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

14 I will make you a ruin and a disgrace
among the nations around you, in the
sight of all who pass by. 15 So you will be a
reproach and a taunt, a warning and a
horror to the nations around you, when I
execute judgments against you in anger,
wrath, and raging fury. I, Yahweh, have
spoken.

16 When I shower you with the deadly ar-
rows of famine and destruction that I will
send to destroy you, I will intensify the
famine against you and cut off your sup-
ply of food. 17 I will send famine and wild
beasts against you, and they will leave
you childless. Plague and bloodshed will
sweep through you, and I will bring a
sword against you. I, Yahweh, have spo-
ken."

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Ezekiel turns toward the mountains of Israel, where idols stood on every hill. The idols will fall, and the few who survive will remember God. Over and over: then you will know that I am Yahweh.

JUDGMENT AGAINST IDOLATRY // DEUTERONOMY 4:15–31; DEUTERONOMY 12:29–32

1 And the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "Son of man, set your face
against the mountains of Israel and
prophesy against them.

3 You are to say: 'O mountains of Israel,
hear the word of the Lord Yahweh! This is
what the Lord Yahweh says to the moun-
tains and hills, to the ravines and valleys: I
am about to bring a sword against you,
and I will destroy your high places. 4 Your
altars will be demolished and your in-
cense altars will be smashed; and I will
cast down your slain before your idols. 5 I
will lay the corpses of the Israelites before
their idols and scatter your bones around
your altars.

6 Wherever you live, the cities will be laid
waste and the high places will be demol-
ished, so that your altars will be laid waste
and desecrated, your idols smashed and
obliterated, your incense altars cut down,
and your works blotted out. 7 The slain will
fall among you, and you will know that I
am Yahweh.

A REMNANT TO BE BLESSED

8 Yet I will leave a remnant, for some of
you will escape the sword when you are
scattered among the nations and through-
out the lands.

9 Then in the nations to which they have
been carried captive, your survivors will
remember Me—how I have been grieved
by their adulterous hearts that turned
away from Me, and by their eyes that
lusted after idols. So they will loathe
themselves for the evil they have done
and for all their abominations. 10 And they
will know that I am Yahweh; I did not de-
clare in vain that I would bring this
calamity upon them.

11 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Clap
your hands, stomp your feet, and cry out
"Alas!" because of all the wicked abomi-
nations of the house of Israel, who will fall
by sword and famine and plague. 12 He
who is far off will die by the plague, he
who is near will fall by the sword, and he
who remains will die by famine. So I will
vent My fury upon them.

13 Then you will know that I am Yahweh,
when their slain lie among their idols
around their altars, on every high hill, on
all the mountaintops, and under every
green tree and leafy oak—the places
where they offered fragrant incense to all
their idols. 14 I will stretch out My hand
against them, and wherever they live I will
make the land a desolate waste, from the
wilderness to Diblah. Then they will know
that I am Yahweh.'"

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

The end has come. No more waiting, no more second chances for this generation. Silver and gold will not save anyone on that day.

EZK 6:3 [DEMONIC] Slain bodies laid before their idols

EZK 6:9 [HEART] God says He was grieved by their unfaithful hearts. Sin does not just break rules; it breaks God's heart.

EZK 6:9 [DEMONIC] Survivors remember how their eyes lusted after idols

EZK 6:13 [DEMONIC] The slain lie among idols on every high hill

GOD SPEAKING

THE HOUR OF DOOM

1 And the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "O son of man, this is what the
Lord Yahweh says to the land of Israel:

'The end! The end has come
upon the four corners of the land.
3 The end is now upon you,
and I will unleash My anger against you.
I will judge you according to your ways
and repay you for all your abominations.
4 I will not look on you with pity,
nor will I spare you,
but I will punish you for your ways
and for the abominations among you.
Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'

5 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'Disaster! An unprecedented disaster—
behold, it is coming!
6 The end has come!
The end has come!
It has roused itself against you.
Behold, it has come!
7 Doom has come to you,
O inhabitants of the land.
The time has come;
the day is near;
there is panic on the mountains
instead of shouts of joy.
8 Very soon I will pour out My wrath upon
you
and vent My anger against you;
I will judge you according to your ways
and repay you for all your abominations.
9 I will not look on you with pity,
nor will I spare you,
but I will punish you for your ways
and for the abominations among you.
Then you will know that it is I, Yahweh,
who strikes the blow.
10 Behold, the day is here!
It has come!
Doom has gone out,
the rod has budded,
arrogance has bloomed.
11 Their violence has grown into a rod
to punish their wickedness.
None of them will remain:
none of their multitude,
none of their wealth,
and nothing of value.
12 The time has come;
the day has arrived.
Let the buyer not rejoice
and the seller not mourn,
for wrath is upon the whole multitude.
13 The seller will surely not recover what
he sold
while both remain alive.
For the vision concerning the whole multi-
tude
will not be revoked,
and because of their iniquity,
not one of them will preserve his life.

THE DESOLATION OF ISRAEL

14 They have blown the trumpet
and made everything ready,
but no one goes to war,
for My wrath is upon the whole multi-
tude.
15 The sword is outside;
plague and famine are within.
Those in the country will die by the sword,
and those in the city will be devoured
by famine and plague.
16 The survivors will escape
and live in the mountains,
moaning like doves of the valley,
each for his own iniquity.
17 Every hand will go limp,
and every knee will turn to water.
18 They will put on sackcloth,
and terror will overwhelm them.
Shame will cover all their faces,
and all their heads will be shaved.
19 They will throw their silver into the
streets,
and their gold will seem unclean.
Their silver and gold cannot save them
in the day of the wrath of Yahweh.
They cannot satisfy their appetites
or fill their stomachs with wealth,
for it became the stumbling block
that brought their iniquity.

■ **EZK 7:2 [NOTE]** THE END. The word end rings out again and again in 7:2 to 6, like a bell. Amos said it first, Amos 8:2.

■ **EZK 7:19 [NOTE]** SILVER AND GOLD. Money will not buy safety on that day, Zephaniah 1:18. The wealth they made into idols, 7:20, becomes useless.

MIRACLES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

20 His beautiful ornaments
they transformed into pride
and used them to fashion
their vile images and detestable idols.
Therefore I will make these
into something unclean for them.
21 And I will hand these things over
as plunder to foreigners
and loot to the wicked of the earth,
who will defile them.
22 I will turn My face away from them,
and they will defile My treasured place.
Violent men will enter it,
and they will defile it.

23 Forge the chain,
for the land is full of crimes of bloodshed,
and the city is full of violence.
24 So I will bring the most wicked of nations
to take possession of their houses.
I will end the pride of the mighty,
and their holy places will be profaned.

25 Anguish is coming!
They will seek peace, but find none.
26 Disaster upon disaster will come,
and rumor after rumor.
Then they will seek a vision from a prophet,
but instruction from the priests will perish,
as will counsel from the elders.
27 The king will mourn,
the prince will be clothed with despair,
and the hands of the people of the land will tremble.
I will deal with them according to their conduct,
and I will judge them by their own standards.
Then they will know that I am Yahweh.'"

EZK 7:20 [DEMONIC] They turned God's jewels into detestable idols

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

The Spirit lifts Ezekiel by his hair and carries him in a vision to Jerusalem. Behind the temple walls he finds secret idols, women weeping for a false god, and men bowing to the sun. Each room is worse than the last.

THE VISION OF IDOLATRY IN THE TEMPLE

1 In the sixth year, on the fifth day of the sixth month, I was sitting in my house, and the elders of Judah were sitting before me; and there the hand of the Lord Yahweh fell upon me.

2 Then I looked and saw a figure like that of a man. From His waist down His appearance was like fire, and from His waist up He was as bright as the gleam of amber. 3 He stretched out what looked like a hand and took me by the hair of my head. Then the Spirit lifted me up between earth and heaven and carried me in visions of God to Jerusalem, to the entrance of the north gate of the inner court, where the idol that provokes jealousy was seated.

4 And there I saw the glory of the God of Israel, like the vision I had seen in the plain. 5 "Son of man," He said to me, "now lift up your eyes to the north."

So I lifted up my eyes to the north, and in the entrance north of the Altar Gate I saw this idol of jealousy.

6 "Son of man," He said to me, "do you see what they are doing—the great abominations that the house of Israel is committing—to drive Me far from My sanctuary? Yet you will see even greater abominations."

7 Then He brought me to the entrance to the court, and I looked and saw a hole in the wall.

EZK 8:1 [MIRACLE] The Spirit lifts Ezekiel and brings him to Jerusalem in visions
EZK 8:1 [NOTE] THE SIXTH YEAR. September 592 BC. The elders of Judah sat in Ezekiel's house, and God showed him what was really going on back home.
EZK 8:3 [DEMONIC] The idol of jealousy stands at the temple gate
EZK 8:3 [NOTE] THE IDOL OF JEALOUSY. An idol at the temple gate that stirred God to jealousy, the jealousy of a faithful husband. King Manasseh had once put an Asherah pole in the temple, 2 Kings 21:7.
EZK 8:7 [DEMONIC] Seventy elders burn incense to idols in secret

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

8 "Son of man," He told me, "dig through the wall."

So I dug through the wall and discovered a doorway.

9 Then He said to me, "Go in and see the wicked abominations they are committing here."

10 So I went in and looked, and engraved all around the wall was every kind of crawling creature and detestable beast, along with all the idols of the house of Israel. 11 Before them stood seventy elders of the house of Israel, with Jaazaniah son of Shaphan standing among them. Each had a censer in his hand, and a fragrant cloud of incense was rising.

12 "Son of man," He said to me, "do you see what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the darkness, each at the shrine of his own idol? For they are saying, 'Yahweh does not see us; Yahweh has forsaken the land.'"

13 Again, He told me, "You will see them committing even greater abominations."

14 Then He brought me to the entrance of the north gate of the house of Yahweh, and I saw women sitting there, weeping for Tammuz.

15 "Son of man," He said to me, "do you see this? Yet you will see even greater abominations than these."

16 So He brought me to the inner court of the house of Yahweh, and there at the entrance to the temple of Yahweh, between the portico and the altar, were about twenty-five men with their backs to the temple of Yahweh and their faces toward the east; and they were bowing to the east in worship of the sun.

17 "Son of man," He said to me, "do you see this? Is it not enough for the house of Judah to commit the abominations they are practicing here, that they must also fill the land with violence and continually provoke Me to anger? Look, they are even putting the branch to their nose! 18 Therefore I will respond with wrath. I will not look on them with pity, nor will I spare them. Although they shout loudly in My ears, I will not listen to them."

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Six men come to bring judgment, and a man in linen marks the foreheads of everyone who grieves over the city's sin. Those with the mark are spared. Ezekiel falls down and begs God for mercy.

EXECUTION OF THE IDOLATERS

1 Then I heard Him call out in a loud voice, saying, "Draw near, O executioners of the city, each with a weapon of destruction in hand."

2 And I saw six men coming from the direction of the Upper Gate, which faces north, each with a weapon of slaughter in his hand. With them was another man clothed in linen who had a writing kit at his side. And they came in and stood beside the bronze altar.

3 Then the glory of the God of Israel rose from above the cherubim, where it had been, and moved to the threshold of the temple. And He called to the man clothed in linen who had the writing kit at his side. 4 "Go throughout the city of Jerusalem," said Yahweh, "and put a mark on the foreheads of the men sighing and groaning over all the abominations committed there."

5 And as I listened, He said to the others, "Follow him through the city and start

- **EZK 8:11 [NOTE]** JAAZANIAH SON OF SHAPHAN. If this is the same family, it was known for doing right: Shaphan read the found scroll to Josiah, 2 Kings 22:10, and Ahikam son of Shaphan protected Jeremiah, Jeremiah 26:24. Even a good family can have a son who wanders.
- **EZK 8:14 [DEMONIC]** Women weep for the god Tammuz at the temple gate
- **EZK 8:14 [NOTE]** TAMMUZ. A Mesopotamian god of shepherds and spring growth, said to die and be mourned every summer. See Tammuz, the Dying God.
- **EZK 8:16 [DEMONIC]** Men turn their backs on the temple to worship the sun
- **EZK 8:16 [NOTE]** BACKS TO THE TEMPLE. Twenty five men bow to the sun in the east, with their backs to God's house. People coming to worship faced west, toward the Most Holy Place.
- **EZK 8:17 [NOTE]** THE BRANCH TO THEIR NOSE. No one is sure what this was. Some think it was part of sun worship, others a rude gesture. Either way, it insulted God.
- **EZK 9:4 [FORESHADOW]** God's faithful marked on the forehead before judgment fell → REV 7:3; REV 9:4 · MEDIUM p.2093
- **EZK 9:4 [NOTE]** A MARK. The Hebrew word is taw, the last letter of the alphabet, which in old Hebrew writing looked like an X. Early Christians like Tertullian noticed it was shaped like a cross.

GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

TAMMUZ, THE DYING GOD

EZEKIEL 8:14 TO 15



Ishtar's Descent to the Underworld, a clay tablet from the library of Ashurbanipal at Nineveh, 600s BC. British Museum, K.162. Photo Marie Lan Nguyen, CC BY 2.5.

WHO HE WAS

Tammuz, called Dumuzi in Sumerian, was a god of shepherds and spring growth in Mesopotamia. In the old stories he was the husband of the goddess Inanna, called Ishtar.

HOW OLD IT IS

Songs about Dumuzi go back before 2000 BC. This copy of Ishtar's Descent was made in the 600s BC, less than a hundred years before Ezekiel.

THE STORY

Ishtar goes down to the land of the dead and is held there. In the older Sumerian telling, someone must take her place, and Dumuzi is sent down. This Babylonian copy ends with Tammuz and with mourners wailing for him.

THE WEEPING

Every summer, women wept for Tammuz as if he had just died. The fourth month of the Jewish calendar is still called Tammuz, a name picked up in Babylon.

WHY IT WAS SO BAD

Women sat at the north gate of God's own house weeping for a false god, 8:14. They mourned a god who could not save, while the living God stood in the temple.

SEE ALSO

The Queen of Heaven, Jeremiah, p.1159. Many think she was Ishtar.

killing; do not show pity or spare anyone!
6 Slaughter the old men, the young men
and maidens, the women and children;
but do not go near anyone who has the
mark. Now begin at My sanctuary."

So they began with the elders who were before the temple.

7 Then He told them, "Defile the temple
and fill the courts with the slain. Go forth!"

So they went out and began killing throughout the city.

8 While they were killing, I was left alone. And I fell facedown and cried out, "Oh, Lord Yahweh, when You pour out Your wrath on Jerusalem, will You destroy the entire remnant of Israel?"

9 He replied, "The iniquity of the house of
Israel and Judah is exceedingly great. The
land is full of bloodshed, and the city is
full of perversity. For they say, 'Yahweh
has forsaken the land; Yahweh does not
see.' 10 But as for Me, I will not look on
them with pity, nor will I spare them. I will
bring their deeds down upon their own
heads."

11 Then the man clothed in linen with the writing kit at his side reported back, "I have done as You commanded."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The wheels and creatures from chapter 1 come back, and now Ezekiel knows they are cherubim. Then the glory of Yahweh lifts off the temple and moves to the door. God is getting ready to leave.

GOD'S GLORY EXITS THE TEMPLE

1 And I looked and saw above the expanse,
above the heads of the cherubim, the likeness of a throne of sapphire. 2 And Yahweh said to the man clothed in linen, "Go

EZK 9:6 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this
→ 1PE 4:17 p.2019

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

inside the wheelwork beneath the cherubim. Fill your hands with burning coals from among the cherubim and scatter them over the city." And as I watched, he went in.

3 Now when the man went in, the cherubim were standing on the south side of the temple, and a cloud filled the inner court. 4 Then the glory of Yahweh rose from above the cherubim and stood over the threshold of the temple. The temple was filled with the cloud, and the court was filled with the brightness of the glory of Yahweh. 5 The sound of the wings of the cherubim could be heard as far as the outer court, like the voice of God Almighty when He speaks.

6 When Yahweh commanded the man clothed in linen, saying, "Take fire from within the wheelwork, from among the cherubim," the man went in and stood beside a wheel. 7 Then one of the cherubim reached out his hand and took some of the fire that was among them. And he put it into the hands of the man clothed in linen, who received it and went out. 8 (The cherubim appeared to have the form of human hands under their wings.)

9 Then I looked and saw four wheels beside the cherubim, one wheel beside each cherub. And the wheels gleamed like a beryl stone. 10 As for their appearance, all four had the same form, like a wheel within a wheel. 11 When they moved, they would go in any of the four directions, without turning as they moved. For wherever the head faced, the cherubim would go in that direction, without turning as they moved.

12 Their entire bodies, including their backs, hands, and wings, were full of eyes all around, as were their four wheels. 13 I heard the wheels being called "the whirling wheels."

14 Each of the cherubim had four faces: the first face was that of a cherub, the second that of a man, the third that of a lion, and the fourth that of an eagle.

15 Then the cherubim rose upward. These were the living creatures I had seen by the River Kebar. 16 When the cherubim moved, the wheels moved beside them, and even when they spread their wings to rise from the ground, the wheels did not veer away from their side. 17 When the cherubim stood still, the wheels also stood still, and when they ascended, the wheels ascended with them, for the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels.

18 Then the glory of Yahweh moved away from the threshold of the temple and stood above the cherubim. 19 As I watched, the cherubim lifted their wings and rose up from the ground, with the wheels beside them as they went. And they stopped at the entrance of the east gate of the house of Yahweh, with the glory of the God of Israel above them.

20 These were the living creatures I had seen beneath the God of Israel by the River Kebar, and I knew that they were cherubim. 21 Each had four faces and four wings, with what looked like human hands under their wings. 22 Their faces looked like the faces I had seen by the River Kebar. Each creature went straight ahead.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

The city's leaders feel safe, like meat in a pot. God says no, but He promises the exiles something better: a heart of flesh instead of a heart of stone. Then the glory leaves the city and stops on the mountain to the east.

EVIL IN HIGH PLACES

1 Then the Spirit lifted me up and brought me to the gate of the house of Yahweh that faces east. And there at the entrance of the gate were twenty-five men. Among them I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur and

EZK 10:4 [NOTE] THE GLORY MOVES. Step by step: to the threshold, 10:4, to the east gate, 10:19, then to the mountain east of the city, 11:23. God did not leave in a hurry.

EZK 10:14 [NOTE] THE FACE OF A CHERUB. Here a cherub's face takes the place of the ox in 1:10, so a cherub's face may have looked like an ox.

EZK 10:18 [MIRACLE] The glory of Yahweh leaves the temple on the cherubim

EZK 10:20 [NOTE] THEY WERE CHERUBIM. Ezekiel the priest knew the cherubim carved on the temple walls, 1 Kings 6:23 to 29. Now he knew what he had seen.

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Pelatiah son of Benaiah, who were leaders of the people. 2 And Yahweh said to me, "Son of man, these are the men who plot evil and give wicked counsel in this city. 3 They are saying, 'Is not the time near to build houses? The city is the cooking pot, and we are the meat.' 4 Therefore prophesy against them; prophesy, O son of man!"

5 And the Spirit of Yahweh fell upon me and told me to declare that this is what Yahweh says: "That is what you are thinking, O house of Israel; and I know the thoughts that arise in your minds. 6 You have multiplied those you killed in this city and filled its streets with the dead.

7 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: The slain you have laid within this city are the meat, and the city is the pot; but I will remove you from it. 8 You fear the sword, so I will bring the sword against you, declares the Lord Yahweh. 9 I will bring you out of the city and deliver you into the hands of foreigners, and I will execute judgments against you. 10 You will fall by the sword, and I will judge you even to the borders of Israel. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

11 The city will not be a pot for you, nor will you be the meat within it. I will judge you even to the borders of Israel. 12 Then you will know that I am Yahweh. For you have neither followed My statutes nor practiced My ordinances, but you have conformed to the ordinances of the nations around you."

A PROMISE OF RESTORATION // JEREMIAH 32:36–44

13 Now as I was prophesying, Pelatiah son of Benaiah died. Then I fell facedown and cried out in a loud voice, "Oh, Lord Yahweh, will You bring the remnant of Israel to a complete end?"

14 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 15 "Son of man, your brothers—your relatives, your fellow exiles, and the whole house of Israel—are those of whom the people of Jerusalem have said, 'They are far away from Yahweh; this land has been given to us as a possession.'

16 Therefore declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Although I sent them far away among the nations and scattered them among the countries, yet for a little while I have been a sanctuary for them in the countries to which they have gone.'

17 Therefore declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I will gather you from the peoples and assemble you from the countries to which you have been scattered, and I will give back to you the land of Israel.'

18 When they return to it, they will remove all its detestable things and all its abominations. 19 And I will give them singleness of heart and put a new spirit within them; I will remove their heart of stone and give them a heart of flesh, 20 so that they may follow My statutes, keep My ordinances, and practice them. Then they will be My people, and I will be their God.

21 But as for those whose hearts pursue detestable things and abominations, I will bring their conduct down upon their own heads, declares the Lord Yahweh."

GOD'S GLORY LEAVES JERUSALEM

22 Then the cherubim, with the wheels beside them, spread their wings, and the glory of the God of Israel was above them. 23 And the glory of Yahweh rose up from within the city and stood over the mountain east of the city.

24 And the Spirit lifted me up and carried me back to Chaldea, to the exiles in the vision given by the Spirit of God. After the

EZK 11:3 [NOTE] MEAT IN THE POT. The leaders said the city was a pot and they were the meat, safe inside the walls. God turns it around: the only meat left will be the people they killed, 11:7.

EZK 11:16 [NOTE] A LITTLE SANCTUARY. The Hebrew can mean for a little while or a little sanctuary. Far from the temple, God Himself would be a sanctuary for the exiles. Jewish teachers later saw synagogues in this verse. God can be found far from home.

EZK 11:18 [DEMONIC] Returning exiles will remove all the detestable things

EZK 11:19 [HEART] God promises to take out a heart of stone and give a heart of flesh, one heart that can feel and obey.

EZK 11:21 [DEMONIC] Judgment on hearts that chase detestable idols

EZK 11:23 [NOTE] THE MOUNTAIN EAST OF THE CITY. The Mount of Olives. Jesus went up to heaven from there, Acts 1:9 to 12, and Zechariah 14:4 says the Lord's feet will stand on it.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

vision had gone up from me, 25 I told the exiles everything Yahweh had shown me.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Ezekiel packs his bags in broad daylight and digs through a wall at night, a picture of the king running away. People had a saying that visions never come true. God says: not anymore.

SIGNS OF THE COMING CAPTIVITY

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, you are living in a rebellious house. They have eyes to see but do not see, and ears to hear but do not hear, for they are a rebellious house.

3 Therefore, son of man, pack your bags for exile. In broad daylight, set out from your place and go to another as they watch. Perhaps they will understand, though they are a rebellious house. 4 Bring out your baggage for exile by day, as they watch. Then in the evening, as they watch, go out like those who go into exile.

5 As they watch, dig through the wall and carry your belongings out through it. 6 And as they watch, lift your bags to your shoulder and take them out at dusk; cover your face so that you cannot see the land. For I have made you a sign to the house of Israel."

7 So I did as I was commanded. I brought out my bags for exile by day, and in the evening I dug through the wall by hand. I took my belongings out at dusk, carrying them on my shoulder as they watched.

8 And in the morning the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 9 "Son of man, hasn't the rebellious house of Israel asked you, 'What are you doing?' 10 Tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'This burden concerns the prince in Jerusalem and all the house of Israel who are there.'

11 You are to say, 'I am a sign to you.' Just as it happened here, so will it be done to them; they will go into exile as captives. 12 And at dusk the prince among them will lift his bags to his shoulder and go out. They will dig through the wall to bring him out. He will cover his face so he cannot see the land. 13 But I will spread My net over him, and he will be caught in My snare. I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans; yet he will not see it, and there he will die.

14 And I will scatter to every wind all the attendants around him and all his troops, and I will draw a sword to chase after them. 15 And they will know that I am Yahweh, when I disperse them among the nations and scatter them throughout the countries.

16 But I will spare a few of them from sword and famine and plague, so that in the nations to which they go, they can recount all their abominations. Then they will know that I am Yahweh."

17 Moreover, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 18 "Son of man, eat your bread with trembling, and drink your water with quivering and anxiety. 19 Then tell the people of the land that this is what the Lord Yahweh says about those living in Jerusalem and in the land of Israel: 'They will eat their bread with anxiety and drink their water in dread, for their land will be stripped of everything in it because of the violence of all who dwell in it. 20 The inhabited cities will be laid waste, and the land will become desolate. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

THE PRESUMPTUOUS PROVERB

21 Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 22 "Son of man, what is this proverb that you have in the land of Israel:

'The days go by,
and every vision fails'?

23 Therefore tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I will put an end to this

- **EZK 12:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 8:18 p.1622
- **EZK 12:3 [NOTE]** PACK YOUR BAGS. A man packing for exile in broad daylight. It was a preview of King Zedekiah running away by night, 12:12 and 2 Kings 25:4.
- **EZK 12:12 [PROPHECY]** The prince would leave at dusk through a hole in the wall with his face covered → 2KI 25:4; JER 39:4 p.660
- **EZK 12:13 [PROPHECY]** Zedekiah would be brought to Babylon but not see it (his eyes blinded) → JER 52:11; 2KI 25:7 p.1227
- **EZK 12:22 [NOTE]** THE PROVERB. People said, The days go by and every vision fails. When warnings take a long time, people stop believing them, 2 Peter 3:3 to 4.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

proverb, and in Israel they will no longer recite it.'

But say to them: 'The days are at hand when every vision will be fulfilled. 24 For there will be no more false visions or flattering divinations within the house of Israel, 25 because I, Yahweh, will speak whatever word I speak, and it will be fulfilled without delay. For in your days, O rebellious house, I will speak a message and bring it to pass, declares the Lord Yahweh.'"

26 Furthermore, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 27 "Son of man, take note that the house of Israel is saying, 'The vision that he sees is for many years from now; he prophesies about the distant future.'

28 Therefore tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'None of My words will be delayed any longer. The message I speak will be fulfilled, declares the Lord Yahweh.'"

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

God takes on the false prophets who say peace when there is no peace. They are like men painting a shaky wall white. When the storm comes, the wall and the paint both come down.

REPROOF OF FALSE PROPHETS // MICAH 2:6–11

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, prophesy against the prophets of Israel who are now prophesying. Tell those who prophesy out of their own hearts: Hear the word of Yahweh! 3 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit yet have seen nothing. 4 Your prophets, O Israel, are like foxes among the ruins. 5 You did not go up to the gaps or restore the wall around the house of Israel so that it would stand in the battle on the Day of Yahweh.

6 They see false visions and speak lying divinations. They claim, 'Thus declares Yahweh,' when Yahweh did not send them; yet they wait for the fulfillment of their message.

7 Haven't you seen a false vision and spoken a lying divination when you proclaim, 'Thus declares Yahweh,' even though I have not spoken?

8 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because you have uttered vain words and seen false visions, I am against you, declares the Lord Yahweh. 9 My hand will be against the prophets who see false visions and speak lying divinations. They will not belong to the council of My people or be recorded in the register of the house of Israel, nor will they enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.

10 Because they have led My people astray, saying, 'Peace,' when there is no peace, and whitewashing any flimsy wall that is built, 11 tell those whitewashing the wall that it will fall. Rain will come in torrents, I will send hailstones plunging down, and a windstorm will burst forth. 12 Surely when the wall has fallen, you will not be asked, 'Where is the whitewash with which you covered it?'

13 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: In My wrath I will release a windstorm, and in My anger torrents of rain and hail will fall with destructive fury. 14 I will tear down the wall you whitewashed and level it to the ground, so that its foundation is exposed. The city will fall, and you will be destroyed within it. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

15 And after I have vented My wrath against the wall and against those who whitewashed it, I will say to you: 'The wall is gone, and so are those who whitewashed it— 16 those prophets of Israel who prophesied to Jerusalem and saw a vision of peace for her when there was no peace, declares the Lord Yahweh.'

EZK 12:24 [DEMONIC] No more flattering divinations in Israel

EZK 13:2 [TEXT] OUT OF THEIR OWN HEARTS. The Hebrew says millibbam, from their own heart, like the KJV.

EZK 13:6 [DEMONIC] Prophets who speak lying divinations

EZK 13:10 [NOTE] WHITEWASH. Cheap paint over a weak wall to make it look strong. False prophets painted over sin with nice words. Jesus spoke of whitewashed tombs, Matthew 23:27.

THE HEART DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

REPROOF OF FALSE PROPHETESSES

17 Now, O son of man, set your face
against the daughters of your people who
prophesy out of their own hearts. Proph-
esy against them 18 and tell them that this
is what the Lord Yahweh says: Woe to the
women who sew magic charms on their
wrists and make veils for the heads of
people of every height, in order to en-
snare their souls. Will you ensnare the
souls of My people but preserve your
own? 19 You have profaned Me among My
people for handfuls of barley and scraps
of bread. By lying to My people who
would listen, you have killed those who
should not have died and spared those
who should not have lived.

20 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says: See, I am against the magic charms
with which you ensnare souls like birds,
and I will tear them from your arms. So I
will free the souls you have ensnared like
birds. 21 I will also tear off your veils and
deliver My people from your hands, so
that they will no longer be prey in your
hands. Then you will know that I am Yah-
weh.

22 Because you have made the heart of the
righteous sad with your lies, even though I
have caused them no grief, and because
you have encouraged the wicked not to
turn from their evil ways to save their
lives, 23 therefore you will no longer see
false visions or practice divination. I will
deliver My people from your hands. Then
you will know that I am Yahweh."

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Some elders come to ask God a question while keeping idols in their hearts. God says even Noah, Daniel and Job could save only themselves. Each person must turn back to God for himself.

IDOLATROUS ELDERS CONDEMNED // ROMANS 14:13–23; 1 CORINTHIANS 8:1–13

1 Then some of the elders of Israel came
and sat down before me. 2 And the word
of Yahweh came to me, saying, 3 "Son of
man, these men have set up idols in their
hearts and put wicked stumbling blocks
before their faces. Should I consult with
them in any way?

4 Therefore speak to them and tell them
that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:
'When any Israelite sets up idols in his
heart and puts a wicked stumbling block
before his face, and then comes to the
prophet, I Yahweh will answer him ac-
cording to his great idolatry, 5 so that I
may take hold of the hearts of the people
of Israel. For because of their idols, they
are all estranged from Me.'

6 Therefore tell the house of Israel that this
is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Repent
and turn away from your idols; turn your
faces away from all your abominations. 7
For when any Israelite or any foreigner
dwelling in Israel separates himself from
Me, sets up idols in his heart, and puts a
wicked stumbling block before his face,
and then comes to the prophet to inquire
of Me, I Yahweh will answer him Myself. 8 I
will set My face against that man and
make him a sign and a proverb; I will cut
him off from among My people. Then you
will know that I am Yahweh.

9 But if the prophet is enticed to speak a
message, then it was I Yahweh who en-
ticed him, and I will stretch out My hand
against him and destroy him from among
My people Israel. 10 They will bear their
punishment—the punishment of the in-
quirer will be the same as that of the
prophet— 11 in order that the house of Is-
rael may no longer stray from Me and no
longer defile themselves with all their
transgressions. Then they will be My peo-
ple and I will be their God, declares the
Lord Yahweh.'"

EZK 13:17 [DEMONIC] God sets His face against women who prophesy falsely
EZK 13:18 [DEMONIC] Women who sew magic charms to hunt souls
EZK 13:21 [DEMONIC] God ends the women's divination and frees His people
EZK 13:22 [TEXT] MADE THE HEART SAD. The Hebrew says they grieved the heart of the righteous, like the KJV.

EZK 14:3 [HEART] These men set up idols in their hearts. Idolatry starts on the inside.
EZK 14:3 [DEMONIC] Elders set up idols in their hearts

GOD SPEAKING

FOUR DIRE JUDGMENTS

12 And the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 13 "Son of man, if a land sins
against Me by acting unfaithfully, and I
stretch out My hand against it to cut off its
supply of food, to send famine upon it,
and to cut off from it both man and beast,
14 then even if these three men—Noah,
Daniel, and Job—were in it, their right-
eousness could deliver only themselves,
declares the Lord Yahweh.
15 Or if I send wild beasts through the land
to leave it childless and desolate, with no
man passing through it for fear of the
beasts, 16 then as surely as I live, declares
the Lord Yahweh, even if these three men
were in it, they could not deliver their own
sons or daughters. They alone would be
delivered, but the land would be desolate.
17 Or if I bring a sword against that land
and say, 'Let a sword pass through it,' so
that I cut off from it both man and beast,
18 then as surely as I live, declares the Lord
Yahweh, even if these three men were in
it, they could not deliver their own sons or
daughters. They alone would be deliv-
ered.
19 Or if I send a plague into that land and
pour out My wrath upon it through blood-
shed, cutting off from it both man and
beast, 20 then as surely as I live, declares
the Lord Yahweh, even if Noah, Daniel,
and Job were in it, they could not deliver
their own sons or daughters. Their right-
eousness could deliver only themselves.
21 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says:
'How much worse will it be when I send
against Jerusalem My four dire
judgments—sword, famine, wild beasts,
and plague—in order to cut off from it
both man and beast?
22 Yet, behold, some survivors will be left
in it—sons and daughters who will be
brought out. They will come out to you,
and when you see their conduct and ac-
tions, you will be comforted regarding the
disaster I have brought upon
Jerusalem—all that I have brought upon it.
23 They will bring you consolation when
you see their conduct and actions, and
you will know that it was not without
cause that I have done all these things
within it,' declares the Lord Yahweh."

EZK 14:14 [NOTE] NOAH, DANIEL AND JOB. Many read Daniel as the prophet, already known in Babylon for wisdom, Daniel 1 and 2. The Hebrew spelling is Danel, so some think of Danel, a just king in an old story from Ugarit. On Job, see When Did Job Live?, Job, p.839.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

A grapevine is great for grapes, but its wood is useless, not even good for a peg to hang a pot on. Jerusalem has become like that wood. Short chapter, sharp point.

JERUSALEM THE USELESS VINE

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "Son of man, how does the wood
of the vine surpass any other branch
among the trees in the forest? 3 Can wood
be taken from it to make something use-
ful? Or can one make from it a peg on
which to hang utensils?
4 No, it is cast into the fire for fuel. The fire
devours both ends, and the middle is
charred. Can it be useful for anything? 5
Even when it was whole, it could not be
made useful. How much less can it ever
be useful when the fire has consumed it
and charred it!
6 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says: 'Like the wood of the vine among
the trees of the forest, which I have given
to the fire for fuel, so I will give up the
people of Jerusalem. 7 And I will set My
face against them. Though they may have
escaped the fire, yet another fire will con-
sume them. And when I set My face
against them, you will know that I am Yah-
weh.
8 Thus I will make the land desolate, be-
cause they have acted unfaithfully,' de-
clares the Lord Yahweh."

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells the story of Jerusalem as an abandoned baby girl He rescued, raised and married. She ran after other gods and broke His heart. Still, the chapter ends with a promise: He will remember His covenant.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

JERUSALEM'S UNFAITHFULNESS

1 Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, confront Jerusalem with her abominations 3 and tell her that this is what the Lord Yahweh says to Jerusalem: Your origin and your birth were in the land of the Canaanites. Your father was an Amorite and your mother a Hittite. 4 On the day of your birth your cord was not cut, nor were you washed with water for cleansing. You were not rubbed with salt or wrapped in cloths. 5 No one cared enough for you to do even one of these things out of compassion for you. Instead, you were thrown out into the open field, because you were despised on the day of your birth.

6 Then I passed by and saw you wallowing in your blood, and as you lay there in your blood I said to you, 'Live!' There I said to you, 'Live!' 7 I made you thrive like a plant of the field. You grew up and matured and became very beautiful. Your breasts were formed and your hair grew, but you were naked and bare.

8 Then I passed by and saw you, and you were indeed old enough for love. So I spread My cloak over you and covered your nakedness. I pledged Myself to you, entered into a covenant with you, and you became Mine, declares the Lord Yahweh. 9 Then I bathed you with water, rinsed off your blood, and anointed you with oil. 10 I clothed you in embroidered cloth and gave you sandals of fine leather. I wrapped you in fine linen and covered you with silk. 11 I adorned you with jewelry, and I put bracelets on your wrists and a chain around your neck. 12 I put a ring in your nose, earrings on your ears, and a beautiful crown upon your head.

13 So you were adorned with gold and silver, and your clothing was made of fine linen, silk, and embroidered cloth. You ate fine flour, honey, and oil. You became very beautiful and rose to be queen. 14 Your fame spread among the nations on account of your beauty, for it was perfect in the splendor I bestowed on you, declares the Lord Yahweh.

15 But because of your fame, you trusted in your beauty and played the harlot. You lavished your favors on everyone who passed by, and your beauty was theirs for the asking. 16 You took some of your garments and made colorful high places for yourself, and on them you prostituted yourself. Such things should not have happened; never should they have occurred!

17 You also took the fine jewelry of gold and silver I had given you, and you made male idols with which to prostitute yourself. 18 You took your embroidered garments to cover them, and you set My oil and incense before them. 19 And you set before them as a pleasing aroma the food I had given you—the fine flour, oil, and honey that I had fed you. That is what happened, declares the Lord Yahweh.

20 You even took the sons and daughters you bore to Me and sacrificed them as food to idols. Was your prostitution not enough? 21 You slaughtered My children and delivered them up through the fire to idols.

22 And in all your abominations and acts of prostitution, you did not remember the days of your youth when you were naked and bare, wallowing in your own blood.

23 Woe! Woe to you, declares the Lord Yahweh. And in addition to all your other wickedness, 24 you built yourself a mound and made yourself a lofty shrine in every public square. 25 At the head of every

- **EZK 16:3 [NOTE]** A PICTURE STORY. Chapter 16 is a long parable. Jerusalem is a baby left to die, saved and raised by God, then married to Him. It is hard to read on purpose, so the people would feel how much they had hurt Him.
- **EZK 16:6 [NOTE]** LIVE! Unwanted babies were sometimes left outside to die in the ancient world. God saw her and said one word: Live.
- **EZK 16:8 [NOTE]** I SPREAD MY GARMENT. A way of saying I will marry you, like Ruth 3:9. God's covenant with Israel was a marriage.
- **EZK 16:15 [DEMONIC]** Jerusalem sacrifices God's children to idols
- **EZK 16:15 [NOTE]** UNFAITHFUL. The Bible calls idol worship adultery, because God's people belonged to Him alone, Hosea 2 and Jeremiah 3. The words are strong to show how much it hurt Him.
- **EZK 16:20 [NOTE]** YOUR CHILDREN. The worst sin of all: they gave their own sons and daughters to idols. God calls them My children, 16:21. He hated child sacrifice, Jeremiah 7:31.
- **EZK 16:24 [DEMONIC]** Jerusalem builds a shrine in every public square

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

street you built your lofty shrines and degraded your beauty. With increasing promiscuity, you spread your legs to all who passed by. 26 You prostituted yourself with your lustful neighbors, the Egyptians, and increased your promiscuity to provoke Me to anger.

27 Therefore I stretched out My hand against you and reduced your portion. I gave you over to the desire of those who hate you, the daughters of the Philistines, who were ashamed of your lewd conduct. 28 Then you prostituted yourself with the Assyrians, because you were not yet satisfied. Even after that, you were still not satisfied. 29 So you extended your promiscuity to Chaldea, the land of merchants—but even with this you were not satisfied!

30 How weak-willed is your heart, declares the Lord Yahweh, while you do all these things, the acts of a shameless prostitute! 31 But when you built your mounds at the head of every street and made your lofty shrines in every public square, you were not even like a prostitute, because you scorned payment.

32 You adulterous wife! You receive strangers instead of your own husband! 33 Men give gifts to all their prostitutes, but you gave gifts to all your lovers. You bribed them to come to you from everywhere for your illicit favors. 34 So your prostitution is the opposite of that of other women: No one solicited your favors, and you paid a fee instead of receiving one; so you are the very opposite!

JUDGMENT ON JERUSALEM

35 Therefore, O prostitute, hear the word of Yahweh! 36 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because you poured out your wealth and exposed your nakedness in your promiscuity with your lovers and with all your detestable idols, and because of the blood of your children which you gave to them, 37 therefore I will surely gather all the lovers with whom you found pleasure, all those you loved and all those you hated. I will gather them against you from all around and expose you before them, and they will see you completely naked. 38 And I will sentence you to the punishment of women who commit adultery and those who shed blood; so I will bring upon you the wrath of your bloodshed and jealousy.

39 Then I will deliver you into the hands of your lovers, and they will level your mounds and tear down your lofty shrines. They will strip off your clothes, take your fine jewelry, and leave you naked and bare. 40 They will bring a mob against you, who will stone you and cut you to pieces with their swords. 41 Then they will burn down your houses and execute judgment against you in the sight of many women.

I will put an end to your prostitution, and you will never again pay your lovers. 42 So I will lay to rest My wrath against you, and My jealousy will turn away from you. Then I will be calm and no longer angry.

43 Because you did not remember the days of your youth, but enraged Me with all these things, I will surely bring your deeds down upon your own head, declares the Lord Yahweh. Have you not committed this lewdness on top of all your other abominations?

44 Behold, all who speak in proverbs will quote this proverb about you:

'Like mother, like daughter.'

45 You are the daughter of your mother, who despised her husband and children. You are the sister of your sisters, who despised their husbands and children. Your mother was a Hittite and your father an Amorite. 46 Your older sister was Samaria, who lived with her daughters to your north; and your younger sister was Sodom, who lived with her daughters to your south. 47 And you not only walked in their ways and practiced their abominations, but soon you were more depraved than they were.

48 As surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, your sister Sodom and her

EZK 16:31 [DEMONIC] Shrines at the head of every street
EZK 16:36 [DEMONIC] Judgment for detestable idols and the blood of children

EZK 16:39 [DEMONIC] Her lovers will tear down her lofty shrines

GOD SPEAKING

daughters never did as you and your daughters have done. 49 Now this was the iniquity of your sister Sodom: She and her daughters were arrogant, overfed, and complacent; they did not help the poor and needy. 50 Thus they were haughty and committed abominations before Me. Therefore I removed them, as you have seen.

51 Furthermore, Samaria did not commit half the sins you did. You have multiplied your abominations beyond theirs, and all the abominations you have committed have made your sisters appear righteous. 52 So now you must bear your disgrace, since you have brought justification for your sisters. For they appear more righteous than you, because your sins were more vile than theirs. So you too must bear your shame and disgrace, since you have made your sisters appear righteous.

53 But I will restore Sodom and her daughters from captivity, as well as Samaria and her daughters. And I will restore you along with them. 54 So you will bear your disgrace and be ashamed of all you did to comfort them.

55 And your sisters, Sodom with her daughters and Samaria with her daughters, will return to their former state. You and your daughters will also return to your former state. 56 Did you not treat your sister Sodom as an object of scorn in the day of your pride, 57 before your wickedness was uncovered? Even so, you are now scorned by the daughters of Edom and all those around her, and by the daughters of the Philistines—all those around you who despise you. 58 You will bear the consequences of your lewdness and your abominations, declares Yahweh.

THE COVENANT REMEMBERED

59 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: I will deal with you according to your deeds, since you have despised the oath by breaking the covenant. 60 But I will remember the covenant I made with you in the days of your youth, and I will establish an everlasting covenant with you. 61 Then you will remember your ways and be ashamed when you receive your older and younger sisters. I will give them to you as daughters, but not because of My covenant with you.

62 So I will establish My covenant with you, and you will know that I am Yahweh, 63 so that when I make atonement for all you have done, you will remember and be ashamed and never again open your mouth because of your disgrace, declares the Lord Yahweh."

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

A riddle about two eagles and a vine. It is really about Judah's king breaking his promise to Babylon and running to Egypt for help. Then God plants a tender twig on a high mountain, and it grows into a great tree.

THE PARABLE OF TWO EAGLES AND A VINE // MATTHEW 13:24–30

1 Now the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, pose a riddle;
speak a parable to the house of Israel 3 and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'A great eagle with great wings and long pinions,
full of feathers of many colors,
came to Lebanon
and took away the top of the cedar.
4 He plucked off its topmost shoot,
carried it to the land of merchants,
and planted it in a city of traders.
5 He took some of the seed of the land
and planted it in fertile soil;
he placed it by abundant waters
and set it out like a willow.
6 It sprouted and became a spreading vine,
low in height, with branches turned toward him;
yet its roots remained where it stood.

■ **EZK 16:49 [NOTE]** THE SIN OF SODOM. Pride, plenty of food, easy comfort, and no help for the poor and needy, then detestable things, 16:50. Genesis 19 tells the rest.

■ **EZK 16:60 [NOTE]** I WILL REMEMBER. After all that, God promises an everlasting covenant. Grace gets the last word, Jeremiah 31:31 to 34.

■ **EZK 17:3 [NOTE]** THE RIDDLE. The first eagle is Nebuchadnezzar, the cedar top King Jehoiachin, the vine Zedekiah, and the second eagle Pharaoh, 17:12 to 15.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

So it became a vine and yielded branches
and sent out shoots.

7 But there was another great eagle
with great wings and many feathers.
And behold, this vine bent its roots toward
him.
It stretched out its branches to him from
its planting bed,
so that he might water it.
8 It had been planted in good soil
by abundant waters
in order to yield branches and bear fruit
and become a splendid vine.'

9 So you are to tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'Will it flourish?
Will it not be uprooted and stripped of
its fruit
so that it shrivels?
All its foliage will wither!
It will not take a strong arm or many peo-
ple
to pull it up by its roots.
10 Even if it is transplanted,
will it flourish?
Will it not completely wither when the east
wind strikes?
It will wither on the bed where it
sprouted.'"

THE PARABLE EXPLAINED

11 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 12 "Now say to this rebellious house: 'Do you not know what these things mean?'

Tell them, 'Behold, the king of Babylon came to Jerusalem, carried off its king and officials, and brought them back with him to Babylon. 13 He took a member of the royal family and made a covenant with him, putting him under oath. Then he carried away the leading men of the land, 14 so that the kingdom would be brought low, unable to lift itself up, surviving only by keeping his covenant.

15 But this king rebelled against Babylon by sending his envoys to Egypt to ask for horses and a large army. Will he flourish? Will the one who does such things escape? Can he break a covenant and yet escape?'

16 'As surely as I live,' declares the Lord Yahweh, 'he will die in Babylon, in the land of the king who enthroned him, whose oath he despised and whose covenant he broke. 17 Pharaoh with his mighty army and vast horde will not help him in battle, when ramps are built and siege walls constructed to destroy many lives. 18 He despised the oath by breaking the covenant. Seeing that he gave his hand in pledge yet did all these things, he will not escape!'

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE ISHTAR GATE

EZEKIEL 17:12 · 2 KINGS 24:15 · DANIEL 4:30



The front of the Ishtar Gate, rebuilt from its original glazed bricks in the Pergamon Museum, Berlin. Photo Kurt Kaiser, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

The grand north gate of Babylon, covered with shiny blue glazed bricks and rows of bulls and dragons, built by Nebuchadnezzar II. It opened onto the Processional Way, lined with lions.

HOW OLD IT IS

Built about 575 BC, in the very years Ezekiel lived among the exiles.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Robert Koldewey's German team dug Babylon from 1899 to 1917 and found thousands of broken glazed bricks. The front part of the gate was put back together in Berlin and opened in 1930. The bigger back gate was too large to rebuild.

WHAT IT SAYS

Nebuchadnezzar's inscription on the

EZK 17:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The blue glazed gate of Babylon built by Nebuchadnezzar about 575 BC, see The Ishtar Gate Field Notes box, p.1270FIELD NOTES p.1270

EZK 17:16 [PROPHECY] The king who broke his oath to Babylon would die in Babylon → JER 52:11; 2KI 24:20 p.1227

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

gate says he built it with blue bricks so people would look on it in wonder. Compare Daniel 4:30: Is this not Babylon the great, which I have built?

WHAT IT SHOWS

This is the city where Judah's king and leaders were taken, 17:12. Babylon looked unbeatable, but it fell to Persia in 539 BC.

SEE ALSO

The Jehoiachin Ration Tablets, found near this gate, and The Babylonian Chronicle, 2 Kings, p.659.

19 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'As surely as I live, I will bring down upon his head My oath that he despised and My covenant that he broke. 20 I will spread My net over him and catch him in My snare. I will bring him to Babylon and execute judgment upon him there for the treason he committed against Me. 21 All his choice troops will fall by the sword, and those who survive will be scattered to every wind. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken.'

22 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'I will take a shoot from the lofty top of the cedar,
and I will set it out.
I will pluck a tender sprig from its topmost shoots,
and I will plant it on a high and lofty mountain.
23 I will plant it on the mountain heights of Israel
so that it will bear branches;
it will yield fruit
and become a majestic cedar.
Birds of every kind will nest under it,
taking shelter in the shade of its branches.

24 Then all the trees of the field will know that I am Yahweh.
I bring the tall tree down
and make the low tree tall.
I dry up the green tree
and make the withered tree flourish.
I, Yahweh, have spoken,
and I have done it.'"

EZK 17:22 [PROPHECY] God would plant a tender sprig on Israel's high mountain and birds would nest in it → MT 13:31-32; LK 1:32-33 · MEDIUM p.1569

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

People blamed their parents: the fathers ate sour grapes, and the kids' teeth are on edge. God says each person answers for his own choices. And He takes no pleasure in anyone's death, so turn and live.

THE SOUL WHO SINS WILL DIE

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "What do you people mean by quoting this proverb about the land of Israel:

'The fathers have eaten sour grapes,
and the teeth of the children are set on edge'?

3 As surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, you will no longer quote this proverb in Israel. 4 Behold, every soul belongs to Me; both father and son are Mine. The soul who sins is the one who will die.

5 Now suppose a man is righteous and does what is just and right:

6 He does not eat at the mountain
or look to the idols of the house of Israel.
He does not defile his neighbor's wife
or approach a woman during her period.
7 He does not oppress another,
but restores the pledge to the debtor.
He does not commit robbery,
but gives his bread to the hungry
and covers the naked with clothing.
8 He does not engage in usury
or take excess interest,
but he withholds his hand from iniquity
and executes true justice between men.
9 He follows My statutes
and faithfully keeps My ordinances.
That man is righteous;

EZK 18:2 [DEMONIC] The sour grapes proverb ends; the soul who sins will die

EZK 18:2 [NOTE] SOUR GRAPES. The people said our parents sinned and we are paying for it. Jeremiah heard the same saying, Jeremiah 31:29 to 30. See Do Children Pay?

EZK 18:4 [NOTE] EVERY SOUL IS MINE. Each person stands before God for himself. Death here means being cut off from God's life.

EZK 18:6 [DEMONIC] The righteous man does not look to idols

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

surely he will live,
declares the Lord Yahweh.

10 Now suppose that man has a violent
son, who sheds blood or does any of
these things, 11 though the father has done
none of them:

Indeed, the son eats at the mountain
and defiles his neighbor's wife.
12 He oppresses the poor and needy;
he commits robbery
and does not restore a pledge.
He lifts his eyes to idols;
he commits abominations.
13 He engages in usury
and takes excess interest.

Will this son live? He will not! Since he has committed all these abominations, he will surely die; his blood will be on his own head.

14 Now suppose this son has a son who sees all the sins his father has committed, considers them, and does not do likewise:

15 He does not eat at the mountain
or look to the idols of the house of Israel.
He does not defile his neighbor's wife.
16 He does not oppress another,
or retain a pledge, or commit robbery.
He gives his bread to the hungry
and covers the naked with clothing.
17 He withholds his hand from harming the poor
and takes no interest or usury.
He keeps My ordinances
and follows My statutes.

Such a man will not die for his father's iniquity. He will surely live.

18 As for his father, he will die for his own iniquity, because he practiced extortion, robbed his brother, and did what was wrong among his people.

19 Yet you may ask, 'Why shouldn't the son bear the iniquity of his father?'

Since the son has done what is just and right, carefully observing all My statutes, he will surely live.

20 The soul who sins is the one who will die. A son will not bear the iniquity of his father, and a father will not bear the iniquity of his son. The righteousness of the righteous man will fall upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked man will fall upon him.

21 But if the wicked man turns from all the sins he has committed, keeps all My statutes, and does what is just and right, he will surely live; he will not die. 22 None of the transgressions he has committed will be held against him. Because of the righteousness he has practiced, he will live. 23 Do I take any pleasure in the death of the wicked? declares the Lord Yahweh. Wouldn't I prefer that he turn from his ways and live?

24 But if a righteous man turns from his righteousness and practices iniquity, committing the same abominations as the wicked, will he live? None of the righteous acts he did will be remembered. Because of the unfaithfulness and sin he has committed, he will die.

25 Yet you say, 'The way of the Lord is not just.'

Hear now, O house of Israel: Is it My way that is unjust? Is it not your ways that are unjust?

26 If a righteous man turns from his righteousness and practices iniquity, he will die for this. He will die because of the iniquity he has committed.

27 But if a wicked man turns from the wickedness he has committed and does what is just and right, he will save his life. 28 Because he considered and turned from all the transgressions he had committed, he will surely live; he will not die.

29 Yet the house of Israel says, 'The way of the Lord is not just.'

Are My ways unjust, O house of Israel? Is it not your ways that are unjust?

30 Therefore, O house of Israel, I will judge you, each according to his ways, declares

EZK 18:11 [DEMONIC] The wicked son eats at shrines and looks to idols
EZK 18:15 [DEMONIC] The good grandson does not look to idols
EZK 18:20 [DEMONIC] A son will not bear the iniquity of his father
EZK 18:23 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:9 p.2034

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

the Lord Yahweh. Repent and turn from all your transgressions, so that your iniquity will not become your downfall. 31 Cast away from yourselves all the transgressions you have committed, and fashion for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit. Why should you die, O house of Israel? 32 For I take no pleasure in anyone's death, declares the Lord Yahweh. So repent and live!

THE BIG QUESTION

DO CHILDREN PAY?

For Their Parents' Sins

EZEKIEL 18:1 TO 32

THE SAYING

The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge, 18:2. The exiles were blaming their parents for their trouble.

GOD'S ANSWER

The soul who sins is the one who will die. A son will not bear the iniquity of his father, 18:20. Ezekiel walks through three generations: a good father, a bad son and a good grandson. Each one is judged for his own life.

BUT WHAT ABOUT EXODUS 20:5?

God said He visits the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and fourth generation of those who hate Me. So how do the two fit?

How Both Verses Fit

EXODUS 20:5 TO 6 · DEUTERONOMY 24:16 · GALATIANS 3:13 · 2 CORINTHIANS 5:17

CONSEQUENCES AND GUILT

Most teachers say Exodus is about consequences: a parent's sin can hurt a family for years. Ezekiel is about guilt before God: no one is punished for a sin he did not choose. And Exodus says of those who hate Me, children who keep doing the same sin.

THE PATTERN CAN BE BROKEN

The grandson in 18:14 to 17 sees his father's sins and does not do them. He will surely live. No family story is too strong for God to change.

GENERATIONAL CURSES

Some Christians teach that family curses must be broken in prayer. Others say Ezekiel 18, and Christ becoming a curse for us, Galatians 3:13, mean believers are already free. Both agree: turn to God and walk in His ways.

TURN AND LIVE

God takes no pleasure in anyone's death, 18:32. Make yourselves a new heart and a new spirit, 18:31. That is the real answer to the sour grapes.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

A sad song about two young lions, Judah's kings, caught in nets and hauled away with hooks. Then a strong vine is pulled up and burned. A funeral song for the royal family.

A LAMENT FOR THE PRINCES OF ISRAEL

1 "As for you, take up a lament for the
princes of Israel 2 and say:

'What was your mother?
A lioness among the lions!
She lay down among the young lions;
she reared her cubs.
3 She brought up one of her cubs,
and he became a young lion.
After learning to tear his prey,
he devoured men.
4 When the nations heard of him,
he was trapped in their pit.
With hooks they led him away
to the land of Egypt.

5 When she saw that she had waited in vain,
that her hope was lost,
she took another of her cubs
and made him a young lion.
6 He prowled among the lions,
and became a young lion.
After learning to tear his prey,
he devoured men.
7 He broke down their strongholds

EZK 18:31 [HEART] Throw away your sins and make yourselves a new heart and a new spirit. Why should you die?

EZK 18:31 [NOTE] MAKE A NEW HEART. Here God tells them to make one. In 36:26 He promises to give one. Both are true: we turn, and God changes us, Philippians 2:12 to 13.

EZK 19:1 [NOTE] A FUNERAL SONG. In Hebrew it has a limping beat called qinah. The first lion is King Jehoahaz, taken to Egypt, 19:4. The second is probably Jehoiachin, taken to Babylon, 19:9.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and devastated their cities.
The land and everything in it
shuddered at the sound of his roaring.

8 Then the nations set out against him
from the provinces on every side.
They spread their net over him;
he was trapped in their pit.
9 With hooks they caged him
and brought him to the king of Babylon.
They brought him into captivity
so that his roar was heard no longer
on the mountains of Israel.

10 Your mother was like a vine in your vineyard,
planted by the water;
it was fruitful and full of branches
because of the abundant waters.
11 It had strong branches, fit for a ruler's scepter.
It towered high above the thick branches,
conspicuous for its height
and for its dense foliage.

12 But it was uprooted in fury,
cast down to the ground,
and the east wind dried up its fruit.
Its strong branches were stripped off
and they withered;
the fire consumed them.

13 Now it is planted in the wilderness,
in a dry and thirsty land.
14 Fire has gone out from its main branch
and devoured its fruit;
on it no strong branch remains
fit for a ruler's scepter.'
This is a lament and shall be used as a lament."

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

The elders come to ask God something again. Instead He walks them through their whole history of rebellion, from Egypt on. Still, He promises to gather them and accept them again.

ISRAEL'S REBELLION IN EGYPT

1 In the seventh year, on the tenth day of the fifth month, some of the elders of Israel came to inquire of Yahweh, and they sat down before me.

2 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 3 "Son of man, speak to the elders of Israel and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Have you come to inquire of Me? As surely as I live, I will not be consulted by you, declares the Lord Yahweh.

4 Will you judge them, will you judge them, son of man? Confront them with the abominations of their fathers 5 and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: On the day I chose Israel, I swore an oath to the descendants of the house of Jacob and made Myself known to them in the land of Egypt. With an uplifted hand I said to them, 'I am Yahweh your God.'

6 On that day I swore to bring them out of the land of Egypt into a land that I had searched out for them, a land flowing with milk and honey, the glory of all lands. 7 And I said to them: 'Each of you must throw away the abominations before his eyes, and you must not defile yourselves with the idols of Egypt. I am Yahweh your God.'

8 But they rebelled against Me and refused to listen. None of them cast away the abominations before their eyes, and they did not forsake the idols of Egypt. So I resolved to pour out My wrath upon them and vent My anger against them in the land of Egypt. 9 But I acted for the sake of My name, that it should not be profaned in the eyes of the nations among whom they were living, in whose sight I had revealed Myself to Israel by bringing them out of the land of Egypt.

ISRAEL'S REBELLION IN THE WILDERNESS

10 So I brought them out of the land of Egypt and led them into the wilderness. 11 And I gave them My statutes and made known to them My ordinances—for the man who does these things will live by them. 12 I also gave them My Sabbaths as a sign between us, so that they would

EZK 20:1 [NOTE] THE SEVENTH YEAR. August 591 BC. The elders came to ask God something, and God answered with a history lesson.
EZK 20:7 [DEMONIC] Israel would not give up the idols of Egypt

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

know that I am Yahweh who sanctifies them.

13 Yet the house of Israel rebelled against Me in the wilderness. They did not follow My statutes and they rejected My ordinances—though the man who does these things will live by them—and they utterly profaned My Sabbaths. Then I resolved to pour out My wrath upon them and put an end to them in the wilderness. 14 But I acted for the sake of My name, so that it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations in whose sight I had brought them out.

15 Moreover, with an uplifted hand I swore to them in the wilderness that I would not bring them into the land that I had given them—a land flowing with milk and honey, the glory of all lands— 16 because they kept rejecting My ordinances, refusing to walk in My statutes, and profaning My Sabbaths; for their hearts continually went after their idols. 17 Yet I looked on them with pity and did not destroy them or bring them to an end in the wilderness.

18 In the wilderness I said to their children: 'Do not walk in the statutes of your fathers or keep their ordinances or defile yourselves with their idols. 19 I am Yahweh your God; walk in My statutes, keep My ordinances, and practice them. 20 Keep My Sabbaths holy, that they may be a sign between us, so that you may know that I am Yahweh your God.'

21 But the children rebelled against Me. They did not walk in My statutes or carefully observe My ordinances—though the man who does these things will live by them—and they profaned My Sabbaths. So I resolved to pour out My wrath upon them and vent My anger against them in the wilderness. 22 But I withheld My hand and acted for the sake of My name, so that it would not be profaned in the eyes of the nations in whose sight I had brought them out.

23 However, with an uplifted hand I swore to them in the wilderness that I would scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the lands. 24 For they did not practice My ordinances, but they rejected My statutes and profaned My Sabbaths, fixing their eyes on the idols of their fathers.

25 I also gave them over to statutes that were not good and ordinances by which they could not live. 26 And I pronounced them unclean through their gifts—the sacrifice of every firstborn in the fire—so that I might devastate them, in order that they would know that I am Yahweh.

ISRAEL'S REBELLION IN THE LAND

27 Therefore, son of man, speak to the house of Israel, and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: In this way also your fathers blasphemed Me by their unfaithfulness against Me. 28 When I brought them into the land that I swore to give them and they saw any high hill or leafy tree, there they offered their sacrifices, presented offerings that provoked Me, sent up their fragrant incense, and poured out their drink offerings. 29 So I asked them: 'What is this high place to which you go?'

(And to this day it is called Bamah.)

30 Therefore tell the house of Israel that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Will you defile yourselves the way your fathers did, prostituting yourselves with their abominations? 31 When you offer your gifts, sacrificing your sons in the fire, you continue to defile yourselves with all your idols to this day. So should I be consulted by you, O house of Israel? As surely as I

- **EZK 20:12 [NOTE]** MY SABBATHS. A sign between God and His people, Exodus 31:13. Keeping it meant trusting Him enough to stop and rest.
- **EZK 20:16 [DEMONIC]** Their hearts kept going after their idols
- **EZK 20:18 [DEMONIC]** Do not defile yourselves with your fathers' idols
- **EZK 20:24 [DEMONIC]** Their eyes were fixed on their fathers' idols
- **EZK 20:25 [NOTE]** STATUTES THAT WERE NOT GOOD. A hard verse. Most read it as God handing people over to the customs they chose, like the pagan practice in 20:26, Romans 1:24. God never commanded child sacrifice, Jeremiah 7:31.
- **EZK 20:26 [DEMONIC]** They made their firstborn pass through the fire
- **EZK 20:28 [DEMONIC]** They burn their sons and serve wood and stone

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

live, declares the Lord Yahweh, I will not be consulted by you!

32 When you say, 'Let us be like the nations, like the peoples of the lands, serving wood and stone,' what you have in mind will never come to pass.

JUDGMENT AND RESTORATION

33 As surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, with a strong hand, an outstretched arm, and outpoured wrath I will rule over you. 34 With a strong hand, an outstretched arm, and outpoured wrath I will bring you out from the peoples and gather you from the lands to which you have been scattered. 35 And I will bring you into the wilderness of the nations, where I will enter into judgment with you face to face.

36 Just as I entered into judgment with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so I will enter into judgment with you, declares the Lord Yahweh. 37 I will make you pass under the rod and will bring you into the bond of the covenant. 38 And I will purge you of those who rebel and transgress against Me. I will bring them out of the land in which they dwell, but they will not enter the land of Israel. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

39 And as for you, O house of Israel, this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Go and serve your idols, every one of you. But afterward, you will surely listen to Me, and you will no longer defile My holy name with your gifts and idols.

40 For on My holy mountain, the high mountain of Israel, declares the Lord Yahweh, there the whole house of Israel, all of them, will serve Me in the land. There I will accept them and will require your offerings and choice gifts, along with all your holy sacrifices.

41 When I bring you from the peoples and gather you from the lands to which you have been scattered, I will accept you as a pleasing aroma. And I will show My holiness through you in the sight of the nations. 42 Then you will know that I am Yahweh, when I bring you into the land of Israel, the land that I swore to give your fathers.

43 There you will remember your ways and all the deeds with which you have defiled yourselves, and you will loathe yourselves for all the evils you have done. 44 Then you will know, O house of Israel, that I am Yahweh, when I have dealt with you for the sake of My name and not according to your wicked ways and corrupt acts, declares the Lord Yahweh."

A PROPHECY AGAINST THE SOUTH

45 Now the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 46 "Son of man, set your face toward the south, preach against it, and prophesy against the forest of the Negev. 47 Say to the forest of the Negev: Hear the word of Yahweh! This is what the Lord Yahweh says: I am about to ignite in you a fire, and it will devour all your trees, both green and dry. The blazing flame will not be quenched, and by it every face from south to north will be scorched. 48 Then all people will see that I, Yahweh, have kindled it; it will not be quenched."

49 Then I said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh, they are saying of me, 'Is he not just telling parables?'"

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

God's sword is sharpened and polished. The king of Babylon stands at a fork in the road and uses fortune telling to choose his way, and it points to Jerusalem. The crown is removed until the One comes whose right it is.

GOD'S SWORD OF JUDGMENT

1 And the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, set your face against Jerusalem and preach against the sanctuaries. Prophesy against the land of Israel 3 and tell her that this is what Yahweh says: 'I am against you, and I will draw My sword from its sheath and cut off from you both the righteous and the

EZK 20:37 [NOTE] UNDER THE ROD. A shepherd counted his sheep as they passed under his staff, Leviticus 27:32. God will count His people one by one.

EZK 20:39 [DEMONIC] Go serve your idols then

EZK 20:49 [NOTE] JUST TELLING STORIES. People complained that Ezekiel only told parables. Jesus also taught in parables, and His disciples asked Him why, Matthew 13:10 to 13.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

wicked. 4 Because I will cut off both the
righteous and the wicked, My sword will
be unsheathed against everyone from
south to north. 5 Then all flesh will know
that I, Yahweh, have taken My sword from
its sheath, not to return it again.'

6 But you, son of man, groan! Groan be-
fore their eyes with a broken heart and
bitter grief. 7 And when they ask, 'Why are
you groaning?' you are to say, 'Because of
the news that is coming. Every heart will
melt, and every hand will go limp. Every
spirit will faint, and every knee will turn to
water.' Yes, it is coming and it will surely
happen, declares the Lord Yahweh."

8 Again the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 9 "Son of man, prophesy and tell
them that this is what the Lord says:

'A sword, a sword,
sharpened and polished—
10 it is sharpened for the slaughter,
polished to flash like lightning!
Should we rejoice in the scepter of My
son?
The sword despises every such stick.
11 The sword is appointed to be polished,
to be grasped in the hand.
It is sharpened and polished,
to be placed in the hand of the slayer.

12 Cry out and wail,
O son of man,
for the sword is wielded against My peo-
ple;
it is against all the princes of Israel!
They are tossed to the sword with My
people;
therefore strike your thigh.
13 Surely testing will come!
And what if even the scepter,
which the sword despises,
does not continue?'
declares the Lord Yahweh.
14 'So then, son of man,
prophesy and strike your hands to-
gether.
Let the sword strike two times,
even three.
It is a sword that slays,
a sword of great slaughter
closing in on every side!

15 So that their hearts may melt
and many may stumble,
I have appointed at all their gates
a sword for slaughter.
Yes, it is ready to flash like lightning;
it is drawn for slaughter.
16 Slash to the right;
set your blade to the left—
wherever your blade is directed.

17 I too will strike My hands together,
and I will satisfy My wrath.'
I, Yahweh, have spoken."

18 Then the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 19 "Now you, son of man, mark out
two roads for the sword of the king of
Babylon to take, both starting from the
same land. And make a signpost where
the road branches off to each city. 20 Mark
out one road for the sword to come
against Rabbah of the Ammonites, and
another against Judah into fortified
Jerusalem.

21 For the king of Babylon stands at the
fork in the road, at the junction of the two
roads, to seek an omen: He shakes the ar-
rows, he consults the idols, he examines
the liver.

22 In his right hand appears the portent for
Jerusalem, where he is to set up battering
rams, to call for the slaughter, to lift a bat-
tle cry, to direct the battering rams against
the gates, to build a ramp, and to erect a
siege wall. 23 It will seem like a false omen
to the eyes of those who have sworn alle-
giance to him, but it will draw attention to
their guilt and take them captive.

24 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says: 'Because you have drawn attention
to your guilt, exposing your transgres-
sions, so that your sins are revealed in all
your deeds—because you have come to
remembrance—you shall be taken in
hand.

EZK 21:6 [TEXT] A BROKEN HEART. The Hebrew says breaking loins, the seat of strength. The KJV says the breaking of thy loins. Many Bibles say heart.

EZK 21:21 [PROPHECY] The king of Babylon would cast lots at a fork in the road and the lot would fall on Jerusalem → 2KI 25:1 p.660

EZK 21:21 [DEMONIC] Babylon's king shakes arrows and reads a liver

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

25 And you, O profane and wicked prince
of Israel,
the day has come for your final punishment.'

26 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'Remove the turban,
and take off the crown.
Things will not remain as they are:
Exalt the lowly
and bring low the exalted.
27 A ruin, a ruin,
I will make it a ruin!
And it will not be restored
until the arrival of Him to whom it belongs,
to whom I have assigned the right of judgment.'

28 Now prophesy, son of man, and declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says concerning the Ammonites and their contempt:

'A sword! A sword
is drawn for slaughter,
polished to consume,
to flash like lightning—
29 while they offer false visions for you
and lying divinations about you—
to be placed on the necks
of the wicked who are slain,
whose day has come,
the time of their final punishment.

30 Return the sword to its sheath!

In the place where you were created,
in the land of your origin,
I will judge you.
31 I will pour out My anger upon you;
I will breathe the fire of My fury against you;
I will hand you over to brutal men,
skilled in destruction.
32 You will be fuel for the fire.
Your blood will stain your own land.
You will not be remembered,
for I, Yahweh, have spoken.'"

- EZK 21:26 [PROPHECY] The crown would be removed and stay in ruins until He comes to whom it belongs → LK 1:32-33; REV 19:16 · MEDIUM p.1645
- EZK 21:29 [DEMONIC] Lying divinations about the Ammonites

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

A list of Jerusalem's sins, from the leaders down to the people. God looked for someone to stand in the gap, and found no one. Ouch.

THE SINS OF JERUSALEM

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "As for you, son of man, will you judge her? Will you pass judgment on the city of bloodshed? Then confront her with all her abominations 3 and tell her that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'O city who brings her own doom by shedding blood within her walls and making idols to defile herself, 4 you are guilty of the blood you have shed, and you are defiled by the idols you have made. You have brought your days to a close and have come to the end of your years. Therefore I have made you a reproach to the nations and a mockery to all the lands. 5 Those near and far will mock you, O infamous city, full of turmoil.

6 See how every prince of Israel within you has used his power to shed blood. 7 Father and mother are treated with contempt. Within your walls the foreign resident is exploited, the fatherless and the widow are oppressed.

8 You have despised My holy things and profaned My Sabbaths. 9 Among you are slanderous men bent on bloodshed; within you are those who eat on the mountain shrines and commit acts of indecency.

10 In you they have uncovered the nakedness of their fathers; in you they violate women during their menstrual impurity. 11 One man commits an abomination with his neighbor's wife; another wickedly defiles his daughter-in-law; and yet another violates his sister, his own father's daughter.

12 In you they take bribes to shed blood. You engage in usury, take excess interest, and extort your neighbors. But Me you have forgotten, declares the Lord Yahweh.

- EZK 22:3 [DEMONIC] Jerusalem defiles herself by making idols
- EZK 22:9 [DEMONIC] Some eat at the mountain shrines

DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

13 Now look, I strike My hands together
against your unjust gain and against the
blood you have shed in your midst. 14 Can
your heart endure or your hands be
strong in the day I deal with you? I, Yah-
weh, have spoken, and I will act. 15 I will
disperse you among the nations and scat-
ter you throughout the lands; I will purge
your uncleanness. 16 And when you have
defiled yourself in the eyes of the nations,
then you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

THE REFINING FURNACE

17 Then the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 18 "Son of man, the house of Israel
has become dross to Me. All of them are
copper, tin, iron, and lead inside the fur-
nace; they are but the dross of silver.

19 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says: 'Because all of you have become
dross, behold, I will gather you into
Jerusalem. 20 Just as one gathers silver,
copper, iron, lead, and tin into the furnace
to melt with a fiery blast, so I will gather
you in My anger and wrath, leave you
there, and melt you.

21 Yes, I will gather you together and blow
on you with the fire of My wrath, and you
will be melted within the city. 22 As silver is
melted in a furnace, so you will be melted
within the city. Then you will know that I,
Yahweh, have poured out My wrath upon
you.'"

ISRAEL'S WICKED LEADERS

23 And the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 24 "Son of man, say to her, 'In the
day of indignation, you are a land that has
not been cleansed, upon which no rain
has fallen.'

25 The conspiracy of the princes in her
midst is like a roaring lion tearing its prey.
They devour the people, seize the trea-
sures and precious things, and multiply
the widows within her.

26 Her priests do violence to My law and
profane My holy things. They make no
distinction between the holy and the com-
mon, and they fail to distinguish between
the clean and the unclean. They disregard
My Sabbaths, so that I am profaned
among them.

27 Her officials within her are like wolves
tearing their prey, shedding blood, and
destroying lives for dishonest gain.

28 Her prophets whitewash these deeds by
false visions and lying divinations, saying,
'This is what the Lord Yahweh says,' when
Yahweh has not spoken.

29 The people of the land have practiced
extortion and committed robbery. They
have oppressed the poor and needy and
have exploited the foreign resident with-
out justice.

30 I searched for a man among them to re-
pair the wall and stand in the gap before
Me on behalf of the land, so that I should
not destroy it. But I found no one. 31 So I
have poured out My indignation upon
them and consumed them with the fire of
My fury. I have brought their ways down
upon their own heads, declares the Lord
Yahweh."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

*Two sisters, Samaria and Jerusalem, chase for-
eign powers and their gods instead of God. It is a
hard picture of unfaithfulness. The point is clear:
you cannot be married to God and to idols at the
same time.*

THE TWO ADULTEROUS SISTERS

1 Again the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "Son of man, there were two
women, daughters of the same mother, 3
and they played in Egypt, prostituting
themselves from their youth. Their breasts
were fondled there, and their virgin bo-
soms caressed. 4 The older was named
Oholah, and her sister was named
Oholibah. They became Mine and gave
birth to sons and daughters. As for their

■ **EZK 22:14 [TEXT]** CAN YOUR HEART ENDURE. The He-
brew says libbekh, your heart. The KJV says Can thine
heart endure.

EZK 22:28 [DEMONIC] Prophets whitewash sin with lying
divinations

EZK 22:30 [NOTABLE] God looks for people who will
pray and stand up for others. One person can make a dif-
ference.

■ **EZK 23:2 [NOTE]** TWO SISTERS. A parable: Oholah is
Samaria and Oholibah is Jerusalem, 23:4. Oholibah
means My tent is in her. Both chased foreign powers and
their gods.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

identities, Oholah is Samaria, and Oholibah is Jerusalem.

5 Oholah prostituted herself while she was still Mine. She lusted after her lovers, the Assyrians—warriors 6 clothed in blue, governors and commanders, all desirable young men, horsemen mounted on steeds. 7 She offered sexual favors to all the elite of Assyria. She defiled herself with all the idols of those for whom she lusted.

8 She did not give up the prostitution she began in Egypt, when men slept with her in her youth, caressed her virgin bosom, and poured out their lust upon her. 9 Therefore I delivered her into the hands of her lovers, the Assyrians for whom she lusted. 10 They exposed her nakedness, seized her sons and daughters, and put her to the sword. Thus she became a byword among women, and they executed judgment against her.

11 Her sister Oholibah saw this, yet in her lust and prostitution she was more depraved than her sister. 12 She too lusted after the Assyrians—governors and commanders, warriors dressed in splendor, horsemen riding on steeds, all desirable young men. 13 And I saw that she too had defiled herself; both of them had taken the same path.

14 But Oholibah carried her prostitution even further. She saw the men portrayed on the wall, images of the Chaldeans, engraved in vermilion, 15 wearing belts on their waists and flowing turbans on their heads; all of them looked like officers of the Babylonians in Chaldea, the land of their birth. 16 At the sight of them, she lusted for them and sent messengers to them in Chaldea. 17 Then the Babylonians came to her, to the bed of love, and in their lust they defiled her. But after she had been defiled by them, she turned away in disgust.

18 When Oholibah openly prostituted herself and exposed her nakedness, I turned away from her in disgust, just as I had turned away from her sister. 19 Yet she multiplied her promiscuity, remembering the days of her youth, when she had prostituted herself in the land of Egypt 20 and lusted after their lovers, whose genitals were like those of donkeys and whose emission was like that of stallions. 21 So you revisited the indecency of your youth, when the Egyptians caressed your bosom and pressed your young breasts.

OHOLIBAH TO BE PLAGUED

22 Therefore, Oholibah, this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I will incite your lovers against you, those from whom you turned away in disgust. And I will bring them against you from every side— 23 the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans, the men of Pekod, Shoa, and Koa, and all the Assyrians with them—all desirable young men, governors and commanders, officers and men of renown, mounted on horses.

24 They will come against you with a host of peoples, with weapons, chariots, and wagons. They will array themselves against you on every side with buckler and shield and helmet. I will delegate judgment to them, and they will punish you according to their own standards. 25 And I will set My jealous rage against you, and they will deal with you in fury. They will cut off your noses and ears, and your survivors will fall by the sword. They will seize your sons and daughters, and your remnant will be consumed by fire. 26 They will strip off your clothes and take your fine jewelry. 27 So I will put an end to your indecency and prostitution, which began in the land of Egypt, and you will not lift your eyes to them or remember Egypt anymore.'

28 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Surely I will deliver you into the hands of those you hate, from whom you turned away in disgust. 29 They will treat you with hatred, take all for which you have worked, and leave you naked and bare, so that the shame of your prostitution will be exposed. Your indecency and promiscuity 30 have brought these things upon you, because you have prostituted yourself

EZK 23:7 [DEMONIC] Oholah defiles herself with Assyria's idols

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

with the nations and defiled yourself with their idols. 31 Because you have followed the path of your sister, I will put her cup into your hand.'

32 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'You will drink your sister's cup,
a cup deep and wide.
It will bring scorn and derision,
for it holds so much.
33 You will be filled with drunkenness and grief,
with a cup of devastation and desolation,
the cup of your sister Samaria.
34 You will drink it and drain it;
you will dash it to pieces,
and tear your breasts.
For I have spoken,'
declares the Lord Yahweh.

35 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Because you have forgotten Me and have cast Me behind your back, you must bear the consequences of your indecency and prostitution.'"

JUDGMENT ON BOTH SISTERS

36 Then Yahweh said to me: "Son of man, will you pass judgment against Oholah and Oholibah? Then declare to them their abominations. 37 For they have committed adultery, and blood is on their hands. They have committed adultery with their idols. They have even sacrificed their children, whom they bore to Me, in the fire as food for their idols.

38 They have also done this to Me: On that very same day, they defiled My sanctuary and profaned My Sabbaths. 39 On the very day they slaughtered their children for their idols, they entered My sanctuary to profane it. Yes, they did this inside My house.

40 Furthermore, you sisters sent messengers for men who came from afar; and behold, when they arrived, you bathed for them, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry. 41 You sat on a couch of luxury with a table spread before it, on which you had set My incense and My oil, 42 accompanied by the sound of a carefree crowd. Drunkards were brought in from the desert along with men from the rabble, who put bracelets on your wrists and beautiful crowns on your head.

43 Then I said of her who had grown old in adulteries: 'Now let them use her as a prostitute, for that is all she is!'

44 And they slept with her as with a prostitute; they slept with Oholah and Oholibah, those lewd women. 45 But righteous men will sentence them to the punishment of those who commit adultery and bloodshed, because they are adulteresses with blood on their hands.

46 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Bring a mob against them and consign them to terror and plunder. 47 The mob will stone them and cut them down with their swords. They will kill their sons and daughters and burn down their houses. 48 So I will put an end to indecency in the land, and all the women will be admonished not to imitate your behavior. 49 They will repay you for your indecency, and you will bear the consequences of your sins of idolatry. Then you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.'"

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

The siege of Jerusalem begins the very day God tells Ezekiel. Then the hardest moment in the book: Ezekiel's wife dies, and God tells him not to mourn in public, as a sign. The people's grief will be too big for tears.

THE PARABLE OF THE COOKING POT

1 In the ninth year, on the tenth day of the tenth month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, write down today's date, for on this very day the king of Babylon has laid siege to Jerusalem. 3 Now speak a parable to this rebellious

EZK 23:30 [DEMONIC] Defiled by the idols of the nations
EZK 23:37 [DEMONIC] They kill their children for idols then enter God's house

EZK 23:49 [DEMONIC] You will bear the guilt of your idolatry
EZK 24:1 [PROPHECY] God told Ezekiel in Babylon the exact day the siege of Jerusalem began → 2KI 25:1; JER 52:4 p.660
EZK 24:1 [NOTE] THE NINTH YEAR. January 588 BC. That very day Babylon's army surrounded Jerusalem, 2 Kings 25:1, hundreds of miles away.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

house and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'Put the pot on the fire;
put it on and pour in the water.
4 Put in the pieces of meat,
every good piece—
thigh and shoulder—
fill it with choice bones.
5 Take the choicest of the flock
and pile the fuel beneath it.
Bring it to a boil
and cook the bones in it.'

6 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'Woe to the city of bloodshed,
to the pot now rusted,
whose rust will not come off!
Empty it piece by piece;
cast no lots for its contents.
7 For the blood she shed is still within her;
she poured it out on the bare rock;
she did not pour it on the ground
to cover it with dust.
8 In order to stir up wrath
and take vengeance,
I have placed her blood on the bare rock,
so that it would not be covered.'

9 Yes, this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'Woe to the city of bloodshed!
I, too, will pile the kindling high.
10 Pile on the logs and kindle the fire;
cook the meat well
and mix in the spices;
let the bones be burned.
11 Set the empty pot on its coals
until it becomes hot and its copper glows.
Then its impurity will melt within;
its rust will be consumed.
12 It has frustrated every effort;
its thick rust has not been removed,
even by the fire.
13 Because of the indecency of your uncleanness
I tried to cleanse you,
but you would not be purified
from your filthiness.
You will not be pure again
until My wrath against you has subsided.
14 I, Yahweh, have spoken;
the time is coming, and I will act.
I will not refrain or show pity,
nor will I relent.
I will judge you
according to your ways and deeds,'
declares the Lord Yahweh."

■ **EZK 24:3 [NOTE]** THE POT. The leaders had said the city was a safe pot, 11:3. Now the rusty pot itself will be heated until the rust burns away.

EZEKIEL'S WIFE DIES

15 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 16 "Son of man, behold, I am about to take away the desire of your eyes with a fatal blow. But you must not mourn or weep or let your tears flow. 17 Groan quietly; do not mourn for the dead. Put on your turban and strap your sandals on your feet; do not cover your lips or eat the bread of mourners."

18 So I spoke to the people in the morning, and in the evening my wife died. And the next morning I did as I had been commanded.

19 Then the people asked me, "Won't you tell us what these things you are doing mean to us?"

20 So I answered them, "The word of Yahweh came to me, saying: 21 Tell the house of Israel that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I am about to desecrate My sanctuary, the pride of your power, the desire of your eyes, and the delight of your soul. And the sons and daughters you left behind will fall by the sword.'

22 Then you will do as I have done: You will not cover your lips or eat the bread of mourners. 23 Your turbans will remain on your heads and your sandals on your feet. You will not mourn or weep, but you will

■ **EZK 24:16 [PROPHECY]** Ezekiel's wife would die suddenly and he must not mourn → EZK 24:18 p.1282
■ **EZK 24:16 [NOTE]** THE DESIRE OF YOUR EYES. Ezekiel's wife, 24:18. God told him ahead of time that she would die, and told him not to mourn in public, as a sign. Those few words show how much he loved her.
■ **EZK 24:17 [NOTE]** GROAN QUIETLY. God did not tell him not to grieve. He told him to groan quietly and skip the public mourning customs. His grief was real.
■ **EZK 24:18 [FULFILLS]** Ezekiel's wife would die suddenly and he must not mourn ← EZK 24:16-18 p.1282
■ **EZK 24:21 [NOTE]** THEIR DELIGHT. The temple was the people's delight. Like Ezekiel, they would lose what they loved most, and the loss would be too big for the usual mourning, 24:23.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA GOD SPEAKING

waste away because of your sins, and you will groan among yourselves.
24 'Thus Ezekiel will be a sign for you; you will do everything that he has done. When this happens, you will know that I am the Lord Yahweh.'
25 And you, son of man, know that on the day I take away their stronghold, their pride and joy—the desire of their eyes which uplifted their souls—and their sons and daughters as well, 26 on that day a fugitive will come and tell you the news. 27 On that day your mouth will be opened to him who has escaped; you will speak and no longer be mute. So you will be a sign to them, and they will know that I am Yahweh."

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS
Ammon, Moab, Edom and the Philistines laughed when Jerusalem fell. God says: I saw that. Each one gets its own short message.

A PROPHECY AGAINST AMMON

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, set your face against the Ammonites and prophesy against them. 3 Tell the Ammonites to hear the word of the Lord Yahweh, for this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Because you exclaimed, "Aha!" when My sanctuary was profaned, when the land of Israel was laid waste, and when the house of Judah went into exile, 4 therefore I will indeed give you as a possession to the people of the East. They will set up their camps and pitch their tents among you. They will eat your fruit and drink your milk. 5 I will make Rabbah a pasture for camels, and Ammon a resting place for sheep. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'

6 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Because you clapped your hands and stomped your feet and rejoiced over the land of Israel with a heart full of contempt, 7 therefore I will indeed stretch out My hand against you and give you as plunder to the nations. I will cut you off from the peoples and exterminate you from the countries. I will destroy you, and you will know that I am Yahweh.'

A PROPHECY AGAINST MOAB

8 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Because Moab and Seir said, "Look, the house of Judah is like all the other nations," 9 therefore I will indeed expose the flank of Moab beginning with its frontier cities—Beth-jeshimoth, Baal-meon, and Kiriathaim—the glory of the land. 10 I will give it along with the Ammonites as a possession to the people of the East, so that the Ammonites will no longer be remembered among the nations. 11 So I will execute judgments on Moab, and they will know that I am Yahweh.'

A PROPHECY AGAINST EDOM

12 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Because Edom acted vengefully against the house of Judah, and in so doing incurred grievous guilt, 13 therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: I will stretch out My hand against Edom and cut off from it both man and beast. I will make it a wasteland, and from Teman to Dedan they will fall by the sword. 14 I will take My vengeance on Edom by the hand of My people Israel, and they will deal with Edom according to My anger and wrath. Then they will know My vengeance, declares the Lord Yahweh.'

A PROPHECY AGAINST THE PHILISTINES

15 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Because the Philistines acted in vengeance,

- **EZK 24:26 [PROPHECY]** A fugitive would bring news of the fall and Ezekiel's mouth would be opened → EZK 33:21-22 p.1296
- **EZK 25:3 [NOTE]** AHA! Ammon cheered when the temple fell. God notices how people treat others on their worst day, Proverbs 24:17 to 18.
- **EZK 25:4 [PROPHECY]** Ammon would be given to people of the East and Rabbah made a pasture for camels → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon made war on the Ammonites and conquered them, 582 BC. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7.
- **EZK 25:6 [TEXT]** A HEART FULL OF CONTEMPT. The Hebrew word here is nephesh, soul: with all the contempt of your soul. The KJV says with all thy despite.
- **EZK 25:8 [PROPHECY]** Against Moab → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon made war on the Moabites and conquered them, 582 BC. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7.
- **EZK 25:12 [PROPHECY]** Against Edom → 1 Maccabees 5:3; 1 Maccabees 5:65
- **EZK 25:12 [NOTE]** EDOM. Esau's family. When Babylon attacked, Edom helped, Obadiah 1:10 to 14 and Psalm 137:7.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING

taking vengeance with malice of soul to destroy Judah with ancient hostility, 16 therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold, I will stretch out My hand against the Philistines, and I will cut off the Cherethites and destroy the remnant along the coast. 17 I will execute great vengeance against them with furious reproof. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I lay My vengeance upon them.'"

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Tyre, the rich island city, cheered when Jerusalem fell. God says many nations will come against her like waves, and her stones will be thrown into the sea. Keep reading; history has a twist.

A PROPHECY AGAINST TYRE // ISAIAH 23:1–18

1 In the eleventh month of the twelfth year, on the first day of the month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, because Tyre has said of Jerusalem, 'Aha! The gate to the nations is broken; it has swung open to me; now that she lies in ruins I will be filled,' 3 therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Behold, O Tyre, I am against you, and I will raise up many nations against you, as the sea brings up its waves. 4 They will destroy the walls of Tyre and demolish her towers. I will scrape the soil from her and make her a bare rock. 5 She will become a place to spread nets in the sea, for I have spoken, declares the Lord Yahweh. She will become plunder for the nations, 6 and the villages on her mainland will be slain by the sword. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.'

7 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Behold, I will bring against Tyre from the north Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, king of kings, with horses and chariots, with cavalry and a great company of troops. 8 He will slaughter the villages of your mainland with the sword; he will set up siege works against you, build a ramp to your walls, and raise his shields against you. 9 He will direct the blows of his battering rams against your walls and tear down your towers with his axes. 10 His multitude of horses will cover you in their dust.

When he enters your gates as an army entering a breached city, your walls will shake from the noise of cavalry, wagons, and chariots. 11 The hooves of his horses will trample all your streets. He will slaughter your people with the sword, and your mighty pillars will fall to the ground. 12 They will plunder your wealth and pillage your merchandise. They will demolish your walls, tear down your beautiful homes, and throw your stones and timber and soil into the water.

13 So I will silence the sound of your songs, and the music of your lyres will no longer be heard. 14 I will make you a bare rock, and you will become a place to spread the fishing nets. You will never be rebuilt, for I, Yahweh, have spoken, declares the Lord Yahweh.'

15 This is what the Lord Yahweh says to Tyre: 'Will not the coastlands quake at the

- **EZK 25:15 [PROPHECY]** Against the Philistines → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar destroyed Ashkelon in 604 BC, and the Philistines later vanished as a people. Found in the Babylonian Chronicle. · MEDIUM
- **EZK 26:2 [NOTE]** TYRE. A rich Phoenician port, part on the mainland and part on an island. It saw Jerusalem's fall as a business opportunity.
- **EZK 26:3 [PROPHECY]** Many nations would come against Tyre like waves and scrape her to bare rock → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar besieged Tyre about 586 to 573 BC, and Alexander took it in 332 BC. Recorded by Josephus and Arrian.
- **EZK 26:4 [NOTE]** BARE ROCK. The name Tyre means rock.
- **EZK 26:5 [PROPHECY]** Tyre shall be a place for spreading nets in the midst of the sea; you shall never be rebuilt → HISTORY: Alexander used the ruins of old Tyre to build a road into the sea, 332 BC. Recorded by Diodorus 17.40 and Curtius. · MEDIUM
- **EZK 26:7 [PROPHECY]** Nebuchadnezzar would besiege Tyre and slaughter its mainland villages → EZK 29:18 p.1291
- **EZK 26:12 [PROPHECY]** Tyre's stones, timber, and soil would be thrown into the water → HISTORY: Alexander threw old Tyre's stones and timber into the sea to build a road to the island, 332 BC. Recorded by Diodorus 17.40.
- **EZK 26:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Alexander built a causeway from the ruins of mainland Tyre, 332 BC, see Tyre and the Causeway Field Notes page, p.1285FIELD NOTES p.1285
- **EZK 26:14 [PROPHECY]** Tyre shall be a place for spreading nets in the midst of the sea; you shall never be rebuilt → HISTORY: Alexander used the ruins of old Tyre to build a road into the sea, 332 BC. Recorded by Diodorus 17.40 and Curtius. · MEDIUM
- **EZK 26:14 [NOTE]** NEVER REBUILT. A town called Tyre stands today on what was the island. Many read this as old Tyre on the mainland, or Tyre as a great power, which never came back. See Tyre and the Causeway.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

TYRE AND THE CAUSEWAY

EZEKIEL 26:3 TO 14 · 29:17 TO 20



The Roman colonnaded street on what was once the island of Tyre, Lebanon. Photo Heretiq, CC BY SA 2.5.

WHAT IT IS

Tyre, the great port of the Phoenicians, had two parts: an old town on the mainland and a walled city on a rocky island about half a mile offshore. Ezekiel said many nations would come against her like waves, 26:3.

HOW OLD IT IS

Tyre was already old in Joshua's day, Joshua 19:29, and Hiram of Tyre helped David and Solomon build, 1 Kings 5. The ruins in the photo are later, from Roman and Byzantine times.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S SIEGE

Josephus, quoting old records of Tyre, says Babylon besieged it for thirteen years, about 586 to 573 BC. The mainland towns fell, 26:8, but the island held out. Tyre seems to have given in at last, but Nebuchadnezzar got little loot, and Ezekiel 29:18 says so.

ALEXANDER'S CAUSEWAY

In 332 BC Alexander the Great could not reach the island. So his army tore down old mainland Tyre and dumped its stones, timber and soil into the sea to build a road out to the island. After seven months the city fell. Arrian and Diodorus tell the story. Compare 26:12: they will throw your stones, timber and soil into the water.

A PLACE FOR NETS

Over the centuries sand piled up along Alexander's road, so the island is now joined to the land. Ezekiel said Tyre would be a place to spread fishing nets, 26:5 and 26:14.

HONEST QUESTIONS

A town called Tyre stands today on the old island. Readers explain you will never be rebuilt, 26:14, in different ways: the old mainland city, or Tyre as a great power, or the many nations of 26:3 coming one wave after another. Some critics say the words about Nebuchadnezzar did not fully come true; Ezekiel himself reports that he got no wages there, 29:18.

TYRE IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

Jesus went to the region of Tyre and healed a Gentile mother's daughter, Mark 7:24 to 30. Paul stayed a week with the believers in Tyre, Acts 21:3 to 7.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Tyre's wealth and island walls could not keep it safe. Wave after wave of armies came, just as Ezekiel said.

GOD SPEAKING

sound of your downfall, when the
wounded groan at the slaughter in your
midst?
16 All the princes of the sea will descend
from their thrones, remove their robes,
and strip off their embroidered garments.
Clothed with terror, they will sit on the
ground, trembling every moment, ap-
palled over you. 17 Then they will lament
for you, saying,

"How you have perished, O city of renown
inhabited by seafaring men—
she who was powerful on the sea, along
with her people,
who imposed terror on all peoples!
18 Now the coastlands tremble
on the day of your downfall;
the islands in the sea
are dismayed by your demise."'
19 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says:
'When I make you a desolate city like
other deserted cities, and when I raise up
the deep against you so that the mighty
waters cover you, 20 then I will bring you
down with those who descend to the Pit,
to the people of antiquity. I will make you
dwell in the earth below like the ancient
ruins, with those who descend to the Pit,
so that you will no longer be inhabited or
set in splendor in the land of the living. 21 I
will make you an object of horror, and you
will be no more. You will be sought, but
will never be found,' declares the Lord
Yahweh."

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

A funeral song for Tyre, pictured as a beautiful ship loaded with treasure from everywhere. Then it sinks in the deep sea, and the sailors stand on the shore and cry.

A LAMENT FOR TYRE

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "Now you, son of man, take up a
lament for Tyre. 3 Tell Tyre, who dwells at
the gateway to the sea, merchant of the
peoples on many coasts, that this is what
the Lord Yahweh says:

You have said, O Tyre,
'I am perfect in beauty.'
4 Your borders are in the heart of the seas;
your builders perfected your beauty.
5 They constructed all your planking
with cypress from Senir.
They took a cedar from Lebanon
to make a mast for you.
6 Of oaks from Bashan
they made your oars;
of wood from the coasts of Cyprus
they made your deck, inlaid with ivory.
7 Of embroidered fine linen from Egypt
they made your sail,
which served as your banner.
Of blue and purple from the coasts of El-
ishah
they made your awning.

8 The men of Sidon and Arvad
were your oarsmen.
Your men of skill, O Tyre,
were there as your captains.
9 The elders of Gebal were aboard as
shipwrights,
repairing your leaks.
All the ships of the sea and their sailors
came alongside to barter for your mer-
chandise.

10 Men of Persia, Lydia, and Put
served as warriors in your army.
They hung their shields and helmets on
your walls;
they gave you splendor.
11 Men of Arvad and Helech
manned your walls all around,
and the men of Gammad
were in your towers.
They hung their shields around your walls;
they perfected your beauty.

12 Tarshish was your merchant because of
your great wealth of goods; they ex-
changed silver, iron, tin, and lead for your
wares.
13 Javan, Tubal, and Meshech were your
merchants. They exchanged slaves
and bronze utensils for your merchan-
dise.

■ **EZK 26:16 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 18:9-19 p.2108

■ **EZK 27:3 [NOTE]** THE SHIP. Tyre is pictured as a grand trading ship built from the best wood, 27:5 to 7. The list of trading partners in 27:12 to 24 is like an ancient shipping map.

GOD SPEAKING

14 The men of Beth-togarmah exchanged
horses, war horses, and mules for your
wares.
15 The men of Dedan were your clients;
many coastlands were your market;
they paid you with ivory tusks and
ebony.
16 Aram was your customer because of
your many products; they exchanged
turquoise, purple, embroidered work,
fine linen, coral, and rubies for your
wares.
17 Judah and the land of Israel traded with
you; they exchanged wheat from Min-
nith, cakes and honey, oil and balm for
your merchandise.
18 Because of your many products and
your great wealth of goods, Damascus
traded with you wine from Helbon,
wool from Zahar, 19 and casks of wine
from Izal for your wares. Wrought iron,
cassia, and sweet cane were ex-
changed for your merchandise.
20 Dedan was your merchant in saddle-
cloths for riding.
21 Arabia and all the princes of Kedar were
your customers, trading in lambs,
rams, and goats.
22 The merchants of Sheba and Raamah
traded with you; for your wares they
exchanged gold, the finest of all
spices, and precious stones.
23 Haran, Canneh, and Eden traded with
you, and so did the merchants of
Sheba, Asshur, and Chilmad. 24 In your
marketplace they traded with you fine
garments of blue, embroidered work,
and multicolored rugs with cords
tightly twisted and knotted.

25 The ships of Tarshish
carried your merchandise.
And you were filled with heavy cargo
in the heart of the sea.
26 Your oarsmen have brought you
onto the high seas,
but the east wind will shatter you
in the heart of the sea.
27 Your wealth, wares, and merchandise,
your sailors, captains, and shipwrights,
your merchants and all the warriors within
you,
with all the other people on board,
will sink into the heart of the sea
on the day of your downfall.

28 The countryside will shake
when your sailors cry out.
29 All who handle the oars
will abandon their ships.
The sailors and all the captains of the sea
will stand on the shore.
30 They will raise their voices for you
and cry out bitterly.
They will throw dust on their heads
and roll in ashes.
31 They will shave their heads for you
and wrap themselves in sackcloth.
They will weep over you
with anguish of soul and bitter mourn-
ing.

32 As they wail and mourn over you,
they will take up a lament for you:

'Who was ever like Tyre,
silenced in the middle of the sea?
33 When your wares went out to sea,
you satisfied many nations.
You enriched the kings of the earth
with your abundant wealth and mer-
chandise.
34 Now you are shattered by the seas
in the depths of the waters;
your merchandise and the people among
you
have gone down with you.
35 All the people of the coastlands
are appalled over you.
Their kings shudder with fear;
their faces are contorted.
36 Those who trade among the nations
hiss at you;
you have come to a horrible end
and will be no more.'"

EZK 27:28 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 18:9-19 p.2108

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

The ruler of Tyre thinks he is a god. Then comes a strange lament about a guardian cherub in Eden, perfect until pride was found in him. Readers have wondered ever since who that is really about.

A PROPHECY AGAINST THE RULER OF TYRE

1 And the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "Son of man, tell the ruler of Tyre
that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

Your heart is proud,
and you have said,
'I am a god;
I sit in the seat of gods
in the heart of the sea.'
Yet you are a man and not a god,
though you have regarded your heart
as that of a god.

3 Behold, you are wiser than Daniel;
no secret is hidden from you!
4 By your wisdom and understanding
you have gained your wealth
and amassed gold and silver
for your treasuries.
5 By your great skill in trading
you have increased your wealth,
but your heart has grown proud
because of it.

6 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says:

Because you regard your heart
as the heart of a god,
7 behold, I will bring foreigners against
you,
the most ruthless of nations.
They will draw their swords
against the beauty of your wisdom
and will defile your splendor.
8 They will bring you down to the Pit,
and you will die a violent death
in the heart of the seas.

9 Will you still say, 'I am a god,'
in the presence of those who slay you?
You will be only a man, not a god,
in the hands of those who wound you.
10 You will die the death of the uncircum-
cised
at the hands of foreigners.

For I have spoken,
declares the Lord Yahweh."

A LAMENT FOR THE KING OF TYRE

11 Again the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 12 "Son of man, take up a lament
for the king of Tyre and tell him that this is
what the Lord Yahweh says:

'You were the seal of perfection,
full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.
13 You were in Eden,
the garden of God.
Every kind of precious stone adorned you:
ruby, topaz, and diamond,
beryl, onyx, and jasper,
sapphire, turquoise, and emerald.
Your mountings and settings were crafted
in gold,
prepared on the day of your creation.

14 You were anointed as a guardian
cherub,
for I had ordained you.
You were on the holy mountain of God;
you walked among the fiery stones.
15 From the day you were created
you were blameless in your ways—
until wickedness was found in you.

16 By the vastness of your trade,
you were filled with violence, and you
sinned.
So I drove you in disgrace
from the mountain of God,
and I banished you, O guardian cherub,
from among the fiery stones.
17 Your heart grew proud of your beauty;
you corrupted your wisdom because of
your splendor;

- **EZK 28:2 [NOTE]** I AM DIVINE. Tyre's ruler thought his wealth made him divine. Herod heard the same praise and fell, Acts 12:21 to 23.
- **EZK 28:3 [NOTE]** WISER THAN DANIEL. A jab at the king. Many read Daniel as the prophet, famous in Babylon for wisdom, Daniel 1:20. Others think of Danel, a wise king in old stories from Ugarit, north of Tyre. See the 14:14 note.
- **EZK 28:7 [PROPHECY]** Foreign nations would bring the proud ruler of Tyre down to a violent death → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar besieged Tyre about 586 to 573 BC, and Alexander took it in 332 BC. Recorded by Josephus and Arrian. · MEDIUM
- **EZK 28:12 [NOTE]** THE KING OF TYRE. Now a lament full of Eden language: perfect, beautiful, a guardian cherub, until wickedness was found in him. See Who Is the Prince of Tyre?
- **EZK 28:13 [NOTE]** THE STONES. They are almost the same as stones on the high priest's breastplate, Exodus 28:17 to 20.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

so I cast you to the earth;
I made you a spectacle before kings.
18 By the multitude of your iniquities
and the dishonesty of your trading
you have profaned your sanctuaries.
So I made fire come from within you,
and it consumed you.
I reduced you to ashes on the ground
in the eyes of all who saw you.
19 All the nations who know you
are appalled over you.
You have come to a horrible end
and will be no more.'"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS THE PRINCE OF TYRE?

Ezekiel 28 and the Fall of Satan

EZEKIEL 28:1 TO 19

TWO MESSAGES

28:1 to 10 speaks to the ruler of Tyre, a man who says I am a god, 28:2. Then 28:11 to 19 is a lament for the king of Tyre, and the words grow strange: perfect in beauty, in Eden, the garden of God, a guardian cherub on God's holy mountain, blameless until wickedness was found in you.

THE KING IN EZEKIEL'S DAY

Tyre's king then was Ithobaal III, rich and proud of his trading, 28:5.

WHY IT IS A QUESTION

No human king lived in Eden or was a cherub. So readers ask: is Ezekiel using big poetry about a man, or looking past the man to someone else?

Every View

ISAIAH 14:12 TO 15 · GENESIS 3 · 1 TIMOTHY 3:6 · LUKE 10:18

VIEW 1: SATAN BEHIND THE KING

Many Christians, from early writers like Tertullian and Origen to many today, read 28:12 to 19 as the fall of Satan: created good, lifted up by pride and thrown down. Paul warns about the devil's pride, 1 Timothy 3:6, and Isaiah 14:12 to 15 is often read the same way.

VIEW 2: A KING PICTURED AS ADAM

Many scholars read it as the human king pictured like Adam: placed in a garden, dressed in glory, thrown out for pride.

The Greek Bible reads you were with the cherub, not you were the cherub.

VIEW 3: BOTH

Some say it speaks to the real king, but the pride behind him is Satan's, the way Jesus spoke to Satan through Peter, Matthew 16:23.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Pride ruins. Beauty, wisdom and wealth turned into I am a god. God opposes the proud and gives grace to the humble, James 4:6.

A PROPHECY AGAINST SIDON

20 Then the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 21 "Son of man, set your face
against Sidon and prophesy against her.
22 And you are to declare that this is what
the Lord Yahweh says:

'Behold, I am against you, O Sidon,
and I will be glorified within you.
They will know that I am Yahweh
when I execute judgments against her
and demonstrate My holiness through
her.
23 I will send a plague against her
and shed blood in her streets;
the slain will fall within her,
while the sword is against her on every
side.

Then they will know that I am Yahweh.
24 For the people of Israel will no longer
face a pricking brier or a painful thorn
from all around them who treat them with
contempt. Then they will know that I am
the Lord Yahweh.'

THE RESTORATION OF ISRAEL // JEREMIAH 30:1–17

25 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:
'When I gather the house of Israel from
the peoples among whom they have been
scattered, I will show Myself holy among
them in the sight of the nations.
Then they will dwell in their own land,
which I have given to My servant Jacob.
26 And there they will dwell securely, build
houses, and plant vineyards. They will
dwell securely when I execute judgments

EZK 28:20 [PROPHECY] Against Sidon → HISTORY: When Persia's Artaxerxes III took Sidon about 345 BC, the people burned the city and over 40,000 died. Recorded by Diodorus 16.45. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

against all those around them who treat them with contempt. Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God.'"

29

CHAPTER 29 IN 30 SECONDS

Pharaoh is a big monster in the Nile who says the river is his. God will drag him out with hooks. Egypt was always a weak reed for Israel to lean on.

A PROPHECY AGAINST PHARAOH

1 In the tenth year, on the twelfth day of the tenth month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, set your face against Pharaoh king of Egypt and prophesy against him and against all Egypt. 3 Speak to him and tell him that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

Behold, I am against you,
O Pharaoh king of Egypt,
O great monster who lies
among his rivers,
who says, 'The Nile is mine;
I made it myself.'

4 But I will put hooks in your jaws
and cause the fish of your streams
to cling to your scales.
I will haul you up out of your rivers,
and all the fish of your streams
will cling to your scales.
5 I will leave you in the desert,
you and all the fish of your streams.
You will fall on the open field
and will not be taken away
or gathered for burial.
I have given you as food
to the beasts of the earth
and the birds of the air.
6 Then all the people of Egypt
will know that I am Yahweh.

For you were only a staff of reeds
to the house of Israel.
7 When Israel took hold of you with their hands,
you splintered, tearing all their shoulders;
when they leaned on you,
you broke, and their backs were wrenched.

THE DESOLATION OF EGYPT

8 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: I will bring a sword against you and cut off from you man and beast. 9 The land of Egypt will become a desolate wasteland. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.

Because you said, 'The Nile is mine; I made it,' 10 therefore I am against you and against your rivers. I will turn the land of Egypt into a ruin, a desolate wasteland from Migdol to Syene, and as far as the border of Cush. 11 No foot of man or beast will pass through, and it will be uninhabited for forty years.

12 I will make the land of Egypt a desolation among desolate lands, and her cities will lie desolate for forty years among the ruined cities. And I will disperse the Egyptians among the nations and scatter them throughout the countries.

13 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says:
At the end of forty years I will gather the Egyptians from the nations to which they were scattered. 14 I will restore Egypt from captivity and bring them back to the land of Pathros, the land of their origin. There they will be a lowly kingdom.

15 Egypt will be the lowliest of kingdoms and will never again exalt itself above the nations. For I will diminish Egypt so that it will never again rule over the nations. 16 Egypt will never again be an object of trust for the house of Israel, but will remind them of their iniquity in turning to the Egyptians. Then they will know that I am the Lord Yahweh."

EZK 29:3 [NOTE] THE GREAT MONSTER. The Hebrew tannin can mean a sea monster or a crocodile. This Pharaoh was Hophra, Jeremiah 44:30, see Pharaoh Hophra, Jeremiah, p.1213.

EZK 29:6 [NOTE] A STAFF OF REEDS. Egypt promised help, then broke like a reed when Israel leaned on it, 29:7 and Isaiah 36:6.

EZK 29:12 [PROPHECY] Egypt would lie desolate for forty years and her people be scattered → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invaded Egypt in his 37th year, 568 BC. Found on a broken Babylonian tablet, British Museum BM 33041. · MEDIUM

EZK 29:14 [PROPHECY] Egypt would be a 'base kingdom' → HISTORY: Cambyses of Persia conquered Egypt in 525 BC, and foreigners ruled it most of the time after. Recorded by Herodotus, book 3.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

EGYPT THE REWARD OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR

17 In the twenty-seventh year, on the first
day of the first month, the word of Yah-
weh came to me, saying, 18 "Son of man,
Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon caused
his army to labor strenuously against Tyre.
Every head was made bald and every
shoulder made raw. But he and his army
received no wages from Tyre for the labor
they expended on it.

19 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says: I will give the land of Egypt to Neb-
uchadnezzar king of Babylon, who will
carry off its wealth, seize its spoil, and re-
move its plunder. This will be the wages
for his army. 20 I have given him the land
of Egypt as the reward for his labor, be-
cause it was done for Me, declares the
Lord Yahweh.

21 In that day I will cause a horn to sprout
for the house of Israel, and I will open
your mouth to speak among them. Then
they will know that I am Yahweh."

30

CHAPTER 30 IN 30 SECONDS

The day of Yahweh comes for Egypt and her friends. God breaks Pharaoh's arm, and it will not heal. Babylon's arm gets stronger.

A LAMENT FOR EGYPT

1 Again the word of Yahweh came to me,
saying, 2 "Son of man, prophesy and de-
clare that this is what the Lord Yahweh
says:

Wail, 'Alas
for that day!'
3 For the day is near,
the Day of Yahweh is near.
It will be a day of clouds,
a time of doom for the nations.
4 A sword will come against Egypt,
and there will be anguish in Cush
when the slain fall in Egypt,
its wealth is taken away,
and its foundations are torn down.
5 Cush, Put, and Lud,
and all the various peoples,
as well as Libya and the men of the
covenant land,
will fall with Egypt by the sword.

6 For this is what Yahweh says:

The allies of Egypt will fall,
and her proud strength will collapse.
From Migdol to Syene
they will fall by the sword within her,
declares the Lord Yahweh.
7 They will be desolate among desolate
lands,
and their cities will lie among ruined
cities.
8 Then they will know that I am Yahweh
when I set fire to Egypt
and all her helpers are shattered.
9 On that day messengers will go out from
Me in ships to frighten Cush out of com-
placency. Anguish will come upon them
on the day of Egypt's doom. For it is in-
deed coming.

10 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

I will put an end to the hordes of Egypt
by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of
Babylon.
11 He and his people with him,
the most ruthless of the nations,
will be brought in to destroy the land.
They will draw their swords against Egypt
and fill the land with the slain.
12 I will make the streams dry up
and sell the land to the wicked.
By the hands of foreigners I will bring
desolation
upon the land and everything in it.
I, Yahweh, have spoken.

13 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

EZK 29:17 [PROPHECY] Nebuchadnezzar shall have the wages of Egypt for his army in return for his labor against Tyre → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invaded Egypt in 568 BC, after his long siege of Tyre. Found on a broken Babylonian tablet, British Museum BM 33041. · MEDIUM

EZK 29:18 [FULFILLS] Nebuchadnezzar would besiege Tyre and slaughter its mainland villages ← EZK 26:7-11 p.1284

EZK 29:18 [NOTE] NO WAGES FROM TYRE. Dated April 571 BC, the latest date in the book. Nebuchadnezzar besieged Tyre for years and got little for it, so God gives him Egypt as his pay, 29:19. See Tyre and the Causeway.

EZK 30:10 [PROPHECY] God would end the hordes of Egypt by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invaded Egypt and fought King Amasis, 568 BC. Found on a broken Babylonian tablet, British Museum BM 33041. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

I will destroy the idols
and put an end to the images in Memphis.
There will no longer be a prince in Egypt,
and I will instill fear in that land.

14 I will lay waste Pathros,
set fire to Zoan,
and execute judgment on Thebes.
15 I will pour out My wrath on Pelusium,
the stronghold of Egypt,
and cut off the crowds of Thebes.
16 I will set fire to Egypt,
Pelusium will writhe in anguish,
Thebes will be split open,
and Memphis will face daily distress.

17 The young men of On and Pi-beseth
will fall by the sword,
and those cities will go into captivity.
18 The day will be darkened in Tahpanhes
when I break the yoke of Egypt
and her proud strength comes to an end.
A cloud will cover her,
and her daughters will go into captivity.

19 So I will execute judgment on Egypt,
and they will know that I am Yahweh."

PHARAOH'S POWER BROKEN

20 In the eleventh year, on the seventh day of the first month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 21 "Son of man, I have broken the arm of Pharaoh king of Egypt. See, it has not been bound up for healing, or splinted for strength to hold the sword.

22 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold, I am against Pharaoh king of Egypt. I will break his arms, both the strong one and the one already broken, and will make the sword fall from his hand. 23 I will disperse the Egyptians among the nations and scatter them throughout the lands.

24 I will strengthen the arms of Babylon's king and place My sword in his hand, but I will break the arms of Pharaoh, who will groan before him like a mortally wounded man. 25 I will strengthen the arms of Babylon's king, but Pharaoh's arms will fall limp.

Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I place My sword in the hand of Babylon's king, and he wields it against the land of Egypt. 26 I will disperse the Egyptians among the nations and scatter them throughout the lands. Then they will know that I am Yahweh."

31

CHAPTER 31 IN 30 SECONDS

Assyria was once like a giant cedar, the tallest tree in the garden of God. It fell anyway. Pharaoh, take note.

EGYPT WILL FALL LIKE ASSYRIA

1 In the eleventh year, on the first day of the third month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, say to Pharaoh king of Egypt and to his multitude:

'Who can be compared
to your greatness?
3 Look at Assyria, a cedar in Lebanon,
with beautiful branches that shaded the forest.
It towered on high;
its top was among the clouds.
4 The waters made it grow;
the deep springs made it tall,
directing their streams all around its base
and sending their channels to all the trees of the field.

5 Therefore it towered higher
than all the trees of the field.
Its branches multiplied,
and its boughs grew long
as it spread them out
because of the abundant waters.
6 All the birds of the air
nested in its branches,
and all the beasts of the field

- **EZK 30:13 [PROPHECY]** God would destroy the idols of Memphis and there would no longer be a prince in Egypt → HISTORY: Cambyses conquered Egypt in 525 BC, and Egypt's last native king fled in 343 BC. Recorded by Herodotus and Diodorus. · MEDIUM
- **EZK 30:13 [DEMONIC]** God destroys the idols of Memphis
- **EZK 30:21 [PROPHECY]** Pharaoh's arm was broken and would be broken again so he could not help → JER 37:5-8; JER 44:30 p.1202

- **EZK 31:3 [NOTE]** THE CEDAR. Assyria, the great power that fell to Babylon and the Medes in 612 to 609 BC. If even Assyria fell, Egypt should not feel safe.

GOD SPEAKING

gave birth beneath its boughs;
all the great nations
lived in its shade.
7 It was beautiful in its greatness,
in the length of its limbs,
for its roots extended
to abundant waters.
8 The cedars in the garden of God
could not rival it;
the cypresses could not compare with its
branches,
nor the plane trees match its boughs.
No tree in the garden of God
could compare with its beauty.
9 I made it beautiful with its many
branches,
the envy of all the trees of Eden,
which were in the garden of God.'

10 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Since it became great in height and set its top among the clouds, and its heart grew proud of its height, 11 I delivered it into the hand of the ruler of the nations, for him to deal with it according to its wickedness. I have banished it.

12 Foreigners, the most ruthless of the nations, cut it down and left it. Its branches have fallen on the mountains and in every valley; its boughs lay broken in all the earth's ravines. And all the peoples of the earth left its shade and abandoned it.

13 All the birds of the air nested on its fallen trunk, and all the beasts of the field lived among its boughs. 14 This happened so that no other trees by the waters would become great in height and set their tops among the clouds, and no other well-watered trees would reach them in height. For they have all been consigned to death, to the depths of the earth, among the mortals who descend to the Pit.'

15 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'On the day it was brought down to Sheol, I caused mourning. I covered the deep because of it; I held back its rivers; its abundant waters were restrained. I made Lebanon mourn for it, and all the trees of the field fainted because of it. 16 I made the nations quake at the sound of its downfall, when I cast it down to Sheol with those who descend to the Pit.

Then all the trees of Eden, the choicest and best of Lebanon, all the well-watered trees, were consoled in the earth below. 17 They too descended with it to Sheol, to those slain by the sword. As its allies they had lived in its shade among the nations.

18 Who then is like you in glory and greatness among the trees of Eden? You also will be brought down to the depths of the earth to be with the trees of Eden. You will lie among the uncircumcised, with those slain by the sword. This is Pharaoh and all his multitude, declares the Lord Yahweh.'"

32

CHAPTER 32 IN 30 SECONDS

Two more funeral songs for Egypt. Pharaoh goes down to the grave, where the fallen nations of the past are waiting for him. Pride ends in the same place every time.

A LAMENT FOR PHARAOH KING OF EGYPT

1 In the twelfth year, on the first day of the twelfth month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, take up a lament for Pharaoh king of Egypt and say to him:

'You are like a lion among the nations;
you are like a monster in the seas.
You thrash about in your rivers,
churning up the waters with your feet
and muddying the streams.'

3 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'I will spread My net over you
with a company of many peoples,
and they will draw you up in My net.
4 I will abandon you on the land
and hurl you into the open field.
I will cause all the birds of the air
to settle upon you,
and all the beasts of the earth
to eat their fill of you.
5 I will put your flesh on the mountains
and fill the valleys with your remains.
6 I will drench the land

EZK 32:2 [NOTE] A LION OR A MONSTER. Pharaoh thought he was a lion among the nations. God says he is more like a monster thrashing in the water and muddying the rivers.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

with the flow of your blood,
all the way to the mountains—
the ravines will be filled.

7 When I extinguish you,
I will cover the heavens
and darken their stars.
I will cover the sun with a cloud,
and the moon will not give its light.
8 All the shining lights in the heavens
I will darken over you,
and I will bring darkness
upon your land,'
declares the Lord Yahweh.
9 'I will trouble the hearts of many peoples,
when I bring about your destruction
among the nations,
in countries you do not know.
10 I will cause many peoples
to be appalled over you,
and their kings will shudder in horror because of you
when I brandish My sword before them.
On the day of your downfall
each of them will tremble
every moment for his life.'

11 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

'The sword of the king of Babylon
will come against you!
12 I will make your hordes fall
by the swords of the mighty,
the most ruthless of all nations.
They will ravage the pride of Egypt
and all her multitudes will be destroyed.
13 I will slaughter all her cattle
beside the abundant waters.
No human foot will muddy them again,
and no cattle hooves will disturb them.
14 Then I will let her waters settle
and will make her rivers flow like oil,'
declares the Lord Yahweh.
15 'When I make the land of Egypt a desolation
and empty it of all that filled it,
when I strike down all who live there,
then they will know that I am Yahweh.'

16 This is the lament they will chant for her;
the daughters of the nations will chant it.
Over Egypt and all her multitudes they will chant it, declares the Lord Yahweh."

EGYPT CAST INTO THE PIT

17 In the twelfth year, on the fifteenth day of the month, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 18 "Son of man, wail for the multitudes of Egypt, and consign her and the daughters of the mighty nations to the depths of the earth with those who descend to the Pit:

19 Whom do you surpass in beauty?
Go down and be placed with the uncircumcised!
20 They will fall among those slain by the sword.
The sword is appointed!
Let them drag her away
along with all her multitudes.

21 Mighty chiefs will speak from the midst of Sheol
about Egypt and her allies:
'They have come down and lie with the uncircumcised,
with those slain by the sword.'

22 Assyria is there with her whole company;
her graves are all around her.
All of them are slain,
fallen by the sword.
23 Her graves are set in the depths of the Pit,
and her company is all around her grave.
All of them are slain,
fallen by the sword—
those who once spread terror
in the land of the living.

24 Elam is there
with all her multitudes around her grave.
All of them are slain,
fallen by the sword—
those who went down uncircumcised
to the earth below,
who once spread their terror

EZK 32:11 [PROPHECY] The sword of the king of Babylon would come against Egypt → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invaded Egypt in 568 BC. Found on a broken Babylonian tablet, British Museum BM 33041. · MEDIUM

EZK 32:18 [NOTE] THE PIT. The place of the dead. Assyria, Elam, Meshech, Tubal, Edom and Sidon are already there, 32:22 to 30. Every proud empire ends up in the same place.

GOD SPEAKING

in the land of the living.
They bear their disgrace
with those who descend to the Pit.
25 Among the slain they prepare
a resting place for Elam
with all her hordes,
with her graves all around her.
All of them are uncircumcised,
slain by the sword,
although their terror was once spread
in the land of the living.
They bear their disgrace
with those who descend to the Pit.
They are placed among the slain.

26 Meshech and Tubal are there
with all their multitudes,
with their graves all around them.
All of them are uncircumcised,
slain by the sword,
because they spread their terror
in the land of the living.
27 They do not lie down
with the fallen warriors of old,
who went down to Sheol
with their weapons of war,
whose swords were placed under their heads,
whose shields rested on their bones,
although the terror of the mighty
was once in the land of the living.
28 But you too will be shattered
and lie down among the uncircumcised,
with those slain by the sword.

29 Edom is there,
and all her kings and princes,
who despite their might
are laid among those slain by the sword.
They lie down with the uncircumcised,
with those who descend to the Pit.

30 All the leaders of the north
and all the Sidonians are there;
they went down in disgrace with the slain,
despite the terror of their might.
They lie uncircumcised
with those slain by the sword
and bear their shame
with those who descend to the Pit.

31 Pharaoh will see them
and be comforted over all his multitude—
Pharaoh and all his army,
slain by the sword,
declares the Lord Yahweh.
32 For I will spread My terror
in the land of the living,
so that Pharaoh and all his multitude
will be laid to rest among the uncircumcised,
with those slain by the sword,
declares the Lord Yahweh."

33

CHAPTER 33 IN 30 SECONDS

God makes Ezekiel a watchman again. Then the news arrives: the city has fallen. People love to hear Ezekiel, like a good singer, but they do not do what he says.

EZEKIEL THE WATCHMAN FOR ISRAEL

1 Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, speak to your people and tell them: 'Suppose I bring the sword against a land, and the people of that land choose a man from among them, appointing him as their watchman, 3 and he sees the sword coming against that land and blows the ram's horn to warn the people.

4 Then if anyone hears the sound of the horn but fails to heed the warning, and the sword comes and takes him away, his blood will be on his own head. 5 Since he heard the sound of the horn but failed to heed the warning, his blood will be on his own head. If he had heeded the warning, he would have saved his life.

6 But if the watchman sees the sword coming and fails to blow the horn to warn the people, and the sword comes and takes away a life, then that one will be taken away in his iniquity, but I will hold the watchman accountable for his blood.'

7 As for you, O son of man, I have made you a watchman for the house of Israel; so hear the word from My mouth and give them the warning from Me. 8 If I say to the wicked, 'O wicked man, you will surely die,' but you do not speak out to dissuade him from his way, then that wicked man

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

will die in his iniquity, yet I will hold you accountable for his blood. 9 But if you warn the wicked man to turn from his way, and he does not turn from it, he will die in his iniquity, but you will have saved your life.

THE MESSAGE OF THE WATCHMAN

10 Now as for you, son of man, tell the house of Israel that this is what they have said: 'Our transgressions and our sins are heavy upon us, and we are wasting away because of them! How can we live?'

11 Say to them: 'As surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, I take no pleasure in the death of the wicked, but rather that the wicked should turn from their ways and live. Turn! Turn from your evil ways! For why should you die, O house of Israel?'

12 Therefore, son of man, say to your people: 'The righteousness of the righteous man will not deliver him in the day of his transgression; neither will the wickedness of the wicked man cause him to stumble on the day he turns from his wickedness. Nor will the righteous man be able to survive by his righteousness on the day he sins.'

13 If I tell the righteous man that he will surely live, but he then trusts in his righteousness and commits iniquity, then none of his righteous works will be remembered; he will die because of the iniquity he has committed.

14 But if I tell the wicked man, 'You will surely die,' and he turns from his sin and does what is just and right— 15 if he restores a pledge, makes restitution for what he has stolen, and walks in the statutes of life without practicing iniquity—then he will surely live; he will not die. 16 None of the sins he has committed will be held against him. He has done what is just and right; he will surely live.

17 Yet your people say, 'The way of the Lord is not just.' But it is their way that is not just. 18 If a righteous man turns from his righteousness and commits iniquity, he will die for it. 19 But if a wicked man turns from his wickedness and does what is just and right, he will live because of this.

20 Yet you say, 'The way of the Lord is not just.' But I will judge each of you according to his ways, O house of Israel."

WORD OF JERUSALEM'S FALL

21 In the twelfth year of our exile, on the fifth day of the tenth month, a fugitive from Jerusalem came to me and reported, "The city has been taken!"

22 Now the evening before the fugitive arrived, the hand of Yahweh was upon me, and He opened my mouth before the man came to me in the morning. So my mouth was opened and I was no longer mute.

23 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 24 "Son of man, those living in the ruins in the land of Israel are saying, 'Abraham was only one man, yet he possessed the land. But we are many; surely the land has been given to us as a possession.'

25 Therefore tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'You eat meat with the blood in it, lift up your eyes to your idols, and shed blood. Should you then possess the land? 26 You have relied on your swords, you have committed detestable acts, and each of you has defiled his neighbor's wife. Should you then possess the land?'

27 Tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'As surely as I live, those in the ruins will fall by the sword, those in the open field I will give to be devoured by wild animals, and those in the strongholds and caves will die by plague. 28 I will make the land a desolate waste, and the pride of her strength will come to an end. The mountains of Israel will become desolate, so that no one will pass through. 29 Then

EZK 33:11 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → 2PE 3:9 p.2034
EZK 33:11 [NOTABLE] God's heart is to save, not to destroy. The door to turn back is open.

EZK 33:21 [FULFILLS] A fugitive would bring news of the fall and Ezekiel's mouth would be opened ← EZK 24:26-27 p.1283
EZK 33:21 [NOTE] THE CITY HAS FALLEN. A survivor arrives months after Jerusalem burned. That is how long news took to travel to Babylon. See The Fire of 586 BC, Lamentations, p.1243.
EZK 33:25 [DEMONIC] They lift their eyes to idols and still want the land

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

they will know that I am Yahweh, when I have made the land a desolate waste because of all the abominations they have committed.'

30 As for you, son of man, your people are talking about you near the city walls and in the doorways of their houses. One speaks to another, each saying to his brother, 'Come and hear the message that has come from Yahweh!'

31 So My people come to you as usual, sit before you, and hear your words; but they do not put them into practice. Although they express love with their mouths, their hearts pursue dishonest gain. 32 Indeed, you are to them like a singer of love songs with a beautiful voice, who skillfully plays an instrument. They hear your words but do not put them into practice. 33 So when it comes to pass—and surely it will come—then they will know that a prophet has been among them."

34

CHAPTER 34 IN 30 SECONDS

God takes on the bad shepherds, Israel's leaders, who fed themselves and not the sheep. So God will be the Shepherd Himself. He will set over them one Shepherd, My servant David.

A PROPHECY AGAINST ISRAEL'S SHEPHERDS

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel. Prophesy and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Woe to the shepherds of Israel, who only feed themselves! Should not the shepherds feed their flock? 3 You eat the fat, wear the wool, and butcher the fattened sheep, but you do not feed the flock.

4 You have not strengthened the weak, healed the sick, bound up the injured, brought back the strays, or searched for the lost. Instead, you have ruled them with violence and cruelty. 5 They were scattered for lack of a shepherd, and when they were scattered they became food for all the wild beasts. 6 My flock went astray on all the mountains and every high hill. They were scattered over the face of all the earth, with no one to search for them or seek them out.'

7 Therefore, you shepherds, hear the word of Yahweh: 8 'As surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, because My flock lacks a shepherd and has become prey and food for every wild beast, and because My shepherds did not search for My flock but fed themselves instead, 9 therefore, you shepherds, hear the word of Yahweh!'

10 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Behold, I am against the shepherds, and I will demand from them My flock and remove them from tending the flock, so that they can no longer feed themselves. For I will deliver My flock from their mouths, and it will no longer be food for them.'

THE GOOD SHEPHERD // PSALM 23:1–6; JOHN 10:1–21

11 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Behold, I Myself will search for My flock and seek them out. 12 As a shepherd looks for his scattered sheep when he is among the flock, so I will look for My flock.

I will rescue them from all the places to which they were scattered on a day of clouds and darkness. 13 I will bring them out from the peoples, gather them from the countries, and bring them into their own land. I will feed them on the mountains of Israel, in the ravines, and in all the settlements of the land. 14 I will feed them in good pasture, and the lofty mountains of Israel will be their grazing land. There they will lie down in a good grazing land; they will feed in rich pasture on the mountains of Israel.

15 I will tend My flock and make them lie down, declares the Lord Yahweh. 16 I will

- **EZK 33:30 [NOTE]** TALK OF THE TOWN. People chatted about Ezekiel by the walls and doors. Loving to hear sermons is not the same as doing them, James 1:22.
- **EZK 33:31 [HEART]** They listen to the prophet, but their heart chases after greed.
- **EZK 33:32 [HEART]** They hear your words like a pretty song but do not put them into practice.
- **EZK 34:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:12 p.2071
- **EZK 34:2 [NOTE]** SHEPHERDS. In the Bible, shepherds often means kings and leaders. These ate the best, wore the wool and let the sheep scatter.

- **EZK 34:11 [PROPHECY]** I Myself will search for My sheep and seek them out; I will feed them in good pasture → LK 19:10; JN 10:11-16 p.1681

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

seek the lost, bring back the strays, bind up the broken, and strengthen the weak; but the sleek and strong I will destroy. I will shepherd them with justice.'

17 This is what the Lord Yahweh says to you, My flock: 'I will judge between one sheep and another, between the rams and the goats. 18 Is it not enough for you to feed on the good pasture? Must you also trample the rest of the pasture with your feet? Is it not enough for you to drink the clear waters? Must you also muddy the rest with your feet? 19 Why must My flock feed on what your feet have trampled, and drink what your feet have muddied?'

20 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says to them: 'Behold, I Myself will judge between the fat sheep and the lean sheep. 21 Since you shove with flank and shoulder, butting all the weak ones with your horns until you have scattered them abroad, 22 I will save My flock, and they will no longer be prey. I will judge between one sheep and another. 23 I will appoint over them one shepherd, My servant David, and he will feed them. He will feed them and be their shepherd. 24 I, Yahweh, will be their God, and My servant David will be a prince among them. I, Yahweh, have spoken.

THE COVENANT OF PEACE

25 I will make with them a covenant of peace and rid the land of wild animals, so that they may dwell securely in the wilderness and sleep in the forest. 26 I will make them and the places around My hill a blessing. I will send down showers in season—showers of blessing. 27 The trees of the field will give their fruit, and the land will yield its produce; My flock will be secure in their land. Then they will know that I am Yahweh, when I have broken the bars of their yoke and delivered them from the hands that enslaved them.

28 They will no longer be prey for the nations, and the beasts of the earth will not consume them. They will dwell securely, and no one will frighten them.

29 And I will raise up for them a garden of renown, and they will no longer be victims of famine in the land or bear the scorn of the nations. 30 Then they will know that I, Yahweh their God, am with them, and that they, the house of Israel, are My people,' declares the Lord Yahweh.

31 'You are My flock, the sheep of My pasture, My people, and I am your God,' declares the Lord Yahweh."

35

CHAPTER 35 IN 30 SECONDS

Edom, Israel's old rival, wanted the land for itself. God says Mount Seir will become a wasteland. Gloating does not age well.

A PROPHECY AGAINST MOUNT SEIR

1 Moreover, the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, set your face against Mount Seir and prophesy against it, 3 and declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says:

Behold, I am against you,
O Mount Seir.
I will stretch out My hand against you
and make you a desolate waste.
4 I will turn your cities into ruins,
and you will become a desolation.

Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

5 Because you harbored an ancient hatred and delivered the Israelites over to the sword in the time of their disaster at the final stage of their punishment, 6 therefore as surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, I will give you over to bloodshed and it will pursue you. Since you did not hate bloodshed, it will pursue you.

7 I will make Mount Seir a desolate waste and will cut off from it those who come and go. 8 I will fill its mountains with the slain; those killed by the sword will fall on your hills, in your valleys, and in all your ravines. 9 I will make you a perpetual desolation, and your cities will not be inhab-

EZK 34:23 [PROPHECY] I will establish one Shepherd over them, My servant David; He shall be prince among them → JN 10:11; LK 1:32; 1PE 2:25; 1PE 5:4 p.1717

EZK 34:23 [NOTE] MY SERVANT DAVID. David had died about 400 years before. This is a King from David's line. Christians see Jesus, the good shepherd, John 10:11.

EZK 35:2 [NOTE] MOUNT SEIR. The mountains of Edom, south of the Dead Sea.

EZK 35:3 [PROPHECY] Mount Seir, Edom, would become a desolate waste → MAL 1:3-4 · MEDIUM p.1510

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

ited. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

10 Because you have said, 'These two nations and countries will be ours, and we will possess them,' even though Yahweh was there, 11 therefore as surely as I live, declares the Lord Yahweh, I will treat you according to the anger and jealousy you showed in your hatred against them, and I will make Myself known among them when I judge you.

12 Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have heard every contemptuous word you uttered against the mountains of Israel when you said, 'They are desolate; they are given to us to devour!' 13 You boasted against Me with your mouth and multiplied your words against Me. I heard it Myself!

14 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: While the whole earth rejoices, I will make you desolate. 15 As you rejoiced when the inheritance of the house of Israel became desolate, so will I do to you. You will become a desolation, O Mount Seir, and so will all of Edom. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.

36

CHAPTER 36 IN 30 SECONDS

The mountains of Israel will be green again and full of people. Then one of the best promises in the Bible: a new heart and a new spirit. God will put His own Spirit inside His people.

A PROPHECY TO THE MOUNTAINS OF ISRAEL

1 "And you, son of man, prophesy to the mountains of Israel and say: O mountains of Israel, hear the word of Yahweh. 2 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because the enemy has said of you, 'Aha! The ancient heights have become our possession,' 3 therefore prophesy and declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because they have made you desolate and have trampled you on every side, so that you became a possession of the rest of the nations and were taken up in slander by the lips of their talkers, 4 therefore, O mountains of Israel, hear the word of the Lord Yahweh.

This is what the Lord Yahweh says to the mountains and hills, to the ravines and valleys, to the desolate ruins and abandoned cities, which have become a spoil and a mockery to the rest of the nations around you. 5 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Surely in My burning zeal I have spoken against the rest of the nations, and against all Edom, who took My land as their own possession with wholehearted joy and utter contempt, so that its pastureland became plunder.

6 Therefore, prophesy concerning the land of Israel and tell the mountains and hills, the ravines and valleys, that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold, I have spoken in My burning zeal because you have endured the reproach of the nations.

7 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: I have sworn with an uplifted hand that surely the nations around you will endure reproach of their own. 8 But you, O mountains of Israel, will produce branches and bear fruit for My people Israel, for they will soon come home.

9 For behold, I am on your side; I will turn toward you, and you will be tilled and sown. 10 I will multiply the people upon you—the house of Israel in its entirety. The cities will be inhabited and the ruins rebuilt. 11 I will fill you with people and animals, and they will multiply and be fruitful. I will make you as inhabited as you once were, and I will make you prosper more than before. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.

12 Yes, I will cause My people Israel to walk upon you; they will possess you, and you will be their inheritance, and you will no longer deprive them of their children.

13 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Because people say to you, 'You devour men and deprive your nation of its children,' 14 therefore you will no longer devour men or deprive your nation of its children, declares the Lord Yahweh. 15 I

EZK 36:8 [PROPHECY] The mountains of Israel would bear fruit, be farmed again, and the ruins rebuilt → HISTORY: Jews came home and rebuilt after 538 BC. Twain found the land bare in 1867, and since 1948 it is widely farmed. Many Christians see this here. · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | DEMONIC | GOD SPEAKING

will no longer allow the taunts of the nations to be heard against you, and you will no longer endure the reproach of the peoples or cause your nation to stumble, declares the Lord Yahweh."

A NEW HEART AND A NEW SPIRIT // ROMANS 8:9–11; GALATIANS 5:16–26

16 Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 17 "Son of man, when the people of Israel lived in their land, they defiled it by their own ways and deeds. Their behavior before Me was like the uncleanness of a woman's impurity. 18 So I poured out My wrath upon them because of the blood they had shed on the land, and because they had defiled it with their idols.

19 I dispersed them among the nations, and they were scattered throughout the lands. I judged them according to their ways and deeds. 20 And wherever they went among the nations, they profaned My holy name, because it was said of them, 'These are the people of Yahweh, yet they had to leave His land.' 21 But I had concern for My holy name, which the house of Israel had profaned among the nations to which they had gone.

22 Therefore tell the house of Israel that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: It is not for your sake that I will act, O house of Israel, but for My holy name, which you profaned among the nations to which you went. 23 I will show the holiness of My great name, which has been profaned among the nations—the name you have profaned among them. Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh, declares the Lord Yahweh, when I show My holiness in you before their eyes.

24 For I will take you from among the nations and gather you out of all the countries, and I will bring you back into your own land. 25 I will also sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean. I will cleanse you from all your impurities and all your idols. 26 I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will remove your heart of stone and give you a heart of flesh. 27 And I will put My Spirit within you and cause you to walk in My statutes and to carefully observe My ordinances.

28 Then you will live in the land that I gave your forefathers; you will be My people, and I will be your God. 29 I will save you from all your uncleanness. I will summon the grain and make it plentiful, and I will not bring famine upon you. 30 I will also make the fruit of the trees and the crops of the field plentiful, so that you will no longer bear reproach among the nations on account of famine.

31 Then you will remember your evil ways and wicked deeds, and you will loathe yourselves for your iniquities and abominations. 32 It is not for your sake that I will act, declares the Lord Yahweh— let it be known to you. Be ashamed and disgraced for your ways, O house of Israel!

33 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: On the day I cleanse you from all your iniquities, I will cause the cities to be resettled and the ruins to be rebuilt. 34 The desolate land will be cultivated instead of lying desolate in the sight of all who pass through. 35 Then they will say, 'This land that was desolate has become like the garden of Eden. The cities that were once ruined, desolate, and destroyed are now fortified and inhabited.'

36 Then the nations around you that remain will know that I, Yahweh, have rebuilt what was destroyed, and I have replanted what

- **EZK 36:18 [DEMONIC]** God's wrath for the land defiled with idols
- **EZK 36:24 [PROPHECY]** God would gather Israel out of all countries into their own land → HISTORY: Cyrus let captives go home about 538 BC, and Israel was founded May 14, 1948. Found in the Cyrus Cylinder and Israel's Declaration. · MEDIUM
- **EZK 36:25 [PROPHECY]** God would sprinkle clean water and cleanse His people → JN 3:5; TIT 3:5; HEB 10:22 · MEDIUM p.1702
- **EZK 36:25 [DEMONIC]** God cleanses His people from all their idols
- **EZK 36:26 [PROPHECY]** I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will put My Spirit within you → Fulfilled in the New Covenant: HEB 8:10; HEB 10:16; TIT 3:5. Complete fulfillment for Israel yet future p.1987
- **EZK 36:26 [HEART]** I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you. God does the heart surgery we cannot do.
- **EZK 36:26 [NOTABLE]** The new covenant promise: God changes people from the inside out by His Spirit.
- **EZK 36:33 [PROPHECY]** Desolate cities rebuilt and inhabited; wasteland tilled instead of being a desolation → HISTORY: Returning Jews rebuilt their towns after 538 BC, and since 1948 Israel has replanted much waste land. Many Christians see this here. · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

was desolate. I, Yahweh, have spoken, and I will do it.

37 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Once again I will hear the plea of the house of Israel and do for them this: I will multiply their people like a flock. 38 Like the numerous flocks for sacrifices at Jerusalem during her appointed feasts, so the ruined cities will be filled with flocks of people. Then they will know that I am Yahweh."

37

CHAPTER 37 IN 30 SECONDS

A valley full of dry bones. God asks, Can these bones come to life? Ezekiel preaches, the bones rattle together, and God's breath makes them a living army. Then two sticks become one: one nation under one King.

THE VALLEY OF DRY BONES

1 The hand of Yahweh was upon me, and He brought me out by His Spirit and set me down in the middle of the valley, and it was full of bones. 2 He led me all around among them, and I saw a great many bones on the floor of the valley, and indeed, they were very dry.

3 Then He asked me, "Son of man, can these bones come to life?"

"O Lord Yahweh," I replied, "only You know."

4 And He said to me, "Prophesy concerning these bones and tell them, 'Dry bones, hear the word of Yahweh! 5 This is what the Lord Yahweh says to these bones: I will cause breath to enter you, and you will come to life. 6 I will attach tendons to you and make flesh grow upon you and cover you with skin. I will put breath within you so that you will come to life. Then you will know that I am Yahweh.'"

7 So I prophesied as I had been commanded. And as I prophesied, there was suddenly a noise, a rattling, and the bones came together, bone to bone. 8 As I looked on, tendons appeared on them, flesh grew, and skin covered them; but there was no breath in them.

9 Then He said to me, "Prophesy to the breath; prophesy, son of man, and tell the breath that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Come from the four winds, O breath, and breathe into these slain, so that they may live!"

10 So I prophesied as He had commanded me, and the breath entered them, and they came to life and stood on their feet—a vast army.

11 Then He said to me, "Son of man, these bones are the whole house of Israel. Look, they are saying, 'Our bones are dried up, and our hope has perished; we are cut off.'

12 Therefore prophesy and tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'O My people, I will open your graves and bring you up from them, and I will bring you back to the land of Israel. 13 Then you, My people, will know that I am Yahweh, when I open your graves and bring you up from them. 14 I will put My Spirit in you and you will live, and I will settle you in your own land. Then you will know that I, Yahweh, have spoken, and I will do it, declares Yahweh.'"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE DRY BONES

Can These Bones Live?

EZEKIEL 37:1 TO 14

THE VISION

A valley full of very dry bones. God asks Ezekiel, Can these bones come to life? Ezekiel preaches, the bones rattle together and get muscles and skin. Then the breath comes in, and they stand up, a vast army.

GOD EXPLAINS IT

These bones are the whole house of Is-

- **EZK 37:1 [NOTABLE]** Nothing is too dead for God. His word and His Spirit bring life to what looks hopeless.
- **EZK 37:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:11 p.2097
- **EZK 37:9 [NOTE]** BREATH, WIND, SPIRIT. One Hebrew word, ruach, means all three, and it runs through the chapter. Jesus breathed on His disciples and said, Receive the Holy Spirit, John 20:22.
- **EZK 37:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:11 p.2097
- **EZK 37:11 [PROPHECY]** The dry bones are Israel; God would open their graves and bring them back to the land → HISTORY: After the Holocaust killed about six million Jews, Israel was founded May 14, 1948. Many Christians see this here. · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | END TIMES PROPHECIES | ARCHAEOLOGY | DEMONIC
GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

rael, 37:11. The exiles said, Our bones are dried up and our hope has perished. God promises to open their graves and bring them home, 37:12.

BREATH, WIND, SPIRIT

The Hebrew word ruach means all three, and it runs through the chapter. Life comes in two steps: first bodies, then breath.

Every View

JOHN 5:28 TO 29 · JOHN 20:22 · EPHESIANS 2:1 TO 5 · ROMANS 11:15

VIEW 1: THE RETURN FROM EXILE

Many say the first meaning was this: Israel, dead as a nation in Babylon, came back to life when Cyrus let the exiles go home in 538 BC, Ezra 1.

VIEW 2: MODERN ISRAEL

Many Christians see the rebirth of Israel in 1948 here, in two steps: first a people gathered back to the land, then a spiritual awakening when God pours out His Spirit, 37:14 and 39:29.

VIEW 3: THE RESURRECTION

Early church writers like Irenaeus and Tertullian read it as a picture of the resurrection of the dead, John 5:28 to 29. The rabbis debated whether it really happened or was a parable, Sanhedrin 92b.

VIEW 4: NEW LIFE BY THE SPIRIT

Many preachers read it as God bringing dead hearts to life by His Spirit, like Jesus breathing on His disciples, John 20:22, and Ephesians 2:1 to 5.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Nothing is too dead for God. O Lord Yahweh, only You know, Ezekiel said, 37:3, and then he did what God told him.

ONE NATION WITH ONE KING

15 Again the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 16 "And you, son of man, take a single stick and write on it: 'Belonging to Judah and to the Israelites associated with him.' Then take another stick and write on it: 'Belonging to Joseph—the stick of Ephraim—and to all the house of Israel associated with him.' 17 Then join them together into one stick, so that they become one in your hand.

18 When your people ask you, 'Won't you explain to us what you mean by these?' 19 you are to tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I will take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel associated with him, and I will put them together with the stick of Judah. I will make them into a single stick, and they will become one in My hand.'

20 When the sticks on which you write are in your hand and in full view of the people, 21 you are to tell them that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I will take the Israelites out of the nations to which they have gone, and I will gather them from all around and bring them into their own land. 22 I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and one king will rule over all of them. Then they will no longer be two nations and will never again be divided into two kingdoms.

23 They will no longer defile themselves with their idols or detestable images, or with any of their transgressions. I will save them from all their apostasies by which they sinned, and I will cleanse them. Then they will be My people, and I will be their God. 24 My servant David will be king over them, and there will be one shepherd for all of them. They will follow My ordinances and keep and observe My statutes.

25 They will live in the land that I gave to My servant Jacob, where your fathers lived. They will live there forever with their children and grandchildren, and My servant David will be their prince forever. 26 And I will make a covenant of peace with

EZK 37:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The Masada Ezekiel scroll has chapters 35 to 38, see The Ezekiel Scrolls Field Notes page, p.1303 FIELD NOTES p.1303

EZK 37:21 [PROPHECY] God would take the Israelites out of the nations and bring them into their own land → HISTORY: Jews came home from Babylon after 538 BC and from many nations after May 14, 1948. Found in the Cyrus Cylinder and Israel's Declaration. · MEDIUM

EZK 37:22 [PROPHECY] Israel and Judah would be one nation under one king, never divided again → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

EZK 37:23 [DEMONIC] They will no longer defile themselves with idols

EZK 37:23 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → TIT 2:14 p.1962

EZK 37:24 [PROPHECY] David My servant would be their king forever → LK 1:32-33 p.1645

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE EZEKIEL SCROLLS

EZEKIEL 1 · 35 TO 38 · 37:1 TO 14



The synagogue at Masada, partly rebuilt; the black line on the wall marks where the ancient stones end. The Ezekiel scroll was buried in a pit under the floor of a small room here. Photo Oren Rozen, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT THEY ARE

Seven ancient Hebrew scrolls of Ezekiel: six from caves near Qumran, called 1QEzek, 3QEzek, 4QEzek a, b and c, and 11QEzek, and one from the fortress of Masada.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

The oldest, 4QEzek a, was copied about 50 BC. The others were copied before AD 73. That is about a thousand years older than the oldest complete Hebrew Ezekiel.

THE MASADA SCROLL

In 1963 Yigael Yadin's team found pieces of an Ezekiel scroll buried in a pit in the floor of a small room in the Masada synagogue. People buried worn out holy scrolls instead of throwing them away. It holds parts of chapters 35 to 38, with the valley of dry bones.

A MESSAGE UNDER THE FLOOR

Masada fell to Rome in AD 73 or 74, and its defenders died. But under the synagogue floor the words were waiting: Can these bones come to life? 37:3.

THE QUMRAN SCROLLS

4QEzek b has part of the living creatures in chapter 1, shown in the introduction. 4QEzek a has parts of chapters 10, 11, 23 and 41. 11QEzek was so stuck together that it could hardly be opened.

WHAT THEY SHOW

The scrolls agree closely with the Hebrew text used today, with mostly small spelling differences. The Masada scroll matches it almost letter for letter.

WHY BURY A SCROLL

A scroll with God's name in it was too holy to throw away. When one wore out, people buried it, often in a room called a genizah. Burying it is what saved this one.

WHERE THEY ARE TODAY

Most of the pieces are kept by the Israel Antiquities Authority in Jerusalem. Many can be seen online in the Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT THEY DO NOT PROVE

They show how carefully Ezekiel was copied. They do not, by themselves, tell us when it was first written.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

them; it will be an everlasting covenant. I will establish them and multiply them, and I will set My sanctuary among them forever. 27 *My dwelling place will be with them; I will be their God, and they will be My people.* 28 Then the nations will know that I Yahweh sanctify Israel, when My sanctuary is among them forever.'"

38

CHAPTER 38 IN 30 SECONDS

Gog of the land of Magog gathers a huge army against Israel in the latter days. They expect easy loot. God shows up instead.

A PROPHECY AGAINST GOG

1 And the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 2 "Son of man, set your face against Gog of the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. Prophesy against him 3 and declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold, I am against you, O Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. 4 I will turn you around, put hooks in your jaws, and bring you out with all your army—your horses, your horsemen in full armor, and a great company armed with shields and bucklers, all brandishing their swords. 5 Persia, Cush, and Put will accompany them, all with shields and helmets, 6 as well as Gomer with all its troops, and Beth-togarmah from the far north with all its troops—the many nations with you.

7 Get ready; prepare yourself, you and all your company gathered around you; you will be their guard. 8 After a long time you will be summoned. In the latter years you will enter a land that has recovered from war, whose people were gathered from many nations to the mountains of Israel, which had long been desolate. They had been brought out from the nations, and all now dwell securely. 9 You and all your troops, and many peoples with you will go up, advancing like a thunderstorm; you will be like a cloud covering the land.

10 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: On that day, thoughts will arise in your heart, and you will devise an evil plan. 11 You will say, 'I will go up against a land of unwalled villages; I will come against a quiet people who dwell securely, all of them living without walls or bars or gates— 12 in order to seize the spoil and carry off the plunder, to turn a hand against the desolate places now inhabited and against a people gathered from the nations, who have acquired livestock and possessions and who live at the center of the land.'

13 Sheba and Dedan and the merchants of Tarshish with all its villages will ask, 'Have you come to capture the plunder? Have you assembled your hordes to carry away loot, to make off with silver and gold, to take cattle and goods, to seize great spoil?'

14 Therefore prophesy, son of man, and tell Gog that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: On that day when My people Israel are dwelling securely, will you not take notice of this? 15 And you will come from your place out of the far north—you and many peoples with you, all riding horses—a mighty horde, a huge army. 16 You will advance against My people Israel like a cloud covering the land. It will happen in the latter days, O Gog, that I will bring you against My land, so that the nations may know Me when I show Myself holy in you before their eyes.

17 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: Are you the one of whom I have spoken in former days through My servants, the prophets of Israel, who in those times

- **EZK 37:27 [PROPHECY]** My dwelling place will be with them; I will be their God and they My people → JN 1:14; 2CO 6:16; REV 21:3 · MEDIUM p.1698
- **EZK 37:27 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 2CO 6:16 p.1853
- **EZK 37:27 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:3 p.2113
- **EZK 38:2 [PROPHECY]** Gog of the land of Magog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **EZK 38:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 20:8 p.2111
- **EZK 38:5 [NOTE]** PERSIA, CUSH AND PUT. Persia is Iran, Cush is the land up the Nile south of Egypt, and Put is probably Libya. Gog's allies come from every direction.
- **EZK 38:10 [TEXT]** IN YOUR HEART. The Hebrew says al levavekha, on your heart. Many Bibles say mind.
- **EZK 38:12 [NOTE]** THE CENTER OF THE LAND. Word for word, the navel of the earth. Israel sits where three continents meet.
- **EZK 38:16 [PROPHECY]** In the latter days Gog would come against Israel and God would show Himself holy → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

GOD SPEAKING

prophesied for years that I would bring you against them? 18 Now on that day when Gog comes against the land of Israel, declares the Lord Yahweh, My wrath will flare up.

19 In My zeal and fiery rage I proclaim that on that day there will be a great earthquake in the land of Israel. 20 The fish of the sea, the birds of the air, the beasts of the field, every creature that crawls upon the ground, and all mankind on the face of the earth will tremble at My presence. The mountains will be thrown down, the cliffs will collapse, and every wall will fall to the ground.

21 And I will summon a sword against Gog on all My mountains, declares the Lord Yahweh, and every man's sword will be against his brother. 22 I will execute judgment upon him with plague and bloodshed. I will pour out torrents of rain, hailstones, fire, and sulfur on him and on his troops and on the many nations with him. 23 I will magnify and sanctify Myself, and I will reveal Myself in the sight of many nations. Then they will know that I am Yahweh.

THE BIG QUESTION

GOG AND MAGOG

The Battle of the Latter Days

EZEKIEL 38 TO 39

AN END TIMES PROPHECY

Ezekiel says it happens in the latter days, 38:16, after Israel has been gathered from the nations and lives in the land, 38:8. A huge army from the far north and its allies attack, and God Himself destroys them with earthquake, hail and fire, 38:19 to 22. Many readers today place it at the end of the age.

WHO GOG IS

Gog is a leader from the land of Magog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, 38:2. Magog was a son of Japheth, Genesis 10:2. Meshech and Tubal were peoples in what is now Turkey. Some link the name Gog with Gyges, a king of Lydia in the 600s BC; others see a title for a future enemy.

ROSH AND RUSSIA

Some Bibles, like the NASB, say prince of Rosh, and some teachers have linked Rosh with Russia. Many Hebrew scholars read rosh as chief, as this Bible does, and say the two names only sound alike.

When, and Who?

REVELATION 19:17 TO 18 · REVELATION 20:7 TO 9 · GENESIS 10:2

EARLY IN THE END

Some place it before or near the start of the last seven years, Daniel 9:27, while Israel lives at peace, 38:11.

AT ARMAGEDDON

Others see it as the battle of Revelation 19, where birds are called to eat the fallen armies, a feast like Ezekiel 39:17 to 20.

AFTER THE THOUSAND YEARS

Revelation 20:7 to 9 names Gog and Magog in the last revolt after the millennium. Some put Ezekiel's battle there; others see Revelation borrowing his names. See The Millennium, Revelation, p.2111.

MORE THAN ONE BATTLE

Some think Ezekiel 38 and 39 and Revelation 20 are two different battles with the same kind of enemy.

OTHER READINGS

A smaller group reads it as already past, or as a picture of every enemy God's people face, defeated by God in the end.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God wins, and He does it Himself, so the nations will know that I am Yahweh, 38:23.

39

CHAPTER 39 IN 30 SECONDS

Gog's army falls on the mountains of Israel. It takes seven months to bury the dead and seven years to burn the weapons. God says He will never hide His face from Israel again.

THE SLAUGHTER OF GOG'S ARMIES

1 "As for you, O son of man, prophesy against Gog and declare that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Behold, I am

EZK 38:22 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 20:9 p.2111

END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

against you, O Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. 2 I will turn you around, drive you along, bring you up from the far north, and send you against the mountains of Israel. 3 Then I will strike the bow from your left hand and dash down the arrows from your right hand.

4 On the mountains of Israel you will fall—you and all your troops and the nations with you. I will give you as food to every kind of ravenous bird and wild beast. 5 You will fall in the open field, for I have spoken, declares the Lord Yahweh.

6 I will send fire on Magog and on those who dwell securely in the coastlands, and they will know that I am Yahweh. 7 So I will make My holy name known among My people Israel and will no longer allow it to be profaned. Then the nations will know that I am Yahweh, the Holy One in Israel. 8 Yes, it is coming, and it will surely happen, declares the Lord Yahweh. This is the day of which I have spoken.

9 Then those who dwell in the cities of Israel will go out, kindle fires, and burn up the weapons—the bucklers and shields, the bows and arrows, the clubs and spears. For seven years they will use them for fuel. 10 They will not gather wood from the countryside or cut it from the forests, for they will use the weapons for fuel. They will loot those who looted them and plunder those who plundered them, declares the Lord Yahweh.

11 And on that day I will give Gog a burial place in Israel, the Valley of the Travelers, east of the Sea. It will block those who travel through, because Gog and all his hordes will be buried there. So it will be called the Valley of Hamon-gog. 12 For seven months the house of Israel will be burying them in order to cleanse the land. 13 All the people of the land will bury them, and it will bring them renown on the day I display My glory, declares the Lord Yahweh.

14 And men will be employed to continually pass through the land to cleanse it by burying the invaders who remain on the ground. At the end of the seven months they will begin their search. 15 As they pass through the land, anyone who sees a human bone will set up a pillar next to it, until the gravediggers have buried it in the Valley of Hamon-gog. 16 (Even the city will be named Hamonah.) And so they will cleanse the land.

17 And as for you, son of man, this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Call out to every kind of bird and to every beast of the field: 'Assemble and come together from all around to the sacrificial feast that I am preparing for you, a great feast on the mountains of Israel. There you will eat flesh and drink blood. 18 You will eat the flesh of the mighty and drink the blood of the princes of the earth as though they were rams, lambs, goats, and bulls—all the fattened animals of Bashan. 19 At the sacrifice I am preparing, you will eat fat until you are gorged and drink blood until you are drunk. 20 And at My table you will eat your fill of horses and riders, of mighty men and warriors of every kind,' declares the Lord Yahweh.

ISRAEL TO BE RESTORED

21 I will display My glory among the nations, and all the nations will see the judgment that I execute and the hand that I lay upon them. 22 From that day forward the house of Israel will know that I am Yahweh their God. 23 And the nations will know that the house of Israel went into exile for their iniquity, because they were unfaithful to Me. So I hid My face from them and delivered them into the hands of their enemies, so that they all fell by the sword. 24 I dealt with them according to their uncleanness and transgressions, and I hid My face from them.

25 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh says: Now I will restore Jacob from captivity and will have compassion on the

- **EZK 39:6 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 20:9 p.2111
- **EZK 39:9 [NOTE]** SEVEN YEARS. The weapons burn for seven years and the burial takes seven months, 39:12. Seven is also the Bible's number for complete: the victory is total, and God gets the credit.
- **EZK 39:17 [PROPHECY]** Birds called to a great sacrificial feast on the fallen armies → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **EZK 39:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 19:17-18 p.2110

GOD SPEAKING

whole house of Israel, and I will be jealous for My holy name. 26 They will forget their disgrace and all the treachery they committed against Me, when they dwell securely in their land, with no one to frighten them. 27 When I bring them back from the peoples and gather them out of the lands of their enemies, I will show My holiness in them in the sight of many nations. 28 Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God, when I regather them to their own land, not leaving any of them behind after their exile among the nations. 29 And I will no longer hide My face from them, for I will pour out My Spirit on the house of Israel, declares the Lord Yahweh."

40

CHAPTER 40 IN 30 SECONDS

Years after the city fell, Ezekiel sees a new temple on a very high mountain. A man who looks like bronze measures everything with a measuring rod. Bring a tape measure; there are a lot of numbers.

THE MAN WITH A MEASURING ROD // ZECHARIAH 2:1–5

1 In the twenty-fifth year of our exile, at the beginning of the year, on the tenth day of the month—in the fourteenth year after Jerusalem had been struck down—on that very day the hand of Yahweh was upon me, and He took me there. 2 In visions of God He took me to the land of Israel and set me on a very high mountain, on whose southern slope was a structure that resembled a city.

3 So He took me there, and I saw a man whose appearance was like bronze. He was standing in the gateway with a linen cord and a measuring rod in his hand. 4 "Son of man," he said to me, "look with your eyes, hear with your ears, and set your heart on everything I am going to show you, for that is why you have been brought here. Report to the house of Israel everything you see."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

EZEKIEL'S TEMPLE

Future, Symbol, or Never Built?

EZEKIEL 40 TO 48

WHAT HE SAW

Nine chapters of measurements: a temple on a very high mountain, gates, courts, an altar, priests and offerings, a river of life, and the land divided among the tribes with the city in the middle.

THE BIG PUZZLES

It was never built. The second temple, finished about 516 BC, did not follow these plans, Ezra 6:15. Some rules here are different from the laws of Moses. And it has animal sacrifices, which Hebrews says Jesus finished once for all, Hebrews 10:12 to 14.

A FAMOUS STORY

The Talmud says the rabbis almost set the book aside because of these differences, until Hananiah son of Hezekiah sat with 300 jars of lamp oil and worked them out, Shabbat 13b.

Every View

REVELATION 21:22 TO 22:2 · HEBREWS 10:11 TO 14 · JOHN 2:19 TO 21

VIEW 1: A FUTURE TEMPLE

Many premillennial Christians, especially dispensationalists, expect this temple in the thousand year reign of Christ. Its offerings would look back to the cross as a memorial, the way the Lord's Supper does.

VIEW 2: A PICTURE OF GOD WITH HIS PEOPLE

Many others read it as a picture fulfilled in Jesus, the true temple, John 2:19 to 21, in His church, 1 Corinthians 3:16, and in the new creation, where John saw no temple because God and the Lamb are its temple, Revelation 21:22, and the same river flows, Revelation 22:1 to 2.

VIEW 3: A PLAN FOR THE EXILES

Some think it was a real plan for the returning exiles, given on a condition, if

- **EZK 39:29 [NOTE]** MY SPIRIT. God promises to pour out His Spirit, like Joel 2:28. Peter said that promise began at Pentecost, Acts 2:16 to 17.
- **EZK 40:1 [NOTE]** THE TWENTY FIFTH YEAR. April 573 BC, fourteen years after the city fell. See Ezekiel's Temple.
- **EZK 40:3 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:1 p.2096
- **EZK 40:3 [NOTE]** A MAN LIKE BRONZE. Most likely an angel, so his words stay black. Some Christians think he is the Lord Himself.
- **EZK 40:4 [TEXT]** SET YOUR HEART. The Hebrew says sim libbekha, set your heart. The KJV says set thine heart upon all that I shall shew thee.

they are ashamed of all they have done, 43:10 to 11, and the people did not follow it.

JEWISH HOPE

Many Jews expect a third temple in the days of the Messiah and read Ezekiel's plan as its pattern.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The point is in the last words: Yahweh is there, 48:35. God wants to live with His people, and life flows out from where He is.

THE EAST GATE

5 And I saw a wall surrounding the temple
area. Now the measuring rod in the man's
hand was 10½ feet long, and he measured
the wall to be 10½ feet thick and 10½ feet
high.

6 Then he came to the gate facing east
and climbed its steps. He measured the
threshold of the gate to be 10½ feet deep.
7 Each gate chamber was 10½ feet long
and 10½ feet wide, and there were 8¾
feet between the gate chambers. The in-
ner threshold of the gate by the portico
facing inward was 10½ feet deep. 8 Then
he measured the portico of the gateway
inside; 9 it was 14 feet deep, and its jambs
were 3½ feet thick. And the portico of the
gateway faced the temple.

10 There were three gate chambers on
each side of the east gate, each with the
same measurements, and the gateposts
on either side also had the same mea-
surements. 11 And he measured the width
of the gateway entrance to be 17½ feet,
and its length was 22¾ feet.

12 In front of each gate chamber was a wall
21 inches high, and the gate chambers
were 10½ feet square. 13 Then he mea-
sured the gateway from the roof of one
gate chamber to the roof of the opposite
one; the distance was 43¾ feet from
doorway to doorway.

14 Next he measured the gateposts to be
105 feet high. The gateway extended
around to the gatepost of the courtyard. 15
And the distance from the entrance of the
gateway to the far end of its inner portico
was 87½ feet.

16 The gate chambers and their side pillars
had beveled windows all around the inside
of the gateway. The porticos also had
windows all around on the inside. Each
side pillar was decorated with palm trees.

THE OUTER COURT

17 Then he brought me into the outer court,
and there were chambers and a pavement
laid out all around the court. Thirty cham-
bers faced the pavement, 18 which flanked
the gateways and corresponded to the
length of the gates; this was the lower
pavement.

19 Then he measured the distance from the
front of the lower gateway to the outside
of the inner court; it was 175 feet on the
east side as well as on the north.

THE NORTH GATE

20 He also measured the length and width
of the gateway of the outer court facing
north. 21 Its three gate chambers on each
side, its side pillars, and its portico all had
the same measurements as the first gate:
87½ feet long and 43¾ feet wide. 22 Its
windows, portico, and palm trees had the
same measurements as those of the gate
facing east. Seven steps led up to it, with
its portico opposite them.

23 There was a gate to the inner court fac-
ing the north gate, just as there was on
the east. He measured the distance from
gateway to gateway to be 175 feet.

THE SOUTH GATE

24 Then he led me to the south side, and I
saw a gateway facing south. He measured
its side pillars and portico, and they had
the same measurements as the others. 25
Both the gateway and its portico had win-
dows all around, like the other windows. It
was 87½ feet long and 43¾ feet wide. 26
Seven steps led up to it, and its portico
was opposite them; it had palm trees on
its side pillars, one on each side.

27 The inner court also had a gate facing
south, and he measured the distance from

EZK 40:5 [TEXT] THE LONG MEASURE. Ezekiel's measuring unit was the usual elbow to fingertip length plus a hand's width, about 21 inches. Every measure in chapters 40 to 48 is given in feet, inches and miles by that long unit. The measuring rod was six of them, 10½ feet.

gateway to gateway toward the south to be 175 feet.

THE GATES OF THE INNER COURT

28 Next he brought me into the inner court through the south gate, and he measured the south gate; it had the same measurements as the others. 29 Its gate chambers, side pillars, and portico had the same measurements as the others. Both the gateway and its portico had windows all around; it was 87½ feet long and 43¾ feet wide. 30 (The porticoes around the inner court were 43¾ feet long and 8¾ feet deep.) 31 Its portico faced the outer court, and its side pillars were decorated with palm trees. Eight steps led up to it.

32 And he brought me to the inner court on the east side, and he measured the gateway; it had the same measurements as the others. 33 Its gate chambers, side pillars, and portico had the same measurements as the others. Both the gateway and its portico had windows all around. It was 87½ feet long and 43¾ feet wide. 34 Its portico faced the outer court, and its side pillars were decorated with palm trees on each side. Eight steps led up to it.

35 Then he brought me to the north gate and measured it. It had the same measurements as the others, 36 as did its gate chambers, side pillars, and portico. It also had windows all around. It was 87½ feet long and 43¾ feet wide. 37 Its portico faced the outer court, and its side pillars were decorated with palm trees on each side. Eight steps led up to it.

EIGHT TABLES FOR SACRIFICES

38 There was a chamber with a doorway by the portico in each of the inner gateways. There the burnt offering was to be washed. 39 Inside the portico of the gateway were two tables on each side, on which the burnt offerings, sin offerings, and guilt offerings were to be slaughtered.

40 Outside, as one goes up to the entrance of the north gateway, there were two tables on one side and two more tables on the other side of the gate's portico. 41 So there were four tables inside the gateway and four outside—eight tables in all—on which the sacrifices were to be slaughtered.

42 There were also four tables of dressed stone for the burnt offering, each 31½ inches long, 31½ inches wide, and 21 inches high. On these were placed the utensils used to slaughter the burnt offerings and the other sacrifices.

43 The double-pronged hooks, each three inches long, were fastened all around the inside of the room, and the flesh of the offering was to be placed on the tables.

CHAMBERS FOR MINISTRY

44 Outside the inner gate, within the inner court, were two chambers, one beside the north gate and facing south, and another beside the south gate and facing north.

45 Then the man said to me: "The chamber that faces south is for the priests who keep charge of the temple, 46 and the chamber that faces north is for the priests who keep charge of the altar. These are the sons of Zadok, the only Levites who may approach Yahweh to minister before Him."

THE INNER COURT

47 Next he measured the court. It was square, 175 feet long and 175 feet wide. And the altar was in front of the temple.

48 Then he brought me to the portico of the temple and measured the side pillars of the portico to be 8¾ feet on each side. The width of the gateway was 24½ feet and its sidewalls were 5¼ feet on either side. 49 The portico was 35 feet wide and 21 feet deep, and ten steps led up to it. There were columns by the side pillars, one on each side.

41

CHAPTER 41 IN 30 SECONDS

The man measures the temple itself, all the way in to the Most Holy Place. The walls are carved with cherubim and palm trees. Every room has its place.

INSIDE THE TEMPLE

1 Then the man brought me into the outer sanctuary and measured the side pillars to be 10½ feet wide on each side. 2 The

width of the entrance was 17½ feet, and the sides of the entrance were 8¾ feet on each side. He also measured the length of the outer sanctuary to be 70 feet, and the width to be 35 feet.

3 And he went into the inner sanctuary and measured the side pillars at the entrance to be 3½ feet wide. The entrance was 10½ feet wide, and the walls on each side were 12¼ feet wide. 4 Then he measured the room adjacent to the inner sanctuary to be 35 feet long and 35 feet wide. And he said to me, "This is the Most Holy Place."

OUTSIDE THE TEMPLE

5 Next he measured the wall of the temple to be 10½ feet thick, and the width of each side room around the temple was 7 feet. 6 The side rooms were arranged one above another in three levels of thirty rooms each. There were ledges all around the wall of the temple to serve as supports for the side rooms, so that the supports would not be fastened into the wall of the temple itself. 7 The side rooms surrounding the temple widened at each successive level, because the structure surrounding the temple ascended by stages corresponding to the narrowing of the temple wall as it rose upward. And so a stairway went up from the lowest story to the highest, through the middle one.

8 I saw that the temple had a raised base all around it, forming the foundation of the side rooms. It was a full 10½ feet high. 9 The outer wall of the side rooms was 8¾ feet thick, and the open area between the side rooms of the temple 10 and the outer chambers was 35 feet wide all around the temple. 11 The side rooms opened into this area, with one entrance on the north and another on the south. The open area was 8¾ feet wide all around.

12 Now the building that faced the temple courtyard on the west was 122½ feet wide, and the wall of the building was 8¾ feet thick all around, with a length of 157½ feet.

13 Then he measured the temple to be 175 feet long, and the temple courtyard and the building with its walls were also 175 feet long. 14 The width of the temple courtyard on the east, including the front of the temple, was 175 feet.

THE INTERIOR STRUCTURES

15 Next he measured the length of the building facing the temple courtyard at the rear of the temple, including its galleries on each side; it was 175 feet. The outer sanctuary, the inner sanctuary, and the porticoes facing the court, 16 as well as the thresholds and the beveled windows and the galleries all around with their three levels opposite the threshold, were overlaid with wood on all sides. They were paneled from the ground to the windows, and the windows were covered.

17 In the space above the outside of the entrance to the inner sanctuary on all the walls, spaced evenly around the inner and outer sanctuary, 18 were alternating carved cherubim and palm trees. Each cherub had two faces: 19 the face of a man was toward the palm tree on one side, and the face of a young lion was toward the palm tree on the other side. They were carved all the way around the temple. 20 Cherubim and palm trees were carved on the wall of the outer sanctuary from the floor to the space above the entrance.

21 The outer sanctuary had a rectangular doorframe, and the doorframe of the sanctuary was similar.

22 There was an altar of wood 5¼ feet high and 3½ feet square. Its corners, base, and sides were of wood. And the man told me, "This is the table that is before Yahweh."

23 Both the outer sanctuary and the inner sanctuary had double doors, 24 and each door had two swinging panels. There were two panels for one door and two for the other. 25 Cherubim and palm trees like

EZK 41:4 [NOTE] THE MOST HOLY PLACE. A square 35 feet on each side by Ezekiel's long measure. The Hebrew number, twenty, is the same as for the inner room of Solomon's temple, 1 Kings 6:20.

EZK 41:18 [NOTE] CHERUBIM AND PALM TREES. Each cherub had two faces, a man and a lion, turned toward palm trees on each side. Palm trees picture life, like the garden of Eden.

those on the walls were carved on the doors of the outer sanctuary, and there was a wooden canopy outside, on the front of the portico. 26 There were beveled windows and palm trees on the sidewalls of the portico. The side rooms of the temple also had canopies.

42

CHAPTER 42 IN 30 SECONDS
Rooms for the priests, then the outer wall. It is a perfect square, 875 feet on each side, to separate the holy from the common.

CHAMBERS FOR THE PRIESTS

1 Then the man led me out northward into the outer court, and he brought me to the group of chambers opposite the temple courtyard and the outer wall on the north side. 2 The building with the door facing north was 175 feet long and 87½ feet wide. 3 Gallery faced gallery in three levels opposite the 35 feet that belonged to the inner court and opposite the pavement that belonged to the outer court.

4 In front of the chambers was an inner walkway 17½ feet wide and 175 feet long. Their doors were on the north.

5 Now the upper chambers were smaller because the galleries took more space from the chambers on the lower and middle floors of the building. 6 For they were arranged in three stories, and unlike the courts, they had no pillars. So the upper chambers were set back further than the lower and middle floors. 7 An outer wall in front of the chambers was 87½ feet long and ran parallel to the chambers and the outer court. 8 For the chambers on the outer court were 87½ feet long, while those facing the temple were 175 feet long. 9 And below these chambers was the entrance on the east side as one enters them from the outer court.

10 On the south side along the length of the wall of the outer court were chambers adjoining the courtyard and opposite the building, 11 with a passageway in front of them, just like the chambers that were on the north. They had the same length and width, with similar exits and dimensions. 12 And corresponding to the doors of the chambers that were facing south, there was a door in front of the walkway that was parallel to the wall extending eastward.

13 Then the man said to me, "The north and south chambers facing the temple courtyard are the holy chambers where the priests who approach Yahweh will eat the most holy offerings. There they will place the most holy offerings—the grain offerings, the sin offerings, and the guilt offerings—for the place is holy. 14 Once the priests have entered the holy area, they must not go out into the outer court until they have left behind the garments in which they minister, for these are holy. They are to put on other clothes before they approach the places that are for the people."

THE OUTER MEASUREMENTS

15 Now when the man had finished measuring the interior of the temple area, he led me out by the gate that faced east, and he measured the area all around:

16 With a measuring rod he measured the east side to be 875 feet long.
17 He measured the north side to be 875 feet long.
18 He measured the south side to be 875 feet long.
19 And he came around and measured the west side to be 875 feet long.

20 So he measured the area on all four sides. It had a wall all around, 875 feet long and 875 feet wide, to separate the holy from the common.

43

CHAPTER 43 IN 30 SECONDS
The glory of Yahweh comes back through the east gate and fills the temple. God says, This is the place of My throne. The glory that left in chapter 10 is home.

THE GLORY OF YAHWEH RETURNS TO THE TEMPLE

1 Then the man brought me back to the gate that faces east, 2 and I saw the glory of the God of Israel coming from the east.

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

His voice was like the roar of many waters, and the earth shone with His glory.
3 The vision I saw was like the vision I had
seen when He came to destroy the city
and like the visions I had seen by the River
Kebar. I fell facedown, 4 and the glory of
Yahweh entered the temple through the
gate facing east. 5 Then the Spirit lifted me
up and brought me into the inner court,
and the glory of Yahweh filled the temple.
6 While the man was standing beside me, I
heard someone speaking to me from inside the temple, 7 and He said to me, "Son
of man, this is the place of My throne and
the place for the soles of My feet, where I
will dwell among the Israelites forever.
The house of Israel will never again defile
My holy name—neither they nor their
kings—by their prostitution and by the funeral offerings for their kings at their
deaths. 8 When they placed their threshold
next to My threshold and their doorposts
beside My doorposts, with only a wall between Me and them, they defiled My holy
name by the abominations they committed. Therefore I have consumed them in
My anger. 9 Now let them remove far from
Me their prostitution and the funeral offerings for their kings, and I will dwell among
them forever.
10 As for you, son of man, describe the
temple to the people of Israel, so that they
may be ashamed of their iniquities. Let
them measure the plan, 11 and if they are
ashamed of all they have done, then make
known to them the design of the
temple—its arrangement and its exits and
entrances—its whole design along with all
its statutes, forms, and laws. Write it down
in their sight, so that they may keep its
complete design and all its statutes and
may carry them out.

12 This is the law of the temple: All its surrounding territory on top of the mountain
will be most holy. Yes, this is the law of
the temple.

THE ALTAR OF SACRIFICE

13 These are the measurements of the altar, by the same long measure: Its gutter
shall be 21 inches deep and 21 inches
wide, with a rim of about nine inches
around its edge.
And this is the height of the altar: 14 The
space from the gutter on the ground to
the lower ledge shall be 3½ feet, and the
ledge 21 inches wide. The space from the
smaller ledge to the larger ledge shall be 7
feet, and the ledge 21 inches wide.
15 The altar hearth shall be 7 feet high, and
four horns shall project upward from the
hearth. 16 The altar hearth shall be square
at its four corners, 21 feet long and 21 feet
wide. 17 The ledge shall also be square,
24½ feet long and 24½ feet wide, with a
rim of 10½ inches and a gutter of 21
inches all around it. The steps of the altar
shall face east."
18 Then He said to me: "Son of man, this is
what the Lord Yahweh says: 'These are
the statutes for the altar on the day it is
constructed, so that burnt offerings may
be sacrificed on it and blood may be
splattered on it: 19 You are to give a young
bull from the herd as a sin offering to the
Levitical priests who are of the family of
Zadok, who approach Me to minister before Me, declares the Lord Yahweh. 20 You
are to take some of its blood and put it on
the four horns of the altar, on the four corners of the ledge, and all around the rim;
thus you will cleanse the altar and make
atonement for it. 21 Then you are to take
away the bull for the sin offering and burn
it in the appointed part of the temple area
outside the sanctuary.
22 On the second day you are to present
an unblemished male goat as a sin offering, and the altar is to be cleansed as it
was with the bull. 23 When you have fin-

EZK 43:2 [NOTE] THE GLORY RETURNS. The glory that left by the east, 10:19 and 11:23, comes back the same way. Ezekiel falls on his face again, 43:3.
EZK 43:4 [PROPHECY] The glory of Yahweh returns and fills the temple through the east gate → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
EZK 43:7 [DEMONIC] Kings defiled God's name with idols near His temple
EZK 43:7 [NOTE] THE PLACE OF MY THRONE. God's own voice from the temple, so these words are red. He promises to live among His people forever.

EZK 43:13 [TEXT] THE ALTAR. Measured by the same long unit of about 21 inches. Its top hearth is 21 feet square, 43:16, and its steps face east, 43:17.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

ished the purification, you are to present a young, unblemished bull and an unblemished ram from the flock. 24 You must present them before Yahweh; the priests are to sprinkle salt on them and sacrifice them as a burnt offering to Yahweh.

25 For seven days you are to provide a male goat daily for a sin offering; you are also to provide a young bull and a ram from the flock, both unblemished. 26 For seven days the priests are to make atonement for the altar and cleanse it; so they shall consecrate it. 27 At the end of these days, from the eighth day on, the priests are to present your burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar. Then I will accept you, declares the Lord Yahweh.'"

44

CHAPTER 44 IN 30 SECONDS

The east gate stays shut, because God came in through it. Rules for the priests, the sons of Zadok, who stayed faithful. God Himself will be their inheritance.

THE EAST GATE ASSIGNED TO THE PRINCE

1 The man then brought me back to the outer gate of the sanctuary that faced east, but it was shut. 2 And Yahweh said to me, "This gate is to remain shut. It shall not be opened, and no man shall enter through it, because Yahweh, the God of Israel, has entered through it. Therefore it will remain shut. 3 Only the prince himself may sit inside the gateway to eat in the presence of Yahweh. He must enter by way of the portico of the gateway and go out the same way."

4 Then the man brought me to the front of the temple by way of the north gate. I looked and saw the glory of Yahweh filling His temple, and I fell facedown. 5 Yahweh said to me: "Son of man, set your heart on this; look carefully with your eyes and listen closely with your ears to everything I tell you concerning all the statutes and laws of the house of Yahweh. Set your heart on the entrance to the temple, along with all the exits of the sanctuary.

REPROOF OF THE LEVITES

6 Tell the rebellious house of Israel that this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'I have had enough of all your abominations, O house of Israel. 7 In addition to all your other abominations, you brought in foreigners uncircumcised in both heart and flesh to occupy My sanctuary; you defiled My temple when you offered My food—the fat and the blood; you broke My covenant. 8 And you have not kept charge of My holy things, but have appointed others to keep charge of My sanctuary for you.'

9 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: No foreigner uncircumcised in heart and flesh may enter My sanctuary—not even a foreigner who lives among the Israelites.

10 Surely the Levites who wandered away from Me when Israel went astray, and who wandered away from Me after their idols, will bear the consequences of their iniquity. 11 Yet they shall be ministers in My sanctuary, having charge of the gates of the temple and ministering there. They shall slaughter the burnt offerings and other sacrifices for the people and stand before them to minister to them.

12 Because they ministered before their idols and became a stumbling block of iniquity to the house of Israel, therefore I swore with an uplifted hand concerning them that they would bear the consequences of their iniquity, declares the Lord Yahweh. 13 They must not approach Me to serve Me as priests or come near any of My holy things or the most holy things. They will bear the shame of the abominations they have committed. 14 Yet I will appoint them to keep charge of all the work for the temple and everything to be done in it.

THE DUTIES OF THE PRIESTS

15 But the Levitical priests, who are descended from Zadok and who kept charge

EZK 44:2 [NOTE] THE SHUT GATE. It stays shut because Yahweh entered by it. Jerusalem's Golden Gate in the east wall has been sealed for hundreds of years, and many link the two, but it was built long after Ezekiel.

EZK 44:5 [TEXT] SET YOUR HEART. The Hebrew says sim libbekha twice in this verse. The KJV says mark well.

EZK 44:10 [DEMONIC] Levites who served idols lose their place

GOD SPEAKING

of My sanctuary when the Israelites went astray from Me, are to approach Me to minister before Me. They will stand before Me to offer Me fat and blood, declares the Lord Yahweh. 16 They alone shall enter My sanctuary and draw near to My table to minister before Me. They will keep My charge.

17 When they enter the gates of the inner court, they are to wear linen garments; they must not wear anything made of wool when they minister at the gates of the inner court or inside the temple. 18 They are to wear linen turbans on their heads and linen undergarments around their waists. They must not wear anything that makes them perspire.

19 When they go out to the outer court, to the people, they are to take off the garments in which they have ministered, leave them in the holy chambers, and dress in other clothes so that they do not transmit holiness to the people with their garments.

20 They must not shave their heads or let their hair grow long, but must carefully trim their hair. 21 No priest may drink wine before he enters the inner court. 22 And they shall not marry a widow or a divorced woman, but must marry a virgin of the descendants of the house of Israel, or a widow of a priest. 23 They are to teach My people the difference between the holy and the common and show them how to discern between the clean and the unclean.

24 In any dispute, they shall officiate as judges and judge according to My ordinances. They must keep My laws and statutes regarding all My appointed feasts, and they must keep My Sabbaths holy.

25 A priest must not defile himself by going near a dead person. However, for a father, a mother, a son, a daughter, a brother, or an unmarried sister, he may do so, 26 and after he is cleansed, he must count off seven days for himself. 27 And on the day he goes into the sanctuary, into the inner court, to minister in the sanctuary, he must present his sin offering, declares the Lord Yahweh.

28 In regard to their inheritance, I am their inheritance. You are to give them no possession in Israel, for I am their possession.

29 They shall eat the grain offerings, the sin offerings, and the guilt offerings. Everything in Israel devoted to Yahweh will belong to them. 30 The best of all the firstfruits and of every contribution from all your offerings will belong to the priests. You are to give your first batch of dough to the priest, so that a blessing may rest upon your homes. 31 The priests may not eat any bird or animal found dead or torn by wild beasts.

45

CHAPTER 45 IN 30 SECONDS

The land gets a holy portion for God, the priests and the city. Leaders must use honest scales and honest measures. No thumb on the scale.

CONSECRATION OF THE LAND

1 "When you divide the land by lot as an inheritance, you are to set aside a portion for Yahweh, a holy portion of the land about 8⅓ miles long and about 6⅔ miles wide. This entire tract of land will be holy.

2 Within this area there is to be a section for the sanctuary 875 feet square, with 87½ feet around it for open land.

3 From this holy portion, you are to measure off a length of about 8⅓ miles and a width of about 3⅓ miles, and in it will be the sanctuary, the Most Holy Place. 4 It will be a holy portion of the land to be used by the priests who minister in the sanctuary, who draw near to minister before Yahweh. It will be a place for their houses, as well as a holy area for the sanctuary.

5 An adjacent area about 8⅓ miles long and about 3⅓ miles wide shall belong to the Levites who minister in the temple; it

EZK 44:15 [NOTE] THE SONS OF ZADOK. Zadok was the faithful priest of David and Solomon, 1 Kings 1:32 to 39. His family stayed true when others went after idols.

EZK 44:28 [NOTE] I AM THEIR INHERITANCE. The priests got no land. God Himself was their portion, Numbers 18:20 and Lamentations 3:24.

GOD SPEAKING

will be their possession for towns in which to live.

6 As the property of the city, you are to set aside an area about 1⅓ miles wide and about 8⅓ miles long, adjacent to the holy district. It will belong to the whole house of Israel.

THE PRINCE'S PORTION

7 Now the prince will have the area bordering each side of the area formed by the holy district and the property of the city, extending westward from the western side and eastward from the eastern side, running lengthwise from the western boundary to the eastern boundary and parallel to one of the tribal portions. 8 This land will be his possession in Israel.

And My princes will no longer oppress My people, but will give the rest of the land to the house of Israel according to their tribes. 9 For this is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'Enough, O princes of Israel! Cease your violence and oppression, and do what is just and right. Stop dispossessing My people, declares the Lord Yahweh.'

HONEST SCALES // DEUTERONOMY 25:13–16; PROVERBS 11:1–3

10 You must use honest scales, an honest dry measure, and an honest liquid measure.

11 The dry measure and the liquid measure shall be the same size, so that each one holds a tenth of the large measure; the large measure will be the standard for both.

12 Your standard weight will be two fifths of an ounce, made up of twenty small weights. Eight ounces plus ten ounces plus six ounces will make your larger weight of 1½ pounds.

OFFERINGS AND FEASTS

13 This is the contribution you are to offer: about three quarts from every six bushels of wheat, and about three quarts from every six bushels of barley. 14 The prescribed portion of oil is about two quarts from every 55 gallons (55 gallons is ten liquid measures, the same as one large measure). 15 And one sheep shall be given from each flock of two hundred from the well-watered pastures of Israel. These are for the grain offerings, burnt offerings, and peace offerings, to make atonement for the people, declares the Lord Yahweh.

16 All the people of the land must participate in this contribution for the prince in Israel. 17 And it shall be the prince's part to provide the burnt offerings, grain offerings, and drink offerings for the feasts, New Moons, and Sabbaths—for all the appointed feasts of the house of Israel. He will provide the sin offerings, grain offerings, burnt offerings, and peace offerings to make atonement for the house of Israel.

18 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'On the first day of the first month you are to take a young bull without blemish and purify the sanctuary. 19 And the priest is to take some of the blood from the sin offering and put it on the doorposts of the temple, on the four corners of the ledge of the altar, and on the gateposts of the inner court. 20 You must do the same thing on the seventh day of the month for anyone who strays unintentionally or in ignorance. In this way you will make atonement for the temple.

21 On the fourteenth day of the first month you are to observe the Passover, a feast of seven days, during which unleavened bread shall be eaten. 22 On that day the prince shall provide a bull as a sin offering for himself and for all the people of the land. 23 Each day during the seven days of the feast, he shall provide seven bulls and seven rams without blemish as a burnt offering to Yahweh, along with a male goat for a sin offering. 24 He shall also provide as a grain offering half a bushel for each bull and half a bushel for each ram, along with a gallon of olive oil for each half bushel of grain. 25 During the seven days of the feast that begins on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, he is to make

■ **EZK 45:11 [TEXT]** THE MEASURES. The dry measure and the liquid measure are the same size, about half a bushel or 5½ gallons. The large measure holds ten of either, about six bushels or 55 gallons.
■ **EZK 45:12 [TEXT]** THE WEIGHTS. In the Hebrew, the larger weight is 20 plus 25 plus 15 standard weights, 60 in all.

GOD SPEAKING

the same provision for sin offerings, burnt offerings, grain offerings, and oil.'

46

CHAPTER 46 IN 30 SECONDS

Rules for worship on Sabbaths, new moons and feasts. Even which gate to use: come in one way, go out the other. Nobody turns around in the crowd.

THE PRINCE'S OFFERINGS

1 "This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'The gate of the inner court that faces east must be kept shut during the six days of work, but on the Sabbath day and on the day of the New Moon it shall be opened. 2 The prince is to enter from the outside through the portico of the gateway and stand by the gatepost, while the priests sacrifice his burnt offerings and peace offerings. He is to bow in worship at the threshold of the gate and then depart, but the gate must not be shut until evening. 3 On the Sabbaths and New Moons the people of the land are also to bow in worship before Yahweh at the entrance to that gateway.

4 The burnt offering that the prince presents to Yahweh on the Sabbath day shall be six unblemished male lambs and an unblemished ram. 5 The grain offering with the ram shall be half a bushel, and the grain offering with the lambs shall be as much as he is able, along with a gallon of oil per half bushel. 6 On the day of the New Moon he shall offer a young, unblemished bull, six lambs, and a ram without blemish. 7 He is to provide a grain offering of half a bushel with the bull, half a bushel with the ram, and as much as he is able with the lambs, along with a gallon of oil per half bushel. 8 When the prince enters, he shall go in through the portico of the gateway, and he shall go out the same way.

9 When the people of the land come before Yahweh at the appointed feasts, whoever enters by the north gate to worship must go out by the south gate, and whoever enters by the south gate must go out by the north gate. No one is to return through the gate by which he entered, but each must go out by the opposite gate.

10 When the people enter, the prince shall go in with them, and when they leave, he shall leave. 11 At the festivals and appointed feasts, the grain offering shall be half a bushel with a bull, half a bushel with a ram, and as much as one is able to give with the lambs, along with a gallon of oil per half bushel.

12 When the prince makes a freewill offering to Yahweh, whether a burnt offering or a peace offering, the gate facing east must be opened for him. He is to offer his burnt offering or peace offering just as he does on the Sabbath day. Then he shall go out, and the gate must be closed after he goes out.

13 And you shall provide an unblemished year-old lamb as a daily burnt offering to Yahweh; you are to offer it every morning. 14 You are also to provide with it every morning a grain offering of about three quarts with a third of a gallon of oil to moisten the fine flour—a grain offering to Yahweh. This is a permanent statute. 15 Thus they shall provide the lamb, the grain offering, and the oil every morning as a regular burnt offering.'

16 This is what the Lord Yahweh says: 'If the prince gives a gift to any of his sons as an inheritance, it will belong to his descendants. It will become their property by inheritance. 17 But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, it will belong to that servant until the year of freedom; then it will revert to the prince. His inheritance belongs only to his sons; it shall be theirs.

18 The prince must not take any of the inheritance of the people by evicting them from their property. He is to provide an inheritance for his sons from his own property, so that none of My people will be displaced from his property.'"

■ **EZK 46:9 [NOTE]** IN ONE GATE, OUT THE OTHER. Whoever comes in by the north gate leaves by the south. No one goes back the way they came. Many see a picture: meeting God changes your direction.

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

THE COURTS FOR BOILING AND BAKING

19 Then the man brought me through the
entrance at the side of the gate into the
holy chambers facing north, which be-
longed to the priests, and he showed me
a place there at the far western end 20 and
said to me, "This is the place where the
priests shall boil the guilt offering and the
sin offering, and where they shall bake the
grain offering, so that they do not bring
them into the outer court and transmit ho-
liness to the people."

21 Then he brought me into the outer court
and led me around to its four corners, and
I saw a separate court in each of its cor-
ners. 22 In the four corners of the outer
court there were enclosed courts, each 70
feet long and 52½ feet wide. Each of the
four corner areas had the same dimen-
sions. 23 Around the inside of each of the
four courts was a row of masonry with
ovens built at the base of the walls on all
sides.

24 And he said to me, "These are the
kitchens where those who minister at the
temple will cook the sacrifices offered by
the people."

47

CHAPTER 47 IN 30 SECONDS

A river flows out from the temple, ankle deep, then knee deep, then too deep to cross. Wherever it goes, things come alive, even the Dead Sea. Trees on its banks bear fruit every month and have healing leaves.

WATERS FROM UNDER THE TEMPLE

1 Then the man brought me back to the
entrance of the temple, and I saw water
flowing from under the threshold of the
temple toward the east (for the temple
faced east). The water was coming down
from under the south side of the temple,
south of the altar.

2 Next he brought me out through the
north gate and led me around the outside
to the outer gate facing east, and there I
saw the water trickling out from the south
side.

3 As the man went eastward with a mea-
suring line in his hand, he measured off
1,750 feet and led me through ankle-deep
water.

4 Then he measured off 1,750 feet and led
me through knee-deep water.

Again he measured 1,750 feet and led me
through waist-deep water.

5 Once again he measured off 1,750 feet,
but now it was a river that I could not
cross, because the water had risen and
was deep enough for swimming—a river
that could not be crossed on foot.

6 "Son of man, do you see this?" he asked.
Then he led me back to the bank of the
river.

7 When I arrived, I saw a great number of
trees along both banks of the river. 8 And
he said to me, "This water flows out to the
eastern region and goes down into the
Arabah. When it empties into the Dead
Sea, the water there becomes fresh. 9
Wherever the river flows, there will be
swarms of living creatures and a great
number of fish, because it flows there and
makes the waters fresh; so wherever the
river flows, everything will flourish.

10 Fishermen will stand by the shore; from
En-gedi to En-eglaim they will spread
their nets to catch fish of many kinds, like
the fish of the Great Sea.

11 But the swamps and marshes will not
become fresh; they will be left for salt.

12 Along both banks of the river, fruit trees
of all kinds will grow. Their leaves will not
wither, and their fruit will not fail. Each
month they will bear fruit, because the
water from the sanctuary flows to them.
Their fruit will be used for food and their
leaves for healing."

- **EZK 47:1 [PROPHECY]** Living water flows out from under the temple threshold → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **EZK 47:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JN 7:38 p.1711
- **EZK 47:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:1 p.2115
- **EZK 47:1 [NOTE]** THE RIVER. Water flows from under the temple door and grows deeper as it goes. John saw a river like it flowing from God's throne, Revelation 22:1 to 2, and Jesus spoke of rivers of living water, John 7:38.
- **EZK 47:8 [NOTE]** THE DEAD SEA HEALED. The salty sea becomes fresh and full of fish, 47:10. Only the marshes stay salty, 47:11.
- **EZK 47:9 [NOTABLE]** Life flows out from where God is. Wherever His presence goes, dead places come alive.

GOD SPEAKING

THE BORDERS OF THE LAND

13 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:
"These are the boundaries by which you
are to divide the land as an inheritance
among the twelve tribes of Israel; Joseph
shall receive two portions. 14 You are to di-
vide it equally among them. Because I
swore with an uplifted hand to give it to
your forefathers, this land will fall to you
as an inheritance.

15 This shall be the boundary of the land:
On the north side it will extend from the
Great Sea by way of Hethlon through
Lebo-hamath to Zedad, 16 Berothah, and
Sibraim (which is on the border between
Damascus and Hamath), as far as Hazer-
hatticon, which is on the border of Hau-
ran. 17 So the border will run from the Sea
to Hazar-enan, along the northern border
of Damascus, with the territory of Hamath
to the north. This will be the northern
boundary.
18 On the east side the border will run be-
tween Hauran and Damascus, along
the Jordan between Gilead and the
land of Israel, to the Eastern Sea and
as far as Tamar. This will be the east-
ern boundary.
19 On the south side it will run from Tamar
to the waters of Meribath-kadesh, and
along the Brook of Egypt to the Great
Sea. This will be the southern bound-
ary.
20 And on the west side, the Great Sea will
be the boundary up to a point opposite
Lebo-hamath. This will be the western
boundary.

21 You are to divide this land among your-
selves according to the tribes of Israel. 22
You shall allot it as an inheritance for
yourselves and for the foreigners who
dwell among you and who have children.
You are to treat them as native-born Is-
raelites; along with you, they shall be al-
lotted an inheritance among the tribes of
Israel. 23 In whatever tribe a foreigner
dwells, you are to assign his inheritance
there," declares the Lord Yahweh.

48

CHAPTER 48 IN 30 SECONDS

The land is divided among the twelve tribes, with the city in the middle. It has twelve gates named for the tribes. Its new name says it all: Yahweh Is There.

THE PORTIONS FOR THE TRIBES

1 "Now these are the names of the tribes:
At the northern frontier, Dan will have one
portion bordering the road of Hethlon to
Lebo-hamath and running on to Hazar-
enan on the border of Damascus with
Hamath to the north, and extending from
the east side to the west side.
2 Asher will have one portion bordering the
territory of Dan from east to west.
3 Naphtali will have one portion bordering
the territory of Asher from east to
west.
4 Manasseh will have one portion border-
ing the territory of Naphtali from east
to west.
5 Ephraim will have one portion bordering
the territory of Manasseh from east to
west.
6 Reuben will have one portion bordering
the territory of Ephraim from east to
west.
7 Judah will have one portion bordering
the territory of Reuben from east to
west.

THE PORTIONS FOR THE PRIESTS AND LEVITES

8 Bordering the territory of Judah, from
east to west, will be the portion you are to
set apart. It will be about 8⅓ miles wide,
and the length of a tribal portion from east
to west. In the center will be the sanctu-
ary.

9 The special portion you set apart to Yah-
weh shall be about 8⅓ miles long and
about 3⅓ miles wide.

10 This will be the holy portion for the
priests. It will be about 8⅓ miles long on
the north side, about 3⅓ miles wide on

EZK 47:12 [PROPHECY] Trees by the river bear fruit every month and their leaves bring healing → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

EZK 47:12 [ALLUDED TO] The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:2 p.2115

EZK 47:22 [NOTE] FOREIGNERS TOO. Outsiders who live among Israel get land like the native born. God's family was always meant to be open, Isaiah 56:6 to 7.

GOD SPEAKING

the west side, about 3⅓ miles wide on the east side, and about 8⅓ miles long on the south side. In the center will be the sanctuary of Yahweh. 11 It will be for the consecrated priests, the descendants of Zadok, who kept My charge and did not go astray as the Levites did when the Israelites went astray. 12 It will be a special portion for them set apart from the land, a most holy portion adjacent to the territory of the Levites.

13 Bordering the territory of the priests, the Levites shall have an area about 8⅓ miles long and about 3⅓ miles wide. The whole length will be about 8⅓ miles, and the width about 3⅓ miles. 14 They must not sell or exchange any of it, and they must not transfer this best part of the land, for it is holy to Yahweh.

THE COMMON PORTION

15 The remaining area, about 1⅔ miles wide and about 8⅓ miles long, will be for common use by the city, for houses, and for pastureland. The city will be in the center of it 16 and will have these measurements: about 1½ miles on the north side, about 1½ miles on the south side, about 1½ miles on the east side, and about 1½ miles on the west side.

17 The pastureland of the city will extend 437½ feet to the north, 437½ feet to the south, 437½ feet to the east, and 437½ feet to the west.

18 The remainder of the length bordering the holy portion and running adjacent to it will be about 3⅓ miles on the east side and about 3⅓ miles on the west side. Its produce will supply food for the workers of the city. 19 The workers of the city who cultivate it will come from all the tribes of Israel.

20 The entire portion will be a square, about 8⅓ miles by about 8⅓ miles. You are to set apart the holy portion, along with the city property.

THE PORTION FOR THE PRINCE

21 The remaining area on both sides of the holy portion and of the property of the city will belong to the prince. He will own the land adjacent to the tribal portions, extending eastward from the holy district, about 8⅓ miles wide, toward the eastern border, and westward from it to the western border. And in the center of them will be the holy portion and the sanctuary of the temple.

22 So the Levitical property and the city property will lie in the center of the area belonging to the prince—the area between the borders of Judah and Benjamin.

THE PORTIONS FOR THE REMAINING TRIBES

23 As for the rest of the tribes:

Benjamin will have one portion extending from the east side to the west side.

24 Simeon will have one portion bordering the territory of Benjamin from east to west.

25 Issachar will have one portion bordering the territory of Simeon from east to west.

26 Zebulun will have one portion bordering the territory of Issachar from east to west.

27 And Gad will have one portion bordering the territory of Zebulun from east to west.

28 The southern border of Gad will run from Tamar to the waters of Meribath-kadesh, then along the Brook of Egypt and out to the Great Sea. 29 This is the land you are to allot as an inheritance to the tribes of Israel, and these will be their portions," declares the Lord Yahweh.

THE CITY GATES AND DIMENSIONS

30 "These will be the exits of the city:

Beginning on the north side, which will be about 1½ miles long, 31 the gates of the city will be named after the tribes of Israel. On the north side there will be three gates: the gate of Reuben, the gate of Judah, and the gate of Levi.

32 On the east side, which will be about 1½ miles long, there will be three gates: the gate of Joseph, the gate of Benjamin, and the gate of Dan.

■ **EZK 48:31 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 21:12-14 p.2114

END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

33 On the south side, which will be about
1½ miles long, there will be three
gates: the gate of Simeon, the gate of
Issachar, and the gate of Zebulun.
34 And on the west side, which will be
about 1½ miles long, there will be three
gates: the gate of Gad, the gate of
Asher, and the gate of Naphtali.

35 The perimeter of the city will be about 6
miles, and from that day on the name of
the city will be:

YAHWEH IS THERE."

EZK 48:35 [PROPHECY] The name of the city will be YAHWEH IS THERE → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

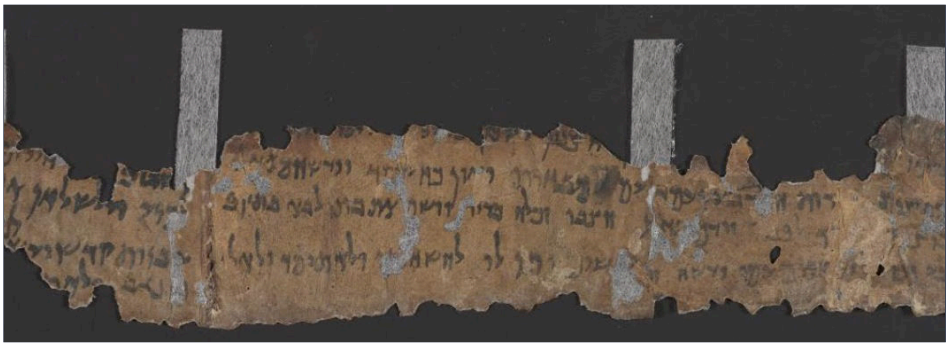
EZK 48:35 [NOTE] YAHWEH IS THERE. In Hebrew, YHWH shammah. The book that began with God's glory leaving ends with a city named for His presence. Revelation ends the same way, Revelation 21:3.

BOOK 27 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MAJOR PROPHETS

DANIEL

Kingdoms Rise, Kingdoms Fall

AUTHOR	Daniel, a young man from Judah taken to Babylon, who speaks as I in chapters 7 to 12. When it was written is debated: see When Was Daniel Written?
DATE	The events run from 605 BC to about 536 BC, the third year of Cyrus, 10:1.
WRITTEN TO	God's people living as a small, pushed around minority, then and now.
KEY VERSE	Daniel 2:21. He changes the times and seasons; He removes kings and establishes them.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF DANIEL
A piece of 4QDan c from Qumran Cave 4, one of the oldest Bible scrolls ever found, copied in the late 100s BC. It holds parts of Daniel 10 and 11. Eight copies of Daniel were found at Qumran. See The Daniel Scrolls.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Babylon is the superpower. In 605 BC it takes Daniel and other young men from Judah's best families to train them for the king's service. Daniel lives and serves in Babylon for almost seventy years, under Nebuchadnezzar, Belshazzar, and then the Persians when Babylon falls in 539 BC. Chapters 1 to 6 are stories about staying faithful in a pagan world. Chapters 7 to 12 are visions of empires to come and God's kingdom at the end. Part of the book, 2:4 to 7:28, is written in Aramaic, the rest in Hebrew.

What Went Wrong

PRIDE. Nebuchadnezzar boasted in what he built, 4:30, and Belshazzar drank from God's temple cups, 5:2 to 4.
IDOLS. A gold statue everyone had to bow to, 3:5 to 6, and gods of gold and silver praised at a party, 5:4.

TRAPS AT WORK. Jealous officials used the law to trap Daniel because of his prayers, 6:4 to 7.
A PROUD KING. A proud ruler who stops the sacrifices and sets up an abomination in the temple, 8:11 and 11:31.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Daniel is a book about who is really in charge. In the first half, Daniel and his friends live in the most powerful city on earth and stay faithful to God: they refuse the king's food, survive a furnace and a lions' den, and watch God humble two proud kings. In the second half, Daniel sees the future: empire after empire rising and falling, a proud ruler fighting God's people, and at the end one like a son of man receiving a kingdom that will never end. Kings rise and kings fall, but God's kingdom stands.

Daniel at a Glance

CH 1	**FAITHFUL AT THE TABLE** Daniel and his friends say no to the king's food.
CH 2 to 6	**FAITHFUL IN BABYLON** A dream statue, the fiery furnace, a humbled king, the writing on the wall, the lions' den.
CH 7 to 8	**BEASTS AND HORNS** Four beasts, the Son of Man, a ram and a goat.
CH 9	**SEVENTY WEEKS** Daniel's prayer and Gabriel's answer.
CH 10 to 12	**THE LAST VISION** Kings of the north and south, Michael, and the dead rising.

Where Jesus Shows Up

DANIEL 2:34 TO 35, 44 A stone not cut by human hands becomes a mountain that fills the earth. Jesus called Himself the stone the builders rejected, Luke 20:17 to 18.

DANIEL 3:25 A fourth man in the fire, like a son of the gods. Many Christians see Christ with His people in the fire.

DANIEL 7:13 TO 14 One like a son of man receives an everlasting kingdom. Jesus claimed these words at His trial, Mark 14:62.

DANIEL 9:25 TO 26 The Messiah will be cut off. Many Christians see the timing of Jesus' coming and His death here.

DANIEL 12:2 Many who sleep in the dust will wake. Jesus promised the same resurrection, John 5:28 to 29.

BELTESHAZZAR
Daniel's Babylonian name, 1:7.

THE ANCIENT OF DAYS
A name for God on His throne of judgment, 7:9.

What to Watch for in Daniel

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (9)	7:13-14, 9:24-26
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (11)	1:3, 4:24-26, 4:31-33, 5:2-4, 5:25-29, 5:31, 9:2
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (11)	2:39-40, 7:4-7, 7:23, 8:3-8, 9:27, 11:2-4, 11:6-8 and 2 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA (18)	8:9-14, 8:23-25, 11:20-35

END TIMES PROPHECIES (11)	2:44-45, 7:8-10, 7:24-27, 11:36-45, 12:1-3, 12:7, 12:11-12
THE HEART (4)	1:8, 5:20, 5:22, 10:12
ARCHAEOLOGY (5)	2:4, 4:30, 4:36, 5:1, 5:30
MIRACLES (11)	2:19, 2:27-28, 3:19-27, 4:13-17, 4:34-35, 4:37, 5:5-6 and 5 more
DEMONIC (14)	1:2, 1:20, 2:2, 2:10-11, 3:1-7, 3:12-15, 3:28 and 8 more
NOTABLE (4)	2:20-22, 3:16-18, 6:10, 9:18-19
GOD SPEAKING (3 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (2 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

TWO LANGUAGES
The middle of the book, 2:4 to 7:28, is in Aramaic, the language of the empire. The rest is Hebrew.

THE FIRST NAMED ANGELS
Gabriel and Michael are named for the first time in the Bible here.

ONE RED LINE AND A HAND
A voice from heaven speaks once, 4:31 to 32, and God's hand writes once, on a wall, 5:25. Those words are red.

A KING WRITES A CHAPTER
Chapter 4 is Nebuchadnezzar's own letter about how God humbled him.

How Does It End?

With a promise to Daniel himself: go on your way, rest, and you will rise again at the end of the days, 12:13. Babylon fell, Persia fell, Greece fell, but the kingdom of God never will, 2:44.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · THE HEART · DEMONIC · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon takes the best young men of Judah to train for the king's service. Daniel and his three friends politely turn down the king's food and ask for vegetables and water. Ten days later they look better than everyone else.

DANIEL REMOVED TO BABYLON

1 In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim
king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar king of
Babylon came to Jerusalem and besieged
it. 2 And the Lord delivered into his hand
Jehoiakim king of Judah, along with some
of the articles from the house of God. He
carried these off to the land of Shinar, to
the house of his god, where he put them
in the treasury of his god.

3 Then the king ordered Ashpenaz, the
chief of his court officials, to bring in
some Israelites from the royal family and
the nobility— 4 young men without blem-
ish, handsome, gifted in all wisdom,
knowledgeable, quick to understand, and
qualified to serve in the king's
palace—and to teach them the language
and literature of the Chaldeans.

5 The king assigned them daily provisions
of the royal food and wine. They were to
be trained for three years, after which
they were to enter the king's service.

6 Among these young men were some
from Judah: Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael,
and Azariah. 7 The chief official gave them
new names: To Daniel he gave the name
Belteshazzar; to Hananiah, Shadrach; to
Mishael, Meshach; and to Azariah, Abed-
nego.

- **DAN 1:1 [NOTE]** THE THIRD YEAR OF JEHOIAKIM. 605 BC, the year Nebuchadnezzar beat Egypt at Carchemish. Jeremiah 25:1 calls it the fourth year; Babylon and Judah counted a king's first year differently. Babylon's own record: see The Babylonian Chronicle, 2 Kings, p.659.
- **DAN 1:2 [DEMONIC]** Nebuchadnezzar puts God's temple vessels in his idol's temple
- **DAN 1:2 [NOTE]** THE TEMPLE VESSELS. Babylon put the articles from God's temple in its own god's temple, as if to say our god beat yours. They come back in 5:2, at Belshazzar's party.
- **DAN 1:3 [FULFILLS]** Isaiah told Hezekiah his descendants would be carried to Babylon as eunuchs ← 2KI 20:16-18 p.649
- **DAN 1:4 [NOTE]** THE BEST AND BRIGHTEST. Babylon trained young leaders from the lands it took, so they would serve Babylon. Isaiah had warned Hezekiah of this, 2 Kings 20:18.

DANIEL'S FAITHFULNESS

8 But Daniel purposed in his heart that he
would not defile himself with the king's
food or wine. So he asked the chief offi-
cial for permission not to defile himself.

9 Now God had granted Daniel favor and
compassion from the chief official, 10 but
he said to Daniel, "I fear my lord the king,
who has assigned your food and drink.
For why should he see your faces looking
thinner than those of the other young men
your age? You would endanger my head
before the king!"

11 Then Daniel said to the steward whom
the chief official had appointed over
Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, 12
"Please test your servants for ten days.
Let us be given only vegetables to eat and
water to drink. 13 Then compare our ap-
pearances with those of the young men
who are eating the royal food, and deal
with your servants according to what you
see."

14 So he consented to this and tested them
for ten days. 15 And at the end of ten days,
they looked healthier and better nourished
than all the young men who were eating
the king's food. 16 So the steward contin-
ued to withhold their choice food and the
wine they were to drink, and he gave them
vegetables instead.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE DANIEL FAST

What Daniel Ate, and Why

DANIEL 1:8 TO 16 · 10:2 TO 3

THE FIRST TEST

Daniel asked for vegetables and water for ten days, 1:12. The Hebrew word means things grown from seed, so it could include grains and beans.

- **DAN 1:7 [NOTE]** NEW NAMES. Daniel means God is my judge. Babylon renamed him Belteshazzar, after the name of the king's god, 4:8. Hananiah, Mishael and Azariah became Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego. They took the names but kept their God.
- **DAN 1:8 [HEART]** Daniel decided in his heart not to defile himself, before the pressure came. Faithfulness starts on the inside.
- **DAN 1:8 [TEXT]** PURPOSED IN HIS HEART. The Hebrew says he set it on his heart, like the KJV.
- **DAN 1:8 [NOTE]** WHY REFUSE THE FOOD? Some of it was likely not kosher, Leviticus 11, and some may have been offered to idols. Daniel asked politely and offered a test. See The Daniel Fast.

DEMONIC

WHY HE SAID NO
The king's meat was likely not kosher and may have been offered to idols. Some also think eating at the king's table meant owing him your loyalty. Daniel said no without being rude.

What It Means Today
MATTHEW 6:16 TO 18 · ROMANS 14:17 · 1 CORINTHIANS 8:8

THE SECOND FAST
Years later Daniel mourned for three weeks: no rich food, no meat, no wine, no oil on his skin, 10:2 to 3. It was a season of prayer, not a diet.

THE MODERN DANIEL FAST
Many churches hold a 21 day Daniel Fast: fruits, vegetables, whole grains, beans and water, no meat, sweets or wine. It comes from putting 1:12 and 10:3 together.

WHAT IT GETS RIGHT AND WRONG
Fasting to seek God is good, Matthew 6:16 to 18. But the Bible does not command this exact menu, and food itself does not make anyone holier, Romans 14:17. The point was Daniel's heart, not his plate.

FOR YOU
Daniel purposed in his heart before he faced the menu, 1:8. Decide what you will stand for before the pressure comes.

DANIEL'S WISDOM

17 To these four young men God gave
knowledge and understanding in every
kind of literature and wisdom. And Daniel
had insight into all kinds of visions and
dreams.

18 Now at the end of the time specified by
the king, the chief official presented them
to Nebuchadnezzar. 19 And the king spoke
with them, and among all the young men
he found no one equal to Daniel, Hana-
niah, Mishael, and Azariah. So they en-
tered the king's service.

20 In every matter of wisdom and under-
standing about which the king consulted
them, he found them ten times better than
all the magicians and enchanters in his
entire kingdom. 21 And Daniel remained
there until the first year of King Cyrus.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS DANIEL WRITTEN?

About 530 BC or About 165 BC?
DANIEL 1:1 · 7:28 · 12:4

WHY IT IS A QUESTION
Daniel tells of kings and wars hundreds of years ahead, especially in chapter 11, in great detail. Some say how a reader dates the book depends on whether he believes God can tell the future that clearly.

THE OLD VIEW
Jews and Christians long held that Daniel wrote it himself in the 500s BC. Jesus spoke of the abomination of desolation, spoken of by the prophet Daniel, Matthew 24:15. The book says Daniel wrote down his dream, 7:1.

THE LATE VIEW
Porphyry, a pagan writer about AD 270, said the book was written in the days of Antiochus IV, about 165 BC, after many of the events. Many scholars today agree, and some think the stories in chapters 1 to 6 are older.

Every View
MATTHEW 24:15 · EZEKIEL 14:14 · 1 MACCABEES 1:54

THE CASE FOR EARLY
Ezekiel names Daniel as famous for righteousness and wisdom, Ezekiel 14:14 and 28:3. The Aramaic is like the Aramaic of the empire in the 500s and 400s BC. The book knows Belshazzar, whom later Greek writers had forgotten. Copies were at Qumran within decades of 165 BC. Many Christians see Daniel 9 and 2 pointing past Antiochus to Jesus and to Rome, which a writer in 165 BC could not have seen.

THE CASE FOR LATE
Chapter 11 is very detailed up to Antiochus IV and then becomes general. Three Greek instrument names show up

■ **DAN 1:17 [NOTE]** GIFTS FROM ABOVE. They studied hard, but the wisdom came from God, James 1:5.

DAN 1:20 [DEMONIC] Daniel proves ten times wiser than Babylon's magicians and enchanters

■ **DAN 1:21 [NOTE]** THE FIRST YEAR OF CYRUS. 539 BC. Daniel outlived the whole Babylonian empire. 10:1 shows him still alive two years later.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC

in 3:5. Daniel sits with the Writings, not the Prophets, in the Hebrew Bible. Some see Darius the Mede as a mistake.

ANSWERS BOTH WAYS

Early date scholars say Greek trade words came east long before Alexander, and that the Hebrew Bible's order was set later for other reasons. Late date scholars answer that the Qumran copies fit a quick spread of a new book, and that Ezekiel's Daniel is an older hero named Danel.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The book was finished before the Daniel scrolls from Qumran were copied, it was loved and trusted by Jews before Jesus, and its message is the same either way: God rules, and His kingdom will outlast every empire.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

King Nebuchadnezzar has a dream and wants his wise men to tell him the dream itself, not just the meaning. Nobody can, so he plans to kill them all. God shows Daniel the dream: a giant statue, and a rock that smashes it.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S TROUBLING DREAM

1 In the second year of his reign, Nebuchadnezzar had dreams that troubled his
spirit, and sleep escaped him. 2 So the
king gave orders to summon the magicians, enchanters, sorcerers, and astrologers to explain his dreams. When
they came and stood before the king, 3 he
said to them, "I have had a dream, and my
spirit is anxious to understand it."

4 Then the astrologers answered the king
in Aramaic, "O king, may you live forever!
Tell your servants the dream, and we will
give the interpretation."

5 The king replied to the astrologers, "My
word is final: If you do not tell me the
dream and its interpretation, you will be
cut into pieces and your houses will be
reduced to rubble. 6 But if you tell me the
dream and its interpretation, you will receive from me gifts and rewards and great
honor. So tell me the dream and its interpretation."

7 They answered a second time, "Let the
king tell the dream to his servants, and we
will give the interpretation."

8 The king replied, "I know for sure that
you are stalling for time because you see
that my word is final. 9 If you do not tell me
the dream, there is only one decree for
you. You have conspired to speak before
me false and fraudulent words, hoping the
situation will change. Therefore tell me the
dream, and I will know that you can give
me its interpretation."

10 The astrologers answered the king, "No
one on earth can do what the king requests! No king, however great and powerful, has ever asked anything like this of
any magician, enchanter, or astrologer. 11
What the king requests is so difficult that
no one can tell it to him except the gods,
whose dwelling is not with mortals."

12 This response made the king so angry
and furious that he gave orders to destroy
all the wise men of Babylon. 13 So the decree went out that the wise men were to
be executed, and men went to look for
Daniel and his friends to execute them.

THE DREAM REVEALED TO DANIEL

14 When Arioch, the commander of the
king's guard, went out to execute the wise
men of Babylon, Daniel responded with
discretion and tact. 15 "Why is the decree
from the king so harsh?" he asked.

Then Arioch explained the situation to
Daniel. 16 So Daniel went in and asked the
king to give him some time, so that he
could give him the interpretation.

17 Then Daniel returned to his house and
explained the matter to his friends Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, 18 urging them
to plead for mercy from the God of

DAN 2:2 [DEMONIC] The king calls magicians, sorcerers, and astrologers to explain his dream

DAN 2:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Eight copies of Daniel from Qumran; one switches to Aramaic right here, see The Daniel Scrolls Field Notes page, p.1327FIELD NOTES p.1327

DAN 2:4 [NOTE] NOW IN ARAMAIC. From here to the end of chapter 7, the book is written in Aramaic, the common language of the empire. Then it switches back to Hebrew in 8:1.

DAN 2:5 [NOTE] TELL ME THE DREAM. A smart test. Anyone can make up a meaning, but only someone who truly hears from heaven can tell the dream itself.

DAN 2:10 [DEMONIC] The astrologers admit only the gods could reveal the king's dream

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE DANIEL SCROLLS

DANIEL 1 TO 12 · 2:4 · 8:1



Cave 4 near Qumran, where most of the Daniel scrolls were found in 1952. Photo James Emery, CC BY 2.0.

WHAT THEY ARE

Eight copies of Daniel found in the caves near Qumran: two from Cave 1, five from Cave 4, called 4QDan a to e, and one on papyrus from Cave 6.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

One of the oldest, 4QDan c, was copied in the late 100s BC, which makes it one of the oldest Bible scrolls ever found. The others were copied before AD 70.

THE LANGUAGE SWITCH

The scrolls switch languages just where today's Bibles do. One Cave 1 copy changes from Hebrew to Aramaic at 2:4, and Cave 4 copies change back to Hebrew at 8:1.

DANIEL THE PROPHET

Another Qumran scroll, called the Florilegium, quotes Daniel 12:10 as written in the book of Daniel the prophet. Jesus also called him Daniel the prophet, Matthew 24:15.

A FAVORITE BOOK

Eight copies is a lot. By one count, only seven books had more: the five books of Moses, Psalms and Isaiah. Other Qumran scrolls tell new stories about Daniel and Babylon, like The Prayer of Nabonidus.

WHAT IS NOT THERE

None of the scrolls has the Greek additions: the Prayer of Azariah, Susanna, or Bel and the Dragon. Those are found in the Greek Bible.

WHY IT MATTERS FOR THE DATE

If the book was finished about 165 BC, as many scholars think, it was copied and loved very quickly. If it is older, the scrolls fit that too. See When Was Daniel Written?

HOW THEY WERE FOUND

Bedouin shepherds found the first cave in 1947. In 1952 they found Cave 4, in the photo, right beside the ruins of Qumran, and archaeologists soon took over, digging out thousands of pieces from its floor.

WHERE THEY ARE TODAY

Most of the pieces are kept by the Israel Antiquities Authority in Jerusalem. Many can be seen online in the Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT THEY SHOW

The text of Daniel used today is very close to these copies from more than 2,000 years ago.

MIRACLES NOTABLE

heaven concerning this mystery, so that Daniel and his friends would not be killed with the rest of the wise men of Babylon.

19 During the night, the mystery was revealed to Daniel in a vision, and he blessed the God of heaven 20 and declared:

"Blessed be the name of God forever and ever,
for wisdom and power belong to Him.
21 He changes the times and seasons;
He removes kings and establishes them.
He gives wisdom to the wise
and knowledge to the discerning.
22 He reveals the deep and hidden things;
He knows what lies in darkness,
and light dwells with Him.
23 To You, O God of my fathers,
I give thanks and praise,
because You have given me
wisdom and power.
And now You have made known to me
what we have requested,
for You have made known to us
the dream of the king."

DANIEL INTERPRETS THE DREAM

24 Therefore Daniel went to Arioch, whom the king had appointed to destroy the wise men of Babylon, and said to him, "Do not execute the wise men of Babylon! Bring me before the king, and I will give him the interpretation."

25 Arioch hastily brought Daniel before the king and said to him, "I have found a man among the exiles from Judah who will tell the king the interpretation."

26 The king responded to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, "Are you able to tell me what I saw in the dream, as well as its interpretation?"

27 Daniel answered the king, "No wise man, enchanter, medium, or magician can explain to the king the mystery of which he inquires. 28 But there is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries, and He has made known to King Nebuchadnezzar what will happen in the latter days. Your dream and the visions that came into your mind as you lay on your bed were these:

29 As you lay on your bed, O king, your thoughts turned to the future, and the Revealer of Mysteries made known to you what will happen. 30 And to me this mystery has been revealed, not because I have more wisdom than any man alive, but in order that the interpretation might be made known to the king, and that you may understand the thoughts of your heart.

31 As you, O king, were watching, a great statue appeared. A great and dazzling statue stood before you, and its form was awesome. 32 The head of the statue was pure gold, its chest and arms were silver, its belly and thighs were bronze, 33 its legs were iron, and its feet were part iron and part clay.

34 As you watched, a stone was cut out, but not by human hands. It struck the statue on its feet of iron and clay, and crushed them. 35 Then the iron, clay, bronze, silver, and gold were shattered and became like chaff on the threshing floor in summer. The wind carried them away, and not a trace of them could be found. But the stone that had struck the statue became a great mountain and filled the whole earth.

36 This was the dream; now we will tell the king its interpretation.

37 You, O king, are the king of kings, to whom the God of heaven has given sovereignty, power, strength, and glory. 38 Wherever the sons of men or beasts of the field or birds of the air dwell, He has given them into your hand and has made

- **DAN 2:18 [NOTE]** A PRAYER MEETING. Before Daniel did anything else, he asked his friends to pray.
- **DAN 2:19 [MIRACLE]** The mystery is revealed to Daniel in a night vision
- **DAN 2:20 [NOTABLE]** Daniel's praise when God answered prayer. History is not out of control; God rules over every king and every season.
- **DAN 2:27 [MIRACLE]** There is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries
- **DAN 2:27 [DEMONIC]** Daniel says no medium or magician can reveal the king's mystery
- **DAN 2:28 [NOTE]** A REVEALER OF MYSTERIES. Daniel takes no credit. The point of the dream is that God rules history.
- **DAN 2:32 [NOTE]** THE STATUE. Gold, silver, bronze, iron, and iron mixed with clay: four kingdoms, each weaker in value but harder in strength. See The Four Kingdoms.
- **DAN 2:34 [NOTE]** A STONE NOT CUT BY HUMAN HANDS. God's own kingdom, which grows into a mountain and fills the earth, 2:35 and 2:44. Christians see Christ, the stone the builders rejected, Luke 20:17 to 18.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY END TIMES PROPHECIES

you ruler over them all. You are that head of gold.

39 But after you, there will arise another kingdom, inferior to yours.

Next, a third kingdom, one of bronze, will rule the whole earth.

40 Finally, there will be a fourth kingdom as strong as iron; for iron shatters and crushes all things, and like iron that crushes all things, it will shatter and crush all the others. 41 And just as you saw that the feet and toes were made partly of fired clay and partly of iron, so this will be a divided kingdom, yet some of the strength of iron will be in it—just as you saw the iron mixed with clay. 42 And as the toes of the feet were partly iron and partly clay, so this kingdom will be partly strong and partly brittle. 43 As you saw the iron mixed with clay, so the peoples will mix with one another but will not hold together any more than iron mixes with clay.

44 In the days of those kings, the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed, nor will it be left to another people. It will shatter all these kingdoms and bring them to an end, but will itself stand forever. 45 And just as you saw a stone being cut out of the mountain without human hands, and it shattered the iron, bronze, clay, silver, and gold, so the great God has told the king what will happen in the future.

The dream is true, and its interpretation is trustworthy."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE FOUR KINGDOMS

Who Are the Metals and the Beasts?

DANIEL 2:31 TO 45 · 7:1 TO 27 · 8:20 TO 21

THE PICTURES

The statue of chapter 2 has a head of gold, silver chest, bronze belly, iron legs, and feet of iron and clay. In chapter 7 four beasts come out of the sea: a lion, a bear, a leopard and a terrible fourth beast with ten horns.

THE FIRST IS CLEAR

Daniel tells Nebuchadnezzar, You are that head of gold, 2:38. Chapter 8 names Media and Persia, and Greece, 8:20 to 21.

Every View

LUKE 20:17 TO 18 · REVELATION 13:1 TO 2

VIEW 1: BABYLON, PERSIA, GREECE, ROME

The view of Jerome, the Reformers and most traditional Christians. Medes and Persians are one empire, the ram with two horns. Rome is the iron that crushes everything. Many say the stone, God's kingdom, came with Jesus in the days of Rome; others say it strikes when He returns.

VIEW 2: BABYLON, MEDIA, PERSIA, GREECE

The view of many modern scholars. The fourth is Alexander's Greek empire and the kingdoms after it, and the little horn is Antiochus IV.

THE TEN TOES AND HORNS

Some who hold view 1 see a future revived Roman world of ten rulers at the end. Others see the ten as the kingdoms that came from Rome, or as a round number.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Every human empire falls. In the days of those kings the God of heaven will set up a kingdom that will never be destroyed, 2:44.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR PROMOTES DANIEL

46 At this, King Nebuchadnezzar fell on his face, paid homage to Daniel, and ordered that an offering and incense be presented to him. 47 The king said to Daniel, "Your God is truly the God of gods and Lord of

- **DAN 2:39 [PROPHECY]** After Babylon a lesser kingdom would rise, then a third kingdom of bronze would rule the whole earth → HISTORY: Cyrus of Persia took Babylon in 539 BC. Then Alexander the Great of Greece beat Persia in 334 to 331 BC. Recorded in the Nabonidus Chronicle and by Arrian, Anabasis.
- **DAN 2:40 [PROPHECY]** A fourth kingdom strong as iron would crush all the others → HISTORY: Rome crushed the Greek kingdoms. It made Syria a Roman province in 64 BC and took Egypt in 30 BC. Recorded by Appian, Cassius Dio and Josephus. · MEDIUM
- **DAN 2:44 [PROPHECY]** The Stone that would crush all earthly kingdoms → STILL TO COME

DEMONIC NOTABLE

kings, the Revealer of Mysteries, since you were able to reveal this mystery."

48 Then the king promoted Daniel and gave him many generous gifts. He made him ruler over the entire province of Babylon and chief administrator over all the wise men of Babylon. 49 And at Daniel's request, the king appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego to manage the province of Babylon, while Daniel remained in the king's court.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The king builds a 90 foot gold statue and says bow or burn. Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego will not bow. They go into the fire, and the king sees four men walking around in it.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S GOLDEN STATUE

1 King Nebuchadnezzar made a golden statue 90 feet tall and 9 feet wide, and he set it up on the plain of Dura in the province of Babylon. 2 Then King Nebuchadnezzar sent word to assemble the satraps, prefects, governors, advisers, treasurers, judges, magistrates, and all the other officials of the provinces to attend the dedication of the statue he had set up.

3 So the satraps, prefects, governors, advisers, treasurers, judges, magistrates, and all the rulers of the provinces assembled for the dedication of the statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up, and they stood before it.

4 Then the herald loudly proclaimed, "O people of every nation and language, this is what you are commanded: 5 As soon as you hear the sound of the horn, flute, zither, lyre, harp, pipes, and all kinds of music, you must fall down and worship the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar has set up. 6 And whoever does not fall down and worship will immediately be thrown into the blazing fiery furnace."

7 Therefore, as soon as all the people heard the sound of the horn, flute, zither, lyre, harp, and all kinds of music, the people of every nation and language would fall down and worship the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up.

SHADRACH, MESHACH, AND ABEDNEGO ACCUSED

8 At this time some astrologers came forward and maliciously accused the Jews, 9 saying to King Nebuchadnezzar, "O king, may you live forever! 10 You, O king, have issued a decree that everyone who hears the sound of the horn, flute, zither, lyre, harp, pipes, and all kinds of music must fall down and worship the golden statue, 11 and that whoever does not fall down and worship will be thrown into the blazing fiery furnace. 12 But there are some Jews you have appointed to manage the province of Babylon—Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego—who have ignored you, O king, and have refused to serve your gods or worship the golden statue you have set up."

13 Then Nebuchadnezzar, furious with rage, summoned Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. So these men were brought before the king, 14 and Nebuchadnezzar said to them, "Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, is it true that you do not serve my gods or worship the golden statue I have set up? 15 Now when you hear the sound of the horn, flute, zither, lyre, harp, pipes, and all kinds of music, if you are ready to fall down and worship the statue I have made, very good. But if you refuse to worship, you will be thrown at once into the blazing fiery furnace. Then what god will be able to deliver you from my hands?"

16 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego replied to the king, "O Nebuchadnezzar, we have no need to answer you in this matter. 17 If the God whom we serve exists, then He is able to deliver us from the blazing fiery furnace and from your hand,

DAN 2:49 [NOTE] PROMOTED. Daniel did not forget his friends. Faithful in a pagan workplace, all four rose to the top.
DAN 3:1 [DEMONIC] Nebuchadnezzar orders everyone to bow to a gold statue
DAN 3:5 [NOTE] THE BAND. Three of these instrument names are Greek words. See When Was Daniel Written?
DAN 3:12 [DEMONIC] Officials accuse the three Hebrews, and the king orders them to bow to the statue
DAN 3:16 [NOTABLE] Faith that trusts God whether or not He rescues. Obeying God is not a deal for a good outcome.

MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

O king. 18 But even if He does not, let it be known to you, O king, that we will not serve your gods or worship the golden statue you have set up."

THE FIERY FURNACE

19 At this, Nebuchadnezzar was filled with rage, and the expression on his face changed toward Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He gave orders to heat the furnace seven times hotter than usual, 20 and he commanded some mighty men of valor in his army to tie up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego and throw them into the blazing fiery furnace.

21 So they were tied up, wearing robes, trousers, turbans, and other clothes, and they were thrown into the blazing fiery furnace.

22 The king's command was so urgent and the furnace so hot that the fiery flames killed the men who carried up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. 23 And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, firmly bound, fell into the blazing fiery furnace.

24 Suddenly King Nebuchadnezzar jumped up in amazement and asked his advisers, "Did we not throw three men, firmly bound, into the fire?"

"Certainly, O king," they replied.

25 "Look!" he exclaimed. "I see four men, unbound and unharmed, walking around in the fire—and the fourth looks like a son of the gods!"

26 Then Nebuchadnezzar approached the door of the blazing fiery furnace and called out, "Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, servants of the Most High God, come out!"

So Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego came out of the fire, 27 and when the satraps, prefects, governors, and royal advisers had gathered around, they saw that the fire had no effect on the bodies of these men. Not a hair of their heads was singed, their robes were unaffected, and there was no smell of fire on them.

28 Nebuchadnezzar declared, "Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who has sent His angel and delivered His servants who trusted in Him. They violated the king's command and risked their lives rather than serve or worship any god except their own God. 29 Therefore I decree that the people of any nation or language who say anything offensive against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego will be cut into pieces and their houses reduced to rubble. For there is no other god who can deliver in this way."

30 Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the province of Babylon.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE FOURTH MAN IN THE FIRE

Angel or the Son of God?

DANIEL 3:24 TO 28

WHAT THE KING SAW

Three men were thrown into the fire bound. The king saw four, walking around free, and the fourth looked like a son of the gods, 3:25.

WHAT THE KING SAID AFTER

Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego, who has sent His angel, 3:28.

Every View

ISAIAH 43:2 · HEBREWS 1:14 · GENESIS 18:1 TO 2

VIEW 1: AN ANGEL

The king himself calls him God's angel. God often sends angels to protect His people, Psalm 34:7 and Hebrews 1:14, and an angel shut the lions' mouths in 6:22.

VIEW 2: CHRIST BEFORE BETHLEHEM

Many Christians see the Son of God, appearing before He was born, as Yahweh appeared to Abraham, Genesis 18, and the Commander of Yahweh's army to

- **DAN 3:17 [TEXT]** IF HE EXISTS? The Aramaic can also be read If it be so, like the KJV. They were not doubting God.
- **DAN 3:19 [MIRACLE]** Three Hebrews in the fiery furnace — fourth man with them; no smell of fire
- **DAN 3:25 [NOTE]** THE FOURTH MAN. The king sees one like a son of the gods. In 3:28 he calls him God's angel. See The Fourth Man in the Fire.
- **DAN 3:27 [NOTE]** NOT EVEN THE SMELL OF SMOKE. God did not keep them out of the fire. He met them in it, Isaiah 43:2.
- **DAN 3:28 [DEMONIC]** Nebuchadnezzar praises God for men who would worship no other god

MIRACLES DEMONIC

Joshua, Joshua 5:13 to 15. The KJV wording like the Son of God made this view popular.

A NOTE ON THE WORDS

The Aramaic says a son of the gods, the words of a pagan king. He likely meant a heavenly being. Those who hold view 2 say God's meaning can go beyond what the king understood.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God did not keep them out of the fire. He came into it with them. When you walk through the fire, you will not be scorched, Isaiah 43:2.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Nebuchadnezzar tells his own story. He dreams of a great tree cut down, and Daniel warns him to turn from his pride. A year later he brags about Babylon, loses his mind and lives like an animal until he looks up to God.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR CONFESSES GOD'S KINGDOM

1 King Nebuchadnezzar,

To the people of every nation and language who dwell in all the earth:

May your prosperity be multiplied. 2 I am pleased to declare the signs and wonders that the Most High God has performed for me.

3 How great are His signs,
how mighty His wonders!
His kingdom is an eternal kingdom;
His dominion endures from generation
to generation.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S DREAM OF A GREAT TREE

4 I, Nebuchadnezzar, was at ease in my house and flourishing in my palace. 5 I had a dream, and it frightened me; while I was in my bed, the images and visions in my mind alarmed me. 6 So I issued a decree that all the wise men of Babylon be brought before me to interpret the dream for me. 7 When the magicians, enchanters, astrologers, and diviners came in, I told them the dream, but they could not interpret it for me.

8 But at last, into my presence came Daniel (whose name is Belteshazzar after the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods). And I told him the dream: 9 "O Belteshazzar, chief of the magicians, I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in you and that no mystery baffles you. So explain to me the visions I saw in my dream, and their interpretation. 10 In these visions of my mind as I was lying in bed, I saw this come to pass:

There was a tree in the midst of the land,
and its height was great.
11 The tree grew large and strong;
its top reached the sky,
and it was visible
to the ends of the earth.
12 Its leaves were beautiful,
its fruit was abundant,
and upon it was food for all.
Under it the beasts of the field found shelter,
in its branches the birds of the air
nested,
and from it every creature was fed.

13 As I lay on my bed, I also saw in the visions of my mind a watcher, a holy one, coming down from heaven. 14 He called out in a loud voice:

'Cut down the tree and chop off its
branches;
strip off its leaves and scatter its fruit.
Let the beasts flee from under it,
and the birds from its branches.
15 But leave the stump with its roots in the
ground,
with a band of iron and bronze around
it,
in the tender grass of the field.

Let him be drenched with the dew of
heaven

DAN 4:1 [NOTE] A KING'S OWN STORY. Chapter 4 is a letter from Nebuchadnezzar himself, telling how God humbled him.

DAN 4:7 [DEMONIC] Magicians and diviners fail, so the king calls Daniel, named after Bel

DAN 4:10 [NOTE] THE GREAT TREE. A picture of the king and his empire, sheltering the world. Ezekiel 31 used the same picture for Assyria.

DAN 4:13 [MIRACLE] A holy watcher comes down from heaven in the king's dream

DAN 4:13 [NOTE] A WATCHER. A holy one, an angel who watches over the earth for God. This is the only book of the Bible that uses the word.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

and graze with the beasts on the grass
of the earth.
16 Let his heart be changed from that of a
man,
and let him be given the heart of a beast
till seven times pass him by.
17 This decision is the decree of the
watchers,
the verdict declared by the holy ones,
so that the living will know
that the Most High rules over the kingdom
of mankind
and gives it to whom He wishes,
setting over it the lowliest of men.'

18 This is the dream that I, King Nebuchadnezzar, saw. Now, Belteshazzar, tell me the interpretation, because none of the wise men of my kingdom can interpret it for me. But you are able, because the spirit of the holy gods is in you."

DANIEL INTERPRETS THE SECOND DREAM

19 For a time, Daniel, who was also known as Belteshazzar, was perplexed, and his thoughts alarmed him.

So the king said, "Belteshazzar, do not let the dream or its interpretation alarm you."

"My lord," replied Belteshazzar, "may the dream apply to those who hate you, and its interpretation to your enemies!

20 The tree you saw that grew large and strong, whose top reached the sky and was visible to all the earth, 21 whose foliage was beautiful and whose fruit was abundant, providing food for all, under which the beasts of the field lived, and in whose branches the birds of the air nested— 22 you, O king, are that tree! For you have become great and strong; your greatness has grown to reach the sky, and your dominion extends to the ends of the earth.

23 And you, O king, saw a watcher, a holy one, coming down from heaven and saying:

'Cut down the tree and destroy it,
but leave the stump with its roots in the
ground,
with a band of iron and bronze around it,
in the tender grass of the field.
Let him be drenched with the dew of
heaven,
and graze with the beasts of the field
till seven times pass him by.'

24 This is the interpretation, O king, and this is the decree that the Most High has issued against my lord the king:

25 You will be driven away from mankind, and your dwelling will be with the beasts of the field. You will feed on grass like an ox and be drenched with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass you by, until you acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdom of mankind and gives it to whom He wishes.

26 As for the command to leave the stump of the tree with its roots, your kingdom will be restored to you as soon as you acknowledge that Heaven rules. 27 Therefore, may my advice be pleasing to you, O king. Break away from your sins by doing what is right, and from your iniquities by showing mercy to the oppressed. Perhaps there will be an extension of your prosperity."

THE SECOND DREAM FULFILLED

28 All this happened to King Nebuchadnezzar. 29 Twelve months later, as he was walking on the roof of the royal palace of Babylon, 30 the king exclaimed, "Is this not Babylon the Great, which I myself have built as a royal residence by the might of my power and for the glory of my majesty?"

31 While the words were still in the king's mouth, a voice came from heaven: "It is decreed to you, King Nebuchadnezzar, that the kingdom has departed from you. 32 You will be driven away from mankind to

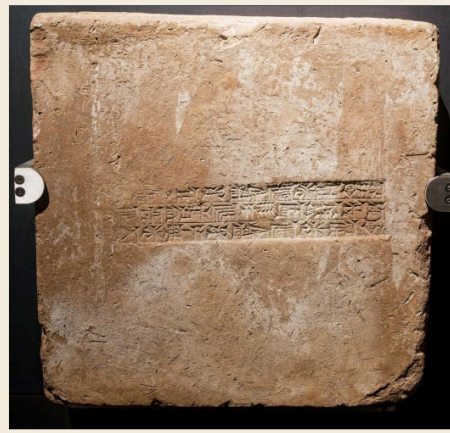
- **DAN 4:24 [PROPHECY]** Nebuchadnezzar shall be driven from men, dwell with beasts, eat grass like oxen → DAN 4:31-33 p.1333
- **DAN 4:27 [NOTE]** BREAK AWAY FROM YOUR SINS. Daniel gave the king a way out: do right and show mercy to the oppressed. God warns before He judges.
- **DAN 4:30 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Bricks stamped with Nebuchadnezzar's name, see Nebuchadnezzar's Bricks Field Notes box, p.1334FIELD NOTES p.1334
- **DAN 4:30 [NOTE]** BABYLON THE GREAT. See Nebuchadnezzar's Bricks, and The Ishtar Gate, Ezekiel, p.1270.
- **DAN 4:31 [MIRACLE]** Nebuchadnezzar's seven years of madness and restoration
- **DAN 4:31 [FULFILLS]** Nebuchadnezzar shall be driven from men, dwell with beasts, eat grass like oxen ← DAN 4:24-26 p.1333

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

NEBUCHADNEZZAR'S BRICKS

DANIEL 4:29 TO 30



A baked brick stamped with the name and titles of Nebuchadnezzar II. Museum of Antiquities, Turin. Photo Marie Lan Tay Pamart, public domain.

WHAT THEY ARE
Baked bricks stamped with Nebuchadnezzar's name and titles. Millions were made for his walls, palaces, temples and gates.

HOW OLD THEY ARE
Made in his reign, 605 to 562 BC, the very years of Daniel 1 to 4.

WHAT THEY SAY
A common stamp reads, more or less: Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, who cares for the temples Esagila and Ezida, eldest son of Nabopolassar, king of Babylon.

WHERE FOUND
All over the ruins of Babylon. German diggers found them by the thousands from 1899 on, and museums around the world have them.

WHAT IT SHOWS
Is this not Babylon the great, which I myself have built? 4:30. The boast in Daniel matches the man who stamped his name on so many of the bricks in the city.

live with the beasts of the field, and you will feed on grass like an ox. And seven times will pass you by, until you acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdom of mankind and gives it to whom He wishes."

33 At that moment the sentence against Nebuchadnezzar was fulfilled. He was driven away from mankind. He ate grass like an ox, and his body was drenched with the dew of heaven, until his hair grew like the feathers of an eagle and his nails like the claws of a bird.

DAN 4:33 [NOTE] LIKE AN ANIMAL. Some doctors have described a rare illness where a person believes he is an animal. The Bible simply says God took his mind for seven times, and gave it back. See The Prayer of Nabonidus.

NEBUCHADNEZZAR RESTORED

34 But at the end of those days I, Nebuchadnezzar, looked up to heaven, and my sanity was restored to me. Then I praised the Most High, and I honored and glorified Him who lives forever:

"For His dominion is an everlasting dominion,
and His kingdom endures from generation to generation.
35 All the peoples of the earth
are counted as nothing,
and He does as He pleases
with the army of heaven

DAN 4:34 [NOTE] HE LOOKED UP. The moment the king lifted his eyes to heaven, his mind came back. Pride looks down; humility looks up.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES

and the peoples of the earth.
There is no one who can restrain His hand
or say to Him, 'What have You done?'"
36 At the same time my sanity was restored, my honor and splendor returned to me for the glory of my kingdom. My advisers and nobles sought me out, and I was restored to my throne, and surpassing greatness was added to me. 37 Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise and exalt and glorify the King of heaven, for all His works are true and all His ways are just. And He is able to humble those who walk in pride.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE PRAYER OF NABONIDUS

DANIEL 4:1 TO 37



The Prayer of Nabonidus, 4Q242, from Qumran Cave 4. Photo Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT IT IS

A small Aramaic scroll from Qumran Cave 4. In it King Nabonidus of Babylon says he was struck with a terrible sickness for seven years, until a Jewish exile, a diviner, forgave his sin and told him to honor the Most High God.

HOW OLD IT IS

Copied about 75 to 25 BC. The story itself may be older.

WHY IT MATTERS

It sounds a lot like Daniel 4: a king of Babylon, seven years of trouble, a Jewish helper, and praise for the true God.

But it names Nabonidus, not Nebuchadnezzar, and the place is Tayma in Arabia.

TWO WAYS TO READ IT

Some scholars think the story was first told about Nabonidus, who really did stay away at Tayma for about ten years, and was later told about the more famous Nebuchadnezzar. Others think the Qumran writer mixed up the two kings or retold Daniel 4 in his own way.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Jews before Jesus' time knew and retold stories about a Babylonian king humbled by God.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

King Belshazzar throws a party and drinks from the cups taken from God's temple. A hand writes on the wall, and nobody can read it but Daniel. That very night the king is killed and Babylon falls.

BELSHAZZAR'S FEAST

1 Later, King Belshazzar held a great feast
for a thousand of his nobles, and he drank
wine with them. 2 Under the influence of
the wine, Belshazzar gave orders to bring
in the gold and silver vessels that Nebuchadnezzar his father had taken from the
temple in Jerusalem, so that the king
could drink from them, along with his nobles, his wives, and his concubines.
3 Thus they brought in the gold vessels
that had been taken from the temple, the
house of God in Jerusalem, and the king
drank from them, along with his nobles,
his wives, and his concubines. 4 As they
drank the wine, they praised their gods of
gold and silver, bronze and iron, wood
and stone.

THE HANDWRITING ON THE WALL

5 At that moment the fingers of a human
hand appeared and wrote on the plaster
of the wall, near the lampstand in the

- **DAN 4:36 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A Qumran scroll about a Babylonian king sick for seven years and healed by a Jewish exile, see The Prayer of Nabonidus Field Notes box, p.1335 ↩ FIELD NOTES p.1335
- **DAN 4:37 [NOTE]** THOSE WHO WALK IN PRIDE. The king's last words in the Bible: God is able to humble the proud, James 4:6.
- **DAN 5:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Clay cylinders from Ur name Belshazzar as the eldest son of Nabonidus, see Belshazzar's Name Field Notes page, p.1337 ↩ FIELD NOTES p.1337
- **DAN 5:1 [FULFILLS]** Babylon's leaders would be made drunk at a feast and sleep forever ← JER 51:39 p.1225
- **DAN 5:4 [DEMONIC]** Belshazzar's party praises gods of gold, silver, wood, and stone

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC

royal palace. As the king watched the hand that was writing, 6 his face grew pale and his thoughts so alarmed him that his hips gave way and his knees knocked together.

7 The king called out for the enchanters, astrologers, and diviners to be brought in, and he said to these wise men of Babylon, "Whoever reads this inscription and tells me its interpretation will be clothed in purple and have a gold chain placed around his neck, and he will be made the third highest ruler in the kingdom."

8 So all the king's wise men came in, but they could not read the inscription or interpret it for him. 9 Then King Belshazzar became even more terrified, his face grew even more pale, and his nobles were bewildered.

10 Hearing the outcry of the king and his nobles, the queen entered the banquet hall. "O king, may you live forever!" she said. "Do not let your thoughts terrify you, or your face grow pale. 11 There is a man in your kingdom who has the spirit of the holy gods in him. In the days of your father he was found to have insight, intelligence, and wisdom like that of the gods. Your father, King Nebuchadnezzar, appointed him chief of the magicians, enchanters, astrologers, and diviners. Your own father, the king, 12 did this because Daniel, the one he named Belteshazzar, was found to have an extraordinary spirit, as well as knowledge, understanding, and the ability to interpret dreams, explain riddles, and solve difficult problems. Summon Daniel, therefore, and he will give you the interpretation."

DANIEL INTERPRETS THE HANDWRITING

13 So Daniel was brought before the king, who asked him, "Are you Daniel, one of the exiles my father the king brought from Judah? 14 I have heard that the spirit of the gods is in you, and that you have insight, intelligence, and extraordinary wisdom.

15 Now the wise men and enchanters were brought before me to read this inscription and interpret it for me, but they could not give its interpretation. 16 But I have heard about you, that you are able to give interpretations and solve difficult problems. Therefore, if you can read this inscription and give me its interpretation, you will be clothed in purple and have a gold chain placed around your neck, and you will be made the third highest ruler in the kingdom."

17 In response, Daniel said to the king, "You may keep your gifts for yourself and give your rewards to someone else. Nevertheless, I will read the inscription for the king and interpret it for him. 18 As for you, O king, the Most High God gave your father Nebuchadnezzar sovereignty and greatness, glory and honor. 19 Because of the greatness that He bestowed on him, the people of every nation and language trembled in fear before him. He killed whom he wished and kept alive whom he wished; he exalted whom he wished and humbled whom he wished.

20 But when his heart became arrogant and his spirit was hardened with pride, he was deposed from his royal throne, and his glory was taken from him. 21 He was driven away from mankind, and his heart was like that of a beast. He lived with the wild donkeys and ate grass like an ox, and his body was drenched with the dew of heaven until he acknowledged that the Most High God rules over the kingdom of mankind, setting over it whom He wishes.

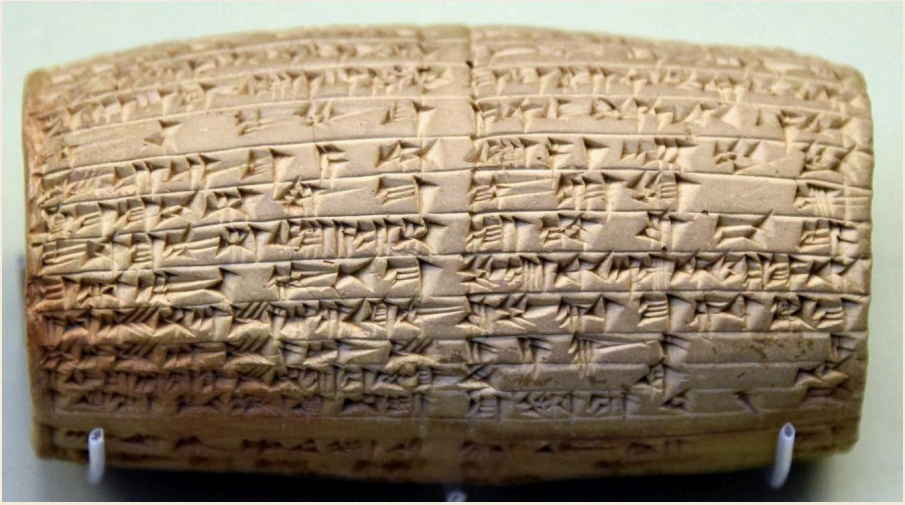
22 But you his son, O Belshazzar, have not humbled your heart, even though you knew all this. 23 Instead, you have exalted yourself against the Lord of heaven. The vessels from His house were brought to you, and as you drank wine from them with your nobles, wives, and concubines, you praised your gods of silver and gold,

- **DAN 5:5 [MIRACLE]** Handwriting on the wall at Belshazzar's feast
- **DAN 5:7 [DEMONIC]** Belshazzar calls enchanters, astrologers, and diviners to read the wall
- **DAN 5:11 [DEMONIC]** The queen recalls Daniel was made chief over Babylon's magicians
- **DAN 5:15 [DEMONIC]** The wise men and enchanters cannot interpret the writing
- **DAN 5:20 [HEART]** Nebuchadnezzar's heart grew proud and hard, so God took his throne.
- **DAN 5:22 [HEART]** Belshazzar knew what happened to Nebuchadnezzar but did not humble his heart. Knowing is not the same as changing.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

BELSHAZZAR'S NAME

DANIEL 5:1 TO 31 · 7:1 · 8:1



A clay cylinder of King Nabonidus from the temple tower at Ur, with a prayer for his son Belshazzar. British Museum. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Clay cylinders that King Nabonidus buried in the corners of the temple tower of the moon god at Ur. They tell how he repaired it, and end with a prayer for himself and for Belshazzar, his eldest son.

HOW OLD IT IS

Made in the reign of Nabonidus, Babylon's last king, 556 to 539 BC, while Daniel was still living in Babylon.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

J. G. Taylor, the British vice consul at Basra, dug them out of the corners of the tower at Ur in 1854. They are in the British Museum.

THE MISSING KING

For centuries Belshazzar was known only from Daniel and books that used it. The Greek historians and the Babylonian priest Berossus named Nabonidus as the last king. Some critics said Daniel had made Belshazzar up. These cylinders, and later tablets, named him.

THE THIRD RULER

Another text, the Verse Account of Nabonidus, says Nabonidus entrusted the kingship to his eldest son and went to live at Tayma in Arabia. Other records say he stayed about ten years. So Belshazzar was the second ruler, and the best he could offer Daniel was third place, 5:7, 5:16 and 5:29.

SON OF NEBUCHADNEZZAR?

Daniel calls Nebuchadnezzar his father, 5:2 and 5:11. In the Bible's languages father can mean forefather or an earlier king on the same throne. Some think Belshazzar's mother was Nebuchadnezzar's daughter, but that is only a guess.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The cylinders prove Belshazzar was real and ruled with his father. They do not tell us about the feast or the writing on the wall.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Daniel knew something about Babylon's last days that later Greek writers had forgotten: a king named Belshazzar ruled in Babylon in its last years.

SEE ALSO

The Night Babylon Fell, in this book, and The Cyrus Cylinder, 2 Chronicles, p.760.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

bronze and iron, wood and stone, which cannot see or hear or understand. But you have failed to glorify the God who holds in His hand your very breath and all your ways. 24 Therefore He sent the hand that wrote the inscription.

25 Now this is the inscription that was written:

MENE, MENE, TEKEL, PARSIN.

26 And this is the interpretation of the message:

MENE means that God has numbered the days of your reign and brought it to an end.

27 TEKEL means that you have been weighed on the scales and found deficient.

28 PERES means that your kingdom has been divided and given over to the Medes and Persians."

29 Then Belshazzar gave the command, and they clothed Daniel in purple, placed a gold chain around his neck, and proclaimed him the third highest ruler in the kingdom.

30 That very night Belshazzar king of the Chaldeans was slain, 31 and Darius the Mede received the kingdom at the age of sixty-two.

- **DAN 5:23 [DEMONIC]** Daniel rebukes the king for praising idols that cannot see or hear
- **DAN 5:25 [PROPHECY]** MENE, MENE, TEKEL, UPHARSIN → DAN 5:30-31 p.1338
- **DAN 5:25 [TEXT]** MENE, MENE, TEKEL, PARSIN. These Aramaic words are also names of weights, from a big weight to a small one to half pieces. God had weighed the king, and he came up short. Daniel reads them as numbered, weighed and divided, 5:26 to 28. Parsin also sounds like Persia.
- **DAN 5:28 [FULFILLS]** Babylon plundered many nations, so the rest of the peoples would plunder Babylon ← HAB 2:7-8 p.1460
- **DAN 5:30 [FULFILLS]** God would stir up the Medes against Babylon and 8 more ← IS 13:17; IS 14:12-15; IS 21:9; IS 41:25; IS 43:14; IS 47:9; JER 27:6-7; JER 51:39; DAN 5:25-28 p.1077
- **DAN 5:30 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Nabonidus Chronicle says Cyrus's army entered Babylon without a battle in October 539 BC, see The Night Babylon Fell Field Notes box, p.1338FIELD NOTES p.1338

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Jealous officials trick King Darius into a law: pray only to the king for thirty days. Daniel keeps praying three times a day, as always. He spends a night with the lions and walks out without a scratch.

THE PLOT AGAINST DANIEL

1 Now it pleased Darius to appoint 120 satraps to rule throughout the kingdom, 2 and over them three administrators, including Daniel, to whom these satraps were accountable so that the king would not suffer loss. 3 Soon, by his extraordinary spirit, Daniel distinguished himself among the administrators and satraps. So the king planned to set him over the whole kingdom.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE NIGHT BABYLON FELL

DANIEL 5:30 TO 31 · ISAIAH 21:9 · JEREMIAH 51:39



The Nabonidus Chronicle, a Babylonian clay tablet telling of the fall of Babylon to Cyrus. British Museum. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A Babylonian tablet, the Nabonidus Chronicle, that records the years of Nabonidus, Babylon's last king, and the coming of Cyrus of Persia.

HOW OLD IT IS

The copy we have was written down some time after 539 BC, in the Persian period.

DEMONIC NOTABLE

WHAT IT SAYS
In October 539 BC, the army of Cyrus, led by Ugbaru, entered Babylon without a battle. A few weeks later Cyrus himself came in peace. The tablet says the king's son was in Akkad during the years Nabonidus stayed away.

THE FEAST
The Greek writers Herodotus and Xenophon say the Persians got in while the city was celebrating a festival. Xenophon adds that the king was killed. Compare 5:30: That very night Belshazzar king of the Chaldeans was slain.

WHAT IT DOES NOT SAY
The tablet never names Belshazzar; it calls him only the king's son, and it does not name Darius the Mede. See Who Was Darius the Mede?

WHAT IT SHOWS
Babylon, which looked like it could never fall, fell in one night, just as Isaiah and Jeremiah had said, Isaiah 21:9 and Jeremiah 51:39.

SEE ALSO
The Cyrus Cylinder, 2 Chronicles, p.760, and Belshazzar's Name, in this book.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WAS DARIUS THE MEDE?

A King Missing From the Records

DANIEL 5:31 · 6:1 TO 28 · 9:1 · 11:1

THE QUESTION
Daniel says Darius the Mede received the kingdom at age 62, 5:31, and set up 120 governors, 6:1. Persian kings named Darius came later. No record outside the Bible names a Darius the Mede yet.

Every View

ISAIAH 13:17 · JEREMIAH 51:11

VIEW 1: GUBARU
Ugbaru led Cyrus's army into Babylon, and a governor named Gubaru ruled the region after it. Some say one of them ruled Babylon under Cyrus and was called Darius.

VIEW 2: CYRUS HIMSELF
Donald Wiseman suggested that 6:28 can be read the reign of Darius, that is, the reign of Cyrus the Persian. Ancient writers put Cyrus near 62 in 539 BC, and Herodotus says his mother was a Mede.

VIEW 3: CYAXARES
The Greek writer Xenophon says a Median king named Cyaxares, Cyrus's uncle, shared the rule. Some link him to Darius.

VIEW 4: A MISTAKE OR A LATER MEMORY
Many critical scholars think the writer mixed up the order of kings, or followed a belief that a Median empire came between Babylon and Persia.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The Medes and Persians took Babylon together, as Isaiah 13:17 and Jeremiah 51:11 said, and the book shows Daniel serving the new rulers faithfully.

4 Thus the administrators and satraps
sought a charge against Daniel concern-
ing the kingdom, but they could find no
charge or corruption, because he was
trustworthy, and no negligence or corrup-
tion was found in him. 5 Finally these men
said, "We will never find any charge
against this Daniel unless we find some-
thing against him concerning the law of
his God."

6 So the administrators and satraps went
together to the king and said, "O King
Darius, may you live forever! 7 All the royal
administrators, prefects, satraps, advis-
ers, and governors have agreed that the
king should establish an ordinance and
enforce a decree that for thirty days any-
one who petitions any god or man except
you, O king, will be thrown into the den of
lions. 8 Therefore, O king, establish the
decree and sign the document so that it
cannot be changed—in accordance with
the law of the Medes and Persians, which
cannot be repealed."

9 Therefore King Darius signed the written
decree.

DANIEL IN THE LIONS' DEN

10 Now when Daniel learned that the docu-
ment had been signed, he went into his

DAN 6:7 [DEMONIC] Officials decree that people may pray only to King Darius

DAN 6:7 [NOTE] PRAY ONLY TO THE KING. A trap, built on flattery. Persian law could not be changed once signed, 6:8 and Esther 8:8.

MIRACLES

house, where the windows of his upper room opened toward Jerusalem, and three times a day he got down on his knees, prayed, and gave thanks to his God, just as he had done before. 11 Then these men went as a group and found Daniel petitioning and imploring his God. 12 So they approached the king and asked about his royal decree: "Did you not sign a decree that for thirty days any man who petitions any god or man except you, O king, will be thrown into the den of lions?"

The king replied, "According to the law of the Medes and Persians the order stands, and it cannot be repealed."

13 Then they told the king, "Daniel, one of the exiles from Judah, shows no regard for you, O king, or for the decree that you have signed. He still makes his petition three times a day."

14 As soon as the king heard this, he was deeply distressed and set his mind on delivering Daniel, and he labored until sundown to rescue him.

15 Then the men approached the king together and said to him, "Remember, O king, that by the law of the Medes and Persians no decree or ordinance established by the king can be changed."

16 So the king gave the order, and they brought Daniel and threw him into the den of lions.

The king said to Daniel, "May your God, whom you serve continually, deliver you!"

17 A stone was brought and placed over the mouth of the den, and the king sealed it with his own signet ring and with the rings of his nobles, so that nothing concerning Daniel could be changed.

18 Then the king went to his palace and spent the night fasting. No entertainment was brought before him, and sleep fled from him.

19 At the first light of dawn, the king got up and hurried to the den of lions. 20 When he reached the den, he cried out in a voice of anguish, "O Daniel, servant of the living God, has your God, whom you serve continually, been able to deliver you from the lions?"

21 Then Daniel replied, "O king, may you live forever! 22 My God sent His angel and shut the mouths of the lions. They have not hurt me, for I was found innocent in His sight, and I have done no wrong against you, O king."

23 The king was overjoyed and gave orders to lift Daniel out of the den, and when Daniel was lifted out of the den, no wounds whatsoever were found on him, because he had trusted in his God.

24 At the command of the king, the men who had falsely accused Daniel were brought and thrown into the den of lions—they and their children and wives. And before they had reached the bottom of the den, the lions overpowered them and crushed all their bones.

DARIUS HONORS GOD

25 Then King Darius wrote to the people of every nation and language throughout the land: "May your prosperity abound. 26 I hereby decree that in every part of my kingdom, men are to tremble in fear before the God of Daniel:

For He is the living God,
and He endures forever;
His kingdom will never be destroyed,
and His dominion will never end.
27 He delivers and rescues;
He performs signs and wonders
in the heavens and on the earth,
for He has rescued Daniel
from the power of the lions."

28 So Daniel prospered during the reign of Darius and the reign of Cyrus the Persian.

- **DAN 6:10 [NOTABLE]** Daniel did not start praying when trouble came, and he did not stop because of it. A steady habit carried him through the test.
- **DAN 6:10 [NOTE]** JUST AS HE HAD DONE BEFORE. Daniel did not hide or change his routine. He prayed toward Jerusalem, as Solomon had asked, 1 Kings 8:48.
- **DAN 6:16 [NOTE]** THE KING HOPED. Darius could not change his law, but he hoped Daniel's God could do what he could not.
- **DAN 6:19 [MIRACLE]** God sends His angel to shut the lions' mouths
- **DAN 6:22 [NOTE]** HIS ANGEL SHUT THEIR MOUTHS. Hebrews 11:33 remembers those who shut the mouths of lions by faith.
- **DAN 6:24 [NOTE]** A HARD ENDING. The men who set the trap fell into it, Proverbs 26:27. The Bible reports what the king did; it does not tell us to copy it.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | END TIMES PROPHECIES

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Daniel's own dream: four beasts rise out of the sea, and a little horn speaks proud words. Then the Ancient of Days takes His throne, and one like a son of man comes with the clouds to receive a kingdom that never ends.

DANIEL'S VISION OF THE FOUR BEASTS // REVELATION 13:1–10

1 In the first year of the reign of Belshazzar over Babylon, Daniel had a dream, and visions passed through his mind as he lay on his bed. He wrote down the dream, and this is the summary of his account.

2 Daniel declared: "In my vision in the night I looked, and suddenly the four winds of heaven were churning up the great sea. 3 Then four great beasts came up out of the sea, each one different from the others:

4 The first beast was like a lion, and it had the wings of an eagle. I watched until its wings were torn off and it was lifted up from the ground and made to stand on two feet like a man and given the heart of a man.

5 Suddenly another beast appeared, which looked like a bear. It was raised up on one of its sides, and it had three ribs in its mouth between its teeth. So it was told, 'Get up and gorge yourself on flesh!'

6 Next, as I watched, suddenly another beast appeared. It was like a leopard, and on its back it had four wings like those of a bird. The beast also had four heads, and it was given authority to rule.

7 After this, as I watched in my vision in the night, suddenly a fourth beast appeared, and it was terrifying—dreadful and extremely strong—with large iron teeth. It devoured and crushed; then it trampled underfoot whatever was left. It was different from all the beasts before it, and it had ten horns. 8 While I was contemplating the horns, suddenly another horn, a little one, came up among them, and three of the first horns were uprooted before it. This horn had eyes like those of a man and a mouth that spoke words of arrogance.

DANIEL'S VISION OF THE ANCIENT OF DAYS

9 As I continued to watch,

thrones were set in place,
and the Ancient of Days took His seat.
His clothing was white as snow,
and the hair of His head was like pure wool.
His throne was flaming with fire,
and its wheels were all ablaze.
10 A river of fire was flowing,
coming out from His presence.
Thousands upon thousands attended Him,
and myriads upon myriads stood before Him.
The court was convened,
and the books were opened.

11 Then I kept watching because of the arrogant words the horn was speaking. As I continued to watch, the beast was slain, and its body was destroyed and thrown into the blazing fire. 12 As for the rest of the beasts, their dominion was removed, but they were granted an extension of life for a season and a time.

DANIEL'S VISION OF THE SON OF MAN

13 In my vision in the night I continued to watch,

and I saw One like the Son of Man
coming with the clouds of heaven.

- **DAN 7:1 [NOTE]** THE FIRST YEAR OF BELSHAZZAR. About 553 BC. Chapters 7 and 8 go back in time, before chapter 5.
- **DAN 7:3 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 13:1-2 p.2099
- **DAN 7:3 [NOTE]** FOUR BEASTS. The four kingdoms of chapter 2 again, as wild animals.
- **DAN 7:4 [PROPHECY]** Four great beasts would rise from the sea, a lion, a bear, a leopard, and a terrifying beast with iron teeth → HISTORY: Persia took Babylon in 539 BC. Alexander the Great of Greece beat Persia in 331 BC. Rome took Syria in 64 BC. Recorded in the Nabonidus Chronicle and by Herodotus, Arrian and Appian. · MEDIUM
- **DAN 7:8 [PROPHECY]** A little horn would rise among the ten, uproot three, and speak proud words → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **DAN 7:8 [NOTE]** THE LITTLE HORN. See The Little Horn.
- **DAN 7:9 [PROPHECY]** The Ancient of Days takes His throne, the court sits, and the books are opened → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **DAN 7:9 [MIRACLE]** The Ancient of Days takes His throne
- **DAN 7:9 [NOTE]** THE ANCIENT OF DAYS. God on His throne, with hair white like wool. John saw Jesus the same way, Revelation 1:14.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

He approached the Ancient of Days
and was led into His presence.
14 And He was given dominion,
glory, and kingship,
that the people of every nation and language
should serve Him.
His dominion is an everlasting dominion
that will not pass away,
and His kingdom is one
that will never be destroyed.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS THE SON OF MAN?

One Like a Son of Man

DANIEL 7:13 TO 14 · 7:18 · 7:27

WHAT DANIEL SAW

One like a son of man came with the clouds of heaven to the Ancient of Days and was given an everlasting kingdom, and all peoples served Him, 7:13 to 14. In the Old Testament, riding the clouds is something God does, Psalm 104:3 and Isaiah 19:1.

JESUS' OWN TITLE

Jesus called Himself the Son of Man more than any other name. At His trial the high priest asked if He was the Messiah. Jesus said, I am, and you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power and coming with the clouds of heaven. The high priest tore his clothes and said blasphemy, Mark 14:61 to 64.

How It Has Been Read

MARK 14:61 TO 64 · MATTHEW 26:64 · REVELATION 1:7

THE CHRISTIAN READING

From the first Christians on, the Son of Man is Jesus, a real man who is also divine, receiving the kingdom from the Father, Acts 7:56 and Revelation 1:13.

THE PEOPLE OF GOD

Daniel 7:18 and 7:27 give the kingdom to the saints of the Most High. Many Jewish and some Christian readers say the figure stands for God's people. Christians answer that the King and His people share the kingdom, Revelation 3:21.

THE MESSIAH IN JEWISH TRADITION

Many ancient Jewish writers also read him as the Messiah. The Talmud says if Israel is worthy, the Messiah comes with the clouds of heaven, as in Daniel, and if not, humble and riding on a donkey, as in Zechariah 9:9, Sanhedrin 98a.

WHAT IT MEANS FOR YOU

The One who will receive all power once stood on trial and died. The kingdom He receives He shares with those who trust Him.

DANIEL'S VISIONS INTERPRETED

15 I, Daniel, was grieved in my spirit, and the visions in my mind alarmed me. 16 I approached one of those who were standing there, and I asked him the true meaning of all this.

So he told me the interpretation of these things: 17 'These four great beasts are four kings who will arise from the earth. 18 But the saints of the Most High will receive the kingdom and possess it forever—yes, forever and ever.'

19 Then I wanted to know the true meaning of the fourth beast, which was different from all the others—extremely terrifying—devouring and crushing with iron teeth and bronze claws, then trampling underfoot whatever was left. 20 I also wanted to know about the ten horns on its head and the other horn that came up, before which three of them fell—the horn whose appearance was more imposing than the others, with eyes and with a

- **DAN 7:13 [PROPHECY]** He would ascend into heaven (the Son of Man) → MT 26:64; MK 14:62; ACTS 1:9-11 p.1596
- **DAN 7:13 [PROPHECY]** Highly exalted → EPH 1:20-22 p.1879
- **DAN 7:13 [PROPHECY]** His dominion would be everlasting → LK 1:31-33 p.1645
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:30 p.1587
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 26:64 p.1596
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 13:26 p.1631
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 14:62 p.1634
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 21:27 p.1686
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:7 p.2080
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:13-15 p.2080
- **DAN 7:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 14:14 p.2104
- **DAN 7:13 [NOTE]** ONE LIKE THE SON OF MAN. The name Jesus used most for Himself. At His trial He said, You will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power and coming with the clouds of heaven, Mark 14:62. See Who Is the Son of Man?

- **DAN 7:18 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:5 p.2115

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA END TIMES PROPHECIES

mouth that spoke words of arrogance. 21 As I watched, this horn was waging war against the saints and prevailing against them, 22 until the Ancient of Days arrived and pronounced judgment in favor of the saints of the Most High, and the time came for them to possess the kingdom.

23 This is what he said: 'The fourth beast is a fourth kingdom that will appear on the earth, different from all the other kingdoms, and it will devour the whole earth, trample it down, and crush it. 24 And the ten horns are ten kings who will rise from this kingdom. After them another king, different from the earlier ones, will rise and subdue three kings. 25 He will speak out against the Most High and oppress the saints of the Most High, intending to change the appointed times and laws; and the saints will be given into his hand for a time, and times, and half a time.

26 But the court will convene, and his dominion will be taken away and completely destroyed forever. 27 Then the sovereignty, dominion, and greatness of the kingdoms under all of heaven will be given to the people, the saints of the Most High. His kingdom will be an everlasting kingdom, and all rulers will serve and obey Him.'

28 Thus ends the matter. As for me, Daniel, my thoughts troubled me greatly, and my face turned pale. But I kept the matter in my heart."

- **DAN 7:23 [PROPHECY]** The fourth kingdom would devour the whole earth, trample it, and crush it → HISTORY: Rome ruled all the lands around the Mediterranean Sea. Its empire lasted from 27 BC until the west fell in AD 476. Recorded by Augustus in his Res Gestae and by Tacitus. · MEDIUM
- **DAN 7:24 [PROPHECY]** Ten kings would rise from the fourth kingdom, and then another king would subdue three of them → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **DAN 7:25 [PROPHECY]** He shall speak against the Most High, wear out the saints, and intend to change times and law; they shall be given into his hand for time, times, and half a time → STILL TO COME
- **DAN 7:26 [PROPHECY]** The last proud king loses his power forever and the saints receive the everlasting kingdom → STILL TO COME
- **DAN 7:27 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:5 p.2115

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

A ram with two horns and a goat with one big horn. The goat wins, its horn breaks into four, and a little horn grows proud and stops the sacrifices. Gabriel explains it, and Daniel feels sick for days.

DANIEL'S VISION OF THE RAM AND THE GOAT

1 In the third year of the reign of King Belshazzar, a vision appeared to me, Daniel, subsequent to the one that had appeared to me earlier. 2 And in the vision I saw myself in the citadel of Susa, in the province of Elam. I saw in the vision that I was beside the Ulai Canal.

3 Then I lifted up my eyes and saw a ram with two horns standing beside the canal. The horns were long, but one was longer than the other, and the longer one grew up later. 4 I saw the ram charging toward the west and the north and the south. No animal could stand against him, and there was no deliverance from his power. He did as he pleased and became great.

5 As I was contemplating all this, suddenly a goat with a prominent horn between his eyes came out of the west, crossing the surface of the entire earth without touching the ground. 6 He came toward the two-horned ram I had seen standing beside the canal and rushed at him with furious power. 7 I saw him approach the ram in a rage against him, and he struck the ram and shattered his two horns. The ram was powerless to stand against him, and the goat threw him to the ground and trampled him, and no one could deliver the ram from his power.

8 Thus the goat became very great, but at the height of his power, his large horn was broken off, and four prominent horns came up in its place, pointing toward the four winds of heaven.

9 From one of these horns a little horn emerged and grew extensively toward the south and the east and toward the Beauti-

- **DAN 8:3 [PROPHECY]** Ram with two horns (Medo-Persia) pushed westward; a male goat (Greece) with a notable horn came from the west → HISTORY: Alexander the Great of Greece beat the Persian Empire in three big battles from 334 to 331 BC. Recorded by Arrian, Anabasis books 1 to 3.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA

ful Land. 10 It grew as high as the host of heaven, and it cast down some of the host and some of the stars to the earth and trampled them. 11 It magnified itself, even to the Prince of the host; it removed His daily sacrifice and overthrew the place of His sanctuary. 12 And in the rebellion, the host and the daily sacrifice were given over to the horn, and it flung truth to the ground and prospered in whatever it did.

13 Then I heard a holy one speaking, and another holy one said to him, "How long until the fulfillment of the vision of the daily sacrifice, the rebellion that causes desolation, and the surrender of the sanctuary and of the host to be trampled?"

14 He said to me, "It will take 2,300 evenings and mornings; then the sanctuary will be properly restored."

GABRIEL INTERPRETS DANIEL'S VISION

15 While I, Daniel, was watching the vision and trying to understand it, there stood before me one having the appearance of a man. 16 And I heard the voice of a man calling from between the banks of the Ulai: "Gabriel, explain the vision to this man."

17 As he came near to where I stood, I was terrified and fell facedown.

"Son of man," he said to me, "understand that the vision concerns the time of the end."

18 While he was speaking with me, I fell into a deep sleep, with my face to the ground.

Then he touched me, helped me to my feet, 19 and said, "Behold, I will make known to you what will happen in the latter time of wrath, because it concerns the appointed time of the end.

20 The two-horned ram that you saw represents the kings of Media and Persia. 21 The shaggy goat represents the king of Greece, and the large horn between his eyes is the first king. 22 The four horns that replaced the broken one represent four kingdoms that will rise from that nation but will not have the same power.

23 In the latter part of their reign, when the rebellion has reached its full measure, an insolent king, skilled in intrigue, will come to the throne. 24 His power will be great, but it will not be his own. He will cause terrible destruction and succeed in whatever he does. He will destroy the mighty men along with the holy people. 25 Through his craft and by his hand, he will cause deceit to prosper, and in his own heart he will make himself great. In a time of peace he will destroy many, and he will even stand against the Prince of princes. Yet he will be broken off, but not by human hands.

26 The vision of the evenings and the mornings that has been spoken is true. Now you must seal up the vision, for it concerns the distant future."

27 I, Daniel, was exhausted and lay ill for days. Then I got up and went about the king's business. I was confounded by the vision; it was beyond understanding.

- **DAN 8:9 [PROPHECY]** Out of one of them (the four Greek divisions) came a little horn which grew exceedingly great toward the south, toward the east, and toward the Glorious Land → Fulfilled in Antiochus IV Epiphanes (Seleucid king)
- **DAN 8:10 [PROPHECY]** It grew up to the host of heaven; and it cast down some of the host and some of the stars to the ground, and trampled them → Fulfilled in Antiochus's murder of faithful Jews
- **DAN 8:11 [PROPHECY]** He even exalted himself as high as the Prince of the host; the daily sacrifices were taken away, and the place of His sanctuary was cast down → Fulfilled 15 Chislev 167 BC
- **DAN 8:13 [PROPHECY]** How long shall the vision be? → 1 Maccabees 4:36-59; JN 10:22 p.1717
- **DAN 8:16 [NOTE]** GABRIEL. The first angel named in the Bible. He comes again to Zechariah and Mary, Luke 1:19 and 1:26.
- **DAN 8:21 [NOTE]** THE KING OF GREECE. The ram is Media and Persia, 8:20, the goat is Greece, and the great horn is Alexander the Great. Today GOAT means Greatest Of All Time. That only works in English, which did not exist yet, and nobody said it until the 1990s; Daniel's word is tsafir. Still, it makes you smile: God knew whom He was picturing.
- **DAN 8:23 [PROPHECY]** A king shall arise having fierce features, who understands sinister schemes... he shall destroy the mighty and the holy people; through his cunning he shall cause deceit to prosper → Fulfilled in Antiochus IV Epiphanes
- **DAN 8:25 [PROPHECY]** He shall be broken without human hand → 1 Maccabees 6:8-16; 2 Maccabees 9:5-28

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE LITTLE HORN

Antiochus, the Antichrist, or Both?

DANIEL 7:8 · 7:24 TO 26 · 8:9 TO 25 · 11:21 TO 45

TWO LITTLE HORNS

Chapter 7's little horn grows from the fourth beast's ten horns. Chapter 8's little horn grows from one of the four horns of the Greek goat. Both are proud, attack God's people and come to a sudden end.

ANTIOCHUS IV

Antiochus IV Epiphanes, a Greek king of Syria, 175 to 164 BC, banned the Law, stopped the sacrifices and set up a pagan altar in the temple in 167 BC, 1 Maccabees 1:41 to 64. The Maccabees fought back, and the temple was cleansed in 164 BC.

Every View

2 THESSALONIANS 2:3 TO 4 · MATTHEW 24:15 · REVELATION 13:5 TO 7

VIEW 1: CHAPTER 8 IS ANTIOCHUS, CHAPTER 7 IS THE ANTICHRIST

Many evangelicals say chapter 8 and 11:21 to 35 fit Antiochus, but chapter 7 and 11:36 to 45 point to a final ruler at the end, the man of lawlessness, 2 Thessalonians 2:3 to 4.

VIEW 2: ANTIOCHUS AS A PREVIEW

Others say Antiochus fulfilled these chapters in part and is a picture of a worse enemy still to come. Jesus spoke of the abomination as still future in His day, Matthew 24:15.

VIEW 3: ALL ANTIOCHUS

Many scholars read every little horn as Antiochus and chapter 11 as his career to the end. Others answer that 11:40 to 45 does not match how Antiochus died, in Persia in 164 BC.

VIEW 4: THE TURKS OR THE PAPACY

Luther came to read the little horn of chapter 7 as the Turks, and he saw the pope in the proud king of 11:36. Many later Protestants read the little horn as the papacy. Few hold these views today, but they shaped Protestant history.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Proud rulers who fight God's people do not last. He will be broken off, but not by human hands, 8:25.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Daniel reads Jeremiah and learns the exile will last seventy years. He prays a long, humble prayer for his people. Gabriel comes with an answer about seventy weeks and the Messiah.

DANIEL'S PRAYER FOR HIS PEOPLE

1 In the first year of Darius son of Xerxes, a
Mede by descent, who was made ruler
over the kingdom of the Chaldeans— 2 in
the first year of his reign, I, Daniel, under-
stood from the sacred books, according
to the word of Yahweh to Jeremiah the
prophet, that the desolation of Jerusalem
would last seventy years. 3 So I turned my
attention to the Lord God to seek Him by
prayer and petition, with fasting, sack-
cloth, and ashes.

4 And I prayed to Yahweh my God and
confessed, "O, Lord, the great and awe-
some God, who keeps His covenant of
loving devotion to those who love Him and
keep His commandments, 5 we have
sinned and done wrong. We have acted
wickedly and rebelled. We have turned
away from Your commandments and ordi-
nances. 6 We have not listened to Your
servants the prophets, who spoke in Your
name to our kings, leaders, fathers, and
all the people of the land.

7 To You, O Lord, belongs righteousness,
but this day we are covered with
shame—the men of Judah, the people of
Jerusalem, and all Israel near and far, in
all the countries to which You have driven
us because of our unfaithfulness to You. 8
O Yahweh, we are covered with
shame—our kings, our leaders, and our
fathers—because we have sinned against
You.

DAN 9:2 [FULFILLS] Judah would serve Babylon 70 years; then Babylon would be punished ← JER 25:11-12 p.1182

DAN 9:2 [NOTE] THE SEVENTY YEARS. Daniel read Jeremiah 25:11 to 12 and 29:10 and prayed. See The Seventy Years, Jeremiah, p.1183.

DAN 9:5 [NOTE] WE HAVE SINNED. Daniel was one of the most faithful men in the Bible, yet he prays we, not they.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES NOTABLE

9 To the Lord our God belong compassion
and forgiveness, even though we have re-
belled against Him 10 and have not obeyed
the voice of Yahweh our God to walk in
His laws, which He set before us through
His servants the prophets.

11 All Israel has transgressed Your law and
turned away, refusing to obey Your voice;
so the oath and the curse written in the
Law of Moses the servant of God has
been poured out on us, because we have
sinned against You. 12 You have carried
out the words spoken against us and
against our rulers by bringing upon us a
great disaster. For under all of heaven,
nothing has ever been done like what has
been done to Jerusalem.

13 Just as it is written in the Law of Moses,
all this disaster has come upon us, yet we
have not sought the favor of Yahweh our
God by turning from our iniquities and giv-
ing attention to Your truth. 14 Therefore
Yahweh has kept the calamity in store and
brought it upon us. For Yahweh our God is
righteous in all He does; yet we have not
obeyed His voice.

15 Now, O Lord our God, who brought Your
people out of the land of Egypt with a
mighty hand, and who made for Yourself a
name renowned to this day, we have
sinned; we have acted wickedly. 16 O Lord,
in keeping with all Your righteous acts, I
pray that Your anger and wrath may turn
away from Your city Jerusalem, Your holy
mountain; for because of our sins and the
iniquities of our fathers, Jerusalem and
Your people are a reproach to all around
us.

17 So now, our God, hear the prayers and
petitions of Your servant. For Your sake, O
Lord, cause Your face to shine upon Your
desolate sanctuary. 18 Incline Your ear, O
my God, and hear; open Your eyes and
see the desolation of the city that bears
Your name. For we are not presenting our
petitions before You because of our right-
eous acts, but because of Your great
compassion.

19 O Lord, listen! O Lord, forgive! O Lord,
hear and act! For Your sake, O my God, do
not delay, because Your city and Your
people bear Your name."

GABRIEL'S PROPHECY OF THE SEVENTY WEEKS

20 While I was speaking, praying, confess-
ing my sin and that of my people Israel,
and presenting my petition before Yahweh
my God concerning His holy mountain—
21 while I was still praying, Gabriel, the man
I had seen in the earlier vision, came to
me in swift flight about the time of the
evening sacrifice. 22 He instructed me and
spoke with me, saying: "O Daniel, I have
come now to give you insight and under-
standing. 23 At the beginning of your peti-
tions, an answer went out, and I have
come to tell you, for you are highly pre-
cious. So consider the message and un-
derstand the vision:

24 Seventy weeks are decreed for your
people and your holy city to stop their
transgression, to put an end to sin, to
make atonement for iniquity, to bring in
everlasting righteousness, to seal up vi-
sion and prophecy, and to anoint the Most
Holy Place.

25 Know and understand this: From the is-
suance of the decree to restore and re-
build Jerusalem until the Messiah, the
Prince, there will be seven weeks and
sixty-two weeks. It will be rebuilt with
streets and a trench, but in times of dis-
tress.

26 Then after the sixty-two weeks the
Messiah will be cut off and will have noth-
ing.

Then the people of the prince who is to
come will destroy the city and the sanctu-
ary. The end will come like a flood, and

- **DAN 9:18 [NOTABLE]** How to pray: honest about sin, leaning on God's mercy, asking boldly for His name's sake.
- **DAN 9:20 [MIRACLE]** Gabriel sent to give Daniel skill and understanding
- **DAN 9:21 [NOTE]** THE TIME OF THE EVENING SACRIFICE. The temple was in ruins, but Daniel still prayed at the hour of the old evening sacrifice.
- **DAN 9:24 [PROPHECY]** To make an end of sins → GAL 1:3-5 p.1866
- **DAN 9:24 [PROPHECY]** To make reconciliation for iniquity → ROM 5:10; 2CO 5:18-21 p.1805
- **DAN 9:24 [PROPHECY]** The Most Holy Place would be anointed → HEB 9:11-12 · MEDIUM p.1989
- **DAN 9:24 [NOTE]** SEVENTY WEEKS. Seventy sevens, 490, usually read as years. See The Seventy Weeks.
- **DAN 9:25 [PROPHECY]** The timeline of Messiah's announcement (70 weeks prophecy) → JN 12:12-13 · MEDIUM p.1721

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY MIRACLES

until the end there will be war; desolations have been decreed. 27 And he will confirm a covenant with many for one week, but in the middle of the week he will put an end to sacrifice and offering. And on the wing of the temple will come the abomination that causes desolation, until the decreed destruction is poured out upon him."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SEVENTY WEEKS

The Countdown to the Messiah

DANIEL 9:24 TO 27

THE PROPHECY

Seventy weeks, seventy sevens, are decreed. From the word to rebuild Jerusalem until the Messiah, the Prince, there will be seven weeks and sixty two weeks. Then the Messiah will be cut off, and the city and the sanctuary will be destroyed. One last week follows, 9:24 to 27.

THE MATH

Most read the weeks as sevens of years: 490 years in all, with 483 years to the Messiah. The hard part is where to start and how to count.

Every View

EZRA 7:11 TO 26 · NEHEMIAH 2:1 TO 8 · MATTHEW 24:15 · LUKE 21:20

VIEW 1: FROM ARTAXERXES TO JESUS

Start with Artaxerxes' decree to Ezra in 458 or 457 BC, Ezra 7. 483 years later is about AD 26 or 27, when Jesus was baptized. He was cut off in the middle of the last week.

VIEW 2: FROM NEHEMIAH, WITH A GAP

Start with Nehemiah's permission in 445 or 444 BC and count 360 day years, as Sir Robert Anderson and Harold Hoehner did, to the week Jesus rode into Jerusalem. The last week is still future, after a gap, when a coming ruler makes a covenant and breaks it.

VIEW 3: TO ANTIOCHUS

Many scholars start with Jeremiah's word or Cyrus's decree and end with Antiochus, 171 to 164 BC; the anointed one cut off is the high priest Onias III, murdered in 171 BC.

VIEW 4: A SYMBOLIC NUMBER

Some read seventy sevens as a full, perfect time leading to Christ's work and the fall of Jerusalem in AD 70, without exact year counts.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God set a timetable for His people, and an anointed one would be cut off before the city and the sanctuary fell. Many Christians point out that the temple fell in AD 70.

- **DAN 9:26 [PROPHECY]** Messiah would be cut off (killed) → MT 16:21; 21:38-39 p.1574
- **DAN 9:26 [PROPHECY]** Killed before the destruction of the Temple (70 AD) → MT 27:50-51 p.1601
- **DAN 9:26 [PROPHECY]** The people of the prince who is to come shall destroy the city and the sanctuary → HISTORY: Titus and the Roman army burned the temple and Jerusalem in AD 70. Recorded by Josephus.
- **DAN 9:27 [PROPHECY]** In the middle of the week he shall bring an end to sacrifice and offering → 1 Maccabees 1:44-45; MT 24:15 · MEDIUM p.1587
- **DAN 9:27 [DEMONIC]** A ruler sets up an abomination that causes desolation
- **DAN 9:27 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:15 p.1587
- **DAN 9:27 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 13:14 p.1631
- **DAN 9:27 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 21:20 p.1685

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Daniel fasts for three weeks and then sees a man dressed in linen, shining like lightning. He learns there was a battle in the unseen world that delayed the answer. He is told he is greatly loved.

DANIEL'S VISION BY THE TIGRIS

1 In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia, a message was revealed to Daniel, who was called Belteshazzar. The message was true, and it concerned a great conflict. And the understanding of the message was given to him in a vision.

2 In those days I, Daniel, was mourning for three full weeks. 3 I ate no rich food, no meat or wine entered my mouth, and I did not anoint myself with oil until the three weeks were completed.

4 On the twenty-fourth day of the first month, as I was standing on the bank of the great river, the Tigris, 5 I lifted up my eyes, and behold, there was a certain man dressed in linen, with a belt of fine gold from Uphaz around his waist. 6 His body

- **DAN 10:3 [NOTE]** NO RICH FOOD. Today's 21 day Daniel Fast comes from this verse. See The Daniel Fast.
- **DAN 10:5 [MIRACLE]** Daniel sees a man dressed in linen, with a face like lightning and eyes like flaming torches

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · THE HEART · MIRACLES · DEMONIC

was like beryl, his face like the brilliance of lightning, his eyes like flaming torches, his arms and legs like the gleam of polished bronze, and his voice like the sound of a multitude.

7 Only I, Daniel, saw the vision; the men with me did not see it, but a great terror fell upon them, and they ran and hid themselves.

8 So I was left alone, gazing at this great vision. No strength remained in me; my face grew deathly pale, and I was powerless. 9 I heard the sound of his words, and as I listened, I fell into a deep sleep, with my face to the ground.

10 Suddenly, a hand touched me and set me trembling on my hands and knees. 11 He said to me, "Daniel, you are a man who is highly precious. Consider carefully the words that I am about to say to you. Stand up, for I have now been sent to you."

And when he had said this to me, I stood up trembling.

12 "Do not be afraid, Daniel," he said, "for from the first day that you set your heart to understand and to humble yourself before your God, your words were heard, and I have come in response to them. 13 However, the prince of the kingdom of Persia opposed me for twenty-one days. Then Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me, for I had been left there with the kings of Persia. 14 Now I have come to explain to you what will happen to your people in the latter days, for the vision concerns those days."

15 While he was speaking these words to me, I set my face toward the ground and became speechless. 16 And suddenly one with the likeness of a man touched my lips, and I opened my mouth and said to the one standing before me, "My lord, because of the vision, I am overcome with anguish, and I have no strength. 17 How can I, your servant, speak with you, my lord? Now I have no strength, nor is any breath left in me."

18 Again the one with the likeness of a man touched me and strengthened me. 19 "Do not be afraid, you who are highly precious," he said. "Peace be with you! Be strong now; be very strong!"

As he spoke with me, I was strengthened and said, "Speak, my lord, for you have strengthened me."

20 "Do you know why I have come to you?" he said. "I must return at once to fight against the prince of Persia, and when I have gone forth, behold, the prince of Greece will come. 21 But first I will tell you what is inscribed in the Book of Truth. Yet no one has the courage to support me against these, except Michael your prince.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

One of the most detailed prophecies in the Bible: kings of the north and kings of the south fighting for centuries. Then a proud king who exalts himself above every god. Bring a map and a scorecard.

KINGS OF THE SOUTH AND NORTH

1 "And I, in the first year of Darius the Mede, stood up to strengthen and protect him.

2 Now then, I will tell you the truth: Three more kings will arise in Persia, and then a fourth, who will be far richer than all the others. By the power of his wealth, he will stir up everyone against the kingdom of Greece.

- **DAN 10:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:13-15 p.2080
- **DAN 10:5 [NOTE]** A MAN DRESSED IN LINEN. Some see Christ here, compare Revelation 1:13 to 15. Others see a mighty angel, since he needed Michael's help, 10:13. His words stay black.
- **DAN 10:10 [MIRACLE]** A hand touches Daniel and a heavenly messenger speaks
- **DAN 10:12 [HEART]** From the first day Daniel set his heart to understand and humble himself, his prayer was heard.
- **DAN 10:12 [TEXT]** SET YOUR HEART. The Hebrew says you gave your heart, like the KJV.
- **DAN 10:13 [DEMONIC]** Prince of Persia, Prince of Greece — territorial demonic principalities
- **DAN 10:13 [NOTE]** THE PRINCE OF PERSIA. A spiritual power over Persia that fought against God's messenger for 21 days, until Michael came. Paul says our battle is not against flesh and blood, Ephesians 6:12.
- **DAN 10:18 [MIRACLE]** The one like a man strengthens Daniel
- **DAN 10:20 [DEMONIC]** Prince of Persia, Prince of Greece — territorial demonic principalities
- **DAN 10:21 [NOTE]** MICHAEL, YOUR PRINCE. The angel who stands guard over God's people, 12:1. Jude 1:9 calls him the archangel.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY

3 Then a mighty king will arise, who will
rule with great authority and do as he
pleases. 4 But as soon as he is estab-
lished, his kingdom will be broken up and
parceled out toward the four winds of
heaven. It will not go to his descendants,
nor will it have the authority with which he
ruled, because his kingdom will be up-
rooted and given to others.

5 The king of the South will grow strong,
but one of his commanders will grow even
stronger and will rule his own kingdom
with great authority.

6 After some years they will form an al-
liance, and the daughter of the king of the
South will go to the king of the North to
seal the agreement. But his daughter will
not retain her position of power, nor will
his strength endure. At that time she will
be given up, along with her royal escort
and her father and the one who supported
her.

7 But one from her family line will rise up in
his place, come against the army of the
king of the North, and enter his fortress,
fighting and prevailing. 8 He will take even
their gods captive to Egypt, with their
metal images and their precious vessels
of silver and gold. For some years he will
stay away from the king of the North, 9
who will invade the realm of the king of
the South and then return to his own land.

10 But his sons will stir up strife and as-
semble a great army, which will advance
forcefully, sweeping through like a flood,
and will again carry the battle as far as his
fortress. 11 In a rage, the king of the South
will march out to fight the king of the
North, who will raise a large army, but it
will be delivered into the hand of his en-
emy.

12 When the army is carried off, the king of
the South will be proud in heart and will
cast down tens of thousands, but he will
not triumph. 13 For the king of the North
will raise another army, larger than the
first, and after some years he will advance
with a great army and many supplies.

14 In those times many will rise up against
the king of the South. Violent ones among
your own people will exalt themselves in
fulfillment of the vision, but they will fail.

15 Then the king of the North will come,
build up a siege ramp, and capture a forti-
fied city. The forces of the South will not
stand; even their best troops will not be
able to resist. 16 The invader will do as he
pleases, and no one will stand against
him. He will establish himself in the Beau-
tiful Land, with destruction in his hand. 17
He will resolve to come with the strength
of his whole kingdom, and will reach an
agreement with the king of the South. He
will give him a daughter in marriage in or-
der to overthrow the kingdom, but his plan
will not succeed or help him.

18 Then he will turn his face to the coast-
lands and capture many of them. But a
commander will put an end to his re-
proach and will turn it back upon him. 19
After this, he will turn back toward the
fortresses of his own land, but he will
stumble and fall and be no more.

- **DAN 11:2 [PROPHECY]** Three more kings will arise in Persia, and the fourth shall be far richer... then a mighty king shall arise, who shall rule with great dominion... his kingdom shall be broken up and divided toward the four winds → HISTORY: Three more Persian kings ruled, then a fourth, Xerxes, attacked Greece in 480 BC. Alexander's empire split four ways after 323 BC. Recorded by Herodotus and Arrian.
- **DAN 11:2 [NOTE]** KINGS OF PERSIA AND GREECE. Chapter 11 tracks history so closely that many readers have matched it king by king: Persia, Alexander, then the Ptolemies in Egypt, the south, and the Seleucids in Syria, the north.
- **DAN 11:6 [PROPHECY]** The daughter of the king of the South would marry the king of the North and be given up, then her brother would take revenge and carry off their gods to Egypt → HISTORY: Berenice of Egypt married Antiochus II of Syria and was killed about 246 BC. Her brother Ptolemy III then invaded Syria and brought idols back to Egypt. Recorded by Appian and Jerome.
- **DAN 11:8 [DEMONIC]** A king carries off the gods and metal idols of his enemies
- **DAN 11:10 [PROPHECY]** The sons of the king of the North would gather a great army, but the enraged king of the South would defeat it → HISTORY: Ptolemy IV of Egypt beat the huge army of Antiochus III of Syria at Raphia, near Gaza, in 217 BC. Recorded by Polybius, Histories 5.79 to 86.
- **DAN 11:17 [PROPHECY]** The king of the North would give a daughter in marriage to the king of the South, but his plan would fail → HISTORY: Antiochus III of Syria gave his daughter Cleopatra to Ptolemy V of Egypt as his wife, about 193 BC. But she stood with her husband. Recorded by Appian, Syrian Wars 5, and Livy.
- **DAN 11:18 [PROPHECY]** The king of the North would take coastlands, be stopped by a commander, then fall in his own land → HISTORY: A Roman army under Scipio beat Antiochus III at Magnesia in 190 BC. He was killed in 187 BC while robbing a temple in Elymais, in his own kingdom. Recorded by Livy and Diodorus.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA

20 In his place one will arise who will send
out a tax collector for the glory of the
kingdom; but within a few days he will be
destroyed, though not in anger or in bat-
tle.

21 In his place a despicable person will
arise; royal honors will not be given to
him, but he will come in a time of peace
and seize the kingdom by intrigue. 22 Then
a flood of forces will be swept away be-
fore him and destroyed, along with a
prince of the covenant.

23 After an alliance is made with him, he
will act deceitfully; for he will rise to
power with only a few people. 24 In a time
of peace, he will invade the richest
provinces and do what his fathers and
forefathers never did. He will lavish plun-
der, loot, and wealth on his followers, and
he will plot against the strongholds—but
only for a time.

25 And with a large army he will stir up his
power and his courage against the king of
the South, who will mobilize a very large
and powerful army but will not withstand
the plots devised against him. 26 Those
who eat from his provisions will seek to
destroy him; his army will be swept away,
and many will fall slain.

27 And the two kings, with their hearts bent
on evil, will speak lies at the same table,
but to no avail, for still the end will come
at the appointed time. 28 The king of the
North will return to his land with great
wealth, but his heart will be set against
the holy covenant; so he will do damage
and return to his own land.

29 At the appointed time he will invade the
South again, but this time will not be like
the first. 30 Ships of Kittim will come
against him, and he will lose heart. Then
he will turn back and rage against the holy
covenant and do damage. So he will re-
turn and show favor to those who forsake
the holy covenant. 31 His forces will rise up
and desecrate the temple fortress. They
will abolish the daily sacrifice and set up
the abomination of desolation.

32 With flattery he will corrupt those who
violate the covenant, but the people who
know their God will be strong and do ex-
ploits. 33 Those with insight will instruct
many, though for a time they will fall by
sword or flame, or be captured or plun-
dered.

34 Now when they fall, they will be granted
a little help, but many will join them insin-

- **DAN 11:20 [PROPHECY]** The next king would send a tax collector through the land, then die soon but not in battle → 2 Maccabees 3:7-40
- **DAN 11:21 [PROPHECY]** In his place shall arise a vile person, to whom they will not give the honor of royalty; but he shall come in peaceably, and seize the kingdom by intrigues → Fulfilled in Antiochus IV who seized the Seleucid throne through political intrigue after Seleucus IV's death
- **DAN 11:21 [NOTE]** A DESPICABLE PERSON. Most readers see Antiochus IV Epiphanes, who took the throne by intrigue in 175 BC. See The Little Horn.
- **DAN 11:22 [PROPHECY]** With the force of a flood they shall be swept away from before him... he shall enter peaceably, even into the richest places; and he shall do what his fathers have not done: he shall disperse among them the plunder, spoil, and riches → Fulfilled in Antiochus's early campaigns and lavish plundering of Jerusalem
- **DAN 11:25 [PROPHECY]** He shall stir up his power and courage against the king of the South with a great army... they shall speak lies at the same table → Fulfilled in Antiochus's wars against Ptolemy VI of Egypt
- **DAN 11:28 [PROPHECY]** Then he shall return to his land with great riches, and his heart shall be moved against the holy covenant; so he shall do damage and return to his own land → Fulfilled in Antiochus's return from Egypt in 169 BC
- **DAN 11:29 [PROPHECY]** At the appointed time he shall return and go toward the south; but it shall not be like the former or the latter. For ships from Cyprus (Kittim) shall come against him; therefore he shall be grieved, and return in rage against the holy covenant → Fulfilled 168 BC
- **DAN 11:30 [TEXT]** LOSE HEART. The Hebrew is not the word for heart. The KJV says he shall be grieved.
- **DAN 11:30 [NOTE]** KITTIM. In 168 BC a Roman envoy drew a circle in the sand around Antiochus and made him leave Egypt.
- **DAN 11:31 [PROPHECY]** Forces shall be mustered by him, and they shall defile the sanctuary fortress; then they shall take away the daily sacrifices, and place there the abomination of desolation → Fulfilled 15 Chislev 167 BC
- **DAN 11:31 [DEMONIC]** Forces defile the temple and set up the abomination of desolation
- **DAN 11:31 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:15 p.1587
- **DAN 11:31 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MK 13:14 p.1631
- **DAN 11:31 [NOTE]** THE ABOMINATION. In 167 BC Antiochus set up a pagan altar in the temple, 1 Maccabees 1:54. Jesus spoke of an abomination still to come, Matthew 24:15.
- **DAN 11:32 [PROPHECY]** With flattery he will corrupt those who violate the covenant → Fulfilled in the Hellenizing Jews who abandoned the covenant
- **DAN 11:32 [PROPHECY]** But the people who know their God will be strong and do exploits → Fulfilled in Mattathias and his sons the Maccabees
- **DAN 11:32 [TEXT]** DO EXPLOITS. Hebrew, be strong and act; the KJV word.
- **DAN 11:32 [NOTE]** THE MACCABEES. Hanukkah remembers their win, John 10:22.
- **DAN 11:33 [PROPHECY]** Those of the people who understand shall instruct many; yet for many days they shall fall by sword and flame, by captivity and plundering → Fulfilled in the Jewish martyrs of the Maccabean era

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA END TIMES PROPHECIES

cerely. 35 Some of the wise will fall so that they may be refined, purified, and made spotless until the time of the end, for it will still come at the appointed time.

THE KING WHO EXALTS HIMSELF

36 Then the king will do as he pleases and will exalt and magnify himself above every god, and he will speak monstrous things against the God of gods. He will be successful until the time of wrath is completed, for what has been decreed must be accomplished. 37 He will show no regard for the gods of his fathers, nor for the one desired by women, nor for any other god, because he will magnify himself above them all.

38 And in their place, he will honor a god of fortresses—a god his fathers did not know—with gold, silver, precious stones, and riches. 39 He will attack the strongest fortresses with the help of a foreign god and will greatly honor those who acknowledge him, making them rulers over many and distributing the land for a price.

40 At the time of the end, the king of the South will engage him in battle, but the king of the North will storm out against him with chariots, horsemen, and many ships, invading many countries and sweeping through them like a flood. 41 He will also invade the Beautiful Land, and many countries will fall. But these will be delivered from his hand: Edom, Moab, and the leaders of the Ammonites.

42 He will extend his power over many countries, and not even the land of Egypt will escape. 43 He will gain control of the treasures of gold and silver and over all the riches of Egypt, and the Libyans and Cushites will also submit to him.

44 But news from the east and the north will alarm him, and he will go out with great fury to destroy many and devote them to destruction. 45 He will pitch his royal tents between the sea and the beautiful holy mountain, but he will meet his end with no one to help him.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Michael stands up, there is a time of trouble, and many who sleep in the dust will wake. The wise will shine like the stars. Daniel is told to seal the book and rest, for he will rise at the end of the days.

THE END TIMES // REVELATION 1:1–3

1 "At that time Michael, the great prince who stands watch over your people, will rise up. There will be a time of distress, the likes of which will not have occurred from the beginning of nations until that time. But at that time your people—everyone whose name is found written in the book—will be delivered.

2 And many who sleep in the dust of the earth will awake, some to everlasting life, but others to shame and everlasting contempt. 3 Then the wise will shine like the brightness of the heavens, and those who lead many to righteousness will shine like the stars forever and ever.

4 But you, Daniel, shut up these words and seal the book until the time of the end. Many will roam to and fro, and knowledge will increase."

- **DAN 11:34 [PROPHECY]** When they fall, they shall be aided with a little help; but many shall join with them by intrigue → Fulfilled in the mixed coalition around the Maccabees · MEDIUM
- **DAN 11:35 [PROPHECY]** Some of those of understanding shall fall, to refine them, purify them, and make them white, until the time of the end → Fulfilled progressively in the Maccabean martyrdoms and purification of Israel
- **DAN 11:36 [PROPHECY]** The king shall do according to his own will; he shall exalt himself above every god → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **DAN 11:36 [DEMONIC]** A proud king honors a god of fortresses and a foreign god
- **DAN 11:36 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 2TH 2:4 p.1926
- **DAN 11:36 [NOTE]** THE KING WHO EXALTS HIMSELF. Still Antiochus, or, as many Christians see it, a jump to the Antichrist, 2 Thessalonians 2:4. See The Little Horn.
- **DAN 11:40 [PROPHECY]** At the time of the end the king of the North would sweep through many lands and then come to his end with no one to help him → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

- **DAN 12:1 [PROPHECY]** At that time Michael shall stand up; there shall be a time of trouble such as never was; those who sleep in the dust shall awake → STILL TO COME
- **DAN 12:1 [NOTE]** A TIME OF DISTRESS. Jesus echoed this when He spoke of the great tribulation, Matthew 24:21.
- **DAN 12:2 [NOTE]** MANY WHO SLEEP IN THE DUST. One of the clearest promises in the Old Testament of the dead rising, some to life and some to shame. Jesus said the same, John 5:28 to 29.
- **DAN 12:3 [NOTABLE]** Helping others find God is the kind of greatness that lasts forever.

END TIMES PROPHECIES

5 Then I, Daniel, looked and saw two others standing there, one on this bank of the river and one on the opposite bank. 6 One of them said to the man dressed in linen, who was above the waters of the river, "How long until the fulfillment of these wonders?"

7 And the man dressed in linen, who was above the waters of the river, raised his right hand and his left hand toward heaven, and I heard him swear by Him who lives forever, saying, "It will be for a time, and times, and half a time. When the power of the holy people has finally been shattered, all these things will be completed."

8 I heard, but I did not understand. So I asked, "My lord, what will be the outcome of these things?"

9 "Go on your way, Daniel," he replied, "for the words are closed up and sealed until the time of the end. 10 Many will be purified, made spotless, and refined, but the wicked will continue to act wickedly. None of the wicked will understand, but the wise will understand.

11 And from the time the daily sacrifice is abolished and the abomination of desolation set up, there will be 1,290 days. 12 Blessed is he who waits and reaches the end of the 1,335 days.

13 But as for you, go on your way until the end. You will rest, and then you will arise to your inheritance at the end of the days."

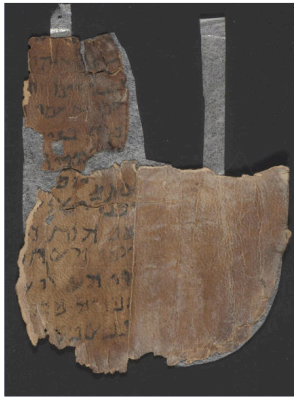
- **DAN 12:4 [NOTE]** SEAL THE BOOK. Keep it safe until the end. Revelation 22:10 says the opposite: do not seal it, for the time is near.
- **DAN 12:7 [PROPHECY]** The end would come after a time, times, and half a time, when the power of the holy people is shattered → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **DAN 12:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 10:5-6 p.2096
- **DAN 12:11 [PROPHECY]** From the time the daily sacrifice is taken away, and the abomination of desolation set up, there shall be 1,290 days; blessed is he who waits and comes to the 1,335 days → STILL TO COME
- **DAN 12:11 [DEMONIC]** The abomination of desolation is set up as daily sacrifice ends
- **DAN 12:11 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:15 p.1587
- **DAN 12:13 [NOTE]** YOU WILL REST. Daniel's story ends with a promise: you will arise to your inheritance. What a way to end a book.

BOOK 28 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

HOSEA

The Prophet Who Married a Prostitute

AUTHOR	Hosea son of Beeri, a prophet in Israel, the northern kingdom. His name means salvation. It was Joshua's name before Moses changed it, Numbers 13:16.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About 755 to 715 BC, from the last years of Jeroboam II of Israel into the reign of Hezekiah of Judah.
DATE WRITTEN	About 750 to 715 BC. His words were likely gathered in Judah after Samaria fell in 722 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, which Hosea often calls Ephraim after its leading tribe, with warnings for Judah too.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Hosea is in three Qumran copies of the Twelve Prophets and two Qumran commentaries on Hosea, all copied before or about the time of Jesus.
KEY VERSE	Hosea 3:1. Love her as Yahweh loves the Israelites, though they turn to other gods.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF HOSEA
A piece of 4QXII d, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about a hundred years before Jesus. It holds part of Hosea 1:6 to 2:3, the names of Hosea's children. Hosea is in two more Qumran copies of the Twelve, and two Qumran commentaries explain it line by line. See The Hosea Scrolls.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

When Hosea starts preaching, King Jeroboam II has made Israel rich and strong. Then it all falls apart. After Jeroboam dies, six kings rule in about thirty years, and four of them are murdered. Israel pays Assyria, then begs Egypt, and in 722 BC Assyria destroys Samaria and carries the people away. Through it all the people worship Baal next to Yahweh and bow to the golden calves. Hosea's own broken marriage becomes God's picture of Israel.

What Went Wrong

BAAL AND YAHWEH TOGETHER. They thanked Baal for the grain, wine and oil God gave, 2:8, and even called Yahweh my Baal, 2:16.
THE CALVES. They kissed calf idols made by craftsmen, 8:5 to 6 and 13:2.
KINGS WITHOUT GOD. They set up kings God did not choose, 8:4, and one king after another fell, 7:7.

NO KNOWLEDGE OF GOD. Lying, murder, stealing and adultery everywhere, 4:1 to 2, and priests who fed on the people's sin, 4:8.
HUMAN SACRIFICE. 13:2 can be read they offer human sacrifice, the very thing God hated, 2 Kings 17:17. The Hebrew can also mean those who sacrifice.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Hosea is a love story with a broken heart. God tells the prophet to marry Gomer, a woman who will cheat on him, and later to go buy her back. Their marriage is a living picture of God and Israel: God loved His people and gave them everything, and they ran off after Baal. The middle of the book is God's case against them, full of hard words and wild pictures, a half baked cake, a silly dove, a morning mist. But God cannot let them go. How could I give you up? He asks. The book ends with an open door: return, and I will heal you.

Hosea at a Glance

CH 1 to 3	**A MARRIAGE THAT PREACHES** Hosea marries Gomer, she leaves, and he buys her back.
CH 4 to 7	**ISRAEL ON TRIAL** No truth, no love, no knowledge of God.
CH 8 to 10	**SOW THE WIND** Calves, kings, Assyria and the whirlwind.
CH 11	**HOW COULD I GIVE YOU UP?** A Father's love for a runaway son.
CH 12 to 14	**COME HOME** Jacob's story, judgment, and a last call to return.

Where Jesus Shows Up

HOSEA 11:1 Out of Egypt I called My son. Matthew 2:15 sees Jesus, God's Son, coming out of Egypt and reliving Israel's story.

HOSEA 6:6 I desire mercy, not sacrifice. Jesus quoted it twice, Matthew 9:13 and 12:7.

HOSEA 1:10 AND 2:23 Not My People will be called My people. Paul and Peter see Jews and Gentiles brought to God through Jesus, Romans 9:25 to 26 and 1 Peter 2:10.

HOSEA 6:2 On the third day He will raise us up. Many see a picture of Jesus rising on the third day, 1 Corinthians 15:4.

HOSEA 13:14 Where, O Death, are your plagues? Where, O Sheol, is your sting? Paul shouts it over death itself, because Jesus rose, 1 Corinthians 15:54 to 57.

HOSEA 3:1 TO 2 A husband buys back his unfaithful bride. Christians see the price Jesus paid for His people, 1 Peter 1:18 to 19.

LO RUHAMAH
No Compassion, Hosea's daughter, 1:6.

LO AMMI
Not My People, his younger son, 1:9.

BETH AVEN
House of wickedness, a nickname for Bethel, 4:15.

What to Watch for in Hosea

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (2)	1:10, 2:23

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	6:2, 11:1
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (3)	1:4-7, 13:16
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	10:8
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (1)	3:4-5
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	5:14-15, 13:14
THE HEART (3)	2:14, 10:12, 11:8
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	2:5, 2:10
DEMONIC (18)	2:8, 2:13, 2:16-17, 3:1, 4:12-15, 4:17, 5:11 and 11 more
NOTABLE (5)	2:19-20, 4:6, 6:6, 11:3-4, 14:4-7
GOD SPEAKING (154 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (5 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

NAMES THAT PREACH
Hosea's children were named Jezreel, God Sows; Lo ruhamah, No Compassion; and Lo ammi, Not My People. In 2:22 to 23 God turns every name around.

FIRST OF THE TWELVE
Hosea comes first in the Book of the Twelve, the twelve shorter prophets that were copied together on one scroll.

SOW THE WIND
The saying sow the wind, reap the whirlwind comes from Hosea 8:7.

GOD DOES THE TALKING
God speaks most of the book in His own voice, so most of Hosea prints in red.

How Does It End?

Israel did not listen, and Assyria took Samaria in 722 BC, just as Hosea warned, 13:16. But the book ends with God's promise to heal His people and love them freely, 14:4, and a word for every reader: whoever is wise, let him understand these things, 14:9.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Hosea to marry a woman who will cheat on him. He marries Gomer, and they have three children with names that sound like bad news: God Sows, No Compassion and Not My People. Then God promises to undo every name.

HOSEA'S WIFE AND CHILDREN

1 This is the word of Yahweh that came to Hosea son of Beeri in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, and of Jeroboam son of Jehoash, king of Israel.

2 When Yahweh first spoke through Hosea, He told him, "Go, take a prostitute as your wife and have children of adultery, because this land is flagrantly prostituting itself by departing from Yahweh."

3 So Hosea went and married Gomer daughter of Diblaim, and she conceived and bore him a son.

4 Then Yahweh said to Hosea, "Name him Jezreel, for soon I will bring the bloodshed of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu, and I will put an end to the kingdom of Israel. 5 And on that day I will break the bow of Israel in the Valley of Jezreel."

6 Gomer again conceived and gave birth to a daughter, and Yahweh said to Hosea, "Name her Lo-ruhamah, for I will no longer have compassion on the house of Israel, that I should ever forgive them. 7 Yet I will have compassion on the house of Judah, and I will save them—not by bow or sword or war, not by horses and cavalry, but by Yahweh their God."

8 After she had weaned Lo-ruhamah, Gomer conceived and gave birth to a son. 9 And Yahweh said, "Name him Lo-ammi, for you are not My people, and I am not your God.

10 *Yet the number of the Israelites will be like the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured or counted. And it will happen that in the very place where it was said to them, 'You are not My people,' they will be called 'sons of the living God.'* 11 Then the people of Judah and of Israel will be gathered together, and they will appoint for themselves one leader, and will go up out of the land. For great will be the day of Jezreel.

DEBATED · THE BIG QUESTION

DID GOD REALLY TELL HOSEA TO MARRY A PROSTITUTE?

A Hard Command

HOSEA 1:2 TO 3 · 3:1 TO 3

WHAT THE TEXT SAYS

Go, take a prostitute as your wife and have children of adultery, 1:2. The Hebrew says a woman of whoredoms. Hosea married Gomer. Later God said, Go show love to your wife again, though she is an adulteress, 3:1.

WHY IT IS HARD

God hates unfaithfulness, and the law told priests not to marry a prostitute, Leviticus 21:7. Many readers ask how a holy God could ask this of His prophet.

- **HOS 1:1 [NOTE]** FOUR KINGS OF JUDAH, ONE OF ISRAEL. Hosea preached in Israel, the northern kingdom, but dates his book by Judah's kings too. Jeroboam II died about 753 BC; Hezekiah began to reign about 715 BC.
- **HOS 1:2 [NOTE]** A PROSTITUTE? The Hebrew says a woman of whoredoms. See Did God Really Tell Hosea to Marry a Prostitute?
- **HOS 1:4 [PROPHECY]** I will avenge the blood of Jezreel on the house of Jehu; I will break the bow of Israel in the Valley of Jezreel → 2KI 15:8-12 p.630
- **HOS 1:4 [NOTE]** JEZREEL. The name means God sows. Jezreel was where Jehu wiped out Ahab's family, 2 Kings 9 to 10. Jehu's line ended when Zechariah was murdered, 2 Kings 15:10 to 12. See Jehu on the Black Obelisk, 2 Kings, p.617.
- **HOS 1:6 [PROPHECY]** I will no longer have mercy on the house of Israel, but I will have mercy on the house of Judah → 2KI 17:6; 2KI 19:35 p.635
- **HOS 1:6 [NOTE]** LO RUHAMAH. No Compassion. In 2:23 God says, I will have compassion on No Compassion.
- **HOS 1:9 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:10 p.2013
- **HOS 1:9 [NOTE]** LO AMMI. Not My People, the reverse of God's promise, I will be your God, and you will be My people, Leviticus 26:12.
- **HOS 1:10 [PROPHECY]** Those called Not My People would be called sons of the living God → ROM 9:26; 1PE 2:10 p.1811
- **HOS 1:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:25-26 p.1811
- **HOS 1:10 [TEXT]** VERSE NUMBERS. In Hebrew Bibles 1:10 to 11 is 2:1 to 2, so every verse in chapter 2 is two numbers higher there. In the same way 11:12 is 12:1 and 13:16 is 14:1, so chapters 12 and 14 are one number higher. The words are the same.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

Every View

LEVITICUS 21:7 · EZEKIEL 4:4 TO 6 · ISAIAH 20:2 TO 3

VIEW 1: IT HAPPENED AS WRITTEN

Many, from Irenaeus in the early church to many today, take it plainly. God let Hosea feel what God feels. Hosea was not a priest, so Leviticus 21:7 did not bind him.

VIEW 2: SHE BECAME UNFAITHFUL LATER

Many say Gomer was faithful when they married, and 1:2 looks back from the end of the story, the way you might say a man married his future boss. Children of adultery would be the children she had later.

VIEW 3: A VISION OR A PARABLE

Some Jewish scholars, like Ibn Ezra and Maimonides, and Christians like John Calvin, said it happened in a vision or was a story told to teach. Others answer that Gomer and her father have real names, 1:3.

VIEW 4: A WOMAN OF HER TIMES

Some think a woman of whoredoms means a woman from a people chasing idols, or one caught up in the sex rituals of Baal worship, not a woman who sold herself.

PROPHETS WHO ACTED IT OUT

God also had Isaiah walk barefoot for three years, Isaiah 20:2 to 3, and Ezekiel lie on his side for over a year, Ezekiel 4:4 to 6. The message was lived, not just spoken.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The marriage is a picture of God's love. Israel was the unfaithful wife, and God kept loving her and bought her back, 3:1 to 2.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

God speaks like a heartbroken husband taking His unfaithful wife to court. She chased other lovers and thanked Baal for gifts God gave. But God will take her back to the wilderness, speak to her heart and marry her forever.

ISRAEL'S ADULTERY REBUKED

1 "Say of your brothers, 'My people,'
and of your sisters, 'My loved one.'

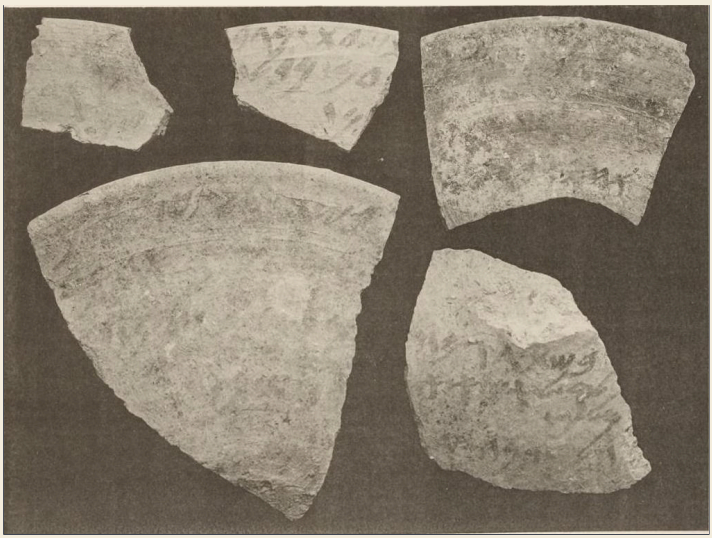
2 Rebuke your mother,
rebuke her,
for she is not My wife,
and I am not her husband.
Let her remove the adultery from her face
and the unfaithfulness from between her breasts.
3 Otherwise, I will strip her naked
and expose her like the day of her birth.
I will make her like a desert
and turn her into a parched land,
and I will let her die of thirst.
4 I will have no compassion on her children,
because they are the children of adultery.
5 For their mother has played the harlot
and has conceived them in disgrace.
For she thought,
'I will go after my lovers,
who give me bread and water,
wool and linen, oil and drink.'
6 Therefore, behold,
I will hedge up her path with thorns;
I will enclose her with a wall,
so she cannot find her way.
7 She will pursue her lovers but not catch them;
she will seek them but not find them.
Then she will say,
'I will return to my first husband,
for then I was better off than now.'
8 For she does not acknowledge
that it was I who gave her grain,
new wine, and oil,
who lavished on her silver and gold—
which they crafted for Baal.
9 Therefore I will take back My grain in its time
and My new wine in its season;
I will take away My wool and linen,
which were given to cover her nakedness.

■ **HOS 2:2 [NOTE]** A COURT CASE IN THE FAMILY. God speaks like a husband taking his unfaithful wife to court. Her children are told to plead with their mother.
■ **HOS 2:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Shipping notes for wine and oil from Israel's capital in Hosea's century, with names built on Baal and on Yahweh, see The Samaria Ostraca Field Notes page, p.1358FIELD NOTES p.1358
■ **HOS 2:8 [DEMONIC]** Israel used God's gifts of silver and gold to make Baal idols
■ **HOS 2:8 [NOTE]** GRAIN, NEW WINE AND OIL. Baal was the storm god people thanked for rain and crops. God says the gifts were His all along.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE SAMARIA OSTRACA

HOSEA 2:5 · 2:8 · 2:16 TO 17 · 12:8



Five of the Samaria Ostraca, ink notes on broken pottery, as photographed for the Harvard dig report of 1924. Public domain.

WHAT THEY ARE

More than a hundred pieces of broken pottery with short notes written in ink, found in a storeroom building at Samaria, Israel's capital. More than sixty can still be read.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

Most scholars date them to the early 700s BC, many to the reign of Jeroboam II, the king of Israel in Hosea 1:1. They are dated by the year of a king they do not name. Some scholars date them a little earlier.

WHAT THEY SAY

They are shipping notes for jars of old wine and fine oil sent to Samaria from farms and clans around it. A typical note gives the year, the place or clan, the man who received it, and the jar.

THE NAMES

The notes name dozens of people. Many names are built on Yahweh, ending in yau, like Gaddiyau and Shemaryau. But others are built on Baal, like Abibaal, Baala and Meribaal.

BAAL OR MASTER?

Baal also means master or lord, so some parents may have used it as a title for Yahweh. That is just what God says He will stop in Hosea 2:16: you will no longer call Me my Baal.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

A Harvard team led by George Reisner dug them up in 1910, in a building next to the royal palace, now called the Ostraca House. The land was then ruled by the Ottoman Turks, so the ostraca went to the Istanbul Archaeology Museums.

WHY POTTERY?

Broken pottery was the scrap paper of the ancient world. It cost nothing, ink wrote on it well, and it lasts for thousands of years.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The notes do not name Hosea or tell any event in the book.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Real records from Hosea's century: wine and oil flowing into the capital in the rich years, the same gifts Israel thanked Baal for, 2:5 and 2:8, and families naming children after both Yahweh and Baal.

SEE ALSO

The Samaria Ivories, 1 Kings, p.596, and The Fall of Samaria, 2 Kings, p.637.

THE HEART · ARCHAEOLOGY · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

10 And then I will expose her lewdness
in the sight of her lovers,
and no one will deliver her
out of My hands.
11 I will put an end to all her exultation:
her feasts, New Moons, and Sabbaths—
all her appointed feasts.
12 I will destroy her vines and fig trees,
which she thinks are the wages paid by
her lovers.
So I will make them into a thicket,
and the beasts of the field will devour
them.
13 I will punish her for the days of the Baals
when she burned incense to them,
when she adorned herself with rings and
jewelry,
and went after her lovers.
But Me she forgot,"
declares Yahweh.

GOD'S MERCY TO ISRAEL

14 "Therefore, behold, I will allure her
and lead her to the wilderness,
and speak to her heart.
15 There I will give back her vineyards
and make the Valley of Achor
into a gateway of hope.
There she will respond as she did
in the days of her youth,
as in the day she came up out of Egypt.
16 In that day,"
declares Yahweh,
"you will call Me 'my Husband,'
and no longer call Me 'my Master.'
17 For I will remove from her lips the names
of the Baals;
no longer will their names be invoked.

- **HOS 2:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Hosea in three Qumran scrolls of the Twelve and two Qumran commentaries on Hosea, see The Hosea Scrolls Field Notes page, p.1360 FIELD NOTES p.1360
- **HOS 2:13 [DEMONIC]** God will punish Israel for burning incense to the Baals
- **HOS 2:14 [HEART]** God will lead His unfaithful bride into the wilderness and speak to her heart. He wins her back with tenderness.
- **HOS 2:14 [TEXT]** SPEAK TO HER HEART. The Hebrew says I will speak to her heart. The KJV says speak comfortably unto her.
- **HOS 2:14 [NOTE]** BACK TO THE WILDERNESS. God will take her back to where their love began, the exodus, 2:15.
- **HOS 2:15 [NOTE]** THE VALLEY OF ACHOR. Achor means trouble. Achan was stoned there, Joshua 7:24 to 26. God turns the valley of trouble into a gateway of hope.
- **HOS 2:16 [DEMONIC]** God will remove the names of the Baals from Israel's lips
- **HOS 2:16 [NOTE]** MY HUSBAND, NOT MY MASTER. The Hebrew says you will call Me Ishi, my husband, and no longer Baali, my master. Baal was the false god's name too. See Yahweh and His Asherah.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

YAHWEH AND HIS ASHERAH

HOSEA 2:16 TO 17 · 4:12 TO 13



A modern drawing of the paintings and writing on Jar A from Kuntillet Ajrud. Wikimedia Commons.

WHAT IT IS
Two big storage jars from Kuntillet Ajrud, a desert stopping place in the Sinai, painted with figures and written with blessings. One says, I bless you by Yahweh of Samaria and by his asherah.

HOW OLD IT IS
About 800 BC, a generation before Hosea.

WHERE FOUND
Archaeologist Zeev Meshel dug the site in 1975 and 1976.

WHAT IT MEANS
Asherah was a goddess, and also the name for the wooden pole that stood for her. Either way, some Israelites worshiped Yahweh with something beside Him, and Yahweh of Samaria ties it to Hosea's own capital.

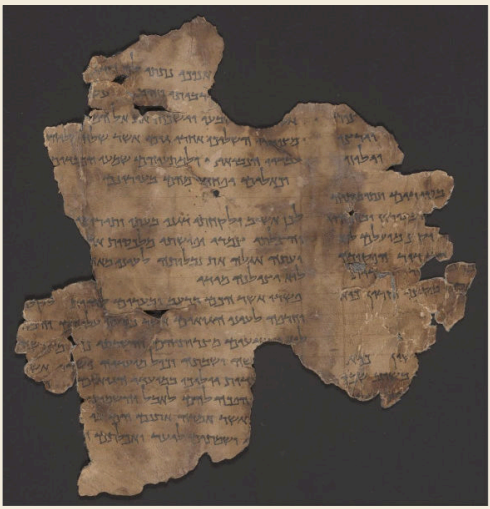
OTHER VIEWS
Some scholars think asherah here means only a sacred tree or pole, not a goddess. Some think the figures under the words show Yahweh and Asherah. Others say they are the Egyptian god Bes and may not go with the blessing at all.

WHAT IT SHOWS
Hosea was not exaggerating. God says, you will call Me my Husband, and I will remove the names of the Baals from her lips, 2:16 to 17.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE HOSEA SCROLLS

HOSEA 1 TO 14 · 2:6 TO 12 · 5:13 TO 15



4Q166, Pesher Hosea, a Qumran commentary on Hosea 2:6 to 12. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT THEY ARE

Copies of Hosea and commentaries on it from the caves near Qumran. Hosea is in three scrolls of the Twelve Prophets from Cave 4, called 4QXII c, d and g. Two more scrolls, 4Q166 and 4Q167, are commentaries called Pesher Hosea.

HOW OLD THEY ARE

The copies of the Twelve were made in the hundred years before Jesus. The commentary in the photo, 4Q166, was copied in the Herodian period, between about 30 BC and the time of Jesus.

WHAT A PESHER IS

Pesher means interpretation. The writer quotes a few words of Scripture, then says, its interpretation is, and explains how the words fit his own day.

THE UNFAITHFUL WIFE

4Q166 quotes Hosea 2:6 to 12, numbered 2:8 to 14 in Hebrew Bibles, the wife who chased her lovers, and reads her as the people of its own time who forgot God and followed the ways of the nations.

THE LION OF WRATH

4Q167 comments on Hosea 5:14, I will be like a lion to Ephraim. It speaks of the Lion of Wrath and of a last priest who would strike Ephraim. Many scholars think the Lion of Wrath was the Jewish king Alexander Jannaeus, who ruled about 103 to 76 BC.

HOW THEY WERE FOUND

Bedouin shepherds found Cave 4 in 1952, right beside the ruins of Qumran. They dug out most of its thousands of scroll pieces before archaeologists arrived and found more. Scholars spent years fitting them together.

A SCROLL OF TWELVE

The twelve shorter prophets fit on one scroll, so Jews counted them as one book, the Book of the Twelve. Hosea comes first, as it does in Bibles today.

WHAT THE COPIES SHOW

The Hosea text in the scrolls is very close to the Hebrew text used today, with small differences, mostly in spelling.

WHY IT MATTERS

Jews before Jesus already read Hosea as a living word for their own day. Matthew and Paul read it that way too, Matthew 2:15 and Romans 9:25 to 26.

WHERE THEY ARE TODAY

The Israel Antiquities Authority keeps the pieces in Jerusalem. Anyone can look at them online in the Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE
GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

18 On that day I will make a covenant for
them
with the beasts of the field and the birds
of the air
and the creatures that crawl on the
ground.
And I will abolish bow and sword
and battle in the land,
and will make them lie down in safety.
19 So I will betroth you to Me forever;
I will betroth you in righteousness and
justice,
in loving devotion and compassion.
20 And I will betroth you in faithfulness,
and you will know Yahweh."

21 "On that day I will respond—"
declares Yahweh—"
I will respond to the heavens,
and they will respond to the earth.
22 And the earth will respond to the grain,
to the new wine and oil,
and they will respond to Jezreel.
23 *And I will sow her as My own in the land,*
and I will have compassion on 'No Compas-
sion.'
I will say to those called 'Not My People,'
'You are My people,'
and they will say,
'You are my God.'"

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The shortest chapter, and maybe the sweetest. God tells Hosea to go love his wife again. Hosea buys her back, and Israel learns it will go many days without a king before coming home to God and David their king.

HOSEA REDEEMS HIS WIFE // ZECHARIAH 2:6–13

1 Then Yahweh said to me, "Go show love to your wife again, though she is loved by another and is an adulteress. Love her as Yahweh loves the Israelites, though they turn to other gods and love to offer raisin cakes to idols."

2 So I bought her for six ounces of silver and nine bushels of barley. 3 Then I said to her, "You must live with me for many days; you must not be promiscuous or belong to another, and I will do the same for you."

4 For the Israelites must live many days without king or prince, without sacrifice or sacred pillar, and without ephod or idol. 5 Afterward, the people of Israel will return and seek Yahweh their God and David their king. They will come trembling to Yahweh and to His goodness in the last days.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

MANY DAYS WITHOUT A KING

Hosea 3:4 to 5

HOSEA 3:4 TO 5

THE PROPHECY

Israel will live many days without king or prince, without sacrifice or sacred pillar, without ephod or idol. Afterward they will return and seek Yahweh their God and David their king, in the last days, 3:4 to 5.

DAVID THEIR KING

David had been dead for more than 200 years. Most readers say David their king means the promised King from David's

- **HOS 2:19 [NOTABLE]** God's wedding vow to an unfaithful people. His love is not a contract that ends when we fail; it is a promise He keeps forever.
- **HOS 2:19 [NOTE]** BETROTHED FOREVER. Three times God says, I will betroth you. Many Jewish men say 2:19 to 20 each weekday morning as they wrap the strap of the tefillin three times around the middle finger, like a ring.
- **HOS 2:23 [PROPHECY]** God would say to Not My People, You are My people → ROM 9:25; 1PE 2:10 p.1811
- **HOS 2:23 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:25-26 p.1811
- **HOS 2:23 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → 1PE 2:10 p.2013
- **HOS 3:1 [DEMONIC]** Israel turns to other gods and loves raisin cakes offered to idols
- **HOS 3:1 [NOTE]** GO SHOW LOVE. Love here is a choice, not a feeling. Raisin cakes were festival treats, and here they seem to be part of the feasts for false gods.
- **HOS 3:2 [TEXT]** SIX OUNCES OF SILVER AND NINE BUSHELS OF BARLEY. The Hebrew says fifteen pieces of silver and one and a half large measures of barley. Some think the two together made thirty, the price of a slave, Exodus 21:32.
- **HOS 3:2 [NOTE]** BOUGHT BACK. Hosea paid to bring his own wife home. Paying to set someone free is what redeem means.
- **HOS 3:4 [PROPHECY]** The children of Israel shall abide many days without king, prince, sacrifice, sacred pillar, ephod, or teraphim; afterward they shall return and seek David their king → HISTORY: Israel lost its last king when Assyria took Samaria in 722 BC. Rome burned the temple in AD 70, and the sacrifices ended. There has been no temple since. Recorded in Assyrian records and by Josephus.
- **HOS 3:4 [DEMONIC]** Israel will live many days without sacred pillar, ephod, or idol
- **HOS 3:5 [NOTE]** DAVID THEIR KING. See Many Days Without a King.

DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

line, like Jeremiah 30:9 and Ezekiel 34:23 to 24.

Every View

JEREMIAH 30:9 · EZEKIEL 34:23 TO 24 · ROMANS 11:25 TO 27

VIEW 1: ISRAEL TODAY

Many Christians say the many days are the long years since AD 70, with no temple and no sacrifice, and no king for far longer, and the return is still to come, when Israel turns to Jesus, Romans 11:25 to 27.

VIEW 2: AFTER THE EXILE

Some say it began to come true when the exiles came home, and came true fully when Jews followed Jesus, the Son of David.

VIEW 3: GOD'S PEOPLE IN CHRIST

Others say the return happens all through history, as Jews and Gentiles come to Christ and become one people, Ephesians 2:14.

JEWISH READINGS

The Aramaic Targum reads David their king as the Messiah, the son of David. Many Jews today still wait for that King and a rebuilt temple.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The many days of loss lead to a return, and the return is to God and to David's royal Son.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

God takes His people to court: no truth, no love, no knowledge of God. The priests are as bad as the people. They ask advice from sticks and worship on every hill.

GOD'S CASE AGAINST HIS PEOPLE

1 Hear the word of Yahweh,
O children of Israel,
for Yahweh has a case
against the people of the land:

"There is no truth, no loving devotion,
and no knowledge of God in the land!
2 Cursing and lying,
murder and stealing,
and adultery are rampant;
one act of bloodshed follows another.
3 Therefore the land mourns,
and all who dwell in it will waste away
with the beasts of the field and the birds of the air;
even the fish of the sea disappear.

4 But let no man contend;
let no man offer reproof;
for your people are like those
who contend with a priest.
5 You will stumble by day,
and the prophet will stumble with you by night;
so I will destroy your mother—
6 My people are destroyed
for lack of knowledge.
Because you have rejected knowledge,
I will also reject you as My priests.
Since you have forgotten the law of your God,
I will also forget your children.

7 The more they multiplied,
the more they sinned against Me;
they exchanged their Glory
for a thing of disgrace.
8 They feed on the sins of My people
and set their hearts on iniquity.
9 And it shall be
like people, like priest.
I will punish both of them for their ways
and repay them for their deeds.
10 They will eat but not be satisfied;
they will be promiscuous but not multiply.
For they have abandoned Yahweh to give themselves
11 to promiscuity, wine, and new wine,
which take away the heart.

12 My people consult their wooden idols,
and their divining rods inform them.
For a spirit of prostitution leads them astray

HOS 4:1 [NOTE] A LAWSUIT. The Hebrew word rib means a lawsuit. Chapters 4 to 14 read like God's case against His people.

HOS 4:6 [NOTABLE] Not knowing God is not a small problem. Ignoring His word destroys people; knowing Him gives life.

HOS 4:6 [NOTE] LACK OF KNOWLEDGE. Not a lack of schooling. In Hosea, knowing God means knowing Him personally, the way a husband knows his wife, 2:20.

HOS 4:11 [TEXT] TAKE AWAY THE HEART. The Hebrew says take away the heart, like the KJV. Many Bibles say understanding.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

and they have played the harlot against
their God.
13 They sacrifice on the mountaintops
and burn offerings on the hills,
under oak, poplar, and terebinth,
because their shade is pleasant.
And so your daughters turn to prostitution
and your daughters-in-law to adultery.
14 I will not punish your daughters
when they prostitute themselves,
nor your daughters-in-law
when they commit adultery.
For the men themselves go off with prostitutes
and offer sacrifices with shrine prostitutes.
So a people without understanding
will come to ruin.

15 Though you prostitute yourself, O Israel,
may Judah avoid such guilt!
Do not journey to Gilgal,
do not go up to Beth-aven,
and do not swear on oath,
'As surely as Yahweh lives!'
16 For Israel is as obstinate
as a stubborn heifer.
Can Yahweh now shepherd them
like lambs in an open meadow?
17 Ephraim is joined to idols;
leave him alone!
18 When their liquor is gone,
they turn to prostitution;
their rulers dearly love disgrace.
19 The whirlwind has wrapped them in its wings,
and their sacrifices will bring them shame.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Priests, people and the royal family all get called out. When Israel feels sick, it runs to Assyria for medicine instead of to God. God says He will go away until they come looking for Him.

JUDGMENT ON ISRAEL AND JUDAH

1 "Hear this, O priests!
Take heed, O house of Israel!
Give ear, O royal house!
For this judgment is against you
because you have been a snare at Mizpah,
a net spread out on Tabor.
2 The rebels are deep in slaughter;
but I will chastise them all.
3 I know all about Ephraim,
and Israel is not hidden from Me.
For now, O Ephraim,
you have turned to prostitution;
Israel is defiled.

4 Their deeds do not permit them
to return to their God,
for a spirit of prostitution is within them,
and they do not know Yahweh.
5 Israel's arrogance testifies against them;
Israel and Ephraim stumble in their iniquity;
even Judah stumbles with them.
6 They go with their flocks and herds
to seek Yahweh,
but they do not find Him;
He has withdrawn Himself from them.
7 They have been unfaithful to Yahweh;
for they have borne illegitimate children.
Now the New Moon will devour them
along with their land.

8 Blow the ram's horn in Gibeah,
the trumpet in Ramah;
raise the battle cry in Beth-aven:
Lead on, O Benjamin!
9 Ephraim will be laid waste
on the day of rebuke.
Among the tribes of Israel
I proclaim what is certain.
10 The princes of Judah
are like those who move boundary stones;
I will pour out My fury
upon them like water.
11 Ephraim is oppressed, crushed in judgment,
for he is determined to follow worthless idols.

HOS 4:12 [DEMONIC] God's people consult wooden idols and sacrifice on the hilltops

HOS 4:15 [NOTE] BETH AVEN. House of wickedness. Most think it is Hosea's nickname for Bethel, house of God, where one of the golden calves stood, 1 Kings 12:29. A real town named Beth Aven also stood nearby, Joshua 7:2.

HOS 4:17 [DEMONIC] Ephraim is joined to idols, so God says leave him alone

HOS 5:11 [DEMONIC] Ephraim is crushed because he chose to follow worthless idols

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · END TIMES PROPHECIES · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · GOD SPEAKING

12 So I am like a moth to Ephraim,
and like decay to the house of Judah.

13 When Ephraim saw his sickness
and Judah his wound,
then Ephraim turned to Assyria
and sent to the great king.
But he cannot cure you
or heal your wound.
14 For I am like a lion to Ephraim
and like a young lion to the house of Judah.
I, even I, will tear them to pieces
and then go away.
I will carry them off
where no one can rescue them.
15 Then I will return to My place
until they admit their guilt and seek My face;
in their affliction they will earnestly seek Me."

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

The people say, let us return, He will heal us on the third day. God answers that their love vanishes like the morning dew. What He wants is mercy, not sacrifice.

THE UNREPENTANCE OF ISRAEL AND JUDAH

1 Come, let us return to Yahweh.

For He has torn us to pieces,
but He will heal us;
He has wounded us,
but He will bind up our wounds.
2 After two days He will revive us;
on the third day He will raise us up,
that we may live in His presence.
3 So let us know—
let us press on to know Yahweh.
As surely as the sun rises,
He will appear;
He will come to us like the rain,
like the spring showers that water the earth.

4 What shall I do with you, O Ephraim?
What shall I do with you, O Judah?
For your loyalty is like a morning mist,
like the early dew that vanishes.
5 Therefore I have hewn them by the prophets;
I have slain them by the words of My mouth,
and My judgments go forth like lightning.
6 *For I desire mercy, not sacrifice,*
and the knowledge of God
rather than burnt offerings.

DEBATED · THE BIG QUESTION

THE THIRD DAY

Hosea 6:2 and the Resurrection

HOSEA 6:1 TO 4

THE VERSE

After two days He will revive us; on the third day He will raise us up, that we may live in His presence, 6:2. The people speak these words, 6:1 to 3.

WHY IT COMES UP

Paul says Christ was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures, 1 Corinthians 15:4, and Jesus said it was written that the Messiah would rise on the third day, Luke 24:46. No Old Testament verse says that plainly, so many look here and to Jonah, Matthew 12:40.

Every View

1 CORINTHIANS 15:4 · LUKE 24:46 · JONAH 1:17

VIEW 1: A PICTURE OF THE RESURRECTION

Many early Christian writers read it this way. Jesus, the true Israel, rose on the third day, and His people are raised with Him, Ephesians 2:6.

VIEW 2: SOON

Two days, then the third, can be a Hebrew way of saying in a short time. The

- **HOS 5:13 [NOTE]** THE GREAT KING. When things went wrong, Israel paid Assyria instead of turning to God. See Menahem's Tribute, 2 Kings, p.631.
- **HOS 5:14 [PROPHECY]** I will return to My place till they acknowledge their offense and seek My face → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **HOS 6:1 [NOTE]** COME, LET US RETURN. The people's words, or Hosea calling them, so they are black. God's answer in 6:4 shows their love did not last. See The Third Day.
- **HOS 6:2 [FORESHADOW]** On the third day He will raise us up → LK 24:46; 1CO 15:4 · MEDIUM p.1693
- **HOS 6:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 9:13 p.1562
- **HOS 6:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 12:7 p.1566
- **HOS 6:6 [NOTABLE]** Jesus quoted this twice. God cares more about a loving heart than religious routine.
- **HOS 6:6 [NOTE]** MERCY, NOT SACRIFICE. Jesus quoted this to people who cared more about rules than people, Matthew 9:13 and 12:7.

GOD SPEAKING

people expected God to heal them quickly.

VIEW 3: A SHALLOW PRAYER

God's answer in 6:4 says their love is like a morning mist. Some say 6:1 to 3 is a quick, cheap repentance that God does not accept.

JEWISH READINGS

The old Aramaic Targum reads the third day as the day of the resurrection of the dead. Later rabbis linked the third day with many rescues in Scripture.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God heals what He has torn, 6:1, and the hope of rising again runs through the whole Bible.

7 But they, like Adam, have transgressed the covenant;
there they were unfaithful to Me.
8 Gilead is a city of evildoers,
tracked with footprints of blood.
9 Like raiders who lie in ambush,
so does a band of priests;
they murder on the way to Shechem;
surely they have committed atrocities.
10 In the house of Israel
I have seen a horrible thing:
Ephraim practices prostitution there,
and Israel is defiled.

11 Also for you, O Judah,
a harvest is appointed,
when I restore
My people from captivity.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel is a hot oven, a half baked cake and a silly dove flapping between Egypt and Assyria. Kings keep falling, and nobody calls on God. They even cry out to Him without meaning it.

EPHRAIM'S INIQUITY

1 When I heal Israel,
the iniquity of Ephraim will be exposed,
as well as the crimes of Samaria.
For they practice deceit and thieves break in;
bandits raid in the streets.
2 But they fail to consider in their hearts
that I remember all their evil.
Now their deeds are all around them;
they are before My face.

3 They delight the king with their evil,
and the princes with their lies.
4 They are all adulterers,
like an oven heated by a baker
who needs not stoke the fire
from the kneading to the rising of the dough.
5 The princes are inflamed with wine
on the day of our king;
so he joins hands
with those who mock him.
6 For they prepare their heart like an oven
while they lie in wait;
all night their anger smolders;
in the morning it blazes like a flaming fire.
7 All of them are hot as an oven,
and they devour their rulers.
All their kings fall;
not one of them calls upon Me.

8 Ephraim mixes with the nations;
Ephraim is an unturned cake.
9 Foreigners consume his strength,
but he does not notice.
Even his hair is streaked with gray,
but he does not know.
10 Israel's arrogance testifies against them,
yet they do not return to Yahweh their God;
despite all this, they do not seek Him.

11 So Ephraim has become like a silly dove without heart—
calling out to Egypt, then turning to Assyria.
12 As they go, I will spread My net over them;

■ **HOS 6:7 [NOTE]** LIKE ADAM. The first man, who broke God's command, or a town named Adam by the Jordan, Joshua 3:16, or simply like men, as the KJV says. Some say the word there points to a place.

■ **HOS 7:4 [NOTE]** AN OVEN. Their passions burn like a baker's oven left hot all night. Of Israel's last six kings, four were murdered, 2 Kings 15.

■ **HOS 7:8 [NOTE]** A HALF BAKED CAKE. Burnt on one side and raw on the other. Ephraim mixed with the nations and was good for nothing.

■ **HOS 7:11 [TEXT]** WITHOUT HEART. The Hebrew says a silly dove without heart, like the KJV.

■ **HOS 7:11 [NOTE]** EGYPT, THEN ASSYRIA. King Hoshea paid Assyria, then secretly asked Egypt for help, 2 Kings 17:3 to 4. See Pekah and Hoshea, 2 Kings, p.632.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

I will bring them down like birds of the air.
I will chastise them
when I hear them flocking together.

13 Woe to them, for they have strayed from Me!
Destruction to them, for they have rebelled against Me!
Though I would redeem them,
they speak lies against Me.
14 They do not cry out to Me from their hearts
when they wail upon their beds.
They slash themselves for grain and new wine,
but turn away from Me.
15 Although I trained and strengthened their arms,
they plot evil against Me.
16 They turn, but not to the Most High;
they are like a faulty bow.
Their leaders will fall by the sword
for the cursing of their tongue;
for this they will be ridiculed
in the land of Egypt.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Sound the alarm. Israel made kings without God and a calf of silver and gold. They sow the wind, and they will reap the whirlwind.

ISRAEL WILL REAP THE WHIRLWIND

1 Put the ram's horn to your lips!
An eagle looms over the house of Yahweh,
because the people have transgressed My covenant
and rebelled against My law.
2 Israel cries out to Me,
"O our God, we know You!"
3 But Israel has rejected good;
an enemy will pursue him.

4 They set up kings, but not by Me.
They make princes, but without My approval.
With their silver and gold they make themselves idols,
to their own destruction.
5 He has rejected your calf, O Samaria.
My anger burns against them.
How long will they be
incapable of innocence?
6 For this thing is from Israel—
a craftsman made it, and it is not God.
It will be broken to pieces,
that calf of Samaria.

7 For they sow the wind,
and they shall reap the whirlwind.
There is no standing grain;
what sprouts fails to yield flour.
Even if it should produce,
the foreigners would swallow it up.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE CALF OF SAMARIA

HOSEA 8:5 TO 6 · 10:5 TO 6 · 13:2



A bronze bull from a hilltop shrine in the hills of Samaria, about 1100s BC. Israel Museum. Photo Yair Haklai, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small bronze bull, about seven inches long, found at a hilltop shrine in northern Samaria now called the Bull Site.

HOW OLD IT IS

From the 1100s BC, the time of the judges, long before Hosea.

WHERE FOUND

A passerby found it in the 1970s, and

HOS 7:14 [DEMONIC] Israel slashes themselves for grain and wine but turns from God

HOS 8:4 [DEMONIC] Israel makes silver idols and the calf of Samaria

HOS 8:5 [NOTE] THE CALF OF SAMARIA. See The Calf of Samaria.

HOS 8:7 [NOTE] SOW THE WIND. The saying sow the wind and reap the whirlwind comes from here.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

archaeologist Amihai Mazar dug the site soon after. It is in the Israel Museum.

WHY A BULL

In Canaan the bull stood for strength and for gods like El and Baal. Jeroboam I set up golden calves at Bethel and Dan and said, Here are your gods, 1 Kings 12:28.

HOSEA'S CALF

Hosea mocks the calf of Samaria: a craftsman made it, and it is not God, 8:6. People kiss calves, 13:2, and its priests will weep when it is carried to Assyria, 10:5 to 6.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This bull is much older and smaller than Jeroboam's calves, and no one knows which god it stood for. It shows what such an image looked like.

SEE ALSO

The High Place at Dan, 1 Kings, p.570.

8 Israel is swallowed up!
Now they are among the nations
like a worthless vessel.
9 For they have gone up to Assyria
like a wild donkey on its own.
Ephraim has hired lovers.
10 Though they hire allies among the nations,
I will now round them up,
and they will begin to diminish
under the oppression of the king of princes.

11 Though Ephraim multiplied the altars for sin,
they became his altars for sinning.
12 Though I wrote for them the great things of My law,
they regarded them as something strange.
13 Though they offer sacrifices as gifts to Me,
and though they eat the meat,
Yahweh does not accept them.
Now He will remember their iniquity and punish their sins:
They will return to Egypt.

HOS 8:11 **[DEMONIC]** Ephraim builds many altars that become places for sinning

14 Israel has forgotten his Maker and built palaces;
Judah has multiplied its fortified cities.
But I will send fire upon their cities,
and it will consume their citadels.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

No more party. Israel will go into exile and lose its harvests and its children. Hosea himself asks God to give them wombs that miscarry, a hard prayer that some hear as mercy.

ISRAEL'S PUNISHMENT

1 Do not rejoice, O Israel,
with exultation like the nations,
for you have played the harlot against your God;
you have made love for hire on every threshing floor.
2 The threshing floor and winepress will not feed them,
and the new wine will fail them.
3 They will not remain
in the land of Yahweh;
Ephraim will return to Egypt
and eat unclean food in Assyria.

4 They will not pour out wine offerings to Yahweh,
and their sacrifices will not please Him,
but will be to them like the bread of mourners;
all who eat will be defiled.
For their bread will be for themselves;
it will not enter the house of Yahweh.
5 What will you do on the appointed day,
on the day of Yahweh's feast?
6 For even if they flee destruction,
Egypt will gather them
and Memphis will bury them.
Their precious silver will be taken over by thistles,
and thorns will overrun their tents.

7 The days of punishment have come;
the days of retribution have arrived—
let Israel know it.
The prophet is called a fool,
and the inspired man insane,
because of the greatness
of your iniquity and hostility.

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

8 The prophet is Ephraim's watchman,
along with my God,
yet the snare of the fowler lies on all his paths.
Hostility is in the house of his God!
9 They have deeply corrupted themselves
as in the days of Gibeah;
He will remember their guilt;
He will punish their sins.

10 I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness.
I saw your fathers as the firstfruits
of the fig tree in its first season.
But they went to Baal-peor,
and consecrated themselves to Shame;
so they became as detestable
as the thing they loved.
11 Ephraim's glory will fly away like a bird,
with no birth, no pregnancy, and no conception.
12 Even if they raise their children,
I will bereave them of each one.
Yes, woe be to them
when I turn away from them!
13 I have seen Ephraim, like Tyre,
planted in a meadow.
But Ephraim will bring out
his children for slaughter.
14 Give them, O Yahweh—
what will You give?
Give them wombs that miscarry
and breasts that dry up!

15 All their evil appears at Gilgal,
for there I hated them.
I will drive them from My house
for the wickedness of their deeds.
I will no longer love them;
all their leaders are rebellious.
16 Ephraim is struck down;
their root is withered;
they cannot bear fruit.
Even if they bear children,
I will slay the darlings of their wombs.
17 My God will reject them
because they have not obeyed Him;
and they shall be wanderers
among the nations.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The richer Israel got, the more altars it built. The calf will be carried off to Assyria, and the people will beg the mountains to fall on them. Time to break up the hard ground and seek God.

RETRIBUTION FOR ISRAEL'S SIN

1 Israel was a luxuriant vine,
yielding fruit for himself.
The more his fruit increased,
the more he increased the altars.
The better his land produced,
the better he made the sacred pillars.
2 Their hearts are devious;
now they must bear their guilt.
Yahweh will break down their altars
and demolish their sacred pillars.

3 Surely now they will say,
"We have no king,
for we do not revere Yahweh.
What can a king do for us?"
4 They speak mere words;
with false oaths they make covenants.
So judgment springs up
like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field.

5 The people of Samaria will fear
for the calf of Beth-aven.
Indeed, its people will mourn over it
with its idolatrous priests—
those who rejoiced in its glory—
for it has been taken from them into exile.
6 Yes, it will be carried to Assyria
as tribute to the great king.
Ephraim will be seized with shame;
Israel will be ashamed of its wooden idols.
7 Samaria will be carried off with her king
like a twig on the surface of the water.
8 *The high places of Aven will be destroyed—*

HOS 9:10 [DEMONIC] Israel's fathers gave themselves to Baal at Peor
HOS 9:10 [NOTE] BAAL PEOR. Israel worshiped Baal at Peor on the way to the promised land, Numbers 25:1 to 3. Shame is a nickname for Baal.
HOS 9:14 [NOTE] HOSEA PRAYS. His own words, so they are black. Some hear mercy in it: better no children than children born for slaughter, 9:13.
HOS 9:17 [NOTE] HOSEA SPEAKS. My God is Hosea's own word, so this is black.
HOS 10:1 [DEMONIC] Israel builds more altars and sacred pillars as it grows rich
HOS 10:5 [DEMONIC] Samaria mourns as its calf idol is carried off to Assyria

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · PROPHETIC FORESHADOW · THE HEART · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · GOD SPEAKING

it is the sin of Israel;
thorns and thistles will overgrow their altars.
Then they will say to the mountains, "Cover us!"
and to the hills, "Fall on us!"

9 Since the days of Gibeah you have sinned, O Israel,
and there you have remained.
Did not the battle in Gibeah
overtake the sons of iniquity?
10 I will chasten them when I please;
nations will be gathered against them
to put them in bondage
for their double transgression.

11 Ephraim is a well-trained heifer that loves to thresh;
but I will place a yoke on her fair neck.
I will harness Ephraim, Judah will plow,
and Jacob will break the hard ground.
12 Sow for yourselves righteousness
and reap the fruit of loving devotion;
break up your unplowed ground.
For it is time to seek Yahweh
until He comes and sends righteousness
upon you like rain.

13 You have plowed wickedness and reaped injustice;
you have eaten the fruit of lies.
Because you have trusted in your own way
and in the multitude of your mighty men,
14 the roar of battle will rise against your people,
so that all your fortresses will be demolished
as Shalman devastated Beth-arbel
in the day of battle,
when mothers were dashed to pieces
along with their children.
15 Thus it will be done to you, O Bethel,
because of your great wickedness.
When the day dawns,
the king of Israel will be utterly cut off.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

God remembers teaching little Israel to walk. He called His son out of Egypt and led him with cords of love. How could I give you up? He asks. His heart will not let Him.

OUT OF EGYPT I CALLED MY SON // MATTHEW 2:13–15

1 *When Israel was a child, I loved him,*
and out of Egypt I called My son.
2 But the more I called Israel,
the farther they departed from Me.
They sacrificed to the Baals
and burned incense to carved images.
3 It was I who taught Ephraim to walk,
taking them by the arms,
but they never realized
that it was I who healed them.
4 I led them with cords of kindness,
with ropes of love;
I lifted the yoke from their necks
and bent down to feed them.

THE BIG QUESTION

HOW CAN MATTHEW USE HOSEA 11:1?

Out of Egypt I Called My Son

HOSEA 11:1 · MATTHEW 2:13 TO 15

THE PUZZLE

Hosea 11:1 looks back: When Israel was a child, I loved him, and out of Egypt I called My son. It is about the exodus. Yet Matthew says Jesus coming back from Egypt fulfilled it, Matthew 2:15.

ISRAEL IS GOD'S SON

God first called Israel My firstborn son

- **HOS 10:8 [FORESHADOW]** People would cry to the mountains, Cover us, and to the hills, Fall on us → LK 23:30; REV 6:16 · MEDIUM p.1690
- **HOS 10:8 [DEMONIC]** The idol shrines of Aven will be destroyed and overgrown
- **HOS 10:8 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 23:30 p.1690
- **HOS 10:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 6:16 p.2092
- **HOS 10:12 [HEART]** Hard ground has to be broken before seed can grow. A hard heart has to be broken open before God's word can take root.
- **HOS 10:12 [NOTE]** BREAK UP YOUR UNPLOWED GROUND. Hard ground must be broken before seed can grow. Jeremiah used the same words, Jeremiah 4:3.
- **HOS 10:14 [NOTE]** SHALMAN. Maybe the Assyrian king Shalmaneser, or a Moabite king named Salamanu. No one knows which battle at Beth Arbel this was.
- **HOS 11:1 [FORESHADOW]** He would be called out of Egypt → MT 2:15 p.1552
- **HOS 11:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 2:15 p.1552
- **HOS 11:1 [NOTE]** OUT OF EGYPT. See How Can Matthew Use Hosea 11:1?
- **HOS 11:2 [DEMONIC]** Israel sacrificed to the Baals and burned incense to carved images
- **HOS 11:3 [NOTABLE]** God as a parent teaching a toddler to walk. He leads with kindness, not chains.

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

when He sent Moses to Pharaoh, Exodus 4:22.

How It Has Been Read

EXODUS 4:22 · MATTHEW 3 TO 4 · MATTHEW 2:17 TO 18

VIEW 1: JESUS RELIVES ISRAEL'S STORY

Most Christian scholars say Matthew saw a pattern. Jesus goes down to Egypt and comes out, passes through water at His baptism, and is tested forty days in the wilderness, answering with Deuteronomy, Matthew 3 and 4. Where Israel failed, the true Son obeyed.

VIEW 2: HOSEA LOOKED AHEAD

Some note that Hosea speaks of a new exodus, 11:10 to 11, and of David their king, 3:5, so the son called out of Egypt also points ahead to the Messiah.

VIEW 3: FILLED FULL

In Matthew, fulfill can mean to fill up the meaning of a story, not only to make a prediction come true. Matthew uses Jeremiah 31:15 the same way, Matthew 2:17 to 18.

VIEW 4: A JEWISH WAY OF READING

Some scholars say Matthew read Scripture the way many Jews of his day did, finding new events in old words, like the Qumran commentaries. See The Hosea Scrolls.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Hosea 11:1 is about Israel at the exodus, and Matthew knew it. He saw Jesus as the Son who sums up Israel's whole story.

5 Will they not return to the land of Egypt
and be ruled by Assyria
because they refused to repent?
6 A sword will flash through their cities;
it will destroy the bars of their gates
and consume them in their own plans.
7 My people are bent on turning from Me.
Though they call to the Most High,
He will by no means exalt them.

GOD'S LOVE FOR ISRAEL

8 How could I give you up, O Ephraim?
How could I surrender you, O Israel?
How could I make you like Admah?
How could I treat you like Zeboiim?
My heart is turned within Me;
My compassion is stirred!
9 I will not execute the full fury of My anger;
I will not destroy Ephraim again.
For I am God and not man—
the Holy One among you—
and I will not come in wrath.
10 They will walk after Yahweh;
He will roar like a lion.
When He roars,
His children will come trembling from the west.
11 They will come trembling like birds from Egypt
and like doves from the land of Assyria.
Then I will settle them in their homes,
declares Yahweh.

12 Ephraim surrounds Me with lies,
the house of Israel with deceit;
but Judah still walks with God
and is faithful to the Holy One.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel is just like its ancestor Jacob, a grabber who had to wrestle with God. Ephraim brags about getting rich. God reminds them who brought them out of Egypt.

A REPROOF OF EPHRAIM, JUDAH, AND JACOB

1 Ephraim feeds on the wind
and pursues the east wind all day long;
he multiplies lies and violence;
he makes a covenant with Assyria
and sends olive oil to Egypt.
2 Yahweh has a charge to bring against Judah.
He will punish Jacob according to his ways
and repay him according to his deeds.
3 In the womb he grasped his brother's heel,
and in his vigor he wrestled with God.
4 Yes, he struggled with the angel and prevailed;

HOS 11:8 [HEART] God's own heart is turned within Him. His people deserve judgment, but His compassion will not let them go.

HOS 11:8 [NOTE] ADMAH AND ZEBOIIM. Two towns destroyed with Sodom and Gomorrah, Deuteronomy 29:23. God cannot bear to treat His people that way.

HOS 12:3 [NOTE] JACOB. Hosea retells Jacob's story, Genesis 25:26 and 32:24 to 30. These are Hosea's words, so they are black. Israel is just like its father: a grabber who still needs to wrestle with God.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

he wept and sought His favor;
he found Him at Bethel
and spoke with Him there—
5 Yahweh God of Hosts,
Yahweh is His name of renown.
6 But you must return to your God;
maintain love and justice,
and always wait on your God.

7 A merchant loves to defraud
with dishonest scales in his hands.
8 And Ephraim boasts: "How rich I have become!
I have found wealth for myself.
In all my labors, they can find in me
no iniquity that is sinful."

9 But I am Yahweh your God
ever since the land of Egypt.
I will again make you dwell in tents,
as in the days of the appointed feast.
10 I spoke through the prophets
and multiplied their visions;
I gave parables through the prophets.
11 Is there iniquity in Gilead?
They will surely come to nothing.
Do they sacrifice bulls in Gilgal?
Indeed, their altars will be heaps of stones
in the furrows of the field.

12 Jacob fled to the land of Aram
and Israel worked for a wife—
for a wife he tended sheep.
13 But by a prophet Yahweh brought Israel out of Egypt,
and by a prophet he was preserved.

14 Ephraim has provoked bitter anger,
so his Lord will leave his bloodguilt upon him
and repay him for his contempt.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel went from proud to dead through Baal. God will meet them like a lion, a leopard and a bear robbed of her cubs. Yet He asks, O Death, where are your plagues?

GOD'S ANGER AGAINST ISRAEL

1 When Ephraim spoke, there was trembling;
he was exalted in Israel.
But he incurred guilt through Baal,
and he died.

2 Now they sin more and more
and make for themselves cast images,
idols skillfully made from their silver,
all of them the work of craftsmen.
People say of them,
"They offer human sacrifice
and kiss the calves!"
3 Therefore they will be like the morning mist,
like the early dew that vanishes,
like chaff blown from a threshing floor,
like smoke through an open window.

4 Yet I am Yahweh your God
ever since the land of Egypt;
you know no God but Me,
for there is no Savior besides Me.
5 I knew you in the wilderness,
in the land of drought.
6 When they had pasture,
they became satisfied;
when they were satisfied,
their hearts became proud,
and as a result they forgot Me.
7 So like a lion I will pounce on them;
like a leopard I will lurk by the path.
8 Like a bear robbed of her cubs I will attack them,
and I will tear open the covering of their heart.
There I will devour them like a lion,
like a wild beast tearing them apart.

DEATH AND RESURRECTION // 1 CORINTHIANS 15:50–58

9 You are destroyed, O Israel,
because you are against Me—
against your helper.

10 Where is your king now
to save you in all your cities,

■ **HOS 12:9 [NOTE]** TENTS AGAIN. Like the Feast of Booths, when Israel lived in tents to remember the wilderness, Leviticus 23:42 to 43.
HOS 12:11 [DEMONIC] Israel sacrifices bulls at Gilgal on altars that will become rubble

HOS 13:1 [DEMONIC] Ephraim makes silver idols, offers human sacrifice, and kisses calves
■ **HOS 13:2 [TEXT]** HUMAN SACRIFICE? The Hebrew can mean they offer human sacrifice, or those who sacrifice. Either way, people kissed calves made by hands.
■ **HOS 13:8 [TEXT]** THE COVERING OF THEIR HEART. The Hebrew says the enclosure of their heart; the KJV says the caul of their heart.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE | GOD SPEAKING

and the rulers to whom you said,
"Give me a king and princes"?
11 So in My anger I gave you a king,
and in My wrath I took him away.

12 The iniquity of Ephraim is bound up;
his sin is stored up.
13 Labor pains come upon him,
but he is an unwise son.
When the time arrives,
he fails to present himself at the open-
ing of the womb.

14 *I will ransom them from the power of Sheol;*
I will redeem them from Death.
Where, O Death, are your plagues?
Where, O Sheol, is your sting?

Compassion is hidden from My eyes.

JUDGMENT ON SAMARIA

15 Although he flourishes among his broth-
ers,
an east wind will come—
a wind from Yahweh
rising up from the desert.
His fountain will fail,
and his spring will run dry.
The wind will plunder his treasury
of every precious article.

16 Samaria will bear her guilt
because she has rebelled against her
God.
They will fall by the sword;
their little ones will be dashed to pieces,
and their pregnant women ripped open.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS
The last call: come home. God will heal them and love them freely, and Israel will bloom like a lily.

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // JEREMIAH 3:11–25; ZECHARIAH 1:1–6

1 Return, O Israel, to Yahweh your God,
for you have stumbled by your iniquity.
2 Bring your confessions
and return to Yahweh.
Say to Him: "Take away all our iniquity
and receive us graciously,
that we may present
the fruit of our lips.
3 Assyria will not save us,
nor will we ride on horses.
We will never again say, 'Our gods!'
to the work of our own hands.
For in You the fatherless find compas-
sion."

A PROMISE OF GOD'S BLESSING

4 I will heal their apostasy;
I will freely love them,
for My anger has turned away from
them.
5 I will be like the dew to Israel;
he will blossom like the lily
and take root like the cedars of
Lebanon.
6 His shoots will sprout,
and his splendor will be like the olive
tree,
his fragrance like the cedars of
Lebanon.
7 They will return and dwell in his shade;
they will grow grain and blossom like
the vine.
His renown will be like the wine of
Lebanon.

8 O Ephraim, what have I to do
anymore with idols?
It is I who answer and watch over him.
I am like a flourishing cypress;
your fruit comes from Me.

9 Whoever is wise, let him understand
these things;
whoever is discerning, let him know
them.
For the ways of Yahweh are right,
and the righteous walk in them
but the rebellious stumble in them.

- **HOS 13:14 [PROPHECY]** He would defeat death → STILL TO COME
- **HOS 13:14 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → 1CO 15:54-55 p.1843
- **HOS 13:16 [PROPHECY]** Samaria would bear her guilt and her people would fall by the sword → 2KI 17:5-6; 2KI 18:9-11 p.635
- **HOS 13:16 [NOTE]** SAMARIA FALLS. Assyria took it in 722 BC, 2 Kings 17:5 to 6. See The Fall of Samaria, 2 Kings, p.637.
- **HOS 14:1 [NOTE]** RETURN. Hosea's last call, so the words are black.
- **HOS 14:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → HEB 13:15 p.1996
- **HOS 14:3 [DEMONIC]** Israel promises never again to call handmade things our gods
- **HOS 14:4 [NOTABLE]** The book ends with healing, not judgment. God's love is free, and it makes the people who return bloom again.
- **HOS 14:8 [DEMONIC]** God asks Ephraim what he has to do with idols anymore

BOOK 29 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

JOEL

Bugs, Then Blessings

AUTHOR	Joel son of Pethuel, 1:1. His name means Yahweh is God. That is all we know about him.
DATE	Not stated. Joel names no king. Dates from about 830 BC to about 350 BC have been suggested: see When Was Joel Written?
WRITTEN TO	Judah and Jerusalem: the elders, the farmers and the priests at the temple.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Joel is in a Qumran scroll of the Twelve Prophets copied before the time of Jesus, and in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat.
KEY VERSE	Joel 2:28. I will pour out My Spirit on all people.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF JOEL
Pieces of 4QXII c, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 75 BC. It holds parts of Joel and other prophets. The last part of Joel is also in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve found at Wadi Murabbaat. See The Murabbaat Scroll.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

A locust swarm strips the land bare: the fields, the vines, the fig trees, even the grain and wine for the temple offerings. Joel calls everyone, drunks, farmers and priests, to weep and fast. He sees the plague as a preview of a bigger day, the Day of Yahweh. Then God answers His people: He will drive the invader away, pay back the years the locusts ate, pour out His Spirit on all people, and judge the nations that hurt them.

What Went Wrong

A LAND STRIPPED BARE. Locusts ate everything, 1:4, and drought and fire finished the job, 1:19 to 20.
PARTY PEOPLE. The drunkards were the first to notice the wine was gone, 1:5.
TORN CLOTHES, NOT HEARTS. God wanted real repentance, not a show of grief, 2:13.
NATIONS THAT SOLD GOD'S PEOPLE. Tyre, Sidon and Philistia sold boys and girls of Judah as slaves, 3:3 to 6.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Joel starts with bugs. A plague of locusts has eaten the whole country, and Joel says this is a wake up call: the Day of Yahweh is coming, and it will be worse. But it is not too late. Return to Me with all your heart, says God. Then the book turns. God promises to pay back the years the locusts ate, to pour out His Spirit on every kind of person, and to judge the nations that hurt His people. Bugs, then blessings.

Joel at a Glance

CH 1	**THE LOCUST PLAGUE** Weep, fast and cry out to Yahweh.
CH 2:1 to 17	**THE DAY OF YAHWEH** An army like locusts, and a call to return.
CH 2:18 to 32	**THE ANSWER** Restoration and the Spirit poured out.
CH 3	**THE VALLEY OF JEHOSHAPHAT** The nations judged, God's people blessed.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JOEL 2:28 TO 29 I will pour out My Spirit on all people. Peter says this happened at Pentecost, after Jesus rose and went to heaven, Acts 2:16 to 21 and 2:33.

JOEL 2:32 Everyone who calls on the name of Yahweh will be saved. Paul applies it to calling on Jesus as Lord, Romans 10:9 to 13.

JOEL 2:31 The sun dark and the moon blood. Jesus spoke of signs in the sun and moon before He returns, Matthew 24:29.

JOEL 3:13 Swing the sickle, for the harvest is ripe. Revelation pictures Christ's final harvest of the earth, Revelation 14:14 to 20.

THE DAY OF YAHWEH
The day God steps in to judge and to save, 1:15 and 2:31.

THE VALLEY OF DECISION
Joel's other name for the Valley of Jehoshaphat, 3:14.

What to Watch for in Joel

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (1)	2:32
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	2:28-29
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (1)	3:7-8
END TIMES PROPHECIES (3)	2:30-31, 3:1-2, 3:12-16
THE HEART (2)	2:12-13
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	1:4, 2:20
NOTABLE (2)	1:3, 2:25-27
GOD SPEAKING (32 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (0 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE SPIRIT FOR EVERYONE
In the Old Testament the Spirit came on a few, like prophets and kings. Joel promised Him to sons and daughters, old and young, even servants.

BEST KNOWN AT PENTECOST
Joel is the prophet Peter quoted in the very first Christian sermon, Acts 2.

A REAL PLAGUE IN 1915
Locusts swept through the same land in 1915, climbing walls and crawling through windows just as Joel described. See The Locust Plague of 1915.

A BORROWED LINE
Joel 2:13 echoes God's own description of Himself to Moses, Exodus 34:6: gracious and compassionate, slow to anger. Jonah uses the same line, Jonah 4:2.

How Does It End?

With a promise: Judah will be lived in forever, and Yahweh will live in Zion with His people, 3:20 to 21. The book that began with nothing left to eat ends with mountains dripping with sweet wine, 3:18.

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Locusts. Billions of them. Wave after wave eats the crops, the vines and even the bark off the trees. Joel tells the drunks to cry, the farmers to cry and the priests to cry, because the Day of Yahweh is coming.

THE INVASION OF LOCUSTS

1 This is the word of Yahweh that came to
Joel son of Pethuel:

2 Hear this, O elders;
and give ear, all who dwell in the land.
Has anything like this ever happened in
your days
or in the days of your fathers?
3 Tell it to your children;
let your children tell it to their children,
and their children to the next genera-
tion.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS JOEL WRITTEN?

A Book With No Date

JOEL 1:1 · 1:13 TO 14 · 3:1 TO 6

WHY IT IS A QUESTION

Most prophets name the king of their day. Joel names none. So scholars look for clues: who leads the people, which enemies are named, and which other prophets Joel sounds like.

Every View

2 KINGS 11 TO 12 · OBADIAH 1:17 · AMOS 1:2

VIEW 1: ABOUT 830 BC

Many older scholars put Joel in the days of young King Joash, when the priest Jehoiada ran the country, 2 Kings 11 to 12. That would explain why elders and priests lead and no king is named. The enemies are Tyre, Sidon, Philistia, Egypt and Edom, not Assyria or Babylon. And Joel sits among the early prophets in the Hebrew Bible.

VIEW 2: AFTER THE EXILE

Many modern scholars date it about 500 to 350 BC. The temple stands, there is no king, the Greeks are named as slave traders, 3:6, and 3:1 speaks of God restoring Judah, words that can point back to the exile. Joel also seems to quote other prophets, like Obadiah 1:17 in 2:32.

VIEW 3: JUST BEFORE THE EXILE

Some place Joel about 600 BC, near the time of Jeremiah and Zephaniah, who also warn of the Day of Yahweh.

THE BORROWING QUESTION

Joel and Amos share a line, Yahweh roars from Zion, Joel 3:16 and Amos 1:2. Early date scholars say Amos borrowed from Joel; late date scholars say Joel borrowed from Amos.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The date does not change the message. Disaster is a call to come back to God, and God answers with mercy.

4 What the devouring locust has left,
the swarming locust has eaten;
what the swarming locust has left,
the young locust has eaten;
and what the young locust has left,
the destroying locust has eaten.

5 Wake up, you drunkards, and weep;
wail, all you drinkers of wine,
because of the sweet wine,
for it has been cut off from your mouth.
6 For a nation has invaded My land,
powerful and without number;
its teeth are the teeth of a lion,
and its fangs are the fangs of a lioness.
7 It has laid waste My grapevine
and splintered My fig tree.
It has stripped off the bark and thrown it
away;
the branches have turned white.

- **JOEL 1:1 [NOTE]** JOEL. His name means Yahweh is God. We know nothing else about him but his father's name.
- **JOEL 1:3 [NOTABLE]** What God does, and what He teaches us through hard times, is meant to be passed down from one generation to the next.
- **JOEL 1:3 [NOTE]** TELL YOUR CHILDREN. A disaster to remember for generations, and a lesson to pass on.
- **JOEL 1:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** An Assyrian palace relief from Nineveh shows servants carrying locusts on sticks to a royal feast, see Locusts on a Stick Field Notes box, p.1377 FIELD NOTES p.1377
- **JOEL 1:4 [TEXT]** FOUR KINDS OF LOCUSTS. Joel uses four Hebrew words for locusts. They may be different kinds, or stages of one locust's life, or just a way to say wave after wave.
- **JOEL 1:5 [NOTE]** WAKE UP, YOU DRUNKARDS. The first ones to notice: no grapes, no wine.
- **JOEL 1:6 [NOTE]** MY LAND, MY VINE. God Himself breaks in to speak of His land, so these lines are red, like 2:1, My holy mountain. The nation is the locust swarm.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

LOCUSTS ON A STICK

JOEL 1:4 · LEVITICUS 11:22 · MATTHEW 3:4



Servants carrying locusts on sticks and pomegranates, a drawing of a palace relief from Nineveh, from Layard's book Nineveh and Babylon, 1853. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A carved stone panel from an Assyrian palace at Nineveh. Servants carry food to a royal feast: strings of pomegranates and locusts stuck on sticks.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 700 BC, in the time of King Sennacherib. The drawing is from the book of Austen Henry Layard, who dug it up between 1847 and 1851.

LOCUSTS AS FOOD

People in the ancient Near East ate locusts. The law of Moses allowed four kinds, Leviticus 11:22, and John the Baptist lived on locusts and wild honey, Matthew 3:4.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Locusts were part of daily life, as food on a good day and as a disaster on a bad one. In Joel the locusts eat the people's food.

SEE ALSO

The Locust Plague of 1915, in this book.

A CALL TO MOURNING

8 Wail like a virgin dressed in sackcloth,
grieving for the husband of her youth.
9 Grain and drink offerings have been cut off
from the house of Yahweh;
the priests are in mourning,
those who minister before Yahweh.
10 The field is ruined;
the land mourns.
For the grain is destroyed,
the new wine is dried up, and the oil fails.
11 Be dismayed, O farmers,
wail, O vinedressers,
over the wheat and barley,
because the harvest of the field has perished.
12 The grapevine is dried up,
and the fig tree is withered;
the pomegranate, palm, and apple—
all the trees of the orchard—are withered.
Surely the joy of mankind has dried up.

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // AMOS 5:4–15; ZEPHANIAH 2:1–3; LUKE 13:1–5

13 Put on sackcloth and lament, O priests;
wail, O ministers of the altar.
Come, spend the night in sackcloth,
O ministers of my God,
because the grain and drink offerings
are withheld from the house of your God.
14 Consecrate a fast;
proclaim a solemn assembly!
Gather the elders
and all the residents of the land
to the house of Yahweh your God,
and cry out to Yahweh.

15 Alas for the day!
For the Day of Yahweh is near,
and it will come
as destruction from the Almighty.
16 Has not the food been cut off

■ **JOEL 1:15 [NOTE]** THE DAY OF YAHWEH. The day God steps in to judge. Joel names it five times.

GOD SPEAKING

before our very eyes—
joy and gladness
from the house of our God?
17 The seeds lie shriveled beneath the clods;
the storehouses are in ruins;
the granaries are broken down,
for the grain has withered away.
18 How the cattle groan!
The herds wander in confusion
because they have no pasture.
Even the flocks of sheep are suffering.

19 To You, O Yahweh, I call,
for fire has consumed the open pastures
and flames have scorched all the trees of the field.
20 Even the beasts of the field pant for You,
for the streams of water have dried up,
and fire has consumed the open pastures.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The locusts march like an army, climbing walls and crawling in through windows. Then God says it is not too late: return to Me with all your heart. He promises to pay back the years the locusts ate and to pour out His Spirit on everyone.

THE ARMY OF LOCUSTS // AMOS 7:1–9

1 Blow the ram's horn in Zion;
sound the alarm on My holy mountain!
Let all who dwell in the land tremble,
for the Day of Yahweh is coming;
indeed, it is near—
2 a day of darkness and gloom,
a day of clouds and blackness.
Like the dawn overspreading the mountains
a great and strong army appears,
such as never was of old,
nor will ever be in ages to come.

3 Before them a fire devours,
and behind them a flame scorches.
The land before them is like the Garden of Eden,
but behind them, it is like a desert wasteland—
surely nothing will escape them.
4 Their appearance is like that of horses,
and they gallop like swift steeds.
5 With a sound like that of chariots
they bound over the mountaintops,
like the crackling of fire consuming stubble,
like a mighty army deployed for battle.

6 Nations writhe in horror before them;
every face turns pale.
7 They charge like mighty men;
they scale the walls like men of war.
Each one marches in formation,
not swerving from the course.
8 They do not jostle one another;
each proceeds in his path.
They burst through the defenses,
never breaking ranks.
9 They storm the city;
they run along the wall;
they climb into houses,
entering through windows like thieves.

10 Before them the earth quakes;
the heavens tremble.
The sun and moon grow dark,
and the stars lose their brightness.
11 Yahweh raises His voice
in the presence of His army.
Indeed, His camp is very large,
for mighty are those who obey His command.
For the Day of Yahweh is great and very dreadful.
Who can endure it?

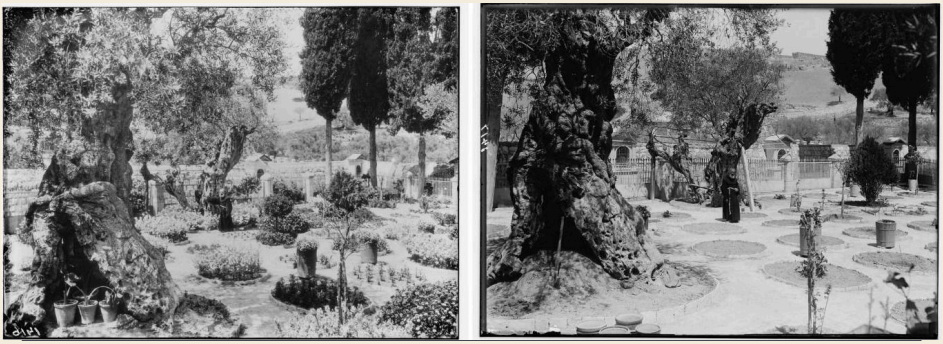
■ **JOEL 1:19 [NOTE]** JOEL PRAYS. His own words to God, so they are black.

■ **JOEL 2:3 [NOTE]** LIKE EDEN, THEN A DESERT. See The Locust Plague of 1915.
■ **JOEL 2:9 [NOTE]** THROUGH THE WINDOWS. People who lived through the 1915 plague in Jerusalem saw locusts do exactly this.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE LOCUST PLAGUE OF 1915

JOEL 1:4 · 2:3 TO 10 · 2:25



The Garden of Gethsemane in Jerusalem before and after the locusts of 1915. American Colony photographers, Library of Congress, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

Photographs of a real locust plague that hit the land of Israel, then part of the Ottoman Empire, in 1915. Photographers of the American Colony in Jerusalem recorded it from the first swarms to the bare fields.

HOW OLD IT IS

Not ancient: 1915, during World War I. It is here because it shows, in our own times, what Joel saw.

WHAT HAPPENED

In the spring of 1915 huge swarms flew in and darkened the sun. They laid eggs, and the young locusts that hatched marched across the land, eating everything green and stripping the bark off trees.

JUST LIKE JOEL

The young locusts marched in straight lines, climbed walls and went into houses through the windows, the way Joel 2:7 to 9 says. Trees were left white, as in 1:7. John Whiting of the American Colony wrote about it in National Geographic and quoted Joel.

FIGHTING BACK

The Ottoman governor ordered every man from 15 to 60 to bring in about 44 pounds of locust eggs or pay a fine. It was not enough.

WHAT IT COST

Most of that year's fruit and vegetables were lost. With the war already cutting off food, many people in the land went hungry.

THE DESERT LOCUST

A kind of grasshopper that changes when crowded: it turns color and starts to swarm. The United Nations food agency says a swarm one square kilometer in size can eat as much food in a day as about 35,000 people.

LOCUSTS IN THE BIBLE

Locusts were the eighth plague on Egypt, Exodus 10:12 to 15. Solomon prayed about them when he dedicated the temple, 1 Kings 8:37, and Amos saw them in a vision, Amos 7:1 to 3.

WHY GETHSEMANE

The photos show the old olive garden at the foot of the Mount of Olives, where Jesus prayed the night before He died. Same trees, same spot, before and after.

WHERE THE PHOTOS ARE

The American Colony photos are kept in the Library of Congress, in the Matson Collection, and anyone can see them online.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Joel was not writing fantasy. A locust army can turn a garden like Eden into a desert, Joel 2:3, as the photos of Gethsemane show.

SEE ALSO

Locusts on a Stick, in this book, and Real Locusts or an Army?

THE HEART · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

REAL LOCUSTS OR AN army?

What Did Joel See?

JOEL 1:4 TO 7 · 2:1 TO 11 · 2:20 · 2:25

THE PUZZLE

Chapter 1 is clearly about locusts. Chapter 2 describes an army that looks like horses, charges like soldiers, scales walls and enters houses, and God calls it His army, 2:11 and 2:25. Is it the same locusts, or something else?

Every View

REVELATION 9:1 TO 11 · ISAIAH 13:6 TO 10

VIEW 1: REAL LOCUSTS BOTH TIMES

Chapter 2 uses like again and again: like horses, like mighty men. Joel is comparing the locusts to an army. People who saw the 1915 plague said the young locusts moved exactly this way.

VIEW 2: CHAPTER 2 IS A HUMAN ARMY

Some say the northern army, 2:20, means an invader from the north, like Assyria or Babylon, since locusts usually came from the south or east. The locusts of chapter 1 were the warning; the army was coming next.

VIEW 3: BOTH

Many say the real locust plague is a preview of a coming invasion and of the great Day of Yahweh. One disaster points to a bigger one.

VIEW 4: THE END TIMES

Some connect Joel's army with the locusts from the abyss in Revelation 9:1 to 11 and with the armies of the last days.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God is in charge even of disasters, and He uses them to call people back to Himself. And He promises to pay back what was lost, 2:25.

RETURN WITH ALL YOUR HEART

12 "Yet even now,"
declares Yahweh,
"return to Me with all your heart,
with fasting, weeping, and mourning."

13 So rend your hearts and not your garments,
and return to Yahweh your God.
For He is gracious and compassionate,
slow to anger, abounding in loving devotion.
And He relents from sending disaster.
14 Who knows? He may turn and relent
and leave a blessing behind Him—
grain and drink offerings
for Yahweh your God.

15 Blow the ram's horn in Zion,
consecrate a fast,
proclaim a sacred assembly.
16 Gather the people, sanctify the congregation,
assemble the aged, gather the children,
even those nursing at the breast.
Let the bridegroom leave his room,
and the bride her chamber.
17 Let the priests who minister before Yahweh
weep between the portico and the altar,
saying, "Spare Your people, O Yahweh,
and do not make Your heritage a reproach,
an object of scorn among the nations.
Why should they say among the peoples,
'Where is their God?'"

RESTORATION PROMISED

18 Then Yahweh became jealous for His land,
and He spared His people.

19 And Yahweh answered His people:

"Behold, I will send you
grain, new wine, and oil,
and by them you will be satisfied.
I will never again make you
a reproach among the nations.

20 The northern army I will drive away from you,
banishing it to a barren and desolate land,

- **JOEL 2:12 [HEART]** Even now, after the disaster, God says come back with your whole heart. It is never too late to return.
- **JOEL 2:12 [NOTE]** EVEN NOW. It is never too late to come back to God.
- **JOEL 2:13 [HEART]** Tear your hearts, not your clothes. God wants real repentance, not a show.
- **JOEL 2:13 [NOTE]** REND YOUR HEARTS. People tore their clothes to show grief. God wants a torn heart, not torn clothes. Most of the rest of the verse echoes God's own words to Moses, Exodus 34:6.
- **JOEL 2:14 [NOTE]** WHO KNOWS? The king of Nineveh said the same words, Jonah 3:9.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE MURABBAAT SCROLL

JOEL 2:20 TO 3:16 · AMOS TO ZECHARIAH



Nahal Darga, called Wadi Murabbaat in Arabic, the canyon in the Judean Desert where the caves are. The scroll itself is not shown. Photo Ester Inbar, free with credit.

WHAT IT IS

A Hebrew scroll of the Twelve Prophets, called Mur 88, found in a cave in Wadi Murabbaat, a canyon in the Judean Desert south of Qumran. It holds parts of ten of the twelve books, starting in Joel 2:20.

HOW OLD IT IS

Copied in the late first or early second century AD, not long after the time of the apostles.

HOW IT WAS FOUND

Bedouin found it in 1955 in one of the caves where Jews had hidden during the Bar Kokhba revolt against Rome, AD 132 to 135. Nearby caves in the same canyon held letters signed by Simon bar Kosiba, the leader of the revolt.

WHAT IS IN IT

Pieces of Joel, 2:20 and 2:26 to 3:16, then Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai and the start of Zechariah, in the same order as Hebrew Bibles today.

WHAT THE TEXT SHOWS

The words are almost exactly the same as the Hebrew text used today, the Masoretic text, letter for letter in most places. By then Jewish scribes were copying one standard text with great care.

THE OLDER COPIES

Older Qumran copies of the Twelve, from before the time of Jesus, hold pieces of Joel too. See The Hosea Scrolls, Hosea, p.1360.

THE CAVES

The caves sit high in the cliffs of the canyon, about eleven miles south of Qumran. Archaeologists Roland de Vaux and Lankester Harding explored them in 1952. People had sheltered there from the Stone Age to Roman times.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Antiquities Authority keeps it in Jerusalem.

WHY IT MATTERS

Refugees fleeing for their lives probably took this scroll with them into the desert. It shows how much the people valued the prophets, and how carefully the words were kept.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | ARCHAEOLOGY
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW | NOTABLE | GOD SPEAKING

its front ranks into the Eastern Sea,
and its rear guard into the Western Sea.
And its stench will rise;
its foul odor will ascend.

For He has done great things.

21 Do not be afraid, O land;
rejoice and be glad,
for Yahweh has done great things.
22 Do not be afraid, O beasts of the field,
for the open pastures have turned green,
the trees bear their fruit,
and the fig tree and vine yield their best.
23 Be glad, O children of Zion,
and rejoice in Yahweh your God,
for He has given you the autumn rains
for your vindication.
He sends you showers,
both autumn and spring rains, as before.
24 The threshing floors will be full of grain,
and the vats will overflow with new wine and oil.

25 I will repay you for the years eaten by locusts—
the swarming locust, the young locust,
the destroying locust, and the devouring locust—
My great army that I sent against you.
26 You will have plenty to eat,
until you are satisfied.
You will praise the name of Yahweh your God,
who has worked wonders for you.
My people will never again
be put to shame.
27 Then you will know that I am present in Israel
and that I am Yahweh your God,
and there is no other.
My people will never again
be put to shame.

I WILL POUR OUT MY SPIRIT // ACTS 2:14–36

28 *And afterward, I will pour out My Spirit on all people.*
Your sons and daughters will prophesy,
your old men will dream dreams,
your young men will see visions.
29 *Even on My menservants and maidservants,*
I will pour out My Spirit in those days.
30 *I will show wonders in the heavens and on the earth,*
blood and fire and columns of smoke.
31 *The sun will be turned to darkness*
and the moon to blood
before the coming of the great and awesome Day of Yahweh.
32 *And everyone who calls on the name of Yahweh*
will be saved;
for on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem
there will be deliverance, as Yahweh has promised,
among the remnant called by Yahweh.

- **JOEL 2:20 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from a Bar Kokhba refugee cave holds parts of Joel from this verse to 3:16, see The Murabbaat Scroll Field Notes page, p.1381 FIELD NOTES p.1381
- **JOEL 2:20 [NOTE]** THE NORTHERN ARMY. Locusts usually came from the south or east, so some think Joel means an army from the north too. See Real Locusts or an Army?
- **JOEL 2:23 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 5:7 p.2007
- **JOEL 2:25 [NOTABLE]** God can restore what was lost. Wasted years are not the end of the story when people return to Him.
- **JOEL 2:25 [NOTE]** THE YEARS THE LOCUSTS ATE. God can give back what was lost. He even calls the locusts My great army: He was in charge of them too.
- **JOEL 2:28 [PROPHECY]** I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh; your sons and daughters shall prophesy → ACTS 2:16-18; TIT 3:6 p.1741
- **JOEL 2:28 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 2:17-21 p.1741
- **JOEL 2:28 [TEXT]** VERSE NUMBERS. In Hebrew Bibles 2:28 to 32 is chapter 3, and our chapter 3 is chapter 4. The words are the same.
- **JOEL 2:28 [NOTE]** ALL PEOPLE. Sons and daughters, old and young, even servants. Peter quoted almost all of 2:28 to 32 on the day of Pentecost, Acts 2:16 to 21. See Did Pentecost Fulfill Joel 2?
- **JOEL 2:30 [PROPHECY]** God would show wonders in the sky, and the sun would turn dark and the moon to blood before the Day of Yahweh → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **JOEL 2:32 [PROPHECY]** Salvation offered to all mankind through His name → ROM 10:9-13; ACTS 2:21 p.1812
- **JOEL 2:32 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 10:13 p.1812
- **JOEL 2:32 [NOTE]** EVERYONE WHO CALLS. Paul quotes this to say anyone, Jew or Gentile, can be saved by calling on the Lord, Romans 10:13.

END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

THE BIG QUESTION

DID PENTECOST FULFILL JOEL 2?

This Is What Joel Said

JOEL 2:28 TO 32 · ACTS 2:1 TO 21

WHAT PETER SAID

On the day of Pentecost the Holy Spirit came on Jesus' followers, and they spoke in other languages. People thought they were drunk. Peter stood up and said, This is what was spoken by the prophet Joel, and quoted 2:28 to 32, Acts 2:16 to 21.

IN THE LAST DAYS

Joel says afterward. Peter says in the last days, Acts 2:17. The first Christians believed the last days began with Jesus.

How It Has Been Read

ACTS 10:44 TO 45 · MATTHEW 24:29 · REVELATION 6:12

FIRST: FULFILLED AT PENTECOST

Most Christians say Pentecost was the fulfillment Joel promised: the Spirit poured out on men and women, young and old. It kept spreading, to Samaritans and then to Gentiles, Acts 8 and 10:44 to 45. Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord can be saved, Acts 2:21.

THE SUN AND THE MOON

Some say the signs in the sky are picture language for a world shaking event, like the darkness at the cross, Luke 23:44 to 45. Others say those signs are still to come before Jesus returns, Matthew 24:29 and Revelation 6:12.

BEGUN, NOT FINISHED

Many say Pentecost began the fulfillment, and the last part, the great and awesome day, comes at the end.

A FUTURE OUTPOURING ON ISRAEL

Some, especially dispensational teachers, say Joel's promise will be fully kept when Israel as a nation turns to the Lord, Zechariah 12:10.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Peter said this is that. God keeps His promises, and His Spirit is for every kind of person who calls on Him.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

God calls the nations to the Valley of Jehoshaphat for judgment. Swords instead of plowshares this time. But for His people the ending is sweet: mountains dripping with wine, hills flowing with milk, and God living in Zion.

YAHWEH JUDGES THE NATIONS

1 "Yes, in those days and at that time,
when I restore Judah and Jerusalem
from captivity,
2 I will gather all the nations
and bring them down to the Valley of
Jehoshaphat.
There I will enter into judgment against
them
concerning My people, My inheritance,
Israel,
whom they have scattered among the na-
tions
as they divided up My land.
3 They cast lots for My people;
they bartered a boy for a prostitute
and sold a girl for wine to drink.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE VALLEY OF JEHOSHAPHAT

Where the Nations Are Judged

JOEL 3:2 · 3:12 TO 16

WHAT JOEL SAYS

God will gather all the nations and bring them down to the Valley of Jehoshaphat and judge them for what they did to His people, 3:2 and 3:12. Joel also calls it the valley of decision, 3:14.

THE NAME

Jehoshaphat means Yahweh judges. No valley is called this anywhere else in the Old Testament.

JOEL 3:1 [PROPHECY] I will gather all nations, and bring them down to the Valley of Jehoshaphat; I will enter into judgment with them → STILL TO COME

JOEL 3:2 [NOTE] THE VALLEY OF JEHOSHAPHAT. The name means Yahweh judges. See The Valley of Jehoshaphat.

JOEL 3:3 [NOTE] A BOY FOR A PROSTITUTE. The nations treated God's people as cheap goods, trading children for a night out or a drink.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · GOD SPEAKING

How It Has Been Read

ZECHARIAH 14:2 TO 4 · REVELATION 14:14 TO 20 · REVELATION 16:14 TO 16

FIRST: THE END TIMES

Many Christians read it as the final battle and judgment, when the nations gather against Jerusalem and the Lord comes, Zechariah 14:2 to 4. Revelation uses Joel's pictures, the sickle and the winepress, Revelation 14:14 to 20, and gathers the kings for battle at Armageddon, Revelation 16:14 to 16. Many link Jesus' words about judging the nations, Matthew 25:31 to 32.

WHERE IS IT?

Since the 300s AD, people have placed it in the Kidron Valley between Jerusalem and the Mount of Olives. Tens of thousands of Jewish graves cover the Mount of Olives, and Muslim graves line the city wall across the valley, waiting for the judgment and the rising of the dead.

OTHER VIEWS

Some say it is a symbolic name, the place where Yahweh judges, not a spot on a map. Others link it to the valley where King Jehoshaphat saw God win a battle without a fight, 2 Chronicles 20:22 to 26. Some see it fulfilled in God's judgments on Tyre, Philistia, Egypt and Edom long ago.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God sees how the nations treat His people, and He will judge with justice. But Yahweh will be a refuge for His people, 3:16.

4 Now what do you have against Me, O
Tyre, Sidon, and all the regions of Philistia? Are you rendering against Me a recompense? If you retaliate against Me, I will
swiftly and speedily return your recompense upon your heads. 5 For you took My
silver and gold and carried off My finest
treasures to your temples. 6 You sold the
people of Judah and Jerusalem to the
Greeks, to send them far from their homeland.

7 Behold, I will rouse them from the places
to which you sold them; I will return your
recompense upon your heads. 8 I will sell
your sons and daughters into the hands of
the people of Judah, and they will sell
them to the Sabeans—to a distant nation."
Indeed, Yahweh has spoken.

9 Proclaim this among the nations:

"Prepare for war;
rouse the mighty men;
let all the men of war
advance and attack!
10 Beat your plowshares into swords
and your pruning hooks into spears.
Let the weak say, 'I am strong!'
11 Come quickly, all you surrounding nations,
and gather yourselves.
Bring down Your mighty ones,
O Yahweh.

12 Let the nations be roused
and advance to the Valley of Jehoshaphat,
for there I will sit down
to judge all the nations on every side.
13 Swing the sickle,
for the harvest is ripe.
Come, trample the grapes,
for the winepress is full;
the wine vats overflow
because their wickedness is great.

14 Multitudes, multitudes
in the valley of decision!
For the Day of Yahweh is near
in the valley of decision.

- **JOEL 3:4 [NOTE]** TYRE AND SIDON. Alexander the Great took Tyre in 332 BC and sold about 30,000 of its people as slaves. See Tyre and the Causeway, Ezekiel, p.1285.
- **JOEL 3:6 [NOTE]** THE GREEKS. Greek traders dealt in slaves with Tyre, Ezekiel 27:13.
- **JOEL 3:7 [PROPHECY]** The cities that sold Judah as slaves would have their own sons and daughters sold → HISTORY: Alexander the Great sold about 30,000 people of Tyre as slaves in 332 BC. Persia had destroyed Sidon about 345 BC. Recorded by Arrian, Anabasis 2.24, and Diodorus 16.45. · MEDIUM
- **JOEL 3:10 [NOTE]** PLOWSHARES INTO SWORDS. The opposite of Isaiah 2:4 and Micah 4:3. Before the peace comes the final battle.
- **JOEL 3:11 [NOTE]** BRING DOWN YOUR MIGHTY ONES. Joel's own prayer breaks in, so these words are black.
- **JOEL 3:12 [PROPHECY]** Beat your plowshares into swords; multitudes in the valley of decision, for the day of Yahweh is near → STILL TO COME
- **JOEL 3:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 14:19-20 p.2104
- **JOEL 3:13 [NOTE]** SWING THE SICKLE. Revelation uses the same harvest and winepress pictures for the final judgment, Revelation 14:15 to 20.
- **JOEL 3:14 [NOTE]** THE VALLEY OF DECISION. Most read it as God's decision, His verdict on the nations, not people deciding.

END TIMES PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

15 The sun and moon will grow dark,
and the stars will no longer shine.
16 Yahweh will roar from Zion
and raise His voice from Jerusalem;
heaven and earth will tremble.
But Yahweh will be a refuge for His peo-
ple,
a stronghold for the people of Israel.

BLESSINGS FOR GOD'S PEOPLE

17 Then you will know that I am Yahweh
your God,
who dwells in Zion, My holy mountain.
Jerusalem will be holy,
never again to be overrun by foreigners.

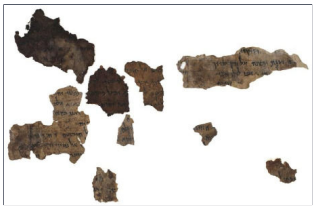
18 And in that day the mountains will drip
with sweet wine,
and the hills will flow with milk.
All the streams of Judah will run with wa-
ter,
and a spring will flow from the house of
Yahweh
to water the Valley of Acacias.
19 Egypt will become desolate,
and Edom a desert wasteland,
because of the violence done to the peo-
ple of Judah,
in whose land they shed innocent blood.
20 But Judah will be inhabited forever,
and Jerusalem from generation to gen-
eration.
21 For I will avenge their blood,
which I have not yet avenged."
For Yahweh dwells in Zion.

JOEL 3:18 [NOTE] A SPRING FROM THE HOUSE OF YAHWEH. Ezekiel saw a river flow from the temple too, Ezekiel 47:1 to 12, and Zechariah saw living water flow out from Jerusalem, 14:8.

AMOS

Rich People, Hear This

AUTHOR	Amos, a sheep breeder and fig grower from Tekoa in Judah, 1:1 and 7:14. God sent him north to Israel.
DATE	About 760 to 750 BC, in the days of King Uzziah of Judah and King Jeroboam II of Israel, two years before the earthquake, 1:1.
WRITTEN TO	Israel, the northern kingdom: the rich in Samaria and the worshipers at Bethel. The nations around hear their own warnings first.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Amos is in Qumran scrolls of the Twelve Prophets and in a small Amos scroll from Qumran Cave 5, copied before or about the time of Jesus, and in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat.
KEY VERSE	Amos 5:24. Let justice roll on like a river, and righteousness like an ever flowing stream.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF AMOS
Pieces of 4QXII g, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied in the last years before Jesus. It holds more of Amos than any other Qumran copy, though the plate does not mark which pieces are Amos. Amos is also in 4QXII c, in a small Amos scroll from Cave 5, and in the Murabbaat scroll of the Twelve.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Israel has never had it so good. King Jeroboam II has won back land, and the rich build winter houses and summer houses with ivory inside. Worship is booming at Bethel and Gilgal. But the poor are being sold for a pair of sandals, judges take bribes, and merchants cheat with false scales. God sends a farmer from Judah to tell the party it is over.

What Went Wrong

CRUSHING THE POOR. They sold the needy, trampled the poor and cheated in the market, 2:6 to 7, 4:1 and 8:4 to 6.
BRIBES IN COURT. Judges took bribes and turned justice into poison, 5:10 to 12 and 6:12.
WORSHIP WITHOUT JUSTICE. Busy feasts and songs, but God said I hate them, 4:4 to 5 and 5:21 to 23.
IDOLS AND STAR GODS. Sakkuth and Kaiwan, 5:26, and the calf at Dan, 8:14. The Greek Bible reads Moloch in 5:26, the god of child sacrifice, and Stephen quotes it that way, Acts 7:43.
SHUSHING THE PROPHETS. They told the prophets not to prophesy, 2:12 and 7:12 to 13.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Amos is the farmer who crashed the party. Israel was rich, religious and sure that God was on its side. Amos starts by condemning the nations around them, and the crowd cheers.

Then he turns on Judah, and then on Israel itself. God is not impressed by songs and sacrifices from people who sell the poor for sandals. What He wants is justice rolling on like a river. After locusts, fire, a plumb line and a basket of fruit, the book ends with a promise: God will rebuild the fallen tent of David.

Amos at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**THE NATIONS ON TRIAL** For three sins, even four: seven nations, then Israel.
CH 3 to 6	**HEAR THIS WORD** Israel's sins and a funeral song.
CH 7:1 to 9:10	**FIVE VISIONS** Locusts, fire, a plumb line, summer fruit, the Lord at the altar.
CH 9:11 to 15	**THE TENT REBUILT** David's house restored and the land made fruitful.

Where Jesus Shows Up

AMOS 9:11 TO 12 I will restore the fallen tent of David. James quotes it at the Jerusalem council to show that Gentiles are welcome in God's people through Jesus, Acts 15:13 to 18.

AMOS 5:25 TO 27 Stephen quotes Amos to show that Israel turned to idols even in the wilderness, Acts 7:42 to 43.

AMOS 8:9 TO 10 The sun going down at noon and mourning for an only son. Many Christians think of the darkness from noon until three, when Jesus, God's only Son, died, Matthew 27:45 to 50. Others read it only as judgment on Israel.

AMOS 5:24 Justice and righteousness. Jesus said the weightier matters of the law are justice, mercy and faithfulness, Matthew 23:23.

THE GOD OF HOSTS
Yahweh, commander of heaven's armies. Amos uses the title again and again.

THE DAY OF YAHWEH
The day God steps in to judge, darkness and not light, 5:18 to 20.

What to Watch for in Amos

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (1)	9:11-12
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	8:9
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (6)	1:3-5, 2:5, 3:14, 5:27, 7:9, 7:17
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	5:18-20
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (5)	1:6-15, 2:1-3
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	9:13-15
THE HEART (1)	2:16
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	1:1, 3:15
DEMONIC (6)	2:4, 2:9, 4:4-5, 5:5, 5:25-26, 8:14
NOTABLE (6)	3:3, 3:7, 4:12, 5:14-15, 5:24, 8:11
GOD SPEAKING (97 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (3 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

A FARMER, NOT A PREACHER
Amos says he was not a prophet or the son of a prophet, just a herdsman and fig grower God took from the flock, 7:14 to 15.

THE TRAP
Amos lists Israel's enemies one by one, and then the eighth nation on the list is Israel itself, 2:6.

A FAMOUS LINE
Martin Luther King Jr. quoted Amos 5:24 in his I Have a Dream speech: until justice rolls down like waters.

THE EARTHQUAKE
Amos dated his book by an earthquake, 1:1, and Zechariah still remembered it about 250 years later, Zechariah 14:5. See Amos's Earthquake.

How Does It End?

About 30 to 40 years after Amos, Assyria destroyed Samaria and carried Israel away, 722 BC, 2 Kings 17:6. But Amos ends with hope: God will rebuild David's fallen tent, make the hills drip with sweet wine, and plant His people in their land, never to be uprooted again, 9:11 to 15.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | ARCHAEOLOGY | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

A farmer from Judah stands up in Israel and starts reading God's charges against the neighbors: Damascus, Gaza, Tyre, Edom, Ammon. The crowd loves it. Get them, Amos!

JUDGMENT ON ISRAEL'S NEIGHBORS // JEREMIAH 12:14–17

1 These are the words of Amos, who was
among the sheepherders of Tekoa—what
he saw concerning Israel two years be-
fore the earthquake, in the days when
Uzziah was king of Judah and Jeroboam
son of Jehoash was king of Israel. 2 He
said:

"Yahweh roars from Zion
and raises His voice from Jerusalem;
the pastures of the shepherds mourn,
and the summit of Carmel withers."

3 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Damascus,
even four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because they threshed Gilead
with sledges of iron.
4 So I will send fire upon the house of
Hazael
to consume the citadels of Ben-hadad.
5 I will break down the gates of Damascus;
I will cut off the ruler from the Valley of
Aven
and the one who wields the scepter in
Beth-eden.
The people of Aram will be exiled to Kir,"
says Yahweh.

6 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Gaza, even
four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because they exiled a whole population,
delivering them up to Edom.
7 So I will send fire upon the walls of Gaza,
to consume its citadels.
8 I will cut off the ruler of Ashdod
and the one who wields the scepter in
Ashkelon.
I will turn My hand against Ekron,
and the remnant of the Philistines will
perish,"
says the Lord Yahweh.

9 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Tyre, even
four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because they delivered up a whole con-
gregation of exiles to Edom
and broke a covenant of brotherhood.
10 So I will send fire upon the walls of Tyre
to consume its citadels."

11 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Edom, even
four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because he pursued his brother with the
sword
and stifled all compassion;
his anger raged continually,
and his fury flamed incessantly.
12 So I will send fire upon Teman
to consume the citadels of Bozrah."

- **AMOS 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A great earthquake about 760 BC left collapsed walls and fallen pillars at Hazor and other sites, and Zechariah 14:5 still remembered it, see Amos's Earthquake Field Notes page, p.1391 FIELD NOTES p.1391
- **AMOS 1:1 [NOTE]** SHEEPHERDERS OF TEKOA. Tekoa was a village in the hills of Judah, south of Bethlehem. Amos was from Judah but preached in Israel, the northern kingdom.
- **AMOS 1:1 [NOTE]** THE EARTHQUAKE. So big that people dated things by it. See Amos's Earthquake.
- **AMOS 1:2 [NOTE]** YAHWEH ROARS. Amos's own opening words, so they are black. Joel 3:16 has the same line.
- **AMOS 1:3 [PROPHECY]** For three transgressions of Damascus, and for four... I will break the gate bar of Damascus → 2KI 16:9 p.634
- **AMOS 1:3 [NOTE]** FOR THREE SINS, EVEN FOUR. A Hebrew way of saying the cup is full and running over. Damascus crushed Gilead like grain under iron sledges, 2 Kings 10:32 to 33.
- **AMOS 1:6 [PROPHECY]** For three transgressions of Gaza... I will send a fire on the wall of Gaza → HISTORY: Tiglath pileser III of Assyria took Gaza in 734 BC. Sargon II took Ashdod in 711 BC. Recorded in the royal records of these Assyrian kings.
- **AMOS 1:6 [NOTE]** GAZA. The Philistines carried off whole villages and sold them to Edom as slaves.
- **AMOS 1:9 [PROPHECY]** For three transgressions of Tyre... I will send a fire on the wall of Tyre → HISTORY: Alexander the Great broke through the walls of Tyre and took it in 332 BC, and he ordered its buildings set on fire. Recorded by Arrian, Anabasis 2.24, and Curtius Rufus 4.4.
- **AMOS 1:9 [NOTE]** TYRE. They broke a covenant of brotherhood, maybe the old friendship of Hiram with David and Solomon, 1 Kings 5:12.
- **AMOS 1:11 [PROPHECY]** For three transgressions of Edom... I will send a fire upon Teman → HISTORY: King Nabonidus of Babylon marched against Edom about 553 BC. Found in the Nabonidus Chronicle and on a rock carving of Nabonidus at Sela in Jordan. · MEDIUM
- **AMOS 1:11 [NOTE]** EDOM. Edom came from Esau, Jacob's brother, so Edom kept attacking his own brother Israel.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE QUAKE, DEBATED FOR THE DETAILS

AMOS'S EARTHQUAKE

AMOS 1:1 · 8:8 · 9:1 · ZECHARIAH 14:5



The pillared storehouse at Hazor, from the time of the kings of Israel. Photo Avishai Teicher, PikiWiki Israel, CC BY 2.5.

WHAT IT IS

A great earthquake that shook Israel and Judah in the 700s BC. Amos dates his book by it: two years before the earthquake, 1:1.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 760 BC, give or take some years, in the days of Uzziah and Jeroboam II.

WHAT WAS FOUND

At Hazor, Yigael Yadin's team found a layer from the 700s BC with tilted walls, fallen pillars and roofs caved in on the rooms, the kind of damage an earthquake leaves. Archaeologists have reported damage from about the same time at other sites in Israel and Judah too.

REMEMBERED FOR CENTURIES

About 250 years later Zechariah could still say, You will flee as you fled from the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah, Zechariah 14:5.

A LEGEND

The Jewish historian Josephus, about AD 93, linked the quake to the day King Uzziah went into the temple to burn incense and was struck with leprosy, 2 Chronicles 26:16 to 21. The Bible does not say that.

HOW BIG?

In 2000 the geologist Steven Austin and two others argued it was about magnitude 8, one of the biggest in the region's history, and dated it about 750 BC. Other scholars think it was smaller, or that the damage at different sites came from more than one quake.

THE SHAKING IN AMOS

Amos sees the land quake and heave like the Nile, 8:8, and the Lord ordering the pillars struck so that the thresholds shake, 9:1. The ruins in the photo show stone pillars like those.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Amos was a real man in a real time and place. His words came true soon enough that people remembered the shaking.

WHERE IS HAZOR?

North of the Sea of Galilee, on the main road from Egypt to Damascus. Solomon built it up as a fortress city, 1 Kings 9:15, and Assyria captured it about 732 BC, 2 Kings 15:29.

WHY STONE PILLARS?

Rows of stone pillars held up the roof of long halls used to store goods, or by some views to stable horses. When the ground shook, pillars and walls like these fell over.

SEE ALSO

Hazor Burned, Joshua, p.358, for the city's earlier fire.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

13 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of the Ammonites, even four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because they ripped open the pregnant women of Gilead
in order to enlarge their territory.
14 So I will kindle a fire in the walls of Rabbah
to consume its citadels
amid war cries on the day of battle
and a violent wind on the day of tempest.
15 Their king will go into exile—
he and his princes together,"
says Yahweh.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Moab next, then Judah. Still cheering? Then the trap closes: Israel itself. They sell the poor for a pair of sandals and tell the prophets to be quiet. Nobody will outrun what is coming.

JUDGMENT ON MOAB, JUDAH, AND ISRAEL

1 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Moab, even four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because he burned to lime
the bones of Edom's king.
2 So I will send fire against Moab
to consume the citadels of Kerioth.
Moab will die in tumult,
amid war cries and the sound of the ram's horn.
3 I will cut off the ruler of Moab
and kill all the officials with him,"
says Yahweh.

4 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Judah, even four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because they reject the Law of Yahweh
and fail to keep His statutes;
they are led astray by the lies
in which their fathers walked.
5 So I will send fire upon Judah
to consume the citadels of Jerusalem."

6 This is what Yahweh says:

"For three transgressions of Israel, even four,
I will not revoke My judgment,
because they sell the righteous for silver
and the needy for a pair of sandals.
7 They trample on the heads of the poor
as on the dust of the earth;
they push the needy out of their way.
A man and his father
have relations with the same girl
and so profane My holy name.
8 They lie down beside every altar
on garments taken in pledge.
And in the house of their God,
they drink wine obtained through fines.

9 Yet it was I who destroyed
the Amorite before them,
though his height was like that of the cedars,
and he was as strong as the oaks.
Yet I destroyed his fruit above
and his roots below.
10 And I brought you up from the land of Egypt
and led you forty years in the wilderness,
that you might take possession
of the land of the Amorite.
11 I raised up prophets from your sons

AMOS 1:13 [PROPHECY] For three transgressions of Ammon... their king shall go into captivity → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon conquered Ammon about 582 BC. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7. · MEDIUM

AMOS 1:13 [NOTE] AMMON. They ripped open pregnant women just to grab more land. God sees war crimes.

AMOS 2:1 [PROPHECY] For three transgressions of Moab... I will send a fire upon Moab → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon conquered Moab about 582 BC. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7.

AMOS 2:1 [NOTE] MOAB. They burned a king's bones to powder, an insult to the dead. God judged a sin done to Edom, not to Israel. He cares how all nations treat each other.

AMOS 2:4 [DEMONIC] Judah is led astray by the lies their fathers followed

AMOS 2:4 [NOTE] JUDAH TOO. Amos's own country. Judah's sin was rejecting God's law.

AMOS 2:5 [PROPHECY] God would send fire on Judah to burn the strongholds of Jerusalem → 2KI 25:9; 2CH 36:19 p.660

AMOS 2:6 [NOTE] THE TRAP CLOSES. Seven nations, and now the eighth is Israel itself. Its sin: selling poor people for silver, or for a pair of sandals.

AMOS 2:8 [NOTE] GARMENTS TAKEN IN PLEDGE. The law said a poor man's cloak must be given back by sunset, Exodus 22:26 to 27. They slept on them at the altar instead.

AMOS 2:9 [DEMONIC] The Amorite whose height was like cedars and strength like oaks

THE HEART NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

and Nazirites from your young men.
Is this not true,
O children of Israel?"
declares Yahweh.
12 "But you made the Nazirites drink wine
and commanded the prophets not to
prophesy.
13 Behold, I am about to crush you in your
place
as with a cart full of grain.
14 Escape will fail the swift,
the strong will not prevail by his
strength,
and the mighty will not save his life.
15 The archer will not stand his ground,
the fleet of foot will not escape,
and the horseman will not save his life.
16 Even the most stout of heart among the
mighty men
will flee naked on that day,"
declares Yahweh.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Because God chose Israel, He will hold Israel to account. Amos asks a string of riddles: a lion does not roar for nothing, and a prophet does not speak for nothing. The fancy houses of ivory will come down.

WITNESSES AGAINST ISRAEL

1 Hear this word that Yahweh has spoken
against you, O children of Israel, against
the whole family that I brought up out of
the land of Egypt:

2 "Only you have I known
from all the families of the earth;
therefore I will punish you
for all your iniquities."

3 Can two walk together
without agreeing where to go?
4 Does a lion roar in the forest
when he has no prey?
Does a young lion growl in his den
if he has caught nothing?
5 Does a bird land in a snare
where no bait has been set?
Does a trap spring from the ground
when it has nothing to catch?
6 If a ram's horn sounds in a city,
do the people not tremble?
If calamity comes to a city,
has not Yahweh caused it?

7 Surely the Lord Yahweh does nothing
without revealing His plan
to His servants the prophets.
8 The lion has roared—
who will not fear?
The Lord Yahweh has spoken—
who will not prophesy?

9 Proclaim to the citadels of Ashdod
and to the citadels of Egypt:
"Assemble on the mountains of Samaria;
see the great unrest in the city
and the acts of oppression in her midst."

10 "For they know not how to do right,"
declares Yahweh.
"They store up violence and destruction
in their citadels."

11 Therefore this is what the Lord Yahweh
says:

"An enemy will surround the land;
he will pull down your strongholds
and plunder your citadels."

12 This is what Yahweh says:

"As the shepherd snatches from the
mouth of the lion
two legs or a piece of an ear,
so the Israelites dwelling in Samaria will
be rescued
having just the corner of a bed
or the cushion of a couch.

■ **AMOS 2:12 [NOTE]** NAZIRITES. People who made a vow to God and drank no wine, Numbers 6. Israel pushed wine on them and told the prophets to be quiet.
■ **AMOS 2:16 [HEART]** Even the bravest, the strong of heart, will run when God judges. Courage is no shelter from God.
■ **AMOS 2:16 [TEXT]** STOUT OF HEART. The Hebrew says the strong of heart among the mighty, like the KJV courageous among the mighty.
■ **AMOS 3:2 [NOTE]** ONLY YOU. Being chosen by God did not mean a free pass. It meant God would hold them to account.
■ **AMOS 3:3 [NOTABLE]** A famous line, often used for marriage and friendship: people who walk together need to agree on the way. In Amos it is the first of his riddles that show nothing happens without a cause.
■ **AMOS 3:3 [NOTE]** CAN TWO WALK TOGETHER? The KJV says except they be agreed. Amos's riddles all make one point: nothing happens for no reason, and when God speaks, a prophet must speak.
■ **AMOS 3:7 [NOTABLE]** God does not act in secret. He warns before He judges.
■ **AMOS 3:12 [NOTE]** TWO LEGS OR A PIECE OF AN EAR. A shepherd brought back what was left to prove a lion took the sheep, Exodus 22:13. Only scraps of Samaria will be left.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

13 Hear and testify against the house of
Jacob,
declares the Lord Yahweh, the God of
Hosts.
14 On the day I punish Israel for their trans-
gressions,
I will visit destruction on the altars of
Bethel;
the horns of the altar will be cut off,
and they will fall to the ground.
15 I will tear down the winter house
along with the summer house;
the houses of ivory will also perish,
and the great houses will come to an
end,"
declares Yahweh.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Amos calls the rich women of Samaria cows of Bashan. God sent hunger, drought, locusts and plague, and five times He says, yet you did not return to Me. So prepare to meet your God.

PUNISHMENT BRINGS NO REPENTANCE

1 Hear this word,
you cows of Bashan on Mount Samaria,
you women who oppress the poor
and crush the needy,
who say to your husbands,
"Bring us more to drink."
2 The Lord Yahweh has sworn by His holi-
ness:
"Behold, the days are coming
when you will be taken away with
hooks,
and your posterity with fishhooks.
3 You will go out through broken walls,
each one straight ahead of her,
and you will be cast out toward Har-
mon,"
declares Yahweh.
4 "Go to Bethel and transgress;
rebel even more at Gilgal!
Bring your sacrifices every morning,
your tithes every three days.
5 Offer leavened bread as a thank offering,
and loudly proclaim your freewill offer-
ings.
For that is what you children of Israel
love to do,"
declares the Lord Yahweh.
6 "I afflicted all your cities with cleanness
of teeth
and all your towns with lack of bread,
yet you did not return to Me,"
declares Yahweh.
7 "I also withheld the rain from you
when the harvest was three months
away.
I sent rain on one city
but withheld it from another.
One field received rain;
another without rain withered.
8 People staggered from city to city
for water to drink,
but they were not satisfied;
yet you did not return to Me,"
declares Yahweh.
9 "I struck you with blight and mildew
in your growing gardens and vineyards;
the locust devoured your fig and olive
trees,
yet you did not return to Me,"
declares Yahweh.
10 "I sent plagues among you
like those of Egypt;
I killed your young men with the sword,
along with your captured horses.
I filled your nostrils with the stench of
your camp,
yet you did not return to Me,"
declares Yahweh.
11 "Some of you I overthrew
as I overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah,

AMOS 3:14 [PROPHECY] The altars of Bethel would be destroyed and the horns of the altar cut off → 2KI 23:15 · MEDIUM p.656

AMOS 3:14 [DEMONIC] God will destroy the altars of Bethel

AMOS 3:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Ivory inlays and ink written pottery found at Samaria fit Ahab's ivory palace and the houses of ivory in Amos 3:15

AMOS 3:15 [NOTE] HOUSES OF IVORY. Carved ivory pieces have been dug up at Samaria. See The Samaria Ivories, 1 Kings, p.596.

AMOS 4:1 [NOTE] COWS OF BASHAN. Bashan was famous for fat cattle, Psalm 22:12. Amos says it to the rich women of Samaria, whose drinks were paid for by crushing the poor.

AMOS 4:4 [DEMONIC] God mocks Israel's busy worship at Bethel and Gilgal

AMOS 4:4 [NOTE] GO TO BETHEL AND SIN. Sarcasm. Bethel and Gilgal were busy places of worship, and God calls it rebellion.

AMOS 4:6 [NOTE] YET YOU DID NOT RETURN. Five times God says it. Every hard time was a call to come back.

DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

and you were like a firebrand snatched
from a blaze,
yet you did not return to Me,"
declares Yahweh.
12 "Therefore, that is what I will do
to you, O Israel,
and since I will do this to you,
prepare to meet your God, O Israel!
13 For behold, He who forms the moun-
tains,
who creates the wind
and reveals His thoughts to man,
who turns the dawn to darkness
and strides on the heights of the earth—
Yahweh, the God of Hosts, is His name."

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

A funeral song for a nation that is still alive. Seek Me and live, says God. He hates their noisy feasts. What He wants instead: let justice roll on like a river.

A LAMENTATION AGAINST ISRAEL

1 Hear this word, O house of Israel, this
lamentation I take up against you:

2 "Fallen is Virgin Israel,
never to rise again.
She lies abandoned on her land,
with no one to raise her up."

3 This is what the Lord Yahweh says:

"The city that marches out a thousand
strong
will have but a hundred left,
and the one that marches out a hundred
strong
will have but ten left in the house of Is-
rael."

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // JOEL 1:13–20; ZEPHANIAH 2:1–3; LUKE 13:1–5

4 For this is what Yahweh says to the
house of Israel:

"Seek Me and live!

5 Do not seek Bethel or go to Gilgal;
do not journey to Beersheba,
for Gilgal will surely go into exile,
and Bethel will come to nothing.
6 Seek Yahweh and live,
or He will sweep like fire through the
house of Joseph;
it will devour everything,
with no one at Bethel to extinguish it.

7 There are those who turn justice into
wormwood
and cast righteousness to the ground.

8 He who made the Pleiades and Orion,
who turns darkness into dawn
and darkens day into night,
who summons the waters of the sea
and pours them over the face of the
earth—
Yahweh is His name—
9 He flashes destruction on the strong,
so that fury comes upon the stronghold.

10 There are those who hate the one who
reproves in the gate
and despise him who speaks with in-
tegrity.
11 Therefore, because you trample on the
poor
and exact from him a tax of grain,
you will never live
in the stone houses you have built;
you will never drink the wine
from the lush vineyards you have
planted.

12 For I know that your transgressions are
many
and your sins are numerous.
You oppress the righteous by taking
bribes;
you deprive the poor of justice in the
gate.

- **AMOS 4:12 [NOTABLE]** A warning before judgment, and one of the most preached lines in the prophets: be ready for the day you meet God.
- **AMOS 4:12 [NOTE]** BE READY. Here it is a warning before judgment. Today it is often preached as a call to get ready for the day you meet God.
- **AMOS 4:13 [NOTE]** A HYMN. Amos has three short hymns to the Creator, 4:13, 5:8 to 9 and 9:5 to 6. They speak of God as He, so they are black, even where the quote marks keep them inside God's speech.
- **AMOS 5:1 [NOTE]** A FUNERAL SONG. Amos sings a lament for Israel while Israel is still alive and rich.
- **AMOS 5:4 [NOTE]** SEEK ME AND LIVE. Not a place, Bethel, Gilgal or Beersheba, but God Himself.
- **AMOS 5:5 [DEMONIC]** Do not seek Bethel, Gilgal, or Beersheba, the idol shrines
- **AMOS 5:6 [NOTE]** AMOS SPEAKS. He talks about Yahweh as He, so 5:6 to 7 and 5:13 to 15 are black.
- **AMOS 5:8 [NOTE]** THE PLEIADES AND ORION. Two star groups people still see today. Job names them too, Job 9:9 and 38:31.
- **AMOS 5:10 [NOTE]** THE GATE. A city's court met at its gate. The one who reproves is the honest witness or judge.

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · GOD SPEAKING

13 Therefore, the prudent keep silent in such times,
for the days are evil.

14 Seek good, not evil,
so that you may live.
And Yahweh, the God of Hosts,
will be with you, as you have claimed.
15 Hate evil and love good;
establish justice in the gate.
Perhaps Yahweh, the God of Hosts,
will be gracious to the remnant of Joseph."

WOE TO REBELLIOUS ISRAEL // ACTS 7:39–43

16 Therefore this is what Yahweh, the God of Hosts, the Lord, says:

"There will be wailing in all the public squares
and cries of 'Alas! Alas!' in all the streets.
The farmer will be summoned to mourn,
and the mourners to wail.
17 There will be wailing in all the vineyards,
for I will pass through your midst,"
says Yahweh.
18 Woe to you who long for the Day of Yahweh!
What will the Day of Yahweh be for you?
It will be darkness and not light.
19 It will be like a man who flees from a lion,
only to encounter a bear,
or who enters his house and rests his hand against the wall,
only to be bitten by a snake.
20 Will not the Day of Yahweh
be darkness and not light,
even gloom with no brightness in it?

21 "I hate, I despise your feasts!
I cannot stand the stench of your solemn assemblies.
22 Even though you offer Me burnt offerings and grain offerings,
I will not accept them;
for your peace offerings of fattened cattle
I will have no regard.
23 Take away from Me the noise of your songs!
I will not listen to the music of your harps.
24 But let justice roll on like a river,
and righteousness like an ever-flowing stream.

25 *Did you bring Me sacrifices and offerings forty years in the wilderness, O house of Israel?*

DEBATED · THE BIG QUESTION

DID GOD WANT SACRIFICES?

I Hate Your Feasts

AMOS 5:21 TO 27 · ACTS 7:42 TO 43

THE PUZZLE

God gave Israel the sacrifices in the law of Moses. Yet here He says, I hate, I despise your feasts, and asks, Did you bring Me sacrifices forty years in the wilderness? 5:25.

Every View

1 SAMUEL 15:22 · JEREMIAH 7:22 · HOSEA 6:6 · MICAH 6:6 TO 8

VIEW 1: NOT WITHOUT JUSTICE

Most Christians and Jews say God did not throw out the sacrifices. He rejected worship from people who crushed the poor. Samuel said the same, To obey is better than sacrifice, 1 Samuel 15:22.

VIEW 2: WHAT REALLY HAPPENED IN THE WILDERNESS

Some read 5:25 to 26 as saying that in the wilderness Israel's offerings were half hearted, or that they carried star gods along. Stephen reads it that way: they offered to idols, Acts 7:42 to 43.

VIEW 3: THE PROPHETS AGAINST THE SYSTEM

Some scholars think Amos and Jere-

AMOS 5:14 [NOTABLE] Real faith shows up in how we treat people, especially in court and in business.
AMOS 5:18 [FORESHADOW] The Day of Yahweh would be darkness, not light, for those who thought they were safe → Fulfilled in successive judgments: 722 BC, 586 BC, AD 70 · MEDIUM
AMOS 5:18 [NOTE] THE DAY OF YAHWEH. Israel thought that day meant God would beat their enemies. Amos says it means darkness for them. These woe lines speak of Yahweh as He, so they are black.
AMOS 5:21 [NOTE] I HATE YOUR FEASTS. See Did God Want Sacrifices?
AMOS 5:24 [NOTABLE] God wants justice more than religious ceremony. Martin Luther King Jr. quoted it in his I Have a Dream speech.
AMOS 5:24 [NOTE] LET JUSTICE ROLL ON. Martin Luther King Jr. quoted this verse in his I Have a Dream speech in 1963.
AMOS 5:25 [DEMONIC] Israel carried star gods Sakkuth and Kaiwan through the wilderness
AMOS 5:25 [QUOTED] Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 7:42-43 p.1752

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

miah, Jeremiah 7:22, opposed the whole sacrifice system, and that the detailed laws were written down later. Most believers answer that the prophets were attacking empty ritual, not the law God gave.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God wants a changed life more than a religious show. Hosea 6:6 and Micah 6:6 to 8 say the same, and Jesus quoted Hosea, Matthew 9:13.

26 *You have taken along Sakkuth your king*
and Kaiwan your star god,
the idols you made for yourselves.
27 *Therefore I will send you into exile beyond*
Damascus,"
says Yahweh, whose name is the God of
Hosts.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Woe to the comfortable: lounging on ivory beds, eating the best lamb, making up songs and drinking wine by the bowl, but not one tear for the ruin of their own people.

WOE TO THOSE AT EASE IN ZION // LUKE 6:24–26

1 Woe to those at ease in Zion
and those secure on Mount Samaria,
the distinguished ones of the foremost
nation,
to whom the house of Israel comes.
2 Cross over to Calneh and see;
go from there to the great Hamath;
then go down to Gath of the Philistines.
Are you better than these kingdoms?
Is their territory larger than yours?

3 You dismiss the day of calamity
and bring near a reign of violence.
4 You lie on beds inlaid with ivory,
and lounge upon your couches.
You dine on lambs from the flock
and calves from the stall.
5 You improvise songs on the harp like
David
and invent your own musical instruments.
6 You drink wine by the bowlful
and anoint yourselves with the finest
oils,
but you fail to grieve
over the ruin of Joseph.

7 Therefore, you will now go into exile
as the first of the captives,
and your feasting and lounging
will come to an end.

THE PRIDE OF ISRAEL

8 The Lord Yahweh has sworn by Himself—Yahweh, the God of Hosts, has declared:

"I abhor Jacob's pride
and detest his citadels,
so I will deliver up the city
and everything in it."

9 And if there are ten men left in one house, they too will die. 10 And when the relative who is to burn the bodies picks them up to remove them from the house, he will call to one inside, "Is anyone else with you?"

"None," that person will answer.

"Silence," the relative will retort, "for the name of Yahweh must not be invoked."

11 For Yahweh gives a command:

"The great house will be smashed to
pieces,
and the small house to rubble."

12 "Do horses gallop on the cliffs?
Does one plow the sea with oxen?
But you have turned justice into poison
and the fruit of righteousness into
wormwood—
13 you who rejoice in Lo-debar and say,
'Did we not take Karnaim by our own
strength?'

- **AMOS 5:26 [NOTE]** SAKKUTH AND KAIWAN. Star gods from Mesopotamia, both often tied to the planet Saturn. In the Greek Bible the names read Moloch and Rephan, and Stephen quotes it that way, Acts 7:43.
- **AMOS 5:27 [PROPHECY]** Israel would be sent into exile beyond Damascus → 2KI 17:6; ACTS 7:42-43 p.635
- **AMOS 6:1 [NOTE]** WOE TO THOSE AT EASE. Amos speaks here, about the leaders in Zion and Samaria, so 6:1 to 7 is black.
- **AMOS 6:4 [NOTE]** BEDS INLAID WITH IVORY. See The Samaria Ivories, 1 Kings, p.596.
- **AMOS 6:6 [NOTE]** WINE BY THE BOWLFUL. The word is for the big bowls used at the altar, not cups. They partied while their nation fell apart.
- **AMOS 6:10 [NOTE]** SILENCE. In that day of death, people will be afraid even to say Yahweh's name.
- **AMOS 6:13 [NOTE]** LO DEBAR AND KARNAIM. Two towns in Gilead that Israel likely took back when Jeroboam II won back land, 2 Kings 14:25. A pun: Lo Debar sounds like nothing, and Karnaim means horns, a sign of strength.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

14 For behold, I will raise up a nation
against you, O house of Israel,"
declares Yahweh, the God of Hosts,
"and they will oppress you
from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of the
Arabah."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Three visions: locusts, fire and a plumb line. Amos prays, and God holds back twice, but not the third time. The priest of Bethel tells Amos to go home. Amos says, I am just a farmer God sent.

THE LOCUSTS, FIRE, AND PLUMB LINE // JOEL 2:1–11

1 This is what the Lord Yahweh showed me: He was preparing swarms of locusts just after the king's harvest, as the late spring crop was coming up. 2 And when the locusts had eaten every green plant in the land, I said, "Lord Yahweh, please forgive! How will Jacob survive, since he is so small?"

3 So Yahweh relented from this plan. "It will not happen," He said.

4 This is what the Lord Yahweh showed me: The Lord Yahweh was calling for judgment by fire. It consumed the great deep and devoured the land. 5 Then I said, "Lord Yahweh, please stop! How will Jacob survive, since he is so small?"

6 So Yahweh relented from this plan. "It will not happen either," said the Lord Yahweh.

7 This is what He showed me: Behold, the Lord was standing by a wall true to plumb, with a plumb line in His hand. 8 "Amos, what do you see?" asked Yahweh.

"A plumb line," I replied.

"Behold," said the Lord, "I am setting a plumb line among My people Israel; I will no longer spare them:

9 The high places of Isaac will be deserted,
and the sanctuaries of Israel will be laid waste;
and I will rise up against the house of Jeroboam
with My sword."

AMAZIAH ACCUSES AMOS

10 Then Amaziah the priest of Bethel sent word to Jeroboam king of Israel, saying, "Amos has conspired against you in the midst of the house of Israel. The land cannot bear all his words, 11 for this is what Amos has said:

'Jeroboam will die by the sword,
and Israel will surely go into exile,
away from their homeland.'"

12 And Amaziah said to Amos, "Go away, you seer! Flee to the land of Judah; earn your bread there and do your prophesying there. 13 But never prophesy at Bethel again, because it is the sanctuary of the king and the temple of the kingdom."

14 "I was not a prophet," Amos replied, "nor was I the son of a prophet; rather, I was a herdsman and a tender of sycamore-fig trees. 15 But Yahweh took me from following the flock and said to me, 'Go, prophesy to My people Israel.'

THE BIG QUESTION

NOT A PROPHET?

A Farmer From Tekoa

AMOS 7:10 TO 17 · 1:1

WHAT HAPPENED

Amaziah, the priest of Bethel, told Amos to go back to Judah and earn his bread there. Amos answered, I was not a prophet, nor the son of a prophet. I was a herdsman and a tender of sycamore fig trees, 7:14.

- **AMOS 7:1 [NOTE]** THE KING'S HARVEST. The first cutting went to the king. The locusts would eat what was left for the people.
- **AMOS 7:2 [NOTE]** AMOS PRAYS. His own words, so they are black. God listens and holds back.
- **AMOS 7:7 [NOTE]** A PLUMB LINE. A string with a weight, used to see if a wall is straight. Israel failed the test.
- **AMOS 7:9 [PROPHECY]** God would rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword → 2Kl 15:8-10 p.630
- **AMOS 7:9 [DEMONIC]** Israel's idol shrines and high places will be laid waste
- **AMOS 7:10 [NOTE]** AMAZIAH. The priest of Bethel, not the king of Judah with the same name.
- **AMOS 7:10 [NOTE]** SERVANT OF JEROBOAM. A seal of an officer of a King Jeroboam, most think this one, was found at Megiddo in 1904. See The Seal of Shema, 2 Kings, p.626.
- **AMOS 7:14 [NOTE]** NOT A PROPHET. A farmer and fig grower, not a professional prophet. See Not a Prophet?

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | GOD SPEAKING

What He Meant
2 KINGS 2:3 · 1 SAMUEL 10:5

SONS OF THE PROPHETS
In Israel there were groups of prophets in training, called the sons of the prophets, 2 Kings 2:3. Some prophets were paid. Amos says he was not one of those. He did not prophesy for a living.

WAS OR AM?
The Hebrew has no verb here, so it can mean I am not a prophet or I was not a prophet. Either way, Amos says God called him, not a school or a paycheck: Yahweh took me from following the flock, 7:15.

THE FIG TREES
Sycamore figs had to be nicked with a knife to ripen. It was humble seasonal work, and these trees did not grow up in the hills at Tekoa, so Amos may have traveled to lower land to do it.

A SHEEP BREEDER
The word for Amos's job in 1:1 is used in 2 Kings 3:4 for King Mesha of Moab, a sheep breeder who paid huge flocks as tribute. So Amos may have run a business, not just watched a few sheep.

WHAT IT SHOWS
God can call anyone, a farmer with no religious title, to speak for Him.

16 Now, therefore, hear the word of Yahweh. You say:

'Do not prophesy against Israel;
do not preach against the house of Isaac.'

17 Therefore this is what Yahweh says:

'Your wife will become a prostitute in the city,
and your sons and daughters will fall by the sword.
Your land will be divided by a measuring line,
and you yourself will die on pagan soil.
And Israel will surely go into exile,
away from their homeland.'"

AMOS 7:17 [PROPHECY] Amaziah would die on pagan soil and Israel would go into exile → 2KI 17:6 · MEDIUM p.635

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS
A basket of summer fruit means the end is near. The merchants cannot wait for the holy day to end so they can cheat again. God warns of a famine, not of bread, but of hearing His word.

THE BASKET OF SUMMER FRUIT

1 This is what the Lord Yahweh showed me: I saw a basket of summer fruit.

2 "Amos, what do you see?" He asked.

"A basket of summer fruit," I replied.

So Yahweh said to me, "The end has come for My people Israel; I will no longer spare them."

3 "In that day," declares the Lord Yahweh, "the songs of the temple will turn to wailing. Many will be the corpses, strewn in silence everywhere!"

4 Hear this, you who trample the needy,
who do away with the poor of the land,
5 asking, "When will the New Moon be over,
that we may sell grain?
When will the Sabbath end,
that we may market wheat?
Let us shrink the measure and boost the price;
let us cheat with dishonest scales.
6 Let us buy the poor with silver
and the needy for a pair of sandals,
selling even the chaff with the wheat!"

7 Yahweh has sworn by the Pride of Jacob:

"I will never forget any of their deeds.

8 Will not the land quake for this,
and all its dwellers mourn?
All of it will swell like the Nile;
it will surge and then subside
like the Nile in Egypt.

9 And in that day,
declares the Lord Yahweh,
I will make the sun go down at noon,

AMOS 8:1 [NOTE] SUMMER FRUIT. A pun in Hebrew: summer fruit is qayits and the end is qets.
AMOS 8:5 [TEXT] THE MEASURE AND THE PRICE. In the Hebrew: make the dry measure small and the weight great. They sold less grain and weighed the buyer's silver on a heavy weight.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

and I will darken the earth in the daytime.
10 I will turn your feasts into mourning
and all your songs into lamentation.
I will cause everyone to wear sackcloth
and every head to be shaved.
I will make it like a time of mourning for an only son,
and its outcome like a bitter day.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE ECLIPSE OF 763 BC

AMOS 8:9 · 1:1 · 2 KINGS 14:23

WHAT IT IS

An eclipse of the sun recorded by the Assyrians. Each Assyrian year was named after an official. For the year named after Bur Sagale, the list says: revolt in the city of Ashur; in the month Simanu the sun was eclipsed.

WHEN IT HAPPENED

Astronomers can work out when eclipses happened. This one was on June 15, 763 BC.

WHY IT MATTERS

It pins the whole Assyrian list of years to an exact date. From that list scholars date the kings of Israel and Judah who meet Assyrian kings, like Ahab and Jehu.

IN AMOS'S DAY

It came during the reign of Jeroboam II, around the time Amos preached. Some think the day the sun went dark was in people's minds when Amos said, I will make the sun go down at noon, 8:9. Others say Amos was using picture language. See The Sun at Noon.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SUN AT NOON

Darkness in the Daytime

AMOS 8:9 TO 10

WHAT AMOS SAID

In that day I will make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in the daytime. I will make it like mourning for an only son, 8:9 to 10.

Every View

MATTHEW 27:45 · LUKE 23:44 TO 45 · JOEL 2:31

VIEW 1: THE ECLIPSE OF 763 BC

Some think Amos's hearers would remember the eclipse in Jeroboam's reign and take it as a warning sign. See The Eclipse of 763 BC.

VIEW 2: THE DARKNESS AT THE CROSS

Many Christians see a deeper fulfillment when darkness covered the land from noon until three as Jesus died, Matthew 27:45. They note Amos's words mourning for an only son. Jesus died at Passover, at full moon, when an eclipse of the sun cannot happen.

VIEW 3: PICTURE LANGUAGE

Many scholars say it is a word picture for disaster, the day Israel's bright world went dark, which came true when Assyria destroyed Israel.

VIEW 4: THE END TIMES

Some link it to the signs in the sky before the great Day of Yahweh, Joel 2:31 and Matthew 24:29.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

When God judges, even the sun cannot stay bright, and that day will be full of mourning.

11 Behold, the days are coming,
declares the Lord Yahweh,
when I will send a famine on the land—
not a famine of bread or a thirst for water,
but a famine of hearing the words of Yahweh.
12 People will stagger from sea to sea
and roam from north to east,
seeking the word of Yahweh,
but they will not find it.

AMOS 8:9 [FORESHADOW] God would make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in the daytime → MT 27:45; LK 23:44-45 · MEDIUM p.1598

AMOS 8:9 [ARCHAEOLOGY] An Assyrian list of years records an eclipse of the sun, which astronomers date to June 15, 763 BC, in the reign of Jeroboam II, see The Eclipse of 763 BC Field Notes box, p.1400FIELD NOTES p.1400

AMOS 8:9 [NOTE] THE SUN AT NOON. See The Sun at Noon and The Eclipse of 763 BC.

AMOS 8:11 [NOTABLE] The worst hunger is when God's word goes silent.

AMOS 8:11 [NOTE] A FAMINE OF HEARING. The worst hunger is when God stops speaking.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

13 In that day the lovely young women—
the young men as well—
will faint from thirst.
14 Those who swear by the guilt of
Samaria
and say, 'As surely as your god lives, O
Dan,'
or, 'As surely as the way of Beersheba
lives'—
they will fall, never to rise again."

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Amos sees the Lord standing by the altar, and there is nowhere to hide. Then, at the very end, hope: God will rebuild the fallen tent of David and plant His people in their land for good.

THE DESTRUCTION OF ISRAEL

1 I saw the Lord standing beside the altar,
and He said:

"Strike the tops of the pillars
so that the thresholds shake.
Topple them on the heads of all the peo-
ple,
and I will kill the rest with the sword.
None of those who flee will get away;
none of the fugitives will escape.
2 Though they dig down to Sheol,
from there My hand will take them;
and though they climb up to heaven,
from there I will pull them down.
3 Though they hide themselves atop
Carmel,
there I will track them and seize them;
and though they hide from Me at the bot-
tom of the sea,
there I will command the serpent to bite
them.
4 Though they are driven by their enemies
into captivity,
there I will command the sword to slay
them.
I will fix My eyes upon them
for harm and not for good."

5 The Lord Yahweh of Hosts,
He who touches the earth and it melts,
and all its dwellers mourn—
all the land rises like the Nile,
then sinks like the river of Egypt—
6 He builds His upper rooms in the heav-
ens
and founds His vault upon the earth.
He summons the waters of the sea
and pours them over the face of the
earth.
Yahweh is His name.

7 "Are you not like the Cushites to Me,
O children of Israel?"
declares Yahweh.
"Did I not bring Israel
up from the land of Egypt,
the Philistines from Caphtor,
and the Arameans from Kir?
8 Surely the eyes of the Lord Yahweh
are on the sinful kingdom,
and I will destroy it from the face of the
earth.
Yet I will not utterly destroy the house of
Jacob,"
declares Yahweh.
9 "For surely I will give the command,
and I will shake the house of Israel
among all the nations
as grain is sifted in a sieve;
but not a pebble will reach the ground.
10 All the sinners among My people
will die by the sword—
all those who say,
'Disaster will never draw near or con-
front us.'"

A PROMISE OF RESTORATION // ACTS 15:5–21

11 *"In that day I will restore*
the fallen tent of David.
I will repair its gaps, restore its ruins,
and rebuild it as in the days of old,

- **AMOS 8:14 [DEMONIC]** People swear by the guilt of Samaria and the god of Dan
- **AMOS 8:14 [NOTE]** DAN AND BEERSHEBA. The north and south ends of the land. Dan had a golden calf. See The High Place at Dan, 1 Kings, p.570.
- **AMOS 9:1 [NOTE]** BESIDE THE ALTAR. Most think this is the altar at Bethel.
- **AMOS 9:7 [NOTE]** LIKE THE CUSHITES. God moved other nations too. Israel's past did not make it untouchable.
- **AMOS 9:11 [PROPHECY]** I will raise up the tabernacle of David which has fallen down... I will bring back the captives of My people Israel → ACTS 15:16-17 p.1767
- **AMOS 9:11 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A Qumran scroll, 4Q174, quotes Amos 9:11 and reads the fallen tent of David as the coming Branch of David, see The Fallen Tent at Qumran Field Notes page, p.1402FIELD NOTES p.1402
- **AMOS 9:11 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 15:16-17 p.1767
- **AMOS 9:11 [NOTE]** THE FALLEN TENT OF DAVID. David's royal house, fallen like a shack. See Rebuilding David's Fallen Tent and The Fallen Tent at Qumran.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE FALLEN TENT AT QUMRAN

AMOS 9:11 · 5:26 TO 27 · ACTS 7:42 TO 43 · 15:16 TO 17



4Q174, a Qumran collection of Bible promises with comments, which quotes Amos 9:11. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT IT IS

A scroll from Qumran Cave 4, called 4Q174 or the Florilegium, which means a bouquet of verses. It strings together promises from the Bible and explains them.

HOW OLD IT IS

Copied in the Herodian period, between about 30 BC and the time of Jesus.

WHAT IT SAYS

It quotes God's promise to David in 2 Samuel 7, then Amos 9:11, I will raise up the fallen tent of David. It says the tent is the Branch of David, a coming King who will rise up to save Israel in the last days.

THE DAMASCUS DOCUMENT

Another writing of the same community quotes Amos 5:26 to 27 and 9:11 together. It reads the fallen tent as the books of the law. Copies were found at Qumran, and two medieval copies turned up in the 1890s in the storeroom of an old synagogue in Cairo.

THE SAME TWO PASSAGES

The New Testament quotes the very same two places in Amos: Stephen quotes 5:25 to 27, Acts 7:42 to 43, and James quotes 9:11 to 12, Acts 15:16 to 17.

WHY IT MATTERS

Some Jews before Jesus already read Amos 9:11 as a promise of the coming Son of David. When James quoted it, he was using a verse some already read as about the Messiah.

THE AMOS COPIES

Amos itself is in Qumran scrolls of the Twelve, in a small Amos scroll from Cave 5, and in the Murabbaat scroll. See The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381.

WHO COPIED IT

The people of Qumran, a strict Jewish group living by the Dead Sea. Most scholars think they were Essenes, a group described by Josephus; some disagree.

TWO LEADERS

4Q174 says the Branch of David will rise with the Interpreter of the Law. The community expected a royal Messiah from David's line.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Antiquities Authority keeps it in Jerusalem.

SEE ALSO

Rebuilding David's Fallen Tent, in this book.

MESSIANIC PROPECHIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

12 *that they may possess the remnant of Edom*
and all the nations that bear My name,"
declares Yahweh, who will do this.
13 "Behold, the days are coming,"
declares Yahweh,
"when the plowman will overtake the
reaper
and the treader of grapes, the sower of
seed.
The mountains will drip with sweet wine,
with which all the hills will flow.
14 I will restore My people Israel from cap-
tivity;
they will rebuild and inhabit the ruined
cities.
They will plant vineyards and drink their
wine;
they will make gardens and eat their
fruit.
15 I will firmly plant them in their own land,
never again to be uprooted
from the land that I have given them,"
says Yahweh your God.

THE BIG QUESTION

REBUILDING DAVID'S FALLEN TENT

What James Saw in Amos

AMOS 9:11 TO 15 · ACTS 15:13 TO 18

WHAT AMOS SAID

In that day I will restore the fallen tent of David... that they may possess the remnant of Edom and all the nations that bear My name, 9:11 to 12. The tent is David's royal house, fallen like a shack.

WHAT JAMES SAID

At the Jerusalem council the question was whether Gentile believers had to become Jews. James quoted Amos 9:11 to 12 to show that God planned all along to bring in the nations, Acts 15:13 to 18.

THE GREEK WORDING

James quotes words close to the Greek Bible: so that the remnant of men may seek the Lord, Acts 15:17. The Hebrew says possess the remnant of Edom. In Hebrew letters, Edom and adam, mankind, look almost the same, and so do possess and seek.

How It Has Been Read

2 SAMUEL 7:12 TO 16 · LUKE 1:32 TO 33

FIRST: FULFILLED IN JESUS AND THE CHURCH

Most Christians follow James: Jesus is the Son of David who rebuilt David's house, Luke 1:32 to 33, and Gentiles coming to faith are the nations that bear God's name.

A FUTURE KINGDOM TOO

Many, especially dispensational teachers, say Acts 15 shows the start, and the full rebuilding comes when Jesus returns and Israel is restored in its land, as 9:14 to 15 promises. They note James's words, After this I will return, Acts 15:16.

A JEWISH READING

The Talmud calls the Messiah the son of the fallen, from this verse, Sanhedrin 96b. One Qumran scroll, 4Q174, also reads it as about a coming King. See The Fallen Tent at Qumran.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Amos's last word is hope. God keeps His promise to David, and His kingdom is bigger than one nation.

AMOS 9:13 [PROPHECY] God would bring Israel back and plant them in their land, never to be uprooted again → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

AMOS 9:13 [NOTE] THE PLOWMAN WILL OVERTAKE THE REAPER. Harvests so big that the next planting starts before the reaping is done.

BOOK 31 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

OBADIAH

Don't Kick Your Brother When He's Down

AUTHOR	Obadiah, whose name means servant of Yahweh, 1:1. That is all we know about him.
DATE	Not stated. Most think soon after Babylon destroyed Jerusalem in 586 BC; some say about 845 BC. See When Was Obadiah Written?
WRITTEN TO	Spoken against Edom, but written to comfort Judah after its worst day.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Parts of Obadiah are in 4QXII g, a Qumran scroll of the Twelve Prophets copied in the last years before Jesus, and all 21 verses are in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat.
KEY VERSE	Obadiah 1:15. As you have done, it will be done to you.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF OBADIAH
Pieces of 4QXII g, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied in the last years before Jesus. It holds parts of Obadiah 1 to 15, though the plate does not mark which pieces are Obadiah. The whole book is in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve found at Wadi Murabbaat. See The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Jacob and Esau were twins who fought from before they were born. Their families, Israel and Edom, kept fighting for a thousand years. When Babylon burned Jerusalem, Edom did not help its brother. It stood and watched, cheered, looted the city and caught the people who tried to escape. Proud Edom, safe in its cliffs, thought no one could touch it. Obadiah says God will.

What Went Wrong

PRIDE. Edom thought its mountain cliffs made it untouchable, 1:3 to 4.
VIOLENCE AGAINST A BROTHER. Edom turned on Jacob, its own family, 1:10.
GLOATING. Edom laughed and boasted on Judah's worst day, 1:12.
LOOTING AND BETRAYAL. Edom grabbed the loot and handed over the refugees, 1:13 to 14.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament, one chapter of 21 verses, and it has one target: Edom. Edom was Israel's brother nation, but when Jerusalem fell, Edom cheered,

looted and caught the refugees. God says pride goes before a fall, and what you do to others will come back on you. The book ends looking past Edom to the day when God's people come home and the kingdom belongs to Yahweh.

Obadiah at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 9	**EDOM BROUGHT DOWN** From the eagle's nest to the ground.
CH 1:10 to 14	**WHAT EDOM DID** Watching, gloating, looting, betraying.
CH 1:15 to 18	**THE DAY OF YAHWEH** As you have done, it will be done to you.
CH 1:19 to 21	**THE KINGDOM** God's people come home, and the kingdom is Yahweh's.

Where Jesus Shows Up

OBADIAH 1:21 The kingdom will belong to Yahweh. Revelation 11:15 sees the kingdom of the world become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ.

OBADIAH 1:17 Deliverance on Mount Zion. Hebrews 12:22 says believers have come to Mount Zion, the city of the living God.

OBADIAH 1:15 As you have done, it will be done to you. Jesus said the measure you use will be measured back to you, Matthew 7:2.

EDOM AND ESAU
Edom means red. Esau was born red and hairy and sold his birthright for red stew, Genesis 25:25 and 30.

TEMAN
A region of Edom, used in 1:9 for the whole nation.

What to Watch for in Obadiah

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (2)	1:1-3, 1:10
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA (1)	1:18
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	1:21
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	1:4
NOTABLE (1)	1:15
GOD SPEAKING (17 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (0 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE SHORTEST BOOK
21 verses, shorter than many single chapters elsewhere in the Bible.

A TWIN PASSAGE
Obadiah 1 to 9 and Jeremiah 49:7 to 22 share many lines, word for word in places.

HEROD WAS AN EDOMITE
By Jesus' day Edom's people were called Idumeans, and King Herod the Great came from them. The Edomite king tried to kill the newborn King of the Jews, Matthew 2:16. See Herodium: Herod's Palace Fortress, Matthew, p.1552.

SEPHARDIC JEWS
Sepharad in 1:20 later became the Hebrew name for Spain, so Jews from Spain are called Sephardic.

How Does It End?

Edom lost its kingdom to Babylon and its land to Arab peoples. Its people moved into southern Judah, were forced to become Jews about 125 BC, and after Rome destroyed Jerusalem in AD 70 they vanish from history. Obadiah's last line still stands: the kingdom will belong to Yahweh.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Edom thinks it is safe up in its cliffs. God says, I will bring you down. Why? When Jerusalem fell, Edom, Jacob's own brother, stood and watched, cheered, grabbed the loot and handed over the people trying to escape. What you did will come back on your own head. And in the end the kingdom will belong to Yahweh.

THE DESTRUCTION OF EDOM // JEREMIAH 49:7–22

1 This is the vision of Obadiah:

This is what the Lord Yahweh says about Edom—

We have heard a message from Yahweh;
an envoy has been sent among the nations
to say, "Rise up,
and let us go to battle against her!"—

2 "Behold, I will make you small among the nations;
you will be deeply despised.

THE BIG QUESTION

ESAU AND JACOB

Twins at War

GENESIS 25 TO 36 · NUMBERS 20:14 TO 21

THE TWINS

Rebekah's twins fought inside her, and God said two nations were in her womb, Genesis 25:22 to 23. Esau was born first, red and hairy. Jacob came out holding his heel.

THE STEW AND THE BLESSING

Esau sold his birthright for a bowl of red stew, which is why he was called Edom, red, Genesis 25:30 to 34. Later Jacob tricked their father Isaac into giving him the blessing, and Esau planned to kill him, Genesis 27:41.

A Thousand Year Feud

DEUTERONOMY 23:7 · 2 SAMUEL 8:14 · MALACHI 1:2 TO 3

MAKING UP

Twenty years later the brothers met and Esau hugged Jacob, Genesis 33:4. Esau's family settled in the hills of Seir and became Edom, Genesis 36:8 to 9.

BROTHERS ON THE MAP

Moses called Edom your brother, Israel, Numbers 20:14, but Edom refused to let Israel pass. God still told Israel, Do not despise an Edomite, for he is your brother, Deuteronomy 23:7.

WAR AFTER WAR

David conquered Edom, 2 Samuel 8:14. Edom broke free under Jehoram, 2 Kings 8:20 to 22, and the two fought on and off for centuries.

THE LAST STRAW

When Babylon burned Jerusalem, Edom joined in, Psalm 137:7. That is the sin Obadiah names: violence against your brother Jacob, 1:10.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Old family grudges can last for generations. God takes it personally when we turn on our own.

3 The pride of your heart has deceived you,
O dwellers in the clefts of the rocks
whose habitation is the heights,
who say in your heart,
'Who can bring me down to the ground?'
4 Though you soar like the eagle
and make your nest among the stars,
even from there I will bring you down,"
declares Yahweh.
5 "If thieves came to you,
if robbers by night—
oh, how you will be ruined—

- **OBAD 1:1 [PROPHECY]** Behold, I will make you small among nations; you are greatly despised, O Edom → HISTORY: Nabonidus of Babylon attacked Edom about 553 BC. By 312 BC Arab Nabataeans held the old land of Edom around Petra. Recorded in the Nabonidus Chronicle and by Diodorus 19.94.
- **OBAD 1:1 [NOTE]** OBADIAH. His name means servant of Yahweh. We know nothing else about him. His book is the shortest in the Old Testament, 21 verses.
- **OBAD 1:1 [NOTE]** EDOM. The nation that came from Esau, Jacob's twin brother. Its land lay south and east of the Dead Sea. See Esau and Jacob.
- **OBAD 1:1 [NOTE]** WE HAVE HEARD A MESSAGE. Obadiah's own lead in, so it is black. Jeremiah 49:7 to 22 repeats many lines of Obadiah 1 to 9.
- **OBAD 1:3 [HEART]** The pride of your heart has deceived you.
- **OBAD 1:3 [NOTE]** THE CLEFTS OF THE ROCK. Edom's towns sat high in red sandstone mountains, hard to attack. See The Rock of Sela.
- **OBAD 1:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A Babylonian king, most think Nabonidus, carved his picture halfway up Sela, Edom's cliff fortress, after conquering Edom about 553 BC, see The Rock of Sela Field Notes page, p.1411 FIELD NOTES p.1411
- **OBAD 1:4 [NOTE]** LIKE THE EAGLE. However high pride climbs, God can bring it down.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

BOZRAH, EDOM'S CAPITAL

OBADIAH 1:6 · AMOS 1:12 · ISAIAH 63:1 · JEREMIAH 49:13



Ruins on the hill of Buseirah, ancient Bozrah, in southern Jordan. Photo Bashar Tabbah, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of Bozrah, Edom's capital, at the village of Buseirah in southern Jordan, a few miles from the rock of Sela.

HOW OLD IT IS

The big buildings are from the 700s to the 500s BC, when Edom was strongest, under Assyrian rule.

WHAT WAS FOUND

Crystal Bennett led a British team there between 1971 and 1980. She found a palace and a large public building, perhaps a temple, built in Assyrian style, with city walls around the hilltop.

IN THE BIBLE

The prophets name Bozrah when they warn Edom, Amos 1:12 and Jeremiah 49:13. Isaiah 63:1 asks, Who is this coming from Edom, from Bozrah, with crimson stained garments?

WHAT IT SHOWS

Edom was a real, rich kingdom in the time of the later prophets, with a capital worth bragging about. Bozrah was later left in ruins.

would they not steal only what they
wanted?
If grape gatherers came to you,
would they not leave some gleanings?
6 But how Esau will be pillaged,
his hidden treasures sought out!
7 All the men allied with you
will drive you to the border;
the men at peace with you
will deceive and overpower you.
Those who eat your bread
will set a trap for you
without your awareness of it.
8 In that day, declares Yahweh,
will I not destroy the wise men of Edom
and the men of understanding
in the mountains of Esau?
9 Then your mighty men, O Teman,
will be terrified,
so that everyone in the mountains of Esau
will be cut down in the slaughter.

10 Because of the violence against your
brother Jacob,
you will be covered with shame
and cut off forever.

■ **OBAD 1:5 [NOTE]** THIEVES AND GRAPE PICKERS. Even thieves leave something behind. Edom will be stripped bare.

■ **OBAD 1:8 [NOTE]** THE WISE MEN OF EDOM. Edom was famous for wisdom. Job's friend Eliphaz was a Temanite, Job 2:11.

■ **OBAD 1:9 [NOTE]** TEMAN. A region of Edom, named for Esau's grandson, Genesis 36:11.

OBAD 1:10 [PROPHECY] For violence against your brother Jacob, shame shall cover you, and you shall be cut off forever → HISTORY: John Hyrcanus, a Jewish ruler, conquered the Edomites about 125 BC and made them become Jews. After Rome's war of AD 66 to 70

GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

EDOM'S GOD, QOS

OBADIAH 1:8 · 2 CHRONICLES 25:14 TO 15



A clay goddess with three horns from the Edomite shrine at Horvat Qitmit, 600s BC. Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Chamberi, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A clay head of a goddess with three horns, found at Horvat Qitmit, an Edomite shrine in the Negev desert south of Arad.

HOW OLD IT IS

The shrine was used in the 600s and early 500s BC, as Edom pushed into Judah's southern land.

HOW IT WAS FOUND

Itzhak Beit Arieh dug the shrine from 1984 to 1987. It held clay figures of gods, people and animals, altars, and pieces of pottery with Edomite writing.

QOS

Edom's national god was Qos. Edomite names were built on it, the way Israelite names were built on Yahweh. Assyrian records name two kings of Edom, Qaus malaka and Qaus gabri, and the name Qos was found written at Qitmit.

GODS OF EDOM

The Bible never names Qos, but it tells of King Amaziah bringing home the gods of the people of Seir, Edom, and bowing to them, 2 Chronicles 25:14 to 15.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Obadiah's quarrel with Edom was not only about borders. Edom served other gods, and the book ends with the kingdom belonging to Yahweh, 1:21.

11 On the day you stood aloof
while strangers carried off his wealth
and foreigners entered his gate
and cast lots for Jerusalem,
you were just like one of them.
12 But you should not gloat in that day,
your brother's day of misfortune,
nor rejoice over the people of Judah
in the day of their destruction,
nor boast proudly
in the day of their distress.
13 You should not enter the gate of My people
in the day of their disaster,
nor gloat over their affliction
in the day of their disaster,
nor loot their wealth
in the day of their disaster.
14 Nor should you stand at the crossroads
to cut off their fugitives,
nor deliver up their survivors
in the day of their distress.

they fade from history. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 13.9.1. · MEDIUM

- **OBAD 1:10 [NOTE]** YOUR BROTHER JACOB. The worst part was not the violence. It was that Edom did it to family.
- **OBAD 1:11 [NOTE]** CAST LOTS FOR JERUSALEM. Most think this is the day Babylon took Jerusalem in 586 BC. Psalm 137:7 remembers Edom shouting, Tear it down! See When Was Obadiah Written?
- **OBAD 1:12 [NOTE]** DO NOT GLOAT. Eight times God says you should not: gloat, rejoice, boast, enter, gloat, loot, cut off, hand over. Don't kick your brother when he's down.
- **OBAD 1:14 [NOTE]** AT THE CROSSROADS. Edomites waited on the roads to catch people running for their lives and hand them over.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE RELIEF, DEBATED FOR WHICH ROCK IS SELA

THE ROCK OF SELA

OBADIAH 1:3 TO 4 · 2 KINGS 14:7 · JEREMIAH 49:16



The great rock of es Sela in southern Jordan, seen from the village above it. Photo Uri Juda, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A huge rock fortress in the mountains of Edom, near the town of Tafilah in southern Jordan. Its cliffs rise hundreds of feet above the valleys around it, and the only way up is a staircase cut into a narrow crack in the rock.

THE CLEFTS OF THE ROCK

Sela means rock. Obadiah says to Edom, you who live in the clefts of the rock, whose home is the heights, who say, Who can bring me down? 1:3. Jeremiah uses the same words, Jeremiah 49:16.

A KING CARVED IN THE CLIFF

Halfway up the steepest face is a carving of a king in Babylonian dress, with a tall cap and a long staff, facing symbols of the moon, the sun and a star. A long cuneiform inscription around it is too worn to read. Scholars made it widely known in the 1990s.

WHO IS IT?

The symbols are the favorite signs of Nabonidus, the last king of Babylon, who led an army through Edom and on into Arabia about 553 BC. Most scholars think the carving marks his conquest of Edom.

HOW OLD IT IS

The carving is from the 500s BC. People used the rock as a refuge for many centuries before and after.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Edom's safest stronghold could not keep out Babylon. The king of the nation that had burned Jerusalem carved his picture into Edom's own rock. Even from there I will bring you down, 1:4.

WHICH ROCK?

The Bible says King Amaziah of Judah captured Sela, 2 Kings 14:7. Many think it was this rock. Others point to Umm el Biyara, a high rock at Petra. Es Sela has not been fully excavated.

NOT PETRA

Petra's famous carved buildings are later. They were made by the Nabataeans, who took over Edom's land after the Edomites left. See What Happened to Edom?

THE ROAD TO ARABIA

Sela sat by the King's Highway, the old trade road from Damascus to the Red Sea and Arabia, Numbers 20:17. Whoever held the road grew rich on the caravans of incense and spice, and Nabonidus wanted it.

SEE ALSO

Bozrah, Edom's Capital and Edom's God, Qos, in this book.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS OBADIAH WRITTEN?

A Book With No Date

OBADIAH 1:10 TO 14 · PSALM 137:7

WHY IT IS A QUESTION

Obadiah names no king. The clue is 1:11 to 14: strangers carried off Jerusalem's wealth and cast lots for the city while Edom stood by and joined in. Which day was that?

Every View

2 KINGS 8:20 TO 22 · 2 CHRONICLES 21:16 TO 17 · LAMENTATIONS 4:21 TO 22

VIEW 1: SOON AFTER 586 BC

Most scholars say it was when Babylon destroyed Jerusalem. Psalm 137:7, Lamentations 4:21 to 22 and Ezekiel 35 all blame Edom for that day, and Obadiah shares lines with Jeremiah, who lived then.

VIEW 2: ABOUT 845 BC

Many older scholars point to King Jehoram's day, when Edom rebelled, 2 Kings 8:20 to 22, and Philistines and Arabs raided Jerusalem and carried off the king's goods, 2 Chronicles 21:16 to 17. That would make Obadiah one of the earliest prophets, which fits its place in the Hebrew order of the Twelve.

A JEWISH TRADITION

The Talmud says Obadiah was the same man as Obadiah who hid the prophets from Ahab and Jezebel, 1 Kings 18:3 to 4, and even that he was an Edomite who joined Israel. Few scholars today accept that.

THE JEREMIAH QUESTION

Obadiah and Jeremiah 49 share many lines. Some say Jeremiah borrowed from Obadiah, some say the other way, and some say both used an older prophecy.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Edom turned on its brother in his worst hour, and God saw it.

THE DELIVERANCE OF ISRAEL

15 For the Day of Yahweh is near
for all the nations.
As you have done, it will be done to you;
your recompense will return upon your
own head.
16 For as you drank on My holy mountain,
so all the nations will drink continually.
They will drink and gulp it down;
they will be as if they had never existed.
17 But on Mount Zion there will be deliver-
ance,
and it will be holy,
and the house of Jacob
will reclaim their possession.
18 Then the house of Jacob will be a blaz-
ing fire,
and the house of Joseph a burning
flame;
but the house of Esau will be stubble—
Jacob will set it ablaze and consume it.
Therefore no survivor will remain
from the house of Esau."
For Yahweh has spoken.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT HAPPENED TO EDOM?

No Survivor From Esau

OBADIAH 1:4 · 1:10 · 1:18

WHAT OBADIAH SAID

Edom would be brought down from its heights and cut off forever, and no survivor would remain from the house of Esau, 1:4, 1:10 and 1:18.

How It Came True

MALACHI 1:3 TO 4 · MARK 3:8 · MATTHEW 2:1 TO 16

FIRST: THE KINGDOM FELL

About 553 BC Nabonidus of Babylon marched through Edom, and Edom's kingdom probably came to an end then. By Malachi's day, about a hundred years later, Edom's land lay in ruins, Malachi 1:3 to 4. See The Rock of Sela.

THE LAND TAKEN

Arab peoples moved into Edom's hills.

- **OBAD 1:15 [NOTABLE]** What we do to others comes back to us. Edom gloated over its brother's fall, and the same fall came on Edom.
- **OBAD 1:15 [NOTE]** AS YOU HAVE DONE. What goes around comes around. Paul said the same: a man reaps what he sows, Galatians 6:7.
- **OBAD 1:16 [NOTE]** DRANK ON MY HOLY MOUNTAIN. Many think this means Edom celebrated on Mount Zion. Now the nations will drink the cup of God's anger.
- **OBAD 1:18 [PROPHECY]** The house of Jacob shall be a fire, and the house of Esau for stubble; there shall not be any remaining of the house of Esau → 1 Maccabees 5:3; 1 Maccabees 5:65
- **OBAD 1:18 [NOTE]** NO SURVIVOR. See What Happened to Edom?

END TIMES PROPHECIES

By 312 BC the Nabataeans held the region of Petra, as the Greek historian Diodorus records. Many Edomites moved west into southern Judah, which the Greeks called Idumea.

A PEOPLE ABSORBED

About 125 BC the Jewish ruler John Hyrcanus conquered Idumea and made its people be circumcised and keep the law of Moses, Josephus, Antiquities 13.9.1. Herod the Great was an Idumean. Idumeans came to hear Jesus, Mark 3:8.

GONE

Idumeans fought in the war against Rome, AD 66 to 70. After Jerusalem fell they disappear from history as a people. No nation today traces itself to Edom.

OTHER READINGS

Some say Esau's house was cut off as a nation even though some people blended into other nations. Some also see a last fulfillment still to come, at the end. See Who Is Edom Today?

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Proud Edom, so sure no one could bring it down, is gone. The people it betrayed are still here.

19 Those from the Negev will possess the
mountains of Esau;
those from the foothills will possess the
land of the Philistines.
They will occupy the fields of Ephraim and
Samaria,
and Benjamin will possess Gilead.
20 And the exiles of this host of the Israelites
will possess the land of the Canaanites
as far as Zarephath;
and the exiles from Jerusalem who are in
Sepharad
will possess the cities of the Negev.
21 The deliverers will ascend Mount Zion
to rule over the mountains of Esau.

And the kingdom will belong to Yahweh.

- **OBAD 1:20 [NOTE]** SEPHARAD. Nobody is sure where it was. Many think Sardis in Asia Minor. Later Jews took it to mean Spain, which is why Jews from Spain are called Sephardic Jews.
- **OBAD 1:21 [PROPHECY]** Deliverers would go up on Mount Zion and the kingdom would belong to Yahweh → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **OBAD 1:21 [NOTE]** THE KINGDOM WILL BELONG TO YAHWEH. The last words of the book. Revelation 11:15 says the same of the end: the kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of His Christ.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS EDOM TODAY?

Is the Story Over?

OBADIAH 1:15 TO 21

THE QUESTION

Obadiah moves from Edom to the Day of Yahweh on all the nations, 1:15, and ends with the kingdom belonging to Yahweh. Is Edom only a nation from long ago, or does it stand for something more?

Every View

ISAIAH 63:1 TO 6 · PSALM 83:6 · DANIEL 11:41 · REVELATION 11:15

VIEW 1: HISTORY ONLY

Many say the prophecy came true when Edom fell and disappeared. The lesson stays: God judges pride and cruelty.

VIEW 2: A CODE NAME FOR ROME

After Rome destroyed the temple, Jewish teachers began to use Edom and Esau as names for Rome, and later for the Christian nations of Europe. In that reading Obadiah promises the fall of every empire that crushes Israel.

VIEW 3: THE END TIMES

Some Christians link Edom with end times passages, Isaiah 63:1 to 6, Psalm 83:6 and Daniel 11:41, and see it as the lands of southern Jordan or the nations that hate Israel in the last days.

VIEW 4: A PICTURE

Others see Edom as a picture of pride that sets itself against God's people. Every Edom falls, and Christ's kingdom wins, Revelation 11:15.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The book's last line: the kingdom will belong to Yahweh, 1:21.

BOOK 32 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

JONAH

The Runaway Prophet

AUTHOR	Not stated. The book is about Jonah son of Amittai, 1:1, a prophet from Gath hepher in Galilee, 2 Kings 14:25. Tradition says he wrote it; many think someone else wrote it later.
DATE	Jonah lived in the days of Jeroboam II, about 793 to 753 BC. Many scholars date the writing later.
WRITTEN TO	God's people, who needed to learn that God loves even their enemies.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Parts of Jonah are in 4QXII a, one of the oldest Qumran scrolls of the Twelve Prophets, copied about 150 to 125 BC, in other Qumran copies, in the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever and in the Hebrew scroll from Wadi Murabbaat.
KEY VERSE	Jonah 2:9. Salvation is from Yahweh!



THE OLDEST COPIES OF JONAH
Pieces of 4QXII a, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4 and one of the oldest copies of them, about 150 to 125 BC. It holds parts of Jonah, though the plate does not mark which pieces are Jonah. Some think this scroll put Jonah last, after Malachi; others doubt it. Nearly all of Jonah is in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat. See The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

Assyria was the bully of the ancient world, famous for cruelty, and Nineveh was one of its great cities. Israel feared and hated it. Then God told an Israelite prophet to go to Nineveh and warn it. Jonah knew what that could mean: if Nineveh turned, God might forgive it. So he ran.

What Went Wrong

RUNNING AWAY. Jonah tried to flee from the presence of Yahweh, 1:3.
NINEVEH'S VIOLENCE. Its wickedness had come up before God, 1:2, and the king named the violence in their hands, 3:8.
IDOLS. The sailors each cried to their own god, 1:5, and Jonah says those who cling to worthless idols forsake His loving devotion, 2:8.
A HARD HEART. Jonah wanted his enemies judged, not saved, and was angry enough to die over it, 4:1 to 9.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Jonah is the prophet everyone knows and almost nobody would want to be. God sends him to Israel's worst enemy, and he runs. God chases him with a storm and a fish, gives him a second chance, and Nineveh turns to God. But Jonah is angry, because he wanted Nineveh destroyed. The book ends with God asking whether He should not care about a city full of people. Jesus called His own death and resurrection the sign of Jonah.

Jonah at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 17 **JONAH RUNS**
A ticket to Tarshish, a storm and a great fish.

CH 2:1 to 10 **JONAH PRAYS**
From the belly of the fish: Salvation is from Yahweh.

CH 3:1 to 10 **JONAH PREACHES**
Nineveh repents and God relents.

CH 4:1 to 11 **JONAH POUTS**
A plant, a worm and God's last question.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JONAH 1:17 Jonah's three days and three nights in the fish. Jesus said the Son of Man would be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, Matthew 12:40. See The Sign of Jonah.

JONAH 3:5 Nineveh repented at Jonah's preaching. Jesus said, One greater than Jonah is here, Matthew 12:41.

JONAH 1:5 Jonah asleep in a storm. Jesus slept in a storm too, then calmed it with a word, Mark 4:39.

JONAH
His name means dove. His father's name Amittai means my truth.

NINEVEH
A great city of Assyria on the Tigris River, first named in Genesis 10:11.

What to Watch for in Jonah

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	1:17, 3:5
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	3:3
MIRACLES (3)	1:15, 2:10, 4:6-7
DEMONIC (2)	1:5, 2:8
NOTABLE (2)	2:9, 4:11
GOD SPEAKING (6 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (0 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE SAILORS AND THE CITY
Every outsider in the book obeys God faster than the prophet does: the sailors, the king, the people and even the fish.

THE SHORTEST SERMON
Jonah's sermon in 3:4 is five words in Hebrew, and a whole city turned.

JONAH AND PETER
Jonah sailed from Joppa. Centuries later Peter, the son of Jonah, Matthew 16:17, was in Joppa when God sent him to the outsiders, Acts 10. See Joppa.

A FAVORITE OF THE FIRST CHRISTIANS
Jonah was one of the stories early Christians painted and carved most, as a picture of the resurrection. See The Jonah Marbles.

How Does It End?

Nineveh was spared, but not for good. About 40 to 60 years later Assyria destroyed Israel, and later Nahum warned Nineveh again. In 612 BC Babylon and the Medes destroyed it. The book ends with a question God asks Jonah, and every reader since.

MAP · JONAH 1 TO 3

Jonah's World

God said go east. Jonah went west.



FROM GATH HEPHER Jonah came from Gath Hepher in Galilee and prophesied in the days of King Jeroboam II, 2 Kings 14:25.

WHERE WAS TARSHISH? Most think Tarshish was Tartessos in southern Spain, about 2,200 miles west. Others say Tarsus in Turkey or the island of Sardinia.

THE WRONG WAY God sent him to Nineveh, about 500 miles to the east. Jonah went down to Joppa and bought a ticket to Tarshish, the far edge of the known world, Jonah 1:3.

A GREAT CITY Nineveh was a great city of Assyria, a three day visit, Jonah 3:3. Later, as the capital, its walls ran about 7.5 miles around.

Gath Hepher, Joppa and Nineveh are certain. The place of Tarshish is debated. The route to Nineveh is approximate.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

JOPPA

JONAH 1:3 · 2 CHRONICLES 2:16 · ACTS 9:36 TO 10:23



A warship with shields along its deck, most think Phoenician, from King Sennacherib's palace at Nineveh, about 700 BC. British Museum. Photo SpeakingArch, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Joppa, today's Jaffa, the old harbor town on the south side of Tel Aviv in Israel. It was the old port nearest Jerusalem, used for thousands of years.

THE SHIP

Ships of Tarshish were the big trading ships of the Phoenicians, the great sailors of the age. The carving shows a warship of that time, most think Phoenician, with rowers in two rows and a deck above.

IN THE BIBLE

Cedar logs for Solomon's temple were floated to Joppa, 2 Chronicles 2:16. Peter raised Tabitha there, then God sent him from Joppa to Cornelius, a Roman centurion, Acts 9:36 to 10:23.

WHAT IT SHOWS

From the same port, one prophet ran from God's call to the outsiders, and centuries later another went to them.

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God tells Jonah to go east to Nineveh and preach against it. Jonah buys a ticket west. God sends a storm, the pagan sailors pray harder than the prophet, and the lot falls on Jonah. Throw me overboard, he says. They do, the sea goes calm, and a great fish swallows him whole.

JONAH FLEES FROM YAHWEH // NAHUM 1:1–15

1 Now the word of Yahweh came to Jonah
son of Amittai, saying, 2 "Get up! Go to the
great city of Nineveh and preach against
it, because its wickedness has come up
before Me."

3 Jonah, however, got up to flee to
Tarshish, away from the presence of Yah-
weh. He went down to Joppa and found a
ship bound for Tarshish. So he paid the
fare and went aboard to sail for Tarshish,
away from the presence of Yahweh.

THE GREAT STORM // ACTS 27:13–26

4 Then Yahweh hurled a great wind upon
the sea, and such a violent storm arose
that the ship was in danger of breaking
apart. 5 The sailors were afraid, and each
cried out to his own god. And they threw

■ **JON 1:1 [NOTE]** JONAH SON OF AMITTAI. The same prophet who promised King Jeroboam II he would win back Israel's borders, 2 Kings 14:25. He came from Gath hepher, a few miles from Nazareth. See the Big Question Jonah Son of Amittai, 2 Kings, p.629.

■ **JON 1:2 [NOTE]** NINEVEH. A great city of Assyria on the Tigris River, across from today's Mosul in Iraq. Assyria was Israel's most feared enemy. See The Walls of Nineveh.

■ **JON 1:3 [NOTE]** TARSHISH. A far port in the west, most likely in Spain. Nineveh was about 550 miles east as the crow flies, more by road. Jonah ran the other way, as far as a ship could take him. See Joppa.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW MIRACLES

the ship's cargo into the sea to lighten the load. But Jonah had gone down to the lowest part of the vessel, where he lay down and fell into a deep sleep.

6 The captain approached him and said, "How can you sleep? Get up and call upon your God. Perhaps this God will consider us, so that we may not perish."

7 "Come!" said the sailors to one another. "Let us cast lots to find out who is responsible for this calamity that is upon us."

So they cast lots, and the lot fell on Jonah.

8 "Tell us now," they demanded, "who is to blame for this calamity that is upon us? What is your occupation, and where have you come from? What is your country, and who are your people?"

9 "I am a Hebrew," replied Jonah. "I worship Yahweh, the God of the heavens, who made the sea and the dry land."

10 Then the men were even more afraid and said to him, "What have you done?" The men knew that he was fleeing from the presence of Yahweh, because he had told them.

JONAH CAST INTO THE SEA

11 Now the sea was growing worse and worse, so they said to Jonah, "What must we do to you to calm this sea for us?"

12 "Pick me up," he answered, "and cast me into the sea, so it may quiet down for you. For I know that I am to blame for this violent storm that has come upon you."

13 Nevertheless, the men rowed hard to get back to dry land, but they could not, for the sea was raging against them more and more.

14 So they cried out to Yahweh: "Please, O Yahweh, do not let us perish on account of this man's life! Do not charge us with innocent blood! For You, O Yahweh, have done as You pleased."

15 Then they picked up Jonah and cast him into the sea, and the raging sea grew calm.

16 Then the men feared Yahweh greatly, and they offered a sacrifice to Yahweh and made vows to Him.

17 Now Yahweh had appointed a great fish to swallow Jonah, and Jonah spent three days and three nights in the belly of the fish.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Jonah prays from inside the fish, and it sounds a lot like the Psalms. He was sinking to the bottom, and God pulled him up. Salvation is from Yahweh! Then the fish throws up Jonah onto dry land, which is probably the only time a fish has gotten seasick from a prophet.

JONAH'S PRAYER

1 From inside the fish, Jonah prayed to Yahweh his God, 2 saying:

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

COULD A MAN LIVE INSIDE A FISH?

A Great Fish

JONAH 1:17 · 2:10

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Yahweh appointed a great fish to swallow Jonah, and Jonah spent three days and three nights inside it, 1:17. Then Yahweh commanded the fish, and it vomited Jonah onto dry land, 2:10.

FISH OR WHALE?

The Hebrew says a great fish. Ancient people did not sort whales from fish. Matthew 12:40 uses ketos, a Greek word

- **JON 1:5 [DEMONIC]** In the storm each sailor cries out to his own god
- **JON 1:5 [NOTE]** ASLEEP IN THE STORM. Jesus also slept in a boat in a storm, Mark 4:38. Jonah slept because he was running from God. Jesus slept because He was the Lord of the sea.
- **JON 1:9 [NOTE]** WHO MADE THE SEA. Jonah says the right words about God while running from Him on God's own sea.
- **JON 1:14 [NOTE]** THE SAILORS PRAY. The pagan sailors pray to Yahweh before the prophet does.
- **JON 1:15 [MIRACLE]** The sea stops raging when Jonah is thrown in
- **JON 1:17 [FORESHADOW]** Three days and nights in the heart of the earth → MT 12:40; 16:4 p.1567
- **JON 1:17 [MIRACLE]** Great fish prepared by Yahweh to swallow Jonah
- **JON 1:17 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 12:40 p.1567
- **JON 1:17 [TEXT]** THE VERSE NUMBERS. In Hebrew Bibles this verse is 2:1, so chapter 2 is 2:2 to 11 in Hebrew and 2:1 to 10 in English. Scroll studies use the Hebrew numbers.
- **JON 1:17 [NOTE]** A GREAT FISH. The Hebrew says a great fish. Matthew 12:40 uses a Greek word for a sea monster, which the KJV turns into whale. See Could a Man Live Inside a Fish?
- **JON 2:1 [NOTE]** JONAH'S PRAYER. Jonah's own words to God, so they print black. Almost every line echoes a psalm, like Psalm 18:6, 42:7 and 120:1.

MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

for any huge sea creature, and the KJV made it a whale.

Every View
MATTHEW 12:40 · JONAH 2:2

VIEW 1: A REAL MIRACLE
Most Jews and Christians through history read it as a true event. The book says God appointed the fish, so it is a miracle, not nature doing its normal thing. Jesus spoke of Jonah in the fish as a real event and tied it to His own resurrection, Matthew 12:40.

VIEW 2: A TEACHING STORY
Many scholars read the book as a story told to teach a lesson, like a parable, with a real prophet at the center. They point to the funny, larger than life details: a fish, a giant city, cows in sackcloth, a plant that grows in a day.

VIEW 3: JONAH DIED
Some who take it as history think Jonah actually died, since he says he cried from the belly of Sheol, the place of the dead, 2:2, and God raised him. That would make the sign of Jonah even closer to Jesus.

THE WHALE TALES
You may hear of a sailor named James Bartley who lived after a whale swallowed him, a story first printed in 1891. The historian Edward Davis found that his ship, the Star of the East, was not a whaler and had no James Bartley on its crew, and the captain's wife called the story untrue. It is a legend and proves nothing either way.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The point is not the fish. The point is a God who will not give up on a runaway, and the mercy that follows him.

"In my distress I called to Yahweh,
and He answered me.
From the belly of Sheol I called for help,
and You heard my voice.
3 For You cast me into the deep,
into the heart of the seas,
and the current swirled about me;
all Your breakers and waves swept over me.
4 At this, I said,
'I have been banished from Your sight;
yet I will look once more
toward Your holy temple.'
5 The waters engulfed me
to take my life;
the watery depths closed around me;
the seaweed wrapped around my head.
6 To the roots of the mountains I descended;
the earth beneath me barred me in forever!
But You raised my life from the pit,
O Yahweh my God!
7 As my life was fading away,
I remembered Yahweh.
My prayer went up to You,
to Your holy temple.
8 Those who cling to worthless idols
forsake His loving devotion.
9 But I, with the voice of thanksgiving,
will sacrifice to You.
I will fulfill what I have vowed.
Salvation is from Yahweh!"
10 And Yahweh commanded the fish, and it vomited Jonah onto dry land.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SIGN OF JONAH

Jesus Points to Jonah
MATTHEW 12:38 TO 41 · 16:4 · LUKE 11:29 TO 32

WHAT JESUS SAID
When leaders asked for a sign, Jesus said none would be given but the sign of the prophet Jonah. As Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the great fish, so the Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, Matthew 12:39 to 40.

JON 2:2 [NOTE] THE BELLY OF SHEOL. Sheol is the place of the dead. Jonah felt as good as dead. Some think he really did die and was brought back.

JON 2:4 [NOTE] YOUR HOLY TEMPLE. From the bottom of the sea, Jonah still turns toward the temple in Jerusalem, as Solomon asked, 1 Kings 8:38 to 39.
JON 2:8 [DEMONIC] Those who cling to worthless idols give up God's loving devotion
JON 2:9 [NOTABLE] Jonah's prayer from inside the fish ends with the heart of the whole book: nobody saves himself, and God saves whom He will.
JON 2:9 [NOTE] FROM YAHWEH. That is also true for Nineveh, which is exactly what Jonah does not like.
JON 2:10 [MIRACLE] The fish spits Jonah out onto dry land

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE JONAH MARBLES

JONAH 1:17 · 2:10 · 4:6 · MATTHEW 12:40



Jonah Swallowed and Jonah Cast Up, marble, Asia Minor, about AD 280 to 290. Cleveland Museum of Art, public domain open access, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

A set of small marble statues that tell Jonah's story: the sea monster swallowing him, the monster spitting him out, Jonah praying, and Jonah resting under his plant. They are said to have been found together with a statue of the Good Shepherd and six portrait busts, three pairs of a Roman couple.

HOW OLD IT IS

About AD 280 to 290, a generation before Christianity became legal in the Roman Empire.

WHERE THEY CAME FROM

They were carved in Asia Minor, today's Turkey, possibly for a Christian family's tomb or home. The Cleveland Museum of Art bought the group in 1965.

THE SEA MONSTER

The artist did not carve a whale. He carved a ketos, the Greek sea monster with a dog's head, curly tail and fins, the same word Matthew 12:40 uses.

JONAH EVERYWHERE

Jonah is one of the Bible stories early Christians pictured most. He is painted again and again on the walls of the catacombs in Rome and carved on stone coffins.

WHY JONAH?

Jesus called His death and rising the sign of Jonah, Matthew 12:40. For Christians burying their dead, Jonah coming up alive from the monster was a picture of the resurrection.

JONAH RESTING

Jonah under his plant often looks like Endymion, a sleeping hero in Greek stories. Christians borrowed the familiar pose to show rest and peace in God.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Before Christians could worship openly, ordinary Christians knew Jonah's story and read it as a promise that death would not win.

THE PLANT IN STONE

Another piece in the group, Jonah Under the Gourd Vine, shows Jonah lying back under his vine, the plant of 4:6.

SEE ALSO

The Sign of Jonah and Could a Man Live Inside a Fish?, in this book.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

THE PUZZLE
The Gospels say Jesus died on the day before the Sabbath and rose early on the first day of the week. Counted our way, that is not three full days and three full nights. How do the views explain it?

Every View
MATTHEW 27:62 TO 64 · MARK 8:31 · 1 CORINTHIANS 15:4

VIEW 1: JEWISH COUNTING
Jews counted any part of a day as a day. A rabbi from about AD 100 said a day and a night make one unit, and part of one counts as the whole. Friday, Saturday and Sunday make three days, so Friday to Sunday fits. Most churches hold this view.

VIEW 2: A THURSDAY CROSS
Some say Jesus died on Thursday, because there was more than one Sabbath that week, the Passover Sabbath and the weekly one, John 19:31. That gives three nights in the tomb.

VIEW 3: A WEDNESDAY CROSS
Others count exactly 72 hours, from Wednesday evening to Saturday evening, so Jesus rose just before the first day began.

VIEW 4: THE SIGN IS THE MESSAGE
Luke says Jonah was a sign to the Ninevites, Luke 11:30. Some say the sign is Jonah himself, a man back from death preaching repentance, more than the exact count of hours.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Jesus pointed to Jonah to predict His own death and resurrection. The tomb was empty, and One greater than Jonah is here, Matthew 12:41.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
Second chance. This time Jonah goes. His whole sermon is eight words in English: Forty more days and Nineveh will be overturned. And it works. The whole city fasts, even the king and the cows wear sackcloth, and God holds back the disaster.

THE NINEVITES REPENT // MATTHEW 12:38–42; LUKE 11:29–32

1 Then the word of Yahweh came to Jonah
a second time: 2 "Get up! Go to the great
city of Nineveh and proclaim to it the
message that I give you."

3 This time Jonah got up and went to Nineveh, in accordance with the word of Yahweh.

Now Nineveh was an exceedingly great city, requiring a three-day journey. 4 On the first day of his journey, Jonah set out into the city and proclaimed, "Forty more days and Nineveh will be overturned!"

5 And the Ninevites believed God. They proclaimed a fast and dressed in sackcloth, from the greatest of them to the least.

6 When word reached the king of Nineveh, he got up from his throne, took off his royal robe, covered himself with sackcloth, and sat in ashes.

7 Then he issued a proclamation in Nineveh:

"By the decree of the king and his nobles:
Let no man or beast, herd or flock, taste
anything at all. They must not eat or
drink. 8 Furthermore, let both man and
beast be covered with sackcloth, and
have everyone call out earnestly to
God. Let each one turn from his evil
ways and from the violence in his
hands. 9 Who knows? God may turn
and relent; He may turn from His fierce
anger, so that we will not perish."

10 When God saw their actions—that they had turned from their evil ways—He re-

JON 3:3 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The ruins of Nineveh by the Tigris, across from Mosul in Iraq, with the mounds of its walls and palaces, see The Walls of Nineveh Field Notes page, p.1424FIELD NOTES p.1424
JON 3:3 [NOTE] A THREE DAY JOURNEY. It may mean the whole Nineveh area, or a three day visit to walk the streets and do business. See The Walls of Nineveh.
JON 3:4 [NOTE] FORTY MORE DAYS. Jonah's sermon prints black, because the Bible does not give God's own words for it. In the Hebrew it is only five words.
JON 3:5 [FORESHADOW] A pagan city repented at one prophet's preaching → MT 12:41; LK 11:30-32 · MEDIUM p.1567
JON 3:5 [NOTE] THE WHOLE CITY BELIEVED. Jesus said the men of Nineveh will stand at the judgment with His generation and condemn it, because they repented at Jonah's preaching, Matthew 12:41. See Did Nineveh Really Repent?
JON 3:7 [NOTE] THE KING'S DECREE. The king speaks, not God, so his words print black.
JON 3:8 [NOTE] ANIMALS IN SACKCLOTH. It sounds strange, but ancient people did this. The Greek historian Herodotus says the Persians cut the manes of their horses in mourning, and Judith 4:10 has cattle in sackcloth.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE WALLS OF NINEVEH

JONAH 3:3 · 4:11 · GENESIS 10:11 · NAHUM 2:6 TO 8



Nineveh's western city wall, now a long mound, on the right, with the palace mound of Kuyunjik ahead. The gate at far right was rebuilt in modern times. Photo Fredarch, 1990, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of Nineveh, beside the Tigris River across from Mosul in Iraq. Long mounds still show where its walls ran, with two big ruin mounds inside: Kuyunjik, the palace hill, and Nebi Yunus.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived at Nineveh for thousands of years. The great walls were built by King Sennacherib, about 700 BC, a few generations after Jonah.

HOW BIG

Sennacherib's walls ran about seven and a half miles around, with fifteen gates. He boasted that he made the city far bigger than before.

WHAT WAS FOUND

Austen Henry Layard and others dug at Nineveh from the 1840s on. They found palaces lined with carved stone pictures and the library of King Ashurbanipal, thousands of clay tablets now in the British Museum.

REAL OR REBUILT?

Most of the walls today are earth mounds. Iraq rebuilt a few gates in modern times, such as the Mashki and Adad Gates, so photos of tall brick gates show modern work on old foundations. ISIS damaged several in 2015 and 2016.

AN EXCEEDINGLY GREAT CITY

Jonah 3:3 says it took three days to go through. Some think that counts the whole Nineveh area with its towns, some think a three day visit. In the Hebrew it is literally a great city to God, which may just mean very great, or a city great in God's eyes.

THE KING OF NINEVEH

In Jonah's day the Assyrian king usually lived at Kalhu, today called Nimrud. Some think the king of Nineveh means the king of Assyria, others a ruler of the city.

THE END OF NINEVEH

More than a century after Jonah, Nahum warned of its fall. In 612 BC Babylon and the Medes broke through these walls and burned the city.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Jonah's great city was real, and it was huge. The God who spared it once later judged it, just as the prophets said.

SEE ALSO

The Palace Under Jonah's Tomb, in this book; Sennacherib's Prism, 2 Kings, p.1103.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE PALACE, TRADITION FOR THE TOMB

THE PALACE UNDER JONAH'S TOMB

JONAH 3:6 · 2 KINGS 19:37



Iraqi archaeologists dig the grand entrance of an Assyrian building on Nebi Yunus in 1990, with the mosque of the prophet Jonah behind, destroyed in 2014. Photo Fredarch, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

Nebi Yunus, the prophet Jonah, is the second big ruin mound inside Nineveh's walls. For centuries a mosque on top was said to hold Jonah's tomb, and before that there was a church.

THE TOMB

No one knows where Jonah was buried. Another old tradition puts his grave near his hometown, Gath hepher. The mosque was a holy place for Muslims, Christians and Jews.

THE PALACE

Under the mound lay an Assyrian palace and arsenal used by King Esarhaddon, Sennacherib's son, in the 600s BC. Iraqi teams dug parts of it, like the entrance in the photo.

2014 AND 2017

ISIS blew up the mosque in July 2014 and dug tunnels into the mound to steal and sell artifacts. After Mosul was freed in 2017, archaeologists went into the tunnels and found palace walls, carved stone figures and inscriptions of Esarhaddon.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Jonah's name stayed tied to Nineveh for well over a thousand years, and the city's buried palaces are still giving up their secrets.

lented from the disaster He had threatened to bring upon them.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DID NINEVEH REALLY REPENT?

A Whole City Turns

JONAH 3:5 TO 10

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

The people believed God, fasted and put on sackcloth, from the greatest to the least. The king left his throne and sat in ashes, and God relented from the disaster, 3:5 to 10.

THE QUESTION

No Assyrian record tells of a prophet from Israel or a city turning to Israel's God. Did it really happen, and did it last?

Every View

MATTHEW 12:41 · NAHUM 3:1 TO 7 · 2 KINGS 17:5 TO 6

VIEW 1: IT HAPPENED

Many take it as real history. Jesus said the men of Nineveh will stand at the judgment with His generation and condemn it, because they repented at Jonah's preaching, Matthew 12:41. Kings did not usually record their own humbling, so silence in the records is no surprise.

TROUBLED TIMES

Assyria went through hard years after about 770 BC. Its records list revolts, plague and a total eclipse of the sun in 763 BC. Some think a scared city would be ready to listen to a prophet. See The Eclipse of 763 BC, Amos, p.1400.

VIEW 2: A TEACHING STORY

Scholars who read Jonah as a teaching story say the city's turning is part of the lesson: if even Nineveh can turn, anyone can.

JON 3:10 [NOTE] DISASTER HELD BACK. God's warnings are often a call to turn. When people turn, He can hold back what He threatened, Jeremiah 18:7 to 8.

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

VIEW 3: REAL BUT SHORT
Others note that it did not last. Assyria destroyed Israel within about 40 to 60 years of Jonah's day, 2 Kings 17:5 to 6, and Nahum later describes Nineveh as full of lies and blood, Nahum 3:1.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
God takes a turning heart seriously, even in an enemy city, and He would rather forgive than destroy.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS
Jonah is furious that God was nice to his enemies. I knew You were gracious, he says, that's why I ran! He sulks outside the city. God grows a plant for shade, sends a worm to kill it, and asks the last question of the book: You cared about a plant. Should I not care about a city full of people?

JONAH'S ANGER AT YAHWEH'S COMPASSION

1 Jonah, however, was greatly displeased,
and he became angry. 2 So he prayed to
Yahweh, saying, "O Yahweh, is this not
what I said while I was still in my own
country? This is why I was so quick to flee
toward Tarshish. I knew that You are a
gracious and compassionate God, slow to
anger, abounding in loving devotion—One
who relents from sending disaster. 3 And
now, O Yahweh, please take my life from
me, for it is better for me to die than to
live."

4 But Yahweh replied, "Have you any right
to be angry?"

5 Then Jonah left the city and sat down
east of it, where he made himself a shel-
ter and sat in its shade to see what would
happen to the city. 6 So Yahweh God ap-
pointed a vine, and it grew up to provide
shade over Jonah's head to ease his dis-
comfort, and Jonah was greatly pleased
with the plant.

JON 4:1 [NOTE] ANGRY AT MERCY. Jonah was glad to be saved by grace in chapter 2 and angry that Nineveh got the same grace in chapter 4. See Why Was Jonah Angry?

JON 4:2 [NOTE] GRACIOUS AND COMPASSIONATE. Jonah is describing God, not quoting Him, so it prints black. His words come from God's own words to Moses, Exodus 34:6. Joel 2:13 uses the same line.

JON 4:6 [MIRACLE] Plant grew up in a day; worm destroyed it

THE BIG QUESTION

WHY WAS JONAH ANGRY?

Mad at Mercy

JONAH 4:1 TO 11

WHAT HE SAID
Jonah finally tells God why he ran: I knew that You are a gracious and compassionate God, slow to anger, abounding in loving devotion, 4:2. He was not afraid God would fail. He was afraid God would forgive.

THE QUESTION
Why would a prophet of God be angry enough to die because a city was spared?

A Closer Look

EXODUS 34:6 · LUKE 15:25 TO 32 · MATTHEW 5:44

A CRUEL ENEMY
Assyria was known for terrible cruelty to the peoples it conquered, and it was the great threat to Israel. Jonah may have known that a spared Assyria could one day destroy his own people, and within about 40 to 60 years it did.

PROUD OF HIS PEOPLE
Jonah loved Israel and wanted God's mercy to stay with Israel. Many see his anger as national pride that left no room for outsiders.

HIS REPUTATION
Some think he felt like a false prophet, since he said Nineveh would fall in forty days and it did not.

GOD'S ANSWER
God does not yell. He grows a plant, takes it away, and asks a question: You cared about the plant, which you neither tended nor made grow. So should I not care about the great city of Nineveh, which has more than 120,000 people, and many cattle as well? 4:10 to 11.

THE OLDER BROTHER
Jesus told of a son who came home and an older brother who was angry at the party, Luke 15:28. Like Jonah's book, that story ends without telling us what the angry one did.

WHAT IT SHOWS
It is easy to love grace for yourself and

JON 4:6 [NOTE] THE PLANT. In Hebrew, qiqayon, maybe a castor bean plant or a gourd. Augustine says a church nearly rioted when Jerome called it ivy.

MIRACLES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

hate it for your enemies. God loves people we would rather see judged.

7 When dawn came the next day, God appointed a worm that attacked the plant so that it withered.

8 As the sun was rising, God appointed a scorching east wind, and the sun beat down on Jonah's head so that he grew faint and wished to die, saying, "It is better for me to die than to live."

9 Then God asked Jonah, "Have you any right to be angry about the plant?"

"I do," he replied. "I am angry enough to die!"

10 But Yahweh said, "You cared about the plant, which you neither tended nor made grow. It sprang up in a night and perished in a night. 11 So should I not care about the great city of Nineveh, which has more than 120,000 people who cannot tell their right hand from their left, and many cattle as well?"

JON 4:11 [NOTABLE] The book ends with God's question and no answer from Jonah. God cares about people His prophet wanted judged, and the reader has to answer too.

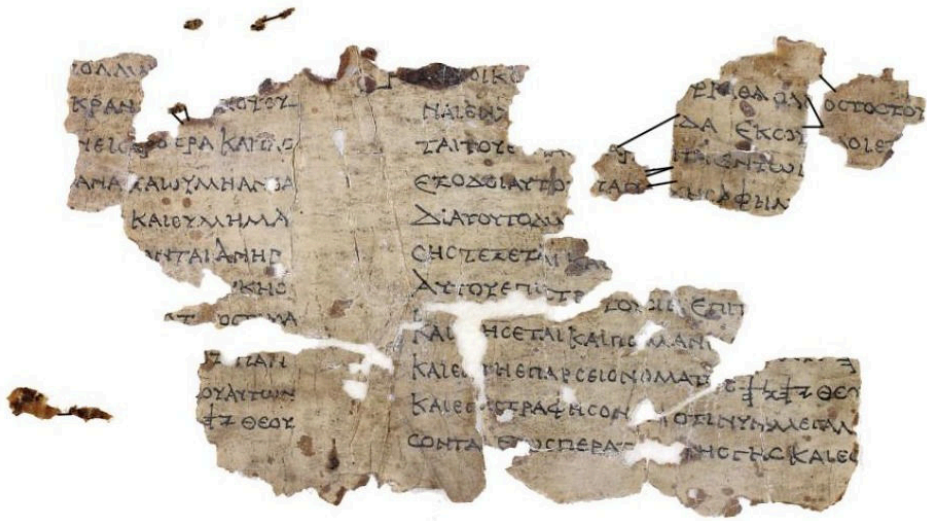
JON 4:11 [NOTE] RIGHT HAND FROM LEFT. This may mean little children, or people who did not know right from wrong.

BOOK 33 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

MICAH

Who is like Yahweh?

AUTHOR	Micah of Moresheth, a farm town about 25 miles southwest of Jerusalem 1:1, 1:14. A small town preacher who took on the big city.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About 740 to 700 BC, while Jotham, Ahaz and Hezekiah ruled Judah.
DATE WRITTEN	About 735 to 700 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Samaria, capital of the northern kingdom of Israel, and Jerusalem, capital of Judah.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Micah appears in several Dead Sea Scroll era copies of the Twelve Prophets, including the Hebrew scroll from Wadi Murabbaat and the Greek scroll from Nahal Hever, plus a commentary on Micah from Qumran Cave 1.
KEY VERSE	Micah 6:8. Act justly, love mercy, walk humbly with your God.



ONE OF THE OLDEST COPIES OF MICAH

This is a piece of the Greek Minor Prophets Scroll, first brought out by Bedouin in 1952 and traced to the Cave of Horror at Nahal Hever, near the Dead Sea. It was copied by hand about 50 BC to AD 50, around the time Jesus was born. This piece holds part of Micah 5, including the promise that a ruler would come out of Bethlehem Ephrathah, 5:2. Look for God's name, YHWH, written in the old Hebrew letters right in the middle of the Greek words.

Hebrew pieces of Micah from about the same time were also found in Cave 4 at Qumran. A Hebrew scroll of the Minor Prophets from Wadi Murabba'at, copied around AD 100, holds most of Micah. Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

Assyria is the superpower of the day, and it is hungry. In 722 BC it wipes out Samaria and the northern kingdom, just as Micah warned in 1:6. In 701 BC King Sennacherib invades Judah, destroys the fortress city of Lachish and surrounds Jerusalem. Micah preaches through all of it, at the same time as Isaiah. The two even share a famous passage, Micah 4:1 to 3 and Isaiah 2:2 to 4.

What Was Going Wrong

IDOLS EVERYWHERE. Samaria and Jerusalem were full of carved images, sacred pillars and Asherah poles 1:5 to 7, 5:12 to 14. God says He will smash every one.
CHILD SACRIFICE. King Ahaz, who ruled during Micah's ministry, burned his own son as a sacrifice 2 Kings 16:3. That is why Micah 6:7 asks, Shall I present my firstborn for my transgression? God's answer in 6:8 is a hard no.
WITCHCRAFT. Sorcery and fortune tellers were big business 5:12.
LAND GRABS. The rich schemed at night to seize fields and houses from families 2:1 to 2.
BOUGHT JUDGES AND PREACHERS. Leaders took bribes, priests taught for a price, and prophets preached for money 3:11.
FAKE WEIGHTS. Merchants cheated customers with rigged scales 6:10 to 11.

The Idiot Proof Summary

The people of God have become just like everybody else. The rich cheat the poor, judges take bribes, and preachers say whatever pays. God warns that judgment is coming for both Samaria and Jerusalem. But judgment is never the last word. God promises to gather His people again, and to send a Ruler from little Bethlehem who will shepherd them and be their peace. Micah is seven short chapters, and it swings back and forth between doom and hope like a courtroom drama with a happy ending.

Micah at a Glance: Three Rounds of Hear This

CH 1 to 2 **ROUND 1: HEAR, O PEOPLES 1:2**
Judgment on Samaria and Judah, then a promise to gather the remnant.

CH 3 to 5 **ROUND 2: HEAR NOW, O LEADERS 3:1**
Corrupt leaders exposed, then the last days and the Ruler from Bethlehem.

CH 6 to 7 **ROUND 3: HEAR NOW WHAT YAHWEH SAYS 6:1**
God's courtroom case, then the God who throws sins into the sea.

Where Jesus Shows Up

MICAH 5:2 A Ruler born in Bethlehem whose origins are from eternity. Quoted to Herod in Matthew 2:5 to 6.

MICAH 5:1 The Judge of Israel struck on the cheek. Compare Matthew 27:30.

MICAH 5:4 TO 5 The Shepherd who will be our peace. Compare John 10:11 and Ephesians 2:14.

MICAH 7:6 Jesus quotes this line in Matthew 10:35 to 36.

GOD'S NAMES IN MICAH
Micah uses Yahweh, God's personal name, again and again. In 1:2 he says Adonai Yahweh, printed here as Lord Yahweh, which means Master Yahweh. In 4:4 he says Yahweh of Hosts, which means Yahweh who commands the armies of heaven. Elohim, printed God, is the mighty Creator.

What to Watch for in Micah

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (5)	5:1-2, 5:4-5
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (4)	1:6, 1:9, 3:12, 4:10
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	7:6
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	4:1-3
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	1:13
DEMONIC (7)	1:7, 3:6-7, 3:11, 5:12-14, 6:7, 6:16
GOD SPEAKING (34 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

A SERMON THAT SAVED A LIFE
About a hundred years after Micah, Jeremiah was on trial for his life. The elders stood up and quoted Micah 3:12, and Jeremiah was spared. Read it in Jeremiah 26:18 to 19.

SWORDS INTO PLOWSHARES
The words of Micah 4:3 gave their name to a famous statue in the garden of the United Nations in New York, Let Us Beat Swords into Plowshares. It was a gift from the Soviet Union in 1959, so an officially atheist government ended up quoting the Bible.

A PROPHET WHO PUNS
Micah 1:10 to 15 is a string of wordplays on town names. Beth Leaphrah means house of dust, so its people are told to roll in the dust.

HIS NAME IS THE QUESTION
Micah is short for Micaiah, which means Who is like Yahweh? The book ends with the same question in 7:18. Who is a God like You?

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes. King Hezekiah took Micah seriously. He smashed the idols and sacred pillars and even broke up the bronze snake Moses had made, because people had started worshiping it 2 Kings 18:4. A century later Jeremiah 26:19 says Hezekiah feared Yahweh and God held back the disaster. One small town preacher helped turn a whole nation around.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · ARCHAEOLOGY · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God files a lawsuit against His own people, and the whole earth is called in as a witness. Micah gets so upset he announces he will walk around barefoot and stripped, which is a lot for a Tuesday. Then he roasts about a dozen towns with puns on their own names, like a prophet doing crowd work.

JUDGMENT TO COME // ISAIAH 7:17–25

1 This is the word of Yahweh that came to
Micah the Moreshite in the days of
Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of
Judah—what he saw regarding Samaria
and Jerusalem:

2 Hear, O peoples, all of you;
listen, O earth, and everyone in it!
May the Lord Yahweh bear witness
against you,
the Lord from His holy temple.
3 For behold, Yahweh comes forth
from His dwelling place;
He will come down and tread
on the high places of the earth.
4 The mountains will melt beneath Him,
and the valleys will split apart,
like wax before the fire,
like water rushing down a slope.

5 All this is for the transgression of Jacob
and the sins of the house of Israel.
What is the transgression of Jacob?
Is it not Samaria?
And what is the high place of Judah?
Is it not Jerusalem?

6 Therefore I will make Samaria
a heap of rubble in the open field,
a planting area for a vineyard.
I will pour her stones into the valley
and expose her foundations.
7 All her carved images will be smashed to
pieces;
all her wages will be burned in the fire,
and I will destroy all her idols.
Since she collected the wages of a prostitute,
they will be used again on a prostitute.

MIC 1:6 [PROPHECY] Samaria would become a heap of rubble and her stones poured into the valley → 2KI 17:5-6; 2KI 18:9-10 p.635
MIC 1:7 [DEMONIC] God will smash Samaria's carved images and burn her idols

WEEPING AND MOURNING

8 Because of this I will lament and wail;
I will walk barefoot and naked.
I will howl like a jackal
and mourn like an ostrich.
9 For her wound is incurable;
it has reached even Judah;
it has approached the gate of my people,
as far as Jerusalem itself.

10 Do not tell it in Gath; do not weep at all.
Roll in the dust in Beth-leaphrah.
11 Depart in shameful nakedness,
O dwellers of Shaphir.
The dwellers of Zaanan
will not come out.
Beth-ezel is in mourning;
its support is taken from you.
12 For the dwellers of Maroth pined for
good,
but calamity came down from Yahweh,
even to the gate of Jerusalem.

13 Harness your chariot horses,
O dweller of Lachish.
You were the beginning of sin to the
Daughter of Zion,
for the transgressions of Israel were
found in you.
14 Therefore, send farewell gifts to More-
sheth-gath;
the houses of Achzib will prove decep-
tive
to the kings of Israel.
15 I will again bring a conqueror against
you,
O dweller of Mareshah.
The glory of Israel will come to Adullam.
16 Shave yourselves bald and cut off your
hair
in mourning for your precious children;
make yourselves as bald as an eagle,
for they will go from you into exile.

MIC 1:9 [PROPHECY] Samaria's wound would reach Judah and come to the gate of Jerusalem → 2KI 18:13-17; IS 36:1-2 · MEDIUM p.641
MIC 1:13 [PROPHECY] Lachish would have to flee with chariots from the enemy → HISTORY: Sennacherib of Assyria besieged and took Lachish in 701 BC. Found on his Lachish wall carvings from Nineveh, now in the British Museum, and in the burned ruins of Lachish. · MEDIUM
MIC 1:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Lachish Reliefs of Sennacherib → FIELD NOTES p.1433

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE LACHISH RELIEFS

MICAH 1:9 TO 16 · 2 KINGS 18:13 TO 14 · ISAIAH 36:1 TO 2 · 2 CHRONICLES 32:9



Photo: Mike Peel (www.mikepeel.net). Lachish Relief, British Museum, Room 10. Licensed under Creative Commons Attribution Share Alike (CC BY-SA 4.0). Source: Wikimedia Commons, File: Lachish_Relief,_British_Museum_10.jpg. Used unaltered except for size.

WHAT IT IS

A series of carved stone panels from the palace of the Assyrian king Sennacherib. They show his army attacking the walled city of Lachish in Judah: siege ramps, battering rams, archers, and families of Judah being led away into exile.

HOW OLD IT IS

Carved about 700 to 690 BC for Sennacherib's palace, soon after his army captured Lachish in 701 BC.

WHAT MICAH WARNED VS WHAT THE STONE SHOWS

Micah 1:13 tells Lachish to hitch up the chariot horses and run. The reliefs show Lachish under attack and falling. Micah 1:16 says the people will go into exile. The reliefs show families of Judah marched away. Micah 1:9 says the disaster reaches the gate of Jerusalem. Sennacherib's own record says he trapped Hezekiah in Jerusalem but never says he took it.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Dug up by the British explorer Austen Henry Layard in the 1840s in the ruins of Sennacherib's palace at Nineveh, in modern Iraq.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The British Museum in London, Room 10.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The Bible says the king of Assyria attacked Lachish and sent messengers from there to Hezekiah in Jerusalem. Sennacherib was so proud of taking Lachish that he put it on his palace walls.

THE DIRT AGREES

Archaeologists at Tel Lachish in Israel found the actual Assyrian siege ramp, arrowheads, and sling stones from the battle.

THE PART HE LEFT OUT

Sennacherib's prism brags that he shut Hezekiah up in Jerusalem like a bird in a cage, but it never claims he took the city. The Bible explains why in 2 Kings 19:35 to 36.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Micah never names Sennacherib or gives a date. Most scholars read Micah 1:10 to 16 as the Assyrian march through the Judean foothills, and the reliefs show that march at Lachish.

GOD SPEAKING

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The rich are lying awake at night plotting how to take their neighbor's house, which is basically a real estate deal with extra steps. When Micah calls it out, the crowd tells him to stop preaching. Micah fires back that if a guy showed up promising free wine and beer, they would hire him as pastor on the spot.

WOE TO OPPRESSORS

1 Woe to those who devise iniquity
and plot evil on their beds!
At morning's light they accomplish it
because the power is in their hands.
2 They covet fields and seize them;
they take away houses.
They deprive a man of his home,
a fellow man of his inheritance.

3 Therefore this is what Yahweh says:

"I am planning against this nation a disaster
from which you cannot free your necks.
Then you will not walk so proudly,
for it will be a time of calamity.
4 In that day they will take up a proverb against you
and taunt you with this bitter lamentation:
'We are utterly ruined!
He has changed the portion of my people.
How He has removed it from me!
He has allotted our fields to traitors.'"

5 Therefore, you will have no one in the assembly of Yahweh
to divide the land by lot.

REPROOF OF FALSE PROPHETS // EZEKIEL 13:1–16

6 "Do not preach," they preach.
"Do not preach these things;
disgrace will not overtake us."
7 Should it be said, O house of Jacob,
"Is the Spirit of Yahweh impatient?
Are these the things He does?"

Do not My words bring good
to him who walks uprightly?
8 But of late My people have risen up
like an enemy:
You strip off the splendid robe
from unsuspecting passersby
like men returning from battle.
9 You drive the women of My people
from their pleasant homes.
You take away My blessing
from their children forever.

10 Arise and depart,
for this is not your place of rest,
because its defilement brings destruction—
a grievous destruction!
11 If a man of wind were to come
and say falsely,
"I will preach to you of wine and strong drink,"
he would be just the preacher for this people!

THE REMNANT OF ISRAEL // MICAH 5:7–15

12 I will surely gather all of you, O Jacob;
I will collect the remnant of Israel.
I will bring them together like sheep in a pen,
like a flock in the midst of its pasture—
a noisy throng.
13 One who breaks open the way
will go up before them;
they will break through the gate,
and go out by it.
Their King will pass through before them,
Yahweh as their leader.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Micah goes after the rulers, the priests and the paid prophets all at once, and it is not a gentle sermon. He says they treat people like meat for a stew and only preach peace to whoever feeds them. The chapter ends with Jerusalem plowed like a farm field, a warning so memorable that about a hundred years later it saved Jeremiah's life.

RULERS AND PROPHETS CONDEMNED

1 Then I said:

"Hear now, O leaders of Jacob,
you rulers of the house of Israel.
Should you not know justice?
2 You hate good and love evil.
You tear the skin from my people
and strip the flesh from their bones.
3 You eat the flesh of my people

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

after stripping off their skin
and breaking their bones.
You chop them up like flesh for the cooking pot,
like meat in a cauldron."

4 Then they will cry out to Yahweh,
but He will not answer them.
At that time He will hide His face from them
because of the evil they have done.

5 This is what Yahweh says:

"As for the prophets
who lead My people astray,
who proclaim peace
while they chew with their teeth,
but declare war against one
who puts nothing in their mouths:
6 Therefore night will come over you without visions,
and darkness without divination.
The sun will set on these prophets,
and the daylight will turn black over them.
7 Then the seers will be ashamed
and the diviners will be disgraced.
They will all cover their mouths
because there is no answer from God."

8 As for me, however, I am filled with power
by the Spirit of Yahweh,
with justice and courage,
to declare to Jacob his transgression
and to Israel his sin.

9 Now hear this, O leaders of the house of Jacob
and rulers of the house of Israel,
who despise justice
and pervert all that is right,
10 who build Zion with bloodshed
and Jerusalem with iniquity.
11 Her leaders judge for a bribe,
her priests teach for a price,
and her prophets practice divination for money.
Yet they lean upon Yahweh, saying,
"Is not Yahweh among us?
No disaster can come upon us."

MIC 3:6 [DEMONIC] False prophets lose their visions and the diviners are disgraced

12 Therefore, because of you,
Zion will be plowed like a field,
Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble,
and the temple mount a wooded ridge.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Plot twist. After all the doom, Micah zooms out to the last days, when the nations stream to God and melt their weapons into farm tools. Everybody gets their own vine and fig tree, and nobody has to lock the door. Then he tells Jerusalem they are headed to Babylon, which is a strange travel brochure, but God promises to rescue them there.

THE MOUNTAIN OF THE HOUSE OF YAHWEH // ISAIAH 2:1–4

1 In the last days the mountain of the house of Yahweh
will be established as the chief of the mountains;
it will be raised above the hills,
and the peoples will stream to it.

2 And many nations will come and say:

"Come, let us go up to the mountain of Yahweh,
to the house of the God of Jacob.
He will teach us His ways,
so that we may walk in His paths."

For the law will go forth from Zion
and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem.
3 Then He will judge between many peoples
and arbitrate for strong nations far and wide.
Then they will beat their swords into plowshares
and their spears into pruning hooks.
Nation will no longer take up the sword against nation,
nor will they train anymore for war.
4 And each man will sit under his own vine
and under his own fig tree,
with no one to frighten him.

MIC 3:11 [DEMONIC] Jerusalem's prophets practice divination for money

MIC 3:12 [PROPHECY] Zion would be plowed like a field; Jerusalem become a heap of ruins → 2KI 25:9-10; JER 26:18 p.660

MIC 4:1 [PROPHECY] In the last days nations would stream to Yahweh's mountain, and swords would be beaten into plowshares → STILL TO COME

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING

For the mouth of Yahweh of Hosts has spoken.
5 Though all the nations
may walk in the name of their gods,
yet we will walk in the name of Yahweh our God
forever and ever.

THE RESTORATION OF ZION // ZECHARIAH 8:1–23

6 "On that day," declares Yahweh,
"I will gather the lame;
I will assemble the outcast,
even those whom I have afflicted.
7 And I will make the lame into a remnant,
the outcast into a strong nation.
Then Yahweh will rule over them in Mount Zion
from that day and forever.
8 And you, O watchtower of the flock,
O stronghold of the Daughter of Zion—
the former dominion will be restored to you;
sovereignty will come to the Daughter of Jerusalem."

9 Why do you now cry aloud?
Is there no king among you?
Has your counselor perished
so that anguish grips you like a woman in labor?
10 Writhe in agony, O Daughter of Zion,
like a woman in labor.
For now you will leave the city
and camp in the open fields.
You will go to Babylon;
there you will be rescued;
there Yahweh will redeem you
from the hand of your enemies!

11 But now many nations
have assembled against you,
saying, "Let her be defiled,
and let us feast our eyes on Zion."
12 But they do not know the thoughts of Yahweh
or understand His plan,
for He has gathered them
like sheaves to the threshing floor.
13 Rise and thresh, O Daughter of Zion,
for I will give you horns of iron
and hooves of bronze
to break to pieces many peoples.
Then you will devote their gain to Yahweh,
their wealth to the Lord of all the earth.

- MIC 4:10 **[PROPHECY]** Zion would go to Babylon and there Yahweh would rescue her → 2KI 25:11; EZR 1:1-3 p.660

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

The most famous chapter in the book. A tiny town called Bethlehem, so small it barely made the map, gets picked to produce a Ruler whose origins go back to eternity. About seven hundred years later the chief priests quoted this exact verse to King Herod, which did not make Herod's week any better.

A RULER FROM BETHLEHEM // MATTHEW 2:1–12

1 Now, O daughter of troops,
mobilize your troops;
for a siege is laid against us!
With a rod they will strike the cheek
of the judge of Israel.
2 *But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,*
who are small among the clans of Judah,
out of you will come forth for Me
One to be ruler over Israel—
One whose origins are of old,
from the days of eternity.
3 Therefore Israel will be abandoned
until she who is in labor has given birth;
then the rest of His brothers will return
to the children of Israel.

4 He will stand and shepherd His flock
in the strength of Yahweh,
in the majestic name of Yahweh His God.
And they will dwell securely,
for then His greatness will extend
to the ends of the earth.
5 And He will be our peace
when Assyria invades our land
and tramples our citadels.
We will raise against it seven shepherds,

- MIC 5:1 **[PROPHECY]** The judge of Israel would be struck on the cheek with a rod → MT 27:30; MK 15:19 · MEDIUM p.1598
- MIC 5:2 **[PROPHECY]** Born in Bethlehem → MT 2:1-6 p.1551
- MIC 5:2 **[PROPHECY]** Ruler in Israel → LK 1:33 p.1645
- MIC 5:2 **[PROPHECY]** From everlasting → JN 8:58 p.1714
- MIC 5:2 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 2:6 p.1551
- MIC 5:2 **[ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JN 7:42 p.1711
- MIC 5:4 **[PROPHECY]** The Ruler would shepherd His flock in the strength of Yahweh, His greatness would reach the ends of the earth, and He would be our peace → JN 10:11; EPH 2:14 · MEDIUM p.1717

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

even eight leaders of men.
6 And they will rule the land of Assyria with the sword,
and the land of Nimrod with the blade drawn.
So He will deliver us
when Assyria invades our land
and marches into our borders.

THE REMNANT OF JACOB // MICAH 2:12–13

7 Then the remnant of Jacob will be
in the midst of many peoples
like dew from Yahweh,
like showers on the grass,
which do not wait for man
or linger for mankind.
8 Then the remnant of Jacob will be among the nations,
in the midst of many peoples,
like a lion among the beasts of the forest,
like a young lion among flocks of sheep,
which tramples and tears as it passes through,
with no one to rescue them.
9 Your hand will be lifted over your foes,
and all your enemies will be cut off.

10 "In that day,"
declares Yahweh,
"I will remove your horses from among you
and wreck your chariots.
11 I will remove the cities of your land
and tear down all your strongholds.
12 I will cut the sorceries from your hand,
and you will have no fortune-tellers.
13 I will also cut off the carved images
and sacred pillars from among you,
so that you will no longer bow down
to the work of your own hands.
14 I will root out the Asherah poles from your midst
and demolish your cities.
15 I will take vengeance in anger and wrath
upon the nations that have not obeyed Me."

MIC 5:12 [DEMONIC] God will cut off sorceries and fortune tellers from His people
MIC 5:13 [DEMONIC] God will destroy carved images, sacred pillars, and Asherah poles

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

God takes His people to court, and the mountains are the jury. His opening question is basically, What did I ever do to you? The people wonder if God wants rams, rivers of oil or even their firstborn, and God answers with the simplest job description ever written: do justice, love mercy, walk humbly.

THE CASE AGAINST ISRAEL

1 Hear now what Yahweh says:

"Arise, plead your case before the mountains,
and let the hills hear your voice.
2 Hear, O mountains, Yahweh's indictment,
you enduring foundations of the earth.
For Yahweh has a case against His people,
and He will argue it against Israel:

3 'My people, what have I done to you?
Testify against Me how I have wearied you!
4 For I brought you up from the land of Egypt
and redeemed you from the house of slavery.
I sent Moses before you,
as well as Aaron and Miriam.
5 My people, remember what Balak king of Moab counseled
and what Balaam son of Beor answered.
Remember your journey from Shittim to Gilgal,
so that you may acknowledge the righteousness of Yahweh.'"

6 With what shall I come before Yahweh
when I bow before the God on high?
Should I come to Him with burnt offerings,
with year-old calves?
7 Would Yahweh be pleased with thousands of rams,
with ten thousand rivers of oil?
Shall I present my firstborn for my transgression,
the fruit of my body for the sin of my soul?

8 He has shown you, O man, what is good.

MIC 6:7 [DEMONIC] Shall I give my firstborn child as an offering for my sin

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

And what does Yahweh require of you
but to act justly, to love mercy,
and to walk humbly with your God?

THE PUNISHMENT OF ISRAEL

9 The voice of Yahweh calls out to the city
(and it is sound wisdom to fear Your name):
"Heed the rod
and the One who ordained it.
10 Can I forget any longer,
O house of the wicked,
the treasures of wickedness
and the short measure, which is accursed?
11 Can I excuse dishonest scales
or bags of false weights?
12 For the wealthy of the city
are full of violence,
and its residents speak lies;
their tongues are deceitful in their mouths.
13 Therefore I am striking you severely,
to ruin you because of your sins.
14 You will eat but not be satisfied,
and your hunger will remain with you.
What you acquire, you will not preserve;
and what you save, I will give to the sword.
15 You will sow but not reap;
you will press olives but not anoint yourselves with oil;
you will tread grapes but not drink the wine.
16 You have kept the statutes of Omri
and all the practices of Ahab's house;
you have followed their counsel.
Therefore I will make you a desolation,
and your inhabitants an object of contempt;
you will bear the scorn of the nations."

MIC 6:16 **[DEMONIC]** Judah follows the ways of Omri and Ahab's house

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Micah looks around and cannot find one honest person, not even at the family dinner table. But he refuses to quit: I will look to Yahweh. The book ends by asking the same question Micah's own name asks, Who is a God like You? He is the God who throws your sins into the deepest part of the sea, and as Corrie ten Boom put it, then posts a sign that says No Fishing.

ISRAEL'S GREAT MISERY // MATTHEW 10:34–39; LUKE 12:49–53

1 Woe is me!
For I am like one gathering summer fruit
at the gleaning of the vineyard;
there is no cluster to eat,
no early fig that I crave.
2 The godly man has perished from the earth;
there is no one upright among men.
They all lie in wait for blood;
they hunt one another with a net.
3 Both hands are skilled at evil;
the prince and the judge demand a bribe.
When the powerful utters his evil desire,
they all conspire together.
4 The best of them is like a brier;
the most upright is sharper than a hedge of thorns.
The day for your watchmen has come,
the day of your visitation.
Now is the time of their confusion.
5 Do not rely on a friend;
do not trust in a companion.
Seal the doors of your mouth
from her who lies in your arms.
6 *For a son dishonors his father,*
a daughter rises against her mother,
and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.
A man's enemies are the members
of his own household.

ISRAEL'S CONFESSION AND COMFORT

7 But as for me, I will look to Yahweh;

MIC 7:6 **[FORESHADOW]** A man's enemies would be the people of his own household → MT 10:35-36; LK 12:53 · MEDIUM p.1564
MIC 7:6 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 10:35-36 p.1564
MIC 7:6 **[QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 12:53 p.1673

GOD SPEAKING

I will wait for the God of my salvation.
My God will hear me.

8 Do not gloat over me, my enemy!
Though I have fallen, I will arise;
though I sit in darkness,
Yahweh will be my light.
9 Because I have sinned against Him,
I must endure the rage of Yahweh,
until He argues my case
and executes justice for me.
He will bring me into the light;
I will see His righteousness.
10 Then my enemy will see
and will be covered with shame—
she who said to me,
"Where is Yahweh your God?"
My eyes will see her;
at that time she will be trampled
like mud in the streets.

11 The day for rebuilding your walls will come—
the day for extending your boundary.
12 On that day they will come to you
from Assyria and the cities of Egypt,
even from Egypt to the Euphrates,
from sea to sea and mountain to mountain.
13 Then the earth will become desolate
because of its inhabitants,
as the fruit of their deeds.

GOD'S COMPASSION ON ISRAEL

14 Shepherd with Your staff Your people,
the flock of Your inheritance.
They live alone in a woodland,
surrounded by pastures.
Let them graze in Bashan and Gilead,
as in the days of old.

15 As in the days when you came out of Egypt,
I will show My wonders.
16 Nations will see and be ashamed,
deprived of all their might.
They will put their hands over their mouths,
and their ears will become deaf.
17 They will lick the dust like a snake,
like reptiles slithering on the ground.
They will come trembling from their strongholds
in the presence of Yahweh our God;
they will tremble in fear of You.

18 Who is a God like You,
who pardons iniquity
and passes over the transgression
of the remnant of His inheritance—
who does not retain His anger forever,
because He delights in loving devotion?
19 He will again have compassion on us;
He will vanquish our iniquities.
You will cast out all our sins
into the depths of the sea.
20 You will show faithfulness to Jacob
and loving devotion to Abraham,
as You swore to our fathers
from the days of old.

NAHUM

Jonah: The Sequel

AUTHOR	Nahum the Elkoshite, 1:1. His name means comfort. Nothing else is known about him.
DATE	Between the fall of Thebes, about 663 BC, which he looks back on, 3:8 to 10, and the fall of Nineveh in 612 BC.
WRITTEN TO	Spoken against Nineveh, written to comfort Judah under Assyria's heavy hand.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Parts of Nahum are in 4QXII g, a Qumran scroll of the Twelve Prophets, in the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever and in the Hebrew scroll from Wadi Murabbaat. A Qumran commentary, 4Q169, quotes it line by line.
KEY VERSE	Nahum 1:7. Yahweh is good, a stronghold in the day of distress.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF NAHUM
Pieces of 4Q169, a commentary on Nahum from Qumran Cave 4, copied in the last decades before Jesus. It quotes Nahum line by line and explains each line. Copies of the book itself are in 4QXII g, a Qumran scroll of the Twelve, in the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever, and in the Hebrew scroll from Wadi Murabbaat. See The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381, and The Nahum Commentary.

Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

Historical Setting

For more than a century Assyria had ruled the Near East by terror. It wiped out Israel, squeezed Judah for tribute and sacked cities as far away as Thebes in Egypt. Jonah's Nineveh had turned to God, but that was long ago. Now Nahum announces that the bully's time is up.

What Went Wrong

CRUELTY. Nineveh is the city of blood, full of lies and plunder, 3:1, and everyone has felt its constant cruelty, 3:19.
PLOTTING AGAINST GOD. A counselor of wickedness plotted evil against Yahweh, 1:11.
IDOLS. God will cut off the carved image and cast idol from the house of its gods, 1:14.
SORCERY. Nineveh is called the mistress of sorcery who betrays nations by her prostitution and clans by her witchcraft, 3:4.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Nahum is the sequel to Jonah. More than a century after Nineveh repented, it was back to its old ways, and worse. Nahum announces that God, who is slow to anger, will not leave the guilty unpunished. He describes Nineveh's fall like a war correspondent, and history

agrees: in 612 BC the Babylonians and Medes destroyed it. For Judah it was the best news in a hundred years: the bully is gone.

Nahum at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 15 **THE JUDGE**
God is slow to anger but will judge, and good news for Judah.

CH 2:1 to 13 **THE ATTACK**
The river gates burst and the lions' den is empty.

CH 3:1 to 19 **THE WOE**
The city of blood falls like Thebes, and the world claps.

Where Jesus Shows Up

NAHUM 1:15 The feet of one who brings good news. Paul uses the same words for those sent to preach the gospel of Jesus, Romans 10:15.

NAHUM 1:4 He rebukes the sea. Jesus rebuked the wind and the sea, and it was perfectly calm, Mark 4:39.

NAHUM 1:7 A stronghold in the day of distress. Jesus' words are the rock to build on when the storm hits, Matthew 7:24 to 25.

NAHUM
His name means comfort. The same root is in Nehemiah, Yahweh comforts.

THEBES
No Amon in Hebrew, the city of the god Amun, in southern Egypt, today's Luxor.

What to Watch for in Nahum

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	1:15
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (8)	1:8, 1:14, 2:6, 2:9, 3:11, 3:13, 3:15 and 1 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	2:12, 3:7-8
DEMONIC (1)	3:4
NOTABLE (2)	1:3, 1:7
GOD SPEAKING (7 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (0 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

JONAH: THE SEQUEL
The same city, the same God, the same words from Exodus 34. Jonah stopped at the mercy, Nahum went on to the justice.

NAHUM'S VILLAGE
Capernaum, Jesus' home base in Galilee, means village of Nahum in Hebrew, though no one knows which Nahum. See Where Was Elkosh?

A COMMENTARY WITH NAMES
A Dead Sea Scroll explaining Nahum names real Greek kings, Demetrius and Antiochus. See The Nahum Commentary.

BOTH END WITH A QUESTION
Jonah ends with God asking a question, and so does Nahum: who has not felt your constant cruelty? 3:19.

How Does It End?

Just as Nahum said. In 612 BC the Babylonians and Medes broke into Nineveh and burned it, and the last Assyrian king disappears from history a few years later. Nineveh was never a great city again. About two hundred years later a Greek soldier marched past its ruins and did not even record its name.

NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Nahum opens with a storm of a poem: God is slow to anger, but He will not let the guilty walk. He is a safe place for those who trust Him and a flood for those who fight Him. Then the good news: Judah's chains are coming off, and Nineveh's name is going in the grave.

THE BURDEN AGAINST NINEVEH // JONAH 1:1–3

1 This is the burden against Nineveh, the
book of the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite:

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHERE WAS ELKOSH?

Nahum's Hometown

NAHUM 1:1

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Only that Nahum was the Elkoshite, 1:1. Elkosh is never named anywhere else in the Bible, and no one knows for sure where it was.

Every View

MATTHEW 4:13 · JOHN 7:52

VIEW 1: ALQOSH IN IRAQ

A town called Alqosh, north of Mosul, has a tomb said to be Nahum's. Jews kept it as a holy place for centuries, until they left Iraq around 1950. It was restored in recent years. The tradition is first known from about the 1500s.

VIEW 2: A VILLAGE IN GALILEE

Jerome, about AD 400, said Elkosh was a small village in Galilee, still known in his day.

VIEW 3: CAPERNAUM

Capernaum means village of Nahum in Hebrew. Some think it was named for the prophet, though Nahum was a common name.

VIEW 4: SOUTHERN JUDAH

An old book called the Lives of the Prophets places Elkosh in southern Judah, near Beth Guvrin, in the land of Simeon.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

We know Nahum's message far better than his address.

2 Yahweh is a jealous and avenging God;
Yahweh is avenging and full of wrath.
Yahweh takes vengeance on His foes
and reserves wrath for His enemies.
3 Yahweh is slow to anger
and great in power;
Yahweh will by no means
leave the guilty unpunished.
His path is in the whirlwind and storm,
and clouds are the dust beneath His
feet.
4 He rebukes the sea and dries it up;
He makes all the rivers run dry.
Bashan and Carmel wither,
and the flower of Lebanon wilts.
5 The mountains quake before Him,
and the hills melt away;
the earth trembles at His presence—
the world and all its dwellers.
6 Who can withstand His indignation?
Who can endure His burning anger?
His wrath is poured out like fire;
even rocks are shattered before Him.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY JUDGE NINEVEH AFTER JONAH?

The Same City Twice

NAHUM 1:3 · JONAH 3:10 · 4:2

THE PUZZLE

In Jonah, Nineveh repents and God spares it, Jonah 3:10. In Nahum, more than a century later, God says He will destroy it. Did God change His mind?

- **NAH 1:1 [NOTE]** NAHUM. His name means comfort. His message was terrible news for Nineveh and comfort for Judah. See Where Was Elkosh?
- **NAH 1:1 [NOTE]** NINEVEH. The same city Jonah preached to more than a century earlier. See The Walls of Nineveh, Jonah, p.1424, and Why Judge Nineveh After Jonah?
- **NAH 1:2 [TEXT]** AN ALPHABET POEM. In Hebrew, 1:2 to 8 is a broken acrostic: the lines start with the letters of the alphabet from aleph to kaph, with some letters missing or out of order.
- **NAH 1:2 [NOTE]** A HYMN, NOT A QUOTE. 1:2 to 11 is Nahum praising God, not God speaking, so it prints black. See Is God Vengeful?
- **NAH 1:3 [NOTABLE]** Jonah quoted the mercy half of Exodus 34:6 to 7; Nahum quotes the justice half. God is patient, but His patience has an end.
- **NAH 1:3 [NOTE]** SLOW TO ANGER, BUT. Jonah quoted the mercy in God's words to Moses, Exodus 34:6, Jonah 4:2. Nahum repeats slow to anger, then goes on to the justice: He will by no means leave the guilty unpunished, Exodus 34:7.
- **NAH 1:4 [NOTE]** HE REBUKES THE SEA. Jesus rebuked the wind and the sea, and it was perfectly calm, Mark 4:39.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY NOTABLE

THE TWO HALVES
Exodus 34:6 to 7 says Yahweh is compassionate and gracious, slow to anger, but He will by no means leave the guilty unpunished. Jonah stopped at the mercy, Jonah 4:2. Nahum repeats slow to anger and goes on to the justice, 1:3.

Every View
EXODUS 34:6 TO 7 · JEREMIAH 18:7 TO 10 · 2 KINGS 17:5 TO 6

VIEW 1: THE REPENTANCE DID NOT LAST
Most say Nineveh turned back to evil. After Jonah, Assyria destroyed Israel in 722 BC, 2 Kings 17:5 to 6, attacked Judah, and boasted of its cruelty. God spared one generation, not every generation after it.

VIEW 2: GOD'S RULE
God told Jeremiah that if a nation turns from evil He will relent, and if it turns to evil He will change His plans for good, Jeremiah 18:7 to 10. Nineveh went both ways.

VIEW 3: A PAIR OF BOOKS
Many read Jonah and Nahum together on purpose. Jonah shows God's patience with enemies, Nahum shows that His patience has an end.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
God did not change. Nineveh did, twice.

7 Yahweh is good,
a stronghold in the day of distress;
He cares for those who trust in Him.
8 But with an overwhelming flood
He will make an end of Nineveh
and pursue His enemies into darkness.

NAH 1:7 **[NOTABLE]** In the middle of a poem about God's anger is one of the Bible's most comforting promises. The same God is a flood to His enemies and a fortress to those who trust Him.
NAH 1:7 **[NOTE]** A STRONGHOLD. The same God who is a flood to His enemies is a fortress for those who trust Him.
NAH 1:8 **[PROPHECY]** With an overflowing flood He will make an utter end of Nineveh → HISTORY: The Babylonians and Medes took Nineveh in 612 BC. A Greek writer says a flooded river broke down part of the city wall. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle and by Diodorus 2.27. · MEDIUM
NAH 1:8 **[NOTE]** AN OVERWHELMING FLOOD. See How Did Nineveh Fall?

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

IS GOD VENGEFUL?

A Jealous and Avenging God
NAHUM 1:2 TO 8

WHAT IT SAYS
Yahweh is a jealous and avenging God, full of wrath, 1:2. To many readers today that sounds like a bad temper, not a good God.

THE QUESTION
What does it mean that God is jealous and takes vengeance, and how does that fit with God is love?

Every View
EXODUS 20:5 · DEUTERONOMY 32:35 · ROMANS 12:19 · REVELATION 6:10

JEALOUS
In the Bible God's jealousy is like a faithful husband's: He will not share His people with idols, Exodus 20:5. It is love that refuses to let go.

VENGEANCE
Vengeance means justice for victims. Nineveh had crushed nation after nation, 3:19. If God did nothing, He would not be good. Because vengeance belongs to God, His people do not have to take it themselves, Deuteronomy 32:35 and Romans 12:19.

AN OLD OBJECTION
About AD 140 a teacher named Marcion said the angry God of the Old Testament was a different god from the Father of Jesus. The church rejected his teaching. Jesus Himself warned of judgment, and in Revelation the martyrs cry out to God for justice, Revelation 6:10.

VIEW: STILL HARD
Many Christians admit these words are hard to read. They answer that God's anger is aimed at evil, and that 1:3 and 1:7 stand right beside 1:2: slow to anger, and good to those who trust Him.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Nahum's God is slow to anger and good, 1:3 and 1:7, but He is not soft on evil.

9 Whatever you plot against Yahweh,
He will bring to an end.
Affliction will not rise up
a second time.
10 For they will be entangled as with thorns

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY GOD SPEAKING

and consumed like the drink of a
drunkard—
like stubble that is fully dry.
11 From you, O Nineveh, comes forth
a plotter of evil against Yahweh,
a counselor of wickedness.

12 This is what Yahweh says:

"Though they are allied and numerous,
yet they will be cut down and pass
away.
Though I have afflicted you, O Judah,
I will afflict you no longer.
13 For I will now break their yoke from your
neck
and tear away your shackles."

14 Yahweh has issued a command concerning you, O Nineveh:

"There will be no descendants
to carry on your name.
I will cut off the carved image and cast
idol
from the house of your gods;
I will prepare your grave,
for you are contemptible."

15 Look to the mountains—
the feet of one who brings good news,
who proclaims peace!
Celebrate your feasts, O Judah;
fulfill your vows.
For the wicked will never again march
through you;
they will be utterly cut off.

■ **NAH 1:12 [NOTE]** THIS IS WHAT YAHWEH SAYS. From here God Himself speaks, so His words print red.
■ **NAH 1:13 [NOTE]** BREAK THEIR YOKE. Judah had paid tribute to Assyria for about a century, since King Ahaz, 2 Kings 16:7 to 8.
■ **NAH 1:14 [PROPHECY]** Nineveh would have no one to carry on its name and God would prepare its grave → HISTORY: The Babylonians and Medes destroyed Nineveh in 612 BC. The last Assyrian king lost Harran by 609 BC, and Assyria was gone. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle.
■ **NAH 1:14 [DEMONIC]** God will cut off the carved idols from Nineveh's temple
■ **NAH 1:15 [FORESHADOW]** One would come on the mountains bringing good news and proclaiming peace → ROM 10:15 · MEDIUM p.1812
■ **NAH 1:15 [TEXT]** THE VERSE NUMBERS. In Hebrew Bibles this verse is 2:1, so every verse of chapter 2 is one number higher in Hebrew; 2:1 here is 2:2 there.
■ **NAH 1:15 [NOTE]** GOOD NEWS. Isaiah 52:7 uses nearly the same words, and Paul quotes Isaiah about those sent to preach the gospel, Romans 10:15.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Nahum gives a play by play of Nineveh's fall like a war reporter. Red shields, flashing chariots, the river gates burst open and the palace melts. The proud city of lions, which fed on the whole world, is now an empty den. And God says, I am against you.

THE OVERTHROW OF NINEVEH

1 One who scatters advances
against you, O Nineveh.
Guard the fortress!
Watch the road!
Brace yourselves!
Summon all your strength!

2 For Yahweh will restore the splendor of
Jacob
like the splendor of Israel,
though destroyers have laid them waste
and ruined the branches of their vine.

3 The shields of his mighty men are red;
the valiant warriors are dressed in scar-
let.
The fittings of the chariots flash like fire
on the day they are prepared,
and the spears of cypress
have been brandished.
4 The chariots dash through the streets;
they rush around the plazas,
appearing like torches,
darting about like lightning.
5 He summons his nobles;
they stumble as they advance.
They race to its wall;
the protective shield is set in place.
6 The river gates are thrown open
and the palace collapses.

7 It is decreed that the city be exiled
and carried away;
her maidservants moan like doves,
and beat upon their hearts.

■ **NAH 2:3 [NOTE]** SHIELDS RED. The attackers were Babylonians and Medes. Red shields may be painted, or red with blood.
■ **NAH 2:6 [PROPHECY]** The gates of the rivers are opened, and the palace is dissolved → HISTORY: When Nineveh fell in 612 BC, the river flooded and broke the walls, and the palace burned. Recorded by Diodorus 2.27. · MEDIUM
■ **NAH 2:6 [NOTE]** THE RIVER GATES. The Tigris ran by Nineveh, and the Khosr River ran through it. See How Did Nineveh Fall?

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

8 Nineveh has been like a pool of water
throughout her days,
but now it is draining away.
"Stop! Stop!" they cry,
but no one turns back.

THE BIG QUESTION

HOW DID NINEVEH FALL?

What Nahum Said

NAHUM 1:8 · 2:6 · 3:13 · 3:15

WHAT NAHUM SAID

God would make an end of Nineveh with an overwhelming flood, 1:8. The river gates would open and the palace collapse, 2:6. The gates would be wide open and fire would consume their bars, 3:13. Fire would devour the city, 3:15.

How It Came True

DIODORUS 2.26 TO 27 · XENOPHON, ANABASIS 3.4

FIRST: IT FELL

In 612 BC the Babylonians and Medes took Nineveh after a siege of about three months, plundered it and left it a heap of ruins. See The Fall of Nineveh Chronicle.

FIRE

Archaeologists found thick burn layers in Nineveh's palaces. At the Halzi Gate a team digging in 1989 and 1990 found the gate hastily narrowed, and the bones of people who died there in the attack.

FLOOD: THE GREEK STORY

Diodorus, a Greek writer of the first century BC, said a river flood broke down part of the wall in the third year of the siege. His story comes from an older writer and gets things wrong, like calling the river the Euphrates, so many scholars doubt it.

FLOOD: OTHER READINGS

Some think the attackers dammed and released the Khosr River, which ran through the city and its gates. Others read the flood of 1:8 as a picture of an army pouring in like water.

NEVER AGAIN

About 401 BC the Greek soldier Xenophon marched past the ruins and did not even record Nineveh's name.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The city that seemed too big to fall was gone within a few years of Nahum's words, and it was never a great city again.

9 "Plunder the silver!
Plunder the gold!"
There is no end to the treasure,
an abundance of every precious thing.
10 She is emptied!
Yes, she is desolate and laid waste!
Hearts melt, knees knock,
bodies tremble, and every face grows pale!

11 Where is the lions' lair
or the feeding ground of the young lions,
where the lion and lioness prowled with their cubs,
with nothing to frighten them away?
12 The lion mauled enough for its cubs
and strangled prey for the lioness.
It filled its dens with the kill,
and its lairs with mauled prey.

13 "Behold, I am against you,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
"I will reduce your chariots to cinders,
and the sword will devour your young lions.
I will cut off your prey from the earth,
and the voices of your messengers
will no longer be heard."

■ **NAH 2:7 [TEXT]** THEIR HEARTS. The Hebrew says upon their hearts; many Bibles say breasts. Beating the chest in grief.

■ **NAH 2:9 [PROPHECY]** The attackers would plunder Nineveh's silver and gold → HISTORY: The Babylonians and Medes carried off great spoil from Nineveh in 612 BC. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle.

■ **NAH 2:11 [NOTE]** THE LIONS' DEN. Assyria's kings loved to show themselves as lions and lion hunters. See Ashurbanipal's Lion Hunt.

■ **NAH 2:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** 4Q169, a Qumran commentary on Nahum that reads the lion of 2:12 as a Lion of Wrath who hanged men alive and names Demetrius king of Greece, see The Nahum Commentary Field Notes page, p.1449FIELD NOTES p.1449

■ **NAH 2:12 [NOTE]** THE LION. A Qumran commentary on this verse speaks of a Lion of Wrath. See The Nahum Commentary.

■ **NAH 2:13 [NOTE]** I AM AGAINST YOU. The scariest words in the book. Nobody can stand against God.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

ASHURBANIPAL'S LION HUNT

NAHUM 2:11 TO 13



Dying lions from King Ashurbanipal's lion hunt, North Palace, Nineveh, about 645 to 635 BC. British Museum. Photo Zunkir, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Carved stone panels from the palace of Ashurbanipal, the last great king of Assyria, showing him hunting and killing lions.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 645 to 635 BC, just a few decades before Nineveh fell, around Nahum's day.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In the North Palace at Nineveh, dug up by Hormuzd Rassam in the 1850s. They are in the British Museum.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Assyria's kings proudly showed themselves as lion killers and strong as lions. Nahum turns the picture around: where is the lions' den now? The Lion is dead, and God says, I am against you, 2:11 to 13.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Woe to the city of blood. Nineveh is told to remember Thebes, the great Egyptian city it had crushed. Its soldiers will fold, its merchants will fly away like locusts, and when the news of its fall spreads, the whole world claps. Jonah ended with a question, and so does Nahum.

JUDGMENT ON NINEVEH

1 Woe to the city of blood,
full of lies,
full of plunder,
never without prey.
2 The crack of the whip,
the rumble of the wheel,
galloping horse
and bounding chariot!
3 Charging horseman,
flashing sword,
shining spear;
heaps of slain,
mounds of corpses,
dead bodies without end—
they stumble over their dead—
4 because of the many harlotries of the harlot,
the seductive mistress of sorcery,
who betrays nations by her prostitution
and clans by her witchcraft.

5 "Behold, I am against you,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
"I will lift your skirts over your face.

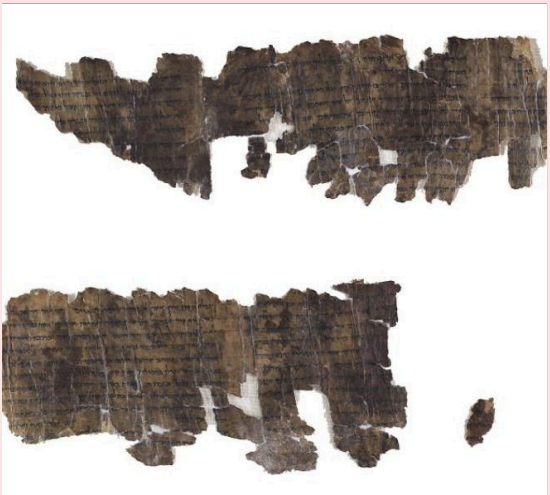
NAH 3:1 [NOTE] THE CITY OF BLOOD. Assyrian kings boasted in their own records about skinning, impaling and burning their enemies.

NAH 3:4 [DEMONIC] Nineveh is called the mistress of sorcery who enslaves nations

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SCROLL, DEBATED FOR WHO IS WHO

THE NAHUM COMMENTARY

NAHUM 2:11 TO 13 · 3:1 TO 5 · DANIEL 11



The biggest surviving piece of 4Q169, the Nahum Commentary, shown in two rows. Photo Shai Halevi, Israel Antiquities Authority, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library.

WHAT IT IS

A scroll from Qumran Cave 4, called 4Q169 or Pesher Nahum. Pesher means interpretation. It quotes a few words of Nahum, then says what they mean, line after line.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was copied in the last decades before Jesus. The events it talks about happened about 90 BC.

REAL NAMES

Almost no Dead Sea Scroll names real people, but this one does. It names Demetrius king of Greece, who tried to enter Jerusalem, and speaks of the kings of Greece from Antiochus until the rulers of the Kittim, most likely the Romans.

THE LION OF WRATH

On Nahum 2:12, about the lion that tears its prey, it tells of a Lion of Wrath who hanged men alive. Most scholars think this is the Jewish king Alexander Jannaeus. The historian Josephus says that after Demetrius III invaded about 88 BC, Jannaeus crucified 800 of his Jewish enemies.

THE SEEKERS OF SMOOTH THINGS

The scroll blames a group it calls the seekers of smooth things, people who looked for easy answers. Most think it means the Pharisees.

WHY IT MATTERS

It shows how some Jews before Jesus read the prophets: as messages about their own day. If hanging men alive means crucifixion, as most think, it also shows a Jewish king used it, long before Rome crucified Jesus.

HOW IT WAS FOUND

Bedouin and archaeologists found thousands of scroll pieces in Cave 4 in 1952. John Allegro first published part of this scroll in 1956.

NAHUM'S OWN WORDS

Because it quotes Nahum before each comment, it is also one of the oldest witnesses to Nahum's text.

WHO WROTE IT

The people of Qumran, a strict Jewish group. Most scholars think they were Essenes.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Antiquities Authority keeps it in Jerusalem.

SEE ALSO

The Fallen Tent at Qumran, Amos, p.1402, another Qumran scroll that explains the prophets.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THEBES

NAHUM 3:8 TO 10 · JEREMIAH 46:25 · EZEKIEL 30:14 TO 16



The great hall of columns in the temple of Amun at Karnak, ancient Thebes, built about 1290 to 1220 BC. Photo Vyacheslav Argenberg, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Thebes, No Amon in Hebrew, was the great city of southern Egypt, on the Nile at today's Luxor. Its temples of Karnak and Luxor are some of the biggest ruins on earth.

WHAT HAPPENED

About 663 BC the Assyrian king Ashurbanipal marched up the Nile, drove out the Cushite pharaoh Tantamani and plundered Thebes. His own records boast of the silver, gold and two great obelisks he carried off.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Nahum's point: if mighty Thebes, with the Nile around her and Cush and Egypt behind her, could fall to Assyria, Assyria can fall too.

I will show your nakedness to the nations
and your shame to the kingdoms.
6 I will pelt you with filth
and treat you with contempt;
I will make a spectacle of you.
7 Then all who see you
will recoil from you and say,
'Nineveh is devastated;
who will grieve for her?'
Where can I find
comforters for you?"

8 Are you better than Thebes,
stationed by the Nile with water around her,
whose rampart was the sea,
whose wall was the water?

9 Cush and Egypt were her boundless strength;
Put and Libya were her allies.
10 Yet she became an exile;
she went into captivity.
Her infants were dashed to pieces
at the head of every street.
They cast lots for her dignitaries,
and all her nobles were bound in chains.
11 You too will become drunk;
you will go into hiding
and seek refuge from the enemy.

12 All your fortresses are fig trees
with the first ripe figs;
when shaken, they fall
into the mouth of the eater!

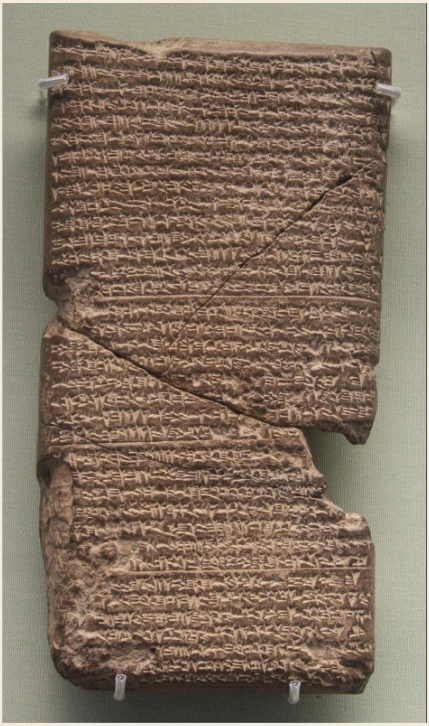
13 Look at your troops—
they are like your women!

- **NAH 3:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Babylon's own record says Nineveh was taken in 612 BC, plundered and turned into a heap of ruins, see The Fall of Nineveh Chronicle Field Notes page, p.1451 FIELD NOTES p.1451
- **NAH 3:7 [NOTE]** WHO WILL GRIEVE FOR HER? God quotes what the nations will say, so the whole verse is red. See The Fall of Nineveh Chronicle.
- **NAH 3:8 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The temples of Karnak and Luxor still stand at Thebes, the Egyptian city Assyria plundered about 663 BC, see the Thebes Field Notes box, p.1450 FIELD NOTES p.1450
- **NAH 3:8 [NOTE]** THEBES. The great city of southern Egypt, which Assyria itself had sacked about 663 BC. See Thebes.
- **NAH 3:11 [PROPHECY]** Nineveh would become drunk and go into hiding from the enemy → HISTORY: A Greek writer says the Assyrian soldiers were drunk from a feast when the enemy attacked at night, about 612 BC. Recorded by Diodorus 2.26. · MEDIUM
- **NAH 3:12 [NOTE]** FIRST RIPE FIGS. Shake the tree and they fall right into your mouth. That is how easily Nineveh's forts would fall.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE FALL OF NINEVEH CHRONICLE

NAHUM 2:9 · 3:7 · 3:13 · 3:19



The Fall of Nineveh Chronicle, a Babylonian clay tablet, British Museum, BM 21901. Photo Zunkir, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT DOES NOT SAY

The tablet does not mention a flood or the river gates of 2:6. See How Did Nineveh Fall?

THE NEXT CHAPTER

Assyria's end moved the Bible story along. In 609 BC Pharaoh Neco marched north to help the last Assyrian king, and King Josiah of Judah died trying to stop him, 2 Kings 23:29.

SEE ALSO

The Babylonian Chronicle, 2 Kings, p.659, a tablet from the same series about Jerusalem in 597 BC.

WHAT IT IS

A clay tablet from Babylon's own yearly records. It tells the war that ended the Assyrian Empire, from 616 to 609 BC.

HOW OLD IT IS

It is a later Babylonian copy of records kept when it happened.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The British Museum bought it in 1896. C. J. Gadd published it in 1923 in a book called The Fall of Nineveh.

WHAT IT SAYS

In 612 BC Nabopolassar king of Babylon and the king of the Medes joined forces and besieged Nineveh for about three months. They took the city, carried off great spoil from the city and the temple, and turned it into a heap of ruins.

HOW THE WAR WENT

The tablet tells year by year how the enemies closed in. In 614 BC the Medes took Ashur, Assyria's old holy city, and there the kings of Babylon and the Medes made a pact. Two years later they turned on Nineveh.

THE END OF ASSYRIA

The Assyrian king Sin shar ishkun apparently died when the city fell, though the tablet is broken there. A new king, Ashur uballit II, fled west to Harran. He lost Harran in 610 BC and failed to win it back in 609 BC, and Assyria is never heard of again.

IN NAHUM

Plunder the silver! Plunder the gold! 2:9. Nineveh is devastated, 3:7. There is no healing for your injury, 3:19.

THE MEDES

The Medes came from the mountains of today's Iran. The tablet calls their king Umakishtar, the man Greek writers called Cyaxares. Nahum's attackers with red shields, 2:3, were these two armies.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Nahum's enemy really fell, the way he said, at the hands of Babylon, the next great power.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY

The gates of your land
are wide open to your enemies;
fire consumes their bars.

14 Draw your water for the siege;
strengthen your fortresses.
Work the clay and tread the mortar;
repair the brick kiln!
15 There the fire will devour you;
the sword will cut you down
and consume you like a young locust.
Make yourself many like the young locust;
make yourself many like the swarming
locust!
16 You have multiplied your merchants
more than the stars of the sky.
The young locust strips the land
and flies away.
17 Your guards are like the swarming lo-
cust,
and your scribes like clouds of locusts
that settle on the walls on a cold day.
When the sun rises, they fly away,
and no one knows where.

18 O king of Assyria, your shepherds slum-
ber;
your officers sleep.
Your people are scattered on the moun-
tains
with no one to gather them.
19 There is no healing for your injury;
your wound is severe.
All who hear the news of you
applaud your downfall,
for who has not experienced
your constant cruelty?

NAH 3:13 [PROPHECY] The gates of the land would be wide open to the enemy and fire would consume their bars → HISTORY: When Nineveh fell in 612 BC, its Halzi Gate had been quickly narrowed, and fallen fighters lay in the passage. Found by a University of California dig, 1989 to 1990. · MEDIUM

NAH 3:15 [PROPHECY] There the fire shall devour you; the sword shall cut you off → HISTORY: Nineveh was burned when it fell in 612 BC. Found by diggers who uncovered thick burn layers in its palaces, starting with Austen Henry Layard in the 1840s.

NAH 3:17 [NOTE] LIKE LOCUSTS. Locusts sit still in the cold and fly off when the sun warms them. Nineveh's officials would vanish the same way.

NAH 3:18 [PROPHECY] Your people are scattered on the mountains, and no one gathers them; there is no healing of your bruise → HISTORY: The last Assyrian king, Ashur uballit II, lost Harran in 610 BC and failed to take it back in 609 BC. Then Assyria disappears from history. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle. · MEDIUM

NAH 3:19 [NOTE] ALL WHO HEAR CLAP. The book ends with a question, just like Jonah. Who has not felt your cruelty?

BOOK 35 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

HABAKKUK

The Prophet Who Argued With God

AUTHOR	Habakkuk the prophet, 1:1 and 3:1. Nothing else is known about him for sure.
DATE	Most likely about 609 to 597 BC, when Babylon was rising and before it took Jerusalem. See When Was Habakkuk Written?
WRITTEN TO	Judah, through a conversation between the prophet and God.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Most of the book is in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat, and parts are in the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever. The Habakkuk Commentary from Qumran Cave 1 quotes chapters 1 and 2 line by line.
KEY VERSE	Habakkuk 2:4. The righteous will live by faith.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF HABAKKUK
The opening columns of the Habakkuk Commentary, 1QpHab, from Qumran Cave 1, copied in the last decades before Jesus. It quotes Habakkuk 1 and 2 line by line and explains each line. Copies of the book itself are in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat and the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever. See The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381, and The Habakkuk Commentary.

Photo Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Judah had a good king, Josiah, and then bad ones. Violence and injustice filled the land. Out east, Babylon had crushed Assyria and was beating Egypt, and it was coming next. Habakkuk does not preach to the people like other prophets. He takes his questions straight to God.

What Was Going Wrong

VIOLENCE. Destruction and violence are before me, 1:3.
BROKEN JUSTICE. The law is paralyzed, and justice never goes forth, 1:4.
PRIDE. Babylon's own strength is its god, 1:11, and it even sacrifices to its fishing net, 1:16.
IDOLS. Woe to him who says to wood, Awake! 2:19.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Habakkuk is the book for anyone who has asked God, Why? Habakkuk sees evil winning and asks God how long. God's answer shocks him: Babylon is coming. So he argues again, and God answers that the proud will fall but the righteous will live by faith. The book starts with a complaint and ends with a song.

Habakkuk at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 17 **THE COMPLAINTS**
Why is evil winning? God's answer, and an even harder question.

CH 2:1 to 20 **THE ANSWER**
Write the vision, the righteous will live by faith, and five woes.

CH 3:1 to 19 **THE SONG**
Habakkuk remembers God's power and chooses joy.

Where Jesus Shows Up

HABAKKUK 2:4 The righteous will live by faith. Paul builds the gospel on this line, Romans 1:17 and Galatians 3:11.

HABAKKUK 2:3 TO 4 The vision will surely come. Hebrews 10:37 to 38 quotes these verses from the old Greek as He who is coming will come, and reads them about Jesus' return.

HABAKKUK 1:5 Paul quoted this verse to warn his listeners when he preached Jesus, Acts 13:41.

HABAKKUK
Maybe from a Hebrew word for embrace, or from the name of a garden plant in Babylonian.

CHALDEANS
Tribes of southern Babylonia. The name came to be used for Babylon's kings, Nabopolassar and Nebuchadnezzar, and their people.

What to Watch for in Habakkuk

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (2)	1:5-6, 2:7-8
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	2:3, 2:14
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	2:2, 2:15
DEMONIC (3)	1:11, 1:16, 2:18-19
NOTABLE (4)	2:4, 2:20, 3:2, 3:17-19
GOD SPEAKING (25 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (0 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

LUTHER'S VERSE
The righteous will live by faith changed Martin Luther's life and helped light the fuse of the Reformation. See The Righteous Will Live by Faith.

A PROPHET WHO ARGUES
Most prophets speak for God to the people. Habakkuk speaks to God for the people, and God answers him.

A SONG WITH MUSIC NOTES
Chapter 3 is a psalm with Selah and a note for the choirmaster, like the book of Psalms.

THE OLDEST COMMENTARY ON HABAKKUK
One of the first seven Dead Sea Scrolls explains Habakkuk line by line. See The Habakkuk Commentary.

How Did It Turn Out?

Babylon came, just as God said. It took Jerusalem in 597 BC and burned it in 586 BC. But Babylon fell too, in 539 BC, to the Medes and Persians, as the woes said it would. And Habakkuk's line, the righteous will live by faith, outlived them all.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Habakkuk does something brave: he complains to God out loud. Why is evil winning in Judah? God answers that He is sending Babylon to deal with it. Habakkuk is even more confused. Babylon is worse! So he files a second complaint.

HABAKKUK'S FIRST COMPLAINT

1 This is the burden that Habakkuk the
prophet received in a vision:

2 How long, O Yahweh, must I call for help
but You do not hear,
or cry out to You, "Violence!"
but You do not save?
3 Why do You make me see iniquity?
Why do You tolerate wrongdoing?
Destruction and violence are before me.
Strife is ongoing, and conflict abounds.
4 Therefore the law is paralyzed,
and justice never goes forth.
For the wicked hem in the righteous,
so that justice is perverted.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DOES GOD ALLOW EVIL?

Habakkuk's Two Complaints

HABAKKUK 1:2 TO 17 · 2:3 TO 4

THE FIRST COMPLAINT

How long, O Yahweh, must I call for help but You do not hear? 1:2. Habakkuk sees violence and broken justice in Judah, and God seems to do nothing.

GOD'S ANSWER

I am doing a work in your days that you would never believe, 1:5. God is not asleep. He is raising up Babylon to judge Judah.

THE SECOND COMPLAINT

Your eyes are too pure to look upon evil. Why are You silent while the wicked swallow up those more righteous than themselves? 1:13. Babylon is worse than Judah. How can that be fair?

Every View

HABAKKUK 3:17 TO 18 · JOB 38:1 TO 4 · ROMANS 8:28 · REVELATION 21:4

VIEW 1: GOD IS ALREADY WORKING

God's first answer is that He is not silent at all. He is at work in ways people cannot see yet, 1:5. The vision awaits an appointed time, 2:3.

VIEW 2: PEOPLE CHOOSE EVIL

Many say God gave people real choices, and evil comes from what they choose. Babylon chose to make its own strength its god, 1:11, and God holds it guilty.

VIEW 3: JUSTICE IS COMING

The five woes say evil will not win in the end, 2:6 to 19. God's timing is slower than ours, but it will surely come, 2:3. Revelation ends with every tear wiped away, Revelation 21:4.

VIEW 4: TRUST WITHOUT ALL THE ANSWERS

Habakkuk never gets a full explanation, just like Job, Job 38 to 41. He gets God instead, and he chooses to trust: the righteous will live by faith, 2:4, and I will exult in Yahweh, 3:18.

THE HARD QUESTION

Thinkers have asked it for thousands of years: if God is good and all powerful, why does evil happen? Many people who leave the faith name this question. The Bible does not hide from it. Habakkuk asked it out loud.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

It is not wrong to ask God why. See also Why Do Good People Suffer?, Job, p.878, and Can You Argue With God?, Jeremiah, p.1166.

YAHWEH'S ANSWER

5 *"Look at the nations and observe—*
be utterly astounded!
For I am doing a work in your days
that you would never believe
even if someone told you.
6 For behold, I am raising up the
Chaldeans—
that ruthless and impetuous nation

- **HAB 1:1 [NOTE]** THE BURDEN. The Hebrew word means a heavy load: a hard message the prophet had to carry.
- **HAB 1:1 [NOTE]** HABAKKUK. His name may come from a Hebrew word for embrace. Martin Luther said it fit him: he hugs his people and holds them up in their trouble.
- **HAB 1:2 [NOTE]** HOW LONG? Habakkuk does not preach to the people. He takes his complaint straight to God. See Why Does God Allow Evil?
- **HAB 1:5 [PROPHECY]** God would raise up the Chaldeans (Babylonians) to punish Judah → 2KI 24:1-2; 2KI 25:8-10 p.658
- **HAB 1:5 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ACTS 13:41 p.1765
- **HAB 1:5 [NOTE]** THE FIRST ANSWER. From here God speaks, so His words print red. Paul quoted this verse to warn his listeners, Acts 13:41.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

which marches through the breadth of the earth
to seize dwellings not their own.
7 They are dreaded and feared;
from themselves they derive justice and sovereignty.
8 Their horses are swifter than leopards,
fiercer than wolves of the night.
Their horsemen charge ahead,
and their cavalry comes from afar.
They fly like a vulture,
swooping down to devour.
9 All of them come bent on violence;
their hordes advance like the east wind;
they gather prisoners like sand.
10 They scoff at kings
and make rulers an object of scorn.
They laugh at every fortress
and build up siege ramps to seize it.
11 Then they sweep by like the wind
and pass through.
They are guilty;
their own strength is their god."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS HABAKKUK WRITTEN?

The Clues

HABAKKUK 1:5 TO 6 · 3:19

NO KING IS NAMED

Many prophets name the kings of their day. Habakkuk does not, so the date comes from clues.

THE CLUES

Violence and injustice fill Judah, 1:2 to 4. Babylon is being raised up, as something hard to believe, 1:5 to 6. It is coming but has not taken Jerusalem yet.

Every View

2 KINGS 23:36 TO 24:2 · JEREMIAH 22:13 TO 17 · BEL AND THE DRAGON 33 TO 39

VIEW 1: UNDER JEHOIAKIM

Most date the book to about 609 to 597 BC, in the days of King Jehoiakim, when Judah was full of violence, Jeremiah 22:13 to 17, and Babylon beat Egypt at Carchemish in 605 BC.

VIEW 2: JUST BEFORE BABYLON ROSE

Some think it was a little earlier, before 605 BC, because God says nobody would believe it, 1:5. Babylon's rise would still be a surprise.

VIEW 3: UNDER MANASSEH

An old Jewish chronicle, Seder Olam, places Habakkuk in the days of King Manasseh, several decades earlier.

VIEW 4: A MUCH LATER DATE

A few scholars more than a century ago thought the Chaldeans stood for Alexander the Great's Greeks. Almost no one holds that today.

A LEGEND

A story added to Daniel in the Greek Bible says an angel carried Habakkuk by his hair to Babylon to feed Daniel in the lions' den, Bel and the Dragon 33 to 39. Most see it as a legend. In the oldest Greek version, its heading calls Habakkuk a Levite, which may fit the music notes of 3:19.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Babylon was rising and Judah's judgment was near.

HABAKKUK'S SECOND COMPLAINT // PSALM 11:1–7

12 Are You not from everlasting,
O Yahweh, my God, my Holy One?
We will not die.
O Yahweh, You have appointed them
to execute judgment;
O Rock, You have established them
for correction.
13 Your eyes are too pure to look upon evil,
and You cannot tolerate wrongdoing.
So why do You tolerate the faithless?
Why are You silent
while the wicked swallow up

HAB 1:6 [NOTE] THE CHALDEANS. The Babylonians. In 605 BC they beat Egypt at Carchemish and became the new superpower. See The Babylonian Chronicle, 2 Kings, p.659, and Why Use Babylon?

HAB 1:8 [NOTE] LEOPARDS, WOLVES AND VULTURES. Moses warned of a nation that would swoop down like an eagle, Deuteronomy 28:49.

HAB 1:11 [DEMONIC] Babylon's army makes its own strength its god

HAB 1:12 [TEXT] WE WILL NOT DIE. An old Jewish list of the corrections of the scribes says this line first read You will not die, about God, and was changed out of respect.

END TIMES PROPHECIES · ARCHAEOLOGY · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING

those more righteous than themselves?
14 You have made men like the fish of the sea,
like creeping things that have no ruler.
15 The foe pulls all of them up with a hook;
he catches them in his dragnet,
and gathers them in his fishing net;
so he rejoices gladly.
16 Therefore he sacrifices to his dragnet
and burns incense to his fishing net,
for by these things his portion is sumptuous
and his food is rich.
17 Will he, therefore, empty his net
and continue to slay nations without mercy?

THE BIG QUESTION

WHY USE BABYLON?

A Worse Nation as God's Tool

HABAKKUK 1:6 · 1:12 TO 13 · 2:8

THE PUZZLE

God says He is raising up the Chaldeans, 1:6. Habakkuk answers: O Rock, You have established them for correction, 1:12. But why use a nation more wicked than the one being punished, 1:13?

WHO THEY WERE

The Chaldeans were tribes of southern Babylonia. Nabopolassar became king of Babylon in 626 BC and broke free of Assyria, and his son Nebuchadnezzar beat Egypt at Carchemish in 605 BC.

What the Bible Says

ISAIAH 10:5 TO 12 · JEREMIAH 25:9 TO 12 · ISAIAH 45:1 · DANIEL 5:30 TO 31

GOD USES NATIONS

The Bible says this more than once. Assyria was the rod of My anger, Isaiah 10:5. God calls Nebuchadnezzar My servant, Jeremiah 25:9, and the Persian Cyrus His anointed, Isaiah 45:1.

USED, NOT APPROVED

Using Babylon did not mean God liked its cruelty. They are guilty, 1:11. The tool is still judged: because you have plundered many nations, the remnant of the people will plunder you, 2:8, and Isaiah 10:12.

A TIME LIMIT

Jeremiah said Babylon would rule for seventy years, then be punished itself, Jeremiah 25:11 to 12. It fell to the Medes and Persians in 539 BC. See The Night Babylon Fell, Daniel, p.1338.

WHAT IT TEACHES

God rules over the nations even when it does not look like it. He can use even evil people for His plan without being guilty of their evil.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Babylon did not get the last word. God did.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Habakkuk climbs the watchtower and waits. God tells him to write the answer big enough to read on the run: the proud will fall, but the righteous will live by faith. Then come five woes on the bully, and a call for the whole earth to be silent before God.

YAHWEH ANSWERS AGAIN

1 I will stand at my guard post
and station myself on the ramparts.
I will watch to see what He will say to me,
and how I should answer when corrected.

2 Then Yahweh answered me:

"Write down this vision
and clearly inscribe it on tablets,
so that a herald may run with it.
3 *For the vision awaits an appointed time;*
it testifies of the end and does not lie.
Though it lingers, wait for it,
since it will surely come and will not delay.

■ **HAB 1:13 [NOTE]** TOO PURE TO LOOK ON EVIL. Habakkuk's real question: how can a holy God use people worse than the ones He is punishing?
■ **HAB 1:16 [DEMONIC]** Babylon offers sacrifices and incense to its fishing net
■ **HAB 1:16 [NOTE]** WORSHIPING THE NET. The Habakkuk Commentary from Qumran says this means the Kittim, most likely the Romans, who sacrificed to their army standards.

■ **HAB 2:1 [NOTE]** THE WATCHTOWER. Habakkuk takes his post like a guard on the wall and waits for God's answer.
■ **HAB 2:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Hinged ivory writing boards from Nimrud in Assyria, about a century before Habakkuk, held wax for writing, see the Writing Tablets Field Notes box, p.1459 FIELD NOTES p.1459
■ **HAB 2:2 [NOTE]** WRITE IT DOWN. Big and clear, so a messenger can run with it, or so anyone can read it at a glance. See Writing Tablets.
■ **HAB 2:3 [PROPHECY]** The vision will surely come at the appointed time and will not delay → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

WRITING TABLETS

HABAKKUK 2:2 · ISAIAH 30:8 · LUKE 1:63



Two ivory writing boards from Nimrud, Assyria, about 721 to 705 BC. The scratches held the wax. Metropolitan Museum of Art, New York. Public domain, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

Two hinged ivory boards. The sunken panels were filled with wax, and a scribe wrote in the wax with a pointed stick. Scratch it smooth, and the board could be used again.

HOW OLD IT IS

From the reign of the Assyrian king Sargon II, about 721 to 705 BC, about a century before Habakkuk.

WHERE FOUND

At Nimrud, an old capital of Assyria in today's Iraq.

WHAT IT SHOWS

Habakkuk's tablets could have been clay, stone or boards like these. God wanted the message written down plain, so it would last until it came true, 2:3. Zechariah wrote John's name on a tablet, probably one like this, Luke 1:63.

4 *Look at the proud one; his soul is not*
upright—
but the righteous will live by faith—
5 and wealth indeed betrays him.
He is an arrogant man never at rest.
He enlarges his appetite like Sheol,
and like Death, he is never satisfied.
He gathers all the nations to himself
and collects all the peoples as his own.

- **HAB 2:3 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 10:37-38 p.1992
- **HAB 2:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 1:17 p.1800
- **HAB 2:4 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → GAL 3:11 p.1868
- **HAB 2:4 [NOTABLE]** Paul built the gospel on this line, Romans 1:17 and Galatians 3:11, and it changed Martin Luther's life. The proud lean on themselves; the righteous lean on God.
- **HAB 2:4 [NOTE]** FAITH. See The Righteous Will Live by Faith.
- **HAB 2:5 [TEXT]** WEALTH. Most Hebrew copies say wine here. The Habakkuk Commentary from Qumran says wealth, and this Bible follows it.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE RIGHTEOUS WILL LIVE BY FAITH

Habakkuk 2:4 in the New Testament

HABAKKUK 2:4 · ROMANS 1:17 · GALATIANS 3:11 · HEBREWS 10:37 TO 38

WHAT HABAKKUK HEARD

Look at the proud one; his soul is not upright, but the righteous will live by faith, 2:4. The proud trust themselves and fall. The righteous trust God and live.

PAUL

Paul quotes it twice. In Romans 1:17 the gospel shows God's way of making people right, by faith from start to finish. In Galatians 3:11 no one is made right with God by the law, because the righteous will live by faith.

HEBREWS

Hebrews 10:37 to 38 quotes 2:3 to 4 about Jesus' return: He who is coming will come and will not delay. My righteous one will live by faith.

LUTHER'S TOWER

Martin Luther, a monk and Bible teacher, was terrified of God's righteousness. Studying Romans 1:17, he saw it as a gift God gives to those who trust Him. He later said he felt born again and that the gates of paradise opened. This became

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | ARCHAEOLOGY | GOD SPEAKING

the Reformation's cry, faith alone. See Luther's Breakthrough, Romans, p.1800.

Faith or Faithfulness?
GENESIS 15:6 · JAMES 2:17 TO 24

FAITH OR FAITHFULNESS?
The Hebrew word, emunah, means steady trust or faithfulness. Paul's Greek word, pistis, can mean faith or faithfulness too.

VIEW 1: TRUST
Paul and most Christians read it as trusting God, the kind of faith that then shows itself in a faithful life.

VIEW 2: FAITHFULNESS
Many Jewish readers and some scholars read it as staying loyal to God through hard times. The Habakkuk Commentary read it as loyalty to the law and to its Teacher.

VIEW 3: WHOSE FAITH?
The Hebrew says by his faith. The old Greek translation says by My faithfulness, meaning God's. Hebrews says My righteous one will live by faith.

ONE COMMAND
A famous saying in the Talmud says Moses gave 613 commands, and Habakkuk summed them all up in one: the righteous will live by his faith.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The righteous lean on God, not on themselves. See also Faith and Works, James, p.2004.

WOE TO THE CHALDEANS

6 Will not all of these take up a taunt
against him,
speaking with mockery and derision:
'Woe to him who amasses what is not his
and makes himself rich with many loans!
How long will this go on?'
7 Will not your creditors suddenly arise
and those who disturb you awaken?
Then you will become their prey.
8 Because you have plundered many nations,
the remnant of the people will plunder
you—
because of your bloodshed against man
and your violence against the land, the
city,
and all their dwellers.
9 Woe to him who builds his house
by unjust gain,
to place his nest on high
and escape the hand of disaster!
10 You have plotted shame for your house
by cutting off many peoples
and forfeiting your life.
11 For the stones will cry out from the wall,
and the rafters will echo it from the
woodwork.
12 Woe to him who builds a city with bloodshed
and establishes a town by iniquity!
13 Is it not indeed from Yahweh of Hosts
that the labor of the people only feeds
the fire,
and the nations weary themselves in
vain?
14 For the earth will be filled
with the knowledge of the glory of Yahweh
as the waters cover the sea.
15 Woe to him who gives drink to his neighbors,
pouring it from the wineskin until they
are drunk,
in order to gaze at their nakedness!
16 You will be filled with shame instead of
glory.
You too must drink
and expose your uncircumcision!
The cup in Yahweh's right hand
will come around to you,

- **HAB 2:6 [NOTE]** FIVE WOES. God's answer goes on in a taunt song that the nations will sing over Babylon, 2:6 to 19, so it prints red.
- **HAB 2:7 [PROPHECY]** Babylon plundered many nations, so the rest of the peoples would plunder Babylon → DAN 5:28-31 p.1338
- **HAB 2:8 [NOTE]** PLUNDERED. Babylon fell to the Medes and Persians in 539 BC. See The Night Babylon Fell, Daniel, p.1338.
- **HAB 2:11 [NOTE]** THE STONES WILL CRY OUT. Jesus said if His followers kept quiet, the stones would cry out, Luke 19:40.
- **HAB 2:14 [PROPHECY]** The earth shall be filled with the knowledge of the glory of Yahweh as the waters cover the sea → STILL TO COME
- **HAB 2:14 [NOTE]** AS THE WATERS COVER THE SEA. Isaiah 11:9 says almost the same thing.
- **HAB 2:15 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** 1QpHab, a Dead Sea Scroll that explains Habakkuk 1 and 2, says on this verse that the Wicked Priest chased the Teacher of Righteousness on the Day of Atonement, see The Habakkuk Commentary Field Notes page, p.1461 FIELD NOTES p.1461

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SCROLL, DEBATED FOR WHO IS WHO

THE HABAKKUK COMMENTARY

HABAKKUK 1:1 TO 2:20 · 1:16 · 2:4 · 2:15



Part of the Habakkuk Commentary, 1QpHab, the real scroll. Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A scroll from Qumran Cave 1 called 1QpHab, or Pesher Habakkuk. Pesher means interpretation. It quotes a few words of Habakkuk, then says what they mean, line after line, through chapters 1 and 2.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was copied in the last decades before Jesus. Most date the handwriting to the second half of the first century BC.

HOW IT WAS FOUND

Bedouin shepherds found it in 1947 with the Great Isaiah Scroll and the Community Rule. It is one of the first seven Dead Sea Scrolls. In 1954 Yigael Yadin bought it for Israel, after the scrolls were offered for sale in an ad in the Wall Street Journal.

THE TEACHER AND THE WICKED PRIEST

The scroll reads Habakkuk as a message about its own group. The righteous man is the Teacher of Righteousness, their leader. The wicked man is the Wicked Priest, most likely a high priest in Jerusalem. Scholars still argue about who these men were.

THE DAY OF ATONEMENT

On 2:15 it says the Wicked Priest chased the Teacher to his place of exile and showed up on the Day of Atonement to make them stumble.

THE KITTIM

Habakkuk's Chaldeans become the Kittim, swift and fearsome, who sacrifice to their standards, 1:16. Most think it means the Romans, whose soldiers honored their army standards.

THE RIGHTEOUS WILL LIVE

The righteous will live by faith means those who keep the law, whom God will save because of their suffering and their loyalty to the Teacher of Righteousness. Paul read the same verse very differently.

GOD'S NAME IN OLD LETTERS

The scroll is written in the square Hebrew letters used today, but every time it quotes God's name, YHWH, it switches to the old Hebrew letters, out of respect.

WHERE IS CHAPTER 3?

The scroll stops after 2:20 and leaves most of the last column blank. Some think chapter 3 was not part of Habakkuk yet. Most say the writer simply stopped, because chapter 3 is in the Murabbaat scroll and the Greek scroll.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Museum in Jerusalem. It is shown in the Shrine of the Book only a few months at a time. The rest of the time it rests in the dark to keep it safe.

SEE ALSO

The Nahum Commentary, Nahum, p.1449, a scroll from the same group that explains Nahum the same way.

DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

and utter disgrace will cover your glory.
17 For your violence against Lebanon will
overwhelm you,
and the destruction of animals will ter-
rify you,
because of your bloodshed against men
and your violence against the land, the
city,
and all their dwellers.

18 What use is an idol,
that a craftsman should carve it—
or an image,
a teacher of lies?
For its maker trusts in his own creation;
he makes idols that cannot speak.
19 Woe to him who says to wood, 'Awake!'
or to silent stone, 'Arise!'
Can it give guidance?
Behold, it is overlaid with gold and silver,
yet there is no breath in it at all."

20 But Yahweh is in His holy temple;
let all the earth be silent before Him.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Habakkuk ends with a song. He remembers God marching out to save His people long ago, and he shakes just thinking about it. Then he makes one of the boldest promises in the Bible: even if the crops fail and the barns are empty, I will still rejoice in God.

HABAKKUK'S PRAYER

1 This is a prayer of Habakkuk the prophet,
according to Shigionoth:

2 O Yahweh, I have heard the report of
You;
I stand in awe, O Yahweh, of Your
deeds.
Revive them in these years;
make them known in these years.
In Your wrath, remember mercy!

3 God came from Teman,
and the Holy One from Mount Paran.
Selah
His glory covered the heavens,
and His praise filled the earth.
4 His radiance was like the sunlight;
rays flashed from His hand,
where His power is hidden.
5 Plague went before Him,
and fever followed in His steps.
6 He stood and measured the earth;
He looked and startled the nations;
the ancient mountains crumbled;
the perpetual hills collapsed.
His ways are everlasting.
7 I saw the tents of Cushan in distress;
the curtains of Midian were trembling.
8 Were You angry at the rivers, O Yahweh?
Was Your wrath against the streams?
Did You rage against the sea
when You rode on Your horses,
on Your chariots of salvation?
9 You brandished Your bow;
You called for many arrows.
Selah
You split the earth with rivers.
10 The mountains saw You and quaked;
torrents of water swept by.
The deep roared with its voice
and lifted its hands on high.
11 Sun and moon stood still
in their places
at the flash of Your flying arrows,
at the brightness of Your shining spear.
12 You marched across the earth with fury;
You threshed the nations in wrath.
13 You went forth for the salvation of Your
people,
to save Your anointed.
You crushed the head of the house of the
wicked
and stripped him from head to toe.
Selah

- **HAB 2:16 [TEXT]** EXPOSE YOUR UNCIRCUMCISION. The Habakkuk Commentary and the old Greek read stagger instead. The two words look alike in Hebrew.
- **HAB 2:18 [DEMONIC]** Woe to anyone who tells a wooden idol to wake up
- **HAB 2:20 [NOTABLE]** After all the noise of the woes and the idols that cannot speak, the living God is on His throne. The right answer is quiet awe.
- **HAB 2:20 [NOTE]** BLACK AGAIN. Habakkuk's own words about God, outside God's quote.
- **HAB 3:1 [NOTE]** A PRAYER, NOT A QUOTE. Chapter 3 is Habakkuk's prayer song, so it prints black.
- **HAB 3:1 [NOTE]** SHIGIONOTH. Maybe a wild, emotional kind of song, like the Shiggaion of Psalm 7:1, p.887.
- **HAB 3:2 [NOTABLE]** Habakkuk knows judgment is coming and does not argue with it. He asks God to be Himself: just, and merciful too.
- **HAB 3:3 [NOTE]** TEMAN AND PARAN. The deserts south of Judah, toward Edom and Sinai. Jars from Kuntillet Ajrud in the Sinai bless people by Yahweh of Teman. See Yahweh and His Asherah, Hosea, p.1359.
- **HAB 3:3 [NOTE]** SELAH. See What Does Selah Mean? in Psalms, p.915.
- **HAB 3:11 [NOTE]** SUN AND MOON STOOD STILL. Most think Habakkuk remembers Joshua's long day. See Did the Sun Stand Still?, Joshua, p.354.

NOTABLE

14 With his own spear You pierced his
head,
when his warriors stormed out to scat-
ter us,
gloating as though ready
to secretly devour the weak.
15 You trampled the sea with Your horses,
churning the great waters.

16 I heard and trembled within;
my lips quivered at the sound.
Decay entered my bones;
I trembled where I stood.
Yet I must wait patiently for the day of dis-
tress
to come upon the people who invade
us.

HABAKKUK REJOICES

17 Though the fig tree does not bud
and no fruit is on the vines,
though the olive crop fails
and the fields produce no food,
though the sheep are cut off from the fold
and no cattle are in the stalls,
18 yet I will exult in Yahweh;
I will rejoice in the God of my salvation!
19 Yahweh the Lord is my strength;
He makes my feet like those of a deer;
He makes me walk upon the heights!

*For the choirmaster. With stringed instru-
ments.*

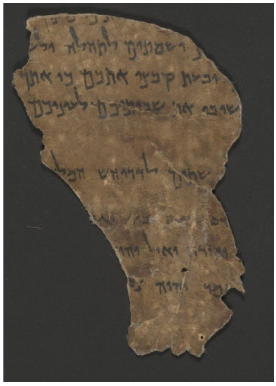
- **HAB 3:13 [NOTE]** YOUR ANOINTED. The Hebrew word is mashiach, messiah. Most think it means Israel's king or the people. Some Christians also see the Messiah here.
- **HAB 3:16 [NOTE]** I TREMBLED. Habakkuk is honest. The vision scares him, but he chooses to wait for God.
- **HAB 3:17 [NOTABLE]** One of the boldest promises in the Bible. With nothing left on the farm, Habakkuk chooses joy in God Himself. The book that started with a complaint ends with a song.
- **HAB 3:19 [NOTE]** LIKE A DEER. Almost the same words as David's song, Psalm 18:33.
- **HAB 3:19 [NOTE]** FOR THE CHOIRMASTER. A note for the temple musicians, like many psalms. Habakkuk's prayer was meant to be sung.

BOOK 36 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

ZEPHANIAH

Judgment Day, Then a Love Song

AUTHOR	Zephaniah son of Cushi, 1:1, maybe a great great grandson of King Hezekiah.
DATE	In the days of King Josiah, 640 to 609 BC, most likely before his reform of 622 BC. See When Was Zephaniah Written?
WRITTEN TO	Judah and Jerusalem, with messages about the nations around them.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Parts are in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat, the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever, and scrolls of the Twelve from Qumran Cave 4.
KEY VERSE	Zephaniah 3:17. He will rejoice over you with singing.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF ZEPHANIAH
A piece of 4QXII b, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 150 to 125 BC. The top lines are the last words of Zephaniah, 3:20: at that time I will gather you... before your very eyes. Below them, Haggai begins: in the second year of the reign of Darius. Another piece of the same scroll has 2:13 to 15. See The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381.

Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

King Manasseh reigned 55 years and filled Judah with idols. His grandson Josiah became king at eight years old. People bowed to Baal, the stars and Milcom, and still swore by Yahweh. Assyria was getting weak, and Babylon was not yet in sight. Into that, Zephaniah announced the Day of Yahweh.

What Was Going Wrong

MIXED WORSHIP. Those who bow down and swear by Yahweh but also swear by Milcom, 1:5.
COMPLACENCY. Yahweh will do nothing, either good or bad, 1:12.
PRIDE. Nineveh said I am it, and there is none besides me, 2:15.
CORRUPT LEADERS. Her princes are roaring lions; her judges are evening wolves, 3:3.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Zephaniah is a short book with a big swing. It starts with the darkest picture of the Day of Yahweh in the Bible: a day of wrath, a day of trouble and distress. God will judge Judah

and every nation around it. But it ends in a song. God will gather a humble people, take away their punishment and live among them, and He will rejoice over them with singing.

Zephaniah at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 18 **THE DAY IS NEAR**
God will sweep away the idols, and the day is near.

CH 2:1 to 15 **THE NATIONS**
Seek Yahweh, then judgment on the neighbors and Nineveh.

CH 3:1 to 20 **JERUSALEM AND THE REMNANT**
Judgment comes home, then God sings over His people.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ZEPHANIAH 3:15 Israel's King, Yahweh, is among you. Jesus is called the King of Israel, John 1:49 and 12:13.

ZEPHANIAH 3:9 Pure lips for the nations to call on His name. Many see a first step at Pentecost, Acts 2.

ZEPHANIAH 1:14 TO 15 The great Day of Yahweh. The New Testament says the day of the Lord will come like a thief, 2 Peter 3:10.

ZEPHANIAH
Yahweh hides, or Yahweh treasures.

CUSHI
His father's name. It means a man from Cush, the land south of Egypt.

MILCOM
The god of the Ammonites, 1:5, often thought to be the same god as Molech.

What to Watch for in Zephaniah

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (2)	1:4, 1:13
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (5)	2:4-6, 2:8-10, 2:12-15, 3:9
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	3:10, 3:15
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	2:7
DEMONIC (4)	1:3, 1:5-6, 1:9, 2:11
NOTABLE (2)	2:3, 3:17
GOD SPEAKING (28 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (3 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

A ROYAL PROPHET?
Zephaniah traces his family four generations back to Hezekiah. If that is the king, a prince preached judgment on the palace. See Was Zephaniah a Prince?

DIES IRAE
Zephaniah 1:15 gave the church its most famous funeral hymn, Day of Wrath. Mozart and Verdi wrote music for it, and the tune still shows up in movies.

THE WHOLE ALPHABET
The rabbis noticed that 3:8 uses every letter of the Hebrew alphabet.

GOD SINGS
3:17 is one of the very few places in the Bible where God Himself sings. See Does God Really Sing Over Us?

How Did It Turn Out?

Josiah cleaned out the idols in 622 BC, but after he died the idols came back. Nineveh fell in 612 BC, Ashkelon in 604 BC, and Jerusalem in 586 BC, as Zephaniah said. A remnant came home from Babylon. And the promise that God would live among His people waited for its biggest answer.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · DEMONIC · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Zephaniah opens with the scariest weather report in the Bible: God is going to sweep everything away. Judah is bowing to Baal, the stars and Milcom, and calling it faith. The Day of Yahweh is coming, and no amount of silver or gold will buy a way out.

ZEPHANIAH PROPHESIES JUDGMENT ON JUDAH // MATTHEW 13:36–43

1 This is the word of Yahweh that came to
Zephaniah son of Cushi, the son of
Gedaliah, the son of Amariah, the son of
Hezekiah, in the days of Josiah son of
Amon king of Judah:

2 "I will completely sweep away
everything from the face of the earth,"
declares Yahweh.
3 "I will sweep away man and beast;
I will sweep away the birds of the air,
and the fish of the sea,
and the idols with their wicked worshipers.
I will cut off mankind
from the face of the earth,"
declares Yahweh.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WAS ZEPHANIAH A PRINCE?

The Family Tree

ZEPHANIAH 1:1 · 2 KINGS 20:21

THE CLUE

Zephaniah son of Cushi, the son of Gedaliah, the son of Amariah, the son of Hezekiah, 1:1. Most prophets name only their father. Zephaniah names four generations.

WHY IT MATTERS

If this Hezekiah is the king, then Zephaniah was royalty, a distant cousin of King Josiah, preaching against the princes and the sons of the king, 1:8.

Every View

2 KINGS 21:18 TO 19 · MATTHEW 1:9 TO 10 · JEREMIAH 13:23

VIEW 1: KING HEZEKIAH

Many scholars think so. Why else go back four generations, unless to reach a famous name? The dates can work: Josiah was Hezekiah's great grandson, and Zephaniah would be his great great grandson, one step younger.

VIEW 2: ANOTHER HEZEKIAH

The text does not say king, and no Amariah is listed among Hezekiah's sons. Hezekiah was a common name.

VIEW 3: TO EXPLAIN CUSHI

His father's name means a man from Cush, the land south of Egypt. Some think the long family tree was given to show Zephaniah was a true Israelite. Others think he had African family, which would make him one of the first prophets with roots in Africa.

WHY THE UNDERLINE

This Bible underlines Hezekiah in 1:1 as part of Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:9 to 10, because most think he is the king. If he is not, Zephaniah is still a prophet of royal-sounding courage.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Zephaniah spoke boldly to the most powerful people in Jerusalem.

4 "I will stretch out My hand against Judah
and against all who dwell in Jerusalem.
I will cut off from this place every remnant
of Baal,
the names of the idolatrous and pagan
priests—
5 those who bow on the rooftops
to worship the host of heaven,
those who bow down and swear by Yahweh
but also swear by Milcom,
6 and those who turn back
from following Yahweh,

- **ZEPH 1:1 [NOTE]** FOUR GENERATIONS. Zephaniah traces his family back to Hezekiah, most likely the king. See Was Zephaniah a Prince?
- **ZEPH 1:1 [NOTE]** ZEPHANIAH. His name means Yahweh hides, or Yahweh treasures. Compare 2:3, perhaps you will be sheltered.
- **ZEPH 1:2 [NOTE]** SWEEP AWAY. The list in 1:3 runs man, beast, birds, fish: the creation order of Genesis 1 backwards. Judgment undoes creation.
- **ZEPH 1:3 [DEMONIC]** God will sweep away idols along with their wicked worshipers
- **ZEPH 1:4 [PROPHECY]** God would cut off every remnant of Baal and the pagan priests from Jerusalem → 2KI 23:4-5 · MEDIUM p.656
- **ZEPH 1:4 [DEMONIC]** God will cut off Baal, star worship, and swearing by Milcom
- **ZEPH 1:4 [NOTE]** EVERY REMNANT OF BAAL. Josiah tore out Baal worship and the idolatrous priests, 2 Kings 23:4 to 5. See When Was Zephaniah Written?
- **ZEPH 1:5 [NOTE]** MILCOM. The Ammonite god, often thought to be Molech. Josiah defiled his shrine, 2 Kings 23:13. These people swore by Yahweh and Milcom in one breath.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

neither seeking Yahweh
nor inquiring of Him."

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHEN WAS ZEPHANIAH WRITTEN?

The Clues

ZEPHANIAH 1:1 · 1:4 TO 6

THE KING

In the days of Josiah son of Amon king of Judah, 1:1. Josiah ruled from 640 to 609 BC.

THE CLUES

Baal worship, star worship and Milcom are still everywhere, 1:4 to 5. Nineveh is still standing, 2:13. Nineveh fell in 612 BC.

Every View

2 KINGS 22:3 TO 23:25 · 2 CHRONICLES 34:3 · NAHUM 3:7

VIEW 1: BEFORE THE REFORM

Most date Zephaniah to about 630 to 622 BC. The idols he names are the very things Josiah tore out in 622 BC, when the Book of the Law was found, 2 Kings 23:4 to 13. Many think Zephaniah's preaching helped start the reform.

VIEW 2: DURING THE REFORM

Josiah began to seek God at about 16 and started cleaning out idols at about 20, 2 Chronicles 34:3, in 632 and 628 BC. Zephaniah may have preached alongside these first steps.

VIEW 3: AFTER THE REFORM

A few think it came after 622 BC, when some idol worship had come back in secret. Nineveh still had to be standing, so it was before 612 BC.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Zephaniah preached in Josiah's day, before Nineveh fell. Every date puts him with Jeremiah, Nahum and the prophetess Huldah.

THE DAY OF YAHWEH // MALACHI 4:1–6; 1 THESSALONIANS 5:1–11; 2 PETER 3:8–13

7 Be silent in the presence of the Lord Yahweh,
for the Day of Yahweh is near.
Indeed, Yahweh has prepared a sacrifice;
He has consecrated His guests.

8 "On the Day of Yahweh's sacrifice
I will punish the princes,
the sons of the king,
and all who are dressed in foreign apparel.
9 On that day I will punish
all who leap over the threshold,
who fill the house of their master
with violence and deceit.
10 On that day," declares Yahweh,
"a cry will go up from the Fish Gate,
a wail from the Second District,
and a loud crashing from the hills.
11 Wail, O dwellers of the Hollow,
for all your merchants will be silenced;
all who weigh out silver will be cut off.
12 And at that time I will search Jerusalem with lamps
and punish the men settled in complacency,
who say in their hearts,
'Yahweh will do nothing,
either good or bad.'
13 Their wealth will be plundered
and their houses laid waste.
They will build houses but not inhabit them,
and plant vineyards but never drink their wine.

14 The great Day of Yahweh is near—
near and coming quickly.
Listen, the Day of Yahweh!
Then the cry of the mighty will be bitter.
15 That day will be
a day of wrath,
a day of trouble and distress,

- **ZEPH 1:8 [NOTE]** FOREIGN APPAREL. Dressing like the nations and adopting their gods went together. The princes copied the culture of Assyria and Egypt.
- **ZEPH 1:9 [DEMONIC]** God will punish those who leap over the threshold
- **ZEPH 1:9 [NOTE]** LEAP OVER THE THRESHOLD. Likely a pagan habit. Priests of the Philistine god Dagon would not step on the threshold of his temple, 1 Samuel 5:5.
- **ZEPH 1:10 [NOTE]** THE FISH GATE AND THE SECOND DISTRICT. Neighborhoods of Jerusalem. The prophetess Huldah lived in the Second District, 2 Kings 22:14, and Nehemiah later rebuilt the Fish Gate, Nehemiah 3:3.
- **ZEPH 1:11 [NOTE]** THE HOLLOW. Probably the market quarter in a low part of the city, where the merchants weighed out silver.
- **ZEPH 1:12 [NOTE]** WITH LAMPS. God will search every dark corner. The complacent men are, word for word, thickening on their dregs, like wine left too long without being poured off.
- **ZEPH 1:13 [PROPHECY]** The wealth of Jerusalem would be plundered and its houses laid waste → 2KI 25:9-10; 2KI 25:13 p.660
- **ZEPH 1:14 [NOTE]** THE GREAT DAY. See What Is the Day of the Lord?

NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

a day of destruction and desolation,
a day of darkness and gloom,
a day of clouds and blackness,
16 a day of horn blast and battle cry
against the fortified cities,
and against the high corner towers.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT IS THE DAY OF THE LORD?

Zephaniah's Picture

ZEPHANIAH 1:7 · 1:14 TO 18 · 3:11 TO 17

THE PICTURE

That day will be a day of wrath, a day of trouble and distress, a day of destruction and desolation, a day of darkness and gloom, 1:15. No prophet paints it darker than Zephaniah.

BUT ALSO

The same book calls the future on that day a day when the remnant will not be put to shame, 3:11, and when God will rejoice over His people, 3:16 to 17.

DIES IRAE

The Latin of 1:15 begins dies irae, dies illa. The medieval hymn Day of Wrath, from this verse, was sung at funerals for centuries.

Every View

AMOS 5:18 TO 20 · JOEL 2:31 · ACTS 2:20 · 1 THESSALONIANS 5:2 · 2 PETER 3:10

VIEW 1: A DAY IN HISTORY

For Judah, the day came when Babylon burned Jerusalem in 586 BC. The prophets used the Day of Yahweh for any time God steps in to judge.

VIEW 2: THE LAST DAY

The New Testament uses the same words for the end of the age: the day of the Lord will come like a thief, 1 Thessalonians 5:2 and 2 Peter 3:10. The whole earth will be consumed, 1:18, sounds bigger than one city.

VIEW 3: BOTH

Most Christians say both. Like a mountain range seen from far away, near and far peaks look like one. Jerusalem's fall was a preview of the final day.

VIEW 4: ALREADY STARTED

Peter said Pentecost began what Joel said about the great and glorious Day of the Lord, Acts 2:16 to 20. Some see the last days as running from Jesus to His return.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God will judge evil, and the humble who seek Him have hope, 2:3. Amos warned that the day would be darkness, not light, Amos 5:18 to 20.

17 I will bring such distress on mankind
that they will walk like the blind,
because they have sinned against Yahweh.
Their blood will be poured out like dust
and their flesh like dung.
18 Neither their silver nor their gold
will be able to deliver them
on the Day of Yahweh's wrath.
The whole earth will be consumed
by the fire of His jealousy."

For indeed, He will make a sudden end
of all who dwell on the earth.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Zephaniah begs the humble to seek God before it is too late. Then he takes a tour of the neighbors: the Philistine cities, Moab and Ammon, Cush, and finally proud Nineveh, the city that said there is no one but me. All of them will fall.

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // JOEL 1:13–20; AMOS 5:4–15; LUKE 13:1–5

1 Gather yourselves, gather together,
O shameful nation,
2 before the decree takes effect
and the day passes like chaff,
before the burning anger of Yahweh
comes upon you,
before the Day of Yahweh's anger
comes upon you.
3 Seek Yahweh, all you humble of the
earth
who carry out His justice.

ZEPH 1:15 [NOTE] DIES IRAE. In Latin this verse begins dies irae, dies illa, that day is a day of wrath. A medieval hymn by that name, usually credited to Thomas of Celano in the 1200s, was sung at funerals for centuries. Mozart and Verdi set it to music, and its tune shows up in many movie scores.

ZEPH 1:18 [NOTE] THE FIRE OF HIS JEALOUSY. Zephaniah speaking about God again, so black.

ZEPH 2:1 [NOTE] A CALL TO REPENT. Zephaniah's own plea, so it prints black.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

Seek righteousness; seek humility.
Perhaps you will be sheltered
on the day of Yahweh's anger.

JUDGMENT ON THE PHILISTINES // JEREMIAH 47:1–7

4 For Gaza will be abandoned,
and Ashkelon left in ruins.
Ashdod will be driven out at noon,
and Ekron will be uprooted.
5 Woe to the dwellers of the seacoast,
O nation of the Cherethites!
The word of Yahweh is against you,
O Canaan, land of the Philistines:
"I will destroy you,
and no one will be left."
6 So the seacoast will become a land of pastures,
with wells for shepherds and folds for sheep.
7 The coast will belong to the remnant of the house of Judah;
there they will find pasture.
They will lie down in the evening
among the houses of Ashkelon,
for Yahweh their God will attend to them
and restore their captives.

JUDGMENT ON MOAB AND AMMON // ISAIAH 16:1–14; JEREMIAH 48:1–47

8 "I have heard the reproach of Moab
and the insults of the Ammonites,
who have taunted My people
and threatened their borders.
9 Therefore, as surely as I live,"
declares Yahweh of Hosts,
the God of Israel,
"surely Moab will be like Sodom
and the Ammonites like Gomorrah—
a place of weeds and salt pits,
a perpetual wasteland.
The remnant of My people will plunder them;
the remainder of My nation will dispossess them."

10 This they shall have in return for their pride,
for taunting and mocking the people
of Yahweh of Hosts.
11 Yahweh will be terrifying to them
when He starves all the gods of the earth.
Then the nations of every shore
will bow in worship to Him,
each in its own place.

JUDGMENT ON CUSH AND ASSYRIA

12 "You too, O Cushites,
will be slain by My sword."

13 And He will stretch out His hand against the north
and destroy Assyria;
He will make Nineveh a desolation,
as dry as a desert.
14 Herds will lie down in her midst,
creatures of every kind.
Both the desert owl and screech owl

- **ZEPH 2:3 [NOTABLE]** Before the storm, God's door is still open. The humble who seek Him may be sheltered, and Zephaniah's own name means Yahweh hides.
- **ZEPH 2:3 [NOTE]** PERHAPS. Even the humble are not promised an easy way out, only perhaps.
- **ZEPH 2:4 [PROPHECY]** For Gaza shall be forsaken, and Ashkelon desolate; they shall drive out Ashdod at noon; Ekron shall be uprooted → HISTORY: Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon destroyed Ashkelon in 604 BC. Ekron was burned about the same time. Found in the Babylonian Chronicle and in burned ruins dug up at Ashkelon and Ekron.
- **ZEPH 2:4 [NOTE]** FOUR PHILISTINE CITIES. Gath, the fifth, is missing, most likely because it had already been ruined. In Hebrew Gaza will be abandoned sounds like a pun, Azzah azuvah. See The Philistines, Judges, p.408, and The Ekron Inscription, 2 Kings, p.600.
- **ZEPH 2:5 [NOTE]** CHERETHITES. People from Crete. The Philistines came from Caphtor, most likely Crete, Amos 9:7.
- **ZEPH 2:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Babylonian Chronicle says Nebuchadnezzar turned Ashkelon into a ruin heap in Kislev 604 BC, and the Harvard dig found the burned city, see the Ashkelon, 604 BC Field Notes page, p.1472 FIELD NOTES p.1472
- **ZEPH 2:7 [NOTE]** THE HOUSES OF ASHKELON. Nebuchadnezzar destroyed Ashkelon in 604 BC. See Ashkelon, 604 BC.
- **ZEPH 2:8 [PROPHECY]** Moab shall be like Sodom, and Ammon like Gomorrah → HISTORY: Babylon's King Nebuchadnezzar conquered Moab and Ammon about 582 BC, and both nations later faded from history. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 10.9.7.
- **ZEPH 2:11 [DEMONIC]** God will starve all the gods of the earth
- **ZEPH 2:11 [NOTE]** STARVES THE GODS. Idols were fed with offerings. When nobody brings them food, they waste away.
- **ZEPH 2:12 [PROPHECY]** You Ethiopians also shall be slain by My sword → HISTORY: Babylon's King Nebuchadnezzar invaded Egypt about 568 BC. Found in a broken Babylonian clay tablet, British Museum 33041. · MEDIUM
- **ZEPH 2:12 [NOTE]** CUSHITES. People from the land south of Egypt. Kings from Cush ruled Egypt until 664 BC, so Cush may mean Egypt here.
- **ZEPH 2:13 [PROPHECY]** He will stretch out His hand against the north, destroy Assyria, and make Nineveh a desolation → HISTORY: Nineveh, the capital of Assyria, fell to the Babylonians and Medes in 612 BC. Recorded in the Babylonian Chronicle, and its ruins are in Mosul, Iraq.
- **ZEPH 2:13 [NOTE]** NINEVEH. Nineveh fell in 612 BC to the Babylonians and Medes, just as Zephaniah and Nahum said. See The Fall of Nineveh Chronicle, Nahum, p.1451.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

ASHKELON, 604 BC

ZEPHANIAH 2:4 TO 7 · JEREMIAH 47:5 TO 7 · JEREMIAH 36:9



The great earth rampart and gate of ancient Ashkelon, first built about 1850 BC, at Tel Ashkelon National Park. Photo Ian Scott, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

Ashkelon was the great Philistine seaport on the coast north of Gaza. Zephaniah said it would be left in ruins, 2:4, and that the people of Judah would one day lie down among its houses, 2:7.

WHAT THE TABLET SAYS

A Babylonian chronicle tablet in the British Museum says that in the month of Kislev in Nebuchadnezzar's first year, late 604 BC, he marched to Ashkelon, captured its king, plundered it, and turned the city into a ruin heap. See The Babylonian Chronicle, 2 Kings, p.659.

WHAT THE DIGGERS FOUND

The Leon Levy Expedition from Harvard dug at Ashkelon from 1985 to 2016, led by Lawrence Stager and then Daniel Master. They found the city of 604 BC burned and buried where it fell: shops in the market still full of wine jars and goods, a winery, and weights for the scales.

THE PEOPLE

In the burned rubble lay the bones of people caught when the city fell, among them a woman of about 35. Stager said the burned city was like a moment frozen in time.

NO ONE CAME TO HELP

A papyrus letter found at Saqqara in Egypt has a Philistine king, named Adon, begging Pharaoh to send an army, because the army of the king of Babylon had already reached Aphek. Most think it came from Ekron or Ashkelon in these same years. No help from Egypt saved the city.

WHAT IT MEANT FOR JERUSALEM

In that same month, Kislev 604 BC, Jerusalem held a public fast, Jeremiah 36:9. Many think the news from Ashkelon had just arrived. Jeremiah had also warned Ashkelon, Jeremiah 47:5 to 7.

WHAT THE PHOTO SHOWS

The mud brick gate and the huge sloping rampart of the city, built about 1,250 years before Nebuchadnezzar. The rampart still circles the ruin by the sea.

AFTER 604 BC

Ashkelon stayed empty for decades. Later it was rebuilt under the Persians, and Herod the Great's family was said to come from there. Today the old city is a national park beside the modern city.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · GOD SPEAKING

will roost atop her pillars.
Their calls will sound from the window,
but desolation will lie on the threshold,
for He will expose the beams of cedar.

15 This carefree city
that dwells securely,
that says in her heart:
"I am it, and there is none besides me,"
what a ruin she has become,
a resting place for beasts.
Everyone who passes by her
hisses and shakes his fist.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Jerusalem is no better than the nations, so judgment comes home too. But then the book turns. God promises to purify the nations, keep a humble remnant, and live among His people. It ends with God Himself singing over them.

JUDGMENT ON JERUSALEM

1 Woe to the city of oppressors,
rebellious and defiled!
2 She heeded no voice;
she accepted no correction.
She does not trust in Yahweh;
she has not drawn near to her God.
3 Her princes are roaring lions;
her judges are evening wolves,
leaving nothing for the morning.
4 Her prophets are reckless,
faithless men.
Her priests profane the sanctuary;
they do violence to the law.
5 Yahweh within her is righteous;
He does no wrong.
He applies His justice morning by morning;
He does not fail at dawn,
yet the unjust know no shame.

PURIFICATION OF THE NATIONS

6 "I have cut off the nations;
their corner towers are destroyed.
I have made their streets deserted
with no one to pass through.
Their cities are laid waste,
with no man, no inhabitant.
7 I said, 'Surely you will fear Me
and accept correction.'
Then her dwelling place would not be cut off
despite all for which I punished her.
But they rose early
to corrupt all their deeds.
8 Therefore wait for Me,"
declares Yahweh,
"until the day
I rise to testify.
For My decision is to gather nations,
to assemble kingdoms,
to pour out upon them My indignation—
all My burning anger.
For all the earth will be consumed
by the fire of My jealousy.

A FAITHFUL REMNANT

9 For then I will restore
pure lips to the peoples,
that all may call upon the name of Yahweh
and serve Him shoulder to shoulder.
10 From beyond the rivers of Cush
My worshipers, My scattered people,
will bring Me an offering.
11 On that day you will not be put to shame
for any of the deeds
by which you have transgressed against Me.
For then I will remove from among you
those who rejoice in their pride,
and you will never again be haughty
on My holy mountain.
12 But I will leave within you a meek and humble people,
and they will trust in the name of Yahweh.
13 The remnant of Israel

- **ZEPH 2:15 [NOTE]** NONE BESIDES ME. Nineveh talks like God, who says there is none but Me, Isaiah 45:6. Babylon boasts the same way later, Isaiah 47:8.
- **ZEPH 2:15 [TEXT]** IN HER HEART. A Dead Sea Scroll from Qumran Cave 4, 4QXII b, has this verse.
- **ZEPH 3:1 [NOTE]** WOE TO THE CITY. The listeners would expect another foreign city. It is Jerusalem.
- **ZEPH 3:5 [NOTE]** MORNING BY MORNING. God's justice shows up every day, like the sunrise.

- **ZEPH 3:9 [PROPHECY]** I will turn to the peoples a pure language so they may all call upon the name of Yahweh → HISTORY: Some Christians see this in the rebirth of spoken Hebrew led by Eliezer Ben Yehuda, starting in 1881. Most scholars read it as pure worship from all nations. · LOW
- **ZEPH 3:9 [PROPHECY]** I will restore to the peoples a pure language, that they all may call on the name of Yahweh → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **ZEPH 3:9 [NOTE]** PURE LIPS. At Babel God mixed up the nations' language, Genesis 11:9. Here He gives the nations pure lips to call on His name together. Many Christians see a first step at Pentecost, Acts 2. See Pentecost, Acts, p.1744.

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

will no longer do wrong or speak lies,
nor will a deceitful tongue
be found in their mouths.
But they will feed and lie down,
with no one to make them tremble."

ISRAEL'S RESTORATION

14 Sing for joy, O Daughter of Zion;
shout aloud, O Israel!
Be glad and rejoice with all your heart,
O Daughter of Jerusalem!
15 Yahweh has taken away your punishment;
He has turned back your enemy.
Israel's King, Yahweh, is among you;
no longer will you fear any harm.
16 On that day they will say to Jerusalem:
"Do not fear, O Zion;
do not let your hands fall limp.
17 Yahweh your God is among you;
He is mighty to save.
He will rejoice over you with gladness;
He will quiet you with His love;
He will rejoice over you with singing."

THE BIG QUESTION

DOES GOD REALLY SING OVER US?

Zephaniah 3:17

ZEPHANIAH 3:14 TO 17

THE VERSE

Yahweh your God is among you; He is mighty to save. He will rejoice over you with gladness; He will quiet you with His love; He will rejoice over you with singing, 3:17.

WHO IS SINGING

In 3:14 the people are told to sing. In 3:17 God sings back. It is one of the very few places in the Bible where God Himself sings.

What It Means

LUKE 15:7 · ISAIAH 62:5 · HEBREWS 2:12

QUIET IN HIS LOVE

The Hebrew says He will be silent in His love. Some read it as love too deep for words, like a parent watching a sleeping child. Others read it as God no longer bringing up their sins. The old Greek says He will renew you in His love.

A LOUD JOY

Rejoice over you with singing uses a word for a loud ringing shout of joy, the same kind of joy God asks of His people in 3:14.

THE SAME HEART IN THE NEW TESTAMENT

Jesus said there is joy in heaven over one sinner who repents, Luke 15:7. Isaiah says God rejoices over His people like a groom over his bride, Isaiah 62:5. Hebrews pictures Jesus singing praise in the middle of the church, Hebrews 2:12.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The book that started with the Day of wrath ends with God's joy over His people. Yes, by the Bible's own words, God sings.

18 "I will gather those among you who grieve
over the appointed feasts,
so that you will no longer suffer reproach.
19 Behold, at that time,
I will deal with all who afflict you.
I will save the lame
and gather the scattered;
and I will appoint praise and fame
for the disgraced throughout the earth.
20 At that time I will bring you in;
yes, at that time I will gather you.
For I will give you fame and praise
among all the peoples of the earth
when I restore your captives
before your very eyes,"
says Yahweh.

- **ZEPH 3:13 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 14:5 p.2103
- **ZEPH 3:13 [NOTE]** NO DECEIT. Revelation 14:5 echoes this line: no lie was found in their mouths.
- **ZEPH 3:14 [NOTE]** SING FOR JOY. Zephaniah's song to Jerusalem, about God in the third person, so it prints black.
- **ZEPH 3:15 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh, the King of Israel, would live among His people and they would fear no more → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **ZEPH 3:15 [NOTE]** THE KING OF ISRAEL. Nathanael called Jesus the King of Israel, John 1:49, and the crowds did on Palm Sunday, John 12:13.
- **ZEPH 3:17 [NOTABLE]** One of the very few places in the Bible where God Himself sings. The book that began with the Day of wrath ends with God's joy over His people.
- **ZEPH 3:17 [NOTE]** HE WILL REJOICE OVER YOU. The Hebrew says He will be silent in His love, quiet in delight like a parent over a sleeping child, then He sings. See Does God Really Sing Over Us?
- **ZEPH 3:18 [NOTE]** RED AGAIN. The last three verses are God's own promise, so they print red.

HAGGAI

The Temple Comeback

AUTHOR	Haggai the prophet, 1:1. Ezra 5:1 and 6:14 name him with Zechariah.
DATE	520 BC, the second year of King Darius I. Four messages in less than four months, each dated to the day.
WRITTEN TO	Zerubbabel the governor, Joshua the high priest, and the people back from Babylon.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Pieces are in two scrolls of the Twelve from Qumran Cave 4, copied before the time of Jesus, and in the Hebrew scroll of the Twelve from Wadi Murabbaat.
KEY VERSE	Haggai 2:9. The latter glory of this house will be greater than the former.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF HAGGAI
The surviving pieces of 4QXII e, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 75 to 50 BC. A few hold Haggai 2:18 to 21, and the rest are Zechariah. An older scroll, 4QXII b, from about 150 to 125 BC, has the first words of Haggai, 1:1, shown in the Zephaniah introduction, p.1465. See also The Murabbaat Scroll, Joel, p.1381.

Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

In 538 BC Cyrus let the Jews go home. They built the altar and laid the temple foundation, then the neighbors scared them off, and the work stopped for about 16 years. The temple lay in ruins while people built their own homes. Then, in 520 BC, God sent Haggai.

What Was Going Wrong

WRONG PRIORITIES. Is it a time for you yourselves to live in your paneled houses, while this house lies in ruins? 1:4.
A LEAKY LIFE. You earn wages to put into a bag pierced through, 1:6.
DISCOURAGEMENT. Does it not appear to you like nothing in comparison? 2:3.
UNCLEAN WORK. Whatever they offer there is defiled, 2:14.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Haggai is the second shortest book in the Old Testament, four short sermons in less than four months. The people back from Babylon had put God's house on hold and their own houses first. Haggai told them to get their priorities straight, and they did. He told them not

to judge the new temple by its size, because God would fill it with glory. And he gave Zerubbabel, David's heir, a promise that pointed far beyond him.

Haggai at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 15 **BUILD MY HOUSE**
Set your heart on your ways, and the people obey.

CH 2:1 to 9 **GREATER GLORY**
Be strong and work, for I am with you.

CH 2:10 to 19 **CLEAN AND UNCLEAN**
A quiz for the priests, then a blessing.

CH 2:20 to 23 **THE SIGNET RING**
A promise to Zerubbabel.

Where Jesus Shows Up

HAGGAI 2:9 The latter glory of this house will be greater than the former. Jesus was brought to this temple as a baby and taught in it, Luke 2:27 to 32 and 19:47.

HAGGAI 2:23 Zerubbabel, God's signet ring, is in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:12 to 13 and Luke 3:27.

HAGGAI 2:6 Hebrews 12:26 to 28 quotes the shaking of heaven and earth for the end, and says believers receive a kingdom that cannot be shaken.

HAGGAI
Festive, or born on a feast day. From the Hebrew chag, a feast.

ZERUBBABEL
Most likely seed of Babylon, probably because he was born there.

JOSHUA
Yahweh saves. The high priest, son of Jehozadak. Not the Joshua of Jericho.

What to Watch for in Haggai

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (1)	2:9
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	2:23
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	2:6-7, 2:21-22
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	1:8
NOTABLE (2)	1:5-6, 2:4-5
GOD SPEAKING (29 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (12 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

DATED TO THE DAY
Every message has a date, so we know them on our calendar: August 29, September 21, October 17 and December 18, 520 BC.

23 DAYS
From the first sermon to the first day of work took only 23 days, 1:15.

THE KING'S TIMBER
In the same years, King Darius was hauling cedar and gold from all over his empire for his own palace. See Darius's Building Charter.

THE RING GOES BACK ON
God took the signet ring off Jehoiachin, Jeremiah 22:24, and put it back on his grandson Zerubbabel, 2:23.

How Did It Turn Out?

The people finished the temple in 515 BC, Ezra 6:15, and Darius helped pay for it, Ezra 6:8. Zerubbabel never became king, and he drops out of the story. Herod later made the temple huge, and Jesus walked its courts. The Romans burned it in AD 70.

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

The exiles came home and laid the temple foundation, then quit for about 16 years. Meanwhile they built nice houses for themselves. So God asks a simple question: how is that working out for you? Their crops fail and their paychecks leak. They listen, and in 23 days the work starts again.

A CALL TO REBUILD THE TEMPLE // EZRA 5:1–5

1 In the second year of the reign of Darius,
on the first day of the sixth month, the
word of Yahweh came through Haggai the
prophet to Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel,
governor of Judah, and to Joshua son of
Jehozadak, the high priest, stating 2 that
this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"These people say, 'The time has not yet
come
to rebuild the house of Yahweh.'"

3 Then the word of Yahweh came through
Haggai the prophet, saying:

4 "Is it a time for you yourselves
to live in your paneled houses,
while this house lies in ruins?"

5 Now this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

"Set your heart on your ways.

6 You have planted much
but harvested little.
You eat but never have enough.
You drink but never have your fill.
You put on clothes but never get warm.
You earn wages to put into a bag
pierced through."

- **HAG 1:1 [NOTE]** THE SECOND YEAR OF DARIUS. The first day of the sixth month was August 29, 520 BC. Darius I tells his own story on the cliff at Behistun. See Behistun, Ezra, p.772.
- **HAG 1:1 [NOTE]** ZERUBBABEL. A grandson of King Jehoiachin and the governor of Judah, in Jesus' family line, Matthew 1:12 to 13. See Sheshbazzar and Zerubbabel, Ezra, p.777.
- **HAG 1:2 [NOTE]** NOT YET. The work had stopped since about 536 BC, Ezra 4:24. The people quoted here sound busy and sensible. See Why Build a Temple First?
- **HAG 1:4 [NOTE]** PANELED HOUSES. Wood paneling was a luxury. The same Hebrew word is used for the roofing of Solomon's temple and palace, 1 Kings 6:9 and 7:3.
- **HAG 1:5 [NOTABLE]** Hard work, empty wallet. When God's house came last, nothing the people did was ever enough. Haggai says stop and think about where your life is going.
- **HAG 1:5 [NOTE]** SET YOUR HEART. The Hebrew says set your heart on your ways. Haggai says it five times. Stop and think about where your life is going.
- **HAG 1:6 [NOTE]** A BAG WITH HOLES. Hard work, empty wallet. Five pictures of trying and never getting ahead.

THE BIG QUESTION

WHY BUILD A TEMPLE FIRST?

The Problem

HAGGAI 1:2 TO 11

THE EXCUSE

The time has not yet come, 1:2. The people were poor, the neighbors were hostile, and the harvests were bad. Waiting sounded wise.

GOD'S ANSWER

Look at your own paneled houses, 1:4. The harvests were bad because God's house was in ruins, 1:9 to 11. They had it backwards.

What It Teaches

MATTHEW 6:33 · 1 CORINTHIANS 3:16 · 1 CORINTHIANS 6:19 · EZRA 4:24

WHY A BUILDING MATTERED

The temple was the place where God promised to live among His people. The altar was already in use, Ezra 3:3 to 6, but God's own house lay in ruins. That said God could wait.

FIRST THINGS FIRST

Jesus said seek first the kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all these things will be added to you, Matthew 6:33. Haggai is the Old Testament version.

NOT A BLESSING FOR CASH

Haggai does not promise riches for giving. He says putting God last was why nothing worked. The blessing came when they obeyed, 2:19.

GOD'S HOUSE TODAY

The New Testament says believers are now God's temple, 1 Corinthians 3:16 and 6:19. Many Christians apply Haggai to their time, money and church. Others warn against using it to push building programs.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God wanted first place, not leftovers. The people listened, and the work began in 23 days.

7 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:

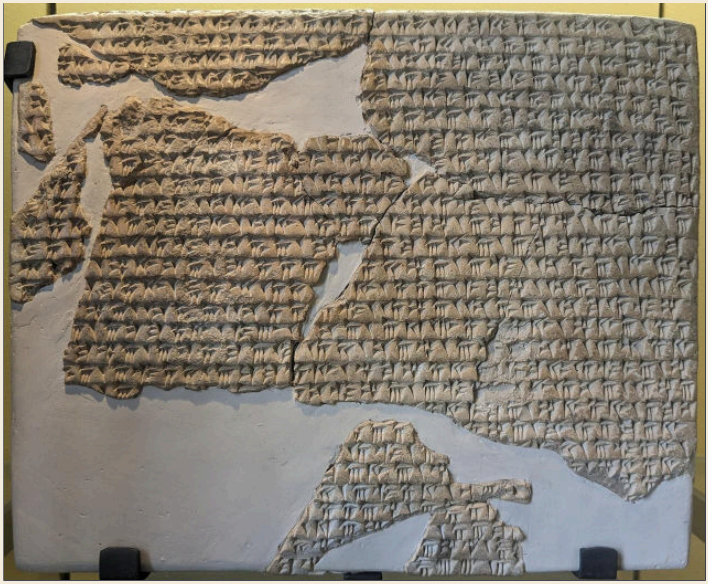
"Set your heart on your ways.

8 Go up into the hills,
bring down lumber, and build the house,

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

DARIUS'S BUILDING CHARTER

HAGGAI 1:1 · 1:8 · 2:7 TO 8 · EZRA 6:3 TO 12



Pieces of Darius's foundation charter for his palace at Susa, set in a modern backing, Louvre Museum, Paris. Photo Shonagon, public domain (CC0).

WHAT IT IS

A foundation charter of King Darius I, the Darius of Haggai 1:1. In it the king tells how he built his palace at Susa, and where every material came from. It was written in three languages, Old Persian, Elamite and Babylonian. This tablet is in Old Persian.

HOW OLD IT IS

A few years after 520 BC, about the time the temple in Jerusalem was being rebuilt. French archaeologists found pieces of the charter at Susa in the first decades of the 1900s.

WHAT IT SAYS

The cedar timber came from a mountain called Lebanon. People from Assyria brought it to Babylon, and from there men from Caria and Ionian Greeks brought it to Susa. The gold came from Sardis and Bactria. The silver and ebony came from Egypt. Nation after nation brought something.

WHY IT MATTERS FOR HAGGAI

While God's people said it was not time to build, 1:2, the king of the world was hauling lumber across his empire. Haggai told them to go up into the hills and bring down lumber, 1:8. When they first laid this temple's foundation, years before, they had brought cedar from Lebanon too, Ezra 3:7.

THE SILVER IS MINE

Darius boasted that the nations brought their gold and silver to his palace. God said the silver and the gold are Mine, 2:8, and the nations would come with their treasures to His house, 2:7.

DARIUS PAYS

The same Darius found Cyrus's decree and ordered the temple costs paid from the royal treasury, Ezra 6:1 to 12. The temple was finished in his sixth year, 515 BC.

WHAT THE PHOTO SHOWS

The real broken pieces of the tablet, fitted into a modern plaster backing so they stay in place. The wedge shaped writing is Old Persian cuneiform.

SEE ALSO

Behistun, Ezra, p.772, where Darius tells how he became king, and The Palace at Susa, Esther, p.821.

END TIMES PROPHECIES | ARCHAEOLOGY | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

so that I may take pleasure in it and be glorified,
says Yahweh.
9 You expected much,
but behold, it amounted to little.
And what you brought home, I blew away.
Why? declares Yahweh of Hosts.
Because My house still lies in ruins,
while each of you is busy
with his own house.

10 Therefore, on account of you
the heavens have withheld their dew
and the earth has withheld its crops.
11 I have summoned a drought
on the fields and on the mountains,
on the grain, new wine, and oil,
and on whatever the ground yields,
on man and beast,
and on all the labor of your hands."

THE PEOPLE OBEY

12 Then Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, as well as all the remnant of the people, obeyed the voice of Yahweh their God and the words of the prophet Haggai, because Yahweh their God had sent him. So the people feared Yahweh.

13 Haggai, the messenger of Yahweh, delivered the message of Yahweh to the people:

"I am with you,"
declares Yahweh.

14 So Yahweh stirred the spirit of Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and the spirit of Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, as well as the spirit of all the remnant of the people. And they came and began the work on the house of Yahweh of Hosts, their God, 15 on the twenty-fourth day of the sixth month, in the second year of King Darius.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

The new temple looks like nothing next to Solomon's, and the old men know it. God says be strong and keep working: He will shake the nations and fill this house with glory. Then a quick quiz for the priests on clean and unclean, a promise to bless the crops, and a ring for Zerubbabel.

THE COMING GLORY OF GOD'S HOUSE

1 On the twenty-first day of the seventh month, the word of Yahweh came through Haggai the prophet, saying: 2 "Speak to Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and also to the remnant of the people. Ask them, 3 'Who is left among you who saw this house in its former glory? How does it look to you now? Does it not appear to you like nothing in comparison?'

4 But now be strong, O Zerubbabel,
declares Yahweh.
Be strong, O Joshua son of Jehozadak,
the high priest.
And be strong, all you people of the land,
declares Yahweh.
Work! For I am with you,
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
5 This is the promise I made to you
when you came out of Egypt.
And My Spirit remains among you;
do not be afraid."

6 *For this is what Yahweh of Hosts says:*

"Once more, in a little while,

- **HAG 1:8 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Darius I's foundation charter from Susa says cedar from Lebanon and gold and silver from across his empire were brought for his palace, in Haggai's years, see the Darius's Building Charter Field Notes page, p.1479FIELD NOTES p.1479
- **HAG 1:8 [NOTE]** LUMBER. In these same years King Darius hauled cedar from Lebanon to build his palace at Susa. See Darius's Building Charter.
- **HAG 1:9 [NOTE]** MY HOUSE, YOUR HOUSE. A play on words. My house lies in ruins, charev, so God sends a drought, chorev, 1:11. The two words sound alike in Hebrew.
- **HAG 1:12 [NOTE]** THEY OBEYED. One of the few times in the Bible that the people listen to a prophet right away.
- **HAG 1:13 [NOTE]** THE MESSENGER. Haggai, the messenger of Yahweh, prints black. Only God's own words, I am with you, print red.
- **HAG 1:15 [NOTE]** 23 DAYS. From the first sermon, 1:1, to the first day of work was 23 days. The work started on September 21, 520 BC.
- **HAG 2:1 [NOTE]** THE SEVENTH MONTH. October 17, 520 BC, the last day of the Feast of Booths. Solomon had dedicated the first temple at this same feast, 1 Kings 8:2.
- **HAG 2:3 [NOTE]** LIKE NOTHING. Some old men had seen Solomon's temple, burned 66 years earlier. When the foundation was laid they wept, Ezra 3:12. See Why Did the Old Men Weep?, Ezra, p.770, and The Temple, 1 Kings, p.557.
- **HAG 2:4 [NOTABLE]** To discouraged builders with a small temple, God gives three commands, be strong, work, do not be afraid, and one reason: I am with you.
- **HAG 2:5 [NOTE]** MY SPIRIT REMAINS. God's Spirit went with Israel out of Egypt, Isaiah 63:11. He was still with them.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · END TIMES PROPHECIES · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · GOD SPEAKING

I will shake the heavens and the earth,
the sea and the dry land.
7 I will shake all the nations,
and they will come with all their treasures,
and I will fill this house with glory,
says Yahweh of Hosts.
8 The silver is Mine, and the gold is Mine,
declares Yahweh of Hosts.

DEBATED · THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT IS THE DESIRE OF ALL NATIONS?

Two Translations

HAGGAI 2:6 TO 8 · KJV HAGGAI 2:7

THE KJV

I will shake all nations, and the desire of all nations shall come: and I will fill this house with glory, 2:7. Many Christians read the desire of all nations as the Messiah.

MOST NEW BIBLES

They will come with all their treasures, like this Bible. The Hebrew word chemdat means a desirable thing, and its verb is plural, they will come.

Every View

HEBREWS 12:26 TO 28 · ISAIAH 60:5 TO 11 · LUKE 2:32

VIEW 1: THE MESSIAH

The Latin Vulgate made it a person, the desired one, and the KJV followed with the desire of all nations. The church sang it for centuries. Charles Wesley wrote Dear desire of every nation in Come, Thou Long Expected Jesus. Jesus is the one the nations long for, a light for the Gentiles, Luke 2:32.

VIEW 2: THE TREASURES

The next verse says the silver is Mine, and the gold is Mine, 2:8. Isaiah 60:5 to 11 also pictures the wealth of the nations coming to God's house. Persian kings did pay for the temple, Ezra 6:8.

VIEW 3: BOTH

Some say God gave the treasures then and gave the true treasure later. Hebrews 12:26 to 28 points the shaking to the end, when a kingdom that cannot be shaken remains.

WHY IT IS DEBATED

The Hebrew can be read either way, and the oldest Greek says the chosen things of all the nations.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God will shake the nations, and His house will be filled with glory.

9 The latter glory of this house
will be greater than the former,
says Yahweh of Hosts.
And in this place I will provide peace,
declares Yahweh of Hosts."

THE BIG QUESTION

WAS THE SECOND TEMPLE GREATER?

The Promise

HAGGAI 2:3 · 2:7 TO 9 · EZRA 3:12

THE PROMISE

The latter glory of this house will be greater than the former, 2:9. But the new temple looked like nothing next to Solomon's, 2:3.

WHAT IT LACKED

The Jewish Talmud lists five things the second temple did not have: the ark of the covenant, the fire from heaven, the glory cloud, the Holy Spirit, and the Urim and Thummim, Yoma 21b.

Every View

LUKE 2:27 TO 32 · JOHN 2:19 TO 21 · MALACHI 3:1 · MATTHEW 24:2

VIEW 1: JESUS CAME TO IT

Most Christians say the glory was Jesus Himself. Simeon held the baby Jesus in this temple, Luke 2:27 to 32, and Jesus taught there, Luke 19:47. Malachi 3:1 says the Lord will suddenly come to His temple.

- **HAG 2:6 [PROPHECY]** God would shake heaven, earth and all nations, and their treasures would come to fill His house with glory → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **HAG 2:6 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → HEB 12:26 p.1995
- **HAG 2:6 [NOTE]** ONCE MORE. Hebrews 12:26 to 27 quotes this verse about the final shaking of heaven and earth, so it prints in italics.
- **HAG 2:7 [TEXT]** TREASURES OR DESIRE. The Hebrew chemdat means the desirable thing or treasure. The KJV says the desire of all nations shall come, and many read it as the Messiah. See What Is the Desire of All Nations?
- **HAG 2:9 [PROPHECY]** The glory of this latter temple shall be greater than the former → LK 2:27-32; LK 19:47 · MEDIUM p.1650
- **HAG 2:9 [NOTE]** GREATER GLORY. Jesus was brought to this temple as a baby and taught in it. See Was the Second Temple Greater?

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | END TIMES PROPHECIES | GOD SPEAKING | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

VIEW 2: HEROD'S TEMPLE
Herod the Great rebuilt it on a huge scale starting about 20 BC. The rabbis said whoever had not seen Herod's building had never seen a beautiful building, Bava Batra 4a. Jewish tradition also says it stood longer than Solomon's, Bava Batra 3a.

VIEW 3: STILL TO COME
Some read 2:6 to 9 as the end times, when God shakes the nations once more, Hebrews 12:26 to 27, and fills His house for good.

THE SAME HOUSE
Jesus called His body this temple, John 2:19 to 21. Haggai calls the building this house in 2:3, 2:7 and 2:9, Solomon's, Zerubbabel's and later Herod's, one house rebuilt. That is why Jesus could stand in it. The Romans destroyed it in AD 70, Matthew 24:2. See The Temple Stones of AD 70, Matthew, p.1588.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Its glory did not come from its size. In this place I will provide peace, 2:9.

BLESSINGS FOR A DEFILED PEOPLE

10 On the twenty-fourth day of the ninth
month, in the second year of Darius, the
word of Yahweh came to Haggai the
prophet, saying, 11 "This is what Yahweh of
Hosts says: 'Ask the priests for a ruling. 12
If a man carries consecrated meat in the
fold of his garment, and it touches bread,
stew, wine, oil, or any other food, does
that item become holy?'"

"No," replied the priests.

13 So Haggai asked, "If one who is defiled
by contact with a corpse touches any of
these, does it become defiled?"

"Yes, it becomes defiled," the priests answered.

14 Then Haggai replied, "So it is with this
people and this nation before Me, declares Yahweh, and so it is with every
work of their hands; whatever they offer
there is defiled.

15 Now set your hearts from this day forward: Before one stone was placed on another in the temple of Yahweh, 16 from that
time, when one came expecting a heap of
ten bushels of grain, there were but five.
When one came to the winepress to draw
out 275 gallons, there were but 110. 17 I
struck you—all the work of your
hands—with blight, mildew, and hail, but
you did not turn to Me, declares Yahweh.

18 Set your hearts from this day
forward—from the twenty-fourth day of
the ninth month, the day the foundation of
Yahweh's temple was laid—set your
hearts: 19 Is there still seed in the barn?
The vine, the fig, the pomegranate, and
the olive tree have not yet yielded fruit.
But from this day on, I will bless you."

ZERUBBABEL YAHWEH'S SIGNET RING

20 For the second time that day, the
twenty-fourth day of the month, the word
of Yahweh came to Haggai, saying, 21 "Tell
Zerubbabel governor of Judah that I am
about to shake the heavens and the earth:

22 I will overturn royal thrones
and destroy the power
of the kingdoms of the nations.
I will overturn chariots and their riders;
horses and their riders will fall,
each by the sword of his brother.
23 On that day,
declares Yahweh of Hosts,
I will take you, My servant,
Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel,
declares Yahweh,
and I will make you like My signet ring,
for I have chosen you,
declares Yahweh of Hosts."

- **HAG 2:11 [NOTE]** A QUIZ FOR THE PRIESTS. Teaching clean and unclean was the priests' job, Leviticus 10:10 to 11.
- **HAG 2:12 [NOTE]** HOLY DOES NOT RUB OFF. Holy meat makes holy only what it touches directly, Leviticus 6:27. It does not pass along to a second thing.
- **HAG 2:13 [NOTE]** UNCLEAN DOES. A corpse made a person unclean, and whatever he touched became unclean, Numbers 19:22. Haggai's own question, so it prints black.
- **HAG 2:14 [NOTE]** SO IT IS WITH THIS PEOPLE. An altar and a holy place could not make the people holy. A people who ignored God made even their offerings unclean.
- **HAG 2:16 [NOTE]** HALF THE HARVEST. The Hebrew gives only the numbers, twenty and ten, fifty and twenty.
- **HAG 2:18 [NOTE]** FROM THIS DAY. December 18, 520 BC. From that day on, God promised to bless them.
- **HAG 2:21 [PROPHECY]** God would shake heaven and earth and overturn the thrones of the nations → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **HAG 2:23 [FORESHADOW]** God would make Zerubbabel like His signet ring → MT 1:12-16; LK 3:27 · MEDIUM p.1550
- **HAG 2:23 [NOTE]** MY SIGNET RING. God pulled the ring off Zerubbabel's grandfather Jehoiachin, Jeremiah 22:24, p.1179. Here it goes back on.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE SIGNET RING

Taken Off, Put Back On

HAGGAI 2:20 TO 23 · JEREMIAH 22:24 TO 30

WHAT A SIGNET RING WAS

A king's ring with his seal. Pressed into soft clay, it signed his letters and laws. Whoever wore it acted with the king's authority.

TAKEN OFF

God told King Jehoiachin, also called Coniah, that even if he were the signet ring on God's right hand, God would pull him off, Jeremiah 22:24. None of his sons would sit on David's throne, 22:30.

What It Means

MATTHEW 1:12 TO 16 · LUKE 3:27 · 1 CHRONICLES 3:17 TO 19

PUT BACK ON

Zerubbabel was Jehoiachin's grandson, Matthew 1:12. God said I will make you like My signet ring, for I have chosen you, 2:23. David's line was not finished.

ZERUBBABEL NEVER RULED AS KING

He was a governor under Persia, then he drops out of the story. So most Christians see the promise pointing past him to Jesus, his descendant, Matthew 1:12 to 16 and Luke 3:27.

THE CURSE AND THE RING

Some say the ring reverses the curse on Jehoiachin's line. Others say the curse stands, and Jesus is David's heir by law through Joseph and by blood through Mary. See the Jeremiah 22:30 note, p.1179.

A FAMILY PUZZLE

Most lists call Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, but 1 Chronicles 3:19 lists him under Shealtiel's brother Pedaiah. Many think Pedaiah raised a son for his brother, Deuteronomy 25:5 to 6, or that Shealtiel adopted him.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

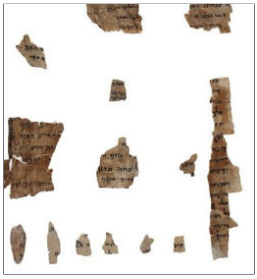
God kept His promise to David alive, even with no king on the throne.

BOOK 38 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

ZECHARIAH

Your King Is Coming

AUTHOR	Zechariah son of Berechiah, son of Iddo, a priest and a prophet, 1:1 and Nehemiah 12:16.
DATE	Chapters 1 to 8 from 520 to 518 BC, in the days of Darius. Chapters 9 to 14 have no dates. See Who Wrote Chapters 9 to 14?
WRITTEN TO	The people back from Babylon, rebuilding the temple.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Pieces are in scrolls of the Twelve from Qumran Cave 4, and in the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever, all copied before or near the time of Jesus.
KEY VERSE	Zechariah 9:9. See, your King comes to you, righteous and victorious, humble and riding on a donkey.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF ZECHARIAH
A close up of pieces of 4QXII e, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 75 to 50 BC. Most of its pieces hold parts of Zechariah. The whole plate is in the Haggai introduction, p.1475. Other Qumran scrolls and the Greek scroll of the Twelve from Nahal Hever also have parts of Zechariah.

Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

Zechariah started preaching two months after Haggai, in 520 BC. The temple was going up again, slowly. The Persian Empire ruled the world, Jerusalem had no walls, and the people wondered if God's big promises were still alive.

What Was Going Wrong

THE SAME OLD HEARTS. They made their hearts like flint, 7:12.
RELIGION FOR SHOW. Was it really for Me that you fasted? 7:5.
BAD SHEPHERDS. My anger burns against the shepherds, 10:3.
DISCOURAGEMENT. Who has despised the day of small things? 4:10.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Zechariah is the longest of the twelve Minor Prophets and the most quoted of them in the story of Jesus' last week. It starts with eight strange visions in one night, all saying God has not forgotten His people. Then it looks ahead to a King riding on a donkey, a shepherd sold for thirty pieces of silver, a pierced One mourned by His people, and the day Yahweh's feet stand on the Mount of Olives.

Zechariah at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 6 **RETURN TO ME**
Do not be like your fathers.

CH 1:7 to 6:15 **EIGHT NIGHT VISIONS**
Horses, horns, a lampstand, a flying scroll, and a crown.

CH 7:1 to 8:23 **FASTS INTO FEASTS**
Justice and mercy, then ten promises.

CH 9:1 to 11:17 **THE KING AND THE SHEPHERD**
The King on a donkey, the shepherd sold for silver.

CH 12:1 to 14:21 **THAT DAY**
The pierced One, the Mount of Olives, and the King over all.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ZECHARIAH 9:9 The King on a donkey. Palm Sunday, Matthew 21:5 and John 12:15.

ZECHARIAH 11:12 TO 13 Thirty pieces of silver thrown to the potter. Judas, Matthew 27:3 to 10.

ZECHARIAH 12:10 They will look on Me, the One they have pierced. The cross, John 19:37, and His return, Revelation 1:7.

ZECHARIAH 13:7 Strike the Shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered. The night of His arrest, Matthew 26:31.

ZECHARIAH 6:12 TO 13 The Branch, a priest on His throne. Hebrews 7 to 8.

ZECHARIAH
Yahweh remembers. About 30 men in the Bible have this name.

BERECHIAH
Yahweh blesses.

THE BRANCH
A name for the coming King from David's line, Isaiah 11:1 and Jeremiah 23:5.

What to Watch for in Zechariah

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (12)	2:11, 3:8-9, 6:12-13, 9:9, 9:11, 10:4, 11:4-13 and 3 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	3:4, 6:11
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (2)	1:16-17, 4:9
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (4)	9:3-6, 9:8, 12:2-3
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA (3)	9:13-16
END TIMES PROPHECIES (11)	8:3, 8:23, 9:10, 10:8-10, 11:16-17, 13:8-9, 14:3-5 and 2 more
THE HEART (1)	7:12
ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	1:1, 6:1, 9:2
MIRACLES (1)	1:8-11
DEMONIC (4)	3:1-2, 9:7, 10:2, 13:2
NOTABLE (4)	2:8, 4:6, 4:10, 8:4-5
GOD SPEAKING (119 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (11 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

ONE NIGHT, EIGHT VISIONS
All eight visions in chapters 1 to 6 came on one night, February 15, 519 BC.

A FLYING BILLBOARD
The flying scroll in 5:2 is 30 feet by 15 feet, the size of the porch of Solomon's temple.

ALEXANDER'S MAP
Chapter 9 moves down the same road Alexander the Great marched in 333 and 332 BC. See Alexander the Great.

JOSHUA AND JESUS
The high priest crowned in 6:11 is Joshua, Yeshua in Hebrew, the same name as Jesus.

How Did It Turn Out?

The temple was finished in 515 BC. About 500 years later a King rode into Jerusalem on a donkey, was sold for thirty pieces of silver, and was pierced on a cross. The rest of chapters 12 to 14 many still wait for.

ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Zechariah starts with a warning: do not be like your fathers. Then come the night visions. Horsemen report that the world is quiet, and God says He is coming back to Jerusalem with mercy. Four horns scattered His people, and four craftsmen show up to knock them down.

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // JEREMIAH 3:11–25; HOSEA 14:1–3

1 In the eighth month of the second year of Darius, the word of Yahweh came to the prophet Zechariah son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo, saying:

2 "Yahweh was very angry with your fathers. 3 So tell the people that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'Return to Me, declares Yahweh of Hosts, and I will return to you, says Yahweh of Hosts.'

4 Do not be like your fathers, to whom the former prophets proclaimed that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'Turn now from your evil ways and deeds.'

But they did not listen or pay attention to Me, declares Yahweh.

5 Where are your fathers now? And the prophets, do they live forever? 6 But did not My words and My statutes, which I commanded My servants the prophets, overtake your fathers? They repented and said, 'Just as Yahweh of Hosts purposed to do to us according to our ways and deeds, so He has done to us.'"

- **ZECH 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A rock cut monument in the Kidron Valley from around the time of Jesus, linked by old tradition to a Zechariah, see The Tomb of Zechariah Field Notes box, p.1489FIELD NOTES p.1489
- **ZECH 1:1 [NOTE]** THE EIGHTH MONTH. October or November 520 BC, two months after Haggai's first sermon. Zechariah was a priest from the family of Iddo, Nehemiah 12:4 and 16, and his name means Yahweh remembers.
- **ZECH 1:1 [NOTE]** SON OF BERECHIAH. See Which Zechariah Was Murdered? and The Tomb of Zechariah.
- **ZECH 1:3 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 4:8 p.2006
- **ZECH 1:3 [NOTE]** RETURN TO ME. James 4:8 sounds the same note: Draw near to God, and He will draw near to you.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHICH ZECHARIAH WAS MURDERED?

The Puzzle

MATTHEW 23:35 · LUKE 11:51 · 2 CHRONICLES 24:20 TO 22

THE PUZZLE

Jesus spoke of the blood of Zechariah son of Berechiah, whom you murdered between the temple and the altar, Matthew 23:35. But the Zechariah killed in the temple court in 2 Chronicles 24:20 to 22 was the son of Jehoiada. Berechiah was the prophet's father, 1:1.

LUKE'S VERSION

Luke 11:51 just says the blood of Zechariah, who was killed between the altar and the sanctuary.

Every View

ZECHARIAH 1:1 · 2 CHRONICLES 24:20 TO 22

VIEW 1: JEHOIADA'S SON

Most think Jesus meant the priest of 2 Chronicles 24. In the usual Jewish order, the Hebrew Bible ends with Chronicles, so from Abel to Zechariah means from the first murder to the last one in the Bible, like A to Z.

VIEW 2: A FAMILY NAME

Some think Jehoiada was his grandfather and Berechiah his father, since son of can mean grandson.

VIEW 3: A COPYIST

Some think an early copyist added son of Berechiah, thinking of the famous prophet. Luke does not have it.

VIEW 4: THE PROPHET

An old Jewish Targum on Lamentations 2:20 says the prophet Zechariah son of Iddo was killed in the temple. Some think Jesus meant him.

VIEW 5: A LATER MARTYR

Josephus tells of a Zechariah son of Baris murdered in the temple in AD 67 to 68. A few think the Gospel points ahead to him, but most think that is too late.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

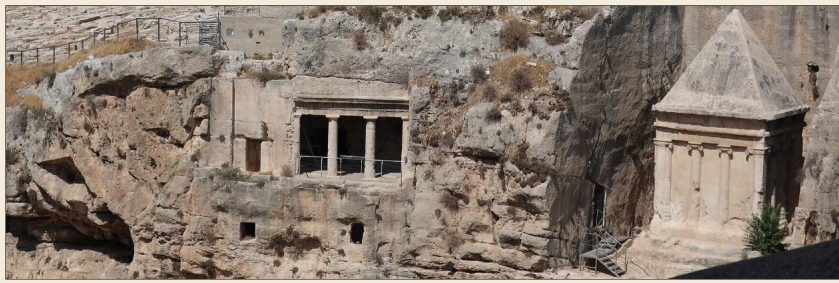
God's messengers were often killed by the people they came to warn, and Jesus held that generation responsible.

MIRACLES GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE TOMB OF ZECHARIAH

ZECHARIAH 1:1 · 14:4 · MATTHEW 23:29 TO 35



The monument called the Tomb of Zechariah, right, and the tomb of the priestly family of Hezir, left, in the Kidron Valley, Jerusalem. Photo Davidbena, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A solid block of rock with a pyramid roof, cut out of the cliff in the Kidron Valley, between the Temple Mount and the Mount of Olives. It has no burial room inside. It is a monument.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was carved around the time of Jesus, in the first century BC or the first century AD, so it was likely standing when Jesus walked past it to the Mount of Olives.

WHOSE IS IT

No inscription names it. Jewish tradition, recorded since the Middle Ages, linked it to Zechariah son of Jehoiada, killed in the temple court, 2 Chronicles 24:20 to 22. Some linked it to the prophet. Nobody really knows.

NEXT DOOR

The tomb with pillars carries a Hebrew inscription naming the priestly family of Hezir, 1 Chronicles 24:15.

WHY IT MATTERS

Jesus said, You build tombs for the prophets and decorate the monuments of the righteous, Matthew 23:29. Monuments like these stood in plain sight. See Which Zechariah Was Murdered?

THE VISION OF THE HORSES

7 On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month, the month of Shebat, in the second year of Darius, the word of Yahweh came to the prophet Zechariah son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo.

8 I looked out into the night and saw a man riding on a red horse. He was standing among the myrtle trees in the hollow, and behind him were red, sorrel, and white horses.

9 "What are these, my lord?" I asked.

And the angel who was speaking with me replied, "I will show you what they are."

10 Then the man standing among the myrtle trees explained, "They are the ones Yahweh has sent to patrol the earth."

11 And the riders answered the angel of Yahweh who was standing among the myrtle trees, "We have patrolled the earth, and behold, all the earth is at rest and tranquil."

THE BIG QUESTION

THE EIGHT NIGHT VISIONS

One Night, Eight Pictures

ZECHARIAH 1:7 TO 6:15

ONE NIGHT

On February 15, 519 BC, Zechariah saw eight visions, one after another, 1:7. An angel explained them as he went.

ZECH 1:7 [NOTE] THE MONTH OF SHEBAT. February 15, 519 BC. All eight visions came in one night. See The Eight Night Visions.

ZECH 1:8 [MIRACLE] A man among the myrtle trees and the angel of Yahweh

ZECH 1:10 [NOTE] THE MAN AMONG THE MYRTLES. 1:11 calls him the angel of Yahweh, so his words print red. The other angel, the one speaking with me, prints black.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE GOD SPEAKING

1. THE HORSEMEN, 1:8 TO 17
The earth is quiet, but God is coming back to Jerusalem with mercy.
2. FOUR HORNS AND FOUR CRAFTSMEN, 1:18 TO 21
The nations that scattered God's people will be broken.
3. THE MEASURING LINE, 2:1 TO 13
Jerusalem will be too big for walls. God Himself will be its wall of fire.

What They Mean
REVELATION 6:1 TO 8 · REVELATION 11:4

4. CLEAN CLOTHES, 3:1 TO 10
Joshua the high priest is cleaned up while Satan accuses him. The Branch is coming.
5. THE LAMPSTAND, 4:1 TO 14
Not by might nor by power, but by My Spirit. Zerubbabel will finish the temple.
6. THE FLYING SCROLL, 5:1 TO 4
God's curse goes after thieves and liars.
7. THE WOMAN IN THE BASKET, 5:5 TO 11
Wickedness is shut in and flown back to Babylon.
8. FOUR CHARIOTS, 6:1 TO 8
God's patrols cover the whole earth. Revelation 6 has four horses too.
THE SHAPE
The visions make a pattern: horses at the start and end, and the priest and the governor in the middle, 3 and 4. Then a real crown goes on Joshua's head, 6:9 to 15.

12 Then the angel of Yahweh said, "How long, O Yahweh of Hosts, will You withhold mercy from Jerusalem and the cities of Judah, with which You have been angry these seventy years?"

13 So Yahweh spoke kind and comforting words to the angel who was speaking with me.

14 Then the angel who was speaking with me said, "Proclaim this word: This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'I am very jealous for Jerusalem and Zion, 15 but I am fiercely angry with the nations that are at ease. For I was a little angry, but they have added to the calamity.'

16 Therefore this is what Yahweh says: 'I will return to Jerusalem with mercy, and there My house will be rebuilt, declares Yahweh of Hosts, and a measuring line will be stretched out over Jerusalem.'

17 Proclaim further that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'My cities will again overflow with prosperity; Yahweh will again comfort Zion and choose Jerusalem.'"

THE VISION OF THE HORNS AND THE CRAFTSMEN

18 Then I looked up and saw four horns. 19 So I asked the angel who was speaking with me, "What are these?"

And he told me, "These are the horns that have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem."

20 Then Yahweh showed me four craftsmen.

21 "What are these coming to do?" I asked.

And He replied, "These are the horns that scattered Judah so that no one could raise his head; but the craftsmen have come to terrify them and throw down these horns of the nations that have lifted up their horns against the land of Judah to scatter it."

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
A man with a measuring tape wants to measure Jerusalem. Do not bother, says God. The city will be too full for walls, and He Himself will be a wall of fire around it. Anyone who touches His people touches the apple of His eye.

THE VISION OF THE MEASURING LINE // EZEKIEL 40:1–4

1 Then I lifted up my eyes and saw a man with a measuring line in his hand.

2 "Where are you going?" I asked.

- **ZECH 1:12 [NOTE]** SEVENTY YEARS. The years Jeremiah had foretold, Jeremiah 25:11. See The Seventy Years, Jeremiah, p.1183.
- **ZECH 1:14 [NOTE]** THE ANGEL WHO SPOKE WITH ME. His own words print black. The words he passes on from God print red.
- **ZECH 1:16 [PROPHECY]** My house shall be built in Jerusalem; My cities shall again spread through prosperity → EZR 6:14-15 p.778
- **ZECH 1:18 [NOTE]** FOUR HORNS. Horns stand for strong nations. The craftsmen, 1:20, are the ones God sends to break them.
- **ZECH 2:1 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:1 p.2096
- **ZECH 2:1 [NOTE]** A MEASURING LINE. Revelation 11:1 pictures a measuring rod for the temple too.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

"To measure Jerusalem," he replied, "and to determine its width and length."

3 Then the angel who was speaking with me went forth, and another angel came forward to meet him 4 and said to him, "Run and tell that young man: 'Jerusalem will be a city without walls because of the multitude of men and livestock within it. 5 For I will be a wall of fire around it, declares Yahweh, and I will be the glory within it.'"

THE REDEMPTION OF ZION // HOSEA 3:1–5

6 "Get up! Get up! Flee from the land of the north," declares Yahweh, "for I have scattered you like the four winds of heaven," declares Yahweh. 7 "Get up, O Zion! Escape, you who dwell with the Daughter of Babylon!"

8 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "After His Glory has sent Me against the nations that have plundered you—for whoever touches you touches the apple of His eye— 9 I will surely wave My hand over them, so that they will become plunder for their own servants. Then you will know that Yahweh of Hosts has sent Me."

10 "Shout for joy and be glad, O Daughter of Zion, for I am coming to dwell among you," declares Yahweh. 11 "On that day many nations will join themselves to Yahweh, and they will become My people. I will dwell among you, and you will know that Yahweh of Hosts has sent Me to you. 12 And Yahweh will take possession of Judah as His portion in the Holy Land, and He will once again choose Jerusalem. 13 Be silent before Yahweh, all people, for He has roused Himself from His holy dwelling."

- **ZECH 2:5 [NOTE]** A WALL OF FIRE. Jerusalem had no walls yet. Nehemiah would build them about 75 years later.
- **ZECH 2:8 [NOTABLE]** The pupil is the part of the eye you protect without even thinking. That is how God guards His people.
- **ZECH 2:8 [NOTE]** THE APPLE OF HIS EYE. The pupil, the part of the eye you protect most. Also, the speaker says Yahweh of Hosts has sent Me, 2:9 and 2:11. Many Christians see the Son sent by the Father here.
- **ZECH 2:11 [PROPHECY]** Many nations would join themselves to Yahweh and become His people → ACTS 15:14-17; EPH 2:19 · MEDIUM p.1767

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Joshua the high priest stands in filthy clothes while Satan accuses him. God says, Yahweh rebukes you, Satan! Joshua gets clean clothes and a clean turban, and God promises His servant, the Branch.

THE VISION OF JOSHUA THE HIGH PRIEST

1 Then the angel showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of Yahweh, with Satan standing at his right hand to accuse him.

2 And Yahweh said to Satan: "Yahweh rebukes you, Satan! Indeed, Yahweh, who has chosen Jerusalem, rebukes you! Is not this man a firebrand snatched from the fire?"

3 Now Joshua was dressed in filthy garments as he stood before the angel. 4 So the angel said to those standing before him, "Take off his filthy clothes!"

Then he said to Joshua, "See, I have removed your iniquity, and I will clothe you with splendid robes."

5 Then I said, "Let them put a clean turban on his head." So a clean turban was placed on his head, and they clothed him, as the angel of Yahweh stood by.

6 Then the angel of Yahweh gave this charge to Joshua: 7 "This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'If you walk in My ways and keep My instructions, then you will govern My house and will also have charge of My courts; and I will give you a place among these who are standing here.

8 Hear now, O high priest Joshua, you and your companions seated before you, who

- **ZECH 3:1 [DEMONIC]** Satan stands to accuse Joshua the high priest
- **ZECH 3:1 [NOTE]** SATAN. In Hebrew, the satan, the accuser. See Who Is the Satan in Job?, Job, p.840.
- **ZECH 3:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:9 p.2068
- **ZECH 3:2 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JUDE 1:23 p.2072
- **ZECH 3:2 [NOTE]** A REBUKE FOR SATAN. Jude 9 has Michael say The Lord rebuke you. The firebrand is Joshua, and the people with him, pulled out of the fire of exile. Amos 4:11 uses the same picture.
- **ZECH 3:4 [FORESHADOW]** Joshua the high priest had his filthy clothes removed and was dressed in clean robes → 2CO 5:21 · MEDIUM p.1853
- **ZECH 3:4 [NOTE]** CLEAN CLOTHES. A picture of sins taken away and a righteousness that is given, not earned, Isaiah 61:10.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

are indeed a sign. For behold, I am going to bring My servant, the Branch. 9 See the stone I have set before Joshua; on that one stone are seven eyes. Behold, I will engrave on it an inscription, declares Yahweh of Hosts, and I will remove the iniquity of this land in a single day. 10 On that day, declares Yahweh of Hosts, you will each invite your neighbor to sit under your own vine and fig tree.'"

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

A golden lampstand and two olive trees. The message to Zerubbabel: Not by might nor by power, but by My Spirit. Do not despise the day of small things. The man who laid the foundation will finish the job.

THE VISION OF THE LAMPSTAND AND OLIVE TREES

1 Then the angel who was speaking with me returned and woke me, as a man is awakened from his sleep.

2 "What do you see?" he asked.

"I see a solid gold lampstand," I replied, "with a bowl at the top and seven lamps on it, with seven spouts to the lamps. 3 There are also two olive trees beside it, one on the right side of the bowl and the other on its left."

4 "What are these, my lord?" I asked the angel who was speaking with me.

5 "Do you not know what they are?" replied the angel.

"No, my lord," I answered.

6 So he said to me, "This is the word of Yahweh to Zerubbabel: Not by might nor by power, but by My Spirit, says Yahweh of Hosts. 7 What are you, O great mountain? Before Zerubbabel you will become a plain. Then he will bring forth the capstone accompanied by shouts of 'Grace, grace to it!'"

8 Then the word of Yahweh came to me, saying, 9 "The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house, and his hands will complete it. Then you will know that Yahweh of Hosts has sent me to you. 10 For who has despised the day of small things? But these seven eyes of Yahweh, which scan the whole earth, will rejoice when they see the plumb line in the hand of Zerubbabel."

11 Then I asked the angel, "What are the two olive trees on the right and left of the lampstand?" 12 And I questioned him further, "What are the two olive branches beside the two gold pipes from which the golden oil pours?"

13 "Do you not know what these are?" he inquired.

"No, my lord," I replied.

14 So he said, "These are the two anointed ones who are standing beside the Lord of all the earth."

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

A flying scroll the size of a billboard goes after thieves and liars. Then a woman named Wickedness gets stuffed into a basket with a lead lid and flown off to Babylon by two women with stork wings. Yes, really.

THE VISION OF THE FLYING SCROLL

1 Again I lifted up my eyes and saw before me a flying scroll.

2 "What do you see?" asked the angel.

- **ZECH 3:8 [PROPHECY]** Behold, I am bringing forth My Servant the BRANCH; upon one stone are seven eyes → HEB 10:10; HEB 10:12; HEB 10:14 p.1991
- **ZECH 3:8 [NOTE]** MY SERVANT, THE BRANCH. See Who Is the Branch?
- **ZECH 3:9 [NOTE]** SEVEN EYES. Seven means complete. The same seven eyes of Yahweh scan the whole earth in 4:10.
- **ZECH 4:2 [NOTE]** THE LAMPSTAND. A golden lampstand stood in the temple. The Romans carried one off in AD 70. See The Temple Treasures in Rome, Hebrews, p.1989.
- **ZECH 4:3 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:4 p.2097
- **ZECH 4:6 [NOTABLE]** Zerubbabel had no army and no king. God's work gets done by God's Spirit, not by human muscle.
- **ZECH 4:6 [NOTE]** NOT BY MIGHT. Zerubbabel had no army and no king's power. God's Spirit would finish the temple.
- **ZECH 4:9 [PROPHECY]** Zerubbabel laid the temple foundation and his hands would also finish it → EZR 6:14-15 p.778
- **ZECH 4:10 [NOTABLE]** The new temple looked tiny, but God was glad to see the work begin. Small beginnings matter to Him.
- **ZECH 4:10 [NOTE]** THE DAY OF SMALL THINGS. The new temple looked tiny, Haggai 2:3. God was glad to see the plumb line in Zerubbabel's hand.
- **ZECH 4:11 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 11:4 p.2097
- **ZECH 4:14 [NOTE]** TWO ANOINTED ONES. Most think Joshua the priest and Zerubbabel the governor. Revelation 11:4 calls its two witnesses the two olive trees.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

"I see a flying scroll," I replied, "30 feet long and 15 feet wide."

3 Then he told me, "This is the curse that is going out over the face of all the land, for according to one side of the scroll, every thief will be removed; and according to the other side, every perjurer will be removed. 4 I will send it out, declares Yahweh of Hosts, and it will enter the house of the thief and the house of him who swears falsely by My name. It will remain inside his house and destroy it, down to its timbers and stones."

THE VISION OF THE WOMAN IN A BASKET

5 Then the angel who was speaking with me came forward and told me, "Now lift up your eyes and see what is approaching."

6 "What is it?" I asked.

And he replied, "A measuring basket is going forth." Then he continued, "This is their iniquity in all the land."

7 And behold, the cover of lead was raised, and there was a woman sitting inside the basket.

8 "This is Wickedness," he said. And he shoved her down into the basket, pushing down the lead cover over its opening.

9 Then I lifted up my eyes and saw two women approaching, with the wind in their wings. Their wings were like those of a stork, and they lifted up the basket between heaven and earth.

10 "Where are they taking the basket?" I asked the angel who was speaking with me.

11 "To build a house for it in the land of Shinar," he told me. "And when it is ready, the basket will be set there on its pedestal."

■ **ZECH 5:2 [NOTE]** THE SIZE OF THE PORCH. The Hebrew gives twenty by ten, the size of the porch of Solomon's temple, 1 Kings 6:3. God's law goes out from His house.
■ **ZECH 5:6 [NOTE]** A MEASURING BASKET. The Hebrew names a grain measure, the kind cheaters shrank, Amos 8:5. Here it holds Wickedness herself.
■ **ZECH 5:11 [NOTE]** SHINAR. The old name for Babylonia, where Babel's tower was built, Genesis 11:2. Wickedness goes home to Babylon.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Four chariots with colored horses patrol the earth. Then Zechariah makes a crown and puts it on Joshua the high priest. Here is a man whose name is the Branch: a priest and a king on one throne.

THE VISION OF THE FOUR CHARIOTS

1 And again I lifted up my eyes and saw four chariots coming out from between two mountains—mountains of bronze. 2 The first chariot had red horses, the second black horses, 3 the third white horses, and the fourth dappled horses—all of them strong.

4 So I inquired of the angel who was speaking with me, "What are these, my lord?"

5 And the angel told me, "These are the four spirits of heaven, going forth from their station before the Lord of all the earth. 6 The one with the black horses is going toward the land of the north, the one with the white horses toward the west, and the one with the dappled horses toward the south."

7 As the strong horses went out, they were eager to go and patrol the earth; and Yahweh said, "Go and patrol the earth." So they patrolled the earth.

8 Then Yahweh summoned me and said, "Behold, those going to the land of the north have given rest to My Spirit in the land of the north."

THE CROWN AND THE TEMPLE

9 The word of Yahweh also came to me, saying, 10 "Take an offering from the exiles—from Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah, who have arrived from Babylon—and go that same day to the house of Josiah son of Zephaniah. 11 Take silver and gold, make an ornate crown, and set it on the head of the high priest, Joshua son of Jehozadak.

■ **ZECH 6:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A gold model chariot pulled by four horses from the Persian Empire that ruled in Zechariah's day, see The Oxus Chariot Field Notes box, p.1494FIELD NOTES p.1494
■ **ZECH 6:1 [NOTE]** FOUR CHARIOTS. The Persian kings ruled through fast horses and riders on royal roads. See The Oxus Chariot.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE OXUS CHARIOT

ZECHARIAH 1:8 TO 11 · 6:1 TO 8 · ESTHER 8:10



A gold model of a chariot from the Oxus Treasure, Persian Empire, British Museum. Photo Marie-Lan Nguyen, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny gold chariot with a driver and a rider, pulled by four horses, made in the Persian Empire. It is part of the Oxus Treasure, about 180 pieces of gold and silver found near the Oxus River, in today's Tajikistan.

HOW OLD IT IS

The 400s or 300s BC, while Persia still ruled the world, soon after Zechariah's day.

WHAT IT SHOWS

A small open chariot with big spoked wheels, the kind Persian nobles rode on the king's roads. The riders wear Persian clothes.

WHY IT MATTERS

Persia kept its huge empire together with fast horses and riders. Zechariah's visions show God's own horses and chariots patrolling the whole earth, 1:10 and 6:7. The real ruler of the world was not in Persia. See The King's Couriers, Esther, p.826.

12 And you are to tell him that this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: 'Here is a man whose name is the Branch, and He will branch out from His place and build the temple of Yahweh. 13 Yes, He will build the temple of Yahweh; He will be clothed in splendor and will sit on His throne and rule. And He will be a priest on His throne, and there will be peaceful counsel between the two.'

14 The crown will reside in the temple of Yahweh as a memorial to Helem, Tobijah, Jedaiah, and the gracious son of Zephaniah. 15 Even those far away will come and build the temple of Yahweh, and you will know that Yahweh of Hosts has sent Me to you. This will happen if you diligently obey the voice of Yahweh your God."

- **ZECH 6:11 [FORESHADOW]** A crown was set on Joshua the high priest, joining priest and king → HEB 5:5-6 · MEDIUM p.1982
- **ZECH 6:11 [NOTE]** A CROWN FOR THE PRIEST. In Bible times no priest was ever crowned king. Ezra 3:2 calls him Yeshua, the same name as Jesus, and the Greek Old Testament spells it Iesous, just like Jesus. See Who Is the Branch?
- **ZECH 6:12 [PROPHECY]** Behold the Man whose name is the BRANCH; He shall build the temple of Yahweh; He shall be a priest on His throne → HEB 8:1; HEB 7:1-3 p.1987
- **ZECH 6:12 [FULFILLS]** 'The Branch of Yahweh shall be beautiful and glorious' ← IS 4:2 · MEDIUM p.1066

THE HEART GOD SPEAKING

THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS THE BRANCH?

A Name for the King

ZECHARIAH 3:8 · 6:11 TO 13 · ISAIAH 11:1 · JEREMIAH 23:5

THE NAME

The prophets called the coming King from David's line the Branch, Isaiah 4:2 and 11:1, Jeremiah 23:5 and 33:15. Zechariah says I am going to bring My servant, the Branch, 3:8.

THE CROWN

God tells Zechariah to put a crown on Joshua the high priest and say, Here is a man whose name is the Branch... He will be a priest on His throne, 6:11 to 13.

Every View

HEBREWS 5:5 TO 6 · 7:1 TO 3 · 8:1 · PSALM 110:4

VIEW 1: JESUS

Most Christians say the Branch is Jesus, the King who is also the Priest, Hebrews 7 to 8. Joshua is a picture of Him, and they even share a name, Yeshua.

VIEW 2: ZERUBBABEL FIRST

Many scholars think the Branch meant Zerubbabel, David's heir, who was building the temple, 4:9. Some think his name was in the crown scene at first. Many Christians see a first answer in Zerubbabel and the full answer in Jesus.

PRIEST AND KING

In Israel, kings came from Judah and priests from Levi, and no one was supposed to be both. King Uzziah was struck with a skin disease when he burned incense like a priest, 2 Chronicles 26:16 to 21. Much later the Maccabee rulers made themselves priests and kings, and many Jews hated it. Psalm 110:4 promised a King who is a priest forever, like Melchizedek.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Zechariah pictures a coming ruler who will build God's house and bring peace between the throne and the priesthood.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Some people ask if they still need to fast for the temple that burned down. God's answer: when you fasted, was it really for Me? Do justice, show mercy, and stop plotting evil. Your fathers made their hearts like flint.

A CALL TO JUSTICE AND MERCY

1 In the fourth year of King Darius, the
word of Yahweh came to Zechariah on the
fourth day of the ninth month, the month
of Chislev. 2 Now the people of Bethel had
sent Sharezer and Regem-melech, along
with their men, to plead before Yahweh 3
by asking the priests of the house of Yah-
weh of Hosts, as well as the prophets,
"Should I weep and fast in the fifth month,
as I have done these many years?"

4 Then the word of Yahweh of Hosts came
to me, saying, 5 "Ask all the people of the
land and the priests, 'When you fasted
and mourned in the fifth and seventh
months for these seventy years, was it re-
ally for Me that you fasted? 6 And when
you were eating and drinking, were you
not doing so simply for yourselves? 7 Are
these not the words that Yahweh pro-
claimed through the earlier prophets,
when Jerusalem and its surrounding
towns were populous and prosperous,
and the Negev and the foothills were in-
habited?'"

8 Then the word of Yahweh came to
Zechariah, saying, 9 "This is what Yahweh
of Hosts says: 'Administer true justice.
Show loving devotion and compassion to
one another. 10 Do not oppress the widow
or the fatherless, the foreigner or the
poor. And do not plot evil in your hearts
against one another.'

11 But they refused to pay attention and
turned a stubborn shoulder; they stopped
up their ears from hearing. 12 They made

- **ZECH 7:1 [NOTE]** THE FOURTH YEAR OF DARIUS. December 7, 518 BC, almost two years after the night visions.
- **ZECH 7:3 [NOTE]** THE FIFTH MONTH. The month the temple burned, 2 Kings 25:8 to 9. With the new temple going up, did they still need to mourn the old one?
- **ZECH 7:5 [NOTE]** THE SEVENTH MONTH. Most think the fast for Gedaliah, the governor murdered after Jerusalem fell, 2 Kings 25:25.

END TIMES PROPHECIES · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE · GOD SPEAKING

their hearts like flint and would not listen to the law or to the words that Yahweh of Hosts had sent by His Spirit through the earlier prophets. Therefore great anger came from Yahweh of Hosts.

13 And just as I had called and they would not listen, so when they called I would not listen, says Yahweh of Hosts. 14 But I scattered them with a whirlwind among all the nations that they had not known, and the land was left desolate behind them so that no one could come or go. Thus they turned the pleasant land into a desolation."

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Ten promises of good news. Old people will sit in the streets and kids will play there again. The sad fasts will turn into parties. One day ten men will grab a Jew by the robe and say, Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you.

THE RESTORATION OF JERUSALEM // MICAH 4:6–13

1 Again the word of Yahweh of Hosts came to me, saying: 2 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "I am jealous for Zion with great zeal; I am jealous for her with great fervor."

3 This is what Yahweh says: "I will return to Zion and dwell in Jerusalem. Then Jerusalem will be called the City of Truth, and the mountain of Yahweh of Hosts will be called the Holy Mountain."

4 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "Old men and old women will again sit along the streets of Jerusalem, each with a staff in hand because of great age. 5 And the streets of the city will be filled with boys and girls playing there."

6 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "If this is impossible in the eyes of the remnant of this people in these days, should it also be impossible in My eyes?" declares Yahweh of Hosts.

7 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "I will save My people from the land of the east and from the land of the west. 8 I will bring them back to dwell in Jerusalem, where they will be My people, and I will be their faithful and righteous God."

9 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "Let your hands be strong, you who now hear these words spoken by the prophets who were present when the foundations were laid to rebuild the temple, the house of Yahweh of Hosts. 10 For before those days neither man nor beast received wages, nor was there safety from the enemy for anyone who came or went, for I had turned every man against his neighbor. 11 But now I will not treat the remnant of this people as I did in the past," declares Yahweh of Hosts.

12 "For the seed will be prosperous, the vine will yield its fruit, the ground will yield its produce, and the skies will give their dew. To the remnant of this people I will give all these things as an inheritance. 13 As you have been a curse among the nations, O house of Judah and house of Israel, so I will save you, and you will be a blessing. Do not be afraid; let your hands be strong."

14 For this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "Just as I resolved to bring disaster upon you when your fathers provoked Me to anger, and I did not relent," says Yahweh of Hosts, 15 "so now I have resolved to do good again to Jerusalem and Judah. Do not be afraid. 16 *These are the things you must do: Speak truth to one another, render true and sound judgments in your gates,* 17 do not plot evil in your hearts against your neighbor, and do not love to swear falsely, for I hate all these things," declares Yahweh.

18 Then the word of Yahweh of Hosts came to me, saying, 19 "This is what Yahweh of

- **ZECH 7:12 [HEART]** They made their hearts as hard as flint so they would not hear the law.
- **ZECH 7:12 [NOTE]** HEARTS LIKE FLINT. Flint is one of the hardest stones. Ezekiel 36:26 promises a heart of flesh instead.
- **ZECH 8:3 [PROPHECY]** I will return to Zion, and dwell in the midst of Jerusalem → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 8:4 [NOTABLE]** God's picture of a city at peace is simple: grandparents on the benches and kids playing in the street.
- **ZECH 8:4 [NOTE]** OLD MEN AND OLD WOMEN. A city at peace has old people and children in the streets.
- **ZECH 8:16 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → EPH 4:25 p.1887
- **ZECH 8:16 [NOTE]** SPEAK TRUTH. Ephesians 4:25 quotes this line, so it prints in italics.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · ARCHAEOLOGY · GOD SPEAKING

Hosts says: The fasts of the fourth, the fifth, the seventh, and the tenth months will become times of joy and gladness, cheerful feasts for the house of Judah. Therefore you are to love both truth and peace."

20 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says:
"Peoples will yet come—the residents of many cities— 21 and the residents of one city will go to another, saying: 'Let us go at once to plead before Yahweh and to seek Yahweh of Hosts. I myself am going.' 22 And many peoples and strong nations will come to seek Yahweh of Hosts in Jerusalem and to plead before Yahweh."

23 This is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "In those days ten men from the nations of every tongue will tightly grasp the robe of a Jew, saying, 'Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you.'"

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Judgment rolls down the coast through Tyre and the Philistines. Then the big one: your King is coming, humble and riding on a donkey. He will speak peace to the nations, and the prisoners of hope will go free.

THE BURDEN AGAINST ISRAEL'S ENEMIES

1 This is the burden of the word of Yahweh
against the land of Hadrach
and Damascus its resting place—
for the eyes of men
and of all the tribes of Israel
are upon Yahweh—

2 and also against Hamath,
which borders it,
as well as Tyre and Sidon,
though they are very shrewd.

3 Tyre has built herself a fortress;

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE CHAPTERS 9 TO 14?

Why People Ask

ZECHARIAH 1:1 · 9:1 · 12:1 · MALACHI 1:1

WHY PEOPLE ASK

Chapters 1 to 8 have dates, visions and Zechariah's name. Chapters 9 to 14 have no dates, no visions and no name, and each part starts with The burden of the word of Yahweh, 9:1 and 12:1, like Malachi 1:1.

WHERE IT STARTED

In the 1600s the English scholar Joseph Mede suggested chapters 9 to 11 were written by Jeremiah, because Matthew 27:9 names him.

Every View

MATTHEW 27:9 · ZECHARIAH 9:13

VIEW 1: ZECHARIAH WROTE IT ALL

The traditional view, held by Jews and Christians for most of history. A prophet can change style when he writes later in life, and the book has the same themes all the way through: the temple, the shepherd, Jerusalem and the nations.

VIEW 2: A SECOND ZECHARIAH

Many scholars think chapters 9 to 14 came later, some say after Alexander, about 330 to 300 BC, because 9:13 names Greece. Others answer that Greeks were already Persia's great enemies by about 490 BC.

VIEW 3: THREE PARTS

Some split it three ways, chapters 1 to 8, 9 to 11 and 12 to 14.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

No ancient copy splits it into two books. One Dead Sea scroll, 4QXII e, has pieces of both chapters 1 to 8 and chapter 12. Jesus and the apostles quoted chapters 9 to 14 as Scripture.

- **ZECH 8:19 [NOTE]** FOUR FASTS. For the walls broken, the temple burned, Gedaliah killed and the siege begun, Jeremiah 52:6 to 7 and 2 Kings 25. All four become parties.
- **ZECH 8:23 [PROPHECY]** In those days ten men from every language of the nations shall grasp the sleeve of a Jewish man, saying 'Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you' → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 8:23 [NOTE]** TEN MEN. Many see Gentiles coming to Israel's God through Jesus.
- **ZECH 9:1 [NOTE]** THE BURDEN. Part two begins, with no dates.

- **ZECH 9:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Alexander's army took Damascus, Sidon, Tyre and Gaza in 333 and 332 BC, moving north to south like Zechariah 9:1 to 7, see the Alexander the Great Field Notes page, p.1499 FIELD NOTES p.1499

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA
END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

she has heaped up silver like dust,
and gold like the dirt of the streets.
4 Behold, the Lord will impoverish her
and cast her wealth into the sea,
and she will be consumed by fire.

5 Ashkelon will see and fear;
Gaza will writhe in agony,
as will Ekron,
for her hope will wither.
There will cease to be a king in Gaza,
and Ashkelon will be uninhabited.
6 A mixed race will occupy Ashdod,
and I will cut off the pride of the
Philistines.
7 I will remove the blood from their mouths
and the abominations from between
their teeth.
Then they too will become a remnant for
our God;
they will become like a clan in Judah,
and Ekron will be like the Jebusites.
8 But I will camp around My house be-
cause of an army,
because of those who march to and fro,
and never again will an oppressor overrun
My people,
for now I keep watch with My own eyes.

ZION'S COMING KING // MATTHEW 21:1–11; MARK 11:1–11; LUKE 19:28–40; JOHN 12:12–19

9 *Rejoice greatly, O Daughter of Zion!*
Shout in triumph, O Daughter of Jerusalem!
See, your King comes to you,
righteous and victorious,
humble and riding on a donkey,
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.

10 And I will cut off the chariot from
Ephraim
and the horse from Jerusalem,
and the bow of war will be broken.
Then He will proclaim peace to the na-
tions.
His dominion will extend from sea to
sea,
and from the Euphrates
to the ends of the earth.
11 As for you,
because of the blood of My covenant,
I will release your prisoners
from the waterless pit.
12 Return to your stronghold,
O prisoners of hope;
even today I declare
that I will restore to you double.
13 For I will bend Judah as My bow
and fit it with Ephraim.
I will rouse your sons, O Zion,
against the sons of Greece.
I will make you like the sword
of a mighty man.

YAHWEH WILL SAVE HIS PEOPLE

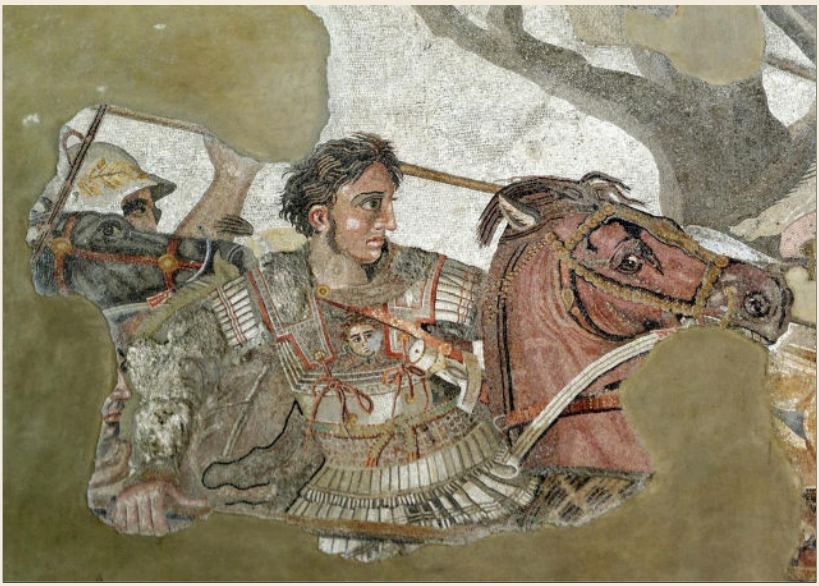
14 Then Yahweh will appear over them,
and His arrow will go forth like lightning.
The Lord Yahweh will sound the ram's
horn
and advance in the whirlwinds of the
south.
15 Yahweh of Hosts will shield them.
They will destroy and conquer with
slingstones;
they will drink and roar as with wine.

- **ZECH 9:3 [PROPHECY]** Tyre's wealth would be cast into the sea and the city consumed by fire → HISTORY: Alexander the Great besieged the island city of Tyre for seven months and captured it in 332 BC. Recorded by Arrian, Anabasis 2.18 to 2.24.
- **ZECH 9:3 [NOTE]** TYRE. Alexander built a causeway to the island city. See Tyre and the Causeway, Ezekiel, p.1285.
- **ZECH 9:5 [PROPHECY]** Gaza would lose its king and a mixed people would live in Ashdod → HISTORY: Alexander the Great captured Gaza in 332 BC, and its ruler Batis was killed. Recorded by Arrian, Anabasis 2.25 to 2.27, and Curtius 4.6.
- **ZECH 9:7 [DEMONIC]** God will remove idol meat and blood from the Philistines' mouths
- **ZECH 9:8 [PROPHECY]** God would camp around His house because of the army marching to and fro → HISTORY: Alexander marched through in 332 BC but spared Jerusalem. Josephus, Antiquities 11.8, tells it, though many scholars doubt parts. · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 9:9 [PROPHECY]** Zion's King would come righteous and bringing salvation, humble and riding on a donkey → MT 21:4-9; JN 12:14-15 p.1580
- **ZECH 9:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 21:5 p.1580
- **ZECH 9:9 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 12:15 p.1721
- **ZECH 9:9 [NOTE]** YOUR KING COMES. Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a donkey, Matthew 21:5 and John 12:15. It prints black because no I for God is in it, and Matthew 21:4 says it was spoken through the prophet. The italics show the New Testament quotes it.
- **ZECH 9:10 [PROPHECY]** The King would speak peace to the nations and rule from sea to sea → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 9:11 [PROPHECY]** Because of the blood of the covenant God would set the prisoners free → MT 26:28; HEB 13:20 · MEDIUM p.1592
- **ZECH 9:13 [PROPHECY]** For I have bent Judah, My bow, fitted the bow with Ephraim, and raised up your sons, O Zion, against your sons, O Greece → 1 Maccabees 3:10-24; 1 Maccabees 4:6-25 · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 9:13 [NOTE]** GREECE. In Hebrew Javan, the Ionian Greeks. Alexander's Greeks and later the Maccabees' wars with the Greek kings are both read here.
- **ZECH 9:14 [PROPHECY]** The Lord will be seen over them, and His arrow will go forth like lightning... the Lord of hosts will defend them → 2 Maccabees 10:29-30; 2 Maccabees 11:8 · MEDIUM

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

ALEXANDER THE GREAT

ZECHARIAH 9:1 TO 8 · 9:13 · EZEKIEL 26 · DANIEL 8:5 TO 8



Alexander the Great on his horse Bucephalus, from the Alexander Mosaic found at Pompeii, National Archaeological Museum, Naples. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

The most famous picture of Alexander the Great, a floor made of more than a million tiny stones. It shows Alexander charging King Darius III of Persia in battle, most likely at Issus in 333 BC.

HOW OLD IT IS

Made about 100 BC for a rich house in Pompeii, the House of the Faun, probably copying a Greek painting from about 300 BC. It was found in 1831 and moved to the museum in Naples. The one in Pompeii today is a copy.

THE ROUTE IN ZECHARIAH 9

After Issus, Alexander marched south. Damascus fell, Sidon gave up, and Tyre held out on its island for seven months before it fell in 332 BC. Then Gaza fell after a two month siege. Zechariah 9:1 to 7 moves the same way, from north to south: Hadrach and Damascus, Hamath, Tyre and Sidon, then the Philistine cities Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron and Ashdod.

TYRE

She has heaped up silver like dust... the Lord will cast her wealth into the sea, and she will be consumed by fire, 9:3 to 4. Alexander built a causeway to the island, took the city, and killed or sold its people. See Tyre and the Causeway, Ezekiel, p.1285.

GAZA

There will cease to be a king in Gaza, 9:5. The Roman writer Curtius says Gaza's commander, Batis, was dragged to death behind Alexander's chariot.

JERUSALEM SPARED

I will camp around My house because of an army, 9:8. Jerusalem was not attacked. The Jewish historian Josephus says Alexander even came to the city and bowed to the high priest, but many scholars doubt that story.

THE DATE QUESTION

Many believers see Zechariah foretelling this about 200 years ahead. Many scholars think chapters 9 to 14 were written later. See Who Wrote Chapters 9 to 14?

WHAT THE PHOTO SHOWS

Alexander on his horse Bucephalus, a small part of the whole mosaic, which is about 17 feet wide, or 19 feet with its border.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN THE APOCRYPHA | END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC | GOD SPEAKING

And they will be filled like sprinkling
bowls,
drenched like the corners of the altar.
16 On that day Yahweh their God will save
them
as the flock of His people;
for like jewels in a crown
they will sparkle over His land.
17 How lovely they will be,
and how beautiful!
Grain will make the young men flourish,
and new wine, the young women.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Ask Yahweh for rain, not the idols. The leaders are bad shepherds, so God will shepherd His flock Himself. He will whistle, and His scattered people will come home from everywhere.

JUDAH AND ISRAEL WILL BE RESTORED

1 Ask Yahweh for rain in springtime;
Yahweh makes the storm clouds,
and He will give everyone showers of rain
and crops in the field.
2 For idols speak deceit
and diviners see illusions;
they tell false dreams
and offer empty comfort.
Therefore the people wander like sheep,
oppressed for lack of a shepherd.

3 "My anger burns against the shepherds,
and I will punish the leaders.
For Yahweh of Hosts attends to His flock,
the house of Judah;
He will make them
like His royal steed in battle.
4 The cornerstone will come from Judah,
the tent peg from him,
as well as the battle bow
and every ruler together.
5 They will be like mighty men in battle,
trampling the enemy in the mire of the
streets.
They will fight because Yahweh is with
them,
and they will put the horsemen to
shame.

6 I will strengthen the house of Judah
and save the house of Joseph.
I will restore them because I have com-
passion on them,
and they will be as though I had not re-
jected them.
For I am Yahweh their God,
and I will answer them.
7 Ephraim will be like a mighty man,
and their hearts will be glad as with
wine.
Their children will see it and be joyful;
their hearts will rejoice in Yahweh.

8 I will whistle for them to gather,
for I have redeemed them;
and they will be as numerous
as they once were.
9 Though I sow them among the nations,
they will remember Me in distant lands;
they and their children
will live and return.
10 I will bring them back from Egypt
and gather them from Assyria.
I will bring them to Gilead and Lebanon
until no more room is found for them.
11 They will pass through the sea of dis-
tress
and strike the waves of the sea;
all the depths of the Nile will dry up.
The pride of Assyria will be brought down,
and the scepter of Egypt will depart.
12 I will strengthen them in Yahweh,
and in His name they will walk,"
declares Yahweh.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Zechariah plays the part of a shepherd for a flock headed to slaughter. They pay him thirty pieces of silver, an insult, and God says, Throw it to the potter. Then a worthless shepherd takes over.

- **ZECH 9:16 [PROPHECY]** The Lord their God will save them in that day, as the flock of His people; for they shall be like the jewels of a crown, lifted like a banner over His land → 1 Maccabees 14:4-15 · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 10:2 [DEMONIC]** Household idols speak deceit and diviners see false visions
- **ZECH 10:2 [NOTE]** IDOLS. The Hebrew teraphim, household gods, like the ones Rachel stole, Genesis 31:19.
- **ZECH 10:4 [PROPHECY]** The Cornerstone from Judah → EPH 2:20 · MEDIUM p.1880
- **ZECH 10:4 [NOTE]** THE CORNERSTONE. Ephesians 2:20 calls Jesus the cornerstone.
- **ZECH 10:8 [PROPHECY]** I will bring them back... I will whistle for them and gather them, for I have redeemed them; they shall increase as they once increased → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

MESSIANIC PROPECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

THE DOOMED FLOCK

1 Open your doors, O Lebanon,
that the fire may consume your cedars!
2 Wail, O cypress, for the cedar has fallen;
the majestic trees are ruined!
Wail, O oaks of Bashan,
for the dense forest has been cut down!
3 Listen to the wailing of the shepherds,
for their glory is in ruins.
Listen to the roaring of the young lions,
for the thickets of the Jordan are destroyed.

4 This is what Yahweh my God says: "Pasture the flock marked for slaughter, 5 whose buyers slaughter them without remorse. Those who sell them say, 'Blessed be Yahweh, for I am rich!' Even their own shepherds have no compassion on them.
6 For I will no longer have compassion on the people of the land, declares Yahweh, but behold, I will cause each man to fall into the hands of his neighbor and his king, who will devastate the land, and I will not deliver it from their hands."
7 So I pastured the flock marked for slaughter, especially the afflicted of the flock. Then I took for myself two staffs, calling one Favor and the other Union, and I pastured the flock. 8 And in one month I dismissed three shepherds.
My soul grew impatient with the flock, and their souls also detested me. 9 Then I said, "I will no longer shepherd you. Let the dying die, and the perishing perish; and let those who remain devour one another's flesh."

THIRTY PIECES OF SILVER // MATTHEW 27:3–10

10 Next I took my staff called Favor and cut it in two, revoking the covenant I had made with all the nations. 11 It was revoked on that day, and so the afflicted of the flock who were watching me knew that it was the word of Yahweh.
12 *Then I told them, "If it seems right to you, give me my wages; but if not, keep them." So they weighed out my wages, thirty pieces of silver.*
13 *And Yahweh said to me, "Throw it to the potter"— this magnificent price at which they valued me. So I took the thirty pieces of silver and threw them to the potter in the house of Yahweh.*
14 Then I cut in two my second staff called Union, breaking the brotherhood between Judah and Israel.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHY DOES MATTHEW SAY JEREMIAH?

The Puzzle

ZECHARIAH 11:12 TO 13 · MATTHEW 27:3 TO 10

THE PUZZLE

Judas threw down thirty pieces of silver, and the priests bought the potter's field. Matthew 27:9 says this fulfilled what was spoken through Jeremiah the prophet. But the thirty pieces of silver and the potter come from Zechariah 11:12 to 13.

WHAT MATTHEW ADDS

Matthew speaks of a field bought with the money. Zechariah has no field. Jeremiah has a potter's house, 18:1 to 4, a potter's jar broken in the valley, 19:1 to 13, and a field bought for silver, 32:6 to 15.

- **ZECH 11:1 [NOTE]** OPEN YOUR DOORS, O LEBANON. A short poem by the prophet, so it prints black.
- **ZECH 11:4 [PROPHECY]** The Shepherd sent to the doomed flock would be detested and rejected, and God would break His staff of favor with the people → JN 10:11; MT 23:37-38; LK 19:41-44; JN 19:15 · MEDIUM p.1717
- **ZECH 11:7 [NOTE]** FAVOR AND UNION. Zechariah acts out the part of a shepherd. His own words print black.
- **ZECH 11:8 [NOTE]** THREE SHEPHERDS. One of the hardest verses in the Bible. Scholars have made dozens of guesses about who they were.
- **ZECH 11:12 [PROPHECY]** Thirty pieces of silver thrown into the house of the Lord to the potter → MT 26:14-15; MT 27:3-10 p.1592
- **ZECH 11:12 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 27:9-10 p.1597
- **ZECH 11:12 [NOTE]** THIRTY PIECES OF SILVER. The price the law set for a slave gored by an ox, Exodus 21:32. An insult. Matthew 27:9 to 10 quotes it, and Matthew 26:15 echoes it, so it prints in italics.
- **ZECH 11:13 [NOTE]** THROW IT TO THE POTTER. Only God's words in the quote marks print red. In the Hebrew, God says the price at which I was valued by them. Many see this as one reason Matthew applies it to Jesus. See Why Does Matthew Say Jeremiah?

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · GOD SPEAKING · BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

Every View

JEREMIAH 18:1 TO 4 · 19:1 TO 13 · 32:6 TO 15 · MARK 1:2 TO 3

VIEW 1: A BLEND

Most scholars say Matthew blends Zechariah with Jeremiah and names the bigger prophet. Mark 1:2 to 3 does the same, quoting Malachi and Isaiah under the name Isaiah.

VIEW 2: THE SCROLL'S NAME

Some say Jeremiah stood first among the prophets in an old Jewish order, Bava Batra 14b, so the whole collection of the prophets could be called by his name.

VIEW 3: A COPYIST

A few old copies read Zechariah or leave the name out. Most experts think those were later fixes.

VIEW 4: SPOKEN, NOT WRITTEN

Matthew says spoken through Jeremiah. Some think Jeremiah said it out loud and Zechariah later wrote it down.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The thirty pieces of silver thrown to the potter in the house of Yahweh came true in Judas' betrayal.

15 And Yahweh said to me: "Take up once
more the equipment of a foolish shep-
herd. 16 For behold, I will raise up a shep-
herd in the land who will neither care for
the lost, nor seek the young, nor heal the
broken, nor sustain the healthy, but he will
devour the flesh of the choice sheep and
tear off their hooves.

17 Woe to the worthless shepherd,
who deserts the flock!
May a sword strike his arm
and his right eye!
May his arm be completely withered
and his right eye utterly blinded!"

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Jerusalem becomes a heavy stone that hurts every nation that tries to lift it. Then God pours out a spirit of grace, and they look on Me, the One they have pierced, and mourn like a family at a funeral.

THE COMING DELIVERANCE OF JERUSALEM

1 This is the burden of the word of Yahweh concerning Israel.

Thus declares Yahweh, who stretches out the heavens and lays the foundation of the earth, who forms the spirit of man within him:

2 "Behold, I will make Jerusalem a cup of
drunkenness to all the surrounding peo-
ples. Judah will be besieged, as well as
Jerusalem.

3 On that day, when all the nations of the
earth gather against her, I will make
Jerusalem a heavy stone for all the peo-
ples; all who would heave it away will be
severely injured.

4 On that day, declares Yahweh, I will
strike every horse with panic, and every
rider with madness. I will keep a watchful
eye on the house of Judah, but I will strike
with blindness all the horses of the na-
tions.

5 Then the leaders of Judah will say in
their hearts: 'The people of Jerusalem are
my strength, for Yahweh of Hosts is their
God.'

6 On that day I will make the clans of Ju-
dah like a firepot in a woodpile, like a
flaming torch among the sheaves; they
will consume all the peoples around them
on the right and on the left, while the peo-
ple of Jerusalem remain secure there.

7 Yahweh will save the tents of Judah first,
so that the glory of the house of David
and of the people of Jerusalem may not
be greater than that of Judah. 8 On that
day Yahweh will defend the people of
Jerusalem, so that the weakest among
them will be like David, and the house of
David will be like God, like the angel of
Yahweh going before them.

- **ZECH 11:16 [PROPHECY]** God would raise up a worthless shepherd who would devour the flock → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

- **ZECH 12:1 [NOTE]** THE SECOND BURDEN. God who made the heavens and the earth is the speaker of chapters 12 to 13.
- **ZECH 12:2 [PROPHECY]** I will make Jerusalem a cup of drunkenness to all the surrounding peoples; a very heavy stone for all peoples → HISTORY: Many Christians see this in the world's long fight over Jerusalem since Israel became a nation in 1948. Others read it differently. · LOW
- **ZECH 12:3 [NOTE]** A HEAVY STONE. Everyone who tries to lift Jerusalem gets hurt.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

9 So on that day I will set out to destroy all
the nations that come against Jerusalem.

MOURNING THE ONE THEY PIERCED // JOHN 19:31–37

10 *Then I will pour out on the house of Davia*
and on the people of Jerusalem a spirit of
grace and prayer, and they will look on Me,
the One they have pierced. They will mourn
for Him as one mourns for an only child, and
grieve bitterly for Him as one grieves for a
firstborn son.

11 On that day the wailing in Jerusalem will
be as great as the wailing of Hadad-rim-
mon in the plain of Megiddo. 12 The land
will mourn, each clan on its own: the clan
of the house of David and their wives, the
clan of the house of Nathan and their
wives, 13 the clan of the house of Levi and
their wives, the clan of Shimei and their
wives, 14 and all the remaining clans and
their wives.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE PIERCED ONE

They Will Look on Me

ZECHARIAH 12:10 · JOHN 19:34 TO 37

THE VERSE

They will look on Me, the One they have pierced. They will mourn for Him as one mourns for an only child, 12:10.

THE SURPRISE

God is speaking, and He says Me. Then it says Him. The One pierced is God Himself, and yet someone they mourn for.

What It Means

REVELATION 1:7 · ROMANS 11:26 · SUKKAH 52A

JESUS ON THE CROSS

When a soldier pierced Jesus' side, John says, as another Scripture says, They will look on the One they have pierced, John 19:34 to 37.

JESUS' RETURN

Every eye will see Him, even those who pierced Him, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of Him, Revelation 1:7. Many see Israel turning to Jesus at the end, Romans 11:26.

JEWISH READINGS

The Talmud applies this verse to a Messiah who is killed, Sukkah 52a. Some Jewish translators read look to Me about the one they pierced, making two different people.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God pours out a spirit of grace and prayer, and the people grieve deeply over what they did.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

A fountain opens to wash away sin. Idols and false prophets are gone. Then: Strike the Shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered. A third of the people come through the fire refined like silver.

AN END TO IDOLATRY

1 "On that day a fountain will be opened to
the house of David and the people of
Jerusalem, to cleanse them from sin and
impurity. 2 And on that day, declares Yah-
weh of Hosts, I will erase the names of the
idols from the land, and they will no longer
be remembered. I will also remove the
prophets and the spirit of impurity from
the land.

3 And if anyone still prophesies, his father
and mother who bore him will say to him,
'You shall not remain alive, because you
have spoken falsely in the name of Yah-

- **ZECH 12:10 [PROPHECY]** His body would be pierced → JN 19:34-37 p.1732
- **ZECH 12:10 [PROPHECY]** Israel would look on the One they pierced and mourn for Him → STILL TO COME
- **ZECH 12:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → MT 24:30 p.1587
- **ZECH 12:10 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → JN 19:37 p.1733
- **ZECH 12:10 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 1:7 p.2080
- **ZECH 12:10 [NOTE]** THE ONE THEY HAVE PIERCED. John 19:37 quotes this at the cross, and Revelation 1:7 at His return. See The Pierced One.
- **ZECH 12:11 [NOTE]** HADAD RIMMON IN THE PLAIN OF MEGIDDO. Most think this is the mourning for good King Josiah, killed near Megiddo, 2 Chronicles 35:22 to 25. Others think it was a yearly mourning rite for the storm god Hadad. See Megiddo, Revelation, p.2106.
- **ZECH 12:12 [NOTE]** THE HOUSE OF NATHAN. Most think David's son Nathan, the line Luke traces to Jesus, Luke 3:31. So David and Nathan are underlined here.

- **ZECH 13:1 [PROPHECY]** In that day a fountain shall be opened for the house of David and inhabitants of Jerusalem, for sin and for uncleanness → JN 19:34; 1JN 1:7; 1JN 5:6 p.1732
- **ZECH 13:1 [NOTE]** A FOUNTAIN. For sin and impurity. Many see the blood and water from Jesus' side, John 19:34.
- **ZECH 13:2 [DEMONIC]** God will erase the names of idols from the land

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | GOD SPEAKING

weh.' When he prophesies, his father and mother who bore him will pierce him through.

4 And on that day every prophet who prophesies will be ashamed of his vision, and he will not put on a hairy cloak in order to deceive. 5 He will say, 'I am not a prophet; I work the land, for I was purchased as a servant in my youth.' 6 If someone asks him, 'What are these wounds on your chest?' he will answer, 'These are the wounds I received in the house of my friends.'

THE SHEPHERD STRUCK, THE SHEEP SCATTERED // MATTHEW 26:31–35; MARK 14:27–31

7 *Awake, O sword, against My Shepherd,*
against the man who is My Companion,
declares Yahweh of Hosts.
Strike the Shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered,
and I will turn My hand against the little ones.
8 And in all the land,
declares Yahweh,
two-thirds will be cut off and perish,
but a third will be left in it.
9 This third I will bring through the fire;
I will refine them like silver
and test them like gold.
They will call on My name,
and I will answer them.
I will say, 'They are My people,'
and they will say, 'Yahweh is our God.'"

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

The last battle. Yahweh's feet stand on the Mount of Olives, and it splits in two. Living water flows from Jerusalem, Yahweh is King over all the earth, and even the horse bells say holy to Yahweh, and every cooking pot is holy.

THE DESTROYERS OF JERUSALEM DESTROYED

1 Behold, a day of Yahweh is coming when your plunder will be divided in your presence. 2 For I will gather all the nations for battle against Jerusalem, and the city will be captured, the houses looted, and the women ravished. Half of the city will go into exile, but the rest of the people will not be removed from the city.

3 Then Yahweh will go out to fight against those nations, as He fights in the day of battle. 4 On that day His feet will stand on the Mount of Olives, east of Jerusalem, and the Mount of Olives will be split in two from east to west, forming a great valley, with half the mountain moving to the north and half to the south. 5 You will flee by My mountain valley, for it will extend to Azal. You will flee as you fled from the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah. Then Yahweh my God will come, and all the holy ones with Him.

6 On that day there will be no light, no cold or frost. 7 It will be a unique day known only to Yahweh, without day or night; but when evening comes, there will be light.

8 And on that day living water will flow out from Jerusalem, half of it toward the Eastern Sea and the other half toward the Western Sea, in summer and winter alike.

- **ZECH 13:6 [NOTE]** THESE WOUNDS. In context a false prophet explains his cuts, 1 Kings 18:28. Some older Christian writers applied it to Jesus' wounds.
- **ZECH 13:7 [PROPHECY]** The Shepherd would be struck and the sheep would scatter → MT 26:31; MT 26:56; MK 14:27 p.1593
- **ZECH 13:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 26:31 p.1593
- **ZECH 13:7 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 14:27 p.1633
- **ZECH 13:7 [NOTE]** STRIKE THE SHEPHERD. Jesus quoted this the night He was arrested, Matthew 26:31, so it prints in italics. God calls the Shepherd My Companion, the man who stands next to Me.
- **ZECH 13:8 [PROPHECY]** Two-thirds of the land shall be cut off and die, but one-third shall be left; I will bring them through fire and refine them → STILL TO COME
- **ZECH 14:1 [NOTE]** BLACK HERE. Only where God says I or My is red, 14:2 and 14:5.
- **ZECH 14:3 [PROPHECY]** His feet shall stand on the Mount of Olives, and the Mount of Olives shall split in two → STILL TO COME
- **ZECH 14:4 [NOTE]** THE MOUNT OF OLIVES. See The Mount of Olives Splits.
- **ZECH 14:5 [PROPHECY]** Yahweh would come and all His holy ones with Him → STILL TO COME
- **ZECH 14:5 [NOTE]** THE EARTHQUAKE. More than 200 years later people still remembered it. See Amos's Earthquake, Amos, p.1391.
- **ZECH 14:8 [PROPHECY]** Living water would flow out from Jerusalem toward both seas → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **ZECH 14:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JN 7:38 p.1711
- **ZECH 14:8 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → REV 22:1 p.2115

END TIMES PROPHECIES

9 On that day Yahweh will become King
over all the earth—Yahweh alone, and His
name alone.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE MOUNT OF OLIVES SPLITS

The Last Battle

ZECHARIAH 14:1 TO 9 · ACTS 1:9 TO 12

THE PICTURE

The nations attack Jerusalem. Then Yahweh fights for it, His feet stand on the Mount of Olives, and the mountain splits from east to west into a great valley, 14:3 to 4.

THE PROMISE

Jesus went up to heaven from the Mount of Olives. Two men in white, angels, said, This same Jesus... will come back in the same way you have seen Him go, Acts 1:11 to 12.

THE END TIMES READING

Most Bible believing Christians read chapter 14 as Jesus' return with His holy ones, 14:5 and Jude 14.

The Timing Views

REVELATION 19:11 TO 21 · 1 THESSALONIANS 3:13 · JUDE 14

VIEW 1: BEFORE THE THOUSAND YEARS

Many say Jesus returns, splits the mountain, and then reigns on earth for a thousand years, when the nations come up for the Feast of Booths, 14:16.

VIEW 2: A PICTURE OF THE END

Others say the chapter is a picture of God's final victory and the new creation, using temple and feast words the first readers knew.

VIEW 3: PARTLY PAST

A few see parts of it in Jerusalem's past battles, like the Maccabees or AD 70, with the rest still to come.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Yahweh will become King over all the earth, Yahweh alone, and His name alone, 14:9.

10 All the land from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem will be turned into a plain, but Jerusalem will be raised up and will remain in her place, from the Benjamin Gate to the site of the First Gate to the Corner Gate, and from the Tower of Hananel to the royal winepresses. 11 People will live there, and never again will there be an utter destruction. So Jerusalem will dwell securely.

12 And this will be the plague with which Yahweh strikes all the peoples who have warred against Jerusalem: Their flesh will rot while they stand on their feet, their eyes will rot in their sockets, and their tongues will rot in their mouths.

13 On that day a great panic from Yahweh will come upon them, so that each will seize the hand of another, and the hand of one will rise against the other. 14 Judah will also fight at Jerusalem, and the wealth of all the surrounding nations will be collected—gold, silver, and apparel in great abundance. 15 And a similar plague will strike the horses and mules, camels and donkeys, and all the animals in those camps.

ALL NATIONS WILL WORSHIP THE KING // LEVITICUS 23:33–44; NEHEMIAH 8:13–18

16 Then all the survivors from the nations that came against Jerusalem will go up year after year to worship the King, Yahweh of Hosts, and to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles. 17 And should any of the families of the earth not go up to Jerusalem to worship the King, Yahweh of Hosts, then the rain will not fall on them. 18 And if the people of Egypt will not go up and enter in, then the rain will not fall on them; this will be the plague with which Yahweh strikes the nations who do not go up to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles. 19 This will be the punishment of Egypt and of all the nations that do not go up to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles.

20 On that day, HOLY TO YAHWEH will be inscribed on the bells of the horses, and the cooking pots in the house of Yahweh will be like the sprinkling bowls before the

ZECH 14:9 [PROPHECY] Yahweh would become King over all the earth → STILL TO COME

ZECH 14:16 [PROPHECY] Everyone left of all the nations that came against Jerusalem shall go up from year to year to worship the King and keep the Feast of Tabernacles → STILL TO COME

ZECH 14:16 [NOTE] THE FEAST OF BOOTHS. Israel lived in huts to remember the desert years, Leviticus 23:42 to 43.

altar. 21 Indeed, every pot in Jerusalem and
Judah will be holy to Yahweh of Hosts,
and all who sacrifice will come and take
some pots and cook in them. And on that
day there will no longer be a Canaanite in
the house of Yahweh of Hosts.

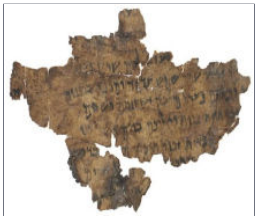
- **ZECH 14:20 [NOTE]** HOLY TO YAHWEH. The words on the high priest's gold plate, Exodus 28:36.
- **ZECH 14:21 [NOTE]** NO CANAANITE. The Hebrew word can also mean trader. Jesus drove the sellers out of the temple, John 2:16.

BOOK 39 OF 66 · OLD TESTAMENT · MINOR PROPHETS

MALACHI

The Last Word

AUTHOR	Malachi, 1:1. His name means My messenger. Nothing else is certain about him.
DATE	About 460 to 430 BC, in Persian times. The temple was rebuilt and running, a governor ruled, 1:8, and the sins match the ones Nehemiah fought, Nehemiah 13.
WRITTEN TO	The people of Judah back from Babylon, and their priests.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Pieces of 2:10 to 4:6 are in 4QXII a, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 150 to 125 BC.
KEY VERSE	Malachi 3:1. Behold, I will send My messenger, who will prepare the way before Me.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF MALACHI
A piece of 4QXII a, a scroll of the Twelve Prophets from Qumran Cave 4, copied about 150 to 125 BC. These lines are from the end of Malachi, about 4:2 to 4 in this Bible, Remember the law of My servant Moses. The Hebrew counts them as 3:20 to 22. Some scholars think Jonah came right after Malachi in this scroll.

Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

Historical Setting

The exiles had come home, and the temple had been finished in 515 BC. But two or three generations later the excitement was gone. The priests were bored, the offerings were cheap, and people wondered if serving God was worth it. Malachi is the last prophet of the Old Testament.

What Was Going Wrong

CHEAP SACRIFICES. You bring offerings that are stolen, lame, or sick! 1:13.
LAZY PRIESTS. Your instruction has caused many to stumble, 2:8.
BROKEN MARRIAGES. Men broke faith with the wife of their youth and married women who served foreign gods, 2:11 and 2:14.
ROBBING GOD. Holding back the tithes and offerings, 3:8.
WHY BOTHER?. It is futile to serve God, 3:14.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Malachi reads like an argument. God makes a point, the people talk back, But you ask, How?, and God answers. They had grown cold: cheap sacrifices, broken marriages, skipped tithes, and a shrug about right and wrong. God still says I have loved you. Then He promises a messenger to prepare the way, the Lord coming to His temple, and Elijah before the great day. After this, no prophet speaks for about 400 years.

Malachi at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 5	**I HAVE LOVED YOU** Jacob and Esau.
CH 1:6 to 2:9	**CHEAP GIFTS, BAD PRIESTS** Blind and sick animals on the altar.
CH 2:10 to 16	**BROKEN PROMISES** The wife of your youth.
CH 2:17 to 3:5	**THE MESSENGER IS COMING** The refiner's fire.
CH 3:6 to 12	**RETURN TO ME** Tithes and the windows of heaven.
CH 3:13 to 4:6	**THE DAY IS COMING** Remember Moses, watch for Elijah.

Where Jesus Shows Up

MALACHI 3:1 My messenger is John the Baptist, Matthew 11:10, Mark 1:2 and Luke 7:27. Then the Lord came to His temple: Jesus as a baby, Luke 2:22 to 32, and as a man, John 2:13 to 17.

MALACHI 4:5 TO 6 Jesus said John was the Elijah who was to come, Matthew 11:14 and 17:12 to 13. The angel said John would turn the hearts of the fathers to their children, Luke 1:17.

MALACHI 4:2 The sun of righteousness. Zechariah the priest sang that the Dawn would visit us from on high, Luke 1:78 to 79.

MALACHI
My messenger. From the Hebrew malakh, messenger or angel.

ELIJAH
My God is Yahweh. The prophet taken up to heaven, 2 Kings 2.

LEVI
Jacob's son. The priests came from his tribe. God's covenant with Levi, 2:4 to 8.

What to Watch for in Malachi

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (8)	1:11, 3:1-3, 4:2, 4:5-6
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (2)	1:3-4
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	4:1
THE HEART (1)	2:2
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	1:8
DEMONIC (3)	2:11, 3:5, 3:8-9
NOTABLE (2)	3:6, 3:16-17
GOD SPEAKING (43 VERSES)	Words in red are God speaking. Only the words He actually said are red.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

SIX ARGUMENTS
God speaks, the people ask How?, and God answers, six times. It reads like a courtroom.

THE GOVERNOR'S COIN
A tiny silver coin from Persian Judah is stamped Yehezqiyah the governor, the same Hebrew word as your governor in 1:8.

THE LAST WORD
The Old Testament ends with Moses, Elijah and a promise. The New Testament picks up right there: Mark's gospel starts with Malachi 3:1.

ELIJAH'S CUP
At the Passover meal many Jewish families still pour a cup for Elijah and open the door for him, because of 4:5.

How Did It Turn Out?

Nehemiah fought the same sins, Nehemiah 13. Then the prophets went quiet for about 400 years. See The 400 Silent Years. Then John the Baptist came in the spirit and power of Elijah, and Jesus came to His temple.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* GOD SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God opens with I have loved you, and the people answer, Oh yeah? How? Then He turns to the priests. They are putting blind and sick animals on His altar. Try giving that to your governor, God says, and see how he likes it.

YAHWEH'S LOVE FOR ISRAEL // GENESIS 25:19–28; ROMANS 9:6–29

1 This is the burden of the word of Yahweh
to Israel through Malachi:

2 *"I have loved you," says Yahweh.*
But you ask, "How have You loved us?"
"Was not Esau Jacob's brother?" declares Yahweh. "Yet Jacob I have loved, 3 *but Esau I have hated, and I have made his mountains a wasteland and left his inheritance to the desert jackals."*

4 Though Edom may say, "We have been devastated, but we will rebuild the ruins," this is what Yahweh of Hosts says: "They may build, but I will demolish. They will be called the Land of Wickedness, and a people with whom Yahweh is indignant forever. 5 You will see this with your own eyes, and you yourselves will say, 'Yahweh is great—even beyond the borders of Israel.'"

- **MAL 1:1 [NOTE]** MALACHI. The name means My messenger. Some think it is a title, not a name, because 3:1 says I will send My messenger. A Jewish tradition says the writer was Ezra.
- **MAL 1:2 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → ROM 9:13 p.1811
- **MAL 1:2 [NOTE]** BUT YOU ASK. Malachi is built like six arguments. God says something, the people talk back, How?, and God answers. Most of their questions print red here because God is quoting them. See Jacob I Loved, Esau I Hated?
- **MAL 1:3 [FULFILLS]** The cup of judgment would pass to Edom too ← LAM 4:21 · MEDIUM p.1243
- **MAL 1:3 [FULFILLS]** Mount Seir, Edom, would become a desolate waste ← EZK 35:3-4 · MEDIUM p.1298
- **MAL 1:3 [NOTE]** EDOM'S RUINS. By Malachi's day Edom's kingdom was in ruins, and Arab tribes were moving into its land. See The Rock of Sela and What Happened to Edom?, Obadiah, p.1411.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

JACOB I LOVED, ESAU I HATED?

What It Says

MALACHI 1:2 TO 5 · GENESIS 25:23 · GENESIS 29:30 TO 31

THE WORDS

Yet Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated, 1:2 to 3. Paul quotes it in Romans 9:13. It sounds harsh, so people have argued about it for 2,000 years.

TWO NATIONS

Malachi is talking about nations. The next words are about Edom's mountains and land, 1:3 to 4. Before the twins were born, God told Rebekah, Two nations are in your womb, Genesis 25:23.

A HEBREW WAY OF TALKING

In Hebrew, love and hate can mean choose and not choose, or love more and love less. Jacob loved Rachel more than Leah, and this Bible says Leah was unloved, but the Hebrew word is hated, Genesis 29:30 to 31. Jesus said to hate your father and mother, Luke 14:26, and Matthew says do not love them more than Me, Matthew 10:37.

Every View

ROMANS 9:10 TO 16 · LUKE 14:26 · DEUTERONOMY 23:7

VIEW 1: GOD CHOOSES PEOPLE

Reformed or Calvinist Christians say Paul uses this verse to show that God chooses who will be saved by His mercy alone, before they are born or have done anything good or bad, Romans 9:11 to 16.

VIEW 2: GOD CHOOSES NATIONS FOR A JOB

Arminian or free will Christians say God chose Israel, not Edom, to carry His promise and bring the Messiah. It is about a role in history, not who goes to heaven. Malachi talks about nations and land.

VIEW 3: LOVED LESS

Many say hated is the Hebrew way of saying loved less or not chosen, like Leah, so it is not anger or spite. This view fits with either of the first two.

EDOM'S OWN CHOICES

Edom turned on its brother when Jerusalem fell, Obadiah 1:10 to 14. Yet God told Israel, Do not despise an

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY GOD SPEAKING

Edomite, for he is your brother, Deuteronomy 23:7, and Esau himself was blessed with plenty, Genesis 33:9.
WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
Israel did not earn God's love. It was a gift. See Esau and Jacob and What Happened to Edom?, Obadiah, p.1408, and the Romans 9:13 note, p.1811.

THE POLLUTED OFFERINGS

6 "A son honors his father, and a servant his master. But if I am a father, where is My honor? And if I am a master, where is your fear of Me?" says Yahweh of Hosts to you priests who despise My name.

"But you ask, 'How have we despised Your name?'

7 By presenting defiled food on My altar.

But you ask, 'How have we defiled You?'

By saying that the table of Yahweh is contemptible.

8 When you offer blind animals for sacrifice, is it not wrong? And when you present the lame and sick ones, is it not wrong? Try offering them to your governor! Would he be pleased with you or show you favor?" asks Yahweh of Hosts.

9 "But ask now for God's favor. Will He be gracious? Since this has come from your hands, will He show you favor?" asks Yahweh of Hosts.

10 "Oh, that one of you would shut the temple doors, so that you would no longer kindle useless fires on My altar! I take no pleasure in you," says Yahweh of Hosts, "and I will accept no offering from your hands.

11 For My name will be great among the nations, from where the sun rises to where it sets. In every place, incense and pure offerings will be presented in My name, because My name will be great among the nations," says Yahweh of Hosts. 12 "But you profane it when you say, 'The table of the Lord is defiled, and as for its fruit, its food is contemptible.'

13 You also say: 'Oh, what a nuisance!' And you turn up your nose at it," says Yahweh of Hosts.

"You bring offerings that are stolen, lame, or sick! Should I accept these from your hands?" asks Yahweh.

14 "But cursed is the deceiver who has an acceptable male in his flock and vows to give it, but sacrifices a defective animal to the Lord. For I am a great King," says Yahweh of Hosts, "and My name is to be feared among the nations.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
The priests get a warning: they were supposed to teach the truth, and instead they made people stumble. Then the husbands get one too. They are walking out on the wives of their youth, and Malachi says God was a witness at the wedding.

A WARNING TO THE PRIESTS

1 "And now this decree is for you, O priests:

2 If you do not listen, and if you do not take it to heart to honor My name," says Yahweh of Hosts, "I will send a curse among you, and I will curse your blessings. Yes, I have already begun to curse them, because you are not taking it to heart.

3 Behold, I will rebuke your descendants, and I will spread dung on your faces, the waste from your feasts, and you will be carried off with it.

4 Then you will know that I have sent you this commandment so that My covenant with Levi may continue," says Yahweh of Hosts. 5 "My covenant with him was one of life and peace, which I gave to him; it called for reverence, and he revered Me and stood in awe of My name.

MAL 1:8 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Small silver coins of Persian Judah from the 300s BC are stamped Yehezqiyah the governor, using pechah, the same Hebrew word as your governor here, see The Governor's Coin Field Notes page, p.1512 FIELD NOTES p.1512
MAL 1:11 [PROPHECY] God's name would be great among the nations with pure offerings in every place → JN 4:21-23; HEB 13:15 · MEDIUM p.1703
MAL 1:11 [NOTABLE] Prophecy that God's worship would extend beyond Israel; incense offered globally
MAL 1:11 [NOTE] FROM EAST TO WEST. From where the sun rises to where it sets, people of every nation would honor God's name, not just Israel.
MAL 2:2 [HEART] The priests heard God's word but did not take it to heart. God wants His honor to matter to us on the inside, not just in what we do.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE COIN, MEDIUM FOR WHO HE WAS

THE GOVERNOR'S COIN

MALACHI 1:8 · HAGGAI 1:1 · NEHEMIAH 5:14 TO 15



A tiny silver coin of Yehezqiyah the governor, Judah in Persian times, front and back, shown many times larger than life. Photo Classical Numismatic Group, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny silver coin made in Judah when it was a province of the Persian Empire. One side shows a face looking straight out. The other side shows an owl, copied from the famous coins of Athens. Beside the owl are old Hebrew letters that read Yehezqiyah the governor.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 350 to 330 BC, the last years of Persian rule, and some may be a little later. That is a few generations after Malachi.

HOW BIG IT IS

Smaller than a fingernail, about a quarter of an inch across, and it weighs less than a paper clip. It was small change, not a fortune.

THE WORD GOVERNOR

The Hebrew word on the coin is pechah, governor. It is the same word Malachi uses, Try offering them to your governor! 1:8. The Bible uses it for Zerubbabel, Haggai 1:1, and for Nehemiah, Nehemiah 5:14.

WHO WAS HE?

Yehezqiyah is the Hebrew form of Hezekiah, but he is not King Hezekiah, who lived more than 300 years earlier. He was a local governor under Persia, and no Bible book names him. Josephus quotes a Greek writer, Hecataeus, about a Jewish chief priest named Ezekias who moved to Egypt after Alexander's time. Some think it is the same man or his family. Others disagree.

WHY IT MATTERS FOR MALACHI

The governors before Nehemiah took food and silver from the people, Nehemiah 5:15. Nobody would hand the governor a blind or lame animal. Yet the priests gave God their worst. If you would not give it to the boss, do not give it to God.

YEHUD

Other small coins from these years are stamped YHD, Yehud, the name the Persians used for Judah. The king's own gold coins were the big money. See Persian Gold Coins, Ezra, p.768.

THE HONEST SIDE

We do not know which governor ruled in Malachi's day. This coin shows the office, not the man Malachi meant.

WHAT THE PHOTO SHOWS

The front and the back of one of the governor's coins.

DEMONIC GOD SPEAKING

6 True instruction was in his mouth, and
nothing false was found on his lips. He
walked with Me in peace and uprightness,
and he turned many from iniquity. 7 For the
lips of a priest should preserve knowl-
edge, and people should seek instruction
from his mouth, because he is the mes-
senger of Yahweh of Hosts.

8 But you have departed from the way, and
your instruction has caused many to
stumble. You have violated the covenant
of Levi," says Yahweh of Hosts. 9 "So I in
turn have made you despised and humili-
ated before all the people, because you
have not kept My ways, but have shown
partiality in matters of the law."

JUDAH'S UNFAITHFULNESS

10 Do we not all have one Father? Did not
one God create us? Why then do we
break faith with one another so as to pro-
fane the covenant of our fathers?

11 Judah has broken faith; an abomination
has been committed in Israel and in
Jerusalem. For Judah has profaned
Yahweh's beloved sanctuary by marrying
the daughter of a foreign god. 12 As for the
man who does this, may Yahweh cut off
from the tents of Jacob everyone who is
awake and aware—even if he brings an
offering to Yahweh of Hosts.

13 And this is another thing you do: You
cover the altar of Yahweh with tears, with
weeping and groaning, because He no
longer regards your offerings or receives
them gladly from your hands.

14 Yet you ask, "Why?"

It is because Yahweh has been a witness
between you and the wife of your youth,
against whom you have broken faith,
though she is your companion and your
wife by covenant.

15 Has not Yahweh made them one, having
a portion of the Spirit? And why one? Be-
cause He seeks godly offspring. So guard
yourselves in your spirit and do not break
faith with the wife of your youth.

16 "For I hate divorce," says Yahweh, the
God of Israel. "He who divorces his wife
covers his garment with violence," says
Yahweh of Hosts. So guard yourselves in
your spirit and do not break faith.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DOES GOD HATE DIVORCE?

Two Translations

MALACHI 2:13 TO 16 · KJV MALACHI 2:16

THE SETTING

Men were breaking faith with the wife of your youth, 2:14, and many were marrying women who served other gods, 2:11. Ezra and Nehemiah fought the same thing, Ezra 9 to 10 and Nehemiah 13:23 to 27.

THE OLDER WORDING

For I hate divorce, says Yahweh, like this Bible, the NASB and the NIV of 1984. The KJV says he hateth putting away.

THE NEWER WORDING

Some newer Bibles read it as the man who hates and divorces his wife does wrong, like the NIV of 2011 and the CSB. The ESV says the man who does not love his wife but divorces her. The Hebrew says he hates, send away, and the grammar can go either way.

A CLUE FROM EGYPT

Jewish marriage contracts from Elephantine in Egypt, from the 400s BC, use the words I hate as the legal way to say I divorce. See The Elephantine Papyri, Nehemiah, p.793.

Every View

MATTHEW 19:3 TO 9 · DEUTERONOMY 24:1 TO 4 · JEREMIAH 3:8 · 1 CORINTHIANS 7:15

VIEW 1: GOD HATES DIVORCE ITSELF

The older reading. Marriage is a covenant God witnesses, 2:14, and Jesus said what God has joined together, let man not separate, Matthew 19:6.

VIEW 2: GOD HATES CRUEL DIVORCE

The newer reading. God condemns the man who coldly throws away a faithful wife. The law allowed divorce, Deuteronomy 24:1 to 4, and God even

■ **MAL 2:10 [NOTE]** THE PROPHET SPEAKS. In 2:10 to 15 and in 2:17, Malachi speaks for himself, Do we not all have one Father?, so these verses print black. God's own words in 2:16 print red.
■ **MAL 2:11 [DEMONIC]** Judah marries the daughters of a foreign god
■ **MAL 2:14 [NOTE]** THE WIFE OF YOUR YOUTH. Malachi calls marriage a covenant, a sworn promise, and says God was the witness. See Does God Hate Divorce?

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

pictured Himself giving unfaithful Israel a certificate of divorce, Jeremiah 3:8.

WHAT JESUS SAID

Moses permitted you to divorce your wives because of your hardness of heart, Matthew 19:8. Jesus named sexual immorality as a reason, 19:9. Paul said a believer deserted by an unbelieving spouse is not bound, 1 Corinthians 7:15. Churches differ on what that allows, and on remarriage.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God takes marriage vows seriously, He sees the one who is hurt, and He calls husbands to be faithful. So guard yourselves in your spirit, 2:16.

17 You have wearied Yahweh with your words; yet you ask, "How have we wearied Him?"

By saying, "All who do evil are good in the sight of Yahweh, and in them He delights," or, "Where is the God of justice?"

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

God promises to send His messenger, and then the Lord Himself will come to His temple like a refiner's fire. Next question: Will a man rob God? Bring the full tithe and test Me. A few faithful friends talk about God, and He writes their names in a book.

I WILL SEND MY MESSENGER // MATTHEW 11:7–19; LUKE 7:24–35

1 *"Behold, I will send My messenger, who will prepare the way before Me. Then the Lord whom you seek will suddenly come to His temple—the Messenger of the covenant, in whom you delight—see, He is coming," says Yahweh of Hosts.*

- **MAL 3:1 [PROPHECY]** A messenger would prepare His way → MT 11:10; MK 1:2-4; LK 7:27 p.1565
- **MAL 3:1 [PROPHECY]** Sudden appearance at the Temple → LK 2:22-32; JN 2:13-17; MT 21:12-13 p.1650
- **MAL 3:1 [PROPHECY]** Messenger of the New Covenant → LK 22:20; HEB 8:6 · MEDIUM p.1687
- **MAL 3:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MT 11:10 p.1565
- **MAL 3:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → MK 1:2-3 p.1608
- **MAL 3:1 [QUOTED]** Quoted in the New Testament → LK 7:27 p.1661
- **MAL 3:1 [NOTE]** TWO MESSENGERS. My messenger prepares the way, and then the Lord Himself comes, the Messenger of the covenant. Mark opens his gospel with this verse, Mark 1:2, and Jesus said John the Baptist was this messenger, Matthew 11:10.

2 But who can endure the day of His coming? And who can stand when He appears? For He will be like a refiner's fire, like a launderer's soap.

3 And He will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; He will purify the sons of Levi and refine them like gold and silver. Then they will present offerings to Yahweh in righteousness.

4 Then the offerings of Judah and Jerusalem will please Yahweh, as in days of old and years gone by.

5 "Then I will draw near to you for judgment. And I will be a swift witness against sorcerers and adulterers and perjurers, against oppressors of the widowed and fatherless, and against those who defraud laborers of their wages and deny justice to the foreigner but do not fear Me," says Yahweh of Hosts.

ROBBING GOD

6 "Because I, Yahweh, do not change, you descendants of Jacob have not been destroyed. 7 Yet from the days of your fathers, you have turned away from My statutes and have not kept them. Return to Me, and I will return to you," says Yahweh of Hosts.

"But you ask, 'How can we return?'

8 Will a man rob God? Yet you are robbing Me!

But you ask, 'How do we rob You?'

In tithes and offerings. 9 You are cursed with a curse, yet you—the whole nation—are still robbing Me. 10 Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, so that there may be food in My house. Test Me in this," says Yahweh of Hosts. "See if I will not

- **MAL 3:2 [PROPHECY]** The Lord would come like a refiner's fire to purify His people → MT 3:11-12 · MEDIUM p.1554
- **MAL 3:2 [NOTE]** THE REFINER. A silver refiner heats the metal until the trash floats off. These verses talk about God as He, outside His quote, so they print black.
- **MAL 3:5 [DEMONIC]** God will be a swift witness against sorcerers
- **MAL 3:6 [NOTABLE]** The people kept breaking their promises, but God kept His. They were still alive only because He is always the same.
- **MAL 3:7 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → JAS 4:8 p.2006
- **MAL 3:8 [DEMONIC]** You are cursed because you rob God
- **MAL 3:8 [NOTE]** ROBBERY. See Robbing God?, and for every view on tithing today, Does the Tithe Still Apply?, Leviticus, p.219.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE GOD SPEAKING

open the windows of heaven and pour out for you blessing without measure. 11 I will rebuke the devourer for you, so that it will not destroy the fruits of your land, and the vine in your field will not fail to produce fruit," says Yahweh of Hosts.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ROBBING GOD?

Malachi 3:8 to 12 in Its Day

MALACHI 3:7 TO 12 · NEHEMIAH 10:37 TO 39 · NEHEMIAH 13:10 TO 12 · DEUTERONOMY 6:16

WHAT GOD SAID

Will a man rob God? Yet you are robbing Me! ... In tithes and offerings, 3:8. Bring the full tithe into the storehouse, 3:10.

THE STOREHOUSE

Store rooms in the temple courts held the grain, wine and oil the people brought, to feed the Levites and priests, Nehemiah 10:37 to 39. In Nehemiah's day the gifts stopped, and the Levites had to go back to their fields, Nehemiah 13:10 to 12.

TEST ME

The Bible says, Do not test Yahweh your God, Deuteronomy 6:16. Here God Himself says Test Me in this, 3:10. He promises open windows of heaven and no more crop eating pests, 3:11.

FIRST THINGS FIRST

Before the money comes this: Return to Me, and I will return to you, 3:7. God wanted their hearts back.

TODAY

Many churches teach this passage as a lasting promise for giving. Others say it was for Israel under the Law and its temple. Christians disagree. For the history and every view, see Does the Tithe Still Apply?, Leviticus, p.219.

12 "Then all the nations will call you blessed, for you will be a land of delight," says Yahweh of Hosts.

THE BOOK OF REMEMBRANCE

13 "Your words against Me have been harsh," says Yahweh. "Yet you ask, 'What have we spoken against You?'

14 You have said, 'It is futile to serve God. What have we gained by keeping His requirements and walking mournfully before Yahweh of Hosts? 15 So now we call the arrogant blessed. Not only do evildoers prosper, they even test God and escape.'"

16 At that time those who feared Yahweh spoke with one another, and Yahweh listened and heard them. So a scroll of remembrance was written before Him regarding those who feared Yahweh and honored His name.

17 "They will be Mine," says Yahweh of Hosts, "on the day when I prepare My treasured possession. And I will spare them as a man spares his own son who serves him. 18 So you will again distinguish between the righteous and the wicked, between those who serve God and those who do not."

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The day is coming, hot like a furnace. For those who fear God, the sun of righteousness will rise, and they will jump like calves let out of the barn. Remember Moses, watch for Elijah. And then the Old Testament goes quiet.

THE DAY OF YAHWEH // ZEPHANIAH 1:7–18; 1 THESSALONIANS 5:1–11; 2 PETER 3:8–13

1 "For behold, the day is coming, burning like a furnace, when all the arrogant and every evildoer will be stubble; the day is coming when I will set them ablaze," says Yahweh of Hosts. "Not a root or branch will be left to them."

2 "But for you who fear My name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings, and you will go out and leap like calves from the stall. 3 Then you will trample the wicked, for they will be ashes un-

- **MAL 3:16 [NOTABLE]** When most people had stopped caring, a few friends kept talking about God. He was listening, and He wrote their names down.
- **MAL 3:16 [NOTE]** A SCROLL OF REMEMBRANCE. Persian kings kept books of memorable deeds, Esther 6:1 to 2. God keeps one too. This verse is the narrator speaking, so it prints black.
- **MAL 4:1 [PROPHECY]** The day would come burning like a furnace and the wicked would be stubble → STILL TO COME
- **MAL 4:1 [TEXT]** HEBREW NUMBERS. The Hebrew Bible has only three chapters here. Malachi 4:1 to 6 in this Bible is 3:19 to 24 in the Hebrew.
- **MAL 4:2 [PROPHECY]** The sun of righteousness would rise with healing in its wings → LK 1:78-79 · MEDIUM p.1647
- **MAL 4:2 [NOTE]** HEALING IN ITS WINGS. Charles Wesley borrowed this line for Hark! The Herald Angels Sing: Risen with healing in His wings.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES GOD SPEAKING

der the soles of your feet on the day I am preparing," says Yahweh of Hosts.

4 "Remember the law of My servant Moses, the statutes and ordinances I commanded him for all Israel at Horeb.

5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and awesome Day of Yahweh. 6 And he will turn the hearts of the fathers to their children, and the hearts of the children to their fathers. Otherwise, I will come and strike the land with a curse."

THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS ELIJAH?

The Promise

MALACHI 4:4 TO 6 · 2 KINGS 2:11 · JOHN 1:21

THE PROMISE

Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and awesome Day of Yahweh, 4:5. He will turn the hearts of fathers and children back to each other, 4:6.

WHY ELIJAH?

Elijah never died. A chariot of fire came between him and Elisha, and a whirlwind took him up to heaven, 2 Kings 2:11. So people expected him to come back. Sirach 48:10 says he is ready to come and turn the heart of the father to the son.

THEY ASKED JOHN

Priests from Jerusalem asked John the Baptist, Are you Elijah? He said, I am not, John 1:21.

Every View

MATTHEW 11:14 · MATTHEW 17:3 TO 13 · LUKE 1:17 · REVELATION 11:3 TO 6

VIEW 1: JOHN THE BAPTIST

Jesus said it plainly: if you are willing to accept it, he is the Elijah who was to come, Matthew 11:14, and Elijah has already come, 17:12 to 13. The angel said John would go in the spirit and power of Elijah, Luke 1:17. John even dressed like Elijah, 2 Kings 1:8 and Matthew 3:4.

WHY JOHN SAID NO

Most say John was not Elijah come back in person, but he did Elijah's job in Elijah's spirit.

VIEW 2: ELIJAH STILL TO COME

Jesus also said Elijah does indeed come, and he will restore all things, Matthew 17:11. Many believe Elijah will come again before Jesus returns, maybe as one of the two witnesses, who shut the sky so that no rain will fall, Revelation 11:3 to 6, like Elijah, 1 Kings 17:1.

ON THE MOUNTAIN

Malachi ends with Moses and Elijah, and both appeared with Jesus on the mountain, Matthew 17:3.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God sends a messenger first to turn hearts back. See Elijah's Whirlwind, 2 Kings, p.603.

THE BIG QUESTION

THE 400 SILENT YEARS

No Prophet in the Land

MALACHI 4:5 · 1 MACCABEES 4:46 · 1 MACCABEES 9:27 · 1 MACCABEES 14:41

THE LAST PROPHET

Malachi spoke about 430 BC. The next prophet in the Bible is John the Baptist, about AD 28. That gap, about 450 years, is often called the 400 silent years.

NO PROPHET

Jewish writers knew it. 1 Maccabees says the people stored the stones of a defiled altar until a prophet should come, 4:46. It speaks of great distress such as had not been since prophets stopped appearing, 9:27. Simon was made leader until a trustworthy prophet should arise, 14:41.

THE RABBIS

The Talmud says that after Haggai,

- **MAL 4:4 [NOTE]** MOSES AND ELIJAH. The law and the prophets, the two men named at the end of the Old Testament. Both stood with Jesus on the mountain, Matthew 17:3.
- **MAL 4:5 [PROPHECY]** Forerunner in the spirit of Elijah → MT 11:14; MT 17:10-13; LK 1:17 p.1565
- **MAL 4:5 [ALLUDED TO]** The New Testament refers to this → LK 1:17 p.1644
- **MAL 4:5 [NOTE]** ELIJAH. He was taken up to heaven without dying, 2 Kings 2:11. See Who Is Elijah? and Elijah's Whirlwind, 2 Kings, p.603.
- **MAL 4:6 [PROPHECY]** Forerunner would turn many to righteousness → LK 1:16-17 p.1644
- **MAL 4:6 [NOTE]** THE LAST WORD. The last word of the Old Testament is curse. When Jews read Malachi aloud in the synagogue, they read 4:5 again after it, so the reading ends with hope.

Zechariah and Malachi, the Holy Spirit departed from Israel. Josephus said the exact line of prophets stopped after the Persian king Artaxerxes.

What Happened

DANIEL 11 · JOHN 10:22 · GALATIANS 4:4

PERSIA TO GREECE

Alexander the Great took the land in 332 BC. See Alexander the Great, Zechariah, p.1499. After he died, the Greek kings of Egypt and Syria fought over it for about 150 years, the wars Daniel 11 describes.

THE GREEK BIBLE

In Egypt, Jews translated the Scriptures into Greek, starting with the five books of Moses about 250 BC. Most of the apostles' quotes come from it.

THE MACCABEES

In 167 BC the Syrian king Antiochus IV set up pagan worship in the temple. The Maccabee family led a revolt and cleansed the temple in 164 BC, 1 Maccabees 4:52 to 59. Jews still remember it at Hanukkah, the Feast of Dedication Jesus went to, John 10:22.

ROME

The Roman general Pompey took Jerusalem in 63 BC, and Rome made Herod king in 40 BC.

NOT REALLY SILENT

Synagogues spread, the Pharisees and Sadducees began, and scribes copied the Dead Sea Scrolls. The stage was being set: when the time had fully come, God sent His Son, Galatians 4:4.

BETWEEN THE TESTAMENTS · THE BOOKS SOME BIBLES ADD

About the Apocrypha

The Truth About the "Extra Books"

WHAT THEY ARE	Mostly Jewish books written from about 300 BC to AD 135. Most come from the quiet years between Malachi and Jesus.
HOW MANY	The 1611 King James Bible printed 14 of them between the Testaments. Catholic Bibles have 7 extra books plus extra chapters in Esther and Daniel. Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles have more.
LANGUAGES	Hebrew, Aramaic and Greek.
IN THIS BIBLE	Not included. This Bible has the 66 books. This section tells you what the other books are, so you are never caught off guard.
OUR VIEW	The same as Martin Luther's: good and useful to read, but not equal to Holy Scripture.

Why This Section Is Here

Pick up a Catholic Bible and you will find books like Tobit and Judith between Nehemiah and Job. Pick up an Ethiopian Bible and you will find the Book of Enoch. Go online and someone will tell you these books were taken out of the Bible to hide secrets from you.

So here is the whole story. Where these books came from, who reads them and why, what each one says, and why this Bible, like Martin Luther, says they are good to read but are not Scripture.

The 400 Quiet Years

Malachi was the last prophet of the Old Testament, about 430 BC. After him, about 400 years go by with no new prophet. The Jews themselves said so. 1 Maccabees, written about 100 BC, says three times that there was no prophet in its day, 4:46, 9:27 and 14:41. About AD 95 the Jewish historian Josephus wrote that books written after the time of Artaxerxes, Nehemiah's king, were not trusted like the earlier ones, because the line of prophets had stopped.

The years were quiet for prophets, but not for history. The Persians ruled until Alexander the Great swept through in 332 BC. After that, Greek became the language of trade and government all over the world. In Judea most people spoke Aramaic, and scholars still read and wrote Hebrew. Alexander's generals split his empire, and the Jews were ruled first from Egypt and then from Syria.

In 167 BC the Syrian king Antiochus IV outlawed the Jewish faith and set up an altar to Zeus in the temple. A priest named Mattathias and his sons, the Maccabees, fought back. In 164 BC they took back the temple and dedicated it again. That is the start of Hanukkah. Then in 63 BC Rome took Jerusalem, and the stage was set for Jesus.

Almost all of the extra books were written in these years. They are real windows into the world Jesus was born into. But they came after the prophets had gone quiet.

The Septuagint: the Greek Old Testament

So many Jews lived in Egypt and spoke Greek that they needed their Bible in Greek. About 250 BC, Jewish scholars in Alexandria began translating the five books of Moses. The rest of the Old Testament was translated over the next hundred years or more. A legend said 72 scholars did the work, so the Greek Bible is called the Septuagint, from the Latin word for seventy, and it is written LXX.

The early church spoke Greek, so the Septuagint became its Old Testament. Over time, Greek copies also carried other Jewish books. The oldest full Greek Bibles we have are Christian books from the 300s and 400s AD, like Codex Sinaiticus. They do not even agree with each other on which extra books to include. Many scholars now doubt that the Jews ever had a separate, bigger Greek Bible list. The extra books simply traveled with the Greek copies.

Apocrypha or Deuterocanonical?

The same books go by different names, and the names tell you what each church believes about them.

APOCRYPHA. This Greek word means hidden or set apart. About AD 391 Jerome, who translated the Bible into Latin, used it for books that were not in the Hebrew Bible. Protestants still call them the Apocrypha.

DEUTEROCANONICAL. This means second canon, a second list. A Catholic scholar named Sixtus of Siena first used the word in 1566. The Catholic Church made the list official at the Council of Trent on April 8, 1546. Earlier councils, like Carthage in 397, had already listed them. To Catholics they are fully Scripture, only added to the list later.

THE READABLE BOOKS. Many Orthodox teachers call them the anagignoskomena, a Greek word for the books that are read. They are honored and read in church, but many Orthodox put them a step below the Hebrew books.

PSEUDEPIGRAPHA. This means falsely titled. It is used for books written under the name of a famous person who lived long before, like Enoch. Protestants and Catholics put 1 Enoch and Jubilees in this group. The Ethiopian church counts them as Scripture.

Were They Taken Out of the Bible?

Not the way the internet tells it. Here is what happened.

LUTHER, 1534. In his German Bible, Luther moved the extra books out of the Old Testament into their own section, with this heading: 'Apocrypha. These are books which are not held equal to the Holy Scriptures, and yet are useful and good to read.' He did not throw them away. He put them in their place.

THE KING JAMES BIBLE, 1611. The first King James Bible printed 14 of these books between the Testaments, under the title Apocrypha. The Church of England said in its Articles of Religion that they are read for example of life and instruction

of manners, but not used to establish any doctrine. So even in 1611 they were not treated as Scripture.

LEFT OUT OVER TIME. Printers often left the section out to make Bibles smaller and cheaper. In 1826 the British and Foreign Bible Society stopped paying for Bibles that had it. When the Revised Version came out, its Apocrypha was printed on its own in 1895. Nobody stole them. Protestants never counted them as Scripture, and over time they simply stopped printing them.

Jesus Never Quoted Them as Scripture

Jesus and the writers of the New Testament quote the Old Testament around 300 times. They say It is written, or Scripture says, or as the prophet said. Not once do they quote one of the 14 Apocrypha books that way. The closest the New Testament comes to any extra book is Jude, below.

Jesus named the parts of His Bible in Luke 24:44: the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms. Those are the three parts of the Hebrew Bible, the same books as our 39. In Matthew 23:35 He spoke of the blood of the prophets from Abel to Zechariah. Abel is killed in Genesis, and a Zechariah is stoned in 2 Chronicles 24:20 to 21, the last book of the Hebrew Bible. Many scholars think He meant from the first page to the last.

To be fair, here is what the New Testament does with the extra books.

ECHOES. Some lines sound like them. Hebrews 11:35 speaks of people tortured who would not accept release, to gain a better resurrection. Many think of the mother and seven sons in 2 Maccabees 7. Hebrews 1:3 calls Jesus the radiance of God's glory, and Wisdom 7:26 calls wisdom a reflection of eternal light. Romans 1 and Wisdom 13 to 14 both say idol makers have no excuse. Paul and the writer of Hebrews knew these books, but they never call them Scripture.

AN EVENT. John 10:22 says Jesus was in the temple at the Feast of Dedication. That is Hanukkah, from 1 Maccabees 4. Being at a feast is not quoting a book.

JUDE AND ENOCH. Jude 14 to 15 quotes 1 Enoch 1:9 and says Enoch prophesied. This is the closest the New Testament comes. But 1 Enoch is not one of the 14 books, and quoting one true line does not make a whole book Scripture. Paul quoted Greek poets too, in Acts 17:28, 1 Corinthians 15:33 and Titus 1:12, and nobody thinks their poems belong in the Bible.

The Prophecy Test

God gave Israel a test for anyone who claimed to speak for Him. If what he says does not come true, the LORD has not spoken it, Deuteronomy 18:21 to 22. And God points to prophecy as His own signature: I declare the end from the beginning, Isaiah 46:9 to 10.

The editors of this Bible counted every prophecy and foreshadow in the 66 books and in the extra books. The difference is huge.

THE 66 BOOKS	1,051 prophecies and foreshadows. More than 400 point to Jesus. About 116 others came true in history, like the fall of Babylon. About 195 are about the end of the age and are still waiting to be fulfilled.
THE EXTRA BOOKS	One that points ahead to something that happened after it was written: Wisdom of Solomon 2:12 to 20.
WHERE THE EXTRA BOOKS FIT	1 and 2 Maccabees record 24 prophecies from the 66 books coming true: 19 from Daniel 8, 9 and 11, plus Ezekiel 25, Obadiah 18 and Zechariah 9. The extra books are where the Bible's predictions come true, not where the predictions come from.

Where the Prophecy Actually Is

The extra books are not empty of the future. Here is every place they look ahead, and what happened.

WISDOM 2:12 TO 20. A righteous man calls God his Father and is mocked: if he is God's son, God will help him. Then he is condemned to a shameful death. At the cross the leaders said, He trusts in God, let God deliver Him now, Matthew 27:43. Many Christians see Jesus here. To be honest, the writer may have meant any righteous person, and Matthew's words are closest to Psalm 22:8, written by David about 1,000 years before Jesus.

TOBIT 13 TO 14. Tobit foretells the fall of Nineveh, the exile and the return. But Tobit was written about 400 years after Nineveh fell, so the writer already knew. He also sees a Jerusalem built of sapphires and emeralds, and all nations turning to God. That is still future, and it is borrowed from Isaiah 54:11 to 12 and Isaiah 60. Revelation 21 shows the same city.

BARUCH 4:36 TO 5:9. Jerusalem's children come home from east and west, and the mountains are made low. This echoes Isaiah 40:4. The return from Babylon had already happened when it was written. The final gathering of God's people is still future, and Isaiah said it first.

SIRACH 48:10. Elijah will come to turn the hearts of fathers to their children. This repeats Malachi 4:5 to 6. Jesus said it was fulfilled in John the Baptist, Matthew 11:14 and 17:12.

WISDOM 3:7 TO 8 AND JUDITH 16:17. The righteous will judge the nations, and God will punish the enemies of His people with fire and worms on the day of judgment. These are end times hopes that are still waiting. They come from Daniel 7:22 and Isaiah 66:24. Paul says the same in 1 Corinthians 6:2.

2 ESDRAS 7:28 TO 29 AND 11 TO 13. Visions of God's son the Messiah, an eagle that stands for Rome, and a man rising from the sea. But this book was written about AD 100, after Jesus came. It says the Messiah will reign 400 years and then die with everyone else. That did not happen, and it is not what the Bible teaches. The eagle vision even says it is reworking Daniel's fourth kingdom, 2 Esdras 12:11.

1 ENOCH 1:9. The Lord comes with ten thousands of His holy ones to judge. Jude quotes it, and it is still waiting for the return of Jesus. It agrees with Zechariah 14:5

and Revelation 19. Other parts of 1 Enoch tell Israel's history up to the Maccabees as if it were prophecy, but those parts were written in the 160s BC, after the events.

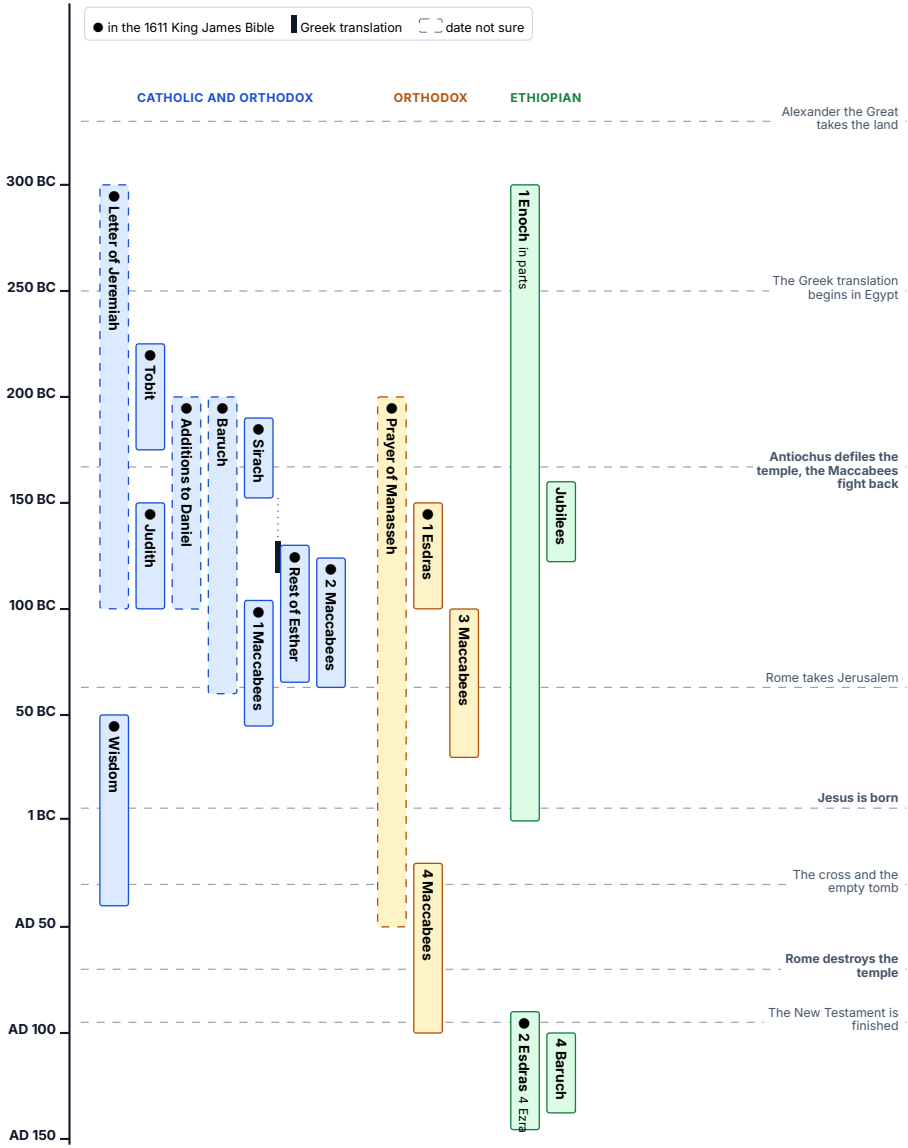
JUBILEES 23. A day will come when people return to God's law and live close to a thousand years. Still waiting, and the book was written about 160 to 150 BC.

THE PATTERN	Almost every look ahead in the extra books does one of three things. It was written after the event, it repeats a prophecy from the 66 books, or it never came true.
THE COUNT	Of the 195 end times prophecies still waiting, every one we counted is in the 66 books. The extra books add no new prophecy of their own that has come true, except possibly Wisdom 2.

TIMELINE

When the Extra Books Were Written

In the quiet years after Malachi, and some after Jesus



HOW TO READ IT Time runs down the page. Each bar shows about when a book was written, not when its story is set. Dashed bars mean scholars are not sure.

AFTER MALACHI Every one of these books was written after Malachi, about 430 BC, when the Jews said the prophets had gone quiet.

THE DOT A dot before a name means the book was one of the 14 printed between the Testaments in the 1611 King James Bible.

NOT SHOWN Psalm 151, printed at the end of Psalms in this Bible. The Ethiopian Meqabyan books, whose dates no one knows.

Dates are approximate and many are debated. Sirach has two marks: the Hebrew book, and the Greek translation by Ben Sira's grandson.

The Books One by One

Here is every book from the 1611 King James Apocrypha, plus the extra books in Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles. Each one says when it was written and which churches read it as Scripture. Catholic Bibles have the books marked Catholic.

1 Esdras

WRITTEN	About 150 to 100 BC, in Greek.
WHO READS IT	Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles. Catholics keep it in an appendix, called 3 Esdras.
SET IN	About 622 to 458 BC.

Esdras is the Greek form of Ezra. This book retells the end of 2 Chronicles, most of Ezra and part of Nehemiah, from King Josiah's Passover to Ezra reading the law.

THE NEW PART. Its one big new story is a contest between three bodyguards of King Darius. Which is strongest: wine, the king or women? The third, Zerubbabel, adds truth and wins. Truth is great and stronger than all things, 4:35. As his prize, he asks Darius to let the Jews rebuild Jerusalem.

WORTH KNOWING. The Jewish historian Josephus used this book when he told the story of the return. But it mixes up the order of the Persian kings, and the contest story does not appear in Ezra.

2 Esdras

WRITTEN	Chapters 3 to 14 about AD 100, by a Jewish writer. Chapters 1, 2, 15 and 16 were added later by Christians. The full book survives only in Latin. Chapters 3 to 14 also survive in Syriac, Ethiopic and other languages.
WHO READS IT	The Ethiopian Bible counts chapters 3 to 14 as Ezra Sutuel, from 3:1, where Ezra is also called Salathiel. Russian Orthodox Bibles print it as 3 Esdras. Catholics keep it in an appendix as 4 Esdras.
SET IN	557 BC, thirty years after Jerusalem fell, 3:1.

Ezra sits in Babylon and argues with God. Why did He let wicked Babylon destroy His people? Ezra has seven visions, and the angel Uriel answers him in the first three. Babylon is really a code name for Rome, which had just burned the temple in AD 70.

WORTH KNOWING. It is a cry of grief, and a lot like Job. The old Latin prayer for the dead, Eternal rest grant them, O Lord, and let perpetual light shine on them, comes from 2 Esdras 2:34 to 35.

THE PROBLEM. It was written about AD 100, 500 years after Ezra. It says the Messiah will reign 400 years and then die, 7:28 to 29, which the Bible never teaches. And it says Ezra rewrote the whole lost Bible by dictating 94 books in 40 days, 24 for everyone and 70 kept secret, 14:44 to 46.

Tobit

WRITTEN	About 225 to 175 BC, probably in Aramaic. Pieces in Aramaic and Hebrew were found in the Dead Sea Scrolls.
WHO READS IT	Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles.
SET IN	Nineveh, after 722 BC.

Tobit is a faithful Jew carried off to Assyria. He buries the dead and gives to the poor, but he goes blind when bird droppings fall in his eyes. His son Tobias travels to collect a debt, with a guide who is really the angel Raphael. Along the way Tobias marries Sarah, whose first seven husbands were each killed on the wedding night by a demon named Asmodeus. The smoke of a fish's heart and liver drives the demon away, and the fish's gall heals Tobit's eyes.

WORTH KNOWING. It has a version of the Golden Rule: What you hate, do not do to anyone, 4:15. It shows a family that prays, gives and stays faithful far from home.

THE PROBLEMS. Tobit says he was young when the northern tribes broke away from David's family, 1:4. That was 930 BC, about 200 years before he was carried off. It calls Sennacherib the son of Shalmaneser, 1:15, but his father was Sargon II. And it says giving to the poor saves from death and purges away every sin, 12:9. Protestants say only Jesus' blood does that, 1 John 1:7. Catholics read it as showing how love and repentance go together.

Judith

WRITTEN	About 150 to 100 BC, probably in Hebrew. Only the Greek survives.
WHO READS IT	Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles.
SET IN	Nobody can say. The book mixes up centuries.

An army led by the general Holofernes surrounds the Jewish town of Bethulia. The leaders are ready to give up. Then Judith, a godly widow, dresses in her best, walks into the enemy camp, wins Holofernes' trust, and cuts off his head while he lies drunk. The army runs.

WORTH KNOWING. It is a story of courage and prayer, a lot like Jael in Judges 4 to 5. Judith's song, chapter 16, is beautiful.

THE PROBLEMS. The first verse calls Nebuchadnezzar king of the Assyrians, ruling in Nineveh. He was king of Babylon, and Nineveh had already fallen before he became king. No one has found Bethulia. And Judith wins by lying, 11:5 to 19. Many Catholic scholars today read it as a story meant to teach, not as history.

The Rest of Esther

WRITTEN	About 130 to 78 BC, in Greek. A note at the end says it was brought to Egypt in the fourth year of a King Ptolemy.
WHO READS IT	Catholic and Orthodox Bibles, and the Ethiopian Bible.
SET IN	Persia, about 483 to 473 BC.

The Hebrew book of Esther never mentions God by name. The Greek version adds 107 verses in six places: a dream of Mordecai and what it means, the king's two letters, the prayers of Mordecai and Esther, and Esther's visit to the king. With them, God is named over and over.

WORTH KNOWING. The prayers are moving. Esther prays, Help me, for I am alone and have no helper but You, Rest of Esther 14:3.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE. These verses were added to a finished book, about 300 years later. The Hebrew Esther shows God working quietly behind the scenes. The Greek writer wanted to say it out loud. Jerome noticed they were not in the Hebrew and moved them to the end of Esther.

Wisdom of Solomon

WRITTEN	About 50 BC to AD 40, in Greek, probably in Alexandria, Egypt.
WHO READS IT	Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles.
SET IN	No story. It is a book of teaching.

The writer speaks as if he were King Solomon, 9:7 to 8. But Solomon did not write it. It was written in Greek about 900 years after Solomon, and it uses ideas from Greek thinkers, like the four virtues of self control, good sense, justice and courage, 8:7. Writing in a famous person's voice was a common style back then. Even an early Christian list, the Muratorian Fragment, says it was written by friends of Solomon in his honor.

WORTH KNOWING. Chapter 2 is the one look ahead in the extra books that many Christians see fulfilled in Jesus, a righteous man mocked as God's son and condemned to a shameful death. Chapter 3 begins, The souls of the righteous are in the hand of God. Chapters 13 to 15 mock idols the way Isaiah 44 does.

THE PROBLEM. It says God made the world out of formless matter, 11:17, an idea from Greek thinkers. Hebrews 11:3 says the world was not made out of things that can be seen.

Sirach

WRITTEN	About 190 to 180 BC, in Hebrew, in Jerusalem. The writer's grandson translated it into Greek in Egypt after 132 BC.
WHO READS IT	Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles.
ALSO CALLED	Ecclesiasticus, and the Wisdom of Ben Sira.

Think of it as Proverbs part two. Its writer tells us his name, Jesus son of Eleazar son of Sira, 50:27. Jesus was a common name, the Greek form of Yeshua. He was a teacher in Jerusalem, and his 51 chapters give wise advice on friends, money, work, the tongue, parents, doctors and the fear of the Lord.

READ IN THE EARLY CHURCH. Christians read it so much that its Latin name, Ecclesiasticus, means the church book. The rabbis quoted it too, even though it was not in their Bible. Chapters 44 to 50, Let us now praise famous men, walk through Israel's heroes from Enoch to the high priest Simon, a lot like Hebrews 11.

FOUND AGAIN. The Hebrew was lost for centuries. Then pages turned up in an old Cairo storeroom in 1896, and a scroll of it was found at Masada in 1964.

THE PROBLEMS. Its grandson admits his translation may not be perfect, in his foreword. And some lines about women are harsh, like 25:24 and 42:14. Ben Sira himself does not claim to be a prophet. He is a wise teacher.



The room in the casemate wall of Masada where the Ben Sira scroll was found. The sign reads, in Hebrew and English, Spot where the Ben Sira scroll was found. Photo by Wctrenchard, CC BY SA 4.0.

Baruch and the Letter of Jeremiah

WRITTEN	Baruch: about 200 to 60 BC, maybe in Hebrew. The Letter: about 300 to 100 BC. A piece of it in Greek was found in Dead Sea Scroll Cave 7.
WHO READS IT	Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles. Catholic Bibles print the Letter as Baruch chapter 6.
SET IN	Babylon, 582 BC, five years after Jerusalem burned, 1:2.

Baruch was Jeremiah's real secretary, Jeremiah 36:4. This book claims to be his letter from Babylon. It has a prayer confessing Israel's sins, a lot like Daniel 9, a poem saying God's wisdom is His law, and words of comfort for Jerusalem.

THE LETTER OF JEREMIAH. It warns the exiles not to worship the idols of Babylon. They cannot speak, see or save. Bats and birds sit on their heads. It sounds a lot like Jeremiah 10.

THE PROBLEMS. Baruch borrows heavily from Daniel's prayer in Daniel 9, which is set in 539 BC, more than 40 years after Baruch says he wrote. The real Jeremiah 29 is a letter to the exiles, but this is not that letter. Many scholars think different writers put the book together.

The Additions to Daniel

WRITTEN	About 200 to 100 BC. They survive in Greek.
WHO READS IT	Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles. Catholic Bibles print them as Daniel 3:24 to 90, Daniel 13 and Daniel 14.
THE THREE	The Prayer of Azariah and the Song of the Three Young Men, Susanna, and Bel and the Dragon.

THE SONG OF THE THREE. A long prayer and song inside the fiery furnace of Daniel 3. Azariah, who is Abednego, confesses Israel's sins, and then all three sing, Bless the Lord, all works of the Lord. Churches still sing it as the Benedicite.

SUSANNA. Two old judges try to force a godly wife named Susanna to sleep with them, and when she refuses they accuse her of adultery. Young Daniel questions them one at a time: under what tree did you see it? One says a mastic tree, the other a holm oak, and their lie falls apart. It is often called one of the first detective stories.

BEL AND THE DRAGON. Daniel proves the priests of the idol Bel are eating its food by spreading ashes on the floor. In the morning there are footprints. Then he kills a dragon the Babylonians worship by feeding it cakes of tar, fat and hair, and he is thrown to the lions again. The prophet Habakkuk is carried by an angel by his hair to bring him lunch.

THE PROBLEM. None of these are in the Hebrew Daniel. Around AD 240 a Christian scholar named Julius Africanus pointed out that the Susanna story is built on Greek puns, so it was likely written in Greek, not by Daniel.

The Prayer of Manasseh

WRITTEN	Sometime between about 200 BC and AD 50, likely in Greek.
WHO READS IT	Orthodox Bibles. The Ethiopian Bible prints it inside 2 Chronicles. Catholics keep it in an appendix.
SET IN	Sometime about 680 to 648 BC, King Manasseh in chains.

Manasseh was Judah's most evil king. 2 Chronicles 33:12 to 13 says that when the Assyrians dragged him away, he humbled himself and prayed, and God brought him home. Verse 18 says his prayer was written in the records of the kings of Israel. This 15 verse prayer was written to fill that gap.

WORTH KNOWING. It is one of the most beautiful prayers of repentance ever written. I have sinned more than the sand of the sea. I bend the knee of my heart. It shows that no one is too far gone for God's mercy, which is true. 1 John 1:9.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE. The real prayer was lost. This one was written hundreds of years later to imagine what he said. It is a good prayer, but it is not Manasseh's.

1 Maccabees

WRITTEN	About 100 BC, in Hebrew. Only the Greek survives.
WHO READS IT	Catholic and Orthodox Bibles. The Ethiopian Bible has the Meqabyan books instead.
SET IN	175 to 134 BC.

The best history book of the quiet years. Antiochus IV outlaws circumcision and the Sabbath and sets up the abomination on the temple altar in 167 BC, 1:54. The old priest Mattathias refuses to sacrifice to idols and flees to the hills with his five sons. His son Judas, called Maccabeus, the hammer, leads the fight, and his brothers Jonathan and Simon follow.

THE ROOT OF HANUKKAH. In 164 BC Judas cleans the temple and dedicates a new altar with eight days of celebration, and the people decide to keep the feast every year, 4:52 to 59. That is the Feast of Dedication, Hanukkah, and Jesus was in the temple for it, John 10:22. The story of one day of oil lasting eight days is not in Maccabees. It comes from the Talmud, written centuries later.

24 PROPHECIES COME TRUE. Daniel 8 and 11 described a proud king who would stop the daily sacrifice and set up an abomination in the temple, more than 350 years before it happened by the traditional date. 1 and 2 Maccabees record it happening, 24 fulfillments in all from Daniel, Ezekiel, Obadiah and Zechariah. Even if you take the latest date critics give for Daniel, Zechariah 9:13 still names Greece, and most scholars date it before the Maccabees.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE. It is careful history, and it never claims to be more. It says there was no prophet in its day and that the people were waiting for one, 4:46, 9:27 and 14:41.



A silver four drachma coin of Antiochus IV. The back reads King Antiochus, God Manifest, Bringer of Victory. Photo by Classical Numismatic Group, CC BY SA 2.5.

2 Maccabees

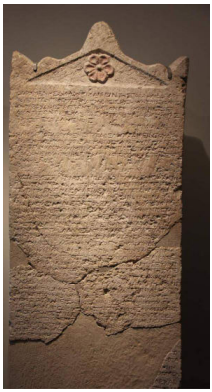
WRITTEN	About 124 to 63 BC, in Greek. It is a short version of a five book history by Jason of Cyrene, 2:23.
WHO READS IT	Catholic and Orthodox Bibles.
SET IN	About 180 to 161 BC.

It covers some of the same years as 1 Maccabees, with more miracles and more preaching. A Syrian official named Heliodorus tries to rob the temple treasury and is beaten back by a heavenly horseman, chapter 3. A stone letter naming Heliodorus, dated 178 BC, is in the Israel Museum.

THE MARTYRS. An old teacher named Eleazar dies rather than pretend to eat pork, chapter 6. A mother watches her seven sons die one by one rather than break God's law, and then dies herself, chapter 7. Their faith in the resurrection is strong: the King of the world will raise us up to everlasting life, 7:9. The mother also says God made heaven and earth from things that did not exist, 7:28.

2 MACCABEES 12 AND PURGATORY. After a battle, Judas finds idol charms under the clothes of his dead soldiers. He takes up an offering and sends it to Jerusalem for a sin offering, so that they might be set free from their sin, 12:39 to 46. The Catholic Church points to this passage as support for praying for the dead, and for its teaching on purgatory, which was defined at the Councils of Lyon in 1274 and Florence in 1439. Protestants answer that the passage does not mention purgatory or a place of cleansing fire, that these men died in the sin of idolatry, and that the book itself is not Scripture. Hebrews 9:27 says it is appointed for man to die once, and after that the judgment.

THE WRITER'S OWN WORDS. He ends, If it is well told, that is what I wanted. If it is poorly done, it was the best I could do, 15:38. A prophet speaking for God does not talk like that.



The Heliodorus Stele in the Israel Museum, Jerusalem. King Seleucus IV writes to his minister Heliodorus, 178 BC. Photo by Gary Todd.

Extra Books in Orthodox Bibles

Orthodox Bibles have the books above, plus these. Most leave out 2 Esdras, and the list differs a little from church to church.

3 Maccabees

WRITTEN	About 100 to 30 BC, in Greek, probably in Egypt.
WHO READS IT	Orthodox Bibles.
SET IN	About 217 BC.

Despite its name, it is not about the Maccabees. It is set 50 years before them. King Ptolemy IV of Egypt wins a battle at Raphia in 217 BC and tries to walk into the Holy of Holies in Jerusalem. God strikes him down. Back in Egypt he takes revenge by rounding up the Jews to be trampled by drunken elephants. Two angels appear, and the elephants turn on the king's own soldiers.

WORTH KNOWING. The battle of Raphia really happened. The rest is a story of God protecting His people far from home, a lot like Esther. Josephus tells a similar elephant story, but he puts it under a later king, Ptolemy VIII.

4 Maccabees

WRITTEN	About AD 20 to 100, in Greek.
WHO READS IT	Printed in an appendix in Greek Orthodox Bibles. It is in Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Alexandrinus.
SET IN	A sermon about the martyrs of 2 Maccabees 6 to 7.

It reads like a speech. Its big idea is that reason, guided by God's law, can master the passions. Its proof is Eleazar, the mother and her seven sons, who stayed faithful under torture.

WORTH KNOWING. Early Christians loved this book in times of persecution. It praises the martyrs' blood as a ransom for the nation, 17:21 to 22, an idea the New Testament says only Jesus fulfills, Mark 10:45. It speaks of the souls of the righteous living with God, but says little about the body rising.

PSALM 151. A short psalm in David's voice, about being the youngest son, keeping sheep and beating Goliath. It is in the Greek Bible and in a Hebrew Psalms scroll

from the Dead Sea, but not in the Hebrew Bible, which ends at 150. This Bible prints it in brackets at the end of Psalms, so you can read it there.

THE ODES. Greek Bibles often add a set of 14 songs after the Psalms, used in worship. Most come from the Bible itself, like the songs of Moses, Hannah and Mary. Others are the Prayer of Manasseh and the songs of the three young men in the furnace.

Extra Books in the Ethiopian Bible

The Ethiopian Orthodox Tewahedo Church has the biggest Bible in the world, 81 books. Ethiopia was far from Rome and Constantinople, and it kept books the rest of the church let go. It counts 1 Esdras and 2 Esdras, the Prayer of Manasseh inside 2 Chronicles, and most of the books above, plus these.

1 Enoch

WRITTEN	In parts, from about 300 BC to near the time of Jesus, in Aramaic. The full book survives only in Ge'ez, the old Ethiopian language.
WHO READS IT	The Ethiopian Bible. Pieces were found in the Dead Sea Scrolls.
SET IN	Before the Flood, Genesis 5.

Enoch walked with God and was taken, Genesis 5:24. This book claims to be his visions. It tells how 200 fallen angels called Watchers came down, married women and fathered giants, the Nephilim of Genesis 6:4. It describes tours of heaven and the place of judgment, the movements of the sun and moon, and a figure called the Son of Man who will judge the world.

WORTH KNOWING. Jude 14 to 15 quotes 1 Enoch 1:9 and says Enoch prophesied. 2 Peter 2:4 and Jude 6 speak of angels kept in chains for judgment, which sounds like 1 Enoch too. Many early Christians read it. Ethiopia kept the only complete copy alive.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE. Enoch did not write it. It was written thousands of years after him, by several writers over 300 years. Jews never put it in their Bible, and Jesus never quoted it. Jude quoting one line shows that line is true, not that the whole book is.



The first page of 1 Enoch in Ge'ez, the old church language of Ethiopia, from a book copied about 1500, British Library Oriental MS 485. Public domain.

Jubilees

WRITTEN	About 160 to 150 BC, in Hebrew. Pieces of about 15 copies were found in the Dead Sea Scrolls. The full book survives in Ge'ez.
WHO READS IT	The Ethiopian Bible.
SET IN	Mount Sinai. An angel tells Moses the story from creation to the Exodus.

It retells Genesis and the start of Exodus, and it divides all of history into jubilees, blocks of 49 years. It teaches a calendar of 364 days, so the feasts always fall on the same day of the week. It says the patriarchs kept the law of Moses long before Sinai.

WORTH KNOWING. It shows what Jewish teachers in the time of the Maccabees believed about angels, the calendar and the law. The people of the Dead Sea Scrolls read it a lot.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE. It adds many details Genesis does not have, and it was written more than 1,000 years after Moses.

1, 2 and 3 Meqabyan

WRITTEN	No one knows. Many scholars think in Ethiopia, centuries after Jesus. They survive only in Ge'ez.
WHO READS IT	The Ethiopian Bible, in place of the Greek 1 and 2 Maccabees.
SET IN	Not clear.

Meqabyan is the Ethiopian word for Maccabees, but these are different books. The first tells of a man named Maccabeus from the tribe of Benjamin and his sons, who stand up to a cruel king. The second and third are mostly teaching and warnings, with stories from Israel's past.

WORTH KNOWING. They are treasured in Ethiopia and almost unknown everywhere else. Very few scholars have studied them, and full English translations are new.

4 Baruch

WRITTEN	About AD 100 to 135, after the temple was destroyed.
WHO READS IT	The Ethiopian Bible, as the Rest of the Words of Baruch. Also called the Paralipomena of Jeremiah.
SET IN	The fall of Jerusalem, 586 BC, and the return.

Before Jerusalem falls, Jeremiah sends his friend Abimelech, the Ebed Melech of Jeremiah 38, out to pick figs. Abimelech sits under a tree and falls asleep for 66 years. When he wakes, the figs are still fresh. It is a sign that God keeps His people safe until He brings them home.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE. It was written more than 600 years after Jeremiah, after Jesus, and its ending was shaped by Christians.

THE BROADER ETHIOPIAN LIST. The church also has a broader way of counting to 81 that adds church books to the New Testament: the Sinodos, the Book of the Covenant, an Ethiopian book of Clement and the Didascalia. Its Old Testament can also include Josippon, a history of the Jews. These are kept in their own books and are not printed in the church's Bible. For why some English editions claim 88 books, see the Bonus Section, Why Do Some Bibles Have More Books?

So What Do We Do With Them?

Read them the way Martin Luther said to: useful and good to read, but not equal to Holy Scripture.

READ THEM FOR HISTORY. 1 Maccabees tells you why Jesus was in the temple at Hanukkah and how Daniel's prophecies came true. These books show the world of the Pharisees, the Sadducees and the Roman roads Jesus walked.

READ THEM FOR WISDOM. Sirach has good advice on money, friends and the tongue. The Prayer of Manasseh can teach you how to repent. The martyrs of 2 Maccabees can teach you courage.

DO NOT BUILD DOCTRINE ON THEM. No teaching should stand on a book Jesus never quoted as Scripture, that was not in the Bible of His people, that admits it has no prophet, and that carries no prophecy of its own that came true. If a teaching needs Tobit or 2 Maccabees to stand up, it is standing on sand.

Luther was right. Jesus said the Scriptures testify about Him, John 5:39, and He meant the Law, the Prophets and the Psalms. That is where more than a thousand prophecies wait and come true. Those are the books in your hands. Now turn the page. After 400 quiet years, God is about to speak again.

BOOKS 40 TO 66 · 27 BOOKS · WRITTEN IN GREEK

THE NEW TESTAMENT

The promise kept

BOOKS	27 books: 4 Gospels, 1 book of history, 21 letters and 1 book of prophecy.
WRITTEN	About AD 45 to 95, by apostles of Jesus and their close companions.
LANGUAGE	Koine Greek, the everyday Greek spoken all over the Roman Empire.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	More than 5,800 Greek manuscripts, plus thousands of early copies in Latin, Syriac and Coptic. No other ancient book comes close.
EARLIEST MANUSCRIPT	Papyrus 52, a scrap of John 18, usually dated about AD 125 to 175.
THE LIST OF 27	The churches used these books from the start. In AD 367 Athanasius, a bishop in Egypt, listed the same 27 books we have today.

What Does Testament Mean

Testament is an old word for covenant, a binding promise. The Old Testament is the story of God's covenant with Israel. The New Testament is the new covenant Jeremiah promised in Jeremiah 31:31, sealed by the blood of Jesus. On the night before He died, Jesus lifted the cup and said, This cup is the new covenant in My blood.

Why Four Gospels

Each Gospel writer had a different audience. Matthew wrote for Jewish readers and shows Jesus as the promised King. Mark wrote fast and short, likely for Romans, and shows Jesus as the Servant who acts. Luke, a doctor, wrote a careful history for a Greek reader and shows Jesus as the Savior of everyone. John wrote last and shows Jesus as God in the flesh. Four witnesses, one Jesus. In court, four matching witnesses who each add their own details are more believable than four who repeat the same script.

The Three Oldest Bibles

The next three pages show the three oldest Bibles that still hold most of the New Testament, oldest first: Codex Vaticanus, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Alexandrinus. Older pieces of single books survive on papyrus, like Papyrus 52, but these three held the whole Bible in one book, and they are the copies scholars check first.

400 Quiet Years

Between Malachi and Matthew, about 400 years pass with no new prophet. A lot happens. The Persians hand the world to Alexander the Great, and Greek becomes the language of everything. The Jews translate their Scriptures into Greek. The Maccabees win a war for the temple, which is where Hanukkah comes from. Then Rome takes over in 63 BC. By the time Jesus is born, the roads are Roman, the language is Greek, and the people are waiting for the Messiah. The stage is set.

How It Is Organized

THE GOSPELS	**Matthew, Mark, Luke, John.** Four accounts of the life, death and resurrection of Jesus, built on eyewitness testimony.
HISTORY	**Acts.** How the church spread from Jerusalem to Rome.

PAUL'S LETTERS	**Romans to Philemon.** 13 letters from Paul to churches and friends.
GENERAL LETTERS	**Hebrews to Jude.** 8 letters from other leaders, including Peter, James and John.
PROPHECY	**Revelation.** How the story ends: Jesus wins.

Why We Say Yahweh

God told Moses His personal name in Exodus 3:15. In Hebrew it is spelled YHWH, and it shows up about 6,800 times in the Old Testament. Out of respect, Jewish readers stopped saying it out loud and said Lord instead, so most English Bibles print LORD in capital letters. The Owner's Manual puts His name back. Where you see Yahweh, the Hebrew says YHWH. Where you see Lord, the Hebrew usually says Adonai, which means master. Where you see God, the Hebrew usually says Elohim, the mighty Creator.

Jesus Is Yeshua

Jesus is the English form of the Hebrew name Yeshua. It is the same name as Joshua, the man who led Israel into the promised land. The name means Yahweh saves. That is why the angel says in Matthew 1:21, You are to give Him the name Jesus, because He will save His people from their sins.

Lord in the New Testament

The New Testament was written in Greek. God is Theos and Lord is Kyrios. When Jesus quotes the Old Testament, the Hebrew behind Lord is often YHWH, but the Greek says Lord, so this Bible keeps Lord in the New Testament. When you see Lord in a quote from the Old Testament, you can look up the verse and find Yahweh there.

How This Bible Marks the New Testament

QUOTES. When a New Testament writer quotes the Old Testament, the quoted words are printed in italics. The Old Testament verse is in italics too, so you can see both ends. When a writer only points back to an Old Testament verse without quoting it, you get a note but no italics.

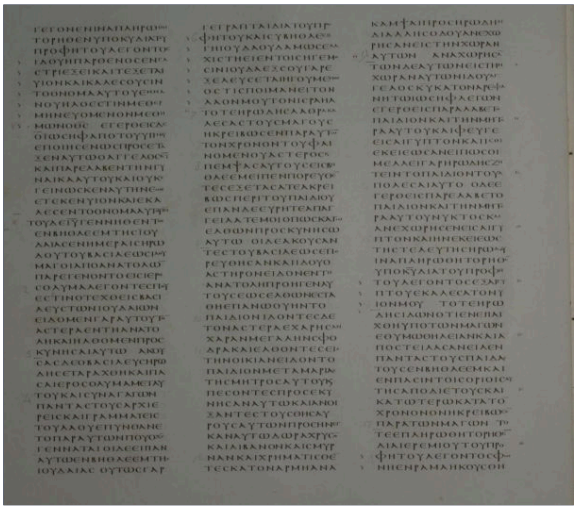
FULFILLED. When a verse fulfills a prophecy, the note at the bottom of the column says FULFILLS and points back to the prophecy.

JESUS SPEAKING. The words of Jesus are printed in red, and so are the words of God the Father. Only the words they actually said are red.

THE FAMILY LINE. Names in the bloodline of Jesus are underlined in red in the family trees in Matthew 1 and Luke 3.

THE THREE OLDEST BIBLES · 1 OF 3 · FIELD NOTES · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

CODEX VATICANUS



Codex Vaticanus, Matthew 1:22 to 2:18, three columns on a page. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A handwritten Bible in Greek, and probably the oldest Bible in the world that still has most of its pages. Codex means a book with pages instead of a scroll. The words are written in three columns on each page, and in two columns in the poetry books like Psalms and Job.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was copied about AD 300 to 350, and many scholars narrow that to about 300 to 325. That makes it a little older than Codex Sinaiticus, or about the same age. Its text of Luke and John matches Papyrus 75, a copy usually dated about AD 175 to 225, almost word for word. So those Gospels were copied with great care.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the Vatican Library in Rome, where it is called Vat. gr. 1209. That is where the name Vaticanus comes from. 759 leaves survive out of about 830. Every page is free to view at digi.vatlib.it.

HOW IT GOT THERE

Nobody knows where it was made. It was probably in the library's first catalogue in 1475, and it is certainly listed in 1481. Napoleon's armies carried it off to Paris after a treaty in 1797, and it came home to Rome in 1815.

WHAT IS IN IT

The Old Testament in Greek, plus Baruch, the Letter of Jeremiah, Judith, Tobit, Wisdom of Solomon, Sirach and 1 Esdras. It has no 1 to 4 Maccabees and no Prayer of Manasseh. In the New Testament it has the four Gospels, then Acts, then the letters of James to Jude, then Paul's letters, with Hebrews right after 2 Thessalonians.

WHAT IS NOT IN IT

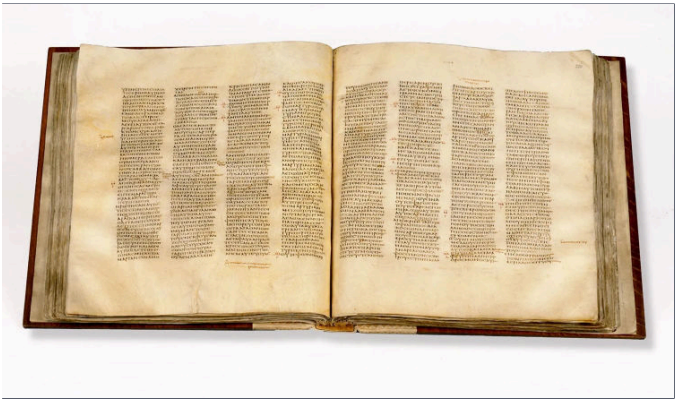
The first pages are gone, so Genesis starts at 46:28. A few verses of 2 Samuel 2 and Psalm 106:27 to 138:6 are lost too. At the other end it stops in the middle of a word in Hebrews 9:14. The rest of Hebrews, 1 and 2 Timothy, Titus, Philemon and Revelation are lost. In the 1400s someone added the end of Hebrews and Revelation in a much newer hand, but that part is a separate, later copy.

VERSES THAT ARE NOT THERE

Mark ends at 16:8. Then the scribe left the next column empty before Luke begins. Some think he knew of a longer ending and left room for it. John 7:53 to 8:11, the woman caught in adultery, is not there, and neither is Acts 8:37. This Bible prints those in [brackets].

THE THREE OLDEST BIBLES · 2 OF 3 · FIELD NOTES · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

CODEX SINAITICUS



Codex Sinaiticus, open to two of its pages. Every surviving page can be viewed free at codexsinaiticus.org/en.

WHAT IT IS

A handwritten Bible in Greek, copied about AD 330 to 360, a little after Codex Vaticanus or about the same time. It is the oldest complete copy of the New Testament in the world, because Vaticanus has lost its last pages. It also held the Old Testament in Greek, and about half of that part survives. The words are written in four neat columns on each page.

MADE FROM ANIMALS

Its pages are parchment, made from animal skins. It took about 200 animals or more, mostly calves with some sheep. That made it a hugely expensive book.

WHO HAD IT MADE

Nobody knows for sure. In AD 331 Constantine, the first Christian emperor, ordered fifty Bibles for the churches of his new capital. Some scholars think this could be one of them, and others disagree.

FOUND BY ANOTHER CONSTANTINE

The man who found it was a German scholar named Constantin von Tischendorf, who shared his name with that emperor. In 1844 he visited Saint Catherine's Monastery at the foot of Mount Sinai in Egypt and left with 43 leaves. He said they were in a basket waiting to be burned, but the monks dispute that story. In 1859 he was shown the rest of the book and took it to the Tsar of Russia. The monks say it was only a loan.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In 1933 the Soviet government sold most of it to the British Museum for 100,000 British pounds. In 1975 the monks found more pages in a storage room under a chapel. Today it is split among four places: the British Library in London, Leipzig University in Germany, the National Library of Russia and Saint Catherine's Monastery. In 2009 all four put every surviving page online for free at codexsinaiticus.org/en.

HOW IS IT DIFFERENT

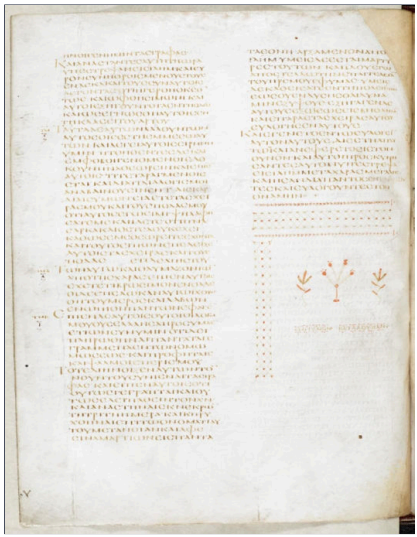
It has all 27 New Testament books we have today, plus two extra books at the end, the Letter of Barnabas and part of the Shepherd of Hermas. Early Christians read those two, but the church later left them out. The order is different too. Paul's letters come right after the Gospels, Hebrews sits after 2 Thessalonians, and Acts comes after Paul's letters. Later scribes made about 23,000 corrections to it over the centuries.

VERSES THAT ARE NOT THERE

Mark ends at 16:8, and the woman caught in adultery, John 7:53 to 8:11, is missing. About 16 single verses found in the King James Version are missing too, like Acts 8:37. This and other early copies suggest scribes added those verses later. This Bible prints them in [brackets] so you can see them and decide. None of them changes a core teaching of the faith.

THE THREE OLDEST BIBLES · 3 OF 3 · FIELD NOTES · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

CODEX ALEXANDRINUS



Codex Alexandrinus, the last page of Luke, two columns on a page, with a decorated ending and the title The Gospel According to Luke. British Library. Public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A handwritten Bible in Greek, the youngest of the three great old Bibles. It is written in two columns on each page.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was copied in the early 400s, about AD 400 to 440. That is roughly 75 years after Codex Sinaiticus.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the British Library in London, bound in four volumes called Royal MS 1 D V to VIII. 773 leaves survive. Its name comes from Alexandria in Egypt, where it was kept before it left for Europe. Its New Testament volume was photographed and put online in full in 2012.

HOW IT CAME TO ENGLAND

Cyril Lucaris, who had led the church of Alexandria, probably brought it to Constantinople around 1621, after he became the Patriarch there. In 1624 he offered it to King James I, but James died in 1625. It reached his son, King Charles I, in 1627. The King James Version came out in 1611, so its translators never saw it.

WHAT IS IN IT

The Old Testament in Greek, with 1 to 4 Maccabees, Psalm 151 and the Odes, a set of songs from the Bible gathered after the Psalms. Its table of contents also lists the Psalms of Solomon, but those pages are lost. The New Testament runs in this order: Gospels, Acts, James to Jude, Paul's letters with Hebrews after 2 Thessalonians, and Revelation. At the end it adds 1 Clement, a letter from the church in Rome written about AD 96, and part of 2 Clement. Early Christians read those two, but the church did not keep them in the Bible.

WHAT IS NOT IN IT

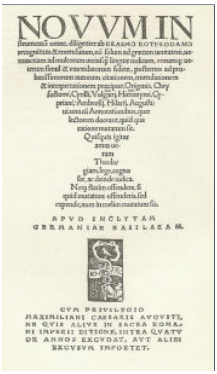
Some pages are lost: Matthew 1:1 to 25:6, John 6:50 to 8:52 and 2 Corinthians 4:13 to 12:6. Scholars counted the lines that fit on the lost pages of John and found there was not enough room for the story of the woman caught in adultery, John 7:53 to 8:11.

WHAT IS DIFFERENT

Unlike the two older Bibles, it has the long ending of Mark, 16:9 to 20. It does not have the extra words in 1 John 5:7 that the King James Version has. In the Gospels its wording is mostly the kind found in the many later Greek copies, while in the letters and Revelation it is closer to the oldest copies.

FIELD NOTES · MANUSCRIPTS · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

TEXTUAL CRITICISM


NOVVM IN
APVD INCLYTAM
GERMANIAE BASILEAM.
CVM PRIVILEGIO

The title page of Erasmus's Greek New Testament, printed in Basel in 1516. It became the start of the Textus Receptus. Public domain.

IT DOES NOT MEAN CRITICIZING THE BIBLE
Textual criticism sounds like people picking the Bible apart. It is the opposite. The word criticism comes from the Greek word krino, which means to judge carefully. A jeweler judges which diamond is real. A textual critic judges which wording is the original. It is the careful work of comparing copies to find the exact words the apostles wrote.

WHY WE NEED IT
The original pages Paul and John wrote wore out long ago. What we have is more than 5,800 handwritten Greek copies. No two are exactly alike, because every copy was made by hand. Most differences are spelling, word order or a skipped word. Comparing thousands of copies lets scholars spot the slips.

HOW IT WORKS
Older copies usually carry more weight, but not always. Scholars also ask where the copies came from, how many places share a reading, and which reading best explains how the others came about. A reading found early in Egypt, Italy and Syria at the same time is hard to argue with.

THREE FAMILIES OF COPIES
The Alexandrian copies come from Egypt and are the oldest, like Vaticanus and Sinaiticus. The Byzantine copies come from the Greek speaking church and are by far the most numerous, but most were made after AD 800. The Western copies, like Codex Bezae, often add extra words.

1516: ERASMUS
The Dutch scholar Erasmus printed the first Greek New Testament for sale, in Basel, with the printer Johann Froben. He rushed it out using a handful of late copies. His only copy of Revelation was missing its last page, so he translated the last six verses back into Greek from the Latin.

1519 TO 1535: MORE EDITIONS
Erasmus put out four more editions. Luther used the 1519 edition for his German New Testament in 1522. The 1522 edition added the famous words in 1 John 5:7 about the Father, the Word and the Holy Spirit, from a single Greek copy made around 1520. Later editions borrowed readings from the Complutensian Polyglot, a giant Spanish Bible printed in 1514.

1546 TO 1551: STEPHANUS
The Paris printer Robert Estienne, called Stephanus, printed four editions. His 1550 edition was the first to list differences between manuscripts in the margins. His 1551 edition was the first to split the New Testament into the numbered verses we still use.

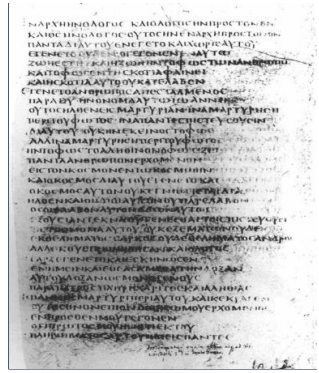
1565 TO 1604: BEZA
Theodore Beza, who took over for John Calvin in Geneva, published nine editions. He owned Codex Bezae, the old Greek and Latin copy shown on the next page, but hardly used it. The King James translators leaned mostly on Beza's 1588 and 1598 editions. Beza's text also has a guess at Revelation 16:5, and so far no one has found a Greek copy that supports it.

1633: THE NAME
The Elzevir family, printers in Leiden, Netherlands, said in their 1633 preface that readers now had the text received by all. In Latin, that is textus receptus, and the name stuck.

1881: SCRIVENER
The English scholar F. H. A. Scrivener rebuilt the Greek text that the King James translators actually followed, choice by choice. It came out in 1881, and a new printing came out in 1894. Churches that use the Textus Receptus today usually print his text.

FIELD NOTES · MANUSCRIPTS · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THREE GREEK TEXTS



Codex Bezae, John 1:1 to 16 in Greek, copied around AD 400. Theodore Beza gave it to Cambridge University in 1581. Public domain.

THE TEXTUS RECEPTUS
The Greek text from Erasmus, Stephanus, Beza and the Elzevirs, built from a handful of late copies. It stands behind Luther's German Bible, the Geneva Bible, the King James Version and the New King James. In a few places it has words almost no Greek copy has, like the ending of Revelation that Erasmus translated from Latin.

THE CRITICAL TEXT
Built by comparing all the copies and giving the oldest ones the most weight. 1831: Karl Lachmann became the first to print a Greek text that broke from the Textus Receptus. 1844 and 1859: Constantin von Tischendorf found Codex Sinaiticus. 1881: Westcott and Hort published their famous edition. 1898: Eberhard Nestle's first edition. 1966: the United Bible Societies' Greek New Testament, made for translators. 2012: the 28th edition of Nestle and Aland, the one most scholars use. Work still goes on today. The NIV, ESV, NASB, CSB and NLT are translated from this text.

THE MAJORITY TEXT
Follows whatever reading most Greek copies have, which usually means the Byzantine copies. Zane Hodges and Arthur Farstad printed one in 1982, and Maurice Robinson and William Pierpont printed another in 1991, updated in 2005. The Greek Orthodox Church uses a similar text, printed in 1904. Supporters say God kept His word safe in the church's many copies. Critics answer that most of those copies are late.

HOW BIG ARE THE DIFFERENCES
The Textus Receptus and the Majority Text differ in about 1,800 places. The critical text and the Majority Text differ in about 6,500. That sounds like a lot, but most are spelling, word order or a little word like the. Only a small number change the meaning of a sentence at all.

THE FAMOUS ONES
Mark 16:9 to 20 and John 7:53 to 8:11 are in the Textus Receptus and the Majority Text but missing from the oldest copies. 1 John 5:7 to 8, about the three in heaven, and Acts 8:37 are in the Textus Receptus only. In 1 Timothy 3:16, the Textus Receptus and Majority Text say God was manifest. The oldest copies say He who was manifest. In Revelation 22:19, the Textus Receptus says book of life, and the Greek copies say tree of life.

NO DIFFERENCE IN DOCTRINE
Not one teaching of the Christian faith depends on a verse in dispute. The Trinity is taught without 1 John 5:7, in Matthew 28:19 and 2 Corinthians 13:14. Jesus is called God in John 1:1 and 20:28 in every text. All three texts tell the same gospel: Jesus died for our sins, was buried and rose again. Even the skeptical scholar Bart Ehrman wrote that his book does not stand against the view of his teacher Bruce Metzger, that the essential Christian beliefs are not affected by these differences.

WHICH ONE THIS BIBLE USES
The New Testament in The Owner's Manual is translated from the critical text, the oldest copies. But it does not delete the extra words found in the Textus Receptus and the Majority Text. It prints them in [square brackets], so you can see all three at once: Matthew 6:13, Mark 16:9 to 20, John 7:53 to 8:11, Acts 8:37 and 1 John 5:7. In a few places, like 1 Timothy 3:16, this Bible uses the King James wording and a TEXT note tells you what the oldest copies say. Every change is listed in the change log.

HOW THIS BIBLE WORKS · DATING THE BOOKS · CONFIDENCE: HONEST

WHEN WERE THE GOSPELS WRITTEN?



Roman soldiers carry the lampstand and other treasures from the temple in Jerusalem, after it was destroyed in AD 70. The spoils panel inside the Arch of Titus, Rome. Photo Sailko, CC BY 3.0.

TWO DATES AGAIN

Just like the Old Testament, many New Testament book intros give two dates: the traditional date first, then the date many critical scholars give. The gap here is much smaller, usually 10 to 30 years. Almost everything hangs on one event: the Romans destroying the temple in Jerusalem in AD 70.

THE TRADITIONAL DATES

Mark in the 50s or 60s. Matthew and Luke in the 60s. Acts around AD 62. John around AD 85 to 95. Paul's letters from about AD 48 to 64.

THE CRITICAL DATES

Mark around AD 66 to 70. Matthew and Luke around AD 80 to 90. Acts around AD 80 to 90, and some say the early 100s. John around AD 90 to 110. Almost all scholars agree that Paul wrote at least seven letters, in the AD 50s and early 60s, about 20 to 30 years after the cross.

WHY CRITICS DATE LATER: 1, THE TEMPLE

Jesus said not one stone of the temple would be left on another, Mark 13:2, and that Jerusalem would be surrounded by armies, Luke 21:20. Some scholars do not believe anyone can predict the future. Others point to details, like Luke saying armies would surround Jerusalem, Luke 21:20, and say these sound like the writer already knew what happened. That is why many date Mark near AD 70 and Matthew and Luke after it.

2, WHO COPIED WHOM

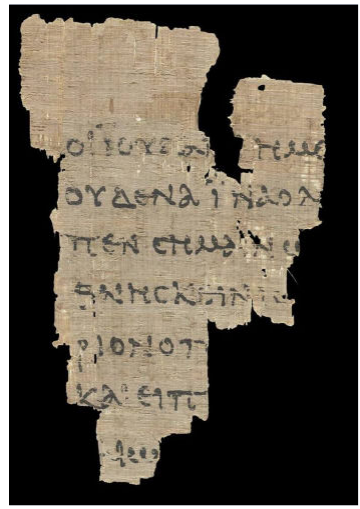
Most scholars think Matthew and Luke used Mark, and Luke says others had already written before him, Luke 1:1 to 3. So if Mark is dated around AD 70, Matthew and Luke have to come later.

3, BIG IDEAS TAKE TIME

Some scholars think big teachings about Jesus, like John calling Him God, took a long time to grow, so John must be late. They also point to verses about believers being put out of the synagogue, John 9:22, which they think fit a later time.

HOW THIS BIBLE WORKS · DATING THE BOOKS · CONFIDENCE: HONEST

THE CASE FOR EARLY GOSPELS



Papyrus 52, often called the oldest known scrap of the New Testament, holding words from John 18. It is usually dated about AD 125 to 175. Public domain.

THE ANSWER TO 1

If Jesus is who He said He is, predicting the temple's fall is not a problem. The Gospels never describe the temple burning or name Titus. Some point to Matthew 22:7, where a king burns a city, but that kind of picture was common in the Old Testament. Jesus told His followers to flee to the mountains when they saw armies around Jerusalem, Luke 21:20 to 21. The historian Eusebius says the Jerusalem church left before the war and went to a town called Pella, across the Jordan River.

THE ANSWER TO 2, THE ACTS CLUE

Acts ends with Paul under house arrest in Rome, around AD 62. It never tells of Nero's attack on Christians in AD 64, Paul's death in the mid 60s, the death of James, the brother of Jesus, in AD 62, or the temple's fall. Many say the simplest reason is that Acts was finished around AD 62. Others think Luke simply chose to end the story with Paul preaching in Rome. Luke wrote his Gospel before Acts, Acts 1:1, and if he used Mark, then Mark is earlier still.

THE ANSWER TO 3

Paul's letters, which almost everyone dates to the 50s and early 60s, already call Jesus Lord and treat Him as God, Philippians 2:6 to 11. And Paul passes on a creed about Jesus' death and resurrection that he received within a few years of the cross, 1 Corinthians 15:3 to 7. The big ideas were there from the start.

A SURPRISE WITNESS

In 1976, a liberal English bishop and scholar named John A. T. Robinson wrote Redating the New Testament. He argued that every book of the New Testament was written before AD 70, mostly because none of them talks about the temple's fall as something that already happened. Most scholars did not agree with him, but some conservative scholars did, and his questions are still asked.

WHAT ABOUT JOHN

Papyrus 52, a scrap of John 18 bought in Egypt in 1920, is usually dated to about AD 125 to 175. John's Gospel had to be written, copied and carried to Egypt before then. This rules out the very late dates some scholars once gave John, around AD 160.

WHY IT MATTERS

Even the later dates put Mark about 40 years after Jesus, and all four Gospels within about 60 to 80 years. People who saw Jesus were still alive when the first ones were written. The best sources we have for Alexander the Great, like Arrian and Plutarch, were written more than 400 years after he died, and historians still trust them.

THIS BIBLE'S RULE

Each book intro gives the traditional date first, then the critical view in one honest line.

HOW THE BOOKS ARE ARRANGED

WHY THE BOOKS ARE NOT IN TIME ORDER

SORTED BY TYPE

Like the Old Testament, the New Testament is sorted by type, not by date. It has five shelves: the Gospels, Acts, Paul's letters, the general letters and Revelation.

THE GOSPELS

Matthew comes first because the early church believed it was written first, and because its family tree ties Jesus to Abraham and David. That makes it a bridge from the Old Testament. Most scholars today think Mark was written first.

PAUL'S LETTERS, LONGEST FIRST

Paul's letters are not in the order he wrote them. Letters to churches come first, Romans to 2 Thessalonians. Then come letters to people, 1 Timothy to Philemon. Each set runs roughly from longest to shortest. Romans is first because it is the longest, not because it was written first. Galatians or 1 Thessalonians was likely his first.

THE GENERAL LETTERS

James to Jude are called general letters because most were written to the church at large, not to one city. They are named for who wrote them, not who got them. Hebrews sits with them because no one knows for sure who wrote it.

WHAT CAME FIRST

James, Galatians and 1 Thessalonians were written about AD 45 to 51, likely before any of the Gospels. The first Christians had the Old Testament, the stories of the apostles and a few letters.

WHAT CAME LAST

John's Gospel, his three letters and Revelation came last, about AD 85 to 95. John was likely the last apostle still alive.

WHY A PERFECT ORDER IS IMPOSSIBLE

Many books overlap. Paul wrote most of his letters during the years of Acts 13 to 28. Four Gospels tell the same three years. And scholars argue about the dates of many books, so any list is a best guess. The next page shows them all on one timeline.

SHELF BY SHELF

Gospels: the story runs about 6 BC to AD 30, written about AD 50 to 95. Acts: the story runs AD 30 to 62. Paul's letters: about AD 48 to 67. General letters: about AD 45 to 95. Revelation: about AD 95. These are the dates in each book's introduction.

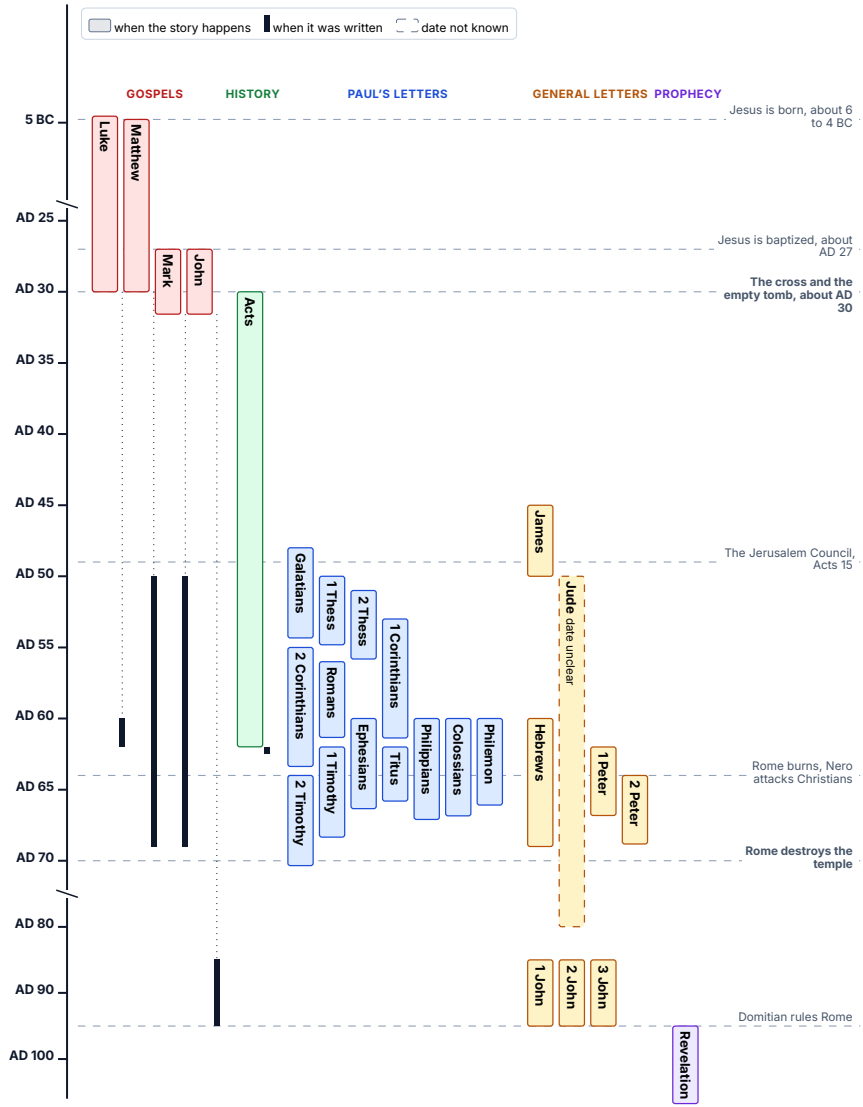
THE ORDER WAS NOT ALWAYS THE SAME

Old Bibles did not all agree. Codex Sinaiticus puts Paul's letters right after the Gospels. Codex Vaticanus puts James to Jude right after Acts. Our order comes mostly from the Latin Bibles of the Middle Ages, which the first printed Bibles followed. The order was never part of the inspired text. The books are.

TIMELINE

The New Testament in Time Order

From the birth of Jesus to the last letters of John



HOW TO READ IT Time runs down the page, oldest at the top. A colored bar shows when a book's story happens. The thin dark bar beside it shows when the book was written.

THE GOSPELS CAME LATER Jesus' story ends about AD 30, but the Gospels were written 20 to 60 years later. Paul's first letters were likely written before any Gospel we have.

LETTERS A letter is its own story, so the bars for the letters show when each one was written.

TWO SETS OF DATES This chart uses the dates in each book's introduction, the earlier ones many conservative scholars hold. Many other scholars date the Gospels, Acts and some letters later. Revelation may be AD 68 instead of 95.

Dates are approximate. The scale is squeezed above the top zigzag and below the bottom one, where fewer books were written.

BOOK 40 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · GOSPELS

MATTHEW

The King has arrived

AUTHOR	Matthew, also called Levi, a tax collector who left his booth to follow Jesus 9:9. The book does not name its author, but the early church, starting with Papias around AD 125, credited it to Matthew.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About 6 BC to AD 30, from the birth of Jesus to His resurrection.
DATE WRITTEN	Many conservative scholars say the AD 50s or 60s. Many others say AD 70 to 90.
WRITTEN TO	Mostly Jewish believers. Matthew quotes the Old Testament more than any other Gospel to prove Jesus is the promised King.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Matthew was the most quoted Gospel in the early church and survives in thousands of Greek manuscripts.
KEY VERSE	Matthew 5:17. I have not come to abolish the Law or the Prophets, but to fulfill them.



THE OLDEST PIECE OF MATTHEW
This scrap of papyrus is called Papyrus 104. It holds a few lines of Matthew 21 in Greek and was dug up in the trash heaps of the Egyptian town of Oxyrhynchus. Most experts date it to about AD 150 to 200, which makes it the oldest known copy of any part of Matthew. You can still read Greek words from the parable of the tenants in Matthew 21:34 to 37, like apekteinan, they killed, and palin apesteilen, again he sent. It shows Matthew was being copied and read far from Israel within about a hundred years of when it was written. Other early scraps, Papyrus 64 and Papyrus 67, from about AD 200, hold parts of Matthew 3, 5 and 26.

Historical Setting

Israel is under Roman occupation. King Herod runs things for Rome, taxes are crushing, and the people are waiting for the Messiah to show up and kick the Romans out. The religious leaders are split between Pharisees, who add rules on top of rules, and Sadducees, who run the temple and do not believe in the resurrection. Into all of this walks a carpenter from Nazareth who says the kingdom of heaven has come near.

What Was Going Wrong

RELIGION WITHOUT HEART. Leaders honored God with their lips while their hearts were far from Him 15:8.
RULES ON TOP OF RULES. Traditions were treated like Scripture, and heavy loads were put on people's shoulders 23:4.
A TEMPLE FOR PROFIT. The house of prayer had become a den of robbers 21:13.
WRONG KIND OF MESSIAH. People wanted a warrior to beat Rome, not a Savior to die for sin 16:21 to 23.
OUTSIDERS PUSHED OUT. Tax collectors, sinners and Gentiles were treated as beyond God's reach 9:10 to 13.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Jesus is the King the Old Testament promised. Matthew proves it over and over, showing prophecy after prophecy coming true. Jesus is born in Bethlehem, heals the sick, teaches with authority and calls ordinary people to follow Him. The religious leaders reject Him and hand Him over to be crucified. But the grave cannot hold Him. The risen King sends His followers into the whole world to make disciples.

Matthew at a Glance: Five Big Sermons

CH 5 to 7	**THE SERMON ON THE MOUNT**	How citizens of the kingdom live.
CH 10	**SENDING OUT THE TWELVE**	How to tell others about the kingdom.
CH 13	**THE KINGDOM PARABLES**	How the kingdom grows.
CH 18	**LIFE IN THE COMMUNITY**	How the King's family treats each other.
CH 24 to 25	**THE OLIVET DISCOURSE**	How the kingdom ends and the King returns.

Where Jesus Shows Up

MATTHEW 1:23 Born of a virgin and called Immanuel, God with us. Fulfills Isaiah 7:14.

MATTHEW 2:6 Born in Bethlehem. Fulfills Micah 5:2.

MATTHEW 21:5 Enters Jerusalem on a donkey. Fulfills Zechariah 9:9.

MATTHEW 27:9 TO 10 Betrayed for thirty pieces of silver. Fulfills Zechariah 11:12 to 13.

What to Watch for in Matthew

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (108)	1:1, 1:18-23, 1:25, 2:1-11, 2:16-18, 2:23, 3:3 and 53 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (7)	1:12-16, 2:15, 9:36, 12:41, 23:35, 24:37-39, 27:33

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (7)	3:1-2, 10:17-18, 11:9, 16:28, 20:23, 26:6-11, 26:13 and 2 more
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (1)	10:35-36
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (3)	24:4-5, 24:9, 24:14
END TIMES PROPHECIES (10)	8:11, 19:28, 24:6-8, 24:15-22, 24:29-31, 24:36, 24:40-44 and 2 more
THE HEART (11)	5:8, 5:28, 6:21, 9:4, 12:34, 13:19, 15:18-19 and 2 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	4:23, 24:2, 27:59
MIRACLES (25)	1:24, 2:12-13, 2:19, 4:11, 8:1-10, 8:12-15, 8:23-27 and 17 more
DEMONIC (12)	4:1-3, 4:8-10, 4:24, 7:22-23, 8:28-34, 9:32-34, 10:1 and 6 more
NOTABLE (9)	5:43-44, 6:1-6, 6:19-20, 6:24, 7:1-5, 13:53, 13:55-58 and 3 more
JESUS SPEAKING (648 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (94 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

FULFILLED, FULFILLED, FULFILLED
Matthew uses the phrase to fulfill what was spoken by the prophet again and again. He is building a legal case, and this Bible marks every exhibit.

A SCANDALOUS FAMILY TREE
Jesus' genealogy names four women besides Mary: Tamar, Rahab, Ruth and the wife of Uriah. Three were foreigners and at least two had messy stories. God put grace right in the family tree.

FIVE SERMONS LIKE FIVE BOOKS
Each of the five big sermons ends with the words When Jesus had finished. Many scholars think Matthew is echoing the five books of Moses.

A TAX MAN WRITES ABOUT MONEY
The former tax collector records more teaching about money, debts and treasure than you might expect, including the coin in the fish's mouth in 17:27.

Did Anybody Listen?

The disciples took the Great Commission seriously. Within a few decades the good news had spread across the Roman Empire, and today followers of Jesus live in nearly every nation on earth. The last words of the book are still in force: I am with you always, to the end of the age.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Matthew opens with a family tree, which sounds boring until you notice who is in it: a con man, a widow who dressed up to trick her father in law, a foreign prostitute and a king who stole another man's wife. God's family has always had some explaining to do. Then a virgin is pregnant, and Joseph has the most confusing week of his life.

THE GENEALOGY OF JESUS // RUTH 4:18–22; LUKE 3:23–38

1 This is the record of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, the son of David, the son of Abraham:

2 Abraham was the father of Isaac,
Isaac the father of Jacob,
and Jacob the father of Judah and his brothers.

3 Judah was the father of Perez and Zerah by Tamar,
Perez the father of Hezron,
and Hezron the father of Ram.

4 Ram was the father of Amminadab,
Amminadab the father of Nahshon,
and Nahshon the father of Salmon.

5 Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab,
Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth,
Obed the father of Jesse,
6 and Jesse the father of David the king.

Next:

David was the father of Solomon by Uriah's wife,
7 Solomon the father of Rehoboam,
Rehoboam the father of Abijah,
and Abijah the father of Asa.

8 Asa was the father of Jehoshaphat,
Jehoshaphat the father of Joram,
and Joram the father of Uzziah.

9 Uzziah was the father of Jotham,
Jotham the father of Ahaz,
and Ahaz the father of Hezekiah.

10 Hezekiah was the father of Manasseh,
Manasseh the father of Amon,
Amon the father of Josiah,
11 and Josiah the father of Jeconiah and his brothers
at the time of the exile to Babylon.

12 After the exile to Babylon:

Jeconiah was the father of Shealtiel,
Shealtiel the father of Zerubbabel,
13 Zerubbabel the father of Abiud,
Abiud the father of Eliakim,
and Eliakim the father of Azor.

14 Azor was the father of Zadok,
Zadok the father of Achim,
and Achim the father of Eliud.

15 Eliud was the father of Eleazar,
Eleazar the father of Matthan,
Matthan the father of Jacob,
16 and Jacob the father of Joseph, the husband of Mary,
of whom was born Jesus, who is called Christ.

17 In all, then, there were fourteen generations from Abraham to David, fourteen from David to the exile to Babylon, and fourteen from the exile to the Christ.

THE BIRTH OF JESUS // ISAIAH 7:10–16; LUKE 2:1–7

18 This is how the birth of Jesus Christ came about: His mother Mary was pledged in marriage to Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be with child through the Holy Spirit. 19 Because Joseph her husband was a righteous man and was unwilling to disgrace her publicly, he resolved to divorce her quietly.

20 But after he had pondered these things, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, "Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to embrace Mary as your wife, for the One conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit. 21 She will give birth to a Son, and you are to give Him the name

- **MT 1:1 [FULFILLS]** Messiah would be of David's lineage and 2 more ← 2SA 7:12; 1CH 17:11; PS 18:50 p.503
- **MT 1:1 [NAME]** Jesus is Yeshua in Hebrew. It is the same name as Joshua.
- **MT 1:2 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1CH 1:34; 2:1-15; 3:5-19 p.666
- **MT 1:3 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← RUTH 4:18-22 p.432
- **MT 1:6 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2SA 11:3; 12:24 p.510
- **MT 1:11 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2KI 24:14-16 p.658
- **MT 1:12 [FULFILLS]** God would make Zerubbabel like His signet ring ← HAG 2:23 · MEDIUM p.1482
- **MT 1:18 [FULFILLS]** The Redeemer would be born of a woman (the seed of the woman) and 3 more ← GEN 3:15; IS 7:14; IS 49:1; JER 31:22 p.51
- **MT 1:18 [MIRACLE]** Virgin conception of Christ
- **MT 1:20 [MIRACLE]** Angel of Yahweh appears to Joseph in dreams (3 times)

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

Jesus, because He will save His people
from their sins."
22 All this took place to fulfill what the Lord
had said through the prophet:
23 *"Behold, the virgin will be with child*
and will give birth to a son,
and they will call Him Immanuel"
(which means, "God with us").
24 When Joseph woke up, he did as the
angel of the Lord had commanded him
and embraced Mary as his wife. 25 But he
had no union with her until she gave birth
to a Son. And he gave Him the name Je-
sus.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Wise men from the east follow a star and ask the one question you never ask a paranoid king: Where is the newborn King? Herod does not take it well. An angel sends Joseph's family to Egypt, which is the first recorded case of a family vacation that was really witness protection.

THE PILGRIMAGE OF THE MAGI // MICAH 5:1–6

1 After Jesus was born in Bethlehem in
Judea, during the time of King Herod,
Magi from the east arrived in Jerusalem, 2
asking, "Where is the One who has been
born King of the Jews? We saw His star in
the east and have come to worship Him."
3 When King Herod heard this, he was dis-
turbed, and all Jerusalem with him. 4 And
when he had assembled all the chief
priests and scribes of the people, he
asked them where the Christ was to be
born.
5 "In Bethlehem in Judea," they replied,
"for this is what the prophet has written:
6 *'But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,*
are by no means least among the rulers of
Judah,
for out of you will come a ruler
who will be the shepherd of My people Is-
rael.'"
7 Then Herod called the Magi secretly and
learned from them the exact time the star
had appeared. 8 And sending them to
Bethlehem, he said: "Go and search care-
fully for the Child, and when you find Him,
report to me, so that I too may go and
worship Him."
9 After they had heard the king, they went
on their way, and the star they had seen in
the east went ahead of them until it stood
over the place where the Child was. 10
When they saw the star, they rejoiced with
great delight. 11 On coming to the house,
they saw the Child with His mother Mary,
and they fell down and worshiped Him.
Then they opened their treasures and
presented Him with gifts of gold and
frankincense and myrrh.
12 And having been warned in a dream not
to return to Herod, they withdrew to their
country by another route.

THE FLIGHT TO EGYPT // HOSEA 11:1–7

13 When the Magi had gone, an angel of
the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream.
"Get up!" he said. "Take the Child and His
mother and flee to Egypt. Stay there until I

- **MT 1:21 [PROPHECY]** Mary would bear a Son named Jesus who would save His people from their sins → MT 1:25; MT 26:28; ACTS 5:31 p.1551
- **MT 1:21 [FULFILLS]** Called Yeshua ← IS 12:2 · MEDIUM p.1076
- **MT 1:21 [FULFILLS]** He would come and save His people ← IS 35:4 p.1102
- **MT 1:21 [NAME]** Yeshua means Yahweh saves. That is why the angel says He will save His people from their sins.
- **MT 1:23 [FULFILLS]** 'The King is among them' ← NUM 23:21 · MEDIUM p.261
- **MT 1:23 [FULFILLS]** Announced as 'Behold your God!' ← IS 40:9 · MEDIUM p.1109
- **MT 1:23 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 7:14 p.1070
- **MT 1:24 [MIRACLE]** Virgin conception of Christ
- **MT 1:25 [FULFILLS]** Mary would bear a Son named Jesus who would save His people from their sins ← MT 1:21 p.1550
- **MT 2:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Herodian quarry, Herodium tomb (2007), Caesarea Maritima, Masada — extensive material culture → FIELD NOTES p.1552
- **MT 2:1 [FULFILLS]** Great kings (Magi) would visit Him ← PS 72:10-11 p.931
- **MT 2:1 [FULFILLS]** Born in Bethlehem ← MIC 5:2a p.1436
- **MT 2:2 [FULFILLS]** Balaam's prophecy: a Star and Scepter to come out of Jacob ← NUM 24:17 p.262
- **MT 2:2 [FULFILLS]** He would bear the title of King ← PS 2:6 p.884
- **MT 2:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← MIC 5:2 p.1436
- **MT 2:9 [MIRACLE]** The star goes ahead of the Magi and stops over the Child
- **MT 2:11 [NOTABLE]** Gold covered the ark, myrrh led the holy anointing oil and pure frankincense crowned the incense, Exodus 25:11; 30:23, 34. The Protoevangelium of James, not Scripture, says Mary grew up in the temple, and Luke 1:36 ties her to Elizabeth, a daughter of Aaron, so many believe she was half Levite. She would have known how to make the holy oil, which makes one wonder if Jesus healed with it. Jesus sent His disciples out two by two, and they anointed the sick with oil and healed them, Mark 6:7, 13.
- **MT 2:11 [FULFILLS]** Nations would come bearing gold and frankincense ← IS 60:6 · MEDIUM p.1135
- **MT 2:12 [MIRACLE]** The Magi are warned in a dream not to return to Herod

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

tell you, for Herod is going to search for
the Child to kill Him."
14 So he got up, took the Child and His
mother by night, and withdrew to Egypt, 15
where he stayed until the death of Herod.
This fulfilled what the Lord had spoken
through the prophet: *"Out of Egypt I called
My Son."*

WEEPING AND GREAT MOURNING // JEREMIAH 31:1–25

16 When Herod saw that he had been out-
witted by the Magi, he was filled with
rage. Sending orders, he put to death all
the boys in Bethlehem and its vicinity who
were two years old and under, according
to the time he had learned from the Magi.
17 Then what was spoken through the
prophet Jeremiah was fulfilled:

18 *"A voice is heard in Ramah,*
weeping and great mourning,
Rachel weeping for her children
and refusing to be comforted,
because they are no more."

THE RETURN TO NAZARETH // LUKE 2:39–40

19 After Herod died, an angel of the Lord
appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt.
20 "Get up!" he said. "Take the Child and
His mother and go to the land of Israel, for
those seeking the Child's life are now
dead."
21 So Joseph got up, took the Child and
His mother, and went to the land of Israel.
22 But when he learned that Archelaus was
reigning in Judea in place of his father
Herod, he was afraid to go there. And
having been warned in a dream, he with-
drew to the district of Galilee, 23 and he
went and lived in a town called Nazareth.
So was fulfilled what was spoken through
the prophets: "He will be called a
Nazarene."

- **MT 2:13 [MIRACLE]** Angel of Yahweh appears to Joseph in dreams (3 times)
- **MT 2:15 [FULFILLS]** He would be called out of Egypt ← HOS 11:1 p.1369
- **MT 2:16 [FULFILLS]** Rachel weeping in Ramah for her children who are no more ← JER 31:15 p.1191
- **MT 2:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← JER 31:15 p.1191
- **MT 2:19 [MIRACLE]** Angel of Yahweh appears to Joseph in dreams (3 times)
- **MT 2:23 [FULFILLS]** Called a Nazarene ← IS 11:1 · MEDIUM p.1075

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR HEROD, MEDIUM FOR THE TOMB

HERODIUM: HEROD'S PALACE FORTRESS

MATTHEW 2:1 TO 16



Herodium from the air. The round palace fortress Herod built on top of the hill.

WHAT IT IS
A huge palace fortress King Herod built on a cone shaped hill a few miles south-east of Bethlehem. From the top you can see Bethlehem.

HOW OLD IT IS
Built by Herod about 23 to 15 BC. Herod died in 4 BC and was buried there, though whether the tomb Netzer found is really his is disputed.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Excavated for decades by Israeli archaeologist Ehud Netzer. In 2007 he announced he had found Herod's tomb on the slope of the hill.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
Herodium National Park. Many finds were shown at the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Herod the Great was a real king, a massive builder and famously paranoid. The historian Josephus says he killed his own wife and several of his sons. A man like that killing the boys of Bethlehem fits exactly who he was.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No record outside the Bible mentions the killing of the boys of Bethlehem, which was a small village. Some scholars also question whether the tomb Netzer found is really Herod's.

MAP · MATTHEW 2 · LUKE 3:1

Israel in the Time of Jesus

Herod's kingdom, split among his sons, under the eye of Rome



HEROD THE GREAT Herod ruled the whole land for Rome when Jesus was born, Matthew 2:1. When he died, about 4 BC, Rome split his kingdom among three sons.

JESUS' HOME BASE Jesus grew up in Nazareth, Luke 2:51, then made Capernaum His home, Matthew 4:13. He went up to Jerusalem for the feasts, John 2:13 and 7:10.

THE RULERS IN LUKE 3:1 Herod Antipas ruled Galilee, and Perea too. Philip ruled the northeast. Judea and Samaria had a Roman governor, Pontius Pilate.

THE SAMARIA PROBLEM Jews and Samaritans did not get along, John 4:9. Some Jews went around by the Jordan Valley road, but many went straight through, as Jesus did, John 4:4.

City locations are well known. Borders are approximate and changed several times in these years.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

John the Baptist lives in the desert, wears camel hair, eats bugs and calls the religious leaders a pack of snakes. Somehow crowds still show up. Then Jesus comes to be baptized, the heavens open, and God the Father personally announces who His Son is.

THE MISSION OF JOHN THE BAPTIST // ISAIAH 40:1–5; MARK 1:1–8; LUKE 3:1–20; JOHN 1:19–28

1 In those days John the Baptist came,
preaching in the wilderness of Judea 2
and saying, "Repent, for the kingdom of
heaven is near." 3 This is he who was spo-
ken of through the prophet Isaiah:

"A voice of one calling in the wilderness,
'Prepare the way for the Lord,
make straight paths for Him.'"

4 John wore a garment of camel's hair,
with a leather belt around his waist. His
food was locusts and wild honey. 5 People
went out to him from Jerusalem and all
Judea and the whole region around the
Jordan. 6 Confessing their sins, they were
baptized by him in the Jordan River.

7 But when John saw many of the Phar-
isees and Sadducees coming to his place
of baptism, he said to them, "You brood of
vipers, who warned you to flee from the
coming wrath? 8 Produce fruit, then, in
keeping with repentance. 9 And do not
presume to say to yourselves, 'We have
Abraham as our father.' For I tell you that
out of these stones God can raise up chil-
dren for Abraham. 10 The axe lies ready at
the root of the trees, and every tree that
does not produce good fruit will be cut
down and thrown into the fire.

11 I baptize you with water for repentance,
but after me will come One more powerful
than I, whose sandals I am not worthy to
carry. He will baptize you with the Holy
Spirit and with fire. 12 His winnowing fork
is in His hand to clear His threshing floor
and to gather His wheat into the barn; but
He will burn up the chaff with unquench-
able fire."

THE BAPTISM OF JESUS // MARK 1:9–11; LUKE 3:21–22; JOHN 1:29–34

13 At that time Jesus came from Galilee to
the Jordan to be baptized by John. 14 But
John tried to prevent Him, saying, "I need
to be baptized by You, and do You come
to me?"

15 "Let it be so now," Jesus replied. "It is
fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness in
this way." Then John permitted Him.

16 As soon as Jesus was baptized, He
went up out of the water. Suddenly the
heavens were opened, and He saw the
Spirit of God descending like a dove and
resting on Him. 17 And a voice from heaven
said, "This is My beloved Son, in whom I
am well pleased!"

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus fasts forty days and the devil shows up with three offers, even quoting Scripture to do it. Jesus answers every one with Deuteronomy. Then He walks up to some fishermen and says Follow Me, and they leave their nets on the spot, which is still the greatest job interview in history.

THE TEMPTATION OF JESUS // MARK 1:12–13; LUKE 4:1–13

1 Then Jesus was led by the Spirit into the
wilderness to be tempted by the devil. 2
After fasting forty days and forty nights,
He was hungry.

3 The tempter came to Him and said, "If
You are the Son of God, tell these stones
to become bread."

4 But Jesus answered, "It is written:

'Man shall not live on bread alone,
but on every word that comes from the
mouth of God.'"

- **MT 3:1 [FULFILLS]** Baby John would be a prophet who goes before the Lord to prepare His way ← LK 1:76-77 p.1647
- **MT 3:3 [FULFILLS]** His coming preceded by a forerunner (John the Baptist) ← IS 40:3-4 p.1109
- **MT 3:11 [PROPHECY]** The One coming after John would baptize with the Holy Spirit → ACTS 1:5; ACTS 2:1-4; ACTS 11:16 p.1740
- **MT 3:11 [FULFILLS]** The Lord would come like a refiner's fire to purify His people ← MAL 3:2-3 · MEDIUM p.1514
- **MT 3:16 [FULFILLS]** Anointed with the Holy Spirit beyond measure and 2 more ← PS 45:7; IS 11:2; IS 61:1a p.914
- **MT 3:16 [MIRACLE]** Spirit as dove; Father's voice at Jesus' baptism
- **MT 3:17 [FULFILLS]** Declared to be the Beloved Son of God ← PS 2:7 p.884
- **MT 4:1 [DEMONIC]** The tempter comes to Jesus in the wilderness
- **MT 4:4 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 8:3 p.296

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · ARCHAEOLOGY · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · JESUS SPEAKING

5 Then the devil took Him to the holy city
and set Him on the pinnacle of the temple.
6 "If You are the Son of God," he said,
"throw Yourself down. For it is written:

'He will command His angels concerning You,
and they will lift You up in their hands,
so that You will not strike Your foot
against a stone.'"

7 Jesus replied, "It is also written: *'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'"*

8 Again, the devil took Him to a very high mountain and showed Him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory. 9 "All this I will give You," he said, "if You will fall down and worship me."

10 "Away from Me, Satan!" Jesus told him. "For it is written: *'Worship the Lord your God and serve Him only.'"*

11 Then the devil left Him, and angels came and ministered to Him.

JESUS BEGINS HIS MINISTRY // ISAIAH 9:1–7; MARK 1:14–15; LUKE 4:14–15

12 When Jesus heard that John had been imprisoned, He withdrew to Galilee. 13 Leaving Nazareth, He went and lived in Capernaum, which is by the sea in the region of Zebulun and Naphtali, 14 to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet Isaiah:

15 *"Land of Zebulun*
and land of Naphtali,
the Way of the Sea, beyond the Jordan,
Galilee of the Gentiles—
16 *the people living in darkness*
have seen a great light;
on those living in the land of the shadow of death,
a light has dawned."

17 From that time on Jesus began to preach, "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near."

THE FIRST DISCIPLES // MARK 1:16–20; LUKE 5:1–11; JOHN 1:35–42

18 As Jesus was walking beside the Sea of Galilee, He saw two brothers, Simon called Peter and his brother Andrew. They were casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen. 19 "Come, follow Me," Jesus said, "and I will make you fishers of men." 20 And at once they left their nets and followed Him.

21 Going on from there, He saw two other brothers, James son of Zebedee and his brother John. They were in a boat with their father Zebedee, mending their nets. Jesus called them, 22 and immediately they left the boat and their father and followed Him.

JESUS HEALS THE MULTITUDES // MARK 3:7–12; LUKE 6:17–19

23 Jesus went throughout Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and healing every disease and sickness among the people. 24 News about Him spread all over Syria, and people brought to Him all who were ill with various diseases, those suffering acute pain, the demon-possessed, those having seizures, and the paralyzed, and He healed them.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE MAGDALA SYNAGOGUE

MATTHEW 4:23 · LUKE 8:2



Aerial view of the first century synagogue at Magdala.

- **MT 4:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 91:11-12 p.945
- **MT 4:7 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 6:16 p.293
- **MT 4:8 [DEMONIC]** Away from Me, Satan!
- **MT 4:10 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 6:13 p.293
- **MT 4:11 [MIRACLE]** Angels come and minister to Jesus after the temptation
- **MT 4:12 [FULFILLS]** His ministry would begin in Galilee ← IS 9:1-2 p.1071
- **MT 4:15 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 9:1-2 p.1071
- **MT 4:17 [FULFILLS]** He would preach righteousness publicly in Israel ← PS 40:9 · MEDIUM p.911

- **MT 4:23 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Magdala Synagogue → FIELD NOTES p.1555
- **MT 4:24 [DEMONIC]** People bring the demon possessed and Jesus heals them

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART JESUS SPEAKING

WHAT IT IS
One of the oldest synagogues ever found in Galilee, from the town of Magdala on the Sea of Galilee, the hometown of Mary Magdalene.

HOW OLD IT IS
Built around the time of Jesus, about the early first century AD. A coin from AD 29 was found inside it, and it was used until about AD 67, when the Romans attacked Galilee.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Found in 2009 by the Israel Antiquities Authority during construction on the shore of the Sea of Galilee.

WHAT WAS INSIDE
A carved stone block called the Magdala Stone, showing a seven branched menorah like the one in the temple.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
The ruins are at the Magdala site near Migdal, Israel, on the shore of the Sea of Galilee.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
The synagogue was in use in the first century. Matthew says Jesus went throughout Galilee teaching in their synagogues. This is exactly the kind of building He taught in, in a town He passed through.

25 Large crowds followed Him, having
come from Galilee, the Decapolis,
Jerusalem, Judea, and beyond the Jordan.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS
The Sermon on the Mount begins. Jesus says the poor in spirit, the mourners and the persecuted are the blessed ones, which is the opposite of every self help book ever written. Then He raises the bar: anger is like murder and lust is like adultery. Nobody in the crowd is feeling great about themselves.

THE SERMON ON THE MOUNT

1 When Jesus saw the crowds, He went up
on the mountain and sat down. His disciples came to Him, 2 and He began to teach
them, saying:

THE BEATITUDES // PSALM 1:1–6; LUKE 6:20–23

3 "Blessed are the poor in spirit,
for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
4 Blessed are those who mourn,
for they will be comforted.
5 Blessed are the meek,
for they will inherit the earth.
6 Blessed are those who hunger and thirst
for righteousness,
for they will be filled.
7 Blessed are the merciful,
for they will be shown mercy.
8 Blessed are the pure in heart,
for they will see God.
9 Blessed are the peacemakers,
for they will be called sons of God.
10 Blessed are those who are persecuted
because of righteousness,
for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.
11 Blessed are you when people insult you,
persecute you, and falsely say all kinds of
evil against you because of Me. 12 Rejoice
and be glad, because great is your reward
in heaven, for in the same way they persecuted the prophets before you.

SALT AND LIGHT // MARK 9:49–50; LUKE 14:34–35; PHILIPPIANS 2:12–18

13 You are the salt of the earth. But if the
salt loses its savor, how can it be made
salty again? It is no longer good for anything, except to be thrown out and trampled by men.
14 You are the light of the world. A city on a
hill cannot be hidden. 15 Neither do people
light a lamp and put it under a basket. Instead, they set it on a stand, and it gives
light to everyone in the house. 16 In the
same way, let your light shine before men,
that they may see your good deeds and
glorify your Father in heaven.

THE FULFILLMENT OF THE LAW

17 Do not think that I have come to abolish
the Law or the Prophets. I have not come
to abolish them, but to fulfill them. 18 For I
tell you truly, until heaven and earth pass
away, not a single jot, not a stroke of a

- **MT 5:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 37:11 p.908
- **MT 5:8 [HEART]** Blessed are the pure in heart, for they will see God.
- **MT 5:17 [NOTABLE]** Jesus did not come to throw out the Old Testament. He came to complete it. This is the key verse of Matthew.
- **MT 5:17 [FULFILLS]** Yahweh would magnify His law and make it glorious ← IS 42:21 · MEDIUM p.1114

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

pen, will disappear from the Law until everything is accomplished.

19 So then, whoever breaks one of the least of these commandments and teaches others to do likewise will be called least in the kingdom of heaven; but whoever practices and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. 20 For I tell you that unless your righteousness exceeds that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven.

ANGER AND RECONCILIATION // LUKE 12:57–59

21 You have heard that it was said to the ancients, *'Do not murder' and 'Anyone who murders will be subject to judgment.'* 22 But I tell you that anyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment. Again, anyone who says to his brother, 'Raca,' will be subject to the Sanhedrin. But anyone who says, 'You fool!' will be subject to the fire of hell.

23 So if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has something against you, 24 leave your gift there before the altar. First go and be reconciled to your brother; then come and offer your gift.

25 Reconcile quickly with your adversary, while you are still on the way to court. Otherwise, he may hand you over to the judge, and the judge may hand you over to the officer, and you may be thrown into prison. 26 Truly I tell you, you will not get out until you have paid the last penny.

ADULTERY // LEVITICUS 18:1–30

27 You have heard that it was said, *'Do not commit adultery.'* 28 But I tell you that anyone who looks at a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart. 29 If your right eye causes you to sin, gouge it out and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into hell. 30 And if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to depart into hell.

DIVORCE // DEUTERONOMY 24:1–5; LUKE 16:18

31 It has also been said, *'Whoever divorces his wife must give her a certificate of divorce.'* 32 But I tell you that anyone who divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, brings adultery upon her. And he who marries a divorced woman commits adultery.

OATHS AND VOWS // NUMBERS 30:1–16

33 Again, you have heard that it was said to the ancients, *'Do not break your oath, but fulfill your vows to the Lord.'* 34 But I tell you not to swear at all: either by heaven, for it is God's throne; 35 or by the earth, for it is His footstool; or by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the great King. 36 Nor should you swear by your head, for you cannot make a single hair white or black. 37 Simply let your 'Yes' be 'Yes,' and your 'No,' 'No.' Anything more comes from the evil one.

LOVE YOUR ENEMIES // LEVITICUS 24:17–23; LUKE 6:27–36

38 You have heard that it was said, *'Eye for eye and tooth for tooth.'* 39 But I tell you not to resist an evil person. If someone slaps you on your right cheek, turn to him the other also; 40 if someone wants to sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as well; 41 and if someone forces you to go one mile, go with him two miles. 42 Give to the one who asks you, and do not turn away from the one who wants to borrow from you.

43 You have heard that it was said, *'Love your neighbor' and 'Hate your enemy.'* 44 But I tell you, love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, 45 that you may be sons of your Father in heaven. He causes His sun to rise on the evil and the

- **MT 5:19 [NOTABLE]** Jesus says some will be called least in the kingdom and some will be called great. Notice that the least are still in the kingdom. How you live and what you teach shapes your place in heaven. Paul says the same in 1 Corinthians 3:12 to 15, where a person's work is tested but the person is still saved.
- **MT 5:21 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:13; DT 5:17 p.148
- **MT 5:27 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:14; DT 5:18 p.148
- **MT 5:28 [HEART]** Jesus says lust in the heart is already adultery. Sin starts inside before it shows outside.
- **MT 5:31 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 24:1 p.314
- **MT 5:33 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← LEV 19:12; NUM 30:2 p.204
- **MT 5:38 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 21:24; LEV 24:20 p.150
- **MT 5:43 [NOTABLE]** Anybody can love their friends. Jesus raises the bar and tells us to love the people who hate us and to pray for them.
- **MT 5:43 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 19:18 p.205

THE HEART NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

good, and sends rain on the righteous and the unrighteous. 46 If you love those who love you, what reward will you get? Do not even tax collectors do the same? 47 And if you greet only your brothers, what are you doing more than others? Do not even Gentiles do the same?

48 Be perfect, therefore, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus says do your good deeds quietly, pray without putting on a show, and stop worrying about tomorrow. He teaches the Lord's Prayer and points at the birds, who have never once stressed about groceries. Where your treasure is, there your heart will be also, which is a problem for anyone with a storage unit.

GIVING TO THE NEEDY // DEUTERONOMY 15:7–11

1 "Be careful not to perform your righteous acts before men to be seen by them. If you do, you will have no reward from your Father in heaven.

2 So when you give to the needy, do not sound a trumpet before you, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and on the streets, to be honored by men. Truly I tell you, they already have their full reward. 3 But when you give to the needy, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing, 4 so that your giving may be in secret. And your Father, who sees what is done in secret, will reward you.

THE LORD'S PRAYER // LUKE 11:1–4

5 And when you pray, do not be like the hypocrites. For they love to pray standing in the synagogues and on the street corners to be seen by men. Truly I tell you, they already have their full reward. 6 But when you pray, go into your inner room, shut your door, and pray to your Father, who is unseen. And your Father, who sees what is done in secret, will reward you.

7 And when you pray, do not babble on like pagans, for they think that by their many words they will be heard. 8 Do not be like them, for your Father knows what you need before you ask Him.

9 So then, this is how you should pray:

'Our Father in heaven,
hallowed be Your name.
10 Your kingdom come,
Your will be done,
on earth as it is in heaven.
11 Give us this day our daily bread.
12 And forgive us our debts,
as we also have forgiven our debtors.
13 And lead us not into temptation,
but deliver us from the evil one.' [For
Yours is the kingdom and the power
and the glory, forever. Amen.]

14 For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. 15 But if you do not forgive men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive yours.

PROPER FASTING

16 When you fast, do not be somber like the hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces to show men they are fasting. Truly I tell you, they already have their full reward. 17 But when you fast, anoint your head and wash your face, 18 so that your fasting will not be obvious to men, but only to your Father, who is unseen. And your Father, who sees what is done in secret, will reward you.

TREASURES IN HEAVEN // LUKE 12:32–34

19 Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal. 20 But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where moth and rust do not destroy, and where thieves do not break in and steal. 21 For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

THE LAMP OF THE BODY // LUKE 11:33–36

22 The eye is the lamp of the body. If your eyes are good, your whole body will be full of light. 23 But if your eyes are bad, your whole body will be full of darkness. If

MT 6:1 [NOTABLE] If you do good things to get noticed, the applause is your whole reward. Give quietly, pray privately, and God sees it.

MT 6:13 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← 1CH 29:11 p.706

MT 6:19 [NOTABLE] Jesus's core teaching on where to invest — earthly treasures perish; heavenly ones don't; 'where your treasure is, there will your heart be also'

MT 6:21 [HEART] Where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

then the light within you is darkness, how great is that darkness!

24 No one can serve two masters: Either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve both God and money.

DO NOT WORRY // LUKE 12:22–31

25 Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat or drink; or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes? 26 Look at the birds of the air: They do not sow or reap or gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not much more valuable than they? 27 Who of you by worrying can add a single hour to his life?

28 And why do you worry about clothes? Consider how the lilies of the field grow: They do not labor or spin. 29 Yet I tell you that not even Solomon in all his glory was adorned like one of these. 30 If that is how God clothes the grass of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown into the furnace, will He not much more clothe you, O you of little faith?

31 Therefore do not worry, saying, 'What shall we eat?' or 'What shall we drink?' or 'What shall we wear?' 32 For the Gentiles strive after all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them. 33 But seek first the kingdom of God and His righteousness, and all these things will be added unto you.

34 Therefore do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself. Today has enough trouble of its own.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not judge, take the log out of your own eye, ask and it will be given. The chapter ends with two builders, one on rock and one on sand. The crowd is amazed because Jesus teaches like someone who actually has authority, not like a guy reading from his notes.

JUDGING OTHERS // LUKE 6:37–42; ROMANS 14:1–12

1 "Do not judge, or you will be judged. 2 For with the same judgment you pronounce, you will be judged, and with the measure you use, it will be measured to you.

3 Why do you look at the speck in your brother's eye but fail to notice the beam in your own eye? 4 How can you say to your brother, 'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' while there is still a beam in your own eye? 5 You hypocrite! First take the beam out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your brother's eye.

6 Do not give dogs what is holy; do not throw your pearls before swine. If you do, they may trample them under their feet, and then turn and tear you to pieces.

ASK, SEEK, KNOCK // LUKE 11:5–13

7 Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and the door will be opened to you. 8 For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened.

9 Which of you, if his son asks for bread, will give him a stone? 10 Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake? 11 So if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good things to those who ask Him!

12 In everything, then, do to others as you would have them do to you. For this is the essence of the Law and the Prophets.

- **MT 6:24 [NOTABLE]** The impossibility of divided allegiance between God and money — one of Jesus's sharpest either/or statements
- **MT 6:29 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1Kl 10:4-7 p.562
- **MT 7:1 [NOTABLE]** The most misunderstood and misquoted verse in the Bible. Jesus is not saying never call anything wrong. Verse 5 says to take the beam out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to help your brother. He is saying do not judge people for things you are guilty of yourself.
- **MT 7:6 [NOTABLE]** Right after do not judge, Jesus says use good sense. Do not keep pushing holy things on people who mock them and attack you. Move on, like He told the disciples in 10:14.
- **MT 7:7 [NOTABLE]** Ask, seek, knock. In Greek these mean keep asking, keep seeking, keep knocking. Prayer is not one try and quit.
- **MT 7:8 [NOTABLE]** This is a promise. Everyone who keeps asking receives. God always answers, even when the answer is not what we expected.
- **MT 7:9 [NOTABLE]** A round stone looked a lot like a small loaf of bread. No good father would trick his hungry child.
- **MT 7:10 [NOTABLE]** A snake could bite the child. A good father gives what feeds, not what harms.
- **MT 7:11 [NOTABLE]** If flawed parents give good gifts, God gives even better ones. Luke 11:13 says the best gift He gives is the Holy Spirit.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

THE NARROW GATE // LUKE 13:22–30

13 Enter through the narrow gate. For wide
is the gate and broad is the way that leads
to destruction, and many enter through it.
14 But small is the gate and narrow the way
that leads to life, and only a few find it.

A TREE AND ITS FRUIT // LUKE 6:43–45

15 Beware of false prophets. They come to
you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they
are ravenous wolves. 16 By their fruit you
will recognize them. Are grapes gathered
from thornbushes, or figs from thistles? 17
Likewise, every good tree bears good
fruit, but a bad tree bears bad fruit. 18 A
good tree cannot bear bad fruit, and a bad
tree cannot bear good fruit. 19 Every tree
that does not bear good fruit is cut down
and thrown into the fire. 20 So then, by
their fruit you will recognize them.

21 Not everyone who says to Me, 'Lord,
Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven,
but only he who does the will of My Fa-
ther in heaven. 22 Many will say to Me on
that day, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy
in Your name, and in Your name drive out
demons and perform many miracles?'
23 Then I will tell them plainly, 'I never
knew you; depart from Me, you workers
of iniquity!'

THE HOUSE ON THE ROCK // LUKE 6:46–49

24 Therefore everyone who hears these
words of Mine and acts on them is like a
wise man who built his house on the rock.
25 The rain fell, the torrents raged, and the
winds blew and beat against that house;
yet it did not fall, because its foundation
was on the rock.

26 But everyone who hears these words of
Mine and does not act on them is like a
foolish man who built his house on sand.
27 The rain fell, the torrents raged, and the
winds blew and beat against that house,
and it fell—and great was its collapse!"

THE AUTHORITY OF JESUS

28 When Jesus had finished saying these
things, the crowds were astonished at His
teaching, 29 because He taught as one
who had authority, and not as their
scribes.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Now Jesus backs up the sermon with action. He touches a leper, heals a Roman officer's servant from a distance, calms a storm with a word and sends a legion of demons into a herd of pigs. The pig farmers ask Him to leave, which is the most on brand response to a miracle ever recorded.

THE LEPER'S PRAYER // LEVITICUS 14:1–32; MARK 1:40–45; LUKE 5:12–16

1 When Jesus came down from the moun-
tain, large crowds followed Him. 2 Sud-
denly a leper came and knelt before Him,
saying, "Lord, if You are willing, You can
make me clean."

3 Jesus reached out His hand and touched
the man. "I am willing," He said. "Be
clean!" And immediately his leprosy was
cleansed.

4 Then Jesus instructed him, "See that you
don't tell anyone. But go, show yourself to

- **MT 7:12 [NOTABLE]** The Golden Rule. Rabbi Hillel taught, do not do to others what you hate, a generation before Jesus. Jesus turns it around. Do not just avoid harm, go do good first. He says this sums up the whole Old Testament.
- **MT 7:13 [NOTABLE]** Two gates and two roads. The wide road is easy and crowded. Following the crowd is not the same as following God.
- **MT 7:14 [NOTABLE]** Narrow means there is only one way in. Jesus said, I am the way, John 14:6. Few find it, so you have to look for it.
- **MT 7:15 [NOTABLE]** False prophets dress like sheep so they look like part of the flock. Inside they are wolves who feed on the flock. Do not trust the costume. Jesus warns about them again in 24:11 and 24:24.
- **MT 7:16 [NOTABLE]** Fruit is how you tell. Not their title, their talk or the size of their crowd. Watch their life over time.
- **MT 7:17 [NOTABLE]** Good fruit is a life that looks like Jesus. Paul lists it in Galatians 5:22 to 23: love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, gentleness and self control.
- **MT 7:18 [NOTABLE]** What a tree is shows up in what it grows. A person cannot fake their fruit forever.
- **MT 7:19 [NOTABLE]** John the Baptist gave this same warning in 3:10, almost word for word. Now Jesus says it too.
- **MT 7:20 [NOTABLE]** Jesus says it twice, in 7:16 and here, so you will not miss it. This is the right kind of judging. Test teachers by their fruit.
- **MT 7:21 [NOTABLE]** Saying Lord, Lord is not enough. Doing the Father's will is what counts. Real faith shows up in how you live. James 2:17 says faith without works is dead.
- **MT 7:22 [DEMONIC]** Many will say they drove out demons in His name
- **MT 7:23 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 6:8 p.887
- **MT 7:29 [FULFILLS]** He would speak the wisdom of God with authority ← PS 78:2b · MEDIUM p.934
- **MT 7:29 [FULFILLS]** A learned counselor for the weary ← IS 50:4 · MEDIUM p.1124
- **MT 8:1 [MIRACLE]** Leper cleansed by Jesus' touch

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | MIRACLES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*
JESUS SPEAKING

the priest and offer the gift prescribed by Moses, as a testimony to them."

THE FAITH OF THE CENTURION // LUKE 7:1–10; JOHN 4:43–54

5 When Jesus had entered Capernaum, a centurion came and pleaded with Him, 6 "Lord, my servant lies at home, paralyzed and in terrible agony."

7 "I will go and heal him," Jesus replied.

8 The centurion answered, "Lord, I am not worthy to have You come under my roof. But just say the word, and my servant will be healed. 9 For I myself am a man under authority, with soldiers under me. I tell one to go, and he goes, and another to come, and he comes. I tell my servant to do something, and he does it."

10 When Jesus heard this, He marveled and said to those following Him, "Truly I tell you, I have not found anyone in Israel with such great faith. 11 I say to you that many will come from the east and the west to share the banquet with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven. 12 But the sons of the kingdom will be thrown into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth."

13 Then Jesus said to the centurion, "Go! As you have believed, so will it be done for you." And his servant was healed at that very hour.

JESUS HEALS AT PETER'S HOUSE // MARK 1:29–34; LUKE 4:38–41

14 When Jesus arrived at Peter's house, He saw Peter's mother-in-law sick in bed with a fever. 15 So He touched her hand, and the fever left her, and she got up and began to serve Him.

16 When evening came, many who were demon-possessed were brought to Jesus, and He drove out the spirits with a word and healed all the sick. 17 This was to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet Isaiah:

"He took up our infirmities
and carried our diseases."

THE COST OF DISCIPLESHIP // LUKE 9:57–62; LUKE 14:25–33; JOHN 6:59–66

18 When Jesus saw a large crowd around Him, He gave orders to cross to the other side of the sea. 19 And one of the scribes came to Him and said, "Teacher, I will follow You wherever You go."

20 Jesus replied, "Foxes have dens and birds of the air have nests, but the Son of Man has no place to lay His head."

21 Another of His disciples requested, "Lord, first let me go and bury my father."

22 But Jesus told him, "Follow Me, and let the dead bury their own dead."

JESUS CALMS THE STORM // PSALM 107:1–43; MARK 4:35–41; LUKE 8:22–25

23 When He got into the boat, His disciples followed Him. 24 Suddenly a violent storm came up on the sea, so that the boat was engulfed by the waves. But Jesus was sleeping. 25 The disciples went and woke Him, saying, "Lord, save us! We are perishing!"

26 "You of little faith," Jesus replied, "why are you so afraid?" Then He got up and rebuked the winds and the sea, and it was perfectly calm.

27 The men were amazed and asked, "What kind of man is this? Even the winds and the sea obey Him!"

THE DEMONS AND THE PIGS // MARK 5:1–20; LUKE 8:26–39

28 When Jesus arrived on the other side in the region of the Gadarenes, He was met by two demon-possessed men coming from the tombs. They were so violent that no one could pass that way.

29 "What do You want with us, Son of God?" they shouted. "Have You come here to torture us before the appointed time?"

- **MT 8:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 14:2-4 p.194
- **MT 8:5 [MIRACLE]** Centurion's servant healed at a distance
- **MT 8:11 [PROPHECY]** Many from east and west would feast with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom → STILL TO COME
- **MT 8:14 [MIRACLE]** Peter's mother-in-law healed of fever
- **MT 8:16 [DEMONIC]** Jesus cast out many demons; the Gadarene demoniacs (Legion in Mark/Luke)
- **MT 8:16 [FULFILLS]** He bore our infirmities ← IS 53:4a p.1127
- **MT 8:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:4 p.1127
- **MT 8:23 [MIRACLE]** Jesus calms the storm with a word
- **MT 8:28 [DEMONIC]** Jesus cast out many demons; the Gadarene demoniacs (Legion in Mark/Luke)

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

30 In the distance a large herd of pigs was
feeding. 31 So the demons begged Jesus,
"If You drive us out, send us into the herd
of pigs."

32 "Go!" He told them. So they came out
and went into the pigs, and the whole
herd rushed down the steep bank into the
sea and died in the waters.

33 Those tending the pigs ran off into the
town and reported all this, including the
account of the demon-possessed men. 34
Then the whole town went out to meet Je-
sus. And when they saw Him, they
begged Him to leave their region.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus forgives a paralyzed man's sins, then heals him to prove He can. He calls Matthew, a tax collector, and throws a party with other sinners, which scandalizes the religious crowd. Jesus says the sick need a doctor, not the healthy. He then raises a dead girl and heals the blind and the mute.

JESUS HEALS A PARALYTIC // MARK 2:1–12; LUKE 5:17–26

1 Jesus got into a boat, crossed over, and
came to His own town. 2 Just then some
men brought to Him a paralytic lying on a
mat. When Jesus saw their faith, He said
to the paralytic, "Take courage, son; your
sins are forgiven."

3 On seeing this, some of the scribes said
to themselves, "This man is blaspheming!"

4 But Jesus knew what they were thinking
and said, "Why do you harbor evil in your
hearts? 5 Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins
are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?
6 But so that you may know that the Son of
Man has authority on earth to forgive
sins..." Then He said to the paralytic, "Get
up, pick up your mat, and go home." 7 And
the man got up and went home.

8 When the crowds saw this, they were
filled with awe and glorified God, who had
given such authority to men.

JESUS CALLS MATTHEW // MARK 2:13–17; LUKE 5:27–32

9 As Jesus went on from there, He saw a
man named Matthew sitting at the tax
booth. "Follow Me," He told him, and
Matthew got up and followed Him.

10 Later, as Jesus was dining at Matthew's
house, many tax collectors and sinners
came and ate with Him and His disciples.
11 When the Pharisees saw this, they asked
His disciples, "Why does your Teacher eat
with tax collectors and sinners?"

12 On hearing this, Jesus said, "It is not the
healthy who need a doctor, but the sick. 13
But go and learn what this means: *'I desire
mercy, not sacrifice.'* For I have not come to
call the righteous, but sinners."

QUESTIONS ABOUT FASTING // MARK 2:18–20; LUKE 5:33–35

14 Then John's disciples came to Jesus
and asked, "Why is it that we and the
Pharisees fast so often, but Your disciples
do not fast?"

15 Jesus replied, "How can the guests of
the bridegroom mourn while He is with
them? But the time will come when the
bridegroom will be taken from them; then
they will fast.

THE PATCHES AND THE WINESKINS // MARK 2:21–22; LUKE 5:36–39

16 No one sews a patch of unshrunk cloth
on an old garment. For the patch will pull
away from the garment, and a worse tear
will result.

17 Neither do men pour new wine into old
wineskins. If they do, the skins will burst,
the wine will spill, and the wineskins will
be ruined. Instead, they pour new wine
into new wineskins, and both are pre-
served."

THE HEALING TOUCH OF JESUS // MARK 5:21–43; LUKE 8:40–56

18 While Jesus was saying these things, a
synagogue leader came and knelt before
Him. "My daughter has just died," he said.
"But come and place Your hand on her,
and she will live."

MT 9:2 [MIRACLE] Jesus forgives and heals a paralyzed man
MT 9:4 [HEART] Jesus knew their thoughts and asked why they were thinking evil in their hearts.

MT 9:13 [QUOTES] Direct ← HOS 6:6 p.1364
MT 9:15 [PROPHECY] The Bridegroom would be taken away from His friends → MT 27:50; JN 19:30 p.1601

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

19 So Jesus got up and went with him,
along with His disciples. 20 Suddenly a
woman who had suffered from bleeding
for twelve years came up behind Him and
touched the fringe of His cloak. 21 She said
to herself, "If only I touch His cloak, I will
be healed."

22 Jesus turned and saw her. "Take
courage, daughter," He said, "your faith
has healed you." And the woman was
healed from that very hour.

23 When Jesus entered the house of the
synagogue leader, He saw the flute play-
ers and the noisy crowd. 24 "Go away," He
told them. "The girl is not dead, but
asleep." And they laughed at Him.

25 After the crowd had been put outside,
Jesus went in and took the girl by the
hand, and she got up. 26 And the news
about this spread throughout that region.

JESUS HEALS THE BLIND AND MUTE // MARK 7:31–37

27 As Jesus went on from there, two blind
men followed Him, crying out, "Have
mercy on us, Son of David!"

28 After Jesus had entered the house, the
blind men came to Him. "Do you believe
that I am able to do this?" He asked.

"Yes, Lord," they answered.

29 Then He touched their eyes and said,
"According to your faith will it be done to
you." 30 And their eyes were opened. Je-
sus warned them sternly, "See that no one
finds out about this!" 31 But they went out
and spread the news about Him through-
out the land.

32 As they were leaving, a demon-pos-
sessed man who was mute was brought
to Jesus. 33 And when the demon had
been driven out, the man began to speak.
The crowds were amazed and said,
"Nothing like this has ever been seen in
Israel!"

34 But the Pharisees said, "It is by the
prince of demons that He drives out
demons."

THE LORD OF THE HARVEST // LUKE 10:1–12

35 Jesus went through all the towns and
villages, teaching in their synagogues,
preaching the gospel of the kingdom, and
healing every disease and sickness. 36
When He saw the crowds, He was moved
with compassion for them, because they
were harassed and helpless, like sheep
without a shepherd.

37 Then He said to His disciples, "The har-
vest is plentiful, but the workers are few.
38 Ask the Lord of the harvest, therefore,
to send out workers into His harvest."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

*Jesus sends out the Twelve with strict instruc-
tions: travel light, expect rejection and shake the
dust off your feet when a town will not listen. He
warns that following Him will split families. But He
also says God counts the hairs on your head,
which is encouraging for some of us more than
others.*

THE TWELVE APOSTLES // MARK 3:13–19; LUKE 6:12–16

1 And calling His twelve disciples to Him,
Jesus gave them authority over unclean
spirits, so that they could drive them out
and heal every disease and sickness.

2 These are the names of the twelve apos-
tles: first Simon, called Peter, and his
brother Andrew; James son of Zebedee,
and his brother John; 3 Philip and
Bartholomew; Thomas and Matthew the
tax collector; James son of Alphaeus, and
Thaddaeus; 4 Simon the Zealot, and Judas
Iscariot, who betrayed Jesus.

THE MINISTRY OF THE TWELVE // MARK 6:7–13; LUKE 9:1–6

5 These twelve Jesus sent out with the fol-
lowing instructions: "Do not go onto the
road of the Gentiles or enter any town of
the Samaritans. 6 Go rather to the lost
sheep of Israel. 7 As you go, preach this

MT 9:18 [MIRACLE] Jairus' daughter raised and a bleed-
ing woman healed
MT 9:27 [MIRACLE] Two blind men healed
MT 9:27 [FULFILLS] God would raise up one of David's
own sons and set up his kingdom ← 1CH 17:11 p.692
MT 9:32 [DEMONIC] Mute man healed when Jesus cast
out a demon

MT 9:36 [FULFILLS] Moses' request for a leader so the
congregation be not as sheep without a shepherd ←
NUM 27:16 · MEDIUM p.267
MT 10:1 [DEMONIC] Jesus gave the twelve authority over
unclean spirits to cast them out

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | PROPHETIC FORESHADOW | DEMONIC
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW JESUS SPEAKING

message: 'The kingdom of heaven is
near.' 8 Heal the sick, raise the dead,
cleanse the lepers, drive out demons.
Freely you have received; freely give.
9 Do not take along any gold or silver or
copper in your belts. 10 Take no bag for the
road, or second tunic, or sandals, or staff;
for the worker is worthy of his provisions.
11 Whatever town or village you enter, find
out who is worthy there and stay at his
house until you move on. 12 As you enter
the home, greet its occupants. 13 If the
home is worthy, let your peace rest on it,
but if it is not, let your peace return to
you. 14 And if anyone will not welcome you
or heed your words, shake the dust off
your feet when you leave that home or
town. 15 Truly I tell you, it will be more
bearable for Sodom and Gomorrah on the
day of judgment than for that town.

SHEEP AMONG WOLVES // 2 TIMOTHY 1:3–12

16 Behold, I am sending you out like sheep
among wolves; therefore be as shrewd as
snakes and as innocent as doves. 17 But
beware of men, for they will hand you
over to their councils and flog you in their
synagogues. 18 On My account you will be
brought before governors and kings as
witnesses to them and to the Gentiles. 19
But when they hand you over, do not
worry about how to respond or what to
say. In that hour you will be given what to
say. 20 For it will not be you speaking, but
the Spirit of your Father speaking through
you.
21 Brother will betray brother to death, and
a father his child; children will rise against
their parents and have them put to death.
22 You will be hated by everyone because
of My name, but the one who perseveres
to the end will be saved.
23 When they persecute you in one town,
flee to the next. Truly I tell you, you will
not reach all the towns of Israel before the
Son of Man comes.
24 A disciple is not above his teacher, nor a
servant above his master. 25 It is enough
for a disciple to be like his teacher, and a
servant like his master. If the head of the
house has been called Beelzebul, how
much more the members of his house-
hold!

FEAR GOD ALONE // LUKE 12:4–7

26 So do not be afraid of them. For there is
nothing concealed that will not be dis-
closed, and nothing hidden that will not be
made known. 27 What I tell you in the dark,
speak in the daylight; what is whispered in
your ear, proclaim from the housetops.
28 Do not be afraid of those who kill the
body but cannot kill the soul. Instead, fear
the One who can destroy both soul and
body in hell.
29 Are not two sparrows sold for a penny?
Yet not one of them will fall to the ground
apart from the will of your Father. 30 And
even the very hairs of your head are all
numbered. 31 So do not be afraid; you are
worth more than many sparrows.

CONFESSING CHRIST // LUKE 12:8–12

32 Therefore everyone who confesses Me
before men, I will also confess him before
My Father in heaven. 33 But whoever de-
nies Me before men, I will also deny him
before My Father in heaven.

NOT PEACE BUT A SWORD // MICAH 7:1–6; LUKE 12:49–53

34 Do not assume that I have come to bring
peace to the earth; I have not come to
bring peace, but a sword. 35 For I have
come to turn

'a man against his father,
a daughter against her mother,
a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-
law.
36 *A man's enemies will be the members*
of his own household.'

37 Anyone who loves his father or mother
more than Me is not worthy of Me; anyone
who loves his son or daughter more than
Me is not worthy of Me; 38 and anyone

MT 10:8 [DEMONIC] Jesus gave the twelve authority over unclean spirits to cast them out
MT 10:17 [PROPHECY] They will deliver you up to councils and scourge you in their synagogues; you will be brought before governors and kings for My sake → Fulfilled throughout Acts

MT 10:32 [FULFILLS] Intercessor between man and God ← IS 59:16a · MEDIUM p.1134
MT 10:35 [FULFILLS] A man's enemies would be the people of his own household ← MIC 7:6 · MEDIUM p.1438

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

who does not take up his cross and follow
Me is not worthy of Me. 39 Whoever finds
his life will lose it, and whoever loses his
life for My sake will find it.

THE REWARD OF SERVICE // 2 KINGS 4:8–17

40 He who receives you receives Me, and
he who receives Me receives the One
who sent Me. 41 Whoever receives a
prophet because he is a prophet will re-
ceive a prophet's reward, and whoever re-
ceives a righteous man because he is a
righteous man will receive a righteous
man's reward. 42 And if anyone gives even
a cup of cold water to one of these little
ones because he is My disciple, truly I tell
you, he will never lose his reward."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

John the Baptist, now in prison, sends a message asking if Jesus is really the One. Jesus points to the evidence: the blind see, the lame walk and the dead are raised. Then He offers the best deal in the whole book: Come to Me, all you who are weary, and I will give you rest.

JOHN'S INQUIRY // LUKE 7:18–23

1 After Jesus had finished instructing His
twelve disciples, He went on from there to
teach and preach in their cities.

2 Meanwhile John heard in prison about
the works of Christ, and he sent his disci-
ples 3 to ask Him, "Are You the One who
was to come, or should we look for some-
one else?"

4 Jesus replied, "Go back and report to
John what you hear and see: 5 The blind
receive sight, the lame walk, the lepers
are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are
raised, and the good news is preached to
the poor. 6 Blessed is the one who does
not fall away on account of Me."

JESUS TESTIFIES ABOUT JOHN // MALACHI 3:1–5; LUKE 7:24–35

7 As John's disciples were leaving, Jesus
began to speak to the crowds about John:
"What did you go out into the wilderness
to see? A reed swaying in the wind? 8 Oth-
erwise, what did you go out to see? A man
dressed in fine clothes? Look, those who
wear fine clothing are found in kings'
palaces. 9 What then did you go out to
see? A prophet? Yes, I tell you, and more
than a prophet. 10 This is the one about
whom it is written:

'Behold, I will send My messenger ahead of
You,
who will prepare Your way before You.'

11 Truly I tell you, among those born of
women there has risen no one greater
than John the Baptist. Yet even the least
in the kingdom of heaven is greater than
he. 12 From the days of John the Baptist
until now, the kingdom of heaven has
been subject to violence, and the violent
lay claim to it. 13 For all the Prophets and
the Law prophesied until John. 14 And if
you are willing to accept it, he is the Elijah
who was to come.

15 He who has ears, let him hear.

16 To what can I compare this generation?
They are like children sitting in the mar-
ketplaces and calling out to others:

17 'We played the flute for you,
and you did not dance;
we sang a dirge,
and you did not mourn.'

18 For John came neither eating nor drink-
ing, and they say, 'He has a demon!' 19 The
Son of Man came eating and drinking, and
they say, 'Look at this glutton and drunk-
ard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'
But wisdom is vindicated by her actions."

WOE TO THE UNREPENTANT // LUKE 10:13–16

20 Then Jesus began to denounce the
cities in which most of His miracles had
been performed, because they did not re-
pent. 21 "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to
you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles that
were performed in you had been per-
formed in Tyre and Sidon, they would

- **MT 11:2 [FULFILLS]** A ministry of miracles ← IS 35:5-6 p.1102
- **MT 11:5 [FULFILLS]** The deaf would hear and the blind would see ← IS 29:18 · MEDIUM p.1096
- **MT 11:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 35:5-6; 61:1 p.1102
- **MT 11:9 [FULFILLS]** Baby John would be a prophet who goes before the Lord to prepare His way ← LK 1:76-77 p.1647
- **MT 11:10 [FULFILLS]** A messenger would prepare His way ← MAL 3:1a p.1514
- **MT 11:14 [FULFILLS]** Forerunner in the spirit of Elijah ← MAL 4:5 p.1516

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. 22 But I tell you, it will be more bearable for Tyre and Sidon on the day of judgment than for you.

23 And you, Capernaum, will you be lifted up to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades! For if the miracles that were performed in you had been performed in Sodom, it would have remained to this day. 24 But I tell you that it will be more bearable for Sodom on the day of judgment than for you."

REST FOR THE WEARY // LUKE 10:21–24

25 At that time Jesus declared, "I praise You, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because You have hidden these things from the wise and learned, and revealed them to little children. 26 Yes, Father, for this was well-pleasing in Your sight.

27 All things have been entrusted to Me by My Father. No one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son and those to whom the Son chooses to reveal Him.

28 Come to Me, all you who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. 29 Take My yoke upon you and learn from Me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. 30 For My yoke is easy and My burden is light."

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

The Pharisees get furious that Jesus heals on the Sabbath, because apparently healing a man's hand counts as work. Jesus tells them the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath. They ask for a sign, and He gives them one: the sign of Jonah, three days and three nights.

THE LORD OF THE SABBATH // 1 SAMUEL 21:1–7; MARK 2:23–28; LUKE 6:1–5

1 At that time Jesus went through the grainfields on the Sabbath. His disciples were hungry and began to pick the heads of grain and eat them. 2 When the Pharisees saw this, they said to Him, "Look, Your disciples are doing what is unlawful on the Sabbath."

3 Jesus replied, "Have you not read what David did when he and his companions were hungry? 4 He entered the house of God, and he and his companions ate the consecrated bread, which was not lawful for them to eat, but only for the priests.

5 Or haven't you read in the Law that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple break the Sabbath and yet are innocent? 6 But I tell you that One greater than the temple is here.

7 If only you had known the meaning of *'I desire mercy, not sacrifice,'* you would not have condemned the innocent. 8 For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

JESUS HEALS ON THE SABBATH // MARK 3:1–6; LUKE 6:6–11

9 Moving on from there, Jesus entered their synagogue, 10 and a man with a withered hand was there. In order to accuse Jesus, they asked Him, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?"

11 He replied, "If one of you has a sheep and it falls into a pit on the Sabbath, will he not take hold of it and lift it out? 12 How much more valuable is a man than a sheep! Therefore it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath."

13 Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." So he stretched it out, and it was restored to full use, just like the other. 14 But the Pharisees went out and plotted how they might kill Jesus.

GOD'S CHOSEN SERVANT // ISAIAH 42:1–9

15 Aware of this, Jesus withdrew from that place. Large crowds followed Him, and He healed them all, 16 warning them not to make Him known. 17 This was to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet Isaiah:

18 *"Here is My Servant,*
whom I have chosen,
My beloved,
in whom My soul delights.

- **MT 11:23 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 14:13-15 p.1078
- **MT 11:28 [FULFILLS]** Meek and lowly in heart ← IS 42:2 p.1113
- **MT 11:28 [FULFILLS]** A learned counselor for the weary ← IS 50:4 · MEDIUM p.1124
- **MT 11:29 [HEART]** Jesus says He is gentle and humble in heart.
- **MT 12:3 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1SA 21:1-6 p.473
- **MT 12:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 24:9 p.213
- **MT 12:7 [QUOTES]** Direct ← HOS 6:6 p.1364
- **MT 12:10 [MIRACLE]** A man's withered hand restored on the Sabbath

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

I will put My Spirit on Him,
and He will proclaim justice to the nations.
19 *He will not quarrel or cry out;*
no one will hear His voice in the streets.
20 *A bruised reed He will not break,*
and a smoldering wick He will not extinguish,
till He leads justice to victory.
21 *In His name the nations will put their hope."*

A HOUSE DIVIDED // MARK 3:20–27; LUKE 11:14–23

22 Then a demon-possessed man who was blind and mute was brought to Jesus, and He healed the man so that he could speak and see. 23 The crowds were astounded and asked, "Could this be the Son of David?"

24 But when the Pharisees heard this, they said, "Only by Beelzebul, the prince of demons, does this man drive out demons."

25 Knowing their thoughts, Jesus said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself will be laid waste, and every city or household divided against itself will not stand. 26 If Satan drives out Satan, he is divided against himself. How then can his kingdom stand? 27 And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your sons drive them out? So then, they will be your judges. 28 But if I drive out demons by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.

29 Or again, how can anyone enter a strong man's house and steal his possessions, unless he first ties up the strong man? Then he can plunder his house.

30 He who is not with Me is against Me, and he who does not gather with Me scatters.

THE UNPARDONABLE SIN // MARK 3:28–30

31 Therefore I tell you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but the blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven. 32 Whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven, either in this age or in the one to come.

GOOD AND BAD FRUIT // LUKE 6:43–45

33 Make a tree good and its fruit will be good, or make a tree bad and its fruit will be bad, for a tree is known by its fruit. 34 You brood of vipers, how can you who are evil say anything good? For out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks. 35 The good man brings good things out of his good store of treasure, and the evil man brings evil things out of his evil store of treasure. 36 But I tell you that men will give an account on the day of judgment for every careless word they have spoken. 37 For by your words you will be acquitted, and by your words you will be condemned."

THE SIGN OF JONAH // JONAH 3:1–10; LUKE 11:29–32

38 Then some of the scribes and Pharisees said to Him, "Teacher, we want to see a sign from You."

39 Jesus replied, "A wicked and adulterous generation demands a sign, but none will be given it except the sign of the prophet Jonah. 40 For as Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the great fish, so the Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

41 The men of Nineveh will stand at the judgment with this generation and condemn it; for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and now One greater than Jonah is here. 42 The Queen of the South will rise at the judgment with this generation and condemn it; for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and now One greater than Solomon is here.

AN UNCLEAN SPIRIT RETURNS // LUKE 11:24–26

43 When an unclean spirit comes out of a man, it passes through arid places seek-

- **MT 12:18 [FULFILLS]** The Servant ← IS 42:1-4 p.1113
- **MT 12:22 [DEMONIC]** Blind and mute demoniac healed; the Beelzebub controversy
- **MT 12:34 [HEART]** The mouth speaks what fills the heart.
- **MT 12:39 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, like Jonah in the belly of the great fish → MT 27:59-60; MT 28:6 p.1601
- **MT 12:40 [FULFILLS]** Three days and nights in the heart of the earth ← JON 1:17 p.1420
- **MT 12:41 [FULFILLS]** A pagan city repented at one prophet's preaching ← JON 3:5 · MEDIUM p.1423
- **MT 12:42 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1KI 10:1-10; 2CH 9:1-12 p.562

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

ing rest and does not find it. 44 Then it says, 'I will return to the house I left.' On its return, it finds the house vacant, swept clean, and put in order. 45 Then it goes and brings with it seven other spirits more wicked than itself, and they go in and dwell there. And the final plight of that man is worse than the first. So will it be with this wicked generation."

JESUS' MOTHER AND BROTHERS // MARK 3:31–35; LUKE 8:19–21

46 While Jesus was still speaking to the crowds, His mother and brothers stood outside, wanting to speak to Him. 47 Someone told Him, "Look, Your mother and brothers are standing outside, wanting to speak to You."

48 But Jesus replied, "Who is My mother, and who are My brothers?" 49 Pointing to His disciples, He said, "Here are My mother and My brothers. 50 For whoever does the will of My Father in heaven is My brother and sister and mother."

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Parables. Seeds and soils, weeds and wheat, a mustard seed, yeast, hidden treasure and a pearl. The disciples ask why He talks in stories, and Jesus explains the stories open the eyes of people who want to see. Then His hometown rejects Him, because nobody takes the carpenter's kid seriously.

THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER // MARK 4:1–9; LUKE 8:4–8

1 That same day Jesus went out of the house and sat by the sea. 2 Such large crowds gathered around Him that He got into a boat and sat down, while all the people stood on the shore.

3 And He told them many things in parables, saying, "A farmer went out to sow his seed. 4 And as he was sowing, some seed fell along the path, and the birds came and devoured it.

5 Some fell on rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. It sprang up quickly because the soil was shallow. 6 But when the sun rose, the seedlings were scorched, and they withered because they had no root.

7 Other seed fell among thorns, which grew up and choked the seedlings.

8 Still other seed fell on good soil and produced a crop—a hundredfold, sixtyfold, or thirtyfold.

9 He who has ears, let him hear."

THE PURPOSE OF JESUS' PARABLES // ISAIAH 6:1–13; MARK 4:10–12; LUKE 8:9–10

10 Then the disciples came to Jesus and asked, "Why do You speak to the people in parables?"

11 He replied, "The knowledge of the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven has been given to you, but not to them. 12 Whoever has will be given more, and he will have an abundance. Whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him. 13 This is why I speak to them in parables:

'Though seeing, they do not see;
though hearing, they do not hear or understand.'

14 In them the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled:

'You will be ever hearing but never understanding;
you will be ever seeing but never perceiving.
15 *For this people's heart has grown callous;*
they hardly hear with their ears,
and they have closed their eyes.
Otherwise they might see with their eyes,
hear with their ears,
understand with their hearts,
and turn, and I would heal them.'

16 But blessed are your eyes because they see, and your ears because they hear. 17 For truly I tell you, many prophets and righteous men longed to see what you see but did not see it, and to hear what you hear but did not hear it.

THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER EXPLAINED // MARK 4:13–20; LUKE 8:11–15

18 Consider, then, the parable of the sower: 19 When anyone hears the message of the kingdom but does not understand it, the

MT 12:43 [DEMONIC] Unclean spirit returns with seven worse; doctrine of demonic re-infestation

MT 13:13 [FULFILLS] His parables would fall on deaf ears ← IS 6:9-10 p.1069

MT 13:14 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 6:9-10 p.1069

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

evil one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is the seed sown along the path.

20 The seed sown on rocky ground is the one who hears the word and at once receives it with joy. 21 But since he has no root, he remains for only a season. When trouble or persecution comes because of the word, he quickly falls away.

22 The seed sown among the thorns is the one who hears the word, but the worries of this life and the deceitfulness of wealth choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful.

23 But the seed sown on good soil is the one who hears the word and understands it. He indeed bears fruit and produces a crop—a hundredfold, sixtyfold, or thirtyfold."

THE PARABLE OF THE WEEDS // EZEKIEL 17:1–10

24 Jesus put before them another parable: "The kingdom of heaven is like a man who sowed good seed in his field. 25 But while everyone was asleep, his enemy came and sowed weeds among the wheat, and slipped away. 26 When the wheat sprouted and bore grain, then the weeds also appeared.

27 The owner's servants came to him and said, 'Sir, didn't you sow good seed in your field? Where then did the weeds come from?'

28 'An enemy did this,' he replied.

So the servants asked him, 'Do you want us to go and pull them up?'

29 'No,' he said, 'if you pull the weeds now, you might uproot the wheat with them. 30 Let both grow together until the harvest. At that time I will tell the harvesters: First collect the weeds and tie them in bundles to be burned; then gather the wheat into my barn.'"

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD SEED // MARK 4:30–34; LUKE 13:18–19

31 He put before them another parable: "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed that a man took and planted in his field. 32 Although it is the smallest of all seeds, yet it grows into the largest of garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

THE PARABLE OF THE LEAVEN // LUKE 13:20–21

33 He told them still another parable: "The kingdom of heaven is like leaven that a woman took and mixed into eighteen quarts of flour, until all of it was leavened."

I WILL OPEN MY MOUTH IN PARABLES // PSALM 78:1–72

34 Jesus spoke all these things to the crowds in parables. He did not tell them anything without using a parable. 35 So was fulfilled what was spoken through the prophet:

"I will open My mouth in parables;
I will utter things hidden since the foundation of the world."

THE PARABLE OF THE WEEDS EXPLAINED // ZEPHANIAH 1:1–6

36 Then Jesus dismissed the crowds and went into the house. His disciples came to Him and said, "Explain to us the parable of the weeds in the field."

37 He replied, "The One who sows the good seed is the Son of Man. 38 The field is the world, and the good seed represents the sons of the kingdom. The weeds are the sons of the evil one, 39 and the enemy who sows them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the harvesters are angels.

40 As the weeds are collected and burned in the fire, so will it be at the end of the age. 41 The Son of Man will send out His angels, and they will weed out of His kingdom every cause of sin and all who practice lawlessness. 42 And they will throw them into the fiery furnace, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth. 43 Then the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father.

- **MT 13:19 [HEART]** When someone hears the word and does not understand, the evil one snatches what was sown in his heart.
- **MT 13:31 [NOTABLE]** The kingdom starts tiny and grows huge. Twelve ordinary men turned into a church found in almost every nation on earth.
- **MT 13:31 [FULFILLS]** God would plant a tender sprig on Israel's high mountain and birds would nest in it ← EZK 17:22-23 · MEDIUM p.1271
- **MT 13:34 [FULFILLS]** He would teach in parables ← PS 78:1-2 p.934
- **MT 13:35 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 78:2 p.934

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

He who has ears, let him hear.

THE PARABLES OF THE TREASURE AND THE PEARL

44 The kingdom of heaven is like treasure
hidden in a field. When a man found it, he
hid it again, and in his joy he went and
sold all he had and bought that field.

45 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a
merchant in search of fine pearls. 46 When
he found one very precious pearl, he went
away and sold all he had and bought it.

THE PARABLE OF THE NET

47 Once again, the kingdom of heaven is
like a net that was cast into the sea and
caught all kinds of fish. 48 When it was full,
the men pulled it ashore. Then they sat
down and sorted the good fish into con-
tainers, but threw the bad away.

49 So will it be at the end of the age: The
angels will come and separate the wicked
from the righteous 50 and throw them into
the fiery furnace, where there will be
weeping and gnashing of teeth.

51 Have you understood all these things?"

"Yes," they answered.

52 Then He told them, "For this reason,
every scribe who has been discipled in
the kingdom of heaven is like a home-
owner who brings out of his storeroom
new treasures as well as old."

THE REJECTION AT NAZARETH // MARK 6:1–6; LUKE 4:16–30

53 When Jesus had finished these para-
bles, He withdrew from that place. 54
Coming to His hometown, He taught the
people in their synagogue, and they were
astonished. "Where did this man get such
wisdom and miraculous powers?" they
asked. 55 "Isn't this the carpenter's son?
Isn't His mother's name Mary, and aren't
His brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and
Judas? 56 Aren't all His sisters with us as
well? Where then did this man get all
these things?" 57 And they took offense at
Him.

But Jesus said to them, "Only in his
hometown and in his own household is a
prophet without honor." 58 And He did not
do many miracles there, because of their
unbelief.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Herod beheads John the Baptist at a birthday party, which is a terrible party. Jesus feeds five thousand men with five loaves and two fish. Then He walks on water, Peter joins Him for a few steps, looks at the waves and sinks. We have all been Peter.

THE BEHEADING OF JOHN // MARK 6:14–29; LUKE 9:7–9

1 At that time Herod the tetrarch heard the
reports about Jesus 2 and said to his ser-
vants, "This is John the Baptist; he has
risen from the dead! That is why miracu-
lous powers are at work in him."

3 Now Herod had arrested John and
bound him and put him in prison on ac-
count of Herodias, his brother Philip's
wife, 4 because John had been telling him,
"It is not lawful for you to have her." 5 Al-
though Herod wanted to kill John, he was
afraid of the people, because they re-
garded John as a prophet.

6 On Herod's birthday, however, the
daughter of Herodias danced before them
and pleased Herod 7 so much that he
promised with an oath to give to her what-
ever she asked.

8 Prompted by her mother, she said, "Give
me here on a platter the head of John the
Baptist."

9 The king was grieved, but because of his
oaths and his guests, he ordered that her
wish be granted 10 and sent to have John
beheaded in the prison.

11 John's head was brought in on a platter
and presented to the girl, who carried it to
her mother.

12 Then John's disciples came and took his
body and buried it. And they went and in-
formed Jesus.

MT 13:53 [NOTABLE] The people who watched Jesus grow up could not believe in Him. He did not do many miracles there because of their unbelief.

MT 13:54 [FULFILLS] Called Counselor (Yaatz) ← IS 9:6 · MEDIUM p.1072

MT 14:3 [NOTE] JOHN'S DEATH. The historian Josephus also tells of it, with a different reason. See What Josephus Wrote About John, Mark p.1618.

MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

THE FEEDING OF THE FIVE THOUSAND // MARK 6:30–44; LUKE 9:10–17; JOHN 6:1–15

13 When Jesus heard about John, He withdrew by boat privately to a solitary place. But the crowds found out about it and followed Him on foot from the towns. 14 When He stepped ashore and saw a large crowd, He had compassion on them and healed their sick.

15 When evening came, the disciples came to Him and said, "This is a desolate place, and the hour is already late. Dismiss the crowds so they can go to the villages and buy themselves some food."

16 "They do not need to go away," Jesus replied. "You give them something to eat."

17 "We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish," they answered.

18 "Bring them here to Me," Jesus said. 19 And He directed the crowds to sit down on the grass. Taking the five loaves and the two fish and looking up to heaven, He spoke a blessing. Then He broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the people.

20 They all ate and were satisfied, and the disciples picked up twelve basketfuls of broken pieces that were left over. 21 About five thousand men were fed, besides women and children.

JESUS WALKS ON WATER // MARK 6:45–52; JOHN 6:16–21

22 Immediately Jesus made the disciples get into the boat and go on ahead of Him to the other side, while He dismissed the crowds. 23 After He had dismissed them, He went up on the mountain by Himself to pray. When evening came, He was there alone, 24 but the boat was already far from land, buffeted by the waves because the wind was against it.

25 During the fourth watch of the night, Jesus went out to them, walking on the sea. 26 When the disciples saw Him walking on the sea, they were terrified. "It's a ghost!" they said, and cried out in fear.

27 But Jesus spoke up at once: "Take courage! It is I. Do not be afraid."

28 "Lord, if it is You," Peter replied, "command me to come to You on the water."

29 "Come," said Jesus.

Then Peter got down out of the boat, walked on the water, and came toward Jesus. 30 But when he saw the strength of the wind, he was afraid and, beginning to sink, cried out, "Lord, save me!"

31 Immediately Jesus reached out His hand and took hold of Peter. "You of little faith," He said, "why did you doubt?"

32 And when they had climbed back into the boat, the wind died down. 33 Then those who were in the boat worshiped Him, saying, "Truly You are the Son of God!"

JESUS HEALS AT GENNESARET // MARK 6:53–56

34 When they had crossed over, they landed at Gennesaret. 35 And when the men of that place recognized Jesus, they sent word to all the surrounding region. People brought all the sick to Him 36 and begged Him just to let them touch the fringe of His cloak. And all who touched Him were healed.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

The Pharisees complain that the disciples do not wash their hands the traditional way. Jesus says what defiles you comes out of your heart, not in through your mouth. A Canaanite woman wins a debate with Jesus and gets her daughter healed, and then He feeds four thousand more people.

THE TRADITION OF THE ELDERS // MARK 7:1–13

1 Then some Pharisees and scribes came to Jesus from Jerusalem and asked, 2 "Why do Your disciples break the tradition of the elders? They do not wash their hands before they eat."

3 Jesus replied, "And why do you break the command of God for the sake of your tradition? 4 For God said, *'Honor your father and mother' and 'Anyone who curses his father or mother must be put to death.'* 5 But you

- **MT 14:13 [MIRACLE]** 5,000 fed with 5 loaves and 2 fish
- **MT 14:25 [MIRACLE]** Jesus walks on the sea
- **MT 14:28 [MIRACLE]** Peter walks on the water, sinks, and is saved
- **MT 14:35 [MIRACLE]** All who touch the fringe of His cloak are healed
- **MT 15:4 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:12; 21:17; LEV 20:9 p.148

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | THE HEART | MIRACLES | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

say that if anyone says to his father or mother, 'Whatever you would have received from me is a gift devoted to God,' 6 he need not honor his father or mother with it. Thus you nullify the word of God for the sake of your tradition. 7 You hypocrites! Isaiah prophesied correctly about you:

8 *'These people honor Me with their lips,*
but their hearts are far from Me.
9 *They worship Me in vain;*
they teach as doctrine the precepts of men.'"

WHAT DEFILES A MAN // MARK 7:14–23

10 Jesus called the crowd to Him and said, "Listen and understand. 11 A man is not defiled by what enters his mouth, but by what comes out of it."

12 Then the disciples came to Him and said, "Are You aware that the Pharisees were offended when they heard this?"

13 But Jesus replied, "Every plant that My heavenly Father has not planted will be pulled up by its roots. 14 Disregard them! They are blind guides. If a blind man leads a blind man, both will fall into a pit."

15 Peter said to Him, "Explain this parable to us."

16 "Do you still not understand?" Jesus asked. 17 "Do you not yet realize that whatever enters the mouth goes into the stomach and then is eliminated? 18 But the things that come out of the mouth come from the heart, and these things defile a man. 19 For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false testimony, and slander. 20 These are what defile a man, but eating with unwashed hands does not defile him."

THE FAITH OF THE CANAANITE WOMAN // MARK 7:24–30

21 Leaving that place, Jesus withdrew to the district of Tyre and Sidon. 22 And a Canaanite woman from that region came to Him, crying out, "Lord, Son of David, have mercy on me! My daughter is miserably possessed by a demon."

23 But Jesus did not answer a word. So His disciples came and urged Him, "Send her away, for she keeps crying out after us."

24 He answered, "I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."

25 The woman came and knelt before Him. "Lord, help me!" she said.

26 But Jesus replied, "It is not right to take the children's bread and toss it to the dogs."

27 "Yes, Lord," she said, "even the dogs eat the crumbs that fall from their master's table."

28 "O woman," Jesus answered, "your faith is great! Let it be done for you as you desire." And her daughter was healed from that very hour.

THE FEEDING OF THE FOUR THOUSAND // 2 KINGS 4:42–44; MARK 8:1–10

29 Moving on from there, Jesus went along the Sea of Galilee. Then He went up on a mountain and sat down. 30 Large crowds came to Him, bringing the lame, the blind, the crippled, the mute, and many others, and laid them at His feet, and He healed them. 31 The crowd was amazed when they saw the mute speaking, the crippled restored, the lame walking, and the blind seeing. And they glorified the God of Israel.

32 Then Jesus called His disciples to Him and said, "I have compassion for this crowd, because they have already been with Me three days and have nothing to eat. I do not want to send them away hungry, or they may faint along the way."

33 The disciples replied, "Where in this desolate place could we find enough bread to feed such a large crowd?"

34 "How many loaves do you have?" Jesus asked.

"Seven," they replied, "and a few small fish."

- **MT 15:7 [FULFILLS]** He would expose hypocritical obedience to God's Word ← IS 29:13 p.1095
- **MT 15:8 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 29:13 p.1095
- **MT 15:18 [HEART]** What comes out of the mouth comes from the heart, and that is what defiles a person.
- **MT 15:19 [HEART]** Evil thoughts, murder, adultery, theft and lies all start in the heart.
- **MT 15:21 [DEMONIC]** Syrophoenician woman's daughter delivered from demon
- **MT 15:32 [MIRACLE]** 4,000 fed with 7 loaves and a few fish

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

35 And He instructed the crowd to sit down
on the ground. 36 Taking the seven loaves
and the fish, He gave thanks and broke
them. Then He gave them to the disciples,
and the disciples gave them to the people.
37 They all ate and were satisfied, and the
disciples picked up seven basketfuls of
broken pieces that were left over. 38 A total
of four thousand men were fed, besides
women and children.
39 After Jesus had dismissed the crowds,
He got into the boat and went to the re-
gion of Magadan.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus asks who people say He is, and Peter nails it: You are the Christ, the Son of the living God. A few verses later Peter tells Jesus He does not have to die, and Jesus calls him Satan. Peter goes from star student to detention in the same conversation.

THE DEMAND FOR A SIGN // MARK 8:11–13; LUKE 12:54–56

1 Then the Pharisees and Sadducees came
and tested Jesus by asking Him to show
them a sign from heaven.
2 But He replied, "When evening comes,
you say, 'The weather will be fair, for the
sky is red,' 3 and in the morning, 'Today it
will be stormy, for the sky is red and over-
cast.' You know how to interpret the ap-
pearance of the sky, but not the signs of
the times. 4 A wicked and adulterous gen-
eration demands a sign, but none will be
given it except the sign of Jonah." Then
He left them and went away.

THE LEAVEN OF THE PHARISEES AND SADDUCEES // MARK 8:14–21; LUKE 12:1–3

5 When they crossed to the other side, the
disciples forgot to take bread. 6 "Watch
out!" Jesus told them. "Beware of the
leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees."
7 They discussed this among themselves
and concluded, "It is because we did not
bring any bread."
8 Aware of their conversation, Jesus said,
"You of little faith, why are you debating
among yourselves about having no
bread? 9 Do you still not understand? Do
you not remember the five loaves for the
five thousand, and how many basketfuls
you gathered? 10 Or the seven loaves for
the four thousand, and how many basket-
fuls you gathered? 11 How do you not un-
derstand that I was not telling you about
bread? But beware of the leaven of the
Pharisees and Sadducees."
12 Then they understood that He was not
telling them to beware of the leaven used
in bread, but of the teaching of the Phar-
isees and Sadducees.

PETER'S CONFESSION OF CHRIST // MARK 8:27–30; LUKE 9:18–20; JOHN 6:67–71

13 When Jesus came to the region of Cae-
sarea Philippi, He questioned His disci-
ples: "Who do people say the Son of Man
is?"
14 They replied, "Some say John the Bap-
tist; others say Elijah; and still others, Je-
remiah or one of the prophets."
15 "But what about you?" Jesus asked.
"Who do you say I am?"
16 Simon Peter answered, "You are the
Christ, the Son of the living God."
17 Jesus replied, "Blessed are you, Simon
son of Jonah! For this was not revealed to
you by flesh and blood, but by My Father
in heaven. 18 And I tell you that you are Pe-
ter, and on this rock I will build My church,
and the gates of Hades will not prevail
against it. 19 I will give you the keys of the
kingdom of heaven. Whatever you bind on
earth will be bound in heaven, and what-
ever you loose on earth will be loosed in
heaven."
20 Then He admonished the disciples not
to tell anyone that He was the Christ.

MT 16:4 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, like Jonah in the belly of the great fish → MT 27:59-60; MT 28:6 p.1601
MT 16:4 [FULFILLS] Three days and nights in the heart of the earth ← JON 1:17 p.1420

MT 16:18 [PROPHECY] You are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, and the gates of Hades shall not prevail against it → Fulfilled in Acts as Peter becomes central to the church's founding, and beyond in the church's continuation
MT 16:18 [FULFILLS] The sure foundation ← IS 28:16 p.1094
MT 16:18 [NOTE] THE ROCK. See Peter and the Rock.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · DEMONIC · JESUS SPEAKING

CHRIST'S PASSION FORETOLD // MARK 8:31–33; LUKE 9:21–22

21 From that time on Jesus began to show
His disciples that He must go to
Jerusalem and suffer many things at the
hands of the elders, chief priests, and
scribes, and that He must be killed and on
the third day be raised to life.

22 Peter took Him aside and began to re-
buke Him. "Far be it from You, Lord!" he
said. "This shall never happen to You!"

23 But Jesus turned and said to Peter, "Get
behind Me, Satan! You are a stumbling
block to Me. For you do not have in mind
the things of God, but the things of men."

TAKE UP YOUR CROSS // MARK 8:34–38; LUKE 9:23–27

24 Then Jesus told His disciples, "If any-
one wants to come after Me, he must
deny himself and take up his cross and
follow Me. 25 For whoever wants to save
his life will lose it, but whoever loses his
life for My sake will find it. 26 What will it
profit a man if he gains the whole world,
yet forfeits his soul? Or what can a man
give in exchange for his soul? 27 For the
Son of Man will come in His Father's glory
with His angels, and then He will repay
each one according to what he has done.

28 Truly I tell you, some who are standing
here will not taste death before they see
the Son of Man coming in His kingdom."

- **MT 16:21 [PROPHECY]** Jesus began to show His disciples that He must go to Jerusalem, suffer many things at the hands of elders, chief priests, and scribes, be killed, and rise the third day → Fulfilled in the Passion narratives
- **MT 16:21 [FULFILLS]** Messiah would be cut off (killed) ← DAN 9:26a p.1346
- **MT 16:23 [DEMONIC]** Get behind Me, Satan
- **MT 16:28 [PROPHECY]** There are some standing here who shall not taste death till they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom → Fulfilled at the Transfiguration six days later (Matt 17:1-8; MK 9:2-8; LK 9:28-36); or at Pentecost (ACTS 2) · MEDIUM p.1575

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

PETER AND THE ROCK

Who Is the Rock?

MATTHEW 16:13 TO 20 · JOHN 1:42 · ISAIAH 22:22

WHAT JESUS SAID

Peter says, You are the Christ, the Son of the living God, 16:16. Jesus answers: you are Peter, and on this rock I will build My church, 16:18. Then He gives Peter the keys of the kingdom of heaven, 16:19. Few verses have split Christians more.

THE WORDPLAY

In Greek, Peter is Petros and rock is petra. In Aramaic, the language Jesus spoke, both words would be Kepha, which is why Jesus names him Cephas, John 1:42, and Paul calls him Cephas, Galatians 2:9. So it sounds a lot like: you are Rock, and on this rock I will build.

THE CATHOLIC VIEW

Peter is the rock. The keys echo Isaiah 22:22, where the king's chief steward holds the key of the house. Peter led the church and died in Rome, and the bishops of Rome carry on his office. About AD 180 Irenaeus listed the bishops of Rome one after another (Against Heresies 3.3). In 1870 the First Vatican Council said the pope cannot err when he formally defines a teaching on faith or morals for the whole church.

THE ORTHODOX VIEW

Peter was first among the apostles, and Rome was first in honor among the great churches. But the rock is the faith Peter confessed, and every faithful bishop shares it. Rome and the East split in 1054.

PETER IN ROME

About AD 96, 1 Clement 5 says Peter died a martyr. Later writers, like Dionysius of Corinth about AD 170 and Tertullian about AD 200, say it was in Rome under Nero, about AD 64 to 68. The Bible never says he was there, unless Babylon in 1 Peter 5:13 is a code name for Rome, as many think. In 1968 Pope Paul VI announced that bones found under St. Peter's Basilica were likely Peter's. Others doubt it.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

The Rock and the Keys

MATTHEW 16:18 TO 19 · 18:18 · 1 CORINTHIANS 3:11 · 10:4 · EPHESIANS 2:20

THE ROCK IS PETER'S CONFESSION

Many Protestants say the rock is what Peter said: You are the Christ. The church is built on that truth. Luther attacked the papacy in 1520 on this ground.

THE ROCK IS CHRIST

Others say Jesus pointed to Himself. Paul says no one can lay any foundation but Jesus Christ, 1 Corinthians 3:11, and the rock was Christ, 10:4. Peter himself calls Jesus the living stone, 1 Peter 2:4 to 8.

WHAT THE KEYS DID

Keys open doors. Peter opened the door of the church to the Jews at Pentecost, Acts 2, and to the Gentiles at Cornelius' house, Acts 10. Many Protestants say that was the job of the keys.

THE ROCK IS PETER, BUT NO SUCCESSOR

Many Protestant scholars today, like Oscar Cullmann in 1952, agree the rock is Peter, the first leader of the church, as in Acts 2 and 10. But they say nothing here passes his role to anyone after him, and Rome is never mentioned.

THE EARLY CHURCH WAS SPLIT TOO

Augustine, about AD 427, said he had explained this verse both ways, as Peter and as Christ, and let the reader choose which was more likely (Retractations 1.21).

THINGS EVERY READER SHOULD SEE

Jesus gives the same power to bind and loose to all the disciples in 18:18. Paul corrects Peter to his face, Galatians 2:11. James speaks last at the Jerusalem council, Acts 15:13 to 21. The church rests on the apostles and prophets, with Christ the cornerstone, Ephesians 2:20.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus builds His church, and the gates of Hades will not stop it.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus takes Peter, James and John up a mountain and is transfigured, shining like the sun, while Moses and Elijah show up. Peter offers to build tents, because when in doubt, start a building project. Then God speaks from a cloud: This is My beloved Son. Listen to Him.

THE TRANSFIGURATION // MARK 9:1–13; LUKE 9:28–36; 2 PETER 1:16–21

1 After six days Jesus took with Him Peter,
James, and John the brother of James,
and led them up a high mountain by themselves. 2 There He was transfigured before them. His face shone like the sun,
and His clothes became as white as the
light.

3 Suddenly Moses and Elijah appeared before them, talking with Jesus. 4 Peter said
to Jesus, "Lord, it is good for us to be
here. If You wish, I will put up three
shelters—one for You, one for Moses, and
one for Elijah."

5 While Peter was still speaking, a bright
cloud enveloped them, and a voice from
the cloud said, "This is My beloved Son, in
whom I am well pleased. Listen to Him!" 6
When the disciples heard this, they fell
facedown in terror.

7 Then Jesus came over and touched
them. "Get up," He said. "Do not be
afraid." 8 And when they looked up, they
saw no one except Jesus.

9 As they were coming down the mountain, Jesus commanded them, "Do not tell
anyone about this vision until the Son of
Man has been raised from the dead."

10 The disciples asked Him, "Why then do
the scribes say that Elijah must come
first?"

11 Jesus replied, "Elijah does indeed come,
and he will restore all things. 12 But I tell
you that Elijah has already come, and they
did not recognize him, but have done to

- **MT 17:1 [MIRACLE]** Transfiguration — Moses and Elijah appear; Father's voice
- **MT 17:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 2:7; IS 42:1; DT 18:15 p.884
- **MT 17:9 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man would be raised from the dead → MT 28:6 p.1601
- **MT 17:10 [FULFILLS]** Forerunner in the spirit of Elijah ← MAL 4:5 p.1516

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

him whatever they wished. In the same way, the Son of Man will suffer at their hands."

13 Then the disciples understood that He was speaking to them about John the Baptist.

THE BOY WITH A DEMON // MARK 9:14–29; LUKE 9:37–42

14 When they came to the crowd, a man came up to Jesus and knelt before Him. 15 "Lord, have mercy on my son," he said. "He has seizures and is suffering terribly. He often falls into the fire or into the water. 16 I brought him to Your disciples, but they could not heal him."

17 "O unbelieving and perverse generation!" Jesus replied. "How long must I remain with you? How long must I put up with you? Bring the boy here to Me." 18 Then Jesus rebuked the demon, and it came out of the boy, and he was healed from that moment.

THE POWER OF FAITH // LUKE 17:5–10

19 Afterward the disciples came to Jesus privately and asked, "Why couldn't we drive it out?"

20 "Because you have so little faith," He answered. "For truly I tell you, if you have faith the size of a mustard seed, you can say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there,' and it will move. Nothing will be impossible for you." 21 [But this kind does not come out except by prayer and fasting.]

THE SECOND PREDICTION OF THE PASSION // MARK 9:30–32; LUKE 9:43–45

22 When they gathered together in Galilee, Jesus told them, "The Son of Man is about to be delivered into the hands of men. 23 They will kill Him, and on the third day He will be raised to life." And the disciples were deeply grieved.

THE TEMPLE TAX

24 After they had arrived in Capernaum, the collectors of the temple tax came to Peter and asked, "Does your Teacher pay the temple tax?"

25 "Yes," he answered.

When Peter entered the house, Jesus preempted him. "What do you think, Simon?" He asked. "From whom do the kings of the earth collect customs and taxes: from their own sons, or from others?"

26 "From others," Peter answered.

"Then the sons are exempt," Jesus said to him. 27 "But so that we may not offend them, go to the sea, cast a hook, and take the first fish you catch. When you open its mouth, you will find a large silver coin. Take it and give it to them for My tax and yours."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

The disciples argue about who is greatest, and Jesus puts a child in front of them. He talks about lost sheep, church discipline and forgiveness. Peter asks if forgiving seven times is enough, and Jesus says seventy seven times, which is Jesus's way of saying stop counting.

THE GREATEST IN THE KINGDOM // MARK 9:33–41; LUKE 9:46–50

1 At that time the disciples came to Jesus and asked, "Who then is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven?"

2 Jesus invited a little child to stand among them. 3 "Truly I tell you," He said, "unless you change and become like little children, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven. 4 Therefore, whoever humbles himself like this little child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven. 5 And whoever welcomes a little child like this in My name welcomes Me.

TEMPTATIONS AND TRESPASSES // MARK 9:42–48; LUKE 17:1–4

6 But if anyone causes one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a large

MT 17:12 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man would suffer at their hands just as John the Baptist did → MT 27:26-31 p.1598

MT 17:14 [DEMONIC] Boy with seizures freed after the disciples fail

MT 17:22 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men, and they will kill Him, and the third day He will be raised up → Fulfilled in the Passion week

MT 17:24 [MIRACLE] A coin found in a fish's mouth pays the temple tax

MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

millstone hung around his neck and to be drowned in the depths of the sea.

7 Woe to the world for the causes of sin. These stumbling blocks must come, but woe to the man through whom they come!

8 If your hand or your foot causes you to sin, cut it off and throw it away. It is better for you to enter life crippled or lame than to have two hands and two feet and be thrown into the eternal fire. 9 And if your eye causes you to sin, gouge it out and throw it away. It is better for you to enter life with one eye than to have two eyes and be thrown into the fire of hell.

THE PARABLE OF THE LOST SHEEP // LUKE 15:1–7

10 See that you do not look down on any of these little ones. For I tell you that their angels in heaven always see the face of My Father in heaven. 11 [For the Son of Man came to save the lost.]

12 What do you think? If a man has a hundred sheep and one of them goes astray, will he not leave the ninety-nine on the hills and go out to search for the one that is lost? 13 And if he finds it, truly I tell you, he rejoices more over that one sheep than over the ninety-nine that did not go astray. 14 In the same way, your Father in heaven is not willing that any of these little ones should perish.

A BROTHER WHO SINS // DEUTERONOMY 19:15–21

15 If your brother sins against you, go and confront him privately. If he listens to you, you have won your brother over. 16 But if he will not listen, take one or two others along, so that *'every matter may be established by the testimony of two or three witnesses.'* 17 If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, regard him as you would a pagan or a tax collector.

18 Truly I tell you, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.

ASK IN MY NAME // JOHN 16:23–33

19 Again, I tell you truly that if two of you on the earth agree about anything you ask for, it will be done for you by My Father in heaven. 20 For where two or three gather together in My name, there am I with them."

THE UNFORGIVING SERVANT // ROMANS 12:14–21

21 Then Peter came to Jesus and asked, "Lord, how many times shall I forgive my brother who sins against me? Up to seven times?"

22 Jesus answered, "I tell you, not just seven times, but seventy-seven times!

23 Because of this, the kingdom of heaven is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. 24 As he began the settlements, a debtor owing ten thousand bags of gold was brought to him. 25 Since the man was unable to pay, the master ordered that he be sold to pay his debt, along with his wife and children and everything he owned.

26 Then the servant fell on his knees before him. 'Have patience with me,' he begged, 'and I will pay back everything.'

27 His master had compassion on him, forgave his debt, and released him.

28 But when that servant went out, he found one of his fellow servants who owed him a hundred days' wages. He grabbed him and began to choke him, saying, 'Pay back what you owe me!'

29 So his fellow servant fell down and begged him, 'Have patience with me, and I will pay you back.'

30 But he refused. Instead, he went and had the man thrown into prison until he could pay his debt.

31 When his fellow servants saw what had happened, they were greatly distressed, and they went and recounted all of this to their master.

32 Then the master summoned him and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave all your debt because you begged me. 33 Shouldn't you have had mercy on your fellow servant, just as I had on you?' 34 In anger his master turned him over to the

MT 18:10 [MIRACLE] Their angels always see the face of My Father

MT 18:16 [QUOTES] Quotes ← DT 19:15 p.310

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

jailers to be tortured, until he should repay all that he owed.

35 That is how My heavenly Father will treat each of you unless you forgive your brother from your heart."

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus teaches on marriage and divorce and welcomes the little children. A rich young man asks what good thing he must do, and walks away sad when Jesus tells him to sell it all. Then Jesus says it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom.

TEACHINGS ABOUT DIVORCE // MARK 10:1–12

1 When Jesus had finished saying these things, He left Galilee and went into the region of Judea beyond the Jordan. 2 Large crowds followed Him, and He healed them there.

3 Then some Pharisees came and tested Him by asking, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any reason?"

4 Jesus answered, "Have you not read that from the beginning the Creator *'made them male and female,'* 5 and said, *'For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife, and the two will become one flesh'?* 6 So they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore what God has joined together, let man not separate."

7 *"Why then,"* they asked, *"did Moses order a man to give his wife a certificate of divorce and send her away?"*

8 Jesus replied, "Moses permitted you to divorce your wives because of your hardness of heart. But it was not this way from the beginning. 9 Now I tell you that whoever divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, and marries another woman commits adultery."

10 His disciples said to Him, "If this is the case between a man and his wife, it is better not to marry."

11 "Not everyone can accept this word," He replied, "but only those to whom it has been given. 12 For there are eunuchs who were born that way; others were made that way by men; and still others live like eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of heaven. The one who can accept this should accept it."

JESUS BLESSES THE CHILDREN // MARK 10:13–16; LUKE 18:15–17

13 Then little children were brought to Jesus for Him to place His hands on them and pray for them. And the disciples rebuked those who brought them. 14 But Jesus said, "Let the little children come to Me, and do not hinder them! For the kingdom of heaven belongs to such as these." 15 And after He had placed His hands on them, He went on from there.

THE RICH YOUNG MAN // MARK 10:17–31; LUKE 18:18–30

16 Just then a man came up to Jesus and inquired, "Teacher, what good thing must I do to obtain eternal life?"

17 "Why do you ask Me about what is good?" Jesus replied. "There is only One who is good. If you want to enter life, keep the commandments."

18 "Which ones?" the man asked.

Jesus answered, *"'Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not bear false witness,* 19 *honor your father and mother, and love your neighbor as yourself.'"*

20 "All these I have kept," said the young man. "What do I still lack?"

21 Jesus told him, "If you want to be perfect, go, sell your possessions and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow Me."

22 When the young man heard this, he went away in sorrow, because he had great wealth.

23 Then Jesus said to His disciples, "Truly I tell you, it is hard for a rich man to enter the kingdom of heaven. 24 Again I tell you, it is easier for a camel to pass through the

- **MT 19:4 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 1:27; 2:24 p.48
- **MT 19:7 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 24:1 p.314
- **MT 19:8 [HEART]** Jesus says Moses permitted divorce because your hearts were hard.
- **MT 19:15 [NOTABLE]** Jesus blesses the little children. Then a young man asks what good thing he must do to get eternal life, and Jesus points him to the only One who is truly good.
- **MT 19:18 [NOTABLE]** The rich young ruler who kept all commandments but couldn't part with his wealth; Jesus's most famous statement on wealth as a barrier to salvation
- **MT 19:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:12-16; LEV 19:18 p.148

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."

25 When the disciples heard this, they were greatly astonished and asked, "Who then can be saved?"

26 Jesus looked at them and said, "With man this is impossible, but with God all things are possible."

27 "Look," Peter replied, "we have left everything to follow You. What then will there be for us?"

28 Jesus said to them, "Truly I tell you, in the renewal of all things, when the Son of Man sits on His glorious throne, you who have followed Me will also sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel. 29 And everyone who has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or wife or children or fields for the sake of My name will receive a hundredfold and will inherit eternal life. 30 But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

A landowner pays workers who started at five in the afternoon the same as the ones who started at dawn, and the early crew files a complaint. That is grace, and it is not fair, thankfully. James and John's mother asks for VIP seats for her sons, and Jesus says greatness means serving.

THE PARABLE OF THE WORKERS

1 "For the kingdom of heaven is like a landowner who went out early in the morning to hire workers for his vineyard. 2 He agreed to pay them the usual day's wage and sent them into his vineyard.

3 About the third hour he went out and saw others standing in the marketplace doing nothing. 4 'You also go into my vineyard,' he said, 'and I will pay you whatever is right.' 5 So they went.

He went out again about the sixth hour and the ninth hour and did the same thing.

6 About the eleventh hour he went out and found still others standing around. 'Why have you been standing here all day long doing nothing?' he asked.

7 'Because no one has hired us,' they answered.

So he told them, 'You also go into my vineyard.'

8 When evening came, the owner of the vineyard said to his foreman, 'Call the workers and pay them their wages, starting with the last ones hired and moving on to the first.'

9 The workers who were hired about the eleventh hour came and each received a full day's wage. 10 So when the original workers came, they assumed they would receive more. But each of them also received a full day's wage.

11 On receiving their pay, they began to grumble against the landowner. 12 'These men who were hired last worked only one hour,' they said, 'and you have made them equal to us who have borne the burden and the scorching heat of the day.'

13 But he answered one of them, 'Friend, I am not being unfair to you. Did you not agree with me on a day's wage? 14 Take your pay and go. I want to give this last man the same as I gave you. 15 Do I not have the right to do as I please with what is mine? Or are you envious because I am generous?'

16 So the last will be first, and the first will be last."

THE THIRD PREDICTION OF THE PASSION // MARK 10:32–34; LUKE 18:31–34

17 As Jesus was going up to Jerusalem, He took the twelve disciples aside and said, 18 "Look, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be delivered over to the chief priests and scribes. They will condemn Him to death 19 and will deliver Him over to the Gentiles to be mocked and flogged and crucified. And on the third day He will be raised to life."

MT 19:28 [PROPHECY] In the renewal of all things the Twelve would sit on twelve thrones judging Israel → STILL TO COME

MT 20:17 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man will be betrayed to chief priests and scribes, condemned to death, delivered to Gentiles to mock, scourge, and crucify Him; and on the third day He will rise again → Fulfilled precisely

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

A MOTHER'S REQUEST // MARK 10:35–45

20 Then the mother of Zebedee's sons
came to Jesus with her sons and knelt
down to make a request of Him.
21 "What do you want?" He inquired.
She answered, "Declare that in Your king-
dom one of these two sons of mine may
sit at Your right hand, and the other at
Your left."
22 "You do not know what you are asking,"
Jesus replied. "Can you drink the cup I am
going to drink?"
"We can," the brothers answered.
23 "You will indeed drink My cup," Jesus
said. "But to sit at My right or left is not
Mine to grant. These seats belong to
those for whom My Father has prepared
them."
24 When the ten heard about this, they
were indignant with the two brothers. 25
But Jesus called them aside and said,
"You know that the rulers of the Gentiles
lord it over them, and their superiors exer-
cise authority over them. 26 It shall not be
this way among you. Instead, whoever
wants to become great among you must
be your servant, 27 and whoever wants to
be first among you must be your slave—
28 just as the Son of Man did not come to
be served, but to serve, and to give His
life as a ransom for many."

THE BLIND MEN BY THE ROAD // MARK 10:46–52; LUKE 18:35–43

29 As they were leaving Jericho, a large
crowd followed Him. 30 And there were
two blind men sitting beside the road.
When they heard that Jesus was passing
by, they cried out, "Lord, Son of David,
have mercy on us!"
31 The crowd admonished them to be
silent, but they cried out all the louder,
"Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us!"
32 Jesus stopped and called them. "What
do you want Me to do for you?" He asked.
33 "Lord," they answered, "let our eyes be
opened."
34 Moved with compassion, Jesus touched
their eyes, and at once they received their
sight and followed Him.

- MT 20:23 [PROPHECY] James and John would drink the cup of suffering Jesus would drink → ACTS 12:2; REV 1:9 p.1760
- MT 20:28 [FULFILLS] An offering for sin ← IS 53:10b p.1128
- MT 20:30 [MIRACLE] Two blind men near Jericho receive their sight

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus rides into Jerusalem on a donkey while the crowds shout Hosanna, exactly as Zechariah said. Then He flips over the money changers' tables in the temple. He curses a fig tree for having no fruit, and the religious leaders are running out of ways to trap Him.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY // ZECHARIAH 9:9–13; MARK 11:1–11; LUKE 19:28–40; JOHN 12:12–19

1 As they approached Jerusalem and came
to Bethphage on the Mount of Olives, Je-
sus sent out two disciples, 2 saying to
them, "Go into the village ahead of you,
and at once you will find a donkey tied
there, with her colt beside her. Untie them
and bring them to Me. 3 If anyone ques-
tions you, tell him that the Lord needs
them, and he will send them right away."
4 This took place to fulfill what was spoken
through the prophet:

5 "Say to the Daughter of Zion,
'See, your King comes to you,
gentle and riding on a donkey,
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.'"

6 So the disciples went and did as Jesus
had directed them. 7 They brought the
donkey and the colt and laid their cloaks
on them, and Jesus sat on them.
8 A massive crowd spread their cloaks on
the road, while others cut branches from
the trees and spread them on the road.
9 The crowds that went ahead of Him and
those that followed were shouting:

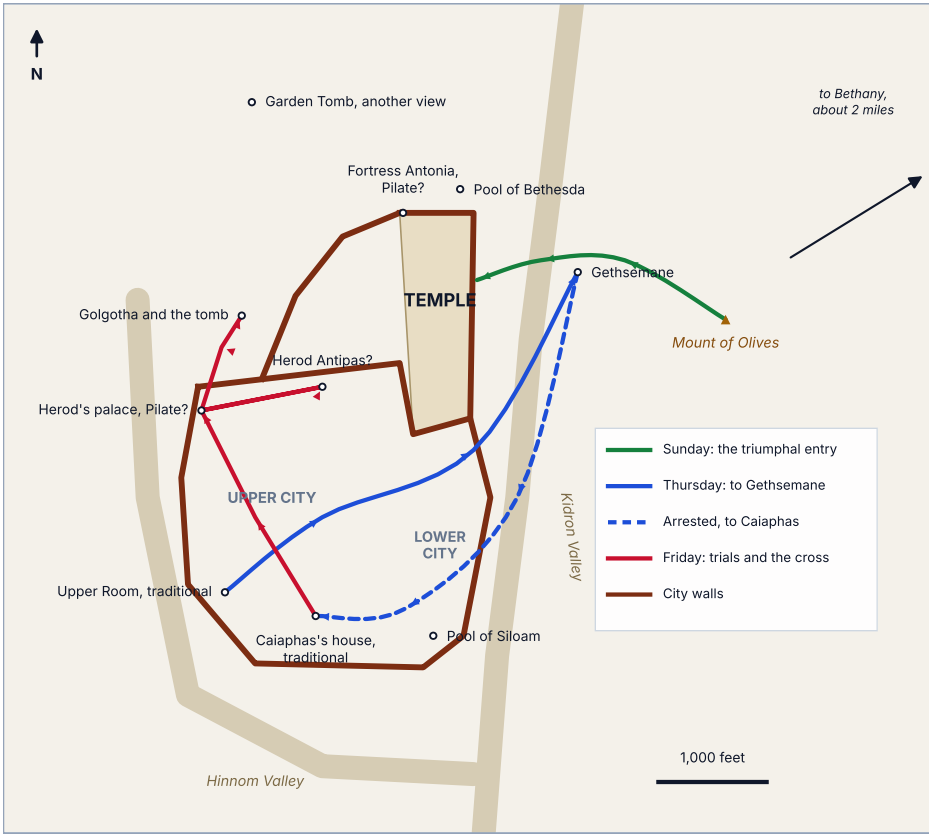
"Hosanna to the Son of David!"

- MT 21:2 [PROPHECY] Go into the village opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her. Loose them and bring them to Me → Fulfilled immediately when disciples went and found exactly as He said
- MT 21:2 [FULFILLS] He ties his donkey's colt to the vine and washes his robes in wine ← GEN 49:11 · MEDIUM p.114
- MT 21:4 [FULFILLS] Say to Daughter Zion, your Savior comes ← IS 62:11 · MEDIUM p.1138
- MT 21:4 [FULFILLS] Zion's King would come righteous and bringing salvation, humble and riding on a donkey ← ZECH 9:9 p.1498
- MT 21:5 [QUOTES] Direct ← ZECH 9:9 p.1498

MAP · MATTHEW 21 TO 28

Jerusalem in Jesus' Last Week

From the palm branches to the empty tomb



SUNDAY Jesus rode a donkey down the Mount of Olives into the city as crowds waved branches, Matthew 21:1 to 11. He spent His nights in Bethany, Matthew 21:17.

FRIDAY Jesus stood before Pilate, was sent to Herod Antipas and back, Luke 23:7 to 11, and was crucified at Golgotha, near the city, John 19:20, outside the gate, Hebrews 13:12.

THURSDAY NIGHT After the Last Supper in an upper room, Jesus prayed in Gethsemane and was arrested, then taken to the high priest Caiaphas, Matthew 26.

SUNDAY MORNING The tomb was in a garden near the place He was crucified, John 19:41. On the third day it was empty, Matthew 28:6.

Simple plan, not exact. Most scholars place Golgotha at the Church of the Holy Sepulchre. The Upper Room, Caiaphas's house and Pilate's headquarters are traditional or debated sites.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

"Blessed is He who comes in the name of the Lord!"

"Hosanna in the highest!"

10 When Jesus had entered Jerusalem, the whole city was stirred and asked, "Who is this?"

11 The crowds replied, "This is Jesus, the prophet from Nazareth in Galilee."

JESUS CLEANSES THE TEMPLE // MARK 11:15–19; LUKE 19:45–48; JOHN 2:12–25

12 Then Jesus entered the temple courts and drove out all who were buying and selling there. He overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those selling doves. 13 And He declared to them, "It is written: *'My house will be called a house of prayer.'* But you are making it *'a den of robbers.'"*

14 The blind and the lame came to Him at the temple, and He healed them. 15 But the chief priests and scribes were indignant when they saw the wonders He performed and the children shouting in the temple courts, "Hosanna to the Son of David!"

16 "Do You hear what these children are saying?" they asked.

"Yes," Jesus answered. "Have you never read:

'From the mouths of children and infants You have ordained praise'?"

17 Then He left them and went out of the city to Bethany, where He spent the night.

THE BARREN FIG TREE // MARK 11:12–14; MARK 11:20–25

18 In the morning, as Jesus was returning to the city, He was hungry. 19 Seeing a fig tree by the road, He went up to it but found nothing on it except leaves. "May you never bear fruit again!" He said. And immediately the tree withered.

20 When the disciples saw this, they marveled and asked, "How did the fig tree wither so quickly?"

21 "Truly I tell you," Jesus replied, "if you have faith and do not doubt, not only will you do what was done to the fig tree, but even if you say to this mountain, 'Be lifted up and thrown into the sea,' it will happen. 22 If you believe, you will receive whatever you ask for in prayer."

JESUS' AUTHORITY CHALLENGED // MARK 11:27–33; LUKE 20:1–8

23 When Jesus returned to the temple courts and began to teach, the chief priests and elders of the people came up to Him. "By what authority are You doing these things?" they asked. "And who gave You this authority?"

24 "I will also ask you one question," Jesus replied, "and if you answer Me, I will tell you by what authority I am doing these things. 25 What was the source of John's baptism? Was it from heaven or from men?"

They deliberated among themselves and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' He will ask, 'Why then did you not believe him?' 26 But if we say, 'From men,' we are afraid of the people, for they all regard John as a prophet." 27 So they answered, "We do not know."

And Jesus replied, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I am doing these things.

THE PARABLE OF THE TWO SONS

28 But what do you think? There was a man who had two sons. He went to the first one and said, 'Son, go and work today in the vineyard.'

29 'I will not,' he replied. But later he changed his mind and went.

30 Then the man went to the second son and told him the same thing.

'I will, sir,' he said. But he did not go.

31 Which of the two did the will of his father?"

"The first," they answered.

Jesus said to them, "Truly I tell you, the tax collectors and prostitutes are entering the kingdom of God before you. 32 For

- **MT 21:9 [FULFILLS]** The crowd would cry save us, which is Hosanna ← PS 118:25 p.964
- **MT 21:9 [FULFILLS]** The Blessed One presented to Israel ← PS 118:26a p.964
- **MT 21:12 [FULFILLS]** Sudden appearance at the Temple ← MAL 3:1b p.1514
- **MT 21:13 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 56:7; JER 7:11 p.1131
- **MT 21:16 [FULFILLS]** From the mouths of infants He would perfect His praise ← PS 8:2 p.888
- **MT 21:18 [MIRACLE]** Fig tree withered at Jesus' word

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

John came to you in the way of righteousness, and you did not believe him, but the tax collectors and prostitutes did. And even after you saw this, you did not repent and believe him.

THE PARABLE OF THE WICKED TENANTS // MARK 12:1–12; LUKE 20:9–18

33 Listen to another parable: There was a landowner who planted a vineyard. He put a wall around it, dug a winepress in it, and built a tower. Then he rented it out to some tenants and went away on a journey.

34 When the harvest time drew near, he sent his servants to the tenants to collect his share of the fruit. 35 But the tenants seized his servants. They beat one, killed another, and stoned a third.

36 Again, he sent other servants, more than the first group. But the tenants did the same to them.

37 Finally, he sent his son to them. 'They will respect my son,' he said.

38 But when the tenants saw the son, they said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him and take his inheritance.' 39 So they seized him and threw him out of the vineyard and killed him.

40 Therefore, when the owner of the vineyard returns, what will he do to those tenants?"

41 "He will bring those wretches to a wretched end," they replied, "and will rent out the vineyard to other tenants who will give him his share of the fruit at harvest time."

42 Jesus said to them, "Have you never read in the Scriptures:

'The stone the builders rejected
has become the cornerstone.
This is from the Lord,
and it is marvelous in our eyes'?

43 Therefore I tell you that the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and given to a people who will produce its fruit. 44 He who falls on this stone will be broken to pieces, but he on whom it falls will be crushed."

45 When the chief priests and Pharisees heard His parables, they knew that Jesus was speaking about them. 46 Although they wanted to arrest Him, they were afraid of the crowds, because the people regarded Him as a prophet.

- **MT 21:33 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 5:1-2 p.1067
- **MT 21:37 [PROPHECY]** The owner's son would be seized, thrown out, and killed by the tenants → MT 27:1-2; HEB 13:12 · MEDIUM p.1597
- **MT 21:38 [FULFILLS]** Messiah would be cut off (killed) ← DAN 9:26a p.1346
- **MT 21:42 [FULFILLS]** The rejected stone becomes the chief cornerstone ← PS 118:22-23 p.964

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

The Pharisees and Sadducees take turns trying to trap Jesus with trick questions about taxes, the resurrection and the greatest commandment. He answers every one and then stumps them with one question of His own about Psalm 110. After that, nobody dared to ask Him anything.

THE PARABLE OF THE BANQUET // LUKE 14:15–24

1 Once again, Jesus spoke to them in parables: 2 "The kingdom of heaven is like a king who prepared a wedding banquet for his son. 3 He sent his servants to call those he had invited to the banquet, but they refused to come.

4 Again, he sent other servants and said, 'Tell those who have been invited that I have prepared my dinner. My oxen and fattened cattle have been killed, and everything is ready. Come to the wedding banquet.'

5 But they paid no attention and went away, one to his field, another to his business. 6 The rest seized his servants, mistreated them, and killed them.

7 The king was enraged, and he sent his troops to destroy those murderers and burn their city. 8 Then he said to his servants, 'The wedding banquet is ready, but those I invited were not worthy. 9 Go therefore to the crossroads and invite to the banquet as many as you can find.'

10 So the servants went out into the streets and gathered everyone they could find, both evil and good, and the wedding hall was filled with guests.

11 But when the king came in to see the guests, he spotted a man who was not dressed in wedding clothes. 12 'Friend,' he

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

asked, 'how did you get in here without wedding clothes?'

But the man was speechless.

13 Then the king told the servants, 'Tie him hand and foot, and throw him into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.'

14 For many are called, but few are chosen."

PAYING TAXES TO CAESAR // MARK 12:13–17; LUKE 20:19–26

15 Then the Pharisees went out and conspired to trap Jesus in His words. 16 They sent their disciples to Him along with the Herodians. "Teacher," they said, "we know that You are honest and that You teach the way of God in accordance with the truth. You seek favor from no one, because You pay no attention to external appearance. 17 So tell us what You think: Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not?"

18 But Jesus knew their evil intent and said, "You hypocrites, why are you testing Me? 19 Show Me the coin used for the tax."

And they brought Him a Roman coin.

20 "Whose image is this," He asked, "and whose inscription?"

21 "Caesar's," they answered.

So Jesus told them, "Give to Caesar what is Caesar's, and to God what is God's."

22 And when they heard this, they were amazed. So they left Him and went away.

THE SADDUCEES AND THE RESURRECTION // MARK 12:18–27; LUKE 20:27–40

23 That same day the Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to Jesus and questioned Him. 24 *"Teacher,"* they said, *"Moses declared that if a man dies without having children, his brother is to marry the widow and raise up offspring for him.* 25 Now there were seven brothers among us. The first one married and died without having children. So he left his wife to his brother. 26 The same thing happened to the second and third brothers, down to the seventh. 27 And last of all, the woman died. 28 In the resurrection, then, whose wife will she be of the seven? For all of them were married to her."

29 Jesus answered, "You are mistaken because you do not know the Scriptures or the power of God. 30 In the resurrection, people will neither marry nor be given in marriage. Instead, they will be like the angels in heaven. 31 But concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read what God said to you: 32 *'I am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob'?* He is not the God of the dead, but of the living."

33 When the crowds heard this, they were astonished at His teaching.

THE GREATEST COMMANDMENT // DEUTERONOMY 6:1–19; MARK 12:28–34

34 And when the Pharisees heard that Jesus had silenced the Sadducees, they themselves gathered together. 35 One of them, an expert in the law, tested Him with a question: 36 "Teacher, which commandment is the greatest in the Law?"

37 Jesus declared, *"'Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.'* 38 This is the first and greatest commandment. 39 And the second is like it: *'Love your neighbor as yourself.'* 40 All the Law and the Prophets hang on these two commandments."

WHOSE SON IS THE CHRIST? // MARK 12:35–37; LUKE 20:41–44

41 While the Pharisees were assembled, Jesus questioned them: 42 "What do you think about the Christ? Whose son is He?"

"David's," they answered.

43 Jesus said to them, "How then does David in the Spirit call Him 'Lord'? For he says:

44 *"'The Lord said to my Lord,*
"Sit at My right hand
until I put Your enemies
under Your feet."'

■ **MT 22:24 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 25:5 p.316

■ **MT 22:32 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 3:6 p.124
■ **MT 22:37 [HEART]** Jesus names this the greatest commandment: love God with all your heart.
■ **MT 22:37 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 6:5 p.293
■ **MT 22:38 [HEART]** This is the first and greatest commandment. The second is like it: love your neighbor as yourself. A heart that loves God will love people.
■ **MT 22:39 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 19:18 p.205
■ **MT 22:43 [FULFILLS]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

45 So if David calls Him 'Lord,' how can He
be David's son?"

46 No one was able to answer a word, and from that day on no one dared to question Him any further.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus unloads a string of woes on the scribes and Pharisees: hypocrites, blind guides, whitewashed tombs. It is the most direct sermon in the book. It ends with Jesus weeping over Jerusalem, longing to gather her children like a hen gathers her chicks.

WOES TO SCRIBES AND PHARISEES // LUKE 11:37–54

1 Then Jesus spoke to the crowds and to His disciples: 2 "The scribes and Pharisees sit in Moses' seat. 3 So practice and observe everything they tell you. But do not do what they do, for they do not practice what they preach. 4 They tie up heavy, burdensome loads and lay them on men's shoulders, but they themselves are not willing to lift a finger to move them.

5 All their deeds are done for men to see. They broaden their phylacteries and lengthen their tassels. 6 They love the places of honor at banquets, the chief seats in the synagogues, 7 the greetings in the marketplaces, and the title of 'Rabbi' by which they are addressed.

8 But you are not to be called 'Rabbi,' for you have one Teacher, and you are all brothers. 9 And do not call anyone on earth your father, for you have one Father, who is in heaven. 10 Nor are you to be called instructors, for you have one Instructor, the Christ. 11 The greatest among you shall be your servant. 12 For whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted.

13 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You shut the kingdom of heaven in men's faces. You yourselves do not enter, nor will you let in those who wish to enter. 14 [Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You defraud widows of their houses, and for a show make lengthy prayers. Therefore you will receive greater condemnation.]

15 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You traverse land and sea to win a single convert, and when he becomes one, you make him twice as much a son of hell as you are.

16 Woe to you, blind guides! You say, 'If anyone swears by the temple, it means nothing; but if anyone swears by the gold of the temple, he is bound by his oath.' 17 You blind fools! Which is greater: the gold, or the temple that makes it sacred? 18 And you say, 'If anyone swears by the altar, it means nothing; but if anyone swears by the gift on it, he is bound by his oath.' 19 You blind men! Which is greater: the gift, or the altar that makes it sacred? 20 So then, he who swears by the altar swears by it and by everything on it. 21 And he who swears by the temple swears by it and by the One who dwells in it. 22 And he who swears by heaven swears by God's throne and by the One who sits on it.

23 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You pay tithes of mint, dill, and cumin. But you have disregarded the weightier matters of the law: justice, mercy, and faithfulness. You should have practiced the latter, without neglecting the former. 24 You blind guides! You strain out a gnat but swallow a camel.

25 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You clean the outside of the cup and dish, but inside they are full of greed and self-indulgence. 26 Blind Pharisee! First clean the inside of the cup and dish, so that the outside may become clean as well.

27 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You are like whitewashed tombs, which look beautiful on the outside but on the inside are full of dead men's bones and every kind of impurity. 28 In the same way, on the outside you appear to be righteous, but on the inside you are full of hypocrisy and wickedness.

29 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, you hypocrites! You build tombs for the

■ **MT 22:44 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 110:1 p.960

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | END TIMES PROPHECIES
ARCHAEOLOGY | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

prophets and decorate the monuments of the righteous. 30 And you say, 'If we had lived in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partners with them in shedding the blood of the prophets.' 31 So you testify against yourselves that you are the sons of those who murdered the prophets. 32 Fill up, then, the measure of the sin of your fathers. 33 You snakes! You brood of vipers! How will you escape the sentence of hell?

34 Because of this, I am sending you prophets and wise men and teachers. Some of them you will kill and crucify, and others you will flog in your synagogues and persecute from town to town. 35 And so upon you will come all the righteous blood shed on earth, from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood of Zechariah son of Berechiah, whom you murdered between the temple and the altar. 36 Truly I tell you, all these things will come upon this generation.

LAMENT OVER JERUSALEM // LUKE 13:31–35

37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to her, how often I have longed to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were unwilling! 38 Look, your house is left to you desolate. 39 For I tell you that you will not see Me again until you say, *'Blessed is He who comes in the name of the Lord.'"*

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

The disciples admire the temple stones, and Jesus says not one will be left on another. About forty years later the Romans proved Him right. Then He gives the Olivet Discourse about the end of the age and His return, and says nobody knows the day or hour, which has not stopped people from guessing.

TEMPLE DESTRUCTION AND OTHER SIGNS // MARK 13:1–8; LUKE 21:5–9

1 As Jesus left the temple and was walking away, His disciples came up to Him to point out its buildings.

2 "Do you see all these things?" He replied. "Truly I tell you, not one stone here will be left on another; every one will be thrown down."

3 While Jesus was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately. "Tell us," they said, "when will these things happen, and what will be the sign of Your coming and of the end of the age?"

4 Jesus answered, "See to it that no one deceives you. 5 For many will come in My name, claiming, 'I am the Christ,' and will deceive many. 6 You will hear of wars and rumors of wars, but see to it that you are not alarmed. These things must happen, but the end is still to come. 7 Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be famines and earthquakes in various places. 8 All these are the beginning of birth pains.

WITNESSING TO ALL NATIONS // MARK 13:9–13; LUKE 21:10–19

9 Then they will deliver you over to be persecuted and killed, and you will be hated by all nations because of My name. 10 At

- **MT 23:35 [FULFILLS]** Abel's blood cries out from the ground. Jesus' blood speaks a better word ← GEN 4:10 · MEDIUM p.52
- **MT 23:35 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2CH 24:20-22 p.739
- **MT 23:37 [PROPHECY]** O Jerusalem, Jerusalem... your house is left to you desolate → HISTORY: Roman soldiers led by Titus destroyed Jerusalem and its temple in AD 70. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War books 5 and 6.
- **MT 23:37 [FULFILLS]** A man who would be a hiding place from the storm ← IS 32:2 · MEDIUM p.1099
- **MT 23:37 [FULFILLS]** The Shepherd sent to the doomed flock would be detested and rejected, and God would break His staff of favor with the people ← ZECH 11:4-11 · MEDIUM p.1501
- **MT 23:39 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:26 p.964

- **MT 24:2 [PROPHECY]** Not one stone shall be left here upon another, that shall not be thrown down (regarding the Temple) → HISTORY: Rome burned the temple in AD 70 and tore the city down. Recorded by Josephus. Fallen Temple Mount stones lie below the Western Wall.
- **MT 24:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Temple stones thrown down in AD 70 → FIELD NOTES p.1588
- **MT 24:4 [PROPHECY]** Many would come claiming to be the Christ and deceive many → HISTORY: Theudas about AD 45 and the Egyptian in the AD 50s led crowds astray. Recorded by Josephus. Bar Kokhba was hailed as Messiah in AD 132. · MEDIUM
- **MT 24:6 [PROPHECY]** Wars, nations rising against nations, famines, and earthquakes would be the beginning of birth pains → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · JESUS SPEAKING

that time many will fall away and will betray and hate one another, 11 and many false prophets will arise and deceive many.

12 Because of the multiplication of wickedness, the love of most will grow cold. 13 But the one who perseveres to the end will be saved.

14 And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached in all the world as a testimony to all nations, and then the end will come.

THE ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION // MARK 13:14–23; LUKE 21:20–24

15 So when you see standing in the holy place 'the abomination of desolation,' spoken of by the prophet Daniel (let the reader understand), 16 then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains. 17 Let no one on the housetop come down to retrieve anything from his house. 18 And let no one in the field return for his cloak.

19 How miserable those days will be for pregnant and nursing mothers! 20 Pray that your flight will not occur in the winter or on the Sabbath. 21 For at that time there will be great tribulation, unseen from the beginning of the world until now, and never to be seen again. 22 If those days had not been cut short, nobody would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be cut short.

23 At that time, if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'There He is!' do not believe it. 24 For false Christs and false prophets will appear and perform great signs and wonders to deceive even the elect, if that were possible. 25 See, I have told you in advance.

THE RETURN OF THE SON OF MAN // MARK 13:24–27; LUKE 21:25–28

26 So if they tell you, 'There He is, in the wilderness,' do not go out, or, 'Here He is, in the inner rooms,' do not believe it. 27 For just as the lightning comes from the east and flashes as far as the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man. 28 Wherever there is a carcass, there the vultures will gather.

29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days:

'The sun will be darkened,
and the moon will not give its light;
the stars will fall from the sky,
and the powers of the heavens will be
shaken.'

30 At that time the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn. They will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. 31 And He will send out His angels with a loud trumpet call, and they will gather His elect from the four winds, from one end of the heavens to the other.

THE LESSON OF THE FIG TREE // MARK 13:28–31; LUKE 21:29–33

32 Now learn this lesson from the fig tree: As soon as its branches become tender and sprout leaves, you know that summer is near. 33 So also, when you see all these things, you will know that He is near, right at the door. 34 Truly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things have happened. 35 Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will never pass away.

- **MT 24:9 [PROPHECY]** They will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you, and you will be hated by all nations for My name's sake → HISTORY: Nero killed Christians in AD 64, and Diocletian's persecution ran AD 303 to 311. Recorded by Tacitus and Eusebius.
- **MT 24:14 [PROPHECY]** This gospel of the kingdom will be preached in all the world as a witness to all the nations → HISTORY: By 2025 over 99 percent of people could reach at least some Scripture in their language. Reported by Wycliffe Global Alliance.
- **MT 24:15 [PROPHECY]** When you see the abomination of desolation spoken of by Daniel the prophet standing in the holy place... then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains. For then there will be great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of the world → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **MT 24:15 [DEMONIC]** Jesus warns of the abomination of desolation in the holy place
- **MT 24:15 [FULFILLS]** In the middle of the week he shall bring an end to sacrifice and offering ← DAN 9:27 · MEDIUM p.1347
- **MT 24:29 [PROPHECY]** Immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light; the stars will fall from heaven... they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. And He will send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together His elect from the four winds → STILL TO COME
- **MT 24:29 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 13:10; 34:4 p.1076
- **MT 24:30 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:13; ZECH 12:10 p.1341
- **MT 24:34 [NOTE]** THIS GENERATION. See This Generation.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE TEMPLE STONES OF AD 70

MATTHEW 24:1 TO 2



Fallen temple stones on the street below Robinson's Arch, Jerusalem.

WHAT IT IS

Massive stones from the top of the temple walls, still lying where Roman soldiers pushed them down onto the street below.

HOW OLD IT IS

Herod's builders set these stones in place starting about 20 BC. The Romans threw them down in AD 70.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Uncovered in excavations led by Benjamin Mazar beginning in 1968, next to Robinson's Arch at the southwest corner of the Temple Mount.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Left in place in the Jerusalem Archaeological Park.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Jesus said not one stone would be left on another. About forty years later, in AD 70, the Roman army under Titus destroyed the temple. The Jewish historian Josephus describes it, and the stones are still lying in the street.

WHAT JOSEPHUS SAW

Josephus watched the siege. He wrote that Titus ordered the whole city and temple torn down, leaving only three tall towers, to show later people how strong the city had been, and part of the city wall on the west side for his soldiers' camp. Jewish War 7.1.1.

HOW BIG THEY ARE

Many of the fallen stones weigh several tons each. Deeper in the Western Wall, one stone Herod's men set in place is about 44 feet long, one of the biggest building blocks people ever moved.

FOUND IN THE SAME PILE

One stone that fell here was carved with the words to the place of trumpeting, where a priest blew the trumpet for the Sabbath. See The Place of Trumpeting in Hebrews, p.1988. The Arch of Titus in Rome still shows the soldiers carrying off the temple lampstand. See The Temple Treasures in Rome in Hebrews, p.1989.

THE STREET BELOW

The stones crashed onto a paved street that ran along the bottom of the western wall, lined with shops. They hit so hard that some paving stones cracked and sank.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | END TIMES PROPHECIES | JESUS SPEAKING

READINESS AT ANY HOUR // GENESIS 6:1–7; MARK 13:32–37; LUKE 12:35–48

36 No one knows about that day or hour,
not even the angels in heaven, nor the
Son, but only the Father. 37 As it was in the
days of Noah, so will it be at the coming
of the Son of Man. 38 For in the days be-
fore the flood, people were eating and
drinking, marrying and giving in marriage,
up to the day Noah entered the ark. 39 And
they were oblivious until the flood came
and swept them all away. So will it be at
the coming of the Son of Man. 40 Two men
will be in the field: one will be taken and
the other left. 41 Two women will be grind-
ing at the mill: one will be taken and the
other left.

42 Therefore keep watch, because you do
not know the day on which your Lord will
come. 43 But understand this: If the home-
owner had known in which watch of the
night the thief was coming, he would have
kept watch and would not have let his
house be broken into. 44 For this reason,
you also must be ready, because the Son
of Man will come at an hour you do not
expect.

45 Who then is the faithful and wise ser-
vant, whom the master has put in charge
of his household, to give the others their
food at the proper time? 46 Blessed is that
servant whose master finds him doing so
when he returns. 47 Truly I tell you, he will
put him in charge of all his possessions.

48 But suppose that servant is wicked and
says in his heart, 'My master will be away
a long time.' 49 And he begins to beat his
fellow servants and to eat and drink with
drunkards. 50 The master of that servant
will come on a day he does not expect
and at an hour he does not anticipate. 51
Then he will cut him to pieces and assign
him a place with the hypocrites, where
there will be weeping and gnashing of
teeth.

- **MT 24:36 [PROPHECY]** Of that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, but My Father only. But as the days of Noah were, so also will the coming of the Son of Man be → STILL TO COME
- **MT 24:37 [FULFILLS]** The flood came suddenly and swept away all who were outside the ark. Jesus said His coming will be like this ← GEN 7:23 p.56
- **MT 24:40 [PROPHECY]** Two men will be in the field: one will be taken and the other left. Two women will be grinding at the mill: one will be taken and the other left → STILL TO COME
- **MT 24:42 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man will come at an hour no one expects → STILL TO COME

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

Three stories about being ready: ten bridesmaids and their oil lamps, three servants with their bags of gold, and the sheep and the goats. The take-away is that what you do for the least of these, you do for Jesus. The guy who buried his money in the backyard does not come off well.

THE PARABLE OF THE TEN VIRGINS

1 "At that time the kingdom of heaven will
be like ten virgins who took their lamps
and went out to meet the bridegroom. 2
Five of them were foolish, and five were
wise. 3 The foolish ones took their lamps
but did not take along any extra oil. 4 But
the wise ones took oil in flasks along with
their lamps. 5 When the bridegroom was
delayed, they all became drowsy and fell
asleep.

6 At midnight the cry rang out: 'Here is the
bridegroom! Come out to meet him!'

7 Then all the virgins woke up and trimmed
their lamps. 8 The foolish ones said to the
wise, 'Give us some of your oil; our lamps
are going out.'

9 'No,' said the wise ones, 'or there may
not be enough for both us and you. In-
stead, go to those who sell oil and buy
some for yourselves.'

10 But while they were on their way to buy
it, the bridegroom arrived. Those who
were ready went in with him to the wed-
ding banquet, and the door was shut.

11 Later the other virgins arrived and said,
'Lord, lord, open the door for us!'

12 But he replied, 'Truly I tell you, I do not
know you.'

13 Therefore keep watch, because you do
not know the day or the hour.

JESUS SPEAKING

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THIS GENERATION

When Did Jesus Say It Would Happen?

MATTHEW 24:1 TO 51 · MARK 13:30 TO 32 · LUKE 21:20 TO 32

WHAT JESUS SAID

Truly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things have happened, 24:34. C. S. Lewis called the same words in Mark 13:30 certainly the most embarrassing verse in the Bible, then pointed to the next verses: no one knows the day or hour, not even the Son. Here is how Christians read it.

IT HAPPENED IN AD 70

All these things means the fall of the temple Jesus had just predicted, 24:2. About forty years later, in AD 70, Rome burned the temple. Best case: in Matthew this generation always means the people alive then, 11:16 and 23:36.

WHAT THE CHRISTIANS DID

Jesus said to flee when you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, Luke 21:20 to 21. Eusebius says the Christians of Jerusalem fled to Pella before the war (Church History 3.5.3).

SPLIT IN TWO

Verses 4 to 35 are about AD 70. From 24:36, that day and hour, Jesus turns to His second coming. Best case: it explains both the near and the far.

THE GENERATION THAT SEES THE SIGNS

The people alive when the signs start will see the end. Hal Lindsey in 1970 tied it to Israel's rebirth in 1948 and suggested about forty years. In 1988 Edgar Whisenant sent out millions of copies of 88 Reasons Why the Rapture Will Be in 1988. 1988 came and went. Best case: it keeps the words for the future.

THIS RACE

Generation can also mean a people: the Jewish people will last until the end. Best case: the word allows it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

No one knows the day or hour, 24:36. Be ready, 24:44. See also Four Ways to Read Revelation, p.2082.

THE PARABLE OF THE BAGS OF GOLD // LUKE 19:11–27

14 For it is just like a man going on a journey, who called his servants and entrusted them with his possessions. 15 To one he gave five bags of gold, to another two bags, and to another one bag—each according to his own ability. And he went on his journey. 16 The servant who had received the five bags of gold went at once and put them to work and gained five more. 17 Likewise, the one with the two bags of gold gained two more. 18 But the servant who had received the one bag of gold went off, dug a hole in the ground, and hid his master's money.

19 After a long time the master of those servants returned and settled accounts with them. 20 The servant who had received the five bags of gold came and presented five more. 'Master,' he said, 'you entrusted me with five bags of gold. See, I have gained five more.'

21 His master replied, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful with a few things; I will put you in charge of many things. Enter into the joy of your master!'

22 The servant who had received the two bags of gold also came and said, 'Master, you entrusted me with two bags of gold. See, I have gained two more.'

23 His master replied, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful with a few things; I will put you in charge of many things. Enter into the joy of your master!'

24 Finally, the servant who had received the one bag of gold came and said, 'Master, I knew that you are a hard man, reaping where you have not sown and gathering where you have not scattered seed. 25 So I was afraid and went out and hid your gold in the ground. See, you have what belongs to you.'

26 'You wicked, lazy servant!' replied his master. 'You knew that I reap where I have not sown and gather where I have not scattered seed. 27 Then you should have deposited my money with the bankers,

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | JESUS SPEAKING

and on my return I would have received it back with interest.

28 Therefore take the bag of gold from him and give it to the one who has ten bags of gold. 29 For everyone who has will be given more, and he will have an abundance. But the one who does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him. 30 And throw that worthless servant into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.'

THE SHEEP AND THE GOATS

31 When the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the angels with Him, He will sit on His glorious throne. 32 All the nations will be gathered before Him, and He will separate the people one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. 33 He will place the sheep on His right and the goats on His left.

34 Then the King will say to those on His right, 'Come, you who are blessed by My Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. 35 For I was hungry and you gave Me something to eat, I was thirsty and you gave Me something to drink, I was a stranger and you took Me in, 36 I was naked and you clothed Me, I was sick and you looked after Me, I was in prison and you visited Me.'

37 Then the righteous will answer Him, 'Lord, when did we see You hungry and feed You, or thirsty and give You something to drink? 38 When did we see You a stranger and take You in, or naked and clothe You? 39 When did we see You sick or in prison and visit You?'

40 And the King will reply, 'Truly I tell you, whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers of Mine, you did for Me.'

41 Then He will say to those on His left, 'Depart from Me, you who are cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels. 42 For I was hungry and you gave Me nothing to eat, I was thirsty and you gave Me nothing to drink, 43 I was a stranger and you did not take Me in, I was naked and you did not clothe Me, I was sick and in prison and you did not look after Me.'

44 And they too will reply, 'Lord, when did we see You hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison, and did not minister to You?'

45 Then the King will answer, 'Truly I tell you, whatever you did not do for one of the least of these, you did not do for Me.'

46 And they will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life."

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

A woman pours expensive perfume on Jesus, Judas sells Him out for thirty pieces of silver, and Jesus shares the Last Supper. He prays in Gethsemane while His best friends fall asleep. Then He is arrested, put on trial at night, and Peter denies Him three times before the rooster crows.

THE PLOT TO KILL JESUS // MARK 14:1–2; LUKE 22:1–2; JOHN 11:45–57

1 When Jesus had finished saying all these things, He told His disciples, 2 "You know that the Passover is two days away, and the Son of Man will be handed over to be crucified."

3 At that time the chief priests and elders of the people assembled in the courtyard of the high priest, whose name was Caiaphas, 4 and they conspired to arrest Jesus covertly and kill Him. 5 "But not during the feast," they said, "or there may be a riot among the people."

JESUS ANOINTED AT BETHANY // MARK 14:3–9; LUKE 7:36–50; JOHN 12:1–8

6 While Jesus was in Bethany in the home of Simon the Leper, 7 a woman came to

- **MT 25:31 [PROPHECY]** When the Son of Man comes in His glory, and all the holy angels with Him, then He will sit on the throne of His glory. All the nations will be gathered before Him, and He will separate them one from another, as a shepherd divides his sheep from the goats → STILL TO COME
- **MT 25:46 [PROPHECY]** The wicked will go to eternal punishment and the righteous to eternal life → STILL TO COME
- **MT 26:2 [PROPHECY]** After two days is the Passover, and the Son of Man will be delivered up to be crucified → Fulfilled two days later at the Passover (Matt 26-27) p.1591
- **MT 26:4 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MT 26:6 [FULFILLS]** Wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE JESUS SPEAKING

Him with an alabaster jar of expensive perfume, which she poured on His head as He reclined at the table.

8 When the disciples saw this, they were indignant and asked, "Why this waste? 9 This perfume could have been sold at a high price, and the money given to the poor."

10 Aware of this, Jesus asked, "Why are you bothering this woman? She has done a beautiful deed to Me. 11 The poor you will always have with you, but you will not always have Me. 12 By pouring this perfume on Me, she has prepared My body for burial. 13 Truly I tell you, wherever this gospel is preached in all the world, what she has done will also be told in memory of her."

JUDAS AGREES TO BETRAY JESUS // MARK 14:10–11; LUKE 22:3–6

14 Then one of the Twelve, the one called Judas Iscariot, went to the chief priests 15 and asked, "What are you willing to give me if I hand Him over to you?" And they set out for him thirty pieces of silver. 16 So from then on Judas looked for an opportunity to betray Jesus.

PREPARING THE PASSOVER // MARK 14:12–16; LUKE 22:7–13

17 On the first day of the Feast of Unleavened Bread, the disciples came to Jesus and asked, "Where do You want us to prepare for You to eat the Passover?"

18 He answered, "Go into the city to a certain man and tell him that the Teacher says, 'My time is near. I will keep the Passover with My disciples at your house.'" 19 So the disciples did as Jesus had directed them and prepared the Passover.

THE LAST SUPPER // MARK 14:17–26; LUKE 22:14–23; 1 CORINTHIANS 11:17–34

20 When evening came, Jesus was reclining with the twelve disciples. 21 And while they were eating, He said to them, "Truly I tell you, one of you will betray Me."

22 They were deeply grieved and began to ask Him one after another, "Surely not I, Lord?"

23 Jesus answered, "The one who has dipped his hand into the bowl with Me will betray Me. 24 The Son of Man will go just as it is written about Him, but woe to that man by whom He is betrayed. It would be better for him if he had not been born."

25 Then Judas, who would betray Him, said, "Surely not I, Rabbi?"

Jesus answered, "You have said it yourself."

26 While they were eating, Jesus took bread, spoke a blessing and broke it, and gave it to the disciples, saying, "Take and eat; this is My body."

27 Then He took the cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. 28 This is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins. 29 I tell you, I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it anew with you in My Father's kingdom."

30 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.

told as a memorial to her (regarding Mary of Bethany) ← MK 14:9; MT 26:13 p.1632
- **MT 26:12 [PROPHECY]** She has done this for My burial (regarding Mary of Bethany's anointing with costly oil) → Fulfilled at His burial (Matt 27:57-61; JN 19:38-42) p.1601
- **MT 26:13 [PROPHECY]** Wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be told as a memorial to her (regarding Mary of Bethany) → MT 26:6-13; MK 14:3-9; JN 12:1-8 p.1591
- **MT 26:14 [FULFILLS]** Thirty pieces of silver thrown into the house of the Lord to the potter ← ZECH 11:12-13 p.1501
- **MT 26:18 [PROPHECY]** Go into the city to a certain man, and say to him, 'The Teacher says, My time is at hand; I will keep the Passover at your house.' A man carrying a pitcher of water will meet you → Fulfilled
- **MT 26:21 [PROPHECY]** One of you will betray Me → MT 26:47-50 p.1594
- **MT 26:26 [FULFILLS]** Melchizedek's bread and wine foreshadow the Lord's Supper ← GEN 14:18 · MEDIUM p.67
- **MT 26:26 [NOTE]** THIS IS MY BODY. See This Is My Body.
- **MT 26:27 [FULFILLS]** I will lift up the cup of salvation ← PS 116:13 · MEDIUM p.963
- **MT 26:28 [FULFILLS]** This is the blood of the covenant and 3 more ← EX 24:8; LEV 17:11; ZECH 9:11; MT 1:21 p.153
- **MT 26:29 [PROPHECY]** I will not drink of this fruit of the vine from now on until that day when I drink it new with you in My Father's kingdom → STILL TO COME

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THIS IS MY BODY

The Lord's Supper

MATTHEW 26:26 TO 29 · 1 CORINTHIANS 11:23 TO 29 · JOHN 6:53 TO 63

WHAT JESUS SAID

Take and eat; this is My body. This is My blood of the covenant, 26:26 to 28. Luke and Paul add, do this in remembrance of Me, Luke 22:19 and 1 Corinthians 11:24. Christians agree Jesus said it. They split over what it means.

THE EARLY CHURCH

About AD 110 Ignatius warned against people who do not confess the Eucharist to be the flesh of our Savior (Smyrnaeans 7). About AD 155 Justin Martyr said it is not common bread (First Apology 66). They did not try to explain how.

CATHOLIC

The bread and wine truly become the body and blood of Christ. Only the look and taste of bread and wine remain. This is called transubstantiation, a word used at the Fourth Lateran Council in 1215 and defined at the Council of Trent in 1551.

ORTHODOX

The bread and wine truly become His body and blood, but it is a holy mystery. They do not explain it with philosophy.

JOHN 6

Jesus said, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink His blood, you have no life in you, John 6:53. Many disciples left Him over it, 6:66. Some read it as being about the supper; others say it is about believing, since He adds, the words I have spoken to you are spirit and life, 6:63.

LUTHER

Christ's real body and blood are truly present in, with and under the bread and wine, and the bread is still bread. Lutherans call it the real presence. They reject the label consubstantiation.

Marburg, 1529

MATTHEW 26:26 · JOHN 10:9 · 1 CORINTHIANS 10:16 · 11:24 TO 29

THE FIGHT AT MARBURG

In October 1529 Prince Philip of Hesse brought Luther and the Swiss reformer Ulrich Zwingli together to unite the Protestants. Luther wrote Hoc est corpus meum, this is my body, in chalk on the table. They agreed on 14 of 15 points. This was the one they could not settle.

ZWINGLI

Is means stands for, the way Jesus said I am the door, John 10:9. The supper is a memorial that remembers His death. Most Baptists and many evangelicals hold this view today, and often call it an ordinance.

CALVIN

Christ is truly received, but in a spiritual way. By faith and through the Holy Spirit, believers really feed on Christ. Reformed and Presbyterian churches hold this view.

OTHER GROUPS

Anglicans and Methodists hold a range of views. Quakers and the Salvation Army do not keep the supper with bread and wine at all. Churches also differ on how often: the early church met to break bread on the first day of the week, Acts 20:7. Some churches give it to all believers; others only to their own members.

THE KEY VERSES EACH SIDE USES

Real presence: this is My body; the cup is a sharing in the blood of Christ, 1 Corinthians 10:16; whoever eats in an unworthy way sins against the body and blood, 11:27. Symbol: in remembrance of Me, 11:24; the Spirit gives life, the flesh profits nothing, John 6:63.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus commanded it. It proclaims His death until He comes, 1 Corinthians 11:26. Examine yourself first, 11:28.

JESUS PREDICTS PETER'S DENIAL // ZECHARIAH 13:7–9; MARK 14:27–31; LUKE 22:31–38; JOHN 13:36–38

31 Then Jesus said to them, "This very night you will all fall away on account of Me. For it is written:

'I will strike the Shepherd,

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

and the sheep of the flock will be scattered.'

32 But after I have risen, I will go ahead of
you into Galilee."

33 Peter said to Him, "Even if all fall away
on account of You, I never will."

34 "Truly I tell you," Jesus declared, "this
very night, before the rooster crows, you
will deny Me three times."

35 Peter replied, "Even if I have to die with
You, I will never deny You." And all the
other disciples said the same thing.

JESUS PRAYS AT GETHSEMANE // MARK 14:32–42; LUKE 22:39–46

36 Then Jesus went with His disciples to a
place called Gethsemane, and He told
them, "Sit here while I go over there and
pray."

37 He took with Him Peter and the two
sons of Zebedee and began to be sorrow-
ful and deeply distressed. 38 Then He said
to them, "My soul is consumed with sor-
row to the point of death. Stay here and
keep watch with Me."

39 Going a little farther, He fell facedown
and prayed, "My Father, if it is possible,
let this cup pass from Me. Yet not as I will,
but as You will."

40 Then Jesus returned to the disciples
and found them sleeping. "Were you not
able to keep watch with Me for one hour?"
He asked Peter. 41 "Watch and pray so that
you will not enter into temptation. For the
spirit is willing, but the body is weak."

42 A second time He went away and
prayed, "My Father, if this cup cannot
pass unless I drink it, may Your will be
done." 43 And again Jesus returned and
found them sleeping, for their eyes were
heavy.

44 So He left them and went away once
more and prayed a third time, saying the
same thing. 45 Then He returned to the
disciples and said, "Are you still sleeping
and resting? Look, the hour is near, and
the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands
of sinners. 46 Rise, let us go! See, My be-
trayer is approaching!"

THE BETRAYAL OF JESUS // MARK 14:43–52; LUKE 22:47–53; JOHN 18:1–14

47 While Jesus was still speaking, Judas,
one of the Twelve, arrived, accompanied
by a large crowd armed with swords and
clubs, sent from the chief priests and el-
ders of the people.

48 Now the betrayer had arranged a signal
with them: "The One I kiss is the man; ar-
rest Him." 49 Going directly to Jesus, he
said, "Greetings, Rabbi!" and kissed Him.

50 "Friend," Jesus replied, "do what you
came for."

Then the men stepped forward, seized
Jesus, and arrested Him. 51 At this, one of
Jesus' companions drew his sword and
struck the servant of the high priest, cut-
ting off his ear.

52 "Put your sword back in its place," Je-
sus said to him. "For all who draw the
sword will die by the sword. 53 Are you not
aware that I can call on My Father, and He
will at once put at My disposal more than
twelve legions of angels? 54 But how then
would the Scriptures be fulfilled that say it
must happen this way?"

55 At that time Jesus said to the crowd,
"Have you come out with swords and
clubs to arrest Me as you would an out-
law? Every day I sat teaching in the tem-
ple courts, and you did not arrest Me. 56
But this has all happened so that the writ-
ings of the prophets would be fulfilled."

- **MT 26:31 [PROPHECY]** All of you will be made to stumble because of Me this night; I will strike the Shepherd and the sheep will be scattered (quoting Zech 13:7) → MT 26:56 p.1594
- **MT 26:31 [FULFILLS]** The Shepherd would be struck and the sheep would scatter ← ZECH 13:7 p.1504
- **MT 26:32 [PROPHECY]** After I have been raised, I will go before you to Galilee → Fulfilled after the resurrection when Jesus met disciples in Galilee (Matt 28:7, 16-17; JN 21:1, 14) p.1601
- **MT 26:34 [PROPHECY]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times → MT 26:70; MT 26:72; MT 26:74-75; MK 14:68; MK 14:70-72; LK 22:57-58; LK 22:60-62; JN 18:17; JN 18:25-27 p.1596
- **MT 26:37 [FULFILLS]** A man of sorrows acquainted with grief ← IS 53:3c p.1127
- **MT 26:38 [FULFILLS]** Heartbroken, He looked for comforters but found none ← PS 69:20 p.928
- **MT 26:38 [FULFILLS]** The Messiah's cry of suffering and loneliness ← PS 102:1-11 · MEDIUM p.950
- **MT 26:39 [FULFILLS]** The Servant willingly bound to obedience ← IS 50:5 p.1124
- **MT 26:47 [FULFILLS]** Confined and persecuted by judgment ← IS 53:8a p.1128
- **MT 26:47 [FULFILLS]** One of you will betray Me ← MT 26:21; MK 14:18; LK 22:21; JN 13:21 p.1592

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE CAIAPHAS OSSUARY

MATTHEW 26:57 · JOHN 18:13 · ACTS 4:6



The Caiaphas ossuary on display at the Israel Museum, Jerusalem.

WHAT IT IS

An ornate limestone bone box, called an ossuary, inscribed with the name Joseph son of Caiaphas.

HOW OLD IT IS

First century AD. Caiaphas was high priest from about AD 18 to 36, and the box was likely made around the time of his death.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Found in 1990 by workers building a park in Jerusalem, in a family burial cave.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Josephus gives the high priest's full name as Joseph Caiaphas. Most scholars believe this box held the bones of the man who put Jesus on trial.

THE BONES INSIDE

The box held the bones of six people, among them a man about 60 years old. Many think he was Caiaphas himself. The bones were buried again on the Mount of Olives.

A COIN IN A SKULL

In the same burial cave, a bronze coin of King Herod Agrippa I, from about AD 42 or 43, was found inside the skull of a woman, in another bone box in the same cave marked Miriam daughter of Simon. That helps date the cave to Caiaphas' time.

CAIAPHAS IN THE BIBLE

He told the council it was better for one man to die for the people than for the whole nation to be lost, John 11:49 to 50. He led the trial of Jesus, Matthew 26:57 to 68, and was among the leaders who questioned Peter and John, Acts 4:6.

THE NAME ON THE BOX

The name is scratched on the box twice, Yehosef bar Qayafa on the long side and Yehosef bar Qafa on one short end, in rough letters, not by a skilled carver.

A FAMILY OF PRIESTS

Caiaphas was the son in law of Annas, who had been high priest a few years before him, John 18:13. Five of Annas' sons also became high priest, Antiquities 20.9.1.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

A few scholars question the identification, but it is widely accepted.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

Then all the disciples deserted Him and fled.

JESUS BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN // MARK 14:53–65; LUKE 22:66–71; JOHN 18:19–24

57 Those who had arrested Jesus led Him away to the house of Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and elders had gathered. 58 But Peter followed Him at a distance, right up to the courtyard of the high priest. And he went in and sat down with the guards to see the outcome.

59 Now the chief priests and the whole Sanhedrin were seeking false testimony against Jesus in order to put Him to death. 60 But they did not find any, though many false witnesses came forward.

Finally two came forward 61 and declared, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy the temple of God and rebuild it in three days.'"

62 So the high priest stood up and asked Him, "Have You no answer? What are these men testifying against You?"

63 But Jesus remained silent.

Then the high priest said to Him, "I charge You under oath by the living God: Tell us if You are the Christ, the Son of God."

64 "You have said it yourself," Jesus answered. "But I say to all of you, from now on you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven."

65 At this, the high priest tore his clothes and declared, "He has blasphemed! Why do we need any more witnesses? Look, now you have heard the blasphemy. 66 What do you think?"

"He deserves to die," they answered.

67 Then they spit in His face and struck Him. Others slapped Him 68 and said, "Prophesy to us, Christ! Who hit You?"

PETER DENIES JESUS // MARK 14:66–72; LUKE 22:54–62; JOHN 18:15–18

69 Meanwhile, Peter was sitting out in the courtyard, and a servant girl came up to him. "You also were with Jesus the Galilean," she said.

70 But he denied it before them all: "I do not know what you are talking about."

71 When Peter had gone out to the gateway, another servant girl saw him and said to the people there, "This man was with Jesus of Nazareth."

72 And again he denied it with an oath: "I do not know the man!"

73 After a little while, those standing nearby came up to Peter. "Surely you are one of them," they said, "for your accent gives you away."

74 At that he began to curse and swear to them, "I do not know the man!"

And immediately a rooster crowed.

75 Then Peter remembered the word that Jesus had spoken: "Before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times." And he went outside and wept bitterly.

- **MT 26:56 [FULFILLS]** The Shepherd would be struck and the sheep would scatter ← ZECH 13:7 p.1504
- **MT 26:56 [FULFILLS]** All of you will be made to stumble because of Me this night; I will strike the Shepherd and the sheep will be scattered (quoting Zech 13:7) ← MT 26:31; MK 14:27; JN 16:32 p.1593
- **MT 26:57 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Caiaphas Ossuary (1990) — ornate bone box inscribed with his name → FIELD NOTES p.1595
- **MT 26:59 [FULFILLS]** False witnesses rose up against Him ← PS 35:11 p.906
- **MT 26:64 [PROPHECY]** Hereafter you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of the Power, and coming on the clouds of heaven → Partially fulfilled at ascension (ACTS 1:9-11) and exaltation (ACTS 2:33); consummation in Second Coming still future p.1740
- **MT 26:64 [FULFILLS]** He would ascend into heaven (the Son of Man) ← DAN 7:13-14a p.1341
- **MT 26:66 [FULFILLS]** Thought to be smitten and cursed by God ← IS 53:4b p.1127
- **MT 26:66 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MT 26:67 [FULFILLS]** The suffering righteous man is struck on the cheek by a crowd and 2 more ← JOB 16:10; IS 50:6b; IS 52:14 p.854
- **MT 26:70 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **MT 26:72 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **MT 26:74 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **MT 26:75 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Judas regrets it too late. Pilate washes his hands, the crowd chooses Barabbas, and the soldiers mock and beat Jesus. He is crucified between two robbers, the sky goes dark, the earth shakes and the temple curtain tears in two. A Roman centurion says it best: Truly this was the Son of God.

JESUS DELIVERED TO PILATE // MARK 15:1–5

1 When morning came, all the chief priests
and elders of the people conspired
against Jesus to put Him to death. 2 They
bound Him, led Him away, and handed
Him over to Pilate the governor.

JUDAS HANGS HIMSELF // ZECHARIAH 11:10–17

3 When Judas, who had betrayed Him,
saw that Jesus was condemned, he was
filled with remorse and returned the thirty
pieces of silver to the chief priests and el-
ders. 4 "I have sinned by betraying inno-
cent blood," he said.

"What is that to us?" they replied. "You
bear the responsibility."

5 So Judas threw the silver into the temple
and left. Then he went away and hanged
himself.

6 The chief priests picked up the pieces of
silver and said, "It is unlawful to put this
into the treasury, since it is blood money."
7 After conferring together, they used the
money to buy the potter's field as a burial
place for foreigners. 8 That is why it has
been called the Field of Blood to this day.
9 Then what was spoken through Jeremiah
the prophet was fulfilled:

"They took the thirty pieces of silver,
the price set on Him by the people of Israel,
10 *and they gave them for the potter's field,*
as the Lord had commanded me."

JESUS BEFORE PILATE // LUKE 23:1–5; JOHN 18:28–40

11 Meanwhile Jesus stood before the gov-
ernor, who questioned Him: "Are You the
King of the Jews?"

"You have said so," Jesus replied.

12 And when He was accused by the chief
priests and elders, He gave no answer.

13 Then Pilate asked Him, "Do You not hear
how many charges they are bringing
against You?"

14 But Jesus gave no answer, not even to a
single charge, much to the governor's
amazement.

THE CROWD CHOOSES BARABBAS // MARK 15:6–11; LUKE 23:13–25

15 Now it was the governor's custom at the
feast to release to the crowd a prisoner of
their choosing. 16 At that time they were
holding a notorious prisoner named
Barabbas. 17 So when the crowd had as-
sembled, Pilate asked them, "Which one
do you want me to release to you: Barab-
bas, or Jesus who is called Christ?" 18 For
he knew it was out of envy that they had
handed Jesus over to him.

19 While Pilate was sitting on the judgment
seat, his wife sent him this message:
"Have nothing to do with that innocent
man, for I have suffered terribly in a
dream today because of Him."

20 But the chief priests and elders per-
suaded the crowds to ask for Barabbas
and to have Jesus put to death.

21 "Which of the two do you want me to re-
lease to you?" asked the governor.

"Barabbas," they replied.

22 "What then should I do with Jesus who
is called Christ?" Pilate asked.

They all answered, "Crucify Him!"

23 "Why?" asked Pilate. "What evil has He
done?"

But they shouted all the louder, "Crucify
Him!"

PILATE WASHES HIS HANDS // MARK 15:12–15

24 When Pilate saw that he was accom-
plishing nothing, but that instead a riot
was breaking out, he took water and
washed his hands before the crowd. "I am

- **MT 27:1 [FULFILLS]** They took counsel together to put Him to death and 2 more ← PS 31:13; IS 53:8a; MT 21:37-39; MK 12:6-8; LK 20:13-15 p.903
- **MT 27:3 [FULFILLS]** The unrepentant death of the betrayer ← PS 55:15 · MEDIUM p.920
- **MT 27:3 [FULFILLS]** Thirty pieces of silver thrown into the house of the Lord to the potter ← ZECH 11:12-13 p.1501
- **MT 27:9 [QUOTES]** Direct ← ZECH 11:12-13 p.1501
- **MT 27:12 [FULFILLS]** He remained silent before His accusers ← PS 38:12-13 p.909
- **MT 27:12 [FULFILLS]** Silent before His accusers ← IS 53:7b p.1128
- **MT 27:21 [FULFILLS]** Rejected by men ← IS 53:3b p.1127

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

innocent of this man's blood," he said. "You bear the responsibility."

25 All the people answered, "His blood be on us and on our children!"

26 So Pilate released Barabbas to them. But he had Jesus flogged, and handed Him over to be crucified.

THE SOLDIERS MOCK JESUS // ISAIAH 50:4–11; MARK 15:16–20; LUKE 22:63–65; JOHN 19:1–15

27 Then the governor's soldiers took Jesus into the Praetorium and gathered the whole company around Him. 28 They stripped Him and put a scarlet robe on Him. 29 And they twisted together a crown of thorns and set it on His head. They put a staff in His right hand, knelt down before Him, and mocked Him, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!" 30 Then they spit on Him and took the staff and struck Him on the head repeatedly.

31 After they had mocked Him, they removed the robe and put His own clothes back on Him. Then they led Him away to crucify Him.

THE CRUCIFIXION // PSALM 22:1–31; MARK 15:21–32; LUKE 23:26–43; JOHN 19:16–27

32 Along the way they found a man from Cyrene, named Simon, and they forced him to carry the cross of Jesus.

33 And when they came to a place called Golgotha, which means The Place of the Skull, 34 they offered Him wine to drink, mixed with gall; but after tasting it, He refused to drink it.

35 When they had crucified Him, they divided up His garments by casting lots. 36 And sitting down, they kept watch over Him there.

37 Above His head they posted the written charge against Him:

THIS IS JESUS, THE KING OF THE JEWS.

38 Two robbers were crucified with Him, one on His right and the other on His left.

39 And those who passed by heaped abuse on Him, shaking their heads 40 and saying, "You who are going to destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, save Yourself! If You are the Son of God, come down from the cross!"

41 In the same way, the chief priests, scribes, and elders mocked Him, saying, 42 "He saved others, but He cannot save Himself. He is the King of Israel! Let Him come down now from the cross, and we will believe in Him. 43 He trusts in God. Let God deliver Him now if He wants Him. For He said, 'I am the Son of God.'"

44 In the same way, even the robbers who were crucified with Him berated Him.

THE DEATH OF JESUS // PSALM 22:1–31; MARK 15:33–41; LUKE 23:44–49; JOHN 19:28–30

45 From the sixth hour until the ninth hour darkness came over all the land. 46 About the ninth hour Jesus cried out in a loud voice, *"Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?"* which means, *"My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?"*

47 When some of those standing there heard this, they said, "He is calling Elijah."

48 One of them quickly ran and brought a sponge. He filled it with sour wine, put it on a reed, and held it up for Jesus to drink.

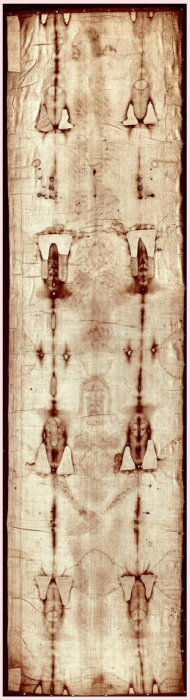
49 But the others said, "Leave Him alone. Let us see if Elijah comes to save Him."

- **MT 27:26 [FULFILLS]** He would be scourged (plowers plowed upon His back) and 2 more ← PS 129:3; IS 50:6a; MT 17:12; MK 9:12 p.972
- **MT 27:27 [FULFILLS]** Oppressed and afflicted ← IS 53:7a p.1128
- **MT 27:27 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MT 27:30 [FULFILLS]** He was spat upon ← IS 50:6c p.1124
- **MT 27:30 [FULFILLS]** The judge of Israel would be struck on the cheek with a rod ← MIC 5:1 · MEDIUM p.1436
- **MT 27:33 [FULFILLS]** The sin-offering burned outside the camp foreshadows Christ's death outside Jerusalem ← LEV 16:27 p.200
- **MT 27:34 [FULFILLS]** Given vinegar to drink in His thirst ← PS 69:21 p.928
- **MT 27:35 [FULFILLS]** Cut off from the land of the living ← IS 53:8c p.1128
- **MT 27:35 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 22:18 p.897
- **MT 27:39 [FULFILLS]** He would be scorned by men and despised by the people and 3 more ← PS 22:6; PS 22:7; PS 109:25; LAM 1:12 p.897
- **MT 27:39 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MT 27:41 [FULFILLS]** Thought to be smitten and cursed by God ← IS 53:4b p.1127
- **MT 27:43 [FULFILLS]** 'He trusted in God ← PS 22:8 p.897
- **MT 27:45 [MIRACLE]** Darkness over all the land for three hours
- **MT 27:45 [FULFILLS]** He would cry out day and night with no answer ← PS 22:2 · MEDIUM p.896
- **MT 27:45 [FULFILLS]** God would make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in the daytime ← AMOS 8:9 · MEDIUM p.1399
- **MT 27:46 [FULFILLS]** 'My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?' spoken from the cross ← PS 22:1 p.896
- **MT 27:48 [FULFILLS]** Given vinegar to drink in His thirst ← PS 69:21 p.928

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: DEBATED, LOW TO MEDIUM

THE SHROUD OF TURIN

MATTHEW 27:59 · MARK 15:46 · LUKE 23:53 · JOHN 19:40



The whole Shroud, front and back, photographed by Giuseppe Enrie in 1931. The light triangles are patches sewn over fire damage.

WHAT IT IS

A linen cloth about 14 feet long and 3 and a half feet wide. On it is the faint front and back image of a man who was whipped, cut around the head, nailed through the wrists and feet, and stabbed in the side. Those are the wounds the Gospels describe. Many Christians believe it is the cloth Joseph of Arimathea wrapped Jesus in.

HOW OLD IT IS

This is the big fight. Carbon dating in 1988 said about AD 1260 to 1390. Supporters say it is about 2,000 years old. Its written history only starts about AD 1355. Both sides are on the next page.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It first shows up for sure about 1355 in Lirey, a village in France, owned by a knight named Geoffroi de Charny. Some think it is the same cloth as the Image of Edessa, a cloth with Jesus' face known in the East for centuries, but that link is not proven. In 1532 it was burned in a church fire in Chambéry, and in 1534 nuns sewed patches over the holes.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In Turin Cathedral in Italy, sealed in a bulletproof glass case filled with argon gas. The royal Savoy family owned it for more than 400 years and gave it to the Pope in 1983. It is rarely shown in public. The last big showing was in 2015.

THE GREEK WORD

Matthew, Mark and Luke say Jesus was wrapped in a sindon, one linen sheet. That fits one long cloth like this. John 19:40 says linen cloths, plural, and John 20:7 mentions a separate cloth for His head. Supporters say John's word can mean linen in general. Critics say it points to more than one piece.

A CLOTH BEFORE CAMERAS

In 1898 an Italian lawyer named Secondo Pia took the first photo of the Shroud. When he looked at his glass negative, where light and dark are flipped, he saw a clear, lifelike face. The image on the cloth acts like a photo negative, hundreds of years before anyone invented photography.

WHERE THE WOUNDS ARE

The stains line up with the Gospels: many small wounds around the head, like a crown of thorns, Matthew 27:29; well over a hundred small marks across the back and legs, like a Roman whip with weighted tips, John 19:1; and a large wound in the right side, John 19:34. Skeptics answer that a medieval forger also knew the Gospels.

WHAT THE CHURCH SAYS

The Catholic Church owns it but has never said it is or is not the real burial cloth. Popes have called it an icon that points people to Jesus' suffering.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: DEBATED, LOW TO MEDIUM

THE SHROUD: FOR AND AGAINST

MATTHEW 27:59 · MARK 15:46 · LUKE 23:53 · JOHN 19:40



The face on the Shroud, from Giuseppe Enrie's 1931 photo negative.

THE CASE FOR

In 1978 about 30 American scientists, called STURP, studied the cloth for five days. They reported no paint, dye or brush strokes making the image, and said the red stains are real blood. The image sits only on the very top fibers of the threads, thinner than a hair, and no one has fully copied it. A 1976 image analyzer showed the light and dark in the image hold 3D information, which normal paintings do not. The nail wounds are in the wrists, where Romans nailed people, not in the palms like most medieval art.

DOUBTS ABOUT THE 1988 TEST

Supporters say the 1988 sample came from one corner that may have been repaired after the fire. A 2019 study of the raw lab data said the results did not agree with each other as well as they should. A 2022 Italian X ray test of the linen suggested it could be from the first century, but it used only one thread.

THE CASE AGAINST

In 1988 three labs, at Oxford, Zurich and Arizona, each carbon dated pieces of the cloth to about AD 1260 to 1390. Many scientists still see this as the strongest evidence. In 1389 Bishop Pierre d'Arcis wrote to the Pope that an artist had confessed to painting it. Microscope expert Walter McCrone said he found red paint, though other STURP members disagreed. A 2018 study by Matteo Borrini and Luigi Garlaschelli said the blood trails do not fit a real body. In 2025 Brazilian 3D designer Cicero Moraes argued the image fits a flat carving pressed onto cloth better than a real body. Shroud experts answered that the idea is old and ignores the blood and how thin the image is.

THE NEWEST STUDIES

Two DNA studies came out in 2026. A team at the University of Padua, led by Gianni Barcaccia, found DNA from many people, much of it tied to the Near East and India. A University of Lancashire team led by Noemi Procopio found DNA from people, crops, farm animals and even red coral. Both say this shows who and what touched the cloth over the centuries, not how old it is. Other experts warn these tests are easily fooled by contamination.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Even if it were proven to be from the first century, nothing on it can prove the man was Jesus. Our faith does not rest on a cloth. It rests on the empty tomb, where the linen was left lying behind John 20:5 to 7.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES NOTABLE

50 When Jesus had cried out again in a
loud voice, He yielded up His spirit. 51 At
that moment the veil of the temple was
torn in two from top to bottom. The earth
quaked, and the rocks were split. 52 The
tombs broke open, and the bodies of
many saints who had fallen asleep were
raised. 53 After Jesus' resurrection, when
they had come out of the tombs, they en-
tered the holy city and appeared to many
people.

54 When the centurion and those with him
who were guarding Jesus saw the earth-
quake and all that had happened, they
were terrified and said, "Truly this was the
Son of God."

55 And many women were there, watching
from a distance. They had followed Jesus
from Galilee to minister to Him. 56 Among
them were Mary Magdalene, Mary the
mother of James and Joseph, and the
mother of Zebedee's sons.

THE BURIAL OF JESUS // ISAIAH 53:9–12; MARK 15:42–47; LUKE 23:50–56; JOHN 19:38–42

57 When it was evening, there came a rich
man from Arimathea named Joseph, who
himself was a disciple of Jesus. 58 He
went to Pilate to ask for the body of Je-
sus, and Pilate ordered that it be given to
him. 59 So Joseph took the body, wrapped
it in a clean linen cloth, 60 and placed it in
his own new tomb that he had cut into the
rock. Then he rolled a great stone across
the entrance to the tomb and went away.
61 Mary Magdalene and the other Mary
were sitting there opposite the tomb.

THE GUARDS AT THE TOMB

62 The next day, the one after Preparation
Day, the chief priests and Pharisees as-
sembled before Pilate. 63 "Sir," they said,
"we remember that while He was alive
that deceiver said, 'After three days I will
rise again.' 64 So give the order that the
tomb be secured until the third day. Oth-
erwise, His disciples may come and steal
Him away and tell the people He has risen
from the dead. And this last deception
would be worse than the first."

65 "You have a guard," Pilate said. "Go,
make the tomb as secure as you know
how." 66 So they went and secured the
tomb by sealing the stone and posting the
guard.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

The tomb is empty. An angel rolls away the stone and sits on it, which is a flex. The first witnesses are women, the guards are paid to lie, and the risen Jesus meets His disciples on a mountain and gives them the Great Commission: go make disciples of all nations.

THE RESURRECTION // MARK 16:1–8; LUKE 24:1–12; JOHN 20:1–9

1 After the Sabbath, at dawn on the first
day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the
other Mary went to see the tomb.

2 Suddenly there was a great earthquake,
for an angel of the Lord descended from
heaven, rolled away the stone, and sat on
it. 3 His appearance was like lightning, and
his clothes were white as snow. 4 The
guards trembled in fear of him and be-
came like dead men.

5 But the angel said to the women, "Do not
be afraid, for I know that you are looking
for Jesus, who was crucified. 6 He is not
here; He has risen, just as He said! Come,
see the place where He lay. 7 Then go
quickly and tell His disciples, 'He has
risen from the dead and is going ahead of

- **MT 27:50 [FULFILLS]** Killed before the destruction of the Temple (70 AD) ← DAN 9:26b p.1346
- **MT 27:50 [FULFILLS]** The Bridegroom would be taken away from His friends ← MT 9:15; MK 2:20; LK 5:35 p.1562
- **MT 27:51 [MIRACLE]** The veil tears, the earth shakes, and saints are raised
- **MT 27:51 [FULFILLS]** The veil separated the people from the Most Holy Place ← EX 26:33 p.156
- **MT 27:54 [FULFILLS]** The leaders would lift up the Son of Man and then know who He is ← JN 8:28 p.1713
- **MT 27:57 [FULFILLS]** Buried in a rich man's grave ← IS 53:9a p.1128
- **MT 27:59 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Shroud of Turin → FIELD NOTES p.1599
- **MT 27:59 [FULFILLS]** The Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, like Jonah in the belly of the great fish ← MT 12:39-40; MT 16:4; LK 11:29-30 p.1567
- **MT 28:1 [NOTABLE]** In that culture a woman's testimony counted for little. A made up story would not pick women as the first witnesses.
- **MT 28:2 [MIRACLE]** Angel rolled away the stone; appearance like lightning
- **MT 28:6 [FULFILLS]** The Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, like Jonah in the belly of the great fish ← MT 12:39-40; MT 16:4; LK 11:29-30 p.1567
- **MT 28:6 [FULFILLS]** The Son of Man would be raised from the dead ← MT 17:9; MK 9:9 p.1575

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

you into Galilee. There you will see Him.'
See, I have told you."

8 So they hurried away from the tomb in
fear and great joy, and ran to tell His disci-
ples. 9 Suddenly Jesus met them and said,
"Greetings!" They came to Him, grasped
His feet, and worshiped Him. 10 "Do not be
afraid," said Jesus. "Go and tell My broth-
ers to go to Galilee. There they will see
Me."

THE REPORT OF THE GUARDS

11 While the women were on their way,
some of the guards went into the city and
reported to the chief priests all that had
happened. 12 And after the chief priests
had met with the elders and formed a
plan, they gave the soldiers a large sum of
money 13 and instructed them: "You are to
say, 'His disciples came by night and stole
Him away while we were asleep.' 14 If this
report reaches the governor, we will sat-
isfy him and keep you out of trouble."
15 So the guards took the money and did
as they were instructed. And this account
has been circulated among the Jews to
this very day.

THE GREAT COMMISSION // MARK 16:14–18

16 Meanwhile, the eleven disciples went to
Galilee, to the mountain Jesus had desig-
nated. 17 When they saw Him, they wor-
shiped Him, but some doubted.
18 Then Jesus came to them and said, "All
authority in heaven and on earth has been
given to Me. 19 Therefore go and make dis-
ciples of all nations, baptizing them in the
name of the Father and of the Son and of
the Holy Spirit, 20 and teaching them to
obey all that I have commanded you. And
surely I am with you always, even to the
end of the age."

THE BIG QUESTION

THE TRINITY

One God, Three Persons

MATTHEW 28:19 · 3:16 TO 17 · DEUTERONOMY 6:4 · 2 CORINTHIANS 13:14

WHAT JESUS SAID

Go and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, 28:19. One name, not three names, and three persons in it.

WHAT IT MEANS

There is one God, Deuteronomy 6:4. The Father is God. The Son is God, John 1:1 and 20:28. The Holy Spirit is God, Acts 5:3 to 4. They are not three gods, and not one person wearing three masks. Catholic, Orthodox and Protestant churches all teach it.

ALL THREE IN ONE SCENE

At Jesus' baptism the Son comes up out of the water, the Spirit comes down like a dove, and the Father speaks from heaven, 3:16 to 17. Paul blesses in all three names, 2 Corinthians 13:14.

HINTS IN THE OLD TESTAMENT

God says, let Us make man in Our image, Genesis 1:26. Christians see a hint of the Trinity; Jewish readers say it is a royal we or God speaking to His heavenly court. Isaiah 48:16 has the Lord God and His Spirit sending someone.

PICTURES THAT BREAK

Every simple picture breaks somewhere. Water, ice and steam sounds like one person changing forms, which is the Oneness view. The three leaf clover tied to St. Patrick is a later legend. The church says it is a mystery we can state but not fully picture.

WHERE THE WORD CAME FROM

About AD 180 Theophilus, bishop of Antioch, used the Greek word trias, a group of three, for God, His Word and His Wisdom (To Autolycus 2.15). About AD 213 Tertullian of Carthage used the Latin word trinitas and spoke of three persons and one substance (Against Praxeas). The Council of Nicaea in AD 325 said the Son is of the same being as the Father, and Constantinople in AD 381 confessed the Holy Spirit as Lord, worshiped with the Father and the Son.

- **MT 28:8 [NOTABLE]** In that culture a woman's testimony counted for little. A made up story would not pick women as the first witnesses.
- **MT 28:9 [MIRACLE]** The risen Jesus meets the women
- **MT 28:18 [FULFILLS]** The Lord's Anointed King ← 1SA 2:10 · MEDIUM p.439
- **MT 28:18 [FULFILLS]** Exalted by God because of His sacrifice ← IS 53:12a p.1128
- **MT 28:19 [NOTE]** THE TRINITY. See The Trinity.

So Is the Trinity Made Up?

MATTHEW 28:19 · JOHN 1:1 · 1 THESSALONIANS 4:17

THE CLAIM

The word Trinity is not in the Bible, so the church made it up.

TRUE, BUT

The word is not there. Neither is the word Bible. Rapture comes from the Latin of 1 Thessalonians 4:17. A word is a handle for an idea. The real question is whether the Bible teaches the idea, and the church chose the word to sum up what it found all over the New Testament.

WHO SAYS OTHERWISE

Oneness Pentecostals: one God who shows up as Father, Son and Spirit, much like Sabellius taught about AD 215. Jehovah's Witnesses: the Son is the first thing God created, close to Arius about AD 318. Latter-day Saints: three separate beings. Islam: do not say three, Quran 4:171. Judaism: God is one, and Jesus is not God.

A DISPUTED SOURCE

Eusebius, about AD 300, sometimes quoted 28:19 as go and make disciples of all nations in My name, and some say the longer wording was added. But every Greek copy of Matthew that has this verse has Father, Son and Holy Spirit, and the Didache, from about AD 100, already baptizes in all three names (Didache 7).

WHAT ABOUT 1 JOHN 5:7?

The King James Version has the Father, the Word and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. Almost no Greek copies have it, so most modern Bibles leave it out. The Trinity does not depend on it. See 1 John p.2045. For John 1:1 and a god, see the John pages, p.1698.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

There is one God, and the Bible must decide.

BOOK 41 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · GOSPELS

MARK

The Servant who came to give His life

AUTHOR	John Mark, a young man from Jerusalem whose mother's house was a meeting place for the church Acts 12:12. The book does not name its author, but Papias, around AD 125, said Mark wrote down what Peter preached.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About AD 26 to 30, from the preaching of John the Baptist to the resurrection of Jesus.
DATE WRITTEN	Many conservative scholars say the AD 50s or 60s. Many others say about AD 65 to 70. Most scholars think it was the first Gospel written.
WRITTEN TO	Mostly Gentile believers, likely in Rome. Mark explains Jewish customs and translates Aramaic words, which Jewish readers would not need.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Mark survives in well over a thousand Greek manuscripts.
KEY VERSE	Mark 10:45. For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life as a ransom for many.



THE OLDEST COPIES OF MARK
Papyrus 45 is a book of papyrus pages from Egypt that once held all four Gospels and Acts. It is dated about AD 250 and is kept at the Chester Beatty Library in Dublin, Ireland. It still has pieces of Mark 4 to 12. An even smaller scrap, Papyrus 137, has a few words from Mark 1 and was published in 2018. Its editors dated it to the late 100s or early 200s. Some had claimed it was from the first century, but that date did not hold up.

Historical Setting

Rome rules the world, and in the 60s things turn ugly for Christians there. In AD 64 a fire burns much of the city, and Emperor Nero blames the Christians. Tradition says Peter was killed there. Mark writes for believers who are suffering and scared, and he shows them a Savior who also suffered, and then walked out of His tomb.

What Was Going Wrong

HARD HEARTS. Even after seeing miracles, people and the disciples did not understand 6:52; 8:17.
TRADITION OVER GOD. Leaders set aside God's command to keep their own rules 7:8 to 9.
A TEMPLE FOR PROFIT. The house of prayer for all nations had become a den of robbers 11:17.
CHASING GREATNESS. The disciples kept arguing about who was greatest 9:34; 10:37.
FEAR. When things got hard, the disciples ran away and Peter denied Jesus 14:50; 14:71.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Mark is the short, fast Gospel. It moves like an action movie, jumping from one scene to the next. Jesus heals, casts out demons, calms storms and teaches, and people keep asking, Who is this? Halfway through, Peter gets it right: He is the Christ. Then the story turns toward Jerusalem, where the King serves by dying on a cross. Three days later the tomb is empty.

Mark at a Glance

CH 1	**GET READY** John prepares the way, and Jesus is baptized and tested.
CH 1 to 8	**WHO IS THIS MAN?** Miracles and teaching in Galilee, ending with Peter saying You are the Christ.
CH 8 to 10	**ON THE ROAD** Jesus heads to Jerusalem and tells them three times that He must die.
CH 11 to 13	**THE LAST WEEK** He enters Jerusalem, clears the temple and warns of what is coming.
CH 14 to 16	**THE CROSS AND THE EMPTY TOMB** His death, burial and resurrection.

Where Jesus Shows Up

MARK 1:2 TO 3 A messenger prepares His way. Fulfills Malachi 3:1 and Isaiah 40:3.
MARK 11:7 TO 10 Rides into Jerusalem on a young donkey. Fulfills Zechariah 9:9.
MARK 14:27 The Shepherd is struck and the sheep scatter. Fulfills Zechariah 13:7.
MARK 15:34 My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? Fulfills Psalm 22:1.

What to Watch for in Mark

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (32)	1:2-4, 1:8, 2:20, 7:37, 8:31, 9:9, 9:12 and 18 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	16:19
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (6)	9:1-8, 10:39, 11:2-7, 14:3-7, 14:9, 14:13-15, 14:30 and 2 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (4)	13:2, 13:5-6, 13:9-10
END TIMES PROPHECIES (5)	13:7-8, 13:14-20, 13:24-37
THE HEART (7)	3:5, 6:52, 7:21-23, 8:17, 10:5, 12:30, 16:14
ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	1:21, 1:29, 15:46
MIRACLES (19)	1:10-11, 1:30-31, 1:40-42, 2:3-12, 3:1-4, 4:37-41, 5:27-29 and 12 more
DEMONIC (15)	1:12-13, 1:22-28, 1:32-34, 1:39, 3:11-12, 3:22-27, 5:6-9 and 9 more
NOTABLE (5)	6:4, 6:8-12, 10:17-27, 15:47, 16:1-4, 16:8
JESUS SPEAKING (291 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

IMMEDIATELY
The Greek word for immediately shows up about forty times in Mark. Mark is in a hurry.

JESUS' OWN WORDS
Mark keeps some of the Aramaic words Jesus actually spoke: Talitha koum 5:41, Ephphatha 7:34, Abba 14:36 and Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani 15:34.

THE STREAKER IN THE GARDEN
Only Mark tells about a young man who ran away naked when Jesus was arrested 14:51 to 52. Many think it was Mark himself, but nobody knows.

KEEP IT QUIET
Jesus keeps telling people not to tell who He is. He did not want a crowd that only wanted a show. They told everyone anyway.

PETER LOOKS BAD
If Mark got his stories from Peter, Peter let him include his worst moments, like being called Satan and denying Jesus three times. He knew he was forgiven.

Did Anybody Listen?

Most scholars believe Matthew and Luke used Mark when they wrote. Tradition says Mark started the church in Alexandria, Egypt. In AD 828 merchants from Venice smuggled what they believed were his bones out of Egypt under pork, so the guards would not look. They rest in St. Mark's Basilica in Venice.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Mark skips the baby stories and the family tree and starts running. John baptizes, the heavens tear open, the devil tempts, fishermen drop their nets, demons scream and a leper is healed, all in one chapter. Mark says immediately so often you get out of breath reading it.

THE MISSION OF JOHN THE BAPTIST // ISAIAH 40:1–5; MATTHEW 3:1–17; LUKE 3:1–22; JOHN 1:19–34

1 This is the beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. 2 As it is written in Isaiah the prophet:

"Behold, I will send My messenger ahead of You,
who will prepare Your way."

3 "A voice of one calling in the wilderness,
'Prepare the way for the Lord,
make straight paths for Him.'"

4 John the Baptist appeared in the wilderness, preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. 5 People went out to him from all of Jerusalem and the countryside of Judea. Confessing their sins, they were baptized by him in the Jordan River.

6 John was clothed in camel's hair, with a leather belt around his waist. His food was locusts and wild honey. 7 And he proclaimed: "After me will come One more powerful than I, the straps of whose sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie. 8 I baptize you with water, but He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

9 In those days Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee and was baptized by John in the Jordan. 10 As soon as Jesus came up out of the water, He saw the heavens breaking open and the Spirit descending on Him like a dove. 11 And a voice came from heaven: "You are My beloved Son; in You I am well pleased."

THE TEMPTATION AND PREACHING OF JESUS // MATTHEW 4:1–17; LUKE 4:1–15

12 At once the Spirit drove Jesus into the wilderness, 13 and He was there for forty days, being tempted by Satan. He was with the wild animals, and the angels ministered to Him.

14 After the arrest of John, Jesus went into Galilee and proclaimed the gospel of God. 15 "The time is fulfilled," He said, "and the kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe in the gospel!"

THE FIRST DISCIPLES // MATTHEW 4:18–22; LUKE 5:1–11; JOHN 1:35–42

16 As Jesus was walking beside the Sea of Galilee, He saw Simon and his brother Andrew. They were casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen. 17 "Come, follow Me," Jesus said, "and I will make you fishers of men." 18 And at once they left their nets and followed Him.

19 Going on a little farther, He saw James son of Zebedee and his brother John. They were in a boat, mending their nets. 20 Immediately Jesus called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired men and followed Him.

JESUS EXPELS AN UNCLEAN SPIRIT // LUKE 4:31–37

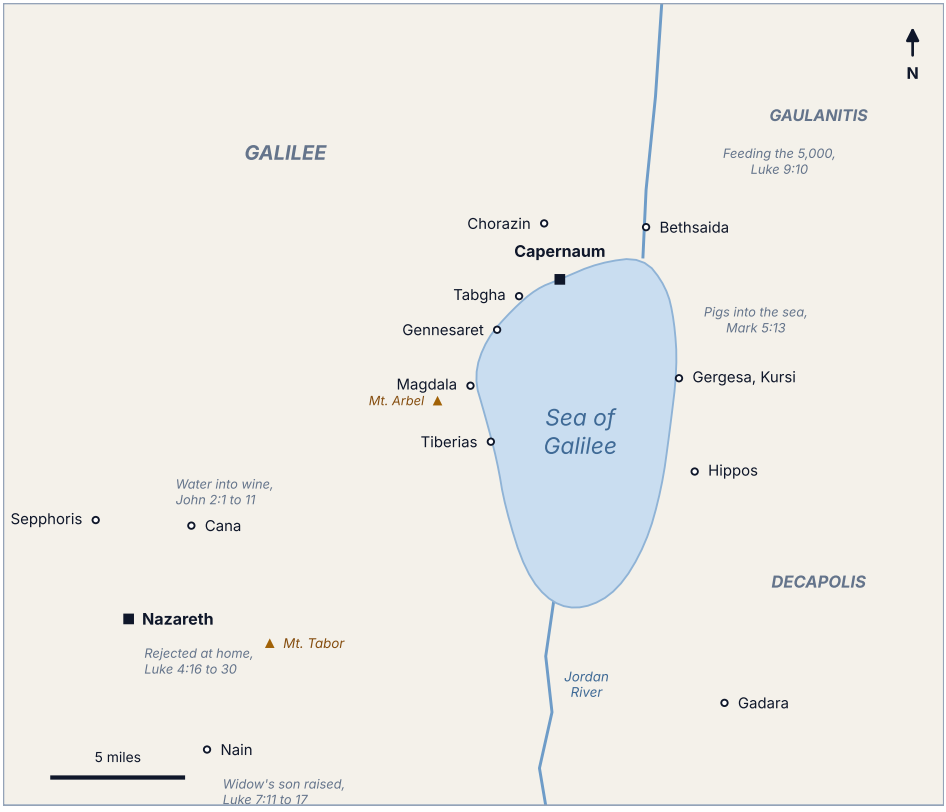
21 Then Jesus and His companions went to Capernaum, and right away Jesus entered the synagogue on the Sabbath and began to teach. 22 The people were astonished at His teaching, because He taught as one who had authority, and not as the scribes.

- **MK 1:2 [FULFILLS]** A messenger would prepare His way ← MAL 3:1a p.1514
- **MK 1:8 [PROPHECY]** The One coming after John would baptize with the Holy Spirit → ACTS 1:5; ACTS 2:1-4; ACTS 11:16 p.1740
- **MK 1:10 [MIRACLE]** The heavens tear open and the Spirit descends at Jesus' baptism
- **MK 1:11 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 2:7; IS 42:1 p.884
- **MK 1:12 [DEMONIC]** Jesus is tempted by Satan for forty days
- **MK 1:21 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Capernaum Synagogue → FIELD NOTES p.1610
- **MK 1:21 [DEMONIC]** Demon in synagogue at Capernaum cried out before Jesus

MAP · MARK 1 TO 6

Jesus Around the Sea of Galilee

Most of His miracles happened within a day's walk of Capernaum



HOME BASE Jesus moved to Capernaum, Matthew 4:13. Peter and Andrew lived there, and Jesus healed Peter's mother in law in their house, Mark 1:29 to 31.

ACROSS THE LAKE On the east side He calmed a storm and freed a man with many demons, and the pigs ran into the sea, Mark 4:35 to 5:20.

THE TRIANGLE Jesus did most of His miracles in Capernaum, Bethsaida and Chorazin, and warned them for not repenting, Matthew 11:20 to 24.

A SMALL LAKE The Sea of Galilee is about 13 miles long and 8 miles wide, and it sits about 700 feet below sea level. Sudden storms still sweep down on it, Mark 4:37.

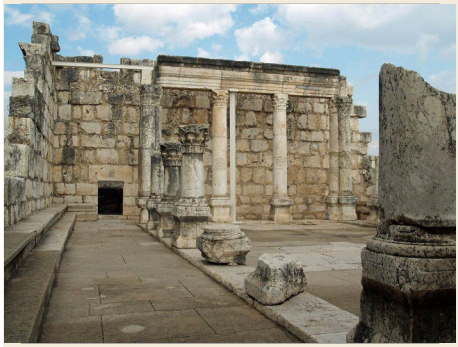
Capernaum, Magdala, Tiberias and Nazareth are certain. Bethsaida, Cana and the place of the pigs are debated.

ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE CAPERNAUM SYNAGOGUE

MARK 1:21 TO 28 · LUKE 7:5



Inside the white limestone synagogue at Capernaum.

WHAT IT IS

A large white limestone synagogue in Capernaum, Jesus' home base on the Sea of Galilee. Under it is a floor and walls of black basalt, the dark local stone, from an older building.

HOW OLD IT IS

The white synagogue is from about AD 350 to 450, which is about 300 years after Jesus. Some scholars once dated it about AD 200, so the date has been argued. The black basalt floor under it is older. The Franciscan diggers dated it to the first century, the time of Jesus, but not everyone agrees.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The ruins were spotted in 1838 and first dug by German archaeologists in 1905. Franciscan archaeologists Virgilio Corbo and Stanislao Loffreda dug there from 1968 on.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Still standing at Capernaum, now called Kfar Nahum, on the north shore of the Sea of Galilee. Visitors can walk inside it.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Capernaum was a real fishing town with a synagogue, just as Mark says. Jesus taught there, and Luke says a Roman officer paid to build the town's synagogue.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The white building is not the one Jesus stood in. Many believe the black basalt floor belongs to the synagogue of His day. This is likely, but it is still debated.

23 Suddenly a man with an unclean spirit
cried out in the synagogue: 24 "What do
You want with us, Jesus of Nazareth?
Have You come to destroy us? I know who
You are—the Holy One of God!"
25 But Jesus rebuked the spirit. "Be silent!"
He said. "Come out of him!" 26 At this, the
unclean spirit threw the man into convul-
sions and came out with a loud shriek.
27 All the people were amazed and began
to ask one another, "What is this? A new
teaching with authority! He commands
even the unclean spirits, and they obey
Him!" 28 And the news about Jesus spread
quickly through the whole region of
Galilee.

JESUS HEALS AT PETER'S HOUSE // MATTHEW 8:14–17; LUKE 4:38–41

29 As soon as Jesus and His companions
had left the synagogue, they went with
James and John to the home of Simon
and Andrew. 30 Simon's mother-in-law was
sick in bed with a fever, and they promptly
told Jesus about her. 31 So He went to her,
took her by the hand, and helped her up.
The fever left her, and she began to serve
them.
32 That evening, after sunset, people
brought to Jesus all the sick and demon-
possessed, 33 and the whole town gath-
ered at the door. 34 And He healed many
who were ill with various diseases and
drove out many demons. But He would
not allow the demons to speak, because
they knew who He was.

JESUS PRAYS AND PREACHES // LUKE 4:42–44

35 Early in the morning, while it was still
dark, Jesus got up and went out to a soli-
tary place to pray. 36 Simon and his com-
panions went to look for Him, 37 and when
they found Him, they said, "Everyone is
looking for You!"

- **MK 1:29 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** House of Peter at Capernaum → FIELD NOTES p.1611
- **MK 1:29 [MIRACLE]** Peter's mother in law healed of a fever
- **MK 1:32 [DEMONIC]** Jesus drives out many demons at sundown

MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

38 But Jesus answered, "Let us go on to
the neighboring towns so I can preach
there as well, for that is why I have come."
39 So He went throughout Galilee, preach-
ing in their synagogues and driving out
demons.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE HOUSE OF PETER

MARK 1:29 TO 34 · MARK 2:1



Ruins of the eight sided church built over the house of Peter at Capernaum.

WHAT IT IS

A simple house of black basalt stone with rooms around a courtyard, a short walk from the synagogue in Capernaum. One room was later turned into a meeting place for Christians.

HOW OLD IT IS

The house was built about 100 years before Jesus. Later in the first century one room got plastered walls and floors, which was rare in a fishing house, and the diggers think it became a church meeting room then. That early date is debated. A bigger house church was built around it by about AD 350, and an eight sided church was built over it about AD 450.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Found by Franciscan archaeologists Virgilio Corbo and Stanislao Loffreda in 1968, under the ruins of the eight sided church.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

Over a hundred prayers and words scratched into the plaster by early visitors, in Greek, Aramaic, Syriac and Latin. Some mention Jesus as Lord and Christ. A few scholars read the name Peter, but that reading is disputed.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Still at Capernaum. A modern church built in 1990 floats above the ruins on pillars, with a glass floor so you can look straight down into the house.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Early Christians honored this house as Peter's home. A pilgrim named Egeria visited around AD 380 and wrote that Peter's house had been made into a church. It fits Mark's story of Jesus staying at Peter's house and healing his mother in law.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No sign says Peter lived here. It is likely the house the early church honored as his, but this cannot be proven.

THE LEPER'S PRAYER // LEVITICUS 14:1–32; MATTHEW 8:1–4; LUKE 5:12–16

40 Then a leper came to Jesus, begging on
his knees: "If You are willing, You can
make me clean."

41 Moved with compassion, Jesus reached
out His hand and touched the man. "I am
willing," He said. "Be clean!" 42 And imme-
diately the leprosy left him, and the man
was cleansed.

43 Jesus promptly sent him away with a
stern warning: 44 "See that you don't tell
anyone. But go, show yourself to the
priest and present the offering Moses
prescribed for your cleansing, as a testi-
mony to them."

45 But the man went out and openly began
to proclaim and spread the news.

Consequently, Jesus could no longer en-
ter a town in plain view, but He stayed out
in solitary places. Yet people came to Him
from every quarter.

MK 1:39 [DEMONIC] Jesus preaches and drives out demons in Galilee

MK 1:40 [MIRACLE] A leper cleansed when Jesus touches him

MK 1:44 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 14:2-4 p.194

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Four friends cannot get their paralyzed buddy through the crowd, so they dig a hole in somebody's roof and lower him down. Jesus forgives his sins and then tells him to walk home. He eats with tax collectors and sinners, and the religious leaders start keeping a list.

JESUS HEALS A PARALYTIC // MATTHEW 9:1–8; LUKE 5:17–26

1 A few days later Jesus went back to Capernaum. And when the people heard that
He was home, 2 they gathered in such
large numbers that there was no more
room, not even outside the door, as Jesus
spoke the word to them.

3 Then a paralytic was brought to Him,
carried by four men. 4 Since they were unable to get to Jesus through the crowd,
they uncovered the roof above Him, made
an opening, and lowered the paralytic on
his mat.

5 When Jesus saw their faith, He said to
the paralytic, "Son, your sins are forgiven."

6 But some of the scribes were sitting
there and thinking in their hearts, 7 "Why
does this man speak like this? He is blaspheming! Who can forgive sins but God
alone?"

8 At once Jesus knew in His spirit that they
were thinking this way within themselves.
"Why are you thinking these things in your
hearts?" He asked. 9 "Which is easier: to
say to a paralytic, 'Your sins are forgiven,'
or to say, 'Get up, pick up your mat, and
walk'? 10 But so that you may know that
the Son of Man has authority on earth to
forgive sins..." He said to the paralytic, 11 "I
tell you, get up, pick up your mat, and go
home."

12 And immediately the man got up, picked
up his mat, and walked out in front of
them all. As a result, they were all astounded and glorified God, saying, "We
have never seen anything like this!"

JESUS CALLS LEVI // MATTHEW 9:9–13; LUKE 5:27–32

13 Once again Jesus went out beside the
sea. All the people came to Him, and He
taught them there.

14 As He was walking along, He saw Levi
son of Alphaeus sitting at the tax booth.
"Follow Me," He told him, and Levi got up
and followed Him.

15 While Jesus was dining at Levi's house,
many tax collectors and sinners were eating with Him and His disciples—for there
were many who followed Him. 16 When the
scribes who were Pharisees saw Jesus
eating with these people, they asked His
disciples, "Why does He eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

17 On hearing this, Jesus told them, "It is
not the healthy who need a doctor, but the
sick. I have not come to call the righteous,
but sinners."

QUESTIONS ABOUT FASTING // MATTHEW 9:14–15; LUKE 5:33–35

18 Now John's disciples and the Pharisees
were often fasting. So people came to Jesus and asked, "Why don't Your disciples
fast like John's disciples and those of the
Pharisees?"

19 Jesus replied, "How can the guests of
the bridegroom fast while He is with
them? As long as He is with them, they
cannot fast. 20 But the time will come
when the bridegroom will be taken from
them; then they will fast.

THE PATCHES AND THE WINESKINS // MATTHEW 9:16–17; LUKE 5:36–39

21 No one sews a patch of unshrunk cloth
on an old garment. If he does, the new
piece will pull away from the old, and a
worse tear will result.

22 And no one pours new wine into old
wineskins. If he does, the wine will burst
the skins, and both the wine and the
wineskins will be ruined. Instead, new
wine is poured into new wineskins."

MK 2:3 [MIRACLE] Friends lower a paralyzed man through the roof

MK 2:20 [PROPHECY] The Bridegroom would be taken away from His friends → MT 27:50; JN 19:30 p.1601

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

THE LORD OF THE SABBATH // 1 SAMUEL 21:1–7; MATTHEW 12:1–8; LUKE 6:1–5

23 One Sabbath Jesus was passing
through the grainfields, and His disciples
began to pick the heads of grain as they
walked along. 24 So the Pharisees said to
Him, "Look, why are they doing what is
unlawful on the Sabbath?"

25 Jesus replied, "Have you never read
what David did when he and his compan-
ions were hungry and in need? 26 During
the high priesthood of Abiathar, he en-
tered the house of God and ate the con-
secrated bread, which was lawful only for
the priests. And he gave some to his com-
panions as well."

27 Then Jesus declared, "The Sabbath was
made for man, not man for the Sabbath. 28
Therefore, the Son of Man is Lord even of
the Sabbath."

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus heals a man's hand on the Sabbath, and the Pharisees respond by plotting to kill Him, which seems like an overreaction. He picks twelve apostles. His own family thinks He has lost His mind and comes to take Him home.

JESUS HEALS ON THE SABBATH // MATTHEW 12:9–14; LUKE 6:6–11

1 Once again Jesus entered the syna-
gogue, and a man with a withered hand
was there. 2 In order to accuse Jesus, they
were watching to see if He would heal on
the Sabbath.

3 Then Jesus said to the man with the
withered hand, "Stand up among us." 4
And He asked them, "Which is lawful on
the Sabbath: to do good or to do evil, to
save life or to destroy it?"

But they were silent.

5 Jesus looked around at them with anger
and sorrow at their hardness of heart.
Then He said to the man, "Stretch out
your hand." So he stretched it out, and it
was restored.

6 At this, the Pharisees went out and be-
gan plotting with the Herodians how they
might kill Jesus.

JESUS HEALS THE MULTITUDES // MATTHEW 4:23–25; LUKE 6:17–19

7 So Jesus withdrew with His disciples to
the sea, accompanied by a large crowd
from Galilee, Judea, 8 Jerusalem, Idumea,
the region beyond the Jordan, and the
vicinity of Tyre and Sidon. The large
crowd came to Him when they heard what
great things He was doing.

9 Jesus asked His disciples to have a boat
ready for Him so that the crowd would not
crush Him. 10 For He had healed so many
that all who had diseases were pressing
forward to touch Him. 11 And when the un-
clean spirits saw Him, they fell down be-
fore Him and cried out, "You are the Son
of God!" 12 But He warned them sternly not
to make Him known.

THE TWELVE APOSTLES // MATTHEW 10:1–4; LUKE 6:12–16

13 Then Jesus went up on the mountain
and called for those He wanted, and they
came to Him. 14 He appointed twelve of
them, whom He designated as apostles,
to accompany Him, to be sent out to
preach, 15 and to have authority to drive
out demons.

16 These are the twelve He appointed: Si-
mon (whom He named Peter), 17 James
son of Zebedee and his brother John
(whom He named Boanerges, meaning
"Sons of Thunder"), 18 Andrew, Philip,
Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James
son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the
Zealot, 19 and Judas Iscariot, who be-
trayed Jesus.

A HOUSE DIVIDED // MATTHEW 12:22–30; LUKE 11:14–23

20 Then Jesus went home, and once again
a crowd gathered, so that He and His dis-
ciples could not even eat. 21 When His
family heard about this, they went out to
take custody of Him, saying, "He is out of
His mind."

22 And the scribes who had come down
from Jerusalem were saying, "He is pos-

- **MK 2:25 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1SA 21:1-6 p.473
- **MK 2:26 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 24:9 p.213
- **MK 3:1 [MIRACLE]** Jesus heals the withered hand in the synagogue
- **MK 3:5 [HEART]** Jesus was grieved by the hardness of their hearts.
- **MK 3:11 [DEMONIC]** Unclean spirits fall down before Him

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

sessed by Beelzebul," and, "By the prince of the demons He drives out demons."

23 So Jesus called them together and began to speak to them in parables: "How can Satan drive out Satan? 24 If a kingdom is divided against itself, it cannot stand. 25 If a house is divided against itself, it cannot stand. 26 And if Satan is divided and rises against himself, he cannot stand; his end has come. 27 Indeed, no one can enter a strong man's house to steal his possessions unless he first ties up the strong man. Then he can plunder his house.

THE UNPARDONABLE SIN // MATTHEW 12:31–32

28 Truly I tell you, the sons of men will be forgiven all sins and blasphemies, as many as they utter. 29 But whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never be forgiven; he is guilty of eternal sin."

30 Jesus made this statement because they were saying, "He has an unclean spirit."

JESUS' MOTHER AND BROTHERS // MATTHEW 12:46–50; LUKE 8:19–21

31 Then Jesus' mother and brothers came and stood outside. They sent someone in to summon Him, 32 and a crowd was sitting around Him. "Look," He was told, "Your mother and brothers are outside, asking for You."

33 But Jesus replied, "Who are My mother and My brothers?" 34 Looking at those seated in a circle around Him, He said, "Here are My mother and My brothers! 35 For whoever does the will of God is My brother and sister and mother."

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus teaches in parables: the sower and the soils, a lamp under a basket and a tiny mustard seed that grows huge. Then He falls asleep in a boat during a storm. He tells the wind to hush, and now they are more scared of Him than of the storm.

THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER // MATTHEW 13:1–9; LUKE 8:4–8

1 Once again Jesus began to teach beside the sea, and such a large crowd gathered around Him that He got into a boat and sat in it, while all the people crowded along the shore.

2 And He taught them many things in parables, and in His teaching He said, 3 "Listen! A farmer went out to sow his seed. 4 And as he was sowing, some seed fell along the path, and the birds came and devoured it.

5 Some fell on rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. It sprang up quickly because the soil was shallow. 6 But when the sun rose, the seedlings were scorched, and they withered because they had no root.

7 Other seed fell among thorns, which grew up and choked the seedlings, and they yielded no crop.

8 Still other seed fell on good soil, where it sprouted, grew up, and produced a crop—one bearing thirtyfold, another sixtyfold, and another a hundredfold."

9 Then Jesus said, "He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

THE PURPOSE OF JESUS' PARABLES // ISAIAH 6:1–13; MATTHEW 13:10–17; LUKE 8:9–10

10 As soon as Jesus was alone with the Twelve and those around Him, they asked Him about the parable.

11 He replied, "The mystery of the kingdom of God has been given to you, but to those on the outside everything is expressed in parables, 12 so that,

'they may be ever seeing but never perceiving,
and ever hearing but never understanding;
otherwise they might turn
and be forgiven.'"

THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER EXPLAINED // MATTHEW 13:18–23; LUKE 8:11–15

13 Then Jesus said to them, "Do you not understand this parable? Then how will you understand any of the parables?

14 The farmer sows the word. 15 Some are like the seeds along the path, where the

MK 3:22 [DEMONIC] Beelzebul charge and the binding of the strong man

MK 4:12 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 6:9-10 p.1069

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

word is sown. As soon as they hear it, Satan comes and takes away the word that was sown in them.

16 Some are like the seeds sown on rocky ground. They hear the word and at once receive it with joy. 17 But they themselves have no root, and they remain for only a season. When trouble or persecution comes because of the word, they quickly fall away.

18 Others are like the seeds sown among the thorns. They hear the word, 19 but the worries of this life, the deceitfulness of wealth, and the desire for other things come in and choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful.

20 Still others are like the seeds sown on good soil. They hear the word, receive it, and produce a crop—thirtyfold, sixtyfold, or a hundredfold."

THE LESSON OF THE LAMP // LUKE 8:16–18

21 Jesus also said to them, "Does anyone bring in a lamp to put it under a basket or under a bed? Doesn't he set it on a stand? 22 For there is nothing hidden that will not be disclosed, and nothing concealed that will not be brought to light.

23 If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear."

24 He went on to say, "Pay attention to what you hear. With the measure you use, it will be measured to you, and even more will be added to you. 25 For whoever has will be given more. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him."

THE SEED GROWING SECRETLY

26 Jesus also said, "The kingdom of God is like a man who scatters seed on the ground. 27 Night and day he sleeps and wakes, and the seed sprouts and grows, though he knows not how. 28 All by itself the earth produces a crop—first the stalk, then the head, then grain that ripens within. 29 And as soon as the grain is ripe, he swings the sickle, because the harvest has come."

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD SEED // MATTHEW 13:31–32; LUKE 13:18–19

30 Then He asked, "To what can we compare the kingdom of God? With what parable shall we present it? 31 It is like a mustard seed, which is the smallest of all seeds sown upon the earth. 32 But after it is planted, it grows to be the largest of all garden plants and puts forth great branches, so that the birds of the air nest in its shade."

33 With many such parables Jesus spoke the word to them, to the extent that they could understand. 34 He did not tell them anything without using a parable. But privately He explained everything to His own disciples.

JESUS CALMS THE STORM // PSALM 107:1–43; MATTHEW 8:23–27; LUKE 8:22–25

35 When that evening came, He said to His disciples, "Let us cross to the other side." 36 After they had dismissed the crowd, they took Jesus with them, since He was already in the boat. And there were other boats with Him.

37 Soon a violent windstorm came up, and the waves were breaking over the boat, so that it was being swamped. 38 But Jesus was in the stern, sleeping on the cushion. So they woke Him and said, "Teacher, don't You care that we are perishing?"

39 Then Jesus got up and rebuked the wind and the sea. "Silence!" He commanded. "Be still!" And the wind died down, and it was perfectly calm.

40 "Why are you so afraid?" He asked. "Do you still have no faith?"

41 Overwhelmed with fear, they asked one another, "Who is this, that even the wind and the sea obey Him?"

MK 4:37 [MIRACLE] Jesus calms the wind and the waves

MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

A wild man in the tombs has a legion of demons. Jesus sends them into two thousand pigs, who run off a cliff, and the town asks Jesus to please leave. Then a sick woman touches His robe and is healed, and He raises a dead girl by taking her hand and saying, Little girl, get up.

THE DEMONS AND THE PIGS // MATTHEW 8:28–34; LUKE 8:26–39

1 On the other side of the sea, they arrived
in the region of the Gerasenes. 2 As soon
as Jesus got out of the boat, He was met
by a man with an unclean spirit, who was
coming from the tombs. 3 This man had
been living in the tombs and could no
longer be restrained, even with chains. 4
Though he was often bound with chains
and shackles, he had broken the chains
and shattered the shackles. Now there
was no one with the strength to subdue
him. 5 Night and day in the tombs and in
the mountains he kept crying out and cut-
ting himself with stones.

6 When the man saw Jesus from a dis-
tance, he ran and fell on his knees before
Him. 7 And he shouted in a loud voice,
"What do You want with me, Jesus, Son
of the Most High God? I beg You before
God not to torture me!" 8 For Jesus had al-
ready declared, "Come out of this man,
you unclean spirit!"

9 "What is your name?" Jesus asked.
"My name is Legion," he replied, "for we
are many." 10 And he begged Jesus re-
peatedly not to send them out of that re-
gion.

11 There on the nearby hillside a large herd
of pigs was feeding. 12 So the demons
begged Jesus, "Send us to the pigs, so
that we may enter them."

13 He gave them permission, and the un-
clean spirits came out and went into the
pigs, and the herd of about two thousand
rushed down the steep bank into the sea
and drowned in the water.

14 Those tending the pigs ran off and re-
ported this in the town and countryside,
and the people went out to see what had
happened. 15 When they came to Jesus,
they saw the man who had been pos-
sessed by the legion of demons sitting
there, clothed and in his right mind; and
they were afraid.

16 Those who had seen it described what
had happened to the demon-possessed
man and also to the pigs. 17 And the peo-
ple began to beg Jesus to leave their re-
gion.

18 As He was getting into the boat, the man
who had been possessed by the demons
begged to go with Him. 19 But Jesus would
not allow him. "Go home to your own peo-
ple," He said, "and tell them how much the
Lord has done for you, and what mercy
He has shown you."

20 So the man went away and began to
proclaim throughout the Decapolis how
much Jesus had done for him. And every-
one was amazed.

THE HEALING TOUCH OF JESUS // MATTHEW 9:18–26; LUKE 8:40–56

21 When Jesus had again crossed by boat
to the other side, a large crowd gathered
around Him beside the sea. 22 A syna-
gogue leader named Jairus arrived, and
seeing Jesus, he fell at His feet 23 and
pleaded with Him urgently, "My little
daughter is near death. Please come and
place Your hands on her, so that she will
be healed and live."

24 So Jesus went with him, and a large
crowd followed and pressed around Him.
25 And a woman was there who had suf-
fered from bleeding for twelve years. 26
She had borne much agony under the
care of many physicians and had spent all
she had, but to no avail. Instead, her con-
dition had only grown worse.

27 When the woman heard about Jesus,
she came up through the crowd behind
Him and touched His cloak. 28 For she kept
saying, "If only I touch His garments, I will
be healed." 29 Immediately her bleeding

MK 5:6 [DEMONIC] My name is Legion, for we are many
MK 5:12 [DEMONIC] The unclean spirits go into the pigs

MK 5:27 [MIRACLE] A bleeding woman touches His cloak and is healed

MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

stopped, and she sensed in her body that she was healed of her affliction.

30 At once Jesus was aware that power had gone out from Him. Turning to the crowd, He asked, "Who touched My garments?"

31 His disciples answered, "You can see the crowd pressing in on You, and yet You ask, 'Who touched Me?'"

32 But He kept looking around to see who had done this. 33 Then the woman, knowing what had happened to her, came and fell down before Him trembling in fear, and she told Him the whole truth.

34 "Daughter," said Jesus, "your faith has healed you. Go in peace and be free of your affliction."

35 While He was still speaking, messengers from the house of Jairus arrived and said, "Your daughter is dead; why bother the Teacher anymore?"

36 But Jesus overheard their conversation and said to Jairus, "Do not be afraid; just believe." 37 And He did not allow anyone to accompany Him except Peter, James, and John the brother of James.

38 When they arrived at the house of the synagogue leader, Jesus saw the commotion and the people weeping and wailing loudly. 39 He went inside and asked, "Why all this commotion and weeping? The child is not dead, but asleep." 40 And they laughed at Him.

After He had put them all outside, He took the child's father and mother and His own companions, and went in to see the child. 41 Taking her by the hand, Jesus said, "Talitha koum!" which means, "Little girl, I say to you, get up!" 42 Immediately the girl got up and began to walk around (she was twelve years old). And at once they were utterly astounded. 43 Then Jesus gave strict orders that no one should know about this, and He told them to give her something to eat.

MK 5:41 [MIRACLE] Talitha koum: Jairus' daughter gets up

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

His hometown only sees the carpenter, so He does few miracles there. He sends out the Twelve two by two. Herod throws a birthday party that ends with John the Baptist's head on a platter. Then Jesus feeds five thousand and walks on water.

THE REJECTION AT NAZARETH // MATTHEW 13:53–58; LUKE 4:16–30

1 Jesus went on from there and came to His hometown, accompanied by His disciples. 2 When the Sabbath came, He began to teach in the synagogue, and many who heard Him were astonished. "Where did this man get these ideas?" they asked. "What is this wisdom He has been given? And how can He perform such miracles? 3 Isn't this the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James, Joses, Judas, and Simon? Aren't His sisters here with us as well?" And they took offense at Him.

4 Then Jesus said to them, "Only in his hometown, among his relatives, and in his own household is a prophet without honor." 5 So He could not perform any miracles there, except to lay His hands on a few of the sick and heal them. 6 And He was amazed at their unbelief.

And He went around from village to village, teaching the people.

THE MINISTRY OF THE TWELVE // MATTHEW 10:5–15; LUKE 9:1–6

7 Then Jesus called the Twelve to Him and began to send them out two by two, giving them authority over unclean spirits. 8 He instructed them to take nothing but a staff for the journey—no bread, no bag, no money in their belts— 9 and to wear sandals, but not a second tunic.

MK 6:4 [NOTABLE] The people who know you best are often the last to listen. His own town knew Jesus as the carpenter, and even His brothers did not believe at first, John 7:5. If friends and family brush off your faith, you are in good company. Later His brother James led the church in Jerusalem.
MK 6:7 [DEMONIC] Sent out two by two with authority over unclean spirits
MK 6:7 [NOTABLE] Jesus's own commissioning practice — teams of two, anointing with oil, healing the sick; the pattern for church ministry
MK 6:8 [NOTABLE] Travel light. No food, bag or money meant trusting God to provide through the people they served.

DEMONIC NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

10 And He told them, "When you enter a
house, stay there until you leave that area.
11 If anyone will not welcome you or listen
to you, shake the dust off your feet when
you leave that place, as a testimony
against them."

12 So they set out and preached that the
people should repent. 13 They also drove
out many demons and healed many of the
sick, anointing them with oil.

THE BEHEADING OF JOHN // MATTHEW 14:1–12; LUKE 9:7–9

14 Now King Herod heard about this, for Jesus' name had become well known, and people were saying, "John the Baptist has risen from the dead! That is why miraculous powers are at work in him." 15 Others were saying, "He is Elijah," and still others, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets of old."

16 But when Herod heard this, he said, "John, whom I beheaded, has risen from the dead!" 17 For Herod himself had ordered that John be arrested and bound and imprisoned, on account of his brother Philip's wife Herodias, whom Herod had married. 18 For John had been telling Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife!"

19 So Herodias held a grudge against John and wanted to kill him. But she had been unable, 20 because Herod feared John and protected him, knowing that he was a righteous and holy man. When he heard John's words, he was greatly perplexed; yet he listened to him gladly.

21 On Herod's birthday, her opportunity arose. Herod held a banquet for his nobles and military commanders and the leading men of Galilee. 22 When the daughter of Herodias came and danced, she pleased Herod and his guests, and the king said to the girl, "Ask me for whatever you wish, and I will give it to you." 23 And he swore to her, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give you, up to half my kingdom!"

24 Then she went out and asked her mother, "What should I request?"

And her mother answered, "The head of John the Baptist."

25 At once the girl hurried back to the king with her request: "I want you to give me the head of John the Baptist on a platter immediately."

26 The king was consumed with sorrow, but because of his oaths and his guests, he did not want to refuse her. 27 So without delay, the king commanded that John's head be brought in. He sent an executioner, who went and beheaded him in the prison. 28 The man brought John's head on a platter and presented it to the girl, who gave it to her mother.

29 When John's disciples heard about this, they came and took his body and placed it in a tomb.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT JOSEPHUS WROTE

The Death of John the Baptist

JOSEPHUS, ANTIQUITIES OF THE JEWS 18.5.2 · MARK 6:14 TO 29 · MATTHEW 14:1 TO 12

WHY THIS IS HERE

Mark tells how Herod Antipas had John the Baptist beheaded, 6:17 to 29. A Jewish historian who was not a Christian tells it too, with a different reason.

WHO JOSEPHUS WAS

A Jewish priest and general, born about AD 37, who went over to the Romans in the war of AD 66 to 70. He wrote his Antiquities of the Jews in Rome about AD 93 to 94.

WHAT HE WROTE

All of book 18, chapter 5, section 2, in William Whiston's translation, 1737, as printed by George Routledge and Sons, London. Words in [square brackets] are Whiston's. Macherus is the fortress Machaerus, east of the Dead Sea.

- **MK 6:9 [NOTABLE]** No backup outfit. Depend on God, not on what you packed. Luke 22:35 says they lacked nothing.
- **MK 6:10 [NOTABLE]** Stay in one house. Do not trade up when a nicer offer comes along.
- **MK 6:11 [NOTABLE]** Shaking off the dust meant, I did my part, and the choice is yours. A warning, not a tantrum. Paul did it too, Acts 13:51.
- **MK 6:12 [NOTABLE]** Repent means turn around. Change your mind, change your direction, come back to God.
- **MK 6:13 [DEMONIC]** Sent out two by two with authority over unclean spirits
- **MK 6:17 [NOTE]** TWO REASONS. The historian Josephus says Herod killed John because he feared a revolt. See What Josephus Wrote.

JESUS SPEAKING

ANTIQUITIES 18.5.2

2. Now, some of the Jews thought that the destruction of Herod's army came from God, and that very justly, as a punishment of what he did against John, that was called the Baptist; for Herod slew him, who was a good man, and commanded the Jews to exercise virtue, both as to righteousness towards one another, and piety towards God, and so to come to baptism; for that the washing [with water] would be acceptable to him, if they made use of it, not in order to the putting away [or the remission] of some sins [only,] but for the purification of the body: supposing still that the soul was thoroughly purified beforehand by righteousness. Now, when [many] others came to crowd about him, for they were greatly moved [or pleased] by hearing his words, Herod, who feared lest the great influence John had over the people might put it into his power and inclination to raise a rebellion (for they seemed ready to do anything he should advise), thought it best, by putting him to death, to prevent any mischief he might cause, and not bring himself into difficulties, by sparing a man who might make him repent of it when it should be too late. Accordingly he was sent a prisoner, out of Herod's suspicious temper, to Macherus, the castle I before mentioned, and was there put to death. Now the Jews had an opinion that the destruction of this army was sent as a punishment upon Herod, and a mark of God's displeasure against him.

Mark and Josephus Side by Side

MARK 6:17 TO 29 · MATTHEW 14:3 TO 12 · JOSEPHUS, ANTIQUITIES 18.5.1 TO 4

WHAT MARK SAYS

John told Herod it was not lawful to have his brother's wife, Herodias, 6:18. She held a grudge. At Herod's birthday party her daughter danced, and Herod promised her anything. Her mother told her to ask for John's head, 6:24.

WHAT JOSEPHUS SAYS

Herod was afraid that John's huge influence over the people could lead to a rebellion, so he struck first, and John was killed at Machaerus. Just before this, Josephus tells how Herod divorced the daughter of King Aretas of Arabia to marry Herodias. Aretas later wiped out Herod's army, about AD 36, and many Jews said it was God punishing Herod for killing John.

WHO WAS WHO

Herodias was Herod's niece and the wife of his half brother. She was not his daughter in law. The girl who danced was her daughter; Josephus names her Salome (18.5.4). Mark calls the first husband Philip and Josephus calls him Herod. Many think he was Herod Philip, with two names; others count it as a difference between the two.

DO THEY CLASH?

Not necessarily. Josephus gives the public, political reason. Mark gives the private story of how it happened. Matthew 14:5 has both: Herod wanted to kill John but was afraid of the people. A ruler can fear a revolt and still be pushed over the edge by his wife.

ONE REAL DIFFERENCE

Josephus says John's baptism was not for forgiving sins but for cleansing the body, after the soul was already made right. Mark says it was a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins, 1:4. Josephus wrote for Roman readers and may have toned it down.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

John was a real, popular preacher of baptism and righteousness, killed by Herod Antipas. Nearly all scholars accept this passage as genuine, unlike the debated passage about Jesus in 18.3.3.

THE FEEDING OF THE FIVE THOUSAND //
MATTHEW 14:13–21; LUKE 9:10–17; JOHN 6:1–15

30 Meanwhile, the apostles gathered around Jesus and brought Him news of all they had done and taught. 31 And He said to them, "Come with Me privately to a solitary place, and let us rest for a while." For many people were coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat.

32 So they went away in a boat by themselves to a solitary place. 33 But many people saw them leaving and recognized them. They ran together on foot from all

THE HEART MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

the towns and arrived before them. 34 When Jesus stepped ashore and saw a large crowd, He had compassion on them, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. And He began to teach them many things.

35 By now the hour was already late. So the disciples came to Jesus and said, "This is a desolate place, and the hour is already late. 36 Dismiss the crowd so they can go to the surrounding countryside and villages and buy themselves something to eat."

37 But Jesus told them, "You give them something to eat."

They asked Him, "Should we go out and spend more than half a year's wages to give all of them bread to eat?"

38 "Go and see how many loaves you have," He told them.

And after checking, they said, "Five—and two fish."

39 Then Jesus directed them to have the people sit in groups on the green grass. 40 So they sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties.

41 Taking the five loaves and the two fish and looking up to heaven, Jesus spoke a blessing and broke the loaves. Then He gave them to His disciples to set before the people. And He divided the two fish among them all.

42 They all ate and were satisfied, 43 and the disciples picked up twelve basketfuls of broken pieces of bread and fish. 44 And there were five thousand men who had eaten the loaves.

JESUS WALKS ON WATER // MATTHEW 14:22–33; JOHN 6:16–21

45 Immediately Jesus made His disciples get into the boat and go on ahead of Him to Bethsaida, while He dismissed the crowd. 46 After bidding them farewell, He went up on the mountain to pray.

47 When evening came, the boat was in the middle of the sea, and Jesus was alone on land. 48 He could see that the disciples were straining to row, because the wind was against them. About the fourth watch of the night, Jesus went out to them, walking on the sea. He intended to pass by them, 49 but when they saw Him walking on the sea, they cried out, thinking He was a ghost— 50 for they all saw Him and were terrified.

But Jesus spoke up at once: "Take courage! It is I. Do not be afraid." 51 Then He climbed into the boat with them, and the wind died down. And the disciples were utterly astounded, 52 for they had not understood about the loaves, but their hearts had been hardened.

JESUS HEALS AT GENNESARET // MATTHEW 14:34–36

53 When they had crossed over, they landed at Gennesaret and moored the boat. 54 As soon as they got out of the boat, the people recognized Jesus 55 and ran through that whole region, carrying the sick on mats to wherever they heard He was. 56 And wherever He went—villages and towns and countrysides—they laid the sick in the marketplaces and begged Him just to let them touch the fringe of His cloak. And all who touched Him were healed.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

The Pharisees fuss about handwashing, and Jesus says the real dirt comes from the heart. A Gentile mother answers Him so well that He heals her daughter from a distance. Then He puts His fingers in a deaf man's ears, says Ephphatha, which means be opened, and the man hears and speaks.

THE TRADITION OF THE ELDERS // MATTHEW 15:1–9

1 Then the Pharisees and some of the scribes who had come from Jerusalem gathered around Jesus, 2 and they saw some of His disciples eating with hands that were defiled—that is, unwashed.

- **MK 6:38 [MIRACLE]** Five thousand fed with five loaves and two fish
- **MK 6:48 [MIRACLE]** Jesus walks on the sea
- **MK 6:52 [HEART]** The disciples missed the lesson of the loaves because their hearts were hardened.
- **MK 6:56 [MIRACLE]** All who touch the fringe of His cloak are healed

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

3 Now in holding to the tradition of the elders, the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat until they wash their hands ceremonially. 4 And on returning from the market, they do not eat unless they wash. And there are many other traditions for them to observe, including the washing of cups, pitchers, kettles, and couches for dining.

5 So the Pharisees and scribes questioned Jesus: "Why do Your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders? Instead, they eat with defiled hands."

6 Jesus answered them, "Isaiah prophesied correctly about you hypocrites, as it is written:

'These people honor Me with their lips,
but their hearts are far from Me.
7 *They worship Me in vain;*
they teach as doctrine the precepts of men.'

8 You have disregarded the commandment of God to keep the tradition of men."

9 He went on to say, "You neatly set aside the command of God to maintain your own tradition. 10 For Moses said, *'Honor your father and your mother'* and *'Anyone who curses his father or mother must be put to death.'* 11 But you say that if a man says to his father or mother, 'Whatever you would have received from me is Corban' (that is, a gift devoted to God), 12 he is no longer permitted to do anything for his father or mother. 13 Thus you nullify the word of God by the tradition you have handed down. And you do so in many such matters."

WHAT DEFILES A MAN // MATTHEW 15:10–20

14 Once again Jesus called the crowd to Him and said, "All of you, listen to Me and understand: 15 Nothing that enters a man from the outside can defile him; but the things that come out of a man, these are what defile him." 16 [If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear.]

17 After Jesus had left the crowd and gone into the house, His disciples inquired about the parable.

18 "Are you still so dull?" He asked. "Do you not understand? Nothing that enters a man from the outside can defile him, 19 because it does not enter his heart, but it goes into the stomach and then is eliminated." (Thus all foods are clean.)

20 He continued: "What comes out of a man, that is what defiles him. 21 For from within the hearts of men come evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder, adultery, 22 greed, wickedness, deceit, debauchery, envy, slander, arrogance, and foolishness. 23 All these evils come from within, and these are what defile a man."

THE FAITH OF THE GENTILE WOMAN // MATTHEW 15:21–28

24 Jesus left that place and went to the region of Tyre. Not wanting anyone to know He was there, He entered a house, but was unable to escape their notice. 25 Instead, a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit soon heard about Jesus, and she came and fell at His feet. 26 Now she was a Greek woman of Syrophoenician origin, and she kept asking Jesus to drive the demon out of her daughter.

27 "First let the children have their fill," He said. "For it is not right to take the children's bread and toss it to the dogs."

28 "Yes, Lord," she replied, "even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs."

29 Then Jesus told her, "Because of this answer, you may go. The demon has left your daughter." 30 And she went home and found her child lying on the bed, and the demon was gone.

THE DEAF AND MUTE MAN // MATTHEW 9:27–34

31 Then Jesus left the region of Tyre and went through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee and into the region of the Decapolis. 32 Some people brought to Him a man who was deaf and hardly able to speak, and they begged Jesus to place His hand on him.

■ **MK 7:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 29:13 p.1095
■ **MK 7:10 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:12; 21:17; LEV 20:9 p.148

■ **MK 7:19 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 11:47 p.190
■ **MK 7:21 [HEART]** Jesus says evil thoughts and every evil on this list come from within, out of the heart.
■ **MK 7:25 [DEMONIC]** The Syrophoenician woman's daughter set free
■ **MK 7:31 [MIRACLE]** Deaf-mute healed by Jesus' fingers in ears and spittle on tongue

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

33 So Jesus took him aside privately, away
from the crowd, and put His fingers into
the man's ears. Then He spit and touched
the man's tongue. 34 And looking up to
heaven, He sighed deeply and said to him,
"Ephphatha!" (which means, "Be
opened!"). 35 Immediately the man's ears
were opened and his tongue was re-
leased, and he began to speak plainly.
36 Jesus ordered them not to tell anyone.
But the more He ordered them, the more
widely they proclaimed it. 37 The people
were utterly astonished and said, "He has
done all things well! He makes even the
deaf hear and the mute speak!"

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus feeds four thousand, and soon the disciples are worried about bread. He heals a blind man in two steps. Then Peter says You are the Christ, and a few minutes later tells Jesus He does not have to die. Jesus says, Get behind Me, Satan. Rough afternoon for Peter.

THE FEEDING OF THE FOUR THOUSAND // 2 KINGS 4:42–44; MATTHEW 15:29–39

1 In those days the crowd once again be-
came very large, and they had nothing to
eat. Jesus called the disciples to Him and
said, 2 "I have compassion for this crowd,
because they have already been with Me
three days and have nothing to eat. 3 If I
send them home hungry, they will faint
along the way. For some of them have
come a great distance."
4 His disciples replied, "Where in this des-
olate place could anyone find enough
bread to feed all these people?"
5 "How many loaves do you have?" Jesus
asked.
"Seven," they replied.
6 And He instructed the crowd to sit down
on the ground. Then He took the seven
loaves, gave thanks and broke them, and
gave them to His disciples to set before
the people. And they distributed them to
the crowd. 7 They also had a few small
fish, and Jesus blessed them and ordered
that these be set before them as well.
8 The people ate and were satisfied, and
the disciples picked up seven basketfuls
of broken pieces that were left over. 9 And
about four thousand men were present.
And when Jesus had dismissed the
crowd, 10 He immediately got into the boat
with His disciples and went to the district
of Dalmanutha.

THE DEMAND FOR A SIGN // MATTHEW 16:1–4; LUKE 12:54–56

11 Then the Pharisees came and began to
argue with Jesus, testing Him by demand-
ing from Him a sign from heaven.
12 Jesus sighed deeply in His spirit and
said, "Why does this generation demand a
sign? Truly I tell you, no sign will be given
to this generation." 13 And He left them, got
back into the boat, and crossed to the
other side.

THE LEAVEN OF THE PHARISEES AND OF HEROD // MATTHEW 16:5–12; LUKE 12:1–3

14 Now the disciples had forgotten to take
bread, except for one loaf they had with
them in the boat. 15 "Watch out!" He cau-
tioned them. "Beware of the leaven of the
Pharisees and of Herod."
16 So they began to discuss with one an-
other the fact that they had no bread.
17 Aware of their conversation, Jesus
asked them, "Why are you debating about
having no bread? Do you still not see or
understand? Do you have such hard
hearts? 18 'Having eyes, do you not see?
And having ears, do you not hear?' And
do you not remember? 19 When I broke the
five loaves for the five thousand, how
many basketfuls of broken pieces did you
collect?"
"Twelve," they answered.
20 "And when I broke the seven loaves for
the four thousand, how many basketfuls
of broken pieces did you collect?"
"Seven," they said.

MK 7:37 [FULFILLS] The deaf would hear and the blind would see ← IS 29:18 · MEDIUM p.1096
MK 8:5 [MIRACLE] Four thousand fed with seven loaves
MK 8:17 [HEART] Jesus asks, are your hearts still hardened?
MK 8:18 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← JER 5:21; EZK 12:2 p.1155

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

21 Then He asked them, "Do you still not understand?"

THE BLIND MAN AT BETHSAIDA

22 When they arrived at Bethsaida, some people brought a blind man and begged Jesus to touch him. 23 So He took the blind man by the hand and led him out of the village. Then He spit on the man's eyes and placed His hands on him. "Can you see anything?" He asked.

24 The man looked up and said, "I can see the people, but they look like trees walking around."

25 Once again Jesus placed His hands on the man's eyes, and when he opened them his sight was restored, and he could see everything clearly. 26 Jesus sent him home and said, "Do not go back into the village."

PETER'S CONFESSION OF CHRIST // MATTHEW 16:13–20; LUKE 9:18–20; JOHN 6:67–71

27 Then Jesus and His disciples went on to the villages around Caesarea Philippi. On the way, He questioned His disciples: "Who do people say I am?"

28 They replied, "Some say John the Baptist; others say Elijah; and still others, one of the prophets."

29 "But what about you?" Jesus asked. "Who do you say I am?"

Peter answered, "You are the Christ."

30 And Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about Him.

CHRIST'S PASSION FORETOLD // MATTHEW 16:21–23; LUKE 9:21–22

31 Then He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders, chief priests, and scribes, and that He must be killed and after three days rise again. 32 He spoke this message quite frankly, and Peter took Him aside and began to rebuke Him.

33 But Jesus, turning and looking at His disciples, rebuked Peter and said, "Get behind Me, Satan! For you do not have in mind the things of God, but the things of men."

TAKE UP YOUR CROSS // MATTHEW 16:24–28; LUKE 9:23–27

34 Then Jesus called the crowd to Him along with His disciples, and He told them, "If anyone wants to come after Me, he must deny himself and take up his cross and follow Me. 35 For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for My sake and for the gospel will save it.

36 What does it profit a man to gain the whole world, yet forfeit his soul? 37 Or what can a man give in exchange for his soul? 38 If anyone is ashamed of Me and My words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him when He comes in His Father's glory with the holy angels."

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

On a mountain Jesus shines like light while Moses and Elijah show up, and God says, This is My beloved Son. Listen to Him. Down below, the disciples cannot cast out a demon. A desperate father says the most honest prayer in the Bible: I do believe; help my unbelief!

THE TRANSFIGURATION // MATTHEW 17:1–13; LUKE 9:28–36; 2 PETER 1:16–21

1 Then Jesus said to them, "Truly I tell you, there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God arrive with power."

2 After six days Jesus took with Him Peter, James, and John, and led them up a high mountain by themselves. There He was transfigured before them. 3 His clothes became radiantly white, brighter than any launderer on earth could bleach them. 4

- **MK 8:22 [MIRACLE]** Blind man at Bethsaida healed in two stages
- **MK 8:31 [PROPHECY]** Jesus began to show His disciples that He must go to Jerusalem, suffer many things at the hands of elders, chief priests, and scribes, be killed, and rise the third day → Fulfilled in the Passion narratives
- **MK 9:1 [PROPHECY]** There are some standing here who shall not taste death till they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom → Fulfilled at the Transfiguration six days later (Matt 17:1-8; MK 9:2-8; LK 9:28-36); or at Pentecost (ACTS 2) · MEDIUM p.1575
- **MK 9:2 [MIRACLE]** Jesus is transfigured and the Father speaks from the cloud
- **MK 9:2 [FULFILLS]** There are some standing here who shall not taste death till they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom ← MT 16:28; MK 9:1; LK 9:27 · MEDIUM p.1574

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | DEMONIC | JESUS SPEAKING

And Elijah and Moses appeared before them, talking with Jesus.

5 Peter said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here. Let us put up three shelters—one for You, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." 6 For they were all so terrified that Peter did not know what else to say.

7 Then a cloud appeared and enveloped them, and a voice came from the cloud: "This is My beloved Son. Listen to Him!" 8 Suddenly, when they looked around, they saw no one with them except Jesus.

9 As they were coming down the mountain, Jesus admonished them not to tell anyone what they had seen until the Son of Man had risen from the dead. 10 So they kept this matter to themselves, discussing what it meant to rise from the dead. 11 And they asked Jesus, "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

12 He replied, "Elijah does indeed come first, and he restores all things. Why then is it written that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected? 13 But I tell you that Elijah has indeed come, and they have done to him whatever they wished, just as it is written about him."

THE BOY WITH AN EVIL SPIRIT // MATTHEW 17:14–18; LUKE 9:37–42

14 When they returned to the other disciples, they saw a large crowd around them, and scribes arguing with them. 15 As soon as all the people saw Jesus, they were filled with awe and ran to greet Him.

16 "What are you disputing with them?" He asked.

17 Someone in the crowd replied, "Teacher, I brought You my son, who has a spirit that makes him mute. 18 Whenever it seizes him, it throws him to the ground. He foams at the mouth, gnashes his teeth, and becomes rigid. I asked Your disciples to drive it out, but they were unable."

19 "O unbelieving generation!" Jesus replied. "How long must I remain with you? How long must I put up with you? Bring the boy to Me."

20 So they brought him, and seeing Jesus, the spirit immediately threw the boy into a convulsion. He fell to the ground and rolled around, foaming at the mouth.

21 Jesus asked the boy's father, "How long has this been with him?"

"From childhood," he said. 22 "It often throws him into the fire or into the water, trying to kill him. But if You can do anything, have compassion on us and help us."

23 "If You can?" echoed Jesus. "All things are possible to him who believes!"

24 Immediately the boy's father cried out, "I do believe; help my unbelief!"

25 When Jesus saw that a crowd had come running, He rebuked the unclean spirit. "You deaf and mute spirit," He said, "I command you to come out and never enter him again."

26 After shrieking and convulsing him violently, the spirit came out. The boy became like a corpse, so that many said, "He is dead." 27 But Jesus took him by the hand and helped him to his feet, and he stood up.

28 After Jesus had gone into the house, His disciples asked Him privately, "Why couldn't we drive it out?"

29 Jesus answered, "This kind cannot come out, except by prayer."

THE SECOND PREDICTION OF THE PASSION // MATTHEW 17:22–23; LUKE 9:43–45

30 Going on from there, they passed through Galilee. But Jesus did not want anyone to know, 31 because He was teaching His disciples. He told them, "The Son of Man will be delivered into the hands of men. They will kill Him, and after three days He will rise." 32 But they did not un-

- **MK 9:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 2:7; DT 18:15 p.884
- **MK 9:9 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man would be raised from the dead → MT 28:6 p.1601
- **MK 9:12 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man would suffer at their hands just as John the Baptist did → MT 27:26-31 p.1598
- **MK 9:17 [DEMONIC]** A spirit makes the boy mute and throws him down
- **MK 9:25 [DEMONIC]** Jesus commands the deaf and mute spirit to come out
- **MK 9:31 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men, and they will kill Him, and the third day He will be raised up → Fulfilled in the Passion week

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

derstand this statement, and they were afraid to ask Him about it.

THE GREATEST IN THE KINGDOM // MATTHEW 18:1–5; LUKE 9:46–50

33 Then they came to Capernaum. While Jesus was in the house, He asked them, "What were you discussing on the way?"
34 But they were silent, for on the way they had been arguing about which of them was the greatest.

35 Sitting down, Jesus called the Twelve and said, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be the last of all and the servant of all."

36 Then He had a little child stand among them. Taking the child in His arms, He said to them, 37 "Whoever welcomes one of these little children in My name welcomes Me, and whoever welcomes Me welcomes not only Me, but the One who sent Me."

38 John said to Him, "Teacher, we saw someone else driving out demons in Your name, and we tried to stop him, because he does not accompany us."

39 "Do not stop him," Jesus replied. "For no one who performs a miracle in My name can turn around and speak evil of Me. 40 For whoever is not against us is for us. 41 Indeed, if anyone gives you even a cup of water because you bear the name of Christ, truly I tell you, he will never lose his reward.

TEMPTATIONS AND TRESPASSES // MATTHEW 18:6–9; LUKE 17:1–4

42 But if anyone causes one of these little ones who believe in Me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a large millstone hung around his neck and to be thrown into the sea.

43 If your hand causes you to sin, cut it off. It is better for you to enter life crippled than to have two hands and go into hell, into the unquenchable fire. 44 [where 'their worm never dies, and the fire is never quenched.'] 45 If your foot causes you to sin, cut it off. It is better for you to enter life lame than to have two feet and be thrown into hell. 46 [where 'their worm never dies, and the fire is never quenched.'] 47 And if your eye causes you to sin, pluck it out. It is better for you to enter the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes and be thrown into hell, 48 where *'their worm never dies, and the fire is never quenched.'*

GOOD SALT // MATTHEW 5:13–16; LUKE 14:34–35

49 For everyone will be salted with fire.

50 Salt is good, but if the salt loses its saltiness, with what will you season it? Have salt among yourselves, and be at peace with one another."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus welcomes little children. A rich man asks how to get eternal life and walks away sad, and Jesus says a camel through a needle is easier. James and John ask for the best seats in glory. Jesus says He came not to be served but to serve.

TEACHINGS ABOUT DIVORCE // MATTHEW 19:1–12

1 Then Jesus left that place and went into the region of Judea, beyond the Jordan. Again the crowds came to Him and He taught them, as was His custom.

2 Some Pharisees came to test Him. "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife?" they inquired.

3 "What did Moses command you?" He replied.

4 They answered, *"Moses permitted a man to write his wife a certificate of divorce and send her away."*

5 But Jesus told them, "Moses wrote this commandment for you because of your hardness of heart. 6 However, from the beginning of creation, *'God made them male and female.'* 7 *'For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife,* 8 *and the two will become one flesh.'* So they are no longer two, but one flesh. 9 Therefore what God has joined together, let man not separate."

MK 9:38 [DEMONIC] A man drives out demons in Jesus' name

MK 9:48 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 66:24 p.1143
MK 10:4 [QUOTES] Quotes ← DT 24:1 p.314
MK 10:5 [HEART] Moses allowed divorce because of the hardness of your hearts.
MK 10:6 [QUOTES] Direct ← GEN 1:27; 2:24 p.48

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

10 When they were back inside the house,
the disciples asked Jesus about this mat-
ter. 11 So He told them, "Whoever divorces
his wife and marries another woman com-
mits adultery against her. 12 And if a
woman divorces her husband and marries
another man, she commits adultery."

JESUS BLESSES THE CHILDREN // MATTHEW 19:13–15; LUKE 18:15–17

13 Now people were bringing the little chil-
dren to Jesus for Him to place His hands
on them, and the disciples rebuked those
who brought them.

14 But when Jesus saw this, He was indig-
nant and told them, "Let the little children
come to Me, and do not hinder them! For
the kingdom of God belongs to such as
these. 15 Truly I tell you, anyone who does
not receive the kingdom of God like a little
child will never enter it." 16 And He took the
children in His arms, placed His hands on
them, and blessed them.

THE RICH YOUNG MAN // MATTHEW 19:16–30; LUKE 18:18–30

17 As Jesus started on His way, a man ran
up and knelt before Him. "Good Teacher,"
he asked, "what must I do to inherit eter-
nal life?"

18 "Why do you call Me good?" Jesus
replied. "No one is good except God
alone. 19 You know the commandments:
*'Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do
not steal, do not bear false witness, do not
cheat others, honor your father and mother.'"*

20 "Teacher," he replied, "all these I have
kept from my youth."

21 Jesus looked at him, loved him, and said
to him, "There is one thing you lack: Go,
sell everything you own and give to the
poor, and you will have treasure in
heaven. Then come, follow Me."

22 But the man was saddened by these
words and went away in sorrow, because
he had great wealth.

23 Then Jesus looked around and said to
His disciples, "How hard it is for the rich
to enter the kingdom of God!"

24 And the disciples were amazed at His
words.

But Jesus said to them again, "Children,
how hard it is to enter the kingdom of
God! 25 It is easier for a camel to pass
through the eye of a needle than for a rich
man to enter the kingdom of God."

26 They were even more astonished and
said to one another, "Who then can be
saved?"

27 Jesus looked at them and said, "With
man this is impossible, but not with God.
For all things are possible with God."

28 Peter began to say to Him, "Look, we
have left everything and followed You."

29 "Truly I tell you," Jesus replied, "no one
who has left home or brothers or sisters
or mother or father or children or fields for
My sake and for the gospel 30 will fail to
receive a hundredfold in the present
age—houses and brothers and sisters and
mothers and children and fields, along
with persecutions—and in the age to
come, eternal life. 31 But many who are
first will be last, and the last will be first."

THE THIRD PREDICTION OF THE PASSION // MATTHEW 20:17–19; LUKE 18:31–34

32 As they were going up the road to
Jerusalem, Jesus was walking ahead of
them. The disciples were amazed, but
those who followed were afraid. Again Je-
sus took the Twelve aside and began to
tell them what was going to happen to
Him: 33 "Look, we are going up to
Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be de-
livered over to the chief priests and
scribes. They will condemn Him to death
and will deliver Him over to the Gentiles,
34 who will mock Him and spit on Him and
flog Him and kill Him. And after three days
He will rise again."

MK 10:17 [NOTABLE] Mark's parallel — adds that Jesus LOVED him, and clarifies that the danger is trusting IN riches, not merely having them

MK 10:19 [QUOTES] Direct ← EX 20:12-16 p.148

MK 10:32 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man will be betrayed to chief priests and scribes, condemned to death, delivered to Gentiles to mock, scourge, and crucify Him; and on the third day He will rise again → Fulfilled precisely

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

THE REQUEST OF JAMES AND JOHN // MATTHEW 20:20–28

35 Then James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came to Jesus and declared, "Teacher, we want You to do for us whatever we ask."

36 "What do you want Me to do for you?" He inquired.

37 They answered, "Grant that one of us may sit at Your right hand and the other at Your left in Your glory."

38 "You do not know what you are asking," Jesus replied. "Can you drink the cup I will drink, or be baptized with the baptism I will undergo?"

39 "We can," the brothers answered.

"You will drink the cup that I drink," Jesus said, "and you will be baptized with the baptism that I undergo. 40 But to sit at My right or left is not Mine to grant. These seats belong to those for whom they have been prepared."

41 When the ten heard about this, they became indignant with James and John. 42 So Jesus called them together and said, "You know that those regarded as rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and their superiors exercise authority over them. 43 But it shall not be this way among you. Instead, whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, 44 and whoever wants to be first must be the slave of all. 45 For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life as a ransom for many."

JESUS HEALS BARTIMAEUS // MATTHEW 20:29–34; LUKE 18:35–43

46 Next, they came to Jericho. And as Jesus and His disciples were leaving Jericho with a large crowd, a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus, was sitting beside the road. 47 When he heard that it was Jesus of Nazareth, he began to cry out, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!"

48 Many people admonished him to be silent, but he cried out all the louder, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

49 Jesus stopped and said, "Call him."

So they called the blind man. "Take courage!" they said. "Get up! He is calling for you."

50 Throwing off his cloak, Bartimaeus jumped up and came to Jesus.

51 "What do you want Me to do for you?" Jesus asked.

"Rabboni," said the blind man, "let me see again."

52 "Go," said Jesus, "your faith has healed you." And immediately he received his sight and followed Jesus along the road.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus rides into Jerusalem on a young donkey while the crowds shout Hosanna. He curses a fig tree with no fruit, then walks into the temple and flips the tables of the money changers. By morning the fig tree is dead from the roots up.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY // ZECHARIAH 9:9–13; MATTHEW 21:1–11; LUKE 19:28–40; JOHN 12:12–19

1 As they approached Jerusalem and came to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives, Jesus sent out two of His disciples 2 and said to them, "Go into the village ahead of you, and as soon as you enter it, you will find a colt tied there, on which no one has ever sat. Untie it and bring it here. 3 If anyone asks, 'Why are you doing this?' tell him, 'The Lord needs it and will return it shortly.'"

4 So they went and found the colt outside in the street, tied at a doorway. They untied it, 5 and some who were standing there asked, "Why are you untying the colt?"

6 The disciples answered as Jesus had instructed them, and the people gave them

MK 10:39 [PROPHECY] James and John would drink the cup of suffering Jesus would drink → ACTS 12:2; REV 1:9 p.1760

MK 10:45 [FULFILLS] A ram died in Isaac's place on the mountain where Yahweh would provide and 2 more ← GEN 22:13-14; LEV 17:11; JOB 33:23-24 p.77

MK 10:45 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man came to give His life a ransom for many → Fulfilled at the crucifixion

MK 10:46 [MIRACLE] Blind Bartimaeus receives his sight

MK 11:2 [PROPHECY] Go into the village opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her. Loose them and bring them to Me → Fulfilled immediately when disciples went and found exactly as He said

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

permission. 7 Then they led the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks over it, and He sat on it.

8 Many in the crowd spread their cloaks on the road, while others spread branches they had cut from the fields. 9 The ones who went ahead and those who followed were shouting:

"Hosanna!"

"Blessed is He who comes in the name of the Lord!"

10 *"Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David!"*

"Hosanna in the highest!"

11 Then Jesus entered Jerusalem and went into the temple courts. He looked around at everything, but since it was already late, He went out to Bethany with the Twelve.

JESUS CURSES THE FIG TREE // MATTHEW 21:18–22; MARK 11:20–25

12 The next day, when they had left Bethany, Jesus was hungry. 13 Seeing in the distance a fig tree in leaf, He went to see if there was any fruit on it. But when He reached it, He found nothing on it except leaves, since it was not the season for figs. 14 Then He said to the tree, "May no one ever eat of your fruit again." And His disciples heard this statement.

JESUS CLEANSES THE TEMPLE // MATTHEW 21:12–17; LUKE 19:45–48; JOHN 2:12–25

15 When they arrived in Jerusalem, Jesus entered the temple courts and began to drive out those who were buying and selling there. He overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those selling doves. 16 And He would not allow anyone to carry merchandise through the temple courts. 17 Then Jesus began to teach them, and He declared, "Is it not written: *'My house will be called a house of prayer for all the nations'?* But you have made it *'a den of robbers.'"*

18 When the chief priests and scribes heard this, they looked for a way to kill Him. For they were afraid of Him, because the whole crowd was astonished at His teaching.

19 And when evening came, Jesus and His disciples went out of the city.

THE WITHERED FIG TREE // MATTHEW 21:18–22; MARK 11:12–14

20 As they were walking back in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered from its roots. 21 Peter remembered it and said, "Look, Rabbi! The fig tree You cursed has withered."

22 "Have faith in God," Jesus said to them. 23 "Truly I tell you that if anyone says to this mountain, 'Be lifted up and thrown into the sea,' and has no doubt in his heart but believes that it will happen, it will be done for him. 24 Therefore I tell you, whatever you ask for in prayer, believe that you have received it, and it will be yours.

25 And when you stand to pray, if you hold anything against another, forgive it, so that your Father in heaven will forgive your trespasses as well." 26 [But if you do not forgive, neither will your Father in heaven forgive your trespasses.]

JESUS' AUTHORITY CHALLENGED // MATTHEW 21:23–27; LUKE 20:1–8

27 After their return to Jerusalem, Jesus was walking in the temple courts, and the chief priests, scribes, and elders came up to Him. 28 "By what authority are You doing these things?" they asked. "And who gave You the authority to do them?"

29 "I will ask you one question," Jesus replied, "and if you answer Me, I will tell you by what authority I am doing these things. 30 John's baptism—was it from heaven or from men? Answer Me!"

31 They deliberated among themselves what they should answer: "If we say, 'From heaven,' He will ask, 'Why then did you not believe him?' 32 But if we say, 'From men'..." they were afraid of the people, for they all held that John truly was a prophet. 33 So they answered, "We do not know."

MK 11:9 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 118:25-26 p.964
MK 11:12 [MIRACLE] Jesus curses the fig tree
MK 11:17 [FULFILLS] 'My house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples' ← IS 56:7 p.1131

MK 11:20 [MIRACLE] The fig tree is found withered from the roots

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

And Jesus replied, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I am doing these things."

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

The leaders try trick questions about taxes, the resurrection and the greatest commandment, and Jesus answers every one. Then a poor widow drops in two tiny coins, and Jesus says she gave more than all the rich people put together.

THE PARABLE OF THE WICKED TENANTS // MATTHEW 21:33–46; LUKE 20:9–18

1 Then Jesus began to speak to them in
parables: "A man planted a vineyard. He
put a wall around it, dug a wine vat, and
built a watchtower. Then he rented it out
to some tenants and went away on a jour-
ney.
2 At harvest time, he sent a servant to the
tenants to collect his share of the fruit of
the vineyard. 3 But they seized the ser-
vant, beat him, and sent him away empty-
handed.
4 Then he sent them another servant, and
they struck him over the head and treated
him shamefully.
5 He sent still another, and this one they
killed.
He sent many others; some they beat and
others they killed.
6 Finally, having one beloved son, he sent
him to them. 'They will respect my son,'
he said.
7 But the tenants said to one another, 'This
is the heir. Come, let us kill him, and the
inheritance will be ours.' 8 So they seized
the son, killed him, and threw him out of
the vineyard.
9 What then will the owner of the vineyard
do? He will come and kill those tenants
and give the vineyard to others. 10 Have
you never read this Scripture:

'The stone the builders rejected
has become the cornerstone.
11 *This is from the Lord,*
and it is marvelous in our eyes'?"

12 At this, the leaders sought to arrest Je-
sus, for they knew that He had spoken
this parable against them. But fearing the
crowd, they left Him and went away.

PAYING TAXES TO CAESAR // MATTHEW 22:15–22; LUKE 20:19–26

13 Later, they sent some of the Pharisees
and Herodians to catch Jesus in His
words. 14 "Teacher," they said, "we know
that You are honest and seek favor from
no one. Indeed, You are impartial and
teach the way of God in accordance with
the truth. Is it lawful to pay taxes to Cae-
sar or not? Should we pay them or not?"
15 But Jesus saw through their hypocrisy
and said, "Why are you testing Me? Bring
Me a Roman coin to inspect." 16 So they
brought it, and He asked them, "Whose
image is this? And whose inscription?"
"Caesar's," they answered.
17 Then Jesus told them, "Give to Caesar
what is Caesar's, and to God what is
God's."
And they marveled at Him.

THE SADDUCEES AND THE RESURRECTION // MATTHEW 22:23–33; LUKE 20:27–40

18 Then the Sadducees, who say there is
no resurrection, came to Jesus and ques-
tioned Him: 19 *"Teacher, Moses wrote for us*
that if a man's brother dies and leaves a wife
but no children, the man is to marry his
brother's widow and raise up offspring for
him. 20 Now there were seven brothers.
The first one married and died, leaving no
children. 21 Then the second one married
the widow, but he also died and left no
children. And the third did likewise. 22 In
this way, none of the seven left any chil-
dren. And last of all, the woman died. 23 In
the resurrection, then, whose wife will she
be? For all seven were married to her."
24 Jesus said to them, "Aren't you mis-
taken, because you do not know the
Scriptures or the power of God? 25 When
the dead rise, they will neither marry nor
be given in marriage. Instead, they will be
like the angels in heaven.

■ **MK 12:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 5:1-2 p.1067
■ **MK 12:6 [PROPHECY]** The owner's son would be seized, thrown out, and killed by the tenants → MT 27:1-2; HEB 13:12 · MEDIUM p.1597
■ **MK 12:10 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:22-23 p.964
■ **MK 12:19 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 25:5 p.316

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

26 But concerning the dead rising, have
you not read about the burning bush in
the Book of Moses, how God told him, *'I
am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and
the God of Jacob'?* 27 He is not the God of
the dead, but of the living. You are badly
mistaken!"

THE GREATEST COMMANDMENT // DEUTERONOMY 6:1–19; MATTHEW 22:34–40

28 Now one of the scribes had come up
and heard their debate. Noticing how well
Jesus had answered them, he asked Him,
"Which commandment is the most important of all?"

29 Jesus replied, "This is the most important: *'Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God, the
Lord is One.* 30 *Love the Lord your God with all
your heart and with all your soul and with all
your mind and with all your strength.'* 31 The
second is this: *'Love your neighbor as yourself.'* No other commandment is greater
than these."

32 *"Right, Teacher,"* the scribe replied. *"You
have stated correctly that God is One and there
is no other but Him,* 33 *and to love Him with
all your heart and with all your understanding
and with all your strength, and to love your
neighbor as yourself. This is more important
than all burnt offerings and sacrifices."*

34 When Jesus saw that the man had answered wisely, He said, "You are not far
from the kingdom of God."

And no one dared to question Him any
further.

WHOSE SON IS THE CHRIST? // MATTHEW 22:41–46; LUKE 20:41–44

35 While Jesus was teaching in the temple
courts, He asked, "How can the scribes
say that the Christ is the Son of David? 36
Speaking by the Holy Spirit, David himself
declared:

*'The Lord said to my Lord,
"Sit at My right hand
until I put Your enemies
under Your feet."'*

37 David himself calls Him 'Lord.' So how
can He be David's son?"

And the large crowd listened to Him with
delight.

BEWARE OF THE SCRIBES // LUKE 20:45–47

38 In His teaching Jesus also said, "Watch
out for the scribes. They like to walk
around in long robes, to receive greetings
in the marketplaces, 39 and to have the
chief seats in the synagogues and the
places of honor at banquets. 40 They de-
fraud widows of their houses, and for a
show make lengthy prayers. These men
will receive greater condemnation."

THE WIDOW'S OFFERING // LUKE 21:1–4

41 As Jesus was sitting opposite the trea-
sury, He watched the crowd putting
money into it. And many rich people put in
large amounts. 42 Then one poor widow
came and put in two small copper coins,
worth only a tiny part of a day's wage.

43 Jesus called His disciples to Him and
said, "Truly I tell you, this poor widow has
put more than all the others into the trea-
sury. 44 For they all contributed out of their
surplus, but she out of her poverty has
put in all she had to live on."

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

The disciples admire the huge temple stones, and Jesus says every one will be thrown down. Then He tells them about wars, earthquakes, fake messiahs and the Son of Man coming in the clouds. His main point is simple: stay awake. Nobody knows the day or hour, so be ready.

TEMPLE DESTRUCTION AND OTHER SIGNS // MATTHEW 24:1–8; LUKE 21:5–9

1 As Jesus was leaving the temple, one of
His disciples said to Him, "Teacher, look at
the magnificent stones and buildings!"

2 "Do you see all these great buildings?"
Jesus replied. "Not one stone here will be
left on another; every one will be thrown
down."

- **MK 12:26 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 3:6 p.124
- **MK 12:29 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 6:4-5 p.293
- **MK 12:30 [HEART]** Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, mind and strength.
- **MK 12:31 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 19:18 p.205
- **MK 12:32 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 4:35; 6:4 p.290
- **MK 12:33 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 6:5; LEV 19:18 p.293
- **MK 12:36 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **MK 13:2 [PROPHECY]** Not one stone shall be left here upon another, that shall not be thrown down (regarding the Temple) → HISTORY: Rome burned the temple in AD 70 and tore the city down. Recorded by Josephus. Fallen Temple Mount stones lie below the Western Wall.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · JESUS SPEAKING

3 While Jesus was sitting on the Mount of
Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James,
John, and Andrew asked Him privately, 4
"Tell us, when will these things happen?
And what will be the sign that they are
about to be fulfilled?"

5 Jesus began by telling them, "See to it
that no one deceives you. 6 Many will
come in My name, claiming, 'I am He,' and
will deceive many. 7 When you hear of
wars and rumors of wars, do not be
alarmed. These things must happen, but
the end is still to come. 8 Nation will rise
against nation, and kingdom against king-
dom. There will be earthquakes in various
places, as well as famines. These are the
beginning of birth pains.

WITNESSING TO ALL NATIONS // MATTHEW 24:9–14; LUKE 21:10–19

9 So be on your guard. You will be deliv-
ered over to the councils and beaten in
the synagogues. On My account you will
stand before governors and kings as wit-
nesses to them. 10 And the gospel must
first be proclaimed to all the nations. 11 But
when they arrest you and hand you over,
do not worry beforehand what to say. In-
stead, speak whatever you are given at
that time, for it will not be you speaking,
but the Holy Spirit.

12 Brother will betray brother to death, and
a father his child. Children will rise against
their parents and have them put to death.
13 You will be hated by everyone because
of My name, but the one who perseveres
to the end will be saved.

THE ABOMINATION OF DESOLATION // MATTHEW 24:15–25; LUKE 21:20–24

14 So when you see the abomination of
desolation standing where it should not be
(let the reader understand), then let those
who are in Judea flee to the mountains. 15
Let no one on the housetop go back in-
side to retrieve anything from his house.
16 And let no one in the field return for his
cloak.

17 How miserable those days will be for
pregnant and nursing mothers! 18 Pray that
this will not occur in the winter. 19 For
those will be days of tribulation unseen
from the beginning of God's creation until
now, and never to be seen again. 20 If the
Lord had not cut short those days, no-
body would be saved. But for the sake of
the elect, whom He has chosen, He has
cut them short.

21 At that time if anyone says to you, 'Look,
here is the Christ!' or 'There He is!' do not
believe it. 22 For false Christs and false
prophets will appear and perform signs
and wonders to deceive even the elect, if
that were possible. 23 So be on your guard;
I have told you everything in advance.

THE RETURN OF THE SON OF MAN // MATTHEW 24:26–31; LUKE 21:25–28

24 But in those days, after that tribulation:

'The sun will be darkened,
and the moon will not give its light;
25 the stars will fall from the sky,
and the powers of the heavens will be
shaken.'

26 At that time they will see the Son of Man
coming in the clouds with great power
and glory. 27 And He will send out the an-

- **MK 13:5 [PROPHECY]** Many would come claiming to be the Christ and deceive many → HISTORY: Theudas about AD 45 and the Egyptian in the AD 50s led crowds astray. Recorded by Josephus. Bar Kokhba was hailed as Messiah in AD 132. · MEDIUM
- **MK 13:7 [PROPHECY]** Wars, nations rising against nations, famines, and earthquakes would be the beginning of birth pains → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **MK 13:9 [PROPHECY]** They will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you, and you will be hated by all nations for My name's sake → HISTORY: Nero killed Christians in AD 64, and Diocletian's persecution ran AD 303 to 311. Recorded by Tacitus and Eusebius.
- **MK 13:10 [PROPHECY]** This gospel of the kingdom will be preached in all the world as a witness to all the nations → HISTORY: By 2025 over 99 percent of people could reach at least some Scripture in their language. Reported by Wycliffe Global Alliance.
- **MK 13:14 [PROPHECY]** When you see the abomination of desolation spoken of by Daniel the prophet standing in the holy place… then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains. For then there will be great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of the world → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **MK 13:14 [DEMONIC]** Jesus warns of the abomination of desolation where it should not be
- **MK 13:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 9:27; 11:31 p.1347
- **MK 13:24 [PROPHECY]** Immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light; the stars will fall from heaven… they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. And He will send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together His elect from the four winds → STILL TO COME
- **MK 13:24 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 13:10; 34:4 p.1076
- **MK 13:26 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:13 p.1341

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | JESUS SPEAKING

gels to gather His elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of heaven.

THE LESSON OF THE FIG TREE // MATTHEW 24:32–35; LUKE 21:29–33

28 Now learn this lesson from the fig tree: As soon as its branches become tender and sprout leaves, you know that summer is near. 29 So also, when you see these things happening, know that He is near, right at the door. 30 Truly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things have happened. 31 Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will never pass away.

READINESS AT ANY HOUR // MATTHEW 24:36–51; LUKE 12:35–48

32 No one knows about that day or hour, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father. 33 Be on your guard and stay alert! For you do not know when the appointed time will come.

34 It is like a man going on a journey who left his house, put each servant in charge of his own task, and instructed the doorkeeper to keep watch. 35 Therefore keep watch, because you do not know when the master of the house will return—whether in the evening, at midnight, when the rooster crows, or in the morning. 36 Otherwise, he may arrive without notice and find you sleeping. 37 And what I say to you, I say to everyone: Keep watch!"

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

A woman pours expensive perfume on Jesus, and Judas goes to sell Him out. After the Last Supper, Jesus prays in the garden while His friends sleep. He is arrested, a young man runs off without his clothes, and Peter denies Jesus three times.

THE PLOT TO KILL JESUS // MATTHEW 26:1–5; LUKE 22:1–2; JOHN 11:45–57

1 Now the Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread were two days away, and the chief priests and scribes were looking for a covert way to arrest Jesus and kill Him. 2 "But not during the feast," they said, "or there may be a riot among the people."

JESUS ANOINTED AT BETHANY // MATTHEW 26:6–13; LUKE 7:36–50; JOHN 12:1–8

3 While Jesus was in Bethany reclining at the table in the home of Simon the Leper, a woman came with an alabaster jar of expensive perfume, made of pure nard. She broke open the jar and poured it on Jesus' head.

4 Some of those present, however, expressed their indignation to one another: "Why this waste of perfume? 5 It could have been sold for more than a year's wages and the money given to the poor." And they scolded her.

6 But Jesus said, "Leave her alone; why are you bothering her? She has done a beautiful deed to Me. 7 The poor you will always have with you, and you can help them whenever you want. But you will not always have Me. 8 She has done what she could to anoint My body in advance of My burial. 9 And truly I tell you, wherever the gospel is preached in all the world, what she has done will also be told in memory of her."

JUDAS AGREES TO BETRAY JESUS // MATTHEW 26:14–16; LUKE 22:3–6

10 Then Judas Iscariot, one of the Twelve, went to the chief priests to betray Jesus to them. 11 They were delighted to hear this, and they promised to give him money.

So Judas began to look for an opportunity to betray Jesus.

PREPARING THE PASSOVER // MATTHEW 26:17–19; LUKE 22:7–13

12 On the first day of the Feast of Unleavened Bread, when the Passover lamb was

- **MK 13:28 [PROPHECY]** When you see these things happening, know that He is near, right at the door → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **MK 13:32 [PROPHECY]** No one knows the day or hour, so keep watch → STILL TO COME
- **MK 14:1 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MK 14:3 [FULFILLS]** Wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be told as a memorial to her (regarding Mary of Bethany) ← MK 14:9; MT 26:13 p.1632
- **MK 14:8 [PROPHECY]** She has done this for My burial (regarding Mary of Bethany's anointing with costly oil) → Fulfilled at His burial (Matt 27:57-61; JN 19:38-42) p.1601
- **MK 14:9 [PROPHECY]** Wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be told as a memorial to her (regarding Mary of Bethany) → MT 26:6-13; MK 14:3-9; JN 12:1-8 p.1591

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

to be sacrificed, Jesus' disciples asked Him, "Where do You want us to prepare for You to eat the Passover?"

13 So He sent two of His disciples and told them, "Go into the city, and a man carrying a jug of water will meet you. Follow him, 14 and whichever house he enters, say to the owner, 'The Teacher asks: Where is My guest room, where I may eat the Passover with My disciples?' 15 And he will show you a large upper room, furnished and ready. Make preparations for us there."

16 So the disciples left and went into the city, where they found everything as Jesus had described. And they prepared the Passover.

THE LAST SUPPER // MATTHEW 26:20–30; LUKE 22:14–23; 1 CORINTHIANS 11:17–34

17 When evening came, Jesus arrived with the Twelve. 18 And while they were reclining and eating, Jesus said, "Truly I tell you, one of you who is eating with Me will betray Me."

19 They began to be grieved and to ask Him one after another, "Surely not I?"

20 He answered, "It is one of the Twelve—the one who is dipping his hand into the bowl with Me. 21 The Son of Man will go just as it is written about Him, but woe to that man by whom He is betrayed! It would be better for him if he had not been born."

22 While they were eating, Jesus took bread, spoke a blessing and broke it, and gave it to the disciples, saying, "Take it; this is My body."

23 Then He took the cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it. 24 He said to them, "This is My blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many. 25 Truly I tell you, I will no longer drink of the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it anew in the kingdom of God."

26 And when they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.

JESUS PREDICTS PETER'S DENIAL // ZECHARIAH 13:7–9; MATTHEW 26:31–35; LUKE 22:31–38; JOHN 13:36–38

27 Then Jesus said to them, "You will all fall away, for it is written:

'I will strike the Shepherd,
and the sheep will be scattered.'

28 But after I have risen, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

29 Peter declared, "Even if all fall away, I never will."

30 "Truly I tell you," Jesus replied, "this very night, before the rooster crows twice, you will deny Me three times."

31 But Peter kept insisting, "Even if I have to die with You, I will never deny You." And all the others said the same thing.

JESUS PRAYS AT GETHSEMANE // MATTHEW 26:36–46; LUKE 22:39–46

32 Then they came to a place called Gethsemane, and Jesus told His disciples, "Sit here while I pray."

33 He took with Him Peter, James, and John, and began to be deeply troubled and distressed. 34 Then He said to them, "My soul is consumed with sorrow to the point of death. Stay here and keep watch."

35 Going a little farther, He fell to the ground and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour would pass from Him. 36 "Abba, Father," He said, "all things are possible for You. Take this cup from Me. Yet not what I will, but what You will."

- **MK 14:13 [PROPHECY]** Go into the city to a certain man, and say to him, 'The Teacher says, My time is at hand; I will keep the Passover at your house.' A man carrying a pitcher of water will meet you → Fulfilled
- **MK 14:18 [PROPHECY]** One of you will betray Me → MT 26:47-50 p.1594
- **MK 14:27 [PROPHECY]** All of you will be made to stumble because of Me this night; I will strike the Shepherd and the sheep will be scattered (quoting Zech 13:7) → MT 26:56 p.1594
- **MK 14:27 [FULFILLS]** The Shepherd would be struck and the sheep would scatter ← ZECH 13:7 p.1504
- **MK 14:28 [PROPHECY]** After I have been raised, I will go before you to Galilee → Fulfilled after the resurrection when Jesus met disciples in Galilee (Matt 28:7, 16-17; JN 21:1, 14) p.1601
- **MK 14:30 [PROPHECY]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times → MT 26:70; MT 26:72; MT 26:74-75; MK 14:68; MK 14:70-72; LK 22:57-58; LK 22:60-62; JN 18:17; JN 18:25-27 p.1596
- **MK 14:33 [FULFILLS]** A man of sorrows acquainted with grief ← IS 53:3c p.1127
- **MK 14:33 [WHY]** Here His soul is crushed with grief, even to the point of death.
- **MK 14:36 [FULFILLS]** His delight was to do the Father's will ← PS 40:6-8 p.910

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

37 Then Jesus returned and found them
sleeping. "Simon, are you asleep?" He
asked. "Were you not able to keep watch
for one hour? 38 Watch and pray so that
you will not enter into temptation. For the
spirit is willing, but the body is weak."

39 Again He went away and prayed, saying
the same thing. 40 And again Jesus re-
turned and found them sleeping, for their
eyes were heavy. And they did not know
what to answer Him.

41 When Jesus returned the third time, He
said, "Are you still sleeping and resting?
That is enough! The hour has come. Look,
the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands
of sinners. 42 Rise, let us go. See, My be-
trayer is approaching!"

THE BETRAYAL OF JESUS // MATTHEW 26:47–56; LUKE 22:47–53; JOHN 18:1–14

43 While Jesus was still speaking, Judas,
one of the Twelve, arrived, accompanied
by a crowd armed with swords and clubs,
sent from the chief priests, scribes, and
elders.

44 Now the betrayer had arranged a signal
with them: "The One I kiss is the man; ar-
rest Him and lead Him away securely." 45
Going directly to Jesus, he said, "Rabbi!"
and kissed Him.

46 Then the men seized Jesus and ar-
rested Him. 47 And one of the bystanders
drew his sword and struck the servant of
the high priest, cutting off his ear.

48 Jesus asked the crowd, "Have you
come out with swords and clubs to arrest
Me as you would an outlaw? 49 Every day I
was with you, teaching in the temple
courts, and you did not arrest Me. But this
has happened that the Scriptures would
be fulfilled."

50 Then everyone deserted Him and fled.
51 One young man who had been following
Jesus was wearing a linen cloth around
his body. They caught hold of him, 52 but
he pulled free of the linen cloth and ran
away naked.

JESUS BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN // MATTHEW 26:57–68; LUKE 22:66–71; JOHN 18:19–24

53 They led Jesus away to the high priest,
and all the chief priests, elders, and
scribes assembled. 54 Peter followed Him
at a distance, right into the courtyard of
the high priest. And he sat with the offi-
cers and warmed himself by the fire.

55 Now the chief priests and the whole
Sanhedrin were seeking testimony against
Jesus to put Him to death, but they did
not find any. 56 For many bore false wit-
ness against Jesus, but their testimony
was inconsistent.

57 Then some men stood up and testified
falsely against Him: 58 "We heard Him say,
'I will destroy this man-made temple, and
in three days I will build another that is
made without hands.'" 59 But even their
testimony was inconsistent.

60 So the high priest stood up before them
and questioned Jesus, "Have You no an-
swer? What are these men testifying
against You?"

61 But Jesus remained silent and made no
reply.

Again the high priest questioned Him, "Are
You the Christ, the Son of the Blessed
One?"

62 "I am," said Jesus, "and you will see the
Son of Man sitting at the right hand of
Power and coming with the clouds of
heaven."

63 At this, the high priest tore his clothes
and declared, "Why do we need any more
witnesses? 64 You have heard the blas-
phemy. What is your verdict?"

- **MK 14:36 [WHY]** Hebrews 10:7 puts Psalm 40 in Jesus' mouth. Here He lives it the hard way: not what I will, but what You will.
- **MK 14:37 [FULFILLS]** Heartbroken, He looked for comforters but found none ← PS 69:20 p.928
- **MK 14:37 [WHY]** He asked three friends to keep watch, and three times they fell asleep.
- **MK 14:43 [FULFILLS]** Betrayed by a close friend who shared His table ← PS 41:9 p.911
- **MK 14:43 [WHY]** Judas ate the Last Supper with Jesus, then came back leading the mob. Jesus quoted this psalm about Judas in John 13:18.
- **MK 14:50 [FULFILLS]** His acquaintances fled from Him at His arrest ← PS 31:11 p.903
- **MK 14:50 [FULFILLS]** Men hid their faces from Him ← IS 53:3d p.1127
- **MK 14:61 [FULFILLS]** The Son of Man at God's right hand ← PS 80:17 · MEDIUM p.938
- **MK 14:62 [PROPHECY]** Hereafter you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of the Power, and coming on the clouds of heaven → Partially fulfilled at ascension (ACTS 1:9-11) and exaltation (ACTS 2:33); consummation in Second Coming still future p.1740
- **MK 14:62 [FULFILLS]** He would ascend into heaven (the Son of Man) ← DAN 7:13-14a p.1341

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE JESUS SPEAKING

And they all condemned Him as deserving of death.

65 Then some of them began to spit on Him. They blindfolded Him, struck Him with their fists, and said to Him, "Prophesy!" And the officers received Him with slaps in His face.

PETER DENIES JESUS // MATTHEW 26:69–75; LUKE 22:54–62; JOHN 18:15–18

66 While Peter was in the courtyard below, one of the servant girls of the high priest came down 67 and saw him warming himself there. She looked at Peter and said, "You also were with Jesus the Nazarene."

68 But he denied it. "I do not know or even understand what you are talking about," he said. Then he went out to the gateway, and the rooster crowed.

69 There the servant girl saw him and again said to those standing nearby, "This man is one of them."

70 But he denied it again.

After a little while, those standing nearby said once more to Peter, "Surely you are one of them, for you too are a Galilean."

71 But he began to curse and swear, "I do not know this man of whom you speak!"

72 And immediately the rooster crowed a second time.

Then Peter remembered the word that Jesus had spoken to him: "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny Me three times." And he broke down and wept.

- **MK 14:64 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MK 14:65 [FULFILLS]** The suffering righteous man is struck on the cheek by a crowd ← JOB 16:10 · MEDIUM p.854
- **MK 14:68 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **MK 14:70 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **MK 14:71 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **MK 14:72 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Pilate hands Jesus over, the crowd picks Barabbas, and soldiers mock Him. Jesus is crucified and cries out, My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me? The temple curtain tears in two, and a Roman centurion says, Truly this man was the Son of God.

JESUS DELIVERED TO PILATE // MATTHEW 27:1–2

1 Early in the morning, the chief priests, elders, scribes, and the whole Sanhedrin devised a plan. They bound Jesus, led Him away, and handed Him over to Pilate.

2 So Pilate questioned Him, "Are You the King of the Jews?"

"You have said so," Jesus replied.

3 And the chief priests began to accuse Him of many things.

4 Then Pilate questioned Him again, "Have You no answer? Look how many charges they are bringing against You!"

5 But to Pilate's amazement, Jesus made no further reply.

THE CROWD CHOOSES BARABBAS // MATTHEW 27:15–23; LUKE 23:13–25

6 Now it was Pilate's custom at the feast to release to the people a prisoner of their choosing. 7 And a man named Barabbas was imprisoned with the rebels who had committed murder during the insurrection. 8 So the crowd went up and began asking Pilate to keep his custom.

9 "Do you want me to release to you the King of the Jews?" Pilate asked. 10 For he knew it was out of envy that the chief priests had handed Jesus over.

11 But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to have him release Barabbas to them instead.

PILATE DELIVERS UP JESUS // MATTHEW 27:24–26

12 So Pilate asked them again, "What then do you want me to do with the One you call the King of the Jews?"

13 And they shouted back, "Crucify Him!"

14 "Why?" asked Pilate. "What evil has He done?"

But they shouted all the louder, "Crucify Him!"

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

15 And wishing to satisfy the crowd, Pilate released Barabbas to them. But he had Jesus flogged, and handed Him over to be crucified.

THE SOLDIERS MOCK JESUS // ISAIAH 50:4–11; MATTHEW 27:27–31; LUKE 22:63–65; JOHN 19:1–15

16 Then the soldiers led Jesus away into the palace (that is, the Praetorium) and called the whole company together. 17 They dressed Him in a purple robe, twisted together a crown of thorns, and set it on His head. 18 And they began to salute Him: "Hail, King of the Jews!"

19 They kept striking His head with a staff and spitting on Him. And they knelt down and bowed before Him. 20 After they had mocked Him, they removed the purple robe and put His own clothes back on Him. Then they led Him out to crucify Him.

THE CRUCIFIXION // PSALM 22:1–31; MATTHEW 27:32–44; LUKE 23:26–43; JOHN 19:16–27

21 Now Simon of Cyrene, the father of Alexander and Rufus, was passing by on his way in from the country, and the soldiers forced him to carry the cross of Jesus.

22 They brought Jesus to a place called Golgotha, which means The Place of the Skull. 23 There they offered Him wine mixed with myrrh, but He did not take it.

24 And they crucified Him.

They also divided His garments by casting lots to decide what each of them would take.

25 It was the third hour when they crucified Him. 26 And the charge inscribed against Him read:

THE KING OF THE JEWS.

27 Along with Jesus, they crucified two robbers, one on His right and one on His left. 28 [And the Scripture was fulfilled that says, "He was numbered with the transgressors."]

29 And those who passed by heaped abuse on Him, shaking their heads and saying, "Aha! You who are going to destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, 30 come down from the cross and save Yourself!"

31 In the same way, the chief priests and scribes mocked Him among themselves, saying, "He saved others, but He cannot save Himself! 32 Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross, so that we may see and believe!" And even those who were crucified with Him berated Him.

THE DEATH OF JESUS // PSALM 22:1–31; MATTHEW 27:45–56; LUKE 23:44–49; JOHN 19:28–30

33 From the sixth hour until the ninth hour darkness came over all the land. 34 At the ninth hour, Jesus cried out in a loud voice, *"Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani?"* which means, *"My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?"*

35 When some of those standing nearby heard this, they said, "Behold, He is calling Elijah."

36 And someone ran and filled a sponge with sour wine. He put it on a reed and held it up for Jesus to drink, saying, "Leave Him alone. Let us see if Elijah comes to take Him down."

37 But Jesus let out a loud cry and breathed His last. 38 And the veil of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom.

39 When the centurion standing there in front of Jesus saw how He had breathed His last, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God!"

40 And there were also women watching from a distance. Among them were Mary

- **MK 15:16 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MK 15:19 [FULFILLS]** The judge of Israel would be struck on the cheek with a rod ← MIC 5:1 · MEDIUM p.1436
- **MK 15:24 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 22:18 p.897
- **MK 15:27 [FULFILLS]** Numbered with the transgressors (crucified between criminals) ← IS 53:12c p.1128
- **MK 15:29 [FULFILLS]** Is it nothing to you, all you who pass by? Is any sorrow like my sorrow ← LAM 1:12 · MEDIUM p.1233
- **MK 15:29 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **MK 15:29 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 22:7 p.897
- **MK 15:33 [MIRACLE]** Darkness from the sixth hour to the ninth
- **MK 15:34 [FULFILLS]** 'My God, My God, why have You forsaken Me?' spoken from the cross ← PS 22:1 p.896
- **MK 15:34 [FULFILLS]** He suffered agony at Calvary ← PS 22:14-15 p.897
- **MK 15:36 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 69:21 p.928
- **MK 15:37 [FULFILLS]** His strength poured out like water and His bones out of joint ← PS 22:14 · MEDIUM p.897

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

Magdalene, Mary the mother of James the younger and of Joses, and Salome. 41 These women had followed Jesus and ministered to Him while He was in Galilee, and there were many other women who had come up to Jerusalem with Him.

THE BURIAL OF JESUS // ISAIAH 53:9–12; MATTHEW 27:57–61; LUKE 23:50–56; JOHN 19:38–42

42 Now it was already evening. Since it was Preparation Day (that is, the day before the Sabbath), 43 Joseph of Arimathea, a prominent Council member who himself was waiting for the kingdom of God, boldly went to Pilate to ask for the body of Jesus.

44 Pilate was surprised to hear that Jesus was already dead, so he summoned the centurion to ask if this was so. 45 When Pilate had confirmed it with the centurion, he granted the body to Joseph.

46 So Joseph bought a linen cloth, took down the body of Jesus, wrapped it in the cloth, and placed it in a tomb that had been cut out of the rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance to the tomb. 47 Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joseph saw where His body was placed.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Three women come to the tomb and find the stone already moved. A young man in white says, He has risen! The oldest copies end there. Later copies go on with Jesus sending His disciples into all the world.

THE RESURRECTION // MATTHEW 28:1–10; LUKE 24:1–12; JOHN 20:1–9

1 When the Sabbath was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices so they could go and anoint the body of Jesus. 2 Very early on the first day of the week, just after sunrise, they went to the tomb. 3 They were asking one another, "Who will roll away the stone from the entrance of the tomb?" 4 But when they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away, even though it was extremely large.

5 When they entered the tomb, they saw a young man dressed in a white robe sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed. 6 But he said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You are looking for Jesus the Nazarene, who was crucified. He has risen! He is not here! See the place where they put Him. 7 But go, tell His disciples and Peter, 'He is going ahead of you into Galilee. There you will see Him, just as He told you.'"

8 So the women left the tomb and ran away, trembling and bewildered. And in their fear they did not say a word to anyone.

JESUS APPEARS TO MARY MAGDALENE // JOHN 20:10–18

9 [Early on the first day of the week, after Jesus had risen, He appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom He had driven out seven demons. 10 She went and told those who had been with Him, who were mourning and weeping. 11 And when they heard that Jesus was alive and she had seen Him, they did not believe it.

JESUS APPEARS TO TWO DISCIPLES // LUKE 24:13–35

12 After this, Jesus appeared in a different form to two of them as they walked along in the country.

13 And they went back and reported it to the rest, but they did not believe them either.

THE GREAT COMMISSION // MATTHEW 28:16–20

14 Later, as they were eating, Jesus appeared to the Eleven and rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who had seen Him after He had risen.

MK 15:46 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The Shroud of Turin
MK 15:46 [FIELD NOTES] Mark says Joseph bought a linen cloth, one sheet. Is it the Shroud of Turin? See The Shroud of Turin Field Notes pages in Matthew, p.1599.
MK 15:47 [NOTABLE] Two women saw exactly where Jesus was buried. That answers the claim that they went to the wrong tomb.
MK 16:1 [NOTABLE] The earliest ending of Mark centers on the women as witnesses. This is before the disputed long ending.

MK 16:5 [MIRACLE] A young man in white tells the women He has risen
MK 16:9 [DEMONIC] Mary Magdalene — seven demons cast out by Jesus
MK 16:9 [TEXT] The two oldest complete New Testaments, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, end Mark at 16:8. Most later copies have verses 9 to 20, so they are in brackets. See The Ending of Mark and the New Testament Introduction.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

15 And He said to them, "Go into all the world and preach the gospel to every creature. 16 Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned. 17 And these signs will accompany those who believe: In My name they will drive out demons; they will speak in new tongues; 18 they will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink any deadly poison, it will not harm them; they will lay their hands on the sick, and they will be made well."

THE ASCENSION // LUKE 24:50–53; ACTS 1:6–11

19 After the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, He was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.

20 And they went out and preached everywhere, and the Lord worked through them, confirming His word by the signs that accompanied it.]

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE ENDING OF MARK

Does Mark Stop at 16:8?

MARK 16:8 TO 20

WHY THE BRACKETS

Mark 16:9 to 20 is in brackets because many scholars think it was not part of what Mark first wrote. Every reader should know why.

THE CASE FOR STOPPING AT 16:8

The two oldest nearly complete Bibles, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, from the 300s, end at 16:8. Vaticanus leaves a blank column after it, the only one in its New Testament, as if the copyist knew something more existed. About AD 320 Eusebius wrote that the accurate copies end at 16:8, and Jerome said the same about AD 406. Many of the words in 9 to 20 are not found anywhere else in Mark, and 16:9 introduces Mary Magdalene as if for the first time.

THE CASE FOR 9 TO 20

Nearly all Greek copies, well over a thousand, have it. About AD 180 Irenaeus quoted 16:19 as Mark's words (Against Heresies 3.10), which is older than any copy we have. Tatian put it in his blend of the four Gospels, the Diatessaron, about AD 170.

OTHER ENDINGS

A few copies add a one sentence short ending. Codex Washingtonianus adds an extra saying of Jesus after 16:14, called the Freer Logion.

WHY WOULD MARK STOP THERE?

Some say he meant to, leaving the women afraid and the reader to finish the story. Some say the last page was lost. Many think 9 to 20 was written early to fill the gap, using the other Gospels and Acts.

WHAT THIS BIBLE DOES

Like most modern Bibles, it keeps 9 to 20 but puts it in brackets, so you can read it and know it is debated. The King James Version prints it with no mark, because the Greek copies its translators used in 1611 had it.

Mark 16:17 to 18

MARK 16:17 TO 18 · ACTS 28:3 TO 6 · MATTHEW 4:5 TO 7

WHAT IT SAYS

They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink any deadly poison, it will not harm them, 16:18.

THE SNAKE HANDLERS

About 1910 George Went Hensley began handling rattlesnakes at church services in Tennessee. Small Holiness churches in Appalachia, often called Signs Following churches, still do it. Tennessee banned it in 1947. Dozens have died, including Jamie Coots, a Kentucky pastor seen on a TV show, who died of a bite in 2014.

WHAT PAUL DID

A viper bit Paul on Malta and he shook it off unharmed, Acts 28:3 to 6. He did not go looking for it. When Satan told Jesus to jump from the temple because God would protect Him, Jesus said, do not put the Lord your God to the test, Matthew 4:7.

HOW CHRISTIANS READ IT

It is Scripture, and it promises protection when danger comes, not a command to test God; this is what most who accept 9 to 20 believe. It is not what Mark first

MK 16:14 [HEART] Jesus rebuked the eleven for their unbelief and hardness of heart.
MK 16:17 [DEMONIC] These signs will follow those who believe — cast out demons in My name
MK 16:19 [FULFILLS] Enoch's bodily translation prefigures Christ's bodily ascension ← GEN 5:24 · MEDIUM p.54

wrote, so no teaching should rest on it alone. It is a command to obey literally, as the snake handlers believe. The Catholic Church counts it as Scripture, whoever wrote it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Nothing in 9 to 20 changes any core teaching. The empty tomb is already in 16:6. Casting out demons, new tongues and healing are taught in Acts and 1 Corinthians 12.

BOOK 42 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · GOSPELS

LUKE

The Savior of everybody

AUTHOR	Luke, a doctor and a friend of Paul Colossians 4:14. He was probably a Gentile, which makes him the only writer of a Gospel who was not Jewish. The early church named him as the author by about AD 180.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About 7 BC to AD 30, from the promise of John the Baptist's birth to Jesus going up into heaven.
DATE WRITTEN	Many conservative scholars say about AD 60 to 62, before Acts ends with Paul still alive in Rome. Many others say AD 75 to 90.
WRITTEN TO	Theophilus, a man whose name means friend of God. Luke wrote Acts to him too. The book speaks to Gentiles, the poor and anyone who felt left out.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Luke survives in thousands of Greek manuscripts and is quoted by early writers like Irenaeus around AD 180.
KEY VERSE	Luke 19:10. For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost.



THE OLDEST COPY OF LUKE
This page is from Papyrus 75, the oldest known copy of Luke. It holds most of Luke and John in Greek and is usually dated about AD 175 to 225, though a few scholars argue it is a little later. The Swiss collector Martin Bodmer bought it in the 1950s, and since 2007 it has been kept in the Vatican Library. This page holds Luke 14:3 to 14, where Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath and tells the guests to take the lowest seat. Papyrus 75 matches the great Codex Vaticanus, copied about 150 years later, almost word for word, which shows how carefully Luke was copied. Papyrus 4, from about the same time, holds parts of Luke 1 to 6.

Historical Setting

Rome rules the world, and Caesar Augustus can move a whole nation just by ordering a census. Herod the Great rules Judea for Rome, and later his sons and Pontius Pilate take over. The Jewish people are waiting for the Messiah. Into this world Luke, a careful doctor, sets out to check the facts. He talks to eyewitnesses and writes an orderly account so his friend Theophilus can be sure what he was taught is true.

What Was Going Wrong

THE POOR WERE IGNORED. The rich feasted while beggars like Lazarus lay at the gate 16:19 to 21.
WOMEN WERE PUSHED ASIDE. Their word did not count for much, and even the apostles called the women's report nonsense 24:11.
OUTSIDERS WERE HATED. Jews and Samaritans would not even share a cup, so a good Samaritan sounded like a joke 10:33.
PRIDE IN RELIGION. Some trusted in their own goodness and looked down on everyone else 18:9.
LOVE OF MONEY. People served money instead of God, and the leaders laughed at Jesus for saying so 16:13 to 14.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Jesus is the Savior of everybody. Luke shows Him reaching the people nobody else wanted: shepherds, lepers, widows, tax collectors, Samaritans and a thief on a cross. He is born in a feeding trough, heals the sick and tells stories of lost things being found. Then He walks steadily toward Jerusalem, where He dies for sinners and rises again. The book ends with Jesus explaining that the whole Old Testament was about Him.

Luke at a Glance: the Road to Jerusalem

CH 1 to 2	**BIRTH AND BOYHOOD** Angels, shepherds and a manger.
CH 3 to 4	**GETTING READY** Baptism, family tree and temptation.
CH 4 to 9	**MINISTRY IN GALILEE** Healing, teaching and calling disciples.
CH 9 to 19	**THE LONG ROAD** Jesus sets His face toward Jerusalem and teaches on the way.
CH 19 to 24	**THE LAST WEEK** The cross, the empty tomb and the road to Emmaus.

Where Jesus Shows Up

LUKE 1:32 TO 33 God will give Him the throne of His father David, and His kingdom will never end. Fulfills 2 Samuel 7:16.

LUKE 4:18 TO 21 Today this Scripture is fulfilled. Jesus reads Isaiah 61:1 to 2 and says it is about Him.

LUKE 22:37 He was numbered with the transgressors. Fulfills Isaiah 53:12.

LUKE 24:44 Everything written about Me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms must be fulfilled.

What to Watch for in Luke

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (85)	1:16-17, 1:31-33, 1:35, 1:68-71, 1:78-79, 2:1-7, 2:11 and 33 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (6)	3:38, 4:10-11, 11:31-32, 22:17-19, 24:46, 24:51
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (9)	1:13-15, 1:20, 1:22, 1:63-64, 1:76-77, 3:2-3, 9:27-36 and 7 more
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (2)	12:53, 23:30
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (7)	1:48, 13:34-35, 21:6, 21:8, 21:20-24, 23:28-29
END TIMES PROPHECIES (4)	13:29, 17:34-35, 21:9-11, 21:25-28
THE HEART (13)	2:19, 2:51, 5:22, 6:45, 8:15, 9:47, 12:34 and 5 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (6)	1:26, 3:1, 5:3, 7:5, 8:2, 23:53
MIRACLES (26)	1:11-12, 1:18-19, 1:27-28, 1:34, 2:9-10, 2:12-15, 3:21-22 and 22 more
DEMONIC (13)	4:1-9, 4:12-13, 4:31-37, 4:40-41, 7:21, 8:1, 8:3 and 8 more
NOTABLE (10)	1:9-10, 6:27-31, 6:37-42, 10:1, 11:2-4, 12:15-21, 16:19-31 and 3 more
JESUS SPEAKING (588 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.
BLOODLINE OF CHRIST (77 NAMES)	Names underlined in red are in the family line of Jesus.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

WOMEN ALL OVER THE STORY
Elizabeth, Mary, Anna, the widow of Nain, Mary and Martha, and the women who paid for Jesus' ministry 8:1 to 3. Luke names more women than any other Gospel.

ONLY IN LUKE
The good Samaritan, the prodigal son, Zacchaeus, the rich man and Lazarus, Jesus at twelve in the temple, the thief on the cross and the road to Emmaus. Without Luke we would not have any of them.

PART ONE OF TWO
Luke and Acts are one story in two books, both written to Theophilus. Together they make up more than a quarter of the New Testament, more than Paul wrote.

THE FIRST CHRISTMAS SONGS
Mary's song, Zechariah's song, the angels' Glory to God and Simeon's song are all in chapters 1 and 2. Churches have sung them for almost two thousand years.

Did Anybody Listen?

Luke tells us in his second book. In Acts, the same disciples who hid on Friday preach in Jerusalem fifty days later, and about three thousand people are baptized in one day. The good news spreads to Samaritans, Romans and Greeks, and the book ends with Paul preaching in Rome. Luke's Savior for everybody really did reach everybody.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Luke opens like a doctor writing a report: I checked everything carefully. Then an angel tells an old priest his wife is having a baby, he doubts it, and he loses his voice for nine months. Next the same angel visits a teenage girl in Nazareth, and Mary says yes to God. Two moms, two miracle babies, and a lot of singing.

DEDICATION TO THEOPHILUS // ACTS 1:1–3

1 Many have undertaken to compose an
account of the things that have been fulfilled among us, 2 just as they were
handed down to us by the initial eyewitnesses and servants of the word. 3 Therefore, having carefully investigated everything from the beginning, it seemed good
also to me to write an orderly account for
you, most excellent Theophilus, 4 so that
you may know the certainty of the things
you have been taught.

GABRIEL FORETELLS JOHN'S BIRTH

5 In the time of Herod king of Judea there
was a priest named Zechariah, who belonged to the priestly division of Abijah,
and whose wife Elizabeth was a descendant of Aaron. 6 Both of them were righteous in the sight of God, walking blamelessly in all the commandments and decrees of the Lord. 7 But they had no children, because Elizabeth was barren, and
they were both well along in years.

8 One day while Zechariah's division was
on duty and he was serving as priest before God, 9 he was chosen by lot, according to the custom of the priesthood, to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. 10 And at the hour of the incense
offering, the whole congregation was
praying outside.

11 Just then an angel of the Lord appeared
to Zechariah, standing at the right side of the altar of incense. 12 When Zechariah
saw him, he was startled and gripped with
fear.

13 But the angel said to him, "Do not be
afraid, Zechariah, because your prayer
has been heard. Your wife Elizabeth will
bear you a son, and you are to give him
the name John. 14 He will be a joy and delight to you, and many will rejoice at his
birth, 15 for he will be great in the sight of
the Lord. He shall never take wine or
strong drink, and he will be filled with the
Holy Spirit even from his mother's womb.
16 Many of the sons of Israel he will turn
back to the Lord their God. 17 And he will
go on before the Lord in the spirit and
power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of the
fathers to their children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous—to
make ready a people prepared for the
Lord."

18 "How can I be sure of this?" Zechariah
asked the angel. "I am an old man, and my
wife is well along in years."

19 "I am Gabriel," replied the angel. "I stand
in the presence of God, and I have been
sent to speak to you and to bring you this
good news. 20 And now you will be silent
and unable to speak until the day this
comes to pass, because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled at
their proper time."

21 Meanwhile, the people were waiting for
Zechariah and wondering why he took so
long in the temple. 22 When he came out
and was unable to speak to them, they realized he had seen a vision in the temple.
He kept making signs to them but remained unable to speak. 23 And when the
days of his service were complete, he returned home.

- **LK 1:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1CH 24:10 p.699
- **LK 1:5 [NOTABLE]** Elizabeth came from the family of Aaron, the first high priest. Her family were the priests who made the holy anointing oil and incense.
- **LK 1:9 [NOTABLE]** Zacharias serving at the altar of incense when Gabriel appears to announce John the Baptist's birth; incense and angelic encounter linked
- **LK 1:11 [MIRACLE]** Gabriel announces John the Baptist's birth to Zechariah
- **LK 1:13 [PROPHECY]** Zacharias, your prayer is heard; your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son; you shall call his name John. He will be great in the sight of the Lord → Fulfilled in LK 1:57-80 with John the Baptist's birth and ministry p.1646
- **LK 1:16 [FULFILLS]** Forerunner would turn many to righteousness ← MAL 4:6 p.1516
- **LK 1:17 [FULFILLS]** Forerunner in the spirit of Elijah ← MAL 4:5 p.1516
- **LK 1:20 [PROPHECY]** Zechariah would be unable to speak until the promised son was born → LK 1:22; LK 1:63-64 p.1644
- **LK 1:22 [FULFILLS]** Zechariah would be unable to speak until the promised son was born ← LK 1:20 p.1644

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES

24 After these days, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant and for five months remained in seclusion. She declared, 25 "The Lord has done this for me. In these days He has shown me favor and taken away my disgrace among the people."

GABRIEL FORETELLS JESUS' BIRTH

26 In the sixth month, God sent the angel Gabriel to a town in Galilee called Nazareth, 27 to a virgin pledged in marriage to a man named Joseph, who was of the house of David. And the virgin's name was Mary. 28 The angel appeared to her and said, "Greetings, you who are highly favored! The Lord is with you."

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE VILLAGE, LOW FOR ANY LINK TO JESUS' FAMILY

NAZARETH IN THE TIME OF JESUS

LUKE 1:26 · LUKE 2:39 · JOHN 1:46



Remains of ancient Nazareth homes cut into the rock, under the Church of the Annunciation. Photo by gugganij, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

The remains of a small farming village. Digs in Nazareth have found houses, cisterns, storage pits, farm terraces and tombs from the time of Jesus.

HOW OLD IT IS

The house found in 2009 dates to the first century AD, the time of Jesus. Pottery and broken stone cups from that time were found inside. Some of the homes under the Church of the Annunciation are older still.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In December 2009 archaeologist Yardenna Alexandre of the Israel Antiquities Authority found a house with two rooms and a courtyard right next to the Church of the Annunciation. Other remains under the church were dug from the 1950s on.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In Nazareth, at the International Marian Center and under the Church of the Annunciation.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Some critics said Nazareth did not exist in the time of Jesus. A 2008 book even called it a myth. The digs show a real village was there. It was tiny, probably a few hundred people, which fits Nathanael's question in John 1:46: Can anything good come from Nazareth?

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing ties any of these houses to Mary, Joseph or Jesus. A first century house under the Sisters of Nazareth convent nearby is called the house of Joseph by some, but that is tradition, not proof.

29 Mary was greatly troubled at his words and wondered what kind of greeting this might be. 30 So the angel told her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. 31 Behold, you will conceive and give birth to a son, and you are to give Him the name Jesus. 32 He will be great and will be called the Son of the Most High. The Lord God will give Him the throne of His father David, 33 and He will reign over the house of Jacob forever. His kingdom will never end!"

34 "How can this be," Mary asked the angel, "since I am a virgin?"

35 The angel replied, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the

- **LK 1:26 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Nazareth excavations → FIELD NOTES p.1645
- **LK 1:26 [MIRACLE]** God sends Gabriel to a virgin named Mary
- **LK 1:31 [FULFILLS]** A child would be born and 2 more ← IS 9:6; IS 49:5; DAN 7:13-14c p.1072
- **LK 1:31 [PROPHECY]** You will conceive in your womb and bring forth a Son, and shall call His name Jesus (Gabriel to Mary) → LK 2:6-7; LK 2:11; ACTS 2:30-36 p.1647
- **LK 1:32 [FULFILLS]** He would be called the Son of God and 11 more ← 2SA 7:14a; 1CH 17:12-13; PS 89:3-4; PS 132:11; IS 9:6; IS 9:7; IS 16:5; JER 30:9; EZK 17:22-23; EZK 21:26-27; EZK 34:23-24; EZK 37:24-25 p.503
- **LK 1:32 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2SA 7:12-16 p.503
- **LK 1:33 [FULFILLS]** Ruler in Israel ← MIC 5:2b p.1436
- **LK 1:34 [MIRACLE]** The Holy Spirit will come upon you

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY

Most High will overshadow you. So the Holy One to be born will be called the Son of God. 36 Look, even Elizabeth your relative has conceived a son in her old age, and she who was called barren is in her sixth month. 37 For no word from God will ever fail."

38 "I am the Lord's servant," Mary answered. "May it happen to me according to your word." Then the angel left her.

MARY VISITS ELIZABETH

39 In those days Mary got ready and hurried to a town in the hill country of Judah, 40 where she entered the home of Zechariah and greeted Elizabeth.

41 When Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, the baby leaped in her womb, and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit. 42 In a loud voice she exclaimed, "Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb! 43 And why am I so honored, that the mother of my Lord should come to me? 44 For as soon as the sound of your greeting reached my ears, the baby in my womb leaped for joy. 45 Blessed is she who has believed that the Lord's word to her will be fulfilled."

MARY'S SONG // 1 SAMUEL 2:1–11

46 Then Mary said:

"My soul magnifies the Lord,
47 and my spirit rejoices in God my Savior!
48 For He has looked with favor on the humble state of His servant.
From now on all generations will call me blessed.
49 For the Mighty One has done great things for me.
Holy is His name.
50 His mercy extends to those who fear Him,
from generation to generation.
51 He has performed mighty deeds with His arm;
He has scattered those who are proud in the thoughts of their hearts.
52 He has brought down rulers from their thrones,
but has exalted the humble.
53 He has filled the hungry with good things,
but has sent the rich away empty.
54 He has helped His servant Israel,
remembering to be merciful,
55 as He promised to our fathers,
to Abraham and his descendants forever."

56 Mary stayed with Elizabeth for about three months and then returned home.

THE BIRTH OF JOHN THE BAPTIST

57 When the time came for Elizabeth to have her child, she gave birth to a son. 58 Her neighbors and relatives heard that the Lord had shown her great mercy, and they rejoiced with her.

59 On the eighth day, when they came to circumcise the child, they were going to name him after his father Zechariah. 60 But his mother replied, "No! He shall be called John."

61 They said to her, "There is no one among your relatives who bears this name." 62 So they made signs to his father to find out what he wanted to name the child.

63 Zechariah asked for a tablet and wrote, "His name is John." And they were all amazed. 64 Immediately Zechariah's mouth was opened and his tongue was released, and he began to speak, praising God.

65 All their neighbors were filled with awe, and people throughout the hill country of Judea were talking about these events. 66 And all who heard this wondered in their hearts and asked, "What then will this

- **LK 1:35 [PROPHECY]** You will conceive in your womb and bring forth a Son, and shall call His name Jesus (Gabriel to Mary) → LK 2:6-7; LK 2:11; ACTS 2:30-36 p.1647
- **LK 1:35 [FULFILLS]** He would be born of a virgin ← IS 7:14 p.1070
- **LK 1:36 [NOTABLE]** The angel calls Elizabeth Mary's relative. Since Elizabeth was a daughter of Aaron, many believe Mary had Levite family too. If so, she may have known how the holy oil and incense were made. See the note on Matthew 2:11. Luke does not say exactly how they were related.
- **LK 1:37 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 18:14 p.71
- **LK 1:46 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1SA 2:1-10 p.439
- **LK 1:48 [PROPHECY]** All generations would call Mary blessed → HISTORY: Christians have honored Mary in every age since. An early prayer to her is found on a papyrus from about AD 250 to 400, and the Council of Ephesus honored her in AD 431. · MEDIUM
- **LK 1:63 [FULFILLS]** Zechariah would be unable to speak until the promised son was born ← LK 1:20 p.1644
- **LK 1:64 [MIRACLE]** Zechariah's mouth is opened and he speaks again

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

child become?" For the Lord's hand was with him.

ZECHARIAH'S SONG

67 Then his father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied:

68 "Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel,
because He has visited and redeemed His people.
69 He has raised up a horn of salvation for us
in the house of His servant David,
70 as He spoke through His holy prophets,
those of ages past,
71 salvation from our enemies
and from the hand of all who hate us,
72 to show mercy to our fathers
and to remember His holy covenant,
73 the oath He swore to our father Abraham,
to grant us 74 deliverance from hostile hands,
that we may serve Him without fear,
75 in holiness and righteousness before Him
all the days of our lives.
76 And you, child, will be called
a prophet of the Most High;
for you will go on before the Lord
to prepare the way for Him,
77 to give to His people the knowledge of salvation
through the forgiveness of their sins,
78 because of the tender mercy of our God,
by which the Dawn will visit us from on high,
79 to shine on those who live in darkness
and in the shadow of death,
to guide our feet
into the path of peace."

- **LK 1:68 [PROPHECY]** God was raising up a horn of salvation from the house of David → LK 2:11; ACTS 13:22-23 p.1648
- **LK 1:69 [FULFILLS]** A horn of salvation raised up for His people ← PS 18:2-3 · MEDIUM p.893
- **LK 1:69 [FULFILLS]** God would make a horn of salvation grow for David ← PS 132:17 · MEDIUM p.973
- **LK 1:76 [PROPHECY]** Baby John would be a prophet who goes before the Lord to prepare His way → LK 3:2-6; MT 3:1-3; MT 11:9-10 p.1651
- **LK 1:78 [FULFILLS]** Morning light at sunrise ← 2SA 23:4 · MEDIUM p.532
- **LK 1:78 [FULFILLS]** The sun of righteousness would rise with healing in its wings ← MAL 4:2 · MEDIUM p.1515

80 And the child grew and became strong in spirit; and he lived in the wilderness until the time of his public appearance to Israel.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Caesar orders a census, so Joseph and a very pregnant Mary travel to Bethlehem, and there is no room for them. The King of the universe sleeps in a feeding trough. Angels announce it to shepherds, who were not exactly the town's top citizens. Twelve years later Jesus stays behind at the temple and His parents panic for three days.

THE BIRTH OF JESUS // MATTHEW 1:18–25

1 Now in those days a decree went out from Caesar Augustus that a census should be taken of the whole empire. 2 This was the first census to take place while Quirinius was governor of Syria. 3 And everyone went to his own town to register.

4 So Joseph also went up from Nazareth in Galilee to Judea, to the city of David called Bethlehem, since he was from the house and line of David. 5 He went there to register with Mary, who was pledged to him in marriage and was expecting a child.

6 While they were there, the time came for her Child to be born. 7 And she gave birth to her firstborn, a Son. She wrapped Him in swaddling cloths and laid Him in a manger, because there was no room for them in the inn.

THE SHEPHERDS AND THE ANGELS

8 And there were shepherds residing in the fields nearby, keeping watch over their flocks by night. 9 Just then an angel of the Lord stood before them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were terrified. 10 But the angel said to

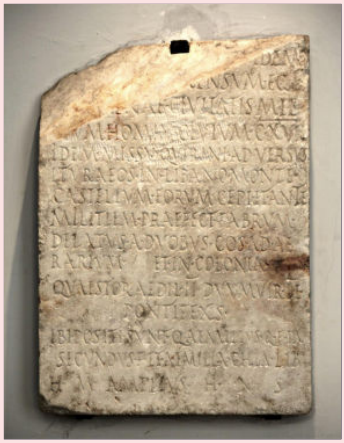
- **LK 2:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Caesarean inscription, Lapis Tiburtinus — Quirinius's governorship/role verified → FIELD NOTES p.1648
- **LK 2:1 [FULFILLS]** The Messiah would come before the scepter departed from Judah ← GEN 49:10 · MEDIUM p.114
- **LK 2:6 [FULFILLS]** You will conceive in your womb and bring forth a Son, and shall call His name Jesus (Gabriel to Mary) ← LK 1:31-33, 35 p.1645
- **LK 2:7 [FULFILLS]** Cared for from birth ← PS 22:9-10 · MEDIUM p.897
- **LK 2:8 [NOTE]** DECEMBER 25? See Was Jesus Born on December 25?

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR QUIRINIUS, DEBATED FOR THE DATE

QUIRINIUS AND THE CENSUS

LUKE 2:1 TO 3 · ACTS 5:37



The Aemilius Secundus inscription, which names Quirinius and a census. Photo by Mongolo1984, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A Latin gravestone for a Roman officer named Quintus Aemilius Secundus. It says that by order of Quirinius, the governor of Syria, he took a census of the city of Apamea and counted 117,000 people.

HOW OLD IT IS

Early first century AD. The census it describes was part of Quirinius' work as governor of Syria, around AD 6.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It was known in Venice by the 1600s. Some thought it was a fake until a missing piece turned up in Venice in 1880. A second stone found near Tivoli, Italy, in 1764 praises a man who governed Syria twice. Many think he was Quirinius, but the name is broken off.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The National Archaeological Museum in Venice, Italy.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Quirinius was real, he governed Syria, and Rome really did count people in that region the way Luke 2 describes. The historian Josephus also tells about Quirinius and a census.

THE DEBATE

Josephus dates Quirinius' census to AD 6, about ten years after Herod died. Luke puts Jesus' birth while Herod was still king. Some scholars say Luke 2:2 can be read as before Quirinius was governor. Others think Quirinius held an earlier post in Syria, which the Tivoli stone may hint at. Others think Luke got the date wrong. See Exhibit A at the back of this Bible.

them, "Do not be afraid! For behold, I
bring you good news of great joy that will
be for all the people: 11 Today in the city of
David a Savior has been born to you. He is
Christ the Lord! 12 And this will be a sign to
you: You will find a baby wrapped in
swaddling cloths and lying in a manger."
13 And suddenly there appeared with the
angel a great multitude of the heavenly
host, praising God and saying:
14 "Glory to God in the highest,
and on earth peace to men
on whom His favor rests!"
15 When the angels had left them and gone
into heaven, the shepherds said to one
another, "Let us go to Bethlehem and see
this thing that has happened, which the
Lord has made known to us."
16 So they hurried off and found Mary and
Joseph and the Baby, who was lying in
the manger. 17 After they had seen the
Child, they spread the message they had
received about Him. 18 And all who heard it
were amazed at what the shepherds said

LK 2:9 [MIRACLE] Angel and heavenly host announce Christ's birth to shepherds
LK 2:11 [FULFILLS] Called the Christ (the Anointed One) and 2 more ← PS 45:7-8; LK 1:31-33, 35; LK 1:68-71 p.914

THE HEART

to them. 19 But Mary treasured up all these things and pondered them in her heart.
20 The shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for all they had heard and seen, which was just as the angel had told them.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WAS JESUS BORN ON DECEMBER 25?

Shepherds in the Fields

LUKE 2:1 TO 20 · MATTHEW 2:1 · ROMANS 14:5 TO 6

WHAT LUKE SAYS

Shepherds were living out in the fields, keeping watch over their flocks by night, 2:8. Luke gives no date, and neither does any other book of the Bible.

THE YEAR

Jesus was born while Herod the Great was king, Matthew 2:1. Herod died about 4 BC, so Jesus was born about 6 to 4 BC. Our calendar was worked out by a monk named Dionysius Exiguus in AD 525, and he was a few years off.

THE SEASON

Some say shepherds would not be out at night in a cold, rainy December, so it was spring to fall. Others answer that Bethlehem's winters are mild enough, and a Jewish writing, the Mishnah Shekalim 7:4, suggests some flocks near Jerusalem stayed outdoors all year.

EARLY GUESSES

Hippolytus, a teacher in Rome, about AD 204, is the first writer to name December 25, though some think a later hand added it to his book. Clement of Alexandria, about the same time, shows Christians were already arguing about the day, Stromata 1.21.

THE PAGAN HOLIDAY THEORY

A Roman calendar from AD 354 is the first sure record of a Christmas feast on December 25, at Rome by AD 336. The same calendar lists that day as the birthday of the Unconquered Sun, a sun god Emperor Aurelian made official in AD 274. Some say the church took over the pagan day. The Roman feast of Saturnalia was a week earlier, December 17 to 23.

THE COUNTING THEORY

Others say Christians counted it. Some early writers dated Jesus' death to March 25 and believed He was conceived on the same date; nine months later is December 25. Tertullian already gives March 25 for the cross, about AD 200.

EVERY DATE PEOPLE HAVE PICKED

Here is every view with a real following, so you can weigh them yourself.

DECEMBER 25

Kept by Catholics, most Protestants and many Orthodox. It is the oldest date we can prove a church kept, at Rome by AD 336. Best case: the counting theory below, and a tradition that goes back to at least the early 300s.

JANUARY 6 AND JANUARY 7

In the 300s many churches in the East, like Egypt and Syria, kept the birth on January 6. The Armenian church still does. When the East took up December 25 in the late 300s, January 6 became Epiphany, the day of the wise men and Jesus' baptism. Russian, Serbian, Coptic and Ethiopian churches celebrate on January 7, because they follow older calendars. For most of them it is still December 25 on the old Roman calendar.

SPRING

Clement of Alexandria, about AD 200, listed dates others had worked out that match May 20, and April 19 or 20 from a group the church called heretics. His own count of years points to about November 18, 3 BC. Some today point to lambing season in the spring, when shepherds watched the flocks at night.

FALL AND THE FEAST OF TABERNACLES

Some count from Zechariah's turn to serve in the temple, the division of Abijah, 1:5, and from Jesus being born about six months after John, 1:26 and 1:36. That can put the birth in September or October, near the Feast of Tabernacles. They point to John 1:14, the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, where dwelt means pitched His tent. Problem: nobody knows for sure how the priest turns lined up with the calendar that year.

LK 2:19 [HEART] Mary treasured these things and pondered them in her heart.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

THE SIGN IN REVELATION 12

The historian Ernest Martin argued that the sign in Revelation 12:1 to 2, a woman clothed with the sun with the moon under her feet, matched the night sky on September 11, 3 BC. But Matthew says Jesus was born while Herod was alive, and most scholars put Herod's death in 4 BC, before that date. Martin argued Herod died in 1 BC, but few accept it.

WHAT CONSTANTINE HAD TO DO WITH IT

Constantine was the first Christian emperor. In AD 313 he and his co emperor Licinius gave Christians full freedom to worship. In AD 321 he made Sunday, the day of the sun, a day of rest. He had honored the Unconquered Sun before he turned to Christ, and the sun god stayed on some of his coins for years. The first sure record of a Christmas feast on December 25 comes from Rome in AD 336, the year before he died. No writing says Constantine picked the date. But under him the church could worship in the open, build big churches and hold public feasts, so the Christmas feast at Rome took root in his time and spread from there. That is why so many people tie December 25 to Constantine.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

No one knows the real day. The Puritans banned Christmas in Massachusetts from 1659 to 1681, and some Christians still skip it. Paul says one person regards a day as special and another does not; each should be sure in his own mind, Romans 14:5 to 6. What matters is that He came, 2:11.

JESUS PRESENTED AT THE TEMPLE

21 When the eight days before His circumcision had passed, He was named Jesus, the name the angel had given Him before He was conceived.

22 And when the time of purification according to the Law of Moses was complete, His parents brought Him to Jerusalem to present Him to the Lord 23 (as it is written in the Law of the Lord: *"Every firstborn male shall be consecrated to the Lord"*), 24 and to offer the sacrifice specified in the Law of the Lord: *"A pair of turtledoves or two young pigeons."*

THE PROPHECY OF SIMEON

25 Now there was a man in Jerusalem named Simeon, who was righteous and devout. He was waiting for the consolation of Israel, and the Holy Spirit was upon him. 26 The Holy Spirit had revealed to him that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ. 27 Led by the Spirit, he went into the temple courts. And when the parents brought in the child Jesus to do for Him what was customary under the Law, 28 Simeon took Him in his arms and blessed God, saying:

29 "Sovereign Lord, as You have promised,
You now dismiss Your servant in peace.
30 For my eyes have seen Your salvation,
31 which You have prepared in the sight
of all people,
32 a light for revelation to the Gentiles,
and for glory to Your people Israel."

33 The Child's father and mother were amazed at what was spoken about Him. 34 Then Simeon blessed them and said to His mother Mary:

"Behold, this Child is appointed to cause
the rise and fall of many in Israel,
and to be a sign that will be spoken
against,
35 so that the thoughts of many hearts will
be revealed—
and a sword will pierce your soul as
well."

- **LK 2:22 [FULFILLS]** Sudden appearance at the Temple ← MAL 3:1b p.1514
- **LK 2:22 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 12:6 p.192
- **LK 2:23 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 13:2, 12 p.137
- **LK 2:24 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← LEV 12:8 p.192
- **LK 2:25 [FULFILLS]** 'Comfort, comfort My people' ← IS 40:1-2 · MEDIUM p.1109
- **LK 2:26 [PROPHECY]** Simeon would not die before he saw the Lord's Christ → LK 2:27-30 p.1650
- **LK 2:27 [FULFILLS]** The glory of this latter temple shall be greater than the former ← HAG 2:9 · MEDIUM p.1481
- **LK 2:27 [FULFILLS]** Simeon would not die before he saw the Lord's Christ ← LK 2:26 p.1650
- **LK 2:29 [FULFILLS]** He is Salvation for Israel ← IS 49:6 p.1122
- **LK 2:30 [PROPHECY]** The child would be a light of revelation to the Gentiles → ACTS 13:47-48; ACTS 10:44-45 p.1765
- **LK 2:30 [FULFILLS]** Jacob waits for Yahweh's salvation ← GEN 49:18 · MEDIUM p.115
- **LK 2:32 [FULFILLS]** The Light (salvation) of the Gentiles ← IS 42:6 p.1113
- **LK 2:34 [PROPHECY]** This Child is destined for the fall and rising of many in Israel... a sword will pierce through your own soul also (Simeon to Mary) → JN 7:43; JN 19:25 p.1711

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · THE HEART · ARCHAEOLOGY
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW · JESUS SPEAKING

THE PROPHECY OF ANNA

36 There was also a prophetess named
Anna, the daughter of Phanuel, of the
tribe of Asher, who was well along in
years. She had been married for seven
years, 37 and then was a widow to the age
of eighty-four. She never left the temple,
but worshiped night and day, fasting and
praying.

38 Coming forward at that moment, she
gave thanks to God and spoke about the
Child to all who were waiting for the re-
demption of Jerusalem.

THE RETURN TO NAZARETH // MATTHEW 2:19–23

39 When Jesus' parents had done every-
thing required by the Law of the Lord,
they returned to Galilee, to their own town
of Nazareth.

40 And the Child grew and became strong.
He was filled with wisdom, and the grace
of God was upon Him.

THE BOY JESUS AT THE TEMPLE

41 Every year His parents went to
Jerusalem for the Feast of the Passover.
42 And when He was twelve years old,
they went up according to the custom of
the Feast.

43 When those days were over and they
were returning home, the boy Jesus re-
mained behind in Jerusalem, but His par-
ents were unaware He had stayed. 44 As-
suming He was in their company, they
traveled on for a day before they began to
look for Him among their relatives and
friends.

45 When they could not find Him, they re-
turned to Jerusalem to search for Him. 46
Finally, after three days they found Him in
the temple courts, sitting among the
teachers, listening to them and asking
them questions. 47 And all who heard Him
were astounded at His understanding and
His answers.

48 When His parents saw Him, they were
astonished. "Child, why have You done
this to us?" His mother asked. "Your father
and I have been anxiously searching for
You."

49 "Why were you looking for Me?" He
asked. "Did you not know that I had to be
in My Father's house?" 50 But they did not
understand the statement He was making
to them.

51 Then He went down to Nazareth with
them and was obedient to them. But His
mother treasured up all these things in her
heart.

52 And Jesus grew in wisdom and stature,
and in favor with God and man.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
John the Baptist preaches by the Jordan and does not do small talk. He calls the crowd a brood of vipers and tells soldiers and tax men to quit cheating. Jesus is baptized, the Spirit comes down like a dove, and God speaks from heaven. Then Luke gives the family tree, running all the way back to Adam.

THE MISSION OF JOHN THE BAPTIST // ISAIAH 40:1–5; MATTHEW 3:1–12; MARK 1:1–8; JOHN 1:19–28

1 In the fifteenth year of the reign of
Tiberius Caesar, while Pontius Pilate was
governor of Judea, Herod tetrarch of
Galilee, his brother Philip tetrarch of Itu-
raea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias
tetrarch of Abilene, 2 during the high
priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas, the
word of God came to John son of
Zechariah in the wilderness.

3 He went into all the region around the
Jordan, preaching a baptism of repen-
tance for the forgiveness of sins, 4 as it is
written in the book of the words of Isaiah
the prophet:

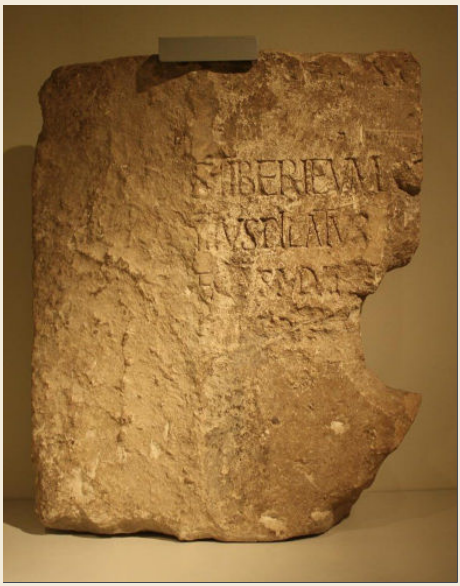
"A voice of one calling in the wilderness,
'Prepare the way for the Lord,
make straight paths for Him.
5 *Every valley shall be filled in,*
and every mountain and hill made low.
The crooked ways shall be made straight,
and the rough ways smooth.

- **LK 2:38 [FULFILLS]** He would come to Zion as Redeemer ← IS 59:20 p.1135
- **LK 2:51 [HEART]** Mary kept all these things in her heart.
- **LK 3:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Pilate Stone (Caesarea Maritima, 1961) — limestone block inscribed 'Pontius Pilate, Prefect of Judea' → FIELD NOTES p.1652
- **LK 3:2 [FULFILLS]** Baby John would be a prophet who goes before the Lord to prepare His way ← LK 1:76-77 p.1647
- **LK 3:4 [FULFILLS]** His coming preceded by a forerunner (John the Baptist) ← IS 40:3-4 p.1109
- **LK 3:4 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 40:3-5 p.1109

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE PILATE STONE

LUKE 3:1 · LUKE 23:1 TO 25



The Pilate Stone at the Israel Museum. The middle line reads TIUS PILATUS.

WHAT IT IS

A limestone block carved in Latin with the name Pontius Pilate and his title, Prefect of Judea. It was part of a building Pilate dedicated to the emperor Tiberius.

HOW OLD IT IS

About AD 26 to 36, the years Pilate ruled Judea. That is the same time Jesus was preaching and was crucified.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Found in 1961 by an Italian team led by Antonio Frova in the ruins of the Roman theater at Caesarea Maritima, on the coast of Israel. Builders had reused it later as a step.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Israel Museum in Jerusalem. A copy stands at Caesarea.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Luke 3:1 says John began preaching in the fifteenth year of Tiberius, when Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea. This stone puts both names together in Pilate's own time. It is the first object ever found carved with Pilate's name.

WHAT IT ADDS

Roman writer Tacitus called Pilate a procurator. The stone shows his title in those years was prefect, a military governor. Luke simply calls him governor, which fits either one.

WHAT THE WORDS SAY

The stone is broken, so some letters are missing. Scholars fill the gaps in different ways. One reading says Pontius Pilate, Prefect of Judea, dedicated this Tiberieum to the gods. Another says he rebuilt the Tiberieum for sailors. A Tiberieum was a building that honored the emperor Tiberius. Some think it was a small temple. Others think it was a lighthouse tower for sailors at Caesarea's harbor.

PILATE IN OTHER BOOKS

Josephus tells how Pilate brought images of the emperor into Jerusalem and used temple money to build an aqueduct, which set off riots, Antiquities 18.3.1 to 2. Philo of Alexandria, who lived at the same time, calls him stubborn and cruel. Luke 13:1 tells of Galileans whose blood Pilate mixed with their sacrifices.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

6 *And all humanity will see God's salvation.'"*

7 Then John said to the crowds coming
out to be baptized by him, "You brood of
vipers, who warned you to flee from the
coming wrath? 8 Produce fruit, then, in
keeping with repentance. And do not be-
gin to say to yourselves, 'We have Abra-
ham as our father.' For I tell you that out of
these stones God can raise up children for
Abraham. 9 The axe lies ready at the root
of the trees, and every tree that does not
produce good fruit will be cut down and
thrown into the fire."

10 The crowds asked him, "What then
should we do?"

11 John replied, "Whoever has two tunics
should share with him who has none, and
whoever has food should do the same."

12 Even tax collectors came to be baptized.
"Teacher," they asked, "what should we
do?"

13 "Collect no more than you are autho-
rized," he answered.

14 Then some soldiers asked him, "And
what should we do?"

"Do not take money by force or false ac-
cusation," he said. "Be content with your
wages."

15 The people were waiting expectantly
and were all wondering in their hearts if
John could be the Christ. 16 John an-
swered all of them: "I baptize you with
water, but One more powerful than I will
come, the straps of whose sandals I am
not worthy to untie. He will baptize you
with the Holy Spirit and with fire. 17 His
winnowing fork is in His hand to clear His
threshing floor and to gather the wheat
into His barn; but He will burn up the chaff
with unquenchable fire."

18 With these and many other exhortations,
John proclaimed the good news to the
people. 19 But when he rebuked Herod the
tetrarch regarding his brother's wife Hero-
dias and all the evils he had done, 20
Herod added this to them all: He locked
John up in prison.

THE BAPTISM OF JESUS // MATTHEW 3:13–17; MARK 1:9–11; JOHN 1:29–34

21 When all the people were being bap-
tized, Jesus was baptized too. And as He
was praying, heaven was opened, 22 and
the Holy Spirit descended on Him in a
bodily form like a dove. And a voice came
from heaven: "You are My beloved Son; in
You I am well pleased."

THE GENEALOGY OF JESUS // RUTH 4:18–22; MATTHEW 1:1–17

23 Jesus Himself was about thirty years
old when He began His ministry.

He was regarded as the son of Joseph,
the son of Heli,
24 the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the
son of Melchi,
the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph,
25 the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos,
the son of Nahum,
the son of Esli, the son of Naggai,
26 the son of Maath, the son of Mattathias,
the son of Semein,
the son of Josech, the son of Joda,
27 the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa, the
son of Zerubbabel,
the son of Shealtiel, the son of Neri,
28 the son of Melchi, the son of Addi, the
son of Cosam,
the son of Elmadam, the son of Er,
29 the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer,
the son of Jorim,
the son of Matthat, the son of Levi,
30 the son of Simeon, the son of Judah,
the son of Joseph,
the son of Jonam, the son of Eliakim,
31 the son of Melea, the son of Menna, the
son of Mattatha,
the son of Nathan, the son of David,

- **LK 3:6 [FULFILLS]** 'The glory of Yahweh shall be revealed' ← IS 40:5 p.1109
- **LK 3:16 [PROPHECY]** The One coming after John would baptize with the Holy Spirit → ACTS 1:5; ACTS 2:1-4; ACTS 11:16 p.1740
- **LK 3:21 [MIRACLE]** The Spirit descends in bodily form like a dove
- **LK 3:22 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 2:7; IS 42:1 p.884
- **LK 3:23 [FULFILLS]** A rod from the stem of Jesse and 2 more ← IS 11:1; JER 23:5-6; JER 33:14-15 p.1075
- **LK 3:27 [FULFILLS]** God would make Zerubbabel like His signet ring ← HAG 2:23 · MEDIUM p.1482
- **LK 3:31 [FULFILLS]** David's house and throne established forever ← 2SA 7:16 p.503
- **LK 3:31 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← RUTH 4:18-22 p.432
- **LK 3:31 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1CH 1:1-4; 1:24-28; 1:34; 2:1-15; 3:5 p.666

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

BLOODLINE OF CHRIST

32 the son of Jesse, the son of Obed, the son of Boaz,
the son of Sala, the son of Nahshon,
33 the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin, the son of Arni,
the son of Hezron, the son of Perez, the son of Judah,
34 the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac, the son of Abraham,
the son of Terah, the son of Nahor,
35 the son of Serug, the son of Reu, the son of Peleg,
the son of Eber, the son of Shelah,
36 the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad, the son of Shem,
the son of Noah, the son of Lamech,
37 the son of Methuselah, the son of Enoch, the son of Jared,
the son of Mahalalel, the son of Cainan,
38 the son of Enosh, the son of Seth, the son of Adam,
the son of God.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The devil tempts Jesus in the wilderness for forty days and loses every round. Back home in Nazareth, Jesus reads from Isaiah and says, Today this is fulfilled. The hometown crowd loves it for about a minute, then tries to throw Him off a cliff. He walks right through them and goes to Capernaum to heal the sick.

THE TEMPTATION OF JESUS // MATTHEW 4:1–11; MARK 1:12–13

1 Then Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness, 2 where for forty days He was tempted by the devil. He ate nothing during those days, and when they had ended, He was hungry.

3 The devil said to Him, "If You are the Son of God, tell this stone to become bread."

4 But Jesus answered, "It is written: *'Man shall not live on bread alone.'*"

5 Then the devil led Him up to a high place and showed Him in an instant all the kingdoms of the world. 6 "I will give You authority over all these kingdoms and all their glory," he said. "For it has been relinquished to me, and I can give it to anyone I wish. 7 So if You worship me, it will all be Yours."

8 But Jesus answered, "It is written: *'Worship the Lord your God and serve Him only.'*"

9 Then the devil led Him to Jerusalem and set Him on the pinnacle of the temple. "If You are the Son of God," he said, "throw Yourself down from here. 10 For it is written:

'He will command His angels concerning You
to guard You carefully,
11 *and they will lift You up in their hands,*
so that You will not strike Your foot against a stone.'"

12 But Jesus answered, "It also says, *'Do not put the Lord your God to the test.'*"

13 When the devil had finished every temptation, he left Him until an opportune time.

JESUS BEGINS HIS MINISTRY // ISAIAH 9:1–7; MATTHEW 4:12–17; MARK 1:14–15

14 Jesus returned to Galilee in the power of the Spirit, and the news about Him spread throughout the surrounding region. 15 He taught in their synagogues and was glorified by everyone.

THE REJECTION AT NAZARETH // ISAIAH 61:1–11; MATTHEW 13:53–58; MARK 6:1–6

16 Then Jesus came to Nazareth, where He had been brought up. As was His custom, He entered the synagogue on the Sabbath. And when He stood up to read, 17 the scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to Him. Unrolling it, He found the place where it was written:

18 *"The Spirit of the Lord is on Me,*
because He has anointed Me

- **LK 3:33 [FULFILLS]** Messiah would come from the tribe of Judah ← GEN 49:10 p.114
- **LK 3:34 [FULFILLS]** The Messianic line continues through Isaac, not Ishmael ← GEN 17:19 p.70
- **LK 3:34 [FULFILLS]** The Messiah would descend from Jacob ← GEN 28:14 p.86
- **LK 3:36 [FULFILLS]** The God of Shem would become a Son of Shem ← GEN 9:26-27 · MEDIUM p.60
- **LK 3:38 [FULFILLS]** The promised line would continue through Seth after Abel died ← GEN 4:25 · MEDIUM p.52
- **LK 4:1 [DEMONIC]** The devil tempts Jesus three times
- **LK 4:4 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 8:3 p.296
- **LK 4:4 [TEXT]** Many later manuscripts and the KJV add but on every word of God. The oldest copies end at bread alone. Matthew 4:4 has the full line.
- **LK 4:8 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 6:13 p.293
- **LK 4:10 [FULFILLS]** God's angels guard the one who trusts Him; Satan misused this verse against Jesus ← PS 91:11-12 · MEDIUM p.945
- **LK 4:12 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 6:16 p.293
- **LK 4:16 [FULFILLS]** He would preach the good news (Gospel) ← IS 61:1b p.1136

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · JESUS SPEAKING

to preach good news to the poor.
He has sent Me to proclaim liberty to the captives
and recovery of sight to the blind,
to release the oppressed,
19 *to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor."*

20 Then He rolled up the scroll, returned it to the attendant, and sat down. The eyes of everyone in the synagogue were fixed on Him, 21 and He began by saying, "Today this Scripture is fulfilled in your hearing."

22 All spoke well of Him and marveled at the gracious words that came from His lips. "Isn't this the son of Joseph?" they asked.

23 Jesus said to them, "Surely you will quote this proverb to Me: 'Physician, heal yourself! Do here in Your hometown what we have heard that You did in Capernaum.'"

24 Then He added, "Truly I tell you, no prophet is accepted in his hometown. 25 But I tell you truthfully that there were many widows in Israel in the time of Elijah, when the sky was shut for three and a half years and great famine swept over all the land. 26 Yet Elijah was not sent to any of them, but to the widow of Zarephath in Sidon. 27 And there were many lepers in Israel in the time of Elisha the prophet. Yet not one of them was cleansed—only Naaman the Syrian."

28 On hearing this, all the people in the synagogue were enraged. 29 They got up, drove Him out of the town, and led Him to the brow of the hill on which the town was built, in order to throw Him over the cliff. 30 But Jesus passed through the crowd and went on His way.

JESUS EXPELS AN UNCLEAN SPIRIT // MARK 1:21–28

31 Then He went down to Capernaum, a town in Galilee, and on the Sabbath He began to teach the people. 32 They were astonished at His teaching, because His message had authority.

33 In the synagogue there was a man possessed by the spirit of an unclean demon. He cried out in a loud voice, 34 "Ha! What do You want with us, Jesus of Nazareth? Have You come to destroy us? I know who You are—the Holy One of God!"

35 But Jesus rebuked the demon. "Be silent!" He said. "Come out of him!" At this, the demon threw the man down before them all and came out without harming him.

36 All the people were overcome with amazement and asked one another, "What is this message? With authority and power He commands the unclean spirits, and they come out!" 37 And the news about Jesus spread throughout the surrounding region.

JESUS HEALS AT PETER'S HOUSE // MATTHEW 8:14–17; MARK 1:29–34

38 After Jesus had left the synagogue, He went to the home of Simon, whose mother-in-law was suffering from a high fever. So they appealed to Jesus on her behalf, 39 and He stood over her and rebuked the fever, and it left her. And she got up at once and began to serve them.

40 At sunset, all who were ill with various diseases were brought to Jesus, and laying His hands on each one, He healed them. 41 Demons also came out of many people, shouting, "You are the Son of God!" But He rebuked the demons and would not allow them to speak, because they knew He was the Christ.

JESUS PREACHES IN JUDEA // MARK 1:35–39

42 At daybreak, Jesus went out to a solitary place, and the crowds were looking for Him. They came to Him and tried to

- **LK 4:18 [FULFILLS]** The Jubilee proclaimed liberty to all the people and 2 more ← LEV 25:10; IS 49:9; IS 61:1-2a p.214
- **LK 4:22 [FULFILLS]** Words of grace would flow from His lips ← PS 45:2 · MEDIUM p.914
- **LK 4:22 [FULFILLS]** Called Wonderful (Peleh) ← IS 9:6 · MEDIUM p.1072
- **LK 4:25 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1KI 17:9 p.580
- **LK 4:27 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2KI 5:14 p.610
- **LK 4:28 [FULFILLS]** Despised by men ← IS 53:3a p.1127
- **LK 4:29 [MIRACLE]** Jesus passes through the crowd at Nazareth
- **LK 4:31 [DEMONIC]** Demon in the synagogue recognized Jesus' identity
- **LK 4:38 [MIRACLE]** Jesus rebukes the fever of Peter's mother in law
- **LK 4:40 [DEMONIC]** Demons come out shouting You are the Son of God

ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

keep Him from leaving. 43 But Jesus told them, "I must preach the good news of the kingdom of God to the other towns as well, because that is why I was sent."

44 And He continued to preach in the synagogues of Judea.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Peter fishes all night and catches nothing. Jesus says try again, and the nets nearly break. Peter falls at His feet, and Jesus says from now on you will catch men. A leper is healed, friends lower a paralyzed man through a roof, and Levi the tax collector throws a party full of sinners.

THE FIRST DISCIPLES // MATTHEW 4:18–22; MARK 1:16–20; JOHN 1:35–42

1 On one occasion, while Jesus was standing by the Lake of Gennesaret with the crowd pressing in on Him to hear the word of God, 2 He saw two boats at the edge of the lake. The fishermen had left them and were washing their nets. 3 Jesus got into the boat belonging to Simon and asked him to put out a little from shore. And sitting down, He taught the people from the boat.

4 When Jesus had finished speaking, He said to Simon, "Put out into deep water and let down your nets for a catch."

5 "Master," Simon replied, "we have worked hard all night without catching anything. But because You say so, I will let down the nets." 6 When they had done so, they caught such a large number of fish that their nets began to tear. 7 So they signaled to their partners in the other boat to come and help them, and they came and filled both boats so full that they began to sink.

8 When Simon Peter saw this, he fell at Jesus' knees. "Go away from me, Lord," he said, "for I am a sinful man." 9 For he and his companions were astonished at the catch of fish they had taken, 10 and so were his partners James and John, the sons of Zebedee.

"Do not be afraid," Jesus said to Simon. "From now on you will catch men." 11 And when they had brought their boats ashore, they left everything and followed Him.

THE LEPER'S PRAYER // LEVITICUS 14:1–32; MATTHEW 8:1–4; MARK 1:40–45

12 While Jesus was in one of the towns, a man came along who was covered with leprosy. When he saw Jesus, he fell face-down and begged Him, "Lord, if You are willing, You can make me clean."

13 Jesus reached out His hand and touched the man. "I am willing," He said. "Be clean!" And immediately the leprosy left him.

14 "Do not tell anyone," Jesus instructed him. "But go, show yourself to the priest and present the offering Moses prescribed for your cleansing, as a testimony to them."

15 But the news about Jesus spread all the more, and great crowds came to hear Him and to be healed of their sicknesses. 16 Yet He frequently withdrew to the wilderness to pray.

JESUS HEALS A PARALYTIC // MATTHEW 9:1–8; MARK 2:1–12

17 One day Jesus was teaching, and the Pharisees and teachers of the law were sitting there. People had come from Jerusalem and from every village of Galilee and Judea, and the power of the Lord was present for Him to heal the sick.

18 Just then some men came carrying a paralyzed man on a mat. They tried to bring him inside to set him before Jesus, 19 but they could not find a way through the crowd. So they went up on the roof and lowered him on his mat through the tiles into the middle of the crowd, right in front of Jesus.

20 When Jesus saw their faith, He said, "Friend, your sins are forgiven."

21 But the scribes and Pharisees began thinking to themselves, "Who is this man who speaks blasphemy? Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

LK 5:3 [ARCHAEOLOGY] The Galilee Boat → FIELD NOTES p.1657
LK 5:4 [MIRACLE] The first great catch of fish
LK 5:12 [MIRACLE] A man full of leprosy cleansed
LK 5:14 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 14:2-4 p.194
LK 5:18 [MIRACLE] The paralyzed man let down through the tiles

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE GALILEE BOAT

LUKE 5:1 TO 11 · LUKE 8:22 TO 25



The Galilee Boat on display at the Yigal Allon Center, Kibbutz Ginosar.

WHAT IT IS

A wooden fishing boat that worked on the Sea of Galilee in the time of Jesus. It is about 27 feet long and 7 and a half feet wide, big enough for about 15 people.

HOW OLD IT IS

Carbon dating and the pottery and nails found with it date the boat to about 50 BC to AD 50. That covers the years Jesus and the fishermen worked this lake.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In January 1986 a drought made the lake drop. Two brothers from Kibbutz Ginosar, Moshe and Yuval Lufan, spotted it in the mud. Archaeologists dug it out in 11 days, wrapped it in foam and floated it to shore. It then soaked in a chemical bath for years so the wood would not crumble.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Yigal Allon Center at Kibbutz Ginosar, on the shore of the Sea of Galilee.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

It shows the kind of boat Peter, James and John fished from. It was built from many kinds of wood and patched again and again, the boat of working men who could not afford a new one.

HOW IT WAS BUILT

The builders made the outside shell first, joining the planks edge to edge with wooden tongues fitted into slots, and then added the ribs inside. Experts found twelve kinds of wood in it, mostly cedar planks and oak ribs. Many pieces were patched in or reused from older boats.

FISHING IN JESUS' DAY

Fishermen on this lake used a net thrown by hand, a long net dragged to shore, and nets set in deep water at night. Peter says, We worked hard all night and caught nothing, 5:5. Night was the best time to fish.

STORMS ON THE LAKE

The Sea of Galilee lies about 700 feet below sea level, with hills all around it. Cool winds can rush down the valleys and whip up sudden storms, like the one in 8:22 to 25.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

People call it the Jesus Boat, but nothing ties it to Jesus or Peter. It is a boat from their time and their lake.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

22 Knowing what they were thinking, Jesus replied, "Why are you thinking these things in your hearts? 23 Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'? 24 But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on the earth to forgive sins..." He said to the paralytic, "I tell you, get up, pick up your mat, and go home."

25 And immediately the man stood up before them, took what he had been lying on, and went home glorifying God. 26 Everyone was taken with amazement and glorified God. They were filled with awe and said, "We have seen remarkable things today."

JESUS CALLS LEVI // MATTHEW 9:9–13; MARK 2:13–17

27 After this, Jesus went out and saw a tax collector named Levi sitting at the tax booth. "Follow Me," He told him, 28 and Levi got up, left everything, and followed Him.

29 Then Levi hosted a great banquet for Jesus at his house. A large crowd of tax collectors was there, along with others who were eating with them. 30 But the Pharisees and their scribes complained to Jesus' disciples, "Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?"

31 Jesus answered, "It is not the healthy who need a doctor, but the sick. 32 I have not come to call the righteous, but sinners, to repentance."

QUESTIONS ABOUT FASTING // MATTHEW 9:14–15; MARK 2:18–20

33 Then they said to Him, "John's disciples and those of the Pharisees frequently fast and pray, but Yours keep on eating and drinking."

34 Jesus replied, "Can you make the guests of the bridegroom fast while He is with them? 35 But the time will come when the bridegroom will be taken from them; then they will fast."

THE PATCHES AND THE WINESKINS // MATTHEW 9:16–17; MARK 2:21–22

36 He also told them a parable: "No one tears a piece of cloth from a new garment and sews it on an old one. If he does, he will tear the new garment as well, and the patch from the new will not match the old.

37 And no one pours new wine into old wineskins. If he does, the new wine will burst the skins, the wine will spill, and the wineskins will be ruined. 38 Instead, new wine is poured into new wineskins. 39 And no one after drinking old wine wants new, for he says, 'The old is better.'"

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

The Pharisees get mad about Sabbath rules again. Jesus picks twelve apostles and preaches a sermon on a level place: blessed are the poor, love your enemies, do not judge, and build your house on the rock. It is a lot like the Sermon on the Mount, with a few extra woes for the comfortable.

THE LORD OF THE SABBATH // 1 SAMUEL 21:1–7; MATTHEW 12:1–8; MARK 2:23–28

1 One Sabbath Jesus was passing through the grainfields, and His disciples began to pick the heads of grain, rub them in their hands, and eat them. 2 But some of the Pharisees asked, "Why are you doing what is unlawful on the Sabbath?"

3 Jesus replied, "Have you not read what David did when he and his companions were hungry? 4 He entered the house of God, took the consecrated bread and gave it to his companions, and ate what is lawful only for the priests to eat."

5 Then Jesus declared, "The Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

JESUS HEALS ON THE SABBATH // MATTHEW 12:9–14; MARK 3:1–6

6 On another Sabbath Jesus entered the synagogue and was teaching, and a man was there whose right hand was withered. 7 Looking for a reason to accuse Jesus, the scribes and Pharisees were watching Him closely to see if He would heal on the Sabbath.

- **LK 5:22 [HEART]** Jesus knew what they were thinking and asked why they questioned in their hearts.
- **LK 5:35 [PROPHECY]** The Bridegroom would be taken away from His friends → MT 27:50; JN 19:30 p.1601

- **LK 6:3 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1SA 21:1-6 p.473
- **LK 6:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 24:9 p.213
- **LK 6:6 [MIRACLE]** The withered right hand restored

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

8 But Jesus knew their thoughts and said
to the man with the withered hand, "Get
up and stand among us." So he got up
and stood there.
9 Then Jesus said to them, "I ask you,
which is lawful on the Sabbath: to do
good or to do evil, to save life or to de-
stroy it?" 10 And after looking around at all
of them, He said to the man, "Stretch out
your hand." He did so, and it was re-
stored.
11 But the scribes and Pharisees were filled
with rage and began to discuss with one
another what they might do to Jesus.

THE TWELVE APOSTLES // MATTHEW 10:1–4; MARK 3:13–19

12 In those days Jesus went out to the
mountain to pray, and He spent the night
in prayer to God. 13 When daylight came,
He called His disciples to Him and chose
twelve of them, whom He also designated
as apostles: 14 Simon, whom He named
Peter, and his brother Andrew; James and
John; Philip and Bartholomew; 15 Matthew
and Thomas; James son of Alphaeus and
Simon called the Zealot; 16 Judas son of
James, and Judas Iscariot, who became a
traitor.

JESUS HEALS THE MULTITUDES // MATTHEW 4:23–25; MARK 3:7–12

17 Then Jesus came down with them and
stood on a level place. A large crowd of
His disciples was there, along with a great
number of people from all over Judea,
Jerusalem, and the seacoast of Tyre and
Sidon. 18 They had come to hear Him and
to be healed of their diseases, and those
troubled by unclean spirits were healed. 19
The entire crowd was trying to touch Him,
because power was coming from Him and
healing them all.

THE BEATITUDES // PSALM 1:1–6; MATTHEW 5:3–12

20 Looking up at His disciples, Jesus said:

"Blessed are you who are poor,
for yours is the kingdom of God.
21 Blessed are you who hunger now,
for you will be filled.
Blessed are you who weep now,
for you will laugh.
22 Blessed are you when people hate you,
and when they exclude you and insult you
and reject your name as evil because of
the Son of Man. 23 Rejoice in that day and
leap for joy, because great is your reward
in heaven. For their fathers treated the
prophets in the same way.

WOES TO THE SATISFIED // AMOS 6:1–7

24 But woe to you who are rich,
for you have already received your
comfort.
25 Woe to you who are well fed now,
for you will hunger.
Woe to you who laugh now,
for you will mourn and weep.
26 Woe to you when all men speak well of
you,
for their fathers treated the false
prophets in the same way.

LOVE YOUR ENEMIES // MATTHEW 5:38–48

27 But to those of you who will listen, I say:
Love your enemies, do good to those who
hate you, 28 bless those who curse you,
pray for those who mistreat you. 29 If
someone strikes you on one cheek, turn
to him the other also. And if someone
takes your cloak, do not withhold your tu-
nic as well. 30 Give to everyone who asks
you, and if anyone takes what is yours, do
not demand it back. 31 Do to others as you
would have them do to you.
32 If you love those who love you, what
credit is that to you? Even sinners love
those who love them. 33 If you do good to
those who do good to you, what credit is
that to you? Even sinners do the same. 34
And if you lend to those from whom you
expect repayment, what credit is that to
you? Even sinners lend to sinners, expect-
ing to be repaid in full.
35 But love your enemies, do good to them,
and lend to them, expecting nothing in re-
turn. Then your reward will be great, and

LK 6:8 [FULFILLS] He would know men's thoughts ← IS 11:3 p.1075

LK 6:27 [NOTABLE] Anybody can love their friends. Jesus says love the people who hate you, and then shows what that looks like: do good to them, bless them and pray for them. Love is something you do, not just something you feel. Verse 31 is the Golden Rule. Jesus lived this on the cross when He prayed for the men killing Him, Luke 23:34.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

you will be sons of the Most High; for He is kind to the ungrateful and wicked. 36 Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.

JUDGING OTHERS // MATTHEW 7:1–6; ROMANS 14:1–12

37 Do not judge, and you will not be judged. Do not condemn, and you will not be condemned. Forgive, and you will be forgiven. 38 Give, and it will be given to you. A good measure, pressed down, shaken together, and running over will be poured into your lap. For with the measure you use, it will be measured back to you."

39 Jesus also told them a parable: "Can a blind man lead a blind man? Will they not both fall into a pit? 40 A disciple is not above his teacher, but everyone who is fully trained will be like his teacher.

41 Why do you look at the speck in your brother's eye but fail to notice the beam in your own eye? 42 How can you say, 'Brother, let me take the speck out of your eye,' while you yourself fail to see the beam in your own eye? You hypocrite! First take the beam out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your brother's eye.

A TREE AND ITS FRUIT // MATTHEW 7:15–23; MATTHEW 12:33–37

43 No good tree bears bad fruit, nor does a bad tree bear good fruit. 44 For each tree is known by its own fruit. Indeed, figs are not gathered from thornbushes, nor grapes from brambles. 45 The good man brings good things out of the good treasure of his heart, and the evil man brings evil things out of the evil treasure of his heart. For out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks.

THE HOUSE ON THE ROCK // MATTHEW 7:24–27

46 Why do you call Me 'Lord, Lord,' but do not do what I say? 47 I will show you what he is like who comes to Me and hears My words and acts on them: 48 He is like a man building a house, who dug down deep and laid his foundation on the rock. When the flood came, the torrent crashed against that house but could not shake it, because it was well built.

49 But the one who hears My words and does not act on them is like a man who built his house on ground without a foundation. The torrent crashed against that house, and immediately it fell—and great was its destruction!"

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

A Roman officer has so much faith that Jesus is amazed. At Nain, Jesus stops a funeral by raising a widow's only son. John the Baptist sends questions from prison. Then a sinful woman crashes a dinner party, washes Jesus' feet with her tears, and the religious host learns a hard lesson about forgiveness.

THE FAITH OF THE CENTURION // MATTHEW 8:5–13; JOHN 4:43–54

1 When Jesus had concluded His discourse in the hearing of the people, He went to Capernaum. 2 There a highly valued servant of a centurion was sick and about to die. 3 When the centurion heard about Jesus, he sent some Jewish elders to ask Him to come and heal his servant. 4 They came to Jesus and pleaded with Him earnestly, "This man is worthy to have You grant this, 5 for he loves our nation and has built our synagogue."

6 So Jesus went with them. But when He was not far from the house, the centurion sent friends with the message: "Lord, do not trouble Yourself, for I am not worthy to have You come under my roof. 7 That is why I did not consider myself worthy to come to You. But just say the word, and my servant will be healed. 8 For I myself am a man under authority, with soldiers under me. I tell one to go, and he goes, and another to come, and he comes. I tell my servant to do something, and he does it."

9 When Jesus heard this, He marveled at the centurion. Turning to the crowd fol-

LK 6:37 [NOTABLE] Luke's version of Judge Not, one of the most misunderstood and misquoted passages in the Bible. See the note on Matthew 7:1 to 5 on p.1559.
LK 6:45 [HEART] Out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks.

LK 7:2 [MIRACLE] The centurion's servant healed from a distance
LK 7:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Capernaum Synagogue
LK 7:5 [FIELD NOTES] See the Capernaum Synagogue Field Notes page in Mark, p.1610.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

lowing Him, He said, "I tell you, not even in Israel have I found such great faith." 10 And when the messengers returned to the house, they found the servant in good health.

JESUS RAISES A WIDOW'S SON

11 Soon afterward, Jesus went to a town called Nain. His disciples went with Him, accompanied by a large crowd. 12 As He approached the town gate, He saw a dead man being carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow. And a large crowd from the town was with her.

13 When the Lord saw her, He had compassion on her and said, "Do not weep." 14 Then He went up and touched the coffin, and those carrying it stood still. "Young man," He said, "I tell you, get up!" 15 And the dead man sat up and began to speak! Then Jesus gave him back to his mother.

16 A sense of awe swept over all of them, and they glorified God. "A great prophet has appeared among us!" they said. "God has visited His people!" 17 And the news about Jesus spread throughout Judea and all the surrounding region.

JOHN'S INQUIRY // MATTHEW 11:1–6

18 Then John's disciples informed him about all these things. 19 So John called two of his disciples and sent them to ask the Lord, "Are You the One who was to come, or should we look for someone else?"

20 When the men came to Jesus, they said, "John the Baptist sent us to ask, 'Are You the One who was to come, or should we look for someone else?'"

21 At that very hour Jesus healed many people of their diseases, afflictions, and evil spirits, and He gave sight to many who were blind. 22 So He replied, "Go back and report to John what you have seen and heard: The blind receive sight, the lame walk, the lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, and the good news is preached to the poor. 23 Blessed is the one who does not fall away on account of Me."

JESUS TESTIFIES ABOUT JOHN // MALACHI 3:1–5; MATTHEW 11:7–19

24 After John's messengers had left, Jesus began to speak to the crowds about John: "What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed swaying in the wind? 25 Otherwise, what did you go out to see? A man dressed in fine clothes? Look, those who wear elegant clothing and live in luxury are found in palaces.

26 What then did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I tell you, and more than a prophet. 27 This is the one about whom it is written:

'Behold, I will send My messenger ahead of You,
who will prepare Your way before You.'

28 I tell you, among those born of women there is no one greater than John, yet even the least in the kingdom of God is greater than he."

29 All the people who heard this, even the tax collectors, acknowledged God's justice. For they had received the baptism of John. 30 But the Pharisees and experts in the law rejected God's purpose for themselves, because they had not been baptized by John.

31 "To what, then, can I compare the men of this generation? What are they like? 32 They are like children sitting in the marketplace and calling out to one another:

'We played the flute for you,
and you did not dance;
we sang a dirge,
and you did not weep.'

33 For John the Baptist came neither eating bread nor drinking wine, and you say, 'He has a demon!' 34 The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and you say, 'Look at this glutton and drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' 35 But wisdom is vindicated by all her children."

LK 7:11 [MIRACLE] Jesus raises the widow's son at Nain
LK 7:21 [DEMONIC] Jesus cures many of evil spirits
LK 7:22 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← IS 35:5-6; 61:1 p.1102

LK 7:27 [FULFILLS] A messenger would prepare His way ← MAL 3:1a p.1514

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

A SINFUL WOMAN ANOINTS JESUS // MATTHEW 26:6–13; MARK 14:3–9; JOHN 12:1–8

36 Then one of the Pharisees invited Jesus
to eat with him, and He entered the
Pharisee's house and reclined at the table.
37 When a sinful woman from that town
learned that Jesus was dining there, she
brought an alabaster jar of perfume. 38 As
she stood behind Him at His feet weeping,
she began to wet His feet with her tears
and wipe them with her hair. Then she
kissed His feet and anointed them with
the perfume.

39 When the Pharisee who had invited Je-
sus saw this, he said to himself, "If this
man were a prophet, He would know who
this is and what kind of woman is touch-
ing Him—for she is a sinner!"

40 But Jesus answered him, "Simon, I have
something to tell you."

"Tell me, Teacher," he said.

41 "Two men were debtors to a certain
moneylender. One owed him five hundred
days' wages, and the other fifty. 42 When
they were unable to repay him, he forgave
both of them. Which one, then, will love
him more?"

43 "I suppose the one who was forgiven
more," Simon replied.

"You have judged correctly," Jesus said.

44 And turning toward the woman, He said
to Simon, "Do you see this woman? When
I entered your house, you did not give Me
water for My feet, but she wet My feet
with her tears and wiped them with her
hair. 45 You did not greet Me with a kiss,
but she has not stopped kissing My feet
since I arrived. 46 You did not anoint My
head with oil, but she has anointed My
feet with perfume. 47 Therefore I tell you,
her many sins have been forgiven, for she
has loved much. But he who has been for-
given little loves little."

48 Then Jesus said to her, "Your sins are
forgiven."

49 But those at the table began to say to
themselves, "Who is this who even for-
gives sins?"

50 And Jesus told the woman, "Your faith
has saved you; go in peace."

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Women who had been healed travel with Jesus and pay for the ministry. He teaches the parable of the sower, calms a storm, and sends a legion of demons into pigs. A woman touches His cloak and is healed, and a synagogue leader's daughter is raised from the dead while the mourners laugh.

WOMEN MINISTER TO JESUS

1 Soon afterward, Jesus traveled from one
town and village to another, preaching
and proclaiming the good news of the
kingdom of God. The Twelve were with
Him, 2 as well as some women who had
been healed of evil spirits and infirmities:
Mary called Magdalene, from whom
seven demons had gone out, 3 Joanna the
wife of Herod's household manager
Chuza, Susanna, and many others. These
women were ministering to them out of
their own means.

THE PARABLE OF THE SOWER // MATTHEW 13:1–23; MARK 4:1–20

4 While a large crowd was gathering and
people were coming to Jesus from town
after town, He told them this parable: 5 "A
farmer went out to sow his seed. And as
he was sowing, some seed fell along the
path, where it was trampled, and the birds
of the air devoured it.

6 Some fell on rocky ground, and when it
came up, the seedlings withered because
they had no moisture.

7 Other seed fell among thorns, which
grew up with it and choked the seedlings.

8 Still other seed fell on good soil, where it
sprang up and produced a crop—a hun-
dredfold."

As Jesus said this, He called out, "He who
has ears to hear, let him hear."

9 Then His disciples asked Him what this
parable meant.

- **LK 8:1 [DEMONIC]** Women who supported Jesus — including those healed of demons
- **LK 8:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Magdala Synagogue
- **LK 8:2 [FIELD NOTES]** Mary Magdalene came from Magdala. See the Magdala Synagogue Field Notes page in Matthew, p.1555.

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

10 He replied, "The knowledge of the mysteries of the kingdom of God has been given to you, but to others I speak in parables, so that,

'though seeing, they may not see;
though hearing, they may not understand.'

11 Now this is the meaning of the parable: The seed is the word of God. 12 The seeds along the path are those who hear, but the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts, so that they may not believe and be saved.

13 The seeds on rocky ground are those who hear the word and receive it with joy, but they have no root. They believe for a season, but in the time of testing, they fall away.

14 The seeds that fell among the thorns are those who hear, but as they go on their way, they are choked by the worries, riches, and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature.

15 But the seeds on good soil are those with a noble and good heart, who hear the word, cling to it, and by persevering produce a crop.

THE LESSON OF THE LAMP // MARK 4:21–25

16 No one lights a lamp and covers it with a jar or puts it under a bed. Instead, he sets it on a stand, so those who enter can see the light. 17 For there is nothing hidden that will not be disclosed, and nothing concealed that will not be made known and brought to light.

18 Pay attention, therefore, to how you listen. Whoever has will be given more, but whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him."

JESUS' MOTHER AND BROTHERS // MATTHEW 12:46–50; MARK 3:31–35

19 Then Jesus' mother and brothers came to see Him, but they were unable to reach Him because of the crowd. 20 He was told, "Your mother and brothers are standing outside, wanting to see You."

21 But He replied, "My mother and brothers are those who hear the word of God and carry it out."

JESUS CALMS THE STORM // PSALM 107:1–43; MATTHEW 8:23–27; MARK 4:35–41

22 One day Jesus said to His disciples, "Let us cross to the other side of the lake." So He got into a boat with them and set out.

23 As they sailed, He fell asleep, and a windstorm came down on the lake, so that the boat was being swamped, and they were in great danger. 24 The disciples went and woke Him, saying, "Master, Master, we are perishing!"

Then Jesus got up and rebuked the wind and the raging waters, and they subsided, and all was calm. 25 "Where is your faith?" He asked.

Frightened and amazed, they asked one another, "Who is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey Him!"

THE DEMONS AND THE PIGS // MATTHEW 8:28–34; MARK 5:1–20

26 Then they sailed to the region of the Gerasenes, across the lake from Galilee. 27 When Jesus stepped ashore, He was met by a demon-possessed man from the town. For a long time this man had not worn clothing or lived in a house, but he stayed in the tombs.

28 When the man saw Jesus, he cried out and fell down before Him, shouting in a loud voice, "What do You want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg You not to torture me!" 29 For Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. Many times it had seized him, and though he was bound with chains and shackles, he had broken the chains and been driven by the demon into solitary places.

30 "What is your name?" Jesus asked.

"Legion," he replied, because many demons had gone into him. 31 And the demons kept begging Jesus not to order them to go into the Abyss.

LK 8:10 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 6:9 p.1069
LK 8:15 [HEART] The good soil is a noble and good heart that hears the word, holds it, and bears fruit.

LK 8:23 [MIRACLE] Jesus rebukes the storm
LK 8:27 [DEMONIC] Legion begs to enter the pigs

MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

32 There on the hillside a large herd of pigs
was feeding. So the demons begged Je-
sus to let them enter the pigs, and He
gave them permission.
33 Then the demons came out of the man
and went into the pigs, and the herd
rushed down the steep bank into the lake
and was drowned.
34 When those tending the pigs saw what
had happened, they ran off and reported
this in the town and countryside. 35 So the
people went out to see what had hap-
pened. They came to Jesus and found the
man whom the demons had left, sitting at
Jesus' feet, clothed and in his right mind;
and they were afraid. 36 Meanwhile, those
who had seen it reported how the demon-
possessed man had been healed.
37 Then all the people of the region of the
Gerasenes asked Jesus to depart from
them, because great fear had taken hold
of them. So He got into the boat and
started back.
38 The man whom the demons had left
begged to go with Jesus. But He sent him
away, saying, 39 "Return home and de-
scribe how much God has done for you."
So the man went away and proclaimed all
over the town how much Jesus had done
for him.

THE HEALING TOUCH OF JESUS // MATTHEW 9:18–26; MARK 5:21–43

40 When Jesus returned, the crowd wel-
comed Him, for they had all been waiting
for Him. 41 Just then a synagogue leader
named Jairus came and fell at Jesus' feet.
He begged Him to come to his house, 42
because his only daughter, who was
about twelve, was dying.
As Jesus went with him, the crowds
pressed around Him, 43 including a woman
who had suffered from bleeding for
twelve years. She had spent all her money
on physicians, but no one was able to
heal her. 44 She came up behind Jesus
and touched the fringe of His cloak, and
immediately her bleeding stopped.
45 "Who touched Me?" Jesus asked.
But they all denied it. "Master," said Peter,
"the people are crowding and pressing
against You."
46 But Jesus declared, "Someone touched
Me, for I know that power has gone out
from Me."
47 Then the woman, seeing that she could
not escape notice, came trembling and
fell down before Him. In the presence of
all the people, she explained why she had
touched Him and how she had immedi-
ately been healed.
48 "Daughter," said Jesus, "your faith has
healed you. Go in peace."
49 While He was still speaking, someone
arrived from the house of the synagogue
leader. "Your daughter is dead," he told
Jairus. "Do not bother the Teacher any-
more."
50 But Jesus overheard them and said to
Jairus, "Do not be afraid; just believe, and
she will be healed."
51 When He entered the house, He did not
allow anyone to go in with Him except Pe-
ter, John, James, and the child's father
and mother. 52 Meanwhile, everyone was
weeping and mourning for her. But Jesus
said, "Stop weeping; she is not dead but
asleep." 53 And they laughed at Him,
knowing that she was dead.
54 But Jesus took her by the hand and
called out, "Child, get up!" 55 Her spirit re-
turned, and at once she got up. And He
directed that she be given something to
eat. 56 Her parents were astounded, but
Jesus ordered them not to tell anyone
what had happened.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

*Jesus sends out the Twelve and feeds five thou-
sand people. Peter confesses He is the Christ. On
a mountain Jesus shines with glory, and God says
Listen to Him. Then Jesus sets His face toward
Jerusalem, and the disciples offer to call fire down
on a village. Jesus says no, and that was the right
call.*

LK 8:43 [MIRACLE] A woman bleeding twelve years touches His cloak and is healed

LK 8:49 [MIRACLE] Jesus raises Jairus' daughter

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

THE MINISTRY OF THE TWELVE // MATTHEW 10:5–15; MARK 6:7–13

1 Then Jesus called the Twelve together
and gave them power and authority over
all demons, and power to cure diseases. 2
And He sent them out to proclaim the
kingdom of God and to heal the sick. 3
"Take nothing for the journey," He told
them, "no staff, no bag, no bread, no
money, no second tunic. 4 Whatever
house you enter, stay there until you leave
that area. 5 If anyone does not welcome
you, shake the dust off your feet when
you leave that town, as a testimony
against them."

6 So they set out and went from village to
village, preaching the gospel and healing
people everywhere.

HEROD TRIES TO SEE JESUS // MATTHEW 14:1–12; MARK 6:14–29

7 When Herod the tetrarch heard about all
that was happening, he was perplexed.
For some were saying that John had risen
from the dead, 8 others that Elijah had ap-
peared, and still others that a prophet of
old had arisen.

9 "I beheaded John," Herod said, "but who
is this man I hear such things about?" And
he kept trying to see Jesus.

THE FEEDING OF THE FIVE THOUSAND // MATTHEW 14:13–21; MARK 6:30–44; JOHN 6:1–15

10 Then the apostles returned and reported
to Jesus all that they had done. Taking
them away privately, He withdrew to a
town called Bethsaida. 11 But the crowds
found out and followed Him. He wel-
comed them and spoke to them about the
kingdom of God, and He healed those
who needed healing.

12 As the day neared its end, the Twelve
came to Jesus and said, "Dismiss the
crowd so they can go to the surrounding
villages and countryside for lodging and
provisions. For we are in a desolate place
here."

13 But Jesus told them, "You give them
something to eat."

"We have only five loaves of bread and
two fish," they answered, "unless we go
and buy food for all these people." 14
(There were about five thousand men.)
He told His disciples, "Have them sit down
in groups of about fifty each." 15 They did
so, and everyone was seated.

16 Taking the five loaves and the two fish
and looking up to heaven, Jesus spoke a
blessing and broke them. Then He gave
them to the disciples to set before the
people.

17 They all ate and were satisfied, and the
disciples picked up twelve basketfuls of
broken pieces that were left over.

PETER'S CONFESSION OF CHRIST // MATTHEW 16:13–20; MARK 8:27–30; JOHN 6:67–71

18 One day as Jesus was praying in private
and the disciples were with Him, He ques-
tioned them: "Who do the crowds say I
am?"

19 They replied, "Some say John the Bap-
tist; others say Elijah; and still others, that
a prophet of old has arisen."

20 "But what about you?" Jesus asked.
"Who do you say I am?"

Peter answered, "The Christ of God."

CHRIST'S PASSION FORETOLD // MATTHEW 16:21–23; MARK 8:31–33

21 Jesus strictly warned them not to tell
this to anyone. 22 "The Son of Man must
suffer many things," He said. "He must be
rejected by the elders, chief priests, and
scribes, and He must be killed and on the
third day be raised to life."

TAKE UP YOUR CROSS // MATTHEW 16:24–28; MARK 8:34–38

23 Then Jesus said to all of them, "If any-
one wants to come after Me, he must
deny himself and take up his cross daily
and follow Me. 24 For whoever wants to
save his life will lose it, but whoever loses
his life for My sake will save it.

25 What does it profit a man to gain the
whole world, yet lose or forfeit his very
self? 26 If anyone is ashamed of Me and
My words, the Son of Man will be
ashamed of him when He comes in His

LK 9:13 [MIRACLE] Five thousand fed
LK 9:22 [PROPHECY] Jesus began to show His disciples that He must go to Jerusalem, suffer many things at the hands of elders, chief priests, and scribes, be killed, and rise the third day → Fulfilled in the Passion narratives

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | THE HEART | DEMONIC | JESUS SPEAKING

glory and in the glory of the Father and of the holy angels. 27 But I tell you truly, some who are standing here will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God."

THE TRANSFIGURATION // MATTHEW 17:1–13; MARK 9:1–13; 2 PETER 1:16–21

28 About eight days after Jesus had said these things, He took with Him Peter, John, and James, and went up on a mountain to pray. 29 And as He was praying, the appearance of His face changed, and His clothes became radiantly white. 30 Suddenly two men, Moses and Elijah, began talking with Jesus. 31 They appeared in glory and spoke about His departure, which He was about to accomplish at Jerusalem.

32 Meanwhile Peter and his companions were overcome by sleep, but when they awoke, they saw Jesus' glory and the two men standing with Him. 33 As Moses and Elijah were leaving, Peter said to Jesus, "Master, it is good for us to be here. Let us put up three shelters—one for You, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." (He did not know what he was saying.)

34 While Peter was speaking, a cloud appeared and enveloped them, and they were afraid as they entered the cloud. 35 And a voice came from the cloud, saying, "This is My Son, whom I have chosen. Listen to Him!"

36 After the voice had spoken, only Jesus was present with them. The disciples kept this to themselves, and in those days they did not tell anyone what they had seen.

THE BOY WITH AN EVIL SPIRIT // MATTHEW 17:14–18; MARK 9:14–29

37 The next day, when they came down from the mountain, Jesus was met by a large crowd. 38 Suddenly a man in the crowd cried out, "Teacher, I beg You to look at my son, for he is my only child. 39 A spirit keeps seizing him, and he screams abruptly. It throws him into convulsions so that he foams at the mouth. It keeps mauling him and rarely departs from him. 40 I begged Your disciples to drive it out, but they were unable."

41 "O unbelieving and perverse generation!" Jesus replied. "How long must I remain with you and put up with you? Bring your son here."

42 Even while the boy was approaching, the demon slammed him to the ground in a convulsion. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, healed the boy, and gave him back to his father.

THE SECOND PREDICTION OF THE PASSION // MATTHEW 17:22–23; MARK 9:30–32

43 And they were all astonished at the greatness of God.

While everyone was marveling at all that Jesus was doing, He said to His disciples, 44 "Let these words sink into your ears: The Son of Man is about to be delivered into the hands of men." 45 But they did not understand this statement. It was veiled from them so that they could not comprehend it, and they were afraid to ask Him about it.

THE GREATEST IN THE KINGDOM // MATTHEW 18:1–5; MARK 9:33–41

46 Then an argument started among the disciples as to which of them would be the greatest. 47 But Jesus, knowing the thoughts of their hearts, had a little child stand beside Him. 48 And He said to them, "Whoever welcomes this little child in My name welcomes Me, and whoever welcomes Me welcomes the One who sent Me. For whoever is the least among all of you, he is the greatest."

49 "Master," said John, "we saw someone driving out demons in Your name, and we

- **LK 9:27 [PROPHECY]** There are some standing here who shall not taste death till they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom → Fulfilled at the Transfiguration six days later (Matt 17:1-8; MK 9:2-8; LK 9:28-36); or at Pentecost (ACTS 2) · MEDIUM p.1575
- **LK 9:28 [FULFILLS]** There are some standing here who shall not taste death till they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom ← MT 16:28; MK 9:1; LK 9:27 · MEDIUM p.1574
- **LK 9:29 [MIRACLE]** His face changes and Moses and Elijah appear in glory
- **LK 9:38 [DEMONIC]** Jesus rebukes the unclean spirit and heals the boy
- **LK 9:44 [PROPHECY]** The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men, and they will kill Him, and the third day He will be raised up → Fulfilled in the Passion week
- **LK 9:47 [HEART]** Jesus knew the thoughts of their hearts when they argued about who was greatest.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

tried to stop him, because he does not accompany us."

50 "Do not stop him," Jesus replied, "for whoever is not against you is for you."

THE SAMARITANS REJECT JESUS

51 As the day of His ascension approached, Jesus resolutely set out for Jerusalem. 52 He sent messengers on ahead, who went into a village of the Samaritans to make arrangements for Him. 53 But the people there refused to welcome Him, because He was heading for Jerusalem.

54 When the disciples James and John saw this, they asked, "Lord, do You want us to call down fire from heaven to consume them?"

55 But Jesus turned and rebuked them. 56 And He and His disciples went on to another village.

THE COST OF DISCIPLESHIP // MATTHEW 8:18–22; LUKE 14:25–33; JOHN 6:59–66

57 As they were walking along the road, someone said to Jesus, "I will follow You wherever You go."

58 Jesus replied, "Foxes have dens and birds of the air have nests, but the Son of Man has no place to lay His head."

59 Then He said to another man, "Follow Me."

The man replied, "Lord, first let me go and bury my father."

60 But Jesus told him, "Let the dead bury their own dead. You, however, go and proclaim the kingdom of God."

61 Still another said, "I will follow You, Lord; but first let me bid farewell to my family."

62 Then Jesus declared, "No one who puts his hand to the plow and then looks back is fit for the kingdom of God."

- **LK 9:51 [FULFILLS]** The Servant would set His face like flint ← IS 50:7 · MEDIUM p.1124
- **LK 9:54 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2KI 1:10-12 p.601
- **LK 9:55 [TEXT]** Many later manuscripts and the KJV add more here. In verse 54 they add just as Elijah did. In verse 55 Jesus says You do not know what kind of spirit you are of. For the Son of Man did not come to destroy the lives of men, but to save them. The oldest copies do not have these words.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus sends out seventy two in pairs. A lawyer tries to find a loophole in love your neighbor, and Jesus tells the story of the good Samaritan, the last guy anyone expected to be the hero. Then Martha works hard in the kitchen while Mary sits and listens, and Jesus says Mary picked the better thing.

JESUS SENDS THE SEVENTY-TWO // MATTHEW 9:35–38

1 After this, the Lord appointed seventy-two others and sent them two by two ahead of Him to every town and place He was about to visit. 2 And He told them, "The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. Ask the Lord of the harvest, therefore, to send out workers into His harvest.

3 Go! I am sending you out like lambs among wolves. 4 Carry no purse or bag or sandals. Do not greet anyone along the road.

5 Whatever house you enter, begin by saying, 'Peace to this house.' 6 If a man of peace is there, your peace will rest on him; if not, it will return to you. 7 Stay at the same house, eating and drinking whatever you are offered. For the worker is worthy of his wages. Do not move around from house to house.

8 If you enter a town and they welcome you, eat whatever is set before you. 9 Heal the sick who are there and tell them, 'The kingdom of God is near you.'

10 But if you enter a town and they do not welcome you, go into the streets and declare, 11 'Even the dust of your town that clings to our feet, we wipe off as a testimony against you. Yet be sure of this: The kingdom of God is near.' 12 I tell you, it will be more bearable on that day for Sodom than for that town.

WOE TO THE UNREPENTANT // MATTHEW 11:20–24

13 Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles that were performed in you had been performed in Tyre

- **LK 10:1 [NOTABLE]** Jesus's second, larger sending — again in pairs of two; establishes the biblical pattern for ministry teams

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

and Sidon, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. 14 But it will be more bearable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you.

15 And you, Capernaum, will you be lifted up to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades!

16 Whoever listens to you listens to Me; whoever rejects you rejects Me; and whoever rejects Me rejects the One who sent Me."

THE JOYFUL RETURN

17 The seventy-two returned with joy and said, "Lord, even the demons submit to us in Your name."

18 So He told them, "I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven. 19 Behold, I have given you authority to tread on snakes and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy. Nothing will harm you. 20 Nevertheless, do not rejoice that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven."

JESUS' PRAYER OF THANKSGIVING // MATTHEW 11:25–30

21 At that time Jesus rejoiced in the Holy Spirit and declared, "I praise You, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because You have hidden these things from the wise and learned, and revealed them to little children. Yes, Father, for this was well-pleasing in Your sight.

22 All things have been entrusted to Me by My Father. No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those to whom the Son chooses to reveal Him."

23 Then Jesus turned to the disciples and said privately, "Blessed are the eyes that see what you see. 24 For I tell you that many prophets and kings desired to see what you see but did not see it, and to hear what you hear but did not hear it."

THE PARABLE OF THE GOOD SAMARITAN

25 One day an expert in the law stood up to test Him. "Teacher," he asked, "what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

26 "What is written in the Law?" Jesus replied. "How do you read it?"

27 He answered, "*'Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your strength and with all your mind' and 'Love your neighbor as yourself.'*"

28 "You have answered correctly," Jesus said. "Do this and you will live."

29 But wanting to justify himself, he asked Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?"

30 Jesus took up this question and said, "A man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho when he fell into the hands of robbers. They stripped him, beat him, and went away, leaving him half dead.

31 Now by chance a priest was going down the same road, but when he saw him, he passed by on the other side.

32 So too, when a Levite came to that spot and saw him, he passed by on the other side.

33 But a Samaritan on a journey came upon him, and when he saw him, he had compassion. 34 He went to him and bandaged his wounds, pouring on oil and wine. Then he put him on his own animal, brought him to an inn, and took care of him.

35 The next day he took out two days' wages and gave them to the innkeeper. 'Take care of him,' he said, 'and on my return I will repay you for any additional expense.'

36 Which of these three do you think was a neighbor to the man who fell into the hands of robbers?"

37 "The one who showed him mercy," replied the expert in the law.

Then Jesus told him, "Go and do likewise."

MARTHA AND MARY

38 As they traveled along, Jesus entered a village where a woman named Martha welcomed Him into her home. 39 She had a sister named Mary, who sat at the Lord's feet listening to His message. 40 But Martha was distracted by all the prepara-

LK 10:17 [DEMONIC] Seventy returned rejoicing; 'even demons are subject to us in Your name'

LK 10:27 [QUOTES] Direct ← DT 6:5; LEV 19:18 p.293
LK 10:28 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 18:5 p.202

DEMONIC NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

tions to be made. She came to Jesus and said, "Lord, do You not care that my sister has left me to serve alone? Tell her to help me!"

41 "Martha, Martha," the Lord replied, "you are worried and upset about many things. 42 But only one thing is necessary. Mary has chosen the good portion, and it will not be taken away from her."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

The disciples ask Jesus to teach them to pray, and He gives them the Lord's Prayer and a story about a friend knocking at midnight. Critics say He casts out demons by Satan, which makes no sense. At a dinner He calls out the Pharisees for cleaning the outside of the cup while the inside is filthy.

THE LORD'S PRAYER // MATTHEW 6:5–15

1 One day in a place where Jesus had just finished praying, one of His disciples requested, "Lord, teach us to pray, just as John taught his disciples."

2 So Jesus told them, "When you pray, say:

'Father, hallowed be Your name.
Your kingdom come.
3 Give us each day our daily bread.
4 And forgive us our sins,
for we also forgive everyone who sins against us.
And lead us not into temptation.'"

ASK, SEEK, KNOCK // MATTHEW 7:7–12

5 Then Jesus said to them, "Suppose one of you goes to his friend at midnight and says, 'Friend, lend me three loaves of bread, 6 because a friend of mine has come to me on a journey, and I have nothing to set before him.'

7 And suppose the one inside answers, 'Do not bother me. My door is already shut, and my children and I are in bed. I cannot get up to give you anything.'

8 I tell you, even though he will not get up to provide for him because of his friendship, yet because of the man's persistence, he will get up and give him as much as he needs.

9 So I tell you: Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and the door will be opened to you. 10 For everyone who asks receives; he who seeks finds; and to him who knocks, the door will be opened.

11 What father among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead? 12 Or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? 13 So if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him!"

A HOUSE DIVIDED // MATTHEW 12:22–30; MARK 3:20–27

14 One day Jesus was driving out a demon that was mute. And when the demon was gone, the man who had been mute spoke. The crowds were amazed, 15 but some of them said, "It is by Beelzebul, the prince of the demons, that He drives out demons." 16 And others tested Him by demanding a sign from heaven.

17 Knowing their thoughts, Jesus said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself will be laid waste, and a house divided against a house will fall. 18 If Satan is divided against himself, how can his kingdom stand? After all, you say that I drive out demons by Beelzebul. 19 And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your sons drive them out? So then, they will be your judges. 20 But if I drive out demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.

21 When a strong man, fully armed, guards his house, his possessions are secure. 22

LK 11:2 [NOTABLE] The disciples asked Jesus to teach them to pray, and this is what He gave them. It is a pattern, not just words to repeat: put God first, ask for His kingdom, trust Him for today's needs, ask forgiveness and give it, and ask Him to keep you from temptation. Notice verse 4. We ask God to forgive us because we forgive others. Matthew 6:9 to 13 has the longer version.

LK 11:2 [TEXT] Many later manuscripts and the KJV say Our Father in heaven and add Your will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. The oldest copies of Luke, like Papyrus 75, have this shorter prayer. Matthew 6:9 to 13 has the longer one.

LK 11:4 [TEXT] Many later manuscripts and the KJV add but deliver us from the evil one. See Matthew 6:13.

LK 11:14 [DEMONIC] Jesus drives out a mute demon

LK 11:20 [DEMONIC] By the finger of God the kingdom has come

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

But when someone stronger attacks and overpowers him, he takes away the armor in which the man trusted, and then he divides up his plunder.

23 He who is not with Me is against Me, and he who does not gather with Me scatters.

AN UNCLEAN SPIRIT RETURNS // MATTHEW 12:43–45

24 When an unclean spirit comes out of a man, it passes through arid places seeking rest and does not find it. Then it says, 'I will return to the house I left.' 25 On its return, it finds the house swept clean and put in order. 26 Then it goes and brings seven other spirits more wicked than itself, and they go in and dwell there. And the final plight of that man is worse than the first."

TRUE BLESSEDNESS

27 As Jesus was saying these things, a woman in the crowd raised her voice and said, "Blessed is the womb that bore You, and blessed are the breasts that nursed You!"

28 But He replied, "Blessed rather are those who hear the word of God and obey it."

THE SIGN OF JONAH // JONAH 3:1–10; MATTHEW 12:38–42

29 As the crowds were increasing, Jesus said, "This is a wicked generation. It demands a sign, but none will be given it except the sign of Jonah. 30 For as Jonah was a sign to the Ninevites, so the Son of Man will be a sign to this generation.

31 The Queen of the South will rise at the judgment with the men of this generation and condemn them; for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and now One greater than Solomon is here. 32 The men of Nineveh will stand at the judgment with this generation and condemn it; for they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and now One greater than Jonah is here.

THE LAMP OF THE BODY // MATTHEW 6:22–24

33 No one lights a lamp and puts it in a cellar or under a basket. Instead, he sets it on a stand, so those who enter can see the light.

34 Your eye is the lamp of your body. When your eyes are good, your whole body also is full of light. But when they are bad, your body is full of darkness. 35 Be careful, then, that the light within you is not darkness. 36 So if your whole body is full of light, with no part of it in darkness, you will be radiant, as though a lamp were shining on you."

WOES TO PHARISEES AND EXPERTS IN THE LAW // MATTHEW 23:1–36

37 As Jesus was speaking, a Pharisee invited Him to dine with him; so He went in and reclined at the table. 38 But the Pharisee was surprised to see that Jesus did not first wash before the meal.

39 Then the Lord said, "Now you Pharisees clean the outside of the cup and dish, but inside you are full of greed and wickedness. 40 You fools! Did not the One who made the outside make the inside as well? 41 But give as alms the things that are within you, and behold, everything will be clean for you.

42 Woe to you Pharisees! For you pay tithes of mint, rue, and every herb, but you disregard justice and the love of God. You should have practiced the latter without neglecting the former.

43 Woe to you Pharisees! For you love the chief seats in the synagogues and the greetings in the marketplaces. 44 Woe to you! For you are like unmarked graves, which men walk over without even noticing."

45 One of the experts in the law told Him, "Teacher, when You say these things, You insult us as well."

46 "Woe to you as well, experts in the law!" He replied. "For you weigh men down with heavy burdens, but you yourselves will not lift a finger to lighten their load.

LK 11:24 **[DEMONIC]** The unclean spirit returns with seven others

LK 11:29 **[PROPHECY]** The Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth, like Jonah in the belly of the great fish → MT 27:59-60; MT 28:6 p.1601

LK 11:30 **[FULFILLS]** A pagan city repented at one prophet's preaching ← JON 3:5 · MEDIUM p.1423

NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

47 Woe to you! For you build tombs for the
prophets, but it was your fathers who
killed them. 48 So you are witnesses con-
senting to the deeds of your fathers: They
killed the prophets, and you build their
tombs. 49 Because of this, the wisdom of
God said, 'I will send them prophets and
apostles; some of them they will kill and
others they will persecute.'
50 As a result, this generation will be
charged with the blood of all the prophets
that has been shed since the foundation
of the world, 51 from the blood of Abel to
the blood of Zechariah, who was killed
between the altar and the sanctuary. Yes,
I tell you, all of it will be charged to this
generation.
52 Woe to you experts in the law! For you
have taken away the key to knowledge.
You yourselves have not entered, and you
have hindered those who were entering."
53 As Jesus went on from there, the
scribes and Pharisees began to oppose
Him bitterly and to ply Him with questions
about many things, 54 waiting to catch Him
in something He might say.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus warns about greed with the story of a rich fool who builds bigger barns the night before he dies. Do not worry, look at the ravens and the lilies. Be ready, because the Master comes when you least expect it. To whom much is given, much will be required, which makes everyone a little nervous.

THE LEAVEN OF THE PHARISEES // MATTHEW 16:5–12; MARK 8:14–21

1 In the meantime, a crowd of many thou-
sands had gathered, so that they were
trampling one another. Jesus began to
speak first to His disciples: "Beware of the
leaven of the Pharisees, which is
hypocrisy. 2 There is nothing concealed
that will not be disclosed, and nothing
hidden that will not be made known. 3
What you have spoken in the dark will be
heard in the daylight, and what you have
whispered in the inner rooms will be pro-
claimed from the housetops.

FEAR GOD ALONE // MATTHEW 10:26–31

4 I tell you, My friends, do not be afraid of
those who kill the body and after that can
do no more. 5 But I will show you whom
you should fear: Fear the One who, after
you have been killed, has authority to
throw you into hell. Yes, I tell you, fear
Him!
6 Are not five sparrows sold for two pen-
nies? Yet not one of them is forgotten by
God. 7 And even the very hairs of your
head are all numbered. So do not be
afraid; you are worth more than many
sparrows.

CONFESSING CHRIST // MATTHEW 10:32–33

8 I tell you, everyone who confesses Me
before men, the Son of Man will also con-
fess him before the angels of God. 9 But
whoever denies Me before men will be
denied before the angels of God. 10 And
everyone who speaks a word against the
Son of Man will be forgiven, but whoever
blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will not
be forgiven.
11 When you are brought before syna-
gogues, rulers, and authorities, do not
worry about how to defend yourselves or
what to say. 12 For at that time the Holy
Spirit will teach you what you should say."

THE PARABLE OF THE RICH FOOL

13 Someone in the crowd said to Him,
"Teacher, tell my brother to divide the in-
heritance with me."
14 But Jesus replied, "Man, who appointed
Me judge or executor between you?" 15
And He said to them, "Watch out! Guard
yourselves against every form of greed,
for one's life does not consist in the abun-
dance of his possessions."
16 Then He told them a parable: "The
ground of a certain rich man produced an
abundance. 17 So he thought to himself,
'What shall I do, since I have nowhere to
store my crops?' 18 Then he said, 'This is
what I will do: I will tear down my barns

LK 11:51 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← 2CH 24:20-22 p.739

LK 12:15 [NOTABLE] The Parable of the Rich Fool — building bigger barns instead of being rich toward God; the folly of laying up earthly wealth

THE HEART NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

and will build bigger ones, and there I will store up all my grain and my goods. 19 Then I will say to myself, "You have plenty of good things laid up for many years. Take it easy. Eat, drink, and be merry!"'

20 But God said to him, 'You fool! This very night your life will be required of you. Then who will own what you have accumulated?'

21 This is how it will be for anyone who stores up treasure for himself but is not rich toward God."

DO NOT WORRY // MATTHEW 6:25–34

22 Then Jesus said to His disciples, "Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat, or about your body, what you will wear. 23 For life is more than food, and the body more than clothes. 24 Consider the ravens: They do not sow or reap, they have no storehouse or barn; yet God feeds them. How much more valuable you are than the birds!

25 Who of you by worrying can add a single hour to his life? 26 So if you cannot do such a small thing, why do you worry about the rest?

27 Consider how the lilies grow: They do not labor or spin. Yet I tell you, not even Solomon in all his glory was adorned like one of these. 28 If that is how God clothes the grass of the field, which is here today and tomorrow is thrown into the furnace, how much more will He clothe you, O you of little faith!

29 And do not be concerned about what you will eat or drink. Do not worry about it. 30 For the Gentiles of the world strive after all these things, and your Father knows that you need them. 31 But seek His kingdom, and these things will be added unto you.

TREASURES IN HEAVEN // MATTHEW 6:19–21

32 Do not be afraid, little flock, for your Father is pleased to give you the kingdom. 33 Sell your possessions and give to the poor. Provide yourselves with purses that will not wear out, an inexhaustible treasure in heaven, where no thief approaches and no moth destroys. 34 For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

READINESS AT ANY HOUR // MATTHEW 24:36–51; MARK 13:32–37

35 Be dressed for service and keep your lamps burning. 36 Then you will be like servants waiting for their master to return from the wedding banquet, so that when he comes and knocks, they can open the door for him at once. 37 Blessed are those servants whom the master finds on watch when he returns. Truly I tell you, he will dress himself to serve and will have them recline at the table, and he himself will come and wait on them. 38 Even if he comes in the second or third watch of the night and finds them alert, those servants will be blessed.

39 But understand this: If the homeowner had known at what hour the thief was coming, he would not have let his house be broken into. 40 You also must be ready, because the Son of Man will come at an hour you do not expect."

41 "Lord," said Peter, "are You addressing this parable to us, or to everyone else as well?"

42 And the Lord answered, "Who then is the faithful and wise manager, whom the master puts in charge of his servants to give them their portion at the proper time? 43 Blessed is that servant whose master finds him doing so when he returns. 44 Truly I tell you, he will put him in charge of all his possessions.

45 But suppose that servant says in his heart, 'My master will be a long time in coming,' and he begins to beat the menservants and maidservants, and to eat and drink and get drunk. 46 The master of that servant will come on a day he does not expect and at an hour he does not anticipate. Then he will cut him to pieces and assign him a place with the unbelievers.

47 That servant who knows his master's will but does not get ready or follow his instructions will be beaten with many blows. 48 But the one who unknowingly

LK 12:34 [HEART] Your heart follows your treasure.

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

does things worthy of punishment will be beaten with few blows. From everyone who has been given much, much will be required; and from him who has been entrusted with much, even more will be demanded.

NOT PEACE BUT DIVISION // MICAH 7:1–6; MATTHEW 10:34–39

49 I have come to ignite a fire on the earth, and how I wish it were already kindled! 50 But I have a baptism to undergo, and how distressed I am until it is accomplished!

51 Do you think that I have come to bring peace to the earth? No, I tell you, but division. 52 From now on, five in one household will be divided, three against two and two against three. 53 *They will be divided, father against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, mother-in-law against daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against mother-in-law."*

INTERPRETING THE PRESENT TIME // MATTHEW 16:1–4; MARK 8:11–13

54 Then Jesus said to the crowds, "As soon as you see a cloud rising in the west, you say, 'A shower is coming,' and that is what happens. 55 And when the south wind blows, you say, 'It will be hot,' and it is. 56 You hypocrites! You know how to interpret the appearance of the earth and sky. Why don't you know how to interpret the present time?

RECONCILING WITH AN ADVERSARY // MATTHEW 5:21–26

57 And why don't you judge for yourselves what is right? 58 Make every effort to reconcile with your adversary while you are on your way to the magistrate. Otherwise, he may drag you off to the judge, and the judge may hand you over to the officer, and the officer may throw you into prison. 59 I tell you, you will not get out until you have paid the very last penny."

- **LK 12:47 [HEART]** The servant who knew his master's will and did not do it gets the greater punishment.
- **LK 12:48 [HEART]** To whom much is given, much will be required.
- **LK 12:53 [FULFILLS]** A man's enemies would be the people of his own household ← MIC 7:6 · MEDIUM p.1438

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus says unless you repent, you will all perish too, which is not a feel good opener. He heals a woman bent over for eighteen years, on the Sabbath of course. The kingdom is like a mustard seed, the door is narrow, and Jesus weeps over Jerusalem like a hen longing to gather her chicks.

A CALL TO REPENTANCE // JOEL 1:13–20; AMOS 5:4–15; ZEPHANIAH 2:1–3

1 At that time some of those present told Jesus about the Galileans whose blood Pilate had mixed with their sacrifices. 2 To this He replied, "Do you think that these Galileans were worse sinners than all the other Galileans, because they suffered this way? 3 No, I tell you. But unless you repent, you too will all perish. 4 Or those eighteen who were killed when the tower of Siloam collapsed on them: Do you think that they were more sinful than all the others living in Jerusalem? 5 No, I tell you. But unless you repent, you too will all perish."

THE PARABLE OF THE BARREN FIG TREE // ISAIAH 5:1–7

6 Then Jesus told this parable: "A man had a fig tree that was planted in his vineyard. He went to look for fruit on it but did not find any. 7 So he said to the keeper of the vineyard, 'Look, for the past three years I have come to search for fruit on this fig tree and haven't found any. Therefore cut it down! Why should it use up the soil?'

8 'Sir,' the man replied, 'leave it alone again this year, until I dig around it and fertilize it. 9 If it bears fruit next year, fine. But if not, you can cut it down.'"

JESUS HEALS A DISABLED WOMAN

10 One Sabbath Jesus was teaching in one of the synagogues, 11 and a woman there had been disabled by a spirit for eighteen years. She was hunched over and could not stand up straight. 12 When Jesus saw her, He called her over and said, "Woman, you are set free from your disability." 13 Then He placed His hands on her, and immediately she straightened up and began to glorify God.

- **LK 13:10 [DEMONIC]** Woman bent over 18 years by a spirit of infirmity

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW JESUS SPEAKING

14 But the synagogue leader was indignant
that Jesus had healed on the Sabbath.
"There are six days for work," he told the
crowd. "So come and be healed on those
days and not on the Sabbath."

15 "You hypocrites!" the Lord replied.
"Does not each of you on the Sabbath un-
tie his ox or donkey from the stall and lead
it to water? 16 Then should not this daugh-
ter of Abraham, whom Satan has kept
bound for eighteen long years, be re-
leased from her bondage on the Sabbath
day?"

17 When Jesus said this, all His adversaries
were humiliated. And the whole crowd re-
joiced at all the glorious things He was
doing.

THE PARABLE OF THE MUSTARD SEED //
MATTHEW 13:31–32; MARK 4:30–34

18 Then Jesus asked, "What is the king-
dom of God like? To what can I compare
it? 19 It is like a mustard seed that a man
tossed into his garden. It grew and be-
came a tree, and the birds of the air
nested in its branches."

THE PARABLE OF THE LEAVEN // MATTHEW 13:33

20 Again He asked, "To what can I com-
pare the kingdom of God? 21 It is like
leaven that a woman took and mixed into
eighteen quarts of flour, until all of it was
leavened."

THE NARROW DOOR // MATTHEW 7:13–14

22 Then Jesus traveled throughout the
towns and villages, teaching as He made
His way toward Jerusalem. 23 "Lord,"
someone asked Him, "will only a few peo-
ple be saved?"

Jesus answered, 24 "Make every effort to
enter through the narrow door. For many, I
tell you, will try to enter and will not be
able. 25 After the master of the house gets
up and shuts the door, you will stand out-
side knocking and saying, 'Lord, open the
door for us.'

But he will reply, 'I do not know where you
are from.'

26 Then you will say, 'We ate and drank
with you, and you taught in our streets.'

27 And he will answer, 'I tell you, I do not
know where you are from. Depart from
me, all you evildoers.'

28 There will be weeping and gnashing of
teeth when you see Abraham, Isaac, Ja-
cob, and all the prophets in the kingdom
of God, but you yourselves are thrown
out. 29 People will come from east and
west and north and south, and will recline
at the table in the kingdom of God. 30 And
indeed, some who are last will be first,
and some who are first will be last."

LAMENT OVER JERUSALEM // MATTHEW 23:37–39

31 At that very hour, some Pharisees came
to Jesus and told Him, "Leave this place
and get away, because Herod wants to kill
You."

32 But Jesus replied, "Go tell that fox,
'Look, I will keep driving out demons and
healing people today and tomorrow, and
on the third day I will reach My goal.' 33
Nevertheless, I must keep going today
and tomorrow and the next day, for it is
not admissible for a prophet to perish out-
side of Jerusalem.

34 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the
prophets and stones those sent to her,
how often I have longed to gather your
children together as a hen gathers her
chicks under her wings, but you were un-
willing! 35 Look, your house is left to you
desolate. And I tell you that you will not
see Me again until you say, *'Blessed is He
who comes in the name of the Lord.'"*

- **LK 13:27 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 6:8 p.887
- **LK 13:29 [PROPHECY]** Many from east and west would feast with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom → STILL TO COME
- **LK 13:32 [PROPHECY]** Today and tomorrow I cast out demons and perform cures, and on the third day I finish My course → Fulfilled
- **LK 13:34 [PROPHECY]** O Jerusalem, Jerusalem... your house is left to you desolate → HISTORY: Roman soldiers led by Titus destroyed Jerusalem and its temple in AD 70. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War books 5 and 6.
- **LK 13:35 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:26 p.964

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

At a dinner party Jesus heals a man and then gives everyone seating advice: take the lowest seat. Invite the poor, not just people who can invite you back. He tells of a great banquet where the invited guests all make excuses. Then He says count the cost before you follow Him.

JESUS HEALS A MAN WITH DROPSY

1 One Sabbath, Jesus went to eat in the
home of a leading Pharisee, and those in
attendance were watching Him closely. 2
Right there before Him was a man with
dropsy. 3 So Jesus asked the experts in
the law and the Pharisees, "Is it lawful to
heal on the Sabbath or not?"
4 But they remained silent.
Then Jesus took hold of the man, healed
him, and sent him on his way. 5 And He
asked them, "Which of you whose son or
ox falls into a pit on the Sabbath day will
not immediately pull him out?"
6 And they were unable to answer these
questions.

THE PARABLE OF THE GUESTS

7 When Jesus noticed how the guests
chose the places of honor, He told them a
parable: 8 "When you are invited to a wed-
ding banquet, do not sit in the place of
honor, in case someone more distin-
guished than you has been invited. 9 Then
the host who invited both of you will come
and tell you, 'Give this man your seat.' And
in humiliation, you will have to take the
last place.
10 But when you are invited, go and sit in
the last place, so that your host will come
and tell you, 'Friend, move up to a better
place.' Then you will be honored in front
of everyone at the table with you. 11 For
everyone who exalts himself will be hum-
bled, and the one who humbles himself
will be exalted."
12 Then Jesus said to the man who had in-
vited Him, "When you host a dinner or a
banquet, do not invite your friends or
brothers or relatives or rich neighbors.
Otherwise, they may invite you in return,
and you will be repaid. 13 But when you
host a banquet, invite the poor, the crip-
pled, the lame, and the blind, 14 and you
will be blessed. Since they cannot repay
you, you will be repaid at the resurrection
of the righteous."

THE PARABLE OF THE BANQUET // MATTHEW 22:1–14

15 When one of those reclining with Him
heard this, he said to Jesus, "Blessed is
everyone who will eat at the feast in the
kingdom of God."
16 But Jesus replied, "A certain man pre-
pared a great banquet and invited many
guests. 17 When it was time for the ban-
quet, he sent his servant to tell those who
had been invited, 'Come, for everything is
now ready.'
18 But one after another they all began to
make excuses. The first one said, 'I have
bought a field, and I need to go see it.
Please excuse me.'
19 Another said, 'I have bought five yoke of
oxen, and I am going to try them out.
Please excuse me.'
20 Still another said, 'I have married a wife,
so I cannot come.'
21 The servant returned and reported all
this to his master. Then the owner of the
house became angry and said to his ser-
vant, 'Go out quickly into the streets and
alleys of the city, and bring in the poor,
the crippled, the blind, and the lame.'
22 'Sir,' the servant replied, 'what you or-
dered has been done, and there is still
room.'
23 So the master told his servant, 'Go out
to the highways and hedges and compel
them to come in, so that my house will be
full. 24 For I tell you, not one of those men
who were invited will taste my banquet.'"

THE COST OF DISCIPLESHIP // MATTHEW 8:18–22; LUKE 9:57–62; JOHN 6:59–66

25 Now large crowds were traveling with
Jesus, and He turned and said to them, 26
"If anyone comes to Me and does not hate
his father and mother and wife and chil-
dren and brothers and sisters—yes, even

LK 14:2 [MIRACLE] Jesus heals a man with dropsy on the Sabbath

JESUS SPEAKING

his own life—he cannot be My disciple. 27 And whoever does not carry his cross and follow Me cannot be My disciple.

28 Which of you, wishing to build a tower, does not first sit down and count the cost to see if he has the resources to complete it? 29 Otherwise, if he lays the foundation and is unable to finish the work, everyone who sees it will ridicule him, 30 saying, 'This man could not finish what he started to build.'

31 Or what king on his way to war with another king will not first sit down and consider whether he can engage with ten thousand men the one coming against him with twenty thousand? 32 And if he is unable, he will send a delegation while the other king is still far off, to ask for terms of peace.

33 In the same way, any one of you who does not give up everything he has cannot be My disciple.

GOOD SALT // MATTHEW 5:13–16; MARK 9:49–50

34 Salt is good, but if the salt loses its savor, with what will it be seasoned? 35 It is fit neither for the soil nor for the manure pile, and it is thrown out.

He who has ears to hear, let him hear."

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Three lost things: a sheep, a coin and a son. The younger son blows his inheritance, ends up feeding pigs, and comes home rehearsing a speech. His father runs to him before he can finish. The older brother pouts outside the party, and the story ends without telling us if he ever came in.

THE PARABLE OF THE LOST SHEEP // MATTHEW 18:10–14

1 Now all the tax collectors and sinners were gathering around to listen to Jesus. 2 So the Pharisees and scribes began to grumble: "This man welcomes sinners and eats with them."

3 Then Jesus told them this parable: 4 "What man among you, if he has a hundred sheep and loses one of them, does not leave the ninety-nine in the pasture and go after the one that is lost, until he finds it? 5 And when he finds it, he joyfully puts it on his shoulders, 6 comes home, and calls together his friends and neighbors to tell them, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found my lost sheep!' 7 I tell you that in the same way there will be more joy in heaven over one sinner who repents than over ninety-nine righteous ones who do not need to repent.

THE PARABLE OF THE LOST COIN

8 Or what woman who has ten silver coins and loses one of them does not light a lamp, sweep her house, and search carefully until she finds it? 9 And when she finds it, she calls together her friends and neighbors to say, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found my lost coin.' 10 In the same way, I tell you, there is joy in the presence of God's angels over one sinner who repents."

THE PARABLE OF THE PRODIGAL SON // DEUTERONOMY 21:18–21

11 Then Jesus said, "There was a man who had two sons. 12 The younger son said to him, 'Father, give me my share of the estate.' So he divided his property between them.

13 After a few days, the younger son got everything together and journeyed to a distant country, where he squandered his wealth in wild living.

14 After he had spent all he had, a severe famine swept through that country, and he began to be in need. 15 So he went and hired himself out to a citizen of that country, who sent him into his fields to feed the pigs. 16 He longed to fill his belly with the pods the pigs were eating, but no one would give him a thing.

17 Finally he came to his senses and said, 'How many of my father's hired servants have plenty of food, but here I am, starving to death! 18 I will get up and go back to my father and say to him, "Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. 19 I am no longer worthy to be called your son. Make me like one of your hired servants."'

20 So he got up and went to his father. But while he was still in the distance, his father saw him and was filled with compas-

JESUS SPEAKING

sion. He ran to his son, embraced him, and kissed him.

21 The son declared, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.'

22 But the father said to his servants, 'Quick! Bring the best robe and put it on him. Put a ring on his finger and sandals on his feet. 23 Bring the fattened calf and kill it. Let us feast and celebrate. 24 For this son of mine was dead and is alive again! He was lost and is found!' So they began to celebrate.

25 Meanwhile the older son was in the field, and as he approached the house, he heard music and dancing. 26 So he called one of the servants and asked what was going on.

27 'Your brother has returned,' he said, 'and your father has killed the fattened calf, because he has him back safe and sound.'

28 The older son became angry and refused to go in. So his father came out and pleaded with him.

29 But he answered his father, 'Look, all these years I have served you and never disobeyed a commandment of yours. Yet you never gave me even a young goat so I could celebrate with my friends. 30 But when this son of yours returns from squandering your wealth with prostitutes, you kill the fattened calf for him!'

31 'Son, you are always with me,' the father said, 'and all that is mine is yours. 32 But it was fitting to celebrate and be glad, because this brother of yours was dead and is alive again; he was lost and is found.'"

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

A dishonest manager gets praised for being shrewd, which confuses every reader ever. You cannot serve God and money. Then the rich man and Lazarus: one feasts, one begs, both die, and everything flips. The rich man begs for a warning to his brothers, and Abraham says they have Moses and the Prophets.

THE PARABLE OF THE SHREWD MANAGER

1 Jesus also said to His disciples, "There was a rich man whose manager was accused of wasting his possessions. 2 So he called him in to ask, 'What is this I hear about you? Turn in an account of your management, for you cannot be manager any longer.'

3 The manager said to himself, 'What shall I do, now that my master is taking away my position? I am too weak to dig and too ashamed to beg. 4 I know what I will do so that after my removal from management, people will welcome me into their homes.'

5 And he called in each one of his master's debtors. 'How much do you owe my master?' he asked the first.

6 'Five hundred fifty gallons of olive oil,' he answered.

'Take your bill,' said the manager, 'sit down quickly, and write two hundred seventy five.'

7 Then he asked another, 'And how much do you owe?'

'Six hundred bushels of wheat,' he replied.

'Take your bill and write four hundred eighty,' he told him.

8 The master commended the dishonest manager because he had acted shrewdly. For the sons of this age are more shrewd in dealing with their own kind than are the sons of light. 9 I tell you, use worldly wealth to make friends for yourselves so that when it is gone, they will welcome you into eternal dwellings.

10 Whoever is faithful with very little will also be faithful with much, and whoever is dishonest with very little will also be dishonest with much. 11 So if you have not been faithful with worldly wealth, who will entrust you with true riches? 12 And if you have not been faithful with the belongings of another, who will give you belongings of your own?

13 No servant can serve two masters. Either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve both God and money."

THE HEART NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

THE LAW AND THE PROPHETS

14 The Pharisees, who were lovers of
money, heard all of this and were scoffing
at Jesus. 15 So He said to them, "You are
the ones who justify yourselves before
men, but God knows your hearts. For
what is prized among men is detestable
before God.

16 The Law and the Prophets were pro-
claimed until John. Since that time, the
gospel of the kingdom of God is being
preached, and everyone is forcing his way
into it. 17 But it is easier for heaven and
earth to pass away than for a single stroke
of a pen to drop out of the Law.

18 Anyone who divorces his wife and mar-
ries another woman commits adultery,
and he who marries a divorced woman
commits adultery.

THE RICH MAN AND LAZARUS // JOHN 5:39–47

19 Now there was a rich man dressed in
purple and fine linen, who lived each day
in joyous splendor. 20 And a beggar named
Lazarus lay at his gate, covered with
sores 21 and longing to be fed with the
crumbs that fell from the rich man's table.
Even the dogs came and licked his sores.

22 One day the beggar died and was car-
ried by the angels to Abraham's side. And
the rich man also died and was buried. 23
In Hades, where he was in torment, he
looked up and saw Abraham from afar,
with Lazarus by his side.

24 So he cried out, 'Father Abraham, have
mercy on me and send Lazarus to dip the
tip of his finger in water and cool my
tongue. For I am in agony in this fire.'

25 But Abraham answered, 'Child, remem-
ber that during your lifetime you received
your good things, while Lazarus received
bad things. But now he is comforted here,
while you are in agony. 26 And besides all
this, a great chasm has been fixed be-
tween us and you, so that even those who
wish cannot cross from here to you, nor
can anyone cross from there to us.'

27 'Then I beg you, father,' he said, 'send
Lazarus to my father's house, 28 for I have
five brothers. Let him warn them, so that
they will not also end up in this place of
torment.'

29 But Abraham replied, 'They have Moses
and the Prophets; let your brothers listen
to them.'

30 'No, father Abraham,' he said, 'but if
someone is sent to them from the dead,
they will repent.'

31 Then Abraham said to him, 'If they do
not listen to Moses and the Prophets, they
will not be persuaded even if someone
rises from the dead.'"

- **LK 16:15 [HEART]** People can look good to others, but God knows the heart.
- **LK 16:19 [NOTABLE]** The only parable where Jesus names a character (Lazarus); vivid picture of postmortem reversal of fortunes between the neglectful rich and the suffering poor
- **LK 16:19 [NOTE]** THE RICH MAN AND LAZARUS. See What Happens When You Die?

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not cause others to stumble, forgive again and again, and faith as small as a mustard seed can move a tree. Ten lepers are healed, but only one comes back to say thank you, and he is a Samaritan. Jesus says His coming will be sudden, like the days of Noah and Lot.

TEMPTATIONS AND TRESPASSES // MATTHEW 18:6–9; MARK 9:42–48

1 Jesus said to His disciples, "It is in-
evitable that stumbling blocks will come,
but woe to the one through whom they
come! 2 It would be better for him to have
a millstone hung around his neck and to
be thrown into the sea than to cause one
of these little ones to stumble.

3 Watch yourselves. If your brother sins,
rebuke him; and if he repents, forgive him.
4 Even if he sins against you seven times
in a day, and seven times returns to say, 'I
repent,' you must forgive him."

THE POWER OF FAITH // MATTHEW 17:19–20

5 The apostles said to the Lord, "Increase
our faith!"

6 And the Lord answered, "If you have
faith the size of a mustard seed, you can
say to this mulberry tree, 'Be uprooted
and planted in the sea,' and it will obey
you.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

7 Which of you whose servant comes in
from plowing or shepherding in the field
will say to him, 'Come at once and sit
down to eat'? 8 Instead, won't he tell him,
'Prepare my meal and dress yourself to
serve me while I eat and drink, and after-
ward you may eat and drink'? 9 Does he
thank the servant because he did what he
was told? 10 So you also, when you have
done everything commanded of you,
should say, 'We are unworthy servants;
we have only done our duty.'"

THE TEN LEPERS // 2 KINGS 5:1–14

11 While Jesus was on His way to
Jerusalem, He was passing between
Samaria and Galilee. 12 As He entered one
of the villages, He was met by ten lepers.
They stood at a distance 13 and raised their
voices, shouting, "Jesus, Master, have
mercy on us!"

14 When Jesus saw them, He said, "Go,
show yourselves to the priests." And as
they were on their way, they were
cleansed.

15 When one of them saw that he was
healed, he came back, praising God in a
loud voice. 16 He fell facedown at Jesus'
feet in thanksgiving to Him—and he was a
Samaritan.

17 "Were not all ten cleansed?" Jesus
asked. "Where then are the other nine? 18
Was no one found except this foreigner to
return and give glory to God?"

19 Then Jesus said to him, "Rise and go;
your faith has made you well!"

THE COMING OF THE KINGDOM // GENESIS 19:24–29

20 When asked by the Pharisees when the
kingdom of God would come, Jesus
replied, "The kingdom of God will not
come with observable signs. 21 Nor will
people say, 'Look, here it is,' or 'There it
is.' For you see, the kingdom of God is in
your midst."

22 Then He said to the disciples, "The time
is coming when you will long to see one
of the days of the Son of Man, but you will
not see it. 23 People will tell you, 'Look,
there He is!' or 'Look, here He is!' Do not
go out or chase after them. 24 For just as
the lightning flashes and lights up the sky
from one end to the other, so will be the
Son of Man in His day. 25 But first He must
suffer many things and be rejected by this
generation.

26 Just as it was in the days of Noah, so
also will it be in the days of the Son of
Man: 27 People were eating and drinking,
marrying and being given in marriage, up
to the day Noah entered the ark. Then the
flood came and destroyed them all.

28 It was the same in the days of Lot: Peo-
ple were eating and drinking, buying and
selling, planting and building. 29 But on the
day Lot left Sodom, fire and sulfur rained
down from heaven and destroyed them
all.

30 It will be just like that on the day the Son
of Man is revealed. 31 On that day, let no
one on the housetop come down to re-
trieve his possessions. Likewise, let no
one in the field return for anything he has
left behind. 32 Remember Lot's wife! 33
Whoever tries to save his life will lose it,
but whoever loses his life will preserve it.
34 I tell you, on that night two people will
be in one bed: one will be taken and the
other left. 35 Two women will be grinding
grain together: one will be taken and the
other left." 36 [Two men will be in the field.
One will be taken and the other left.]

37 "Where, Lord?" they asked.

Jesus answered, "Wherever there is a
carcass, there the vultures will gather."

- **LK 17:11 [MIRACLE]** Ten lepers healed; one Samaritan returned to give thanks
- **LK 17:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 14:2-3 p.194
- **LK 17:25 [PROPHECY]** But first He must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation → Fulfilled in His rejection and crucifixion
- **LK 17:34 [PROPHECY]** Two men will be in the field: one will be taken and the other left. Two women will be grinding at the mill: one will be taken and the other left → STILL TO COME

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

A widow wears down an unjust judge, so keep praying. A proud Pharisee and a humble tax collector pray, and the wrong one goes home forgiven. Jesus blesses the children. A rich ruler walks away sad, and a blind man by the road gets his sight back because he would not stop yelling.

THE PARABLE OF THE PERSISTENT WIDOW

1 Then Jesus told them a parable about
their need to pray at all times and not lose
heart: 2 "In a certain town there was a
judge who neither feared God nor re-
spected men. 3 And there was a widow in
that town who kept appealing to him,
'Give me justice against my adversary.'
4 For a while he refused, but later he said
to himself, 'Though I neither fear God nor
respect men, 5 yet because this widow
keeps pestering me, I will give her justice.
Otherwise, she will wear me out with her
perpetual requests.'"
6 And the Lord said, "Listen to the words
of the unjust judge. 7 Will not God bring
about justice for His elect who cry out to
Him day and night? Will He delay in help-
ing them? 8 I tell you, He will promptly
carry out justice on their behalf. Never-
theless, when the Son of Man comes, will
He find faith on earth?"

THE PHARISEE AND THE TAX COLLECTOR

9 To some who trusted in their own right-
eousness and viewed others with con-
tempt, He also told this parable: 10 "Two
men went up to the temple to pray. One
was a Pharisee and the other a tax collec-
tor. 11 The Pharisee stood by himself and
prayed, 'God, I thank You that I am not like
other men—swindlers, evildoers,
adulterers—or even like this tax collector.
12 I fast twice a week and pay tithes of all
that I acquire.'
13 But the tax collector stood at a distance,
unwilling even to lift up his eyes to
heaven. Instead, he beat his breast and
said, 'God, have mercy on me, a sinner!' 14
I tell you, this man, rather than the Phar-
isee, went home justified. For everyone
who exalts himself will be humbled, but
the one who humbles himself will be ex-
alted."

JESUS BLESSES THE CHILDREN // MATTHEW 19:13–15; MARK 10:13–16

15 Now people were even bringing their
babies to Jesus for Him to place His
hands on them. And when the disciples
saw this, they rebuked those who brought
them.
16 But Jesus called the children to Him and
said, "Let the little children come to Me,
and do not hinder them! For the kingdom
of God belongs to such as these. 17 Truly I
tell you, anyone who does not receive the
kingdom of God like a little child will never
enter it."

THE RICH YOUNG RULER // MATTHEW 19:16–30; MARK 10:17–31

18 Then a certain ruler asked Him, "Good
Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal
life?"
19 "Why do you call Me good?" Jesus
replied. "No one is good except God
alone. 20 You know the commandments:
*'Do not commit adultery, do not murder, do
not steal, do not bear false witness, honor your
father and mother.'"*
21 "All these I have kept from my youth," he
said.
22 On hearing this, Jesus told him, "You
still lack one thing: Sell everything you
own and give to the poor, and you will
have treasure in heaven. Then come, fol-
low Me."
23 But when the ruler heard this, he be-
came very sad, because he was ex-
tremely wealthy.
24 Seeing the man's sadness, Jesus said,
"How hard it is for the rich to enter the
kingdom of God! 25 Indeed, it is easier for
a camel to pass through the eye of a nee-
dle than for a rich man to enter the king-
dom of God."
26 Those who heard this asked, "Who then
can be saved?"

LK 18:18 [NOTABLE] Luke's parallel — closes with the crucial reminder that salvation of the rich is possible with God, though impossible by human effort
LK 18:20 [QUOTES] Direct ← EX 20:12-16 p.148

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

27 But Jesus said, "What is impossible with man is possible with God."

28 "Look," said Peter, "we have left all we had to follow You."

29 "Truly I tell you," Jesus replied, "no one who has left home or wife or brothers or parents or children for the sake of the kingdom of God 30 will fail to receive many times more in this age—and in the age to come, eternal life."

THE THIRD PREDICTION OF THE PASSION // MATTHEW 20:17–19; MARK 10:32–34

31 Then Jesus took the Twelve aside and said to them, "Look, we are going up to Jerusalem, and everything the prophets have written about the Son of Man will be fulfilled. 32 He will be delivered over to the Gentiles and will be mocked and insulted and spit upon. 33 They will flog Him and kill Him, and on the third day He will rise again."

34 But the disciples did not understand any of these things. The meaning was hidden from them, and they did not comprehend what He was saying.

JESUS HEALS A BLIND BEGGAR // MATTHEW 20:29–34; MARK 10:46–52

35 As Jesus drew near to Jericho, a blind man was sitting beside the road, begging. 36 When he heard the crowd going by, he asked what was happening.

37 "Jesus of Nazareth is passing by," they told him.

38 So he called out, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!"

39 Those who led the way admonished him to be silent, but he cried out all the louder, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

40 Jesus stopped and directed that the man be brought to Him. When he had come near, Jesus asked him, 41 "What do you want Me to do for you?"

"Lord," he said, "let me see again."

42 "Receive your sight!" Jesus replied. "Your faith has healed you." 43 Immediately he received his sight and followed Jesus, glorifying God. And all the people, when they saw it, gave praise to God.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Zacchaeus is short, rich and hated, so he climbs a tree to see Jesus. Jesus invites Himself over, and Zacchaeus pays everyone back four times over. Jesus rides into Jerusalem on a colt, weeps over the city, and clears the money changers out of the temple.

JESUS AND ZACCHAEUS // NUMBERS 5:5–10

1 Then Jesus entered Jericho and was passing through. 2 And there was a man named Zacchaeus, a chief tax collector, who was very wealthy. 3 He was trying to see who Jesus was, but could not see over the crowd because he was small in stature. 4 So he ran on ahead and climbed a sycamore tree to see Him, since Jesus was about to pass that way.

5 When Jesus came to that place, He looked up and said, "Zacchaeus, hurry down, for I must stay at your house today."

6 So Zacchaeus hurried down and welcomed Him joyfully. 7 And all who saw this began to grumble, saying, "He has gone to be the guest of a sinful man!"

8 But Zacchaeus stood up and said to the Lord, "Look, Lord, half of my possessions I give to the poor, and if I have cheated anyone, I will repay it fourfold."

9 Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because this man too is a son of Abraham. 10 For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost."

THE PARABLE OF THE TEN POUNDS // MATTHEW 25:14–30

11 While the people were listening to this, Jesus proceeded to tell them a parable, because He was near Jerusalem and they thought the kingdom of God would appear imminently. 12 So He said, "A man of noble

LK 18:31 [PROPHECY] The Son of Man will be betrayed to chief priests and scribes, condemned to death, delivered to Gentiles to mock, scourge, and crucify Him; and on the third day He will rise again → Fulfilled precisely

LK 18:31 [FULFILLS] The Servant shockingly disfigured by abuse ← IS 52:14 p.1127

LK 18:35 [MIRACLE] A blind beggar near Jericho healed

LK 19:10 [FULFILLS] I Myself will search for My sheep and seek them out; I will feed them in good pasture ← EZK 34:11-16 p.1297

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

birth went to a distant country to lay claim to his kingship and then return. 13 Beforehand, he called ten of his servants and gave them ten pounds. 'Conduct business with this until I return,' he said.

14 But his subjects hated him and sent a delegation after him to say, 'We do not want this man to rule over us.'

15 When he returned from procuring his kingship, he summoned the servants to whom he had given the money, to find out what each one had earned.

16 The first servant came forward and said, 'Master, your pound has produced ten more pounds.'

17 His master replied, 'Well done, good servant! Because you have been faithful in a very small matter, you shall have authority over ten cities.'

18 The second servant came and said, 'Master, your pound has made five pounds.'

19 And to this one he said, 'You shall have authority over five cities.'

20 Then another servant came and said, 'Master, here is your pound, which I have laid away in a piece of cloth. 21 For I was afraid of you, because you are a harsh man. You withdraw what you did not deposit and reap what you did not sow.'

22 His master replied, 'You wicked servant, I will judge you by your own words. So you knew that I am a harsh man, withdrawing what I did not deposit and reaping what I did not sow? 23 Why then did you not deposit my money in the bank, and upon my return I could have collected it with interest?'

24 Then he told those standing by, 'Take the pound from him and give it to the one who has ten pounds.'

25 'Master,' they said, 'he already has ten!'

26 He replied, 'I tell you that everyone who has will be given more; but the one who does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him. 27 And these enemies of mine who were unwilling for me to rule over them, bring them here and slay them in front of me.'"

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY // ZECHARIAH 9:9–13; MATTHEW 21:1–11; MARK 11:1–11; JOHN 12:12–19

28 After Jesus had said this, He went on ahead, going up to Jerusalem.

29 As He approached Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives, He sent out two of His disciples, 30 saying, "Go into the village ahead of you, and as you enter it, you will find a colt tied there, on which no one has ever sat. Untie it and bring it here. 31 If anyone asks, 'Why are you untying it?' tell him, 'The Lord needs it.'"

32 So those who were sent went out and found it just as Jesus had told them. 33 As they were untying the colt, its owners asked, "Why are you untying the colt?"

34 "The Lord needs it," they answered. 35 Then they led the colt to Jesus, threw their cloaks over it, and put Jesus on it.

36 As He rode along, the people spread their cloaks on the road. 37 And as He approached the descent from the Mount of Olives, the whole multitude of disciples began to praise God joyfully in a loud voice for all the miracles they had seen:

38 *"Blessed is the King who comes in the name of the Lord!"*

"Peace in heaven and glory in the highest!"

39 But some of the Pharisees in the crowd said to Him, "Teacher, rebuke Your disciples!"

40 "I tell you," He answered, "if they remain silent, the very stones will cry out."

JESUS WEEPS OVER JERUSALEM // ISAIAH 29:1–16

41 As Jesus approached Jerusalem and saw the city, He wept over it 42 and said,

- **LK 19:30 [PROPHECY]** Go into the village opposite you, and immediately you will find a donkey tied, and a colt with her. Loose them and bring them to Me → Fulfilled immediately when disciples went and found exactly as He said
- **LK 19:38 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:26 p.964
- **LK 19:41 [PROPHECY]** Your enemies will build an embankment around you, surround you, and close you in on every side, and level you to the ground… because you did not know the time of your visitation → HISTORY: The Roman general Titus built a wall all the way around Jerusalem in AD 70, then tore the city down. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War 5.12 and 7.1.
- **LK 19:41 [FULFILLS]** A man of sorrows acquainted with grief ← IS 53:3c p.1127
- **LK 19:41 [FULFILLS]** The Shepherd sent to the doomed flock would be detested and rejected, and God would break His staff of favor with the people ← ZECH 11:4-11 · MEDIUM p.1501

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

"If only you had known on this day what would bring you peace! But now it is hidden from your eyes. 43 For the days will come upon you when your enemies will barricade you and surround you and hem you in on every side. 44 They will level you to the ground—you and the children within your walls. They will not leave one stone on another, because you did not recognize the time of your visitation from God."

JESUS CLEANSES THE TEMPLE // MATTHEW 21:12–17; MARK 11:15–19; JOHN 2:12–25

45 Then Jesus entered the temple courts and began to drive out those who were selling there. 46 He declared to them, "It is written: *'My house will be a house of prayer.'* But you have made it *'a den of robbers.'"*

47 Jesus was teaching at the temple every day, but the chief priests, scribes, and leaders of the people were intent on killing Him. 48 Yet they could not find a way to do so, because all the people hung on His words.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

The leaders ask who gave Jesus His authority, and He answers with a question they are afraid to answer. The parable of the tenants hits too close to home. They try to trap Him on taxes and the resurrection, and He wins both rounds.

JESUS' AUTHORITY CHALLENGED // MATTHEW 21:23–27; MARK 11:27–33

1 One day as Jesus was teaching the people in the temple courts and proclaiming the gospel, the chief priests and scribes, together with the elders, came up to Him. 2 "Tell us," they said, "by what authority are You doing these things, and who gave You this authority?"

3 "I will also ask you a question," Jesus replied. "Tell Me: 4 John's baptism—was it from heaven, or from men?"

5 They deliberated among themselves and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' He will ask, 'Why did you not believe him?' 6 But if we say, 'From men,' all the people will stone us, for they are convinced that John was a prophet."

7 So they answered that they did not know where it was from.

8 And Jesus replied, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I am doing these things."

THE PARABLE OF THE WICKED TENANTS // MATTHEW 21:33–46; MARK 12:1–12

9 Then He proceeded to tell the people this parable: "A man planted a vineyard, rented it out to some tenants, and went away for a long time. 10 At harvest time, he sent a servant to the tenants to collect his share of the fruit of the vineyard. But the tenants beat the servant and sent him away empty-handed.

11 So he sent another servant, but they beat him and treated him shamefully, sending him away empty-handed.

12 Then he sent a third, but they wounded him and threw him out.

13 'What shall I do?' asked the owner of the vineyard. 'I will send my beloved son. Perhaps they will respect him.'

14 But when the tenants saw the son, they discussed it among themselves and said, 'This is the heir. Let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours.' 15 So they threw him out of the vineyard and killed him.

What then will the owner of the vineyard do to them? 16 He will come and kill those tenants and give the vineyard to others."

And when the people heard this, they said, "May such a thing never happen!"

17 But Jesus looked directly at them and said, "Then what is the meaning of that which is written:

'The stone the builders rejected
has become the cornerstone'?

18 Everyone who falls on this stone will be broken to pieces, but he on whom it falls will be crushed."

- **LK 19:46 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 56:7; JER 7:11 p.1131
- **LK 19:47 [FULFILLS]** The glory of this latter temple shall be greater than the former ← HAG 2:9 · MEDIUM p.1481
- **LK 20:13 [PROPHECY]** The owner's son would be seized, thrown out, and killed by the tenants → MT 27:1-2; HEB 13:12 · MEDIUM p.1597
- **LK 20:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:22 p.964

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW JESUS SPEAKING

PAYING TAXES TO CAESAR // MATTHEW 22:15–22; MARK 12:13–17

19 When the scribes and chief priests realized that Jesus had spoken this parable against them, they sought to arrest Him that very hour. But they were afraid of the people.

20 So they watched Him closely and sent spies who pretended to be sincere. They were hoping to catch Him in His words in order to hand Him over to the rule and authority of the governor. 21 "Teacher," they inquired, "we know that You speak and teach correctly. You show no partiality but teach the way of God in accordance with the truth. 22 Is it lawful for us to pay taxes to Caesar or not?"

23 But Jesus saw through their duplicity and said to them, 24 "Show Me a Roman coin. Whose image and inscription are on it?"

"Caesar's," they answered.

25 So Jesus told them, "Give to Caesar what is Caesar's, and to God what is God's."

26 And they were unable to trap Him in His words before the people. And amazed at His answer, they fell silent.

THE SADDUCEES AND THE RESURRECTION // MATTHEW 22:23–33; MARK 12:18–27

27 Then some of the Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to question Him. 28 *"Teacher,"* they said, *"Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies and leaves a wife but no children, the man is to marry his brother's widow and raise up offspring for him.* 29 Now there were seven brothers. The first one married a wife but died childless. 30 Then the second 31 and the third married the widow, and in the same way all seven died, leaving no children. 32 And last of all, the woman died. 33 So then, in the resurrection, whose wife will she be? For all seven were married to her."

34 Jesus answered, "The sons of this age marry and are given in marriage. 35 But those who are considered worthy to share in the age to come and in the resurrection from the dead will neither marry nor be given in marriage. 36 In fact, they can no longer die, because they are like the angels. And since they are sons of the resurrection, they are sons of God.

37 Even Moses demonstrates that the dead are raised, in the passage about the burning bush. For he calls the Lord *'the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.'* 38 He is not the God of the dead, but of the living, for to Him all are alive."

39 Some of the scribes answered, "Teacher, You have spoken well!" 40 And they did not dare to question Him any further.

WHOSE SON IS THE CHRIST? // MATTHEW 22:41–46; MARK 12:35–37

41 Then Jesus declared, "How can it be said that the Christ is the Son of David? 42 For David himself says in the book of Psalms:

'The Lord said to my Lord,
"Sit at My right hand
43 *until I make Your enemies*
a footstool for Your feet."'

44 Thus David calls Him 'Lord.' So how can He be David's son?"

BEWARE OF THE SCRIBES // MARK 12:38–40

45 In the hearing of all the people, Jesus said to His disciples, 46 "Beware of the scribes. They like to walk around in long robes, and they love the greetings in the marketplaces, the chief seats in the synagogues, and the places of honor at banquets. 47 They defraud widows of their houses, and for a show make lengthy prayers. These men will receive greater condemnation."

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

A poor widow drops in two tiny coins, and Jesus says she gave more than all the rich people. Then He predicts the temple will be torn down and Jerusalem surrounded by armies. Signs in the sky, and the Son of Man coming in a cloud. Stay awake and pray.

LK 20:28 [QUOTES] Quotes ← DT 25:5 p.316

LK 20:37 [QUOTES] Direct ← EX 3:6 p.124
LK 20:42 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 110:1 p.960

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · JESUS SPEAKING

THE POOR WIDOW'S OFFERING // MARK 12:41–44

1 Then Jesus looked up and saw the rich
putting their gifts into the treasury, 2 and
He saw a poor widow put in two small
copper coins.

3 "Truly I tell you," He said, "this poor
widow has put in more than all the others.
4 For they all contributed out of their sur-
plus, but she out of her poverty has put in
all she had to live on."

TEMPLE DESTRUCTION AND OTHER SIGNS //
MATTHEW 24:1–8; MARK 13:1–8

5 As some of the disciples were remarking
how the temple was adorned with beauti-
ful stones and consecrated gifts, Jesus
said, 6 "As for what you see here, the time
will come when not one stone will be left
on another; every one will be thrown
down."

7 "Teacher," they asked, "when will these
things happen? And what will be the sign
that they are about to take place?"

8 Jesus answered, "See to it that you are
not deceived. For many will come in My
name, claiming, 'I am He,' and, 'The time
is near.' Do not follow them. 9 When you
hear of wars and rebellions, do not be
alarmed. These things must happen first,
but the end is not imminent."

WITNESSING TO ALL NATIONS // MATTHEW 24:9–
14; MARK 13:9–13

10 Then He told them, "Nation will rise
against nation, and kingdom against king-
dom. 11 There will be great earthquakes,
famines, and pestilences in various
places, along with fearful sights and great
signs from heaven.

12 But before all this, they will seize you
and persecute you. On account of My
name they will deliver you to the syna-
gogues and prisons, and they will bring
you before kings and governors. 13 This
will be your opportunity to serve as wit-
nesses. 14 So make up your mind not to
worry beforehand how to defend your-
selves. 15 For I will give you speech and
wisdom that none of your adversaries will
be able to resist or contradict.

16 You will be betrayed even by parents
and brothers and relatives and friends,
and some of you will be put to death. 17
And you will be hated by everyone be-
cause of My name. 18 Yet not even a hair
of your head will perish. 19 By your patient
endurance you will gain your souls.

THE DESTRUCTION OF JERUSALEM // MATTHEW
24:15–25; MARK 13:14–23

20 But when you see Jerusalem sur-
rounded by armies, you will know that her
desolation is near. 21 Then let those who
are in Judea flee to the mountains, let
those in the city get out, and let those in
the country stay out of the city. 22 For
these are the days of vengeance, to fulfill
all that is written.

23 How miserable those days will be for
pregnant and nursing mothers! For there
will be great distress upon the land and
wrath against this people. 24 They will fall
by the edge of the sword and be led cap-
tive into all the nations. And Jerusalem will
be trodden down by the Gentiles, until the
times of the Gentiles are fulfilled.

THE RETURN OF THE SON OF MAN // MATTHEW
24:26–31; MARK 13:24–27

25 There will be signs in the sun and moon
and stars, and on the earth dismay among
the nations, bewildered by the roaring of
the sea and the surging of the waves. 26

- **LK 21:6 [PROPHECY]** Not one stone shall be left here upon another, that shall not be thrown down (regarding the Temple) → HISTORY: Rome burned the temple in AD 70 and tore the city down. Recorded by Josephus. Fallen Temple Mount stones lie below the Western Wall.
- **LK 21:8 [PROPHECY]** Many would come claiming to be the Christ and deceive many → HISTORY: Theudas about AD 45 and the Egyptian in the AD 50s led crowds astray. Recorded by Josephus. Bar Kokhba was hailed as Messiah in AD 132. · MEDIUM
- **LK 21:9 [PROPHECY]** Wars, nations rising against nations, famines, and earthquakes would be the beginning of birth pains → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **LK 21:20 [PROPHECY]** When you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then know that its desolation is near... they will fall by the edge of the sword and be led away captive into all nations; and Jerusalem will be trampled by Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled → HISTORY: Rome took Jerusalem in AD 70 and carried 97,000 captives across the empire. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War 6.9.
- **LK 21:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 9:27 p.1347
- **LK 21:24 [PROPHECY]** Jerusalem will be trampled by Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled → HISTORY: Many Christians see this in 1967, when Israel took the Old City of Jerusalem. Others read it differently. · MEDIUM
- **LK 21:25 [PROPHECY]** Immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun will be darkened, and the moon will not give its light; the stars will fall from heaven... they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | THE HEART | DEMONIC | JESUS SPEAKING

Men will faint from fear and anxiety over what is coming upon the earth, for the powers of the heavens will be shaken. 27 At that time they will see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. 28 When these things begin to happen, stand up and lift up your heads, because your redemption is drawing near."

THE LESSON OF THE FIG TREE // MATTHEW 24:32–35; MARK 13:28–31

29 Then Jesus told them a parable: "Look at the fig tree and all the trees. 30 When they sprout leaves, you can see for yourselves and know that summer is near. 31 So also, when you see these things happening, know that the kingdom of God is near. 32 Truly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things have happened. 33 Heaven and earth will pass away, but My words will never pass away.

BE WATCHFUL FOR THE DAY

34 But watch yourselves, or your hearts will be weighed down by dissipation, drunkenness, and the worries of life—and that day will spring upon you suddenly like a snare. 35 For it will come upon all who dwell on the face of all the earth. 36 So keep watch at all times, and pray that you may have the strength to escape all that is about to happen and to stand before the Son of Man."

37 Every day Jesus taught at the temple, but every evening He went out to spend the night on the Mount of Olives. 38 And early in the morning all the people would come to hear Him at the temple.

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

Judas makes a deal, and Jesus shares the Passover with His friends, giving them the bread and the cup. The disciples argue about who is greatest. Jesus is arrested with a kiss, and Peter denies Him three times. Then the rooster crows and Jesus looks right at him.

THE PLOT TO KILL JESUS // MATTHEW 26:1–5; MARK 14:1–2; JOHN 11:45–57

1 Now the Feast of Unleavened Bread, called the Passover, was approaching, 2 and the chief priests and scribes were looking for a way to put Jesus to death, for they feared the people.

JUDAS AGREES TO BETRAY JESUS // MATTHEW 26:14–16; MARK 14:10–11

3 Then Satan entered Judas Iscariot, who was one of the Twelve. 4 And Judas went to discuss with the chief priests and temple officers how he might betray Jesus to them. 5 They were delighted and agreed to give him money. 6 Judas consented, and began to look for an opportunity to betray Jesus to them in the absence of a crowd.

PREPARING THE PASSOVER // MATTHEW 26:17–19; MARK 14:12–16

7 Then came the day of Unleavened Bread on which the Passover lamb was to be sacrificed. 8 Jesus sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and make preparations for us to eat the Passover."

9 "Where do You want us to prepare it?" they asked.

10 He answered, "When you enter the city, a man carrying a jug of water will meet you. Follow him to the house he enters, 11 and say to the owner of that house, 'The Teacher asks: Where is the guest room, where I may eat the Passover with My disciples?' 12 And he will show you a large upper room, already furnished. Make preparations there."

13 So they went and found it just as Jesus had told them. And they prepared the Passover.

THE LAST SUPPER // MATTHEW 26:20–30; MARK 14:17–26; 1 CORINTHIANS 11:17–34

14 When the hour had come, Jesus reclined at the table with His apostles. 15 And He said to them, "I have eagerly desired to eat this Passover with you before My suffering. 16 For I tell you that I will not eat

power and great glory. And He will send His angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together His elect from the four winds → STILL TO COME

■ **LK 21:27 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:13 p.1341

■ **LK 21:34 [HEART]** Watch yourselves so your hearts are not weighed down by partying, drunkenness and worry.

■ **LK 22:2 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)

■ **LK 22:3 [DEMONIC]** Satan enters Judas

■ **LK 22:10 [PROPHECY]** Go into the city to a certain man, and say to him, 'The Teacher says, My time is at hand; I will keep the Passover at your house.' A man carrying a pitcher of water will meet you → Fulfilled

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW JESUS SPEAKING

it again until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God."

17 After taking the cup, He gave thanks and said, "Take this and divide it among yourselves. 18 For I tell you that I will not drink of the fruit of the vine from now on until the kingdom of God comes."

19 And He took the bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is My body, given for you; do this in remembrance of Me."

20 In the same way, after supper He took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in My blood, which is poured out for you.

21 Look! The hand of My betrayer is with Mine on the table. 22 Indeed, the Son of Man will go as it has been determined, but woe to that man who betrays Him."

23 Then they began to question among themselves which of them was going to do this.

WHO IS THE GREATEST?

24 A dispute also arose among the disciples as to which of them should be considered the greatest. 25 So Jesus declared, "The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them, and those in authority over them call themselves benefactors. 26 But you shall not be like them. Instead, the greatest among you should be like the youngest, and the one who leads like the one who serves. 27 For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines? But I am among you as one who serves.

28 You are the ones who have stood by Me in My trials. 29 And I bestow on you a kingdom, just as My Father has bestowed one on Me, 30 so that you may eat and drink at My table in My kingdom and sit on thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

JESUS PREDICTS PETER'S DENIAL // MATTHEW 26:31–35; MARK 14:27–31; JOHN 13:36–38

31 Simon, Simon, Satan has asked to sift all of you like wheat. 32 But I have prayed for you, Simon, that your faith will not fail. And when you have turned back, strengthen your brothers."

33 "Lord," said Peter, "I am ready to go with You even to prison and to death."

34 But Jesus replied, "I tell you, Peter, the rooster will not crow today until you have denied three times that you know Me."

35 Then Jesus asked them, "When I sent you out without purse or bag or sandals, did you lack anything?"

"Nothing," they answered.

36 "Now, however," He told them, "the one with a purse should take it, and likewise a bag; and the one without a sword should sell his cloak and buy one. 37 For I tell you that this Scripture must be fulfilled in Me: *'And He was numbered with the transgressors.'* For what is written about Me is reaching its fulfillment."

38 So they said, "Look, Lord, here are two swords."

"That is enough," He answered.

JESUS PRAYS ON THE MOUNT OF OLIVES // MATTHEW 26:36–46; MARK 14:32–42

39 Jesus went out as usual to the Mount of Olives, and the disciples followed Him. 40 When He came to the place, He told them,

- **LK 22:15 [PROPHECY]** I have desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer; I will not eat of it until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God → Fulfilled at His crucifixion later that same week
- **LK 22:15 [FULFILLS]** Exodus deliverance extended to messianic deliverance ← DT 16:3 p.305
- **LK 22:20 [FULFILLS]** God would make a new covenant, write His law on hearts, and remember sins no more ← JER 31:31-34 p.1192
- **LK 22:20 [FULFILLS]** Messenger of the New Covenant ← MAL 3:1c · MEDIUM p.1514
- **LK 22:21 [PROPHECY]** One of you will betray Me → MT 26:47-50 p.1594
- **LK 22:22 [PROPHECY]** Truly, the Son of Man goes as it has been determined, but woe to that man by whom He is betrayed → Fulfilled by Judas that night; Judas's woe fulfilled in his subsequent suicide (Matt 27:5) p.1597
- **LK 22:31 [PROPHECY]** Simon, Simon, Satan has asked for you, that he may sift you as wheat. But I have prayed for you, that your faith should not fail; and when you have returned to Me, strengthen your brethren → Fulfilled in Peter's denial (LK 22:54-62), restoration (JN 21:15-19), and leadership from Acts onward p.1688
- **LK 22:34 [PROPHECY]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times → MT 26:70; MT 26:72; MT 26:74-75; MK 14:68; MK 14:70-72; LK 22:57-58; LK 22:60-62; JN 18:17; JN 18:25-27 p.1596
- **LK 22:37 [PROPHECY]** This which is written must yet be accomplished in Me: 'And He was numbered with the transgressors' (Isa 53:12) → Fulfilled at the crucifixion
- **LK 22:37 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:12 p.1128

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

"Pray that you will not enter into temptation."

41 And He withdrew about a stone's throw beyond them, where He knelt down and prayed, 42 "Father, if You are willing, take this cup from Me. Yet not My will, but Yours be done."

43 [Then an angel from heaven appeared to Him and strengthened Him. 44 And in His anguish, He prayed more earnestly, and His sweat became like drops of blood falling to the ground.]

45 When Jesus rose from prayer and returned to the disciples, He found them asleep, exhausted from sorrow. 46 "Why are you sleeping?" He asked. "Get up and pray so that you will not enter into temptation."

THE BETRAYAL OF JESUS // MATTHEW 26:47–56; MARK 14:43–52; JOHN 18:1–14

47 While He was still speaking, a crowd arrived, led by the man called Judas, one of the Twelve. He approached Jesus to kiss Him. 48 But Jesus asked him, "Judas, are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss?"

49 Those around Jesus saw what was about to happen and said, "Lord, should we strike with our swords?" 50 And one of them struck the servant of the high priest, cutting off his right ear.

51 But Jesus answered, "No more of this!" And He touched the man's ear and healed him.

52 Then Jesus said to the chief priests, temple officers, and elders who had come for Him, "Have you come out with swords and clubs as you would against an outlaw? 53 Every day I was with you in the temple courts, and you did not lay a hand on Me. But this hour belongs to you and to the power of darkness."

PETER DENIES JESUS // MATTHEW 26:69–75; MARK 14:66–72; JOHN 18:15–18

54 Then they seized Jesus, led Him away, and took Him into the house of the high priest. And Peter followed at a distance.

55 When those present had kindled a fire in the middle of the courtyard and sat down together, Peter sat down among them. 56 A servant girl saw him seated in the firelight and looked intently at him. "This man also was with Him," she said.

57 But Peter denied it. "Woman, I do not know Him," he said.

58 A short time later, someone else saw him and said, "You also are one of them."

But Peter said, "Man, I am not."

59 About an hour later, another man insisted, "Certainly this man was with Him, for he too is a Galilean."

60 "Man, I do not know what you are talking about," Peter replied.

And immediately, while he was still speaking, the rooster crowed. 61 And the Lord turned and looked at Peter.

Then Peter remembered the word that the Lord had spoken to him: "Before the rooster crows today, you will deny Me three times." 62 And he went outside and wept bitterly.

THE SOLDIERS MOCK JESUS // ISAIAH 50:4–11; MATTHEW 27:27–31; MARK 15:16–20; JOHN 19:1–15

63 The men who were holding Jesus began to mock Him and beat Him. 64 They blindfolded Him and kept demanding, "Prophesy! Who hit You?" 65 And they said many other blasphemous things against Him.

- **LK 22:43 [MIRACLE]** An angel strengthens Jesus in Gethsemane
- **LK 22:43 [TEXT]** Verses 43 and 44 are in brackets because some of the oldest manuscripts, like Papyrus 75 and Codex Vaticanus, do not have them. Other very old copies do, and Justin Martyr and Irenaeus knew about the bloody sweat in the 100s. Scholars are split on whether Luke wrote them.
- **LK 22:50 [MIRACLE]** Jesus heals the servant's ear
- **LK 22:57 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **LK 22:58 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **LK 22:60 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **LK 22:61 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **LK 22:62 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
- **LK 22:63 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)

JESUS SPEAKING

JESUS BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN // MATTHEW 26:57–68; MARK 14:53–65; JOHN 18:19–24

66 At daybreak the council of the elders of
the people, both the chief priests and
scribes, met together. They led Jesus into
their Sanhedrin and said, 67 "If You are the
Christ, tell us."

Jesus answered, "If I tell you, you will not
believe. 68 And if I ask you a question, you
will not answer. 69 But from now on the
Son of Man will be seated at the right
hand of the power of God."

70 So they all asked, "Are You then the Son
of God?"

He replied, "You say that I am."

71 "Why do we need any more testimony?"
they declared. "We have heard it for our-
selves from His own lips."

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Pilate and Herod find nothing wrong with Jesus, but the crowd picks Barabbas. On the cross Jesus forgives His killers and promises a dying thief paradise. The sky goes dark and the curtain tears.

JESUS BEFORE PILATE // MATTHEW 27:11–14; JOHN 18:28–40

1 Then the whole council rose and led Je-
sus away to Pilate. 2 And they began to
accuse Him, saying, "We found this man
subverting our nation, forbidding payment
of taxes to Caesar, and proclaiming Him-
self to be Christ, a King."

3 So Pilate asked Him, "Are You the King of
the Jews?"

"You have said so," Jesus replied.

4 Then Pilate said to the chief priests and
the crowds, "I find no basis for a charge
against this man."

5 But they kept insisting, "He stirs up the
people all over Judea with His teaching.
He began in Galilee and has come all the
way here."

JESUS BEFORE HEROD

6 When Pilate heard this, he asked if the
man was a Galilean. 7 And learning that
Jesus was under Herod's jurisdiction, he
sent Him to Herod, who himself was in
Jerusalem at that time.

8 When Herod saw Jesus, he was greatly
pleased. He had wanted to see Him for a
long time, because he had heard about
Him and was hoping to see Him perform a
miracle. 9 Herod questioned Jesus at great
length, but He gave no answer.

10 Meanwhile, the chief priests and scribes
stood there, vehemently accusing Him. 11
And even Herod and his soldiers ridiculed
and mocked Him. Dressing Him in a fine
robe, they sent Him back to Pilate.

12 That day Herod and Pilate became
friends; before this time they had been
enemies.

THE CROWD CHOOSES BARABBAS // MATTHEW 27:15–23; MARK 15:6–11

13 Then Pilate called together the chief
priests, the rulers, and the people, 14 and
said to them, "You brought me this man as
one who was inciting the people to rebel-
lion. I have examined Him here in your
presence and found Him not guilty of your
charges against Him. 15 Neither has Herod,
for he sent Him back to us. As you can
see, He has done nothing deserving of
death. 16 Therefore I will punish Him and
release Him." 17 [Now Pilate was obligated
to release to the people one prisoner at
the feast.]

18 But they all cried out in unison: "Away
with this man! Release Barabbas to us!" 19
(Barabbas had been imprisoned for an in-
surrection in the city, and for murder.)

20 Wanting to release Jesus, Pilate ad-
dressed them again, 21 but they kept
shouting, "Crucify Him! Crucify Him!"

22 A third time he said to them, "What evil
has this man done? I have found in Him no
offense worthy of death. So after I punish
Him, I will release Him."

23 But they were insistent, demanding with
loud voices for Jesus to be crucified. And
their clamor prevailed. 24 So Pilate sen-
tenced that their demand be met. 25 As
they had requested, he released the one
imprisoned for insurrection and murder,
and he handed Jesus over to their will.

LK 22:69 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← PS 110:1 p.960

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHETIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

THE CRUCIFIXION // PSALM 22:1–31; MATTHEW 27:32–44; MARK 15:21–32; JOHN 19:16–27

26 As the soldiers led Him away, they seized Simon of Cyrene on his way in from the country, and they put the cross on him to carry behind Jesus.

27 A great number of people followed Him, including women who kept mourning and wailing for Him. 28 But Jesus turned to them and said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, do not weep for Me, but weep for yourselves and for your children. 29 Look, the days are coming when people will say, 'Blessed are the barren women, the wombs that never bore, and breasts that never nursed!' 30 At that time

'they will say to the mountains, *"Fall on us!"*
and to the hills, *"Cover us!"*'

31 For if men do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry?"

32 Two others, who were criminals, were also led away to be executed with Jesus.

33 When they came to the place called The Skull, they crucified Him there, along with the criminals, one on His right and the other on His left.

34 Then Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing." And they divided up His garments by casting lots.

35 The people stood watching, and the rulers sneered at Him, saying, "He saved others; let Him save Himself if He is the Christ of God, the Chosen One."

36 The soldiers also mocked Him and came up to offer Him sour wine. 37 "If You are the King of the Jews," they said, "save Yourself!"

38 Above Him was posted an inscription:

THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS.

39 One of the criminals who hung there heaped abuse on Him. "Are You not the Christ?" he said. "Save Yourself and us!"

40 But the other one rebuked him, saying, "Do you not even fear God, since you are under the same judgment? 41 We are punished justly, for we are receiving what our actions deserve. But this man has done nothing wrong." 42 Then he said, "Jesus, remember me when You come into Your kingdom!"

43 And Jesus said to him, "Truly I tell you, today you will be with Me in Paradise."

THE DEATH OF JESUS // PSALM 31:1–24; MATTHEW 27:45–56; MARK 15:33–41; JOHN 19:28–30

44 It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness came over all the land until the ninth hour. 45 The sun was darkened, and the veil of the temple was torn down the middle.

46 Then Jesus called out in a loud voice, *"Father, into Your hands I commit My Spirit."* And when He had said this, He breathed His last.

47 When the centurion saw what had happened, he gave glory to God, saying, "Surely this was a righteous man." 48 And when all the people who had gathered for this spectacle saw what had happened, they returned home beating their breasts. 49 But all those who knew Jesus, including the women who had followed Him from

- **LK 23:28 [PROPHECY]** Days would come when the daughters of Jerusalem would weep for themselves and their children → HISTORY: During the Roman siege of AD 70, terrible hunger and killing struck the mothers and children of Jerusalem. Recorded by Josephus, Jewish War books 5 and 6.
- **LK 23:30 [FULFILLS]** People would cry to the mountains, Cover us, and to the hills, Fall on us ← HOS 10:8 · MEDIUM p.1368
- **LK 23:34 [FULFILLS]** Stripped and stared at by His persecutors and 2 more ← PS 22:17–18; PS 109:4; IS 53:12e p.897
- **LK 23:34 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 22:18 p.897
- **LK 23:34 [TEXT]** Some of the oldest manuscripts, like Papyrus 75 and Codex Vaticanus, do not have Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing. Many other early copies do, and many scholars think it is a real saying of Jesus either way. Stephen prays the same way in Acts 7:60.
- **LK 23:35 [FULFILLS]** He would be scorned by men and despised by the people ← PS 22:6 · MEDIUM p.897
- **LK 23:35 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **LK 23:36 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 69:21 p.928
- **LK 23:41 [FULFILLS]** Innocent and had done no violence ← IS 53:9b p.1128
- **LK 23:43 [NOTE]** TODAY IN PARADISE. See What Happens When You Die?
- **LK 23:44 [MIRACLE]** The sun is darkened and the temple veil is torn
- **LK 23:44 [FULFILLS]** Heaven darkened at His humiliation ← IS 50:3 · MEDIUM p.1124
- **LK 23:44 [FULFILLS]** God would make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in the daytime ← AMOS 8:9 · MEDIUM p.1399
- **LK 23:46 [FULFILLS]** 'Into Your hands I commit My spirit' ← PS 31:5 p.902
- **LK 23:46 [FULFILLS]** He poured out His soul unto death ← IS 53:12b p.1128

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

Galilee, stood at a distance watching these things.

THE BURIAL OF JESUS // ISAIAH 53:9–12; MATTHEW 27:57–61; MARK 15:42–47; JOHN 19:38–42

50 Now there was a Council member named Joseph, a good and righteous man, 51 who had not consented to their decision or action. He was from the Judean town of Arimathea and was waiting for the kingdom of God. 52 He went to Pilate to ask for the body of Jesus. 53 Then he took it down, wrapped it in a linen cloth, and placed it in a tomb cut into the rock, where no one had yet been laid. 54 It was Preparation Day, and the Sabbath was beginning.

55 The women who had come with Jesus from Galilee followed, and they saw the tomb and how His body was placed. 56 Then they returned to prepare spices and perfumes. And they rested on the Sabbath, according to the commandment.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT HAPPENS WHEN YOU DIE?

Today in Paradise

LUKE 23:43 · 16:19 TO 31 · PHILIPPIANS 1:23 · 2 CORINTHIANS 5:8

WHAT JESUS SAID

To the thief on the cross: Truly I tell you, today you will be with Me in Paradise, 23:43. Earlier He told of a rich man and a beggar named Lazarus. Lazarus died and was carried by angels to Abraham's side; the rich man was in torment in Hades, with a great chasm between them, 16:22 to 26.

WHERE THE COMMA GOES

The oldest Greek copies have almost no punctuation. Almost every Bible reads: I tell you, today you will be with Me in Paradise. The Jehovah's Witnesses' New World Translation reads: I tell you today, You will be with me in Paradise, meaning later, at the resurrection. Best case for the usual reading: Jesus says truly I tell you many times in the Gospels, and never uses I tell you today as a set phrase anywhere else; in Mark 14:30 today belongs with what follows. Best case for the other: the words can be split that way.

STORY OR REAL EVENT?

The rich man and Lazarus is the only parable where a person is named, so some say it is a real event and shows what the afterlife is like. Others say it is a parable using pictures Jews already knew, and its point is riches, mercy and listening to Moses and the prophets, 16:29 to 31. Many say it can teach real things even as a parable.

THE THIEF

The man had no time to be baptized, join a church or do good works. He simply asked, Jesus, remember me, 23:42. Many see him as the clearest picture of being saved by grace through faith.

THE WORDS

Hades is the Greek word for the place of the dead, like Sheol in Hebrew. Paradise is a Persian word for a garden or park; Paul uses it for the third heaven, 2 Corinthians 12:2 to 4.

Between Death and the Resurrection

PHILIPPIANS 1:21 TO 23 · ECCLESIASTES 9:5 · JOHN 11:11 TO 14 · 1 CORINTHIANS 15:51 TO 53

WITH CHRIST RIGHT AWAY

Believers go to be with the Lord the moment they die, and get their new bodies at the resurrection. Paul says to depart and be with Christ is far better, Philippians 1:23, and to be away from the body is to be at home with the Lord, 2 Corinthians 5:8. Souls under the altar speak in Revelation 6:9 to 10. Most Protestants hold this view.

SOUL SLEEP

The dead are not aware of anything until the resurrection. The dead know nothing, Ecclesiastes 9:5. Jesus said Lazarus has fallen asleep, John 11:11. Seventh-day Adventists and Jehovah's Witnesses teach this. Martin Luther often spoke of

- **LK 23:49 [FULFILLS]** His friends stood at a distance during His suffering ← PS 38:11 · MEDIUM p.909
- **LK 23:49 [FULFILLS]** They stood at a distance and watched Him die ← PS 88:8 · MEDIUM p.942
- **LK 23:53 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Shroud of Turin
- **LK 23:53 [FIELD NOTES]** Is this cloth the Shroud of Turin? See The Shroud of Turin Field Notes pages in Matthew, p.1599.
- **LK 23:55 [NOTABLE]** Luke says the women checked the tomb and how the body was placed. They knew where to go on Sunday.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

the dead as sleeping, though scholars argue how far he meant it.

PURGATORY

The Catholic Church teaches that those who die in God's grace but are not yet fully made pure are cleansed before heaven. It points to prayer for the dead in 2 Maccabees 12:46 and to being saved but only as through fire, 1 Corinthians 3:15. It was taught at the Councils of Lyon in 1274 and Florence in 1439, and confirmed at Trent in 1563. Luther's 95 Theses in 1517 began as a protest against selling indulgences for souls in purgatory. The Orthodox pray for the dead but do not accept purgatory as Rome defines it.

WHAT ABOUT REINCARNATION?

Hinduism, Buddhism and many New Age teachers say we come back in new lives. The Bible says it is appointed for people to die once, and after that to face judgment, Hebrews 9:27.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Death is not the end. Jesus holds the keys of death and Hades, Revelation 1:18. The body will be raised, 1 Corinthians 15:52, and everyone will face judgment. For hell, see Is Hell Forever? in Revelation, p.2112.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

The tomb is empty, and the apostles call it nonsense. Two followers walk to Emmaus with a stranger who turns out to be Jesus. He eats fish to prove He is no ghost, then goes up into heaven.

THE RESURRECTION // MATTHEW 28:1–10; MARK 16:1–8; JOHN 20:1–9

1 On the first day of the week, very early in the morning, the women came to the tomb, bringing the spices they had prepared. 2 They found the stone rolled away from the tomb, 3 but when they entered, they did not find the body of the Lord Jesus. 4 While they were puzzling over this, suddenly two men in radiant apparel stood beside them.

5 As the women bowed their faces to the ground in terror, the two men asked them, "Why do you look for the living among the dead? 6 He is not here; He has risen! Remember how He told you while He was still in Galilee: 7 'The Son of Man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and on the third day rise again.'"

8 Then they remembered His words. 9 And when they returned from the tomb, they reported all these things to the Eleven and to all the others. 10 It was Mary Magdalene, Joanna, Mary the mother of James, and the other women with them who told this to the apostles. 11 But their words seemed like nonsense to them, and they did not believe the women.

12 Peter, however, got up and ran to the tomb. And after bending down and seeing only the linen cloths, he went away, wondering to himself what had happened.

THE ROAD TO EMMAUS // MARK 16:12–13

13 That same day two of them were going to a village called Emmaus, about seven miles from Jerusalem. 14 They were talking with each other about everything that had happened. 15 And as they talked and deliberated, Jesus Himself came up and walked along with them. 16 But their eyes were kept from recognizing Him.

17 He asked them, "What are you discussing so intently as you walk along?"

They stood still, with sadness on their faces. 18 One of them, named Cleopas, asked Him, "Are You the only visitor to Jerusalem who does not know the things that have happened there in recent days?"

19 "What things?" He asked.

"The events involving Jesus of Nazareth," they answered. "This man was a prophet, powerful in speech and action before God and all the people. 20 Our chief priests and

LK 24:4 [MIRACLE] Two men in dazzling clothes say He is not here

LK 24:5 [FULFILLS] His resurrection assured ← PS 118:17-18 p.964

LK 24:6 [FULFILLS] The resurrection foreshadowed in David's hope of awakening ← PS 17:15 · MEDIUM p.892

LK 24:10 [NOTABLE] The Gospel admits the apostles did not believe the women. Nobody invents a detail that makes their own leaders look bad.

LK 24:12 [TEXT] Codex Bezae and some Latin copies leave it out. Almost all copies have it, including Papyrus 75.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

rulers delivered Him up to the sentence of death, and they crucified Him. 21 But we were hoping He was the One who would redeem Israel. And besides all this, it is the third day since these things took place.

22 Furthermore, some of our women astounded us. They were at the tomb early this morning, 23 but they did not find His body. They came and told us they had seen a vision of angels, who said that Jesus was alive. 24 Then some of our companions went to the tomb and found it just as the women had described. But Him they did not see."

25 Then Jesus said to them, "O foolish ones, and slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! 26 Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things and then to enter His glory?" 27 And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, He explained to them what was written in all the Scriptures about Himself.

28 As they approached the village where they were headed, He seemed to be going farther. 29 But they pleaded with Him, "Stay with us, for it is nearly evening and the day is almost over."

So He went in to stay with them. 30 While He was reclining at the table with them, He took bread, spoke a blessing and broke it, and gave it to them. 31 Then their eyes were opened and they recognized Jesus—and He disappeared from their sight.

32 They asked each other, "Were not our hearts burning within us as He spoke with us on the road and opened the Scriptures to us?" 33 And they got up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem.

There they found the Eleven and those with them, gathered together 34 and saying, "The Lord has indeed risen and has appeared to Simon!"

35 Then the two told what had happened on the road, and how they had recognized Jesus in the breaking of the bread.

JESUS APPEARS TO THE DISCIPLES // JOHN 20:19–23; 1 JOHN 1:1–4

36 While they were describing these events, Jesus Himself stood among them and said, "Peace be with you." 37 But they were startled and frightened, thinking they had seen a spirit.

38 "Why are you troubled," Jesus asked, "and why do doubts arise in your hearts? 39 Look at My hands and My feet. It is I Myself. Touch Me and see—for a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see I have." 40 And when He had said this, He showed them His hands and feet.

41 While they were still in disbelief because of their joy and amazement, He asked them, "Do you have anything here to eat?" 42 So they gave Him a piece of broiled fish, 43 and He took it and ate it in front of them.

44 Jesus said to them, "These are the words I spoke to you while I was still with you: Everything must be fulfilled that is written about Me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets, and the Psalms." 45 Then He opened their minds to understand the Scriptures.

46 And He told them, "This is what is written: The Christ will suffer and rise from the dead on the third day, 47 and in His name repentance and forgiveness of sins will be proclaimed to all nations, beginning in Jerusalem. 48 You are witnesses of these things.

49 And behold, I am sending the promise of My Father upon you. But remain in the city until you have been clothed with power from on high."

THE ASCENSION // MARK 16:19–20; ACTS 1:6–11

50 When Jesus had led them out as far as Bethany, He lifted up His hands and

- **LK 24:25 [HEART]** Jesus calls the disciples slow of heart to believe what the prophets said.
- **LK 24:30 [MIRACLE]** The risen Jesus is known in the breaking of bread and vanishes
- **LK 24:32 [HEART]** Were not our hearts burning while He opened the Scriptures to us?
- **LK 24:36 [MIRACLE]** The risen Jesus shows His hands and feet and eats fish
- **LK 24:40 [TEXT]** Codex Bezae leaves out this verse. Almost all copies have it.
- **LK 24:46 [FULFILLS]** On the third day He will raise us up ← HOS 6:2 · MEDIUM p.1364
- **LK 24:49 [PROPHECY]** The disciples would be clothed with power from on high while they waited in Jerusalem → ACTS 2:1-4 p.1741

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

blessed them. 51 While He was blessing
them, He left them and was carried up
into heaven. 52 And they worshiped Him
and returned to Jerusalem with great joy,
53 praising God continually in the temple.

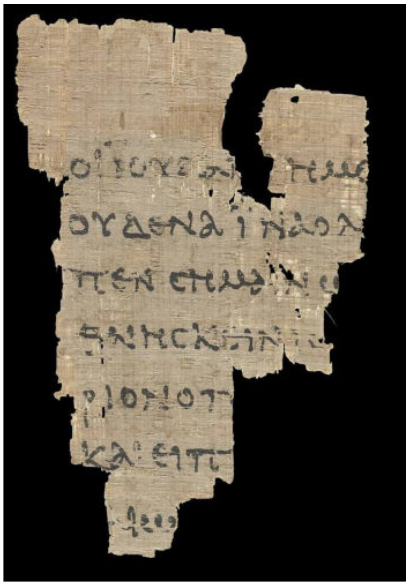
LK 24:50 [MIRACLE] Jesus is carried up into heaven while blessing them
LK 24:51 [FULFILLS] Elijah's bodily ascension foreshadows Christ's bodily ascension ← 2KI 2:11 · MEDIUM p.602

BOOK 43 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · GOSPELS

JOHN

So that you may believe

AUTHOR	John, the son of Zebedee, a fisherman and one of the Twelve, who calls himself the disciple whom Jesus loved 21:20 to 24. Irenaeus named him as the author about AD 180. Many scholars today think a close follower of John wrote it down.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About AD 27 to 30. John mentions three Passovers, which is how we know Jesus' ministry lasted about three years.
DATE WRITTEN	Most say about AD 85 to 95, making it the last Gospel written. A few scholars say before AD 70, because 5:2 says the pool is there, not was there.
WRITTEN TO	Believers and seekers everywhere. Church tradition says John wrote it in Ephesus, a big city in what is now Turkey.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	John survives in thousands of Greek manuscripts. It has more very early papyrus copies than any other Gospel.
KEY VERSE	John 20:31. These are written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in His name.



THE OLDEST PIECE OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

This scrap is Papyrus 52, about the size of a credit card. The front holds John 18:31 to 33, where Pilate tells the leaders to judge Jesus themselves. The back holds John 18:37 to 38, where Pilate asks, What is truth? It was bought in Egypt in 1920 and is kept in the John Rylands Library in Manchester, England. Most experts date it by the handwriting to about AD 125 to 175, though a few argue it could be later. That makes it the oldest known piece of any New Testament book. Papyrus 66, from about

AD 200, holds most of John, and Papyrus 75 holds most of Luke and John. Both match the John we read today very closely.

Historical Setting

Rome rules, the temple still stands in Jerusalem, and the Jewish feasts set the calendar. John builds his story around those feasts: Passover, Tabernacles and Dedication. At each one Jesus shows He is what the feast was pointing to. Matthew, Mark and Luke had already been written. So John, now an old man, does not repeat most of their stories. He tells new ones and goes deeper into who Jesus really is.

What Was Going Wrong

THE LIGHT CAME AND PEOPLE HID. Light came into the world, but people loved the darkness because what they did was evil 3:19.
RULES OVER PEOPLE. The leaders were angrier about a healing on the Sabbath than happy that a man could walk 5:16 and a blind man could see 9:16.
SEARCHING THE SCRIPTURES BUT MISSING THE POINT. They studied the Scriptures every day but would not come to the One the Scriptures were about 5:39 to 40.
AFRAID OF WHAT PEOPLE THINK. Even some leaders believed but kept quiet, because they loved praise from men more than praise from God 12:42 to 43.
FAMILY DID NOT BELIEVE. Even His own brothers did not believe in Him at first 7:5.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Jesus is God in the flesh. John says it in the very first verse, which echoes Genesis 1:1, and spends the whole book proving it. He picks seven signs, like water into wine and a dead man walking out of his grave. He records Jesus saying I AM, the name God gave Moses at the burning bush. Then Jesus lays down His life on the cross and takes it up again three days later. John tells you exactly why he wrote it: so you will believe and have life.

John at a Glance: Seven Signs and a Cross

CH 1	**THE WORD BECOMES FLESH** God becomes a man, and the first disciples follow Him.
CH 2 to 12	**THE BOOK OF SIGNS** Seven miracles that point to who Jesus is.
CH 13 to 17	**THE UPPER ROOM** Foot washing, a new command and Jesus' longest prayer.
CH 18 to 19	**THE CROSS** The arrest, the trials and It is finished.
CH 20 to 21	**THE EMPTY TOMB** Jesus is alive, Thomas believes and Peter is restored.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JOHN 1:29 Look, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world. Points back to the Passover lamb, Exodus 12, and Isaiah 53:7.

JOHN 3:14 TO 15 As Moses lifted up the snake in the wilderness, the Son of Man must be lifted up. Points to Numbers 21:8 to 9.

JOHN 19:24 They divided My garments among them and cast lots for My clothing. Fulfills Psalm 22:18.

JOHN 19:36 Not one of His bones will be broken. Fulfills Exodus 12:46 and Psalm 34:20.

What to Watch for in John

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (94)	1:11, 1:14, 1:17, 1:23, 1:29, 1:33, 1:41 and 60 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (10)	1:1-3, 1:51, 3:13, 3:15-18, 5:22, 5:24-30, 6:32-35 and 1 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (9)	1:42, 1:50, 4:35, 4:50-53, 7:39, 11:4, 11:11 and 6 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (2)	15:20, 16:2, 21:18-19
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	14:2-3
THE HEART (4)	9:41, 14:1, 14:27, 15:22
ARCHAEOLOGY (4)	1:46, 5:2, 9:7, 19:40
MIRACLES (14)	1:32, 1:34, 2:7-9, 2:11, 4:46-49, 4:54, 5:5-9 and 10 more
DEMONIC (3)	8:44, 12:31, 13:27
NOTABLE (1)	20:1-2
JESUS SPEAKING (431 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

SEVEN SIGNS
Water into wine 2:1 to 11, the official's son 4:46 to 54, the man at Bethesda 5:1 to 15, feeding five thousand 6:1 to 14, walking on water 6:16 to 21, the man born blind 9, and raising Lazarus 11. John calls them signs because each one points to something bigger.

SEVEN I AM SAYINGS
I am the bread of life, the light of the world, the door, the good shepherd, the resurrection and the life, the way, the truth and the life, and the true vine. Plus Before Abraham was born, I am 8:58, which uses the name God gave Moses in Exodus 3:14. When Jesus says I am He at His arrest, the soldiers fall backward 18:6.

ALMOST ALL NEW
About 90 percent of John is not in the other three Gospels. No John means no Nicodemus, no woman at the well, no Lazarus and no doubting Thomas.

Did Anybody Listen?

Thomas, the biggest doubter in the room, ended up saying My Lord and my God, and tradition says he carried the message to India. John outlived the other apostles and taught Polycarp, who taught Irenaeus. And John 3:16 has been memorized in more languages than almost any sentence ever written.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

John does not start in Bethlehem. He starts before time began: In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was God. Then the Word becomes a man and moves into the neighborhood. John the Baptist points and says, Look, the Lamb of God. Andrew brings his brother Peter, and Nathanael asks if anything good can come from Nazareth.

THE BEGINNING // GENESIS 1:1–2; HEBREWS 11:1–3

1 In the beginning was the Word, and the
Word was with God, and the Word was
God. 2 He was with God in the beginning. 3
Through Him all things were made, and
without Him nothing was made that has
been made. 4 In Him was life, and that life
was the light of men. 5 The Light shines in
the darkness, and the darkness has not
overcome it.

THE WITNESS OF JOHN

6 There came a man who was sent from
God. His name was John. 7 He came as a
witness to testify about the Light, so that
through him everyone might believe. 8 He
himself was not the Light, but he came to
testify about the Light.

9 The true Light, who gives light to every-
one, was coming into the world. 10 He was
in the world, and though the world was
made through Him, the world did not rec-
ognize Him. 11 He came to His own, and
His own did not receive Him. 12 But to all
who did receive Him, to those who be-
lieved in His name, He gave the right to
become children of God— 13 children born
not of blood, nor of the desire or will of
man, but born of God.

THE WORD BECAME FLESH // PSALM 84:1–12

14 The Word became flesh and made His
dwelling among us. We have seen His
glory, the glory of the one and only Son
from the Father, full of grace and truth.

15 John testified concerning Him. He cried
out, saying, "This is He of whom I said,
'He who comes after me has surpassed
me because He was before me.'"

16 From His fullness we have all received
grace upon grace. 17 For the law was given
through Moses; grace and truth came
through Jesus Christ. 18 No one has ever
seen God, but the one and only Son, who
is Himself God and is at the Father's side,
has made Him known.

THE BIG QUESTION

IS JESUS GOD?

The Word Was God

JOHN 1:1 TO 18 · 5:18 · 8:58 TO 59 · 10:30 TO 33 · 20:28

WHAT JOHN SAYS

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God, 1:1. The Word became flesh, 1:14. At the end, Thomas falls before the risen Jesus and says, My Lord and my God, 20:28, and Jesus accepts it. John's whole book sits between those two verses.

WHAT JESUS SAID

Before Abraham was born, I am, 8:58. God gave His name to Moses as I AM, Exodus 3:14, and the crowd picked up stones to kill Him, 8:59. They also wanted to kill Him for making Himself equal with God, 5:18, and for saying, I and the Father are one, 10:30 to 33.

THE REST OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

In Christ all the fullness of God lives in bodily form, Colossians 2:9. Our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ, Titus 2:13. The Father says to the Son, Your throne, O God, endures forever, Hebrews 1:8. All things were created through Him, John 1:3 and Colossians 1:16, and only God creates. Isaiah 43:11 says apart from Me there is no savior.

THE EARLY CHURCH

About AD 110 Ignatius of Antioch wrote of our God, Jesus the Christ (Ephesians 18). About AD 112 the Roman governor

JN 1:1 [FULFILLS] Foreordained from everlasting ← PROV 8:23 · MEDIUM p.995
JN 1:1 [NOTE] THE WORD. See Is Jesus God?
JN 1:11 [FULFILLS] A stranger to His own brethren ← PS 69:8 p.928
JN 1:11 [FULFILLS] Despised by the nation of Israel ← IS 49:7 p.1123
JN 1:14 [FULFILLS] God would dwell among His people in the tabernacle and 5 more ← EX 25:8; NUM 23:21; IS 9:6; IS 40:5; IS 40:9; EZK 37:27 p.154

JN 1:17 [FULFILLS] Words of grace would flow from His lips ← PS 45:2 · MEDIUM p.914
JN 1:18 [TEXT] The oldest copies of John, like Papyrus 66 and Papyrus 75, say the only begotten God. Many later manuscripts and the KJV say the only begotten Son. This Bible follows the oldest copies: the one and only Son, who is Himself God. Either way John is saying Jesus is God and shows us the Father.

Pliny reported that Christians sang hymns to Christ as to a god (Letters 10.96).

ARIUS AND NICAEA

About AD 318 Arius, a priest in Alexandria, taught that the Son was the first and greatest thing God made: there was when He was not. In AD 325 about 300 bishops met at Nicaea and said the Son is of the same being as the Father, true God from true God, begotten, not made. Athanasius spent his life defending it and was exiled five times.

A God, or God?

JOHN 1:1 · 1:18 · 14:28 · PHILIPPIANS 2:5 TO 8 · MARK 13:32

JEHOVAH'S WITNESSES

Their New World Translation, 1950, says the Word was a god, because Greek has no the before God at the end of 1:1. Most Greek scholars answer that a noun put first for emphasis often has no the and can still mean the true God, or describe what the Word is: what God was, the Word was (E. C. Colwell, 1933; Philip Harner, 1973). John also uses God with no the for the Father in 1:6, 1:12 and 1:18.

ONENESS PENTECOSTALS

Jesus is fully God, and Father, Son and Spirit are names or roles of the one God, not three persons. Trinitarians answer that the Word was with God, 1:1, and that Jesus prays to the Father, John 17.

LATTER-DAY SAINTS

Jesus is divine, but He is a separate being from the Father, the firstborn spirit child of God.

ISLAM

Jesus, Isa, is a great prophet born of a virgin, but not God and not God's son, Quran 4:171 and 5:72.

JUDAISM

God is one and is not a man. Jesus was a Jewish teacher, not God.

THE HARD VERSES

The Father is greater than I, 14:28. Not even the Son knows the day or hour, Mark 13:32. Trinitarians say Jesus said these as a man, having taken the form of a servant, Philippians 2:6 to 8. Others say they show He is less than God.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus claimed a closeness to the Father no prophet ever claimed. His own question is still the question: Who do you say I am? Matthew 16:15. See also The Trinity in Matthew, p.1602.

THE MISSION OF JOHN THE BAPTIST // ISAIAH 40:1–5; MATTHEW 3:1–12; MARK 1:1–8; LUKE 3:1–20

19 And this was John's testimony when the
Jews of Jerusalem sent priests and
Levites to ask him, "Who are you?" 20 He
did not refuse to confess, but openly de-
clared, "I am not the Christ."

21 "Then who are you?" they inquired. "Are
you Elijah?"

He said, "I am not."

"Are you the Prophet?"

He answered, "No."

22 So they said to him, "Who are you? We
need an answer for those who sent us.
What do you say about yourself?"

23 John replied in the words of Isaiah the
prophet:

"I am a voice of one calling in the wilder-
ness,
'Make straight the way for the Lord.'"

24 Then the Pharisees who had been sent
25 asked him, "Why then do you baptize, if
you are not the Christ, nor Elijah, nor the
Prophet?"

26 "I baptize with water," John replied, "but
among you stands One you do not know.
27 He is the One who comes after me, the
straps of whose sandals I am not worthy
to untie."

28 All this happened at Bethany beyond the
Jordan, where John was baptizing.

JESUS THE LAMB OF GOD // MATTHEW 3:13–17; MARK 1:9–11; LUKE 3:21–22

29 The next day John saw Jesus coming
toward him and said, "Look, the Lamb of
God, who takes away the sin of the world!
30 This is He of whom I said, 'A man who

- **JN 1:23 [FULFILLS]** His coming preceded by a forerunner (John the Baptist) ← IS 40:3-4 p.1109
- **JN 1:29 [FULFILLS]** God Himself would provide the Lamb for sacrifice and 3 more ← GEN 22:8; GEN 22:13-14; LEV 16:21-22; IS 53:7c p.76
- **JN 1:29 [PROPHECY]** Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world → JN 19:14; JN 19:36; 1PE 1:19; 1JN 3:5 · MEDIUM p.1731

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

comes after me has surpassed me because He was before me.' 31 I myself did not know Him, but the reason I came baptizing with water was that He might be revealed to Israel."

32 Then John testified, "I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove and resting on Him. 33 I myself did not know Him, but the One who sent me to baptize with water told me, 'The man on whom you see the Spirit descend and rest is He who will baptize with the Holy Spirit.' 34 I have seen and testified that this is the Son of God."

THE FIRST DISCIPLES // MATTHEW 4:18–22; MARK 1:16–20; LUKE 5:1–11

35 The next day John was there again with two of his disciples. 36 When he saw Jesus walking by, he said, "Look, the Lamb of God!" 37 And when the two disciples heard him say this, they followed Jesus.

38 Jesus turned and saw them following. "What do you want?" He asked.

They said to Him, "Rabbi" (which means Teacher), "where are You staying?"

39 "Come and see," He replied. So they went and saw where He was staying, and spent that day with Him. It was about the tenth hour.

40 Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, was one of the two who heard John's testimony and followed Jesus. 41 He first found his brother Simon and told him, "We have found the Messiah" (which is translated as Christ).

42 Andrew brought him to Jesus, who looked at him and said, "You are Simon son of John. You will be called Cephas" (which is translated as Peter).

JESUS CALLS PHILIP AND NATHANAEL

43 The next day Jesus decided to set out for Galilee. Finding Philip, He told him, "Follow Me." 44 Now Philip was from Bethsaida, the same town as Andrew and Peter.

45 Philip found Nathanael and told him, "We have found the One Moses wrote about in the Law, the One the prophets foretold—Jesus of Nazareth, the son of Joseph."

46 "Can anything good come from Nazareth?" Nathanael asked.

"Come and see," said Philip.

47 When Jesus saw Nathanael approaching, He said of him, "Here is a true Israelite, in whom there is no deceit."

48 "How do You know me?" Nathanael asked.

Jesus replied, "Before Philip called you, I saw you under the fig tree."

49 "Rabbi," Nathanael answered, "You are the Son of God! You are the King of Israel!"

50 Jesus said to him, "Do you believe just because I told you I saw you under the fig tree? You will see greater things than these." 51 Then He declared, "Truly, truly, I tell you, you will all see heaven open and the angels of God ascending and descending on the Son of Man."

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus goes to a wedding, and the wine runs out, which in that culture was a party disaster. His mother tells the servants, Do whatever He tells you. Six stone jars of water become the best wine of the night. Then Jesus makes a whip and clears the money changers out of His Father's house.

THE WEDDING AT CANA

1 On the third day a wedding took place at Cana in Galilee. Jesus' mother was there, 2 and Jesus and His disciples had also

- **JN 1:32 [MIRACLE]** John testifies he saw the Spirit descend and remain on Jesus
- **JN 1:33 [PROPHECY]** The One coming after John would baptize with the Holy Spirit → ACTS 1:5; ACTS 2:1-4; ACTS 11:16 p.1740
- **JN 1:41 [FULFILLS]** He would be the Anointed One ← PS 2:2 p.884
- **JN 1:42 [PROPHECY]** You are Simon the son of Jonah. You shall be called Cephas (a stone) → Fulfilled progressively as Peter becomes the foundational apostle · MEDIUM
- **JN 1:46 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Nazareth excavations
- **JN 1:46 [FIELD NOTES]** Digs show Nazareth was a tiny farm village in Jesus' day, which fits Nathanael's question. See the Nazareth in the Time of Jesus Field Notes page in Luke, p.1645.
- **JN 1:50 [PROPHECY]** You will see greater things than these... You will see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of Man (to Nathanael) → Fulfilled throughout Jesus's ministry in signs and miracles · MEDIUM
- **JN 1:51 [FULFILLS]** Jacob's ladder prefigures Christ as the bridge between heaven and earth ← GEN 28:12 p.86

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

been invited to the wedding. 3 When the wine ran out, Jesus' mother said to Him, "They have no more wine."

4 "Woman, what is that to you and to Me?" Jesus replied. "My hour has not yet come."

5 His mother said to the servants, "Do whatever He tells you."

6 Now six stone water jars had been set there for the Jewish rites of purification. Each could hold from twenty to thirty gallons. 7 Jesus told the servants, "Fill the jars with water."

So they filled them to the brim.

8 "Now draw some out," He said, "and take it to the master of the banquet."

They did so, 9 and the master of the banquet tasted the water that had been turned into wine. He did not know where it was from, but the servants who had drawn the water knew. Then he called the bridegroom aside 10 and said, "Everyone serves the fine wine first, and then the cheap wine after the guests are drunk. But you have saved the fine wine until now!"

11 Jesus performed this, the first of His signs, at Cana in Galilee. He thus revealed His glory, and His disciples believed in Him.

JESUS CLEANSES THE TEMPLE // MATTHEW 21:12–17; MARK 11:15–19; LUKE 19:45–48

12 After this, He went down to Capernaum with His mother and brothers and His disciples, and they stayed there a few days.

13 When the Jewish Passover was near, Jesus went up to Jerusalem. 14 In the temple courts He found men selling cattle, sheep, and doves, and money changers seated at their tables. 15 So He made a whip out of cords and drove all from the temple courts, both sheep and cattle. He poured out the coins of the money changers and overturned their tables. 16 To those selling doves He said, "Get these out of here! How dare you turn My Father's house into a marketplace!"

17 His disciples remembered that it is written: "*Zeal for Your house will consume Me.*"

18 On account of this, the Jews demanded, "What sign can You show us to prove Your authority to do these things?"

19 Jesus answered, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up again."

20 "This temple took forty-six years to build," the Jews replied, "and You are going to raise it up in three days?"

21 But Jesus was speaking about the temple of His body. 22 After He was raised from the dead, His disciples remembered that He had said this. Then they believed the Scripture and the word that Jesus had spoken.

23 While He was in Jerusalem at the Passover Feast, many people saw the signs He was doing and believed in His name. 24 But Jesus did not entrust Himself to them, for He knew them all. 25 He did not need any testimony about man, for He knew what was in a man.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Nicodemus, a top religious teacher, visits Jesus at night so nobody will see him. Jesus tells him he must be born again, and Nicodemus asks how a grown man climbs back inside his mother. Then comes the most famous verse in the Bible: For God so loved the world. John the Baptist says, He must increase, I must decrease.

JESUS AND NICODEMUS // GENESIS 22:1–10; ROMANS 5:6–11

1 Now there was a man of the Pharisees named Nicodemus, a leader of the Jews. 2 He came to Jesus at night and said, "Rabbi, we know that You are a teacher who has come from God. For no one could perform the signs You are doing if God were not with him."

- **JN 2:7 [MIRACLE]** Water turned into wine
- **JN 2:11 [MIRACLE]** The first of His signs revealed His glory
- **JN 2:13 [FULFILLS]** Sudden appearance at the Temple ← MAL 3:1b p.1514
- **JN 2:17 [FULFILLS]** Zealous for His Father's house ← PS 69:9 p.928
- **JN 2:19 [PROPHECY]** Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up (speaking of the temple of His body) → Fulfilled in His death and third-day resurrection (JN 20) p.1733
- **JN 2:25 [FULFILLS]** He would know men's thoughts ← IS 11:3 p.1075

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW JESUS SPEAKING

3 Jesus replied, "Truly, truly, I tell you, no one can see the kingdom of God unless he is born again."

4 "How can a man be born when he is old?" Nicodemus asked. "Can he enter his mother's womb a second time to be born?"

5 Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I tell you, no one can enter the kingdom of God unless he is born of water and the Spirit. 6 Flesh is born of flesh, but spirit is born of the Spirit. 7 Do not be amazed that I said, 'You must be born again.' 8 The wind blows where it wishes. You hear its sound, but you do not know where it comes from or where it is going. So it is with everyone born of the Spirit."

9 "How can this be?" Nicodemus asked.

10 "You are Israel's teacher," said Jesus, "and you do not understand these things? 11 Truly, truly, I tell you, we speak of what we know, and we testify to what we have seen, and yet you people do not accept our testimony.

12 If I have told you about earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things? 13 No one has ascended into heaven except the One who descended from heaven—the Son of Man. 14 Just as Moses lifted up the snake in the wilderness, so the Son of Man must be lifted up, 15 that everyone who believes in Him may have eternal life.

16 For God so loved the world that He gave His one and only Son, that everyone who believes in Him shall not perish but have eternal life. 17 For God did not send His Son into the world to condemn the world, but to save the world through Him. 18 Whoever believes in Him is not condemned, but whoever does not believe has already been condemned, because he has not believed in the name of God's one and only Son.

19 And this is the verdict: The Light has come into the world, but men loved the darkness rather than the Light because their deeds were evil. 20 Everyone who does evil hates the Light, and does not come into the Light for fear that his deeds will be exposed. 21 But whoever practices the truth comes into the Light, so that it may be seen clearly that what he has done has been accomplished in God."

JOHN'S TESTIMONY ABOUT JESUS

22 After this, Jesus and His disciples went into the Judean countryside, where He spent some time with them and baptized.

23 Now John was also baptizing at Aenon near Salim, because the water was plentiful there, and people kept coming to be baptized. 24 (For John had not yet been thrown into prison.)

25 Then a dispute arose between John's disciples and a certain Jew over the issue of ceremonial washing. 26 So John's disciples came to him and said, "Look, Rabbi, the One who was with you beyond the Jordan, the One you testified about—He is baptizing, and everyone is going to Him."

27 John replied, "A man can receive only what is given him from heaven. 28 You yourselves can testify that I said, 'I am not the Christ, but am sent ahead of Him.' 29 The bride belongs to the bridegroom. The friend of the bridegroom stands and listens for him, and is overjoyed to hear the bridegroom's voice. That joy is mine, and it is now complete. 30 He must increase; I must decrease.

31 The One who comes from above is above all. The one who is from the earth belongs to the earth and speaks as one from the earth. The One who comes from heaven is above all. 32 He testifies to what He has seen and heard, yet no one ac-

- **JN 3:2 [FULFILLS]** He came as a divinely sent Teacher ← IS 48:16-17 · MEDIUM p.1122
- **JN 3:5 [FULFILLS]** God would sprinkle clean water and cleanse His people ← EZK 36:25 · MEDIUM p.1300
- **JN 3:13 [FULFILLS]** Who went up to heaven and came down, and what is the name of His Son ← PROV 30:4 · MEDIUM p.1021
- **JN 3:13 [TEXT]** Many later manuscripts and the KJV add who is in heaven at the end of this verse. The oldest copies, like Papyrus 66 and Papyrus 75, do not have it.
- **JN 3:14 [PROPHECY]** As Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of Man be lifted up → Fulfilled at the crucifixion (JN 19:17-18) p.1732
- **JN 3:14 [FULFILLS]** The bronze serpent lifted up foreshadows Christ lifted on the cross ← NUM 21:9 p.255
- **JN 3:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← NUM 21:8-9 p.255
- **JN 3:16 [FULFILLS]** Abraham was told to offer his only son whom he loved ← GEN 22:2 p.76

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

cepts His testimony. 33 Whoever accepts
His testimony has certified that God is
truthful. 34 For the One whom God has
sent speaks the words of God, for God
gives the Spirit without limit.

35 The Father loves the Son and has
placed all things in His hands. 36 Whoever
believes in the Son has eternal life. Who-
ever rejects the Son will not see life. In-
stead, the wrath of God remains on him."

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus takes the road through Samaria, which most Jews avoided, and sits by Jacob's well at noon. He asks a Samaritan woman for a drink, then tells her everything she ever did, including five husbands. She runs to tell the whole town. Then Jesus heals an official's son from twenty miles away without even going there.

JESUS AND THE SAMARITAN WOMAN

1 When Jesus realized that the Pharisees
were aware He was gaining and baptizing
more disciples than John 2 (although it
was not Jesus who baptized, but His dis-
ciples), 3 He left Judea and returned to
Galilee.

4 Now He had to pass through Samaria. 5
So He came to a town of Samaria called
Sychar, near the plot of ground that Jacob
had given to his son Joseph. 6 Since
Jacob's well was there, Jesus, weary from
His journey, sat down by the well. It was
about the sixth hour.

7 When a Samaritan woman came to draw
water, Jesus said to her, "Give Me a
drink." 8 (His disciples had gone into the
town to buy food.)

9 "You are a Jew," said the woman. "How
can You ask for a drink from me, a Samar-
itan woman?" (For Jews do not associate
with Samaritans.)

10 Jesus answered, "If you knew the gift of
God and who is asking you for a drink,
you would have asked Him, and He would
have given you living water."

11 "Sir," the woman replied, "You have
nothing to draw with and the well is deep.
Where then will You get this living water?
12 Are You greater than our father Jacob,
who gave us this well and drank from it
himself, as did his sons and his live-
stock?"

13 Jesus said to her, "Everyone who drinks
this water will be thirsty again. 14 But who-
ever drinks the water I give him will never
thirst. Indeed, the water I give him will be-
come in him a fount of water springing up
to eternal life."

15 The woman said to Him, "Sir, give me
this water so that I will not get thirsty and
have to keep coming here to draw water."

16 Jesus told her, "Go, call your husband
and come back."

17 "I have no husband," the woman replied.

Jesus said to her, "You are correct to say
that you have no husband. 18 In fact, you
have had five husbands, and the man you
now have is not your husband. You have
spoken truthfully."

19 "Sir," the woman said, "I see that You are
a prophet. 20 Our fathers worshiped on this
mountain, but you Jews say that the place
where one must worship is in Jerusalem."

21 "Believe Me, woman," Jesus replied, "a
time is coming when you will worship the
Father neither on this mountain nor in
Jerusalem. 22 You worship what you do
not know; we worship what we do know,
for salvation is from the Jews. 23 But a
time is coming and has now come when
the true worshipers will worship the Fa-
ther in spirit and in truth, for the Father is
seeking such as these to worship Him. 24
God is Spirit, and His worshipers must
worship Him in spirit and in truth."

25 The woman said, "I know that Messiah"
(called Christ) "is coming. When He
comes, He will explain everything to us."

26 Jesus answered, "I who speak to you
am He."

THE DISCIPLES RETURN AND MARVEL

27 Just then His disciples returned and
were surprised that He was speaking with

JN 4:6 [FIELD NOTES] You can still visit this well. See the Jacob's Well Field Notes page, p.1704.

JN 4:21 [FULFILLS] God's name would be great among the nations with pure offerings in every place ← MAL 1:11 · MEDIUM p.1511

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | JESUS SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE AREA, TRADITION FOR THE WELL ITSELF

JACOB'S WELL

JOHN 4:5 TO 42 · GENESIS 33:18 TO 20



Jacob's Well in the crypt of the church at Balata, Nablus.

WHAT IT IS

A deep well cut down through rock, at the foot of Mount Gerizim. Jews, Samaritans, Christians and Muslims have all called it Jacob's well for many centuries.

HOW OLD IT IS

No one can date the digging of the well itself. Christian pilgrims were already visiting it by AD 333, and a church was built over it in the 300s. Jacob lived about 1,800 years before Jesus, and Genesis 33:19 says he bought land right here near Shechem.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It was never lost. It sits in the village of Balata, at the edge of the city of Nablus, next to the ruins of ancient Shechem. Churches over it were destroyed and rebuilt several times, and the Greek Orthodox church there today was finished in 2007.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the crypt under the Church of Saint Photini in Nablus. Saint Photini is the name tradition gave the Samaritan woman. Visitors can still pull up water from the well.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The woman says the well is deep 4:11, and it is, more than 100 feet. When she points to this mountain 4:20, Mount Gerizim, where the Samaritans worshiped, rises right above the well. The details fit the place.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing written on the well says Jacob dug it. The link comes from very old tradition and from how well it matches John's story.

a woman. But no one asked Him, "What do You want from her?" or "Why are You talking with her?"

28 Then the woman left her water jar, went back into the town, and said to the people, 29 "Come, see a man who told me everything I ever did. Could this be the Christ?" 30 So they left the town and made their way toward Jesus.

31 Meanwhile the disciples urged Him, "Rabbi, eat something."

32 But He told them, "I have food to eat that you know nothing about."

33 So the disciples asked one another, "Could someone have brought Him food?"

34 Jesus explained, "My food is to do the will of Him who sent Me and to finish His work. 35 Do you not say, 'There are still four months until the harvest'? I tell you, lift up your eyes and look at the fields, for they are ripe for harvest.

36 Already the reaper draws his wages and gathers a crop for eternal life, so that the sower and the reaper may rejoice together. 37 For in this case the saying 'One sows and another reaps' is true. 38 I sent

JN 4:34 [FULFILLS] His delight was to do the Father's will ← PS 40:6-8 p.910

JN 4:35 [PROPHECY] Lift up your eyes and look at the fields, for they are already white for harvest → Fulfilled that day when the Samaritan townspeople came believing (JN 4:39-42) · MEDIUM p.1705

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

you to reap what you have not worked for; others have done the hard work, and now you have taken up their labor."

MANY SAMARITANS BELIEVE

39 Many of the Samaritans from that town believed in Jesus because of the woman's testimony, "He told me everything I ever did." 40 So when the Samaritans came to Him, they asked Him to stay with them, and He stayed two days.

41 And many more believed because of His message. 42 They said to the woman, "We now believe not only because of your words; we have heard for ourselves, and we know that this man truly is the Savior of the world."

JESUS HEALS THE OFFICIAL'S SON // MATTHEW 8:5–13; LUKE 7:1–10

43 After two days, Jesus left for Galilee. 44 Now He Himself had testified that a prophet has no honor in his own hometown. 45 Yet when He arrived, the Galileans welcomed Him. They had seen all the great things He had done in Jerusalem at the feast, for they had gone there as well.

46 So once again He came to Cana in Galilee, where He had turned the water into wine. And there was a royal official whose son lay sick at Capernaum. 47 When he heard that Jesus had come from Judea to Galilee, he went and begged Him to come down and heal his son, who was about to die.

48 Jesus said to him, "Unless you people see signs and wonders, you will never believe."

49 "Sir," the official said, "come down before my child dies."

50 "Go," said Jesus. "Your son will live."

The man took Jesus at His word and departed. 51 And while he was still on the way, his servants met him with the news that his boy was alive.

52 So he inquired as to the hour when his son had recovered, and they told him, "The fever left him yesterday at the seventh hour."

53 Then the father realized that this was the very hour in which Jesus had told him, "Your son will live." And he and all his household believed.

54 This was now the second sign that Jesus performed after coming from Judea into Galilee.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

At the Pool of Bethesda a man has been sick for thirty eight years. Jesus asks, Do you want to get well? He says Get up, and the man walks off carrying his mat. The leaders are not happy for him. They are upset that he carried a mat on the Sabbath. Jesus says He works just like His Father works.

THE POOL OF BETHESDA

1 Some time later there was a feast of the Jews, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.

2 Now there is in Jerusalem near the Sheep Gate a pool with five covered colonnades, which in Hebrew is called Bethesda. 3 On these walkways lay a great number of the sick, the blind, the lame, and the paralyzed. [awaiting the moving of the waters.] 4 [For from time to time an angel descended into the pool and stirred the water. As soon as it was stirred, the first to enter the pool would be healed of his disease.]

5 One man there had been an invalid for thirty-eight years. 6 When Jesus saw him lying there and realized that he had spent a long time in this condition, He asked him, "Do you want to get well?"

7 "Sir," the invalid replied, "I have no one to help me into the pool when the water is

- **JN 4:46 [MIRACLE]** Long-distance healing of the nobleman's son
- **JN 4:50 [PROPHECY]** The royal official's dying son would live → JN 4:51-53 p.1705
- **JN 4:51 [FULFILLS]** The royal official's dying son would live ← JN 4:50 p.1705
- **JN 5:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Dug in the 1800s and 1900s → FIELD NOTES p.1706
- **JN 5:3 [TEXT]** The words in brackets in verses 3 and 4, about an angel stirring the water, are not in the oldest copies of John, like Papyrus 66, Papyrus 75, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus. Many later manuscripts and the KJV have them. They may have been added to explain verse 7.
- **JN 5:5 [MIRACLE]** A man ill thirty eight years is healed at Bethesda

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE POOL OF BETHESDA

JOHN 5:1 TO 15



Ruins at the Pool of Bethesda, beside the Church of Saint Anne in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT IS

Two large stone pools with a thick wall between them, near what was the Sheep Gate of Jerusalem. Porches with columns once ran around the four sides and across the middle wall. Four sides plus the middle make five, just as John 5:2 says.

HOW OLD IT IS

The northern pool was dug as a water tank about 800 years before Jesus. The southern pool was added about 200 BC. Both were in use in the time of Jesus. After AD 135 the Romans built a healing shrine there, and later Christians built churches over it.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Conrad Schick, a German builder and explorer, found part of it in 1888. Much more was dug up from the 1950s on by the White Fathers, a Catholic order who care for the site.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

On the grounds of the Church of Saint Anne, inside Jerusalem's Old City near the Lions' Gate. You can walk the ruins and look down into the pools.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

For a long time some scholars said the five porches were just a symbol, maybe for the five books of Moses. The digging showed a real pool with five porches, right where John put it.

WHAT IS STILL DEBATED

Some think the southern pool, with its wide steps, was a place where people washed to be clean before going to the temple. Others think sick people gathered there hoping to be healed, as verse 7 says. It may have been both.

stirred. While I am on my way, someone else goes in before me."

8 Then Jesus told him, "Get up, pick up your mat, and walk."

9 Immediately the man was made well, and he picked up his mat and began to walk.

Now this happened on the Sabbath day, 10 so the Jews said to the man who had been healed, "This is the Sabbath! It is unlawful for you to carry your mat."

11 But he answered, "The man who made me well told me, 'Pick up your mat and walk.'"

12 "Who is this man who told you to pick it up and walk?" they asked.

13 But the man who was healed did not know who it was, for Jesus had slipped away while the crowd was there.

14 Afterward, Jesus found the man at the temple and said to him, "See, you have been made well. Stop sinning, or something worse may happen to you."

15 And the man went away and told the Jews that it was Jesus who had made him well.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW JESUS SPEAKING

THE FATHER AND THE SON

16 Now because Jesus was doing these
things on the Sabbath, the Jews began to
persecute Him. 17 But Jesus answered
them, "To this very day My Father is at His
work, and I too am working."

18 Because of this, the Jews tried all the
harder to kill Him. Not only was He break-
ing the Sabbath, but He was even calling
God His own Father, making Himself equal
with God.

19 So Jesus replied, "Truly, truly, I tell you,
the Son can do nothing by Himself, unless
He sees the Father doing it. For whatever
the Father does, the Son also does. 20 The
Father loves the Son and shows Him all
He does. And to your amazement, He will
show Him even greater works than these.
21 For just as the Father raises the dead
and gives them life, so also the Son gives
life to whom He wishes.

22 Furthermore, the Father judges no one,
but has assigned all judgment to the Son,
23 so that all may honor the Son just as
they honor the Father. Whoever does not
honor the Son does not honor the Father
who sent Him.

24 Truly, truly, I tell you, whoever hears My
word and believes Him who sent Me has
eternal life and will not come under judg-
ment. Indeed, he has crossed over from
death to life.

25 Truly, truly, I tell you, the hour is coming
and has now come when the dead will
hear the voice of the Son of God, and
those who hear will live. 26 For as the Fa-
ther has life in Himself, so also He has
granted the Son to have life in Himself. 27
And He has given Him authority to exe-
cute judgment, because He is the Son of
Man.

28 Do not be amazed at this, for the hour is
coming when all who are in their graves
will hear His voice 29 and come out—those
who have done good to the resurrection
of life, and those who have done evil to
the resurrection of judgment.

30 I can do nothing by Myself; I judge only
as I hear. And My judgment is just, be-
cause I do not seek My own will, but the
will of Him who sent Me.

TESTIMONIES ABOUT JESUS

31 If I testify about Myself, My testimony is
not valid. 32 There is another who testifies
about Me, and I know that His testimony
about Me is valid.

33 You have sent to John, and he has testi-
fied to the truth. 34 Even though I do not
accept human testimony, I say these
things so that you may be saved.

35 John was a lamp that burned and gave
light, and you were willing for a season to
bask in his light. 36 But I have testimony
more substantial than that of John. For the
works that the Father has given Me to
accomplish—the very works I am
doing—testify about Me that the Father
has sent Me. 37 And the Father who sent
Me has Himself testified about Me. You
have never heard His voice nor seen His
form, 38 nor does His word abide in you,
because you do not believe the One He
sent.

THE WITNESS OF SCRIPTURE // LUKE 16:19–31

39 You pore over the Scriptures because
you presume that by them you possess
eternal life. These are the very words that
testify about Me, 40 yet you refuse to
come to Me to have life.

41 I do not accept glory from men, 42 but I
know you, that you do not have the love of
God within you. 43 I have come in My
Father's name, and you have not received
Me; but if someone else comes in his own
name, you will receive him. 44 How can
you believe if you accept glory from one
another, yet do not seek the glory that
comes from the only God?

45 Do not think that I will accuse you be-
fore the Father. Your accuser is Moses, in
whom you have put your hope. 46 If you
had believed Moses, you would believe

- **JN 5:18 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **JN 5:22 [FULFILLS]** 'Give the king Your judgments, O God' ← PS 72:1 · MEDIUM p.930
- **JN 5:24 [FULFILLS]** Job's confession that his Redeemer lives and will rise ← JOB 19:23-27 · MEDIUM p.856
- **JN 5:28 [PROPHECY]** The hour is coming in which all who are in the graves will hear His voice and come forth → STILL TO COME
- **JN 5:30 [FULFILLS]** 'He who rules over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God' ← 2SA 23:3 · MEDIUM p.532

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

Me, because he wrote about Me. 47 But since you do not believe what he wrote, how will you believe what I say?"

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

A boy's lunch of five loaves and two fish feeds five thousand men, and the crowd wants to crown Jesus king. That night He walks on the water. The next day He says, I am the bread of life, and eat My flesh. Many followers walk away. Jesus asks the Twelve if they will leave too, and Peter says, To whom would we go?

THE FEEDING OF THE FIVE THOUSAND // MATTHEW 14:13–21; MARK 6:30–44; LUKE 9:10–17

1 After this, Jesus crossed to the other side of the Sea of Galilee (that is, the Sea of Tiberias). 2 A large crowd followed Him because they saw the signs He was performing on the sick. 3 Then Jesus went up on the mountain and sat down with His disciples.

4 Now the Jewish Feast of the Passover was near. 5 When Jesus looked up and saw a large crowd coming toward Him, He said to Philip, "Where can we buy bread for these people to eat?" 6 But He was asking this to test him, for He knew what He was about to do.

7 Philip answered, "Half a year's wages would not buy enough bread for each of them to have a small piece."

8 One of His disciples, Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, said to Him, 9 "Here is a boy with five barley loaves and two small fish. But what difference will these make among so many?"

10 "Have the people sit down," Jesus said. Now there was plenty of grass in that place, so the men sat down, about five thousand of them.

11 Then Jesus took the loaves and the fish, gave thanks, and distributed to those who were seated as much as they wanted.

12 And when everyone was full, He said to His disciples, "Gather the pieces that are left over, so that nothing will be wasted."

13 So they collected them and filled twelve baskets with the pieces of the five barley loaves left over by those who had eaten.

14 When the people saw the sign that Jesus had performed, they began to say, "Truly this is the Prophet who is to come into the world."

15 Then Jesus, realizing that they were about to come and make Him king by force, withdrew again to a mountain by Himself.

JESUS WALKS ON WATER // MATTHEW 14:22–33; MARK 6:45–52

16 When evening came, His disciples went down to the sea, 17 got into a boat, and started across the sea to Capernaum. It was already dark, and Jesus had not yet gone out to them. 18 A strong wind was blowing, and the sea grew agitated.

19 When they had rowed about three or four miles, they saw Jesus approaching the boat, walking on the sea—and they were terrified. 20 But Jesus spoke up: "It is I; do not be afraid." 21 Then they were willing to take Him into the boat, and at once the boat reached the shore where they were heading.

JESUS THE BREAD OF LIFE

22 The next day, the crowd that had remained on the other side of the sea realized that only one boat had been there, and that Jesus had not boarded it with His disciples, but they had gone away alone. 23 However, some boats from Tiberias landed near the place where the people had eaten the bread after the Lord had given thanks. 24 So when the crowd saw that neither Jesus nor His disciples were there, they got into the boats and went to Capernaum to look for Him. 25 When they found Him on the other side of the sea, they asked Him, "Rabbi, when did You get here?"

26 Jesus replied, "Truly, truly, I tell you, it is not because you saw these signs that you are looking for Me, but because you ate the loaves and had your fill. 27 Do not work

JN 5:45 [FULFILLS] Believing Moses would lead one to believe in Christ ← DT 18:15-16 p.308
JN 6:9 [MIRACLE] A boy's lunch feeds five thousand

JN 6:14 [FULFILLS] A Prophet like Moses would arise ← DT 18:15 p.308
JN 6:19 [MIRACLE] Jesus walks on the water and the boat reaches land at once

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

for food that perishes, but for food that endures to eternal life, which the Son of Man will give you. For on Him God the Father has placed His seal of approval."

28 Then they inquired, "What must we do to perform the works of God?"

29 Jesus replied, "The work of God is this: to believe in the One He has sent."

30 So they asked Him, "What sign then will You perform, so that we may see it and believe You? What will You do? 31 Our fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, as it is written: *'He gave them bread from heaven to eat.'*"

32 Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I tell you, it was not Moses who gave you the bread from heaven, but it is My Father who gives you the true bread from heaven. 33 For the bread of God is He who comes down from heaven and gives life to the world."

34 "Sir," they said, "give us this bread at all times."

35 Jesus answered, "I am the bread of life. Whoever comes to Me will never hunger, and whoever believes in Me will never thirst. 36 But as I stated, you have seen Me and still you do not believe.

37 Everyone the Father gives Me will come to Me, and the one who comes to Me I will never drive away. 38 For I have come down from heaven, not to do My own will, but to do the will of Him who sent Me.

39 And this is the will of Him who sent Me, that I shall lose none of those He has given Me, but raise them up at the last day. 40 For it is My Father's will that everyone who looks to the Son and believes in Him shall have eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day."

41 At this, the Jews began to grumble about Jesus because He had said, "I am the bread that came down from heaven." 42 They were asking, "Is this not Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How then can He say, 'I have come down from heaven'?"

43 "Stop grumbling among yourselves," Jesus replied. 44 "No one can come to Me unless the Father who sent Me draws him, and I will raise him up at the last day. 45 It is written in the Prophets: *'And they will all be taught by God.'* Everyone who has heard the Father and learned from Him comes to Me— 46 not that anyone has seen the Father except the One who is from God; only He has seen the Father.

47 Truly, truly, I tell you, he who believes has eternal life. 48 I am the bread of life. 49 Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, yet they died. 50 This is the bread that comes down from heaven, so that anyone may eat of it and not die. 51 I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, he will live forever. And this bread, which I will give for the life of the world, is My flesh."

52 At this, the Jews began to argue among themselves, "How can this man give us His flesh to eat?"

53 So Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I tell you, unless you eat the flesh and drink the blood of the Son of Man, you have no life in you. 54 Whoever eats My flesh and drinks My blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day. 55 For My flesh is real food, and My blood is real drink.

56 Whoever eats My flesh and drinks My blood remains in Me, and I in him. 57 Just as the living Father sent Me and I live because of the Father, so also the one who feeds on Me will live because of Me. 58 This is the bread that came down from heaven. Unlike your fathers, who ate the manna and died, the one who eats this bread will live forever."

MANY DISCIPLES TURN BACK // MATTHEW 8:18–22; LUKE 9:57–62; LUKE 14:25–33

59 Jesus said this while teaching in the synagogue in Capernaum. 60 On hearing it,

- **JN 6:31 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 16:4, 15; PS 78:24 p.143
- **JN 6:32 [FULFILLS]** God would rain down bread from heaven ← EX 16:4 p.143
- **JN 6:40 [FULFILLS]** He would come to provide salvation ← IS 59:16b p.1134
- **JN 6:45 [FULFILLS]** 'All your children shall be taught by Yahweh' ← IS 54:13 p.1129
- **JN 6:51 [PROPHECY]** The bread that I will give is My flesh, which I will give for the life of the world → Fulfilled at Calvary

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

many of His disciples said, "This is a difficult teaching. Who can accept it?"

61 Aware that His disciples were grumbling about this teaching, Jesus asked them, "Does this offend you? 62 Then what will happen if you see the Son of Man ascend to where He was before?

63 The Spirit gives life; the flesh profits nothing. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and they are life. 64 However, there are some of you who do not believe." (For Jesus had known from the beginning which of them did not believe and who would betray Him.)

65 Then Jesus said, "This is why I told you that no one can come to Me unless the Father has granted it to him."

66 From that time on many of His disciples turned back and no longer walked with Him.

PETER'S CONFESSION OF FAITH // MATTHEW 16:13–20; MARK 8:27–30; LUKE 9:18–20

67 So Jesus asked the Twelve, "Do you want to leave too?"

68 Simon Peter replied, "Lord, to whom would we go? You have the words of eternal life. 69 We believe and know that You are the Holy One of God."

70 Jesus answered them, "Have I not chosen you, the Twelve? Yet one of you is a devil!" 71 He was speaking about Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot. For although Judas was one of the Twelve, he was later to betray Jesus.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Even Jesus' own brothers do not believe in Him yet. He goes to the Feast of Tabernacles quietly, then teaches openly in the temple. People argue about whether He is the Christ. On the last day He shouts, If anyone is thirsty, let him come to Me. The temple guards come back without Him because no one ever talked like this.

JESUS TEACHES AT THE FEAST

1 After this, Jesus traveled throughout Galilee. He did not want to travel in Judea, because the Jews there were trying to kill Him. 2 However, the Jewish Feast of Tabernacles was near. 3 So Jesus' brothers said to Him, "Leave here and go to Judea, so that Your disciples there may see the works You are doing. 4 For no one who wants to be known publicly acts in secret. Since You are doing these things, show Yourself to the world." 5 For even His own brothers did not believe in Him.

6 Therefore Jesus told them, "Although your time is always at hand, My time has not yet come. 7 The world cannot hate you, but it hates Me, because I testify that its works are evil. 8 Go up to the feast on your own. I am not going up to this feast, because My time has not yet come."

9 Having said this, Jesus remained in Galilee. 10 But after His brothers had gone up to the feast, He also went—not publicly, but in secret.

11 So the Jews were looking for Him at the feast and asking, "Where is He?"

12 Many in the crowds were whispering about Him. Some said, "He is a good man."

But others replied, "No, He deceives the people."

13 Yet no one would speak publicly about Him for fear of the Jews.

14 About halfway through the feast, Jesus went up to the temple courts and began to teach. 15 The Jews were amazed and asked, "How did this man attain such learning without having studied?"

16 "My teaching is not My own," Jesus replied. "It comes from Him who sent Me. 17 If anyone desires to do His will, he will know whether My teaching is from God or whether I speak on My own. 18 He who speaks on his own authority seeks his own glory, but He who seeks the glory of the One who sent Him is a man of truth; in Him there is no falsehood. 19 Has not Moses given you the law? Yet not one of

- **JN 6:70 [PROPHECY]** Have I not chosen you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil? He spoke of Judas Iscariot, for it was he who would betray Him → Fulfilled by Judas in the arrest (JN 18:2-3) p.1729
- **JN 7:5 [FULFILLS]** A stranger to His own brethren ← PS 69:8 p.928
- **JN 7:7 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE JESUS SPEAKING

you keeps it. Why are you trying to kill Me?"

20 "You have a demon," the crowd replied. "Who is trying to kill You?"

21 Jesus answered them, "I did one miracle, and you are all amazed. 22 But because Moses gave you circumcision, you circumcise a boy on the Sabbath (not that it is from Moses, but from the patriarchs.) 23 If a boy can be circumcised on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses will not be broken, why are you angry with Me for making the whole man well on the Sabbath? 24 Stop judging by outward appearances, and start judging justly."

IS JESUS THE CHRIST?

25 Then some of the people of Jerusalem began to say, "Isn't this the man they are trying to kill? 26 Yet here He is, speaking publicly, and they are not saying anything to Him. Have the rulers truly recognized that this is the Christ? 27 But we know where this man is from. When the Christ comes, no one will know where He is from."

28 Then Jesus, still teaching in the temple courts, cried out, "You know Me, and you know where I am from. I have not come of My own accord, but He who sent Me is true. You do not know Him, 29 but I know Him, because I am from Him and He sent Me."

30 So they tried to seize Him, but no one laid a hand on Him, because His hour had not yet come. 31 Many in the crowd, however, believed in Him and said, "When the Christ comes, will He perform more signs than this man?"

32 When the Pharisees heard the crowd whispering these things about Jesus, they and the chief priests sent officers to arrest Him. 33 So Jesus said, "I am with you only a little while longer, and then I am going to the One who sent Me. 34 You will look for Me, but you will not find Me; and where I am, you cannot come."

35 At this, the Jews said to one another, "Where does He intend to go that we will not find Him? Will He go where the Jews are dispersed among the Greeks, and teach the Greeks? 36 What does He mean by saying, 'You will look for Me, but you will not find Me,' and, 'Where I am, you cannot come'?"

LIVING WATER

37 On the last and greatest day of the feast, Jesus stood up and called out in a loud voice, "If anyone is thirsty, let him come to Me and drink. 38 Whoever believes in Me, as the Scripture has said: 'Streams of living water will flow from within him.'" 39 He was speaking about the Spirit, whom those who believed in Him were later to receive. For the Spirit had not yet been given, because Jesus had not yet been glorified.

DIVISION OVER JESUS

40 On hearing these words, some of the people said, "This is truly the Prophet."

41 Others declared, "This is the Christ."

But still others asked, "How can the Christ come from Galilee? 42 Doesn't the Scripture say that the Christ will come from the line of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David lived?"

43 So there was division in the crowd because of Jesus. 44 Some of them wanted to seize Him, but no one laid a hand on Him.

THE UNBELIEF OF THE JEWISH LEADERS

45 Then the officers returned to the chief priests and Pharisees, who asked them, "Why didn't you bring Him in?"

46 "Never has anyone spoken like this man!" the officers answered.

47 "Have you also been deceived?" replied the Pharisees. 48 "Have any of the rulers or Pharisees believed in Him? 49 But this crowd that does not know the law—they are under a curse."

- **JN 7:37 [FULFILLS]** The Feast of Tabernacles ended with a great eighth day ← LEV 23:34-36 · MEDIUM p.212
- **JN 7:38 [PROPHECY]** Streams of living water, the Spirit, would be given to believers after Jesus was glorified → ACTS 2:1-4; ACTS 2:33 p.1741
- **JN 7:38 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 58:11; EZK 47:1; ZECH 14:8 p.1133
- **JN 7:42 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← MIC 5:2; 2SA 7:12 p.1436
- **JN 7:43 [FULFILLS]** This Child is destined for the fall and rising of many in Israel... a sword will pierce through your own soul also (Simeon to Mary) ← LK 2:34-35 p.1650

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

50 Nicodemus, who had gone to Jesus earlier and who himself was one of them, asked, 51 "Does our law convict a man without first hearing from him to determine what he has done?"

52 "Aren't you also from Galilee?" they replied. "Look into it, and you will see that no prophet comes out of Galilee."

53 [Then each went to his own home.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Leaders drag in a woman caught in adultery and want her stoned. Jesus writes in the dirt and says, Let him who is without sin throw the first stone. One by one they leave. Then Jesus says, I am the light of the world, and the truth will set you free. When He says Before Abraham was born, I am, they pick up rocks.

THE WOMAN CAUGHT IN ADULTERY

1 But Jesus went to the Mount of Olives.

2 Early in the morning He went back into the temple courts. All the people came to Him, and He sat down to teach them. 3 The scribes and Pharisees, however, brought to Him a woman caught in adultery. They made her stand before them 4 and said, "Teacher, this woman was caught in the act of adultery. 5 In the Law Moses commanded us to stone such a woman. So what do You say?"

6 They said this to test Him, in order to have a basis for accusing Him. But Jesus bent down and began to write on the ground with His finger.

7 When they continued to question Him, He straightened up and said to them, "Let him who is without sin among you be the first to cast a stone at her." 8 And again He bent down and wrote on the ground.

9 When they heard this, they began to go away one by one, beginning with the older ones, until only Jesus was left, with the woman standing there. 10 Then Jesus straightened up and asked her, "Woman, where are your accusers? Has no one condemned you?"

11 "No one, Lord," she answered.

"Then neither do I condemn you," Jesus declared. "Now go and sin no more."]

JESUS THE LIGHT OF THE WORLD // 1 JOHN 1:5–10

12 Once again, Jesus spoke to the people and said, "I am the light of the world. Whoever follows Me will never walk in the darkness, but will have the light of life."

13 So the Pharisees said to Him, "You are testifying about Yourself; Your testimony is not valid."

14 Jesus replied, "Even if I testify about Myself, My testimony is valid, because I know where I came from and where I am going. But you do not know where I came from or where I am going. 15 You judge according to the flesh; I judge no one. 16 But even if I do judge, My judgment is true, because I am not alone; I am with the Father who sent Me. 17 *Even in your own Law it is written that the testimony of two men is valid.* 18 I am One who testifies about Myself, and the Father, who sent Me, also testifies about Me."

19 "Where is Your Father?" they asked Him.

"You do not know Me or My Father," Jesus answered. "If you knew Me, you would know My Father as well."

20 He spoke these words while teaching in the temple courts, near the treasury. Yet no one seized Him, because His hour had not yet come.

21 Again He said to them, "I am going away, and you will look for Me, but you will die in your sin. Where I am going, you cannot come."

22 So the Jews began to ask, "Will He kill Himself, since He says, 'Where I am going, you cannot come'?"

23 Then He told them, "You are from below; I am from above. You are of this world; I am not of this world. 24 That is why I told you that you would die in your

JN 7:53 [TEXT] John 7:53 to 8:11 is in brackets because the oldest copies of John, like Papyrus 66, Papyrus 75, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, do not have it. Some later copies put it in other places, even in Luke. Many scholars think it is a true story about Jesus that was passed down and added later. See the New Testament Introduction.

JN 8:5 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 20:10; DT 22:22-24 p.207

JN 8:12 [FULFILLS] He is the Light of the Gentiles ← IS 49:6 p.1122

JN 8:17 [QUOTES] Quotes ← DT 19:15; 17:6 p.310

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

sins. For unless you believe that I am He,
you will die in your sins."

25 "Who are You?" they asked.

"Just what I have been telling you from the
beginning," Jesus replied. 26 "I have much
to say about you and much to judge. But
the One who sent Me is truthful, and what
I have heard from Him, I tell the world."

27 They did not understand that He was
telling them about the Father. 28 So Jesus
said, "When you have lifted up the Son of
Man, then you will know that I am He, and
that I do nothing on My own, but speak
exactly what the Father has taught Me. 29
He who sent Me is with Me. He has not
left Me alone, because I always do what
pleases Him."

THE TRUTH WILL SET YOU FREE // 2 JOHN 1:4–6

30 As Jesus spoke these things, many be-
lieved in Him. 31 So He said to the Jews
who had believed Him, "If you continue in
My word, you are truly My disciples. 32
Then you will know the truth, and the truth
will set you free."

33 "We are Abraham's descendants," they
answered. "We have never been slaves to
anyone. How can You say we will be set
free?"

34 Jesus replied, "Truly, truly, I tell you,
everyone who sins is a slave to sin. 35 A
slave does not remain in the house for-
ever, but a son remains forever. 36 So if the
Son sets you free, you will be free indeed.

37 I know you are Abraham's descendants,
but you are trying to kill Me because My
word has no place within you. 38 I speak of
what I have seen in the presence of the
Father, and you do what you have heard
from your father."

39 "Abraham is our father," they replied.

"If you were children of Abraham," said
Jesus, "you would do the works of Abra-
ham. 40 But now you are trying to kill Me, a
man who has told you the truth that I
heard from God. Abraham never did such
a thing. 41 You are doing the works of your
father."

"We are not illegitimate children," they de-
clared. "Our only Father is God Himself."

42 Jesus said to them, "If God were your
Father, you would love Me, for I have
come here from God. I have not come on
My own, but He sent Me.

43 Why do you not understand what I am
saying? It is because you are unable to
accept My message. 44 You belong to your
father, the devil, and you want to carry out
his desires. He was a murderer from the
beginning, refusing to uphold the truth,
because there is no truth in him. When he
lies, he speaks his native language, be-
cause he is a liar and the father of lies. 45
But because I speak the truth, you do not
believe Me!

46 Which of you can prove Me guilty of
sin? If I speak the truth, why do you not
believe Me? 47 Whoever belongs to God
hears the words of God. The reason you
do not hear is that you do not belong to
God."

BEFORE ABRAHAM WAS BORN, I AM

48 The Jews answered Him, "Are we not
right to say that You are a Samaritan and
You have a demon?"

49 "I do not have a demon," Jesus replied,
"but I honor My Father, and you dishonor
Me. 50 I do not seek My own glory. There
is One who seeks it, and He is the Judge.
51 Truly, truly, I tell you, if anyone keeps My
word, he will never see death."

52 "Now we know that You have a demon!"
declared the Jews. "Abraham died, and so
did the prophets, yet You say that anyone
who keeps Your word will never taste
death. 53 Are You greater than our father
Abraham? He died, as did the prophets.
Who do You claim to be?"

54 Jesus answered, "If I glorify Myself, My
glory means nothing. The One who glori-
fies Me is My Father, of whom you say,

- **JN 8:28 [PROPHECY]** The leaders would lift up the Son of Man and then know who He is → JN 19:17-18; MT 27:54 p.1732
- **JN 8:28 [FULFILLS]** Sent by the Father to speak God's words ← DT 18:18 p.308
- **JN 8:31 [FULFILLS]** Provide freedom from the bondage of sin ← IS 61:1c p.1136

- **JN 8:44 [DEMONIC]** The devil is a liar and the father of lies
- **JN 8:48 [FULFILLS]** Despised by the nation of Israel ← IS 49:7 p.1123

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

'He is our God.' 55 You do not know Him, but I know Him. If I said I did not know Him, I would be a liar like you. But I do know Him, and I keep His word. 56 Your father Abraham rejoiced that he would see My day. He saw it and was glad."

57 Then the Jews said to Him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and You have seen Abraham?"

58 "Truly, truly, I tell you," Jesus declared, "before Abraham was born, I am!"

59 At this, they picked up stones to throw at Him. But Jesus was hidden and went out of the temple area.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus spits in the dirt, puts mud on a blind man's eyes, and sends him to wash in the Pool of Siloam. He comes back seeing. The Pharisees question him, then his parents, then him again. He finally says, I was blind and now I see, and they throw him out. Jesus finds him, and the man worships Him.

JESUS HEALS THE MAN BORN BLIND

1 Now as Jesus was passing by, He saw a man blind from birth, 2 and His disciples asked Him, "Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, that he was born blind?"

3 Jesus answered, "Neither this man nor his parents sinned, but this happened so that the works of God would be displayed in him. 4 While it is daytime, we must do the works of Him who sent Me. Night is coming, when no one can work. 5 While I am in the world, I am the light of the world."

6 When Jesus had said this, He spit on the ground, made some mud, and applied it to the man's eyes. 7 Then He told him, "Go, wash in the Pool of Siloam" (which means "Sent"). So the man went and washed, and came back seeing.

8 At this, his neighbors and those who had formerly seen him begging began to ask, "Isn't this the man who used to sit and beg?"

9 Some claimed that he was, but others said, "No, he just looks like him."

But the man kept saying, "I am the one."

10 "How then were your eyes opened?" they asked.

11 He answered, "The man they call Jesus made some mud and anointed my eyes, and He told me to go to Siloam and wash. So I went and washed and received my sight."

12 "Where is He?" they asked.

"I do not know," he answered.

THE PHARISEES INVESTIGATE THE HEALING

13 They brought to the Pharisees the man who had been blind. 14 Now the day on which Jesus had made the mud and opened his eyes was a Sabbath. 15 So the Pharisees also asked him how he had received his sight.

The man answered, "He put mud on my eyes, and I washed, and now I can see."

16 Because of this, some of the Pharisees said, "This man is not from God, for He does not keep the Sabbath."

But others said, "How can a sinful man perform such signs?"

And there was division among them. 17 So once again they asked the man who had been blind, "What do you say about Him, since it was your eyes He opened?"

"He is a prophet," the man replied.

18 The Jews still did not believe that the man had been blind and had received his sight until they summoned his parents 19 and asked, "Is this your son, the one you say was born blind? So how is it that he can now see?"

20 His parents answered, "We know he is our son, and we know he was born blind. 21 But how he can now see or who opened his eyes, we do not know. Ask him. He is old enough to speak for himself."

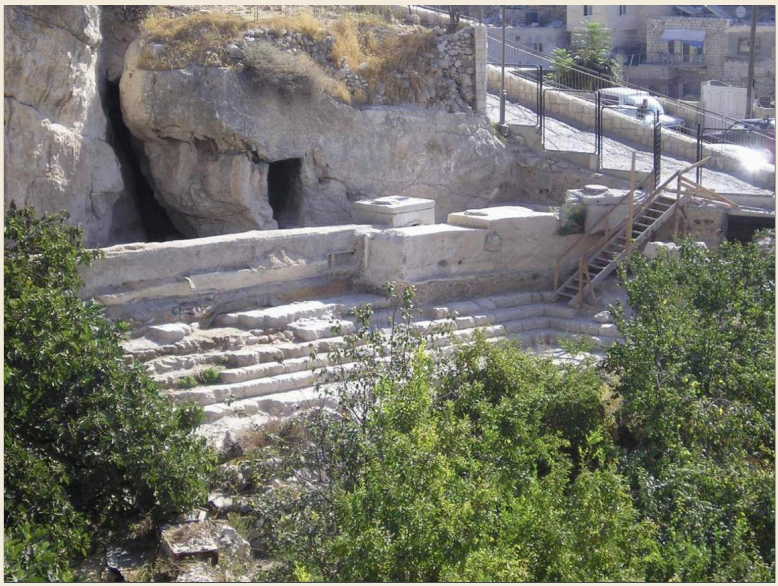
22 His parents said this because they were afraid of the Jews. For the Jews had al-

JN 8:58 [FULFILLS] God reveals His name I AM and 2 more ← EX 3:13-15; IS 9:6; MIC 5:2c p.125
JN 8:58 [NOTE] I AM. See Is Jesus God?
JN 9:6 [MIRACLE] A man born blind washes in Siloam and comes back seeing
JN 9:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Discovered 2004-2005 below the traditional site; Second Temple period stepped pool → FIELD NOTES p.1715

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE POOL OF SILOAM

JOHN 9:1 TO 11 · ISAIAH 22:11



The stone steps of the Pool of Siloam in Jerusalem, uncovered in 2004.

WHAT IT IS

A large stone pool with wide steps going down on its sides, at the low south end of ancient Jerusalem, in the City of David. Water flowed in from the Gihon Spring through King Hezekiah's tunnel.

HOW OLD IT IS

The pool Jesus knew was built about 100 BC or a little later. Coins of the Jewish king Alexander Jannaeus were found in its plaster, and coins from the Jewish revolt, AD 66 to 70, were found in the dirt that later filled it in.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In June 2004 city workers fixing a sewer pipe hit the stone steps. Archaeologists Ronny Reich and Eli Shukron then dug it up. Before that, visitors were shown a much smaller pool from about AD 400, a little higher up the hill.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the City of David park, just outside the walls of Jerusalem's Old City. More of the pool has been uncovered since 2022, along with a stone street that ran from the pool up to the temple.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

John says Jesus sent the blind man to wash in the Pool of Siloam 9:7. This is a big public pool from exactly that time, right where John said. Pilgrims going up to the temple likely washed here first.

THE STEPS

The pool had sets of five steps with flat landings between them, so crowds could walk down into the water from the sides.

THE PILGRIM ROAD

The stone street that ran from the pool up to the temple was about a third of a mile long. Coins found under its paving stones show it was paved about AD 30 or soon after, in the days of Pontius Pilate. Jesus may have walked on it.

WHY SILOAM

John says Siloam means Sent, 9:7. The man was sent to the pool, and Jesus is the One the Father sent, a point John makes again and again, 9:4.

SEE ALSO

The water came through Hezekiah's tunnel. See the Siloam Tunnel Inscription Field Notes page in Isaiah, p.1087.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART JESUS SPEAKING

ready determined that anyone who confessed Jesus as the Christ would be put out of the synagogue. 23 That was why his parents said, "He is old enough. Ask him."

24 So a second time they called for the man who had been blind and said, "Give glory to God! We know that this man is a sinner."

25 He answered, "Whether He is a sinner I do not know. There is one thing I do know: I was blind, but now I see!"

26 "What did He do to you?" they asked. "How did He open your eyes?"

27 He replied, "I already told you, and you did not listen. Why do you want to hear it again? Do you also want to become His disciples?"

28 Then they heaped insults on him and said, "You are His disciple; we are disciples of Moses. 29 We know that God spoke to Moses, but we do not know where this man is from."

30 "That is remarkable indeed!" the man said. "You do not know where He is from, and yet He opened my eyes. 31 We know that God does not listen to sinners, but He does listen to the one who worships Him and does His will. 32 Never before has anyone heard of opening the eyes of a man born blind. 33 If this man were not from God, He could do no such thing."

34 They replied, "You were born in utter sin, and you are instructing us?" And they threw him out.

SPIRITUAL BLINDNESS

35 When Jesus heard that they had thrown him out, He found the man and said, "Do you believe in the Son of Man?"

36 "Who is He, Sir?" he replied. "Tell me so that I may believe in Him."

37 "You have already seen Him," Jesus answered. "He is the One speaking with you."

38 "Lord, I believe," he said. And he worshiped Jesus.

39 Then Jesus declared, "For judgment I have come into this world, so that the blind may see and those who see may become blind."

40 Some of the Pharisees who were with Him heard this, and they asked Him, "Are we blind too?"

41 "If you were blind," Jesus replied, "you would not be guilty of sin. But since you claim you can see, your guilt remains."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus says, I am the door, and I am the good shepherd who lays down His life for the sheep. Nobody takes His life; He lays it down and takes it up again. At the Feast of Dedication He says, I and the Father are one. The crowd picks up stones again, which is becoming a habit.

JESUS THE GOOD SHEPHERD // PSALM 23:1–6; EZEKIEL 34:11–24

1 "Truly, truly, I tell you, whoever does not enter the sheepfold by the gate, but climbs in some other way, is a thief and a robber. 2 But the one who enters by the gate is the shepherd of the sheep. 3 The gatekeeper opens the gate for him, and the sheep listen for his voice. He calls his own sheep by name and leads them out.

4 When he has brought out all his own, he goes on ahead of them, and his sheep follow him because they know his voice. 5 But they will never follow a stranger; in fact, they will flee from him because they do not recognize his voice."

6 Jesus spoke to them using this illustration, but they did not understand what He was telling them. 7 So He said to them again, "Truly, truly, I tell you, I am the gate for the sheep. 8 All who came before Me were thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not listen to them. 9 I am the gate. If anyone enters through Me, he will be saved. He will come in and go out and find pasture. 10 The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I have come that they may have life, and have it in all its fullness.

JN 9:25 [FULFILLS] He would open blind eyes ← IS 42:7 p.1113

JN 9:41 [HEART] Jesus says if you were blind you would have no sin, but because you say you see, your guilt remains.

JN 10:10 [FULFILLS] A compassionate Shepherd who gives life ← IS 40:11 p.1109

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

11 I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down His life for the sheep. 12 The hired hand is not the shepherd, and the sheep are not his own. When he sees the wolf coming, he abandons the sheep and runs away. Then the wolf pounces on them and scatters the flock. 13 The man runs away because he is a hired servant and is unconcerned for the sheep.

14 I am the good shepherd. I know My sheep and My sheep know Me, 15 just as the Father knows Me and I know the Father. And I lay down My life for the sheep. 16 I have other sheep that are not of this fold. I must bring them in as well, and they will listen to My voice. Then there will be one flock and one shepherd.

17 The reason the Father loves Me is that I lay down My life in order to take it up again. 18 No one takes it from Me, but I lay it down of My own accord. I have authority to lay it down and authority to take it up again. This charge I have received from My Father."

19 Again there was division among the Jews because of Jesus' message. 20 Many of them said, "He is demon-possessed and insane. Why would you listen to Him?"

21 But others replied, "These are not the words of a man possessed by a demon. Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?"

JESUS AT THE FEAST OF DEDICATION

22 At that time the Feast of Dedication took place in Jerusalem. It was winter, 23 and Jesus was walking in the temple courts in Solomon's Colonnade. 24 So the Jews gathered around Him and demanded, "How long will You keep us in suspense? If You are the Christ, tell us plainly."

25 "I already told you," Jesus replied, "but you did not believe. The works I do in My Father's name testify on My behalf. 26 But because you are not My sheep, you refuse to believe. 27 My sheep listen to My voice; I know them, and they follow Me. 28 I give them eternal life, and they will never perish. No one can snatch them out of My hand. 29 My Father who has given them to Me is greater than all. No one can snatch them out of My Father's hand. 30 I and the Father are one."

31 At this, the Jews again picked up stones to stone Him. 32 But Jesus responded, "I have shown you many good works from the Father. For which of these do you stone Me?"

33 "We are not stoning You for any good work," said the Jews, "but for blasphemy, because You, who are a man, make Yourself out to be God."

34 Jesus replied, "Is it not written in your Law: *'I have said you are gods'?* 35 If he called them gods to whom the word of God came—and the Scripture cannot be broken— 36 then what about the One whom the Father sanctified and sent into the world? How then can you accuse Me of blasphemy for stating that I am the Son of God?

37 If I am not doing the works of My Father, then do not believe Me. 38 But if I am doing them, even though you do not believe Me, believe the works themselves, so that you may know and understand that the Father is in Me, and I am in the Father."

39 At this, they tried again to seize Him, but He escaped their grasp.

JOHN'S TESTIMONY CONFIRMED

40 Then Jesus went back across the Jordan to the place where John had first been baptizing, and He stayed there. 41 Many came to Him and said, "Although

- **JN 10:11 [FULFILLS]** Moses' request for a leader so the congregation be not as sheep without a shepherd and 5 more ← NUM 27:16; PS 23:1; EZK 34:11-16; EZK 34:23-24; MIC 5:4-5; ZECH 11:4-11 p.267
- **JN 10:11 [PROPHECY]** I lay down My life for the sheep... I lay it down of Myself; I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again → Fulfilled in willing crucifixion and self-resurrection
- **JN 10:15 [PROPHECY]** I lay down My life for the sheep... I lay it down of Myself; I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again → Fulfilled in willing crucifixion and self-resurrection
- **JN 10:16 [FULFILLS]** To Him the obedience of the peoples would belong ← GEN 49:10 p.114
- **JN 10:17 [PROPHECY]** I lay down My life for the sheep... I lay it down of Myself; I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again → Fulfilled in willing crucifixion and self-resurrection
- **JN 10:22 [FULFILLS]** How long shall the vision be? ← DAN 8:13-14 p.1344
- **JN 10:28 [NOTE]** NEVER PERISH. See Once Saved, Always Saved?
- **JN 10:30 [FULFILLS]** Called Everlasting Father (Avi Adth) ← IS 9:6 p.1072
- **JN 10:34 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 82:6 p.939

John never performed a sign, everything he said about this man was true." 42 And many in that place believed in Jesus.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

ONCE SAVED, ALWAYS SAVED?

No One Can Snatch Them

JOHN 10:27 TO 29 · HEBREWS 6:4 TO 6 · 1 JOHN 2:19 · PHILIPPIANS 1:6

WHAT JESUS SAID

My sheep listen to My voice. I give them eternal life, and they will never perish. No one can snatch them out of My hand, 10:27 to 28. No one can snatch them out of My Father's hand, 10:29.

THE VERSES ON THE OTHER SIDE

Hebrews 6:4 to 6 warns about people who have tasted the heavenly gift and shared in the Holy Spirit and then fall away. If we go on sinning on purpose, no sacrifice for sins is left, Hebrews 10:26. A branch that does not remain in Jesus is thrown away, John 15:6. Paul disciplines himself so he will not be disqualified, 1 Corinthians 9:27.

THE VERSES ON THIS SIDE

He who began a good work in you will carry it on to completion, Philippians 1:6. Nothing can separate us from the love of God, Romans 8:38 to 39. You are sealed with the Holy Spirit, Ephesians 1:13 to 14. They went out from us, but they did not really belong to us, 1 John 2:19.

HOW THE FIGHT STARTED

Jacob Arminius, a Dutch pastor, questioned Calvinist teaching and died in 1609. His followers said in 1610 that whether a believer can fall away needed more study. The Synod of Dort answered in 1619 that true believers will persevere to the end. Later Arminians, like John Wesley, taught that a believer can fall away. Long before, about AD 428, Augustine wrote a whole book calling perseverance a gift God gives, On the Gift of Perseverance.

Can You Lose Your Salvation?

JOHN 10:28 · HEBREWS 6:4 TO 6 · 1 CORINTHIANS 3:15 · 1 JOHN 5:13

CALVINIST: THE SAINTS PERSEVERE

God keeps everyone He saves, and real faith keeps going. Someone who falls away for good was never truly saved, 1 John 2:19. The warnings are how God keeps His people going. Reformed, Presbyterian and many Baptist churches hold this view.

FREE GRACE: ONCE SAVED, ALWAYS SAVED

Once you truly believe, you are saved forever, even if you later live badly or stop believing. You can lose rewards, but not salvation; you will be saved, but only as through fire, 1 Corinthians 3:15. Zane Hodges taught it, and Charles Stanley's 1990 book Eternal Security made it popular.

ARMINIAN AND WESLEYAN

God's hand holds you, but you can choose to walk away. The warnings in Hebrews mean what they say. Methodists, Nazarenes, Free Will Baptists and most Pentecostal churches, like the Assemblies of God, hold this view.

CATHOLIC, ORTHODOX AND LUTHERAN

Grace given in baptism can be lost by serious sin and turning from God, and restored by repentance. Catholics restore it through confession.

THE REAL QUESTION

Most of the fight is about people who once looked like believers and later walked away. Calvinists say they were never truly saved. Arminians say they were and are now lost. Free Grace says they are still saved. All three are trying to explain the same Bible verses and the same sad stories.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

No one is saved or kept by their own strength. Real faith shows up in a changed life. And you can know you have eternal life by trusting the Son, 1 John 5:12 to 13.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE JESUS SPEAKING

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Lazarus, a close friend, is sick, and Jesus waits two more days. By the time He arrives Lazarus has been dead four days. Jesus says, I am the resurrection and the life. Then Jesus weeps. He calls, Lazarus, come out, and a dead man walks out still wrapped up. The leaders decide Jesus must die.

THE DEATH OF LAZARUS

1 At this time a man named Lazarus was
sick. He lived in Bethany, the village of
Mary and her sister Martha. 2 (Mary,
whose brother Lazarus was sick, was to
anoint the Lord with perfume and wipe His
feet with her hair.) 3 So the sisters sent
word to Jesus, "Lord, the one You love is
sick."

4 When Jesus heard this, He said, "This
sickness will not end in death. No, it is for
the glory of God, so that the Son of God
may be glorified through it."

5 Now Jesus loved Martha and her sister
and Lazarus. 6 So on hearing that Lazarus
was sick, He stayed where He was for two
days, 7 and then He said to the disciples,
"Let us go back to Judea."

8 "Rabbi," they replied, "the Jews just tried
to stone You, and You are going back
there?"

9 Jesus answered, "Are there not twelve
hours of daylight? If anyone walks in the
daytime, he will not stumble, because he
sees by the light of this world. 10 But if
anyone walks at night, he will stumble,
because he has no light."

11 After He had said this, He told them,
"Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep, but
I am going there to wake him up."

12 His disciples replied, "Lord, if he is
sleeping, he will get better." 13 They
thought that Jesus was talking about ac-
tual sleep, but He was speaking about the
death of Lazarus.

14 So Jesus told them plainly, "Lazarus is
dead, 15 and for your sake I am glad I was
not there, so that you may believe. But let
us go to him."

16 Then Thomas called Didymus said to his
fellow disciples, "Let us also go, so that
we may die with Him."

JESUS COMFORTS MARTHA AND MARY

17 When Jesus arrived, He found that
Lazarus had already spent four days in
the tomb. 18 Now Bethany was near
Jerusalem, a little less than two miles
away, 19 and many of the Jews had come
to Martha and Mary to console them in the
loss of their brother. 20 So when Martha
heard that Jesus was coming, she went
out to meet Him, but Mary stayed at
home.

21 Martha said to Jesus, "Lord, if You had
been here, my brother would not have
died. 22 But even now I know that God will
give You whatever You ask of Him."

23 "Your brother will rise again," Jesus told
her.

24 Martha replied, "I know that he will rise
again in the resurrection at the last day."

25 Jesus said to her, "I am the resurrection
and the life. Whoever believes in Me will
live, even though he dies. 26 And everyone
who lives and believes in Me will never
die. Do you believe this?"

27 "Yes, Lord," she answered, "I believe
that You are the Christ, the Son of God,
who was to come into the world."

28 After Martha had said this, she went
back and called her sister Mary aside to
tell her, "The Teacher is here and is asking
for you." 29 And when Mary heard this, she
got up quickly and went to Him.

30 Now Jesus had not yet entered the vil-
lage, but was still at the place where
Martha had met Him. 31 When the Jews
who were in the house consoling Mary
saw how quickly she got up and went out,
they followed her, supposing she was go-
ing to the tomb to mourn there. 32 When
Mary came to Jesus and saw Him, she fell
at His feet and said, "Lord, if You had
been here, my brother would not have
died."

JN 11:4 [PROPHECY] Lazarus' sickness would not end in death and Jesus would wake him → JN 11:43-44 p.1720
JN 11:11 [PROPHECY] Lazarus' sickness would not end in death and Jesus would wake him → JN 11:43-44 p.1720

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

33 When Jesus saw her weeping, and the
Jews who had come with her also weep-
ing, He was deeply moved in spirit and
troubled. 34 "Where have you put him?" He
asked.

"Come and see, Lord," they answered.

35 Jesus wept.

36 Then the Jews said, "See how He loved
him!"

37 But some of them asked, "Could not this
man who opened the eyes of the blind
also have kept Lazarus from dying?"

JESUS RAISES LAZARUS // ACTS 9:36–43

38 Jesus, once again deeply moved, came
to the tomb. It was a cave with a stone
laid across the entrance. 39 "Take away
the stone," Jesus said.

"Lord, by now he stinks," said Martha, the
sister of the dead man. "It has already
been four days."

40 Jesus replied, "Did I not tell you that if
you believed, you would see the glory of
God?"

41 So they took away the stone. Then Je-
sus lifted His eyes upward and said, "Fa-
ther, I thank You that You have heard Me.
42 I knew that You always hear Me, but I
say this for the benefit of the people
standing here, so they may believe that
You sent Me."

43 After Jesus had said this, He called out
in a loud voice, "Lazarus, come out!"

44 The man who had been dead came out
with his hands and feet bound in strips of
linen, and his face wrapped in a cloth.

"Unwrap him and let him go," Jesus told
them.

THE PLOT TO KILL JESUS // MATTHEW 26:1–5; MARK 14:1–2; LUKE 22:1–2

45 Therefore many of the Jews who had
come to Mary, and had seen what Jesus
did, believed in Him. 46 But some of them
went to the Pharisees and told them what
Jesus had done.

47 Then the chief priests and Pharisees
convened the Sanhedrin and said, "What
are we to do? This man is performing
many signs. 48 If we let Him go on like this,
everyone will believe in Him, and then the
Romans will come and take away both our
place and our nation."

49 But one of them, named Caiaphas, who
was high priest that year, said to them,
"You know nothing at all! 50 You do not re-
alize that it is better for you that one man
die for the people than that the whole na-
tion perish."

51 Caiaphas did not say this on his own. In-
stead, as high priest that year, he was
prophesying that Jesus would die for the
nation, 52 and not only for the nation, but
also for the scattered children of God, to
gather them together into one.

53 So from that day on they plotted to kill
Him. 54 As a result, Jesus no longer went
about publicly among the Jews, but He
withdrew to a town called Ephraim in an
area near the wilderness. And He stayed
there with the disciples.

55 Now the Jewish Passover was near, and
many people went up from the country to
Jerusalem to purify themselves before the
Passover. 56 They kept looking for Jesus
and asking one another as they stood in
the temple courts, "What do you think?
Will He come to the feast at all?" 57 But the
chief priests and Pharisees had given or-
ders that anyone who knew where He was
must report it, so that they could arrest
Him.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

*Mary pours a pound of expensive perfume on Je-
sus' feet, and Judas complains about the cost.
Jesus rides into Jerusalem on a young donkey
while the crowd waves palm branches. Some
Greeks ask to see Him. Jesus says a seed must
die to make a harvest, and a voice from heaven
answers Him.*

- **JN 11:41 [MIRACLE]** Lazarus, come out!
- **JN 11:43 [FULFILLS]** Lazarus' sickness would not end in death and Jesus would wake him ← JN 11:4, 11 p.1719
- **JN 11:50 [PROPHECY]** Caiaphas prophesied that Jesus would die for the nation and gather God's scattered children → JN 18:14; JN 19:30; ACTS 10:43 p.1729
- **JN 11:53 [FULFILLS]** They took counsel together to put Him to death ← PS 31:13 p.903

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

MARY ANOINTS JESUS // MATTHEW 26:6–13; MARK 14:3–9; LUKE 7:36–50

1 Six days before the Passover, Jesus
came to Bethany, the hometown of
Lazarus, whom He had raised from the
dead. 2 So they hosted a dinner for Jesus
there. Martha served, and Lazarus was
among those reclining at the table with
Him. 3 Then Mary took about a pint of ex-
pensive perfume, made of pure nard, and
she anointed Jesus' feet and wiped them
with her hair. And the house was filled
with the fragrance of the perfume.
4 But one of His disciples, Judas Iscariot,
who was going to betray Him, asked, 5
"Why wasn't this perfume sold for a year's
wages and the money given to the poor?"
6 Judas did not say this because he cared
about the poor, but because he was a
thief. As keeper of the money bag, he
used to take from what was put into it.
7 "Leave her alone," Jesus replied. "She
has kept this perfume in preparation for
the day of My burial. 8 The poor you will
always have with you, but you will not al-
ways have Me."

THE PLOT TO KILL LAZARUS

9 Meanwhile a large crowd of Jews
learned that Jesus was there. And they
came not only because of Him, but also to
see Lazarus, whom He had raised from
the dead. 10 So the chief priests made
plans to kill Lazarus as well, 11 for on ac-
count of him many of the Jews were de-
serting them and believing in Jesus.

THE TRIUMPHAL ENTRY // ZECHARIAH 9:9–13; MATTHEW 21:1–11; MARK 11:1–11; LUKE 19:28–40

12 The next day the great crowd that had
come to the feast heard that Jesus was
coming to Jerusalem. 13 They took palm
branches and went out to meet Him,
shouting:

"Hosanna!"

"Blessed is He who comes in the name of the Lord!"

"Blessed is the King of Israel!"

14 Finding a young donkey, Jesus sat on it,
as it is written:

15 *"Do not be afraid, O Daughter of Zion.*
See, your King is coming,
seated on the colt of a donkey."

16 At first His disciples did not understand
these things, but after Jesus was glorified
they remembered what had been done to
Him, and they realized that these very
things had also been written about Him.
17 Meanwhile, many people who had been
with Jesus when He called Lazarus from
the tomb and raised him from the dead
continued to testify. 18 That is also why the
crowd went out to meet Him, because
they heard that He had performed this
sign.
19 Then the Pharisees said to one another,
"You can see that this is doing you no
good. Look how the whole world has gone
after Him!"

JESUS PREDICTS HIS DEATH

20 Now there were some Greeks among
those who went up to worship at the
feast. 21 They came to Philip, who was
from Bethsaida in Galilee, and requested
of him, "Sir, we want to see Jesus." 22
Philip relayed this appeal to Andrew, and
both of them went and told Jesus.
23 But Jesus replied, "The hour has come
for the Son of Man to be glorified. 24 Truly,
truly, I tell you, unless a kernel of wheat
falls to the ground and dies, it remains
only a seed. But if it dies, it bears much
fruit. 25 Whoever loves his life will lose it,

- **JN 12:1 [FULFILLS]** Wherever this gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be told as a memorial to her (regarding Mary of Bethany) ← MK 14:9; MT 26:13 p.1632
- **JN 12:7 [PROPHECY]** She has done this for My burial (regarding Mary of Bethany's anointing with costly oil) → Fulfilled at His burial (Matt 27:57-61; JN 19:38-42) p.1601
- **JN 12:12 [FULFILLS]** The timeline of Messiah's announcement (70 weeks prophecy) ← DAN 9:25 · MEDIUM p.1346
- **JN 12:13 [FULFILLS]** The crowd would cry save us, which is Hosanna ← PS 118:25 p.964
- **JN 12:14 [FULFILLS]** Zion's King would come righteous and bringing salvation, humble and riding on a donkey ← ZECH 9:9 p.1498
- **JN 12:15 [FULFILLS]** The Lord's Anointed King ← 1SA 2:10 · MEDIUM p.439
- **JN 12:15 [QUOTES]** Direct ← ZECH 9:9 p.1498
- **JN 12:18 [FULFILLS]** The Gentiles would seek Him ← IS 11:10 p.1075
- **JN 12:20 [FULFILLS]** The nations would wait on His teachings ← IS 42:4 · MEDIUM p.1113
- **JN 12:23 [PROPHECY]** The hour has come that the Son of Man should be glorified. Most assuredly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the ground and dies, it remains alone → Fulfilled at the crucifixion and its resulting harvest of believers

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

but whoever hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life. 26 If anyone serves Me, he must follow Me; and where I am, My servant will be as well. If anyone serves Me, the Father will honor him.

27 Now My soul is troubled, and what shall I say? 'Father, save Me from this hour'? No, it is for this purpose that I have come to this hour. 28 Father, glorify Your name!"

Then a voice came from heaven: "I have glorified it, and I will glorify it again."

29 The crowd standing there heard it and said that it had thundered. Others said that an angel had spoken to Him.

30 In response, Jesus said, "This voice was not for My benefit, but yours. 31 Now judgment is upon this world; now the prince of this world will be cast out. 32 And I, when I am lifted up from the earth, will draw everyone to Myself." 33 He said this to indicate the kind of death He was going to die.

34 The crowd replied, "We have heard from the Law that the Christ will remain forever. So how can You say that the Son of Man must be lifted up? Who is this Son of Man?"

35 Then Jesus told them, "For a little while longer, the Light will be among you. Walk while you have the Light, so that darkness will not overtake you. The one who walks in the darkness does not know where he is going. 36 While you have the Light, believe in the Light, so that you may become sons of light."

After Jesus had spoken these things, He went away and was hidden from them.

BELIEF AND UNBELIEF

37 Although Jesus had performed so many signs in their presence, they still did not believe in Him. 38 This was to fulfill the word of Isaiah the prophet:

"Lord, who has believed our message?
And to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed?"

39 For this reason they were unable to believe. For again, Isaiah says:

40 *"He has blinded their eyes*
and hardened their hearts,
so that they cannot see with their eyes,
and understand with their hearts,
and turn,
and I would heal them."

41 Isaiah said these things because he saw Jesus' glory and spoke about Him. 42 Nevertheless, many of the leaders believed in Him. But because of the Pharisees they did not confess Him, for fear that they would be put out of the synagogue. 43 For they loved praise from men more than praise from God.

44 Then Jesus cried out, "Whoever believes in Me does not believe in Me alone, but in the One who sent Me. 45 And whoever sees Me sees the One who sent Me. 46 I have come into the world as a light, so that no one who believes in Me should remain in darkness.

47 As for anyone who hears My words and does not keep them, I do not judge him. For I have not come to judge the world, but to save the world. 48 There is a judge for the one who rejects Me and does not receive My words: The word that I have spoken will judge him on the last day.

49 I have not spoken on My own, but the Father who sent Me has commanded Me what to say and how to say it. 50 And I know that His command leads to eternal life. So I speak exactly what the Father has told Me to say."

- **JN 12:24 [FULFILLS]** The grain of wheat falling into the ground (His death and harvest) ← PS 72:16 · MEDIUM p.931
- **JN 12:27 [FULFILLS]** God fully satisfied with His suffering ← IS 53:11a p.1128
- **JN 12:28 [MIRACLE]** A voice from heaven answers Jesus
- **JN 12:31 [DEMONIC]** Now the prince of this world will be driven out
- **JN 12:32 [PROPHECY]** If I am lifted up from the earth, I will draw all peoples to Myself → Fulfilled at the crucifixion
- **JN 12:32 [FULFILLS]** The bronze serpent lifted up foreshadows Christ lifted on the cross ← NUM 21:9 p.255
- **JN 12:37 [FULFILLS]** His own people would not believe Him ← IS 53:1 p.1127
- **JN 12:38 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:1 p.1127
- **JN 12:40 [FULFILLS]** Isaiah saw the glory of Christ preincarnate ← IS 6:1 p.1068

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

At supper Jesus wraps a towel around His waist and washes His disciples' feet, which was a servant's job. Peter says, Never, and then, Wash all of me. Jesus says one of them will betray Him, and Judas walks out into the night. Then Jesus gives a new command: Love one another as I have loved you.

JESUS WASHES HIS DISCIPLES' FEET

1 It was now just before the Passover
Feast, and Jesus knew that His hour had
come to leave this world and return to the
Father. Having loved His own who were in
the world, He loved them to the very end.
2 The evening meal was underway, and
the devil had already put into the heart of
Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot, to betray
Jesus.

3 Jesus knew that the Father had delivered
all things into His hands, and that He had
come from God and was returning to God.
4 So He got up from the supper, laid aside
His outer garments, and wrapped a towel
around His waist. 5 After that, He poured
water into a basin and began to wash the
disciples' feet and dry them with the towel
that was around Him.

6 He came to Simon Peter, who asked Him,
"Lord, are You going to wash my feet?"

7 Jesus replied, "You do not realize now
what I am doing, but later you will under-
stand."

8 "Never shall You wash my feet!" Peter
told Him.

Jesus answered, "Unless I wash you, you
have no part with Me."

9 "Then, Lord," Simon Peter replied, "not
only my feet, but my hands and my head
as well!"

10 Jesus told him, "Whoever has already
bathed needs only to wash his feet, and
he will be completely clean. And you are
clean, though not all of you." 11 For He
knew who would betray Him. That is why
He said, "Not all of you are clean."

12 When Jesus had washed their feet and
put on His outer garments, He reclined
with them again and asked, "Do you know
what I have done for you? 13 You call Me
Teacher and Lord, and rightly so, because
I am. 14 So if I, your Lord and Teacher,
have washed your feet, you also should
wash one another's feet. 15 I have set you
an example so that you should do as I
have done for you. 16 Truly, truly, I tell you,
no servant is greater than his master, nor
is a messenger greater than the one who
sent him. 17 If you know these things, you
will be blessed if you do them.

JESUS PREDICTS HIS BETRAYAL // PSALM 41:1–13

18 I am not speaking about all of you; I
know whom I have chosen. But this is to
fulfill the Scripture: *'The one who shares My
bread has lifted up his heel against Me.'* 19 I am
telling you now before it happens, so that
when it comes to pass, you will believe
that I am He. 20 Truly, truly, I tell you, who-
ever receives the one I send receives Me,
and whoever receives Me receives the
One who sent Me."

21 After Jesus had said this, He became
troubled in spirit and testified, "Truly, truly,
I tell you, one of you will betray Me."

22 The disciples looked at one another,
perplexed as to which of them He meant.
23 One of His disciples, the one whom Je-
sus loved, was reclining at His side. 24 So
Simon Peter motioned to him to ask Jesus
which one He was talking about. 25 Lean-
ing back against Jesus, he asked, "Lord,
who is it?"

26 Jesus answered, "It is the one to whom
I give this morsel after I have dipped it."
Then He dipped the morsel and gave it to
Judas son of Simon Iscariot. 27 And when
Judas had taken the morsel, Satan en-
tered into him.

Then Jesus said to Judas, "What you are
about to do, do quickly." 28 But no one at
the table knew why Jesus had said this to

- **JN 13:18 [PROPHECY]** He who eats bread with Me has lifted up his heel against Me (quoting Ps 41:9); I tell you before it comes, that when it does you may believe that I am He → Fulfilled by Judas that same night (JN 13:21-30) p.1723
- **JN 13:18 [FULFILLS]** Betrayed by a close friend who shared His table ← PS 41:9 p.911
- **JN 13:18 [FULFILLS]** Betrayed by a familiar friend, not an enemy ← PS 55:12-14 p.920
- **JN 13:21 [PROPHECY]** One of you will betray Me → MT 26:47-50 p.1594
- **JN 13:27 [DEMONIC]** Satan enters Judas after the bread

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | THE HEART | JESUS SPEAKING

him. 29 Since Judas kept the money bag, some thought that Jesus was telling him to buy what was needed for the feast, or to give something to the poor. 30 As soon as he had received the morsel, Judas went out into the night.

LOVE ONE ANOTHER // ROMANS 12:9–13; 1 JOHN 3:11–24

31 When Judas had gone out, Jesus said, "Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in Him. 32 If God is glorified in Him, God will also glorify the Son in Himself—and will glorify Him at once.

33 Little children, I am with you only a little while longer. You will look for Me, and as I said to the Jews, so now I say to you: 'Where I am going, you cannot come.'

34 A new commandment I give you: Love one another. As I have loved you, so you also must love one another. 35 By this everyone will know that you are My disciples, if you love one another."

JESUS PREDICTS PETER'S DENIAL // MATTHEW 26:31–35; MARK 14:27–31; LUKE 22:31–38

36 "Lord, where are You going?" Simon Peter asked.

Jesus answered, "Where I am going, you cannot follow Me now, but you will follow later."

37 "Lord," said Peter, "why can't I follow You now? I will lay down my life for You."

38 "Will you lay down your life for Me?" Jesus replied. "Truly, truly, I tell you, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times.

- **JN 13:31 [PROPHECY]** Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in Him. If God is glorified in Him, God will also glorify Him in Himself → Fulfilled in the crucifixion (John's glorification theology), resurrection, and ascension
- **JN 13:38 [PROPHECY]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times → MT 26:70; MT 26:72; MT 26:74-75; MK 14:68; MK 14:70-72; LK 22:57-58; LK 22:60-62; JN 18:17; JN 18:25-27 p.1596

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Do not let your hearts be troubled. Jesus says He is going to prepare a place for them. Thomas asks how they can know the way, and Jesus says, I am the way, the truth and the life. Philip asks to see the Father, and Jesus says, If you have seen Me, you have seen the Father. He promises the Holy Spirit.

IN MY FATHER'S HOUSE ARE MANY ROOMS

1 "Do not let your hearts be troubled. You believe in God; believe in Me as well. 2 In My Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have told you that I am going there to prepare a place for you? 3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back and welcome you into My presence, so that you also may be where I am. 4 You know the way to the place where I am going."

THE WAY, THE TRUTH, AND THE LIFE

5 "Lord," said Thomas, "we do not know where You are going, so how can we know the way?"

6 Jesus answered, "I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through Me. 7 If you had known Me, you would know My Father as well. From now on you do know Him and have seen Him."

8 Philip said to Him, "Lord, show us the Father, and that will be enough for us."

9 Jesus replied, "Philip, I have been with you all this time, and still you do not know Me? Anyone who has seen Me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'? 10 Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me? The words I say to you, I do not speak on My own. Instead, it is the Father dwelling in Me, performing His works. 11 Believe Me that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me—or at least believe on account of the works themselves.

- **JN 14:1 [HEART]** Do not let your hearts be troubled. Believe in God and in Me.
- **JN 14:2 [PROPHECY]** In My Father's house are many mansions... I go to prepare a place for you. And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to Myself, that where I am, there you may be also → STILL TO COME

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART JESUS SPEAKING

12 Truly, truly, I tell you, whoever believes
in Me will also do the works that I am do-
ing. He will do even greater things than
these, because I am going to the Father. 13
And I will do whatever you ask in My
name, so that the Father may be glorified
in the Son. 14 If you ask Me for anything in
My name, I will do it.

JESUS PROMISES THE HOLY SPIRIT // JOHN 16:5–16

15 If you love Me, you will keep My com-
mandments. 16 And I will ask the Father,
and He will give you another Advocate to
be with you forever— 17 the Spirit of truth.
The world cannot receive Him, because it
neither sees Him nor knows Him. But you
do know Him, for He abides with you and
will be in you.

18 I will not leave you as orphans; I will
come to you. 19 In a little while the world
will see Me no more, but you will see Me.
Because I live, you also will live. 20 On that
day you will know that I am in My Father,
and you are in Me, and I am in you. 21
Whoever has My commandments and
keeps them is the one who loves Me. The
one who loves Me will be loved by My Fa-
ther, and I will love him and reveal Myself
to him."

22 Judas (not Iscariot) asked Him, "Lord,
why are You going to reveal Yourself to us
and not to the world?"

23 Jesus replied, "If anyone loves Me, he
will keep My word. My Father will love
him, and We will come to him and make
Our home with him. 24 Whoever does not
love Me does not keep My words. The
word that you hear is not My own, but it is
from the Father who sent Me.

25 All this I have spoken to you while I am
still with you. 26 But the Advocate, the Holy
Spirit, whom the Father will send in My
name, will teach you all things and will re-
mind you of everything I have told you.

PEACE I LEAVE WITH YOU

27 Peace I leave with you; My peace I give
to you. I do not give to you as the world
gives. Do not let your hearts be troubled;
do not be afraid. 28 You heard Me say, 'I
am going away, and I am coming back to
you.' If you loved Me, you would rejoice
that I am going to the Father, because the
Father is greater than I. 29 And now I have
told you before it happens, so that when it
does happen, you will believe.

30 I will not speak with you much longer,
for the prince of this world is coming, and
he has no claim on Me. 31 But I do exactly
what the Father has commanded Me, so
that the world may know that I love the
Father.

Get up! Let us go on from here.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

I am the vine, you are the branches. A branch cut off from the vine cannot grow a single grape. Jesus calls His disciples friends, not servants. There is no greater love than to lay down your life for your friends. He also warns them the world will hate them, because it hated Him first.

JESUS THE TRUE VINE // ISAIAH 27:1–13

1 "I am the true vine, and My Father is the
keeper of the vineyard. 2 He cuts off every
branch in Me that bears no fruit, and
every branch that does bear fruit, He
prunes to make it even more fruitful. 3 You
are already clean because of the word I
have spoken to you. 4 Remain in Me, and I
will remain in you. Just as no branch can
bear fruit by itself unless it remains in the
vine, neither can you bear fruit unless you
remain in Me.

5 I am the vine and you are the branches.
The one who remains in Me, and I in him,
will bear much fruit. For apart from Me
you can do nothing. 6 If anyone does not
remain in Me, he is like a branch that is
thrown away and withers. Such branches
are gathered up, thrown into the fire, and
burned. 7 If you remain in Me and My
words remain in you, ask whatever you

JN 14:16 [PROPHECY] The Father would give another Advocate, the Spirit of truth, to be in the disciples → ACTS 2:1-4 p.1741

JN 14:19 [PROPHECY] A little while longer and the world will see Me no more, but you will see Me. Because I live, you will live also → Fulfilled in post-resurrection appearances to disciples only (JN 20:19-29; 21) p.1735

JN 14:27 [HEART] Jesus gives His peace. Do not let your hearts be troubled or afraid.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | THE HEART | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | JESUS SPEAKING

wish, and it will be done for you. 8 This is
to My Father's glory, that you bear much
fruit, proving yourselves to be My disci-
ples.

NO GREATER LOVE

9 As the Father has loved Me, so have I
loved you. Remain in My love. 10 If you
keep My commandments, you will remain
in My love, just as I have kept My Father's
commandments and remain in His love. 11 I
have told you these things so that My joy
may be in you and your joy may be com-
plete.

12 This is My commandment, that you love
one another as I have loved you. 13 Greater
love has no one than this, that he lay
down his life for his friends.

14 You are My friends if you do what I
command you. 15 No longer do I call you
servants, for a servant does not under-
stand what his master is doing. But I have
called you friends, because everything I
have learned from My Father I have made
known to you. 16 You did not choose Me,
but I chose you. And I appointed you to go
and bear fruit—fruit that will remain—so
that whatever you ask the Father in My
name, He will give you. 17 This is My com-
mand to you: Love one another.

THE HATRED OF THE WORLD

18 If the world hates you, understand that it
hated Me first. 19 If you were of the world,
it would love you as its own. Instead, the
world hates you, because you are not of
the world, but I have chosen you out of
the world.

20 Remember the word that I spoke to you:
'No servant is greater than his master.' If
they persecuted Me, they will persecute
you as well; if they kept My word, they will
keep yours as well. 21 But they will treat
you like this because of My name, since
they do not know the One who sent Me. 22
If I had not come and spoken to them,
they would not be guilty of sin. Now, how-
ever, they have no excuse for their sin.

23 Whoever hates Me hates My Father as
well. 24 If I had not done among them the
works that no one else did, they would not
be guilty of sin; but now they have seen
and hated both Me and My Father. 25 But
this is to fulfill what is written in their Law:
'They hated Me without reason.'

26 When the Advocate comes, whom I will
send to you from the Father—the Spirit of
truth who proceeds from the Father—He
will testify about Me. 27 And you also must
testify, because you have been with Me
from the beginning.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus tells them it is better for them that He goes away, because then the Holy Spirit will come. The Spirit will guide them into all truth. Their sorrow will turn to joy, like a mother who forgets the pain once the baby is born. In this world you will have trouble, but take heart, I have overcome the world.

PERSECUTION FORETOLD // ACTS 23:12–22

1 "I have told you these things so that you
will not fall away. 2 They will put you out of
the synagogues. In fact, a time is coming
when anyone who kills you will think he is
offering a service to God. 3 They will do
these things because they have not
known the Father or Me. 4 But I have told
you these things so that when their hour
comes, you will remember that I told you
about them. I did not tell you these things
from the beginning, because I was with
you.

THE PROMISE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT // JOHN 14:15–26

5 Now, however, I am going to Him who
sent Me; yet none of you asks Me, 'Where
are You going?' 6 Instead, your hearts are

JN 15:20 [PROPHECY] If they persecuted Me, they will also persecute you... the time is coming that whoever kills you will think that he offers God service → HISTORY: Jewish leaders had James, the brother of Jesus, stoned about AD 62, and Nero killed many Christians in Rome in AD 64. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 20.9.1, and Tacitus, Annals 15.44.

JN 15:22 [HEART] Jesus says once He came and spoke to them, they had no excuse for their sin.
JN 15:25 [FULFILLS] He was hated without a cause ← PS 35:19 p.907
JN 15:25 [FULFILLS] Hated without cause ← PS 69:4 p.928
JN 16:2 [PROPHECY] If they persecuted Me, they will also persecute you... the time is coming that whoever kills you will think that he offers God service → HISTORY: Jewish leaders had James, the brother of Jesus, stoned about AD 62, and Nero killed many Christians in Rome in AD 64. Recorded by Josephus, Antiquities 20.9.1, and Tacitus, Annals 15.44.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

filled with sorrow because I have told you these things. 7 But I tell you the truth, it is for your benefit that I am going away. Unless I go away, the Advocate will not come to you; but if I go, I will send Him to you.

8 And when He comes, He will convict the world in regard to sin and righteousness and judgment: 9 in regard to sin, because they do not believe in Me; 10 in regard to righteousness, because I am going to the Father and you will no longer see Me; 11 and in regard to judgment, because the prince of this world has been condemned.

12 I still have much to tell you, but you cannot yet bear to hear it. 13 However, when the Spirit of truth comes, He will guide you into all truth. For He will not speak on His own, but He will speak what He hears, and He will declare to you what is to come. 14 He will glorify Me by taking from what is Mine and disclosing it to you. 15 Everything that belongs to the Father is Mine. That is why I said that the Spirit will take from what is Mine and disclose it to you.

16 In a little while you will see Me no more, and then after a little while you will see Me."

GRIEF WILL TURN TO JOY

17 Then some of His disciples asked one another, "Why is He telling us, 'In a little while you will not see Me, and then after a little while you will see Me' and 'Because I am going to the Father'?" 18 They kept asking, "Why is He saying, 'a little while'? We do not understand what He is saying."

19 Aware that they wanted to question Him, Jesus said to them, "Are you asking one another why I said, 'In a little while you will not see Me, and then after a little while you will see Me'? 20 Truly, truly, I tell you, you will weep and wail while the world rejoices. You will grieve, but your grief will turn to joy. 21 A woman has pain in childbirth because her time has come; but when she brings forth her child, she forgets her anguish because of her joy that a child has been born into the world. 22 So also you have sorrow now, but I will see you again and your hearts will rejoice, and no one will take away your joy.

ASK IN MY NAME // MATTHEW 18:19–20

23 In that day you will no longer ask Me anything. Truly, truly, I tell you, whatever you ask the Father in My name, He will give you. 24 Until now you have not asked for anything in My name. Ask and you will receive, so that your joy may be complete.

25 I have spoken these things to you in figures of speech. An hour is coming when I will no longer speak to you this way, but will tell you plainly about the Father. 26 In that day you will ask in My name. I am not saying that I will ask the Father on your behalf. 27 For the Father Himself loves you, because you have loved Me and have believed that I came from God. 28 I came from the Father and entered the world. In turn, I will leave the world and go to the Father."

29 His disciples said, "See, now You are speaking plainly and without figures of speech. 30 Now we understand that You know all things and that You have no need for anyone to question You. Because of this, we believe that You came from God."

31 "Do you finally believe?" Jesus replied. 32 "Look, an hour is coming and has already come when you will be scattered, each to his own home, and you will leave Me all alone. Yet I am not alone, because the Father is with Me. 33 I have told you these things so that in Me you may have peace. In the world you will have tribulation. But take courage; I have overcome the world!"

- **JN 16:7 [PROPHECY]** If Jesus went away He would send the Advocate → ACTS 2:33 p.1743
- **JN 16:7 [FULFILLS]** He would send the Spirit of God ← IS 44:3 p.1116
- **JN 16:16 [PROPHECY]** A little while, and you will not see Me; and again a little while, and you will see Me, because I go to the Father → JN 19:30; JN 20:19-20 p.1732
- **JN 16:20 [PROPHECY]** The disciples' grief would turn to joy when they saw Jesus again → JN 20:20 p.1735
- **JN 16:28 [PROPHECY]** I came forth from the Father and have come into the world. Again, I leave the world and go to the Father → Fulfilled in death, resurrection, and ascension
- **JN 16:32 [PROPHECY]** All of you will be made to stumble because of Me this night; I will strike the Shepherd and the sheep will be scattered (quoting Zech 13:7) → MT 26:56 p.1594
- **JN 16:33 [FULFILLS]** Called Prince of Peace (Sar Shalom) ← IS 9:6 p.1072

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus looks up to heaven and prays the longest prayer we have from Him. He prays for Himself, then for His disciples, then for everyone who will believe through them, and that means us. His big request is that they all may be one, just as He and the Father are one.

PRAYER FOR THE SON

1 When Jesus had spoken these things, He
lifted up His eyes to heaven and said, "Fa-
ther, the hour has come. Glorify Your Son,
that Your Son may glorify You. 2 For You
granted Him authority over all people, so
that He may give eternal life to all those
You have given Him. 3 Now this is eternal
life, that they may know You, the only true
God, and Jesus Christ, whom You have
sent. 4 I have glorified You on earth by ac-
complishing the work You gave Me to do.
5 And now, Father, glorify Me in Your pres-
ence with the glory I had with You before
the world existed.

PRAYER FOR THE DISCIPLES

6 I have revealed Your name to those You have given Me out of the world. They were Yours; You gave them to Me, and they have kept Your word. 7 Now they know that everything You have given Me comes from You. 8 For I have given them the words You gave Me, and they have received them. They knew with certainty that I came from You, and they believed that You sent Me.

9 I ask on their behalf. I do not ask on behalf of the world, but on behalf of those You have given Me; for they are Yours. 10 All I have is Yours, and all You have is Mine; and in them I have been glorified. 11 I will no longer be in the world, but they are in the world, and I am coming to You.

Holy Father, protect them by Your name, the name You gave Me, so that they may be one as We are one. 12 While I was with them, I protected and preserved them by Your name, the name You gave Me. Not one of them has been lost, except the son of destruction, so that the Scripture would be fulfilled.

13 But now I am coming to You; and I am saying these things while I am in the world, so that they may have My joy fulfilled within them. 14 I have given them Your word and the world has hated them. For they are not of the world, just as I am not of the world.

15 I am not asking that You take them out of the world, but that You keep them from the evil one. 16 They are not of the world, just as I am not of the world. 17 Sanctify them by the truth; Your word is truth. 18 As You sent Me into the world, I have also sent them into the world. 19 For them I sanctify Myself, so that they too may be sanctified by the truth.

PRAYER FOR ALL BELIEVERS

20 I am not asking on behalf of them alone, but also on behalf of those who will believe in Me through their message, 21 that all of them may be one, as You, Father, are in Me, and I am in You. May they also be in Us, so that the world may believe that You sent Me.

22 I have given them the glory You gave Me, so that they may be one as We are one— 23 I in them and You in Me—that they may be perfectly united, so that the world may know that You sent Me and have loved them just as You have loved Me.

24 Father, I want those You have given Me to be with Me where I am, that they may see the glory You gave Me because You loved Me before the foundation of the world.

25 Righteous Father, although the world has not known You, I know You, and they know that You sent Me. 26 And I have made Your name known to them and will continue to make it known, so that the love You have for Me may be in them, and I in them."

JN 17:1 [FULFILLS] The pleasure of the Lord would prosper in His hand ← IS 53:10d p.1128
JN 17:5 [FULFILLS] 'Honor and majesty You have laid upon Him' ← PS 21:5 · MEDIUM p.896

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Judas leads soldiers to the garden. Jesus says I am He, and they fall backward to the ground. Peter cuts off a servant's ear. Jesus is taken to Annas, then Caiaphas, while Peter denies Him three times by a fire. Pilate asks, What is truth? and the crowd picks Barabbas, a robber.

THE BETRAYAL OF JESUS // MATTHEW 26:47–56; MARK 14:43–52; LUKE 22:47–53

1 After Jesus had spoken these words, He
went out with His disciples across the
Kidron Valley, where they entered a gar-
den. 2 Now Judas His betrayer also knew
the place, because Jesus had often met
there with His disciples. 3 So Judas
brought a band of soldiers and officers
from the chief priests and Pharisees. They
arrived at the garden carrying lanterns,
torches, and weapons.

4 Jesus, knowing all that was coming upon
Him, stepped forward and asked them,
"Whom are you seeking?"

5 "Jesus of Nazareth," they answered.

Jesus said, "I am He."

And Judas His betrayer was standing
there with them. 6 When Jesus said, "I am
He," they drew back and fell to the
ground.

7 So He asked them again, "Whom are you
seeking?"

"Jesus of Nazareth," they answered.

8 "I told you that I am He," Jesus replied.
"So if you are looking for Me, let these
men go." 9 This was to fulfill the word He
had spoken: "I have not lost one of those
You have given Me."

10 Then Simon Peter drew his sword and
struck the servant of the high priest, cut-
ting off his right ear. The servant's name
was Malchus.

11 "Put your sword back in its sheath!" Je-
sus said to Peter. "Shall I not drink the cup
the Father has given Me?"

12 Then the band of soldiers, with its com-
mander and the officers of the Jews, ar-
rested Jesus and bound Him. 13 They
brought Him first to Annas, who was the
father-in-law of Caiaphas, the high priest
that year. 14 Caiaphas was the one who
had advised the Jews that it would be
better if one man died for the people.

PETER'S FIRST DENIAL // MATTHEW 26:69–70; MARK 14:66–68; LUKE 22:54–57

15 Now Simon Peter and another disciple
were following Jesus. Since that disciple
was known to the high priest, he also
went with Jesus into the courtyard of the
high priest. 16 But Peter stood outside at
the door. Then the disciple who was
known to the high priest went out and
spoke to the doorkeeper, and brought Pe-
ter in.

17 At this, the servant girl watching the
door said to Peter, "Aren't you also one of
this man's disciples?"

"I am not," he answered.

18 Because it was cold, the servants and
officers were standing around a charcoal
fire they had made to keep warm. And Pe-
ter was also standing with them, warming
himself.

JESUS BEFORE THE HIGH PRIEST // MATTHEW 26:57–68; MARK 14:53–65; LUKE 22:66–71

19 Meanwhile, the high priest questioned
Jesus about His disciples and His teach-
ing.

20 "I have spoken openly to the world," Je-
sus answered. "I always taught in the syn-
agogues and at the temple, where all the
Jews come together. I said nothing in se-
cret. 21 Why are you asking Me? Ask those
who heard My message. Surely they know
what I said."

22 When Jesus had said this, one of the
officers standing nearby slapped Him in
the face and said, "Is this how You answer
the high priest?"

- **JN 18:6 [MIRACLE]** The soldiers draw back and fall when Jesus says I am He
- **JN 18:11 [FULFILLS]** It pleased the Father to crush Him ← IS 53:10a p.1128
- **JN 18:13 [FULFILLS]** He would be judged ← IS 53:8b p.1128
- **JN 18:13 [FIELD NOTES]** A bone box carved with the name of this high priest's family was found in 1990. See The Caiaphas Ossuary Field Notes page in Matthew, p.1595.
- **JN 18:14 [FULFILLS]** Caiaphas prophesied that Jesus would die for the nation and gather God's scattered children ← JN 11:50-52 p.1720
- **JN 18:17 [FULFILLS]** Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE JESUS SPEAKING

23 Jesus replied, "If I said something
wrong, testify as to what was wrong. But
if I spoke correctly, why did you strike
Me?"

24 Then Annas sent Him, still bound, to Ca-
iaphas the high priest.

PETER'S SECOND AND THIRD DENIALS // MATTHEW 26:71–75; MARK 14:69–72; LUKE 22:58–62

25 Simon Peter was still standing and
warming himself. So they asked him,
"Aren't you also one of His disciples?"

He denied it and said, "I am not."

26 One of the high priest's servants, a rela-
tive of the man whose ear Peter had cut
off, asked, "Didn't I see you with Him in
the garden?"

27 Peter denied it once more, and immedi-
ately a rooster crowed.

JESUS BEFORE PILATE // MATTHEW 27:11–14; LUKE 23:1–5

28 Then they led Jesus away from Ca-
iaphas into the Praetorium. By now it was
early morning, and the Jews did not enter
the Praetorium, to avoid being defiled and
unable to eat the Passover.

29 So Pilate went out to them and asked,
"What accusation are you bringing against
this man?"

30 "If He were not a criminal," they replied,
"we would not have handed Him over to
you."

31 "You take Him and judge Him by your
own law," Pilate told them.

"We are not permitted to execute anyone,"
the Jews replied. 32 This was to fulfill the
word that Jesus had spoken to indicate
the kind of death He was going to die.

33 Pilate went back into the Praetorium,
summoned Jesus, and asked Him, "Are
You the King of the Jews?"

34 "Are you saying this on your own," Je-
sus asked, "or did others tell you about
Me?"

35 "Am I a Jew?" Pilate replied. "Your own
people and chief priests handed You over
to me. What have You done?"

36 Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of
this world; if it were, My servants would
fight to prevent My arrest by the Jews.
But now My kingdom is not of this realm."

37 "Then You are a king!" Pilate said.

"You say that I am a king," Jesus an-
swered. "For this reason I was born and
have come into the world, to testify to the
truth. Everyone who belongs to the truth
listens to My voice."

38 "What is truth?" Pilate asked.

And having said this, he went out again to
the Jews and told them, "I find no basis
for a charge against Him. 39 But it is your
custom that I release to you one prisoner
at the Passover. So then, do you want me
to release to you the King of the Jews?"

40 "Not this man," they shouted, "but
Barabbas!" (Now Barabbas was an insur-
rectionist.)

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Pilate has Jesus whipped and crowned with thorns, and the crowd shouts Crucify Him. Jesus carries His own cross to Golgotha. From the cross He gives His mother to John, then says, It is finished. He is buried in a new tomb in a garden.

THE SOLDIERS MOCK JESUS // ISAIAH 50:4–11; MATTHEW 27:27–31; MARK 15:16–20; LUKE 22:63–65

1 Then Pilate took Jesus and had Him
flogged. 2 The soldiers twisted together a
crown of thorns, set it on His head, and
dressed Him in a purple robe. 3 And they
went up to Him again and again, saying,
"Hail, King of the Jews!" and slapping Him
in the face.

4 Once again Pilate came out and said to
the Jews, "Look, I am bringing Him out to
you to let you know that I find no basis for

JN 18:25 [FULFILLS] Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
JN 18:26 [FULFILLS] Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
JN 18:27 [FULFILLS] Peter, before the rooster crows, you will deny Me three times ← MT 26:34; MK 14:30; LK 22:34; JN 13:38 p.1594
JN 18:29 [FIELD NOTES] A stone carved with Pilate's name and title was found in 1961. See The Pilate Stone Field Notes page in Luke, p.1652.

JN 18:37 [FULFILLS] A witness to the people ← IS 55:4a · MEDIUM p.1130
JN 18:38 [FULFILLS] Innocent and had done no violence ← IS 53:9b p.1128

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

a charge against Him." 5 When Jesus
came out wearing the crown of thorns
and the purple robe, Pilate said to them,
"Here is the man!"

6 As soon as the chief priests and officers
saw Him, they shouted, "Crucify Him!
Crucify Him!"

"You take Him and crucify Him," Pilate
replied, "for I find no basis for a charge
against Him."

7 "We have a law," answered the Jews,
"and according to that law He must die,
because He declared Himself to be the
Son of God."

8 When Pilate heard this statement, he was
even more afraid, 9 and he went back into
the Praetorium. "Where are You from?" he
asked.

But Jesus gave no answer.

10 So Pilate said to Him, "Do You refuse to
speak to me? Do You not know that I have
authority to release You and authority to
crucify You?"

11 Jesus answered, "You would have no
authority over Me if it were not given to
you from above. Therefore the one who
handed Me over to you is guilty of greater
sin."

12 From then on, Pilate tried to release Him,
but the Jews kept shouting, "If you re-
lease this man, you are no friend of Cae-
sar. Anyone who declares himself a king
is defying Caesar."

13 When Pilate heard these words, he
brought Jesus out and sat on the judg-
ment seat at a place called the Stone
Pavement, which in Hebrew is Gabbatha.
14 It was the day of Preparation for the
Passover, about the sixth hour. And Pilate
said to the Jews, "Here is your King!"

- **JN 19:6 [FULFILLS]** His enemies surround Him seeking His death ← PS 22:12-13 p.897
- **JN 19:7 [FULFILLS]** The righteous one mocked as God's son ← WIS 2:12-20 (Apocrypha, not Scripture)
- **JN 19:13 [FIELD NOTES]** Where was the Stone Pavement? See The Stone Pavement Field Notes page, p.1731.
- **JN 19:14 [FULFILLS]** Despised by the nation of Israel ← IS 49:7 p.1123
- **JN 19:14 [FULFILLS]** Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world ← JN 1:29 · MEDIUM p.1699

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE PAVEMENT, LOW THAT IT IS GABBATHA

THE STONE PAVEMENT

JOHN 19:13



Roman paving stones under the Sisters of Zion convent in Jerusalem. Photo by Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A floor of huge stone slabs under the Sisters of Zion convent, on the Via Dolorosa. Some stones have games scratched into them, which pilgrims long thought Roman soldiers used while mocking Jesus. For centuries it was shown as the Stone Pavement, Gabbatha, where Pilate sat in judgment.

HOW OLD IT IS

Studies by the French scholar Pierre Benoit in the 1960s and 1970s showed the slabs were laid about AD 135, when the emperor Hadrian rebuilt Jerusalem as a Roman city. That is about 100 years after Jesus, so this is not the floor He stood on.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Found in the 1800s when the convent was built. It sits on top of an older water pool that was there in Jesus' time.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Under the Ecce Homo convent of the Sisters of Zion in Jerusalem's Old City. Visitors can walk on it.

WHERE PILATE PROBABLY SAT

Gabbatha means a raised place. Many scholars now think Pilate judged Jesus at Herod's old palace on the west side of the city, near the Jaffa Gate, because Roman governors stayed there when they came to Jerusalem. Josephus says a later governor set up his judgment seat in front of that palace. Digs at the Tower of David Museum there have uncovered parts of the palace.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Neither place has a sign saying Gabbatha. The old tradition points to the convent, and much of the newer evidence points to Herod's palace. Either way, John names a real kind of place a governor used.

15 At this, they shouted, "Away with Him!
Away with Him! Crucify Him!"
"Shall I crucify your King?" Pilate asked.
"We have no king but Caesar," replied the chief priests.

THE CRUCIFIXION // PSALM 22:1–31; MATTHEW 27:32–44; MARK 15:21–32; LUKE 23:26–43

16 Then Pilate handed Jesus over to be crucified, and the soldiers took Him away.
17 Carrying His own cross, He went out to
The Place of the Skull, which in Hebrew is
called Golgotha.
18 There they crucified Him, and with Him
two others, one on each side, with Jesus
in the middle.
19 Pilate also had a notice posted on the cross. It read:
JESUS OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF THE JEWS.
20 Many of the Jews read this sign, because the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city, and it was written in Hebrew, Latin, and Greek. 21 So the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate, "Do not write, 'The King of the Jews,' but only that He said, 'I am the King of the Jews.'"
22 Pilate answered, "What I have written, I have written."
23 When the soldiers had crucified Jesus, they divided His garments into four parts, one for each soldier, with the tunic remaining. It was seamless, woven in one piece from top to bottom. 24 So they said to one another, *"Let us not tear it. Instead, let us cast lots to see who will get it."* This was to fulfill the Scripture:

"They divided My garments among them,
and cast lots for My clothing."

So that is what the soldiers did.
25 Near the cross of Jesus stood His mother and her sister, as well as Mary the wife of Clopas and Mary Magdalene. 26 When Jesus saw His mother and the disciple whom He loved standing nearby, He said to His mother, "Woman, here is your son." 27 Then He said to the disciple, "Here is your mother." So from that hour, this disciple took her into his home.

THE DEATH OF JESUS // PSALM 22:1–31; MATTHEW 27:45–56; MARK 15:33–41; LUKE 23:44–49

28 After this, knowing that everything had now been accomplished, and to fulfill the Scripture, Jesus said, "I am thirsty." 29 A jar of sour wine was sitting there. So they soaked a sponge in the wine, put it on a stalk of hyssop, and lifted it to His mouth.
30 When Jesus had received the sour wine, He said, "It is finished." And bowing His head, He yielded up His spirit.

JESUS' SIDE IS PIERCED // ZECHARIAH 12:10–14

31 It was the day of Preparation, and the next day was a High Sabbath. In order that the bodies would not remain on the cross during the Sabbath, the Jews asked Pilate to have the legs broken and the bodies removed. 32 So the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first man who had been crucified with Jesus, and those of the other.
33 But when they came to Jesus and saw that He was already dead, they did not break His legs. 34 Instead, one of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and immediately blood and water flowed out.

- **JN 19:15 [FULFILLS]** The Shepherd sent to the doomed flock would be detested and rejected, and God would break His staff of favor with the people ← ZECH 11:4-11 · MEDIUM p.1501
- **JN 19:17 [FULFILLS]** Isaac carried the wood for his own sacrifice up the mountain ← GEN 22:6 · MEDIUM p.76
- **JN 19:17 [FULFILLS]** The leaders would lift up the Son of Man and then know who He is ← JN 8:28 p.1713
- **JN 19:23 [FULFILLS]** His garments divided, lots cast for His clothing ← PS 22:18 p.897
- **JN 19:24 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 22:18 p.897
- **JN 19:25 [FULFILLS]** This Child is destined for the fall and rising of many in Israel... a sword will pierce through your own soul also (Simeon to Mary) ← LK 2:34-35 p.1650
- **JN 19:28 [FULFILLS]** He thirsted on the cross ← PS 22:15 p.897
- **JN 19:28 [FULFILLS]** Given vinegar to drink in His thirst ← PS 69:21 p.928
- **JN 19:30 [FULFILLS]** His declaration: 'It is finished' and 4 more ← PS 22:31; PS 110:7; MT 9:15; MK 2:20; LK 5:35; JN 11:50-52; JN 16:16 p.898
- **JN 19:31 [FULFILLS]** Not one bone of the Passover Lamb to be broken and 2 more ← EX 12:46; NUM 9:12; PS 34:20 p.137

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

35 The one who saw it has testified to this,
and his testimony is true. He knows that
he is telling the truth, so that you also may
believe.

36 Now these things happened so that the
Scripture would be fulfilled: *"Not one of His
bones will be broken."* 37 And, as another
Scripture says: *"They will look on the One
they have pierced."*

THE BURIAL OF JESUS // ISAIAH 53:9–12; MATTHEW 27:57–61; MARK 15:42–47; LUKE 23:50–56

38 Afterward, Joseph of Arimathea, who
was a disciple of Jesus (but secretly for
fear of the Jews), asked Pilate to let him
remove the body of Jesus. Pilate gave him
permission, so he came and removed His
body. 39 Nicodemus, who had previously
come to Jesus at night, also brought a
mixture of myrrh and aloes, about sev-
enty-five pounds. 40 So they took the body
of Jesus and wrapped it in linen cloths
with the spices, according to the Jewish
burial custom.

41 Now there was a garden in the place
where Jesus was crucified, and in the
garden a new tomb in which no one had
yet been laid. 42 And because it was the
Jewish day of Preparation and the tomb
was nearby, they placed Jesus there.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Mary Magdalene finds the tomb empty. Peter and John race there, and John wins and wants you to know it. Jesus appears to Mary, then to the disciples. Thomas will not believe until he sees the nail marks. A week later he says, My Lord and my God.

THE RESURRECTION // MATTHEW 28:1–10; MARK 16:1–8; LUKE 24:1–12

1 Early on the first day of the week, while it
was still dark, Mary Magdalene went to
the tomb and saw that the stone had been
removed from the entrance. 2 So she
came running to Simon Peter and the
other disciple, the one whom Jesus loved.
"They have taken the Lord out of the
tomb," she said, "and we do not know
where they have put Him!"

3 Then Peter and the other disciple set out
for the tomb. 4 The two were running to-
gether, but the other disciple outran Peter
and reached the tomb first. 5 He bent
down and looked in at the linen cloths ly-
ing there, but he did not go in.

6 Simon Peter arrived just after him. He
entered the tomb and saw the linen cloths
lying there. 7 The cloth that had been
around Jesus' head was rolled up, lying
separate from the linen cloths. 8 Then the
other disciple, who had reached the tomb
first, also went in. And he saw and be-
lieved. 9 For they still did not understand
from the Scripture that Jesus had to rise
from the dead.

JESUS APPEARS TO MARY MAGDALENE // MARK 16:9–11

10 Then the disciples returned to their
homes. 11 But Mary stood outside the tomb
weeping. And as she wept, she bent down
to look into the tomb, 12 and she saw two
angels in white sitting where the body of
Jesus had lain, one at the head and the
other at the feet.

13 "Woman, why are you weeping?" they
asked.

"Because they have taken my Lord away,"
she said, "and I do not know where they
have put Him."

14 When she had said this, she turned
around and saw Jesus standing there. But
she did not recognize that it was Jesus.

- **JN 19:34 [FULFILLS]** His strength poured out like water and His bones out of joint and 2 more ← PS 22:14; ZECH 12:10a; ZECH 13:1 p.897
- **JN 19:36 [FULFILLS]** Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world ← JN 1:29 · MEDIUM p.1699
- **JN 19:36 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 12:46; NUM 9:12; PS 34:20 p.137
- **JN 19:37 [QUOTES]** Direct ← ZECH 12:10 p.1503
- **JN 19:38 [FULFILLS]** She has done this for My burial (regarding Mary of Bethany's anointing with costly oil) ← MT 26:12; MK 14:8; JN 12:7 p.1592
- **JN 19:40 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Shroud of Turin
- **JN 19:40 [FIELD NOTES]** Is this burial linen the Shroud of Turin? See The Shroud of Turin Field Notes pages in Matthew, p.1599.
- **JN 19:41 [FIELD NOTES]** Two places claim this tomb. See the Where Was Jesus Buried? Field Notes page, p.1734.

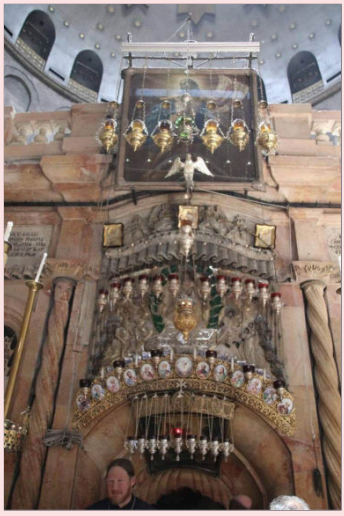
- **JN 20:1 [NOTABLE]** John names a woman as the first to discover the empty tomb. That honesty suggests he was reporting what happened.
- **JN 20:9 [FULFILLS]** He would rise from the dead ← PS 16:9-11 p.892
- **JN 20:11 [MIRACLE]** The risen Jesus appears to Mary Magdalene

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · MIRACLES · JESUS SPEAKING

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM, HOLY SEPULCHRE · LOW, GARDEN TOMB

WHERE WAS JESUS BURIED?

JOHN 19:17 TO 20 · JOHN 19:38 TO 42



The Edicule, the small shrine over the traditional tomb of Jesus, in the Church of the Holy Sepulchre.

WHAT IT IS

Two places claim the tomb of Jesus. The Church of the Holy Sepulchre stands over a tomb cut in rock, with Golgotha a few steps away. The Garden Tomb, north of the Damascus Gate, is a rock tomb in a quiet garden that many Protestant visitors love.

HOW OLD IT IS

The Holy Sepulchre church was first built about AD 326 for Emperor Constantine. When the tomb was opened for repairs in 2016, tests dated mortar on it to about AD 345. The Garden Tomb was cut about 700 years before Jesus, according to Israeli archaeologist Gabriel Barkay.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Christians in Jerusalem pointed Constantine's builders to the Holy Sepulchre site, which Hadrian had buried under a pagan temple about AD 135. The Garden Tomb was suggested in 1883 by the British general Charles Gordon, who thought a nearby cliff looked like a skull.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Both are in Jerusalem and both are open to visitors. The Holy Sepulchre is in the Christian Quarter of the Old City.

WHAT THE EVIDENCE SAYS

In Jesus' day the Holy Sepulchre site was an old quarry just outside the city wall, with first century tombs cut into it. That fits John 19:20 and 19:41: near the city, with a garden and a new tomb. John says no one had ever been laid in the tomb, so a tomb already 700 years old does not fit.

THE HONEST SIDE

Even the Holy Sepulchre is not proven. The people who run the Garden Tomb do not claim it is the real tomb, only a good place to remember that He is risen. Either way, the tomb is empty.

15 "Woman, why are you weeping?" Jesus asked. "Whom are you seeking?"

Thinking He was the gardener, she said, "Sir, if you have carried Him off, tell me where you have put Him, and I will get Him."

16 Jesus said to her, "Mary."

She turned and said to Him in Hebrew, "Rabboni!" (which means "Teacher").

17 "Do not cling to Me," Jesus said, "for I have not yet ascended to the Father. But go and tell My brothers, 'I am ascending to My Father and your Father, to My God and your God.'"

18 Mary Magdalene went and announced to the disciples, "I have seen the Lord!" And she told them what He had said to her.

- **JN 20:17 [FULFILLS]** His resurrection declared to His brethren ← PS 22:22 p.897
- **JN 20:17 [FULFILLS]** The chosen King would call God my Father ← PS 89:26 · MEDIUM p.944

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

JESUS APPEARS TO THE DISCIPLES // LUKE 24:36–49; 1 JOHN 1:1–4

19 It was the first day of the week, and that very evening, while the disciples were together with the doors locked for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood among them. "Peace be with you!" He said to them. 20 After He had said this, He showed them His hands and His side.

The disciples rejoiced when they saw the Lord.

21 Again Jesus said to them, "Peace be with you. As the Father has sent Me, so also I am sending you." 22 When He had said this, He breathed on them and said, "Receive the Holy Spirit. 23 If you forgive anyone his sins, they are forgiven; if you withhold forgiveness from anyone, it is withheld."

JESUS APPEARS TO THOMAS

24 Now Thomas called Didymus, one of the Twelve, was not with the disciples when Jesus came. 25 So the other disciples told him, "We have seen the Lord!"

But he replied, "Unless I see the nail marks in His hands, and put my finger where the nails have been, and put my hand into His side, I will never believe."

26 Eight days later, His disciples were once again inside with the doors locked, and Thomas was with them. Jesus came and stood among them and said, "Peace be with you."

27 Then Jesus said to Thomas, "Put your finger here and look at My hands. Reach out your hand and put it into My side. Stop doubting and believe."

28 Thomas replied, "My Lord and my God!"

29 Jesus said to him, "Because you have seen Me, you have believed; blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed."

- **JN 20:19 [MIRACLE]** The risen Jesus stands among them behind locked doors
- **JN 20:19 [FULFILLS]** A little while, and you will not see Me; and again a little while, and you will see Me, because I go to the Father ← JN 16:16 p.1727
- **JN 20:20 [FULFILLS]** The disciples' grief would turn to joy when they saw Jesus again ← JN 16:20-22 p.1727
- **JN 20:25 [FULFILLS]** They pierced His hands and feet ← PS 22:16 p.897
- **JN 20:26 [MIRACLE]** Jesus appears to Thomas

THE PURPOSE OF JOHN'S BOOK

30 Jesus performed many other signs in the presence of His disciples, which are not written in this book. 31 But these are written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in His name.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

The disciples fish all night and catch nothing. Jesus tells them to try the right side, and they haul in 153 fish. Then He cooks breakfast and asks Peter three times, Do you love Me? once for each denial.

JESUS APPEARS BY THE SEA OF TIBERIAS

1 Later, by the Sea of Tiberias, Jesus again revealed Himself to the disciples. He made Himself known in this way: 2 Simon Peter, Thomas called Didymus, Nathanael from Cana in Galilee, the sons of Zebedee, and two other disciples were together. 3 Simon Peter told them, "I am going fishing."

"We will go with you," they said. So they went out and got into the boat, but caught nothing that night.

4 Early in the morning, Jesus stood on the shore, but the disciples did not recognize that it was Jesus. 5 So He called out to them, "Children, do you have any fish?"

"No," they answered.

6 He told them, "Cast the net on the right side of the boat, and you will find some." So they cast it there, and they were unable to haul it in because of the great number of fish.

7 Then the disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, "It is the Lord!" As soon as Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he put on his outer garment (for he had removed it) and jumped into the sea. 8 The other disciples came ashore in the boat. They dragged in the net full of fish, for they

- **JN 20:31 [FULFILLS]** Eternal life through faith in Him ← PS 2:12 p.885
- **JN 21:1 [FULFILLS]** After I have been raised, I will go before you to Galilee ← MT 26:32; MK 14:28 p.1594
- **JN 21:6 [MIRACLE]** Post-resurrection miraculous catch of 153 fish

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

were not far from land, only about a hundred yards.

9 When they landed, they saw a charcoal fire there with fish on it, and some bread.

10 Jesus told them, "Bring some of the fish you have just caught." 11 So Simon Peter went aboard and dragged the net ashore. It was full of large fish, 153, but even with so many, the net was not torn.

12 "Come, have breakfast," Jesus said to them. None of the disciples dared to ask Him, "Who are You?" They knew it was the Lord. 13 Jesus came and took the bread and gave it to them, and He did the same with the fish.

14 This was now the third time that Jesus appeared to the disciples after He was raised from the dead.

JESUS AND PETER

15 When they had finished eating, Jesus asked Simon Peter, "Simon son of John, do you love Me more than these?"

"Yes, Lord," he answered, "You know I love You."

Jesus replied, "Feed My lambs."

16 Jesus asked a second time, "Simon son of John, do you love Me?"

"Yes, Lord," he answered, "You know I love You."

Jesus told him, "Shepherd My sheep."

17 Jesus asked a third time, "Simon son of John, do you love Me?"

Peter was deeply hurt that Jesus had asked him a third time, "Do you love Me?"

"Lord, You know all things," he replied. "You know I love You."

Jesus said to him, "Feed My sheep.

18 Truly, truly, I tell you, when you were young, you dressed yourself and walked where you wanted; but when you are old, you will stretch out your hands, and someone else will dress you and lead you where you do not want to go." 19 Jesus said this to indicate the kind of death by which Peter would glorify God.

And after He had said this, He told him, "Follow Me."

JESUS AND THE BELOVED DISCIPLE

20 Peter turned and saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following them. He was the one who had leaned back against Jesus at the supper to ask, "Lord, who is going to betray You?" 21 When Peter saw him, he asked, "Lord, what about him?"

22 Jesus answered, "If I want him to remain until I return, what is that to you? You follow Me!" 23 Because of this, the rumor spread among the brothers that this disciple would not die. However, Jesus did not say that he would not die, but only, "If I want him to remain until I return, what is that to you?"

24 This is the disciple who testifies to these things and who has written them down. And we know that his testimony is true.

25 There are many more things that Jesus did. If all of them were written down, I suppose that not even the world itself would have space for the books that would be written.

JN 21:14 [FULFILLS] After I have been raised, I will go before you to Galilee ← MT 26:32; MK 14:28 p.1594

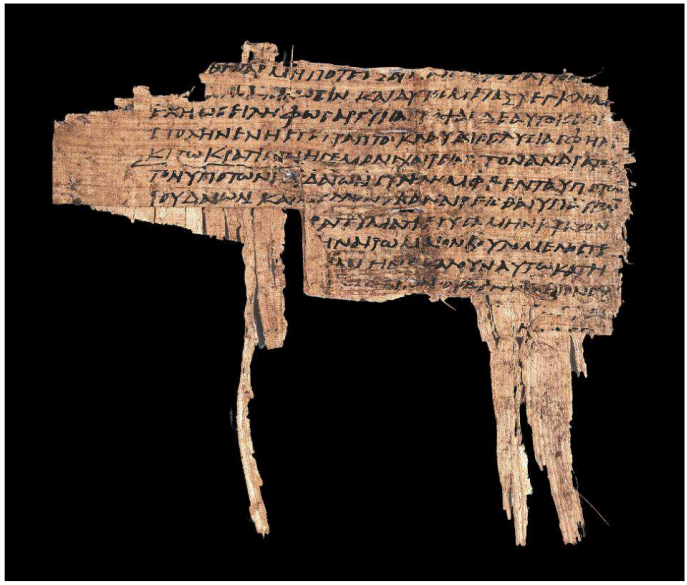
JN 21:18 [PROPHECY] When you are old, you will stretch out your hands, and another will gird you and carry you where you do not wish (to Peter, signifying his death) → HISTORY: Peter was crucified in Rome under Emperor Nero, about AD 64 to 68. Recorded by Tertullian and by Eusebius, Church History 2.25, and his death is noted in 1 Clement 5.

BOOK 44 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · HISTORY

ACTS

Luke Part 2

AUTHOR	Luke, the doctor and Paul's friend, who also wrote the Gospel of Luke. In some chapters Luke switches from they to we starting at 16:10, which shows he was there for parts of the trip. The early church named him as the author by about AD 180.
EVENTS TOOK PLACE	About AD 30 to 62, from Jesus going up into heaven to Paul under house arrest in Rome for two years.
DATE WRITTEN	Many conservative scholars say about AD 62, because the book ends before Paul's trial and death. Many others say AD 80 to 90.
WRITTEN TO	Theophilus, the same man Luke wrote his Gospel to Luke 1:3, Acts 1:1. His name means friend of God.
ANCIENT MANUSCRIPTS	Acts survives in hundreds of Greek manuscripts. One old copy, Codex Bezae, has a longer form of Acts, about 8 percent longer than most.
KEY VERSE	Acts 1:8. You will receive power when the Holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be My witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.



AN EARLY PIECE OF ACTS
This scrap is Papyrus 48, copied in the 200s and kept in the Laurentian Library in Florence, Italy. This side holds Acts 23:25 to 29, the letter the Roman commander wrote to Governor Felix about Paul. You can still read the Greek words for to the most excellent governor. The other side holds Acts 23:11 to 17, where the Lord tells Paul he will testify in Rome. Its wording is close to the longer form of Acts found in Codex Bezae. Papyrus 45, from about AD 250, holds larger parts of Acts.

Historical Setting

Rome rules the whole Mediterranean world. Roman roads and peace make travel easier than ever, and almost everyone speaks Greek. Jewish synagogues stand in cities across the empire, ready made places for Paul to start preaching. But the church begins small, about 120 people praying in an upstairs room in Jerusalem 1:15. Their leader has just left. All they have is His promise: Wait for the Holy Spirit.

What Was Going Wrong

JEALOUS LEADERS. The high priest and his friends were filled with jealousy and threw the apostles in jail 5:17 to 18.
FAKING IT. Ananias and Sapphira lied to look more generous than they were. Peter said they lied to God, not just to men 5:4.
MONEY OVER GOD. Simon tried to buy the Holy Spirit 8:18 to 20, and the silversmiths of Ephesus started a riot because Jesus was bad for business 19:24 to 27.
WHO GETS IN. Some taught that Gentiles had to keep the law of Moses before they could be saved 15:1.
MOB RULE. In the Ephesus riot most of the crowd did not even know why they were there 19:32.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Jesus goes up to heaven, and the Holy Spirit comes down. Acts shows a small group of scared followers turn into bold witnesses who fill Jerusalem with the news that Jesus is alive. Peter leads the first half of the book. Then Saul, who hunted Christians, meets Jesus and becomes Paul, who leads the second half. The good news jumps from Jews to Samaritans to Gentiles, and the book ends with Paul preaching in Rome, the capital of the world.

Acts at a Glance: Acts 1:8 Is the Map

CH 1 to 7	**JERUSALEM** Pentecost, Peter preaches and Stephen dies.
CH 8 to 12	**JUDEA AND SAMARIA** The church scatters, Saul meets Jesus and the Gentiles get the Spirit.
CH 13 to 20	**THE ENDS OF THE EARTH** Three missionary trips, the Jerusalem council and churches all over.
CH 21 to 28	**IN CHAINS TO ROME** Paul's arrest, trials, shipwreck and two years in Rome.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ACTS 1:11 This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen Him go. Still to come.

ACTS 2:16 TO 21 This is what was spoken by the prophet Joel: I will pour out My Spirit on all people. Fulfills Joel 2:28 to 32.

ACTS 2:25 TO 31 You will not abandon My soul to the grave. Peter says David was speaking about the resurrection of the Christ. Fulfills Psalm 16:10.

ACTS 8:32 TO 35 He was led like a sheep to the slaughter. Philip starts with Isaiah 53 and tells the Ethiopian the good news about Jesus.

What to Watch for in Acts

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (40)	1:5, 1:8-11, 1:16-20, 1:26, 2:1-4, 2:21, 2:25 and 17 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	2:5-11, 2:23, 7:9-10
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (14)	2:16-18, 2:41, 7:42-43, 8:5-8, 8:27, 9:15-16, 11:28 and 10 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (1)	20:29-30
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	17:31
THE HEART (10)	1:24, 2:37, 2:46, 4:32, 5:3-4, 7:54, 8:21-22 and 1 more
ARCHAEOLOGY (8)	4:6, 13:7, 17:6, 17:23, 18:12, 19:27-29, 21:28-29 and 1 more
MIRACLES (32)	3:1-10, 4:31, 5:5, 5:9-10, 5:15, 5:19, 7:55-56 and 23 more
DEMONIC (19)	5:16, 7:39-41, 8:9-11, 8:18-20, 13:6, 13:8-10, 14:11-18 and 13 more
NOTABLE (3)	15:19, 17:28
JESUS SPEAKING (31 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

PART TWO OF TWO
Luke ends his Gospel with Jesus telling the disciples to wait in Jerusalem for power from on high Luke 24:49. Acts picks up right there. Same author, same reader, one story.

WE WERE THERE
In 16:10 Luke stops saying they and starts saying we. The we sections, through the shipwreck in chapter 27, read like a travel diary, with ports, winds and days counted.

LUKE GOT THE TITLES RIGHT
Roman titles changed from city to city, and Luke uses the right one every time: politarchs in Thessalonica, a proconsul in Cyprus and Corinth, and the first man of the island on Malta. Digs have found the same titles carved in stone. See the Field Notes pages, p.1771.

THE BOOK WITH NO ENDING
Acts stops with Paul still waiting for his trial. Many say the story is not over, because the church is still writing it.

Did Anybody Listen?

About 120 believers in one room became churches in Jerusalem, Antioch, Ephesus, Corinth and Rome in about thirty years. Church tradition says Peter and Paul were both killed in Rome under Nero in the AD 60s. Less than three hundred years later the Roman emperor himself became a Christian. Today about one in three people on earth call themselves Christians.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

For forty days the risen Jesus teaches His followers. He tells them to wait in Jerusalem for the Holy Spirit, then goes up into the clouds while they stand there staring. Two angels basically say, Why are you looking at the sky? He is coming back the same way. They pray, and Matthias is picked to replace Judas.

PROLOGUE // LUKE 1:1–4

1 In my first book, O Theophilus, I wrote
about all that Jesus began to do and to
teach, 2 until the day He was taken up to
heaven, after giving instructions through
the Holy Spirit to the apostles He had
chosen. 3 After His suffering, He pre-
sented Himself to them with many con-
vincing proofs that He was alive. He ap-
peared to them over a span of forty days
and spoke about the kingdom of God.

4 And while they were gathered together,
He commanded them: "Do not leave
Jerusalem, but wait for the gift the Father
promised, which you have heard Me dis-
cuss. 5 For John baptized with water, but
in a few days you will be baptized with the
Holy Spirit."

THE ASCENSION // MARK 16:19–20; LUKE 24:50–53

6 So when they came together, they asked
Him, "Lord, will You at this time restore the
kingdom to Israel?"

7 Jesus replied, "It is not for you to know
times or seasons that the Father has fixed
by His own authority. 8 But you will receive
power when the Holy Spirit comes upon
you, and you will be My witnesses in
Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria,
and to the ends of the earth."

9 After He had said this, they watched as
He was taken up, and a cloud hid Him
from their sight. 10 They were looking in-
tently into the sky as He was going, when
suddenly two men dressed in white stood
beside them. 11 "Men of Galilee," they said,
"why do you stand here looking into the
sky? This same Jesus, who has been
taken from you into heaven, will come
back in the same way you have seen Him
go into heaven."

MATTHIAS REPLACES JUDAS

12 Then they returned to Jerusalem from
the Mount of Olives, which is near the
city, a Sabbath day's walk, a little over half
a mile away. 13 When they arrived, they
went to the upper room where they were
staying: Peter and John, James and An-
drew, Philip and Thomas, Bartholomew
and Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Si-
mon the Zealot, and Judas son of James.
14 With one accord they all continued in
prayer, along with the women and Mary
the mother of Jesus, and with His broth-
ers.

15 In those days Peter stood up among the
brothers (a gathering of about a hundred
and twenty) and said, 16 "Brothers, the
Scripture had to be fulfilled that the Holy
Spirit foretold through the mouth of David
concerning Judas, who became a guide
for those who arrested Jesus. 17 He was
one of our number and shared in this min-
istry."

18 (Now with the reward for his wickedness
Judas bought a field; there he fell head-
long and burst open in the middle, and all
his intestines spilled out. 19 This became
known to all who lived in Jerusalem, so
they called that field in their own language
Akeldama, that is, Field of Blood.)

20 "For it is written in the book of Psalms:

'May his place be deserted;
let there be no one to dwell in it,'

ACTS 1:1 [TEXT] Acts comes down to us in two forms. Most manuscripts have the shorter one, which this Bible follows. Codex Bezae, from about AD 400, and a few other early copies have a longer form, about 8 percent longer. For example, Bezae adds the Golden Rule to the letter in 15:20 and 15:29. The story is the same in both.

ACTS 1:5 [PROPHECY] In a few days the disciples would be baptized with the Holy Spirit → ACTS 2:1-4 p.1741

ACTS 1:5 [FULFILLS] The One coming after John would baptize with the Holy Spirit ← MT 3:11; MK 1:8; LK 3:16; JN 1:33 p.1554

ACTS 1:8 [PROPHECY] The witnesses would carry the gospel to Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, and the ends of the earth → ACTS 2:41; ACTS 8:5-8; ACTS 13:46-47; ACTS 28:30-31 p.1743

ACTS 1:8 [FULFILLS] The Servant exalted after suffering ← IS 52:13 p.1127

ACTS 1:9 [MIRACLE] Jesus' bodily ascension; angels appear

ACTS 1:9 [FULFILLS] He would ascend into heaven (the Son of Man) ← DAN 7:13-14a p.1341

ACTS 1:11 [PROPHECY] This same Jesus, who was taken up from you into heaven, will so come in like manner as you saw Him go into heaven → STILL TO COME

ACTS 1:16 [FULFILLS] The unrepentant death of the betrayer ← PS 55:15 · MEDIUM p.920

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | THE HEART

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

and,

'May another take his position.'

21 Therefore it is necessary to choose one
of the men who have accompanied us the
whole time the Lord Jesus went in and out
among us, 22 beginning from John's bap-
tism until the day Jesus was taken up
from us. For one of these must become a
witness with us of His resurrection."

23 So they proposed two men: Joseph
called Barsabbas (also known as Justus)
and Matthias. 24 And they prayed, "Lord,
You know everyone's heart. Show us
which of these two You have chosen 25 to
take up this ministry and apostleship,
which Judas abandoned to go to his right-
ful place."

26 Then they cast lots, and the lot fell to
Matthias. So he was added to the eleven
apostles.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Pentecost. A sound like a mighty wind fills the house, flames rest on each believer, and they speak in languages they never learned. Visitors from all over hear God praised in their own tongue. Some say they are drunk. Peter says, It is only nine in the morning. He preaches Jesus, and about three thousand people are baptized in one day.

THE HOLY SPIRIT AT PENTECOST // GENESIS 11:1–9; LEVITICUS 23:15–22

1 When the day of Pentecost came, they
were all together in one place. 2 Suddenly
a sound like a mighty rushing wind came
from heaven and filled the whole house
where they were sitting. 3 They saw
tongues like flames of fire that separated
and came to rest on each of them. 4 And
they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and
began to speak in other tongues as the
Spirit enabled them.

5 Now there were dwelling in Jerusalem
God-fearing Jews from every nation un-
der heaven. 6 And when this sound rang
out, a crowd came together in bewilder-
ment, because each one heard them
speaking his own language.

7 Astounded and amazed, they asked, "Are
not all these who are speaking Galileans?
8 How is it then that each of us hears them
in his own native language? 9 Parthians,
Medes, and Elamites; residents of
Mesopotamia, Judea and Cappadocia,
Pontus and Asia, 10 Phrygia and Pam-
phylia, Egypt and the parts of Libya near
Cyrene; visitors from Rome, 11 both Jews
and converts to Judaism; Cretans and
Arabs—we hear them declaring the won-
ders of God in our own tongues!"

12 Astounded and perplexed, they asked
one another, "What does this mean?"

13 But others mocked them and said, "They
are drunk on new wine!"

PETER ADDRESSES THE CROWD // PSALM 16:1–11; JOEL 2:28–32

14 Then Peter stood up with the Eleven,
lifted up his voice, and addressed the
crowd: "Men of Judea and all who dwell in
Jerusalem, let this be known to you, and
listen carefully to my words. 15 These men
are not drunk, as you suppose. It is only
the third hour of the day! 16 No, this is what
was spoken by the prophet Joel:

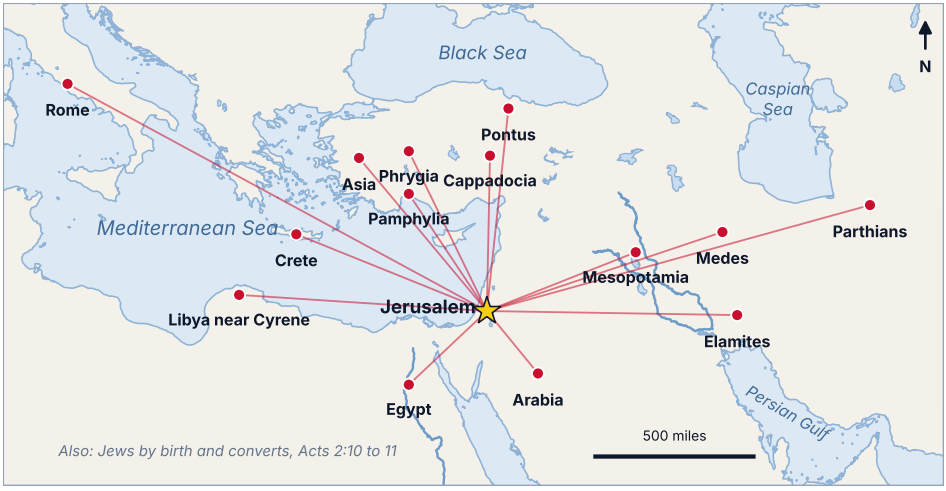
17 *'In the last days, God says,*
I will pour out My Spirit on all people.
Your sons and daughters will prophesy,
your young men will see visions,
your old men will dream dreams.
18 *Even on My menservants and maidservants*
I will pour out My Spirit in those days,
and they will prophesy.
19 *I will show wonders in the heavens above*
and signs on the earth below,

- **ACTS 1:20 [FULFILLS]** The betrayer's place would be left empty ← PS 69:25 p.929
- **ACTS 1:20 [FULFILLS]** Another would take the betrayer's position ← PS 109:8 p.959
- **ACTS 1:24 [HEART]** The apostles pray to the Lord who knows every heart before choosing Matthias.
- **ACTS 1:26 [FULFILLS]** Another would take the betrayer's position ← PS 109:8 p.959
- **ACTS 2:1 [FULFILLS]** Fifty days were counted to the feast of new grain and 5 more ← LEV 23:15-16; MT 3:11; MK 1:8; LK 3:16; JN 1:33; LK 24:49; JN 7:38-39; JN 14:16-17; ACTS 1:5 p.211
- **ACTS 2:1 [MIRACLE]** Pentecost — wind, fire, tongues
- **ACTS 2:1 [NOTE]** PENTECOST. See Pentecost.
- **ACTS 2:5 [FULFILLS]** God confused the languages at Babel and scattered the people ← GEN 11:7-9 · MEDIUM p.61
- **ACTS 2:9 [FULFILLS]** In the last days God would restore Elam ← JER 49:39 · MEDIUM p.1220
- **ACTS 2:16 [FULFILLS]** I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh; your sons and daughters shall prophesy ← JOEL 2:28-29 p.1382
- **ACTS 2:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← JOEL 2:28-32 p.1382

MAP · ACTS 2:5 TO 11

Every Nation Under Heaven

Where the crowd at Pentecost came from



THE FEAST Pentecost, the Feast of Weeks, came about 50 days after Passover, Leviticus 23:15 to 16. Jews from all over the world came to Jerusalem for it, Acts 2:5.

3,000 IN ONE DAY About 3,000 people believed and were baptized, Acts 2:41. Many carried the news home to the places on this map.

EACH IN HIS OWN LANGUAGE When the Holy Spirit came, the apostles spoke in tongues, and each visitor heard them in his own language, Acts 2:6 to 11.

ROME ALREADY Visitors from Rome were there, Acts 2:10. By the time Paul wrote Romans, about AD 57, the church in Rome was well known, Romans 1:8.

Names follow the list in Acts 2:9 to 11. Places are shown at the middle of each region.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

blood and fire and billows of smoke.
20 *The sun will be turned to darkness,*
and the moon to blood,
before the coming of the great and glorious
Day of the Lord.
21 *And everyone who calls on the name of the*
Lord
will be saved.'

22 Men of Israel, listen to this message: Jesus of Nazareth was a man certified by God to you by miracles, wonders, and signs, which God did among you through Him, as you yourselves know. 23 He was delivered up by God's set plan and foreknowledge, and you, by the hands of the lawless, put Him to death by nailing Him to the cross. 24 But God raised Him from the dead, releasing Him from the agony of death, because it was impossible for death to keep Him in its grip.

25 David says about Him:

'I saw the Lord always before me;
because He is at my right hand, I will not be
shaken.
26 *Therefore my heart is glad and my tongue*
rejoices;
my body also will dwell in hope,
27 *because You will not abandon my soul to*
Hades,
nor will You let Your Holy One see decay.
28 *You have made known to me the paths of*
life;
You will fill me with joy in Your presence.'

29 Brothers, I can tell you with confidence that the patriarch David died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day. 30 *But he was a prophet and knew that God had promised him on oath that He would place one of his descendants on his throne.* 31 Foreseeing this, David spoke about the resurrection of the Christ, that He was not abandoned to Hades, nor did His body see decay. 32 God has raised this Jesus to life, to which we are all witnesses.

33 Exalted, then, to the right hand of God, He has received from the Father the promised Holy Spirit and has poured out what you now see and hear. 34 For David did not ascend into heaven, but he himself says:

'The Lord said to my Lord,
"Sit at My right hand
35 *until I make Your enemies*
a footstool for Your feet."'

36 Therefore let all Israel know with certainty that God has made this Jesus, whom you crucified, both Lord and Christ!"

THREE THOUSAND BELIEVE

37 When the people heard this, they were cut to the heart and asked Peter and the other apostles, "Brothers, what shall we do?"

38 Peter replied, "Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 39 This promise belongs to you and your children and to all who are far off—to all whom the Lord our God will call to Himself."

40 With many other words he testified, and he urged them, "Be saved from this corrupt generation." 41 Those who embraced his message were baptized, and about three thousand were added to the believers that day.

THE FELLOWSHIP OF BELIEVERS // ACTS 4:32–37

42 They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and to the fellowship, to the breaking of bread and to prayer. 43 A

- **ACTS 2:21 [FULFILLS]** Salvation offered to all mankind through His name ← JOEL 2:32 p.1382
- **ACTS 2:23 [FULFILLS]** What Joseph's brothers meant for evil, God meant for good to save many lives ← GEN 50:20 · MEDIUM p.116
- **ACTS 2:25 [FULFILLS]** The Holy One sets Yahweh always before Him and will not be shaken ← PS 16:8 p.892
- **ACTS 2:30 [FULFILLS]** 'The last words of David' prophesying of the latter messianic days and 3 more ← 2SA 23:1; PS 89:3-4; PS 132:11; LK 1:31-33, 35 p.532
- **ACTS 2:31 [FULFILLS]** His body would not see corruption (decay) in the tomb ← PS 16:10 p.892
- **ACTS 2:32 [FULFILLS]** Resurrection from the grave foreshadowed ← PS 30:3 · MEDIUM p.902
- **ACTS 2:33 [FULFILLS]** Streams of living water, the Spirit, would be given to believers after Jesus was glorified ← JN 7:38-39 p.1711
- **ACTS 2:33 [FULFILLS]** If Jesus went away He would send the Advocate ← JN 16:7 p.1727
- **ACTS 2:34 [FULFILLS]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **ACTS 2:36 [FULFILLS]** He would be the Anointed One ← PS 2:2 p.884
- **ACTS 2:37 [HEART]** The crowd was cut to the heart and asked what they should do.
- **ACTS 2:38 [NOTE]** IN JESUS' NAME. See In Jesus' Name?
- **ACTS 2:41 [FULFILLS]** The witnesses would carry the gospel to Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, and the ends of the earth ← ACTS 1:8 p.1740

THE HEART

sense of awe came over everyone, and the apostles performed many wonders and signs.

44 All the believers were together and had everything in common. 45 Selling their possessions and goods, they shared with anyone who was in need.

46 With one accord they continued to meet daily in the temple courts and to break bread from house to house, sharing their meals with gladness and sincerity of heart, 47 praising God and enjoying the favor of all the people. And the Lord added to their number daily those who were being saved.

THE BIG QUESTION

PENTECOST

The Day the Church Was Born

ACTS 2:1 TO 47 · LEVITICUS 23:15 TO 21 · JOEL 2:28 TO 32 · GENESIS 11:1 TO 9 · EXODUS 19 AND 32

WHAT THE FEAST WAS

Pentecost is Greek for fiftieth. It is the Feast of Weeks, Shavuot, fifty days after Passover, when the first loaves of the wheat harvest were offered to God, Leviticus 23:15 to 21. It was one of three feasts when Jewish men came to Jerusalem, Deuteronomy 16:16. That is why Jews from every nation under heaven were in town, 2:5.

WHAT HAPPENED

About 120 believers were together, 1:15. A sound like a mighty rushing wind filled the house, tongues like fire rested on each one, and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other tongues, 2:2 to 4. Jesus had told them to wait for this, 1:4 to 5.

REAL LANGUAGES

The crowd heard them in their own languages, from Parthia and Media to Egypt, Libya, Crete, Arabia and Rome, praising the mighty works of God, 2:6 to 11. Some mocked and said they were drunk. Peter said, it is only nine in the morning, 2:15. See the Romans tongues pages, p.1809, for how this compares with tongues in 1 Corinthians 14.

WHAT PETER SAID

This is what Joel spoke about: In the last days I will pour out My Spirit on all people; your sons and daughters will prophesy, 2:16 to 18 and Joel 2:28 to 29. The Spirit was no longer for a few prophets and kings. It was for everyone, men and women, young and old.

WHAT IT STARTED

About 3,000 were baptized that day, 2:41. They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching, to fellowship, to breaking bread and to prayer, 2:42. Most Christians count this day as the birthday of the church.

Babel, Sinai and the Harvest

ACTS 2:1 TO 41 · GENESIS 11:1 TO 9 · EXODUS 19:16 TO 19 · 32:28 · 2 CORINTHIANS 3:6

BABEL TURNED AROUND

At Babel, God confused one language into many and scattered the people, Genesis 11:7 to 9. At Pentecost, many languages carried one message and gathered people back together. Christians have pointed this out since the early church.

THE SINAI CONNECTION

Israel reached Mount Sinai in the third month after leaving Egypt, about the time of this feast, Exodus 19:1. Jewish tradition came to remember Shavuot as the day God gave the Law; the Book of Jubilees, written before Jesus, already ties the feast to God's covenant, and later rabbis say it plainly. At Sinai there was fire, smoke and a loud trumpet, Exodus 19:16 to 19. At Pentecost there was wind, fire and many voices.

3,000 AND 3,000

After the golden calf at Sinai, about 3,000 people died, Exodus 32:28. At Pentecost about 3,000 were saved, Acts 2:41. Many preachers connect the two with Paul's words: the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life, 2 Corinthians 3:6. Acts itself does not make the link, but the numbers are hard to miss.

THE FIRSTFRUITS

The feast offered the first loaves of the harvest. Jesus had said the fields are white for harvest, John 4:35. Pentecost

ACTS 2:46 [HEART] The early church shared meals with glad and sincere hearts.

MIRACLES

was the first loaf of a harvest that is still going on.

WHY PENTECOSTALS ARE CALLED THAT

The Pentecostal movement, which began in 1901 and 1906, took its name from this day because it expected the same Spirit and the same gifts. Churches still keep the feast of Pentecost, sometimes called Whitsunday, fifty days after Easter.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

IN JESUS' NAME?

Acts 2:38 and Matthew 28:19

ACTS 2:38 · 8:16 · 10:48 · 19:5 · MATTHEW 28:19

THE TWO VERSES

Peter said: Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ, 2:38. Acts says the same in 8:16, 10:48 and 19:5. But Jesus said to baptize in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, Matthew 28:19. Which words should be said?

THE ONENESS VIEW

In 1913, at a camp meeting at Arroyo Seco near Los Angeles, a preacher named R. E. McAlister pointed out that the apostles baptized in Jesus' name. In 1914 Frank Ewart began rebaptizing people that way. When the Assemblies of God adopted a Trinity statement in 1916, many ministers left. Today the largest Oneness church is the United Pentecostal Church International, formed in 1945. They say Jesus is the one name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit, since 28:19 says name, not names, and that baptism should be done in that name.

THE TRINITARIAN VIEW

In Jesus' name in Acts means by His authority and into Him, as opposed to John's baptism, 19:3 to 5. The Didache, about AD 100, tells churches to baptize in the name of the Father, Son and Holy Spirit (7), and in the same book speaks of those baptized into the name of the Lord (9). The two phrases lived side by side. Most churches use the words of 28:19. See The Trinity in Matthew, p.1602.

THE OTHER BIG QUESTION IN 2:38

Is baptism needed to be saved?

Churches of Christ, Catholics, Orthodox and Lutherans say baptism is where God forgives and gives new life. Most Baptists and evangelicals say faith saves, and baptism shows it; Cornelius received the Holy Spirit before he was baptized, 10:44 to 48.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Repent, be baptized, and receive the Holy Spirit. Jesus is Lord.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

A man who could not walk since birth begs at the temple gate. Peter says, Silver or gold I do not have, but what I have I give you. In the name of Jesus, walk. The man jumps up, walking and leaping and praising God. A crowd runs over, and Peter preaches again.

A LAME MAN WALKS

1 One afternoon Peter and John were going up to the temple at the hour of prayer,
the ninth hour. 2 And a man who was lame
from birth was being carried to the temple
gate called Beautiful, where he was put
every day to beg from those entering the
temple courts. 3 When he saw Peter and
John about to enter, he asked them for
money.

4 Peter looked directly at him, as did John.
"Look at us!" said Peter. 5 So the man gave
them his attention, expecting to receive
something from them. 6 But Peter said,
"Silver or gold I do not have, but what I
have I give you: In the name of Jesus
Christ of Nazareth, get up and walk!"

7 Taking him by the right hand, Peter
helped him up, and at once the man's feet
and ankles were made strong. 8 He sprang
to his feet and began to walk. Then he
went with them into the temple courts,
walking and leaping and praising God.

9 When all the people saw him walking and
praising God, 10 they recognized him as
the man who used to sit begging at the
Beautiful Gate of the temple, and they
were filled with wonder and amazement at
what had happened to him.

ACTS 3:1 [MIRACLE] Lame man at temple gate healed by Peter and John

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

PETER SPEAKS IN SOLOMON'S COLONNADE // DEUTERONOMY 18:15–22

11 While the man clung to Peter and John,
all the people were astonished and ran to
them in the walkway called Solomon's
Colonnade. 12 And when Peter saw this, he
addressed the people: "Men of Israel, why
are you surprised by this? Why do you
stare at us as if by our own power or god-
liness we had made this man walk?
13 The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob,
the God of our fathers, has glorified His
servant Jesus. You handed Him over and
rejected Him before Pilate, even though
he had decided to release Him. 14 You re-
jected the Holy and Righteous One and
asked that a murderer be released to you.
15 You killed the Author of life, but God
raised Him from the dead, and we are wit-
nesses of this fact.
16 By faith in the name of Jesus, this man
whom you see and know has been made
strong. It is Jesus' name and the faith that
comes through Him that has given him
this complete healing in your presence.
17 And now, brothers, I know that you
acted in ignorance, as did your leaders. 18
But in this way God has fulfilled what He
foretold through all the prophets, saying
that His Christ would suffer. 19 Repent,
then, and turn back, so that your sins may
be wiped away, 20 that times of refreshing
may come from the presence of the Lord,
and that He may send Jesus, the Christ,
who has been appointed for you.
21 Heaven must take Him in until the time
comes for the restoration of all things,
which God announced long ago through
His holy prophets. 22 For Moses said, *'The
Lord your God will raise up for you a prophet
like me from among your brothers. You must
listen to Him in everything He tells you.* 23
*Everyone who does not listen to Him will be
completely cut off from among his people.'*
24 Indeed, all the prophets from Samuel
on, as many as have spoken, have pro-
claimed these days. 25 And you are sons
of the prophets and of the covenant God
made with your fathers when He said to
Abraham, *'Through your offspring all the
families of the earth will be blessed.'* 26 When
God raised up His Servant, He sent Him
first to you to bless you by turning each of
you from your wicked ways."

- **ACTS 3:13 [FULFILLS]** God would glorify Him ← IS 55:5 · MEDIUM p.1130
- **ACTS 3:13 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 3:6, 15 p.124
- **ACTS 3:19 [PROPHECY]** Times of refreshing may come from the presence of the Lord, and that He may send Jesus Christ, who was preached to you before, whom heaven must receive until the times of restoration of all things → STILL TO COME
- **ACTS 3:19 [FULFILLS]** He would restore Israel ← IS 49:6 · MEDIUM p.1122
- **ACTS 3:22 [FULFILLS]** Those who reject this Prophet would bear their own sin ← DT 18:19 p.308
- **ACTS 3:22 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 18:15-19 p.308

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

The leaders arrest Peter and John and tell them to stop talking about Jesus. They answer, We cannot stop speaking about what we have seen and heard. When they pray, the whole place shakes. The believers share everything they own, and a man named Barnabas sells a field and gives the money.

PETER AND JOHN BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN

1 While Peter and John were speaking to
the people, the priests and the captain of
the temple guard and the Sadducees
came up to them, 2 greatly disturbed that
they were teaching the people and pro-
claiming in Jesus the resurrection of the
dead. 3 They seized Peter and John, and
because it was evening, they put them in
custody until the next day. 4 But many who
heard the message believed, and the
number of men grew to about five thou-
sand.
5 The next day the rulers, elders, and
scribes assembled in Jerusalem, 6 along
with Annas the high priest, Caiaphas,
John, Alexander, and many others from
the high priest's family. 7 They had Peter
and John brought in and began to ques-
tion them: "By what power or what name
did you do this?"

- **ACTS 3:25 [FULFILLS]** Through Abraham's seed all nations would be blessed and 2 more ← GEN 12:3; GEN 18:18; GEN 26:2-5 p.62
- **ACTS 3:25 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 22:18; 26:4 p.77
- **ACTS 4:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Caiaphas Ossuary (1990) — ornate bone box inscribed with his name
- **ACTS 4:6 [FIELD NOTES]** A bone box carved with the name of this high priest's family was found in 1990. See The Caiaphas Ossuary Field Notes page in Matthew, p.1595.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

8 Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit,
said to them, "Rulers and elders of the
people! 9 If we are being examined today
about a kind service to a man who was
lame, to determine how he was healed, 10
then let this be known to all of you and to
all the people of Israel: It is by the name of
Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you cru-
cified but whom God raised from the
dead, that this man stands before you
healed. 11 This Jesus is

'the stone you builders rejected,
which has become the cornerstone.'

12 Salvation exists in no one else, for there
is no other name under heaven given to
men by which we must be saved."

THE NAME FORBIDDEN

13 When they saw the boldness of Peter
and John and realized that they were un-
schooled, ordinary men, they marveled
and took note that these men had been
with Jesus. 14 And seeing the man who
had been healed standing there with
them, they had nothing to say in re-
sponse. 15 So they ordered them to leave
the Sanhedrin and then conferred to-
gether.

16 "What shall we do with these men?"
they asked. "It is clear to everyone living
in Jerusalem that a remarkable miracle
has occurred through them, and we can-
not deny it. 17 But to keep this message
from spreading any further among the
people, we must warn them not to speak
to anyone in this name."

18 Then they called them in again and
commanded them not to speak or teach at
all in the name of Jesus. 19 But Peter and
John replied, "Judge for yourselves
whether it is right in God's sight to listen to
you rather than God. 20 For we cannot stop
speaking about what we have seen and
heard."

21 After further threats they let them go.
They could not find a way to punish them,
because all the people were glorifying
God for what had happened. 22 For the
man who was miraculously healed was
over forty years old.

THE BELIEVERS' PRAYER // PSALM 2:1–12

23 On their release, Peter and John re-
turned to their own people and reported
everything that the chief priests and el-
ders had said to them. 24 When the believ-
ers heard this, they lifted up their voices
to God with one accord. "Sovereign Lord,"
they said, "You made the heaven and the
earth and the sea and everything in them.
25 You spoke by the Holy Spirit through the
mouth of Your servant, our father David:

'Why do the nations rage
and the peoples plot in vain?
26 *The kings of the earth take their stand*
and the rulers gather together
against the Lord
and against His Anointed One.'

27 In fact, this is the very city where Herod
and Pontius Pilate conspired with the
Gentiles and the people of Israel against
Your holy servant Jesus, whom You
anointed. 28 They carried out what Your
hand and will had decided beforehand
would happen. 29 And now, Lord, consider
their threats, and enable Your servants to
speak Your word with complete boldness,
30 as You stretch out Your hand to heal
and perform signs and wonders through
the name of Your holy servant Jesus."

31 After they had prayed, their meeting
place was shaken, and they were all filled
with the Holy Spirit and spoke the word of
God boldly.

SHARING AMONG BELIEVERS // ACTS 2:42–47

32 The multitude of believers was one in
heart and soul. No one claimed that any of
his possessions was his own, but they
shared everything they owned. 33 With
great power the apostles continued to
give their testimony about the resurrection

- **ACTS 4:11 [FULFILLS]** The precious cornerstone of the Messianic kingdom ← IS 28:16 p.1094
- **ACTS 4:11 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:22 p.964
- **ACTS 4:12 [FULFILLS]** 'Look to Me and be saved, all ends of the earth' ← IS 45:22 p.1119
- **ACTS 4:24 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 20:11; PS 146:6 p.148
- **ACTS 4:25 [FULFILLS]** The hostility of kings and rulers against the Messiah foreordained ← PS 2:1-3 p.884
- **ACTS 4:25 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 2:1-2 p.884
- **ACTS 4:31 [MIRACLE]** The place is shaken and all are filled with the Spirit
- **ACTS 4:32 [HEART]** The believers were one in heart and soul.

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC

of the Lord Jesus. And abundant grace was upon them all.

34 There were no needy ones among them, because those who owned lands or houses would sell their property, bring the proceeds from the sales, 35 and lay them at the apostles' feet for distribution to anyone as he had need.

36 Joseph, a Levite from Cyprus, whom the apostles called Barnabas (meaning Son of Encouragement), 37 sold a field he owned, brought the money, and laid it at the apostles' feet.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Ananias and his wife Sapphira sell land, keep part of the money, and lie that they gave it all. Both drop dead. Sick people line the streets hoping Peter's shadow will fall on them. An angel opens the jail at night. The apostles are whipped and leave happy that they were counted worthy to suffer for His name.

ANANIAS AND SAPPHIRA

1 Now a man named Ananias, together with his wife Sapphira, also sold a piece of property. 2 With his wife's full knowledge, he kept back some of the proceeds for himself, but brought a portion and laid it at the apostles' feet.

3 Then Peter said, "Ananias, how is it that Satan has filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and withhold some of the proceeds from the land? 4 Did it not belong to you before it was sold? And after it was sold, was it not at your disposal? How could you conceive such a deed in your heart? You have not lied to men, but to God!"

5 On hearing these words, Ananias fell down and died. And great fear came over all who heard what had happened. 6 Then the young men stepped forward, wrapped up his body, and carried him out and buried him.

7 About three hours later his wife also came in, unaware of what had happened. 8 "Tell me," said Peter, "is this the price you and your husband got for the land?"

"Yes," she answered, "that is the price."

9 "How could you agree to test the Spirit of the Lord?" Peter replied. "Look, the feet of the men who buried your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out also."

10 At that instant she fell down at his feet and died. Then the young men came in and, finding her dead, carried her out and buried her beside her husband. 11 And great fear came over the whole church and all who heard about these events.

THE APOSTLES HEAL MANY

12 The apostles performed many signs and wonders among the people, and with one accord the believers gathered together in Solomon's Colonnade. 13 Although the people regarded them highly, no one else dared to join them. 14 Yet more and more believers were brought to the Lord—large numbers of both men and women.

15 As a result, people brought the sick into the streets and laid them on cots and mats, so that at least Peter's shadow might fall on some of them as he passed by. 16 Crowds also gathered from the towns around Jerusalem, bringing the sick and those tormented by unclean spirits, and all of them were healed.

THE APOSTLES ARRESTED AND FREED

17 Then the high priest and all his associates, who belonged to the party of the Sadducees, were filled with jealousy. They went out 18 and arrested the apostles and put them in the public jail. 19 But during the night an angel of the Lord opened the doors of the jail and brought them out, saying, 20 "Go, stand in the temple courts and tell the people the full message of this new life."

- **ACTS 5:3 [HEART]** Ananias lied to the Holy Spirit. Peter asks why Satan filled his heart.
- **ACTS 5:3 [DEMONIC]** Satan filled Ananias' heart to lie
- **ACTS 5:4 [HEART]** Peter says Ananias planned this lie in his own heart. The money was never the problem.
- **ACTS 5:5 [MIRACLE]** Ananias falls down and dies
- **ACTS 5:9 [MIRACLE]** Sapphira falls down and dies
- **ACTS 5:15 [MIRACLE]** Peter's shadow healed people in the streets
- **ACTS 5:16 [DEMONIC]** Multitudes brought sick and demon-tormented to apostles; all healed
- **ACTS 5:19 [MIRACLE]** Angels deliver apostles from prison (twice)

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

21 At daybreak the apostles entered the
temple courts as they had been told and
began to teach the people.

When the high priest and his associates
arrived, they convened the
Sanhedrin—the full assembly of the elders
of Israel—and sent to the jail for the apos-
tles. 22 But on arriving at the jail, the offi-
cers did not find them there. So they re-
turned with the report: 23 "We found the
jail securely locked, with the guards
posted at the doors; but when we opened
them, we found no one inside."

THE APOSTLES BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN

24 When the captain of the temple guard
and the chief priests heard this account,
they were perplexed as to what was hap-
pening. 25 Then someone came in and an-
nounced, "Look, the men you put in jail
are standing in the temple courts teaching
the people!"

26 At that point, the captain went with the
officers and brought the apostles—but not
by force, for fear the people would stone
them. 27 They brought them in and made
them stand before the Sanhedrin, where
the high priest interrogated them. 28 "We
gave you strict orders not to teach in this
name," he said. "Yet you have filled
Jerusalem with your teaching and are de-
termined to make us responsible for this
man's blood."

29 But Peter and the other apostles replied,
"We must obey God rather than men. 30
The God of our fathers raised up Jesus,
whom you had killed by hanging Him on a
tree. 31 God exalted Him to His right hand
as Prince and Savior, in order to grant re-
pentance and forgiveness of sins to Israel.
32 We are witnesses of these things, and
so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given
to those who obey Him."

GAMALIEL'S ADVICE

33 When the Council members heard this,
they were enraged, and they resolved to
put the apostles to death. 34 But a Phar-
isee named Gamaliel, a teacher of the law
who was honored by all the people, stood
up in the Sanhedrin and ordered that the
men be put outside for a short time.

35 "Men of Israel," he said, "consider care-
fully what you are about to do to these
men. 36 Some time ago Theudas rose up,
claiming to be somebody, and about four
hundred men joined him. He was killed, all
his followers were dispersed, and it all
came to nothing. 37 After him, Judas the
Galilean appeared in the days of the cen-
sus and drew away people after him. He
too perished, and all his followers were
scattered.

38 So in the present case I advise you:
Leave these men alone. Let them go! For
if their purpose or endeavor is of human
origin, it will fail. 39 But if it is from God,
you will not be able to stop them. You may
even find yourselves fighting against
God."

40 At this, they yielded to Gamaliel. They
called the apostles in and had them
flogged. Then they ordered them not to
speak in the name of Jesus, and released
them.

41 The apostles left the Sanhedrin, rejoic-
ing that they had been counted worthy of
suffering disgrace for the Name. 42 Every
day, in the temple courts and from house
to house, they did not stop teaching and
proclaiming the good news that Jesus is
the Christ.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

*The church grows fast, and Greek speaking wid-
ows are being left out of the food line. The apos-
tles pick seven men full of the Spirit to serve ta-
bles. One of them is Stephen, who does great
wonders. Enemies bring liars against him, and
when the council looks at him, his face looks like
the face of an angel.*

THE CHOOSING OF THE SEVEN // 1 TIMOTHY 3:8–13

1 In those days when the disciples were in-
creasing in number, the Grecian Jews
among them began to grumble against the
Hebraic Jews because their widows were
being overlooked in the daily distribution
of food.

ACTS 5:31 [FULFILLS] Mary would bear a Son named Je-
sus who would save His people from their sins ← MT 1:21
p.1550

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

2 So the Twelve summoned all the disciples and said, "It is unacceptable for us to neglect the word of God in order to wait on tables. 3 Therefore, brothers, select from among you seven men confirmed to be full of the Spirit and wisdom. We will assign this responsibility to them 4 and will devote ourselves to prayer and to the ministry of the word."

5 This proposal pleased the whole group. They chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, as well as Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolas from Antioch, a convert to Judaism. 6 They presented these seven to the apostles, who prayed and laid their hands on them.

7 So the word of God continued to spread. The number of disciples in Jerusalem grew rapidly, and a great number of priests became obedient to the faith.

THE ARREST OF STEPHEN

8 Now Stephen, who was full of grace and power, was performing great wonders and signs among the people. 9 But resistance arose from what was called the Synagogue of the Freedmen, including Cyrenians, Alexandrians, and men from the provinces of Cilicia and Asia. They disputed with Stephen, 10 but they could not stand up to his wisdom or the Spirit by whom he spoke.

11 Then they prompted some men to say, "We heard Stephen speak words of blasphemy against Moses and against God."

12 So they stirred up the people, elders, and scribes and confronted Stephen. They seized him and brought him before the Sanhedrin, 13 where they presented false witnesses who said, "This man never stops speaking against this holy place and against the law. 14 For we have heard him say that Jesus of Nazareth will destroy this place and change the customs that Moses handed down to us."

15 All who were sitting in the Sanhedrin looked intently at Stephen, and they saw that his face was like the face of an angel.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Stephen walks the council through Israel's history, from Abraham to Moses to Solomon, and shows how they always rejected the ones God sent. They grind their teeth. Stephen sees heaven open and Jesus standing at God's right hand. They stone him while a young man named Saul holds their coats. Stephen dies forgiving them.

STEPHEN'S ADDRESS: THE CALL OF ABRAHAM // GENESIS 12:1–9

1 Then the high priest asked Stephen, "Are these charges true?"

2 And Stephen declared: "Brothers and fathers, listen to me! The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham while he was still in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran, 3 and told him, *'Leave your country and your kindred and go to the land I will show you.'* 4 So Abraham left the land of the Chaldeans and settled in Haran. After his father died, God brought him out of that place and into this land where you are now living.

5 *He gave him no inheritance here, not even a foot of ground. But God promised to give possession of the land to Abraham and his descendants, even though he did not yet have a child.* 6 *God told him that his descendants would be foreigners in a strange land, and that they would be enslaved and mistreated four hundred years.* 7 *'But I will punish the nation that enslaves them,'* God said, *'and afterward they will come forth and worship Me in this place.'*

8 Then God gave Abraham the covenant of circumcision, and Abraham became the father of Isaac and circumcised him on the eighth day. And Isaac became the father of Jacob, and Jacob of the twelve patriarchs.

JOSEPH SOLD INTO EGYPT // GENESIS 37:12–30

9 Because the patriarchs were jealous of Joseph, they sold him as a slave into Egypt. But God was with him 10 and rescued him from all his troubles. He granted Joseph favor and wisdom in the sight of

- **ACTS 7:3 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 12:1 p.62
- **ACTS 7:5 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← GEN 17:8; 48:4 p.70
- **ACTS 7:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 15:13-14 p.68
- **ACTS 7:9 [FULFILLS]** What Joseph's brothers meant for evil, God meant for good to save many lives ← GEN 50:20 · MEDIUM p.116

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

Pharaoh king of Egypt, who appointed him ruler over Egypt and all his household.

11 Then famine and great suffering swept across Egypt and Canaan, and our fathers could not find food. 12 When Jacob heard that there was grain in Egypt, he sent our fathers on their first visit. 13 On their second visit, Joseph revealed his identity to his brothers, and his family became known to Pharaoh. 14 Then Joseph sent for his father Jacob and all his relatives, seventy-five in all.

ISRAEL OPPRESSED IN EGYPT // EXODUS 1:8–22

15 So Jacob went down to Egypt, where he and our fathers died. 16 Their bones were carried back to Shechem and placed in the tomb that Abraham had bought from the sons of Hamor at Shechem for a price he paid in silver.

17 As the time drew near for God to fulfill His promise to Abraham, our people in Egypt increased greatly in number. 18 *Then another king, who knew nothing of Joseph, arose over Egypt.* 19 He exploited our people and oppressed our fathers, forcing them to abandon their infants so they would die.

THE BIRTH AND ADOPTION OF MOSES // EXODUS 2:1–10; HEBREWS 11:23–29

20 At that time Moses was born, and he was beautiful in the sight of God. For three months he was nurtured in his father's house. 21 When he was set outside, Pharaoh's daughter took him and brought him up as her own son. 22 So Moses was educated in all the wisdom of the Egyptians and was powerful in speech and action.

THE REJECTION AND FLIGHT OF MOSES // EXODUS 2:11–22

23 When Moses was forty years old, he decided to visit his brothers, the children of Israel. 24 And when he saw one of them being mistreated, Moses went to his defense and avenged him by striking down the Egyptian who was oppressing him. 25 He assumed his brothers would understand that God was using him to deliver them, but they did not.

26 The next day he came upon two Israelites who were fighting, and he tried to reconcile them, saying, 'Men, you are brothers. Why are you mistreating each other?'

27 But the man who was abusing his neighbor pushed Moses aside and said, *'Who made you ruler and judge over us?* 28 *Do you want to kill me as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?'* 29 At this remark, Moses fled to the land of Midian, where he lived as a foreigner and had two sons.

THE CALL OF MOSES // EXODUS 3:1–22

30 After forty years had passed, an angel appeared to Moses in the flames of a burning bush in the desert near Mount Sinai. 31 When Moses saw it, he marveled at the sight. As he approached to look more closely, the voice of the Lord came to him: 32 *'I am the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.'* Moses trembled with fear and did not dare to look.

33 Then the Lord said to him, *'Take off your sandals, for the place where you are standing is holy ground.* 34 *I have indeed seen the oppression of My people in Egypt. I have heard their groaning and have come down to deliver them. Now come, I will send you back to Egypt.'*

35 This Moses, whom they had rejected with the words, *'Who made you ruler and judge?'* is the one whom God sent to be their ruler and redeemer through the angel who appeared to him in the bush. 36 He led them out and performed wonders and signs in the land of Egypt, at the Red Sea, and for forty years in the wilderness.

37 This is the same Moses who told the Israelites, *'God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your brothers.'* 38 He was in the assembly in the wilderness with the angel who spoke to him on Mount Sinai, and with our fathers. And he received living words to pass on to us.

■ **ACTS 7:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 1:8 p.120

■ **ACTS 7:27 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 2:14 p.123
■ **ACTS 7:32 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 3:6 p.124
■ **ACTS 7:33 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 3:5, 7-8, 10 p.124
■ **ACTS 7:35 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 2:14 p.123
■ **ACTS 7:37 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 18:15 p.308

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

THE REBELLION OF ISRAEL // EXODUS 32:1–35; DEUTERONOMY 9:7–29; AMOS 5:16–27

39 But our fathers refused to obey him. Instead, they rejected him and in their
hearts turned back to Egypt. 40 They said
to Aaron, *'Make us gods who will go before
us! As for this Moses who led us out of the land
of Egypt, we do not know what has happened
to him.'*

41 At that time they made a calf and offered a sacrifice to the idol, rejoicing in
the works of their hands. 42 But God
turned away from them and gave them
over to the worship of the host of heaven,
as it is written in the book of the prophets:

*'Did you bring Me sacrifices and offerings
forty years in the wilderness, O house of Israel?*
43 *You have taken along the tabernacle of Molech
and the star of your god Rephan,
the idols you made to worship.
Therefore I will send you into exile
beyond Babylon.'*

THE TABERNACLE OF THE TESTIMONY // EXODUS 40:1–33; HEBREWS 9:1–10

44 Our fathers had the tabernacle of the Testimony with them in the wilderness. It was constructed exactly as God had directed Moses, according to the pattern he had seen. 45 And our fathers who received it brought it in with Joshua when they dispossessed the nations God drove out before them. It remained until the time of David, 46 who found favor in the sight of God and asked to provide a dwelling place for the God of Jacob. 47 But it was Solomon who built the house for Him.

48 However, the Most High does not dwell in houses made by human hands. As the prophet says:

49 *'Heaven is My throne
and the earth is My footstool.
What kind of house will you build for Me, says the Lord,
or where will My place of repose be?
50 Has not My hand made all these things?'*

51 You stiff-necked people with uncircumcised hearts and ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit, just as your fathers did. 52 Which of the prophets did your fathers fail to persecute? They even killed those who foretold the coming of the Righteous One. And now you are His betrayers and murderers— 53 you who received the law ordained by angels, yet have not kept it."

THE STONING OF STEPHEN

54 On hearing this, the members of the Sanhedrin were enraged, and they gnashed their teeth at him. 55 But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, looked intently into heaven and saw the glory of God and Jesus standing at the right hand of God. 56 "Look," he said, "I see heaven open and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God."

57 At this they covered their ears, cried out in a loud voice, and rushed together at him. 58 They dragged him out of the city and began to stone him. Meanwhile the witnesses laid their garments at the feet of a young man named Saul.

59 While they were stoning him, Stephen appealed, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit." 60 Falling on his knees, he cried out in a loud voice, "Lord, do not hold this sin against them." And when he had said this, he fell asleep.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Saul goes house to house dragging believers to prison, and the church scatters. That just spreads the message. Philip preaches in Samaria, and a magician named Simon tries to buy the Holy Spirit. Then Philip meets an Ethiopian official reading Isaiah 53 in his chariot, explains it is about Jesus, and baptizes him by the road.

- **ACTS 7:39 [DEMONIC]** Israel worships the golden calf and carries Molech and Rephan
- **ACTS 7:40 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 32:1, 23 p.163
- **ACTS 7:42 [FULFILLS]** Israel would be sent into exile beyond Damascus ← AMOS 5:27 p.1397
- **ACTS 7:42 [QUOTES]** Direct ← AMOS 5:25-27 p.1396
- **ACTS 7:45 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JOSH 18:1 p.367
- **ACTS 7:47 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1KI 6:14; 2CH 3:1 p.553
- **ACTS 7:49 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 66:1-2 p.1141
- **ACTS 7:54 [HEART]** The council was cut to the heart but chose rage instead of repentance.
- **ACTS 7:55 [MIRACLE]** Stephen sees heaven open and Jesus standing at God's right hand

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART DEMONIC

SAUL PERSECUTES THE CHURCH

1 And Saul was there, giving approval to
Stephen's death.

On that day a great persecution broke out
against the church in Jerusalem, and all
except the apostles were scattered
throughout Judea and Samaria. 2 God-
fearing men buried Stephen and mourned
deeply over him. 3 But Saul began to de-
stroy the church. Going from house to
house, he dragged off men and women
and put them in prison.

PHILIP IN SAMARIA

4 Those who had been scattered preached
the word wherever they went. 5 Philip went
down to a city in Samaria and proclaimed
the Christ to them. 6 The crowds all paid
close attention to Philip's message and to
the signs they saw him perform. 7 With
loud shrieks, unclean spirits came out of
many who were possessed, and many of
the paralyzed and lame were healed. 8 So
there was great joy in that city.

SIMON THE SORCERER // DEUTERONOMY 18:9–14

9 Prior to that time, a man named Simon
had practiced sorcery in the city and as-
tounded the people of Samaria. He
claimed to be someone great, 10 and all the
people, from the least to the greatest,
heeded his words and said, "This man is
the divine power called the Great Power."
11 They paid close attention to him be-
cause he had astounded them for a long
time with his sorcery.

12 But when they believed Philip as he
preached the gospel of the kingdom of
God and the name of Jesus Christ, they
were baptized, both men and women. 13
Even Simon himself believed and was
baptized. He followed Philip closely and
was astounded by the great signs and
miracles he observed.

14 When the apostles in Jerusalem heard
that Samaria had received the word of
God, they sent Peter and John to them. 15
On their arrival, they prayed for them to
receive the Holy Spirit. 16 For the Holy
Spirit had not yet fallen upon any of them;
they had simply been baptized into the
name of the Lord Jesus. 17 Then Peter and
John laid their hands on them, and they
received the Holy Spirit.

18 When Simon saw that the Spirit was
given through the laying on of the apos-
tles' hands, he offered them money. 19
"Give me this power as well," he said, "so
that everyone on whom I lay my hands
may receive the Holy Spirit."

20 But Peter replied, "May your silver per-
ish with you, because you thought you
could buy the gift of God with money! 21
You have no part or share in our ministry,
because your heart is not right before
God. 22 Repent, therefore, of your wicked-
ness, and pray to the Lord. Perhaps He
will forgive you for the intent of your
heart. 23 For I see that you are poisoned by
bitterness and captive to iniquity."

24 Then Simon answered, "Pray to the Lord
for me, so that nothing you have said may
happen to me."

25 And after Peter and John had testified
and spoken the word of the Lord, they re-
turned to Jerusalem, preaching the gospel
in many of the Samaritan villages.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

BAPTIZED IN THE HOLY SPIRIT

At Salvation or After?

ACTS 1:5 · 2:4 · 8:14 TO 17 · 10:44 TO 46 · 19:1 TO 6 · 1 CORINTHIANS 12:13

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

John the Baptist said Jesus would bap-
tize with the Holy Spirit and fire, Luke
3:16. Jesus said, in a few days you will
be baptized with the Holy Spirit, 1:5. Paul
says we were all baptized by one Spirit
into one body, 1 Corinthians 12:13.

THE PATTERN IN ACTS

At Pentecost, followers of Jesus were

ACTS 8:5 [FULFILLS] The witnesses would carry the gospel to Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, and the ends of the earth ← ACTS 1:8 p.1740
ACTS 8:7 [DEMONIC] Philip in Samaria: unclean spirits crying with loud voice came out of many
ACTS 8:9 [DEMONIC] Simon amazes Samaria with sorcery

ACTS 8:16 [NOTE] THE SPIRIT CAME LATER. See Baptized in the Holy Spirit.
ACTS 8:18 [DEMONIC] Simon tries to buy the power of the Spirit
ACTS 8:21 [HEART] Simon wanted to buy God's power. Peter says his heart is not right before God.
ACTS 8:22 [HEART] Peter tells Simon to repent and pray that the intent of his heart be forgiven.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

filled and spoke in tongues, 2:4. The Samaritans believed and were baptized, but received the Spirit later, when Peter and John came and laid hands on them, 8:14 to 17. Cornelius' household received the Spirit and spoke in tongues while Peter was still preaching, before baptism, 10:44 to 46. Twelve disciples in Ephesus received the Spirit after Paul laid hands on them, and spoke in tongues and prophesied, 19:1 to 6. Sometimes at the moment of faith, sometimes after.

WHERE THE SECOND BLESSING IDEA CAME FROM

John Wesley taught a second work of grace after salvation. The Holiness movement of the 1800s began calling it the baptism of the Holy Spirit. Preachers like D. L. Moody and R. A. Torrey taught a baptism of power for service. In 1901 Charles Parham tied it to speaking in tongues, and the Pentecostal movement was born. The full story is in the Romans tongues pages, p.1809.

WHY IT MATTERS

If the baptism in the Spirit is a second experience, every believer should seek it. If it happens at salvation, every believer already has it and should be filled again and again, Ephesians 5:18.

The Baptism in the Holy Spirit

ACTS 1:8 · 4:31 · 8:17 · ROMANS 8:9 · EPHESIANS 5:18 · GALATIANS 5:22 TO 23

CLASSICAL PENTECOSTAL

A second experience after salvation that gives power to be witnesses, 1:8. Speaking in tongues is its first outward sign, 2:4, 10:46 and 19:6. The Assemblies of God, the Church of God and others teach that every believer should seek it.

CHARISMATIC AND THIRD WAVE

Believers can be filled with the Spirit in powerful ways, often more than once, as in 4:31. Tongues is a real gift, but one gift among many, and not everyone speaks in tongues, 1 Corinthians 12:30.

AT SALVATION

Every believer is baptized in the Spirit the moment they are saved. Anyone who does not have the Spirit of Christ does not belong to Him, Romans 8:9. Later experiences are fillings, not a second baptism. The delays in Acts happened once, as the gospel moved from Jews to Samaritans to Gentiles, so the apostles could see that each group was really included. Baptists, Reformed churches and many evangelicals hold this view. James Dunn argued it in his 1970 book Baptism in the Holy Spirit.

CATHOLIC AND ORTHODOX

The Spirit is given in baptism and sealed in confirmation, called chrismation in the East, when the bishop or priest anoints and prays, like 8:17. The Catholic Charismatic Renewal, begun in 1967, speaks of baptism in the Spirit as stirring up the grace already given.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

No one can belong to Christ without the Spirit, Romans 8:9. Every believer is told to be filled with the Spirit, Ephesians 5:18. The proof of the Spirit is love, joy, peace and the rest of His fruit, Galatians 5:22 to 23.

PHILIP AND THE ETHIOPIAN // ISAIAH 53:1–8

26 Now an angel of the Lord said to Philip,
"Get up and go south to the desert road
that goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza."
27 So he started out, and on his way he
met an Ethiopian eunuch, a court official
in charge of the entire treasury of Candace, queen of the Ethiopians. He had
gone to Jerusalem to worship, 28 and on
his return was sitting in his chariot reading
Isaiah the prophet.
29 The Spirit said to Philip, "Go over to that
chariot and stay by it."
30 So Philip ran up and heard the man
reading Isaiah the prophet. "Do you understand what you are reading?" Philip
asked.
31 "How can I," he said, "unless someone
guides me?" And he invited Philip to come
up and sit with him.
32 The eunuch was reading this passage
of Scripture:

"He was led like a sheep to the slaughter,

ACTS 8:26 [MIRACLE] An angel sends Philip to the desert road
ACTS 8:27 [FULFILLS] Cush would bring gifts to Yahweh on Mount Zion ← IS 18:7 · MEDIUM p.1081

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

JESUS SPEAKING

and as a lamb before the shearer is silent,
so He did not open His mouth.
33 *In His humiliation He was deprived of justice.*
Who can recount His descendants?
For His life was removed from the earth."

34 "Tell me," said the eunuch, "who is the prophet talking about, himself or someone else?"

35 Then Philip began with this very Scripture and told him the good news about Jesus.

36 As they traveled along the road and came to some water, the eunuch said, "Look, here is water! What is there to prevent me from being baptized?" 37 [And Philip said, "If you believe with all your heart, you may be baptized." The eunuch replied, "I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God."] 38 And he gave orders to stop the chariot. Then both Philip and the eunuch went down into the water, and Philip baptized him.

39 When they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord carried Philip away, and the eunuch saw him no more, but went on his way rejoicing. 40 But Philip appeared at Azotus and traveled through that region, preaching the gospel in all the towns until he came to Caesarea.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

On the road to Damascus a light from heaven knocks Saul to the ground, and Jesus asks, Why do you persecute Me? Saul is blind for three days until a nervous believer named Ananias prays for him. Saul starts preaching Jesus and has to escape over the city wall in a basket. Peter heals Aeneas and raises Tabitha from the dead.

THE ROAD TO DAMASCUS // ACTS 22:1–21; ACTS 26:1–23

1 Meanwhile, Saul was still breathing out murderous threats against the disciples of the Lord. He approached the high priest 2 and requested letters to the synagogues in Damascus, so that if he found any men or women belonging to the Way, he could bring them as prisoners to Jerusalem.

3 As Saul drew near to Damascus on his journey, suddenly a light from heaven flashed around him. 4 He fell to the ground and heard a voice say to him, "Saul, Saul, why do you persecute Me?"

5 "Who are You, Lord?" Saul asked.

"I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting," He replied. 6 "Now get up and go into the city, and you will be told what you must do."

7 The men traveling with Saul stood there speechless. They heard the voice but did not see anyone. 8 Saul got up from the ground, but when he opened his eyes he could not see a thing. So they led him by the hand into Damascus. 9 For three days he was without sight, and he did not eat or drink anything.

ANANIAS BAPTIZES SAUL

10 In Damascus there was a disciple named Ananias. The Lord spoke to him in a vision, "Ananias!"

"Here I am, Lord," he answered.

11 "Get up!" the Lord told him. "Go to the house of Judas on Straight Street and ask for a man from Tarsus named Saul, for he is praying. 12 In a vision he has seen a man named Ananias come and place his hands on him to restore his sight."

13 But Ananias answered, "Lord, many people have told me about this man and all the harm he has done to Your saints in Jerusalem. 14 And now he is here with authority from the chief priests to arrest all who call on Your name."

15 "Go!" said the Lord. "This man is My chosen instrument to carry My name before the Gentiles and their kings, and be-

- **ACTS 8:32 [FULFILLS]** Led as a lamb to the slaughter ← IS 53:7c p.1128
- **ACTS 8:32 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:7-8 p.1128
- **ACTS 8:37 [TEXT]** Verse 37 is in brackets because the oldest manuscripts of Acts do not have it. Later copies and the KJV do. It may be an early baptism question and answer that a copyist wrote into the story.
- **ACTS 8:39 [MIRACLE]** The Spirit carries Philip away to Azotus
- **ACTS 9:1 [MIRACLE]** Saul's Damascus road encounter with the risen Christ
- **ACTS 9:5 [TEXT]** Some later manuscripts and the KJV add It is hard for you to kick against the goads here, and more words in verse 6. The oldest copies do not. Jesus does say these words in Acts 26:14.
- **ACTS 9:10 [MIRACLE]** The Lord tells Ananias in a vision to go to Saul

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

fore the people of Israel. 16 I will show him how much he must suffer for My name."

17 So Ananias went to the house, and when he arrived, he placed his hands on Saul. "Brother Saul," he said, "the Lord Jesus, who appeared to you on the road as you were coming here, has sent me so that you may see again and be filled with the Holy Spirit."

18 At that instant, something like scales fell from Saul's eyes, and his sight was restored. He got up and was baptized, 19 and after taking some food, he regained his strength. And he spent several days with the disciples in Damascus.

SAUL PREACHES AT DAMASCUS

20 Saul promptly began to proclaim Jesus in the synagogues, declaring, "He is the Son of God."

21 All who heard him were astounded and asked, "Isn't this the man who wreaked havoc in Jerusalem on those who call on this name? And hasn't he come here to take them as prisoners to the chief priests?"

22 But Saul was empowered all the more, and he confounded the Jews living in Damascus by proving that Jesus is the Christ.

THE ESCAPE FROM DAMASCUS

23 After many days had passed, the Jews conspired to kill him, 24 but Saul learned of their plot. Day and night they watched the city gates in order to kill him. 25 One night, however, his disciples took him and lowered him in a basket through a window in the wall.

SAUL IN JERUSALEM

26 When Saul arrived in Jerusalem, he tried to join the disciples, but they were all afraid of him, not believing that he was a disciple. 27 Then Barnabas brought him to the apostles and described how Saul had seen the Lord, who had spoken to him on the road to Damascus, and how Saul had spoken boldly in that city in the name of Jesus.

28 So Saul stayed with them, moving about freely in Jerusalem and speaking boldly in the name of the Lord. 29 He talked and debated with the Grecian Jews, but they tried to kill him. 30 When the brothers learned of this, they took him down to Caesarea and sent him off to Tarsus.

THE HEALING OF AENEAS

31 Then the church throughout Judea, Galilee, and Samaria experienced a time of peace. It grew in strength and numbers, living in the fear of the Lord and the encouragement of the Holy Spirit.

32 As Peter traveled throughout the area, he went to visit the saints in Lydda. 33 There he found a man named Aeneas who had been paralyzed and bedridden for eight years. 34 "Aeneas," Peter said to him, "Jesus Christ heals you! Get up and put away your mat." Immediately Aeneas got up, 35 and all who lived in Lydda and Sharon saw him and turned to the Lord.

THE RAISING OF TABITHA // JOHN 11:38–44

36 In Joppa there was a disciple named Tabitha (which is translated as Dorcas), who was always occupied with works of kindness and charity. 37 At that time, however, she became sick and died, and her body was washed and placed in an upper room. 38 Since Lydda was near Joppa, the disciples, hearing that Peter was there, sent two men to urge him, "Come to us without delay."

39 So Peter got up and went with them. On his arrival, they took him to the upper room. All the widows stood around him, weeping and showing him the tunics and other clothing that Dorcas had made while she was still with them.

40 Then Peter sent them all out of the room. He knelt down and prayed, and turning toward her body, he said, "Tabitha, get up!" She opened her eyes, and seeing Peter, she sat up. 41 Peter took

- **ACTS 9:15 [PROPHECY]** He is a chosen vessel of Mine to bear My name before Gentiles, kings, and the children of Israel. For I will show him how many things he must suffer for My name's sake (to Ananias about Paul) → Fulfilled throughout Acts
- **ACTS 9:17 [MIRACLE]** Something like scales falls from Saul's eyes
- **ACTS 9:32 [MIRACLE]** Peter heals Aeneas, paralyzed 8 years
- **ACTS 9:36 [MIRACLE]** Peter raises Tabitha (Dorcas) from death

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

her by the hand and helped her up. Then he called the saints and widows and presented her to them alive.

42 This became known all over Joppa, and many people believed in the Lord. 43 And Peter stayed for several days in Joppa with a tanner named Simon.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Cornelius, a Roman officer, sees an angel who tells him to send for Peter. Meanwhile Peter, hungry on a rooftop, sees a sheet full of animals he was never allowed to eat. A voice says, Get up, Peter, kill and eat. Peter goes to Cornelius' house, and the Holy Spirit falls on Gentiles while Peter is still talking.

CORNELIUS SENDS FOR PETER

1 At Caesarea there was a man named Cornelius, a centurion in what was called the Italian Regiment. 2 He and all his household were devout and God-fearing. He gave generously to the people and prayed to God regularly. 3 One day at about the ninth hour, he had a clear vision of an angel of God who came to him and said, "Cornelius!"

4 Cornelius stared at him in fear and asked, "What is it, Lord?"

The angel answered, "Your prayers and gifts to the poor have ascended as a memorial offering before God. 5 Now send men to Joppa to call for a man named Simon who is called Peter. 6 He is staying with Simon the tanner, whose house is by the sea."

7 When the angel who spoke to him had gone, Cornelius called two of his servants and a devout soldier from among his attendants. 8 He explained what had happened and sent them to Joppa.

PETER'S VISION // LEVITICUS 11:1–47; DEUTERONOMY 14:1–21

9 The next day at about the sixth hour, as the men were approaching the city on their journey, Peter went up on the roof to pray. 10 He became hungry and wanted something to eat, but while the meal was being prepared, he fell into a trance.

11 He saw heaven open and something like a large sheet being let down to earth by its four corners. 12 It contained all kinds of four-footed animals and reptiles of the earth, as well as birds of the air. 13 Then a voice said to him: "Get up, Peter, kill and eat!"

14 "No, Lord!" Peter answered. "I have never eaten anything impure or unclean."

15 The voice spoke to him a second time: "Do not call anything impure that God has made clean."

16 This happened three times, and all at once the sheet was taken back up into heaven.

PETER CALLED TO CAESAREA

17 While Peter was puzzling over the meaning of the vision, the men sent by Cornelius found Simon's house and approached the gate. 18 They called out to ask if Simon called Peter was staying there.

19 As Peter continued to reflect on the vision, the Spirit said to him, "Behold, three men are looking for you. 20 So get up! Go downstairs and accompany them without hesitation, because I have sent them."

21 So Peter went down to the men and said, "Here am I, the one you are looking for. Why have you come?"

22 "Cornelius the centurion has sent us," they said. "He is a righteous and God-fearing man with a good reputation among the whole Jewish nation. A holy angel instructed him to request your presence in his home so he could hear a message from you."

23 So Peter invited them in as his guests. And the next day he got ready and went with them, accompanied by some of the brothers from Joppa.

PETER VISITS CORNELIUS

24 The following day he arrived in Caesarea, where Cornelius was expecting them and had called together his relatives and close friends. 25 As Peter was about to

ACTS 10:3 [MIRACLE] Angel visits Cornelius directing him to send for Peter
ACTS 10:9 [MIRACLE] Peter's vision of the sheet of animals

ACTS 10:14 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 11:47 p.190

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES

enter, Cornelius met him and fell at his feet to worship him. 26 But Peter helped him up. "Stand up," he said, "I am only a man myself."

27 As Peter talked with him, he went inside and found many people gathered together. 28 He said to them, "You know how unlawful it is for a Jew to associate with a foreigner or visit him. But God has shown me that I should not call any man impure or unclean. 29 So when I was invited, I came without objection. I ask, then, why have you sent for me?"

30 Cornelius answered: "Four days ago I was in my house praying at this, the ninth hour. Suddenly a man in radiant clothing stood before me 31 and said, 'Cornelius, your prayer has been heard, and your gifts to the poor have been remembered before God. 32 Therefore send to Joppa for Simon, who is called Peter. He is a guest in the home of Simon the tanner, by the sea.'

33 So I sent for you immediately, and you were kind enough to come. Now then, we are all here in the presence of God to listen to everything the Lord has instructed you to tell us."

GOOD NEWS FOR THE GENTILES

34 Then Peter began to speak: "I now truly understand that God does not show favoritism, 35 but welcomes those from every nation who fear Him and do what is right. 36 He has sent this message to the people of Israel, proclaiming the gospel of peace through Jesus Christ, who is Lord of all.

37 You yourselves know what has happened throughout Judea, beginning in Galilee with the baptism that John proclaimed: 38 how God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power, and how Jesus went around doing good and healing all who were oppressed by the devil, because God was with Him.

39 We are witnesses of all that He did, both in the land of the Jews and in Jerusalem. And although they put Him to death by hanging Him on a tree, 40 God raised Him up on the third day and caused Him to be seen— 41 not by all the people, but by the witnesses God had chosen beforehand, by us who ate and drank with Him after He rose from the dead. 42 And He commanded us to preach to the people and to testify that He is the One appointed by God to judge the living and the dead. 43 All the prophets testify about Him that everyone who believes in Him receives forgiveness of sins through His name."

THE GENTILES RECEIVE THE HOLY SPIRIT // ACTS 19:1–7

44 While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell upon all who heard his message. 45 All the circumcised believers who had accompanied Peter were astounded that the gift of the Holy Spirit had been poured out even on the Gentiles. 46 For they heard them speaking in tongues and exalting God.

Then Peter said, 47 "Can anyone withhold the water to baptize these people? They have received the Holy Spirit just as we have!" 48 So he ordered that they be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay for a few days.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Back in Jerusalem some believers are upset that Peter ate with Gentiles. He tells them the whole story, and they praise God. In Antioch, Jews and Greeks believe together, and the disciples are called Christians there for the first time. A prophet named Agabus warns of a famine, so the church sends help to Judea.

PETER'S REPORT AT JERUSALEM

1 The apostles and brothers throughout Judea soon heard that the Gentiles also had received the word of God. 2 So when Peter went up to Jerusalem, the circum-

- **ACTS 10:38 [DEMONIC]** Jesus healed all who were oppressed by the devil
- **ACTS 10:38 [NOTABLE]** Peter's explicit statement that Jesus was anointed with the Holy Spirit — the pattern for Spirit-empowered ministry
- **ACTS 10:38 [FULFILLS]** Anointed by the Spirit ← IS 11:2 p.1075
- **ACTS 10:43 [FULFILLS]** Caiaphas prophesied that Jesus would die for the nation and gather God's scattered children ← JN 11:50-52 p.1720
- **ACTS 10:44 [MIRACLE]** The Spirit falls on Cornelius' household and they speak in tongues
- **ACTS 10:44 [FULFILLS]** The child would be a light of revelation to the Gentiles ← LK 2:30-32 p.1650

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE JESUS SPEAKING

cised believers took issue with him [3] and said, "You visited uncircumcised men and ate with them."

[4] But Peter began and explained to them the whole sequence of events: [5] "I was in the city of Joppa praying, and in a trance I saw a vision of something like a large sheet being let down from heaven by its four corners, and it came right down to me. [6] I looked at it closely and saw four-footed animals of the earth, wild beasts, reptiles, and birds of the air. [7] Then I heard a voice saying to me, 'Get up, Peter, kill and eat.'

[8] 'No, Lord,' I said, 'for nothing impure or unclean has ever entered my mouth.'

[9] But the voice spoke from heaven a second time, 'Do not call anything impure that God has made clean.'

[10] This happened three times, and everything was drawn back up into heaven.

[11] Just then three men sent to me from Caesarea stopped at the house where I was staying. [12] The Spirit told me to accompany them without hesitation. These six brothers also went with me, and we entered the man's home. [13] He told us how he had seen an angel standing in his house and saying, 'Send to Joppa for Simon who is called Peter. [14] He will convey to you a message by which you and all your household will be saved.'

[15] As I began to speak, the Holy Spirit fell upon them, just as He had fallen upon us at the beginning. [16] Then I remembered the word of the Lord, how He said, 'John baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.' [17] So if God gave them the same gift He gave us who believed in the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I to hinder the work of God?"

[18] When they heard this, they had no further objections, and they glorified God, saying, "So then, God has granted even the Gentiles repentance unto life."

THE CHURCH AT ANTIOCH

[19] Meanwhile those scattered by the persecution that began with Stephen traveled as far as Phoenicia, Cyprus, and Antioch, speaking the message only to Jews. [20] But some of them, men from Cyprus and Cyrene, went to Antioch and began speaking to the Greeks as well, proclaiming the good news about the Lord Jesus. [21] The hand of the Lord was with them, and a great number of people believed and turned to the Lord.

[22] When news of this reached the ears of the church in Jerusalem, they sent Barnabas to Antioch. [23] When he arrived and saw the grace of God, he rejoiced and encouraged them all to abide in the Lord with all their hearts. [24] Barnabas was a good man, full of the Holy Spirit and faith, and a great number of people were brought to the Lord.

[25] Then Barnabas went to Tarsus to look for Saul, [26] and when he found him, he brought him back to Antioch. So for a full year they met together with the church and taught large numbers of people. The disciples were first called Christians at Antioch.

[27] In those days some prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch. [28] One of them named Agabus stood up and predicted through the Spirit that a great famine would sweep across the whole world. (This happened under Claudius.) [29] So the disciples, each according to his ability, decided to send relief to the brothers living in Judea. [30] This they did, sending their gifts to the elders with Barnabas and Saul.

ACTS 11:16 [FULFILLS] The One coming after John would baptize with the Holy Spirit ← MT 3:11; MK 1:8; LK 3:16; JN 1:33 p.1554

ACTS 11:28 [PROPHECY] Agabus stood up and showed by the Spirit that there was going to be a great famine throughout all the world, which also happened in the days of Claudius Caesar → Fulfilled

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE MIRACLES

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

King Herod kills James and throws Peter in prison. The night before his trial, an angel wakes Peter, his chains fall off, and he walks out. He knocks at a house where people are praying for him. A servant girl named Rhoda is so excited she forgets to open the door. Later Herod accepts worship as a god, and an angel strikes him down.

JAMES KILLED, PETER IMPRISONED

1 About that time, King Herod reached out
to harm some who belonged to the
church. 2 He had James, the brother of
John, put to death with the sword.

3 And seeing that this pleased the Jews,
Herod proceeded to seize Peter during
the Feast of Unleavened Bread. 4 He ar-
rested him and put him in prison, handing
him over to be guarded by four squads of
four soldiers each. Herod intended to
bring him out to the people after the
Passover.

THE RESCUE OF PETER

5 So Peter was kept in prison, but the
church was fervently praying to God for
him.

6 On the night before Herod was to bring
him to trial, Peter was sleeping between
two soldiers, bound with two chains, with
sentries standing guard at the entrance to
the prison. 7 Suddenly an angel of the Lord
appeared and a light shone in the cell. He
tapped Peter on the side and woke him
up, saying, "Get up quickly." And the
chains fell off his wrists. 8 "Get dressed
and put on your sandals," said the angel.
Peter did so, and the angel told him,
"Wrap your cloak around you and follow
me."

9 So Peter followed him out, but he was
unaware that what the angel was doing
was real. He thought he was only seeing a
vision. 10 They passed the first and second
guards and came to the iron gate leading
to the city, which opened for them by it-
self. When they had gone outside and
walked the length of one block, the angel
suddenly left him.

11 Then Peter came to himself and said,
"Now I know for sure that the Lord has
sent His angel and rescued me from
Herod's grasp and from everything the
Jewish people were anticipating."

12 And when he had realized this, he went
to the house of Mary the mother of John,
also called Mark, where many people had
gathered together and were praying. 13 He
knocked at the outer gate, and a servant
girl named Rhoda came to answer it. 14
When she recognized Peter's voice, she
was so overjoyed that she forgot to open
the gate, but ran inside and announced,
"Peter is standing at the gate!"

15 "You are out of your mind," they told her.
But when she kept insisting it was so, they
said, "It must be his angel."

16 But Peter kept on knocking, and when
they opened the door and saw him, they
were astounded. 17 Peter motioned with his
hand for silence, and he described how
the Lord had brought him out of the
prison. "Send word to James and to the
brothers," he said, and he left for another
place.

18 At daybreak there was no small commo-
tion among the soldiers as to what had
become of Peter. 19 After Herod had
searched for him unsuccessfully, he ex-
amined the guards and ordered that they
be executed. Then he went down from
Judea to Caesarea and spent some time
there.

THE DEATH OF HEROD

20 Now Herod was in a furious dispute with
the people of Tyre and Sidon, and they
convened before him. Having secured the
support of Blastus, the king's chamber-
lain, they asked for peace, because their
region depended on the king's country for
food. 21 On the appointed day, Herod
donned his royal robes, sat on his throne,
and addressed the people. 22 And they be-

ACTS 12:2 [FULFILLS] James and John would drink the cup of suffering Jesus would drink ← MT 20:23; MK 10:39 p.1580
ACTS 12:7 [MIRACLE] Angels deliver apostles from prison (twice)
ACTS 12:21 [MIRACLE] Herod struck by angel for accepting worship; eaten by worms
ACTS 12:21 [DEMONIC] Herod accepts praise as a god and is struck down

MIRACLES

gan to shout, "This is the voice of a god, not a man!"

23 Immediately, because Herod did not give glory to God, an angel of the Lord struck him down, and he was eaten by worms and died.

24 But the word of God continued to spread and multiply.

25 When Barnabas and Saul had fulfilled their mission to Jerusalem, they returned, bringing with them John, also called Mark.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

The church in Antioch sends Barnabas and Saul on the first missionary trip. On Cyprus a sorcerer fights them and is struck blind, and the governor Sergius Paulus believes. From here on Saul goes by Paul. In another Antioch he preaches in the synagogue, many Gentiles believe, and the jealous leaders run them out of town.

PAUL'S FIRST MISSIONARY JOURNEY BEGINS //
ACTS 15:36–41; ACTS 18:23–28

1 Now in the church at Antioch there were prophets and teachers: Barnabas, Simeon called Niger, Lucius of Cyrene, Manaen (who had been brought up with Herod the tetrarch), and Saul. 2 While they were worshiping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, "Set apart for Me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them." 3 And after they had fasted and prayed, they laid their hands on them and sent them off.

■ **ACTS 12:21 [FIELD NOTES]** The Jewish historian Josephus tells this same death. See the Herod Agrippa's Death Field Notes page, p.1761.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

HEROD AGRIPPA'S DEATH: A SECOND WITNESS

ACTS 12:19 TO 23



A small bronze coin of King Herod Agrippa I, minted in Jerusalem. The design is a royal canopy, a kind of umbrella.

WHAT IT IS

Josephus, a Jewish historian who was not a Christian, tells the same story of King Herod Agrippa I's death that Luke tells in Acts 12. Coins Agrippa made with his own name have also been found.

HOW OLD IT IS

Josephus wrote it in his Antiquities of the Jews, Book 19, about AD 93. Agrippa died in AD 44. Coins like this one were made about AD 41 to 42, in his sixth year as king.

WHAT JOSEPHUS SAYS

At a festival in Caesarea, Agrippa came into the theater at sunrise wearing a robe made all of silver. It shined so brightly that flatterers called him a god. He did not stop them. Right away terrible pains struck his stomach. He was carried out and died five days later, at age 54.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Both writers agree on the city, the royal robe, the crowd calling him a god, his silence, and a sudden attack inside his body. Luke says an angel struck him because he did not give God the glory. Josephus says Agrippa himself admit-

MAP · ACTS 13 TO 14

Paul's First Trip

Cyprus and southern Galatia, about AD 46 to 48



SENT FROM ANTIOCH The Holy Spirit told the church in Antioch to send out Barnabas and Saul, Acts 13:1 to 3. They sailed to Cyprus, Barnabas's home island, Acts 4:36.

STONED AND LEFT FOR DEAD At Lystra the crowd first called them gods, then stoned Paul and dragged him out of the city. He got up and went back in, Acts 14:8 to 20.

A NEW NAME On Cyprus, at Paphos, Luke starts calling Saul by his Roman name, Paul, Acts 13:9.

BACK THE SAME WAY They went back through the same towns to make the believers strong and choose elders in each church, Acts 14:21 to 23.

All the cities are known places. The route between them is approximate.

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC

ted he was being punished for accepting the flattery.

THE HONEST SIDE

The two do not match in every detail. Josephus adds an owl he saw as a sign of death, and Luke says he was eaten by worms. Luke tells why it happened. Josephus tells what people saw. Two writers telling the same event in their own words is what real history looks like.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Copies of Josephus are in libraries all over the world. Agrippa's coins are in many museums, including the National Library of France, which owns this one.

ON CYPRUS

4 So Barnabas and Saul, sent forth by the Holy Spirit, went down to Seleucia and sailed from there to Cyprus. 5 When they arrived at Salamis, they proclaimed the word of God in the Jewish synagogues. And John was with them as their helper.

6 They traveled through the whole island as far as Paphos, where they found a Jewish sorcerer and false prophet named Bar-Jesus, 7 an attendant of the proconsul, Sergius Paulus. The proconsul, a man of intelligence, summoned Barnabas and Saul because he wanted to hear the word of God. 8 But Elymas the sorcerer (for that is what his name means) opposed them and tried to turn the proconsul from the faith.

ACTS 13:6 [DEMONIC] Elymas Bar-Jesus, a Jewish sorcerer-prophet — struck blind by Paul

ACTS 13:7 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Inscriptions from Rome and Cyprus name members of the Sergius Paullus family → FIELD NOTES p.1763

ACTS 13:7 [FIELD NOTES] Stones naming this family have been found. See the Sergius Paulus Field Notes page, p.1763.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

SERGIUS PAULUS, GOVERNOR OF CYPRUS

ACTS 13:4 TO 12



Roman ruins in the archaeological park of Paphos, Cyprus, the city where Paul met the governor.

WHAT IT IS

Stone inscriptions that name men of the Sergius Paullus family, the same family name as the governor Paul met on Cyprus. Luke calls him the proconsul, the right title for a governor of a Roman province run by the Senate, which Cyprus was.

HOW OLD IT IS

The inscriptions come from the first century AD. The one in Rome is from the time of Emperor Claudius, AD 41 to 54, the same years Paul visited Cyprus, about AD 46 to 48.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

In Rome a stone found in 1887 lists a Lucius Sergius Paullus as one of the men in charge of the banks of the Tiber River. At Pisidian Antioch in Turkey, stones found in 1912 name a younger Lucius Sergius Paullus and a woman named Sergia Paulla. A stone from Cyprus mentions a proconsul named Paulus.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The Rome stone is in Rome. The Pisidian Antioch stones are in the museum at Yalvaç, Turkey.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The Sergius Paullus family was real and powerful in Paul's day. It also owned land near Pisidian Antioch. Acts 13:14 says that right after the governor believed, Paul went straight to Pisidian An-

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

tioch. Some scholars think the governor sent Paul to his family's hometown.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No stone clearly says Sergius Paulus was proconsul of Cyprus in the right years. The Cyprus stone's date is debated. The man in Rome may be the governor himself or a relative.

9 Then Saul, who was also called Paul,
filled with the Holy Spirit, looked directly
at Elymas 10 and said, "O child of the devil
and enemy of all righteousness, you are
full of all kinds of deceit and trickery! Will
you never stop perverting the straight
ways of the Lord? 11 Now look, the hand of
the Lord is against you, and for a time you
will be blind and unable to see the light of
the sun." Immediately mist and darkness
came over him, and he groped about,
seeking someone to lead him by the hand.

12 When the proconsul saw what had happened, he believed, for he was astonished at the teaching about the Lord.

IN PISIDIAN ANTIOCH

13 After setting sail from Paphos, Paul and his companions came to Perga in Pamphylia, where John left them to return to Jerusalem. 14 And from Perga, they traveled inland to Pisidian Antioch, where they entered the synagogue on the Sabbath and sat down. 15 After the reading from the Law and the Prophets, the synagogue leaders sent word to them: "Brothers, if you have a word of encouragement for the people, please speak."

16 Paul stood up, motioned with his hand, and began to speak: "Men of Israel and you Gentiles who fear God, listen to me! 17 The God of the people of Israel chose our fathers. He made them into a great people during their stay in Egypt, and with an uplifted arm He led them out of that land. 18 He endured their conduct for about forty years in the wilderness. 19 And having vanquished seven nations in Canaan, He gave their land to His people as an inheritance. 20 All this took about 450 years.

After this, God gave them judges until the time of Samuel the prophet. 21 Then the people asked for a king, and God gave them Saul son of Kish, from the tribe of Benjamin, who ruled forty years. 22 After removing Saul, He raised up David as their king and testified about him: *'I have found David son of Jesse a man after My own heart; he will carry out My will in its entirety.'*

23 From the descendants of this man, God has brought to Israel the Savior Jesus, as He promised. 24 Before the arrival of Jesus, John preached a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel. 25 As John was completing his course, he said, 'Who do you suppose I am? I am not that One. But there is One coming after me whose sandals I am not worthy to untie.'

26 Brothers, children of Abraham, and you Gentiles who fear God, it is to us that this message of salvation has been sent. 27 The people of Jerusalem and their rulers did not recognize Jesus, yet in condemning Him they fulfilled the words of the prophets that are read every Sabbath. 28 And though they found no ground for a death sentence, they asked Pilate to have Him executed.

29 When they had carried out all that was written about Him, they took Him down from the tree and laid Him in a tomb. 30 But God raised Him from the dead, 31 and for many days He was seen by those who had accompanied Him from Galilee to Jerusalem. They are now His witnesses to our people.

32 And now we proclaim to you the good news: What God promised our fathers 33 He has fulfilled for us, their children, by raising up Jesus. As it is written in the second Psalm:

'You are My Son;
today I have become Your Father.'

- **ACTS 13:11 [MIRACLE]** Elymas struck blind by Paul
- **ACTS 13:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JUDG 2:16 p.383
- **ACTS 13:22 [FULFILLS]** Saul's kingdom would not last and God would choose a man after His own heart and 2 more ← 1SA 13:14; JER 30:9; LK 1:68-71 p.453
- **ACTS 13:22 [HEART]** God called David a man after His own heart who would do all His will.
- **ACTS 13:23 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2SA 7:12 p.503
- **ACTS 13:29 [FULFILLS]** The crucifixion and resurrection foreshadowed ← PS 2:7-8 p.884
- **ACTS 13:33 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 2:7 p.884

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

34 In fact, God raised Him from the dead,
never to see decay. As He has said:

'I will give you the holy and sure blessings
promised to David.'

35 So also, He says in another Psalm:

'You will not let Your Holy One see decay.'

36 For when David had served God's purpose in his own generation, he fell asleep. His body was buried with his fathers and saw decay. 37 But the One whom God raised from the dead did not see decay.

38 Therefore let it be known to you, brothers, that through Jesus the forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you. 39 Through Him everyone who believes is justified from everything from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. 40 Watch out, then, that what was spoken by the prophets does not happen to you:

41 *'Look, you scoffers,*
wonder and perish!
For I am doing a work in your days
that you would never believe,
even if someone told you.'"

A LIGHT FOR THE GENTILES // ISAIAH 49:1–6

42 As Paul and Barnabas were leaving the synagogue, the people urged them to continue this message on the next Sabbath. 43 After the synagogue was dismissed, many of the Jews and devout converts to Judaism followed Paul and Barnabas, who spoke to them and urged them to continue in the grace of God.

44 On the following Sabbath, nearly the whole city gathered to hear the word of the Lord. 45 But when the Jews saw the crowds, they were filled with jealousy, and they blasphemously contradicted what Paul was saying.

46 Then Paul and Barnabas answered them boldly: "It was necessary to speak the word of God to you first. But since you reject it and do not consider yourselves worthy of eternal life, we now turn to the Gentiles. 47 For this is what the Lord has commanded us:

'I have made you a light for the Gentiles,
to bring salvation to the ends of the earth.'"

48 When the Gentiles heard this, they rejoiced and glorified the word of the Lord, and all who were appointed for eternal life believed. 49 And the word of the Lord spread throughout that region.

50 The Jews, however, incited the religious women of prominence and the leading men of the city. They stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas and drove them out of their district. 51 So they shook the dust off their feet in protest against them and went to Iconium. 52 And the disciples were filled with joy and with the Holy Spirit.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

In Lystra Paul heals a man who has never walked, and the crowd decides Paul and Barnabas are the gods Zeus and Hermes. They try to offer sacrifices. Paul and Barnabas tear their clothes and shout, We are only men. A few days later the same crowd stones Paul and leaves him for dead. He gets up and goes back into the city.

PAUL AND BARNABAS AT ICONIUM

1 At Iconium, Paul and Barnabas went as usual into the Jewish synagogue, where they spoke so well that a great number of Jews and Greeks believed. 2 But the unbelieving Jews stirred up the Gentiles and poisoned their minds against the brothers. 3 So Paul and Barnabas spent considerable time there, speaking boldly for the Lord, who affirmed the message of His grace by enabling them to perform signs and wonders.

4 The people of the city were divided. Some sided with the Jews, and others with the apostles. 5 But when the Gentiles

- **ACTS 13:34 [FULFILLS]** Raised from the dead by God ← IS 55:3 p.1130
- **ACTS 13:35 [FULFILLS]** His body would not see corruption (decay) in the tomb ← PS 16:10 p.892
- **ACTS 13:41 [QUOTES]** Direct ← HAB 1:5 p.1456
- **ACTS 13:46 [FULFILLS]** God would be found by people who did not seek Him while Israel stayed stubborn ← IS 65:1-2 p.1140
- **ACTS 13:46 [FULFILLS]** The witnesses would carry the gospel to Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, and the ends of the earth ← ACTS 1:8 p.1740
- **ACTS 13:47 [FULFILLS]** He is the Light of the Gentiles ← IS 49:6 p.1122
- **ACTS 13:47 [FULFILLS]** The child would be a light of revelation to the Gentiles ← LK 2:30-32 p.1650

MIRACLES DEMONIC

and Jews, together with their rulers, set out to mistreat and stone them, 6 they found out about it and fled to the Lycaonian cities of Lystra and Derbe and to the surrounding region, 7 where they continued to preach the gospel.

THE VISIT TO LYSTRA AND DERBE

8 In Lystra there sat a man crippled in his feet, who was lame from birth and had never walked. 9 This man was listening to the words of Paul, who looked intently at him and saw that he had faith to be healed. 10 In a loud voice Paul called out, "Stand up on your feet!" And the man jumped up and began to walk.

11 When the crowds saw what Paul had done, they lifted up their voices in the Lycaonian language: "The gods have come down to us in human form!" 12 Barnabas they called Zeus, and Paul they called Hermes, because he was the chief speaker. 13 The priest of Zeus, whose temple was just outside the city, brought bulls and wreaths to the city gates, hoping to offer a sacrifice along with the crowds.

14 But when the apostles Barnabas and Paul found out about this, they tore their clothes and rushed into the crowd, shouting, 15 "Men, why are you doing this? We too are only men, human like you. We are bringing you good news that you should turn from these worthless things to the living God, who made heaven and earth and sea and everything in them. 16 In past generations, He let all nations go their own way. 17 Yet He has not left Himself without testimony to His goodness: He gives you rain from heaven and fruitful seasons, filling your hearts with food and gladness."

18 Even with these words, Paul and Barnabas could hardly stop the crowds from sacrificing to them.

19 Then some Jews arrived from Antioch and Iconium and won over the crowds. They stoned Paul and dragged him outside the city, presuming he was dead. 20 But after the disciples had gathered around him, he got up and went back into the city. And the next day he left with Barnabas for Derbe.

STRENGTHENING THE DISCIPLES

21 They preached the gospel to that city and made many disciples. Then they returned to Lystra, Iconium, and Antioch, 22 strengthening the souls of the disciples and encouraging them to continue in the faith. "We must endure many hardships to enter the kingdom of God," they said.

23 Paul and Barnabas appointed elders for them in each church, praying and fasting as they entrusted them to the Lord, in whom they had believed.

24 After passing through Pisidia, they came to Pamphylia. 25 And when they had spoken the word in Perga, they went down to Attalia.

26 From Attalia they sailed to Antioch, where they had been commended to the grace of God for the work they had just completed. 27 When they arrived, they gathered the church together and reported all that God had done through them, and how He had opened the door of faith to the Gentiles. 28 And they spent a long time there with the disciples.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Some teachers say Gentiles must be circumcised and keep the law of Moses to be saved. The apostles and elders meet in Jerusalem. Peter says we are all saved by grace, and James agrees. They send a letter: no heavy burden for the Gentiles.

THE DISPUTE OVER CIRCUMCISION

1 Then some men came down from Judea and were teaching the brothers, "Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved." 2 And after engaging these men in sharp debate, Paul and Barnabas were appointed, along with some other believers,

- **ACTS 14:8 [MIRACLE]** Lame man at Lystra healed by Paul
- **ACTS 14:11 [DEMONIC]** The crowd calls Paul and Barnabas Zeus and Hermes
- **ACTS 14:15 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 20:11; PS 146:6 p.148
- **ACTS 14:19 [MIRACLE]** Paul is stoned and left for dead, then gets up

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

to go up to Jerusalem to see the apostles and elders about this question.

3 Sent on their way by the church, they passed through Phoenicia and Samaria, recounting the conversion of the Gentiles and bringing great joy to all the brothers. 4 On their arrival in Jerusalem, they were welcomed by the church and apostles and elders, to whom they reported all that God had done through them.

THE COUNCIL AT JERUSALEM // AMOS 9:11–15; GALATIANS 2:1–10

5 But some believers from the party of the Pharisees stood up and declared, "The Gentiles must be circumcised and required to obey the law of Moses." 6 So the apostles and elders met to look into this matter.

7 After much discussion, Peter got up and said to them, "Brothers, you know that in the early days God made a choice among you that the Gentiles would hear from my lips the message of the gospel and believe. 8 And God, who knows the heart, showed His approval by giving the Holy Spirit to them, just as He did to us. 9 He made no distinction between us and them, for He cleansed their hearts by faith.

10 Now then, why do you test God by placing on the necks of the disciples a yoke that neither we nor our fathers have been able to bear? 11 On the contrary, we believe it is through the grace of the Lord Jesus that we are saved, just as they are."

12 The whole assembly fell silent as they listened to Barnabas and Paul describing the signs and wonders God had done among the Gentiles through them. 13 When they had finished speaking, James declared, "Brothers, listen to me! 14 Simon has told us how God first visited the Gentiles to take from them a people to be His own. 15 The words of the prophets agree with this, as it is written:

16 *'After this I will return and rebuild*
the fallen tent of David.
Its ruins I will rebuild,
and I will restore it,
17 *so that the remnant of men may seek the*
Lord,
and all the Gentiles who are called by My
name,
says the Lord who does these things
18 that have been known for ages.'

19 It is my judgment, therefore, that we should not cause trouble for the Gentiles who are turning to God. 20 Instead, we should write and tell them to abstain from food polluted by idols, from sexual immorality, from the meat of strangled animals, and from blood. 21 For Moses has been proclaimed in every city from ancient times and is read in the synagogues on every Sabbath."

THE LETTER TO THE GENTILE BELIEVERS

22 Then the apostles and elders, with the whole church, decided to select men from among them to send to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas. They chose Judas called Barsabbas and Silas, two leaders among the brothers, 23 and sent them with this letter:

The apostles and the elders, your brothers,

To the brothers among the Gentiles in Antioch, Syria, and Cilicia:

Greetings.

24 It has come to our attention that some went out from us without our authorization and unsettled you, troubling your minds by what they said. 25 So we all agreed to choose men to send to you along with our beloved Barnabas and Paul, 26 men who have risked their lives for the name of our Lord Jesus Christ. 27 Therefore we are sending Judas and Silas

- **ACTS 15:7 [FULFILLS]** He is Salvation to the ends of the earth ← IS 49:6 p.1122
- **ACTS 15:8 [HEART]** God, who knows the heart, proved He accepted the Gentiles by giving them the Spirit.
- **ACTS 15:14 [FULFILLS]** Many nations would join themselves to Yahweh and become His people ← ZECH 2:11 · MEDIUM p.1491
- **ACTS 15:16 [FULFILLS]** He would restore Israel ← IS 49:6 · MEDIUM p.1122
- **ACTS 15:16 [FULFILLS]** I will raise up the tabernacle of David which has fallen down... I will bring back the captives of My people Israel ← AMOS 9:11-12 p.1401
- **ACTS 15:19 [NOTABLE]** The church's first big decision: Gentile believers did not have to be circumcised or become Jews to follow Jesus, 15:11. The rules in 15:20 let Jewish and Gentile believers share a table. Paul fought this same fight in Galatians, p.1863.
- **ACTS 15:20 [DEMONIC]** The council tells Gentiles to avoid food polluted by idols
- **ACTS 15:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 17:10; 18:6 p.201

MAP · ACTS 15:36 TO 18:22

Paul's Second Trip

The gospel crosses into Europe, about AD 49 to 52



A NEW TEAM Paul and Barnabas split over John Mark, so Paul took Silas, Acts 15:39 to 40. Timothy joined them at Lystra, Acts 16:1 to 3.

ATHENS AND CORINTH Paul preached about the unknown god in Athens, Acts 17:22 to 31, then stayed a year and a half in Corinth, Acts 18:11.

COME OVER AND HELP US At Troas Paul saw a vision of a man from Macedonia, so they sailed to Europe, Acts 16:9 to 10. Lydia of Philippi is the first believer in Europe that Acts names, Acts 16:14 to 15.

LETTERS ON THE WAY Most think Paul wrote 1 and 2 Thessalonians from Corinth, to the young church he had to leave in a hurry, Acts 17:10.

All the cities are known places. The land route through Galatia and Phrygia is approximate.

MIRACLES DEMONIC

to tell you in person the same things we are writing.

28 It seemed good to the Holy Spirit and to us not to burden you with anything beyond these essential requirements: 29 You must abstain from food sacrificed to idols, from blood, from the meat of strangled animals, and from sexual immorality. You will do well to avoid these things.

Farewell.

THE BELIEVERS AT ANTIOCH REJOICE

30 So the men were sent off and went down to Antioch, where they assembled the congregation and delivered the letter. 31 When the people read it, they rejoiced at its encouraging message.

32 Judas and Silas, who themselves were prophets, said much to encourage and strengthen the brothers. 33 After spending some time there, they were sent off by the brothers in peace to return to those who had sent them. 34 [Silas, however, decided to remain there.] 35 But Paul and Barnabas remained at Antioch, along with many others, teaching and preaching the word of the Lord.

PAUL'S SECOND MISSIONARY JOURNEY BEGINS // ACTS 13:1–3; ACTS 18:23–28

36 Some time later Paul said to Barnabas, "Let us go back and visit the brothers in every town where we proclaimed the word of the Lord, to see how they are doing." 37 Barnabas wanted to take John, also called Mark. 38 But Paul thought it best not to take him, because he had deserted them in Pamphylia and had not accompanied them in the work.

39 Their disagreement was so sharp that they parted company. Barnabas took Mark and sailed for Cyprus, 40 but Paul chose Silas and left, commended by the brothers to the grace of the Lord. 41 And he traveled through Syria and Cilicia, strengthening the churches.

ACTS 15:29 [DEMONIC] The council's letter says abstain from food sacrificed to idols

ACTS 15:29 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 17:10; 18:6 p.201

ACTS 15:34 [TEXT] Verse 34 is in brackets because the oldest manuscripts do not have it. It may have been added to explain why Silas is still in Antioch in 15:40.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

A vision of a man from Macedonia calls them to Europe. In Philippi Lydia believes. Paul casts a spirit out of a slave girl, her owners lose their income, and Paul and Silas are beaten and jailed. At midnight they sing, an earthquake opens the doors, and the jailer and his family believe.

TIMOTHY JOINS PAUL AND SILAS

1 Paul came to Derbe and then to Lystra, where he found a disciple named Timothy, the son of a believing Jewish woman and a Greek father. 2 The brothers in Lystra and Iconium spoke well of him. 3 Paul wanted Timothy to accompany him, so he took him and circumcised him on account of the Jews in that area, for they all knew that his father was a Greek.

4 As they went from town to town, they delivered the decisions handed down by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem for the people to obey. 5 So the churches were strengthened in the faith and grew daily in numbers.

PAUL'S VISION OF THE MACEDONIAN

6 After the Holy Spirit had prevented them from speaking the word in the province of Asia, they traveled through the region of Phrygia and Galatia. 7 And when they came to the border of Mysia, they tried to enter Bithynia, but the Spirit of Jesus would not permit them. 8 So they passed by Mysia and went down to Troas.

9 During the night, Paul had a vision of a man of Macedonia standing and pleading with him, "Come over to Macedonia and help us." 10 As soon as Paul had seen the vision, we got ready to leave for Macedonia, concluding that God had called us to preach the gospel to them.

LYDIA'S CONVERSION IN PHILIPPI // REVELATION 2:18–29

11 We sailed from Troas straight to Samothrace, and the following day on to Neapolis. 12 From there we went to the Roman colony of Philippi, the leading city of that district of Macedonia. And we stayed there several days.

ACTS 16:9 [MIRACLE] Paul's vision of the man of Macedonia

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC

13 On the Sabbath we went outside the city
gate along the river, where it was custom-
ary to find a place of prayer. After sitting
down, we spoke to the women who had
gathered there.

14 Among those listening was a woman
named Lydia, a dealer in purple cloth from
the city of Thyatira, who was a worshiper
of God. The Lord opened her heart to re-
spond to Paul's message. 15 And when she
and her household had been baptized,
she urged us, "If you consider me a be-
liever in the Lord, come and stay at my
house." And she persuaded us.

PAUL AND SILAS IMPRISONED

16 One day as we were going to the place
of prayer, we were met by a slave girl with
a spirit of divination, who earned a large
income for her masters by fortune-telling.
17 This girl followed Paul and the rest of us,
shouting, "These men are servants of the
Most High God, who are proclaiming to
you the way of salvation!"

18 She continued this for many days. Even-
tually Paul grew so aggravated that he
turned and said to the spirit, "In the name
of Jesus Christ I command you to come
out of her!" And the spirit left her at that
very moment.

19 When the girl's owners saw that their
hope of making money was gone, they
seized Paul and Silas and dragged them
before the authorities in the marketplace.
20 They brought them to the magistrates
and said, "These men are Jews and are
throwing our city into turmoil 21 by promot-
ing customs that are unlawful for us Ro-
mans to adopt or practice."

22 The crowd joined in the attack against
Paul and Silas, and the magistrates or-
dered that they be stripped and beaten
with rods. 23 And after striking them with
many blows, they threw them into prison
and ordered the jailer to guard them se-
curely. 24 On receiving this order, he
placed them in the inner cell and fastened
their feet in the stocks.

ACTS 16:14 [HEART] The Lord opened Lydia's heart to respond to Paul's message.
ACTS 16:16 [DEMONIC] Slave girl with python spirit delivered by Paul

THE CONVERSION OF THE JAILER

25 About midnight Paul and Silas were
praying and singing hymns to God, and
the other prisoners were listening to them.
26 Suddenly a strong earthquake shook
the foundations of the prison. At once all
the doors flew open and everyone's
chains came loose.

27 When the jailer woke up and saw the
prison doors open, he drew his sword and
was about to kill himself, presuming that
the prisoners had escaped. 28 But Paul
called out in a loud voice, "Do not harm
yourself! We are all here!"

29 Calling for lights, the jailer rushed in and
fell trembling before Paul and Silas. 30
Then he brought them out and asked,
"Sirs, what must I do to be saved?"

31 They replied, "Believe in the Lord Jesus
and you will be saved, you and your
household." 32 Then Paul and Silas spoke
the word of the Lord to him and to every-
one in his house. 33 At that hour of the
night, the jailer took them and washed
their wounds. And without delay, he and
all his household were baptized. 34 Then
he brought them into his home and set a
meal before them. So he and all his
household rejoiced that they had come to
believe in God.

AN OFFICIAL APOLOGY

35 When daylight came, the magistrates
sent their officers with the order: "Release
those men."

36 The jailer informed Paul: "The magis-
trates have sent orders to release you.
Now you may go on your way in peace."

37 But Paul said to the officers, "They beat
us publicly without a trial and threw us
into prison, even though we are Roman
citizens. And now do they want to send us
away secretly? Absolutely not! Let them
come themselves and escort us out!"

38 So the officers relayed this message to
the magistrates, who were alarmed to
hear that Paul and Silas were Roman citi-
zens. 39 They came to appease them and
led them out, requesting that they leave

ACTS 16:25 [MIRACLE] Earthquake opens prison doors at Paul/Silas' singing

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE ARCHAEOLOGY

the city. 40 After Paul and Silas came out of the prison, they went to Lydia's house to see the brothers and encourage them. Then they left the city.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

In Thessalonica a mob says these men have turned the world upside down. In Athens Paul sees a city full of idols and an altar To an Unknown God. On Mars Hill he tells the thinkers of Athens who that unknown God is. Some laugh, some want to hear more, and some believe.

THE UPROAR IN THESSALONICA

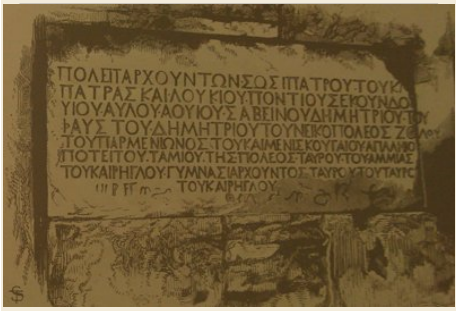
1 When they had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where there was a Jewish synagogue. 2 As was his custom, Paul went into the synagogue, and on three Sabbaths he reasoned with them from the Scriptures, 3 explaining and proving that the Christ had to suffer and rise from the dead. "This Jesus I am proclaiming to you is the Christ," he declared. 4 Some of the Jews were persuaded and joined Paul and Silas, along with a large number of God-fearing Greeks and quite a few leading women.

5 The Jews, however, became jealous. So they brought in some troublemakers from the marketplace, formed a mob, and sent the city into an uproar. They raided Jason's house in search of Paul and Silas, hoping to bring them out to the people. 6 But when they could not find them, they dragged Jason and some other brothers before the city officials, shouting, "These men who have turned the world upside down have now come here, 7 and Jason has welcomed them into his home. They are all defying Caesar's decrees, saying that there is another king, named Jesus!"

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE POLITARCH INSCRIPTION

ACTS 17:5 TO 9



An old drawing of the Politarch Inscription from the Vardar Gate in Thessalonica. The first word is politarchs.

WHAT IT IS

A carved stone that lists the city rulers of Thessalonica and calls them politarchs. That is the same rare Greek word Luke uses in 17:6 and 17:8 for the city officials who heard the case against Paul's friends.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most experts date it to the first or second century AD, around Paul's time or a little after. Other stones with the same title go back to the 100s BC.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

It was carved on a Roman arch called the Vardar Gate at the west entrance of Thessalonica, Greece. When the gate was torn down in 1876, the British consul saved the stone.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the British Museum in London.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Some critics once said Luke made up the word politarch, because no other ancient book used it. Now more than 30 inscriptions use it, most of them from Macedonia and many from Thessalonica itself. Luke used the exact local title.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not name anyone from Acts. It shows Luke knew how this city was run.

8 On hearing this, the crowd and city officials were greatly disturbed. 9 And they collected bond from Jason and the others and then released them.

ACTS 17:5 [FULFILLS] Paul warned the believers in Thessalonica that they would suffer persecution ← 1TH 3:4 p.1916

ACTS 17:6 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Politarch Inscription of Thessalonica → FIELD NOTES p.1771

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC NOTABLE

THE CHARACTER OF THE BEREANS

10 As soon as night had fallen, the brothers
sent Paul and Silas away to Berea. On ar-
riving there, they went into the Jewish
synagogue. 11 Now the Bereans were more
noble-minded than the Thessalonians, for
they received the message with great ea-
gerness and examined the Scriptures
every day to see if these teachings were
true. 12 As a result, many of them believed,
along with quite a few prominent Greek
women and men.

13 But when the Jews from Thessalonica
learned that Paul was also proclaiming the
word of God in Berea, they went there
themselves to incite and agitate the
crowds. 14 The brothers immediately sent
Paul to the coast, but Silas and Timothy
remained in Berea. 15 Those who escorted
Paul brought him to Athens and then re-
turned with instructions for Silas and Tim-
othy to join him as soon as possible.

PAUL IN ATHENS

16 While Paul was waiting for them in
Athens, he was deeply disturbed in his
spirit to see that the city was full of idols.
17 So he reasoned in the synagogue with
the Jews and God-fearing Gentiles, and in
the marketplace with those he met each
day.

18 Some Epicurean and Stoic philosophers
also began to debate with him. Some of
them asked, "What is this babbler trying
to say?" Others said, "He seems to be ad-
vocating foreign gods." They said this be-
cause Paul was proclaiming the good
news of Jesus and the resurrection.

19 So they took Paul and brought him to the
Areopagus, where they asked him, "May
we know what this new teaching is that
you are presenting? 20 For you are bring-
ing some strange notions to our ears, and
we want to know what they mean."

21 Now all the Athenians and foreigners
who lived there spent their time doing
nothing more than hearing and articulat-
ing new ideas.

PAUL'S ADDRESS IN THE AREOPAGUS

22 Then Paul stood up in the meeting of
the Areopagus and said, "Men of Athens, I
see that in every way you are very reli-
gious. 23 For as I walked around and ex-
amined your objects of worship, I even
found an altar with this inscription:

TO AN UNKNOWN GOD.

Therefore what you worship as something
unknown, I now proclaim to you.

24 The God who made the world and
everything in it is the Lord of heaven and
earth and does not live in temples made
by human hands. 25 Nor is He served by
human hands, as if He needed anything,
because He Himself gives everyone life
and breath and everything else. 26 From
one man He made every nation of men,
that they should inhabit the whole earth;
and He determined their appointed times
and the boundaries of their lands.

27 God intended that they would seek Him
and perhaps reach out for Him and find
Him, though He is not far from each one
of us. 28 'For in Him we live and move and
have our being.' As some of your own po-
ets have said, 'We are His offspring.' 29
Therefore, being offspring of God, we
should not think that the Divine Being is
like gold or silver or stone, an image
formed by man's skill and imagination.

ACTS 17:16 [DEMONIC] Paul is upset to see Athens full of idols

ACTS 17:22 [DEMONIC] Paul finds an altar to an unknown god in Athens

ACTS 17:23 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Pausanias and other ancient sources confirm altars to 'unknown gods' in Athens → FIELD NOTES p.1773

ACTS 17:28 [NOTABLE] Paul quotes a Greek poem, most likely by Epimenides of Crete, from about 600 BC. He uses the Greeks' own writers to point them to the true God.

ACTS 17:28 [NOTABLE] Paul quotes the Greek poet Aratus, from his poem Phaenomena, written about 270 BC. The Stoic writer Cleanthes wrote almost the same line.

ACTS 17:29 [DEMONIC] God is not like an image of gold, silver, or stone

END TIMES PROPHECIES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE UNKNOWN GOD AND MARS HILL

ACTS 17:16 TO 34



The rocks of the Areopagus, or Mars Hill, with the Acropolis and the Parthenon rising behind it in Athens.

WHAT IT IS

The Areopagus is the rock hill where the city council of Athens met, and the council itself carried the same name. Ancient writers say Athens had altars to unknown gods, like the one Paul saw. An altar to unknown gods was also dug up at Pergamon in Turkey.

HOW OLD IT IS

The writer Pausanias saw altars of gods called unknown near Athens about AD 150. The Pergamon altar is from the second century AD. Diogenes Laertius, writing in the 200s AD, says that about 600 BC Epimenides of Crete stopped a plague in Athens by setting up altars to no named god.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

German archaeologists found the Pergamon altar in 1909 in a sacred area of the goddess Demeter. The Areopagus hill was never lost. It stands just northwest of the Acropolis.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

You can climb Mars Hill today. A bronze plaque at its foot shows Paul's sermon from Acts 17:22 to 31 in Greek.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Athens really did honor gods it could not name, just in case it had missed one. Paul starts right there: the God you worship without knowing, I am going to tell you about. Epimenides, the same man tied to the unknown altars, is likely the poet Paul quotes in 17:28.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No altar reading to an unknown god, just one god, has been found in Athens. Part of the Pergamon altar's words are broken off, so its exact reading is debated.

30 Although God overlooked the ignorance
of earlier times, He now commands all
people everywhere to repent. 31 For He
has set a day when He will judge the
world with justice by the Man He has ap-
pointed. He has given proof of this to
everyone by raising Him from the dead."
32 When they heard about the resurrection
of the dead, some began to mock him, but
others said, "We want to hear you again
on this topic." 33 At that, Paul left the Are-
opagus. 34 But some joined him and be-
lieved, including Dionysius the Are-
opagite, a woman named Damaris, and
others who were with them.

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

In Corinth Paul makes tents with Aquila and Priscilla, a couple Emperor Claudius had thrown out of Rome. The Lord tells Paul in a vision, Do not be afraid, and he stays a year and a half. The Jewish leaders drag Paul before the governor Gallio, who refuses to hear the case.

PAUL MINISTERS IN CORINTH // 1 CORINTHIANS 1:1–3; 2 CORINTHIANS 1:1–2

1 After this, Paul left Athens and went to
Corinth. 2 There he found a Jew named
Aquila, a native of Pontus, who had re-
cently come from Italy with his wife
Priscilla because Claudius had ordered all
the Jews to leave Rome. Paul went to visit
them, 3 and he stayed and worked with
them because they were tentmakers by
trade, just as he was.
4 Every Sabbath he reasoned in the syna-
gogue, trying to persuade Jews and
Greeks alike. 5 And when Silas and Timo-

ACTS 17:31 [PROPHECY] He has appointed a day on which He will judge the world in righteousness by the Man whom He has ordained. He has given assurance of this to all by raising Him from the dead → STILL TO COME

ACTS 18:2 [FIELD NOTES] A Roman writer mentions this order too. See the Claudius Throws the Jews Out of Rome Field Notes page, p.1774.

ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

CLAUDIUS THROWS THE JEWS OUT OF ROME

ACTS 18:1 TO 3



Marble head of Emperor Claudius in the Vatican Museums.

WHAT IT IS

One sentence by the Roman writer Suetonius in his life of Emperor Claudius. In plain English: Because the Jews kept making trouble stirred up by Chrestus, he threw them out of Rome.

HOW OLD IT IS

Suetonius wrote it about AD 121. Orosius, a Christian writer in AD 417, says it happened in Claudius' ninth year, AD 49. Paul likely reached Corinth about AD 50, so Aquila and Priscilla had recently come from Italy, just as Luke says.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

A real Roman writer says Claudius ordered Jews out of Rome, matching Acts 18:2. Many scholars think Chrestus is a misspelling of Christus, Christ, and that arguments in Rome's synagogues over Jesus led to the order. Aquila and Priscilla may have been Jewish believers caught up in it.

THE HONEST SIDE

Chrestus was also a common name, so Suetonius may mean some other troublemaker. Another Roman writer, Dio Cassius, says Claudius did not throw the Jews out but stopped their meetings, maybe in AD 41. That may be a different, earlier event.

SEE ALSO

Suetonius is one of the witnesses in Exhibit A, Jesus in History, p.2120.

thy came down from Macedonia, Paul devoted himself fully to the word, testifying to the Jews that Jesus is the Christ. 6 But when they opposed and insulted him, he shook out his garments and told them, "Your blood be on your own heads! I am innocent of it. From now on I will go to the Gentiles."

7 So Paul left the synagogue and went next door to the house of Titus Justus, a worshiper of God. 8 Crispus, the synagogue leader, and his whole household believed in the Lord. And many of the Corinthians who heard the message believed and were baptized.

9 One night the Lord spoke to Paul in a vision: "Do not be afraid; keep on speaking; do not be silent. 10 For I am with you and no one will lay a hand on you, because I have many people in this city." 11 So Paul stayed for a year and a half, teaching the word of God among the Corinthians.

PAUL BEFORE GALLIO

12 While Gallio was proconsul of Achaia, the Jews coordinated an attack on Paul and brought him before the judgment seat. 13 "This man is persuading the people to worship God in ways contrary to the law," they said.

14 But just as Paul was about to speak, Gallio told the Jews, "If this matter involved a wrongdoing or vicious crime, O Jews, it would be reasonable for me to hear your complaint. 15 But since it is a dispute about words and names and your own law, settle it yourselves. I refuse to be

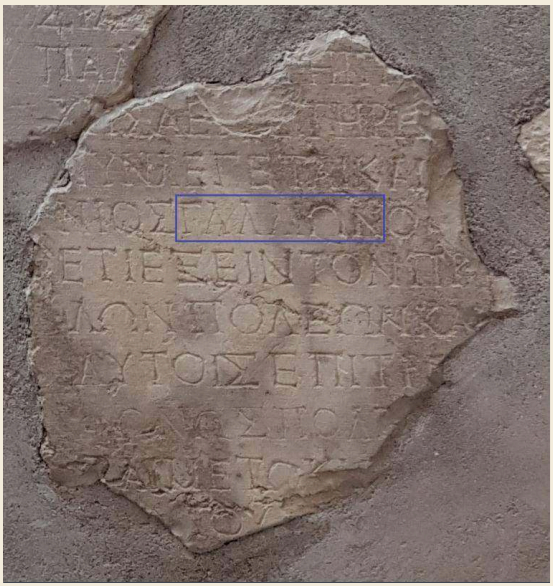
ACTS 18:9 [MIRACLE] The Lord tells Paul in a vision not to be afraid

ACTS 18:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Stone letter dating Gallio's time as governor of Achaia to about AD 51 to 52 → FIELD NOTES p.1775

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE GALLIO INSCRIPTION

ACTS 18:12 TO 17



One of the pieces of the Gallio Inscription at Delphi. The blue box marks Gallio's name. Photo by Gérard, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Pieces of a stone letter from Emperor Claudius to the city of Delphi in Greece. It names Lucius Junius Gallio, my friend and proconsul. That is the governor who threw out the case against Paul in Corinth.

HOW OLD IT IS

The letter is dated by the number of times Claudius had been hailed as a victorious general, which puts it in AD 52. Governors served one year starting in summer, so Gallio ruled Achaia about AD 51 to 52.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Found in pieces at Delphi. The first ones were published in 1905, and more pieces were added in 1970.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the Delphi Archaeological Museum in Greece.

WHY IT MATTERS

This is one of the most important dates in the New Testament. Since Paul stood before Gallio, he was in Corinth about AD 50 to 52. Scholars count forward and backward from here to date Paul's other trips and letters. Gallio was the brother of the famous Roman writer Seneca.

WHO GALLIO WAS

He was born Annaeus Novatus and took the name Lucius Junius Gallio when a friend of his father adopted him. His younger brother Seneca was Rome's famous thinker and Nero's teacher. Seneca wrote that no one was as sweet to anyone as Gallio was to everyone.

SICK IN GREECE

Seneca also wrote that Gallio caught a fever while he was in Achaia and took a ship away, saying the sickness came from the place, not from his body, Letters 104.1.

THE JUDGMENT SEAT

The judgment seat in 18:12 is the bema. A large stone speaking platform still stands in the middle of the old forum at Corinth, and many think Paul stood before Gallio there.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not mention Paul. It shows Luke had the right governor in the right city at the right time.

MAP · ACTS 18:23 TO 21:17

Paul's Third Trip

Three years in Ephesus, then on to Jerusalem, about AD 53 to 57



THREE YEARS IN EPHESUS Paul taught daily in the hall of Tyrannus for two years, so all of Asia heard the word, Acts 19:9 to 10. He stayed about three years in all, Acts 20:31.

FAREWELL AT MILETUS Paul called the Ephesian elders to Miletus and told them they would not see him again, Acts 20:17 to 38.

A RIOT FOR ARTEMIS Silversmiths who made shrines of Artemis started a riot in the theater, Acts 19:23 to 41. That theater still stands.

LETTERS On this trip Paul wrote 1 Corinthians from Ephesus, 2 Corinthians from Macedonia and Romans from Corinth.

All the cities are known places. The routes between them are approximate.

MIRACLES

a judge of such things." 16 And he drove them away from the judgment seat.

17 At this, the crowd seized Sosthenes the synagogue leader and beat him in front of the judgment seat. But none of this was of concern to Gallio.

PAUL RETURNS TO ANTIOCH

18 Paul remained in Corinth for quite some time before saying goodbye to the brothers. He had his head shaved in Cenchrea to keep a vow he had made, and then he sailed for Syria, accompanied by Priscilla and Aquila.

19 When they reached Ephesus, Paul left Priscilla and Aquila. He himself went into the synagogue there and reasoned with the Jews. 20 When they asked him to stay for a while longer, he declined. 21 But as he left, he said, "I will come back to you if God is willing." And he set sail from Ephesus.

22 When Paul had landed at Caesarea, he went up and greeted the church at Jerusalem. Then he went down to Antioch.

PAUL'S THIRD MISSIONARY JOURNEY BEGINS // ACTS 13:1–3; ACTS 15:36–41

23 After Paul had spent some time in Antioch, he traveled from place to place throughout the region of Galatia and Phrygia, strengthening all the disciples.

24 Meanwhile a Jew named Apollos, a native of Alexandria, came to Ephesus. He was an eloquent man, well versed in the Scriptures. 25 He had been instructed in the way of the Lord and was fervent in spirit. He spoke and taught accurately about Jesus, though he knew only the baptism of John. 26 And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue. When Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained to him the way of God more accurately.

27 When Apollos resolved to cross over to Achaia, the brothers encouraged him and wrote to the disciples there to welcome him. On his arrival, he was a great help to those who by grace had believed. 28 For he powerfully refuted the Jews in public debate, proving from the Scriptures that Jesus is the Christ.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

In Ephesus God does unusual miracles through Paul. Seven sons of Sceva try to cast out a demon in Jesus' name, and the demon says, I know Jesus and I know Paul, but who are you? Then the silversmiths start a riot, and the crowd shouts Great is Artemis for two hours.

THE HOLY SPIRIT RECEIVED AT EPHESUS // ACTS 10:44–48

1 While Apollos was at Corinth, Paul passed through the interior and came to Ephesus. There he found some disciples 2 and asked them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you became believers?"

"No," they answered, "we have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit."

3 "Into what, then, were you baptized?" Paul asked.

"The baptism of John," they replied.

4 Paul explained: "John's baptism was a baptism of repentance. He told the people to believe in the One coming after him, that is, in Jesus."

5 On hearing this, they were baptized into the name of the Lord Jesus. 6 And when Paul laid his hands on them, the Holy Spirit came upon them, and they spoke in tongues and prophesied. 7 There were about twelve men in all.

PAUL MINISTERS IN EPHESUS // EPHESIANS 1:1–2; REVELATION 2:1–7

8 Then Paul went into the synagogue and spoke boldly there for three months, arguing persuasively about the kingdom of God. 9 But when some of them stubbornly refused to believe and publicly maligned the Way, Paul took his disciples and left the synagogue to conduct daily discussions in the lecture hall of Tyrannus. 10 This continued for two years, so that everyone who lived in the province of Asia, Jews and Greeks alike, heard the word of the Lord.

ACTS 19:6 [MIRACLE] The Holy Spirit comes on the Ephesian disciples

ARCHAEOLOGY MIRACLES DEMONIC

11 God did extraordinary miracles through
the hands of Paul, 12 so that even handker-
chiefs and aprons that had touched him
were taken to the sick, and the diseases
and evil spirits left them.

SEVEN SONS OF SCEVA

13 Now there were some itinerant Jewish
exorcists who tried to invoke the name of
the Lord Jesus over those with evil spirits.
They would say, "I command you by Je-
sus, whom Paul proclaims." 14 Seven sons
of Sceva, a Jewish chief priest, were do-
ing this.

15 But one day the evil spirit responded,
"Jesus I know, and I know about Paul, but
who are you?" 16 Then the man with the
evil spirit jumped on them and overpow-
ered them all. The attack was so violent
that they ran out of the house naked and
wounded.

17 This became known to all the Jews and
Greeks living in Ephesus, and fear came
over all of them. So the name of the Lord
Jesus was held in high honor. 18 Many who
had believed now came forward, confess-
ing and disclosing their deeds. 19 And a
number of those who had practiced magic
arts brought their books and burned them
in front of everyone. When the value of
the books was calculated, the total came
to fifty thousand silver coins. 20 So the
word of the Lord powerfully continued to
spread and prevail.

THE RIOT IN EPHESUS

21 After these things had happened, Paul
resolved in the Spirit to go to Jerusalem,
passing through Macedonia and Achaia.
"After I have been there," he said, "I must
see Rome as well." 22 He sent two of his
helpers, Timothy and Erastus, to Macedo-
nia, while he stayed for a time in the
province of Asia.

23 About that time there arose a great dis-
turbance about the Way. 24 It began with a
silversmith named Demetrius who made
silver shrines of Artemis, bringing much
business to the craftsmen.

25 Demetrius assembled the craftsmen,
along with the workmen in related trades.
"Men," he said, "you know that this busi-
ness is our source of prosperity. 26 And
you can see and hear that not only in Eph-
esus, but in nearly the whole province of
Asia, this Paul has persuaded a great
number of people to turn away. He says
that man-made gods are no gods at all. 27
There is danger not only that our business
will fall into disrepute, but also that the
temple of the great goddess Artemis will
be discredited and her majesty
deposed—she who is worshiped by all the
province of Asia and the whole world."

28 When the men heard this, they were en-
raged and began shouting, "Great is
Artemis of the Ephesians!" 29 Soon the
whole city was in disarray. They rushed
together into the theatre, dragging with
them Gaius and Aristarchus, Paul's travel-
ing companions from Macedonia.

30 Paul wanted to go before the assembly,
but the disciples would not allow him. 31
Even some of Paul's friends who were of-
ficials of the province of Asia sent word to
him, begging him not to venture into the
theatre.

32 Meanwhile the assembly was in turmoil.
Some were shouting one thing and some
another, and most of them did not even
know why they were there. 33 The Jews in
the crowd pushed Alexander forward to
explain himself, and he motioned for si-
lence so he could make his defense to the
people. 34 But when they realized that he
was a Jew, they all shouted in unison for
about two hours: "Great is Artemis of the
Ephesians!"

ACTS 19:11 [MIRACLE] Unusual miracles through Paul — handkerchiefs and aprons healed
ACTS 19:13 [DEMONIC] Seven sons of Sceva try to use Jesus' name and the evil spirit overpowers them
ACTS 19:18 [DEMONIC] Ephesians burned 50,000 silver pieces' worth of magic books
ACTS 19:22 [FIELD NOTES] A stone in Corinth names an Erastus. See The Erastus Inscription Field Notes page, p.1779.
ACTS 19:23 [DEMONIC] Idol makers riot when Paul threatens the Artemis business
ACTS 19:27 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Huge theater that held about 24,000 people dug up, plus the foundations of the giant Temple of Artemis → FIELD NOTES p.1780
ACTS 19:34 [DEMONIC] The Ephesus crowd shouts Great is Artemis for two hours

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE ERASTUS INSCRIPTION

ACTS 19:22 · ROMANS 16:23 · 2 TIMOTHY 4:20



The Erastus Inscription near the theater of Corinth. Photo by Rduncan2, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Big Latin letters cut into a stone pavement in Corinth. They say Erastus, in return for his office as aedile, laid this pavement at his own expense. An aedile was a city official in charge of public works.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most date it to the middle of the first century AD, Paul's time. In 2010 the scholar Steven Friesen argued it is from the second century, and others have answered that it still fits the first. The date is debated.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Found in 1929 by American archaeologists next to the theater of ancient Corinth. Corinth is the city where Paul wrote Romans.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Still in place at the site of ancient Corinth, Greece.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Paul names an Erastus three times. In Romans 16:23, written from Corinth, Erastus is the city treasurer. In Acts 19:22 he travels with Paul's team, and 2 Timothy 4:20 says he stayed in Corinth. A rich, important Erastus did live in Corinth.

BRONZE LETTERS

The letters were cut deep into the stone because they once held letters of bronze, now gone, so the name would shine in the street.

CORINTH IN PAUL'S DAY

Rome destroyed the old Greek city in 146 BC. Julius Caesar founded it again as a Roman colony in 44 BC. So in Paul's day its official language was Latin, like this stone, even though most people on the street spoke Greek.

CITY TREASURER

Romans 16:23 calls Erastus the oikonomos of the city, a manager of its money. Some think that was the same job as aedile. Others think Erastus held one office and later the other, since men in Roman cities often moved up from job to job.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

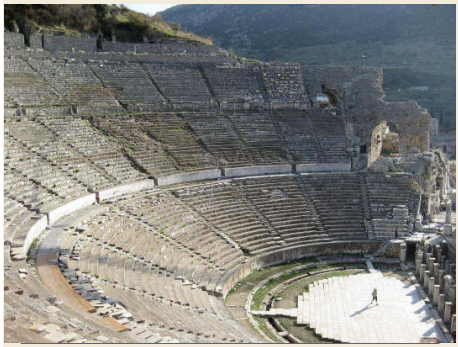
Erastus was a common name. Romans uses a Greek title that may not mean the same job as aedile. Many think it is the same man, but no one can be sure.

DEMONIC

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

EPHESUS: THE THEATER AND THE TEMPLE OF ARTEMIS

ACTS 19:23 TO 41



The great theater of Ephesus, where the crowd shouted Great is Artemis for two hours.

WHAT IT IS

The huge stone theater of Ephesus, which held about 24,000 people, and the ruins of the Temple of Artemis, one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. Acts 19 says the riot crowd rushed into the theater.

HOW OLD IT IS

The theater was first built in the 200s BC and made bigger by the Romans in the first century AD, around Paul's time. The temple Paul knew was rebuilt after a fire in 356 BC. Goths damaged it in AD 262.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Austrian archaeologists have dug at Ephesus since 1895, and the theater is fully uncovered. John Turtle Wood found the temple in 1869 after six years of searching. Only one rebuilt column stands there today.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

At Ephesus, near Selçuk in Turkey. Pieces of the temple are in the British Museum in London.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Inscriptions from Ephesus use Luke's exact titles: the city clerk who calmed the crowd, the Asiarchs who were Paul's friends, and the title temple keeper of Artemis in 19:35. An inscription from AD 104 tells of silver statues of Artemis being carried into this same theater, the kind of business the silversmiths were afraid to lose.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing found names Paul or Demetrius the silversmith. It shows Luke knew Ephesus well.

35 Finally the city clerk quieted the crowd
and declared, "Men of Ephesus, doesn't
everyone know that the city of Ephesus is
guardian of the temple of the great
Artemis and of her image, which fell from
heaven? 36 Since these things are undeni-
able, you ought to be calm and not do
anything rash. 37 For you have brought
these men here, though they have neither
robbed our temple nor blasphemed our
goddess.
38 So if Demetrius and his fellow craftsmen
have a complaint against anyone, the
courts are open and proconsuls are avail-
able. Let them bring charges against one
another there. 39 But if you are seeking
anything beyond this, it must be settled in
a legal assembly. 40 For we are in jeopardy
of being charged with rioting for today's
events, and we have no justification to ac-
count for this commotion."
41 After he had said this, he dismissed the
assembly.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul preaches until midnight, and a young man named Eutychus falls asleep and falls out of a third story window. Paul raises him up, then keeps talking until dawn. At Miletus Paul says goodbye to the leaders from Ephesus.

PAUL IN MACEDONIA AND GREECE

1 When the uproar had ended, Paul sent
for the disciples. And after encouraging
them, he said goodbye to them and left for
Macedonia. 2 After traveling through that
area and speaking many words of encour-
agement, he arrived in Greece, 3 where he
stayed three months. And when the Jews
formed a plot against him as he was about
to sail for Syria, he decided to go back
through Macedonia.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY MIRACLES

4 Paul was accompanied by Sopater son
of Pyrrhus from Berea, Aristarchus and
Secundus from Thessalonica, Gaius from
Derbe, Timothy, and Tychicus and
Trophimus from the province of Asia. 5
These men went on ahead and waited for
us in Troas. 6 And after the Feast of Un-
leavened Bread, we sailed from Philippi,
and five days later we rejoined them in
Troas, where we stayed seven days.

EUTYCHUS REVIVED AT TROAS // 2 KINGS 4:18–37

7 On the first day of the week we came to-
gether to break bread. Since Paul was
ready to leave the next day, he talked to
them and kept on speaking until midnight.

8 Now there were many lamps in the upper
room where we were gathered. 9 And a
certain young man named Eutychus,
seated in the window, was sinking into a
deep sleep as Paul talked on and on.
When he was sound asleep, he fell from
the third story and was picked up dead. 10
But Paul went down, threw himself on the
young man, and embraced him. "Do not
be alarmed!" he said. "He is still alive!"

11 Then Paul went back upstairs, broke
bread, and ate. And after speaking until
daybreak, he departed. 12 And the people
were greatly relieved to take the boy
home alive.

FROM TROAS TO MILETUS

13 We went on ahead to the ship and sailed
to Assos, where we were to take Paul
aboard. He had arranged this because he
was going there on foot. 14 And when he
met us at Assos, we took him aboard and
went on to Mitylene. 15 Sailing on from
there, we arrived the next day opposite
Chios. The day after that we arrived at
Samos, and on the following day we came
to Miletus.

16 Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus to
avoid spending time in the province of
Asia, because he was in a hurry to reach
Jerusalem, if possible, by the day of Pen-
tecost.

PAUL'S FAREWELL TO THE EPHESIANS

17 From Miletus, Paul sent to Ephesus for
the elders of the church.

18 When they came to him, he said, "You
know how I lived the whole time I was
with you, from the first day I arrived in the
province of Asia. 19 I served the Lord with
great humility and with tears, especially in
the trials that came upon me through the
plots of the Jews. 20 I did not shrink back
from declaring anything that was helpful
to you as I taught you publicly and from
house to house, 21 testifying to Jews and
Greeks alike about repentance to God and
faith in our Lord Jesus Christ.

22 And now, compelled by the Spirit, I am
going to Jerusalem, not knowing what will
happen to me there. 23 I only know that in
town after town the Holy Spirit warns me
that chains and afflictions await me. 24 But
I consider my life of no value to me, if only
I may finish my course and complete the
ministry I have received from the Lord
Jesus—the ministry of testifying to the
good news of God's grace.

25 Now I know that none of you among
whom I have preached the kingdom will
see my face again. 26 Therefore I testify to
you this day that I am innocent of the
blood of all men. 27 For I did not shrink
back from declaring to you the whole will
of God.

28 Keep watch over yourselves and the en-
tire flock of which the Holy Spirit has
made you overseers. Be shepherds of the
church of God, which He purchased with
His own blood. 29 I know that after my de-
parture, savage wolves will come in
among you and will not spare the flock. 30
Even from your own number, men will rise
up and distort the truth to draw away dis-

ACTS 20:7 [NOTE] THE FIRST DAY. See Saturday or Sunday?

ACTS 20:9 [MIRACLE] Paul raises Eutychus after he fell from the third floor

ACTS 20:22 [PROPHECY] I go bound in the spirit to Jerusalem, not knowing the things that will happen to me there, except that the Holy Spirit testifies in every city that chains and tribulations await me… I know that you all will see my face no more → Fulfilled · MEDIUM

ACTS 20:29 [PROPHECY] After my departure savage wolves will come in among you, not sparing the flock. Also from among yourselves men will rise up, speaking perverse things, to draw away the disciples after themselves (Paul to Ephesian elders) → HISTORY: Within about 50 years, false teachers troubled the church at Ephesus. Ignatius warned about them about AD 110, and Irenaeus tells of the false teacher Cerinthus there.

JESUS SPEAKING

ciples after them. 31 Therefore be alert and
remember that for three years I never
stopped warning each of you night and
day with tears.

32 And now I commit you to God and to the
word of His grace, which can build you up
and give you an inheritance among all
who are sanctified.

33 I have not coveted anyone's silver or
gold or clothing. 34 You yourselves know
that these hands of mine have ministered
to my own needs and those of my com-
panions. 35 In everything, I showed you
that by this kind of hard work we must
help the weak, remembering the words of
the Lord Jesus Himself: 'It is more blessed
to give than to receive.'"

36 When Paul had said this, he knelt down
with all of them and prayed. 37 They all
wept openly as they embraced Paul and
kissed him. 38 They were especially
grieved by his statement that they would
never see his face again. Then they ac-
companied him to the ship.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SATURDAY OR SUNDAY?

The First Day of the Week

ACTS 20:7 · 15:28 TO 29 · 1 CORINTHIANS 16:2 · REVE-
LATION 1:10 · COLOSSIANS 2:16 TO 17

WHAT ACTS SAYS

On the first day of the week we came to-
gether to break bread, 20:7. Paul tells
the Corinthians to set money aside on
the first day of every week, 1 Corinthians
16:2. John was in the Spirit on the Lord's
day, Revelation 1:10. Jesus rose on the
first day of the week, Luke 24:1. Paul
also went to the synagogue on the Sab-
bath, 13:14 and 17:2, because that is
where the Jews gathered.

THE JERUSALEM COUNCIL

In Acts 15 the apostles decided Gentile
believers did not have to be circumcised
or keep the law of Moses. They asked
only four things, 15:29. The Sabbath was
not one of them. Paul later wrote, do not
let anyone judge you about a Sabbath
day, Colossians 2:16 to 17, and one per-
son regards one day above another, Ro-
mans 14:5.

THE EARLY CHURCH

The Didache, about AD 100, says to
gather on the Lord's own day to break
bread (14). About AD 110 Ignatius wrote
of believers no longer keeping the Sab-
bath but living by the Lord's day (Mag-
nesians 9). About AD 155 Justin Martyr
said Christians meet on Sunday because
God began creation and Jesus rose on
that day (First Apology 67).

DID CONSTANTINE CHANGE IT?

On March 7, AD 321, Emperor Constan-
tine made Sunday a day of rest for city
workers, though farmers could still work.
Christians had already been meeting on
Sunday for well over 200 years. About
AD 363 the Council of Laodicea told
Christians not to rest on Saturday like
the Jews, but to honor the Lord's day
(canon 29). Some Sabbath keepers say
that is when the church changed God's
day.

The Sabbath and the Lord's Day

EXODUS 20:8 TO 11 · 31:13 · MARK 2:27 · HEBREWS 4:9
TO 10 · 10:25 · ROMANS 14:5 TO 6

KEEP THE SEVENTH DAY

The fourth commandment was never
canceled, Exodus 20:8 to 11. Jesus kept
the Sabbath, Luke 4:16, and said it was
made for man, Mark 2:27. Seventh Day
Baptists began in England in the 1650s
and had a church in Rhode Island by
1671. The Seventh-day Adventists, orga-
nized in 1863 with Ellen G. White, are the
largest Sabbath keeping church today.
Many Messianic Jews keep it too.

SUNDAY IS THE CHRISTIAN SABBATH

The Sabbath moved to the day Jesus
rose, and the whole commandment still
applies. The Westminster Confession of
1646 calls Sunday the Christian Sabbath
(21.7). The Puritans kept it strictly, with
no work or play.

THE LORD'S DAY, NOT THE SABBATH

The Sabbath was a sign between God
and Israel, Exodus 31:13, and it points to
the rest we find in Christ, Hebrews 4:9
to 10. Christians meet on Sunday by
custom and to honor the resurrection,
not as a law. Luther wrote in his Large
Catechism, 1529, that the Saturday law
was for the Jews, and Christians set

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

aside a day for the sake of good order and to hear God's word. Most evangelicals and Lutherans hold this view.

EVERY DAY IS THE LORD'S

One person regards one day above another, and another regards every day alike; each should be fully convinced in his own mind, Romans 14:5 to 6.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Rest is a gift from God. Do not give up meeting together, Hebrews 10:25. And do not judge each other over days, Colossians 2:16.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

A prophet named Agabus ties his own hands and feet with Paul's belt and says this will happen to Paul in Jerusalem. Paul goes anyway. In the temple some men from Asia claim he brought a Gentile inside, and the whole city riots.

PAUL'S JOURNEY TO JERUSALEM

1 After we had torn ourselves away from
them, we sailed directly to Cos, and the
next day on to Rhodes, and from there to
Patara. 2 Finding a ship crossing over to
Phoenicia, we boarded it and set sail. 3 After sighting Cyprus and passing south of
it, we sailed on to Syria and landed at
Tyre, where the ship was to unload its
cargo.

4 We sought out the disciples in Tyre and
stayed with them seven days. Through the
Spirit they kept telling Paul not to go up to
Jerusalem. 5 But when our time there had
ended, we set out on our journey. All the
disciples, with their wives and children,
accompanied us out of the city and knelt
down on the beach to pray with us. 6 And
after we had said our farewells, we went
aboard the ship, and they returned home.

7 When we had finished our voyage from
Tyre, we landed at Ptolemais, where we
greeted the brothers and stayed with
them for a day.

PAUL VISITS PHILIP THE EVANGELIST

8 Leaving the next day, we went on to
Caesarea and stayed at the home of Philip
the evangelist, who was one of the Seven.
9 He had four unmarried daughters who
prophesied.

10 After we had been there several days, a
prophet named Agabus came down from
Judea. 11 Coming over to us, he took Paul's
belt, bound his own feet and hands, and
said, "The Holy Spirit says: 'In this way the
Jews of Jerusalem will bind the owner of
this belt and hand him over to the Gentiles.'" 12 When we heard this, we and the
people there pleaded with Paul not to go
up to Jerusalem.

13 Then Paul answered, "Why are you
weeping and breaking my heart? I am
ready not only to be bound, but also to die
in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus." 14 When he would not be dissuaded,
we quieted down and said, "The Lord's
will be done."

15 After these days, we packed up and
went on to Jerusalem. 16 Some of the disciples from Caesarea accompanied us,
and they took us to stay at the home of
Mnason the Cypriot, an early disciple.

PAUL'S ARRIVAL AT JERUSALEM

17 When we arrived in Jerusalem, the
brothers welcomed us joyfully. 18 The next
day Paul went in with us to see James,
and all the elders were present. 19 Paul
greeted them and recounted one by one
the things that God had done among the
Gentiles through his ministry.

20 When they heard this, they glorified
God. Then they said to Paul, "You see,
brother, how many thousands of Jews
have believed, and all of them are zealous
for the law. 21 But they are under the impression that you teach all the Jews who
live among the Gentiles to forsake Moses,
telling them not to circumcise their children or observe our customs. 22 What then

ACTS 21:3 [FULFILLS] Tyre will be forgotten seventy years; after that she will return to her hire ← IS 23:15-18 · MEDIUM p.1089

ACTS 21:10 [PROPHECY] Agabus took Paul's belt, bound his own hands and feet, and said, 'So shall the Jews at Jerusalem bind the man who owns this belt, and deliver him into the hands of the Gentiles' → Fulfilled days later in ACTS 21:27-36 when Paul was arrested by Jews in the temple and handed to Romans p.1784

ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC

should we do? They will certainly hear that you have come.

23 Therefore do what we advise you. There are four men with us who have taken a vow. 24 Take these men, purify yourself along with them, and pay their expenses so they can have their heads shaved. Then everyone will know that there is no truth to these rumors about you, but that you also live in obedience to the law.

25 As for the Gentile believers, we have written to them our decision that they must abstain from food sacrificed to idols, from blood, from the meat of strangled animals, and from sexual immorality."

26 So the next day Paul took the men and purified himself along with them. Then he entered the temple to give notice of the date when their purification would be complete and the offering would be made for each of them.

PAUL SEIZED AT THE TEMPLE

27 When the seven days were almost over, some Jews from the province of Asia saw Paul at the temple. They stirred up the whole crowd and seized him, 28 crying out, "Men of Israel, help us! This is the man who teaches everyone everywhere against our people and against our law and against this place. Furthermore, he has brought Greeks into the temple and defiled this holy place." 29 For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian with him in the city, and they assumed that Paul had brought him into the temple.

30 The whole city was stirred up, and the people rushed together. They seized Paul and dragged him out of the temple, and at once the gates were shut. 31 While they were trying to kill him, the commander of the Roman regiment received a report that all Jerusalem was in turmoil. 32 Immediately he took some soldiers and centurions and ran down to the crowd. When the people saw the commander and the soldiers, they stopped beating Paul.

33 The commander came up and arrested Paul, ordering that he be bound with two chains. Then he asked who he was and what he had done.

34 Some in the crowd were shouting one thing, and some another. And since the commander could not get at the truth because of the uproar, he ordered that Paul be brought into the barracks. 35 When Paul reached the steps, he had to be carried by the soldiers because of the violence of the mob. 36 For the crowd that followed him kept shouting, "Away with him!"

PAUL ADDRESSES THE CROWD

37 As they were about to take Paul into the barracks, he asked the commander, "May I say something to you?"

"Do you speak Greek?" he replied. 38 "Aren't you the Egyptian who incited a rebellion some time ago and led four thousand members of the Assassins into the wilderness?"

39 But Paul answered, "I am a Jew from Tarsus in Cilicia, a citizen of no ordinary city. Now I beg you to allow me to speak to the people."

40 Having received permission, Paul stood on the steps and motioned to the crowd. A great hush came over the crowd, and he addressed them in Hebrew:

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

From the barracks steps Paul tells the crowd how Jesus met him on the Damascus road. They listen quietly until he says God sent him to the Gentiles. Then they riot. The commander orders Paul whipped, until Paul asks if it is legal to flog a Roman citizen without a trial. It is not.

PAUL'S DEFENSE TO THE CROWD // ACTS 9:1–19; ACTS 26:1–23

1 "Brothers and fathers, listen now to my defense before you." 2 When they heard him speak to them in Hebrew, they became even more quiet.

Then Paul declared, 3 "I am a Jew, born in Tarsus of Cilicia, but raised in this city. I was educated at the feet of Gamaliel in strict conformity to the law of our fathers.

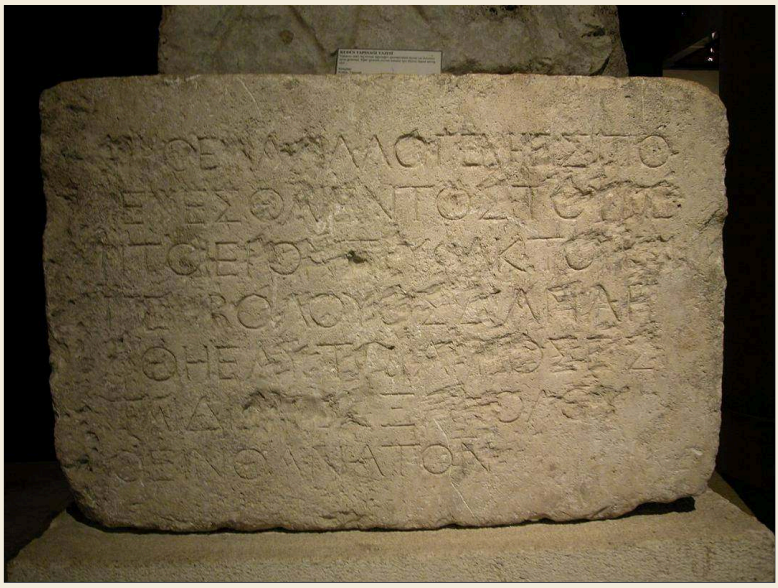
ACTS 21:25 [DEMONIC] Gentile believers are reminded to abstain from food offered to idols

ACTS 21:28 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Temple Warning Inscription → FIELD NOTES p.1785

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE TEMPLE WARNING INSCRIPTION

ACTS 21:27 TO 36 · EPHESIANS 2:14



The complete Temple Warning Inscription in the Istanbul Archaeology Museums.

WHAT IT IS

A stone sign in Greek that hung on the low wall around the inner temple courts in Jerusalem. In plain English it says: No foreigner may go past the fence around the temple. Whoever is caught will have himself to blame for the death that follows.

HOW OLD IT IS

It comes from Herod's temple, which was built starting about 20 BC and destroyed by the Romans in AD 70. That is exactly the temple Paul walked into. The Jewish historian Josephus also wrote that these warning signs stood there, in Greek and in Latin.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The French scholar Charles Clermont Ganneau found the complete sign in Jerusalem in 1871. A broken second copy, with red paint still in its letters, was found in 1935.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The complete sign is in the Istanbul Archaeology Museums in Turkey. The broken one is in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

It explains why one rumor started a riot. In Acts 21:28 to 29 the crowd thought Paul had taken Trophimus, a Greek, past this very sign. The penalty was death. It also helps picture the dividing wall between Jews and Gentiles that Ephesians 2:14 says Jesus tore down.

THE DIVIDING WALL

Josephus says a stone fence about four and a half feet high ran around the inner courts, with signs like this one set along it at equal distances, some in Greek and some in Latin, Jewish War 5.5.2.

A DEATH PENALTY ROME ALLOWED

Rome usually kept the power of death for itself. But Josephus says the Romans let the Jews put to death even a Roman citizen who went past this line, Jewish War 6.2.4.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It does not mention Paul. It shows the rule Luke describes was real and deadly serious.

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

I was just as zealous for God as any of
you are today.
4 I persecuted this Way even to the death,
detaining both men and women and
throwing them into prison, 5 as the high
priest and the whole Council can testify
about me. I even obtained letters from
them to their brothers in Damascus, and I
was on my way to apprehend these peo-
ple and bring them to Jerusalem to be
punished.
6 About noon as I was approaching Dam-
ascus, suddenly a bright light from
heaven flashed around me. 7 I fell to the
ground and heard a voice say to me,
'Saul, Saul, why do you persecute Me?'
8 'Who are You, Lord?' I asked.
'I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom you are
persecuting,' He replied. 9 My companions
saw the light, but they could not under-
stand the voice of the One speaking to
me.
10 Then I asked, 'What should I do, Lord?'
'Get up and go into Damascus,' He told
me. 'There you will be told all that you
have been appointed to do.'
11 Because the brilliance of the light had
blinded me, my companions led me by the
hand into Damascus. 12 There a man
named Ananias, a devout observer of the
law who was highly regarded by all the
Jews living there, 13 came and stood be-
side me. 'Brother Saul,' he said, 'receive
your sight.' And at that moment I could
see him.
14 Then he said, 'The God of our fathers
has appointed you to know His will and to
see the Righteous One and to hear His
voice. 15 You will be His witness to every-
one of what you have seen and heard. 16
And now what are you waiting for? Get up,
be baptized, and wash your sins away,
calling on His name.'
17 Later, when I had returned to Jerusalem
and was praying at the temple, I fell into a
trance 18 and saw the Lord saying to me,
'Hurry! Leave Jerusalem quickly, because
the people here will not accept your testi-
mony about Me.'
19 'Lord,' I answered, 'they know very well
that in one synagogue after another I im-
prisoned and beat those who believed in
You. 20 And when the blood of Your wit-
ness Stephen was shed, I stood there giv-
ing my approval and watching over the
garments of those who killed him.'
21 Then He said to me, 'Go! I will send you
far away to the Gentiles.'"

PAUL THE ROMAN CITIZEN

22 The crowd listened to Paul until he
made this statement. Then they lifted up
their voices and shouted, "Rid the earth of
him! He is not fit to live!"
23 As they were shouting and throwing off
their cloaks and tossing dust into the air,
24 the commander ordered that Paul be
brought into the barracks. He directed
that Paul be flogged and interrogated to
determine the reason for this outcry
against him.
25 But as they stretched him out to strap
him down, Paul said to the centurion
standing there, "Is it lawful for you to flog
a Roman citizen without a trial?"
26 On hearing this, the centurion went and
reported it to the commander. "What are
you going to do?" he said. "This man is a
Roman citizen."
27 The commander went to Paul and
asked, "Tell me, are you a Roman citizen?"
"Yes," he answered.
28 "I paid a high price for my citizenship,"
said the commander.
"But I was born a citizen," Paul replied.
29 At once those who were about to inter-
rogate Paul stepped back, and the com-
mander himself was alarmed when he re-
alized that he had put a Roman citizen in
chains.
30 The next day the commander, wanting
to learn the real reason Paul was accused
by the Jews, released him and ordered
the chief priests and the whole Sanhedrin

ACTS 22:6 [MIRACLE] Paul retells the light from heaven on the Damascus road
ACTS 22:17 [MIRACLE] Paul falls into a trance in the temple and sees the Lord

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

to assemble. Then he brought Paul down and had him stand before them.

23

CHAPTER 23 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul stands before the council and starts an argument between the Pharisees and the Sadducees about the resurrection. The Lord tells Paul he will testify in Rome. More than forty men swear not to eat until they kill him.

PAUL BEFORE THE SANHEDRIN

1 Paul looked directly at the Sanhedrin and
said, "Brothers, I have conducted myself
before God in all good conscience to this
day."
2 At this, the high priest Ananias ordered
those standing near Paul to strike him on
the mouth.
3 Then Paul said to him, "God will strike
you, you whitewashed wall! You sit here to
judge me according to the law, yet you
yourself violate the law by commanding
that I be struck."
4 But those standing nearby said, "How
dare you insult the high priest of God!"
5 "Brothers," Paul replied, "I was not aware
that he was the high priest, for it is written: *'Do not speak evil about the ruler of your people.'*"
6 Then Paul, knowing that some of them
were Sadducees and the others Pharisees, called out in the Sanhedrin, "Brothers, I am a Pharisee, the son of a Pharisee. It is because of my hope in the resurrection of the dead that I am on trial."
7 As soon as he had said this, a dispute
broke out between the Pharisees and
Sadducees, and the assembly was divided. 8 For the Sadducees say that there
is neither a resurrection nor angels nor
spirits, but the Pharisees acknowledge
them all.
9 A great clamor arose, and some scribes
from the party of the Pharisees got up
and contended sharply, "We find nothing
wrong with this man. What if a spirit or an
angel has spoken to him?" 10 The dispute
grew so violent that the commander was
afraid they would tear Paul to pieces. He
ordered the soldiers to go down and remove him by force and bring him into the
barracks.
11 The following night the Lord stood near
Paul and said, "Take courage! As you
have testified about Me in Jerusalem, so
also you must testify in Rome."

THE PLOT TO KILL PAUL // JOHN 16:1–4

12 When daylight came, the Jews formed a
conspiracy and bound themselves with an
oath not to eat or drink until they had
killed Paul. 13 More than forty of them were
involved in this plot. 14 They went to the
chief priests and elders and said, "We
have bound ourselves with a solemn oath
not to eat anything until we have killed
Paul. 15 Now then, you and the Sanhedrin
petition the commander to bring him down
to you on the pretext of examining his
case more carefully. We are ready to kill
him on the way."
16 But when the son of Paul's sister heard
about the plot, he went into the barracks
and told Paul. 17 Then Paul called one of
the centurions and said, "Take this young
man to the commander; he has something
to tell him."
18 So the centurion took him to the commander and said, "Paul the prisoner sent
and asked me to bring this young man to
you. He has something to tell you."
19 The commander took the young man by
the hand, drew him aside, and asked,
"What do you need to tell me?"
20 He answered, "The Jews have agreed
to ask you to bring Paul to the Sanhedrin
tomorrow on the pretext of acquiring
more information about him. 21 Do not let
them persuade you, because more than
forty men are waiting to ambush him.
They have bound themselves with an oath
not to eat or drink until they have killed
him; they are ready now, awaiting your
consent."

ACTS 23:5 [QUOTES] Direct ← EX 22:28 p.151

ACTS 23:11 [PROPHECY] The following night the Lord stood by him and said, 'Be of good cheer, Paul; for as you have testified for Me in Jerusalem, so you must also bear witness at Rome' → Fulfilled in ACTS 28:16-31 when Paul reached Rome and preached there p.1795

ARCHAEOLOGY

22 So the commander dismissed the young man and instructed him, "Do not tell anyone that you have reported this to me."

PAUL SENT TO FELIX

23 Then he called two of his centurions and said, "Prepare two hundred soldiers, seventy horsemen, and two hundred spearmen to go to Caesarea in the third hour of the night. 24 Provide mounts for Paul to take him safely to Governor Felix." 25 And he wrote the following letter:

26 Claudius Lysias,

To His Excellency, Governor Felix:

Greetings.

27 This man was seized by the Jews, and they were about to kill him when I came with my troops to rescue him. For I had learned that he is a Roman citizen, 28 and since I wanted to understand their charges against him, I brought him down to their Sanhedrin. 29 I found that the accusation involved questions about their own law, but there was no charge worthy of death or imprisonment.

30 When I was informed that there was a plot against the man, I sent him to you at once. I also instructed his accusers to present their case against him before you.

31 So the soldiers followed their orders and brought Paul by night to Antipatris. 32 The next day they returned to the barracks and let the horsemen go on with him. 33 When the horsemen arrived in Caesarea, they delivered the letter to the governor and presented Paul to him.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

CAESAREA: HEROD'S HARBOR

ACTS 23:23 TO 35 · ACTS 24:27 · ACTS 27:1 TO 2



Caesarea from the air. Herod's great harbor lies mostly underwater, in and beyond the small harbor seen here. Photo by Meronim, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

The remains of the harbor King Herod the Great built at Caesarea, the Roman capital of Judea, plus his seaside palace. Acts 24:27 says Paul was held here for two years, and from here he sailed for Rome.

HOW OLD IT IS

Herod built the harbor and city from about 22 to 10 BC and named it after Caesar Augustus. Earthquakes and soft sand on the sea floor slowly sank parts of the breakwaters over the next few centuries.

HOW HE BUILT IT

Josephus says the harbor was bigger than the great port of Athens. Divers found that Herod's builders poured concrete into wooden frames underwater, using volcanic ash shipped all the way from Italy. It was one of the first harbors ever built in the open sea.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

Underwater work began in 1960, and the big Caesarea harbor dig started in 1980 under Avner Raban and Robert Hohlfelder. Herod's palace on a point of land by the sea has also been dug up. The Pilate Stone was found in Caesarea's theater in 1961.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Acts 23:35 says Felix kept Paul under guard in Herod's palace. The palace by the sea was the governor's home in

ACTS 23:33 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Herod's harbor at Caesarea, Roman roads like the Via Egnatia and other finds confirm the travel details of Acts → FIELD NOTES p.1788

Paul's day, so this is very likely where Paul spent those two years.

SEE ALSO

The Pilate Stone Field Notes page in Luke, p.1652, and Herod Agrippa's death in this same city, Acts 12.

34 The governor read the letter and asked
what province Paul was from. Learning
that he was from Cilicia, 35 he said, "I will
hear your case when your accusers ar-
rive." Then he ordered that Paul be kept
under guard in Herod's Praetorium.

24

CHAPTER 24 IN 30 SECONDS

A lawyer named Tertullus flatters Governor Felix and accuses Paul. When Paul talks about self control and the judgment to come, Felix gets scared and sends him away. Felix keeps hoping for a bribe and leaves Paul in custody for two years.

TERTULLUS PROSECUTES PAUL

1 Five days later the high priest Ananias
came down with some elders and a
lawyer named Tertullus, who presented to
the governor their case against Paul.

2 When Paul had been called in, Tertullus
opened the prosecution: "Because of you,
we have enjoyed a lasting peace, and
your foresight has brought improvements
to this nation. 3 In every way and every-
where, most excellent Felix, we acknowl-
edge this with all gratitude. 4 But in order
not to delay you any further, I beg your in-
dulgence to hear us briefly.

5 We have found this man to be a pesti-
lence, stirring up dissension among the
Jews all over the world. He is a ringleader
of the sect of the Nazarenes, 6 and he
even tried to desecrate the temple; so we
seized him. [and we would have judged
him according to our law.] 7 [But Lysias the
commander came with great force and
took him out of our hands, ordering his
accusers to come before you.] 8 By exam-
ining him yourself, you will be able to
learn the truth about all our charges
against him."

9 The Jews concurred, asserting that
these charges were true.

PAUL'S DEFENSE TO FELIX

10 When the governor motioned for Paul to
speak, he began his response: "Knowing
that you have been a judge over this na-
tion for many years, I gladly make my de-
fense. 11 You can verify for yourself that no
more than twelve days ago I went up to
Jerusalem to worship. 12 Yet my accusers
did not find me debating with anyone in
the temple or riling up a crowd in the syn-
agogues or in the city. 13 Nor can they
prove to you any of their charges against
me.

14 I do confess to you, however, that I wor-
ship the God of our fathers according to
the Way, which they call a sect. I believe
everything that is laid down by the Law
and written in the Prophets, 15 and I have
the same hope in God that they them-
selves cherish, that there will be a resur-
rection of both the righteous and the
wicked. 16 In this hope, I strive always to
maintain a clear conscience before God
and man.

17 After several years, then, I returned to
Jerusalem to bring alms to my people and
to present offerings. 18 At the time they
found me in the temple, I was ceremoni-
ally clean and was not inciting a crowd or
an uproar. But there are some Jews from
the province of Asia 19 who ought to ap-
pear before you and bring charges, if they
have anything against me. 20 Otherwise,
let these men state for themselves any
crime they found in me when I stood be-
fore the Sanhedrin, 21 unless it was this
one thing I called out as I stood in their
presence: 'It is concerning the resurrec-
tion of the dead that I am on trial before
you today.'"

THE VERDICT POSTPONED

22 Then Felix, who was well informed
about the Way, adjourned the hearing and
said, "When Lysias the commander
comes, I will decide your case." 23 He or-
dered the centurion to keep Paul under

ACTS 24:6 [TEXT] The words in brackets in verses 6 to 8 are not in the oldest manuscripts. Later copies and the KJV have them.

guard, but to allow him some freedom and permit his friends to minister to his needs.

24 After several days, Felix returned with his wife Drusilla, who was a Jewess. He sent for Paul and listened to him speak about faith in Christ Jesus. 25 As Paul expounded on righteousness, self-control, and the coming judgment, Felix became frightened and said, "You may go for now. When I find the time, I will call for you." 26 At the same time, he was hoping that Paul would offer him a bribe. So he sent for Paul frequently and talked with him.

27 After two years had passed, Felix was succeeded by Porcius Festus. And wishing to do the Jews a favor, Felix left Paul in prison.

25

CHAPTER 25 IN 30 SECONDS

A new governor, Festus, takes over. The leaders want Paul brought to Jerusalem so they can ambush him. Paul says, I appeal to Caesar, and Festus answers, To Caesar you will go. Then King Agrippa and Bernice arrive with great pomp.

PAUL'S TRIAL BEFORE FESTUS

1 Three days after his arrival in the province, Festus went up from Caesarea to Jerusalem, 2 where the chief priests and Jewish leaders presented their case against Paul. They urged Festus 3 to grant them a concession against Paul by summoning him to Jerusalem, because they were preparing an ambush to kill him along the way.

4 But Festus replied, "Paul is being held in Caesarea, and I myself am going there soon. 5 So if this man has done anything wrong, let some of your leaders come down with me and accuse him there."

6 After spending no more than eight or ten days with them, Festus went down to Caesarea. The next day he sat on the judgment seat and ordered that Paul be brought in. 7 When Paul arrived, the Jews who had come down from Jerusalem stood around him, bringing many serious charges that they could not prove.

8 Then Paul made his defense: "I have committed no offense against the law of the Jews or against the temple or against Caesar."

9 But Festus, wishing to do the Jews a favor, said to Paul, "Are you willing to go up to Jerusalem to stand trial before me on these charges?"

PAUL APPEALS TO CAESAR

10 Paul replied, "I am standing before the judgment seat of Caesar, where I ought to be tried. I have done nothing wrong to the Jews, as you yourself know very well. 11 If, however, I am guilty of anything worthy of death, I do not refuse to die. But if there is no truth to their accusations against me, no one has the right to hand me over to them. I appeal to Caesar!"

12 Then Festus conferred with his council and replied, "You have appealed to Caesar. To Caesar you will go!"

FESTUS CONSULTS AGRIPPA

13 After several days had passed, King Agrippa and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to Festus. 14 Since they were staying several days, Festus laid out Paul's case before the king: "There is a certain man whom Felix left in prison. 15 While I was in Jerusalem, the chief priests and elders of the Jews presented their case and requested a judgment against him. 16 I told them that it is not the Roman custom to hand a man over before he has had an opportunity to face his accusers and defend himself against their charges.

17 So when they came here with me, I did not delay. The next day I sat on the judgment seat and ordered that the man be brought in. 18 But when his accusers rose to speak, they did not charge him with any of the crimes I had expected. 19 They only had some contentions with him regarding their own religion and a certain Jesus who had died, but whom Paul affirmed to be alive.

20 Since I was at a loss as to how to investigate these matters, I asked if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and be tried

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

there on these charges. 21 But when Paul appealed to be held over for the decision of the Emperor, I ordered that he be held until I could send him to Caesar."

22 Then Agrippa said to Festus, "I would like to hear this man myself."

"Tomorrow you will hear him," Festus declared.

PAUL BEFORE AGRIPPA AND BERNICE

23 The next day Agrippa and Bernice came with great pomp and entered the auditorium, along with the commanders and leading men of the city. And Festus ordered that Paul be brought in.

24 Then Festus said, "King Agrippa and all who are present with us, you see this man. The whole Jewish community has petitioned me about him, both here and in Jerusalem, crying out that he ought not to live any longer. 25 But I found he had done nothing worthy of death, and since he has now appealed to the Emperor, I decided to send him.

26 I have nothing definite to write to our sovereign about him. Therefore I have brought him before all of you, and especially before you, King Agrippa, so that after this inquiry I may have something to write. 27 For it seems unreasonable to me to send on a prisoner without specifying the charges against him."

26

CHAPTER 26 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul tells King Agrippa how he went from hunting Christians to meeting Jesus in a blinding light. Festus calls him crazy. Agrippa asks if Paul thinks he can make him a Christian so fast. Paul wishes they all were, except for the chains.

PAUL'S TESTIMONY TO AGRIPPA // ACTS 9:1–19; ACTS 22:1–21

1 Agrippa said to Paul, "You have permission to speak for yourself."

Then Paul stretched out his hand and began his defense: 2 "King Agrippa, I consider myself fortunate to stand before you today to defend myself against all the accusations of the Jews, 3 especially since you are acquainted with all the Jewish customs and controversies. I beg you, therefore, to listen to me patiently.

4 Surely all the Jews know how I have lived from my earliest childhood among my own people, and also in Jerusalem. 5 They have known me for a long time and can testify, if they are willing, that I lived as a Pharisee, adhering to the strictest sect of our religion.

6 And now I stand on trial because of my hope in the promise that God made to our fathers, 7 the promise our twelve tribes are hoping to see fulfilled as they earnestly serve God day and night. It is because of this hope, O king, that I am accused by the Jews. 8 Why would any of you consider it incredible that God raises the dead?

9 So then, I too was convinced that I ought to do all I could to oppose the name of Jesus of Nazareth. 10 And that is what I did in Jerusalem. With authority from the chief priests I put many of the saints in prison, and when they were condemned to death, I cast my vote against them. 11 I frequently had them punished in the synagogues, and I tried to make them blaspheme. In my raging fury against them, I even went to foreign cities to persecute them.

12 In this pursuit I was on my way to Damascus with the authority and commission of the chief priests. 13 About noon, O king, as I was on the road, I saw a light from heaven, brighter than the sun, shining around me and my companions. 14 We all fell to the ground, and I heard a voice say to me in Hebrew, 'Saul, Saul, why do you persecute Me? It is hard for you to kick against the goads.'

15 'Who are You, Lord?' I asked.

'I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting,' the Lord replied. 16 'But get up and stand on your feet. For I have appeared to you to appoint you as a servant and as a witness of what you have seen from Me and what I will show you. 17 I will rescue you

ACTS 26:13 [MIRACLE] Paul tells Agrippa about the light brighter than the sun

ACTS 26:14 [NOTABLE] Jesus uses a saying Greek readers knew from plays like Euripides' Bacchae. An ox that kicks against the farmer's pointed stick only hurts itself.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

from your own people and from the Gentiles. I am sending you to them 18 to open their eyes, so that they may turn from darkness to light and from the power of Satan to God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins and an inheritance among those sanctified by faith in Me.'

19 So then, King Agrippa, I was not disobedient to the heavenly vision. 20 First to those in Damascus and Jerusalem, then to everyone in the region of Judea, and then to the Gentiles, I declared that they should repent and turn to God, performing deeds worthy of their repentance. 21 For this reason the Jews seized me in the temple courts and tried to kill me.

22 But I have had God's help to this day, and I stand here to testify to small and great alike. I am saying nothing beyond what the prophets and Moses said would happen: 23 that the Christ would suffer, and as the first to rise from the dead, would proclaim light to our people and to the Gentiles."

FESTUS INTERRUPTS PAUL'S DEFENSE

24 At this stage of Paul's defense, Festus exclaimed in a loud voice, "You are insane, Paul! Your great learning is driving you to madness!"

25 But Paul answered, "I am not insane, most excellent Festus; I am speaking words of truth and sobriety. 26 For the king knows about these matters, and I can speak freely to him. I am confident that none of this has escaped his notice, because it was not done in a corner. 27 King Agrippa, do you believe the prophets? I know you do."

28 Then Agrippa said to Paul, "Can you persuade me in such a short time to become a Christian?"

29 "Short time or long," Paul replied, "I wish to God that not only you but all who hear me this day may become what I am, except for these chains."

30 Then the king and the governor rose, along with Bernice and those seated with them. 31 On their way out, they said to one another, "This man has done nothing worthy of death or imprisonment."

32 And Agrippa said to Festus, "This man could have been released if he had not appealed to Caesar."

27

CHAPTER 27 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul sails for Rome as a prisoner. He warns them not to sail, and nobody listens. A hurricane force wind hits. An angel tells Paul everyone will live. The ship breaks apart, but all 276 people make it to shore.

PAUL SAILS FOR ROME

1 When it was decided that we would sail for Italy, Paul and some other prisoners were handed over to a centurion named Julius, who belonged to the Imperial Regiment. 2 We boarded an Adramyttian ship about to sail for ports along the coast of Asia, and we put out to sea. Aristarchus, a Macedonian from Thessalonica, was with us.

3 The next day we landed at Sidon, and Julius treated Paul with consideration, allowing him to visit his friends and receive their care. 4 After putting out from there, we sailed to the lee of Cyprus because the winds were against us. 5 And when we had sailed across the open sea off the coast of Cilicia and Pamphylia, we came to Myra in Lycia. 6 There the centurion found an Alexandrian ship sailing for Italy and put us on board.

7 After sailing slowly for many days, we arrived off Cnidus. When the wind impeded us, we sailed to the lee of Crete, opposite Salmone. 8 After we had moved along the coast with difficulty, we came to a place called Fair Havens, near the town of Lasea.

9 By now much time had passed, and the voyage had already become dangerous because it was after the Fast. So Paul advised them, 10 "Men, I can see that our voyage will be filled with disaster and

ACTS 26:18 [DEMONIC] Turn them from the power of Satan to God

ACTS 26:23 [FULFILLS] He would bring light to the Gentiles ← IS 60:1-3 p.1135

MAP · ACTS 27 TO 28

Paul's Voyage to Rome

A prisoner, a storm, a shipwreck and a snake, about AD 59 to 60



I APPEAL TO CAESAR After two years in prison at Caesarea, Paul used his right as a Roman citizen to be judged by Caesar, Acts 25:11.

SHIPWRECK ON MALTA All 276 people made it to shore, Acts 27:37 and 44. A snake bit Paul and he was not hurt, Acts 28:3 to 6.

THE STORM Against Paul's warning the ship left Fair Havens late in the year. A northeast storm drove it for 14 days, Acts 27:9 to 27.

ROME AT LAST Paul lived two years in Rome under guard in a rented house and preached boldly, Acts 28:30 to 31.

The stops are named in Acts. The track of the storm across open sea is approximate.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

great loss, not only to ship and cargo, but to our own lives as well."

11 But contrary to Paul's advice, the centurion was persuaded by the pilot and by the owner of the ship. 12 Since the harbor was unsuitable to winter in, the majority decided to sail on, hoping that somehow they could reach Phoenix to winter there. Phoenix was a harbor in Crete facing both southwest and northwest.

THE STORM AT SEA // JONAH 1:4–10

13 When a gentle south wind began to blow, they thought they had their opportunity. So they weighed anchor and sailed along, hugging the coast of Crete. 14 But it was not long before a cyclone called the Northeaster swept down across the island. 15 Unable to head into the wind, the ship was caught up. So we gave way and let ourselves be driven along.

16 Passing to the lee of a small island called Cauda, we barely managed to secure the lifeboat. 17 After hoisting it up, the crew used ropes to undergird the ship. And fearing that they would run aground on the sandbars of Syrtis, they lowered the sea anchor and were driven along.

18 We were tossed so violently that the next day the men began to jettison the cargo. 19 On the third day, they threw the ship's tackle overboard with their own hands. 20 When neither sun nor stars appeared for many days and the great storm continued to batter us, we abandoned all hope of being saved.

21 After the men had gone a long time without food, Paul stood up among them and said, "Men, you should have followed my advice not to sail from Crete. Then you would have averted this disaster and loss. 22 But now I urge you to keep up your courage, because you will not experience any loss of life, but only of the ship. 23 For just last night an angel of the God to whom I belong and whom I serve stood beside me 24 and said, 'Do not be afraid, Paul; you must stand before Caesar. And look, God has granted you the lives of all who sail with you.'

25 So take courage, men, for I believe God that it will happen just as He told me. 26 However, we must run aground on some island."

THE SHIPWRECK

27 On the fourteenth night we were still being driven across the Adriatic Sea. About midnight the sailors sensed they were approaching land. 28 They took soundings and found that the water was 120 feet deep. Going a little farther, they took another set of soundings that read 90 feet. 29 Fearing that we would run aground on the rocks, they dropped four anchors from the stern and prayed for daybreak.

30 Meanwhile, the sailors attempted to escape from the ship. Pretending to lower anchors from the bow, they let the lifeboat down into the sea. 31 But Paul said to the centurion and the soldiers, "Unless these men remain with the ship, you cannot be saved." 32 So the soldiers cut the ropes to the lifeboat and set it adrift.

33 Right up to daybreak, Paul kept urging them all to eat: "Today is your fourteenth day in constant suspense, without taking any food. 34 So for your own preservation, I urge you to eat something, because not a single hair of your head will be lost."

35 After he had said this, Paul took bread and gave thanks to God in front of them all. Then he broke it and began to eat. 36 They were all encouraged and took some food themselves. 37 In all, there were 276 of us on board. 38 After the men had eaten their fill, they lightened the ship by throwing the grain into the sea.

39 When daylight came, they did not recognize the land, but they sighted a bay with a sandy beach, where they decided to run the ship aground if they could. 40 Cutting away the anchors, they left them in the sea as they loosened the ropes that held the rudders. Then they hoisted the foresail to the wind and made for the beach. 41 But the ship struck a sandbar

ACTS 27:22 [PROPHECY] There will be no loss of life among you, but only of the ship… you must be brought before Caesar; and indeed God has granted you all those who sail with you → Fulfilled exactly

ACTS 27:23 [MIRACLE] Angel stands by Paul on the storm-tossed ship

MIRACLES DEMONIC

and ran aground. The bow stuck fast and would not move, and the stern was being broken up by the pounding of the waves.

42 The soldiers planned to kill the prisoners so none of them could swim to freedom. 43 But the centurion, wanting to spare Paul's life, thwarted their plan. He commanded those who could swim to jump overboard first and get to land. 44 The rest were to follow on planks and various parts of the ship. In this way everyone was brought safely to land.

28

CHAPTER 28 IN 30 SECONDS

On Malta a snake bites Paul. When he does not drop dead, the locals decide he is a god. At last Paul reaches Rome, lives under guard in a rented house for two years, and preaches boldly with no one stopping him.

ASHORE ON MALTA

1 Once we were safely ashore, we learned that the island was called Malta. 2 The islanders showed us extraordinary kindness. They kindled a fire and welcomed all of us because it was raining and cold.

3 Paul gathered a bundle of sticks, and as he laid them on the fire, a viper, driven out by the heat, fastened itself to his hand. 4 When the islanders saw the creature hanging from his hand, they said to one another, "Surely this man is a murderer. Although he was saved from the sea, Justice has not allowed him to live." 5 But Paul shook the creature off into the fire and suffered no ill effects. 6 The islanders were expecting him to swell up or suddenly drop dead. But after waiting a long time and seeing nothing unusual happen to him, they changed their minds and said he was a god.

7 Nearby stood an estate belonging to Publius, the chief official of the island. He welcomed us and entertained us hospitably for three days. 8 The father of Publius was sick in bed, suffering from fever and dysentery. Paul went in to see him, and after praying and placing his hands on him, he healed the man. 9 After this had happened, the rest of the sick on the island came and were cured as well.

10 The islanders honored us in many ways and supplied our needs when we were ready to sail.

PAUL ARRIVES IN ITALY

11 After three months we set sail in an Alexandrian ship that had wintered in the island. It had the Twin Brothers as a figurehead. 12 Putting in at Syracuse, we stayed there three days. 13 From there we weighed anchor and came to Rhegium. After one day, a south wind came up, and on the second day we arrived at Puteoli. 14 There we found some brothers who invited us to spend the week with them. And so we came to Rome.

15 The brothers there had heard about us and traveled as far as the Forum of Appius and the Three Taverns to meet us. When Paul saw them, he was encouraged and gave thanks to God.

PAUL PREACHES AT ROME // ISAIAH 6:1–13

16 When we arrived in Rome, Paul was permitted to stay by himself, with a soldier to guard him.

17 After three days, he called together the leaders of the Jews. When they had gathered, he said to them, "Brothers, although I have done nothing against our people or the customs of our fathers, I was taken prisoner in Jerusalem and handed over to the Romans. 18 They examined me and wanted to release me, because there was no basis for a death sentence against me. 19 But when the Jews objected, I was compelled to appeal to Caesar, even though I have no charge to bring against my nation. 20 So for this reason I have called to see you and speak with you. It is because of the hope of Israel that I am bound with this chain."

21 The leaders replied, "We have not received any letters about you from Judea, nor have any of the brothers from there

ACTS 28:3 [MIRACLE] Paul shakes off the viper at Malta — no harm
ACTS 28:6 [DEMONIC] Islanders on Malta decide Paul must be a god
ACTS 28:8 [MIRACLE] Publius' father healed; all sick on the island healed
ACTS 28:11 [DEMONIC] Paul sails on a ship with the Twin Brothers as its figurehead

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

reported or even mentioned anything bad
about you. 22 But we consider your views
worth hearing, because we know that
people everywhere are speaking against
this sect."

23 So they set a day to meet with Paul, and
many people came to the place he was
staying. He expounded to them from
morning to evening, testifying about the
kingdom of God and persuading them
about Jesus from the Law of Moses and
the Prophets.

24 Some of them were convinced by what
he said, but others refused to believe. 25
They disagreed among themselves and
began to leave after Paul had made this fi-
nal statement: "The Holy Spirit was right
when He spoke to your fathers through
Isaiah the prophet:

26 *'Go to this people and say,*
"You will be ever hearing but never under-
standing;
you will be ever seeing but never perceiving."
27 *For this people's heart has grown callous;*
they hardly hear with their ears,
and they have closed their eyes.
Otherwise they might see with their eyes,
hear with their ears,
understand with their hearts,
and turn, and I would heal them.'

28 Be advised, therefore, that God's salva-
tion has been sent to the Gentiles, and
they will listen!" 29 [When he had said this,
the Jews went away, disputing sharply
among themselves.]

30 Paul stayed there two full years in his
own rented house, welcoming all who
came to visit him. 31 Boldly and freely he
proclaimed the kingdom of God and
taught about the Lord Jesus Christ.

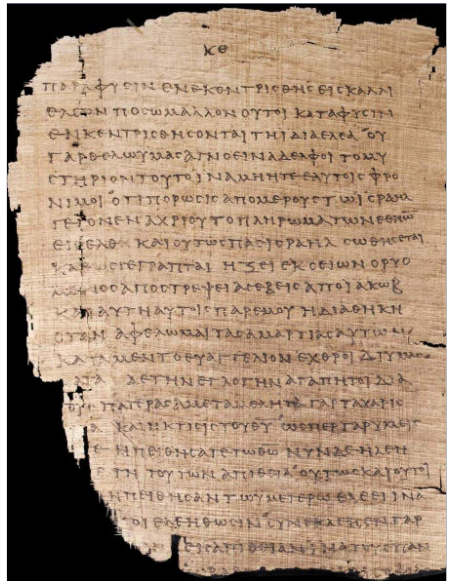
- **ACTS 28:25 [FULFILLS]** His parables would fall on deaf ears ← IS 6:9-10 p.1069
- **ACTS 28:26 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 6:9-10 p.1069
- **ACTS 28:29 [TEXT]** Not in the oldest manuscripts. Later copies and the KJV have it.
- **ACTS 28:30 [FULFILLS]** The witnesses would carry the gospel to Jerusalem, Judea, Samaria, and the ends of the earth ← ACTS 1:8 p.1740

BOOK 45 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

ROMANS

The Gospel, Explained

AUTHOR	Paul, once a Pharisee who hunted Christians, now an apostle. He spoke the letter out loud, and a helper named Tertius wrote it down, 16:22.
WRITTEN FROM	Corinth, Greece, near the end of Paul's third missionary trip, right before he took an offering for the poor to Jerusalem, 15:25 to 26.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 56 to 57.
WRITTEN TO	The church in Rome, Jews and Gentiles together. Paul had never been there. Emperor Claudius had thrown the Jews out of Rome about AD 49, and by now they were back.
CARRIED BY	Most likely Phoebe, a deacon from Cenchrea, the harbor town next to Corinth, 16:1 to 2.
KEY VERSE	Romans 1:16 to 17. I am not ashamed of the gospel, because it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes. The righteous will live by faith.



THE OLDEST COPY OF ROMANS
This is a page of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200. Part of it is in the Chester Beatty Library in Dublin, Ireland, and part is at the University of Michigan. This page holds Romans 11:24 to 33. The first words, against nature, are from the olive tree picture in 11:24, and lower down you can read the Deliverer will come from Zion, 11:26. Papyrus 46 puts the closing praise of 16:25 to 27 at the end of chapter 15.

Historical Setting

Rome is the capital of the world, a city of about a million people. The church there was not started by Paul, and no one knows for sure who started it. Visitors from Rome were in Jerusalem at Pentecost, Acts 2:10, and may have carried the news home. Jewish and Gentile believers were now trying to be one church, and they did not always agree. Paul wanted to visit on his way to Spain, so he sent ahead the clearest explanation of the gospel he ever wrote.

What Was Going Wrong

EVERYBODY SINNED. Gentiles traded God for idols, 1:23. Jews had the law but did not keep it, 2:23. All have sinned, 3:23.
JUDGING EACH OTHER. Believers looked down on each other over food and holy days, 14:3 to 4, 14:10.
BRAGGING. Some Gentile believers acted superior to the Jews. Paul says do not boast over the branches, 11:18.
FAKE TEACHERS. Some people caused divisions to serve their own appetites, 16:17 to 18.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Romans is the gospel laid out step by step. Paul starts with the bad news: everyone has sinned, and no one can earn their way to God. Then the good news: God makes people right with Him as a free gift through faith in Jesus. That new life comes with the Holy Spirit, a place in God's family and a love nothing can break. Paul shows God still has a plan for Israel, then spends five chapters on how to live it out.

Romans at a Glance

CH 1 to 3:20	**EVERYONE HAS SINNED** Gentiles, Jews, all of us. No one is righteous, not even one.
CH 3:21 to 5	**MADE RIGHT BY FAITH** A free gift through Jesus, just like Abraham.
CH 6 to 8	**NEW LIFE IN THE SPIRIT** Dead to sin, alive to God, and nothing can separate us from His love.
CH 9 to 11	**GOD'S PLAN FOR ISRAEL** God has not given up on His people.
CH 12 to 16	**LIVING IT OUT** Love, government, freedom, unity and a long list of friends.

Where Jesus Shows Up

ROMANS 1:3 TO 4 Descended from David according to the flesh, declared to be the Son of God with power by His resurrection. Fulfills 2 Samuel 7:12 to 16.

ROMANS 5:8 While we were still sinners, Christ died for us. Points back to Isaiah 53:5 to 6.

ROMANS 10:9 Jesus is Lord, and God raised Him from the dead. The heart of the whole letter in one sentence.

ROMANS 15:12 The Root of Jesse will appear, one who will rise to rule over the Gentiles. Fulfills Isaiah 11:10.

What to Watch for in Romans

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (19)	1:4, 2:29, 5:8-10, 5:18-19, 6:9, 8:34, 9:7 and 9 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (3)	3:23-25, 10:6-8
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (5)	4:16-17, 9:9, 9:27-28, 10:20-21, 11:5
END TIMES PROPHECIES (3)	8:19-23, 11:25, 16:20
THE HEART (7)	1:21, 2:5, 2:15, 5:5, 6:17, 8:27, 16:18
ARCHAEOLOGY (1)	16:23
MIRACLES (2)	8:26, 15:19
DEMONIC (3)	1:22-25, 2:22, 11:4
NOTABLE (3)	6:23, 16:1-2, 16:7
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

LUTHER'S BREAKTHROUGH
Martin Luther, a monk who was terrified of God, studied Romans 1:17 and finally saw it: the righteous live by faith, not by being good enough. He said he felt born again and that the gates of paradise opened. His 1522 German New Testament put the word alone into 3:28, justified by faith alone, and his preface called Romans the purest gospel.

AUGUSTINE'S GARDEN
In a garden in Milan in AD 386, Augustine heard a child singing, Take up and read. He opened Paul's letters to 13:13 to 14, put on the Lord Jesus Christ, and gave his life to God.

WESLEY'S WARM HEART
On May 24, 1738, on Aldersgate Street in London, John Wesley heard someone reading Luther's preface to Romans and felt his heart strangely warmed. The Methodist movement grew from that night.

THE ROMANS ROAD
Five verses that explain the gospel: 3:23, 6:23, 5:8, 10:9 to 10 and 10:13. Look for the yellow notes that lead from one stop to the next.

Did Anybody Listen?

Paul did reach Rome, but in chains, Acts 28. Tradition says he was killed there under Nero. His letter outlived the empire. Romans changed Augustine, Luther and Wesley, and through them the whole church. The Reformation, almost every Protestant church, and millions of people who walked the Romans Road can trace their faith back to this one letter.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul introduces himself to a church he has never met and says he is not ashamed of the gospel. Then he explains how people went wrong. They could see God in creation, but they traded Him for idols, and everything slid downhill from there. The list of sins at the end is long enough that nobody gets to feel left out.

PAUL GREETS THE SAINTS IN ROME

1 Paul, a servant of Christ Jesus, called to
be an apostle, and set apart for the gospel
of God— 2 the gospel He promised be-
forehand through His prophets in the Holy
Scriptures, 3 regarding His Son, who was a
descendant of David according to the
flesh, 4 and who through the Spirit of holi-
ness was declared with power to be the
Son of God by His resurrection from the
dead: Jesus Christ our Lord.

5 Through Him and on behalf of His name,
we received grace and apostleship to call
all those among the Gentiles to the obedi-
ence that comes from faith. 6 And you also
are among those who are called to belong
to Jesus Christ.

7 To all in Rome who are loved by God and
called to be saints:

Grace and peace to you from God our Fa-
ther and the Lord Jesus Christ.

UNASHAMED OF THE GOSPEL

8 First, I thank my God through Jesus
Christ for all of you, because your faith is
being proclaimed all over the world. 9 God,
whom I serve with my spirit in preaching
the gospel of His Son, is my witness how
constantly I remember you 10 in my
prayers at all times, asking that now at last
by God's will I may succeed in coming to
you. 11 For I long to see you so that I may
impart to you some spiritual gift to
strengthen you, 12 that is, that you and I
may be mutually encouraged by each
other's faith.

13 I do not want you to be unaware, broth-
ers, how often I planned to come to you
(but have been prevented from visiting
until now), in order that I might have a
harvest among you, just as I have had
among the other Gentiles. 14 I am obligated
both to Greeks and non-Greeks, both to
the wise and the foolish. 15 That is why I
am so eager to preach the gospel also to
you who are in Rome.

16 I am not ashamed of the gospel, be-
cause it is the power of God for salvation
to everyone who believes, first to the Jew,
then to the Greek. 17 For the gospel reveals
the righteousness of God that comes by
faith from start to finish, just as it is writ-
ten: *"The righteous will live by faith."*

GOD'S WRATH AGAINST SIN

18 The wrath of God is being revealed from
heaven against all the godlessness and
wickedness of men who suppress the
truth by their wickedness. 19 For what may
be known about God is plain to them, be-
cause God has made it plain to them. 20
For since the creation of the world God's
invisible qualities, His eternal power and
divine nature, have been clearly seen, be-
ing understood from His workmanship, so
that men are without excuse.

21 For although they knew God, they nei-
ther glorified Him as God nor gave thanks
to Him, but they became futile in their
thinking and darkened in their foolish
hearts. 22 Although they claimed to be
wise, they became fools, 23 and ex-
changed the glory of the immortal God for
images of mortal man and birds and ani-
mals and reptiles.

24 Therefore God gave them over in the
desires of their hearts to impurity for the
dishonoring of their bodies with one an-
other. 25 They exchanged the truth of God
for a lie, and worshiped and served the
creature rather than the Creator, who is
forever worthy of praise! Amen.

- **ROM 1:3 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2SA 7:12 p.503
- **ROM 1:4 [FULFILLS]** Declared to be the Beloved Son of God ← PS 2:7 p.884
- **ROM 1:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← HAB 2:4 p.1459
- **ROM 1:18 [NOTE]** Romans 1:18 to 32 follows the same steps as Wisdom of Solomon 13 to 14, written before Jesus: people could know God from creation, turned to idols instead, and fell into every kind of sin. Paul seems to have known that book. Knowing a book is not the same as calling it Scripture.
- **ROM 1:21 [HEART]** They knew God but did not honor Him, so their foolish hearts were darkened.
- **ROM 1:22 [DEMONIC]** People trade God's glory for images of men and animals

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

26 For this reason God gave them over to
dishonorable passions. Even their women
exchanged natural relations for unnatural
ones. 27 Likewise, the men abandoned
natural relations with women and burned
with lust for one another. Men committed
indecent acts with other men and re-
ceived in themselves the due penalty for
their error.

28 Furthermore, since they did not see fit
to acknowledge God, He gave them up to
a depraved mind, to do what ought not to
be done. 29 They have become filled with
every kind of wickedness, evil, greed, and
depravity. They are full of envy, murder,
strife, deceit, and malice. They are gos-
sips, 30 slanderers, God-haters, insolent,
arrogant, and boastful. They invent new
forms of evil; they disobey their parents.
31 They are senseless, faithless, heartless,
merciless.

32 Although they know God's righteous de-
cree that those who do such things are
worthy of death, they not only continue to
do these things, but also approve of those
who practice them.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Anyone reading chapter 1 and nodding along gets a surprise. You who judge others do the same things. Knowing God's law does not save you if you do not keep it. Paul says a real Jew is one whose heart has been changed by the Spirit, not just someone with the right family tree.

GOD'S RIGHTEOUS JUDGMENT // PSALM 75:1–10

1 You, therefore, have no excuse, you who
pass judgment on another. For on what-
ever grounds you judge the other, you are
condemning yourself, because you who
pass judgment do the same things. 2 And
we know that God's judgment against
those who do such things is based on
truth. 3 So when you, O man, pass judg-
ment on others, yet do the same things,
do you think you will escape God's judg-
ment? 4 Or do you disregard the riches of
His kindness, tolerance, and patience, not
realizing that God's kindness leads you to
repentance?

5 But because of your hard and unrepen-
tant heart, you are storing up wrath
against yourself for the day of wrath,
when God's righteous judgment will be re-
vealed. 6 God *"will repay each one according
to his deeds."* 7 To those who by persever-
ance in doing good seek glory, honor, and
immortality, He will give eternal life. 8 But
for those who are self-seeking and who
reject the truth and follow wickedness,
there will be wrath and anger.

9 There will be trouble and distress for
every human being who does evil, first for
the Jew, then for the Greek; 10 but glory,
honor, and peace for everyone who does
good, first for the Jew, then for the Greek.
11 For God does not show favoritism.

12 All who sin apart from the law will also
perish apart from the law, and all who sin
under the law will be judged by the law. 13
For it is not the hearers of the law who are
righteous before God, but it is the doers
of the law who will be declared righteous.

14 Indeed, when Gentiles, who do not have
the law, do by nature what the law re-
quires, they are a law to themselves, even
though they do not have the law. 15 So they
show that the work of the law is written on
their hearts, their consciences also bear-
ing witness, and their thoughts either ac-
cusing or defending them 16 on the day
when God will judge men's secrets
through Christ Jesus, as proclaimed by
my gospel.

- **ROM 1:26 [NOTE]** Paul is describing same sex acts here, and the church has always read it that way. But keep reading. The list goes on in 1:29 to 31: greed, envy, gossip, slander, boasting and disobeying parents. Then 2:1 turns it around: you who judge do the same things. Many churches treat one sin on this list as the one that sends you to hell and shrug at the rest. That is a double standard. Paul's point comes in 3:23: all have sinned.
- **ROM 1:27 [TEXT]** The word homosexual is not in the Greek. It was coined in German in 1868 and first showed up in an English Bible in 1946, in 1 Corinthians 6:9, where the Greek words are rare and debated. Romans 1 uses plain words, men with other men. The debate here is over against nature in 1:26. Most read it as against God's design. Some say it means against custom, since Paul uses the same words for God grafting in the Gentiles in 11:24.
- **ROM 2:5 [HEART]** A hard and unrepentant heart stores up wrath for the day of judgment.
- **ROM 2:6 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← PS 62:12; PROV 24:12 p.924
- **ROM 2:15 [HEART]** Even people without the law have it written on their hearts. Their conscience tells them.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

THE JEWS AND THE LAW

17 Now you, if you call yourself a Jew; if
you rely on the law and boast in God; 18 if
you know His will and approve of what is
superior because you are instructed by
the law; 19 if you are convinced that you
are a guide for the blind, a light for those
in darkness, 20 an instructor of the foolish,
a teacher of infants, because you have in
the law the embodiment of knowledge
and truth— 21 you, then, who teach others,
do you not teach yourself? You who
preach against stealing, do you steal? 22
You who forbid adultery, do you commit
adultery? You who abhor idols, do you rob
temples? 23 You who boast in the law, do
you dishonor God by breaking the law? 24
As it is written: *"God's name is blasphemed
among the Gentiles because of you."*

25 Circumcision has value if you observe
the law, but if you break the law, your cir-
cumcision has become uncircumcision. 26
If a man who is not circumcised keeps the
requirements of the law, will not his uncir-
cumcision be regarded as circumcision?
27 The one who is physically uncircum-
cised yet keeps the law will condemn you
who, even though you have the written
code and circumcision, are a lawbreaker.

28 A man is not a Jew because he is one
outwardly, nor is circumcision only out-
ward and physical. 29 No, a man is a Jew
because he is one inwardly, and circumci-
sion is a matter of the heart, by the Spirit,
not by the written code. Such a man's
praise does not come from men, but from
God.

ROM 2:22 [DEMONIC] You who hate idols, do you rob temples
ROM 2:24 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 52:5 p.1126
ROM 2:29 [HEART] Real circumcision is of the heart, by the Spirit.
ROM 2:29 [FULFILLS] God would circumcise the hearts of His people so they would love Him ← DT 30:6 · MEDIUM p.324

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

So is anybody good? Paul strings Old Testament verses together to answer: no one is righteous, not even one. All have sinned and fall short. Then comes the good news. God makes people right with Him as a free gift through faith in Jesus, who paid for sin with His blood.

GOD REMAINS FAITHFUL

1 What, then, is the advantage of being a
Jew? Or what is the value of circumci-
sion? 2 Much in every way. First of all, they
have been entrusted with the very words
of God.

3 What if some did not have faith? Will
their lack of faith nullify God's faithful-
ness? 4 Certainly not! Let God be true and
every man a liar. As it is written:

*"So that You may be proved right when You
speak
and victorious when You judge."*

5 But if our unrighteousness highlights the
righteousness of God, what shall we say?
That God is unjust to inflict His wrath on
us? I am speaking in human terms. 6 Cer-
tainly not! In that case, how could God
judge the world? 7 However, if my false-
hood accentuates God's truthfulness, to
the increase of His glory, why am I still
condemned as a sinner? 8 Why not say, as
some slanderously claim that we say, "Let
us do evil that good may result"? Their
condemnation is deserved!

THERE IS NO ONE RIGHTEOUS // PSALM 14:1–7; PSALM 53:1–6; ISAIAH 59:1–17

9 What then? Are we any better? Not at all.
For we have already made the charge that
Jews and Greeks alike are all under sin. 10
As it is written:

*"There is no one righteous,
not even one.*
11 *There is no one who understands,
no one who seeks God.*
12 *All have turned away,
they have together become worthless;
there is no one who does good,
not even one."*

ROM 3:4 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 51:4 p.918
ROM 3:10 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 14:1-3; 53:1-3 p.891

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

13 *"Their throats are open graves;*
their tongues practice deceit."
"The venom of vipers is on their lips."
14 *"Their mouths are full*
of cursing and bitterness."
15 *"Their feet are swift to shed blood;*
16 *ruin and misery lie in their wake,*
17 *and the way of peace they have not known."*
18 *"There is no fear of God*
before their eyes."

19 Now we know that whatever the law says, it says to those who are under the law, so that every mouth may be silenced and the whole world held accountable to God. 20 Therefore no one will be justified in His sight by works of the law. For the law merely brings awareness of sin.

RIGHTEOUSNESS THROUGH FAITH IN CHRIST // PHILIPPIANS 3:1–11

21 But now, apart from the law, the righteousness of God has been revealed, as attested by the Law and the Prophets. 22 And this righteousness from God comes through faith in Jesus Christ to all who believe. There is no distinction, 23 for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God, 24 and are justified freely by His grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.

25 God presented Him as an atoning sacrifice in His blood through faith, in order to demonstrate His righteousness, because in His forbearance He had passed over the sins committed beforehand. 26 He did this to demonstrate His righteousness at the present time, so as to be just and to justify the one who has faith in Jesus.

27 Where, then, is boasting? It is excluded. On what principle? On that of works? No, but on that of faith. 28 For we maintain that a man is justified by faith apart from works of the law.

29 Is God the God of Jews only? Is He not the God of Gentiles too? Yes, of Gentiles too, 30 since there is only one God, who will justify the circumcised by faith and the uncircumcised through that same faith.

31 Do we, then, nullify the law by this faith? Certainly not! Instead, we uphold the law.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS
Paul goes back to Abraham to prove this is not a new idea. Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness, years before he was circumcised and centuries before the law. So Abraham is the father of everyone who believes, Jew or Gentile. He trusted God even when he was about a hundred years old.

ABRAHAM JUSTIFIED BY FAITH // GENESIS 15:1–7; PSALM 32:1–11; HEBREWS 11:8–19

1 What then shall we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, has discovered? 2 If Abraham was indeed justified by works, he had something to boast about, but not before God. 3 For what does the Scripture say? *"Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness."*

4 Now the wages of the worker are not credited as a gift, but as an obligation. 5 However, to the one who does not work, but believes in Him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is credited as righteousness. 6 And David speaks likewise of the blessedness of the man to whom God credits righteousness apart from works:

7 *"Blessed are they whose lawless acts are forgiven,*
whose sins are covered.
8 *Blessed is the man*
whose sin the Lord will never count against him."

9 *Is this blessing only on the circumcised, or also on the uncircumcised? We have been saying that Abraham's faith was credited to him as righteousness.* 10 In what context was it

- **ROM 3:13 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 5:9 p.886
- **ROM 3:13 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 140:3 p.977
- **ROM 3:14 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 10:7 p.889
- **ROM 3:15 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 59:7-8 p.1134
- **ROM 3:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 36:1 p.907
- **ROM 3:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 143:2 p.978
- **ROM 3:23 [NOTABLE]** THE ROMANS ROAD, STOP 1 OF 5. A simple way to explain the gospel using only verses from Romans. It starts here: everyone has sinned. Nobody passes God's test on their own. Next stop, 6:23.
- **ROM 3:23 [FULFILLS]** It is the blood that makes atonement ← LEV 17:11 p.202
- **ROM 3:25 [FULFILLS]** God would meet His people above the mercy seat ← EX 25:22 · MEDIUM p.154

- **ROM 4:3 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 15:6 p.67
- **ROM 4:7 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 32:1-2 p.903
- **ROM 4:9 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← GEN 15:6 p.67

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

credited? Was it after his circumcision, or before? It was not after, but before.

11 And he received the sign of circumcision as a seal of the righteousness that he had by faith while he was still uncircumcised. So then, he is the father of all who believe but are not circumcised, in order that righteousness might be credited to them. 12 And he is also the father of the circumcised who not only are circumcised, but who also walk in the footsteps of the faith that our father Abraham had before he was circumcised.

ABRAHAM RECEIVES THE PROMISE // GENESIS 15:8–21

13 For the promise to Abraham and his offspring that he would be heir of the world was not given through the law, but through the righteousness that comes by faith. 14 For if those who live by the law are heirs, faith is useless and the promise is worthless, 15 because the law brings wrath. And where there is no law, there is no transgression.

16 Therefore, the promise comes by faith, so that it may rest on grace and may be guaranteed to all Abraham's offspring—not only to those who are of the law, but also to those who are of the faith of Abraham. He is the father of us all. 17 As it is written: *"I have made you a father of many nations."* He is our father in the presence of God, in whom he believed, the God who gives life to the dead and calls into being what does not yet exist.

18 Against all hope, Abraham in hope believed and so became the father of many nations, just as he had been told, *"So shall your offspring be."* 19 Without weakening in his faith, he acknowledged the decrepitness of his body (since he was about a hundred years old) and the lifelessness of Sarah's womb. 20 Yet he did not waver through disbelief in the promise of God, but was strengthened in his faith and gave glory to God, 21 being fully persuaded that God was able to do what He had promised. 22 This is why *"it was credited to him as righteousness."*

23 Now the words "it was credited to him" were written not only for Abraham, 24 but also for us, to whom righteousness will be credited—for us who believe in Him who raised Jesus our Lord from the dead. 25 He was delivered over to death for our trespasses and was raised to life for our justification.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Since we are made right by faith, we have peace with God. Even our troubles build endurance, character and hope. God showed His love by sending Christ to die for us while we were still sinners. Adam brought sin and death to everybody. Jesus brings grace and life to everybody who receives it.

THE TRIUMPH OF FAITH

1 Therefore, since we have been justified through faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, 2 through whom we have gained access by faith into this grace in which we stand. And we rejoice in the hope of the glory of God.

3 Not only that, but we also rejoice in our sufferings, because we know that suffering produces perseverance; 4 perseverance, character; and character, hope. 5 And hope does not disappoint us, because God has poured out His love into our hearts through the Holy Spirit, whom He has given us.

CHRIST'S SACRIFICE FOR THE UNGODLY // JOHN 3:1–21

6 For at just the right time, while we were still powerless, Christ died for the ungodly. 7 Very rarely will anyone die for a righteous man, though for a good man someone might possibly dare to die. 8 But God proves His love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us.

- **ROM 4:16 [FULFILLS]** Abraham would be the father of many nations and kings would come from him ← GEN 17:4-6 p.70
- **ROM 4:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 17:5 p.70
- **ROM 4:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 15:5 p.67
- **ROM 4:22 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← GEN 15:6 p.67
- **ROM 5:5 [HEART]** God's love has been poured into our hearts through the Holy Spirit.
- **ROM 5:8 [NOTABLE]** THE ROMANS ROAD, STOP 3 OF 5. God did not wait for us to clean up first. Christ died for us while we were still sinners. Next stop, 10:9.
- **ROM 5:8 [FULFILLS]** The blood of the Lamb saves from divine wrath ← EX 12:13 p.136

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

9 Therefore, since we have now been justified by His blood, how much more shall we be saved from wrath through Him! 10 For if, when we were enemies of God, we were reconciled to Him through the death of His Son, how much more, having been reconciled, shall we be saved through His life! 11 Not only that, but we also rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have now received reconciliation.

DEATH IN ADAM, LIFE IN CHRIST // GENESIS 3:1–7

12 Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, so also death was passed on to all men, because all sinned. 13 For sin was in the world before the law was given; but sin is not taken into account when there is no law. 14 Nevertheless, death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those who did not sin in the way that Adam transgressed. He is a pattern of the One to come.

15 But the gift is not like the trespass. For if the many died by the trespass of the one man, how much more did God's grace and the gift that came by the grace of the one man, Jesus Christ, abound to the many! 16 Again, the gift is not like the result of the one man's sin: The judgment that followed one sin brought condemnation, but the gift that followed many trespasses brought justification. 17 For if, by the trespass of the one man, death reigned through that one man, how much more will those who receive the abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness reign in life through the one man, Jesus Christ!

18 So then, just as one trespass brought condemnation for all men, so also one act of righteousness brought justification and life for all men. 19 For just as through the disobedience of the one man the many were made sinners, so also through the obedience of the one man the many will be made righteous.

20 The law came in so that the trespass would increase; but where sin increased, grace increased all the more, 21 so that, just as sin reigned in death, so also grace might reign through righteousness to bring eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

If grace covers sin, should we keep sinning to get more grace? Paul says, Absolutely not. In baptism we died with Christ and rose to a new life. Sin used to be the boss, but now you work for God. Sin pays its workers in death, but God gives eternal life as a free gift.

DEAD TO SIN, ALIVE TO GOD // 2 CORINTHIANS 4:7–18

1 What then shall we say? Shall we continue in sin so that grace may increase? 2 Certainly not! How can we who died to sin live in it any longer? 3 Or aren't you aware that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into His death? 4 We were therefore buried with Him through baptism into death, in order that, just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too may walk in newness of life.

5 For if we have been united with Him like this in His death, we will certainly also be united with Him in His resurrection. 6 We know that our old self was crucified with Him so that the body of sin might be rendered powerless, that we should no longer be slaves to sin. 7 For anyone who has died has been freed from sin.

8 Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with Him. 9 For we know that since Christ was raised from the dead, He cannot die again; death no longer has dominion over Him. 10 The death He died, He died to sin once for all; but the life He lives, He lives to God. 11 So you too must count yourselves dead to sin, but alive to God in Christ Jesus.

- **ROM 5:8 [FULFILLS]** God's righteous Servant would justify many ← IS 53:11b p.1128
- **ROM 5:10 [FULFILLS]** To make reconciliation for iniquity ← DAN 9:24b p.1346
- **ROM 5:18 [FULFILLS]** God's righteous Servant would justify many ← IS 53:11b p.1128
- **ROM 6:9 [FULFILLS]** He would prolong His days ← IS 53:10c p.1128

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

12 Therefore do not let sin reign in your
mortal body so that you obey its desires.
13 Do not present the parts of your body to
sin as instruments of wickedness, but
present yourselves to God as those who
have been brought from death to life; and
present the parts of your body to Him as
instruments of righteousness. 14 For sin
shall not be your master, because you are
not under law, but under grace.

THE WAGES OF SIN

15 What then? Shall we sin because we are
not under law, but under grace? Certainly
not! 16 Do you not know that when you of-
fer yourselves as obedient slaves, you are
slaves to the one you obey, whether you
are slaves to sin leading to death, or to
obedience leading to righteousness? 17 But
thanks be to God that, though you once
were slaves to sin, you wholeheartedly
obeyed the form of teaching to which you
were committed. 18 You have been set free
from sin and have become slaves to right-
eousness.

19 I am speaking in human terms because
of the weakness of your flesh. Just as you
used to offer the parts of your body in
slavery to impurity and to escalating
wickedness, so now offer them in slavery
to righteousness leading to holiness.

20 For when you were slaves to sin, you
were free of obligation to righteousness.
21 What fruit did you reap at that time from
the things of which you are now
ashamed? The outcome of those things is
death. 22 But now that you have been set
free from sin and have become slaves to
God, the fruit you reap leads to holiness,
and the outcome is eternal life. 23 For the
wages of sin is death, but the gift of God
is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

The law is good, but it cannot make you good. It is like a mirror that shows the dirt but cannot wash your face. Paul describes the war inside: I do not do what I want, and I do what I hate. What a wretched man I am! Who will rescue me? Thank God, through Jesus Christ.

RELEASE FROM THE LAW // GALATIANS 3:15–25

1 Do you not know, brothers (for I am
speaking to those who know the law), that
the law has authority over a man only as
long as he lives? 2 For instance, a married
woman is bound by law to her husband as
long as he lives. But if her husband dies,
she is released from the law of marriage.
3 So then, if she is joined to another man
while her husband is still alive, she is
called an adulteress; but if her husband
dies, she is free from that law and is not
an adulteress if she marries another man.
4 Therefore, my brothers, you also died to
the law through the body of Christ, that
you might belong to another, to Him who
was raised from the dead, in order that we
might bear fruit to God. 5 For when we
lived according to the flesh, the sinful
passions aroused by the law were at work
in our bodies, bearing fruit for death. 6 But
now, having died to what bound us, we
have been released from the law, so that
we serve in the new way of the Spirit, and
not in the old way of the written code.

GOD'S LAW IS HOLY

7 What then shall we say? Is the law sin?
Certainly not! Indeed, I would not have
been mindful of sin if not for the law. For I
would not have been aware of coveting if
the law had not said, *"Do not covet."* 8 But
sin, seizing its opportunity through the
commandment, produced in me every
kind of covetous desire. For apart from
the law, sin is dead.

9 Once I was alive apart from the law; but
when the commandment came, sin
sprang to life and I died. 10 So I discovered
that the very commandment that was
meant to bring life actually brought death.

ROM 6:17 [HEART] You obeyed from the heart the teaching you were given.

ROM 6:23 [NOTABLE] THE ROMANS ROAD, STOP 2 OF 5. Sin pays a paycheck, and the paycheck is death. But eternal life is a free gift, and you cannot earn a gift. Next stop, 5:8.

ROM 7:7 [QUOTES] Direct ← EX 20:17; DT 5:21 p.148

11 For sin, seizing its opportunity through
the commandment, deceived me and
through the commandment put me to
death.
12 So then, the law is holy, and the com-
mandment is holy, righteous, and good.

STRUGGLING WITH SIN

13 Did that which is good, then, become
death to me? Certainly not! But in order
that sin might be exposed as sin, it pro-
duced death in me through what was
good, so that through the commandment
sin might become utterly sinful.
14 We know that the law is spiritual; but I
am unspiritual, sold as a slave to sin. 15 I
do not understand what I do. For what I
want to do, I do not do. But what I hate, I
do. 16 And if I do what I do not want to do, I
admit that the law is good. 17 In that case,
it is no longer I who do it, but it is sin living
in me that does it.
18 I know that nothing good lives in me,
that is, in my flesh; for I have the desire to
do what is good, but I cannot carry it out.
19 For I do not do the good I want to do. In-
stead, I keep on doing the evil I do not
want to do. 20 And if I do what I do not
want, it is no longer I who do it, but it is
sin living in me that does it.
21 So this is the principle I have discov-
ered: When I want to do good, evil is right
there with me. 22 For in my inner being I
delight in God's law. 23 But I see another
law at work in my body, warring against
the law of my mind and holding me cap-
tive to the law of sin that dwells within me.
24 What a wretched man I am! Who will
rescue me from this body of death? 25
Thanks be to God, through Jesus Christ
our Lord!
So then, with my mind I serve the law of
God, but with my flesh I serve the law of
sin.

■ **ROM 7:14 [NOTE]** TWO VIEWS. Is Paul talking as a Christian here? Augustine, Luther and Calvin said yes: even believers fight sin every day, and Luther said a Christian is righteous and a sinner at the same time. Many early Greek teachers and John Wesley said no: Paul is describing life under the law without the Spirit, and chapter 8 is the answer. Either way, 7:25 ends with thanks to God through Jesus Christ.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

No condemnation for those in Christ. The Spirit gives life, makes us God's children and helps us pray when we have no words. All creation is waiting to be set free. God works all things together for good for those who love Him. Nothing in all creation can separate us from the love of God in Christ.

WALKING BY THE SPIRIT // EZEKIEL 36:16–38; GALATIANS 5:16–26

1 Therefore, there is now no condemnation
for those who are in Christ Jesus, [who do
not walk according to the flesh but ac-
cording to the Spirit.] 2 For in Christ Jesus
the law of the Spirit of life set you free
from the law of sin and death. 3 For what
the law was powerless to do in that it was
weakened by the flesh, God did by send-
ing His own Son in the likeness of sinful
man, as an offering for sin. He thus con-
demned sin in the flesh, 4 so that the right-
eous standard of the law might be fulfilled
in us, who do not walk according to the
flesh but according to the Spirit.
5 Those who live according to the flesh set
their minds on the things of the flesh; but
those who live according to the Spirit set
their minds on the things of the Spirit. 6
The mind of the flesh is death, but the
mind of the Spirit is life and peace, 7 be-
cause the mind of the flesh is hostile to
God: It does not submit to God's law, nor
can it do so. 8 Those controlled by the
flesh cannot please God.
9 You, however, are controlled not by the
flesh, but by the Spirit, if the Spirit of God
lives in you. And if anyone does not have
the Spirit of Christ, he does not belong to
Christ. 10 But if Christ is in you, your body
is dead because of sin, yet your spirit is
alive because of righteousness. 11 And if
the Spirit of Him who raised Jesus from
the dead is living in you, He who raised
Christ Jesus from the dead will also give
life to your mortal bodies through His
Spirit, who lives in you.

■ **ROM 8:1 [TEXT]** The words in brackets are not in the oldest manuscripts. A copyist likely borrowed them from verse 4. Later copies and the KJV have them.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | THE HEART | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

HEIRS WITH CHRIST

12 Therefore, brothers, we have an obligation, but it is not to the flesh, to live according to it. 13 For if you live according to the flesh, you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death the deeds of the body, you will live. 14 For all who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God.

15 For you did not receive a spirit of slavery that returns you to fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption to sonship, by whom we cry, "Abba! Father!" 16 The Spirit Himself testifies with our spirit that we are God's children. 17 And if we are children, then we are heirs: heirs of God and coheirs with Christ—if indeed we suffer with Him, so that we may also be glorified with Him.

FUTURE GLORY // 2 CORINTHIANS 5:1–10

18 I consider that our present sufferings are not comparable to the glory that will be revealed in us. 19 The creation waits in eager expectation for the revelation of the sons of God. 20 For the creation was subjected to futility, not by its own will, but because of the One who subjected it, in hope 21 that the creation itself will be set free from its bondage to decay and brought into the glorious freedom of the children of God.

22 We know that the whole creation has been groaning together in the pains of childbirth until the present time. 23 Not only that, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we wait eagerly for our adoption as sons, the redemption of our bodies. 24 For in this hope we were saved; but hope that is seen is no hope at all. Who hopes for what he can already see? 25 But if we hope for what we do not yet see, we wait for it patiently.

26 In the same way, the Spirit helps us in our weakness. For we do not know how we ought to pray, but the Spirit Himself intercedes for us with groans too deep for words. 27 And He who searches our hearts knows the mind of the Spirit, because the Spirit intercedes for the saints according to the will of God.

GOD WORKS IN ALL THINGS // EPHESIANS 1:3–14

28 And we know that God works all things together for the good of those who love Him, who are called according to His purpose. 29 For those God foreknew, He also predestined to be conformed to the image of His Son, so that He would be the firstborn among many brothers. 30 And those He predestined, He also called; those He called, He also justified; those He justified, He also glorified.

31 What then shall we say in response to these things? If God is for us, who can be against us? 32 He who did not spare His own Son but gave Him up for us all, how will He not also, along with Him, freely give us all things? 33 Who will bring any charge against God's elect? It is God who justifies. 34 Who is there to condemn us? For Christ Jesus, who died, and more than that was raised to life, is at the right hand of God—and He is interceding for us.

MORE THAN CONQUERORS // PSALM 44:1–26

35 Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? Shall trouble or distress or persecution or famine or nakedness or danger or sword? 36 As it is written:

"For Your sake we face death all day long;
we are considered as sheep to be slaughtered."

37 No, in all these things we are more than conquerors through Him who loved us. 38 For I am convinced that neither death nor life, neither angels nor principalities, neither the present nor the future, nor any powers, 39 neither height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God that is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

ROM 8:19 [PROPHECY] The creation itself also will be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the children of God... the whole creation groans and labors with birth pangs together until now → STILL TO COME

ROM 8:26 [MIRACLE] The Spirit Himself intercedes for us with groans too deep for words

ROM 8:26 [THE BIG DEBATE] Is this praying in tongues? See the two Speaking in Tongues pages, p.1809.

ROM 8:27 [HEART] God searches our hearts and knows what the Spirit is praying for us.

ROM 8:34 [FULFILLS] He would intercede for the transgressors ← IS 53:12e p.1128

ROM 8:36 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 44:22 p.913

DEBATED THE BIG DEBATE

SPEAKING IN TONGUES

ROMANS 8:26 · 1 CORINTHIANS 12 TO 14 · ACTS 2:1 TO 13

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Jesus said believers would speak in new tongues, Mark 16:17. At Pentecost the believers suddenly spoke real languages they had never learned, and visitors from all over heard God praised in their own languages, Acts 2:4 to 11. Tongues come again in Acts 10:46 and 19:6. Paul calls tongues a gift of the Spirit, 1 Corinthians 12:10. He says the one who speaks in a tongue speaks to God, and no one understands him; he utters mysteries in the Spirit, 14:2. He also says, I thank God that I speak in tongues more than all of you, 14:18, and, Do not forbid speaking in tongues, 14:39.

ROMANS 8:26

When we do not know what to pray, the Spirit Himself prays for us with groans too deep for words. Many Pentecostals, and scholars like Gordon Fee, connect this to praying in tongues. Others point out that the Greek word means wordless, so Paul may mean the Spirit's own silent groaning, not sounds we make. Either way, 8:27 says the Spirit prays for us according to the will of God.

TWO KINDS OF TONGUES

The tongues in Acts 2 were real human languages the crowd understood. In 1 Corinthians 14 no one understands without an interpreter, and Paul mentions the tongues of angels, 13:1. Many Pentecostals say they are doing the same thing that happened at Pentecost. But the Bible describes Acts 2 as real languages people understood, while most tongues today fit better with what Paul calls praying in the Spirit, 1 Corinthians 14:14 to 15, Ephesians 6:18 and Jude 20.

PRAYING IN THE SPIRIT

Those who do it call it a personal prayer language. When you do not know what to pray for, the Spirit prays through you for God's perfect will for your life, Romans 8:27. Paul says it builds up the one who prays, 1 Corinthians 14:4. Many also believe the enemy cannot understand these prayers, so he cannot work against them behind the scenes in the spirit realm. No verse says that outright. It comes from 14:2, no one understands him.

NOT ALL AT ONCE IN CHURCH

Paul set rules for church meetings. If the whole church speaks in tongues and outsiders or unbelievers come in, will they not say that you are out of your minds? 14:23. Only two or three should speak, one at a time, and someone must interpret, or the speaker should stay quiet and speak to himself and God, 14:27 to 28. Many Pentecostal and charismatic services have the whole room praying out loud in tongues at the same time, which seems to break this rule. Defenders say Paul meant messages spoken to the church, not a room praying together.

WHAT HAPPENED TO THE GIFTS?

Irenaeus, about AD 180, wrote that he heard many believers speaking in all kinds of tongues. By about AD 390 John Chrysostom said these things used to happen but no longer did, and Augustine called tongues a sign for that time that had passed away. From about AD 500 to 1500, most believers in the West could not read the Bible for themselves. It was in Latin, most people could not read, and every copy was written by hand and cost a fortune. Some church councils banned Bibles in the common language: Toulouse in 1229 forbade lay people to own Bible books, and after 1564 reading one needed a bishop's permission. The Orthodox churches kept Scripture in Greek and Slavonic, closer to the people's own speech. When the printing press and the Reformation put the Bible back in people's hands, the church had to relearn much of what it teaches.

Tongues: The Two Sides

1 CORINTHIANS 13:8 TO 12 · 1 CORINTHIANS 14:39 TO 40

CESSATIONISM

The view that gifts like tongues, prophecy and healing stopped after the apostles. John Calvin did not invent it, since Chrysostom and Augustine said something like it first, but Calvin taught that miracles like healing had vanished away, and his teaching made the idea standard in many Protestant churches. Benjamin Warfield of Princeton built it into a full system in his 1918 book Counterfeit Miracles. Cessationists point to 1 Corinthians 13:8, tongues will cease, and say the gifts proved the apostles' message until the New Testament was finished.

THE PENTECOSTAL REVIVAL

On January 1, 1901, Agnes Ozman spoke in tongues at Charles Parham's Bible school in Topeka, Kansas. In April 1906 a revival broke out at 312 Azusa Street in Los Angeles, led by William J. Seymour, a Black preacher whose parents had been enslaved. Black and white believers worshiped side by side, which shocked people in those days. The Los Angeles Times headline said Weird Babel of Tongues. Meetings went on for about three years, and the Pentecostal movement spread around the world.

REAL LANGUAGES?

The first Pentecostals believed they were speaking real foreign languages like Acts 2. Some sailed overseas as missionaries expecting to preach without learning the language. It did not work, and most came to see tongues as a prayer language instead. Linguists who studied modern tongues, like William Samarin in 1972, found it does not have the structure of a human language. Many believers say that is the point: it is not Acts 2, it is praying in the Spirit, which no one understands, 14:2.

THE CHARISMATIC MOVEMENT

In 1960 Dennis Bennett, an Episcopal priest in Van Nuys, California, told his church he spoke in tongues. The experience spread into Lutheran, Methodist, Baptist and Catholic churches, with the Catholic Charismatic Renewal starting in 1967. In the 1980s John Wimber's Vineyard churches brought what was called the Third Wave. Today about one in four Christians in the world is Pentecostal or charismatic.

FOR EVERYONE OR FOR SOME?

Classical Pentecostals, like the Assemblies of God, teach that tongues is the first sign of being baptized in the Holy Spirit and is for every believer, Acts 2:4, 10:46 and 19:6. Many charismatics read 1 Corinthians 12:30, Do all speak in tongues?, and say it is one gift among many that the Spirit gives as He chooses, 12:11. Many hold both: a private prayer language any believer may ask for, and a public gift of tongues for some, which needs an interpreter.

CONTINUISM

The view that all the gifts continue today. Continuists say tongues will cease when the perfect comes, when we see face to face, 13:10 to 12, which means when Jesus returns, not when the Bible was finished. Paul never told the church to stop. He told them to keep order. Nearly every well known deliverance ministry today prays in tongues, which makes many believers think there may be something to it.

IS IT DEMONIC?

Some churches teach that tongues today are fake, or even demonic. If that were true, it would be strange that so many who pray in tongues also cast out demons, since Jesus said Satan does not drive out Satan, Mark 3:23 to 26. Both views come from people who love Jesus and the Bible. Read 1 Corinthians 12 to 14 and decide for yourself. Paul's last word on it: Be eager to prophesy, and do not forbid speaking in tongues. But everything must be done in a proper and orderly manner, 14:39 to 40.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul's heart breaks for his own people, Israel. He says not all who come from Israel are true Israel, and God chose Jacob over Esau before they were born. Is God unfair? Paul answers with a potter and his clay. This chapter has kept theologians arguing for about sixteen hundred years.

PAUL'S CONCERN FOR THE JEWS

1 I speak the truth in Christ; I am not lying,
as confirmed by my conscience in the
Holy Spirit. 2 I have deep sorrow and un-
ceasing anguish in my heart. 3 For I could
wish that I myself were cursed and cut off
from Christ for the sake of my brothers,
my own flesh and blood, 4 the people of
Israel. Theirs is the adoption as sons;
theirs the divine glory and the covenants;
theirs the giving of the law, the temple
worship, and the promises. 5 Theirs are
the patriarchs, and from them proceeds
the human descent of Christ, who is God
over all, forever worthy of praise! Amen.

GOD'S SOVEREIGN CHOICE // GENESIS 25:19–28; MALACHI 1:1–5

6 It is not as though God's word has failed.
For not all who are descended from Israel
are Israel. 7 Nor because they are
Abraham's descendants are they all his
children. On the contrary, *"Through Isaac
your offspring will be reckoned."* 8 So it is not
the children of the flesh who are God's
children, but it is the children of the
promise who are regarded as offspring. 9
For this is what the promise stated: *"At the
appointed time I will return, and Sarah will
have a son."*

10 Not only that, but Rebecca's children
were conceived by one man, our father
Isaac. 11 Yet before the twins were born or
had done anything good or bad, in order
that God's plan of election might stand, 12
not by works but by Him who calls, she
was told, *"The older will serve the younger."*
13 So it is written: *"Jacob I loved, but Esau I
hated."*

14 What then shall we say? Is God unjust?
Certainly not! 15 For He says to Moses:

*"I will have mercy on whom I have mercy,
and I will have compassion on whom I have
compassion."*

16 So then, it does not depend on man's
desire or effort, but on God's mercy. 17 For
the Scripture says to Pharaoh: *"I raised you
up for this very purpose, that I might display
My power in you, and that My name might be
proclaimed in all the earth."* 18 Therefore God
has mercy on whom He wants to have
mercy, and He hardens whom He wants to
harden.

19 One of you will say to me, "Then why
does God still find fault? For who can re-
sist His will?" 20 But who are you, O man,
to talk back to God? Shall what is formed
say to Him who formed it, *"Why did You
make me like this?"* 21 Does not the potter
have the right to make from the same
lump of clay one vessel for special occa-
sions and another for common use?

22 What if God, intending to show His
wrath and make His power known, bore
with great patience the vessels of His
wrath, prepared for destruction? 23 What if
He did this to make the riches of His glory
known to the vessels of His mercy, whom
He prepared in advance for glory— 24 in-
cluding us, whom He has called not only
from the Jews, but also from the Gentiles?
25 As He says in Hosea:

"I will call them *'My People' who are not My
people,*
*and I will call her 'My Beloved' who is not
My beloved,"*

26 *and,*

*"It will happen that in the very place where it
was said to them,*

- **ROM 9:7 [FULFILLS]** Abraham's promised offspring would come through Isaac ← GEN 21:12 p.75
- **ROM 9:9 [FULFILLS]** Sarah would have a son at this time next year ← GEN 18:10 p.71
- **ROM 9:12 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 25:23 p.82
- **ROM 9:13 [QUOTES]** Direct ← MAL 1:2-3 p.1510
- **ROM 9:13 [NOTE]** TWO VIEWS. Reformed or Calvinist: God chooses who will be saved before they are born, based on His mercy, not on anything they do, 9:11 and 9:16. Arminian or free will: Paul is quoting Malachi 1:2 to 3 about two nations, Israel and Edom, so God is choosing who carries the promise, not who goes to heaven, and anyone who believes is welcome, 10:13. Many on both sides read hated as a Hebrew way to say loved less, like Luke 14:26.
- **ROM 9:15 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 33:19 p.165
- **ROM 9:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 9:16 p.133
- **ROM 9:20 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← IS 29:16; 45:9 p.1096
- **ROM 9:25 [FULFILLS]** God would say to Not My People, You are My people ← HOS 2:23 p.1361

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

'You are not My people,'
they will be called
'sons of the living God.'"

27 Isaiah cries out concerning Israel:

"Though the number of the Israelites is like the sand of the sea,
only the remnant will be saved.
28 *For the Lord will carry out His sentence on the earth*
thoroughly and decisively."

29 It is just as Isaiah foretold:

"Unless the Lord of Hosts had left us descendants,
we would have become like Sodom,
we would have resembled Gomorrah."

ISRAEL'S UNBELIEF

30 What then will we say? That the Gentiles, who did not pursue righteousness, have obtained it, a righteousness that is by faith; 31 but Israel, who pursued a law of righteousness, has not attained it. 32 Why not? Because their pursuit was not by faith, but as if it were by works. They stumbled over the stumbling stone, 33 as it is written:

"See, I lay in Zion a stone of stumbling and a rock of offense;
and the one who believes in Him will never be put to shame."

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Israel tried to earn being right with God and missed that Christ is the end of the law. Salvation is close: confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised Him. Everyone who calls on the Lord will be saved. But how will they hear without someone to tell them?

THE WORD BRINGS SALVATION // ISAIAH 65:1–16

1 Brothers, my heart's desire and prayer to God for the Israelites is for their salvation. 2 For I testify about them that they are zealous for God, but not on the basis of knowledge. 3 Because they were ignorant of God's righteousness and sought to establish their own, they did not submit to God's righteousness. 4 For Christ is the end of the law, to bring righteousness to everyone who believes.

5 For concerning the righteousness that is by the law, Moses writes: *"The man who does these things will live by them."* 6 But the righteousness that is by faith says: "Do not say in your heart, *'Who will ascend into heaven?'* (that is, to bring Christ down) 7 or, *'Who will descend into the Abyss?'* (that is, to bring Christ up from the dead)."

8 But what does it say? *"The word is near you; it is in your mouth and in your heart,"* that is, the word of faith we are proclaiming: 9 that if you confess with your mouth, "Jesus is Lord," and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved. 10 For with your heart you believe and are justified, and with your mouth you confess and are saved.

11 It is just as the Scripture says: *"Anyone who believes in Him will never be put to shame."* 12 For there is no difference between Jew and Greek: The same Lord is Lord of all, and gives richly to all who call on Him, 13 for, *"Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved."*

14 How then can they call on the One in whom they have not believed? And how can they believe in the One of whom they have not heard? And how can they hear without someone to preach? 15 And how can they preach unless they are sent? As it is written: *"How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news!"*

- **ROM 9:26 [FULFILLS]** Those called Not My People would be called sons of the living God ← HOS 1:10 p.1356
- **ROM 9:27 [FULFILLS]** Only a remnant of Israel would return ← IS 10:21-22 p.1074
- **ROM 9:27 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 10:22-23 p.1074
- **ROM 9:29 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 1:9 p.1062
- **ROM 9:33 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 8:14; 28:16 p.1071
- **ROM 10:5 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 18:5 p.202
- **ROM 10:6 [FULFILLS]** The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart ← DT 30:12-14 · MEDIUM p.324
- **ROM 10:9 [HEART]** If you confess Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart God raised Him, you will be saved.
- **ROM 10:9 [NOTABLE]** THE ROMANS ROAD, STOP 4 OF 5. Say it with your mouth and believe it in your heart: Jesus is Lord, and God raised Him from the dead. Next stop, 10:13.
- **ROM 10:9 [FULFILLS]** Salvation offered to all mankind through His name ← JOEL 2:32 p.1382
- **ROM 10:10 [HEART]** With the heart a person believes and is made right with God.
- **ROM 10:11 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 28:16 p.1094
- **ROM 10:13 [NOTABLE]** THE ROMANS ROAD, STOP 5 OF 5. Everyone means everyone. No one is too far gone. The road ends with a promise: call on Him, and He will save you.
- **ROM 10:13 [QUOTES]** Direct ← JOEL 2:32 p.1382
- **ROM 10:15 [FULFILLS]** He would publish good tidings ← IS 52:7 · MEDIUM p.1126

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

16 But not all of them welcomed the good
news. For Isaiah says, *"Lord, who has be-*
lieved our message?" 17 Consequently, faith
comes by hearing, and hearing by the
word of Christ.

18 But I ask, did they not hear? Indeed they
did:

"Their voice has gone out into all the earth,
their words to the ends of the world."

19 I ask instead, did Israel not understand?
First, Moses says:

"I will make you jealous by those who are not
a nation;
I will make you angry by a nation without
understanding."

20 And Isaiah boldly says:

"I was found by those who did not seek Me;
I revealed Myself to those who did not ask
for Me."

21 But as for Israel he says:

"All day long I have held out My hands
to a disobedient and obstinate people."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Has God rejected Israel? No way. A faithful few remain, like the seven thousand in Elijah's day. Gentiles are wild olive branches grafted into God's tree, so do not brag. Israel is hardened in part until the full number of Gentiles comes in, and then all Israel will be saved. Paul ends in pure praise.

A REMNANT CHOSEN BY GRACE

1 I ask then, did God reject His people?
Certainly not! I am an Israelite myself, a
descendant of Abraham, from the tribe of
Benjamin. 2 God did not reject His people,
whom He foreknew. Do you not know
what the Scripture says about Elijah, how
he appealed to God against Israel: 3 *"Lord,*
they have killed Your prophets and torn down
Your altars. I am the only one left, and they
are seeking my life as well"?

4 And what was the divine reply to him? *"I*
have reserved for Myself seven thousand men
who have not bowed the knee to Baal."

5 In the same way, at the present time
there is a remnant chosen by grace. 6 And
if it is by grace, then it is no longer by
works. Otherwise, grace would no longer
be grace.

7 What then? What Israel was seeking, it
failed to obtain, but the elect did. The oth-
ers were hardened, 8 as it is written:

"God gave them a spirit of stupor,
eyes that could not see,
and ears that could not hear,
to this very day."

9 And David says:

"May their table become a snare and a trap,
a stumbling block and a retribution to them.
10 *May their eyes be darkened so they cannot*
see,
and their backs be bent forever."

THE INGRAFTING OF THE GENTILES

11 I ask then, did they stumble so as to fall
beyond recovery? Certainly not! However,
because of their trespass, salvation has
come to the Gentiles to make Israel jeal-
ous. 12 But if their trespass means riches
for the world, and their failure means
riches for the Gentiles, how much greater
riches will their fullness bring!

13 I am speaking to you Gentiles. Inasmuch
as I am the apostle to the Gentiles, I mag-
nify my ministry 14 in the hope that I may
provoke my own people to jealousy and
save some of them. 15 For if their rejection
is the reconciliation of the world, what will
their acceptance be but life from the
dead? 16 If the first part of the dough is
holy, so is the whole batch; if the root is
holy, so are the branches.

17 Now if some branches have been bro-
ken off, and you, a wild olive shoot, have
been grafted in among the others to share

- **ROM 10:15 [FULFILLS]** One would come on the mountains bringing good news and proclaiming peace ← NAH 1:15 · MEDIUM p.1446
- **ROM 10:16 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:1 p.1127
- **ROM 10:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 19:4 p.894
- **ROM 10:19 [FULFILLS]** God would make Israel jealous through a people who were not a nation ← DT 32:21 p.328
- **ROM 10:20 [FULFILLS]** God would be found by people who did not seek Him while Israel stayed stubborn ← IS 65:1-2 p.1140
- **ROM 11:3 [QUOTES]** Direct ← 1KI 19:10, 14 p.586
- **ROM 11:4 [DEMONIC]** God kept seven thousand who never bowed to Baal
- **ROM 11:4 [QUOTES]** Direct ← 1KI 19:18 p.586
- **ROM 11:5 [FULFILLS]** A holy remnant would remain like a stump ← IS 6:13 · MEDIUM p.1069
- **ROM 11:8 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 29:4; IS 29:10 p.322
- **ROM 11:9 [FULFILLS]** Those who reject Him would be blinded and trapped ← PS 69:22-23 p.929
- **ROM 11:11 [FULFILLS]** God would make Israel jealous through a people who were not a nation ← DT 32:21 p.328

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

in the nourishment of the olive root, 18 do
not boast over those branches. If you do,
remember this: You do not support the
root, but the root supports you.
19 You will say then, "Branches were bro-
ken off so that I could be grafted in." 20
That is correct: They were broken off be-
cause of unbelief, but you stand by faith.
Do not be arrogant, but be afraid. 21 For if
God did not spare the natural branches,
He will certainly not spare you either.
22 Take notice, therefore, of the kindness
and severity of God: severity to those who
fell, but kindness to you, if you continue in
His kindness. Otherwise you also will be
cut off. 23 And if they do not persist in un-
belief, they will be grafted in, for God is
able to graft them in again. 24 For if you
were cut from a wild olive tree, and con-
trary to nature were grafted into one that
is cultivated, how much more readily will
these, the natural branches, be grafted
into their own olive tree!

ALL ISRAEL WILL BE SAVED

25 I do not want you to be ignorant of this
mystery, brothers, so that you will not be
conceited: A hardening in part has come
to Israel, until the full number of the Gen-
tiles has come in. 26 And so all Israel will
be saved, as it is written:

"The Deliverer will come from Zion;
He will remove godlessness from Jacob.
27 *And this is My covenant with them*
when I take away their sins."

28 Regarding the gospel, they are enemies
on your account; but regarding election,
they are loved on account of the patri-
archs. 29 For God's gifts and His call are ir-
revocable.
30 Just as you who formerly disobeyed
God have now received mercy through
their disobedience, 31 so they too have
now disobeyed, in order that they too may
now receive mercy through the mercy
shown to you. 32 For God has consigned
everyone to disobedience so that He may
have mercy on everyone.

A HYMN OF PRAISE // ISAIAH 40:9–31

33 O, the depth of the riches
of the wisdom and knowledge of God!
How unsearchable are His judgments,
and untraceable His ways!
34 *"Who has known the mind of the Lord?*
Or who has been His counselor?"
35 *"Who has first given to God,*
that God should repay him?"
36 For from Him and through Him and to
Him are all things.
To Him be the glory forever! Amen.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

Now Paul gets practical. Offer your whole self to God as a living sacrifice. Do not copy the world, but let God change the way you think. Use your gifts, love for real, bless those who persecute you, and do not take revenge. Overcome evil with good.

LIVING SACRIFICES // 1 CORINTHIANS 3:16–23; 1 CORINTHIANS 6:18–20

1 Therefore I urge you, brothers, on ac-
count of God's mercy, to offer your bodies
as living sacrifices, holy and pleasing to
God, which is your spiritual service of
worship. 2 Do not be conformed to this
world, but be transformed by the renew-
ing of your mind. Then you will be able to
test and approve what is the good, pleas-
ing, and perfect will of God.
3 For by the grace given me I say to every
one of you: Do not think of yourself more
highly than you ought, but think of your-
self with sober judgment, according to the
measure of faith God has given you. 4 Just
as each of us has one body with many
members, and not all members have the
same function, 5 so in Christ we who are
many are one body, and each member
belongs to one another.
6 We have different gifts according to the
grace given us. If one's gift is prophecy,
let him use it in proportion to his faith; 7 if
it is serving, let him serve; if it is teaching,
let him teach; 8 if it is encouraging, let him

ROM 11:25 [PROPHECY] Blindness in part has happened to Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in. And so all Israel will be saved... 'The Deliverer will come out of Zion, and He will turn away ungodliness from Jacob' → STILL TO COME

ROM 11:26 [FULFILLS] He would come to Zion as Redeemer ← IS 59:20 p.1135

ROM 11:34 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 40:13; JOB 41:11 p.1109

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

encourage; if it is giving, let him give generously; if it is leading, let him lead with diligence; if it is showing mercy, let him do it cheerfully.

LOVE, ZEAL, HOPE, HOSPITALITY // JOHN 13:31–35; 1 JOHN 3:11–24

9 Love must be sincere. Detest what is evil; cling to what is good. 10 Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Outdo yourselves in honoring one another.

11 Do not let your zeal subside; keep your spiritual fervor, serving the Lord.

12 Be joyful in hope, patient in affliction, persistent in prayer.

13 Share with the saints who are in need. Practice hospitality.

FORGIVENESS // MATTHEW 18:21–35

14 Bless those who persecute you. Bless and do not curse. 15 Rejoice with those who rejoice; weep with those who weep. 16 Live in harmony with one another. Do not be proud, but associate with the lowly. Do not be conceited.

17 Do not repay anyone evil for evil. Carefully consider what is right in the eyes of everybody. 18 If it is possible on your part, live at peace with everyone.

19 Do not avenge yourselves, beloved, but leave room for God's wrath. For it is written: *"Vengeance is Mine; I will repay, says the Lord."*

20 On the contrary,

"If your enemy is hungry, feed him;
if he is thirsty, give him a drink.
For in so doing,
you will heap burning coals on his head."

21 Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Submit to the governing authorities and pay your taxes, even your property tax. Owe nobody anything except love, because love fulfills the law. It is almost morning, so wake up. Put away partying and drunkenness and clothe yourselves with the Lord Jesus Christ.

SUBMISSION TO AUTHORITIES // 1 PETER 2:13–20

1 Everyone must submit himself to the governing authorities, for there is no authority except that which is from God. The authorities that exist have been appointed by God. 2 Consequently, whoever resists authority is opposing what God has set in place, and those who do so will bring judgment on themselves.

3 For rulers are not a terror to good conduct, but to bad. Do you want to be unafraid of the one in authority? Then do what is right, and you will have his approval. 4 For he is God's servant for your good. But if you do wrong, be afraid, for he does not carry the sword in vain. He is God's servant, an agent of retribution to the wrongdoer.

5 Therefore it is necessary to submit to authority, not only to avoid punishment, but also as a matter of conscience. 6 This is also why you pay taxes. For the authorities are God's servants, who devote themselves to their work. 7 Pay everyone what you owe him: taxes to whom taxes are due, revenue to whom revenue is due, respect to whom respect is due, honor to whom honor is due.

LOVE FULFILLS THE LAW // LEVITICUS 19:9–18

8 Be indebted to no one, except to one another in love. For he who loves his neighbor has fulfilled the law. 9 The commandments *"Do not commit adultery," "Do not murder," "Do not steal," "Do not covet,"* and any other commandments, are summed up in this one decree: *"Love your neighbor as yourself."* 10 Love does no wrong to its neighbor. Therefore love is the fulfillment of the law.

THE DAY IS NEAR

11 And do this, understanding the occasion. The hour has come for you to wake up from your slumber, for our salvation is

■ **ROM 12:19 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 32:35 p.328
■ **ROM 12:20 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PROV 25:21-22 p.1016

■ **ROM 13:1 [NOTE]** Paul wrote this while Nero was emperor. Christians obey the law, pay taxes and respect leaders, because God set up government to keep order. But when a ruler commands what God forbids, Peter and the apostles said, We must obey God rather than men, Acts 5:29. The Hebrew midwives, Exodus 1:17, and Daniel, Daniel 6:10, disobeyed and God honored them. So did Christians like Corrie ten Boom, who hid Jews from the Nazis.
■ **ROM 13:9 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:13-17; LEV 19:18 p.148

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

nearer now than when we first believed. 12 The night is nearly over; the day has drawn near. So let us lay aside the deeds of darkness and put on the armor of light. 13 Let us behave decently, as in the daytime, not in carousing and drunkenness, not in sexual immorality and debauchery, not in dissension and jealousy. 14 Instead, clothe yourselves with the Lord Jesus Christ, and make no provision for the desires of the flesh.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

Some Christians eat only vegetables, and some eat anything. Some keep special days, and some treat every day the same. Paul says stop judging each other over things like this. Each one should be fully convinced in his own mind. But do not use your freedom to make a weaker brother stumble.

THE LAW OF LIBERTY // MATTHEW 7:1–6; LUKE 6:37–42

1 Accept him whose faith is weak, without passing judgment on his opinions. 2 For one person has faith to eat all things, while another, who is weak, eats only vegetables. 3 The one who eats everything must not belittle the one who does not, and the one who does not eat everything must not judge the one who does, for God has accepted him. 4 Who are you to judge someone else's servant? To his own master he stands or falls. And he will stand, for the Lord is able to make him stand.

5 One person regards a certain day above the others, while someone else considers every day alike. Each one should be fully convinced in his own mind. 6 He who observes a special day does so to the Lord; he who eats does so to the Lord, for he gives thanks to God; and he who abstains does so to the Lord and gives thanks to God.

7 For none of us lives to himself alone, and none of us dies to himself alone. 8 If we live, we live to the Lord, and if we die, we die to the Lord. So whether we live or die, we belong to the Lord. 9 For this reason Christ died and returned to life, that He might be the Lord of both the dead and the living.

10 Why, then, do you judge your brother? Or why do you belittle your brother? For we will all stand before God's judgment seat. 11 It is written:

"As surely as I live,
says the Lord,
every knee will bow before Me;
every tongue will confess to God."

12 So then, each of us will give an account of himself to God.

THE LAW OF LOVE // EZEKIEL 14:1–11; 1 CORINTHIANS 8:1–13

13 Therefore let us stop judging one another. Instead, make up your mind not to put any stumbling block or obstacle in your brother's way.

14 I am convinced and fully persuaded in the Lord Jesus that nothing is unclean in itself. But if anyone regards something as unclean, then for him it is unclean. 15 If your brother is distressed by what you eat, you are no longer acting in love. Do not by your eating destroy your brother, for whom Christ died.

16 Do not allow what you consider good, then, to be spoken of as evil. 17 For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking, but of righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit. 18 For whoever serves Christ in this way is pleasing to God and approved by men.

19 So then, let us pursue what leads to peace and to mutual edification. 20 Do not destroy the work of God for the sake of food. All food is clean, but it is wrong for a man to let his eating be a stumbling block. 21 It is better not to eat meat or drink wine or to do anything to cause your brother to stumble.

22 Keep your belief about such matters between yourself and God. Blessed is the one who does not condemn himself by

ROM 14:1 [NOTE] CHRISTIAN FREEDOM. In Rome some believers ate only vegetables, kept special days or skipped wine, and others did not. On matters like these, Paul says stop judging each other, 14:3 and 14:10, and let each one be fully convinced in his own mind, 14:5. Nothing is unclean in itself, 14:14. Freedom has two limits: do not make a weaker brother stumble, 14:21, and do not go against your own conscience, 14:23.

ROM 14:11 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 45:23; 49:18 p.1119

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

what he approves. 23 But the one who has doubts is condemned if he eats, because his eating is not from faith; and everything that is not from faith is sin.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

The strong should carry the weak, just as Christ did not please Himself. Jews and Gentiles should welcome each other and praise God together. Paul shares his travel plans: Jerusalem first with an offering for the poor, then Rome, then Spain. He asks them to pray for him.

ACCEPT ONE ANOTHER

1 We who are strong ought to bear with the shortcomings of the weak and not to please ourselves. 2 Each of us should please his neighbor for his good, to build him up. 3 For even Christ did not please Himself, but as it is written: *"The insults of those who insult You have fallen on Me."* 4 For everything that was written in the past was written for our instruction, so that through endurance and the encouragement of the Scriptures, we might have hope.

5 Now may the God who gives endurance and encouragement grant you harmony with one another in Christ Jesus, 6 so that with one mind and one voice you may glorify the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ.

CHRIST THE SERVANT OF JEWS AND GENTILES

7 Accept one another, then, just as Christ accepted you, in order to bring glory to God. 8 For I tell you that Christ has become a servant of the circumcised on behalf of God's truth, to confirm the promises made to the patriarchs, 9 so that the Gentiles may glorify God for His mercy. As it is written:

"Therefore I will praise You among the Gentiles;
I will sing hymns to Your name."

10 Again, it says:

"Rejoice, O Gentiles, with His people."

11 And again:

"Praise the Lord, all you Gentiles,
and extol Him, all you peoples."

12 And once more, Isaiah says:

"The Root of Jesse will appear,
One who will arise to rule over the Gentiles;
in Him the Gentiles will put their hope."

13 Now may the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace as you believe in Him, so that you may overflow with hope by the power of the Holy Spirit.

PAUL THE MINISTER TO THE GENTILES

14 I myself am convinced, my brothers, that you yourselves are full of goodness, brimming with knowledge, and able to instruct one another. 15 However, I have written you a bold reminder on some points, because of the grace God has given me 16 to be a minister of Christ Jesus to the Gentiles in the priestly service of the gospel of God, so that the Gentiles might become an offering acceptable to God, sanctified by the Holy Spirit.

17 Therefore I exult in Christ Jesus in my service to God. 18 I will not presume to speak of anything except what Christ has accomplished through me in leading the Gentiles to obedience by word and deed, 19 by the power of signs and wonders, and by the power of the Spirit of God. So from Jerusalem all the way around to Illyricum, I have fully proclaimed the gospel of Christ.

20 In this way I have aspired to preach the gospel where Christ was not known, so that I would not be building on someone else's foundation. 21 Rather, as it is written:

"Those who were not told about Him will see,
and those who have not heard will understand."

22 That is why I have often been hindered from coming to you.

- **ROM 15:3 [FULFILLS]** Zealous for His Father's house ← PS 69:9 p.928
- **ROM 15:9 [FULFILLS]** The king would praise God among the nations ← 2SA 22:50 p.531
- **ROM 15:9 [FULFILLS]** The king would praise God among the nations ← PS 18:49 p.894
- **ROM 15:10 [FULFILLS]** The nations would rejoice with God's people and angels would worship Him ← DT 32:43 p.329
- **ROM 15:11 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 117:1 p.963
- **ROM 15:12 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 11:10 p.1075
- **ROM 15:19 [MIRACLE]** Paul's work among the Gentiles came with signs and wonders by the power of the Spirit
- **ROM 15:21 [FULFILLS]** Nations startled by the message of the Servant ← IS 52:15 · MEDIUM p.1127

NOTABLE

PAUL'S TRAVEL PLANS // 1 CORINTHIANS 16:5–9

23 But now that there are no further opportunities for me in these regions, and since I have longed for many years to visit you, 24 I hope to see you on my way to Spain. And after I have enjoyed your company for a while, you can equip me for my journey.

25 Now, however, I am on my way to Jerusalem to serve the saints there. 26 For Macedonia and Achaia were pleased to make a contribution for the poor among the saints in Jerusalem. 27 They were pleased to do it, and indeed they owe it to them. For if the Gentiles have shared in their spiritual blessings, they are obligated to minister to them with material blessings.

28 So after I have completed this service and have safely delivered this bounty to them, I will set off to Spain by way of you. 29 I know that when I come to you, I will come in the fullness of the blessing of Christ.

30 Now I urge you, brothers, by our Lord Jesus Christ and by the love of the Spirit, to join me in my struggle by praying to God for me. 31 Pray that I may be delivered from the unbelievers in Judea, and that my service in Jerusalem may be acceptable to the saints there, 32 so that by God's will I may come to you with joy and together with you be refreshed.

33 The God of peace be with all of you. Amen.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul says hello to about twenty six friends by name, starting with Phoebe, who likely carried the letter. Priscilla and Aquila are back in town. Watch out for people who cause divisions. Tertius, who wrote the letter down, slips in his own hello. It ends with a big praise to the only wise God.

PERSONAL GREETINGS AND LOVE

1 I commend to you our sister Phoebe, a servant of the church in Cenchrea. 2 Welcome her in the Lord in a manner worthy of the saints, and assist her with anything she may need from you. For she has been a great help to many people, including me.

ROM 16:1 [NOTABLE] Paul trusted this letter to a woman. Phoebe most likely carried Romans to Rome. Paul calls her diakonos, the same Greek word used for deacons in 1 Timothy 3:8. Some Bibles say servant and others say deacon.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

CENCHREA: PHOEBE'S HARBOR

ROMANS 16:1 TO 2 · ACTS 18:18



The ancient harbor of Cenchrea today. Ruins of the old harbor tower stand on the left, and stones from the Roman harbor show above the water.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of Cenchrea, the eastern harbor of Corinth, about 7 miles from the city. Ships from Asia and the eastern sea docked here. Phoebe served the church in Cenchrea, 16:1, and Paul sailed from here after keeping a vow, Acts 18:18.

HOW OLD IT IS

The town is far older than Paul, but most of the Roman harbor was built in the first century AD, after Julius Caesar rebuilt Corinth in 44 BC. That is the harbor Phoebe knew. A strong earthquake in the late 300s AD sank part of it into the sea.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The site was never lost. Archaeologists from the University of Chicago and Indiana University dug here from 1963 to 1968, some of them as divers working underwater. Newer digs have continued since.

WHAT THEY FOUND

Stone piers, warehouses, shops and a temple, likely of the Egyptian goddess Isis. The Roman writer Apuleius, about AD 170, describes a festival of Isis at Cenchrea. Divers found crates of colored glass wall panels still waiting to be

ROM 16:1 [FIELD NOTES] See the Cenchrea Field Notes page, p.1818.

END TIMES PROPHECIES THE HEART NOTABLE

put up when the earthquake hit. A church was built over part of the harbor later.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

At the shore by the village of Kechries, Greece. You can walk the ruins and see the old harbor stones under the clear water. The glass panels are in the museum at Isthmia.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Cenchrea was a busy port full of sailors, traders and temples to other gods. A church grew right there, and one of its leaders was a woman named Phoebe. Paul trusted her to carry the most important letter he ever wrote.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing found names Phoebe or the church of her day. The church building found here was built hundreds of years after her.

3 Greet Prisca and Aquila, my fellow workers in Christ Jesus, 4 who have risked their lives for me. Not only I but all the churches of the Gentiles are grateful to them. 5 Greet also the church that meets at their house.

Greet my beloved Epenetus, who was the first convert to Christ in the province of Asia.

6 Greet Mary, who has worked very hard for you.

7 Greet Andronicus and Junia, my fellow countrymen and fellow prisoners. They are outstanding among the apostles, and they were in Christ before I was.

8 Greet Ampliatus, my beloved in the Lord.

9 Greet Urbanus, our fellow worker in Christ, and my beloved Stachys.

10 Greet Apelles, who is approved in Christ.

Greet those who belong to the household of Aristobulus.

11 Greet Herodion, my fellow countryman.

Greet those from the household of Narcissus who are in the Lord.

12 Greet Tryphena and Tryphosa, women who have worked hard in the Lord.

Greet my beloved Persis, who has worked very hard in the Lord.

13 Greet Rufus, chosen in the Lord, and his mother, who has been a mother to me as well.

14 Greet Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermes, Patrobas, Hermas, and the brothers with them.

15 Greet Philologus and Julia, Nereus and his sister, and Olympas and all the saints with them.

16 Greet one another with a holy kiss.

All the churches of Christ send you greetings.

AVOID DIVISIONS // TITUS 3:9–11

17 Now I urge you, brothers, to watch out for those who create divisions and obstacles that are contrary to the teaching you have learned. Turn away from them. 18 For such people are not serving our Lord Christ, but their own appetites. By smooth talk and flattery they deceive the hearts of the naive.

19 Everyone has heard about your obedience, so I rejoice over you. But I want you to be wise about what is good and innocent about what is evil.

20 The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet. The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.

GREETINGS FROM PAUL'S FELLOW WORKERS // COLOSSIANS 4:7–14

21 Timothy, my fellow worker, sends you greetings, as do Lucius, Jason, and Sosipater, my fellow countrymen.

22 I, Tertius, who wrote down this letter, greet you in the Lord.

ROM 16:3 [FIELD NOTES] Claudius had thrown Priscilla and Aquila out of Rome, Acts 18:2. Now they are back. See the Claudius Field Notes page in Acts, p.1774.

ROM 16:7 [NOTABLE] Junia was a woman, and Paul counts her and Andronicus outstanding among the apostles. About AD 390 the great preacher John Chrysostom praised her for it. Apostle here likely means a sent out missionary, like Barnabas in Acts 14:14. For centuries many Bibles changed her to Junias, a man's name never found in ancient writing. The other view reads it as well known to the apostles.

ROM 16:18 [HEART] Smooth talkers deceive the hearts of the naive.

ROM 16:20 [PROPHECY] God would soon crush Satan under the believers' feet → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM

ROM 16:22 [NOTE] Paul usually spoke his letters out loud while a helper wrote them down. Here the helper, Tertius, slips in his own hello. Paul often wrote the last lines in his own hand, 1 Corinthians 16:21 and Galatians 6:11.

ARCHAEOLOGY

23 Gaius, who has hosted me and all the church, sends you greetings.
Erastus, the city treasurer, sends you greetings, as does our brother Quartus. 24 [May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all. Amen.]

DOXOLOGY // JUDE 1:24–25

25 Now to Him who is able to strengthen you by my gospel and by the proclamation of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery concealed for ages past 26 but now revealed and made known through the writings of the prophets by the command of the eternal God, in order to lead all nations to the obedience that comes from faith— 27 to the only wise God be glory forever through Jesus Christ! Amen.

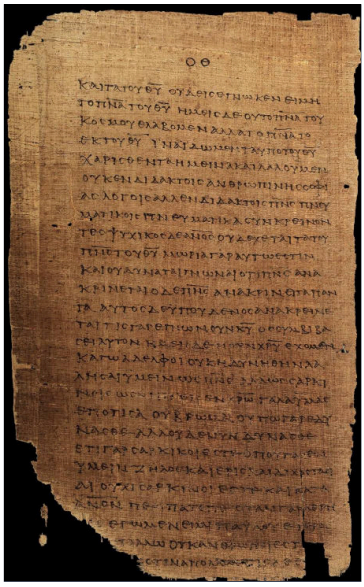
- **ROM 16:23 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Paving stone inscription naming an Erastus who paid for the pavement as aedile, a city official
- **ROM 16:23 [FIELD NOTES]** A stone pavement in Corinth names an Erastus. See The Erastus Inscription Field Notes page in Acts, p.1779.
- **ROM 16:24 [TEXT]** Verse 24 is in brackets because the oldest manuscripts do not have it. It repeats the blessing at the end of verse 20.
- **ROM 16:25 [TEXT]** These last three verses move around in the old copies. Papyrus 46, the oldest, puts them after 15:33. Many later copies put them after 14:23, and a few have them in both places. Most modern Bibles print them here at the end.

BOOK 46 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

1 CORINTHIANS

Dear Messy Church

AUTHOR	Paul, with his coworker Sosthenes, 1:1. Paul started the church in Corinth himself and stayed there a year and a half, Acts 18:11.
WRITTEN FROM	Ephesus, on Paul's third missionary trip. He planned to stay there until Pentecost, 16:8.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 53 to 55.
WRITTEN TO	The church in Corinth, Greece, a mix of Jews and Gentiles, a few rich and many poor, 1:26.
WHY HE WROTE	People from Chloe's household reported fights in the church, 1:11, and the church sent Paul a letter full of questions, 7:1.
KEY VERSE	1 Corinthians 13:13. And now these three remain: faith, hope and love. But the greatest of these is love.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 1 CORINTHIANS

This is page 79 of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200. It holds 1 Corinthians 2:11 to 3:5. You can read the natural man does not receive the things of the Spirit, 2:14, then we have the mind of Christ, 2:16, and near the bottom, I follow Paul, 3:4. The number 79 is written in Greek letters at the top.

HOW IT WAS FOUND. In the early 1930s, dealers in Egypt sold the pages in batches. No one knows for sure where they were dug up. The collector Chester Beatty bought some for his library in Dublin, Ireland, and the University of Michigan bought others, including this page. Scholars matched them up and found they were one book. Frederic Kenyon published it from 1934 to 1937.

WHAT IS INSIDE. The whole book once had about 104 sheets, each written on both sides, and 86 survive. This one sheet holds only 1 Corinthians 2:11 to 3:5. Hebrews comes right after Romans, so the copyist thought Paul wrote it. Look for short words with a line over them. Copyists wrote holy

names like God, Lord and Jesus that way, a habit Christians used to show honor to God's name. Most date it to about AD 200, about 150 years after Paul wrote. One scholar argued for about AD 80, but few agree.

Historical Setting

Corinth sat on a narrow strip of land between two seas, with a harbor on each side, Lechaion to the west and Cenchrea to the east. Rome flattened the old Greek city in 146 BC, and Julius Caesar rebuilt it as a Roman colony in 44 BC. By Paul's day it was rich, busy and famous for loose living. Every two years it hosted the Isthmian Games. Paul came about AD 50 to 52 and planted a church, and the Gallio inscription at Delphi dates his trial there, Acts 18:12. This is really at least his second letter to them. The first one, 5:9, is lost.

What Was Going Wrong

FAN CLUBS. Believers picked favorite preachers and split into teams, 1:12.
SEXUAL SIN. A man was sleeping with his father's wife, and the church bragged about it, 5:1 to 2.
LAWSUITS. Believers were dragging each other into pagan courts, 6:1.
A DRUNK COMMUNION. At the Lord's Supper some got drunk while the poor went hungry, 11:21.
SHOWING OFF GIFTS. Everyone spoke in tongues at once, and outsiders thought they were crazy, 14:23.
NO RESURRECTION. Some said the dead are not raised at all, 15:12.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Corinthians is a letter to a messy church that Paul still loves. They are gifted, smart and full of energy, but they are also proud, divided and copying the city around them. Paul answers report after report and question after question. Every answer points back to the same place: the cross, the Holy Spirit, love for each other and the risen Jesus. If your church has ever had a fight, this letter is for you.

1 Corinthians at a Glance

CH 1 to 4	**STOP THE FAN CLUBS** Christ is not divided. Leaders are only servants.
CH 5 to 6	**CLEAN UP THE CHURCH** Sexual sin, lawsuits and a body that is God's temple.
CH 7 to 10	**ANSWERS TO YOUR LETTER** Marriage, singleness, idol food and Christian freedom.
CH 11 to 14	**WHEN YOU MEET** Worship, the Lord's Supper, spiritual gifts and love.
CH 15 to 16	**HE IS RISEN** The resurrection, then an offering and goodbyes.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 CORINTHIANS 1:23 TO 24 We preach Christ crucified. To the world it is foolish, but to those who are called He is the power and wisdom of God.

1 CORINTHIANS 5:7 Christ our Passover lamb has been sacrificed. Points back to Exodus 12.

1 CORINTHIANS 10:4 They drank from the spiritual rock that went with them, and that rock was Christ. Points back to Exodus 17:6.

1 CORINTHIANS 15:3 TO 4 Christ died for our sins, was buried and was raised on the third day, according to the Scriptures.

What to Watch for in 1 Corinthians

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (5)	1:18-25, 1:30, 3:11, 15:20
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (6)	5:7, 10:1-2, 10:4, 15:4, 15:21-23
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	14:21-22
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	15:24-28, 15:51-54
THE HEART (1)	4:5
MIRACLES (2)	12:8-10, 15:5-8
DEMONIC (10)	5:5, 5:10-11, 6:9, 8:1-13, 10:7, 10:14, 10:19-21 and 2 more
NOTABLE (7)	2:9, 9:22, 10:13, 13:1-13, 15:3, 15:33, 16:22
JESUS SPEAKING (2 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE OLDEST CREED
Paul says he passed on what he had received: Christ died, was buried, was raised and appeared, 15:3 to 8. Many scholars, even skeptics, date this creed to within a few years of the cross. More than five hundred people saw the risen Jesus, and most were still alive to ask.

THE WEDDING CHAPTER
Chapter 13 is read at weddings all over the world. Paul wrote it to a church at war with itself, to say gifts without love are just noise.

A GREEK COMEDY
Bad company corrupts good character, 15:33, is a line from Menander, a Greek writer of comedies, about 300 BC.

AN ARAMAIC PRAYER
In the Greek, Come, O Lord in 16:22 is one Aramaic word, Maranatha. Paul did not even translate it. The first believers prayed it in the language Jesus spoke.

Did Anybody Listen?

Some did and some did not. Paul made a painful visit and wrote a tear stained letter, 2 Corinthians 2:1 to 4. In 2 Corinthians he is glad many turned around, but new troublemakers showed up. About AD 96, Clement of Rome wrote to Corinth because they were fighting again and told them to reread Paul's letter about factions. The church in Corinth lasted, and its letters became some of the most read pages in the Bible.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul writes to a church he planted, and the news is not good. They have split into fan clubs: I follow Paul, I follow Apollos, I follow Peter. Paul asks, Is Christ divided? Then he says the cross looks foolish to the world, but God's foolishness is wiser than the smartest people on earth.

GREETINGS FROM PAUL AND SOSTHENES // ACTS 18:1–11; 2 CORINTHIANS 1:1–2

1 Paul, called to be an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and our brother Sosthenes,

2 To the church of God in Corinth, to those sanctified in Christ Jesus and called to be holy, together with all those everywhere who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, their Lord and ours:

3 Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

THANKSGIVING // PHILIPPIANS 1:3–11; COLOSSIANS 1:3–14

4 I always thank my God for you because of the grace He has given you in Christ Jesus. 5 For in Him you have been enriched in every way, in all speech and all knowledge, 6 because our testimony about Christ was confirmed in you.

7 Therefore you do not lack any spiritual gift as you eagerly await the revelation of our Lord Jesus Christ. 8 He will sustain you to the end, so that you will be blameless on the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. 9 God, who has called you into fellowship with His Son Jesus Christ our Lord, is faithful.

UNITY IN THE CHURCH // PSALM 133:1–3; EPHESIANS 4:1–16

10 I appeal to you, brothers, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that all of you agree together, so that there may be no divisions among you and that you may be united in mind and conviction. 11 My brothers, some from Chloe's household have informed me that there are quarrels among you. 12 What I mean is this: Individuals among you are saying, "I follow Paul," "I follow Apollos," "I follow Cephas," or "I follow Christ."

13 Is Christ divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Were you baptized into the name of Paul? 14 I thank God that I did not baptize any of you except Crispus and Gaius, 15 so no one can say that you were baptized into my name. 16 Yes, I also baptized the household of Stephanas; beyond that I do not remember if I baptized anyone else. 17 For Christ did not send me to baptize, but to preach the gospel, not with words of wisdom, lest the cross of Christ be emptied of its power.

THE MESSAGE OF THE CROSS

18 For the message of the cross is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is the power of God. 19 For it is written:

> *"I will destroy the wisdom of the wise;*
> *the intelligence of the intelligent I will frustrate."*

20 Where is the wise man? Where is the scribe? Where is the philosopher of this age? Has not God made foolish the wisdom of the world? 21 For since in the wisdom of God the world through its wisdom did not know Him, God was pleased through the foolishness of what was preached to save those who believe.

22 Jews demand signs and Greeks search for wisdom, 23 but we preach Christ crucified, a stumbling block to Jews and foolishness to Gentiles, 24 but to those who are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God and the wisdom of God.

25 For the foolishness of God is wiser than man's wisdom, and the weakness of God is stronger than man's strength.

WISDOM FROM GOD

26 Brothers, consider the time of your calling: Not many of you were wise by human

- **1CO 1:2 [FIELD NOTES]** Erastus, the city treasurer of Corinth, Romans 16:23, may be named on a stone pavement found here. See The Erastus Inscription Field Notes page in Acts, p.1779.
- **1CO 1:18 [FULFILLS]** The wisdom of the wise would be confounded ← IS 29:14 · MEDIUM p.1095
- **1CO 1:18 [NOTE]** Isaiah 29:14 is quoted in 1:19. God has always turned human wisdom upside down. The cross looked like weakness and defeat, but it was the power of God to save.
- **1CO 1:19 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 29:14 p.1095
- **1CO 1:24 [FULFILLS]** Called Mighty God (El Gibor) ← IS 9:6 p.1072

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

standards; not many were powerful; not many were of noble birth. 27 But God chose the foolish things of the world to shame the wise; God chose the weak things of the world to shame the strong. 28 He chose the lowly and despised things of the world, and the things that are not, to nullify the things that are, 29 so that no one may boast in His presence.

30 It is because of Him that you are in Christ Jesus, who has become for us wisdom from God: our righteousness, holiness, and redemption. 31 Therefore, as it is written: *"Let him who boasts boast in the Lord."*

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul did not come to Corinth with fancy speeches. He came preaching Jesus and Him crucified, with the power of the Spirit. God's wisdom is hidden from the world but shown to us by His Spirit. No eye has seen what God has prepared for those who love Him.

PAUL'S MESSAGE BY THE SPIRIT'S POWER

1 When I came to you, brothers, I did not come with eloquence or wisdom as I proclaimed to you the testimony about God. 2 For I resolved to know nothing while I was with you except Jesus Christ and Him crucified. 3 I came to you in weakness and fear, and with much trembling. 4 My message and my preaching were not with persuasive words of wisdom, but with a demonstration of the Spirit's power, 5 so that your faith would not rest on men's wisdom, but on God's power.

SPIRITUAL WISDOM // EPHESIANS 1:15–23

6 Among the mature, however, we speak a message of wisdom—but not the wisdom of this age or of the rulers of this age, who are coming to nothing. 7 No, we speak of the mysterious and hidden wisdom of God, which He destined for our glory before time began. 8 None of the rulers of this age understood it. For if they had, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. 9 Rather, as it is written:

"No eye has seen,
no ear has heard,
no heart has imagined,
what God has prepared for those who love Him."

10 But God has revealed it to us by the Spirit.

The Spirit searches all things, even the deep things of God. 11 For who among men knows the thoughts of man except his own spirit within him? So too, no one knows the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God. 12 We have not received the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is from God, that we may understand what God has freely given us. 13 And this is what we speak, not in words taught us by human wisdom, but in words taught by the Spirit, expressing spiritual truths in spiritual words.

14 The natural man does not accept the things that come from the Spirit of God. For they are foolishness to him, and he cannot understand them, because they are spiritually discerned. 15 The spiritual man judges all things, but he himself is not subject to anyone's judgment. 16 *"For who has known the mind of the Lord, so as to instruct Him?"* But we have the mind of Christ.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

The Corinthians are acting like baby Christians, still on milk. Paul planted, Apollos watered, but God made it grow. Jesus is the only foundation. Everyone's work will be tested by fire someday, and you are God's temple, so do not wreck it.

GOD'S FELLOW WORKERS // HEBREWS 5:11–14

1 Brothers, I could not address you as spiritual, but as worldly—as infants in Christ. 2 I gave you milk, not solid food, for you were not yet ready for solid food. In fact, you are still not ready, 3 for you are still worldly. For since there is jealousy and dissension among you, are you not

1CO 1:30 [FULFILLS] His name would be Yahweh Our Righteousness ← JER 23:5-6 p.1179
1CO 1:31 [QUOTES] Quotes ← JER 9:24 p.1162

1CO 2:9 [NOTABLE] Often quoted about heaven, but keep reading. Verse 10 says God has revealed these things to us by His Spirit. It is not only about someday. It is about what the Spirit shows believers now.
1CO 2:9 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 64:4; 65:17 p.1139
1CO 2:16 [QUOTES] Direct ← IS 40:13 p.1109

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

worldly? Are you not walking in the way of man? 4 For when one of you says, "I follow Paul," and another, "I follow Apollos," are you not mere men?

5 What then is Apollos? And what is Paul? They are servants through whom you believed, as the Lord has assigned to each his role. 6 I planted the seed and Apollos watered it, but God made it grow. 7 So neither he who plants nor he who waters is anything, but only God, who makes things grow. 8 He who plants and he who waters are one in purpose, and each will be rewarded according to his own labor. 9 For we are God's fellow workers; you are God's field, God's building.

CHRIST OUR FOUNDATION // ISAIAH 28:14–22; EPHESIANS 2:19–22; 1 PETER 2:1–8

10 By the grace God has given me, I laid a foundation as an expert builder, and someone else is building on it. But each one must be careful how he builds. 11 For no one can lay a foundation other than the one already laid, which is Jesus Christ.

12 If anyone builds on this foundation using gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, or straw, 13 his workmanship will be evident, because the Day will bring it to light. It will be revealed with fire, and the fire will prove the quality of each man's work. 14 If what he has built survives, he will receive a reward. 15 If it is burned up, he will suffer loss. He himself will be saved, but only as if through the flames.

GOD'S TEMPLE AND GOD'S WISDOM // ROMANS 12:1–8; 1 CORINTHIANS 6:18–20

16 Do you not know that you yourselves are God's temple, and that God's Spirit dwells in you? 17 If anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy him; for God's temple is holy, and you are that temple.

18 Let no one deceive himself. If any of you thinks he is wise in this age, he should become a fool, so that he may become wise. 19 For the wisdom of this world is foolishness in God's sight. As it is written: *"He catches the wise in their craftiness."* 20 And again, *"The Lord knows that the thoughts of the wise are futile."*

21 Therefore, stop boasting in men. All things are yours, 22 whether Paul or Apollos or Cephas or the world or life or death or the present or the future. All of them belong to you, 23 and you belong to Christ, and Christ belongs to God.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Leaders are just servants and managers of God's secrets. Paul gets sarcastic: you are already rich, already kings! Meanwhile the apostles are hungry, beaten and treated like the world's garbage. He is coming to visit soon. Should he bring a stick or a gentle spirit?

SERVANTS OF CHRIST

1 So then, men ought to regard us as servants of Christ and stewards of the mysteries of God. 2 Now it is required of stewards that they be found faithful.

3 I care very little, however, if I am judged by you or by any human court. In fact, I do not even judge myself. 4 My conscience is clear, but that does not vindicate me. It is the Lord who judges me.

5 Therefore judge nothing before the appointed time; wait until the Lord comes. He will bring to light what is hidden in darkness and will expose the motives of men's hearts. At that time each will receive his praise from God.

6 Brothers, I have applied these things to myself and Apollos for your benefit, so that you may learn from us not to go beyond what is written. Then you will not take pride in one man over another. 7 For who makes you so superior? What do you have that you did not receive? And if you did receive it, why do you boast as though you did not?

8 Already you have all you want. Already you have become rich. Without us, you have become kings. How I wish you really

1CO 3:11 [FULFILLS] The sure foundation ← IS 28:16 p.1094
1CO 3:19 [QUOTES] Direct ← JOB 5:13 p.844
1CO 3:20 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 94:11 p.947
1CO 4:5 [HEART] When the Lord comes He will expose the motives of the heart.
1CO 4:5 [FIELD NOTES] Paul stood before the judge Gallio at the Bema, the raised speaking platform in the forum of Corinth, Acts 18:12. See the Gallio Field Notes page in Acts, p.1775.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC

were kings, so that we might be kings with you! 9 For it seems to me that God has displayed us apostles at the end of the procession, like prisoners appointed for death. We have become a spectacle to the whole world, to angels as well as to men.

10 We are fools for Christ, but you are wise in Christ. We are weak, but you are strong. You are honored, but we are dishonored. 11 To this very hour we are hungry and thirsty, we are poorly clothed, we are brutally treated, we are homeless. 12 We work hard with our own hands. When we are vilified, we bless; when we are persecuted, we endure it; 13 when we are slandered, we answer gently. Up to this moment we have become the scum of the earth, the refuse of the world.

PAUL'S FATHERLY WARNING

14 I am not writing this to shame you, but to warn you as my beloved children. 15 Even if you have ten thousand guardians in Christ, you do not have many fathers; for in Christ Jesus I became your father through the gospel. 16 Therefore I urge you to imitate me. 17 That is why I have sent you Timothy, my beloved and faithful child in the Lord. He will remind you of my way of life in Christ Jesus, which is exactly what I teach everywhere in every church.

18 Some of you have become arrogant, as if I were not coming to you. 19 But I will come to you shortly, if the Lord is willing, and then I will find out not only what these arrogant people are saying, but what power they have. 20 For the kingdom of God is not a matter of talk but of power. 21 Which do you prefer? Shall I come to you with a rod, or in love and with a gentle spirit?

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

A man in the church is sleeping with his father's wife, and the church is proud of how open minded it is. Paul says remove him so he can be saved in the end. A little yeast spreads through the whole batch. Christ our Passover lamb has been sacrificed.

IMMORALITY REBUKED // LEVITICUS 20:10–21; PROVERBS 5:1–23

1 It is actually reported that there is sexual immorality among you, and of a kind that is intolerable even among pagans: A man has his father's wife. 2 And you are proud! Shouldn't you rather have been stricken with grief and have removed from your fellowship the man who did this?

3 Although I am absent from you in body, I am present with you in spirit, and I have already pronounced judgment on the one who did this, just as if I were present. 4 When you are assembled in the name of our Lord Jesus and I am with you in spirit, along with the power of the Lord Jesus, 5 hand this man over to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, so that his spirit may be saved on the Day of the Lord.

6 Your boasting is not good. Do you not know that a little leaven works through the whole batch of dough? 7 Get rid of the old leaven, that you may be a new unleavened batch, as you really are. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed. 8 Therefore let us keep the feast, not with the old bread, leavened with malice and wickedness, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and of truth.

EXPEL THE IMMORAL BROTHER

9 I wrote you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people. 10 I was not including the sexually immoral of this world, or the greedy and swindlers, or idolaters. In that case you would have to leave this world. 11 But now I am writing you not to associate with anyone who claims to be a brother but is sexually immoral or greedy, an idolater or a verbal abuser, a drunkard or a swindler. With such a man do not even eat.

- **1CO 5:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 18:8 p.202
- **1CO 5:5 [DEMONIC]** Hand this man over to Satan for the destruction of the flesh
- **1CO 5:5 [NOTE]** This is church discipline, not a curse. Put out of the church, the man is back in the world where Satan rules, 1 John 5:19. The goal is that he hits bottom and his spirit is saved. Many believe 2 Corinthians 2:6 to 8 shows he turned around and was welcomed back.
- **1CO 5:7 [FULFILLS]** The Passover ordinance fulfilled in Christ our Passover ← EX 12:21-27 p.136
- **1CO 5:10 [DEMONIC]** Do not associate with a believer who is an idolater

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

12 What business of mine is it to judge
those outside the church? Are you not to
judge those inside? 13 God will judge those
outside. *"Expel the wicked man from among
you."*

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Believers are suing each other in pagan courts. Paul says it is better to be cheated. Then a hard list of sins that keep people out of God's kingdom, followed by good news: and that is what some of you were. You were washed. Run from sexual sin, because your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit.

LAWSUITS AMONG BELIEVERS

1 If any of you has a grievance against another, how dare he go to law before the
unrighteous instead of before the saints! 2
Do you not know that the saints will judge
the world? And if you are to judge the
world, are you not competent to judge
trivial cases? 3 Do you not know that we
will judge angels? How much more the
things of this life!

4 So if you need to settle everyday matters, do you appoint as judges those of no
standing in the church? 5 I say this to your
shame. Is there really no one among you
wise enough to arbitrate between his
brothers? 6 Instead, one brother goes to
law against another, and this in front of
unbelievers!

7 The very fact that you have lawsuits
among you means that you are thoroughly
defeated already. Why not rather be
wronged? Why not rather be cheated? 8
Instead, you yourselves cheat and do
wrong, even against your own brothers!

MEMBERS OF CHRIST

9 Do you not know that the wicked will not
inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be de-
ceived: Neither the sexually immoral, nor
idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who
submit to or perform homosexual acts, 10
nor thieves, nor the greedy, nor drunk-
ards, nor verbal abusers, nor swindlers,
will inherit the kingdom of God. 11 And that
is what some of you were. But you were
washed, you were sanctified, you were
justified, in the name of the Lord Jesus
Christ and by the Spirit of our God.

12 "Everything is permissible for me," but
not everything is beneficial. "Everything is
permissible for me," but I will not be mas-
tered by anything. 13 "Food for the stom-
ach and the stomach for food," but God
will destroy them both. The body is not in-
tended for sexual immorality, but for the
Lord, and the Lord for the body. 14 By His
power God raised the Lord from the dead,
and He will raise us also.

15 Do you not know that your bodies are
members of Christ? Shall I then take the
members of Christ and unite them with a
prostitute? Never! 16 Or don't you know
that he who unites himself with a prosti-
tute is one with her in body? For it is said,
"The two will become one flesh." 17 But he who
unites himself with the Lord is one with
Him in spirit.

THE TEMPLE OF THE HOLY SPIRIT // ROMANS 12:1–8; 1 CORINTHIANS 3:16–23

18 Flee from sexual immorality. Every other
sin a man can commit is outside his body,
but he who sins sexually sins against his
own body. 19 Do you not know that your
body is a temple of the Holy Spirit who is
in you, whom you have received from
God? You are not your own; 20 you were
bought at a price. Therefore glorify God
with your body.

■ **1CO 5:13 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← DT 17:7 p.307
1CO 6:9 [DEMONIC] Idolaters will not inherit the kingdom of God
■ **1CO 6:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 18:22; 20:13 p.204
■ **1CO 6:9 [NOTE]** This list is for everyone, not one group. Next to sexual sin it names thieves, the greedy, drunkards, verbal abusers and swindlers. Many churches treat one sin on this list as the one that sends you to hell and shrug at the rest. That is a double standard. Then comes 6:11: and that is what some of you were. But you were washed. See the notes on Romans 1:26 to 27, p.1801.
■ **1CO 6:9 [TEXT]** The Greek here has two rare words. Malakoi means soft ones. Arsenokoitai joins the words for man and bed, and this is its first known use. Many think Paul built it from the Greek of Leviticus 18:22 and 20:13. Most read the two together as the passive and active partner in same sex acts. Others argue they meant something narrower, like men who sold sex or used boys.
■ **1CO 6:12 [NOTE]** CHRISTIAN FREEDOM. Everything is permissible was a Corinthian slogan, and Paul quotes it back to them. He does not deny it. He adds three tests: Is it helpful? Will it master me? 6:12. Does it build others up? 10:23. And remember your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, 6:19. See the Christian freedom note at Romans 14:1, p.1816.
■ **1CO 6:16 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 2:24 p.50
■ **1CO 6:18 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Acrocorinth and the Temple of Aphrodite Field Notes page, p.1829.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE TEMPLE · LOW FOR THE 1,000 WOMEN

ACROCORINTH AND THE TEMPLE OF APHRODITE

1 CORINTHIANS 6:18 TO 20



The Acrocorinth, the mountain above Corinth. Photo Focal-Point, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

The Acrocorinth is a huge rock mountain that towers about 1,880 feet over ancient Corinth. On its top stood a small temple of Aphrodite, the Greek goddess of love and sex. You could see it from almost anywhere in the city.

HOW OLD IT IS

The temple on top goes back to Greek times, hundreds of years before Paul. A version of it still stood in his day. The walls you see on the mountain now were built much later by Byzantine, Frankish, Venetian and Turkish armies.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

The mountain was never lost. Carl Blegen of the American School of Classical Studies dug the temple area on the summit in 1926 and found its foundations.

THE FAMOUS CLAIM

The Greek writer Strabo, about the time Jesus was born, said the temple of Aphrodite once owned more than a thousand temple prostitutes. Preachers often say this is why Paul warns Corinth about sexual sin.

THE HONEST SIDE

Strabo was describing the old Greek city before Rome destroyed it in 146 BC, not Paul's Roman Corinth. The temple on top was small, and most historians think the thousand is an old tale or a big exaggeration. Corinth's bad name was real, though. Greeks even had a verb, to corinthianize, meaning to sleep around.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Paul's readers lived under a mountain topped by a temple to a sex goddess, in a city known for loose living. That helps explain why 1 Corinthians spends so much time on sexual sin, 5:1, 6:18 and 7:2.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing found proves temple prostitution in Paul's day. The sin Paul names in Corinth came from the church's own members, not just the temple on the hill.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Now Paul answers their letter. Married couples should not hold out on each other. Being single is a gift, and so is being married. Do not divorce. If an unbelieving spouse leaves, let them go. Time is short, so live for the Lord whatever your situation.

PRINCIPLES OF MARRIAGE

1 Now for the matters you wrote about: It is
good to abstain from sexual relations. 2
But because there is so much sexual im-
morality, each man should have his own
wife, and each woman her own husband.
3 The husband should fulfill his marital
duty to his wife, and likewise the wife to
her husband. 4 The wife does not have au-
thority over her own body, but the hus-
band. Likewise the husband does not
have authority over his own body, but the
wife.
5 Do not deprive each other, except by
mutual consent and for a time, so you may
devote yourselves to prayer. Then come
together again, so that Satan will not
tempt you through your lack of self-con-
trol. 6 I say this as a concession, not as a
command. 7 I wish that all men were as I
am. But each man has his own gift from
God; one has this gift, another has that.
8 Now to the unmarried and widows I say
this: It is good for them to remain unmar-
ried, as I am. 9 But if they cannot control
themselves, let them marry. For it is better
to marry than to burn with passion.

1CO 7:1 [NOTE] Now Paul answers their letter. It is good to abstain may be their own slogan, which he corrects. Married couples should not hold out on each other, 7:3 to 5. Staying single is a gift, 7:7, and so is marriage. Do not divorce, which Paul says comes from Jesus Himself, 7:10 to 11. If an unbelieving spouse leaves, the believer is not bound, 7:15. Many churches read that as freedom to remarry. Others say no.

10 To the married I give this command (not
I, but the Lord): A wife must not separate
from her husband. 11 But if she does, she
must remain unmarried or else be recon-
ciled to her husband. And a husband must
not divorce his wife.

12 To the rest I say this (I, not the Lord): If a
brother has an unbelieving wife and she is
willing to live with him, he must not di-
vorce her. 13 And if a woman has an unbe-
lieving husband and he is willing to live
with her, she must not divorce him. 14 For
the unbelieving husband is sanctified
through his believing wife, and the unbe-
lieving wife is sanctified through her be-
lieving husband. Otherwise your children
would be unclean, but now they are holy.

15 But if the unbeliever leaves, let him go.
The believing brother or sister is not
bound in such cases. God has called you
to live in peace. 16 How do you know, wife,
whether you will save your husband? Or
how do you know, husband, whether you
will save your wife?

LIVE YOUR CALLING

17 Regardless, each one should lead the
life that the Lord has assigned to him and
to which God has called him. This is what
I prescribe in all the churches. 18 Was a
man already circumcised when he was
called? He should not become uncircum-
cised. Was a man still uncircumcised
when called? He should not be circum-
cised. 19 Circumcision is nothing and un-
circumcision is nothing. Keeping God's
commandments is what counts.

20 Each one should remain in the situation
he was in when he was called. 21 Were you
a slave when you were called? Do not let
it concern you—but if you can gain your
freedom, take the opportunity. 22 For he
who was a slave when he was called by
the Lord is the Lord's freedman. Con-
versely, he who was a free man when he
was called is Christ's slave.

23 You were bought at a price; do not be-
come slaves of men. 24 Brothers, each one
should remain in the situation he was in
when God called him.

THE UNMARRIED AND WIDOWED

25 Now about virgins, I have no command
from the Lord, but I give a judgment as
one who by the Lord's mercy is trustwor-
thy. 26 Because of the present crisis, I
think it is good for a man to remain as he
is. 27 Are you committed to a wife? Do not
seek to be released. Are you free of com-
mitment? Do not look for a wife. 28 But if
you do marry, you have not sinned. And if
a virgin marries, she has not sinned. But
those who marry will face troubles in this
life, and I want to spare you this.

29 What I am saying, brothers, is that the
time is short. From now on those who
have wives should live as if they had
none; 30 those who weep, as if they did
not; those who are joyful, as if they were
not; those who make a purchase, as if
they had nothing; 31 and those who use the
things of this world, as if not dependent
on them. For this world in its present form
is passing away.

32 I want you to be free from concern. The
unmarried man is concerned about the
work of the Lord, how he can please the
Lord. 33 But the married man is concerned
about the affairs of this world, how he can
please his wife, 34 and his interests are di-
vided. The unmarried woman or virgin is
concerned about the work of the Lord,
how she can be holy in both body and
spirit. But the married woman is con-
cerned about the affairs of this world, how
she can please her husband.

35 I am saying this for your own good, not
to restrict you, but in order to promote
proper decorum and undivided devotion
to the Lord.

36 However, if someone thinks he is acting
inappropriately toward his betrothed, and
if she is beyond her youth and they ought
to marry, let him do as he wishes; he is
not sinning; they should get married. 37 But
the man who is firmly established in his
heart and under no constraint, with con-
trol over his will and resolve in his heart
not to marry the virgin, he will do well.

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

38 So then, he who marries the virgin does
well, but he who does not marry her does
even better.

39 A wife is bound to her husband as long
as he lives. But if her husband dies, she is
free to marry anyone she wishes, as long
as he belongs to the Lord. 40 In my judg-
ment, however, she is happier if she re-
mains as she is. And I think that I too have
the Spirit of God.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Can Christians eat meat that was offered to idols? An idol is nothing, and there is only one God. But knowledge puffs up and love builds up. If your freedom makes a weaker believer fall, you have sinned against Christ. Paul says he would go vegetarian forever before he did that.

FOOD SACRIFICED TO IDOLS // EZEKIEL 14:1–11; ROMANS 14:13–23

1 Now about food sacrificed to idols: We
know that we all have knowledge. Knowl-
edge puffs up, but love builds up. 2 The
one who thinks he knows something does
not yet know as he ought to know. 3 But
the one who loves God is known by God.

4 So about eating food sacrificed to idols:
We know that an idol is nothing at all in
the world, and that there is no God but
one. 5 For even if there are so-called gods,
whether in heaven or on earth (as there
are many so-called gods and lords), 6 yet
for us there is but one God, the Father,
from whom all things came and for whom
we exist. And there is but one Lord, Jesus
Christ, through whom all things came and
through whom we exist.

7 But not everyone has this knowledge.
Some people are still so accustomed to
idols that they eat such food as if it were
sacrificed to an idol. And since their con-
science is weak, it is defiled. 8 But food
does not bring us closer to God: We are
no worse if we do not eat, and no better if
we do.

9 Be careful, however, that your freedom
does not become a stumbling block to the
weak. 10 For if someone with a weak con-
science sees you who are well informed
eating in an idol's temple, will he not be
encouraged to eat food sacrificed to
idols? 11 So this weak brother, for whom
Christ died, is destroyed by your knowl-
edge. 12 By sinning against your brothers
in this way and wounding their weak con-
science, you sin against Christ.

13 Therefore, if what I eat causes my
brother to stumble, I will never eat meat
again, so that I will not cause him to stum-
ble.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul had every right to be paid for preaching, but he worked for free so nothing would block the gospel. He became all things to all people to win some. Life is a race, so run to win. Athletes train hard for a wreath that dies in a week. We run for a crown that lasts forever.

THE RIGHTS OF AN APOSTLE // DEUTERONOMY 18:1–8

1 Am I not free? Am I not an apostle? Have
I not seen Jesus our Lord? Are you your-
selves not my workmanship in the Lord? 2
Even if I am not an apostle to others,
surely I am to you. For you are the seal of
my apostleship in the Lord.

3 This is my defense to those who scruti-
nize me: 4 Have we no right to food and to
drink? 5 Have we no right to take along a
believing wife, as do the other apostles
and the Lord's brothers and Cephas? 6 Or
are Barnabas and I the only apostles who
must work for a living?

7 Who serves as a soldier at his own ex-
pense? Who plants a vineyard and does
not eat of its fruit? Who tends a flock and
does not drink of its milk?

8 Do I say this from a human perspective?
Doesn't the Law say the same thing? 9 For
it is written in the Law of Moses: *"Do not
muzzle an ox while it is treading out the
grain."* Is it about oxen that God is con-
cerned? 10 Isn't He actually speaking on
our behalf? Indeed, this was written for
us, because when the plowman plows

1CO 8:1 [DEMONIC] Paul teaches about eating food sacrificed to idols

1CO 9:9 [QUOTES] Direct ← DT 25:4 p.315

NOTABLE

and the thresher threshes, they should also expect to share in the harvest.

11 If we have sown spiritual seed among you, is it too much for us to reap a material harvest from you? 12 If others have this right to your support, shouldn't we have it all the more? But we did not exercise this right. Instead, we put up with anything rather than hinder the gospel of Christ.

13 Do you not know that those who work in the temple eat of its food, and those who serve at the altar partake of its offerings? 14 In the same way, the Lord has prescribed that those who preach the gospel should receive their living from the gospel. 15 But I have not used any of these rights. And I am not writing this to suggest that something be done for me. Indeed, I would rather die than let anyone nullify my boast.

16 Yet when I preach the gospel, I have no reason to boast, because I am obligated to preach. Woe to me if I do not preach the gospel! 17 If my preaching is voluntary, I have a reward. But if it is not voluntary, I am still entrusted with a responsibility. 18 What then is my reward? That in preaching the gospel I may offer it free of charge, and so not use up my rights in preaching it.

PAUL THE SERVANT TO ALL

19 Though I am free of obligation to anyone, I make myself a slave to everyone, to win as many as possible. 20 To the Jews I became like a Jew, to win the Jews. To those under the law I became like one under the law (though I myself am not under the law), to win those under the law. 21 To those without the law I became like one without the law (though I am not outside the law of God but am under the law of Christ), to win those without the law. 22 To the weak I became weak, to win the weak. I have become all things to all people so that by all possible means I might save some.

1CO 9:20 [FIELD NOTES] A stone from a synagogue in Corinth was found. See The Synagogue of the Hebrews Field Notes page, p.1832.

1CO 9:22 [NOTABLE] Paul changed his style, not his message. With Jews he lived like a Jew, and with Gentiles like a Gentile, so he could reach people right where they were.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE SYNAGOGUE OF THE HEBREWS

1 CORINTHIANS 9:20 · ACTS 18:4 TO 8



The synagogue stone in the museum at Ancient Corinth. Photo Mark Landon, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A broken marble stone, probably from over a doorway, carved with the Greek words SYNAGOGUE OF THE HEBREWS. Only the middle letters survive, and the rest are filled in by experts.

HOW OLD IT IS

The date is debated. When it was found, some scholars thought it came from Paul's time. Most now date the letters later, somewhere between AD 100 and 400. It may mark a later building on the same spot, or a different synagogue.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

American School archaeologists found it in 1898 near the bottom of the Lechaion Road, the main street that led into the forum of Corinth.

WHAT THE BIBLE SAYS

Paul preached in the synagogue in Corinth every Sabbath, Acts 18:4. When he was pushed out, he moved next door to the house of Titius Justus. Crispus, the synagogue leader, believed, Acts 18:8, and Paul baptized him, 1 Corinthians 1:14. A later leader, Sosthenes, was beaten at Gallio's court, Acts 18:17, and may be the Sosthenes of 1:1.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the Archaeological Museum at Ancient Corinth, Greece.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

There was a Jewish community in Corinth with its own synagogue, just as Acts says. It reminds us that Paul's church started with Jews and God fearing Gentiles before it reached the whole city. To the Jews I became like a Jew, Paul said, 9:20.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Because the stone is probably later, it may not be from the synagogue where Paul preached.

23 I do all this for the sake of the gospel, so
that I may share in its blessings.

RUN YOUR RACE TO WIN

24 Do you not know that in a race all the
runners run, but only one receives the
prize? Run in such a way as to take the
prize. 25 Everyone who competes in the
games trains with strict discipline. They
do it for a crown that is perishable, but we
do it for a crown that is imperishable. 26
Therefore I do not run aimlessly; I do not
fight like I am beating the air. 27 No, I disci-
pline my body and make it my slave, so
that after I have preached to others, I my-
self will not be disqualified.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE ISTHMIAN GAMES

1 CORINTHIANS 9:24 TO 27



The starting line of the old stadium at Isthmia. The wooden posts show where the starting gate stood. Photo Zde, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS
The ruins of Isthmia, the sanctuary of the sea god Poseidon about 10 miles from Corinth. Every two years it hosted the Isthmian Games, one of the four big Greek games along with the Olympics. Athletes came from all over to run, wrestle, box and race chariots.

HOW OLD IT IS
The games started about 580 BC. The starting line in the photo comes from an older stadium of the 300s BC. When Rome wrecked Corinth in 146 BC the games moved to nearby Sicyon, and they came back to Isthmia around the time of Paul.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
Oscar Broneer of the University of Chicago began digging Isthmia in 1952. He found the temple of Poseidon, two stadiums and a clever starting gate. Ropes held the runners back, and a judge in a pit dropped them all at once.

THE CROWN
Olympic winners got olive leaves. Isthmian winners got a wreath of pine, or in some years dried celery. In a week it was dead. That is Paul's point. Athletes train hard for a crown that is perishable, but we run for a crown that is imperishable, 9:25.

PAUL WAS IN TOWN
Many scholars think the games were held while Paul lived in Corinth, maybe in AD 51. Paul worked as a tentmaker, Acts 18:3, and the crowds needed tents. He may have watched the runners himself.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
At the village of Kyras Vrysi near the Corinth Canal. A small museum on the site shows finds from the sanctuary.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Paul's readers knew exactly what he meant by a race, strict training and a crown that fades. The games were their hometown sport.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS
Israel had God's miracles in the desert and still fell into idols and complaining. Their story is a warning for us. No temptation is too strong, because God always makes a way out. You cannot eat at the Lord's table and the table of demons. Do everything for the glory of God.

WARNINGS FROM ISRAEL'S PAST // NUMBERS 16:41–50; NUMBERS 25:1–5

1 I do not want you to be unaware, broth-
ers, that our forefathers were all under the
cloud, and that they all passed through
the sea. 2 They were all baptized into

1CO 9:24 [FIELD NOTES] See The Isthmian Games Field Notes page, p.1833.

1CO 10:1 [FULFILLS] Israel passed through the sea. Paul calls this a picture of baptism ← EX 14:22 p.141

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

Moses in the cloud and in the sea. 3 They all ate the same spiritual food 4 and drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank from the spiritual rock that accompanied them, and that rock was Christ. 5 Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them, for they were struck down in the wilderness.

6 These things took place as examples to keep us from craving evil things as they did. 7 Do not be idolaters, as some of them were. As it is written: *"The people sat down to eat and drink and got up to indulge in revelry."* 8 We should not commit sexual immorality, as some of them did, and in one day twenty-three thousand of them died. 9 We should not test Christ, as some of them did, and were killed by snakes. 10 And do not complain, as some of them did, and were killed by the destroying angel.

11 Now these things happened to them as examples and were written down as warnings for us, on whom the fulfillment of the ages has come. 12 So the one who thinks he is standing firm should be careful not to fall. 13 No temptation has seized you except what is common to man. And God is faithful; He will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear. But when you are tempted, He will also provide an escape, so that you can stand up under it.

FLEE FROM IDOLATRY // EXODUS 20:22–26

14 Therefore, my beloved, flee from idolatry. 15 I speak to reasonable people; judge for yourselves what I say. 16 Is not the cup of blessing that we bless a participation in the blood of Christ? And is not the bread that we break a participation in the body of Christ? 17 Because there is one loaf, we who are many are one body; for we all partake of the one loaf.

18 Consider the people of Israel: Are not those who eat the sacrifices fellow partakers in the altar? 19 Am I suggesting, then, that food sacrificed to an idol is anything, or that an idol is anything? 20 No, but the sacrifices of pagans are offered to demons, not to God. And I do not want you to be participants with demons. 21 You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons too; you cannot partake in the table of the Lord and the table of demons too. 22 Are we trying to provoke the Lord to jealousy? Are we stronger than He?

ALL TO GOD'S GLORY // 1 PETER 4:1–11

23 "Everything is permissible," but not everything is beneficial. "Everything is permissible," but not everything is edifying. 24 No one should seek his own good, but the good of others.

25 Eat anything sold in the meat market without raising questions of conscience, 26 for, *"The earth is the Lord's, and the fullness thereof."*

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE MEAT MARKET OF CORINTH

1 CORINTHIANS 10:25 TO 28



Ruins of shops in the Roman forum of Corinth. The meat market itself has not been found for sure.

- **1CO 10:4 [FULFILLS]** The Rock that gives life in the wilderness ← EX 17:6 p.145
- **1CO 10:4 [FULFILLS]** Water would flow from the rock for the people ← NUM 20:8 · MEDIUM p.253
- **1CO 10:7 [DEMONIC]** Do not be idolaters like Israel at the golden calf
- **1CO 10:7 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 32:6 p.163
- **1CO 10:13 [NOTABLE]** Your temptation is common, so you are not the only one. God is faithful, and with every temptation He makes a way out. Look for the exit sign.
- **1CO 10:14 [DEMONIC]** My beloved, flee from idolatry
- **1CO 10:19 [DEMONIC]** Paul asks if idol food or an idol is really anything
- **1CO 10:20 [DEMONIC]** Pagan sacrifices offered to demons; cannot partake of the Lord's table and demons' table
- **1CO 10:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DT 32:17 p.328
- **1CO 10:23 [NOTE]** The same slogan as 6:12. See the Christian freedom note there.
- **1CO 10:25 [DEMONIC]** Do not eat food when someone says it was offered to idols
- **1CO 10:25 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Meat Market of Corinth Field Notes page, p.1834.
- **1CO 10:26 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 24:1 p.899

DEMONIC

WHAT IT IS
Two broken Latin inscriptions from Corinth that mention a MACELLUM, a Roman meat and food market, along with a fish market. A rich citizen paid to build it and had his name carved on it.

HOW OLD IT IS
The inscriptions are from the early first century AD, the time of the emperors Augustus and Tiberius. That means the market was standing when Paul lived in Corinth.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND
American School digs at Corinth turned them up in the early 1900s. In 1934 the scholar Henry Cadbury connected them to 1 Corinthians 10:25. Many think the market stood near the Lechaion Road, north of the forum, but the building has not been found for sure.

THE WORD PAUL USED
Paul writes makellon, a Latin word in Greek letters. It is the only time it shows up in the whole New Testament. He used the same word the people of Roman Corinth used for their market.

WHY IT MATTERED
Much of the meat sold in a city like Corinth came from animals sacrificed at temples. Christians asked, Is it a sin to eat it? Paul says an idol is nothing, so buy it and eat it without asking questions, 10:25. But if someone tells you it was offered to idols, skip it for that person's sake, 10:28.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Corinth had a Roman style meat market in Paul's day, just as his advice assumes.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No one knows how much of the meat in this market came from temples. The pieces of the inscriptions do not show where the building stood.

27 If an unbeliever invites you to a meal
and you want to go, eat anything set be-
fore you without raising questions of con-
science. 28 But if someone tells you, "This
food was offered to idols," then do not eat
it, for the sake of the one who told you
and for the sake of conscience— 29 the
other one's conscience, I mean, not your
own. For why should my freedom be de-
termined by someone else's conscience?
30 If I partake in the meal with thankful-
ness, why am I denounced because of
that for which I give thanks?

31 So whether you eat or drink or whatever
you do, do it all to the glory of God. 32 Do
not become a stumbling block, whether to
Jews or Greeks or the church of God— 33
as I also try to please everyone in all I do.
For I am not seeking my own good, but
the good of many, that they may be
saved.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS
Paul tackles head coverings in worship, then something worse. At the Lord's Supper the rich eat first and get drunk while the poor go hungry. Paul reminds them what Jesus said: This is My body, this cup is the new covenant in My blood. Examine yourself before you eat.

ROLES IN WORSHIP

1 You are to imitate me, just as I imitate
Christ.

2 Now I commend you for remembering
me in everything and for maintaining the
traditions, just as I passed them on to you.
3 But I want you to understand that the
head of every man is Christ, and the head
of the woman is man, and the head of
Christ is God.

4 Every man who prays or prophesies with
his head covered dishonors his head. 5
And every woman who prays or prophe-
sies with her head uncovered dishonors
her head, for it is just as if her head were
shaved. 6 If a woman does not cover her
head, she should have her hair cut off.
And if it is shameful for a woman to have
her hair cut or shaved off, she should
cover her head.

7 A man ought not to cover his head, since
he is the image and glory of God; but the

■ **1CO 11:2 [NOTE]** HEAD COVERINGS. In Corinth, how a woman covered her head sent a message about her marriage and her honor, a bit like a wedding ring today. Many believe Paul was keeping Corinthian worship from looking shameful to outsiders, and the lasting point is honor and order. Some churches still have women cover their heads, because Paul ties it to creation and the angels, 11:8 to 10. Notice 11:5: women were praying and prophesying out loud in church.

DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

woman is the glory of man. 8 For man did not come from woman, but woman from man. 9 Neither was man created for woman, but woman for man. 10 For this reason a woman ought to have a sign of authority on her head, because of the angels.

11 In the Lord, however, woman is not independent of man, nor is man independent of woman. 12 For just as woman came from man, so also man is born of woman. But everything comes from God.

13 Judge for yourselves: Is it proper for a woman to pray to God with her head uncovered? 14 Doesn't nature itself teach you that if a man has long hair, it is a disgrace to him, 15 but that if a woman has long hair, it is her glory? For long hair is given to her as a covering. 16 If anyone is inclined to dispute this, we have no other practice, nor do the churches of God.

SHARING IN THE LORD'S SUPPER // MATTHEW 26:20–30; MARK 14:17–26; LUKE 22:14–23

17 In the following instructions I have no praise to offer, because your gatherings do more harm than good. 18 First of all, I hear that when you come together as a church, there are divisions among you, and in part I believe it. 19 And indeed, there must be differences among you to show which of you are approved.

20 Now then, when you come together, it is not the Lord's Supper you eat. 21 For as you eat, each of you goes ahead without sharing his meal. While one remains hungry, another gets drunk. 22 Don't you have your own homes in which to eat and drink? Or do you despise the church of God and humiliate those who have nothing? What can I say to you? Shall I praise you for this? No, I will not!

23 For I received from the Lord what I also passed on to you: The Lord Jesus, on the night He was betrayed, took bread, 24 and when He had given thanks, He broke it and said, "This is My body, which is for you; do this in remembrance of Me." 25 In the same way, after supper He took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in My blood; do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of Me." 26 For as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until He comes.

27 Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. 28 Each one must examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup. 29 For anyone who eats and drinks without recognizing the body eats and drinks judgment on himself. 30 That is why many among you are weak and sick, and a number of you have fallen asleep.

31 Now if we judged ourselves properly, we would not come under judgment. 32 But when we are judged by the Lord, we are being disciplined so that we will not be condemned with the world.

33 So, my brothers, when you come together to eat, wait for one another. 34 If anyone is hungry, he should eat at home, so that when you come together it will not result in judgment. And when I come, I will give instructions about the remaining matters.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

The Holy Spirit gives gifts to every believer, all from the same Spirit. Wisdom, knowledge, faith, healing, miracles, prophecy, telling spirits apart, tongues and interpretation. The church is one body with many parts. The eye cannot tell the hand, I do not need you. Every part matters.

SPIRITUAL GIFTS

1 Now about spiritual gifts, brothers, I do not want you to be uninformed. 2 You know that when you were pagans, you were influenced and led astray to mute idols. 3 Therefore I inform you that no one who is speaking by the Spirit of God says, "Jesus be cursed," and no one can say, "Jesus is Lord," except by the Holy Spirit.

1CO 11:30 [NOTE] Fallen asleep means died. Paul links sickness and death in Corinth to treating the Lord's Supper like a party while the poor went hungry, 11:21 to 22. Not every sickness is a judgment, John 9:3. But take it seriously and examine yourself first, 11:28.

1CO 12:2 [DEMONIC] Before Christ you were led astray to mute idols

MIRACLES

4 There are different gifts, but the same
Spirit. 5 There are different ministries, but
the same Lord. 6 There are different ways
of working, but the same God works all
things in all people.

7 Now to each one the manifestation of the
Spirit is given for the common good. 8 To
one there is given through the Spirit the
message of wisdom, to another the mes-
sage of knowledge by the same Spirit, 9 to
another faith by the same Spirit, to an-
other gifts of healing by that one Spirit, 10
to another the working of miracles, to an-
other prophecy, to another distinguishing
between spirits, to another speaking in
various tongues, and to still another the
interpretation of tongues. 11 All these are
the work of one and the same Spirit, who
apportions them to each one as He deter-
mines.

THE BODY OF CHRIST

12 The body is a unit, though it is com-
posed of many parts. And although its
parts are many, they all form one body. So
it is with Christ. 13 For in one Spirit we were
all baptized into one body, whether Jews
or Greeks, slave or free, and we were all
given one Spirit to drink.

14 For the body does not consist of one
part, but of many. 15 If the foot should say,
"Because I am not a hand, I do not belong
to the body," that would not make it any
less a part of the body. 16 And if the ear
should say, "Because I am not an eye, I do
not belong to the body," that would not
make it any less a part of the body. 17 If the
whole body were an eye, where would the
sense of hearing be? If the whole body
were an ear, where would the sense of
smell be?

18 But in fact, God has arranged the mem-
bers of the body, every one of them, ac-
cording to His design. 19 If they were all
one part, where would the body be? 20 As
it is, there are many parts, but one body.

21 The eye cannot say to the hand, "I do
not need you." Nor can the head say to
the feet, "I do not need you." 22 On the
contrary, the parts of the body that seem
to be weaker are indispensable, 23 and the
parts we consider less honorable, we
treat with greater honor. And our unpre-
sentable parts are treated with special
modesty, 24 whereas our presentable parts
have no such need.

But God has composed the body and has
given greater honor to the parts that
lacked it, 25 so that there should be no di-
vision in the body, but that its members
should have mutual concern for one an-
other. 26 If one part suffers, every part suf-
fers with it; if one part is honored, every
part rejoices with it.

THE GREATER GIFTS

27 Now you are the body of Christ, and
each of you is a member of it. 28 And in
the church God has appointed first of all
apostles, second prophets, third teachers,
then workers of miracles, and those with
gifts of healing, helping, administration,
and various tongues. 29 Are all apostles?
Are all prophets? Are all teachers? Do all
work miracles? 30 Do all have gifts of heal-
ing? Do all speak in tongues? Do all inter-
pret? 31 But eagerly desire the greater
gifts.

And now I will show you the most excel-
lent way.

1CO 12:8 [MIRACLE] The nine gifts of the Spirit: wisdom, knowledge, faith, healing, miracles, prophecy, telling spirits apart, tongues and interpreting tongues

1CO 12:8 [CHEAT CODE] See The 9 Spiritual Gifts, The Real Life Cheat Code pages, p.1838.

1CO 12:12 [FIELD NOTES] See The Asclepion and Its Body Parts Field Notes page, p.1839.

DEBATED THE REAL LIFE CHEAT CODE

THE 9 SPIRITUAL GIFTS

(The Real Life Cheat Code)

1 CORINTHIANS 12:7 TO 11

UP UP DOWN DOWN

In 1988 kids found a secret code for the video game Contra: up, up, down, down, left, right, left, right, B, A, start. Type it in and you got 30 extra lives. Other games had a God mode that made you nearly unstoppable. Here is the real version. In 1 Corinthians 12, Paul lists nine gifts the Holy Spirit gives to believers. No button combo needed. You just ask, Luke 11:13. It can feel like cheating at life, because you are playing with help from the One who designed the game.

WHO GETS THEM

To each one the Spirit is given for the common good, 12:7. Not just pastors. Not just apostles. Each one. The Spirit decides who gets what, 12:11, and Paul says to eagerly desire them, 14:1. Bible teachers often sort them into three groups of three: gifts that know, gifts that do and gifts that speak.

GIFT 1: A MESSAGE OF WISDOM

God shows you what to do next, like Solomon with the two mothers, 1 Kings 3:16 to 28.

GIFT 2: A MESSAGE OF KNOWLEDGE

God tells you something you had no way of knowing, like Jesus telling the woman at the well about her five husbands, John 4:17 to 19.

GIFT 3: FAITH

Not the faith that saves you, but a sudden, rock solid trust that God is about to do something big, like Elijah calling down fire, 1 Kings 18:36 to 38.

GIFT 4: GIFTS OF HEALING

God heals the sick through you, like Peter and John at the temple gate, Acts 3:6 to 8.

GIFT 5: WORKING OF MIRACLES

God steps in and breaks the normal rules, like Paul shaking off a deadly snake, Acts 28:3 to 6.

GIFT 6: PROPHECY

Speaking a message from God that builds up, encourages and comforts, 14:3.

GIFT 7: TELLING SPIRITS APART

Knowing whether something is from God, from people or from the enemy, like Paul spotting the spirit in the fortune telling girl, Acts 16:16 to 18.

GIFT 8: TONGUES

Speaking in a language you never learned, either a real human one like Acts 2, or praying in the Spirit, 14:2.

GIFT 9: INTERPRETING TONGUES

God gives the meaning of a message in tongues so the whole church is built up, 14:13.

WHY GOD GIVES THEM

Not to make anyone look important. The Corinthians were showing off, and Paul had to tell them it is all for the common good, 12:7. That is why chapter 13, the love chapter, sits right in the middle of the gifts. A cheat code used to show off is not what God had in mind.

The Cheat Code: Still Working?

1 CORINTHIANS 1:7 · 12:7 · 14:1

DID THE CODE EXPIRE?

Many teachers say the gifts were only needed until the Bible was written, and then they stopped. That view is called cessationism. But look at who Paul was writing to. Not the twelve apostles. Not Mark, Luke, James or Jude. He was writing to regular believers in Corinth: dock workers, slaves, shop owners and a few rich families. None of them ever wrote a word of the Bible. Yet Paul told them to eagerly desire spiritual gifts, 14:1, and said they did not lack any gift as they waited for Jesus to come back, 1:7. If the gifts were only for writing Scripture, it is strange that Paul spent three chapters training people who would never write any.

THE OTHER SIDE

Cessationists answer that the gifts confirmed the apostles' message while the church was being founded, Hebrews 2:3 to 4 and Ephesians 2:20. That is an honest argument made by people who love the Bible, even if many believers today, and this Bible's commentary, lean the other way.

FROM RULES TO RELATIONSHIP

Here is where God gets real. Without the

Spirit, the Bible can turn into a rule book: do this, do not do that. With the Spirit, it becomes a relationship. Understanding these gifts is literally the difference between having a relationship with God and having a relationship with your Bible. Jesus told the Bible experts of His day, You pore over the Scriptures because you presume that by them you possess eternal life. These are the very words that testify about Me, yet you refuse to come to Me to have life, John 5:39 to 40. The Bible points you to Him. It was never meant to replace Him. Jesus said the Spirit would guide you into all truth, John 16:13. Those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God, Romans 8:14. The early church did not make big moves without Him. The Spirit said, Set apart Barnabas and Saul, Acts 13:2, and when Paul tried to go one way, the Spirit said no and sent him somewhere better, Acts 16:6 to 10.

GOD MODE FOR REAL LIFE

Picture every big decision going straight to the Holy Spirit first: who to marry, what job to take, where to live, what to say to a friend who is hurting. You are not guessing alone. If any of you lacks wisdom, ask God, James 1:5. Same game, but now you are playing with the Developer sitting next to you.

HOW TO PLAY FAIR

Every cheat code has rules, and so do the gifts. They never go against the Bible, because the Spirit inspired it and He does not contradict Himself. Test everything and hold on to what is good, 1 Thessalonians 5:19 to 21. Use the gifts for others, not for a show. Keep it orderly, 14:40. And love is the point. Without love you are just a noisy gong, 13:1.

HOW TO START

Ask. If you then, though you are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give the Holy Spirit to those who ask Him! Luke 11:13. Then read 1 Corinthians 12 to 14, pray, and step out in faith. Up, up, down, down is optional.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM

THE ASCLEPION AND ITS BODY PARTS

1 CORINTHIANS 12:12 TO 27



A clay arm and hand with a sore on it, given to Asclepius by someone who wanted healing. Photo Zde, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The Asclepion was the temple of Asclepius, the Greek god of healing, on the north edge of Corinth. Sick people slept there hoping for a cure. When they were healed, or hoped to be, they left a clay copy of the body part that hurt: hands, feet, legs, arms, eyes, ears and more.

HOW OLD IT IS

Most of the clay body parts are from the 300s BC. The temple was rebuilt after Rome refounded Corinth and was still in use in Paul's day.

WHERE AND WHEN FOUND

American School archaeologists dug the Asclepion from 1929 to 1934. Many of the clay pieces had been dumped in pits when the temple was cleaned out long ago.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

Rows of clay hands, feet and arms are on display in the Archaeological Museum at Ancient Corinth, Greece.

THE BODY PICTURE

Paul says the church is one body with many parts. The foot cannot say, I am not a hand, and the eye cannot tell the hand, I do not need you, 12:15 and 12:21. Many scholars think his readers would picture the Asclepion, where body parts hung on the walls cut off from any body. Paul's point: in Christ no part is cut off. Every part belongs.

NOTABLE

A BETTER HEALER
The Corinthians knew a temple where people begged a stone god for healing. Paul tells them the Holy Spirit gives gifts of healing to believers, 12:9.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Paul never names the Asclepion. The link to his body picture is a good guess, not a sure thing.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS
The love chapter. Without love, the best gifts are just noise. Love is patient and kind. It does not envy, boast, or keep score. Love never fails. Someday we will see face to face. Faith, hope and love remain, but the greatest of these is love.

LOVE

1 If I speak in the tongues of men and of
angels, but have not love, I am only a ring-
ing gong or a clanging cymbal. 2 If I have
the gift of prophecy and can fathom all
mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have
absolute faith so as to move mountains,
but have not love, I am nothing. 3 If I give
all I possess to the poor and exult in the
surrender of my body, but have not love, I
gain nothing.

4 Love is patient, love is kind. It does not
envy, it does not boast, it is not proud. 5 It
is not rude, it is not self-seeking, it is not
easily angered, it keeps no account of
wrongs. 6 Love takes no pleasure in evil,
but rejoices in the truth. 7 It bears all
things, believes all things, hopes all
things, endures all things.

8 Love never fails. But where there are
prophecies, they will cease; where there
are tongues, they will be restrained;
where there is knowledge, it will be dis-
missed. 9 For we know in part and we
prophesy in part, 10 but when the perfect
comes, the partial passes away.

11 When I was a child, I talked like a child, I
thought like a child, I reasoned like a child.
When I became a man, I set aside childish
ways. 12 Now we see but a dim reflection
as in a mirror; then we shall see face to
face. Now I know in part; then I shall know
fully, even as I am fully known.

13 And now these three remain: faith, hope,
and love; but the greatest of these is love.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS
Paul wants them to desire spiritual gifts, especially prophecy, because it builds up the church. Tongues in a meeting need an interpreter, or outsiders will think you are crazy. Take turns, two or three at a time. God is not a God of confusion. Do not forbid tongues, but keep it orderly.

PROPHECY AND TONGUES

1 Earnestly pursue love and eagerly desire
spiritual gifts, especially the gift of
prophecy. 2 For he who speaks in a tongue
does not speak to men, but to God. In-
deed, no one understands him; he utters
mysteries in the Spirit. 3 But he who
prophesies speaks to men for their edifi-
cation, encouragement, and comfort. 4
The one who speaks in a tongue edifies
himself, but the one who prophesies edi-
fies the church.

5 I wish that all of you could speak in
tongues, but I would rather have you
prophesy. He who prophesies is greater
than one who speaks in tongues, unless
he interprets so that the church may be
edified.

6 Now, brothers, if I come to you speaking
in tongues, how will I benefit you, unless I
bring you some revelation or knowledge
or prophecy or teaching? 7 Even in the
case of lifeless instruments, such as the
flute or harp, how will anyone recognize
the tune they are playing unless the notes
are distinct? 8 Again, if the trumpet sounds
a muffled call, who will prepare for battle?
9 So it is with you. Unless you speak intel-

1CO 13:1 [NOTABLE] Read at almost every wedding, but Paul wrote it to a church at war with itself over gifts and status. Without love, even the greatest gift is just noise. Love here is something you do, not just something you feel.

1CO 13:8 [NOTE] WHEN THE PERFECT COMES. Cessationists say the perfect is the finished Bible, so tongues and prophecy stopped once it was written. Continuists say the perfect comes when Jesus returns, because then we shall see face to face, 13:12, and Paul already said the church would not lack any gift while it waits for Jesus to come back, 1:7. Both sides love the Bible. Either way, love never fails.

1CO 14:2 [THE BIG DEBATE] For more on tongues, see the two Speaking in Tongues pages in Romans, p.1809.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

ligible words with your tongue, how will anyone know what you are saying? You will just be speaking into the air.

10 Assuredly, there are many different languages in the world, yet none of them is without meaning. 11 If, then, I do not know the meaning of someone's language, I am a foreigner to the speaker, and he is a foreigner to me.

12 It is the same with you. Since you are eager to have spiritual gifts, strive to excel in gifts that build up the church. 13 Therefore, the one who speaks in a tongue should pray that he may interpret. 14 For if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays, but my mind is unfruitful.

15 What then shall I do? I will pray with my spirit, but I will also pray with my mind. I will sing with my spirit, but I will also sing with my mind. 16 Otherwise, if you speak a blessing in spirit, how can someone who is uninstructed say "Amen" to your thanksgiving, since he does not know what you are saying? 17 You may be giving thanks well enough, but the other one is not edified.

18 I thank God that I speak in tongues more than all of you. 19 But in the church, I would rather speak five coherent words to instruct others than ten thousand words in a tongue.

20 Brothers, stop thinking like children. In regard to evil be infants, but in your thinking be mature. 21 It is written in the Law:

"By strange tongues and foreign lips
I will speak to this people,
but even then they will not listen to Me,
says the Lord."

22 Tongues, then, are a sign, not for believers, but for unbelievers. Prophecy, however, is for believers, not for unbelievers.

23 So if the whole church comes together and everyone speaks in tongues, and some who are uninstructed or some unbelievers come in, will they not say that you are out of your minds? 24 But if an unbeliever or uninstructed person comes in while everyone is prophesying, he will be convicted and called to account by all, 25 and the secrets of his heart will be made known. So he will fall facedown and worship God, proclaiming, "God is truly among you!"

ORDERLY WORSHIP

26 What then shall we say, brothers? When you come together, everyone has a psalm or a teaching, a revelation, a tongue, or an interpretation. All of these must be done to build up the church.

27 If anyone speaks in a tongue, two, or at most three, should speak in turn, and someone must interpret. 28 But if there is no interpreter, he should remain silent in the church and speak only to himself and God.

29 Two or three prophets should speak, and the others should weigh carefully what is said. 30 And if a revelation comes to someone who is seated, the first speaker should stop. 31 For you can all prophesy in turn so that everyone may be instructed and encouraged. 32 The spirits of prophets are subject to prophets. 33 For God is not a God of disorder, but of peace—as in all the churches of the saints.

34 Women are to be silent in the churches. They are not permitted to speak, but must be in submission, as the law says. 35 If they wish to inquire about something, they are to ask their own husbands at home; for it is dishonorable for a woman to speak in the church.

1CO 14:21 [FULFILLS] God would speak to His people through foreign tongues ← IS 28:11 · MEDIUM p.1094

1CO 14:23 [NOTE] Paul is not against tongues. He is against chaos. In a meeting, only two or three should speak, one at a time, with someone to interpret, 14:27 to 28. Otherwise visitors will think the church has lost its mind.

1CO 14:25 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← IS 45:14 p.1118

1CO 14:34 [TEXT] Some old copies put 14:34 to 35 after 14:40. Because of that, the scholar Gordon Fee argued a copyist added these verses later. Every known copy has them somewhere, and most scholars think Paul wrote them.

1CO 14:34 [NOTE] Many believe Paul was fixing disorder in one church, likely wives calling out questions during the teaching, 14:35. That fits 11:5, where women pray and prophesy out loud, and Phoebe and Junia, leaders Paul praised in Romans 16:1 and 16:7. Others read these verses as a rule for women in all churches, 14:33.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW END TIMES PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

36 Did the word of God originate with you?
Or are you the only ones it has reached?
37 If anyone considers himself a prophet or
spiritual person, let him acknowledge that
what I am writing you is the Lord's com-
mand. 38 But if anyone ignores this, he
himself will be ignored.

39 So, my brothers, be eager to prophesy,
and do not forbid speaking in tongues. 40
But everything must be done in a proper
and orderly manner.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Some in Corinth said the dead do not rise. Paul says Jesus died, was buried, rose on the third day and was seen by more than five hundred people. If Christ is not raised, our faith is useless. But He is. We will all be changed in the twinkling of an eye. Death, where is your sting?

THE RESURRECTION OF CHRIST

1 Now, brothers, I want to remind you of
the gospel I preached to you, which you
received, and in which you stand firm. 2 By
this gospel you are saved, if you hold
firmly to the word I preached to you. Oth-
erwise, you have believed in vain.

3 For what I received I passed on to you as
of first importance: that Christ died for our
sins according to the Scriptures, 4 that He
was buried, that He was raised on the
third day according to the Scriptures, 5
and that He appeared to Cephas and then
to the Twelve. 6 After that, He appeared to
more than five hundred brothers at once,
most of whom are still living, though some
have fallen asleep. 7 Then He appeared to
James, then to all the apostles. 8 And last
of all He appeared to me also, as to one of
untimely birth.

9 For I am the least of the apostles and am
unworthy to be called an apostle, because
I persecuted the church of God. 10 But by
the grace of God I am what I am, and His
grace to me was not in vain. No, I worked
harder than all of them—yet not I, but the
grace of God that was with me. 11 Whether,
then, it was I or they, this is what we
preach, and this is what you believed.

THE RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD

12 But if it is preached that Christ has been
raised from the dead, how can some of
you say that there is no resurrection of the
dead? 13 If there is no resurrection of the
dead, then not even Christ has been
raised. 14 And if Christ has not been raised,
our preaching is worthless, and so is your
faith. 15 In that case, we are also exposed
as false witnesses about God. For we
have testified about God that He raised
Christ from the dead, but He did not raise
Him if in fact the dead are not raised.

16 For if the dead are not raised, then not
even Christ has been raised. 17 And if
Christ has not been raised, your faith is
futile; you are still in your sins. 18 Then
those also who have fallen asleep in
Christ have perished. 19 If our hope in
Christ is for this life alone, we are to be
pitied more than all men.

THE ORDER OF RESURRECTION

20 But Christ has indeed been raised from
the dead, the firstfruits of those who have
fallen asleep. 21 For since death came
through a man, the resurrection of the
dead comes also through a man. 22 For as
in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be
made alive. 23 But each in his own turn:
Christ the firstfruits; then at His coming,
those who belong to Him.

24 Then the end will come, when He hands
over the kingdom to God the Father after
He has destroyed all dominion, authority,
and power. 25 *For He must reign until He has
put all His enemies under His feet.* 26 *The last
enemy to be destroyed is death.* 27 For *"God*

- **1CO 14:39 [NOTE]** Paul's last word on gifts: be eager to prophesy, do not forbid tongues, and do it all in order.
- **1CO 15:3 [NOTABLE]** One of the oldest Christian creeds. Paul passed on what he received, and many scholars, even skeptics, date it to within a few years of the cross. More than five hundred people saw the risen Jesus, and most were still alive to ask.
- **1CO 15:4 [FULFILLS]** On the third day He will raise us up ← HOS 6:2 · MEDIUM p.1364
- **1CO 15:5 [MIRACLE]** The risen Christ appeared to Peter, the Twelve, and over five hundred
- **1CO 15:20 [FULFILLS]** The firstfruits sheaf was waved on the day after the Sabbath ← LEV 23:10-11 p.211
- **1CO 15:20 [FULFILLS]** His resurrection assured ← PS 118:17-18 p.964
- **1CO 15:23 [PROPHECY]** Each one in his own order: Christ the firstfruits, afterward those who are Christ's at His coming. Then comes the end, when He delivers the kingdom to God the Father, when He puts an end to all rule and all authority and power → STILL TO COME
- **1CO 15:25 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 110:1; 8:6 p.960

END TIMES PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

has put everything under His feet." Now when it says that everything has been put under Him, this clearly does not include the One who put everything under Him. 28 And when all things have been subjected to Him, then the Son Himself will be made subject to Him who put all things under Him, so that God may be all in all.

29 If these things are not so, what will those do who are baptized for the dead? If the dead are not raised at all, why are people baptized for them? 30 And why do we endanger ourselves every hour? 31 I face death every day, brothers, as surely as I boast about you in Christ Jesus our Lord. 32 If I fought wild beasts in Ephesus for human motives, what did I gain? If the dead are not raised,

"Let us eat and drink,
for tomorrow we die."

33 Do not be deceived: "Bad company corrupts good character." 34 Sober up as you ought, and stop sinning; for some of you are ignorant of God. I say this to your shame.

THE RESURRECTION BODY

35 But someone will ask, "How are the dead raised? With what kind of body will they come?" 36 You fool! What you sow does not come to life unless it dies. 37 And what you sow is not the body that will be, but just a seed, perhaps of wheat or something else. 38 But God gives it a body as He has designed, and to each kind of seed He gives its own body.

39 Not all flesh is the same: Men have one kind of flesh, animals have another, birds another, and fish another. 40 There are also heavenly bodies and earthly bodies. But the splendor of the heavenly bodies is of one degree, and the splendor of the earthly bodies is of another. 41 The sun has one degree of splendor, the moon another, and the stars another; and star differs from star in splendor.

42 So will it be with the resurrection of the dead: What is sown is perishable; it is raised imperishable. 43 It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory. It is sown in weakness; it is raised in power. 44 It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual body. 45 So it is written: *"The first man Adam became a living being";* the last Adam a life-giving spirit.

46 The spiritual, however, was not first, but the natural, and then the spiritual. 47 The first man was of the dust of the earth, the second man from heaven. 48 As was the earthly man, so also are those who are of the earth; and as is the heavenly man, so also are those who are of heaven. 49 And just as we have borne the likeness of the earthly man, so also shall we bear the likeness of the heavenly man.

WHERE, O DEATH, IS YOUR VICTORY? // HOSEA 13:9–14

50 Now I declare to you, brothers, that flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, nor does the perishable inherit the imperishable.

51 Listen, I tell you a mystery: We will not all sleep, but we will all be changed— 52 in an instant, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, the dead will be raised imperishable, and we will be changed. 53 For the perishable must be clothed with the imperishable, and the mortal with immortality.

54 When the perishable has been clothed with the imperishable and the mortal with immortality, then the saying that is written will come to pass: *"Death has been swallowed up in victory."*

55 *"Where, O Death, is your victory?*
Where, O Death, is your sting?"

■ **1CO 15:29 [NOTE]** BAPTIZED FOR THE DEAD. No one knows for sure what this means. Some say believers were baptized in place of Christians who died before they could be. Some say people were baptized because of the dead, hoping to see believing loved ones again. Some say Paul was pointing to what another group did, without approving it, to prove that even they believed in the resurrection. The Latter Day Saints baptize living people for the dead based on this verse. No other verse teaches it.
■ **1CO 15:32 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 22:13 p.1086
1CO 15:33 [NOTABLE] Paul quotes a line from the Greek playwright Menander, from his comedy Thais, about 300 BC. By Paul's day it was a common saying.
1CO 15:45 [QUOTES] Direct ← GEN 2:7 p.49
1CO 15:51 [PROPHECY] We shall all be changed → STILL TO COME
■ **1CO 15:54 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 25:8; HOS 13:14 p.1091

NOTABLE

56 The sting of death is sin, and the power
of sin is the law. 57 But thanks be to God,
who gives us the victory through our Lord
Jesus Christ!

58 Therefore, my beloved brothers, be
steadfast and immovable. Always excel in
the work of the Lord, because you know
that your labor in the Lord is not in vain.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul asks them to set money aside each Sunday for the poor in Jerusalem. He is staying in Ephesus until Pentecost because a great door is open. Timothy and Apollos are mentioned. Paul signs off in his own handwriting with an Aramaic prayer, Come, Lord. Then, my love to all of you.

THE COLLECTION FOR THE SAINTS // 2 CORINTHIANS 9:1–15

1 Now about the collection for the saints,
you are to do as I directed the churches of
Galatia: 2 On the first day of every week,
each of you should set aside a portion of
his income, saving it up, so that when I
come no collections will be needed. 3
Then, on my arrival, I will send letters with
those you recommend to carry your gift to
Jerusalem. 4 And if it is advisable for me
to go also, they can travel with me.

PAUL'S TRAVEL PLANS // ROMANS 15:23–33

5 After I go through Macedonia, however, I
will come to you; for I will be going
through Macedonia. 6 Perhaps I will stay
with you awhile, or even spend the winter,
so that you can help me on my journey,
wherever I go. 7 For I do not want to see
you now only in passing; I hope to spend
some time with you, if the Lord permits. 8
But I will stay in Ephesus until Pentecost, 9
because a great door for effective work
has opened to me, even though many oppose me.

TIMOTHY AND APOLLOS // PHILIPPIANS 2:19–30

10 If Timothy comes, see to it that he has
nothing to fear while he is with you, for he
is doing the work of the Lord, just as I am.
11 No one, then, should treat him with contempt. Send him on his way in peace so
that he can return to me, for I am expecting him along with the brothers.

12 Now about our brother Apollos: I
strongly urged him to go to you with the
brothers. He was not at all inclined to go
now, but he will go when he has the opportunity.

CONCLUDING EXHORTATIONS

13 Be on the alert. Stand firm in the faith.
Be men of courage. Be strong. 14 Do
everything in love.

15 You know that Stephanas and his
household were the first converts in
Achaia, and they have devoted themselves to the service of the saints. Now I
urge you, brothers, 16 to submit to such as
these, and to every fellow worker and laborer.

17 I am glad that Stephanas, Fortunatus,
and Achaicus have arrived, because they
have supplied what was lacking from you.
18 For they refreshed my spirit and yours
as well. Show your appreciation, therefore, to such men.

SIGNATURE AND FINAL GREETINGS // COLOSSIANS 4:15–18; 2 THESSALONIANS 3:16–18

19 The churches in the province of Asia
send you greetings.

Aquila and Prisca greet you warmly in the
Lord, and so does the church that meets
at their house.

20 All the brothers here send you greetings. Greet one another with a holy kiss.

21 This greeting is in my own hand—Paul.

22 If anyone does not love the Lord, let him
be under a curse. Come, O Lord!

23 The grace of the Lord Jesus be with
you.

24 My love be with all of you in Christ Jesus.

Amen.

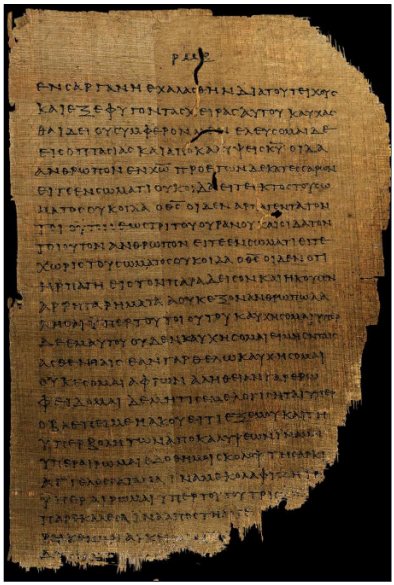
1CO 16:22 [NOTABLE] In the Greek, Come, O Lord is one Aramaic word, Maranatha, the language Jesus spoke. Paul left it untranslated in a Greek letter, which shows the very first believers were already praying for Jesus to come back.

BOOK 47 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

2 CORINTHIANS

Dear Messy Church, Part 2

AUTHOR	Paul, with Timothy, 1:1. This is Paul's most personal letter. He opens his heart about his fears, his tears and his weakness.
WRITTEN FROM	Macedonia in northern Greece, maybe Philippi, after Titus met Paul there with good news, 7:5 to 7.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 55 to 57, a year or so after 1 Corinthians.
WRITTEN TO	The church in Corinth and all the believers in the province of Achaia, southern Greece, 1:1.
WHY HE WROTE	To say thank you for turning around, to finish an offering for poor believers in Jerusalem, and to warn against fake super apostles, 11:5.
KEY VERSE	2 Corinthians 12:9. My grace is sufficient for you, for My power is perfected in weakness.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 2 CORINTHIANS
This is a page of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200. This page is at the University of Michigan. It holds 2 Corinthians 11:33 to 12:9. The first line tells how Paul was let down in a basket through the wall. Further down you can read to the third heaven, 12:2, and into paradise, 12:4. Near the bottom it says a thorn in the flesh, a messenger of Satan, 12:7.

THE BOOK IT COMES FROM. The whole book once had about 104 sheets, each written on both sides, and 86 survive, split between Dublin, Ireland, and Michigan. See the 1 Corinthians title page, p.1821, for how it was found.

WHY IT MATTERS. This copy was made only about 150 years after Paul wrote. Apart from small spelling and word order differences, it says what our Bibles say today.

Historical Setting

After 1 Corinthians, things got worse before they got better. Paul made a quick painful visit to Corinth, 2:1, and someone there insulted him. He went back to Ephesus and wrote a letter through many tears, 2:4, and sent Titus to deliver it. Then Paul waited and worried. He left Ephesus after a riot, Acts 19 to 20, crossed to Macedonia, and finally Titus arrived with good news. Most of the church had turned around. But a new group of traveling preachers had shown up, calling themselves super apostles and making fun of Paul.

What Was Going Wrong

FAKE SUPER APOSTLES. Smooth talking teachers preached a different Jesus and charged for it, 11:4 to 5 and 11:20.
DOUBTING PAUL. Some said his letters were strong but he was weak in person, 10:10.
SLOW TO FORGIVE. The man they disciplined had repented, but they had not welcomed him back, 2:6 to 8.
AN UNFINISHED OFFERING. They promised to give to the poor in Jerusalem a year ago and never finished, 8:10 to 11.
SIN NOT DEALT WITH. Some had still not turned from sexual sin, 12:21.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Corinthians is Paul letting you see his heart. He has been insulted, doubted and nearly killed, but he still loves this church. He shows that real ministry looks less like a celebrity and more like a cracked clay pot with a light inside. God's comfort is real, His promises are yes, and His power shows up best when we are weak. If you have ever felt like a failure in God's work, this letter is for you.

2 Corinthians at a Glance

CH 1 to 7 **PAUL OPENS HIS HEART**
Comfort, the tearful letter, jars of clay and a new creation.

CH 8 to 9 **THE OFFERING**
Give generously and cheerfully, like Jesus gave.

CH 10 to 13 **PAUL DEFENDS HIMSELF**
Fake apostles, his real resume and strength in weakness.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 CORINTHIANS 1:20 All of God's promises are Yes in Christ.

2 CORINTHIANS 4:6 God made His light shine in our hearts to show the glory of God in the face of Jesus Christ.

2 CORINTHIANS 5:21 God made Him who knew no sin to be sin on our behalf. Fulfills Isaiah 53:5.

2 CORINTHIANS 8:9 Though He was rich, yet for your sake He became poor, so that you through His poverty might become rich.

What to Watch for in 2 Corinthians

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (6)	5:18-21, 6:2, 6:16
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	5:10
THE HEART (3)	3:3, 4:6, 9:7

MIRACLES (2)	12:1-4, 12:12
DEMONIC (3)	4:4, 11:14, 12:7
NOTABLE (8)	1:21-22, 3:17, 4:16-18, 5:8, 5:17, 11:23-28, 12:9-10 and 1 more
JESUS SPEAKING (1 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE BASKET ESCAPE
Paul's greatest brag is not a miracle. It is being let down in a basket through a window in the Damascus wall to escape a king's governor, 11:32 to 33.

WHAT DID PAUL LOOK LIKE?
Paul admits people said he was unimpressive in person, 10:10. A story written about AD 170, the Acts of Paul and Thecla, describes him as short and bald with bowed legs, eyebrows that met and a hooked nose, but full of grace. It is a legend, not Scripture, but it fits.

A HILARIOUS GIVER
God loves a cheerful giver, 9:7. The Greek word for cheerful is hilaros, where we get the word hilarious.

FOUR LETTERS, TWO SURVIVE
Paul wrote at least four letters to Corinth: a first one that is lost, 1 Corinthians 5:9, then 1 Corinthians, then the tearful letter, 2:4, then this one. Unless the tearful letter is hiding inside chapters 10 to 13, two of them are gone.

AMBASSADORS FOR CHRIST
An ambassador lives in a foreign country but speaks for his own king. Paul says that is every believer, 5:20: God making His appeal through us.

THE TRINITY BLESSING
The last verse, 13:14, names the Lord Jesus Christ, God and the Holy Spirit together. Churches still close services with it today.

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes. Paul came to Corinth for his third visit and stayed about three months, Acts 20:2 to 3. While he was there he wrote Romans, and in it he says the believers of Achaia were pleased to give to the poor in Jerusalem, Romans 15:26. The offering got finished. The church that fought Paul ended up funding his mission and sending the letter that changed the world.

NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul opens with comfort. The God of all comfort comforts us so we can comfort others. In Asia, Paul was under so much pressure he thought he would die. Some in Corinth called him unreliable for changing his travel plans. Paul says God's promises are always yes in Christ.

PAUL GREETS THE CORINTHIANS // ACTS 18:1–11; 1 CORINTHIANS 1:1–3

1 Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and Timothy our brother,

To the church of God in Corinth, together with all the saints throughout Achaia:

2 Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

THE GOD OF ALL COMFORT

3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of compassion and the God of all comfort, 4 who comforts us in all our troubles, so that we can comfort those in any trouble with the comfort we ourselves have received from God. 5 For just as the sufferings of Christ overflow to us, so also through Christ our comfort overflows.

6 If we are afflicted, it is for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, it is for your comfort, which accomplishes in you patient endurance of the same sufferings we experience. 7 And our hope for you is sure, because we know that just as you share in our sufferings, so also you will share in our comfort.

8 We do not want you to be unaware, brothers, of the hardships we encountered in the province of Asia. We were under a burden far beyond our ability to endure, so that we despaired even of life. 9 Indeed, we felt we were under the sentence of death, in order that we would not trust in ourselves, but in God, who raises the dead.

10 He has delivered us from such a deadly peril, and He will deliver us. In Him we have placed our hope that He will yet again deliver us, 11 as you help us by your prayers. Then many will give thanks on our behalf for the favor shown us in answer to their prayers.

PAUL'S CHANGE OF PLANS

12 For this is our boast: Our conscience testifies that we have conducted ourselves in the world, and especially in relation to you, in the holiness and sincerity that are from God—not in worldly wisdom, but in the grace of God. 13 For we do not write you anything that is beyond your ability to read and understand. And I hope that you will understand us completely, 14 as you have already understood us in part, that you may boast of us just as we will boast of you in the day of our Lord Jesus.

15 Confident of this, I planned to visit you first, so that you might receive a double blessing. 16 I wanted to visit you on my way to Macedonia, and to return to you from Macedonia, and then to have you help me on my way to Judea.

17 When I planned this, did I do it carelessly? Or do I make my plans by human standards, so as to say "Yes, yes" and also "No, no"? 18 But as surely as God is faithful, our message to you is not "Yes" and "No." 19 For the Son of God, Jesus Christ, who was proclaimed among you by me and Silvanus and Timothy, was not "Yes" and "No," but in Him it has always been "Yes." 20 For all the promises of God are "Yes" in Christ. And so through Him, our "Amen" is spoken to the glory of God.

21 Now it is God who establishes both us and you in Christ. He anointed us, 22 placed His seal on us, and put His Spirit in our hearts as a pledge of what is to come.

23 I call God as my witness that it was in order to spare you that I did not return to Corinth. 24 Not that we lord it over your faith, but we are fellow workers with you for your joy, because it is by faith that you stand firm.

2CO 1:21 [NOTABLE] God's threefold action on believers: established, anointed, sealed — the Spirit as guarantee

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul skipped a visit to spare them another painful one and wrote a letter through many tears instead. The man the church disciplined has turned around, so forgive him and love him again. Do not let Satan outsmart you. Paul says God leads us in Christ's victory parade.

REAFFIRM YOUR LOVE

1 So I made up my mind not to make another painful visit to you. 2 For if I grieve
you, who is left to cheer me but those
whom I have grieved? 3 I wrote as I did so
that on my arrival I would not be grieved
by those who ought to make me rejoice. I
had confidence in all of you, that you
would share my joy. 4 For through many
tears I wrote you out of great distress and
anguish of heart, not to grieve you but to
let you know how much I love you.

5 Now if anyone has caused grief, he has
not grieved me but all of you—to some
degree, not to overstate it. 6 The punishment imposed on him by the majority is
sufficient for him. 7 So instead, you ought
to forgive and comfort him, so that he will
not be overwhelmed by excessive sorrow.
8 Therefore I urge you to reaffirm your love
for him.

9 My purpose in writing you was to see if
you would stand the test and be obedient
in everything. 10 If you forgive anyone, I
also forgive him. And if I have forgiven
anything, I have forgiven it in the presence of Christ for your sake, 11 in order
that Satan should not outwit us. For we
are not unaware of his schemes.

TRIUMPH IN CHRIST

12 Now when I went to Troas to preach the
gospel of Christ and a door stood open
for me in the Lord, 13 I had no peace in my
spirit, because I did not find my brother
Titus there. So I said goodbye to them and
went on to Macedonia.

14 But thanks be to God, who always leads
us triumphantly as captives in Christ and
through us spreads everywhere the fragrance of the knowledge of Him. 15 For we
are to God the sweet aroma of Christ
among those who are being saved and
those who are perishing. 16 To the one we
are an odor that brings death, to the other
a fragrance that brings life. And who is
qualified for such a task?

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

A ROMAN TRIUMPH

2 CORINTHIANS 2:14 TO 16



Titus rides in his triumph chariot while a winged Victory crowns him. Relief inside the Arch of Titus, Rome.

WHAT IT IS

A marble carving inside the Arch of Titus in Rome. It shows the general Titus riding in a four horse chariot in his triumph, the biggest victory parade Rome could give. A winged figure of Victory holds a crown over his head.

HOW OLD IT IS

The arch was built about AD 81, after Titus died. It honors the triumph he and his father held in AD 71 after destroying Jerusalem. That is about 15 years after Paul wrote, but triumphs had looked like this for centuries.

WHAT A TRIUMPH WAS

When a Roman general won a great war, he paraded through Rome. Soldiers marched, the treasures of the beaten nation were carried along, and prisoners walked in chains. Incense burned all along the route. At the end, some of the captives were put to death.

PAUL'S PICTURE

Thanks be to God, who always leads us

■ **2CO 2:5 [NOTE]** Many believe this is the man from 1 Corinthians 5:1 to 5, put out of the church, now sorry and ready to come home. See the note on 1 Corinthians 5:5, p.1827. Others think it is someone who insulted Paul on his painful visit. Either way, church discipline was meant to bring him back, and Paul says forgive him now.

■ **2CO 2:14 [FIELD NOTES]** See A Roman Triumph Field Notes page, p.1849.

THE HEART NOTABLE

triumphantly as captives in Christ, 2:14. Jesus is the winning King, and Paul pictures himself as a captive happily marching in His parade. The incense smell meant celebration to the winners and death to the captives. Paul says we are the smell of life to some and death to others, 2:15 to 16.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

At the east end of the Roman Forum in Rome, Italy. The other side of the arch shows soldiers carrying the golden lampstand from the temple in Jerusalem.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Paul's readers lived in a Roman colony. They knew exactly what a triumph looked and smelled like.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This arch is later than Paul's letter. It shows the kind of parade he meant, not one he saw.

17 For we are not like so many others, who peddle the word of God for profit. On the contrary, in Christ we speak before God with sincerity, as men sent from God.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul does not need letters of recommendation. The Corinthians are his letter, written on hearts by the Spirit. The old covenant came with a glory so bright Moses wore a veil. The new one is even brighter. Where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom.

MINISTERS OF A NEW COVENANT

1 Are we beginning to commend ourselves again? Or do we need, like some people, letters of recommendation to you or from you? 2 You yourselves are our letter, inscribed on our hearts, known and read by everyone. 3 It is clear that you are a letter from Christ, the result of our ministry, written not with ink but with the Spirit of the living God, not on tablets of stone but on tablets of human hearts.

4 Such confidence before God is ours through Christ. 5 Not that we are competent in ourselves to claim that anything comes from us, but our competence comes from God. 6 And He has qualified us as ministers of a new covenant, not of the letter but of the Spirit; for the letter kills, but the Spirit gives life.

THE GLORY OF THE NEW COVENANT // EXODUS 34:10–35

7 Now if the ministry of death, which was engraved in letters on stone, came with such glory that the Israelites could not gaze at the face of Moses because of its fleeting glory, 8 will not the ministry of the Spirit be even more glorious? 9 For if the ministry of condemnation was glorious, how much more glorious is the ministry of righteousness! 10 Indeed, what was once glorious has no glory now in comparison to the glory that surpasses it. 11 For if what was fading away came with glory, how much greater is the glory of that which endures!

12 Therefore, since we have such a hope, we are very bold. 13 We are not like Moses, who would put a veil over his face to keep the Israelites from gazing at the end of what was fading away.

14 But their minds were closed. For to this day the same veil remains at the reading of the old covenant. It has not been lifted, because only in Christ can it be removed. 15 And even to this day when Moses is read, a veil covers their hearts. 16 But whenever anyone turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away.

17 Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom. 18 And we, who with unveiled faces all reflect the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into His image with intensifying glory, which comes from the Lord, who is the Spirit.

2CO 3:3 [HEART] You are a letter from Christ, written on hearts of flesh, not stone.

2CO 3:16 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← EX 34:34 p.167

2CO 3:17 [NOTABLE] Freedom here is not doing whatever you want. It is freedom from the veil, 3:16, from fear and from trying to earn God's love by keeping rules. When the Spirit is in charge, you are free to see Jesus clearly and become more like Him, 3:18.

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Satan has blinded people to the gospel, but God makes His light shine in our hearts. We carry this treasure in jars of clay. Pressed on every side but not crushed. Struck down but not destroyed. Our outer self is wasting away, but our inner self is renewed every day.

THE LIGHT OF THE GOSPEL

1 Therefore, since God in His mercy has
given us this ministry, we do not lose
heart. 2 Instead, we have renounced se-
cret and shameful ways. We do not prac-
tice deceit, nor do we distort the word of
God. On the contrary, by open proclama-
tion of the truth, we commend ourselves
to every man's conscience in the sight of
God. 3 And even if our gospel is veiled, it is
veiled to those who are perishing.

4 The god of this age has blinded the
minds of unbelievers, so they cannot see
the light of the gospel of the glory of
Christ, who is the image of God. 5 For we
do not proclaim ourselves, but Jesus
Christ as Lord, and ourselves as your ser-
vants for Jesus' sake. 6 For God, who said,
"Let light shine out of darkness," made
His light shine in our hearts to give us the
light of the knowledge of the glory of God
in the face of Jesus Christ.

TREASURE IN JARS OF CLAY // ROMANS 6:1–14

7 Now we have this treasure in jars of clay
to show that this surpassingly great power
is from God and not from us. 8 We are hard
pressed on all sides, but not crushed; per-
plexed, but not in despair; 9 persecuted,
but not forsaken; struck down, but not de-
stroyed.

10 We always carry around in our body the
death of Jesus, so that the life of Jesus
may also be revealed in our body. 11 For we
who are alive are always consigned to
death for Jesus' sake, so that the life of
Jesus may also be revealed in our mortal
body. 12 So then, death is at work in us, but
life is at work in you.

13 And in keeping with what is written, *"I
believed, therefore I have spoken,"* we who
have the same spirit of faith also believe
and therefore speak, 14 knowing that the
One who raised the Lord Jesus will also
raise us with Jesus and present us with
you in His presence. 15 All this is for your
benefit, so that the grace that is extending
to more and more people may cause
thanksgiving to overflow, to the glory of
God.

16 Therefore we do not lose heart. Though
our outer self is wasting away, yet our in-
ner self is being renewed day by day. 17
For our light and momentary affliction is
producing for us an eternal weight of
glory that is far beyond comparison. 18 So
we fix our eyes not on what is seen, but
on what is unseen. For what is seen is
temporary, but what is unseen is eternal.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Our bodies are like tents. Someday God will give us a building that lasts forever. To be away from the body is to be at home with the Lord. Anyone in Christ is a new creation. God made Jesus, who knew no sin, to be sin for us. We are ambassadors for Christ.

OUR ETERNAL DWELLING // ROMANS 8:18–27

1 For we know that if the earthly tent we
live in is dismantled, we have a building
from God, an eternal house in heaven, not
built by human hands. 2 For in this tent we
groan, longing to be clothed with our
heavenly dwelling, 3 because when we are
clothed, we will not be found naked. 4 For
while we are in this tent, we groan under
our burdens, because we do not wish to
be unclothed but clothed, so that our mor-
tality may be swallowed up by life. 5 And it
is God who has prepared us for this very
purpose and has given us the Spirit as a
pledge of what is to come.

2CO 4:4 [DEMONIC] The god of this age has blinded the minds of unbelievers
2CO 4:6 [HEART] God made His light shine in our hearts to show the glory of Christ.
2CO 4:6 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← GEN 1:3 p.46
2CO 4:7 [FIELD NOTES] See the Jars of Clay Field Notes page, p.1852.

2CO 4:13 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 116:10 p.963
2CO 4:16 [NOTABLE] Paul was beaten, hungry and getting older, and he called it light and momentary. He was not pretending the pain was small. He was comparing it to forever. What you see is temporary. What you cannot see yet lasts.

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE LAMP · THE LINK IS A WORD PICTURE

JARS OF CLAY

2 CORINTHIANS 4:6 TO 7



A clay oil lamp with two fish on top, in the museum at Ancient Corinth. Photo Zde, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A small oil lamp made of baked clay, found at Corinth. You filled it with olive oil, put a wick in the hole at the front, and it gave light. Corinth made huge numbers of cheap clay lamps and pots.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was probably made in Roman times, in the first centuries AD. The museum does not give an exact date.

WHY CLAY

Clay was cheap and broke easily. A cracked pot was thrown away. Yet people often hid their most valuable things in plain clay jars. Jeremiah put a land deed in a clay jar so it would last, Jeremiah 32:14, and the Dead Sea Scrolls survived 2,000 years in clay jars.

PAUL'S PICTURE

The treasure is the light of the gospel that God made shine in our hearts, 4:6. We are the cheap clay jars, so everyone can see the power comes from God and not from us, 4:7. Many preachers also think of Gideon's men, who hid torches in clay jars and broke them so the light blazed out, Judges 7:19 to 20.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Clay lamps and jars were everywhere in Paul's Corinth, the cheapest things in the house.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Fish later became a Christian symbol, but this lamp is not Christian. Fish were a common decoration.

6 Therefore we are always confident, although we know that while we are at
home in the body, we are away from the
Lord. 7 For we walk by faith, not by sight. 8
We are confident, then, and would prefer
to be away from the body and at home
with the Lord. 9 So we aspire to please
Him, whether we are at home in this body
or away from it. 10 For we must all appear
before the judgment seat of Christ, that
each one may receive his due for the
things done in the body, whether good or
bad.

2CO 5:8 [NOTABLE] For a believer, death is not the end of the story. To be away from the body is to be at home with the Lord. Paul says the same in Philippians 1:23: to depart and be with Christ is far better.

2CO 5:10 [PROPHECY] We must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, that each one may receive the things done in the body, according to what he has done, whether good or bad → STILL TO COME

2CO 5:10 [FIELD NOTES] The judgment seat is the Greek word bema, the same raised platform in the forum of Corinth where Paul stood before Gallio, Acts 18:12. Every Corinthian had seen it. See the Gallio Field Notes page in Acts, p.1775.

AMBASSADORS FOR CHRIST

11 Therefore, since we know what it means
to fear the Lord, we try to persuade men.
What we are is clear to God, and I hope it
is clear to your conscience as well. 12 We
are not commending ourselves to you
again. Instead, we are giving you an occasion to be proud of us, so that you can
answer those who take pride in appearances rather than in the heart.

13 If we are out of our mind, it is for God; if
we are of sound mind, it is for you. 14 For
Christ's love compels us, because we are

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

convinced that One died for all, therefore all died. 15 And He died for all, that those who live should no longer live for themselves, but for Him who died for them and was raised again.

16 So from now on we regard no one according to the flesh. Although we once regarded Christ in this way, we do so no longer. 17 Therefore if anyone is in Christ, he is a new creation. The old has passed away. Behold, the new has come!

18 All this is from God, who reconciled us to Himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation: 19 that God was reconciling the world to Himself in Christ, not counting men's trespasses against them. And He has committed to us the message of reconciliation.

20 Therefore we are ambassadors for Christ, as though God were making His appeal through us. We implore you on behalf of Christ: Be reconciled to God. 21 God made Him who knew no sin to be sin on our behalf, so that in Him we might become the righteousness of God.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Now is the day of salvation. Paul lists everything he went through to serve them: beatings, prison, sleepless nights and hunger. He opened his heart wide and asks them to do the same. Do not be unequally yoked with unbelievers. You are the temple of the living God.

PAUL'S HARDSHIPS AND GOD'S GRACE

1 As God's fellow workers, then, we urge you not to receive God's grace in vain. 2 For He says:

"In the time of favor I heard you,
and in the day of salvation I helped you."

Behold, now is the time of favor; now is the day of salvation!

3 We put no obstacle in anyone's way, so that no one can discredit our ministry.

4 Rather, as servants of God we commend ourselves in every way: in great endurance; in troubles, hardships, and calamities; 5 in beatings, imprisonments, and riots; in labor, sleepless nights, and hunger; 6 in purity, knowledge, patience, and kindness; in the Holy Spirit and in sincere love; 7 in truthful speech and in the power of God; with the weapons of righteousness in the right hand and in the left; 8 through glory and dishonor, slander and praise; viewed as imposters, yet genuine; 9 unknown, yet well-known; dying, and yet we live on; punished, yet not killed; 10 sorrowful, yet always rejoicing; poor, yet making many rich; having nothing, and yet possessing everything.

11 We have spoken freely to you, Corinthians. Our hearts are open wide. 12 It is not our affection, but yours, that is restrained. 13 As a fair exchange—I speak as to my children—open wide your hearts also.

DO NOT BE UNEQUALLY YOKED

14 Do not be unequally yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership can righteousness have with wickedness? Or what fellowship does light have with darkness? 15 What harmony is there between Christ and Belial? Or what does a believer have in common with an unbeliever? 16 What agreement can exist between the temple of God and idols? For we are the temple of the living God. As God has said:

"I will dwell with them
and walk among them,
and I will be their God,
and they will be My people."

- **2CO 5:17 [NOTABLE]** Not a cleaned up version of the old you. A brand new creation. The old has passed away, so your past does not get the final word.
- **2CO 5:18 [FULFILLS]** To make reconciliation for iniquity ← DAN 9:24b p.1346
- **2CO 5:21 [FULFILLS]** Wounded for our transgressions and 2 more ← IS 53:5a; JER 23:5-6; ZECH 3:4 p.1127
- **2CO 5:21 [NOTE]** THE GREAT EXCHANGE. Jesus took our sin, and we get His righteousness. Martin Luther called this the happy exchange: Christ takes on everything bad that belongs to us, and we receive everything good that belongs to Him. It is the whole gospel in one verse.
- **2CO 6:2 [FULFILLS]** God would help His Servant in the day of salvation ← IS 49:8 · MEDIUM p.1123
- **2CO 6:14 [NOTE]** UNEQUALLY YOKED. A yoke joins two animals to pull together. The law said not to plow with an ox and a donkey together, Deuteronomy 22:10, because they pull differently. Most churches apply this first to marriage: a believer should marry a believer. But Paul's own examples are idols and partnerships of every kind, 6:15 to 16. It does not mean cut off unbelievers. Paul says the opposite in 1 Corinthians 5:10.
- **2CO 6:16 [DEMONIC]** The temple of God has no agreement with idols

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

17 *"Therefore come out from among them*
and be separate, says the Lord.
Touch no unclean thing,
and I will receive you."
18 And:

"I will be a Father to you,
and you will be My sons and daughters,
says the Lord Almighty."

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul was worried sick in Macedonia until Titus showed up with good news. The tearful letter worked. The church was sorry and made things right. Paul says godly sorrow leads to real change, but worldly sorrow only leads to death. He is proud of them again.

PAUL'S JOY IN THE CORINTHIANS

1 Therefore, beloved, since we have these promises, let us cleanse ourselves from everything that defiles body and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

2 Make room for us in your hearts. We have wronged no one, we have corrupted no one, we have exploited no one. 3 I do not say this to condemn you. I have said before that you so occupy our hearts that we live and die together with you. 4 Great is my confidence in you; great is my pride in you; I am filled with encouragement; in all our troubles my joy overflows.

5 For when we arrived in Macedonia, our bodies had no rest, but we were pressed from every direction—conflicts on the outside, fears within. 6 But God, who comforts the downcast, comforted us by the arrival of Titus, 7 and not only by his arrival, but also by the comfort he had received from you. He told us about your longing, your mourning, and your zeal for me, so that I rejoiced all the more.

8 Even if I caused you sorrow by my letter, I do not regret it. Although I did regret it—for I see that my letter caused you sorrow, but only for a short time— 9 yet now I rejoice, not because you were made sorrowful, but because your sorrow led you to repentance. For you felt the sorrow that God had intended, and so were not harmed in any way by us. 10 Godly sorrow brings repentance that leads to salvation without regret, but worldly sorrow brings death.

11 Consider what this godly sorrow has produced in you: what earnestness, what eagerness to clear yourselves, what indignation, what alarm, what longing, what zeal, what vindication! In every way you have proved yourselves to be innocent in this matter. 12 So even though I wrote to you, it was not on account of the one who did wrong or the one who was harmed, but rather that your earnestness on our behalf would be made clear to you in the sight of God. 13 On account of this, we are encouraged.

In addition to our own encouragement, we were even more delighted by the joy of Titus. For his spirit has been refreshed by all of you. 14 Indeed, I was not embarrassed by anything I had boasted to him about you. But just as everything we said to you was true, so our boasting to Titus has proved to be true as well. 15 And his affection for you is even greater when he remembers that you were all obedient as you welcomed him with fear and trembling. 16 I rejoice that I can have complete confidence in you.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

The churches of Macedonia were poor and suffering, yet they begged to give to the poor believers in Jerusalem. Paul asks Corinth to finish the offering they started a year ago. Jesus was rich but became poor for us. Titus and two trusted brothers will handle the money honestly.

GENEROSITY COMMENDED // PHILIPPIANS 4:10–20

1 Now, brothers, we want you to know about the grace that God has given the churches of Macedonia. 2 In the terrible

- **2CO 6:16 [FULFILLS]** God would walk among His people and be their God ← LEV 26:12 p.216
- **2CO 6:16 [FULFILLS]** My dwelling place will be with them; I will be their God and they My people ← EZK 37:27 · MEDIUM p.1304
- **2CO 6:17 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 52:11 p.1127
- **2CO 6:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← 2SA 7:14; IS 43:6 p.503

- **2CO 8:1 [NOTE]** GIVING. Paul never mentions a tithe in these two chapters. He points to Jesus, who became poor for us, 8:9. New Testament giving is cheerful, by choice, from the heart and aimed at real needs, 9:7. Many

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

ordeal they suffered, their abundant joy and deep poverty overflowed into rich generosity. 3 For I testify that they gave according to their ability and even beyond it. Of their own accord, 4 they earnestly pleaded with us for the privilege of sharing in this service to the saints. 5 And not only did they do as we expected, but they gave themselves first to the Lord and then to us, through the will of God.

6 So we urged Titus to help complete your act of grace, just as he had started it. 7 But just as you excel in everything—in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in complete earnestness, and in the love we inspired in you—see that you also excel in this grace of giving. 8 I am not giving a command, but I am testing the sincerity of your love through the earnestness of others.

9 For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though He was rich, yet for your sake He became poor, so that you through His poverty might become rich. 10 And this is my opinion about what is helpful for you in this matter: Last year you were the first not only to give, but even to have such a desire. 11 Now finish the work, so that you may complete it with the same eager desire, according to your means. 12 For if the eagerness is there, the gift is acceptable according to what one has, not according to what he does not have.

13 It is not our intention that others may be relieved while you are burdened, but that there may be equality. 14 At the present time, your surplus will meet their need, so that in turn their surplus will meet your need. This way there will be equality. 15 As it is written:

"He who gathered much had no excess,
and he who gathered little had no shortfall."

TITUS COMMENDED // TITUS 1:1–4

16 But thanks be to God, who put into the heart of Titus the same devotion I have for you. 17 For not only did he welcome our appeal, but he is eagerly coming to you of his own volition.

18 Along with Titus we are sending the brother who is praised by all the churches for his work in the gospel. 19 More than that, this brother was chosen by the churches to accompany us with the gracious offering we administer to honor the Lord Himself and to show our eagerness to help.

20 We want to avoid any criticism of the way we administer this generous gift. 21 *For we are taking great care to do what is right, not only in the eyes of the Lord, but also in the eyes of men.*

22 And we are sending along with them our brother who has proven his earnestness to us many times and in many ways, and now even more so by his great confidence in you. 23 As for Titus, he is my partner and fellow worker among you. As for our brothers, they are messengers of the churches, the glory of Christ. 24 In full view of the churches, then, show these men the proof of your love and the reason for our boasting about you.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul does not want to be embarrassed when he brings friends from Macedonia, so have the gift ready. Whoever sows little reaps little. Whoever sows generously reaps generously. Give what you decided in your heart, because God loves a cheerful giver. Thanks be to God for His indescribable gift.

GOD LOVES A CHEERFUL GIVER // 1 CORINTHIANS 16:1–4

1 Now about the service to the saints, there is no need for me to write to you. 2 For I know your eagerness to help, and I have been boasting to the Macedonians that since last year you in Achaia were prepared to give. And your zeal has stirred most of them to do likewise.

3 But I am sending the brothers in order that our boasting about you in this matter should not prove empty, but that you will be prepared, just as I said. 4 Otherwise, if

churches still teach the tithe from Malachi 3:10 as a good place to start.

■ **2CO 8:15 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 16:18 p.144

■ **2CO 8:21 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← PROV 3:4 p.990

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

any Macedonians come with me and find you unprepared, we—to say nothing of you—would be ashamed of having been so confident. 5 So I thought it necessary to urge the brothers to visit you beforehand and make arrangements for the generous gift you had promised. This way, your gift will be prepared generously and not begrudgingly.

6 Remember this: Whoever sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and whoever sows generously will also reap generously. 7 Each one should give what he has decided in his heart to give, not out of regret or compulsion. For God loves a cheerful giver. 8 And God is able to make all grace abound to you, so that in all things, at all times, having all that you need, you will abound in every good work. 9 As it is written:

"He has scattered abroad His gifts to the poor;
His righteousness endures forever."

10 Now He who supplies seed to the sower and bread for food will supply and multiply your store of seed and will increase the harvest of your righteousness. 11 You will be enriched in every way to be generous on every occasion, and through us your generosity will produce thanksgiving to God. 12 For this ministry of service is not only supplying the needs of the saints but is also overflowing in many expressions of thanksgiving to God.

13 Because of the proof this ministry provides, the saints will glorify God for your obedient confession of the gospel of Christ, and for the generosity of your contribution to them and to all the others. 14 And their prayers for you will express their affection for you, because of the surpassing grace God has given you. 15 Thanks be to God for His indescribable gift!

- **2CO 9:7 [HEART]** Give what you decided in your heart, not by pressure. God loves a cheerful giver.
- **2CO 9:7 [NOTE]** The Greek word for cheerful is hilaros, where we get the word hilarious.
- **2CO 9:9 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 112:9 p.961

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

Now the tone changes. Some say Paul is bold in his letters but weak in person. Paul says our weapons are not worldly. They tear down strongholds and take every thought captive to obey Christ. He will not compare himself with people who measure themselves by themselves.

PAUL'S APOSTOLIC AUTHORITY

1 Now by the mildness and gentleness of Christ, I appeal to you—I, Paul, who am humble when face to face with you, but bold when away. 2 I beg you that when I come I may not need to be as bold as I expect toward those who presume that we live according to the flesh.

3 For though we live in the flesh, we do not wage war according to the flesh. 4 The weapons of our warfare are not the weapons of the flesh. Instead, they have divine power to demolish strongholds. 5 We demolish arguments and every presumption set up against the knowledge of God; and we take captive every thought to make it obedient to Christ. 6 And we will be ready to punish every act of disobedience, as soon as your obedience is complete.

7 You are looking at outward appearances. If anyone is confident that he belongs to Christ, he should remind himself that we belong to Christ just as much as he does. 8 For even if I boast somewhat excessively about the authority the Lord gave us for building you up rather than tearing you down, I will not be ashamed.

9 I do not want to seem to be trying to frighten you by my letters. 10 For some say, "His letters are weighty and forceful, but his physical presence is unimpressive, and his speaking is of no account." 11 Such people should consider that what we are in our letters when absent, we will be in our actions when present.

- **2CO 10:1 [TEXT]** The tone changes sharply here. Every old copy has 2 Corinthians as one letter, and many read it that way: Paul finished thanking the church and then turned to the troublemakers. Many scholars think chapters 10 to 13 were a separate letter, maybe the tearful letter of 2:4, joined to the others later.

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

12 We do not dare to classify or compare
ourselves with some who commend
themselves. When they measure them-
selves by themselves and compare them-
selves with themselves, they show their
ignorance. 13 We, however, will not boast
beyond our limits, but only within the field
of influence that God has assigned to
us—a field that reaches even to you. 14 We
are not overstepping our bounds, as if we
had not come to you. Indeed, we were the
first to reach you with the gospel of
Christ.

15 Neither do we boast beyond our limits in
the labors of others. But we hope that as
your faith increases, our area of influence
among you will greatly increase as well, 16
so that we can preach the gospel in the
regions beyond you. Then we will not be
boasting in the work already done in an-
other man's territory.

17 Rather, *"Let him who boasts boast in the
Lord."* 18 For it is not the one who com-
mends himself who is approved, but the
one whom the Lord commends.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul is jealous for them with a godly jealousy. Fake super apostles are preaching a different Jesus. Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light. So Paul plays the fool and brags about his real resume: beatings, shipwrecks, hunger, cold, and once escaping Damascus in a basket.

PAUL AND THE FALSE APOSTLES

1 I hope you will put up with a little of my
foolishness, but you are already doing
that. 2 I am jealous for you with a godly
jealousy. For I promised you to one hus-
band, to present you as a pure virgin to
Christ.

3 I am afraid, however, that just as Eve was
deceived by the serpent's cunning, your
minds may be led astray from your simple
and pure devotion to Christ. 4 For if some-
one comes and proclaims a Jesus other
than the One we proclaimed, or if you re-
ceive a different spirit than the One you
received, or a different gospel than the
one you accepted, you put up with it very
easily.

5 I consider myself in no way inferior to
those "super-apostles." 6 Although I am
not a polished speaker, I am certainly not
lacking in knowledge. We have made this
clear to you in every way possible.

7 Was it a sin for me to humble myself in
order to exalt you, because I preached the
gospel of God to you free of charge? 8 I
robbed other churches by accepting their
support in order to serve you. 9 And when
I was with you and in need, I was not a
burden to anyone; for the brothers who
came from Macedonia supplied my
needs. I have refrained from being a bur-
den to you in any way, and I will continue
to do so. 10 As surely as the truth of Christ
is in me, this boasting of mine will not be
silenced in the regions of Achaia. 11 Why?
Because I do not love you? God knows I
do!

12 But I will keep on doing what I am doing,
in order to undercut those who want an
opportunity to be regarded as our equals
in the things of which they boast. 13 For
such men are false apostles, deceitful
workers, masquerading as apostles of
Christ. 14 And no wonder, for Satan himself
masquerades as an angel of light. 15 It is
not surprising, then, if his servants mas-
querade as servants of righteousness.
Their end will correspond to their actions.

■ **2CO 10:17 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← JER 9:24 p.1162

■ **2CO 11:4 [NOTE]** A different Jesus. Not every preacher who says Jesus means the Jesus of the Bible. Keep this verse in mind for 11:14.

2CO 11:14 [DEMONIC] Satan disguises himself as an angel of light

■ **2CO 11:14 [THE BIG QUESTION]** See the Angel of Light page.

NOTABLE

THE BIG QUESTION

ANGEL OF LIGHT?

2 CORINTHIANS 11:4 · 11:13 TO 15 · GALATIANS 1:8 · 1 JOHN 4:1 TO 3

WHAT PAUL MEANT

The fake apostles in Corinth looked impressive and sounded spiritual. Paul says that should not surprise anyone, because Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light, 11:14. The enemy rarely shows up with horns. He shows up looking bright, kind and holy, with a message that sounds almost right but brings a different Jesus, 11:4.

TEST THE MESSAGE, NOT THE GLOW

Paul wrote: even if we or an angel from heaven should preach a gospel contrary to the one we preached to you, let him be under a curse, Galatians 1:8. John gave the test: do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits. Every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God, 1 John 4:1 to 3. The question is never how bright the messenger looks. The question is what it says about Jesus.

THE CAVE OF HIRA

Islamic tradition says that in AD 610, Muhammad, a merchant from Mecca about 40 years old, went to pray alone in a cave on Mount Hira. A being appeared, later identified as the angel Gabriel, squeezed him tightly and commanded, Recite! The words he received became the start of the Quran. Over the next 23 years Muhammad said he received the rest the same way. Today almost two billion Muslims believe it was the true Gabriel.

HIS OWN FIRST REACTION

Islam's own early writings say Muhammad ran home shaking and said, Cover me! He was afraid something was wrong with him. One early biography says he feared he had been possessed. His wife Khadijah comforted him, and her Christian cousin Waraqa said it was the same messenger who came to Moses. Muslims see this fear as the humble reaction of a true prophet.

WHAT THE MESSAGE SAYS ABOUT JESUS

The Quran honors Jesus. It calls Him the Messiah, says He was born of the virgin Mary, did miracles and will come back. Mary is named more times in the Quran than in the whole New Testament. But the Quran also says Jesus is not God's Son and that He was not killed on a cross, Quran 4:157 and 4:171. The Bible says the cross and the empty tomb are the gospel itself, 1 Corinthians 15:3 to 4. By the test of Galatians 1:8 and 1 John 4, that is why Christians cannot accept the message from the cave as coming from the God of the Bible, however bright the messenger seemed.

ABOUT OUR MUSLIM NEIGHBORS

This is about a message, not about people. Most Muslims are sincere people who pray, fast, give to the poor and love God as they know Him. Many have more discipline in prayer than many Christians. Love them, be a good friend and talk about Jesus with respect. Many former Muslims say they came to faith after Jesus appeared to them in a dream.

THE SAME TEST FOR EVERYONE

This test is not only for other religions. It applies to every vision, angel visit, prophecy and preacher, including Christians today. If a message points away from the Jesus who died for our sins and rose again, the glow does not matter.

PAUL'S SUFFERING AND SERVICE // COLOSSIANS 1:24–29

16 I repeat: Let no one take me for a fool.
But if you do, then receive me as a fool,
so that I too may boast a little. 17 In this
confident boasting of mine, I am not
speaking as the Lord would, but as a fool.
18 Since many are boasting according to
the flesh, I too will boast. 19 For you gladly
put up with fools, since you are so wise.
20 In fact, you even put up with anyone
who enslaves you or exploits you or takes
advantage of you or exalts himself or
strikes you in the face. 21 To my shame I
concede that we were too weak for that!
Speaking as a fool, however, I can match
what anyone else dares to boast about. 22
Are they Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? So am I. Are they descendants of
Abraham? So am I. 23 Are they servants of

NOTABLE

Christ? (I am speaking as if I were out of
my mind.) I am so much more: in harder
labor, in more imprisonments, in worse
beatings, in frequent danger of death. 24
Five times I received from the Jews the
forty lashes minus one. 25 Three times I
was beaten with rods, once I was stoned,
three times I was shipwrecked. I spent a
night and a day in the open sea.

26 In my frequent journeys, I have been in
danger from rivers and from bandits, in
danger from my countrymen and from the
Gentiles, in danger in the city and in the
country, in danger on the sea and among
false brothers, 27 in labor and toil and often
without sleep, in hunger and thirst and of-
ten without food, in cold and exposure.

28 Apart from these external trials, I face
daily the pressure of my concern for all
the churches. 29 Who is weak, and I am
not weak? Who is led into sin, and I do not
burn with grief?

30 If I must boast, I will boast of the things
that show my weakness. 31 The God and
Father of the Lord Jesus, who is forever
worthy of praise, knows that I am not ly-
ing. 32 In Damascus, the governor under
King Aretas secured the city of the Dama-
scenes in order to arrest me. 33 But I was
lowered in a basket through a window in
the wall and escaped his grasp.

2CO 11:23 [NOTABLE] The fake super apostles bragged about their credentials, so Paul lists his: forty lashes minus one five times, beaten with rods three times, stoned once, shipwrecked three times, a night and a day in the open sea. Forty minus one was a Jewish rule to make sure a whipping never went past the limit in Deuteronomy 25:3. Then the hardest part of all: daily worry for all the churches.

2CO 11:32 [FIELD NOTES] See the King Aretas IV Field Notes page, p.1859.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE KING · DEBATED FOR DAMASCUS

KING ARETAS IV

2 CORINTHIANS 11:32 TO 33 · ACTS 9:23 TO 25



A silver coin of King Aretas IV of the Nabateans, AD 21, front and back. The back honors his queen Shaqilat. Photo Classical Numismatic Group, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A silver coin of Aretas IV, king of the Nabateans, the Arab kingdom whose capital was Petra, the famous city carved in rock in Jordan. Thousands of his coins have been found.

HOW OLD IT IS

This coin was made in AD 21. Aretas ruled from about 9 BC to AD 40, so he was king during the whole life of Jesus and the first years of the church.

THE STORY

Paul says the governor under King Aretas guarded Damascus to arrest him, and he escaped when friends lowered him in a basket through a window in the wall, 11:32 to 33. Acts 9:23 to 25 tells the same escape. Since Aretas died about AD 40, it happened before then.

JOHN THE BAPTIST'S STORY TOO

Herod Antipas married Aretas's daughter, then divorced her to marry Herodias. John the Baptist said that marriage was wrong and was killed for it, Mark 6:17 to 18. About AD 36, Aretas beat Herod's army in battle. The Jewish historian Josephus says many Jews saw it as God punishing Herod for killing John.

THE PUZZLE

Damascus was a Roman city, so why did an Arab king's governor guard it? Some think Rome let Aretas control it for a few years. Coins of Damascus with Roman emperors stop from about AD 34 to 62. Others think the governor led the Nabatean community and watched the city from outside.

MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE JESUS SPEAKING

WHERE IT IS TODAY
Coins of Aretas IV are in museums and collections around the world. Petra is in southern Jordan.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Aretas IV was a real king with power around Damascus in Paul's time, just as Paul says.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS
Paul knows a man who was caught up to the third heaven. Then he was given a thorn in the flesh. He begged three times to have it taken away, but the Lord said, My grace is sufficient for you. When I am weak, then I am strong. Paul is coming a third time.

PAUL'S REVELATION

1 I must go on boasting. Although there is
nothing to gain, I will go on to visions and
revelations from the Lord. 2 I know a man
in Christ who fourteen years ago was
caught up to the third heaven. Whether it
was in the body or out of it I do not know,
but God knows. 3 And I know that this
man—whether in the body or out of it I do
not know, but God knows— 4 was caught
up to Paradise. The things he heard were
inexpressible, things that man is not per-
mitted to tell.

PAUL'S THORN AND GOD'S GRACE

5 I will boast about such a man, but I will
not boast about myself, except in my
weaknesses. 6 Even if I wanted to boast, I
would not be a fool, because I would be
speaking the truth. But I refrain, so no one
will credit me with more than he sees in
me or hears from me, 7 or because of
these surpassingly great revelations.
So to keep me from becoming conceited, I
was given a thorn in my flesh, a messen-
ger of Satan, to torment me. 8 Three times
I pleaded with the Lord to take it away
from me. 9 But He said to me, "My grace is
sufficient for you, for My power is per-
fected in weakness." Therefore I will boast
all the more gladly in my weaknesses, so
that the power of Christ may rest on me.
10 That is why, for the sake of Christ, I de-
light in weaknesses, in insults, in hard-
ships, in persecutions, in difficulties. For
when I am weak, then I am strong.

PAUL'S CONCERN FOR THE CORINTHIANS

11 I have become a fool, but you drove me
to it. In fact, you should have commended
me, since I am in no way inferior to those
"super-apostles," even though I am noth-
ing. 12 The marks of a true apostle—signs,
wonders, and miracles—were performed
among you with great perseverance. 13 In
what way were you inferior to the other
churches, except that I was not a burden
to you? Forgive me this wrong!

14 See, I am ready to come to you a third
time, and I will not be a burden, because I
am not seeking your possessions, but
you. For children should not have to save
up for their parents, but parents for their
children. 15 And for the sake of your souls,
I will most gladly spend my money and
myself. If I love you more, will you love me
less?

16 Be that as it may, I was not a burden to
you; but crafty as I am, I caught you by
trickery. 17 Did I exploit you by anyone I
sent you? 18 I urged Titus to visit you, and I
sent our brother with him. Did Titus exploit

- **2CO 12:1 [MIRACLE]** Paul caught up to the third heaven; heard inexpressible words
- **2CO 12:2 [NOTE]** THE THIRD HEAVEN. Most agree the man is Paul himself, talking humbly. The first heaven is the sky and the second is the stars. The third heaven is where God lives, which Paul also calls paradise, 12:4, the word Jesus used to the thief on the cross, Luke 23:43. Paul heard things he was not allowed to tell, and he waited fourteen years to mention it.
- **2CO 12:7 [DEMONIC]** A thorn in the flesh, a messenger of Satan
- **2CO 12:7 [NOTE]** THE THORN. Paul never says what it was. Some think it was an eye problem, because he wrote with large letters and said the Galatians would have given him their eyes, Galatians 4:15 and 6:11. Some think it was another sickness or the people who attacked him everywhere he went. Others take messenger of Satan literally, a demon harassing him. The point is 12:9: God's grace was enough.
- **2CO 12:9 [NOTABLE]** STRENGTH IN WEAKNESS. Paul is not saying weakness is good. He begged God three times to take the thorn away, 12:8. He is saying God's power shows up best right where ours runs out, so Christ gets the credit. The fake super apostles bragged about their strengths. Paul bragged about his weaknesses, and that left them nothing to attack. Think of the last rap battle in the movie 8 Mile. B-Rabbit, Eminem's character, says every embarrassing thing about himself before his opponent can, and the other guy has nothing left to say. Pride can't do that. Only a humble person can admit weakness out loud, and that is when the power of Christ rests on him.
- **2CO 12:12 [MIRACLE]** The marks of an apostle: signs, wonders and miracles

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE

you in any way? Did we not walk in the same Spirit and follow in the same footsteps?

19 Have you been thinking all along that we were making a defense to you? We speak before God in Christ, and all of this, beloved, is to build you up. 20 For I am afraid that when I come, I may not find you as I wish, and you may not find me as you wish. I fear that there may be quarreling, jealousy, rage, rivalry, slander, gossip, arrogance, and disorder. 21 I am afraid that when I come again, my God will humble me before you, and I will be grieved over many who have sinned earlier and have not repented of their acts of impurity, sexual immorality, and debauchery.

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul warns he will not go easy when he comes. Examine yourselves to see whether you are in the faith. He would rather be weak than have them fail. Aim for restoration, comfort each other and live in peace. He closes with a blessing from the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.

EXAMINE YOURSELVES

1 This is the third time I am coming to you.
"Every matter must be established by the testimony of two or three witnesses."

2 I already warned you the second time I was with you. So now in my absence I warn those who sinned earlier and everyone else: If I return, I will not spare anyone, 3 since you are demanding proof that Christ is speaking through me. He is not weak in dealing with you but is powerful among you. 4 For He was indeed crucified in weakness, yet He lives by God's power. For we are also weak in Him, yet by God's power we will live with Him concerning you.

5 Examine yourselves to see whether you are in the faith; test yourselves. Do you not realize that Jesus Christ is in you—unless you fail the test? 6 And I hope you will realize that we have not failed the test.

7 Now we pray to God that you will not do anything wrong—not that we will appear to have stood the test, but that you will do what is right, even if we appear to have failed. 8 For we cannot do anything against the truth, but only for the truth. 9 In fact, we rejoice when we are weak but you are strong, and our prayer is for your perfection.

10 This is why I write these things while absent, so that when I am present I will not need to be severe in my use of the authority that the Lord gave me for building you up, not for tearing you down.

BENEDICTION AND FAREWELL

11 Finally, brothers, rejoice! Aim for perfect harmony, encourage one another, be of one mind, live in peace. And the God of love and peace will be with you.

12 Greet one another with a holy kiss.

13 All the saints send you greetings.

14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with all of you.

2CO 13:1 [QUOTES] Direct ← DT 19:15 p.310

2CO 13:14 [NOTABLE] One sentence, three Persons: Jesus, the Father and the Holy Spirit. The word Trinity is not in the Bible, but verses like this one are why the church believes it. Many churches still end their services with these words.

Corinth: The Whole Story

AD 50 TO 52
Paul arrives, makes tents with Priscilla and Aquila, and plants the church in a year and a half, Acts 18.

ABOUT AD 51
Paul is dragged before the judge Gallio, who throws the case out, Acts 18:12 to 17.

AFTER PAUL LEAVES
He writes a first letter, now lost, 1 Corinthians 5:9.

ABOUT AD 53 TO 55
1 Corinthians, from Ephesus, answering bad reports and their questions.

ABOUT AD 55
A painful visit, then a letter written through many tears, 2 Corinthians 2:1 to 4.

ABOUT AD 55 TO 57
2 Corinthians, from Macedonia, after Titus brings good news.

ABOUT AD 57
Paul's third visit, three months long. He writes Romans from Corinth, Acts 20:2 to 3.

ABOUT AD 96
Clement of Rome writes to Corinth because they are fighting again, and tells them to reread Paul's letter.

What Corinth Teaches Us

GOD USES MESSY CHURCHES. If God did not give up on Corinth, He will not give up on yours.

GIFTS WITHOUT LOVE ARE NOISE. 1 Corinthians 13:1.

DISCIPLINE IS MEANT TO BRING PEOPLE HOME. 1 Corinthians 5:5 and 2 Corinthians 2:7.

GIVE CHEERFULLY. 2 Corinthians 9:7.

GOD'S STRENGTH SHOWS UP IN WEAKNESS. 2 Corinthians 12:9.

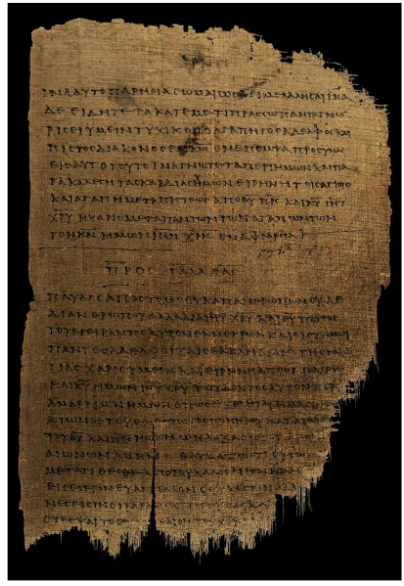
IT ALL STANDS ON THE EMPTY TOMB. Christ has indeed been raised, 1 Corinthians 15:20.

BOOK 48 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

GALATIANS

Jesus Plus Nothing

AUTHOR	Paul, 1:1. Nobody doubts it. Even scholars who question some of Paul's letters agree he wrote this one.
WRITTEN TO	The churches of Galatia, 1:2, a Roman province in the middle of what is now Turkey. More than one church got this letter, so it was passed around.
DATE WRITTEN	Many date it about AD 48 to 49, which would make it Paul's first letter in the Bible. Others date it AD 53 to 57. See the setting below.
WHY HE WROTE	Teachers came in saying Gentile believers had to be circumcised and keep the law of Moses to really be saved, 5:2 and 6:12. Paul says that is a different gospel.
KEY VERSE	Galatians 2:16. A man is not justified by works of the law, but by faith in Jesus Christ.



THE OLDEST COPY OF GALATIANS
This is a page of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200, now at the University of Michigan. The top lines are the end of Ephesians. Then a line, and the title PROS GALATAS, To the Galatians. Below it, Galatians begins: Paul, an apostle, sent not from men nor by man. The bottom lines reach 1:8, even if we or an angel from heaven.

THE ORDER OF THE BOOKS. In this old book, Galatians comes right after Ephesians, not after 2 Corinthians like in our Bibles. Early Christians did not all put Paul's letters in the same order.

WHY IT MATTERS. See the 1 Corinthians title page, p.1821, for how this book was found. Copied only about 150 years after Paul wrote, it says what our Bibles say today.

Historical Setting

The word Galatia comes from Celts, the same people as the Gauls, who moved into the middle of Turkey about 278 BC. In 25 BC Rome turned their kingdom into a big province called Galatia. It stretched south to cities Paul visited on his first trip: Antioch of Pisidia, Iconium, Lystra and Derbe, Acts 13 to 14. Most scholars today think he wrote to those southern churches, maybe about AD 48 to 49, right before the big meeting in Jerusalem in Acts 15. Others think he meant the Celtic Galatians up north near Ankara, visited in Acts 16:6 and 18:23, and that he wrote about AD 53 to 57. Either way, after Paul left, teachers showed up and told his new believers that Jesus was not enough.

What Was Going Wrong

JESUS PLUS RULES. Teachers said Gentile believers had to be circumcised to belong to God's people, 5:2 to 3 and 6:12 to 13.
TURNING SO QUICKLY. The Galatians were deserting the gospel fast, 1:6.
ATTACKING PAUL. Some said Paul was not a real apostle and got his message secondhand, 1:1 and 1:11 to 12.
HOLY DAYS. They started keeping special days, months, seasons and years to earn God's favor, 4:10.
PETER SLIPPED TOO. Even Peter and Barnabas stopped eating with Gentile believers out of fear, 2:12 to 13.
BITING EACH OTHER. The church was tearing itself apart, 5:15.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Galatians is Paul's angriest letter, and the reason is simple. Some people were telling new believers that Jesus was a great start, but to really be right with God they also had to keep the rules. Paul says no. You are made right with God by trusting Jesus, period. Add anything to Him and you lose Him. But that freedom is not a license to sin. It is freedom to love, led by the Holy Spirit. If you have ever felt like you have to earn God's love, this letter is for you.

Galatians at a Glance

CH 1 to 2 **PAUL'S STORY**
His gospel came from Jesus, and even Peter got corrected.

CH 3 to 4 **THE ARGUMENT**
Abraham, the curse, adoption and Hagar and Sarah.

CH 5 to 6 **LIVING FREE**
Freedom, the fruit of the Spirit and reaping what you sow.

Where Jesus Shows Up

GALATIANS 1:4 He gave Himself for our sins to rescue us from this present evil age. Fulfills Isaiah 53:6.

GALATIANS 3:13 Christ became a curse for us, because cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree. Fulfills Deuteronomy 21:23.

GALATIANS 3:16 The promised Seed of Abraham is one Person, Christ. Fulfills Genesis 12:7 and 22:18.

GALATIANS 4:4 When the time had fully come, God sent His Son, born of a woman. Fulfills Genesis 3:15.

What to Watch for in Galatians

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (12)	1:3-5, 3:8, 3:13, 3:16, 4:4-5
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	4:22-31
THE HEART (1)	4:6
DEMONIC (3)	3:14, 4:8, 5:20
NOTABLE (4)	2:20, 5:1, 5:22-23, 6:7-9
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

LUTHER'S WIFE
Martin Luther loved this letter more than any other. He said Galatians was his epistle, the one he was engaged to, his Katie von Bora, which was his wife's name. His lectures on it, printed in 1535, helped spread the Reformation.

THE CELTS WHO STILL SPOKE CELTIC
About AD 387, Jerome wrote that the Galatians up north still spoke a language almost like the one he had heard near Trier, in Germany. So some of Paul's readers may have been cousins of the Gauls.

WELCOMED LIKE AN ANGEL
Paul says they welcomed him like an angel of God, 4:14. At Lystra in South Galatia, the crowd thought Paul was the god Hermes and tried to offer sacrifices to him, Acts 14:11 to 13.

ABBA
Abba is the Aramaic word a child calls his father. Jesus prayed it, Mark 14:36, and Paul says the Spirit in us cries it too, 4:6.

BIG LETTERS
Paul usually spoke his letters to a helper who wrote them down. Here he grabs the pen and writes the end in large letters himself, 6:11.

NO THANK YOU
Every other letter Paul wrote to a church opens with thanks or praise. Galatians jumps straight from hello to I am amazed you are deserting, 1:6.

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes. The church leaders met in Jerusalem and agreed Gentile believers do not have to be circumcised, Acts 15:19. Paul went back through Galatia to strengthen the churches, Acts 16:4 to 5, and Timothy, a young man from Lystra, joined his team. Later the Galatian churches gave to Paul's offering for the poor, 1 Corinthians 16:1. Fifteen hundred years later, a German monk named Martin Luther read this letter and was set free by it. The fight in Galatia became the fight of the Reformation.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul skips the thank you notes and goes straight to the problem. The Galatians are already turning to a different gospel, which is really no gospel at all. Even if an angel preaches something else, let him be cursed. Paul got his message straight from Jesus, not from a committee in Jerusalem.

PAUL'S GREETING TO THE GALATIANS

1 Paul, an apostle—sent not from men nor
by man, but by Jesus Christ and God the
Father, who raised Him from the dead— 2
and all the brothers with me,

To the churches of Galatia:

3 Grace and peace to you from God our
Father and the Lord Jesus Christ, 4 who
gave Himself for our sins to rescue us
from the present evil age, according to
the will of our God and Father, 5 to whom
be glory forever and ever. Amen.

NO OTHER GOSPEL

6 I am amazed how quickly you are desert-
ing the One who called you by the grace
of Christ and are turning to a different
gospel— 7 which is not even a gospel. Evi-
dently some people are troubling you and
trying to distort the gospel of Christ.

8 But even if we or an angel from heaven
should preach a gospel contrary to the
one we preached to you, let him be under
a curse! 9 As we have said before, so now
I say again: If anyone is preaching to you
a gospel contrary to the one you received,
let him be under a curse!

PAUL PREACHES THE GOSPEL

10 Am I now seeking the approval of men,
or of God? Or am I striving to please men?
If I were still trying to please men, I would
not be a servant of Christ. 11 For I want you
to know, brothers, that the gospel I
preached was not devised by man. 12 I did
not receive it from any man, nor was I
taught it; rather, I received it by revelation
from Jesus Christ.

13 For you have heard of my former way of
life in Judaism, how severely I persecuted
the church of God and tried to destroy it.
14 I was advancing in Judaism beyond
many of my contemporaries and was ex-
tremely zealous for the traditions of my
fathers.

- **GAL 1:2 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Antioch of Pisidia Field Notes page, p.1866.
- **GAL 1:3 [FULFILLS]** To make an end of sins ← DAN 9:24a p.1346
- **GAL 1:4 [FULFILLS]** God's will that He bear sin for all mankind ← IS 53:6b p.1128
- **GAL 1:8 [THE BIG QUESTION]** Even an angel from heaven does not get to change the gospel. Judge the message by what it says about Jesus, not by how bright the messenger looks. See the Angel of Light page in 2 Corinthians, p.1858.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE CITY · DEBATED WHETHER THIS IS GALATIA

ANTIOCH OF PISIDIA

GALATIANS 1:2 · ACTS 13:14 TO 52



The main paved street of Antioch of Pisidia, with the theater ruins on the hill. Photo Dosseman, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of a Roman city near the town of Yalvaç in central Turkey. Visitors walk its paved main street, a theater, a temple to the emperor Augustus, and a large church named for Paul.

HOW OLD IT IS

Greek kings founded the city about 280 BC. Augustus made it a Roman colony about 25 BC and settled army veterans there. The street and buildings you see are mostly from the Roman era, the first few centuries AD. The church of Paul was built in the 300s. Some say it sits over the synagogue where Paul preached, but that is not proven.

PAUL WAS HERE

On his first trip, Paul preached a long sermon in the synagogue here, Acts 13:16 to 41. Almost the whole city came the next Sabbath. Many Gentiles believed, but leaders stirred up trouble and threw Paul and Barnabas out, Acts 13:44 to 50. If Paul wrote Galatians to the southern churches, this was one of them.

THE SICKNESS CLUE
Paul says he first preached to them because of an illness, 4:13. Antioch sits about 3,600 feet up. The explorer William Ramsay guessed Paul caught malaria in the swampy coast below and climbed to the cool mountains to get well. It is only a guess.

THE SERGIUS PAULLUS LINK
Inscriptions found here name members of the Sergius Paullus family. A man with that name was the governor of Cyprus who believed just before Paul came here, Acts 13:7 and 13:12. Some think he sent Paul to his family's hometown. That is possible but not proven.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
Just outside Yalvaç, Isparta Province, Turkey. A museum in town holds finds from the site, including pieces of a copy of the emperor's own life story carved in stone.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Antioch was a real Roman colony in the province of Galatia, on the road Paul traveled, just as Acts describes.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
It does not settle whether Paul's letter went to these southern churches or to the Celts up north.

15 But when God, who set me apart from
my mother's womb and called me by His
grace, was pleased 16 to reveal His Son in
me so that I might preach Him among the
Gentiles, I did not rush to consult with
flesh and blood, 17 nor did I go up to
Jerusalem to the apostles who came be-
fore me, but I went into Arabia and later
returned to Damascus.

18 Only after three years did I go up to
Jerusalem to confer with Cephas, and I
stayed with him fifteen days. 19 But I saw
none of the other apostles except James,
the Lord's brother. 20 I assure you before
God that what I am writing to you is no lie.

21 Later I went to the regions of Syria and
Cilicia. 22 I was personally unknown, how-
ever, to the churches of Judea that are in
Christ. 23 They only heard the account:
"The man who formerly persecuted us is
now preaching the faith he once tried to
destroy." 24 And they glorified God be-
cause of me.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
Fourteen years later Paul checked his gospel with the leaders in Jerusalem, and they shook hands on it. Later in Antioch, Peter stopped eating with Gentiles when the strict crowd showed up, so Paul called him out in front of everyone. We are made right with God by faith in Christ, not by keeping the law.

THE COUNCIL AT JERUSALEM // ACTS 15:5–21

1 Fourteen years later I went up again to
Jerusalem, accompanied by Barnabas. I
took Titus along also. 2 I went in response
to a revelation and set before them the
gospel that I preach among the Gentiles.
But I spoke privately to those recognized
as leaders, for fear that I was running or
had already run in vain. 3 Yet not even Ti-
tus, who was with me, was compelled to
be circumcised, even though he was a
Greek.

4 This issue arose because some false
brothers had come in under false pre-
tenses to spy on our freedom in Christ Je-
sus, in order to enslave us. 5 We did not
give in to them for a moment, so that the
truth of the gospel would remain with you.

6 But as for the highly esteemed—what-
ever they were makes no difference to
me; God does not show favoritism—those
leaders added nothing to me. 7 On the
contrary, they saw that I had been en-
trusted to preach the gospel to the uncir-
cumcised, just as Peter had been to the
circumcised. 8 For the One who was at
work in Peter's apostleship to the circum-
cised was also at work in my apostleship
to the Gentiles.

9 And recognizing the grace that I had
been given, James, Cephas, and
John—those reputed to be pillars—gave
me and Barnabas the right hand of fellow-

■ **GAL 2:1 [NOTE]** WHICH TRIP? Many scholars think this is the big meeting in Jerusalem in Acts 15, p.1766, where the church decided Gentiles do not have to be circumcised. If Galatians was written before that meeting, as the intro says many think, this is the earlier trip when Paul and Barnabas brought gifts for the hungry, Acts 11:30. Either way, the leaders agreed with Paul's gospel, 2:9.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

ship, so that we should go to the Gentiles, and they to the circumcised. 10 They only asked us to remember the poor, the very thing I was eager to do.

PAUL CONFRONTS CEPHAS

11 When Cephas came to Antioch, however, I opposed him to his face, because he stood condemned. 12 For before certain men came from James, he used to eat with the Gentiles. But when they arrived, he began to draw back and separate himself, for fear of those in the circumcision group. 13 The other Jews joined him in his hypocrisy, so that by their hypocrisy even Barnabas was led astray.

14 When I saw that they were not walking in line with the truth of the gospel, I said to Cephas in front of them all, "If you, who are a Jew, live like a Gentile and not like a Jew, how can you compel the Gentiles to live like Jews?"

15 We who are Jews by birth and not Gentile "sinners" 16 know that a man is not justified by works of the law, but by faith in Jesus Christ. So we, too, have believed in Christ Jesus, that we may be justified by faith in Christ and not by works of the law, because by works of the law no one will be justified.

17 But if, while we seek to be justified in Christ, we ourselves are found to be sinners, does that make Christ a minister of sin? Certainly not! 18 If I rebuild what I have already torn down, I prove myself to be a lawbreaker.

19 For through the law I died to the law so that I might live to God. 20 I have been crucified with Christ, and I no longer live, but Christ lives in me. The life I live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave Himself up for me. 21 I do not set aside the grace of God. For if righteousness comes through the law, then Christ died for nothing.

- **GAL 2:11 [NOTE]** PAUL CONFRONTS PETER. Peter was the top apostle, but when he pulled away from Gentile believers out of fear, Paul corrected him to his face. Truth matters more than titles, and even great leaders can be wrong. They did not stay enemies. Peter later called Paul our beloved brother, 2 Peter 3:15. Protestants have used this story to say no church leader is above correction. Catholics answer that Peter slipped in what he did, not in what he taught.
- **GAL 2:16 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 143:2 p.978
- **GAL 2:20 [NOTABLE]** Paul says the old Paul died with Jesus on the cross. The life he lives now is Christ living through him, by faith. The Christian life is not trying harder to be good. It is letting Jesus live His life in you. And it is personal: He loved me and gave Himself for me.
- **GAL 3:1 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Galatian Celts Field Notes page, p.1869.
- **GAL 3:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 15:6 p.67
- **GAL 3:8 [FULFILLS]** Through Abraham's seed all nations would be blessed and 3 more ← GEN 12:3; GEN 18:18; GEN 26:2-5; PS 72:17 p.62
- **GAL 3:10 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 27:26 p.318
- **GAL 3:11 [QUOTES]** Direct ← HAB 2:4 p.1459

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

You foolish Galatians! Who put a spell on you? You started with the Spirit, so why try to finish with rules? Abraham believed God, and that was counted as righteousness. Christ took the curse for us on the cross. Now there is neither Jew nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor female. You are all one in Christ.

FAITH AND BELIEF // JAMES 2:14–26

1 O foolish Galatians! Who has bewitched you? Before your very eyes Jesus Christ was clearly portrayed as crucified. 2 I would like to learn just one thing from you: Did you receive the Spirit by works of the law, or by hearing with faith?

3 Are you so foolish? After starting in the Spirit, are you now finishing in the flesh? 4 Have you suffered so much for nothing, if it really was for nothing? 5 Does God lavish His Spirit on you and work miracles among you because you practice the law, or because you hear and believe?

6 So also, *"Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness."* 7 Understand, then, that those who have faith are sons of Abraham. 8 The Scripture foresaw that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, and foretold the gospel to Abraham: *"All nations will be blessed through you."* 9 So those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith.

CHRIST HAS REDEEMED US

10 All who rely on works of the law are under a curse. For it is written: *"Cursed is everyone who does not continue to do everything written in the Book of the Law."* 11 Now it is clear that no one is justified before God by the law, because, *"The righteous will live by faith."* 12 The law, however, is not based

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

on faith; on the contrary, *"The man who does these things will live by them."*

13 Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us. For it is written: *"Cursed is everyone who is hung on a tree."* 14 He redeemed us in order that the blessing promised to Abraham would come to the Gentiles in Christ Jesus, so that by faith we might receive the promise of the Spirit.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE STATUE · THE LINK IS BACKGROUND

THE GALATIAN CELTS

GALATIANS 3:1



The Dying Gaul, a marble statue of a wounded Celtic warrior, Capitoline Museums, Rome. Photo antmoose, CC BY 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A life size marble statue of a Celtic warrior sitting on his shield, bleeding from a wound in his side. You can tell he is a Celt by his spiky hair, his mustache and the twisted metal ring around his neck, called a torc. The Greeks called these people Galatians.

HOW OLD IT IS

It is a Roman copy in marble, made a little before or after the time of Jesus. The first version was bronze, made about 230 to 220 BC for the king of Pergamum in Turkey. He had beaten the Galatians in battle and showed off statues of them dying. It was dug up in Rome in the early 1600s.

WHO THE GALATIANS WERE

About 278 BC, thousands of Celts crossed into Turkey. They raided cities for years and then settled in the middle of the land around Ankara in three tribes. Rome made their land part of a province in 25 BC and kept the name Galatia.

YOU FOOLISH GALATIANS

Paul writes, You foolish Galatians! Who has bewitched you? 3:1. He is not insulting a race. He is shocked that people who saw Christ crucified so clearly would trade grace for rules. Greek writers did call the Celts brave but hot tempered and quick to change, and some think Paul's readers would have felt that sting.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the Capitoline Museums in Rome, Italy.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The Galatians were a real people famous across the ancient world, and their name stayed on the map in Paul's day.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The statue shows a Celt from 300 years before Paul. It does not tell us whether Paul's readers were Celts in the north or a mix of peoples in the south.

THE PURPOSE OF THE LAW // ROMANS 7:1–6

15 Brothers, let me put this in human terms. Even a human covenant, once it is ratified, cannot be canceled or amended. 16 The promises were spoken to Abraham and to his seed. The Scripture does not say, *"and to seeds,"* meaning many, but *"and to your seed,"* meaning One, who is Christ.

17 What I mean is this: The law that came 430 years later does not revoke the covenant previously established by God, so as to nullify the promise. 18 For if the inheritance depends on the law, then it no longer depends on a promise; but God freely granted it to Abraham through a promise.

- **GAL 3:12 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 18:5 p.202
- **GAL 3:13 [DEMONIC]** Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law, becoming a curse for us
- **GAL 3:13 [FULFILLS]** Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree ← DT 21:23 p.312
- **GAL 3:13 [FULFILLS]** An offering for sin ← IS 53:10b p.1128
- **GAL 3:16 [FULFILLS]** The promise of land and inheritance given to Abraham's Seed (singular) ← GEN 12:7 p.64
- **GAL 3:16 [FULFILLS]** Isaac's seed would bless all nations ← GEN 22:18 p.77

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART DEMONIC

19 Why then was the law given? It was
added because of transgressions, until
the arrival of the seed to whom the
promise referred. It was administered
through angels by a mediator. 20 A media-
tor is unnecessary, however, for only one
party; but God is one.
21 Is the law, then, opposed to the
promises of God? Certainly not! For if a
law had been given that could impart life,
then righteousness would certainly have
come from the law. 22 But the Scripture
pronounces all things confined by sin, so
that by faith in Jesus Christ the promise
might be given to those who believe.
23 Before this faith came, we were held in
custody under the law, locked up until
faith should be revealed. 24 So the law be-
came our guardian to lead us to Christ,
that we might be justified by faith. 25 Now
that faith has come, we are no longer un-
der a guardian.

SONS THROUGH FAITH IN CHRIST

26 You are all sons of God through faith in
Christ Jesus. 27 For all of you who were
baptized into Christ have clothed your-
selves with Christ. 28 There is neither Jew
nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor fe-
male, for you are all one in Christ Jesus.
29 And if you belong to Christ, then you are
Abraham's seed and heirs according to
the promise.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Before Jesus, we were like kids with a babysitter. When the time was right, God sent His Son, born of a woman, so we could be adopted. Now we call God Abba, Father. Paul remembers how they welcomed him when he was sick. Then a picture story: Hagar and Sarah, slavery and freedom.

SONS AND HEIRS

1 What I am saying is that as long as the
heir is a child, he is no different from a
slave, although he is the owner of every-
thing. 2 He is subject to guardians and
trustees until the date set by his father.
3 So also, when we were children, we
were enslaved under the basic principles
of the world. 4 But when the time had fully
come, God sent His Son, born of a
woman, born under the law, 5 to redeem
those under the law, that we might receive
our adoption as sons. 6 And because you
are sons, God sent the Spirit of His Son
into our hearts, crying out, "Abba, Father!"
7 So you are no longer a slave, but a son;
and since you are a son, you are also an
heir through God.

PAUL'S CONCERN FOR THE GALATIANS

8 Formerly, when you did not know God,
you were slaves to those who by nature
are not gods. 9 But now that you know
God, or rather are known by God, how is it
that you are turning back to those weak
and worthless principles? Do you wish to
be enslaved by them all over again? 10 You
are observing special days and months
and seasons and years! 11 I fear for you,
that my efforts for you may have been in
vain. 12 I beg you, brothers, become like
me, for I became like you. You have done
me no wrong.

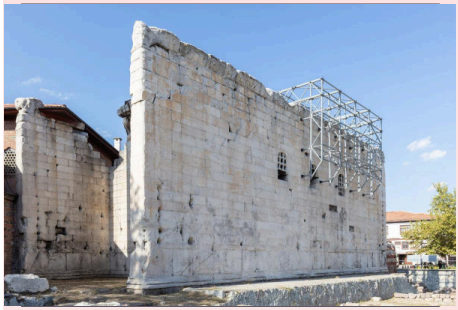
■ **GAL 3:28 [NOTE]** ALL ONE IN CHRIST. Your race, your job and whether you are a man or a woman do not change how much God values you or your place in His family. A Jewish prayer, written down later, thanks God for not making a man a Gentile, a slave or a woman. Paul tears that wall down. Some believe this verse opens every role in the church to women, pointing to Phoebe and Junia in Romans 16, p.1818. Others say Paul is talking about being saved, not about church roles.

■ **GAL 4:4 [FULFILLS]** The Redeemer would be born of a woman (the seed of the woman) and 2 more ← GEN 3:15; GEN 49:10; RUTH 4:9-10 p.51
■ **GAL 4:6 [HEART]** God sent the Spirit of His Son into our hearts, crying Abba, Father.
■ **GAL 4:8 [DEMONIC]** Before knowing God you were slaves to things that are not gods
■ **GAL 4:10 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Temple of Augustus Field Notes page, p.1871.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE TEMPLE · DEBATED FOR 4:10

THE TEMPLE OF AUGUSTUS

GALATIANS 4:8 TO 10



The Temple of Rome and Augustus in Ankara, Turkey. Its walls carry the Deeds of the Divine Augustus. Photo Diego Delso, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The stone walls of a temple to the goddess Roma and the emperor Augustus in Ankara, the capital of the province of Galatia. On its walls the emperor's life story is carved in Latin inside and Greek outside. It is called the Deeds of the Divine Augustus. This is the best copy left in the world.

HOW OLD IT IS

The temple was built about 25 BC to AD 14. Experts argue over the exact date. The Deeds were carved after Augustus died in AD 14, so they were on the wall when Paul wrote.

SON OF GOD ON THE WALL

Augustus called himself the son of a god, because Rome had declared his adopted father Julius Caesar a god. All over Galatia people kept festival days for the emperor. Pieces of two more copies of the Deeds have been found in Galatia, one at Antioch of Pisidia, Paul's city.

DAYS, MONTHS, SEASONS AND YEARS

Paul says the Galatians were going back to observing special days, months, seasons and years, 4:10. Most think he means Jewish holy days pushed by the new teachers, because the whole letter is about the law. Some scholars add that new believers who quit the emperor's festivals were under pressure, and keeping Jewish days made them look like a legal religion in Roman eyes.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the Ulus area of Ankara, Turkey, right beside the Hacı Bayram Mosque. The temple was later turned into a church.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Emperor worship was everywhere in Galatia. Calling Jesus the true Son God sent, 4:4, was a bold claim there.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Paul never names the emperor in Galatians. The link to 4:10 is a scholar's idea, not something the verse says.

13 You know that it was because of an illness that I first preached the gospel to
you. 14 And although my illness was a trial
to you, you did not despise or reject me.
Instead, you welcomed me as if I were an
angel of God, as if I were Christ Jesus
Himself. 15 What then has become of your
blessing? For I can testify that, if it were
possible, you would have torn out your
eyes and given them to me. 16 Have I now
become your enemy by telling you the
truth?

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE ROAD · MEDIUM FOR THIS STRETCH

THE VIA SEBASTE

GALATIANS 4:13 TO 14 · ACTS 13:13 TO 14



Paved Roman road in the Döşeme Pass north of Antalya, Turkey, believed to be part of the Via Sebaste. Photo Volker Höhfeld, CC BY SA 4.0.

GAL 4:13 [FIELD NOTES] See The Via Sebaste Field Notes page, p.1871.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

WHAT IT IS
A Roman road paved with stones, climbing through a mountain pass in southern Turkey. Many experts think it was part of the Via Sebaste, the road of Augustus, which tied together the Roman colonies of South Galatia.

HOW OLD IT IS
Milestones along the Via Sebaste say it was built in 6 BC under Augustus. The stones in this photo may have been laid or fixed in later Roman centuries, so their exact date is debated. The route itself was there in Paul's day.

PAUL'S ROAD
On his first trip, Paul landed on the south coast at Perga and went up to Antioch of Pisidia, Acts 13:13 to 14. The easiest way up the mountains was this kind of road. From Antioch it ran on toward Iconium and Lystra, the next stops in Acts 14.

WHY ROMAN ROADS MATTER
Rome built tens of thousands of miles of roads for its armies. Soldiers kept them safe from bandits. Paul used them to carry the gospel, and his letters traveled the same roads. Still, Paul says he faced danger from rivers and robbers, 2 Corinthians 11:26.

THE ILLNESS
Paul says he first preached in Galatia because of an illness, and they did not turn him away even though it was a trial for them, 4:13 to 14. Some think it was an eye problem, 4:15. See the 6:11 note and the 2 Corinthians 12:7 note, p.1860.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Rome had just built a road linking the very cities Acts says Paul visited, in the order he visited them.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No one can say Paul walked on these exact stones.

17 Those people are zealous for you, but
not in a good way. Instead, they want to
isolate you from us, so that you may be
zealous for them. 18 Nevertheless, it is
good to be zealous if it serves a noble
purpose—at any time, and not only when I
am with you.

19 My children, for whom I am again in the
pains of childbirth until Christ is formed in
you, 20 how I wish I could be with you now
and change my tone, because I am perplexed about you.

HAGAR AND SARAH // GENESIS 21:9–21

21 Tell me, you who want to be under the
law, do you not understand what the law
says? 22 For it is written that Abraham had
two sons, one by the slave woman and
the other by the free woman. 23 His son by
the slave woman was born according to
the flesh, but his son by the free woman
was born through the promise.

24 These things serve as illustrations, for
the women represent two covenants. One
covenant is from Mount Sinai and bears
children into slavery: This is Hagar. 25 Now
Hagar stands for Mount Sinai in Arabia
and corresponds to the present-day
Jerusalem, because she is in slavery with
her children. 26 But the Jerusalem above is
free, and she is our mother. 27 For it is
written:

"Rejoice, O barren woman,
who bears no children;
break forth and cry aloud,
you who have never travailed;
because more are the children of the desolate
woman
than of her who has a husband."

28 Now you, brothers, like Isaac, are children of promise. 29 At that time, however,
the son born by the flesh persecuted the
son born by the Spirit. It is the same now.

30 But what does the Scripture say? *"Expel*
the slave woman and her son, for the slave
woman's son will never share in the inheri-
tance with the free woman's son." 31 There-

- **GAL 4:22 [FULFILLS]** Sending away the slave woman and her son pictures the old covenant giving way to the new ← GEN 21:10 p.75
- **GAL 4:24 [NOTE]** TWO COVENANTS, NOT TWO RACES. Paul says this is an allegory, a picture story. Hagar stands for the law given at Mount Sinai, Sarah for God's promise. It is not about Arabs and Jews. Paul even puts the Jerusalem of his day on Hagar's side and believing Gentiles on Sarah's. The point is how you relate to God: as a slave trying to earn it, or as a free child of the promise. See the Genesis 21:9 note, p.75.
- **GAL 4:26 [FULFILLS]** The barren woman would have more children than the married one ← IS 54:1 · MEDIUM p.1128
- **GAL 4:27 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 54:1 p.1128
- **GAL 4:30 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 21:10 p.75

DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

fore, brothers, we are not children of the slave woman, but of the free woman.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Christ set you free, so do not go back to slavery. If you add circumcision to Jesus, you lose the whole point. Love your neighbor as yourself. Walk by the Spirit and you will not do what the flesh wants. Paul lists the works of the flesh and the fruit of the Spirit: love, joy, peace and more.

FREEDOM IN CHRIST

1 It is for freedom that Christ has set us
free. Stand firm, then, and do not be en-
cumbered once more by a yoke of slav-
ery.

2 Take notice: I, Paul, tell you that if you let
yourselves be circumcised, Christ will be
of no value to you at all. 3 Again I testify to
every man who gets himself circumcised
that he is obligated to obey the whole law.
4 You who are trying to be justified by the
law have been severed from Christ; you
have fallen away from grace.

5 But by faith we eagerly await through the
Spirit the hope of righteousness. 6 For in
Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor un-
circumcision has any value. What matters
is faith expressing itself through love.

7 You were running so well. Who has ob-
structed you from obeying the truth? 8
Such persuasion does not come from the
One who calls you. 9 A little leaven works
through the whole batch of dough. 10 I am
confident in the Lord that you will take no
other view. The one who is troubling you
will bear the judgment, whoever he may
be.

11 Now, brothers, if I am still preaching cir-
cumcision, why am I still being perse-
cuted? In that case the offense of the
cross has been abolished. 12 As for those
who are agitating you, I wish they would
proceed to emasculate themselves!

13 For you, brothers, were called to free-
dom; but do not use your freedom as an
opportunity for the flesh. Rather, serve
one another in love. 14 The entire law is
fulfilled in a single decree: *"Love your
neighbor as yourself."* 15 But if you keep on
biting and devouring one another, watch
out, or you will be consumed by one an-
other.

WALKING BY THE SPIRIT // EZEKIEL 36:16–38; RO-
MANS 8:9–11

16 So I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will
not gratify the desires of the flesh. 17 For
the flesh craves what is contrary to the
Spirit, and the Spirit what is contrary to
the flesh. They are opposed to each other,
so that you do not do what you want. 18
But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not
under the law.

19 The acts of the flesh are obvious: sexual
immorality, impurity, and debauchery; 20
idolatry and sorcery; hatred, discord, jeal-
ousy, and rage; rivalries, divisions, fac-
tions, 21 and envy; drunkenness, orgies,
and the like. I warn you, as I did before,
that those who practice such things will
not inherit the kingdom of God.

22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy,
peace, patience, kindness, goodness,
faithfulness, 23 gentleness, and self-con-
trol. Against such things there is no law.

24 Those who belong to Christ Jesus have
crucified the flesh with its passions and
desires. 25 Since we live by the Spirit, let
us walk in step with the Spirit. 26 Let us not
become conceited, provoking and envy-
ing one another.

- **GAL 5:1 [NOTABLE]** Christ set us free so we would stay free. The yoke of slavery here is trying to earn God's love by keeping religious rules, like the Galatians adding circumcision. Freedom is not permission to sin either, 5:13. It is freedom to love God and serve people because you want to, not because you are scared.
- **GAL 5:12 [NOTE]** Yes, Paul really said that. The troublemakers wanted to cut the Galatians with circumcision, so Paul says he wishes the knife would slip and they would cut the whole thing off. It is harsh, and a little funny, but he was angry because they were cutting new believers off from grace. Priests of the goddess Cybele in Galatia really did cut themselves this way, so his readers got the joke.
- **GAL 5:14 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 19:18 p.205
- **GAL 5:20 [DEMONIC]** Sorcery (pharmakeia) listed among works of the flesh
- **GAL 5:20 [NOTE]** SORCERY. The Greek word is pharmakeia, where we get pharmacy. In Paul's day it meant using potions, poisons and drugs in magic: spells, curses and calling on spirits. That is why most Bibles say sorcery or witchcraft. Some read it as warning against drug use, but the word points to the occult, not to medicine.
- **GAL 5:22 [NOTABLE]** Nine qualities, but Paul says fruit, not fruits. They grow together like one piece of fruit, not a basket where you pick your favorites. You cannot make fruit by straining. It grows when you stay connected to the vine, John 15:5. Compare the works of the flesh in 5:19 to 21. Works are made. Fruit is grown.

NOTABLE

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Gently help a brother who falls, and carry each other's burdens. You reap what you sow, so do not get tired of doing good. Paul grabs the pen and writes the ending himself in big letters. The troublemakers only want to brag about you. Paul will only brag about the cross.

CARRY ONE ANOTHER'S BURDENS

1 Brothers, if someone is caught in a trespass, you who are spiritual should restore
him with a spirit of gentleness. But watch
yourself, or you also may be tempted. 2
Carry one another's burdens, and in this
way you will fulfill the law of Christ.
3 If anyone thinks he is something when
he is nothing, he deceives himself.
4 Each one should test his own work. Then
he will have reason to boast in himself
alone, and not in someone else. 5 For each
one should carry his own load. 6 Nevertheless, the one who receives instruction
in the word must share in all good things
with his instructor.
7 Do not be deceived: God is not to be
mocked. Whatever a man sows, he will
reap in return. 8 The one who sows to
please his flesh, from the flesh will reap
destruction; but the one who sows to
please the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap
eternal life.
9 Let us not grow weary in well-doing, for
in due time we will reap a harvest if we do
not give up. 10 Therefore, as we have opportunity, let us do good to everyone, and
especially to the family of faith.

FINAL WARNINGS AND BLESSINGS

11 See what large letters I am using to write
to you with my own hand!
12 Those who want to make a good impression outwardly are trying to compel
you to be circumcised. They only do this
to avoid persecution for the cross of
Christ. 13 For the circumcised do not even
keep the law themselves, yet they want
you to be circumcised that they may boast
in your flesh.
14 But as for me, may I never boast, except
in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ,
through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world. 15 For neither
circumcision nor uncircumcision means
anything. What counts is a new creation.
16 Peace and mercy to all who walk by this
rule, even to the Israel of God.
17 From now on let no one cause me trouble, for I bear on my body the marks of
Jesus.
18 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be
with your spirit, brothers.
Amen.

GAL 6:7 [NOTABLE] A farming law: plant corn, get corn. Plant to please your flesh and you harvest ruin. Plant to please the Spirit and you harvest life forever. Harvest takes time, so do not give up doing good, 6:9. People call this karma, but karma has no grace. God forgives the sinner, and He still lets us learn from what we planted.

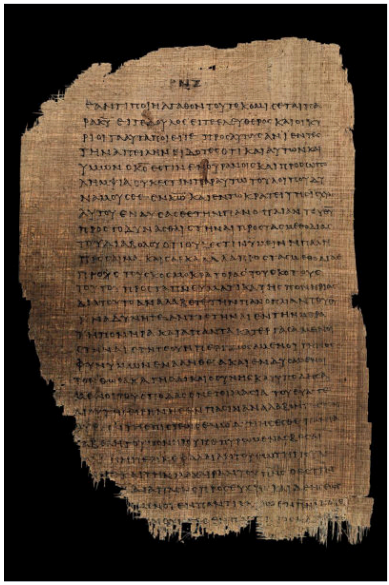
GAL 6:11 [NOTE] LARGE LETTERS. Paul usually told a helper what to write, Romans 16:22, then signed the end himself so no one could fake his letters, 2 Thessalonians 3:17. Why so large? Maybe for emphasis. Maybe poor eyesight. Paul said the Galatians would have torn out their eyes and given them to him, 4:15. Some think that was his thorn in the flesh. That is a guess. See the 2 Corinthians 12:7 note, p.1860.

BOOK 49 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

EPHESIANS

Who You Are in Christ

AUTHOR	Paul, 1:1 and 3:1. The early church never doubted it. Some modern scholars think a follower wrote it in Paul's name because the style is different and much of it is like Colossians.
WRITTEN FROM	Prison, 3:1, 4:1 and 6:20, most likely Rome, where Paul lived under guard for two years, Acts 28:30.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 60 to 62.
WRITTEN TO	The believers in Ephesus, and maybe a group of churches around it. See the 1:1 note.
DELIVERED BY	Tychicus, 6:21, on the same trip that carried Colossians and Philemon, Colossians 4:7 to 9.
WHY HE WROTE	No crisis this time. Paul wanted believers to know who they are in Christ and how to live as one body.
KEY VERSE	Ephesians 2:8. For it is by grace you have been saved through faith, and this not from yourselves; it is the gift of God.



THE OLDEST COPY OF EPHESIANS
This is a page of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200, now at the University of Michigan. It holds Ephesians 6:8 to 18, the armor of God. In the middle you can read our struggle is not against flesh and blood, 6:12. The Greek letters at the top are the page number, 157.

THE NEXT PAGE. The page right after this one finishes Ephesians and starts Galatians. See the Galatians title page, p.1863.

WHY IT MATTERS. Papyrus 46 is also one of the oldest copies without the words in Ephesus in 1:1. Copied only about 140 years after Paul wrote, it says what our Bibles say today.

Historical Setting

Ephesus was the biggest city in the Roman province of Asia, in western Turkey, with a busy harbor and maybe 200,000 people. It was home to the Temple of Artemis, one of the Seven Wonders of the World, and it was famous for magic. Paul lived there almost three years, Acts 20:31. For two years he taught every day in the lecture hall of Tyrannus, so all of Asia heard the word, Acts 19:9 to 10. Then the silversmiths started a riot, Acts 19. Later Paul said goodbye to the Ephesian elders with tears and warned them about wolves, Acts 20:17 to 38. Now he writes to them from chains.

What Ephesus Was Up Against

MAGIC. Ephesus was known for charms and spells. New believers burned magic scrolls worth 50,000 silver coins, Acts 19:19.
ARTEMIS. The city's money and pride were tied to her temple, Acts 19:27.
FEAR OF SPIRITS. People lived afraid of spiritual powers. Paul says Christ sits far above them all, 1:21, and we stand in His strength, 6:10 to 12.
A WALL BETWEEN PEOPLE. Jews and Gentiles did not mix. Jesus tore down that wall, 2:14.
WOLVES COMING. Paul warned false teachers would rise up, Acts 20:29 to 30, so believers must grow up and not get tossed around, 4:14.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Ephesians tells you who you are. Before you ever did anything right, God chose you, adopted you, forgave you and filled you with His Spirit. You are saved by grace, not by trying harder. Jesus made Jews and Gentiles one family, and the church is not a building but the people. Then Paul shows how to live it: walk in love, use your gifts, treat your family and your job as service to Jesus, and stand firm in God's armor. If you have ever wondered who you are, read this letter.

Ephesians at a Glance

CH 1 to 3	**WHO YOU ARE** Chosen, rich, alive, saved by grace and part of one family.
CH 4 to 6:9	**HOW YOU WALK** Unity, gifts, new life, light, marriage, family and work.
CH 6:10 to 24	**HOW YOU STAND** The armor of God and prayer.

Where Jesus Shows Up

EPHESIANS 1:7 In Him we have redemption through His blood. Foreshadowed by Boaz the redeemer, Ruth 4:9 to 10.

EPHESIANS 1:20 God raised Him and seated Him at His right hand, far above every ruler. Fulfills Isaiah 52:13 and Daniel 7:13 to 14.

EPHESIANS 2:14 He Himself is our peace. Fulfills Micah 5:5.

EPHESIANS 2:20 Christ Jesus Himself is the cornerstone. Fulfills Zechariah 10:4.

EPHESIANS 4:8 When He ascended on high, He gave gifts to men. Fulfills Psalm 68:18.

What to Watch for in Ephesians

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (7)	1:20-22, 2:14, 2:17, 2:19-20, 4:8-10

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (4)	1:7, 5:2, 5:25-27, 5:32
THE HEART (3)	3:17, 4:18, 5:19
DEMONIC (3)	2:1-2, 5:5, 6:10-18
NOTABLE (5)	2:8-10, 3:20-21, 4:11-12, 4:29-32, 5:15-16
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

SIT, WALK, STAND
The Chinese church leader Watchman Nee summed up Ephesians in three words in his book Sit, Walk, Stand: seated with Christ, 2:6, walk worthy, 4:1, and stand firm, 6:11.

ONE LONG SENTENCE
In Greek, 1:3 to 14 is one sentence, over 200 words long. Paul got so excited about grace he forgot to stop.

YOU ARE A POEM
The word workmanship in 2:10 is poiema in Greek, where we get the word poem. You are God's work of art.

THE SPIRIT HAS FEELINGS
Do not grieve the Holy Spirit, 4:30. You cannot hurt the feelings of a force. The Spirit is a Person.

AN EARLY SONG
Awake, O sleeper, rise up from the dead, and Christ will shine on you, 5:14. Many think this was a song the first Christians sang.

MISSING ADDRESS
The oldest copies leave out the words in Ephesus in 1:1. See the note there.

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes and no. About 30 years later, Jesus praised the church in Ephesus for hard work and for testing people who called themselves apostles and finding them false, Revelation 2:2. But He also said, You have abandoned your first love, Revelation 2:4. They kept the doctrine and lost the love Paul prayed for in 3:19. About AD 110, the church leader Ignatius wrote to them and praised them again. Today Ephesus is ruins, but the letter still tells millions of people who they are.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul starts with a praise party. In Christ you are chosen, adopted, forgiven and sealed with the Holy Spirit, and it all happened before you did anything. Paul prays you would see how rich you really are, and how much power God used when He raised Jesus and seated Him above every power there is.

PAUL'S GREETING TO THE EPHESIANS // ACTS 19:8–12; REVELATION 2:1–7

1 Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God,

To the saints in Ephesus, the faithful in Christ Jesus:

2 Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

SPIRITUAL BLESSINGS // ROMANS 8:28–34

3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in Christ with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly realms. 4 For He chose us in Him before the foundation of the world to be holy and blameless in His presence. In love 5 He predestined us for adoption as His sons through Jesus Christ, according to the good pleasure of His will, 6 to the praise of His glorious grace, which He has freely given us in the Beloved One.

7 In Him we have redemption through His blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of His grace 8 that He lavished on us with all wisdom and understanding. 9 And He has made known to us the mystery of His will according to His good pleasure, which He purposed in Christ 10 as a plan for the fullness of time, to bring all things in heaven and on earth together in Christ.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · BUILT AFTER PAUL

THE LIBRARY OF CELSUS

EPHESIANS 1:17 · ACTS 19:9 TO 10 · ACTS 19:19



The front of the Library of Celsus in Ephesus, rebuilt from its fallen stones. Photo Benh LIEU SONG, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

The two story marble front of a library in Ephesus. It was built to honor Celsus, a Roman governor of Asia, by his son. Celsus was buried in a stone coffin under the floor. The library held about 12,000 scrolls. Statues in the front stand for Wisdom, Knowledge, Thought and Goodness.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was built about AD 110 to 120, about 50 years after Paul wrote Ephesians, so Paul never saw it. A fire gutted it in the AD 260s. Austrian archaeologists stood the front back up from its fallen pieces from 1970 to 1978.

A CITY OF SCROLLS

Ephesus loved books long before this library. When people believed, they burned their magic scrolls worth 50,000 silver coins, Acts 19:19. Paul taught every day for two years in the lecture hall of Tyrannus, Acts 19:9 to 10.

REAL WISDOM

In a city proud of its learning, Paul prays

- **EPH 1:1 [TEXT]** IN EPHESUS. The oldest copies, Papyrus 46, Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus, do not have the words in Ephesus. Many think Paul wrote one letter to be passed around the churches of Asia, with Ephesus as the main stop. Some think it is the letter to Laodicea that Paul mentions in Colossians 4:16. Most later copies have in Ephesus, and the early church always called it Ephesians.
- **EPH 1:1 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Library of Celsus Field Notes page, p.1878, and the theater and Temple of Artemis page in Acts, p.1780.
- **EPH 1:4 [NOTE]** CHOSEN AND PREDESTINED, TWO VIEWS. Reformed or Calvinist: before the world was made, God chose certain people to be saved, not because of anything He saw in them, but by His own will, 1:5 and 1:11. Even faith is His gift, 2:8. Augustine, Calvin and Spurgeon taught this. Arminian or free will: God chose a people in Him, 1:4. Christ is the Chosen One, and whoever joins Him by faith is chosen in Him, like getting on a bus whose destination is already set. God knows ahead who will believe, Romans 8:29, and He wants everyone to be saved, 1 Timothy 2:4. John Wesley taught this. Both sides agree salvation is God's idea, it is all grace, and the goal is to be holy, 1:4, to the praise of His glory, 1:6. See the Romans 9:13 note, p.1811.
- **EPH 1:7 [FULFILLS]** Boaz the kinsman redeemer buys back the land and takes Ruth as his wife ← RUTH 4:9-10 p.431

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC NOTABLE

for a different kind of wisdom: a Spirit of wisdom and revelation so you may know God better, 1:17. Knowing a lot is good. Knowing Him is better.

WHERE IT IS TODAY
In the ruins of Ephesus, near Selçuk, Turkey. It is the most photographed building in the city. See also the theater and Temple of Artemis page in Acts, p.1780.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Ephesus was a rich, learned city that loved books and big buildings.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Nothing about Paul. It came later. It shows the kind of city the church kept growing in.

11 In Him we were also chosen as God's
own, having been predestined according
to the plan of Him who works out every-
thing by the counsel of His will, 12 in order
that we, who were the first to hope in
Christ, would be for the praise of His
glory.
13 And in Him, having heard and believed
the word of truth—the gospel of your
salvation—you were sealed with the
promised Holy Spirit, 14 who is the pledge
of our inheritance until the redemption of
those who are God's possession, to the
praise of His glory.

SPIRITUAL WISDOM // 1 CORINTHIANS 2:6–16

15 For this reason, ever since I heard about
your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love
for all the saints, 16 I have not stopped giv-
ing thanks for you, remembering you in
my prayers, 17 that the God of our Lord Je-
sus Christ, the glorious Father, may give
you a spirit of wisdom and revelation in
your knowledge of Him.
18 I ask that the eyes of your heart may be
enlightened, so that you may know the
hope of His calling, the riches of His glori-
ous inheritance in the saints, 19 and the
surpassing greatness of His power to us
who believe. These are in accordance
with the working of His mighty strength,
20 which He exerted in Christ when He
raised Him from the dead and seated Him
at His right hand in the heavenly realms, 21
far above all rule and authority, power and
dominion, and every name that is named,
not only in the present age but also in the
one to come.
22 And God put everything under His feet
and made Him head over everything for
the church, 23 which is His body, the full-
ness of Him who fills all in all.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
You were dead in sin, following the ruler of the air. But God, who is rich in mercy, made you alive with Christ. You are saved by grace through faith, not by works. Jesus tore down the wall between Jews and Gentiles. Now you are one family, a temple built out of people.

ALIVE WITH CHRIST // COLOSSIANS 2:6–23

1 And you were dead in your trespasses
and sins, 2 in which you used to walk
when you conformed to the ways of this
world and of the ruler of the power of the
air, the spirit who is now at work in the
sons of disobedience. 3 All of us also lived
among them at one time, fulfilling the
cravings of our flesh and indulging its de-
sires and thoughts. Like the rest, we were
by nature children of wrath.
4 But because of His great love for us,
God, who is rich in mercy, 5 made us alive
with Christ even when we were dead in
our trespasses. It is by grace you have
been saved! 6 And God raised us up with
Christ and seated us with Him in the
heavenly realms in Christ Jesus, 7 in order
that in the coming ages He might display
the surpassing riches of His grace,
demonstrated by His kindness to us in
Christ Jesus.
8 For it is by grace you have been saved
through faith, and this not from your-
selves; it is the gift of God, 9 not by works,

- **EPH 1:20 [FULFILLS]** The Servant exalted after suffering ← IS 52:13 p.1127
- **EPH 1:20 [FULFILLS]** Highly exalted ← DAN 7:13-14b p.1341
- **EPH 1:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **EPH 1:22 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 8:6 p.888
- **EPH 2:1 [DEMONIC]** The ruler of the power of the air
- **EPH 2:8 [NOTABLE]** The gospel in three verses. Grace means a gift you did not earn. Faith is how you receive it. Works do not save you, but you were saved to do good works, 2:10. The Greek word for workmanship is poiema, where we get poem. You are God's work of art.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE

so that no one can boast. 10 For we are God's workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to do good works, which God prepared in advance as our way of life.

ONE IN CHRIST // PHILIPPIANS 2:1–4

11 Therefore remember that formerly you who are Gentiles in the flesh and called uncircumcised by the so-called circumcision (that done in the body by human hands)— 12 remember that at that time you were separate from Christ, alienated from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers to the covenants of the promise, without hope and without God in the world. 13 But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far away have been brought near through the blood of Christ.

14 For He Himself is our peace, who has made the two one and has torn down the dividing wall of hostility 15 by abolishing in His flesh the law of commandments and decrees. He did this to create in Himself one new man out of the two, thus making peace 16 and reconciling both of them to God in one body through the cross, by which He put to death their hostility.

17 He came and preached peace to you who were far away and peace to those who were near. 18 For through Him we both have access to the Father by one Spirit.

CHRIST OUR CORNERSTONE // ISAIAH 28:14–22; 1 CORINTHIANS 3:10–15; 1 PETER 2:1–8

19 Therefore you are no longer strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints and members of God's household, 20 built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with Christ Jesus Himself as the cornerstone. 21 In Him the whole building is fitted together and grows into a holy temple in the Lord. 22 And in Him you too are being built together into a dwelling place for God in His Spirit.

- **EPH 2:14 [FULFILLS]** The Ruler would shepherd His flock in the strength of Yahweh, His greatness would reach the ends of the earth, and He would be our peace ← MIC 5:4-5 · MEDIUM p.1436
- **EPH 2:14 [FIELD NOTES]** The dividing wall: see The Temple Warning Inscription page in Acts, p.1785.
- **EPH 2:17 [FULFILLS]** 'Peace to him that is far off and to him that is near' ← IS 57:19 p.1132
- **EPH 2:19 [FULFILLS]** Many nations would join themselves to Yahweh and become His people ← ZECH 2:11 · MEDIUM p.1491
- **EPH 2:20 [FULFILLS]** The Cornerstone from Judah ← ZECH 10:4 · MEDIUM p.1500
- **EPH 2:20 [THE BIG IDEA]** See The Church Is Not a Building page.

THE BIG IDEA

THE CHURCH IS NOT A BUILDING

EPHESIANS 2:19 TO 22 · 4:12 · ROMANS 16:5 · ACTS 18:3

WHAT A CHURCH IS

The Greek word for church is ekklesia. It means people called out and gathered together. It never meant a building. Paul says you are being built together into a dwelling place for God, 2:22, and Peter calls believers living stones, 1 Peter 2:5. Jesus is the cornerstone, 2:20. The church is the people.

CHURCH IN THE HOUSE

The first Christians met in homes: the church that meets at their house, Romans 16:5. In Ephesus the church met in the home of Priscilla and Aquila, 1 Corinthians 16:19. Others met in the homes of Nympha, Colossians 4:15, and Philemon, Philemon 2. They also used rented halls, Acts 19:9, riverbanks and courtyards. For about 200 years there were no church buildings.

THE FIRST CHURCH BUILDINGS

The oldest ones ever found come from about AD 230 to 300: a prayer hall at Megiddo in Israel, about AD 230, though some date it later; a house turned into a church at Dura Europos in Syria, about AD 240; and a church at Aqaba in Jordan, about AD 300, maybe the first one built from the ground up. All are ruins now. Etchmiadzin Cathedral in Armenia was founded about AD 301, but the building standing today is from AD 483. Big church buildings came after Constantine.

A CRIME TO BELIEVE

For almost 300 years, Christianity had no legal standing in Rome, and persecution came in waves. Nero blamed Christians for the fire of Rome in AD 64. Decius demanded sacrifices to the gods in AD 250. Diocletian ordered churches torn down and Bibles burned in AD 303. Galerius gave tolerance in AD 311, and Constantine and Licinius made the faith legal with the Edict of Milan in AD 313.

WORK AND WORSHIP ARE ONE WORD

In Hebrew, avodah means work, worship and service all at once. Adam was put in the garden to work it, Genesis 2:15, and God freed Israel to serve and worship Him, Exodus 3:12. It is the same word. The Bible does not split life into holy jobs and regular jobs. Paul made tents to pay for his mission, Acts 18:3 and 20:34. Your business can be your ministry, Colossians 3:23.

EVERYONE IS IN MINISTRY

Leaders are given to equip the saints for works of ministry, 4:12. Ministry is not something the pastor does while you watch. It is what every believer does, at home, at work and on the street.

WHY IT MATTERS

A building can be a great tool. But if every church building burned down tomorrow, the church would still be standing, because the church is you.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE HOUSES · NO CHURCH PROVEN HERE

THE TERRACE HOUSES OF EPHESUS

EPHESIANS 2:19 TO 22 · 1 CORINTHIANS 16:19



A room in Terrace House 2, Ephesus, with painted walls and a mosaic floor, under its modern roof. Photo Satirdan kahraman, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Rich family homes built in steps up the hillside on the main street of Ephesus. Terrace House 2 holds seven homes, some two stories tall, with courtyards, painted walls, marble floors, mosaics, running water and even heated floors.

HOW OLD IT IS

The first homes were built around the time of Augustus, just before Jesus was born. Families lived in them, remodeling again and again, for about 250 years, until earthquakes destroyed them in the AD 200s. So they were lived in when Paul was in Ephesus.

WHERE THE CHURCH MET

A house like this, with a big open courtyard, could hold maybe 30 to 50 people. That is how big many early churches were. In Ephesus the church met in the house of Priscilla and Aquila, 1 Corinthians 16:19. Wealthy believers opened their homes, and slaves and masters ate at the same table.

WHAT A HOUSE CHURCH WAS LIKE

They shared a meal, the Lord's Supper, sang psalms and hymns, 5:19, read letters from apostles out loud, prayed and used their gifts, 1 Corinthians 14:26. Everyone was family, members of God's household, 2:19.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

In the ruins of Ephesus, near Selçuk, Turkey, under a protective roof opened in 2000. Visitors walk on glass walkways above the rooms.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Ephesus had large homes like the ones the New Testament says churches met in.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No one knows if a church ever met in these exact homes, or where Priscilla and Aquila lived.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE DURA EUROPOS HOUSE CHURCH

EPHESIANS 2:19 TO 22 · MARK 2:1 TO 12



Jesus heals a paralyzed man, who walks away carrying his bed. Wall painting from the baptism room of the Dura Europos church, now at Yale University Art Gallery.

WHAT IT IS

A normal house in a Roman border town on the Euphrates River in Syria that believers remodeled into a church. They knocked out a wall to make a meeting room for about 60 people and turned a small room into a baptism room with a pool. Its walls were painted with Bible stories: the Good Shepherd, Adam and Eve, Jesus healing a paralyzed man, Jesus and Peter walking on water, and the women coming to the tomb.

HOW OLD IT IS

A date scratched into the house says it was built about AD 232. It became a church soon after, about AD 240. About AD 256 the Persians attacked. The Romans filled the houses along the city wall with dirt to make the wall stronger, which buried the church and saved it.

HOW IT WAS FOUND

British soldiers digging trenches found painted walls in 1920. Yale University and French scholars dug there from 1928 to 1937. The baptism room was taken apart and rebuilt in a museum at Yale.

AN EARLY PICTURE OF JESUS

The painting of Jesus healing the paralyzed man, Mark 2, is one of the oldest pictures of Jesus anyone has found. He looks like a young man in a simple robe, not the long haired figure of later art.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

The baptism room is at the Yale University Art Gallery in New Haven, Connecticut. The site in Syria was badly looted during the war that began in 2011.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

The early church met in homes, and believers turned a home into a place to gather, baptize and remember Jesus.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

It was not the first church ever. It is just the oldest house church anyone has found.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE FIND · DATE DEBATED

THE MEGIDDO PRAYER HALL

EPHESIANS 2:19 TO 22 · JOHN 20:28



The Akeptous inscription in the floor of the Megiddo prayer hall: offered the table to God Jesus Christ. Photo Vesafis Tzferris, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The mosaic floor of an early Christian prayer hall, found in 2005 at Kefar Othnay near Megiddo, Israel, when prisoners dug for a new building at Megiddo Prison. The floor has geometric patterns, a picture of two fish and three Greek inscriptions.

HOW OLD IT IS

The archaeologist who dug it, Yotam Tepper, dated it about AD 230, which would make it one of the oldest Christian buildings ever found. Other scholars think it is a little later, late 200s or early 300s. The date is still debated.

TO GOD JESUS CHRIST

The most famous inscription says: The God loving Akeptous has offered the table to God Jesus Christ as a memorial. The table was probably for the

Lord's Supper. It is one of the oldest inscriptions anywhere that calls Jesus God, just like Thomas did, My Lord and my God, John 20:28.

WOMEN AND A SOLDIER

Akeptous was a woman, and another inscription remembers four more women by name. A third says a Roman army officer named Gaianus paid for the mosaic. Soldiers and women, rich and poor, worshiped together, just like the one family of 2:19.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

It was found on the grounds of Megiddo Prison, where it has mostly stayed, covered for protection. Parts of it have been shown in museums abroad.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Long before Christianity was legal, believers worshiped Jesus as God and set aside a room to do it.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Because the date is debated, no one can say for sure it is the very oldest church building.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SYMBOL · LOW FOR THE SECRET CODE STORY

THE FISH

EPHESIANS 2:19 TO 22 · MARK 6:41 · HEBREWS 6:19



Top left: the gravestone of Licinia Amias, Rome, early 200s. Top right: the fish and bread mosaic at Tabgha by the Sea of Galilee, about AD 480. Bottom: ICHTHYS and the fish wheel carved at Ephesus, lines traced in red for visitors. Bottom photo David Bjorgen, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

Three real Christian fish from three different centuries. Top left: the marble gravestone of a woman named Licinia Amias, from a cemetery near the Vatican in Rome. It shows two fish facing an anchor and the Greek words ICHTHYS ZONTON, Fish of the living. Top right: a floor mosaic of two fish beside a basket of bread at the Church of the Multiplication at Tabgha, where tradition says Jesus fed the 5,000. Bottom: the word ICHTHYS carved into a marble slab in Ephesus, next to a wheel made by stacking its five letters on top of each other.

HOW OLD IT IS

The gravestone is from the early 200s, while the faith was still illegal, so it is one of the oldest Christian inscriptions anywhere. The Tabgha mosaic is from about AD 480, long after the faith became legal. The Ephesus carving has no exact date and is probably from the 300s or later. About AD 200, Clement of Alexandria told Christians to put a fish on their seal rings.

DETAILS TO LOOK FOR

The D M at the top of the gravestone is a pagan Roman phrase, to the spirits of the dead. Stone carvers put it on almost every grave, and some Christians kept it. The anchor is the Christian sign of hope, Hebrews 6:19. In the Tabgha basket there are only four loaves, because the fifth loaf is the altar stone right above it.

WHAT ICHTHYS MEANS

The five Greek letters stand for Iesous Christos Theou Huios Soter: Jesus Christ, God's Son, Savior. A whole creed in one word. It also recalled Jesus feeding the crowds with bread and fish, Mark 6:41.

THE SECRET CODE STORY

You may have heard that a Christian would draw one curve in the sand, and if the stranger drew the other curve, they knew they were both on Team Jesus. It is a great story, but no ancient writer tells it. It comes from a guess made in the 1800s and the 1951 movie

THE HEART NOTABLE

Quo Vadis. The fish is real and very old. The secret handshake is probably a legend. And the simple two line fish on cars today only became popular in the 1970s. The first Christians carved real looking fish, like the ones on this page.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul is in prison, but he calls himself a prisoner of Christ. God's secret plan is out: Gentiles are equal heirs with Israel. Paul prays you would grasp how wide and long and high and deep the love of Christ is. God can do far more than all you ask or imagine.

THE MYSTERY OF THE GOSPEL

1 For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of
Christ Jesus for the sake of you Gentiles…
2 Surely you have heard about the stewardship of God's grace that was given to
me for you, 3 that is, the mystery made
known to me by revelation, as I have already written briefly. 4 In reading this,
then, you will be able to understand my
insight into the mystery of Christ, 5 which
was not made known to men in other generations as it has now been revealed by
the Spirit to God's holy apostles and
prophets. 6 This mystery is that through
the gospel the Gentiles are fellow heirs,
fellow members of the body, and fellow
partakers of the promise in Christ Jesus.
7 I became a servant of this gospel by the
gift of God's grace, given me through the
working of His power. 8 Though I am less
than the least of all the saints, this grace
was given me: to preach to the Gentiles
the unsearchable riches of Christ, 9 and to
illuminate for everyone the stewardship of
this mystery, which for ages past was
kept hidden in God, who created all
things. 10 His purpose was that now,
through the church, the manifold wisdom
of God should be made known to the
rulers and authorities in the heavenly
realms, 11 according to the eternal purpose
that He accomplished in Christ Jesus our
Lord.
12 In Him and through faith in Him we may
enter God's presence with boldness and
confidence. 13 So I ask you not to be discouraged because of my sufferings for
you, which are your glory.

PAUL'S PRAYER FOR THE EPHESIANS

14 … for this reason I bow my knees before
the Father, 15 from whom every family in
heaven and on earth derives its name. 16 I
ask that out of the riches of His glory He
may strengthen you with power through
His Spirit in your inner being, 17 so that
Christ may dwell in your hearts through
faith. Then you, being rooted and
grounded in love, 18 will have power, together with all the saints, to comprehend
the length and width and height and depth
19 of the love of Christ, and to know this
love that surpasses knowledge, that you
may be filled with all the fullness of God.
20 Now to Him who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine,
according to His power that is at work
within us, 21 to Him be the glory in the
church and in Christ Jesus throughout all
generations, forever and ever. Amen.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Now Paul switches from who you are to how you walk. Keep the unity of the Spirit. Jesus gave apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors and teachers to equip you, so you grow up and stop getting tossed around. Take off the old self, put on the new. Be angry but do not sin. Be kind and forgive.

UNITY IN THE BODY // PSALM 133:1–3; 1 CORINTHIANS 1:10–17

1 As a prisoner in the Lord, then, I urge you
to walk in a manner worthy of the calling
you have received: 2 with all humility and
gentleness, with patience, bearing with
one another in love, 3 and with diligence to
preserve the unity of the Spirit through
the bond of peace.

EPH 3:17 [HEART] Paul prays that Christ may dwell in your hearts through faith.
EPH 3:20 [NOTABLE] Paul runs out of words. God can do more than you ask, and more than you can even imagine, and He does it by His power already at work in you. The KJV says exceeding abundantly above all that we ask or think.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

4 There is one body and one Spirit, just as
you were called to one hope when you
were called; 5 one Lord, one faith, one
baptism; 6 one God and Father of all, who
is over all and through all and in all.

7 Now to each one of us grace has been
given according to the measure of the gift
of Christ. 8 This is why it says:

"When He ascended on high,
He led captives away,
and gave gifts to men."

9 What does "He ascended" mean, except
that He also descended to the lower parts
of the earth? 10 He who descended is the
very One who ascended above all the
heavens, in order to fill all things.

11 And it was He who gave some to be
apostles, some to be prophets, some to
be evangelists, and some to be pastors
and teachers, 12 to equip the saints for
works of ministry and to build up the body
of Christ, 13 until we all reach unity in the
faith and in the knowledge of the Son of
God, as we mature to the full measure of
the stature of Christ.

14 Then we will no longer be infants,
tossed about by the waves and carried
around by every wind of teaching and by
the clever cunning of men in their deceit-
ful scheming. 15 Instead, speaking the truth
in love, we will in all things grow up into
Christ Himself, who is the head. 16 From
Him the whole body, fitted and held to-
gether by every supporting ligament,
grows and builds itself up in love through
the work of each individual part.

NEW LIFE IN CHRIST // COLOSSIANS 3:1–17

17 So I tell you this, and insist on it in the
Lord, that you must no longer walk as the
Gentiles do, in the futility of their thinking.
18 They are darkened in their understand-
ing and alienated from the life of God be-
cause of the ignorance that is in them due
to the hardness of their hearts. 19 Having
lost all sense of shame, they have given
themselves over to sensuality for the
practice of every kind of impurity, with a
craving for more.

20 But this is not the way you came to
know Christ. 21 Surely you heard of Him
and were taught in Him—in keeping with
the truth that is in Jesus— 22 to put off
your former way of life, your old self,
which is being corrupted by its deceitful
desires; 23 to be renewed in the spirit of
your minds; 24 and to put on the new self,
created to be like God in true righteous-
ness and holiness.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE FIVEFOLD MINISTRY

(God's Org Chart)

EPHESIANS 4:7 TO 16 · 2:20

WHAT PAUL SAID

When Jesus went back to heaven, He gave gifts to His people, 4:8. The gifts are people: apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors and teachers, 4:11. Their job is not to do all the work. It is to equip the saints for works of ministry, 4:12, until we all reach unity and grow up into Christ, 4:13. Continuists call this list the fivefold ministry. Over all of it, Jesus Himself is the chief cornerstone, 2:20.

FIVE OR FOUR?

In the Greek, apostles, prophets and evangelists each get their own word the. But pastors and teachers share just one: the pastors and teachers, like one team. So some say it is really a fourfold ministry, with pastor and teacher as one job. Most Greek scholars say the two are tied together but not exactly the same: every pastor is a teacher, but not every teacher is a pastor. A shepherd who cannot teach cannot feed the sheep.

THE HAND PICTURE

Many teachers use your hand. The thumb is the apostle, because it can touch every other finger. The pointer is the prophet, pointing the way. The middle finger is the evangelist, reaching farthest out. The ring finger is the pastor, married to the flock. The pinky is the teacher, small enough to get into the ear. It is a picture, not a verse, but it sticks.

EPH 4:8 [FULFILLS] He would ascend on high and give gifts to men ← PS 68:18 p.927
EPH 4:11 [NOTABLE] The fivefold ministry. Jesus gave apostles, prophets, evangelists, pastors and teachers to His church, and their job is to equip every believer to do the ministry. See The Fivefold Ministry pages, p.1885.
EPH 4:18 [HEART] The Gentiles are cut off from God because of the hardness of their hearts.

APOSTLE: THE ONE WHO IS SENT

Apostle means sent one. An apostle is sent to start something new: a church, a ministry, a work in a new place, like Paul planting churches across the Roman world. Many teachers say an apostle can work in all five gifts when needed. Paul called himself a preacher, an apostle and a teacher, 2 Timothy 1:11. Some today also speak of marketplace apostles, people sent to build businesses that fund and spread the gospel, like Paul the tentmaker, Acts 18:3. That is a modern way of saying it, not a Bible term.

PROPHET: THE WATCHMAN

A prophet hears from God and speaks it. Sometimes that means telling the future, like Agabus, who warned of a famine and of Paul's arrest, Acts 11:28 and 21:10 to 11. Sometimes it means exposing what is hidden, so the secrets of a heart come out, 1 Corinthians 14:24 to 25, and warning against deception. Prophets work side by side with apostles, 2:20. Every prophecy gets weighed, 1 Corinthians 14:29.

STRANGE AND HEAVY

Prophets are often unusual people who carry heavy burdens. Isaiah walked barefoot and stripped for three years, Isaiah 20:2 to 3. Ezekiel lay on his side for 390 days, Ezekiel 4:4 to 6. Hosea married an unfaithful wife. Jeremiah wore an ox yoke and was thrown into a muddy pit. John the Baptist ate locusts. Many go through pain most people could never imagine.

EVANGELIST: THE MARKETING DEPARTMENT

An evangelist gets the good news out and brings people in. Philip the evangelist led a city in Samaria to Jesus, then one man on a desert road, Acts 8 and 21:8. If the church were a company, the evangelist would be marketing. Paul told Timothy, do the work of an evangelist, 2 Timothy 4:5.

PASTOR: THE SHEPHERD

Pastor means shepherd. A shepherd feeds, leads, protects and counsels the flock. Jesus is the Good Shepherd, John 10:11, and the Chief Shepherd, 1 Peter 5:4. Paul told the Ephesian elders, shepherd the church of God, Acts 20:28.

TEACHER: THE TRANSLATOR

A teacher breaks the Bible down so anyone can get it, idiot proof. Priscilla and Aquila explained the way of God more accurately to Apollos, Acts 18:26. Teachers will be judged more strictly, James 3:1.

Apostles and Prophets Today?

EPHESIANS 2:20 · 4:11 TO 13 · ACTS 1:21 TO 22

THE CESSATIONIST SIDE

Cessationists believe the offices of apostle and prophet ended with the first generation. An apostle had to be an eyewitness of the risen Jesus, Acts 1:21 to 22 and 1 Corinthians 9:1, and Paul called himself the last of all to see Him, 1 Corinthians 15:8. The church is built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, 2:20, and you only lay a foundation once. Now we have the finished Bible. Most cessationists gladly keep evangelists, pastors and teachers, and some call missionaries apostles in a small sense, sent ones.

THE CONTINUIST SIDE

Continuists point to 4:13: these gifts last until we all reach unity and full maturity, and that has not happened yet. Paul was writing to ordinary believers in Ephesus, none of them part of the Twelve, about gifts Christ gives His church. The Bible calls others apostles too: Barnabas, Acts 14:14, James the brother of Jesus, Galatians 1:19, Andronicus and Junia, Romans 16:7, and Silas and Timothy, 1 Thessalonians 2:6. The Twelve had a role nobody can repeat, Revelation 21:14, but the gift of being sent did not stop.

WHAT THE EARLY CHURCH SAID

About AD 100, a church manual called the Didache gave rules for traveling apostles and prophets: welcome an apostle like the Lord, but if he stays three days or asks for money, he is a false prophet. So apostles and prophets were still around after the Twelve. Even John Calvin, a hero of the cessationist side, wrote in 1559 that God still occasionally raises them up when the times require it, and that He had raised up

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

apostles, or at least evangelists, in Calvin's own day.

WHERE THE WORD CAME FROM

The phrase fivefold ministry took off with the Latter Rain revival in Canada in 1948, then spread through the charismatic movement. The Assemblies of God rejected Latter Rain in 1949. Today it says apostolic and prophetic ministry still works, but it does not give anyone the title apostle or prophet.

WHO IS THE PASTOR ACCOUNTABLE TO?

The New Testament put a team of elders in every church, Acts 14:23, not one man alone. Without apostles and prophets, many pastors today answer to no one. Many believe that is why God often places prophetic people on elder and deacon boards, even when nobody calls them prophets.

A WORD OF CAUTION

Since the 1990s, some groups have named their own apostles and prophets who demand loyalty, money or obedience. Titles are not the point. Real apostles serve. Real prophets point to Jesus. Test them all, 1 John 4:1, just as Jesus praised the Ephesians for testing false apostles, Revelation 2:2.

THE POINT

Whatever you call them, the goal never changes: equip every believer for ministry, 4:12, so the whole body grows up into Jesus, the Head, 4:15 to 16.

25 *Therefore each of you must put off falsehood*
and speak truthfully to his neighbor, for we
are all members of one another. 26 *"Be angry,*
yet do not sin." Do not let the sun set upon
your anger, 27 and do not give the devil a
foothold.

28 He who has been stealing must steal no
longer, but must work, doing good with
his own hands, that he may have something to share with the one in need.

29 Let no unwholesome talk come out of
your mouths, but only what is helpful for
building up the one in need and bringing
grace to those who listen.

30 And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of
God, in whom you were sealed for the day
of redemption.

31 Get rid of all bitterness, rage and anger,
outcry and slander, along with every form
of malice. 32 Be kind and tenderhearted to
one another, forgiving each other just as
in Christ God forgave you.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Copy God like a kid copies a parent. Walk in love and walk in the light. Make the most of your time. Do not get drunk on wine. Be filled with the Spirit instead. Submit to one another. Wives and husbands get a picture of Christ and the church: love that gives everything.

IMITATORS OF GOD

1 Be imitators of God, therefore, as
beloved children, 2 and walk in love, just
as Christ loved us and gave Himself up for
us as a fragrant sacrificial offering to God.

3 But among you, as is proper among the
saints, there must not be even a hint of
sexual immorality, or of any kind of impurity, or of greed. 4 Nor should there be obscenity, foolish talk, or crude joking,
which are out of character, but rather
thanksgiving. 5 For of this you can be sure:
No immoral, impure, or greedy person
(that is, an idolater) has any inheritance in
the kingdom of Christ and of God.

6 Let no one deceive you with empty
words, for because of such things the
wrath of God is coming on the sons of
disobedience. 7 Therefore do not be partakers with them.

CHILDREN OF LIGHT

8 For you were once darkness, but now
you are light in the Lord. Walk as children
of light, 9 for the fruit of the light consists
in all goodness, righteousness, and truth.
10 Test and prove what pleases the Lord.

11 Have no fellowship with the fruitless
deeds of darkness, but rather expose
them. 12 For it is shameful even to mention

EPH 4:25 [QUOTES] Quotes ← ZECH 8:16 p.1496
EPH 4:26 [QUOTES] Direct ← PS 4:4 p.886
EPH 4:29 [NOTABLE] Your words can build people up or tear them down. Mean talk, bitterness and rage grieve the Holy Spirit, so the Spirit has feelings. The cure is to forgive the way God forgave you: fully, and before you deserved it.
EPH 5:2 [FULFILLS] The burnt offering was a pleasing aroma to Yahweh ← LEV 1:9 p.178
EPH 5:5 [DEMONIC] A greedy person is an idolater with no inheritance

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

what the disobedient do in secret. 13 But everything exposed by the light becomes visible, for everything that is illuminated becomes a light itself. 14 So it is said:

"Wake up, O sleeper,
rise up from the dead,
and Christ will shine on you."

15 Pay careful attention, then, to how you walk, not as unwise but as wise, 16 redeeming the time, because the days are evil. 17 Therefore do not be foolish, but understand what the Lord's will is. 18 Do not get drunk on wine, which leads to reckless indiscretion. Instead, be filled with the Spirit.

19 Speak to one another with psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs. Sing and make music in your hearts to the Lord, 20 always giving thanks to God the Father for everything in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ.

WIVES AND HUSBANDS // SONG OF SOLOMON 1:1–17; 1 PETER 3:1–7

21 Submit to one another out of reverence for Christ.

22 Wives, submit to your husbands as to the Lord. 23 For the husband is the head of the wife as Christ is the head of the church, His body, of which He is the Savior. 24 Now as the church submits to Christ, so also wives should submit to their husbands in everything.

25 Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ loved the church and gave Himself up for her 26 to sanctify her, cleansing her by the washing with water through the word, 27 and to present her to Himself as a glorious church, without stain or wrinkle or any such blemish, but holy and blameless.

28 In the same way, husbands ought to love their wives as their own bodies. He who loves his wife loves himself. 29 Indeed, no one ever hated his own body, but he nourishes and cherishes it, just as Christ does the church. 30 For we are members of His body.

31 *"For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be united to his wife, and the two will become one flesh."* 32 This mystery is profound, but I am speaking about Christ and the church. 33 Nevertheless, each one of you also must love his wife as he loves himself, and the wife must respect her husband.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Kids, obey your parents. Fathers, do not make your kids angry. Workers, serve like Jesus is your boss, and bosses, remember you have a Boss too. Then suit up: our fight is not against people but against spiritual forces of evil. Put on the whole armor of God and pray at all times.

CHILDREN AND PARENTS // COLOSSIANS 3:18–21

1 Children, obey your parents in the Lord, for this is right. 2 *"Honor your father and mother"* (which is the first commandment with a promise), 3 *"that it may go well with you and that you may have a long life on the earth."*

4 Fathers, do not provoke your children to wrath; instead, bring them up in the discipline and instruction of the Lord.

SERVING WITH HONOR // COLOSSIANS 3:22–25; 1 TIMOTHY 6:1–2

5 Slaves, obey your earthly masters with respect and fear and sincerity of heart,

- **EPH 5:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 60:1 p.1135
- **EPH 5:15 [NOTABLE]** Redeeming the time means buying it back, like a shopper who grabs a deal before it is gone. Every day brings chances to do good, and once they pass they do not come back. Time is the one thing you cannot make more of, so spend it on what lasts.
- **EPH 5:18 [NOTE]** UNDER THE INFLUENCE. Paul compares two ways to be under the influence. Wine leads to reckless living. The Spirit leads to singing, thankfulness and serving each other, 5:19 to 21. At Pentecost, people thought the apostles were drunk, Acts 2:13 and 2:15. In Greek, be filled means keep on being filled. It is a daily habit, not a one time event.
- **EPH 5:19 [HEART]** Sing and make music in your heart to the Lord.
- **EPH 5:21 [NOTE]** SUBMIT TO ONE ANOTHER. Read 5:21 first. In the oldest copies, 5:22 has no verb of its own. It borrows submit from 5:21: wives, to your husbands. So submission starts as something every believer does. Then Paul gives husbands the harder job: love your wife the way Christ loved the church and died for her, 5:25. In Paul's world that was radical. Others read it as a clear order in the home, the husband leading as a servant and the wife following, both under Christ.
- **EPH 5:25 [FULFILLS]** The Altogether Lovely One ← SONG 5:16 · MEDIUM p.1054
- **EPH 5:25 [FULFILLS]** 'Your Maker is your husband' ← IS 54:5 · MEDIUM p.1129
- **EPH 5:31 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 2:24 p.50
- **EPH 5:32 [FULFILLS]** The Altogether Lovely One ← SONG 5:16 · MEDIUM p.1054
- **EPH 5:32 [FULFILLS]** 'Your Maker is your husband' ← IS 54:5 · MEDIUM p.1129
- **EPH 6:2 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:12; DT 5:16 p.148

DEMONIC

just as you would obey Christ. 6 And do this not only to please them while they are watching, but as servants of Christ, doing the will of God from your heart. 7 Serve with good will, as to the Lord and not to men, 8 because you know that the Lord will reward each one for whatever good he does, whether he is slave or free.

9 And masters, do the same for your slaves. Give up your use of threats, because you know that He who is both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with Him.

THE FULL ARMOR OF GOD

10 Finally, be strong in the Lord and in His mighty power. 11 Put on the full armor of God, so that you can make your stand against the devil's schemes. 12 For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the powers of this world's darkness, and against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly realms.

13 Therefore take up the full armor of God, so that when the day of evil comes, you will be able to stand your ground, and having done everything, to stand. 14 Stand firm then, with the belt of truth buckled around your waist, with the breastplate of righteousness arrayed, 15 and with your feet fitted with the readiness of the gospel of peace. 16 In addition to all this, take up the shield of faith, with which you can extinguish all the flaming arrows of the evil one. 17 And take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God.

18 Pray in the Spirit at all times, with every kind of prayer and petition. To this end, stay alert with all perseverance in your prayers for all the saints. 19 Pray also for me, that whenever I open my mouth, words may be given me so that I will boldly make known the mystery of the gospel, 20 for which I am an ambassador in chains. Pray that I may proclaim it fearlessly, as I should.

FINAL GREETINGS // PHILIPPIANS 4:21–23; 2 TIMOTHY 4:19–22

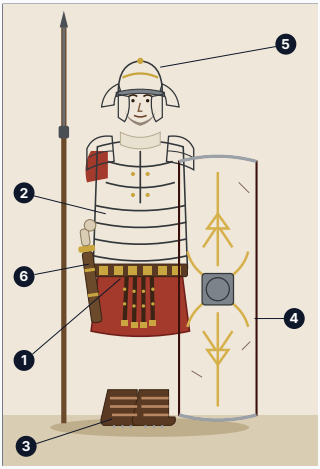
21 Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord, will tell you everything, so that you also may know about me and what I am doing. 22 I have sent him to you for this very purpose, that you may know about us, and that he may encourage your hearts.

23 Peace to the brothers and love with faith from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

24 Grace to all who love our Lord Jesus Christ with an undying love.

- **EPH 6:5 [NOTE]** SLAVES. Roman slavery was not based on skin color, and some slaves were doctors or teachers who could earn their freedom, but people were still bought, sold and beaten. Paul did not start a revolt, but he planted seeds that would end it. He told masters to stop threatening, because they have the same Master in heaven, 6:9. He called slave traders lawbreakers, 1 Timothy 1:10, and asked Philemon to welcome a runaway slave as a brother. Centuries later, Christians like William Wilberforce fought slavery with these truths. Today, apply it at work: do your job as if Jesus is your boss, 6:7.
- **EPH 6:10 [DEMONIC]** Spiritual warfare — wrestling against principalities, powers, world rulers of darkness
- **EPH 6:13 [NOTE]** See The Armor of God box on the last page of Ephesians.
- **EPH 6:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 11:5; 59:17 p.1075
- **EPH 6:15 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 52:7 p.1126
- **EPH 6:17 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 59:17 p.1134

The Armor of God



A Roman legionary in Paul's day, about AD 60, drawn for this Bible from real finds. The numbers match the list below.

PAUL'S VIEW. Paul wrote this chained to a Roman soldier, Acts 28:16, an ambassador in chains, 6:20. He had armor in front of him all day.

1 BELT OF TRUTH. It held everything in place and carried the sword.

2 BREASTPLATE OF RIGHTEOUSNESS. It guarded the heart.

3 SHOES OF PEACE. Hobnailed sandals gave grip so he would not slip.

4 SHIELD OF FAITH. Paul's word means a shield shaped like a door, big enough to hide behind. The only one ever found whole, from Dura Europos, about AD 256, is at Yale.

5 HELMET OF SALVATION. It protects the mind.

6 SWORD OF THE SPIRIT. The short sword for close fighting: the word of God.

GOD WORE IT FIRST. Isaiah 59:17 pictures God in the breastplate and helmet. It is His armor, loaned to us.

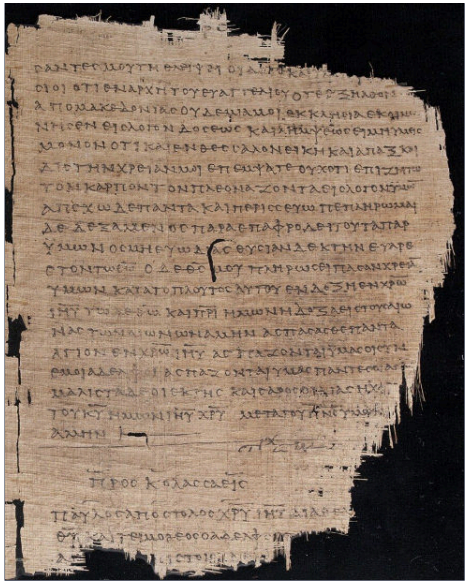
STAND AND PRAY. Paul says stand four times, 6:11 to 14, and there is no armor for the back. It all works with prayer, 6:18.

BOOK 50 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

PHILIPPIANS

The Joy Letter

AUTHOR	Paul, with Timothy, 1:1. Almost no scholar doubts that Paul wrote it.
WRITTEN FROM	Prison, 1:7 and 1:13. Most say Rome, because of the palace guard, 1:13, and Caesar's household, 4:22. Some scholars say Ephesus or Caesarea instead.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 60 to 62. If it was Ephesus, about AD 54 to 55.
WRITTEN TO	The believers in Philippi, with their overseers and deacons, 1:1.
DELIVERED BY	Epaphroditus, their own messenger, who almost died on the trip, 2:25 to 30.
WHY HE WROTE	To say thank you for their gift, 4:10 to 18, to tell them how he was doing, and to call them to joy, unity and humility.
KEY VERSE	Philippians 4:4. Rejoice in the Lord always. I will say it again: Rejoice!



THE OLDEST COPY OF PHILIPPIANS
This is a page of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200, now at the Chester Beatty Library in Dublin, Ireland. It holds the end of Philippians, 4:14 to 23. Paul thanks them for sharing in his troubles and for their gift by Epaphroditus. The last line of the letter is followed by Amen.

THE NEXT LETTER. Under a short line, you can read the title PROS KOLASSAEIS, To the Colossians, and the first words of Colossians. The small note under Amen counts the lines in the letter. Scribes used counts like this to check for missing lines and to figure their pay.

WHY IT MATTERS. See the 1 Corinthians title page, p.1821, for how this book was found. Copied only about 140 years after Paul wrote, it says what our Bibles say today.

Historical Setting

Philippi sat on the main Roman highway across northern Greece. Philip of Macedon, the father of Alexander the Great, took the town and named it after himself in 356 BC. In 42 BC Antony and Octavian won a huge battle there, and Rome turned the city into a colony full of retired soldiers. It was a little Rome far from Rome. About AD 49 or 50, Paul crossed from Asia to Europe after a vision of a man from Macedonia and started a church here, Acts 16. The first believers were a businesswoman named Lydia, a slave girl set free from a spirit, and the jailer who had locked Paul up. About ten years later, Paul writes to them from chains.

What Philippi Was Up Against

SUFFERING. They were being opposed for their faith, just like Paul, 1:28 to 30.
FRICTION. Some were looking out for themselves, 2:3 to 4, and two leaders could not get along, 4:2.
THE CIRCUMCISION TEACHERS. Teachers were saying Gentile believers had to be circumcised, 3:2 to 3.
PEOPLE OF THE BELLY. Some lived for their appetites and set their minds on earthly things, 3:18 to 19.
WORRY. Their friend was in chains and might be killed, and their messenger nearly died, 1:20 and 2:27.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Philippians is a thank you note from a man in chains. The church in Philippi had sent Paul money and a friend to help him. He writes back full of joy, not because his life was easy, but because Jesus was enough. He shows them the mind of Christ, who stepped down from heaven to serve and die, and was lifted up to the highest place. He tells them to get along, to stop worrying and pray, and to keep pressing on. If you need joy that does not depend on your circumstances, read this letter.

Philippians at a Glance

CH 1 **JOY IN CHAINS**
Prison cannot stop the gospel. To live is Christ.

CH 2 **THE MIND OF CHRIST**
Humble yourself like Jesus did, and God will lift you up.

CH 3 **KNOWING CHRIST**
Everything else is loss. Press on toward the prize.

CH 4 **PEACE AND CONTENTMENT**
Rejoice, pray instead of worry, and be content in Him.

Where Jesus Shows Up

PHILIPPIANS 2:7 He emptied Himself, taking the form of a servant, being made in human likeness. Fulfills Isaiah 49:5 and Isaiah 53:2.

PHILIPPIANS 2:8 TO 9 He humbled Himself to death on a cross, so God highly exalted Him. Fulfills Isaiah 52:13 and Psalm 110:7.

PHILIPPIANS 2:10 TO 11 Every knee will bow and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord. Echoes Isaiah 45:23. Still to come in full.

PHILIPPIANS 3:20 TO 21 We await a Savior from heaven, who will change our lowly bodies to be like His glorious body. Still to come.

What to Watch for in Philippians

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (4)	2:7-9
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	2:10-11, 3:20-21
THE HEART (1)	4:7
NOTABLE (2)	1:21-23, 4:11-13
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

JOY FROM JAIL
The words joy and rejoice show up 16 times in this short letter. Paul wrote it in chains.

AN EARLY SONG
Many scholars think 2:6 to 11 was a song the first Christians sang about Jesus, maybe even before Paul wrote it down. Others think Paul wrote it himself.

THE FIRST CHURCH IN EUROPE
The first believers Acts tells about in Europe were a rich businesswoman, a slave girl and a Roman jailer, Acts 16. God does not pick a type.

CAESAR'S OWN STAFF
Paul sends greetings from believers in Caesar's household, 4:22, slaves and freedmen who served the emperor. The gospel got into the palace.

THE ONLY ONE WHO GAVE
When Paul first left Macedonia, Philippi was the only church that supported him, and they sent help again and again, 4:15 to 16. They were his ministry partners.

CITIZENS OF HEAVEN
Philippi was proud to be a Roman colony. Paul tells them their real citizenship is in heaven, 3:20.

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes. About AD 110 or a little later, the church leader Polycarp of Smyrna wrote his own letter to the Philippians. He praised them for helping believers in chains, and he reminded them that Paul had written to them. The church in Philippi kept growing. By the AD 300s and 500s it built some of the biggest churches in Greece, and one of the first was dedicated to Paul. Today Philippi is ruins, but its letter still teaches millions to rejoice in hard times.

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul is in chains and still smiling. He thanks God for the Philippians, who have been his partners since day one. Prison is not stopping the gospel. It is spreading it, all the way into the palace guard. Live or die, Paul wins: to live is Christ and to die is gain.

GREETINGS FROM PAUL AND TIMOTHY // COLOSSIANS 1:1–2; PHILEMON 1:1–3

1 Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus,

To all the saints in Christ Jesus at Philippi, together with the overseers and deacons:

2 Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

THANKSGIVING AND PRAYER // 1 CORINTHIANS 1:4–9; COLOSSIANS 1:3–14

3 I thank my God every time I remember you. 4 In every prayer for all of you, I always pray with joy, 5 because of your partnership in the gospel from the first day until now, 6 being confident of this, that He who began a good work in you will carry it on to completion until the day of Christ Jesus.

7 It is right for me to feel this way about all of you, since I have you in my heart. For in my chains and in my defense and confirmation of the gospel, you are all partners in grace with me. 8 God is my witness how I long for all of you with the affection of Christ Jesus.

9 And this is my prayer: that your love may abound more and more in knowledge and depth of insight, 10 so that you may be able to test and prove what is best and may be pure and blameless for the day of Christ, 11 filled with the fruit of righteousness that comes through Jesus Christ, to the glory and praise of God.

PAUL'S TRIALS ADVANCE THE GOSPEL // JAMES 1:2–12

12 Now I want you to know, brothers, that my circumstances have actually served to advance the gospel. 13 As a result, it has become clear throughout the whole palace guard and to everyone else that I am in chains for Christ. 14 And most of the brothers, confident in the Lord by my chains, now dare more greatly to speak the word without fear.

15 It is true that some preach Christ out of envy and rivalry, but others out of goodwill. 16 The latter do so in love, knowing that I am appointed for the defense of the gospel. 17 The former, however, preach Christ out of selfish ambition, not sincerely, supposing that they can add to the distress of my chains.

18 What then is the issue? Just this: that in every way, whether by false motives or true, Christ is preached. And in this I rejoice. Yes, and I will continue to rejoice, 19 because I know that through your prayers and the provision of the Spirit of Jesus Christ, my distress will turn out for my deliverance. 20 I eagerly expect and hope that I will in no way be ashamed, but will have complete boldness so that now as always Christ will be exalted in my body, whether by life or by death.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE CITY · LOW FOR PAUL'S PRISON

THE FORUM OF PHILIPPI

PHILIPPIANS 1:1 · ACTS 16:19 TO 40



The ruins of Philippi seen from the acropolis hill: the forum in the middle and the tall pillars of a later church on the right. Photo Vassiliki Feidopoulou, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of the city of Philippi near Kavala in northern Greece. In the middle is the forum, the main city square, with its paved courtyard, columns, temples and the platform where city leaders judged cases. The Via Egnatia, the Roman highway, ran right along its north side.

HOW OLD IT IS

The forum you see today was rebuilt in

■ **PHIL 1:1 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Forum of Philippi Field Notes page, p.1894. For Lydia, the slave girl and the jailer, see Acts 16, p.1769.

■ **PHIL 1:5 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Lydia and the Purple Dyers Field Notes page, p.1895.

■ **PHIL 1:19 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JOB 13:16 p.852

NOTABLE

marble under the emperor Marcus Aurelius, about AD 161 to 180, about 110 years after Paul. Underneath is an earlier, smaller forum from the time of Claudius, about AD 41 to 54. That is the one Paul saw. The tall pillars on the right are from a church built about AD 550.

PAUL WAS HERE

Acts says the owners of the slave girl dragged Paul and Silas into the marketplace before the rulers, Acts 16:19. That was the forum. They were stripped, beaten with rods and thrown in jail. At midnight they sang, an earthquake opened the doors, and the jailer and his family believed, Acts 16:25 to 34.

PAUL'S PRISON?

Visitors are shown a small room near the forum called the prison of Paul. It was really a Roman water tank. Christians began to honor it as Paul's cell around AD 500, when a big church was built beside it. Acts does not say where the jail was, so no one knows.

WHERE IT IS TODAY

About 10 miles north of Kavala, Greece. It became a World Heritage Site in 2016. For the whole story of Paul in Philippi, see Acts 16, p.1769.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Philippi was a real Roman city with a forum and rulers who judged cases in public, just as Acts describes.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Most of what you see came after Paul. The so called prison of Paul is a tradition, not proof.

TO LIVE IS CHRIST

21 For to me, to live is Christ, and to die is
gain. 22 But if I go on living in the body, this
will mean fruitful labor for me. So what
shall I choose? I do not know. 23 I am torn
between the two. I desire to depart and be
with Christ, which is far better indeed. 24
But it is more necessary for you that I re-
main in the body.

PHIL 1:21 [NOTABLE] Paul is in chains and might be killed, and he is not afraid. If he lives, he gets more time to serve Jesus. If he dies, he goes to be with Jesus, which is far better, 1:23. He chooses to stay for their sake, 1:24 to 25. See also Absent from the Body, 2 Corinthians 5:8, p.1852.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE DYE TRADE · NO FIND NAMES LYDIA

LYDIA AND THE PURPLE DYERS

PHILIPPIANS 1:5 · ACTS 16:13 TO 15 · ACTS 16:40



Left and middle: both sides of a bronze coin of Thyatira, about AD 54 to 96, with the head of Heracles and the double axe of the city's god. University of Tübingen collection, photo KlassArchTÜ, CC BY SA 4.0. Right: shells of the purple dye murex. Photo H. Zell, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A coin from Thyatira, Lydia's hometown in western Turkey, and the sea snail shells that made the famous purple dye. Acts says Lydia was a seller of purple from the city of Thyatira, Acts 16:14.

HOW OLD IT IS

The coin was made about AD 54 to 96, in Paul and Lydia's own lifetime. The shells are modern, from the same kind of snail used for purple dye for thousands of years.

THE DYERS OF THYATIRA

Stone inscriptions from the first to third centuries AD mention a guild of dyers in Thyatira, a kind of trade union. At Philippi itself, a stone was found that honored Antiochus son of Lykos, a Thyatiran and a leading purple dyer. It was seen in 1872 and is now lost. So dye sellers from Thyatira really did come to Philippi.

SNAILS OR ROOTS?

Real purple came from thousands of crushed sea snails and cost a fortune. Only the rich wore it. Some scholars think inland Thyatira used a cheaper red dye made from madder root. Others think Lydia sold both. Either way, Lydia had money and a house big enough for a church, Acts 16:15 and 16:40.

BY THE RIVER

Paul found Lydia and other women praying by a river outside the city gate, Acts 16:13. Tradition places it at a stream west of Philippi, where a small modern church and outdoor baptism pool were built in 1974. No one knows the exact spot.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES

FROM THE FIRST DAY
Paul thanks them for their partnership from the first day until now, 1:5. The first day was Lydia's day. The first church in Europe started in a businesswoman's home.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No find names Lydia herself. It shows that her city, her trade and her travels fit Acts exactly.

25 Convinced of this, I know that I will remain and will continue with all of you for
your progress and joy in the faith, 26 so
that through my coming to you again your
exultation in Christ Jesus will resound on
account of me.

WORTHY OF THE GOSPEL

27 Nevertheless, conduct yourselves in a
manner worthy of the gospel of Christ.
Then, whether I come and see you or only
hear about you in my absence, I will know
that you stand firm in one spirit, contending together as one for the faith of the
gospel, 28 without being frightened in any
way by those who oppose you. This is a
clear sign of their destruction but of your
salvation, and it is from God. 29 For it has
been granted to you on behalf of Christ
not only to believe in Him, but also to suffer for Him, 30 since you are encountering
the same struggle you saw I had, and now
hear that I still have.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
Want to know how to get along? Think like Jesus. He was God, but He took the form of a servant and went all the way to the cross. So God lifted Him to the highest place, and every knee will bow. Work out what God put in you. Timothy and Epaphroditus are proof that real servants still exist.

ONE IN CHRIST // EPHESIANS 2:11–18

1 Therefore if you have any encouragement in Christ, if any comfort from His
love, if any fellowship with the Spirit, if
any affection and compassion, 2 then
make my joy complete by being like-minded, having the same love, being
united in spirit and purpose.

3 Do nothing out of selfish ambition or
empty pride, but in humility consider others more important than yourselves. 4
Each of you should look not only to your
own interests, but also to the interests of
others.

THE MIND OF CHRIST // ISAIAH 52:13–15

5 Let this mind be in you which was also in
Christ Jesus:

6 Who, existing in the form of God,
did not consider equality with God
something to be grasped,
7 but emptied Himself,
taking the form of a servant,
being made in human likeness.
8 And being found in appearance as a
man,
He humbled Himself
and became obedient to death—
even death on a cross.

9 Therefore God exalted Him to the highest
place
and gave Him the name above all
names,
10 that at the name of Jesus every knee
should bow,
in heaven and on earth and under the
earth,
11 and every tongue confess that Jesus
Christ is Lord,
to the glory of God the Father.

- **PHIL 2:7 [FULFILLS]** A Servant formed from the womb ← IS 49:5 p.1122
- **PHIL 2:7 [FULFILLS]** Ordinary in physical appearance ← IS 53:2 p.1127
- **PHIL 2:7 [NOTE]** HE EMPTIED HIMSELF. Emptied of what? Paul answers in the same breath: by taking the form of a servant. Jesus did not stop being God. He added a human nature, set aside His rights and His glory for a while, and chose to serve all the way to the cross, 2:8. In Him all the fullness of God lives in bodily form, Colossians 2:9. In the 1800s some taught that He gave up powers like knowing everything. Catholic, Orthodox and most Protestant churches reject that idea.
- **PHIL 2:8 [FULFILLS]** 'He shall drink of the brook by the way; therefore He shall lift up His head' ← PS 110:7 · MEDIUM p.960
- **PHIL 2:8 [FULFILLS]** The Servant exalted after suffering ← IS 52:13 p.1127
- **PHIL 2:9 [PROPHECY]** God has highly exalted Him and given Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of those in heaven, and of those on earth, and of those under the earth, and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord → STILL TO COME
- **PHIL 2:9 [FULFILLS]** 'The king shall rejoice in Your strength, O Yahweh' ← PS 21:1 · MEDIUM p.896
- **PHIL 2:10 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 45:23 p.1119

LIGHTS IN THE WORLD // MATTHEW 5:13–16

12 Therefore, my beloved, just as you have always obeyed, not only in my presence, but now even more in my absence, continue to work out your salvation with fear and trembling. 13 For it is God who works in you to will and to act on behalf of His good purpose.

14 Do everything without complaining or arguing, 15 so that you may be blameless and pure, children of God without fault in a crooked and perverse generation, in which you shine as lights in the world 16 as you hold forth the word of life, in order that I may boast on the day of Christ that I did not run or labor in vain.

17 But even if I am being poured out like a drink offering on the sacrifice and service of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with all of you. 18 So you too should be glad and rejoice with me.

TIMOTHY AND EPAPHRODITUS // 1 CORINTHIANS 16:10–12

19 Now I hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon, that I also may be cheered when I learn how you are doing. 20 I have nobody else like him who will genuinely care for your needs. 21 For all the others look after their own interests, not those of Jesus Christ. 22 But you know Timothy's proven worth, that as a child with his father he has served with me to advance the gospel. 23 So I hope to send him as soon as I see what happens with me. 24 And I trust in the Lord that I myself will come soon.

25 But I thought it necessary to send back to you Epaphroditus, my brother, fellow worker, and fellow soldier, who is also your messenger and minister to my needs. 26 For he has been longing for all of you and is distressed because you heard he was ill. 27 He was sick indeed, nearly unto death. But God had mercy on him, and not only on him but also on me, to spare me sorrow upon sorrow.

28 Therefore I am all the more eager to send him, so that when you see him again you may rejoice, and I may be less anxious. 29 Welcome him in the Lord with great joy, and honor men like him, 30 because he nearly died for the work of Christ, risking his life to make up for your deficit of service to me.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE VIA EGNATIA

PHILIPPIANS 2:25 TO 30 · ACTS 16:11 TO 12 · ACTS 17:1



Left: the Via Egnatia where it runs through Philippi. Photo Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0. Right: the milestone of Gnaeus Egnatius, Archaeological Museum of Thessaloniki. Photo Jona Lendering, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

Left: the stone paving of the Via Egnatia, the great Roman highway, where it passes through Philippi. Right: a stone mile marker from the same road. It names the man who built it, Gnaeus Egnatius, a Roman governor, in Latin and in Greek, with the number 260, written CCLX in Latin and in Greek letters below.

HOW OLD IT IS

Egnatius built the road between about 146 and 120 BC, about 200 years before Paul. The milestone is from that first building work. It was found in 1974 buried in a riverbed west of Thessaloniki. The paving at Philippi was repaired again and again over the centuries.

THE ROAD

It ran about 700 miles from the Adriatic Sea to Byzantium, later called Constantinople. The number 260 means 260 Roman miles from the start of the road.

- **PHIL 2:12 [NOTE]** WORK OUT, NOT WORK FOR. You cannot work for your salvation. It is a gift, Ephesians 2:8 to 9, p.1879. But you work it out, the way you work out a muscle you already have. You live out what God already put in. And 2:13 tells you how: God is the One working in you. Fear and trembling means taking it seriously, not being scared. Catholic and Arminian readers add that how we respond to grace really counts, and salvation can be lost.
- **PHIL 2:15 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DT 32:5 p.327
- **PHIL 2:25 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Via Egnatia Field Notes page, p.1897.

PAUL'S ROAD
Paul landed at Neapolis, Philippi's port, and walked about 10 miles inland to Philippi, Acts 16:11 to 12. When he left, he went through Amphipolis and Apollonia to Thessalonica, Acts 17:1. Those are stops on the Via Egnatia, in order.

EPAPHRODITUS' ROAD
Epaphroditus carried the church's gift to Paul and almost died, 2:27 and 2:30. If Paul was in Rome, the trip was about 800 miles each way, by this road, a ship and more road. Timothy would walk it too, 2:19.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
The route Acts gives for Paul's travel matches a real Roman highway, stop by stop.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No one can say Paul stepped on these exact stones.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Watch out for teachers who say you need circumcision to belong. Paul had the best religious resume in town, and he calls it garbage next to knowing Jesus. He has not arrived yet. He forgets what is behind and presses on. Our citizenship is in heaven, and Jesus is coming back for us.

RIGHTEOUSNESS THROUGH FAITH IN CHRIST // ROMANS 3:21–31

1 Finally, my brothers, rejoice in the Lord. It
is no trouble for me to write the same
things to you again, and it is a safeguard
for you.

2 Watch out for those dogs, those workers
of evil, those mutilators of the flesh! 3 For
it is we who are the circumcision, we who
worship by the Spirit of God, who glory in
Christ Jesus, and who put no confidence
in the flesh— 4 though I myself could have
such confidence.

If anyone else thinks he has grounds for
confidence in the flesh, I have more: 5 cir-
cumcised on the eighth day, of the people
of Israel, of the tribe of Benjamin; a He-
brew of Hebrews; as to the law, a Phar-
isee; 6 as to zeal, persecuting the church;
as to righteousness in the law, faultless.

7 But whatever was gain to me I count as
loss for the sake of Christ. 8 More than
that, I count all things as loss compared to
the surpassing excellence of knowing
Christ Jesus my Lord, for whom I have
lost all things. I consider them rubbish,
that I may gain Christ 9 and be found in
Him, not having my own righteousness
from the law, but that which is through
faith in Christ, the righteousness from God
on the basis of faith.

10 I want to know Christ and the power of
His resurrection and the fellowship of His
sufferings, being conformed to Him in His
death, 11 and so, somehow, to attain to the
resurrection from the dead.

PRESSING ON TOWARD THE GOAL

12 Not that I have already obtained all this,
or have already been made perfect, but I
press on to take hold of that for which
Christ Jesus took hold of me. 13 Brothers, I
do not consider myself yet to have taken
hold of it. But one thing I do: Forgetting
what is behind and straining toward what
is ahead, 14 I press on toward the goal to
win the prize of God's heavenly calling in
Christ Jesus.

15 All of us who are mature should em-
brace this point of view. And if you think
differently about some issue, God will re-
veal this to you as well. 16 Nevertheless,
we must live up to what we have already
attained.

CITIZENSHIP IN HEAVEN

17 Join one another in following my exam-
ple, brothers, and carefully observe those
who walk according to the pattern we set
for you. 18 For as I have often told you be-
fore, and now say again even with tears:
Many live as enemies of the cross of
Christ. 19 Their end is destruction, their
god is their belly, and their glory is in their

PHIL 3:2 [NOTE] DOGS. Some Jews called Gentiles dogs, Matthew 15:26. Paul turns the insult on the teachers who said Gentiles must be circumcised. Mutilators is a Greek pun: katatome, cutting up, versus peritome, circumcision, 3:3. Some scholars say dogs was not yet a common insult for Gentiles.

PHIL 3:8 [NOTE] RUBBISH. The Greek word skubala is much stronger. It meant dung or garbage, and the King James says dung. Paul calls his whole religious resume, 3:5 to 6, a pile of skubala next to knowing Jesus.

END TIMES PROPHECIES

shame. Their minds are set on earthly things.

20 But our citizenship is in heaven, and we eagerly await a Savior from there, the Lord Jesus Christ, 21 who, by the power that enables Him to subject all things to Himself, will transform our lowly bodies to be like His glorious body.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Euodia and Syntyche, please make up. Rejoice always. Do not worry about anything, pray about everything, and God's peace will guard your heart. Think about good things. Paul learned the secret of being content, rich or broke. Then he says thank you for their gift, and God will meet all your needs.

REJOICE IN THE LORD

1 Therefore, my brothers, whom I love and long for, my joy and crown, that is how you must stand firm in the Lord, my beloved.

2 I urge Euodia and Syntyche to agree with each other in the Lord. 3 Yes, and I ask you, my true yokefellow, to help these women who have contended at my side for the gospel, along with Clement and the rest of my fellow workers, whose names are in the Book of Life.

4 Rejoice in the Lord always. I will say it again: Rejoice! 5 Let your gentleness be apparent to all. The Lord is near.

- **PHIL 3:20 [PROPHECY]** We eagerly wait for the Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, who will transform our lowly body that it may be conformed to His glorious body → STILL TO COME
- **PHIL 3:20 [FIELD NOTES]** See the A Little Rome Field Notes page, p.1899.
- **PHIL 4:2 [NOTE]** EUODIA AND SYNTYCHE. Two women who fought side by side with Paul for the gospel, 4:3. Now they are fighting each other, so Paul begs them to agree in the Lord. Even good leaders clash. Paul counts them with his fellow workers, the word he uses for Timothy and Titus. Many believe this shows women led in ministry and every role is open to them, see Phoebe and Junia in Romans 16, p.1818. Others say a fellow worker is not the same as a pastor or elder.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

A LITTLE ROME

PHILIPPIANS 3:20 · 1:27 · ACTS 16:12 · ACTS 16:20 TO 21



Left: a Latin inscription in the forum of Philippi naming Gaius Julius Maximus of the Voltinia tribe. Photo Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0. Right: a bronze coin of Philippi from the reign of Claudius, AD 41 to 54, Vatican Library. Photo Sunappu shashin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Left: a stone in the forum of Philippi, written in Latin. On the first line you can read VOL, short for Voltinia, the Roman voting tribe that the citizens of Philippi belonged to. Right: a coin made in Philippi. It shows a statue of Augustus being crowned by Julius Caesar, and the letters COL, for colony.

HOW OLD IT IS

The coin is from the reign of Claudius, AD 41 to 54. Paul came to Philippi about AD 49 or 50, so coins like this were in people's pockets when he arrived. The stone is later, from the 100s AD.

A COLONY OF VETERANS

After the battle of Philippi in 42 BC, Rome settled retired soldiers here. After another war in 30 BC, Augustus refounded it as his own colony. Its land counted as if it were in Italy. Most of the inscriptions found from Paul's era are in Latin, not Greek, which is rare in the East.

WE ARE ROMANS

Acts calls Philippi a Roman colony, Acts 16:12. The crowd shouted that Paul taught customs unlawful for us Romans to accept, Acts 16:21. The leaders panicked when they learned Paul and Silas were Roman citizens too, Acts 16:38.

CITIZENSHIP IN HEAVEN

Philippi was proud to be a piece of Rome far from Rome. Paul tells them, our citizenship is in heaven, 3:20, and to live as citizens worthy of the gospel,

THE HEART NOTABLE

1:27. The church is a colony of heaven on earth, waiting for its true King.
WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Philippi was exactly what Acts and Philippians say it was: a proud Roman colony full of Roman citizens.
WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Neither object mentions Christians. They show the world the church lived in.

6 Be anxious for nothing, but in everything,
by prayer and petition, with thanksgiving,
present your requests to God. 7 And the
peace of God, which surpasses all under-
standing, will guard your hearts and your
minds in Christ Jesus.

8 Finally, brothers, whatever is true, what-
ever is honorable, whatever is right, what-
ever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever
is admirable—if anything is excellent or
praiseworthy—think on these things. 9
Whatever you have learned or received or
heard from me, or seen in me, put it into
practice. And the God of peace will be
with you.

THE GENEROSITY OF THE PHILIPPIANS // 2 CORINTHIANS 8:1–15

10 Now I rejoice greatly in the Lord that at
last you have revived your concern for
me. You were indeed concerned, but you
had no opportunity to show it. 11 I am not
saying this out of need, for I have learned
to be content regardless of my circum-
stances. 12 I know how to live humbly, and
I know how to abound. In any and every
situation I have learned the secret of be-
ing filled and being hungry, of having
plenty and having need. 13 I can do all
things through Christ who gives me
strength.

14 Nevertheless, you have done well to
share in my affliction. 15 And as you Philip-
pians know, in the early days of the
gospel, when I left Macedonia, no church
but you partnered with me in the matter of
giving and receiving. 16 For even while I
was in Thessalonica, you provided for my
needs again and again.

17 Not that I am seeking a gift, but I am
looking for the fruit that may be credited
to your account. 18 I have all I need and
more, now that I have received your gifts
from Epaphroditus. They are a fragrant
offering, an acceptable sacrifice, well-
pleasing to God.

19 And my God will supply all your needs
according to His glorious riches in Christ
Jesus. 20 To our God and Father be glory
forever and ever. Amen.

FINAL GREETINGS // EPHESIANS 6:21–24; 2 TIMOTHY 4:19–22

21 Greet all the saints in Christ Jesus.

The brothers who are with me send you greetings.

22 All the saints send you greetings, espe-
cially those from the household of Caesar.

23 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be
with your spirit.

PHIL 4:7 [HEART] The peace of God will guard your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus.

PHIL 4:11 [NOTABLE] Paul learned to be content with a full stomach or an empty one, 4:12. That is what 4:13 is about. I can do all things means I can get through anything, rich or broke, because Christ gives me strength. Athletes love to put it on their eye black, and that is fine, as long as you remember Paul wrote it hungry and in chains, not holding a trophy.

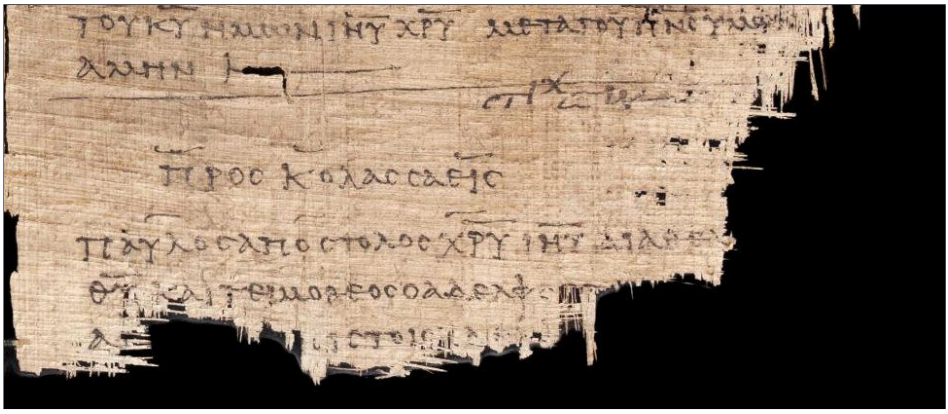
PHIL 4:13 [TEXT] THROUGH CHRIST. The oldest complete copies, Codex Sinaiticus before it was corrected, Alexandrinus and Vaticanus, say through Him who gives me strength. The word Christ was added in later copies and is in the King James. The meaning is the same, because Him is Christ. This verse is lost from Papyrus 46.

BOOK 51 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

COLOSSIANS

Jesus Is Enough

AUTHOR	Paul, with Timothy, 1:1. Paul signs it in his own hand, 4:18. Some scholars think a follower wrote it later, because the style is different.
WRITTEN FROM	Prison, 4:3 and 4:18. Most say Rome, the same stay as Philemon and Ephesians. Some say Ephesus instead.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 60 to 62. If it was Ephesus, about AD 54 to 55.
WRITTEN TO	The believers in Colossae, a small town in the Lycus valley of Turkey, 1:2. Paul had never visited them, 2:1.
CHURCH STARTED BY	Epaphras, a man from Colossae who learned the gospel from Paul, 1:7 and 4:12.
DELIVERED BY	Tychicus, with Onesimus, 4:7 to 9. They likely carried Philemon and Ephesians on the same trip.
WHY HE WROTE	Teachers were adding philosophy, food rules, holy days and angel worship to Jesus, 2:8 to 23. Paul says Jesus is enough.
KEY VERSE	Colossians 2:9 to 10. For in Christ all the fullness of the Deity dwells in bodily form. And you have been made complete in Christ.



THE OLDEST COPY OF COLOSSIANS
Part of a page of Papyrus 46, Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200, now in the Chester Beatty Library, Dublin. At the top is the end of Philippians and the word Amen. Under the short line is the title PROS KOLASSAEIS, To the Colossians, and the first words of the letter: Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus, by the will of God.

THE OTHER SIDE. The back of this leaf holds Colossians 1:5 to 13. See the whole page in Philippians, p.1891.

WHY IT MATTERS. Copied only about 140 years after Paul wrote, it says what our Bibles say today.

Historical Setting

Colossae sat in the Lycus river valley in western Turkey, next to two bigger cities, Laodicea about 10 miles away and Hierapolis about 13 miles away. Five hundred years before Paul,

the Greek writer Herodotus called it a great city. By Paul's day it was a small town, known for wool dyed a deep purple red. Paul never went there. A local man named Epaphras heard the gospel from Paul, probably in Ephesus, and took it home. Later he visited Paul in prison with good news and bad news. The church was growing, but some teachers were selling a Jesus plus package.

What Colossae Was Up Against

SMART SOUNDING TALK. Teachers used fine words and philosophy to pull people away from Christ, 2:4 and 2:8.
RULE KEEPING. Food and drink rules, festivals, New Moons and Sabbaths were being used to judge people, 2:16 and 2:21.
ANGEL WORSHIP. Some claimed special visions and worshiped angels, 2:18.
OLD HABITS. Anger, lies, greed and sexual sin still needed to be put to death, 3:5 to 9.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Colossians is a short letter with a big Jesus. The church in Colossae was young, and slick teachers were telling them they needed more: more secret knowledge, more rules, more visions. Paul answers with one of the greatest songs about Jesus ever written. He made the universe, He holds it together, and all the fullness of God lives in Him. Have Jesus, and you are not missing anything.

Colossians at a Glance

CH 1 **WHO JESUS IS**
He made all things, holds all things together and is first in everything.

CH 2 **JESUS IS ENOUGH**
You are complete in Him. Do not let anyone sell you an upgrade.

CH 3 **NEW CLOTHES**
Set your mind above. Take off the old self and put on love.

CH 4 **FINAL WORDS**
Pray, speak with grace, and meet Paul's team.

Where Jesus Shows Up

COLOSSIANS 1:15 AND 1:18 The firstborn over all creation and from among the dead. Fulfills Psalm 89:27 and Proverbs 8:23.

COLOSSIANS 1:16 TO 17 All things were created through Him, and He is before all things. Fulfills Proverbs 8:23.

COLOSSIANS 1:20 He made peace by the blood of His cross. Fulfills Isaiah 53:5.

COLOSSIANS 2:3 In Him are all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. Fulfills Isaiah 11:2.

COLOSSIANS 2:11 The circumcision done by Christ, not by human hands. Fulfills Deuteronomy 30:6.

COLOSSIANS 3:4 When Christ appears, you will appear with Him in glory. Still to come.

What to Watch for in Colossians

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (4)	1:15, 1:18, 1:20, 2:3, 2:11
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	1:16-17
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	3:4
THE HEART (3)	3:15-16, 3:22

DEMONIC (2)	2:15, 3:5
NOTABLE (4)	2:13-14, 3:1-2, 3:23-24, 4:6
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

AN EARLY SONG
Many scholars think 1:15 to 20 was a song or poem about Jesus. In six verses it says He made everything, holds everything together and rules everything.

THE SAME MAILBAG
Tychicus and Onesimus carried this letter, 4:7 to 9. Philemon lived in Colossae, so the little letter to Philemon was likely in the same bag.

O OR A?
The town's coins spell it with an o. Many old copies of this letter, like Papyrus 46, spell it with an a. Both were used.

THE SECOND CHANCE
Mark, the young man Paul refused to take on a trip, Acts 15:37 to 39, is back on Paul's team, 4:10. Later Paul calls him useful, 2 Timothy 4:11.

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes. Colossians was copied with Paul's letters by about AD 200 and quoted by Irenaeus. In the 300s, Athanasius used its words, the image of the invisible God, to show Jesus is fully God. The town faded, but its letter still tells the world that Jesus is enough.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul has never met these people, but he prays for them all the time. Then he breaks into a song about Jesus. He made everything, He holds everything together, He is head of the church, and He made peace by His blood. The big secret God kept for ages is out: Christ in you, the hope of glory.

GREETINGS FROM PAUL AND TIMOTHY // PHILIPPIANS 1:1–2; PHILEMON 1:1–3

1 Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and Timothy our brother,

2 To the saints and faithful brothers in Christ at Colossae:

Grace and peace to you from God our Father.

THANKSGIVING AND PRAYER // 1 CORINTHIANS 1:4–9; PHILIPPIANS 1:3–11

3 We always thank God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, when we pray for you, 4 because we have heard about your faith in Christ Jesus and your love for all the saints— 5 the faith and love proceeding from the hope stored up for you in heaven, of which you have already heard in the word of truth, the gospel 6 that has come to you.

All over the world this gospel is bearing fruit and growing, just as it has been doing among you since the day you heard it and truly understood the grace of God. 7 You learned it from Epaphras, our beloved fellow servant, who is a faithful minister of Christ on our behalf, 8 and who also informed us of your love in the Spirit.

9 For this reason, since the day we heard about you, we have not stopped praying for you and asking God to fill you with the knowledge of His will in all spiritual wisdom and understanding, 10 so that you may walk in a manner worthy of the Lord and may please Him in every way: bearing fruit in every good work, growing in the knowledge of God, 11 being strengthened with all power according to His glorious might so that you may have full endurance and patience, and joyfully 12 giving thanks to the Father, who has qualified you to share in the inheritance of the saints in the light.

13 He has rescued us from the dominion of darkness and brought us into the kingdom of His beloved Son, 14 in whom we have redemption, the forgiveness of sins.

THE SUPREMACY OF THE SON // HEBREWS 1:1–14

15 The Son is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn over all creation. 16 For in Him all things were created, things in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities. All things were created through Him and for Him.

17 He is before all things, and in Him all things hold together. 18 And He is the head of the body, the church; He is the beginning and firstborn from among the dead, so that in all things He may have preeminence. 19 For God was pleased to have all His fullness dwell in Him, 20 and through Him to reconcile to Himself all things, whether things on earth or things in heaven, by making peace through the blood of His cross.

- **COL 1:2 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Colossae Field Notes page, p.1902.
- **COL 1:14 [TEXT]** Many later manuscripts and the KJV add through His blood. The oldest copies do not have these words here. Ephesians 1:7 says it, and 1:20 says He made peace by the blood of His cross.
- **COL 1:15 [FULFILLS]** He would be the Firstborn ← PS 89:27 · MEDIUM p.944
- **COL 1:15 [FULFILLS]** Foreordained from everlasting ← PROV 8:23 · MEDIUM p.995
- **COL 1:15 [NOTE]** FIRSTBORN. In the Bible, firstborn can mean first in rank, the heir, not the first one made. God says of David, a youngest son, I will indeed appoint him as My firstborn, Psalm 89:27. Paul explains in the next verse: all things were created through Him. If He made all things, He was not made. Jehovah's Witnesses read firstborn as the first thing God created, and their New World Translation adds the word other in 1:16, 17 and 20. That word is not in the Greek.
- **COL 1:18 [FULFILLS]** He would be the Firstborn ← PS 89:27 · MEDIUM p.944
- **COL 1:20 [FULFILLS]** His sacrifice brings peace between man and God ← IS 53:5b p.1127

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE PLACE · LITTLE DUG UP

COLOSSAE

COLOSSIANS 1:2 · 2:1 · 4:9 · 4:12 TO 13



Top: the mound of Colossae near Honaz, Denizli, Turkey. Photo A.Savin, Free Art License. Bottom: a bronze coin of Colossae from the late 100s AD, with a Roman emperor on one side and the goddess Artemis in a chariot pulled by deer on the other. Münzkabinett, Berlin, photo Reinhard Saczewski, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

Top: the hill where Colossae stood, on the Lycus river in western Turkey. Under the grass are the walls, streets and a theater of the town Paul wrote to. Bottom: a coin made in Colossae. On the deer side you can read KOLOSSENON, of the Colossians.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived on this hill for thousands of years. Herodotus says it was a great city when the Persian king Xerxes passed through in 481 BC. The coin is from the late 100s AD, about 120 years after Paul wrote. A matching coin in Berlin is dated to the emperor Commodus, AD 180 to 192.

THE TOWN THAT FADED

By Paul's day Colossae was smaller than its neighbors, Laodicea and Hierapolis. The historian Orosius says an earthquake hit all three in Nero's day. Over the next centuries the people moved to a safer town nearby called Chonae, today Honaz. Colossae was left empty.

NEVER DUG UP

Unlike the other cities Paul wrote to, Colossae was never dug until recently. A team from Pamukkale University led by Barış Yener began surveys in 2021. The first real dig started in 2025 and found about 60 tombs cut into the rock, more than 2,200 years old.

WHY IT MATTERS

Paul wrote one of his greatest letters to a small, fading town he had never seen. God does not save His best words for big cities.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Colossae was a real town in the Lycus valley with Laodicea and Hierapolis close by, just as the letter says, 4:13.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing from the church of Colossae has been found yet. The house where they met, maybe Philemon's, is still under the dirt.

21 Once you were alienated from God and
were hostile in your minds, engaging in
evil deeds. 22 But now He has reconciled
you by Christ's physical body through
death to present you holy, unblemished,
and blameless in His presence— 23 if in-
deed you continue in your faith, estab-
lished and firm, not moved from the hope
of the gospel you heard, which has been
proclaimed to every creature under
heaven, and of which I, Paul, have be-
come a servant.

PAUL'S SUFFERING FOR THE CHURCH // 2 CORINTHIANS 11:16–33

24 Now I rejoice in my sufferings for you,
and I fill up in my flesh what is lacking in
regard to Christ's afflictions for the sake
of His body, which is the church. 25 I be-
came its servant by the commission God
gave me to fully proclaim to you the word
of God, 26 the mystery that was hidden for
ages and generations but is now revealed
to His saints. 27 To them God has chosen
to make known among the Gentiles the
glorious riches of this mystery, which is
Christ in you, the hope of glory.

28 We proclaim Him, admonishing and
teaching everyone with all wisdom, so
that we may present everyone perfect in
Christ. 29 To this end I also labor, striving

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

with all His energy working powerfully within me.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Somebody in town is selling an upgrade: deep philosophy, strict food rules, holy days, angel visions. Paul says you do not need an upgrade. All the fullness of God lives in Jesus, and you are complete in Him. Your debt was nailed to the cross. Rules about do not touch and do not taste cannot fix the heart.

ABSENT IN BODY, PRESENT IN SPIRIT // REVELATION 3:14–22

1 For I want you to know how much I am struggling for you and for those at Laodicea, and for all who have not met me face to face, 2 that they may be encouraged in heart, knit together in love, and filled with the full riches of complete understanding, so that they may know the mystery of God, namely Christ, 3 in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

4 I say this so that no one will deceive you by smooth rhetoric. 5 For although I am absent from you in body, I am present with you in spirit, and I delight to see your orderly condition and firm faith in Christ.

ALIVE WITH CHRIST // EPHESIANS 2:1–10

6 Therefore, just as you have received Christ Jesus as Lord, continue to walk in Him, 7 rooted and built up in Him, established in the faith as you were taught, and overflowing with thankfulness.

8 See to it that no one takes you captive through philosophy and empty deception, which are based on human tradition and the spiritual forces of the world rather than on Christ. 9 For in Christ all the fullness of the Deity dwells in bodily form. 10 And you have been made complete in Christ, who is the head over every ruler and authority.

11 In Him you were also circumcised, in the putting off of your sinful nature, with the circumcision performed by Christ and not by human hands. 12 And having been buried with Him in baptism, you were raised with Him through your faith in the power of God, who raised Him from the dead.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

LAODICEA

COLOSSIANS 2:1 · 4:13 TO 16 · REVELATION 3:14 TO 22



A water tower at Laodicea. The round holes are the ends of stone water pipes, and the white crust is minerals left by the water. Photo Rjdeadly, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A Roman water tower at Laodicea, the big city about 10 miles from Colossae. Water came in through stone pipes and was sent out to the city in clay pipes. Look for the round pipe holes and the thick white crust.

HOW OLD IT IS

Roman. The water system was built and repaired from about the first century AD on. The exact date of this tower is not known. A city law about the water, carved in stone in AD 114, set huge fines for anyone who dirtied the water or broke the pipes.

THE WATER

The water came from springs several miles south, near today's Denizli. It was so full of minerals that it crusted the pipes shut, and workers had to clean or replace them.

COL 2:1 [FIELD NOTES] See the Laodicea Field Notes page, p.1906.

COL 2:3 [FULFILLS] His character marked by wisdom and knowledge ← IS 11:2 p.1075

COL 2:8 [NOTE] PHILOSOPHY. Paul is not against thinking. He quoted Greek poets, Acts 17:28. He is against any system that takes you captive and leaves Christ out. If a teaching makes Jesus smaller, it is empty, no matter how smart it sounds.

COL 2:11 [FULFILLS] God would circumcise the hearts of His people so they would love Him ← DT 30:6 · MEDIUM p.324

DEMONIC NOTABLE

HOT, COLD AND LUKEWARM
Jesus told this church, How I wish you were one or the other! So because you are lukewarm, I am about to vomit you out of My mouth, Revelation 3:15 to 16. Many scholars think He was pointing at their water. Hierapolis had hot springs that healed. Colossae had cold, fresh water. Laodicea's water, piped in from miles away and full of minerals, was neither.

THE EARTHQUAKE
Tacitus says an earthquake ruined Laodicea in AD 60, and the city rebuilt with its own money, without help from Rome. Jesus said, You say, I am rich; I have grown wealthy and need nothing, Revelation 3:17.

PAUL AND LAODICEA
Paul was struggling in prayer for them, 2:1. He greets the believers there and Nympha's house church, 4:15, and tells Colossae to swap letters with them, 4:16.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Laodicea was a rich city next to Colossae, with a water system that fits Revelation 3.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The water reading of Revelation 3 is a strong guess, not something the Bible spells out.

13 When you were dead in your trespasses
and in the uncircumcision of your sinful
nature, God made you alive with Christ.
He forgave us all our trespasses, 14 having
canceled the debt ascribed to us in the
decrees that stood against us. He took it
away, nailing it to the cross! 15 And having
disarmed the powers and authorities, He
made a public spectacle of them, tri-
umphing over them by the cross.

16 Therefore let no one judge you by what
you eat or drink, or with regard to a feast,
a New Moon, or a Sabbath. 17 These are a
shadow of the things to come, but the
body that casts it belongs to Christ. 18 Do
not let anyone who delights in false humil-
ity and the worship of angels disqualify
you with speculation about what he has
seen. Such a person is puffed up without
basis by his unspiritual mind. 19 He has lost
connection to the head, from whom the
whole body, supported and knit together
by its joints and ligaments, grows as God
causes it to grow.

20 If you have died with Christ to the spiri-
tual forces of the world, why, as though
you still belonged to the world, do you
submit to its regulations: 21 "Do not handle,
do not taste, do not touch!"? 22 These will
all perish with use, because they are
based on human commands and teach-
ings. 23 Such restrictions indeed have an
appearance of wisdom, with their self-
prescribed worship, their false humility,
and their harsh treatment of the body; but
they are of no value against the indul-
gence of the flesh.

- COL 2:13 [NOTABLE] The debt is a handwritten IOU, a list of everything we owe God. Paul says God did not just stamp it paid. He took it away and nailed it to the cross. Many preachers picture the sign nailed over Jesus' head that listed His crime, John 19:19, with our list nailed there instead.
- COL 2:15 [DEMONIC] Christ disarmed the powers and triumphed over them by the cross

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
You were raised with Christ, so set your mind on things above. Take off the old clothes, like anger, lies and greed. Put on the new ones, like kindness, forgiveness and love. Then Paul brings it home: wives, husbands, kids, parents, slaves and bosses. Whatever you do, do it for the Lord.

PUT ON THE NEW SELF // EPHESIANS 4:17–32

1 Therefore, since you have been raised
with Christ, strive for the things above,
where Christ is seated at the right hand of
God. 2 Set your minds on things above, not

- COL 2:16 [NOTE] A SHADOW. Food laws, festivals, New Moons and Sabbaths were a shadow, 2:17. Jesus is the body that casts it. So do not let anyone judge you over these things. Seventh day Adventists and some others say Paul means the extra holy day sabbaths of the Law, not the weekly Sabbath.
- COL 2:18 [NOTE] WORSHIP OF ANGELS. Scholars still debate what the Colossian teachers taught. It seems to mix Jewish rules, special visions and praying to angels. The habit lasted. About AD 363 a church council in Laodicea banned calling on angels, and in the 400s Theodoret said Phrygia still had chapels to the angel Michael. Some scholars read it as joining the worship that angels give God in visions.
- COL 3:1 [NOTABLE] You were raised with Christ, so live like it. Where your mind goes, your life follows. This does not mean ignore life down here. It means let heaven set your priorities on earth.
- COL 3:1 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← PS 110:1 p.960

END TIMES PROPHECIES THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE

on earthly things. 3 For you died, and your
life is now hidden with Christ in God. 4
When Christ, who is your life, appears,
then you also will appear with Him in
glory.

5 Put to death, therefore, the components
of your earthly nature: sexual immorality,
impurity, lust, evil desires, and greed,
which is idolatry. 6 Because of these, the
wrath of God is coming on the sons of
disobedience. 7 When you lived among
them, you also used to walk in these
ways. 8 But now you must put aside all
such things as these: anger, rage, malice,
slander, and filthy language from your
lips.

9 Do not lie to one another, since you have
taken off the old self with its practices, 10
and have put on the new self, which is be-
ing renewed in knowledge in the image of
its Creator. 11 Here there is no Greek or
Jew, circumcised or uncircumcised, bar-
barian, Scythian, slave, or free, but Christ
is all and is in all.

12 Therefore, as the elect of God, holy and
beloved, clothe yourselves with hearts of
compassion, kindness, humility, gentle-
ness, and patience. 13 Bear with one an-
other and forgive any complaint you may
have against someone else. Forgive as the
Lord forgave you. 14 And over all these
virtues put on love, which is the bond of
perfect unity. 15 Let the peace of Christ
rule in your hearts, for to this you were
called as members of one body. And be
thankful.

16 Let the word of Christ richly dwell within
you as you teach and admonish one an-
other with all wisdom, and as you sing
psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs with
gratitude in your hearts to God. 17 And
whatever you do, in word or deed, do it all
in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving
thanks to God the Father through Him.

CHRISTIAN HOUSEHOLDS // EPHESIANS 6:1–4

18 Wives, submit to your husbands, as is
fitting in the Lord.

19 Husbands, love your wives and do not
be harsh with them.

20 Children, obey your parents in every-
thing, for this is pleasing to the Lord.

21 Fathers, do not provoke your children,
so they will not become discouraged.

SERVING WITH HONOR // EPHESIANS 6:5–9; 1 TIMO-
THY 6:1–2

22 Slaves, obey your earthly masters in
everything, not only to please them while
they are watching, but with sincerity of
heart and fear of the Lord.

23 Whatever you do, work at it with your
whole being, as for the Lord and not for
men, 24 because you know that you will re-
ceive an inheritance from the Lord as your
reward. It is the Lord Christ you are serv-
ing. 25 Whoever does wrong will be repaid
for his wrong, and there is no favoritism.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Pray, and talk to outsiders with grace and a little salt. Then comes the team photo: Tychicus the mailman, Onesimus the runaway now a brother, Mark back on the team, Luke the doctor, and Epaphras the prayer warrior. Read this letter in Laodicea too. Paul signs it himself: remember my chains.

PRAYERFUL SPEECH AND ACTIONS

1 Masters, supply your slaves with what is
right and fair, since you know that you
also have a Master in heaven.

2 Devote yourselves to prayer, being
watchful and thankful, 3 as you pray also
for us, that God may open to us a door for
the word, so that we may proclaim the

COL 3:4 [PROPHECY] When Christ who is our life appears, then you also will appear with Him in glory → STILL TO COME
COL 3:5 [DEMONIC] Put to death greed, which is idolatry
COL 3:15 [HEART] Let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts.
COL 3:16 [HEART] Sing to God with gratitude in your hearts.
COL 3:18 [NOTE] HOME RULES. See the Ephesians 5:21 note, p.1888, on mutual submission, and 5:25: husbands, love your wives as Christ loved the church.
COL 3:22 [HEART] Work with a sincere heart, not just when the boss is watching.
COL 3:22 [NOTE] SLAVES. See the Ephesians 6:5 note, p.1888, for the honest context. Masters are told to be fair, 4:1, and Onesimus, a slave, is called a faithful and beloved brother, 4:9.
COL 3:23 [NOTABLE] Paul first said this to slaves, so it covers every job. Your real boss is the Lord, and He pays in an inheritance. The King James says do it heartily. Work done for Him is worship, so the shop, the office and the kitchen count as ministry. See The Church Is Not a Building in Ephesians, p.1880.

NOTABLE

mystery of Christ, for which I am in
chains. 4 Pray that I may declare it clearly,
as I should.

5 Act wisely toward outsiders, redeeming
the time. 6 Let your speech always be gra-
cious, seasoned with salt, so that you may
know how to answer everyone.

GREETINGS FROM PAUL'S FELLOW WORKERS // ROMANS 16:21–23

7 Tychicus will tell you all the news about
me. He is a beloved brother, a faithful
minister, and a fellow servant in the Lord.
8 I have sent him to you for this very pur-
pose, that you may know about us, and
that he may encourage your hearts. 9 With
him I am sending Onesimus, our faithful
and beloved brother, who is one of you.
They will tell you about everything here.

10 My fellow prisoner Aristarchus sends
you greetings, as does Mark the cousin of
Barnabas. You have already received in-
structions about him: If he comes to you,
welcome him. 11 Jesus, who is called Jus-
tus, also sends greetings. These are the
only Jews among my fellow workers for
the kingdom of God, and they have been
a comfort to me.

12 Epaphras, who is one of you and a ser-
vant of Christ Jesus, sends you greetings.
He is always wrestling in prayer for you,
so that you may stand mature and fully
assured in the full will of God. 13 For I tes-
tify about him that he goes to great pains
for you and for those at Laodicea and Hi-
erapolis.

14 Luke, the beloved physician, and Demas
send you greetings.

SIGNATURE AND FINAL INSTRUCTIONS // 1 CORINTHIANS 16:19–24; 2 THESSALONIANS 3:16–18

15 Greet the brothers in Laodicea, as well
as Nympha and the church that meets at
her house.

16 After this letter has been read among
you, make sure that it is also read in the
church of the Laodiceans, and that you in
turn read the letter from Laodicea.

17 Tell Archippus: "See to it that you com-
plete the ministry you have received in the
Lord."

18 This greeting is in my own hand—Paul.

Remember my chains.

Grace be with you.

COL 4:6 [NOTABLE] Salt keeps food from going bad and gives it flavor. Your words should be kind, but not bland. Grace with salt means people can tell you love them and also that you mean it. Be ready with an answer, 1 Peter 3:15.

COL 4:9 [NOTE] ONESIMUS. A slave from Colossae who ran away from his master Philemon, met Paul, and became a believer. Paul sends him home with this letter, now a faithful and beloved brother, and writes the little letter to Philemon asking him to welcome Onesimus like Paul himself, Philemon 16 to 17, p.1971.

COL 4:10 [NOTE] MARK IS BACK. Paul once refused to take Mark on a trip because he had quit on them, and Paul and Barnabas split over it, Acts 15:37 to 39, p.1769. Now Mark is on Paul's team, and Paul tells the church to welcome him. Later Paul says he is useful to me, 2 Timothy 4:11. Quitting once does not have to be the end.

COL 4:13 [FIELD NOTES] See the Hierapolis Field Notes page, p.1910.

COL 4:16 [NOTE] THE LETTER FROM LAODICEA. It is lost, or it is a letter we already have. Many think it is Ephesians, because in Ephesus is missing from 1:1 in the oldest copies, p.1878. A fake Letter to the Laodiceans, 20 verses pieced together from Philippians and Galatians, later got into many Latin Bibles, like Codex Fuldensis about AD 546. The church never accepted it as Scripture.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

HIERAPOLIS

COLOSSIANS 4:12 TO 13



The Plutonium at Hierapolis: a stone arch over the small opening to the cave. Photo Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

The Plutonium, a shrine to Pluto, the Greek god of the dead, at Hierapolis. Below the arch is a small opening into a cave full of deadly gas. People called it a gate to the underworld.

HOW OLD IT IS

Hierapolis was founded about 190 BC. The shrine goes back about that far, and the Greek writer Strabo saw it working near the time of Jesus. It was rebuilt over the centuries. Italian archaeologists found part of it in 1965 and uncovered the whole shrine around 2013.

THE DEADLY GAS

Strabo said any animal that went in died at once. He threw in sparrows, and they fell dead. Priests of the goddess Cybele went in and came out alive, and people called it a miracle. In 2018 scientists found the gas is carbon dioxide. It is heavier than air and lies low, so a tall man standing up could live where a bird or a bull would die.

EPAPHRAS' TOWN

Epaphras worked hard for the believers in Colossae, Laodicea and Hierapolis, 4:13. The gospel got into a town that bragged about its gate to hell.

LATER CHRISTIANS

Tradition says the apostle Philip died here, and a church was built for him about AD 400. Papias, who told how Mark and Matthew wrote their Gospels, led the church here about AD 100 to 130.

WHY IT MATTERS

Jesus said the gates of Hades will not prevail against His church, Matthew 16:18. In Hierapolis the gate of Hades was a real place, and the church outlasted it.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Hierapolis was a real city full of pagan worship, close to Colossae and Laodicea, just as 4:13 lists them.

BOOK 52 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

1 THESSALONIANS

Jesus Is Coming Back

AUTHOR	Paul, with Silvanus, also called Silas, and Timothy, 1:1. Almost no scholar doubts that Paul wrote it.
WRITTEN FROM	Corinth, right after Timothy came back with news, 3:6 and Acts 18:5.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 50 to 51. Many say it is the oldest book in the New Testament. Others give that title to Galatians or James.
WRITTEN TO	The young church in Thessalonica, the capital of the Roman province of Macedonia in northern Greece.
WHY HE WROTE	Paul had to leave town in a hurry. He wanted to encourage a church under fire, answer charges against him, and comfort them about believers who had died.
KEY VERSE	1 Thessalonians 4:16. For the Lord Himself will descend from heaven with a loud command, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trumpet of God.



AN EARLY COPY OF 1 THESSALONIANS
These are pieces of Papyrus 30, a page from a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt in the 200s AD. It was found at Oxyrhynchus and is now at Ghent University Library in Belgium. This side holds bits of 1 Thessalonians 4:12 to 13, 4:16 to 17 and 5:12 to 14, and the start of 2 Thessalonians. Papyrus 46, from about AD 200, also holds parts of 1 Thessalonians, and Papyrus 65 is another scrap from the 200s.

THE HOPE ON PAPYRUS. Some of these scraps hold 4:16 to 17, the Lord coming down and believers caught up to meet Him. Christians in Egypt were reading that promise about 1,800 years ago.

Historical Setting

Thessalonica was founded about 316 BC and named after Thessalonike, a half sister of Alexander the Great. By Paul's day it was the capital of Macedonia, a busy port on the Via Egnatia, the great Roman highway. About AD 49 or 50, Paul and Silas came straight from being beaten and jailed in Philippi. For three Sabbaths Paul taught in the synagogue, and Jews, Greeks and leading women believed. Then a mob dragged Jason and other believers before the city officials, shouting that these men had turned the world upside down, Acts 17:1 to 9. Paul slipped out by night. A few months later he wrote this letter.

What Thessalonica Was Up Against

PERSECUTION. Their own neighbors turned on them, 2:14 and 3:3 to 4.
RUMORS ABOUT PAUL. Some said Paul was a con man who ran off, 2:3 to 6 and 2:17 to 18.
SEXUAL SIN. Pagan culture saw nothing wrong with it, 4:3 to 8.
NOT WORKING. Some had stopped working and were leaning on others, 4:11 to 12 and 5:14.
GRIEF AND QUESTIONS. Believers had died, and the church was afraid they would miss the Lord's return, 4:13.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Thessalonians is a letter from a spiritual dad to a brand new church. Paul was only with them a short time before a mob chased him out, and he was worried sick. When Timothy brought good news, Paul wrote to cheer them on. Every chapter ends with the return of Jesus. For a church losing loved ones and facing hate from their neighbors, that hope was everything. Jesus is coming back, the dead in Christ will rise, and we will always be with the Lord.

1 Thessalonians at a Glance

CH 1 **A MODEL CHURCH**
They turned from idols and are waiting for Jesus.

CH 2 **PAUL'S HEART**
Gentle like a mother, firm like a father, never in it for money.

CH 3 **GOOD NEWS FROM TIMOTHY**
They are standing firm, and Paul can breathe again.

CH 4 **LIVING HOLY AND THE HOPE**
Stay pure, work hard, and do not grieve without hope.

CH 5 **STAY AWAKE**
The Day of the Lord comes like a thief, so live in the light.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 THESSALONIANS 1:10 Waiting for His Son from heaven, Jesus our deliverer from the coming wrath.

1 THESSALONIANS 4:15 TO 17 The Lord Himself will descend, the dead in Christ will rise, and we will be caught up to meet Him. Still to come.

1 THESSALONIANS 5:1 TO 3 The Day of the Lord will come like a thief in the night. Still to come.

1 THESSALONIANS 5:9 TO 10 He died for us so that, awake or asleep, we may live together with Him.

What to Watch for in 1 Thessalonians

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	2:14, 3:4
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	4:15-17, 5:1-3
THE HEART (1)	2:4
DEMONIC (2)	1:9, 2:18
NOTABLE (4)	2:7-8, 4:11-12, 5:16-18, 5:21-22
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

MAYBE THE OLDEST
This may be the first book of the New Testament ever written, about 20 years after Jesus rose.

EVERY CHAPTER ENDS THE SAME
Each chapter ends with Jesus coming back: 1:10, 2:19, 3:13, 4:16 to 17 and 5:23.

THE WORD RAPTURE
The word is not in English Bibles. It comes from the Latin Bible, where 4:17 says rapiemur, we will be caught up.

THE NEXT TOWN
After Thessalonica, Paul went to Berea, where people checked his teaching against the Scriptures every day, Acts 17:11. That is 5:21 in action.

Did Anybody Listen?

Yes. Paul soon wrote again, 2 Thessalonians, to clear up confusion about the Day of the Lord. Thessalonica became one of the strongest churches in Greece. Two men from there, Aristarchus and Secundus, traveled with Paul, Acts 20:4, and Aristarchus went all the way to Rome with him, Acts 27:2. Today Thessaloniki is the second biggest city in Greece, full of old churches, and believers still read 4:13 to 18 at funerals.

DEMONIC

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul is bragging on a brand new church. People all over Greece are talking about how the Thessalonians turned from idols to the living God and are now waiting for Jesus to come back from heaven. Not bad for a few weeks of Bible study.

GREETINGS TO THE THESSALONIANS // 2 THESSALONIANS 1:1–4

1 Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy,

To the church of the Thessalonians in God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ:

Grace and peace to you.

2 We always thank God for all of you, remembering you in our prayers 3 and continually recalling before our God and Father your work of faith, your labor of love, and your enduring hope in our Lord Jesus Christ.

4 Brothers who are beloved by God, we know that He has chosen you, 5 because our gospel came to you not only in word, but also in power, in the Holy Spirit, and with great conviction—just as you know we lived among you for your sake. 6 And you became imitators of us and of the Lord when you welcomed the message with the joy of the Holy Spirit, in spite of your great suffering.

7 As a result, you have become an example to all the believers in Macedonia and Achaia. 8 For not only did the message of the Lord ring out from you to Macedonia and Achaia, but your faith in God has gone out to every place, so that we have no need to say anything more. 9 For they themselves report what kind of welcome you gave us, and how you turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God 10 and to await His Son from heaven, whom He raised from the dead—Jesus our deliverer from the coming wrath.

■ **1TH 1:1 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Thessalonica Field Notes page, p.1912. For the riot and the politarchs, see Acts 17, p.1771.
1TH 1:9 [DEMONIC] The Thessalonians turned from idols to serve the living God
■ **1TH 1:9 [FIELD NOTES]** See The Gods of Thessalonica Field Notes page, p.1915.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE CITY · MOST OF IT AFTER PAUL

THESSALONICA

1 THESSALONIANS 1:1 · ACTS 17:1 TO 9



Left: the vaulted corridor, or cryptoporticus, and the square of the Roman forum. Photo Andrew Zorin, CC BY SA 3.0. Right: a round room of the older Greek era baths found under the forum. Photo Marsyas, CC BY 2.5.

WHAT IT IS

The heart of ancient Thessalonica, now in the middle of the modern city of Thessaloniki, Greece. Left: the big open square of the Roman forum with its arched underground corridor. Right: a round room from a public bath of the older Greek city, with stone basins set around the wall.

HOW OLD IT IS

The forum you see was built mostly in the late 100s AD, more than 100 years after Paul, and used into the 500s. Under it are older layers from the Greek city, like these baths. They are from before Paul, and they may still have been in use when he came. The site was found in the 1960s, when builders started digging for a new courthouse.

PAUL WAS HERE

Paul taught in the synagogue for three Sabbaths, Acts 17:2. A mob formed in the marketplace, Acts 17:5, rushed Jason's house, and dragged believers before the city officials. The marketplace of Paul's day lies somewhere under this later square.

THE POLITARCHS

Acts calls the city officials politarchs, a rare title. Stones from Thessalonica prove Luke got it right. See The Politarch Inscription page in Acts, p.1771.

A CITY ON THE HIGHWAY

Thessalonica sat on the Via Egnatia and had a harbor. That is why the message rang out from you to Macedonia and Achaia, 1:8. News traveled fast from here. See The Via Egnatia page in Philippians, p.1897.

THE HEART

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Thessalonica was a big, busy Roman city with a public square, officials and crowds, just as Acts 17 describes.
WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Most of what you see came after Paul. Nothing here names Paul or the church.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
Paul did not come for money or fame. He was gentle like a nursing mother and worked night and day so he would not be a burden. They took his message as God's word, even when their own neighbors turned on them.

PAUL'S MINISTRY

1 You yourselves know, brothers, that our
visit to you was not in vain. 2 As you are
aware, we had already endured suffering
and shameful treatment in Philippi. But in
the face of strong opposition, we were
bold in our God to speak to you the gospel
of God.

3 For our appeal does not arise from deceit
or ulterior motives or trickery. 4 Instead,
we speak as those approved by God to be
entrusted with the gospel, not in order to
please men but God, who examines our
hearts. 5 As you know, we never used
words of flattery or any pretext for greed.
God is our witness! 6 Nor did we seek
praise from you or from anyone else, al-
though as apostles of Christ we had au-
thority to demand it.

1TH 2:4 [HEART] Paul preaches to please God, who tests our hearts, not to please people.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

THE GODS OF THESSALONICA

1 THESSALONIANS 1:9 · ACTS 17:4



Left: head of Sarapis, AD 150 to 200. Photo Yair Haklai, CC BY SA 4.0. Middle: stone ear dedicated to Isis, first century BC. Photo Gts-tg, CC BY SA 4.0. Both in the Archaeological Museum of Thessaloniki. Right: coin of Thessalonica with the god Kabeiros, about AD 193 to 217. Photo HJunghans, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS
Three things from the idols the Thessalonians turned away from, 1:9. Left: a huge marble head of Sarapis, a god from Egypt. Middle: a stone carved with an ear, given to Isis, the goddess who listens, by a man named Marcus Agelleius. Right: a city coin showing Kabeiros, Thessalonica's own god, holding a hammer inside a little temple.
HOW OLD IT IS
The ear stone is from the first century BC, before Paul came. The head of Sarapis is from about AD 150 to 200. The coin was made about AD 193 to 217, under the empress Julia Domna.
THE TEMPLE OF EGYPT'S GODS
After a great fire in 1917, digging in 1921 found a sanctuary of Sarapis and Isis in the old city, with more than 70 inscriptions and a hidden underground room. People had worshiped the Egyptian gods in Thessalonica since about 200 BC.
A GOD WHO LISTENS?
People carved ears and gave them to Isis, hoping she would hear their prayers. Paul brought news of the living and true God, 1:9, who really does hear, 5:17.
KABEIROS
Kabeiros was a local god of mystery rites. Later the city put him on its coins as its protector. Some scholars think the cult was strong in Paul's day too, but that is debated.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE DEMONIC NOTABLE

TURNING FROM IDOLS
Leaving these gods was costly. It could mean losing friends, business and family, and it made the neighbors angry, 2:14. That is why everyone was talking about this church, 1:8 to 9.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
Thessalonica was full of idols, just as 1:9 says.

7 On the contrary, we were gentle among
you, like a nursing mother caring for her
children. 8 We cared so deeply that we
were delighted to share with you not only
the gospel of God, but our own lives as
well. That is how beloved you have be-
come to us.
9 Surely you recall, brothers, our labor and
toil. We worked night and day so that we
would not be a burden to anyone while we
proclaimed to you the gospel of God. 10
You are witnesses, and so is God, of how
holy, righteous, and blameless our con-
duct was among you who believed. 11 For
you know that we treated each of you as a
father treats his own children— 12 encour-
aging you, comforting you, and urging you
to walk in a manner worthy of God, who
calls you into His own kingdom and glory.
13 And we continually thank God because,
when you received the word of God that
you heard from us, you accepted it not as
the word of men, but as it truly is, the
word of God, which is also now at work in
you who believe.
14 For you, brothers, became imitators of
the churches of God in Judea that are in
Christ Jesus. You suffered from your own
countrymen the very things they suffered
from the Jews, 15 who killed both the Lord
Jesus and their own prophets and drove
us out as well. They are displeasing to
God and hostile to all men, 16 hindering us
from telling the Gentiles how they may be
saved. As a result, they continue to heap
up their sins to full capacity; the utmost
wrath has come upon them.

PAUL'S LONGING TO VISIT

17 Brothers, although we were torn away
from you for a short time (in person, not in
heart), our desire to see you face to face
was even more intense. 18 For we wanted
to come to you—indeed I, Paul, tried again
and again—but Satan obstructed us. 19 Af-
ter all, who is our hope, our joy, our crown
of boasting, if it is not you yourselves in
the presence of our Lord Jesus at His
coming? 20 You are indeed our glory and
our joy.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
Paul got run out of town and could not stand not knowing how they were doing. So he sent Timothy. Timothy came back with good news: they are standing firm. Paul is so relieved he says, now we can go on living.

TIMOTHY'S VISIT

1 So when we could bear it no longer, we
were willing to be left on our own in
Athens. 2 We sent Timothy, our brother
and fellow worker for God in the gospel of
Christ, to strengthen and encourage you
in your faith, 3 so that none of you would
be shaken by these trials. For you know
that we are destined for this. 4 Indeed,
when we were with you, we kept warning
you that we would suffer persecution; and
as you know, it has come to pass. 5 For
this reason, when I could bear it no
longer, I sent to find out about your faith,
for fear that the tempter had somehow

- **1TH 2:7 [NOTABLE]** Paul, the tough apostle who was beaten and jailed, calls himself a nursing mother. Real leaders are gentle. He gave them not just the gospel but his own life, 2:8, and then he was a father to them too, 2:11.
- **1TH 2:9 [NOTE]** NIGHT AND DAY. Paul made tents, Acts 18:3, so no one could say he preached for money. He had the right to be paid, 2:6 and 1 Corinthians 9:14, but chose not to use it here. Ministry and business can go together. See 4:11.
- **1TH 2:14 [FULFILLS]** Paul warned the believers in Thessalonica that they would suffer persecution ← 1TH 3:4 p.1916
- **1TH 2:15 [NOTE]** HARD WORDS. Paul was a Jew, and so were Jesus and all the first apostles. Here he means the leaders who opposed Jesus and the men who drove Paul out of town, Acts 17:5, not every Jewish person. Elsewhere he says he would give up his own soul for his people, Romans 9:3, and that God has not rejected Israel, Romans 11:1, p.1813. Sadly, these verses were later misused to justify hatred of Jews. Some scholars think 2:15 to 16 was added later, but every manuscript has it.
- **1TH 2:18 [DEMONIC]** Satan hindered us
- **1TH 3:4 [PROPHECY]** Paul warned the believers in Thessalonica that they would suffer persecution → ACTS 17:5-9; 1TH 2:14 p.1771

NOTABLE

tempted you and that our labor might have been in vain.

TIMOTHY'S ENCOURAGING REPORT

6 But just now, Timothy has returned from his visit with the good news about your faith, your love, and the fond memories you have preserved, longing to see us just as we long to see you. 7 For this reason, brothers, in all our distress and persecution, we have been reassured about you, because of your faith. 8 For now we can go on living, as long as you are standing firm in the Lord.

9 How can we adequately thank God for you in return for our great joy over you in His presence? 10 Night and day we pray most earnestly that we may see you face to face and supply what is lacking in your faith.

11 Now may our God and Father Himself, and our Lord Jesus, direct our way to you. 12 And may the Lord cause you to increase and overflow with love for one another and for everyone else, just as our love for you overflows, 13 so that He may establish your hearts in blamelessness and holiness before our God and Father at the coming of our Lord Jesus with all His saints. Amen.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Stay sexually pure, love each other and work with your hands. Then the big one. Some believers had died, and the church was worried they would miss out. Paul says no. The dead in Christ rise first, then we are caught up with them to meet the Lord. Encourage each other with that.

LIVING TO PLEASE GOD

1 Finally, brothers, we ask and encourage you in the Lord Jesus to live in a way that is pleasing to God, just as you have received from us. This is how you already live, so you should do so all the more. 2 For you know the instructions we gave you by the authority of the Lord Jesus.

3 For it is God's will that you should be holy: You must abstain from sexual immorality; 4 each of you must know how to control his own body in holiness and honor, 5 not in lustful passion like the Gentiles who do not know God; 6 and no one should ever violate or exploit his brother in this regard, because the Lord will avenge all such acts, as we have already told you and solemnly warned you. 7 For God has not called us to impurity, but to holiness. 8 Anyone, then, who rejects this command does not reject man but God, the very One who gives you His Holy Spirit.

9 Now about brotherly love, you do not need anyone to write to you, because you yourselves have been taught by God to love one another. 10 And you are indeed showing this love to all the brothers throughout Macedonia. But we urge you, brothers, to excel more and more 11 and to aspire to live quietly, to attend to your own matters, and to work with your own hands, as we instructed you. 12 Then you will behave properly toward outsiders, without being dependent on anyone.

THE RETURN OF THE LORD

13 Brothers, we do not want you to be uninformed about those who sleep in death, so that you will not grieve like the rest, who are without hope. 14 For since we believe that Jesus died and rose again, we also believe that God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep in Him.

1TH 4:4 [NOTE] CONTROL YOUR BODY. The Greek says your own vessel. Most read it as your own body, keep it under control. Some read it as take a wife for yourself in holiness. Either way, God's will is clear: sex belongs in marriage, 4:3, and cheating on a brother hurts real people, 4:6.

1TH 4:11 [NOTABLE] Mind your own business and earn your own way. Some in Thessalonica had quit working, maybe waiting for Jesus to come back. Paul worked night and day himself, 2:9. Later he wrote, if anyone is not willing to work, he shall not eat, 2 Thessalonians 3:10.

END TIMES PROPHECIES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE WORDS · THE LINK IS A SCHOLARS' VIEW

WHEN THE KING COMES

1 THESSALONIANS 4:15 TO 17 · 2:19 · ACTS 28:15



Both sides of a bronze coin of Corinth honoring Nero's arrival in Greece, AD 66 to 67. The ship side reads ADVE AVG, the arrival of the emperor. Bibliothèque nationale de France, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A coin from Corinth, the city where Paul wrote this letter. One side shows the emperor Nero. The other shows a warship and the words ADVE AVG, short for adventus Augusti, the arrival of the emperor.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was made about AD 66 to 67, when Nero toured Greece, about 15 years after Paul wrote 1 Thessalonians.

THE WORD PAROUSIA

Paul's word for the coming of the Lord, 4:15, is parousia. In Paul's world it often meant the official visit of a king or emperor to a city. Latin called it adventus. Cities minted coins and held parties to mark it.

GOING OUT TO MEET HIM

When a king came, the leading citizens went out of the city to meet him on the road, then walked back in with him. The Greek word for that meeting is apantesis. Paul uses it in 4:17, to meet the Lord in the air. Luke uses it when believers from Rome came out to meet Paul, Acts 28:15.

WHAT IT MEANS

Paul took the words people used for Caesar and gave them to Jesus. The real King is coming, and His people will go out to meet Him.

THE DEBATE

Some teachers say this picture means believers meet Jesus in the air and come right back down with Him to earth. Others say the picture does not settle where they go next, John 14:3. See The Big Question pages that follow, p.1918.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS

Paul's words in 4:15 to 17 are the same words used for royal visits in his day.

15 By the word of the Lord, we declare to
you that we who are alive and remain until
the coming of the Lord will by no means
precede those who have fallen asleep. 16
For the Lord Himself will descend from
heaven with a loud command, with the
voice of an archangel, and with the trum-
pet of God, and the dead in Christ will be
the first to rise. 17 After that, we who are
alive and remain will be caught up to-
gether with them in the clouds to meet the
Lord in the air. And so we will always be
with the Lord.

18 Therefore encourage one another with
these words.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE RAPTURE

What the Church Has Believed

1 THESSALONIANS 4:13 TO 18 · 5:1 TO 11

WHAT PAUL SAID

Believers in Thessalonica had died, and the church was afraid they would miss the return of Jesus. Paul says no. The Lord Himself will come down from heaven with a shout and a trumpet. The dead in Christ rise first. Then believers who are still alive will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. And so we will always be with the Lord, 4:16 to 17. Every Christian group agrees on that much. The fight is over WHEN it happens and what happens next.

WHERE THE WORD COMES FROM

Caught up is harpazo in Greek. The Latin

1TH 4:15 [PROPHECY] The Lord Himself will descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trumpet of God. And the dead in Christ will rise first. Then we who are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air → STILL TO COME

1TH 4:15 [FIELD NOTES] See the When the King Comes Field Notes page, p.1918.

1TH 4:17 [NOTE] CAUGHT UP. The word rapture comes from this verse in the Latin Bible, rapiemur. When it happens is one of the biggest debates in the church. See The Big Question pages that follow, p.1918.

Bible says rapiemur, and that gives us the word rapture. The question is how the rapture fits with the tribulation, a time of great trouble, Daniel 9:27, Matthew 24:21 and Revelation 6 to 19, and with the thousand years of Revelation 20, called the millennium.

THE EARLY CHURCH, AD 100 TO 300

Many early leaders expected Jesus to come back and reign on earth for 1,000 years. This is called chiliasm, or historic premillennialism. The Didache, about AD 100, warns that a world deceiver will come and believers must endure to the end. Justin Martyr, about AD 155, believed in the 1,000 years but said some true Christians did not. Irenaeus, about AD 180, and Hippolytus, about AD 200, taught that the church would face the Antichrist. Pre tribulation teachers point to one line in Irenaeus, when the church shall suddenly be caught up from this, Against Heresies 5.29. Most scholars read him as expecting the church to go through the trouble first.

AUGUSTINE CHANGES THE PICTURE

About AD 426, Augustine wrote The City of God. He taught that the 1,000 years is not a future kingdom but the church age right now, with Christ reigning from heaven. This is called amillennialism. It became the main view of the Catholic and Orthodox churches, and later of Martin Luther, John Calvin and most Protestant churches. In this view there is one return of Christ at the end, when believers rise to meet Him.

JOHN NELSON DARBY, 1830S

Darby was an Irish preacher who helped start the Plymouth Brethren. Around 1830 he taught a new system called dispensationalism, which keeps Israel and the church on two separate tracks. In it, Jesus comes FOR His church in a secret rapture before a 7 year tribulation, and later comes WITH His church to rule. Darby spread it at Bible meetings at Powerscourt, Ireland, 1831 to 1833, and on trips to America from 1862 to 1877.

CYRUS SCOFIELD, 1909

Cyrus I. Scofield learned Darby's ideas from the St. Louis pastor James H. Brookes. In 1909 Oxford University Press printed the Scofield Reference Bible, with Scofield's notes right on the page under the Bible text. It was revised in 1917 and sold more than two million copies by the end of World War II. For millions of readers, the notes and the verses blended together. It is still sold today as the Scofield Study Bible.

THE 1900S

Dallas Theological Seminary, founded 1924, trained thousands of pastors in this view. Hal Lindsey's The Late Great Planet Earth, 1970, and the Left Behind novels, 1995 to 2007, sold tens of millions of copies. For many American churches, pre tribulation became the only view they ever heard. Worldwide, it is still a minority view.

When Does It Happen?

1 THESSALONIANS 4:17 · 5:9 · MATTHEW 24:29 TO 31 · REVELATION 3:10

PRE TRIBULATION

Jesus takes His church to heaven BEFORE the 7 years of trouble. Key verses: God has not appointed us to suffer wrath, 5:9; I will keep you from the hour of testing, Revelation 3:10; I will come back and welcome you, John 14:3. Best case: Jesus could come at any moment, so stay ready, and after Revelation 3 the word church does not show up again until 22:16. Held by Darby, Scofield, Dallas Seminary and many Baptist, Bible church and Pentecostal churches.

MID TRIBULATION

The rapture comes in the MIDDLE, after 3 and a half years, when Daniel's 70th week breaks in half, Daniel 9:27. Key verses: Paul's last trumpet, 1 Corinthians 15:52, matched with the seventh trumpet, Revelation 11:15. Best case: believers face the first trials but are taken before the worst. Held by a smaller group, like the scholar Gleason Archer.

PRE WRATH

The rapture comes after the Antichrist's persecution starts but BEFORE God pours out His wrath, somewhere in the second half. Key verses: the sun is darkened and then the angels gather the elect, Matthew 24:29 to 31; the great day of their wrath has come, Revelation

END TIMES PROPHECIES

6:17. Best case: the church suffers from man but never from God. Made popular by Marvin Rosenthal's book in 1990.

POST TRIBULATION

There is ONE return of Jesus, AFTER the tribulation. Believers are caught up to meet Him and come right back with Him, like a city going out to welcome a king, Acts 28:15. Key verses: Immediately after the tribulation, Matthew 24:29 to 31; that day will not come until the man of lawlessness is revealed, 2 Thessalonians 2:3. Best case: it is the simplest reading and closest to the early church. Held by scholars like George Eldon Ladd and Robert Gundry.

AMILLENNIAL

No 7 year countdown and no future 1,000 year kingdom on earth. The millennium is now. Jesus returns once at the end, the dead rise, believers meet Him, and the judgment and new creation follow. Held by Catholic, Orthodox, Lutheran and many Reformed churches, which means most Christians in history.

POSTMILLENNIAL

The gospel will slowly win the world and bring a long golden age, and THEN Jesus returns once. Popular with the Puritans and Jonathan Edwards in the 1700s and still held by some today.

ANY OLDER PRE TRIB VOICES?

Supporters point to a sermon called Pseudo Ephraem, written sometime between AD 300 and 700, that says the saints are taken to the Lord before the tribulation; scholars argue about what it means. Morgan Edwards, a Baptist, wrote in 1788 about a rapture three and a half years before the end. A Scottish teen, Margaret MacDonald, had a vision in 1830; some say Darby borrowed from it, but scholars dispute both what she meant and whether he did.

PRETERISM

Preter means past. Preterists say many of these prophecies already came true when Rome destroyed Jerusalem and the temple in AD 70. Key verse: this generation will not pass away until all these things have happened, Matthew 24:34. PARTIAL preterists say the great tribulation happened then, but the return of Jesus, the resurrection and 4:16 to 17 are still to come; R.C. Sproul and Kenneth Gentry taught this. FULL preterists say everything happened in AD 70, even the return of Jesus and the resurrection. To them every prophecy in the Bible has already come true, so every verse highlighted Blue in this Bible as still to come would already be fulfilled. Partial preterists keep a few Blue verses, like 4:16 to 17, in the future; Catholic, Orthodox and nearly all Protestant churches reject that, because the creeds say He will come again. The first full preterist commentary was by Luis de Alcázar, a Spanish Jesuit, printed in 1614.

WHAT WE ALL AGREE ON

Jesus is coming back. The dead in Christ will rise. We will always be with the Lord. Nobody knows the day, 5:1 to 2. Stay awake and live ready, 5:6. And as Paul says, encourage one another with these words, 4:18, not fight with them.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Nobody knows the date. The Day of the Lord comes like a thief. So stay awake and sober. Respect your leaders. Rejoice always, pray without ceasing, give thanks in everything. Test everything and keep the good. The God of peace will finish what He started.

THE DAY OF THE LORD // ZEPHANIAH 1:7–18; MALACHI 4:1–6; 2 PETER 3:8–13

1 Now about the times and seasons, brothers, we do not need to write to you. 2 For you are fully aware that the Day of the Lord will come like a thief in the night. 3 While people are saying, "Peace and security," destruction will come upon them suddenly, like labor pains on a pregnant woman, and they will not escape.

4 But you, brothers, are not in the darkness so that this day should overtake you like a thief. 5 For you are all sons of the light and sons of the day; we do not be-

1TH 5:1 [PROPHECY] The day of the Lord so comes as a thief in the night. For when they say, 'Peace and safety!' then sudden destruction comes upon them, as labor pains upon a pregnant woman → STILL TO COME

1TH 5:3 [FIELD NOTES] See the Peace and Security Field Notes page, p.1921.

NOTABLE

long to the night or to the darkness. 6 So then, let us not sleep as the others do, but let us remain awake and sober. 7 For those who sleep, sleep at night, and those who get drunk, get drunk at night. 8 But since we belong to the day, let us be sober, putting on the breastplate of faith and love, and the helmet of our hope of salvation.

9 For God has not appointed us to suffer wrath, but to obtain salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ. 10 He died for us so that, whether we are awake or asleep, we may live together with Him. 11 Therefore encourage and build one another up, just as you are already doing.

CHRISTIAN LIVING

12 But we ask you, brothers, to acknowledge those who work diligently among you, who care for you in the Lord and who admonish you. 13 In love, hold them in highest regard because of their work. Live in peace with one another.

14 And we urge you, brothers, to admonish the unruly, encourage the fainthearted, help the weak, and be patient with everyone.

15 Make sure that no one repays evil for evil. Always pursue what is good for one another and for all people.

16 Rejoice at all times. 17 Pray without ceasing. 18 Give thanks in every circumstance, for this is God's will for you in Christ Jesus.

19 Do not extinguish the Spirit. 20 Do not treat prophecies with contempt, 21 but test all things. Hold fast to what is good. 22 Abstain from every form of evil.

FINAL BLESSINGS AND INSTRUCTIONS

23 Now may the God of peace Himself sanctify you completely, and may your entire spirit, soul, and body be kept blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. 24 The One who calls you is faithful, and He will do it.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE COINS · THE LINK IS DEBATED

PEACE AND SECURITY

1 THESSALONIANS 5:3 · JEREMIAH 6:14



Top: silver coin of Claudius, AD 46 to 47, with Pax and the words PACI AVGVSTAE. Photo Coin Archives, CC BY SA 2.5. Bottom: bronze coin of Nero, about AD 66, with Securitas and the words SECVRITAS AVGVSTI. Photo EttuBruta, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Two Roman coins. Top: Claudius, the emperor when Paul wrote, and on the back a winged goddess Pax, peace, with the words To the Emperor's Peace. Bottom: Nero, and on the back the goddess Securitas, safety, sitting on a throne, with the words The Security of the Emperor.

HOW OLD IT IS

The Claudius coin was made in Rome in AD 46 to 47, just a few years before Paul wrote. Coins like it were in people's pockets. The Nero coin is from about AD 66.

■ **1TH 5:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 59:17 p.1134
1TH 5:16 [NOTABLE] People always ask, what is God's will for my life? Here it is in three short lines. Pray without ceasing does not mean nonstop words. It means keep the line open all day. Give thanks IN everything, not FOR everything.
■ **1TH 5:20 [NOTE]** DO NOT DESPISE PROPHECY. Paul expected real prophecy in the church, and he expected it to be tested, 5:21. See the Ephesians pages on prophets today, p.1886.
1TH 5:21 [NOTABLE] God does not want blind faith. Check every teaching, prophecy and preacher against Scripture, keep what is good and throw out the rest. The very next town Paul visited, Berea, did exactly that, Acts 17:11.

■ **1TH 5:23 [NOTE]** SPIRIT, SOUL AND BODY. Some read this as three parts of a person: a spirit that knows God, a soul that thinks and feels, and a body. Others say we are two parts, body and soul, and Paul is just saying all of you, the way Jesus said heart, soul, mind and strength, Mark 12:30. Either way, God wants to make all of you holy.

THE EMPIRE'S SLOGAN
Rome bragged that it had brought peace and safety to the world. People called it the Pax Romana, the Roman peace. Coins, statues and temples all told the same story: trust Caesar, and you are safe.

WHAT PAUL SAID
While people are saying, Peace and security, destruction will come upon them suddenly, 5:3. Many scholars think Paul is poking at Rome's slogan. The peace of Caesar will not save anyone on the Day of the Lord.

THE OTHER VIEW
Other scholars say Paul is echoing the prophets, who blasted false prophets for saying Peace, peace when there is no peace, Jeremiah 6:14 and Ezekiel 13:10. He may mean both.

WHAT IT MEANS FOR YOU
Every age has its own peace and security. Money, government and tech all promise it. Only Jesus delivers from the coming wrath, 1:10.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
No coin mentions Paul. The coins show what people were saying, not which words Paul had in mind.

25 Brothers, pray for us as well.

26 Greet all the brothers with a holy kiss.

27 I charge you before the Lord to have this letter read to all the brothers.

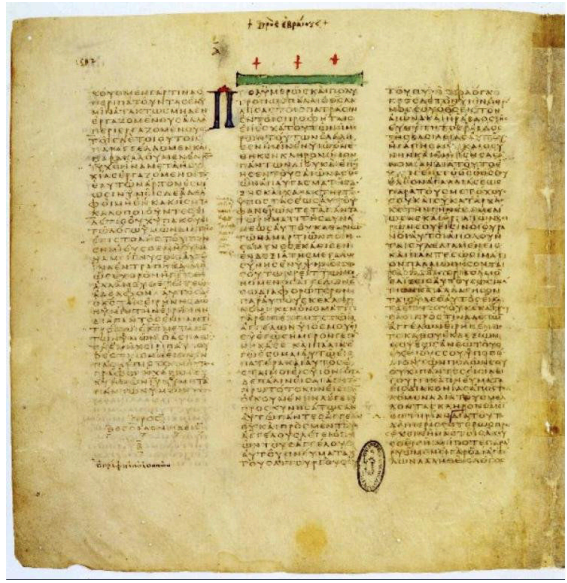
28 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you.

BOOK 53 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

2 THESSALONIANS

Not Yet

AUTHOR	Paul, with Silvanus and Timothy, 1:1. Paul signs it in his own hand, 3:17. Many scholars think a follower wrote it later, because it sounds different about the end than 1 Thessalonians.
WRITTEN FROM	Corinth, where Paul, Silas and Timothy were together, Acts 18:5.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 51, a few months after 1 Thessalonians.
WRITTEN TO	The same young church in Thessalonica, still under persecution, 1:4.
WHY HE WROTE	A fake message said the Day of the Lord had already come, 2:2. Some believers had quit working, 3:11. Paul wrote to calm them down and set them straight.
KEY VERSE	2 Thessalonians 2:3. Let no one deceive you in any way, for it will not come until the rebellion occurs and the man of lawlessness is revealed.



AN EARLY COPY OF 2 THESSALONIANS
A page of Codex Vaticanus, one of the oldest complete Bibles, copied about AD 300 to 350, in the Vatican Library. The left column ends 2 Thessalonians, 3:11 to 18, with Paul's signature line, 3:17. The next columns start Hebrews. Older still is Papyrus 30, from the 200s, which holds a few verses of 2 Thessalonians.

Historical Setting

Paul had written 1 Thessalonians to comfort a church that was afraid their dead would miss the return of Jesus. Then things got worse. The persecution kept going. And someone, maybe a prophet in the church, maybe a fake letter signed with Paul's name, told them the

Day of the Lord was already here. Some were so shaken that they quit their jobs. Paul writes back fast, from Corinth, to say: calm down, not yet, and get back to work. For the first letter, see 1 Thessalonians, p.1911.

What Thessalonica Was Up Against

PERSECUTION. They were still suffering for their faith, 1:4 to 6.
PANIC. They were told the Day of the Lord had already come, 2:2.
A FAKE LETTER. Someone may have used Paul's name to spread it, 2:2 and 3:17.
IDLE BELIEVERS. Some were not working, just being busybodies, 3:11.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Thessalonians is Paul's follow up letter. The church had heard that the end had already come, and some had panicked. Paul says no. Certain things have to happen first, and Jesus will win when He comes. Until then, do not freak out, do not quit your job, and do not stop doing good. It is a short letter for anyone who has been scared by end times headlines.

2 Thessalonians at a Glance

CH 1 **JUSTICE IS COMING**
God will repay those who hurt you and give you relief when Jesus is revealed.

CH 2 **NOT YET**
The rebellion and the man of lawlessness come first. Stand firm.

CH 3 **GET TO WORK**
Pray, keep away from the idle, and do not grow weary in doing good.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 THESSALONIANS 1:7 TO 10 The Lord Jesus revealed from heaven with His mighty angels in blazing fire. Still to come.

2 THESSALONIANS 2:8 The Lord Jesus will slay the lawless one with the breath of His mouth. Echoes Isaiah 11:4. Still to come.

What to Watch for in 2 Thessalonians

END TIMES PROPHECIES (4)	1:7-10, 2:3-12
THE HEART (1)	3:5
NOTABLE (4)	3:3, 3:10, 3:13, 3:16
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

PAUL'S SIGNATURE
Paul usually dictated his letters to a helper, then signed the end himself, 3:17. Romans even names the writer, Tertius, Romans 16:22.

ANTICHRIST?
The word antichrist is never used in this letter. Paul says the man of lawlessness. The word antichrist only shows up in 1 and 2 John.

THE MOST ARGUED OVER VERSES
Who the restrainer is in 2:6 to 7 may be the most debated question in all of Paul's letters. See The Big Question pages, p.1928.

THE WORK RULE
3:10 became a common saying. Captain John Smith used it in Jamestown, Virginia, in 1608 to make lazy colonists work.

Did Anybody Listen?

It seems so. When Paul passed through Macedonia again a few years later, the churches there were so generous that they begged to give to the poor in Jerusalem, even in deep poverty, 2 Corinthians 8:1 to 4. Thessalonica stayed a strong Christian city for centuries, and its church of Saint Demetrius, first built in the 400s, is one of the largest in Greece.

END TIMES PROPHECIES

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

The church is still getting hammered, and Paul is still bragging on them. Hang on. When Jesus is revealed from heaven with blazing fire, He will make things right. The people hurting you will pay, and you will get relief.

GREETINGS TO THE THESSALONIANS // 1 THESSALONIANS 1:1–10

1 Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy,

To the church of the Thessalonians in God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ:

2 Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

3 We are obligated to thank God for you all the time, brothers, as is fitting, because your faith is growing more and more, and your love for one another is increasing. 4 That is why we boast among God's churches about your perseverance and faith in the face of all the persecution and affliction you are enduring.

CHRIST'S COMING

5 All this is clear evidence of God's righteous judgment. And so you will be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you are suffering. 6 After all, it is only right for God to repay with affliction those who afflict you, 7 and to grant relief to you who are oppressed and to us as well. This will take place when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with His mighty angels 8 in blazing fire, inflicting vengeance on those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus. 9 They will suffer the penalty of eternal destruction, separated from the presence of the Lord and the glory of His might, 10 on the day He comes to be glorified in His saints and regarded with wonder by all who have believed, including you who have believed our testimony.

11 To this end, we always pray for you, that our God will count you worthy of His calling, and that He will powerfully fulfill your every good desire and work of faith, 12 so that the name of our Lord Jesus will be glorified in you, and you in Him, according to the grace of our God and of the Lord Jesus Christ.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Somebody sent a fake letter saying the Day of the Lord already came. Paul says not yet. First the rebellion has to happen and the man of lawlessness has to show up, and something is holding him back. When he comes, Jesus will wipe him out with a breath. So stand firm.

THE MAN OF LAWLESSNESS

1 Now concerning the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to Him, we ask you, brothers, 2 not to be easily disconcerted or alarmed by any spirit or message or letter seeming to be from us, alleging that the Day of the Lord has already come. 3 Let no one deceive you in any way, for it will not come until the rebellion occurs and the man of lawlessness—the son of destruction—is revealed. 4 He will oppose and exalt himself above every so-called god or object of worship. So he will seat himself in the temple of God, proclaiming himself to be God.

- **2TH 1:7 [PROPHECY]** The Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with His mighty angels, in flaming fire taking vengeance on those who do not know God, and on those who do not obey the gospel → STILL TO COME
- **2TH 1:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 66:15 p.1142
- **2TH 1:9 [NOTE]** ETERNAL DESTRUCTION. Most churches through history read this as eternal punishment, a conscious separation from God that never ends, Matthew 25:46. Some, like the British pastor John Stott, leaned toward annihilation: the lost are destroyed for good and cease to exist. A few hold that in the end all will be saved, a view tied to Origen. Whatever view, Paul's point is that God will make things right, 1:6 to 7.
- **2TH 2:2 [NOTE]** A FAKE LETTER. Someone was spreading a message seemingly from us, maybe a letter forged in Paul's name. That is why he signs this one himself, 3:17. Check everything, even when it uses a famous name, 1 Thessalonians 5:21.
- **2TH 2:3 [PROPHECY]** That Day will not come unless the falling away comes first, and the man of sin is revealed, the son of perdition, who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God... whom the Lord will consume with the breath of His mouth and destroy with the brightness of His coming → STILL TO COME
- **2TH 2:3 [NOTE]** WHO IS HE? See The Big Question pages on the man of lawlessness and the restrainer, p.1928, and the Caligula and the Temple Field Notes page, p.1927.
- **2TH 2:4 [DEMONIC]** The man of lawlessness exalts himself above every god
- **2TH 2:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 11:36 p.1351

END TIMES PROPHECIES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE HISTORY · THE LINK IS A SCHOLARS' VIEW

CALIGULA AND THE TEMPLE

2 THESSALONIANS 2:3 TO 4 · MARK 13:14 · DANIEL 11:31



Left: marble portrait of the emperor Gaius, called Caligula, AD 37 to 41. Metropolitan Museum of Art, public domain. Right: a bronze sestertius of Caligula, Rome, AD 37 to 38. Bibliothèque nationale de France, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A marble head of the Roman emperor Gaius, nicknamed Caligula, and one of his coins with his name, C CAESAR AVG GERMANICVS.

HOW OLD IT IS

Both are from his own reign, AD 37 to 41, about ten years before Paul wrote this letter.

WHAT HE TRIED TO DO

Caligula wanted to be worshiped as a god. About AD 40 he ordered a giant statue of himself set up inside the temple in Jerusalem. The Jewish writer Philo, who met him, and the historian Josephus both tell the story. The Roman governor Petronius stalled, Jewish crowds begged him to stop, and King Agrippa pleaded with Caligula. Then Caligula was murdered in January AD 41, and the statue never went in.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Paul says the man of lawlessness will seat himself in the temple of God, proclaiming himself to be God, 2:4. The Thessalonians had just lived through a real emperor who tried to do exactly that. Many scholars think it shaped how they heard Paul's words.

HOW PEOPLE READ IT

Some see Caligula as a preview of a future Antichrist who will do it for real. Preterists see the fulfillment in the Romans and Zealots who defiled the temple before it burned in AD 70. Others read temple of God as the church. See The Big Question pages, p.1928.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Paul never names Caligula. The coin and portrait show who Caligula was, not who Paul had in mind.

5 Do you not remember that I told you
these things while I was still with you? 6
And you know what is now restraining
him, so that he may be revealed at the
proper time. 7 For the mystery of lawless-
ness is already at work, but the one who
now restrains it will continue until he is
taken out of the way. 8 And then the law-
less one will be revealed, whom the Lord
Jesus will slay with the breath of His
mouth and annihilate by the majesty of
His arrival.

9 The coming of the lawless one will be
accompanied by the working of Satan,
with every kind of power, sign, and false
wonder, 10 and with every wicked decep-
tion directed against those who are per-
ishing, because they refused the love of
the truth that would have saved them. 11
For this reason God will send them a pow-
erful delusion so that they believe the lie,
12 in order that judgment may come upon
all who have disbelieved the truth and de-
lighted in wickedness.

- **2TH 2:8 [PROPHECY]** The Lord Jesus will destroy the lawless one by the breath of His mouth at His coming → STILL TO COME
- **2TH 2:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 11:4 p.1075
- **2TH 2:11 [PROPHECY]** God will send them strong delusion, that they should believe the lie, that they all may be condemned → STILL TO COME

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE MAN OF LAWLESSNESS

Who Is He?

2 THESSALONIANS 2:1 TO 12 · 1 JOHN 2:18 · DANIEL 11:36

WHAT PAUL SAID

Some told the church that the Day of the Lord had already come. Paul says it will not come until two things happen. First, the rebellion. Second, the man of lawlessness, the son of destruction, is revealed. He sets himself above every god, sits in the temple of God and claims to be God, 2:3 to 4. Satan gives him power and fake miracles, 2:9. Then Jesus destroys him with the breath of His mouth, 2:8. Paul had told them more in person, 2:5, but he did not write it down, so we have to piece it together.

FUTURE ANTICHRIST

Most Christians today read him as one evil world ruler still to come at the end, the same as the beast of Revelation 13 and the king of Daniel 11:36. Many expect a rebuilt temple in Jerusalem. Early leaders like Irenaeus, about AD 180, and Hippolytus, about AD 200, read it this way, and so do most dispensational and premillennial teachers today.

ALREADY HAPPENED, AD 70

Preterists say he came in the first century. Some point to Nero; some to the Zealot leaders who took over the temple and filled it with murder during the war with Rome; some to the Roman general Titus, who stood in the temple as it burned in AD 70. They point out that Paul spoke to his readers about a temple that was standing at the time.

THE PAPACY

The Protestant Reformers taught that the man of lawlessness was the office of the pope, sitting in the temple of God, the church, and claiming God's authority. Martin Luther said so in the Smalcald Articles, 1537, and the Westminster Confession of Faith, 1646, called the pope that man of sin. Many churches later took that line out, like American Presbyterians in 1903. Catholics, of course, reject it.

A SPIRIT IN EVERY AGE

Some read the man of lawlessness as a picture of the spirit of rebellion that shows up again and again, in many tyrants and false teachers. John says many antichrists have already come, 1 John 2:18. Many who hold this still expect a final one.

THE REBELLION, 2:3

The Greek word is apostasia, falling away or rebellion, a great turning from God. A few pre tribulation teachers argue it means a departure, the rapture itself, and note that Tyndale's 1526 New Testament and the Geneva Bible of 1560 said departing. Most scholars say the word means rebellion, and most modern Bibles say so.

What Is Holding It Back?

2 THESSALONIANS 2:5 TO 8

WHAT PAUL SAID

Something is holding back the man of lawlessness until the right time, 2:6. Paul calls it a thing in 2:6 and a person in 2:7, the one who now restrains it, until he is taken out of the way. The readers knew what he meant, 2:6. We do not. Augustine admitted about AD 426 that he had no idea what Paul meant.

THE HOLY SPIRIT, OR THE CHURCH

Only God is strong enough to hold back Satan's man. The Holy Spirit lives in the church, so when the church is taken in the rapture, the restraint is gone. This is the main pre tribulation view. Others agree it is the Spirit but say He is not removed from the earth, only the way He holds back evil changes.

ROMAN LAW AND ORDER

The oldest known answer. Tertullian, about AD 200, and John Chrysostom, about AD 400, said it was the Roman Empire, a thing, and the emperor, a person. That fits Paul switching between it and he. Many today widen it to government and law in general, Romans 13:1 to 4.

THE ANGEL MICHAEL

Michael stands guard over God's people in Daniel 10:21 and 12:1, and Daniel 12:1 ties him to a time of great distress at the end. Some read that verse as Michael

THE HEART NOTABLE

standing aside, and think Paul means him.

THE PREACHING OF THE GOSPEL

The end cannot come until the gospel goes to all nations, Matthew 24:14. Some say the restrainer is that mission, or Paul himself as its leader. Others say it is God Himself, holding things back until His set time.

THE TIMING DEBATE

This passage is a key text for when the rapture happens. Post tribulation readers say 2:1 to 3 puts our being gathered to Him after the man of lawlessness shows up. Pre tribulation readers say the restrainer's removal in 2:7 is the rapture, before he is revealed. See The Big Question pages in 1 Thessalonians, p.1918.

WHAT WE ALL AGREE ON

Evil will not win. God sets the timing. The lawless one is doomed the moment Jesus shows up, 2:8. And Paul's point is practical: do not be shaken, 2:2, and stand firm, 2:15.

STAND FIRM

13 But we should always thank God for
you, brothers who are loved by the Lord,
because God chose you from the beginning to be saved by the sanctification of
the Spirit and by faith in the truth. 14 To this
He called you through our gospel, so that
you may share in the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ. 15 Therefore, brothers, stand
firm and cling to the traditions we taught
you, whether by speech or by letter.

16 Now may our Lord Jesus Christ Himself
and God our Father, who by grace has
loved us and given us eternal comfort and
good hope, 17 encourage your hearts and
strengthen you in every good word and
deed.

■ **2TH 2:15 [NOTE]** THE TRADITIONS. The Greek word paradosis means what is handed down. Catholic and Orthodox Christians read this as Sacred Tradition, teaching passed on by speech beside the written Word. Most Protestants say the apostles' spoken teaching is now preserved in Scripture, and Scripture is the final judge of every tradition. Both agree: hold on to what the apostles taught.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Pray for us, and the Lord will guard you. Now about the people who quit their jobs and are mooching off everybody: no work, no food. Get to work quietly, and do not get tired of doing good. Paul signs off in his own handwriting so nobody can fake it.

REQUEST FOR PRAYER

1 Finally, brothers, pray for us, that the
word of the Lord may spread quickly and
be held in honor, just as it was with you. 2
And pray that we may be delivered from
wicked and evil men; for not everyone
holds to the faith. 3 But the Lord is faithful,
and He will strengthen you and guard you
from the evil one. 4 And we have confidence in the Lord that you are doing and
will continue to do what we command. 5
May the Lord direct your hearts into God's
love and Christ's perseverance.

A WARNING AGAINST IDLENESS

6 Now we command you, brothers, in the
name of our Lord Jesus Christ, to keep
away from any brother who leads an
undisciplined life that is not in keeping
with the tradition you received from us. 7
For you yourselves know how you ought
to imitate us, because we were not undisciplined among you, 8 nor did we eat
anyone's food without paying for it. Instead, in labor and toil, we worked night
and day so that we would not be a burden
to any of you. 9 Not that we lack this right,
but we wanted to offer ourselves as an
example for you to imitate. 10 For even
while we were with you, we gave you this
command: "If anyone is unwilling to work,
he shall not eat."

■ **2TH 3:3 [NOTABLE]** Paul just asked them to pray for him because not everyone has faith, 3:2. Then he turns it around: people are not always faithful, but the Lord is. Your safety does not rest on how strong you are. It rests on Him.

■ **2TH 3:5 [HEART]** May the Lord direct your hearts into God's love.

■ **2TH 3:6 [NOTE]** THE IDLE. Some had quit working, maybe because they thought Jesus was coming any day, maybe because rich believers would feed them. Paul worked night and day to set an example, 3:8 to 9, the tentmaker way, Acts 18:3. Faith in the return of Jesus is never a reason to stop working.

■ **2TH 3:10 [NOTABLE]** This is about the unwilling, not the unable. The church cared for widows and the sick, 1 Timothy 5:3. But a believer who could work and chose not to

NOTABLE

11 For we hear that some of you are leading
undisciplined lives, accomplishing noth-
ing, but being busybodies. 12 We com-
mand and urge such people by our Lord
Jesus Christ to begin working quietly to
earn their own living. 13 But as for you,
brothers, do not grow weary in well-do-
ing.

14 Take note of anyone who does not obey
the instructions we have given in this let-
ter. Do not associate with him, so that he
may be ashamed. 15 Yet do not regard him
as an enemy, but admonish him as a
brother.

SIGNATURE AND FINAL GREETINGS // 1 CORINTHIANS 16:19–24; COLOSSIANS 4:15–18

16 Now may the Lord of peace Himself give
you peace at all times and in every way.
The Lord be with all of you.

17 This greeting is in my own hand—Paul.
This is my mark in every letter; it is the
way I write.

18 The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be
with all of you.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

IN MY OWN HAND

2 THESSALONIANS 3:17 · GALATIANS 6:11 · ROMANS 16:22



Vindolanda tablet 291, a birthday invitation from Claudia Severa to Sulpicia Lepidina, about AD 100. British Museum. Photo Fæ, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS
A thin wooden writing tablet with a birthday party invitation, found at Vindolanda, a Roman fort near Hadrian's Wall in northern England. A lady named Claudia Severa invites her friend Sulpicia Lepidina to her birthday on September 11.

HOW OLD IT IS
About AD 100, some 50 years after Paul wrote. It was dug up in the 1970s and is now in the British Museum.

TWO HANDWRITINGS
Most of the letter is written neatly by a scribe. The last four lines, on the right half, are in a different and shakier hand. Experts think Claudia wrote them herself: she will expect her, her sister, and she says goodbye, my dearest soul. It may be the oldest Latin writing by a woman that we have.

JUST LIKE PAUL
Paul did the same thing. A helper wrote out the letter as Paul spoke. Tertius even says hi in Romans 16:22. Then Paul took the pen and wrote the last lines himself: This greeting is in my own hand, 3:17. See what large letters I am using, Galatians 6:11.

WHY IT MATTERS
A fake letter in Paul's name had already caused trouble, 2:2. Paul's own handwriting at the end was his mark in every letter, so the church could tell the real thing from a forgery.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
This tablet has nothing to do with Paul. It shows how letters worked in his world.

was not to live off everyone else. Paul set the example by working night and day, 3:8.

2TH 3:13 [NOTABLE] Doing good gets old when people take advantage of you, like the idle ones in 3:11. Paul says keep going anyway. Galatians 6:9 says the same: in due time we will reap a harvest if we do not give up.

2TH 3:14 [NOTE] CHURCH DISCIPLINE. Do not associate with him, so he will feel ashamed and turn around. But do not treat him as an enemy. Warn him as a brother, 3:15. The goal is always to win the person back, Matthew 18:15 and Galatians 6:1.

2TH 3:16 [NOTABLE] Peace does not come from your situation. It comes from a Person. Paul prays it over a church facing persecution, confusion about the end and lazy members. At all times and in every way means there is no situation too messy for His peace.

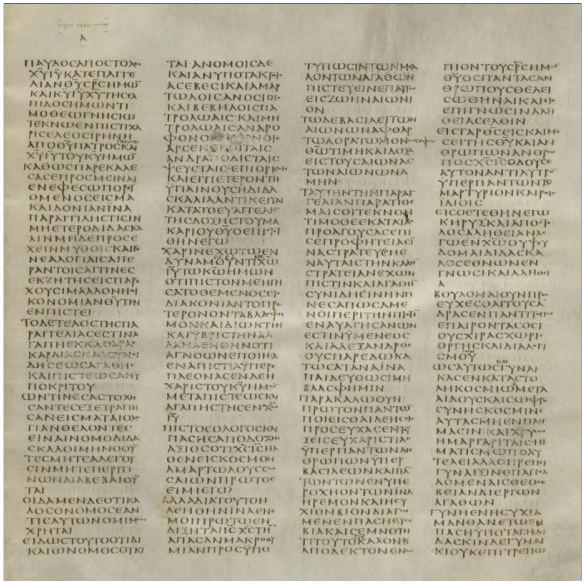
2TH 3:17 [FIELD NOTES] See the In My Own Hand Field Notes page, p.1930.

BOOK 54 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

1 TIMOTHY

How to Run a Church

AUTHOR	Paul, 1:1. Most critical scholars think a follower of Paul wrote this letter and the other two Pastoral Letters, 2 Timothy and Titus, later, about AD 90 to 130, because the words and church offices sound different.
WRITTEN FROM	Probably Macedonia, in northern Greece, after Paul left Ephesus, 1:3.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 62 to 64, after Paul was set free from his first arrest in Rome. Acts ends before this part of the story.
WRITTEN TO	Timothy, Paul's young helper, son of a Jewish mother and a Greek father, Acts 16:1. Paul left him in charge in Ephesus.
WHY HE WROTE	False teachers were stirring up trouble in Ephesus. Paul wrote so Timothy would know how people should act in God's household, 3:15.
KEY VERSE	1 Timothy 3:15. You will know how each one must conduct himself in God's household, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and foundation of the truth.



AN EARLY COPY OF 1 TIMOTHY
The first page of 1 Timothy in Codex Sinaiticus, copied about AD 330 to 360, the oldest complete New Testament. It holds 1:1 to 2:12. 1 Timothy is not in Papyrus 46, the oldest collection of Paul's letters, or in Codex Vaticanus, which breaks off in Hebrews. The oldest scrap is Papyrus 133, in Oxford, published in 2016.

Historical Setting

Paul had spent about three years in Ephesus, Acts 20:31, the big port city famous for its temple of Artemis. Before he left, he warned the elders that savage wolves would come,

even from their own group, Acts 20:29 to 30. It happened. Now Paul is gone, and he has left young Timothy behind to fix it. This letter is Paul's coaching memo: how to pray, who can lead, how to care for widows, how to pay pastors, and how to handle money. It is the first church manual. For the city, see Ephesians and the Ephesus Field Notes in Acts, p.1780.

What Was Going Wrong in Ephesus

FALSE TEACHERS. They loved myths, endless family trees and arguing about the law, 1:4 to 7.
FAKE HOLINESS. Some banned marriage and certain foods, 4:3.
MESSY WORSHIP. Anger and arguing in prayer, 2:8, and showing off wealth, 2:9.
WIDOWS. Who should the church support, and who should family support, 5:3 to 16?
MONEY. Some treated faith as a way to get rich, 6:5.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Timothy is a letter from an old coach to a young pastor. The church in Ephesus had problems, and Paul tells Timothy how to fix them. Teach the truth. Pray for everyone. Pick leaders with good character. Take care of the needy. Do not fall in love with money. And live it out yourself, so no one can look down on you. If you have ever wondered how a church is supposed to work, start here.

1 Timothy at a Glance

CH 1	**WATCH THE TEACHING** Stop the false teachers. Paul, the worst sinner, saved by grace.
CH 2	**HOW TO WORSHIP** Pray for everyone. Men and women in worship.
CH 3	**WHO CAN LEAD** Elders and deacons. The great mystery of godliness.
CH 4	**TRAIN FOR GODLINESS** Fake rules about food and marriage. Do not let anyone look down on your youth.
CH 5	**THE CHURCH FAMILY** Older and younger, widows, and elders.
CH 6	**MONEY AND THE GOOD FIGHT** Contentment, the love of money, and fight the good fight of faith.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 TIMOTHY 1:15 Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners.

1 TIMOTHY 2:5 TO 6 The one Mediator between God and men, who gave Himself as a ransom for all. Job longed for this, Job 9:33 and 33:24.

1 TIMOTHY 3:16 God revealed in the flesh. Isaiah 7:14 and 9:6.

1 TIMOTHY 6:13 TO 15 He made the good confession before Pontius Pilate, and He will appear again in God's own time. Still to come.

What to Watch for in 1 Timothy

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (2)	3:16
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (2)	2:5-6
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (1)	4:1-3
END TIMES PROPHECIES (1)	6:14-15

THE HEART (1)	1:5
NOTABLE (9)	1:15, 2:1-2, 4:7-8, 4:12, 5:8, 6:6-10, 6:12 and 1 more
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

A SAYING OF JESUS CALLED SCRIPTURE
In 5:18 Paul quotes Deuteronomy 25:4 and the words of Jesus in Luke 10:7, and calls them both Scripture.

SLAVE TRADERS
In a world built on slavery, Paul lists slave traders, people who kidnapped and sold human beings, with murderers, 1:10.

AN EARLY SONG?
3:16 has six short lines that may come from a hymn the first Christians sang.

KING OF KINGS
Paul calls God the King of kings and Lord of lords, 6:15. Revelation gives Jesus the same title, Revelation 19:16.

Did It Work?

Timothy stayed with it. Paul wrote him again from prison in 2 Timothy, and Hebrews 13:23 says Timothy was set free from a prison of his own. Church historian Eusebius, about AD 325, says Timothy was the first bishop of Ephesus. About AD 95, Jesus praised the church in Ephesus for testing false apostles, but warned them they had lost their first love, Revelation 2:2 to 4. About AD 110, Ignatius wrote that no false teaching had a home among them.

THE HEART NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul left Timothy in Ephesus to shut down some false teachers who love myths and family trees. Then Paul gets personal: I used to hunt Christians. I was the worst sinner there is. If Jesus can save me, He can save anybody.

PAUL'S GREETING TO TIMOTHY // 2 TIMOTHY 1:1–2

1 Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the
command of God our Savior and of Christ
Jesus our hope,

2 To Timothy, my true child in the faith:
Grace, mercy, and peace from God the
Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

CORRECTING FALSE TEACHERS // TITUS 1:10–16

3 As I urged you on my departure to Mace-
donia, you should stay on at Ephesus to
instruct certain men not to teach false
doctrines 4 or devote themselves to myths
and endless genealogies, which promote
speculation rather than the stewardship of
God's work, which is by faith.

5 The goal of our instruction is the love
that comes from a pure heart, a clear con-
science, and a sincere faith. 6 Some have
strayed from these ways and turned aside
to empty talk. 7 They want to be teachers
of the law, but they do not understand
what they are saying or that which they so
confidently assert.

8 Now we know that the law is good, if one
uses it legitimately. 9 We realize that law is
not enacted for the righteous, but for the
lawless and rebellious, for the ungodly
and sinful, for the unholy and profane, for
killers of father or mother, for murderers,
10 for the sexually immoral, for homosexu-
als, for slave traders and liars and perjur-
ers, and for anyone else who is averse to
sound teaching 11 that agrees with the glo-
rious gospel of the blessed God, with
which I have been entrusted.

GOD'S GRACE TO PAUL

12 I thank Christ Jesus our Lord, who has
strengthened me, that He considered me
faithful and appointed me to service. 13 I
was formerly a blasphemer, a persecutor,
and a violent man; yet because I had
acted in ignorance and unbelief, I was
shown mercy. 14 And the grace of our Lord
overflowed to me, along with the faith and
love that are in Christ Jesus.

15 This is a trustworthy saying, worthy of
full acceptance: Christ Jesus came into
the world to save sinners, of whom I am
the worst. 16 But for this very reason I was
shown mercy, so that in me, the worst of
sinners, Christ Jesus might display His
perfect patience as an example to those
who would believe in Him for eternal life.
17 Now to the King eternal, immortal, and
invisible, the only God, be honor and glory
forever and ever. Amen.

18 Timothy, my child, I entrust you with this
command in keeping with the previous
prophecies about you, so that by them
you may fight the good fight, 19 holding on
to faith and a good conscience, which
some have rejected and thereby ship-
wrecked their faith. 20 Among them are
Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I have
handed over to Satan to be taught not to
blaspheme.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Pray for everybody, even the people running the government. There is one God and one go be-tween, Jesus. Men, pray without fighting. Women, skip the over the top hair and jewelry and dress up in good deeds. Then come the verses about women and authority that churches still argue over.

1TI 1:3 [FIELD NOTES] See the Artemis of the Ephesians Field Notes page, p.1935. For the city of Ephesus, see Acts 19 and Ephesians, p.1780.

1TI 1:5 [HEART] The goal of our teaching is love from a pure heart.

1TI 1:10 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← LEV 18:22; 20:13 p.204

1TI 1:10 [NOTE] THE WORD. Homosexuals is one Greek word, arsenokoitai, also in 1 Corinthians 6:9. It joins two words found side by side in Leviticus 20:13 in the Greek Old Testament, male and bed. Most churches through history read it as men having sex with men. The KJV says them that defile themselves with mankind. Others argue it meant a narrower sin, like men who used boys or slaves, because the word is rare and its exact meaning is debated.

1TI 1:15 [NOTABLE] The KJV says chief of sinners. Paul had hunted down Christians, 1:13. He does not say I was the worst. He says I am. If Jesus could save him, He can save anyone, 1:16.

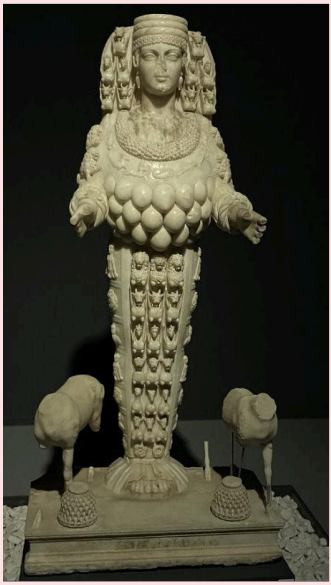
1TI 1:20 [NOTE] HANDED OVER TO SATAN. Put out of the church, back into Satan's world, so they would learn their lesson. The goal was to win them back, not destroy them. See 1 Corinthians 5:5, p.1827. Hymenaeus shows up again in 2 Timothy 2:17.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW NOTABLE

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE STATUE · THE LINK TO 2:12 IS DEBATED

ARTEMIS OF THE EPHESIANS

1 TIMOTHY 1:3 · ACTS 19:23 TO 41 · 1 TIMOTHY 2:12 TO 15



The Beautiful Artemis, marble, AD 125 to 175, Ephesus Museum, Selçuk, Turkey. Photo Furkan Akkurt, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A marble statue of Artemis of the Ephesians, the goddess of the city where Timothy was pastor. She is not the slim Greek hunter. She stands stiff like an idol, with rows of round shapes on her chest, animals carved all over her skirt, and a deer on each side. It was found buried in the town hall of Ephesus in the 1950s and is now in the Ephesus Museum.

HOW OLD IT IS

About AD 125 to 175, some 60 to 110 years after Paul wrote. It copies the famous statue that stood in her temple, which is lost.

THE GODDESS OF EPHESUS

Her temple was one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. When Paul preached there, the silversmiths who sold her shrines started a riot, Acts 19:23 to 41. The city proudly called itself her temple keeper. Women prayed to Artemis for help in childbirth.

WHAT ARE THE BUMPS?

Nobody knows. Some say breasts, some say eggs, and some say bull parts from her sacrifices. Others say gourds or jewelry.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Some scholars think her worship, with its priestesses and its link to childbirth, helps explain why Paul wrote 2:12 to 15 to this city. Others answer that Paul never names her, that most of that evidence is weak or from later times, and that Paul bases his words on Adam and Eve, 2:13. See The Big Question pages, p.1936.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The statue shows who Ephesus worshiped. It cannot tell us what Paul meant. For the temple and the theater, see Acts 19, p.1777.

A CALL TO PRAYER

1 First of all, then, I urge that petitions, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgiving be offered for everyone— 2 for kings and all those in authority—so that we may lead tranquil and quiet lives in all godliness and dignity. 3 This is good and pleasing in the sight of God our Savior, 4 who wants everyone to be saved and to come to the knowledge of the truth.

5 For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus, 6 who gave Himself as a ransom for all—the testimony that was given at just the right time.

7 For this reason I was appointed as a preacher, an apostle, and a faithful and true teacher of the Gentiles. I am telling the truth; I am not lying about anything. 8 Therefore I want the men everywhere to

1TI 2:1 [NOTABLE] Paul wrote this while Nero was emperor. Pray for leaders you like and leaders you do not. The goal is peaceful lives and people coming to know God, 2:4. Jeremiah told the exiles to pray for Babylon too, Jeremiah 29:7.

1TI 2:5 [FULFILLS] Job's longing for a Mediator fulfilled in Christ ← JOB 9:32-33 · MEDIUM p.849

1TI 2:5 [FULFILLS] A mediator says spare him from the pit, I have found a ransom ← JOB 33:23-24 · MEDIUM p.868

pray, lifting up holy hands, without anger or dissension.

INSTRUCTIONS TO WOMEN

9 Likewise, I want the women to adorn themselves with respectable apparel, with modesty, and with self-control, not with braided hair or gold or pearls or expensive clothes, 10 but with good deeds, as is proper for women who profess to worship God.

11 A woman must learn in quietness and full submissiveness. 12 I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man; she is to remain quiet. 13 For Adam was formed first, and then Eve. 14 And it was not Adam who was deceived, but the woman who was deceived and fell into transgression. 15 Women, however, will be saved through childbearing, if they continue in faith, love, and holiness, with self-control.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WOMEN IN THE CHURCH

What Did Paul Mean?

1 TIMOTHY 2:8 TO 15 · 1 CORINTHIANS 14:34 · ROMANS 16:1 TO 7

WHAT PAUL SAID

Let a woman learn in quietness and full submission. I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man. Then he gives a reason: Adam was formed first, and Eve was deceived, 2:11 to 14. And women will be saved through childbearing if they continue in faith, 2:15. Christians who love the Bible have argued over these five verses for 2,000 years. Here is how the argument grew.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Women were all over the early church. Priscilla taught Apollos, Acts 18:26. Philip had four daughters who prophesied, Acts 21:9. Paul called Phoebe a deacon and Junia outstanding among the apostles, Romans 16:1 and 16:7. But as churches got organized, the leaders who taught and led worship were men.

Tertullian, about AD 200, wrote that a woman may not speak, teach or baptize in church. When the Montanists, a movement led partly by two prophetesses, Priscilla and Maximilla, were rejected in the late 100s, that made church leaders even more careful.

DEACONESSES

At the same time, women served as deaconesses for centuries. The governor Pliny wrote about two in about AD 112. The Council of Nicaea, AD 325, mentions them, and the Council of Chalcedon, AD 451, said a woman must be at least 40. They helped baptize women and cared for the sick. Over time the office faded, first in the West. See the Phoebe, Pliny and Sophia Field Notes page, p.1939.

REFORMATION TO REVIVAL

The Reformers taught that every believer is a priest, 1 Peter 2:9, but kept pastors male. Then new voices came. The Quaker Margaret Fell wrote Women's Speaking Justified in 1666. John Wesley let some Methodist women preach. Catherine Booth wrote Female Ministry in 1859 and helped start the Salvation Army. At the Azusa Street Revival in 1906, women preached, and the Assemblies of God has given women preaching papers since it began in 1914. Aimee Semple McPherson opened Angelus Temple in 1923 and started the Foursquare Church.

WHERE CHURCHES STAND TODAY

Only men are priests in the Catholic and Orthodox churches. Pope John Paul II said in 1994 that the church has no authority to ordain women. The Southern Baptist Convention's statement of faith, 2000, says the office of pastor is limited to men. The Church of England ordained its first women priests in 1994 and its first woman bishop in 2015. Most Pentecostal, Methodist and mainline churches ordain women. In 1987 two groups formed on opposite sides: the Council on Biblical Manhood and Womanhood, with its Danvers Statement, and Christians for Biblical Equality.

- **1TI 2:9 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Braided Hair and Gold Field Notes page, p.1938.
- **1TI 2:12 [NOTE]** WOMEN AND AUTHORITY. Christians are split on what these verses mean today. See The Big Question pages, p.1936, which give the history and every view without taking a side.

The Case Each Side Makes

1 TIMOTHY 2:11 TO 15 · GALATIANS 3:28 · GENESIS 2 AND 3

TRADITIONAL, OR COMPLEMENTARIAN

Men and women are equal in worth but have different roles. Pastors and elders should be men. Key verses: 2:12 to 13, 1 Corinthians 11:3 and 14:34, Ephesians 5:22 to 24, and 3:2, the husband of one wife. Best case: Paul does not base his rule on Ephesus or culture. He goes back to creation, before sin, Adam was formed first, 2:13. Jesus picked twelve men as apostles. Held by Catholics and Orthodox, Southern Baptists and many others. Teachers like John Piper and Wayne Grudem.

THE MIDDLE GROUND

Many churches let women preach, teach and lead ministries, but keep the office of elder or senior pastor for men. They read 2:12 as being about that one office of authority, not every time a woman speaks.

EQUAL, OR EGALITARIAN

Every role is open to women and men, based on gifts, not gender. Key verses: Galatians 3:28, Acts 2:17 to 18, Deborah who judged Israel, Judges 4:4, Huldah, 2 Kings 22:14, Priscilla, Phoebe and Junia, Romans 16, and women praying and prophesying, 1 Corinthians 11:5. Best case: Paul praised women leaders by name, so 2:12 must be a fix for a problem, not a rule for all time. The Greek can mean I am not permitting, right now. Held by Pentecostals, Methodists, the Salvation Army and many others. Teachers like Gordon Fee and Philip Payne.

THE EPHESUS PROBLEM

Many egalitarians add this: false teaching was spreading in Ephesus, 1:3, and young widows were going house to house saying things they should not, 5:13. Women had not been allowed to study, so Paul says first let them learn, 2:11. Some point to the goddess Artemis or to later stories that made Eve the hero. Critics say most of that evidence comes from after Paul's time.

THE RARE WORD

Exercise authority is the Greek word authentein, used only here in the whole Bible. Most Bibles say have authority. The KJV says usurp authority. Some, like Catherine and Richard Kroeger in 1992, said it means domineer or take control by force. Others, like Andreas Köstenberger in 1995, said the grammar shows teach and have authority are both normal good things that Paul limits.

SAVED THROUGH CHILDBEARING

Nobody thinks a woman earns heaven by having babies, Ephesians 2:8 to 9. Views: saved through the Childbirth, the birth of Jesus promised to Eve, Genesis 3:15; kept safe through childbirth; or a woman living out her calling in faith. The Greek says the childbearing.

WHAT WE ALL AGREE ON

Men and women are both made in God's image, Genesis 1:27, saved the same way and gifted by the same Spirit. Women sat at Jesus' feet to learn, Luke 10:39, and were the first to see Him risen. The argument is about one role, not about worth. See the Romans 16, 1 Corinthians 14:34 and Ephesians 5:21 notes, p.1818.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Want to lead a church? Here is the job description. Elders and deacons must be faithful in marriage, sober, gentle, not money hungry, and good at running their own homes. Then Paul breaks into what sounds like an early song about Jesus.

QUALIFICATIONS FOR OVERSEERS // TITUS 1:5–9; 1 PETER 5:1–4

1 This is a trustworthy saying: If anyone
aspires to be an overseer, he desires a
noble task. 2 An overseer, then, must be
above reproach, the husband of but one
wife, temperate, self-controlled, re-
spectable, hospitable, able to teach, 3 not
dependent on wine, not violent but gentle,
peaceable, and free of the love of money.
4 An overseer must manage his own
household well and keep his children un-

■ **1TI 3:2 [NOTE]** HUSBAND OF ONE WIFE. In Greek, a one woman man. Most read it as faithful to his wife. Some say it means not a polygamist. Others say never divorced and remarried. Many in the early church said not married a second time, even after his wife died. A few say he must be married. Whatever the view, the point is a man of proven faithfulness, 3:2 to 7.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

BRAIDED HAIR AND GOLD

1 TIMOTHY 2:9 TO 10 · 1 PETER 3:3 TO 4



The Fonseca Bust, a rich Roman woman, about AD 90 to 110. Capitoline Museums, Rome. Photo Mark Landon, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A marble portrait of a rich Roman woman with a giant tower of tight curls. Hairstyles like this were the fashion for wealthy women in the empire.

HOW OLD IT IS

Experts date it about AD 90 to 110, a generation after Paul. Some date it a little later. It is in the Capitoline Museums in Rome.

HOURS IN THE CHAIR

A look like this took hours. Rich women owned slaves whose only job was doing hair, and many added hairpieces and wigs. The poet Juvenal joked about towers of curls stacked like floors on a building. Pliny the Elder said a woman named Lollia Paulina wore pearls and emeralds worth 40 million sesterces to a dinner.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Paul says not with braided hair or gold or pearls or expensive clothes, 2:9. Peter says the same, 1 Peter 3:3 to 4. Paul is not against hair. He is against showing off. In a church of slaves and rich people side by side, a rich woman walking in like this would make the poor feel small. Paul's answer: dress up in good deeds, 2:10.

HOW PEOPLE READ IT

Some churches, like many Holiness churches, ask women not to wear jewelry or makeup. Most churches read it as a call to modesty and humility, not a list of banned items.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This woman has nothing to do with the church in Ephesus. Her bust shows the kind of style Paul had in mind.

der control, with complete dignity. 5 For if someone does not know how to manage his own household, how can he care for the church of God? 6 He must not be a recent convert, or he may become conceited and fall under the same condemnation as the devil. 7 Furthermore, he must have a good reputation with outsiders, so that he will not fall into disgrace and into the snare of the devil.

QUALIFICATIONS FOR DEACONS // ACTS 6:1–7

8 Deacons likewise must be dignified, not double-tongued or given to much wine or greedy for money. 9 They must hold to the mystery of the faith with a clear conscience. 10 Additionally, they must first be tested. Then, if they are above reproach, let them serve as deacons.

11 In the same way, the women must be dignified, not slanderers, but temperate and faithful in all things.

12 A deacon must be the husband of but one wife, a good manager of his children and of his own household. 13 For those who have served well as deacons acquire for themselves a high standing and great

1Ti 3:11 [NOTE] WOMEN DEACONS? Many believe Paul means women who served as deacons, like Phoebe, Romans 16:1. Others read it as the deacons' wives. See the Phoebe, Pliny and Sophia Field Notes page, p.1939.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY

confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus.

THE MYSTERY OF GODLINESS

14 Although I hope to come to you soon, I
am writing you these things 15 in case I am
delayed, so that you will know how each
one must conduct himself in God's household, which is the church of the living
God, the pillar and foundation of the truth.

16 By common confession, the mystery of
godliness is great:

God was manifest in the flesh,
was vindicated by the Spirit,
was seen by angels,
was proclaimed among the nations,
was believed in throughout the world,
was taken up in glory.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Some will fall for fake spiritual rules like no marriage and no certain foods. Paul says everything God made is good when you thank Him for it. Hitting the gym is fine, but training for godliness pays off forever. And Timothy, do not let anyone look down on you because you are young.

A WARNING AGAINST APOSTASY

1 Now the Spirit expressly states that in
later times some will abandon the faith to
follow deceitful spirits and the teachings
of demons, 2 influenced by the hypocrisy
of liars, whose consciences are seared
with a hot iron.

3 They will prohibit marriage and require
abstinence from certain foods that God
has created to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe and know the
truth. 4 For every creation of God is good,
and nothing that is received with thanksgiving should be rejected, 5 because it is
sanctified by the word of God and prayer.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SOURCES · 3:11 IS DEBATED

PHOEBE, PLINY AND SOPHIA

1 TIMOTHY 3:8 TO 13 · ROMANS 16:1 TO 2



Part of the marble plaque honoring Pliny the Younger, early 100s AD, in the wall of the church of Sant'Ambrogio, Milan. Photo Giovanni Dall'Orto, free with credit.

WHAT IT IS

A piece of a marble plaque honoring Pliny the Younger, a Roman governor. His name PLINIUS is on the top line. Matching pieces let scholars rebuild the whole text, which lists his job as governor of Pontus and Bithynia, in today's Turkey.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was carved about AD 113, around the time Pliny died. It is now built into the wall of an old church in Milan, Italy.

TWO WOMEN CALLED DEACONS

As governor, about AD 112, Pliny wrote to the emperor Trajan about the Christians, Letter 10.96. To get the facts, he tortured two slave women who were called ministrae. That Latin word means servants, the same idea as the Greek diakonos, deacon. This was about 50 years after 1 Timothy.

- **1TI 3:16 [FULFILLS]** He would be Immanuel ← IS 7:14 p.1070
- **1TI 3:16 [FULFILLS]** A Son would be given ← IS 9:6 p.1072
- **1TI 3:16 [TEXT]** The KJV says God was manifest in the flesh, and this Bible uses those words. The oldest Greek copies say who, so most modern Bibles say He appeared in the flesh. See the God or Who? Field Notes page, p.1940.
- **1TI 4:1 [PROPHECY]** In latter times some will depart from the faith, giving heed to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons... forbidding to marry, commanding to abstain from foods → HISTORY: By about AD 120 to 180, groups like the Encratites and followers of Marcion banned marriage and meat. Recorded by Irenaeus, Against Heresies 1.24 and 1.28.
- **1TI 4:1 [DEMONIC]** Doctrines of demons in the last times

- **1TI 4:4 [NOTE]** EVERY CREATION OF GOD IS GOOD. The false teachers made up rules: no marriage, no certain foods, 4:3. Paul goes back to Genesis: everything God made was very good, Genesis 1:31. Jesus declared all foods clean, Mark 7:19. Receive what God made with thanks and prayer, 4:5. Freedom still has limits: not everything is helpful, and nothing should control you, 1 Corinthians 6:12.

NOTABLE

PHOEBE AND SOPHIA
Paul calls Phoebe a diakonos of the church at Cenchrea, Romans 16:1, the same word used for deacons in 3:8. A gravestone from the Mount of Olives in Jerusalem, from the late 300s, says: Here lies the servant and bride of Christ, Sophia the deacon, the second Phoebe. We could not find a free photo of it.

HOW PEOPLE READ 3:11
Paul says in the same way, the women must be dignified. Many believe these are women deacons, since Paul switches from the deacons' job to the women and back, and Phoebe was one. Others read it as the deacons' wives, since 3:12 says a deacon must be the husband of one wife.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Pliny does not tell us what the two women did. A deacon was a serving role, not the same as an elder.

A GOOD SERVANT OF JESUS CHRIST

6 By pointing out these things to the brothers, you will be a good servant of Christ
Jesus, nourished by the words of faith
and sound instruction that you have followed.

7 But reject irreverent, silly myths. Instead,
train yourself for godliness. 8 For physical
exercise is of limited value, but godliness
is valuable in every way, holding promise
for the present life and for the one to
come. 9 This is a trustworthy saying, worthy of full acceptance.

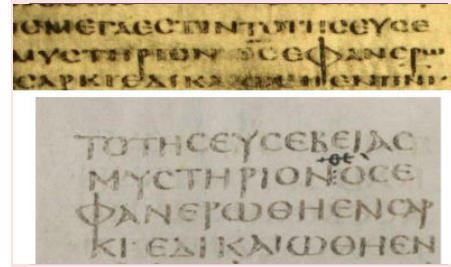
10 To this end we labor and strive, because
we have set our hope on the living God,
who is the Savior of everyone, and especially of those who believe. 11 Command
and teach these things.

1TI 4:7 **[NOTABLE]** Train is the Greek word our word gymnasium comes from. Paul is not against working out. He says it helps for this life, but godliness pays off now and forever. Put in the reps for your soul.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

GOD OR WHO?

1 TIMOTHY 3:16 · JOHN 1:14



Top: 1 Timothy 3:16 in Codex Alexandrinus, British Library. Bottom: 1 Timothy 3:16 in Codex Sinaiticus, with a later correction written above the line. Both public domain.

WHAT IT IS
Close ups of 1 Timothy 3:16 in two of the oldest Bibles in the world. In both, the word after mystery is the one people fight over.

HOW OLD IT IS
Codex Sinaiticus was copied about AD 330 to 360. Codex Alexandrinus was copied about AD 400 to 440. Both are in the British Library in London.

TWO LETTERS APART
Scribes wrote God in a short form, ΘΣ, with a line on top. The word who is ΟΣ. The only difference is a tiny line inside the O and the bar on top. In Sinaiticus the first scribe wrote ΟΣ, who. Later someone wrote small letters above it to make it God. You can see them in the bottom photo.

THE ALEXANDRINUS FIGHT
In Alexandrinus the word looks like God. But in the 1700s the scholar Johann Wettstein said the line inside the O was ink showing through from the other side of the page. Others said it was real. The page is so worn that people still argue.

ISAAC NEWTON JOINS IN
The famous scientist wrote a long letter in 1690 arguing that 1 Timothy 3:16 and 1 John 5:7 had been changed. Newton did not believe in the Trinity. His letter was published in 1754, after he died.

WHICH IS RIGHT?
Most modern Bibles follow the oldest Greek copies and early translations: He who appeared. The KJV and most later

NOTABLE

Greek copies say God. This Bible prints God was manifest in the flesh, the KJV wording.

WHAT IT DOES NOT CHANGE

Either way, the verse is about Jesus, and only someone who already existed can appear in the flesh. The Bible calls Jesus God in other places that no copy disputes, like John 1:1 and 20:28.

12 Let no one despise your youth, but set
an example for the believers in speech, in
conduct, in love, in faith, in purity. 13 Until I
come, devote yourself to the public read-
ing of Scripture, to exhortation, and to
teaching.

14 Do not neglect the gift that is in you,
which was given you through the
prophecy spoken over you at the laying
on of the hands of the elders. 15 Be diligent
in these matters and absorbed in them, so
that your progress will be evident to all. 16
Pay close attention to your life and to your
teaching. Persevere in these things, for by
so doing you will save both yourself and
those who hear you.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

How to treat people in the church family: older men like fathers, younger women like sisters. Take care of widows who are truly alone, but family comes first. Pay good leaders well. And Timothy, drink a little wine for that stomach of yours.

REPROOF AND RESPECT

1 Do not rebuke an older man, but appeal
to him as to a father.

Treat younger men as brothers, 2 older
women as mothers, and younger women
as sisters, with absolute purity.

HONORING TRUE WIDOWS // RUTH 1:1–5

3 Honor the widows who are truly widows.
4 But if a widow has children or grandchil-
dren, they must first learn to show godli-
ness to their own family and repay their
parents, for this is pleasing in the sight of
God.

5 The widow who is truly in need and left
all alone puts her hope in God and contin-
ues night and day in her petitions and
prayers. 6 But she who lives for pleasure is
dead even while she is still alive.

7 Give these instructions to the believers,
so that they will be above reproach. 8 If
anyone does not provide for his own, and
especially his own household, he has de-
nied the faith and is worse than an unbe-
liever.

9 A widow should be enrolled if she is at
least sixty years old, faithful to her hus-
band, 10 and well known for good deeds
such as bringing up children, entertaining
strangers, washing the feet of the saints,
imparting relief to the afflicted, and devot-
ing herself to every good work.

11 But refuse to enroll younger widows. For
when their passions draw them away from
Christ, they will want to marry, 12 and thus
will incur judgment because they are set-
ting aside their first faith. 13 At the same
time they will also learn to be idle, going
from house to house and being not only
idle, but also gossips and busybodies,
discussing things they should not men-
tion.

14 So I advise the younger widows to
marry, have children, and manage their
households, denying the adversary occa-
sion for slander. 15 For some have already
turned aside to follow Satan.

16 If any believing woman has dependent
widows, she must assist them and not al-
low the church to be burdened, so that it
can help the widows who are truly in
need.

1TI 4:12 [NOTABLE] Timothy was young for a leader, maybe in his thirties. Paul does not tell him to argue. He tells him to outlive the critics: speech, conduct, love, faith and purity.

1TI 4:14 [NOTE] THE LAYING ON OF HANDS. The elders laid their hands on Timothy and prayed, and prophecies were spoken over him, 1:18. Paul laid hands on him too, 2 Timothy 1:6. The church did the same when it sent out Paul and Barnabas, Acts 13:3. Many churches still do this to set apart pastors and leaders. Paul warns: do not rush it, 5:22.

1TI 5:8 [NOTABLE] In context, Paul means caring for your own widowed mother or grandmother, 5:4 and 5:16, instead of leaving it to the church. Even unbelievers take care of family. A believer who will not is worse.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE

HONORING ELDERS

17 Elders who lead effectively are worthy
of double honor, especially those who
work hard at preaching and teaching. 18
For the Scripture says, *"Do not muzzle an
ox while it is treading out the grain,"* and,
"The worker is worthy of his wages."

19 *Do not entertain an accusation against an el-
der, except on the testimony of two or three
witnesses.* 20 But those who persist in sin
should be rebuked in front of everyone,
so that the others will stand in fear of sin.

A CHARGE TO TIMOTHY

21 I solemnly charge you before God and
Christ Jesus and the elect angels to main-
tain these principles without bias, and to
do nothing out of partiality.

22 Do not be too quick in the laying on of
hands and thereby share in the sins of
others. Keep yourself pure.

23 Stop drinking only water and use a little
wine instead, because of your stomach
and your frequent ailments.

24 The sins of some men are obvious, go-
ing ahead of them to judgment; but the
sins of others do not surface until later. 25
In the same way, good deeds are obvious,
and even the ones that are inconspicuous
cannot remain hidden.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Slaves, work hard. Teachers who use faith to get rich, beware. Godliness plus contentment is the real jackpot, because the love of money is the root of all kinds of evil. Fight the good fight, tell the rich to be generous, and guard what God gave you.

SERVING WITH HONOR // EPHESIANS 6:5–9; COLOSSIANS 3:22–25

1 All who are under the yoke of slavery
should regard their masters as fully wor-
thy of honor, so that God's name and our
teaching will not be discredited. 2 Those
who have believing masters should not
show disrespect because they are broth-
ers, but should serve them all the more,
since those receiving their good service
are beloved believers. Teach and encour-
age these principles.

REJECT FALSE DOCTRINES

3 If anyone teaches another doctrine and
disagrees with the sound words of our
Lord Jesus Christ and with godly teach-
ing, 4 he is conceited and understands
nothing. Instead, he has an unhealthy in-
terest in controversies and disputes about
words, out of which come envy, strife,
abusive talk, evil suspicions, 5 and con-
stant friction between men of depraved
mind who are devoid of the truth. These
men regard godliness as a means of gain.

GODLINESS WITH CONTENTMENT

6 Of course, godliness with contentment is
great gain. 7 For we brought nothing into
the world, so we cannot carry anything
out of it. 8 But if we have food and cloth-
ing, we will be content with these.

9 Those who want to be rich, however, fall
into temptation and become ensnared by
many foolish and harmful desires that
plunge them into ruin and destruction. 10
For the love of money is the root of all
kinds of evil. By craving it, some have
wandered away from the faith and pierced
themselves with many sorrows.

FIGHT THE GOOD FIGHT

11 But you, O man of God, flee from these
things and pursue righteousness, godli-
ness, faith, love, perseverance, and gen-
tleness. 12 Fight the good fight of the faith.
Take hold of the eternal life to which you

1TI 5:18 [QUOTES] Direct ← DT 25:4 p.315
1TI 5:18 [NOTE] CALLED SCRIPTURE. Paul quotes two things and calls both Scripture: Deuteronomy 25:4, and The worker is worthy of his wages, the words of Jesus in Luke 10:7. It is one of the earliest times a saying of Jesus is called Scripture. Some scholars think Paul knew the saying by word of mouth, not from Luke's book. Peter calls Paul's letters Scripture too, 2 Peter 3:16.
1TI 5:19 [QUOTES] Quotes ← DT 19:15 p.310
1TI 5:23 [NOTE] A LITTLE WINE. Timothy had been drinking only water. Paul tells him to use a little wine for his stomach, since water was often unsafe. The Greek word oinos means real wine. In 1869 Thomas Welch made grape juice for communion, and many churches in the anti alcohol movement taught that Bible wine was juice. Most scholars say it was fermented, Ephesians 5:18. Paul says a little, and leaders must not be given to much wine, 3:3 and 3:8.

1TI 6:6 [NOTABLE] The false teachers saw faith as a way to get rich, 6:5. Paul flips it: knowing God and being content is the real jackpot. You came in with nothing and you leave with nothing, Job 1:21.
1TI 6:9 [NOTABLE] Paul's classic warning, often misquoted as money is the root of all evil. He actually says the LOVE of money is the root of ALL KINDS of evil.

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

were called when you made the good confession before many witnesses.

13 I charge you in the presence of God, who gives life to all things, and of Christ Jesus, who made the good confession in His testimony before Pontius Pilate: 14 Keep this commandment without stain or reproach until the appearance of our Lord Jesus Christ, 15 which the blessed and only Sovereign One—the King of kings and Lord of lords—will bring about in His own time. 16 He alone is immortal and dwells in unapproachable light. No one has ever seen Him, nor can anyone see Him. To Him be honor and eternal dominion! Amen.

A CHARGE TO THE RICH // PROVERBS 23:1–5; JAMES 5:1–6

17 Instruct those who are rich in the present age not to be conceited and not to put their hope in the uncertainty of wealth, but in God, who richly provides all things for us to enjoy. 18 Instruct them to do good, to be rich in good works, and to be generous and ready to share, 19 treasuring up for themselves a firm foundation for the future, so that they may take hold of that which is truly life.

GUARD THE FAITH

20 O Timothy, guard what has been entrusted to you. Avoid irreverent, empty chatter and the opposing arguments of so-called "knowledge," 21 which some have professed and thus swerved away from the faith.

Grace be with you all.

1TI 6:12 [NOTABLE] The word fight is agon, used for athletes in a contest. Faith takes effort. At the end of his life Paul could say, I have fought the good fight, 2 Timothy 4:7.

1TI 6:14 [PROPHECY] Keep this commandment until our Lord Jesus Christ's appearing, which He will manifest in His own time → STILL TO COME

1TI 6:17 [NOTABLE] Paul does not tell the rich to become poor. He tells them not to be proud, to trust God instead of money, and to be rich in good works, generous and ready to share. God richly provides all things for us to enjoy, 6:17.

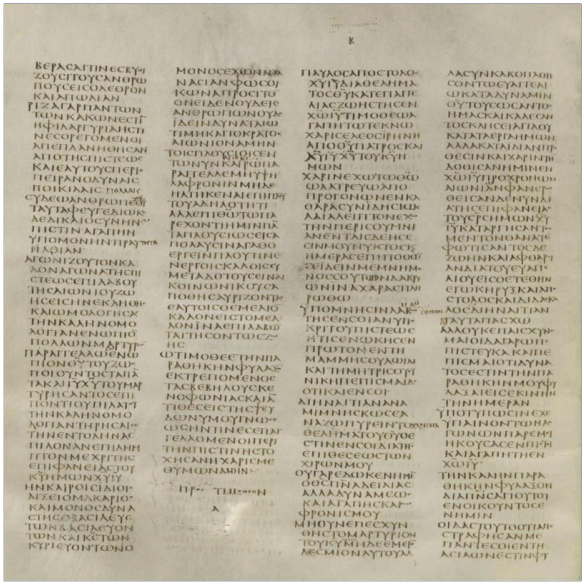
1TI 6:20 [NOTE] SO CALLED KNOWLEDGE. The Greek word is gnosis. In the 100s a movement called Gnosticism taught that secret knowledge saves you and the body is bad. Irenaeus, about AD 180, named his famous book against them after this verse: On the Detection and Overthrow of Knowledge Falsely So Called. Some scholars think Paul was facing an early form of it; others say it was simply the false teaching of his day.

BOOK 55 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

2 TIMOTHY

Paul's Last Words

AUTHOR	Paul, in chains, 1:8 and 2:9. Most critical scholars think a follower wrote it, like 1 Timothy. Some who doubt it still think the personal notes in 4:9 to 21 came from Paul.
WRITTEN FROM	A prison in Rome, 1:17.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 64 to 67, shortly before Paul was put to death under Nero.
WRITTEN TO	Timothy, probably still in Ephesus, 1:18 and 4:19.
WHY HE WROTE	Paul knew his death was near, 4:6. He wanted Timothy to come quickly, to hold on to the gospel, and to pass it on.
KEY VERSE	2 Timothy 4:7. I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race, I have kept the faith.



AN EARLY COPY OF 2 TIMOTHY
A page of Codex Sinaiticus, copied about AD 330 to 360. The second column ends 1 Timothy with its title, TO TIMOTHY 1. The third column starts 2 Timothy: PAUL, AN APOSTLE. It is the oldest copy of this letter that we have.

Historical Setting

This is the last letter Paul ever wrote. His first arrest in Rome was easy: he lived in a rented house and welcomed visitors, Acts 28:30. Not now. Now he is chained like a criminal, 2:9, and even his friend Onesiphorus had to search hard to find him, 1:17. Almost everyone has left. Winter is coming and he needs his coat. He knows he will be killed soon. So he writes

to the young man he calls his beloved child and tells him what matters most. For Timothy's first letter, see 1 Timothy, p.1931.

What Paul Was Facing

PRISON. Chained like a criminal in Rome, 2:9.
LONELINESS. Everyone in Asia deserted him, 1:15. Demas left, 4:10. Only Luke stayed, 4:11.
FALSE TEACHERS. Some said the resurrection had already happened, 2:18.
DEATH. His time had come, 4:6.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Timothy is Paul's goodbye. He is on death row, and he is not bitter. He tells Timothy to be brave, to stick with the Bible, to train others, and to finish strong. Then he asks for a coat and some books, like any old man in a cold cell. If you want to know what a life well lived looks like at the very end, read this.

2 Timothy at a Glance

CH 1 **DO NOT BE ASHAMED**
Fan the gift into flame. God gave us power, love and a sound mind.

CH 2 **BE STRONG**
Soldier, athlete, farmer. Pass it on. Handle the word right.

CH 3 **HARD TIMES AHEAD**
The last days, and why Scripture is enough.

CH 4 **FINISH WELL**
Preach the word. I have fought the good fight. Bring my coat.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 TIMOTHY 1:10 Our Savior Christ Jesus abolished death and brought life and immortality to light.

2 TIMOTHY 2:8 Raised from the dead, descended from David. 2 Samuel 7:12.

2 TIMOTHY 4:1 AND 4:8 He will judge the living and the dead and give the crown of righteousness at His appearing. Still to come.

What to Watch for in 2 Timothy

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (1)	2:8
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (3)	3:1-5, 4:3-4, 4:6
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	4:1, 4:8
THE HEART (1)	2:22
DEMONIC (3)	2:26, 3:8-9, 3:13
NOTABLE (8)	1:7, 1:12, 2:2-6, 2:11-13, 3:12, 4:2, 4:7
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

PAUL'S LAST WORDS
As far as we know, this is the last thing Paul wrote.

GRANDMA'S FAITH
Paul names Timothy's grandmother Lois and mother Eunice, 1:5. Faith passed down three generations.

MAGICIANS WITH NAMES
Exodus never names Pharaoh's magicians. Paul does: Jannes and Jambres, 3:8.

GOD BREATHED
The Greek word in 3:16 shows up here first in all known writing. Paul may have coined it.

What Happened Next?

Paul was put to death in Rome. Clement of Rome wrote about AD 96 that Paul bore witness before the rulers and went to the holy place. Later writers say he was beheaded, as a Roman citizen. Timothy kept going: Hebrews 13:23 says he was set free from prison. Mark, whom Paul once refused to take along, was now useful to him, 4:11, and Christian tradition says Mark wrote the Gospel of Mark.

NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul is in chains in Rome and knows he is about to die. He writes to Timothy like a dad to a son. Remember your grandma's faith. Fan the fire back up. God did not give you a spirit of fear. Almost everyone left me, but Onesiphorus came looking for me.

PAUL'S GREETING TO TIMOTHY // 1 TIMOTHY 1:1–2

1 Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the
will of God, according to the promise of
life in Christ Jesus,

2 To Timothy, my beloved child:

Grace, mercy, and peace from God the
Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

FAITHFULNESS UNDER PERSECUTION //
MATTHEW 10:16–25

3 I thank God, whom I serve with a clear
conscience as did my forefathers, as I
constantly remember you night and day in
my prayers. 4 Recalling your tears, I long
to see you so that I may be filled with joy.

5 I am reminded of your sincere faith,
which first dwelt in your grandmother Lois
and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced is in you as well.

6 For this reason I remind you to fan into
flame the gift of God, which is in you
through the laying on of my hands. 7 For
God has not given us a spirit of fear, but
of power, love, and self-control.

8 So do not be ashamed of the testimony
of our Lord, or of me, His prisoner. Instead, join me in suffering for the gospel
by the power of God. 9 He has saved us
and called us to a holy calling, not because of our works, but by His own purpose and by the grace He granted us in
Christ Jesus before time began. 10 And
now He has revealed this grace through
the appearing of our Savior, Christ Jesus,
who has abolished death and illuminated
the way to life and immortality through the
gospel, 11 to which I was appointed as a
preacher, an apostle, and a teacher.

12 For this reason, even though I suffer as I
do, I am not ashamed; for I know whom I
have believed, and I am convinced that He
is able to guard what I have entrusted to
Him for that day.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

LYSTRA, TIMOTHY'S HOMETOWN

2 TIMOTHY 1:5 · 3:11 · ACTS 14:6 TO 20 · ACTS 16:1 TO 3



Bronze coin of Lystra under Augustus, both sides. Bibliothèque nationale de France, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A bronze coin made by the city of Lystra. One side shows the emperor Augustus. The other shows a priest plowing with two oxen, the ceremony Romans used to mark out a new colony, with the Latin words COLONIA IULIA FELIX GEMINA and the city's name.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was made under Augustus, between about 25 BC and AD 14, after he made Lystra a Roman colony for retired soldiers. That was about 70 years before Paul came.

FINDING THE TOWN

For centuries no one knew where Lystra was. In 1885 the American scholar J. R. S. Sterrett found a stone altar near the village of Hatunsaray in Turkey with the town's Latin name on it. The mound has barely been dug.

TIMOTHY'S HOME

Paul met Timothy here, Acts 16:1. His mother was a Jewish believer and his father was Greek. His grandmother Lois and mother Eunice taught him the Scriptures from a baby, 1:5 and 3:15.

2TI 1:5 [NOTE] LOIS AND EUNICE. Three generations of faith. Timothy's mother was a Jewish believer and his father was Greek, Acts 16:1, so his faith came through the women in his family. See the Lystra Field Notes page, p.1948.

2TI 1:7 [NOTABLE] Timothy seems to have been timid, 1 Corinthians 16:10. Fear is not from God. The KJV says a sound mind: the Greek word means a clear, disciplined mind that does not panic.

2TI 1:12 [NOTABLE] Paul wrote this chained in prison, facing death. He does not say I know what I believe. He says I know whom. Faith rests on a Person who can be trusted.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE

WHAT TIMOTHY SAW
On Paul's first visit, the crowd thought he and Barnabas were the gods Hermes and Zeus. Days later they stoned Paul and left him for dead, Acts 14:11 to 19. Timothy was likely there. Years later Paul reminds him: you saw what happened to me at Lystra, 3:11.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The coin shows Lystra was a real Roman colony, just as its Latin name says. It does not mention Timothy or Paul.

HOLDING TO SOUND TEACHING

13 Hold on to the pattern of sound teaching
you have heard from me, with the faith
and love that are in Christ Jesus. 14 Guard
the treasure entrusted to you, with the
help of the Holy Spirit who dwells in us.

15 You know that everyone in the province
of Asia has deserted me, including
Phygelus and Hermogenes.

16 May the Lord grant mercy to the house-
hold of Onesiphorus, because he has of-
ten refreshed me and was unashamed of
my chains. 17 Indeed, when he arrived in
Rome, he searched diligently until he
found me.

18 May the Lord grant Onesiphorus His
mercy on that day. You know very well
how much he ministered to me in Eph-
esus.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
Be strong like a soldier, play by the rules like an athlete, work hard like a farmer. Pass the truth on to people who will pass it on again. Work hard at handling God's word right, run from youthful lusts, and do not get dragged into dumb arguments.

GRACE AND PERSEVERANCE // HEBREWS 12:1–3

1 You therefore, my child, be strong in the
grace that is in Christ Jesus. 2 And the
things that you have heard me say among
many witnesses, entrust these to faithful
men who will be qualified to teach others
as well.

3 Join me in suffering, like a good soldier
of Christ Jesus. 4 A soldier refrains from
entangling himself in civilian affairs, in or-
der to please the one who enlisted him. 5
Likewise, a competitor does not receive
the crown unless he competes according
to the rules. 6 The hardworking farmer
should be the first to partake of the crops.
7 Consider what I am saying, for the Lord
will give you insight into all things.

8 Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the
dead, descended from David, as pro-
claimed by my gospel, 9 for which I suffer
to the extent of being chained like a crimi-
nal. But the word of God cannot be
chained! 10 For this reason I endure all
things for the sake of the elect, so that
they too may obtain the salvation that is in
Christ Jesus, with eternal glory.

11 This is a trustworthy saying:

If we died with Him,
  we will also live with Him;
12 if we endure,
  we will also reign with Him;
if we deny Him,
  He will also deny us;
13 if we are faithless,
  He remains faithful,
  for He cannot deny Himself.

THE LORD'S APPROVED WORKMAN

14 Remind the believers of these things,
charging them before God to avoid quar-
reling over words, which succeeds only in
leading the listeners to ruin.

15 Be diligent to show yourself approved to
God, a workman who does not need to be
ashamed, rightly dividing the word of
truth.

2TI 2:2 [NOTABLE] Four generations in one verse: Paul, Timothy, faithful men, and others. This is how the faith reached you. Every believer is a link in the chain.

2TI 2:3 [NOTABLE] Three pictures of the Christian life. The soldier stays focused on his commander. The athlete plays by the rules. The hardworking farmer eats first. Each one says the same thing: hard work now, reward later.

2TI 2:8 [FULFILLS] Messiah would be of David's lineage
← 2SA 7:12 p.503

2TI 2:9 [FIELD NOTES] See The Mamertine Prison Field Notes page, p.1950.

2TI 2:11 [NOTABLE] Likely an early Christian saying or song. It has a warning, if we deny Him, He will deny us, Matthew 10:33, and a comfort: even when our faith is weak, God keeps His word.

2TI 2:15 [NOTE] BE DILIGENT. The KJV says Study. In 1611 study could mean work hard, and that is what the Greek word spoudazo means; the KJV itself says do thy diligence for the same word in 4:9. So this is not a command to read only the Bible. It is about working hard to

THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

16 But avoid irreverent, empty chatter,
which will only lead to more ungodliness,
17 and the talk of such men will spread like
gangrene. Among them are Hymenaeus
and Philetus, 18 who have deviated from
the truth. They say that the resurrection
has already occurred, and they undermine
the faith of some.

19 Nevertheless, God's firm foundation
stands, bearing this seal: *"The Lord knows
those who are His,"* and, *"Everyone who calls
on the name of the Lord must turn away from
iniquity."*

20 A large house contains not only vessels
of gold and silver, but also of wood and
clay. Some indeed are for honorable use,
but others are for common use. 21 So if
anyone cleanses himself of what is unfit,
he will be a vessel for honor: sanctified,
useful to the Master, and prepared for
every good work.

22 Flee from youthful passions and pursue
righteousness, faith, love, and peace, to-
gether with those who call on the Lord out
of a pure heart.

handle God's word right. Paul read widely: he quoted Greek writers, Acts 17:28, Titus 1:12 and 1 Corinthians 15:33, and asked for his books, 4:13. Trained under Gamaliel, Acts 22:3, he was probably the most educated of the apostles, Acts 4:13 and 26:24. Many believe he never knew his letters would be called Scripture; others note he knew he wrote with the Lord's authority, 1 Corinthians 14:37.

■ **2TI 2:18 [NOTE]** ALREADY RISEN? Hymenaeus, also in 1 Timothy 1:20, taught that the resurrection had already happened, maybe only in a spiritual way. Paul says no: the dead will rise in real bodies, 1 Corinthians 15:12 to 20.

■ **2TI 2:19 [QUOTES]** Direct ← NUM 16:5 p.248

■ **2TI 2:22 [HEART]** Run after righteousness with those who call on the Lord from a pure heart.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE PRISON · THE PAUL TRADITION IS LATE

THE MAMERTINE PRISON

2 TIMOTHY 1:16 TO 17 · 2:9 · 4:6 TO 8



Stone walls of the Tullianum, the lower cell of the old Roman state prison under the Roman Forum. Photo Rabax63, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

The Tullianum, a cramped underground stone cell at the edge of the Roman Forum. It was the bottom level of Rome's state prison, later called the Mamertine Prison. Prisoners were lowered through a hole in the ceiling.

HOW OLD IT IS

Its walls are centuries older than Paul. Experts date the oldest parts anywhere from about 600 to 100 BC. A repair inscription on the front names the consuls of about AD 22.

WHO DIED HERE

Rome kept famous enemies here before killing them: the African king Jugurtha, 104 BC, men from Catiline's plot, 63 BC, the Gallic chief Vercingetorix, 46 BC, and Simon bar Giora, a Jewish rebel leader, in AD 71 after the fall of Jerusalem. The Roman writer Sallust said it looked dirty, dark and frightening.

THE PAUL AND PETER STORY

A church was built over it, and tradition says Peter and Paul were held here before they died. That story is first found in writings from hundreds of years later. No early source says it.

WHERE WAS PAUL?

We do not know. His first arrest was easy: a rented house, Acts 28:30. This time he is chained like a criminal, 2:9, so hard to find that Onesiphorus had to search for him, 1:17. A cell like this shows the kind of place he may have been.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY DEMONIC NOTABLE

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Nothing found here names Paul. It shows how Rome treated its prisoners.

23 But reject foolish and ignorant speculation, for you know that it breeds quarreling. 24 And a servant of the Lord must not be quarrelsome, but must be kind to everyone, able to teach, and forbearing. 25 He must gently reprove those who oppose him, in the hope that God may grant them repentance leading to a knowledge of the truth. 26 Then they will come to their senses and escape the snare of the devil, who has taken them captive to his will.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS
The last days will be ugly. People will love themselves, money and pleasure more than God, and still look religious. But Timothy, you know how I lived. Stick with what you learned from Scripture, because all Scripture is God breathed.

EVIL IN THE LAST DAYS

1 But understand this: In the last days terrible times will come. 2 For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, arrogant, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, 3 unloving, unforgiving, slanderous, without self-control, brutal, without love of good, 4 traitorous, reckless, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God, 5 having a form of godliness but denying its power. Turn away from such as these!

6 They are the kind who worm their way into households and captivate vulnerable women who are weighed down with sins and led astray by various passions, 7 who are always learning but never able to come to a knowledge of the truth.

8 Just as Jannes and Jambres opposed Moses, so also these men oppose the truth. They are depraved in mind and disqualified from the faith. 9 But they will not advance much further. For just like Jannes and Jambres, their folly will be plain to everyone.

ALL SCRIPTURE IS GOD-BREATHED // HEBREWS 4:12–16

10 You, however, have observed my teaching, my conduct, my purpose, my faith, my patience, my love, my perseverance, 11 my persecutions, and the sufferings that came upon me in Antioch, Iconium, and Lystra. What persecutions I endured! Yet the Lord rescued me from all of them. 12 Indeed, all who desire to live godly lives in Christ Jesus will be persecuted, 13 while evil men and imposters go from bad to worse, deceiving and being deceived.

14 But as for you, continue in the things you have learned and firmly believed, since you know from whom you have learned them. 15 From infancy you have known the Holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. 16 All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for instruction, for conviction, for correction, and for training in righteousness, 17 so that the man of God may be complete, fully equipped for every good work.

- **2TI 2:26 [DEMONIC]** Held captive by the devil to do his will
- **2TI 3:1 [PROPHECY]** In the last days perilous times will come. Men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boasters, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, unthankful, unholy, unloving, unforgiving, slanderers, without self-control, brutal, despisers of good, traitors, headstrong, haughty, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God → HISTORY: This describes a pattern, not one event. Christians in every age, including our own, have seen these traits grow in the world and even in the church. · MEDIUM
- **2TI 3:8 [DEMONIC]** Jannes and Jambres, Pharaoh's magicians, opposed Moses
- **2TI 3:8 [NOTE]** JANNES AND JAMBRES. Exodus 7:11 never names Pharaoh's magicians. Their names come from Jewish tradition. The Dead Sea Scrolls' Damascus Document mentions Yohanah and his brother, and an Aramaic translation of Exodus names Jannes and Jambres. Even the Roman writer Pliny the Elder lists Jannes as a famous magician.
- **2TI 3:12 [NOTABLE]** Not maybe, will. Jesus said the same, John 15:20. Paul had lived it at Antioch, Iconium and Lystra, 3:11. Opposition is not a sign you are doing it wrong.
- **2TI 3:13 [DEMONIC]** Evil men and impostors, goetes, go from bad to worse
- **2TI 3:16 [NOTE]** GOD BREATHED. See The Big Question page, How Is the Bible Inspired?, p.1952

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HOW IS THE BIBLE INSPIRED?

God Breathed

2 TIMOTHY 3:14 TO 17 · 2 PETER 1:20 TO 21 · 2 PETER 3:16

WHAT PAUL SAID

All Scripture is God breathed, 3:16. The Greek word is theopneustos, God plus breath, and it is the first time anyone is known to use it. The KJV says given by inspiration of God. Paul says Scripture is useful to teach, to rebuke, to correct and to train, so a believer is ready for every good work, 3:17.

WHAT SCRIPTURE MEANT TO PAUL

He meant the holy writings Timothy had known from a baby, 3:15, our Old Testament. But the first Christians were already calling some New Testament writings Scripture: Paul quotes Jesus' words in Luke 10:7 as Scripture, 1 Timothy 5:18, and Peter puts Paul's letters with the other Scriptures, 2 Peter 3:16. Many believe Paul never pictured his letters gathered into a Bible. Others point out that he knew he wrote with the Lord's authority, 1 Corinthians 14:37.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Clement of Rome, about AD 96, called the Scriptures true and given through the Holy Spirit. Augustine, about AD 405, wrote that if a Bible verse seemed wrong to him, he would assume the copy was bad, the translator made a mistake, or he did not understand it.

WORD FOR WORD DICTATION

God told the writers exactly what to write, like a boss speaking to a secretary. Jeremiah 36:4 and Revelation 2 and 3 look like this. Few hold it for the whole Bible today, because each writer's own style shows, and Luke says he did research, Luke 1:1 to 3.

INERRANCY

God guided the human writers, using their own personalities, so that every word is what He wanted and the Bible is without error in everything it teaches, in the original copies. Key verses: 2 Peter 1:21, Matthew 5:18, John 10:35. Spelled out in the Chicago Statement on Biblical Inerrancy, 1978. Held by many evangelicals; the Southern Baptist confession says truth without any mixture of error.

INFALLIBLE FOR FAITH AND LIFE

The Bible never fails in what it teaches about God, salvation and how to live, but small details of history or science may reflect the writers' times. Harold Lindsell's 1976 book The Battle for the Bible made this debate famous among evangelicals.

CATHOLIC AND ORTHODOX

God is the author of Scripture and it teaches without error the truth God wanted written for our salvation, as the Catholic Church said at Vatican II in 1965. It is read together with the church's Tradition.

OTHER VIEWS

Karl Barth taught that the Bible is a human witness to Jesus, the Word of God, and becomes God's Word when God speaks through it. Many liberal scholars see the Bible as inspired the way great writing is inspired, a human record of people's experience of God.

WHAT WE ALL AGREE ON

God speaks through the Bible. It points to Jesus, John 5:39. And its goal is not to win arguments but to make us complete and ready for every good work, 3:17.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Preach the word whether people like it or not. Paul is ready to die: I fought the good fight, I finished the race, I kept the faith. Then it gets personal. Come quickly before winter, bring Mark, and do not forget my coat and my books.

PREACH THE WORD

[1] I charge you in the presence of God and of Christ Jesus, who will judge the living and the dead, and in view of His appearing and His kingdom: [2] Preach the word; be prepared in season and out of season; reprove, rebuke, and encourage with every form of patient instruction.

2Ti 4:1 [PROPHECY] The Lord Jesus Christ, who will judge the living and the dead at His appearing and His kingdom → STILL TO COME

2Ti 4:2 [NOTABLE] Preach when it is popular and when it is not, when it is convenient and when it is not. The next

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY · END TIMES PROPHECIES · NOTABLE

3 For the time will come when men will not
tolerate sound doctrine, but with itching
ears they will gather around themselves
teachers to suit their own desires. 4 So
they will turn their ears away from the
truth and turn aside to myths.

5 But you, be sober in all things, endure
hardship, do the work of an evangelist,
fulfill your ministry. 6 For I am already be-
ing poured out like a drink offering, and
the time of my departure is at hand. 7 I
have fought the good fight, I have finished
the race, I have kept the faith. 8 From now
on there is laid up for me the crown of
righteousness, which the Lord, the right-
eous Judge, will award to me on that
day—and not only to me, but to all who
crave His appearing.

PERSONAL CONCERNS

9 Make every effort to come to me quickly,
10 because Demas, in his love of this
world, has deserted me and gone to
Thessalonica. Crescens has gone to Gala-
tia, and Titus to Dalmatia. 11 Only Luke is
with me. Get Mark and bring him with you,
because he is useful to me in the ministry.
12 Tychicus, however, I have sent to Eph-
esus. 13 When you come, bring the cloak
that I left with Carpus at Troas, and my
scrolls, especially the parchments.

14 Alexander the coppersmith did great
harm to me. The Lord will repay him ac-
cording to his deeds. 15 You too should be-
ware of him, for he has vigorously op-
posed our message.

THE LORD REMAINS FAITHFUL

16 At my first defense, no one stood with
me, but everyone deserted me. May it not
be charged against them. 17 But the Lord
stood by me and strengthened me, so that
through me the message would be fully
proclaimed, and all the Gentiles would
hear it. So I was delivered from the mouth
of the lion. 18 And the Lord will rescue me
from every evil action and bring me safely
into His heavenly kingdom. To Him be the
glory forever and ever. Amen.

verses explain why: people will want teachers who tell them what their itching ears want to hear, 4:3.

- **2TI 4:3 [PROPHECY]** The time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine, but heap up teachers according to their own desires → HISTORY: An early example is Marcion, who cut the Bible down to fit his own ideas and was put out of the church in Rome about AD 144. Recorded by Tertullian, Against Marcion. · MEDIUM
- **2TI 4:6 [PROPHECY]** The time of Paul's departure, his death, was at hand → HISTORY: Paul was beheaded in Rome under Emperor Nero, about AD 64 to 68. Recorded by Tertullian and by Eusebius, Church History 2.25, and his death is noted in 1 Clement 5. · MEDIUM
- **2TI 4:6 [NOTE]** POURED OUT. A drink offering was wine poured out on the altar, Numbers 28:7. Paul sees his death as his last offering, Philippians 2:17. Departure is a word for a ship untying to sail. Later writers say he was beheaded under Nero. See The Tomb of Paul Field Notes page, p.1953, and compare 4:7 with 1 Timothy 6:12.
- **2TI 4:7 [NOTABLE]** Paul's own epitaph, written as he waited to die. Years before he told Timothy to fight the good fight, 1 Timothy 6:12. Now he can say he did it. The goal is not a fast start but a faithful finish.
- **2TI 4:8 [PROPHECY]** There is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord will give me on that Day, and to all who have loved His appearing → STILL TO COME
- **2TI 4:10 [NOTE]** DEMAS. Once Paul's coworker, Colossians 4:14, he loved this world and left. For Galatia, Codex Sinaiticus and some old copies say Gaul, today's France.
- **2TI 4:11 [NOTE]** ONLY LUKE. Luke the doctor, Colossians 4:14, stayed to the end. And Mark, the young man Paul once refused to take along, Acts 15:37 to 39, is now useful. See the Colossians 4:10 note, p.1909.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM · AN ANCIENT TRADITION, NOT PROVEN

THE TOMB OF PAUL

2 TIMOTHY 4:6 TO 8 · 4:17 TO 18



Under the main altar of the Basilica of Saint Paul Outside the Walls, Rome: remains uncovered in the dig under glass, and the grille over the tomb. Photo Fczarnowski, CC BY SA 3.0.

- **2TI 4:13 [FIELD NOTES]** See the Scrolls and Parchments Field Notes page, p.1954.
- **2TI 4:14 [NOTE]** ALEXANDER THE COPPERSMITH. Maybe the Alexander of 1 Timothy 1:20 or Acts 19:33, but the name was common. The Lord will repay him echoes Psalm 62:12.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE OBJECTS · PAUL'S BOOKS ARE UNKNOWN

SCROLLS AND PARCHMENTS

2 TIMOTHY 4:9 TO 13



Wall painting from Pompeii, about AD 55 to 79. National Archaeological Museum, Naples. Photo Jebulon, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A painted portrait of a married couple from a house in Pompeii. She holds a stylus to her lips and a little notebook of wax tablets. He holds a papyrus scroll.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was painted in the last years before the volcano buried Pompeii in AD 79, probably under Nero, the same years Paul wrote this letter.

SCROLLS AND PARCHMENTS

Paul asks for his scrolls, especially the parchments, 4:13. Scrolls were usually papyrus rolls like the one in his hand. The word parchments is a Latin word in Paul's Greek, membranas, notebooks of animal skin pages. The poet Martial, about AD 85, sold his poems in small parchment books you could hold in one hand.

WHAT WERE THEY?

Nobody knows. Maybe Old Testament scrolls, notes, copies of his own letters, or his papers proving he was a Roman citizen. Paul wanted his books even on death row.

THE CHRISTIAN BOOK

Most books in Paul's world were scrolls. But the first Christians loved the page book, the codex. Almost every early Christian copy of the Bible we have is a codex, like Codex Sinaiticus on the title page.

THE COAT

The cloak was a heavy wool travel cloak. Winter was coming, 4:21, and stone cells are cold.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This couple has nothing to do with Paul. The painting shows what scrolls and notebooks looked like in his day.

WHAT IT IS

The place under the main altar of the Basilica of Saint Paul Outside the Walls in Rome where a large marble coffin, a sarcophagus, was found. A marble slab above it reads PAULO APOSTOLO MART, to Paul, apostle, martyr.

HOW OLD IT IS

Emperor Constantine built the first church here in the 300s, and it was made much bigger about AD 390. The slab is from about that time. The coffin is at the level of that old church.

THE OLD TRADITION

About AD 200, a Roman church leader named Gaius said he could show visitors the trophies, the monuments, of the apostles: Peter's on the Vatican hill and Paul's on the road to Ostia. Writers like Tertullian, about AD 200, say Paul was beheaded.

THE DIG

From 2002 to 2006, Vatican archaeologist Giorgio Filippi dug under the altar and found the sarcophagus. A small opening now lets visitors see one side of it.

WHAT WAS INSIDE

On June 28, 2009, Pope Benedict XVI announced that a probe slipped into a

tiny hole found purple linen with gold, blue cloth, red incense, and tiny pieces of bone. Carbon dating put the bones in the first or second century.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The bones fit Paul's time, but nothing can prove whose they are. This is a very old and strong tradition, not proof.

FINAL GREETINGS // EPHESIANS 6:21–24; PHILIPPIANS 4:21–23

19 Greet Prisca and Aquila, as well as the household of Onesiphorus.

20 Erastus has remained at Corinth, and Trophimus I left sick in Miletus.

21 Make every effort to come to me before winter.

Eubulus sends you greetings, as do Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers.

22 The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you all.

2TI 4:21 [NOTE] LINUS AND CLAUDIA. Irenaeus, about AD 180, says Linus, named here, led the church in Rome after Peter and Paul. A legend makes Claudia a British princess, from a poem by Martial about a British Claudia married to a Pudens; most scholars doubt it.

BOOK 56 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

TITUS

Set It in Order

AUTHOR	Paul, 1:1. Most critical scholars think a follower wrote the three Pastoral Letters about AD 90 to 130. See the 1 Timothy facts, p.1931.
WRITTEN FROM	Probably Macedonia or Greece, on the way to Nicopolis, 3:12.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 62 to 65, between Paul's two Roman arrests.
WRITTEN TO	Titus, a Greek believer Paul left on the island of Crete, 1:5.
WHY HE WROTE	To help Titus finish setting up the churches, choose good leaders, and stop false teachers.
KEY VERSE	Titus 3:5. He saved us, not by the righteous deeds we had done, but according to His mercy.



AN EARLY COPY OF TITUS
Papyrus 32, front and back, copied about AD 200. One side has Titus 1:11 to 15, right where Paul quotes the Cretan poet. The other side has 2:3 to 8. It is about 4 inches tall and is kept in the John Rylands Library in Manchester, England. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Acts never mentions Titus by name, but Paul's letters do. He was a Greek who was never circumcised, Galatians 2:3, and Paul sent him to fix problems in Corinth, 2 Corinthians 7 and 8. Most think that after Paul's first arrest in Rome, the two of them went to Crete, a big island south of Greece. Paul moved on and left Titus to finish the work. Crete had a bad name. Even Greeks used Cretan as a word for liar. Into that place Paul sends a short letter about good leaders, good lives and God's kindness.

What Was Going Wrong

NO LEADERS. The new churches had no elders yet, 1:5.
FALSE TEACHERS. Talkers who taught for money and upset whole families, 1:10 to 11.
MYTHS AND FIGHTS. Jewish myths, family lines and arguments about the law, 1:14 and 3:9.
BAD NAME. Cretans were known as liars, 1:12, so their lives had to back up the gospel, 2:5 to 10.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Titus is a short handbook for a young church on a tough island. Paul does not give Titus a fancy program. He gives him two things: leaders whose lives match their words, and a gospel that changes how people live. In the middle of it are two of the clearest verses in the Bible about who Jesus is and how we are saved.

Titus at a Glance

CH 1 **LEADERS FOR CRETE**
Choose elders with good lives. Stop the false teachers.

CH 2 **SOUND DOCTRINE, GOOD LIVES**
Every age and station lives the gospel. Grace teaches us.

CH 3 **SAVED TO DO GOOD**
Not by works but by mercy. Now go do good works.

Where Jesus Shows Up

TITUS 2:13 Our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. One of the clearest verses calling Jesus God. Isaiah 9:6.

TITUS 2:14 He gave Himself for us to redeem us and make us His own people.

TITUS 3:4 TO 6 God's kindness appeared, and through Jesus He poured out the Spirit. Joel 2:28.

What to Watch for in Titus

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (4)	2:11, 2:13, 3:5
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	3:6
ARCHAEOLOGY (4)	1:5, 1:12, 2:9, 3:12
NOTABLE (6)	1:16, 2:7-8, 2:12, 3:1-2, 3:4, 3:7, 3:14
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

A POET IN THE BIBLE
Paul quotes a Cretan poet from about 600 BC, 1:12.

ONE OF THE OLDEST SCRAPS
Papyrus 32, about AD 200, is one of the oldest pieces of the New Testament.

SAME LEADERS, TWO NAMES
Paul calls the same leaders elders in 1:5 and overseers in 1:7.

LUTHER'S FAVORITE
Martin Luther's Small Catechism, 1529, quotes Titus 3:5 to 8 to explain baptism.

What Happened Next?

Titus later went to Dalmatia, on the coast north of Greece, 2 Timothy 4:10. Church historian Eusebius, about AD 325, says Titus led the churches of Crete, and tradition says he lived there to an old age. A large church was built for him at Gortyn in the 500s, and its ruins still stand.

ARCHAEOLOGY

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul left Titus on Crete with a to do list: finish the job and pick good leaders in every town. Not bullies, not drunks, not money grabbers. Why so picky? Because some teachers there are talking big and teaching junk for cash. Even a Cretan poet said Cretans are liars.

PAUL'S GREETING TO TITUS // 2 CORINTHIANS 8:16–24

1 Paul, a servant of God and an apostle of
Jesus Christ for the faith of God's elect
and their knowledge of the truth that
2 leads to godliness, in the hope of eternal
life, which God, who cannot lie, promised
3 before time began. In His own time He
has made His word evident in the proclamation entrusted to me by the command
of God our Savior.

4 To Titus, my true child in our common
faith:

Grace and peace from God the Father and
Christ Jesus our Savior.

APPOINTING ELDERS ON CRETE // 1 TIMOTHY 3:1–7; 1 PETER 5:1–4

5 The reason I left you in Crete was that
you would set in order what was unfinished and appoint elders in every town, as
I directed you. 6 An elder must be blameless, the husband of but one wife, having
children who are believers and who are
not open to accusation of indiscretion or
insubordination.

7 As God's steward, an overseer must be
above reproach—not self-willed, not
quick-tempered, not given to drunkenness, not violent, not greedy for money. 8
Instead, he must be hospitable, a lover of
good, self-controlled, upright, holy, and
disciplined. 9 He must hold firmly to the
faithful word as it was taught, so that he
can encourage others by sound teaching
and refute those who contradict it.

TIT 1:5 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Knossos, the great palace city of Bronze Age Crete, with clay tablets in Linear B, the oldest written Greek → FIELD NOTES p.1960

TIT 1:6 [NOTE] ELDERS AND OVERSEERS. Paul calls the same leaders elders in 1:5 and overseers in 1:7. Jerome noticed this in the late 300s. For husband of but one wife, see the 1 Timothy 3:2 note, p.1937.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · FAR OLDER THAN PAUL

KNOSSOS AND THE CRETANS

TITUS 1:5 · 1:12 · ACTS 2:11 · ACTS 27:7 TO 13 · AMOS 9:7



Clay tablet KN Fp 13 from Knossos, written in Linear B. Photo vintagedept, CC BY 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A clay tablet from the palace of Knossos on Crete, written in a script called Linear B. It is a list of olive oil given to gods, and even to a priestess of the winds.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 1450 to 1375 BC, nearly 1,500 years before Paul. The first palace at Knossos was built about 1900 BC. Tablets like this were only dried clay. Fires that burned the palace baked them hard, and that is why they lasted.

THE OLDEST GREEK

The British archaeologist Arthur Evans dug the palace starting in 1900 and found thousands of tablets. Nobody could read them. In 1952 a young English architect named Michael Ventris cracked the code: it was an early form of Greek, centuries older than Homer.

A REBUILT PALACE

Evans rebuilt parts of the palace in concrete and painted copies of its wall art. Visitors today see his best guesses mixed with the real ruins, so not everything there is ancient.

CRETE IN THE BIBLE

Amos 9:7 says the Philistines came from Caphtor, which most think was Crete. David's bodyguards, the Cherethites, 2 Samuel 8:18, may have been Cretans. Cretans heard the gospel at Pentecost, Acts 2:11, and Paul's prison ship sailed along Crete, Acts 27:7 to 13.

THE KING AND THE MAZE

Greek myths said King Minos ruled here, and a monster, half man and half

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

bull, lived in a maze called the labyrinth. Evans named the whole culture Minoan after Minos. The myths are not history, but the real palace was a maze of hundreds of rooms.

IN PAUL'S DAY

Rome took Crete about 67 BC, and Knossos became a Roman colony. Epimenides, the poet Paul quotes in 1:12, came from Knossos. The Roman capital, though, was Gortyn; see The Gortyn Law Code Field Notes page, p.1963.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This tablet is far older than Paul and says nothing about Titus. It shows how old and proud the island was where Titus had to work.

CORRECTING FALSE TEACHERS // 1 TIMOTHY 1:3–11

10 For many are rebellious and full of
empty talk and deception, especially
those of the circumcision, 11 who must be
silenced. For the sake of dishonorable
gain, they undermine entire households
and teach things they should not. 12 As
one of their own prophets has said, "Cre-
tans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy
gluttons."

13 This testimony is true. Therefore rebuke
them sternly, so that they will be sound in
the faith 14 and will pay no attention to
Jewish myths or to the commands of men
who have rejected the truth.

15 To the pure, all things are pure; but to
the defiled and unbelieving, nothing is
pure. Indeed, both their minds and their
consciences are defiled. 16 They profess to
know God, but by their actions they deny
Him. They are detestable, disobedient,
and unfit for any good deed.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE SHIELD · THE STORIES ARE MYTHS

THE CAVE OF ZEUS

TITUS 1:2 · 1:12 TO 13 · ACTS 17:28



Bronze shield from the Idaean Cave, Crete. Heraklion Archaeological Museum. Photo Syrio, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A bronze shield given as an offering in the Idaean Cave on Mount Ida, the highest mountain on Crete. In the middle a god, most likely Zeus, lifts a lion over his head and stands on a bull. Two winged helpers beat drums.

HOW OLD IT IS

Late 700s or 600s BC. A shepherd found the first pieces in 1884, and the Italian archaeologist Federico Halbherr dug the cave in 1885.

THE MYTH

Greeks said Zeus was born on Crete and hidden in a cave so his father would not eat him. Young warriors called Curetes banged shields and drums so no one would hear the baby cry. Shields like this one remembered that story.

THE TOMB OF ZEUS

Cretans also showed visitors a tomb of Zeus. Other Greeks were shocked, because a god cannot die. The poet Callimachus, about 270 BC, wrote to Zeus: Cretans are always liars; they built a

TIT 1:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Bronze shields from the cave on Mount Ida where Cretans said Zeus was raised → FIELD NOTES p.1961

TIT 1:12 [NOTABLE] Paul quotes Epimenides, a poet from Crete, from about 600 BC. Paul even calls him one of their own prophets.

TIT 1:12 [NOTE] THE CRETAN LIAR. The poet is Epimenides of Knossos, about 600 BC, as Clement of Alexandria said about AD 200. Acts 17:28 may quote the same poem, but that is debated. Teachers of logic later made the line a puzzle: if a Cretan says all Cretans lie, is he lying? That puzzle dates only from the 1800s. Paul is not playing games: he says this testimony is true, 1:13. See The Cave of Zeus Field Notes page, p.1961.

TIT 1:14 [NOTE] JEWISH MYTHS. Probably made up stories built on Old Testament names and family lines, plus rules about clean and unclean food, 1:15. Writings of the time like the Book of Jubilees retold Genesis with many extra details. See 1 Timothy 1:4 and 3:9.

TIT 1:16 [NOTABLE] Saying you know God and living like you do not are two different things. Your life is the loudest sermon you preach.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

tomb for you, but you did not die. Paul quotes the same famous line.

THE PROPHET

The line comes from Epimenides of Knossos, about 600 BC. Old stories say he slept in a cave for 57 years and woke up a prophet. That is why Paul says one of their own prophets.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Paul just called God the One who cannot lie, 1:2. Now he uses a line Cretans all knew to tell Titus to correct the false teachers firmly, 1:13. The point is not that every Cretan is bad. He is sending Titus to them.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The shield shows the Zeus stories were real worship on Crete. It does not make the myths true.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Teach what fits sound doctrine. Older men, older women, young women, young men, even slaves all get a word, and it is the same word: live so well that nobody can trash the gospel. Why? Because God's grace showed up, and it trains us while we wait for Jesus.

TEACHING SOUND DOCTRINE

1 But as for you, speak the things that are consistent with sound doctrine.

2 Older men are to be temperate, dignified, self-controlled, and sound in faith, love, and perseverance.

3 Older women, likewise, are to be reverent in their behavior, not slanderers or addicted to much wine, but teachers of good. 4 In this way they can train the young women to love their husbands and children, 5 to be self-controlled, pure, managers of their households, kind, and submissive to their own husbands, so that the word of God will not be discredited.

6 In the same way, urge the younger men to be self-controlled.

7 In everything, show yourself to be an example by doing good works. In your teaching show integrity, dignity, 8 and wholesome speech that is above reproach, so that anyone who opposes us will be ashamed, having nothing bad to say about us.

9 Slaves are to submit to their own masters in everything, to be well-pleasing, not argumentative, 10 not stealing from them, but showing all good faith, so that in every respect they will adorn the teaching about God our Savior.

GOD'S GRACE BRINGS SALVATION

11 For the grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation to everyone. 12 It instructs us to renounce ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live sensible, upright, and godly lives in the present age, 13 as we await the blessed hope and glorious appearance of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. 14 He gave Himself for us to redeem us from all lawlessness and to purify for Himself a people for His own possession, zealous for good deeds.

- **TIT 2:3 [NOTE]** OLDER WOMEN. They are to be teachers of good and train the younger women. On women teaching in the church, see the two Big Question pages in 1 Timothy, p.1936. On submissive in 2:5, see the Ephesians 5:21 note, p.1888.
- **TIT 2:5 [TEXT]** Managers of their households follows the oldest Greek copies, like Sinaiticus and Alexandrinus, which say workers at home. Later copies say keepers at home, the KJV wording.
- **TIT 2:7 [NOTABLE]** Titus was young and left to lead a messy church. Paul does not tell him to win arguments first. He tells him to live so well that critics have nothing bad to say.
- **TIT 2:9 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** The Gortyn law code, Crete, about 450 BC, the longest Greek law inscription, with laws on slaves, marriage, divorce and family property → FIELD NOTES p.1963
- **TIT 2:9 [NOTE]** SLAVES. Many people in the Roman world were slaves. It was not based on race, and some bought their freedom, but people were still owned. Paul tells Philemon to take a runaway back as a dear brother, Philemon 16, and tells slaves to gain freedom if they can, 1 Corinthians 7:21. About AD 379 Gregory of Nyssa preached that no one should own a person. Later some used verses like this to defend American slavery, while Christians like William Wilberforce fought to end it.
- **TIT 2:11 [NOTABLE]** Grace does not only save you, it trains you. The same grace that forgives also teaches you to say no to what hurts you and yes to a godly life.
- **TIT 2:11 [FULFILLS]** He is Salvation to the ends of the earth ← IS 49:6 p.1122
- **TIT 2:13 [PROPHECY]** Looking for the blessed hope and glorious appearing of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ → STILL TO COME
- **TIT 2:13 [FULFILLS]** Called Mighty God (El Gibor) ← IS 9:6 p.1072
- **TIT 2:13 [NOTE]** ONE PERSON, TWO TITLES. In Greek one the covers both titles: the great God and Savior. In 1798 Granville Sharp, an English scholar who also fought slavery, showed that this pattern means one person, so both titles belong to Jesus. 2 Peter 1:1 is the same. The KJV, the great God and our Saviour, can be read as two persons, and the Jehovah's Witness Bible says the great God and of our Savior.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE NOTABLE

15 Speak these things as you encourage
and rebuke with all authority. Let no one
despise you.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE CODE · THE TITUS TRADITION IS LATE

THE GORTYN LAW CODE

TITUS 1:5 · 2:1 TO 10 · 1 MACCABEES 15:23



Part of the law code carved into a stone wall at Gortyn, Crete. Photo Zde, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Laws carved into a curved stone wall at Gortyn, in southern Crete. About 600 lines in 12 columns, some 30 feet long. It is the most complete ancient Greek law code ever found.

HOW OLD IT IS

Carved about 450 BC. The first pieces turned up in 1857. Federico Halbherr found the main wall in 1884 near a mill. The Romans had reused the stones in a later building, and that kept them safe.

READ IT LIKE AN OX PLOWS

The lines run right to left, then left to right, back and forth, the way an ox plows a field. The Greeks called it boustrophedon, ox turning.

SLAVES AND FAMILIES

The laws cover slaves, marriage, divorce, children, adoption and who inherits the family property. The fine for a crime depended on who you were: free, serf or slave. Harming a slave cost less than harming a free man.

TITUS AT GORTYN

In Titus' day Gortyn was the Roman capital of Crete and of Cyrene in North Africa. Jews lived there long before, 1 Maccabees 15:23. Eusebius, about AD 325, says Titus led the churches of Crete, and tradition makes him the first bishop at Gortyn. A big church named for him was built there in the 500s, and its ruins still stand.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Old laws like these ranked people by birth. Paul gives older men, older women, young people and slaves the same calling: live so that the teaching about God our Savior looks beautiful, 2:10.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The code is about 500 years older than Paul and does not mention Christians. The stories about Titus at Gortyn come from later church tradition.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Be good neighbors and good citizens. We used to be a mess too, until God saved us, not because we earned it, but because He is kind. So do good works, skip the dumb arguments, warn a trouble-maker twice, then move on. And Titus, meet me at Nicopolis for the winter.

HEIRS OF GRACE

1 Remind the believers to submit to rulers
and authorities, to be obedient and ready
for every good work, 2 to malign no one,
and to be peaceable and gentle, showing
full consideration to everyone.

3 For at one time we too were foolish, dis-
obedient, misled, and enslaved to all sorts
of desires and pleasures—living in malice
and envy, being hated and hating one an-
other.

4 But when the kindness of God our Savior
and His love for mankind appeared, 5 He
saved us, not by the righteous deeds we
had done, but according to His mercy,
through the washing of new birth and re-
newal by the Holy Spirit. 6 This is the Spirit

- **TIT 2:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 130:8; EZK 37:23; DT 14:2 p.972
- **TIT 2:14 [NOTE]** HIS OWN POSSESSION. The KJV says a peculiar people. In 1611 peculiar meant your own special treasure. The Greek word is the one used for Israel in Exodus 19:5. It does not mean strange.
- **TIT 3:1 [NOTABLE]** Written to Christians on an island Paul just called liars and lazy gluttons. Even so: speak evil of no one and be gentle to all people.
- **TIT 3:4 [NOTABLE]** One of the clearest short summaries of the gospel in the Bible. God saved us because He is kind, not because we earned it, and made us heirs of eternal life.
- **TIT 3:5 [FULFILLS]** God would sprinkle clean water and cleanse His people ← EZK 36:25 · MEDIUM p.1300

NOTABLE

He poured out on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior, [7] so that, having been justified by His grace, we would become heirs with the hope of eternal life. [8] This saying is trustworthy. And I want you to emphasize these things, so that those who have believed God will take care to devote themselves to good deeds. These things are excellent and profitable for the people.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DOES BAPTISM SAVE?

The Washing of New Birth

TITUS 3:4 TO 7 · JOHN 3:5 · ACTS 2:38 · 1 PETER 3:21

WHAT PAUL SAID

God saved us, not by our good deeds, but by His mercy, through the washing of new birth and renewal by the Holy Spirit, 3:5. The KJV says the washing of regeneration. Christians have argued for centuries about one question: is that washing baptism, and does baptism save?

THE FIRST CHRISTIANS

In Acts, people were baptized right after they believed, often the same day, Acts 2:41, 8:36 to 38 and 16:33. The Didache, a church guide from about AD 100, says to baptize in running water, or to pour water on the head three times if there is none. Justin Martyr, about AD 155, calls baptism a washing and a new birth and quotes John 3:5.

BABIES OR BELIEVERS?

Tertullian, about AD 200, said it was better to wait until children were old enough to know Christ, which shows some churches baptized babies. A church order linked to Hippolytus, about AD 215, says to baptize the little ones first and let parents answer for them. Origen, about AD 245, said baptizing babies came from the apostles. Augustine, about AD 400, taught that babies need baptism to wash away the sin they are born with, and infant baptism became normal for over a thousand years.

THE REFORMATION

Martin Luther kept infant baptism. In his Small Catechism, 1529, he asks how water can do such great things and answers: not the water, but God's word with the water, and faith that trusts it, quoting Titus 3:5 to 8. Ulrich Zwingli in Zurich taught that baptism is a sign, not a cause, of grace. John Calvin called it a sign and seal of God's promise, like circumcision.

THE BELIEVERS ONLY MOVEMENT

On January 21, 1525, in Zurich, Conrad Grebel baptized George Blaurock as a believer, and the Anabaptists were born. They were called rebaptizers and hunted down; Felix Manz was drowned in 1527. In 1609 John Smyth led the first English Baptist church, in Amsterdam.

LATER MOVEMENTS

In the early 1800s the Restoration Movement of Barton Stone and Alexander Campbell, which grew into the Churches of Christ and the Christian Church, taught baptism by immersion for the forgiveness of sins, Acts 2:38. In 1913, a sermon at a camp meeting near Los Angeles started the Oneness Pentecostal movement, which baptizes in Jesus' name only. Churches also differ on how: dunking all the way under, pouring, or sprinkling.

The Case Each Side Makes

TITUS 3:5 · ROMANS 6:3 TO 4 · EPHESIANS 2:8 TO 9 · LUKE 23:39 TO 43

BAPTISM SAVES, CATHOLIC AND ORTHODOX

Baptism really washes away sin and gives new birth, for babies and adults. Key verses: John 3:5, Acts 2:38, Acts 22:16, Romans 6:3 to 4, 1 Peter 3:21, and Titus 3:5. Best case: the Bible says baptism now saves you, 1 Peter 3:21, and the early church read it that way. The Catholic Catechism adds that God tied salvation to baptism but is not Himself tied by it, so a person who dies wanting baptism, or as a martyr, can be saved.

GOD'S WORD IN THE WATER, LUTHERAN

Baptism is God's work, not ours. His

TIT 3:5 [FULFILLS] I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will put My Spirit within you ← EZK 36:26-27 p.1300

TIT 3:5 [NOTE] WASHING OF NEW BIRTH. The KJV says washing of regeneration. Christians disagree about whether this means baptism. See The Big Question pages, Does Baptism Save?, p.1964

TIT 3:6 [FULFILLS] I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh; your sons and daughters shall prophesy ← JOEL 2:28-29 p.1382

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

promise joined to the water gives new birth and creates faith, even in a baby. Key verses: Titus 3:5, Mark 16:16 in the longer ending, Galatians 3:27. Best case: it keeps salvation all grace, a gift you receive, never a work you do.

REQUIRED FOR BELIEVERS

Churches of Christ teach that a believer is saved when he is immersed for the forgiveness of sins. Oneness Pentecostals add that it must be in the name of Jesus. Key verses: Acts 2:38, Acts 22:16, Mark 16:16, and Acts 10:48 and 19:5. Best case: every conversion in Acts ends in the water, quickly, and nobody in the New Testament is called saved and then left unbaptized.

A COVENANT SIGN, REFORMED

Presbyterian and Reformed churches say baptism is a sign and seal of God's promise, the way circumcision was for Israel. It is given to believers and their children, but the water does not save by itself. Key verses: Colossians 2:11 to 12, Acts 2:39, and whole households baptized, Acts 16:15 and 16:33.

A SYMBOL OF A CHANGE ALREADY MADE

Baptists and most evangelical and Pentecostal churches say we are saved by grace through faith, Ephesians 2:8 to 9, and baptism is the first step of obedience that shows it. The washing in 3:5 is the Spirit's inner work. Key verses: Acts 10:44 to 48, where the Spirit came before the water, and 1 Corinthians 1:17, Christ did not send me to baptize but to preach. THE THIEF ON THE CROSS: he was never baptized as far as the Bible tells, yet Jesus said, today you will be with Me in paradise, Luke 23:43. Other sides answer that he died before Jesus commanded baptism, Matthew 28:19, that no one knows if John baptized him, or, for Catholics, that he had a baptism of desire.

WHAT WE ALL AGREE ON

Jesus commanded baptism, Matthew 28:19, so every believer should be baptized. The power to save is God's mercy, 3:5, not plain water. And the same Spirit He poured out on us, 3:6, makes us new.

AVOID DIVISIONS // ROMANS 16:17–20

9 But avoid foolish controversies, genealogies, arguments, and quarrels about the law, because these things are pointless and worthless.

10 Reject a divisive man after a first and second admonition, 11 knowing that such a man is corrupt and sinful; he is self-condemned.

FINAL REMARKS AND GREETINGS

12 As soon as I send Artemas or Tychicus to you, make every effort to come to me at Nicopolis, because I have decided to winter there. 13 Do your best to equip Zenas the lawyer and Apollos, so that they will have everything they need. 14 And our people must also learn to devote themselves to good works in order to meet the pressing needs of others, so that they will not be unfruitful.

15 All who are with me send you greetings.

Greet those who love us in the faith.

Grace be with all of you.

- **TIT 3:9 [NOTE]** GENEALOGIES. Fights over family lines and the law, like 1 Timothy 1:4. Paul calls them pointless. Titus himself was a Greek who was never circumcised, Galatians 2:3.
- **TIT 3:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Augustus' victory monument above Nicopolis, with sockets for the bronze rams of captured warships from the battle of Actium, 31 BC → FIELD NOTES p.1966
- **TIT 3:13 [NOTE]** ZENAS AND APOLLOS. Zenas the lawyer is named only here; he may have been an expert in Roman law or the Law of Moses. Apollos is the gifted preacher from Alexandria, Acts 18:24 and 1 Corinthians 3:6.
- **TIT 3:14 [NOTABLE]** Good works are not vague. They meet real needs of real people, so believers are not unfruitful.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE CITY · WHICH NICOPOLIS IS DEBATED

NICOPOLIS, VICTORY CITY

TITUS 3:12 · 2 TIMOTHY 4:10 TO 12



Part of the wall of Augustus' victory monument above Nicopolis, Greece, with sockets for bronze ship rams. Photo Mark Landon, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Huge stone blocks from the victory monument Augustus built on the hill above Nicopolis, in western Greece. The oddly shaped holes held bronze rams, the pointed beaks of enemy warships he captured.

HOW OLD IT IS

Built about 29 to 27 BC, right after Augustus beat Mark Antony and Cleopatra in the sea battle of Actium, 31 BC. At least 36 rams hung on this wall. A Latin inscription says he gave his old army camp to Mars and Neptune, the gods of war and sea.

VICTORY CITY

Nicopolis means victory city. Augustus founded it in 29 BC near the spot where his army had camped, and started big games there every four years.

PAUL'S WINTER PLAN

Ships stopped sailing in winter. Paul writes, I have decided to winter there, 3:12, and asks Titus to come once Artemas or Tychicus arrives to take his place. We do not know how the meeting went. 2 Timothy 4:10 says Titus later went to Dalmatia, farther up the same coast.

A FAMOUS TEACHER

About AD 94, the emperor Domitian banished the Stoic teacher Epictetus, and he opened a school at Nicopolis. Students came from all over the empire.

WHICH NICOPOLIS?

At least three cities had this name. Most think Paul meant this one, the biggest, on the route between Greece and Italy. A note at the end of Titus in the KJV says it was written from Nicopolis, but that note was added by later copyists.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nothing here names Paul. The ruins show that the city he picked for the winter was real and important.

BOOK 57 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

PHILEMON

Charge It to My Account

AUTHOR	Paul, with Timothy, verse 1. Almost all scholars agree Paul wrote it.
WRITTEN FROM	Prison, verse 9, most likely in Rome. Many scholars say Ephesus, only about 100 miles from Colossae; a few say Caesarea.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 60 to 62, at the same time as Colossians.
WRITTEN TO	Philemon, a believer in Colossae, and the church that met in his house, verse 2.
WHY HE WROTE	To ask Philemon to welcome back Onesimus, his runaway slave, as a brother in Christ.
KEY VERSE	Philemon 16. No longer as a slave, but better than a slave, as a beloved brother.



AN EARLY COPY OF PHILEMON
Papyrus 87, front and back, copied in the early 200s. One side has verses 13 to 15, the other verses 24 to 25. It is kept at the University of Cologne in Germany. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Philemon was a believer in Colossae who had a church meeting in his house. One of his slaves, Onesimus, ran away, and may have taken money too, verse 18. Somehow he ended up with Paul, who was in prison, and there he became a Christian. Now Paul has a problem. Under Roman law Onesimus belonged to Philemon. So Paul sends him back, carried along with the letter to the Colossians by Tychicus, Colossians 4:7 to 9, and writes this short note to change how Philemon sees him. It is the shortest of Paul's letters, and the most personal.

What Was at Stake

A RUNAWAY. Onesimus had left his master, verses 15 to 16.
A DEBT. He may have owed Philemon money, verse 18.
THE LAW. Roman law gave a master full power over a slave who ran away.
A NEW BROTHER. Now master and slave were both believers. How should they treat each other?

The Idiot Proof Summary

Philemon is a one page letter about one man, but it shows the whole gospel in miniature. Paul stands between an angry master and a guilty runaway and says, if he owes you, put it on my account. That is exactly what Jesus does for us. Martin Luther said it best: we are all His Onesimus.

Philemon at a Glance

CH 1 to 7 **THANK YOU, PHILEMON**
Your love refreshes the hearts of the saints.

CH 8 to 16 **A REQUEST OUT OF LOVE**
Take back Onesimus, once useless, now useful, a brother.

CH 17 to 25 **CHARGE IT TO ME**
I will repay. Get a room ready for me.

Where Jesus Shows Up

PHILEMON 6 Every good thing that is ours in Christ.

PHILEMON 16 In the Lord, a slave and a master become brothers. Galatians 3:28.

PHILEMON 18 TO 19 Paul pays the debt of the guilty one, a picture of what Christ does for us. Colossians 2:14.

What to Watch for in Philemon

ARCHAEOLOGY (3)	1:10, 1:12, 1:19
NOTABLE (5)	1:7-9, 1:11, 1:15-18
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

A PUN IN THE BIBLE
Onesimus means useful. Paul says he was useless, but now he is useful, verse 11.

SIGNED BY HAND
Paul signs it himself, like an IOU, verse 19.

ONE OF THE OLDEST
Papyrus 87, from the early 200s, is one of the oldest scraps of Paul's letters.

LUTHER'S WORDS
Martin Luther, 1522: we are all His Onesimus, if we believe.

What Happened Next?

We do not know Philemon's answer, but the letter was kept, which suggests he said yes. Colossians 4:9 calls Onesimus a faithful and beloved brother. About AD 110, Ignatius praised a bishop of Ephesus named Onesimus. It may be the same man.

ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Paul writes from prison to his friend Philemon about a runaway slave named Onesimus. The runaway met Paul, met Jesus, and became a new man. Now Paul sends him home with a note: take him back, not as a slave but as a brother. If he owes you anything, put it on my tab. Oh, and get the guest room ready.

GREETINGS FROM PAUL AND TIMOTHY // PHILIPPIANS 1:1–2; COLOSSIANS 1:1–2

1 Paul, a prisoner of Christ Jesus, and Timothy our brother,

To Philemon our beloved fellow worker, 2 to Apphia our sister, to Archippus our fellow soldier, and to the church that meets at your house:

3 Grace and peace to you from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.

PHILEMON'S FAITH AND LOVE

4 I always thank my God, remembering you in my prayers, 5 because I hear about your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love for all the saints. 6 I pray that your partnership in the faith may become effective as you fully acknowledge every good thing that is ours in Christ. 7 I take great joy and encouragement in your love, because you, brother, have refreshed the hearts of the saints.

PAUL'S APPEAL FOR ONESIMUS

8 So although in Christ I am bold enough to order you to do what is proper, 9 I prefer to appeal on the basis of love. For I, Paul, am now aged, and a prisoner of Christ Jesus as well.

10 I appeal to you for my child Onesimus, whose father I became while I was in chains. 11 Formerly he was useless to you, but now he has become useful both to you and to me. 12 I am sending back to you him who is my very heart.

13 I would have liked to keep him with me, so that on your behalf he could minister to me in my chains for the gospel. 14 But I did not want to do anything without your consent, so that your goodness will not be out of compulsion, but by your own free will.

15 For perhaps this is why he was separated from you for a while, so that you might have him back for good— 16 no longer as a slave, but better than a slave, as a beloved brother. He is especially beloved to me, but even more so to you, both in person and in the Lord.

17 So if you consider me a partner, receive him as you would receive me. 18 But if he has wronged you in any way or owes you anything, charge it to my account. 19 I, Paul, write this with my own hand. I will repay it—not to mention that you owe me your very self.

20 Yes, brother, let me have some benefit from you in the Lord. Refresh my heart in Christ.

- **PHM 1:2 [NOTE]** THE HOUSE CHURCH. There were no church buildings yet, so believers met in homes. Many think Apphia was Philemon's wife and Archippus their son. Paul tells Archippus to finish his work for the Lord, Colossians 4:17.
- **PHM 1:7 [NOTABLE]** Philemon was known for one thing: people left his house encouraged. Paul asks him to do it one more time, verse 20.
- **PHM 1:8 [NOTABLE]** Paul had the authority to give an order. He asked out of love instead. Real leaders win hearts, not just obedience.
- **PHM 1:10 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Marble plaque honoring Pliny the Younger, the Roman who wrote a famous letter asking mercy for a freedman → FIELD NOTES p.1971
- **PHM 1:10 [NOTABLE]** Onesimus means useful. The man who once lived up to his name the wrong way was changed by Jesus. No one is too useless for God.
- **PHM 1:11 [NOTE]** USELESS TO USEFUL. Onesimus means useful. Paul plays on the name: once useless, now useful. Some hear a second pun, because the Greek word for useful sounded almost like Christ.
- **PHM 1:12 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A Roman iron slave collar with a bronze tag offering a gold coin for returning a runaway to his master Zoninus → FIELD NOTES p.1972
- **PHM 1:12 [NOTE]** SENT BACK. Most believe Onesimus was a runaway, as John Chrysostom said about AD 400. Some think he went to Paul on purpose to ask him to make peace with his master; others that Philemon sent him to help Paul; a few that he was Philemon's brother, not a slave. Deuteronomy 23:15 to 16 says not to hand back a runaway. Some answer that the law was for slaves fleeing to Israel from other nations; others that Paul would not act without Philemon's consent, verse 14, and sent him as a brother, not as property.
- **PHM 1:15 [NOTABLE]** The gospel turned a runaway and his master into family. In Christ the walls between people come down, Galatians 3:28.
- **PHM 1:16 [NOTE]** SLAVE AND BROTHER. See The Big Question pages, The Bible and Slavery, p.1972, and the Titus 2:9 note, p.1962.
- **PHM 1:17 [NOTABLE]** Paul takes the slave's debt on himself. Martin Luther wrote in 1522 that Christ does the same for us before the Father: we are all His Onesimus.
- **PHM 1:19 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A loan contract on papyrus from the Jewish colony at Elephantine, Egypt, about 402 BC, with repayment terms, guarantors and witnesses → FIELD NOTES p.1974
- **PHM 1:19 [NOTE]** MY OWN HAND. Paul usually spoke his letters to a helper and signed the end himself, Galatians 6:11 and 2 Thessalonians 3:17. Here his signature works like an IOU.

21 Confident of your obedience, I write to
you, knowing that you will do even more
than I ask.
22 In the meantime, prepare a guest room
for me, because I hope that through your
prayers I will be restored to you.

ADDITIONAL GREETINGS

23 Epaphras, my fellow prisoner in Christ
Jesus, sends you greetings, 24 as do Mark,
Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke, my fellow
workers.
25 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be
with your spirit.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PLINY'S LETTER FOR A FREEDMAN

PHILEMON 8 TO 21



Part of the marble plaque honoring Pliny the Younger, early 100s AD, in the wall of the church of Sant'Ambrogio, Milan. Photo Giovanni Dall'Orto, free with credit.

WHAT IT IS

Part of a marble plaque honoring Pliny the Younger, a rich Roman lawyer and governor. His name PLINIUS is on the top line. The same plaque appears in 1 Timothy, p.1939, because Pliny also wrote about Christians.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was carved in the early 100s AD, around the time of Pliny's death. Pliny was born about the time Paul wrote Philemon.

PLINY'S LETTER

About AD 107, Pliny wrote to his friend Sabinianus. A freedman, a former slave of Sabinianus, had made his master angry and ran to Pliny for help. He fell at Pliny's feet, cried and begged. Pliny wrote: he is sorry, forgive him, you can always be angry again if he deserves it. In a second letter Pliny thanks Sabinianus for taking him back.

SIDE BY SIDE

Both letters ask a master to take back a man who wronged him, and both use gentle pressure. But Pliny begs mercy for an inferior. Paul calls Onesimus my child, my very heart and a beloved brother, and offers to pay his debt himself.

THE OLDEST COPY

The title page shows Papyrus 87, a scrap of Philemon from the early 200s, now at the University of Cologne. Some scholars date it even earlier, in the 100s.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Pliny never heard of Onesimus. The two letters show how such requests were made in the Roman world.

- **PHM 1:22 [NOTE]** A GUEST ROOM. Paul expected to be set free, Philippians 1:25. Clement of Rome, about AD 96, says Paul reached the limit of the west, and many believe he was released and traveled again before his second arrest. See 2 Timothy, p.1945.
- **PHM 1:24 [NOTE]** THE SAME TEAM. These are the same friends who send greetings in Colossians 4:10 to 14. Mark is the young man Paul once refused to take along, Acts 15:37 to 39. Luke is the doctor who wrote Luke and Acts. Demas later left Paul, 2 Timothy 4:10.
- **PHM 1:25 [NOTE]** WHAT HAPPENED TO ONESIMUS? About AD 110, Ignatius praised a bishop of Ephesus named Onesimus. Some think it was the same man, and that he later helped gather Paul's letters, which would explain why this tiny note was saved. It is possible, but no one knows.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · LATER THAN PAUL

THE SLAVE COLLAR

PHILEMON 10 TO 16



Iron slave collar with bronze tag, Museo Nazionale Romano, Rome. Photo Mark Landon, CC BY 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

An iron collar that was locked around a slave's neck, with a bronze tag. The Latin says: I have run away. Hold me. When you bring me back to my master Zoninus, you will get a gold coin.

HOW OLD IT IS

From the 300s or 400s AD, at least 250 years after Paul. It has been known since 1749 and is in the National Museum of Rome.

A HARD TRUTH

The tag has a small palm branch, which may be a Christian sign, and other collars like it carry the Christian Chi Rho. Long after Paul, some Christians still owned slaves and collared them.

WHAT A RUNAWAY FACED

In Paul's day a caught runaway could be beaten, branded on the face, chained or sold far away. Professional slave catchers hunted them. Anyone who hid a runaway could owe the master for his lost work.

WHY PAUL WAS BOLD

Paul did not hide Onesimus. He sent him home with a letter asking his master to treat him as a brother, and he offered to pay whatever was owed, verses 16 to 19.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

This collar has nothing to do with Onesimus. It shows what running away could cost a slave.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE BIBLE AND SLAVERY

What Happened Then

PHILEMON 16 · GALATIANS 3:28 · EXODUS 21:2 TO 16 · LEVITICUS 25:44 TO 46

WHAT PAUL SAID

Take him back no longer as a slave, but as a beloved brother, verse 16. In Christ there is neither slave nor free, Galatians 3:28. If you can gain your freedom, take it, 1 Corinthians 7:21. Slave traders are listed with the lawless, 1 Timothy 1:10. But Paul also told slaves to obey their masters, Titus 2:9 and Ephesians 6:5, and he never told masters to free them.

SLAVERY IN ISRAEL

Hebrew servants were set free in the seventh year, Exodus 21:2 and Deuteronomy 15:12 to 15. Kidnapping a person was punished by death, Exodus 21:16. A runaway was not to be handed back, Deuteronomy 23:15 to 16. But foreigners could be held for life, Leviticus 25:44 to 46, and a master who beat a slave was not always punished, Exodus 21:20 to 21.

SLAVERY IN ROME

Millions were slaves: war captives, children of slaves, people sold for debt. It was not based on race. Many were freed in time, and some were doctors or teachers. But a slave had no rights, could be beaten or sold, and could not legally marry.

THE EARLY CHURCH

About AD 110, Ignatius told slaves not to expect the church to buy their freedom, which shows churches were doing it. About AD 379, Gregory of Nyssa preached that no human can own an-

other. In the 300s, Constantine let Christians free slaves in church. About AD 450, Patrick of Ireland wrote against a king whose men captured new believers as slaves.

THE GREAT DEBATE

In 1688 Quakers in Germantown, Pennsylvania, protested slavery. John Newton, a former slave trader, wrote Amazing Grace and fought the trade. William Wilberforce led Britain to end the slave trade in 1807 and slavery in 1833. In America both sides quoted the Bible. A Slave Bible printed in 1807 for slaves in the British West Indies cut out the Exodus story. Frederick Douglass wrote in 1845 that the Christianity of this land was not the Christianity of Christ. Methodists split over slavery in 1844 and Baptists in 1845. In 1995 the Southern Baptist Convention apologized for its role.

The Case Each Side Makes

PHILEMON 16 · GENESIS 1:27 · 1 TIMOTHY 1:10 · EPHESIANS 6:5 TO 9

THE SEEDS VIEW

The Bible planted seeds that would destroy slavery: every person is made in God's image, Genesis 1:27, master and slave are brothers, verse 16, and both answer to the same Master, Ephesians 6:9. Paul worked inside a system he could not change overnight. Best case: the abolitionist movement grew from exactly these verses. Many evangelicals hold this, and William Webb's 2001 book calls it a redemptive movement.

IT WAS DIFFERENT

Bible slavery was mostly debt service for a set time, not the race based slavery of the Americas, and man stealing was a crime, Exodus 21:16. Best case: the Old Testament laws were kinder than the nations around Israel. Critics answer with Leviticus 25:44 to 46 and Exodus 21:20 to 21, and note Roman slavery in Paul's day was often lifelong.

THE BIBLE ACCEPTED IT

Many scholars say the Bible writers simply accepted slavery as part of their world, and Christians were right to move beyond it later. Jennifer Glancy's 2002 book shows how early Christians lived with slavery. Best case: it is honest about the texts. Believers who hold it say God's word came in real history and pointed forward.

THE PROSLAVERY READING

In the 1800s many preachers in the American South said slavery was God's plan, using the curse on Canaan in Genesis 9:25 and verses telling slaves to obey. Almost every church today rejects this reading. The curse fell on Canaan, not on Africans, and the Bible condemns kidnapping people to sell, 1 Timothy 1:10.

WHAT WE ALL AGREE ON

Kidnapping and selling people is sin. In Christ a slave and a master stand equal before God. And slavery is not gone: a 2022 estimate counted about 50 million people in forced labor or forced marriage today, and many Christians work to set them free.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · FAR OLDER THAN PAUL

CHARGE IT TO MY ACCOUNT

PHILEMON 17 TO 19 · COLOSSIANS 2:14



Loan contract on papyrus, Elephantine, Egypt, about 402 BC. Brooklyn Museum, no known restrictions.

WHAT IT IS

A loan contract written on papyrus in Aramaic. Anani son of Haggai, a Jewish soldier at Elephantine, an island in the Nile in Egypt, borrowed grain from a man named Pahnum and promised to pay it back.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 402 BC, more than 450 years before Paul. It belongs to the Elephantine papyri, records of a Jewish community in Egypt, and is in the Brooklyn Museum.

WHAT IT SAYS

Anani would repay out of his ration from the king. If he was late, he owed a fine in silver. If he died, his children or his guarantors had to pay. Until then the lender could take his house, a servant or his bronze pots. A scribe wrote it and four witnesses signed.

THE LANGUAGE OF DEBT

Paul writes like a businessman. Charge it to my account is a bookkeeping word. I, Paul, write this with my own hand. I will repay. That was the standard promise in a written IOU, and the signer wrote it himself.

A GUARANTOR

Paul steps in as Onesimus' guarantor and takes the debt on himself. Colossians 2:14 uses a word for a handwritten record of debt and says God nailed ours to the cross. Martin Luther wrote: we are all His Onesimus.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

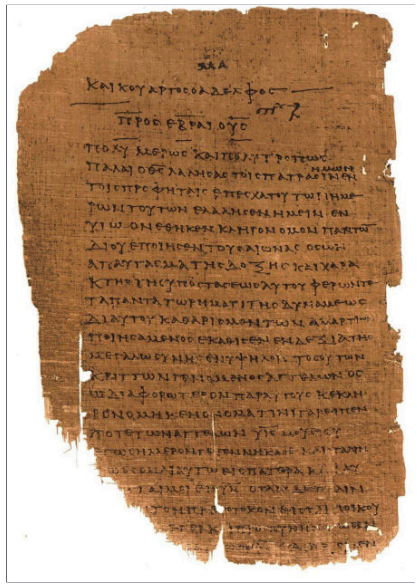
This contract has nothing to do with Paul. It shows how debts and promises to repay were written down.

BOOK 58 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

HEBREWS

Something Better

AUTHOR	Unknown. The letter never names its writer. Origen, about AD 240, said only God knows. See The Big Question pages, p.1979.
WRITTEN FROM	Unknown. Those from Italy send you greetings, 13:24, so maybe Italy, or Italians living somewhere else.
DATE WRITTEN	Most likely about AD 60 to 69, while the temple sacrifices were still going on, 10:1 to 2. Some date it about AD 80 to 90.
WRITTEN TO	Believers in Jesus with a Jewish background, maybe in Rome or Jerusalem, who were tempted to go back to the old ways.
WHY HE WROTE	To show that Jesus is better than everything that came before Him, and to beg them not to drift away.
KEY VERSE	Hebrews 12:2. Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith.



THE OLDEST COPY OF HEBREWS
This is a page of Papyrus 46, a book of Paul's letters copied in Egypt about AD 200. At the top are the last words of Romans, and Quartus our brother, Romans 16:23. Under them is the title, To Hebrews, and the letter begins: On many past occasions and in many different ways, 1:1. A few lines down is the rare Greek word for radiance, 1:3. The page runs to about 1:7. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Hebrews reads like a sermon with a short note at the end; the writer calls it a word of encouragement, 13:22. His readers had a Jewish background and had already suffered for Jesus. They lost property, and some went to prison, 10:32 to 34. Now years had passed.

Jesus had not come back yet, some were skipping church, and the temple in Jerusalem, with its priests and sacrifices, still looked solid. Going back must have looked easy. So the writer walks through the Old Testament, the angels, Moses, the priests and the sacrifices, and shows that Jesus is better than all of it.

What Was Going Wrong

DRIFTING. Slowly sliding away from the faith, 2:1 and 3:12.
SLOW LEARNERS. They should have been teachers, but still needed milk, 5:11 to 12.
SKIPPING CHURCH. Some had stopped meeting together, 10:25.
PRESSURE. Insults, lost property and prison, 10:32 to 34 and 13:3.
GOING BACK. The pull of the old system of priests, food rules and sacrifices, 13:9 to 13.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Hebrews has one big word: better. Jesus is better than the angels and better than Moses. He is a better priest, with a better covenant, a better sacrifice and better promises. Everything in the Old Testament worship, the tabernacle, the priests and the blood, was a shadow pointing to Him. The book holds some of the strongest warnings in the Bible and some of its warmest comfort. Its answer to every problem is the same: fix your eyes on Jesus.

Hebrews at a Glance

CH 1 to 2	**BETTER THAN ANGELS** The Son is God's last word. He became human to rescue us.
CH 3 to 4	**BETTER THAN MOSES** Do not harden your hearts. A rest still waits for God's people.
CH 5 to 7	**A BETTER PRIEST** A priest forever like Melchizedek, who lives to pray for us.
CH 8 to 10	**A BETTER COVENANT** One sacrifice, once for all, opens the way to God.
CH 11	**THE HALL OF FAITH** Abel to Rahab and beyond: they trusted God without seeing.
CH 12	**RUN THE RACE** Eyes on Jesus. Discipline is love. A better mountain than Sinai.
CH 13	**LIVING IT OUT** Love, hospitality, marriage, contentment and a sacrifice of praise.

Where Jesus Shows Up

HEBREWS 1:3 The radiance of God's glory, who sat down at His right hand. Psalm 110:1.

HEBREWS 4:15 A High Priest who was tempted in every way like us, yet without sin.

HEBREWS 7:17 A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek. Psalm 110:4.

HEBREWS 10:12 One sacrifice for sins for all time, then He sat down.

What to Watch for in Hebrews

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (40)	1:3, 1:5-6, 1:8-13, 2:6-10, 2:12-14, 4:15, 5:5-7 and 20 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (17)	2:17, 3:7-8, 4:4, 4:7, 4:9-10, 5:4, 6:18 and 14 more
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	11:12
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	10:37, 12:26-27
THE HEART (4)	3:12, 3:15, 4:12, 13:9

ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	8:13, 9:2
MIRACLES (3)	1:14, 2:4, 13:2
DEMONIC (1)	2:15
NOTABLE (15)	2:1, 4:14, 4:16, 5:12-14, 6:19, 9:27, 10:24-25 and 10 more
JESUS SPEAKING (5 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

SEVEN QUOTES IN A ROW
Chapter 1 strings together seven Old Testament quotes to show the Son is greater than the angels.

A KING NAMED RIGHTEOUS
Melchizedek means king of righteousness, and Salem means peace, 7:2.

THE HALL OF FAITH
Chapter 11 names 16 heroes of faith and points to many more.

NO NAME
The writer never says who he is. People have been guessing for 1,800 years.

What Happened Next?

We do not know how the first readers answered. Within a few years, in AD 70, the Roman army burned the temple, and the sacrifices stopped for good, just as Hebrews said the old system was ready to vanish, 8:13. The church kept Hebrews and read it as Scripture, even while it argued about who wrote it.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

God used to speak in bits and pieces through the prophets. Now He has spoken through His Son, who made the universe and holds it together. Angels? They are great, but they are servants. The writer proves it with seven Old Testament quotes in a row, the ancient version of showing the receipts.

THE SUPREMACY OF THE SON // COLOSSIANS 1:15–23

1 On many past occasions and in many different ways, God spoke to our fathers
through the prophets. 2 But in these last
days He has spoken to us by His Son,
whom He appointed heir of all things, and
through whom He made the universe.
3 The Son is the radiance of God's glory
and the exact representation of His nature, upholding all things by His powerful
word. After He had provided purification
for sins, He sat down at the right hand of
the Majesty on high. 4 So He became as
far superior to the angels as the name He
has inherited is excellent beyond theirs. 5
For to which of the angels did God ever
say:

"You are My Son;
today I have become Your Father"?

Or again:

"I will be His Father,
and He will be My Son"?

6 And again, when God brings His firstborn
into the world, He says:

"Let all God's angels worship Him."

7 Now about the angels He says:

"He makes His angels winds,
His servants flames of fire."

8 But about the Son He says:

"Your throne, O God, endures forever and ever,
and justice is the scepter of Your kingdom.
9 *You have loved righteousness*
and hated wickedness;
therefore God, Your God, has anointed You
above Your companions with the oil of joy."

10 And:

"In the beginning, O Lord, You laid the foundations of the earth,
and the heavens are the work of Your hands.
11 *They will perish, but You remain;*
they will all wear out like a garment.
12 *You will roll them up like a robe;*
like a garment they will be changed;
but You remain the same,
and Your years will never end."

13 Yet to which of the angels did God ever
say:

"Sit at My right hand
until I make Your enemies a footstool for Your feet"?

14 Are not the angels ministering spirits
sent to serve those who will inherit salvation?

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

So pay attention, or you will drift like a boat with no anchor. Jesus was made a little lower than the angels for a while, became one of us, died, and broke the devil's grip on death. Now He is not ashamed to call us brothers, and He knows exactly how temptation feels.

- **HEB 1:1 [NOTE]** WHO WROTE IT? The letter never says. See the two Big Question pages, Who Wrote Hebrews?, p.1979
- **HEB 1:3 [FULFILLS]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **HEB 1:3 [NOTE]** RADIANCE. The Greek word, apaugasma, is rare. The Wisdom of Solomon uses it for Wisdom, the radiance of eternal light, Wisdom of Solomon 7:26. Hebrews says it of the Son. He sat down because His work was finished, Psalm 110:1.
- **HEB 1:5 [FULFILLS]** He would be called the Son of God and 3 more ← 2SA 7:14a; 1CH 17:13; PS 2:7; PS 89:26 p.503
- **HEB 1:5 [NOTE]** SEVEN QUOTES. Verses 5 to 13 quote Psalm 2:7, 2 Samuel 7:14, Deuteronomy 32:43, Psalm 104:4, Psalm 45:6 to 7, Psalm 102:25 to 27 and Psalm 110:1. Each one shows the Son is greater than the angels.
- **HEB 1:6 [FULFILLS]** The nations would rejoice with God's people and angels would worship Him ← DT 32:43 p.329
- **HEB 1:6 [FULFILLS]** All the heavenly powers are told to worship Him ← PS 97:7 · MEDIUM p.948
- **HEB 1:6 [TEXT]** Let all God's angels worship Him follows the Greek Old Testament of Deuteronomy 32:43. Most Hebrew Bibles are shorter there, but a Hebrew copy from Qumran, 4QDeut q, has a similar line.
- **HEB 1:7 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 104:4 p.952
- **HEB 1:8 [FULFILLS]** 'He who rules over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God' and 2 more ← 2SA 23:3; PS 45:6; IS 32:1 p.532
- **HEB 1:9 [FULFILLS]** Anointed with the Holy Spirit beyond measure ← PS 45:7 p.914
- **HEB 1:10 [PROPHECY]** The heavens shall perish, but You remain; they shall grow old like a garment → STILL TO COME
- **HEB 1:10 [FULFILLS]** Messiah identified as the preexistent Son and Creator ← PS 102:25-27 p.951
- **HEB 1:13 [FULFILLS]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **HEB 1:14 [MIRACLE]** Angels are ministering spirits sent for those who inherit salvation

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · MESSIANIC FORESHADOW · MIRACLES · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · NOTABLE

SALVATION CONFIRMED

1 We must pay closer attention, therefore,
to what we have heard, so that we do not
drift away. 2 For if the message spoken by
angels was binding, and every transgres-
sion and disobedience received its just
punishment, 3 how shall we escape if we
neglect such a great salvation?
This salvation was first announced by the
Lord, was confirmed to us by those who
heard Him, 4 and was affirmed by God
through signs, wonders, various miracles,
and gifts of the Holy Spirit distributed ac-
cording to His will.

JESUS LIKE HIS BROTHERS

5 For it is not to angels that He has sub-
jected the world to come, about which we
are speaking. 6 But somewhere it is testi-
fied in these words:

"What is man that You are mindful of him,
or the son of man that You care for him?
7 *You made him a little lower than the angels;*
You crowned him with glory and honor
8 *and placed everything under his feet."*

When God subjected all things to him, He
left nothing outside of his control. Yet at
present we do not see everything subject
to him. 9 But we see Jesus, who was made
a little lower than the angels, now
crowned with glory and honor because
He suffered death, so that by the grace of
God He might taste death for everyone.
10 In bringing many sons to glory, it was
fitting for God, for whom and through
whom all things exist, to make the author
of their salvation perfect through suffer-
ing. 11 For both the One who sanctifies and
those who are sanctified are of the same
family. So Jesus is not ashamed to call
them brothers. 12 He says:

"I will proclaim Your name to My brothers;
I will sing Your praises in the assembly."

13 And again:

"I will put My trust in Him."

And once again:

"Here am I, and the children God has given
Me."

14 Now since the children have flesh and
blood, He too shared in their humanity, so
that by His death He might destroy him
who holds the power of death, that is, the
devil, 15 and free those who all their lives
were held in slavery by their fear of death.
16 For surely it is not the angels He helps,
but the descendants of Abraham. 17 For
this reason He had to be made like His
brothers in every way, so that He might
become a merciful and faithful high priest
in service to God, in order to make atone-
ment for the sins of the people. 18 Because
He Himself suffered when He was
tempted, He is able to help those who are
being tempted.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE HEBREWS?

The Letter With No Name

HEBREWS 2:3 · 13:22 TO 25 · 2 PETER 3:15 TO 16

WHAT THE LETTER SAYS

Nothing about who wrote it. Paul always starts with his name, but Hebrews has no greeting at all. A few clues: the writer is a friend of Timothy, 13:23. He heard the gospel from people who heard Jesus, 2:3. He writes the most polished Greek in the New Testament and quotes the Greek Old Testament.

- **HEB 2:1 [NOTABLE]** The picture is a boat slipping past its harbor. Most people do not quit Jesus in one day; they drift.
- **HEB 2:3 [NOTE]** HEARD IT SECONDHAND. The writer says the message was confirmed to us by those who heard the Lord. Paul said he got his gospel straight from Jesus, Galatians 1:12. This is one reason many doubt Paul wrote Hebrews.
- **HEB 2:4 [MIRACLE]** God confirmed the gospel with signs, wonders, various miracles and gifts of the Holy Spirit
- **HEB 2:6 [FULFILLS]** The son of man God cares for ← PS 8:4 p.888
- **HEB 2:6 [FULFILLS]** His humiliation followed by exaltation ← PS 8:5-6 p.888
- **HEB 2:9 [FULFILLS]** Wounded for our transgressions ← IS 53:5a p.1127
- **HEB 2:10 [FULFILLS]** The Captain of the Lord's host ← JOSH 5:14-15 · MEDIUM p.343
- **HEB 2:10 [FULFILLS]** A leader and commander of the peoples ← IS 55:4b · MEDIUM p.1130
- **HEB 2:12 [FULFILLS]** His resurrection declared to His brethren ← PS 22:22 p.897
- **HEB 2:13 [FULFILLS]** The Messiah would trust God and stand with the children God gave Him ← IS 8:17-18 · MEDIUM p.1071
- **HEB 2:14 [DEMONIC]** Jesus destroys the devil, who held the power of death, and frees those enslaved by fear of death
- **HEB 2:14 [FULFILLS]** He would crush the head of Satan ← GEN 3:15 p.51
- **HEB 2:17 [FULFILLS]** A faithful and lasting High Priest would arise ← 1SA 2:35 · MEDIUM p.441

THE FIRST CENTURY
Clement of Rome, about AD 96, borrows lines from Hebrews in his own letter, so Hebrews was already known in Rome. But he never says who wrote it.

EGYPT SAYS PAUL
Papyrus 46, about AD 200, puts Hebrews right after Romans. Clement of Alexandria, about AD 200, said Paul wrote it in Hebrew and Luke put it into Greek. He thought Paul left his name off out of humility, because Jesus Himself was sent to the Hebrews. Church historian Eusebius, about AD 325, passes this on.

ORIGEN'S FAMOUS ANSWER
Origen, the great teacher of Alexandria, about AD 240, said the thoughts are Paul's, but the wording is someone else's. Then he added: who wrote the letter, in truth, God knows.

THE WEST WAS NOT SURE
In Rome and North Africa many doubted Paul for about 200 years. Tertullian, about AD 220, said Barnabas wrote it. Jerome and Augustine, about AD 400, accepted it with Paul's letters, and church councils in North Africa about that time listed it with them. That settled it for over a thousand years.

THE REFORMATION
Martin Luther doubted Paul. In his 1522 New Testament he moved Hebrews near the back with James, Jude and Revelation, and later he guessed Apollos. John Calvin said he could not believe Paul wrote it and thought of Luke or Clement. The KJV of 1611 still titled it The Epistle of Paul the Apostle to the Hebrews.

TODAY
Most scholars, including many conservative ones, say we do not know. Some still defend Paul. The next page gives the case for every name.

The Case for Each Name

HEBREWS 2:3 · 11:32 · 13:22 TO 25 · ACTS 4:36 · ACTS 18:24 TO 26

PAUL
The case: the Eastern church from about AD 200 said so, Papyrus 46 puts it with his letters, the writer knows Timothy, 13:23, and it ends with grace be with you all, like Paul, 13:25. Some copies of 10:34 even say my chains. Against: the writer heard the gospel secondhand, 2:3, but Paul said he got it straight from Jesus, Galatians 1:12. The style is very different, and Paul always names himself.

BARNABAS
Tertullian named him about AD 220. The case: he was a Levite, Acts 4:36, so he would know the priests and sacrifices that fill Hebrews. His nickname means son of encouragement, and Hebrews calls itself a word of encouragement, 13:22, using the same Greek word. Against: no other early writer names him.

APOLLOS
Luther's guess. The case: Apollos was a learned man from Alexandria, powerful in the Scriptures, Acts 18:24, which fits the polished Greek and the Old Testament arguments. He knew Paul and Timothy's circle. Against: no early writer names him.

LUKE OR CLEMENT
Clement of Alexandria thought Luke translated it, and the Greek has some things in common with Luke and Acts. Origen said some named Clement of Rome. Against: Clement quotes Hebrews in his own letter, and his style is plainer.

PRISCILLA
The German scholar Adolf von Harnack suggested her in 1900. The case: she taught Apollos the way of God more accurately, Acts 18:26, and the writer's name might have been dropped because she was a woman. Against: in 11:32 the writer says time would fail me to tell, and the Greek word for me telling is masculine.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON
The church accepted Hebrews as Scripture because of what it says about Je-

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

sus, not because of a name. Whoever held the pen, Origen's answer still stands: God knows.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Moses was a faithful servant in God's house. Jesus is the Son who owns the house. Then a warning from Psalm 95: Israel heard God's voice and hardened their hearts in the desert. Today, if you hear His voice, do not repeat their mistake.

JESUS OUR APOSTLE AND HIGH PRIEST

1 Therefore, holy brothers, who share in
the heavenly calling, set your focus on
Jesus, the apostle and high priest whom
we confess. 2 He was faithful to the One
who appointed Him, just as Moses was
faithful in all God's house.

3 For Jesus has been counted worthy of
greater glory than Moses, just as the
builder of a house has greater honor than
the house itself. 4 And every house is built
by someone, but God is the builder of
everything.

5 *Now Moses was faithful as a servant in all*
God's house, testifying to what would be spo-
ken later. 6 But Christ is faithful as the Son
over God's house. And we are His house,
if we hold firmly to our confidence and the
hope of which we boast.

DO NOT HARDEN YOUR HEARTS // PSALM 95:1–11

7 Therefore, as the Holy Spirit says:

"Today, if you hear His voice,
8 *do not harden your hearts,*
as you did in the rebellion,
in the day of testing in the wilderness,
9 *where your fathers tested and tried Me,*
and for forty years saw My works.
10 Therefore I was angry with that genera-
tion,
and I said,
'Their hearts are always going astray,
and they have not known My ways.'
11 So I swore on oath in My anger,
'They shall never enter My rest.'"

■ **HEB 3:2 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← NUM 12:7 p.242
■ **HEB 3:5 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← NUM 12:7 p.242
HEB 3:7 [FULFILLS] Today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts ← PS 95:7 · MEDIUM p.947
HEB 3:8 [HEART] Do not harden your hearts as in the rebellion.

THE PERIL OF UNBELIEF

12 See to it, brothers, that none of you has
a wicked heart of unbelief that turns away
from the living God. 13 But exhort one an-
other daily, as long as it is called today, so
that none of you may be hardened by sin's
deceitfulness.

14 We have come to share in Christ if we
hold firmly to the end the assurance we
had at first. 15 As it has been said:

"Today, if you hear His voice,
do not harden your hearts,
as you did in the rebellion."

16 For who were the ones who heard and
rebelled? Were they not all those Moses
led out of Egypt? 17 And with whom was
God angry for forty years? Was it not with
those who sinned, whose bodies fell in
the wilderness? 18 And to whom did He
swear that they would never enter His
rest? Was it not to those who disobeyed?
19 So we see that it was because of their
unbelief that they were unable to enter.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

God's rest is still open. Israel missed it, so do not miss it. God's word is sharper than a sword and sees right into the heart. The good news: our High Priest has felt every temptation, so walk right up to the throne of grace.

THE SABBATH REST // GENESIS 2:1–3; EXODUS 16:22–30

1 Therefore, while the promise of entering
His rest still stands, let us be careful that
none of you be deemed to have fallen
short of it. 2 For we also received the good
news just as they did; but the message
they heard was of no value to them, since
they did not share the faith of those who
comprehended it.

3 Now we who have believed enter that
rest. As for the others, it is just as God has
said:

"So I swore on oath in My anger,
'They shall never enter My rest.'"

HEB 3:12 [HEART] See that none of you has an evil, unbelieving heart that turns away from God.
HEB 3:15 [HEART] Today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts.
■ **HEB 3:15 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 95:7-8 p.947

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | THE HEART | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE

And yet His works have been finished since the foundation of the world. 4 For somewhere He has spoken about the seventh day in this manner: *"And on the seventh day God rested from all His works."* 5 And again, as He says in the passage above: *"They shall never enter My rest."*

6 Since, then, it remains for some to enter His rest, and since those who formerly heard the good news did not enter because of their disobedience, 7 God again designated a certain day as *"Today,"* when a long time later He spoke through David as was just stated: *"Today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts."*

8 For if Joshua had given them rest, God would not have spoken later about another day. 9 There remains, then, a Sabbath rest for the people of God. 10 For whoever enters God's rest also rests from his own work, just as God did from His. 11 Let us, therefore, make every effort to enter that rest, so that no one will fall by following the same pattern of disobedience.

THE LIVING WORD // 2 TIMOTHY 3:10–17

12 For the word of God is living and active. Sharper than any double-edged sword, it pierces even to dividing soul and spirit, joints and marrow. It judges the thoughts and intentions of the heart. 13 Nothing in all creation is hidden from God's sight; everything is uncovered and exposed before the eyes of Him to whom we must give account.

14 Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold firmly to what we profess. 15 For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but we have one who was tempted in every way that we are, yet was without sin. 16 Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace to help us in our time of need.

- **HEB 4:3 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 95:11 p.948
- **HEB 4:4 [FULFILLS]** God rested on the seventh day. This rest points to the rest believers find in Christ ← GEN 2:2-3 · MEDIUM p.48
- **HEB 4:5 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 95:11 p.948
- **HEB 4:7 [FULFILLS]** Today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts ← PS 95:7 · MEDIUM p.947
- **HEB 4:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JOSH 21:44; 22:4 p.371
- **HEB 4:9 [FULFILLS]** God rested on the seventh day. This rest points to the rest believers find in Christ ← GEN 2:2-3 · MEDIUM p.48
- **HEB 4:12 [HEART]** God's word judges the thoughts and intentions of the heart.
- **HEB 4:14 [NOTABLE]** Our High Priest was tempted in every way like us, yet without sin, so we can come to God boldly for mercy and help.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Every high priest is chosen by God, and Jesus was too, a priest in the order of Melchizedek. He learned obedience through what He suffered. Then the writer sighs: by now you should be teachers, but you still need baby food.

THE PERFECT HIGH PRIEST // PSALM 110:1–7

1 Every high priest is appointed from among men to represent them in matters relating to God, to offer gifts and sacrifices for sins. 2 He is able to deal gently with those who are ignorant and misguided, since he himself is subject to weakness. 3 That is why he is obligated to offer sacrifices for his own sins, as well as for the sins of the people.

4 No one takes this honor upon himself; he must be called by God, just as Aaron was. 5 So also Christ did not take upon Himself the glory of becoming a high priest, but He was called by the One who said to Him:

"You are My Son;
today I have become Your Father."

6 And in another passage God says:

"You are a priest forever
in the order of Melchizedek."

7 During the days of Jesus' earthly life, He offered up prayers and petitions with loud cries and tears to the One who could save Him from death, and He was heard because of His reverence. 8 Although He was a Son, He learned obedience from

- **HEB 4:15 [FULFILLS]** A man of sorrows acquainted with grief ← IS 53:3c p.1127
- **HEB 5:4 [FULFILLS]** Aaron was called by God to serve as high priest ← EX 28:1 p.157
- **HEB 5:5 [FULFILLS]** Declared to be the Beloved Son of God ← PS 2:7 p.884
- **HEB 5:5 [FULFILLS]** A crown was set on Joshua the high priest, joining priest and king ← ZECH 6:11 · MEDIUM p.1493
- **HEB 5:6 [FULFILLS]** A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek ← PS 110:4 p.960
- **HEB 5:7 [FULFILLS]** He cried for rescue from the sword and the wild dogs and 2 more ← PS 22:20-21; PS 22:24; PS 102:1-11 p.897

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE

what He suffered. 9 And having been made perfect, He became the source of eternal salvation to all who obey Him 10 and was designated by God as high priest in the order of Melchizedek.

MILK AND SOLID FOOD // 1 CORINTHIANS 3:1–9

11 We have much to say about this, but it is hard to explain, because you are dull of hearing. 12 Although by this time you ought to be teachers, you need someone to reteach you the basic principles of God's word. You need milk, not solid food!

13 For everyone who lives on milk is still an infant, inexperienced in the message of righteousness. 14 But solid food is for the mature, who by constant use have trained their senses to distinguish good from evil.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

Time to grow up. Then the scariest warning in the book: those who fall away cannot be brought back. But the writer is sure of better things for his readers. God swore an oath to Abraham, and that hope is an anchor for the soul.

A CALL TO MATURITY

1 Therefore let us leave the elementary teachings about Christ and go on to maturity, not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith in God, 2 instruction about baptisms, the laying on of hands, the resurrection of the dead, and eternal judgment. 3 And this we will do, if God permits.

4 It is impossible for those who have once been enlightened, who have tasted the heavenly gift, who have shared in the Holy Spirit, 5 who have tasted the goodness of the word of God and the powers of the coming age— 6 and then have fallen away—to be restored to repentance, because they themselves are crucifying the Son of God all over again and subjecting Him to open shame.

7 For land that drinks in the rain often falling on it and that produces a crop useful to those for whom it is tended receives the blessing of God. 8 But land that produces thorns and thistles is worthless, and its curse is imminent. In the end it will be burned.

9 Even though we speak like this, beloved, we are convinced of better things in your case—things that accompany salvation. 10 For God is not unjust. He will not forget your work and the love you have shown for His name as you have ministered to the saints and continue to do so.

11 We want each of you to show this same diligence to the very end, in order to make your hope sure. 12 Then you will not be sluggish, but will imitate those who through faith and patience inherit what has been promised.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

CAN A CHRISTIAN FALL AWAY?

The Warning Passages

HEBREWS 3:12 TO 14 · 6:4 TO 12 · 10:26 TO 39

WHAT HEBREWS SAID

It is impossible for those who have been enlightened, tasted the heavenly gift and shared in the Holy Spirit, and then have fallen away, to be restored to repentance, 6:4 to 6. If we deliberately go on sinning after we know the truth, no sacrifice for sins remains, 10:26. But the writer also says: we are confident of better things in your case, 6:9, and we are not of those who shrink back, 10:39.

THE FIRST CHRISTIANS

The Shepherd of Hermas, about AD 140, taught only one more chance to repent after baptism. Tertullian, about AD 210, used Hebrews 6 to say the church could not forgive the worst sins after baptism. When Emperor Decius persecuted the church in AD 250, many denied Christ. Novatian said they could never come back. Most churches, led by Cyprian of Carthage and the bishop of Rome, took them back after real repentance.

AUGUSTINE

About AD 428 Augustine wrote that God

- **HEB 5:10 [FULFILLS]** A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek ← PS 110:4 p.960
- **HEB 5:12 [NOTABLE]** By now they should be teachers, but they still need the ABCs. Grown up faith is trained by practice.
- **HEB 6:4 [NOTE]** CAN A CHRISTIAN FALL AWAY? This and 10:26 to 31 are the hardest warnings in the book. See the two Big Question pages, p.1983.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW

gives His chosen people the gift of perseverance, so they keep going to the end. He also believed some baptized people do not persevere.

THE REFORMATION

The Catholic Council of Trent, 1547, taught that grace can be lost by serious sin and regained through repentance and confession. John Calvin taught that true believers cannot finally fall away, and that Hebrews 6 describes people who tasted but never truly believed.

ARMINIUS AND DORT

Followers of the Dutch teacher Jacob Arminius said in 1610 that the question needed more study. The Synod of Dort, 1618 to 1619, answered with the perseverance of the saints. Later Arminians, and John Wesley in the 1700s, taught that a true believer can fall away and can also be restored.

TODAY

Many Baptists and Presbyterians say once saved, always saved, or that true believers persevere. Methodists, many Pentecostals, Churches of Christ, Catholics and the Orthodox say a believer can fall away. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

HEBREWS 6:4 TO 9 · 10:26 TO 39 · JOHN 10:28 TO 29 · 1 JOHN 2:19

THEY WERE NEVER SAVED

The Reformed view. These people tasted, but never truly fed. Like the field in 6:7 to 8, they never bore real fruit. Key verses: 1 John 2:19, John 10:28 to 29, Philippians 1:6 and Hebrews 6:9. Best case: it keeps every promise that God finishes what He starts.

TRUE BELIEVERS CAN FALL AWAY

The Arminian and Wesleyan view. Enlightened, sharing in the Holy Spirit and sanctified by the blood, 10:29, sound like real Christians. Key verses: Hebrews 3:12, 2 Peter 2:20 to 22, Galatians 5:4 and John 15:6. Best case: it reads the warnings plainly. Some say this falling away is final; others say a person can come back.

A WARNING GOD USES

Many today say the warnings are real, and they are one of the ways God keeps His people from falling, like a sign that says bridge out. Key verses: Hebrews 6:9 to 12, Philippians 2:12 to 13 and 1 Corinthians 10:12. Best case: it holds both the warnings and the promises together.

ONLY IF IT COULD HAPPEN

The hypothetical view. The writer is saying: if a Christian could fall away, there would be no way back, because Christ cannot be crucified again, 6:6. Since that is unthinkable, hold on. Best case: it explains the word impossible.

LOSS OF REWARDS

The Free Grace view. Falling away brings God's discipline and lost rewards, not hell. The burned field, 6:8, is like works burned up while the person is saved, 1 Corinthians 3:15. Best case: it guards that salvation is a free gift.

CATHOLIC AND ORTHODOX

Grace can be lost through serious sin and restored through repentance and confession. John Chrysostom, about AD 400, read 6:4 to 6 as no second baptism, not as no way back. Key verses: 1 John 1:9, James 5:19 to 20.

THE FIRST READERS

Many think the danger was Jewish believers turning back to the temple sacrifices. If you leave Jesus' sacrifice, no other sacrifice is left, 10:26.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus' sacrifice is the only one. Keep going, keep meeting, and keep your eyes on Him, 10:24 to 25 and 12:2. Many pastors also point out that a person worried about falling away is not the hard hearted rebel of 6:6.

GOD'S UNCHANGEABLE PROMISE

13 *When God made His promise to Abraham, since He had no one greater to swear by, He swore by Himself,* 14 saying, *"I will surely bless you and multiply your descendants."* 15 And so Abraham, after waiting patiently, obtained the promise.

16 Men swear by someone greater than themselves, and their oath serves as a confirmation to end all argument. 17 So when God wanted to make the unchang-

■ HEB 6:13 [QUOTES] Direct ← GEN 22:16-17 p.77

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW NOTABLE

ing nature of His purpose very clear to the heirs of the promise, He guaranteed it with an oath. 18 Thus by two unchangeable things in which it is impossible for God to lie, we who have fled to take hold of the hope set before us may be strongly encouraged.

19 We have this hope as an anchor for the soul, firm and secure. It enters the inner sanctuary behind the curtain, 20 where Jesus our forerunner has entered on our behalf. He has become a high priest forever in the order of Melchizedek.

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Meet Melchizedek, king of Salem and priest of God Most High, who blessed Abraham and got a tenth of his loot. No family tree, no birth, no death written down. Jesus is a priest like him: forever, sworn in by God, and always living to pray for us.

MELCHIZEDEK AND ABRAHAM // GENESIS 14:17–24

1 This Melchizedek was king of Salem and priest of God Most High. He met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him, 2 and Abraham apportioned to him a tenth of everything. First, his name means "king of righteousness." Then also, "king of Salem" means "king of peace." 3 Without father or mother or genealogy, without beginning of days or end of life, like the Son of God, he remains a priest for all time.

4 Consider how great Melchizedek was: Even the patriarch Abraham gave him a tenth of the plunder. 5 Now the law commands the sons of Levi who become priests to collect a tenth from the people—that is, from their brothers—though they too are descended from Abraham. 6 But Melchizedek, who did not trace his descent from Levi, collected a tenth from Abraham and blessed him who had the promises. 7 And indisputably, the lesser is blessed by the greater.

8 In the case of the Levites, mortal men collect the tenth; but in the case of Melchizedek, it is affirmed that he lives on. 9 And so to speak, Levi, who collects the tenth, paid the tenth through Abraham. 10 For when Melchizedek met Abraham, Levi was still in the loin of his ancestor.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE SCROLL · IT IS NOT ABOUT JESUS

THE MELCHIZEDEK SCROLL

HEBREWS 5:6 · 7:1 TO 3 · GENESIS 14:18 TO 20 · PSALM 110:4



Pieces of 11Q13, Plate 579. Photo Shai Halevi, Leon Levy Dead Sea Scrolls Digital Library, Israel Antiquities Authority.

- **HEB 6:18 [FULFILLS]** Cities of refuge gave safety to those who fled there ← NUM 35:11-12 · MEDIUM p.278
- **HEB 6:19 [NOTABLE]** The anchor became one of the earliest Christian symbols, carved in the Roman catacombs.
- **HEB 6:20 [FULFILLS]** A priest in the order of Melchizedek ← GEN 14:18 p.67
- **HEB 6:20 [FULFILLS]** A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek ← PS 110:4 p.960
- **HEB 7:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A Dead Sea Scroll from Qumran Cave 11, first century BC, where Melchizedek is a heavenly figure who brings release on a Day of Atonement → FIELD NOTES p.1985
- **HEB 7:1 [FULFILLS]** Behold the Man whose name is the BRANCH; He shall build the temple of Yahweh; He shall be a priest on His throne ← ZECH 6:12-13 p.1494
- **HEB 7:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 14:17-20 p.67
- **HEB 7:2 [FULFILLS]** King of righteousness and king of peace (Salem) ← GEN 14:18 p.67
- **HEB 7:3 [NOTABLE]** Some scholars speculate that Melchizedek, the priest king who blessed Abram in Genesis 14:18, was really Jesus appearing before He was born. No father, no mother, no beginning and no end sounds like the Son of God Himself. Others say it means Genesis never names his parents, which makes him a picture of Jesus.
- **HEB 7:3 [NOTE]** WHO WAS MELCHIZEDEK? Three answers. A real king and priest whose family the Bible never lists, so he pictures Christ. Jesus Himself, appearing before He was born in Bethlehem. Or Shem, the son of Noah, as Jewish tradition and Martin Luther said. Made like the Son of God suggests he was a picture, not the Son Himself. See The Melchizedek Scroll Field Notes page, p.1985.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

WHAT IT IS
Pieces of a Hebrew scroll found in Cave 11 at Qumran, near the Dead Sea. Scholars call it 11Q13, or 11QMelchizedek. It strings Old Testament verses together to explain what will happen at the end of days.

HOW OLD IT IS
Copied in the first century BC, most say about 75 to 50 BC. Bedouin found Cave 11 in 1956, and the Dutch scholar Adam van der Woude published the scroll in 1965.

WHAT IT SAYS
Melchizedek appears as a heavenly figure. At the end of the tenth jubilee he will proclaim liberty to the captives, Isaiah 61:1, and bring atonement on a Day of Atonement. He judges Belial, a name for Satan, and his spirits. The scroll even takes God stands in the divine assembly, Psalm 82:1, and applies it to Melchizedek.

OTHER JEWISH IDEAS
The Jewish writer Philo, about AD 40, called Melchizedek a priest king and a picture of God's Word. Later rabbis said he was Shem, the son of Noah, and Martin Luther agreed. Another old book, 2 Enoch, tells a strange story of his miracle birth.

HEBREWS IS DIFFERENT
Hebrews never says Melchizedek was an angel or that he will come back. It reads Genesis 14 carefully: no father, mother, birth or death is written down, so he is made like the Son of God, 7:3. The real eternal priest is Jesus, Psalm 110:4.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE
It shows that Jews before Jesus were already asking big questions about Melchizedek. The first readers of Hebrews may have heard ideas like these.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
The scroll never mentions Jesus or Hebrews, and its Melchizedek is not the same as the one in Hebrews.

A SUPERIOR PRIESTHOOD

11 Now if perfection could have been attained through the Levitical priesthood (for on this basis the people received the law), why was there still need for another priest to appear—one in the order of Melchizedek and not in the order of Aaron? 12 For when the priesthood is changed, the law must be changed as well.

13 He of whom these things are said belonged to a different tribe, from which no one has ever served at the altar. 14 For it is clear that our Lord descended from Judah, a tribe as to which Moses said nothing about priests.

15 And this point is even more clear if another priest like Melchizedek appears, 16 one who has become a priest not by a law of succession, but by the power of an indestructible life. 17 For it is testified:

"You are a priest forever
in the order of Melchizedek."

18 So the former commandment is set aside because it was weak and useless 19 (for the law made nothing perfect), and a better hope is introduced, by which we draw near to God.

20 And none of this happened without an oath. For others became priests without an oath, 21 but Jesus became a priest with an oath by the One who said to Him:

"The Lord has sworn and will not change
His mind:
'You are a priest forever.'"

22 Because of this oath, Jesus has become the guarantee of a better covenant.

23 Now there have been many other priests, since death prevented them from continuing in office. 24 But because Jesus lives forever, He has a permanent priesthood. 25 Therefore He is able to save completely those who draw near to God through Him, since He always lives to intercede for them.

26 Such a high priest truly befits us—One who is holy, innocent, undefiled, set apart

- **HEB 7:16 [FULFILLS]** 'Length of days forever and ever' ← PS 21:4 · MEDIUM p.896
- **HEB 7:17 [FULFILLS]** A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek ← PS 110:4 p.960
- **HEB 7:21 [FULFILLS]** A priest forever in the order of Melchizedek ← PS 110:4 p.960
- **HEB 7:24 [FULFILLS]** A faithful and lasting High Priest would arise ← 1SA 2:35 · MEDIUM p.441

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW ARCHAEOLOGY *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

from sinners, and exalted above the heavens. 27 Unlike the other high priests, He does not need to offer daily sacrifices, first for His own sins and then for the sins of the people; He sacrificed for sin once for all when He offered up Himself. 28 For the law appoints as high priests men who are weak; but the oath, which came after the law, appointed the Son, who has been made perfect forever.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

Our High Priest serves in the real sanctuary, in heaven. The earthly one was only a copy. God promised a new covenant in Jeremiah 31, with His laws written on hearts. New means the old one is getting ready to vanish.

CHRIST'S ETERNAL PRIESTHOOD

1 The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, 2 and who ministers in the sanctuary and true tabernacle set up by the Lord, not by man. 3 And since every high priest is appointed to offer both gifts and sacrifices, it was necessary for this One also to have something to offer.

4 Now if He were on earth, He would not be a priest, since there are already priests who offer gifts according to the law. 5 The place where they serve is a copy and shadow of what is in heaven. This is why Moses was warned when he was about to build the tabernacle: *"See to it that you make everything according to the pattern shown you on the mountain."*

THE NEW COVENANT // JEREMIAH 31:26–40

6 Now, however, Jesus has received a much more excellent ministry, just as the covenant He mediates is better and is founded on better promises. 7 For if that first covenant had been without fault, no place would have been sought for a second. 8 But God found fault with the people and said:

"Behold, the days are coming, declares the Lord,
when I will make a new covenant
with the house of Israel
and with the house of Judah.
9 *It will not be like the covenant*
I made with their fathers
when I took them by the hand
to lead them out of the land of Egypt,
because they did not abide by My covenant,
and I disregarded them,
declares the Lord.
10 *For this is the covenant I will make*
with the house of Israel
after those days,
declares the Lord.
I will put My laws in their minds
and inscribe them on their hearts.
And I will be their God,
and they will be My people.
11 No longer will each one teach his neighbor or his brother,
saying, *'Know the Lord,'*
because they will all know Me,
from the least of them to the greatest.
12 *For I will forgive their iniquities*
and will remember their sins no more."

13 By speaking of a new covenant, He has made the first one obsolete; and what is obsolete and aging will soon disappear.

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

A tour of the tabernacle: lampstand, table, ark and the Most Holy Place, where the high priest went once a year with blood. Jesus entered heaven itself with His own blood, once for all. People die once and then face judgment, and He is coming again.

THE EARTHLY TABERNACLE // EXODUS 40:1–33; ACTS 7:44–47

1 Now the first covenant had regulations for worship and also an earthly sanctuary.

- **HEB 7:26 [FULFILLS]** Aaron was called by God to serve as high priest ← EX 28:1 p.157
- **HEB 8:1 [FULFILLS]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **HEB 8:1 [FULFILLS]** Behold the Man whose name is the BRANCH; He shall build the temple of Yahweh; He shall be a priest on His throne ← ZECH 6:12-13 p.1494
- **HEB 8:5 [FULFILLS]** God would dwell among His people in the tabernacle ← EX 25:8 p.154
- **HEB 8:5 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 25:40 p.155
- **HEB 8:6 [FULFILLS]** Messenger of the New Covenant ← MAL 3:1c · MEDIUM p.1514
- **HEB 8:8 [FULFILLS]** God would make a new covenant, write His law on hearts, and remember sins no more ← JER 31:31-34 p.1192
- **HEB 8:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A stone from the top of the Temple Mount wall with Hebrew words: to the place of trumpeting, found in 1968 → FIELD NOTES p.1988

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

2 A tabernacle was prepared. In its first room were the lampstand, the table, and the consecrated bread. This was called the Holy Place. 3 Behind the second curtain was a room called the Most Holy Place, 4 containing the golden altar of incense and the gold-covered ark of the covenant. Inside the ark were the gold jar of manna, Aaron's staff that had budded, and the stone tablets of the covenant. 5 Above the ark were the cherubim of glory, overshadowing the mercy seat. But we cannot discuss these things in detail now.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · THE LAST WORD IS BROKEN

THE PLACE OF TRUMPETING

HEBREWS 8:13 · 10:1 TO 2 · NUMBERS 10:10



The Trumpeting Place stone, Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Andrey Zeigarnik, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

A big limestone block from the top of the Temple Mount wall that King Herod built. Carved on it in Hebrew are the words to the place of trumpeting, followed by a broken word. Many read it as to announce, or to separate, holy days from ordinary days.

HOW OLD IT IS

Carved while Herod's temple was being built, between about 20 BC and AD 64. In 1968 Benjamin Mazar's dig found it lying on the street at the foot of the southwest corner, where Roman soldiers threw it down in AD 70. It is about 8 feet long and is now in the Israel Museum. The one at the site is a copy.

THE HIGH CORNER

The stone fell from the southwest corner, where two of the great walls met high above a busy street of shops. Some think this corner was the pinnacle of the temple where the devil took Jesus, Matthew 4:5, but that is only a guess.

WHAT JOSEPHUS SAID

The Jewish historian Josephus, about AD 75, says a priest stood up high on the temple wall and blew a trumpet to announce when the Sabbath began each Friday evening and when it ended the next evening.

TRUMPETS IN THE BIBLE

God told the priests to blow silver trumpets on feast days and new moons, Numbers 10:10. Hebrews 12:19 remembers the trumpet blast at Mount Sinai.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

When Hebrews was written the temple was still standing, and priests still offered sacrifices, 10:1 to 2. The writer says the old covenant is aging and will soon disappear, 8:13. A few years later this stone lay in the street, and the trumpets were silent.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The stone tells about the temple, not about Hebrews or who wrote it. The broken last word means part of its meaning is a guess.

HEB 9:2 [ARCHAEOLOGY] Relief on the Arch of Titus in Rome, about AD 81, showing Roman soldiers carrying the temple lampstand, table and trumpets from Jerusalem → FIELD NOTES p.1989

HEB 9:4 [FULFILLS] A jar of manna was kept before Yahweh for later generations ← EX 16:33 · MEDIUM p.144

HEB 9:4 [FULFILLS] The staff of the man God chose would sprout ← NUM 17:5 p.250

HEB 9:4 [NOTE] THE GOLDEN ALTAR. Exodus 30:6 puts the incense altar just outside the curtain. The Greek word here can mean altar or censer. Many think Hebrews means the altar belonged to the Most Holy Place, as 1 Kings 6:22 says.

HEB 9:5 [FULFILLS] God would meet His people above the mercy seat ← EX 25:22 · MEDIUM p.154

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · LATER THAN HEBREWS

THE TEMPLE TREASURES IN ROME

HEBREWS 9:1 TO 5 · EXODUS 25:23 TO 40 · NUMBERS 10:2



The spoils panel inside the Arch of Titus, Rome. Photo Sailko, CC BY 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A carved marble panel inside the Arch of Titus in Rome. Roman soldiers wearing victory wreaths carry the golden lampstand from the temple in Jerusalem. Next to it they carry the table for the bread of the Presence, with two long silver trumpets leaning across it, and signs held up on poles.

HOW OLD IT IS

The arch was built about AD 81 by Emperor Domitian to honor his brother Titus, who had just died. It shows the victory parade of AD 71, after Titus' army destroyed Jerusalem in AD 70. The arch was repaired in the early 1800s, but this panel is the ancient original, worn by time.

JOSEPHUS SAW IT

Josephus watched the parade in Rome. He says the golden table, the lampstand and a copy of the Jewish Law were carried in it. Emperor Vespasian put the treasures in his new Temple of Peace, finished in AD 75.

HEBREWS 9:2

The first room had the lampstand, the table and the consecrated bread. Hebrews describes the tabernacle of Moses' day, Exodus 25, and says Jesus entered the real Most Holy Place, heaven itself, 9:24.

WHERE DID IT GO?

The writer Procopius says the Vandals carried the treasures from Rome to Carthage in AD 455, and a Roman general brought them to Constantinople in 534. After that no one knows. Stories that the lampstand is hidden in the Vatican have no proof.

THE LAMPSTAND TODAY

In 1949 the new State of Israel put this very lampstand from the arch on its national emblem. Another panel of the same arch is in the 2 Corinthians Field Notes, A Roman Triumph, p.1849.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The arch is later than Hebrews and shows Herod's temple treasures, not the tabernacle items Hebrews describes.

6 When everything had been prepared in
this way, the priests entered regularly into
the first room to perform their sacred du-
ties. 7 But only the high priest entered the
second room, and then only once a year,
and never without blood, which he offered
for himself and for the sins the people had
committed in ignorance.

8 By this arrangement the Holy Spirit was
showing that the way into the Most Holy
Place had not yet been disclosed as long
as the first tabernacle was still standing. 9
It is an illustration for the present time, be-
cause the gifts and sacrifices being of-
fered were unable to cleanse the con-
science of the worshiper. 10 They consist
only in food and drink and special
washings—external regulations imposed
until the time of reform.

REDEMPTION THROUGH HIS BLOOD

11 But when Christ came as high priest of
the good things that have come, He went
through the greater and more perfect
tabernacle that is not made by hands and
is not a part of this creation. 12 He did not
enter by the blood of goats and calves,
but He entered the Most Holy Place once
for all by His own blood, thus securing
eternal redemption.

13 For if the blood of goats and bulls and
the ashes of a heifer sprinkled on those
who are ceremonially unclean sanctify

- **HEB 9:7 [FULFILLS]** Day of Atonement prefigures Christ's once-for-all sacrifice ← LEV 16:15-17 p.199
- **HEB 9:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 16:2, 34 p.198
- **HEB 9:11 [FULFILLS]** Day of Atonement prefigures Christ's once-for-all sacrifice ← LEV 16:15-17 p.199
- **HEB 9:11 [FULFILLS]** The Most Holy Place would be anointed ← DAN 9:24c · MEDIUM p.1346

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE | JESUS SPEAKING

them so that their bodies are clean, 14 how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself unblemished to God, purify our consciences from works of death, so that we may serve the living God!

15 Therefore Christ is the mediator of a new covenant, so that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance, now that He has died to redeem them from the transgressions committed under the first covenant.

16 In the case of a will, it is necessary to establish the death of the one who made it, 17 because a will does not take effect until the one who made it has died; it cannot be executed while he is still alive.

18 That is why even the first covenant was not put into effect without blood. 19 For when Moses had proclaimed every commandment of the law to all the people, he took the blood of calves and goats, along with water, scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled the scroll and all the people, 20 saying, *"This is the blood of the covenant, which God has commanded you to keep."*

21 In the same way, he sprinkled with blood the tabernacle and all the vessels used in worship. 22 According to the law, in fact, nearly everything must be purified with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.

23 So it was necessary for the copies of the heavenly things to be purified with these sacrifices, but the heavenly things themselves with better sacrifices than these. 24 For Christ did not enter a man-made copy of the true sanctuary, but He entered heaven itself, now to appear on our behalf in the presence of God.

25 Nor did He enter heaven to offer Himself again and again, as the high priest enters the Most Holy Place every year with blood that is not his own. 26 Otherwise, Christ would have had to suffer repeatedly since the foundation of the world. But now He has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to do away with sin by the sacrifice of Himself.

27 Just as man is appointed to die once, and after that to face judgment, 28 so also Christ was offered once to bear the sins of many; and He will appear a second time, not to bear sin, but to bring salvation to those who eagerly await Him.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

The old sacrifices were like reruns that never fixed anything. Jesus offered Himself once and sat down, job done. So come near to God, hold on, and keep meeting together. Then another stern warning, and a reminder: you already endured a lot, so do not throw your confidence away now.

CHRIST'S PERFECT SACRIFICE // PSALM 40:1–17

1 For the law is only a shadow of the good things to come, not the realities themselves. It can never, by the same sacrifices offered year after year, make perfect those who draw near to worship. 2 If it could, would not the offerings have ceased? For the worshipers would have been cleansed once for all, and would no longer have felt the guilt of their sins.

3 Instead, those sacrifices are an annual reminder of sins, 4 because it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins. 5 Therefore, when Christ came into the world, He said:

"Sacrifice and offering You did not desire,

- **HEB 9:13 [FULFILLS]** A spotless red heifer was killed outside the camp for cleansing ← NUM 19:2-3 · MEDIUM p.252
- **HEB 9:13 [FULFILLS]** His sprinkled blood would cleanse the nations ← IS 52:15 p.1127
- **HEB 9:14 [FULFILLS]** A spotless, blemish-free Lamb required for atonement ← EX 12:5 p.135
- **HEB 9:15 [FULFILLS]** God would make a new covenant, write His law on hearts, and remember sins no more ← JER 31:31-34 p.1192
- **HEB 9:18 [FULFILLS]** This is the blood of the covenant ← EX 24:8 p.153
- **HEB 9:20 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 24:8 p.153
- **HEB 9:22 [FULFILLS]** God covered Adam and Eve with animal skins, a picture of sin covered by sacrifice ← GEN 3:21 · MEDIUM p.51
- **HEB 9:24 [FULFILLS]** Day of Atonement prefigures Christ's once-for-all sacrifice ← LEV 16:15-17 p.199
- **HEB 9:25 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← LEV 16:2, 34 p.198
- **HEB 9:27 [NOTABLE]** One life, one death, then judgment. Compare the 2 Maccabees 12:45 note on prayer for the dead.
- **HEB 9:28 [PROPHECY]** Christ was offered once to bear the sins of many. To those who eagerly wait for Him He will appear a second time, apart from sin, for salvation → STILL TO COME
- **HEB 9:28 [FULFILLS]** The scapegoat carried the people's sins away into the wilderness ← LEV 16:21-22 · MEDIUM p.199
- **HEB 9:28 [FULFILLS]** He would bear the iniquities of many ← IS 53:11c p.1128
- **HEB 9:28 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 53:12 p.1128

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE | JESUS SPEAKING

but a body You prepared for Me.
6 *In burnt offerings and sin offerings*
You took no delight.
7 Then I said, *'Here I am, it is written about*
Me in the scroll:
I have come to do Your will, O God.'"

8 In the passage above He says, *"Sacrifices and offerings, burnt offerings and sin offerings You did not desire, nor did You delight in them"* (although they are offered according to the law). 9 Then He adds, *"Here I am, I have come to do Your will."* He takes away the first to establish the second. 10 And by that will, we have been sanctified through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

11 Day after day every priest stands to minister and to offer again and again the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins. 12 But when this Priest had offered for all time one sacrifice for sins, He sat down at the right hand of God. 13 Since that time, He waits for His enemies to be made a footstool for His feet, 14 because by a single offering He has made perfect for all time those who are being sanctified.

15 The Holy Spirit also testifies to us about this. First He says:

16 *"This is the covenant I will make with them*
after those days, declares the Lord.
I will put My laws in their hearts
and inscribe them on their minds."

17 Then He adds:

"Their sins and lawless acts
I will remember no more."

18 And where these have been forgiven, an offering for sin is no longer needed.

A CALL TO PERSEVERE // JUDE 1:17–23

19 Therefore, brothers, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, 20 by the new and living way opened for us through the curtain of His body, 21 and since we have a great priest over the house of God, 22 let us draw near with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled to cleanse us from a guilty conscience and our bodies washed with pure water.

23 Let us hold resolutely to the hope we profess, for He who promised is faithful. 24 And let us consider how to spur one another on to love and good deeds. 25 Let us not neglect meeting together, as some have made a habit, but let us encourage one another, and all the more as you see the Day approaching.

26 If we deliberately go on sinning after we have received the knowledge of the truth, no further sacrifice for sins remains, 27 but only a fearful expectation of judgment and of raging fire that will consume all adversaries. 28 Anyone who rejected the law of Moses died without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses. 29 How much more severely do you think one deserves to be punished who has trampled on the Son of God, profaned the blood of the covenant that sanctified him, and insulted the Spirit of grace?

30 For we know Him who said, *"Vengeance is Mine; I will repay,"* and again, *"The Lord will*

- **HEB 10:5 [FULFILLS]** His delight was to do the Father's will ← PS 40:6-8 p.910
- **HEB 10:5 [TEXT]** A body You prepared for Me follows the Greek Old Testament of Psalm 40:6. The Hebrew says My ears You have opened.
- **HEB 10:8 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 40:6-8 p.910
- **HEB 10:10 [FULFILLS]** Behold, I am bringing forth My Servant the BRANCH; upon one stone are seven eyes ← ZECH 3:8-9 p.1491
- **HEB 10:12 [FULFILLS]** His declaration: 'It is finished' and 2 more ← PS 22:31; PS 110:1; ZECH 3:8-9 p.898
- **HEB 10:14 [FULFILLS]** His declaration: 'It is finished' ← PS 22:31 · MEDIUM p.898
- **HEB 10:14 [FULFILLS]** Behold, I am bringing forth My Servant the BRANCH; upon one stone are seven eyes ← ZECH 3:8-9 p.1491
- **HEB 10:16 [FULFILLS]** God would make a new covenant, write His law on hearts, and remember sins no more ← JER 31:31-34 p.1192
- **HEB 10:16 [FULFILLS]** I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you; I will put My Spirit within you ← EZK 36:26-27 p.1300
- **HEB 10:16 [QUOTES]** Direct ← JER 31:33-34 p.1192
- **HEB 10:18 [FULFILLS]** His declaration: 'It is finished' ← PS 22:31 · MEDIUM p.898
- **HEB 10:19 [FULFILLS]** The veil separated the people from the Most Holy Place ← EX 26:33 p.156
- **HEB 10:22 [HEART]** Come near to God with a sincere heart in full assurance of faith.
- **HEB 10:22 [FULFILLS]** God would sprinkle clean water and cleanse His people ← EZK 36:25 · MEDIUM p.1300
- **HEB 10:24 [NOTABLE]** Some had already stopped coming. Faith is not a solo sport.
- **HEB 10:26 [NOTE]** SEE 6:4. For every view on this warning, see the Big Question pages, Can a Christian Fall Away?, p.1983
- **HEB 10:27 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 26:11 p.1092
- **HEB 10:28 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DT 17:6; DT 19:15 p.306
- **HEB 10:30 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 32:35-36 p.328

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE

judge His people." 31 It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.

32 Remember the early days that you were in the light. In those days, you endured a great conflict in the face of suffering. 33 Sometimes you were publicly exposed to ridicule and persecution; at other times you were partners with those who were so treated. 34 You sympathized with those in prison and joyfully accepted the confiscation of your property, knowing that you yourselves had a better and permanent possession.

35 So do not throw away your confidence; it holds a great reward. 36 You need to persevere, so that after you have done the will of God, you will receive what He has promised. 37 For,

"In just a little while,
He who is coming will come and will not delay.
38 *But My righteous one will live by faith;*
and if he shrinks back,
I will take no pleasure in him."

39 But we are not of those who shrink back and are destroyed, but of those who have faith and preserve their souls.

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Faith's hall of fame: Abel, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Sarah, Moses, even Rahab. They trusted God without seeing the finish line. Some won battles, some were sawed in two. None of them got everything promised yet, because God had planned something better.

FAITH AND ASSURANCE // GENESIS 1:1–2; JOHN 1:1–5

1 Now faith is the assurance of what we hope for and the certainty of what we do not see. 2 This is why the ancients were commended.

3 By faith we understand that the universe was formed at God's command, so that what is seen was not made out of what was visible.

THE FAITH OF ABEL, ENOCH, NOAH // GENESIS 4–9

4 By faith Abel offered God a better sacrifice than Cain did. By faith he was commended as righteous when God gave approval to his gifts. And by faith he still speaks, even though he is dead.

5 By faith Enoch was taken up so that he did not see death: *"He could not be found, because God had taken him away."* For before he was taken, he was commended as one who pleased God.

6 And without faith it is impossible to please God. For anyone who approaches Him must believe that He exists and that He rewards those who earnestly seek Him.

7 By faith Noah, when warned about things not yet seen, in godly fear built an ark to save his family. By faith he condemned the world and became heir of the righteousness that comes by faith.

THE FAITH OF ABRAHAM AND SARAH // GENESIS 15–22; ROMANS 4:1–12

8 By faith Abraham, when called to go to a place he would later receive as his inheritance, obeyed and went, without knowing where he was going. 9 By faith he dwelt in the promised land as a stranger in a foreign country. He lived in tents, as did Isaac and Jacob, who were heirs with him of the same promise. 10 For he was looking forward to the city with foundations, whose architect and builder is God.

11 By faith Sarah, even though she was barren and beyond the proper age, was enabled to conceive a child, because she considered Him faithful who had promised. 12 And so from one man, and he

- **HEB 10:34 [TEXT]** Many old copies say you sympathized with the prisoners. Others, followed by the KJV, say with me in my bonds.
- **HEB 10:37 [PROPHECY]** Yet a little while, and He who is coming will come and will not tarry → STILL TO COME
- **HEB 10:37 [QUOTES]** Direct ← HAB 2:3-4; IS 26:20 p.1458
- **HEB 11:1 [NOTABLE]** The Bible's best known definition of faith. The KJV says the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.
- **HEB 11:1 [NOTE]** FAITH. The KJV says faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen. Sirach 44 to 50, Praise of the Fathers, lists heroes like this chapter does, but Hebrews 11 ends with Jesus, 12:2.
- **HEB 11:3 [NOTABLE]** God made everything by His word, Genesis 1. Compare 2 Maccabees 7:28.
- **HEB 11:5 [FULFILLS]** Enoch's bodily translation prefigures Christ's bodily ascension ← GEN 5:24 · MEDIUM p.54
- **HEB 11:6 [NOTABLE]** Anyone who comes to Him must believe that He exists and that He rewards those who seek Him.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MESSIANIC FORESHADOW *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW*

as good as dead, came descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and as countless as the sand on the seashore.

13 All these people died in faith, without having received the things they were promised. However, they saw them and welcomed them from afar. And they acknowledged that they were strangers and exiles on the earth.

14 Now those who say such things show that they are seeking a country of their own. 15 If they had been thinking of the country they had left, they would have had opportunity to return. 16 Instead, they were longing for a better country, a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed to be called their God, for He has prepared a city for them.

17 By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac on the altar. He who had received the promises was ready to offer his one and only son, 18 even though God had said to him, *"Through Isaac your offspring will be reckoned."* 19 Abraham reasoned that God could raise the dead, and in a sense, he did receive Isaac back from death.

THE FAITH OF ISAAC, JACOB, AND JOSEPH // GENESIS 27–50

20 By faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau concerning the future.

21 *By faith Jacob, when he was dying, blessed each of Joseph's sons and worshiped as he leaned on the top of his staff.*

22 By faith Joseph, when his end was near, spoke about the exodus of the Israelites and gave instructions about his bones.

THE FAITH OF MOSES // EXODUS 2–15; ACTS 7:20–22

23 By faith Moses' parents hid him for three months after his birth, because they saw that he was a beautiful child, and they were unafraid of the king's edict.

24 By faith Moses, when he was grown, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter. 25 He chose to suffer oppression with God's people rather than to experience the fleeting enjoyment of sin. 26 He valued disgrace for Christ above the treasures of Egypt, for he was looking ahead to his reward.

27 By faith Moses left Egypt, not fearing the king's anger; he persevered because he saw Him who is invisible. 28 By faith he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn would not touch Israel's own firstborn.

29 By faith the people passed through the Red Sea as on dry land; but when the Egyptians tried to follow, they were drowned.

THE FAITH OF MANY // JOSHUA–MALACHI

30 By faith the walls of Jericho fell, after the people had marched around them for seven days.

31 By faith the prostitute Rahab, because she welcomed the spies in peace, did not perish with those who were disobedient.

32 And what more shall I say? Time will not allow me to tell of Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and the prophets, 33 who through faith conquered kingdoms, administered justice, and gained what was promised; who shut the mouths of lions, 34 quenched the raging fire, and escaped the edge of the sword; who gained strength from weakness, became mighty in battle, and put foreign armies to flight.

35 Women received back their dead, raised to life again. Others were tortured and refused their release, so that they might gain a better resurrection. 36 Still others endured mocking and flogging, and even chains and imprisonment.

37 They were stoned, they were sawed in two, they were put to death by the sword.

- **HEB 11:12 [FULFILLS]** Abraham's offspring would be as many as the stars ← GEN 15:5 p.67
- **HEB 11:17 [FULFILLS]** Abraham was told to offer his only son whom he loved ← GEN 22:2 p.76
- **HEB 11:18 [FULFILLS]** Abraham's promised offspring would come through Isaac ← GEN 21:12 p.75
- **HEB 11:21 [QUOTES]** Direct ← GEN 47:31 p.112
- **HEB 11:30 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JOSH 6:20 p.346
- **HEB 11:31 [FULFILLS]** The scarlet cord in Rahab's window saved her whole household ← JOSH 2:18 · MEDIUM p.339
- **HEB 11:32 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JUDG 4:6; 6:12; 11:29; 13:24; 1SA 3:20; 16:13 p.386
- **HEB 11:35 [NOTE]** TORTURED. Women received back their dead: 1 Kings 17:22 and 2 Kings 4:36. Others refused release to gain a better resurrection most likely means the mother and seven sons in 2 Maccabees 7.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

They went around in sheepskins and goatskins, destitute, oppressed, and mistreated. 38 The world was not worthy of them. They wandered in deserts and mountains, and hid in caves and holes in the ground.

39 These were all commended for their faith, yet they did not receive what was promised. 40 God had planned something better for us, so that together with us they would be made perfect.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

So run your race with that crowd of witnesses around you, eyes on Jesus. Hard times can be a Father's training. You did not come to a scary mountain of fire like Sinai, but to Mount Zion and the city of the living God. Do not refuse Him.

A CALL TO ENDURANCE // 2 TIMOTHY 2:1–13

1 Therefore, since we are surrounded by such a great cloud of witnesses, let us throw off every encumbrance and the sin that so easily entangles, and let us run with endurance the race set out for us. 2 Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith, who for the joy set before Him endured the cross, scorning its shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of God. 3 Consider Him who endured such hostility from sinners, so that you will not grow weary and lose heart.

GOD DISCIPLINES HIS SONS

4 In your struggle against sin, you have not yet resisted to the point of shedding your blood. 5 And you have forgotten the exhortation that addresses you as sons:

"My son, do not take lightly the discipline of the Lord,
and do not lose heart when He rebukes you.
6 For the Lord disciplines the one He loves,
and He chastises every son He receives."

7 Endure suffering as discipline; God is treating you as sons. For what son is not disciplined by his father? 8 If you do not experience discipline like everyone else, then you are illegitimate children and not true sons. 9 Furthermore, we have all had earthly fathers who disciplined us, and we respected them. Should we not much more submit to the Father of our spirits and live?

10 Our fathers disciplined us for a short time as they thought best, but God disciplines us for our good, so that we may share in His holiness. 11 No discipline seems enjoyable at the time, but painful. Later on, however, it yields a harvest of righteousness and peace to those who have been trained by it.

12 Therefore strengthen your limp hands and weak knees. 13 Make straight paths for your feet, so that the lame may not be disabled, but rather healed.

A CALL TO HOLINESS // 1 PETER 1:13–21

14 Pursue peace with everyone, as well as holiness, without which no one will see the Lord. 15 See to it that no one falls short of the grace of God, and that no root of bitterness springs up to cause trouble and defile many. 16 See to it that no one is sexually immoral, or is godless like Esau, who for a single meal sold his birthright. 17 For you know that afterward, when he wanted to inherit the blessing, he was rejected. He could find no ground for repentance, though he sought the blessing with tears.

AN UNSHAKABLE KINGDOM // EXODUS 20:18–21; DEUTERONOMY 5:22–33

18 For you have not come to a mountain that can be touched and that is burning with fire; to darkness, gloom, and storm; 19 to a trumpet blast or to a voice that made its hearers beg that no further word be spoken. 20 For they could not bear what

- **HEB 11:37 [NOTE]** SAWED IN TWO. The Old Testament never says this. Jewish tradition, in the Ascension of Isaiah and the Talmud, says King Manasseh had Isaiah sawed in two.
- **HEB 12:1 [NOTABLE]** The heroes of chapter 11 finished their race. Now it is our turn, eyes fixed on Jesus.
- **HEB 12:1 [NOTE]** CLOUD OF WITNESSES. Some say the heroes of chapter 11 watch us from heaven like fans in a stadium. Others say they are witnesses because their lives speak to us, as 11:4 says Abel still speaks. Both views agree on the point: run.
- **HEB 12:2 [FULFILLS]** David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960
- **HEB 12:5 [NOTABLE]** Hard times can be a Father's training, not His rejection. It hurts now and yields peace later.
- **HEB 12:5 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PROV 3:11-12 p.990
- **HEB 12:12 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← IS 35:3; PROV 4:26 p.1102
- **HEB 12:14 [NOTABLE]** Two things to chase on purpose, not wait for.
- **HEB 12:15 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DT 29:18 p.323

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | END TIMES PROPHECIES | THE HEART | MIRACLES
OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW | NOTABLE

was commanded: *"If even an animal touches the mountain, it must be stoned."* 21 The sight was so terrifying that even Moses said, *"I am trembling with fear."*

22 Instead, you have come to Mount Zion, to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem. You have come to myriads of angels 23 in joyful assembly, to the congregation of the firstborn, enrolled in heaven. You have come to God the Judge of all, to the spirits of the righteous made perfect, 24 to Jesus the mediator of a new covenant, and to the sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than the blood of Abel.

25 See to it that you do not refuse Him who speaks. For if the people did not escape when they refused Him who warned them on earth, how much less will we escape if we reject Him who warns us from heaven? 26 At that time His voice shook the earth, but now He has promised, *"Once more I will shake not only the earth, but heaven as well."* 27 The words "Once more" signify the removal of what can be shaken—that is, created things—so that the unshakable may remain.

28 Therefore, since we are receiving an unshakable kingdom, let us be filled with gratitude, and so worship God acceptably with reverence and awe. 29 *"For our God is a consuming fire."*

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

Love one another, open your home, remember the prisoners, honor marriage, skip the love of money. Jesus is the same yesterday, today and forever. Offer God a sacrifice of praise. And good news: Timothy is out of jail. Grace be with you all.

BROTHERLY LOVE

1 Continue in brotherly love. 2 Do not neglect to show hospitality to strangers, for by so doing some people have entertained angels without knowing it. 3 Remember those in prison as if you were bound with them, and those who are mistreated as if you were suffering with them.

4 Marriage should be honored by all and the marriage bed kept undefiled, for God will judge the sexually immoral and adulterers.

CHRIST'S UNCHANGING NATURE

5 Keep your lives free from the love of money and be content with what you have, for God has said:

"Never will I leave you,
never will I forsake you."

6 So we say with confidence:

"The Lord is my helper; I will not be afraid.
What can man do to me?"

7 Remember your leaders who spoke the word of God to you. Consider the outcome of their way of life and imitate their faith. 8 Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever.

9 Do not be carried away by all kinds of strange teachings, for it is good for the heart to be strengthened by grace and not by foods of no value to those devoted to them. 10 We have an altar from which those who serve at the tabernacle have no right to eat.

11 Although the high priest brings the blood of animals into the Holy Place as a sacrifice for sin, the bodies are burned outside the camp. 12 And so Jesus also suffered

- **HEB 12:20 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← EX 19:12-13 p.147
- **HEB 12:21 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 9:19 p.298
- **HEB 12:24 [FULFILLS]** Abel's blood cries out from the ground. Jesus' blood speaks a better word ← GEN 4:10 · MEDIUM p.52
- **HEB 12:24 [FULFILLS]** God would make a new covenant, write His law on hearts, and remember sins no more ← JER 31:31-34 p.1192
- **HEB 12:26 [PROPHECY]** Now I will shake not only the earth, but also heaven... the removal of those things that are being shaken, as of things that are made, that the things which cannot be shaken may remain → STILL TO COME
- **HEB 12:26 [QUOTES]** Direct ← HAG 2:6 p.1480
- **HEB 12:29 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 4:24 p.289

- **HEB 13:1 [NOTABLE]** Church life in three commands: love each other, open your home, do not forget those in chains.
- **HEB 13:2 [MIRACLE]** Some have entertained angels unawares
- **HEB 13:2 [NOTE]** ANGELS UNAWARES. Abraham, Genesis 18, and Lot, Genesis 19, welcomed strangers who were angels. The KJV says entertained angels unawares. This is no promise that every stranger is an angel; it is a reason to be kind.
- **HEB 13:5 [NOTABLE]** Be content with what you have, because God Himself has promised to stay.
- **HEB 13:5 [QUOTES]** Direct ← DT 31:6, 8; JOSH 1:5 p.325
- **HEB 13:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 118:6 p.963
- **HEB 13:8 [NOTABLE]** Leaders come and go, 13:7. Jesus does not change.
- **HEB 13:9 [HEART]** It is good for the heart to be strengthened by grace.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES

outside the city gate, to sanctify the people by His own blood. 13 Therefore let us go to Him outside the camp, bearing the disgrace He bore. 14 For here we do not have a permanent city, but we are looking for the city that is to come.

SACRIFICE, OBEDIENCE, AND PRAYER

15 Through Jesus, therefore, let us continually offer to God a sacrifice of praise, the fruit of lips that confess His name. 16 And do not neglect to do good and to share with others, for with such sacrifices God is pleased.

17 Obey your leaders and submit to them, for they watch over your souls as those who must give an account. To this end, allow them to lead with joy and not with grief, for that would be of no advantage to you.

18 Pray for us; we are convinced that we have a clear conscience and desire to live honorably in every way. 19 And I especially urge you to pray that I may be restored to you soon.

BENEDICTION AND FAREWELL

20 Now may the God of peace, who through the blood of the eternal covenant brought back from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great Shepherd of the sheep, 21 equip you with every good thing to do His will. And may He accomplish in us what is pleasing in His sight through Jesus Christ, to whom be glory forever and ever. Amen.

22 I urge you, brothers, to bear with my word of exhortation, for I have only written to you briefly.

23 Be aware that our brother Timothy has been released. If he arrives soon, I will come with him to see you.

24 Greet all your leaders and all the saints. Those from Italy send you greetings.

25 Grace be with all of you.

- **HEB 13:11 [FULFILLS]** The sin-offering burned outside the camp foreshadows Christ's death outside Jerusalem ← LEV 16:27 p.200
- **HEB 13:12 [FULFILLS]** A spotless red heifer was killed outside the camp for cleansing ← NUM 19:2-3 · MEDIUM p.252
- **HEB 13:12 [FULFILLS]** The owner's son would be seized, thrown out, and killed by the tenants ← MT 21:37-39; MK 12:6-8; LK 20:13-15 · MEDIUM p.1583
- **HEB 13:15 [FULFILLS]** God's name would be great among the nations with pure offerings in every place ← MAL 1:11 · MEDIUM p.1511
- **HEB 13:15 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← HOS 14:2 p.1372
- **HEB 13:20 [FULFILLS]** Because of the blood of the covenant God would set the prisoners free ← ZECH 9:11 · MEDIUM p.1498

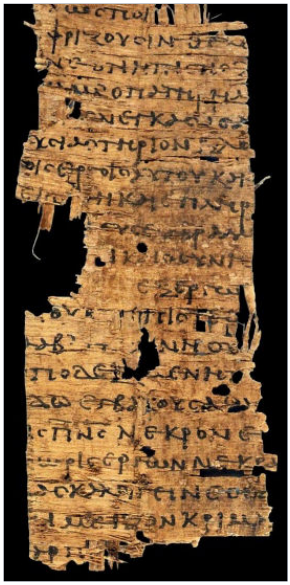
- **HEB 13:23 [NOTE]** TIMOTHY RELEASED. The only hint that Timothy was ever in prison. The writer was part of Paul's circle of friends.
- **HEB 13:24 [NOTE]** THOSE FROM ITALY. This can mean the writer was in Italy, or that Italians living elsewhere sent greetings home. Many think the letter went to Rome, where Clement quoted it by about AD 96.

BOOK 59 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

JAMES

Faith That Works

AUTHOR	James, the brother of Jesus and leader of the church in Jerusalem, 1:1 and Galatians 1:19. Many critical scholars think a later follower wrote in his name.
WRITTEN FROM	Jerusalem.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 45 to 50, which may make it the first New Testament book written. Some say about AD 60, shortly before James was killed in AD 62.
WRITTEN TO	The twelve tribes scattered abroad, Jewish believers in Jesus living outside Israel, 1:1.
WHY HE WROTE	To show that real faith changes how you live, talk, spend and treat people.
KEY VERSE	James 2:17. Faith by itself, if it does not result in action, is dead.



AN EARLY COPY OF JAMES
Papyrus 20, copied in the early 200s AD and found at Oxyrhynchus, Egypt. This side holds James 2:19 to 3:2. Near the top is the word for shudder, the demons believe and shudder, 2:19. Lower down the word for dead, nekron, shows up twice: faith without works is dead, 2:26. It is kept at Princeton University. Papyrus 23, also from the early 200s, has a few verses of James 1. Public domain.

Historical Setting

After Stephen was stoned, many believers ran from Jerusalem and scattered, Acts 8:1 and 11:19. Most were poor. Rich landowners cheated them, dragged them into court and paid their workers late or not at all. Inside the churches there were fights, favorites and loose

tongues. James, the brother of Jesus, led the mother church in Jerusalem. He writes like a prophet and like Proverbs: short, sharp, practical. His letter has about 50 commands in just 108 verses, and it echoes the Sermon on the Mount again and again.

What Was Going Wrong

DOUBTING. Praying while doubting, like a wave tossed by the wind, 1:6 to 8.
FAVORITISM. The best seats for the rich, the floor for the poor, 2:1 to 9.
ALL TALK. Faith that says nice words but never helps anyone, 2:14 to 17.
THE TONGUE. Cursing, bragging and gossip, 3:1 to 12 and 4:11.
FIGHTS. Quarrels driven by jealousy and wanting more, 4:1 to 3.
RICH OPPRESSORS. Wages held back from the workers, 5:1 to 6.

The Idiot Proof Summary

James is the most practical book in the New Testament. It does not argue about big theories. It asks one question over and over: does your faith actually do anything? Real faith shows up in how you handle trials, how you treat the poor, what comes out of your mouth, how you plan your week and how you pray. James was Jesus' own brother, and you can hear Jesus' teaching all through it.

James at a Glance

CH 1	**TRIALS AND DOING** Count trials joy, ask for wisdom, and do what the word says.
CH 2	**FAITH THAT WORKS** No favorites. Faith without works is dead.
CH 3	**THE TONGUE AND WISDOM** A small fire, and the wisdom that comes from above.
CH 4	**HUMBLE YOURSELVES** Stop fighting, draw near to God, and say if the Lord wills.
CH 5	**PATIENCE AND PRAYER** Warning to the rich, wait for the Lord, pray for the sick.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JAMES 1:1 James calls his own brother the Lord Jesus Christ, and himself His servant.

JAMES 2:1 Our glorious Lord Jesus Christ.

JAMES 5:7 TO 9 Be patient until the Lord's coming. The Judge is standing at the door.

What to Watch for in James

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	2:25
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	5:17
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	5:1-3, 5:7-9
THE HEART (5)	1:22, 1:26, 3:14, 4:8, 4:17
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	1:1, 5:4
DEMONIC (3)	2:19, 3:15, 4:7
NOTABLE (16)	1:2-5, 1:12, 1:17, 1:19, 1:23-25, 1:27, 2:17 and 7 more
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

JESUS' BROTHER
James did not believe at first, John 7:5. The risen Jesus appeared to him, 1 Corinthians 15:7, and he became a leader of the church.

SERMON ON THE MOUNT ECHOES
Let your yes be yes, 5:12, sounds just like Matthew 5:37, and James echoes Jesus' teaching many more times.

JAMES IS JACOB
In Greek his name is Iakobos, the same name as Jacob. English turned it into James.

LUTHER'S STRAW
Martin Luther called it a right strawy letter in 1522. See The Big Question pages, p.2004.

What Happened Next?

James stayed in Jerusalem and led the church there, Acts 15 and 21. In AD 62 the high priest had him stoned. The Jewish historian Josephus wrote it down; see What Josephus Wrote. Eight years later the Romans destroyed Jerusalem. James' brother Jude wrote one more short letter, Jude 1.

THE HEART ARCHAEOLOGY NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

James skips the small talk. Trials? Count it joy, they build endurance. Need wisdom? Ask God, He is not stingy. Temptation does not come from God; it grows from our own desires. And do not just nod along to the Bible like a bobblehead. Do what it says.

A GREETING FROM JAMES // JUDE 1:1–2

1 James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ,

To the twelve tribes of the Dispersion:

Greetings.

REJOICING IN TRIALS // PHILIPPIANS 1:12–20

2 Consider it pure joy, my brothers, when you encounter trials of many kinds, 3 because you know that the testing of your faith develops perseverance. 4 Allow perseverance to finish its work, so that you may be mature and complete, not lacking anything.

5 Now if any of you lacks wisdom, he should ask God, who gives generously to all without finding fault, and it will be given to him. 6 But he must ask in faith, without doubting, because he who doubts is like a wave of the sea, blown and tossed by the wind. 7 That man should not expect to receive anything from the Lord. 8 He is a double-minded man, unstable in all his ways.

9 The brother in humble circumstances should exult in his high position. 10 But the one who is rich should exult in his low position, because he will pass away like a flower of the field. 11 For the sun rises with scorching heat and withers the plant; its flower falls and its beauty is lost. So too, the rich man will fade away in the midst of his pursuits.

12 Blessed is the man who perseveres under trial, because when he has stood the test, he will receive the crown of life that God has promised to those who love Him.

GOOD AND PERFECT GIFTS

13 When tempted, no one should say, "God is tempting me." For God cannot be tempted by evil, nor does He tempt anyone. 14 But each one is tempted when by his own evil desires he is lured away and enticed. 15 Then after desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, gives birth to death.

16 Do not be deceived, my beloved brothers. 17 Every good and perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of the heavenly lights, with whom there is no change or shifting shadow. 18 He chose to give us birth through the word of truth, that we would be a kind of firstfruits of His creation.

HEARING AND DOING

19 My beloved brothers, understand this: Everyone should be quick to listen, slow to speak, and slow to anger, 20 for man's anger does not bring about the righteousness that God desires. 21 Therefore, get rid of all moral filth and every expression of evil, and humbly accept the word planted in you, which can save your souls.

22 Be doers of the word, and not hearers only. Otherwise, you are deceiving yourselves. 23 For anyone who hears the word but does not carry it out is like a man who looks at his face in a mirror, 24 and after observing himself goes away and immediately forgets what he looks like. 25 But the one who looks intently into the perfect law of freedom, and continues to do so—not being a forgetful hearer, but an effective doer—he will be blessed in what he does.

- **JAS 1:1 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A limestone bone box with the words James son of Joseph brother of Jesus, made public in 2002 → FIELD NOTES p.2001
- **JAS 1:1 [NOTE]** WHICH JAMES? Not James son of Zebedee, killed about AD 44, Acts 12:2, but James the brother of Jesus, Mark 6:3. He did not believe at first, John 7:5, but the risen Jesus appeared to him, 1 Corinthians 15:7. Most Protestants say he was a younger son of Mary and Joseph. The Orthodox say a son of Joseph from an earlier marriage. Catholics say a close relative, like a cousin. See What Josephus Wrote and The James Ossuary pages, p.2001.
- **JAS 1:2 [NOTABLE]** Trials test faith and build endurance, so you grow up complete, lacking nothing.
- **JAS 1:5 [NOTABLE]** God does not scold you for asking. Ask in faith, without doubting.
- **JAS 1:10 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 40:6-8 p.1109
- **JAS 1:12 [NOTABLE]** The prize at the end of the race is the crown of life God promised to those who love Him.
- **JAS 1:17 [NOTABLE]** God is the Father of the lights, and unlike shadows that move, He never changes.
- **JAS 1:19 [NOTABLE]** Three habits that would end most fights before they start.
- **JAS 1:22 [HEART]** Do not just listen to the word and fool yourselves. Do what it says.
- **JAS 1:22 [NOTABLE]** Hearing without doing is like looking in a mirror and forgetting your own face.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM · DEBATED

THE JAMES OSSUARY

JAMES 1:1 · GALATIANS 1:19 · MARK 6:3



The James ossuary and a close up of its inscription. Photos Paradiso, attribution license.

WHAT IT IS

A limestone bone box, about 20 inches long. On one side, in Aramaic, are the words: Yaakov bar Yosef akhui di Yeshua, James son of Joseph brother of Jesus.

HOW OLD IT IS

Jews in Jerusalem used boxes like this from about 20 BC to AD 70. A year after a burial the family gathered the bones and put them in a bone box. The box is surely that old. The question is the writing.

THE BIG ANNOUNCEMENT

In October 2002 the French scholar Andre Lemaire announced it in Biblical Archaeology Review. It belonged to Oded Golan, an Israeli collector who said he bought it years before from a dealer. It was shown in Toronto, where it cracked on the way.

FORGERY OR NOT?

In 2003 a committee of the Israel Antiquities Authority called the inscription a fake, at least the words brother of Jesus. Golan was charged with forgery. After a trial that dragged on for years, the judge in March 2012 found him not guilty of forgery, but said that did not prove the inscription was real. Experts still disagree.

COMMON NAMES

James, Joseph and Jesus were all common names then. Scholars argue about how many men in Jerusalem could have had all three in their family, and about why a brother would be named at all.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

If it is real, it may be the oldest object naming Jesus. The Bible itself already says James was the Lord's brother, Galatians 1:19 and Mark 6:3.

THE PATINA TESTS

Scientists studied the thin crust, called patina, inside the carved letters. Experts for the Israel Antiquities Authority said the patina in the words had been faked. Other experts, some called by the defense, said real ancient patina was in the letters and that cleaning had disturbed it.

THE TALPIOT TOMB IDEA

Some writers claimed the box came from a family tomb found at Talpiot in Jerusalem in 1980, which a 2007 TV film called the tomb of Jesus. Most archaeologists reject that tomb claim, and no one has proven the box came from there.

WHO JAMES WAS

James led the church in Jerusalem, Acts 15:13 and Galatians 2:9. Jesus appeared to him after rising from the dead, 1 Corinthians 15:7. Josephus says he was stoned to death about AD 62. See What Josephus Wrote in this book.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Nobody knows where it was found. Even if every word is ancient, it might belong to a different James.

THE HEART NOTABLE

26 If anyone considers himself religious
and yet does not bridle his tongue, he de-
ceives his heart and his religion is worth-
less. 27 Pure and undefiled religion before
our God and Father is this: to care for or-
phans and widows in their distress, and to
keep oneself from being polluted by the
world.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT JOSEPHUS WROTE

The Death of James, AD 62

JOSEPHUS, ANTIQUITIES OF THE JEWS 20.197 TO 203 · ACTS 15:13 · GALATIANS 2:9

WHO JOSEPHUS WAS

Josephus was a Jewish priest and general, born in AD 37. He fought the Romans, surrendered, and spent the rest of his life in Rome writing history. He finished his big book, Antiquities of the Jews, about AD 93. He was not a Christian.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is the whole passage, Antiquities 20.197 to 203, in William Whiston's English translation of 1737. Words in square brackets were added by Whiston.

ANTIQUITIES 20.9.1

And now Caesar, upon hearing the death of Festus, sent Albinus into Judea, as procurator. But the king deprived Joseph of the high priesthood, and bestowed the succession to that dignity on the son of Ananus, who was also himself called Ananus. Now the report goes that this eldest Ananus proved a most fortunate man; for he had five sons who had all performed the office of a high priest to God, and who had himself enjoyed that dignity a long time formerly, which had never happened to any other of our high priests. But this younger Ananus, who, as we have told you already, took the high priesthood, was a bold man in his temper, and very insolent; he was also of the sect of the Sadducees, who are very rigid in judging offenders, above all the rest of the Jews, as we have already observed; when, therefore, Ananus was of this disposition, he thought he had now a proper opportunity [to exercise his authority]. Festus was now dead, and Albinus was but upon the road; so he assembled the sanhedrim of judges, and brought before them the brother of Jesus, who was called Christ, whose name was James, and some others, [or, some of his companions]; and when he had formed an accusation against them as breakers of the law, he delivered them to be stoned: but as for those who seemed the most equitable of the citizens, and such as were the most uneasy at the breach of the laws, they disliked what was done; they also sent to the king [Agrippa], desiring him to send to Ananus that he should act so no more, for that what he had already done was not to be justified; nay, some of them went also to meet Albinus, as he was upon his journey from Alexandria, and informed him that it was not lawful for Ananus to assemble a sanhedrim without his consent. Whereupon Albinus complied with what they said, and wrote in anger to Ananus, and threatened that he would bring him to punishment for what he had done; on which king Agrippa took the high priesthood from him, when he had ruled but three months, and made Jesus, the son of Damneus, high priest.

James the Just

ACTS 12:17 · ACTS 15:13 TO 21 · GALATIANS 2:9 · JOHN 18:13

WHO JAMES WAS

After Peter left Jerusalem, James led the church there, Acts 12:17. He gave the final word at the Jerusalem council, Acts 15:13 to 21, and Paul called him one of the pillars, Galatians 2:9. Early Christians called him James the Just. Hegesippus says he prayed so much that his knees became hard like a camel's.

ONE FAMILY OF HIGH PRIESTS

Ananus was a son of Annas, and Caiaphas was Annas' son in law, John 18:13. So the same family that put Jesus on trial had His brother killed about 30 years later. Ananus himself was killed in AD 68 during the Jewish war with Rome, Josephus says.

JAS 1:26 [HEART] A religious man who cannot control his tongue deceives his own heart.
JAS 1:27 [NOTABLE] James's definition of real religion: help the helpless and stay clean from the world.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE

WHAT HAPPENED
In AD 62 the Roman governor Festus, the one in Acts 25, died. Before the next governor arrived, the new high priest Ananus, son of the Annas of John 18:13, held a trial and had James stoned. Many Jews were angry, and King Agrippa II, the one in Acts 26, fired Ananus after three months.

IS IT REAL?
Almost all scholars, even skeptics, accept this passage. It is in every Greek copy, Origen knew it about AD 248, and the words who was called Christ sound like a Jewish writer, not a Christian. Josephus' longer passage about Jesus, Antiquities 18.63 to 64, is more debated; see Exhibit A, p.2120.

ORIGEN'S MISSING LINE
Origen, about AD 248, said Josephus blamed the fall of Jerusalem on the killing of James the Just. No surviving copy of Josephus says that, so Origen may have mixed him up with another writer, or that line was lost.

THE LATER STORY
Hegesippus, a Christian writer about AD 170 quoted by Eusebius, tells it differently: James was thrown down from the temple, stoned, and finished off with a club, praying for his killers as Jesus did. The two stories do not fully agree.

WHY IT MATTERS
A writer who was not a Christian names Jesus, who was called Christ, and His brother James, and tells how James died, about 30 years after the cross.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS
No VIP seating for the rich guy with the gold ring while the poor guy gets the floor. Love your neighbor as yourself. Then the big one: faith that never does anything is dead. Even demons believe in God, and they shudder. Abraham and Rahab showed their faith by what they did.

A WARNING AGAINST FAVORITISM

1 My brothers, as you hold out your faith in
our glorious Lord Jesus Christ, do not
show favoritism.

2 Suppose a man comes into your meeting
wearing a gold ring and fine clothes, and
a poor man in shabby clothes also comes
in. 3 If you lavish attention on the man in
fine clothes and say, "Here is a seat of
honor," but say to the poor man, "You
must stand" or "Sit at my feet," 4 have you
not discriminated among yourselves and
become judges with evil thoughts?

5 Listen, my beloved brothers: Has not
God chosen the poor of this world to be
rich in faith and to inherit the kingdom He
promised those who love Him? 6 But you
have dishonored the poor. Is it not the rich
who oppress you and drag you into court?
7 Are they not the ones who blaspheme
the noble name by which you have been
called?

8 If you really fulfill the royal law stated in
Scripture, *"Love your neighbor as yourself,"*
you are doing well. 9 But if you show favoritism, you sin and are convicted by the
law as transgressors.

10 Whoever keeps the whole law but stumbles at just one point is guilty of breaking
all of it. 11 For He who said, *"Do not commit adultery,"* also said, *"Do not murder."* If you
do not commit adultery, but do commit
murder, you have become a lawbreaker.

12 Speak and act as those who are going to
be judged by the law that gives freedom.
13 For judgment without mercy will be
shown to anyone who has not been merciful. Mercy triumphs over judgment.

FAITH AND WORKS // GALATIANS 3:1–9

14 What good is it, my brothers, if someone
claims to have faith, but has no deeds?
Can such faith save him? 15 Suppose a
brother or sister is without clothes and
daily food. 16 If one of you tells him, "Go in
peace; stay warm and well fed," but does
not provide for his physical needs, what
good is that? 17 So too, faith by itself, if it
does not result in action, is dead.

- **JAS 2:2 [NOTE]** MEETING. The Greek word is synagogue. These early believers still met like a Jewish synagogue.
- **JAS 2:8 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 19:18 p.205
- **JAS 2:11 [QUOTES]** Direct ← EX 20:13-14; DT 5:17-18 p.148
- **JAS 2:14 [NOTE]** FAITH AND WORKS. Does James disagree with Paul, Romans 3:28? See the two Big Question pages, p.2004.
- **JAS 2:17 [NOTABLE]** The heart of the book. See The Big Question pages on faith and works, p.2004.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

18 But someone will say, "You have faith
and I have deeds." Show me your faith
without deeds, and I will show you my
faith by my deeds. 19 You believe that God
is one. Good for you! Even the demons
believe that—and shudder.

20 O foolish man, do you want evidence
that faith without deeds is worthless? 21
Was not our father Abraham justified by
what he did when he offered his son Isaac
on the altar? 22 You see that his faith was
working with his actions, and his faith was
perfected by what he did. 23 And the
Scripture was fulfilled that says, *"Abraham
believed God, and it was credited to him as
righteousness,"* and he was called a friend
of God. 24 As you can see, a man is justi-
fied by his deeds and not by faith alone.

25 In the same way, was not even Rahab
the prostitute justified by her actions
when she welcomed the spies and sent
them off on another route? 26 As the body
without the spirit is dead, so faith without
deeds is dead.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Not many of you should become teachers. The tongue is tiny, like a horse's bit or a ship's rudder, but it steers the whole body, and one spark can burn a forest. We bless God and curse people with the same mouth. Real wisdom from above is pure, peaceful and gentle.

TAMING THE TONGUE // PSALM 64:1–10

1 Not many of you should become teach-
ers, my brothers, because you know that
we who teach will be judged more strictly.
2 We all stumble in many ways. If anyone
is never at fault in what he says, he is a
perfect man, able to control his whole
body.

3 When we put bits into the mouths of
horses to make them obey us, we can
guide the whole animal. 4 Consider ships
as well. Although they are so large and
are driven by strong winds, they are
steered by a very small rudder wherever
the pilot is inclined.

5 In the same way, the tongue is a small
part of the body, but it boasts of great
things. Consider how small a spark sets a
great forest ablaze. 6 The tongue also is a
fire, a world of wickedness among the
parts of the body. It pollutes the whole
person, sets the course of his life on fire,
and is itself set on fire by hell.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

FAITH AND WORKS

Did James and Paul Disagree?

JAMES 2:14 TO 26 · ROMANS 3:28 · GALATIANS 2:16 · EPHESIANS 2:8 TO 10

WHAT JAMES SAID

A man is justified by his deeds and not by faith alone, 2:24. Faith without deeds is dead, 2:26.

WHAT PAUL SAID

A man is justified by faith apart from works of the law, Romans 3:28. Both men use Abraham and the same verse, Genesis 15:6: Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness, Romans 4:3 and James 2:23.

THE EARLY CHURCH

James was slow to be accepted. Origen, about AD 240, is one of the first to quote it by name, and Eusebius, about AD 325, listed it among the books some disputed. By about AD 400 it was in every major list. Augustine, about AD 413, said there is no fight: Paul means works done before faith, to earn it, and James means works that come after faith.

LUTHER'S STRAW

In his 1522 New Testament Martin Luther compared James to John, Romans, Galatians and 1 Peter and called it a right strawy letter, because he said it has nothing of the gospel in it. He moved it near the back. The straw line was

JAS 2:19 [DEMONIC] Demons believe — and tremble
JAS 2:19 [NOTE] THE SHEMA. You believe that God is one. This is the Shema, Deuteronomy 6:4, the creed every Jew said daily. Knowing the right facts is not saving faith. Demons know them too.
JAS 2:23 [QUOTES] Direct ← GEN 15:6; 2CH 20:7; IS 41:8 p.67
JAS 2:25 [FULFILLS] The scarlet cord in Rahab's window saved her whole household ← JOSH 2:18 · MEDIUM p.339
JAS 2:25 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← JOSH 2:4; 2:15 p.339

JAS 3:5 [NOTABLE] The tongue is small, but it can burn down a whole life.
JAS 3:6 [NOTE] HELL. The Greek word is Gehenna, the Valley of Hinnom south of Jerusalem, where kings of Judah once burned their children as sacrifices, Jeremiah 7:31. Jesus used the name for hell.

THE HEART DEMONIC

dropped from later editions, and Luther still quoted James in his sermons.

TRENT AND CALVIN

The Catholic Council of Trent, 1547, quoted James 2:24 and taught that justification grows through good works done by grace, and it rejected faith alone. John Calvin answered that same year with a famous line: it is faith alone that justifies, but the faith that justifies is never alone.

TODAY

In 1999 the Lutheran World Federation and the Catholic Church signed the Joint Declaration on the Doctrine of Justification. They agreed that we are saved by grace through faith in Christ, not by our merits, and that good works must follow. They still disagree on some details. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

JAMES 2:14 TO 26 · ROMANS 4:1 TO 5 · GALATIANS 5:6 · PHILIPPIANS 2:12 TO 13

SHOWN, NOT EARNED

Most Protestants say Paul and James answer different questions. Paul asks how a sinner is made right with God: by faith. James asks what real faith looks like: it works. Justified in James means shown to be right, as in show me your faith, 2:18. Key verses: Ephesians 2:8 to 10 and Galatians 5:6. Best case: it keeps grace free and faith real.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF WORKS

Paul fights works of the law, like circumcision and food rules, used as a ticket into God's people. James means acts of love, like feeding the hungry, 2:15 to 16. Best case: the two men use the same word for different things.

ABRAHAM, THEN AND LATER

Paul points to Genesis 15, when Abraham first believed. James points to Genesis 22, years later, when Abraham offered Isaac. The later act proved the earlier faith was real, 2:21 to 23.

CATHOLIC

Justification begins by grace through faith and baptism and grows through good works done in grace. James 2:24 means what it says. Key verses: Galatians 5:6, faith working through love, and Romans 2:6 to 7. Best case: it takes every word of James at face value.

ORTHODOX

Salvation is a lifelong journey of becoming like God, by grace, with our free cooperation. Faith and works are two sides of one life. Key verses: Philippians 2:12 to 13 and 2 Peter 1:4.

THE NEW PERSPECTIVE

Scholars like E. P. Sanders, 1977, James Dunn and N. T. Wright say works of the law in Paul mainly means the Jewish badges, like circumcision and food laws, so Paul and James are not even talking about the same works.

A REAL DISAGREEMENT

Some scholars, and Luther in his early years, think James and Paul really disagreed, or that James was answering people who twisted Paul's teaching. Best case: it reads both letters without forcing them to match.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

We are saved by God's grace, not by earning it. Real faith never stays alone; it shows up in love for the poor, 2:15 to 17. Both Paul and James say so, Galatians 5:6.

7 All kinds of animals, birds, reptiles, and
creatures of the sea are being tamed and
have been tamed by man, 8 but no man
can tame the tongue. It is a restless evil,
full of deadly poison.

9 With the tongue we bless our Lord and
Father, and with it we curse men, who
have been made in God's likeness. 10 Out
of the same mouth come blessing and
cursing. My brothers, this should not be! 11
Can both fresh water and salt water flow
from the same spring? 12 My brothers, can
a fig tree grow olives, or a grapevine bear
figs? Neither can a salt spring produce
fresh water.

THE WISDOM FROM ABOVE

13 Who is wise and understanding among
you? Let him show it by his good conduct,
by deeds done in the humility that comes
from wisdom. 14 But if you harbor bitter
jealousy and selfish ambition in your
hearts, do not boast in it or deny the truth.

■ **JAS 3:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 1:26-27 p.48

THE HEART DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

15 Such wisdom does not come from
above, but is earthly, unspiritual, demonic.
16 For where jealousy and selfish ambition
exist, there will be disorder and every evil
practice.

17 But the wisdom from above is first of all
pure, then peace-loving, gentle, accom-
modating, full of mercy and good fruit, im-
partial, and sincere. 18 Peacemakers who
sow in peace reap the fruit of righteous-
ness.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Why all the fights? You want what you do not have. Friendship with the world is a breakup with God. Submit to God, resist the devil, and he will run. Draw near to God and He will draw near to you. And quit planning your year like you own tomorrow; your life is a mist.

A WARNING AGAINST PRIDE

1 What causes conflicts and quarrels
among you? Don't they come from the
passions at war within you? 2 You crave
what you do not have; you kill and covet,
but are unable to obtain it. You quarrel
and fight. You do not have, because you
do not ask. 3 And when you do ask, you do
not receive, because you ask with wrong
motives, that you may squander it on your
pleasures.

4 You adulteresses! Do you not know that
friendship with the world is hostility to-
ward God? Therefore, whoever chooses
to be a friend of the world renders himself
an enemy of God. 5 Or do you think the
Scripture says without reason that the
Spirit He caused to dwell in us yearns with
envy? 6 But He gives us more grace. This
is why it says:

"God opposes the proud,
but gives grace to the humble."

DRAWING NEAR TO GOD

7 Submit yourselves, then, to God. Resist
the devil, and he will flee from you. 8 Draw
near to God, and He will draw near to you.
Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and pu-
rify your hearts, you double-minded. 9
Grieve, mourn, and weep. Turn your
laughter to mourning, and your joy to
gloom. 10 Humble yourselves before the
Lord, and He will exalt you.

11 Brothers, do not slander one another.
Anyone who speaks against his brother or
judges him speaks against the law and
judges it. And if you judge the law, you are
not a practitioner of the law, but a judge of
it. 12 There is only one Lawgiver and
Judge, the One who is able to save and
destroy. But who are you to judge your
neighbor?

DO NOT BOAST ABOUT TOMORROW // PROVERBS 27:1

13 Come now, you who say, "Today or to-
morrow we will go to this or that city,
spend a year there, carry on business,
and make a profit." 14 You do not even
know what will happen tomorrow! What is
your life? You are a mist that appears for a
little while and then vanishes.

15 Instead, you ought to say, "If the Lord is
willing, we will live and do this or that." 16
As it is, you boast in your proud inten-
tions. All such boasting is evil. 17 Anyone,
then, who knows the right thing to do, yet
fails to do it, is guilty of sin.

- **JAS 3:14 [HEART]** If you have bitter envy and selfish ambition in your hearts, do not brag about it.
- **JAS 3:15 [DEMONIC]** Wisdom that is earthly, unspiritual, demonic
- **JAS 3:17 [NOTABLE]** Eight marks of God's wisdom, the opposite of the jealousy and ambition in 3:14 to 16.
- **JAS 4:5 [NOTE]** HARD VERSE. No Old Testament verse says these exact words. James may be summing up a theme, like God being jealous for His people, Exodus 34:14. It can also be read as the spirit in us yearns with envy.
- **JAS 4:6 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PROV 3:34 p.990
- **JAS 4:7 [DEMONIC]** Resist the devil and he will flee from you
- **JAS 4:8 [HEART]** Purify your hearts, you double minded.
- **JAS 4:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← ZECH 1:3; MAL 3:7 p.1488
- **JAS 4:10 [NOTABLE]** The way up is down.
- **JAS 4:12 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 33:22 p.1100
- **JAS 4:14 [NOTABLE]** So plan with if the Lord wills, 4:15.
- **JAS 4:15 [NOTE]** IF IT IS HIS WILL. Paul said the same, Acts 18:21 and 1 Corinthians 4:19. Christians later shortened it to D.V., Latin for God willing.
- **JAS 4:17 [HEART]** Anyone who knows the right thing to do and does not do it, sins.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE · END TIMES PROPHECIES · ARCHAEOLOGY · NOTABLE

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Bad news for rich oppressors: your gold is rusting and the unpaid workers are crying out to God. Believers, be patient like a farmer waiting for rain; the Lord is coming. No swearing oaths. Sick? Call the elders to pray and anoint with oil. Elijah was a regular guy whose prayers stopped the rain.

A WARNING TO THE RICH // PROVERBS 23:1–5; 1 TIMOTHY 6:17–19

1 Come now, you who are rich, weep and
wail over the misery to come upon you. 2
Your riches have rotted and moths have
eaten your clothes. 3 Your gold and silver
are corroded. Their corrosion will testify
against you and consume your flesh like
fire.

You have hoarded treasure in the last
days. 4 Look, the wages you withheld from
the workmen who mowed your fields are
crying out against you. The cries of the
harvesters have reached the ears of the
Lord of Hosts.

5 You have lived on earth in luxury and
self-indulgence. You have fattened your
hearts in the day of slaughter. 6 You have
condemned and murdered the righteous,
who did not resist you.

PATIENCE IN SUFFERING // JOB 1:1–5

7 Be patient, then, brothers, until the Lord's
coming. See how the farmer awaits the
precious fruit of the soil—how patient he
is for the fall and spring rains. 8 You, too,
be patient and strengthen your hearts, be-
cause the Lord's coming is near. 9 Do not
complain about one another, brothers, so
that you will not be judged. Look, the
Judge is standing at the door!

10 Brothers, as an example of patience in
affliction, take the prophets who spoke in
the name of the Lord. 11 See how blessed
we consider those who have persevered.
You have heard of Job's perseverance
and have seen the outcome from the
Lord. The Lord is full of compassion and
mercy.

12 Above all, my brothers, do not swear,
not by heaven or earth or by any other
oath. Simply let your "Yes" be yes, and
your "No," no, so that you will not fall un-
der judgment.

THE PRAYER OF FAITH

13 Is any one of you suffering? He should
pray. Is anyone cheerful? He should sing
praises. 14 Is any one of you sick? He
should call the elders of the church to
pray over him and anoint him with oil in
the name of the Lord. 15 And the prayer of-
fered in faith will restore the one who is
sick. The Lord will raise him up. If he has
sinned, he will be forgiven.

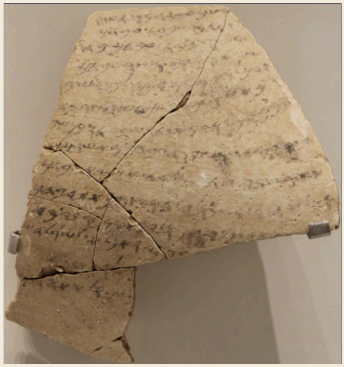
16 Therefore confess your sins to each
other and pray for each other so that you
may be healed. The prayer of a righteous
man has great power to prevail. 17 Elijah
was a man just like us. He prayed
earnestly that it would not rain, and it did
not rain on the land for three and a half
years. 18 Again he prayed, and the heav-

- **JAS 5:1 [PROPHECY]** Come now, you rich, weep and howl for your miseries that are coming upon you; the wages of the reapers cry out → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **JAS 5:1 [NOTABLE]** James's stinging denunciation of the wealthy who oppress workers and hoard wealth in the last days
- **JAS 5:4 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A pottery letter from about 630 BC in which a farm worker at harvest begs an official to return the cloak taken from him → FIELD NOTES p.2008
- **JAS 5:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DT 24:14-15; IS 5:9 p.315
- **JAS 5:7 [PROPHECY]** Be patient, brethren, until the coming of the Lord... the coming of the Lord is at hand → STILL TO COME
- **JAS 5:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DT 11:14; JOEL 2:23 p.300
- **JAS 5:11 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 34:6; PS 103:8 p.165
- **JAS 5:12 [NOTE]** NO OATHS. This echoes Jesus almost word for word, Matthew 5:34 to 37. Quakers and Mennonites refuse all oaths because of it. Others say it forbids careless swearing, not a sworn promise in court.
- **JAS 5:14 [NOTABLE]** The New Testament instruction for healing prayer — elders, prayer, anointing with oil in Jesus's name
- **JAS 5:14 [NOTE]** ANOINTING THE SICK. Catholics see a sacrament here, the Anointing of the Sick. The Orthodox practice Holy Unction. Pentecostals and many others still anoint with oil today. Cessationists say healing gifts ended with the apostles, but still pray for the sick.
- **JAS 5:16 [NOTABLE]** The prayer of a righteous man has great power.
- **JAS 5:16 [NOTE]** CONFESS TO EACH OTHER. Catholics and Orthodox use it in support of confession to a priest. Most Protestants read it as believers confessing to one another.
- **JAS 5:17 [NOTABLE]** The great prophet was an ordinary man who prayed, 1 Kings 17 and 18.
- **JAS 5:17 [FULFILLS]** Elijah said there would be no dew or rain until he said so ← 1KI 17:1 p.580
- **JAS 5:17 [NOTE]** THREE AND A HALF YEARS. 1 Kings 18:1 says in the third year; Jesus also said three and a half years, Luke 4:25. James and Jewish tradition add that Elijah prayed for it.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH · FAR OLDER THAN JAMES

THE HARVESTER'S COMPLAINT

JAMES 5:4 · DEUTERONOMY 24:12 TO 15 · EXODUS 22:26 TO 27 · AMOS 2:8



The Mesad Hashavyahu ostracon, Israel Museum, Jerusalem. Photo Paamei Elyon, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

A broken piece of pottery with 14 lines of ancient Hebrew written in ink. It is a letter from a farm worker to the official in charge of a small fort.

HOW OLD IT IS

About 630 to 609 BC, in the days of King Josiah. The Israeli scholar Joseph Naveh found it in 1960 at Mesad Hashavyahu, a fort near the coast south of where Tel Aviv is today.

WHAT IT SAYS

The worker says he was harvesting and finished his work, but a man named Hoshayahu son of Shobai took his cloak. His fellow workers in the heat can swear he did nothing wrong. He begs the official to give his cloak back.

THE LAW BEHIND IT

God's law said if you take a poor man's cloak as a pledge, give it back before sunset so he can sleep in it, Exodus 22:26 to 27 and Deuteronomy 24:12 to 13. Pay a hired worker the same day, Deuteronomy 24:14 to 15. Amos 2:8 condemns people who lie down on cloaks taken in pledge.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

James says the wages you held back from the harvesters are crying out against you, and their cries have reached the Lord of Hosts, 5:4. This little piece of pottery is a real harvester crying out, more than 600 years earlier.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

We do not know if the worker got his cloak back. The letter is far older than James and has nothing to do with him.

ens gave rain, and the earth yielded its crops.

RESTORING A SINNER

19 My brothers, if one of you should wander from the truth and someone should bring him back, 20 consider this: Whoever turns a sinner from the error of his way will save his soul from death and cover over a multitude of sins.

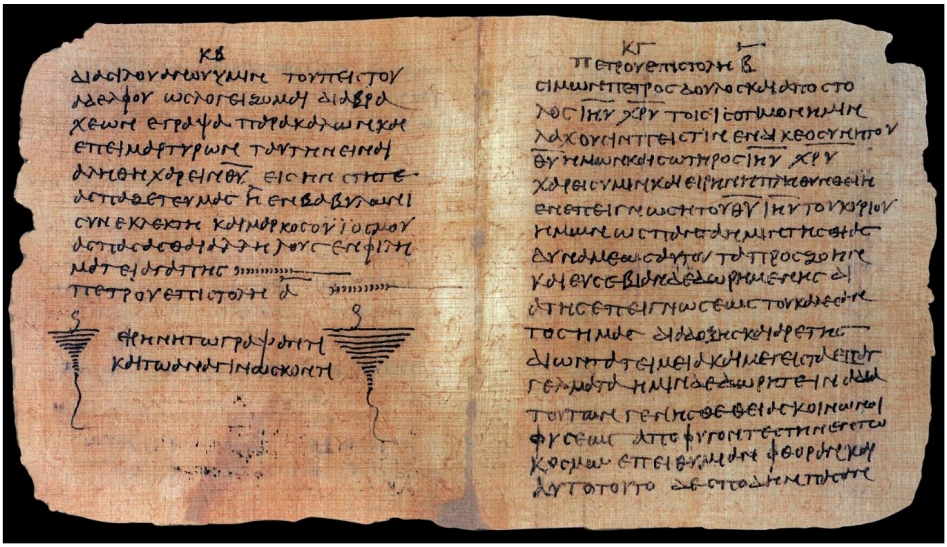
JAS 5:20 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← PROV 10:12 p.997
JAS 5:20 [NOTE] COVER A MULTITUDE OF SINS. From Proverbs 10:12, also quoted in 1 Peter 4:8.

BOOK 60 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

1 PETER

Living Hope

AUTHOR	Peter, one of Jesus' twelve apostles, 1:1, with help from Silvanus, 5:12. Many critical scholars think a later follower wrote in his name.
WRITTEN FROM	Rome, which Peter calls Babylon, 5:13.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 62 to 64, shortly before Nero turned on the Christians of Rome. Critical scholars say about AD 70 to 95.
WRITTEN TO	Believers scattered across five Roman provinces in what is now Turkey: Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia and Bithynia, 1:1.
WHY HE WROTE	To give hope to believers who were insulted and mistreated for following Jesus, and to show them how to live and suffer well.
KEY VERSE	1 Peter 1:3. He has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 1 PETER
Papyrus 72, copied about AD 300 and found in Egypt. The left page holds the last lines of 1 Peter, 5:12 to 14, with in Babylon and Mark my son. Under them the copyist wrote the title, Of Peter, Letter 1, and a blessing: Peace to the one who wrote and to the one who reads. The right page starts 2 Peter. Kept in the Vatican Library. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Peter was a fisherman from Galilee who became the leader of Jesus' twelve apostles. About 30 years after the cross, he writes from Rome to believers far away in what is now Turkey. Many of them were Gentiles who used to live wild, 4:3. When they turned to Jesus they quit the idol parties, and their old friends called them strange and spread lies about them, 2:12 and 4:4. There was no law yet against being a Christian everywhere in the em-

pire, but they were mocked, slandered and sometimes beaten. Soon it got worse. In AD 64 a great fire burned Rome, and the emperor Nero blamed the Christians.

What Was Going Wrong

INSULTS. Neighbors slandered them as evildoers, 2:12 and 4:4.
SUFFERING. Trials of many kinds, and a fiery trial on the way, 1:6 and 4:12.
OLD HABITS. The pull back to the old life of partying and idols, 2:11 and 4:3.
HARD HOMES. Slaves with cruel masters and wives with unbelieving husbands, 2:18 and 3:1.
FEAR. Fear of the people who opposed them, 3:14.
PROUD LEADERS. The temptation for elders to lead for money or power, 5:2 to 3.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 Peter is a letter of hope for people having a hard time. Peter never promises that following Jesus will be easy. He says suffering is normal, it is temporary, and it is worth it, because Jesus suffered first and then rose. So live as God's people in a world that is not your home. Be holy, love one another, respect everyone, do good even when you are treated badly, and keep your hope fixed on the day Jesus is revealed.

1 Peter at a Glance

CH 1	**A LIVING HOPE** New birth, a safe inheritance, faith tested by fire, so be holy.
CH 2	**LIVING STONES** Christ the cornerstone, God's own people, honor the king, follow His steps.
CH 3	**SUFFERING FOR DOING GOOD** Wives and husbands, bless instead of insult, Christ died for sins, Noah's ark.
CH 4	**THE FIERY TRIAL** Live for God, love deeply, use your gifts, suffer as a Christian.
CH 5	**SHEPHERDS AND THE LION** Elders shepherd the flock, humble yourselves, resist the devil.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 PETER 1:19 The precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or spot.

1 PETER 2:6 TO 7 The chosen and precious cornerstone that the builders rejected.

1 PETER 2:24 He Himself bore our sins in His body on the tree.

1 PETER 5:4 The Chief Shepherd who will appear.

What to Watch for in 1 Peter

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (14)	1:19, 2:4, 2:6-8, 2:10, 2:22-25, 3:18, 3:22 and 1 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	3:20-21
END TIMES PROPHECIES (3)	1:5, 1:13, 4:7
THE HEART (3)	1:22, 3:4, 3:15
ARCHAEOLOGY (2)	5:13
MIRACLES (1)	1:12
DEMONIC (3)	3:19, 4:3, 5:8-9
NOTABLE (17)	1:3-4, 1:6-11, 1:15, 1:23, 2:2, 2:11, 2:17 and 7 more
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE ROCK
Jesus named him Peter, which means rock, Matthew 16:18. Here Peter calls Jesus the living stone and believers living stones, 2:4 to 5.

AN EYEWITNESS
Peter calls himself a witness of Christ's sufferings, 5:1. He was there.

THE WORD CHRISTIAN
4:16 is one of only three places the Bible uses the word Christian, with Acts 11:26 and 26:28.

WHAT THE ROMANS WROTE
Two Romans, Tacitus and Pliny, wrote about Christians who suffered just for the name. See their pages.

LUTHER'S PICK
In his 1522 New Testament Martin Luther named 1 Peter among the books that show you Christ, with John, Romans and Galatians.

What Happened Next?

In AD 64 a fire burned much of Rome, and Nero blamed the Christians. Early Christian writers say Peter was crucified in Rome under Nero, and Origen says upside down. Before he died Peter wrote one more letter, 2 Peter 1:14. Papias says Mark, Peter's son in the faith, 5:13, wrote down Peter's preaching, and it became the Gospel of Mark.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Peter opens with good news: a living hope and an inheritance that cannot rot, rust or get repossessed. Trials? They are a furnace that proves your faith is real gold. The prophets wondered about all this, and even angels lean in to look. So be holy, because God is holy, and love each other from the heart.

A GREETING FROM PETER // 2 PETER 1:1–2

1 Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ,

To the elect who are exiles of the Dispersion throughout Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, chosen 2 according to the foreknowledge of God the Father and sanctified by the Spirit for obedience to Jesus Christ and sprinkling by His blood:

Grace and peace be yours in abundance.

A LIVING HOPE

3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! By His great mercy He has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4 and into an inheritance that is imperishable, undefiled, and unfading, reserved in heaven for you, 5 who through faith are shielded by God's power for the salvation that is ready to be revealed in the last time.

6 In this you greatly rejoice, though now for a little while you may have had to suffer grief in various trials 7 so that the proven character of your faith—more precious than gold, which perishes even though refined by fire—may result in praise, glory, and honor at the revelation of Jesus Christ.

8 Though you have not seen Him, you love Him; and though you do not see Him now, you believe in Him and rejoice with an inexpressible and glorious joy, 9 now that you are receiving the goal of your faith, the salvation of your souls.

10 Concerning this salvation, the prophets who foretold the grace to come to you searched and investigated carefully, 11 trying to determine the time and setting to which the Spirit of Christ in them was pointing when He predicted the sufferings of Christ and the glories to follow.

12 It was revealed to them that they were not serving themselves, but you, when they foretold the things now announced by those who preached the gospel to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven. Even angels long to look into these things.

A CALL TO HOLINESS // HEBREWS 12:14–17

13 Therefore prepare your minds for action. Be sober-minded. Set your hope fully on the grace to be given you at the revelation of Jesus Christ. 14 As obedient children, do not conform to the passions of your former ignorance. 15 But just as He who called you is holy, so be holy in all you do, 16 for it is written: *"Be holy, because I am holy."*

17 Since you call on a Father who judges each one's work impartially, conduct yourselves in reverent fear during your stay as foreigners. 18 For you know that it was not with perishable things such as silver or gold that you were redeemed from the empty way of life you inherited from your forefathers, 19 but with the precious blood of Christ, a lamb without blemish or spot. 20 He was known before the foundation of the world, but was revealed in the last times for your sake.

21 Through Him you believe in God, who raised Him from the dead and glorified

- **1PE 1:1 [NOTE]** WHO WROTE IT? Peter, with help from Silvanus, 5:12. Silvanus is probably the Silas who traveled with Paul, Acts 15:40 and 1 Thessalonians 1:1. He may have helped with the smooth Greek, or carried the letter. Many critical scholars think a follower wrote it in Peter's name after his death, pointing to the polished Greek.
- **1PE 1:3 [NOTABLE]** The empty tomb is the reason for hope, and the inheritance can never spoil or fade.
- **1PE 1:5 [PROPHECY]** Kept by the power of God through faith for salvation ready to be revealed in the last time → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **1PE 1:6 [NOTABLE]** Trials are like a furnace that shows faith is real gold.
- **1PE 1:8 [NOTABLE]** They never saw Jesus, and still loved Him with an inexpressible and glorious joy.
- **1PE 1:10 [NOTABLE]** The prophets saw the sufferings of Christ ahead of time, and even angels long to look into it.
- **1PE 1:12 [MIRACLE]** Even angels long to look into these things
- **1PE 1:13 [PROPHECY]** Rest your hope fully upon the grace that is to be brought to you at the revelation of Jesus Christ → STILL TO COME
- **1PE 1:15 [NOTABLE]** Holy means set apart for God, in all you do, not only on Sunday.
- **1PE 1:16 [QUOTES]** Direct ← LEV 11:44-45; 19:2; 20:7 p.190
- **1PE 1:19 [FULFILLS]** A spotless, blemish-free Lamb required for atonement and 2 more ← EX 12:5; IS 53:7c; JN 1:29 p.135

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

Him; and so your faith and hope are in God.

THE ENDURING WORD // ISAIAH 40:6–8

22 Since you have purified your souls by obedience to the truth so that you have a genuine love for your brothers, love one another deeply, from a pure heart. 23 For you have been born again, not of perishable seed, but of imperishable, through the living and enduring word of God. 24 For,

"All flesh is like grass,
and all its glory like the flowers of the field;
the grass withers and the flowers fall,
25 *but the word of the Lord stands forever."*

And this is the word that was proclaimed to you.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Grow up like babies who really want their milk. Jesus is the living stone the builders threw out, and now He holds the whole building up. You are living stones and a royal priesthood. Respect the government, yes, even that one. And when you suffer unfairly, remember Jesus took it without hitting back.

THE LIVING STONE AND CHOSEN PEOPLE // ISAIAH 28:14–22; 1 CORINTHIANS 3:10–15; EPHESIANS 2:19–22

1 Rid yourselves, therefore, of all malice, deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and slander. 2 Like newborn babies, crave pure spiritual milk, so that by it you may grow up in your salvation, 3 now that you have tasted that the Lord is good.

4 As you come to Him, the living stone, rejected by men but chosen and precious in God's sight, 5 you also, like living stones, are being built into a spiritual house to be a holy priesthood, offering spiritual sacrifices acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. 6 For it stands in Scripture:

"See, I lay in Zion a stone,
a chosen and precious cornerstone;
and the one who believes in Him
will never be put to shame."

7 To you who believe, then, this stone is precious. But to those who do not believe,

"The stone the builders rejected
has become the cornerstone,"

8 and,

"A stone of stumbling
and a rock of offense."

They stumble because they disobey the word—and to this they were appointed.

9 But you are a chosen people, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God's own possession, to proclaim the virtues of Him who called you out of darkness into His marvelous light. 10 Once you were not a people, but now you are the people of God; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy.

11 Beloved, I urge you, as foreigners and exiles, to abstain from the desires of the flesh, which war against your soul. 12 Conduct yourselves with such honor among the Gentiles that, though they slander you as evildoers, they may see your good deeds and glorify God on the day He visits us.

- **1PE 1:22 [HEART]** Love one another deeply from a pure heart.
- **1PE 1:23 [NOTABLE]** New life comes through the living and enduring word of God, like John 3:3.
- **1PE 1:24 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 40:6-8 p.1109
- **1PE 2:2 [NOTABLE]** Babies cry for milk. New believers grow by craving the word.
- **1PE 2:3 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 34:8 p.905
- **1PE 2:3 [NOTE]** TASTE AND SEE. Peter borrows Psalm 34:8, taste and see that Yahweh is good. In the next verse the Lord he means is Jesus, the living stone, 2:4. He gives Jesus the name of God.
- **1PE 2:4 [FULFILLS]** The rejected stone becomes the chief cornerstone ← PS 118:22-23 p.964
- **1PE 2:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 19:6 p.147
- **1PE 2:6 [FULFILLS]** The precious cornerstone of the Messianic kingdom ← IS 28:16 p.1094
- **1PE 2:7 [FULFILLS]** The rejected stone becomes the chief cornerstone ← PS 118:22-23 p.964
- **1PE 2:8 [FULFILLS]** A stone of stumbling and rock of offense ← IS 8:14 p.1071
- **1PE 2:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 19:5-6; IS 43:20-21 p.147
- **1PE 2:9 [NOTE]** A ROYAL PRIESTHOOD. God once called Israel a kingdom of priests, Exodus 19:6. Now every believer can come to God through Jesus. Martin Luther made this famous in 1520 as the priesthood of all believers. Catholics and Orthodox also teach a priesthood of all the baptized, and keep ordained priests too. PECULIAR. The KJV says a peculiar people. In 1611 peculiar meant your own special treasure, not weird.
- **1PE 2:10 [FULFILLS]** Those called Not My People would be called sons of the living God ← HOS 1:10 p.1356
- **1PE 2:10 [FULFILLS]** God would say to Not My People, You are My people ← HOS 2:23 p.1361
- **1PE 2:10 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← HOS 1:9-10; 2:23 p.1356
- **1PE 2:11 [NOTABLE]** This world is not home. Live like visitors who belong somewhere better.
- **1PE 2:12 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 10:3 p.1073

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES THE HEART *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

SUBMISSION TO AUTHORITIES // ROMANS 13:1–7

13 Submit yourselves for the Lord's sake to
every human institution, whether to the
king as the supreme authority, 14 or to
governors as those sent by him to punish
those who do wrong and to praise those
who do right. 15 For it is God's will that by
doing good you should silence the igno-
rance of foolish men.

16 Live in freedom, but do not use your
freedom as a cover-up for evil; live as ser-
vants of God. 17 Treat everyone with high
regard: Love the brotherhood of believers,
fear God, honor the king.

18 Servants, submit yourselves to your
masters with all respect, not only to those
who are good and gentle, but even to
those who are unreasonable. 19 For if any-
one endures the pain of unjust suffering
because he is conscious of God, this is to
be commended. 20 How is it to your credit
if you are beaten for doing wrong and you
endure it? But if you suffer for doing good
and you endure it, this is commendable
before God.

CHRIST'S EXAMPLE OF SUFFERING // ISAIAH 53:1–8

21 For to this you were called, because
Christ also suffered for you, leaving you
an example, that you should follow in His
footsteps:

22 *"He committed no sin,*
and no deceit was found in His mouth."
23 When they heaped abuse on Him,
He did not retaliate;
when He suffered, He made no threats,
but entrusted Himself to Him who
judges justly.
24 He Himself bore our sins
in His body on the tree,
so that we might die to sin
and live to righteousness.
"By His stripes you are healed."
25 For *"you were like sheep going astray,"* but
now you have returned to the Shepherd
and Overseer of your souls.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Wives, husbands, everybody: be kind, be humble, and do not trade insult for insult. Always be ready to explain your hope, but nicely. Christ died once for all. Then comes a famous head scratcher about spirits in prison, Noah's ark and baptism, and Jesus goes up to the right hand of God.

WIVES AND HUSBANDS // SONG OF SOLOMON 1:1–17; EPHESIANS 5:22–33

1 Wives, in the same way, submit your-
selves to your husbands, so that even if
they refuse to believe the word, they will
be won over without words by the behav-
ior of their wives 2 when they see your
pure and reverent demeanor.

3 Your beauty should not come from out-
ward adornment, such as braided hair or
gold jewelry or fine clothes, 4 but from the
inner disposition of your heart, the unfad-
ing beauty of a gentle and quiet spirit,
which is precious in God's sight. 5 For this
is how the holy women of the past
adorned themselves. They put their hope
in God and were submissive to their hus-
bands, 6 just as Sarah obeyed Abraham
and called him lord. And you are her chil-
dren if you do what is right and refuse to
give way to fear.

7 Husbands, in the same way, treat your
wives with consideration as a delicate

- **1PE 2:13 [NOTE]** THE KING WAS NERO. Peter wrote while Nero was emperor, AD 54 to 68, and still said honor the king, 2:17. But Peter also told the high council, we must obey God rather than men, Acts 5:29. Respect is the rule, unless the state orders you to sin. See What Tacitus Wrote.
- **1PE 2:17 [NOTABLE]** Four commands in one line, written when the king was Nero.
- **1PE 2:21 [NOTABLE]** The word for example meant a pattern children traced to learn their letters.
- **1PE 2:22 [FULFILLS]** No deceit in His mouth ← IS 53:9c p.1128
- **1PE 2:23 [FULFILLS]** Silent before His accusers ← IS 53:7b p.1128
- **1PE 2:24 [FULFILLS]** By His stripes we are healed from sin ← IS 53:5c p.1127
- **1PE 2:24 [FULFILLS]** Bore the sin of many ← IS 53:12d p.1128
- **1PE 2:24 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:4-5, 12 p.1127
- **1PE 2:25 [FULFILLS]** The Good Shepherd who lays down His life ← PS 23:1 p.898
- **1PE 2:25 [FULFILLS]** I will establish one Shepherd over them, My servant David; He shall be prince among them ← EZK 34:23-24 p.1298
- **1PE 2:25 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 53:6 p.1128
- **1PE 3:1 [NOTE]** WIVES AND HUSBANDS. Wives submit, husbands honor their wives as fellow heirs, 3:7, the same pair as Ephesians 5:21 to 33, p.1888. Many believe it means the husband leads. Others say it was a way for wives of unbelievers to win them in a Roman world. See the 1 Timothy Women in the Church pages, p.1936.
- **1PE 3:4 [HEART]** True beauty is the hidden person of the heart.
- **1PE 3:6 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 18:12 p.71

vessel, and with honor as fellow heirs of the gracious gift of life, so that your prayers will not be hindered.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT TACITUS WROTE

Nero Blames the Christians, AD 64

TACITUS, ANNALS 15.44 · 1 PETER 2:13 TO 17 · 4:12 TO 16

WHO TACITUS WAS

Publius Cornelius Tacitus was a Roman senator and governor, born about AD 56. About AD 116 he wrote the Annals, a history of the emperors. He was not a Christian, and he did not like Christians.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is the whole passage, Annals book 15, chapter 44, in the English translation by Alfred Church and William Brodribb, 1876. It starts right after the great fire of Rome in July AD 64.

ANNALS 15.44

Such indeed were the precautions of human wisdom. The next thing was to seek means of propitiating the gods, and recourse was had to the Sibylline books, by the direction of which prayers were offered to Vulcanus, Ceres, and Proserpina. Juno, too, was entreated by the matrons, first, in the Capitol, then on the nearest part of the coast, whence water was procured to sprinkle the fane and image of the goddess. And there were sacred banquets and nightly vigils celebrated by married women. But all human efforts, all the lavish gifts of the emperor, and the propitiations of the gods, did not banish the sinister belief that the conflagration was the result of an order. Consequently, to get rid of the report, Nero fastened the guilt and inflicted the most exquisite tortures on a class hated for their abominations, called Christians by the populace. Christus, from whom the name had its origin, suffered the extreme penalty during the reign of Tiberius at the hands of one of our procurators, Pontius Pilatus, and a most mischievous superstition, thus checked for the moment, again broke out not only in Judaea, the first source of the evil, but even in Rome, where all things hideous and shameful from every part of the world find their centre and become popular. Accordingly, an arrest was first made of all who pleaded guilty; then, upon their information, an immense multitude was convicted, not so much of the crime of firing the city, as of hatred against mankind. Mockery of every sort was added to their deaths. Covered with the skins of beasts, they were torn by dogs and perished, or were nailed to crosses, or were doomed to the flames and burnt, to serve as a nightly illumination, when daylight had expired. Nero offered his gardens for the spectacle, and was exhibiting a show in the circus, while he mingled with the people in the dress of a charioteer or stood aloft on a car. Hence, even for criminals who deserved extreme and exemplary punishment, there arose a feeling of compassion; for it was not, as it seemed, for the public good, but to glut one man's cruelty, that they were being destroyed.

Nero and the Christians

1 PETER 2:13 TO 17 · 4:12 TO 16 · ROMANS 13:1 · ACTS 5:29

THE GREAT FIRE

On July 19, AD 64, a fire broke out near the Circus Maximus in Rome. It burned for six days. Tacitus says only 4 of the city's 14 districts were left whole, 15.40. A rumor said Nero sang about the fall of Troy while Rome burned, and many believed he started the fire, because he soon built a huge new palace on the burned land.

THE SCAPEGOATS

To stop the rumor, Nero blamed the Christians. Tacitus says a huge crowd was convicted, more for hatred of mankind than for the fire. They were torn apart by dogs, nailed to crosses, or burned as torches at night in Nero's gardens.

THE KING IN 2:13

The king Peter tells believers to honor, 2:17, was this same Nero. Peter wrote to people who would soon face him at his worst.

1PE 3:7 [NOTE] WEAKER VESSEL. The Greek and the KJV say weaker vessel. Many believe Peter means physically weaker; others say weaker in Roman law and power. Either way, honor her, she is a fellow heir, or your prayers get blocked.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | THE HEART | DEMONIC | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE

THE FIERY TRIAL
Do not be surprised at the fiery trial, 4:12. If you suffer as a Christian, do not be ashamed, 4:16. Many date the letter just before the fire. Others think Nero's attack had already begun.

PETER AND PAUL
Clement of Rome, about AD 96, names Peter and Paul together as faithful to death, 1 Clement 5. Right after, he mentions a great crowd of believers who were tortured, 1 Clement 6, and many link that to Nero.

WHAT IT CONFIRMS
A Roman historian who disliked Christians says Christus was executed by Pontius Pilate under Tiberius, that the movement began in Judaea, and that by AD 64 there were huge numbers of Christians in Rome. See Exhibit A, p.2120.

IS IT REAL?
Almost all scholars accept it. It is in the oldest copy of this part of the Annals, the Second Medicean manuscript from the 1000s, kept in Florence. Under ultraviolet light the word for Christians shows it was first written Chrestians, a common Roman mix up of the name, and later corrected.

TURNING FROM EVIL

8 Finally, all of you, be like-minded and
sympathetic, love as brothers, be tender-
hearted and humble. 9 Do not repay evil
with evil or insult with insult, but with
blessing, because to this you were called
so that you may inherit a blessing. 10 For,

"Whoever would love life
and see good days
must keep his tongue from evil
and his lips from deceitful speech.
11 *He must turn from evil and do good;*
he must seek peace and pursue it.
12 *For the eyes of the Lord are on the righteous,*
and His ears are inclined to their prayer.
But the face of the Lord is against
those who do evil."

13 Who can harm you if you are zealous for
what is good?

SUFFERING FOR RIGHTEOUSNESS

14 But even if you should suffer for what is
right, you are blessed. *"Do not fear what*
they fear; do not be shaken." 15 *But in your*
hearts sanctify Christ as Lord. Always be pre-
pared to give a defense to everyone who asks
you the reason for the hope that is in you. But
respond with gentleness and respect, 16 keep-
ing a clear conscience, so that those who
slander you may be put to shame by your
good behavior in Christ. 17 For it is better, if
it is God's will, to suffer for doing good
than for doing evil.

18 For Christ also suffered for sins once for
all, the righteous for the unrighteous, to
bring you to God. He was put to death in
the body but made alive in the Spirit, 19 in
whom He also went and preached to the
spirits in prison 20 who disobeyed long ago
when God waited patiently in the days of
Noah while the ark was being built.

In the ark a few people, only eight souls,
were saved through water. 21 And this wa-
ter symbolizes the baptism that now
saves you also—not the removal of dirt
from the body, but the pledge of a clear
conscience toward God—through the res-
urrection of Jesus Christ, 22 who has gone
into heaven and is at the right hand of

- **1PE 3:9 [NOTABLE]** Jesus taught the same, Luke 6:28. Hurt people hurt people; blessed people bless.
- **1PE 3:10 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 34:12-16 p.906
- **1PE 3:14 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 8:12 p.1071
- **1PE 3:15 [HEART]** Set apart Christ as Lord in your hearts, then give your answer.
- **1PE 3:15 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← IS 8:13 p.1071
- **1PE 3:15 [NOTE]** TEXT. The oldest copies say sanctify Christ as Lord; later copies and the KJV say the Lord God. Isaiah 8:13 says this about Yahweh of Hosts, so Peter gives Jesus Yahweh's honor. A DEFENSE. The Greek is apologia, a reasoned answer, where we get the word apologetics.
- **1PE 3:18 [FULFILLS]** God's righteous Servant would justify many ← IS 53:11b p.1128
- **1PE 3:18 [NOTE]** TEXT. Some old copies say Christ died for sins, others say suffered for sins. The meaning is the same.
- **1PE 3:19 [DEMONIC]** Christ preached to the spirits in prison
- **1PE 3:19 [NOTE]** SPIRITS IN PRISON. One of the hardest verses in the Bible. Even Martin Luther said he did not know for sure what Peter meant. See the two Big Question pages, p.2017.
- **1PE 3:20 [FULFILLS]** Noah's family is saved by going into the ark. The ark pictures salvation through Christ ← GEN 7:1 p.55
- **1PE 3:21 [NOTE]** BAPTISM NOW SAVES YOU. Peter adds: not the removal of dirt from the body, but the pledge of a clear conscience toward God, through the resurrection. Catholics, Orthodox and Lutherans say baptism really washes away sin. Churches of Christ say it is the moment a believer is saved. Baptists and most evangelicals say the water is a picture and faith saves. See Does Baptism Save? in Titus, p.1964.

God, with angels, authorities, and powers subject to Him.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

SPIRITS IN PRISON

What Did Peter Mean?

1 PETER 3:18 TO 22 · 4:6 · GENESIS 6:1 TO 8 · 2 PETER 2:4 TO 5 · JUDE 6

WHAT PETER SAID

Christ was put to death in the body but made alive in the Spirit, in whom He also went and preached to the spirits in prison who disobeyed long ago, in the days of Noah, 3:18 to 20. Later Peter adds that the gospel was preached even to those who are now dead, 4:6.

WHY IT IS HARD

Who are the spirits? When did Jesus go? What did He preach? Martin Luther wrote in 1523 that this is a strange text, more obscure than any other passage in the New Testament, and that he did not know for sure what Peter meant.

THE BOOK OF ENOCH

Jews in Peter's day knew 1 Enoch, written about 300 to 200 BC. It says the angels who sinned in Genesis 6 were locked up until judgment, and that Enoch went to announce their doom, 1 Enoch 6 to 16. 2 Peter 2:4 to 5 and Jude 6 also speak of angels kept in chains, right next to Noah.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Many early Christians taught that Christ went down to the dead between the cross and Easter. Irenaeus, about AD 180, says He went to the regions under the earth preaching His coming. Clement of Alexandria, about AD 200, said He offered salvation to the dead there.

THE CREED

The words He descended into hell, or to the dead, show up in creeds in the 300s, and became part of the Apostles' Creed. Eastern churches paint it at Easter as Christ pulling Adam and Eve out of their graves, the harrowing of hell.

AUGUSTINE

About AD 414 Augustine wrote a long letter on this verse, Letter 164. He decided Christ preached in the Spirit through Noah to the people of Noah's day, whose spirits are now in prison. Thomas Aquinas and many later teachers followed him.

THE REFORMERS

Luther, after his doubts, taught that Christ went down to hell in victory, and the Lutheran Formula of Concord, 1577, says so. John Calvin read the creed's descent into hell as Christ suffering hell's agony for us on the cross.

TODAY

In 1965 William Dalton argued that the risen Christ announced His victory to the fallen angels of Genesis 6, and many scholars now agree. Others hold Augustine's view or the descent to the dead. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

1 PETER 1:11 · 3:18 TO 22 · 4:6 · EPHESIANS 4:8 TO 10 · 2 PETER 2:4 TO 5

CHRIST PREACHING THROUGH NOAH

The Spirit of Christ, who spoke in the prophets, 1:11, spoke through Noah, a preacher of righteousness, 2 Peter 2:5, to the people of his day. They refused, died in the flood, and their spirits are now in prison. Held by Augustine and many Reformed teachers. Best case: it fits 1:11 and leaves no second chance after death, Hebrews 9:27.

VICTORY OVER FALLEN ANGELS

After rising, on His way to heaven, Christ announced His win to the angels who sinned in Noah's day, Genesis 6:1 to 4. In the New Testament spirits usually means angels or demons, and preached can mean announced. The same word went is used in 3:22, where angels and powers are made subject to Him. Best case: it matches 3:22, 2 Peter 2:4 and Jude 6, and Jewish readers knew the Enoch story.

THE GOSPEL OFFERED TO THE DEAD

Between His death and resurrection Christ went to the dead and offered them the gospel, and 4:6 says the gospel was preached to those who are now dead. Clement of Alexandria and some modern teachers hold this. Best

1PE 3:22 [MIRACLE] Angels, authorities and powers are subject to the risen Jesus

1PE 3:22 [FULFILLS] David's Lord sits at God's right hand until His enemies are His footstool ← PS 110:1 p.960

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

case: it reads 3:19 and 4:6 plainly and shows God's mercy to those who never heard.

THE HARROWING OF HELL

Christ went down to the place of the dead and freed the faithful who died before Him, from Adam to the prophets, and led them out, Ephesians 4:8 to 10 and Matthew 27:52 to 53. This is the Orthodox Easter teaching, and the Catholic Catechism, 632 to 635, says Christ went to free the just, not to rescue the damned. Best case: it is very old and fits the creed.

LUTHERAN

Christ, body and soul, went down to hell after His burial, defeated the devil and broke hell's power. It was a victory march, not more suffering, Formula of Concord, 1577. Best case: it takes went and preached as a real event and fits 3:22.

WHAT ABOUT 4:6?

Most read the dead in 4:6 as people who heard the gospel while alive and have since died. Others link it to 3:19. Your view of one usually shapes the other.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Christ really died and rose. He now sits at the right hand of God with angels and powers under Him, 3:22. God was patient in Noah's day, 3:20, and is patient now. And Peter's point for suffering believers is clear: suffering for doing good is not defeat, because Christ suffered and won.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

You partied enough in the old days. Your old friends think you are weird now, and that is fine. Love covers a multitude of sins, so love big. Use your gifts. Do not be shocked by the fiery trial. If you suffer as a Christian, do not be ashamed. Wear the name.

LIVING FOR GOD'S GLORY // 1 CORINTHIANS 10:23–33

1 Therefore, since Christ suffered in His
body, arm yourselves with the same re-
solve, because anyone who has suffered
in his body is done with sin. 2 Conse-
quently, he does not live out his remaining
time on earth for human passions, but for
the will of God. 3 For you have spent
enough time in the past carrying out the
same desires as the Gentiles: living in de-
bauchery, lust, drunkenness, orgies,
carousing, and detestable idolatry.
4 Because of this, they consider it strange
of you not to plunge with them into the
same flood of reckless indiscretion, and
they heap abuse on you. 5 But they will
have to give an account to Him who is
ready to judge the living and the dead. 6
That is why the gospel was preached
even to those who are now dead, so that
they might be judged as men in the flesh,
but live according to God in the spirit.
7 The end of all things is near. Therefore
be clear-minded and sober, so that you
can pray. 8 *Above all, love one another deeply,*
because love covers over a multitude of sins. 9
Show hospitality to one another without
complaining.
10 As good stewards of the manifold grace
of God, each of you should use whatever
gift he has received to serve one another.
11 If anyone speaks, he should speak as
one conveying the words of God. If any-
one serves, he should serve with the
strength God provides, so that in all things
God may be glorified through Jesus
Christ, to whom be the glory and the
power forever and ever. Amen.

SUFFERING AS CHRISTIANS

12 Beloved, do not be surprised at the fiery
trial that has come upon you, as though
something strange were happening to
you. 13 But rejoice that you share in the

- **1PE 4:3 [DEMONIC]** You spent enough time in detestable idolatry
- **1PE 4:6 [NOTE]** PREACHED TO THE DEAD. Most read it as people who heard the gospel while alive and have since died. Others tie it to 3:19. See the Big Question pages, p.2017.
- **1PE 4:7 [PROPHECY]** The end of all things is at hand; therefore be serious and watchful in your prayers → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **1PE 4:8 [QUOTES]** Quotes ← PROV 10:12 p.997
- **1PE 4:8 [NOTE]** CHARITY. The KJV says charity shall cover the multitude of sins. In 1611 charity meant love. Today it means giving money, so this Bible says love. From Proverbs 10:12, also James 5:20.
- **1PE 4:9 [NOTABLE]** Every believer has a gift. Use it to serve, not to show off.
- **1PE 4:12 [NOTABLE]** Suffering for Jesus is not strange. It means you share in His sufferings and His glory.

OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW NOTABLE

sufferings of Christ, so that you may be overjoyed at the revelation of His glory.

14 If you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests on you. 15 Indeed, none of you should suffer as a murderer or thief or wrongdoer, or even as a meddler. 16 But if you suffer as a Christian, do not be ashamed, but glorify God that you bear that name. 17 For it is time for judgment to begin with the family of God; and if it begins with us, what will the outcome be for those who disobey the gospel of God? 18 And,

"If it is hard for the righteous to be saved,
what will become of the ungodly and the sinner?"

19 So then, those who suffer according to God's will should entrust their souls to their faithful Creator and continue to do good.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT PLINY WROTE

Trials for the Name, About AD 112

PLINY, LETTERS 10.96 · 1 PETER 1:1 · 4:14 TO 16

WHO PLINY WAS

Pliny the Younger was a Roman lawyer and senator. About AD 110 the emperor Trajan sent him to govern Pontus and Bithynia, in what is now northern Turkey. Those are two of the places 1 Peter was sent to, 1:1.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is his whole letter to Trajan, Letters book 10, number 96, in William Melmoth's English translation as revised by F. C. T. Bosanquet. Sir means the emperor.

LETTERS 10.96

It is my invariable rule, Sir, to refer to you in all matters where I feel doubtful; for who is more capable of removing my scruples, or informing my ignorance? Having never been present at any trials concerning those who profess Christianity, I am unacquainted not only with the nature of their crimes, or the measure of their punishment, but how far it is proper to enter into an examination concerning them. Whether, therefore, any difference is usually made with respect to ages, or no distinction is to be observed between the young and the adult; whether repentance entitles them to a pardon; or if a man has been once a Christian, it avails nothing to desist from his error; whether the very profession of Christianity, unattended with any criminal act, or only the crimes themselves inherent in the profession are punishable; on all these points I am in great doubt. In the meanwhile, the method I have observed towards those who have been brought before me as Christians is this: I asked them whether they were Christians; if they admitted it, I repeated the question twice, and threatened them with punishment; if they persisted, I ordered them to be at once punished: for I was persuaded, whatever the nature of their opinions might be, a contumacious and inflexible obstinacy certainly deserved correction. There were others also brought before me possessed with the same infatuation, but being Roman citizens, I directed them to be sent to Rome. But this crime spreading (as is usually the case) while it was actually under prosecution, several instances of the same nature occurred. An anonymous information was laid before me containing a charge against several persons, who upon examination denied they were Christians, or had ever been so. They repeated after me an invocation to the gods, and offered religious rites with wine and incense before your statue (which for that purpose I had ordered to be brought, together with those of the gods), and even reviled the name of Christ: whereas there is no forcing, it is said, those who are really Christians into

- **1PE 4:12 [NOTE]** FIERY TRIAL. Some think this points to Nero's attack in AD 64, when Christians were burned alive. Others say Peter means trials in general, like gold in a furnace, 1:7. See What Tacitus Wrote.
- **1PE 4:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 11:2 p.1075
- **1PE 4:14 [NOTE]** TEXT. The KJV adds: on their part He is evil spoken of, but on your part He is glorified. These words are missing from the oldest copies.
- **1PE 4:16 [NOTABLE]** One of only three times the word Christian is in the Bible, with Acts 11:26 and 26:28.
- **1PE 4:16 [NOTE]** CHRISTIAN. At first a nickname outsiders used, Acts 11:26. Roman judges later asked just one question: are you a Christian? See What Pliny Wrote.
- **1PE 4:17 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 9:6 p.1260
- **1PE 4:18 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PROV 11:31 p.999

any of these compliances: I thought it proper, therefore, to discharge them. Some among those who were accused by a witness in person at first confessed themselves Christians, but immediately after denied it; the rest owned indeed that they had been of that number formerly, but had now (some above three, others more, and a few above twenty years ago) renounced that error. They all worshipped your statue and the images of the gods, uttering imprecations at the same time against the name of Christ. They affirmed the whole of their guilt, or their error, was, that they met on a stated day before it was light, and addressed a form of prayer to Christ, as to a divinity, binding themselves by a solemn oath, not for the purposes of any wicked design, but never to commit any fraud, theft, or adultery, never to falsify their word, nor deny a trust when they should be called upon to deliver it up; after which it was their custom to separate, and then reassemble, to eat in common a harmless meal. From this custom, however, they desisted after the publication of my edict, by which, according to your commands, I forbade the meeting of any assemblies. After receiving this account, I judged it so much the more necessary to endeavor to extort the real truth, by putting two female slaves to the torture, who were said to officiate in their religious rites: but all I could discover was evidence of an absurd and extravagant superstition. I deemed it expedient, therefore, to adjourn all further proceedings, in order to consult you. For it appears to be a matter highly deserving your consideration, more especially as great numbers must be involved in the danger of these prosecutions, which have already extended, and are still likely to extend, to persons of all ranks and ages, and even of both sexes. In fact, this contagious superstition is not confined to the cities only, but has spread its infection among the neighbouring villages and country. Nevertheless, it still seems possible to restrain its progress. The temples, at least, which were once almost deserted, begin now to be frequented; and the sacred rites, after a long intermission, are again revived; while there is a general demand for the victims, which till lately found very few purchasers. From all this it is easy to conjecture what numbers might be reclaimed if a general pardon were granted to those who shall repent of their error.

Are You a Christian?

PLINY, LETTERS 10.97 · 1 PETER 1:1 · 3:15 · 4:14 TO 16

TRAJAN'S ANSWER

The emperor wrote back, Letters 10.97. Here is his whole reply, same translation: You have adopted the right course, my dearest Secundus, in investigating the charges against the Christians who were brought before you. It is not possible to lay down any general rule for all such cases. Do not go out of your way to look for them. If indeed they should be brought before you, and the crime is proved, they must be punished; with the restriction, however, that where the party denies he is a Christian, and shall make it evident that he is not, by invoking our gods, let him (notwithstanding any former suspicion) be pardoned upon his repentance. Anonymous informations ought not to be received in any sort of prosecution. It is introducing a very dangerous precedent, and is quite foreign to the spirit of our age.

PUNISHED FOR THE NAME

Pliny did not ask what crime they did. He asked one question: are you a Christian? Saying yes three times was enough to be executed. That is just what Peter wrote about: if you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, 4:14, and if you suffer as a Christian, do not be ashamed, 4:16.

WHAT CHRISTIANS DID

They met on a set day before dawn, sang a hymn to Christ as to a god, and promised not to steal, cheat or commit adultery. Later they ate a simple meal together. Pliny's Latin says they sang a hymn; this translation says a form of

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES ARCHAEOLOGY DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

prayer. Even their enemy found no crime.

TWO WOMEN

The two slave women were called ministrae in Latin, which means servants. Many think they were deaconesses. See Phoebe, Pliny and Sophia in 1 Timothy, p.1939.

THE TEMPLES WERE EMPTY

Pliny says the temples had been almost deserted and few people bought animals for sacrifice. The faith had spread to towns and villages and to people of every age and rank.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Pliny wrote about 50 years after Peter, so he shows what believers in Bithynia faced later, not in Peter's own day. But some told him they had left the faith 20 years earlier, so there were Christians there by about AD 90.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Elders, be shepherds, not bosses, and do not do it for the money. Everybody, tie on humility like a servant's apron. Throw your worries on God, because He cares about you. Stay alert, because the devil prowls like a roaring lion. After a little while of suffering, God Himself will restore you. Mark says hi.

INSTRUCTIONS TO ELDERS // 1 TIMOTHY 3:1–7; TITUS 1:5–9

1 As a fellow elder, a witness of Christ's
sufferings, and a partaker of the glory to
be revealed, I appeal to the elders among
you: 2 Be shepherds of God's flock that is
among you, watching over them not out of
compulsion, but willingly, as God would
have you; not out of greed, but out of eagerness; 3 not lording it over those entrusted to you, but being examples to the
flock. 4 And when the Chief Shepherd appears, you will receive the crown of glory
that will never fade away.

- **1PE 5:2 [NOTABLE]** Lead willingly, not for money and not as a boss, but as an example.
- **1PE 5:2 [NOTE]** TEXT. Watching over them is missing in Codex Sinaiticus and Vaticanus. As God would have you is missing in Vaticanus and the KJV.
- **1PE 5:4 [FULFILLS]** I will establish one Shepherd over them, My servant David; He shall be prince among them ← EZK 34:23-24 p.1298

CAST YOUR CARES ON HIM

5 Young men, in the same way, submit
yourselves to your elders. And all of you,
clothe yourselves with humility toward
one another, because,

"God opposes the proud,
but gives grace to the humble."

6 Humble yourselves, therefore, under
God's mighty hand, so that in due time He
may exalt you. 7 Cast all your anxiety on
Him, because He cares for you.

8 Be sober-minded and alert. Your adversary the devil prowls around like a roaring
lion, seeking someone to devour. 9 Resist
him, standing firm in your faith and in the
knowledge that your brothers throughout
the world are undergoing the same kinds
of suffering.

BENEDICTION AND FAREWELL

10 And after you have suffered for a little
while, the God of all grace, who has called
you to His eternal glory in Christ, will Himself restore you, secure you, strengthen
you, and establish you. 11 To Him be the
power forever and ever. Amen.

12 Through Silvanus, whom I regard as a
faithful brother, I have written to you
briefly, encouraging you and testifying
that this is the true grace of God. Stand
firm in it.

13 The church in Babylon, chosen together
with you, sends you greetings, as does
my son Mark.

- **1PE 5:5 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PROV 3:34 p.990
- **1PE 5:6 [NOTABLE]** The way up is down, and God picks the timing.
- **1PE 5:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 55:22 p.920
- **1PE 5:8 [DEMONIC]** The devil prowls like a roaring lion
- **1PE 5:10 [NOTABLE]** Suffering is for a little while. God Himself promises four things: restore, secure, strengthen, establish.
- **1PE 5:12 [NOTE]** SILVANUS. Probably Silas, Paul's partner, Acts 15:40. Through Silvanus can mean he helped write the letter or that he carried it.
- **1PE 5:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** Roman tombs under St Peter's Basilica, dug out 1939 to 1949, with a small shrine from about AD 160 that Christians said marked Peter's grave → FIELD NOTES p.2022
- **1PE 5:13 [ARCHAEOLOGY]** A granite obelisk that stood in the Circus of Gaius and Nero on the Vatican hill, now in St Peter's Square → FIELD NOTES p.2023
- **1PE 5:13 [NOTE]** BABYLON. Most believe this is a code name for Rome, as in Revelation 17 to 18. Papias and Clement of Alexandria, quoted by Eusebius, said Peter wrote from Rome and called it Babylon. A few say the real Babylon in Iraq; the Coptic church points to a Roman fort called Babylon in old Cairo. MARK MY SON. John Mark, Acts 12:12, Peter's son in the faith. Papias says Mark wrote down Peter's preaching as his Gospel.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM · DEBATED

PETER'S TOMB?

1 PETER 5:13 · JOHN 21:18 TO 19 · 2 PETER 1:14



Gravestone of Licinia Amias from the Vatican hill, early 200s AD, National Roman Museum, Baths of Diocletian, Rome. Photo Marie-Lan Nguyen, public domain.

WHAT IT IS

A Christian gravestone from the Vatican hill in Rome. At the top are D M, short for to the spirits of the dead, an old pagan habit. Under it in Greek: ICHTHYS ZONTON, fish of the living. Then two fish and an anchor, and in Latin: to Licinia Amias, well deserving, she lived. The rest is broken off.

HOW OLD IT IS

Early 200s AD, about 150 years after Peter. It is one of the oldest Christian gravestones known. The tombs under St Peter's Basilica date from about AD 100 to 300.

THE DIG

In 1939, while making room for the grave of Pope Pius XI, workers broke into an old Roman street of tombs under the church. Pope Pius XII ordered a quiet dig that lasted until 1949. Right under the high altar they found a small shrine built against a red plastered wall, about AD 160.

THE TROPHY

About AD 200 a Roman Christian named Gaius wrote: I can show the trophies of the apostles. If you go to the Vatican or to the Ostian Way, you will find them. Eusebius quotes him, Church History 2.25. Many think the little shrine is Peter's trophy, his monument.

PETER IS HERE?

Next to the shrine stood a wall covered in Christian scratchings. The scholar Margherita Guarducci read one Greek scrap as Petros eni, Peter is within. Others read it differently.

THE BONES

Bones from a hollow in that wall belonged to a man about 60 to 70 years old, wrapped in purple cloth with gold thread. In 1968 Pope Paul VI said they had been identified as Peter's in a convincing way. Many archaeologists, Catholic ones included, are not sure.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Peter writes from Babylon, 5:13, which most take to mean Rome. Jesus told him how he would die, John 21:18 to 19.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

No grave there has Peter's name on it. The dig shows Christians honored this spot as Peter's grave by about AD 160, about 100 years after his death. Most historians accept that Peter died in Rome. Whether these are his bones is still debated.

14 Greet one another with a kiss of love.
Peace to all of you who are in Christ.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE OBELISK · MEDIUM FOR PETER

NERO'S CIRCUS

1 PETER 5:13 · TACITUS, ANNALS 15.44 · JOHN 21:18 TO 19



Left: the Vatican obelisk, St Peter's Square; the cross on top was added in 1586. Photo Livioandronico2013, CC BY SA 4.0. Right: the Roman bronze ball that once sat on its tip, Capitoline Museums, Rome. Photo Sailko, CC BY 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

A red granite obelisk from Egypt, about 83 feet tall, with no hieroglyphs on it. Beside it is the bronze ball that once sat on its tip.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was cut in Egypt long before Jesus; with no hieroglyphs, nobody knows exactly when. The emperor Caligula shipped it to Rome in AD 37. Pliny the Elder, who died in AD 79, says it stood in the circus of the emperors Gaius and Nero on the Vatican hill, Natural History 36.74. The bronze ball is Roman, about AD 1 to 50.

THE OLD WORDS

Carved on the shaft in Latin is a dedication to the divine Augustus and to Tiberius, the emperor when Jesus was crucified. Holes from older bronze letters show it first stood in Alexandria, Egypt, set up by Cornelius Gallus, Egypt's first Roman governor, about 30 BC.

NERO'S CIRCUS

Caligula built a racetrack on the Vatican hill, and Nero raced chariots there. Tacitus says Nero offered his gardens for killing Christians and held a show in the circus, Annals 15.44. Most scholars think this is that circus, because Nero's gardens were on the Vatican hill.

PETER'S DEATH

Clement of Rome, about AD 96, says Peter died a faithful witness. Tertullian, about AD 200, says Peter died in Rome like his Lord, on a cross. Origen, quoted by Eusebius, says upside down. Later tradition puts the cross near Nero's circus. If so, this obelisk stood nearby.

MOVED IN 1586

For 1,500 years it stood beside the old church of St Peter, the only obelisk in Rome that never fell. In 1586 Pope Sixtus V had the engineer Domenico Fontana move it to St Peter's Square, with about 900 men and 140 horses. The cross went on top, and the bronze ball came down.

THE BALL

People in the Middle Ages said the ball held the ashes of Julius Caesar. When it came down, it held only dust. The dents are said to be bullet marks from the Sack of Rome in 1527.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

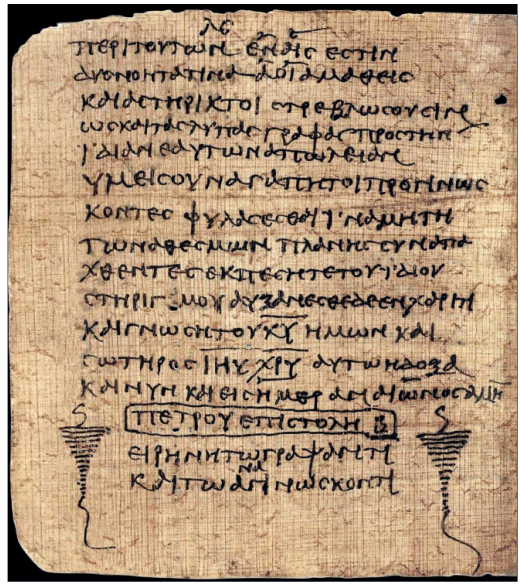
No ancient writer says Peter died at this obelisk. It does show that the circus where Christians died was a real place.

BOOK 61 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

2 PETER

Grow in Grace

AUTHOR	Simon Peter, 1:1, shortly before his death, 1:14. It is the most debated letter in the New Testament, and many scholars think a later follower wrote it. See The Big Question pages, p.2028.
WRITTEN FROM	Probably Rome, while Peter waited to die.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 64 to 68, just before Peter was killed under Nero. Critical scholars say about AD 80 to 150.
WRITTEN TO	The same believers as 1 Peter, 3:1, in what is now Turkey.
WHY HE WROTE	To warn against false teachers who mocked Jesus' return and lived for pleasure, and to remind believers to keep growing.
KEY VERSE	2 Peter 3:18. But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 2 PETER
Papyrus 72, copied about AD 300 and found in Egypt. This page holds the end of 2 Peter, 3:16 to 18. In the box is the title, Of Peter, Letter 2. Under it is the same blessing the copyist wrote after 1 Peter: Peace to the one who wrote and to the one who reads. Kept in the Vatican Library. Public domain.

Historical Setting

Peter knows he is about to die, 1:14. Like Paul in 2 Timothy, he writes a farewell letter. Jesus had not come back yet, and some teachers said He never would, 3:4. They turned grace into an excuse to sin, chased money and pleasure, and promised freedom while they were slaves themselves, 2:19. Peter answers with three things: what he saw with his own

eyes on the mountain, what the prophets wrote, and how God has judged and rescued people before.

What Was Going Wrong

FALSE TEACHERS. They slipped in quietly and denied the Master who bought them, 2:1.
GREED. They used people to make money, 2:3 and 2:14.
ANYTHING GOES. They promised freedom but lived as slaves to their desires, 2:18 to 19.
SCOFFERS. Where is His coming? Nothing ever changes, 3:3 to 4.
TWISTING PAUL. Unstable people distorted Paul's letters, 3:16.
FORGETTING. Some forgot they had been cleansed from their old sins, 1:9.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 Peter is Peter's last word. He knows his time is short, so he says: keep growing, remember what you were taught, and do not fall for teachers who make faith an excuse to sin. Jesus really is coming back. God is not late; He is patient, giving people time to repent. Then everything will change, and righteousness will finally be at home.

2 Peter at a Glance

CH 1	**GROW AND REMEMBER** Everything we need, add to your faith, the transfiguration, the sure word of the prophets.
CH 2	**FALSE TEACHERS** Fallen angels, the flood, Sodom, Balaam's donkey, the dog and the pig.
CH 3	**THE DAY IS COMING** Scoffers, a day like a thousand years, fire, a new heaven and earth, grow in grace.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 PETER 1:1 Our God and Savior Jesus Christ.

2 PETER 1:16 TO 17 Peter saw His majesty and heard the Father call Him My beloved Son.

2 PETER 1:19 The morning star that rises in your hearts.

2 PETER 3:18 Grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

What to Watch for in 2 Peter

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (3)	1:11, 1:17, 1:19
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (1)	3:6-7
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (2)	1:14, 2:1-3
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	3:3-4, 3:10-13
THE HEART (1)	2:14
MIRACLES (3)	1:16, 1:18, 2:11, 2:16
DEMONIC (2)	2:4, 2:15
NOTABLE (12)	1:3-8, 1:10, 1:20-21, 2:5, 2:9, 2:19-21, 3:9 and 2 more
JESUS SPEAKING (1 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

PAUL IS SCRIPTURE
Peter is the first writer to put Paul's letters next to the rest of the Scriptures, 3:16.

TARTARUS
2:4 is the only place in the Bible that uses the Greek word for Tartarus, the deepest prison in Greek stories. See What Hesiod Wrote.

THE TALKING DONKEY
Balaam got scolded by his own donkey, 2:16 and Numbers 22:28.

A WASHED PIG
The second proverb in 2:22 is not from the Bible. It comes from an old story called Ahiqar. See its pages.

LAST WORDS
3:18 may be the last words Peter ever wrote: grow.

What Happened Next?

Early writers say Peter was crucified in Rome under Nero, as Jesus had told him, John 21:18 to 19. The church argued for a long time about whether this letter was really his, but by AD 367 it was on the New Testament list of Athanasius of Alexandria, and soon in Bibles everywhere.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Peter's last letter starts with a gift list: God has given you everything you need. Now build on it: goodness, knowledge, self control, endurance, godliness, kindness and love. Peter knows he will die soon, so he says remember this. He saw Jesus shine on the mountain. This is no fairy tale.

A GREETING FROM PETER // 1 PETER 1:1–2

1 Simon Peter, a servant and apostle of Jesus Christ,

To those who through the righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ have received a faith as precious as ours:

2 Grace and peace be multiplied to you through the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord.

PARTAKERS OF THE DIVINE NATURE

3 His divine power has given us everything we need for life and godliness through the knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and excellence. 4 Through these He has given us His precious and magnificent promises, so that through them you may become partakers of the divine nature, now that you have escaped the corruption in the world caused by evil desires.

5 For this very reason, make every effort to add to your faith virtue; and to virtue, knowledge; 6 and to knowledge, self-control; and to self-control, perseverance; and to perseverance, godliness; 7 and to godliness, brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness, love. 8 For if you possess these qualities and continue to grow in them, they will keep you from being ineffective and unproductive in your knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. 9 But whoever lacks these traits is nearsighted to the point of blindness, having forgotten that he has been cleansed from his past sins.

10 Therefore, brothers, strive to make your calling and election sure. For if you practice these things you will never stumble, 11 and you will receive a lavish reception into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.

12 Therefore I will always remind you of these things, even though you know them and are established in the truth you now have. 13 I think it is right to refresh your memory as long as I live in the tent of my body, 14 because I know that this tent will soon be laid aside, as our Lord Jesus Christ has made clear to me. 15 And I will make every effort to ensure that after my departure, you will be able to recall these things at all times.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO WROTE 2 PETER?

The Most Debated Letter

2 PETER 1:1 · 1:14 TO 18 · 3:1 · 3:15 TO 16 · JUDE 4 TO 18

WHAT THE LETTER SAYS

The writer calls himself Simeon Peter, 1:1. He says Jesus showed him he would die soon, 1:14. He says he saw Jesus shine on the holy mountain and heard God's voice, 1:16 to 18. He calls this his second letter, 3:1, and calls Paul our beloved brother, 3:15.

SLOW TO BE ACCEPTED

Few early writers quote 2 Peter by name. Origen, about AD 240, said Peter left one letter everyone accepts, and possibly a second, but it is disputed. Eusebius, about AD 325, put it among the books some disputed, though he said many found it useful.

JEROME

About AD 392 Jerome wrote that most people denied the second letter was

- **2PE 1:1 [NOTE]** TWO TITLES, ONE PERSON. In 1:1, our God and Savior Jesus Christ, a single Greek the covers both God and Savior, so most scholars read it as calling Jesus God, like Titus 2:13. Granville Sharp made this point famous in 1798. Some read two persons. SIMEON. Some old copies spell his name Simeon, the Hebrew form, Acts 15:14. WHO WROTE IT? See The Big Question pages, p.2028.
- **2PE 1:3 [NOTABLE]** God has already given what it takes to live for Him, and even a share in His divine nature.
- **2PE 1:5 [NOTABLE]** A ladder of seven steps from faith up to love. Keep climbing and you will not be useless.
- **2PE 1:10 [NOTABLE]** Not to earn it, but to show it is real. Do these things and you will never stumble.
- **2PE 1:11 [FULFILLS]** His kingdom would be everlasting ← 2SA 7:13 p.503
- **2PE 1:14 [PROPHECY]** Peter would soon lay aside his body, as Jesus had shown him → HISTORY: Peter was put to death in Rome under Emperor Nero, about AD 64 to 68. Recorded in 1 Clement 5 and by Eusebius, Church History 2.25.
- **2PE 1:14 [NOTE]** THIS TENT. Jesus told Peter how he would die, John 21:18 to 19. See Peter's Tomb? and Nero's Circus in 1 Peter, p.2022.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES MIRACLES *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* JESUS SPEAKING

Peter's because its style is so different from the first. Elsewhere he suggested Peter used a different helper to write each letter.

ACCEPTED

Papyrus 72 already copied it about AD 300. Athanasius listed it in AD 367, and church councils at Hippo, 393, and Carthage, 397, did too. After that it stood in the New Testament everywhere.

THE REFORMERS

Erasmus doubted it. John Calvin, 1551, said he could not deny it was Peter's message, and thought a follower may have written it down at Peter's command. Luther kept it with no complaint, though he questioned Hebrews, James, Jude and Revelation.

MODERN SCHOLARS

Many scholars today think someone wrote it after Peter's death, about AD 80 to 150. Their reasons: the Greek is very different from 1 Peter, chapter 2 looks borrowed from Jude, Paul's letters are already a collection, 3:16, and the fathers have fallen asleep, 3:4, sounds like a later generation.

THE OTHER SIDE

Other scholars answer each point: a different helper explains the style, Peter may have used Jude, Paul's letters were copied early, and the fathers can mean the Old Testament fathers. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

2 PETER 1:1 · 1:12 TO 15 · 3:1 · 3:4 · 3:16 · 1 PETER 5:12

PETER WROTE IT

Peter wrote it near his death, about AD 64 to 68, just as it says. Held by most of the church through history and by scholars like Michael Green. Best case: the letter plainly claims to be his, the early church in the end accepted it, and it would be strange for a fake to warn so hard against deceivers.

PETER THROUGH A HELPER

Peter gave the message, and a different secretary wrote it out than the one who helped with 1 Peter, Silvanus, 1 Peter 5:12. Jerome suggested this, and Calvin thought something like it. Best case: it explains the different Greek and keeps Peter as the true author.

A FAREWELL BY A FOLLOWER

After Peter died, a close follower wrote down Peter's teaching as his last testament, a style of writing readers would have recognized. Richard Bauckham argued this in 1983. Best case: it explains the style and the later details without calling anyone a liar.

A LATER FORGERY

Someone in the 100s used Peter's name to win an argument, and the church was fooled. Bart Ehrman argues this. Best case: it explains why so many in the early church doubted it.

WHY IT MATTERS

If Peter wrote it, we have the last words of Jesus' closest friend. If not, the church still judged that it teaches the faith the apostles taught.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The letter is in every New Testament since the late 300s. Its message is clear either way: grow in faith, reject false teachers, and wait for the Lord's return, because God is patient.

EYEWITNESSES OF HIS MAJESTY // MATTHEW 17:1–13; MARK 9:1–13; LUKE 9:28–36

16 For we did not follow cleverly devised fables when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we were eyewitnesses of His majesty. 17 For He received honor and glory from God the Father when the voice came to Him from the Majestic Glory, saying, *"This is My beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased."* 18 And we ourselves heard this voice from heaven when we were with Him on the holy mountain.

19 We also have the word of the prophets as confirmed beyond doubt. And you will do well to pay attention to it, as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day

- **2PE 1:16 [MIRACLE]** Peter saw Jesus' glory on the holy mountain and heard God's voice from heaven
- **2PE 1:16 [NOTE]** NOT FABLES. The Greek word is mythos, myth. Peter says the gospel is not a made up story like the Greek myths. He was there.
- **2PE 1:17 [FULFILLS]** Declared to be the Beloved Son of God ← PS 2:7 p.884
- **2PE 1:17 [NOTE]** THE FATHER'S VOICE. The red words here are the Father's voice from heaven, as in Matthew 17:5.

PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts. 20 Above all, you must understand that no prophecy of Scripture comes from one's own interpretation. 21 For no such prophecy was ever brought forth by the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Fake teachers are coming, and they are greedy, proud and good at sounding spiritual. God judged the fallen angels, the flood world and Sodom, but He rescued Noah and Lot. These teachers are like Balaam, who got scolded by his own donkey. A dog goes back to its vomit, and a washed pig heads straight back to the mud.

DELIVERANCE FROM FALSE PROPHETS // JUDE 1:3–16

1 Now there were also false prophets among the people, just as there will be false teachers among you. They will secretly introduce destructive heresies, even denying the Master who bought them—bringing swift destruction on themselves. 2 Many will follow in their depravity, and because of them the way of truth will be defamed. 3 In their greed, these false teachers will exploit you with deceptive words. The longstanding verdict against them remains in force, and their destruction does not sleep.

4 For if God did not spare the angels when they sinned, but cast them deep into hell, placing them in chains of darkness to be held for judgment; 5 if He did not spare the ancient world when He brought the flood on its ungodly people, but preserved Noah, a preacher of righteousness, among the eight; 6 if He condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to destruction, reducing them to ashes as an example of what is coming on the ungodly; 7 and if He rescued Lot, a righteous man distressed by the depraved conduct of the lawless 8 (for that righteous man, living among them day after day, was tormented in his righteous soul by the lawless deeds he saw and heard)— 9 if all this is so, then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from trials and to hold the unrighteous for punishment on the day of judgment.

10 Such punishment is specially reserved for those who indulge the corrupt desires of the flesh and despise authority. Bold and self-willed, they are unafraid to slander glorious beings. 11 Yet not even angels, though greater in strength and power, dare to bring such slanderous charges against them before the Lord.

- **2PE 1:19 [FULFILLS]** Balaam's prophecy: a Star and Scepter to come out of Jacob ← NUM 24:17 p.262
- **2PE 1:19 [FULFILLS]** Morning light at sunrise ← 2SA 23:4 · MEDIUM p.532
- **2PE 1:20 [NOTABLE]** How the Bible came to be: real men wrote, but the Spirit carried them like wind fills a sail.
- **2PE 1:20 [NOTE]** OWN INTERPRETATION. Catholics and Orthodox often read this as no one may interpret Scripture privately, apart from the church. Most Protestants read it with 1:21: the prophets did not make up their messages; they came from God. The Greek can bear both.
- **2PE 1:21 [NOTE]** TEXT. The KJV says holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost. Many old copies say men spoke from God.
- **2PE 2:1 [PROPHECY]** There will be false teachers among you, who will secretly bring in destructive heresies, even denying the Lord who bought them… many will follow their destructive ways → HISTORY: False teachers soon spread, like the Gnostics Irenaeus wrote against about AD 180. Later Arius taught Jesus was a created being, and the Council of Nicaea rejected this in AD 325.
- **2PE 2:1 [NOTE]** 2 PETER AND JUDE. 2:1 to 3:3 shares a lot with Jude 4 to 18: false teachers, angels, Sodom, Balaam, waterless springs and scoffers. Most scholars think Peter used Jude; some think Jude used Peter, or both used a common source. Peter leaves out Jude's quotes from 1 Enoch. THE MASTER WHO BOUGHT THEM. Arminians say this shows Christ died for everyone, even people who fall away. Calvinists say it describes how these teachers claimed to be bought, or echoes God buying Israel, Deuteronomy 32:6.
- **2PE 2:4 [DEMONIC]** God did not spare the angels who sinned but cast them into chains of darkness
- **2PE 2:4 [NOTABLE]** Peter and Jude both seem to know the story in 1 Enoch 6 to 16, where angels sinned with human women and were locked up until the judgment. Genesis 6 does not say this outright, but many Jews in their day believed it.
- **2PE 2:4 [NOTE]** HELL. The Greek verb means sent to Tartarus, the only time it is used in the Bible. See What Hesiod Wrote. TEXT. Some copies say chains of darkness, others pits of darkness; the two Greek words look almost alike.
- **2PE 2:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 7:1; 7:23 p.55
- **2PE 2:6 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 19:24-25 p.73
- **2PE 2:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 19:16 p.73
- **2PE 2:9 [NOTABLE]** If God rescued Noah and Lot, He can rescue you.
- **2PE 2:11 [MIRACLE]** Angels, though greater in strength and power, do not slander

FROM HISTORY

WHAT HESIOD WROTE

Tartarus, About 700 BC

HESIOD, THEOGONY 713 TO 735 · 2 PETER 2:4 · JUDE 6

WHY THIS IS HERE

In 2:4 Peter says God cast the angels who sinned deep into hell. The Greek verb is tartaroo, to send to Tartarus. It is the only time this word appears in the Bible. Greek readers knew Tartarus from their oldest stories.

WHO HESIOD WAS

Hesiod was a Greek farmer and poet who lived about 700 BC, around the time of Isaiah. His poem the Theogony tells how the Greek gods were born and how Zeus beat the older gods, the Titans, and locked them away. He did not know the God of Israel.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is the whole passage, Theogony lines 713 to 735, in the English translation by Hugh Evelyn White, 1914. Cottus, Briareos and Gyes are giants with a hundred hands who fought for Zeus.

THEOGONY 713 TO 735

And amongst the foremost Cottus and Briareos and Gyes insatiate for war raised fierce fighting: three hundred rocks, one upon another, they launched from their strong hands and overshadowed the Titans with their missiles, and hurled them beneath the wide-pathed earth, and bound them in bitter chains when they had conquered them by their strength for all their great spirit, as far beneath the earth as heaven is above earth; for so far is it from earth to Tartarus. For a brazen anvil falling down from heaven nine nights and days would reach the earth upon the tenth: and again, a brazen anvil falling from earth nine nights and days would reach Tartarus upon the tenth. Round it runs a fence of bronze, and night spreads in triple line all about it like a neck-circlet, while above grow the roots of the earth and unfruitful sea. There by the counsel of Zeus who drives the clouds the Titan gods are hidden under misty gloom, in a dank place where are the ends of the huge earth. And they may not go out; for Poseidon fixed gates of bronze upon it, and a wall runs all round it on every side. There Gyes and Cottus and great-souled Obriareus live, trusty warders of Zeus who holds the aegis.

Why Peter Said Tartarus

2 PETER 2:4 · JUDE 6 · GENESIS 6:1 TO 4 · 1 ENOCH 20:2 · JOB 41:32

A FAMOUS PRISON

To Greeks, Tartarus was the deepest place there is, far below Hades, a locked prison for rebels against heaven, bound in chains and darkness. Homer says it lies as far below Hades as heaven is above the earth.

JEWS USED THE WORD TOO

Jews who spoke Greek borrowed it. The Greek Old Testament uses Tartarus in Job 41:32. The Greek text of 1 Enoch 20:2 says the angel Uriel is set over Tartarus. Josephus and Philo use the word as well.

THE ANGELS WHO SINNED

Peter and Jude 6 both say these angels are kept in chains of darkness until judgment, right before they mention Noah's flood. That matches 1 Enoch 6 to 16, where the angels of Genesis 6 are bound under the earth until the last day. See Spirits in Prison in 1 Peter, p.2017.

WHAT PETER MEANT

Peter is not saying the Greek myths were true. He uses a word his readers knew for the worst prison imaginable, the way we might say someone was sent to Alcatraz.

TARTARUS, HADES OR GEHENNA?

Many teachers say the Bible uses three different words. Hades is the place of the dead. Gehenna is the place of final punishment, Mark 9:43. Tartarus, here, is a holding prison for fallen angels until judgment. Others think the words overlap.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

Hesiod's Titans are not Peter's angels. The two stories share a picture of rebels locked in a dark prison, not a source.

12 These men are like irrational animals,
creatures of instinct, born to be captured
and destroyed. They blaspheme in mat-
ters they do not understand, and like such

THE HEART MIRACLES DEMONIC *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* NOTABLE

creatures, they too will be destroyed. 13 The harm they will suffer is the wages of their wickedness.

They consider it a pleasure to carouse in broad daylight. They are blots and blemishes, reveling in their deception as they feast with you. 14 Their eyes are full of adultery; their desire for sin is never satisfied; they seduce the unstable. They are accursed children with hearts trained in greed.

15 They have left the straight way and wandered off to follow the way of Balaam son of Beor, who loved the wages of wickedness. 16 But he was rebuked for his transgression by a donkey, otherwise without speech, that spoke with a man's voice and restrained the prophet's madness.

17 These men are springs without water and mists driven by a storm. Blackest darkness is reserved for them. 18 With lofty but empty words, they appeal to the sensual passions of the flesh and entice those who are just escaping from others who live in error. 19 They promise them freedom, while they themselves are slaves to depravity. For a man is a slave to whatever has mastered him.

20 If indeed they have escaped the corruption of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, only to be entangled and overcome by it again, their final condition is worse than it was at first. 21 It would have been better for them not to have known the way of righteousness than to have known it and then to turn away from the holy commandment passed on to them. 22 Of them the proverbs are true: *"A dog returns to its vomit,"* and, *"A sow that is washed goes back to her wallowing in the mud."*

- **2PE 2:13 [NOTE]** TEXT. Most copies say reveling in their deceptions. Some old copies say in their love feasts, like Jude 12; the two Greek words differ by one letter.
- **2PE 2:14 [HEART]** False teachers have trained their hearts in greed, like an athlete in training.
- **2PE 2:15 [DEMONIC]** Balaam son of Beor, the hired diviner, loved the wages of wickedness
- **2PE 2:16 [MIRACLE]** Balaam's donkey spoke with a man's voice
- **2PE 2:19 [NOTABLE]** False freedom is the worst kind of slavery.
- **2PE 2:20 [NOTABLE]** Knowing the way and turning back is worse than never knowing it.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT AHIQAR SAID

The Washed Pig

THE STORY OF AHIQAR · 2 PETER 2:22 · PROVERBS 26:11 · TOBIT 1:21 TO 22

TWO PROVERBS

2:22 quotes two sayings. A dog returns to its vomit is Proverbs 26:11. A sow that is washed goes back to her wallowing in the mud is not in the Bible at all.

WHO AHIQAR WAS

The Story of Ahiqar is about a wise royal adviser in Assyria, under Sennacherib and Esarhaddon, about 700 to 670 BC. He adopts his nephew Nadan and trains him, but Nadan betrays him and has him sentenced to death. Ahiqar hides, is saved, and later scolds Nadan with a long string of sayings that begin, My son.

WHAT HE SAID

Here are Ahiqar's words to Nadan from the Syriac version of the story, in the English translation by J. Rendel Harris, The Story of Ahikar, second edition, Cambridge, 1913, page 125. Thou and thee are old English for you.

THE STORY OF AHIQAR, SYRIAC

My son, thou hast been to me like the swine that had been to the baths, and when it saw a muddy ditch, went down and washed in it, and cried to his companions, 'Come and wash.'

OTHER VERSIONS

The story was copied in many languages. The Armenian and Slavonic versions tell the same picture of a pig taken to the bath that goes right back to the mud.

WHO NOTICED

In his 1913 introduction Harris argued that this saying explains the second proverb in 2 Peter, so the sow that went to the bath.

IN THE BIBLE TOO

Ahiqar shows up by name in the book of Tobit, as Tobit's nephew who served the king of Assyria, Tobit 1:21 to 22 and 14:10.

- **2PE 2:22 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PROV 26:11 p.1017
- **2PE 2:22 [NOTE]** TWO PROVERBS. The dog is Proverbs 26:11. The washed pig is not in the Bible. See What Ahiqar Said.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW END TIMES PROPHECIES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE PAPYRUS · THE PIG SAYING IS FROM LATER COPIES

THE AHIQAR PAPYRUS

2 PETER 2:22 · TOBIT 1:21 TO 22 · JEREMIAH 44:1



Part of the Aramaic Story of Ahiqar on papyrus, from Elephantine, Egypt, 400s BC. Neues Museum, Berlin. Photo Osama Shukir Muhammed Amin, CC BY SA 4.0.

WHAT IT IS

Pieces of a papyrus scroll with the Story of Ahiqar and his sayings, written in Aramaic, the language Jesus spoke. It is the oldest copy of the story known.

HOW OLD IT IS

It was written in the late 400s BC. The scribe reused an older papyrus; under the story, an erased Egyptian customs list from about 475 BC can still be read.

WHERE IT WAS FOUND

On Elephantine, an island in the Nile in southern Egypt, dug up by German archaeologists from 1906 to 1908. It is now in Berlin.

WHO READ IT

Elephantine was home to a colony of Jewish soldiers serving the Persian king. They had their own temple to the God of Israel there. Their letters were found too, including one from about 407 BC asking for help to rebuild that temple. Jeremiah 44:1 speaks of Jews living in southern Egypt in his day.

WHAT IT SAYS

Ahiqar's story and wise sayings, like: Do not let a word go out of your mouth until you have weighed it. Some sayings sound like the book of Proverbs.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

Jews were reading Ahiqar 500 years before Peter, so his sayings were well known among them. That helps explain how one of them ended up as a proverb in 2:22.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The washed pig saying is not on the surviving pieces of this old papyrus. It is known from later copies of the story, in Syriac, Armenian and other languages. Pigs going back to the mud was also a common picture; the Greek thinker Heraclitus said pigs delight in mud.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Scoffers ask, so where is He? Peter answers that with God a day is like a thousand years. He is not slow; He is patient, because He wants everyone to repent. The day will come like a thief, with fire, and then a new heaven and earth. Paul says the same, though some of his letters are hard to understand. Keep growing.

THE COMING JUDGMENT // GENESIS 7:1–24; JUDE 1:17–23

1 Beloved, this is now my second letter to
you. Both of them are reminders to stir
you to wholesome thinking 2 by recalling
what was foretold by the holy prophets
and commanded by our Lord and Savior
through your apostles.

3 Most importantly, you must understand
that in the last days scoffers will come,
scoffing and following their own evil de-
sires. 4 "Where is the promise of His com-
ing?" they will ask. "Ever since our fathers
fell asleep, everything continues as it has
from the beginning of creation."

5 But they deliberately overlook the fact
that long ago by God's word the heavens
existed and the earth was formed out of
water and by water, 6 through which the
world of that time perished in the flood. 7
And by that same word, the present heav-
ens and earth are reserved for fire, being
kept for the day of judgment and destruc-
tion of ungodly men.

- **2PE 3:1 [NOTE]** SECOND LETTER. Most take the first letter to be 1 Peter.
- **2PE 3:3 [PROPHECY]** In the last days scoffers will come, walking according to their own lusts... the heavens and the earth which are now preserved by the same word, are reserved for fire until the day of judgment → STILL TO COME
- **2PE 3:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 1:6-9 p.46
- **2PE 3:6 [FULFILLS]** The flood came suddenly and swept away all who were outside the ark. Jesus said His coming will be like this ← GEN 7:23 p.56
- **2PE 3:6 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 7:11 p.56

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

THE DAY OF THE LORD // ZEPHANIAH 1:7–18; MALACHI 4:1–6; 1 THESSALONIANS 5:1–11

8 Beloved, do not let this one thing escape
your notice: With the Lord a day is like a
thousand years, and a thousand years are
like a day. 9 The Lord is not slow in keep-
ing His promise as some understand
slowness, but is patient with you, not
wanting anyone to perish but everyone to
come to repentance.

10 But the Day of the Lord will come like a
thief. The heavens will disappear with a
roar, the elements will be destroyed by
fire, and the earth and its works will be
laid bare.

11 Since everything will be destroyed in this
way, what kind of people ought you to be?
You ought to conduct yourselves in holi-
ness and godliness 12 as you anticipate
and hasten the coming of the day of God,
when the heavens will be destroyed by
fire and the elements will melt in the heat.
13 But in keeping with God's promise, we
are looking forward to a new heaven and
a new earth, where righteousness dwells.

FINAL EXHORTATIONS

14 Therefore, beloved, as you anticipate
these things, make every effort to be
found at peace—spotless and blameless
in His sight.

15 Consider also that our Lord's patience
brings salvation, just as our beloved
brother Paul also wrote you with the wis-
dom God gave him. 16 He writes this way in
all his letters, speaking in them about
such matters. Some parts of his letters are
hard to understand, which ignorant and
unstable people distort, as they do the
rest of the Scriptures, to their own de-
struction.

17 Therefore, beloved, since you already
know these things, be on your guard so
that you will not be carried away by the
error of the lawless and fall from your se-
cure standing. 18 But grow in the grace and
knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus
Christ. To Him be the glory both now and
to the day of eternity.

Amen.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

A DAY LIKE A THOUSAND YEARS

What Did Peter Mean?

2 PETER 3:8 TO 9 · PSALM 90:4 · GENESIS 2:17 · MATTHEW 24:36

WHAT PETER SAID

With the Lord a day is like a thousand years, and a thousand years are like a day, 3:8. He borrows Psalm 90:4, a prayer of Moses: a thousand years in Your sight are like yesterday when it passes. Then he explains: the Lord is not slow, but patient, 3:9.

THE HISTORY

Early Jews and Christians did a lot with this verse. The book of Jubilees, about 160 BC, and Justin Martyr, about AD 155, said Adam died at 930 within one day of a thousand years, so God's warning in Genesis 2:17 came true. The Letter of Barnabas, about AD 130, and Irenaeus, about AD 180, taught that the world would last six days of a thousand years

- **2PE 3:7 [PROPHECY]** In the last days scoffers will come, walking according to their own lusts... the heavens and the earth which are now preserved by the same word, are reserved for fire until the day of judgment → STILL TO COME
- **2PE 3:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 90:4 p.945
- **2PE 3:8 [NOTE]** A THOUSAND YEARS. See the Big Question page, p.2034.
- **2PE 3:9 [NOTABLE]** God waits because He wants everyone to come to repentance.
- **2PE 3:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 18:23; 33:11 p.1272
- **2PE 3:9 [NOTE]** NOT WANTING ANYONE TO PERISH. Arminians say God wants every person saved and leaves the choice to them. Calvinists say anyone means any of you, God's people, or shows what God desires in general, not whom He chooses. Both agree God is patient and calls all to repent, Ezekiel 33:11.
- **2PE 3:10 [PROPHECY]** The day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night, in which the heavens will pass away with a great noise, and the elements will melt with fervent heat; both the earth and the works that are in it will be burned up... we look for new heavens and a new earth in which righteousness dwells → STILL TO COME
- **2PE 3:10 [NOTE]** TEXT. The oldest copies say the earth and its works will be found, laid bare. Later copies and the KJV say burned up. See Will the Earth Burn?
- **2PE 3:12 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 34:4 p.1101
- **2PE 3:13 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 65:17; 66:22 p.1141
- **2PE 3:14 [NOTABLE]** Live today the way you want to be found when He comes.
- **2PE 3:15 [NOTABLE]** Peter puts Paul's letters next to the rest of the Scriptures, and admits some parts are hard to understand.
- **2PE 3:15 [NOTE]** PAUL IS SCRIPTURE. Peter puts Paul's letters next to the rest of the Scriptures, 3:16. They once clashed at Antioch, Galatians 2:11 to 14. Here Peter calls him our beloved brother.
- **2PE 3:18 [NOTABLE]** The last words Peter ever wrote: keep growing.

each, then a seventh thousand year sabbath.

GOD IS PATIENT

Most teachers say Peter's point is simple: God does not watch the clock like we do. What feels like a long delay to us is nothing to Him, and He waits so more people can repent. Key verses: 3:9 and Psalm 90:2 to 4. Best case: it is the reason Peter himself gives in the next verse.

THE MILLENNIAL WEEK

Six thousand years of history, then a thousand year reign of Christ, Revelation 20:4. Best case: it is very old, held by Barnabas, Irenaeus and many after. Problem: every attempt to count the years to a date has failed, and Jesus said no one knows the day or hour, Matthew 24:36.

DAY AGE CREATION

Some use the verse to say the days of Genesis 1 could be long ages. Young earth teachers answer that Peter is talking about God's patience, not about creation, and that Genesis 1 counts evening and morning.

GOD OUTSIDE TIME

Augustine and many after him taught that God is not inside time at all. A day and a thousand years are the same to Him because He sees all of history at once.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus is coming back. The delay is not God forgetting His promise; it is mercy. Nobody should set dates.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WILL THE EARTH BURN?

Burned Up or Made New

2 PETER 3:7 TO 13 · ROMANS 8:19 TO 22 · REVELATION 21:1 TO 5 · 1 CORINTHIANS 3:13

WHAT PETER SAID

The present heavens and earth are reserved for fire, 3:7. The heavens will disappear with a roar, the elements will be destroyed by fire, and the earth and its works will be laid bare, 3:10. Then a new heaven and a new earth, where righteousness dwells, 3:13.

THE TEXT

The oldest full Bibles, Codex Sinaiticus and Vaticanus, say the earth and its works will be found, which this Bible says as laid bare. Later copies say will be burned up, and the KJV follows them. A few old translations even say will not be found. So one word changes the picture.

BURNED UP AND REPLACED

God will destroy this universe completely and create a brand new one. Some Lutheran teachers after the Reformation taught this, and many Christians today. Key verses: 3:10 to 12 in the KJV, Revelation 21:1, the first earth passed away. Best case: Peter's words are strong, destroyed and melt.

PURIFIED AND RENEWED

Fire will clean this world the way fire refines gold, 1 Peter 1:7, and God will make it new. Irenaeus said the form of this world passes away, not its substance. Calvin and many today agree. Key verses: Romans 8:21, creation itself set free; Acts 3:21, the restoration of all things; Revelation 21:5, I make all things new. Best case: Noah's world was washed by water, 3:6, not wiped from existence.

LAID BARE FOR JUDGMENT

Found or laid bare means every work on earth will be exposed before God, like fire testing each person's work, 1 Corinthians 3:13. Best case: it reads the oldest copies plainly and fits the next verse, what kind of people ought you to be?

PICTURE LANGUAGE

The prophets used falling stars and melting heavens as pictures of God's judgment, Isaiah 34:4. Some, called preterists, think it pointed to the fall of Jerusalem in AD 70. Most think it is still future.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus will return, the world will be judged, and God's people will live in a new heaven and a new earth where righteousness is at home. So live holy now, 3:11.

BOOK 62 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

1 JOHN

God Is Love

AUTHOR	John the apostle, the disciple Jesus loved, though the letter never names him. Some think John the Elder or a circle of John's followers wrote it.
WRITTEN FROM	Ephesus, where early writers say John spent his last years.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 85 to 95.
WRITTEN TO	Churches John cared for, probably around Ephesus in what is now Turkey. He calls them little children.
WHY HE WROTE	Teachers had left the church saying Jesus did not really come in the flesh. John writes so believers can know they have eternal life, 5:13.
KEY VERSE	1 John 4:8. Whoever does not love does not know God, because God is love.



THE OLDEST COPY OF 1 JOHN
Papyrus 9, copied in the 200s and found at Oxyrhynchus, Egypt. The two sides of this small scrap hold parts of 1 John 4:11 to 12 and 4:14 to 17, the chapter that says God is love. Kept at Harvard University's Houghton Library. Public domain.

Historical Setting

John was the last of the twelve apostles still alive, an old man living in Ephesus, early writers say. A group of teachers had walked out of the churches, 2:19. They claimed special knowledge, acted like sin did not matter, and denied that Jesus the Christ had really come in a human body, 4:2 to 3. The people left behind were shaken. Were they really saved? John writes like a grandfather to his little children: here is how you can know.

What Was Going Wrong

THE WALKOUT. False teachers left the church and pulled others with them, 2:19 and 2:26.
ALL TALK. People said they knew God but did not obey Him, 2:4.
DENYING JESUS. They denied Jesus is the Christ come in the flesh, 2:22 and 4:3.
NO SIN. Some claimed they had no sin at all, 1:8 and 1:10.
HATE. Claiming to love God while hating a brother, 2:9 and 4:20.
THE WORLD. The pull of the flesh, the eyes and pride, 2:15 to 16.

The Idiot Proof Summary

1 John is a letter about being sure. John gives three tests of real faith: do you believe Jesus is the Christ who came in the flesh, do you obey Him, and do you love other believers? People who pass are not perfect; they confess their sins. But they belong to God. And at the center of it all is the shortest description of God in the Bible: God is love.

1 John at a Glance

CH 1 **WALK IN THE LIGHT**
Seen and touched, light and darkness, confess your sins.

CH 2 **KNOW HIM, OBEY HIM**
Our advocate, the new commandment, do not love the world, antichrists.

CH 3 **CHILDREN OF THE FATHER**
What manner of love, no peace with sin, Cain, love in action.

CH 4 **LOVE ONE ANOTHER**
Test the spirits, He first loved us, perfect love drives out fear.

CH 5 **SO THAT YOU MAY KNOW**
Faith overcomes, eternal life in the Son, prayer, keep away from idols.

Where Jesus Shows Up

1 JOHN 1:1 TO 2 The Word of life whom John heard, saw and touched.

1 JOHN 2:1 TO 2 Our advocate with the Father and the atoning sacrifice for our sins.

1 JOHN 3:8 The Son of God was revealed to destroy the works of the devil.

1 JOHN 5:20 The true God and eternal life.

What to Watch for in 1 John

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (5)	1:7, 2:2, 3:5, 3:8, 4:10, 5:6
END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	2:18, 3:2
THE HEART (3)	3:19-21
DEMONIC (5)	2:13-14, 3:10, 3:12, 4:1-4, 5:18-19, 5:21
NOTABLE (15)	1:5, 1:9, 2:1, 2:15-17, 2:20, 2:27, 3:1 and 6 more
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

NO NAME
John never names himself in this letter. Early Christians knew who wrote it by his voice and by tradition.

SOUNDS LIKE HIS GOSPEL
Light, life, love, truth, abide, little children: the same words fill the Gospel of John.

THE SHORTEST DEFINITION
Only this letter says it in these exact words, 4:8 and 4:16.

ANTICHRIST
John is the only Bible writer who uses the word antichrist.

THE MISSING WORDS
5:7 to 8 holds the most famous added words in the KJV. See The Big Question pages, p.2046.

What Happened Next?

Early writers say John lived in Ephesus until the time of the emperor Trajan, who began to rule in AD 98, and tradition says he was the only one of the twelve to die of old age. His disciple Polycarp quoted this letter; see What Polycarp Wrote. Centuries later a huge church was built over his traditional grave; see The Basilica of St John.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

John starts like a witness in court: we heard Him, saw Him and touched Him. God is light, so walk in the light. And do not pretend you never sin. Confess it, and He forgives you and cleans you up. Simple, but not easy.

THE WORD OF LIFE // LUKE 24:36–49; JOHN 20:19–23

1 That which was from the beginning,
which we have heard, which we have
seen with our own eyes, which we have
gazed upon and touched with our own
hands—this is the Word of life. 2 And this
is the life that was revealed; we have seen
it and testified to it, and we proclaim to
you the eternal life that was with the Fa-
ther and was revealed to us.

3 We proclaim to you what we have seen
and heard, so that you also may have fel-
lowship with us. And this fellowship of
ours is with the Father and with His Son,
Jesus Christ. 4 We write these things so
that our joy may be complete.

WALKING IN THE LIGHT // JOHN 8:12–29

5 And this is the message we have heard
from Him and announce to you: God is
light, and in Him there is no darkness at
all. 6 If we say we have fellowship with
Him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and
do not practice the truth. 7 But if we walk
in the light as He is in the light, we have
fellowship with one another, and the blood
of Jesus His Son cleanses us from all sin.

8 If we say we have no sin, we deceive
ourselves, and the truth is not in us. 9 If we
confess our sins, He is faithful and just to
forgive us our sins and to cleanse us from
all unrighteousness. 10 If we say we have
not sinned, we make Him out to be a liar,
and His word is not in us.

- **1JN 1:1 [NOTE]** SEEN AND TOUCHED. John stresses that Jesus had a real body you could touch. Some false teachers said He only seemed human. See What Irenaeus Wrote. WHO WROTE IT? The letter names no author; the church has always said John the apostle.
- **1JN 1:5 [NOTABLE]** No shadow, no dark side. That is why walking in the light matters, 1:7.
- **1JN 1:7 [FULFILLS]** It is the blood that makes atonement ← LEV 17:11 p.202
- **1JN 1:7 [FULFILLS]** In that day a fountain shall be opened for the house of David and inhabitants of Jerusalem, for sin and for uncleanness ← ZECH 13:1 p.1503
- **1JN 1:9 [NOTABLE]** The promise every believer leans on when they fail.
- **1JN 1:9 [NOTE]** CONFESSION. Most Protestants read this as confessing straight to God. Catholics and Orthodox also see it in confession to a priest, John 20:23 and James 5:16. All agree God forgives the one who confesses.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE CHURCH · THE TOMB IS TRADITION

THE BASILICA OF ST JOHN

1 JOHN 1:1 TO 4 · JOHN 21:20 TO 24 · REVELATION 1:9 TO 11



Ruins of the Basilica of St John on Ayasuluk Hill, Selcuk, Turkey, with the later castle behind. Photo Bernard Gagnon, CC BY SA 3.0.

WHAT IT IS

The ruins of one of the biggest churches of the ancient world, on a hill just outside old Ephesus. It was built in the shape of a cross over the place where Christians said the apostle John was buried.

HOW OLD IT IS

The emperor Justinian built this church about AD 548 to 565. It replaced a smaller church from the 300s over the same grave. Earthquakes and raids later wrecked it. Greek archaeologists began digging in 1921, and later work rebuilt some walls and columns, so not every column standing today is where it fell.

JOHN IN EPHESUS

Irenaeus, about AD 180, says John lived in Ephesus until the time of Trajan, AD 98 to 117. Polycrates, a bishop of Ephesus about AD 190, wrote that John sleeps at Ephesus. Eusebius quotes him.

TWO TOMBS?

About AD 250 Dionysius of Alexandria said people showed two tombs of a John at Ephesus. Some think one was John the apostle and one John the Elder, the name Papias used. Others think it was just two rival spots for the same man.

THE TOMB TODAY

Under the old altar a square of modern

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC NOTABLE

marble with four columns marks the traditional grave. No bones or inscription naming John have been found.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

1 John was most likely written to the churches around Ephesus. John says, we have seen Him and touched Him, 1:1, and Christians in this city remembered the old man who said it.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The church proves Christians honored this spot as John's grave by the 300s. It cannot prove John is buried here.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus speaks up for us when we blow it. Say you know Him? Then obey Him, and love your brother. Do not love the world and its stuff; it is all passing away. Many antichrists have already shown up, people who deny that Jesus is the Christ. Stay with what you heard from the beginning.

JESUS OUR ADVOCATE

1 My little children, I am writing these
things to you so that you will not sin. But if
anyone does sin, we have an advocate
before the Father—Jesus Christ, the
Righteous One. 2 He Himself is the atoning
sacrifice for our sins, and not only for
ours but also for the sins of the whole
world.

3 By this we can be sure that we have
come to know Him: if we keep His commandments. 4 If anyone says, "I know
Him," but does not keep His commandments, he is a liar, and the truth is not in
him. 5 But if anyone keeps His word, the
love of God has been truly perfected in
him. By this we know that we are in Him: 6
Whoever claims to abide in Him must walk
as Jesus walked.

A NEW COMMANDMENT

7 Beloved, I am not writing to you a new
commandment, but an old one, which you
have had from the beginning. This commandment is the message you have
heard. 8 Then again, I am also writing to
you a new commandment, which is true in
Him and also in you. For the darkness is
fading and the true light is already shining.

9 If anyone claims to be in the light but
hates his brother, he is still in the darkness. 10 Whoever loves his brother remains
in the light, and there is no cause of stumbling in him. 11 But whoever hates his
brother is in the darkness and walks in the
darkness. He does not know where he is
going, because the darkness has blinded
his eyes.

12 I am writing to you, little children, because your sins have been forgiven
through His name.

13 I am writing to you, fathers, because you
know Him who is from the beginning.

I am writing to you, young men, because
you have overcome the evil one.

I have written to you, children, because
you know the Father.

14 I have written to you, fathers, because
you know Him who is from the beginning.

I have written to you, young men, because
you are strong, and the word of God
abides in you, and you have overcome the
evil one.

DO NOT LOVE THE WORLD

15 Do not love the world or anything in the
world. If anyone loves the world, the love
of the Father is not in him. 16 For all that is
in the world—the desires of the flesh, the
desires of the eyes, and the pride of
life—is not from the Father but from the
world. 17 The world is passing away, along
with its desires; but whoever does the will
of God remains forever.

1JN 2:1 [NOTABLE] When we sin, Jesus speaks up for us like a defense lawyer who already paid the fine.
1JN 2:2 [FULFILLS] The Lord laid on Him the iniquity of us all ← IS 53:6a p.1128
1JN 2:2 [FULFILLS] Stricken for the transgression of the people ← IS 53:8d p.1128
1JN 2:2 [NOTE] THE WHOLE WORLD. Atoning sacrifice, the KJV says propitiation, is the sacrifice that turns away God's anger and covers sin. Arminians say the whole world means every person. Calvinists say it means people from every nation, not only Jews, John 11:51 to 52, or that it is enough for all but applied to those who believe.

1JN 2:13 [DEMONIC] Young men, you have overcome the evil one
1JN 2:15 [NOTABLE] Three pulls of the world: the desires of the flesh, the desires of the eyes and the pride of life.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

BEWARE OF ANTICHRISTS

18 Children, it is the last hour; and just as
you have heard that the antichrist is coming, so now many antichrists have appeared. This is how we know it is the last
hour. 19 They went out from us, but they
did not belong to us. For if they had belonged to us, they would have remained
with us. But their departure made it clear
that none of them belonged to us.

20 You, however, have an anointing from
the Holy One, and all of you know the
truth. 21 I have not written to you because
you lack knowledge of the truth, but because you have it, and because no lie
comes from the truth. 22 Who is the liar, if
it is not the one who denies that Jesus is
the Christ? This is the antichrist, who denies the Father and the Son. 23 Whoever
denies the Son does not have the Father,
but whoever confesses the Son has the
Father as well.

REMAIN IN CHRIST

24 As for you, let what you have heard
from the beginning remain in you. If it
does, you will also remain in the Son and
in the Father. 25 And this is the promise
that He Himself made to us: eternal life.

26 I have written these things to you about
those who are trying to deceive you. 27
And as for you, the anointing you received
from Him remains in you, and you do not
need anyone to teach you. But just as His
true and genuine anointing teaches you
about all things, so remain in Him as you
have been taught.

28 And now, little children, remain in Christ,
so that when He appears, we may be confident and unashamed before Him at His
coming.

29 If you know that He is righteous, you
also know that everyone who practices
righteousness has been born of Him.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Look how much the Father loves us: we are His kids. His children do not make a hobby out of sin. Do not be like Cain, who killed his brother. Love is not just talk; it opens its wallet. And when your own heart beats you up, remember God is greater than your heart.

CHILDREN OF GOD

1 Behold what manner of love the Father
has given to us, that we should be called
children of God. And that is what we are!
The reason the world does not know us is
that it did not know Him. 2 Beloved, we are
now children of God, and what we will be
has not yet been revealed. We know that
when Christ appears, we will be like Him,
for we will see Him as He is. 3 And everyone who has this hope in Him purifies
himself, just as Christ is pure.

4 Everyone who practices sin practices
lawlessness as well. Indeed, sin is lawlessness. 5 But you know that Christ appeared to take away sins, and in Him
there is no sin. 6 No one who remains in
Him keeps on sinning. No one who continues to sin has seen Him or known Him.

7 Little children, let no one deceive you:
The one who practices righteousness is
righteous, just as Christ is righteous. 8 The
one who practices sin is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the
very start. This is why the Son of God was
revealed, to destroy the works of the
devil.

1JN 2:18 [PROPHECY] Little children, it is the last hour; and as you have heard that the Antichrist is coming, even now many antichrists have come, by which we know that it is the last hour → STILL TO COME
1JN 2:20 [NOTABLE] The believer's anointing from Christ — every believer, not just clergy, has this anointing
1JN 2:22 [NOTE] ANTICHRIST. John is the only Bible writer who uses the word, 2:18, 2:22, 4:3 and 2 John 7. He says many already exist: anyone who denies that Jesus is the Christ. Many also expect one final Antichrist, the man of lawlessness, 2 Thessalonians 2:3 to 4. See the 2 Thessalonians pages, p.1928.
1JN 2:23 [NOTE] TEXT. The KJV prints the second half in italics because it was missing from the Greek text its translators used. The oldest copies have it.
1JN 2:27 [NOTABLE] The abiding anointing — the Holy Spirit as the believer's ongoing teacher

1JN 3:1 [NOTABLE] Not just called His children. That is what we are.
1JN 3:1 [NOTE] TEXT. And that is what we are is in the oldest copies but missing from the KJV.
1JN 3:2 [PROPHECY] It has not yet been revealed what we shall be, but we know that when He is revealed, we shall be like Him, for we shall see Him as He is → STILL TO COME
1JN 3:5 [FULFILLS] Jesus is the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world ← JN 1:29 · MEDIUM p.1699
1JN 3:8 [DEMONIC] The Son of God appeared to destroy the works of the devil
1JN 3:8 [FULFILLS] He would crush the head of Satan ← GEN 3:15 p.51

THE HEART DEMONIC NOTABLE

9 Anyone born of God refuses to practice
sin, because God's seed abides in him; he
cannot go on sinning, because he has
been born of God. 10 By this the children of
God are distinguished from the children of
the devil: Anyone who does not practice
righteousness is not of God, nor is anyone
who does not love his brother.

LOVE ONE ANOTHER // JOHN 13:31–35; ROMANS 12:9–13

11 This is the message you have heard
from the beginning: We should love one
another. 12 Do not be like Cain, who be-
longed to the evil one and murdered his
brother. And why did Cain slay him? Be-
cause his own deeds were evil, while
those of his brother were righteous. 13 So
do not be surprised, brothers, if the world
hates you.

14 We know that we have passed from
death to life, because we love our broth-
ers. The one who does not love remains in
death. 15 Everyone who hates his brother
is a murderer, and you know that eternal
life does not reside in a murderer.

16 By this we know what love is: Jesus laid
down His life for us, and we ought to lay
down our lives for our brothers. 17 If any-
one with earthly possessions sees his
brother in need, but withholds his com-
passion from him, how can the love of
God abide in him?

18 Little children, let us love not in word
and speech, but in action and truth. 19 And
by this we will know that we belong to the
truth, and will assure our hearts in His
presence: 20 Even if our hearts condemn
us, God is greater than our hearts, and He
knows all things.

21 Beloved, if our hearts do not condemn
us, we have confidence before God, 22
and we will receive from Him whatever we
ask, because we keep His command-
ments and do what is pleasing in His
sight. 23 And this is His commandment:
that we should believe in the name of His
Son, Jesus Christ, and we should love one
another just as He commanded us. 24
Whoever keeps His commandments re-
mains in God, and God in him. And by this
we know that He remains in us: by the
Spirit He has given us.

1JN 3:9 [NOTE] THE SEED. The Greek word is sperma: God's own life planted in the believer, like a seed that grows, 1 Peter 1:23. See Can a Christian Keep Sinning?
1JN 3:10 [DEMONIC] Children of the devil; Cain belonged to the evil one
1JN 3:12 [DEMONIC] Children of the devil; Cain belonged to the evil one
1JN 3:12 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← GEN 4:8 p.52
1JN 3:16 [NOTABLE] Jesus laid down His life. Real love opens its wallet and its hands.
1JN 3:19 [HEART] We assure our hearts before God.
1JN 3:20 [HEART] Even when our heart condemns us, God is greater and knows everything.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

CAN A CHRISTIAN KEEP SINNING?

What Did John Mean?

1 JOHN 1:8 TO 10 · 2:1 · 3:6 TO 9 · 5:18 · ROMANS 7:15 TO 25

THE PUZZLE

John says if we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, 1:8, and if anyone does sin, we have an advocate, 2:1. Then he says no one born of God keeps on sinning, he cannot go on sinning, 3:6 and 3:9. How can both be true?

THE BACKGROUND

The false teachers seem to have said two things: some claimed they had no sin at all, and others said what you do in the body does not matter. John fights both.

THE TENSE

Most scholars point to the Greek present tense in 3:6 and 3:9: it means keep on sinning as a way of life, which is how this Bible translates it. A believer can fall into sin, but does not make peace with it. Best case: it fits 1:8 to 2:1 and the whole letter.

CHRISTIAN PERFECTION

John Wesley, in A Plain Account of Christian Perfection, 1766, taught that God can fill a believer with perfect love so that he no longer sins on purpose, though he still makes mistakes. The Holiness and many Pentecostal churches grew from this. Best case: it takes 3:9 at full strength and expects real change.

REFORMED AND LUTHERAN

Luther said a believer is at the same time righteous and a sinner. Sin stays in us

1JN 3:21 [HEART] A heart that does not condemn us gives confidence.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC NOTABLE

until death, Romans 7, but it no longer rules, Romans 6:14. Best case: it is honest about daily struggle and keeps grace central.

CATHOLIC AND ORTHODOX

There is sin that kills grace in the soul and lesser daily sin that does not, 5:16 to 17. Believers can grow in holiness by grace and the sacraments. Best case: it reads 1:9 and 5:16 to 17 together.

THE NEW NATURE

Some say John speaks of the new nature, God's seed, which cannot sin, while the old nature still can. Best case: it explains cannot in 3:9.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Christians still sin and must confess it, 1:9. But being born of God changes a person, and a life that happily keeps sinning is a warning sign, 3:10.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

Test the spirits, because not every voice is from God. Greater is He who is in you. Then the big one: God is love. He loved us first and sent His Son, so we love each other. Perfect love drives out fear. You cannot love God and hate your brother.

TESTING THE SPIRITS

1 Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but
test the spirits to see whether they are
from God. For many false prophets have
gone out into the world. 2 By this you will
know the Spirit of God: Every spirit that
confesses that Jesus Christ has come in
the flesh is from God, 3 and every spirit
that does not confess Jesus is not from
God. This is the spirit of the antichrist,
which you have heard is coming and
which is already in the world at this time.
4 You, little children, are from God and
have overcome them, because greater is
He who is in you than he who is in the
world. 5 They are of the world. That is why
they speak from the world's perspective,
and the world listens to them. 6 We are
from God. Whoever knows God listens to
us; whoever is not from God does not listen to us. That is how we know the Spirit of truth and the spirit of deception.

LOVE COMES FROM GOD

7 Beloved, let us love one another, because love comes from God. Everyone who loves has been born of God and knows God. 8 Whoever does not love does not know God, because God is love.

9 This is how God's love was revealed among us: God sent His one and only Son into the world, so that we might live through Him. 10 And love consists in this: not that we loved God, but that He loved us and sent His Son as the atoning sacrifice for our sins.

11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we also ought to love one another. 12 No one has ever seen God; but if we love one another, God remains in us, and His love is perfected in us. 13 By this we know that we remain in Him, and He in us: He has given us of His Spirit. 14 And we have seen and testify that the Father has sent His Son to be the Savior of the world.

15 If anyone confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God abides in him, and he in God. 16 And we have come to know and believe the love that God has for us. God is love; whoever abides in love abides in God, and God in him. 17 In this way, love has been perfected among us, so that we may have confidence on the day of judgment; for in this world we are just like Him.

18 There is no fear in love, but perfect love drives out fear, because fear involves punishment. The one who fears has not been perfected in love. 19 We love because He first loved us.

20 If anyone says, "I love God," but hates his brother, he is a liar. For anyone who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen. 21 And we have this commandment

- **1JN 4:1 [DEMONIC]** Test the spirits; greater is He who is in you
- **1JN 4:3 [NOTE]** TEXT. The KJV adds Christ is come in the flesh; the oldest copies say does not confess Jesus. Polycarp quotes this verse.
- **1JN 4:7 [NOTABLE]** The shortest definition of God in the Bible.
- **1JN 4:10 [FULFILLS]** The Lord laid on Him the iniquity of us all ← IS 53:6a p.1128
- **1JN 4:16 [NOTABLE]** Living in love is living in God.
- **1JN 4:18 [NOTABLE]** Knowing God's love takes away the fear of punishment.
- **1JN 4:19 [NOTABLE]** Our love is always an answer to His.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES DEMONIC NOTABLE

from Him: Whoever loves God must love his brother as well.

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Faith in Jesus overcomes the world, and John writes so you can know you have eternal life. Pray with confidence. Then one last line, like a dad at the door: little children, keep yourselves from idols.

OVERCOMING THE WORLD

1 Everyone who believes that Jesus is the
Christ has been born of God, and every-
one who loves the Father also loves those
born of Him. 2 By this we know that we
love the children of God: when we love
God and keep His commandments. 3 For
this is the love of God, that we keep His
commandments. And His commandments
are not burdensome, 4 because everyone
born of God overcomes the world. And
this is the victory that has overcome the
world: our faith.

5 Who then overcomes the world? Only he
who believes that Jesus is the Son of
God. 6 This is the One who came by water
and blood, Jesus Christ—not by water
alone, but by water and blood. And it is
the Spirit who testifies to this, because
the Spirit is the truth. 7 For there are three
that testify [in heaven: The Father, the
Word, and the Holy Spirit; and these three
are one. And there are three that testify on
earth:] 8 the Spirit, the water, and the
blood—and these three are in agreement.

GOD'S TESTIMONY ABOUT HIS SON

9 Even if we accept human testimony, the
testimony of God is greater. For this is the
testimony that God has given about His
Son. 10 Whoever believes in the Son of
God has this testimony within him; who-
ever does not believe God has made Him
out to be a liar, because he has not be-
lieved in the testimony that God has given
about His Son.

11 And this is that testimony: God has given
us eternal life, and this life is in His Son. 12
Whoever has the Son has life; whoever
does not have the Son of God does not
have life.

EFFECTIVE PRAYER

13 I have written these things to you who
believe in the name of the Son of God, so
that you may know that you have eternal
life. 14 And this is the confidence that we
have before Him: If we ask anything ac-
cording to His will, He hears us. 15 And if
we know that He hears us in whatever we
ask, we know that we already possess
what we have asked of Him.

16 If anyone sees his brother committing a
sin not leading to death, he should ask
God, who will give life to those who com-
mit this kind of sin. There is a sin that
leads to death; I am not saying he should
ask regarding that sin. 17 All unrighteous-
ness is sin, yet there is sin that does not
lead to death.

THE TRUE GOD

18 We know that anyone born of God does
not keep on sinning; the One who was
born of God protects him, and the evil one
cannot touch him. 19 We know that we are
of God, and that the whole world is under
the power of the evil one. 20 And we know
that the Son of God has come and has
given us understanding, so that we may
know Him who is true; and we are in Him
who is true—in His Son Jesus Christ. He
is the true God and eternal life.

21 Little children, keep yourselves from
idols.

- **1JN 5:4 [NOTABLE]** Faith in Jesus is the win.
- **1JN 5:6 [FULFILLS]** In that day a fountain shall be opened for the house of David and inhabitants of Jerusalem, for sin and for uncleanness ← ZECH 13:1 p.1503
- **1JN 5:6 [NOTE]** WATER AND BLOOD. Many read it as His baptism and His death, against Cerinthus. Others see John 19:34.
- **1JN 5:7 [NOTE]** THE MISSING WORDS. The \[bracketed\] words are in no Greek copy before about AD 1300. See The Big Question pages, p.2046.
- **1JN 5:11 [NOTABLE]** Written so believers could be sure.
- **1JN 5:14 [NOTABLE]** Bold prayer lines up with what God wants.
- **1JN 5:18 [DEMONIC]** The evil one cannot touch him
- **1JN 5:20 [NOTE]** THE TRUE ONE. He may mean Jesus, John 20:28, or the Father. The Greek allows both.
- **1JN 5:21 [DEMONIC]** Little children, keep yourselves from idols

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE MISSING WORDS

Three That Testify in Heaven

1 JOHN 5:7 TO 8 · KJV · MATTHEW 28:19 · 2 CORINTHIANS 13:14

WHAT IT SAYS

The KJV reads: For there are three that bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth, the Spirit, and the water, and the blood. Most Bibles today print only: there are three that testify, the Spirit, the water and the blood. Scholars call the extra words the Johannine Comma. Comma here means a short phrase.

THE GREEK COPIES

There are more than 500 Greek copies of 1 John. The extra words are in fewer than ten, all made after about AD 1300, and in several they are only written in the margin. None of the old Greek Bibles, like Sinaiticus, Vaticanus or Alexandrinus, has them.

THE CHURCH FATHERS

In the 300s, when the church argued fiercely about the Trinity, no Greek writer ever quoted these words, though they would have been perfect proof.

THE LATIN TRAIL

The words first appear in Latin. A Spanish writer, Priscillian, has a form of them about AD 380. Augustine read the Spirit, the water and the blood as a picture of the Trinity, and a note like that seems to have slipped from the margin into the text. The oldest Latin Vulgate copies, from the 500s and 700s, do not have them; many later ones do.

ERASMUS

In 1516 Erasmus printed the first Greek New Testament, without the words. Critics attacked him. Then a Greek copy that had them turned up in England, now called Codex Montfortianus, made about 1520. Erasmus added the words in his third edition, 1522, while writing that he suspected the copy was made to fit the Latin.

INTO THE KJV

Later Greek editions kept the words, and the KJV translators of 1611 followed them. In 1897 the Catholic Church's Holy Office said Catholics could not deny the words were genuine; in 1927 it allowed scholars to study the question freely.

IN THIS BIBLE

This Bible prints the words in [brackets], the way it marks every passage missing from the oldest copies. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

1 JOHN 5:6 TO 9 · MATTHEW 28:19 · JOHN 1:1 · ACTS 5:3 TO 4

A LATER ADDITION

Almost all scholars, Protestant and Catholic, say John did not write these words. Best case: no early Greek copy, no early translation outside Latin, and no Greek church father has them, even when they needed them most.

JOHN WROTE THEM

Some defenders of the KJV say the words are original and were lost by accident or removed by heretics who denied the Trinity. They point to the grammar of verse 8: three is masculine in Greek though Spirit, water and blood are not, which they say fits better if the Father, the Word and the Spirit came first. Best case: the grammar question is real, and the words are very old in Latin.

A PREACHER'S NOTE

Many think a Latin reader wrote a note in the margin explaining the three witnesses as the Trinity, and a later copyist put it into the text. Best case: it explains where the words came from and why they show up first in Latin.

WHAT IT DOES NOT CHANGE

The Trinity does not depend on this verse. The Father, Son and Spirit are named together in Matthew 28:19 and 2 Corinthians 13:14; the Word is God in John 1:1; the Spirit is God in Acts 5:3 to 4. The church taught the Trinity for over a thousand years before Erasmus printed these words in Greek.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God gives testimony about His Son, 5:9, and whoever has the Son has life, 5:12. That is John's point in this chapter, with or without the bracketed words.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE SIN THAT LEADS TO DEATH

What Is It?

1 JOHN 5:16 TO 17 · MARK 3:28 TO 29 · HEBREWS 6:4 TO 6 · 1 CORINTHIANS 11:30

WHAT JOHN SAID

There is a sin that leads to death; I am not saying he should ask regarding that sin. All unrighteousness is sin, yet there is sin that does not lead to death, 5:16 to 17. John never names it. His readers must have known.

PHYSICAL DEATH

Some believers sinned so badly that God took their life as discipline, like Ananias and Sapphira, Acts 5:1 to 11, and those who abused the Lord's Supper, 1 Corinthians 11:30. Best case: brother in 5:16 suggests a believer, and death can mean the body.

WALKING AWAY FROM JESUS

The false teachers in this letter denied that Jesus is the Christ and left the church, 2:19 and 2:22. Rejecting Jesus for good leads to eternal death. Best case: it fits the whole letter's fight. Compare Hebrews 6:4 to 6, see the Hebrews pages, p.1983.

BLASPHEMY AGAINST THE SPIRIT

Jesus said one sin will never be forgiven, Mark 3:28 to 29. Some think John means the same thing. Best case: both speak of a sin beyond prayer.

MORTAL AND VENIAL SIN

The Catholic Church teaches that a grave sin done with full knowledge and consent is mortal, killing the life of grace, while lesser sins are venial, Catechism 1854 to 1864, which cites these verses. Mortal sin can still be forgiven through repentance and confession. Best case: it takes John's two kinds of sin at face value.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Tertullian, about AD 210, used this verse to say some sins, like idolatry, murder and adultery, could not be forgiven by the church. Most other churches disagreed and welcomed sinners back after repentance.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Every sin is serious, 5:17. Christians should pray for each other, and God gives life when they do, 5:16. Anyone worried that they committed the sin that leads to death is showing a tender heart, which is a good sign.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT POLYCARP WROTE

The Oldest Quote of 1 John

POLYCARP, TO THE PHILIPPIANS 7 · 1 JOHN 4:2 TO 3 · 2 JOHN 7

WHO POLYCARP WAS

Polycarp was bishop of Smyrna, a city near Ephesus. His student Irenaeus says Polycarp was taught by apostles and knew John. He was burned alive about AD 155, at 86 years old, after saying he had served Christ 86 years and would not deny Him.

HIS LETTER

Polycarp wrote to the church at Philippi, in Greece, about AD 110 to 135. In chapter 7 he warns against false teachers using words that come straight from 1 John 4:2 to 3 and 2 John 7. It is the oldest quote of 1 John that we have.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is the whole of chapter 7, in the English translation by J. B. Lightfoot, 1891.

TO THE PHILIPPIANS 7

For every one who shall not confess that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh, is antichrist: and whosoever shall not confess the testimony of the Cross, is of the devil; and whosoever shall pervert the oracles of the Lord to his own lusts and say that there is neither resurrection nor judgment, that man is the first-born of Satan. Wherefore let us forsake the vain doing of the many and their false teachings, and turn unto the word which was delivered unto us from the beginning, being sober unto prayer and constant in fastings, entreating the all-seeing God with supplications that He bring us not into temptation, according as the Lord said, The Spirit is indeed willing, but the flesh is weak.

COMPARE
Every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God, and every spirit that does not confess Jesus is not from God. This is the spirit of the antichrist, 1 John 4:2 to 3.

John and Cerinthus

IRENAEUS, AGAINST HERESIES 3.3.4 · 1 JOHN 2:19 · 2 JOHN 10 TO 11

WHO IRENAEUS WAS
Irenaeus grew up in Smyrna, where as a boy he heard Polycarp teach. Later he became bishop of Lyons in France. About AD 180 he wrote Against Heresies, a long book against the false teachers of his day.

WHAT HE WROTE
Here is the whole passage, book 3, chapter 3, section 4, in the English translation by Alexander Roberts and William Rambaut, Ante Nicene Fathers, 1885. Words in [square brackets] were added by the translators.

AGAINST HERESIES 3.3.4
But Polycarp also was not only instructed by apostles, and conversed with many who had seen Christ, but was also, by apostles in Asia, appointed bishop of the Church in Smyrna, whom I also saw in my early youth, for he tarried [on earth] a very long time, and, when a very old man, gloriously and most nobly suffering martyrdom, departed this life, having always taught the things which he had learned from the apostles, and which the Church has handed down, and which alone are true. To these things all the Asiatic Churches testify, as do also those men who have succeeded Polycarp down to the present time,—a man who was of much greater weight, and a more stedfast witness of truth, than Valentinus, and Marcion, and the rest of the heretics. He it was who, coming to Rome in the time of Anicetus caused many to turn away from the aforesaid heretics to the Church of God, proclaiming that he had received this one and sole truth from the apostles,—that, namely, which is handed down by the Church. There are also those who heard from him that John, the disciple of the Lord, going to bathe at Ephesus, and perceiving Cerinthus within, rushed out of the bath-house without bathing, exclaiming, "Let us fly, lest even the bath-house fall down, because Cerinthus, the enemy of the truth, is within." And Polycarp himself replied to Marcion, who met him on one occasion, and said, "Dost thou know me?" "I do know thee, the first-born of Satan." Such was the horror which the apostles and their disciples had against holding even verbal communication with any corrupters of the truth; as Paul also says, "A man that is an heretic, after the first and second admonition, reject; knowing that he that is such is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself." There is also a very powerful Epistle of Polycarp written to the Philippians, from which those who choose to do so, and are anxious about their salvation, can learn the character of his faith, and the preaching of the truth. Then, again, the Church in Ephesus, founded by Paul, and having John remaining among them permanently until the times of Trajan, is a true witness of the tradition of the apostles.

The Fake Jesus

1 JOHN 2:22 · 4:2 TO 3 · 5:6 · 2 JOHN 7

A CHAIN OF WITNESSES
John taught Polycarp, and Polycarp taught Irenaeus. So Irenaeus is only two steps from the apostle who wrote this letter.

WHO CERINTHUS WAS
Irenaeus says Cerinthus taught that Jesus was just a man, the son of Joseph and Mary, that the Christ came down on Him like a dove at His baptism, and that the Christ left Him before the cross, so only the man Jesus died and rose, Against Heresies 1.26.1.

JOHN'S ANSWER
That sounds like the teachers John fights: they denied that Jesus is the Christ, 2:22, and that Jesus Christ came in the flesh, 4:2. John insists He came not by water only, His baptism, but by water and blood, His death, 5:6.

SEEN AND TOUCHED
Others, later called Docetists, from the

Greek word for to seem, said Jesus only seemed to have a body. John opens the letter with we have seen Him and touched Him, 1:1.

THE BATHHOUSE STORY

Irenaeus heard it from people who heard it from Polycarp, so it is secondhand. Many scholars think it is true to John's character; some think it grew in the telling. Either way it matches 2 John 10 to 11: do not welcome false teachers.

FIRST BORN OF SATAN

Polycarp used the same words for false teachers in his letter, chapter 7, and Irenaeus says he called Marcion that to his face. It is strong language, borrowed from John: the one who practices sin is of the devil, 1 John 3:8.

WHY IT MATTERS

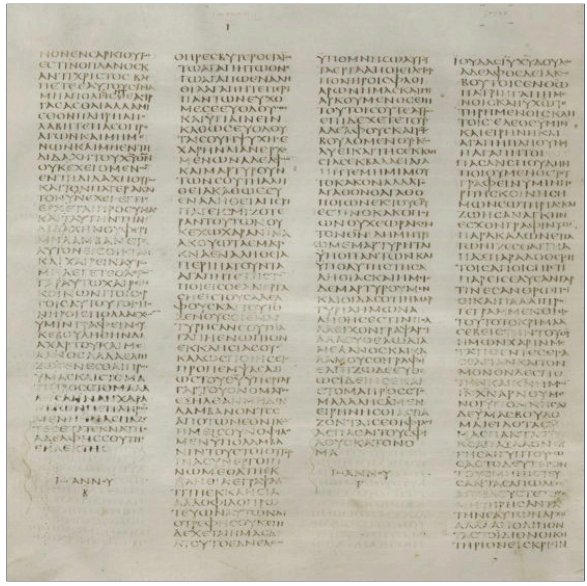
Within a lifetime of John, his student was quoting his letter and his student's student was telling stories about him. 1 John was known and used very early.

BOOK 63 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

2 JOHN

Truth and Love

AUTHOR	He calls himself the elder. Most of the early church said John the apostle. A few think it was John the Elder, a man Papias names; see What Papias Wrote.
WRITTEN FROM	Probably Ephesus, where early writers say John spent his last years.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 85 to 95, around the same time as 1 John.
WRITTEN TO	The chosen lady and her children. Most think that means a church and its members. Some think it was a real woman and her family.
WHY HE WROTE	Traveling teachers were spreading a Jesus who did not really come in the flesh. John says keep loving, but do not give them a home base, verses 7 to 11.
KEY VERSE	2 John 1:6. And this is love, that we walk according to His commandments.



2 JOHN IN CODEX SINAITICUS
Codex Sinaiticus, copied about AD 330 to 360. The first column picks up in verse 7, at the words in the flesh: this is the deceiver and the antichrist, and runs to the end of 2 John. Then come all of 3 John and the start of Jude. An even older piece exists: a small parchment leaf called 0232, from about AD 300, with verses 1 to 9. Kept at the British Library, London. Public domain.

Historical Setting

In the first century Christian teachers traveled from town to town, and churches met in homes. A traveling teacher needed a bed, a meal and a room full of people to listen. That was a good system until the wrong teachers showed up. Some had walked out of John's

churches, 1 John 2:19, and were going around saying Jesus the Christ did not really come in a human body. John sends this short note ahead of a visit, like a phone call before he drives over: keep loving each other, but do not hand your living room to a fake Jesus.

What Was Going Wrong

DECEIVERS. Many had gone out into the world denying Jesus Christ came in the flesh, verse 7.
RUNNING AHEAD. Some claimed to move past the teaching of Christ into something newer, verse 9.
OPEN DOORS. House churches could end up hosting and funding false teachers, verses 10 to 11.
LOSING GROUND. Believers could lose what they had worked for, verse 8.

The Idiot Proof Summary

2 John is the shortest book in the Bible by verse count, 13 verses, and it fits on one sheet of papyrus. It holds two things together that people usually pull apart: truth and love. Love without truth opens the door to anyone. Truth without love slams the door on everyone. John wants a church that loves one another and also knows who Jesus really is.

2 John at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 3	**IN THE TRUTH** The elder greets the chosen lady and her children.
CH 1:4 to 6	**WALK IN LOVE** Love one another, and love means obeying His commands.
CH 1:7 to 11	**WATCH OUT** Deceivers, the teaching of Christ, do not host false teachers.
CH 1:12 to 13	**FACE TO FACE** Not with paper and ink; greetings from your sister.

Where Jesus Shows Up

2 JOHN 1:3 Jesus Christ, the Son of the Father, the source of grace, mercy and peace.

2 JOHN 1:7 Jesus Christ came in the flesh, a real human body.

2 JOHN 1:9 Stay in His teaching and you have both the Father and the Son.

What to Watch for in 2 John

DEMONIC (1)	1:7
NOTABLE (4)	1:6, 1:9-12
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

THE SHORTEST
13 verses, the fewest of any book. 3 John has more verses but fewer Greek words.
TRUTH FIVE TIMES
The word truth shows up five times in the first four verses.

A LETTER TO A LADY?
It may be the only New Testament letter written to a woman, unless the lady is a church.

PAPER AND INK
Verse 12 is the only place the New Testament mentions paper. See Paper and Ink.

TWIN LETTER
2 John 7 sounds almost exactly like 1 John 4:2 to 3.

What Happened Next?

Little letters were easy to lose. In the 300s Eusebius still listed 2 and 3 John among the books some churches questioned, but they were widely accepted, and in AD 367 Athanasius listed both in his list of the 27 New Testament books. About AD 180 Irenaeus quoted verses 7 and 8 against the false teachers of his own day; see What Irenaeus Wrote.

DEMONIC NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

The elder writes to a chosen lady and her children. He is thrilled that some of them walk in the truth. His one request is old news: love one another, and love means obeying what He commands. Then a warning: deceivers deny that Jesus Christ came in the flesh. Do not run ahead of the teaching of Christ, and do not open your home to men who spread a fake Jesus. He has more to say, but he would rather say it face to face.

A GREETING FROM THE ELDER // 3 JOHN 1:1–4

1 The elder,

To the chosen lady and her children,
whom I love in the truth—and not I alone,
but also all who know the truth— 2 because of the truth that abides in us
and will be with us forever:

3 Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father
and from Jesus Christ, the Son of the Father,
will be with us in truth and love.

WALKING IN THE TRUTH // JOHN 8:30–47

4 I was overjoyed to find some of your children walking in the truth, just as the Father has commanded us. 5 And now I urge you, dear lady—not as a new commandment to you, but one we have had from the beginning—that we love one another. 6 And this is love, that we walk according to His commandments. This is the very commandment you have heard from the beginning, that you must walk in love.

BEWARE OF DECEIVERS

7 For many deceivers have gone out into the world, refusing to confess the coming of Jesus Christ in the flesh. Any such person is the deceiver and the antichrist. 8 Watch yourselves, so that you do not lose what we have worked for, but that you may be fully rewarded. 9 Anyone who runs ahead without remaining in the teaching of Christ does not have God. Whoever remains in His teaching has both the Father and the Son.

10 If anyone comes to you but does not bring this teaching, do not receive him into your home or even greet him. 11 Whoever greets such a person shares in his evil deeds.

CONCLUSION // 3 JOHN 1:13–14

12 I have many things to write to you, but I would prefer not to do so with paper and ink. Instead, I hope to come and speak with you face to face, so that our joy may be complete.

13 The children of your elect sister send you greetings.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PAPER AND INK

2 JOHN 1:12 · 3 JOHN 1:13 · ROMANS 16:22 · GALATIANS 6:11



Top: reed pen, Roman Egypt, Metropolitan Museum of Art 97.4.100. Bottom: clay inkwell, Roman, 1st to 2nd century AD, Metropolitan Museum of Art. Both public domain, CC0.

WHAT IT IS

Top, a real pen from Roman times: a reed cut to a point and split at the tip, the way a quill or a fountain pen nib works. Bottom, a clay inkwell with little faces around the rim. The hole in the middle kept the ink from spilling.

HOW OLD IT IS

The pen is from Egypt in Roman times, between about 30 BC and AD 364. The

- **2JN 1:1 [NOTE]** THE ELDER. The Greek is presbyteros, an older man and a church leader. Most of the early church said this is John the apostle; some think John the Elder, see What Papias Wrote. THE CHOSEN LADY. Most think she is a church and her children its members, see verse 13. Some think a real woman, maybe named Kyria or Electa.
- **2JN 1:6 [NOTABLE]** John defines love by what you do, not how you feel.
- **2JN 1:7 [DEMONIC]** Many deceivers deny Jesus Christ came in the flesh: the deceiver and the antichrist
- **2JN 1:7 [NOTE]** IN THE FLESH. The same warning as 1 John 4:2 to 3. Polycarp echoes it, and Irenaeus quotes this verse; see What Irenaeus Wrote.
- **2JN 1:9 [NOTABLE]** New teaching that leaves Jesus behind is not progress. Stay in His teaching and you have the Father and the Son.
- **2JN 1:10 [NOTABLE]** Not about being rude to unbelievers. It means do not give a traveling false teacher a base for his work.
- **2JN 1:10 [NOTE]** YOUR HOME. Churches met in homes, and traveling teachers stayed with believers. John means do not host or back a false teacher's work, not be rude to everyone who disagrees. Greet means the welcome that wishes him well in his mission.
- **2JN 1:12 [NOTABLE]** Some things are better said in person. Letters are good; being together is better.

inkwell is from the first or second century AD, the century of John's letters.

PAPER

The Greek word in verse 12 is chartes, a sheet of papyrus. Strips of the papyrus reed from the Nile were laid in two layers, pressed and dried into a sheet. A whole letter like 2 John fit on one sheet.

INK

The Greek word is melan, black. Ink was soot mixed with gum and water. It could be washed off with a wet sponge, so a scribe could fix mistakes.

PEN

3 John 13 says pen and ink. The Greek for pen is kalamos, a reed. It is the same word used for the reed the soldiers put in Jesus' hand, Matthew 27:29.

WHO HELD THE PEN

Paul often used a scribe and signed at the end, Romans 16:22 and Galatians 6:11. John may have done the same.

WHY IT MATTERS HERE

John says, I have much to tell you, but I would rather not use paper and ink. Instead, face to face, verse 12. Even the man tradition says wrote five books of the Bible preferred to talk in person.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT PAPIAS WROTE

The Elder John

EUSEBIUS, CHURCH HISTORY 3.39.3 TO 7 · 2 JOHN 1:1 · 3 JOHN 1:1

WHO PAPIAS WAS

Papias was bishop of Hierapolis, near Colossae in what is now Turkey. About AD 110 to 130 he wrote five books called Explanations of the Sayings of the Lord. They are lost. We only have bits that later writers copied.

WHO KEPT HIS WORDS

Eusebius, bishop of Caesarea, wrote his Church History in the early 300s. He copied part of Papias's preface and then gave his own opinion about it.

WHAT THEY WROTE

Here is the whole passage, book 3, chapter 39, sections 3 to 7, in the English translation by Arthur Cushman McGiffert, 1890. The quote marks hold Papias's own words. After that, Eusebius is speaking.

CHURCH HISTORY 3.39.3 TO 7

He says: "But I shall not hesitate also to put down for you along with my interpretations whatsoever things I have at any time learned carefully from the elders and carefully remembered, guaranteeing their truth. For I did not, like the multitude, take pleasure in those that speak much, but in those that teach the truth; not in those that relate strange commandments, but in those that deliver the commandments given by the Lord to faith, and springing from the truth itself. If, then, any one came, who had been a follower of the elders, I questioned him in regard to the words of the elders,—what Andrew or what Peter said, or what was said by Philip, or by Thomas, or by James, or by John, or by Matthew, or by any other of the disciples of the Lord, and what things Aristion and the presbyter John, the disciples of the Lord, say. For I did not think that what was to be gotten from the books would profit me as much as what came from the living and abiding voice." It is worth while observing here that the name John is twice enumerated by him. The first one he mentions in connection with Peter and James and Matthew and the rest of the apostles, clearly meaning the evangelist; but the other John he mentions after an interval, and places him among others outside of the number of the apostles, putting Aristion before him, and he distinctly calls him a presbyter. This shows that the statement of those is true, who say that there were two persons in Asia that bore the same name, and that there were two tombs in Ephesus, each of which, even to the present day, is called John's. It is important to notice this. For it is probable that it was the second, if one is not willing to admit that it was the first that saw the Revelation, which is ascribed by name to John. And Papias, of whom we are now speaking, confesses that he received the words of the apostles from those that followed them, but says that he was

himself a hearer of Aristion and the presbyter John. At least he mentions them frequently by name, and gives their traditions in his writings. These things we hope, have not been uselessly adduced by us.

One John or Two?

2 JOHN 1:1 · 3 JOHN 1:1 · 1 PETER 5:1 · JOHN 21:24

THE SAME WORD

Presbyter is the Greek word presbyteros, an elder. It is the word John uses for himself in 2 John 1:1 and 3 John 1:1: the elder.

TWO JOHNS?

Papias names John twice: once with Peter, James and Matthew, and once as the presbyter John, with Aristion. Eusebius says that means two different men named John lived in Asia.

ONE JOHN

Many scholars think Papias meant the same man both times: John the apostle, who was also an elder. Peter called himself a fellow elder, 1 Peter 5:1. Irenaeus, about AD 180, said Papias heard John and was a friend of Polycarp, Against Heresies 5.33.4, and he never mentions a second John.

WHY EUSEBIUS CARED

Eusebius had doubts about the book of Revelation. A second John gave him someone else to credit it to. He says so: it was probably the second John who saw the Revelation, if not the first.

WHAT IT MEANS FOR 2 JOHN

Most Christians through history have read the elder as John the apostle, an old man writing to churches he loved. Some modern scholars think the elder was Papias's presbyter John. Either way the letter was written by a leader who knew the eyewitnesses.

WHY IT MATTERS

Papias shows that around AD 100 Christians wanted the living voice of men who had walked with Jesus, and that the title the elder belonged to one of them.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT IRENAEUS WROTE

The Oldest Quote of 2 John

IRENAEUS, AGAINST HERESIES 3.16.8 · 2 JOHN 1:7 TO 8 · 1 JOHN 4:1 TO 3

WHO IRENAEUS WAS

Irenaeus heard Polycarp, John's student, teach when he was a boy in Smyrna. Later he was bishop of Lyons in France. About AD 180 he wrote Against Heresies.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is the whole of book 3, chapter 16, section 8, in the English translation by Alexander Roberts and William Rambaut, Ante Nicene Fathers, 1885. Words in [square brackets] were added by the translators.

AGAINST HERESIES 3.16.8

All, therefore, are outside of the [Christian] dispensation, who, under pretext of knowledge, understand that Jesus was one, and Christ another, and the Only-begotten another, from whom again is the Word, and that the Saviour is another, whom these disciples of error allege to be a production of those who were made Æons in a state of degeneracy. Such men are to outward appearance sheep; for they appear to be like us, by what they say in public, repeating the same words as we do; but inwardly they are wolves. Their doctrine is homicidal, conjuring up, as it does, a number of gods, and simulating many Fathers, but lowering and dividing the Son of God in many ways. These are they against whom the Lord has cautioned us beforehand; and His disciple, in his Epistle already mentioned, commands us to avoid them, when he says: "For many deceivers are entered into the world, who confess not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh. This is a deceiver and an antichrist. Take heed to them, that ye lose not what ye have wrought." And again does he say in the Epistle: "Many false prophets are gone out into the world. Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God; and every spirit which separates Jesus Christ is not of God, but is of antichrist." These

words agree with what was said in the Gospel, that "the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us." Wherefore he again exclaims in his Epistle, "Every one that believeth that Jesus is the Christ, has been born of God;" knowing Jesus Christ to be one and the same, to whom the gates of heaven were opened, because of His taking upon Him flesh: who shall also come in the same flesh in which He suffered, revealing the glory of the Father.

WHAT IT TELLS US

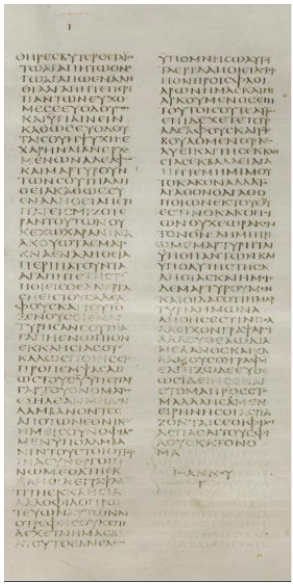
His disciple means John, the disciple of the Lord. The first quote is 2 John 7 to 8, and the next is 1 John 4:1 to 3. Irenaeus calls both the Epistle, so he may have thought of them as one letter, or just not kept them apart. Either way, about 90 years after John wrote, 2 John was being quoted as Scripture against the same kind of fake Jesus.

BOOK 64 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

3 JOHN

Walking in the Truth

AUTHOR	The elder, the same writer as 2 John. Most of the early church said John the apostle; some think John the Elder of Papias. See What Papias Wrote in 2 John.
WRITTEN FROM	Probably Ephesus, near the end of the first century.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 85 to 95, around the same time as 1 and 2 John.
WRITTEN TO	Gaius, a believer John loved, probably a leader with a home open to travelers. Nothing else is known about him for sure.
WHY HE WROTE	To thank Gaius for hosting missionaries, to deal with Diotrephes, who refused them, and to recommend Demetrius.
KEY VERSE	3 John 1:4. I have no greater joy than to hear that my children are walking in the truth.



3 JOHN IN CODEX SINAITICUS
Codex Sinaiticus, copied about AD 330 to 360. These two columns hold all of 3 John, from The elder, to Gaius at the top to the words Ioannou G at the bottom, meaning John's third letter. Kept at the British Library, London. Public domain.

THE OLDEST COPIES. 3 John is the shortest book in the Bible, so it rarely shows up on old scraps. The oldest copies are the two great Bibles of the 300s, Codex Sinaiticus, shown here, and Codex Vaticanus. Codex Alexandrinus follows in the 400s.

HOW IT WAS FOUND. Constantin von Tischendorf found Codex Sinaiticus at St. Catherine's Monastery at the foot of Mount Sinai in 1844 and 1859. In 1933 the British Museum bought most of it from the Soviet government for 100,000 pounds.

SLOW TO BE ACCEPTED. About AD 325 Eusebius listed 2 and 3 John among the books some still questioned, though most churches used them (Church History 3.25). The old Syriac Bible, the Peshitta, about AD 400, left out 2 and 3 John, 2 Peter, Jude and Revelation.

Historical Setting

2 John told a church not to host false teachers. 3 John is the other side of the coin: host the true ones. Missionaries went from town to town living on the kindness of believers, because they would not take money from pagans, verse 7. Gaius opened his home. But in one church a man named Diotrephes had taken charge. He would not read John's letter to the church, he spread rumors about John, and he threw out anyone who welcomed the traveling brothers. So the old apostle writes a personal note to his friend: you are doing it right, Diotrephes is not, and I am coming.

What Was Going Wrong

A CHURCH BOSS. Diotrephes loved to be first and would not accept John's letter, verse 9.
GOSSIP. He spread wicked talk about John and the others, verse 10.
CLOSED DOORS. He refused to welcome the missionaries and stopped others from doing it, verse 10.
KICKED OUT. He put out of the church anyone who helped them, verse 10.

The Idiot Proof Summary

3 John is a short thank you note with a warning inside. It shows the church at ground level: real names, a guest room, a power trip, and an old pastor who just wants his kids to keep walking in the truth. It also gives the Bible's clearest word on supporting missionaries: when you send them and pay their way, you become fellow workers for the truth.

3 John at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 4	**NO GREATER JOY** Prayer for Gaius, walking in the truth.
CH 1:5 to 8	**FELLOW WORKERS** Send missionaries on their way in a manner worthy of God.
CH 1:9 to 11	**DIOTREPHES** Loves to be first; do not imitate what is evil.
CH 1:12 to 14	**DEMETRIUS** A good report, pen and ink, face to face.

Where Jesus Shows Up

3 JOHN 1:7 They went out for the sake of the Name, the name of Jesus, Acts 5:41.

3 JOHN 1:11 Whoever does good is of God; whoever does evil has not seen God.

What to Watch for in 3 John

DEMONIC (1)	1:11
NOTABLE (3)	1:2, 1:4, 1:7-8
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

FEWEST WORDS
About 219 Greek words, the shortest book in the Bible by word count. 2 John has fewer verses.

NO JESUS BY NAME
The only New Testament book that never says Jesus or Christ. He is called the Name, verse 7.

CHURCH POLITICS
In verses 9 to 10 a local leader shuts out an apostle. Even John had a church boss problem.

TWIN ENDINGS
Verses 13 to 14 almost repeat 2 John 12. See Paper and Ink in 2 John.

A FAMOUS VERSE
Verse 2 helped launch the health and wealth movement. See the Big Question pages, p.2062.

What Happened Next?

We never hear about Gaius, Diotrephes or Demetrius again in the Bible. Like 2 John, this little letter was doubted by some churches for a while, but it was accepted widely and listed by Athanasius in AD 367 among the 27 New Testament books. Nearly 1900 years later its second verse became one of the most quoted verses in the world; see Health and Wealth?

DEMONIC NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

The elder writes to his friend Gaius and prays he is doing as well in body as he is in soul. Gaius has been taking in traveling missionaries, and John says keep it up: helping them makes you part of the work. Then there is Diotrephes, a church boss who loves to be first, trashes John, turns the missionaries away and kicks out anyone who helps them. John says copy what is good, not what is evil, puts in a good word for Demetrius, and saves the rest for a face to face talk.

A GREETING FROM THE ELDER // 2 JOHN 1:1–3

1 The elder,

To the beloved Gaius, whom I love in the truth:

2 Beloved, I pray that in every way you may prosper and enjoy good health, as your soul also prospers. 3 For I was overjoyed when the brothers came and testified about your devotion to the truth, in which you continue to walk. 4 I have no greater joy than to hear that my children are walking in the truth.

GAIUS COMMENDED FOR HOSPITALITY

5 Beloved, you are faithful in what you are doing for the brothers, and especially since they are strangers to you. 6 They have testified to the church about your love. You will do well to send them on their way in a manner worthy of God. 7 For they went out on behalf of the Name, accepting nothing from the Gentiles. 8 Therefore we ought to support such men, so that we may be fellow workers for the truth.

DIOTREPHES AND DEMETRIUS

9 I have written to the church about this, but Diotrephes, who loves to be first, will not accept our instruction. 10 So if I come, I will call attention to his malicious slander against us. And unsatisfied with that, he refuses to welcome the brothers and forbids those who want to do so, even putting them out of the church.

11 Beloved, do not imitate what is evil, but what is good. The one who does good is of God; the one who does evil has not seen God.

12 Demetrius has received a good testimony from everyone, and from the truth itself. We also testify for him, and you know that our testimony is true.

CONCLUSION // 2 JOHN 1:12–13

13 I have many things to write to you, but I would prefer not to do so with pen and ink. 14 Instead, I hope to see you soon and speak with you face to face.

Peace to you.

The friends here send you greetings.

Greet each of our friends there by name.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

HEALTH AND WEALTH?

The History of 3 John 2

3 JOHN 1:2 · DEUTERONOMY 8:18 · 2 CORINTHIANS 8:9 · 1 TIMOTHY 6:5 TO 10

THE QUESTION

Beloved, I pray that in every way you may prosper and enjoy good health, as your soul also prospers, verse 2. The KJV says I wish above all things that thou mayest prosper and be in health. Is this a promise that God wants every believer healthy and rich?

THE WORDS

Prosper is euodoo, literally to have a good road, to go well. Paul uses it for a trip going well, Romans 1:10, and for money set aside as each one prospers, 1

- **3JN 1:1 [NOTE]** GAIUS. A common Roman name. This Gaius is not known from anywhere else for sure. THE ELDER. The same writer as 2 John.
- **3JN 1:2 [NOTABLE]** A loving prayer for a friend. Is it a promise of health and wealth for every believer? See the Big Question pages in 3 John, p.2062.
- **3JN 1:2 [NOTE]** PROSPER. Does this promise health and wealth to every believer? See the Big Question pages, Health and Wealth?, p.2062
- **3JN 1:4 [NOTABLE]** What makes a spiritual father happiest is not size or money but kids who keep walking with God.
- **3JN 1:7 [NOTABLE]** The people who send and pay for missionaries share in their work.
- **3JN 1:7 [NOTE]** THE NAME. The name of Jesus, Acts 5:41. Gentiles here means pagans: the missionaries took no money from unbelievers, so no one could say they were selling the gospel.
- **3JN 1:9 [NOTE]** DIOTREPHES. A church leader who loved to be first. See the Field Notes page Diotrephes, p.2064.
- **3JN 1:11 [DEMONIC]** Do not imitate what is evil; whoever does evil has not seen God
- **3JN 1:12 [NOTE]** DEMETRIUS. Probably the man carrying this letter. John vouches for him, like a letter of recommendation.

Corinthians 16:2. Be in health is hygiaino, the word our hygiene comes from.

AN EVERYDAY GREETING

Hundreds of private letters on papyrus from Roman Egypt open with almost the same line: a prayer that the reader is well. Many scholars think John is using that normal greeting, warmed up with as your soul prospers.

THE EARLY CHURCH

In the early church many believers were poor or persecuted, and wealth was more often seen as a danger than a goal, 1 Timothy 6:9 to 10.

THE 1900S

E. W. Kenyon, who died in 1948, taught that believers can speak faith into reality. In the late 1940s Oral Roberts said his Bible fell open to 3 John 2, and the verse became the heart of his ministry. He taught seed faith: give to God, and expect Him to multiply it back.

WORD OF FAITH

Kenneth Hagin, who opened Rhema Bible Training Center in 1974, and Kenneth Copeland spread the teaching that health and wealth are every believer's right, received by faith and spoken confession. It grew huge on Christian TV, then worldwide.

PUSHBACK

Gordon Fee, a Pentecostal scholar and Assemblies of God minister, wrote The Disease of the Health and Wealth Gospels in 1985. In 2008 and 2009 an African working group of the Lausanne Movement, meeting in Akropong, Ghana, called its strongest forms a false gospel.

TODAY

Pew Research surveys in 2006, in ten countries across Africa, Latin America, Asia and the United States, found that belief in God's promise of health and prosperity is very common among Pentecostals and charismatics.

Is 3 John 2 a Promise?

3 JOHN 1:2 · ISAIAH 53:5 · PHILIPPIANS 4:11 TO 13 · 2 CORINTHIANS 12:7 TO 10

VIEW 1: HEALTH AND WEALTH FOR EVERY BELIEVER

Word of Faith and many prosperity teachers. God wants you well and well off; poverty and sickness are part of the curse Jesus broke. Key verses: 3 John 2; Deuteronomy 8:18, He gives you power to get wealth; Malachi 3:10; Mark 10:29 to 30; 2 Corinthians 8:9, He became poor so you might become rich; Isaiah 53:5, by His stripes we are healed. Best case: God is a good Father, and the Bible is full of blessing on the obedient.

VIEW 2: BLESSING, BUT NO GUARANTEE

Many Pentecostals, charismatics and other believers. It is right to pray for health and success, and God often answers, but He does not owe it. Key verses: 3 John 2; Proverbs 30:8 to 9, neither poverty nor riches; Philippians 4:11 to 13, content in plenty and in want; James 5:14 to 15. Best case: it keeps both the prayer and the cross.

VIEW 3: A GREETING, NOT A PROMISE

Most Bible scholars and many church traditions. John is wishing a friend well, like letters of his day did. Turning it into a law for everyone reads too much in. Key verses: Paul was sick, Galatians 4:13; he left Trophimus sick, 2 Timothy 4:20; Timothy had a weak stomach, 1 Timothy 5:23; the thorn, 2 Corinthians 12:7 to 10; godliness is not a means of gain, 1 Timothy 6:5 to 10; believers who were poor and suffered, Hebrews 11:36 to 38. Best case: it fits the plain grammar and the whole Bible.

THE TENT MAKER ANGLE

Paul worked with his hands so he would not be a burden, Acts 18:3 and 2 Thessalonians 3:8, and he also said workers in the gospel deserve support, 1 Corinthians 9:14. Hard work and giving are both in the Bible; giving as a way to get rich is the part that is argued.

WHAT ALL AGREE ON

God cares about the whole person, body and soul. It is good to pray for a friend's health and success. John puts the soul

first: as your soul prospers. Nobody has to buy a blessing.

FIELD NOTES

DIOTREPHES

Who Loves to Be First

3 JOHN 1:9 TO 11 · MARK 10:42 TO 45 · 1 PETER 5:2 TO 3

WHO HE WAS

A leader in a church John knew, maybe the man whose house the church met in. He is named only here. His name means raised by Zeus, a rare name found in some noble Greek families, so he may have been a man of money and standing.

LOVES TO BE FIRST

The Greek is one word, philoproteuon, first loving. It shows up nowhere else in the New Testament. Jesus said whoever wants to be first must be slave of all, Mark 10:44.

WHAT HE DID

He would not accept John's letter, he spread wicked talk about John, he refused to take in the traveling brothers, and he threw out the people who did, verses 9 to 10. That is four sins in two verses.

WHY DID HE DO IT?

Most readers think it was plain pride and control. In 1897 the historian Adolf von Harnack suggested Diotrephes was one of the first single bishops in charge of a city, pushing back against outside missionaries. In 1951 Ernst Kasemann turned it around and said Diotrephes thought the elder was the troublemaker. Neither idea can be proved; the letter gives only John's side.

JOHN'S PLAN

No secret meeting and no new rule. If I come, I will bring up what he is doing, verse 10, in the open, before the church.

GAIUS AND DEMETRIUS

Gaius was a very common Roman name; there are three other men named Gaius in the New Testament, Acts 19:29, Acts 20:4 and Romans 16:23. Demetrius may have carried this letter. Some guess he was the Ephesus silversmith of Acts 19:24 after he came to faith, but there is no proof.

WHY IT MATTERS

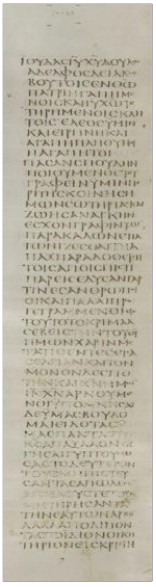
Church fights are not new. John's answer is short: do not imitate what is evil, but what is good, verse 11. Shepherd the flock, not as lords over them, but as examples, 1 Peter 5:3.

BOOK 65 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · LETTER

JUDE

Contend for the Faith

AUTHOR	Jude, a brother of James, 1:1, and so a brother of Jesus, Mark 6:3. Some scholars think a later writer used his name.
WRITTEN FROM	He does not say. Many think somewhere in the land of Israel, where Jesus' family lived.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 50 to 80. Scholars who doubt Jude wrote it say about AD 80 to 120.
WRITTEN TO	Believers he calls called, loved and kept, 1:1. They knew the Old Testament and Jewish stories well.
WHY HE WROTE	False teachers had crept into the church and turned grace into an excuse to sin. Jude tells believers to fight for the faith.
KEY VERSE	Jude 1:3. Contend earnestly for the faith entrusted once for all to the saints.



JUDE IN CODEX SINAITICUS
Codex Sinaiticus, copied about AD 330 to 360. This column is the start of Jude, verses 1 to 6, with the name loudas written small at the top. In verse 5 this copy says the Lord, written short as KS, where other old copies say Jesus. Kept at the British Library, London. Public domain.

OLDER STILL. Papyrus 72, about AD 300, has the whole letter. It is a strange little book that also holds 1 and 2 Peter, a story of Mary's birth, a Passover sermon and some Psalms. In verse 5 it reads God Christ. Papyrus 78, from about the same time, has verses 4 to 8 on a tiny folded sheet; see The Jude Amulet? Field Notes page, p.2069.

SLOW TO BE ACCEPTED. About AD 325 Eusebius listed Jude among the books some still questioned (Church History 3.25). About AD 392 Jerome wrote that many rejected it because it quotes the Book

of Enoch, but that its age and use had won it a place among the Scriptures (Lives of Illustrious Men 4).

HOW IT WAS FOUND. Constantin von Tischendorf found Codex Sinaiticus at St. Catherine's Monastery at the foot of Mount Sinai in 1844 and 1859. Most of it is now in London; other leaves are in Leipzig, at the monastery and in St. Petersburg.

Historical Setting

Jude grew up in Nazareth in Jesus' family, and at first he did not believe in Him, John 7:5. After the resurrection he was praying with the disciples, Acts 1:14, and later the Lord's brothers traveled as preachers, 1 Corinthians 9:5. He planned to write a warm letter about the salvation we share. Then word came that men had slipped into the churches who used grace as a license for immorality and slandered anything holy. So he wrote a short, sharp warning full of Bible examples that his readers knew by heart.

What Was Going Wrong

CREEPING IN. Ungodly men slipped in unnoticed, 1:4.
GRACE AS LICENSE. They turned God's grace into an excuse for immorality, 1:4.
DENYING JESUS. By how they lived they denied our only Master and Lord, 1:4.
SLANDER. They mocked authority and glorious beings they did not understand, 1:8 and 1:10.
GREED AND GRUMBLING. They ran after money like Balaam, flattered people and complained, 1:11 and 1:16.
DIVISION. They split churches and did not have the Spirit, 1:19.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Jude is a small letter with a loud voice. It is mostly warning: God has judged rebels before, and He will again. But it is wrapped in comfort. It starts with believers who are kept for Jesus Christ and ends with God, who is able to keep you from stumbling. In between, Jude tells us to fight for the faith without becoming like the people we are fighting: build up, pray, stay in God's love, and pull people out of the fire.

Jude at a Glance

CH 1:1 to 2	**CALLED, LOVED, KEPT** Jude greets the believers.
CH 1:3 to 4	**CONTEND** Fight for the faith; false teachers have crept in.
CH 1:5 to 16	**REMEMBER** The Exodus, angels, Sodom, Michael, Cain, Balaam, Korah and Enoch.
CH 1:17 to 23	**BUT YOU, BELOVED** Remember the apostles, build up, pray, keep yourselves, show mercy.
CH 1:24 to 25	**ABLE TO KEEP YOU** A blessing of praise to God.

Where Jesus Shows Up

JUDE 1:1 Believers are kept in Jesus Christ.

JUDE 1:4 Our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ.

JUDE 1:5 The oldest copies say Jesus delivered His people out of Egypt.

JUDE 1:21 The mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ brings eternal life.

JUDE 1:25 Glory to God our Savior through Jesus Christ our Lord.

What to Watch for in Jude

END TIMES PROPHECIES (2)	1:14-15, 1:17-18
MIRACLES (1)	1:9
DEMONIC (2)	1:6, 1:11
NOTABLE (4)	1:3, 1:20-22, 1:24-25
JESUS SPEAKING (0 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

JESUS IN THE EXODUS
Some of the oldest copies of verse 5 say Jesus led Israel out of Egypt.

MICHAEL AND THE DEVIL
Verse 9 tells of a fight over the body of Moses that is not in the Old Testament. See What Origen Wrote.

ENOCH SPEAKS
Verses 14 to 15 quote the book of 1 Enoch. See What Enoch Says.

JUDE LOVES THREES
Called, loved and kept; mercy, peace and love; Cain, Balaam and Korah.

THE GRANDSONS
Jude's grandsons stood before the emperor Domitian and showed him their farmer's hands. See What Hegesippus Wrote.

A FAMOUS ENDING
Verses 24 to 25 are prayed as a blessing in churches all over the world.

What Happened Next?

Jude was slow to be accepted. Jerome says many set it aside because it quotes Enoch. But the Muratorian list, often dated to the late 100s, already names it, and Clement, Tertullian and Origen used it. Origen called it a letter of few lines but full of heavenly grace. Eusebius listed it among the disputed books, and Athanasius listed it among the 27 in AD 367. In 1522 Martin Luther moved it to the back of his New Testament with Hebrews, James and Revelation.

MIRACLES DEMONIC NOTABLE

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

Jude, a brother of Jesus, sat down to write a happy letter about salvation. Then he heard that fake teachers had slipped into church and turned grace into a free pass to sin, so he wrote a fire alarm instead. He reminds them of the Exodus, angels in chains, Sodom, Cain, Balaam and Korah, and calls the teachers clouds with no rain. He even quotes Enoch. Then he tells believers to build up, pray, stay in God's love and pull the wanderers out of the fire, and he signs off with one of the best blessings in the Bible.

A GREETING FROM JUDE // JAMES 1:1

1 Jude, a servant of Jesus Christ and a
brother of James,
To those who are called, loved by God the
Father, and kept in Jesus Christ:
2 Mercy, peace, and love be multiplied to
you.

GOD'S JUDGMENT ON THE UNGODLY // 2 PETER 3:1–7

3 Beloved, although I made every effort to write to you about the salvation we share, I felt it necessary to write and urge you to contend earnestly for the faith entrusted once for all to the saints. 4 For certain men have crept in among you unnoticed—ungodly ones who were designated long ago for condemnation. They turn the grace of our God into a license for immorality, and they deny our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ.

5 Although you are fully aware of this, I want to remind you that after Jesus had delivered His people out of the land of Egypt, He destroyed those who did not believe. 6 And the angels who did not stay within their own domain but abandoned their proper dwelling—these He has kept in eternal chains under darkness, bound for judgment on that great day. 7 In like manner, Sodom and Gomorrah and the cities around them, who indulged in sexual immorality and pursued strange flesh, are on display as an example of those who sustain the punishment of eternal fire.

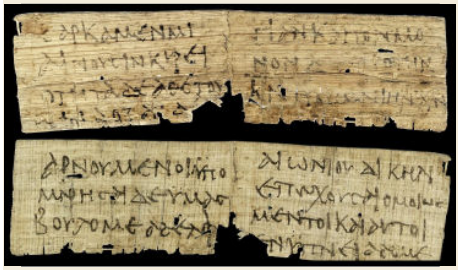
8 Yet in the same way these dreamers defile their bodies, reject authority, and slander glorious beings. 9 But even the archangel Michael, when he disputed with the devil over the body of Moses, did not presume to bring a slanderous charge against him, but said, "The Lord rebuke you!" 10 These men, however, slander what they do not understand, and like irrational animals, they will be destroyed by the things they do instinctively. 11 Woe to them! They have traveled the path of Cain; they have rushed for profit into the error of Balaam; they have perished in Korah's rebellion.

- **JUDE 1:1 [NOTE]** WHO JUDE WAS. Jude is Judas in Greek, a common name; English Bibles say Jude to keep him apart from Judas Iscariot. As a brother of James, the leader in Jerusalem, Acts 15:13, he was a brother of Jesus too, Mark 6:3, but he humbly calls himself a servant. He did not believe at first, John 7:5, but was praying with the disciples after Easter, Acts 1:14. Catholics and Orthodox read brother as cousin or stepbrother. Some scholars think a later writer used his name.
- **JUDE 1:3 [NOTABLE]** The faith was handed down whole. We guard it; we do not rewrite it.
- **JUDE 1:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← NUM 14:29-35 p.245
- **JUDE 1:5 [NOTE]** TEXT. Old copies disagree on who saved Israel from Egypt. Codex Vaticanus and Alexandrinus say Jesus, as here. Codex Sinaiticus and the KJV say the Lord. Papyrus 72 says God Christ. If Jesus is right, Jude says the Son was already at work in the Exodus, like 1 Corinthians 10:4.
- **JUDE 1:6 [DEMONIC]** Angels who left their proper home are kept in chains for judgment
- **JUDE 1:6 [NOTABLE]** Peter and Jude both seem to know the story in 1 Enoch 6 to 16, where angels sinned with human women and were locked up until the judgment. Genesis 6 does not say this outright, but many Jews in their day believed it.
- **JUDE 1:6 [NOTE]** ANGELS IN CHAINS. See What Was the Angels' Sin? See also Spirits in Prison in 1 Peter, p.2017, and What Hesiod Wrote in 2 Peter, p.2031.
- **JUDE 1:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 19:24-25 p.73
- **JUDE 1:7 [NOTE]** STRANGE FLESH. Most Christians through history read this as the sexual sin of Sodom, including the men of the city going after the two visitors, Genesis 19:4 to 5. Others note that in like manner points back to the angels of verse 6; the visitors were angels, so strange flesh may mean a different kind of flesh. Ezekiel 16:49 adds pride, plenty and ignoring the poor. Many hold more than one.
- **JUDE 1:8 [NOTE]** DREAMERS. They may have claimed visions in their dreams to back their teaching, like the false prophets of Deuteronomy 13:1 to 5 and Jeremiah 23:25 to 32. Or Jude means they live in a dream world.
- **JUDE 1:9 [MIRACLE]** Michael disputed with the devil over Moses' body
- **JUDE 1:9 [NOTABLE]** Michael arguing with the devil over the body of Moses is not in the Old Testament. Early writers say Jude took it from a Jewish book called the Assumption of Moses, whose ending is now lost.
- **JUDE 1:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← ZECH 3:2 p.1491
- **JUDE 1:9 [NOTE]** MICHAEL AND MOSES. Early writers say this comes from a lost Jewish book, the Assumption of Moses. Michael would not insult even the devil but left it to the Lord, Zechariah 3:2. See What Origen Wrote.
- **JUDE 1:11 [DEMONIC]** They rushed for profit into the error of Balaam, the hired diviner
- **JUDE 1:11 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 4:8 p.52
- **JUDE 1:11 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← NUM 16:1-3; 16:31-33 p.248

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE DATE · THE AMULET IDEA IS A THEORY

THE JUDE AMULET?

JUDE 1:4 TO 5 · 1:7 TO 8 · P.OXY. 2684



Papyrus 78, P.Oxy. 2684, both sides of the folded sheet, late 200s or 300s AD. Sackler Library, Oxford. Public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

WHAT IT IS

A tiny scrap of papyrus with Jude 4 to 5 and 7 to 8 in Greek. It is one small sheet folded in half, making four little pages. Each page is only about 3 cm tall and 5 cm wide, smaller than a matchbook.

HOW OLD IT IS

The handwriting dates it to the late 200s or the 300s AD, about the same age as Papyrus 72, the oldest full copy of Jude.

WHERE IT WAS FOUND

In the ancient trash heaps of Oxyrhynchus, Egypt, where Bernard Grenfell and Arthur Hunt dug up thousands of papyri from 1896 on. It was published in 1968 as number 2684 and is kept in Oxford.

WHAT YOU CAN SEE

Bottom photo, left: arnoumenoi, denying, from verse 4. Under it: I want to remind you, brothers, verse 5. This copy adds the word brothers. On the right: aioniou diken, eternal punishment, verse 7. The top photo is the other side, with verse 8, they defile the flesh, and more of verse 4.

AN AMULET?

Because it is so small and was folded, Tommy Wasserman argued in 2006 that someone carried it as an amulet, a small charm kept close for protection. Others think it was a tiny book for private reading.

WHY IT MATTERS

About 200 years after Jude wrote, Christians in Egypt were copying his letter and keeping it close, even while some church leaders still debated it.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

We do not know who owned it or how it was used. The amulet idea is a good guess, not a fact.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHAT WAS THE ANGELS' SIN?

Jude 6 and Genesis 6

JUDE 1:6 TO 7 · 2 PETER 2:4 TO 5 · GENESIS 6:1 TO 4 · 1 ENOCH 6 TO 16

WHAT JUDE SAID

Angels did not stay within their own domain but abandoned their proper dwelling, and God keeps them in chains under darkness for judgment, 1:6. Then: in like manner Sodom and Gomorrah indulged in sexual immorality and pursued strange flesh, 1:7. 2 Peter 2:4 to 5 puts the angels right before Noah's flood.

GENESIS 6

When people began to multiply, the sons of God saw that the daughters of men were beautiful and took them as wives. The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, the mighty men of old, Genesis 6:1 to 4. Right after, God decides to send the flood. The Bible never says who the sons of God were.

THE OLDEST READING

About 300 to 200 BC, 1 Enoch 6 to 16 told it as 200 angels called Watchers who came down, married women, fathered giants and were bound under the earth until judgment. Josephus, about AD 93, says angels of God lay with women. Some copies of the Greek Old Testament say angels of God in Genesis 6:2.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Justin Martyr about AD 155, Athenagoras about 177, Irenaeus about 180 and Tertullian about 200 all taught that angels sinned with women.

A NEW VIEW

About AD 220 Julius Africanus said the sons of God were the godly family of

JUDE 1:11 [NOTE] THREE MEN. Cain killed his brother out of envy, Genesis 4:8 and 1 John 3:12. Balaam took money to curse Israel, Numbers 22:7 and 31:16. Korah led a revolt against Moses, and the earth swallowed him, Numbers 16. Hate, greed and rebellion.

Seth and the daughters of men came from Cain's family. John Chrysostom and Augustine, City of God 15.23, agreed, and it became the main view for over a thousand years.

JEWISH TEACHERS

Many rabbis turned away from the angel view too. Some said the sons of God were kings and great men, and the Aramaic Targum Onkelos reads it that way.

TODAY

All three views have defenders. Many scholars today say the angel view is what Jude and Peter meant, whether or not they think it really happened. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

JUDE 1:6 TO 7 · JOB 1:6 · JOB 38:7 · MATTHEW 22:30 · PSALM 82:6 · REVELATION 12:4 TO 9

ANGELS AND WOMEN

Angels left heaven and took human wives. Best case: sons of God means angels in Job 1:6 and 38:7. Jude 7 says the men of Sodom sinned in the same way as these, going after a different kind of flesh, which sounds like angels crossing into human flesh. It is the oldest reading. Problem raised: Jesus said angels do not marry, Matthew 22:30. Answer given: He spoke of angels in heaven, and these left heaven.

THE FAMILY OF SETH

Godly men married ungodly women and the godly line was lost. Best case: Genesis 4 and 5 set the two families side by side, Genesis 6:3 judges man, not angels, and angels are spirits.

KINGS AND RULERS

Powerful men took any women they wanted. Best case: rulers in the ancient world were called sons of the gods, judges are called gods in Psalm 82:6, and Lamech had already taken two wives and bragged about killing, Genesis 4:19 to 24.

A FALL BEFORE CREATION

Some read Jude 6 apart from Genesis 6: angels left their place of rule when Satan first rebelled, Revelation 12:4 to 9. Calvin rejected the angel marriage idea. Best case: the Greek word for domain also means rule or position.

WHY IT MATTERS

How you read Genesis 6 shapes how you read the giants, the flood, Spirits in Prison in 1 Peter, p.2017, and Tartarus in 2 Peter, p.2030.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Some angels rebelled and are held for judgment. Jude's point is plain: if God did not spare angels, false teachers will not escape.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT ORIGEN WROTE

Where Jude 9 Came From

ORIGEN, ON FIRST PRINCIPLES 3.2.1 · CLEMENT OF ALEXANDRIA ON JUDE · JUDE 1:9

WHY THIS IS HERE

Jude 9 says the archangel Michael argued with the devil over the body of Moses. That story is not in the Old Testament. Two early Christian writers from Alexandria, Egypt, say where Jude found it.

WHO ORIGEN WAS

Origen, about AD 185 to 254, was the greatest Bible scholar of his day. He wrote On First Principles about AD 220 to 230. It survives mostly in a Latin translation made by Rufinus in AD 398.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is how Origen opens book 3, chapter 2, section 1, in the English translation by Frederick Crombie, Ante Nicene Fathers, 1885. The rest of the section goes on to list other Bible passages about the devil.

ON FIRST PRINCIPLES 3.2.1

We have now to notice, agreeably to the statements of Scripture, how the opposing powers, or the devil himself, contends with the human race, inciting and instigating men to sin. And in the first place, in the book of Genesis, the serpent is described as having seduced Eve; regarding whom, in the work entitled The Ascension of Moses (a little treatise, of which the Apostle Jude makes mention in his Epistle), the archangel Michael, when disputing with the devil regarding the body of Moses, says that the serpent, being inspired by the devil, was the cause of Adam and Eve's transgression.

END TIMES PROPHECIES

WHO CLEMENT WAS
Clement of Alexandria, about AD 150 to 215, taught in Alexandria, and Eusebius says Origen was his student. His short notes on Jude survive in Latin, translated in the 500s for Cassiodorus.
WHAT HE WROTE
Here is his whole note on Jude 9, Ante Nicene Fathers, 1885. The words in quote marks are Jude's verse as Clement read it.
COMMENTS ON THE EPISTLE OF JUDE
"When Michael, the archangel, disputing with the devil, debated about the body of Moses." Here he confirms the assumption of Moses. He is here called Michael, who through an angel near to us debated with the devil.

The Assumption of Moses

JUDE 1:9 · DEUTERONOMY 34:5 TO 6 · ZECHARIAH 3:1 TO 2 · 2 PETER 2:10 TO 11 · DANIEL 12:1

A LOST ENDING
A Jewish book called the Testament of Moses survives in one damaged Latin copy found in Milan and published in 1861. Its ending is missing. Origen calls the book Jude used The Ascension of Moses, and other old writers call it the Assumption of Moses. Most scholars think the lost ending told the story of Moses' burial.
THE STORY
Later Christian writers retell it this way: when Moses died, the devil claimed his body and accused him of murder, because Moses had killed an Egyptian, Exodus 2:12. Michael would not trade insults with him. He said, The Lord rebuke you, and buried Moses.
THE BIBLE BACKGROUND
God Himself buried Moses, and no one knows where his grave is, Deuteronomy 34:5 to 6. The words The Lord rebuke you come from Zechariah 3:1 to 2, where Satan accuses Joshua the high priest.
WHO MICHAEL IS
Michael is a great angel prince who fights for God's people, Daniel 10:13 and 12:1, and leads the angels against the dragon, Revelation 12:7. Jude is the only verse that calls him the archangel; 1 Thessalonians 4:16 mentions the voice of the archangel.
JUDE'S POINT
Even the highest angel did not mock the devil on his own authority. He left judgment to God. The false teachers slander glorious beings they do not understand, 1:8 and 1:10. 2 Peter 2:10 to 11 makes the same point without naming Michael.
WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Using a story from a Jewish book does not make that book Scripture. See Does Quoting Enoch Make It Scripture?

12 These men are hidden reefs in your love
feasts, shamelessly feasting with you but
shepherding only themselves. They are
clouds without water, carried along by the
wind; fruitless trees in autumn, twice dead
after being uprooted. 13 They are wild
waves of the sea, foaming up their own
shame; wandering stars, for whom black-
est darkness has been reserved forever.

14 Enoch, the seventh from Adam, also
prophesied about them:

"Behold, the Lord is coming
with myriads of His holy ones
15 to execute judgment on everyone,
and to convict all the ungodly
of every ungodly act of wickedness
and every harsh word spoken against
Him by ungodly sinners."

16 These men are discontented grumblers,
following after their own lusts; their
mouths spew arrogance; they flatter oth-
ers for their own advantage.

- **JUDE 1:12 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 34:2; PROV 25:14 p.1297
- **JUDE 1:12 [NOTE]** LOVE FEASTS. The church's shared meal, often with the Lord's Supper, 1 Corinthians 11:20 to 22. Hidden reefs can also mean stains.
- **JUDE 1:13 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 57:20 p.1132
- **JUDE 1:13 [NOTE]** WANDERING STARS. The planets, which wander across the sky; 1 Enoch 18 and 21 has stars bound in darkness for breaking God's order. You cannot steer by them.
- **JUDE 1:14 [PROPHECY]** Behold, the Lord comes with ten thousands of His saints, to execute judgment on all, to convict all who are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds → STILL TO COME
- **JUDE 1:14 [NOTABLE]** Jude quotes 1 Enoch 1:9 and says Enoch prophesied. It is the only time a New Testament writer quotes a book outside the Old Testament by name. Paul quoted Greek poets too, Acts 17:28 and Titus 1:12, without making their books Scripture.
- **JUDE 1:14 [NOTE]** ENOCH. The seventh from Adam, counting Adam, Genesis 5. Jude quotes 1 Enoch 1:9, a book not in the Bible. See What Enoch Says and Does Quoting Enoch Make It Scripture?

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

A CALL TO PERSEVERE // HEBREWS 10:19–39; 2 PETER 3:1–7

17 But you, beloved, remember what was
foretold by the apostles of our Lord Jesus
Christ 18 when they said to you, "In the last
times there will be scoffers who will follow
after their own ungodly desires." 19 These
are the ones who cause divisions, who
are worldly and devoid of the Spirit.

20 But you, beloved, by building yourselves
up in your most holy faith and praying in
the Holy Spirit, 21 keep yourselves in the
love of God as you await the mercy of our
Lord Jesus Christ to bring you eternal life.

22 And indeed, have mercy on those who
doubt; 23 save others by snatching them
from the fire; and to still others show
mercy tempered with fear, hating even the
clothing stained by the flesh.

DOXOLOGY // ROMANS 16:25–27

24 Now to Him who is able to keep you
from stumbling and to present you un-
blemished in His glorious presence, with
great joy— 25 to the only God our Savior
be glory, majesty, dominion, and authority
through Jesus Christ our Lord before all
time, and now, and for all eternity.
Amen.

- **JUDE 1:17 [PROPHECY]** The apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ told you that there would be mockers in the last time who would walk according to their own ungodly lusts → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **JUDE 1:17 [NOTE]** THE APOSTLES SAID IT. 2 Peter 3:3 has almost the same words: scoffers will come in the last days, following their own desires. See also Acts 20:29 to 30 and 2 Timothy 3:1 to 5.
- **JUDE 1:20 [NOTABLE]** Four things to do while you wait for Jesus: build, pray, stay in His love and look for His mercy.
- **JUDE 1:21 [NOTE]** KEEP YOURSELVES. And God is able to keep you, verse 24. Can a believer fall away? See the Big Question pages, p.2075.
- **JUDE 1:22 [NOTABLE]** People with questions need mercy, not a lecture.
- **JUDE 1:22 [NOTE]** TEXT. Some copies have three groups here; others, Papyrus 72 and the KJV have two: of some have compassion, making a difference, and others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire.
- **JUDE 1:23 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← ZECH 3:2-4 p.1491
- **JUDE 1:24 [NOTABLE]** A letter full of warnings ends with a promise: God can keep you standing.
- **JUDE 1:25 [NOTE]** TEXT. The KJV says to the only wise God our Saviour and leaves out through Jesus Christ our Lord and before all time, which the oldest copies have. Wise was likely added from Romans 16:27.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT ENOCH SAYS

The Book Jude Quoted

1 ENOCH 1:1 TO 9 · JUDE 1:14 TO 15

WHY THIS IS HERE

Jude 14 to 15 says Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied, and quotes him. The words come from 1 Enoch 1:9, the end of the opening poem of a Jewish book written long after Enoch's time. Here is the whole opening, so you can see what Jude was quoting.

WHAT IT IS

1 Enoch is written as Enoch's visions. Only the Ethiopic version has the whole book. This English is by R. H. Charles, The Book of Enoch, 1917, made from the Ethiopic and the Greek.

CHARLES'S MARKS

⌜ ⌝ words in the Greek copy but not the Ethiopic. ⌜⌜ ⌝⌝ words in the Ethiopic but not the Greek. [ ] words he thought were added later. ( ) words he added to make the sense clear.

1 ENOCH 1:1 TO 9

1. The words of the blessing of Enoch, wherewith he blessed the elect ⌜and⌝ righteous, who will be living in the day of tribulation, when all the wicked ⌜and godless⌝ are to be removed. 2. And he took up his parable and said—Enoch a righteous man, whose eyes were opened by God, saw the vision of the Holy One in the heavens, ⌜which⌝ the angels showed me, and from them I heard everything, and from them I understood as I saw, but not for this generation, but for a remote one which is for to come. 3. Concerning the elect I said, and took up my parable concerning them:
The Holy Great One will come forth from His dwelling,
4. And the eternal God will tread upon the earth, (even) on Mount Sinai,
[And appear from His camp]
And appear in the strength of His might from the heaven ⌜of heavens⌝.
5. And all shall be smitten with fear,
And the Watchers shall quake,
And great fear and trembling shall seize them unto the ends of the earth.
6. And the high mountains shall be shaken,

And the high hills shall be made low,
And shall melt like wax before the
flame 7. And the earth shall be ⌜wholly¹
rent in sunder,
And all that is upon the earth shall perish,
And there shall be a judgement upon all
(men).
8. But with the righteous He will make
peace,
And will protect the elect,
And mercy shall be upon them.
And they shall all belong to God,
And they shall be prospered,
And they shall ⌜all¹ be blessed.
⌜And He will help them all¹,
And light shall appear unto them,
⌜And He will make peace with them¹.
9. And behold! He cometh with ten thousands of ⌜His¹ holy ones
To execute judgement upon all,
And to destroy ⌜all¹ the ungodly:
And to convict all flesh
Of all the works ⌜of their ungodliness¹
which they have ungodly committed,
⌜And of all the hard things which¹ ungodly sinners ⌜have spoken¹ against Him.

Jude and Enoch Side by Side

JUDE 1:14 TO 15 · 1 ENOCH 1:9 · DEUTERONOMY 33:2 · MICAH 1:3 TO 4 · ZECHARIAH 14:5

SIDE BY SIDE

Jude says myriads, Charles says ten thousands: the same Greek word. Jude adds the Lord.

WHICH LANGUAGE?

1 Enoch was first written in Aramaic; pieces of chapter 1 were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls. A Greek copy of chapters 1 to 32 turned up at Akhmim, Egypt, in 1886 to 1887. Jude's words are closest to the Greek.

WHERE ENOCH GOT IT

The poem borrows from Deuteronomy 33:2, the Lord came from Sinai with myriads of holy ones; Micah 1:3 to 4, mountains melt; and Zechariah 14:5.

WHO IS COMING?

In Enoch it is God coming to judge. In Jude the Lord is Jesus Christ, 1:17 and 1:21, so Jude reads it as Jesus' return. Clement of Alexandria, about AD 200, wrote on this verse: In these words he verifies the prophecy.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

DOES QUOTING ENOCH MAKE IT SCRIPTURE?

Jude and the Books Outside the Bible

JUDE 1:9 · 1:14 TO 15 · ACTS 17:28 · 1 CORINTHIANS 15:33 · TITUS 1:12

WHAT JUDE DID

Jude says Enoch prophesied, and quotes 1 Enoch 1:9, 1:14 to 15. His story of Michael, 1:9, likely comes from the Assumption of Moses. Neither book is in the Old Testament.

THE EARLY CHURCH

The Letter of Barnabas, about AD 130, quotes Enoch as Scripture. Tertullian, about AD 200, said accept Enoch because Jude quotes him, On the Apparel of Women 1.3. Origen, about 248, said the churches did not receive Enoch as divine, Against Celsus 5.54.

JEROME

About AD 392 Jerome wrote that many rejected Jude because it quotes Enoch, but its age and use had earned it a place among the Scriptures, Lives of Illustrious Men 4.

AUGUSTINE

About AD 420 Augustine said Enoch surely wrote some things from God, since Jude says so, but the books under his name were left out because no one could prove they were his, City of God 15.23.

TODAY

Only the Ethiopian Orthodox Church counts 1 Enoch as Scripture.

A TRUE SAYING IN AN ORDINARY BOOK

Jude quoted one true prophecy without approving the whole book. Paul quoted Greek poets: Aratus, Acts 17:28; Menander, 1 Corinthians 15:33; Epimenides, whom he calls a prophet, Titus 1:12. Best case: it is how quoting works everywhere else in the Bible. Held by most Christians.

ENOCH IS SCRIPTURE

Best case: Jude says prophesied, and the first Christians read Enoch. Held by the Ethiopian church.

THEIR OWN BOOK

His readers loved Enoch, so he used a book they respected. Best case: it explains why he picked it.

A TRUE OLD TRADITION

Enoch's real words were passed down into the book, and Jude quoted them. Best case: Enoch really said it.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Quoting is not the same as listing a book in the Bible. 1 Enoch was never in the Hebrew Bible or on the lists of Hippo, Carthage or Trent. And the line Jude chose says what the rest of the Bible says: the Lord is coming to judge.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT HEGESIPPUS WROTE

Jude's Grandsons and the Emperor

EUSEBIUS, CHURCH HISTORY 3.19 TO 3.20.8 · JUDE 1:1 · MARK 6:3

WHY THIS IS HERE

Jude calls himself a brother of James, 1:1, which makes him a brother of Jesus, Mark 6:3. An early writer tells what happened to his family.

WHO HEGESIPPUS WAS

A Christian writer who wrote five books of Memoirs about AD 180. They are lost, but Eusebius copied pieces into his Church History in the early 300s.

WHAT THEY WROTE

Here is the whole passage, book 3, chapter 19 and chapter 20 sections 1 to 8, McGiffert translation, 1890. The quote marks hold Hegesippus's own words; after that, Eusebius retells the rest. An Evocatus was an old soldier called back to duty.

CHURCH HISTORY 3.19 TO 3.20.8

But when this same Domitian had commanded that the descendants of David should be slain, an ancient tradition says that some of the heretics brought accusation against the descendants of Jude (said to have been a brother of the Saviour according to the flesh), on the ground that they were of the lineage of David and were related to Christ himself. Hegesippus relates these facts in the following words.

"Of the family of the Lord there were still living the grandchildren of Jude, who is said to have been the Lord's brother according to the flesh.

Information was given that they belonged to the family of David, and they were brought to the Emperor Domitian by the Evocatus. For Domitian feared the coming of Christ as Herod also had feared it. And he asked them if they were descendants of David, and they confessed that they were. Then he asked them how much property they had, or how much money they owned. And both of them answered that they had only nine thousand denarii, half of which belonged to each of them;

and this property did not consist of silver, but of a piece of land which contained only thirty-nine acres, and from which they raised their taxes and supported themselves by their own labor."

Then they showed their hands, exhibiting the hardness of their bodies and the callousness produced upon their hands by continuous toil as evidence of their own labor.

And when they were asked concerning Christ and his kingdom, of what sort it was and where and when it was to appear, they answered that it was not a temporal nor an earthly kingdom, but a heavenly and angelic one, which would appear at the end of the world, when he should come in glory to judge the quick and the dead, and to give unto every one according to his works.

Upon hearing this, Domitian did not pass judgment against them, but, despising them as of no account, he let them go, and by a decree put a stop to the persecution of the Church.

But when they were released they ruled the churches because they were witnesses and were also relatives of the Lord. And peace being established, they lived until the time of Trajan. These things are related by Hegesippus.

The Family of Jesus

JUDE 1:1 · MARK 6:3 · 1 CORINTHIANS 9:5 · JOHN 18:36 · MATTHEW 20:2

A REAL FAMILY

Jude had at least one son and two grandsons. About AD 430 Philip of Side, quoting Hegesippus, names them Zoker and James.

A NERVOUS EMPEROR

Domitian ruled Rome from AD 81 to 96 and feared anyone who might claim a throne. A family of King David, related to the Christ, sounded like trouble.

JUST FARMERS

The 9,000 coins Hegesippus names were about 9,000 days' wages, Matthew 20:2. The translator turned the old Greek land measure into acres. Either way, a small family farm.

THE KINGDOM ANSWER

The quick and the dead means the living and the dead. They said Christ's kingdom is heavenly, not earthly, and that He will come to judge the living and the dead. Jesus told Pilate the same: My kingdom is not of this world, John 18:36.

HOW SURE IS IT?

Hegesippus wrote about a hundred years later, and historians debate how much Domitian really persecuted Christians. But several early sources agree that relatives of Jesus led churches for generations.

WHY IT MATTERS

Jesus' family once thought He was out of His mind, Mark 3:21. Later Jude's grandsons stood before the emperor and would not deny Him.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

CAN A BELIEVER FALL AWAY?

Keep Yourselves, He Is Able to Keep You

JUDE 1:1 · 1:21 · 1:24 · HEBREWS 6:4 TO 6 · JOHN 10:28 TO 29 · 1 JOHN 2:19

WHAT JUDE SAID

Believers are kept in Jesus Christ, 1:1. Keep yourselves in the love of God, 1:21. To Him who is able to keep you from stumbling, 1:24. So who does the keeping, God or us? Christians have argued about that for a very long time.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Most early Christian writers warned that a baptized believer could fall away and be lost. The Shepherd of Hermas, from the early 100s, allowed only one repentance after baptism. Hebrews 6 and 10 were often read this way.

AUGUSTINE

About AD 428 to 429 Augustine wrote On the Gift of Perseverance. He taught that staying faithful to the end is itself a gift God gives to those He chose. Some who seemed to be born again do fall away, but they were not among the chosen.

CATHOLIC TEACHING

Grace can be lost by a deadly sin and restored by repentance and confession. The Council of Trent, 1547, said no one can be sure he will keep going to the end without a special revelation from God.

LUTHER

Lutherans teach that a true believer can fall from grace and be brought back. The Augsburg Confession, 1530, article 12, rejects the idea that those once justified cannot lose the Holy Spirit.

CALVIN AND DORT

John Calvin taught that God's chosen will surely keep believing to the end. The Synod of Dort, 1618 to 1619, made it official for Reformed churches. It is the P in TULIP, the perseverance of the saints.

ARMINIUS AND WESLEY

The followers of Jacob Arminius, in 1610, left the question open for more study of Scripture. Later Arminians and John Wesley taught a believer can fall away; Wesley wrote Serious Thoughts upon the Perseverance of the Saints in 1751. Most Pentecostals agree.

ONCE SAVED, ALWAYS SAVED

Many Baptists and others teach eternal security: once you are truly saved, you can never be lost. Charles Stanley, Eternal Security, 1990. Free Grace teachers like Zane Hodges go further and say a believer who stops believing is still saved.

THE ORTHODOX

The Eastern Orthodox speak of salvation as a lifelong journey with God. A person can turn away, and can always return through repentance.

The Case Each Side Makes

JUDE 1:21 TO 24 · PHILIPPIANS 1:6 · EPHESIANS 1:13 TO 14 · HEBREWS 10:26 TO 29 · GALATIANS 5:4

THE CHOSEN WILL PERSEVERE

Reformed. God keeps every true believer, and they will keep believing to the end. People who leave for good were never truly saved, 1 John 2:19. Key verses: John 10:28 to 29, Romans 8:30, Philippians 1:6, Jude 24. Best case: God finishes what He starts.

ONCE SAVED, ALWAYS SAVED

Many Baptists and others. Salvation is a gift, and a gift once given is not taken back. Key verses: John 5:24, John 6:37 to 39, Ephesians 1:13 to 14, sealed with the Spirit. Best case: your assurance rests on what Christ did, not on how well you hold on.

SALVATION CAN BE LOST

Wesleyan, Arminian and most Pentecostal churches. A real believer can turn away and be lost. Key verses: Hebrews 6:4 to 6 and 10:26 to 29, 2 Peter 2:20 to 22, Colossians 1:23, and Jude 21, keep yourselves. Best case: the warnings would be empty if no one could fall.

LOST AND RESTORED

Catholic, Lutheran and Orthodox. Grace can be lost by serious sin and given back through repentance. Key verses: Galatians 5:4, 1 Corinthians 10:12, Luke 15:24, he was dead and is alive again. Best case: it takes both the warnings and the call to come home at face value.

THE WARNING PASSAGES

Every side reads Hebrews 6 its own way: real believers who are lost; people who tasted the gospel but were never saved; or a true warning God uses to keep His people going.

JUDE'S BALANCE

Jude puts both sides next to each other. Keep yourselves in the love of God, verse 21. He is able to keep you from stumbling, verse 24. Our part is real, and God's part is bigger.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

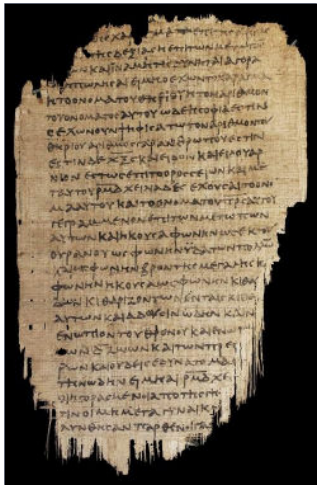
Salvation is by grace. God is faithful. Real faith keeps going. Grace is no license to sin, verse 4. Pull the wanderer out of the fire, verse 23.

BOOK 66 OF 66 · NEW TESTAMENT · PROPHECY

REVELATION

The Lamb Wins

AUTHOR	John, 1:1, 1:4 and 22:8. The early church said John the apostle. About AD 250 Dionysius of Alexandria thought it was a different John; see What Dionysius Wrote.
WRITTEN FROM	The island of Patmos, off the coast of what is now Turkey, where John was sent for preaching about Jesus, 1:9.
DATE WRITTEN	About AD 95, near the end of the emperor Domitian's reign, as Irenaeus says. Some scholars date it about AD 68, under Nero.
WRITTEN TO	Seven real churches in the Roman province of Asia, 1:11, and through them to every church.
WHY HE WROTE	To show suffering believers that Jesus is still in control, that evil will be judged, and that God will make all things new. Hold on.
KEY VERSE	Revelation 17:14. They will wage war against the Lamb, and the Lamb will conquer them, because He is Lord of lords and King of kings.



REVELATION IN PAPYRUS 47
Papyrus 47, copied about AD 250 in Egypt, the oldest large copy of Revelation. This page holds 13:16 to 14:4. On the ninth line, the number of the beast is written in Greek letters, chi xi stigma, 666. Chester Beatty Library, Dublin. Public domain.

OLDER SCRAPS. Papyrus 98, about AD 150 to 200, though some date it later, has part of chapter 1, written on the back of a used sheet. Papyrus 18 has 1:4 to 7 on the back of a scroll of Exodus. Papyrus 115 gives the number of the beast as 616; see its Field Notes page, p.2103.

ERASMUS' MISSING PAGE. Revelation is the least copied book of the New Testament. In 1516 Erasmus printed the first Greek New Testament with only one copy of it, and it lacked the last six verses. He translated them back into Greek from the Latin. That is why the King James Version says book of life in 22:19, where the Greek copies say tree of life.

Historical Setting

By the AD 90s the church had been around for sixty years, and Rome was not getting friendlier. Emperors were worshiped as gods; Domitian liked to be called Lord and God. Believers who would not burn incense to Caesar could lose their jobs, their freedom or their lives. John, the last living apostle, was banished to a rocky island. On a Sunday he got a vision, and Jesus told him to write it down. The book is full of symbols drawn from the Old Testament, like a political cartoon with a heavenly message: the beast looks strong, but the Lamb wins.

What Was Going Wrong

EMPEROR WORSHIP. Christians were pushed to worship Caesar and the gods of the city, 2:13 and 13:4.
PERSECUTION. Some were jailed or killed, like Antipas, 2:10 and 2:13.
FALSE TEACHERS. Nicolaitans, Balaam's teaching and a prophetess called Jezebel led people into idol feasts and sexual sin, 2:14 to 15 and 2:20.
LOST LOVE. Ephesus kept the right beliefs but left its first love, 2:4.
DEAD AND LUKEWARM. Sardis had a name for being alive but was dead; Laodicea was rich and lukewarm, 3:1 and 3:15 to 17.
A GREEDY WORLD. Babylon's trade made the merchants rich and the saints bleed, 18:3 and 18:24.

The Idiot Proof Summary

Revelation is not mainly a puzzle about dates. It is a picture book of who is really in charge. On earth the beast seems to win; in heaven the Lamb who was slain sits on the throne. The book pulls back the curtain so suffering believers can see the end of the story: evil judged, tears wiped away, God living with His people. Christians read its details in very different ways, and this Bible shows them all. On the main point they agree: Jesus is coming back, and the Lamb wins.

Revelation at a Glance

CH 1	**THE RISEN JESUS** John on Patmos sees Jesus among seven lampstands.
CH 2 to 3	**SEVEN LETTERS** Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia, Laodicea.
CH 4 to 5	**THE THRONE AND THE LAMB** Heaven's worship; the Lamb takes the scroll.
CH 6 to 8:5	**SEVEN SEALS** Four horsemen, martyrs, the 144,000 and a great multitude.
CH 8:6 to 11	**SEVEN TRUMPETS** Plagues, the little scroll, the two witnesses.
CH 12 to 14	**THE DRAGON AND THE BEASTS** The woman, war in heaven, 666, the Lamb on Mount Zion.
CH 15 to 16	**SEVEN BOWLS** The last plagues and Armageddon.
CH 17 to 19	**BABYLON FALLS, JESUS RETURNS** The great prostitute, the fall of Babylon, the rider on the white horse.
CH 20	**THE THOUSAND YEARS** Satan bound, the last battle, the great white throne.
CH 21 to 22	**ALL THINGS NEW** The New Jerusalem, the river and the tree of life, Come, Lord Jesus.

Where Jesus Shows Up

REVELATION 1:5 The faithful witness, the firstborn from the dead, the ruler of the kings of the earth.

REVELATION 1:17 TO 18 The First and the Last, the Living One, who holds the keys of death and Hades.

REVELATION 5:5 TO 6 The Lion of the tribe of Judah, who is also the Lamb who was slain.

REVELATION 19:11 TO 16 Faithful and True, the Word of God, King of kings and Lord of lords.

REVELATION 22:16 The Root and Offspring of David, the bright Morning Star.

What to Watch for in Revelation

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES (14)	1:5, 1:16-17, 2:27, 5:5-6, 5:9, 12:5, 19:11 and 5 more
MESSIANIC FORESHADOW (3)	2:17, 3:7, 19:12
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE (1)	1:9
PROPHETIC FORESHADOW (2)	6:16, 7:3, 9:4
PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY (2)	2:5, 2:10
END TIMES PROPHECIES (50)	1:7, 3:10, 5:10, 6:1-15, 6:17, 7:1-2, 7:4-10 and 29 more
THE HEART (3)	2:23, 17:17, 18:7
MIRACLES (9)	1:12-15, 4:2-3, 4:8, 5:11-12, 10:1-3, 18:1, 19:10 and 2 more
DEMONIC (12)	2:13-14, 2:20, 2:24, 9:20-21, 12:13-17, 13:4, 13:8 and 6 more
NOTABLE (9)	1:3, 2:4, 3:15-16, 3:20, 4:11, 5:8, 8:3-4 and 1 more
JESUS SPEAKING (68 VERSES)	Words in red are Jesus speaking, or God the Father speaking from heaven.

Cool Stuff Most People Miss

NOT REVELATIONS
The title is singular: one revelation, from the Greek apokalypsis, an unveiling.

A BLESSING FOR READING
It is the only book of the Bible that opens with a blessing on the one who reads it aloud, 1:3.

OLD TESTAMENT EVERYWHERE
It never quotes the Old Testament with it is written, yet hundreds of its lines echo Daniel, Ezekiel, Isaiah, Zechariah and the Psalms.

616
Some of the oldest copies give the beast's number as 616, not 666. See Papyrus 115.

SEVENS
Seven churches, seals, trumpets, bowls, spirits, stars and lampstands. Seven is the number of completeness.

THE END IS THE BEGINNING
The Bible starts with a garden and a tree of life, Genesis 2, and ends with a city, a river and the tree of life, Revelation 22.

What Happened Next?

The western church accepted Revelation early; Justin Martyr and Irenaeus quote it as John's. In the East it was doubted for centuries, and the Eastern Orthodox still do not read it aloud in their worship services. Martin Luther said in 1522 that his spirit could not fit itself to the book, though he spoke more warmly of it later. John Calvin wrote commentaries on almost the whole New Testament but never on Revelation. Through it all the book has given hope to persecuted Christians in every century.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN SCRIPTURE | END TIMES PROPHECIES | MIRACLES | NOTABLE
JESUS SPEAKING

1

CHAPTER 1 IN 30 SECONDS

John is stuck on the prison island of Patmos when Jesus shows up shining like the sun, with eyes like fire and a voice like a waterfall. John faints. Jesus says do not be afraid, I hold the keys of death, now write this down and send it to seven churches.

PROLOGUE // DANIEL 12:1–13

1 This is the revelation of Jesus Christ,
which God gave Him to show His servants
what must soon come to pass. He made it
known by sending His angel to His ser-
vant John, 2 who testifies to everything he
saw. This is the word of God and the testi-
mony of Jesus Christ.

3 Blessed is the one who reads aloud the
words of this prophecy, and blessed are
those who hear and obey what is written
in it, because the time is near.

JOHN GREETS THE SEVEN CHURCHES

4 John,

To the seven churches in the province of
Asia:

Grace and peace to you from Him who is
and was and is to come, and from the
seven spirits before His throne, 5 and from
Jesus Christ, the faithful witness, the
firstborn from the dead, and the ruler of
the kings of the earth.

To Him who loves us and has released us
from our sins by His blood, 6 who has
made us to be a kingdom, priests to His
God and Father—to Him be the glory and
power forever and ever! Amen.

7 Behold, He is coming with the clouds,
and every eye will see Him—even those
who pierced Him. And all the tribes of the
earth will mourn because of Him. So shall
it be! Amen.

8 "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says
the Lord God, who is and was and is to
come—the Almighty.

JOHN'S VISION ON PATMOS

9 I, John, your brother and partner in the
tribulation and kingdom and perseverance
that are in Jesus, was on the island of
Patmos because of the word of God and
my testimony about Jesus. 10 On the Lord's
day I was in the Spirit, and I heard behind
me a loud voice like a trumpet, 11 saying,
"Write on a scroll what you see and send
it to the seven churches: to Ephesus,
Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis,
Philadelphia, and Laodicea."

12 Then I turned to see the voice that was
speaking with me. And having turned, I
saw seven golden lampstands, 13 and
among the lampstands was One like the
Son of Man, dressed in a long robe, with a
golden sash around His chest. 14 The hair
of His head was white like wool, as white
as snow, and His eyes were like a blazing
fire. 15 His feet were like polished bronze
refined in a furnace, and His voice was
like the roar of many waters. 16 He held in
His right hand seven stars, and a sharp
double-edged sword came from His
mouth. His face was like the sun shining
at its brightest.

- **REV 1:1 [NOTE]** THE REVELATION. One revelation, not Revelations. The Greek apokalypsis means an unveiling, pulling back a curtain. It is the revelation of Jesus Christ: from Him, and about Him.
- **REV 1:3 [NOTABLE]** Revelation starts with a blessing for anyone who reads it aloud and lives it.
- **REV 1:4 [NOTE]** SEVEN SPIRITS. Most read this as the Holy Spirit in His fullness, Isaiah 11:2 and Zechariah 4:2 to 10. Others read seven high angels, 8:2.
- **REV 1:5 [FULFILLS]** He would be the Firstborn ← PS 89:27 · MEDIUM p.944
- **REV 1:5 [FULFILLS]** His sprinkled blood would cleanse the nations ← IS 52:15 p.1127
- **REV 1:5 [NOTE]** TEXT. The oldest copies say freed us from our sins, lusanti. Later copies and the KJV say washed us, lousanti. The Greek words differ by one letter.
- **REV 1:6 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 19:6 p.147
- **REV 1:7 [PROPHECY]** Behold, He is coming with clouds, and every eye will see Him, even they who pierced Him. And all the tribes of the earth will mourn because of Him → STILL TO COME
- **REV 1:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:13; ZECH 12:10 p.1341
- **REV 1:8 [NOTE]** THE ONE ON THE THRONE. The red words here and in 21:5 to 8 are God speaking from the throne, printed red like Jesus' words. Most read 1:8 as the Father; some read it as Jesus, who also says I am the Alpha and the Omega in 22:13.
- **REV 1:9 [FULFILLS]** James and John would drink the cup of suffering Jesus would drink ← MT 20:23; MK 10:39 p.1580
- **REV 1:9 [NOTE]** PATMOS. A small rocky island the Romans used for exile. See What Eusebius Wrote.
- **REV 1:10 [NOTE]** SUNDAY? The Lord's day: most read this as Sunday, the day Jesus rose, Acts 20:7. A few read the day of the Lord, the end times.
- **REV 1:11 [NOTE]** TEXT. The KJV adds I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last at the start of this verse. The oldest copies do not have it here.
- **REV 1:12 [MIRACLE]** John sees the risen Christ among the lampstands
- **REV 1:13 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:13; 10:5-6 p.1341
- **REV 1:16 [FULFILLS]** The Servant's mouth would be like a sharp sword ← IS 49:2 · MEDIUM p.1122

MAP · REVELATION 1 TO 3

The Seven Churches

Letters from Jesus to seven real cities in Asia



PATMOS John got the vision while he was on the island of Patmos because of the word of God, Revelation 1:9.

REAL PROBLEMS Each letter fits its city. Pergamum had a great altar and temples, where Satan's throne is, 2:13. Sardis was proud of its strong hill, but it was taken by surprise twice, 3:3.

A MAIL ROUTE The churches are listed in the order a messenger would reach them on the Roman roads, starting at Ephesus and going around in a loop.

LUKEWARM Laodicea got water by pipe from springs miles away. Nearby Hierapolis had hot springs and Colossae had cold water. Many think Jesus had that in mind, 3:15 to 16.

All seven cities are known and can be visited today. The lukewarm water idea is likely, but it is a scholar's reading.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

17 When I saw Him, I fell at His feet like a
dead man. But He placed His right hand
on me and said, "Do not be afraid. I am
the First and the Last, 18 the Living One. I
was dead, and behold, now I am alive for-
ever and ever! And I hold the keys of
Death and of Hades.

19 Therefore write down the things you
have seen, the things that are, and the
things that will happen after this. 20 This is
the mystery of the seven stars you saw in
My right hand and of the seven golden
lampstands: The seven stars are the an-
gels of the seven churches, and the seven
lampstands are the seven churches.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

FOUR WAYS TO READ REVELATION

The Big Picture

REVELATION 1:1 · 1:3 · 1:19 · 4:1 · 22:6 · 22:10

WHY IT MATTERS

Before anyone argues about the mark, the rapture or the thousand years, they have already decided one thing: when do the visions happen? In John's day, all through church history, at the end of the world, or all the time? Most fights about Revelation come from that first choice.

WHAT JOHN SAYS

The things that must soon take place, 1:1. The time is near, 1:3 and 22:10. Write what you have seen, what is now, and what will happen after this, 1:19. Every view has to explain those verses.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Justin Martyr, about AD 155, and Irenaeus, about AD 180, read the beast, the thousand years and the new Jerusalem as still in the future, after a time of great trouble. About AD 380 Tyconius, and then Augustine, read much of the book as a picture of the church's battle in every age.

THE MIDDLE AGES AND REFORMATION

Joachim of Fiore, about 1190, read Revelation as a timeline of church history. Many Reformers did the same and saw the beast or Babylon in the papacy; Martin Luther's preface of 1530 reads it that way.

THE JESUITS ANSWER

Two Jesuit scholars answered the Reformers. Francisco Ribera, 1590, pushed most of the book into the future. Luis de Alcazar, 1614, placed most of it in the first centuries. Their two answers grew into the futurist and preterist views.

MODERN TIMES

In the 1830s John Nelson Darby taught a future seven year tribulation after the church is taken away. The Scofield Reference Bible, 1909, carried it into millions of homes, then Hal Lindsey's The Late Great Planet Earth, 1970, and the Left Behind novels from 1995. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

REVELATION 1:1 · 1:19 · 4:1 · 11:8 · 17:9 · 19:11

PRETERIST

Most of it happened in the first century: the fall of Jerusalem in AD 70, or Rome's war on the church, with Jesus' return still ahead at the end, 19 to 22. A few say all of it is fulfilled. Best case: soon and near, 1:1 and 22:10, meant something to the first readers, and the great city is where the Lord was crucified, 11:8.

HISTORICIST

Revelation is a map of church history from John's day to the end, with the seals, trumpets and bowls as events in order. Held by many Reformers, Isaac Newton and the early Adventists. Best case: it gives every generation a place in the story.

FUTURIST

From chapter 4 on, most of the book is still future: a final tribulation, a world ruler, the return of Christ and His kingdom. Held by many early fathers in some form and by most evangelicals today. Best case: the events are worldwide and have never happened that way yet, 6:15 to 17 and 16:18.

IDEALIST

The visions are not a calendar but pictures of the war between Christ and Sa-

REV 1:17 [FULFILLS] The First and the Last ← IS 48:12 · MEDIUM p.1121

REV 1:17 [ALLUDES TO] Refers to ← IS 44:6; 48:12 p.1116

REV 1:20 [NOTE] THE ANGELS OF THE CHURCHES. The Greek angelos means messenger. It could be a guardian angel for each church, or a church's leader, or its messenger to John.

JESUS SPEAKING

tan in every age, ending in His victory. Held by many who follow Augustine. Best case: the book calls itself signs, 1:1, and every church in every century can read it as its own story.

MIXING THEM

Many scholars today mix the views: the visions spoke to John's churches, repeat in every age, and point to one final end.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus is Lord over history. Evil will be judged. Believers are called to stay faithful, even unto death. Jesus is coming back, and God will make all things new.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT EUSEBIUS WROTE

John on Patmos

EUSEBIUS, CHURCH HISTORY 3.18 · REVELATION 1:9 · IRENAEUS, AGAINST HERESIES 5.30.3

WHY THIS IS HERE

John was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of Jesus, 1:9. Patmos is a rocky island of about 13 square miles, and Rome often banished troublemakers to islands. An early church historian tells when.

WHO EUSEBIUS WAS

Bishop of Caesarea; he wrote his Church History in the early 300s from a large library of older Christian books.

WHAT HE WROTE

All of book 3, chapter 18, McGiffert translation, 1890. The quote is from Irenaeus, about AD 180.

CHURCH HISTORY 3.18

It is said that in this persecution the apostle and evangelist John, who was still alive, was condemned to dwell on the island of Patmos in consequence of his testimony to the divine word. Irenæus, in the fifth book of his work Against Heresies, where he discusses the number of the name of Antichrist which is given in the so-called Apocalypse of John, speaks as follows concerning him:

"If it were necessary for his name to be proclaimed openly at the present time, it would have been declared by him who saw the revelation. For it was seen not long ago, but almost in our own generation, at the end of the reign of Domitian." To such a degree, indeed, did the teaching of our faith flourish at that time that even those writers who were far from our religion did not hesitate to mention in their histories the persecution and the martyrdoms which took place during it. And they, indeed, accurately indicated the time. For they recorded that in the fifteenth year of Domitian Flavia Domitilla, daughter of a sister of Flavius Clement, who at that time was one of the consuls of Rome, was exiled with many others to the island of Pontia in consequence of testimony borne to Christ.

WHAT IT TELLS US

This persecution means Domitian's, AD 81 to 96; his fifteenth year is AD 95 to 96. Irenaeus heard Polycarp, who knew John, so his date is early. Some scholars prefer a date under Nero, about AD 68. Flavius Clemens, the emperor's cousin, was put to death; Cassius Dio says for atheism and Jewish ways, which many think meant Christianity.

2

CHAPTER 2 IN 30 SECONDS

Jesus writes report cards to four churches. Ephesus works hard but lost its first love. Smyrna is poor and persecuted but rich in His eyes. Pergamum lives where Satan has his throne. Thyatira lets a false prophetess called Jezebel lead people into idol feasts. To each one: whoever overcomes wins.

TO THE CHURCH IN EPHESUS // ACTS 19:8–12; EPHESIANS 1:1–2

1 "To the angel of the church in Ephesus write:

These are the words of Him who holds the seven stars in His right hand and walks among the seven golden lampstands.

2 I know your deeds, your labor, and your perseverance. I know that you cannot tolerate those who are evil, and you have tested and exposed as liars those who falsely claim to be apostles. 3 Without growing weary, you have persevered and

REV 2:1 [NOTE] SEVEN CHURCHES. Real cities on a mail route, in the order a messenger would travel. See The Seven Churches pages, p.2081.

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | PROPHECIES FULFILLED IN HISTORY | DEMONIC | NOTABLE | JESUS SPEAKING

endured many things for the sake of My name.

4 But I have this against you: You have abandoned your first love. 5 Therefore, keep in mind how far you have fallen. Repent and perform the deeds you did at first. But if you do not repent, I will come to you and remove your lampstand from its place.

6 But you have this to your credit: You hate the works of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate.

7 He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To the one who overcomes, I will grant the right to eat from the tree of life in the Paradise of God.

TO THE CHURCH IN SMYRNA

8 To the angel of the church in Smyrna write:

These are the words of the First and the Last, who died and returned to life.

9 I know your affliction and your poverty—though you are rich! And I am aware of the slander of those who falsely claim to be Jews, but are in fact a synagogue of Satan.

10 Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil is about to throw some of you into prison to test you, and you will suffer tribulation for ten days. Be faithful even unto death, and I will give you the crown of life.

11 He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. The one who overcomes will not be harmed by the second death.

TO THE CHURCH IN PERGAMUM

12 To the angel of the church in Pergamum write:

These are the words of the One who holds the sharp, double-edged sword.

13 I know where you live, where the throne of Satan sits, yet you hold fast to My name. You did not deny your faith in Me, even in the days of My faithful witness Antipas, who was killed among you where Satan dwells.

14 But I have a few things against you, because some of you hold to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to place a stumbling block before the Israelites so they would eat food sacrificed to idols and commit sexual immorality. 15 In the same way, some of you also hold to the teaching of the Nicolaitans. 16 Therefore repent! Otherwise I will come to you shortly and wage war against them with the sword of My mouth.

17 He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To the one who overcomes, I will give the hidden manna. I will also give him a white stone inscribed with a new name, known only to the one who receives it.

TO THE CHURCH IN THYATIRA // ACTS 16:11–15

18 To the angel of the church in Thyatira write:

These are the words of the Son of God, whose eyes are like a blazing fire and whose feet are like polished bronze.

19 I know your deeds—your love, your faith, your service, your perseverance—and your latest deeds are greater than your first.

- **REV 2:4 [NOTABLE]** A busy church with the right beliefs can still lose its love for Jesus.
- **REV 2:5 [PROPHECY]** To Ephesus → HISTORY: Ephesus's harbor filled with mud, and by the 1400s the city lay empty. · MEDIUM
- **REV 2:6 [NOTE]** NICOLAITANS. A group whose teaching led to idol feasts and sexual sin, 2:15. Irenaeus says they followed Nicolaus of Antioch, Acts 6:5, but that link is uncertain.
- **REV 2:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 2:9 p.49
- **REV 2:9 [NOTE]** SYNAGOGUE OF SATAN. In Smyrna some who said they were Jews were slandering the church, and Jesus says they are not true Jews. Jesus and John were Jews themselves. This was a local fight in the first century, never a license to hate Jewish people.
- **REV 2:10 [PROPHECY]** To Smyrna → HISTORY: Polycarp of Smyrna was killed for his faith about AD 155. Recorded in the Martyrdom of Polycarp. · MEDIUM
- **REV 2:10 [NOTE]** CROWN OF LIFE. About AD 155 Smyrna's bishop Polycarp was burned alive rather than deny Jesus. See What Polycarp's Church Wrote.
- **REV 2:13 [DEMONIC]** Pergamum is where Satan's throne sits
- **REV 2:13 [NOTE]** SATAN'S THRONE. Maybe the great altar of Zeus, the temple to the emperor, or the healing god Asclepius, whose sign was a snake. See The Seven Churches pages, p.2081.
- **REV 2:14 [DEMONIC]** Some in Pergamum follow Balaam's teaching to eat food sacrificed to idols
- **REV 2:17 [FULFILLS]** A jar of manna was kept before Yahweh for later generations ← EX 16:33 · MEDIUM p.144
- **REV 2:17 [NOTE]** MANNA AND A WHITE STONE. Hidden manna recalls the jar of manna kept in the ark, Exodus 16:33. A white stone was used as a vote of not guilty or a ticket to a feast.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES · THE HEART · DEMONIC · *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* · JESUS SPEAKING

20 But I have this against you: You tolerate
that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a
prophetess. By her teaching she misleads
My servants to be sexually immoral and to
eat food sacrificed to idols. 21 Even though
I have given her time to repent of her im-
morality, she is unwilling.
22 Behold, I will cast her onto a bed of
sickness, and those who commit adultery
with her will suffer great tribulation unless
they repent of her deeds. 23 Then I will
strike her children dead, and all the
churches will know that I am the One who
searches minds and hearts, and I will re-
pay each of you according to your deeds.
24 But I say to the rest of you in Thyatira,
who do not hold to her teaching and have
not learned the so-called deep things of
Satan: I will place no further burden upon
you 25 than to hold fast to what you have
until I come. 26 And to the one who over-
comes and continues in My work until the
end, I will give authority over the nations.
27 *He will rule them with an iron scepter and*
shatter them like pottery—just as I have re-
ceived authority from My Father. 28 And I will
give him the morning star.
29 He who has an ear, let him hear what
the Spirit says to the churches.

- **REV 2:20 [DEMONIC]** Jezebel leads believers to eat food sacrificed to idols
- **REV 2:20 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1KI 16:31 p.580
- **REV 2:20 [NOTE]** JEZEBEL. Probably a nickname for a real woman, after Ahab's wife who led Israel to Baal, 1 Kings 16:31.
- **REV 2:23 [HEART]** Jesus says He searches minds and hearts and repays each one for their deeds.
- **REV 2:23 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JER 17:10 p.1172
- **REV 2:24 [DEMONIC]** The so called deep things of Satan taught at Thyatira
- **REV 2:27 [FULFILLS]** 'The rod of Your strength out of Zion' ← PS 110:2 p.960
- **REV 2:27 [QUOTES]** Direct ← PS 2:9 p.884

FROM HISTORY

WHAT POLYCARP'S CHURCH WROTE

Faithful unto Death in Smyrna

THE MARTYRDOM OF POLYCARP 9 TO 16 · REVELATION 2:8 TO 11

WHY THIS IS HERE

Jesus tells Smyrna: Be faithful unto death, and I will give you the crown of life, 2:10. About sixty years later the church at Smyrna watched its old bishop do exactly that, and wrote a letter about it to other churches.

WHO POLYCARP WAS

Polycarp was bishop of Smyrna. Irenaeus says he was taught by the apostles and appointed by them, and that as a boy he heard Polycarp talk about John. He died about AD 155 to 160, at 86 or older.

WHAT THEY WROTE

Here is the whole account of his trial and death, chapters 9 to 16, in the translation by J. B. Lightfoot, The Apostolic Fathers, 1891. Words in [square brackets] are Lightfoot's. The genius of Caesar means the emperor's guardian spirit; to swear by it was an act of worship.

THE MARTYRDOM OF POLYCARP 9 TO 16

But as Polycarp entered into the stadium, a voice came to him from heaven; 'Be strong, Polycarp, and play the man.' And no one saw the speaker, but those of our people who were present heard the voice. And at length, when he was brought up, there was a great tumult, for they heard that Polycarp had been apprehended. When then he was brought before him, the proconsul enquired whether he were the man. And on his confessing that he was, he tried to persuade him to a denial saying, 'Have respect to thine age,' and other things in accordance therewith, as it is their wont to say; 'Swear by the genius of Cæsar; repent and say, Away with the atheists.' Then Polycarp with solemn countenance looked upon the whole multitude of lawless heathen that were in the stadium, and waved his hand to them; and groaning and looking up to heaven he said, 'Away with the atheists.' But when the magistrate pressed him hard and said,

'Swear the oath, and I will release thee; revile the Christ,' Polycarp said, 'Fourscore and six years have I been His servant, and He hath done me no wrong. How then can I blaspheme my King who saved me?' But on his persisting again and saying, 'Swear by the genius of Cæsar,' he answered, 'If thou supposest vainly that I will swear by the genius of Cæsar, as thou sayest, and feignest that thou art ignorant who I am, hear thou plainly, I am a Christian. But if thou wouldest learn the doctrine of Christianity, assign a day and give me a hearing.' The proconsul said; 'Prevail upon the people.' But Polycarp said; 'As for thyself, I should have held thee worthy of discourse; for we have been taught to render, as is meet, to princes and authorities appointed by God such honour as does us no harm; but as for these, I do not hold them worthy, that I should defend myself before them.'

Whereupon the proconsul said; 'I have wild beasts here and I will throw thee to them, except thou repent.' But he said, 'Call for them: for the repentance from better to worse is a change not permitted to us; but it is a noble thing to change from untowardness to righteousness.' Then he said to him again, 'I will cause thee to be consumed by fire, if thou despisest the wild beasts, unless thou repent.' But Polycarp said; 'Thou threatenest that fire which burneth for a season and after a little while is quenched: for thou art ignorant of the fire of the future judgment and eternal punishment, which is reserved for the ungodly. But why delayest thou? Come, do what thou wilt.'

Saying these things and more besides, he was inspired with courage and joy, and his countenance was filled with grace, so that not only did it not drop in dismay at the things which were said to him, but on the contrary the proconsul was astounded and sent his own herald to proclaim three times in the midst of the stadium, 'Polycarp hath confessed himself to be a Christian.' When this was proclaimed by the herald, the whole multitude both of Gentiles and of Jews who dwelt in Smyrna cried out with ungovernable wrath and with a loud shout, 'This is the teacher of Asia, the father of the Christians, the puller down of our gods, who teacheth numbers not to sacrifice nor worship.' Saying these things, they shouted aloud and asked the Asiarch Philip to let a lion loose upon Polycarp. But he said that it was not lawful for him, since he had brought the sports to a close. Then they thought fit to shout out with one accord that Polycarp should be burned alive. For it must needs be that the matter of the vision should be fulfilled, which was shown him concerning his pillow, when he saw it on fire while praying, and turning round he said prophetically to the faithful who were with him, 'I must needs be burned alive.'

These things then happened with so great speed, quicker than words could tell, the crowds forthwith collecting from the workshops and baths timber and faggots, and the Jews more especially assisting in this with zeal, as is their wont. But when the pile was made ready, divesting himself of all his upper garments and loosing his girdle, he endeavoured also to take off his shoes, though not in the habit of doing this before, because all the faithful at all times vied eagerly who should soonest touch his flesh. For he had been treated with all honour for his holy life even before his gray hairs came. Forthwith then the instruments that were prepared for the pile were placed about him; and as they were going likewise to nail him to the stake, he said; 'Leave me as I am; for He that hath granted me to endure the fire will grant me also to remain at the pile unmoved, even without the security which ye seek from the nails.'

So they did not nail him, but tied him. Then he, placing his hands behind him and being bound to the stake, like a noble ram out of a great flock for an offering, a burnt sacrifice made ready and acceptable to God, looking up to heaven said; 'O Lord God Almighty, the Father of

JESUS SPEAKING

Thy beloved and blessed Son Jesus Christ, through whom we have received the knowledge of Thee, the God of angels and powers and of all creation and of the whole race of the righteous, who live in Thy presence; I bless Thee for that Thou hast granted me this day and hour, that I might receive a portion amongst the number of martyrs in the cup of [Thy] Christ unto resurrection of eternal life, both of soul and of body, in the incorruptibility of the Holy Spirit. May I be received among these in Thy presence this day, as a rich and acceptable sacrifice, as Thou didst prepare and reveal it beforehand, and hast accomplished it, Thou that art the faithful and true God. For this cause, yea and for all things, I praise Thee, I bless Thee, I glorify Thee, through the eternal and heavenly High-priest, Jesus Christ, Thy beloved Son, through whom with Him and the Holy Spirit be glory both now [and ever] and for the ages to come. Amen.'

When he had offered up the Amen and finished his prayer, the firemen lighted the fire. And, a mighty flame flashing forth, we to whom it was given to see, saw a marvel, yea and we were preserved that we might relate to the rest what happened. The fire, making the appearance of a vault, like the sail of a vessel filled by the wind, made a wall round about the body of the martyr; and it was there in the midst, not like flesh burning, but like [a loaf in the oven or like] gold and silver refined in a furnace. For we perceived such a fragrant smell, as if it were the wafted odour of frankincense or some other precious spice.

So at length the lawless men, seeing that his body could not be consumed by the fire, ordered an executioner to go up to him and stab him with a dagger. And when he had done this, there came forth [a dove and] a quantity of blood, so that it extinguished the fire; and all the multitude marvelled that there should be so great a difference between the unbelievers and the elect. In the number of these was this man, the glorious martyr Polycarp, who was found an apostolic and prophetic teacher in our own time, a bishop of the holy Church which is in Smyrna. For every word which he uttered from his mouth was accomplished and will be accomplished.

The Crown of Life

REVELATION 2:8 TO 11 · 1 PETER 4:14 · ROMANS 12:1

THE OLDEST ACCOUNT

This letter is the oldest Christian account of a martyr outside the New Testament, written by eyewitnesses within a year or so of his death.

AWAY WITH THE ATHEISTS

Romans called Christians atheists because they would not worship the gods. Polycarp turned the words around and pointed at the crowd.

EIGHTY SIX YEARS

Fourscore and six means 86. Many take it as the years since he was baptized, so he may have been a Christian from childhood.

SMYRNA'S JEWS

The letter says Jews in Smyrna joined the crowd, like the slander Jesus mentions in 2:9. That was one city's conflict, not a picture of all Jewish people.

WHAT IS HARD TO BELIEVE

The voice from heaven, the fire like a sail and the dove are reported as wonders. Lightfoot and many others think the dove came into the text later by a copying mistake.

WHY IT MATTERS

Smyrna's church was poor and persecuted but faithful, 2:9 to 10. Jesus did not promise them escape. He promised them the crown of life, and they believed Him.

3

CHAPTER 3 IN 30 SECONDS

Three more report cards. Sardis looks alive but is dead. Little Philadelphia has kept His word, so He opens a door no one can shut. Laodicea is rich, proud and lukewarm, and it makes Him sick. Still, He stands at the door and knocks.

TO THE CHURCH IN SARDIS

1 "To the angel of the church in Sardis write:

MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | END TIMES PROPHECIES | NOTABLE | JESUS SPEAKING

These are the words of the One who holds the seven spirits of God and the seven stars.

I know your deeds; you have a reputation for being alive, yet you are dead. 2 Wake up and strengthen what remains, which is about to die; for I have found your deeds incomplete in the sight of My God. 3 Remember, then, what you have received and heard. Keep it and repent. If you do not wake up, I will come like a thief, and you will not know the hour when I will come upon you.

4 But you do have a few people in Sardis who have not soiled their garments, and because they are worthy, they will walk with Me in white. 5 Like them, he who overcomes will be dressed in white. And I will never blot out his name from the Book of Life, but I will confess his name before My Father and His angels.

6 He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.

TO THE CHURCH IN PHILADELPHIA

7 To the angel of the church in Philadelphia write:

These are the words of the One who is holy and true, who holds the key of David. What He opens no one can shut, and what He shuts no one can open.

8 I know your deeds. Behold, I have placed before you an open door, which no one can shut. I know that you have only a little strength, yet you have kept My word and have not denied My name. 9 As for those who belong to the synagogue of Satan, who claim to be Jews but are liars instead, I will make them come and bow down at your feet, and they will know that I love you.

10 Because you have kept My command to persevere, I will also keep you from the hour of testing that is about to come upon the whole world, to test those who dwell on the earth. 11 I am coming soon. Hold fast to what you have, so that no one will take your crown. 12 The one who overcomes I will make a pillar in the temple of My God, and he will never again leave it. Upon him I will write the name of My God, and the name of the city of My God (the new Jerusalem that comes down out of heaven from My God), and My new name.

13 He who has an ear, let him hear what the Spirit says to the churches.

TO THE CHURCH IN LAODICEA // COLOSSIANS 2:1–5

14 To the angel of the church in Laodicea write:

These are the words of the Amen, the faithful and true Witness, the Originator of God's creation.

15 I know your deeds; you are neither cold nor hot. How I wish you were one or the other! 16 So because you are lukewarm—neither hot nor cold—I am about to vomit you out of My mouth!

17 You say, 'I am rich; I have grown wealthy and need nothing.' But you do not realize that you are wretched, pitiful, poor, blind, and naked. 18 I counsel you to buy from Me gold refined by fire so that you may become rich, white garments so that you may be clothed and your shameful nakedness not exposed, and salve to anoint your eyes so that you may see. 19 Those I love I rebuke and discipline. Therefore be earnest and repent.

20 Behold, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in and dine with him, and he with Me. 21 To the one who overcomes, I will grant the right to sit with Me on My throne, just as I overcame and sat down with My Father on His throne.

- **REV 3:5 [NOTE]** THE BOOK OF LIFE. See Exodus 32:32 and Daniel 12:1. Christians debate whether a name can be erased; see Can a Believer Fall Away? in Jude, p.2075.
- **REV 3:7 [FULFILLS]** Given all authority ← IS 22:22 p.1088
- **REV 3:10 [PROPHECY]** To Philadelphia → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **REV 3:10 [NOTE]** THE HOUR OF TRIAL. See The Rapture and 3:10.
- **REV 3:14 [NOTE]** THE BEGINNING. The Greek arche can mean first in time or the ruler and source. Colossians 1:15 to 18 shows Christ as the Creator, not a creature.
- **REV 3:15 [NOTABLE]** Jesus wants a church that is useful to Him, not tepid.
- **REV 3:20 [NOTABLE]** Jesus knocks at the door of a church that had shut Him out. He wants to come in and eat with us.
- **REV 3:20 [NOTE]** AT THE DOOR. Often used to invite people to faith, and rightly, but here Jesus is knocking on the door of a church.

JESUS SPEAKING

22 He who has an ear, let him hear what
the Spirit says to the churches."

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE SITES · SATAN'S THRONE IS A GUESS

THE SEVEN CHURCHES

REVELATION 2:1 TO 29 · ACTS 19 · ACTS 16:14



Top left: the Great Theatre of Ephesus, Furkan Akkurt, CC BY SA 4.0. Top right: the Great Altar of Pergamum, rebuilt in the Pergamon Museum, Berlin, Lestat (Jan Mehlich), CC BY SA 3.0. Bottom left: the agora of Smyrna, Didier Laroche, CC BY SA 3.0. Bottom right: ruins of Thyatira, public domain.

EPHESUS

The biggest city of the province and home of the temple of Artemis, one of the seven wonders. Paul spent three years here, and the riot of Acts 19 filled this theater, which held about 24,000. Its seats and stage are partly restored. Later its harbor filled with silt and the city faded away, like a lampstand removed, 2:5.

SMYRNA

Today Izmir. The agora shown was rebuilt after an earthquake in AD 178. Smyrna was proud of its loyalty to Rome and its crown of buildings on the hill. Jesus offered a better crown, 2:10, and Polycarp died for it.

PERGAMUM

A capital city with a famous library; parchment, pergamena, is named after it. Its Great Altar of Zeus, about 180 to 160 BC, was dug up by German archaeologists from 1878 and rebuilt in Berlin with its original carved panels. Many think it was Satan's throne, 2:13; others point to the temple of the emperor or to Asclepius, the snake god of healing. No one knows for sure.

THYATIRA

Today Akhisar. A city of trade guilds; Lydia, the seller of purple, came from here, Acts 16:14. Guild feasts honored the gods with meat offered to idols, the very thing Jezebel was teaching, 2:20. Only a small field of ruins survives in the middle of the modern town.

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH
FOR THE SITES · THE WATER IDEA IS AN INTERPRETATION

THE SEVEN CHURCHES

REVELATION 3:1 TO 22 · COLOSSIANS 4:13 TO 16



Left: piers of the Byzantine church of St. John, Philadelphia (Alaşehir), simonjenkins' photos, CC BY SA 2.0. Top right: the temple of Artemis at Sardis, Mark Landon, CC BY 4.0. Bottom right: an aqueduct water tower at Laodicea, crusted with lime, Rjdeadly, CC BY SA 4.0.

SARDIS

Once the capital of rich King Croesus, on a hill everyone thought could not be taken. It fell by surprise at night twice, to Cyrus in 546 BC and to Antiochus III in 214 BC, because no one was watching. Jesus says: wake up, or I will come like a thief, 3:2 to 3. Its huge temple of Artemis was never finished.

PHILADELPHIA

A small city shaken by a great earthquake in AD 17 and by years of aftershocks, so people lived outside in the fields. Jesus promises to make the overcomer a pillar in God's temple who will never go out again, 3:12. The city took a new name to honor the emperor; Jesus promises a new name, 3:12. The pillars shown are from a church built centuries later, probably in the 500s.

LAODICEA

A rich banking city famous for black wool and an eye salve. When an earthquake hit in AD 60, it refused Rome's

MIRACLES JESUS SPEAKING

help and rebuilt itself, Tacitus says. Its water came by aqueduct from springs miles away, and the towers that carried it are crusted with lime. Many think lukewarm means its water was neither hot like the healing springs of nearby Hierapolis nor cold like the water of Colossae: just useless. Jesus tells the rich city it is poor, blind and naked, and offers gold, white clothes and eye salve, 3:17 to 18.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE RAPTURE AND 3:10

Kept From the Hour of Trial

REVELATION 3:10 · 4:1 · JOHN 17:15 · 1 THESSALONIANS 4:16 TO 17

WHAT JESUS SAID

Because you have kept My command to persevere, I will also keep you from the hour of trial that is about to come upon the whole world, 3:10. Christians read this verse very differently.

THE BIG DEBATE

The full history of the rapture views, from the early church to John Nelson Darby, is in the 1 Thessalonians pages, p.1918. Here is how each view reads this verse.

PRE TRIBULATION

Keep you from means taken out before the trouble starts. In 4:1 John hears come up here, and the word church does not appear again until 22:16. Best case: the promise is to be kept from the hour itself, not just from harm in it.

MID TRIBULATION AND PRE WRATH

Believers go through the first part of the trouble but are taken before God's wrath is poured out, 6:17 and 1 Thessalonians 5:9. Best case: it separates persecution from God's wrath.

POST TRIBULATION

Keep you from means keep you safe through it. Jesus prayed the same Greek words in John 17:15: not that You take them out of the world, but that You keep them from the evil one. Best case: the same phrase means protection, and the saints are on earth in 13:7 and 20:4.

A PROMISE TO ONE CHURCH

Many scholars say this was first a promise to Philadelphia about a coming trial in their own day. Best case: it is written to that church by name.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus will come back for His people. Believers are not appointed to God's wrath. Stay faithful and ready, 3:11.

4

CHAPTER 4 IN 30 SECONDS

A door opens in heaven, and John sees a throne with a rainbow around it, twenty four elders and four living creatures who never stop saying holy, holy, holy. Everyone falls down before the Creator.

THE THRONE IN HEAVEN

1 After this I looked and saw a door standing open in heaven. And the voice I had previously heard speak to me like a trumpet was saying, "Come up here, and I will show you what must happen after these things."

2 At once I was in the Spirit, and I saw a throne standing in heaven, with someone seated on it. 3 The One seated there looked like jasper and carnelian, and a rainbow that gleamed like an emerald encircled the throne. 4 Surrounding the throne were twenty-four other thrones, and on these thrones sat twenty-four elders dressed in white, with golden crowns on their heads.

WORSHIP OF THE CREATOR

5 From the throne came flashes of lightning, rumblings, and peals of thunder. Before the throne burned seven torches of fire. These are the seven spirits of God. 6 And before the throne was something like a sea of glass, as clear as crystal. In the center, around the throne, were four living creatures, covered with eyes in front and back. 7 The first living creature was like a lion, the second like a calf, the third had a face like a man, and the fourth was like an eagle in flight. 8 And each of the four living

- **REV 4:2 [MIRACLE]** John sees a throne in heaven
- **REV 4:4 [NOTE]** TWENTY FOUR ELDERS. Maybe the twelve tribes and twelve apostles, the whole people of God, 21:12 to 14, or a council of angels.
- **REV 4:6 [NOTE]** FOUR LIVING CREATURES. Like the creatures of Ezekiel 1 and the seraphim of Isaiah 6. Irenaeus matched the four faces to the four Gospels.
- **REV 4:7 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 1:10 p.1250

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | MIRACLES | *OLD TESTAMENT QUOTED IN THE NEW* | NOTABLE

creatures had six wings and was covered with eyes all around and within. Day and night they never stop saying:

"Holy, Holy, Holy,
is the Lord God Almighty,
who was and is and is to come!"

9 And whenever the living creatures give glory, honor, and thanks to the One seated on the throne, who lives forever and ever, 10 the twenty-four elders fall down before the One seated on the throne, and they worship Him who lives forever and ever. They cast their crowns before the throne, saying:

11 "Worthy are You, our Lord and God,
to receive glory and honor and power,
for You created all things;
by Your will they exist and were created."

5

CHAPTER 5 IN 30 SECONDS

Nobody is worthy to open the sealed scroll, and John cries. Then an elder says look, the Lion of Judah has won. John looks and sees a Lamb who had been slain. All heaven and earth break out singing Worthy is the Lamb.

THE LAMB TAKES THE SCROLL

1 Then I saw a scroll in the right hand of the One seated on the throne. It had writing on both sides and was sealed with seven seals. 2 And I saw a mighty angel proclaiming in a loud voice, "Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?"

3 But no one in heaven or on earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or look inside it. 4 And I began to weep bitterly, because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or look inside it.

5 Then one of the elders said to me, "Do not weep! Behold, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has triumphed to open the scroll and its seven seals."

6 Then I saw a Lamb who appeared to have been slain, standing in the center of the throne, encircled by the four living creatures and the elders. The Lamb had seven horns and seven eyes, which represent the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth. 7 And He came and took the scroll from the right hand of the One seated on the throne.

8 When He had taken the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb. Each one had a harp, and they were holding golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints. 9 And they sang a new song:

"Worthy are You to take the scroll and
open its seals,
because You were slain,
and by Your blood You purchased for God
those from every tribe and tongue and
people and nation.
10 You have made them to be a kingdom
and priests to serve our God,
and they will reign upon the earth."

THE LAMB EXALTED

11 Then I looked, and I heard the voices of many angels encircling the throne, and the living creatures and the elders. And their number was myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands. 12 In a loud voice they were saying:

"Worthy is the Lamb who was slain,
to receive power and riches
and wisdom and strength
and honor and glory and blessing!"

- **REV 4:8 [MIRACLE]** Four living creatures cry holy, holy, holy
- **REV 4:8 [QUOTES]** Direct ← IS 6:3 p.1068
- **REV 4:11 [NOTABLE]** Heaven praises God first as the Creator.
- **REV 5:5 [FULFILLS]** Judah is a young lion ← GEN 49:9 p.114
- **REV 5:6 [FULFILLS]** Led as a lamb to the slaughter ← IS 53:7c p.1128
- **REV 5:6 [NOTE]** THE LAMB. John hears Lion, 5:5, and turns to see a Lamb that was slain. Jesus won by dying. Isaiah 53:7.
- **REV 5:8 [NOTABLE]** The definitive statement that incense in heaven's throne room = the prayers of God's people
- **REV 5:9 [NOTABLE]** The crowd in heaven looks like the whole world.
- **REV 5:9 [FULFILLS]** Led as a lamb to the slaughter ← IS 53:7c p.1128
- **REV 5:9 [NOTE]** TEXT. The oldest copies say You purchased for God those from every tribe and made them a kingdom, 5:10. The KJV says redeemed us and made us.
- **REV 5:10 [PROPHECY]** The redeemed from every nation will reign on the earth → STILL TO COME
- **REV 5:10 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 19:6 p.147
- **REV 5:11 [MIRACLE]** Countless angels sing Worthy is the Lamb

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW END TIMES PROPHECIES

13 And I heard every creature in heaven
and on earth and under the earth and in
the sea, and all that is in them, saying:

"To Him who sits on the throne
and to the Lamb
be praise and honor and glory and power
forever and ever!"

14 And the four living creatures said,
"Amen," and the elders fell down and wor-
shiped.

6

CHAPTER 6 IN 30 SECONDS

The Lamb opens six seals. Four horses ride out: conquest, war, famine and death. Martyrs under the altar ask how long. Then the sky rolls up like a scroll, and the powerful of the earth hide in caves, begging the mountains to fall on them.

THE FIRST SEAL: THE WHITE HORSE

1 Then I watched as the Lamb opened one
of the seven seals, and I heard one of the
four living creatures say in a voice like
thunder, "Come!"

2 So I looked and saw a white horse, and
its rider held a bow. And he was given a
crown, and he rode out to overcome and
conquer.

THE SECOND SEAL: WAR

3 And when the Lamb opened the second
seal, I heard the second living creature
say, "Come!"

4 Then another horse went forth. It was
bright red, and its rider was granted per-
mission to take away peace from the
earth and to make men slay one another.
And he was given a great sword.

THE THIRD SEAL: FAMINE

5 And when the Lamb opened the third
seal, I heard the third living creature say,
"Come!"

Then I looked and saw a black horse, and
its rider held in his hand a pair of scales. 6
And I heard what sounded like a voice
from among the four living creatures, say-
ing, "A quart of wheat for a day's wage,
and three quarts of barley for a day's
wage, and do not harm the oil and wine."

THE FOURTH SEAL: DEATH

7 And when the Lamb opened the fourth
seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living
creature say, "Come!"

8 Then I looked and saw a pale green
horse. Its rider's name was Death, and
Hades followed close behind. And they
were given authority over a fourth of the
earth, to kill by sword, by famine, by
plague, and by the beasts of the earth.

THE FIFTH SEAL: THE MARTYRS

9 And when the Lamb opened the fifth
seal, I saw under the altar the souls of
those who had been slain for the word of
God and for the testimony they had up-
held. 10 And they cried out in a loud voice,
"How long, O Lord, holy and true, until
You judge those who dwell upon the earth
and avenge our blood?"

11 Then each of them was given a white
robe and told to rest a little while longer
until the full number of their fellow ser-
vants, their brothers, were killed, just as
they had been killed.

THE SIXTH SEAL: TERROR

12 And I watched as the Lamb opened the
sixth seal, and there was a great earth-
quake, and the sun became black like
sackcloth of goat hair, and the whole
moon turned blood red, 13 and the stars of
the sky fell to the earth like unripe figs
dropping from a tree shaken by a great
wind. 14 The sky receded like a scroll being
rolled up, and every mountain and island
was moved from its place.

15 Then the kings of the earth, the nobles,
the commanders, the rich, the mighty, and
every slave and free man hid in the caves
and among the rocks of the mountains. 16
And they said to the mountains and the
rocks, "Fall on us and hide us from the
face of the One seated on the throne, and
from the wrath of the Lamb. 17 For the

- **REV 6:1 [PROPHECY]** Seal 1 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 6:2 [NOTE]** THE WHITE HORSE. Some see Christ, as in 19:11. Others see a false conqueror who copies Him. The other three horses bring war, famine and death.
- **REV 6:3 [PROPHECY]** Seal 2 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 6:5 [PROPHECY]** Seal 3 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 6:6 [NOTE]** A DAY'S WAGE. A whole day's pay, Matthew 20:2, for one quart of wheat means famine prices.
- **REV 6:7 [PROPHECY]** Seal 4 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 6:9 [PROPHECY]** Seal 5 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 6:12 [PROPHECY]** Seal 6 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 6:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 34:4 p.1101

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW END TIMES PROPHECIES

great day of Their wrath has come, and
who is able to withstand it?"

7

CHAPTER 7 IN 30 SECONDS

Four angels hold back the winds while 144,000 from the tribes of Israel get God's seal. Then John sees a crowd too big to count from every nation, in white robes, waving palm branches. God will wipe every tear from their eyes.

144,000 SEALED

1 After this I saw four angels standing at
the four corners of the earth, holding back
its four winds so that no wind would blow
on land or sea or on any tree. 2 And I saw
another angel ascending from the east,
with the seal of the living God. And he
called out in a loud voice to the four an-
gels who had been given power to harm
the land and the sea: 3 "Do not harm the
land or sea or trees until we have placed a
seal on the foreheads of the servants of
our God."

4 And I heard the number of those who
were sealed, 144,000 from all the tribes of
Israel:

5 From the tribe of Judah 12,000 were
sealed,
from the tribe of Reuben 12,000,
from the tribe of Gad 12,000,

6 from the tribe of Asher 12,000,
from the tribe of Naphtali 12,000,
from the tribe of Manasseh 12,000,

7 from the tribe of Simeon 12,000,
from the tribe of Levi 12,000,
from the tribe of Issachar 12,000,

8 from the tribe of Zebulun 12,000,
from the tribe of Joseph 12,000,
and from the tribe of Benjamin 12,000.

- **REV 6:16 [FULFILLS]** People would cry to the mountains, Cover us, and to the hills, Fall on us ← HOS 10:8 · MEDIUM p.1368
- **REV 7:1 [PROPHECY]** 144,000 sealed from the 12 tribes of Israel (12,000 from each tribe) → STILL TO COME
- **REV 7:3 [FULFILLS]** God's faithful marked on the forehead before judgment fell ← EZK 9:4 · MEDIUM p.1259
- **REV 7:4 [NOTE]** 144,000. See Who Are the 144,000?
- **REV 7:5 [NOTE]** THE TRIBES. Dan and Ephraim are missing, and Joseph and Levi are added. Irenaeus thought Dan was left out because the Antichrist would come from it; see What Irenaeus Wrote.

PRAISE FROM THE GREAT MULTITUDE

9 After this I looked and saw a multitude
too large to count, from every nation and
tribe and people and tongue, standing be-
fore the throne and before the Lamb. They
were wearing white robes and holding
palm branches in their hands. 10 And they
cried out in a loud voice:

"Salvation to our God,
who sits on the throne,
and to the Lamb!"

11 And all the angels stood around the
throne and around the elders and the four
living creatures. And they fell facedown
before the throne and worshiped God, 12
saying, "Amen! Blessing and glory and
wisdom and thanks and honor and power
and strength be to our God forever and
ever! Amen."

13 Then one of the elders addressed me:
"These in white robes," he asked, "who
are they, and where have they come
from?"

14 "Sir," I answered, "you know."

So he replied, "These are the ones who
have come out of the great tribulation;
they have washed their robes and made
them white in the blood of the Lamb. 15 For
this reason,

they are before the throne of God
and serve Him day and night in His tem-
ple;
and the One seated on the throne
will spread His tabernacle over them.
16 'Never again will they hunger,
and never will they thirst;
nor will the sun beat down upon them,
nor any scorching heat.'
17 For the Lamb in the center of the throne
will be their shepherd.
'He will lead them to springs of living wa-
ter,'
and 'God will wipe away every tear from
their eyes.'"

- **REV 7:9 [PROPHECY]** A great multitude which no one could number, of all nations, tribes, peoples, and tongues, standing before the throne... these are the ones who come out of the great tribulation → STILL TO COME
- **REV 7:14 [PROPHECY]** Those who come out of the great tribulation will never hunger again and God will wipe away every tear → STILL TO COME
- **REV 7:16 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 49:10; 25:8 p.1123

END TIMES PROPHECIES NOTABLE

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO ARE THE 144,000?

Sealed From Every Tribe

REVELATION 7:1 TO 17 · 14:1 TO 5 · EZEKIEL 9:4 · ROMANS 2:28 TO 29 · GALATIANS 6:16

WHAT JOHN SAW

God's servants are sealed on their foreheads, 12,000 from each of twelve tribes of Israel, 7:4 to 8. Then John looks and sees a great multitude no one could count from every nation, 7:9. In 14:1 to 5 the 144,000 stand with the Lamb on Mount Zion, blameless and following Him wherever He goes.

A STRANGE LIST

Dan and Ephraim are missing, and Levi and Joseph are listed. Irenaeus, about AD 180, thought Dan was left out because the Antichrist would come from it. Judah, Jesus' tribe, comes first.

JEWISH BELIEVERS

Real people from the tribes of Israel who turn to Christ in the last days and are protected, Romans 11:26. Held by most dispensational teachers. Best case: John names each tribe and counts them, then describes a different, uncountable crowd from all nations.

THE WHOLE CHURCH

A picture of all God's people, Jew and Gentile, as the true Israel: 12 times 12 times 1,000, complete. John hears a number and then sees a crowd, just as he hears Lion in 5:5 and sees a Lamb in 5:6. Best case: Galatians 6:16 and Romans 2:28 to 29.

THE MARTYRS

A special group of faithful witnesses, the firstfruits, 14:4, often linked with those who die for Christ.

OTHER GROUPS

Jehovah's Witnesses teach that only 144,000 anointed believers go to heaven while others live on earth. Many early Seventh day Adventists linked them to the faithful alive at Christ's return. Most churches say the book does not limit heaven to that number, since the multitude in 7:9 cannot be counted.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

God knows and protects His own. He keeps His promises to Israel. And heaven will be full of people from every nation, tribe, people and tongue.

8

CHAPTER 8 IN 30 SECONDS

The seventh seal brings silence in heaven for half an hour. An angel offers incense with the prayers of the saints. Then four trumpets: hail and fire, a burning mountain in the sea, a falling star called Wormwood, and a third of the sky goes dark.

THE SEVENTH SEAL

1 When the Lamb opened the seventh seal,
there was silence in heaven for about half an hour.
2 And I saw the seven angels who
stand before God, and they were given
seven trumpets.

3 Then another angel, who had a golden
censer, came and stood at the altar. He
was given much incense to offer, along
with the prayers of all the saints, on the
golden altar before the throne.
4 And the
smoke of the incense, together with the
prayers of the saints, rose up before God
from the hand of the angel.

5 Then the angel took the censer, filled it
with fire from the altar, and hurled it to the
earth; and there were peals of thunder,
rumblings, flashes of lightning, and an
earthquake.

THE FIRST FOUR TRUMPETS

6 And the seven angels with the seven
trumpets prepared to sound them.

7 Then the first angel sounded his trumpet,
and hail and fire mixed with blood were
hurled down upon the earth. A third of the
earth was burned up, along with a third of
the trees and all the green grass.

8 Then the second angel sounded his
trumpet, and something like a great
mountain burning with fire was thrown
into the sea. A third of the sea turned to
blood,
9 a third of the living creatures in
the sea died, and a third of the ships were
destroyed.

- **REV 8:1 [PROPHECY]** Seal 7 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 8:3 [NOTABLE]** The angel offers incense WITH the prayers of the saints; smoke ascends before God; imagery of prayer-empowered heavenly action
- **REV 8:7 [PROPHECY]** Trumpet 1 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 8:8 [PROPHECY]** Trumpet 2 → STILL TO COME

PROPHETIC FORESHADOW END TIMES PROPHECIES

10 Then the third angel sounded his trumpet, and a great star burning like a torch
fell from heaven and landed on a third of
the rivers and on the springs of water. 11
The name of the star is Wormwood. A
third of the waters turned bitter like wormwood oil, and many people died from the
bitter waters.

12 Then the fourth angel sounded his trumpet, and a third of the sun and moon and
stars were struck. A third of the stars
were darkened, a third of the day was
without light, and a third of the night as
well.

13 And as I observed, I heard an eagle flying overhead, calling in a loud voice,
"Woe! Woe! Woe to those who dwell on
the earth, because of the trumpet blasts
about to be sounded by the remaining
three angels!"

9

CHAPTER 9 IN 30 SECONDS

Trumpet five opens the bottomless pit, and locusts with human faces and scorpion tails torment people for five months. Trumpet six releases a giant army from the Euphrates. Even after all that, people will not stop worshiping demons and idols.

THE FIFTH TRUMPET

1 Then the fifth angel sounded his trumpet,
and I saw a star that had fallen from
heaven to earth, and it was given the key
to the pit of the Abyss. 2 The star opened
the pit of the Abyss, and smoke rose out
of it like the smoke of a great furnace, and
the sun and the air were darkened by the
smoke from the pit.

3 And out of the smoke, locusts descended on the earth, and they were
given power like that of the scorpions of
the earth. 4 They were told not to harm the
grass of the earth or any plant or tree, but
only those who did not have the seal of
God on their foreheads. 5 The locusts
were not given power to kill them, but only
to torment them for five months, and their
torment was like the stinging of a scorpion. 6 In those days men will seek death
and will not find it; they will long to die,
but death will escape them.

7 And the locusts looked like horses prepared for battle, with something like
crowns of gold on their heads; and their
faces were like the faces of men. 8 They
had hair like that of women, and teeth like
those of lions. 9 They also had breastplates like breastplates of iron, and the
sound of their wings was like the roar of
many horses and chariots rushing into
battle. 10 They had tails with stingers like
scorpions, which had the power to injure
people for five months. 11 They were ruled
by a king, the angel of the Abyss. His
name in Hebrew is Abaddon, and in Greek
it is Apollyon.

12 The first woe has passed. Behold, two
woes are still to follow.

THE SIXTH TRUMPET

13 Then the sixth angel sounded his trumpet, and I heard a voice from the four
horns of the golden altar before God 14
saying to the sixth angel with the trumpet,
"Release the four angels who are bound
at the great river Euphrates."

15 So the four angels who had been prepared for this hour and day and month
and year were released to kill a third of
mankind. 16 And the number of mounted
troops was two hundred million; I heard
their number.

17 Now the horses and riders in my vision
looked like this: The riders had breastplates the colors of fire, sapphire, and sulfur. The heads of the horses were like the
heads of lions, and out of their mouths
proceeded fire, smoke, and sulfur. 18 A
third of mankind was killed by the three
plagues of fire, smoke, and sulfur that
proceeded from their mouths. 19 For the
power of the horses was in their mouths
and in their tails; indeed, their tails were

REV 8:10 [PROPHECY] Trumpet 3 → STILL TO COME
REV 8:11 [NOTE] WORMWOOD. A bitter plant, Jeremiah 9:15. The Ukrainian word chornobyl names a cousin of wormwood, so some linked this verse to the 1986 Chernobyl disaster.
REV 8:12 [PROPHECY] Trumpet 4 → STILL TO COME
REV 9:1 [PROPHECY] Trumpet 5 → STILL TO COME
REV 9:4 [FULFILLS] God's faithful marked on the forehead before judgment fell ← EZK 9:4 · MEDIUM p.1259

REV 9:11 [NOTE] ABADDON AND APOLLYON. Hebrew and Greek for Destruction and Destroyer, Job 26:6.
REV 9:13 [PROPHECY] Trumpet 6 → STILL TO COME

END TIMES PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC

like snakes, having heads with which to inflict harm.

20 Now the rest of mankind who were not killed by these plagues still did not repent of the works of their hands. They did not stop worshiping demons and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone, and wood, which cannot see or hear or walk. 21 Furthermore, they did not repent of their murder, sorcery, sexual immorality, and theft.

10

CHAPTER 10 IN 30 SECONDS

A huge angel stands with one foot on the sea and one on the land and shouts like a lion. John is told to eat a little scroll. It tastes sweet as honey, then turns his stomach sour.

THE ANGEL AND THE SMALL SCROLL // EZEKIEL 3:1–15

1 Then I saw another mighty angel coming down from heaven, wrapped in a cloud, with a rainbow above his head. His face was like the sun, and his legs were like pillars of fire. 2 He held in his hand a small scroll, which lay open. He placed his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land. 3 Then he cried out in a loud voice like the roar of a lion. And when he cried out, the seven thunders sounded their voices.

4 When the seven thunders had spoken, I was about to put it in writing. But I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Seal up what the seven thunders have said, and do not write it down."

5 Then the angel I had seen standing on the sea and on the land lifted up his right hand to heaven. 6 And he swore by Him who lives forever and ever, who created heaven and everything in it, the earth and everything in it, and the sea and everything in it: "There will be no more delay! 7 But in the days of the voice of the seventh angel, when he begins to sound his trumpet, the mystery of God will be fulfilled, just as He proclaimed to His servants the prophets."

8 Then the voice that I had heard from heaven spoke to me again, saying, "Go, take the small scroll that lies open in the hand of the angel standing on the sea and on the land."

9 And I went to the angel and said, "Give me the small scroll."

"Take it and eat it," he said. "It will make your stomach bitter, but in your mouth it will be as sweet as honey."

10 So I took the small scroll from the angel's hand and ate it, and it was as sweet as honey in my mouth. But when I had eaten it, my stomach turned bitter.

11 And they told me, "You must prophesy again about many peoples and nations and tongues and kings."

11

CHAPTER 11 IN 30 SECONDS

Two witnesses preach for 1,260 days with power to stop the rain. The beast kills them, and the world throws a party over their bodies. After three and a half days God raises them up. The seventh trumpet sounds: the kingdom of the world now belongs to our Lord and His Christ.

THE TWO WITNESSES

1 Then I was given a measuring rod like a staff and was told, "Go and measure the temple of God and the altar, and count the number of worshipers there. 2 But exclude the courtyard outside the temple. Do not measure it, because it has been given over to the nations, and they will trample the holy city for 42 months. 3 And I will empower my two witnesses, and they will prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth."

- **REV 9:20 [DEMONIC]** Survivors keep worshiping demons and idols of gold, silver, and stone
- **REV 9:21 [DEMONIC]** Sorcerers, idolaters, and liars — outside the holy city
- **REV 9:21 [NOTE]** SORCERIES. The Greek pharmakeia meant potions and drugs used in magic and witchcraft. Galatians 5:20 lists it with idolatry.
- **REV 10:1 [MIRACLE]** A mighty angel robed in a cloud, one foot on the sea and one on the land
- **REV 10:5 [PROPHECY]** The mystery of God shall be finished when the seventh angel begins to sound → STILL TO COME
- **REV 10:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 12:7 p.1352
- **REV 10:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 2:8-3:3 p.1252
- **REV 11:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 40:3; ZECH 2:1-2 p.1307
- **REV 11:2 [PROPHECY]** The nations will trample the holy city for 42 months → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **REV 11:3 [PROPHECY]** Two witnesses will prophesy 1,260 days and then the beast will kill them → STILL TO COME

END TIMES PROPHECIES

4 These witnesses are the two olive trees
and the two lampstands that stand before
the Lord of the earth. 5 If anyone wants to
harm them, fire proceeds from their
mouths and devours their enemies. In this
way, anyone who wants to harm them
must be killed. 6 These witnesses have
power to shut the sky so that no rain will
fall during the days of their prophecy, and
power to turn the waters into blood and to
strike the earth with every kind of plague
as often as they wish.

THE WITNESSES KILLED AND RAISED

7 When the two witnesses have finished
their testimony, the beast that comes up
from the Abyss will wage war with them,
and will overpower and kill them. 8 Their
bodies will lie in the street of the great
city—figuratively called Sodom and
Egypt—where their Lord was also cruci-
fied. 9 For three and a half days all peoples
and tribes and tongues and nations will
view their bodies and will not permit them
to be laid in a tomb. 10 And those who
dwell on the earth will gloat over them and
celebrate and send one another gifts, be-
cause these two prophets had tormented
them.

11 But after the three and a half days, the
breath of life from God entered the two
witnesses, and they stood on their feet,
and great fear fell upon those who saw
them. 12 And the witnesses heard a loud
voice from heaven saying, "Come up
here." And they went up to heaven in a
cloud as their enemies watched them.

13 And in that hour there was a great earth-
quake, and a tenth of the city collapsed.
Seven thousand were killed in the quake,
and the rest were terrified and gave glory
to the God of heaven.

14 The second woe has passed. Behold,
the third woe is coming shortly.

THE SEVENTH TRUMPET

15 Then the seventh angel sounded his
trumpet, and loud voices called out in
heaven:

"The kingdom of the world
has become the kingdom of our Lord
and of His Christ,
and He will reign forever and ever."

16 And the twenty-four elders who sit on
their thrones before God fell on their faces
and worshiped God, 17 saying:

"We give thanks to You, O Lord God
Almighty,
the One who is and who was,
because You have taken Your great power
and have begun to reign.
18 The nations were enraged,
and Your wrath has come.
The time has come to judge the dead
and to reward Your servants the
prophets,
as well as the saints and those who fear
Your name,
both small and great—
and to destroy those who destroy the
earth."

19 Then the temple of God in heaven was
opened, and the ark of His covenant ap-
peared in His temple. And there were
flashes of lightning, rumblings, peals of
thunder, an earthquake, and a great hail-
storm.

12

CHAPTER 12 IN 30 SECONDS

A woman clothed with the sun gives birth to a son who will rule the nations. A red dragon tries to eat the baby, but the child is caught up to God. Michael throws the dragon out of heaven, and the furious dragon goes after the woman's other children.

- **REV 11:3 [NOTE]** TWO WITNESSES. Their signs match Moses and Elijah, 11:6. Some early writers named Enoch and Elijah, who never died. Others read them as the church's witness.
- **REV 11:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← ZECH 4:3, 11-14 p.1492
- **REV 11:6 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1KI 17:1; EX 7:19-20 p.580
- **REV 11:7 [PROPHECY]** Two witnesses will prophesy 1,260 days and then the beast will kill them → STILL TO COME
- **REV 11:8 [NOTE]** THE GREAT CITY. Where their Lord was crucified, so Jerusalem, here called Sodom and Egypt.
- **REV 11:11 [PROPHECY]** After three and a half days the two witnesses will rise and go up to heaven → STILL TO COME
- **REV 11:11 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 37:5, 10 p.1301
- **REV 11:15 [PROPHECY]** Trumpet 7 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 11:17 [NOTE]** TEXT. The KJV adds and art to come. The oldest copies leave it out, because by now He has come.

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | DEMONIC

THE WOMAN AND THE DRAGON

1 And a great sign appeared in heaven: a
woman clothed in the sun, with the moon
under her feet and a crown of twelve stars
on her head. 2 She was pregnant and cry-
ing out in the pain and agony of giving
birth.

3 Then another sign appeared in heaven: a
huge red dragon with seven heads, ten
horns, and seven royal crowns on his
heads. 4 His tail swept a third of the stars
from the sky, hurling them to the earth.
And the dragon stood before the woman
who was about to give birth, ready to de-
vour her child as soon as she gave birth.

5 And she gave birth to a son, a male child,
who will rule all the nations with an iron
scepter. And her child was caught up to
God and to His throne. 6 And the woman
fled into the wilderness, where God had
prepared a place for her to be nourished
for 1,260 days.

THE WAR IN HEAVEN

7 Then a war broke out in heaven: Michael
and his angels fought against the dragon,
and the dragon and his angels fought
back. 8 But the dragon was not strong
enough, and no longer was any place
found in heaven for him and his angels. 9
And the great dragon was hurled
down—that ancient serpent called the
devil and Satan, the deceiver of the whole
world. He was hurled to the earth, and his
angels with him.

10 And I heard a loud voice in heaven say-
ing:

"Now have come the salvation and the
power
and the kingdom of our God,
and the authority of His Christ.
For the accuser of our brothers has been
thrown down—
he who accuses them day and night be-
fore our God.
11 They have conquered him by the blood
of the Lamb
and by the word of their testimony.
And they did not love their lives
so as to shy away from death.
12 Therefore rejoice, O heavens,
and you who dwell in them!
But woe to the earth and the sea;
with great fury the devil has come down
to you,
knowing he has only a short time."

THE WOMAN PERSECUTED

13 And when the dragon saw that he had
been thrown to the earth, he pursued the
woman who had given birth to the male
child. 14 But the woman was given two
wings of a great eagle to fly from the
presence of the serpent to her place in
the wilderness, where she was nourished
for a time, and times, and half a time.

15 Then from his mouth the serpent
spewed water like a river to overtake the
woman and sweep her away in the tor-
rent. 16 But the earth helped the woman
and opened its mouth to swallow up the
river that the dragon had poured from his
mouth. 17 And the dragon was enraged at
the woman and went to make war with the
rest of her children, who keep the com-
mandments of God and hold to the testi-
mony of Jesus.

And the dragon stood on the shore of the
sea.

- **REV 12:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 37:9 p.97
- **REV 12:1 [NOTE]** THE WOMAN. Most read her as God's people, Israel and the church, who brought forth the Messiah. Catholics and Orthodox also see Mary.
- **REV 12:5 [FULFILLS]** 'The rod of Your strength out of Zion' ← PS 110:2 p.960
- **REV 12:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 2:9 p.884
- **REV 12:6 [PROPHECY]** The woman will be protected in the wilderness for 1,260 days → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **REV 12:7 [PROPHECY]** War broke out in heaven: Michael and his angels fought with the dragon; and the dragon and his angels fought, but they did not prevail... the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old → STILL TO COME · MEDIUM
- **REV 12:7 [MIRACLE]** War in heaven — Michael and his angels vs the dragon
- **REV 12:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 3:1 p.50
- **REV 12:9 [NOTE]** THE ANCIENT SERPENT. The devil is the snake of Genesis 3, finally named and thrown down.

- **REV 12:13 [DEMONIC]** The dragon hunts the woman and makes war on her children

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC

13

CHAPTER 13 IN 30 SECONDS

A beast rises from the sea, and the whole world worships it. A second beast from the earth does fake miracles and makes everyone take a mark on the right hand or forehead to buy or sell. Its number is 666.

THE BEAST FROM THE SEA // DANIEL 7:1–8

1 Then I saw a beast with ten horns and
seven heads rising out of the sea. There
were ten royal crowns on its horns and
blasphemous names on its heads. 2 The
beast I saw was like a leopard, with the
feet of a bear and the mouth of a lion. And
the dragon gave the beast his power and
his throne and great authority.

3 One of the heads of the beast appeared
to have been mortally wounded. But the
mortal wound was healed, and the whole
world marveled and followed the beast. 4
They worshiped the dragon who had
given authority to the beast, and they
worshiped the beast, saying, "Who is like
the beast, and who can wage war against
it?"

5 The beast was given a mouth to speak
arrogant and blasphemous words, and
authority to act for 42 months. 6 And the
beast opened its mouth to speak blas-
phemies against God and to slander His
name and His tabernacle—those who
dwell in heaven.

7 Then the beast was permitted to wage
war against the saints and to conquer
them, and it was given authority over
every tribe and people and tongue and
nation. 8 And all who dwell on the earth
will worship the beast—all whose names
have not been written from the foundation
of the world in the Book of Life belonging
to the Lamb who was slain.

9 He who has an ear, let him hear:

10 "If anyone is destined for captivity,
into captivity he will go;
if anyone is to die by the sword,
by the sword he must be killed."

Here is a call for the perseverance and
faith of the saints.

THE BEAST FROM THE EARTH

11 Then I saw another beast rising out of
the earth. This beast had two horns like a
lamb, but spoke like a dragon. 12 And this
beast exercised all the authority of the
first beast and caused the earth and those
who dwell in it to worship the first beast,
whose mortal wound had been healed.

13 And the second beast performed great
signs, even causing fire from heaven to
come down to earth in the presence of
the people. 14 Because of the signs it was
given to perform on behalf of the first
beast, it deceived those who dwell on the
earth, telling them to make an image to
the beast that had been wounded by the
sword and yet had lived. 15 The second
beast was permitted to give breath to the
image of the first beast, so that the image
could speak and cause all who refused to
worship it to be killed.

THE MARK OF THE BEAST

16 And the second beast required all peo-
ple, small and great, rich and poor, free
and slave, to receive a mark on their right
hand or on their forehead, 17 so that no
one could buy or sell unless he had the
mark—the name of the beast or the num-
ber of its name.

18 Here is a call for wisdom: Let the one
who has insight calculate the number of
the beast, for it is the number of a man,
and that number is 666.

- **REV 13:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:3-7 p.1341
- **REV 13:1 [NOTE]** THE BEAST. Its parts come from Daniel 7's four beasts. Many see Rome; many see a final world ruler; many see both.
- **REV 13:4 [DEMONIC]** The world worships the dragon and the beast
- **REV 13:5 [PROPHECY]** The beast will speak blasphemies, rule for 42 months, and make war on the saints → STILL TO COME
- **REV 13:8 [DEMONIC]** Everyone not in the Book of Life worships the beast
- **REV 13:12 [DEMONIC]** The second beast makes an image of the beast that speaks
- **REV 13:16 [PROPHECY]** The mark of the beast → STILL TO COME
- **REV 13:18 [NOTE]** 666. See The Number of the Beast and What Irenaeus Wrote. TEXT. Papyrus 115 and Codex Ephraemi read 616.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE NUMBER OF THE BEAST

666, or 616?

REVELATION 13:16 TO 18 · 14:1 · 15:2 · DEUTERONOMY 6:8

WHAT JOHN SAID

Let the one who has insight calculate the number of the beast, for it is the number of a man, and his number is 666, 13:18. No one can buy or sell without the mark on the right hand or forehead, 13:17.

NUMBERS AS LETTERS

Greek and Hebrew used letters as numbers, so every name had a number. People played with this. A wall in Pompeii says: I love her whose number is 545.

NERO CAESAR

Written in Hebrew letters, Nero Caesar adds up to 666. Spelled the Latin way, without the last n, it adds up to 616. That may explain why some old copies, like Papyrus 115, say 616. Nero burned Christians alive in AD 64, and many believed he would come back, like a beast that was and is not, 17:8.

IRENAEUS

About AD 180 Irenaeus knew the 616 copies and called them a copying mistake. He listed names that make 666, like Lateinos, a Roman, and Teitan, but refused to choose. See What Irenaeus Wrote.

A FUTURE RULER

Many say it is the name of a final world ruler, still future. Over the years people have named popes, Napoleon, Hitler and others, and every guess has passed away.

THE NUMBER OF MAN

Some read it as a symbol: six falls short of seven, God's perfect number, three times over. Man trying to be God and failing.

THE MARK

God's people are sealed on their foreheads with His name, 7:3 and 14:1, like Israel binding God's word on hand and forehead, Deuteronomy 6:8. The beast copies God. Many read the mark as loyalty shown in what you think and do; others expect a literal mark. Barcodes, chips and vaccines have all been called the mark; none has fit.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Do not set dates or name names. Worship God alone, even when it costs you your living, and trust the Lamb.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT IRENAEUS WROTE

The Number of the Name

IRENAEUS, AGAINST HERESIES 5.30 · REVELATION 13:18

WHO IRENAEUS WAS

Bishop of Lyons in Gaul, about AD 180. As a boy he listened to Polycarp, who had known John. He wrote Against Heresies in five books; this chapter is the end of the fifth.

WHAT HE WROTE

Here is the whole of book 5, chapter 30, in the Ante Nicene Fathers translation, 1885. Words in [square brackets] were added by the translators. Decads means tens.

AGAINST HERESIES 5.30

Such, then, being the state of the case, and this number being found in all the most approved and ancient copies [of the Apocalypse], and those men who saw John face to face bearing their testimony [to it]; while reason also leads us to conclude that the number of the name of the beast, [if reckoned] according to the Greek mode of calculation by the [value of] the letters contained in it, will amount to six hundred and sixty and six; that is, the number of tens shall be equal to that of the hundreds, and the number of hundreds equal to that of the units (for that number which [expresses] the digit six being adhered to throughout, indicates the recapitulations of that apostasy, taken in its full extent, which occurred at the beginning, during the intermediate periods, and which shall take place at the end),—I do not know how it is that some have erred following the ordinary mode of speech, and have vitiated the middle number in the name, deducting the amount of fifty from it, so that instead of six decads they will have it that there is but one. [I am inclined to think that this occurred through the fault

of the copyists, as is wont to happen, since numbers also are expressed by letters; so that the Greek letter which expresses the number sixty was easily expanded into the letter Iota of the Greeks.] Others then received this reading without examination; some in their simplicity, and upon their own responsibility, making use of this number expressing one decad; while some, in their inexperience, have ventured to seek out a name which should contain the erroneous and spurious number. Now, as regards those who have done this in simplicity, and without evil intent, we are at liberty to assume that pardon will be granted them by God. But as for those who, for the sake of vainglory, lay it down for certain that names containing the spurious number are to be accepted, and affirm that this name, hit upon by themselves, is that of him who is to come; such persons shall not come forth without loss, because they have led into error both themselves and those who confided in them. Now, in the first place, it is loss to wander from the truth, and to imagine that as being the case which is not; then again, as there shall be no light punishment [inflicted] upon him who either adds or subtracts anything from the Scripture, under that such a person must necessarily fall. Moreover, another danger, by no means trifling, shall overtake those who falsely presume that they know the name of Antichrist. For if these men assume one [number], when this [Antichrist] shall come having another, they will be easily led away by him, as supposing him not to be the expected one, who must be guarded against. These men, therefore, ought to learn [what really is the state of the case], and go back to the true number of the name, that they be not reckoned among false prophets. But, knowing the sure number declared by Scripture, that is, six hundred sixty and six, let them await, in the first place, the division of the kingdom into ten; then, in the next place, when these kings are reigning, and beginning to set their affairs in order, and advance their kingdom, [let them learn] to acknowledge that he who shall come claiming the kingdom for himself, and shall terrify those men of whom we have been speaking, having a name containing the aforesaid number, is truly the abomination of desolation. This, too, the apostle affirms: "When they shall say, Peace and safety, then sudden destruction shall come upon them." And Jeremiah does not merely point out his sudden coming, but he even indicates the tribe from which he shall come, where he says, "We shall hear the voice of his swift horses from Dan; the whole earth shall be moved by the voice of the neighing of his galloping horses: he shall also come and devour the earth, and the fulness thereof, the city also, and they that dwell therein." This, too, is the reason that this tribe is not reckoned in the Apocalypse along with those which are saved. It is therefore more certain, and less hazardous, to await the fulfilment of the prophecy, than to be making surmises, and casting about for any names that may present themselves, inasmuch as many names can be found possessing the number mentioned; and the same question will, after all, remain unsolved. For if there are many names found possessing this number, it will be asked which among them shall the coming man bear. It is not through a want of names containing the number of that name that I say this, but on account of the fear of God, and zeal for the truth: for the name Evanthas (ΕΥΑΝΘΑΣ) contains the required number, but I make no allegation regarding it. Then also Lateinos (ΛΑΤΕΙΝΟΣ) has the number six hundred and sixty-six; and it is a very probable [solution], this being the name of the last kingdom [of the four seen by Daniel]. For the Latins are they who at present bear rule: I will not, however, make any boast over this [coincidence]. Teitan too, (ΤΕΙΤΑΝ, the first syllable being written with the two Greek vowels ε and ι, among all the names which are found among us, is rather worthy of credit. For it has in itself the predicted

number, and is composed of six letters, each syllable containing three letters; and [the word itself] is ancient, and removed from ordinary use; for among our kings we find none bearing this name Titan, nor have any of the idols which are worshipped in public among the Greeks and barbarians this appellation. Among many persons, too, this name is accounted divine, so that even the sun is termed "Titan" by those who do now possess [the rule]. This word, too, contains a certain outward appearance of vengeance, and of one inflicting merited punishment because he (Antichrist) pretends that he vindicates the oppressed. And besides this, it is an ancient name, one worthy of credit, of royal dignity, and still further, a name belonging to a tyrant. Inasmuch, then, as this name "Titan" has so much to recommend it, there is a strong degree of probability, that from among the many [names suggested], we infer, that perchance he who is to come shall be called "Titan." We will not, however, incur the risk of pronouncing positively as to the name of Antichrist; for if it were necessary that his name should be distinctly revealed in this present time, it would have been announced by him who beheld the apocalyptic vision. For that was seen no very long time since, but almost in our day, towards the end of Domitian's reign. But he indicates the number of the name now, that when this man comes we may avoid him, being aware who he is: the name, however, is suppressed, because it is not worthy of being proclaimed by the Holy Spirit. For if it had been declared by Him, he (Antichrist) might perhaps continue for a long period. But now as "he was, and is not, and shall ascend out of the abyss, and goes into perdition," as one who has no existence; so neither has his name been declared, for the name of that which does not exist is not proclaimed. But when this Antichrist shall have devastated all things in this world, he will reign for three years and six months, and sit in the temple at Jerusalem; and then the Lord will come from heaven in the clouds, in the glory of the Father, sending this man and those who follow him into the lake of fire; but bringing in for the righteous the times of the kingdom, that is, the rest, the hallowed seventh day; and restoring to Abraham the promised inheritance, in which kingdom the Lord declared, that "many coming from the east and from the west should sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob."

A Witness One Lifetime From John

REVELATION 13:18 · 7:5 TO 8 · 1 THESSALONIANS 5:3 · JEREMIAH 8:16

616 WAS ALREADY THERE

Only about ninety years after John wrote, some copies already said 616. Irenaeus trusted the oldest copies and the men who saw John face to face, and they said 666.

NO NAME

He gives three names that add up to 666 but will not pick one. His advice: wait and see, and do not guess.

THE DATE

His line that the vision was seen near the end of Domitian's reign is the main reason most scholars date Revelation about AD 95. Eusebius quotes it; see What Eusebius Wrote.

A THOUSAND YEARS

His last section shows he expected a real reign of Christ on earth after the Antichrist, the times of the kingdom, the rest, the hallowed seventh day. See The Millennium pages, p.2111.

14

CHAPTER 14 IN 30 SECONDS

The Lamb stands on Mount Zion with the 144,000. Three angels fly overhead with the gospel, the fall of Babylon and a warning against the mark. Then the earth is harvested like grain and grapes.

THE LAMB AND THE 144,000

1 Then I looked and saw the Lamb standing on Mount Zion, and with Him 144,000 who had His name and His Father's name written on their foreheads. 2 And I heard a sound from heaven like the roar of many

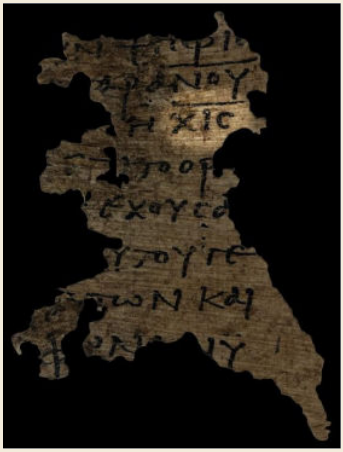
REV 14:1 [NOTE] THE 144,000 AGAIN. See Who Are the 144,000?

END TIMES PROPHECIES

FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH

PAPYRUS 115

REVELATION 13:18 · P.OXY. 4499



Papyrus 115, P.Oxy. 4499, detail with Revelation 13:18, late 200s AD. Sackler Library, Oxford. Public domain, via Wikimedia Commons.

WHAT IT IS
Twenty six scraps of a papyrus book of Revelation, found at Oxyrhynchus, Egypt, and published in 1999. This piece holds the end of 13:18.

HOW OLD IT IS
About AD 225 to 275, one of the oldest copies of Revelation.

WHAT IT SAYS
On the third line are three Greek letters with a line over them: chi, iota, sigma. A line over letters meant they were a number: 600, 10 and 6. So this copy says the number of the beast is 616.

WHY IT MATTERS
In 2005 new photographs made the faded letters easy to read, and the news spread around the world. It proves the 616 copies Irenaeus complained about were real. Codex Ephraemi, from the 400s, also has 616.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE
Most copies, including Papyrus 47 on the title page of this book, say 666, and most scholars think 666 is original.

waters and the loud rumbling of thunder.
And the sound I heard was like harpists
strumming their harps.

3 And they sang a new song before the
throne and before the four living creatures
and the elders. And no one could learn
the song except the 144,000 who had
been redeemed from the earth. 4 These
are the ones who have not been defiled
with women, for they are virgins. They fol-
low the Lamb wherever He goes. They
have been redeemed from among men as
firstfruits to God and to the Lamb. 5 And
no lie was found in their mouths; they are
blameless.

THE THREE ANGELS AND BABYLON'S FALL

6 Then I saw another angel flying over-
head, with the eternal gospel to proclaim
to those who dwell on the earth—to every
nation and tribe and tongue and people. 7
And he said in a loud voice, "Fear God
and give Him glory, because the hour of
His judgment has come. Worship the One
who made the heavens and the earth and
the sea and the springs of waters."

8 Then a second angel followed, saying,
"Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great, who
has made all the nations drink the wine of
the passion of her immorality."

9 And a third angel followed them, calling
out in a loud voice, "If anyone worships
the beast and its image and receives its
mark on his forehead or on his hand, 10 he
too will drink the wine of God's anger,
poured undiluted into the cup of His
wrath. And he will be tormented in fire and
sulfur in the presence of the holy angels
and of the Lamb. 11 And the smoke of their
torment rises forever and ever. Day and
night there is no rest for those who wor-
ship the beast and its image, or for any-
one who receives the mark of its name."

- **REV 14:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← ZEPH 3:13 p.1473
- **REV 14:6 [PROPHECY]** Angel flying in mid-heaven with the everlasting gospel to preach to those who dwell on the earth → STILL TO COME
- **REV 14:8 [PROPHECY]** Babylon is fallen, is fallen, that great city (announcement) → STILL TO COME
- **REV 14:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 21:9 p.1084
- **REV 14:9 [PROPHECY]** Anyone who worships the beast and receives his mark shall drink of the wine of the wrath of God → STILL TO COME
- **REV 14:9 [DEMONIC]** Anyone who worships the beast and its image will drink God's wrath

DEMONIC

12 Here is a call for the perseverance of the saints, who keep the commandments of God and the faith of Jesus.

13 And I heard a voice from heaven telling me to write, "Blessed are the dead—those who die in the Lord from this moment on."

"Yes," says the Spirit, "they will rest from their labors, for their deeds will follow them."

THE HARVEST OF THE EARTH

14 And I looked and saw a white cloud, and seated on the cloud was One like the Son of Man, with a golden crown on His head and a sharp sickle in His hand.

15 Then another angel came out of the temple, crying out in a loud voice to the One seated on the cloud, "Swing Your sickle and reap, because the time has come to harvest, for the crop of the earth is ripe." 16 So the One seated on the cloud swung His sickle over the earth, and the earth was harvested.

17 Then another angel came out of the temple in heaven, and he too had a sharp sickle. 18 Still another angel, with authority over the fire, came from the altar and called out in a loud voice to the angel with the sharp sickle, "Swing your sharp sickle and gather the clusters of grapes from the vine of the earth, because its grapes are ripe."

19 So the angel swung his sickle over the earth and gathered the grapes of the earth, and he threw them into the great winepress of God's wrath. 20 And the winepress was trodden outside the city, and the blood that flowed from it rose as high as the bridles of the horses for a distance of about 180 miles.

15

CHAPTER 15 IN 30 SECONDS

Those who beat the beast stand by a sea of glass and sing the song of Moses and the Lamb. Seven angels come out of the temple holding seven bowls full of God's wrath.

THE SONG OF MOSES AND THE LAMB // DEUTERONOMY 32:1–47

1 Then I saw another great and marvelous sign in heaven: seven angels with the seven final plagues, with which the wrath of God is completed.

2 And I saw something like a sea of glass mixed with fire, beside which stood those who had conquered the beast and its image and the number of its name. They were holding harps from God, 3 and they sang the song of God's servant Moses and of the Lamb:

"Great and wonderful are Your works,
O Lord God Almighty!
Just and true are Your ways,
O King of the nations!
4 Who will not fear You, O Lord,
and glorify Your name?
For You alone are holy.
All nations will come and worship before You,
for Your righteous acts have been revealed."

PREPARATION FOR JUDGMENT

5 After this I looked, and the temple—the tabernacle of the Testimony—was opened in heaven. 6 And out of the temple came the seven angels with the seven plagues, dressed in clean and bright linen and girded with golden sashes around their chests.

7 Then one of the four living creatures gave the seven angels seven golden bowls full of the wrath of God, who lives forever and ever. 8 And the temple was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from His power; and no one could en-

- **REV 14:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:13 p.1341
- **REV 14:19 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JOEL 3:13; IS 63:3 p.1384
- **REV 14:20 [NOTE]** 180 MILES. In the Greek, the number here is 1,600, a square of 40. A little more than the length of the land, from Dan to Beersheba.

- **REV 15:2 [DEMONIC]** Victors over the beast and its image stand by the sea
- **REV 15:3 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EX 15:1; PS 86:9; JER 10:7 p.142
- **REV 15:3 [NOTE]** THE SONG OF MOSES. Like Israel singing after crossing the sea, Exodus 15.

END TIMES PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

ter the temple until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.

16

CHAPTER 16 IN 30 SECONDS

Seven bowls pour out: sores, seas and rivers of blood, a scorching sun, darkness, the Euphrates dried up, and the biggest earthquake ever. Demon frogs gather the kings to a place called Armageddon.

THE FIRST SIX BOWLS OF WRATH

1 Then I heard a loud voice from the temple saying to the seven angels, "Go, pour out on the earth the seven bowls of God's wrath."

2 So the first angel went and poured out his bowl on the earth, and loathsome, malignant sores broke out on those who had the mark of the beast and worshiped its image.

3 And the second angel poured out his bowl into the sea, and it turned to blood like that of the dead, and every living thing in the sea died.

4 And the third angel poured out his bowl into the rivers and springs of water, and they turned to blood. 5 And I heard the angel of the waters say:

"Righteous are You, O Holy One,
who is and was,
because You have brought these judgments.
6 For they have spilled the blood of saints
and prophets,
and You have given them blood to drink,
as they deserve."

7 And I heard the altar reply:

"Yes, Lord God Almighty,
true and just are Your judgments."

8 Then the fourth angel poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was given power to scorch the people with fire. 9 And the people were scorched by intense heat, and they cursed the name of God, who had authority over these plagues. Yet they did not repent and give Him glory.

10 And the fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and its kingdom was plunged into darkness, and men began to gnaw their tongues in anguish 11 and curse the God of heaven for their pains and sores. Yet they did not repent of their deeds.

12 And the sixth angel poured out his bowl on the great river Euphrates, and its water was dried up to prepare the way for the kings of the East.

13 And I saw three unclean spirits that looked like frogs coming out of the mouths of the dragon, the beast, and the false prophet. 14 These are demonic spirits that perform signs and go out to all the kings of the earth, to assemble them for battle on the great day of God the Almighty.

15 "Behold, I am coming like a thief.
Blessed is the one who remains awake
and clothed, so that he will not go naked
and let his shame be exposed."

16 And they assembled the kings in the place that in Hebrew is called Armageddon.

THE SEVENTH BOWL OF WRATH

17 Then the seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air, and a loud voice came from the throne in the temple, saying, "It is done!"

18 And there were flashes of lightning, rumblings, peals of thunder, and a great earthquake the likes of which had not occurred since men were upon the earth—so mighty was the great quake. 19 The great city was split into three parts, and the cities of the nations collapsed. And God remembered Babylon the great

- **REV 15:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 1KI 8:10-11; IS 6:4; 2CH 5:13-14; 7:1-2 p.556
- **REV 16:2 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 1 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 16:2 [DEMONIC]** Sores strike those who worshiped the beast's image
- **REV 16:3 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 2 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 16:4 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 3 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 16:5 [NOTE]** TEXT. The oldest copies say who is and who was, the Holy One. The KJV says and shalt be, from a guess by Theodore Beza in 1598 that no Greek copy supports.
- **REV 16:8 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 4 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 16:10 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 5 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 16:12 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 6 → STILL TO COME
- **REV 16:13 [DEMONIC]** Three unclean spirits like frogs from the dragon, beast, and false prophet
- **REV 16:16 [NOTE]** ARMAGEDDON. Hebrew for Mount Megiddo. See Megiddo.
- **REV 16:17 [PROPHECY]** Bowl 7 → STILL TO COME

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC

and gave her the cup of the wine of the fury of His wrath.

20 Then every island fled, and no mountain could be found. 21 And great hailstones weighing almost a hundred pounds each rained down on them from above. And men cursed God for the plague of hail, because it was so horrendous.

DEBATED FIELD NOTES · ARCHAEOLOGY · CONFIDENCE: HIGH FOR THE SITE · WHAT JOHN MEANT IS DEBATED

MEGIDDO

REVELATION 16:16 · JUDGES 5:19 · 1 KINGS 9:15 · 2 KINGS 23:29 · ZECHARIAH 12:11



Tel Megiddo: the round Canaanite altar and temples from the Bronze Age to the Iron Age, Carole Raddato, CC BY SA 2.0.

WHAT IT IS

Armageddon is Hebrew Har Megiddo, the mountain of Megiddo. Megiddo is a real mound, a tel, built up from about twenty cities stacked one on top of the other, guarding a pass into the wide Jezreel Valley in northern Israel.

HOW OLD IT IS

People lived here for over 5,000 years. The round stone altar shown was built in the Early Bronze Age, about 4,500 to 5,000 years ago.

A FAMOUS BATTLEFIELD

Pharaoh Thutmose III won a great battle here about 1457 BC, and wrote it on his temple walls. Deborah and Barak fought the kings of Canaan by the waters of Megiddo, Judges 5:19. Solomon rebuilt it, 1 Kings 9:15. King Josiah was killed here, 2 Kings 23:29. In 1918 the British general Allenby fought here too.

WHAT JOHN MEANT

Some expect a literal last battle in this valley. Others note there is no mountain at Megiddo, only a mound, and read it as a picture of the final showdown between God and the nations, wherever it happens.

WHAT IT DOES NOT PROVE

The ruins show Megiddo was a real place of battles, not when or how the last battle will happen. And in the end there is no real fight: the rider on the white horse wins with a word, 19:21.

17

CHAPTER 17 IN 30 SECONDS

An angel shows John a woman named Babylon the Great, dressed in purple and gold, riding a scarlet beast and drunk on the blood of the saints. The beast and ten kings end up turning on her.

THE WOMAN ON THE BEAST

1 Then one of the seven angels with the seven bowls came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the punishment of the great prostitute, who sits on many waters. 2 The kings of the earth were immoral with her, and those who dwell on the earth were intoxicated with the wine of her immorality."

3 And the angel carried me away in the Spirit into a wilderness, where I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast that was covered with blasphemous names and had seven heads and ten horns. 4 The woman was dressed in purple and scarlet, and adorned with gold and precious stones and pearls. She held in her hand a golden cup full of abominations and the impurities of her sexual immorality. 5 And on her forehead a mysterious name was written:

BABYLON THE GREAT, THE MOTHER OF PROSTITUTES AND OF THE ABOMINATIONS OF THE EARTH.

THE MYSTERY EXPLAINED

6 I could see that the woman was drunk with the blood of the saints and witnesses

■ **REV 17:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JER 51:7, 13 p.1223
REV 17:3 [DEMONIC] Babylon, mother of prostitutes and of the abominations of the earth
■ **REV 17:5 [NOTE]** BABYLON THE GREAT. See Who Is Babylon?

END TIMES PROPHECIES THE HEART MIRACLES

for Jesus. And I was utterly amazed at the sight of her.

7 "Why are you so amazed?" said the angel. "I will tell you the mystery of the woman and of the beast that carries her, which has the seven heads and ten horns.

8 The beast that you saw—it was, and now is no more, but is about to come up out of the Abyss and go to its destruction. And those who dwell on the earth whose names were not written in the Book of Life from the foundation of the world will marvel when they see the beast that was, and is not, and yet will be.

9 This calls for a mind with wisdom. The seven heads are seven mountains on which the woman sits. 10 There are also seven kings. Five have fallen, one is, and the other has not yet come. But when he does come, he must remain for only a little while.

11 The beast that was, and now is not, is an eighth king, who belongs to the other seven and is going into destruction. 12 The ten horns you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but will receive one hour of authority as kings along with the beast. 13 These kings have one purpose: to yield their power and authority to the beast.

THE VICTORY OF THE LAMB

14 They will make war against the Lamb, and the Lamb will triumph over them, because He is Lord of lords and King of kings; and He will be accompanied by His called and chosen and faithful ones."

15 Then the angel said to me, "The waters you saw, where the prostitute was seated, are peoples and multitudes and nations and tongues. 16 And the ten horns and the beast that you saw will hate the prostitute. They will leave her desolate and naked, and they will eat her flesh and burn her with fire. 17 For God has put it into their hearts to carry out His purpose by uniting to give their kingdom to the beast, until the words of God are fulfilled. 18 And the woman you saw is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth."

18

CHAPTER 18 IN 30 SECONDS

Babylon falls in one hour. Kings, merchants and sailors stand far off and cry over all the money they lost. An angel throws a giant millstone into the sea: that is how Babylon will go down.

BABYLON IS FALLEN // ISAIAH 21:1–10

1 After this I saw another angel descending from heaven with great authority, and the earth was illuminated by his glory. 2 And he cried out in a mighty voice:

"Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great!
She has become a lair for demons
and a haunt for every unclean spirit,
every unclean bird,
and every detestable beast.
3 All the nations have drunk the wine
of the passion of her immorality.
The kings of the earth were immoral with her,
and the merchants of the earth have grown wealthy
from the extravagance of her luxury."

4 Then I heard another voice from heaven say:

"Come out of her, My people,
so that you will not share in her sins
or contract any of her plagues.
5 For her sins are piled up to heaven,
and God has remembered her iniquities.
6 Give back to her as she has done to others;
pay her back double for what she has done;
mix her a double portion in her own cup.
7 As much as she has glorified herself and lived in luxury,
give her the same measure of torment and grief.

- **REV 17:9 [NOTE]** SEVEN HILLS. Rome was famous as the city on seven hills.
- **REV 17:14 [PROPHECY]** The beast and ten kings will make war on the Lamb, and the Lamb will conquer → STILL TO COME
- **REV 17:17 [HEART]** God put it into the hearts of the ten kings to carry out His purpose.
- **REV 18:1 [MIRACLE]** An angel with great authority lights up the earth with his glory
- **REV 18:2 [PROPHECY]** Babylon the great will fall and be burned in one day → STILL TO COME
- **REV 18:2 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 21:9 p.1084
- **REV 18:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JER 51:45; IS 52:11 p.1226

END TIMES PROPHECIES THE HEART DEMONIC

In her heart she says, 'I sit as queen;
I am not a widow and will never see grief.'
8 Therefore her plagues will come in one day—
death and grief and famine—
and she will be consumed by fire,
for mighty is the Lord God who judges her."

LAMENT OVER BABYLON

9 Then the kings of the earth who committed sexual immorality and lived in luxury with her will weep and wail at the sight of the smoke rising from the fire that consumes her. 10 In fear of her torment, they will stand at a distance and cry out:

"Woe, woe to the great city,
the mighty city of Babylon!
For in a single hour
your judgment has come."

11 And the merchants of the earth will weep and mourn over her, because there is no one left to buy their cargo— 12 cargo of gold, silver, precious stones, and pearls; of fine linen, purple, silk, and scarlet; of all kinds of citron wood and every article of ivory, precious wood, bronze, iron, and marble; 13 of cinnamon, spice, incense, myrrh, and frankincense; of wine, olive oil, fine flour, and wheat; of cattle, sheep, horses, and carriages; of bodies and souls of slaves. 14 And they will say:

"The fruit of your soul's desire
has departed from you;
all your luxury and splendor have vanished,
never to be seen again."

15 The merchants who sold these things and gained their wealth from her will stand at a distance, in fear of her torment. They will weep and mourn, 16 saying:

"Woe, woe to the great city,
clothed in fine linen and purple and scarlet,
adorned with gold and precious stones and pearls!
17 For in a single hour
such fabulous wealth has been destroyed!"

Every shipmaster, passenger, and sailor, and all who make their living from the sea, will stand at a distance 18 and cry out at the sight of the smoke rising from the fire that consumes her. "What city was ever like this great city?" they will exclaim.

19 Then they will throw dust on their heads as they weep and mourn and cry out:

"Woe, woe to the great city,
where all who had ships on the sea were enriched by her wealth!
For in a single hour
she has been destroyed."

20 Rejoice over her, O heaven,
and you saints and apostles and prophets,
because God has pronounced for you
His judgment against her.

THE DOOM OF BABYLON

21 Then a mighty angel picked up a stone the size of a great millstone and cast it into the sea, saying:

"With such violence
the great city of Babylon will be cast down,
never to be seen again.
22 And the sound of harpists and musicians,
of flute players and trumpeters,
will never ring out in you again.
Nor will any craftsmen of any trade
be found in you again,
nor the sound of a millstone
be heard in you again.
23 The light of a lamp
will never shine in you again,
and the voices of a bride and bridegroom
will never call out in you again.
For your merchants were the great ones
of the earth,

- **REV 18:7 [HEART]** Babylon says in her heart, I sit as queen; I will never see grief.
- **REV 18:8 [PROPHECY]** Babylon the great will fall and be burned in one day → STILL TO COME
- **REV 18:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 26:16-17; 27:28-36 p.1286
- **REV 18:13 [NOTE]** SLAVES AND HUMAN SOULS. The last item on Babylon's shopping list is people.
- **REV 18:21 [PROPHECY]** Babylon will be thrown down like a millstone into the sea, never to be seen again → STILL TO COME
- **REV 18:21 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← JER 51:63-64 p.1227

END TIMES PROPHECIES DEMONIC

because all the nations were deceived
by your sorcery."

24 And there was found in her the blood of prophets and saints, and of all who had been slain on the earth.

19

CHAPTER 19 IN 30 SECONDS

Heaven shouts Hallelujah, and the wedding of the Lamb is announced. Then heaven opens, and Jesus rides out on a white horse, called Faithful and True and the Word of God. The beast and the false prophet are thrown into the lake of fire.

REJOICING IN HEAVEN

1 After this I heard a sound like the roar of a great multitude in heaven, shouting:

"Hallelujah!

Salvation and glory and power belong to
our God!
2 For His judgments are true and just.
He has judged the great prostitute
who corrupted the earth with her im-
morality.
He has avenged the blood of His servants
that was poured out by her hand."

3 And a second time they called out:

"Hallelujah!

Her smoke rises forever and ever."

4 And the twenty-four elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped God who sits on the throne, saying:

"Amen, Hallelujah!"

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

WHO IS BABYLON?

The Great Prostitute

REVELATION 14:8 · 17:1 TO 18 · 18:1 TO 24 · 1 PETER 5:13 · JEREMIAH 51

WHAT JOHN SAW

A woman named Babylon the Great, the mother of prostitutes, dressed in purple and gold, drunk with the blood of the saints, sitting on a beast with seven heads, 17:1 to 6. The seven heads are seven hills, 17:9, and she is the great city that rules over the kings of the earth, 17:18. She falls in one hour, 18:10.

THE OLD BABYLON

Babylon destroyed Jerusalem and its temple in 586 BC. Jeremiah 50 to 51 announced its fall. For Jews and Christians Babylon became a code name for any proud empire. Peter calls Rome Babylon, 1 Peter 5:13.

ROME

The city on seven hills that ruled the kings of the earth, grew rich on trade, 18:11 to 13, and killed Christians. Held by the early church and most scholars.

JERUSALEM

Some preterists say the great city is Jerusalem, where their Lord was crucified, 11:8, judged in AD 70.

PAPAL ROME

Many Reformers saw Babylon in the church of Rome, and the Westminster Confession, 1646, called the pope the antichrist. Most Protestants today no longer teach this.

A FUTURE CITY

Some futurists expect a rebuilt city of Babylon in Iraq or another world capital in the last days.

THE WORLD SYSTEM

Others see every society built on pride, greed, power and false worship, in every age, until the end.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Come out of her, My people, 18:4. Do not love the world's riches more than God. Every proud empire falls; only God's city lasts.

5 Then a voice came from the throne, saying:

"Praise our God,
all you who serve Him,
and those who fear Him,
small and great alike!"

THE MARRIAGE OF THE LAMB

6 And I heard a sound like the roar of a great multitude, like the rushing of many waters, and like a mighty rumbling of thunder, crying out:

"Hallelujah!

For the Lord our God the Almighty reigns.

REV 18:23 [DEMONIC] Sorcerers, idolaters, and liars — outside the holy city

REV 19:6 [PROPHECY] The marriage of the Lamb has come, and His wife has made herself ready… blessed are

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | MESSIANIC FORESHADOW | END TIMES PROPHECIES | MIRACLES

7 Let us rejoice and be glad
and give Him the glory.
For the marriage of the Lamb has come,
and His bride has made herself ready.
8 She was given clothing of fine linen,
bright and pure."
For the fine linen she wears is the right-
eous acts of the saints.
9 Then the angel told me to write, "Blessed
are those who are invited to the marriage
supper of the Lamb." And he said to me,
"These are the true words of God."
10 So I fell at his feet to worship him. But he
told me, "Do not do that! I am a fellow ser-
vant with you and your brothers who rely
on the testimony of Jesus. Worship God!
For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of
prophecy."

THE RIDER ON THE WHITE HORSE

11 Then I saw heaven standing open, and
there before me was a white horse. And
its rider is called Faithful and True. With
righteousness He judges and wages war.
12 He has eyes like blazing fire, and many
royal crowns on His head. He has a name
written on Him that only He Himself
knows. 13 He is dressed in a robe dipped in
blood, and His name is The Word of God.
14 The armies of heaven, dressed in fine
linen, white and pure, follow Him on white
horses. 15 And from His mouth proceeds a
sharp sword with which to strike down the
nations, and He will rule them with an iron
scepter. He treads the winepress of the
fury of the wrath of God the Almighty. 16
And He has a name written on His robe
and on His thigh:
KING OF KINGS AND LORD OF LORDS.

DEFEAT OF THE BEAST AND FALSE PROPHET

17 Then I saw an angel standing in the sun,
and he cried out in a loud voice to all the
birds flying overhead, "Come, gather to-
gether for the great supper of God, 18 so
that you may eat the flesh of kings and
commanders and mighty men, of horses
and riders, of everyone slave and free,
small and great."
19 Then I saw the beast and the kings of
the earth with their armies assembled to
wage war against the One seated on the
horse, and against His army. 20 But the
beast was captured along with the false
prophet, who on its behalf had performed
signs deceiving those who had the mark
of the beast and worshiped its image.
Both the beast and the false prophet were
thrown alive into the fiery lake of burning
sulfur. 21 And the rest were killed with the
sword that proceeded from the mouth of
the One seated on the horse.
And all the birds gorged themselves on
their flesh.

20

CHAPTER 20 IN 30 SECONDS

An angel ties up Satan for a thousand years, and the faithful reign with Christ. Then Satan is let loose, loses one last battle, and is thrown into the lake of fire. The dead stand before a great white throne, and the books are opened.

SATAN BOUND

1 Then I saw an angel coming down from
heaven with the key to the Abyss, holding
in his hand a great chain. 2 He seized the

those who are called to the marriage supper of the Lamb → STILL TO COME
- **REV 19:7 [NOTE]** THE WEDDING OF THE LAMB. The church as the bride, Ephesians 5:25 to 27.
- **REV 19:10 [MIRACLE]** John falls at the angel's feet and is told to worship God
- **REV 19:10 [NOTABLE]** True prophecy always points to Jesus.
- **REV 19:11 [PROPHECY]** I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse. And He who sat on him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness He judges and makes war → STILL TO COME
- **REV 19:11 [FULFILLS]** A king would reign in righteousness ← IS 32:1 · MEDIUM p.1099
- **REV 19:12 [FULFILLS]** Crown of pure gold set on His head ← PS 21:3 · MEDIUM p.896
- **REV 19:13 [FULFILLS]** He ties his donkey's colt to the vine and washes his robes in wine ← GEN 49:11 · MEDIUM p.114
- **REV 19:13 [NOTE]** A ROBE DIPPED IN BLOOD. Isaiah 63:1 to 3. Some read His enemies' blood; others His own.
- **REV 19:15 [PROPHECY]** I saw heaven opened, and behold, a white horse. And He who sat on him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness He judges and makes war → STILL TO COME
- **REV 19:15 [FULFILLS]** The Servant's mouth would be like a sharp sword ← IS 49:2 · MEDIUM p.1122
- **REV 19:15 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← PS 2:9; IS 11:4; 63:3 p.884
- **REV 19:16 [FULFILLS]** The crown would be removed and stay in ruins until He comes to whom it belongs ← EZK 21:26-27 · MEDIUM p.1278
- **REV 19:17 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 39:17-20 p.1306
- **REV 19:19 [PROPHECY]** The beast and false prophet will be captured and thrown into the lake of fire → STILL TO COME
- **REV 19:20 [DEMONIC]** The beast and false prophet are thrown into the lake of fire
- **REV 20:1 [PROPHECY]** An angel coming down from heaven, having the key to the bottomless pit and a great

END TIMES PROPHECIES

dragon, that ancient serpent who is the devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years. 3 And he threw him into the Abyss, shut it, and sealed it over him, so that he could not deceive the nations until the thousand years were complete. After that, he must be released for a brief period of time.

4 Then I saw the thrones, and those seated on them had been given authority to judge. And I saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for their testimony of Jesus and for the word of God, and those who had not worshiped the beast or its image and had not received its mark on their foreheads or hands. And they came to life and reigned with Christ for a thousand years.

5 The rest of the dead did not come back to life until the thousand years were complete. This is the first resurrection. 6 Blessed and holy are those who share in the first resurrection! The second death has no power over them, but they will be priests of God and of Christ and will reign with Him for a thousand years.

SATAN CAST INTO THE LAKE OF FIRE

7 When the thousand years are complete, Satan will be released from his prison, 8 and will go out to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth—Gog and Magog—to assemble them for battle. Their number is like the sand of the seashore.

9 And they marched across the broad expanse of the earth and surrounded the camp of the saints and the beloved city. But fire came down from heaven and consumed them. 10 And the devil who had deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur, into which the beast and the false prophet had already been thrown. There they will be tormented day and night forever and ever.

JUDGMENT BEFORE THE GREAT WHITE THRONE

11 Then I saw a great white throne and the One seated on it. Earth and heaven fled from His presence, and no place was found for them. 12 And I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne.

And books were opened, and one of them was the Book of Life. And the dead were judged according to their deeds, as recorded in the books. 13 The sea gave up its dead, and Death and Hades gave up their dead, and each one was judged according to his deeds.

14 Then Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death—the lake of fire. 15 And if anyone was found whose name was not written in the Book of Life, he was thrown into the lake of fire.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

THE MILLENNIUM

A Thousand Years

REVELATION 20:1 TO 10 · ISAIAH 65:17 TO 25 · 1 CORINTHIANS 15:23 TO 25

WHAT JOHN SAID

An angel binds Satan for a thousand years. Those who were beheaded for Jesus and did not worship the beast came to life and reigned with Christ a thousand years, 20:4. This is the first resurrection. Then Satan is released, deceives the nations one last time, and is thrown into the lake of fire. The Latin word millennium means a thousand years.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Papias, Justin Martyr about AD 155, Irenaeus about 180 and Tertullian expected Christ to reign on earth a thousand years after His return. Justin said that was what right minded Christians believed,

chain in his hand. He laid hold of the dragon... and bound him for a thousand years → STILL TO COME

- **REV 20:1 [MIRACLE]** Angel binds Satan for 1,000 years
- **REV 20:2 [NOTE]** A THOUSAND YEARS. See The Millennium pages, p.2111.
- **REV 20:4 [DEMONIC]** Martyrs who refused the beast's image reign with Christ
- **REV 20:7 [PROPHECY]** When the 1,000 years have expired, Satan will be released; he will go out to deceive the nations → STILL TO COME
- **REV 20:8 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 38:2 p.1304
- **REV 20:8 [NOTE]** GOG AND MAGOG. From Ezekiel 38 to 39. Here they stand for all the nations that rebel.
- **REV 20:9 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← 2KI 1:10; EZK 38:22; 39:6 p.601
- **REV 20:11 [PROPHECY]** I saw a great white throne and Him who sat on it... the dead were judged according to their works... anyone not found written in the Book of Life was cast into the lake of fire → STILL TO COME
- **REV 20:14 [NOTE]** THE SECOND DEATH. See Is Hell Forever?

but admitted many true Christians thought otherwise.

A CHANGE

Origen and Dionysius of Alexandria in the 200s pushed back against the earthly kingdom. About AD 380 Tyconius, and then Augustine in City of God book 20, taught that the thousand years is now, the time of the church, with Satan bound so the gospel can spread. That became the main view in the Catholic and Orthodox churches and among Lutheran and Reformed Protestants.

A HOPEFUL VIEW

In the 1700s Daniel Whitby and Jonathan Edwards taught that the gospel would win the world first, bringing a long golden age before Christ returns. It ran strong through the revivals and missions of the 1800s.

A RETURN TO THE FUTURE

In the 1800s many returned to the early church's future kingdom, and John Nelson Darby's dispensational teaching made it popular among evangelicals, with a special place for Israel. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

REVELATION 20:1 TO 10 · MATTHEW 12:29 · JOHN 5:25 TO 29 · PSALM 110:1

PREMILLENNIAL

Christ returns before the thousand years and reigns on earth, then the final judgment. Historic premillennialists hold the early church's view; dispensational premillennialists add a rapture and a special future for Israel. Best case: chapter 20 follows Christ's return in chapter 19, and came to life in 20:4 sounds like a bodily resurrection.

AMILLENNIAL

No future earthly kingdom: the thousand years is a symbol for the whole time between Christ's first and second coming. Satan is bound now, Matthew 12:29, and the saints reign with Christ in heaven. Best case: Revelation is full of symbols, and the rest of the New Testament speaks of one return, one resurrection and one judgment, John 5:28 to 29.

POSTMILLENNIAL

The gospel will spread until most of the world is Christian, a long golden age, and then Christ returns. Best case: the mustard seed and the leaven, Matthew 13:31 to 33, and the great commission backed by all authority, Matthew 28:18 to 20.

WHO HOLDS THEM

Most early writers who mention it were premillennial. Most churches through history have been amillennial. Many American evangelicals are premillennial. The Catholic Catechism, 676, rejects any earthly kingdom before the end.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Jesus reigns now at God's right hand, Psalm 110:1. He will return in person. Satan is defeated and will be thrown into the lake of fire. The dead will be raised and judged. And God will make all things new.

DEBATED THE BIG QUESTION

IS HELL FOREVER?

The Lake of Fire

REVELATION 14:10 TO 11 · 20:10 TO 15 · 21:8 · MATTHEW 25:46 · MARK 9:48

WHAT JOHN SAID

The smoke of their torment rises forever and ever, 14:11. The devil, the beast and the false prophet will be tormented day and night forever and ever, 20:10. Death and Hades are thrown into the lake of fire; this is the second death, 20:14. Anyone not found in the book of life is thrown in too, 20:15.

WORDS FOR HELL

Hades or Sheol is the place of the dead. Gehenna, the valley of Hinnom outside Jerusalem, was where children had once been burned to Molech, Jeremiah 7:31; Jesus used it for final judgment, Mark 9:43 to 48. Revelation calls the end the lake of fire and the second death.

THE EARLY CHURCH

Most early writers taught endless punishment. Origen, in the 200s, hoped that in the end all, maybe even the devil, would be restored, and Gregory of Nyssa hoped so too. A council at Con-

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES END TIMES PROPHECIES

stantinople in AD 553 condemned Origen's teaching. Arnobius, about AD 300, thought the wicked would finally be destroyed.

AUGUSTINE TO TODAY

Augustine, City of God book 21, taught that hell is endless and conscious, and almost every church followed: Catholic, Orthodox and the Reformers.

MODERN DEBATE

In the 1800s and 1900s some evangelicals argued that the lost will be destroyed, not tormented forever: Edward Fudge, The Fire That Consumes, 1982, and John Stott, who said in 1988 that he held it tentatively. Seventh day Adventists and Jehovah's Witnesses also teach it. Some, like Rob Bell in Love Wins, 2011, revived the hope that all will be saved. The next page gives every view.

The Case Each Side Makes

MATTHEW 10:28 · MATTHEW 25:46 · 2 THESSALONIANS 1:9 · COLOSSIANS 1:20 · 1 CORINTHIANS 15:22

ENDLESS CONSCIOUS PUNISHMENT

The lost suffer forever, aware of it, cut off from God's goodness. Held by most churches through history. Best case: Jesus puts eternal punishment right next to eternal life, Matthew 25:46, and Revelation says forever and ever, 14:11 and 20:10.

CONDITIONAL IMMORTALITY

Only God has immortality, and He gives eternal life to the saved; the lost are finally destroyed, body and soul, Matthew 10:28. The fire is eternal in its result, not in torment. Best case: the Bible's words are death, destruction and perish, John 3:16, and the lake of fire is called the second death, 20:14.

HOPE FOR ALL

In the end God will win back every person. Best case: as in Adam all die, so in Christ all will be made alive, 1 Corinthians 15:22; God will reconcile all things, Colossians 1:20; the city's gates are never shut, 21:25. Most churches reject it because of 14:11, 20:10 and Matthew 25:46.

PURGATORY IS DIFFERENT

Catholic teaching on purgatory is about believers being made clean before heaven, not about the lost escaping hell.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

Judgment is real, and it is fair: each is judged by what he has done, 20:12. Hell is not God's wish for anyone, 2 Peter 3:9. Jesus took God's judgment on Himself so we would not have to. And the warning is meant to send us to Him now.

21

CHAPTER 21 IN 30 SECONDS

A new heaven and a new earth. The New Jerusalem comes down like a bride, God lives with His people, and there is no more death, crying or pain. The city has gates of pearl, a street of gold and no need of the sun.

A NEW HEAVEN AND A NEW EARTH // ISAIAH 65:17–25

1 Then I saw a new heaven and a new
earth, for the first heaven and earth had
passed away, and the sea was no more. 2 I
saw the holy city, the new Jerusalem,
coming down out of heaven from God,
prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.

3 And I heard a loud voice from the throne
saying:

"Behold, the dwelling place of God is with
man,
and He will dwell with them.
They will be His people,
and God Himself will be with them as
their God.
4 'He will wipe away every tear from their
eyes,'
and there will be no more death
or mourning or crying or pain,
for the former things have passed
away."

- **REV 21:1 [PROPHECY]** I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away… behold, the tabernacle of God is with men → STILL TO COME
- **REV 21:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 65:17; 66:22 p.1141
- **REV 21:1 [NOTE]** NO MORE SEA. In the Bible the sea often pictures chaos and danger, and the beast rose from it, 13:1.
- **REV 21:3 [FULFILLS]** God would walk among His people and be their God ← LEV 26:12 p.216
- **REV 21:3 [FULFILLS]** My dwelling place will be with them; I will be their God and they My people ← EZK 37:27 · MEDIUM p.1304
- **REV 21:4 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 25:8; 35:10 p.1091

END TIMES PROPHECIES MIRACLES DEMONIC JESUS SPEAKING

5 And the One seated on the throne said,
"Behold, I make all things new."
Then He said,
"Write this down, for these words are faithful and true."
6 And He told me,
"It is done! I am the Alpha and the Omega, the Beginning and the End. To the thirsty I will give freely from the spring of the water of life.
7 The one who overcomes will inherit all things, and I will be his God, and he will be My son.

8 But to the cowardly and unbelieving and abominable and murderers and sexually immoral and sorcerers and idolaters and all liars, their place will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur. This is the second death."

THE NEW JERUSALEM

9 Then one of the seven angels with the seven bowls full of the seven final plagues came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb."

10 And he carried me away in the Spirit to a mountain great and high, and showed me the holy city of Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God,
11 shining with the glory of God. Its radiance was like a most precious jewel, like a jasper, as clear as crystal.
12 The city had a great and high wall with twelve gates inscribed with the names of the twelve tribes of Israel, and twelve angels at the gates.
13 There were three gates on the east, three on the north, three on the south, and three on the west.
14 The wall of the city had twelve foundations bearing the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

15 The angel who spoke with me had a golden measuring rod to measure the city and its gates and walls.
16 The city lies foursquare, with its width the same as its length. And he measured the city with the rod, and all its dimensions were equal—about 1,400 miles in length and width and height.
17 And he measured its wall to be 216 feet, by the human measure the angel was using.

18 The wall was made of jasper, and the city itself of pure gold, as pure as glass.
19 The foundations of the city walls were adorned with every kind of precious stone:

The first foundation was jasper,
the second sapphire,
the third chalcedony,
the fourth emerald,
20 the fifth sardonyx,
the sixth carnelian,
the seventh chrysolite,
the eighth beryl,
the ninth topaz,
the tenth chrysoprase,
the eleventh jacinth,
and the twelfth amethyst.

21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls, with each gate consisting of a single pearl. The main street of the city was pure gold, as clear as glass.

22 But I saw no temple in the city, because the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple.
23 And the city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, because the glory of God illuminates the city, and the Lamb is its lamp.
24 By its light the nations will walk, and into it the kings of the earth will bring their glory.
25 Its gates will never be shut at the end of the day, because there will be no night there.

26 And into the city will be brought the glory and honor of the nations.
27 But nothing unclear will ever enter it, nor anyone who practices an abomination or a lie, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's Book of Life.

- **REV 21:8 [DEMONIC]** Sorcerers, idolaters, and liars — outside the holy city
- **REV 21:9 [MIRACLE]** One of the seven angels shows John the bride, the wife of the Lamb
- **REV 21:10 [PROPHECY]** The New Jerusalem descending out of heaven from God, having the glory of God... the city was pure gold, like clear glass... the Lamb is its light → STILL TO COME
- **REV 21:12 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 48:31-34 p.1319
- **REV 21:16 [NOTE]** 1,400 MILES. In the Greek, the number here is 12,000, twelve times a thousand. The city is a perfect cube, like the Most Holy Place, 1 Kings 6:20.
- **REV 21:18 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 54:11-12 p.1129
- **REV 21:23 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 60:19 p.1136
- **REV 21:25 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 60:11 p.1135

MESSIANIC PROPHECIES | END TIMES PROPHECIES | MIRACLES | DEMONIC | NOTABLE | JESUS SPEAKING

22

CHAPTER 22 IN 30 SECONDS

A river of life flows from the throne, and the tree of life is back. No more curse. Jesus says three times, I am coming soon. The Spirit and the bride say come. And John answers for all of us: Amen. Come, Lord Jesus.

THE RIVER OF LIFE

1 Then the angel showed me a river of the
water of life, as clear as crystal, flowing
from the throne of God and of the Lamb 2
down the middle of the main street of the
city. On either side of the river stood a
tree of life, bearing twelve kinds of fruit
and yielding a fresh crop for each month.
And the leaves of the tree are for the
healing of the nations.

3 No longer will there be any curse. The
throne of God and of the Lamb will be
within the city, and His servants will wor-
ship Him. 4 They will see His face, and His
name will be on their foreheads. 5 There
will be no more night in the city, and they
will have no need for the light of a lamp or
of the sun. For the Lord God will shine on
them, and they will reign forever and ever.

JESUS IS COMING

6 Then the angel said to me, "These words
are faithful and true. The Lord, the God of
the spirits of the prophets, has sent His
angel to show His servants what must
soon take place."

7 "Behold, I am coming soon. Blessed is
the one who keeps the words of prophecy
in this book."

8 And I, John, am the one who heard and
saw these things. And when I had heard
and seen them, I fell down to worship at
the feet of the angel who had shown me
these things. 9 But he said to me, "Do not
do that! I am a fellow servant with you and
your brothers the prophets, and with
those who keep the words of this book.
Worship God!"

10 Then he told me, "Do not seal up the
words of prophecy in this book, because
the time is near. 11 Let the unrighteous
continue to be unrighteous, and the vile
continue to be vile; let the righteous con-
tinue to practice righteousness, and the
holy continue to be holy."

12 "Behold, I am coming soon, and My re-
ward is with Me, to give to each one ac-
cording to what he has done. 13 I am the
Alpha and the Omega, the First and the
Last, the Beginning and the End."

14 Blessed are those who wash their robes,
so that they may have the right to the tree
of life and may enter the city by its gates.
15 But outside are the dogs, the sorcerers,
the sexually immoral, the murderers, the
idolaters, and everyone who loves and
practices falsehood.

16 "I, Jesus, have sent My angel to give
you this testimony for the churches. I am
the Root and the Offspring of David, the
bright Morning Star."

17 The Spirit and the bride say, "Come!" Let
the one who hears say, "Come!" And let
the one who is thirsty come, and the one
who desires the water of life drink freely.

NOTHING MAY BE ADDED OR REMOVED

18 I testify to everyone who hears the
words of prophecy in this book: If anyone
adds to them, God will add to him the
plagues described in this book. 19 And if

- **REV 22:1 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 47:1; ZECH 14:8 p.1317
- **REV 22:2 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← EZK 47:12 p.1317
- **REV 22:2 [NOTE]** LEAVES FOR HEALING. From Ezekiel 47:12. The curse of Genesis 3 is undone, 22:3.
- **REV 22:3 [PROPHECY]** In the new city there will be no curse, God's people will see His face and reign forever → STILL TO COME
- **REV 22:5 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← DAN 7:18, 27 p.1342
- **REV 22:8 [MIRACLE]** John falls at an angel's feet and is told to worship God
- **REV 22:12 [PROPHECY]** Behold, I am coming quickly, and My reward is with Me... Surely I am coming quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus! → STILL TO COME
- **REV 22:13 [FULFILLS]** The First and the Last ← IS 48:12 · MEDIUM p.1121
- **REV 22:13 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← IS 44:6; 48:12 p.1116
- **REV 22:14 [ALLUDES TO]** Refers to ← GEN 2:9; 3:22-24 p.49
- **REV 22:14 [NOTE]** TEXT. The oldest copies say wash their robes. Later copies and the KJV say do His commandments. The Greek words look alike.
- **REV 22:15 [DEMONIC]** Sorcerers, idolaters, and liars — outside the holy city
- **REV 22:16 [FULFILLS]** Balaam's prophecy: a Star and Scepter to come out of Jacob ← NUM 24:17 p.262
- **REV 22:16 [FULFILLS]** David's house and throne established forever ← 2SA 7:16 p.503
- **REV 22:16 [NOTE]** ROOT AND OFFSPRING. Jesus is before David, his root, and after him, his son. Isaiah 11:1 and 11:10.
- **REV 22:17 [NOTABLE]** The Bible ends with an open invitation.
- **REV 22:18 [NOTABLE]** John warns against changing the words of this book of prophecy. Many also apply it to the whole Bible.

END TIMES PROPHECIES JESUS SPEAKING

anyone takes away from the words of this book of prophecy, God will take away his share in the tree of life and the holy city, which are described in this book.

20 He who testifies to these things says, "Yes, I am coming soon." Amen. Come, Lord Jesus!

21 The grace of the Lord Jesus be with all the saints.

Amen.

FROM HISTORY

WHAT DIONYSIUS WROTE

Who Wrote Revelation?

EUSEBIUS, CHURCH HISTORY 7.25 · REVELATION 1:1 · 1:4 · 1:9 · 22:8

WHY THIS IS HERE

Revelation names its writer only as John. Most of the early church said John the apostle. One bishop looked closely at the Greek and disagreed, and his words survive.

WHO DIONYSIUS WAS

Dionysius was bishop of Alexandria in Egypt from about AD 248 to 264, a student of Origen. Some Christians near him were teaching an earthly thousand year kingdom of feasting from Revelation, and he wrote two books On Promises to answer them.

WHAT HE WROTE

Eusebius copied his comments on Revelation into his Church History. Here is the whole of book 7, chapter 25, McGiffert translation, 1890. Quote marks hold Dionysius's own words; where Eusebius sums up, there are none.

CHURCH HISTORY 7.25

Afterward he speaks in this manner of the Apocalypse of John.

For they say that it is not the work of John, nor is it a revelation, because it is covered thickly and densely by a vail of obscurity. And they affirm that none of the apostles, and none of the saints, nor any one in the Church is its author, but that Cerinthus, who founded the sect which was called after him the Cerinthian, desiring reputable authority for his fiction, prefixed the name.

For the doctrine which he taught was this: that the kingdom of Christ will be an earthly one. And as he was himself devoted to the pleasures of the body and altogether sensual in his nature, he dreamed that that kingdom would consist in those things which he desired, namely, in the delights of the belly and of sexual passion; that is to say, in eating and drinking and marrying, and in festivals and sacrifices and the slaying of victims, under the guise of which he thought he could indulge his appetites with a better grace.

"But I could not venture to reject the book, as many brethren hold it in high esteem. But I suppose that it is beyond my comprehension, and that there is a certain concealed and more wonderful meaning in every part. For if I do not understand I suspect that a deeper sense lies beneath the words.

I do not measure and judge them by my own reason, but leaving the more to faith I regard them as too high for me to grasp. And I do not reject what I cannot comprehend, but rather wonder because I do not understand it."

After this he examines the entire Book of Revelation, and having proved that it is impossible to understand it according to the literal sense, proceeds as follows: Therefore that he was called John, and that this book is the work of one John, I do not deny. And I agree also that it is the work of a holy and inspired man. But I cannot readily admit that he was the

REV 22:18 [NOTE] THIS BOOK. In two verses John says this book four times. He is guarding the words of Revelation. Moses gave the same warning, Deuteronomy 4:2, and God still sent many prophets and books after him. Some cessationists, who believe gifts like prophecy ended with the apostles, use this verse to say God no longer speaks to us directly. But it is about changing the words of this book, not about whether God still speaks. When John wrote, the New Testament had not been gathered into one book; Codex Sinaiticus even puts two more books after Revelation. Cessationists answer that their case rests mainly on other verses, like Ephesians 2:20 and Hebrews 1:1 to 2. All sides agree no one may add to Scripture, and anything said to be from God must be tested by it, 1 Thessalonians 5:20 to 21.

REV 22:19 [NOTE] TEXT. The KJV says book of life; the Greek copies say tree of life. Erasmus's only Greek copy of Revelation in 1516 was missing the last verses, so he translated them back from Latin.

REV 22:20 [PROPHECY] Behold, I am coming quickly, and My reward is with Me... Surely I am coming quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus! → STILL TO COME

REV 22:20 [NOTE] MARANATHA. Come, Lord Jesus. The early church prayed it in Aramaic, Maranatha, 1 Corinthians 16:22.

apostle, the son of Zebedee, the brother of James, by whom the Gospel of John and the Catholic Epistle were written. For I judge from the character of both, and the forms of expression, and the entire execution of the book, that it is not his. For the evangelist nowhere gives his name, or proclaims himself, either in the Gospel or Epistle."

Farther on he adds:

Then he writes also an epistle: 'John to the seven churches which are in Asia, grace be with you, and peace.' But the evangelist did not prefix his name even to the Catholic Epistle; but without introduction he begins with the mystery of the divine revelation itself: 'That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes.' For because of such a revelation the Lord also blessed Peter, saying, 'Blessed art thou, Simon Bar-Jonah, for flesh and blood hath not revealed it unto thee, but my heavenly Father.'

But neither in the reputed second or third epistle of John, though they are very short, does the name John appear; but there is written the anonymous phrase, 'the elder.' But this author did not consider it sufficient to give his name once and to proceed with his work; but he takes it up again: 'I, John, who also am your brother and companion in tribulation, and in the kingdom and in the patience of Jesus Christ, was in the isle that is called Patmos for the Word of God and the testimony of Jesus.' And toward the close he speaks thus: 'Blessed is he that keepeth the words of the prophecy of this book, and I, John, who saw and heard these things.'

"But that he who wrote these things was called John must be believed, as he says it; but who he was does not appear. For he did not say, as often in the Gospel, that he was the beloved disciple of the Lord, or the one who lay on his breast, or the brother of James, or the eyewitness and hearer of the Lord. For he would have spoken of these things if he had wished to show himself plainly. But he says none of them; but speaks of himself as our brother and companion, and a witness of Jesus, and blessed because he had seen and heard the revelations.

But I am of the opinion that there were many with the same name as the apostle John, who, on account of their love for him, and because they admired and emulated him, and desired to be loved by the Lord as he was, took to themselves the same surname, as many of the children of the faithful are called Paul or Peter.

For example, there is also another John, surnamed Mark, mentioned in the Acts of the Apostles, whom Barnabas and Paul took with them; of whom also it is said, 'And they had also John as their attendant.' But that it is he who wrote this, I would not say. For it not written that he went with them into Asia, but, 'Now when Paul and his company set sail from Paphos, they came to Perga in Pamphylia and John departing from them returned to Jerusalem.'

But I think that he was some other one of those in Asia; as they say that there are two monuments in Ephesus, each bearing the name of John.

"And from the ideas, and from the words and their arrangement, it may be reasonably conjectured that this one is different from that one. For the Gospel and Epistle agree with each other and begin in the same manner. The one says, 'In the beginning was the Word'; the other, 'That which was from the beginning.' The one: 'And the Word was made flesh and dwelt among us, and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father'; the other says the same things slightly altered: 'Which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes; which we have looked upon and our hands have handled of the Word of life,—and the life was manifested.'

For he introduces these things at the beginning, maintaining them, as is evident from what follows, in opposition to those who said that the Lord had not come in the flesh. Wherefore also he carefully

adds, 'And we have seen and bear witness, and declare unto you the eternal life which was with the Father and was manifested unto us. That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you also.'

He holds to this and does not digress from his subject, but discusses everything under the same heads and names some of which we will briefly mention. Any one who examines carefully will find the phrases, 'the life,' 'the light,' 'turning from darkness,' frequently occurring in both; also continually, 'truth,' 'grace,' 'joy,' 'the flesh and blood of the Lord,' 'the judgment,' 'the forgiveness of sins,' 'the love of God toward us,' the 'commandment that we love one another,' that we should 'keep all the commandments'; the 'conviction of the world, of the Devil, of Anti-Christ,' the 'promise of the Holy Spirit,' the 'adoption of God,' the 'faith continually required of us,' 'the Father and the Son,' occur everywhere. In fact, it is plainly to be seen that one and the same character marks the Gospel and the Epistle throughout.

But the Apocalypse is different from these writings and foreign to them; not touching, nor in the least bordering upon them; almost, so to speak, without even a syllable in common with them.

Nay more, the Epistle—for I pass by the Gospel—does not mention nor does it contain any intimation of the Apocalypse, nor does the Apocalypse of the Epistle. But Paul, in his epistles, gives some indication of his revelations, though he has not written them out by themselves.

"Moreover, it can also be shown that the diction of the Gospel and Epistle differs from that of the Apocalypse.

For they were written not only without error as regards the Greek language, but also with elegance in their expression, in their reasonings, and in their entire structure. They are far indeed from betraying any barbarism or solecism, or any vulgarism whatever. For the writer had, as it seems, both the requisites of discourse,—that is, the gift of knowledge and the gift of expression,—as the Lord had bestowed them both upon him. I do not deny that the other writer saw a revelation and received knowledge and prophecy. I perceive, however, that his dialect and language are not accurate Greek, but that he uses barbarous idioms, and, in some places, solecisms. It is unnecessary to point these out here, for I would not have any one think that I have said these things in a spirit of ridicule, for I have said what I have only with the purpose of showing clearly the difference between the writings."

One John or Two?

REVELATION 1:1 · 1:9 · 22:8 · JOHN 21:24 · 2 JOHN 1:1

HIS ARGUMENT

The Gospel and 1 John never give the writer's name; Revelation names John again and again. The Gospel and letter share words like life, light and truth; Revelation sounds different. And the Gospel's Greek is smooth, while Revelation's breaks grammar rules. So, he says, a different John.

HE STILL HONORED IT

He would not throw out the book. He said its writer was a holy and inspired man who truly saw a revelation, and that it holds a meaning too deep for him.

TWO TOMBS

He mentions two tombs of John in Ephesus. Papias also seems to name two Johns, the apostle and John the Elder; see What Papias Wrote in 2 John, p.2055.

THE OTHER SIDE

Justin Martyr, about AD 155, and Irenaeus said the apostle wrote it. Many scholars say the rough Greek fits a man writing in a hurry, in exile, without a helper, while thinking in Hebrew. And Revelation shares big ideas with John's Gospel: Jesus as the Word, 19:13 and John 1:1; the Lamb, 5:6 and John 1:29; living water, 22:17 and John 7:37 to 38; the pierced one, 1:7 and John 19:37.

WHAT ALL SIDES AGREE ON

The writer was a well known leader named John, in exile on Patmos, writing to churches he knew. And the church received his book as Scripture.

BONUS SECTION

Bonus Section

Ten big questions people ask about Jesus, the Bible and the church.

It starts where any good investigation starts, with the evidence. Did Jesus really live? Then it moves to the Bible itself, then to the church, and it ends with the biggest question of all. Read it straight through, or jump to the question you care about most.

Is Jesus Real?

1 Exhibit A: Jesus in History **2120**
2 Is Jesus Just a Copy of Horus, Mithras and Krishna? **2135**
3 How Did the Twelve Apostles Die? **2143**

Can We Trust the Bible?

4 Didn't They Take Books Out of the Bible at the Council of Nicaea? **2152**
5 What About the Gnostic Gospels? **2157**
6 Why Do Some Bibles Have More Books? **2169**
7 But Hasn't the Bible Been Translated Over and Over Again? **2175**

The Church, Christmas and Forever

8 Where Did All the Denominations Come From? **2182**
9 Who Was the Real Santa Claus? **2195**
10 Is Heaven or Hell Real? **2201**

BONUS SECTION · HISTORY OUTSIDE THE BIBLE

EXHIBIT A

Jesus in history: what people outside the Bible said about Him

THE QUESTION	Did Jesus really live, or did the church make Him up? This section looks only at writers who were NOT writing Scripture.
THE WITNESSES	A Jewish historian, Roman historians, a Roman governor, a Syrian prisoner, a Greek comedian, a pagan philosopher, the Jewish Talmud, and the first Christians after the apostles.
THE TIME RANGE	From about AD 50 to about AD 500. Jesus was crucified about AD 30 or 33.
THE VERDICT	Almost every historian today, Christian or not, agrees Jesus was a real man who was baptized by John and crucified under Pontius Pilate.
HOW TO USE IT	Each exhibit gives you who wrote it, when, the actual words, how the text survived, what it backs up in the Bible and the honest debate. Confidence ratings are HIGH, MEDIUM or LOW.

Opening Statement

Imagine a courtroom. The Bible is the main witness, and it has a lot to say. But a good lawyer always asks: does anybody else back this up? Is there anyone who was not a follower of Jesus, maybe even someone who hated Christians, who says this Jesus was real?

There is. Quite a few, actually. Some of them were not trying to help Christians at all. The Roman historian Tacitus called Christianity a mischievous superstition. A Greek comedian made fun of Christians for being gullible. A pagan philosopher said Jesus was a magician. Their mean comments are gold for us, because enemies do not usually invent the person they are insulting.

Here is the honest truth up front. No outside writer is as detailed as the Gospels. Jesus was a poor teacher from a small town in a far corner of the Roman Empire, and Roman writers mostly wrote about emperors, wars and senators. What is surprising is not how little they say. It is that they say anything at all.

HOW TO READ THE QUOTES. Quotes from old books come from public domain English translations, so the wording sounds old. Words in a pink highlight are words most scholars think a Christian copyist added later. Where a translation is still owned by someone, the passage is retold in plain English and labeled that way.

EXHIBIT 1

FLAVIUS JOSEPHUS

The Jewish general who switched sides and wrote it all down

WHO	Yosef ben Matityahu, born in Jerusalem in AD 37 into a family of priests. He later took the Roman name Titus Flavius Josephus.
HIS STORY	He led Jewish troops in Galilee during the revolt against Rome in AD 66. In AD 67 he surrendered and told the Roman general Vespasian he would become emperor. Two years later Vespasian did,

	freed him, and Josephus spent the rest of his life writing in Rome. He died around AD 100.
HIS BOOKS	The Jewish War, about AD 75, and the Antiquities of the Jews, 20 books finished about AD 93 or 94. The Antiquities is a history of the Jews from Creation to his own day.
WHY HE MATTERS	He was a Jew who never became a Christian. He grew up in Jerusalem just a few years after the crucifixion, and he knew the places, rulers and priestly families of the Gospels firsthand.

How Many Copies of Josephus Survive

About 120 Greek manuscripts of Josephus' works survive, and 33 of them are older than the 1300s. Not every copy holds every book. For book 18, the one that mentions Jesus, the oldest Greek copy is a manuscript in the Ambrosian Library in Milan, Italy, copied in the 1000s. The next oldest is in the Vatican Library and is dated AD 1354. A third, in Florence, is from the 1300s or 1400s.

There is also an old Latin translation, made around AD 550 for a Roman scholar named Cassiodorus. About 170 Latin manuscripts of it survive. And Christian writers quoted Josephus long before any of these copies were made, which helps us see what the text said earlier.

Every Greek and Latin copy that has book 18 includes the passage about Jesus. Nobody has ever found a copy without it. The debate is not whether Josephus mentioned Jesus. The debate is whether every word in our copies is his.

The Testimony of Josephus, Three Versions

This passage is famous enough to have its own Latin name: the Testimonium Flavianum, which means the testimony of Flavius. It sits in Antiquities book 18, sections 63 to 64, right between two stories about Pontius Pilate. Here are the three versions people argue about.

VERSION 1. THE TEXT AS IT READS TODAY

This is what every Greek manuscript says. The parts in pink are the parts many scholars think a Christian copyist added, because a Jew who did not follow Jesus would not likely write them.

> **JOSEPHUS, ANTIQUITIES 18.63 TO 64 · WILLIAM WHISTON TRANSLATION, 1737**
>
> *Now there was about this time Jesus, a wise man, if it be lawful to call him a man; for he was a doer of wonderful works, a teacher of such men as receive the truth with pleasure. He drew over to him both many of the Jews and many of the Gentiles. He was the Christ. And when Pilate, at the suggestion of the principal men amongst us, had condemned him to the cross, those that loved him at the first did not forsake him; for he appeared to them alive again the third day; as the divine prophets had foretold these and ten thousand other wonderful things concerning him. And the tribe of Christians, so named from him, are not extinct at this day.*

VERSION 2. THE CORE MOST SCHOLARS THINK JOSEPHUS WROTE

Take out the three pink parts and you get a calm, neutral report that sounds just like Josephus. It calls Jesus a wise man and a worker of amazing deeds, says Jewish leaders brought charges, Pilate crucified Him, and His followers never gave up. Many scholars accept something close to this.

THE RECONSTRUCTED CORE · WHISTON WORDING WITH THE THREE DISPUTED PARTS REMOVED

Now there was about this time Jesus, a wise man, for he was a doer of wonderful works, a teacher of such men as receive the truth with pleasure. He drew over to him both many of the Jews and many of the Gentiles. And when Pilate, at the suggestion of the principal men amongst us, had condemned him to the cross, those that loved him at the first did not forsake him. And the tribe of Christians, so named from him, are not extinct at this day.

VERSION 3. THE ARABIC VERSION OF AGAPIUS

In 1971 an Israeli scholar named Shlomo Pines brought attention to a different version. It is in a world history written in Arabic around AD 942 by Agapius, a Christian bishop in Syria. It is milder than the Greek. Instead of He was the Christ, it says he was perhaps the Messiah. A Syriac chronicle by Michael the Syrian, written in the 1100s, has the same idea: he was thought to be the Messiah.

AGAPIUS, BOOK OF THE TITLE, ABOUT AD 942 · RETOLD IN PLAIN ENGLISH FROM THE ARABIC

At this time there was a wise man named Jesus. He lived a good life and was known as a good man. Many people from the Jews and from other nations became his followers. Pilate sentenced him to be crucified and to die. His followers did not leave him. They reported that he appeared to them three days after his crucifixion and that he was alive. So he was perhaps the Messiah that the prophets told amazing things about.

What the Scholars Say

CAMP 1. ALL OF IT IS REAL

A small group says Josephus wrote the whole thing. Josephus was flattering, he admired wise teachers, and maybe he was writing what Christians claimed rather than what he believed. In 2025 a scholar named T. C. Schmidt published a book with Oxford University Press arguing that the passage is mostly what Josephus wrote.

CAMP 2. A REAL CORE WITH CHRISTIAN ADDITIONS

This is the biggest group. They see Josephus' style all through the passage. The phrase wonderful works, for example, is one he uses for the prophet Elisha. But the three pink phrases sound like a Christian, so they think a copyist added them, probably before AD 300.

CAMP 3. ALL OF IT IS FAKE

A smaller group says the whole passage was added by a Christian, maybe even by Eusebius, the church historian who is the first to quote it, in the early 300s. They point out that the passage seems to interrupt the story around it. Most scholars do not agree, because the language fits Josephus and because of the second passage below.

CLUE FROM ORIGEN

Origen, a Christian scholar writing around AD 248, read Josephus and said twice that Josephus did not believe Jesus was the Christ. That is strong evidence that the copy Origen read did not say He was the Christ. It is one of the main reasons scholars think that line was added later.

CLUE FROM JEROME

Jerome, the man who translated the Latin Bible, quoted the passage around AD 392 with the words he was believed to be the Christ. That matches the milder Arabic and Syriac versions. Many scholars think the older wording was something like that, and a later copyist made it stronger.

CLUE FROM THE ARABIC
Scholar Alice Whealey showed in 2008 that the Arabic and Syriac versions probably come from a Syriac translation of Eusebius, not straight from Josephus. So they are not a separate copy of Josephus. But they may still keep older wording than our Greek copies.

WHAT ABOUT THE SLAVONIC JOSEPHUS
An old Slavonic, which is old Russian, version of The Jewish War has long stories about Jesus and John the Baptist. Scholars agree these were added in the Middle Ages and are worthless for history. Do not let anybody sell you that one.

CONFIDENCE
HIGH that Josephus wrote about Jesus here. MEDIUM on the exact wording. LOW that the three pink phrases are his.

The Second Passage: the Brother of Jesus

This is the one most scholars accept with little argument. In Antiquities book 20, section 200, Josephus tells how James was killed in AD 62. The Roman governor Festus had died, and the next governor, Albinus, had not yet arrived. During that gap, the high priest Ananus grabbed his chance.

> **JOSEPHUS, ANTIQUITIES 20.200 · WILLIAM WHISTON TRANSLATION, 1737**
> *Festus was now dead, and Albinus was but upon the road; so he assembled the sanhedrim of judges, and brought before them the brother of Jesus, who was called Christ, whose name was James, and some others; and when he had formed an accusation against them as breakers of the law, he delivered them to be stoned.*

WHY SCHOLARS TRUST IT
It is short, it is not praising Jesus, and it reads like Josephus. A Christian adding words would not say only who was called Christ. He would say much more. It also explains which Jesus he means, because Jesus was a common name. Josephus mentions more than a dozen different men named Jesus.

WHAT IT BACKS UP
The Bible says Jesus had a brother named James, Mark 6:3 and Matthew 13:55. Paul says he met James, the Lord's brother, in Galatians 1:19. James led the church in Jerusalem in Acts 15 and Acts 21:18. Josephus confirms all of it: a man named James, brother of Jesus who was called Christ, important enough in Jerusalem that the high priest wanted him dead.

A BONUS CONNECTION
The high priest who killed James was Ananus, a son of Annas. Josephus says five sons of Annas became high priest. That is the same Annas who questioned Jesus in John 18:13. Same family, a generation later, still going after Jesus' people.

HOW IT ENDED FOR ANANUS
Josephus says fair minded people in Jerusalem complained, and Ananus was kicked out after only three months as high priest.

ANOTHER ACCOUNT
A Christian writer named Hegesippus, around AD 170, as quoted by Eusebius, tells the story differently. He says James was thrown from the temple, stoned and then beaten to death with a club. The details differ, but both agree James was killed by Jewish leaders in Jerusalem.

CONFIDENCE
HIGH.

The Third Passage: John the Baptist

In Antiquities book 18, sections 116 to 119, Josephus tells about John the Baptist, and he spends more words on John than on Jesus. Around AD 36, Herod Antipas lost a war to King Aretas of Nabatea, the father of his first wife. Some Jews said God was punishing Herod for what he did to John.

> **JOSEPHUS, ANTIQUITIES 18.116 TO 119 · WILLIAM WHISTON TRANSLATION, 1737**
> *Now some of the Jews thought that the destruction of Herod's army came from God, and that very justly, as a punishment of what he did against John, that was called the Baptist: for Herod slew him, who was a good man, and commanded the Jews to exercise virtue, both as to righteousness towards one another, and piety towards God, and so to come to baptism... Accordingly he was sent a prisoner, out of Herod's suspicious temper, to Macherus, the castle I before mentioned, and was there put to death.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP
John was a real preacher called the Baptist. He told people to live right and be baptized, Mark 1:4. Herod Antipas arrested and killed him, Mark 6:17 to 29. Josephus even names the place, the fortress of Machaerus, east of the Dead Sea.

WHY DID HEROD DO IT
Mark says Herod killed John because John said it was wrong for Herod to marry Herodias, his brother's wife, Mark 6:18. Josephus says Herod feared John's crowds might start a revolt. Both can be true. And Josephus tells the backstory: Herod dumped his first wife, the daughter of Aretas, to marry Herodias. That is exactly why Aretas went to war. Josephus confirms the scandalous marriage Mark talks about.

THE DANCING DAUGHTER
The Gospels never name the girl who danced for Herod. Josephus does. In Antiquities 18.136 he says Herodias had a daughter named Salome. That is how she got her name in later art and movies.

THE FORTRESS TODAY
Hungarian archaeologists led by Győző Vörös have dug at Machaerus since 2009. They uncovered the royal courtyard and what they believe was the throne area, the likely setting for the banquet in Mark 6.

CONFIDENCE
HIGH. Almost no scholar thinks a Christian wrote this. It does not even connect John to Jesus, which a Christian would have done.

More Things Josephus Backs Up

Josephus never set out to prove the Bible, which makes him a great witness. He just wrote history, and over and over his history matches the people and events of the New Testament.

BIBLE	JOSEPHUS	WHAT MATCHES
Matthew 2	Antiquities 15 to 17	Herod the Great was a ruthless, paranoid king who killed his own wife and sons. Killing the boys of Bethlehem fits him.
Matthew 2:22	Antiquities 17.317 to 320	After Herod died, his son Archelaus ruled Judea, so Joseph moved the family to Galilee.

BIBLE	JOSEPHUS	WHAT MATCHES
Luke 3:1	Antiquities 18	Tiberius, Pilate, Herod Antipas and Philip ruled exactly where Luke says.
John 18:13	Antiquities 18.26, 18.35, 20.198	Annas was high priest and Caiaphas, called Joseph Caiaphas, held the office about AD 18 to 36.
Luke 13:1	Antiquities 18.55 to 62, 85 to 89	Pilate was violent and stubborn. He was finally sent back to Rome after his troops attacked Samaritans in AD 36.
Acts 5:37	Antiquities 18.1 to 10	Judas the Galilean led a revolt over the Roman census.
Acts 11:28	Antiquities 20.51 to 53, 101	A great famine hit Judea under Emperor Claudius. A queen named Helena bought grain from Egypt to feed Jerusalem.
Acts 12:21 to 23	Antiquities 19.343 to 350	Herod Agrippa I wore shining royal robes in Caesarea, the crowd called him a god, he did not stop them, and he was struck with stomach pains and died five days later.
Acts 21:38	Jewish War 2.261 to 263	A false prophet called the Egyptian led a crowd into the wilderness. The Roman officer asks Paul if he is that man.
Acts 23:2	Antiquities 20.205 to 213; Jewish War 2.441	Ananias the high priest was greedy and violent. Jewish rebels killed him in AD 66.
Acts 24:24	Antiquities 20.141 to 143	Governor Felix married Drusilla, a Jewish princess who left her husband for him.
Acts 25:13	Antiquities 20.145	King Agrippa II and his sister Bernice were together so much that people gossiped.
Mark 13:2	Jewish War 6	The temple was burned and torn down by the Romans in AD 70. Josephus was there and watched.

TWO HONEST PUZZLES

Luke 2:2 ties Jesus' birth to a census when Quirinius governed Syria. Josephus dates Quirinius' census to AD 6, about ten years after Herod died. Scholars still argue about this one. Some think Luke meant an earlier census, and the Greek can be read as before Quirinius. Also, in Acts 5:36 the teacher Gamaliel mentions a rebel named Theudas, but Josephus puts a Theudas around AD 45, after Gamaliel's speech. It may be a different Theudas, since it was a common name, or one of the writers got the timing mixed up. We tell you, because a fair witness shows his whole hand.

EXHIBIT 2

TACITUS

Rome's greatest historian, and no fan of Christians

WHO	Publius Cornelius Tacitus, a Roman senator, governor of the province of Asia and the most respected historian of ancient Rome.
WHEN	He wrote the Annals around AD 116, about 85 years after the crucifixion.
WHERE	Annals book 15, section 44, in the story of the Great Fire of Rome in July of AD 64.
MANUSCRIPT	Books 11 to 16 of the Annals survive in one main manuscript, copied in the 1000s at the monastery of Monte Cassino in Italy. It is now in the Laurentian Library in Florence.

Rome burned for six days. People blamed Emperor Nero, so Nero found someone else to blame.

> **TACITUS, ANNALS 15.44 · CHURCH AND BRODRIBB TRANSLATION, 1876**
> *Consequently, to get rid of the report, Nero fastened the guilt and inflicted the most exquisite tortures on a class hated for their abominations, called Christians by the populace. Christus, from whom the name had its origin, suffered the extreme penalty during the reign of Tiberius at the hands of one of our procurators, Pontius Pilatus, and a most mischievous superstition, thus checked for the moment, again broke out not only in Judaea, the first source of the evil, but even in Rome.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP
Christ was a real person. He was executed, and the extreme penalty for a non Roman meant crucifixion. It happened under Emperor Tiberius, who ruled AD 14 to 37, by order of Pontius Pilate. The movement started in Judea and had reached Rome by the 60s. That is the Gospel timeline in one sentence from a man who could not stand Christians.

THE TITLE PUZZLE
Tacitus calls Pilate a procurator. A stone found at Caesarea in 1961 calls him a prefect. The title changed under Emperor Claudius, so Tacitus was probably using the word people used in his own day. Skeptics once called it a mistake that proved fakery. It is more like calling an old car a vintage car.

CHRISTIANS OR CHRESTIANS
Under ultraviolet light the manuscript shows that the word Christians was first written Chrestians and later corrected. It may mean the crowd in Rome said it wrong, or a copyist slipped. Either way it does not change the line about Christus.

WHERE DID HE GET IT
Tacitus does not say. He may have used Roman records, police reports from the trials, or what Christians themselves said. His friend Pliny the Younger, Exhibit 3, questioned Christians a few years earlier. Tacitus was careful and usually checked sources.

IS IT FAKE
Almost no scholars think so. The tone is hostile, the Latin is pure Tacitus, and no Christian would call his own faith a mischievous superstition. Fun fact: the part of the Annals that covered AD 29 to 31 is lost, and that may include the year Jesus died. So we will never know if Tacitus said more.

CONFIDENCE
HIGH.

EXHIBIT 3

PLINY THE YOUNGER

A Roman governor writes to the emperor for advice

WHO	Gaius Plinius Caecilius Secundus, a Roman lawyer and the governor of Bithynia and Pontus, in what is now northern Turkey. His uncle was Pliny the Elder, who died in the eruption of Mount Vesuvius.
WHEN	About AD 111 to 113. Letter 10.96, with Emperor Trajan's answer in letter 10.97.

MANUSCRIPT	Book 10 of his letters came down through one very old manuscript copied around AD 500 and kept at the abbey of Saint Victor in Paris. Aldus Manutius printed it in Venice in 1508. Only six leaves of that old book still exist, now at the Morgan Library in New York, and they hold other letters, not this one.

Pliny had a problem. People kept being accused of being Christians, and he was not sure what to do with them. So he wrote to the emperor and described what he had learned, partly by questioning two slave women the Christians called deaconesses, under torture.

> **PLINY, LETTERS 10.96 · MELMOTH TRANSLATION, REVISED BY BOSANQUET**
> *They were in the habit of meeting on a certain fixed day before it was light, when they sang in alternate verses a hymn to Christ, as to a god, and bound themselves by a solemn oath, not to any wicked deeds, but never to commit any fraud, theft or adultery, never to falsify their word, nor deny a trust when they should be called upon to deliver it up.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP

By about 80 years after the cross, Christians were in big numbers in Turkey, in cities and villages, men and women, slave and free. They worshiped Christ as God, not just as a dead teacher. They met early on a set day, which fits Sunday worship. They had women serving as deacons, like Phoebe in Romans 16:1. And they would die rather than curse Christ.

WHAT IT DOES NOT DO

Pliny says nothing about the life of Jesus. He is a witness to what Christians believed and did, not to Jesus' biography.

TRAJAN'S ANSWER

Do not hunt Christians down. Do not accept anonymous accusations. But if someone is proven to be a Christian and will not worship the Roman gods, punish him. In other words, being a Christian was itself a crime.

CONFIDENCE

HIGH that the letter is real.

EXHIBIT 4

SUETONIUS

The palace secretary who loved juicy details

WHO	Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus, a secretary to Emperor Hadrian with access to the imperial archives.
WHEN	The Lives of the Twelve Caesars, about AD 121.
MANUSCRIPT	The oldest copy is a manuscript in Paris copied in the 800s.

> **SUETONIUS, LIFE OF CLAUDIUS 25.4 · J. C. ROLFE TRANSLATION, 1914**
> *Since the Jews constantly made disturbances at the instigation of Chrestus, he expelled them from Rome.*

> **SUETONIUS, LIFE OF NERO 16.2 · J. C. ROLFE TRANSLATION, 1914**
> *Punishment was inflicted on the Christians, a class of men given to a new and mischievous superstition.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP
Acts 18:2 says Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth because Claudius had ordered all Jews to leave Rome. Suetonius confirms that expulsion. A later writer, Orosius, dates it to AD 49, which fits Paul's timeline in Acts.

WHO WAS CHRESTUS
Most scholars think Chrestus is a misspelling of Christus. Chrestus was a common slave name, and Greeks and Romans often mixed the two up. The fights were probably Jews arguing about whether Jesus was the Messiah. Suetonius seems to think Chrestus was in Rome stirring things up himself, which shows he only half understood the story. Some scholars think it was some other troublemaker named Chrestus.

CONFIDENCE
MEDIUM that Chrestus means Christ. HIGH that Nero punished Christians.

EXHIBIT 5

MARA BAR SERAPION

A father's letter from prison

WHO	Mara, son of Serapion, from Samosata in Syria, writing to his son. He was probably not a Christian.
WHEN	Sometime after AD 73. Most scholars place it in the late first century, though some say later.
MANUSCRIPT	One Syriac manuscript from the 500s or 600s, bought by the British Museum in 1843 and now in the British Library. William Cureton published the first English translation in 1855.

Mara tells his son that wisdom outlasts cruelty. He gives three examples: the Athenians who killed Socrates, the people of Samos who burned Pythagoras, and the Jews who killed their wise king.

> MARA BAR SERAPION, LETTER TO HIS SON · AFTER CURETON, 1855
> *What advantage did the Jews gain from the murder of their wise king, seeing that from that very time their kingdom was driven away from them?*

WHAT IT BACKS UP
Mara never says the name Jesus. But Pilate's sign over the cross called Jesus the King of the Jews, Mark 15:26. Mara says the wise king lives on through the new law he gave, and that the Jews lost their kingdom soon after, which happened in AD 70. Most scholars think he means Jesus.

CONFIDENCE
MEDIUM. The date and the meaning are both debated.

EXHIBIT 6

THALLUS AND PHLEGON

Two pagan writers and a very dark afternoon

The Gospels say darkness covered the land from noon to three o'clock while Jesus was on the cross, Mark 15:33. Two pagan writers seem to mention a darkness like it. Their own books are lost. We only know them because Christian writers quoted them.

THALLUS
A historian who wrote a history of the Mediterranean world, maybe around AD 52, though his date is debated. His work is lost. Julius Africanus, a Christian writing around AD 221, quotes him. Africanus' book is also lost, but a Byzantine monk named George Syncellus copied the quote around AD 800.

> JULIUS AFRICANUS, CHRONOGRAPHY, FRAGMENT 18 · ANTE NICENE FATHERS TRANSLATION
> *On the whole world there pressed a most fearful darkness; and the rocks were rent by an earthquake, and many places in Judea and other districts were thrown down. This darkness Thallus, in the third book of his History, calls, as appears to me without reason, an eclipse of the sun.*

WHY IT MATTERS
If Africanus is right, a pagan historian writing only about 20 years after the cross knew the story of the darkness and tried to explain it away as an eclipse. You do not explain away something nobody is talking about.

AFRICANUS' COMEBACK
He pointed out that a solar eclipse cannot happen at Passover, because Passover falls at full moon, when the moon is on the far side of the earth from the sun. Score one for Africanus.

PHLEGON
Phlegon of Tralles, a freed slave of Emperor Hadrian, wrote a history called the Olympiads around AD 140. Eusebius and others quote him saying that in the fourth year of the 202nd Olympiad, which is AD 32 or 33, there was the greatest eclipse ever known. At noon the day turned into night, stars came out, and a great earthquake in Bithynia knocked down buildings in the city of Nicaea. Origen adds that Phlegon also wrote about some of Jesus' predictions coming true.

THE HONEST DEBATE
Neither fragment, as it survives, names Jesus. Phlegon may have been describing a real eclipse that crossed the region on November 24, AD 29. And the quotes come to us secondhand. These are interesting clues, not courtroom proof.

CONFIDENCE
LOW to MEDIUM.

EXHIBIT 7

LUCIAN OF SAMOSATA

A Greek comedian roasts the Christians

WHO	A Greek satirist, the stand up comedian of his day. He made fun of philosophers, priests, gods and anyone gullible.
WHEN	The Passing of Peregrinus, about AD 165.

The story is about a con man named Peregrinus who joined the Christians, got rich off their kindness and became a big shot among them, until they kicked him out.

> LUCIAN, THE PASSING OF PEREGRINUS 13 · H. W. AND F. G. FOWLER TRANSLATION, 1905
> *The Christians, you know, worship a man to this day, the distinguished personage who introduced their novel rites, and was crucified on that account.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP
Christians worshiped a man who was crucified. In section 11 Lucian adds that he was crucified in Palestine. Lucian also says Christians looked after each other in prison,

shared everything, called each other brothers and were not afraid to die. He meant it as a joke about how easy they were to fool. It reads like a compliment.

CONFIDENCE

HIGH that it is real. He tells us what pagans knew, not anything new about Jesus' life.

EXHIBIT 8

CELSUS

The first book written against Christianity

WHO	A Greek philosopher who wrote The True Word, an all out attack on Christianity.
WHEN	About AD 175 to 180. His book is lost, but around AD 248 Origen wrote a long answer called Against Celsus that quotes a large part of it.

> **CELSUS, QUOTED IN ORIGEN, AGAINST CELSUS 1.28 · ANTE NICENE FATHERS TRANSLATION**
> *Having hired himself out as a servant in Egypt on account of his poverty, and having there acquired some miraculous powers, on which the Egyptians greatly pride themselves, he returned to his own country, highly elated on account of them, and by means of these proclaimed himself a God.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP

Celsus attacked Jesus with everything he had, and he never said Jesus did not exist. He admits Jesus did amazing things. He just says it was Egyptian magic. That matches what Jesus' enemies said in the Gospels: He casts out demons by the prince of demons, Mark 3:22. Celsus also knew about the trip to Egypt, Matthew 2:14.

THE NASTY RUMOR

Celsus repeats a story that Jesus' real father was a Roman soldier named Panthera. Many scholars think this was a mean joke on the Greek word parthenos, which means virgin. Either way, it shows that even Jesus' enemies knew Christians claimed He was born of a virgin, and they knew there was something unusual about His birth.

CONFIDENCE

HIGH that Celsus wrote it. It is hostile testimony.

EXHIBIT 9

THE TALMUD

What some rabbis said

WHAT	The Talmud is the giant collection of Jewish teaching and debate. The Babylonian Talmud was finished around AD 500, but it contains older sayings.
WHERE	Sanhedrin 43a. The passage is labeled as an older teaching, which would place it in roughly AD 70 to 200, though scholars debate that.
MANUSCRIPTS	Christian censors cut this passage from many printed editions starting in the 1500s. It survives in medieval manuscripts copied before the censors got to work.

> BABYLONIAN TALMUD, SANHEDRIN 43A · RETOLD IN PLAIN ENGLISH
> *On the eve of Passover they hanged Yeshu. For forty days before, a herald went out saying he would be stoned because he practiced sorcery and led Israel astray, and anyone who knew something in his defense should come and say it. Nobody did, so they hanged him on the eve of Passover. The passage adds that Yeshu had five disciples.*

WHAT IT BACKS UP
A man called Yeshu, which is Jesus in Hebrew, was executed on the eve of Passover. John 19:14 puts the crucifixion on the day of preparation for Passover. Hanged is a word the New Testament also uses for crucifixion, Galatians 3:13. The charge of sorcery matches what His enemies said about His miracles. And the passage admits the Jewish leaders were involved.

THE DEBATE
Some scholars, like Peter Schäfer, think these Talmud stories are later answers to the Gospels, written to mock them, not independent history. Others doubt the passage is about Jesus of Nazareth at all. The forty day herald also does not fit the Gospels, where the trial was quick. Read it as what some rabbis believed centuries later, not as an eyewitness account.

TOLEDOT YESHU
A collection of Jewish stories called Toledot Yeshu, from the Middle Ages, tells a mocking life of Jesus. It is far too late to be history.

CONFIDENCE
MEDIUM that it refers to Jesus. LOW as independent history.

EXHIBIT 10

THE FIRST CHRISTIANS AFTER THE APOSTLES

Writings that are not in the Bible

These men were Christians, so they are not neutral. But they are early, and several of them knew the apostles or their students personally.

CLEMENT OF ROME, ABOUT AD 96
A leader in the church at Rome wrote to the church in Corinth. He talks about Peter and Paul as heroes of his own generation who died for their faith.

IGNATIUS OF ANTIOCH, ABOUT AD 110
On his way to be thrown to the lions in Rome, he wrote seven letters. He hammers on the facts of Jesus' life because some people were saying Jesus only seemed to have a body.

> IGNATIUS, LETTER TO THE TRALLIANS 9 · J. B. LIGHTFOOT TRANSLATION, 1891
> *Jesus Christ, who was of the race of David, who was the Son of Mary, who was truly born and ate and drank, was truly persecuted under Pontius Pilate, was truly crucified and died.*

POLYCARP OF SMYRNA, DIED ABOUT AD 155
A student of the apostle John, according to Irenaeus. When told to curse Christ or burn, he said he had served Him 86 years and He had never done him wrong. They burned him.

PAPIAS, ABOUT AD 110 TO 130
He collected what the apostles' followers remembered. He said Mark wrote down what Peter preached, and Matthew collected Jesus' sayings.

QUADRATUS, ABOUT AD 125
He wrote to Emperor Hadrian that some of the people Jesus healed or raised from the dead were still alive in his own lifetime. Eusebius preserved the quote. That is a bold claim to make to an emperor if it was easy to check and false.

JUSTIN MARTYR, ABOUT AD 155
A philosopher who became a Christian. He told the emperor he could check Jesus' birth in the census records of Quirinius and the records of Pontius Pilate. We do not have those records today, so we cannot test the claim.

EXHIBIT 11

PHYSICAL EVIDENCE

Stones, a ring, coins and a cartoon

THE PILATE STONE
A limestone block found in 1961 in the theater at Caesarea Maritima. Its Latin inscription names Pontius Pilate, Prefect of Judea, and a building he dedicated to Emperor Tiberius. It is in the Israel Museum in Jerusalem. CONFIDENCE: HIGH.

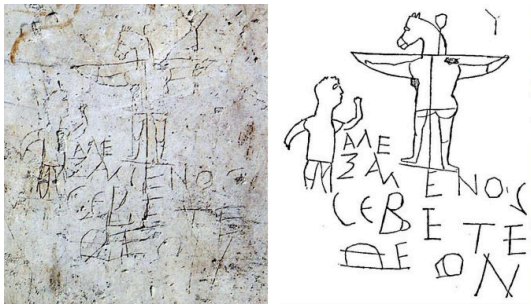
THE PILATE RING
A small copper alloy ring found in 1968 or 1969 at Herodium. In 2018 scholars cleaned and photographed it and read the name Pilatus. It may have belonged to someone who worked for Pilate. CONFIDENCE: MEDIUM that it is connected to him.

PILATE'S COINS
Pilate minted small bronze coins around AD 29 to 31. Some show a priest's staff and a ladle used in pagan rituals, a strange choice in a Jewish land. They fit Philo's description of Pilate. CONFIDENCE: HIGH.

PHILO OF ALEXANDRIA
A Jewish philosopher who lived at the same time as Jesus. Around AD 41 he described Pilate as stubborn, harsh and cruel. That fits the Pilate of Luke 13:1 and Josephus. Philo never mentions Jesus.

THE CAIAPHAS OSSUARY
The bone box of the high priest who put Jesus on trial. See the Field Notes page in Matthew, p.1595. CONFIDENCE: HIGH.

THE JAMES OSSUARY
A bone box announced in 2002 with the words James, son of Joseph, brother of Jesus. The Israel Antiquities Authority said the last part was forged. Its owner was put on trial, and in 2012 a judge found him not guilty of forgery but said that did not prove the box was real. Experts are still split. CONFIDENCE: LOW. Do not lean on it.



The Alexamenos graffito, Palatine Museum, Rome. Left, the wall. Right, a tracing. Public domain.

THE ALEXAMENOS GRAFFITO
A cartoon scratched into a wall on Palatine Hill in Rome, around AD 200. It shows a man worshiping a crucified figure with a donkey's head. The caption says Alexamenos worships his god. It is the oldest known picture of the crucifixion, and it is an insult. Pagans thought worshiping a crucified man was ridiculous, 1 Corinthians 1:23. CONFIDENCE: HIGH that it mocks Christians.

CLOSING ARGUMENT

WHAT THE WITNESSES AGREE ON

Put them all together

Take away the Bible completely, and from these outside sources alone you can still piece together the following:

#	THE FACT	WHO SAYS SO
1	Jesus was a real Jewish man who lived in the early first century.	Josephus, Tacitus, the Talmud, Celsus
2	He was known as a wise teacher who did amazing deeds.	Josephus, Celsus, the Talmud
3	Some Jewish leaders brought charges against Him.	Josephus, the Talmud, Mara
4	He was executed by crucifixion under Pontius Pilate while Tiberius was emperor.	Tacitus, Josephus, Lucian
5	He was put to death around Passover.	The Talmud
6	His followers did not give up. They said He appeared to them alive.	Josephus, the Arabic version
7	He was called the Christ, and His followers were named Christians after Him.	Josephus, Tacitus, Suetonius, Pliny
8	Within a few decades Christians were in Rome and Turkey, worshiping Christ as God, and dying for it.	Tacitus, Suetonius, Pliny, Lucian
9	He had a brother named James, who was killed in Jerusalem around AD 62.	Josephus
10	John the Baptist was a real preacher killed by Herod Antipas.	Josephus

The Scorecard

WITNESS	WRITTEN	NAMES HIM AS	CONFIDENCE
Josephus, Testimonium	AD 93	Jesus, a wise man	HIGH core, LOW additions
Josephus, James	AD 93	Jesus called Christ	HIGH
Thallus	about AD 52?	Darkness only	LOW to MEDIUM
Mara bar Serapion	after AD 73	The wise king	MEDIUM
Pliny	AD 112	Christ	HIGH

WITNESS	WRITTEN	NAMES HIM AS	CONFIDENCE
Tacitus	AD 116	Christus	HIGH
Suetonius	AD 121	Chrestus	MEDIUM
Phlegon	AD 140	Darkness only	LOW
Lucian	AD 165	The crucified man	HIGH
Celsus	AD 178	Jesus	HIGH
Talmud	AD 200 to 500	Yeshu	MEDIUM

How Does That Compare

Alexander the Great died in 323 BC. The oldest full biographies of him that survive, by Plutarch and Arrian, were written around 400 years later. Nobody doubts Alexander existed. For Jesus we have four Gospels within about 60 years, Paul's letters within about 20 years, and outside witnesses starting within one lifetime. For a poor preacher from Nazareth who never led an army or ruled a city, that is a lot of paperwork.

What About People Who Say He Never Existed

There is a small group, sometimes called mythicists, who say Jesus never lived. A few have academic degrees, like Richard Carrier. But they are a tiny minority. Bart Ehrman, a well known scholar who is not a Christian and argues against much of the Bible, wrote a whole book in 2012 called Did Jesus Exist? His answer was yes, and he said nearly every expert agrees. Historians argue about who Jesus was. Very few argue about whether He was.

The Real Question

History can show you that Jesus lived, taught, was crucified under Pilate and that His followers said He rose from the dead. History cannot make you believe He did. That part is between you and Him. As Jesus asked Peter in Mark 8:29, But what about you? Who do you say I am?

Read It Yourself

Most of these books are free online. Search for Whiston Josephus Antiquities, Tacitus Annals Church and Brodribb, Pliny Letters book 10, Suetonius Lives of the Caesars, Lucian Peregrinus, Origen Against Celsus and the Ante Nicene Fathers. The Codex Sinaiticus is at codexsinaiticus.org/en. Check our work. That is what a good jury does.

So Jesus really lived. But some people say His story was copied from older gods like Horus and Mithras. Is that true?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: IS JESUS JUST A COPY OF HORUS, MITHRAS AND KRISHNA?

BONUS SECTION · MYTH OR HISTORY?

Is Jesus Just a Copy of Horus, Mithras and Krishna?

The internet says Jesus is an old myth with a new name. Here is what the old myths really say.

THE CLAIM	Long before Jesus, gods like Horus, Mithras and Krishna were said to be born of a virgin, many on December 25, with 12 disciples. They did miracles, died and rose again. So the Jesus story was copied.
WHERE YOU HEARD IT	The online movie Zeitgeist in 2007, Bill Maher's movie Religulous in 2008, and now endless TikToks and memes.
WHERE IT STARTED	Writers in the late 1700s and 1800s, before anyone could read most of the ancient sources they were talking about.
THE VERDICT	False. When you read the real myths, the matches mostly disappear. The ones that are left are small or come from after Jesus.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH. Even scholars who are not Christians reject the copycat claim.

The Story You Have Probably Heard

It usually starts with Horus. A narrator in a deep voice says that Horus, the god of ancient Egypt, was born of a virgin on December 25. A star in the east announced his birth, and three kings came to see him. He was a teacher at 12, baptized at 30, and had 12 disciples. He walked on water, was crucified, buried for three days, and rose again.

Then the list goes on. Attis, Krishna, Dionysus, Mithras. The same story, again and again, thousands of years before Jesus. So the Bible must have copied it, right?

It sounds convincing for about two minutes. Then you go and read what the Egyptians, Persians, Greeks and Indians actually wrote about their own gods.

Where This Idea Came From

THE 1700s AND 1800s. In 1795 a French writer named Charles Dupuis claimed that all religions, including Christianity, were really stories about the sun and the stars. In the 1800s and early 1900s Godfrey Higgins, Kersey Graves and Gerald Massey added more. Graves wrote a book in 1875 called The World's Sixteen Crucified Saviors. Massey wrote most of the Horus claims you see online today.

THE PROBLEM. None of these men could really read Egyptian. Egyptian hieroglyphs had only been cracked in 1822, and good translations were still rare. They often gave no sources at all. Later scholars checked and could not find their claims in the ancient texts.

THE GOLDEN BOUGH. In 1890 a Scottish scholar named James Frazer grouped many gods together as dying and rising gods, gods of the harvest who die every winter and come back every spring. That idea was popular for a long time.

THE INTERNET. In 1999 a writer using the name Acharya S put the old claims into a book called The Christ Conspiracy. In 2007 the online movie Zeitgeist turned them into a slick video watched by millions. From there they went everywhere.

Horus: The Real Story

Horus was one of the most important gods of ancient Egypt. He was shown as a falcon, or as a man with a falcon's head. Every pharaoh was said to be the living Horus on earth.

HIS BIRTH. His father was the god Osiris and his mother was the goddess Isis. Osiris was murdered by his jealous brother Set, who cut his body into pieces. Isis found the pieces and put him back together, and brought him back to life just long enough to conceive a son. That is not a virgin birth. Isis was Osiris's wife.

HIS CHILDHOOD. Isis hid baby Horus in the papyrus swamps of the Nile Delta to keep him safe from Set.

HIS LIFE. When he grew up, Horus fought Set for the throne of Egypt. In one battle Set tore out Horus's eye, and in most versions the god Thoth healed it. That is the famous Eye of Horus. In the end the gods made Horus king.

BORN ON DECEMBER 25?	No ancient Egyptian text says so. Egyptians celebrated his birth on their own calendar. A Greek writer named Plutarch, about AD 100, says the child Horus was born near the shortest day of winter, early and weak. That is close to December, but it is not December 25, and it is not a virgin birth.
A VIRGIN MOTHER?	No. Isis was married to Osiris. Online you may see her called Isis Meri, but Meri just means beloved, and it was not her name.
A STAR AND THREE KINGS?	Not in any Egyptian source.
BAPTIZED BY ANUP THE BAPTIZER?	There is no such person. Anubis, sometimes called Anup, was a jackal headed god of the dead.
12 DISCIPLES?	No. Horus had four sons who guarded the dead, but no 12 disciples.
CRUCIFIED AND RISEN?	No. Horus is never crucified. In one Egyptian story baby Horus dies from a scorpion sting in the swamps, and Thoth brings him back. That is a baby healed in a marsh, not a man raised from a tomb after three days.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that almost every claim in the Horus list is made up.

Mithras: The Real Story

There are really two Mithras, and the internet mixes them up.

MITHRA OF PERSIA. In old Persian and Indian religion, Mitra or Mithra was a god of promises and agreements, linked to the light of the sun. He is praised in the Avesta, the holy book of the Zoroastrians. There is no story of a virgin birth, 12 disciples, death or resurrection.

MITHRAS OF ROME. The Mithras most people mean was the god of a secret Roman club for men, popular with soldiers. Members met in small, dark rooms built to look like caves, and moved up through seven ranks. The oldest real evidence for this religion comes from the late first century AD, after the time of Jesus and after Christianity had already spread to Rome. So if anyone copied, it was not the Christians. Plutarch says some pirates kept secret rites for Mithra in 67 BC, but he wrote that 150 years later, and nothing links those pirates to the Roman club.

HIS BIRTH. Roman Mithras was born out of a rock as a young man, holding a dagger and a torch. A few carvings show shepherds watching. A rock is not a virgin, and he was never a baby in a manger.

HIS STORY. His big deed was killing a bull. That scene was carved in almost every Mithras temple. Then he shared a meal with the sun god and rode off with him in his chariot. He never dies, so he never rises.



Mithras killing the bull, a Roman marble carving from the 100s or 200s AD, Louvre, Paris. Photo by Jastrow, public domain.

BORN ON DECEMBER 25?	No ancient source says so. A Roman calendar from AD 354 lists December 25 as the birthday of the Unconquered Sun, Sol Invictus. Some think Emperor Aurelian started that festival in AD 274, when he built a temple to the sun, but no ancient writer says so. Some modern writers guess the Mithras club kept it too, but there is no proof.
12 DISCIPLES?	No. Some carvings show the 12 signs of the zodiac around him. Signs of the zodiac are not disciples.

A SACRED MEAL?	Members did share a meal, and the Christian writer Tertullian, about AD 200, said it looked like a copy of the Lord's Supper. He thought the copying went the other way.
SUNDAY?	Christians met on the first day of the week because Jesus rose that day, Acts 20:7 and Revelation 1:10. That was settled before Roman Mithras was popular.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH. The Roman Mithras religion grew up after Christianity, not before.

Krishna: The Real Story

Krishna is one of the most loved gods in Hinduism. Many Hindus believe he is the eighth avatar, or earthly form, of the god Vishnu. Others worship him as the highest God himself. His teaching in the Bhagavad Gita is one of the most famous religious texts in the world.

HIS BIRTH. Krishna's mother was Devaki and his father was Vasudeva. He was their eighth son. That means his mother was not a virgin. She had already had seven children.

THE WICKED KING. A voice warned Devaki's brother, the wicked King Kamsa, that her eighth son would kill him. So Kamsa locked the couple in prison and killed their babies. When Krishna was born, his father carried him across the Yamuna River to safety, and cowherders raised him. This does sound a little like King Herod in Matthew 2. But while Krishna killing Kamsa is an old story, the part about killing the babies first shows up in Hindu books written after the time of Jesus.

HIS LIFE. As a boy Krishna played tricks, stole butter, played the flute and killed demons. As a man he was a prince and a warrior, and he drove the chariot of the hero Arjuna in a great war.

HIS DEATH. A hunter named Jara mistook Krishna's foot for a deer and shot him with an arrow. Krishna died and returned to his home in the heavens. He was not crucified, and he did not rise from the dead.

BORN OF A VIRGIN?	No. He was his mother's eighth son.
BORN ON DECEMBER 25?	No. His birthday, Janmashtami, is in August or September.
A STAR IN THE EAST?	No. One Hindu book says the stars were lucky the night he was born, but no star leads anyone to him.
KRISHNA AND CHRIST SOUND ALIKE?	Only in English. Krishna is Sanskrit for dark or black. Christ is Greek for anointed one. They are not related.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that the big claims are false. MEDIUM for the baby killing king, which is real but written down late.

Attis: The Real Story

Attis came from Phrygia, in what is now Turkey. He was the young lover of the mother goddess Cybele.

HIS BIRTH. Here the internet is half right. In one Greek version, his mother Nana became pregnant when she put an almond, or in another version a pomegranate, in her lap. So yes, it is an odd kind of virgin birth. But it came from a fruit that grew from the blood of a wild, half monster god. That is not exactly Luke 1.

HIS DEATH. Attis was about to marry a princess. Cybele, also called Agdistis, was jealous and drove him mad, and he cut off his own private parts under a pine tree and died. His priests copied him by doing the same thing to themselves. This story does not get better from here.

DID HE RISE? In the stories we have, no, and they were written after Jesus. One says Zeus kept his body from rotting, so his hair kept growing and his little finger kept moving. Another says he turned into a pine tree. A Roman festival in March later celebrated joy for Attis, but clear evidence that people saw it as a rising from the dead comes from after Christianity spread.

BORN ON DECEMBER 25?	No. His festival was in March.
CRUCIFIED?	No. He died under a pine tree from a wound he gave himself.
RISEN AFTER THREE DAYS?	No early source says so.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that the Zeitgeist version is wrong.

Dionysus: The Real Story

Dionysus, called Bacchus by the Romans, was the Greek god of wine, parties and wild worship.

HIS BIRTH. His father was Zeus and his mother was Semele, a human princess. Zeus slept with her, so she was no virgin. Zeus's jealous wife Hera tricked Semele into asking to see Zeus in all his glory, and she burned up on the spot. Zeus saved the unborn baby and sewed him into his own thigh until he was ready to be born. That is why Dionysus was called twice born.

A DIFFERENT DEATH. In a later version, a baby Dionysus called Zagreus was torn apart and eaten by giant gods called Titans. Zeus saved his heart and he was born again. Being eaten and born again as a new baby is not the same as walking out of a tomb in the same body.

WINE MIRACLES. This part is real. The Greek writer Pausanias, in the 100s AD, says that at a festival in Elis, priests sealed three empty pots in a building overnight, and in the morning they were full of wine. Jesus turned water into wine too, John 2. But a god of wine having a wine trick at his own party is not a big surprise, and the stories look nothing alike.

BORN OF A VIRGIN ON DECEMBER 25?	No to both.
KING OF KINGS, ONLY BEGOTTEN SON, ALPHA AND OMEGA?	No ancient source calls him these. Those are Bible titles for Jesus, 1 Timothy 6:15, John 3:16 and Revelation 22:13, pasted onto Dionysus.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH for most claims. The wine miracles are a real but shallow match.

The Rest of the List

OSIRIS. The Egyptian god of the dead. Murdered and cut up by Set, put back together by Isis. He did not return to life on earth. He went down to rule the underworld. Christians believe Jesus rose to new life in the same body, Luke 24:39.

TAMMUZ. A Babylonian shepherd god, Dumuzi in Sumerian, whose death was mourned every year. The Bible itself mentions it. God showed Ezekiel women weeping for Tammuz at the temple gate and called it an abomination, Ezekiel 8:13 to 15. The Bible knew these gods and rejected them. One Sumerian poem says Dumuzi and his sister took turns, each spending half the year in the underworld.

BUDDHA. Born in India about 400 to 500 years before Jesus. His mother Maya was married to King Suddhodana. A later legend says she dreamed of a white elephant before he was born. He taught that suffering ends when desire ends, and he died at about 80 after eating a meal. He never claimed to be God and never claimed to rise.

THE SIXTEEN SAVIORS. Kersey Graves's 1875 list of crucified saviors included gods from Mexico, India, Persia and more. Almost none of them were crucified in any ancient source. Even skeptical writers today call his book unreliable.

The Star Signs Theory

Zeitgeist also says Jesus is really the sun moving through the sky. Here is how that works, and why it does not.

GOD'S SUN. The movie says Jesus is God's Sun, the light of the world. But son and sun only sound alike in English. The New Testament was written in Greek, where son is huios and sun is helios. Jesus did not speak English.

THE THREE KINGS. The movie says the three kings are the three stars of Orion's Belt, which point to the star Sirius. But the Bible never says there were three wise men, and it never calls them kings. It says magi came with three kinds of gifts, Matthew 2:11. The number three and the word kings come from later tradition.

DEAD FOR THREE DAYS. The movie says the sun stops moving south for three days in December, near the Southern Cross, then rises again on December 25. But the Southern Cross is far south in the sky, nowhere near the sun's path. And the Bible never gives December 25 as Jesus' birthday. See Was Jesus Born on December 25?, Luke, p.1649.

TWELVE DISCIPLES. The movie says the 12 disciples are the 12 signs of the zodiac. Jesus chose 12 because Israel had 12 tribes, Matthew 19:28. That number came from Genesis, not from the stars.

What the Experts Say

NOT JUST CHRISTIANS. Bart Ehrman is one of the best known New Testament scholars in the world, and he is not a Christian. In his 2012 book Did Jesus Exist?, he says Jesus certainly existed, and he says many of the claims about pagan gods like Horus are not found in any ancient source. See Exhibit A, Jesus in History, p.2120.

DYING AND RISING GODS. Scholars later took Frazer's idea apart. In 1987 Jonathan Z. Smith of the University of Chicago wrote that dying and rising gods are a modern category that does not really fit the ancient evidence. In 2001 Swedish scholar Tryggve Mettinger argued that a few gods, like Tammuz, Baal and Melqart, really were said to die and come back. But he also said there is no proof the story of Jesus was built on them.

THE BIG DIFFERENCE. Those gods die and return every year with the harvest, like spring after winter. Jesus died once, Hebrews 9:26, and rose once, at a real time, in a real place, and never died again, Romans 6:9.

Why Jesus Is Different

A REAL TIME AND PLACE. Myths happen once upon a time in a land far away. The Gospels name real rulers. Luke 3:1 dates John the Baptist's work to the fifteenth year of Emperor Tiberius, when Pontius Pilate governed Judea. Archaeologists have found a stone with Pilate's name on it, in 1961, and a bone box that may belong to the high priest Caiaphas, in 1990.

JEWISH FOLLOWERS. The first Christians were Jews who believed in one God and hated idols. They would sooner die than borrow from pagan gods, and some did. In Lystra, when people thought Paul and Barnabas were the gods Zeus and Hermes, the two of them tore their clothes in horror, Acts 14:11 to 15.

EARLY WITNESSES. Paul passed on a short creed that Jesus died, was buried, rose on the third day, and appeared to Peter, the twelve and more than 500 people at once, 1 Corinthians 15:3 to 8. Most scholars, even skeptics, date that creed to within a few years of the cross. That leaves very little time for a legend to grow.

NOT A MYTH. The letter of 2 Peter says, We did not follow cleverly devised myths, but we were eyewitnesses of His majesty, 2 Peter 1:16. Paul told a king that these things were not done in a corner, Acts 26:26.

Did the Early Christians Notice?

Yes, and they did not hide it. About AD 155, Justin Martyr wrote to the Roman emperor that when Christians say Jesus was born of a virgin, died and rose, they are saying nothing stranger than what Romans believe about the sons of Zeus. He thought the devil had tried to fake the coming of Christ ahead of time to confuse people. You do not have to agree with his answer. But it shows Christians were not secretly copying. They talked about both the likenesses and the differences in public.

The Verdict

Jesus is not a copy of Horus, Mithras, Krishna, Attis or Dionysus. Most of the matches on the internet lists were made up in the 1800s, and the few real ones are small, vague or come from after Christianity.

C.S. Lewis, who loved the old myths, came to Christ in 1931 after a long night talk with his friends J.R.R. Tolkien and Hugo Dyson. Tolkien showed him that the hunger in all those old stories, for a god who dies and brings life, was pointing at something real. In 1944 Lewis wrote that in Jesus, myth became fact. The old stories were people's dreams. Jesus is the day those dreams came true, in a real place, at a real time, with real witnesses.

God has put eternity into man's heart, Ecclesiastes 3:11. That is why people everywhere have longed for a Savior. The good news is that He really came.

Myths do not have eyewitnesses. Jesus did. So what happened to the men who said they saw Him alive again?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: HOW DID THE TWELVE APOSTLES DIE?

BONUS SECTION · NOBODY DIES FOR A LIE

How Did the Twelve Apostles Die?

What history says about the men who said they saw Jesus alive, and why it matters.

THE QUESTION	The apostles said they saw Jesus alive after He was crucified. What did that claim cost them?
THE SHORT ANSWER	Everything. The Bible and the early church say they were beaten, jailed, run out of town, and many were killed. Not one of them is ever recorded taking it back.
THE HONEST PART	For some apostles we have strong evidence. For others we only have legends written hundreds of years later, and they do not always agree. This page tells you which is which.
THE BIG IDEA	People die for lies they believe are true. Nobody dies for a lie they know is a lie. The apostles were in a position to know.

How Do We Know Anything About This?

The New Testament tells us how only two of the Twelve died. James, the brother of John, was killed for his faith. Judas Iscariot killed himself. For the rest, we depend on what Christians wrote after the Bible. Some of those writers were close to the events. Some were not. Here are the main kinds of sources, from best to worst.

THE BIBLE. Acts records the deaths of Stephen and James, and Jesus Himself predicted how Peter would die, John 21:18 to 19.

EARLY CHURCH WRITERS. Clement of Rome, about AD 96, wrote about Peter and Paul dying for their faith. He wrote from Rome, the city where later writers say they died. Later writers like Irenaeus, Tertullian, Origen and Clement of Alexandria added more, from about AD 180 to 250.

EUSEBIUS. About AD 325 the church historian Eusebius gathered many older reports in his Church History. He often quotes books that are now lost.

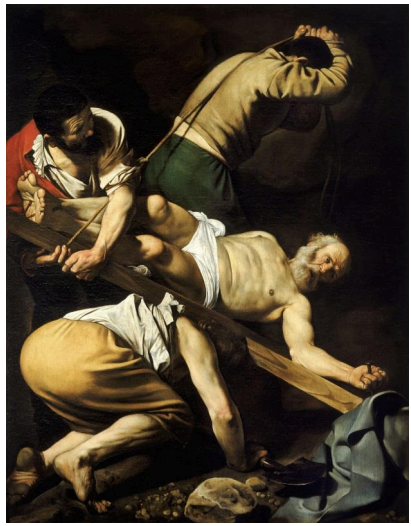
THE APOCRYPHAL ACTS. Books like the Acts of Peter, the Acts of Andrew and the Acts of Thomas were written from about AD 150 to 250 and later. They read like adventure novels, full of talking animals and wild miracles. They may keep some real memories, but you have to be careful with them.

MEDIEVAL LEGENDS. The Golden Legend, written in the 1260s, and Foxe's Book of Martyrs, from 1563, spread many of the stories you see online today. Most of their details cannot be traced back to early sources.

A Christian scholar named Sean McDowell spent years sorting all of this for his 2015 book The Fate of the Apostles. This page follows his kind of honest rating: HIGH when the evidence is strong, MEDIUM when it is likely, and LOW when it is only legend.

Peter

Peter was a fisherman, the loudest of the Twelve, and the one who denied Jesus three times on the night He was arrested. Fifty days later he was preaching in the streets of Jerusalem that Jesus had risen.



The Crucifixion of Saint Peter, by Caravaggio, 1601, Santa Maria del Popolo, Rome. Public domain.

HOW HE DIED	Crucified in Rome under Emperor Nero, about AD 64 to 67.
THE EVIDENCE	Jesus told Peter that when he was old, someone would stretch out his hands and take him where he did not want to go, to show by what kind of death he would glorify God, John 21:18 to 19. About AD 96, Clement of Rome wrote that Peter suffered many hardships and, having borne his witness, went to the place of glory. About AD 200, Tertullian said Peter was crucified in Rome like his Lord.
UPSIDE DOWN?	The Acts of Peter, about AD 180 to 190, says he asked to be crucified head down. Origen, about AD 250, says the same. Later, about AD 390, Jerome wrote that Peter felt he was not worthy to die the same way as Jesus. It is possible, but it comes from later sources.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that Peter died as a martyr in Rome. MEDIUM for upside down.

Andrew

Andrew was Peter's brother and one of the first two disciples to follow Jesus, John 1:35 to 42. He was the one who brought Peter to Jesus, and later brought the boy with the five loaves and two fish, John 6:8 to 9.

HOW HE DIED	Crucified at Patras, in Greece, according to the Acts of Andrew, written about AD 150 to 200. It says he was tied to the cross instead of nailed, so he suffered longer, and he preached to the crowd for days before he died.
CONFLICTING STORIES	Origen says Andrew preached in Scythia, near the Black Sea. The X shaped cross he is famous for, now on the flag of Scotland, comes from the Middle Ages. Early sources do not say what shape his cross was.
CONFIDENCE	MEDIUM that he was martyred. LOW for the X shaped cross.

James, Son of Zebedee

James and his brother John were fishermen whom Jesus nicknamed the Sons of Thunder, Mark 3:17. James was one of the three closest to Jesus, with Peter and John.

HOW HE DIED	Killed with the sword by King Herod Agrippa I in Jerusalem, about AD 44. He was the first of the Twelve to die for Jesus, Acts 12:1 to 2.
A STORY ABOUT HIS DEATH	Clement of Alexandria, about AD 200, as quoted by Eusebius, tells of the man who brought James to trial. When he saw James's courage, he became a believer on the spot, and the two were beheaded together.
ALSO TOLD	A medieval legend says James's body was carried to Spain. The famous pilgrimage to Santiago de Compostela grew from it.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH. It is in the Bible.

John

John was James's brother. Christians have long believed he was the beloved disciple Jesus spoke to from the cross, John 19:26 to 27. Jesus told James and John that they would drink the cup He would drink, Mark 10:39.

HOW HE DIED	Most early sources say John died of old age in Ephesus, in what is now Turkey, around AD 100, during the reign of Emperor Trajan. Irenaeus, about AD 180, says John lived in Ephesus until the time of Trajan. Irenaeus learned from Polycarp, who knew John. Polycrates of Ephesus, about AD 190, says John died there.
HE STILL SUFFERED	John was arrested and beaten with the other apostles, Acts 5:40, and later exiled to the island of Patmos for the word of God and the testimony of Jesus, Revelation 1:9. Tertullian, about AD 200, says John was dropped into boiling oil in Rome, came out unharmed, and was then sent to Patmos.

CONFLICTING STORIES	A fragment said to come from Papias, about AD 130, claims John was killed by the Jews. We only know it from writers who lived hundreds of years later, and most scholars doubt it.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that he suffered for his faith. MEDIUM to HIGH that he died of old age. LOW for the boiling oil.

Philip

Philip was from Bethsaida, the same town as Peter and Andrew. He brought Nathanael to Jesus, saying, Come and see, John 1:44 to 46.

HOW HE DIED	Philip died in Hierapolis, in what is now Turkey. About AD 190, Bishop Polycrates of Ephesus wrote that Philip, one of the Twelve, was buried there with two of his daughters. He does not say how Philip died.
CONFLICTING STORIES	The Acts of Philip, written in the 300s, says he was crucified upside down or hung by his ankles. Heracleon, about AD 170, lists Philip with apostles who did not die as martyrs. Some scholars also think Polycrates mixed him up with Philip the evangelist of Acts 6 and 21, who also had daughters.
HIS TOMB	In 2011 Italian archaeologists said they found a tomb in Hierapolis that early Christians honored as Philip's.
CONFIDENCE	MEDIUM to HIGH that he died in Hierapolis. LOW to MEDIUM that he was martyred.

Bartholomew

Bartholomew is probably the same man John calls Nathanael, the one Jesus called a true Israelite with nothing false in him, John 1:47. His name almost always appears next to Philip's.

HOW HE DIED	The most famous tradition says he preached in Armenia and was skinned alive and then beheaded or crucified there. The Armenian Apostolic Church honors him and Thaddeus as its founders. In Michelangelo's Last Judgment in the Sistine Chapel, Bartholomew holds his own skin.
CONFLICTING STORIES	Other legends say he was beheaded, crucified, or put in a sack and thrown into the sea. Eusebius says a teacher named Pantaenus visited India around AD 180 and found a Gospel of Matthew in Hebrew letters that Bartholomew had left there.
CONFIDENCE	LOW. The stories are late and do not agree, though Armenia is the strongest tradition.

Thomas

Thomas is remembered as Doubting Thomas, because he said he would not believe until he touched the wounds. When Jesus showed him, Thomas said, My Lord and my God, John 20:24 to 28. Before that, he was the one ready to die with Jesus, John 11:16.

HOW HE DIED	By tradition, speared to death in India. The Acts of Thomas, written in Syria in the early 200s, says soldiers of an Indian king killed him with spears.
THE INDIA EVIDENCE	The Acts of Thomas names a king called Gondophares. People once thought he was made up, but coins and an old stone inscription prove he was a real king who ruled part of what is now Pakistan and India in the first century. The Saint Thomas Christians of southern India say he came to them in AD 52 and was killed near what is now Chennai in AD 72. His traditional tomb is at the San Thome church there.
CONFLICTING STORIES	Origen says Thomas preached in Parthia, in Persia. Heracleon lists him with apostles who did not die as martyrs.
CONFIDENCE	MEDIUM. India is one of the strongest traditions we have for any apostle.

Matthew

Matthew, also called Levi, was a tax collector, a man most Jews hated as a traitor who worked for Rome. He left his tax booth to follow Jesus and threw a party for his friends, Luke 5:27 to 29.

HOW HE DIED	We do not know. Legends say he was killed in Ethiopia, in Persia or in Parthia, by sword, by spear, by fire or by stoning.
A SURPRISE	About AD 170 a teacher named Heracleon, quoted by Clement of Alexandria, said Matthew was not one of those who confessed Christ before judges and died for it. Heracleon was a Gnostic teacher the church rejected, but his list is one of the oldest we have.
CONFIDENCE	LOW for any one story.

James, Son of Alphaeus

We know almost nothing about this James except his name in the lists of the Twelve. He is often called James the Less, and in old writings he is easily mixed up with James the brother of Jesus.

HOW HE DIED	Legends say he was stoned in Jerusalem, crucified in Egypt, or sawn in pieces. Many of these stories really belong to James the brother of Jesus.
CONFIDENCE	LOW.

Thaddeus, Also Called Judas Son of James

Matthew and Mark call him Thaddeus. Luke and John call him Judas, not Iscariot, John 14:22. He asked Jesus at the Last Supper why He would show Himself to the disciples but not to the world.

HOW HE DIED	A popular tradition says he and Simon the Zealot preached together in Persia and were killed there, Thaddeus by a club or an axe, and Simon by being sawn in half.
CONFLICTING STORIES	Armenian tradition says he was martyred in Armenia. Other stories send him to Edessa, in what is now Turkey, but that may be a different Thaddeus, one of the seventy disciples Jesus sent out, Luke 10:1. Some Bibles say seventy two.
CONFIDENCE	LOW.

Simon the Zealot

The Zealots were Jews who wanted to drive the Romans out, by force if needed. Some scholars think Simon's name may just mean he was zealous for God's law. Jesus put Simon the Zealot on the same team as Matthew the tax collector, a man who had worked for Rome. Only Jesus could make that work.

HOW HE DIED	Legends disagree more for Simon than almost anyone. Sawn in half in Persia, crucified in Britain, crucified in Samaria, or died peacefully in Edessa.
A MIX UP	Hegesippus, about AD 170, says Simeon, a relative of Jesus who led the church in Jerusalem, was crucified at about 120 years old under Trajan. Some later writers mixed him up with Simon the Zealot.
CONFIDENCE	LOW.

Judas Iscariot

Judas was the treasurer of the Twelve, and he stole from the money bag, John 12:6. He sold Jesus for 30 pieces of silver.

HOW HE DIED	He killed himself. Matthew 27:5 says he hanged himself. Acts 1:18 says he fell headlong, his body burst open and his insides spilled out.
DO THEY CONFLICT?	Most Bible teachers see two views of the same death: he hanged himself, and his body later fell, maybe when the

	rope or the branch broke. Matthew tells how he died, and Luke, in Acts, tells what happened to the body.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH. It is in the Bible.

Notice the contrast. The apostle who betrayed Jesus died in guilt by his own hand. The others died, or suffered, for what they said they had seen.

Matthias, Who Took Judas's Place

After Jesus went up to heaven, the apostles needed a twelfth man who had been with them from John's baptism until Jesus was taken up, a witness of His resurrection, Acts 1:21 to 22. They cast lots and chose Matthias, Acts 1:26.

HOW HE DIED	Legends say he was stoned and then beheaded in Jerusalem, or that he preached and died in Ethiopia or in Colchis, in what is now Georgia.
CONFIDENCE	LOW.

Two More Witnesses: Paul and James

PAUL. Paul was not one of the Twelve, but he saw the risen Jesus on the road to Damascus, 1 Corinthians 15:8. He went from hunting Christians to being hunted. Five times the Jewish leaders gave him 39 lashes. He was beaten with rods three times, stoned once and shipwrecked three times, 2 Corinthians 11:24 to 25. Clement of Rome says he died for his faith. Tertullian and Eusebius say he was beheaded in Rome under Nero. Beheading was the death for a Roman citizen. CONFIDENCE: HIGH.

JAMES, THE BROTHER OF JESUS. During Jesus' ministry, His own brothers did not believe in Him, John 7:5. Then the risen Jesus appeared to James, 1 Corinthians 15:7, and James became the leader of the church in Jerusalem. The Jewish historian Josephus, who was not a Christian, says the high priest Ananus had James stoned in AD 62. Hegesippus says he was thrown from the temple, stoned and clubbed to death. CONFIDENCE: HIGH. What would it take for you to believe your brother was God?

STEPHEN. Not an apostle, but the first Christian martyr. He was stoned in Jerusalem while Saul, who later became Paul, watched over the coats of the men who stoned him, Acts 7:58 to 60 and 22:20.

What the Internet Lists Get Wrong

You have probably seen a meme that says all the apostles but John were martyred, with a gory death for each one. It is good preaching, but it overstates the case. For about half of the Twelve, all we have are legends from centuries later, and some early writers say a few of them died naturally.

Here is the good news. The argument does not depend on every apostle dying a martyr's death. It depends on something we know much more firmly: every one of them was willing to suffer for what he claimed to have seen. They were jailed and beaten, Acts 5:18 and 40. They were threatened and told to stop, and they an-

swered, We cannot stop speaking about what we have seen and heard, Acts 4:20. And in all the records, friendly or hostile, there is not one story of an apostle taking it back.

Nobody Dies For a Lie

BUT PEOPLE DIE FOR LIES ALL THE TIME? True. The men who flew the planes on September 11, 2001 died for a lie. So did the followers of Jim Jones in 1978 and the Heaven's Gate group in 1997. But they died for something they believed. They did not make it up. They got it from someone else.

THE APOSTLES WERE DIFFERENT. They did not get the resurrection secondhand. They said they saw Jesus alive, talked with Him and ate with Him, Acts 10:39 to 41 and 1 John 1:1 to 3. If it was a lie, they knew it was a lie, because they were the ones who would have made it up. People will die for a lie they believe. Nobody dies for a lie they know is a lie.

THEY GOT NOTHING FOR IT. People lie to get money, power, fame or safety. The apostles got poverty, prison, beatings and death. Paul said if Christ has not been raised, we are of all people most to be pitied, 1 Corinthians 15:19.

THEY COULD HAVE WALKED AWAY. Around AD 112, Pliny, the Roman governor from Exhibit A, wrote that he let Christians go free if they would curse Christ and worship the emperor's statue, and he executed those who would not. These were ordinary Christians years after the apostles, but they faced the same choice. A few words and a pinch of incense would have saved them.

SOMETHING CHANGED THEM. On the night Jesus was arrested, they all ran away, Mark 14:50. Peter swore three times that he did not even know Him. A few weeks later the same men stood up in front of the same leaders who killed Jesus and would not stop talking. Cowards do not turn into heroes for a story they invented.

THE WATERGATE TEST. Chuck Colson was one of President Nixon's top men and went to prison for a crime tied to the Watergate scandal. He later wrote that the most powerful men in America could not keep a lie together for even three weeks once they faced prison. Yet the apostles kept their story for decades, under beatings, prison and death, and not one of them broke. Colson said that is how he knew the resurrection was true.

What This Means for You

The apostles were not asking anyone to believe a nice idea. They were telling people what they saw. They bet their lives on it, and most of them lost their lives for it.

Jesus told Thomas, Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed, John 20:29. You were not there. But the people who were there put their names, their freedom and their lives behind one message: He is risen.

The Twelve at a Glance

PETER	Crucified in Rome, about AD 64 to 67. Maybe upside down. HIGH.
ANDREW	Crucified at Patras, Greece. The X cross is a later legend. MEDIUM.
JAMES, SON OF ZEBEDEE	Killed with the sword by Herod Agrippa I, about AD 44, Acts 12:2. HIGH.
JOHN	Exiled to Patmos. Died of old age in Ephesus, about AD 100. HIGH that he suffered, MEDIUM to HIGH for natural death.
PHILIP	Died in Hierapolis. Martyrdom stories are late. LOW to MEDIUM.
BARTHOLOMEW	Skinned alive in Armenia, by tradition. Other stories differ. LOW.
THOMAS	Speared in India, about AD 72, by tradition. MEDIUM.
MATTHEW	Unknown. Legends disagree, and one early source says natural death. LOW.
JAMES, SON OF ALPHAEUS	Unknown. Often mixed up with James the brother of Jesus. LOW.
THADDEUS	Killed in Persia or Armenia, by tradition. LOW.
SIMON THE ZEALOT	Sawn in half in Persia, by one tradition. Many others. LOW.
JUDAS ISCARIOT	Hanged himself, Matthew 27:5 and Acts 1:18. HIGH.
MATTHIAS	Stoned in Jerusalem or died abroad, by tradition. LOW.

PAUL	Beheaded in Rome under Nero. HIGH.
JAMES, BROTHER OF JESUS	Stoned in Jerusalem in AD 62, Josephus. HIGH.
STEPHEN	Stoned in Jerusalem, Acts 7. HIGH.
WHAT IS STRONGEST	Every apostle suffered for saying Jesus rose from the dead. None of them ever took it back.

The Verdict

History cannot tell us exactly how every apostle died. Some died on crosses, some by the sword, some by spears and stones, and at least one, John, most likely died an old man in Ephesus. But it tells us something more important. Every one of them faced suffering, and not one of them changed his story.

Liars break under pressure. Witnesses do not. We did not follow cleverly devised myths, but we were eyewitnesses, 2 Peter 1:16.

The apostles told what they saw. But did a church council later pick which books made it into the Bible?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: DIDN'T THEY TAKE BOOKS OUT OF THE BIBLE AT NICAEA?

BONUS SECTION · MYTH OR HISTORY?

Didn't They Take Books Out of the Bible at the Council of Nicaea?

Short answer: no. Here is what really happened, and where the story came from.

THE CLAIM	At the Council of Nicaea, Emperor Constantine and the bishops picked which books went into the Bible and threw the rest out.
THE VERDICT	False. The council never voted on the books of the Bible. Not one of its records says a word about it.
WHEN	Late spring and summer of AD 325.
WHERE	Nicaea, a city in what is now Turkey. Today the town is called Iznik.
WHO CAME	About 250 to 300 bishops, mostly from the eastern half of the Roman Empire. Later tradition says 318.
WHAT IT DECIDED	That Jesus is fully God, the same as the Father. It also set how to find the date of Easter and made 20 rules for running churches.

The Story You Have Probably Heard

Maybe a friend told you. Maybe you saw it in a movie. The story goes like this: for 300 years Christians had dozens of gospels and nobody agreed on anything. Then in AD 325 Emperor Constantine called a big meeting at Nicaea. The bishops voted on which books to keep, tossed out the ones they did not like, and even voted that Jesus was God.

It is a great story. It is just not what happened.

What Really Happened at Nicaea

The fight at Nicaea was about one man's teaching. Arius was a popular priest in Alexandria, Egypt. He taught that the Son of God was created by the Father. His slogan was, there was a time when He was not. Arius said Jesus was the greatest of all created beings, but not God the way the Father is God.

His bishop, Alexander of Alexandria, said that was wrong. The argument spread across the empire. Constantine had just ended years of civil war, and he did not want the church splitting in two. So he called the bishops together and paid for their travel.

The bishops wrote a creed, a short statement of what Christians believe. It says Jesus is God from God, Light from Light, true God from true God, begotten, not made, of one being with the Father. The Greek word for of one being is homoousios.

Then they voted. It was not close. Almost every bishop signed. Only two refused, and they were sent away with Arius.

ON THE TABLE	Who Jesus is, the date of Easter, a split in the Egyptian church, and 20 church rules called canons.
NOT ON THE TABLE	Which books belong in the Bible. The creed, the 20 canons and the letters written by people who were there never mention it.

Did They Vote That Jesus Is God?

They voted on how to say it, not whether to believe it. Christians had worshiped Jesus as God for almost 300 years before Nicaea. John calls Him God, John 1:1. Thomas falls at His feet and says, My Lord and my God, John 20:28.

Even an enemy noticed. Remember Pliny, the Roman governor from Exhibit A? Around AD 112 he wrote to the emperor that Christians met before dawn and sang a hymn to Christ, as to a god. That was more than 200 years before Nicaea.

So When Was the Bible Put Together?

Nobody invented the Bible at a meeting. The church recognized books that were already being read as Scripture, and it happened slowly.

THE OLD TESTAMENT. Jesus already had a Bible. He called it the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms, Luke 24:44.

THE FOUR GOSPELS. By about AD 180, Irenaeus, a bishop in Gaul, wrote that there are four Gospels, no more and no fewer: Matthew, Mark, Luke and John. That is 145 years before Nicaea.

PAUL'S LETTERS. Peter already calls Paul's letters Scripture, 2 Peter 3:15 to 16.

A FEW BOOKS WERE DEBATED. Some churches were slow to accept Hebrews, James, 2 Peter, 2 and 3 John, Jude and Revelation. Some read extra books, like the Shepherd of Hermas. A few even treated it as Scripture for a while, but in the end the churches left it off the list.

THE FIRST EXACT LIST. In AD 367, 42 years after Nicaea, Bishop Athanasius wrote a letter listing the 27 books of our New Testament, the same 27 we have today. Church meetings at Hippo in AD 393 and Carthage in AD 397 agreed. For the whole story, see Why Do Some Bibles Have More Books?, p.2169.

What About the Lost Gospels?

The Gospel of Thomas, the Gospel of Judas and the Gospel of Mary are real ancient books. But they were written in the 100s and 200s, long after the apostles, and they were never in any church's list of Scripture. You cannot take a book out of the Bible that was never in it. They get their own pages next, What About the Gnostic Gospels?, p.2157.

Where the Myth Came From

A STRANGE LEGEND. About AD 887, more than 550 years after the council, an unknown Greek writer told a tale. He said the bishops set all the books by the altar and prayed, and the true books were found lying on the altar while the false ones lay underneath. Nothing like it is in the records of the council.

VOLTAIRE. In the 1760s the French writer Voltaire, who loved to poke fun at the church, retold that legend in his Philosophical Dictionary. Skeptics kept repeating it.

THE DA VINCI CODE. In 2003 Dan Brown published the novel The Da Vinci Code, and in 2006 it became a movie starring Tom Hanks. A character in the story says Constantine made a new Bible, left out the gospels that showed Jesus as human, and that Jesus became God by a close vote at Nicaea. The book sold more than 80 million copies, and suddenly everybody had heard it.

It is a novel. Novels are allowed to make things up. The trouble is that millions of people thought the history part was true.

THE CLAIM	Constantine chose the books of the Bible.
THE FACT	He did order 50 new copies of the Scriptures for the churches of his new city, Constantinople, around AD 331. The historian Eusebius tells the story. That was copying books, not choosing them.
THE CLAIM	Jesus became God by a close vote.
THE FACT	Almost every bishop signed. Christians had worshiped Jesus for 300 years.
THE CLAIM	The lost gospels were thrown out at Nicaea.
THE FACT	They were never in. No record from Nicaea mentions them.

ONE ODD LINE. About 75 years after the council, the scholar Jerome wrote that the Council of Nicaea is said to have counted the book of Judith as Scripture. No record from Nicaea says that, and Jerome only said it is reported, without saying where he got it. Even if it were true, it is the opposite of the myth: a book being kept, not books being thrown out.

The Day Santa Slapped a Heretic



Saint Nicholas slaps Arius, a wall painting at Sumela Monastery, near Trabzon, Turkey. Public domain.

Now for the best story from Nicaea. One of the bishops there, says tradition, was Nicholas, the bishop of Myra, a town on the southern coast of what is now Turkey. Yes, that Nicholas. Saint Nicholas. The one who became Santa Claus.

The story goes that Arius stood up and explained his teaching, on and on, that the Son of God was created. Nicholas listened as long as he could. Then he walked across the room and slapped Arius right across the face. Some versions say it was a punch.

The other bishops were shocked. Hitting someone in front of the emperor was a crime. They took away Nicholas's bishop's robe and his book of the Gospels and locked him in jail.

That night, the story says, Jesus and Mary appeared to Nicholas in his cell. Jesus handed him back his book of the Gospels, and Mary put his bishop's robe back on his shoulders. In the morning the guards found him dressed as a bishop again, and he was set free. Old icons in Greek and Russian churches still show this scene.

IS IT TRUE?	Probably not, at least not the way it is told. The earliest records of the council do not mention a slap, and Nicholas's name is missing from some of the oldest lists of the bishops who were there. The story first shows up in writing about 1,000 years later, in the late 1300s. The oldest version does not even name Arius. It just says Nicholas hit a follower of Arius.
CONFIDENCE	LOW for the slap. HIGH that Nicholas of Myra was a real bishop in the 300s. MEDIUM that he was at Nicaea.
THE LESSON	Even Santa ended up on the naughty list that day. Jesus said, If someone slaps you on your right cheek, turn to him the other also, Matthew 5:39. He did not say, slap the heretic first.

The Verdict

The Council of Nicaea was a real meeting about a real question: who is Jesus? The bishops answered that He is true God from true God. They did not pick the books of the Bible, they did not throw any books out, and they did not turn Jesus into God by a close vote.

The books of the Bible were recognized by Christians over time because they were already being read as the word of God. The church did not create the Bible. The Bible created the church.

Santa will be back later in this section. First, let us look at the books people say got thrown out at Nicaea.

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: WHAT ABOUT THE GNOSTIC GOSPELS?

BONUS SECTION · MYTH OR HISTORY?

What About the Gnostic Gospels?

The so called lost books of the Bible, who really wrote them, and why they never made the cut.

THE CLAIM	The Gospel of Thomas, the Gospel of Mary, the Gospel of Judas and books like them were real gospels that got taken out of the Bible at the Council of Nicaea.
THE VERDICT	False. Nicaea never voted on the books of the Bible, and these books were never in it. You cannot take out a book that was never in.
WHEN THEY WERE WRITTEN	Mostly from about AD 140 to 300. That is about 100 to 270 years after Jesus, long after every apostle had died.
WHO WROTE THEM	Nobody knows. The writers borrowed famous names like Thomas, Philip, Mary and Judas to make their books sound important.
WHERE THEY WERE FOUND	Most in Egypt. The biggest find was a jar of old books dug up near Nag Hammadi in 1945.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that these books came long after the four Gospels.

The Books They Say Got Banned

You already know the myth from the Nicaea pages. The story says Emperor Constantine and the bishops threw out a pile of gospels they did not like. When people name those banned books, these are almost always the ones they mean.

Here is the twist. These books are real. They are old. Some of them are interesting. But they were never part of the Bible, and nobody at Nicaea voted on them. The church had already been warning people about them for 150 years.

The best way to describe most of them is fan fiction. Fan fiction is when a fan takes famous characters from a story they love and writes brand new adventures for them. The characters are real. The new adventures are not. That is what happened here. Writers in the 100s and 200s took Jesus, Peter, Mary Magdalene and Judas and wrote new stories that put their own ideas in Jesus' mouth.

Who Were the Gnostics?

The word Gnostic comes from the Greek word gnosis, which means knowledge. The Gnostics were groups in the 100s and 200s who mixed bits of Christianity with Greek philosophy and their own myths. There were many kinds, and they did not all agree, but most of them shared a few big ideas.

THE BODY IS BAD	Most Gnostics taught that the physical world is evil or broken. Your body is a prison, and your spirit is trying to escape.

A LESSER GOD	Many taught that the God of the Old Testament was a lower, clumsy or even evil god who made the world by mistake. Some called him Yaldabaoth.
SECRET KNOWLEDGE	You are saved by learning secret knowledge, not by faith in Jesus' death and resurrection. Only a few special people can understand it.
A JESUS WITH NO REAL BODY	Many said Jesus only seemed to have a body, or that the real Christ left before the cross. So He did not really die and did not really rise in the flesh.

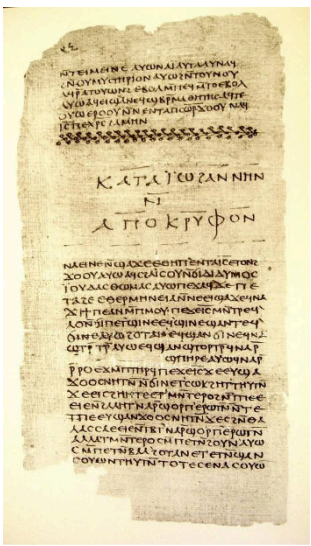
Now compare that with the Bible. Genesis says God made the world and called it very good, Genesis 1:31. John says the Word became flesh, John 1:14. Paul says if Christ was not raised, our faith is useless, 1 Corinthians 15:17. John even warns that any spirit who will not say Jesus Christ came in the flesh is not from God, 1 John 4:2 to 3.

Paul warned Timothy to turn away from what is falsely called knowledge, 1 Timothy 6:20. The Greek word Paul used there is gnosis. The fight had already started.

The Jar in the Desert

In December 1945, a farmer named Muhammad Ali al Samman was digging for soft soil to use as fertilizer near the town of Nag Hammadi in Egypt. He hit a large clay jar. He was afraid it might hold an evil spirit, but he also hoped it might hold gold, so he smashed it.

Inside were 12 old leather covered books, plus loose pages from a 13th, written in Coptic, the language of Egypt at the time. Today they are called the Nag Hammadi library. Together they hold 52 writings. The story goes that some pages were burned in the family's oven before anyone knew what they were.



A page from Nag Hammadi Codex II, made in the 300s. The top lines end the Secret Book of John. The bottom starts the Gospel of Thomas. Public domain.

The books themselves were made in the middle 300s. We know because scrap paper used to stiffen the covers includes old letters and receipts with dates in the AD 340s. Someone buried them in the desert, probably in the late 300s. Some scholars think monks from a nearby monastery hid them after church leaders warned against these books, but nobody knows for sure.

Here is a fun fact. One of the writings in the jar is a short piece of Plato's Republic, the famous Greek philosophy book written about 375 BC. That tells you something. This was not a lost Bible. It was a library of spiritual books that a group of people liked to read.

How We Know They Came Later

Scholars do not just guess at the dates. Several clues all point the same way.

CLUE 1, THE EARLY CHURCH SAID SO. About AD 180, a bishop named Irenaeus wrote a five part book called Against Heresies. He names the Gospel of Judas and the Gospel of Truth, and he describes Gnostic myths found in the Nag Hammadi books. He says the Gospel of Truth was written not long ago and agrees in nothing with the Gospels of the apostles. So these books were new in his day, about 150 years after Jesus.

CLUE 2, THEY BORROW FROM OUR GOSPELS. Many of these books quote or copy lines from Matthew, Mark, Luke, John and Paul's letters. A book that copies from another book has to be written after it. Our four Gospels were written in the first century, while people who knew Jesus were still alive.

CLUE 3, THE IDEAS CAME LATER. The big Gnostic myths, with their ranks of heavenly beings and a foolish creator god, match teachers who lived in the 100s, like Valentinus and Basilides. They do not match anything in the first century.

CLUE 4, THE SETTING IS MISSING. Matthew, Mark, Luke and John are packed with real places, real rulers, real Jewish customs and real Jewish names. Most Gnostic gospels have almost none. Jesus talks in an empty space, like a voice in a dream. That is what you expect from someone who never saw first century Israel.

CLUE 5, THE NAMES ARE WRONG. This one is so good it gets its own section.

CLUE 6, THE OLDEST COPIES ARE LATER. The oldest scraps of the four Gospels are often dated to the 100s. The oldest scraps of any Gnostic gospel come from the 200s, and most full copies come from the 300s and later.

The Names Test

Bible scholars Richard Bauckham and Peter J. Williams noticed something amazing. Another scholar, Tal Ilan, made a giant list of every Jewish name we know from Israel between about 330 BC and AD 200, from tombs, letters, coins and books. It has nearly 3,000 people in it. Then they compared it to the names in the Gospels. Bible teacher Wes Huff talked about this on The Joe Rogan Experience in 2025 and helped make it popular.

MOST COMMON MEN'S NAMES	Simon was number 1. Joseph was number 2. Then Eleazar, which is Lazarus, Judah, which is Judas, John and Joshua, which is Jesus.
IN THE GOSPELS	The same names come out on top. Simon and Joseph are the two most common names in the Gospels and Acts too. For women, Mary and Salome were the two most common names in Israel, and both show up in the Gospels.

Here is why that matters. If you wrote a fake story today about a town in another country 2,000 years ago, you would never get the popular names right. You would not know them. The Gospel writers got them exactly right, because they were writing about real people they knew.

They even have the problem real people have. There are so many Simons and Marys that the Gospels have to add nicknames to tell them apart. Simon Peter, Simon the Zealot and Simon of Cyrene. Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James and Mary the wife of Clopas. That is what happens in a town where so many guys are named Simon. Think of a classroom with four kids named Jacob.

Now look at the Gnostic gospels. They use only a handful of famous names, like Peter, Thomas, Mary and Judas, mostly copied from the Bible. Peter Williams points out that they do not show the local pattern the Gospels show. The Gospel of Judas fills the rest of its pages with made up names for heavenly beings, like Barbelo, Saklas, Nebro and Yaldabaoth. No mom in first century Galilee ever named her baby Yaldabaoth. Wes Huff has pointed out that the names in the Gospel of Judas almost never show up in Judea and Galilee in Jesus' day, but they fit Egypt in the 200s and 300s. That is exactly where and when our only copy was made.

The Gnostic Gospels, One by One

Here is every book people usually mean when they say the lost gospels, starting with the true Gnostic books. Dates are what most scholars think, and we tell you when they disagree.

The Gospel of Thomas

The most famous one. It is not a story at all. It is a list of 114 sayings that start with the words, Jesus said. About half sound a lot like sayings in Matthew, Mark and Luke. The rest sound strange. The last saying has Peter tell Mary to leave because women are not worthy of life, and Jesus answers that He will make her male so she can enter the kingdom. There is no birth, no miracles, no cross and no resurrection.

WRITTEN	Most scholars say the middle 100s. A smaller group, including the famous Jesus Seminar in 1993, argued for the first century and called it a fifth gospel. Others answer that it borrows from the four Gospels and even uses wording from later Syriac Christianity.

OLDEST COPIES	Three Greek scraps found at Oxyrhynchus, Egypt, from about AD 200 to 250. The full copy is in Coptic, from the Nag Hammadi jar, made in the 300s.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	The wider church never read it as Scripture, and early writers warned against it. Only fringe groups used it. Its Jesus saves by secret sayings, not by His death and resurrection. Some scholars call it only partly Gnostic, but it still fits the secret knowledge pattern.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that it is not from the apostle Thomas. MEDIUM on the exact date.

The Gospel of Philip

A rambling collection of thoughts about secret rituals, especially one called the bridal chamber. It is famous for one line that says Jesus loved Mary Magdalene more than the other disciples and used to kiss her on the. Then there is a hole in the page. The Da Vinci Code filled in the hole with the word mouth. Nobody knows what the missing word was. Other Gnostic books have Jesus kiss male disciples too, and kissing was a normal greeting among believers, Romans 16:16.

WRITTEN	Probably the 200s.
OLDEST COPY	One Coptic copy from the Nag Hammadi jar, 300s.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	It is full of Valentinian Gnostic teaching from the 100s and 200s. It was never read in any church. The Da Vinci Code also said its word for companion proves Jesus was married. The word is a Greek loan word that usually means partner or companion. It does not have to mean wife, and the book never says Jesus was married.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Gospel of Truth

Not really a gospel. It is a poetic sermon about how people forgot the Father and were saved when Jesus brought them knowledge. It is lovely in places, but it tells almost nothing about Jesus' life.

WRITTEN	About AD 140 to 180. Some scholars think the Gnostic teacher Valentinus wrote it himself.
OLDEST COPIES	Two Coptic copies from the Nag Hammadi jar, 300s.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	Irenaeus, about AD 180, says the followers of Valentinus wrote a Gospel of Truth not long ago, and that it agrees in nothing with the real Gospels. Most scholars think this is the same book.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Gospel of the Egyptians

Also called the Holy Book of the Great Invisible Spirit. It is a long, strange myth about heavenly beings with names like Barbelo and the great Seth, who comes down to save his chosen family. Jesus barely appears. It is not the same book as an older Greek Gospel of the Egyptians that the church writer Clement of Alexandria quoted, which is lost.

WRITTEN	Probably the 200s.
OLDEST COPIES	Two Coptic copies from the Nag Hammadi jar, 300s.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	It teaches a whole Gnostic universe that is found nowhere in the Old or New Testament. Its hero is Seth, not Jesus.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Gospel of Mary

After the resurrection, a woman named Mary, usually thought to be Mary Magdalene, tells the disciples about a secret vision Jesus gave her about how the soul climbs past evil powers to rest. Andrew says these sound like strange ideas. Peter asks if Jesus really talked to a woman in private and not to them. Levi defends her. About half the pages are missing, including the first six.

WRITTEN	The 100s, probably the second half.
OLDEST COPIES	Two Greek scraps from the 200s. The longest copy is in Coptic, in the Berlin Codex, a book bought in Cairo in 1896 and made in the 400s or 500s. It was not in the Nag Hammadi jar.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	Its message is the Gnostic climb of the soul past heavenly gatekeepers, not the gospel of the cross. No early list of Scripture ever names it. It is worth knowing that the real Gospels already honor Mary Magdalene as the first person to see the risen Jesus, John 20:11 to 18. She did not need a fake gospel.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Gospel of Judas

The book that made headlines when National Geographic published it in 2006. In it, Judas is the hero. Jesus laughs at the other disciples and tells Judas he will do something greater than all of them. He will sacrifice the man that clothes Jesus, meaning he will help Jesus escape His body. A big part of the book is a long myth about heavenly beings like Barbelo, Saklas and Nebro. It ends with Judas handing Jesus over and getting paid.

WRITTEN	Before about AD 180, because Irenaeus names a Gospel of Judas used by a Gnostic group. Most scholars say the middle 100s.

OLDEST COPY	One Coptic copy in a book called Codex Tchacos, found in Egypt in the 1970s. Carbon dating puts it at about AD 220 to 340. It sat in a bank box in New York for years and was badly damaged before scholars got it.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	Irenaeus already called it a made up story in AD 180. Its Jesus hates the body and mocks the God of the Bible. Some scholars who studied it later even argue Judas is not really a hero in it, just a tool of evil powers.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Secret Book of John

Also called the Apocryphon of John. The risen Jesus appears to John and explains the secret story of creation. A high spiritual being named Sophia, which means wisdom, makes a mistake and gives birth to Yaldabaoth, an ugly lion faced god who thinks he is the only God. That is the god who made our world. In this story, Jesus says it was He who got Adam and Eve to eat from the tree of knowledge, to help them escape the lesser god.

WRITTEN	The 100s. Irenaeus, about AD 180, describes a myth very close to it.
OLDEST COPIES	Four Coptic copies, three from Nag Hammadi and one in the Berlin Codex. So it was clearly popular with Gnostics.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	It turns the God of Genesis into a villain. That is the opposite of what Jesus taught, who called the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob His Father, Matthew 22:32, John 8:54.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Rest of the Gnostic Shelf

These get mentioned less, but people sometimes list them as lost gospels too.

SECRET BOOK OF JAMES	A letter where Jesus gives Peter and James secret teaching 550 days after the resurrection. Written in the 100s or 200s. Nag Hammadi.
DIALOGUE OF THE SAVIOR	Jesus answers questions from Judas, Matthew and Mary about the soul and the end. Written in the 100s or 200s. Nag Hammadi.
BOOK OF THOMAS THE CONTENDER	Jesus tells Thomas to escape the fire of bodily desire. Written in the 200s. Nag Hammadi.
WISDOM OF JESUS CHRIST	Also called the Sophia of Jesus Christ. A Gnostic letter called Eugnostos, rewritten so that Jesus says the words. Written in the 100s or 200s. Nag Hammadi and the Berlin Codex.
THE COPTIC APOCALYPSE OF PETER	Peter sees a vision of the cross, and the real Jesus stands nearby laughing while only His body is nailed up. Written in

	the 200s. Nag Hammadi. Not the same as an older Greek Apocalypse of Peter that some early churches read.
PISTIS SOPHIA	Jesus stays on earth 11 years after the resurrection and teaches long secret lessons. Written in the 200s. Found in the Askew Codex, which the British Museum bought in 1785.
THE BOOKS OF JEU	Secret passwords and seals for getting past the rulers of the heavens. Written in the 200s. Found in the Bruce Codex, bought in Egypt in 1769.
WHY NONE ARE SCRIPTURE	All of them are late, all of them teach the Gnostic myth, and none of them were ever read in the churches as the word of God.

Not Gnostic, But Often Lumped In

Some books get thrown in with the Gnostic gospels even though they are not Gnostic. They are more like Bible fan fiction from regular Christians, written to fill in the parts the Gospels skip, like Jesus' childhood.

The Infancy Gospel of Thomas

Stories about Jesus as a boy from age 5 to 12. He makes sparrows out of clay and they fly away. When a boy bumps into Him, Jesus curses him and the boy drops dead. When a teacher hits Him during an alphabet lesson, Jesus curses him and the teacher falls to the ground. Later He heals people and the stories get nicer. It is a little like a superhero origin story, written by someone who forgot that Jesus never sinned.

WRITTEN	The late 100s. Irenaeus mentions the alphabet story.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	John says turning water into wine was the first of Jesus' signs, John 2:11. So the Bible points to no childhood miracles. This Jesus is mean in a way the real Jesus never was. The clay birds story is also told in the Quran, Surah 3:49 and 5:110.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Gospel of Peter

Only part of it survives. It tells the trial, death and resurrection of Jesus. It blames Herod instead of Pilate. On the cross, Jesus is silent as if He felt no pain. At the tomb, two angels come out with heads that reach up to the sky, holding up a third whose head goes past the sky, and a cross floats out behind them and talks.

WRITTEN	About AD 150.
LONGEST COPY	A copy from the 700s to 900s, found in a monk's grave at Akhmim, Egypt, in 1886 to 1887. Two tiny older scraps from Oxyrhynchus may also be from this book.

WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	Around AD 200, Bishop Serapion of Antioch at first let a church read it. Then he read it himself, found false teaching about Jesus' body in it, and banned it. The historian Eusebius tells the story. Also, a talking cross.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Gospel of Nicodemus

Also called the Acts of Pilate. It retells Jesus' trial with extra witnesses, then tells how Jesus went down to the dead and set Adam and the Old Testament saints free. That part is called the harrowing of hell, and it became very popular in the Middle Ages.

WRITTEN	In its present form, the 300s or 400s. Justin Martyr, about AD 150, mentions Acts of Pilate, but he probably meant official Roman records, not this book.
WHY IT IS NOT SCRIPTURE	It is centuries too late and was written to build on the Gospels, not to report what eyewitnesses saw.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Jewish Christian Gospels

Early church writers mention a Gospel of the Hebrews, a Gospel of the Nazarenes and a Gospel of the Ebionites. We do not have any of them. We only have short quotes in books by Origen, Jerome and Epiphanius. The Ebionite one turned John the Baptist into a vegetarian. It changed his locusts into honey cakes.

WRITTEN	The 100s.
WHY THEY ARE NOT SCRIPTURE	They seem to be reworked versions of Matthew, used by small groups who mixed faith in Jesus with strict Jewish law, and some of them denied that Jesus was born of a virgin. The wider church never read them as Scripture.
CONFIDENCE	MEDIUM, because so little survives.

The Gospel of Barnabas

This one is often shared online by Muslims, because in it Jesus says He is not the Messiah, and He says Muhammad is coming. It also says Judas was made to look like Jesus and was crucified in His place.

WRITTEN	The 1300s to 1500s, more than 1,300 years after Jesus. The two old copies are in Italian and Spanish.
HOW WE KNOW	It mentions a Jubilee every 100 years. That was a rule made by Pope Boniface VIII in the year 1300 and changed in 1343. A first century writer could not know about it. It also contradicts the Quran itself, which calls Jesus the Messiah.

CONFIDENCE	HIGH that it is a medieval book.

What Do These Books Have to Do With the Quran?

Islam began around AD 610, when Muhammad said the angel Gabriel was bringing him messages from God in Arabia. Muslims believe the Quran is God's own word. It honors Jesus, calls Him the Messiah, and says it confirms the Torah and the Gospel that came before it, Surah 3:3 and 5:46.

Here is what surprises a lot of people. Several of the Quran's stories about Jesus and Mary are not in the Bible at all. But stories very much like them show up in the books on this page and in other Christian legends written long after the apostles.

CLAY BIRDS	The Quran says Jesus made birds out of clay, breathed on them, and they flew, Surah 3:49 and 5:110. That story is not in the Bible, but a very close version is in the Infancy Gospel of Thomas, from the late 100s.
THE TALKING BABY	The Quran says newborn Jesus spoke from the cradle to defend His mother, Surah 19:29 to 33. In the Arabic Infancy Gospel, baby Jesus also speaks from the cradle, but there He tells Mary that He is the Son of God. Its oldest copies are from long after the Quran, and scholars argue about how old the story really is, so this one is less certain.
THE PALM TREE	The Quran says Mary gave birth under a palm tree, which dropped fresh dates, and a stream flowed beneath her, Surah 19:23 to 26. In the Gospel of Pseudo Matthew, a palm tree bends down to give Mary dates and a spring bursts out of its roots, during the trip to Egypt. That book was written around the same time as the Quran or later, so neither one copied the other. Scholars think both came from an older Christian story told near Bethlehem.
SOMEONE ELSE ON THE CROSS	The Quran says Jesus was not killed or crucified, but it was made to look that way, Surah 4:157. That idea sounds a lot like what some Gnostic teachers said centuries earlier. About AD 180, Irenaeus wrote that the Gnostic teacher Basilides taught that Simon of Cyrene died in Jesus' place. A Nag Hammadi book called the Second Treatise of the Great Seth has Jesus laughing while another man suffers.

So how did these stories get to Arabia? In Muhammad's day there was no Arabic Bible that we know of. The oldest Arabic copies of the Gospels we have come from after Islam began. Most people could not read, and books were rare and very expensive. So Christian stories traveled by word of mouth, from Syriac speaking Christians, monks, traders and Christian tribes in Arabia. A Bible story and a popular legend sounded the same when someone told them around a fire. A listener had no way to look it up.

The Quran also retells some Jewish teachings that are not in the Old Testament. Surah 5:32 says that killing one person is like killing all people, and saving one is like saving all people. That saying is in the Mishnah, a Jewish book from about AD 200. Even the story of a raven showing Cain how to bury Abel, Surah 5:31, has a cousin in Jewish legends where a raven teaches Adam.

Muslims answer that God told Muhammad what really happened, and that some true events were also remembered in other books. Many historians see it another way. They say the Quran repeats stories that were going around at the time, including legends written hundreds of years after Jesus. Either way, one fact is clear. The Bible itself does not contain these stories. If a book says it confirms the Gospel, but some of its stories about Jesus match legends written centuries later instead, that is worth thinking about.

Two Modern Fakes

THE SECRET GOSPEL OF MARK. In 1958, a scholar named Morton Smith said he found a copy of an old letter at the Mar Saba monastery near Jerusalem. The letter quotes a secret, longer Gospel of Mark. Only photos exist now. The original page went missing. Many scholars think Smith faked it himself, while others still defend it. Confidence that it is real: LOW.

THE GOSPEL OF JESUS' WIFE. In 2012, a Harvard professor announced a tiny scrap of papyrus where Jesus says, my wife. It made the news all over the world. In 2016, a reporter tracked down the man who sold it and showed it was a modern forgery, and the professor agreed it was probably fake. Confidence that it is real: none.

So Who Really Took Books Out of the Bible?

Funny story. The first person we know of who cut books out of the Bible was not a bishop at Nicaea. It was a rich ship owner named Marcion, around AD 140. He decided the God of the Old Testament was a different, harsher god than the Father of Jesus. So he threw out the whole Old Testament, kept only an edited version of Luke and ten of Paul's letters, and cut out any verse he did not like.

The church in Rome rejected him in AD 144. One reason the church started making clear lists of the true books was to answer people like Marcion and the Gnostics. The church did not take books out of the Bible. It defended the Bible from people who were trying to.

Are They Worth Reading?

For historians, yes. These books show us what some groups believed in the 100s, 200s and 300s. A few of the sayings in the Gospel of Thomas might even go back to things Jesus really said, because they are so close to the four Gospels.

But reading them is a little like reading fan fiction after reading the real book. You quickly see the difference. The real Gospels sound like eyewitness reports from a real place. The Gnostic gospels sound like a dream. Peter said it best. We did not follow cleverly made up stories, he wrote. We were eyewitnesses of His majesty, 2 Peter 1:16.

The Lost Gospels at a Glance

BOOK	WRITTEN · WHERE THE OLDEST COPY CAME FROM
Matthew, Mark, Luke, John	First century, about AD 50 to 95 · Scraps from the 100s and 200s, from Egypt
Gospel of Thomas	Middle 100s, debated · Greek scraps about AD 200, Coptic copy 300s
Gospel of Truth	About AD 140 to 180 · Nag Hammadi, 300s
Gospel of Judas	Middle 100s · Codex Tchacos, about AD 220 to 340
Secret Book of John	The 100s · Nag Hammadi and Berlin Codex, 300s to 500s
Gospel of Mary	Late 100s · Greek scraps 200s, Berlin Codex 400s or 500s
Gospel of Philip	The 200s · Nag Hammadi, 300s
Gospel of the Egyptians	The 200s · Nag Hammadi, 300s
Infancy Gospel of Thomas	Late 100s · A papyrus scrap from the 300s or 400s
Gospel of Peter	About AD 150 · Akhmim, 700s to 900s, maybe older scraps
Gospel of Nicodemus	300s or 400s · Later copies
Gospel of Barnabas	1300s to 1500s · Italian and Spanish copies
Secret Mark	Claimed old, likely modern · Photos from 1958 only
Gospel of Jesus' Wife	Modern forgery · Shown fake in 2016

The Verdict

The so called lost gospels were not lost, and they were not stolen out of the Bible at Nicaea. They were written by unknown people, more than 100 years after Jesus, who borrowed famous names to sell new ideas. The early church knew about them, read them, and said no, long before Constantine was even born.

The four Gospels have the real places, the real customs and even the real popular names of first century Israel. The Gnostic gospels have a secret Jesus with no real body, a villain God and names like Yaldabaoth. One sounds like history. The other sounds like fan fiction. You can check them for yourself, just like the Bereans did, Acts 17:11.

The Gnostic gospels were never in the Bible. But some Bibles really do have more books than others. Why is that?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: WHY DO SOME BIBLES HAVE MORE BOOKS?

BONUS SECTION · HOW WE GOT THE BIBLE

Why Do Some Bibles Have More Books?

Protestant, Catholic, Orthodox and Ethiopian Bibles, and how each list came to be.

PROTESTANT	66 books: 39 in the Old Testament, 27 in the New.
JEWISH	24 books in the Hebrew Bible, the Tanakh. They are the same as the Protestant 39, just counted differently.
CATHOLIC	73 books: 46 in the Old Testament, 27 in the New.
EASTERN ORTHODOX	About 76 to 79 books, depending on the church. The Old Testament list was never fixed by one council.
ETHIOPIAN ORTHODOX	81 books, the biggest Bible in the world, including 1 Enoch and Jubilees. Not 88, see below.
THE GOOD NEWS	All of these Bibles have the same 27 New Testament books. The broader Ethiopian list adds some church books. The fight is almost all about the Old Testament.

First, a Word: Canon

The list of books a church accepts as Scripture is called the canon. The word comes from a Greek word for a measuring stick. A canon book is a book that measures up.

Here is the key thing to know. Nobody sat down one day and invented the Bible. God's people recognized books that were already being read and trusted as God's word. Then, sometimes hundreds of years later, councils wrote the list down to settle arguments.

The Jewish Bible Came Together in Stages

THE TORAH, ABOUT 400s BC. The five books of Moses, Genesis to Deuteronomy, were the first to be treated as Scripture. When Ezra read the Law to the whole nation after the exile, about 450 BC, everyone stood up to hear it, Nehemiah 8:1 to 8. The Samaritans, who slowly split off from the Jews over the next few centuries, still accept only these five books.

THE PROPHETS, BY ABOUT 200 BC. Joshua through Kings, and the prophets Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel and the Twelve, Hosea to Malachi, came next. A Jewish teacher named Ben Sira, writing about 180 BC, praises Isaiah, Jeremiah, Ezekiel and the Twelve Prophets as a group. His grandson, about 130 BC, speaks of the Law, the Prophets and the other books.

THE WRITINGS, BY ABOUT AD 100 TO 200. Psalms, Proverbs, Job, Daniel and the rest. Jesus speaks of the Law of Moses, the Prophets and the Psalms, Luke 24:44. Around AD 95 the Jewish historian Josephus says the Jews have 22 sacred books, and about AD 100 the book called 4 Ezra counts 24. The rabbis still argued over Song of Songs and Ecclesiastes for a while, but both stayed in.

A MYTH TO SKIP	You may hear that a Jewish Council of Jamnia closed the Hebrew Bible about AD 90. Most scholars now say there was no such council. There were rabbis at Jamnia, or Yavneh, but no official vote on the books.
THE BOTTOM LINE	By the time of Jesus the Jews already had a Bible, and by about AD 200 its list matched the 39 books of the Protestant Old Testament.

Then Came the Greek Bible

In the 200s and 100s BC, Jews in Alexandria, Egypt, translated their Bible into Greek, the language most people spoke. This Greek Bible is called the Septuagint. Over time, copies of it also carried other Jewish books written in the last few centuries before Jesus: Tobit, Judith, Wisdom of Solomon, Sirach, Baruch, 1 and 2 Maccabees, and extra chapters for Esther and Daniel.

The early church spoke Greek, so it used the Septuagint. The New Testament writers quote it often. They sometimes echo these books, and Jude quotes 1 Enoch, which is not one of them, but they never call the extra books Scripture, and the Jews did not count those books in their Hebrew Bible. That is the root of the whole disagreement.

The Early Church Disagreed Too

MELITO. About AD 170, Bishop Melito of Sardis traveled to the Holy Land to find out exactly which books were in the Old Testament. His list matches the Hebrew Bible, only missing Esther.

ATHANASIUS. In AD 367 Athanasius listed our 27 New Testament books. For the Old Testament he mostly followed the Hebrew list, but he added Baruch and left out Esther. He said books like Wisdom, Sirach, Esther, Tobit and Judith were good for new believers to read, but not part of the canon.

JEROME. About AD 390 to 405, Jerome translated the Bible into Latin. He went back to the Hebrew and called the extra books apocrypha, meaning hidden or set apart. His Latin Bible, the Vulgate, still ended up including most of them.

AUGUSTINE AND NORTH AFRICA. Augustine accepted the larger Greek list. Church meetings in North Africa, at Hippo in AD 393 and Carthage in AD 397 and 419, listed the extra books as Scripture. These were local meetings, not councils of the whole church.

So for more than 1,000 years the Western church read the extra books in its Bible, while some of its best scholars said they were not on the same level.

The Catholic Bible: 73 Books

Catholics call the extra books deuterocanonical, meaning second canon. The word was first used in 1566.

THE DECISION. During the Reformation, Protestants questioned these books. So at the Council of Trent, on April 8, 1546, the Catholic Church officially declared all of them Scripture. That made the Catholic canon final: 46 Old Testament books and

27 New Testament books. Trent also accepted the extra chapters of Esther and Daniel.

WHY. Catholics point out that the church had read these books for centuries, that the councils of Hippo and Carthage listed them, and that the Council of Florence had listed them in 1442. They also point to 2 Maccabees 12:43 to 46, which speaks of prayers for the dead, as part of the history of their teaching on purgatory. Catholics see Hippo and Carthage as the first time the church listed the 73 books, though their lists counted some books differently, and it took Trent to make it official for the whole church.

The Protestant Bible: 66 Books

MARTIN LUTHER. Luther went back to the Hebrew Bible, the books the Jews kept as Scripture and the Bible Jesus quoted. In his German Bible of 1534 he moved the extra books into their own section between the Testaments, under this heading: 'Apocrypha. These are books which are not held equal to the Holy Scriptures, and yet are useful and good to read.' That is still the fairest way to describe them.

WHICH BOOKS? The 1611 King James Bible set apart 14 of them: 1 and 2 Esdras, Tobit, Judith, the rest of Esther, Wisdom of Solomon, Sirach, Baruch with the Letter of Jeremiah, the Song of the Three Young Men, Susanna, Bel and the Dragon, the Prayer of Manasseh, and 1 and 2 Maccabees. Luther's list was a little shorter. He left out 1 and 2 Esdras.

THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. Its Thirty Nine Articles, 1563 and 1571, say the church reads these books for example of life and instruction of manners, but does not use them to prove any doctrine.

THE KING JAMES BIBLE. The original 1611 KJV included the Apocrypha between the Testaments. Over time printers left it out, and after 1826 the British and Foreign Bible Society stopped paying for Bibles that contained it. That is why most Protestant Bibles today have 66 books.

THE REASONS. Protestants say the Old Testament should be the Bible Jesus had, the Hebrew Scriptures entrusted to the Jews, Romans 3:2. Jesus and the apostles quote the Law, the Prophets and the Psalms as Scripture again and again, but never quote the extra books that way. Even 1 Maccabees admits there were no prophets in its day, 1 Maccabees 9:27.

The Prophecy Test

Here is one of the strongest reasons this Bible keeps the 66 books. God said a true prophet's words come true, Deuteronomy 18:21 to 22. The editors of this Bible counted every prophecy and foreshadow: 1,051 in the 66 books, and only one in all the extra books, Wisdom of Solomon 2. And Jesus and the New Testament writers never quote the extra books as Scripture. For the full comparison, every place the extra books look ahead, and a page on each book, see About the Apocrypha, right after Malachi.

The Orthodox Bible: About 76 to 79 Books

The Eastern Orthodox churches of Greece, Russia, Serbia and others use the Greek Old Testament. Their Bibles include everything in the Catholic Bible, plus a few more books: 1 Esdras, 3 Maccabees, the Prayer of Manasseh and Psalm 151. Greek Bibles often put 4 Maccabees in an appendix.

WHEN. The Orthodox never had one council fix the Old Testament list for the whole church. The Council in Trullo in AD 692 approved several older lists that did not all agree. The Synod of Jerusalem in 1672 named Wisdom, Judith, Tobit, the Maccabees, Sirach and the extra parts of Daniel as Scripture.

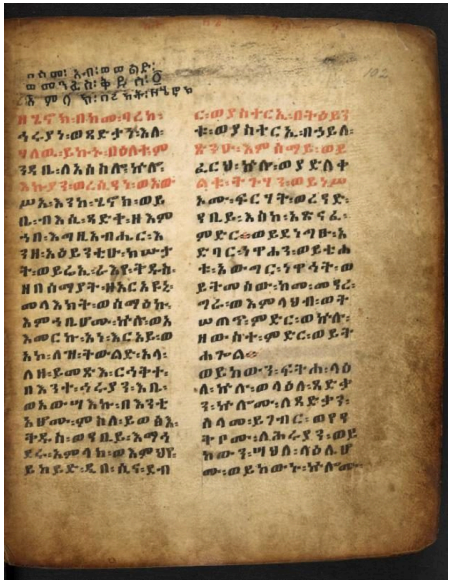
HOW THEY SEE THEM. Many Orthodox teachers call the extra books readable books, honored and read in worship, but a step below the books of the Hebrew Bible. Russian Bibles also carry 3 Esdras, the book English Bibles call 2 Esdras.

The Ethiopian Bible: 81 Books

The Ethiopian Orthodox Tewahedo Church has the biggest Bible in the world. Ethiopia became Christian very early. King Ezana of Aksum turned to Christ about AD 330, and the Bible was translated into the old Ethiopian language, Ge'ez, between about the 400s and 600s.

Ethiopia was far from Rome and Constantinople, so its churches kept books that the rest of the church let fall away.

WHAT IS EXTRA. Besides most of the books in other Orthodox Bibles, the Ethiopian Old Testament includes 1 Enoch, Jubilees, and three books called Meqabyan. The Meqabyan take the place of 1 and 2 Maccabees, which Ethiopia does not count, and they are not the same books. Its larger New Testament list adds church books like the Sinodos and the Book of the Covenant.



The first page of 1 Enoch in Ge'ez, the old church language of Ethiopia, from a book copied about 1500, British Library Oriental MS 485. Public domain.

1 ENOCH. 1 Enoch is quoted in the Bible itself, in Jude 14 to 15. Pieces of it were found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, but the only complete copies that survive are in Ge'ez. Ethiopia kept it alive.

WHEN. The number 81 shows up in Ethiopian church writings of the Middle Ages, but which 81 books are counted still differs from list to list today. There is a narrower list and a broader one.

WHAT ABOUT 88 BOOKS? You may see English books online called The Ethiopian Bible, 88 Books. The Ethiopian church does not have an 88 book Bible. Its number is 81, and it reaches 81 in two ways. The narrower list, 54 Old Testament books and 27 New Testament books, is the one printed in the church's own Ge'ez and Amharic Bibles. The broader list counts the Old Testament as 46 books by joining some books together. It then adds church rule books to make a New Testament of 35 books: the Sinodos, the Book of the Covenant, Clement and the Didascalia. Those church books are kept in their own handwritten books. When the scholar Roger Cowley wrote about them in 1974, they had never been printed in the church's Bible.

SO WHERE DOES 88 COME FROM? It comes from publishers, not from Ethiopia. The church has two ways to count to 81. One way has 54 Old Testament books. The other way has 35 New Testament books. If you take the bigger Old Testament and the bigger New Testament and put them together, you get 89. The church never puts them together like that. Some English editions mix the lists in this kind of way, and that is how they land in the high 80s. Some fill in with English translations made from the Greek, not from the Ethiopian Ge'ez. A bigger number may help sell books, but there is no official list of 88.

ALSO WORTH KNOWING	The Assyrian Church of the East, one of the oldest churches in the world, still reads a New Testament of only 22 books, without 2 Peter, 2 and 3 John, Jude and Revelation.
WHAT EVERY CHURCH SHARES	The Law, the Prophets, the Psalms, the four Gospels, Acts and Paul's letters. The core of the Bible is the same everywhere.

So What Are the Extra Books Good For?

Luther said they are useful and good to read, and he was right. They tell the history of the quiet years, the story of Hanukkah and the faith of the Maccabean martyrs. About the Apocrypha, right after Malachi, walks through every one of them, book by book. Read them like a good history book. Just remember a helpful book is not the word of God.

Canonization Timeline

ABOUT 450 TO 400 BC	The Torah is read as Scripture in Ezra's day.
ABOUT 250 TO 100 BC	The Septuagint, the Greek Old Testament, is translated in Egypt.
BY ABOUT 200 BC	The Prophets are a fixed group.
ABOUT AD 30	Jesus speaks of the Law, the Prophets and the Psalms.
ABOUT AD 95 TO 200	The Hebrew Bible's list of books is settled in practice.
AD 367	Athanasius lists the 27 New Testament books.
AD 393 TO 419	Hippo and Carthage list the larger Old Testament.
AD 692	The Council in Trullo approves older lists for the Orthodox.
1442	The Council of Florence lists the larger Old Testament.
1534	Luther's Bible sets the Apocrypha apart.
APRIL 8, 1546	The Council of Trent fixes the Catholic canon at 73 books.
1563 TO 1571	The Thirty Nine Articles: read them, but not for doctrine.
1611	The King James Bible includes the Apocrypha between the Testaments.
1672	The Synod of Jerusalem lists the Orthodox extra books.
1826	The British and Foreign Bible Society stops funding Bibles with the Apocrypha.
MIDDLE AGES TO TODAY	The Ethiopian 81 book canon, still counted in more than one way.
TODAY	English editions sold online advertise an 88 book Ethiopian Bible, a publishers' count, not the church's.

The Verdict

Some Bibles have more books because some churches followed the Hebrew Bible of Jesus' day, and others followed the larger Greek Bible the early church read. Ethiopia, far away and on its own, kept even more.

This Bible has the 66 books. Like Luther, we think the extra books are good to read and helpful for knowing the history between the Testaments, but they are not on the same level as Scripture. Whatever Bible you pick up, the story is the same: God made us, we turned away, and He sent His Son to bring us home.

Now you know which books are in. But after thousands of years of copying and translating, can we still trust what they say?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: BUT HASN'T THE BIBLE BEEN TRANSLATED OVER AND OVER AGAIN?

BONUS SECTION · MYTH OR HISTORY?

But Hasn't the Bible Been Translated Over and Over Again?

Short answer: not the way you think. Your Bible goes straight back to the Hebrew and Greek.

THE CLAIM	The Bible went from Hebrew to Greek to Latin to English, getting changed a little each time, like the telephone game, until nobody knows what it first said.
THE VERDICT	Mostly false. Modern Bibles are not the end of a long chain. They are translated straight from Hebrew and Greek copies, and we have more and older copies today than ever.
THE GRAIN OF TRUTH	A few early English Bibles really were copies of copies. They were translated from Latin or German instead of the Hebrew and Greek. This page shows you exactly which ones.
WHY SO MANY TRANSLATIONS	Two reasons. English keeps changing, and older manuscripts keep turning up.
WHY THEY SOUND DIFFERENT	Some translate word for word. Some translate thought for thought. Same original, different style.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH.

The Telephone Game

You probably played it as a kid. One person whispers a sentence to the next, down a line of ten people. Grandma likes pie turns into Grandpa bought a goat. Lots of people think the Bible works the same way. Moses wrote it in Hebrew, somebody turned that into Greek, somebody turned the Greek into Latin, somebody turned the Latin into English, and by now it is so garbled that nobody knows what it first said.

It is a fair question. But that is not how it happened. And for the few English Bibles where it partly did happen, there is a reason we stopped doing it that way.

Branches, Not a Chain

Think of a tree, not a line of people. The Hebrew and Greek manuscripts are the trunk. Every major translation is its own branch growing out of that trunk. Even when a new branch leans on an older one, it still draws from the same trunk.

THE GREEK OLD TESTAMENT. Around 250 BC, Jewish scholars in Egypt began translating the Hebrew Scriptures into Greek, starting with the five books of Moses. The rest took about another hundred years. This is called the Septuagint. It was translated from the Hebrew.

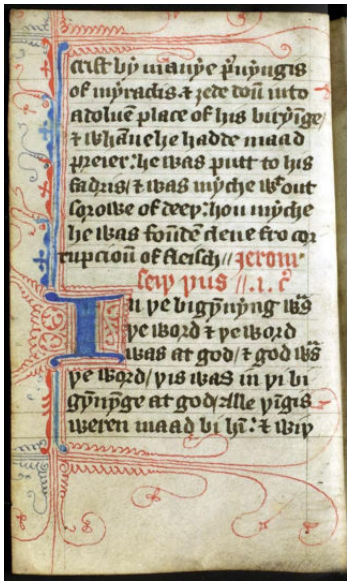
THE LATIN BIBLE. Around AD 382 to 405, a scholar named Jerome made the Latin Bible called the Vulgate. He had studied Hebrew in the desert of Syria, then moved

to Bethlehem, where he translated most of the Old Testament straight from the Hebrew, not from the Greek.

YOUR ENGLISH BIBLE. Modern English Bibles are not translated from the Latin. Some start from an older English Bible, but the translators check every verse against the Hebrew and Greek. They work from printed editions of the Hebrew and Greek, built from thousands of handwritten copies, some of them older than Jerome.

Where the Myth Is Partly True

Here is the honest part. A few of the first English Bibles really were copies of copies.



A handwritten Wycliffe Bible, open to the start of John: In the bigynnyng was the word, and the word was at god, and god was the word. The black words above it end an old introduction to John. Public domain.

WYCLIFFE, 1380s. The first complete Bible in English came from John Wycliffe and his followers. They translated it from the Latin Vulgate, not from Hebrew and Greek. So it really was a copy of a copy, a translation of a translation. But the printing press had not been invented yet. Every Wycliffe Bible was copied by hand, and church leaders banned unapproved English Bibles in 1409. So there were never very many. About 250 handwritten copies survive today. It was not even printed until hundreds of years later.

TYNDALE, 1526. William Tyndale changed everything. He translated the New Testament straight from Erasmus's printed Greek, and later the first five books of the Old Testament straight from the Hebrew. And he printed it, so it spread by the thousands. He was tried as a heretic, then strangled and burned in 1536.

COVERDALE, 1535. The first complete printed English Bible. Myles Coverdale used Tyndale's work where he could, but Tyndale had only published the first five books of the Old Testament and Jonah. Coverdale was not a Hebrew scholar. So for the

rest of the Old Testament, about three quarters of it, he worked mostly from German Bibles, like Luther's, and from Latin ones. That part really was secondhand.

THE MATTHEW BIBLE, 1537. Put together by John Rogers. It used Tyndale's translation from Genesis through 2 Chronicles, including books Tyndale never got to publish. But from Ezra to Malachi, about half the Old Testament, it mostly used Coverdale's secondhand translation.

THE GREAT BIBLE, 1539. The first English Bible approved for every church in England, chained in place in the church so anyone could come read it. Coverdale edited it from the Matthew Bible. For the Old Testament, he checked it against a new Latin translation made straight from the Hebrew by Sebastian Münster. Better, but still partly through Latin.

THE GENEVA BIBLE, 1560. English Protestants who had fled to Geneva, Switzerland, revised the whole Bible against the Hebrew and Greek. It was the Bible of Shakespeare and the Pilgrims. From here on, the Old Testament in Protestant English Bibles was checked against the Hebrew, not just the Latin.

THE BISHOPS' BIBLE, 1568. The Church of England's answer to the Geneva Bible. The bishops revised the Great Bible, checking it against the Hebrew and Greek, so it was no longer secondhand, though some readers found it uneven.

THE KING JAMES BIBLE, 1611. About 50 scholars revised the Bishops' Bible line by line against the Hebrew and Greek, and borrowed heavily from Tyndale and the Geneva Bible.

So yes, for about 30 years in the 1500s, from Coverdale in 1535 to the Bishops' Bible in 1568, parts of the Old Testament in the main Protestant English Bibles came through German and Latin. Catholic English Bibles, starting with the Douay Rheims Bible of 1582 and 1610, kept translating from the Latin until the 1900s. Today, Protestant and Catholic Bibles alike go back to the Hebrew and Greek.

Now Try Reading It

Here is John 3:16 as English Bibles printed it over the years, with the old spellings left in.

WYCLIFFE, ABOUT 1395	For God louede so the world, that he yaf his oon bigetun sone, that ech man that bileueth in him perische not, but haue euerlastynge lijf.
TYNDALE, 1534	For God so loveth the worlde, yt he hath geven his only sonne, that none that beleve in him shuld perisshe: but shuld have everlastinge lyfe.
KING JAMES, 1611	For God so loued þe world, that he gaue his only begotten Sonne: that whosoeuer beleeueth in him, should not perish, but haue euerlasting life.
THE OWNER'S MANUAL	For God so loved the world that He gave His one and only Son, that everyone who believes in Him shall not perish but have eternal life.

Notice something. The meaning never changed. God loved the world, gave His Son, and whoever believes gets eternal life. Only the English changed. Old printers

used u for v and v for u, þe is an old way to write the, and Wycliffe's yaf is just gave.

Old English Can Trip You Up

Wycliffe's English is over 600 years old, and the King James is over 400 years old. Words drift. Here are a few that would confuse almost anyone today.

WYCLIFFE, GENESIS 1:1	In the bigynnyng God made of nouyt heuene and erthe. It means, In the beginning God made heaven and earth out of nothing.
WYCLIFFE, MATTHEW 6:9	Oure fadir that art in heuenes, halewid be thi name. It means, Our Father in heaven, holy be Your name.
KJV, PHILIPPIANS 4:6	Be careful for nothing. It does not mean be careless. Careful meant full of worry. It means, Do not worry about anything.
KJV, ACTS 28:13	We fetched a compass. Paul did not go get a compass. It means, We sailed around.
KJV, PSALM 4:2	Seek after leasing. Not renting an apartment. Leasing meant lies.
KJV, 2 CORINTHIANS 6:12	Ye are straitened in your own bowels. It means, You are holding back your own affection. People used to say bowels the way we say heart.
KJV, ISAIAH 3:18	The round tires like the moon. Not car tires. These were crescent shaped ornaments women wore.

The King James translators would agree with fixing this. In their own preface, they said the Bible should be in the plain language of the people, so even the simplest person could understand it.

So Why Do New Translations Keep Coming Out?

Not because the old ones were wrong, and not because somebody keeps translating translations. There are two big reasons.

1, ENGLISH KEEPS CHANGING. A Bible is only useful if you can understand it. When words like leasing and careful change meaning, a new translation fixes that.

2, WE KEEP FINDING OLDER COPIES. The King James translators worked from printed Greek editions built on only a few late manuscripts. Since then, scholars have found thousands more. Codex Sinaiticus turned up in 1844 and 1859. Papyrus pieces from the 100s and 200s came out of the Egyptian sand starting in the 1890s. The Dead Sea Scrolls, found starting in 1947, gave us Old Testament copies about 1,000 years older than any we had before. Every find gives translators a clearer view of the original.

WE ALSO UNDERSTAND THE WORDS BETTER. Thousands of everyday letters, receipts and contracts from Bible times have been dug up. They show how regular people used Greek words, which helps translators pick the right English word.

Each new translation goes back to the Hebrew and Greek and starts there. The English Revised Version of 1881 and 1885 used the newly found older copies. The

Revised Standard Version of 1952 used readings from the Great Isaiah Scroll, found just a few years before. Most newer Bibles, like the NASB, NIV, ESV, CSB and NLT, follow the oldest copies. The NKJV stays with the same Greek as the King James, but shows the differences in its notes.

Word for Word or Thought for Thought?

If they all come from the same Hebrew and Greek, why do they sound different? Because translators have to choose how to carry the words across.

WORD FOR WORD. Stays as close as possible to the exact words and word order of the original, as long as the English still makes sense. Great for study, because you can see what the writer actually said. Sometimes a little stiff. Examples: the KJV, NKJV, NASB and ESV, and The Owner's Manual, which stays close to word for word.

THOUGHT FOR THOUGHT. Asks what a sentence means and says that in natural English. Great for reading big chunks and for new readers. The translator has to make more choices for you. Example: the NLT.

IN THE MIDDLE. Tries to balance exact words and natural English. Examples: the NIV and CSB.

PARAPHRASE. Puts the Bible in the writer's own fresh words. Fun to read next to a real translation, but not a translation itself. Example: The Message.

Here is why thought for thought exists. In Exodus 4:14, the Hebrew literally says the nose of Yahweh burned against Moses. That was how Hebrew said someone was angry. A word for word Bible says the anger of the Lord burned. A thought for thought Bible might say the Lord became angry. All three are correct. Only one of them makes you think God had a nosebleed.

The Only True Word for Word Bible

Here is a secret. Even word for word Bibles move words around. The only Bible that is truly word for word is an interlinear Bible. It prints the Hebrew or Greek on one line, and puts an English word right under each original word, in the original order.

Here is John 3:16 in Greek, one word at a time, in the order John wrote it. The Greek is printed in capital letters, the way the oldest copies were written.

ΟΥΤΩΣ · houtos	in this way, so
ΓΑΡ · gar	for
ΗΓΑΠΗΣΕΝ · egapesen	loved
Ο · ho	the
ΘΕΟΣ · theos	God
ΤΟΝ · ton	the
ΚΟΣΜΟΝ · kosmon	world
ΩΣΤΕ · hoste	so that
ΤΟΝ · ton	the
ΥΙΟΝ · huion	Son

ΤΟΝ · ton	the
ΜΟΝΟΓΕΝΗ · mono-gene	one and only, only begotten
ΕΔΩΚΕΝ · edoken	He gave
ΙΝΑ · hina	in order that
ΠΑΣ · pas	everyone
Ο · ho	the
ΠΙΣΤΕΥΩΝ · pisteuon	believing
ΕΙΣ · eis	into
ΑΥΤΟΝ · auton	Him
ΜΗ · me	not
ΑΠΟΛΗΤΑΙ · apoletai	should perish
ΑΛΛ · all	but
ΕΧΗ · eche	should have
ΖΩΗΝ · zoen	life
ΑΙΩΝΙΟΝ · aionion	eternal

Now read the English straight down, in Greek order: In this way for loved the God the world, so that the Son the one and only He gave, in order that everyone the believing into Him not should perish but should have life eternal.

Every word is there. But nobody talks like that. Greek puts words in a different order than English, and Greek uses the word the in places English does not. So every translator has to move the words into English order. That is not changing the Bible. That is what translating is.

Hebrew does the same thing. Genesis 1:1 in Hebrew, word for word, reads: In beginning created God, et, the heavens and et the earth. The little word et has no English word at all. It just marks what was created. So we move the words around and leave et out: In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth.

Bonus fact: many scholars think that little Greek word houtos at the start of John 3:16 means in this way. So God so loved the world may be about more than how much God loved the world. It is also how He loved it: by giving His Son. And if your King James says his only begotten Son, that is because the Greek text behind it adds the word his.

So Which Bible Should I Read?

The one you will actually read. For study, use a word for word Bible and check it against a second one. For reading big chunks, a thought for thought Bible is great. And if you ever want to see the actual words under the English, look up the verse in a free online interlinear Bible.

When two good translations say a verse a little differently, that is not a contradiction. It is two careful people showing you two sides of the same Greek or Hebrew words. Put them side by side, and you get a fuller picture.

The Verdict

The Bible has not been translated over and over until nobody knows what it said. A few early English Bibles really were secondhand, from Latin or German. But they were handwritten or short lived, and since 1560 Protestant English Bibles have gone back to the Hebrew and Greek, and Catholic ones have too since the 1900s. Today's Bibles are translated from more and older manuscripts than any generation before us ever had.

New translations keep coming because English keeps changing and the ground keeps giving up older copies. The words of God have not changed. The grass withers and the flowers fall, but the word of our God stands forever, Isaiah 40:8.

One Bible, carefully kept for thousands of years. So why are there so many different churches?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: WHERE DID ALL THE DENOMINATIONS COME FROM?

BONUS SECTION · HOW WE GOT HERE

Where Did All the Denominations Come From?

2,000 years of church history, from one church at Pentecost to thousands of church groups today.

THE START	One church, born at Pentecost in Jerusalem, about AD 30 to 33, Acts 2.
THE FIRST BIG SPLITS	AD 431 and 451, over how to describe Jesus as God and man. After 431 the Church of the East in Persia went its own way. After 451 the churches of Egypt, Ethiopia, Armenia and Syria went one way, Rome and Constantinople another.
THE GREAT SCHISM	1054. The Eastern Orthodox and the Roman Catholic churches split.
THE REFORMATION	1517. Martin Luther's 95 Theses, and the start of the Protestant churches.
TODAY	More than 2 billion Christians. About half are Catholic, about 4 in 10 are Protestant or other non Catholic churches, and about 1 in 10 are Orthodox.

One Church, Many Families

Every Christian family tree starts in the same place: Jesus, the apostles, and about 3,000 people baptized on the day of Pentecost. The disciples were first called Christians in Antioch, Acts 11:26. For about 400 years there was basically one church, spread across the Roman Empire and beyond, with bishops in big cities like Jerusalem, Antioch, Alexandria and Rome.

Think of the church like a family. Over 2,000 years the family had arguments, some kids moved out, and some started families of their own. But they all came from the same house.

The Early Church, AD 30 to 451

PERSECUTION. For almost 300 years, being a Christian could get you killed. Nero blamed Christians for the fire of Rome in AD 64. The worst persecution came under Diocletian, starting in AD 303.

THE WORD CATHOLIC. About AD 110, Ignatius of Antioch wrote, Wherever Jesus Christ is, there is the catholic church. Catholic means universal, the whole church everywhere, not one city's church. That is how the creeds use it too.

CONSTANTINE. In AD 311 the Edict of Toleration ended the great persecution, and in AD 313 the Edict of Milan gave Christians full freedom to worship and gave back their property. In AD 325 Constantine called the Council of Nicaea. See Didn't They Take Books Out of the Bible at the Council of Nicaea?, p.2152.

THE STATE RELIGION. In AD 380 Emperor Theodosius made Nicene Christianity the official religion of the Roman Empire. The church went from hunted to powerful in less than 80 years, and that power changed it.

THE FIRST SPLITS. Councils at Ephesus in AD 431 and Chalcedon in AD 451 argued over how Jesus can be fully God and fully man. The Church of the East, in Persia, parted ways after 431. After 451 the churches of Egypt, Ethiopia, Armenia and Syria, called the Oriental Orthodox today, would not accept Chalcedon's wording. Most scholars now say the two sides believed nearly the same thing in different words.

The Ethiopian Church: One of the Oldest in the World

ABOUT AD 34. An Ethiopian royal official, treasurer of the queen, was baptized by Philip on the road to Gaza, Acts 8:26 to 39. In the Bible, Ethiopia meant the kingdom of Kush, south of Egypt, but Ethiopian Christians count him as their first believer.

ABOUT AD 330. A young Christian from Tyre named Frumentius, captured when his ship stopped on the Red Sea coast and taken to the court of Aksum, helped bring King Ezana to Christ. Athanasius of Alexandria made Frumentius the first bishop of Ethiopia. Ezana's coins switched from pagan symbols to the cross, some of the first coins anywhere with a cross.

LATE 400s. Monks remembered as the Nine Saints came from the Roman world, spread the faith and helped translate the Bible into Ge'ez. Ethiopia sided with Alexandria after Chalcedon.

1959. For about 1,600 years the head bishop of Ethiopia was an Egyptian sent by the Coptic pope of Alexandria. In 1951 Basilios became the first Ethiopian to lead his own church, and in 1959 he became the first patriarch of the Ethiopian Orthodox Tewahedo Church, Abuna Basilios. Tewahedo means made one, for Christ's divine and human nature united. The Eritrean church became separate in the 1990s. See Why Do Some Bibles Have More Books?, p.2169.

How Rome Rose to the Top

This is where Protestants and Catholics tell the story differently, so here are both.

THE CATHOLIC VIEW. Jesus made Peter the rock, Matthew 16:18. Peter led the church in Rome and died there, and the bishops of Rome have carried on his job ever since, in an unbroken line. So the pope is Peter's successor and the head of the whole church on earth.

THE PROTESTANT VIEW. Peter likely died in Rome, but the New Testament never says he was its bishop or that he passed his authority to anyone. The early church in Rome seems to have been led by a group of elders. The power of the bishop of Rome grew over centuries, along with the power of the city, until it claimed authority over every church. See Peter and the Rock, Matthew, p.1574.

Here are the milestones. AD 96, Clement writes to Corinth on behalf of the church in Rome. About AD 180, Irenaeus lists the bishops of Rome back to the apostles and says every church should agree with Rome because of its greater authority, though scholars debate the exact meaning of his Latin. In the 440s and 450s, Leo

the Great says he speaks with Peter's own authority. From AD 590 to 604, Gregory the Great runs the city of Rome and the church's large lands in Italy, though he himself rejected the title universal bishop. On Christmas Day of AD 800, Pope Leo III crowns Charlemagne emperor. In 1075 Gregory VII claims power to depose emperors. In 1302, Boniface VIII declares in Unam Sanctam that it is necessary for salvation for every human creature to be subject to the Roman pontiff.

When Did the Word Pope Start?

Pope comes from papas, a Greek word for father. In the early church it was a warm name for many bishops. One of the first bishops on record to be called pope was Heraclas of Alexandria, in the 200s, and the head of the Coptic church in Egypt is still called Pope today.

In the West, bishops like Cyprian of Carthage were called papa too. Siricius, in the late 300s, is often named as the first bishop of Rome to use the title for himself. By the 500s it was mostly used for Rome in the West. In 1075 Pope Gregory VII wrote in his Dictatus Papae that this is the only name in the world, which most historians take to mean the title pope belonged to Rome alone. From then on in the Western church, pope meant only the bishop of Rome.

Catholic Rules and Teachings That Came Later

Protestants point out that these were not in the church of the apostles. Catholics answer that the church has authority to set rules for its own life, and that its teachings grow from seeds already in Scripture and tradition, like an acorn growing into an oak. Here are the dates.

PRIESTS NOT MARRYING	Peter was married, Mark 1:30, and Paul says a church leader should be the husband of one wife, 1 Timothy 3:2. Around AD 305 the Spanish Council of Elvira told married clergy to stop sleeping with their wives. In 1123 the First Lateran Council forbade priests to marry, and in 1139 the Second Lateran Council declared such marriages invalid. Eastern churches, Orthodox and Eastern Catholic, still have married priests, though not married bishops. It is a rule of discipline, not a doctrine, and Rome allows some exceptions.
MONKS AND NUNS	Not a late invention. Anthony went into the Egyptian desert about AD 270, Pachomius started the first monastery communities in the 320s, and his sister Mary led a house of women. Macrina and others led women's communities in the 300s. Benedict's Rule, about AD 530, shaped Western monks and nuns. Orthodox churches have monks and nuns too.

CARDINALS	From the Latin cardo, hinge. At first it meant the main clergy of the churches of Rome. In 1059 Pope Nicholas II gave the cardinal bishops the job of electing the pope. Red hats came in 1245, and the locked room election, the conclave, began in 1274.

INDULGENCES	Pope Urban II promised full forgiveness of penance to crusaders in 1095. Selling them to raise money is what set off Luther in 1517.
TRANSUBSTANTIATION	The word was made official at the Fourth Lateran Council in 1215, which also required confession at least once a year.
SEVEN SACRAMENTS	Listed by Peter Lombard in the 1150s and declared by the Council of Florence in 1439, then by Trent.
PURGATORY	Taught at the Second Council of Lyon in 1274, defined at Florence in 1439 and again at Trent in 1563.

THE INQUISITION	Church courts against heresy began in 1184, the papal Inquisition in the 1230s, the Spanish Inquisition in 1478.
MARY CONCEIVED WITHOUT SIN	Declared in 1854.
PAPAL INFALLIBILITY	The pope cannot err when speaking officially on faith and morals, declared at the First Vatican Council in 1870.
MARY TAKEN UP TO HEAVEN	Declared in 1950.
MASS IN LOCAL LANGUAGES	Allowed after the Second Vatican Council, 1962 to 1965. Before that the Western Mass was almost always in Latin.

The Great Schism of 1054

By the year 1000 the church was really two worlds. The West spoke Latin and looked to the pope in Rome. The East spoke Greek and looked to the patriarch in Constantinople and the other ancient bishops as equals.

THE FIGHTS. Who is in charge: the pope over all, or the old patriarchs together? The Filioque: the West added and the Son to the Nicene Creed, saying the Holy Spirit proceeds from the Father and the Son. Spain added it in AD 589, Rome used it in the Mass by 1014, and the East said nobody had the right to change the creed. Even bread: leavened in the East, unleavened in the West.

JULY 16, 1054. Cardinal Humbert, sent by the pope, walked into the great church of Hagia Sophia in Constantinople and laid a paper excommunicating Patriarch Michael Cerularius on the altar. The patriarch excommunicated him back.

1204. What made the split stick was the Fourth Crusade. Western crusaders attacked Christian Constantinople, looted it and set up a Latin ruler. The East never forgot.

1965. Pope Paul VI and Patriarch Athenagoras lifted the excommunications of 1054. The churches are friendlier, but they are still separate today.

The Orthodox family today includes the Greek, Russian, Serbian, Romanian, Bulgarian and other churches, each with its own patriarch or head, united in faith.

Martin Luther and the Reformation



Martin Luther, painted by his friend Lucas Cranach the Elder in 1528, Veste Coburg. Public domain.

THE MONK. Luther was a German monk and Bible professor in Wittenberg, terrified that he could never be good enough for God. Reading Romans 1:17, The righteous will live by faith, he discovered that God's righteousness is a gift received by faith, not a reward earned by works.

OCTOBER 31, 1517. A friar named Johann Tetzel was selling indulgences to pay for St. Peter's Basilica in Rome. A popular saying of the day went, As soon as the coin in the coffer rings, the soul from purgatory springs. Luther sent his 95 Theses, points for debate, to the archbishop, and tradition says he nailed them to the church door in Wittenberg. The printing press spread them across Germany in weeks.

1521. Luther was excommunicated in January. In April, at the Diet of Worms, he was ordered to take back his books in front of the emperor. He refused unless proven wrong by Scripture and plain reason, saying his conscience was captive to the word of God. The famous line Here I stand, I can do no other, may have been added by later printers.

THE BIBLE FOR EVERYONE. Hiding at Wartburg Castle, Luther translated the New Testament into German in about 11 weeks. It came out in 1522, and the whole Bible in 1534.

WHAT HE TAUGHT. Later Protestants summed it up in five phrases: Scripture alone, grace alone, faith alone, Christ alone, and the glory of God alone. He also married a former nun, Katharina von Bora, in 1525, showing pastors could marry. He died in 1546.

John Calvin and the Burning of Michael Servetus

THE LAWYER. John Calvin was born in Noyon, France, in 1509 and trained to be a lawyer. Around 1533 he came to the Protestant faith, which he later called a sudden conversion. Protestants were being arrested in France, so he fled.

THE BOOK. In 1536, at just 26 years old, he published the first edition of the Institutes of the Christian Religion in Basel. He kept expanding it until the final edition of 1559. It became the most important book of Reformed teaching ever written.

GENEVA. Later in 1536 he passed through Geneva for one night. The preacher William Farel told him God would curse him if he left, so he stayed. The city threw him out in 1538, then begged him back in 1541, and he led the church there until he died on May 27, 1564. Refugees poured in from all over Europe. John Knox called Geneva the most perfect school of Christ since the days of the apostles.

Calvin taught that God is completely in charge of everything, including salvation, so no one can boast. That is the teaching of predestination. In 1618 to 1619 the Synod of Dort, in the Netherlands, defended it against the followers of Jacobus Arminius, who taught that people can freely accept or resist God's grace. The five points of Calvinism, often remembered as TULIP, come from Dort, not from Calvin himself. The Calvinist and Arminian argument still splits churches today. Presbyterians and many Baptists lean Calvinist. Methodists, Nazarenes and most Pentecostals lean Arminian.

The Man Who Was Burned

MICHAEL SERVETUS. Servetus was a brilliant Spanish doctor, one of the first in Europe to describe how blood moves through the lungs. He also denied the Trinity. He taught that Jesus was not the eternal Son of God, and he called the Trinity a three headed monster. He wrote books saying so in 1531 and 1553.

THE LETTERS. Servetus had written letters to Calvin for years, attacking his teaching. In 1546 Calvin wrote to Farel that if Servetus ever came to Geneva, he would not let him leave alive, if his authority counted for anything.

CAUGHT BY THE CATHOLICS FIRST. In 1553 a friend of Calvin's in Geneva, Guillaume de Trie, exposed Servetus to the Catholic Inquisition in France. To prove it, he passed along letters Servetus had written to Calvin, which Calvin had supplied. Servetus was arrested in Vienne, France, and escaped from prison. The Catholics burned him in effigy, a dummy in his place.

GENEVA. A few months later, for reasons nobody knows, Servetus showed up in Geneva. He was recognized at church on August 13, 1553, and arrested. Calvin wrote out the charges against him, and his secretary filed them. The city council, not Calvin, ran the trial and gave the sentence, after four other Protestant cities in Switzerland agreed he was guilty.

OCTOBER 27, 1553. Servetus was burned alive at Champel, just outside Geneva, with a copy of his book. Calvin had asked for a quicker death by the sword, and the council said no. Farel walked him to the stake. His last words were, Jesus, Son of the eternal God, have mercy on me. Even at the end he would not say eternal Son.

THE HONEST VIEW	In that age almost every church, Catholic, Lutheran and Reformed, believed heresy could be punished by death. Luther himself signed a 1531 paper by Melanchthon agreeing that Anabaptists who spread their teaching could be put to death. That does not make it right. Jesus told Peter to put away his sword, Matthew 26:52.
THE PROTEST	A former friend of Calvin, Sebastian Castellio, wrote, To kill a man is not to defend a doctrine, it is to kill a man.
THE APOLOGY	In 1903, on the 350th anniversary, Calvin's followers built a stone monument at Champel saying they condemned an error that was the error of his age.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH. The trial records and Calvin's own letters survive.

How the Reformation Forked

LUTHERAN, 1517 ON. Luther's followers. The Augsburg Confession of 1530 is their statement of faith. Today the Evangelical Lutheran Church in America, 1988, and the more conservative Lutheran Church Missouri Synod, 1847, are the biggest in the United States.

REFORMED, 1519 ON. Ulrich Zwingli in Zurich, starting 1519, and John Calvin in Geneva. They stressed God's sovereignty and disagreed with Luther about the Lord's Supper. Reformed churches spread from Switzerland to France, the Netherlands, Hungary and Scotland.

PRESBYTERIAN, 1560. John Knox, a follower of Calvin who had worked with him in Geneva, led the Scottish Reformation in 1560. Presbyterian means run by elders, presbyteros in Greek. In America the main branches are the PCUSA, formed in 1983, the more conservative Presbyterian Church in America, which split from the southern Presbyterian church in 1973, and the Orthodox Presbyterian Church, which split from the northern church in 1936.

ANABAPTIST, 1525. On January 21, 1525, in Zurich, Conrad Grebel and his friends baptized each other as adults. Anabaptist means rebaptizer. They said only believers should be baptized, the church should be separate from the state, and Christians should not fight in wars. Thousands were killed for it, by Catholics and Protestants alike. Their children today are the Mennonites, named for Menno Simons, who joined them in 1536, the Amish, who split from the Mennonites in 1693, and the Hutterites.

ANGLICAN, 1534. King Henry VIII wanted his marriage annulled, the pope said no, and in 1534 Parliament made the king the head of the Church of England. Under Thomas Cranmer the church became Protestant in belief, with the Book of Common Prayer in 1549. In America it became the Episcopal Church in 1789. The Anglican Church in North America formed in 2009 when conservatives left the Episcopal Church and the Anglican Church of Canada.

CONGREGATIONAL, 1600s. Puritans wanted to purify the Church of England. Some, like the Pilgrims of 1620, left it entirely and ran each church by its own members. Puritan Congregationalists started Harvard in 1636 and Yale in 1701.

BAPTIST, 1609. John Smyth, an English Separatist, baptized believers in Amsterdam in 1609. Thomas Helwys started the first Baptist church in England in 1612, and Roger Williams the first in America in Providence, Rhode Island, in 1638 or 1639. Baptists hold to believers' baptism by immersion, the authority of the Bible, and the freedom of each local church. In 1845 the Southern Baptist Convention split from Northern Baptists over slavery. In 1995 it apologized for it. Today it is the largest Protestant denomination in America.

QUAKERS, 1650s. George Fox taught that God's inner light speaks to every person. Traditional Quakers have no clergy and no outward sacraments, and they led early fights against slavery.

The Methodists and Their Splits

1738. John Wesley, an Anglican priest, felt his heart strangely warmed at a meeting on Aldersgate Street in London on May 24, 1738, while someone read Luther's preface to Romans. He and his brother Charles, who wrote more than 6,000 hymns, preached in fields to coal miners and factory workers. At Oxford, other students mocked them as Methodists because they lived by strict method, and the name stuck.

1784. At the Christmas Conference in Baltimore, the Methodist Episcopal Church was formed in America, separate from the Church of England.

THE SPLITS. In 1816 Richard Allen founded the African Methodist Episcopal Church after Black Methodists were mistreated in a white church in Philadelphia. In 1844 the Methodists split North and South over slavery. They came back together in 1939, and in 1968 joined with another group to form the United Methodist Church. Then from 2019 to 2023 about 7,600 United Methodist churches left, most over same sex marriage and gay clergy, and many joined the new Global Methodist Church, started in 2022.

THE HOLINESS MOVEMENT. Methodist teaching about a second work of grace grew into the Holiness churches in the 1800s, like the Salvation Army in 1865 and the Church of the Nazarene in 1908.

Do the Gifts Still Work Today?

Christians disagree about whether the miracle gifts of the Holy Spirit, like tongues, prophecy and healing, are still given today. There are two main answers.

CESSATIONISM	From cease. The miracle gifts were for the apostles, to prove their message and lay the foundation of the church, Ephesians 2:20 and Hebrews 2:3 to 4. Once the New Testament was finished, they stopped. Paul said tongues will cease when the perfect comes, 1 Corinthians 13:8 to 10, and cessationists say the perfect is the finished Bible.

CONTINUISM	Also called continuationism. All the gifts of the Spirit continue until Jesus comes back. The perfect is His return, when we will see face to face, 1 Corinthians 13:12. Peter said the promise of the Spirit is for you and your children and for all who are far off, Acts 2:39.

DID CALVIN INVENT CESSATIONISM? Not quite. He was its most important early voice, but the idea is older. About AD 392, John Chrysostom wrote that the gifts in 1 Corinthians 12 were hard to understand because such things used to happen but no longer took place. Around AD 390 Augustine wrote that miracles had not been allowed to continue into his time.

WHAT CALVIN SAID. Catholics told the Reformers, if your teaching is true, show us miracles. Calvin answered that miracles were given to seal the gospel when it was new, and that the gift of healing, like the other miracles, had vanished away. Cessationism became the normal Protestant view for the next 300 years.

WARFIELD. The classic modern case is Counterfeit Miracles, written in 1918 by B.B. Warfield of Princeton Seminary. He said the miracle gifts were the credentials of the apostles and died out with them. In 2013 pastor John MacArthur's Strange Fire conference and book made the same case against the charismatic movement.

The History of Continuism

THE EARLY CHURCH. About AD 155 Justin Martyr told a Jewish debater that the prophetic gifts remain with us even to the present time. About AD 180 Irenaeus wrote that he heard many believers who prophesied and spoke in all kinds of languages through the Spirit, and that even the dead had been raised.

A WARNING SIGN. In the 170s a man named Montanus and two women prophets in Phrygia claimed new revelations that went beyond Scripture. The church rejected them, and that made many bishops nervous about prophecy for centuries.

AUGUSTINE CHANGES HIS MIND. Late in life Augustine took back what he wrote earlier. In The City of God, about AD 426, he listed healings he had seen himself, and said that in his own town of Hippo alone nearly 70 had been written down in about two years.

LUTHER PRAYS. Luther agreed the church did not need miracles to prove the gospel, but he still prayed for the sick. In 1540 his friend Philip Melanchthon lay dying at Weimar. Luther prayed over him, telling God he had better listen, and Melanchthon recovered. Melanchthon said Luther had called him back from death itself.

WESLEY. In 1787 John Wesley preached that the gifts did not fade because the church no longer needed them. He said they faded because the love of many grew cold, and Christians became worldly. Early Quakers and Methodists both reported healings.

THE 1800s. In the 1830s Edward Irving's church in London had tongues and prophecy. Later in the 1800s a divine healing movement spread through the Holiness churches. A.B. Simpson, who in 1887 started the groups that became the

Christian and Missionary Alliance, taught that Jesus is still our Healer. The stage was set.

The Pentecostal Movement

JANUARY 1, 1901. At Charles Parham's Bible school in Topeka, Kansas, a student named Agnes Ozman spoke in tongues. Parham taught that tongues are the first sign of being baptized in the Holy Spirit, Acts 2:4.

REVIVAL AROUND THE WORLD. In 1904 and 1905 the Welsh Revival under Evan Roberts swept Wales, and in 1905 revival broke out at Pandita Ramabai's Mukti Mission in India. Christians everywhere were praying for a new Pentecost.

WILLIAM SEYMOUR. Seymour was a Black preacher, the son of former slaves. Around the start of 1906 he studied under Parham in Houston, where segregation laws made him listen from the hallway. A few weeks later he was invited to preach in Los Angeles.

AZUSA STREET, 1906. On April 9, 1906, at a house on Bonnie Brae Street, Seymour's prayer group began speaking in tongues. The crowds grew so big that they moved to an old run down church building at 312 Azusa Street. On April 18 the Los Angeles Times mocked it with the headline Weird Babel of Tongues. For about three years, Black, white, Latino and Asian believers prayed side by side, at a time when that was almost unheard of. One visitor, Frank Bartleman, wrote that the color line was washed away in the blood.

IT SPREADS. Visitors carried the fire home. Within two years Pentecostal missionaries had gone to dozens of countries. In 1911 two Swedish missionaries started the church in Brazil that became the Assemblies of God, now one of the biggest Protestant churches in the world.

THE CHURCHES. The Church of God in Christ, founded in 1897, became Pentecostal in 1907. The Church of God of Cleveland, Tennessee, joined the movement by 1908. The Assemblies of God formed in 1914 at Hot Springs, Arkansas. In 1916 the Oneness Pentecostals split off over the Trinity, baptizing in Jesus' name only, and in 1945 they formed the United Pentecostal Church. In 1923 Aimee Semple McPherson opened Angelus Temple in Los Angeles, the start of the Foursquare Church.

HEALING REVIVALS. After World War 2, healing evangelists like Oral Roberts held huge tent meetings, and Kathryn Kuhlman filled stadiums. In 1958 David Yonggi Cho started a tent church in Seoul, Korea, that grew into the Yoido Full Gospel Church, once called the largest church in the world.

THE CHARISMATIC MOVEMENT. In 1960 an Episcopal priest in California, Dennis Bennett, told his church he had spoken in tongues. Soon Lutherans, Presbyterians and others were too. In February 1967, Catholic students at Duquesne University in Pittsburgh began the Catholic Charismatic Renewal. In the 1980s John Wimber's Vineyard churches spread a third wave of signs and wonders.

TODAY. Pentecostals and charismatics together number more than 600 million, about a quarter of all Christians, and they are growing fastest in Africa, Latin America and Asia.

THIS BIBLE'S VIEW	Continuism. Paul says, Do not forbid speaking in tongues, 1 Corinthians 14:39, and, Do not quench the Spirit. Do not despise prophecies, but test everything, 1 Thessalonians 5:19 to 21. Nowhere does the Bible say the gifts would stop before Jesus returns. Joel said the Spirit would be poured out in the last days, and Peter said those days had begun, Acts 2:16 to 17.
WHERE CESSATIONISTS ARE RIGHT	There are fakes, and some preachers have used healing to get rich. Test every spirit, 1 John 4:1. No prophecy today is equal to Scripture. And the greatest gift is still love, 1 Corinthians 13:13.

Other Groups From the 1800s and 1900s

RESTORATION MOVEMENT. Barton Stone and Alexander Campbell wanted to drop denominations and just be Christians. Their movement, joined in 1832, became the Churches of Christ, the Christian Church, also called the Disciples of Christ, and independent Christian churches.

SEVENTH DAY ADVENTISTS, 1863. Grew from William Miller's prediction that Jesus would return in 1844. They worship on Saturday.

NONDENOMINATIONAL. Since the 1960s, many churches have no denomination at all. Calvary Chapel, which grew under Chuck Smith starting in 1965, and today's megachurches are part of this. Nondenominational churches are now one of the biggest groups in America.

THE BLACK CHURCH. Shut out or mistreated in white churches, Black Christians built their own. Besides the AME Church of 1816, the National Baptist Convention formed in 1895 and is still the largest Black denomination in America, and the Church of God in Christ is the largest Black Pentecostal one. These churches were the backbone of the civil rights movement. Martin Luther King Jr. was a Baptist pastor.

THE JESUS MOVEMENT. In the late 1960s and early 1970s, thousands of hippies in California came to Jesus. A long haired young preacher named Lonnie Frisbee helped bring them into Calvary Chapel in Costa Mesa, where they were baptized in the Pacific Ocean. In 1971 Time magazine put The Jesus Revolution on its cover. It helped give us the Vineyard and modern worship music. In 2023 it became a movie, Jesus Revolution.

THE HOUSE CHURCHES OF CHINA. When the missionaries were thrown out of China after 1949, there were fewer than 1 million Protestants. Under persecution, believers kept meeting in homes. Today estimates vary widely, from about 20 million to around 100 million Christians in China, most of them Protestant.

OUTSIDE HISTORIC CHRISTIANITY. The Latter day Saints, 1830, and the Jehovah's Witnesses, 1870s, also came out of 1800s America, but both reject the Trinity of the Nicene Creed, so most Christian churches do not count them as Christian denominations.

Church History Timeline

ABOUT AD 30 TO 33	Pentecost. The church is born in Jerusalem.
ABOUT AD 34	The Ethiopian official is baptized, Acts 8.
AD 64	Nero's persecution in Rome.
ABOUT AD 110	Ignatius first calls it the catholic, universal, church.
AD 303	Diocletian's great persecution.
AD 313	The Edict of Milan makes Christianity legal.
AD 325	The Council of Nicaea.
ABOUT AD 330	King Ezana of Ethiopia becomes Christian.
AD 380	Christianity becomes the Roman state religion.
AD 431 AND 451	Ephesus and Chalcedon. The Church of the East and the Oriental Orthodox part ways.
AD 590 TO 604	Gregory the Great.
AD 800	Pope Leo III crowns Charlemagne.
1054	The Great Schism, East and West.
1059	Cardinals begin electing the pope.
1075	Gregory VII: pope belongs to Rome alone.
1123 AND 1139	Priests' marriages declared invalid in the West.
1204	Crusaders sack Constantinople.
1215	Fourth Lateran Council: transubstantiation.
1439	Council of Florence: seven sacraments, purgatory.

OCTOBER 31, 1517	Luther's 95 Theses.
1519	Zwingli begins the Reformed churches in Zurich.
1521	Luther at the Diet of Worms.
1525	The first Anabaptist baptisms.
1534	The Church of England breaks from Rome. Luther's whole German Bible.
1536	Calvin's Institutes. Calvin comes to Geneva.
1545 TO 1563	The Council of Trent, Rome's answer to the Reformation.
1553	Michael Servetus burned in Geneva.
1560	The Scottish Reformation, Presbyterians.
1609 AND 1612	The first Baptist churches.
1618 TO 1619	The Synod of Dort, Calvinists against Arminians.
1693	The Amish split from the Mennonites.
1738	Wesley's heart strangely warmed.
1784	The Methodist Episcopal Church in America.
1816	The African Methodist Episcopal Church.
1844 AND 1845	Methodists and Baptists split North and South over slavery.
1854, 1870, 1950	Catholic Mary and papal infallibility teachings.
1901 AND 1906	Topeka and Azusa Street. Pentecostalism begins.
1914	The Assemblies of God.
1918	Warfield's Counterfeit Miracles.
1959	The Ethiopian church gets its own patriarch.
1960 AND 1967	The charismatic movement in Protestant and Catholic churches.
1962 TO 1965	The Second Vatican Council.
1965	East and West lift the 1054 excommunications.
2019 TO 2023	The United Methodist split.

The Verdict

Christians have split many times, sometimes over the gospel itself and sometimes over things that did not need to divide them. Luther did not set out to start a new church. He wanted to call the church back to the Bible and to grace through faith in Christ.

Underneath the labels, the churches that hold to the Bible and the Nicene Creed still share the most important things: one God in three persons, Jesus fully God and fully man, who died for our sins and rose again. Jesus prayed that His people would be one, John 17:21. Know your church's story, but remember whose church it really is.

Remember the bishop who slapped a heretic at Nicaea? Somehow he became the most famous gift giver in the world.

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: WHO WAS THE REAL SANTA CLAUS?

BONUS SECTION · MYTH OR HISTORY?

Who Was the Real Santa Claus?

A rich young bishop who gave his money away, and the legends that grew around him.

HIS NAME	Nicholas of Myra. Nicholas means victory of the people in Greek.
BORN	About AD 270 in Patara, a port town in Lycia, on the southern coast of what is now Turkey.
JOB	Bishop of Myra, a town near Patara. Today it is called Demre.
DIED	December 6, around AD 343, by tradition. That is why his feast day is December 6.
BURIED	First at Myra. Since 1087 most of his bones have been in Bari, Italy.
KNOWN FOR	Giving gifts in secret, protecting children, sailors and the poor, and, according to legend, slapping a heretic.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that he was a real bishop of Myra in the 300s. LOW to MEDIUM for most of the stories told about him.

The Real Man

We know less about the real Nicholas than you might think. No letters or sermons of his survive, and the first stories about him were written down a long time after he died. But here is what the old traditions agree on.

Nicholas was born to a rich Christian family. His parents died while he was young, and he was left with a lot of money. Instead of keeping it, he gave it away to people in need, often in secret. He became the bishop of Myra while he was still young.

Those were hard years to be a Christian. Under Emperor Diocletian, starting in AD 303, churches were torn down and Christian leaders were arrested. Tradition says Nicholas was thrown in prison for his faith and set free when Constantine came to power.

Tradition also says he was at the Council of Nicaea in AD 325, where he is said to have slapped Arius. That story was first written down about 1,000 years later. See Didn't They Take Books Out of the Bible at the Council of Nicaea?, p.2152.



Saint Nicholas, an icon painted in the first half of the 1200s, at Saint Catherine's Monastery, Sinai. Public domain.

The Bags of Gold

This is the most famous story about him, and it is the root of Santa Claus. A man in Nicholas's town had lost all his money. He had three daughters. In those days a young woman needed a dowry, money her family gave when she married. With no dowry, nobody would marry them, and the father was about to sell them into prostitution to survive.

Nicholas heard about it. One night he walked to the man's house and tossed a bag of gold through the open window. Now the oldest daughter could marry. Later he did it again for the second daughter.

The third time, the father hid and waited to see who was doing it. He caught Nicholas and fell at his feet to thank him. Nicholas made him promise to keep it a secret, because he wanted the glory to go to God.

WHERE IT LEADS	Later tellers said the gold fell down the chimney, or landed in stockings hung by the fire to dry. Many people say that is where Christmas stockings and chocolate gold coins come from.
THE THREE GOLD BALLS	Paintings often show Nicholas holding three gold balls for the three bags. Pawn shops later used three gold balls as their sign.
THE BIBLE BEHIND IT	When you give to the needy, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing, so that your giving may be in secret, Matthew 6:3 to 4.
CONFIDENCE	MEDIUM. The story is told in the oldest Life of Nicholas, written in the 800s, about 500 years after him.

Did He Raise the Dead?

The legends say yes, more than once. Here are the big ones.

THE THREE BOYS IN THE BARREL. A wicked innkeeper killed three boys who were traveling to school, cut them up and salted them in a barrel. In later versions he is a butcher during a famine who planned to sell them as meat. Nicholas walked in, saw what had happened, prayed, and the three boys climbed out of the barrel alive. This is the main reason he became the patron saint of children. The story first shows up in Western Europe around the year 1100, more than 700 years after Nicholas.

THE SAILOR WHO FELL. Sailors caught in a storm prayed to Nicholas, and he appeared on the deck and calmed the sea. In some versions a sailor fell from the mast and died, and Nicholas brought him back to life. That is why sailors call him their patron saint.

THE THREE INNOCENT MEN. One of the oldest stories, written within about 100 to 200 years after his death, says three innocent men were about to be beheaded. Nicholas ran up, grabbed the executioner's sword, and set them free. Nobody died in that one, but it shows what people remembered about him: he stood up for the helpless.

THE HONEST ANSWER	The Bible tells of real people raised from the dead, like the widow's son, Luke 7:11 to 17, and Lazarus, John 11. God can do it any time He wants. But the stories about Nicholas raising the dead were written down hundreds of years after he lived, and nobody who was there wrote them.
CONFIDENCE	LOW for the miracle stories. They are best read as legends that tell what kind of man people believed he was.

More Stories People Told

THE BABY WHO STOOD UP. One legend says baby Nicholas stood up by himself in his first bath, and that he would only nurse once on Wednesdays and Fridays, the old fast days.

THE GRAIN SHIPS. During a famine in Myra, Nicholas asked sailors carrying grain for the emperor to give some to his city. When they reached the capital, their ships still held the full amount.

THE BOY CAPTURED BY RAIDERS. A boy named Basil was carried off and made a servant in a faraway palace. A year later, on Nicholas's feast day, the boy was suddenly back home holding the cup he had been serving from.

How He Became a Saint

In the early church nobody filled out paperwork to become a saint. Saint means holy one, and the New Testament calls all believers saints, Romans 1:7. Over time the churches began honoring people known for holy lives, especially martyrs and great leaders, and remembering them on the day they died.

Nicholas was honored by the people long before there were any official rules. By the 500s Constantinople had a church named for him and another saint, and Emperor Justinian rebuilt it. He became one of the most loved saints in both the Eastern and Western churches, with thousands of churches named for him.

In 1087 sailors from Bari, Italy, sailed to Myra, opened his tomb and carried most of his bones home. Bari still keeps them in the Basilica of San Nicola. Venice later took many of the small pieces that were left. In 2017 scientists at Oxford tested a piece of pelvis said to be his, and it dated to the 300s, the right time for Nicholas. That does not prove it is his, but it is not a fake from later times.

How Saint Nicholas Turned Into Santa Claus

DECEMBER 6. For hundreds of years, children in Europe got small gifts on Saint Nicholas Day, or the night before. In the Netherlands he was called Sinterklaas.

MARTIN LUTHER. During the Reformation, Luther taught people not to pray to saints. He spoke of the Holy Christ bringing gifts at Christmas, to point children to Jesus instead of a saint. Over the next years many Protestant families moved the gifts from December 6 to Christmas, and the Christ Child, the Christkind, became the gift bringer in much of Germany.

NEW YORK. The name Santa Claus most likely came from the Dutch Sinterklaas. In 1809 the writer Washington Irving made a jolly Saint Nicholas part of old New York stories. In 1821 a poem showed him on a sleigh pulled by a reindeer, bringing gifts on Christmas Eve.

THE NIGHT BEFORE CHRISTMAS. In 1823 the poem A Visit from St. Nicholas, which begins 'Twas the night before Christmas, made famous the chimney, the sleigh, eight reindeer with names, and a jolly old elf with a little round belly that shook when he laughed. It is usually credited to Clement Clarke Moore, though some argue Henry Livingston Jr. wrote it.

THE PICTURE. Cartoonist Thomas Nast drew Santa for Harper's Weekly from the 1860s to the 1880s and gave him a home at the North Pole and a workshop. In the 1930s Coca Cola ads by Haddon Sundblom made the big, red suited Santa famous all over the world. Coke did not invent the red suit, but it made it the one everybody pictures.



Merry Old Santa Claus, by Thomas Nast, first printed in Harper's Weekly in 1881. This color version was printed later. Public domain.

Where Did Christmas Come From?

The Bible never gives the date Jesus was born. The first Christians did not celebrate His birthday at all. They celebrated His resurrection every Sunday and at Easter.

THE FIRST RECORD. The oldest record of a December 25 Christmas comes from Rome. A calendar made in AD 354 lists December 25 as the day Christ was born in Bethlehem, and it shows the church in Rome keeping it by about AD 336.

WHY DECEMBER 25? There are two main answers. One says early Christians believed Jesus was conceived on the same day of the year that He died, March 25, so they counted nine months later and got December 25. The other says the church chose a day already full of Roman celebrations, like the feast of the Unconquered Sun on December 25 and the Saturnalia a week earlier, to give people a Christian reason to celebrate. Scholars still argue about which came first. See Was Jesus Born on December 25?, Luke, p.1649.

JANUARY 6. Many churches in the East first celebrated Jesus' birth on January 6. Armenian churches still do. Orthodox churches that use the old Julian calendar keep December 25 on what is January 7 on our calendar.

CHRISTMAS GETS BANNED. The Puritans thought Christmas had turned into a pagan party. In 1647 Parliament in England banned it, and from 1659 to 1681 Massachusetts fined anyone caught celebrating it five shillings.

CHRISTMAS COMES BACK. In the 1800s Christmas grew into a family holiday, helped along by Charles Dickens's A Christmas Carol in 1843. In 1870 the United States made Christmas a federal holiday.

The Verdict

Santa Claus is make believe, but Saint Nicholas was real. He was a bishop who loved Jesus, stood up for the truth about who Jesus is, and gave away his money in secret to rescue girls who had no one else to help them. Most of the miracle stories are legends, and the flying reindeer are pure American invention.

The best part of the real story is the part that matters most. Nicholas gave because God gave first. For God so loved the world that He gave His one and only Son, John 3:16. That is the gift Christmas is about.

Christmas is about the gift of Jesus. And that gift answers the biggest question of all. What happens when we die?

NEXT IN THE BONUS SECTION: IS HEAVEN OR HELL REAL?

BONUS SECTION · THE BIG QUESTION

Is Heaven or Hell Real?

What the Bible says, what Jesus said, and what people say they saw when they died and came back.

THE SHORT ANSWER	The Bible says yes to both. Heaven is real, hell is real, and every person will face one or the other.
WHO TALKED ABOUT HELL THE MOST	Jesus. The kindest person who ever lived gave the Bible's clearest warnings about hell.
NEAR DEATH EXPERIENCES	Doctors have studied them for 50 years. Many people who nearly die report the same kinds of things. What they mean is still debated.
HOW TO READ THIS PAGE	The Bible is the foundation. The stories from people who came back are human stories, not Scripture. Read them with an open mind and an open Bible.
CONFIDENCE	HIGH that the Bible teaches heaven and hell. LOW to MEDIUM for any one near death story.

The Biggest Question There Is

Sooner or later, everybody wonders what happens when we die. Maybe you wondered at a funeral. Maybe in a hospital waiting room. Maybe at 2 a.m. staring at the ceiling.

This page starts with what the Bible says, because the Bible has earned our trust. It is the same book that predicted hundreds of events before they happened, as you can see all through this Bible. A book with that track record does not suddenly become unreliable when it talks about what comes after this life.

Then we will look at something that fascinates almost everyone: the people who say they died, saw the other side, and came back to tell about it. Some say they saw heaven. Some say they saw hell. We will be honest about which stories hold up and which ones did not.

What the Bible Says About Heaven

Jesus described heaven Himself, and He was not vague about it. In My Father's house are many rooms, He said. If it were not so, would I have told you that I am going there to prepare a place for you? John 14:2.

When the apostle John was shown the end of the story, he heard this promise: He will wipe away every tear from their eyes, and there will be no more death or mourning or crying or pain, Revelation 21:4. Read that one out loud at a hospital bed and watch what it does to a person's face.

Paul says no eye has seen, no ear has heard, and no heart has imagined what God has prepared for those who love Him, 1 Corinthians 2:9. In other words, the best day of your life here does not come close.

WHEN YOU DIE. The Bible teaches that believers go to be with Jesus right away. Jesus told the thief on the cross, Today you will be with Me in Paradise, Luke 23:43. Paul says to be away from the body is to be at home with the Lord, 2 Corinthians 5:8.

AT THE END. Heaven is not the final stop. The Bible ends with a new heaven and a new earth, Revelation 21:1, and with God living among His people, Revelation 21:3. Believers get new bodies that never get sick or die, 1 Corinthians 15:42 to 44.

NOT CLOUDS AND HARPS. The cartoon version of heaven, with people floating on clouds playing harps forever, is not in the Bible. The Bible's picture is a real place, a renewed creation, with real people, real joy and God Himself right there.

What the Bible Says About Hell

This is the part nobody wants on the refrigerator. But we cannot skip the parts of the Bible we do not like.

Here is the detail that should stop us cold. The person in the Bible who spoke most clearly about hell was not an angry prophet. It was Jesus. He brought it up again and again, and He never softened it.

Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul, Jesus said. Instead, fear the One who can destroy both soul and body in hell, Matthew 10:28. He warned of a place where their worm never dies, and the fire is never quenched, Mark 9:48, quoting Isaiah 66:24.

He told a story about a rich man and a poor beggar named Lazarus who both die. Lazarus is carried to Abraham's side. The rich man wakes up in torment and begs for a drop of water to cool his tongue. Abraham tells him a great gulf is fixed between them, and no one can cross it, Luke 16:19 to 31.

At the final judgment, Jesus says, And they will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life, Matthew 25:46. Look closely. The same Greek word, aionios, describes both. Whatever length one of them lasts, the other lasts the same.

But notice two more things. Jesus says hell was prepared for the devil and his angels, Matthew 25:41. It was not built for people. And God is not hoping to fill it. He is patient, not wanting anyone to perish, but everyone to come to repentance, 2 Peter 3:9.

DID JESUS TALK ABOUT HELL MORE THAN HEAVEN? You will hear preachers say that a lot. Honestly, it depends on how you count, and by a simple count of verses, heaven comes up more often. But this much is not debated: the most loving person who ever lived talked about hell often and in plain words. He clearly expected us to take it seriously.

Four Words Your Bible Translates as Hell

English Bibles use the word hell for several different words in Hebrew and Greek. Knowing the difference clears up a lot of confusion.

SHEOL	Hebrew. The place of the dead in the Old Testament, good and bad alike. It can just mean the grave. Jacob says he will go down to Sheol mourning for Joseph, Genesis 37:35. Old Bibles often translate it hell.
HADES	Greek. The New Testament word for the place of the dead before the final judgment. It is where the rich man was in torment, Luke 16:23. In the end, Hades itself is thrown into the lake of fire, Revelation 20:14.
GEHENNA	Greek, from the Hebrew Valley of Hinnom, just outside Jerusalem. It was the place where the people of Judah burned their own children as sacrifices to false gods, Jeremiah 7:31, until King Josiah shut it down, 2 Kings 23:10. Jesus took that horrible place and used its name for final judgment. It shows up 12 times in the New Testament, and 11 of them are from Jesus.
TARTARUS	Greek. Used once, for the place where God holds certain angels who sinned, 2 Peter 2:4.
THE GARBAGE DUMP MYTH	You may have heard that Gehenna was a burning garbage dump where fires never went out. The first person known to say that was a rabbi named David Kimhi, around AD 1200. There is no ancient evidence for it. The real history of the valley is worse.

The Big Question: What Is Hell Like, and How Long Does It Last?

Christians agree that judgment is real and that Jesus is the only way to be saved. But they do not all agree on exactly what hell is. Here is every major view, with its best case.

ETERNAL PUNISHMENT	The traditional view. Hell is real, it is conscious, and it lasts forever. This has been the view of most Christians through history, including Augustine, Thomas Aquinas, Martin Luther and John Calvin, and most churches today. Key verses: Matthew 25:46, Mark 9:48, Revelation 14:11 and 20:10.
CONDITIONAL IMMORTALITY	Also called annihilationism. The lost are punished, then destroyed, and stop existing. The punishment is eternal because it can never be undone. Edward Fudge made the case in The Fire That Consumes in 1982, and the famous English pastor John Stott said he leaned this way. Key verses: Matthew 10:28 destroy, 2 Thessalonians 1:9 destruction, Romans 6:23 the wages of sin is death.
UNIVERSALISM	In the end, God saves everyone, maybe after a time of punishment. A few early writers, like Origen in the 200s, hoped

	for something like this. Rob Bell's 2011 book Love Wins raised this hope too, though Bell says he is not a universalist. Key verses: 1 Corinthians 15:22, Colossians 1:20. Almost every church rejects it, because Jesus spoke of eternal punishment, Matthew 25:46.
PURGATORY	Catholic teaching, not a second chance. Some people who die saved are cleansed before entering heaven. Catholics point to 2 Maccabees 12:46 and 1 Corinthians 3:15. The Council of Lyon in 1274, the Council of Florence in 1439 and the Council of Trent in the 1500s made it official. Protestants reject it, because Jesus already paid it all.
SOUL SLEEP	Seventh day Adventists teach that the dead are unconscious until the resurrection, and that the lost are then destroyed. Jehovah's Witnesses teach that hell simply means the grave. Key verse: Ecclesiastes 9:5.
WHAT ALL AGREE ON	Death is not the end. Everyone will face God, Hebrews 9:27. Jesus is the way, John 14:6. And God is completely fair, Genesis 18:25.
THIS BIBLE'S VIEW	The traditional view, because of Matthew 25:46. The same word eternal is used for both destinations in the same breath. We respect Christians who hold the second view. They love Jesus and take the Bible seriously too.

The People Who Say They Have Been There

Now we step away from Scripture. What follows are human stories. They are not the word of God, and nobody should build their faith on them. Test everything, 1 Thessalonians 5:21. But some of these stories are very hard to wave away.

In 1975, Raymond Moody, a philosophy teacher training to become a medical doctor, wrote a book called Life After Life and gave these stories a name: near death experiences, or NDEs. People who came close to death kept describing the same things. Leaving their body and seeing it from above. A tunnel. A bright light. A feeling of overwhelming love. Meeting family members who had died. Seeing their whole life replay. Coming to a border they could not cross.

These are not just stories from churches. In 2001, the medical journal The Lancet published a Dutch study of 344 people who survived cardiac arrest. About 18 percent of them reported a near death experience. A bigger study called AWARE, published in 2014, tried to test whether people could see things while their heart was stopped. One patient correctly described things that happened during about three minutes of his resuscitation.

They Say They Saw Heaven

These are some of the most famous heaven stories, and what we honestly know about each one.



Ascent of the Blessed, part of Visions of the Hereafter by Hieronymus Bosch, painted about 1505 to 1515. Almost 500 years before anyone said near death experience, he painted souls rising through a tunnel toward a light. Public domain.

Don Piper, 90 Minutes in Heaven

In January 1989, Don Piper, a Baptist minister, was driving home from a conference in Texas when a semi truck hit his car head on, on a bridge over Lake Livingston. Paramedics found no pulse and covered him with a tarp. A pastor named Dick Onerecker, stuck in the traffic jam, felt led to pray for him. He climbed into the wreck, prayed and sang a hymn, What a Friend We Have in Jesus. Piper says that about 90 minutes after the crash, he started singing along.

WHAT HE SAW	A beautiful gate, a light brighter than anything on earth, and friends and family who had died coming to welcome him. He says the music was the thing he missed most when he came back.
WHAT HAPPENED NEXT	He wrote 90 Minutes in Heaven in 2004. It sold millions of copies and became a movie in 2015.
WHAT WE KNOW	The crash and his injuries are well documented. Paramedics did pronounce him dead at the scene. What he saw, only he can say.

Mary Neal, To Heaven and Back

Dr. Mary Neal is an orthopedic spine surgeon. In January 1999, her kayak got pinned under a waterfall on a river in Chile. She says she was trapped under water for about 30 minutes before her friends pulled her out with no pulse.

WHAT SHE SAW	She says she felt her soul peel away from her body and was met by a group of beings who loved her, on a path to-

	ward a great hall of light. She says she was told she had more work to do, and was told her oldest son would die young. He was killed by a car in 2009, at 19.
WHAT WE KNOW	The accident is well documented, and she is a respected surgeon who put her reputation on the line to tell this story. She put out To Heaven and Back herself in 2011, and a big publisher released it in 2012.

Colton Burpo, Heaven Is for Real

In 2003, a little boy named Colton Burpo, almost 4 years old, had emergency surgery for a burst appendix in Nebraska. Months later he started telling his parents things about heaven. His dad, Todd, is a pastor.

WHAT HE SAID	He said he sat on Jesus' lap and met his great grandfather, called Pop, who died long before Colton was born. He later picked Pop out of a photo of him as a young man. He also said he met a sister in heaven. His mom had lost a baby before Colton was born, and they say they had never told him.
WHAT WE KNOW	Heaven Is for Real, written by his dad in 2010, sold about 10 million copies and became a movie in 2014. Colton was never declared dead, so this is not a near death experience in the usual sense. Some critics say a small child in a pastor's home could pick up these ideas from the adults around him.

Eben Alexander, Proof of Heaven

Dr. Eben Alexander was a neurosurgeon who taught at Harvard Medical School. In 2008, he got a rare brain infection and spent seven days in a coma. Doctors gave him little chance of surviving.

WHAT HE SAW	A beautiful world of color and music, a woman who guided him on the wing of a butterfly, and a loving presence he calls God. His book Proof of Heaven, in 2012, was a huge bestseller.
WHAT WE KNOW	A 2013 article in Esquire magazine questioned parts of his story. It reported that doctors kept him asleep with medicine, which raises questions about how deep his coma was. His book also never describes meeting Jesus. That matters. A heavenly experience that leaves out Jesus is not the heaven of the Bible.

They Say They Saw Hell

These stories get told less often, and you will understand why. Nobody wants to admit they went the wrong direction.

Howard Storm, My Descent Into Death

Howard Storm was an art professor at Northern Kentucky University and a proud atheist. By his own account, he was also not a very nice man. In June 1985, while on a trip to Paris, a hole tore in his gut, right where food leaves the stomach. He lay in a hospital for hours waiting for surgery and believed he was dying.

WHAT HE SAW	He says he stood up outside his body and was led into a darkness by beings who called to him. Then they turned on him. They mocked him, hit him and tore at him. Lying there, he remembered something from Sunday school and cried out, Jesus, save me. He says a light came, the beings fled, and Jesus lifted him out.
WHAT HAPPENED NEXT	He woke up after surgery and changed his whole life. He left his career, went to United Theological Seminary and became a United Church of Christ pastor. He wrote My Descent Into Death.
WHAT WE KNOW	People do not usually throw away their whole career and worldview because of a bad dream. That does not prove his story, but it is worth noticing.

Ian McCormack, The Jellyfish Man

Ian McCormack was a young surfer from New Zealand who did not believe in God. In 1982, while night diving off the island of Mauritius, he was stung several times by box jellyfish, one of the most poisonous creatures in the ocean. In the ambulance, he remembered the Lord's Prayer his mother had taught him and prayed it.

WHAT HE SAW	He says he died in the hospital and found himself in total darkness, surrounded by evil, where he heard others crying out. Then a light pulled him up into the presence of Jesus, and Jesus gave him a choice to go back.
WHAT WE KNOW	He says he was dead for about 15 minutes. He became a Christian and has spent his life as a pastor and speaker.

Dr. Maurice Rawlings, Beyond Death's Door

Dr. Maurice Rawlings was a heart doctor in Chattanooga, Tennessee. In 1977, a patient's heart stopped during a stress test, and Rawlings started CPR. Every time the man came to, he screamed that he was in hell and begged the doctor not to stop.

WHAT HAPPENED	The terrified man asked Rawlings to pray for him. Rawlings was not a believer, but he led the man in a prayer anyway. The man survived. Rawlings later became a Christian himself.

WHY IT MATTERS	In his 1978 book Beyond Death's Door, Rawlings said frightening experiences are often missed because people forget them or are too ashamed to tell. He said that some patients who described hell right after being revived could not remember it days later.

Bill Wiese, 23 Minutes in Hell

Bill Wiese is a real estate broker from California. He says that in the early morning of November 23, 1998, he was taken out of his body and spent 23 minutes in hell, then saw Jesus, who sent him back to warn people.

WHAT HE SAW	A tiny cell, horrible creatures, burning heat, thirst, and total separation from God. His 2006 book 23 Minutes in Hell became a New York Times bestseller.
WHAT WE KNOW	Bill Wiese does not claim he died. He was at home, and it happened in the middle of the night. So his story is a vision, not a near death experience. Many Christians find it powerful. Others say some of its details go beyond what the Bible teaches. Read it with your Bible open.

How Common Are the Scary Ones?

Most near death experiences people tell about are peaceful. But frightening ones are real, and researchers think they are under reported. Researcher Nancy Evans Bush, who has studied them for decades, says people often keep them secret for years because they are terrified of what it means. Estimates of how many NDEs are frightening range from a few percent to around 1 in 5, depending on the study.

The One That Turned Out to Be Fake

Not every story holds up, and Christians should be the first to say so.

In 2004, a 6 year old boy named Alex Malarkey was badly hurt in a car crash and spent two months in a coma. In 2010, a Christian publisher released The Boy Who Came Back from Heaven, written with his father. It became a bestseller. But in January 2015, Alex, now a teenager, wrote an open letter. I did not die, he wrote. I did not go to Heaven. He said he made it up because he thought it would get him attention. The publisher stopped selling the book. Alex and his mother had been saying for years that the book was not true.

That is actually good news. It means people check these stories. The fakes get caught, which makes the ones that survive the checking more interesting, not less.

What Skeptics Say

Doctors who doubt that these experiences are real visits to another world have explanations. A brain running out of oxygen can see a tunnel and light. Chemicals released in a dying brain can cause powerful feelings. Some people slip into a

dreamlike state between sleeping and waking. Drugs used in hospitals can cause visions.

Those answers explain some things. They have a harder time with the cases where people describe real events they should not have been able to see. The most famous is Pam Reynolds, who had brain surgery in 1991. For part of it, doctors cooled her body and stopped her heart. Before that part began, while she was deeply asleep with her eyes taped shut and her ears plugged, she says she watched the surgeon use a special saw and heard what people in the room said. She described both correctly afterward. Skeptics argue she may have heard things while the anesthesia was wearing thin. The debate goes on.

Here is the honest bottom line. No near death story proves the Bible. And no brain scientist has proven they are all just brain chemistry. But when an atheist art professor, a spine surgeon, a Baptist minister, a cardiologist's patient and a surfer who did not believe in God all come back describing two destinations the Bible mapped out 2,000 years ago, it is worth sitting up a little straighter in your chair.

A Word of Caution From the Bible

The Bible itself gives us a few warnings about stories like these.

STORIES DO NOT REPLACE SCRIPTURE. In Jesus' story of the rich man, he begs Abraham to send Lazarus back from the dead to warn his brothers. Abraham says if they will not listen to Moses and the Prophets, they will not be persuaded even if someone rises from the dead, Luke 16:31.

NOT EVERY LIGHT IS GOD. Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light, 2 Corinthians 11:14. If anyone, even an angel, preaches a different gospel, do not believe it, Galatians 1:8. An experience that teaches everyone goes to heaven no matter what, or that Jesus does not matter, fails the test.

EVEN PAUL KEPT QUIET. Paul was caught up to the third heaven and heard things he was not allowed to tell, 2 Corinthians 12:2 to 4. He did not write a bestseller about it. Some pastors, like John MacArthur, warn that the flood of heaven tourism books says more than the Bible says. That is a fair warning.

WE ONLY DIE ONCE. It is appointed for people to die once, and after that to face judgment, Hebrews 9:27. Near death means near. These people came close and came back. The final trip is one way.

So Do You Need to Worry?

That depends on one question. Do you belong to Jesus?

The Bible does not say heaven is for good people. It says heaven is for forgiven people. The wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord, Romans 6:23. If you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead, you will be saved, Romans 10:9.

John wrote his letter so that you may know that you have eternal life, 1 John 5:13. Not hope. Not guess. Know. If you have trusted Jesus, your name is written in the Lamb's book of life, Revelation 21:27, and Jesus does not carry an eraser.

But Jesus also gave one of the most sobering warnings in the Bible. Not everyone who says to Me, Lord, Lord, will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only he who does the will of My Father in heaven, Matthew 7:21. Words alone are not a ticket. God reads hearts, not transcripts.

So if you are scared that you are not good enough, that fear may be the sound of a heart already turning toward God. He is not looking for perfect people. He is looking for you. And if you have been trying to figure out the least amount of God you can get away with, put that down. He is offering forgiveness for free. It is the best deal you will ever be offered.

The Verdict

Is heaven real? Yes. Is hell real? Yes. Jesus said so, plainly and often, and He has the best track record of anyone who ever lived. He also walked out of His own tomb, which makes Him the one person qualified to tell us what is on the other side.

The near death stories are not Scripture, and a few have been exposed as fakes. But many of them echo what the Bible said long before any of these people were born. Heaven is more beautiful than we can imagine. Hell is worse than we want to admit. And the door between them has a name on it. Jesus said, I am the door. If anyone enters through Me, he will be saved, John 10:9.